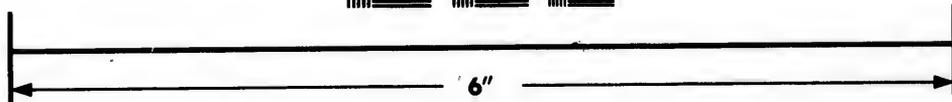
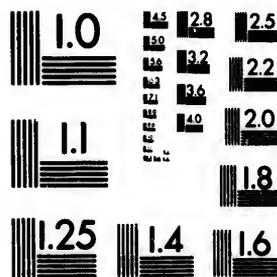


**IMAGE EVALUATION
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic
Sciences
Corporation**

20 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503

**CIHM/ICMH
Microfiche
Series.**

**CIHM/ICMH
Collection de
microfiches.**



Canadian Institute for Historical Microreproductions / Institut canadien de microreproductions historiques

© 1984

Technical and Bibliographic Notes/Notes techniques et bibliographiques

The Institute has attempted to obtain the best original copy available for filming. Features of this copy which may be bibliographically unique, which may alter any of the images in the reproduction, or which may significantly change the usual method of filming, are checked below.

L'Institut a microfilmé le meilleur exemplaire qu'il lui a été possible de se procurer. Les détails de cet exemplaire qui sont peut-être uniques du point de vue bibliographique, qui peuvent modifier une image reproduite, ou qui peuvent exiger une modification dans la méthode normale de filmage sont indiqués ci-dessous.

- | | |
|--|--|
| <input type="checkbox"/> Coloured covers/
Couverture de couleur | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Coloured pages/
Pages de couleur |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Covers damaged/
Couverture endommagée | <input type="checkbox"/> Pages damaged/
Pages endommagées |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Covers restored and/or laminated/
Couverture restaurée et/ou pelliculée | <input type="checkbox"/> Pages restored and/or laminated/
Pages restaurées et/ou pelliculées |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Cover title missing/
Le titre de couverture manque | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Pages discoloured, stained or foxed/
Pages décolorées, tachetées ou piquées |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Coloured maps/
Cartes géographiques en couleur | <input type="checkbox"/> Pages detached/
Pages détachées |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Coloured ink (i.e. other than blue or black)/
Encre de couleur (i.e. autre que bleue ou noire) | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Showthrough/
Transparence |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Coloured plates and/or illustrations/
Planches et/ou illustrations en couleur | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Quality of print varies/
Qualité inégale de l'impression |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Bound with other material/
Relié avec d'autres documents | <input type="checkbox"/> Includes supplementary material/
Comprend du matériel supplémentaire |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tight binding may cause shadows or distortion
along interior margin/
La reliure serrée peut causer de l'ombre ou de la
distortion le long de la marge intérieure | <input type="checkbox"/> Only edition available/
Seule édition disponible |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Blank leaves added during restoration may
appear within the text. Whenever possible, these
have been omitted from filming/
Il se peut que certaines pages blanches ajoutées
lors d'une restauration apparaissent dans le texte,
mais, lorsque cela était possible, ces pages n'ont
pas été filmées. | <input type="checkbox"/> Pages wholly or partially obscured by errata
slips, tissues, etc., have been refilmed to
ensure the best possible image/
Les pages totalement ou partiellement
obscurcies par un feuillet d'errata, une pelure,
etc., ont été filmées à nouveau de façon à
obtenir la meilleure image possible. |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Additional comments:
Commentaires supplémentaires: | Irregular pagination: [1]- 234, [5]- 65, 68 - 69, 72 - 73, 76-81, 84-289, 292-293,
296-297, 300-301, 304-317, 320-325, 328-329, 332-836 p. |

This item is filmed at the reduction ratio checked below/
Ce document est filmé au taux de réduction indiqué ci-dessous.

10X	14X	18X	22X	26X	30X	
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>					
12X	16X	20X	24X	28X	32X	

The copy filmed here has been reproduced thanks to the generosity of:

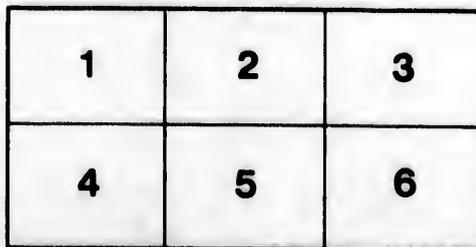
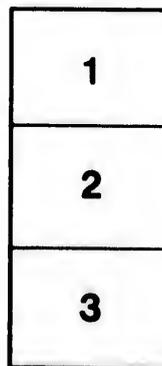
Library Division
Provincial Archives of British Columbia

The images appearing here are the best quality possible considering the condition and legibility of the original copy and in keeping with the filming contract specifications.

Original copies in printed paper covers are filmed beginning with the front cover and ending on the last page with a printed or illustrated impression, or the back cover when appropriate. All other original copies are filmed beginning on the first page with a printed or illustrated impression, and ending on the last page with a printed or illustrated impression.

The last recorded frame on each microfiche shall contain the symbol \rightarrow (meaning "CONTINUED"), or the symbol ∇ (meaning "END"), whichever applies.

Maps, plates, charts, etc., may be filmed at different reduction ratios. Those too large to be entirely included in one exposure are filmed beginning in the upper left hand corner, left to right and top to bottom, as many frames as required. The following diagrams illustrate the method:



L'exemplaire filmé fut reproduit grâce à la générosité de:

Library Division
Provincial Archives of British Columbia

Les images suivantes ont été reproduites avec le plus grand soin, compte tenu de la condition et de la netteté de l'exemplaire filmé, et en conformité avec les conditions du contrat de filmage.

Les exemplaires originaux dont la couverture en papier est imprimée sont filmés en commençant par le premier plat et en terminant soit par la dernière page qui comporte une empreinte d'impression ou d'illustration, soit par le second plat, selon le cas. Tous les autres exemplaires originaux sont filmés en commençant par la première page qui comporte une empreinte d'impression ou d'illustration et en terminant par la dernière page qui comporte une telle empreinte.

Un des symboles suivants apparaîtra sur la dernière image de chaque microfiche, selon le cas: le symbole \rightarrow signifie "A SUIVRE", le symbole ∇ signifie "FIN".

Les cartes, planches, tableaux, etc., peuvent être filmés à des taux de réduction différents. Lorsque le document est trop grand pour être reproduit en un seul cliché, il est filmé à partir de l'angle supérieur gauche, de gauche à droite, et de haut en bas, en prenant le nombre d'images nécessaire. Les diagrammes suivants illustrent la méthode.



CAPTAIN JAMES COOK, F.R.S.

*His FIRST VOYAGE, performed in His Majesty's Ship, the ENDEAVOUR
 SECOND VOYAGE, in the Resolution & Adventure
 THIRD VOYAGE, in the Resolution & Discovery.*

*He was Born at Weymouth in the County of Dorsetshire, and was distinguished by
 the Services of the Kingdom, and so many of his Countrymen.*

A Portrait of Cook from an Original, Engraved by W. A. Smith.

London: Published by W. Wood, in the Strand, near St. Dunstons Church.

UN
 Vo
 A
 (Among other
 M
 New Historical
 Juliana Transport
 OCEAN.
 Captain Wilson
 shipwrecked in the
 Fox, Lock and L
 Captains Maas
 to the North West
 Basson and Sa
 and of their Slave
 Rochon's Voya
 the Chinese Trade
 The interesting
 from the South Sea
 Hamilton's Vo

The
 FIRS

GEO

Bruce's most cel
 Likewise, Hon
 of the Coast of
 Alfo, The Hillo
 And, New Trav
 in the service of
 Asallo, New Tr
 unfortunately by
 And, New Tou
 together with a N
 overments.—Lik
 Falls; Carteret, I
 Alrymple, Burnet
 ougaville, Keate

In
 The Whole Con
 GE

B
 Affilid

PRINTED FOR,

COMPLET

A NEW, COMPLETE, AND
UNIVERSAL COLLECTION
OF
AUTHENTIC AND ENTERTAINING
Voyages and Travels
TO
ALL PARTS OF THE WORLD.

CONTAINING,
(Among other Voyages and Travels undertaken for Discovery, Conquest, Settlement, or the Opening of Trade)
COMPLETE NARRATIVES
OF THE FOLLOWING

MOST IMPORTANT JOURNALS,
Undertaken and performed by Royal Authority, VIZ.

New Historical JOURNALS of the VOYAGES of CAPTAINS PHILLIP, KING, BALL, WHITE, and HUNTER, in the Ships SIRIUS, Supply Tender, JULIANS TRANSPORT, &c. to BOTANY BAY, PORT JACKSON, SYDNEY COVE, NEW SOUTH WALES, NORFOLK ISLAND, &c. in the SOUTHERN OCEAN.

Captain WILSON's valuable Voyage from MACOA to the FELEW ISLANDS, in the Western Part of the PACIFIC OCEAN, where they were shipwrecked in the Antelope Packet.

PORTLOCK and DIXON's Voyages to the North West Coast of AMERICA and ROUND the WORLD, in the King George and Queen Charlotte. Captain MASSEY, TIPPING, and DOUGLAS's Voyages, in the Ships Nootka, Sea-Otter, Felice, and Iphigenia, from BENGOAL and CHINA to the North West Coast of AMERICA.

BRISTON and SAVONISA's Voyages to the Coast of AFRICA, containing an interesting Account of their Shipwreck on board various Vessels, and of their Slavery, &c. &c.

ROCHON's Voyage to MADAGASCAR and the EAST INDIES, including, among a great Fund of general Information, authentic Memoirs of the Chinese Trade and Merchandize.

The interesting Journal of Lieutenant BLIGH's Voyage, in his Majesty's Ship BOUNTY, for the Purpose of conveying the Bread Fruit Tree from the South Sea Islands to the West Indies, including a Narrative of the Mutiny on board the Bounty.

HAMILTON's Voyage ROUND the WORLD in the Pandora frigate, in pursuit of the Mutineers, who plitically carried off the Bounty.

And including a New, Authentic, Entertaining, Instructive, Full, and Complete Historical Account of

The WHOLE of CAPTAIN COOK'S
FIRST, SECOND, THIRD AND LAST VOYAGES,
Undertaken by Order of his Present Majesty,

FOR MAKING NEW DISCOVERIES IN
GEOGRAPHY, NAVIGATION, ASTRONOMY, &c.
IN THE SOUTHERN AND NORTHERN HEMISPHERES, &c. &c. &c.

To which will be added, to make it the most Complete Work of the Kind,

BRUCE's most celebrated Travels, Complete into AETHIOPIA, to Discover the Source of the River Nile, in Egypt.

Likewise, HONGER's Curious Travels, or Tour in INDIA, including entire New Descriptions of the Manners, Customs, and Present State of the Coast of Coromandel, Madras, Bengal, Calcutta, Benares, Bidjegur, Ablaabad, Lucknow, Fyzaabad, Oud, Dowlah, Agra, &c.

Also, The History of FOUR TRAVELS, or JOURNALS into the Country of the HOTTENTOTS and CAPTANIA, by Lieutenant PATTERSON.

And, New Travels through ARABIA, and other Countries in the EAST. Translated from the original of M. NEAUME, Captain of Engineers in the service of the King of Denmark.

Also, New Travels in the UNITED STATES of AMERICA. Translated from the French of M. BRISTOT DE WAREVILLE, who suffered unfortunately by the Guillotine in France.

And, New TOURS and TRAVELS through FRANCE, AUSTRIAN NETHERLANDS, HOLLAND, SPAIN, ITALY, SWEDEN, POLAND, &c. &c. together with a NEW TOUR, or SURVEY of the RUSSIAN EMPIRE according to its present newly regulated State divided into different governments.—Likewise the Substance of all other Eminent Navigators and Travellers, such as Sir Francis Drake, Lord Anfon, Byron, Wallis, Carteret, Lord Mulgrave, Vancouver, Morie, Parkinson, Lutwich, Moore, Hanway, Howard, Drummond, Pocock, Shaw, Carver, Altympie, Burnet, Barretti, Thicknes, Twiss, Bridone, Wrazhall, Johafon, Pennant, Smollet, Forster, Furneaux, Banks, Solander, Bouganville, Keate, Kuff, Anbury, &c. &c. &c.

Together with other VOYAGES and TRAVELS too numerous to mention in this Title Page.

DESCRIBING IN THE MOST ACCURATE MANNER,
UPON AN ENTIRE NEW AND INTERESTING PLAN,
EVERY PLACE WORTHY OF NOTICE

In Europe, Asia, Africa, and America.

The Whole Compiled from the Original Journals of the Respective Voyagers, &c. and now Published under the immediate Direction of
GEORGE WILLIAM ANDERSON, ESQ.

REVISED, CORRECTED AND IMPROVED,

BY WILLIAM HENRY PORTLOCK, ESQ.

Assisted by many OFFICERS and GENTLEMEN engaged in the Various Undertakings of which this Work is Composed.

London:

PRINTED FOR, AND SOLD WHOLESALE AND RETAIL BY, ALEX. HOGG, at No. 16, PATERNOSTER ROW.
W. Taylor, Little St. Thomas Apostle, Printer.

1794 (2H)

NW
370P
C-111
1st-2d
AS
1794

Handwritten scribbles and faint markings, possibly including the word "CORRECTION" or similar.

New C

IT must be
is no Wo
Record of tho
by our severa
Discoveries h
in the fatigue
complete View
to several No
seeing that th
have consequ
a store of Int
penfation.

I acknowle
Voyages and
some PARTIC
the South or
only introduc
curious Reade
that I can pret
no Hercules,
possession of s
persons of ver
sume, in this
mainder as bef
rention which
cially as the u
occupied my l
consequently l
and Advantage

As the dispe
and as no Cur
nature must be
acquire ocula
to the view.

Country for th
of Resolution,
ticularly gratit
greatest Satis
several places
fear or appreh
inconceivable

A Knowledge
LEDGE OF OU
Information of
teen, and com
of Religion, i
blessings of Ch
must feel, or b
favour should
ncs! Such se
on perusing th
cries aloud in

The Informa
very, is manife
terprizes, whic
various tribes
common, and

The unbound
will be a perpe
In former Ann
Avarice, but o
Posterity the fi
when we confid
in travelling th
with New Nati
the magnanimi
they were hono

There is not
Voyages and T
to engage the

New COLLECTION of VOYAGES and TRAVELS.

The PREFACE.

IT must be acknowledged by persons of every capacity, the fact being indisputably notorious, that there is no Work which the pen can produce of more utility and entertainment, as a faithful Journal or Record of those extraordinary Adventures and daring Discoveries, which have been both made and improved, by our several great and intrepid Navigators. It is true, that I cannot presume to the credit of ALL the Discoveries herein contained, though without arrogance, I think I may say, that I have had some share in the fatigue and dangers of making several; it being therefore my design to furnish the Public with a complete View of the WORLD, I confess that besides my own labour to derive information, I am indebted to several Noble Gentlemen for their kind assistance and attention: I say NOBLE, though without TITLES, seeing that their own Worth, Abilities, and Merit, have raised them to Distinction and Command, and have consequently acquired more Fame than ever Birth or hereditary Honors could bestow. With such a Store of Information united, I hope therefore to complete a Task which in itself will be ample Compensation.

I acknowledge that the Public have, from time to time, been presented with Narratives of many curious Voyages and Travels well worthy our perusal and encouragement; but these are naturally confined to some PARTICULAR parts of the World: the Readers of such detached Publications must either abide in the SOUTH or the NORTH, in the EAST or the WEST; or if they are taken ROUND THE WORLD, they are only introduced to such parts as are within the knowledge of the Voyager. It is my ambition to make the curious Reader acquainted with the most important Voyages to ALL the different parts of the World; not that I can pretend indeed to have had ocular proof of every Discovery myself, because that is a labour no Hercules, if allowed only the common length of life could ever accomplish; but because I am in possession of so many interesting accounts (some of which have never been made public) by those ingenious persons of veracity and spirit, who in serving their Country have so essentially served me, and will, I presume, in this Undertaking serve the Public; though want of time, as still they would vainly employ the remainder as before, has prevented them from communicating their own Histories with that accuracy and attention which Publications of this kind require. I have been induced to undertake the arduous task, especially as the uncertainty of health prevents me from prosecuting those Nautical Exploits, which before occupied my leisure, when Novelty inspired my heart, and "Youthful Admiration vented itself freely;" consequently being obliged to return to a domestic life, I am still eager to apply it to the Improvement and Advantage of the Public.

As the dispositions of several are inclined to hear and learn all that can improve as well as entertain, and as no Curiosity whatever is more praise-worthy than an eagerness for such Discoveries, a volume of this nature must be acknowledged highly acceptable, particularly as it is not in the power of all the Curious to acquire ocular demonstration of the many Beauties of those remote places which are herein laid open to the view. Every man has not the ability, though possess of the inclination, to leave his own native Country for the sake of examining Foreign Parts; for a sea-faring life not only requires a competent degree of Resolution, but also the greatest blessing of life, a good Constitution: this Work will therefore particularly gratify the Curiosity of such who cannot otherwise be satisfied; and it must be undoubtedly the greatest Satisfaction to all such anxious Enquirers, to be able in a few hours to be acquainted with those several places which have cost Months and Years in exploring: nay, to be introduced, as it were, without fear or apprehension into those very Islands, to discover which our Adventurers have surmounted many inconceivable Dangers.

A Knowledge of the World is the chief forerunner of that which is so strongly recommended, A KNOWLEDGE OF OURSELVES; from an acquaintance with foreign Customs, Manners, &c. we derive much useful Information of Mankind; we see ourselves in a variety of shapes; this Mirror informs us what man *has been*, and comparison must shew what man *is*! nor is that all, a faithful Record like this enforces the duties of Religion, it displays the glorious work of Providence, the omnipotence of Heaven, and above all, the blessings of Christianity! for surely when we meet with the poor ignorant Natives of Desert Islands, we must feel, or be insensible indeed, a grateful something in our hearts, that we by distinguished grace and favour should be so enlightened, while these poor Wretches walk in absolute barbarism and utter darkness! Such sentiments must strongly recommend this Undertaking; the most hardened Unbeliever will, on perusing the Discoveries herein contained, be convinced that there is "A Power above which Nature cries aloud in all her Works."

The Information derived from Voyages, which have been undertaken for the laudable purpose of Discovery, is manifold and extensive; there is a secret pleasure in contemplating those ancient and modern Enterprises, which lead to a full and perfect Knowledge of the Globe, whereby we are acquainted with the various tribes which inhabit many places hitherto unknown, with an account of Animals strange and uncommon, and also of Vegetables, &c. equally surprising.

The unbounded liberality by which our Navigators have been lately encouraged, must and undoubtedly will be a perpetual memento of Honour and Fame which shall distinguish the Reign of his present Majesty. In former Annals the few experiments which were made, begun merely through motives of Ambition or Avarice, but our late Adventurers have been induced to continue those Experiments, and hand down to Posterity the fruits of their Exertions, for the Improvement of History, Geography, and Science; and when we consider the innumerable dangers which have been encountered in exploring untraversed Oceans, in travelling through unknown Countries, in discovering unthought-of Islands, in becoming acquainted with New Nations, and in being able to complete the Geography of the Whole World, we must admire the magnanimity of the actors, which shall remain an everlasting Monument of the Patronage with which they were honored.

There is nothing awakens an eager Curiosity or excites a Spirit of Enquiry so much as the relations of Voyages and Travels, nor can that spirited Curiosity be disappointed when both Novelty and Variety unite to engage the Attention and elucidate the History of Mankind.

What

The PREFACE.

What can be more interesting to Man than the History of himself? if unacquainted with the World, he is then "fixed to one spot, and rots just where he grew." Mankind, by the different accounts of Navigators and Travellers, is entertained by various pictures of his own species, and from these pictures many instructive lessons may be derived; particularly when we read of inhabitants, who without any other assistance than their own natural good sense, have not only emerged from the gloomy shade of Infidelity and Barbarism, but have also attained that perfection of Religion and Propriety, which have constituted at last the Essence of *real* Civilization. Nations which are now the most polished, have acquired their enlightened refinement by very slow degrees, and through long periods of intervening ages.

A taste for discoveries in every way is certainly the characteristic of an enlightened age, but it is inconceivably confessed that of all kind of Knowledge, that of the Globe we inhabit is the most useful acquirement; besides it is the only one we can ever hope of carrying to Perfection, seeing it consists only of positive things, the number of which is limited, notwithstanding they are many. Various parts of Europe have been long concealed, and places but a small distance from us long unknown, till explored and discovered by our bold Travellers, whose Zeal was neither damped nor Efforts repressed, though much difficulty appeared in penetrating into some of the inland parts.

The Utility of a good Collection of Voyages and Travels must be obvious to persons of every class and denomination; it would therefore be needless and unprofitable to expatiate on the advantages of a Work of this Kind. Valuable books are hereby prevented from being lost, also scarce ones rendered common; mistakes of many rectified, doubts of several cleared up, and the best Authors relating to all parts of the World are, with Illustrations and Improvements, united into one body. It must also be observed, that whatever Authors have been referred to, whether ancient or modern, are and have been men of respectability and esteem, otherwise their assistance would have been unavailing; *facts* and not *stories* should be the object of every Historian, nor is there occasion to call in the artificial aid of Romance when Nature herself has supplied us with *Works* worthy the commemoration of *Words*. Many Compilations have indeed been offered to the Public very undeserving either notice or encouragement: it is not a number of Volumes, swelled with uninteresting accounts and trivial relations, composed from the memoranda of unsteady men, which deserve the approbation of a discerning Public. That writer who is prolix is as much to be censured as the one who is too brief. Much should be contained in a moderate space, by which means the Curiosity of the Reader is not only kept alive, but immediately gratified; whereas Superfluities exhaust the patience, and Enquiries consequently cease before they attain sufficient Satisfaction. Notwithstanding there are many ancient Collections extant, yet as materials are very much increased, on account of the several late Discoveries; such Additions and Improvements must undoubtedly render a NEW ONE highly acceptable, being absolutely necessary, on account of the Modern Voyages and Travels, which are of such an important Nature.

It is not, in these our glorious annals, with a prospect of enlarging private dominion, or satisfying vain ambitious views, that the recesses of the Globe are investigated; but to gratify a laudable Curiosity and promote general Knowledge. Our bold Voyagers have traversed the World to visit new tribes of their Fellow-creatures, not as enemies but friends, to relieve their wants, bring them from darkness into light, and communicate to them our superior attainments. Those recent Voyages, which have been made under the patronage of our present KING; have not, it is presumed, been entirely useless. How many ignorant Islands have been enlightened by the introduction of our English manners: from the uncommon objects exhibited to them, and the frequent opportunities of intercourse, new materials have been furnished them for the exercise of their Reason, and their stock of Ideas naturally enlarged. Is it not probable that the Savage Natives, upon comparing themselves with their English Visitors, became soon conscious of their extreme inferiority, endeavoured to emerge from their brutal state, throw off all ferocious appearance, and rise nearer to a level with those who left behind them so many marks of their Generosity, Humanity, and Spirit? The Britons when first visited by the Phœnicians, are described to have been as *savage* as any of the uncivilized natives of Tongataboo or Otaheite; it is therefore very likely that the Britons may, in due progress of time, spread those blessings of civilization which they themselves have thus acquired, and be the happy means of abolishing the many abominable customs, and almost equally abominable sacrifices, which are too common among the Inhabitants of distant Islands.

Near Twenty Years have elapsed since any COLLECTION of VOYAGES and TRAVELS has been published, and during that space of time for many detached Voyages as well as Travels have been presented to the Public, that a Work upon the present plan (including all the MODERN VOYAGES and TRAVELS) is now absolutely necessary and much wanted by readers of every class and denomination.

The pleasure attending the perusal of Works of this kind, have made them more universally read than any other branch of Polite Literature. In a good COLLECTION of VOYAGES and TRAVELS, we have all the entertaining incidents of the most romantic Novel, with all the evidence of the most authentic History. It is a happy circumstance in this kind of reading, that it gratifies that thirst of knowledge which it excites, and that as we read on, we find new reason to wonder and to admire.

The most ample fortune of the richest man, and the longest life of the most laborious traveller, attended with all that Success which his most sanguine Expectations could hope for, would be insufficient to make him acquainted with the twentieth part of what will be found in this New Work; which is recommended to the Public as a faithful narrative of indubitable Facts; and on such easy terms as to be within the power of every person to purchase.

It is by the aid of VOYAGES and TRAVELS that the studious, the delicate, the infirm, those whose age, sex, disposition of mind, or habit of body, renders incapable of encountering the dangers and inconveniences of long VOYAGES and wearisome JOURNIES, may pass with ease over lonely DESARTS, vast MOUNTAINS, and interposing SEAS; view the most distant Lands, and become acquainted with all the Nations of the peopled earth: thus reaping in their closets the fruits of those accumulated labours, which have employed the most adventurous Spirits for a long succession of ages. Nay, it is to the enterprising Spirit of VOYAGERS and TRAVELLERS, that every enlightened Nation in the World is indebted for that state of Geographical, Historical, and Philosophical Knowledge, of which they can now boast.

In a word, if there be any Merit in blending the Useful with the Agreeable; if conveying the most valuable Knowledge, in the most pleasing manner, can merit Attention, this NEW UNIVERSAL COLLECTION of VOYAGES and TRAVELS bids fair to ensure the complete Approbation of the Public.

W. H. PORTLOCK.

RISE

FRO

A S

seems
nished the
vantages, a
It may pos
been scatter
oceans to d
weighty ob
stantly emp
alone, to r
them with
obstacles of
and, in all
industrious

The pres
general del
dreadful ca
on the face
producing
to retire,
of mankind
discussion
separated b
to determin
selves upon
when numb
and were th

The talk
the descend
with fable,
truth from
of Perleus
the voyage
immerged
commande
where, and

We have
Phœnician
We find th
and curious
netic need
not only co
and North
of this illa
syrians, Eg
or even of
that the E
may proba
who learn
they were
which they
coasts of t
in various

The fan
naval pow
empire of
conquest v
first they v
No. 1.

A
GENERAL HISTORICAL ACCOUNT
OF THE
RISE AND PROGRESS OF NAVIGATION,
FROM THE EARLIEST AND MOST AUTHENTIC PERIOD OF INTELLIGENCE.

AS the race of Man have been ordained by Providence for social as well as rational creatures, it seems to have been the grand design of God and Nature, that after having multiplied and replenished the earth, they should hold intercourse with each other, and thereby derive such mutual advantages, as without a miraculous intervention could never otherwise arise to any separate community. It may possibly be objected, that if this were really the design of Heaven, men would not have been scattered at a distance from each other, with intervening wilds, deserts, mountains, and vast oceans to divide them; but upon an examination of the dispensations of Providence, this seeming weighty objection will vanish. Man is a Being capable of improvement, and intended to be constantly employed in exertions either of his corporal or mental faculties. It is for the brute creation alone, to remain, from their first period of existence, in their wilds and forests, till death assimilates them with their original dust. Man has a nobler claim, by arts enabled to remove the apparent obstacles of nature, to visit distant lands, and from experience to reap advantage and useful improvement, and, in all the various changes of the world, still to find employment for his rational faculties, and industrious efforts, thereby displaying those gracious attributes with which Heaven has endowed him.

The present appearance of this terraqueous globe is not that which it always exhibited: besides the general deluge so fully described in Holy Scripture, we have authentic accounts of partial deluges, dreadful earthquakes, and other phenomena, which from time to time have wrought amazing changes on the face of the earth, by levelling mountains, elevating valleys, rending asunder vast continents, producing new islands, burying vast tracts of land beneath the ocean, and causing the sea in other places to retire, and the dry land to appear. How far these changes may have conducted to the separation of mankind in some places, and to the associating them in others, is a matter, perhaps, worthy the discussion of the philosophical enquirer. Whether the various nations of the peopled earth were separated by such vast tracts of ocean in the antediluvian world, is more than we can take upon us to determine; but it seems clear that after the general deluge, men were fearful of trusting themselves upon the world of waters even for ages, till by slow degrees they were convinced of the utility, when numbers had experienced the advantages of a certain confined navigation peculiar to those ages, and were thereby encouraged to extend them.

The task would be both prolix and unnecessary to enter now into a detail of the expeditions of all the descendants of Noah, and the chiefs of fabulous times, of which all the accounts are so mixed with fable, that it is scarcely possible for the most accurate investigator to distinguish and separate truth from error. Of this sort are the expeditions of the Cretan Jupiter against the Sidonians, of Perseus into Africa against Medusa, with others, too tedious here to mention. The relation of the voyage of Jason in the ship Argo, said to be the first large vessel built by the Greeks, is likewise immersed in fabulous obscurity: it is only to be concluded that the Argonauts sailed under a brave commander of the name of Jason, to establish some branches of useful commerce at Colchis and elsewhere, and to clear the seas of many troublesome and dangerous pirates.

We have every reason to believe by the authorities of both sacred and profane history, that the Phœnicians were the first, and for a long period of time the most successful of the ancient navigators. We find the King of Tyre, whose subjects were of that nation, assisting King Solomon with gold and curious materials for building the famous temple at Jerusalem.—Though the virtue of the magnetic needle was totally unknown in those days, yet it is morally certain that these bold navigators not only coasted along the neighbouring shores of the Mediterranean, but sailed Southward to Africa, and North as far as Britain, trading for tin to the coast of Cornwall, at a time when the existence of this island was not known to the greater part of the nations inhabiting the continent. The Assyrians, Egyptians and other ancient states, are reported to have had great fleets before the days of David or even of Moses.—The accounts of the naval power of Semiramis are to be suspected as fabulous; that the Egyptians and some other nations have been represented as covering the seas with their fleets, may probably have arisen from the number of Phœnician vessels employed in their service.—The Greeks who learned other arts from them, acquired that of navigation among the rest, and almost as soon as they were formed into states, began to think of making themselves respectable for their fleets, with which they repeatedly defeated those of the Persians, and made themselves masters of the Eastern coasts of the Mediterranean, while the Phœnicians were employed in trading and planting colonies in various other parts of the world.

The famous Carthage, a colony from Tyre, from small beginnings rose to high estimation for her naval power, by which means, in a great measure she was enabled to contend with Rome for the empire of the world. But the indefatigable industry, unwearied application, and boundless thirst of conquest which marked the character of the Romans, caused them at last to triumph. Though at first they were little skilled in maritime affairs, to which their ancient genius had not led them, yet

finding themselves thus powerfully opposed by a people whose great resources were in trade, and whose naval strength contributed chiefly to their support; they resolved on manning great fleets, in which, though at first they were unsuccessful, they were at length enabled to combat their enemies, as it were upon their own element, and finally gave them such a terrible overthrow as induced them to accept of such a peace as the conquerors were disposed to grant.—The fleets at this time consisted of galleys of various sizes, with several benches of rowers, and were filled with soldiers who fought with their usual weapons of war, to which were added various engines peculiar to their situation, and some of the galleys had towers, from whence they shot or threw darts, stones, and other missiles. By the help of these, they could make safe approaches to the walls of towns in *offensive* war, and when attacked in their own vessels could carry on a *defensive* with as great security as if they were on shore.

Though by perseverance and assiduities the Romans had overcome great obstacles, and were become masters at sea, yet we do not find that their genius led them towards *discovery*.—Conquest engrossed their ideas, and as the then known world had furnished sufficient employment for their arms; and put them in possession of an empire, which was at last too extensive for them to preserve entire, they were little solicitous of penetrating farther, and exploring unknown regions in the manner of the more modern Europeans for the satisfaction of a laudable curiosity.

That distinguished power which the Romans thus wrested from the Greeks and Carthaginians they preserved till the division of the empire, after which it began to decline.—The distant provinces revolted.—The nations shook off the yoke of the conquerors; barbarians whose names were almost unknown, poured in upon the various parts of the divided empire; Rome sinking under her own weight, was at last sacked by the Goths, and Constantinople taken by the Saracens, which event put an end to the Eastern empire, in the reign of Michael Palaeologus.

Hence originated that consequence which the Arabs derived.—Though at first apparently enemies to learning and the arts, yet as they extended their power, they became encouragers of them, and, while the destruction of the Western empire had involved Europe in ignorance and distraction, these people began to cultivate useful knowledge, and to carry on an extensive trade with divers nations, though in ships of a very slight construction. Nor did the Division of the Arabian empire prove the extinction of this commerce, which long survived the destruction of the Khalifate, and the remains of which were yet visible to the Portuguese when they entered the Indian seas, along whose coasts the pilots, it is said, were found to have the use of sea charts, and even that of the compass, the discovery of which was then so recent in Europe.

During this period the rival Republics of Genoa and Venice, were almost the only powers that attended to trade and navigation in the Western World, the crusades abroad, and the feudal system which prevailed amongst the most respectable powers at home, joined to their intestine divisions, proving most unfavourable to the arts, and prolonging that night of ignorance, whose shades began to be dispelled about the 15th century. The conquests of Jenghiz Khan, and the wars of the successors of Saladin, as well as those of Tamerlane, had successively kept Asia in a ferment; and the two Republics maintained their naval consequence, till the Venetians at length prevailed, and secured to themselves the sovereignty of the inner seas.—Before a way to India was opened by the Cape of Good Hope, the great market for spices, drugs, and other valuable commodities of the East, was fixed at the city of Malakka, from whence they were fetched for the use of the Western nations as far as the Red Sea.—But the discoveries of the Portuguese turned the channel of this trade, and in effect proved fatal to the wealth and power of the Venetians, which had been the wonder, nay, the envy of Europe for a long succession of years.

This change may properly be attributed to the directive power of the magnetic needle, first discovered about the year 1300. Who was the author of this discovery is uncertain; but it is generally ascribed to an inhabitant of Amalfi, in the kingdom of Naples, of whose name there is no authentic account.—Indeed, whoever the person was, his claim could be only as a mere discoverer of this property, which was not applied by the Portuguese for the purposes of navigation till about the year 1495.

When Prince Henry, third son of King John of Portugal, returned from the siege of Ceuta, he conceived such a violent desire of making new discoveries that he spent near ten years in causing attempts of that nature to be made, in the prosecution of which he appeared to have at heart, a scheme for restoring the trade with Asia, by finding out a passage round Africa to the West Indies, which must necessarily divert it from its old channel, and prove most beneficial to those who first accomplished an undertaking so arduous and enterprising.

This Prince, it is said, was the more encouraged to proceed in his scheme by the information of certain Moors, concerning the situation of the Southern coasts of Africa, of which no European adventurers had any knowledge, none of them having ventured beyond Cape NAO, so called from

* The load-stone or magnet, as some say, was first found in Magnesia, a country of Lydia; according to others, the Magnetians were only the first who discovered its property of attracting iron. It is well known to have two poles, which constantly incline to those of the world, if nothing intervenes to alter their direction. This property is found to be communicable, and hence the nautical needle once properly touched points constantly towards the pole, unless some mass of interposing iron, or somewhat of a magnetic nature, interposes to prevent its direction. The cause of this wonderful effect is one of those secrets which it has pleased Heaven hitherto to conceal from the prying searchers into nature's volume. This wonder is augmented by another, namely, the different variations of the compass, which are found by observing the sun and stars, and appear not to be guided by parallels of latitude, nor regulated by meridians; some have attributed this to certain magnetic qualities in certain mountains; some to a principle of magnetism in the earth communicable from the pole in different degrees, at different distances.—But what tends to overthrow these various opinions, and seems almost to mock conjecture, is a variation of the variation itself, as it continues not the same at all times even in the same situations. On the whole, from whatsoever hidden powers in nature the cause of magnetism originates, it is to its effects, as employed in framing the mariner's compass, that mankind owe the discovery of a new world.

being con-
no obsta-
his desig-
ran 60 le-
breaking o-
Tristan V-
coast of Ba-
beyond the
ally, they
verance.

with Barth-
the second
planted; a
following,
where they
with a wor-
of a favouri-
the Portugu-
island was
being necess-
passed the
ceeded 12 l-
inhabitants
were made

The prin-
coasted as f-
Arguin, ca-
In 1447
which the S-
of his comp-

After this
of seeing hi-
they were
islands calle-
Graciosa, Pi-

The succe-
service of Po-
called Brava,
and S. Phil-

In 1471 J-
gold trade
found out an-
who discover-
time.

At this pe-
been the cust-
stone ones th-
inscribed. T-
Congo, saili-
a distance fro-
being arriv-
ordered Can-
heathens.—In
place, persu-
be instructed

After the
and Congo,
gal, desiring
John, that 2-
the kings of
a head and a
lowed to beh-
cance with th-

The surpr-
time current
satisfy himsel-

* The lady die-
out of the trunk
sent him to the K-

being considered as the utmost boundary of their navigation toward that quarter of the globe. But no obstacles appearing sufficient in the eyes of Prince Henry, who every day grew more bent upon his design, in the year 1417, he caused two vessels to be fitted out for the purpose of discovery; they ran 60 leagues beyond Cape Nao to Cape Bojador, where being discouraged by a swelling sea, breaking on the sands, they returned, and the Prince sent out, in 1418, Juan Gonzales Zarco, and Tristan Vaz Teixeira, gentlemen of his household, in a small ship, with orders to coast along the coast of Barbary, till they had passed the Cape, and discover all the land which the Arabs said reached beyond the equinoctial line: but their vessel was driven by a storm out of her course, till, accidentally, they made an island which they called Puerto Santo, or Holy Island, on account of their deliverance. The Prince, on their return, pleased with their discovery, sent them thither again, together with Bartholomew Perestrello, with cattle; as also corn and plants; but the intention was defeated by the fecundity of a couple of rabbits, these animals multiplying so exceedingly, as to destroy what was planted; and thus a circumstance so trifling, rendered the project of a settlement abortive. The year following, the same gentlemen made another voyage, in which they discovered the island of Madeira, where they found a chapel, tomb, and stone, erected by an Englishman, who, flying from his country with a woman whom he loved, was driven thither by stress of weather; the ship taking advantage of a favouring gale, having left the young couple behind them*. The land being covered with woods, the Portuguese set fire to them, to clear it: these are said to have burnt for seven years, and when the island was at last settled, wood became one of the scarcest articles in the country.—A course of time being necessary for furnishing the new settlements, it was not till 15 years afterwards that Gilianez passed the dreadful Cape Bojador, beyond which he sailed 30 leagues, and the year following, proceeded 12 leagues farther, returning with a quantity of sea wolves skins, but, on their landing, the inhabitants fled for fear of them, nor would they return though every persuasive means to retain them were made use of.

The prince still continuing to pursue his plan, Antony Gonzales, in the year 1442, by his order, coasted as far as Cape Blanco. Nunho Tristan passing still further, discovered one of the islands of Arguim, called Adeget, and another, to which the name De Los Garzas was given.

In 1447 Dinis Fernandez discovered Cabo Verde, or Cape Verde; but venturing up the river which the Spaniards called Rio Grande, he was cut off by the natives, as were also the chief part of his company.

After this Alvaro Fernandez sailed 40 leagues farther; and thus Prince Henry had the satisfaction of seeing his plans successively executed, till death removed him in the midst of them; after which they were pursued by his nephew, Alfonso V. in whose reign Gonzalo de Vello discovered the islands called Azores, which are eight in number, viz. St. Michael, St. Mary, Jesus, or Teresa, Graciosa, Pico, Fayal, Flores, and Corvo, lying nearly in the same latitude with Lisbon.

The succeeding year the islands of Cape Verde were discovered by Antonio Nole, a Genoese, in the service of Portugal. These islands lie about 100 leagues to the Westward of Cape Verde, and are called Brava, Bonavista, du Sal, St. Nicholas, St. Lucia, St. Vincent, and St. Antonio: the isles Maya, and S. Philip, and S. Jacob, were also discovered by him.

In 1471 John de Santeren and Peter de Escobar, went to the place called Mina, on account of the gold trade there, and proceeded from thence to Cape St. Catharine. The same year Ferdinand Po found out an island which he called Hermosa, a name which it has since lost, but retains that of him who discovered it. The islands St. Thomas, Anna Bom, and Principe were discovered about this time.

At this period the King of Portugal took upon him the title of *Lord of Guinea*.—It had heretofore been the custom to set up wooden crosses in the new discovered countries, but this prince ordered that stone ones should be in future erected by the captains, whereon his own name and theirs were to be inscribed. The first of these captains was called Cam: passing Cape Catharine, he came to the river Congo, sailing up which, he found by the signs of the blacks, that they had a king, who lived at a distance from the sea coast. This being all the information he could get, he returned home; where being arrived, and bringing some of the natives with him, King John gave them many presents, and ordered Cam to proceed again to Congo, and endeavour the conversion of the people, who were all heathens.—In this he happily succeeded, and returning to Congo, being admitted to the King of that place, persuaded him to lend some of the sons of his chief men to Portugal, to be baptized and to be instructed in all the principles of Christianity.

After the expiration of a few years, the King of Benin, a territory situate between fort St. George and Congo, pretending a desire to be converted to christianity, sent an embassy to the King of Portugal, desiring to have priests for their instruction: the ambassador, among other things informed King John, that 250 leagues beyond their country, reigned a powerful prince, called Ogane, by whom the kings of Benin were confirmed in their royalty, their messengers receiving from him a staff, with a head and a cross, like that of Malta; but added, that the persons receiving these, never were allowed to behold his face, his foot only being put out from behind a curtain, in token of his acquiescence with their wishes.

The surprising relations of a certain prince called Prester John, reigning in those parts, being at that time current in Europe, King John concluded this must be that very extraordinary personage.—To satisfy himself in this particular, as well as to get some account of India, Peter de Covillam, and Alonzo

* The lady died soon afterwards, and Macham, with his companions, having paid this tribute to her memory, made a boat out of the trunk of a tree, in which without sails or oars, he passed over to Africa; the Moors presented him to their king, who sent him to the King of Castile.

Alonso de Payva, were sent over land for intelligence: by way of Grand Cairo they went to Tor on the coast of Arabia, where they separated, Covillan setting out for India, and Payva for Ethiopia, both agreeing to meet again at Grand Cairo, by a certain appointed time: the former proceeded to Cammor, Calicut, and Goa, passing from thence to Sofala, and afterwards to Aden, at the mouth of the Red Sea, on the side of Arabia; when, coming at last to Grand Cairo, he found the companion of his travels was no more; from hence he sent the king an account of his proceedings by a Jew come from Portugal, and afterwards went into Ethiopia, where he was kindly entertained, but was never permitted to return from thence.

About the same time that these set out by land, Bartholomew Diaz put to sea, with three ships: he discovered the mountains called Serra Prada, and passed on in sight of a bay, which he named *De los Vaqueros*, on account of the great herds of cattle that he saw there; he touched afterwards at the island of Santa Cruz, entered the mouth of the river Del Infante, and at last came to the famous Cape which is the utmost southern boundary of Africa; to this Cape he gave the name of Tormentoso, on account of the storms which he there met with. But King John changed the appellation to that of Cabo de Buena Esperanza, on account of the hopes he entertained of discovering a passage round it by sea to the East Indies: however this (which was of more consequence than finding out Prester John's dominions) did not take place in the reign of King John, who, having fixed the Portuguese dominion in Guinea, died, and King Emanuel succeeded him.

As soon as this monarch began his reign Vasquez de Gama, being intrusted with the command of three ships and a tender, passed the Cape, and made his way to India by sea: previous to which, Christopher Columbus had sailed to the West Indies; the new world was thus discovered, and the conquest of Mexico and Peru was the attendant consequence.

In 1494, Sebastian Cabot discovered North America, in the reign of Henry VII. of England.— In the year 1500, Brazil was first found out by Peter Alvarez Cabral, who was sent on an expedition with 1200 men, to gain footing in India, but was driven by a storm on that part of the coast of South America; and in 1519, Ferdinand Maghellan found a passage from the Western to the Southern ocean, by those Straits to which the name of their unfortunate discoverer was afterwards given.

These happy beginnings caused happier continuations, each succeeding period furnished new discoveries of the English, the Dutch, French, and in effect all the nations of Europe, whose situation would permit them; eagerly followed the example of the successful Portuguese and Spaniards, who, equally jealous of them, and of each other, took all manner of pains to preserve their dominion where they had gained footing, and as much as possible to thwart all those who adopted the plan of making new discoveries. But notwithstanding this, we find the Dutch, at various periods, busy in settling themselves in India, and securing the possession of the spice trade. In 1600, an English East-India company was established by Queen Elizabeth; settlements in Asia were also obtained. A great part of the continent of North America, first discovered by Sebastian Cabot, was also peopled after that time by British subjects: nor were the French idle, they also got footing in Asia, the West-Indies, and North America, in spite of all the obstacles that at first appeared to hinder them, while the Portuguese and Spaniards, especially the latter, often found themselves much embarrassed to preserve their new possessions. A passage being opened from the Atlantic to the South Sea, by Cape Horn and the Straits of Maghellan, and the possibility of circumnavigating the globe, which before existed in idea, confirmed by experience, the settlements on the coasts of the Pacific Ocean were exposed to assaults from enemies whom the Spaniards little expected to visit them in those seas, the riches of the new world being alone sufficient to excite them to such an undertaking. Drake, Candish, and others, following the track, afterwards sailed round the world, and to their discoveries much has been added by MODERN NAVIGATORS. All these, together with all that is found remarkable in the relations of voyagers and travellers of former date, will be comprized in the following sheets; we shall therefore forbear to dwell upon the subject here, as we have already given the reader a summary account of the undertakings of those first adventurers, whose names will ever be momentos of their fame and magnanimity.

Having thus given a General Account of the Rise and Progress of Navigation, we shall now proceed with the work itself, in which will be included all the valuable and important Voyages and Travels by the most eminent Navigators and Travellers, whose discoveries forming an æra the most remarkable in the history of navigation, have poured the treasures of surrounding worlds into the lap of Europe, and thereby laid the foundation of her present grandeur and refinement, which have already attained the very summit of perfection.

To gratify the Public curiosity respecting the new discoveries in that immense tract in the Southern clime called New Holland, and the consequence of planting a Colony there, we shall commence with the valuable VOYAGES of Captains PHILLIP, HUNTER, &c. to BOTANY BAY, PORT JACKSON, &c. though in date more modern than other Articles.



went to Tor
va for Ethio-
per proceeded
at the mouth
d the compa-
ceedings by a
ertained, but

three ships:
h he named
afterwards at
o the famous
of Tormen-
ppellation to
ng a passage
finding out
xed the Por-

command of
is to which,
red, and the

England.—
an expedition
the coast of
the Southern
given.

ed new dif-
ose situation
iards, who,
minion where
n of making
y in settling
h East-India
d. A great
peopled after
West-Indies,
hile the Por-
to preserve
Cape Horn
before existed
e exposed to
riches of the
, and others,
s been added
e in the rela-
ts; we shall
ummary ac-
tos of their
all now, pro-
oyages, and
an era the
worlds into
ment, which

the Southern
mmence with
AY, PORT

A NEW,

A NEW GENERAL CHART

Exhibiting the DISCOVERIES made by Captains COOK, DRARK, ANSON, MULGRAVE, &c.



Printed by W. Johnston, at the King's Arms, 1780.

GENERAL CHART of the WORLD.

W. ANSON, M. L. GRAVE, KING, WILSON, MEARES, PORTLOCK, DIXON, PHILLIP, HUNTER & C.



Printed by ... of the Kings Arms N^o 66. Fleetwater Row. Londⁿ 1779.

A NEW AND COMPLETE
COLLECTION OF
THE MOST REMARKABLE
VOYAGES AND TRAVELS
TO ALL THE VARIOUS PARTS OF
THE WORLD:

WHICH HAVE BEEN UNDERTAKEN AND ACCOMPLISHED
BY BRITISH NAVIGATORS AND TRAVELLERS:
Including particularly all those Performed in the Reign of His Present BRITANNIC MAJESTY,
GEORGE III. together with some JOURNALS translated from the FRENCH, &c.

THE NEW, GENUINE, AND COMPLETE
HISTORY of the JOURNALS of VOYAGES to
NEW SOUTH WALES;

AS UNDERTAKEN AND PERFORMED
By Captains PHILLIP, HUNTER, KING, Lieut. BALL, Surgeon WHITE, &c. &c.
Comprizing all the DISCOVERIES of their PREDECESSORS, and every recent INFORMATION,
received since their valuable ADVENTURES, contained in the

JOURNALS AND VOYAGES

Of our late enterprising COMMANDERS, OFFICERS, &c. relative to *BOTANY-BAY, PORT JACKSON, NORFOLK ISLAND,* &c. with particular Accounts of all the adjacent PLACES.

Being an Entire New HISTORY of these Celebrated EXCURSIONS and DISCOVERIES, more Full and Circumstantial than any hitherto Published,

And Embellished with a Variety of most Elegant COPPER-PLATES, drawn and engraved by eminent Artists.

INTRODUCTION.

NO discovery ever tended to so much public utility as that of *BOTANY-BAY*, the credit of which, we must acknowledge, belongs entirely to the great and enterprising hero, Captain James Cook, who in his first voyage round the world explored all the east coast of New Holland, to which he gave the title of New South Wales. The only shore his vessel had then in view was that part which is now known by the name of Botany-Bay. It would be useless here to mention those transactions, which must of course be repeated when giving an account of his adventures; suffice it to say, that he was the discoverer of Botany-Bay, and the first who imagined any advantage could be made of this harbour.

The number of unhappy convicts with whom our several goals were filled, and whom the laws of their country condemned to temporary punishment, rendered it absolutely necessary that there should be some distant place appointed to transport such offenders. The dread of goal sickness, the alarm of insurrections at home, and above all the impossibility of decreasing the number of felons, &c. without the remedy of thus sending them away, were indeed strong inducements for adopting this salutary plan. Certainly our country laboured under a very grievous inconvenience when obliged to retain those criminals, who not only abounded, but were sad examples; besides, the dread of being exiled is in a great measure a discouragement to vice. On this account, and it must be acknowledged with no little propriety, it was suggested to government that this

No. 1.

new-discovered place, Botany-Bay, was the best and safest for the reception of those unfortunate wretches who are justly deprived of their liberty, either for ever, or for such length of time as justice thinks proper to limit. Thus might good result from evil, seeing that by the absence of such criminals we might in time, not only fertilize a land that was hitherto unknown, but make it perhaps a prosperous nation.

No place then seemed better adapted for this purpose than Botany-Bay, so called from the quantity of plants which are there collected. The country is described to be woody, low, and level, yet according to information there are but two kinds of timber wood. The trees are remarkable for their size, in which they far exceed ours; though one sort, it is said, has a resemblance to the English oak, the rest have some similitude to the pine; from the former, the wood of which is remarkably heavy and dark-coloured, proceeds a reddish gum like dragon's blood; the latter, which is also hard and heavy, seems much of the same nature as the American live oak.

The harbour lies in the middle of the land, and may be seen southward at some distance; the entrance is about a quarter of a mile, and lies to the W. N. W. The spot where our new settlement is made lies in latitude 34 deg. south, and in longitude from Greenwich 151 deg. 23 min. It is safe, convenient and extensive, though several steep rocky cliffs appear on the sea coast.

The

The woods are very much frequented with animals and birds. There are several kinds of the former; that which is called the Kangaroo, is most worthy of notice: the flesh is exceedingly delicate, and seems to the taste like good mutton. There are some which weigh 140 pounds; the tail 40 inches long, and 17 in circumference at the root. This animal is exceedingly strong, and, when hunted, springs and leaps with great agility; though it never lets its fore feet, which are very short, come near the ground in running. The strength of this animal lies in its hind quarters, and it frequently uses its tail in its defence, and as often its claws and teeth. The dog is much swifter, and is but a short time in chasing the Kangaroo. As soon as this animal is seized by the hound, he turns about, and catching hold with the nails of his fore paws, springs up and gives the dog such a violent blow with the claws of his hind feet as generally to overcome him; however the dogs, being naturally ferocious, frequently kill the Kangaroos in hunting them: indeed the dogs are so exceedingly savage, that no correction whatever can cure it: they will worry a pig, or snap off the head of a fowl, in defiance to their master; notwithstanding, when domesticated, they are very good-natured, though they retain this ferocity. The Opossum resembles the Kangaroo in strength, form, colour, &c. These animals are equally as numerous: they have pouches, or false bellies, for the safety of their young in time of danger: the rats in like manner, which have some resemblance to the Kangaroos: in short, there is such similarity in these animals, that it is naturally supposed the different sexes of each kind have a

promiscuous intercourse; so indeed we may judge of the fish, as it is a common thing to find a Skair's head and shoulders to the hind parts of a Shark, or a Shark's head to the body of a large Mullet, and sometimes to the flat body of a Sting-ray. There is shell-fish here in great abundance, particularly Oysters, Mussels, Cockles, &c. undoubtedly the chief food on which the natives subsisted. The fowls of the air are, in like manner, a combination of different kinds; but chiefly that of the Parrots: some have been frequently seen with the legs and feet of a Parrot, the head and neck of the same form and colour of a common Sea-gull, and the wings and tail like a Hawk; those that are most like the Parrots are remarkable for their beautiful plumage. There are besides several Crows, a vast number of Hawks, Pigeons, Quails, and a variety of smaller birds. Among the large ones, is a strange kind, first imagined to be the Ostrich, but now believed either the Emew or Cassowary. There is also a quantity of water-fowl near the mouth of the harbour, of an unknown kind, resembling the Pelican, and are black and white. Insects are equally abundant here: the Centipede, Scorpion, Spider, Ant, &c. &c. The plants and flowers display a great variety, and three different kinds of leaves may be seen upon one tree.

Government having deemed Botany Bay the most convenient, and best suited for their intended purpose, wisely and immediately decreed it the habitation for convicts under sentence of transportation.— This leads us to a new account of these voyages, the commencement, adventures, and success of which shall be the subjects of the ensuing Chapters.

BOOK I.

CHAPTER I.

The Vessels appointed for the First Voyage to BOTANY BAY with Convicts—Number of Criminals—Provisions taken in at the Mother-bank—Leave taken of the Hyena—An extraordinary accident—Captain PHILLIP's kindness to the Convicts—A Conspiracy formed among them—The Detection—Principals punished—Anchorage at Santa Cruz—Marquis Brancefort's Politeness, Attention, Invitation, &c.—Escape of a Convict—His Disappointments—Recapture—Remarks on SANTA CRUZ, LAGUNA, &c.—The Equator crossed—Cape Trio—Anchorage—Ingeniousness of a Convict—Victory's great politeness and attention—Strange Customs to avoid Smuggling—Prince of Brazil's birthday celebrated—Description of RIO DE JANEIRO—Anchorage at Table Bay—Live Stock taken in—Captain PHILLIP goes aboard the Supply—Takes leave of the Sirius—makes for BOTANY BAY before the Sirius—Condition of the Convicts—Latitudes, Longitudes, &c.

HIS Majesty's vessel the Sirius, which lay in the dock at Deptford, a very large and convenient ship, of about 540 tons burthen, which mounted 20 guns, and was remarkably well built; and the Supply armed tender, which was a brig, and one of those vessels lately employed in conveying naval stores from one of his Majesty's dock-yards to another, a strong little vessel, very flat-floored, roomy, and which mounted eight guns, and had a deep waist, were the appointed vessels for this excursion. Accordingly, October the 25th, 1786, the command of the ship Sirius was given to Arthur Phillip, Esq; and that of the Supply armed tender to Lieutenant Henry Lidgbird Ball. The Sirius's complement of men was 160; that of the Supply 55.

It was intended, when these two vessels had performed the designed voyage, and the criminals conveyed to the place of their destination, that they should be retained in the country for such employments as were necessary, until relieved by the arrival of other vessels from England.

December the 9th, the Sirius being ready to fall down the river, her moorings were slipped, and she sailed down to Long-Reach, where her guns and ordnance stores were taken in.

January the 30th, 1787, two transports dropped down to Long-Reach, one with female and the other with male convicts: these, in order to transact some

private business, proceeded as low as Gravesend, where the next day they were joined by the Sirius, and a little after upon reaching the Nore by his Majesty's armed tender Supply. Here, it is necessary to observe, that John Hunter, Esq; who had been previously employed in the equipment of those ships, was now appointed second Captain of the Sirius, with the rank of Post Captain, empowered with authority to command her during the occasional absence of Capt. Phillip, nevertheless to be subservient to his orders and directions.

February the 4th, on account of contrary winds and bad weather, these vessels were detained in the Downs for a fortnight; at the expiration of which time they ventured out; and about the 21st the Sirius, Supply and transports arrived on the Mother-bank: here it was deemed proper to rendezvous; the store-ships being in readiness. All necessary orders were now issued forth; and when the Agent for transports, Lieut. John Shortland, had executed his commission, and the Masters of the different ships now received their charges, they sailed from the Mother-bank on the 13th, attended with six transports, having six hundred male and two hundred female convicts on board, and three store-ships, with a large quantity of provisions. Major Robert Ruff, who was appointed Lieutenant Governor of the new settlement, was commandant of the batta-

lion; and there were with their proper officers also a surgeon, with necessary medicines, required. His Majesty's Captain De Courfey, these vessels a hundred as far as Capt. Phillip on account of an cat out at the Needles through St. Helen's down the Channel, changeable, which On the 21st Capt. to Captain De Courfey was taken of the the wind being, as S. W. quarters: the in their progress, it keep together with a

An extraordinary Corporal Baker, of loaded musket down of the arms chest, w ankle of the right foot deal shattered, turning its direction, through a harness cap and after that to the other side of it. Not a wound, yet the good constitution, for in three months to perfect use of the wound

Such was the case of Phillip, that he suffered from their chest be more comfortable wash and keep then gested by the comm one of the transports ship, that a conspiracy convicts on board the an advantage of Cap meditated an insurre covered, were to have time, and make such considerations might intention was h attempt was put in and penetration of t mediately corrected v Sirius, all parties di applied to those who

The wind was still heavy rain, it became N. W. This advance progress of the vessel about four miles an h

On the 9th, the worse, it was deemed islands of Porto Sanc contrary to all expect Salvages, and on the air still continuing they reached the illa Santa-Cruz, as it was anchorage before dar the place. In t they anchored in 15 understood that the foul; proper care w any danger, though the supposition was

The next morning Capt. Phillip, to the information accord were, and what they the anchorage, certa the Sirius to make th

lion; and there were a hundred and sixty marines, with their proper officers, to conduct the transports; also a furgoon, with three assistants, supplied with necessary medicines, &c. to be employed as occasion required. His Majesty's ship the *Hycna*, under Captain De Coursey, was likewise appointed to see these vessels a hundred leagues to the westward, or as far as Capt. Phillip deemed needful. The ships, on account of an easterly wind, were obliged to run out at the Needles, though it was intended to go through St. Helen's: they had pleasant weather down the Channel, but the wind continued very changeable, which was the occasion of some delay. On the 21st. Capt. Phillip delivered his dispatches to Captain De Coursey; and, after three cheers, leave was taken of the *Hycna*: it was now hazy weather, the wind being, as it was some days before, in the S. W. quarters: the vessels were, therefore, but slow in their progress, it requiring particular attention to keep together with all the transports.

An extraordinary accident now happened to Corporal Baker, of the marines, who, on laying a loaded musket down, which he had just taken out of the arms chest, was wounded by it in the inner ankle of the right foot: the bones, after being a good deal shattered, turned the ball, which, though changing its direction, still retained such force as to go through a harness cask full of beef at some distance, and after that to kill two geese that were on the other side of it. Notwithstanding the danger of such a wound, yet the Corporal, being a young man of a good constitution, so well recovered it as to be able in three months to return to his duty, with the perfect use of the wounded leg.

Such was the considerate humanity of Captain Phillip, that he suffered the male convicts to be released from their chains, in order that they might be more comfortable, and be enabled to frequently wash and keep themselves clean. It was now suggested by the commanding marine officer on board one of the transports, and likewise the master of the ship, that a conspiracy was formed by some of the convicts on board the *Scarborough*, who had taken an advantage of Captain Phillip's indulgence, and meditated an insurrection: their intentions, as discovered, were to have quitted the fleet in the night-time, and make such use of the ship as their future considerations might determine: however, this daring intention was happily discovered, before the attempt was put into execution, by the ingenuity and penetration of the marines, the ringleaders immediately corrected with some severity on board the *Sirius*, all parties divided, and heavy irons again applied to those who deserved them.

The wind was still precarious; at last, after some heavy rain, it became more settled, inclining to the N. W. This advantageous change improved the progress of the vessels, which was then at the rate of about four miles an hour.

On the 30th, the weather changing again for the worse, it was deemed advisable to make to the islands of Porto Sancto and Madeira. On June 1st, contrary to all expectation, the vessels reached the Salvages, and on the 3d had passed the rocks, the air still continuing variable; in a short time after they reached the island of Teneriffe, making on to Santa-Cruz, as it was the Captain's wish to effect an anchorage before dark, his men being unacquainted with the place. In the evening, about half past six, they anchored in 15 fathoms water. It had been understood that the ground all over this bay was foul; proper care was therefore taken to obviate any danger, though the labour was unnecessary, as the supposition was erroneous.

The next morning an officer was dispatched by Capt. Phillip to the Governor of this island, with information (according to custom) of whom they were, and what they wanted; though, previous to the anchorage, certain officers had come on board the *Sirius* to make these enquiries, it being a cere-

mony seldom, if ever, neglected. Marquis Branciforte, who was the Governor, and Captain-General of the whole of the Canary Islands, received this messenger with extreme courtesy, and politely returned answer to Captain Phillip, that he should command every refreshment the island could afford, and he sincerely hoped that the place might be capable of supplying him with such articles as he had most occasion for. Commodore Phillip, the Post-Captain, and several other officers, now waited upon the Governor, to return him thanks. The Marquis repeated his civilities, and received them with every mark of politeness and respect. A short time after he came on board the *Sirius* himself, with his attendants, and remained there about an hour, making enquiries (during conversation) about the extent of our intended voyage, and situation of the place for which we were making. Some short time after this, he sent an invitation to Captain Phillip, and his friends, to dine with him. Accordingly the Captain, and his principal officers, (in number about twelve) accepted the invitation, and were exceedingly hospitably and politely entertained. The Marquis is a genteel man, of an animated countenance, an easy and graceful deportment, and possessed very much of the dignity of a Spaniard.

Every proper advantage was taken of their stay in this island; during which time the ship's crew and convicts were supplied with fresh provisions, of which there was great abundance, but a scarcity of vegetables and fruit, only a few pumpkins, onions, potatoes, &c. could be procured.

Capt. Phillip's intention was not to have exceeded four days here at most; but his stay was unavoidably longer, the watering of the ships being as tedious as it was a necessary business, and what still added to the delay was, that only two boats could be loaded at one time. One evening, when it was rather dark, and all hands employed in clearing a boat of water, a convict, of the name of Powel, having dropt away from the ship unperceived, now contrived to slip into a small boat; when at some distance from the vessel, he then exerted all his strength, and by means of his oars soon reached a foreign East-India ship, which lay near the shore: he now offered himself as a seaman; but his expectations of getting off in this vessel were disappointed, as they rejected his services: baffled in his hopes, and apprehensive of being soon missed, he deemed it necessary to leave this vessel, and by concealment elude search. He landed to the westward of the town; but on an unfortunate place, surrounded with inaccessible rocks, where there was a good deal of surf. The convicts being now mustered as usual, at setting the watch, the officer of marines missing this man, immediately sent word to Captain Phillip. Next morning the Captain sent an officer to the Governor, requesting his assistance in recovering this deserter. The Marquis instantaneously issued orders for that purpose, and early in the morning boats were dispatched from the ships, to search for that one which the convict had taken: as they had also rowed along-shore to the westward, they immediately perceived it heaving on the rocks; accordingly they advanced to get her, and being naturally induced to look about the place, perceived the convict, who had not been able to ascend the precipice, concealing himself in the cleft of a rock. The officer forthwith presented a loaded gun at him, declaring if he did not immediately descend, and get into the boat, he would shoot him. This menace had the desired effect: he instantly complied; and, when taken on board, punished and put in irons during the remainder of their anchorage; but having afterwards presented a petition to Captain Phillip, he was released from his confinement.

It is now necessary to make some cursory observations on this island, and its adjacent places. The city of Laguna, which is reckoned the capital, is about three or four miles distance from Santa Cruz: the

the roads thereto are exceedingly bad, and the streets of the city irregular and cross each other at right angles, some of which are remarkable wide, but the buildings are in general good; the plain on which Laguna stands is pleasant and fertile, the soil is rich, and it contains many gardens. Notwithstanding, it is surrounded by such high mountains, which occasion many torrents of water in time of rain, that it is deemed exceedingly unwholesome; on which account few people of consequence inhabit the place, though once the established residence of many of distinction. Among the buildings are two parish churches, which have short square steeples, but which appear above all the other buildings; there are two nunneries and three or four convents; there is a conduit in the middle of the town to supply the inhabitants with water. The Peak is a mountain very much celebrated for its amazing height.

The bay of Santa Cruz is defended by several small batteries of four or five guns each, they are placed at a particular distance from one another, and close to the water-side; their principal fort near the landing-place is a strong work; it is imagined that on the whole they mount near one hundred pieces of cannon. The chief street in this town is so broad as to resemble a square; the buildings are irregular; the governor's house, which makes but a poor appearance, stands at the upper end; at the lower end there is a square monument, which was erected in commemoration of the appearance of Notre Dame to the Guanches, the original inhabitants of the island. Santa Cruz is the principal seat of commerce; all the officers of justice reside in the place; the manufactures are very few, and consist chiefly of taffeties, gauze, coarse linens, blankets, garters, &c. The principal dependance of the inhabitants is on their wine, oil, corn, and every kind of stock for shipping. The women wear veils, and some of them are so abandoned and shameless as to exceed even the prostitutes of London; indeed all the ladies are addicted to intrigue.

June 9th, the watering being now completed, orders were issued for every person of the fleet to return to his respective station; and at ten o'clock the succeeding morning they proceeded on their voyage with a favourable wind. On the 18th of this month they reached the island of Bonavista, with an intention to anchor in Port Praya bay, in the island of St. Jago; the weather was exceedingly hazy, and on account of contrary winds and many unfavourable circumstances, the attempt was given over as impracticable: accordingly they steered southward with an intention to cross the equator, but on account of the severity of the weather it was impossible to gain ground; therefore standing off at a greater distance from the coast of Africa, they were for several days without advancing; thus delayed with wavering winds it was not till July 14th in the evening that they crossed the equator: but the wind afterwards made ample compensation, by blowing steadily from East-fourth-east to East, otherwise they must have fallen in with the coast of Brazil, which would not only have been the cause of much delay, but be attended with great danger.

During this dark, cloudy, and unpleasant weather, the company entertained themselves at intervals with fishing; they caught two or three bonitoes. The boatwain struck with a pair of grains out of the cabin-window a most beautiful fish about ten pounds weight; it somewhat resembled a salmon in shape, but differed in the tail, which was more forked; it was of a fine yellow colour; when first taken out of the water it displayed two beautiful stripes of green on each side, which after some short time changed to a delightful blue and so continued; there was nothing particular in the internal formation of this fish, except that the heart was larger, and its respirations contracted and dilated longer

than ever appeared in any other aquatic animal. The sailors having never before seen a fish of this kind, and it being consequently a non-descript, gave it the appellation of the Yellow-Tail.

Aug. 3d. Having now made Cape Trio, they found it impossible to get hold of anchorage, and so proceeded on to Rio de Janeiro Sugar-loaf. On the 5th a boat came along-side in which there were three Portuguese and six slaves; one Thomas Barret, a convict, was discovered to have passed, with great ingenuity, in trafficking with these people, some quarter dollars which by the assistance of others he had coined out of a few old buckles, pewter spoons, buttons, &c. during his passage from Teneriffe; the fraud had been so inimitably executed, that had the metal been a little better it must have passed; the apparatus whereby this cheat was accomplished were sought in vain, and considering the disadvantages he laboured under, it is wonderful how he could accomplish it. The characters of those artful villains, and the crimes they had committed, were explained to the injured Portuguese for fear they might entertain an unfavourable opinion of the rest of the Englishmen. On the 6th of August the convoy anchored for the night in water fourteen fathoms deep in the islands which lie off the harbour: as Captain Phillip was some years ago on this coast, commander of a Portuguese man of war, during which time he behaved very gallantly, he was of course extremely popular here, and thereby recommended to the notice of the court of Lisbon.

The next morning an officer was dispatched to the town to wait on the viceroy and give him the usual information, and in the afternoon the Sirius with the whole convoy sailed into the harbour. Fresh provisions were immediately provided for the ships' companies, marines, and convicts; rice in lieu of bread, also vegetables and fruits, particularly oranges, which abounded here.

Much civility and politeness were testified at this place. Some short time after Captain Phillip's arrival, his officers paid their respects to the viceroy, who seemed very desirous to render every thing as comfortable and pleasant as possible, consistent with his instructions from the court of Portugal, relative to all foreigners; and indeed so far he extended this civility as to break through an old established rule of the place, it being the custom in order to prevent smuggling, a crime punished here with the greatest severity, for guard-boats to row constantly night and day, when foreign vessels come into the harbour; and whenever boats are sent on shore by those foreign ships, to put a soldier into the boat, who continues on board her during her stay; also, when any foreign officer lands, an officer from the guard attends him wherever he goes: it must therefore be acknowledged as none of these spies were allowed to watch Captain Phillip and his officers, nor even any restraint attempted in the beginning, but every officer permitted to walk wherever he pleased (a liberty never granted to strangers), nor any sentinels placed even in the boats of the transports, that the respect which was paid was both extraordinary and unusual; however the masters of the transports and their sailors were attended by these men when they went on shore. Much ceremony was used upon conducting the company to the palace; they were attended by an officer and a friar; as they passed the guard on duty the colours were laid at the feet of the commodore, which was a token of the greatest respect; they were then introduced to a large anti-chamber crowded with officers, soldiers, and domestics; some short time after a curtain, hung over the door of the presence-chamber was drawn aside, and each introduced in his turn to the viceroy by the commodore. The viceroy was seated so awkwardly that his back was to most of the officers. As to the room it was far from magnificent or elegant. The viceroy was a

stout

stout corpulent person.

Six female convicts removed from the lotte, on account of some number returning, who's conduct was done: with a view. A private in the militia, Connell was sent whipped, for having some of the female for endeavouring to trust in suffering but as he bore a circumstance, he was consequently forgiven. John Jones and James of similar offences.

The 15th of August and merriment and was now observed by the viceroy, who appeared between the city and sons of all ranks joint was decorated with brightly illuminated here and observed the parade continued with fireworks and

In religion they many unaccountable are hawked about. are very fond of in are prudent and ref

A private marine endeavouring to get fiscal dollars, which from some of the before mentioned.

There is a small distance from where where Captain Phillip permitted during their of landing a few of necessary for ascertain; the weather has experiments.

August 21st. The Prince of Brazil's paid the viceroy a return behaved with Captain Phillip and means deficient in politeness.

September 3d, the every other business persons of the fleet the signal given for Sirius had got with Santa Cruz, she was twenty-one guns, compliment the number.

The vessels having islands before night Rio de Janeiro, which modious; so convey several ships may find

Rio de Janeiro is day, on which it is it is the capital of South America, and a river; the princip on the south side of lace, is broad and wide and contains a number, belonging to are narrow, and for

No. 2.

stout corpulent person, middle aged, and of few words.

Six female convicts were now by the commodore's order removed from the *Friendship* into the *Charlotte*, on account of their good behaviour, and the same number returned to the *Friendship* in their stead, whose conduct had been exceptionable; this was done with a view to separate the good and bad. A private in the marines of the name of Cornelius Connell was sentenced by a court-martial to be whipped, for having improper intercourse with some of the female convicts; also, Thomas Jones for endeavouring to make a sentinel betray his trust in suffering him to go among the women; but as he bore a good character previous to this circumstance, he was recommended to mercy, and consequently forgiven by the commanding officer. John Jones and James Reily, privates, were accused of similar offences, but acquitted for want of evidence.

The 15th of August being a day of great parade and merriment among the Portuguese, the same was now observed by the inhabitants of Rio de Janeiro, who appeared in their best and richest attire between the city and the church of St. Gloria. Persons of all ranks joined in the crowd; Gloria church was decorated with various flowers, and most brilliantly illuminated; the people generally stopped here and observed some religious ceremonies: this parade continued the whole day, and concluded with fireworks and rockets.

In religion they are very exact, and introduce many unaccountable customs. Consecrated beads are hawked about. The women of the lower class are very fond of intrigue, but those of high rank are prudent and reserved.

A private marine, James Baker, was punished for endeavouring to get passed on shore one of the artificial dollars, which, no doubt, he had procured from some of the convicts, being the same of those before mentioned.

There is a small island about a mile and a half distance from where the ships lay, called *Enchados*, where Captain Phillip and his friends were permitted during their stay to erect a tent, for the sake of landing a few of the astronomical instruments, necessary for ascertaining the rate of the time-keeper; the weather however was too unfavourable for experiments.

August 21st. This being the anniversary of the Prince of Brazil's birth-day, every compliment was paid the viceroy usual on the occasion, who in return behaved with particular attention; nor were Captain Phillip and the other gentlemen by any means deficient in their endeavours to deserve his politeness.

September 3d, the watering of the convey and every other business being completed, all the persons of the fleet were summoned together, and the signal given for unmooring. As soon as the *Sirius* had got within about half a mile of Fort Santa Cruz, she was saluted by the castle here with twenty-one guns, which high and distinguished compliment she answered with one of the same number.

The vessels having now got clear without the islands before night, soon reached the harbour of Rio de Janeiro, which is very extensive and commodious; so convenient in respect to bays that several ships may find security here in bad weather.

Rio de Janeiro is so called from St. Januarius's day, on which it is said to have been discovered; it is the capital of the Portuguese settlements in South America, and is situated on the west side of a river; the principal street, which is like a square, on the south side of which stands the viceroy's palace, is broad and well built; it is called *Strait-Street*, and contains a number of large shops and a convent, belonging to the Benedictine friars; the rest are narrow, and for the most part intersect each

other at right angles: the houses are commonly two, sometimes three stories high; people of respectability live in the upper part, those of the lower class inhabit the shops, for whose service they are intended. The city and harbour are strongly defended, but with little judgment; every thing of the provision kind is very reasonable; the inhabitants are cheerful and pleasant; the women, though remarkably thin and pale, are delicately shaped, have good teeth, and beautiful long hair. The churches are very good, and remarkable for their decorations. The different mechanics of this place carry on their business in distinct parts of the town, as there are particular streets set apart for particular trades. Before the vessels left this port, they were supplied with several seeds and plants for which the town is remarkable.

After leaving Rio de Janeiro the winds were very changeable, and after the first two or three days unfavourable; the weather was for the most part thick and hazy, of course unpropitious for remarks. October 12th, the wind becoming a strong westerly, there was some expectation of making land, seven or eight leagues from which it proved 115 fathoms over a black sandy bottom, and at five leagues distance 90, over sand with small stones. October 14th all the convoy anchored in Table Bay, Cape of Good Hope, and next morning at sun-rise by Captain Phillip's command the fort was saluted by thirteen guns, which was answered by the same number.

Table Bay being the last port that refreshments could be had from, during this voyage, it was now wisely determined to lay in such quantities of articles as were needful, and could be conveniently lodged in the vessels, both for present and future consumption; but notwithstanding the Dutch Governor Mynheer Van Graaf received the commodore and officers with the greatest courtesy and politeness, still there was such an unaccountable delay, owing to a tedious ceremony, that nearly a fortnight had expired before a satisfactory answer was given whether the convoy could have those supplies that were necessary for their expedition; and no doubt had not Captain Phillip persevered in his entreaties there would have been greater delay, or perhaps some evasion; but his industrious zeal surmounted all supineness, and at last procured such things and in such quantities as were necessary and convenient.

On board the *Sirius* were embarked six cows with calf; two bulls, one of which was about seven months old, also a number of sheep, goats, hogs, poultry, &c.

On board one of the transports three mares, each having a colt of six months old, and a young stallion; all the officers of the transports provided themselves with as much live stock as possible, not for the sake of partaking thereof during their voyage, but with a view of stocking their little farms in the country which they were seeking, it being their chief consideration to commence as rich as possible, for which reason they intended during their voyage to subsist chiefly upon the salt provisions, and reserve the live stock for their arrival; there was also a number of cattle put on board the stock ships; also corn and other necessaries; it was however regretted, that there was not sufficient room for a larger quantity, as they could only supply those places which had been filled before with the provisions already consumed.

After the supplies had been granted, Captain Phillip and several of the officers (as many as could conveniently attend him) were invited by his Excellency Mynheer Van Graaf, the governor, to an elegant and sumptuous dinner at his town residence, which is delightfully situated nearly in the centre of an extensive garden, which being remarkably pleasant and well shaded, is very much frequented by persons of every description, particu-

larly those of respectability. There are several other walks about Cape Town, but all inferior to this. On approaching the Cape of Good Hope, Table Land, a very remarkable mountain, so called from its resemblance to a table, may in clear weather be seen at some distance: on account of the heat and ascent it is a very fatiguing expedition to go on the top of it; however, when accomplished, the view from the summit makes ample compensation for the labour. To defend this mountain is nearly as difficult as going it up. There were some runaway Negroes discovered round a fire on the cliff of a most stupendous rock, secure from the power of their masters, it being impossible for any person to come near them: how they reached this place of security is matter of great astonishment; here they remain all day unmolested, and during the night, as reported, make excursions and commit depredations on the inhabitants.

From September to March, which is here the mild summer season, this Table Land is sometimes on a sudden covered with a white cloud, which by some is called spreading of the table-cloth. On the first appearance of this the ships in Table Bay make preparations, by striking yards and top-masts, and placing every thing in a comfortable state.

The Sugar Loaf, a round hill, by some called the Lion's Head, one part of which is called the Lion's Rump, is somewhat westward of the Table Land, divided by a small valley on the right hand side of Table Bay; this hill very much resembles a lion with his head erect, whence originated that name: there is a flag staff placed on each side, to apprise the governor of the approach of vessels.

Charles's Mount, likewise called the Devil's Tower, inclines eastward, separated by a small chasm from the Table Land; there are several gulls of wind supposed to issue from it when it partakes of the cap that covers Table Land, from this originated its second appellation. As this sight is generally in the morning, it is a common saying among the facetious number of sailors (the Devil's Tower being very near Table Land) that the black gentleman is now going to breakfast; this humour is varied if the phenomenon appears in the middle of the day, for then they say, he is going to dinner; and if in the evening, they observe the cloth is spread for supper.

Cape Town is very extensive, well built, and in a good style; the streets, which are wide, intersect each other at right angles; the houses in general are built of stone, the mortar which is used is a kind of glutinous earthy compound; their buildings are afterwards plastered with much skill and neatness, and white-washed with lime. The height of the houses but seldom exceeds two stories, on account of the violence of the wind, which sometimes shakes them to the very foundation, and therefore instead of being tiled or slated, they are commonly thatched, though on account of fires which frequently happen, some have preferred tiles or slates. The lower parts of the houses are neat and well furnished, but the upper apartments are chiefly bare. The streets are in general rough and unpaved; the parts before the houses are commonly flagged, or with a few trees planted around forming an agreeable shade.

The castle and principal fortresses stand close to a wooden quay, which runs a few paces into the sea, and which on account of some excellent water that is conveyed by pipes, is very convenient for watering ships. In the castle there are good accommodations for the troops and many of the civil officers.

There are two churches, one large and another small; the larger for the Calvinists who are the prevailing sect, and the smaller for the Lutherans: they are both unadorned. There is a very handsome hospital at the upper end of the town close

to the company's garden, to which the convalescents have free access, and reap the benefit of a pure wholesome air. The inhabitants take great delight in gardens, and keep them in excellent order; there are several public buildings, particularly the stables and a house for slaves; the former is a handsome row of neat buildings, which hold an incredible number of horses; the latter is exceedingly extensive, wherein there are separate apartments for the male and female slaves, and which afford them a comfortable retirement after the fatigues of the day.

The militia consist both of horse and foot; the officers are chosen annually; crimes are punished by fines or forfeitures; their dress is chiefly long blue coats with white metal buttons. The men are stout and robust; the women lively, free, and good-natured: they resemble the English very much in manners and dress.

November the 11th, Captain Phillip gave a public dinner to several gentlemen of the town, and the officers of the fleet. An unforeseen accident having detained the Dutch Governor in the country, prevented him from being one of the party. A band of music was provided on shore upon the occasion, while cheerfulness and good humour added to the harmony.

As the trouble of laying in the necessary stores was now over, preparations were made for sailing, and on the 13th of the month they weighed anchor, and stood out of the bay: the gales were S. S. E. S. E. and S. in consequence of which there were strong apprehensions some of the cattle would perish.

One of the seamen on board the Prince of Wales fell from the top-mast yard the 22d of this month, and was lost. As the vessel was sailing very fast, and it being exceedingly dark, there was no probability of saving him.

November the 25th, as some of the convoy failed very heavy, Captain Phillip thought it prudent to embark on board the Supply, with a few chosen friends from the Sirius, in order to proceed in that vessel to the coast of New South Wales, and arrive as soon as possible before the rest: he took with him Lieut. King, Mr. Dawes, &c. also several carpenters, sawyers, blacksmiths, &c. with a view to examine the place, and make every preparation that was necessary before the coming of the remaining crew. Major Ross, the Lieutenant Governor, having already fixed upon the most eligible spot for building upon, intending to erect occasional huts for the preservation of the stores when the convoy arrived, deemed it necessary, as several hands would be required, to take with them a number of artificers; three therefore of the best-sailing transports, (viz. the Alexander, Friendship, and Scarborough,) which were under the command of Lieut. Shortland, the agent, received orders to quit the convoy, and endeavour to reach Botany Bay as expeditiously as possible. Major Ross, and the adjutant, removed into the Scarborough, and the rest of the vessels were left to the direction of the Sirius, now under the command of Capt. Hunter. The commodore and his company having put their resolutions into execution, took leave of the Sirius, and though the Supply and other ships were considerably ahead the next day, it was some time before the Sirius lost sight of her.

It is necessary now to take a review of the convicts, whose healthiness during this part of the voyage was remarkable: only six died between England and Teneriffe, which is allowed to be the most trying part, to people unaccustomed to warm climates, particularly as they were obliged to live upon salt provisions; several of those who were lost had been afflicted with discharges before they embarked, consequently there could be but little hopes of their recovery: very few were in fevers, and only about twenty or thirty who had any violent symptoms of the fever. Among the convicts who died, was one Ismael Coleman; worn out by debility and lowness



Faint text or a caption located at the bottom of the page, below the large illustration. The text is illegible due to its low contrast and blurriness.



MR. BANKS receiving a Visit from the King of DUKE OF YORK'S ISLAND.



View of A PERFORATED ROCK, in TOLAGO BAY.



View of A Town in the Island of TERRA DEL FUEGO.

of spirits, he died w
who died of a drop
before, and dischar
the Mother-bank, a
the marines and co
tery among the co
Good Hope, which
and about Christm
by great attention a
suppressed; only o
the troops intende
disorder; from the
death, being elev
agony, and nothin
eat. There was
very well-behaved
bringing some of
which he hung the
other fell overboar
to, and a boat fen
withstanding every
Ball, of the Supply
cattle saw the vessel
rendered his fate in
a convict, was deli
of the voyage.

It is now proper
longitudes and lat
passed, as nearly an
The Salvages, ad
In latitude

The Convoy proceed
— Luminous Figur
Accidents—Land
prised—Captain F
Success of the Co
Natives become fa
their Persons—Or
Their Threats—S
surprise at the exp
willingness to exp
mode of sheltering

AS soon as Cap
Hunter see
opinion that they h
a parallel to infure
The weather still c
very heavy, and
whole unfavourable
cold, several fema
of Wales were fe
which afterwards
cularly among thos
with the dysentery
by the care and a
on this occasion ga
of malt, and som
Lord Sydney and

During this pa
appeared of an un
albatross and pete
species of sea-haw
oceanic birds, wit
Cary's chickens.

Whenever it wa
any separation bet
the Sirius, the con
sea was covered c
posed to have pro
like nature called
of fish.

of spirits, he died without a pang: also James Clerk, who died of a dropy; he had been tapped ten days before, and discharged twelve quarts of water. At the Mother-bank, a sporadic disease appeared among the marines and convicts: also an epidemic dysentery among the convicts, after leaving the Cape of Good Hope, which found its way among the marines, and about Christmas became most violent; however, by great attention and cleanliness, this contagion was suppressed; only one man, Daniel Cresswell, among the troops intended for the garrison, died of this disorder; from the commencement of which to his death, being eleven days, he was in the greatest agony, and nothing could yield him momentary ease. There was one William Brown, who was a very well-behaved convict, that was lost: he was bringing some of his linen from the bowsprit-end, which he hung there to dry, and by some means or other fell overboard. The ship was instantly hove to, and a boat sent out, but without effect: notwithstanding every exertion, particularly of Lieut. Ball, of the Supply, he perished: some on the fore-castle saw the vessel go over him, which of course rendered his fate inevitable. One Catherine Pryor, a convict, was delivered of a son, during this part of the voyage.

It is now proper to give the curious reader the longitudes and latitudes of those islands that were passed, as nearly and correctly as possible.

The Salvages, according to observation, were,
In latitude 30 deg. 10 min. north.

In longitude 15 deg. 9 min. west.
The island of Teneriffe appeared on the road
In latitude 28 deg. 29 min. 5 sec. north.
In longitude 16 deg. 18 min. west.

Island of Sal,
In latitude 16 deg. 38 min. north.
In longitude 22 deg. 5 min. west.

Island of Bonavista, north end,
In latitude 16 deg. 13 min. north.
In longitude 22 deg. 51. min. west.

Ditto, south end;
In latitude 16 deg. north.
Variation of the compass 11 deg. 19 min. west.

Island of Mayo, of the Cape de Verde,
In latitude 15 deg. 10 min. north.
In longitude 23 deg. west.

Port Praya, a bay on the island of St. Jago,
In latitude 14 deg. 54 min. north.
In longitude 23 deg. 37 min. west.

The Equator, when crossed, was,
In longitude 26 deg. 10 min. west.
Variation 5 deg.

The harbour of Rio de Janeiro
In latitude 22 deg. 54 min. south.
In longitude 43 deg. 19 south.

Cape of Good Hope, in Table Bay,
In latitude 33 deg. 55 min. south.
In longitude 18 deg. 24 min. 30 sec. east.
Variation of the compass 21 deg. 52 min. west.

CHAPTER II.

The Convoy proceed on their Voyage, under the direction of Capt. Hunter—Remarks on the Weather—Uncommon Birds—Luminous Figures on the Sea—Strange Animals—A melancholy Accident—Extraordinary gust of Wind—Consequent Accidents—Land seen—Sail made for the Bay—Anchorage—Sirius and Supply meet—Universal joy—Natives surprised—Captain Phillip, &c. examine the South-shore—Account of the Anchorage-place—Latitudes and Longitudes—Success of the Commodore's search—Broken Bay preferred to Botany Bay—The reason—The Artificers employed—Natives become familiar with the Lieutenant Governor—Their Behaviour—Kind of Weapons, &c.—Description of their Persons—Ornaments—Remarks on the Females—Interview between the Natives and Captain Hunter, &c.—Their Threats—Second Interview—Their Gaiety and Good-nature—Another Meeting—Consequent Remarks—Their surprise at the explosion of a Pistol—An Introduction to the Women by Captain Hunter's perseverance—The Men's unwillingness to expose them—Alarm for their Safety—Manner of protecting them—Women's Behaviour—Their mode of sheltering themselves—Use of Fires—Way of hunting, fishing, living, &c. &c.

AS soon as Capt. Phillip left the fleet, Captain Hunter steered to the southward, being of opinion that they had hitherto kept in too northerly a parallel to insure strong and lasting westerly winds. The weather still continued changeable; sometimes very heavy, and at intervals clear, but on the whole unfavourable: on account of the damp and cold, several female convicts on board the Prince of Wales were severely troubled with the scurvy; which afterwards broke out in the Charlotte, particularly among those who had been previously afflicted with the dysentery: this, however, was got under, by the care and attention of Surgeon White, who on this occasion gave large portions of the essence of malt, and some wine, which had been given by Lord Sydney and Mr. Nepean.

During this part of the passage, several whales appeared of an uncommon size; some birds of the albatross and petrel kind, supposed to have been a species of sea-hawks; also some seals, and other oceanic birds, with many of those called Mother Cary's chickens.

Whenever it was hazy weather, in order to prevent any separation between the heavy-sailing ships and the Sirius, the convoy kept as close as possible: the sea was covered over with luminous figures, supposed to have proceeded from that animal of a jelly-like nature called the Blubber, or from the spawn of fish.

January 6th, 1788, Capt. Hunter, intending to run in for land, they were deceived by one of the transports, (the Lady Penryhn) who having pushed a little a-head, made the signal for seeing land; which only proved to be a fog-bank. On the 7th, the Prince of Wales being the headmost, made the same signal, and at last it became general.

A considerable number of animals were now discovered, at first taken for seals, but upon stricter examination they appeared different, at least from those that may be seen on the coast of America and Newfoundland; these having long heads, which were tapered to the nose, and remarkable whiskers: they now and then raised themselves half out of the water, and as often leaped out entirely to look about them; in short, they were something of the sea-otter species.

In running in with the land, which was somewhat high, several small heaps of snow were to be seen, which was rather extraordinary for the time of year. This part of the coast was rough, craggy, and irregular: very few trees to be discovered. Some eminences, or pieces of land, supposed to be islands, were perceived eastward of the eastwardmost rock, that is called Mewstone. The wind at this period was so violent from the N. N. E. and N. that the vessels were under close-reefed main-top-sail and fore-sail; but there being much thunder, lightning and

and rain afterwards, the wind changed to the S. W. quarter, and the weather became clear. In steering eastward, along shore, they approached the westward-most point of a large bay called Storm-bay, also Swilly, eastward to which is a small rock called Eddystone. Advancing still eastward, there were several trees mere stumps to be seen, whitish and without leaves: there was also an appearance of small pieces of verdure about Storm-bay; and on the east point of land which forms this bay there was a large fire, the only indication that the place was inhabited, as none of the natives could be seen.

A melancholy accident happened on board the Fishburne; the boatwain, having too freely celebrated the new year, was rather intoxicated with the grog, and as the ship was labouring much, fell from the top-sail yard, by which he was most severely bruised: in consequence of the scurvy, with which this man was previously afflicted, a mortification ensued, and he died January the 8th. The loss of this man was very much lamented by the captain of the ship, who placed no small value upon his abilities, and consequently regretted there had been no surgeon in his ship, as he attributed his death to the want of timely assistance. On the next day Edward Thompson, a convict, died: this man was worn out with long confinement and grief; as he seemed very sorry for his past misconduct, and anxious to make atonement, there is every reason to think that if he had lived he would have been a valuable member to the new society.

January the 10th, an extraordinary gust of wind occasioned much confusion: the convoy having too much sail out, were obliged to let go their tacks and sheets; in consequence of which the Prince of Wales had her main-yard carried away in the flings; another lost her jibb, another had her three top-sails blown from the yards: the main-sail of the Sirius was split, and had not the men been remarkably active, the masts would have certainly gone over the side. Had this squall continued, the vessels must have suffered considerably: some delay consequently ensued, but when these accidents were repaired, they proceeded to reach the coast, taking advantage of every blast of wind.

The wind still inclined to the southward and westward, and the sea was very rough and unpleasant. Several birds at this time were seen; also a large whale, and many seals, which, though frequently fired at, never betrayed the least fear or concern, though the balls dropped near them; from this, it was evident, they were never before so attacked: not one during the firings was killed.

The strongest exertions were made to get to the westward, and on the 10th land was seen over Red Point: as it was impossible to get in that night, the convoy, by order of Captain Hunter, came within hail, and they stood off and on till four o'clock the next morning, when they made sail for the bay, and anchored at eight o'clock in water eight fathoms deep; the Supply and the three transports were now discovered: the former had arrived the 18th; and the Alexander, Friendship, and Scarborough the 19th; they had not therefore that advantage of the Sirius as was expected. It was now cause of universal joy in having thus reached the destined port without any material accident; the people were all as healthy as could be expected.

Some of the natives who were on shore seemed surprised at the approach of the vessels, they assembled together, and by pointing their spears seemed to threaten. In the evening the boats landed on the north side to provide water and grass, where an officer's guard was placed to prevent the men from wandering or behaving improperly with the natives.

When Captain Hunter had anchored, he waited upon Commodore Phillip in the Supply; they and several other officers accordingly landed, with a

view to examine the south shore, and fix on the most promising places for building: the natives followed the boat as they were rowing along the shore, but on her putting in, they ran away and absconded in the woods. However, some of the gentlemen had a short conversation with a few, but they appeared very shy and distrustful, though condescending and civil.

Though the place for anchorage here is very extensive, yet it is in such a manner exposed to easterly winds without any shelter, that it is exceedingly inconvenient; the water is four, five, six, seven, and eight fathoms deep. Where the vessels anchored was on a north shore of a sandy bay. Cape Banks E. S. E. Point Solander S. S. E. The entrance of the bay between these two lands W. S. W. The ground is clear and good. The spot of four fathoms is higher up the bay, and would be very convenient for a few ships; but as there is a flat of twelve feet, and that depth but very narrow, they would require to be properly lightened in order to get over it.

During the remainder of this voyage the latitudes and longitudes agreed perfectly with those stated by Captains Cook and Furneaux, viz.

South West Cape,

In latitude 43 deg. 37 min. south.
In longitude 146 deg. 7 min. east of Green-
[wich.

South Cape,

In latitude 43 deg. 42 min. south.
In longitude 146 deg. 56 min. east.

Tasmen's Hill,

In latitude 43 deg. 33 min. south.
In longitude 147 deg. 28 min. east.

Storm Bay,

In latitude 44 deg. 3 min. south.
In longitude 146 deg. east.

Swilly Island or Rock,

In latitude 43 deg. 55 min. south.
In longitude 147 deg. 5 min. east.

Adventure Bay,

In latitude 42 deg. 21 min. 20 sec. south.
In longitude 147 deg. 29 min. east.

According to the nicest observations were found,

Cape Howe,

In latitude 37 deg. 30 min. south.
In longitude 150 deg. east.

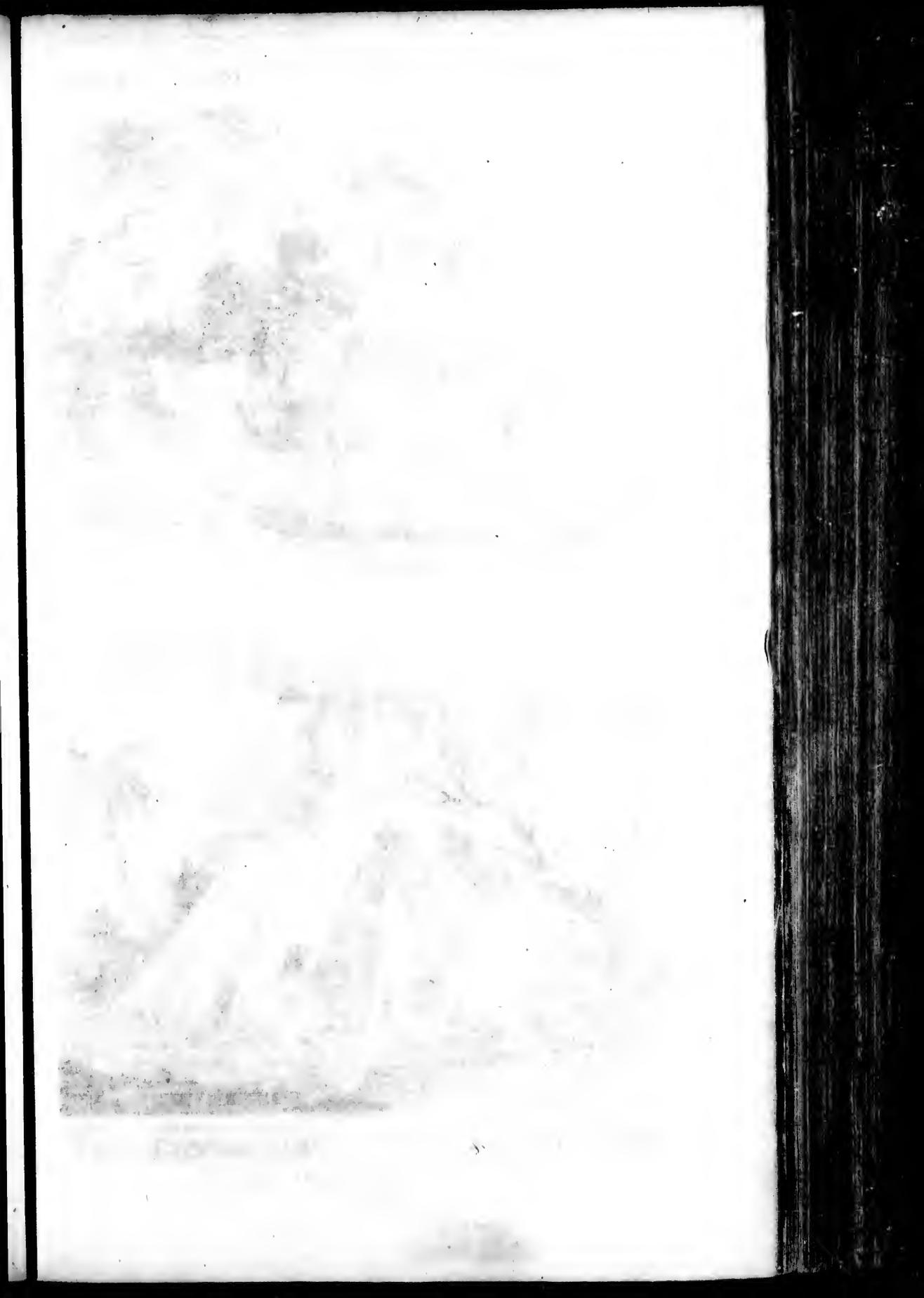
Red-Point,

(according to Captain Cook's determination)

In latitude 34 deg. 29 min. south.

Captains Phillip, Hunter, and their company, proceeded along the coast to the northward; for as they did not think Botany Bay, which at present required much improvement, an advantageous spot for an infant settlement, they were studious in seeking Broken Bay (as called by Captain Cook) with hopes of finding a more promising country and a better harbour. They spent two or three days in their search, and giving the preference to this place, it seeming far superior to any other round Botany Bay, the commodore was determined to make it the place of his residence, and thus resolved they returned to their vessels.

During Commodore Phillip's absence, the Lieutenant Governor called together all the artificers among the convicts, and others, and commanded them to clear the ground, dig saw-pits, mark the places, and in short perform every thing that was necessary in promoting their plan. The spot which had been fixed upon for the town, and which was undoubtedly the best to be found, was very poor and swampy, and indifferently supplied with water. As soon as the men began to work, the natives frequently, though cautiously, mixed with them; by degrees they became familiar, though still they retained their shyness: when they saw some of the men hauling in the seine, they were greatly astonished at the quantity of fish that was taken: joy was apparently mixed with their surprize; but as soon





NATIVES of BOTANY BAY FISHING.



From Drawings taken on the Spot & Engraved by Thornton.

CONSTRUCTION of the HUTS in NEW SOUTH WALES.

Published by Wm. Hoag, March 16 1789

as the fish were taken, they were deavoured to seize and prevent, which gave to each a part. After this they became convinced of its equity. After this they became though each of their weapon, sometimes a spear a rious manufactured lance and pointed with the ward off, or turned were terrified at the consequence thereof person in a red coat, tary dress.

The natives of Botany Bay by some as foolish and appeared quite the most inquisitive. The men were to five feet nine inches though small in the well made: they possessed the English dress, with little astonishment; they had the head, and the wonderful agility in the fly with the greatest force a strong young man than their lances are generally wear their heards, which and short; the women the men, but are in chiefly of a sooty color as a Mulatto. Their ing, as they are in general have broad noses, which their skin being of a filthy adheres to it: themselves, for when is either by accident or They have some notion thrust a piece of bone in consequence of which they also paint their bodies encircling stripes upon which appear at a distance have red and white stripes an intent, it is supposed pearance; some have eyes; several a horrid head; some narrow with a broad line down the belly, and down the white streaks upon a ghastly and frightful and white; the tom of red earth which they the latter from a fine their bodies, chiefly the performing which the The women in general the little finger of the is unaccountable) has men, young women with in girls about eight of the fingers have been ages; they are remarkable hair is strong, short, and no idea of keeping it natty. Men, women naked.

When Captain Hunter were taking a survey of the natives had their attempting to kill them in few angles, they appear natives extremely hostile on them, no doubt, as

as the fish were taken out of the water, they endeavoured to seize it: this the officer of the boat prevented, which seemingly displeased them; he gave to each a part: for some time they did not relish this fair proceeding; but being at last convinced of its equity, were at length reconciled. After this they became pacific and good-natured, though each of them always carried some sort of a weapon, sometimes a stick with a shell at the end, other times a spear and long dart; several had curious manufactured shields, made of the bark of trees, and pointed with the bones of fish: with these they warded off, or turned their own weapons. They were terrified at the explosion of the guns, and in consequence thereof shunned the soldiers, or any person in a red coat, or other appearance of a military dress.

The natives of Botany Bay have been described by some as foolish and void of curiosity, but they appeared quite the contrary, being both lively and inquisitive. The men are from five feet six inches to five feet nine inches high, exceedingly active, though small in their limbs; thin, straight, and well made: they paid extraordinary attention to the English dress, which created among them no little astonishment; they took the hat for a part of the head, and the cloaths for skins; they evince wonderful agility in throwing their weapons, which fly with the greatest rapidity. Captain Hunter saw a strong young man throw a lance full ninety yards; their lances are generally ten feet long. The men wear their beards, which like their hair is curly and short; the women are not so tall or so thin as the men, but are in general well made; they are chiefly of a foxy colour, some though are as light as a Mulatto. Their appearance is rather disgusting, as they are in general filthy and dirty; they have broad noses, wide mouths, and thick lips; their skin being of a greasy nature, every kind of filth adheres to it: they never think of washing themselves, for when they do go into the water it is either by accident or for the sake of provision. They have some notion of ornaments, as the men thrust a piece of bone or wood through their nose, in consequence of which their nostrils are widened: they also paint their bodies; the most valiant have encircling stripes upon their breasts and backs, which appear at a distance like cross-belts; many have red and white streaks all over their bodies, with an intent, it is supposed, to intimidate by their appearance; some have circles of white round their eyes; several a horizontal streak across their forehead; some narrow white streaks round the body, with a broad line down the middle of the back and belly, and down each arm, thigh, and leg; these white streaks upon a black skin appear exceedingly ghastly and frightful: the colours they use are red and white; the former is extracted from a kind of red earth which they have in great abundance, and the latter from a fine pipe-clay. The men scarify their bodies, chiefly their breasts and shoulders, in performing which they raise the skin considerably. The women in general want the two lower joints of the little finger of the left hand; this defect (which is unaccountable) has been discovered in old women, young women who have had no children, and in girls about eight or nine years of age; however the fingers have been perfect in females of all ages: they are remarkable for good teeth; their hair is strong, short, and curly, and as they have no idea of keeping it clean, is always matted and nasty. Men, women, and children, go entirely naked.

When Captain Hunter, Mr. Bradley, and others, were taking a survey of the harbour, a great number of the natives had assembled together, and on their attempting to land, in order to ascertain a few angles, they appeared by their signs and demeanours extremely hostile and outrageous, looking upon them, no doubt, as bold presumptuous invaders;

they collected additional forces from the woods, till at last their number was so increased, that the captain and lieutenant deemed it rather dangerous to attempt any acquaintance with them, particularly as they were inadequate in number, for there were no more with Captain Hunter than three officers and ten seamen, with only three muskets among them: however in a few days after Captain Hunter came to the same place better prepared for an interview; only a few of the natives at this time appeared, and that at some distance; it was supposed that their parties were absconding behind the woods, the captain endeavoured with signs expressive of good-nature and amability to court their friendship: having previously stationed two marine centinels on the Neck, in order to prevent a surprize. Some of the company being disposed for food, a fire was made in a very convenient spot of ground which projected; this roused the curiosity of the natives, and seven of them being at length won by the kindly invitations of Captain Hunter, &c. embarked in canoes and came over; however being still timid they stood at a distance: they laid by their lances, which encouraged Captain Hunter to approach them, and by holding up his hands to shew them he was unarmed, and offering them presents, they became less distrustful and shook hands. The mariners who were under arms by the boats intimidated them not a little, which Captain Hunter perceiving ordered them to ground them; this was sufficient encouragement; the natives appeared very gay and friendly, sat down among them, warmed themselves by the fire, ate and drank of their provisions, but they did not seem much to relish them.

Another time when Captain Hunter, Lieutenants Ball and King, Surgeon White, Mr. Daves, &c. went on shore, they met about thirty natives, who afterwards increased to about eighty, armed with lances and sticks, but who, after some mutual signs and friendly gestures, were quite tame and good-natured. Their leader, who appeared to be the most resolute, stuck the end of his shield in the sand, in order to shew them the use of it, though the company could not prevail upon him to throw his spear; whereupon Surgeon White fired a pistol at it, the ball went through it; the leader and his party were greatly alarmed at the explosion, and more surprised at seeing the hole which the ball had made in the shield; this seemed to increase their aversion to the English weapons. They became exceedingly noisy afterwards, though far from quarrelsome, were much delighted with the presents they received, but which in a short time they forgot, having left them carelessly on the beach. A number of females was now perceived at some distance; they were concealed in the woods, and were peeping at intervals from their concealments, but as it was totally against the will of the men that they should advance, who, as it appeared, were lords and masters over them, and yet like good-natured husbands, alarmed for their safety, they never once ventured to join the company. Captain Hunter, by signs, expressed a desire to be introduced to them, but the men would not agree; it was then signified to them that they wanted to make the women presents, which they very cunningly offered to take to them, still unwilling that the females should join them: however Captain Hunter, with a peremptory air, made them understand, that without they came themselves to receive them, they should not have any. A veteran now among the natives, who seemed the governor of the party, gave his permission that they should advance; the women immediately acquiesced with apparent joy and good-humour; but no sooner was this permission granted, than about twenty other strange men attended them from the wood, armed with lances and shields, and painted according to the custom of their warriors: these came, as it was imagined, to defend the women from any injury or insult: having drawn themselves up in a line on the beach, and that in a manner

which indeed bespoke much discipline and regularity: as a token of peace, if not provoked, each man held up a green bough in his hand. There were likewise two very stout armed men placed as centinels upon the rock, who, as they never quitted their station till the interview was over, had orders; no doubt, to be particularly vigilant. The women expressed much satisfaction at this meeting, though their timidity at intervals was evident, for even when they laughed they trembled, as apprehensive of some danger; they were extremely delighted with their presents, and while Captain Hunter and his friends were decorating them out with rags, beads, &c. they laughed most immoderately: the women were in general young, being from eighteen to twenty-two or thereabouts.

At other times the natives have been so good-natured and familiar as to dance and sing among the English, and to imitate their language and manners, while the English were imitating theirs: in short, they appeared so docile, gentle, and pacific, that little doubt could be entertained of being able in due time to conciliate their friendship and confidence.

These people have no idea of erecting or building any kind of place to shelter themselves from rain and cold: they have no fixed habitation, but take their rest wherever they can, and whenever they please. In times of rain and cold, they seek shelter in the hollow rocks upon the sea shore, the cavities of which are crumbly and soft, especially such (and which on this occasion are the most desirable) that are not exposed to the severity of the weather: they generally make a fire in them before they lie down, which communicates such an immense heat, that the rock contains the warmth for a considerable time; herein they sleep together.

Sometimes may be seen in the woods, when the country is not very rocky, or the rocks not inviting, a kind of habitation formed of the bark of trees, which is so extensive as to contain a whole family: this is generally their defence in winter, and as they lie very close, they keep one another warm: but these hollow places in the trees were originally designed for hunting kangaroos, who always take refuge in them; and as the natives in pursuit make a fire at the bottom of the tree, while others climb to the top with sticks ready for an attack, the animal, to avoid suffocation, runs out and generally becomes a prey: in this manner the natives employ themselves and get their food: they sometimes make such large fires that the conflagration extends several miles; this occasions a general disturbance among the kangaroos, and accordingly several of them fall victims: but there is another reason assigned for their making these fires. The underwood or brush grows so rapidly in this country, that when the natives feel themselves incommoded by such an inconvenience (for as they are naked the underwood must certainly be very disagreeable), this remedy is occasionally adopted to clear those places which they most frequent. The trees in the woods have been discovered entirely black, being so scorched with these fires: they likewise account for those great smokes, which on the voyage have been seen at a distance.

The natives have frequently altercations among themselves, and in all their quarrels with one another, they put themselves under the direction of a commander, whom they choose in their own way; notwithstanding which they associate in tribes of many families together, although they disperse when in search of food, but shortly assemble when there is any danger.

Their methods of kindling fire are doubtful. Some authors have declared that they produce fire with great facility, while others have observed that it was very laborious to them. No discovery could at present be made to ascertain which account is more correct, but it is the general opinion that they keep fire constantly burning.

They chiefly subsist on what the sea affords, and fish with spears or fish-gigs, which are somewhat longer than their war-lances. The women also are employed with lines and hooks; the former are manufactured from the bark of different trees, which are of a tough, stringy nature; the latter from the talons of hawks, &c. or the inside of different shells. The women undergo great dangers in the course of this employment, as they frequently venture in old shattered boats with two or three children with them, and enter the most terrific parts of the sea: if the mother has an infant it lies across her lap, and according to the manner she sits, it is there perfectly secure. The men very often lie across the canoes with their faces in the water, as they have thus a better view of the fish, and having their fish-gigs prepared, are ready to strike whenever they see any, seldom or ever missing their aim; they also dive for shell-fish.

They always broil their food, and some of each party are appointed for that employment: as soon as these persons make ready a fire for cooking, they attend those who are fishing; the divers who remain some time under water, throw what they catch upon the shore, which these persons take away in order to dress. They have no idea of boiling fish, as appears from one of the natives having put his hand into a pot of boiling water, which one of the sailors had put on the fire with fish in it, to take it out, and having scalded his hand, he was as much astonished as he was hurt.

They have no notion of religion, nor do the sun, moon, or stars attract their attention; they burn their dead, as has been testified by Captain Hunter, who when employed on the survey of a distant branch of Port Jackson, being informed by some of the boat's crew, that they perceived something on a rising ground which resembled a new-made grave, had it immediately opened, and discovered a considerable quantity of white ashes, with a piece of a skull and jaw-bone, which had not been entirely consumed by the fire. This grave was no more than about six inches under ground; the earth which covered it was raised to an equal height; the captain had the ashes, &c. restored to their place.

The natives are not to be frequently seen in March and April, nor could it be ascertained where they retire. It was supposed that from Port Jackson they proceeded farther to the north, following the sun for the sake of a warmer climate: the land affords but a scanty subsistence, and therefore the sea-coast is the only part of the country which is most inhabited; the sea is their principal resource for support. They sometimes feed upon a fruit about the size of a cherry, yellow when half ripe, and black when full grown. The tree which produces it, is rather short, but full and bushy at the top; it tastes something like a fig. They also roast and chew the fern-root, and have frequently been seen accompanied by dogs of the wolf-kind, but of a reddish colour, which appeared as tame and good-natured to their masters as ours.

What tho' unciviliz'd, these natives stray,

As full of glee to-morrow as to-day!

For all they do, for all they know or get,

For all they have, to nature they're in debt!

If then they wear the aspect of a foe,

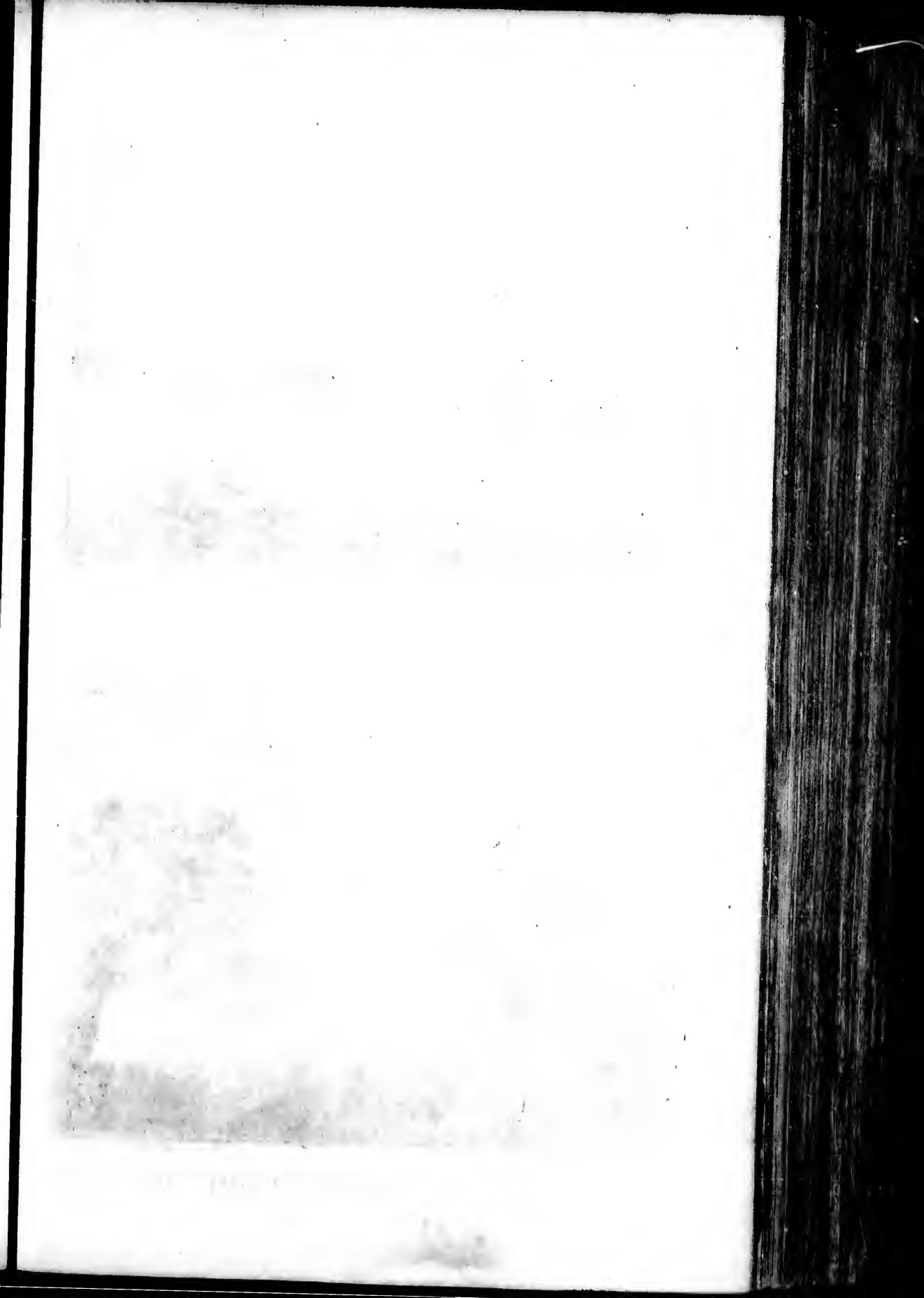
Why be amaz'd, for can they better know?

The wonder is, when they as friends appear,

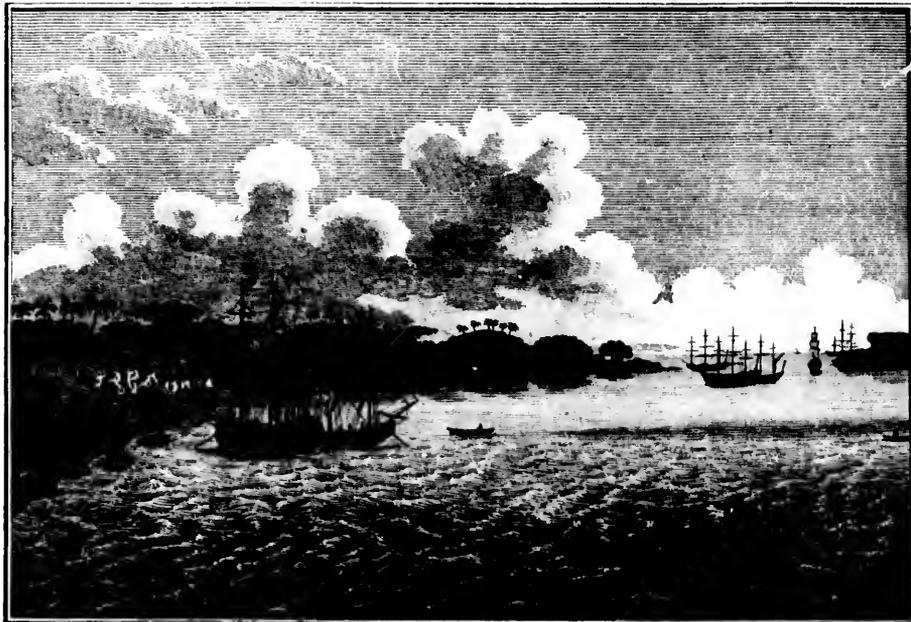
And in such friendships rival Christians here!

Having thus far deviated, in order to give a perfect and circumstantial account of the inhabitants, it is now proper to take a retrospect of the proposals and plan of the new settlement, the progress and success of which shall be the subject of the next chapter.

CHAP.



Engraved for **PORTLOCK'S** *Sea* COLLECTION of VOYAGES & TRAVELS



Engraved from a Drawing made on the Spot.

View of **BOTANY BAY, in NEW SOUTH WALES.**



Engraved from a Drawing made on the Spot.

View of **PORT JACKSON, NEW SOUTH WALES.**

Published by Alex^r Hoag March 1 1794

Port Jackson deemed
 Phillip sails for Port
 —Some of their Off
 —Description of P
 Reason why Cap: aim
 building—Hospital
 Weather—Consequ
 Government—Roya
 —Governor's Spee
 Recommends Marri
 to Botany Bay—In
 the Buildings—Mr
 Design of this miss
 An Execution—Pav

AS Captain Phillip
 Port Jackson,
 place for forming t
 resolved to remove t
 grafs were provided
 preparations, two la
 were seen exerting t
 but their endeavours
 too strong against th
 of the weather, the 1

January the 25th,
 number of seamen, w
 to sail for Port Jacks
 to the care of Capt.
 permitted was to fol
 and victuallers. T
 were seen in the offi
 upon which Capt. H
 officer to assist them
 time after, the win
 found safe anchorage.
 and the Bouffale, wh
 year 1786, under th
 Peyrouse and De L'A
 French commodore's
 Artois, that was tak
 upon Captain Hunter
 had unfortunately lo
 gator's Isles, Captai
 command, and ten
 crews, who were mu
 dictive as they were
 they were induced to
 to put in, and build
 ready in frames.

before that unfortun
 familiar; but some
 place between the na
 side the insult origi
 quarrel ensued, and
 lected keeping the bo
 were so exposed to t
 so suddenly attacked,
 inevitably sacrificed,
 taken up those who h
 themselves to their s
 massacre, several of
 wounded: the boats
 been made with stor
 extraordinary force
 failed in June, 1785,
 the isle of Santa Cath
 they had gone into th
 mity of South Ameri
 by the coasts of Chili
 they proceeded to I
 Cook's River, Kamf
 tor's Isles, Sandwich,
 could not land at No
 surf, though they had
 accident above-menti
 runately perished in a

CHAPTER III.

Port Jackson deemed the most eligible place for the new settlement—Two large French ships seen in distress—Commodore Phillip sails for Port Jackson—The French ships seen again—Captain Hunter sends to their relief—An Account of them—Some of their Officers murdered by the Natives of Masuna—Other Misfortunes—Sirius anchored at Port Jackson—Description of PORT JACKSON, and SIDNEY COVE Harbours—Convenience of Sidney Cove Harbour—Reason why Captain Cook preferred Botany Bay—English colours displayed upon their general meeting—Preparations for building—Hospital Tents erected—The urgent occasion for them—Vegetables sown, but withered—Disagreeable Weather—Consequences of Thunder and Lightning—Storehouses began—Some Convicts missed—Celebration of the New Government—Royal Commission read—Act of Parliament—Patents under the Great Seal—Conclusion of the Ceremony—Governor's Speech to the Convicts—His Encouragement to Industry, Morality, &c.—His Menaces against Vice—Recommends Marriage—Acclamations—Happy Effects of the Speech—The Governor celebrates the day—A party go to Botany Bay—Intelligence of the Convicts who were missed—First sitting of the Criminal Court—Slow progress of the Buildings—Mr. King's appointment—He and a small detachment are sent to Norfolk Island, in the Supply—Design of this mission—Instructions to the Superintendent previous to his departure—Trials at the Criminal Court—An Execution—Pardons on certain Conditions, &c.

AS Captain Phillip had given the preference to Port Jackson, deeming it the most eligible place for forming the intended settlement, he was resolved to remove there, when sufficient water and grass were provided for the live stock. During these preparations, two large ships with French colours were seen exerting their utmost to get into the bay; but their endeavours were fruitless, the wind being too strong against them: on account of the haziness of the weather, the fleet lost sight of them.

January the 25th, the commodore, with a chosen number of seamen, went on board the Supply tender, to sail for Port Jackson. The convoy was again left to the care of Capt. Hunter, who when the weather permitted was to follow him with all the transports and victualers. The next day the French ships were seen in the offing, standing in for the bay: upon which Capt. Hunter sent a boat out with an officer to assist them in coming in; and some short time after, the wind becoming favourable, they found safe anchorage. These ships were the *Atrolabe* and the *Bouffale*, which sailed from France in the year 1786, under the command of Messieurs de la Peyrouse and De L'Angle. Captain Clonnard, the French commodore's captain, who commanded the *Artois*, that was taken by the *Bienfaisant*, waited upon Captain Hunter, and informed him that they had unfortunately lost at Masuna, one of the Navigator's Isles, Captain De L'Angle, the second in command, and ten other officers, with two boats' crews, who were murdered by the natives, as vindictive as they were numerous. On this account they were induced to make for this port, with hopes to put in, and build some boats, which they had already in frames. The murderers, it seems, had, before that unfortunate day, been very friendly and familiar; but some misunderstanding having taken place between the natives and seamen, (from which side the insult originated is unknown) a dreadful quarrel ensued, and the sailors having before neglected keeping the boats afloat, the officers and crew were so exposed to the ferocity of these people, and so suddenly attacked, that they must all have been inevitably sacrificed, had not a small boat at hand taken up those who had quitted the shore and trusted themselves to their swimming. During this terrible massacre, several of the natives fell, and several were wounded: the boats were lost. The assaults had been made with stones, which were thrown with extraordinary force and aim. These vessels had sailed in June, 1785, from France. After touching the isle of Santa Catharina, on the coast of Brazil, they had gone into the Pacific Ocean, by the extremity of South America; where they had run along by the coasts of Chili and California. From thence they proceeded to Easter Island, Nootka Sound, Cook's River, Kamtschatka, Mumilla, the Navigator's Isles, Sandwich, and the Friendly Islands. They could not land at Norfolk Island on account of the surf, though they had anchored there. Besides the accident above-mentioned, two boats' crews unfortunately perished in a surf on the north-west coast of

America: none of their people had been lost by sickness. Monsieur Clonnard, on their first setting out, was the commodore's first lieutenant; but, in consequence of their loss, he was promoted.

The *Sirius* having worked out of the bay with the convoy, at ten o'clock weighed, and anchored in the evening in Port Jackson. Some of the vessels had been a little damaged, in running foul of each other in the working out: they were however soon assembled in Sidney Cove, so called by the governor.

Captain Cook had not visited Port Jackson; he only saw it from the coast, about the distance of two or three miles: there is no doubt, if he had explored the place, but he would have found it a harbour superior to any ever yet discovered; it has soundings sufficient for the largest ships, and space enough to accommodate with safety any number: it gradually extends into a capacious, beautiful basin, running chiefly in a western direction, about thirteen miles into the country, containing upwards of a hundred small coves, formed by narrow necks of land, which project in such a manner as to shelter from all winds. Sidney Cove, which lies on the south side of the harbour, between five and six miles from the entrance, being the smallest and the most convenient, (as vessels, let them be ever so loaded, could easily get into it, and heave out close to the shore) was therefore reckoned the best for building the town in: the soil about the rocks is good; in other parts of various qualities: between Botany Bay and Sidney Cove it is sandy, and full of swamps.

It is not to be wondered at, why Botany Bay should have been held in a more advantageous light by Captain Cook than by Captain Phillip: the former came with a small vessel, and only required temporary shelter and refreshment for a few; but the latter had numbers to provide for, who also required a permanent situation. He was therefore obliged to seek a place where vessels of magnitude could lie in security, and with ease approach the shore: for this reason Port Jackson was found, upon examination, preferable. Captain Cook was struck with the appearance of Botany Bay, which is indeed picturesque and beautiful, but there was something more essential to be sought at this time than outward show, a place fit for the immediate reception of exiled multitudes, who after they had established a residence in the most convenient spot, might then extend their labours, and both improve and fertilize every adjacent island.

The Supply had arrived the day before the *Sirius*, when the commodore, and every person that could be spared, were busily employed in clearing the ground for the encampment. Upon their general meeting, the English colours were displayed; when Governor Phillip, several officers and private men, drank his Majesty's health, and success to the government, at the foot of the flag-staff.

On the 27th, every man was put to his employment; there was no loss of time. Captain Phillip marked the places for the buildings, storehouses, &c. while proper overseers were appointed to keep the convicts

convicts from straggling, and to take such into custody as were wilfully retarding the business. Indeed, the necessary operations were more laborious than were at first imagined: it was as arduous a task to remove the trees, on account of their magnitude, as it was to fell them. The weather was indeed very favourable, but inclined to be warm. There had been a temporary habitation already formed in framework, with other materials, for the governor, brought from England: these were immediately landed, and put together as expeditiously as possible. A convenient place was soon formed for the cattle, which were accordingly landed: hospital-tents were likewise erected, and the necessity of them too soon discovered; for though the passage had been attended with little sickness, and few deaths, yet after landing the scurvy and dysentery raged with so much virulence, that in many instances the complaints proved fatal: what still added to the affliction of the patients was, that on account of the inconveniences of the place little assistance could be given them. A piece of ground had been enclosed, for the purpose of raising vegetables; but this not being a proper season for sowing, they withered a little after they appeared.

Very disagreeable weather began with the month of February: the rain was most remarkably heavy, and the thunder and lightning tremendous. On the 2d of the month some pigs and sheep were killed by the lightning under a tree, where a place for their shelter had been erected, and the tree itself rent to pieces. A centinel, whose post was near another tree, adjoining the camp, was very much hurt by a flash of lightning.

On the 5th they began to erect storehouses. Some of the convicts were missed this morning: it was immediately suspected that they returned to Botany Bay, in hopes of being taken on board the French ships, these vessels being in great want of hands, on account of the losses they sustained.

February 7th; this was the memorable day for establishing the new government: all possible solemnity was therefore observed. A space had been cleared, and every one assembled to hear the governor's commission for establishing a criminal court of judicature, admiralty-court, &c. &c. publicly read: for this purpose the military were drawn up, and under arms; the convicts placed apart by themselves, while those appointed for principal officers stood near the person of the governor. Mr. D. Collins, the judge-advocate, then read the royal commission, setting forth "that by this Arthur Phillip, Esq; was constituted and appointed captain-general and governor in chief in and over the territory called New South Wales, extending from the northern cape, or extremity of the coast called Cape York, in the latitude of 10 deg. 37 min. south, to the southern extremity of the said territory of New South Wales, or South Cape, in the latitude of 43 deg. 39 min. south, and of all the country inland to the westward as far as the 135th deg. of east longitude, reckoning from the meridian of Greenwich, including all the islands adjacent in the Pacific Ocean, within the latitudes aforesaid of 10 deg. 37 min. south, and 43 deg. 39 min. south; and of all towns, garrisons, castles, forts, and all other fortifications or other military works, which may be hereafter erected upon the said territory, or any of the said islands." The act of parliament was next read for establishing the courts of judicature: also the patents under the great seal, authorising proper persons to assemble and hold said courts whenever there was occasion. The ceremony concluded with three volleys, by the troops under arms. Upon which Governor Phillip advancing, complimented the soldiers for their fidelity and good conduct, and then turning to the convicts, addressed them in words to the following tendency:

"Let serious reflection, I request, now point out the happy advantages of your present situation. Consider, that the greater part of you have already

"forfeited your lives to the justice of your country; but, through the great lenity of its laws, you are now so situated, that by industry and good behaviour you may here regain those advantages and estimation in society, of which you have been deprived yourselves in your former habitation? Now you have not only every encouragement to atone for your past misconduct, but are happily removed from every temptation that may provoke to guilt. In this infant settlement, there is little that one man can plunder another of; and if any person should be hardened, or presumptuous, as to be guilty of dishonest attempts, the detection must be as sudden as infallible, in so small a society! It is out of my power to pronounce the least sign of mercy, to those who may be so vilely vicious. I cannot upon any account, under these circumstances, behave in the smallest degree favourable, to such who should presume to offend against the peace and good order of the settlement. All that mercy can do, you have already experienced; and certainly no good can be expected from any, whom neither past warnings, nor the peculiarities of their present situation, can restrain from vice! I must therefore assure such offenders, that the rigour of the law shall unobscuredly be put in force; while every encouragement shall be given to all those whose behaviour and conduct promise reformation, and every man be rewarded according to his desert! As there is no crime which promotes a general profligacy of manners so much as an indiscriminate and illegal intercourse between the sexes, each therefore shall always meet with the utmost severity; and I request that, to avoid a vice which is every way injurious to society, you will, whenever opportunities offer, be ready and willing to enter into the matrimonial state: marriage is the proper fore-runner of domestic happiness and tranquility. Believe me, that I shall be ever proud and eager to countenance and assist all those who manifest their willingness to conform to the laws of morality and religion. Honestly, obedience, and industry, will no doubt render your situations comfortable and tranquil; whereas a contrary line of conduct must subject you to ignominy, disgrace, and punishment! It shall always be my unremitting care and assiduity to promote, as much as possible, the happiness of all those who are under this government, and to render the settlement in New South Wales both advantageous and honourable."

The governor's address was heard with profound attention; and, when he concluded, the acclamations were general! The speech had its desired effect, for no less than fourteen marriages took place among the convicts, in the course of the succeeding nine days. Governor Phillip now went to review the troops on the ground, previously cleared for a parade: he afterwards gave a dinner to the officers, in celebration of the first day of his government.

The next day several of the gentlemen of the garrison made a party to Botany Bay by land, to visit the French officers. They were received with every mark of hospitality and politeness. The convicts who were missed at Port Jackson had been (as it was now discovered) at Botany Bay; they were in hopes of getting away in the French ships; they offered themselves upon any terms, but their services were rejected; they were consequently obliged to return, and were almost starved to death, having delayed as long as possible to avoid the punishment they deserved. A man, and a woman named Anne Smith, were never heard of. The French commodore had given his honour that he would not admit any of them on board his vessels.

This day the criminal court sat for the first time, consisting of the judge-advocate and six officers of his Majesty's forces by land or sea. There were several convicts tried for felony; some were acquitted, and some found guilty, who were punished accordingly.

February

February 12th, the people were of temporary shelters. inadequate to the could be hired from of the convicts were part of whom were complete either the huts for the officers, verner Phillip was temporary house of full proof against fire of some of the battalion prevented nor before) the com Upon which the li advocate, were sworn office of superintendent folk Island, and the governor Phillip appointed second lieutenant of one whom the comm

February 14th, Lieutenant, consisting mate) Mr. Jameston, Sirius) six marines, a victs, with two men and dressing of his, settle on a small island Zealand, which had by Capt. Cook (who of it) Norfolk Island, of that title. They provisions of every tools for cutting down chief design of this of this settlement wended by a perusal delivered to the superior previous to his departure:

"Instructions for the perintendent and of Norfolk Island.

"With these instructions, commission, appointed to command the settlement of Norfolk Island, and to observe from time to time the Governor in Chief the territory of New South Wales, or from my absence.

"You are therefore armed tender Supply orders to receive your stores and provisions intended settlement of Norfolk Island you are to see the execution of the trust committed to you in the said settlement."

"After having taken care of securing yourself, and the preservation of the settlement, you are to plant flax plant, which is a necessary cultivation of cotton, and the seeds of which you are to regard as the treasure of which you are to be careful."

"That I may know you are to regard it as necessary to your discretion that is raised as to this you are to do

No. 2.

February 12th, very heavy rains began to fall; the people were of course anxious to erect their temporary helters. The number of artificers being inadequate to the work, as only sixteen carpenters could be hired from all the ships, and but twelve of the convicts were of that profession, (the greater part of whom were indisposed) it was impossible to complete either the barracks for the men, or the huts for the officers, agreeable to their wishes. Governor Phillip was still obliged to remain in his temporary house of canvas, which was by no means full proof against rain and wind. It being the desire of some of the officers, (whose presence with the battalion prevented their attendance on the governor before) the commissions were read a second time. Upon which the lieutenant-governor, and judge-advocate, were sworn justices of the peace: to the office of superintendent and commandant of Norfolk Island, and the settlement to be made upon it, governor Phillip appointed Philip Gidley King, Esq; second lieutenant of his Majesty's ship Sirius, and one whom the commodore very much esteemed.

February 14th, Lieut. King, and only a small detachment, consisting of Mr. Cunningham, (master's mate) Mr. Jamelson, (surgeon's first mate of the Sirius) six marines, and a few male and female convicts, with two men who understood the cultivation and dressing of flax, were sent out in the Supply to settle on a small island to the N. W. of the New Zealand, which had no inhabitants, and was called by Capt. Cook (who first discovered and approved of it) Norfolk Island, in honour to the noble family of that title. They were furnished with stores and provisions of every kind for six months, also with tools for cutting down the timber, which was the chief design of this mission: however the nature of this settlement will be much better comprehended by a perusal of the instructions which were delivered to the superintendent by the governor, previous to his departure, and which are as follows:

"Instructions for PHILIP GIDLEY KING, Esq; Superintendent and Commandant of the Settlement of NORFOLK ISLAND.

"With these instructions you will receive my commission, appointing you to superintend and command the settlement to be formed in Norfolk Island, and to obey all such orders as you shall from time to time receive from me, his Majesty's Governor in Chief, and Captain General of the territory of New South Wales and its dependencies, or from the Lieutenant-Governor in my absence.

"You are therefore to proceed in his Majesty's armed tender Supply, whose commander has my orders to receive you, with the men and women, stores and provisions necessary for forming the intended settlement; and on your landing on Norfolk Island you are to take upon you the execution of the trust reposed in you, causing my commission, appointing you superintendent over the said settlement, to be publicly read.

"After having taken the necessary measures for securing yourself and people, and for the preservation of the stores and provisions, you are immediately to proceed to the cultivation of the flax plant, which you will find growing spontaneously on the island: as likewise to the cultivation of cotton, corn, and other plants, with the seeds of which you are furnished, and which you are to regard as public stock, and of the increase of which you are to send me an account, that I may know what quantity may be drawn from the island for public use, or what supplies it may be necessary to send hereafter. It is left to your discretion to use such part of the corn that is raised as may be found necessary; but this you are to do with the greatest economy;

No. 2.

3

"and as the corn, flax, cotton, and other grains are the property of the Crown, and as such are to be accounted for, you are to keep an exact account of the increase, and you will in future receive directions for the disposal thereof.

"You are to inform yourself of the nature of the soil, what proportion of land you find proper for the cultivation of corn, flax, and cotton, as likewise what quantity of cattle may be bred on the island, and the number of people you judge necessary for the above purpose. You will likewise observe what are the prevailing winds in the different seasons of the year, the best anchorage according to the season, the rise and fall of the tides, likewise when the dry and rainy seasons begin and end.

"You will be furnished with a four-oared boat, and you are not on any consideration to build, or to permit the building of any vessel or boat whatever that is decked; or of any boat or vessel that is not decked, whose length of keel exceeds twenty feet: and if by any accident any vessel or boat that exceeds twenty feet keel should be driven on the island, you are immediately to cause such boat or vessel to be scuttled, or otherwise rendered unseaworthy, letting her remain in that situation until you receive further directions from me.

"You will be furnished with six months provisions, within which time you will receive an additional supply, but as you will be able to procure fish and vegetables, you are to endeavour to make the provisions you receive serve as long as possible.

"The convicts being the servants of the Crown, till the time for which they are sentenced is expired, their labour is to be for the public; and you are to take particular notice of their general good or bad behaviour, that they may hereafter be employed or rewarded according to their different merits.

"You are to cause the Prayers of the Church of England to be read with all due solemnity every Sunday, and you are to enforce a due observance of religion and good order, transmitting to me, as often as opportunity offers, a full account of your particular situation and transactions.

"You are not to permit any intercourse or trade with any ships or vessels that may stop at the island, whether English or of any other nation, unless such ships or vessels should be in distress, in which case you are to afford them such assistance as may be in your power.

"Given under my hand, at Head Quarters in Port Jackson, New South Wales, this 12th day of February, 1788.

(Signed)

"ARTHUR PHILLIP."

February 27, 28, and 29. These days were chiefly taken up with trials at the criminal court. The governor found with much regret, though with little surprise, that it was particularly essential to adhere to justice, and enforce the penal laws, for the preservation of the community committed to his care. Thomas Barrett, Henry Lovel, and Joseph Hall were indicted for feloniously and fraudulently taking away from the public store, beef and peas, the property of the crown: they were found guilty upon the clearest evidence, and having received sentence of death, were taken to the place of execution about six o'clock the same evening: the Rev. Mr. Johnson attended, to whom Barrett confessed his guilt, and acknowledged that he long ago deserved the ignominious death which he was now about to suffer: he was launched into eternity, but Lovel and Hall were respited until six o'clock the next evening, at which time they were in like manner

manner brought to the fatal tree, where the governor sent them by the judge-advocate their pardon, on condition that they should be banished to some desert island. Daniel Gordon and John Williams, both blacks, were found guilty of stealing wine, the property of Mr. Clarke; the Court recommended Williams on account of his ignorance and youth to mercy, accordingly he received the governor's pardon: Gordon had his sentence of death changed to banishment, when he accompanied Lovel and Hall to the gallows. John Freeman, a convict, was found guilty of stealing

seven pounds of flour from another convict: when according to his sentence he was at the tree, with the rope about his neck, he was offered a reprieve on condition that he would become hangman, and perform all the necessary duties of common executioner during his stay in the country. It was some time before he could be prevailed upon to accept this pardon; at last he consented, but with extreme reluctance. His accomplice William Sherman was sentenced to be whipped, and received three hundred lashes.

CHAPTER IV.

Weather in March—The Governor explores Broken Bay—Some Account thereof—Meetings with the Natives—One of the Females falls in love with the Governor's great coat—Her cheerfulness—Account of an Old Man and a Youth—Their Civility—The Old Man's theft—Governor's displeasure—The Native's valour—Account of the Timber—Departure of the French Ships—Death of Father Le Receveur—Inscription over his Grave—Lieutenant Ball arrived from Norfolk Island—Lord Howe's Island—Remarkable Turtle—Description of Norfolk Island—Salubrity of the Climate—Three Transports discharged—The Governor's first Excursion in April to explore the Country—His second—Success thereof—Curfory Remarks.

THE month of March introduced very disagreeable weather, which continued variable throughout; there were frequently strong gales from the southward and south-east, moist and hazy weather with a very high sea; both mornings and evenings inclined to be cold; the thermometer from 60 deg. to 75 deg. On the 2nd instant the governor went with a long-boat and cutter to explore the broken land, called by Captain Cook Broken Bay, about eight miles to the northward of Port Jackson, and remarkable for its extent.

The natives being very numerous here, though friendly-inclined, the governor deemed it advisable the first night to repose in the boats which lay within a rocky point in the north-west part of the bay. The next morning they passed a bar, which had only water for small vessels, and entered a very capacious branch, from which the ebb-tide flowed with such vehemence, that the boats could not possibly resist the stream. In this place the water was remarkable for depth. Not having leisure to seek a channel for the boats among banks of sand and mud, this place of course was not so sufficiently examined as to admit of a minute description: the land in the upper part of this branch was swampy and low, it was the resort of several birds, particularly one of an uncommon kind, called the hooded gull. From the north-west branch, they proceeded to the south-west, having crossed the bay; the entrance thereof is bold, and affords good shelter for shipping: the soundings are seven fathoms, which increased upon their proceeding, so that there is plenty of water for heavy vessels. There were large trees on the tops of the mountains: the land was higher than that at Port Jackson; equally covered with timber, but more rocky: there is excellent water near the southern entrance into the bay, to which the commodore accordingly gave the name of Pitt Water. Continual rains prevented a stricter search. During this excursion they had several meetings with the natives. One of the females fell in love with the governor's great coat, and practised every artful means to induce him to give it to her; she danced, played, wept, and immediately after laughed. Being however appeased, she became exceedingly cheerful and loquacious; frequently joined their party, and sung for them in a manner not unpleasing. The male natives were very friendly; and constantly assisted in lighting the fires.

On account of the heavy squalls of wind and incessant rains, there was great difficulty in getting round the headland which separates the branches,

on visiting the southern branch of Broken Bay. An ineffectual attempt was made to land, there not being water sufficient for the boat: on endeavouring to approach the rocks, two natives, an old man and a youth, who were standing thereon, perceiving how anxiously the English were labouring to get under land, pointed out with much solicitude the deepest water: they afterwards brought them fire, and were desirous to serve them. The old man conducted two of the officers to a distant cave, but they did not venture to go in, notwithstanding all the intreaties and persuasions which the old man expressed by signs; this was afterwards regretted, as they found next day that the cave was large enough to contain their party, and would have been a comfortable shelter from the rain; this friendly old native was rewarded with presents: in a day or two after this old man, his son, and other natives came to dance and sing. His excellency gave them presents as usual; but in the evening a spade was missed, and the governor having found it in the possession of this old man, thought proper to show some marks of his displeasure on account of the theft; accordingly, pointing to the spade, he gave him a few trifling blows, and pushed him away with indignation; the offender immediately seized a spear, and advancing towards the governor, threatened revenge; but finding his menaces disregarded, he threw it down and departed: at this time there were several officers and men with the governor, so that the bravery of this aged native was remarkable. He appeared with the rest of the natives the next day, but in order to convince him of his error, he was less noticed than his companions.

March 9th. Having now explored the country as much as the weather would permit, Governor Phillip returned from Broken Bay to Port Jackson. It was his intention to return by land for the sake of seeking a part of the country which was free from timber, but the constant rain rendered his design at present impracticable.

The chief employments now going on were erecting store-houses and huts of cabbage-trees for the men; these buildings were very much retarded for the want of good timber, for though all the trees were as remarkable for their circumference as their size, yet they are so crooked, so rotten and broken, that very few could be found of any service; indeed it appeared fit for nothing else than fire-wood, for which it was excellent, as it kindled instantaneously. The appearance of these trees is very deceitful, as they might be supposed fit for

any use whatever, not a piece thereof ever so well dried, a heavy nature, with water instantly penetrating natural weight, it is immediately on immersion is deficient in timber which is most excellent. Unfortunately no kind of unite it. All the timber extracted from shells residence of the governor towards the east.

March 10th. The tany Bay. Count two long-boats, are employed as the English intercourse between towards the north, their voyage. During Father Le Receveur come out as a native wounds which he received on his first encounter at the North of his untimely death, a common head loose earth which nailed against a tree, inscribing:

His Majesty's
E. F. F. M.
Physician

Duce
Ob.

As the painting of away by the rain, on inscription was, with a piece of copper, at the governor's command was to substitute a new day.

March 19th. The Supply tender from on the 29th of the difficulty and danger the coast before he could possibly land the fold was the violence the shore, which at this passage was discovered. 31 deg. 36 min. min. east, which was Lieutenant Ball; its circumference, and very have stopped at this as difficult as at North to Port Jackson he found anchorage was coral rock: the upon a sandy beach; not weighing less than him, and they were people in the hospital.

Norfolk Island is ference: it is one pine, the most remarkable grandeur. There being pumice stone mixed reason to imagine that formed by the eruption of the sea. Near is a small mountain Mount Pitt, whence a very delightful vallies, each of which purpose of turning many other springs of constancy of breezes

any use whatever, yet, what is very extraordinary, not a piece thereof, though cut ever so thin and ever so well dried, will float in water: it is of such a heavy nature, without being truly solid, that the water instantly penetrates, with which and its own natural weight, it sinks to the bottom like a stone, immediately on immersion. Though this country is deficient in timber, it amply repays in stone, which is most excellent for building; but unfortunately no kind of mortar can as yet be found to unite it. All the lime that could be possibly extracted from shells was procured for the intended residence of the governor, but it was very insufficient towards the completion thereof.

March 10th. The French ships sailed from Botany Bay. Count De la Peyrouse had completed two long-boats, and the French being as busily employed as the English, of course there was little intercourse between them. Those vessels returned towards the north, where they were to make another voyage. During their stay in Botany Bay Father Le Receveur died; this French Abbé had come out as a naturalist in the *Atrolabe*; the wounds which he received during the unfortunate encounter at the Navigator's Islands were the cause of his untimely dissolution: his grave was but humble, a common head-stone was lightly stuck into the loose earth which covered it. There was a board nailed against a tree adjoining to it with the following inscription:

Hic jacet LE RECEVEUR,
E. F. F. Minimis Gallix Sacerdos,
Physicus in circumnavigatione
Mundi,
Duce De la Peyrouse,
Ob. 17th Feb. 1788.

As the painting on this board was either washed away by the rain, or destroyed by the natives, the inscription was, with some alterations, engraved on a piece of copper, and affixed to the same tree by the governor's command, whose intention it also was to substitute a handsome head-stone on a future day.

March 19th. Lieutenant Ball arrived in the Supply tender from Norfolk Island, which he made on the 29th of the preceding month with great difficulty and danger. He was about five days off the coast before he could discover a place where he could possibly land the stores; so great and manifold was the violence of the surf and the rocks of the shore, which almost surround the island. In this passage was discovered an unknown island in lat. 31 deg. 36 min. south, and in long. 39 deg. 4 min. east, which was named Lord Howe's Island by Lieutenant Ball; it is about twenty miles in circumference, and very barren. The lieutenant would have stopped at this port, but found the landing as difficult as at Norfolk Island. In his return to Port Jackson he examined it more particularly; he found anchorage at the west side, but the bottom was coral rock: there was an abundance of turtle upon a sandy beach; eighteen of which (the smallest not weighing less than 150 lb.) he brought with him, and they were highly acceptable to the sick people in the hospital.

Norfolk Island is about seven leagues in circumference: it is one entire wood, overpread with pines, the most remarkable for straightness, size and grandeur. There being a great quantity of scattered pumice stone mixed with the earth, there is some reason to imagine that the island was originally formed by the eruption of volcanic matter from the bed of the sea. Near the middle of this island there is a small mountain, named by the commandant Mount Pitt, whence a copious stream flows through a very delightful valley, which makes several divisions, each of which retains sufficient force for the purpose of turning mills: besides this, there are many other springs of excellent clear water. The constancy of breezes from the sea moderates the

natural heat of the climate: so that by such temperature it is pure and salubrious. Nothing can thrive so well as vegetables here, one crop always succeeding another: the leaves of the trees are so good, that they are an excellent substitute for grass, being equally as well relished by the sheep, hogs, goats, &c. and on which they both thrive and fatten.

Nature, uncourted, more than generous seems;
Witness the stately pines—the purling streams;
The air salubrious, and the noble foil,
Which amply compensates the sower's toil:
Now bounteous heaven sends refreshing rain,
From time to time its verdure to maintain:
And tho' no grass adorns the fertile ground,
The leaves of trees as good as grass are found.
Here vegetation flourishes indeed!
Crops after crops alternately succeed.
Blest climate! whose sun keeps off the zephyrs rude:
Whose heats by constant breezes are subdued!
Such thy mild temperature throughout the year,
That every winter summer doth appear.

March 25th, the Scarborough, Lady Penrhyn, and Charlotte, transports, were discharged from government service, being previously cleared of all their stores: they were left to their commanders free-will, who were about to depart for China in order to load home for tea, being so appointed by the East-India Company.

The month of April was much the same as that of March in respect to weather, which still continued variable. The mornings were cloudy, and the rain generally fell at night, with southerly and south-east winds; but when the wind changed to the westward or north-west, it was then fair and pleasant; when calm, it was very hot in the middle of the day, but the mornings and evenings were cold. Thermometer from 68 deg. to 72 min.

The chief events of this month were two excursions, which were made by Governor Phillip for the purpose of exploring the country. The first was on the 15th, when his Excellency, attended by Lieutenants Ball, George Johnston, the judge-advocate, Surgeon White, three soldiers, and two seamen, set out with provisions for four days, and landed at the head of Small Cove, called Shell Cove, near the entrance of the harbour on the north side: they arrived to a large lake, surrounded by extensive bogs and marshes, which rendered the examination thereof exceedingly laborious: but as the governor was desirous to acquire all the knowledge of the place that he possibly could, they were frequently up to their waists in water. On this lake they perceived a black swan of a very handsome kind, larger than a common one, and formed as beautiful. Being obliged to desist from their design, they proceeded a mile or two northward along to the sea-shore: they then fell in with a small salt-water lagoon; after rounding which, and proceeding four or five miles westward, they passed a swamp, and arrived to an immense wood, which displayed a variety of large high trees, which were at a considerable distance from each other. Though there was some appearance of meadow land here, the soil was far from being good: the grass, which was of a four nature, grew together in thick bushes. In this place, by the governor's orders, they pitched their tents adjoining a swamp, for the sake of being occasionally supplied with water, which was far from being good or clear. A large fire was kept before the tents, as it was very cold, and there was a heavy dew: during the night they were very much teased with muskitoes, which were no doubt allured there by the fires. The next day they proceeded many miles inland towards the west: they here discovered an attempt at sculpture by the natives, having found several large stones with various figures cut thereon, consisting of representations of themselves in different postures, fishes, animals,

animals, &c. Much ingenuity appeared in these likenesses, especially when proper allowance was made for the deficiency of tools. They walked several miles, and in the evening fell in with the north-west branch of Port Jackson harbour. The seamen were so fatigued, especially as their shoes were very bad, that they could proceed no further: they returned, therefore, with Lieut. Ball and a marine, to the ships, being supplied with a competency of provisions by the governor: the rest pursued their journey westward by the water-side, in hopes of soon finding better land; but were obliged in the evening to pitch their tents in a most melancholy desert place, near a steep valley, where there was a fresh water stream: here they washed their shirts and stockings, dressed their provisions, and refreshed themselves.

The next morning, April 17th, they put by their tents and remaining provisions, being now reduced to a small quantity of rum and bread, and proceeded westward about fourteen miles into the country, in search of land that had better water, but without success: under such circumstances they deemed it prudent to return to their tents in time, which they removed a little further down to the flowing of the stream. It rained this evening very heavily, which was attended with much thunder and lightning.

April 18th, early in the morning, they renewed their journey; proceeding down the river, they were obliged to climb prodigious heights, and wade through several tides, which rendered this day's march exceedingly laborious. After being very much spent and fatigued, they were agreeably surprised by the sight of two boats, which Captain Hunter had sent out to meet them, and by whom they were informed that the seamen (who had been obliged through fatigue to return with Lieut. Ball) had arrived safe at the ship the day after they left them. The governor's steward had sent provisions, which was very acceptable: they went on board the boats, and rowed down the river till they reached a little cove, where they dined with no little satisfaction; after which they embarked again, and about six o'clock in the evening were in Sydney Cove.

During this excursion, the country was found barren and rocky: there were so many obstacles on the hills, that both ascending and descending were difficult, and in many places impracticable. When about fifteen miles distant from the sea-coast, there was an excellent view of the inland country and its mountains, several of which at this time received their names from the governor; the most northern he called Carmarthen hills, the most southern Lansdown hills, and one which lay between these Richmond hill.

Another excursion took place on the 22d of this month. The same party, with the addition of Lieutenant Creswell and six privates, landed in the morning at the head of the harbour, with provisions for seven days, intending to examine the country westward: they were now equipped much better than before, having spare shoes, trowsers, shirts, &c. Every man carried his own allowance: the soldiers, in addition to theirs, carried two tents with the poles, a camp kettle, &c. They had also a small hand hatchet, for the purpose of marking the trees as they went along, that they might be a direction for their return. It seemed a good country at the first setting out, but they shortly arrived at a very close cover, which after long endeavouring to pass through, they were obliged to leave, lamenting their fruitless attempt. They pitched their tents near some stagnant water: during the night it thundered, lightened, and rained. The governor, who had not perfectly recovered from the fatigue of his last expedition, was suddenly seized in the night with violent pains in his side and loins: he was much better in the morning, and the day being remarkably fine, would not be dissuaded from pur-

suing his intentions. By keeping close to the banks of a small creek for about four miles, they were at length able to pass the cover. After which they fell in with a branch of Port Jackson, which had not been discovered till then; on the bank of which there was very excellent grass, and here and there some plants, which resembled the indigo. They proceeded along this branch westward for some miles, till at last they arrived to a fresh water stream: here they encamped; and Capt. White having shot a white cockatoo, and two crows, they made a kettle of soup, which they thought exceeding good. It thundered, lightened, and rained, as it did the night before. The country hitherto examined was delightful; sometimes rising in small hills, which added much to its beauty: the soil was excellent; the trees, which were immensely large, were about twenty to forty feet distance from each other, disencumbered with underwood, which is so common in the rocky places.

April 24th, they proceeded to trace the river, and discovered a quarry of slates, which afterwards proved unfit for use: they were induced, through the apprehension of rain, to pitch their tents about four in the afternoon, having previously shot a couple of crows, and some paroquets: their ducks being picked, they stuffed them with small slices of salt beef, and roasted them, than which nothing could eat better. The evening having cleared up, this night proved dry. An unaccountable noise, resembling the human voice, was frequently heard, but whence it proceeded could not be discovered. This country was by no means so excellent as that already passed, nor was the water so abundant and clear, though it was far from being bad. The next day they sowed some seeds, and then proceeded about four miles west: here they found an humble lute, which evidently belonged to some of the natives, though it appeared to be a long time uninhabited: at a little distance from this, there were three others, deserted in like manner. A tree was also discovered burning, which Lieut. Ball imagined to have been set on fire by lightning, as there was not the least sign of a native being at present in the place; there were three kangaroos near this burning tree. The company, though much tired, still went on about two miles further, in hopes of meeting with good water; but herein disappointed, they were obliged to encamp about four o'clock near a stagnant pool, where the ground was so exceedingly parched and dry, on account of the continual fires in this country, and the extreme heat of the weather, that it was with the greatest difficulty they could thrust the poles or drive the tent-pegs into it. A number of beautiful paroquets and paroquets frequented the trees hereabouts, on account of the height of which the guns could not reach them. These birds made such a chattering noise, that it was almost impossible to hear one another speak.

April 26th, they proceeded this morning still westward, and met another tree on fire, which, and the appearance of others which had been burned, led them now to imagine that it was done by some unperceived natives for the purpose of ensnaring the kangaroos. They crossed a water-course, and having ascended a very pleasant eminence, where there were no trees to incommode the prospect, Carmarthen and Lansdown hills were plain to the view. The country round this hill was so delightful, that it was called by the governor Belle Vue: in a valley beneath which was perceived a fire, with some scraps of a salt root, sufficient proof that some of the natives had been there lately: from this they crossed another water-course, and ascended another hill, but from whence nothing could be seen, on account of the thickness of the surrounding wood.

The provisions being nearly exhausted, it was deemed advisable to return, though much against the inclination of the company, who would have

have reached the opportunity sufficiently supplied with had been made on their way back. saw a hollow tree ascended as through upon near examination the natives, there covered. Having (custom) and some tents in the evening per; this night was unaccountable voice now repeated, which guilt, proceeded from

April 27th. As they ried back as fast as greable situation in but by the marked back. The utmost a direct line, was not though there had been the way they perceived large as that of a hog intermixed with approaching, the boats, which were returning for them. Lieutenants marine, were therefore cure whatever provisions mand the boats to these gentlemen had

*Weather in May—
One of the Native
vate House—Infer
of Turtle—Two p
Davis murdered
succeeding—Inter
nor's Behaviour—
—Fresh accounts
tending the Live*

THE beginning much bad w to south-east, gene night: the middle for several days to sea-wind. About prevailed between being then unsettled which generally felt little wind or warm thermometer from

May 11. Several fore the criminal guilty sentenced to James Bennet, a ye was executed for a Charlotte transper. At the tree he ma acknowledged othe

The three trans and the Scarborough sailed May 5th, 6th ply tender failed turtle, in order to forcibly afflicted with time upwards of tw they could not be

Several of the m and, by signs exper taken off. One of

have reached the opposite hill had they been sufficiently supplied with store. By the marks which had been made on the trees, they were safely guided on their way back. As they were returning they saw a hollow tree on fire, out of which the smoke ascended as through a chimney, and which proved upon near examination to have been set on fire by the natives, there being several combustibles discovered. Having shot two crows (according to custom) and some lorquets, they pitched their tents in the evening, and made a comfortable supper; this night was clear and fine, and the same unaccountable voice, which was heard before, was now repeated, which, as well as the ear could distinguish, proceeded from the same spot.

April 27th. As the stores were just spent, they hurried back as fast as possible, it being rather a disagreeable situation in case of misting the right path; but by the marked trees they were safely conducted back. The utmost extent of this excursion, upon a direct line, was not more than thirty-three miles, though there had been five days spent upon it. On the way they perceived the dung of an animal as large as that of a horse, but more like that of a hog intermixed with grafs. As the night was fast approaching, the governor was apprehensive that the boats, which he ordered to attend daily, might be returning for that day before he could reach them. Lieutenants Johnson and Creswell, with a marine, were therefore ordered to go a-head, and secure whatever provisions were sent up; also to command the boats to be out early the next morning: these gentlemen had very fortunately reached the

place in time; they returned with a seasonable supply of provisions to those they left behind, and the parties being re-united, they encamped about a mile's distance from the place where the boats were to meet them. The governor before this having got a fall into a pit, which had been concealed by long grafs, was again indisposed, and had a relapse of his former complaint. In the evening they returned to Sydney Cove.

As the governor's indisposition still continued, (for his complaint was very much increased by this last journey) he deemed it absolutely necessary to allow himself the respite of a few days before he encountered so much fatigue again; for as it was the wish of every one to seek a river, the discovery of which was so important, another expedition had been already planned with a view, if possible, to reach either Lansdown or Carmarthen hills.

When they had returned from this last excursion, the governor was very much displeas'd to find, that five ewes and a lamb had been killed during his absence, very near the camp and in the middle of the day; live stock being at this time very precious, the loss of any was therefore a very serious consequence: the cause of this misfortune was unknown; it was conjectured that some dogs belonging to the natives had been the occasion; others attributed it, but without so much reason, to the natives themselves. The live stock at present consisted of 87 chickens, 122 fowls, 35 ducks, 29 geese, 18 turkeys, 5 rabbits, 25 pigs, 49 hogs, 19 goats, 29 sheep, 5 cows, 2 bulls, 3 colts, 3 mares, and one stallion.

CHAPTER V.

Weather in May—Thefts punished—James Bennet executed for robbery—Departure of the three Transports—One of the Natives shaved—Small quantity of Vegetables sown—Foundation Stone laid of the Commodore's private House—Inscription for the Wall—William Ayres and Peter Burn attacked by the Natives—Disappointment of Turtle—Two punished for an assault—Meeting with an old man and a girl—William Okey and Samuel Davis murdered by the Natives—Governor's Concern—Determination—Search for the Murderers—Despair of succeeding—Interview with a number of Natives—Their Tokens of Anger—Confidence and Friendship—Governor's Behaviour—Parting between the English and Natives—Reason for supposing Lansdown Hills inhabited—Fresh accounts of the late Affray—A Native murdered—Several wounded—Proclamation—A severe Loss attending the Live Stock.

THE beginning of May was attended with much bad weather; strong gales from south to south-east, generally attended with rain in the night: the middle of the month was fair and settled for several days together, with a regular land and sea-wind. About the close of the month the wind prevailed between S. W. and S. E. the weather being then unsettled, and frequent showers of rain, which generally fell in the night: there was but little wind or warm weather in the day-time. The thermometer from 56 deg. to 67 deg.

May 1st. Several trifling thefts were brought before the criminal court, and those who were found guilty sentenced to receive corporeal punishment. James Bennet, a young man but an old offender, was executed for robbing a tent belonging to the Charlotte transport of sugar, and other articles. At the tree he made a confession of his guilt, and acknowledged other crimes.

The three transports, Lady Penrhyn, Charlotte, and the Scarborough, which were bound to China, sailed May 5th, 6th, and 8th. On the 6th the Supply tender sailed to Lord Howe's Island for some turtle, in order to make fowr for several who were sorely afflicted with the scurvy, there being at this time upwards of two hundred, who were so bad that they could not be employed.

Several of the natives came along-side the Sirius, and by signs expressed a desire to have their beards taken off. One of them, with the greatest patience,

No. 3.

and without the least apprehension, suffered the ship's barber to shave him, and seemed very much delighted during the operation.

As the clearing of the ground was not only attended with much time but great difficulty, it was impossible to pay any extraordinary attention to vegetables; at present no more than about eight or ten acres with wheat and barley were sown: the Lieutenant-Governor and others had previously made use of some ground for the support of their own live stock, in the labour of which they were occasionally assisted by the convicts, according to the governor's command. The foundation-stone of a private house for the commodore was laid, and a plate of copper with the following inscription upon it, was intended to be placed in the wall:

"ARTHUR PHILLIP, Esq.

Captain-General in and over his Majesty's Territory

of New South Wales and its Dependencies,

Arrived in this Country on the 18th day of

January, 1788, with the first Settlers;

And on the 15th day of May, in the same year, the first of these Stones was laid."

May 21st. One of the convicts, William Ayres, who was for some time in an ill state of health, was permitted by Surgeon White to go into the country, a little distance from the camp, in search for herbs to make himself some tea; late in the evening he was brought to the hospital, dangerously wounded by the natives, having one of their spears

* G

sticking

sticking in his loins, which he received while he was stooping with his back to his adversary; this weapon stuck so fast, and was barbed in such a manner, that it could not possibly be stirred; it had penetrated the flesh near three inches, and it was by the dint of cutting very deep that the spear could possibly be extracted. When Surgeon White had performed this operation, Ayres said, that he had been wounded by three of the natives, who came upon him unawares: there was one Peter Burn who attended him in the same employment; this man was attacked by another party, who dragged him along in apparent distress, with his head bleeding: the situation of Ayres rendered it impossible for him to assist his companion; for after he was wounded he was beat in a most cruel manner, the clothes stripped from his back, which they carried off, telling him by signs, as he interpreted, that he might now go home to his friends. A shirt and a hat were afterwards found in one of the huts of the natives, which were both pierced with spears, and which, it was conjectured, belonged to Peter Burn. Neither the man, nor any remains of him, could ever be found. The governor would not be persuaded but that the natives had been insulted by these convicts, and consequently provoked to such outrage; but Ayres declared that neither he nor his companion were aggressors.

May 25th. The Supply tender returned from Lord Howe's Island, being very unfortunate in their mission, as not one turtle could they procure. The weather she met with was so exceedingly squally, that she was obliged to cut away her best bower anchor, but suffered no other damage: this disappointment of the turtle was very much to be lamented, as numbers were languishing under the scurvy, several of whom died.

26th. There were two men belonging to the Sirius, tried for assaulting and beating in a most terrible manner another of the same vessel, while he was performing his duty: they were found guilty, and sentenced to receive five hundred lashes; but in consideration of the weak state they were in, being very much afflicted with the scurvy, part of the sentence was only inflicted.

28th. Captain Hunter, his first lieutenant, and the surgeon of the Sirius, went to the point of land which forms the north-head of Port Jackson. In the course of this excursion they met an old man with a girl about four years old, who were lying on the ground, and were at first endeavouring to conceal themselves; after a little acquaintance the old man began to examine the surgeon's gun, who desirous to shew him the utility of it, fired at a bird which immediately fell. The native was exceedingly alarmed at the explosion, but when the bird was given him he forgot his fears, and having about half broiled it, with part of its feathers on, he devoured it, entrails and bones, in a most ravenous manner. The child's apprehensions still continued, and every now and then he would hide behind the old man to escape notice.

30th. William Okey and Samuel Davis, two men who had been employed in gathering rushes for thatch, at some distance from the camp, were found dead by Captain Campbell of the Marines, who went up to the harbour to procure some rushes from them. Their bodies were conveyed to the hospital, one of which (Okey's) was so mangled, that it exhibited the most shocking marks of cruelty: he had four spears in his body; there was one which had been lodged so deep in his breast, that it was with the greatest difficulty extracted; two others were equally fast. His skull was divided, out of which his brains had dropt; his eyes were gone, and he was otherwise terribly abused. Davis had but few marks of violence about him, and as he was neither stiff nor cold, when brought to the hospital, could not have been long dead. It was conjectured that the first injury had been of-

fered by these unfortunate men, especially by Okey, whose sufferings had been greater; this was the cause of much concern and uneasiness to the governor, who was in hopes of conciliating the affections of the natives, and establishing a friendly intercourse with them: he was however determined to examine more particularly into the business, and if the murderers or accomplices could be detected, to make known his displeasure; the rools of the ruff-cutters having been carried away, he was in hopes that these would lead to a discovery; the attempt was certainly worth making, for if he could find the assailants, he might not only convince them of their unwarrantable proceedings, but prevent future accidents of the same nature, and render permanent their mutual confidence and harmony. The next day was appointed for the experiment; the governor went out with a small party, in number about twelve, and landed at the place where the murder was committed: after a fruitless search here and about twenty miles further, they despaired of succeeding, not having seen one native for the whole day.

When they arrived to the north shore of Botany Bay, they discovered about twenty canoes, which were employed in fishing: none of those canoes had joined the party, according to their expectations, when they had encamped for the night; and the next morning, though they perceived above double the number of canoes which were drawn upon the beach, they could not see any person that belonged to them. The governor, deeming further search but loss of time, was now about returning to Port Jackson: on his way, near the sea coast, he met a vast number of the natives at the mouth of a cove, who were as much surpris'd as the English at this unexpected meeting. The governor had scarce time to order his men to halt, when several of them came out to meet him in arms: their leader, by signs, commanded the governor and his party to retire, seemingly threatening them if they disobeyed; however, when he saw the governor lay down his sword, and advance towards him alone, in a friendly manner, he immediately gave his spear away, and received him with the greatest good-nature. In about a few minutes, the governor and his party were surrounded by two hundred and twelve natives, who followed the example of their leader, having laid aside their spears and stone hatchets, and shaking hands in the most friendly manner: there was no appearance of treachery or deceit, nor any inclination to take advantage of the inferior number of the English. Several women and children were seen at a distance, some of whom were introduced by the men, to receive what little presents the governor had to give. There was no cause to suspect that any of these people were concerned in the murder, as they not only appeared averse to hostility, but very much inclined to amity. On their first approach the governor was induced, by their tokens of anger and superiority of number, to command the soldiers to fix their bayonets, and observe a close march down the hill, in case of danger. There were but six soldiers, besides two armed convicts, who were taken as guides. The natives did not betray the least apprehension at seeing these men, though in general they are afraid of soldiers. The women were so delighted with the presents they had received, that they danced and threw themselves into strange postures.

Governor Phillip was now introduced by their leader, who was respectfully attended by the rest of the natives, to the finest stream of water that had been yet discovered; the cove into which it ran was very much expedit to the sea. One of the natives, an old man, and who had been the most familiar, perceiving the governor's party approaching another cove, entreated by signs their permission to go before; this being readily complied with, he ascended the hill, and making an uncommon noise, held up both

his hands; whereupon another natives assembled in a bay, about half a mile: the English, however, ascending the cove, it being out of therefore parted with their new fr amicable manner. During this ex some smoke seen on the top of between those of Botany Bay an which was a certain indication of inhabited. About sun-set they camp.

It was afterwards discovered, quires, that one of the natives had and several wounded, in the aff ruff-cutters and them: this seeme the governor's opinion, that the been given by the former; whereup he had a reward of emancipation p convict who should discover and pr

*Weather in June—First Celebration
The banished Convicts pardoned—
Festivity—Burn and Ascat profess
an elopement, and being outlawed
Natives—Their burning a human
Criminal Court—Sentenced to be
Execution—Pathetic and eloquent
White's report—Weather in July—
seizing Fish—Cockswain's prudent
Plaintiffs—Supply sails for Norfolk
Grove vicualler meet some Natives
Their Danger, and Escape—A ter
Another interview with the Natives*

THE month of June began w pleasant weather, attended w breezes, but it was succeeded with much rain, the wind being chiefly quarier. Thermometer from 52 d

June 4th. This being the first Majesty's birth-day in New South tended with more than common fest were very particular in their demo alty, which concluded with gen order. By the governor's comman Supply, at sun-rise, fired each a sal gus; the same was repeated in t day, and at sun-set. After the done firing at one o'clock, the tra gus each. The marines on shore at twelve, and fired three vollies, ceded with three cheers. This over, the lieutenant-governor and paid their respects to Governor Phil where they all met again at dinn music was playing the most loyal tu health, and the Royal family's, w station. Throughout the settlement of universal festivity, a holiday to and that the exultation might be vnor granted a full pardon to who had been relieved from de of being banished: these men were called from their exile, to have conviviality: large bonfires were countenance displayed both joy By the governor's command, ev pint of porter, besides his comm grog; and every convict half a pin into grog; that they might all a master's health.

During this scene of loyalty a the governor publicly nominated t ritory which he had taken possessio county. This title had been prev but not till now published.

hands; whereupon another large body of the natives assembled in a bay, about the distance of a mile: the English, however, declined desisting the cove, it being out of their way; they therefore parted with their new friends in the most amicable manner. During this excursion, there was a smoke seen on the top of Lansdown hills, seen thence of Botany Bay and Port Jackson, which was a certain indication of the place being visited. About sun-set they arrived to their quarters.

It was afterwards discovered, upon further enquiries, that one of the natives had been murdered, several wounded, in the affray between the cutters and them: this seemed to corroborate the governor's opinion, that the provocation had been given by the former; whereupon, on his return, he issued a reward of emancipation proclaimed to any individual who should discover and prove the real truth

of the matter. Notwithstanding this proclamation had not the desired effect of being attended with any real satisfaction, still it promised to be of much service, by deterring others from similar acts of future violence.

About this time a severe misfortune attended the live-stock; two bulls and two cows, which belonged to government, and two cows which belonged to the governor, being the only animals (except one cow) of this kind in the colony, were missed: this loss was very much lamented, as it was irreparable for some time. One Edward Corbett, who stole a frock, having eloped, was also suspected for driving them off to some distant wood; but as they had been left for a time by the man who was appointed to take care of them, it is very probable that they strayed away of themselves: they were traced to some distance, but never could be recovered.

CHAPTER VI.

Her in June—First Celebration of his Majesty's Birth-day—Governor gives a dinner—General Exultation—The banished Convicts pardoned—Bonfires, &c.—Territory nominated—Several Thefts committed during the festivity—Burn and Astott prosecuted for an assault—Acquitted for want of evidence—Corbett's return, after elopement, and being outlawed—His confession of a theft—Sufferings through hunger—His account of the natives—Their burning a human body—Their distress for food—Decree of Outlawry revoked—Referred to the Criminal Court—Sentenced to be hanged—Samuel Payton likewise condemned for Robbery—His Confession—Their execution—Pathetic and eloquent Address to the Spectators—Increase of the Scurvy—Scarcity of Fish—Surgeon White's report—Weather in July—Natives greedy with hunger—A proof of their distress—A3 of violence in killing Fish—Cookswain's prudence—A cause tried before a Civil Court of Judicature—Verdict given for the plaintiffs—Supply sails for Norfolk Island—Four Transports for England—Surgeon White and Master of Golden Grove victualler meet some Natives—Mark of unusual delicacy—A party of Convicts attacked by the Natives—Their Danger, and Escape—A terrible Accident—A Convict wounded by the Natives—His miraculous Escape—Another interview with the Natives—Occasional Remarks—Sudden Alarm.

THE month of June began with very fine and pleasant weather, attended with land and sea breezes, but it was succeeded with great storms and rain, the wind being chiefly from the S. E. Thermometer from 52 deg. to 63 deg. On the 4th. This being the first celebration of his Majesty's birth-day in New South Wales, it was attended with more than common festivity, as all ranks were very particular in their demonstrations of loyalty, which concluded with general hilarity and merriment. By the governor's command, the Sirius and the Adventure, at sun-rise, fired each a salute of twenty-one guns, the same was repeated in the middle of the day, and at sun-set. After the King's ships had finished firing at one o'clock, the transports fired five guns each. The marines on shore were under arms, and fired three volleys, which were succeeded with three cheers. This ceremony being over, the lieutenant-governor and all the officers paid their respects to Governor Phillip, at his house; where they all met again at dinner, during which the governor was playing the most loyal tunes: his Majesty's health, and the Royal family's, were drank in a toast. Throughout the settlement, this was a day of universal festivity, a holiday to every labourer; that the exultation might be general, the governor granted a full pardon to the four convicts who had been relieved from death on condition of being banished: these men were immediately released from their exile, to have their share of the hospitality: large bonfires were lighted, and every countenance displayed both joy and satisfaction. By the governor's command, every soldier had a quart of porter, besides his common allowance of rum; and every convict half a pint of spirits, made good; that they might all drink their Royal Master's health.

During this scene of loyalty and good-humour, the governor publicly nominated the part of the territory which he had taken possession of, Cumberland County. This title had been previously fixed upon, and is now published.

Though it might naturally be imagined, that the most evil-disposed would have been amused from their vicious inclinations, on such a day of harmony and pleasure, yet so depraved and abandoned were the majority of convicts, that they took advantage of this general mirth, and committed several thefts; they not only robbed many of the officers, but even one another: neither lenity nor severity seemed to have effect upon these wretches.

June 10th, Patrick Burn, and John Astott, were prosecuted by Lieut. G. W. Maxwell and Mr. Keller, of the Sirius, for having been concerned with other convicts in riotously attacking and assaulting several seamen belonging to the men of war: for want of sufficient evidence, they were acquitted.

On the 24th of this month, Edward Corbett, one of the convicts who had been concerned in the thefts on his Majesty's birth-day, and who for fear of detection absconded the next morning, returned to the camp almost perishing with hunger. This being the man who was suspected for driving off the cows, he was a few days before his return outlawed: the suspicion immediately took place after his elopement: he acknowledged his having stolen a frock, (the robbery with which he was charged) but declared his innocence of the cows. When he ran away, he was in hopes of being able to live in the woods; but to his grief found the impossibility of such a design; he had frequently met a party of the natives, who never used him ill, though they were never very kind to him; one, that behaved the most friendly, gave him a fish, and then by signs advised him to go home: once he was apprehensive that they would burn him; on which account he ran away, being much alarmed at seeing the head of a man in a large fire, and other remains of a human body, which was conjectured to be Burn's, who was carried off by the natives some time ago, when Ayres was wounded; however several, particularly the governor, doubted these reports, for there never was reason to suspect any of the natives were cannibals: Corbett, however, in their vindication, added,

that they appeared at that time in great distress for food; he had seen four of them languishing away who had perished through hunger. If therefore they did make occasional use of human flesh, they were compelled by dire necessity! Corbett's appearance was ample demonstration of the sufferings which he endured; the decree however by which he was outlawed was revoked, and he was referred to the criminal court, to be tried for the theft he had committed. As he pleaded guilty, he was accordingly sentenced to be hanged. Another convict, Samuel Payton, was likewise condemned with him, for having stolen on the 4th of June several shirts, stockings, combs, &c. His trial had been postponed, on account of a wound he received in his head from Captain-Lieutenant Meredith, who detected him in his tent, when he returned from the bontire; in consequence of this wound he was for some time senseless: while Surgeon White attended him, he frequently importuned him to confess his guilt, and accomplices; but he denied the robbery, though he could give no plausible reason for being found in the captain-lieutenant's tent: however, after condemnation, he not only confessed, but discovered where several of the articles were. Corbett and Payton addressed the spectators at the fatal tree, acknowledging the justice of their sentence, which they had long deserved, and recommending their fate as a caution to others. Payton spoke in a very affecting, sublime, and correct manner: they both died exceedingly penitent. The execution of these two unfortunate men, who were about twenty-two and twenty-four years of age, seemed to have made no small impression on the minds of those convicts who were present.

The erection of huts was now the chief concern, for as the season was remarkably wet, tents were found very uncomfortable; these huts were only temporary, being composed of very perishable materials. There were several violent storms of thunder and lightning. On account of the scarcity of fish (for fish never abounds here at the cold season of the year) they were obliged to subsist for the chief part upon salt provisions; this, no doubt, was the great cause of the scurvy, which now became almost general. The gum which is extracted from the trees, Surgeon White found in all cases of a violent dysentery, of the greatest service.

June 30th. This day Surgeon White made the following report:

Marines sick in the hospital	- - -	4
Convalescents in the hospital	- - -	2
Marines sick in camp	- - -	18
Convalescents sick in camp	- - -	6
Wives and children of marines do. do.	- - -	6
Marines dead from the time of embarkation to landing	- - -	1
Woman	- - -	1
Child	- - -	1
Marines dead since landing	- - -	3
Children	- - -	2
Convicts sick in the hospital	- - -	20
Convalescents do. do.	- - -	4
Convicts sick in camp	- - -	26
Convalescents do. do.	- - -	16
Male convicts dead from the time of embarkation to landing	- - -	36
Female do. do. do.	- - -	4
Convicts' children do. do.	- - -	5
Male convicts dead since landing	- - -	20
Female do. do. do.	- - -	8
Convicts' children do. do.	- - -	8
Convicts unable to work	- - -	52
Total dead	- - -	89

The month of July began as the last ended, a continuance of blustering rainy weather; in the middle of the month it was less windy, though dull and cloudy; towards the end it became fair weather, with westerly winds. Thermometer from 52 deg. to 63 deg.

The scorbutic patients were worse this month; the want of fresh food was very much lamented, and the scarcity of fish was as severely felt by the natives as the English, as they were equally sick and miserable. Whenever any of the birds that were shot were given them, they were so greedy as frequently to eat them without being plucked, or scarce warmed with the fire. A proof of their distress was apparent on the 9th of June: a party of them arrived to the place where the Sirius's boat had been to haul the seine; these natives were armed, and notwithstanding it was customary, by the governor's orders, to give part of whatsoever was caught (let it be ever so little) to the natives that were present, which always satisfied them, yet these men, without trying any fair means to obtain their purpose, began to threaten the crew, and seized with violence what fish they had caught: several stood at a distance to throw their spears, if any resistance was made; however the cockswain with much prudence suffered them to take whatever they chose, on which they departed with much satisfaction and good-humour. After this act of violence, the first that was known, an officer was always sent down the harbour with the boat.

A cause now came on to be tried, for which the governor had called a civil court of judicature, consisting of the Judge-Advocate, Rev. Mr. Johnson, and Surgeon White. This was a complaint made against Duncan Sinclair, Master of the Alexander transport, by Henry Coble and his wife Susanna (two convicts) for not having delivered a parcel, which was sent on board the Alexander by a Mrs. Jackson, containing wearing apparel, books, &c. value twenty pounds, intended for the use of Henry Coble, his wife, and child. It was proved by the defendant's confession, that this parcel had been received on board; and by further evidence, that this packet had come afloat, and the books which had fallen out of it had been delivered to the convict. A verdict was given for the plaintiffs, and the master of the transport obliged to compensate the loss which plaintiffs, Coble and his wife, sustained, which was the value of fifteen pounds; five pounds being allowed for the books which were received.

July 13th. The Supply tender sailed for Norfolk Island with provisions, &c. for the people there. Four transports, viz. the Alexander, Friendship, Prince of Wales, and the Borrowdale victualler, sailed for England; it was their intention to go northward, and pass through the Straights of Macassar and Sunda, it being too early in the season to attempt going round Van Diemen's Land, also to endeavour to get westward by that tract, or go eastward by Cape Horn.

On the 21st, Surgeon White and the master of the Golden Grove victualler, went down the harbour to look for a cabbage-tree, in order to cover the surgeon's hut. When returning they met three canoes that had been out fishing; they approached them, whereupon the natives appeared suddenly alarmed, and were making off with as much haste as possible; but as they were desirous to convince them that their fears were groundless, the surgeon and his companion rowed after them with an intention of giving them some presents, and courting their favour. As soon as they had reached them, an old woman that was among them began to throw her fish in a great hurry overboard, but the afterwards found by their behaviour that there was no cause for apprehension. She had a young girl with her, and what was very remarkable and uncommon, the girl had a long apron on, this being a mark of delicacy which was unusual. The girl was by no means alarmed, she was very free, and laughed immoderately, apparently delighted either with the presents received, or her old female guardian's timidity.

A party of convicts who had been sent to gather some

some herbs, partic which was very go the country to Bota of natives, who were inferior in number consequently took the natives upward overtaken, in all murdered, as the those whom they had people w accomp

A ter. . . accid blacksmith shop posed it being of the generality of t exceedingly fierce, rapidly, that it was and other tools were

July 20th. A co the breast by a part plunged into the se ming, they would he was conveyed to Surgeon White extr which had penetrate gave him exquisite lost a quantity of blo

Some little time man and woman in d

Weather in August—C beaten and wounded in Manly Cove—In southern branch of B Natives at Pitt Wa quence thereof—Int Governor and Surge of some Natives—T to Surgeon White—freeman's information—Imposition of one parent—Daily see Examined again, a Weather in September

THE month of cold and clou hoary frost; souther the middle it was f the end fair and pl winds. Thermome

The 12th of Aug the Prince of Wales brated with every do one guns was fired all the officers of the the governor; there and other demonstra

On the 16th, a c creeping kind of v along the ground, leaf is about the size the stalk rather ste resembling liquoric su. stitute for tea, a blood, much preser scurvy is considered mile from the can natives, about four the wood with cork either for their hu quently without the struments with the shell sticks, which they attacked the c of the shell sticks,

some herbs, particularly a vegetable like balm, which was very good and pleasant, were, crossing the country to Botany Bay, met by a vast number of natives, who were all armed: the convicts, being inferior in number, dreaded to meet them, they consequently took to flight, and were pursued by the natives upwards of two miles; had they been overtaken, in all probability, they would have been murdered, as the natives have generally insulted those whom they have had in their power: these people were accompanied with dogs.

A terrible accident happened on the 23d, the blacksmith's shop took fire: the wood which composed it being of a very combustible nature, like the generality of the timber, the flames became exceedingly fierce, and in a few minutes spread so rapidly, that it was with great difficulty the bellows and other tools were preserved.

July 20th. A convict was severely wounded in the breast by a party of the natives; had he not plunged into the sea and saved himself by swimming, they would certainly have murdered him: he was conveyed to the hospital as soon as possible. Surgeon White extracted a piece of a broken spear, which had penetrated the scalp, under his ear, and gave him exquisite pain: he was very faint, having lost a quantity of blood.

Some little time after this, three canoes, with a man and woman in each, came almost near the point

where the hospital is erected, to fish. Surgeon White, and his assistants, approached them: they did not betray the least fear, but on the contrary were very free and friendly: they were greatly pleased with some of the presents they received, and others they slighted. One of the women had an infant between her knees, for whom she solicited something with the most piteous signs. The surgeon gave her a piece of the linen he had to bind up the wounds of his patients, which she accepted with perfect satisfaction, and tied it round the child's head. One of the sheep was lying dead at some little distance; this caught the attention of one of the men, who seemed rather curious to know what it was: they then proceeded to fish, in which they were very successful. During the intervals, they danced and sung. What is somewhat remarkable, these people, especially the females, imitated the English language in a most distinct manner, and indeed much better than the English could theirs. While each party was thus mutually entertained, the natives in an abrupt manner were paddling away: the cause of this sudden alarm was the appearance of the gunner of the Supply, who at the surgeon's request laid down his gun. Upon this the natives were reconciled, and immediately resumed their sports: they afterwards parted in a very friendly manner.

CHAPTER VII.

Weather in August—Celebration of the Prince of Wales's Birth-day—Occasional joy—A substitute for Tea—A convict beaten and wounded by a party of the Natives—His Escape—The Governor and a party make an excursion—Land in Manly Cove—Interview with the Natives—Presents acceptable—A delay—A fine Duck shot—They arrive to the southern branch of Broken Bay—Return to the Sea-shore—Acres of Land fit for cultivation discovered—Shyness of the Natives at Pitt Water—An ingeniously constructed Hut discovered—Superiority of its Furniture—Opinions in consequence thereof—Interview with other Natives—Their Good-nature—Beans discovered—Boiled, and relished—The Governor and Surgeon seized with a violent vomiting—Encampment for the night—Return to Manly Cove—Surprise of some Natives—Timidity of the Girls—Kindness of an old Man—Occasional Remarks—Attention of a Female Native to Surgeon White—Her Coquetry—Surgeon White shoots a Hawk—The Governor gives it to one of the Girls—Cook's friend's Information—Hostilities among the Natives—Lamentations of the Women—Arrival at Sydney Cove—A Report—Imposition of one Dailey, a Convict—His Proposal, Trick, Project, and Story—He absconds—The Deception apparent—Dailey secured, examined, and whipped—He carries on the Deception—Is frightened into a Confession—Examined again, and punished—Arrival of the Supply—Remarks on her Passage—Natives destroy some Cattle—Weather in September—A Phenomenon—Preparations for dispatching the Sirius to the Cape of Good Hope.

THE month of August commenced with rainy, cold and cloudy weather; in the morning a hoary frost; southerly and south-east winds. About the middle it was fair and moderate, and towards the end fair and pleasant, with light and variable winds. Thermometer from 56 deg. to 72 deg.

The 12th of August, being his Royal Highness the Prince of Wales's birth-day, the same was celebrated with every due respect. A salute of twenty-one guns was fired from the Sirius and Supply, and all the officers of the settlement and ships dined with the governor: there were bonfires in the evening, and other demonstrations of joy.

On the 16th, a convict was sent out to gather a creeping kind of vine, which runs a great extent along the ground, which is called Sweet Tea: the leaf is about the size, and somewhat like a bay-leaf; the stalk rather slender; the taste very agreeable, resembling liquorice: in short, it is an excellent substitute for tea, and as it doubtless sweetens the blood, much preferable, when the violence of the fever is considered. After this man had gone a mile from the camp, he was met by a party of natives, about fourteen, who were returning from the wood with cork, which they had been cutting either for their huts or canoes; they were consequently without their spears, having no other instruments with them than some stone hatchets and shell sticks, which they employ for this purpose: they attacked the convict, wounded him with one of the shell sticks, and beat him; after this mal-

reatment, they made him strip, with a view, no doubt, to deprive him of his clothes, perhaps would have murdered him, but providentially a report of two muskets, which were fired at some distance, alarmed the assailants, who ran precipitately away.

August 22d, Governor Phillip went with a small party, consisting of Lieutenants George Johnson, Crellwell, Surgeon White, and six soldiers, to examine the coast between Port Jackson and Broken Bay: they landed in Manly Cove; they perceived, at some distance from the shore, about twenty canoes, with two persons in each, but these men were so intent upon fishing, that they were very indifferent about the English. When they landed, they saw three times that number: these natives immediately approached, and behaved exceedingly kind; they were very ready to join their assistance, and one in particular, who was a black man, helped to carry the tents. There were some stockings among the presents that were given them, which seemed highly acceptable, as the extreme cold made these poor wretches fully sensible of the advantage of being clothed. On proceeding along the coast six miles northward, they were delayed near two hours, having sent back their boats, on account of a piece of water, which was somewhat deep, owing to the fullness of the tide. One of the natives, an old man, behaved with the greatest good-nature, and pointed out the shallowest part of the lagoon, but it was some time before they could wade it through, on account of the rapidity of the tide. A very fine

duck was shot, which was dressed for supper; the company refreshed themselves on a little hill adjoining a cabbage-tree swamp, which supplied them with a sufficiency of cabbage to render the salt provisions agreeable.

On the 23d, about twelve o'clock, they renewed their march, and arrived to the fourth branch of Broken Bay; but as their stock of provisions was insufficient to undertake a further journey round this part of the country, which was not only extensive but remarkably rugged, they returned to the sea shore: they discovered from the entrance of Port Jackson to Broken Bay, several acres of land which were fit for cultivation; the coast is free from wood, and the soil very rich. When they reached Pitt Water they saw a few natives, who were so shy or timid as to run away and conceal themselves. One of their huts at Broken Bay was very ingeniously constructed; and the furniture, consisting of nets, spears, hatchets, &c. were much superior to any before seen: there were likewise two or three pieces of coarse linen, which they had either received or stolen from some of the English: in short this was the most convenient and comfortable hut that was yet discovered. One of the gentlemen thought it might be the residence of a leader or chief; but it was the general opinion, that no distinction is known among them, nor that they have any fixed places of residence, but indiscriminately take possession of the first hut or shelter that offers itself. At some distance from this hut they discovered several armed natives, who were very friendly and good-natured. On the sandy beach the gentlemen gathered some beans, and stopping to refresh themselves they boiled, and relished them very much; however Governor Phillip and Surgeon White were seized with a most violent vomiting about an hour after, and were obliged to clear their stomachs, by drinking large quantities of warm water: none of the rest were the least affected, though all partook of them.

On the 24th they encamped for the night in a very convenient place, which abounded with cabbage-trees, and near which there was good water; the grass was long, dry, but four; having on their return along the coast killed some birds, they made soup of them, which proved exceeding good.

Early the next morning they went by an unfrequented path to the southern branch of Broken Bay, at the head of which, there was a fresh water river, which took its rise out of a distant swamp: the country hereabouts was rough and inaccessible. When they returned to Manly Cove, they discovered some natives in a hut, who were much surprised at their appearance, especially the children; and the old men seemed rather displeas'd when the English looked at the girls, who at this time were crying; on which account the gentlemen withdrew: one of the old men followed them and behaved very kind; when at dinner, he took share of every kind of the provisions, but would not eat before them. A vast number of natives, men, women, and children, soon assembled; they all behaved in a very amicable manner: the women, when unperceived by the men, would make very free; there were two among them who were fear'd on the shoulders like the men; this was rather uncommon. All of them (except one old woman) had the usual mutilation of the little finger; it was likewise remarked that the female children and some of the grown-up girls, wore a slight kind of covering before them, (but by no means such perfect aprons as that which was seen upon a girl before-mentioned) while the females who were fit for connection were entirely naked. Every gentleman singled out a female, and gave her some presents; when the English were afterwards engaged with the men, the women began to broil their fish, of which they had a large quantity:

one, who had been particularized by Surgeon White, gave him some of the fish which she was eating; indeed she behaved in a very coquetting manner, especially when the surgeon was decorating her head with stripes of his hand and neck-kerchiefs, which he had torn on purpose: he even cut away the buttons of his coat to give them, as she took a liking to them. A hawk had now alighted upon one of the trees, the natives seemed very anxious for the English to kill it, whereupon Surgeon White shot it: the report of the gun created the usual terror; some ran away; being however soon reconciled, they were highly delighted at seeing the hawk in the governor's possession, who immediately presented it to one of the young girls, who seemed to be the most respected among them. On the arrival of the boats, the cockswain informed the gentlemen, that they had seen upwards of two hundred natives, who had met (as it first appeared) for the purpose of exercising themselves; they divided into two parties, each having a leader; the leaders now advanced, threw their spears, and were succeeded by others, who went alternately through the same manœuvres; this conflict lasted for near two hours: the sport, as it seemed at first, became at last very serious, for they attacked each other in a most violent manner, while the women ran up and down making terrible lamentations: the boat's crew perceived one of the natives walk off with a spear in his side, and from the groans of the women, they imagined others were wounded. There was a spear thrown by some of the natives, who were concealed, at the crew, while the boat was returning close along the shore, but on account of the surprising force with which it was hurled, it providentially flew over the boat a considerable way: it was late in the evening before the gentlemen arrived in Sydney Cove.

A report had now prevailed in the settlement, that one Dailey, a convict, had discovered a gold mine near the entrance of the harbour. While the governor was absent, this man had informed the lieutenant-governor and the judge-advocate, that he had found a quantity of yellow-coloured ore, which upon being examined proved to contain a proportion of gold: for this discovery he claimed his freedom, and that of a female convict, their passage to England, and a pecuniary compensation. This story was told with so much plausibility, that the gentlemen he made application to did not refuse it credence; however, they said, that he could not expect any thing till he had put them in possession of the mine, and they made no doubt but the governor, on his return, would reward him in the most ample manner. Dailey, however, evaded all interrogations: he declared, he would not give the desired account to any one but the governor himself, when he returned, and that only upon condition the reward he demanded for to great a discovery was secured to him before he gave the information. Upon this the lieutenant-governor declared, if he did not show what part of the country it was in, he should be punished. After some hesitations, he proposed that an officer should be sent with him, (for the mine, he pretended, was in the lower part of the harbour, near the sea-shore) and he would show the place to the officer. A boat was immediately ordered from the Sirius, and an officer, with a corporal and a few private soldiers, directed to attend him wherever he was pleased to go. They landed according to his directions, when he begged leave to withdraw, pretending a sudden occasion; instead of returning to the officer and his men, he hastened immediately back to the camp, as he well knew the road, and was artful enough to persuade Captain Campbell (the officer) to send the boats away, under pretence that he should not leave the mine, till there was a strong guard sent down for its protection; and, for that reason, one of the soldiers was to have been dispatched by land, to

assure the lieutenant Dailey of his discovery. Dailey, after a short stay, returned in the afternoon, and informed that he had left the officer, and that he was disappointed: still the lieutenant Dailey was amused with seeing the misfortune of his own tent, took a few minutes to see Lieutenant Paul, Dailey to Captain Paul, who was ready to set off, who had with him a party, who had with them a return, searching for the cheat, and were exceedingly vexed at the discovery. Dailey to leave him very contrary to his wishes, directly secured with him to be his accomplice, and strict examination, which he had whipped. Dailey's late assertion was true, and that he was guilty of deceiving the lieutenant, who demanded, which he had applied to the lieutenant, and incessantly attempted to carry off, which he still persisted in, and returned, Lieutenant Dailey to mine was. Previous to this, the lieutenant G. Johnston attempted to deceive the lieutenant, or perhaps to find his party, he should have found this officer had begun to be somewhat impatient; content had produced weariness, which he had filed down. The silver parated the parts, small quantity of gold, examined a few afterwards he was wear the initial of imagined indeed that

Captain Hunter fails to discover a gold mine near the entrance of the harbour. — Change of Water given by a fabulous Island — Information of the Government — Arrival of the Albatross from the Cape of Good Hope — and dangerous — Curfury R. marks —

CAPTAIN HUNTER'S final orders, on the 11th of October, 1791, his friends dined on board the ship, in the evening, he took leave, and on the 12th, with a south-west wind, sailed

assure the lieutenant-governor of the veracity of the discovery. Dailey arrived to the camp early in the afternoon, and informed the lieutenant-governor that he had left the officer in possession of the mine, and that he was dispatched by Capt. Campbell for another guard: still the lieutenant-governor doubted, but amused Dailey with promises: the impostor, foreseeing the miscarriage of his scheme, hastened to his own tent, took a few things out of it and absconded. Lieutenant Paulden had received orders to attend Dailey to Captain Campbell, but before the guard was ready to set out Captain Campbell and his party, who had waited several hours for Dailey's return, searching and hallooing through the woods for the cheat, returned very much fatigued and exceedingly vexed at the imposition. The deception was now apparent, and hunger having obliged Dailey to leave his concealment, his reward was very contrary to his expectations; he was immediately secured with two others who were suspected to be his accomplices, and having undergone a private and strict examination, ordered to be severely whipped. Dailey notwithstanding persisted that his late assertion was true, and pretended that his motive for deceiving the officer, was through an apprehension he would not receive the reward he demanded, which he thought himself sure of upon an application to the governor. He was threatened with a repetition of the whipping every week, between the intervals to be put to hard labour, and incessantly loaded with heavy irons, if he attempted to carry on the deception; notwithstanding which he still persisted, and when the governor returned, Lieutenant J. Johnston was suffered to accompany him to the place where the pretended mine was. Previous to their setting out Lieutenant G. Johnstone assured Dailey, that if he attempted to deceive him as he had done Capt. Campbell, or presume to move three yards from him or his party, he should instantly be shot. When he found this officer loading his gun with ball, he began to be somewhat alarmed, and acknowledged the imposition; confessing that the specimens which he had produced were composed of brass and gold, which he had filed for the purpose and melted down. The silversmith who tried the ore had separated the parts, and consequently discovered a small quantity of gold. He was accordingly brought back, examined again, and punished as before; afterwards he was set at liberty, but obliged to wear the initial of *rogue* upon his back. It was imagined indeed that this convict was insane, but

his cunning was too deep for that of a madman. When he circulated the report of the mine, he pretended that he had sold several pounds weight of the ore to the master and sailors of the Golden Grove: this artful addition to the tale rendered the story more plausible, and orders were consequently issued that none of the sailors should leave the ships after sun-set.

The Supply arrived on the 26th instant, after a rough, tedious, and disagreeable passage: she had landed the stores, with much difficulty, but not in a place of safety. So dangerous is the entering and embarking from this island, that Mr. Cunningham, a midshipman of the Sirius, and three seamen, were lost in a boat, owing to the violence of the surf: there is not an harbour capable of admitting even a small vessel with security, and the anchorage is likewise bad.

Some of the natives having discovered a few goats belonging to the Supply browsing near the hospital, threw a spear and killed a kid, with which they made off: they afterwards destroyed a he-goat belonging to the governor, and seized every opportunity that offered of destroying the cattle: they had been also violent with some of the convicts, but carefully avoided any that were armed with muskets, or dressed in military clothes.

It was very cloudy and rainy weather in September, till about the 20th; after that there were very strong gales from the south-east quarter.

A phenomenon appeared on the 5th of this month, uncommon in the southern hemisphere, which was an Aurora Australis, about half after six in the evening.

Governor Phillip signified to Capt. Hunter his intention of dispatching the Sirius very soon to the Cape of Good Hope, in order to purchase such quantity of provisions as she was capable of carrying; for which purpose he desired the captain to take from her some of her guns, and whatever articles could be spared, that she might be lightened, and have as much room as possible for the fresh stores: accordingly, eight guns, with their carriages, 24 rounds of shot for each gun, 20 half barrels of powder, an anchor, and several other things, were put on shore at Sydney Cove; also the ship's long-boat, as Captain Hunter was to purchase another when he arrived at the Cape. On the 30th instant Capt. Hunter received his final orders, and made preparations for his voyage, for the sake of relating which we shall take a temporary leave of the new settlement.

BOOK II.

CHAPTER I.

Captain Hunter sails for the Cape of Good Hope—Departure of the Golden Grove—The Captain prefers the Eastern Passage—Changeable Wind and Weather—A serious Report of the Carpenter—Conjectures thereupon—An allowance of Wort given for the Scurvy—They fall in with dangerous Ice Islands—Captain finds Diego Ramirez to be a fabulous Island—Scurvy very violent—Deaths of two Seamen—Anchorage in Table Bay—Politene's and Attention of the Governor—Captain Hunter's Attention to the Sick and Invalids—Arrival of a Dutch India Ship—Information—Arrival of a Dutch Frigate—Account of Lieutenant Shortland—His Misfortunes, Distress, &c.—Arrival of the Alexander—Informations confirmed—Stores provided—Leak stopped with difficulty—Departure from the Cape of Good Hope—The Weather, Wind, &c. &c.—A Tempest, with the Consequences—Situation critical and dangerous—Embayed—Great Difficulties—Vessel leaky—Marie Islands passed—Arrival at Port Jackson—Casualty Remarks—Directions for sailing into Port Jackson, by Capt. Hunter.

CAPTAIN HUNTER having received his final orders, the Sirius was unmoored on the 1st of October. Governor Phillip and his friends dined on board her; and it being an east wind, she worked down to the lower anchorage: in the evening the governor and other gentlemen took leave, and on the 2d she put to sea, with a south-west wind, and the same day the Golden

Grove sailed for Norfolk Island, with a reinforcement of male and female convicts; two free men, as gardeners; a midshipman from the Sirius, to supply the room of the late Mr. Cunningham; a serjeant, corporal, and six privates; also a competency of provisions for eighteen months.

As soon as they were clear of the harbour, the wind changed more to the southward; the weather became

became foul and hazy, and there were some strong gales. A very serious report was made by the carpenter, signifying that the vessel already made water, though it was previously imagined that she was remarkably firm. It is not to be wondered, that Capt. Hunter was exceedingly concerned at this information, as the voyage now entered upon was of the greatest moment, for the scarcity of flour, as well as other necessaries, rendered it absolutely urgent, the stock of this article being by no means adequate to the quantity of salt beef and pork; indeed the ship's crew, for want of proper nutriment, were not sufficiently strong to undertake those hardships which are attendant on a leaky vessel: the governor had entirely left the route of this voyage to Capt. Hunter's choice, but gave some intimations of preferring the western route, which, as it had never been attempted, did by no means meet the approbation of Capt. Hunter, especially as he deemed his vessel not adequate to the task of making experiments, and likewise was inclined to think that such a voyage would have been both tedious and dangerous, for delay would certainly have been attended with much danger, on account of the unhealthy situation of the men: the captain, therefore, judged proper to pursue the track of his predecessors, and by making an eastern passage, pass to the southward of New Zealand, and round Cape Horn.

For two days they stood off to the eastward, with hopes of advancing several leagues; but the wind remaining in the same point, the weather continuing hazy and foul, their progress was still slow. On the 5th, the wind veered to S. S. E. and being now about 70 leagues from the coast, they tacked about, and stood to the S. W. notwithstanding this change of wind, the weather remained the same.

It became absolutely necessary to pump the vessel every two hours, as she made water from ten to twelve inches, chiefly upon the larboard. Captain Hunter imagining the leak to be somewhere about the starboard bow, near the surface of the water, was in hopes, when the weather became moderate, and the water smooth, that it might be easily stopped. Another report from the captain rendered him still more sanguine in his expectations, as he understood the leak was under the after-part of the fore channel, and it was suspected to proceed from one of the butt-holes being corroded by the copper which had been taken off upon the vessels being first sheathed.

On the 6th the weather became more clear; about noon the wind shifted to E. and E. by N. the vessel steered S. S. E. The wind (as it was wished) came next to N. E. and N. but still the weather was as before.

The crew were now served with slops, as it became rather cold, and it was expected, from the track which it was necessary to take, that it would be still colder. On the 9th the wind became settled in the S. W. quarter, and the vessel steered a course for the south cape of New Zealand, which on the 12th they passed; but the weather still continuing foul, they did not attempt to make it, but stood aloof about a degree and half to the southward of it. The wind now came from the N. W. quarter, attended with continual squalls, heavy rain, and cold weather. Several birds were seen at this time. The ship's company, according to the directions of Mr. Worgan the surgeon, who deemed the essence of malt of great service, had now a proper allowance of wort.

The wind continued for several days light and variable, sometimes from the south and south-east, and sometimes from the northward: the weather as usual. On the 22d it became rather fair, the wind being then westward: several divers were seen in the day, and heard at night. In sailing from New Zealand to Cape Horn, Capt. Hunter kept in

a parallel between the tracks of the Resolution and Adventure, in hopes of falling in with them, if any island lay between the parallels in which those ships sailed. The weather and winds became equally variable; and, by the frequent shiftings of the latter, the sea was in great confusion.

From the 2d of November to the 6th, the winds were from N. by W. to N. N. E. From the 7th until the 17th the weather was very variable; and, in like manner, the wind, which was between the S. E. and S. W. quarters, attended continually with very heavy snow and hail, and strong gales: these showers were, in general, accompanied with furious squalls.

On the 18th the wind veered to the west, and the weather became somewhat fair; there were some gentle breezes: from this to the 24th, they very often fell in with mountains of ice, and on this day the ice islands were so numerous, that they were often obliged to change their course: the weather was still hazy and foul, but there were fresh gales, which became the succeeding day (25th) so strong, as to occasion many heavy squalls. They were now approaching Cape Horn, and Capt. Hunter understanding, from the charts of Terra del Fuego, that there was an island bearing from the Cape about S. S. W. called Diego Ramirez, distant about twelve leagues from the land: he deemed it most proper to proceed in the way of making it, being desirous of expediting his voyage as soon as possible, on account of the urgent necessity thereof. On the 26th, about noon, they were exactly in the parallel of Diego Ramirez; but, as they continued their course N. E. the captain was convinced that there is no such island in existence. Still they encountered several mountains of ice; and frequently met with divers and seals. On the 27th the wind inclined to the northward, and from that to the N. E. attended with some fresh gales: they had now got but a very small distance to the eastward of the Cape. From this to the 12th of December, the wind was in the N. E. quarter, which constancy near Cape Horn was deemed uncommon. This day one of the seamen, Henry Fitz-Gerald, died: he was afflicted with some complaint in his lungs, but his chief ailment was the scurvy, which was at present so general as to be truly alarming, especially as there was nothing on board to afford any relief, except the essence of malt, which was very insufficient, on account of both the violence and continuance of this disorder.

On the morning of the 13th they passed a most remarkable large ice island, imagined to have been 350 feet in its perpendicular height, and about three miles in length. The wind changed suddenly to the 16th, attended with a steady gale; on the 19th it blew very strong from W. N. W. and on account of some frequent showers of rain changed to the S. W. quarter; the weather likewise changing from hazy to fair. Having been twenty-eight days among the ice, and made about 800 leagues, this day they got out from among the ice islands, which undoubtedly would have been very dangerous in the night time, but that the nights were very short in high latitudes, and scarcely any darkness. They had now strong westerly winds, which were very favourable, and on Christmas-day they arrived upon the meridian of Greenwich. Another seaman, John Shine, died on the 30th; and the succeeding day another, Joseph Caldwell: both perished on account of the scurvy. This evening they made a short trip off till midnight, when they tacked about and stood for land again, which they saw early on the next morning; the nearest was distant about four leagues, and the Table Mountain about ten S. by P. they had fallen to leeward on account of the continuance of a strong wind from the southward.

On the 1st of January, 1789, they stood along shore to the southward, and were a-break of Robin's

bin's Island in the now, but in vain into Table Bay.

It was Captain to anchor before creation to the m healthy situation, the necessary duties north end, and and landing-places ground.

A boat was dispatched on shore to the necessary enquiries of he was received an lity by the officer every information imperfect manner, word of English, stand Dutch. A sent by the officer long voyage; this who till now were in port.

On the 2nd of failed up to Table northward, where, ing, they anchored and a half, and mor sage was now received Graaff, to inform heartily welcome to which there was it was therefore rec would signify what need of, and orders for the supplies to be

About forty in care of Mr. Worgan pared for the sick, a the captain, who was recovery, as he requi to return as expedite

On the 9th, a D whence it was under ports, the Prince of store-ship, had arrived greatest distress on and dissolution of sev the men were to ex with the utmost diff vessels into a place Dutch frigate from account of Lieutenant port, about the 7th of ship; the crew had fu sickness, that the their passage, and the their assistance in sec the sails; but the mo formation was, that cificated to sink the him, for the sake of notwithstanding was had not this been don have reached Batavia, only four out of th even to stand upon de

On the 18th of Feb preparing to set sail, the arrival of Lieute under transport, which going off from the Point. This interval pleasure on both sides ed every thing, which parted relative to his tive months on his part his departure from P'c

bin's Island in the afternoon. They endeavoured now, but in vain, to fetch round the reef and get into Table Bay.

It was Captain Hunter's wish to bring the ship to anchor before night, in order to give some recreation to the men, who, on account of their unhealthy situation, were scarcely able to perform the necessary duties; accordingly he ran round the north end, and anchored right off the flag-Staff and landing-place in nine fathoms water coarse ground.

A boat was dispatched with the first lieutenant on shore to the island, in order to make some necessary enquiries of the commanding officer there; he was received and treated with the greatest civility by the officer, who very politely gave him every information he could, but that in the most imperfect manner, as the officer could not speak a word of English, nor did the lieutenant understand Dutch. A basket of fruit was very kindly sent by the officer as some refreshment after a long voyage; this was divided among the sick, who till now were very apprehensive they were not in port.

On the 2nd of January they got under way and sailed up to Table Bay with a fine wind from the northward, where, about ten o'clock in the morning, they anchored in water about seven fathoms and a half, and moored a cable each way. A message was now received from Governor Van de Graaff, to inform Captain Hunter, that he was heartily welcome to all the articles he wanted, of which there was fortunately great abundance; it was therefore requested of the captain that he would signify what and how much he stood in need of, and orders should be immediately issued for the supplies to be prepared.

About forty invalids were landed under the care of Mr. Worgan, and comfortable places prepared for the sick, according to the directions of the captain, who was very anxious for their speedy recovery, as he required the services of all a-board, to return as expeditiously as possible.

On the 9th, a Dutch India ship arrived here, whence it was understood that one of the transports, the Prince of Wales, and the Borrowdale store-ship, had arrived at Rio Janeiro singly, in the greatest distress on account of the severe sickness and dissolution of several on board of her; in short, the men were so exceedingly weak, that it was with the utmost difficulty they could bring their vessels into a place of security. On the 19th a Dutch frigate from Batavia likewise brought an account of Lieutenant Shortland's arrival at that port, about the 7th of December, 1788, with a single ship; the crew had suffered so much through severe sickness, that the majority of them had died upon their passage, and the officers were obliged to join their assistance in securing the vessels and handing the sails; but the most distressing part of the information was, that Lieutenant Shortland was necessitated to sink the other ship which accompanied him, for the sake of uniting both crews, which notwithstanding was scarcely sufficient to man one; had not this been done, neither of the vessels could have reached Batavia. On his arrival there were only four out of the two crews that were able even to stand upon deck.

On the 18th of February as Captain Hunter was preparing to set sail, he was agreeably surprised by the arrival of Lieutenant Shortland in the Alexander transport, which he discovered as he was going off from the shore coming round Green Point. This interview was productive of great pleasure on both sides; the lieutenant had confirmed every thing which the Dutch frigate had imparted relative to his misfortunes; he was almost five months on his passage to Batavia. Previous to his departure from Port Jackson, he had been in

company with the two vessels of which the Dutch Indian had given an account.

During the captain's stay in Table Bay, he experienced much polite attention from the governor and other officers of the settlement. On the 20th of February he sailed for Port Jackson; having provided about six months store of flour for the whole settlement, with other necessary articles; previous to the embarking of these the vessel had been heeled for the purpose of stopping the leak, which was attended with great difficulty at first, but by the dint of perseverance and labour was at length accomplished. The principal hole, for there were several small ones, which was about an inch, was carefully stopped up with a wooden plug, which was afterwards covered with copper: notwithstanding all this precaution, the vessel still made water, it being impossible at present to remedy its defects.

After leaving the Cape of Good Hope the wind continued for several days southward, the weather foul and hazy; the trussel-trees of the main-top-mast having been sprung on the 20th, after striking they were unrigged, and new ones fitted; there were now very heavy gales and a tumultuous sea, the wind from N. N. E. and N. still continuing very unfavourable till the 20th, when it shifted westward; but when they were seizing this opportunity of making all the sail they could, it suddenly shifted to the southward, attended with a violent blast. Captain Hunter was in hopes, as they were near Van Diemen's Land, to be able to cross it, and complete his return in a short time; but the blast became a tempest, the sea was more tumultuous while the weather was most remarkably foul. The next day the fore-mast, and mizzen stay-sails were all split by the violence of the wind; on account of this misfortune they were forced to apply the reeved fore-sail and balanced mizzen, also to hand the fore-sail for some time. This tempest increasing instead of abating, rendered their situation both critical and dangerous; there were three days that they saw no sun, nor a star at night: it having cleared a little in the horizon, about half past three in the afternoon, there was land seen bearing east; they consequently wore the ship and stood to the westward; the wind was now S. S. E. still continuing violent. After several conjectures, fears, and experiments, they found themselves embayed, the sea swelling in a most alarming manner, the weather still foul, and a black gloomy prospect before them: every one was now ordered to keep on deck; the ship carrying all the canvas it could possibly bear, and upon the appearance of land under the lee, the men were prepared to wear and lay the ship's head the other way; ignorant of the part of coast they were upon, the deplorable situation of the crew can better be conceived than expressed. Every man now expected his last moment, not knowing what oppositions of rocks might be in the way, or how soon the ship might strike! Notwithstanding the despair and apprehensions so natural upon such a dreadful occasion, the sailors behaved with uncommon resolution, and executed their orders with the greatest facility. Reason in spite of horror prevailed; the men knew that if the vessel was lost they must all perish alike, for the escape of any one individual was impossible; impressed therefore with this idea, they united all their exertions for the benefit of all. It was wonderful what a press of sail the vessel bore: the close-reefed fore and top-sails were set over the reeved courses; the wind was rather favourable near two points, and the vessel seemed somewhat better in her present situation; but the swelling of the sea, the fury of the gale, and the haziness of the weather, rendered the prospect black and melancholy!

Every officer and man were upon the look out. The captain, anxious for the preservation of those

who were with him, exerted his utmost to revive their drooping spirits: he was anxiously looking from the quarter-deck to the leeward; he saw, but with silence, the looming of a very rocky mountain: this was likewise observed by the sailors who were upon the look-out, and who immediately gave the signal of land; but the captain very nobly affecting an air of indifference, made light of it, assuring them as it was upon the beam it could be productive of no danger: the pressure of sail almost buried the vessel in the sea. After some time, and much difficulty, they found themselves near Tafman's Head, which passing, they endeavoured to weather Maria's Islands: they were now headed with the wind; which change would have been inevitably fatal before: the task of pumping was exceedingly laborious upon the men, but absolutely necessary, as the vessel made much water. Having, in a most wonderful and miraculous manner, accomplished their purpose of weathering Maria's Islands, they stood eastward, with the hopes of gaining an offing from the coast; the vessel at this time was very weak, as it suffered much material damage. The wind now veered to S. E. and E. S. E. which brought them again upon a lee-shore; but as the land was within twenty leagues, and the strong gales had ceased, their apprehensions were in a great measure abated.

On the 26th of April, the wind became northward, attended with strong gales and violent squalls: thus it continued till the 2d of May, when it veered to the southward, then to the eastward. They made land on the 6th in the morning, in latitude 33 deg. 30 min. south, and were in sight of the entrance into Port Jackson on the 8th. On the 9th they anchored in Sydney Cove, where they found the Supply armed tender.

"Remarks and Directions for sailing into Port JACKSON, by Captain JOHN HUNTER, of the *Sirius*."

"IN coming in with Port Jackson, you will not immediately discover where the harbour is; steer right in for the outer points, for there is not any thing in the way but what shows itself by the sea breaking on it, except a reef on the south shore, which runs off a small distance only: when you are past this reef, and are abreast the next point on the same side, you will open to the southward of an extensive branch of the harbour, into which you will sail, taking care to keep the shore on either side well on board, for there is a reef which dries at low-water, and lies very near the middle channel, right off the first sandy cove on the east shore: this reef is pretty broad athwart, as well as up and down the channel, and shoals very gradually: the marks for it are the outer north point and inner south point touching, Green Point will then be on, with a remarkable notch in the back land. To avoid it to the eastward, pass the inner south head a cable's length from it, and when you open any part of the sandy beach of Camp Cove, haul short in for it until you bring the inner north head and inner south head on with each other; that mark will carry you up in five and six fathom: but if you cannot weather the reef, tack and stand into Camp Cove, which shoals gradually. If you pass to the westward of the reef, steer in for Middle Cape, which is steep too; then steer up for the next point above it, on the same side: when you are that length, you may take what part of the channel you please, or anchor where you like.

"It flows full, and changes a quarter past eight,

"Rises 4 6 neap tide,

"Ditto 6 0 spring ditto."

CHAPTER II.

*Occurrences during Captain Hunter's absence—Murder of Cooper Handley—A general Court-Martial convened—Result thereof—A Marine lost—Consequent supposition—A Convict punished for Theft—Return of the Golden Grove—Her disasters—Muster's and Boat's crew's danger—Murder of Thomas Bulmore—Natives in the Small-Pox—Their deplorable situation—Several found dead in melancholy attitudes—Two Children and their Fathers (Natives) brought to the Hospital—Death of the old Men—Recovery of the Children—Death of Capt. Shea—Six Marines tried for Robbery—Found guilty, and executed—Governor's plan to reconcile the Natives—One of them brought to his house by force—Cloathed, and entertained—He becomes familiar—Dines with Captain Hunter—Sickness of the Small-Pox—His Death—A visit to Broken Bay—Occasional Remarks—Return to Port Jackson—Another visit—Success thereof—Events—The Sail-maker of the *Sirius* found—His Account.*

THE following are the most remarkable occurrences which happened at the new settlement during the absence of Capt. Hunter.

On the 4th of October, 1788, Cooper Handley, a convict, who went out with an armed party of marines to gather sweet tea, and other herbs, strayed away from his party, and being afterwards met by the natives, was murdered. The marines heard the noise of the natives, and the groans of Handley, but could not find the place where he was in time to preserve his life: they pursued the murderers, but did not overtake them. Having returned with his body most shockingly mutilated, it was in the evening sent out to be interred, attended by a party of soldiers and convicts, according to the command of the governor.

On the 10th there was a general court-martial, convened by his excellency's warrant. As soon as the deputy judge-advocate and the members were assembled, they all concurred in opinion that though the governor had full power and authority to grant and hold court-martials among regular troops, yet as a corps of marines, amenable to the instructions issued from the board of admiralty, and under the influence of a particular code of laws, they could not proceed to trial, the said board not having dele-

gated any part of their authority over the marine corps (particularly that of granting and holding court-martials) to the governor, neither did any part of the act of parliament for instituting a colony in New South Wales contain directions relative to the said subject in any degree: the marine instructions, with respect to court-martials, state, that no general court-martial can be ordered but by the Lord High Admiral, or the commissioners for executing the office; nor any sentence be carried into execution, until approved of by him or them, unless the marines, as in America, should be by act of parliament considered as a part of the army, which is not the case here.

On the 28th a marine went to gather sweet tea, and some herbs, but never returned, nor could any information of him be ever had; it was suspected, as he departed unarmed, that he was murdered by the natives.

On the 7th of November a convict received five hundred lashes for stealing eight penny-worth of soap, which belonged to another convict, according to the sentence of the criminal-court.

On the 10th the *Golden Grove* returned from Norfolk Island, with timber and some other articles for the governor. During her stay there, so

unsafe is every hand obliged to cut her ter of the ship was boat's crew and his

Thomas Bulmore the 11th, in consequence received from another on the 17th, and quitted.

Unfortunately among the natives exceedingly deplorable women, and children supposed, as none of with the small-pox disorder till now, with any remedies recurred, from the position that they were detained, were distinguished several were found in their heads flopped clinging on rocks or a itself; in short, that they were melancholy her face on the forehead knees were drawn up two children, a boy ten years of age, exposed to be their father's attention; they were buried in a short time, and seemed very much shewn them.

Captain Shea, of ing consumption; killed. Six marines were robbing the public stores that these men had practice, being seduced whom they had a the loss of these men they were however

The continual attentions of the natives, he was resolved on conciliate their contented that by en natives, cloathing a they were part of his measure remove their purpose Lieutenant Ball George Johnston, v the harbour: according native who was to thirty years of age; gentlemen, and who presents, one of the instructions, whipped spontaneously dragged was exceedingly alarm manner as to attempt immediately made effect: however, the him; they removed they brought him to an iron upon his legs, and which he maintained. As the particularly attentive and in time reconcile ornament was soon incommode his legs whenever he pleased. Ara-ha-nun; he was learned in a short time

At this time there ed, and the gardens wife, in due season.

unsafe is every harbour in the whole island, the was obliged to cut her cable and stand to sea: the master of the ship was swamped in the surf, and his boat's crew and himself had nearly perished.

Thomas Bulmore, a private marine, died on the 11th, in consequence of some severe blows he received from another, who was tried for his life on the 17th, and for want of sufficient proof acquitted.

Unfortunately the small-pox had found access among the natives, whose situation therein was exceedingly deplorable. Several of them, men, women, and children, were found dead: it was supposed, as none of these people were seen marked with the small-pox, that they were strangers to the disorder till now, and consequently unacquainted with any remedies for it; indeed it was very apparent, from the positions of those that were dead, that they were deterred by their friends, who, no doubt, were disgusted with their appearance. Several were found sitting on their haunches with their heads sloped between their knees, others reclining on rocks or any kind of eminence that offered itself; in short, their attitudes were as various as they were melancholy. A woman was found with her face on the sand between her feet, while her knees were drawn up to her shoulders: there were two children, a boy and a girl, of about eight and ten years of age, and two old men, who were supposed to be their fathers, found in a perishing situation; they were brought to the hospital; the two men died in a short time, but the children recovered, and seemed very thankful for the attention that was shewn them.

Captain Shea, of the marines, died of a galloping consumption; his loss was very much regretted. Six marines were tried and found guilty of robbing the public stores; it was proved upon trial, that these men had been often guilty of this practice, being seduced by some women convicts with whom they had a connection. Notwithstanding the loss of these men was very much to be lamented, they were however executed.

The continual attacks, murders, and depredations of the natives, so alarmed the governor, that he was resolved on trying every experiment to conciliate their confidence and friendship: he now imagined that by entertaining two or three of these natives, cloathing and keeping them entirely as if they were part of his own family, it would in a great measure remove their enmity and fears; for this purpose Lieutenant Ball, of the Supply, and Lieutenant George Johnston, were sent with two boats down the harbour: according to their wishes they met a native who was tolerably well made, and about thirty years of age; he was very familiar with the gentlemen, and while they were amusing him with presents, one of the seamen, according to his instructions, whipped a rope round his neck, and instantaneously dragged him into the boat; the man was exceedingly alarmed; he screamed in such a manner as to assemble several of his friends, who immediately made use of their spears, but without effect: however, the officers endeavoured to appease him; they removed the rope to his leg, and when they brought him to the governor's house, they put an iron upon his leg, in order to prevent his escape, and which he was led to believe was an ornament. As the governor and all present were particularly attentive to him, he became cheerful, and in time reconciled to his situation. His supposed ornament was soon taken away, as it evidently incommoded his leg, and he was permitted to go wherever he pleased. The name of this native was Ara-ba-noo; he was remarkably docile, having learned in a short time all the gentlemen's names.

At this time there was a number of huts erected, and the gardens were so improved as to promise, in due season, a very extensive farm: there

was a great quantity of ground already cleared upon Rose-hill for the cultivation of corn; but the difficulties in bringing cultivation to perfection were almost insurmountable; the want of sufficient hands to accomplish the necessary labour was, in a great measure, the chief cause of its being retarded; add to which, the scarcity of water, particularly at Rose-hill, where there is very little, and that little very bad: the corn, when sown, made a most promising appearance at first; but as soon as it attained two or three feet height, it was so miserable as to be worth nothing: indeed if it had been good, the rats, which are a very great plague in this country, would have destroyed it.

Captain Hunter, upon his return, having waited on the governor to pay his respects, to his no little astonishment, perceived Ara-ba-noo drinking tea with his excellency and friends; he was very genteely dressed, and seemed perfectly acquainted with the use of a cup and saucer. Ara-ba-noo in a very short time learned Captain Hunter's name, and appeared to be remarkably attached to him.

On the 10th of May, 1789, the governor and his family dined with Captain Hunter, also Ara-ba-noo, who behaved exceedingly well, and was very loquacious. It was acknowledged by all the present company, that he was an agreeable companion.

On the succeeding day Ara-ba-noo sickened of the small-pox. Surgeon White was exceedingly attentive to him, but in spite of all his care he died on the 16th, and was universally lamented: he was buried, by command of the governor, in a very genteel manner.

The governor, desirous to explore again some parts of the harbour of Broken Bay, made a party on the 6th of June, which consisted of himself, Captains Hunter, Johnston, Collins, Surgeon White, Messrs. Worgan, Fowell, and a few armed attendants: they landed on the north part of Port Jackson, and at six o'clock in the morning proceeded northward on the sea-coast; previous to this Mr. Kellie was dispatched with two boats, containing such a quantity of provisions as they deemed sufficient.

Their march was at first very fatiguing, owing to the roughness of the paths, and the several ascents of hills: the carriage of their provisions too, which was no small burthen, rendered their journey still more tiresome.

About four o'clock they reached the fourth branch of Broken Bay, and were not a little pleased with the safe arrival of their boats, which contained their supplies.

The company was at present too much fatigued to go on further: in order to rest and refresh themselves, they pitched their tents, and having been very successful at this time in catching fish, they made a hearty dinner, and rested for the remainder of the day.

The next morning they reached Pitt Water, and here they delayed so long in exploring this and the adjacent places, that it was afterwards judged too late to prosecute their march, so they returned to the place where they had refreshed themselves the preceding day, and passed this night as before.

The boats crews discovered, on their rambles, several natives almost perishing in the small-pox: particularly a female who was lying on the wet grass in a most miserable situation. The governor and his friends, when informed of her misery, went to see her, made a fire for her, dried the grass, broiled some fish and birds which they had shot, and gave her refreshment; the poor wretch appeared exceedingly thankful: they now left her to repose herself; and having renewed their visit, found her with an infant lying on the ground; her maternal

maternal affection was extremely moving; the gentlemen gave her refreshments again, and in the morning repeated their kindness.

This day, June 8th, the governor and his party embarked in the boats, and crossed the bay to the north branch: they landed on the west shore, where they dined; they then took the east side, and having me: with many mangroves and shoals, returned and encamped on the west shore.

Early on the 9th they took the northward direction, and after rowing about seven miles up the head of the harbour, and meeting several extensive shoals, they approached the north entrance, and pitched their tents for the night: the two succeeding days were spent in exploring the north harbour, during which time they were very successful in catching fish, especially a kind of mullet, which was exceedingly good, and on which account the island received the name of Mullet. The governor and Capt. Hunter continued their examination for the day, while the rest of the party remained in the tents. They remained two nights in Mullet Island.

Early the next morning they proceeded to examine a point of high land, which they supposed an island; in this they were not deceived: they had the satisfaction also of making fresh discoveries. Having pitched their tents in the best place they could find, (but by no means a desirable situation) they refreshed and rested themselves: they did not renew their examination the next day till rather late, on account of the haziness of the weather; time, therefore, did not admit of much penetration: the next day was equally disagreeable; they therefore made for Pitt Water, where they encamped. The governor sought the mother and child whom he had relieved in this place; but as they were gone, he was in hopes she was so well recovered as to be no longer disgusting to her friends.

The wind being northerly, they sailed at midnight for home, and early the next morning proceeded by land: about three o'clock they reached the north cove of Port Jackson.

Another visit to Broken Bay was undertaken on the 25th of June, by the same party, with the additional number of five marines. In the course of this expedition nothing material occurred, as they were only reviewing the places which they had seen before. They met with two little children at Mullet Island, almost starved to death, who were very grateful for the relief which was bestowed them: they also met with several dead natives on the way; many of whom were so wasted, that they were mere skeletons. After a fortnight's ramble, Captain Hunter's shoes were entirely worn out with the roughness of the ground, so that he was determined to return to Broken Bay, where the boats were waiting: the

rest of the party, except Capt. Collins, who wished to join Captain Hunter, were inclined to walk about the head of the north-west harbour. While Captains Hunter and Collins were about entering into this determination, two of the gentlemen, who were desirous to cross through the wood to the Sirius, where there were about 400 yards of water. They accordingly made preparations for swimming; each tied his shirt, breeches, and shoes, up in a handkerchief, and threw the bundle across his shoulders; then, having taken a glass of rum, they plunged in, and swam for the opposite shore; but one of the gentlemen, being suddenly seized with the cramp, was obliged to drop his bundle, which was consequently lost. They made as much expedition as possible to go on board the ship, for fear, on account of being so long naked, they might get a severe cold. I y sent a boat for the other gentlemen, who were very happy at its appearance, being at this time exceedingly fatigued.

During this expedition, the sudden report of a great gun caused an alarm among the gentlemen; and as it was naturally supposed to proceed from some person who had gone astray in the woods, it was repeatedly answered. Another report awakened their attention, and they all fired several times together; they still imagined that they heard an equal repetition of the responses, which sounded as afar off. By perseverance, they approached the place whence the firings proceeded; and as they frequently called out together, they heard at last a faint voice at some little distance; this encouraged them to go on, and they soon discovered the lost person, who proved to be one Peter White, sail-maker to the Sirius, who had been absent four days. He was so exhausted with grief and hunger, that he could scarcely stand: he had only four ounces of biscuit when he left the vessel, some of which he had still remaining. It was a long time before he was quite recovered. The gentlemen gave him refreshments. As soon as he was able to speak, he told them, that the blast of his gun was so bad, he could not get it to strike fire all the preceding day, when he wanted to shoot some birds for his support: on the approach of night, being very cold, he endeavoured to strike fire with it again; and notwithstanding he had laboured so long in vain before, yet now he fortunately succeeded: the next day he could do no good with it; but when he wanted to answer the gentlemen's firing, it never missed. Such was the wonderful preservation of this man, who was truly sensible of the great mercies of Providence, convinced that, had it not been for divine interposition, he must have inevitably perished!

What tho' adversities bear 'gainst us hard,
Still heav'n can send relief, as well as guard!

CHAPTER III.

Def. of the Sirius repaired.—Removed, &c. from Sydney Cove.—Survey of Broken Bay.—The same of Botany Bay.—Abstinence of Provisions curtailed.—John Mara found.—His melancholy situation.—Manner in which he was lost.—Francis Hill lost.—Searched for in vain.—Conjectures thereupon.—Hostile disposition of the Natives curbed.—Sirius removed again to Sydney Cove.—Two Natives seized.—Meeting between them and the Children.—Description of them.—One of them meditates his escape.—Effects it.—Remarks and Directions for sailing into Botany Bay.—Also for sailing into Broken Bay.

THE Sirius had now undergone some necessary repairs: Captain Phillip, who examined her, declared she was in a very weak condition; her upper works were particularly defective. The carpenters were continually on board her; and the crew were chiefly employed in cutting down timber for her use. At this time, she lay in Carcening Cove, a convenient part on the north side of the harbour; her removal from Sydney Cove being judged absolutely necessary.

Captain Hunter, agreeable to the wishes of the governor, (while the Sirius was repairing) went with a party of the gentlemen belonging to the

settlement to make a survey of Broken Bay. This was in the middle of August: Their examination continued about sixteen days; during which time they penetrated and sounded every place with the utmost attention. About the same time (in September) they took a survey of Botany Bay, and had a very delightful excursion, as the weather at this time was most remarkably pleasant.

On the 1st of November, orders were issued to curtail the allowance of provisions one-third. This was deemed absolutely necessary, there being at present only a supply for five months; and though provisions were shortly expected from England, yet

it was impossible to attend to the one John Mara, he was frequently supposed that he had been murdered, found by Captain's absence, sitting in a guilty state, the captain to the been put on shore with water, was on and fell asleep till it was night—alarmed, he imprudently of the wood; but, night, unfortunate tinued rambling apprehension, particularly in natives. The third side; but was so for the timely discovery certainly had died.

On the 6th of November, the master's mate walk round the S accompanied the preceding days. P, but without effect; of, it was concluded him, especially as of late, that several in their own defence them which sometimes created a proper aw

On the 7th of November, back to Sydney Cove Bradley, by command in search of a native, situated, as Araba natives might be children, who had pox, were accounted this desired reconciliation happy in their situation some of the English and his party approached harbour, according to two natives; these familiar, nor was it them: they were being seized, and power; their hands fears seemed to dim the governor, the known entirely their infant natives perceived of joy, and called likewise knew the character (the girl) and these natives, as was was a distinguished about 35 years of age, lang, about 25; and lang was under for Co-al-by, as he was looked at him, and a

On the evening of it was very dark; the era were at supper; to eat, as he was the outside of the Having by some means iron shackle which spontaneously jumped and eluded all attempts genteelly dressed, so ingly displeased with ever, became more fond of Co-al-by.

it was impossible to tell what delays or accidents might attend those store-ships. About this time one John Mara, the gunner's mate, was missing; he was frequently searched for, but in vain; it was supposed that he either lost himself in the woods, or had been murdered by the natives: he was, however, found by Captain Hunter, the third day after his absence, sitting upon a rock; but in such languishing state, that he was scarcely able to attend the captain to the boat. It seems, this man, having been put on shore one evening, to fill some casks with water, was overcome with the grog he drank, and fell fast asleep near the stream: he did not awake till it was night-time, when, being very much alarmed, he imprudently endeavoured to come out of the wood; but, on account of the darkness of the night, unfortunately went further into it. He continued rambling for two days, full of despair and apprehension, particularly as he was unarmed, and consequently in danger of being attacked by the natives. The third day he had reached the water-side; but was so exhausted, that, had it not been for the timely discovery of Capt. Hunter, he must certainly have died.

On the 6th of November, Mr. Francis Hill, one of the master's mates, lost himself in an attempt to walk round the Sirius, though he had already accompanied the gentlemen in this walk the three preceding days. Parties were sent in search for him, but without effect; and as he could never be heard of, it was concluded that the natives had destroyed him, especially as they were so hostile inclined of late, that several have found it necessary to fire in their own defence, and wound two or three of them which somewhat curbed this disposition, and created a proper awe.

On the 7th of November, the Sirius was moved back to Sydney Cove; and on the 25th Lieutenant Bradley, by command of the governor, went again in search of a native or two, in order to be domesticated, as Ara-ba-noo was, that the English and natives might be thereby reconciled. The two children, who had been preserved from the small-pox, were accounted too young as yet to promote this desired reconciliation; they were however very happy in their situation, and seemed to comprehend some of the English language. As the lieutenant and his party approached the north part of the harbour, according to their wishes they met with two natives; these men seemed very cheerful and familiar, nor was it any difficult matter to secure them: they were however very much alarmed upon being seized, and made all the resistance in their power: their hands were untied, upon which their fears seemed to diminish; and when conducted to the governor, the kind treatment they received removed entirely their apprehensions. As soon as the infant natives perceived them, they expressed a deal of joy, and called them both by their names: they likewise knew the children, whom they called A-ba-roo (the girl) and Nan-bar-ty (the boy). One of these natives, as was understood from the children, was a distinguished chief; his name was Co-al-by, about 35 years of age; the other was called Ba-na-lang, about 25; and it was supposed that Ba-na-lang was under some restraint in the presence of Co-al-by, as he was very silent whenever the chief looked at him, and apparently submissive to his will.

On the evening of the 12th of December, when it was very dark, these two natives and their keepers were at supper: Co-al-by was only pretending to eat, as he was now meditating his escape at the outside of the door, the rest being within. Having by some means loosened the rope from the iron shackle which was rivetted on his leg, he instantaneously jumped over the paling of the yard, and eluded all search. At this time he was very genteelly dressed, so that the governor was exceedingly displeased with his keeper. Ba-na-lang, however, became more lively and familiar, after the absence of Co-al-by.

No. 4.

Remarks and Directions for sailing into BOTANY BAY,
by Captain JOHN HUNTER, of the Sirius.

"The anchorage in this bay is extensive, and the passage into it easy. There is a cluster of rocks, which lie S. S. E. about two cables length from a little bare island, on the north shore; on which the sea frequently breaks very high; but if you keep Cape Banks open, you will avoid them. Both shores are bold to, till you come thus high. A little above Point Southerland (south shore) is another cluster of rocks, which to avoid, in turning, keep the land below this point open: from both the north and south sides, and from the bottom of the bay, the flats run off a great distance, from four to fifteen feet water. This river, in some parts, has good depth, and that near and within its entrance; but higher up it is all shoal water, and full of knowles of sand. It is only to be navigated by boats."

Remarks and Directions for sailing into BROKEN BAY, by the same.

"The entrance of Broken Bay lies in latitude 33 deg. 34 min. south, and longitude 151 deg. 27 min. east; the bay is large and clear; the distance, from north to south head, is two miles, and the depth is eight, ten, and twelve fathoms; but as you run up the bay it shoals to six, seven, and five fathoms. Just within the north head of the bay is the entrance of the northern branch, which, from the shoalness of the water, is only navigable for boats, or small vessels; the channel going in is very narrow, occasioned by a long spit of sand, which extends from a low sandy point on the west side of the entrance, and on which, when the wind is from the eastward, the sea breaks very high. A little within the south head of the bay is the entrance of the Southern Branch, or Pitt Water; this is a good harbour, though the entrance is rendered rather narrow by a shoal bank, which extends from the eastern point full two-thirds across; keep the west shore on board, which is pretty bold, and is a high, steep, rocky point, and steer right up the branch; three fathoms is the most you will have at low water, and that depth is only in the narrows, which are of very short extent, for as you run up you very soon deepen to four, five, six, and eight fathoms; to the shoal which narrows the entrance, it is very gradual soundings. When you are above the second point on the west shore, you have good depth of water, and good room; you may run up in mid-channel, without fear; both shores are pretty bold to, except off the points, from some of which it is shoal a small distance: in this branch there are several coves, in which a ship might lighten and careen; there is also fresh water in various parts of this harbour, with wood in abundance, and fish may be caught in all the sandy bays. The entrance of this branch is divided from the S. W. arm by several rocky points; the land over them high and steep; between which are some small sandy bays; and right off the mouth of this arm is a very high rocky island, of but small extent; its eastern end is very high and perpendicular: this island is a good mark, for any part of the bay may be known, with certainty, by the situation of it, which the chart will point out. If a stranger were coming in here for shelter in a gale of wind, I would recommend his pulling up the south-west arm, and steering in for the island, which is now called Mount Elliot, from its similarity to the north end of Gibraltar Rock; you may pass on either side, but the south side is safest. In going up the S. W. arm; keep mid-channel between the island and south shore; this shore is so bold, that you may run within two cables length of it. In your way up you will perceive a branch on the north side, which runs up north-west;

* K

when

"when thus high, you are above a bank or middle ground, on which the least water is 16 feet; you may, by keeping near the shore, pass on either side of this shoal, which has gradual soundings to it; the south side has most room, and deepest water; the north side has five fathoms: when above this, you may keep in the middle, if you wish to go higher, and the least water will be five

"or six fathoms for several miles higher: from this south-west arm several branches extend, most of which have good depth of water, but the chart will be the best guide. If you wish to enter the north-west branch, enter it by keeping the larboard shore on board; and for some distance up, as from the starboard shore, a shoal extends one-third of the distance over."

CHAPTER IV.

An Alarm—Sirius and Supply sent to Norfolk Island—Previous Account of the Progress made in Norfolk Island—Commencement of that Settlement—The Commandant's Commission read—Convicts addressed—Storehouse and temporary Dwellings erected—Wheat sown—Regulations for the preservation of good Order—Robberies—Punishments—Business retarded by Accidents—Seven poisoned by eating some Beans—Their Recovery—A Serious Misfortune—Murmuring among the Convicts—One punished for Sedition—Allotment of Provisions curtailed—Seasonable Supply—Sad Misfortune—Questions from the Governor—Answers from the Commandant—Encouragement to the Convicts—A Letter from the Governor publicly read—Number of Settlers—All places explored—Name of the first Male Child that was born—Cockswain of the Cable lost—Found—His miserable situation—Articles of War read—Conspiracy among the Convicts discovered—Their Scheme—Disimulation—Commandant's consequent Address to the Convicts—Orders published—Oath of Allegiance indiscriminately administered—A violent Hurricane—Much Damage—Additional Number of Convicts arrived—Arrival of Lieutenants John Cresswell, and fourteen Privates—A Female Convict whipped, and re-whipped—A Convict desirous to settle in the Island, after his time of Transportation—The Commandant's Indulgence—Lieut. Cresswell's House erected—Fresh Orders for the preservation of Harmony, &c.

THE time having now expired when the store-ships which were expected from England should have arrived, a general consternation took place; their exhausted state of provisions rendered this disappointment very alarming. The Governor, seeing the necessity of dividing the settlement, proposed sending an additional number from Port Jackson to Norfolk Island. Orders were therefore issued forth for the preparation of the Sirius and Supply to execute this salutary design, under the direction of Captain Hunter.

It will not be amiss first of all to apprise the reader of the progress which had been made in Norfolk Island, by those few persons who were sent there in February 1788, with Lieut. King, as mentioned in the third chapter of our first book.

As soon as this party had landed, Lieutenants King and Ball explored the island, for the purpose of fixing on the most commodious place for the new settlement. Lieut. King gave the preference to the shore close to the beach, which was overspread with iris; within which was an impenetrable forest, remarkable for its good soil: here the settlement was commenced, but on account of the scarcity of hands the progress of building was very slow.

After divine service on the first Sunday, which was performed by Lieut. King himself, his commission from the governor was publicly read, and the usual ceremony took place. He then addressed the convicts, in a speech of equal tendency with Governor Phillip's on the same occasion; and every man received that employment which was most adapted to his abilities. Instead of a bell, to summon them to church, a man was appointed to make a noise on the head of an empty cask.

In the space of about two months the storehouse was erected, and in the course of a little time temporary dwellings for the people: the garden-ground was also turned up, and a small quantity of wheat sown.

As it required no little rigour to keep the convicts within bounds, who were continually neglecting their business, and idling those who were disposed to labour; the commandant, for the preservation of good order and regularity, thought it highly essential to establish a certain number of regulations, and enforce a strict attention thereto. One Sunday therefore, after performing divine service as usual, he read to them the following orders.

"As it is highly necessary, for the preservation of good order, regularity, and cleanliness, to esta-

blish certain rules and regulations, the following are to be observed, and performed with the strictest attention.

"I. No person is to absent himself from public worship, which will begin every Sunday morning at eleven o'clock, in the commandant's house; when every one will come clean and orderly, and behave themselves devoutly.

"II. The hours of work are as follow, until further orders: to begin work at day light, and work till half past seven; at half past eight, to work again until half past eleven; and then to work again at two until sun-set.

"III. In order, to encourage the cultivation of gardens, every one will have the Saturdays to clear away and cultivate gardens for themselves; and those who are industrious will be encouraged, but those who misapply that indulgence will be deprived of it.

"IV. On application, at the proper time of the year, seeds will be distributed to those who have cleared away garden-ground; and those who raise the greatest quantity of feeds and vegetables will be encouraged and rewarded.

"V. The women are to sweep round the houses or tents every morning, and to cook the victuals for the men; and every person is strictly forbid cleaning any ship or fowls in or near the houses, but to go to the sea-side for that purpose.

"VI. Every person is strictly forbid going near Turtle Bay, and those who are found in it, or going there, will be instantly and severely punished.

"VII. The women are to collect the dirty linen belonging to the men every Friday, and to return each man his proper linen, washed and mended, on the Sunday morning.

"VIII. No person is to cut down or destroy any banana tree.

"IX. Exchanging or selling cloaths by the convicts, is strictly forbid. As their cloathing is the property of the crown, they are not to dispose of it. A disobedience of this order will be deemed a theft, and meet with a sensible punishment. It is recommended to every one to be careful of their cloathing and bedding, as accidents may happen which may prevent a speedy supply.

"X. Great care is to be taken of all the tools; each man taking his axe or hoe to his tent, or delivering them to the store-keeper, that they may not be injured by the weather.

"XI. As the future welfare of every person on

"this island depend recommended to disposition to work and, above all, to each other, which who may have it with and inclina honest, or idle, n being totally exc indulgences, but either by corpo be sent to Port J court there."

Notwithstanding several were detected one of the marines, mandant's tent: he lashed, and the qua deducted from his a fifteen years of age he received an hun found stealing a h which was fitting c lashes.

In order to facilitate employed; but for the work, particular trees, and occasioned entirely blinded by with violent colds. a carpenter, and th by eating some bea wards fired with bu lent vomitings, and ever by the assistan large quantity of swa tinued so weak that days: these beans w those which had be and Surgeon White when they were seiz before mentioned.

A very serious mis five ewes died of th perished with eating mained one ewe, o four hens, one cock,

As there was some in respect to the rec received forty lashes expressions of a fed so inconsiderate, th necessity of stinted mandant took ever economy.

About five months were finished. Prov that the common alle seasonable arrival of fully answered her t joy. A sad misfortu the loss of M in a former chapter) been dispatched, to of danger, were swe and overfet by a he except one man, wh rowly escaped.

For the reader's be cessary to subjoin the governor's several q returned by the Sup copy of both.

Questions by GOVERNOR KING, Esq; Super Settlement of Noa r. "IN what tin be able to support independent of sup

"this

"this island depends on their good behaviour, it is recommended to them to persevere in that willing disposition to work which they have hitherto shewn; and, above all, to be honest and obliging towards each other, which will recommend them to those who may have it in their power, and who have a wish and inclination to serve them: but the dishonest, or idle, may not only assure themselves of being totally excluded from any present or future indulgences, but also that they will be chastised, either by corporal punishment on the island, or be sent to Port Jackson, to be tried by a criminal court there."

Notwithstanding the menace in the last article, several were detected in robberies. John Batchelor, one of the marines, stole some rum out of the commandant's tent: he was punished with three dozen lashes, and the quantity of rum which he had taken deducted from his allowance. A convict boy, about fifteen years of age, was guilty of the same theft: he received an hundred lashes. Another convict was found stealing a hatch of eggs from under a hen, which was sitting on them: he received thirty-six lashes.

In order to facilitate the business, every artift was employed; but some unforeseen accidents retarded the work, particularly a dust which fell from the trees, and occasioned many sore eyes; one man was entirely blinded by it; besides several were laid up with violent colds. There were also two sawyers, a carpenter, and three convicts, who were poisoned by eating some beans, which they boiled, and afterwards fried with butter: they were seized with violent vomitings, and pains in their stomach; however by the assistance of the surgeon, who applied a large quantity of sweet oil, they recovered, but continued so weak that they could not work for several days: these beans were certainly the same kind of those which had been eaten by Governor Phillip and Surgeon White, on one of their excursions, when they were seized with the like complaint as before mentioned.

A very serious misfortune attended the live stock: five ewes died of the scab, and two of the sows perished with eating a poisonous herb. There remained one ewe, one goat, two sows, two boars, four hens, one cock, three ducks, and one drake.

As there was some murmuring among the convicts in respect to the receipt of provisions, one of them received forty lashes for uttering several threatening expressions of a seditious tendency: these men were so inconsiderate, that they did not understand the necessity of stinted allowances, though the commandant took every opportunity to recommend economy.

About five months after their arrival, several huts were finished. Provisions, at this time, were so low, that the common allowances were curtailed; but the seasonable arrival of the Supply (which by supplying fully answered her title) was the occasion of much joy. A sad misfortune, however, damped this pleasure; the loss of Mr. Cunningham, (as mentioned in a former chapter) with a few others, who having been dispatched to assist the Supply's boat in case of danger, were swept away westward by the side, and overfet by a heavy surf. They were all lost, except one man, who was a convict, and had narrowly escaped.

For the reader's better information it will be necessary to subjoin the commandant's answers to the governor's several questions, which he received and returned by the Supply: the following is a correct copy of both.

QUESTIONS BY GOVERNOR PHILLIP, addressed to P. G. KING, Esq; Superintendent and Commandant of the settlement of NORFOLK ISLAND.

1. "IN what time do you think the island will be able to support the people you have with you, independent of supplies from this settlement?"

2. "Do you wish to have more people sent you, and what number of men and women do you wish to have, in addition to those you have already?"
3. "In what time do you think the island will be able to maintain the additional number of people you wish to have sent you?"
4. "What ground have you in cultivation?"
5. "Have you discovered the flax plant?"
6. "How many acres of clear ground have you found in the island?"
7. "Have you any place round the island at which a vessel of thirty or forty tons can remain at anchor in security all the year round?"
8. "How far will it be possible to load any ship hereafter with spars for ships of the line: I mean in respect to the great difficulty I am told there is to land any thing on the island, or to take any thing off?"
9. "How does your stock thrive, and what does the island produce?"
10. "What live stock do you wish to have sent you?"
11. "Are those who are with you satisfied, or do they wish to be relieved?"
12. "What weather have you in general?"
13. "What are the prevailing winds?"
14. "Have you been at the small islands?"
15. "Are there any animals on the island, and what kind are they?"
16. "Have you found any lime or chalk there?"
17. "Have you been supplied with fish?"

Answers to the above Questions, by LIEUT. KING, addressed to ARTHUR PHILLIP, Esq; Capt. General and Governor in chief in and over the territory called NEW SOUTH WALES.

1. "From the excellence of the soil, and the present appearances, the island will produce more than a sufficiency of grain in two years: animal food depends on the supply and breed of stock; and clothing on the flax-plant being brought to work."
2. "With twenty more men, and women in proportion exclusive, I should be able to make a little progress in clearing and cultivating the ground."
3. "I think in two years, but in three at most, as answered by the first question."
4. "Two acres and an half in barley, and one acre in garden-ground: in September I shall have an acre in Indian corn and rice."
5. "Yes: some bundles of the flax-plant, which I put into water on the 17th of March, were taken up the 27th of July; when we found that the thick vegetable of the fibres had rotted away, but still they were covered with an hard woody substance, from which we have ineffectually tried to separate the flaxy part, which I have no doubt would make good cordage, canvas, and linen, as it appears to be of a fine and strong texture. Some lines were made of it, which were tolerably strong and good; but the want of a method to separate the woody part from the flax, will be a great hindrance to its being made useful."
6. "Not a yard square."
7. "None; without removing to the lee side of the island, as the wind changes. Anchorage is good all round the island, as the bottom is a coral sand: at about two miles from the land, the circular depth is 22 fathoms. An harbour might be made, by cutting a channel through the reef about 400 feet long; but it would be necessary to blow up some sunken rocks, to facilitate the entry: if it should ever be thought proper to do this, five vessels of seven feet draught might lie all the year round in security within the reef; they will not be able to enter but in the finest weather, with the wind from N. E. to N. W. and then they must warp in; perhaps less difficulty will be found when I am informed of the state of the weather during the summer months."

8. "I cannot answer this question so fully as I could wish, until I am acquainted with the state of the weather during the summer months. In fine weather, with the wind at N. E. spars of any dimensions may be sent off from Sydney Bay, by mooring a boat without the reef, and hauling the spars off. I have great reason to suppose anchorage will be very safe off Sydney Bay in the summer. I think vessels might be built and launched in Ball Bay; and when the flax-plant can be brought to work, cordage and sails can be made of the finest and strongest sort.

9. "Of the stock I brought with me, five ewes are dead with the scab, and two fews poisoned; the rest are all very thriving, and likely to do well. The productions of the island are, timber for the construction of vessels, pines for masting them; and, when the flax-plant can be worked, a sufficiency of cordage for the navy of Great-Britain, which needs no cultivation, as the island abounds with it, and fresh leaves shoot from the roots. Pigeons, parrots, parroquets, and other birds, are in abundance: the sea abounds with fish, and probably we may have turtle during the summer months. A number of banana trees have been found on the island.

10. "Stock of any kind would be acceptable for breeding. I have no she-goats. The leaves of the trees and underwood afford ample and wholesome food for many animals, and the fern-tree, which is very plentiful, is very good food for hogs.

11. "Every one is satisfied, and no person wishes to be relieved.

12. "During the months of March and April, we had very fine weather; since when it has been variable; and when the wind has been at S. and S. W. the air was raw and cold. The full and change of the moon has generally been accompanied with very heavy gales of wind and torrents of rain, from the N. E. or S. W. both of which have been very violent at times. We have had no thunder or lightning, nor ice.

13. "The winds have been variable; westerly winds appear to be most frequent during the winter, and I have great reason to suppose easterly winds are constant during the summer.

14. "I have been round Nepean Island once, but could not land on it, the wind being westerly, which made a great break in the small sandy bay which lies on the S. W. side of that isle. My not having men to row, and the uncertainty of the weather, has prevented my going to Phillip Isle.

15. "None but rats, which are destructive, and have been very numerous; but now they are much thinned.

16. "None.

17. "Fish in great numbers, and of a large size, abound all round the island. Some turtle were caught soon after I landed; but the approach of cold weather drove them off. I have not been able to send the boat off so often as I wished, not having men to row; but when she has gone out, a plentiful supply of fish has been obtained."

The time was now chiefly employed in erecting huts; as an encouragement to the convicts, they had permission to build houses for themselves, from the time of landing until the 30th of October: those of the best characters were allowed to build theirs in the vale, and to clear away the adjoining ground for their own use. A letter from the governor to the commandant was publicly read, enjoining him to make regular reports of the convicts, particularly of such whose conduct was reprehensible; and setting forth, that such who were content to remain as settlers; after the limited time of transportation, should have every encouragement; and further advantages be given to all such, who not being convicts, are still willing to become inhabitants of the settlement.

The present settlers consisted of a midshipman, surgeon's first mate, assistant surgeon, three seamen, a carpenter, serjeant, corporal, six private marines, 29 male convicts, 17 female ditto, two children. Total 64.

Every opportunity was taken of exploring the island, and all adjacent places: Ball Bay, Sydney Bay, Mount Pitt, Nepean Island, &c. The first male child that was born on this island (Jan. 8th, 1789,) was christened Norfolk. On the 18th of January the cockswain of the cable, who had been lost in the woods for four days, as he was returning from Ball Bay, was found by a party who were out on purpose, naked and lacerated; he was so exhausted, that they were obliged to carry him home: he kept his bed for several days.

Irregularities among the convicts still continuing, the articles of war were read to them; the next day Robert Webb, a seaman belonging to the Sirius, and Elizabeth Anderson, a convict, discovered a conspiracy among the convicts, who had entered into a scheme to take possession of the public stores, secure either the Supply, Royal Grove, or any other vessel that came in their way, and make their escape out of the island. It appeared, upon a strict examination, that all the convicts (except two rope-makers and a carpenter) were concerned in this diabolical scheme, which had been planned on their passage from Port Jackson to Norfolk Island; but, in order to evade suspicion, they testified every apparent satisfaction with their commandant's authority, who in consequence thereof was too indulgent to them. There was only one of them, Thomas Watts, who behaved (before this discovery) unruly and abusive: he received 24 lashes, for refusing to work. The ringleaders, Samuel Picket and William Francis, were put in irons; and the succeeding Sunday, after prayers, the commandant thus addressed the convicts:

"If you will vouchsafe to consider seriously for a few moments, you must certainly become truly sensible of the absurdity of your plan, even supposing that you did make yourselves masters of the vessel: you must have encountered the worst dangers, which in all probability would have been fatal to the whole banditti; then, when too late, you would have repented of having left behind those advantages you might have enjoyed in this island, if honest and industrious. Let me then, I conjure you, for your own sakes, to remove all impious ideas; the execution of which must be your ruin: let your future conduct wipe away the present impropriety of your behaviour. I shall always be happy to encourage and countenance those who are honest, regular, and pains-taking; but all of the contrary description shall be made dreadful and severe examples. Such who steal and plunder the gardens and grounds, shall ever meet with just punishment."

After this Address, the following Orders were published:

1. "The commandant strictly forbids any officer, soldier, free person, or convict, male or female, ever absenting themselves from the camp or town, for ten minutes together, without having first obtained leave from the officer charged with the guard, who will obtain the commandant's leave, on a slate which will be kept in the guard-house for that purpose."

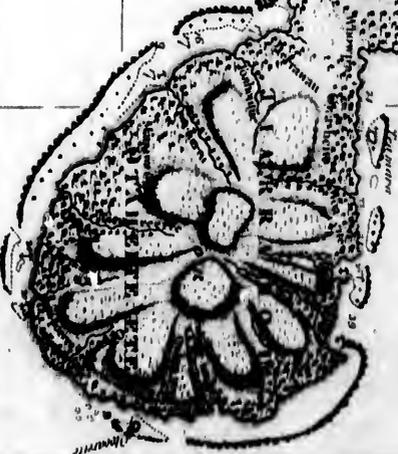
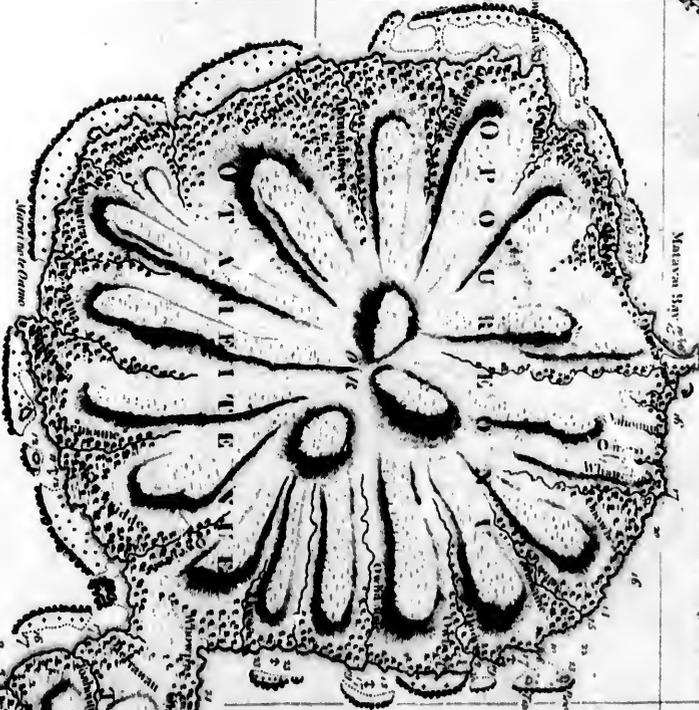
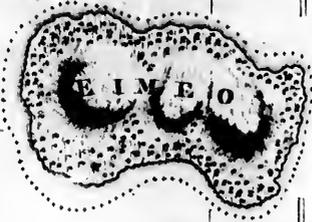
2. "Every person returning from that leave is to acquaint the officer of the guard of their return."

3. "Every convict who is observed to go over the hill to the farm, without having obtained leave, or going to work there; will be fired at by the centinel."

4. "The convicts, and not more than three together, are to build houses for themselves at their leisure hours, in such places as will be pointed out."

5. "No person, for the future, will be suffered to live out of the camp."

CHART
 OF THE ISLAND
 OF TAHITI
 BY
 CAPT. COOK
 1769



148.50

150.00

151.50

153.00

154.50

Not Logbook from Cook

Cook's Published by the Dept of the Navy, New York: Thomas A. Nelson, 1893.

Cook's J.

Scale of Miles



6. " John Thompson, and Samuel Rickett, are dispossessed of their garden-ground, in consequence of their ill-behaviour."

After this, the oaths of allegiance were administered to all the free people indiscriminately, in presence of the convicts.

About the latter end of February a violent hurricane was the occasion of much damage. Several had a very narrow escape of their lives, owing to the fall of many of the trees, which measured 180 feet in length, and were carried to a considerable distance. The stores were very much hurt: a fine English sow, and a litter of seven pigs, belonging to the commandant, and three sows and two boars belonging to the crew, perished by the falling of a tree upon the hog sty.

An additional number of convicts arrived in the Supply, which now increased the before-mentioned number of inhabitants by thirty: they still continued irregular, and inclined to plunder; on which account corporal punishment was inflicted upon every detection.

Lieut. John Cresswell, and 14 privates, arrived here in June: the governor had ordered the lieutenant to be under the command of Lieut. King; and in case of the present commandant's death, or absence, the government of the island was to devolve on him.

A female convict, who received fifty lashes for a default, received double the number the succeeding day, for a similar offence. Notwithstanding all these exemplary punishments, they still continued their wicked course, some few excepted, who were accordingly rewarded for their good behaviour.

Some of the convicts, whose time of transportation was expired, were satisfied to remain settlers: one in particular, Richard Phillimore, who was a sober industrious man, after a month's consideration, which the commandant gave him, was perfectly satisfied to remain in the island; he had his choice of the ground to reside on, and a sow with young and some poultry given him by the commandant.

A house for Lieut. Cresswell was erected; and, for the preservation of harmony and regularity, the commandant read the following orders, after divine service on Sunday the 16th of August:

I. " All persons on the island are regularly to attend muller and divine service, unless prevented by sickness: a disobedience of this order will be punished, by extra-work, or by stopping a day's provisions for the first offence; which, if repeated, will be punished by corporal chastisement.

II. " No persons are to absent themselves from their quarters, either by night or day, except they have obtained leave, or are going to their respec-

tive work; and if any one is observed lurking about after the watch is set, he will be fired at by the centinel.

III. " The working hours are to be regularly attended to, and all persons absent from their work, after the drum beats for that purpose, will lose a portion of the time they may save from their tasks; and, in case of a second offence, they will be severely punished.

IV. " The tasks will be continued as usual, and the time saved by the gangs is at their own disposal: those who distinguish themselves by employing their time in cultivating their gardens, and clearing ground for their own use, will meet with encouragement and reward.

V. " If the overseers, or the greatest part of any gang, should have reason to complain of the idleness of any one man belonging to that gang, and the complaint should be found just, the offender will be severely punished.

VI. " Those who render themselves unable to work by their neglect or obduracy, in not building themselves warm huts, or who cut themselves through carelessness, will have a part of their provisions stopped until they are able to go to work again.

VII. " All the tools and utensils are to be returned regularly every night to the store-house when the retreat beats; and any person who is found secreting any tool, or any article of the King's stores, or committing any robbery whatever, will, on detection and conviction, receive such punishment on the island as his Majesty's justices of the peace may judge the offence deserves; or the offender will be sent to Port Jackson, to be tried by the criminal court, as the commandant may judge proper.

VIII. " It is recommended to every one to be very careful of their cloathing; and every free person, or convict, is strictly forbid buying or selling any article of sloop cloathing: those who disobey this order will be prosecuted, for buying or selling the King's stores, whether free people or convicts.

IX. " Whenever it may be necessary to make any complaint, the person making the complaint is to inform the corporal of the guard, who will immediately report it; when the commandant is absent, Lieut. John Cresswell will hear the complaint, and decide upon it.

X. " Disobedience of orders, insolence to officers or overseers, or any other improper behaviour, tending to the disturbance of the peace, or hindrance of the King's service, will meet with severe punishment; and a regular, honest, good behaviour, will meet with encouragement and reward."

CHAPTER V.

Division of the Settlement takes place—Sirius and Supply sent to Norfolk Island—Number on board of each—Their good Voyage—Cause of great Joy in the Island—Joy changed to Sorrow—Lieut. Governor Ross appointed to supply the Commandant's place—Reason—Sudden change of Wind and Weather—Consequences—The Sirius drove to the back of a Reef—Strikes—In Danger—Attempt to save the Provision—A Wreck—Marital Law proclaimed—Lives of the Crew saved—Exertions for the preservation of the Stores—The Ship fired by two Convicts—Fire extinguished by another—Culprits secured—Provisions saved—Vessel entirely quitted—Entered afterwards—Casks and Parcels saved—Anecdote of the Sirius—Supply sails for Port Jackson—Universal Anxiety—A Council held—Orders issued—Apprehensions—Three Convicts punished for rebellious Resolutions—General Despondency—Deplorable state of the People—An Alarm—Consequent Joy—A Disappointment—Arrival of the Justinian and Surprise—Information—Provisions landed—An Accident—Seven drowned—Some recovered—Additional number of Convicts sent—Departure of the Vessel—Guns of the Sirius saved—Arrival of the Supply—Lost at Batavia—Departure of the Officers and Crew of the Sirius in the Supply.

HAVING thus far deviated, to acquaint the reader with the first transactions at Norfolk Island, in order that he may be the better informed of the progress of that settlement; I shall now pursue the business which concluded the third Chapter.

No. 4.

It has been already hinted, that the delay of the long-expected arrivals from England caused a general alarm at Port Jackson, and provisions being so very scanty, that Governor Phillip was consequently determined to divide the settlement; for which purpose

purpose the *Sirius* and *Supply* were prepared for sea, under the command of Captain Hunter, the lieutenant-governor: a company of marines, and the officers, with 186 convicts, baggage, &c. were on board the *Sirius*; also a company of marines, with 20 convicts, were on board the *Supply*, with Lieut. Ball, commander thereof, under Capt. Hunter. They were allowed as much provisions, &c. as could be spared.

On the 6th of March, 1790, they left Port Jackson, and as the wind was from the westward, they made Lord Howe's Island in three days. On the 13th of March they made Norfolk Island. The appearance of the *Sirius* and *Supply* created great joy among Lieut. King's party, who naturally supposed that the expected relief had arrived from England. As a great sea was running in the bay, and the wind blowing strong from S. W. their landing in Sydney Bay was at present impracticable: accordingly they bore up for Bail Bay, where Lieut. King met them. His hopes concerning the expected arrivals from England were soon crushed, as he had the mortification to hear that no relief had as yet been obtained. Governor Phillip had sent letters to Lieut. King, by Lieut. Ball, of the *Supply*, to acquaint him, that Lieut. Governor Rofs was appointed to take the command at Norfolk Island, as Lieut. Ball's return to England was deemed absolutely necessary, to give some necessary informations to his Majesty's ministers: he however continued his command of the island (by the lieutenant-governor's desire) till his departure. The vessels went round to Cascade Bay, and the people were landed on the 15th.

As the vessels were working up to the island, the wind suddenly veered to the eastward, and the weather became remarkably foul: the *Sirius* and *Supply* having parted, the latter stood in for the island on the 19th. The *Sirius* now hove-to, and made sail; but on account of the strength of the current, could not surmount the difficulties attending a reef of sunken rocks near Point Rofs: by an unfortunate change of the wind to the S. E. she was drove to the back of this reef. Upon this all the boats were employed; but only two boats of provisions could at present be got out: additional after-sail were applied without effect; she struck upon the reef, and, according to the carpenter's report, remained in imminent danger: the masts were now cut away, and every possible means taken to preserve as much of the provisions as could be come at, which were left upon the gun-deck for the purpose of throwing them overboard, in hopes they might be floated on shore. As the wind was blowing still stronger, and the gale increasing, it was recommended by Lieut. Ball for every person to quit the ship, in answer to a note which he received from Capt. Hunter by the surgeon's mate, who was hauled upon shore through a very tremendous surf, by means of a grating slung to a wooden heart fixed on a hawser from the ship, which was fastened to a tree on the shore: three or four sailors were fastened to this, and by the assistance of the people on shore were landed. The captain and Mr. Waterhouse were got on shore together: the former was so much exhausted, that he was near quitting his hold, when he got footing on the reef: it being very dark, the first and second lieutenant, with several of the sailors, were obliged to remain on board all night.

As soon as the vessel struck, the marines and convicts were assembled by drums, and the martial law proclaimed, setting forth that whoever committed any depredations, killed any animal or fowl, should be severely and immediately punished. There were several necessary regulations ordered by Lieutenant Governor Rofs, by which means the storehouses and barn were well defended.

The next day the lives of every person were saved;

several however were much bruised in escaping; the fallors, who were landed the last, laid the fore-part of the ship was under water, as she gave way in the lower deck from the side; but that the chief part of the provisions were on deck, and might be saved: some hopes were therefore entertained of being able to save these, and several other things. The weather becoming more moderate, and the surf consequently running less heavy, some of the fallors who swam well were determined to use all their exertions for the preservation of the stores: also two convicts offered their assistance to save the live stock. Some poultry, and a number of pigs, by their means, were put on shore; but as these men remained on board, spite of signals for their return, a convict carpenter went spontaneously to oblige them to quit the wreck: these men had set fire to the ship, which destroyed the gun-deck, but which was put out by the carpenter. One of them was quite intoxicated, when he was hauled on shore: they were both ordered into confinement, in order to be tried for the conflagration.

The chief part of the provisions were now saved, and as it became too dangerous for any person to remain longer on board, the vessel was entirely quitted; however, by her being so much lightened, and her small bower cape cut by the rocks, she was continually shifting about, and coming nearer the shore; was frequently entered, with less danger. At this time the parcels and casks were saved, and every thing that could be got preserved. She was then very much dashed to pieces; notwithstanding her remains were to be seen for several months after.

The following anecdote of the *Sirius* is related by Lieut. King.

"She was built in the River, for an East Country ship; and, in loading her, she took fire, and was burnt down to her wales. The Government wanting a roomy vessel, to carry stores abroad in 1781, purchased her bottom, which was rebuilt with such stuff as during the war could be found. She went two voyages as the *Barwick* foreship; and, without any repairs, she was reported, when the present expedition was thought of, as fit for the voyage to New Holland, when she was named the *Sirius*."

On the 24th, the weather being calm and pleasant, Lieutenants King, Waterhouse, and Powell, with 20 of the crew which belonged to the *Sirius*, went on board the *Supply*, and sailed for Port Jackson; Lieut. Rofs being now in possession of the command of the island.

According to the proclamation of the law martial, all capital offences were punishable by death: this, no doubt, was the happy means of preventing much plunder. The number of people now left upon this island began to be seriously alarmed for their future subsistence: every day they were upon the look-out, in anxious expectation of relief. Near two months elapsed, without any signs of succour. On the 14th of May, the lieutenant-governor held a council, composed of officers, by whom it was unanimously agreed that the following orders should be published:

"At a meeting of the governor and council, held to consider of the very exhausted state of the provisions in this settlement, and to consult upon what means are the most proper to be pursued, in order to preserve life until such time as we may be relieved by some arrivals from England, of which we have been so long in expectation, but probably disappointed by some unfortunate accident having happened to the ships intended for this country: the state of the provisions having been laid before the council; and the alarming situation of the settlement having been taken into the most serious consideration, the following ratio of provisions was unanimously resolved, and ordered to take place on Saturday the 15th instant, viz.

"Flour, three pounds per week for every grown person;

"person; beef one
"in lieu of beef 17
"per ditto. Child
"half the above ratio
"old one pound a
"of rice, per week
"In future, all
"members of the c
"capital nature, wi
"by a farther reduc
"provisions."

It was in vain to quarter then Port, being unfrequented without any prospect that even the present mult in time be reduced chiefly subsisted upon was now remarkably minated the Bird of nature, it was very eggs: upwards of the taken every night.

Notwithstanding did not forget on his Majesty's birth-much satisfaction: would admit of.

A convict, who had to catch some birds, three others, who had in the woods, and called as a report of this was were dispatched by two parties of fanatic to head them: they were latter; and, as the to make examples of each three hundred l

Towards the latter endy took place; and a very small part account of the insupportable also in a very debilita

On the 4th of August caused a general alarm and hope; but this hope as the vessel, which was, notwithstanding making sail from the the result of this disaster.

However, three days vessels, which proved Surprise from Port J prehensions. Inform

Transactions at Port Jackson of the two native Children Governor—The Governor the Natives alarmed den Hostility terminated Ea-ra-lang's Concern and Families—A general waived upon to forgive lang's vindictive Dis by the Governor, &c. rested by her Husband lang suspected for D Game-keeper wounded any—Sent out again punished—One of the Charge—Confused by the discharge of the Dutch Vessel ready Governor hires it—

" person; beef one pound and an half per ditto, or
 " in lieu of beef 17 ounces of pork; rice, one pound
 " per ditto. Children above twelve months old
 " half the above ration: children under twelve months
 " old one pound and an half of flour, and a pound
 " of rice, per week.

" In future, all crimes which may by any three
 " members of the council be considered as not of a
 " capital nature, will be punished at their discretion,
 " by a farther reduction of the present allowance of
 " provisions."

It was in vain to look for relief from any other
 quarter than Port Jackson, this part of the ocean
 being unfrequented: day after day now passing
 without any prospect of a sail, it was apprehended
 that even the present scanty allowance of provisions
 must in time be reduced. At this time the people
 chiefly subsisted upon a kind of aquatic bird, which
 was now remarkably numerous, and was justly nomi-
 nated the Bird of Providence; though of a silly
 nature, it was very much relished, especially the
 eggs: upwards of three thousand of these birds were
 taken every night.

Notwithstanding their distressing situation, they
 did not forget on the fourth of June to celebrate
 his Majesty's birth-day, which they did with as
 much satisfaction as their deplorable condition
 would admit of.

A convict, who had been sent on the 6th of July
 to catch some birds, was stripped of his cloaths by
 three others, who had combined together to remain
 in the woods, and commit depredations. As soon
 as a report of this was made, two parties of marines
 were dispatched by the lieutenant-governor, and
 two parties of seamen by Capt. Hunter, to appre-
 hend them: they were immediately secured by the
 latter; and, as the court-martial was determined
 to make examples of these convicts, they received
 each three hundred lashes.

Towards the latter end of July a general despon-
 dency took place; the birds now became scarce,
 and a very small portion of victuals remained: on
 account of the insufficiency of food, the people were
 also in a very debilitated state.

On the 4th of August, the appearance of a sail
 caused a general alarm: it was now universal joy
 and hope; but this hope and joy were soon blasted,
 as the vessel, which had an English ensign flying,
 was, notwithstanding all their signals of distress,
 making sail from the island. Absolute despair was
 the result of this disappointment.

However, three days after, the discovery of two
 vessels, which proved to be the Justitia and the
 Surprise from Port Jackson, removed all their ap-
 prehensions. Information was received from the

masters of these vessels, that his Majesty's ship the
 Guardian was lost in her passage to Port Jackson
 with provisions, and that consequently the Gorgon
 was in preparation to bring farther supplies. Four
 ships, the Lady Juliana, Neptune, Surprise, and
 Scarborough, had arrived with 980 convicts, and
 provisions for the settlement in New South Wales,
 about the beginning of June.

Though every care was taken to prevent any
 accident in landing the provisions, yet, on the 17th
 of August, one of the boats, on making for shore, was
 thrown into a reef, by the sudden violence of several
 heavy fairs; and, notwithstanding there were several
 people on shore, yet seven persons were drowned:
 three besides, that were brought to land apparently
 dead, were recovered by the surgeon's exertions;
 two of whom were women. The persons lost con-
 sisted of two of the boat's crew, three women con-
 victs, a child, and a convict man, who perished in
 endeavouring to save the women.

An additional number of convicts, about 200,
 were sent to Norfolk Island, in these vessels; and,
 as the weather was exceedingly favourable, they
 were cleared in 23 days. On the 30th of August
 they proceeded on their voyage to China.

About the beginning of the year 1791 an attempt
 was made to save the guns and carriage, which were
 still lying in the remains of the Sirius: dangerous
 as this attempt may seem, yet as the fairs had
 made considerable alterations on the wreck, it was
 found, though difficult, not impracticable. Except
 two carronades, which had been carried away by
 the fall of the masts, every thing was got on shore
 by a traveller upon a nine-inch hawker.

Towards the latter end of this month the Supply
 armed tender arrived; she had been, on her return
 from Norfolk Island, dispatched to Batavia, for the
 purpose of hiring a vessel for the relief of the settle-
 ment; the particulars of which we shall have occa-
 sion to mention in our next Chapter. While at
 Batavia, the crew were so ill, that several were lost
 by fevers, among whom were Lieut. Fowel, and
 Mr. Ross, late of the Sirius, much lamented. It
 being governor Phillip's pleasure, that the officers
 and crew of the Sirius should return in the Supply
 to Port Jackson, Captain Hunter accordingly em-
 barked with them, and left Norfolk Island on the
 11th of February.

Such is the acknowledged salubrity of Norfolk
 Island, that all who were there were most remark-
 ably healthy: two children at a birth were very com-
 mon, and even women in advanced years, who
 imagined themselves past child-bearing, have been
 frequently brought to bed of fine promising infants.

C H A P T E R VI.

Transactions at Port Jackson—An Excursion into the Country—Several Convicts lost—A brick Column begun—Account of the two native Children—Ba-na-lang's Escape—His proficiency in English Manners—He sends a Present to the Governor—The Governor goes to give him a general Invitation—Ba-na-lang's and Co-al-by's Behaviour—One of the Natives alarmed at the Governor—Throws a Spear, and wounds him—Mr. Waterhouse's Attention—The sudden Hostility terminated—Balmain pronounces the Governor out of Danger—The Governor's Orders—Motives—Ba-na-lang's Concern—Visits the Governor—He and Co-al-by become constant Guests—They introduce their Wives and Families—A general Intercourse—Consequent Discoveries—Ba-na-lang determined to chastise his Wife—Pre-vailed upon to forgive her—Ba-na-lang consents to live in the Settlement—The Intercourse more general—Ba-na-lang's vindictive Disposition—Goes to beat a Woman with a Hatchet—Threats and Entreaties unavailing—Followed by the Governor, &c.—Girl protected—Ba-na-lang reconciled to her—His Wife consequently exasperated—Corrected by her Husband—Convicts still rebellious and disobedient—Five escape—Two executed—The Weather—Ba-na-lang suspected for Deceit and Cunning—His Behaviour mysterious—Natives still persist in throwing Spears—A Game-keeper wounded—Large Party sent out in pursuit of the Offenders—Their Directions—Unable to apprehend any—Sent out again—As unsuccessful as before—Some Natives detected in stealing Potatoes—They throw a Fitz-gig—Orders to apprehend them—Three Muskets discharged—Ba-na-lang accused of Robbery—Three stray Convicts punished—One of them strays again—Never found—Number of Deaths, &c.—Ba-na-lang accused—Denies the Charge—Consulted—He becomes insolent—Departs in Anger—Steals a Hatchet—The Body of a Native, wounded by the discharge of the Muskets, brought to the Hospital—Found to be the Transgressor's—Game-keeper's Death—Dutch Vessel ready for Sea—Master offers to sell or let her—His exorbitant Demands—Becomes more moderate—Governor hires it—Ba-na-lang appears at the Hospital—Endeavours to vindicate himself—Meets the Governor—

Is forgiven, but kept at a distance—A Fishing-boat in danger—Crew saved—The Natives' Good-nature—Ba-na-lang's assiduity—Thereby restored to the Governor's good graces—Natives and English very familiar—Co-al-by and Bal-la-derry attend the Governor, &c. on an Excursion—Captain Hunter prepares for his return to England—A second Excursion—Grants of Land given to Settlers—A Soldier loses himself—Is conducted by two Natives to Sydney—A Traffic between the Natives and English for Bread and Fish—Nearly terminated by the Imprudence of some of the Convicts—The Offenders punished—One of the Convicts wounded by a Native—Arrival of the Mary-Ann Transport—A Centinel detected stealing Wine—His Escape from being hanged—Is whipped—Twenty-seven Convicts become Settlers—A Disturbance between them and the Natives—Arrival of the Matilda and Atlantic Transports—Salamander, William and Ann—Weakness of the Convicts—Deaths, Sickness—Account of the Land.

IN the mean time the people at Port Jackson, though they had not so much cause for apprehension and terror as the unfortunate settlers in Norfolk Island, were notwithstanding very much depressed at the long delay of the vessels expected from England: however all their fears were dispelled, and their late sorrows forgot, upon their arrival, though the loss of the Guardian was very much lamented by his excellency.

An excursion into the country was made by several officers in August 1790: they explored the greater part of Prospect hill, and the head of Nepean river. Several convicts were lost in the woods; one of whom was never found.

On 7th of September, a spot of rising ground being chosen from the south head, for the purpose of erecting a brick column, to shew the masters of ships (who were unacquainted with the coast) the best place for entrance, as the flag-staff, which was the present direction, was not only liable to be blown down, but could not be discerned at the smallest distance. This plan was accordingly adopted, and the work immediately begun.

The two native children, who had been preserved from the small-pox by Surgeon White, were now very tractable, and content with their situation: the boy lived with Mr. White, and the girl with the chaplain's wife. Ba-na-lang, the attendant to Co-al-by, (who had made his escape) became so free and apparently happy, that he was permitted to walk wherever he pleased; but he soon availed himself of an opportunity, and one evening, having taken off his clothes, left them behind and departed. He was dressed on week days in a coarse red kersey jacket, and a pair of trowsers; but on Sundays in nankeen: the former habit was intended by the governor to convince him of the comfort and use of clothes in cold weather: previous to his elopement, he used frequently to walk with the governor, and occasionally wear his sword, which the governor would give him in order to establish a more permanent acquaintance. He could not bear spirits, and was exceedingly angry if any one gave him ever so little in water: he was fond of wine, and shortly learned the necessary accomplishments of drinking healths, bowing, &c. After his departure, he had been frequently met with Co-al-by: though they were sometimes afraid of being taken, yet they were always glad to see their late friends. Ba-na-lang once sent a large piece of a whale, which they had caught, and on which numbers were assembled to feast, to the governor; who being now very desirous to renew the intimacy between them, went down the harbour to give them a general invitation, and assure them that they might return to their own friends whenever they liked: for this reason he was only followed by one seaman, who was loaded with some meat. When he saw Ba-na-lang, he scarcely knew him, being much altered by several wounds which he had received, and which he was very proud of showing. Co-al-by also exhibited his leg in a triumphant manner, to let him see that the iron which had been rivetted on it for his security was taken off: he also expressed by signs much satisfaction at Ba-na-lang's escape, and laughed heartily at the trick which he had played upon him. The governor, however, trusting too much to their generosity, incautiously ap-

proached, in this unprotected manner, another native, who had been a stranger, and consequently alarmed at his excellency's appearance, notwithstanding all his endeavours to remove his apprehensions; this man, therefore, seizing a spear, which had been previously laid upon the ground by Ba-na-lang, fixed it on a throwing stick, and instantaneously discharged it at the governor: it entered the right shoulder, just above the collar-bone, and came out behind the shoulder blade: it was with the utmost pain, and difficulty he reached the boat; as the spear, which could not at this time be extracted, was remarkably long. After some struggle, Mr. Waterhouse broke it, notwithstanding the danger of stopping, there being now several spears flying about. The governor fired a pocket pistol, and the cockswain (who at this time approached) a musket, which fortunately terminated this sudden hostility: the point of the spear was extracted by Mr. Bulmain, who afforded very great satisfaction to every anxious enquirer, by assuring them that no fatal consequences need be dreaded.

Though Governor Phillip issued forth orders to apprehend (if possible) the native who wounded him, it was not with a vindictive design, but on the contrary to keep him, and convince him that there was no harm intended him. It was strictly commanded by the governor, that no one should fire on the natives, except in his own defence, and unless they were the first aggressors in throwing their spears.

When Ba-na-lang had met with a party of the English, after this circumstance, he seemed very much concerned, and enquired if the governor was dead. When informed of the contrary, he promised to come and see him; which he did, and likewise promised to revenge the injury.

Ba-na-lang and Co-al-by, upon an assurance that they should never be detained, had accepted the governor's invitation, and became constant guests. A general intercourse succeeded these confidential visits; and the two natives were at last so familiar with the English, that they introduced their wives and families to them: this mutual harmony furnished fresh instances of the natives' dispositions and manners. It was found that the men used the women exceedingly cruel: the husbands frequently beat their wives, and sometimes killed them, while their relations would seem quite indifferent about the business, nor ever interpose in behalf of the suffering females. It seems the beginning of courtships is always a good beating, which the girls very patiently endure: the women, however, are very obdinate, and though aware of the consequences, prone to offend. It was with the greatest difficulty the governor and his friends could prevent Ba-na-lang from chastising his wife, who had in a fit of passion broke a valuable siz-gig: he calmly declared that he should be under the necessity of killing her, and meditated revenge for a long time; he was however prevailed upon to forgive her, which christian virtue these people are totally ignorant of. Indeed there were several natives under Mr. White's care in the hospital: men, who had suffered in fighting with each other, and women through the chastisement of their husbands.

Ba-na-lang and his family became at length so gracious with the English, that they consented to

live in a hut, which eastern point of the visited by other natives intercourse took place frequently visit the breakfast at the and meat were always

Such was the vindictive that he was determined to beat a woman who nor entreaties could purpose: he was the judge-advocate, a fee to protect the girl from him, and gave him remarkably outrage take away even the precaution, he fought sword, and strike the lying either asleep and, before the sergeant repeated the blow under the protection &c. None of her least concerned at were very solicitous which were taken returned to him.

The governor endeavoured to murder upon the vain: he even threatened any one's life, he feared but this menace had the course of time, the girl, which cooperate Ba-na-lang's was still in danger of soon corrected his ear, and sent her retained by the government of animosity had subsided.

Notwithstanding an unfeeling manner, that for each other. In men will be revengeful temper is once fatigued are immediately for

The convicts still honest as ever. Of five of these wretched Rose-hill to come down it for a four-oared boat. Their intention, as to coast to the northward their friendly island attending danger, that they perished in the 28th of October by robbing a hut, and owner, who made rain was very much the beginning of New few showers, which the latter end of the December; but the most remarkably happy

Notwithstanding the governor entered to suspect Ba-na-lang this man would free the natives as very he was constantly in with them; in short tion and ambiguity haviour was very near

As several of the spears and wounding were undefended, the

live in a hut, which was erected for them on the eastern point of the Cove. As they were frequently visited by other natives, of course a more general intercourse took place. Several natives would frequently visit the settlement at the same time, and breakfast at the governor's in the yard, where fire and meat were always prepared.

Such was the vindictive disposition of Ba-na-lang, that he was determined, for some unknown offence, to beat a woman with a hatchet. Neither threats nor entreaties could dissuade him from his sanguinary purpose: he was therefore followed by the governor, judge-advocate, a serjeant, &c. who were determined to protect the girl. They took the hatchet from him, and gave him a cane: however, as he was remarkably outrageous, it was deemed prudent to take away even the cane. Notwithstanding all this precaution, he found the means to snatch a wooden sword, and strike the poor girl with it, who was lying either asleep or hiding her face through fear, and, before the serjeant was able to disarm him, he repeated the blow: the girl was conveyed away, under the protection of Lieut. Ball, Surgeon White, &c. None of her friends or relations seemed the least concerned at her fate, but on the contrary were very solicitous that the hatchet, sword, &c. which were taken from Ba-na-lang, should be returned to him.

The governor endeavoured to impress the horror of murder upon the mind of Ba-na-lang, but in vain: he even threatened him, that if he took away any one's life, he should be put to death for it; but this menace had seemingly very little effect. In the course of time, however, he was reconciled to the girl, which reconciliation did not a little exasperate Ba-na-lang's wife, by whom the poor girl was still in danger of losing her life: but the husband soon corrected his lady with a violent box on her ear, and sent her roaring away. The girl was detained by the governor's command, till all marks of animosity had subsided.

Notwithstanding the men beat the women in this unfeeling manner, they profess a very great affection for each other. In every case of disobedience, the men will be revenged; but when that vindictive temper is once satiated, the injuries on both sides are immediately forgotten.

The convicts still continued as rebellious and dishonest as ever. On the 26th of September, 1790, five of these wretches, who had taken a punt from Rose-hill to come down on the look-out, exchanged it for a four-oared boat, and made off undiscovered. Their intention, as supposed, was to go along the coast to the northward, in order to reach some of their friendly islands; but not being aware of the attending danger, there is very little doubt but that they perished in the presumptuous attempt. On the 28th of October two convicts were executed, for robbing a hut, and dangerously wounding the owner, who made resistance.

Hitherto the weather was so remarkably dry, that rain was very much wanting: the new moon in the beginning of November was attended with some few showers, which became very frequent towards the latter end of the month, and the beginning of December; but the latter end of this month was most remarkably hot.

Notwithstanding the favourable opinion which the governor entertained of the natives, he began to suspect Ba-na-lang both deceitful and cunning: this man would frequently represent some tribes of the natives as very bad, deserving death; yet he was constantly in their company, and very free with them; in short, there was so much contradiction and ambiguity about Ba-na-lang, that his behaviour was very mysterious.

As several of the natives still persisted in throwing spears and wounding the English, especially such as were undefended, the governor found it expedient,

No. 4.

though contrary to his inclination, to make a few severe examples, in order to terminate this evil. At this time Lieut. Ball's game-keeper was dangerously wounded by a native; therefore, on the 14th of December, a party, consisting of two captains, two lieutenants, four non-commissioned officers, and forty privates, were sent out in pursuit of the offender, attended with the surgeon and a surgeon's mate, belonging to the Sirius; with also three persons who were with the game-keeper at the time of his being wounded, and the only men that could ascertain the culprit. It was deemed the best way to send out a large party, to prevent any resistance of the natives, or attempt to rescue whatever persons it might be judged proper to secure. The officer of this party had directions to seize six of them, and in case they did not surrender themselves, to put them to death on the spot: likewise every spear that was found they were commanded to break, and leave the remains of them for the natives to see: none of the party were to hold up their hands, or show any other sign of friendship; and they were upon no account to hurt the women or children. They had been out three days, but could apprehend none, for the natives as soon as ever they saw them at a distance, fled, and eluded all search. They went out again on the 22d, and staid two days, but were as unsuccessful as before. On the 28th some of the natives, who had been frequently entertained at Sydney Cove, were detected in stealing potatoes; and one of them threw a fiz-gig at the owner of them, on his attempting to drive them out of his garden: this culprit had been long remarked for his intrepidity: he and his followers made it a custom to demand bread at every hut, and threaten the owners thereof in case of refusal. To prevent therefore a continuance of such daring depredations, a serjeant and six privates were sent in pursuit of the offenders, particularly him who threw the fiz-gig: this party was followed by the governor, and two or three officers. Two men were laid hold of, but they escaped, and one of them throwing a club, which was mistaken for a spear, three musquets were discharged. Two women who were there were brought away, in order to lead to a discovery. These women, upon examining the fiz-gig, confessed to whom it belonged, and declared the owner to be a spirited, insolent man.

Ba-na-lang was now accused by two colonists of having robbed them of some fish they had caught. He, his wife, and sister, were returning from the Governor's, where they had dined; they had spears along with them, and the colonists were unarmed. Orders were consequently issued, that no boat should leave the Cove unarmed, nor that any of the natives should be admitted to that place whence the potatoes had been stolen.

There were three convicts found, who had been several days lost; and as they had gone into the woods without orders, they received a due number of lashes; notwithstanding which one of them committed the same fault again: whether he could not find his way back, was afraid to return, and so perished with hunger, or was murdered by the natives, cannot be ascertained, but he was never found. The number of those persons lost this year is as follows:

In sickness,	- -	142
In the woods,	- -	4
Executed,	- -	4
Drowaed,	- -	6

156

Ba-na-lang, not supposing the governor had heard of his crime, called as usual on the 3d of January, 1791. When accused by his excellency, he denied the charge; but, upon being confused, became insolent and outrageous. He then wished to make

M

it

it up with the governor; but finding he would not shake hands with him, he grew very savage, and vowed vengeance for the death of a native, who had been wounded by the party who had fired the musquets when sent to apprehend the persons who had stolen the potatoes. He departed in great anger; and aggravated his crime by stealing a hatchet, with which he made off. In the evening a party were sent to see if the wounded native was really dead, and whether or not to convey him to the hospital. His body was brought: upon examination it was found to be that of the transgressor, therefore his death was not much regretted. The game-keeper, who had been wounded, died on the 20th of this month.

The Dutch vessel, which had been hired at Batavia for the purpose of bringing provisions to the colony, was ready for sea on the 5th of February. The master of this vessel now offered her for sale, or to let her for freight; but knowing how much she was wanted, he was most exorbitant in his demands. There being no attention paid to those proposals, he became more moderate: at length the governor consented to give twenty shillings per ton for his vessel.

Ba-na-lang, some little time after he had stolen the hatchet, contrary to every one's expectation, appeared again at the hospital, where he enquired if the governor was angry, and if he might visit his house: he artfully insinuated that another had taken the hatchet, and endeavoured to vindicate himself by falsehoods. After this he met the governor, who forgave him, but would not permit him to enter his house: indeed it was the governor's intention, in order to keep up a friendly intercourse, to take very little notice of past offences.

On the 28th of February, a fishing-boat, in working up the harbour, having met with a sudden gale of wind, filled, but (being an English cutter) she did not sink. There were four natives in the boat at the time, consisting of a young woman, a girl, and two children. When the accident happened, the woman immediately put the children on her shoulders, and swam to shore with them: she was followed by the girl, and as many of the crew as were capable of swimming. Some of the natives, who were witnesses of this disaster, assembled, and very good-naturedly gave their assistance: among these was Ba-na-lang, who, to do him justice, was particularly assiduous. By their means, not only every life was saved, but likewise the oars and other articles. This office of humanity restored Ba-na-lang to the governor's good graces; his former misconduct being entirely overlooked, he was entertained at his house as usual, and consequently the former acquaintance was renewed between the English and natives: indeed the number of visitors to much increased, and their mutual confidence became at last so great, that both natives and English were frequently seen walking together. Co-al-by, and another young man, called Bal-la-derry, who was a constant guest, attended the governor, Lieutenants Tench, Dawes, one captain, two sergeants, eight soldiers, three convicts, &c. on an excursion into the country: by being accompanied with these two natives, they had frequent opportunities of conversing with others; but when they had rambled for about five days, they were very desirous of returning; accordingly the gentlemen, though inclined to delay longer, thought it prudent to acquiesce with their wishes.

March 25th. Preparations were now making by Capt. Hunter for his return to England. The governor had commanded the master of the ship to call at Norfolk Island, provided it would not be attended with much delay, and to take on board the dispatches of lieutenant-governor Ross. The account of this voyage we shall reserve for our next Chapter, and proceed in giving the most recent transactions at Port Jackson.

The weather becoming somewhat fair in June, 1791, Lieutenants Tench and Dawes, and two soldiers, made a second excursion; and, after some necessary discoveries, returned the sixth day.

Grants of land were now given to those who became settlers, under proper titles. To James Rufe were allowed thirty acres, called the Experiment Farm. One hundred and forty ditto to William Scaffer, who came from England as a superintendent; this was entitled the Vineyard. Sixty ditto to Robert Webb and William Reid, called Webb's and Reid's Farms, &c. &c.

A soldier, who had been out with others to collect some sweet tea, having left his party, went astray in the woods. He was met by several natives, who avoided him, as he had his gun; two, however, who had been visitors at the settlement, recollected the soldier, and joined him: to court their favour, and induce them to shew him the way to Parramatta, (a part between Rose-hill and the landing-place in the creek, so called by the natives, and which title, by command of the governor, it retained) he offered them presents; these they refused, and would have departed, had he not likewise offered his gun, which one of them took as security, and then conducted him to Sydney, observing by signs that Parramatta was too far off. On reaching Sydney, the native voluntarily returned the soldier his gun, nor would they accept any present for their trouble.

As the natives were particularly fond of bread and vegetables, a very necessary traffic took place between them and the English; by which means the governor was in hopes of establishing an excellent fish-market at Parramatta, for as the natives caught an abundance of fish, (frequently more than they could make use of) and which the English often stood in need of, they were very happy in exchanging the surplus for bread, &c. This traffic continued for many days, but by the imprudence of some convicts it was nearly put an end to. It seems these men, in disobedience to the governor's orders, had destroyed the canoe of a certain native, who was remarkably active in catching fish: he had set a great value on this canoe, and having painted himself with red, (according to their custom when angered) he came and complained to the governor, uttering the most violent threats. The villains being apprehended, were punished in his presence; and as he supposed one of them was put to death, his revenge was satiated. After this several spears were thrown at some of the convicts, when alone or unarmed: one man was wounded by Bal-la-derry, the owner of the canoe, as the natives confessed, for they are always ready to acknowledge any offender.

On the 9th of July the *Mary-Ann* transport arrived with 141 women, and six children; also stores, &c. Only three persons were lost on the passage.

On the 16th a centinel (who was a mariner) was detected by the serjeant stealing wine in a cellar: previous to his trial, he offered himself as evidence for the crown, and charged two others with having been frequently guilty of the like practice; but this man's evidence being insufficient, he thereby only saved his own life, and the others were acquitted. Being tried afterwards by a battalion court-martial, he was sentenced to be whipped, and drummed out of the corps. Those whom he accused, had been accused before in like manner, and acquitted for the same reason.

On the 18th twenty-seven convicts, who had consented to become settlers after the expiration of their time, took possession of their allotments, and began to build their huts. Twelve of them were allowed situations at the foot of Prospect-hill, and fifteen northward of the creek leading to Parramatta. In order to guard against the natives, who might be inclined to hurt them, as they had many opportunities here, there were some musquets distributed

among the settlers at Prospect-hill, and the appearance of a musquet, and ran to flight, advantage had been just ere the settlers took his musket, made them retreat, were sent out, for the

The *Matilda* tra- August, with an en- convicts, provisions coming from Engl- remarkably good, died; several were ciated state. On transport, with a convicts, provision- gale of wind, and very few sick, but day arrived the Sal- male convicts, stor- weak. On the 28th transport, with a of their wives and provisions, &c. Sev- and 36 were sick.

The convicts were landed, that number to the hospital. C- were 285 under me-

Capt. Hunter's Depart- to make for Norfolk Island—In- lished—Isle of—A Cluster of dis- small Islands disco- several Canoes—N covered—Anchorage Natives help them— discharged—Native Their Song of Friend- scription of it—A S—Foul Weather—C them and the Native covered—Progress of Resolutions—Phillip—Coast of Mindanao—Anchorage—Ship's Request—Th—Proceeds to Violent Altercation—Smart left behind—Master discovered—Island of sion groundless—Two the Ship—Brothers Boomkins Islands

MARCH 27th, 1791. Jackson, in The governor, and cers, accompanied him leave of him when he had sixteen weeks previous crew consisted of 15 Hunter's wish to ent- water at Timor; he touching at Batavia, much sickness, which most serious consequ- crouded state and they deemed it imprudent except it could be don- their stock was so sm- it their most judicious

tributed among them. Shortly after, one of the settlers at Prospect-hill, being alarmed at the sudden appearance of several natives, discharged his musquet, and ran away. The natives, seeing him take to flight, advanced and set fire to his hut, that had been just erected. Upon this another of the settlers took his musquet, and firing at the natives, made them retreat. After this a party of soldiers were sent out, for the further security of the settlers.

The Matilda transport arrived on the first of August, with an ensign, twenty privates, 205 male convicts, provisions, &c. She was only five months coming from England, and though her passage was remarkably good, yet a serjeant and 24 convicts died; several were sick, and all the rest in an emaciated state. On the 20th arrived the Atlantic transport, with a serjeant, 17 privates, 202 male convicts, provisions, &c. A soldier was lost in a gale of wind, and 18 convicts died: there were very few sick, but all in general weak. The next day arrived the Salamander, with 12 privates, 154 male convicts, stores, &c. The crew were very weak. On the 28th arrived the William and Ann transport, with a serjeant, 13 privates, with some of their wives and children, 180 male convicts, provisions, &c. Seven convicts died on the passage, and 36 were sick.

The convicts were in such a weak state when landed, that numbers of them were shortly carried to the hospital. On the 1st of September there were 285 under medical treatment: there were also

several seamen very ill of a dangerous fever, which was imagined to have been communicated by the convicts.

The natives still continued their visits at the governor's, sometimes very gracious, and sometimes in disgrace. It was, however, deemed expedient to keep them in awe of the musquets.

In November 42 convicts died; about 500 were sick at Parramatta, and about 200 at Sydney. At this time the following parcels of land were in or ready for cultivation at Parramatta:

- 351 acres, 2 roods, 5 perches, in maize.
- 44 ditto, 1 ditto, 8 ditto, in wheat.
- 6 ditto, 1 ditto, 30 ditto, in barley.
- 1 ditto, in oats.
- 2 ditto, 3 ditto, in potatoes.
- 4 ditto, 2 ditto, fit for cultivation.
- 4 ditto, 2 ditto, 15 ditto, planted chiefly with vines.
- 91 ditto, 3 ditto, 2 ditto, in cultivation by the settlers.
- 28 ditto, in cultivation by officers of the civil and military.
- 134 ditto, inclosed and prepared for feeding cattle.
- 6 ditto, the governor's garden, partly sown, maize and wheat.
- 80 ditto, garden-ground belonging to individuals.
- 17 ditto, land in cultivation by the New South Wales corps.
- 150 ditto, intended for turnips.

CHAPTER VII.

Capt. Hunter's Departure in the Waaksamheyd Transport—Number of the Crew, &c.—Suggestions—They endeavour to make for Norfolk Island—Repulsed by an easterly Wind—A Consultation—Effects thereof—Norfolk Island relinquished—Ile of Pines made—A Mistake—Ill Consequences—A critical Situation—Five small Islands discovered—A Cluster of ditto, called Lord Howe's Group—Six Canoes seen—Description of the People in them—Three small Islands discovered—Sir Charles Hardy's ditto—A vexatious Disappointment—Becalmed—Meeting with several Canoes—Natives friendly and good-natured—A remarkable Proof of their Honesty—A small Cove discovered—Anchorage—Assembly of the Natives—Description of them—Their Weapons, &c.—Water taken in—Natives help them—One of them becomes troublesome—Stimulates his Companions to Hostility—A Conflict—Musquets discharged—Natives alarmed, and dispersed—Peace restored—Their Marks of Concern, Submission, &c. &c.—Their Song of Friendship—Several shaved—Description of the Island—Departure from the Bay—Name and Description of it—A Suspicion concerning the Water—Thought to be without Foundation—Sandwich Island discovered—Foul Weather—Changeable Wind—Two of the Admiralty Islands discovered—Five Canoes met—Description of them and the Natives—The Interview suddenly terminated—Gate of Wind—Assurance of Safety—Islands discovered—Progress slow—Death of a Seaman—Allowance of Water reduced—A Consultation held—Consequent Resolutions—Pitship Islands discovered—Also Part of New Carolines, as supposed—Rain—Advantage taken thereof—Coast of Mindanao perceived—Palmas Island—Hummock ditto—A Boat sent out to meet them—The Result—Anchorage—Ship watered—Civility of the Inhabitants—Visit from the Raja—His Reception—The Master of the Ship's Request—The Raja's seeming Compliance—His Visit repeated—Master of the Ship incensed with the Raja—Proceeds to Violence—Captain Hunter's Interference, and Advice—Perverseness of the Master—A violent Altercation—Smart Fire commenced—Raja and his Attendants make off—Departure of the Vessel—A Seaman left behind—Master's Conduct censured—Description of Hummock Island, Inhabitants, &c.—Polo Sanguy Islands discovered—Island of Calibes made—A heavy Squall—Island of Bunnao, &c. seen—A sudden Alarm—Apprehension groundless—Two large Praus seen—Suspected to be piratical Vessels—Wind variable—Ground perceptible under the Ship—Brothers passed—Drawn into a Bight—Caraman Javo Islands made—Whirlwinds and Water Spouts—Boomkins Islands—Anchor in Batavia Road—List of the Latitudes and Longitudes.

MARCH 27th, 1791, Capt. Hunter left Port Jackson, in the Waaksamheyd transport. The governor, and several civil and military officers, accompanied him down the harbour, and took leave of him when he reached the lower part: they had sixteen weeks provisions with them, and the crew consisted of 123 persons. It was Captain Hunter's wish to enter the Molucca Islands, and water at Timor; he disapproved very much of touching at Batavia, as it was productive of so much sickness, which would at present be of the most serious consequence, on account both of their crowded state and their scarcity of necessaries. He deemed it imprudent to call at Norfolk Island, except it could be done without much delay, seeing their stock was so small; and therefore concluded it their most judicious way to make the best use of

what time they had, and sail for either Mauritius or the Cape of Good Hope. As the wind had changed upon their setting out, they were obliged to anchor until the next morning, when by a laid-wind they got clear out of the harbour.

In order to gratify the wishes of the governor, (whose orders it was however not to lose much time in the attempt) the master of the ship endeavoured to make for Norfolk Island: he persevered till the 18th of April, and was repulsed by a very strong easterly wind when only within 25 leagues of it. Captain Hunter now assembled the master of the vessel and the officers, to take into consideration the present situation of the ship, and consult on the best method of proceeding. The casks which contained their water, being hastily made of very wretched stuff, now leaked in such a terrible manner, that there

there was above three weeks allowance of water left already, and it was naturally supposed that this loss would be increasing every week; agreeable therefore to Capt. Hunter's wish, all thoughts of making for Norfolk Island were relinquished, and on the 23d of April they reached the Isle of Pines, but could not weather it on account of a strong northwardly east wind: unacquainted with this coast, and having no book of information with them, they mistook the island for the Prince of Wales's Foreland, S. W. part of New Caledonia, and bore away with an intention of running along the western coast thereof: thus deceived, they ran into great danger, having frequently discovered land and low islands a-head. Upon examination, they found themselves in a very deep bay between the eastward, and threatened by a dangerous reef on the west; it being a critical situation, they were determined to go round the reef, for it was impossible to find a channel through it, as the sea was breaking very high on every part. When it was dark they tacked, and during the night every person was kept upon deck. At this time they were fully convinced of their mistake. As they kept working all night to windward, they found the next morning at day-light that they had gained considerable ground, for the wind had varied several points, which was of the most essential service. They carried a press of sail, and having weathered the reef, about two or three miles passed without it: they then steered to the N. W. then N. E. with a view of passing between Queen Charlotte's Islands and that large piece of land lately discovered. On the 10th of May there was land seen about seven leagues distance, bearing W. N. W. this proved to be, upon a nearer approach, about five small islands, which seeming only one at a distance, was supposed to be Carteret's Island. As there had been no knowledge of these islands before, Capt. Hunter gave them the name of Stewart's Islands, after the Hon. Keith Stewart. It was not known whether they were inhabited or not; but two of them, which were the largest, were supposed to be about three miles in length: they abounded in trees, among which was the cocoa-nut.

A great cluster of islands were discovered on the 14th, some very extensive; 32 were counted from the mast-head, but in all probability there were more. Capt. Hunter gave them the name of Lord Howe's Groupe. About half a dozen canoes were also seen coming off, with large triangular sails: one of them, containing nine men, approached the vessel, but would not touch or come along-side of her. Some nails, &c. were thrown into their boat, which afforded them apparent satisfaction: they, in return, threw some cocoa-nuts on board the vessel, in an hour after they departed. These people were of a dark copper hue, very robust, and remarkably clean: they wore (which was very extraordinary) artificial beards, their own appearing to be shaved quite close; at the end of which hung a row of small bones, which seemed like teeth at a distance, making apparently two mouths: their hair was tied in a knot, on the back of their head: they had bones through their nostrils, and their skin was marked, according to the custom of the natives.

On the 18th in the morning, there were three small islands discovered, and several others in the course of the day. They seemed to lie in the direction of S. E. and N. E. and were supposed to be either the nine islands mentioned by Captain Carteret, or those which Lieutenant Shortland saw. Sir Charles Hardy's island was discovered on the 19th. The vessel being a very heavy sailing one, they were very slow in their progress, especially as the weather was unfavourable. A light breeze rising eastward on the 22d, they wished to take advantage of it, and make for Wallis's Island, but could not proceed more than a knot and a half, having no

ground with 130 fathoms line, and therefore unable of forcing the ship on, nor could they reach anchorage in Gower's Harbour, though within three miles of it: they therefore bore away, in hopes of fetching Carteret's Harbour; which, as laid down in the chart, was four leagues from Wallis's Island: but this account, it seems, was erroneous, and they did not discover their mistake, till it was impossible to retract. They now ran along the shore, with a view of anchoring, but could not find bottom, though they were close in; this disappointment was exceedingly vexatious, as their present allowance of water was very insufficient for the remainder of their long voyage: it was therefore Captain Hunter's determination to try the coast of New Britain, and on the 22d they were within three leagues of the shore; being becalmed, Mr. Keltie was sent in the boat to try to get bottom near the shore for anchorage. A light breeze having succeeded the calm, the vessel met the boat, but the Captain was exceedingly mortified to hear from Mr. Keltie, that there was no possibility of anchoring there: they then without delay made for the Duke of York's Island, and having reached the south-east part thereof, were soon convinced there was no anchoring there. Next day, the 23d, they met with several canoes, on account of the slender condition of which, the natives avoided the ship, being aware of the danger of striking against her: but they appeared very friendly and good-natured. One of these canoes approached the boat, and understanding that the English wanted water, took a keg from them, with which they went to shore, filled it, and returned with it immediately to the boat. The officer gave them another keg, which he meant they should keep as a compensation for their trouble: but this was filled in like manner, and brought back with the greatest expedition. These people seemed to be remarkably honest, nor would they accept of any trifling presents, without making some return.

Having now ran round the western side of the island, they discovered a small cove, and upon examination found anchorage here, in twenty-one fathoms soft ground. This bay being surrounded with canoes, and a great number of the natives having assembled on the shore, it was deemed prudent to make ready the ship's guns for fear of any hostility. The people were well made, very stout, robust, and of a light copper colour; their hair appeared woolly and matted, owing to their manner of dressing it with grease and powder, both white and red, with which it is so loaded, that the sight is exceedingly disagreeable: they were entirely naked, several were scarified upon their arms and shoulders, and hollow reeds thrust through their nostrils. Their chief weapons were lances thrown by the hand, about ten feet long; they also carried stones with them, about the size of eggs, which they throw with great exactness from their slings. They had also a kind of musical instrument, doubtless intended for entertainment: their vocal music was far more harmonious than their instrumental. They seemed to be perfectly sensible of honors and distinctions, for several were more respected than others: the women were in general ordinary.

There was no appearance of hostility at first; on the contrary, those natives, though exceedingly clamorous, were disposed to be very friendly: they assisted the men in the boat to find water, which was done by digging holes in the sandy beach, and therein sinking the calks, which immediately filled; they introduced them to a place where there was a considerable flow of excellent fresh water. As they were now determined to lay in a sufficiency, for that purpose they delayed four days. On the first night a very strict watch was kept, and the natives were equally vigilant; they sung their watch-word, and the continual responses made very harmonious echoes. The next morning the same business was

repeated.

repeated; twelve of the waterers, in natives were encreased appeared with large was all over which great chief among nor could he be a which were offered all in their power this native was so fence, that he sin they now appeared away. Several to which they blew a their displeasure, a of the natives reti slung. Upon this muskets, which w the ship, boat, &c the natives, but powerful effect, th and several who w ously into the wat that some of them terwards remarka awe. The English out any further m their watering was had directions to were seen in the w muskets, and pre the last evening of departing from sho many canoes at an boughs, the emble appeared extremely took every means provocation they l a boat sent from th on their landing, viously piled upon consisting of sugar what was very red and female, were b their mouths and tree stuck in the down. This was mission. Peace be assembled, and join was indeed true ha received trifles: t which is in general pieces of linen or lively colours. Se and expressed great Their music, thoug no means discordan tone, and though the nicest connoise viation in the sou make a noise like they mean to testif

There was not island, but from t there is every reful lent, and producti seem to have found however, they are s Th'r huts evince the most part, ere of a cluster of coc clearing the ground residence, and of en a part of this grou where may be fou sugar-cane, &c. & sitting of high land, markable for abun ported by the carp

repeated; twelve men being sent armed to defend the waterers, in case of danger. This day the natives were increased in number, and the majority appeared with lances, stones, slings, &c. One who was all over white with powder, and evidently a great chief among them, became very troublesome, nor could he be appeased with any of the presents which were offered them. The men endeavoured all in their power to court his favour, but in vain: this native was so apparently enraged at their presence, that he stimulated the rest to hostility, and they now appeared determined to drive the English away. Several took out their boxes of red powder, which they blew all over; an emblem, it seems, of their displeasure, and an inclination to quarrel. Some of the natives retired; and several stones were now slung. Upon this the armed men discharged their muskets, which was answered by several shots from the ship, boat, &c. The guns not being known to the natives, but mistaken for clubs, had now such powerful effect, that they all ran away full of terror, and several who were in canoes jumped instantaneously into the water and swam away. It is supposed that some of them were wounded, as they were afterwards remarkably condoling, and full of awe. The English continued filling their casks, without any further molestation; and on the fourth day their watering was completed. The men having had directions to fire whenever any of the natives were seen in the woods, frequently discharged their muskets, and prevented any further attacks. On the last evening of their stay, when the sailors were departing from shore, the natives assembled; as did many canoes at an awful distance, holding up green boughs, the emblem of peace and friendship: they appeared extremely anxious for a reconciliation, and took every means to prove their concern for the provocation they had given. There was therefore a boat sent from the vessel, with every sign of amity: on their landing, the natives retired, having previously piled upon the beach their peace-offering, consisting of sugar-canes, cocoa-nuts, &c. &c. and what was very remarkable, two little dogs, male and female, were left on the top of this heap, with their mouths and feet tied: there was also a palm-tree stuck in the middle, with the head forced down. This was supposed to be a token of submission. Peace being re-established, all the natives assembled, and joined in a song of friendship; which was indeed true harmony: they also both gave and received trifles: they seemed to disregard iron, which is in general esteemed by natives, preferring pieces of linen or cloth, especially such as were of lively colours. Several were shaved by the barber, and expressed great satisfaction during the operation. Their music, though it boasts not of variety, is by no means discordant; they generally adhere to one tone, and though hundreds are singing together, the nicest connoisseur cannot discover the least deviation in the sound: when they have finished, they make a noise like the barking of dogs, by which they mean to testify their friendship.

There was not much time for exploring this island, but from the little which was discovered, there is every reason to think that the soil is excellent, and productive of several plants. The natives seem to have some notion of cultivation; in this, however, they are assisted more by nature than art. Their huts evince much ingenuity; they are, for the most part, erected of bamboo, near the shade of a cluster of cocoa-nuts: they have a manner of clearing the ground which is fixed upon for their residence, and of enclosing it with a kind of railing: a part of this ground is appropriated to a garden, where may be found the yam, banana, plantain, sugar-cane, &c. &c. The island, though not consisting of high land, is far from being low: it is remarkable for abundance of wood, which was reported by the carpenter of the *Sirius*, who was sent

No. 5.

to examine it, to be in general of the same nature of the cabbage-tree or palm in Port Jackson; but there was one kind, he said, which appeared somewhat like the ebony, that was remarkably hard and good.

The master of the vessel gave these natives two English pointers, male and female, and a cock and a hen, which he had received at Port Jackson, and with which these people were highly delighted: he now prepared for sailing, and in the morning at ten o'clock on the 27th they left the bay, which was called Port Hunter, after the captain. This bay, though not extensive, is nevertheless safe and convenient, particularly at this time. It is situated N. W. of the island; and in part of it there is anchorage from 25 to 15 fathoms. It is the worst ground at the shoal water: in that part of 20 fathoms it is soft. As the salt water is very near the watering-place, it created a suspicion that what they had taken was brackish, especially as it was remarkably soft; but Captain Hunter imputed this supposition to mere prejudice, as there was not the least inconvenience derived from it.

They now proceeded N. W. by W. and W. N. W. and discovered Sandwich Island the next morning, bearing N. W. This island appeared high, and well covered with wood. The extraordinary peaked hill, which Capt. Carteret takes notice of, was seen on the north side. At night they steered W. by N. deeming it safe to keep aloof of the Portland Islands; but in the morning, finding themselves more to the northward than they imagined, they hauled up W. by S. and passed the islands, which are nine in number, low, but covered with wood, at about four miles distance. The weather became very foul on the night of the 30th of May; and the wind, which was changeable, threatened much rain: there were, however, only a few small showers. Early the next morning (May 31st) one of the Admiralty Islands were seen, bearing N. W. by W. and afterwards another from the mast-head, bearing W. It was now their wish to bring-to for the night; being however becalmed, their progress was very slow. They met with five large canoes, containing each eleven men; five of whom appeared warriors or chiefs, being ornamented (according to their custom) with paint, &c. these were standing in the middle of their canoes: however, on approaching the vessel, they discovered no inclination to hostility, but would not come on board, though invited: they were very willing to exchange their arrows, darts, shells, &c. for other trifles. These people wore a wrapper round their waist; and their hair, which seemed of a woolly nature, was turned up, and tied at the top. One of them seemed very anxious to be shaved; which knowledge of the operation fully evinced a late acquaintance with some English. Their canoes were very ingeniously fitted up; being from about 40 to 50 feet long. This interview was suddenly terminated, by a black heavy squall, which alarmed them in such a manner that they all hastily made for land.

There being now a smart gale of wind, they endeavoured to clear these islands before night: they made all the sail possible, and met with land in every direction. The night was very dark, and the rain incessant. As they were westward of the Admiralty Islands, they deemed themselves clear of St. George's Channel, and perfectly safe.

On the 3d of June they discovered two islands, about two points from the starboard beam; and another the next morning: from those they steered to the N. W. and W. N. W. the wind very changeable, and the weather equally variable: there being also a disagreeable head sea, their progress was very slow. After this the wind was set in from W. N. W. to W. S. W. and from the 19th they had been setting to the eastward, at the rate of 30 miles every day. One of the seamen, William Phillips, died on the 30th.

* N

O 1

On the 11th of July the allowance of water was obliged to be reduced, and each man had only two purfer's quarts, which was to answer every purpose for 24 hours. This distressing scarcity was much aggravated by the heat of the weather.

On the 13th a consultation was held, to consider on what was best to be done. It was universally deemed improper to persevere in a tedious attempt of reaching Macassar, seeing that the provisions and water which remained could only supply them for ten weeks at most, at the half allowance; and if the casks were leaky, the water would be short even of that; besides, the Dutch captain observed, that when they did reach the Molucca Islands, their number could not possibly be supplied nearer than Batavia: it was therefore deemed their most eligible plan to make either for the port of Manila, or endeavour to fetch Macao in China; the latter, however, was rather a doubtful experiment, seeing that the vessel was so leewardly.

Land was discovered on the 14th, bearing north; which proved to be two islands nearly joined together by a long sandy spit above water, and on account of the projection of others, must be very dangerous at night-time: they seemed to be quite alone, about five miles asunder. A few natives were seen, who ran away at sight of the ship. Capt. Hunter called these Phillip Islands, after the governor of New South Wales.

Three islands were discovered on the 17th of July. A ridge of rocks, about half a mile in breadth, were perceived from the main-head to stretch from the vessel to the southward, towards the islands: they had, however, 15 fathoms of water, and presently after 20. These islands were supposed to be part of the New Carolines.

On the 23d the weather became very unsettled, attended with heavy rains. Every one took advantage of these showers, and endeavoured to save as much water as possible, by spreading his blanket or rug. This weather continued till the 30th: the wind then veered to W. and W. by S. with which they stood southward, with hopes of fetching the Balbec Islands. On the 2d of August the wind was W. N. W. they then stood to the S. W. On the 6th the coast of Mindanao was perceived from S. to N. W. by S. An island was discovered on the 8th, bearing south five or six leagues: this from its situation was conjectured to be the island of Palnos. Being southward of Cape Augustine, they carried all the sail possible, to get to the westward. It was now found that the land, which was taken for one island the preceding day, was three; that which is westmost is very high, and is called Hummock Island: it appears about six miles long, from north to south. The next eastward thereof is not so high, but about the same length; and the eastmost of the three is a confined round spot, overspread with shrubs and trees. They passed between the small island and the next; the channel being previously tried by a boat, which was found both clear and safe. During the remainder of the day, they continued to work between the fourth point of Mindanao and these islands. A boat, with twelve men on board, was sent in the afternoon to meet them, from Hummock Island. When they approached the vessel, they asked several questions; which were answered by the master of the ship, and some of his own crew, who were Javanese, in the Malay language. It appeared that the inhabitants of this place were upon friendly terms with the Dutch; therefore the articles which were required were accordingly promised. The master of the ship was desired to give them a letter, containing every necessary information; which they were to deliver to the Raja, under whose government, these islands were. A larger boat was sent out in the evening, to have some conversation with them; but as it was dark, they did not choose to come on board the vessel. In the morning of the

11th, they stood in for Hummock Island, and at noon found anchorage in 22 fathoms water, about a mile's distance from the shore. An answer to the letter was brought from the Raja, in the same canoe which had been sent out the preceding day with Dutch colours, signifying (in the Malay language) that their wishes should be complied with.

They now proceeded without delay to water the ship; while several canoes were sent from the shore with a great store of necessaries: poultry, goats, fruits, &c. were immediately bargained for. The natives behaved exceedingly friendly, and were remarkably courteous to those who were employed on shore.

Notice was sent that the Raja intended to visit the vessel; and for that purpose he came in a large boat, which was covered with an awning of split bamboo: he was very respectfully attended; and, on his arrival, saluted with five guns. During the Raja's visit, a party of ten men armed were placed on the top of the round-house abaft. The Raja and his attendants were shewn to the cabin, where every due respect was paid them. The Raja now produced his commission, whereby he proved himself in a great measure supported by the Dutch East-India Company in his authority over these islands. Seeing therefore that the Dutch Company's interest was so well established in these islands, the master of the vessel was encouraged to request of the Raja a proper quantity of rice, which was very much wanted: this solicitation continued for some time. The Raja promised to visit them the next day, and bring such articles as were wanted. The master, upon taking leave, gave him a very rich piece of silk, and a volley was fired upon his return to the boat.

On the 14th, which was the next day, the Raja repeated his visit, according to promise; but the scanty measure he produced of rice and fago powder (which would scarce have been six days maintenance for two men) so incensed the master of the ship, who was of a very hasty, ungovernable disposition, that he was resolved to detain the Raja until his request was complied with. Capt. Hunter endeavoured to dissuade him from such violence; and urged him rather to renew his request, than to make a demand, and in case of refusal to intimate that he would make a proper report thereof to the Governor and Council at Batavia: the captain very shrewdly imagining that such threat would have a much better effect than a hasty quarrel, particularly as the people on deck were unprepared for an attack.

The conversation being renewed between the Raja and master of the ship, the latter still appeared perverse and violent; and the Raja, seeing the long-boat hoisted in, and some cutlasses brought upon deck, according to the master's orders, became somewhat alarmed, which his attendants perceiving, instantaneously assembled their companions, who approached with drawn daggers. An aged attendant upon the Raja, who held him by the sleeve, drew his dagger, and was prevented by the Raja from stabbing the master of the vessel, who immediately snatched up a hanger in his defence, and vehemently called out for small arms. Captain Hunter, though he condemned the master's conduct, drew his sword; and a number of his sailors, who were on the fore-part of the deck, and had been, previous to this, trading with the natives, immediately armed themselves with clubs, hand-spikes, &c. while some of the officers got up the small-arms, and commenced a smart fire. The Raja jumped from the gunwale into his boat, followed by his attendants, who immediately cut the rope which held them, and pulled away from the vessel with the greatest expedition. Several of the natives made their escape by swimming. The boat, which had been sent to shore for the purpose of water,

returned

returned at this natives, and it is but not a man on injury: the master notwithstanding was unfortunately Javanese, and under possible that he might not fall a sacrifice to

These islands are Hummock Island, abounded in rice, be apple, oranges, man Indian corn, tobacco fine fowls, goats, d tants were much of of the Malay: they a kind of turban. The scabbards, hung in a was very prevalent a scurf, like the scales offensive to the eye. In the evening, (ci the road and put to ward they steered to next morning they di S. W. in three hour space of six hours m bearing from S. W. a-head was seen in the small ones; one of wh called Poolo Sanguy land.

On the 25th they were within nine leagues 27th. The weather there was but little. There was a very heavy rain, which obliged them to clew up the sails. The wind was perceptible on the 28th, and supposed to be one of the southward of the upon the coast. Thunder, lightning, and a storm of rain, on the 29th of Sept. at night, in a sudden alarm; sometimes weather-quarter like were in expectation. They kept themselves in readiness, and were not a moment without their arms, as they were that it had been a late wrecked vessel, which

On the 7th there were S. W. at first they were joined each other, and supposed they were trading their being pirates, they encountered them all the

The wind continued S. S. W. to W. N. W. (at night-time) from S. ground was suddenly it could not have been 20 fathoms; but they were twelve. They passed a flood on to the S. W. a table bight, formed of a large island called Poolo to stand off and on, and at this time, seeing that the shore, they were obliged to anchor; have been of considerable got out of this bight. Brothers, they endeavoured to land on the shore. After meeting which caused no little was ground discovered they had ten fathoms.

returned at this critical period. Several of the natives, and it is supposed the Raja, were wounded; but not a man on board the vessel suffered the least injury: the master's violence and imprudence were notwithstanding very much censured. One seaman was unfortunately left behind; but as he was a Javanese, and understood the Malay language, it is possible that he might have saved his life, if he did not fall a sacrifice to rage and revenge.

These islands are exceedingly fertile, particularly Hummock Island, where the Raja resides. They abounded in rice, bees-wax, honey, sugar-cane, pine apple, oranges, mango, jack, limes, fago, cocoa-nut, Indian corn, tobacco, peas, potatoes, &c. also very fine fowls, goats, dogs, parrots, &c. The inhabitants were much of the same size, colour, form, &c. of the Malay: they wore jackets and trowsers, and a kind of turban. Their daggers, which had wooden scabbards, hung in a sash. A disease like the leprosy was very prevalent among them; and a kind of dry scurf, like the scales of fish, rendered their skin offensive to the eye.

In the evening, (eight o'clock) they weighed from the road and put to sea, and the wind being westward they steered to the southward. Early the next morning they discovered a small island, bearing S. W. in three hours after two others; and in the space of six hours more there were seven in sight, bearing from S. W. to W. N. W. A large island a-head was seen in the evening, and a number of small ones; one of which was about a mile's distance, called Poolo Sanguy: this is a large tract of high land.

On the 25th they made the island of Celebes, and were within nine leagues of the land thereof the 27th. The weather at present was very sultry, and there was but little wind, and that little from S. W. There was a very heavy squall on the 29th, which obliged them to clew all up. The island of Bonneo was perceptible on the 30th; and a small island, supposed to be one of those which are laid down to the southward of the Taba Islands, and near in upon the coast. There was a violent squall of thunder, lightning, and rain, on the 21st. On the 1st of Sept. at night, it being very dark, there was a sudden alarm; something being discovered on the weather-quarter like a large row-boat: the people were in expectation of a pirate, and accordingly kept themselves in readiness; but as this apprehension was groundless, it was afterwards concluded that it had been a large tree, or the remains of a wrecked vessel, which were floating; not bound at all.

On the 7th there were two large proas seen in the S. W. at first they were divided; but they presently joined each other, and stood in for land. It was supposed they were trading vessels; but for fear of their being pirates, the crew were in readiness to encounter them all the night.

The wind continued very variable, sometimes S. S. W. to W. N. W. and at other times (particularly night-time) from S. S. E. to S. On the 17th the ground was suddenly perceptible under the ship: it could not have been more than five or six fathoms; but they were soon afterwards in ten or twelve. They passed the Brothers next day, and stood on to the S. W. being drawn into a considerable bight, formed of the south part of Borneo and a large island called Poolo La'oot, they were obliged to stand off, and on, the winds being very trifling: at this time, seeing that they dropped in so fast upon the shore, they were apprehensive that they would be obliged to anchor; which loss of time would have been of considerable consequence. When they got out of this bight, and were eastward of the Brothers, they endeavoured to fetch the Celebes shore. After meeting with many changes of wind, which caused no little trouble and vexation, there was ground discovered under the ship on the 19th: they had ten fathoms over a very rocky bottom,

which was quite perceptible. They now steered W. S. W. which they continued for about fourteen leagues. On the 23d they made the Caraman Java Islands: the next day they met with some whirlwinds and water-spouts, which however they got clear of by a sudden smart breeze of wind. From Caraman Java they steered westward, and made the Boomkin's Islands on the 25th. Having passed three miles within them, the shore of Java was discovered; and on the 27th they anchored in Batavia road, being exactly six months on their passage.

The following is a list of the latitudes and longitudes of the different places seen in the course of this voyage, from Port Jackson by the northern route:

Reef from the S. E. point of New Caledonia, called by Capt. Cook Queen Charlotte's Foreland,
In latitude 23 deg. 00 min. south.
In longitude 167 deg. 18 min. east.

Stewart's Islands, (center)
In latitude 8 deg. 26 south.
In long. 163 18 east.

Bradley's Shoals,
In latitude 6 52 south.
In long. 161 6 east.

Lord Howe's Group, south side,
In latitude 5 30 south.
In long. 159 25 east.

Five Islands and two large rocks, supposed to have been Carteret's nine islands, south end,
In latitude 4 53 south.
In long. 155 20 east.

Appearance of a straight through very high land westward, supposed to have been Shortland's or Bougainville's passage,
In latitude 5 25 south.
In long. 154 30 east.

Sir Charles Hardy's Island,
In latitude 4 41 south.
In long. 154 20 east.

Lord Anson's Island,
In latitude 5 8 south.
In long. 154 31 east.

Cape St. George's, New Ireland,
In latitude 4 52 south.
In long. 153 13 east.

Port Hunter, on the Duke of York's Island, situated in the narrowest part of the passage between New Britain and New Ireland, and which appears to be named Isle of Man in Capt. Carteret's chart by mistake,
In latitude 4 7 30 sec. south.
In long. 152 44 east.

S. W. point of Sandwich Islands,
In latitude 30 28 south.
In long. 150 27 east.

Portland Islands, (center of the group)
In latitude 2 38 south.
In long. 149 8 east.

Part of the Admiralty Islands,
From latitude 2 23 south,
To ditto 2 59 south.
From long. 147 52 east,
To ditto 146 30 east.

Phillip Islands,
In latitude 1 38 north.
In long. 140 30 east.

The supposed islands belonging to the New Carolines,
In latitude 1 33 north.
In long. 137 30 east.

North end of the island St. John, off the east coast of Mirindanao,
In latitude 6 30 north.
In long. 126 31 east.

very prevalent in this town. The patient was thereby reduced to such a weakly condition, as not to be able to stand or walk; it likewise occasioned such a sickness at the stomach, that every kind of food was disagreeable; add to which, that it was of such a stubborn nature, as rendered it exceedingly difficult to be removed. One Daniel Puddle, seaman, died on the 19th of October; Terence Burne, ditto, on the 26th; at which time there were twenty-two indisposed. Robert Henderson, seaman, died on the 14th of November; and Edward Moore, ditto, on the 11th of December.

Mr. Egenhard having evinced the greatest attention and liberality in respect to the equipment of the vessel, it was ready for sea October the 20th, where having left the road, they failed to the Island of Onrust, where they anchored, and took in their stores. They left Onrust on the 22nd, and in four days cleared the Straits of Sunda; they now steered S. W. and made Cape Lagullus on the 15th of December, and anchored in Table Bay, at the Cape of Good Hope, on the 17th.

The wind now became so violent from the south-east, that they could not possibly fetch their upper anchorage. Thus it continued for several days, particularly on the 20th, when it was so remarkably furious that the vessel broke loose from the two bower anchors: it was in vain to trust any longer to anchors, which had no effect, especially as there was not the least abatement of the wind: the vessel was tossed to and fro by every gale that blew: the captain, apprehensive of being drove upon the reef off Robin's Island, in the night, immediately had both cables cut, and fortunately ran to sea under the fore-sail before it was dark. The weather now became fair, and the wind quite calm; therefore with the view of recovering the bay again, they made sail. In the evening of the 22nd, they were close round Green Point, and having but one small anchor remaining, hoisted the signal of distress, which was answered with several guns by his Majesty's Ship Providence, the Assistant armed Tender, and Pitt Transport, which were in the bay. These vessels immediately sent out all their boats; several others were likewise sent by some English Whalers and Americans, who supplied them with haulers and anchors: and by the great exertions and attention of all the commanders of these ships, Captain Hunter and his company were now in safety: their vessel was secured by anchors and cables which they received from the shore, for their own anchors were lost.

Being detained here through the weakly condition of the sick, Captain Hunter took this opportunity of having a spare top-mast converted into a mizen-mast, which was soon completed; some other defects being also found, were at this time remedied.

A quantity of provisions for four months being completed on January 13, 1792, Captain Hunter issued orders that all those who were sufficiently recovered should appear on board, and proceed upon the voyage: five men were obliged to continue in their sick quarters, being still too weak for labour. A smart breeze from S. S. E. enabled them to run down to Robin's Island, where, on account of a sudden calm, they were obliged to anchor. They made for sea on the 19th, the wind being S. W. and perceived the Island of St. Helena on the fourth of February. In the evening they moored ship, and anchored in fourteen fathoms and a half off James's Valley.

An officer was sent on shore to deliver the captain's respects to the governor, according to the usual ceremony. The governor when acquainted with the accidents the captain had met with, immediately wrote to him in a very polite style, expressing great concern for what he had heard; and likewise assuring him that every refreshment which the island produced, should be very much at the service of his

No. 5.

seamen, for the speedy recovery of their health and strength. The captain landed the next day with a salute of eleven guns, and met with a very kind reception from the governor and his family, who were particularly attentive and friendly, both to him and all his officers.

During their stay in this island, they received a quantity of fresh beef for the ship's company, and having completed their water, they departed on the 13th, and arrived at Portsmouth, April 2nd.

It will be necessary to subjoin here an extract of a letter from John Hunter, Esq. to the Right Honourable the Lords Commissioners of the Admiralty, wherein the captain has given his opinion on the best course from New South Wales to Europe, and which it is presumed, will be found both instructive and entertaining information.

"The passage from England to the Cape of Good Hope is already so well known that it would be superfluous in me to make any observations upon it. From the Cape to our settlement at Port Jackson, the navigation is now much better known, than it was when the first convoy to that country was left in my charge; it is a plain and easy track; any person who is acquainted with the common rules of navigation, and finding the variations of the compass, may, with the necessary look-out, run across that extensive ocean without danger: I have failed over it twice, and it has been crossed by many other ships since. The advantage of being able to ascertain the ship's place in longitude, by observations of the moon, will ever be satisfactory, but more particularly through so vast a tract of sea, in which the error of the log may considerably accumulate, when ships arrive upon that coast where the land lies so nearly in a north and south direction, there can be no difficulty in discovering what part of the coast they are upon, their latitude observed will always point that out, by applying to the general chart, given from the authority of that most correct and able navigator Captain Cook. When they arrive off Botany Bay, Port Jackson, or Broken-Bay, they will I hope receive some assistance into any of these harbours, from the surveys done by me, copies of which I delivered to the governor, as the different harbours were completed, in order that fair copies might, as early as he should judge proper, be transmitted home: but that nothing in my power may be wanting to assist those who may be strangers on their arrival off that part of the coast, separate copies of those parts, with directions more full than were given with the first, will be delivered at your lordship's board, with this, and also a copy of the three harbours, on one sheet, connected with the intermediate coast. It is the return from that country immediately for Europe, by the safest, most certain, and expeditious route, that should be the object of our particular attention. The passage from Van Diemen's Land westward, to the Cape of Good Hope, has never yet been attempted; we can therefore say but little upon it; some, however, are of opinion, that a passage may be made that way with as much ease and expedition as by any other route. I confess that I differ from these opinions: I admit that the passage may be made; but I think, whenever it is tried, that it will be found tedious, and fatiguing to the ship's company. The ship which pursues that route should be strong and well found, and her crew healthy and capable of bearing much blowing, and some cold weather. It is not from a single voyage that we are to judge of the eligibility of this passage; it will happen in some seasons that the wind may be more favourable for making that passage than in others; but it is on the general prevalence of westerly winds here, and the

• O

"heavy

" heavy sea which is constantly rolling from the westward; that I conceive this route may be tedious and fatiguing, and on which account I give the preference to the southern route by Cape Horn. This passage has been frequently tried, and never yet failed of being safe and expeditious; the other never having yet been tried, leaves in my mind some doubt of its certainty and expedition, and a strong suspicion, that whenever it is, it may be found twice out of three times, attended with the difficulties I have hinted at; but if from repeated experience it should be found to be as practicable, expeditious, and certain, as some imagine, it will no doubt be preferable to all the others, as being a shorter distance.

" This passage will of course be attempted only in the Summer months: for admitting a ship to have gained so much to the westward, as to enable her to clear the west coast of New Holland, and to stretch to the northward, until she falls into the south-east trade wind, she will carry this trade in the Summer-time probably quite home to the Cape; but in the Winter, north-west winds prevail in the neighbourhood of that coast, which would exceedingly retard her arrival there.

" The passage southward by Cape Horn, I have failed, and as a proof of the prevalence of westerly winds in those high latitudes, I made my voyage to the Cape of Good Hope, in ninety-one days, from Port Jackson, although I was so unlucky as to be detained beating off Cape Horn for seventeen days, with a north-east wind; which I believe is not very common there. This is rather a long voyage to be performed in that time, and yet I think it will be done twice in three times in less, although a distance of about 3300 leagues.

" The northern passage, which can only be attempted during the winter season, in the southern hemisphere, on account of the periodical trade winds in the Indian seas, and undertaken in such time as to ensure their reaching Batavia before the setting in of the westerly winds there, which is generally in the middle or end of October. The dangers, currents, calms, and other delays to which we are liable in these little known seas, and of which we had much experience in the Waakmanbeyd transport, is the subject of the preceding narrative, which was written particularly for the information of your lordships, and principally with a view of shewing the very great uncertainty of an expeditious voyage to Europe by that passage. I failed from Port Jackson in March, and I can take upon me, without, I hope, being supposed to have presumed too much on my own judgment and experience, to assert, that a ship leaving that port in the end of September, or beginning of October, taking her route by Cape Horn, would have reached England as soon as I have.

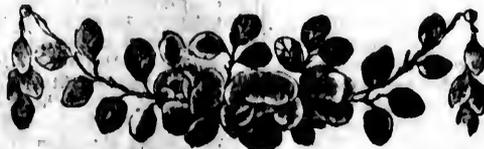
" If ever government should find it necessary to send ships to that country, which may be intended to return immediately from thence to England, I beg leave to suggest to your lordships, that the particular seasons in the southern hemisphere should be considered, in order to prevent those delays in the return of the ships which must inevitably attend their sailing at an unfavourable time.

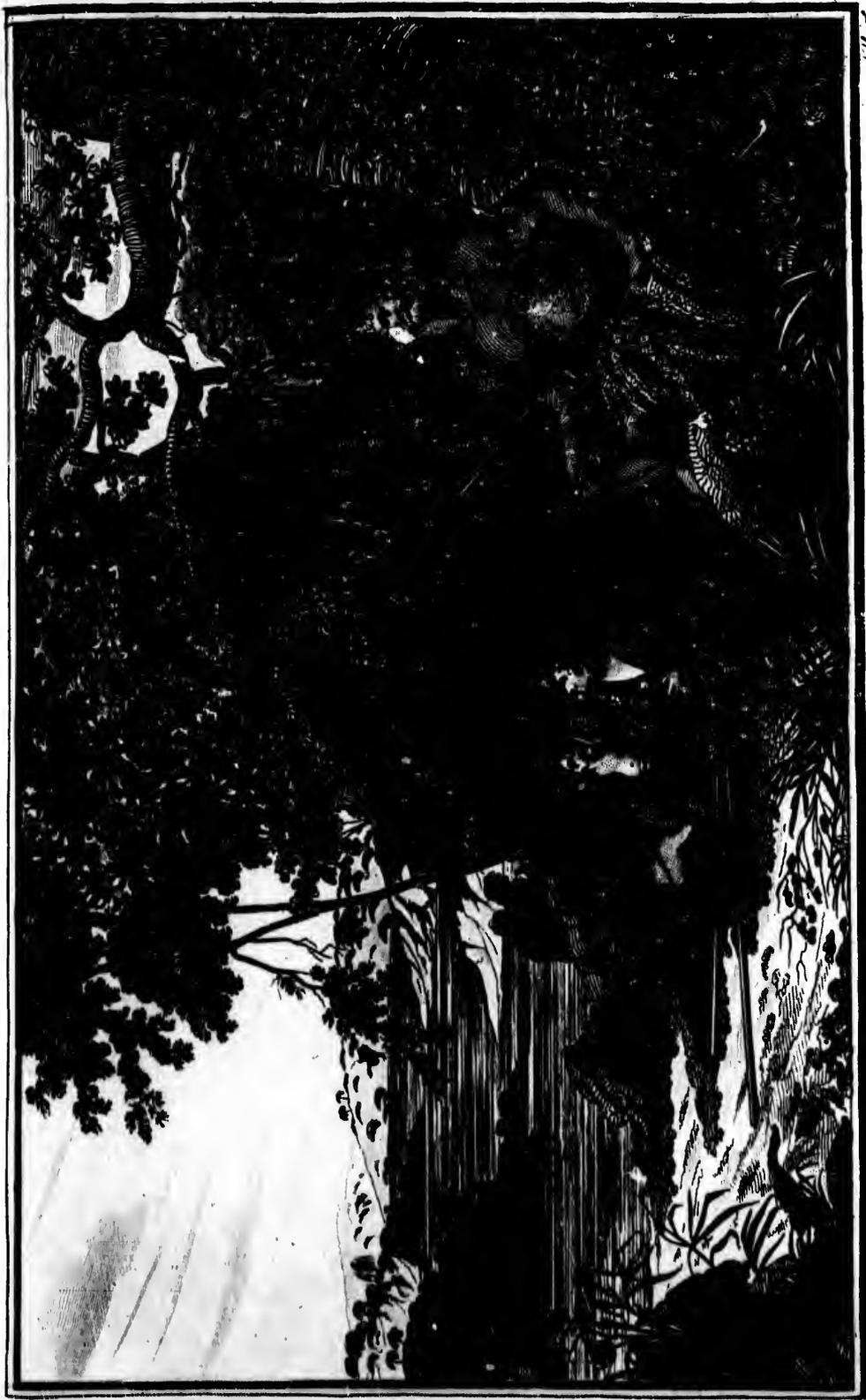
" If such ships leave England in February, or earlier, if found more convenient, they should refresh at Rio de Janeiro, in preference to the Cape of Good Hope; as by the time they could arrive at the Cape the N. W. winds will be setting in there, which will oblige them to go into the False bay; this will considerably increase their expences, and probably occasion some delay: sail immediately from Rio de Janeiro for the coast of New South Wales, where, if they are not uncommonly unfortunate, they will arrive early in September; this is giving them good time.

" They will then have time to clear, ballast, and to refresh their people for six weeks or two months, and return by Cape Horn; or, if the western passage be found preferable, the season will be equally favourable for it. If they should take their route by Cape Horn, as they will no doubt require to refresh somewhere in their voyage home, they may either stop at Santa Catharina or Rio Janeiro, on the Brazil coast, or go to the Cape; in this case I would recommend the Cape, as more convenient, in more respects than one. If they are sickly, there they may get a supply of men, which it is well known they cannot at either of the other places; and in sailing from the Cape homeward they will have the advantage of being to windward; however, if as late as April, they would probably prefer Brazil. If water only were wanted, that could be had at Falkland's Islands.

" The ships upon this service will, no doubt, be under the inconvenience of coming upon the coast of New South Wales in some of the winter months; we have some bad weather on that coast in the winter, and some smart gales of wind; the easterly gales always bring thick or hazy weather; I would recommend the not making too free with the coast, until they be near the parallel of their port. In steering in for Port Jackson, if they should fall to leeward, either with a northerly or southerly wind, they can avail themselves of either Botany-bay or Broken-bay, Port Jackson being the center harbour."

Having thus far related (in a more satisfactory and ample manner than has been hitherto published) all the chief occurrences, relative to those instructive Voyages to and from Port Jackson, &c. which are not only entertaining, but on account of their public utility doubly interesting, we shall now, agreeable to promise, proceed with our further relations, and give in the second place (with the same accuracy and regularity) the valuable and remarkable Voyage of Capt. Willon, from Macao to the Pelew Islands, and so on.—The great encouragement and liberality already bestowed upon this undertaking, are alone sufficient to call forth all the exertions of the Author to complete in the best manner this universal Collection. It is with no little pride that he exults in the satisfaction, which has been already testified by the Public, even with the little that has been seen: in order therefore to make his triumph still greater, it shall be his unremitting study at present to be able hereafter to boast that the more they have read, the more they are delighted.



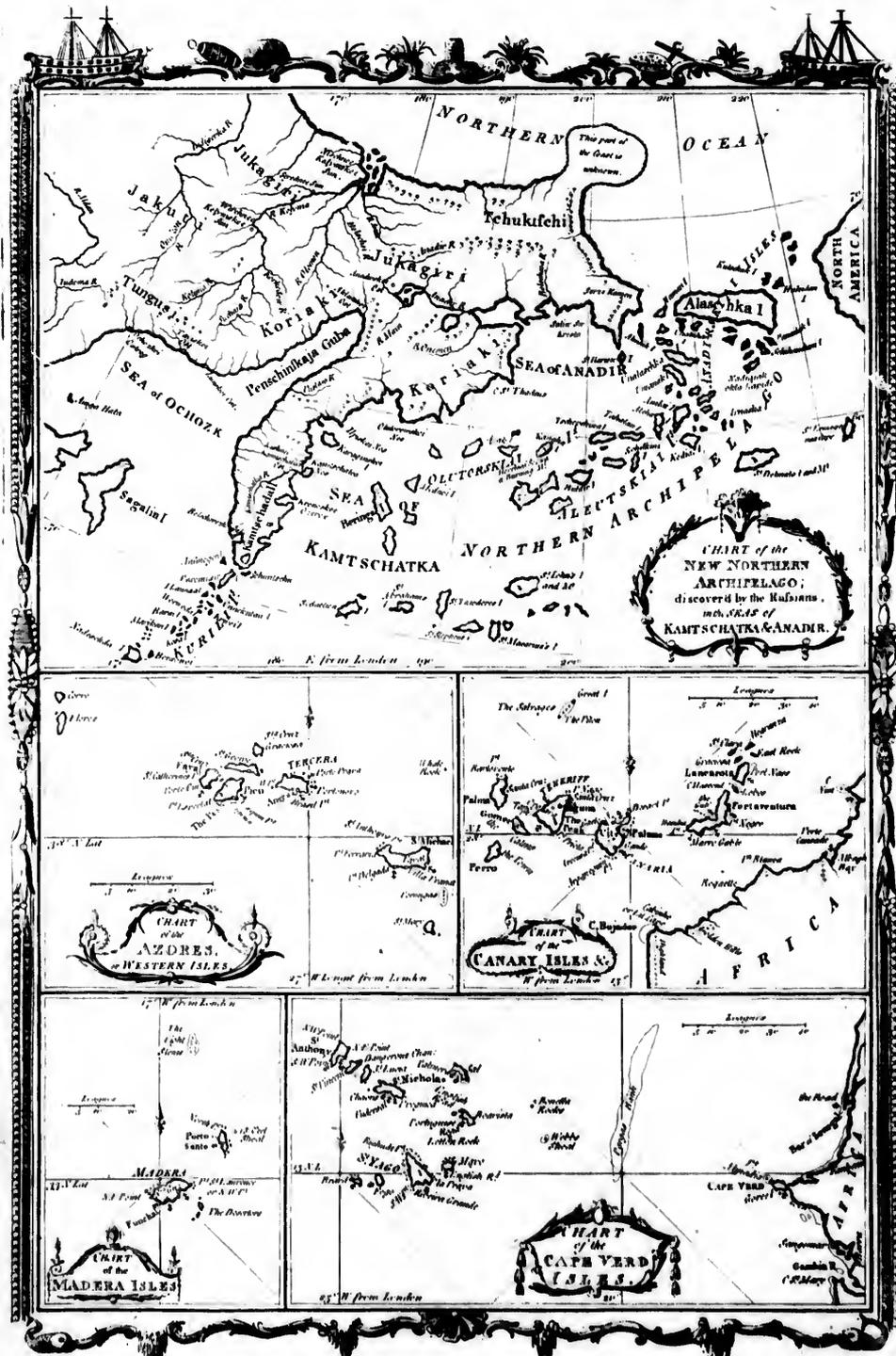


A FAMILY *in* DUSK BAY, NEW ZEALAND.

1843.







VARIOUS CHARTS OF ISLANDS &c. in the ATLANTIC & PACIFIC OCEANS.

The

In t

The King
Including all
Captain W

Being an Ent
Wonderful
any hitherto

Which, with the
with a Var

THE discovery entirely owned by these has been made in this place, it is true, but never till now. All informations not only trivial, but the following remarks. These islands, observed by some were by them calling in Spanish palm-trees, for which at a distance. All the several rivers their names the majority are New Carolines, 1696, as appears missionaries by inhabitants of St. John driven by this discovery by Holy Trinity, by order of Philip there, les Peres had passed Sonora cation arose betwixt the missionaries, on shore in the bornly persevering anchorage could counter the force obliged after a leave the reverse account of another at sea, at

A NEW, GENUINE, AND COMPLETE
HISTORY OF
The Wreck of the Antelope Packet,
On a VOYAGE from MACAO;
UNDER THE COMMAND OF
Captain HENRY WILSON,
In the Service of the Honourable EAST-INDIA COMPANY:
WITH FULL AND CIRCUMSTANTIAL ACCOUNTS OF

The PELEW ISLANDS,

The King, Raa Kook, Arra Kooker, Lee Boo, and other Inhabitants.

Including all the ADVENTURES, DISCOVERIES, INFORMATION, &c. contained in the
JOURNALS and COMMUNICATIONS of

Captain WILSON, GEORGE KEATE, Esq. Surgeon SHARP, and several
of the other OFFICERS and GENTLEMEN.

Being an Entire New HISTORY of this Unfortunate WRECK, Immediate DISTRESSES,
Wonderful DELIVERANCE, and Intertelling ADVENTURES, more Accurate and Full than
any hitherto Published.

Which, with the several other VOYAGES and TRAVELS to be included in this Collection, will be Embellished
with a Variety of Most Elegant COPPER-PLATES, Drawn and Engraved by Eminent Artists.

INTRODUCTION.

THE discovery of the Pelew Islands has been entirely owing to the wreck of the Antelope: there has been some curious mention of this place, it is true, in the Spanish and other Histories, but never till now was there a satisfactory account: All informations derived from former relations, are not only trivial, but erroneous, as may appear from the following remarks:

These islands, which, as supposed, were first of all observed by some of the Spaniards of the Philippines, were by them called the Palos Islands, Palos signifying in Spanish, a mast; on account of the tall palm-trees, for which this place is remarkable, and which at a distance resembled the masts of ships. All the several islands of this Archipelago have derived their names from the Spaniards, though now the majority are chiefly known by the title of the New Carolines, which were discovered in the year 1696, as appears from the writings of the Jesuit missionaries; whereby it seems, that some of the inhabitants of Spain, venturing too far to sea, had been driven by a storm to one of the Philippines: this discovery was the occasion of a vessel called the Holy Trinity, being afterwards fitted out at Manilla by order of Philip V. to carry two missionaries there, *ies Peres Duberon* and *Cortel*; when they had passed *Sonorol*, one of the Carolines, an altercation arose between the Captain, *Don Padilla* and the missionaries, wherein the latter contended to go on shore in the chaloupe, to fix the cross, and stubbornly persevered in the attempt. The vessel, as no anchorage could be found, unable any longer to encounter the force of the winds and currents, was obliged after a few days to quit her station, and leave the reverend fathers behind. There is also an account of another vessel being sent, which foundered at sea, and all the crew perished, except one

Indian, who, by some miraculous means got back to Manilla, and made known the fatal accident. In these writings there is also an account of a boat, belonging to the Carolines, which was driven by a tempest to Guahan, one of the Mariannes, in 1721; where, being detained, *Catova* (who was afterwards killed by the people of the Carolines) endeavoured to acquire some knowledge of their language and country; and from these natives, derived an imperfect account of the Pelew Islands. He records that this Archipelago was divided into five provinces, and that these islands formed the fifth division: then, upon the authority of these natives, who acknowledged, that they had no communication with those people, he adds, "They are an inhuman savage race; the men and women go entirely naked, and feed upon human flesh; this is the reason" (as given by the natives) "that the inhabitants of the Carolines looked upon them with detestation, as the enemies of mankind; and with whom they held it dangerous to have any intercourse."

From this accidental acquaintance, the four-fifths of these islands were called by the Spaniards New Carolines; but being reported by the missionaries as unprofitable, they were of course neglected by the Spanish monarchy. The account, as given by the natives, of the *first* part, was indeed sufficient to deter them from all enquiries; but it is evident that these people knew nothing of the Pelew inhabitants: at least, if they were then inhuman, savage, and enemies of mankind, they are now of a contrary description. Perhaps, through some mistake or other, they entertained a notion of their being cannibals, and therefore avoided them. Be this as it may, it is plain, on account of this imputation, those islands remained in total obscurity, being only known

known by the appellation of Palos, which the Spaniards had given them. They do not lie indeed in the way of any of the circum-navigators; sometimes they have been perceived at a distance, by vessels making the eastern passage to and from China against the monsoons, but it is evident that none of these vessels anchored there, or had intercourse with any of the natives. It is thought that Captain Carteret approached them the nearest of all. However, the great astonishment which the inhabitants of these islands betrayed upon seeing white people, is sufficient demonstration they were unacquainted with any of that colour; and we may therefore naturally conclude the crew of the Antelope were the first Europeans that they ever saw. How far they have been unjustly censured by their neighbours of the other divisions, will appear in

the following Chapters. It is a matter of doubt, whether those who have so wantonly styled them savage, inhuman, and inimical to mankind, have ever yet demonstrated so much natural courtesy, humanity, and philanthropy, as have been discovered in these people, too long unknown.

Why be astonished at a savage race,
Who want the light of godliness and grace?
No, NATUAS's children rather should surprize,
And bid our wonder at their wonders rise:
Those self-taught people, of unruffled mind,
Humane by nature, and by nature kind;
Who, tho' like us, ne'er blest as to receive
The GOSPEL's rays can yet instructions give,
And teach even enlighten'd Christians how to
[live.]

CHAPTER I.

The Antelope's Departure from Macao—Obliged to anchor again—Anchor weighed—Set sail—A high Sea—The Weather—Bashee Islands perceived—Foretop-mast sprung—Weather variable—A calm—The Chinese Men exercised—A Storm—Cattle lost—Weather fine—A Squall—Alarm of Breakers—General Confusion and Anxiety—Vessel filled with Water—Orders given—A violent Storm—Punctuality and Expedition of the Men—Fortitude and Humanity of the Captain—His Recommendation—Their cheerful Consent—Moderate Refreshment—Mutual Consolation—A small Island discovered—Other Islands eastward—Boats manned and loaded—Mr. Bengier, and others, depart in them—Injunctions—A Raft begun—Much Disquietude—Mr. Bengier's return—Agreeable News—Raft completed—A Man lost—Pinnace, Jolly Boat, and Raft filled—People assembled—Their Departure—Deplorable Situation of the People in the Raft—Their Exertions—Strength exhausted—A Mistake—Arrival of the Pinnace—Occurrences, &c.

IN the month of June, 1783, Capt. Henry Wilson arrived at Macao, in the Antelope packet, of about 300 tons burthen, belonging to the Honourable East-India Company. The vessel being reftituted with all possible expedition, the captain received his dispatches, and, after the usual business and ceremonies, they weighed anchor July 20th; but the weather turning out very foul and unsettled, were a few hours after obliged to anchor in seven fathoms. The next morning, the wind being from the E. N. E. they again weighed anchor, and set sail. Having met with a very high sea, they were obliged to lay-to, and secure their live stock, &c. The weather continued very unsettled; in general, cloudy and dark. There was much rain, thunder, and lightning. On the 25th they perceived the Bashee Islands, bearing from S. E. to E. N. E. They went round the northernmost island the next day, but on account of the haziness of the weather they had a very imperfect view of the islands. The foretop-mast being sprung, the sails were taken in, the topgallant-mast got down, and preparations making to get down the top-mast, which on account of the haziness of the weather could not be effected till the next day, when the vessel was also dried and aired, and the cattle and stock secured; a good part of which had perished.

For a while they had good weather, and a favourable wind, which afterwards changed, and remained very variable. A calm took place on the 1st of August, when some of the Chinese men, who were on board, were sent out by the captain in the jolly-boat to row awhile, that they might acquire a knowledge of the oars: the weather now continued fair, and the wind moderate, for two days. On the 7th a storm arose, which was of a short duration; but notwithstanding the cattle all perished, except one bullock. After this the weather became so fine, that they proceeded on their voyage with the greatest cheer and happiness.

On the 10th there was much thunder, lightning, and rain. The chief mate, Mr. Bengier, whose turn it was to watch on the deck, had lowered the top-sails; at this time the captain was in bed, nor did Mr. Bengier deem it necessary to have him called, as the squall appeared but of little consequence.

An alarm of breakers was given by the man on the look-out, but so short was the notice, that there was no possibility of avoiding them. So great was the shock upon this occasion, that the captain and all the other gentlemen immediately forsook their beds to learn the cause: they saw, with the greatest consternation, the breakers along-side, and the rocks which were making their appearance through them. The vessel taking a heel, was in about an hour's time filled with water up to her lower deck hatchways. Orders were instantly given to bring upon deck what provisions were likely to be spoiled, and to preserve them with a covering from the rain; also to secure the small-arms, gunpowder, ammunition, &c. While this was accomplishing, others, according to orders, were easing the vessel, which was in danger of oversetting, of her mizen-mast, the main and foretop-masts, and lower yards; the boats were likewise hoisted out, with two men in each, to take care of the provisions, &c. which were put in them. At this critical period there was a violent storm, which added not a little to the dreadful scene. The men were, however, remarkably attentive, and executed their orders with uncommon punctuality and expedition. The captain, round whom the people thronged with looks of anxiety and terror, behaved with the greatest fortitude and humanity, endeavouring to revive the drooping spirits of his crew with soothing expressions; he strongly recommended that they would abstain from spirituous liquors; to which they cheerfully consented; but as they were exceedingly wet and fatigued, each person was refreshed with a biscuit and two glasses of wine. The tedious hours of night now passed on in mutually endeavouring to console each other. Each man had taken what quantity of clothes it was convenient to him to secure; and every individual strictly conformed to the captain's command, to abstain from spirituous liquors.

At dawn of day they discovered a small island to the southward, distance about four leagues; and a little after some other islands were seen to the eastward. Upon this the boats were manned, and loaded in the best manner; Mr. Bengier, and a few others, were dispatched in these, to explore the nearest island; they were likewise enjoined to court the friendship



MAN of NEW ZEALAND .



WOMAN of NEW ZEALAND .

London: J. & J. Galt, 1841.



Engraved for PORTLOCK'S. *New* COLLECTION of VOYAGES and TRAVELS.



Portrait of
(A NEW ZEALAND CHIEF,
His FACE being ingeniously TATAWED, & Ornamented
according to the Custom of the Country.
 Delighted by Mr. Hoag, March 8 1724.

IN
 friendship and co-
 any; and to av-
 proved it urgent.
 were immediately
 board, and make
 situation of the
 they expected the
 a smart gale, the
 about the boats,
 quietude. These
 the afternoon, by
 revived, by Mr.
 not only a secure
 comfortable shelter fr
 excellent fresh wat
 was no appearanc
 were left with th
 were now so encour
 that they renewed
 and in a short ti
 during the depart
 after which they
 bread and wine.
 lost, having fallen
 ging of the mizze
 in the mizzen-ch
 save him, but in v
 The pinnace an
 provisions, small-a
 the raft which they
 provisions and sto
 The boatwain wa
 people from the
 captain's repeated
 anxious to secure
 the carpenter, wi
 tools, &c. that he
 and raft were gon
 the jolly-boat by t
 the preservation of
 The raft was ta
 was awhile assist
 was so heavy lad
 further aid; it acc
 shore, where they
 left with the store
 preparing the plac
 sufferers. Those p
 to the raft, were
 situation: in clear
 out of sight of the
 selves, and cling w
 for fear of being w
 and rise of the sea

Employment of the
 them to Breakfast
 —The Captain's O
 the King—His D
 the English in the
 by the Natives—
 Sailors—Return o
 —King's Message
 Satisfaction—Acc
 —Ceremony—He
 hensue—The Mer
 His Majesty bewil
 A hideous Noije
 tions of the King

THE men wer
 their tents, a
 visions: the wind
 were prevented fr
 the morning, Aug
 No. 5.

friendship and confidence of the natives, if they met any; and to avoid all hostility, unless necessity proved it urgent. Those who remained in the vessel were immediately at work to get the booms overboard, and make a raft for their security, as the situation of the Antelope was such that every hour they expected she would go to pieces. As there was a smart gale, they became now very apprehensive about the boats, whose delay caused much inquietude. These tears were, however, removed in the afternoon, by their appearance; and their spirits revived, by Mr. Benger's assurance that there was not only a secure harbour, which afforded a comfortable shelter from the wind, but also some excellent fresh water: he further added, that there was no appearance of any inhabitants. Five men were left with the stores upon shore. The crew were now encouraged with these agreeable tidings, that they renewed their work with renovated spirits, and in a short time the raft, which they begun during the departure of the boats, were completed: after which they refreshed themselves again with bread and wine. One Godfrey Minks was however lost, having fallen overboard while cutting the rigging of the mizzen mast, which had been entangled in the mizzen-chains: every method was taken to save him, but in vain.

The pinnace and jolly-boat were soon filled with provisions, small-arms, and ammunition; likewise the raft which they had finished loaded with as much provisions and stores as it could carry with safety. The boatwain was now desired to summon all the people from the ship, who, notwithstanding the captain's repeated entreaties to leave her, were still anxious to secure all that could be got, especially the carpenter, who was so busy in collecting his tools, &c. that he remained below after the pinnace and raft were gone, and was absolutely forced into the jolly-boat by the captain, so intent was he upon the preservation of every necessary.

The raft was taken in tow by the pinnace, and was awhile assisted by the jolly-boat, which however was so heavy laden as to be incapable of giving further aid; it accordingly proceeded alone to the shore, where they found the five men who had been left with the stores, and who had been employed in preparing the place for the reception of their fellow sufferers. Those people who had trusted themselves to the raft, were for a long time in a deplorable situation: in clearing the reef, they were frequently out of sight of the pinnace, and obliged to tie themselves, and cling with all their strength to the raft, for fear of being washed off by the tremendous surf and rise of the sea: during this the poor Chinese,

who were unaccustomed to such fatigue and cold, were making a most lamentable noise: after clearing the reef, their progress was somewhat more agreeable, but in approaching the land a strong current obliged them to use their utmost exertions; their strength being however exhausted, in the unavailing attempt of resistance, it was judged expedient that the pinnace should take the people from off the raft, which addition double banked the oars of the pinnace, and relieved the rowers; but they were consequently so burthened, as to be scarcely able to keep above water: they were now close under a rocky coast, in 16 fathom water. By this time the jolly-boat had laid her cargo in shore, and Captain Wilson, and four others, were returning in her to assist the pinnace and raft; it was very dark, and the pinnace having but slowly advanced, was hailed by the jolly-boat at a distance; but this was returned with such a shrill halloo, owing to their faintness and languor, that they were supposed to be natives, for the people on shore had now some reason to think that the island was inhabited: on account of this mistake, Captain Wilson and his company returned with all possible expedition to the cove: however, on the arrival of the pinnace, all these apprehensions ceased. They shook hands, kindled a fire, and refreshed themselves with cheese, biscuits, and water. The boats were hauled on shore, and a watch set, for fear of being surprised by any of the natives; but, on account of the heavy rain and wind, and more especially the distressing thoughts of their dismal situation, this night proved exceedingly tedious and uncomfortable. Several of the people, through the severity of their labour, and the condition of their clothes, which were both wet and stiff, had such a violent itching in their skins, as to occasion painful sores.

Early in the morning the pinnace and jolly-boat were sent to the raft; but, on account of the violence of the wind, found it impracticable to bring it up; they, however, got from it the remainder of the provisions and sails. In the afternoon there was a calm; during which the boats were so fortunate as to recover some rice, and other provisions, from the wreck. The weather became heavy again, and it was thought, as the wales had started out of their places, that the vessel must soon fall to pieces. This was very melancholy news, as expectations had been formed of her floating, and being thereby enabled to repair her. This hope being blasted, the deplorable situation of the company now aggravated their gloomy reflections: having, however, procured their clothes from the wreck, they felt themselves more comfortable than the preceding night.

CHAPTER II.

Employment of the Men—Appearance of two Canoes—Interview with the Natives—Captain's Behaviour—Invites them to Breakfast—Invitation accepted—Fortunate Event—A Friendship contracted—Their Curiosity—Surprise—The Captain's Caution—Wishes frustrated—Natives delighted—The Captain's Brother chosen to be introduced to the King—His Departure in the Natives' Canoe—Raa Kook, and the Interpreter, remain behind—Natives assist the English in their Work—A Proposition of the Captain's—Approved of by the Officers—The Wreck plundered by the Natives—Raa Kook's consequent Indignation and Uneasiness—The laudable Fortitude and Affection of the Sailors—Return of Arra Kooker, with one of the Princes—Death of three of the Natives—Present to the Captain—King's Message—Return of Mr. M. Wilson—Account of his Expedition and Reception—General Delight and Satisfaction—Account of the Wreck being plundered—Raa Kook's Behaviour thereupon—A Visit from the King—Ceremony—He and the Captain embrace—King's Courtesy, &c.—Captain's Present—The English still apprehensive—The Men exercised for the King's Amusement—Universal Surprise—King, &c. highly entertained—His Majesty bewildered, and pensive—The English alarmed by a Shriek—Accounted for—King's Departure—A hideous Noise—Sailors take up Arms—Their Apprehensions groundless—Natives and English sing—Descriptions of the King—His Brothers—Natives, &c.—Their Ornaments, Distinctions, Manners, &c.

THE men were now employed in improving their tents, and drying their stores and provisions: the wind being still boisterous, the boats were prevented from venturing to sea. Early in the morning, August the 12th, the captain and his

linguist, Tho. Rose, a native of Bengal, and who passed for a Portuguese, received notice that some natives were approaching in two canoes. The captain enjoined the people, who were apparently alarmed, to remain quiet and out of sight, but pre-

pared for the worst, in case that he and his interpreter were ill received. The canoes had advanced with the greatest caution; and Rose was desired by the captain to address them in the Malay language, which he did: they seemed somewhat surprised, and not to comprehend what he said; one of them, however, who very fortunately understood the language, enquired in the Malay tongue whether they were friends or enemies. Rose, according to his injunctions, replied, "that they were friends, unfortunate Englishmen, who had lost their vessel on the reef, and had landed here for their preservation." These words were explained to the people by their interpreter; upon which, after some hesitation, they stepped out of their canoes, and were met by the captain, who for that purpose waded into the water, and after embracing them, introduced them to his unfortunate countrymen. There were eight natives; two of which were the king's brothers. They still retained some apprehension, and were very cautious in all their proceedings, having left a man behind in each canoe. At this time the people were preparing their breakfast. The captain prudently dispersed his men, for fear their number might create an alarm, and prevailed upon the natives to sit down in the tent and breakfast with him, his linguist, and only two others. They cheerfully complied; and, by the very fortunate event of each party having an interpreter, a favourable friendship was contracted. It seems this Malay, who had been kept and favoured by the king, had been a year ago thrown on this island by a tempest, in the course of which time he became acquainted with their language. This being the first time, as it appeared evident, of their having seen a white man, their surprise could only be equalled by their curiosity: they examined very particularly the coats and waistcoats of the English, and were not a little astonished to find them only a covering, being unaccustomed themselves to any, nor were they less surprised at the whiteness of their bodies underneath, and the blueness of their veins.

These people having ventured themselves on shore unarmed, the captain deemed it highly imprudent to let them see their fire-arms, for fear of creating any dissidence or suspicion; he therefore gave his private directions to have them removed, but was frustrated in his hopes of concealing them, for one of them having found a bullet, and enquiring its use, understood from his interpreter the meaning of it, and was further informed of the great beauty and ingenuity of their muskets: this excited their curiosity so much, that it was found expedient to shew them one. They expressed great satisfaction at seeing it; and were equally delighted with the appearance of two dogs, as they had never seen any quadrupeds before, except some grey rats.

It was deemed advisable that one of the English should accompany these natives to Pelew, in order to be introduced to their King, that he might be able to form some idea of the English, before he was visited by the whole party, which might have too formidable appearance, and consequently make an unfavourable impression. Mr. Mathias Wilson, the captain's brother, was the chosen person: this gentleman cheerfully consented to accompany the natives, and being previously instructed by the captain, and possessed of some proper presents for his majesty, he departed about noon in their canoe, the other canoe and three men remaining behind; also the King's elder brother, Raa Kook, and the interpreter.

The English were still employed in rendering their temporary dwellings more commodious. They were frequently assisted by the natives, who shewed them where the best water was to be procured, and as these people felt no longer any restraint, they not only suffered themselves to be conducted round the cove, but readily assisted their new visitors in

helping them occasionally over every rugged path; for though the English could scarcely bear to walk in those stony places, yet either through habit or a less sensibility of pain the natives seemed to think nothing of it.

This evening, in ruminating upon their serious situation, and the danger of using strong liquors, which might not only be the cause of uneasiness among themselves, but if it came in the way of the inhabitants likewise intoxicate them, and be productive of universal harm, it was prudently proposed by the captain to save all the liquor casks which were on board the wreck, and instead of endeavouring to save any, cheerfully commit them to the waves. This proposition was universally approved of by the officers, particularly as some of the men had been already inebriated after the wreck, consequently clamorous and elated. Capt. Wilson was therefore resolved to make his wishes known the next morning to all the ship's company.

August 13th, the boatswain summoned all persons to work, by winding his pipe, the sound of which not only surprised, but very much delighted the natives. On account of the badness of the weather, Capt. Wilson's brother was not expected to return. The pinnace was sent off to the wreck, and did not come back till it was dark; when they reported that several articles, particularly iron, had been taken out of her by the natives, who had also made free with the chest of medicines, and carried away several bottles: the most useful medicines, however, had been previously secured by Surgeon Sharp. This intelligence was likewise imparted to Raa Kook, who expressed much indignation and uneasiness at his people's conduct. The captain was apprehensive that they might destroy themselves by a misapplication of the medicines; but Raa Kook seemed desirous that they might, as a just punishment for their behaviour: he declared that this treachery should be properly stated to the King, who, he was sure, would prevent its ever happening again. This noble chief had put on an uniform coat, and a pair of trowsers, which the captain had given him, and seemed highly delighted at being in an English dress: unaccustomed, however, to apparel, he could not long bear the confinement of it. When he had taken them off, he therefore put them carefully up among his collection of curiosities.

The captain took the earliest opportunity of assembling his men, and recommending the immediate destruction of the liquor. The ready assent and obedience of the sailors, is almost incredible: they acknowledged themselves that they might not use it always with discretion, and accordingly hastened to obey their captain's command, which they did with such cheerfulness and resolution, as testified not only a laudable fortitude, but the real affection which they bore their commander.

The next morning (Aug. 14th) Arra Kooker, the King's brother, returned with one of his nephews, and informed Raa Kook that three men had died of the medicine articles which they had taken out of the wreck; but the general did not regret this, deeming it a just punishment for their infidelity. He was accompanied with another canoe, loaded with ready-boiled yams and cocoa-nuts for Captain Wilson; at the same time informing him, that Mr. M. Wilson would speedily return. The King's son delivered his father's message, which being interpreted, signified, that the English were not only welcome to stay as long as they liked in his country, but had full leave and permission to build a vessel, either where they were, or were pleased to remove to, under his dominion; and that during their stay they should always command his protection. Upon this the general introduced the Prince to the English, who with the greatest eagerness and delight began to notice every transaction.

Mr. M. Wilson to the great satisfaction to be somewhat account of his experience proper to lay before

"When the c
"near the island
"course of the m
"see me come on
"accompanied me
"ducted me from
"where there was
"ment, on which
"down. I obeye
"appeared; whic
"brother, I arose
"the manner of
"hands to my he
"ward; to which
"tention. After
"the presents my
"he received in
"brother, Arra K
"with him, whic
"him with our d
"which the King
"seemed to resist
"to several of his
"things to be tak
"house; which b
"ments to be brou
"nut filled with w
"molasses; after
"boy who was nee
"gather fresh nuts
"and tasting the n
"present it to me,
"back when I had
"nut in two, eat a
"eat of it.

"I now found m
"course of both I
"place between th
"chiefs who were
"repeatedly directe
"the subject of it.
"all who were pref
"ment, which I pe
"coat, and took m
"that they might
"body; being of
"they entertained
"stituted a part o
"ceived in this, th
"me, and put thei
"my skin.

"It being now
"his brother, seve
"into a house, wh
"in of yams boiled
"a rim or edge ro
"high; in a dish
"pudding made af
"ther, just as we m
"three or four in a
"wife some shell-fis
"make out. They
"another house at
"where I found at
"men; I was led to
"I had entered the
"or lie down on a
"floor, on the floo
"rest of the compa
"by viewing me ve
"sleep, and I laid m
"ing another mat o
"placed there for
"on a block of wood

Mr. M. Wilson returned in a short time after, to the great satisfaction of all his friends, who began to be somewhat apprehensive for his safety. The account of his expedition and reception, we think proper to lay before the readers in his own words.

"When the canoe in which I went away came near the island where the King lived, a vast concourse of the natives ran out of their houses to see me come on shore; the King's brother, who accompanied me, took me by the hand, and conducted me from the landing-place up to the town, where there was a mat spread upon a square pavement, on which he by signs directed me to sit down. I obeyed, and in a little time the King appeared; which being notified to me by his brother, I arose, and made my obeisance after the manner of eastern nations, lifting up my hands to my head, and inclining my body forward; to which he did not seem to pay any attention. After this ceremony, I offered the King the presents my brother had sent by me, which he received in a very gracious manner—His brother, Arra Kooker, now talked a good deal with him, which I conceived was to acquaint him with our disaster, and our numbers; after which the King eat some of the sugar-candy, seemed to relish it, and distributed a little of it to several of his chiefs, and then directed all the things to be taken away and carried to his own house; which being done, he ordered refreshments to be brought, which consisted of a coconut filled with warm water, and sweetened with molasses; after tasting it, he commanded a little boy who was near him to climb a cocoa-tree and gather fresh nuts, he cleared one from the husks, and tasting the milk thereof, bade the little boy present it to me, making signs to me to send it back when I had drank; he afterwards broke the nut in two, eat a little, and returned it to me to eat of it.

"I now found myself surrounded by a vast concourse of both sexes: such conversation took place between the King, his brother, and the chiefs who were with him. As their eyes were repeatedly directed to me, I concluded I was the subject of it. Taking off my hat by accident, all who were present seemed struck with astonishment, which I perceiving, unbuttoned my waistcoat, and took my shoes from my feet, in order that they might see they were no part of my body; being of opinion, that at first sight of me, they entertained a notion that my clothes constituted a part of my person; for, when undeceived in this, they came nearer to me, stroked me, and put their hands into my bosom to feel my skin.

"It being now grown rather dark, the King, his brother, several others, and myself retired into a house, where there was a supper brought in of yams boiled whole, on a stand or stool with a rim or edge round it of three or four inches high: in a dish or wooden bowl was a kind of pudding made also of yams boiled and beat together, just as we make potatoes, of which they put three or four in a bowl or dish. They had likewise some shell-fish, but of what kind I could not make out. They conducted me after supper to another house at some distance from the first, where I found at least forty or fifty men and women; I was led thither by a female, who, when I had entered the house, made signs to me to sit or lie down on a mat that was spread, as I understood, on the floor for me to sleep on. After the rest of the company had satisfied their curiosity by viewing me very accurately, they all went to sleep, and I laid myself down on the mat, drawing another mat over me, which I supposed was placed there for that purpose, resting my head on a block of wood, which serves the people here

as a pillow. Unable to slumber, I lay perfectly still; and some considerable time after, when all seemed quiet, about eight men arose, and began to make two great fires at each end of the house (which was not divided by partitions, but formed one large habitation). This operation of theirs, I confess, alarmed me very much; indeed, I thought of nothing less than that the natives were going to roast me, and that they had only laid themselves down that I might also drop asleep, and intended to seize me in that situation. —However, being surrounded by a danger which there was no possibility of escaping, I collected all my fortitude, and, recommending myself to the Supreme Disposer of all events, I expected every moment to meet my fate; when, to my great surprize, after sitting a little while and warming themselves, I perceived they all retired again to their mats, nor got up any more till day-break, when I arose and walked about, encircled by great numbers of men, women, and children. It was not long before the King's brother joined me, and went with me to several houses, where I was entertained with yams, cocoa-nuts, and sweetmeats—Being after this conducted to the King, I signified to him by gestures that I much wished to go back to my brother; he perfectly understood me, and explained to me by signs that the canoes could not go out, there being too much wind and sea. To describe the first he pointed up to the trees, and blew strongly with his mouth; and, to mark the too great force of the sea on the canoes, he joined his two hands together with the palms upwards, then lifted them up, and turned them the reverse way, to express to me that the canoes would overset.—The remainder of the day I spent in walking about the island, and observing its produce. I found it consisted chiefly of yams and cocoa-nuts; the former they cultivate with great care in large plantations, in swampy watery ground, like the rice in India. The cocoa-nut trees grow very near to their houses, as does also the beetle-nut, which they chew as tobacco."

It is impossible to express the general delight and satisfaction which this gentleman's account afforded. The captain immediately presented a silk coat and a pair of blue trowsers to the King's son, which he put on. Though Arra Kooker, his uncle, could not bear the confinement of trowsers, he took a liking to a white shirt, which was immediately given him, and which he no sooner dressed himself in, but he began to skip about with so much glee, as to create considerable diversion, not only by the contrast of the linen and his skin, but also by his mimicry and humour, which were abundant.

Two boats were sent off with Mr. Barker to the wreck, but came back with the jolly-boat, on account of the unsettled weather. In the evening the pinnace returned with some articles which they had preserved, and informed the captain that there were several canoes about the vessel, and some of the natives had been detected in plundering her: this being communicated to Raa Kooker, Arra Kooker, and the king's son, were immediately dispatched in a canoe, to threaten and disperse them.

For fear of any attack from the inhabitants of adjoining islands, it was deemed advisable to appoint a regular guard every night; previous to which, for fear of creating any alarm among the natives, this custom, with its utility, was communicated to the king's brothers, and prince, who accordingly went to see the guard turn out, and were highly delighted with their manœuvres.

The next day the English were apprised of a visit intended them by the king: while in anxious expectation, several canoes appeared at a distance, who were all armed; others surrounded the harbour, where they lay-to: at last the king's canoe came, attended

attended with two at each side; while the rowers were splashing about the water, and flourishing their paddles with astonishing agility. Upon his advancing, the canoes in the harbour founded their conch-shells. Captain Wilson (understanding it was the ceremony) went to meet the king, and was carried by two of his men through the water. He then entered the king's canoe, and embraced him: their interpreters being with them, the captain renewed his request of being permitted to build a vessel, and received the same courteous answer, in addition to which, the king observed that the island he was then on, was deemed unhealthy, and that probably they might be insulted by some of the natives of the other islands, who were at war with him: therefore he recommended a removal to the place of his residence, where he should be under his immediate protection. Captain Wilson however observed, that such removal would be attended with much inconvenience, particularly as the wreck was so near this island, that they could, whenever the weather permitted, be able to save some articles from the wreck; but he added, that if he found any inconvenience from the unhealthiness of the situation, that he would avail himself of his polite offer. The King was very much pleased with this reply, and accepted a scarlet coat which the captain presented him. He then went on shore, but manifested the same reserve and caution which his brothers did at first; when seated his train, being about three hundred, attended, and in a little time his Majesty became more affable. He drank a cup of tea, but did not much relish it; other presents were made him.

Several of the English still retained their doubts and apprehensions, and as every chief among the retinue had looked stedfastly upon some particular person, it was immediately suggested that they were planning their destruction, but it was afterwards discovered that each was then choosing an individual to be his friend.

The King was as much delighted with every thing he saw, as his brothers had been. For his further amusement Captain Wilson commanded his men to be under arms, and drawn up on the beach, then to be exercised by the chief mate. This was accordingly done: they went through all the positions of their exercise, and fired three volleys. The explosion of the musquets created universal surprise among them: the king was afterwards shown the effect of these guns by Mr. Bengers, who shot one of their fowls in his presence. They were very much astonished at seeing the bird drop, and examined it with great wonder and attention.

The King, his brothers, and the rest of the chiefs, were highly entertained with every thing they saw, particularly a grind-stone, the tea-kettle, iron pot, bellows, frying-pan, &c. The novelty of these things worked upon the mind of his Majesty, that he was frequently lost in thought; and being informed of the great variety of nations these were, began for the first time to be surprised at the magnitude of the world: he was bewildered, and for a long time pensive! The general, his brother, took great pains to shew him every thing, and expatiated much upon the English contrivances.

When the King was about departing, a sudden loud shriek was given by his attendants, which did not a little alarm some of the Englishmen, who were apprehensive of a sudden attack. This was, however, a signal for assembling his train; who were accordingly united with surprising expedition. Raa Kook, the Prince, and five canoes with about twenty natives, remained behind. The King's departure was attended with as much ceremony as his arrival. After the guard was set, Raa Kook, the Prince, and natives, made such a hideous noise, that the sailors immediately seized their arms, and the captain was informed by Surgeon Sharp and Mr. Barker, that his men were apprehensive that the natives had some

treacherous design, and were giving the signal for others to assist them. The captain begged them to be calm, and appear undismayed, till he enquired into the cause, which he was very happy to find was only a prelude to their manner of singing. Each verse was given out by Raa Kook, which was sung by the next chief, all the natives joining in chorus. At their request, the English sung several songs, (particularly sea-ones) with which they were much delighted. Each party now went to rest, but there were many among the English who had not yet overcome their doubts and fears.

The King, like the rest of the natives, went entirely naked: he carried an iron hatchet on his shoulder, which created much wonder among the English, as all their other hatchets were made of shells; but as they seem to have a great notion of respect and distinction, it was supposed that iron was in the highest estimation. Their sovereign appeared gentle and gracious, though possessed of proper dignity. The chiefs had boxes on their wrists, by way of ornament; and the ring which Capt. Wilson wore on his finger, was imagined by them to be the ornamental mark of his rank and dignity. Arra Kooker appeared to be about forty: he was short in stature, but remarkably fat, and possessed of great humour and spirits; his countenance was very expressive and lively. Raa Kook was a chief of amiable principles, and evidently possessed of a nice sense of honour. His nephew was about twenty-one. This young man was extremely well made, but had lost his nose. The natives are in general of a deep copper colour: their skins glossy and soft, on account of the cocoa-nut oil, which they frequently used externally. They were of a middling stature, well made and muscular; very majestic in their walk: their teeth were black with chewing the beetle-nut and chinam; their legs very much tattooed. The hair was of a fine black, exceedingly long and rolled up behind in a becoming manner. None but the King's younger brother had a beard, it being customary with them to pluck it out by the roots, except when very strong and thick. Abba Thulle, the King, was the first person in the government: every mark of distinction was paid him, and even the greatest chiefs humiliated themselves before him. He had several islands over which he ruled. Raa Kook was the next in power, and would have succeeded the King in case of his death. Arra Kooker was next; and if these brothers had died during the reign of Abba Thulle, Qui Bell, and the rest of the King's sons, would then have reigned in their turns. There was a particular chief, or itupack, who always attended the King. This office did not seem hereditary, but delegated: he was always the first chief that was consulted. The number of chiefs is very considerable. It is an honour solely conferred by the King; the ceremony of which we shall have occasion to mention hereafter. Every man has private property, and every family occupy a part of land for their maintenance. The women are rather domestic, but exceedingly courteous and attentive. They are chiefly employed in making mats. The Queen has a dwelling of her own.

Both sexes were very expert at swimming, particularly the men, who were excellent divers. A plurality of wives was allowable, but the general number was two. They had some kind of contract, which was as binding as marriage. The King had five wives: Raa Kook had three. Women, during their pregnancy, never sleep with their husbands. They seem to have no idea of religion, and yet are inclined to superstition. In their funerals, the body is committed to the earth in a very decorous manner, being attended by a due number of women, whose lamentations on this occasion are very violent.

*King's chief Attendant—Seemingly
—The Natives in Honour and Delight
battle—Captain's
The building of the
pointed—The King
of the five chiefs
Progress in building
Arrival of strangers
the King—Account
where the English
—Apologizes for
Some of the Campaign
discovered through*

THIS morning attendant particularly highly entertained. He seemed desirous Wilson thought perceiving it in his his acceptance thereof. This circumstance, uneasiness afterwards preter to the King) insinuated to the King and sent them presents of his chief with his. Capt. Wilson of offering a remnant their indifference and to corroborate the After this, the captain on his return to Pele the back of the island the cove), the propriety him, took Rose his in him in the jolly boat. Their fears and surpris equal coolness of the ration both in his much distressed the think that these people, but of an in this seeming indiffere the result of having had a request to make yet neither he nor his cient fortitude to assist difficulty, it was mac shortly to go to bat offended him, wanted of Captain Wilson's musquets. The captain preter, "That all the upon as his own; and would look upon the and use his pleasure gloominess; every fact and the English and good-humoured as be call for the men the already making for place in five days. T eating what had passed return to the King, a ready whenever he w The captain immediat was highly delighted with. Thus apprehen person betook himself countenance.

CHAPTER III.

*King's chief Attendant pays the English a Visit—Accepts a Cutlasi—Made to return it—Much Uneasiness—An In-
 junction—Seemingly corroborated—Captain goes to take Leave of his Majesty—Their Fears and Surprise increased
 —The Natives indifferent and reserved—A visible Alteration—The English much distressed—An Explanation—
 Honour and Delicacy—A Request of the King's—Four or five English wanted by the Natives to join them in
 battle—Captain's Reply of compliance—All Gloominess banished—King delighted—English resume their Labour—
 The building of the new Vessel—Kindness of the English to their Captain—Captain's Gratitude—Occupations ap-
 pointed—The King calls for the five Men that were promised—All the English vie for the Preference—Names
 of the five chosen—Their Drejs, &c.—Their Departure with the Natives—A Barricade formed—Weather—
 Progress in building the new Vessel—A Cask of Arrack preserved—Name of the new Vessel—Celebration of her—
 Arrival of strange Natives—Their Delight, and Departure—Return of the English from battle—Presents from
 the King—Account of his Hospitality, Victory, &c.—Ten Men requested on a future Occasion—Name of the Island
 where the English are—The King gives it to the English—The Captain takes possession of it—Is invited to Pelew
 —Apologizes for not being able to go—Sends his Brother, &c. to congratulate the King—Jolly-boat sent out—
 Some of the Company benighted—Found—Captain explores the Island—Return of his Brother, &c.—A Passage
 discovered through the Reef for the new Vessel.*

THIS morning (August 16th) the King's chief attendant paid the English a visit, and was highly entertained with a view of their operations. He seemed desirous for a cutlasi, which Captain Wilton thought prudent to give him; but Raa Kook perceiving it in his hand, was much displeas'd with his acceptance thereof, and made him return it. This circumstance, though trivial, occasioned much uneasiness afterwards. The Malay (who was interpreter to the King) being an artful, jealous man, insinuated to the English that they had highly offend'd the King and his brothers, by neglecting to give them presents of equal worth, when they presented his chief with such a valuable thing as a cutlasi. Capt. Wilton therefore seized an opportunity of offering a remnant of cloth to the brothers, but their indifference and cool acceptance thereof seem'd to corroborate the account of their displeasure. After this, the captain understanding the King was on his return to Pelew, (for till now he remained at the back of the island, about a mile's distance from the cove), the propriety thereof being suggest'd to him, took Rose his interpreter and four others with him in the jolly boat, to take leave of his Majesty. Their fears and surprize were much encreas'd by the equal coolness of the King: there was a visible alteration both in his manners and behaviour, which much distress'd the English, who began now to think that these people were not only easily pleas'd, but of an inconsistent nature. However, this seeming indifference, this suppos'd coolness, were the result of honour and delicacy. The King had a request to make, of the greatest consequence, yet neither he nor his brothers had collected sufficient fortitude to ask it; at last, but with much difficulty, it was made known. The King, who was shortly to go to battle against an island that had offend'd him, wanted the company of four or five of Captain Wilton's men, to assist him with their musquets. The captain made answer by his interpreter, "That all the enemies of the King he looked upon as his own; and therefore hop'd his Majesty would look upon the English as his own people, and use his pleasure." This reply banish'd all gloominess; every face resumed its wonted gaiety, and the English and natives became as friendly and good-humour'd as before. The King said he would call for the men the next day, as preparations were already making for the battle, which was to take place in five days. The captain, upon communicating what had pass'd to his friends, was urg'd to return to the King, and assure him the men were ready whenever he was pleas'd to command them. The captain immediately acquiesc'd; and his Majesty was highly delighted with the readiness of the English. Thus apprehension was at an end, and every person betook himself to labour with an enliven'd countenance.

No. 4.

Every necessary preparation was made for building the new vessel. A piece of wood was already provided for a stern, and another for a stern-post. In the afternoon some of the floor timbers were laid; also the keel; stem and stern-post squared. During the presence of the natives, they had the prudence to conceal their tools; for if they had been covet'd by any of them, they must consequently have suffer'd much embarrassment, either by a refusal, which might have terminat'd their friendship, or a compliance, which would have totally destroy'd their hopes of a departure. Mr. Barker, second officer, who very fortunately understood the nature of this business, contributed all his assistance in designing the vessel, which for sake of expedition was determin'd to be a schooner. Every one consented to work according to the best of his abilities, under the command of Captain Wilton, who though, according to maritime laws, had lost all his authority with that of the vessel, was however oblig'd, by the entreaties of his men, to retain his power, and remain their commander as before. The captain, impress'd by gratitude, insist'd however, that all punishments should be decid'd by the majority of voices. Mr. Barker, by the captain's desire, was to give what directions he thought proper for the speedy construction of the new vessel; also to appoint for each man his employment. Mr. M. Wilton and Surgeon Sharp were accordingly appointed to fell trees, in which they were frequently assist'd by the captain himself. The boatwain, who had been a blacksmith, was put to his old occupation; and the mate direct'd to assist him. The Chinese were order'd to carry loads, and be occasional messengers: necessity sometimes oblig'd them to change their employments. They continued at labour till it was dark, and then united at the great tent, where the captain read prayers; thanksgivings having never been neglect'd.

When the king came for the men that were promised, the captain voluntarily offer'd to be one, but his people object'd to this, as his life was too precious at this critical moment to be risk'd. Every one vied for the preference: but the following five men, John Cochran (who was third mate), Nicholas Tyacke, James Bluet, Madan Blanchard, and Thomas Dulton, who were first in their application, were the persons appointed for this expedition. These men were accordingly clad in blue jackets, they had cock'd hats with blue cockades, musquets and ammunition: Thomas Rose accompanied them as an interpreter. They went into separate canoes, the king and chiefs having taken one man each: four natives were left behind by the king. As they were leaving the shore, the English who attend'd them to the water-edge, gave them three cheers, which were return'd both by the King and his men, upon understanding the nature of it.

The

The English took the favourable opportunity of their absence, to advance their undertaking as much as possible. The boats continually visited the wreck, and seldom returned without some articles preserved. A barricade was formed in front of the tents towards the sea: every necessary preparation was taken in case of an attack, and two swivels were mounted on the stumps of two trees, which could be directed to any point. The weather was very changeable, every fine day being generally succeeded with a showery one: their progress in building the new vessel was surprisngly rapid, especially when every disadvantage is considered. A cask of arrack belonging to Mr. Baker, which had not been perceived when the others were flaved, was brought among other articles, in the boats. It was delivered up to the captain, who agreed that this should be preserved in the tent, and each man be allowed a pint of grog every evening after his labour, during its continuance. The vessel being now begun (which was to be called the Relief), on August 22d she was celebrated, and every person allowed a double allowance of grog, to drink success to her.

August 25. Four canoes full of men came ashore. At first it was suspected they were some of the king's enemies: it was evident, however, that curiosity brought them to see the English. Captain Wilson paid them great attention, conducting them round the cove, and showing every thing that was deemed worthy their observation. These men, whose fears made them at first very cautious, appeared highly delighted, and went away without either seeking or accepting any presents.

The six men who attended the King to battle, were absent nine days. They returned this day in the afternoon, accompanied by Raa Kook the King's brother, with several baskets of yams, cocoa-nuts, sweet-meats, &c. for the captain and his friends. They met with a hearty reception, as every one was glad of their safe return: they declared that they were treated with much hospitality and kindness during their stay with the King. That they did not proceed to battle till the 21st, as all the King's canoes had not been got together: the English went in five different ones, and proceeded eastward near a dozen leagues. Their number consisted of about a thousand men, in one hundred and fifty canoes: the enemies number could not be ascertained. Previous to action, Raa Kook had some conversation with the enemy; but his proposals being received with indifference, the signal of war was given: whereupon the English fired, and the enemy seeing one of their men fall, they knew not how, were in the greatest confusion; those on shore took to flight, and those in canoes jumped into the water, and swam away. After a few more shots they were entirely dispersed. The King was highly delighted with this triumph: it being too late to return, they spent the remainder of the evening among a few small creeks: the next day they arrived safe at Pelew, where feasts and entertainments were prepared. Previous to their departure from Pelew, they were entertained by the King with stewed turtle, who took this opportunity of intimating a wish to have ten men on a future occasion; as a repetition of the battle was judged necessary.

It was promised him that the matter should be mentioned to the captain. The King attended the English down to the water-side, and took leave of them in the most polite manner.

By command of the captain, these men had the share of grog which was due to them during their absence, and which they shared with their comrades, while true joy and hilarity became universal.

Oroolong, which was the name of the island on which the English were, was now resigned to Capt. Wilson for the English by the King; in testimony of which voluntary donation, the captain this day

after breakfast had the British pendant hoisted, and by the way of taking possession, three volleys of small arms were fired. This grant of the island was made public by the King himself, who at the same time invited the captain to Pelew, but as his presence was so much needed in Oroolong, an apology was made; his brother Mr. M. Wilson, Mr. Benger, Thomas Rose, and one of the Chinese (who were accompanied by Raa Kook), were sent to congratulate the King upon his victory. As the Chinese are allowed to be the best botanists, this China man was sent with a view of making curious observations on the produce of the island.

August 17th the jolly-boat was sent out to haul the seine, but they got no fish: also to bring home some timbers and cabbages, if any could be found; in this last article they succeeded so well, that what they had dressed for supper was reckoned exceedingly good. Some of the people who assisted in cutting the timbers, having preferred walking home instead of returning in the jolly-boat, accordingly set out on their march long before the departure of the boat, and were so long absent after the boat's arrival, as to occasion much uneasiness and apprehension. Several were dispatched with lanterns to seek them, who hallooned every now and then, to recover those benighted travellers: fortunately the men who were gone astray, heard their voices, and prudently stopped till their companions had advanced. Had they proceeded one step further, their fate must have been inevitable, as they were then on the brink of a most terrible precipice! Their return was the occasion of much joy, and their wonderful escape of hearty thanksgivings!

The next day the captain had a spot of ground cleared on the top of the hill, that he might be able from that, every fine day to make his necessary observations. Previous to this, he had gone round the island in the jolly-boat, to examine the shores. It was plain from some traces of ancient plantations which were discovered, that this island had formerly been inhabited. A steep rock overpread with trees of a very fragrant nature, forms the northern side. The bay and harbour lie east and west, and it was supposed that the island is no more than three miles in circumference. The captain was anxious to discover a good passage for the Relief, as it was apprehended by some of his people that there was no passage whereby they might get clear over, seeing that the Relief must be of a tolerable size for the conveyance of themselves, stores, &c. to China. This anxiety therefore occasioned a strict look-out, nor did the captain let any opportunity slip him which promised the least information.

The men were still busy in the advancement of the new vessel; the departure of Arra Kooker (who left the island to-day) gave them a more favourable opportunity of proceeding. The next day the captain's brother, Raa Kook, Mr. Benger, Rose, and the China man returned in two canoes: and declared that both their reception and treatment during their stay at Pelew, manifested the utmost cordiality and most perfect hospitality.

As the captain, in making his observations, had imagined there was a passage apparently good right out from the west point of the island, Mr. Cummins was sent in the jolly-boat, on the 30th in the afternoon, to ascertain the truth. He returned with the pleasing intelligence that he had found (at low water) near three feet and a half of water, through a narrow passage without the reef; and as it rose eight or nine upon a spring-tide, of course there must be twelve feet of water, which was more than the Relief would require when finished: they had also found seven fathom water without the reef, and three within the shoallest part. This information afforded so much cheer and satisfaction, that every one resumed his labour with additional alacrity and spirits.

Captain Wilson pays
Refreshments pro-
Their Meeting—
Captain introduced
One of the Rupa-
Description of the
him to battle—O-
A Supper—Univer-
preserved from the
King—A Present
Six pounder fired
him—The Imprac-
Change of Weather
Wilson and John
dition—Of the Pe-
Six Canoes and ni-

AS the captain
a visit to the
for Pelew on the 30
himself in the com-
fast, it being Sunda
while Raa Kook at-
waiting to attend to
conformed to that
ceremony required
fashion) and stand
After prayers, the
Sharp and Davis, a
leave of his people,
morning in the j
Kook in a canoe w
few miles of Pelew
a-head of them, the
turned again, and p
them with refreshm
the English hoisted
guns: they approach
where they saw, in
flag, which was stuc
cloth that had been
landed they fired th
colours in the gro
to a house by Raa
messenger to the Ki
The best kind of
provide were laid
placed in due orde
val: on his appeara
braced him. They
side of the captain)
after which Capt. W
a few presents he
purpose. There w
whom no doubt c
but who behaved w
in the presence of
tended the King up
carried before them
play as much cerem
of making a propo
They were introduc
which was surround
Rupacks assembled
women are of a ligh
of their sex; their b
with turmeac, and
The captain was
Queen's dwelling
message, that the w
Queen conversed w
slow; and sent the
account of its state
great estimation. S

CHAPTER IV.

Captain Wilson pays a Visit to Pelew, accompanied by his Son, Mess. Sharp and Davis—Raa Kook's Attention—Refreshments provided—Their Arrival—Ceremony—Compliment paid them—King apprised of their Arrival—Their Meeting—Presents made the King—Women flock to see the English—Description of the Chief's Wives—Captain introduced to the Queen's Dwelling—Her Pohiteneſi—Attends Raa Kook to his own Houſe—Remarks—One of the Rupacks brings the Surgeon to ſee a ſick Child—The Father's Gratitude—A Council of State held—Description of the Manner—Reſult thereof—King renews his Requeſt—Ten Engliſhmen are promiſed to attend him to battle—Occaſion of the War—Every thing done for the Entertainment of the Engliſh—A Dance, &c.—A Supper—Univerſal Hilarity—Departure of the Engliſh—Leave taken, &c.—Arrival at Oroolong—Materials preſerved from the Wreck—Names of thoſe choſen to attend the King on his ſecond Expedition—A Viſit from the King—A Preſent of Fiſh, &c.—King's Surpriſe—Delighted with the Barricade—Admires the Swivel Guns—Six pounder fired—Effects of the Exploſion—The King treated—His Wiſh to have one of the Swivel Guns lent him—The Impracticability of uſing it pointed out—Additional Preſent of Fiſh—King departs with the Men—Change of Weather—Return of the Engliſh from battle—Account of one of the Canoes being overſet—Mr. M. Wilson and John Duncan in danger—Relieved by the Natives—Mr. M. Wilson's Account of the ſecond Expedition—Of the Preparations for the Battle—Enemy diſperſed for War—The King's Stratagem—Happy Effects—Six Canoes and nine Priſoners taken—Priſoners put to Death, &c. &c.

As the captain was under the neceſſity of paying a viſit to the King, he determined to ſet out for Pelew on the 30th; previous to which he dreſſed himſelf in the company's uniform, and after break-ſt, it being Sunday, read prayers in the great tent, while Raa Kook and the other natives, who were waiting to attend the captain to their iſland, ſtrictly conformed to that ſilence and ſolemnity which the ceremony required, kneeling (according to their ſiſhion) and ſtanding whenever the Engliſh did. After prayers, the captain fixed upon his ſon, Meſſ. Sharp and Davis, to attend him, and then taking leave of his people, ſet off about eight o'clock in the morning in the jolly-boat, accompanied by Raa Kook in a canoe with his people. When within a few miles of Pelew, the chief paddled away and got a-head of them, then ſtepping a while on ſhore, returned again, and preſently after another canoe met them with reſt reſtments. When in ſight of Pelew, the Engliſh hoiſted their colours, and fired three guns: they approached the ſhore about one o'clock, where they ſaw, in compliment to them, a white flag, which was ſtuck on a pole, it being ſome of the cloth that had been given to the King. When they landed they fired three guns again, and fixed their colours in the ground: they were then conducted to a houſe by Raa Kook, who ſent immediately a meſſenger to the King to appriſe him of their arrival. The beſt kind of reſtments which they could provide were laid before them, and every thing placed in due order preparatory to the King's arrival: on his appearance, the captain roſe and embraced him. They then ſat down, (the King by the ſide of the captain) and partook of the provisions: after which Capt. Wilson preſented his Majeſty with a few preſents he had brought with him for that purpoſe. There was a great aſſembly of natives, whom no doubt curioſity had brought together, but who behaved with the greateſt reſpect, eſpecially in the preſence of Abba Thulle. The Engliſh attended the King up to the town, their colours being carried before them; for they were anxious to diſplay as much ceremony as poſſible, for the purpoſe of making a proper impreſſion upon the natives. They were introduced to a large ſquare pavement, which was ſurrounded with huts. The wives of the Rupacks aſſembled here, to ſee the Engliſh. Theſe women are of a lighter colour than the generality of their ſex; their breſts and faces are rubbed over with turmeric, and they boaſt of a few ornaments.

The captain was attended by Raa Kook to the Queen's dwelling; it having been ſignified by a meſſage, that ſhe wiſhed for the interview. The Queen conſulted with the Engliſh out of her window; and ſent them a broiled pigeon; which, on account of its ſcarcity, is held by the natives in great eſtimation. She took great notice of their

dreſs, and particularly their ſkins. Though, as it has been obſerved before, the King had five wives, yet it appeared from the Queen's ſituation that one was poſſeſſed of greater dignity than all the reſt. Raa Kook now introduced the captain to his own houſe, which he no ſooner entered than he was welcomed by a little family, for whom he evinced the greateſt affection. This chief's wife alſo brought in a broiled pigeon, of which the captain and his friends cheerfully partook in return for the compliment. Having met with much hoſpitality and attention, the Engliſh retired for the night. The next day every opportunity was taken by the natives to prove their friendſhip and reſpect: by deſire of one of the Rupacks, Surgeon Sharp attended him to his dwelling, and examined a child of his who was afflicted with boils. The gratitude of the father, and his anxiety to render every thing comfortable to his gueſts, are inexpreſſible!

A council of ſtate was held this day, by command of the King, on the large ſquare pavement in the open air. All the chiefs attended, ſitting on a ſtone; that which the King ſat on being the higheſt, and near which was another ſtill higher for him to lean againſt: thoſe of inferior rank had humble ſtatements. The captain and his friends were now in an oppoſite houſe, where they had a full view of this grand council. The ſpeakers were on each ſide, who mutually delivered their ſentiments: it was evident that the buſineſs on which they were debating was carried by a large majority. As ſoon as they broke up, the King returned to the captain, and renewed his requeſt of having ten of his men, for a repetition of the battle: this was cheerfully complied with. The occaſion of this war was the murder of one of the King's brothers, and two chiefs, at a feaſt which was celebrated at Artungall, (the iſland againſt which war was proclaimed). Theſe people, inſtead of making ſome atonement for the outrage which had been done, on the contrary granted their protection to the murderers. Every thing that could be thought on to contribute to the entertainment of the Engliſh was ſimouſly practiſed by the King, his chiefs, and their attendants; nor were the women leſs anxious to increaſe this fellicity. There was a dance of the warriors; and two large tubs of a ſweet liquor provided for their mutual participation. After this a ſupper was prepared, and univerſal hilarity crowned the night.

The captain had determined on returning to Oroolong, but it being very bad weather both the 2d and 3d of this month, he was obliged to poſt-ponſe his intention till the 4th, during which the natives were ſtill as zealous in entertaining their gueſts as before.

The King would fain have detained the Engliſh longer, but finding them anxious to return, he at

last assented. The jolly-boat had been loaded with refreshments, the best which the island could afford, previous to their embarking. They departed about two o'clock, having given their kind hosts three cheers, which was returned by the natives, even the King himself, who on this occasion joined with the crowd, and made himself a conspicuous actor. They arrived at Orolong about nine o'clock, where they were received with unfeigned gladness. The captain was exceedingly happy to find that his people, during his absence, were not only very industrious, but had enjoyed the utmost harmony among themselves.

The boats were regularly sent to the wreck, and frequently brought home some materials: among other necessaries which were thus preserved, were a large quantity of coals; also planks, nails, &c.

The same eagerness was expressed as before by the captain's people to be the chosen persons that should attend the King on his second expedition; it was at last agreed upon, and Mess. M. Wilson, Benger, Harvey, Steward, Roberts, Duncan, Tyacke, Blanchard, Wilton, and Dulton, who were appointed, enjoined to keep themselves in readiness.

On the 7th the King paid a visit to Orolong: his brothers, and several other chiefs, attended. They had brought in their canoe some fish, of an unknown kind, but remarkably fine, which they had caught; it was in high estimation with the natives, and by the English allowed to be very good. The King was very much surprised at the construction of the new vessel, having had no idea before of its intended magnitude: he was also delighted with the barricade which was formed, and likewise the six-pounder and swivel-guns; these he beheld with the greatest surprise and admiration. The six-pounder was fired at the request of the King; the explosion of which made them keep their fingers on their ears for several minutes together. After this his Majesty was treated with sherbet; and he then retired to his canoes, observing that he should return with his boats at high water for the men who were promised him.

The King seemed very anxious to have one of the swivel-guns lent him, imagining that the execution which it would do would totally defeat his enemies; but the impracticability of using it in a canoe was pointed out to him by the captain.

Some time after this the King returned, and brought an additional present of fish, and a fine turtle. The number of men he desired being now ready, they embarked, and departed for Pelew.

The weather, which had been hitherto fine, was now changed; the rain being both constant and heavy, attended with a violent wind, thunder and lightning.

On the 15th Mess. Benger, Harvey, Steward, and Roberts returned about ten o'clock in the morning in a canoe, with an account that the war was over, and that the rest of their companions, who were all safe, would soon arrive. These tidings afforded much joy, and in the evening the remainder of the party came in other canoes.

Mess. Wilson and Duncan, with four natives, had been overset in their canoe, by a sudden squall of wind: two of the natives had, with one hand, secured the two muskets, and supported Wilson and Duncan, who could not swim, with the other; the remaining two were, in the mean time, making a small raft with the bamboos, &c. As soon as the rest of the canoes had put their people on shore, they hastened to the relief of Mess. Wilson and Duncan, who with struggling and clinging to the raft for near two hours were exceedingly faint and quite spent. A cartouche-box, and two bayonets, were lost. The natives who had thus saved these two Englishmen were instantly rewarded by the captain with presents agreeable to their taste.

This second expedition was attended with as much

success as the first: for the satisfaction of the curious reader we shall give Mr. M. Wilson's account of it in his own words, this gentleman having been present during the whole action, and the circumstances being frequently related by him among his friends.

"We reached Pelew the same night that we left Orolong, it being the King's pleasure to proceed directly on his way to Artingall; but, as the weather was very unfavourable, it was represented to him how injurious the rain would be to the fire-arms, upon which he cheerfully declined his intention till the succeeding day. We were entertained at the same house where the captain and Surgeon Sharp had been, and treated with the greatest respect and attention.

"The King, Raa Kook, Arra Kooker, all the Ropacks and great officers, with the English, were assembled the next day in the evening on the causeway. The canoes being now prepared we proceeded to the shore and embarked, attended by a number of old men, women, and children, whose curiosity and interest had brought them together. Our departure from the land was announced by the loud sounding of a conch-shell. There were several other canoes sent to different parts of the island to unite various forces that had been already collected, and were in readiness in some remote creeks to attend the King: as soon, therefore, as the signal was given, they joined us. The number of canoes were now above two hundred. We proceeded to Artingall; but a few hours before day-light stopped at one of the King's islands, where we went ashore, and having placed some mats on the ground, slept for near three hours. We then returned to our canoes, and after passing through a great number of narrow intricate channels, reached Artingall a little before day-break. As the natives of Pelew never attack their enemies in the dark, or take them by surprise, we stopped here till the sun was risen; upon which a canoe with four men, each having a white feather in his hair, was dispatched to the enemy's ground calling a parley. These men are in the capacity of heralds, either demanding an audience or bringing terms, and till their return all signs of hostility are suspended.

"The king of Artingall had already received notice from the king of Pelew that a renewal of the battle was intended; he had been, therefore, previously prepared for our coming. When the signal of parley had been given a canoe came from the enemy: it was demanded by Raa Kook that the king of Artingall should submit to those terms which had been already proposed by his brother, as an atonement for the murder which had been committed by his people. The canoe departed with this message, and returned immediately after with a flat refusal from the king, who declared himself ready for war; upon this Abba Thulle, who had been dressed in the scarlet coat which the captain had given him, stood up in his canoe, ordered the conch to be sounded, and gave a signal for all his forces to prepare for the attack by waving his chinam stick in the air.

"During this, the king of Artingall assembled his men by signals, and sounded their conch-shells in defiance, but were by no means willing to leave the shore and commence an attack. The ten Englishmen were in ten canoes, one being with the King, another with his brother, and the chiefest Ropacks having one each. The English were armed with muskets, bayonets, pistols, and cutlasses.

"There were several light canoes, containing four men each, who were constantly employed in conveying commands from squadron to squa-

"dron. Their
"were called by
"The enemy
"and apparent
"the shore, the
"the improper
"defence; and
"frigate canoes,
"ed under a pic
"make their a
"given. This
"were exchange
"pretending an
"and counterfeit
"example, and
"velocity.
"This appeara
"enemy to a pu
"great hall, to
"while they wer
"squadron appe
"and confusion,
"enemy found t
"this the King t
"for his canoes
"divisions, the
"warm. The s
"the English kee
"not add a litt
"could not conce
"fell, when ther
"them. Such w
"musquets, that
"what they wer
"than one good
"being only em
"if they are onc
"fusion is general
"the guns were f
"to shout so mu
"enemies fears we
"ing they were in
"betook themsel
"were for some
"that had been c
"many wounds a
"numbers were n
"the people of A
"There were, dur
"and nine prison
"great victory, it
"captive, as the
"carry away the
"those that are kil
"in triumph by t
"among these pri
"the Pelew people
"to deprive him o
"heroic chief
"with uncommon

The Wreck continued
Apology—His Pre
vious Chiefs—Their
Complaints respect
Reason for puttin
Candour and Sinc
—A Swivel-gun—
Timely Discovery—
His Return—A
acquainted of his
Every Attempt in
Swivel-gun—Ena
Enemy—Five Can
Barker's Fall—Ca
Raa-Kook's fire
No. 6.

“dron. Their agility was so surprising that they were called by the English the *frigate canoes*.”

“The enemy having still retained their station, and apparently resolved upon not quitting the shore, the King of Pelew was convinced of the impropriety of attacking them under such defence; and accordingly dispatched some of the *frigates canoes*, to order a squadron to be concealed under a piece of distant high land, and not to make their appearance till a certain sign was given. This being secretly done, a few spears were exchanged; when suddenly Abba Thulle, pretending an alarm, sounded the conch-shell, and counterfeited a flight, his canoe setting the example, and the rest following with the greatest velocity.

“This appearance of cowardice encouraged the enemy to a pursuit. They quitted the shore in great haste, to overtake their antagonists; and while they were warm in the chase, the concealed squadron appeared, to their no little astonishment and confusion, and having cut off all retreat, the enemy found themselves forely entangled. Upon this the King turned round, and giving the signal for his canoes to form themselves into proper divisions, the attack became both general and warm. The spears flew about very thick, and the English kept up a continual fire, which did not add a little to their embarrassment, as they could not conceive by what means their people fell, when there was no appearance of a spear in them. Such was the effect of the firing of the musquets, that the enemy's forces did not know what they were doing: as there is seldom more than one good spearman in each canoe, the rest being only employed to paddle and guide it, if they are once put out of their way their confusion is generally attended with a defeat. When the guns were fired, the people of Pelew began to shout so much, and halloo with joy, that the enemies fears were naturally increased, and finding they were no longer able to make resistance, betook themselves to a real flight; herein they were for some time impeded, by the squadron that had been concealed; this subjected them to many wounds and disasters; however, as their numbers were not adequate to that of the enemy, the people of Artingall at last got to their land. There were, during the conflict, six canoes taken, and nine prisoners, which is accounted a very great victory, it being very seldom any are made captive, as the vanquished always endeavour to carry away the wounded, and even the bodies of those that are killed, that they may not be exposed in triumph by their victors. There was a *Rupack* among these prisoners: as soon as he was taken, the Pelew people endeavoured all in their power to deprive him of the bones on his wrist; but the heroic chief defended the mark of his dignity with uncommon courage, till at last he lost his

“life in the struggle. When his body was brought to Pelew, his head was cut off, and stuck upon a bamboo, fixed up before the King's house.

“There were two prisoners in the canoe with me, one had his thigh broken with a spear, and the other was wounded in several places: they were commanded to sit down in the bottom of the canoe; the one whose thigh was broken complied, but the other refused; upon which one of the natives hastily snatched my bayonet, and plunged it into his body: he died without a groan.

“Whenever any one is captured, he unties his hair, which was collected before in a great bunch on the top of his head, and pulls it over his face, patiently waiting the doom which is inevitable, it being always the rule to put prisoners to death.

“A wounded prisoner, who was in the canoe with Mr. Benger, had his life prolonged for about two hours, by means of his entreaties; however one of the King's people (who had been wounded by the enemy) no sooner saw him, than he snatched the Malay's dagger, and plunged it instantly into his breast, before Mr. Benger was aware of his intention. This prisoner met his fate with the greatest fortitude; and could not help gazing at the English during the hours of his distress.

“The surprise of seeing a white man apparently amused the pains of death.

“The King stopped at several small islands on his way to Pelew which belonged to him; for the sake of declaring his victory, and exposing the dead bodies of his prisoners. All these people manifested the greatest joy; and brought out refreshments, the best which the place could afford. When the King reached Pelew, the conch was sounded, to apprise the people of his arrival: it was now dark, and there was some delay before all the canoes were assembled. A great quantity of refreshments was provided, and universal joy testified on the occasion. There were songs and dances for the greatest part of the night. The natives attributed their success to our men, as they frequently repeated the word *Englet* in their songs.

“The number which the enemy lost could not be ascertained; it was universally believed to have been considerable. Not one man of Pelew was killed; a few were wounded. The bodies of the prisoners were exposed for several days, till at last they became very offensive; they were then either thrown into the sea or buried.

“According to all the observations which the English could make during this expedition, the island of Artingall was thought to be the largest of any yet seen. As soon as Mr. M. Wilson had communicated the particulars of the battle, he informed his brother that it was the King's intention to visit the English another visit in the course of a few days.

CHAPTER V.

The Wreck continually visited—Materials occasionally preserved—Fifteen Bags of Rice recovered—King of Pelew's Apology—His Progress of the new Vessel—English unsuccessful in Fishing—Arrival of Raa Kook; and two Chiefs—Their Decorum at Divine Service—Another Request of the King's—The Malay's Artifice—Captain's Complaints respecting the Cartridges—King's seeming Inattention, &c.—Raa Kook's Confusion—Vindication—Reason for putting their Prisoners to Death—Proposal—The Captain perfectly satisfied—Admirer Raa Kook's Candour and Sincerity—The Chief's Son renounced—Surgeon Sharp promises to visit him—Raa Kook's Departure—A Swivel-gun and ten Men lent him for a third Expedition—Names of the Men—A Volunteer—An Accident—Timely Discovery—Danger prevented—Surgeon Sharp goes to Pelew, to see Raa Kook's Son that is wounded—His Return—Agreeable Intelligence—Brings home the Ship's Coppers—Account of his Visit to the General—Is acquainted of his Son's Death—Arrival of the English from the Battle—Mr. M. Wilson's Account thereof—Every Attempt in vain to provoke the Enemy's Appearance—Begin at last to defend themselves—Execution of the Swivel-gun—Enemy's Houses in Flames—Arra Kooker's Bravery—Defended by the English—Courage of the Enemy—Five Canoes destroyed—The Stone on which the King of Artingall sits carried away, &c. &c.—Mr. Barker's Fall—Captain Wilson pays a Visit to the strange Rupacks—His Reception—Entertainment, &c.—Raa Kook fires a Gun—Consequences of the Shock—Captain's return to Orulong, &c.

The Antelope still kept together, the boats were continually visiting her, and several materials of essential service were occasionally preserved, particularly planks and spike-nails. There were also fifteen bags of rice recovered, which at this time was very acceptable, for the men were not only undergoing the most fatiguing work, but at this time were also obliged to put up with short allowance.

The King of Pelew sent an apology to Captain Wilson for not having paid him a visit since his last conquest, having been detained by the congratulations of several islands, whose compliments he was obliged to receive. He also sent a quantity of yams, and a jar of molasses as a present.

The progress of the new vessel was still rapid; the planking of her was in great forwardness, and the men, stimulated with the hope of soon treading on English ground, pursued their task every day with fresh vigour, and persevered with uncommon assiduity.

It is remarkable that whenever the English hauled the seine, they were always unsuccessful; yet the natives never failed in catching fish. Either the English were not aware of the places where they were to be found in, or were ignorant of the proper bait.

Presents were continually coming from Pelew. On the 28th of September Raa Kook arrived at Orooloo with two chiefs of the neighbouring islands in three canoes; they brought with them three jars of molasses, yams, cocoa-nuts, &c. At the time of their arrival the English were just going to prayers. The inhabitants of Pelew attended divine service, and behaved with every due decorum; Raa Kook having enjoined all his people to observe the strictest silence. As soon as Captain Wilson had done reading, Raa Kook importuned him for fifteen men for the King, and the use of one of the swivel-guns (which was still coveted), as Abba Thulle having collected all his new allies together, was desirous to make the third expedition, and by avenging himself on all his enemies, render his victory complete. At this time there having been some things hinted to the captain through the artifice of the Malay, whom the King kept at Pelew, as interpreter to assist him in his conversation with the English, and who imagining his interest with the King was somewhat abated since the arrival of the English, artfully endeavoured (as before) to sow discord between the parties, and for this purpose, lately intimated to Captain Wilson some matters which he was in hopes would displease him, and render both the English and natives mutually jealous; the captain therefore availing himself of this opportunity to bring matters to an explanation, began with observing the cool manner in which the King and his people departed on their last expedition, and complained much of the cartridges, and one of the six-pounders, that were then taken unknown to him, especially the former, which was at present a scarce article. He then mentioned the Malay's intimation, which was, that the King expected the same homage to be paid him by the English as was by his own subjects. This intelligence, he added, very much disturbed his people, and he expressed great astonishment at the King's seeming inattention in sending home the Englishmen who were before lent, without any Rupacks to accompany them; the consequence of which was, that his brother and another man were very near being drowned, and notwithstanding the exertions of the boat-men, several articles lost. He then animadverted on the cruelty of putting their prisoners to death, which was quite contrary to English principles, and to which he could never agree.

Raa Kook was exceedingly hurt at these complaints, his countenance spoke his feelings, and assuring the captain that he would state the whole

truth, hoped it would be a sufficient vindication. In respect to the paper and cartouch-boxes, it was apprehended that they had not sufficient ammunition, which induced them to take more: that all possible means were taken to recover the paper which had been carried away from the ship, but it being too wet it was thrown away by the natives as entirely useless. He added, that the white cloth which had been given to the King, Arra Kooker, and himself, was still untouched, and should be returned for the purpose of making cartridges. In respect to the English being sent away without any chiefs, it was owing to Mr. Beuger's haste and anxiety; who, notwithstanding their entreaties, would not wait till other canoes were got ready. As to the six-pounder, it was not taken, but only borrowed to gratify the curiosity of several strangers who had visited the King, and whom the King was unwilling to bring to Orooloo, for fear of interrupting the English in their business. He also declared that it was the King's last injunction, that this great gun should be immediately returned. As to any homage being expected from the English, it was quite contrary to the King's expectations or notions, he never desired, he never would permit it! Their prisoners they were under the disagreeable necessity of putting to death for their own personal safety, as formerly having escaped, they behaved so treacherous as to do them great mischief: however, it was proposed by Raa Kook that they should in future be surrendered to the English, to do whatever they pleased with them.

The captain listened to the chief with the greatest attention, and admiring his candour and sincerity, assured him he was perfectly satisfied with his declaration. He then departed to consult with his officers respecting the King's request. They all deemed it expedient that the captain should consent to lend the swivel-gun and men; only instead of fifteen, they thought ten a sufficient number, as the absence of any person at this critical time was of material consequence. The captain immediately returned, and Raa Kook was highly delighted with his compliance. They all sat down to supper in the greatest good-humour, and Raa Kook's two friends being very much fatigued, they retired to rest in their vessel, it being observed by Raa Kook that the tent was too small.

In the morning Raa Kook acquainted the surgeon that his son was wounded in the last battle; part of the spear was broken in his foot, and he wanted Mr. Sharp to see if he could extract it. As it was much swelled, the surgeon advised it to be constantly fomented, and promised to take the earliest opportunity of visiting him. Mr. Sharp would have accompanied him that evening, but three of his own people (who were their best hands) were at this time dangerously ill.

Ten Englishmen were appointed to attend Raa Kook on this third expedition, which was intended to be of the greatest consequence, as all the Rupacks of the adjoining islands were to accompany the King. Raa Kook departed about noon, taking the swivel-gun and Englishmen with him, who were Messrs. M. Wilson, Cummin, John Blanch (the gunner, whose presence was deemed necessary in order to manage the swivel-gun), John Meal, James Swift, N. Tyacke, M. Blanchard, Thomas Whitefield, Thomas Wilson, and Thomas Dulton. Mr. Devis also accompanied them as a volunteer.

As the vessel had been already planked up as high as the bends, they now began to trench under her bottom, with a view to plank to the keel; however, the tide having in the beginning of the night rose higher than usual, broke into the trench, and the blocks were very near being washed away from under the vessel. This accident, which would certainly have destroyed all their labours, was very fortunately discovered in time, and the people were

all employed the blocks, and according to what was not effected.

Mr. Sharp's party he went, agreeable to the captain, in the jolly-boat with Pelew for provisions. The jolly-boat was in a very bad weather. She returned with a great deal of intelligence of the King being in action, reported during which the wonderful resistance was as usual victorious. The men till their feet were brought home the carried away by the were restored by the surgeon visited Raa Kook's dejected countenance. He had to speak that was in expressed a desire to shake off his grief, countenance, lot of chiefs who were to Mr. Sharp soon upon unnecessary: the young man had the swelling subsided, in this last battle, when the body, of which he in

The day after Mr. who had joined in the the greatest satisfaction they had met.

This battle was between others; but as there interesting in the course those particulars as to M. Wilson. This follows, in his own

"When we came
"canoes: there was
"arrival; but every
"to provoke the ene
"we landed, and ad
"sea-shore. The Ki
"give his occasional
"the command of
"to Raa Kook. Th
"to land; but as the
"defend themselves,
"assist their friends,
"longing to the ene
"with great judgme
"the purpose of fix
"which being direct
"was constantly play
"were soon dislodg
"covered the Pelew
"means one of their
"ames. The peop
"their resistance, free
"shower of spears, b
"the brisk firing of
"immediately dispe
"edily have destroye
"Kooker was the most
"ing spirit: he ascend
"and perceiving one
"down, concealed him
"passed, and then pur
"gave him such a vi
"sword, as laid him
"fect. He was forth

all employed the succeeding day to reinstate the blocks, and accomplish the vessel's security, which was not effected till the 2nd of October.

Mr. Sharp's patients having been now recovered, he went, agreeable to his promise, and the desire of the captain, in the jolly-boat, (which was sent to Pelew for provisions) in order to see if he could render any service to Raa Kook's wounded son. The jolly-boat was detained four days by the bad weather. She returned on the 6th, with the agreeable intelligence of those men who had been lent to the King being safe and well, after a successful action, reported to be the severest yet fought, and during which the inhabitants of Artingall made a wonderful resistance; but that the King of Pelew was as usual victorious, and had therefore detained the men till their feasting, &c. was over. Mr. Sharp brought home the ship's coppers, which had been carried away by the natives from the wreck, and were restored by the King's orders. When the surgeon visited Raa Kook, the chief met him with a dejected countenance. Mr. Sharp produced the instruments he had brought with him to extract the spear that was in his son's foot, and consequently expressed a desire to see him; upon which the chief, sensible of his humanity, bowed, endeavoured to shake off his grief, and refusing a more enlivened countenance, introduced the surgeon to a number of chiefs who were there assembled, and from whom Mr. Sharp soon understood that his visit was now unnecessary: the youth, who was about eighteen, having had the spear at last extracted, when the swelling subsided, was determined on being one in this last battle, wherein he received a dart in his body, of which he immediately died.

The day after Mr. Sharp's arrival, the 11 English who had joined in this battle returned, and testified the greatest satisfaction with the reception which they had met.

This battle was begun in the same manner as the others; but as there is something both novel and interesting in the conclusion, we shall here subjoin those particulars as they have been related by Mr. M. Wilson. This gentleman's information is as follows, in his own words:

"When we came to Artingall, we could see no canoes: there was notice given repeatedly of our arrival; but every attempt was at present in vain, to provoke the enemy's appearance. Upon this we landed, and advanced a little way from the sea-shore. The King remained in his canoe, to give his occasional orders to the *frigate* ones; and the command of the troops was now submitted to Raa Kook. The English were entreated not to land; but as they saw the enemy beginning to defend themselves, they jumped upon shore to assist their friends, and belleged several huts belonging to the enemy. The natives had prepared with great judgment and ingenuity a canoe for the purpose of fixing therein the swivel-gun, which being directed against the enemy's huts, was constantly played upon them. The enemy were soon dislodged by the musquetry which covered the Pelew people; and by some unknown means one of their huts was instantaneously in flames. The people of Artingall, still bold in their resistance, frequently rushed down with a shower of spears, but were as often repelled by the brisk firing of the English, which not only immediately dispersed them, but must undoubtedly have destroyed a considerable number. Arra Kooker was the most remarkable for his enterprising spirit: he ascended a hill in sight of the canoes, and perceiving one of the enemy's party coming down, concealed himself behind a bush till he had passed, and then pursuing him down the declivity, gave him such a violent blow with his wooden sword, as laid him in an instant prostrate at his feet. He was forthwith dragging him a prisoner

to his canoe, which several of the other party perceiving, were rushing down upon their antagonist to his relief, and Arra Kooker would certainly have fallen a victim in this unequal conflict, had not Tho. Wilson, with great presence of mind, hastened to his relief, and presented his musquet at the approaching enemy, the sight of which so alarmed them, that they instantly turned and took to flight. At this time the whole stock of ammunition had been expended in covering the landing, and Wilson had actually no charge in his musquet when he presented it, otherwise he would have fired: the circumstance, however, was the more fortunate, and Wilson's bravery the more conspicuous.

The enemy, notwithstanding their defeat, manifested true courage and magnanimity throughout the engagement: they defended the house that was in flames till it was just ready to fall; and as an instance of the equal temerity of the Pelew people, one of them on this occasion ran to the house while it was burning, and tearing off some of the brands which were on fire, admitted the flames to an adjoining hut, where several of the enemy had taken refuge. The materials of their building being of a very combustible nature, it immediately took fire, and was burnt down to the ground. The man who was so daring as to accomplish this, had the good fortune to return to his companions without the least hurt. The King rewarded him for his bold achievement, by immediately placing a string of beads in his ears with his own hands, and afterwards on his return to Pelew making him an interior Rupaek, as these chiefs always rise according to their merit.

There were five canoes belonging to the enemy destroyed during this action, which they hauled on shore; also their causeway, which is much broader and longer than that at Pelew. Several of the enemy were killed: their dwellings for the most part burnt down; and, besides other damage, the stone on which the King of Artingall sits when in council was taken away. This was looked upon as the greatest part of the victory; and was the occasion of much rejoicing on their return to Pelew. Notwithstanding this triumph was superior to the former ones, yet the joy was not so great or universal, for the death of Raa Kook's gallant son, and another heroic youth, were so truly felt and lamented, as to abate in a great measure the pleasures of their conquest. There were also about 30 or 40 of Abba Thulle's people wounded, several of whom died as soon as they returned to Pelew."

This account of Mr. M. Wilson's contributed not a little to the satisfaction of the captain's people, as they were consequently raised still higher in the estimation of the natives, who gratefully acknowledged their assistance, and imputed all their success to the English.

On the 8th Mr. Benger unfortunately fell from one of the scaffolds on his back, and was much hurt: he was immediately conveyed to a tent, where Mr. Sharp attended.

The King having invited Capt. Wilson, in order to introduce him to the strange Rupaeka who attended him on this last expedition, the captain accordingly took with him his son Henry Wilson, also Rose and Dulton, and accompanied Raa Kook, who was waiting for that purpose with two canoes at Oroolong. As soon as they left the harbour they tarried for other canoes, which had been out fishing. Upon their arrival, some of the fish which had been caught (among which was a turtle) was sent back to Oroolong, for the use of the tents, and the remainder they took with them to Pelew, where they arrived about ten o'clock at night. The King had departed about an hour before to Emungs (an island

so called) which was the residence of those Rupacks; but Qui-Bill, the King's son, was enjoined to wait for the captain, and to conduct him to this great island. Capt. Willson being however much indisposed, begged leave to decline the journey till the next day.

Early the next morning they embarked in Raa Kook's canoe, who on this occasion took with him two of his wives; and about noon they approached the mouth of a rivulet, which ran up into the island of Emungs. Raa Kook's canoe was now adorned with shells, and notice given of his arrival by sounding his conch.

They were frequently in danger of being a-ground in getting into this rivulet, which was both narrow and shallow. This the natives seemed much to dread, and took all possible means of avoiding, having frequently got out of the canoe in order to track it. When they had advanced about a mile up the creek, they came in sight of some huts. The conch-shell was again sounded, upon which three or four young men appeared; but upon seeing the English, were so alarmed, that they immediately retreated. Two of Raa Kook's attendants were consequently ordered to go up to the huts, which they did, and shortly after returned with a piece of board, on which Capt. Willson was seated, and carried to shore. At this time the canoe was a-ground, and Raa Kook accordingly walked at his side, and conducted the captain to a large hut, round which there was a great throng of natives, who had assembled for the sake of seeing these white men, who had gained them the battle. In order to gratify their curiosity, they made a stay here of about half an hour, and thence went the distance of a quarter of a mile, where they found the King and the Rupacks in a large public building. Abba Thulle made signs to the captain to sit down: here they remained for about two hours. From this they went to the habitation of the Rupack of the town, who was a venerable chief, unable to walk. They remained here for half an hour, and partook of refreshments, which were laid upon a low table. After this they returned to the great house, where other refreshments were prepared. A number of men and women then danced; during which the latter made a most hideous noise. Two butlers served the supper. It is worthy observation, that none of the Rupacks, or others, offered to eat till the King gave his permission; nor did any of them lie down to sleep, till he was first covered with his mat. The dancing continued the whole night, which prevented the English from enjoying much rest. Among the entertainments of the next day, there was also a mock-fight, and a warlike dance, with spears in their hands; in the course of which the chief of the band brought four large spears, and presented them at different times to Captain Willson; also a curious sword, inlaid with shells: the delivery of each was preceded by some short speech; after which the donor resumed his place in the dance. This entertainment lasted for an hour.

The captain having now perceived some human skulls, which were placed over the outside of the doors at the ends of the great house, was curious to know by what means they were there; and having desired Rofe to enquire of Raa Kook, was informed that a little while ago, during the absence of the superior Rupacks and chiefs of Emungs, who had departed on some particular occasion to another island, and had taken with them a considerable number of the inhabitants, a party of the enemy had secretly entered their town, and destroyed several of the people, (who had not time to escape into the woods) and afterwards set their dwellings on fire. The King, Abba Thulle, when informed of this treachery, without loss of time assembled all his canoes and warriors, and before these spies had time to effect their escape they were unexpectedly sur-

rounded by the King's forces, who attacked them with such vehemence, that several were killed, others having taken to flight, some into the woods, and some in their canoes: very few however, escaped. At about this critical period, the Rupacks who had been absent with their company, returned to Emungs, and assisting the attack, it was renewed with fresh vigour, while the Aringall people lost all their chiefs, whose heads were thus exposed as an example to all tractable enemies.

During Captain Willson's stay, there was continual dancing and merriment. On the 12th, the captain having signified his desire of returning to Oroolong, the conch-shell was sounded early in the morning, and the canoes were immediately prepared. Previous to their departure they were all assembled in the great house, and Raa Kook being desirous of firing a gun, was accordingly indulged in his request, but not aware of the shock that would ensue, he held the musquet in such a loose manner, that upon being discharged it came with great violence against his shoulder, upon which, he not only dropt the musquet, but fell himself upon his back. This created universal astonishment, nor could Raa Kook imagine how the English could fire their guns with such ease and facility, when he was neither able to stand nor hold one when discharged. Some little time after this they embarked, and it being almost high water, passed the creek with ease: one of the Rupacks, who was going northward, now took leave of his friends, and carried away about nine canoes in his train. The king and his train (which were about forty canoes) returned to the southward. There being a violent squall of wind about ten o'clock, attended with thunder, lightning, and rain, every canoe was obliged to shift for itself. The natives having an antipathy to rain, had rather swam and be completely wet, than bear the dropping of it; which, as supposed, occasions a tickling, or some other disagreeable sensation on their skins. Accordingly the boatmen in the canoe where the captain was, jumped overboard as soon as even it began to rain, holding the canoe with its hands. During the thunder, Raa Kook's two wives who accompanied the captain, seemed much alarmed, and between every flash of lightning hid their faces under his boot-cloak, where they muttered something supposed to have been a prayer or ejaculation. Raa Kook covered himself with his mat. The weather still continuing heavy, they did not stop. As soon as they were landed, the boat-men took two pieces of wood, and rubbing them with much violence together, kindled a fire with remarkable expedition. When the rain was gone they arrived where the King was, who had a dinner of boiled fish prepared, for which like muller. At one o'clock they all landed at an island called Annalorgoo, where they had refreshments, and were entertained with another warlike dance. Having disembarked they came to another place, called Emullegue: this was a large island, situated about a mile from the sea-shore, and appeared to be a distinct government, as the chief of the island, who was a jolly-looking old Rupack, was paid every kind of respect and attention. A formal invitation came from him to our canoes, and the company solicited to land; the King, however, declined going on shore, but was willing that every one else should. They were treated here with much hospitality and kindness, invited to several houses, where there were broiled pigeons prepared, and an entertainment of dancing. It being dark when they were returning to their canoes, they were attended by the people with lighted torches in their hands, who assisted them with the greatest civility over all the uneven paths.

The captain and his party arrived at Pelew about ten o'clock, but as the King's canoe had not yet come in, none of the people attempted to go on shore,

shore, or remove ceremony was ever however, Raa Kook's English were executed however the captain of compliment to the house at the water. A council was held the superior Rupacks and the next day the captain if he was once more with him served, that he could with propriety till at Oroolong, for the men were sick, and worse, or others included would be totally in men permitted, th

The Cook and two Cadets—He accompanies News from Arling Daughter, and a King's Wives—Enjoins a Request—King retires—The Motive of the Involuntary Breakfast—Are informed of Raa Kook's Indisposition—King returns to Oroolong and Promise—Sends Raa Kook—King's Gratitude for the Expedition—much Disquietude—The King—Proposed Reception—Description that joined the King of Torches, &c.—The English enter—Their desperate Invention ready to be Character of Rofe, &c.

ON the 15th of Chinese, were a number of stripes with ment was called a col-majority, according to at the captain's request cook had frequently for Chinese and he was prizing some of each was boiled to their or had wounded one of with a stone. As this deferred due chastisement ordered to be striped Raa Kook, who was perceived at the preparation given; but the necessity served, he readily and even waited to see it inflicted was far from think it of serious consequence heughed heartily at the Chinese, when they were Raa Kook had according in the jolly-boat to the three canoes arrived at of which was a woman at Oroolong: she brought greatest attention and

shore, or remove any thing from the boats. This ceremony was even observed by the King's brothers; however, Raa Kook informed the captain that the English were exempt from all their regulations: however the captain still retained his place, out of compliment to the King. They repaired to the house at the water-side, where they spent the night. A council was held by the King, his brothers, and the superior Rupacks, before they went to sleep; and the next day, before breakfast, the King asked the captain if he were willing to let the English go once more with him to battle? The captain observed, that he could not give a positive answer with propriety till he had consulted his own people at Oroolong, for before his departure several of his men were sick, and if on his return they should be worse, or others indisposed, a compliance at present would be totally impossible; but if the health of his men permitted, they should attend him with the

greatest pleasure. The King was perfectly satisfied with this reply, and enquired why the jolly-boat was not oftener sent to Pelew for refreshments. In answer to this, the captain observed, that they were obliged to sink their other boat at the head of the Relief, in making a bank to keep off the tide, and consequently the jolly-boat being their only one at present, she could not be so conveniently spared.

This day (the 13th) the weather becoming clear, the English, accompanied with Raa Kook, left Pelew at eleven, and arrived about four o'clock in the afternoon at Oroolong.

The captain was very happy to find, on his return, the great advancement of the new vessel; also the recovery of Mr. Barker after his fall, who was now able to walk about. Raa Kook remained at Oroolong, but sent away the canoes that accompanied him, for fear the number of inhabitants might impede the English in their work.

CHAPTER VI.

The Cook and two Chinese punished with a Cobbing—Their Crimes—Description of a Cobbing—Raa Kook's Conduct—He accompanies the English to the Wreck—A female Native visits Oroolong—Her Curiosity—Departure—News from Artingall—Proposals of Peace—Raa Kook's Satisfaction—King visits Oroolong—Brings his youngest Daughter, and a Company of Women—One of them remarkable for her Beauty, &c.—Proves to be one of the King's Wives—English attentive to her—The King imputes all his Victories to the English—Curfory Observations—Makes a Request—The Captain partly complies—The King's Satisfaction—Further Observations of the Captain—King retires—Reason—Sends the Captain an Invitation from the Watering-place—His Acceptance of it—Motive of the Invitation—King visits the Wreck—Captain Wilson invites three of the Artingall Inhabitants to Breakfast—Are introduced by Raa Kook—Their Astonishment, Behaviour, &c.—Presents of Fish from the King—Raa Kook's Indisposition—Capt. Wilson and Surgeon Sharp visit him—A Boil on his Arm—The Surgeon dresses it—King returns to Pelew—Is accompanied with Mr. Devis and the English Interpreter—The King's Request, and Promise—Sends paint for the Vessel—Progress of the Relief—Surgeon Sharp goes to Pelew to visit Raa Kook—King's Gratitude for their Attention—Visit from ten Canoes—Their Conduct and Familiarity—Behaviour of an old Rupack, &c.—Arrival of several Canoes—Return of Mr. Devis—Intelligence—Names of the Canoes appointed for the Expedition—Arrival of the King—His Departure with the English—A tremendous Storm—Occasion of much Disquietude—Arrival of the Rupack Arra Zeok—His Information—No Engagement—Inhabitants of Pelelew sue for Peace—The Chiefs warm Reception—Arrival of John Duncan—The Peace concluded—A Message from the King—Proposal to the English to visit Pelelew Island—Their Acceptance, and previous Caution—Their Reception—Description of the Island—Return to Oroolong, &c.—Names of the Islands whence the Canoes came from that joined the King—Raa Kook's abrupt Departure—Surgeon Sharp, &c. go to Pelew—Returns with a Present of Torches, &c.—His Information—Description of the King of Pelelew—Message to the English from Abba Tulle—The English entertain Suspicions in consequence thereof—The Captain's Arguments to remove them—Ineffectual—Their desperate Intention—Pears partly removed—Mr. Sharp, &c. dispatched with a Message to the King—Vessel ready to be launched—An extraordinary Proposal from Blanchard—Persists therein—His Character—Character of Rose, &c.

ON the 15th of October the cook, and two Chinese, were ordered to receive a particular number of stripes with a battle-axe, (which punishment was called a *cobbing*). This was decreed by a majority, according to the manner that punishments, at the captain's request, were to be decided. The cook had frequently spoiled the rice; and one of the Chinese and he were suspected of secretly appropriating some of each small quantity of meat that was boiled to their own use: the other China-man had wounded one of his countrymen on the head with a stone. As this treacherous behaviour certainly deserved due chastisement, the men were therefore ordered to be stripped, and tied against the tree. Raa Kook, who was present, seemed somewhat concerned at the preparations, and solicited their forgiveness; but the necessity of punishment being observed, he readily admitted the justice of it, and even waited to see it executed. As the punishment inflicted was far from severe, Raa Kook did not think it of serious consequence; on the contrary, he laughed heartily at the lamentable cries of the Chinese, when they were receiving their *cobbing*.

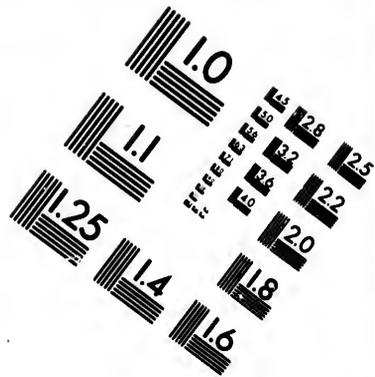
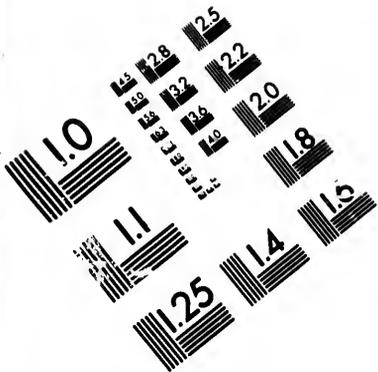
Raa Kook had accompanied a party of the English in the jolly-boat to the wreck: during their absence three canoes arrived at the watering-place, in one of which was a woman, the first that was ever seen at Oroolong: she beheld every thing with the greatest attention and surprize, particularly the new

vessel, the cook's kitchen, and the smith's shop. The men waited in their canoes till she had satisfied her curiosity, which seemed to get the better of her timidity; for though she approached every place with the greatest caution, she could not refrain from closely examining it. She walked about for some short time, and then returned to her canoe. On account of the absence of Raa Kook, the English could never learn who she was. As none of the men who accompanied her were ever seen at Pelew, it was supposed they came from Emillegue.

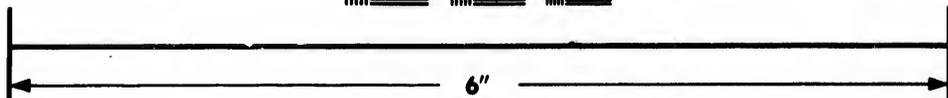
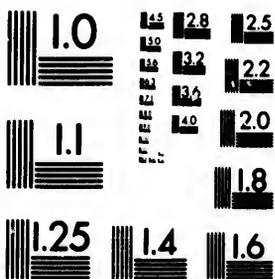
News was dispatched to Raa Kook and the English, that the chief minister of Artingall had arrived at Pelew with proposals of peace: this intelligence gave Raa Kook great satisfaction.

On the 17th the King paid a visit to Oroolong: he brought with him his youngest daughter, Erre Bess, who was attended with eight or nine women. Presents of yams, cocoa-nuts, sweetmeats, &c. were brought as usual. The King's daughter appeared to be about nine years of age: her father led her by the hand on shore, and appeared to be passionately fond of her. Raa Kook attended the other females, and introduced them to the English: one of these was remarkable for the graceful manner of her walking; she was young, and superior to all the rest for elegance and beauty: in short, her appearance made such an impression on the English, that they could not refrain from enquiring who she was.





**IMAGE EVALUATION
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic
Sciences
Corporation**

33 WES* MAIN STREET
WES* T4A, N.Y. 14590
(716) 872-4503

18
20
22
25
28
32
36
40

10
12
15
18
20

that almost every island had united their strength with Abba Thulle, and there were at present upwards of three hundred canoes at Pelew, which, previous to his departure, were separated in three divisions, and making all necessary preparations for their immediate expedition; two of these divisions were to proceed to Pelelew, and the other (which were to be joined by the King and his brother) were to come to Oroolong for the English. The reason that Mr. Devis did not wait for the King was his wish to seize the opportunity of viewing this formidable fleet. The following Englishmen were appointed to attend the natives on this expedition: the captain's brother, T. Wilson, N. Tyacke, M. Blanchard, James Swift, T. Whitfield, John Duncan, Thomas Dulton, William Steward, and William Roberts. They accordingly prepared themselves for the King's coming, who arrived at Oroolong about four o'clock in the afternoon. The English having embarked in separate canoes, now departed with three cheers.

The two succeeding days introduced very heavy weather, there was much thunder, lightning, and rain; and the tremendous storm which took place on the 29th occasioned great disquietude among the English, who began now to be alarmed for the safety of their absent countrymen. On the 30th the rain abated; there was notwithstanding a smart breeze from S. E. and the weather still remained cloudy. A canoe or two were seen to-day; at midnight, the weather having become very hazy, a canoe was perceived near the harbour, it was hailed by the guard, and the people therein replied *Engles*; permission was accordingly granted for its entrance into the cove. The Rupaek Arra Zook was in this, who informed the English that there was no engagement at Pelelew, as on Abba Thulle's approach the inhabitants all laid down their spears and sued for peace: this chief met with a very warm reception from the English, both for his good news, and as he was a favourite with the captain and Mr. Sharp. The next day another canoe brought word that the fleet was on their return; a short while after two others arrived with John Duncan, who confirmed the news of the peace, which had been concluded by Arra Kooker, who for that purpose went to Pelelew. A message came to the English from the King that if any of them were desirous to see the island of Pelelew Arra Kooker should accompany them there. It was for some time a matter of surprise why neither the King himself or Raa Kook offered to escort them there; but on a future explanation it was made known that the honour and condescension would be too great if either the king or the chief, who was next in rank, were to pay the island a visit. This being understood, several of the English were desirous to visit this island; but they had agreed in private to take with them their arms, nor upon any occasion to separate when they landed, for fear there might be some deception intended, and that they might be surprised, notwithstanding the confirmation of the peace, by these strangers. They were accompanied by several of the Pelew inhabitants, and their reception at Pelelew bespoke the people to be more friends than enemies. This island is defended by a stone wall about ten or twelve feet high, with a foot-bank of stone behind; the water near the shore is so shallow that no canoes can get in except at high-water. It is a very pleasant island; the land, which is supposed to be fertile, is more level than hilly. The English proceeded from this to Pelew, where they found the kings of Pelew and Pelelew on the most friendly footing. Raa Kook and a number of canoes came with the English to Oroolong, Abba Thulle, with the king of Pelelew, having gone to his own island, which was called Cooroora, of which Pelew was the capital. The several canoes which had prepared to attend the King in this last expedition came from Emung,

Aramalorgoo, Emillegue, Arraguy, Cooroora, Caragaba, Pethoull, and Oroolong, called the Englishmen's island. Raa Kook's departure from the English was at this time very abrupt, but he pleaded urgent business at Pelew. Surgeon Sharp and four Englishmen went in the jolly-boat in the evening to congratulate the King on the good news of the peace, and also to bring home some torches which Raa Kook had promised, and which the English were very desirous of, in order to reserve their candles for their voyage. Their stay was about two days; they returned in the evening, while the people were at prayers, with the torches, sweetmeats, &c. &c. Mr. Sharp reported that there were great feasting and rejoicings at Pelew, and that the Rupaek of Pelelew was still there. The king of Pelelew, he observed, was an elderly man, and rough in his manners; his hair was grey, and he wore his beard like a Jew; he was also tattooed up to the navel. Mr. Sharp also observed that he was commissioned by Abba Thulle, the King, to say he would in the course of four days pay the English a visit, in order to paint the vessel, and that he would stay with them till their departure, which every one hoped would be soon, as the Relief was in great forwardness.

It has been generally remarked that whenever the mind is agitated, with expectation, it is susceptible of the least alarm; there never was a stronger instance of this than at present. The English, who were now elate with the hope of soon reaching their native land, were struck with apprehension at the least thing that started, even the most distant idea of impeding their course; accordingly this message received from the King was productive of much uneasiness—their suspicions were immediately awakened, and they began to think that the King and his party entertained a notion of preventing their departure (on account of their great utility to them), by violently taking possession of their new vessel, and seizing their arms. Captain Wilson endeavoured all in his power to remove those idle apprehensions, and pointed out the improbability that those people, who have been hitherto so noble, so generous, and sincere, should be on a sudden so cruel, so treacherous, and artful: there never, he remarked, was a real cause for mistrust, and he was very sorry to find that his men should now give way to any; he therefore urged them, for their own sakes, to shake off those fears, nor to let those who have been all along their friends, and who they are foolishly afraid will be on a sudden their enemies, perceive those suspicions, lest, when acquainted with the cause, they might entertain notions they would not otherwise have thought of, and, perhaps, tempt them to realize the danger which he was very sure was now quite distant from their ideas: thus by their own indiscretion they might occasion what otherwise would never have occurred. The captain also expatiated upon the folly of their resistance, if any such design was in agitation, for even when the vessel was launched the natives could hinder their departure, by depriving them of the spring of fresh water, which must of course put a termination to all their hopes; and if they were to assemble in the island with any such hostile intention, the English must know that their ammunition would soon be expended, and that it would be impossible for them to support a contest of any duration. The captain, though he expressed himself according to the dictates of reason and prudence, found all his arguments at present ineffectual; his men still retained their fears, and could not be persuaded but that the natives really intended to detain them. These suspicions were very much increased by the appearance of two canoes near the harbour, neither of which came in: this circumstance was unusual, it seemed sufficient to corroborate their fears. The swivels and six-pounder were now loaded with grape-shot, and a strict watch appointed to prevent any

any sudden attack. A long consultation was also held, when it was resolved that every one should still continue to be vigilant, that all the small arms should be charged with ball, and all the cartouch-boxes filled with loaded cartridges: it was however further resolved that every man should disguise his sentiments before the natives, nor betray the least apprehension of any such design, except an unusual number of canoes should be seen entering the bay, or any of the natives come with spears: that in such case every man was then at liberty to use whatever means his prudence might suggest in his own defence. These resolutions were also succeeded with a determination still more desperate: it was intended if there appeared the least inclination to detain them to sacrifice the King, the noble, generous Abba Thulle, and his brave benevolent brothers, with all the rest of the chiefs, in order to occasion general confusion! Thus were the nice feelings of honour destroyed by that perturbation which was occasioned by the hope of being soon delivered, and the dread of being for ever detained! Happy it is that their fears were not increased by some seeming corroboration that might have tempted them to put their wild resolve into execution, and bring an everlasting disgrace upon their name!

Previous to this they had considered on the best method of launching the Relief, as this indeed was their chiefest concern; for should any accident have happened to the new vessel during this operation, it would have been impossible for them to renew their labour, as their tools were now worn out, and all the materials that could be got were already procured from the wreck. It was therefore agreed to lay ways; and as the vessel was nearly finished, they proceeded to cut down trees for the blocks and launching-ways.

Though the captain's arguments to remove the fears of his countrymen had not their due weight at first, yet when the people began to consider seriously, they were soon convinced of their force, and fortunately indeed the desperate resolves of a moment were but momentary! cool reflections weakened their apprehensions, and the next day the English and natives met with their usual gaiety and friendship.

Surgeon Sharp, and Mr. M. Wilson were commissioned by the captain to inform the King, that the English were in hopes of sailing in about a week. There was a letter, which Mr. Sharp was desired to read in the presence of the two interpreters, who were to explain it to the King: the contents of which signified, that the English hoped for the honour of seeing the King and his chiefs before their departure, that they might return them personal thanks for all their kind favours, and assure them that as soon as they reached their own country

they would make a public acknowledgment of their services and protection: the tools and the muskets (which the King wished to have) were also promised to be delivered to him immediately after the vessel was launched.

While the captain was thus instructing his brother and the surgeon, one of the seamen, M. Blanchard (who had accompanied the natives in every expedition) desired the King might also be informed, that it was his intention to stay behind, and remain with his subjects at Pelew. It seems this man was so delighted with the inhabitants, and their manners, that he often declared to his companions his intention of making the place his residence: it was his wish, he said, to partake of all the present labour of the English, and for that purpose he would cheerfully assist in the building of the new vessel, but on their departure he would bid them for ever farewell! Blanchard, however, was supposed at this time to be jesting, though he never once varied in his language: however, upon his application to the captain at this critical juncture, he was found to be serious. The captain used every argument in his power to dissuade him from his purpose; but his resolution was unalterable. Capt. Wilson also desired his companions to use their influence with him, and if possible make him change his intentions: but the men, after work, acquainted the captain that all their entreaties were unavailing, and that he was seriously determined to stay with the natives.

Blanchard was a man of a singular character: he was about twenty years of age, and notwithstanding he was inclined to gravity, yet possessed of a considerable share of dry humour. It was well known that he had formed no particular attachment on the island, which rendered the circumstance of his determined stay the more remarkable. He was universally beloved, being good-tempered, inoffensive, and ever ready to oblige. It is to be regretted, that he did not know how to read or write, as he might have been able to have taught the natives.

The captain, in hopes that Blanchard would still be dissuaded from his design, desired Rose (who was to accompany Mess. Wilson and Sharp) to take no notice of his proposal as yet to the King. The captain wisely intended, if Blanchard persisted in his determination, to make it appear to the King as a great favour. The gentlemen departed about ten o'clock, with Tho. Rose, their interpreter. This man was possessed of a great fund of pleantry and humour, and as he had the happy means of pleasing the natives, became a general favourite among them. He was very much esteemed by the captain, for his remarkable attention, fidelity, and great abilities.

CHAPTER VII.

Return of the Pinnace with the King, Erre Best, Raa Kook, &c.—Abba Thulle's Satisfaction at the King's Letter—The Malay's artful Remark—Raa Kook's severe Rebuke—The King's Indignation—Tools distributed by the King—A Messenger to the King—Purport thereof—King's Mode of Reply—The Reason why the King, &c. came in the Pinnace—The Boat promised to the King—The Natives paint the Vessel—Preparations for launching her—Message to the Captain from the King—His Desire—The Name of the new Vessel changed from the REALTY to OROOLONG—The King's Satisfaction—Blanchard determined to make known his Proposal to the King himself—His Wife communicated by the Captain—Received in a most gracious Manner—Raa Kook paints the Stern—An Attempt to launch the Oroolong—Ineffectual—Postponed—King's Promises to Blanchard—All assembled to see the Vessel launched—Their Success—Natives and English mutually delighted—Message from the King to Captain Wilson—Offers to make him a Ropack—Captain expresses much Happiness in being admitted a Chief—The Ceremony—Universal Joy—King's Address to the Captain—Captain congratulated—Natives delighted—King's Orders—His Proposal of sending his Son, Lee Boo, to England—Expatriates upon his good Qualities—The Captain's Reply, which gives apparent Satisfaction—Raa Kook seeks Permission to accompany the English—Is refused—Reasons—His Uneasiness—One of the Natives solicits the Captain to be taken in his Vessel—His Application reported to the King—Abba Thulle's absolute Denial, with the Reasons—English ready to depart—Mutual Presents—An Inscription nailed to a Board, and affixed to a Tree—King renews his Request for the Musquets—Takes notice of the Mistrust of the English—Effects of the Rebuke—Lee Boo's Arrival—Is introduced to the Captain—The Father's Speech—Capt. Wilson's Answer to Blanchard.

THE next pinnace daughter Erre chiefs. Mr. according to explained to her expressed great English, and which were seen in the pinnace Malay, that English accent was severely re after wards redressed him: "Wretch," "fed of two," "their world," "their depart," "deceit! have," "advising the," "English, lest," "thereby stop," "giving notice," "which they

The King and of this rebuke, with so much sorrow withdrew from wanted good—even the King's freshments. T among his chiefs messenger arrived islands about the departure to Abba Thulle was a who brought in messenger. T intended to sail tended to make which their la shores. The K of cord for those knots as there to leave Orool attendants, set count of a violent shore for shelter Mess. Wilson a ease and leading his friends would board her. It his daughter, c English. Upon situation, in the King that it w that boat a present The King sent gift, and desired sails were managed

The King bag and he and his set their people was at this time

Every thing launching the sat in view of among themselves that the King w diately attended that instead of have a Pelew v Oroolong, in it was built. Up cers and peop King's request, name of Orool seemed to give

THE next day being the 7th of November, the pinnace returned with the King, his favourite daughter Erre Bels, Raa Kook, and several of the chiefs. Mr. Sharp had read the captain's letter according to his directions to the King, which was explained to him by the interpreters. Abba Thulle expressed great satisfaction at the politeness of the English, and was highly delighted with the tools which were sent to him as a present by the captain in the pinnace. It was remarked however by the Malay, that the musquets were not sent by the English according to their promise; for which he was severely rebuked by Raa Kook; who (as it was afterwards represented to Surgeon Sharp) thus addressed him:

"Wretch, the English are not, like thee, possessed of two tongues; they have honourably kept their word, by sending thee tools, and notice of their departure; while thou, oh thou piece of deceit! have brought disgrace upon us all, by advising the King to send boiled yams to the English, left, in sending them raw, they should thereby slock themselves, and depart without giving notice and leaving behind those things which they had promised."

The King and all the Rupacks felt the full force of this rebuke, and Abba Thulle beheld the Malay with so much stern indignation, that he immediately withdrew from his presence. After this their wonted good-humour returned; and every one, even the King's attendants, had abundance of refreshments. The tools were distributed by the King among his chiefs. Mr. Sharp also reported, that a messenger arrived from one of the neighbouring islands about two in the morning previous to their departure to the King; on whose account Abba Thulle was awakened by one of his attendants, who brought in a lighted torch and introduced the messenger. This was to enquire when the English intended to sail, as some of the northern chiefs intended to make them presents of the best articles which their land produced, in addition to their stores. The King delivered this messenger a piece of cord for those chiefs, on which were tied as many knots as there were days before the English meant to leave Oroolong. The King, his daughter, and attendants, set out at first in canoes; but, on account of a violent gale, were obliged to make to shore for shelter. Raa Kook, who had accompanied Mess. Wilson and Sharp, was so delighted with the ease and steadiness of the pinnace, that he requested his friends would prevail upon the King to go on board her. It was by these means that Abba Thulle, his daughter, chief minister, &c. arrived with the English. Upon their admiring their comfortable situation, in the pinnace, the English informed the King that it was their captain's intention to make that boat a present to him, upon their departure. The King seemed very thankful for the intended gift, and desired his people to take notice how the sails were managed.

The King had brought with him several presents; and he and his brother, according to their promise, set their people about painting the new vessel, which was at this time preparing to be launched.

Every thing was ready the succeeding day for launching the new vessel. The King and his chiefs sat in view of her; and, after some conversation among themselves, a message came to the captain that the King wanted him. Captain Wilson immediately attended; when the King expressed a desire that instead of an English name the vessel should have a Pelew one, and he wished her to be called Oroolong, in remembrance of the island where she was built. Upon this the captain sent for his officers and people, and having communicated the King's request, it was universally approved of. The name of Oroolong was accordingly adopted, which seemed to give the King great satisfaction.

No. 7.

The captain was now secretly informed, by some of his people, that Blanchard, understanding his message had not been delivered, was resolved upon speaking to the King himself, and requesting his permission to remain at Pelew. Captain Wilson, seeing he was absolutely resolved, and that all entreaties to prevent him were in vain, assured him that his request should be immediately made known: upon which he came to the King, and told him, that in return for the hospitality which he and his subjects had shewn him, he would leave one of his men with him, to take care of the guns and other articles which he intended to present him with on their departure. This proposal appearing to the King as a fresh proof of their esteem, was received in a most gracious manner, and Blanchard, according to his ardent wish, introduced to his new friends.

Raa Kook, who was the most busy in painting the vessel, was directed by the King in decorating the stern, on each side of which he made two circles, one within another, in black and white, with some little zigzag ornaments hanging from them.

An attempt was made in the evening (Nov. 8th) to launch the vessel, but as they found it impossible to move her till the tide began to fall, they postponed their intention, with the hope of being able to discover and remove every obstruction by the next tide.

Blanchard appeared as much delighted with being allowed to remain at Pelew, as the King was in having him. Abba Thulle promised to make him a Rupack, and give him two wives, with a house and plantations; assuring him, at the same time, that he should always be with himself and his brothers.

The next day, the weather being very favourable, they began to try their work, and were happy to find that their preparations promised well. A message was dispatched to the King who came with all his attendants to see the vessel launched. The tide ebbed remarkably low the preceding night: about seven o'clock the next morning, in the midst of fears, hopes, and tremblings, she was got aloft. The English gave three huzzas; which were joined by the natives, who appeared equally interred; and by this their anxiety dissipated, in a great measure, all the suspicions of the English. The Oroolong was immediately hauled into a dock, that had been dug for her, and by breakfast-time she was safely moored. After breakfast they got up shears, and took in the masts, water-casks, six-pounders, &c. The remainder of what tools could be spared was presented to the King. In the afternoon, when the flood-tide came in, she was hauled into the basin in about five fathom water. In the night they got on board their provisions, stores, ammunition, &c. and early the next morning their anchors, cables, &c.

This day (Nov. 10th) Captain Wilson received a message from the King, requesting the pleasure of his company at the watering-place. He waited upon him according to invitation, and was informed that it was the King's intention to invest him with the order of the Bone, and make him in form a Rupack of the first distinction, before he left the island. Capt. Wilson declared himself fully sensible of the honour intended him, and expressed much happiness in being admitted a chief of Pelew. Upon this the ceremony commenced: the King and all the Rupacks sat down under some large trees, and the captain was placed at a distance. Raa Kook, who received the Bone, approached him, and presenting it from the King, desired to know which hand he most generally used; which the captain proving to be the right hand, by throwing a stone, the bone was applied to his left one, to see if it was large enough for his hand to slip through; but not answering, it was made wider. Notice being then

• T

given

given that it would now do, he was joined by the chief minister and the other Rupacks in the performance. Raa Kook made a string fast to each of the fingers of the captain's left hand, and then rubbing the hand with oil, the chief minister stood behind the captain and held him fast by the shoulders; the different strings were passed then through the bone by Raa Kook, who gave them to another Rupack: upon which they both endeavoured to draw his hand through. Every one was now silent except the King, who was occasionally hinting some means to expedite this operation. At last by Raa Kook's compressing the captain's hand as much as he could, it was fairly got through, which occasioned universal joy. The captain was then addressed by the King in the following manner:

"You are to rub that bone bright every day, to preserve it as a testimony of the rank in which it is held, and on every occasion you shall defend with the utmost valour this mark of dignity, which you must never suffer to be torn from your arm, but with the loss of life."

As soon as the ceremony was concluded, the captain was congratulated by the Rupacks as one of themselves, while the rest of the natives who assembled around the new chief, seemed highly delighted, calling him *Engles Rupack*.

Orders were now issued by the King that none of his own people but the chiefs should go on board the new vessel, for fear of incommoding the English: however, the inferior natives were permitted to paddle along-side of her, and view her from their canoes. Raa Kook and Arra Kooker went on board, while she was carried to the west side of the island, and moored in six fathom, adjoining the well of fresh water. There was some fish offered the captain in the vessel, but as there was no convenience at present for dressing it on board, he went to shore and partook of it with the king.

The King had some time ago intimated his intention of sending two of his people to England with the captain, as soon as the vessel was ready to sail. He had now been considering his promise, and was at last resolved upon committing to the care of Captain Wilson his second son Lee Boo; that he might improve himself in the English manners, and be able on his return home, to benefit his own country; the father expatiated much upon the good qualities of this youth, and was likewise joined by his brothers in commendation of him. The captain assured Abba Thulle, that he looked upon this proposition as a singular mark of his great confidence and esteem, and that the young prince should consequently be treated by him with the same tenderness and affection as if he was his own son. This reply of the captain's gave the King apparent satisfaction.

Raa Kook, it seems, had before this urged the King his brother to permit him to accompany his new friends to England, but this was refused by the King on account of his being the next heir, and the consequent inconvenience that must arise from his own death if he were absent. Raa Kook, though convinced by his brother of the impropriety of his request, was notwithstanding sorely disappointed: there was a visible gloom which clouded his countenance, that was before so gay and cheerful. He could not bear the thoughts of bidding his friends farewell; and saw with the utmost regret the preparations making for their departure, for now they were watering the vessel, bending the sails, finishing the fire-place, and in short, getting the vessel ready for sea.

A nephew of the King, son of that brother whose murder at Artingall was the occasion of the war which was now terminated, made application to Captain Wilson (Nov. 11) for leave to accompany him and his people to England. This young man was so attached to the English, that he was conti-

ually with them, and had assimilated himself to all their ways and manners. Captain Wilson, however, declined giving any positive answer, till the King was consulted, observing that Abba Thulle had already spoken to him of his son, Lee Boo, and another man. When the business was made known to the King, he seemed exceedingly displeas'd at his nephew's application: he represented him as having a roving disposition, and being unworthy of any one's patronage. The young man, still anxious to depart with the English, made personal application to the King; but Abba Thulle absolutely refused his permission, in words to the following tendency:—"You are a worthless man; undutiful, and neglectful of your mother; you have for wives good and deserving women; and yet to these, as well as to all your relations, you behave ill; for which you have been justly exposed throughout the whole island. You are ashamed of your conduct, and that is the reason you would fly from your family; but instead of having my consent, on the contrary I request the captain not to countenance you: you shall stay at home, and may the sense of shame amend your life."

It was intended by the English to depart from the island a day before the time they reported, as it was their wish to avoid the multitudes of strangers who were expected; the captain fearing that his men might be incommoded by the number of their canoes, and their passage over the reef be consequently attended with danger. The King was therefore informed, that the weather and wind went being favourable, and the vessel ready, he intended to sail the next day, which was the 12th. Abba Thulle was exceedingly concerned at this information, as all the chief Rupacks had been informed (by the knots on the cord before mentioned) that it was to be the 13th; and consequently the English would lose the presents that were intended for them. Capt. Wilson, however, observed, that they had already a competency of stores, and as the wind was favourable, he begged his permission to depart the next day. Though the King was very much concerned, he endeavoured to overcome it, and insisted, as it was the last day, that the captain and his people would dine with him on shore; which invitation they cheerfully accepted. After dinner, a Newfoundland dog, which the English brought with them, was made a present to Arra Kooker, as he frequently expressed a great desire to have it. Mr. Barker also drew a plan for a new vessel, at the desire of this chief, who was determin'd with the English tools to build one, if possible, where the Oroolung was formed. Captain Wilson was now obliged to go on board, and reprimand two of his men, who had a quarrel. Upon informing the King the reason of his departure, Abba Thulle observed, "that there were bad men in every country."

The following Inscription was cut upon a plate of copper, and having been nailed to a thick board, was affixed to a tree which was near the place where the Oroolung was built:

The Honourable English East-India Company
Ship the *AWTSLÖZ*,
HENRY WILSON, Commander,
Was lost upon the reef north of this island,
In the night, between the 9th and 10th of August:
Who here built a vessel,
And sailed from hence the 12th of Nov. 1783.

When the King was made acquainted with the meaning of this inscription, he assured the captain that it should always abide, as a memorial of the English having been there; and if by any accident it should happen to fall, he further promised that it should be taken care of and preserved at Pelew. After this he explained the nature of it to his

subjects, and paid it.

The King's guns, remains were gone, their hostility to his people their promises were not given up to the captain's should be greatly perceived the trust him with these suspicions? them? I courted you? Had I been done it in my power to exercise after all you

Such was the that every one accordingly convince the his request messenger was sent and the King cutlasses, and proportionable captain also made piece; the effected witnessed upon delighted there

Lee Boo, the evening, brought Qui Bill. The father; then to humour and a tenance, that captivated with loaded with rolarly a basket first of the king and which was tives: they were The captain fully reserved to treat him of Lee Boo sat was continually voyage. It was him instruction England, with he seized an or and delivered following purpor

"I know
"England the
"course will
"admiration
"but I shall d
"derate that
"notwithstand
"information
"trial to consti
"fishman! A
"volved that
"sidered the si
"I know that
"unlike his o
"posed to all
"change. He
"us are unkno
"maladies, per
"all die, wher
"our inevitable

subjects, and commanded every attention to be paid it.

The King now renewed his request respecting the guns, remarking as before, that when the English were gone, his enemies might malevolently renew their hostilities. The captain hastened immediately to his people, to urge the propriety of fulfilling their promise, immediately; but their suspicions were not quite eradicated, and they were unwilling to give up the arms till the last moment. Upon the captain's informing the King that his request should be granted the next day, Abba Thulle plainly perceived the reason of this hesitation, and calmly asked the captain if the English were afraid to trust him with five guns? "Why (added he) are these suspicions? Have I given any cause for them? I was never afraid of you, but eagerly courted your friendship, and why afraid of me? Had I been inclined to harm you, I would have done it long ago, for you have been at all times in my power; however that power I have hitherto exercised in your service, and is it possible that after all you cannot confide in me even now?"

Such was the keanness, the justice of this rebuke, that every one of them felt its force. The English accordingly desired the captain, that, in order to convince the King they could have no suspicions, his request might be immediately granted. A messenger was sent on board therefore for the articles; and the King was presented with five musquets, five cutlasses, and about a barrel of gunpowder, with a proportionable quantity of flints and balls. The captain also made him a present of his own fowling-piece; the effect of which having been frequently witnessed upon the birds, &c. the King was highly delighted therewith.

Lee Boo, the King's second son, arrived in the evening, brought from Pelew by his elder brother, Qui Bill. He was introduced to the captain by his father; then to the officers. Such was the good-humour and affability painted in this youth's countenance, that every one present was immediately captivated with his appearance. His canoe was loaded with refreshments for the English; particularly a basket of a fruit resembling an apple, the first of the kind which the English had seen there, and which was in great estimation among the natives: they were at this time just coming in season. The captain gave one to each of his men, and carefully reserved the remainder for his young friend, to treat him on his passage.

Lee Boo sat for some time near his father, who was continually discoursing with him about his voyage. It was understood that the King was giving him instructions respecting his future conduct in England, with true parental affection. After this he seized an opportunity of addressing the captain, and delivered his sentiments in words to the following purport:

"I know when my son Lee Boo arrives in England there will be so much to see, and he of course will be so very eager, that novelty and admiration may doubtless incline him to ramble; but I shall depend upon your attention to moderate that eagerness, and restrain his passions; notwithstanding I wish him to derive all the information that is necessary, nay all that is essential to constitute him one of yourselves, an Englishman! As to our parting, I have already resolved that in my mind: I have frequently considered the subject, and am prepared for the worst. I know that he must enter distant countries very unlike his own, and consequently must be exposed to all those dangers which result from change. He may meet with diseases which to us are unknown, and being unprepared for those maladies, peradventure he may die; but we must all die, whether in England or Pelew.—Death is our inevitable doom; and what signifies it whether

"my son dies here or there? The humanity which you have displayed upon every occasion among us, is sufficient for me to confide in: I know that when Lee Boo is sick, you will administer all the relief in your power; and if he should die, for death is the fate of all, which the most skilful cannot prevent, never let it deter either you, your brother, your son, your chiefs, or even the meanest of your countrymen, from visiting these islands upon any future occasion. The return of any of my friends would give me the greatest satisfaction. I shall rejoice to see you or yours again, or any of your people. You should always meet a hearty reception."

The King's sublimity and eloquence on this occasion made no little impression on Capt. Wilson's mind, who repeated his former declaration, that as he would henceforth look upon Lee Boo as his own son, he should be consequently treated with every parental attention: he would be a father to the youth, having experienced so much kindness and liberality from the youth's own father!

On the approach of night, Capt. Wilson took an opportunity of conversing awhile with Blanchard, advising him by all means to render himself as useful as possible to the natives, and to conduct himself with strict propriety. He conjured him never to forget in this situation that he was a christian, but to continue those acts of devotion which his religion requires: he was also conjured never to forget the sabbath, but strictly to adhere to all the precepts of christianity. The captain further remarked, that as he might be able to recover some other articles from the wreck, he should endeavour to benefit the natives by working iron, &c. and in taking care of the arms and ammunition he left them, which would be of the greatest consequence to them. He likewise exhorted him to be always covered, as he would thereby support a superiority of character among the natives, who in consequence thereof could not forget he was an Englishman. On this account the captain furnished him with as much clothes as he could conveniently spare, and recommended to him when they were worn out to make himself trowsers of mats, which he might easily get at Pelew, and be thus enabled to preserve that decency to which he was accustomed.

The captain now enquired, if he thought of any thing which he would wish to have: Blanchard, upon this, mentioned one of the ship's compasses, and requested to have the masts, sails, oars, and the rest of the things belonging to the pinnace, as that boat was to be left. These were promised to be granted, as soon as they had towed the vessel over the reef.

Blanchard, upon leaving the captain, returned to the natives, who were very industrious, especially the Rupacks that were present, in rendering the place as agreeable and commodious to him as possible. Nor were their endeavours lost upon their young countryman, who already appeared perfectly satisfied with their manners, and reconciled to his new situation.

The English being so full of their departure, did not enjoy much repose this night; every man was picturing in his mind the fond idea of being again united with his dear relations and friends in his own country; and the natural apprehensions resulting from the dread of a disappointment rendered their agitation of mind inexpressible. The natives were equally restless; the thoughts of parting so suddenly with their friends occasioned much uneasiness. The King was contemplating on the departure of his son; and the chiefs who were with him on the great loss they would sustain in the English. In short, it was a night of mutual perturbation, the English still doubting the practicability of their return, and the natives regretting most sincerely their departure.

CHAPTER VIII.

The Morning of Departure—The Signal for Sailing—The Generosity of the King and Natives—The Vessel loaded—The Captain goes on board—The English return Thanks—Account of the Servant intended for Lee Boo—Doubts of getting the Oroolong over the Reef—The Vessel eased—A Canoe given to the English—Lee Boo under Mr. Sharp's Care—His Attachment to him—They proceed towards the Reef—Natives too kind—Blanchard's Attention to his Countrymen—His Indifference of parting with them—Attention of the Natives in guiding the Vessel—King blesses Lee Boo, &c.—Embraces the Captain—Takes Leave in a cordial Manner—His Departure—Raa Kook's Concern—Oroolong clears the Reef—Affecting parting of the English and Natives—Weather—Wind—The Captain's and Surgeon's Attention to Lee Boo—His Notions of Delicacy—Is Sea-sick—Considerations upon restoring their Provisions—Change of Weather—Bashee Islands discovered—In the China Sea—Part of Formosa seen—Land ditto—Soundings got—Anchorage—Lee Boo's Remarks—Much delighted—Vessel conducted between the Islands of Macao—An English Jack hoisted—Kindness of the Officers of the Portuguese Vessels—Mr. McIntyre's Humanity and Attention—Agreeable Information—A Portuguese Gentleman introduces Lee Boo to his Family—The Prince's Surprise, Benevolence, &c.—His Admiration of a Heufé—Affable and good natured among the Ladies—Astonished at seeing himself in a Looking Glass—His Behaviour in consequence thereof—The English accommodated—Anecdotes of Lee Boo—Letters to the Captain—Departure of Capt. Wilson, Lee Boo, &c. in the Walpole—The Oroolong disposed of—Adventures at Canton—Mr. Sharp departs in the LaSelles—Others in the York—Capt. Wilson and Lee Boo in the Morfe—Adventures at St. Helena—Arrival of the LaSelles—They reach the Isle of Wight—Arrival at Portsmouth—Domestic Occurrences—Anecdotes and Death of Lee Boo.

UPON the morning of departure, Wednesday, Nov. 12th, the English jack was hoisted at the mast-head of the vessel, and one of the signals fired as a signal for sailing. Abba Thulle, upon understanding this, ordered the canoes to take on board sweetmeats, cocoa-nuts, &c. while several others lay along-side the Oroolong, with presents from the different natives; so that had the northern Rupacks added their intended gifts, the ship would never have contained them. When the vessel was loaded, the captain went on board; the King having promised to follow him soon, with Lee Boo, in his canoe. Capt. Wilson took this favourable opportunity of making all his seamen kneel down, and return thanks to the Almighty, for having thus granted the means of deliverance, and supporting their spirits during their afflictions; also imploring his further grace to prosper their future endeavours. The King, his son, and chiefs, arrived while the captain and his people were praying; but till they had finished, they remained near the entrance of the house, and kept profound silence, being sensible of what the English were about.—It is necessary here to observe, that one of the conditions for establishing peace at Pelew, was for the King of that island to surrender two Malays whom he had to the King of Pelew: this was no doubt urged by the Malay who was Abba Thulle's interpreter. The condition being granted, one of them (whose name was Boyam) was now appointed to attend Lee Boo on his voyage, and be to him a servant. Boyam accordingly accompanied his young master to the vessel.

As the Oroolong was remarkably loaded with sea stores, it was doubted whether in this her situation she was capable of getting over the reef. After considering some short time upon this, it was deemed expedient to ease her: accordingly they landed the two six-pounders, and left behind the jolly-boat, which they deemed of little use to them, as she wanted to be repaired. The King being informed of this, dispatched his eldest son, Qui Bill, on shore, to provide the English with a canoe of a proper size, with which he shortly returned.

The King put his son Lee Boo under Mr. Sharp's care, till the Oroolong had reached China. The young man immediately became attached to the surgeon, and constantly kept close to his side.

They now proceeded towards the reef, while the multitude of canoes which were assembled on both sides was incredible: the natives therein continually imploring the English to take something from them in remembrance; and these supplications were made in such a piteous manner, that though there was a superfluity already, the English could not resist their importunities.

Blanchard, who had got into the pinnace to take the vessel in tow, was remarkably kind and attentive

to his countrymen; he gave them all the assistance in his power to the very last, and frequently wished them a prosperous voyage, yet he appeared quite indifferent of parting with them, nor testified the least regret, though he was leaving his friends for ever!

The pinnace was preceded by several canoes in order to point out the safest track for the vessel; while others, according to the directions of the King, were stationed at the reef to mark the deepest water. The King accompanied them almost to the reef, then made a signal for a canoe to come along-side; blessing Lee Boo, he wished him happy and prosperous: the youth received his father's blessing with grateful tears. Then when Captain Wilson had finished his directions to the seamen, the King embraced him with the greatest tenderness, shook all the officers by the hand, and took his leave in the following noble and cordial manner:

"I feel myself happy because you are going home, I feel myself happy because you are happy, and I feel myself unhappy because you are going away."

This being succeeded with repeated assurances of his hearty wishes for a successful voyage, he departed in his canoe attended with his chiefs; but Raa Kook with his attendants would see the English clear of danger to the outside of the reef. Happily the Oroolong cleared it without the least difficulty: they then took leave of Raa Kook, who, with all the rest of the natives, appeared extremely affected at their departure. The canoes having now surrounded that of their King's, the people therein gazed at the Oroolong as long as they could with aching eyes, while the English were so overcome with their generosity and attention, as to be scarcely able to give them three cheers.

They now hauled up along the back of the reef N. W. by N. Though there were some light squalls and rain, still the weather was tolerable both the 13th and 14th; the wind variable from E. to S. E. with which they steered to the northward.

The first night Lee Boo ordered Boyam to bring his mat upon deck, but he was presently provided by Mr. Sharp with a warmer covering; he was very much surprised the next morning at seeing no land. The captain now presented him with a shirt, waistcoat, and a pair of trowsers, which he always made use of when he understood that nakedness was offensive to the English, and at last he came to have such notions of delicacy, that he would never dress or undress in any one's presence: he was so cleanly that he washed himself several times in one day. At first he was very sea-sick: Captain Wilson gave him one of the apples, which he looked upon as a great indulgence, this fruit being so rare. His sickness however soon abating, he became quite affable and happy.

On the 15th
vourable: the
the weather f
the N. E. and
make more w
and stores: w
vered that th
floor-timbers
away, in orde
but upon fur
intention, for
vessel consequ
changed, atte
they kept und
auce of land.
settled from t
squalls; the w
southward, an
&c. On the 16
and the next d
derate. On th
ward, and dis
N. W. about
having chang
through a pass
noon in the C
the island For
still fair weath
northward, w
the afternoon
been so long a
felt the cold n
next evening t
one o'clock the
wind blowing
fathom, soft g
few land, bear
flood in amon
pany; and at
pany with som
10 fathom wat
Lee Boo, du
marks, and wa
of the islands
delighted at th
boats which w
The vessel t
(Nov. 30) betw
whom the capt
in sight of it,
mast-head; wh
guesse vessels (w
perceived, they
meet the Engl
as they connect
it was part of
One of the offic
boat to take th
The governor a
and having sent
him by the offic
come to the port
informed, that
cargoes were all
was at present
The captain imm
whose friendsh
who on this occ
greatest humani
sent on board th
to the officers an
that was require
Capt. Wilson
cargoes a full acc
situation. He v
that peace was e
were at present a
at Whampos; t
vessels were read
No. 7.

On the 15th the weather, though cloudy, was favourable: there was a swell from the N. E. As the weather still continued fair, and the wind from the N. E. and E. they endeavoured on the 17th to make more room by re-stowing their provision and stores: while they were doing this they discovered that the leak was under the end of one of the floor-timbers. At first it was deemed best to cut it away, in order to come at and stop it from within: but upon further consideration they declined the intention, for fear a plank might start, and the vessel consequently sink. At night the weather changed, attended with violent squalls and rain: they kept under an easy sail. There was no appearance of land. The weather continued very unsettled from the 18th to the 24th: still rain and squalls; the wind varying at times to the eastward, southward, and S. W. with heavy clouds, lightning, &c. On the 23d the wind shifted to the N. E. and the next day the weather became fair and moderate. On the 25th they haved up to the northward, and discovered Bachee islands, bearing W. N. W. about three leagues distance. The wind having changed to the northward, they bore away through a passage between the islands, and were at noon in the China sea. The next morning part of the island Formosa was seen. On the 27th it was still fair weather, but there was a swell from the northward, with which they were much wet: in the afternoon there was a fresh gale, and having been so long accustomed to hot weather, they now felt the cold more sensibly. At eight o'clock the next evening they saw land, bearing N. by W. At one o'clock the next morning, being the 29th, the wind blowing briskly, they got soundings at 25 fathom, soft ground, and about seven o'clock they saw land, bearing from N. by E. to W. S. W. They stood in amongst the islands, steering to the westward; and at six o'clock in the evening, in company with some Chinese vessels, they anchored in 10 fathom water.

Lee Boo, during this passage, made several remarks, and was very eager in learning the names of the islands they had passed. He was now quite delighted at the sight of land, and the multitude of boats which were on the water.

The vessel was conducted the next morning (Nov. 30) between the islands to Macao, by a pilot whom the captain procured. As soon as they were in sight of it, they hoisted an English jack at the main-head; which when the officers of the Portuguese vessels (who were at anchorage in the Typa) perceived, they immediately sent out their boats to meet the English with refreshments and assistants, as they conjectured, from the size of the vessel, that it was part of the crew who had been wrecked. One of the officers was so polite, as to wait with his boat to take the captain on shore to the governor. The governor at this time was particularly engaged, and having sent an apology to the captain, acquainted him by the officer on duty that he was heartily welcome to the port of Macao. The captain was now informed, that the honourable Company's supracargoes were all up at Canton, and no Englishman was at present in Macao, except Mr. McIntyre. The captain immediately repaired to that gentleman, whose friendship he had before experienced, and who on this occasion behaved to him with the greatest humanity and attention. Provisions were sent on board the vessel, by Mr. McIntyre's orders, to the officers and seamen, with every other necessary that was required.

Capt. Wilson now wrote to the Company's supracargoes a full account of the wreck, his arrival and situation. He was very happy in being informed that peace was established in Europe; and that there were at present a number of English and other vessels at Whampoa; also that some of the Company's vessels were ready to sail.

No. 7.

Mr. McIntyre and a friend of his, who was a Portuguese gentleman, accompanied the captain on board the Oroolong, bringing with them a sufficiency of provisions ready dressed. They returned in the evening, with Lee Boo, and all the officers except the chief mate, whose stay in the vessel was deemed necessary. The Portuguese gentleman was highly delighted with the Pelew prince, and introduced him to his family, calling him the New Man, Lee Boo, since their anchorage, seemed astonished at every thing he saw: he was surpris'd at the magnitude of the Portuguese vessels; he also displayed the natural benevolence of his heart, in bestowing the best things he had to the poor Tartar women, who surrounded every vessel upon its arrival to beg. The Prince's astonishment was much more encreas'd when he entered this gentleman's house: he was silent with admiration; the walls, ceiling, decorations of the room, &c. surpassed his comprehension. On his introduction to the ladies, he was quite affable and good-natured, and behaved with the greatest ease and politeness. The English, as soon as they had landed, congratulated each other upon their happy escape: the Prince seemed to participate of their joy, by expressing the same delight; in short, his behaviour rendered him agreeable to every one, and Mr. McIntyre took great pains in shewing him every thing he thought could please him. There was a large looking-glass, in particular, which caught his attention; this having reflected almost his whole person, the Prince was astonished at seeing himself: he laughed, retired, then returned, and was in short quite lost in wonder: at last, supposing there was some one behind the glass, he slyly endeavoured to detect him; but observing it was fastened quite close to the wall, he stood confounded: upon this a small one was brought in; he saw his face in this; but seeing no one behind it, could not conceive the meaning. Thus the evening was passed in mutual surpris'e and entertainment.

As Capt. Wilson was unwilling to encroach upon the hospitality of Mr. McIntyre, he was desirous of providing a temporary residence for his people elsewhere, which by Mr. McIntyre's assistance was at last accomplished, and the crew of the Oroolong, except one officer and a few men who remained on board, were accommodated with a house (and all suitable necessaries) which belonged to an English gentleman then at Canton. The men who were left on board were alternately relieved.

Lee Boo's curiosity was fully gratified the succeeding day: he was astonished at every thing he saw, especially the horses, being unaccustomed (as before observed) to quadrupeds; but when he saw some gentlemen who were riding, his surpris'e was inexpressible. It was no difficult matter to prevail upon him to get on a horse's back, and having rode a few paces, he was so delighted with the animal, that he requested one of them might be sent to his uncle Ras Kook.

Capt. Wilson in a short time received letters from the supra-cargoes, wherein he was advised to dispose of the Oroolong and stores, as it was impossible for her to come up to Whampoa, according to the rules of the Chinese government, without duty and port charges being paid, which were considerable. Mr. McIntyre then undertook to dispose of the Oroolong, while Captain Churchill, of the Walpole, accommodated Capt. Wilson and his people, (except Mr. Benger and half a dozen others, whose stay at Macao was thought necessary till the vessel was sold) with a passage up to Whampoa. A short time after the captain's departure, the Oroolong was put up to auction, and sold for 700 Spanish dollars. Captain Wilson, &c. were about six days in Canton before Mr. Benger and his party came up. They arrived in one of the country boats, accompanied by Mr. McIntyre, and were most cordially received by Lee Boo, who having perceived the boat from a window,

U

sprang

spring from his chair without aprissing any one of the reason, and with uncommon expedition ran to the river to welcome his friends.

Lee Boo's curiosity was highly gratified during his stay at Canton. As every day afforded some novel attraction, his admiration of the English still increased. Mr. Sharp, who had been hitherto his guardian, now resigned his charge to Captain Wilson, and came home in the *Lafcelles* under Captain Wakefield. Captain Wilson and Lee Boo embarked in the *Morse* under Captain Joseph Elliot, while the rest of the people went on board in different vessels, but the majority of them embarked in the *York* under Captain Blanchard.

Captain Elliot was exceedingly attentive to Lee Boo during the voyage, which the prince returned with much grateful courtesy. In order to engrave upon his memory every thing that was told him, he would make some knots upon a cord, which knots he would be continually referring to, when desirous of aiding his recollection, and as he frequently recurred to this cord, it used to be wittily observed by the officers of the *Morse*, that he was reading his journal.

As soon as they arrived at St. Helena, Lee Boo was exceedingly pleased with the soldiers and cannon on the fortifications. He rode on horseback into the country according to his own request, during which he fat well, and though he galloped, betrayed not the least fear of falling, but on the contrary seemed highly delighted with the exercise. During their stay at *Morse*, Surgeon Sharp arrived in the *Lafcelles*, and was received in the most cordial manner by Lee Boo, who jumped from a window, as before, to welcome him. In approaching the British Channel he was astonished at the number of vessels he met. Having arrived at the Isle of Wight, Captain Wilson and his party quitted the *Morse*, and coming between the Needles in a boat, landed at Portsmouth July 14, 1784.

Though domestic occurrences are quite foreign to our design, yet this relation would undoubtedly be imperfect were we not to add some remarks on Lee Boo, while in England.

This prince was not only pleased with every thing he saw, but rendered himself pleasing to every individual he met. He was brought to the captain's house in Rotherhithe by Mr. M. Wilson in a coach. This machine and its utility struck him very forcibly: he called it a little house drawn with horses. He was quite delighted with his four-post bed, and said the English had houses for every thing. "All fine country—fine street—fine coach—and house upon house up to sky." The captain's family were particularly partial to him, and he in return was equally affectionate to them. His adopted father he always called captain, but to Mrs. Wilson he gave the tender appellation of mother. In company he was both polite and affable: indeed he made it his study to render himself agreeable every where. He was generous, mild, and compassionate, his charity was however guided by discretion: the aged he always relieved, but the young beggar he rebuked for not working.

His servant Boyam having proved to be a worthless dishonest man, was sent to Sumatra, while Thomas Rose supplied his place. Lee Boo was very happy with this exchange, as he was disgusted with

Boyam. The captain's son and the prince always lived like brothers, and one day there being a difference between the father and son, Lee Boo was so extremely affected, that he could not be reconciled till he had joined their hands.

The prince was very fond of tea, but had an aversion to coffee; however, he proposed drinking it, if it was Captain Wilson's pleasure. Having once seen a man intoxicated, he was very much concerned for his sickness, but when acquainted with the cause, was ever after an enemy to liquor. He always appeared uneasy when his friends were drinking, and if offered any himself, remarked that it was not fit for gentlemen.

Captain Wilson was afraid to introduce him to any public entertainments till he was inoculated, and this operation was postponed till the prince should be better acquainted with the English language, that he might be the less alarmed at this offensive disorder. Unfortunately he was seized with the small-pox while unprepared, and notwithstanding every attention was paid him, his dissolution became inevitable. While on the bed of death, he expressed the most unfeigned regard for Captain Wilson and his family, and having taken Surgeon Sharp by the hand, thus cordially expressed himself, "Good friend, when you go to Pelew tell Abba Thulle that Lee Boo take much drink to make small-pox go away, but he die; that the captain and mother very kind; all English very good men, am much concerned I could not speak to the King, the number of fine things the English have got." He died universally lamented; and his death being made known to the *India-House*, Captain Wilson received orders that his funeral should be as decent and respectable as possible. He was buried at Rotherhithe church-yard, and the following inscription was soon after erected over his grave by order of the *India Company*.

"To the Memory

Of Prince LEE BOO,

A native of the PELEW or PALOS Islands, and Son to ABBA THULLE, Ruppak or King of the

Island COOROOKAA,

Who departed this life on the 27th of Dec. 1784,

Aged 20 Years.

This Stone is inscribed

By the Honourable UNITED EAST-INDIA COMPANY

As a Testimony of Esteem,

For the humane and kind treatment afforded by HIS FATHER to the Crew of their Ship the

ANTLEOS, Captain WILSON.

Which was wrecked off that Island in the Night of the 9th of August, 1783.

Stop reader stop, let NATURE claim a tear,
A Prince of mine, LEE BOO, lies buried here!"

Having now given an accurate Account of Wilson's interesting adventures at Pelew, which it is presumed will be found more satisfactory and correct than all the voluminous Relations hitherto published; the Reader shall next be presented with the very valuable Voyages of Parilock and Dinno, including all the consequent Adventures, Discoveries, &c. while the same exactness and attention which have so evidently marked the former Numbers, shall be carefully continued throughout this much-admired Undertaking.

ways
diffe-
as fo
sciled
d an
king
aving
much
nted
quor.
were
that

m to
ated,
rince
lan-
is of-
with
and-
ution
h, he
ptain
geon
him-
y tell
nk to
t the
very
peak
Eng-
nted!
ouse,
neral
He
d the
over

l Son
784,
PANY
d by
e
at of

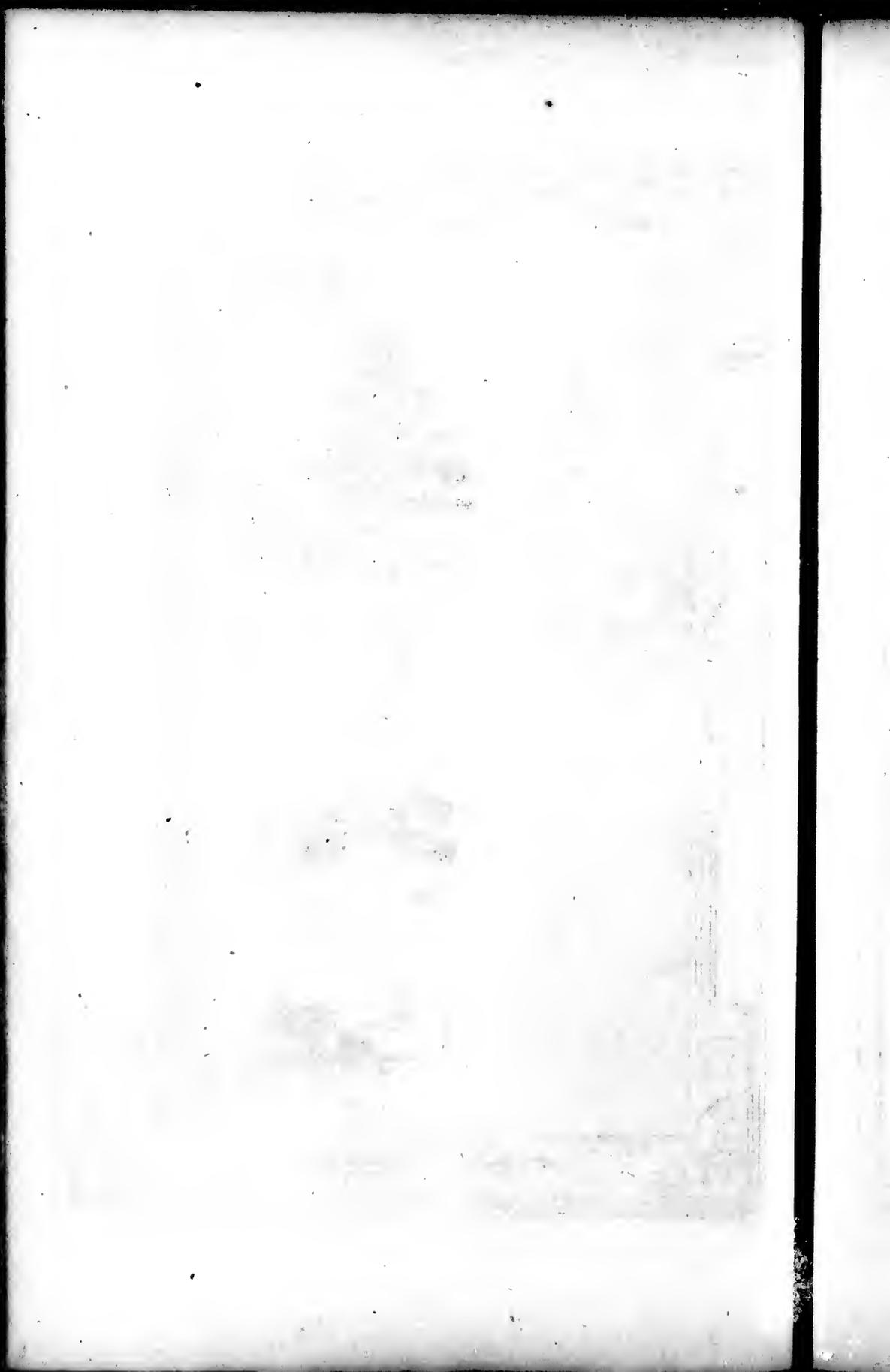
Wil-
pre-
than
the
nable
sefe-
same
arked
inued

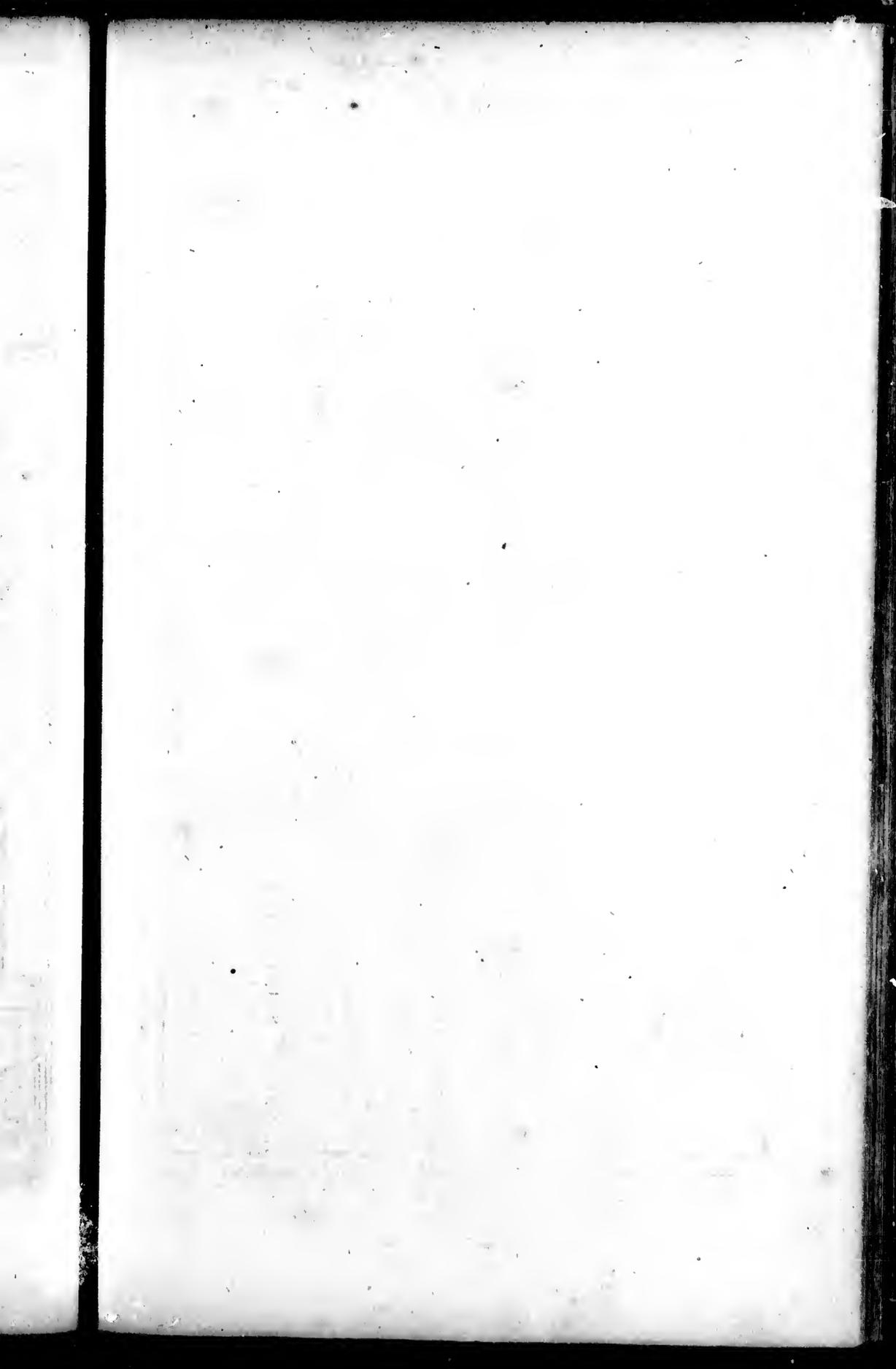
EW,

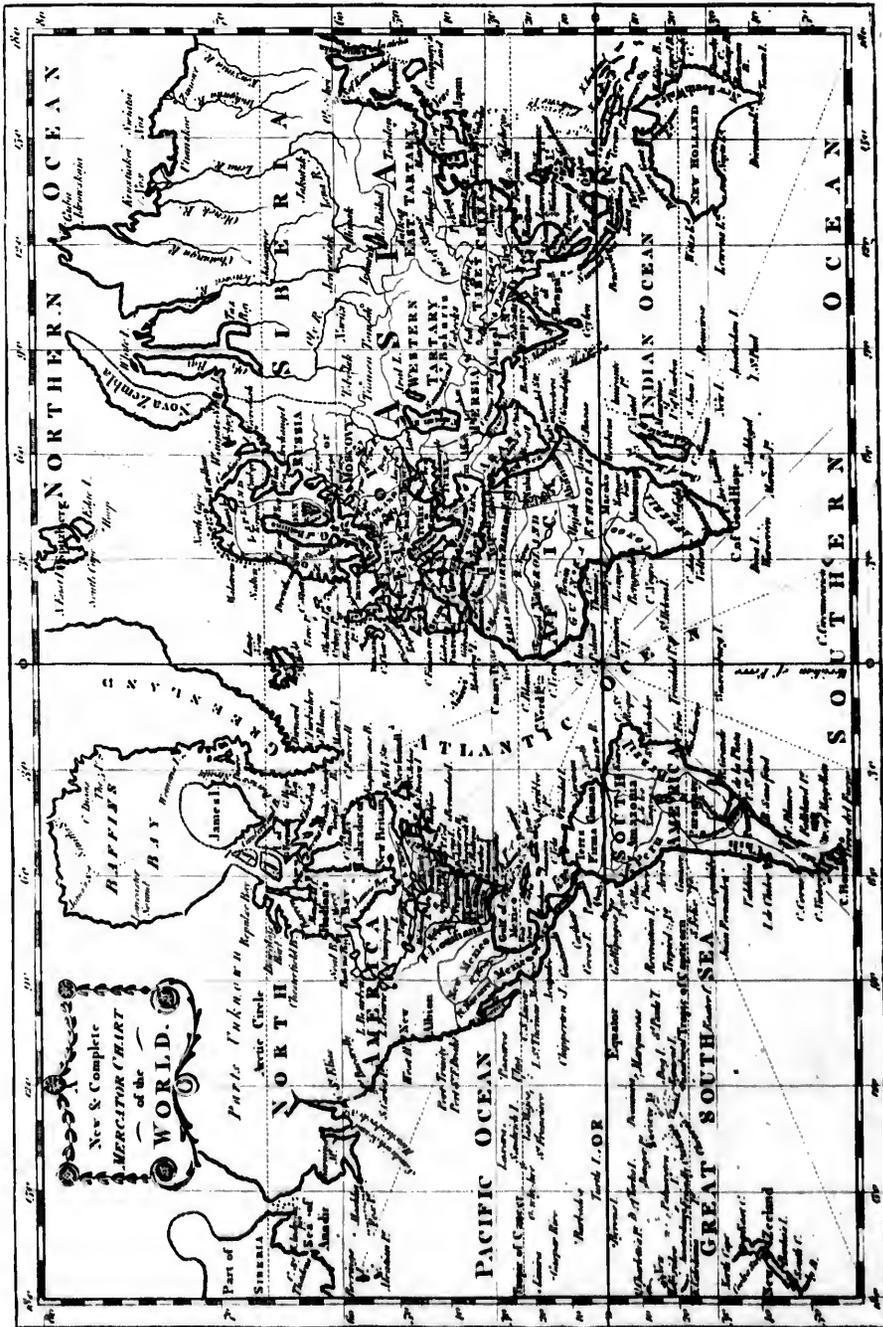


*A View of the Town and Island of S^t. HELENA, in the Atlantic Ocean,
belonging to the English East India Company.*

Published by the Messrs. Colnaghi, 15, Pall Mall, London.







A V

KI

U

The

Including al

Capt. POR

Being an En

inct with

from the

hitherto P

Which, with

with a Variet

THE p

Voyage

of com

nerally guided

icious view of

ever, are bene

Spanish mode

and incurring

of Englishmen

conciliate thei

The severa

under the pat

late encourage

ral, and every

tainly rejoice

which they ha

improvement

During Cap

Ocean, besides

it was produc

material disco

ment to our

lurs of a very

America. He

in the year 1

then which it

obvious that

such a scheme,

as well as pat

was some tim

capable of the

of gentlemen

rich with beco

filled of Richa

of respectabili

A NEW, COMPLETE, AND GENUINE HISTORY OF A Voyage ROUND the WORLD,

IN THE KING GEORGE and QUEEN CHARLOTTE;

UNDER THE COMMAND OF Captains PORTLOCK and DIXON.

Undertaken and Performed in 1785, 1786, 1787, and 1788.

WITH FULL AND CIRCUMSTANTIAL ACCOUNTS OF

The North West COAST of AMERICA;

Including all the ADVENTURES, DISCOVERIES, INFORMATION, &c. contained in the JOURNALS and COMMUNICATIONS of

Capt. PORTLOCK, Surgeon HOGGAN, Capt. DIXON, Surgeon LAUDER, and several of the other OFFICERS and GENTLEMEN.

Being an Entire New HISTORY of all those Interesting OCCURRENCES, EMOLUMENTS, &c. met with and acquired by the King George's Sound Company, in carrying on a FUR TRADE from the WESTERN COAST of AMERICA to CHINA, more Accurate and Full than any hitherto Published.

Which, with the several other VOYAGES and TRAVELS to be included in this Collection, will be Embellished with a Variety of Elegant COPPER-PLATES, Drawn upon the Spot, and Engraved by Eminent Artists.

INTRODUCTION.

THE principal motive for the following Voyage Round the World was the extension of commerce. Adventurers before were generally guided by a thirst after glory; or a rapacious view of acquiring wealth: these views, however, are beneath a British nation. We despise the Spanish mode of exciting the resentment of natives, and incurring their displeasure; it being the wish of Englishmen to gain the affection of strangers, and conciliate their esteem.

The several voyages which have been undertaken under the patronage of Government, have been of late encouraged for the benefit of mankind in general, and every well-wisher to his country must certainly rejoice when he contemplates the success, with which they have been attended; and the consequent improvement of navigation.

During Capt. Cook's last voyage to the Pacific Ocean, besides many valuable advantages of which it was productive, it was attended with one very material discovery, that promised no little emolument to our kingdom: this was the trading for furs of a very valuable kind on the N. W. coast of America. However, the discovery which was made in the year 1780 did not meet with that attention then which it so highly merited; for though it was obvious that immense wealth might be acquired by such a scheme, yet as it required spirit and activity, as well as patience and perseverance, of course it was some time before any were found who were capable of the undertaking. In May 1785 a society of gentlemen resolved upon accomplishing the business with becoming resolution. This society consisted of Richard Cadman Ritches, and several traders of respectability, who entered into a commercial

partnership, under the title of King George's Sound Company, for carrying on a fur-trade from the western coast of America to China. For the execution of this, a licence was obtained from the South-Sea Company, (who possess an exclusive privilege of trading in the Northern Pacific Ocean): at the same time another of a similar tendency from the East-India Company, who at the same time engaged to give them a freight of teas from Canton. Thus enjoying the sole right of carrying on this traffic to its utmost extent, they immediately purchased two vessels, one a ship of 320 tons, and the other a sloop of 200 ditto; these being the size and burthen which the experienced Capt. Cook recommended, as the most proper for distant employments. They were immediately put into dock, and fitted out with all possible expedition, in order to undertake this highly necessary voyage to the N. W. coast of America.

The proprietors appointed Nathaniel Portlock captain of the larger vessel, and George Dixon of the smaller: these gentlemen having attended Captain Cook in his last voyage into the Pacific Ocean, and consequently deemed the most competent for the present undertaking. There were several other officers, of well-known experience and abilities, that were to assist and facilitate this enterprise; the novelty of which had already attracted and procured the patronage of several persons, both of respectability and knowledge. The larger vessel was called by the Secretary of the Treasury the King George; and the smaller was named the Queen Charlotte, by the President of the Royal Society. The sons of several gentlemen of eminence were put under the care of those respective captains, for the sake of being initiated in navigation, and instructed in a sea-faring life;

life; in short the undertaking met with such universal approbation, that it received the hearty good wishes of several noble personages, particularly the Right Hon. Lord Mulgrave, Sir Joseph Banks, Mr. Rose, &c. These encouragements so stimulated the proprietors to prosecute their laudable undertaking with due spirit and vigour, that nothing was left untried or unattempted, that promised the least forwardness to the business. It was intended that

whatever furs might be procured in their traffic on the American coast should be disposed of in China, subject to the immediate controul of the East-India Company's supra-cargoes; and on account of this consignment, it was further intended that both vessels should be freighted home on the Company's account. Having thus far introduced the reader to the chief objects of this voyage, we shall now proceed in our accurate and faithful account of it.

BOOK I.

CHAPTER I.

Stores and various Antiforbatics laid in—They proceed down the River—Anchorage—Articles of Agreement read—Men refuse to sign—Reason—Capt. Portlock's powerful Arguments—They consent—Two of the Crew discharged—Anchorage in Margate Roads—In the Deal—Under Dungeness—Wonderful Escape of a young Gentleman—Arrival at Spithead—Spare Anchors, &c. purchased—Anchor in St. Helen's—The Caskets in view—Becalmed, and drifted within a Mile of them—Anchors unavailing—Tide turned—Danger over—Anchored in Guernsey Road—Spirits, &c. provided—Seven Isles seen—Something seen on the Water—Brought on board—Explanation thereof—Abreast of Funchal Bay—Meet with the Grampus—One of the Crew discharged—Two of the Canary Islands—Carpenters employed in caulking—Island Bonavista—Anchorage in Port Praya Bay—The Captain Moor haughty—Becomes civil—Obliging Behaviour of the People—Live Stock, &c. purchased—Price of Bullocks—Politeness of a Merchant—Weigh Anchor and make sail—Wonderful Preservation of a Bay—A Shark caught—Capt. Dixon comes on board the King George—Captain Portlock's Intentions—Dixon's Return to the Queen—Ships Companies indulged—Tempestuous Weather—Falkland's Islands seen—A Rock ditto—Mistaken for a Vessel—Description and Name thereof—Two small Islands discovered—Description thereof—Mate sent in the Whale Boat to sound a-bell—A Signal of Danger—Ditto for a Harbour—Mate's Account upon his Return—Anchor at Port Egmont.

ON the 29th of August 1785, all the stores being got on board, and a plentiful stock of various antiforbatics provided, through the liberality of the proprietors, for the preservation of the people's health; they weighed anchor, and stood down the river for Gravesend, where they came to anchor again; there were about 60 on board the King George, and 33 on board the Queen Charlotte. Their progress was now very near being retarded by a disagreement between the commander in chief for the voyage, Captain Portlock, and the men; for as soon as the articles of agreement were read by the former to both the ships' companies, they refused to sign without a greater advance of wages than is usually allowed; this the captain would not comply with, and having used very powerful arguments, they at last consented, except two of the King George's crew, who were consequently discharged.

On the 30th, the men received what wages were due, with a month's advance. They then weighed anchor, stood for the Downs, with a fresh south-westerly wind, and anchored about eight o'clock in the evening in Margate Roads. Early the next morning they proceeded towards the Downs, with the same wind, and anchored in Deal, where they laid in some fresh beef and other necessaries.

September the 2nd, they stood towards the Channel; but the wind being then contrary, they anchored the next evening under Dungeness. Charles Gilmore (one of the young gentlemen under Captain Portlock's care) being at the main-top-mast-head, and attempting to come down by the top-mast back-stay, unfortunately lost his hold, when he was almost at the top, and fell directly into the main-chains; his escape was, however, wonderful, as he was not in the least hurt, nor did he discover any alarm when he fell.

Having weighed anchor on the 4th, they arrived at Spithead on the 7th, where they remained a week in purchasing spare anchors, and a variety of other articles; also in supplying themselves with water, &c.

Preparations were making to sail on the 15th; the next day they bore up for St. Helen's, and anchored there in the evening; they proceeded the next day; the weather continuing from this time to the 19th thick and hazy, with incessant rain. On the 20th, the Caskets, which are a heap of rocks resembling *Caskets*, were in view E. N. E. and being

quite becalmed, they were drifted by the tide within a mile of them. Though there were soundings about twenty fathoms, yet as the bottom was hard rocks their anchors were unavailing; the tide turned about nine o'clock, and then all fear of danger was over. About six o'clock on the evening of the 21st they anchored in Guernsey Road. Here they staid till the 24th, in providing a quantity of spirits, Port wine, cyder, &c. also in removing some of the stores from the King George into the Queen Charlotte.

On the 25th, the wind being S. E. the pilots came on board: they unmoored and got ready to heave on head, when the wind suddenly changed to S. S. W. upon which the topgallant-masts were struck, and got down upon deck. In the evening the wind got round to the northward. They got under sail the next day, and proceeded with a favourable wind.

The seven Isles were seen on the 27th: the weather continued heavy till the 30th. This day Capt. Portlock signified his intention to Capt. Dixon of steering W. S. W. as long as the wind was favourable.

Oct. 2d. There being something seen floating on the water at a distance, every person was anxious to know what it was; but there being very little wind, the vessel could not reach it. The men in the Queen Charlotte were resolved on finding out what it was, and two or three determined (as it was not convenient to hoist out the boat) to jump overboard and swim to it: this Capt. Dixon opposed, as he was apprehensive of sharks: however, as the supposed prize was drifting away, he consented, and two of the men immediately swam after it, and brought it on board. It was a large cask, which when opened proved to be a hoghead of claret; it was entirely covered over with barnacles, which had eat holes almost through it.

On the 16th were seen two of the Canary Islands, Palmo and Fezzo, bearing S. by E. and about twelve leagues distance. On the 19th the carpenters were busily employed in caulking, as the decks leaked very much.

Early on the 24th the island Bonavista was seen: they anchored at noon in Port Praya bay, St. Jago, in eight fathom. Here they replenished their water, and procured fresh provisions, with other necessaries.

on
China,
India
this
vef-
any's
er to
pro-

lead-
ged-
-Ar-
l, and
and-
hereof
nds-
bty-
ness of
Dixon
panies
on and
-head

with-
ndings
hard
turned
er was
e 21st
staid
pirits,
of the
Char-

pilots
ady to
ged to
were
ening
y got
n a fa-

e wca-
Capt.
ton of
avour-

ing on
ous to
wind,
Queen
it was,
conve-
rd and
e was
pposed
two of
ight it
ppened
ntirely
holes

lands,
t twelve
ers were
lenked

s seen:
t. Jago,
water,
necesf-

At



At first the commander of the fort, filed the captain Moor, was very haughty and reserved; but upon receiving something from Captains Portlock and Dixon, who also intimated their design of waiting on the governor, and reporting his unkindness, he became civil, and granted permission for what they wanted. Indeed the captains left nothing undone that could possibly expedite the business. The people of Praya were very well behaved, and seemed anxious to oblige. Several hogs, goats, sheep, turkeys, &c. with a quantity of oranges, were purchased at their market. Captain Portlock being desirous to purchase some bullocks, applied to the only dealer for beef there, who was a gentleman acting as agent for a mercantile house in Lisbon: the price of these bullocks, which were rather small, were ten dollars each; which Capt. Portlock thinking too much, only bargained for one. Such, however, was the politeness of the merchant, that it was with the greatest difficulty he could prevail upon him to accept the money for it.

On the 27th and 28th, the crew of each vessel were permitted to go on shore and recreate themselves: half the company went one day, and the other half the succeeding day; the sailors were attended by an officer, to prevent any disputes between them and the natives.

On the 29th they unmoored, and taking leave of the Diana, and a brig from Martinico, which had arrived the preceding day, they made sail and stood out of the bay, the wind being easterly. The weather was variable from the 4th of November to the 12th; during which the ships' company were alternately served with sweet-wort, kroun, and portable soup, for the preservation of their health.

On the 15th, David Gilmore, a boy of ten years old, fell overboard from the weather main shrouds. Every means were taken to save him, and, considering that he was 200 yards from the ship, and not able to swim, it was wonderful how he kept above water for near ten minutes, for the arrival of the boat, when he was taken up, quite exhausted with struggling. Early the next morning a shark was caught, with the greatest part of a large porpoise in his maw. How fortunate for Gilmore that he had not appeared the preceding day!

On the 24th Captain Dixon came on board the King George. Captain Portlock now acquainted him, that he intended to touch at Port Egmont in Falkland's Islands, in order to refit and water the vessels. This being mutually agreed upon, Captain Dixon returned to the Queen Charlotte in the evening.

The ships' companies were now indulged with an allowance of tea, coffee, and sugar; also vinegar, which was very acceptable with some fish, which they frequently caught.

Nothing material occurred till the 11th of December, when there was such a heavy gale of wind that they were obliged to close-reef their top-sails and main-sail: afterwards it was more moderate. There was another heavy gale W. S. W. on the 21st, while the sea was breaking in a very extraordinary manner. The weather continued tempestuous till the 2d of January, when they saw Falkland's Islands, bearing from S. to S. E. about seven leagues distance.

On the 3d a rock, which was whitened over with the dung of birds, was seen from the mast-head. It was supposed to be at first a vessel under sail, bearing S. E. This rock is situated about three leagues from the land, and is called Eddystone.

On the 4th, in the forenoon, two small islands were discovered, bearing S. by E. and S. by W. The westernmost land was about four leagues distance, and the easternmost near eight ditto; latitude 51 deg. 10 min. south. They had soundings in 32 fathom water over a bottom of mud covered with sand: there was a reef joining the two islands, and a rocky shoal, which ran out about a mile from each extreme.

On the 5th a fine opening appeared to the S. W. from which Captain Portlock expected a good harbour. He sent Mr. Macleod, his first mate, in the whale-boat, to sound a-head.

The Queen being apprised of the signals that were to be made, kept a-head of the King George. At half past seven Mr. Macleod fired a pistol: this being a signal of danger, the Queen stood off the land, and tacked occasionally, for the purpose of attending to the motions of the boat. About half past nine Mr. Macleod hoisted a flag at the top of the high land, which was the signal for a harbour. Capt. Portlock immediately made a signal for the boat to return, in order to hear the mate's account previous to any attempt.

Mr. Macleod, upon his return, reported that the harbour was a good one. At the time that he made the signal for shoal water, he was in seven fathom water, over a bed of rocks covered with weeds, which ascended to the surface, and were situated near the middle of the channel.

They stood in for harbour under an easy sail, and both vessels came to anchor at Port Egmont, about eleven o'clock, in 17 fathom water, over a sandy bottom.

CHAPTER II.

The Captains examine the Watering-place—Observations—Vessels secured—Watering Business begun—Ballast procured for the Queen—Continual Interruptions causing Delay—Excursions on Shore—Description of the Country—Ruins of Town—Some Vegetables—A wild Hog, &c.—Watering completed—Anchor weighed—Anchorage in Carcass Island—Description of the Harbour—Heavy Gusts of Wind—Loop's Head passed—Anchorage in States Bay—Sailors recreate themselves on Shore—Anchor weighed—Staten's Land seen—Left—Seen again—A Rippling a-head—Occasion thereof—Several Seals seen—A very remarkable Fish struck—They change their Course—Reason—Capt. Portlock's Indulgence to his Men, for their good Conduct—Hammocks and Bed-clothes aired—Obliged to carry more Sails than they can well bear—Gammoning of the Queen's Bowsprit gone—Secured with a new one—Seals about the King—Vessel cleaned and aired—Rigging repaired—Sails and Canvas got upon Deck—Allowance of Water by Capt. Dixon—Weather variable—Captain Portlock sends a Boat for Capt. Dixon—Result of their Meeting—Their Appointment—Appearance of a Trade-Wind—Allowance of Cyder—A strange Sail seen—The Armourer's Forge got on Deck the Queen—Carpenters employed—A Disappointment—King George passes the Equator—A Number of Sharks caught by the Queen—A favourable Respite from Salt Provisions—Second Mate on board the Queen taken ill—Scurvy appears—Capt. Dixon ill—Owbybee seen—Natives in their Canoes—A Traffic—Large Fires seen—Behaviour of the Natives—Their Visit—Captains' Determination—Anchorage of both Vessels—Inconvenience of watering—Supplied by the Inhabitants—Occasional Remarks.

Captains Portlock and Dixon now went on shore, to examine the watering-place which the mate, Mr. Macleod, had pointed out: it was situated on the north shore. The water was remarkably good, but the accesses thereto so rocky, it was

apprehended that the casks would suffer a material injury. The captains walked along shore, taking the eastward direction, with a view of finding a more eligible spot: every path however was equally stony and dangerous.

Capt. Portlock repeated his search the next day, taking the west direction: afterwards, with Captain Dixon, he proceeded to sound the bay; Portlock taking the southern shore, and Dixon the northern.

Not being able to find any water so convenient as that which lay northward, they proceeded to secure their vessels, and complete their watering business, which commenced the next day, Jan. 7th. The company of the Queen were likewise employed in fetching stones, to put in her hold by way of ballast, as she was not sufficiently deep in the water. Though the men exerted their utmost to expedite these employments, they were notwithstanding delayed by the continual interruptions of blowing, squally weather.

The people, in order to recreate themselves, were frequently permitted by turns to make excursions on shore. The country was in a wild state, and there was no appearance of cultivation. There were very few insects, and no trees to be seen; but there was the root of a long coarse grass, which served as excellent fuel. There were the ruins of a town discovered; near which was the appearance of a garden, with a few flowers. They found some vegetables, potatoes, horse-radish, celery, shallots, &c. but in a very degenerate state. They met a hog, but could not catch him, he was so wild: after this they saw several; also a bullock, cow, &c.

The watering was completed on the 9th; and their other business occupied them till the 14th. The wind was in general S. W. the weather heavy, and attended with much rain.

The crew of both vessels were alternately permitted to recreate themselves on shore, from the 16th to the 19th; which was indeed the chief refreshment they enjoyed here, as the country was very barren.

Early on the 19th they weighed anchor, and made sail with a moderate breeze at south, directing their course for Swan Island; but as the wind afterwards inclined to S. W. they worked through the passage between Saunders's Island and Low Islands. The next day was quite calm, attended with a thick fog; but as it soon cleared up, they passed between Beachy Island and the easternmost of the middle rocks; they anchored at noon with the best bower in west point harbour of Carcass Island, in seven fathom, over a sandy bottom. This harbour is esteemed the best in the world, being not only easy of access, but sheltered from every wind. When moored, the north point bore W. N. W. one mile distant; and the west point of West Point Island W. half N. three leagues distant.

They remained here till the next day, as the wind and weather were unfavourable. They then proceeded, and being afterwards directly opposite the S. W. point of West Island, were obliged suddenly to clew all up and keep the vessel large, on account of some heavy gusts of wind, which came from the very high land: this however, after rounding the point, they got clear of. They passed Loop's Head at one o'clock, and stood into State's Bay: there are several fine harbours in this bay. At three o'clock they anchored with the best bower, in 18 fathom water, over a muddy bottom.

On the 22d, the sailors of both vessels were permitted to recreate themselves on shore. Early the next morning they weighed anchor, and made sail with a fine southerly breeze.

From the 24th to the 26th the weather was moderate, but hazy, and the winds north-westerly.

On the 26th Staten's Land was seen very high, bearing south, about six leagues distant. The weather becoming tempestuous and thick, they lost sight of land; but on its clearing up at eight o'clock, it appeared again; and they accordingly made sail to run in for it: however, the hazy weather having returned again, they shortened sail, and took the northward direction. They tacked at midnight, and

at two o'clock the next day Staten's Land appeared again; the extremes bearing from S. S. W. to S. E. by S. about six leagues distance. About nine o'clock they saw a rippling ahead, which obliged them to shorten sail and bear up: this, as it was afterwards discovered, was occasioned by a current setting to the northward; upon which they again hauled to the southward, and made sail. The weather continued very stormy and tempestuous from the 28th to the 30th; the wind veering from S. E. to W. During this there were several seals seen. From the 31st to the 4th of February the weather was more moderate, and there were light breezes from the southward. Capt. Portlock struck a very remarkable fish; the hind part and tail of which were exactly like those of a shark, and its nose had the resemblance of a porpoise. Having now made a good offing from Cape Horn, they changed their course to N. W. it being the captain's wish to get still further to the westward, that in case of westerly winds they might keep well clear of the continent.

On the 5th the people had one pound and a half of fresh pork each, in addition to their allowance of salt provisions; with an half allowance of brandy extra. This indulgence of Captain Portlock was to testify his approbation of their conduct during the time they had been under his command. They continued their voyage, without making any considerable progress for a fortnight, as the wind was generally in the western board, blowing fresh and in squalls; the weather very stormy, and unsettled. Every change of wind was preceded by a sudden squall, and then succeeded by a calm, both of short continuance.

The sailors hammocks and bed-clothes were brought upon deck on the 22d to be aired, the weather being this day remarkably fine.

On the 25th there was a very strong breeze from the N. W. when they were obliged to carry more sail than the vessels could well bear, in order to prevent their being driven to the eastward.

On the 27th Capt. Dixon having found that the gammoning of the Queen's bowsprit was gone, immediately shortened sail, and got it secured with a new one.

On the 28th there were some seals seen about the King: there were also some rock-weed, and the branch of a tree floating in the sea. The King George was well cleaned between decks, and properly aired with good fires on the 5th of March: her rigging, which had been much damaged with the late tempestuous weather, was repaired on the 27th; also the sails and canvas, which were wet, got upon deck and aired. The same day Captain Dixon put his men to two quarts allowance of water each per day, besides an extra allowance three times a week for pease, as the time of their next anchorage was very uncertain.

The weather continued very variable, sometimes hazy and tempestuous, and at other times temperate and pleasant.

On the 21st Capt. Portlock sent a boat for Capt. Dixon, who returned in it, and came on board the King George. They agreed to stand on directly for Los Majos, where they were in hopes of being able to rest their vessels, and refresh the crew; instead of running down to the Sandwich Islands, which were entirely out of their way: besides they had some reason to expect both a good harbour and water there. The captains now appointed Owhyhee as the place of rendezvous, in case they were separated before their arrival at Los Majos. They were to wait for each other ten days, and if they did not meet then, they were to proceed to King George's Sound.

On the 25th the weather was very fine, and there was a comfortable breeze at E. S. E. The appearance of this trade-wind encouraged the captains to make for Los Majos agreeable to their resolution.

resolution. scraped fore. Each man allowed now a small quantity as it was ex-

A strange to the N. W. snow. Both fail hoisted a within call presently out Spanish vessel the coast of C

April 5th forge on dec were made for ture traffic.

On the 6th employed in u for swivels.

On the 10th as the crew w Macleod was brought on bo that it had b was returned much disappo they picked sixty-five pou brate Easter-S day.

As the cyde King, the me in lieu thereo equator.

About this created to the Queen. The number of th choulder: they Portlock's ves spect, several t to Captain Di panies had a fa

The vessels a Los Majos. the weather ex

Hitherto the good state of began to appe prevent it. T the King Geo despaired of. very much aff ingly ill, and h

Captain Po visit Captain I he sent him a c in it, likewise great measure t veral other ant

On the 7th t Island Partida i no appearance d of such place d

On the 12th on board the K Dixon likewise

As there wa W. by S. and Owhyhee, whic Islands.

On the 24th view; the east six leagues dista Island are appare and the S. W. p

While the Kin

resolution. This day the King George was well scraped fore and aft, aired and washed with vinegar. Each man on board the King and Queen were allowed now a pint of cyder every day besides his usual quantity of spirits, which was very acceptable as it was exceedingly warm.

A strange sail was seen on the 25th in the evening to the N. W. she appeared to be either a brig or a snow. Both vessels showed a light, and the strange sail hoisted a light too: however she passed nearly within call of the Queen at ten o'clock, and was presently out of sight. She was supposed to be a Spanish vessel going to Boldivia or Conception, on the coast of Chili.

April 5th the Queen Charlotte got the armourer's forge on deck. When fixed up, sundry things were made for the vessel's use, and also for their future traffic.

On the 6th the carpenters of the Queen were employed in making ports for guns, and fixtures for swivels.

On the 10th the King George passed a turtle, and as the crew were very anxious for a fresh meal, Mr. Macleod was sent in the whale-boat after it. When brought on board, they found by its putrescent state that it had been dead for some time; of course it was returned to the sea, and the people were very much disappointed. However, in five days after they picked up a very fine one, which weighed sixty-five pounds; this came just in time to celebrate Easter-Sunday, which was the succeeding day.

As the cyder was now expended on board the King, the men had a pint of sweet-wort each day in lieu thereof: on the 20th the King passed the equator.

About this time the allowance of water was encreased to three quarts each day, on board the Queen. The crew of this vessel caught a great number of sharks, with which the sailors made choulder: they also got a turtle. However, Captain Portlock's vessel being more fortunate in this respect, several turtles were occasionally sent by him to Captain Dixon, by which means the ships' companies had a favourable respite from salt provisions.

The vessels now kept eastward, in order to fetch Los Majos. The winds continued variable, and the weather extremely sultry.

Hitherto the people of both vessels had enjoyed a good state of health. However, the scurvy now began to appear, in spite of every precaution to prevent it. The boatswain (Mr. Brown) on board the King George, was so bad, that his recovery was despaired of. Several on board the Queen were very much afflicted: Captain Dixon was exceedingly ill, and likewise Mr. Turner the second mate.

Captain Portlock went on board the Queen, to visit Captain Dixon. On his return to the King, he sent him a cask of fine mould with sallad growing in it, likewise some garden-seeds (which was in a great measure the relief of the boatswain), and several other antiscorbutics.

On the 7th they were near the place where the Island Partida is supposed to be: there was however no appearance of land, which renders the existence of such place doubtful.

On the 12th of May, Mr. Brown the boatswain on board the King was out of danger, and Captain Dixon likewise grew better, though slowly.

As there was a fine trade-breeze, they steered W. by S. and on the 23d endeavoured to make Owhyhee, which is the principal of the Sandwich Islands.

On the 24th at seven o'clock, Owhyhee was in view; the east point bearing N. W. by W. about six leagues distant. The E. and S. E. parts of this island are apparently fertile and pleasant, but the S. and the S. W. parts seem the contrary.

While the King George was running along shore

within three miles of the land, she was surrounded by a number of the natives in their canoes: they had a few hogs of a small size, some plantains, and a number of excellent fishing-lines, which they cheerfully exchanged for beads, and pieces of iron: they did not seem then the least inclined to hostility or theft; on the contrary, when they had disposed of all they had got to part with, they took leave with apparent satisfaction.

When the vessel approached land, she was accosted by another number of canoes, who brought hogs and other refreshments, which were likewise exchanged for pieces of iron.

On the 25th when it was dark, there was a great number of fires observed on shore. Captain Portlock, as he had lately perceived the natives to be shy and distant, and knowing it to be their custom to light fires by way of offerings to their gods, when disposed to fight, was apprehensive of some meditated danger, particularly as the natives seemed equally suspicious, and began to think these English were come to revenge the untimely death of Capt. Cook.

It was the captain's wish to anchor in Karakakooa, but was delayed by an unfavourable wind: but a light breeze springing up at N. W. they stood in for the bay. About noon an inferior chief came on board, who said that Terecboo the late king was dead, and that the present king was Mailha Mailha. He requested the captain to come on shore, which he declined. Several canoes now came alongside, and the natives grew very troublesome. The vessel was very much retarded in her progress, by their hanging round her. In the mean time the Queen, after standing along the shore two days, was in like manner surrounded by the natives of both sexes, with whom they trafficked for various commodities. Both the King and Queen came to anchor on the 26th in the afternoon.

The natives continued to be exceedingly troublesome: besides hogs and plantains, they disposed of a quantity of salt potatoes, taro, &c. Their fires appeared again at night, and there was a constant battle among them on shore.

While Captain Dixon was making preparations for the watering, he was acquainted by Captain Portlock of his apprehensions relative to the natives, who now became so troublesome that he was obliged to place centinels with cutlasses to prevent their boarding them; he was of opinion that it was impossible to do any thing on shore without a strong guard, and such measure he again imagined, would be attended with fatal consequences. It was also understood, that the watering-place was tabooed. In short, the captains mutually agreed upon leaving Karakakooa as soon as possible.

On the 27th there being orders to unmoor, in which they were retarded by the concurrence of natives, there were six four-pounders, and six swivels fired, with a view of dispersing them; their colours were also hoisted, and the vessel was tabooed; which effectually alarmed the natives, who instantaneously fled: many canoes during their precipitation were overset, while those who were in them, were obliged to swim for shore.

They now unmoored without any interruption, and began about twelve o'clock to warp out of the bay to the westward. When distant about three leagues from Karakakooa, they brought to; intending to stand off and on for about a day, in order to traffic with the natives.

A brisk trade commenced early the next morning, when a quantity of fine hogs, and vegetables of different kinds were procured. They also began to purchase water in calabashes, which was an article at present of the greatest consequence, and the refreshments which they had already procured, were of infinite service to the sick, who were now recovering apace.

On the 29th the natives still continued to traffic, while the vessels stood to the N. N. W. for the sake of enabling the canoes to keep up with them. At this time Karakakoo bore N. E. by E. about eight leagues distant, and the high land of Mowee, which they were making for, was now in sight. At six o'clock in the afternoon a fresh breeze sprung up at N. E. which occasioning a cross swell, obliged the canoes to leave the vessels, and make quickly for shore.

It was supposed that the unkindness of the natives proceeded from a recollection of those losses which they sustained after the melancholy death of Captain Cook: however, the reason that they urged for their unwillingness to admit the English on shore was, that all their chiefs, being engaged in war with a neighbouring island, were absent, and on that account they could not suffer strangers to land.

On the 30th, the weather being very unsettled, and it still being doubtful whether they should be able to complete their watering at any of the Sandwich Islands, which consist of seven, viz. Owhyhee, Mowee, Morotai, Ranai, Woahoo, Attoui, and Oneehow, the allowance of water was consequently curtailed to two quarts per day. About noon the king was joined by a few canoes from Ranai, but they had nothing of consequence to dispose of. Captain Portlock now entertained hopes of anchoring in a bay situated on the west side of Morotai, being within three leagues of the west end; but the wind failing, and the day being far advanced, he could not accomplish his design. In the mean time the Queen kept standing for Woahoo. About eight o'clock she was nearly up to the King.

Early on the 31st they wore, and stood in for the land; but, when it was day-light, they were exceedingly mortified to find that they had been driven about nine leagues in the night to the S. W. This baffled Captain Portlock's expectation of anchoring at Morotai; and he was apprehensive of not being able soon to weather the east point of Woahoo, which was at present the nearest anchorage: resolving, however, to make the attempt, he stood in for the east point of that island, under all the sail they could carry, with a moderate breeze at E. N. E. Appearances were greatly in favour of the King; but the Queen Charlotte being a considerable way on her companion's lee quarter, her possibility of weathering the island was exceedingly doubtful. Upon this the King George tacked, and stood towards her. The Queen, about half past eleven, drove in shore; but Capt. Dixon, finding the attempt was ineffectual, tacked; which likewise induced the King to tack immediately afterwards. At noon the S. E. part bore W. S. W. five miles distant; and the N. E. part N. W. about four leagues.

This island appears high and craggy between the S. E. and N. E. points. It is divided into several high rocks, where there is supposed to be a tolerable shelter.

Finding it impracticable to get round the N. E. point of the island, without considerable delay, they bore away on the 1st of June for the S. E. point, where there was every appearance of an excellent anchorage. They hauled round the point, and stood in for the bay. The whale-boat was now dispatched by Captain Portlock to sound.

They anchored about half after one in the afternoon, in 12 fathom water, over a sandy bottom. Captain Portlock called this bay King George's: the east point he called Point Dick, in honour of Sir John Dick, the first patron of this voyage; this bore E. by N. one mile and a half. The west point he called Point Rose, after George Rose, Esq; secretary of the treasury, and their second patron: this bore W. S. W. half W. about two leagues; and the bottom of the bay N. two miles distant. They had

presently a number of canoes along-side, who bartered some cocoa-nuts, sugar-cane, plantains, sweet-root, &c. for a few trinkets, and pieces of iron. Hogs and vegetables were much scarcer here than at Owhyhee. On account of a fresh breeze, which came on in the evening, at E. N. E. those canoes departed.

Early in the morning (June 2d) a number of canoes visited the vessels again; these brought some vegetables, and a few small hogs. Several of the natives of both sexes had been induced to this visit through curiosity.

The captain went on shore early in the morning to seek a watering-place, which was now their chief object; their next consideration was to procure accommodations for the sick. They landed on some rocks just round Point Dick without being in the least interrupted by the inhabitants; but, on the contrary, received with great politeness, and satisfied in all their enquiries. They conducted them to some fresh water, which was lodged in a kind of basin, formed by the rocks, about fifty yards from the place where they landed; but there was so little as not to afford even a temporary supply. They then informed the English that a larger quantity was to be had at some distance to the westward; the captains accordingly proceeded in their search, but met with so many disasters on account of several little salt-water rivers, which impeded their progress, that they almost despaired of accomplishing their wishes. Every circumstance rendered the watering exceedingly inconvenient here; Captain Portlock, therefore, resolved upon sending two boats to examine the western part of the bay, and discover, if possible, a good landing-place, and convenient watering.

Mr. Hill now received orders from Captain Portlock to purchase every refreshment that came in his way, for the use of the company; accordingly this gentleman, during the captain's absence, procured several hogs, sugar-cane, vegetables, &c. of the natives.

As there was no possibility of being able to water the ships with their own boats, Captain Dixon suggested to Captain Portlock the probability of being supplied by the natives, as those people had several gourds in their canoes and calabashes full of water. It was, therefore, deemed expedient to induce the Indians to bring off water to the vessels; at least a sufficiency for the present. These people were indeed so fond of traffic that they readily complied, and for the sake of buttons, nails, and such like trifles, willingly employed themselves in bringing water. For a small or middling-sized calabash, containing about two or three gallons, they gave a small nail; for larger-sized, larger nails; and so on in proportion. In this very singular manner both vessels were completely supplied with water, not only at a trivial expence, but without either wearing or endangering their boats, casts, or tacklings; also preserving their men from wet, and catching cold.

During the time they were taking in water, the people of both vessels were busied in setting up the rigging fore and aft, scraping the ships' sides, and other necessary employments. Their present situation being the most eligible one that appeared about these islands, they resolved on not quitting it until they had completed all their business.

The sick people belonging to the Queen were taken on shore by the surgeon, who thought that the land-air would be of service to them; they were, however, obliged soon to return, on account of the heat of the weather, and the concurrence of the natives. The next day the sick of the King were taken on shore for recreation; these were likewise incommoded by the multitudes which curiosity brought about them.

A few of the inferior chiefs came on board the King

bar-
sweet-
iron.
than
which
raoos

er of
some
of the
s visit

ruing
their
p pro-
ed on
being
it, on
, and
ucted.
l in a
fifty
there
orary
hat a
ee to
ceded
rs on
which
aired
lance
here;
nding
bay,
, and

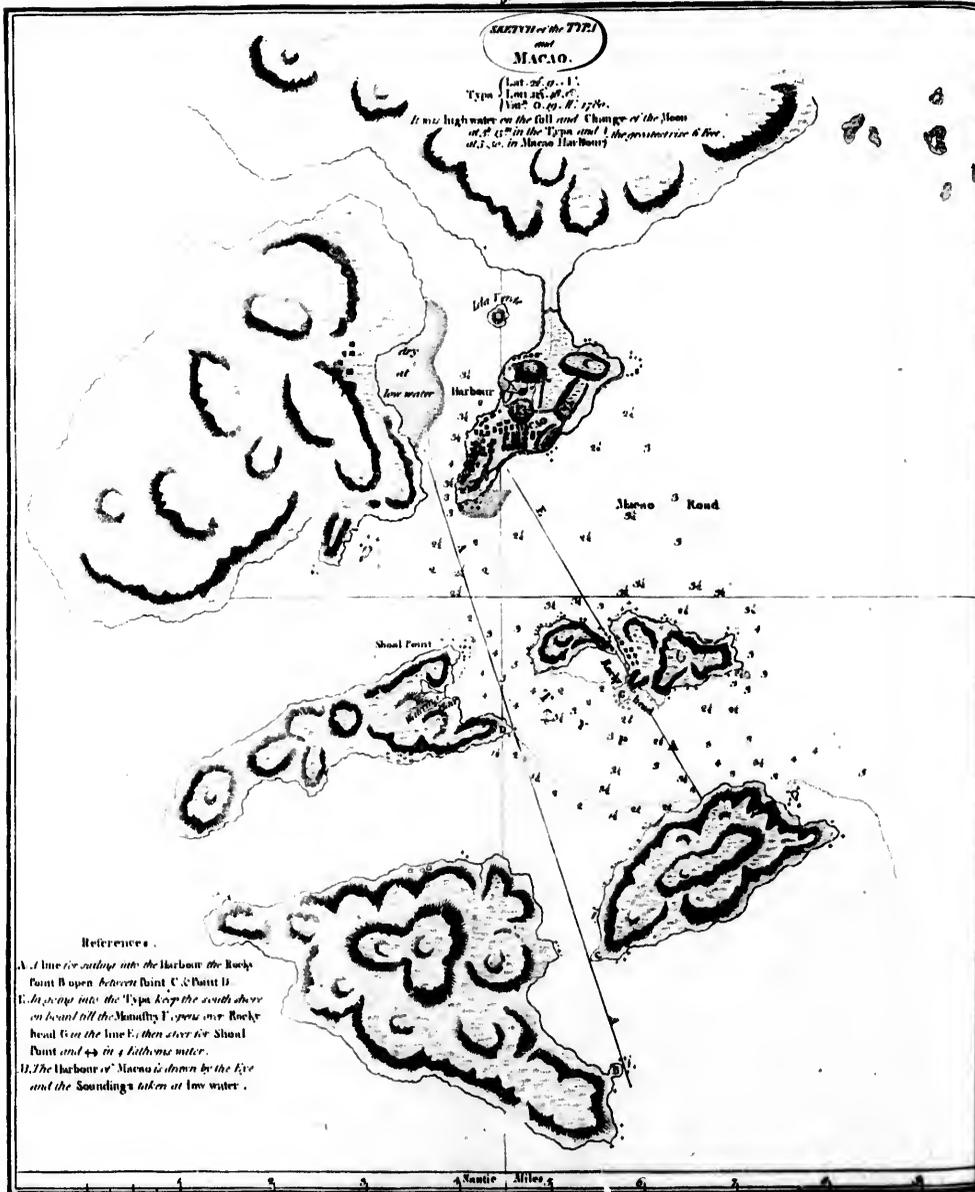
Port-
in his
y this
cured
ie na-

water
lixon
ty of
e had
s full
nt to
ffels;
eople
adily
, and
es in
fized
llons,
arger
r lin-
sup-
, but
oats,
from

, the
p the
, and
situa-
bout
until

were
e that
they
count
se of
King
were
a cu-

d the
King



References .

A. A line is drawn into the Harbour the Rocky Point B open between Point C & Point D
 C. A line is drawn into the Typa keep the south shore on board till the Monthly T. open over Rocky head E on the line F. then steer for Shoal Point and G in 4 fathoms water.
 H. The Harbour of Macao is shown by the Eye and the Soundings taken at low water .



PORT

King George the great ones priest, who con always brought cocoa-nut; by

On the 4th a great plenty tants with the lock's opinion, ditions metho a vessel in the

It was now in order to get inland is famous and flood to th a moderate br which appeared Charlotte's.

noon the high N. W. at nine in fight. The weather close away, and ma eastward: in Wymoa Bay, chor; however the S. E. Capt. in the anchoring under all the f

which at four o to S. W. by W nearest land. night; and on anchor in Yam abundance of y bottom. The E. and the sou distant from fl

about the mid mile of which a fathom water, c also land with g They were i

tants, who brow besides some fin they bartered fo taken on shore, of inhabitants h few kept under joyed the benef

ellation. The good flock of y

Leave taken of A Colour of the Moon—The K Islands—Islands Boat comes from—No Inhabita Russian Factory Vessels prepar Account of Mo Arrival of few Capt. Fortlock go on board— inclined to This Passage along t in battle againy

ON the 13th, they unmo and got under f N. E. out of the and ten guns fire noes and the rest No. 8.

King George without any scruples; but none of the great ones paid them a visit. There was an old priest, who constantly visited Captain Portlock, and always brought a small pig, and a branch of the cocoa-nut, by way of present.

On the 4th the watering business was completed; a great plenty having been brought by the inhabitants with the greatest facility. It was Capt. Portlock's opinion, that this was the most safe and expeditious method any body could adopt, of watering a vessel in these places.

It was now determined to proceed to Oneehow, in order to get a supply of yams, for which that island is famous. On the 5th they weighed anchor, and stood to the westward, under an easy sail, with a moderate breeze at N. E. The bay eastward, which appeared to be excellent, was called Queen Charlotte's. Attoui was seen on the 6th, and at noon the high point upon the S. E. end bore W. N. W. at nine leagues distance; Whaboo was still in sight. The winds were now variable, and the weather close and sultry. On the 7th they bore away, and made sail with a fine breeze from the eastward: in the afternoon they were abreast of Wymoa Bay, Attoui, where they intended to anchor; however, the wind blowing very strong from the S. E. Captain Portlock deemed it unsafe to ride in the anchoring, so wore and stood for Oneehow, under all the sail they could carry; the extreme of which at four o'clock bore from N. N. W. half W. to S. W. by W. about four leagues distant from the nearest land. They tacked occasionally during the night; and on the 8th, about ten o'clock, came to anchor in Yam Bay, Oneehow, so called from its abundance of yams, 17 fathom water over a sandy bottom. The north point of the bay bore N. N. E. and the fourth point S. by E. a mile and a half distant from shore. There is a fine sandy beach about the middle of the bay, within a quarter of a mile of which a ship may moor in seven and eight fathom water, over a fine sandy bottom: boats may also land with great facility and safety.

They were immediately visited by the inhabitants, who brought them a plentiful supply of yams; besides some small pigs, sweet potatoes, &c. which they bartered for beads, nails, &c. The sick were taken on shore, and there not being such a number of inhabitants here as in the other islands, and these few kept under proper order by the chief, they enjoyed the benefit of the land-air without any molestation. The captains were desirous to lay in a good stock of yams, and plenty of hogs for salting.

The name of the principal chief at this island is Abbenooe. He visited the captains, and recollected Captain Portlock, whom he had seen before. He seemed very much attached to the company, and on his account they were better accommodated.

Captain Portlock, accompanied by this chief as a guide, went on shore in search of fresh water. After examining some wells, he made an excursion into the country, the chief still attending him, with a few of the natives. Previous to this, six persons had been appointed to trade with the natives during his absence; and, on his return, the captain found that a brisk trade had been carried on. As Abbenooe had received several presents for his kind attention, he was still more anxious to render them his service; and on the 10th the captains were very agreeably surpris'd, by the appearance of several large double canoes, full of fine hogs, sugar-cane, taro, &c. which Abbenooe had sent to Attoui for, where the king of Oneehow was at this time. Presents were immediately sent to the king, for his generous consideration.

There was no time lost in making the best bargains: 30 hogs were procured on the 13th, which weighed about 60 lb. each.

A sufficient quantity of meat was salted, and some excellent bacon made of the pork. There were about 10 tons of fine yams on board the King, and eight ditto on board the Queen. Every thing being thus completed, they prepared to sail with all possible speed.

This island appeared well cultivated. It produces sugar-cane, sweet potatoes, a sweet root called by the natives Tee, but yams are the chief commodity. There are a few trees, scattered without any order; some 15 feet high, and proportionably thick; the bark smooth, and the branches extensive; the leaves round, and their fruit something like walnuts. There were others about nine feet high, with fine pink-coloured blossoms. There were others producing nuts like horse-chefnuts, which serve the natives for candles, as they burn well and give excellent light.

Among the refreshments these islands produce, that of the sweet-root, called the Tee, is the most remarkable: it served to make excellent beer. This drink (which was very good) was of great benefit to such as were afflicted with the scurvy. The sugar-cane was brewed in the same manner, which made very wholesome drink, but it was not so agreeable to the taste as the Tee-beer.

CHAPTER III.

Leave taken of Abbenooe and the Natives—Captain Portlock goes on board the Queen—A Rendezvous appointed—Colour of the Water changed—Seals seen—Whales, Porpoises, &c.—They make for Cook's River—Eclipse of the Moon—The King George cleaned, &c.—Soundings—No Bottom—Bottom—Galicia Whales seen—The Barren Islands—Island Hermogenes seen—A great Gun heard—Answered—Amber heard—Various Conjectures—A Boat comes from Shore with Russians—Presents from and to the Russian Chief and Capt. Portlock—Anchorage—No Inhabitants—Fine Wood and Water—Parties dispatched to cut Wood, &c.—The Captains repair to the Russian Factory—Watering completed—Fine Salmon procured—Description of the Country—Some Bears seen—Vessels prepared for Sea—Kannel Coal discovered—Anchor weighed—Signal for the Queen to anchor—Obeyed—Account of Mount Volcano—Anchorage in Trading Bay—Meeting with one Canoe—Behaviour of the Indian—Arrival of several Indians—Signs of Peace—A Trade carried on—Natives desirous for the English to land—Capt. Portlock invites a Chief on board—His Hesitation—Condition—Scruples conquered—Several of the Natives go on board—Captain grants the Chief's Request—Indians kind and familiar—A very brisk Trade—Natives inclined to Thievery—Instances—Capt. Portlock's consequent Orders—Determines to quit Cook's River—Reason—Passage along the Coast—Anchorage—Several small Canoes visit them—The Indians want the English to join them in battle against the Russians—Captain's Refusal—His Presents—Remarks on Cook's River, the Inhabitants, &c.

ON the 13th, about five o'clock in the morning, they unmoored, and at eight o'clock weighed and got under sail, standing with a fresh breeze at N. E. out of the bay. Their colours were hoisted, and ten guns fired, by way of taking leave of Abbenooe and the rest of the natives of this island.

On the 15th they were clear of the land, and changed their course to N. and N. by E. The weather for several days was close and sultry, but on the 20th it became clear and pleasant, attended with a fine easterly breeze: from the 23d to the 28th there were very strong breezes, with rain; the wind veering

veering from S. W. to N. W. the weather was thick and hazy. This day, in the forenoon, Capt. Portlock went on board the *Queen Charlotte*, in order to appoint a rendezvous in case of separation. The captains agreed on a situation in Cook's River, near Cape Bede; which cape forms the south side of a deep inlet, and Anchor Point the north side. This was chosen with an expectation of finding a good harbour there, and knowing that whatever vessel arrived first would be able to make signals to the other on her entering the river. From the 29th to the 1st of July, the winds were light and variable, attended with thick fogs and small rain.

On the 2d the water altered its colour, and several seals were seen playing about both vessels. There was a piece of wood floating on the water on the 3d, with several birds on it: there were also several whales, porpoises, and a great number of petrels, seen. The wind was now N. W. attended with much rain; towards noon the weather cleared up.

From this time to the 7th, their progress was greatly retarded by the wind keeping to the northward and westward; after this it shifted to the southward, and they now made for the entrance of Cook's River. The winds continued from S. E. to S. W. till the 11th, when, in the evening, the moon was totally eclipsed; but, on account of the fog-giness of the night, they could not see it.

The stock of yams on board the *Queen* were expended on the 13th; which was of serious consequence, as it served them for both bread and potatoes. The weather being very fine on the 14th, the King was well cleaned fore and aft, aired with good fires, &c. The next day, the water altering its colour very much, they frequently sounded with 90 to 120 fathom, and could get no bottom. On the 16th the *Queen* sounded likewise, and could get no bottom till the afternoon, when there was bottom 55 fathom, of black rock, shells and sand. The land was in sight at eight o'clock, from N. to S. S. W. about eight leagues distance. There were several Galicia whales seen near the shore. This land proved to be (on the 18th) the barren islands situated at the entrance of Cook's River. In the afternoon the island *Hermogenes* was seen, bearing from S. S. W. to W. at three leagues distance.

On the 19th, at eleven o'clock in the forenoon, they made the entrance of Cook's River, leaving the barren isles to the southward and eastward. They now intended, if possible, to make Anchor Point, before they let go their anchor. At seven in the evening, the report of a great gun was heard, from a bay nearly abreast of them, about four miles distance. There were now various conjectures, some thinking they were Englishmen, and others that they were French. Captain Portlock hoisted colours, and fired a gun: he answered the signal again, and then they heard another shot. At seven o'clock a boat came from shore to the King George, and the people proved to be Russians. There being no person on board that understood the Russian language, they were not able to get any satisfactory information. The party consisted of about 25 men: they were accompanied by seven Indians in their canoes, who seemed to be on friendly terms with them. The Russian chief brought Captain Portlock a quantity of fine salmon; which compliment the captain returned by a present of some beef, pork, and brandy.

On the 20th they came to anchor in 35 fathom water, as the crews required both food and exercise. Though there was not the least appearance of any inhabitants, they found a very convenient place, which promised an ample supply of both wood and water: parties were accordingly dispatched the succeeding day to cut down wood and fill water, while the captains repaired in the King George's whale-boat to the Russian factory, to pick up what intelligence they could respecting the furs and other subjects for enquiry.

They completed their watering, as the place was so very convenient, on the 21st: they then proceeded to cut wood, and at intervals recreated themselves with walking on shore.

The people on board the *Queen* frequently attempted to catch fish with a hook and line, but were very unsuccessful. Captain Portlock having had a seine on board, procured large quantities of fine salmon, which were divided with the *Queen*. The weather was now very unsettled, and the wind variable.

This country is exceedingly mountainous: the distant hills, which are remarkably high, are covered all over with snow; those sloping down nearest the shore are covered with pines, intermixed with birch, and several other trees and shrubs. It was very cold, damp, and disagreeable, and the whole place appeared barren and dreary. As there were some huts discovered, which appeared but lately deserted, it was naturally supposed that the inhabitants were frightened away by the Russians. There were about a dozen bears seen, but they kept at such a distance that none of them could be shot.

Every thing being completed on the 25th, the vessels were prepared for sea; previous to which the captains went to look into a bay, situated to the eastward of the north point of the harbour: this was found to be a very good one. There were soundings in eight, twelve, and fourteen fathom water, over a bottom of fine black sand. There were also discovered two veins of keuel coal, which being tried was found to burn exceeding well. On this account the place of present anchorage acquired the appellation of Coal Harbour.

On the 26th, early in the morning, they weighed anchor, and stood out for the main river; the captains being assured of meeting with furs, if they could find inhabitants, and there being no doubt but that there were some northward. The wind now came to the northward and westward: as the *Queen* was northward of the King, she was able to lie out, which the King could not accomplish. When she got clear out, Captain Portlock made her a signal to anchor; which she obeyed. At noon the weather grew moderate; yet, on account of the shifting of the winds, and the uncertainty of the tide, it was with the greatest difficulty this vessel joined the *Queen*: they were carried very rapidly by the tide to the N. E. into a deep opening, which is formed by the land to the N. E. of Point Bede and Anchor Point. Towards evening on the 27th, they came-to, with the stream anchor, in 20 fathom water, over a rocky bottom.

Anchor Point bearing N. 33 deg. E. 5 miles distant. Volcano Mount, N. 86 deg. west.

N. Land in sight on the western shore, N. 24 deg. W. A seeming opening on the W. side, N. 63 deg. W. Mount Volcano now vomited a prodigious deal of smoke; but there was not the least appearance of any fiery eruption, and notwithstanding the adjacent country seemed very pleasant, there were no signs of the coast being inhabited on either side the river. This seemed to corroborate the supposition that the Russians, who were in Coal Harbour, had quarrelled with and dispersed the natives.

About three o'clock in the afternoon of the 28th they anchored in eleven fathom water, over a sandy bottom. As the land on the western side near the shore was to all appearance very pleasant, Captain Portlock, thinking it most probable that it was inhabited, determined to stand over and look for anchorage. They had soundings from 20 to 25 fathom of water, over a rocky bottom: at six o'clock they had 13 fathom over a shingly bottom, where they came-to with the best bower.

As soon as they had anchored, one canoe, with only one man, came along-side the *Queen*: he had nothing to dispose of but a little dried salmon, which he gave for a few beads. It was suspected that this man came on purpose to learn their intentions, as he seemed very curious; however, when he under-

flood that t and was like to barter with fion, and plenty of fur two large canoes accompanied with two in each, approaching, green plants, peace. Several very disgusting (which were beads or teeth) honest man's skins, and a few very neat delicious for requested one on board: at he would, if as an hostage this condition without any of self, with several Captain Portlock request, and perfectly safe, and as the native, he resolutely days.

On the 30th them, from w sea-otter skins, &c. they also salmon: thus the Indians of peaceable man offered, they of them, who were 30 of August, a grinding-stone resistible tempt took no notice orders to his n any future loss.

An elderly of his vessel, an Russian had worked. Heference in their another nation no means inclined was accompanied that all would shortly The occasion of to the Russians, altercation. Itween the nation was conjectured visitors, by con-

Captain Port opportunity of to Prince Will of meeting with

There were which were attended thus more moderate canoes, who furnished of salmon: In on board the Q weigh anchor-t weighed, and v lock dispatched a message, that they had better they moored sh

flood that they were inclined to trade peaceably, and was likewise shewn the articles which they had to barter with; he seemed very happy on the occasion, and promised that the people should bring plenty of furs by the next day's sun. Accordingly, two large canoes, with twenty persons each, accompanied with several small ones, that had only one or two in each, came early the next morning. On their approaching, they joined in a song, holding up green plants, and extending their arms, as a sign of peace. Several of these Indians were painted in a very disgusting manner; their noses, ears, and lips, (which were cut) were adorned with small blue beads or teeth. These people traded in a very quiet, honest manner; they brought about 20 sea-otter skins, and a few cloaks made of the carles marmot, and very neatly sewed together. They seemed very desirous for the English to land. Captain Portlock requested one of them, who seemed a chief, to come on board: at first he hesitated, but at last promised he would, if the captain would send one of his men as an hostage into his canoe. While he was making this condition, one of his people ventured on board without any entreaty; presently after the chief himself, with several others, who followed his example. Captain Portlock, however, agreeable to the chief's request, and to convince them all that they were perfectly safe, sent one of his people into their boat; and as the natives were particularly kind and familiar, he resolved on keeping this situation for a few days.

On the 30th they had several canoes along-side them, from whom they purchased some very good sea-otter skins, marmot cloaks, racoons, foxes, bears, &c. they also bargained for some excellent fresh salmon: thus they carried on a very brisk trade, the Indians still behaving in the most quiet and peaceable manner: however, when an opportunity offered, they committed many little thefts; some of them, who were on board the King George on the 3d of August, stole a hook from a block-strap, and a grinding-stone handle, which being iron, were irresistible temptations. Captain Portlock, however, took no notice of those small depredations, but gave orders to his men to be very vigilant, and prevent any future losses.

An elderly chief paid Capt. Dixon a visit on board his vessel, and informed him that they and the Russians had a battle, in which the latter were worsted. He told the captain, that from the difference in their dress, he knew his men belonged to another nation, and for that reason they were by no means inclined to quarrel with them. This chief was accompanied by several other Indians, who intimated that all their furs were gone; but that they would shortly send to the adjacent islands for more. The occasion of this scarcity was no doubt owing to the Russians, who drained them previous to their altercation. It was not known how the quarrel between the natives and Russians originated; but it was conjectured that the former had offended their visitors, by committing some depredations.

Captain Portlock resolved upon taking the first opportunity of quitting Cook's River, and proceed to Prince William's Sound, where he was in hopes of meeting with plenty of furs.

There were strong breezes from the S. S. W. which were attended with much rain: the weather continued thus till noon on the 7th, when it became more moderate. They were then visited by a few canoes, who supplied the ships with a large quantity of salmon. In the afternoon Captain Portlock went on board the Queen, and advised Captain Dixon to weigh anchor the next morning. They accordingly weighed, and were making sail; when Capt. Portlock dispatched his third mate, Mr. Hayward, with a message, that as the weather was unfavourable, they had better keep their situation still. Upon this they moored ship again, with their best bower.

This day (the 8th) they were visited by several Indians; but nothing of any consequence occurred.

As the weather became more moderate on the 9th, they prepared for sailing, with the first fair wind. Accordingly, at three o'clock the next morning they began to unmoor, as there was now a light breeze from the N. N. E. On account of a very rapid tide setting to the S. W. and the wind inclined to the southward, they were obliged to anchor in 11 fathom water, over a bottom of dark and rather muddy sand. The Queen came off at the same time, about half a mile to the westward of the King. There was a dry shoal, bearing S. W. right in the direction of the tide's course; to avoid this was Captain Portlock's chief motive for anchoring: at low-water it was dry for about a mile and a half, extending from N. E. to S. W. The whale-boat being dispatched to sound all around, the land westward of this shoal was found very high, and covered in several places with snow. There were also some rocks seen; so that, upon the whole, it is more dangerous to navigate this river than has been hitherto imagined.

One of the natives having rendered himself particularly useful during their stay in the bay, by procuring several furs, acquired the appellation of *Factor*. This man with some others came off in their canoes, from a town near the south point of Trading Bay, and paid Captain Portlock another visit. At present they had nothing but a few salmon to dispose of: but the factor's chief motive for seeing the captain, was to solicit his assistance against the Russians. He urged his request in the most persuasive manner, but the captain expatiating upon the necessity of his immediate departure, did not comply. This disappointment was not a little mortifying; however, to divert the factor from his concern, the captain gave him several presents, particularly a horseman's cap, which he put on with great exultation, and was both envied and extolled by all his gazing countrymen. A few trifles were likewise given to the other Indians, by Captain Portlock, in order to make amends for his non-compliance.

At five o'clock in the morning of the 11th, they weighed anchor, and kept standing down the river. At eight o'clock they perceived two Russian boats, which at a distance were supposed to be some of the natives' canoes: there were eighteen men in each boat, steering for the island to the southward. It seems to be their plan to subjugate the poor Indians, and then exact as great a quantity of skins as they can get by way of tribute. However, as the natives are in so many parties, and the adjacent islands so numerous, this stratagem must certainly be dangerous in the end.

It was remarkably foggy from the 17th to the 19th. On the 17th the extremes of Montague bore N. 45 deg. E. and N. 9 deg. E. they were then three miles and a half from the nearest land. On the 19th Montague Island was seen about nine o'clock, the N. E. point bearing N. 39 deg. E. about four leagues distant.

Being fast towards some small islands and rocks, they were obliged to tack, and stand to the S. S. E. yet though they had a three knot breeze, and carried all the sail they possibly could for about three hours, it was with the greatest difficulty they could keep clear of the rocks. The captain would have anchored, but deemed 84 fathoms water, which they then had, too great a depth. Notwithstanding the boats were a-head to tow the ship, they could not possibly make the entrance, though they had every expectation before of getting into the passage. The wind was very unfavourable, and they plied constantly with but little advantage: the weather was continually thick and hazy; thus they kept beating about the coast till the 23d of September, without being able to get into any harbour.

Though the captains experienced much disagreeable

able and stormy weather during their stay in Cook's River, yet it was their opinion, that the climate is not in general so severe as it is supposed to be, for notwithstanding the smart breezes they met with, the air was mild and temperate. Cook's River produces native sulphur, ginseng, snake-root, black-ler coal, and very fine salmon; there were some berries of several sorts, particularly black-berries, equal to those in England, which the natives frequently brought.

The inhabitants seem not to have fixed on any particular spot for their residence, but are scattered about here and there, as best suits their convenience or inclination. 'Tis most probable they are divided into clans or tribes, as in every large canoe there was at least one person of superior authority to the rest, who not only directed their traffic, but kept them in a proper degree of subordination. In their manners they seemed harmless and inoffensive; but this might probably be occasioned by the different treatment they met with now, to what the Russians had used them to. Their weapons are bows and arrows, and spears; these are very useful in hunting, as well as fighting; the flesh of the various beasts they kill serving them for food, as their skins do for cloathing. One would reasonably suppose that the skins of large beasts, as bears, wolves, &c. would be held in the greatest estimation as cloaths by these people: this however is not the case, the greater part wearing cloaks made of marmot-skins, very neatly sewed together, one cloak containing perhaps more than one hundred skins: it is most likely that their women's time is principally taken

up in employments like these. Besides the sea-otter, here are bears, wolves, foxes, racoons, marmots, or field-mice, musquash, ermine, &c. &c. but the marmot and fox seem to be in the greatest plenty. The trade these people are fondest of for their skins, is toes, and light blue beads, scarcely any other sort (though they had their choice of a very great variety) being taken the least notice of.

In their persons, these people are of a middle size, and well proportioned; their features appear regular, but their faces are so bedaubed with dirt and filth, that it is impossible to say what sort of complexion they have. That person seems to be reckoned the greatest beau amongst them, whose face is one entire piece of smut and grease, and his hair well daubed with the same composition. It has been already observed, that their noses and ears are ornamented with beads, or teeth, if they cannot procure any thing else; that they have likewise a long slit cut in the under lip, parallel with the mouth, which is ornamented much in the same manner with the nose and ears; this it was discovered was always in proportion to the person's wealth. The Queen's company saw only one woman, and the people with her behaved with great civility, and attended her with great respect: her face, contrary to the general custom, was tolerably clean, and her complexion and features far from disagreeable: indeed there are much worse-looking women in England. The King's crew saw three. Their small canoes are so constructed, as to hold but one, or at most two persons; and both these and the large ones are covered with skins.

CHAPTER IV.

Captains determined to try for the Entrance by Cape Hinchinbrooke—Breezes, Weather, &c.—Capt. Portlock ill—His consequent Intentions—Visited by Capt. Dixon—The Queen Charlotte takes the lead—Mount Fairweather seen—They change their Course—Make for Cross Sound—Disappointed—A Misake—Allowance of Water by Captain Portlock—Cape Edgecombe seen—Expectation of making the Bay of Islands—Finding a good Port—Attempt fruitless—A Ledge of Rocks perceived—The Reef cleared—Resolved to steer for King George's Sound—An Island discovered—Another—Split Rock—Whale-boat sent to sound—Signal for her to return—Off King George's Sound—A Canoe with two Indians—Presents made them—Few Fish caught—Beating off and on—A violent Hurricane—Remarkable Claps of Thunder—Uncommon Flashes of Lightning—Vessels labour exceedingly—The Meteors called Compañants flying about—The Queen Charlotte in Danger of two Breakers—Out of Danger—No Probability of getting into the Sound—Captain Portlock's Resolution—Communicates his Intention to Captain Dixon—They give up George's Sound, and bear away for Sandwich Islands—King George obliged to cleve-reef her Top-sails—Maintop-sail split—Another bent, &c.—A fiery Meteor playing about the Queen—Sailors alarmed—Owyhee's high Mountains seen—Three large Sharks caught—Several Canoes seen—Prevented from reaching the Vessel—Natives hold up Signals of Peace—Whale-boat sent out—Meeting with the Indians—Trade carried on—Dexterity in Thieving—Friendly Departure—Birds, &c. seen—Return of the Boat—Mr. Macleod's Account—Description of the Island, &c.—Captain Portlock consults Captain Dixon—Their Determination—A Canoe in Danger—The Indians saved—Their Gratitude—Whales seen—Anchorage in King George's Bay.

THE Captains finding it impracticable to get into Prince William's Sound by the S. W. passage, being at present too far to the eastward, were determined to try for the entrance by Cape Hinchinbrooke, as the weather was now moderate, and there was a favourable breeze.

There were fresh north-easterly breezes, with squally weather, from the 29th of August to the 3d of September. On the 4th, Captain Portlock, finding himself very ill, dispatched the whale-boat for Capt. Dixon, intending that if his indisposition continued, and he was thereby prevented from keeping the deck, the Queen Charlotte should take the lead, and make for Cross Sound; from thence to Cape Edgecombe, and afterwards to King George's Sound, where it was previously determined to winter, and build during their stay a shalop of about 60 or 70 tons burthen. Capt. Dixon immediately visited Captain Portlock, and promised he would faithfully follow whatever directions he might be pleased to give.

On the 9th Captain Portlock was so ill, as not to be able to keep the deck; accordingly the Queen took the lead. Mount Fairweather was seen in the

forenoon, bearing E. N. E. As the wind was E. S. E. they changed their course to N. E. in order to make Cross Sound; but a message came from Capt. Dixon, to acquaint Captain Portlock, that their expectations of making Cross Sound were baffled, there being no appearance of a port in this situation, agreeable to that which is laid down in Capt. Cook's chart, for it seems Capt. Cook mistook a deep valley with low land in it for an opening in the land. Accordingly they tacked, and stood to the southward. They saw land right ahead, at 11 o'clock in the forenoon; which at two o'clock bore from N. W. to E. by S. about six miles distance.

On account of the long continuance of bad weather, and the precariousness of making a port on the coast, Captain Portlock deemed it expedient on the 11th to put the ship's company to an allowance of water, two quarts each per day.

On the 13th they steered E. N. E. in order to make the land near Cape Edgecombe; and as their sails and rigging were very much damaged with the heavy gales, &c. they were the more eagerly bent upon making this harbour.

sea-
mar-
but
cateft
f for
reely
of a
e of.
iddle
appear
dirt
rt of
o be
hose
l his
It
ears
can-
wife
the
fame
ifco-
fon's
wo-
great
her
rably
rou
king
hree.
l but
and

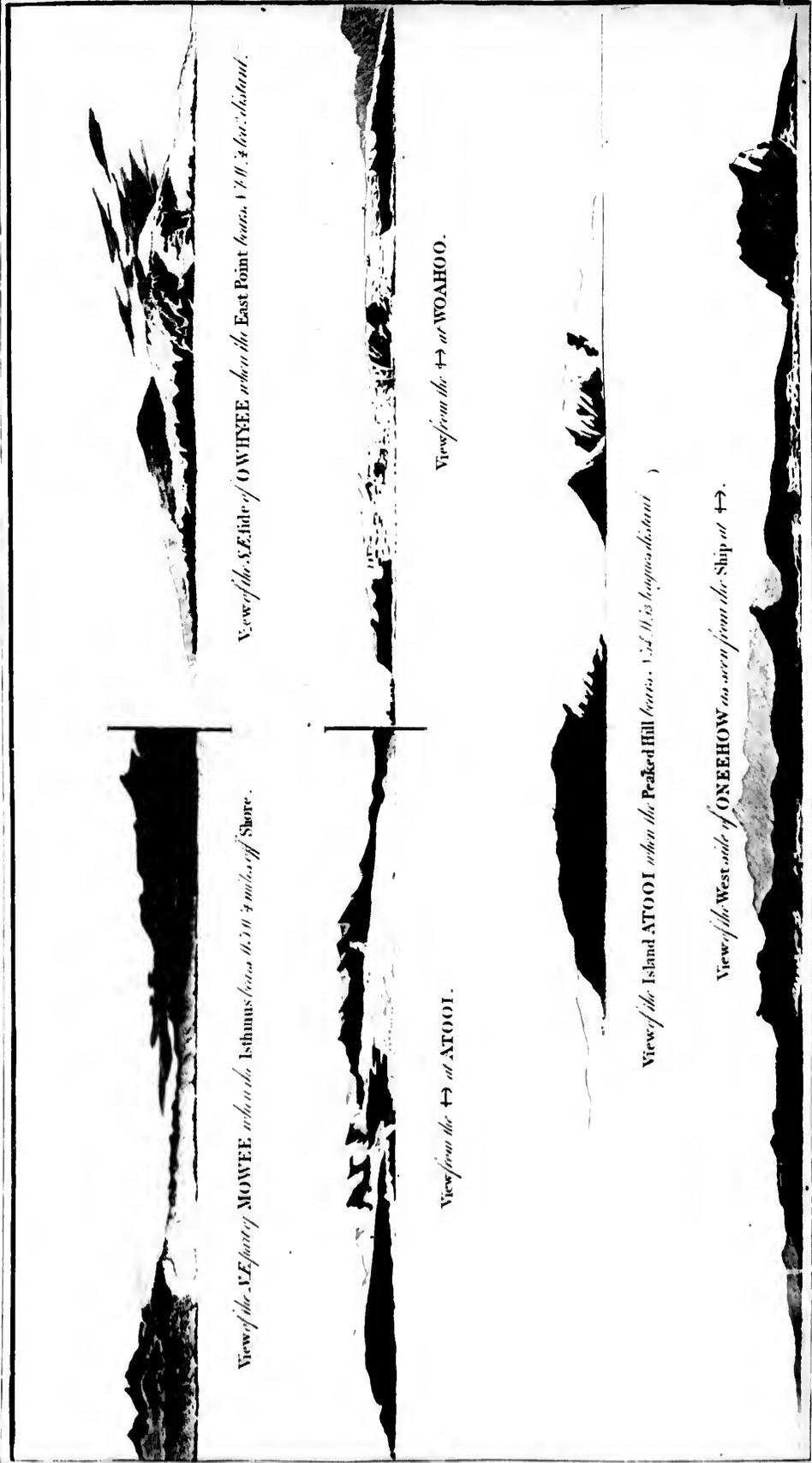
ill-
atber
er by
ort-
ound
king
-A
ly-
er-
tain
-reef
rmed
bing
ried
ount
e in

s E.
er to
Capt.
ex-
lled,
tua-
apt.
k a
g in
d to
, at
lock
hiles

wea-
on
t on
ance

r to
heir
the
pent

On



View of the S.E. side of OWHYEE when the East Point bears N 70 W 2/3 Sec. distant.

View of the N.E. part of MOWEE when the Isthmus bears N. 110 3/4 miles off Shore.

View from the ↗ at WOHOO.

View from the ↗ at ATOOI.

View of the Island ATOOI when the Peaked Hill bears N 22 1/2 W 1/2 Sec. distant

View of the West side of ONEEHOW as seen from the Ship at ↗.

On the 14
 E. by N. to
 noon Cape
 ten miles distant
 They kept
 tion of findin
 great hopes o
 attempt was
 two leagues o
 appearance of
 ledge of rock
 fels, stretch
 were falling
 rapidity of th
 cessary to ha
 wind backing
 enabled to cle
 The weathe
 tempestuous,
 rate: they p
 no likelihood
 Edgecombe,
 away very fa
 attempts for t
 for King Geo
 intended to ke
 bour was acc
 might not be l
 On the 18th
 when they we
 bour, nor wa
 place being inh
 able, and the v
 On the 21st
 E. by E. half E
 tude 50 deg.
 28 min. anothe
 bore N. 48 deg.
 another N. 45
 large shark was
 On the 22d
 fresh breeze fr
 the westward o
 seemed to be j
 this was call
 of land bore N.
 the coast forms
 some of which
 the sea was low
 ing the shore, C
 boat to found;
 appearance of
 return. They
 shore, in 34 fat
 On the 23d t
 They met a ca
 from shore, wi
 persuaded to en
 them a few pres
 They then mad
 lies between Wo
 At five o'clock t
 King George's S
 ers that lie off t
 leagues distant
 73 deg. E. abou
 termmost land W
 They were no
 bour, and persi
 duty: the 24th
 off and on. On
 morning, the wi
 was a most viol
 were remarkably
 so uncommonly
 the people on de
 time, every flash
 behind; this bro
 occasioned the v
 No. 8.

On the 14th there was land seen, bearing from E. by N. to N. W. about 14 miles distance. About noon Cape Edgecombe bore S. 60 deg. E. about ten miles distance.

They kept steering to the westward, in expectation of finding the Bay of Islands, where they had great hopes of making a good port; but even this attempt was fruitless, for when they had got within two leagues of the land they could not see the least appearance of an harbour, or even a safe bay. A ledge of rocks was perceived northward of the vessels, stretching some distance from the shore: as they were falling in with these very fast, through the rapidity of the current, Capt. Dixon found it necessary to haul off shore to the westward, and the wind backing a little to the southward, they were enabled to clear the reef.

The weather still continued exceedingly bad and tempestuous, though at intervals somewhat moderate: they plied with variable winds, but finding no likelihood of meeting with a harbour near Cape Edgecombe, and as the season was now slipping away very fast, they declined making any further attempts for the Bay of Islands, and resolved to steer for King George's Sound: notwithstanding, they intended to keep in with the coast, that if any harbour was accidentally met with, the opportunity might not be lost.

On the 18th they were well in with the land, when they were convinced that there was no harbour, nor was there the least appearance of the place being inhabited. The wind continued favourable, and the weather became moderate.

On the 21st an island was discovered, bearing N. E. by E. half E. about six leagues distant. In latitude 50 deg. 47 min. and in longitude 129 deg. 28 min. another was seen in the afternoon, which bore N. 28 deg. W. about five leagues distant; also another N. 45 deg. E. about 10 leagues ditto. A large shark was now along-side the Queen.

On the 22d they stood to the eastward, with a fresh breeze from the N. W. At some distance to the westward of the Point there is a rock, which seemed to be joined by a low reef to the coast: this was called Split Rock. The easternmost point of land bore N. N. E. and from that to Woody Point the coast forms a kind of bay, covered with pines, some of which looked very beautiful: the land next the sea was low, and tolerably level. On approaching the shore, Capt. Portlock dispatched the whale-boat to found; but at half past two, as there was no appearance of shelter, he made a signal for her to return. They were now about three miles from shore, in 34 fathoms, over a foul bottom.

On the 23d they were off King George's Sound. They met a canoe about two o'clock, coming off from shore, with two Indians, who could not be persuaded to enter the ship. Capt. Portlock made them a few presents, and bought some fish of them. They then made for that part of the coast which lies between Woody Point and King George's Sound. At five o'clock the north point of the entrance into King George's Sound bore N. 73 deg. E. the breakers that lie off that point E. half N. about three leagues distant; the easternmost land in sight, S. 73 deg. E. about nine leagues distant, and the westernmost land W. by N. half N. 13 leagues distant.

They were now very anxious to make this harbour, and persisted with great eagerness and assiduity: the 24th and the 25th they still kept beating off and on. On the 26th about three o'clock in the morning, the wind shifted to the S. E. and there was a most violent hurricane. The claps of thunder were remarkably loud, and the flashes of lightning so uncommonly fierce, that between every interval, the people on deck were blinded for a considerable time, every flash leaving a strong sulphurous stench behind; this brought on a very heavy sea, which occasioned the vessels to strain and labour exceed-

No. 8.

ingly. The meteors called by sailors compassants, were at each mast-head, and at every yard-arm. These gave a light at least equal to the same number of lights hung aloft: they were likewise flying about on all parts of the rigging. In about three hours the storm abated, but there was still a very heavy sea, and some light baffling winds, with thick hazy weather, which prevented them from standing in for the shore. About ten o'clock the land near the entrance into King George's Sound was visible, bearing from N. W. to E. about nine miles distant.

There were still variable winds, rain, and intervening calms, with a heavy swell setting right in shore, which rendered it necessary to keep from land as much as possible, particularly as there runs a reef of breakers for two miles to the northward from the point of the harbour, and about two miles from shore.

On the 27th a fresh gale sprung up at S. E. by E. attended with thick rainy weather. The King George now stood to the N. E. by E. the Queen stood directly for the harbour and made sail, but there being a heavy swell from the southward, they were set unawares on the breakers, which rendered their situation somewhat alarming. However they were out of danger about eleven o'clock. The King George being to the southward of the Queen, Captain Portlock felt no apprehensions on his own account.

The next day there being the same heavy swell to encounter, it was impossible to make the harbour, and Captain Portlock seeing no probability of getting into the sound this season, was determined, particularly as his men were very much exhausted for want of recreation, and the sails and rigging exceedingly damaged, to leave the coast and stand immediately for Sandwich Islands. Accordingly about seven o'clock, he hailed the Queen Charlotte, and communicated his determination to Captain Dixon: at the same time directing him to steer S. S. W. or S. by W. if the wind permitted. The harbour now bore E. N. E. about seven leagues distant.

On the 29th they were enabled by a fresh breeze which sprung up from the westward, to follow Captain Portlock's directions. They proceeded towards Sandwich Islands for several days, without meeting any thing worthy of notice, during which, the winds were variable.

On the 9th of November the wind blew very fresh and in squalls from the S. E. there was much rain, lightning, &c. they were obliged in the King George to close-reef their top-sails, but before it was accomplished, the main-top-sail was split: another was immediately bent and close-reefed; after this, they had variable winds and unsettled weather.

On the 11th there was a kind of fiery meteor seen playing about the Queen Charlotte, which did not a little alarm the sailors, who judged it an ill omen.

On the 14th the high mountain on the Island of Owhyhee was seen with some patches of snow on its top, bearing W. S. W. half W. about 30 leagues distant. This day the Queen Charlotte caught three large sharks.

On the 17th as they ran along the coast, several canoes were seen, who were discouraged from their attempt to approach the vessel, on account of the heavy sea and smart gales.

They now approached the north point of the island, and in rounding the point, founded, and had 16 fathoms water, over a bottom of white sand and beds of coral rock, but there was no shelter for ships to anchor under; nor was it safe, on account of a heavy swell proceeding from some steep black rocks, against which the surf beats with great vehemence.

By means of a gentle breeze, they ran along very near the shore, where a number of natives of both sexes had assembled, holding up slips of white cloth,

* Z

23

as a token of amity and peace. Captain Portlock expecting to find good shelter in a bay situated on the west side of the island, sent his first mate Mr. Macleod in the whale-boat to examine the bay; meanwhile the ships lay-to, in order to trade with the natives: by this means they had an opportunity of obtaining the different produce of the island, such as hogs, bread-fruit, plantains, cocoa-nuts, taro, wild geese, fowls, and a great quantity of excellent salt, for which they gave nails, toes, and other trifles: the trade which they carried on was so brisk, that within a few hours they had large quantities of every thing.

During the whole day, the natives traded in a very honest, fair manner; but those who attended their merchants could not refrain from thieving: their natural propensity for picking and stealing had taught them much art and sagacity. One of them, with peculiar dexterity, stole a boat-hook out of a boat along-side, though at the same time there was a keeper in her: another fellow also crept up the rudder-chains, and stole the azimuth compass out of one of the cabin-windows, and got clear off, notwithstanding there was a person appointed to watch them over the stern. There were several other articles likewise pilfered; indeed it was impossible for the captains' men to prevent it, as there were very near, if not more, than 250 canoes about the vessel, which certainly contained upwards of a thousand people.

At five in the afternoon Mr. Macleod returned. He reported that there was no safe anchorage in the bay; and that there was not only a bad bottom of coral and sand, but that the harbour was also entirely exposed to south-westerly winds. This being the case, their intention of anchoring at Owhyhee was laid aside: they determined, however, to keep near this point a day or two, if the wind would permit, in order to lay in a good store of hogs, which were in great abundance here.

This part of the island affords but few cocoa-nuts or plantains: those vegetables which are in greatest plenty are, sweet potatoes, bread-fruit, &c. Here and there are little spots of white sandy beach, where the natives generally keep their canoes. The adjacent country is very pleasant, and there appeared to be several villages, which were situated among fine groves of cocoa-nut trees. Among the various curiosities brought by the natives to sell, was a kind of baskets, about 18 inches high, and five or six ditto in diameter, of a circular form, and very neatly manufactured: the wicker-work of which they were made was frequently variegated with twigs of a red colour, and had a good effect in appearance. These baskets were quite new to the English, as they never met with any of them before.

During the 18th they lay-to and plied occasionally, as was most convenient, during their trading business. The men were very busy in killing and salting hogs for sea-store. There were light, variable airs, sometimes calm, attended with strong lightning to the westward.

On the 19th, in the forenoon, Captain Portlock went in his whale-boat on board the Queen Charlotte, in order to consult Capt. Dixon respecting the best manner of proceeding. This being a very fine promising day, Capt. Portlock proposed making his visit longer than usual. As their vessels were very light, on account of their water being nearly expended, and their rigging fore and aft very much damaged, they thought it necessary to quit their present situation as soon as possible, and were determined to proceed for King George's Bay, Whoohoo, where they were in hopes of lying well sheltered, and having an opportunity of repairing their hulls and rigging.

On account of a strong breeze springing up from the S. W. Capt. Portlock returned to his own vessel much sooner than he intended: they then bore away to the northward, hoping to pass to the eastward,

and run down for Whoohoo. Some few canoes, which had been along-side the vessel, now paddled for shore, on account of the smartness of the gale. The extremes of Mowee bore N. by W. half W. and W. by N. about four leagues distant.

When they were within two leagues of Mowee, they saw a canoe to the S. W. making after them. She had a small mat up for a sail, and was paddling very hard. Seeing her distress, the King brought-to, and picked her up. There were four men in this canoe, and a great quantity of potatoes, plantains, &c. They understood that these men were natives of Mowee, who on perceiving the vessels standing in for the east part of it, in hopes of bringing their little cargo to a good market, had accordingly put off therewith; but meeting with foul weather, and a strong contrary wind, after they bore away from the island, they could not possibly return to shore, and therefore set their little sail, and used every effort in their power to reach the King. Their canoe, when they came along-side, was almost full of water, and the men so exhausted with fatigue, that the sailors were obliged to help them up the vessel's side. Their things were got safe into the ship; their canoe hauled in upon deck, and every exertion used in order to recover them, which fortunately had the desired effect. These poor men were exceedingly grateful, for the favours and attention which they experienced.

In the evening the wind, which blew S. W. encreased to a strong gale, which was attended with much thunder, lightning, and rain. Accordingly, they lay-to during the night, under a close-reefed maintop-sail, wearing occasionally, and taking every method to guard against any mischief they might receive from sudden storms.

On the 20th the weather was more moderate; the wind still the same. About noon the breeze lessened, and there was a calm. They were now joined by several canoes; but what they brought to sell was very trifling. They had light, baffling winds, with alternate calms; on which account they kept standing along shore, in order to purchase whatever refreshments were brought to them by the natives; but the weather being very unsettled, no canoes ventured near them till about noon on the 22d: they were then visited by a number of both large and small ones, from Mowee and Morotoi; of whom various articles were purchased, for the ship's use. At this time the extremes of Mowee bore from S. W. to S. E. by E. four leagues distant; and the extremes of Morotoi W. half S. and W. S. W. half S. five leagues. These people, who came from Mowee and Morotoi, seemed to admire the English vessels more than any of the other inhabitants. It is probable, therefore, that these people were unacquainted with English ships.

On the 23d, the Indians who had been saved by the King now determined on going to shore, as the weather was clear and pleasant: Captain Portlock endeavoured to prevail upon them to remain on board till the next day, as he wished to have an opportunity of standing close in shore, when at the same time they might have departed with greater safety: however they made light of the distance to shore, though it was five leagues, and were very anxious on taking the present opportunity. The English, accordingly, loaded them with presents before their departure, so that these poor fellows had not much occasion to regret their late misfortune.

Nov. 24th. The wind still kept to the southward, and the weather remained unsettled. They wore, and stood to the S. S. W.

For the greatest part of the next day the winds were light and variable. In the evening a fresh breeze sprung up from the southward, which continued with very little alteration during the 26th and 27th: indeed the wind among these islands seemed never to blow from one point for any duration; nor could any dependance be placed, at this

oes,
led
ale.
W.
vee,
cm,
ing
ght-
in
an-
vere
fels
ng-
rd-
foul
ore
urn
fcd
neir
full
ue,
the
the
ery
for-
men
at-
en-
with
gly,
fcd
ery
ght
the
lef-
ned
fell
ids,
ept
ever
ves:
oes
ad:
arge
om
ife.
W.
ex-
S.
wee
fels
ro-
ted
by
the
ock
on
an
the
ter.
to
ery
The
nts
had
ne.
th-
hey.
nds.
leth
on-
6th
nds
ra-
thig
ame

time of the
times they ha
W. N. W. a
as they opene
On the 28th
rotui, white
whom were p
toes, &c. In
ing showers :
more agreeabl
On the 29th
Whoahoo was
bore W. S. W

Portrait of ANIAN of the SANDWICH ISLANDS with his HELMET.



YOUNG WOMAN of the SANDWICH ISLANDS.



Application made
Portlock send
latter—His
Taboo taken
information from
Watering comp
George's Water
out in the Lon
King—Shew
Information
Behaviour of
Surrounding
from the King
some Chiefs—
Gale—Three
—Anecdotes re
Description of
—Departure

AS soon as
canoes, in
pole of. Appli
water, on the
would gladly ha
the water, but als
by the king's ord
On this account
able to court th
sent a present to
acquaintance the
wanted both wa
was most humbl
that they might h
reasonable terms.
On the 1st of
nees came along
tables and water,
they purchased a
the Queen began
and all, it being v
This day the p
lock : on their m
which is a general
he then informed
preparing to visit
again to the shore
and they might h
with every thing
tion the captain m
him another for t
would del' er to
The priest departe
again at eleven, ac
small canoes, a
canoe, which was p
which was the kin
Though there wa
coming, yet when
George he laid af
permit any of his a
captain had granted

time of the year upon a steady trade-wind, sometimes they had easterly winds, then southerly, S. W. W. N. W. and in short all round the compass, just as they opened different points of land.

On the 28th they were within four miles of Morotoi, where several canoes came along-side, of whom were purchased some small hogs, taro, potatoes, &c. In the afternoon there were some refreshing showers of rain, which rendered the weather more agreeable than it had been for some time past.

On the 29th, about eight o'clock in the morning, Whoohoo was seen; and at noon the East Hummock bore W. S. W. about eight leagues distant. During

the afternoon they kept standing along the coast of Morotoi.

On the 30th they bore away for Whoahoo; the west end of Morotoi bore S. 45 deg. E. and Whoahoo S. W. was about two leagues distant. At four o'clock they hauled Round Dick's Point; and at five o'clock came to anchor in King George's Bay, with the best bower, in 12 fathoms, over a bottom of grey sand, intermixed with small red specks; and moored with the stream anchor, in 11 fathoms. At this time the ships' company were in good health, and excellent spirits.

CHAPTER V.

Application made to the Natives for Water—Water, Hogs, Vegetables, &c. tabooed by the King's Orders—Captain Portlock sends a Present to the King, and his Friend the Priest—His Message to the former—A Visit from the latter—His Information—Departure—Return with the King—His Behaviour to the English—Orders—The Taboo taken off—Employments—Another Visit from the King and Priest—Description of the Yava Root—Information from one of the old Priest's Attendants—Captains' Determination in consequence thereof—The Queen's Watering completed—The King visits Captain Dixon—Description of the King—His Nephews, &c.—The King George's Watering completed—Sbarks caught, and presented to the English—Mr. Hayward and Mr. White sent out in the Long-boat—The Priest's Warning—A Visit from the King—Captains' Caution—Behaviour before the King—Shows him the Effects of their Fire-Arms—Strange Conduct of the Priest—Return of the Boat—Mate's Information—Piapia and Tewanooha impetrate Capt. Portlock to take them to Attoui—His Compliance—Further Behaviour of the Indians—The English take leave of them—Depart from Whoahoo—Anchor in Wynoa Bay—Surrounded by Canoes—Excursion on Shore—Occurrences—Refreshments procured—Mutual Presents—A Visit from the King—Description of him—Piapia and Tewanooha introduced to the King by the Captain—Account of some Chiefs—Captain Portlock goes on Shore—Ceremony of the Taboo—Remarks—Excursions on Shore—Heavy Gale—Three Invalids left on Shore—Anchorage—The Invalids brought back on board—Anchorage in Wynoa Bay—Anecdotes relative to the Natives—King orders a House to be built for Capt. Portlock—Departure from Attoui—Description of the Country—Arrival at Oneebow—The King George's Anchors recovered—Curfery Observations—Departure from the Sandwich Islands.

AS soon as they had anchored, they saw a few canoes, but they had nothing material to dispose of. Application was now made to them for water, on the same terms as before; which they would gladly have complied with, but that not only the water, but also hogs, vegetables, &c. were tabooed by the king's orders.

On this account Capt. Portlock deemed it advisable to court the king's favour. Accordingly, he sent a present to the king, and another to his old acquaintance the priest, with a message that as they wanted both water and refreshments, his majesty was most humbly solicited to take off the taboo, that they might have a supply of those articles upon reasonable terms.

On the 1st of December, by day-light, a few canoes came along-side of the vessels, with some vegetables and water, (notwithstanding the taboo) which they purchased as before for nails. The people of the Queen began now to overhaul their rigging fore and aft, it being very much out of order.

This day the priest paid a visit to Captain Portlock: on their meeting, he handed up a small pig, which is a general token of friendship and peace; he then informed the captain, that the king was preparing to visit him, and that when he returned again to the shore, the taboo would be taken off, and they might be accommodated by the natives with every thing they wanted. For this information the captain made him a present; and also gave him another for the king, which he requested he would deliver to his majesty with his own hand. The priest departed about ten o'clock, and returned again at eleven, accompanied with several large and small canoes. A little after appeared a very large canoe, which was paddled by sixteen stout men, in which was the king and all the principal chiefs. Though there was much state and ceremony in his coming, yet when he embarked on board the King George he laid aside all his dignity, and would not permit any of his attendants to follow him, till the captain had granted his permission. The king had

brought some hogs and vegetables by way of present, and his chiefs likewise a few articles. The captain, in return, gave them presents agreeable to their fancy.

Tahceterre (which was the king's name) remained on board for some time; he then gave orders that the English should be furnished with every thing they wanted. At evening he took his leave, and was followed by all the rest of the canoes.

In consequence of the king's orders the taboo was taken off, and the natives now brought a plentiful supply of water, hogs, vegetables, &c. accordingly one party of Captain Portlock's men were employed in salting pork, while another were repairing the rigging; the carpenters were also at work in decking the long-boats.

On the 3d Tahceterre paid Captain Portlock another visit: also the priest who was constantly on board, and was remarkable for drinking large quantities of yava. He had generally two men with him, for the purpose of chewing this root for him, and they were employed so constantly that their jaws were continually tired.

The yava is a root somewhat resembling liquorice in shape and colour, but totally different in taste. None but the chiefs, or arees, have the king's permission to use it. These never chew it themselves, but thus employ their servants to chew and administer it. He first begins with chewing a sufficient quantity, till it is well masticated: then it is put into a neat wooden bowl made for the purpose, and a small quantity of water being poured over, it is well squeezed, and the liquor always strained through a piece of cloth. When thus completed, the servant gives it to his master, and it is drank with the greatest relish. This root is of an intoxicating nature, and seems rather to stupify, than exhilarate the spirits: its effects are very pernicious, as was apparent in the old priest, who in consequence thereof, was exceedingly debilitated, while his body was covered over with a white scurf, which had the appearance of a leprosy.

One of the old priest's attendants, who was employed

ployed in preparing the yava, informed Captain Portlock, that to the westward of Point Rose, in Queen Charlotte's Bay, there was a very agreeable harbour, where vessels could lie in great security. The captain was accordingly determined to send the long-boat, as soon as the carpenter had finished it, to examine it, intending to remove the ships there immediately, if it answered this yava-chewer's description. This man, whose proper name was Towanooha, notwithstanding his occupation of chewing yavas, possessed considerable property on the island, and was indeed a very intelligent man: he told the captain that when the boat was ready to go, he would very gladly accompany his mate, in order to point out the place. Captain Portlock returned his thanks, and readily accepted his polite offer.

This day about noon the Queen's company had completed their water, and could have procured a great deal more, the natives still bringing it with the greatest avidity. Indeed this is not to be wondered at, if we consider the great value they set on iron, and that water costs them only the trouble of fetching from shore.

Besides nails, the English found buttons very useful in their traffic with these people. To the credit of the men be it spoken, they looked on them as things of no value; but the females saw them in a very different point of view, and were exceedingly fond of wearing them round their wrists and ankles as bracelets, calling them Booboo, and sometimes Porceema. As gallantry is perhaps equally prevalent here, as in more civilized nations, the men frequently preferred buttons to nails (contrary to their better judgment) in their traffic. This is an incontestible proof, that the power of beauty is not confined within the narrow limits of our polite European circles, but has equal influence all over the world.

In the forenoon of the 4th, Tahceerre, the king, paid Captain Dixon a visit. He came in a large double canoe, attended by two young men, who, as it was understood, were his nephews, and a number of other chiefs.

The king is a good-looking man, and appears about forty-five or fifty years old: he is tall, straight, and well-made, but his eyes seem rather weak, and affected with a kind of rheum; but whether this is owing to disease, or to a temporary cold, cannot be ascertained. Though he frequently ate with the English, he never could be persuaded to touch either wine nor spirits; nor did he ever make use of the yava, water being always his drink. None of the chiefs had any thing striking in their appearance, though it was easy to see that they were above the common rank. The king's nephews were by far the finest men that were seen at any of the islands: they are not brothers. Piapia, the elder, being son to the king of Attoui; and Myaro, the younger, son to a sister of Teecerterre. Piapia is about five feet nine inches high, straight, and well proportioned: his legs and thighs very muscular, his step firm, and rather graceful; and there is a dignity in his deportment which shews him to be a person of the first consequence. His countenance is free and open, but rather disfigured by the want of three fore-teeth, which, as it was understood, were broke for the loss of a relation, it being the custom here for the arees, or chiefs, to part with a tooth at the death of a friend; his legs, thighs, arms, and various parts of his body, are tattooed in a very curious manner. Myaro is nearly as tall as his cousin, but cast in a more delicate mould: he walks erect and stately, and his step is very graceful and majestic.

Captain Dixon presented the king with several presents, having received from his majesty the same marks of favour which he had bestowed upon Capt. Portlock. The king also repeated his visit to the King George, and in addition to his presents, brought a quantity of very fine mullet. This day Captain Portlock's company had completed their

watering. They were also supplied with fire-wood by the natives.

On the 5th four or five sharks were caught, and presented to the Indians, by whom they are greatly esteemed.

The people were all busily employed both on the 5th and 6th, with taking in wood, overhauling the rigging, killing and salting hogs, &c. &c.

From the 7th to the 11th there was no material occurrence, except that the old priest was still a constant visitor. During this time they had fresh gales from the N. E. and E. N. E. with frequent squalls and unsettled weather. The surf now ran so very high on the beach, that a few canoes, who had ventured off, were nearly overset, and of course obliged to give up their design; two of them who had got along-side of the King, after they had disposed of their articles, were making for shore, but not being able to land, were compelled to return to the ship, and stay on board for the night.

The carpenters having finished the long-boat on the 12th, Captain Portlock sent it out according to his former resolution, with Mr. Hayward, his third mate, and Mr. White, who was Captain Dixon's third mate, to make an accurate survey of the bay: Towanooha (according to his promise) accompanied them as pilot.

The behaviour of the priest became now very strange and mysterious: he appeared uneasy and restless, and upon Captain Portlock's enquiring the reason, intimated that the king Tahceerre was a bad man, and designed to do the English mischief: he pointed to a distant building, where he said the king and chiefs were going to make great offerings to their different gods, and if they were at all encouraged by their oracles, they would immediately attack the English; he therefore advised the captain, in a very friendly manner, to be upon his guard. Captain Portlock, accordingly, ordered a constant watch to be kept on the cables; though, at the same time, he doubted the information, as neither the king nor his chiefs ever betrayed the least inclination to hostility.

The next day the king, and a number of chiefs, visited Captain Portlock; who was well prepared for an attack, if offered; but, on the contrary, the natives behaved with their usual familiarity and good-nature. The king, however, took notice of those preparations, which were made in case of violence, and discoursed with his attendants about the fire-arms: after some time, he appeared desirous to know the effects of them; and Captain Portlock judged it prudent to gratify his curiosity; accordingly he took a loaded pistol, and killed a pig that was at some distance, to the great astonishment of the king and chiefs, who were all alarmed at the explosion, and more so at the fatal wound which the pig received. The king staid for about two hours on board, and then took his leave. If any attack had been meditated, there is little doubt but the impression which this pistol had evidently made upon their minds, removed all hostile intentions. The priest came on board soon after the king's departure, and still expatiated upon the evil designs of Tahceerre. He then left Captain Portlock, and visited Captain Dixon, where he repeated his former intimations.

Messrs. Hayward and White returned on the 15th, in the long-boat. They reported that there was no convenient anchorage in any part of the bay, and that there was from sixty-six to seventy fathom water, close in shore. The country, he added, was very pleasant, and the town where (according to Towanooha's information) the king chiefly resides, very large: it was called Whyteete.

Not a single native came near the vessel now for two days: it was accordingly suspected that they were tabooed. The ships' crews were busily employed about their rigging, and getting the vessel ready for sea.

L.S.
with fire-wood
caught, and
they are greatly
ed both on the
verhauling the
&c.
as no material
was still a con-
had fresh gales
requent squalls
ow ran to very
who had ven-
course obliged
n who had got
had disposed of
but not being
rn to the ship,

the long-boat on
ut according to
ward, his third
captain Dixon's
vey of the bay:
e) accompanied

came now very
red uneasy and
s enquiring the
'aheeterre was a
nglish mischief:
here he said the
e great offerings
y were at all en-
uld immediately
rified the captain,
upon his guard.
dered a constant
ugh, at the same
s, as neither the
he least inclina-

umber of chiefs,
s well prepared
the contrary, the
familiarity and
took notice of
de in case of vio-
ndants about the
eared desirous to
Captain Portlock
riosity; accord-
killed a pig that
e astonishment of
l alarmed at the
al wound which
d for about two
is leave. If any
little doubt but
d evidently made
ostile intentions.
after the king's
n the evil designs
ain Portlock, and
peated his former

urned on the 15th,
that there was no
of the bay, and
venty fathom was
y, he added, was
re (according to
ng chiefly resides,
ee.

he vessel now for
pected that they
were busily em-
getting the vessel



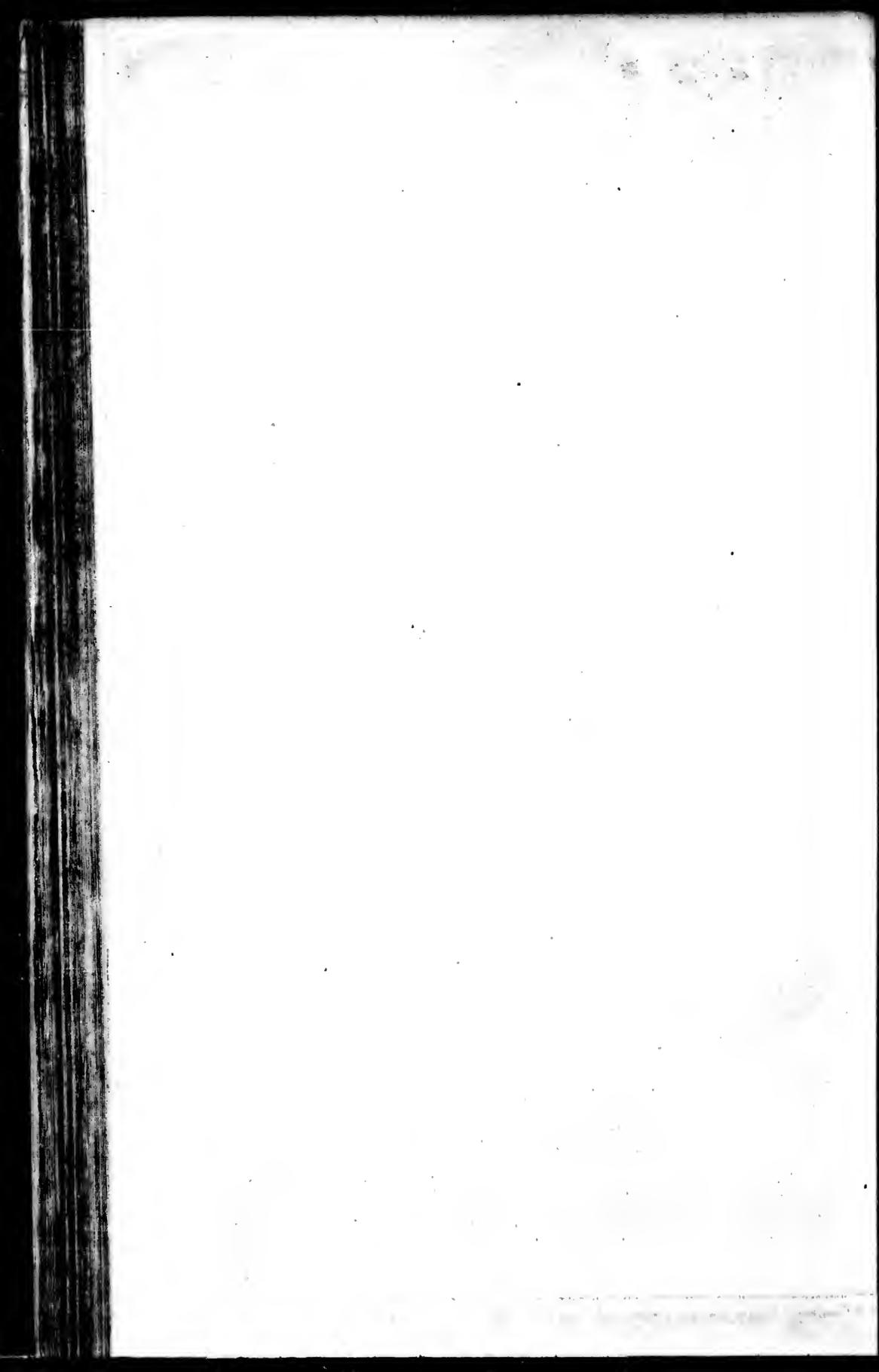
A. Wicker of Kamasschukka

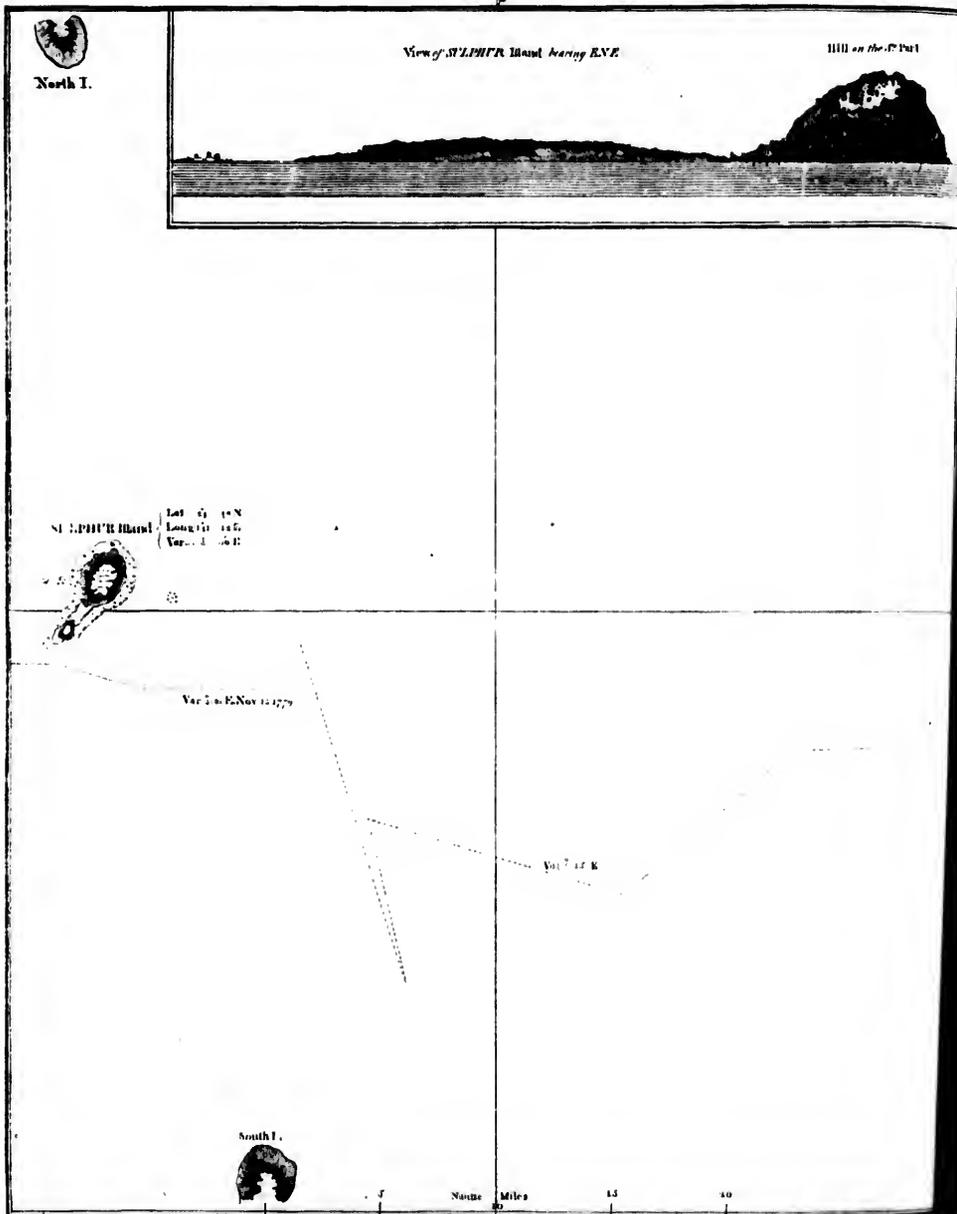
From the collection of the British Museum, London.



A Staff of Kamashaka

Illustrations from the collection of the Smithsonian Institution





On the 17th and appeared king. He said their offerings but that the themselves will
 Captain Port
 Piapia and Tow
 to Attoui. Th
 to the king, (w
 gave his confer
 land, to equip
 this, Towanool
 the priest's serv
 root as his for
 natives were fe
 house; and abo
 conflagration o
 Captain Portloc
 reason of these
 that the chiefs h
 had therefore t
 gether.

Several canoe
 brought a supply
 tory account coul
 laid on, or wher
 to come near the
 lately indulged t
 wards understood
 detected in eating
 which being deem
 first magnitude, th
 fice to appease the
 rious conduct of
 for by the followin
 the cause of the fir
 a house, as a repo
 his countrymen m
 course of their traf
 be deposited in th
 of which was to be
 use. During the
 &c. were tabooed.

Piapia and Tow
 King George. So
 his attendants cam
 to take care of his
 Attoui to put him
 was the king's bro
 leave of the Englis
 cordial manner, re
 noon every thing v

About midnight
 lotte's small cable
 on which they let
 in the cable, they
 some supposed had
 bottom; others th
 some of the natives
 for their anchor, b
 buoy being sunk.
 get it on board, an
 pcle, when sudden
 lawier, which they
 cable, remaining to
 at the bows. Th
 this vexatious circ
 ever able to recover
 ance of tempestuou
 morning being ve
 They now found it
 situation, without
 it was determined t
 Attoui as soon as p
 On the 19th they
 lock made the signal
 which the did: at
 Nov. 8.

On the 17th the old pilot visited both vessels, and appeared more than ever exasperated with the king. He said that the king and chiefs had made their offerings to their gods, and consulted them; but that the gods were good for nothing, and they themselves villains.

Captain Portlock was now strongly solicited by Piapia and Towanooha to take them along with him to Attoui. The captain, knowing it was agreeable to the king, (who had lately signified the same wish) gave his consent, and they immediately repaired to land, to equip themselves for the passage. After this, Towanooha no longer looked upon himself as the priest's servant, but drank as freely of the yava root as his former master. Towards evening the natives were seen pulling to pieces their new-built house; and about eight o'clock there was a general conflagration on shore. The next day (the 18th) Captain Portlock enquired of the priest what the reason of these fires was? The old man told him, that the chiefs had quarrelled with their gods, and had therefore burnt them and their houses together.

Several canoes now came to the vessels, and brought a supply of various articles; but no satisfactory account could then belearned why the taboo was laid on, or wherefore the women were not suffered to come near the vessels, with whom the sailors had lately indulged themselves: however, it was afterwards understood that one of their women had been detected in eating pork on board the King George, which being deemed among the natives a crime of the first magnitude, the poor wretch was offered a sacrifice to appease the wrath of their gods. The mysterious conduct of the priest was likewise accounted for by the following information, which was likewise the cause of the strict taboo. The king had just built a house, as a repository for all those articles which his countrymen might get from the English in the course of their traffic. Every thing was ordered to be deposited in this new-erected edifice, one half of which was to be appropriated to the king's own use. During the issuing of these orders, the bay, &c. were tabooed.

Piapia and Towanooha having now prepared themselves for their passage, came on board the King George. Some short time after the King and his attendants came on board, to request the captain to take care of his nephew; and on his arrival at Attoui to put him under the care of Taazo, who was the king's brother. Taheetera having taken leave of the English, and of Piapia, in the most cordial manner, returned to shore. In the afternoon every thing was ready for sailing.

About midnight on the 17th, the Queen Charlotte's small cable parted in a sudden gulf of wind, on which they let go their best bower. On heaving in the cable, they found it very much hurt, which some supposed had been done by the foulness of the bottom; others that it had been previously cut by some of the natives. The next day they searched for their anchor, but did not find it till noon, the buoy being sunk. They exerted their utmost to get it on board, and had nearly effected their purpose, when suddenly a squall came on and snapt the hawser, which they had bent to that part of the cable, remaining to the anchor when it was almost at the bows. They were greatly discouraged by this vexatious circumstance, and despaired of being ever able to recover it, as there was every appearance of tempestuous weather; however the next morning being very fine, they got it on board. They now found it impossible to keep their present situation, without damaging their cables; so that it was determined to leave this island, and steer for Attoui as soon as possible.

On the 19th they began to unmoor; Capt. Portlock made the signal to the Queen to weigh anchor, which she did: at night the signal was made to her

No. 8.

to anchor again, as the King's best bower cable had been cut by the Indians, which of course retarded their progress. The Queen accordingly stretched in the bay, and came to close by the King George.

On the 20th the King George being a-weigh, the Queen accordingly weighed, and made sail, standing out of the bay, with a moderate breeze at N. E.

On the 21st they had a strong breeze from the N. E. and on the 22d were in sight of Attoui. About three o'clock the King George anchored in 25 fathom; but as the Queen Charlotte was preparing to do the same, by checking the cable too soon, she dragged it off the bank, and could not get it to catch again with a whole cable out; therefore got her head off shore, hove her anchor up, and made sail. About five o'clock she came-to in a very good situation, near three miles N. W. of the King George, in 18 fathom water, over a sandy and partly muddy bottom. The King George lay eastward of Wymoa, about two miles distant from shore.

Soon after their anchorage they were visited by a number of canoes, who were well loaded with taro, potatoes, cocoa-nuts, sugar-cane, hogs, &c. they also brought a plentiful supply of excellent water. This island produces no yams, and very little bread-fruit.

On the 24th, Captain Portlock, with his two passengers and a sailor, went on shore to Wymoa, in order to explore the place. He was received by the inhabitants in a very friendly manner, and was also joined by a few chiefs, by whose means the crowd were kept at a respectful distance. When they had walked about three miles, they sat down to some refreshments: Captain Portlock was now invited to dine with Tiaana; but, anxious to find out a good bay, he declined his polite invitation; he promised, however, to see him on his return. The captain disappointed in his search for a harbour, now determined on coming back; however he and his companions being very much fatigued, they took up their lodging for the night in a very comfortable dwelling, belonging to Abbeaooe, where they were well entertained.

The next day they reached the shore, a-breast of the Queen Charlotte. The captain's companions walked down to Wymoa, while he, being anxious to get on board, took a canoe, and visited the Queen Charlotte: thence he proceeded in his whale-boat, which he found there, and got on board the King George about noon.

In the mean time the ships' crews had procured large quantities of provisions, and several fine hogs. There were also a variety of curiosities purchased, viz. caps, cloaks, mats, fishing-lines, hooks, necklaces, bags, grass-ropes, &c.

On the 25th Captain Portlock was visited by Tiaana, who behaved exceedingly friendly: he told him that the king, Abbenooe, and several chiefs intended shortly to pay him a visit. This day the sailor, whom Captain Portlock left on shore with his passengers, returned. Piapia and Towanooha still remained among the natives for a day longer.

On the 28th Abbenooe came on board the King George, and brought two canoes, loaded with different kinds of provisions, as a present for both vessels. After staying some time with Captain Portlock he went on board the Queen Charlotte to pay his respects to Captain Dixon. In the evening he returned again to the King George, where he remained for the night, and likewise the next day, on account of the squally weather. On the 30th he went on shore, and shortly after returned with Taazo, and several of the chiefs. His majesty brought a very handsome present, for which the captain made an ample return.

The captain now introduced Piapia and Towanooha to the king, who were immediately taken under his protection.

The

The king was about forty-five years of age; he was stout and well made; he seemed possessed of more understanding and good-nature than any of the natives. His behaviour to the English displayed much friendship and magnanimity. As soon as they left Captain Portlock, they visited Captain Dixon. His majesty was attended by Abbenooe, who, when he had left Taaao on shore, returned to the King George, where he slept in a cot that was hung on purpose for him in a cabin.

The next day the king repeated his visits, accompanied by his uncle, an elderly man, and a chief of great consequence; his name was Neehow-hooa. He was the greatest warrior that was in any of the islands. This veteran appeared hardy, though a cripple, and covered all over with wounds: one eye he had lost, and the other was decaying, by reason of his wounds. Mr. Hoggan, at the desire of Captain Portlock, dressed his wounds, and gave him some fresh dressings to apply daily. After a few hours, the king, his uncle, and their retinue, took their leave.

January 1st there were no canoes to be seen, on account of a tabooa being laid on, which is a kind of tax that the king imposes on the property of those subjects whose plantations are near at hand; by which means a certain portion of their different produce is exacted. Captain Portlock was brought by Abbenooe to see the ceremony, which was remarkable for its great order and regularity, but more especially for the good-humour and cheerfulness of the people who were paying their contributions, which were all collected in separate heaps.

As soon as the tabooa was finished, the king ordered the several heaps to be made into two parcels, which when done he presented to Capt. Portlock, for the use of the vessels, and desired that the captain would send his boat for them. This being the most valuable present that was ever made, as it consisted of every thing the island produced, was accepted by the captain with much thanks and respect. The king retired to his residence, and Capt. Portlock and Abbenooe returned to the King George in the long-boat.

On the 4th the King George's crew caught an immense shark, which required much difficulty in getting on board. It was 13 feet and a half long, eight feet and a half broad, and six feet the liver. There were 48 young ones in her, about eight inches long; two whole turtles, weighing about 60 lb. each, several small pigs, and a great quantity of bones. This fish was given to the natives, (by whom it was deemed a valuable present) but the liver was kept for oil.

On the 5th the king paid Capt. Portlock another visit. He brought with him his eldest son, who was a fine boy, about twelve years of age: his name was Taaevee. This was intended as a farewell visit, as the king was about leaving the island for a while. He left instructions with Abbenooe to take care that the English should be accommodated with every thing they wanted. The king was likewise attended with his uncle, who, in gratitude to the surgeons for the kindness he shewed him, presented both Mr. Hoggan and the captain with a large double canoe full of hogs; nor could this noble veteran be prevailed upon to receive any thing in exchange.

Capt. Dixon imagining the island afforded plenty of game, (which he was very fond of) took several opportunities of going on shore with his gun in one of the Indian canoes, attended only by one servant. The owner of this canoe (who had occasionally supplied the Queen Charlotte with water) was highly sensible of the honour which the captain had done him, and was not a little proud to think that his canoe should have the preference of any of the rest. Notwithstanding, Capt. Dixon did not find game very plenty; he brought home a few ducks, and a kind of water-hen.

From this to the 10th, they were employed in

purchasing wood, provisions, &c. They had some pleasant weather, and light, variable winds. Capt. Portlock now made the signal for weighing anchor, as it was intended to make Oneehow the first opportunity; however, as the wind was baffling, the King George re-anchored very near the same situation.

On the 11th, about five o'clock in the morning, they weighed and made sail, standing directly for Oneehow, with a strong breeze springing up at E. S. E. They were in strong expectations of anchoring at Oneehow by three o'clock; but the wind suddenly shifting to the westward, they were disappointed in their hope.

On the 16th the King George came to anchor in Yam Bay, with the best bower, in 15 fathom water, over a bottom of coarse sand. The Queen Charlotte did not come to anchor till the 17th, owing to her being very foul, and consequently obliged to ply between the islands, making longer or shorter boards, as circumstances required.

Capt. Portlock, the next day after he had anchored, went on shore in the whale-boat, accompanied by Abbenooe: on account of the violence of the surf, they were obliged to row in under the reef, and not finding a place where the boat could lie at her anchor with safety, they went into a canoe to go on shore, which was suddenly overfet by the surf, so that they were obliged to swim for land. The country appeared now very barren. Towards evening they returned on board.

Capt. Portlock permitted his crew to go on shore and recreate themselves: three of them being in a very poor state of health, were allowed to remain on shore in a comfortable house, which was provided on purpose by Abbenooe, and where they were supplied with every necessary refreshment. The rest returned at their appointed time.

On the 17th the three invalids returned to the King George. During their stay on shore they were treated exceedingly well by the natives.

On the 19th Captain Portlock made the signal for weighing anchor, it being judged proper to make Wymoa-Bay, Attouli, which they did on the 30th, and came to anchor the next day, the King with her small bower, and the Queen with both, in 29 fathom, over a bottom of fine muddy black sand.

February 1. A messenger was now sent to the king by Abbenooe, to acquaint him of the vessels' arrival.

For several days the men were variously employed. Two chiefs who were on board the King George, at the request of the captain, displayed their wonderful dexterity in exercising their spears. All who were spectators flattered at the dangers to which they exposed themselves, and were surprised at their expertness in parrying off the blows.

On the 6th it was reported to Captain Portlock by Abbenooe, that the king had given directions for a house to be built on the island for him, in whatever situation was most agreeable: the captain for some time declined accepting the favour; but, being earnestly pressed by his friend, he was obliged not only to comply, but even to go on shore and chuse the situation. As soon as the spot was fixed upon, the workmen were immediately employed.

By desire of the captain a large flat stone was brought, and placed near the intended edifice, whereon the captain cut the initials of his name, the name also of his country, with the day of the month and year: this he requested the artists to place on the center of the house. The captain also requested to have windows that would admit both the light and air, for according to their mode of building those conveniences are excluded, which renders their dwellings very close and unwholesome, on account of the hot weather, which is so prevalent. The natives, however, think nothing of this; for whenever they find themselves incommoded by the heat, they plunge into the water; be it night

or day, in order to get relief; this was felt to be a great inconvenience, and the king returned to his residence by some chiefs, remarkably attached to him.

The people were very desirous of putting into the water the several canoes; and from the arrival of Captain Portlock, in the Queen Charlotte, in order to see what weather was now to be expected.

The English are in terms, that the natives are unarm'd; consequently the apprehensions of a war accordingly took place.

On the 9th, the Queen Charlotte sailed southward, as the first opportunity, now being given, by bad weather and

On the 16th, the Queen Charlotte came to anchor, over a fine bottom of fine muddy black sand, next morning the

Their intention, if possible, was to sail to the westward, and the sea both ships were separately they found it necessary to anchor were immediately

They were furnished them upon the same manner, with yam

From this to the 10th and several calms weighed anchor, intending if possible to visit the Queen Charlotte. From the 23d to the 27th, and on, making the passage between the islands, the weather being so variable, they anchored in the bower, in thirty fathoms.

The whale-boat was sent to fetch the anchor, but all attempts were unsuccessful. The month of March was attended with moderate weather, and in procuring provisions. It was thought that the English were therefore in measures, of sending a man of some consequence on board, the King's civil, and earn take him into the vessel.

They proceed to the North for anchoring—Visit the English Language—Country—No Appearance—Previous Orders—In Montague Island—A Visit from one Indian Curfory Observations—Island, and separate Mulgrava—Various

or day, in order to cool themselves. When every thing was settled respecting the building, the captain proceeded up the valley, attended by a great concourse of both sexes, who behaved with the greatest good-nature and decorum. The captain returned to his vessel in the long-boat, accompanied by some chiefs and Abbenooe, who was now remarkably attached to both the ships' companies.

The people were now employed in taking in provisions, which Abbenooe had previously prepared for putting into their boats. On the 8th the king visited Captain Portlock, attended by several large canoes; and from the King George, accompanied by Captain Portlock, he proceeded to the Queen Charlotte, in order to see Captain Dixon. The weather was now very close and sultry.

The English and natives were now on such good terms, that the former always appeared on shore unarmed; consequently the latter were under no apprehensions of danger, and a mutual confidence accordingly took place.

On the 9th, there being a fresh breeze from the southward, as the captains were resolved, on the first opportunity, to get out of the bay, both vessels now weighed. They were for some time retarded by bad weather and cross winds.

On the 16th, in the afternoon, the Queen Charlotte came to anchor in Yam Bay, in 29 fathom water, over a sandy bottom. At five o'clock the next morning the King George likewise anchored.

Their intention for anchoring here was to recover, if possible, two anchors which Capt. Portlock had left behind. Accordingly, as the weather was very fine, and the sea tolerably smooth, the boats from both ships were sent out to look for them: fortunately they found them, and both the King George's anchors were immediately got on board.

They were surrounded by several canoes, who supplied them upon easy terms, and in a very ample manner, with yams, water, &c.

From this to the 23d they had variable winds, and several calms: during which time they had weighed anchor, and stretched towards the N. W. intending if possible to make Attoui, and recover the Queen Charlotte's anchor that was left there. From the 23d to the 26th they were standing off and on, making longer or shorter boards, as occasion required. On the 26th they worked through the passage between Ouhooora and Attoui. On the 28th the weather being fine, and the wind favourable, they anchored in Wymoa Bay, with a small bower, in thirty-seven fathoms, over a sandy bottom.

The whale-boat was now sent out to search for the anchor, but all their endeavours to recover it were unsuccessful. The boat was afterwards dispatched to shore for some taro.

The month of March commenced with very fine and moderate weather. The people were very busy in procuring provisions: but the inhabitants were scarce. It was supposed that the king began to think that the English were encroaching too much, and was therefore induced by policy to adopt these measures, of sending the intruders away.

A man of some consequence among the natives, came on board the King George, who was particularly civil, and earnestly requested the captain to take him into the vessel with him. Captain Port-

lock was induced, by his repeated solicitations, to comply; and intended either to leave him on these islands, at their next touching, or to bring him to England. His name was No-ho-mi-ti-hee-tee. While he was addressing the captain, one of the king's messengers, whose name was Poo-a-re-a-ree, overheard him say that he was possessed of several valuables, which he presented to his aged father. Poo-a-re-a-ree accordingly seized an opportunity of seeing the old man alone, and demanded his treasure. The veteran denied his possessions, having previously buried them in a secret place: upon this, Poo-a-re-a-ree seized him by the throat, and vowed vengeance. The old man, to avoid being murdered, discovered all, and was accordingly plundered: about this critical time No-ho-mi-ti-hee-tee had returned to shore from the captain's, and became acquainted with the whole, yet awed by the great consequence of the king's messenger, who is next to the king himself, and always sways when his majesty is absent, he did not dare to interfere, but immediately hastened to the captain, and in the most melancholy manner reported the robbery. He wanted Captain Portlock to punish the thief: however the captain did not see him after the commission of his offence, and could do nothing. The grieved son having likewise taken a sudden leave of the captain, it was never known how this affair terminated.

It being the captain's determination to quit these friendly islands for the second time, it may be necessary here to give a description of this country.

The country of Attoui is tolerably level, and for the space of two miles very dry. The soil is a light red earth, which if properly cultivated it was thought would produce excellent potatoes; however, in its present situation, it is entirely covered with long, coarse grass. It is supposed that the inhabitants find plenty of ground near their habitations, which is more conveniently situated for their various purposes.

A tappa is a tolerable large village, which is situated behind a long row of cocoa-nut trees, which afford the inhabitants a most excellent shelter from the violent heat of the noon-day sun. Amongst these cocoa trees there is a good deal of wet, swampy ground, which is well laid out in plantations of taro and sugar-cane. It is in this village that the inhabitants carry on their manufactures.

The place where they bury their dead, is a high wooden pile, seemingly of a quadrangular form, on the side of a hill. This is called a morai, and is entirely appropriated to the purpose of interring.

The river is not one hundred yards over, in the widest place, in several others it is much narrower; it glides along in a smooth pellucid stream, scarcely perceptible, except in rainy weather, the eastern shore being steep and rocky.

The rocks are for the greatest part covered with a thin strata, of the light red earth before-mentioned, and which are doubtless washed into the river beneath, by every smart shower of rain, so that the water of this river is constantly muddy, and its stream rapid.

The ships' crews having got all the provisions they could procure, both vessels weighed on the 3d, and came to sail. They now stood out of the bay, with an intention of proceeding to the coast.

CHAPTER VI.

They proceed to the North-West Coast—An unfortunate Accident—They reach the Shore of Montague Island—Motives for anchoring—Visited by five Canoes—Behaviour of the Natives—The English surprised at their Notions of the English Language and Manners—They steal Fishing-lines—Wood and Water procured—Barren State of the Country—No Appearance of Inhabitants—The Captains examine the Coast—Unsuccessful—They examine again—Precious Orders left with Mr. Macleod—Obeyed—Anchor in Hanning's Bay—Green Islands avoided—Anchor in Montague Island—Capt. Portlock disappointed—The King George's Stream Anchor broke—Various Operations—A Visit from one Indian—From five—The Captain's Encouragement—Capt. Dixon's Particulars of an Excursion—Curious Observations—Resolutions—Visit from several Natives—Audacious Thiefs—The Vessels leave Montague Island, and separate—The King George arrives at Hinchinbrooke Cove—The Queen Charlotte arrives at Port Mulgrave—Various Occurrences.

FROM

FROM the 3d to the 5th they had very foggy weather, which now becoming clear, the Queen Charlotte's people were employed in getting in a new jigger-malt, as the old one had been carried away. As there was some iron-work required, the armorer was likewise put to work; but a sudden roll of the ship threw his anvil overboard. This was a very unfortunate accident, as there were only a few toes at present made, which article was so highly essential in their traffic.

From this to the 24th of April there was little variety, except the wind and weather, which were continually changing. They now stood in for the S. W. point of Montague Island, with a light breeze at N. W. under all the sail they could make. They kept the shore of Montague Island, where there was soon an appearance of a good bay, for which they made. This harbour is situated about six leagues within the S. W. point of Montague Island, and nearly a-breast on the island that forms the west side of the channel. Captain Portlock dispatched the whale-boat in order to examine this bay, being desirous to anchor, as he perceived two single canoes at some distance up the bay, which led him naturally to suppose that the place was inhabited, and consequently that there might be some business done. The boat returned in about an hour, and the mate reported that they could ride in with the greatest security; accordingly they came to anchor in 20 fathoms, over a muddy bottom, about four o'clock: they moored with their best bower in 21 fathom, over the same bottom. The S. point of the bay now bore S. W. by S. two miles and a half distant, and the N. point N. N. W. half W. two miles. Their distance from the nearer shore was about one mile.

In the evening they were visited by five canoes, some with one man, and others with two, but they brought no traffic of any kind. They were ornamented with beads of various colours, and saluted the English in a very friendly manner. They were very much delighted with the barking of some dogs that were in the vessel, upon which they began to whistle, and call out, *Towzer! Towzer! here! here!* This English manner of addressing dogs created much wonder in the vessels, as none of the crews could account for their having any idea of the English language and manners. These visitors, before their departure, took the liberty of stealing several fishing-lines that were hanging overboard.

On the 5th the boats were sent on shore for wood and water; these were easily procured, but though the seine was hauled no fish could be got.

On the 26th there were several men sent on shore to gather shell-fish, which was the only refreshment that could at present be procured. The country was entirely covered with snow. Several wild geese and ducks were seen, but there were none within shot. From some cuts that were found in the wood it was evident that the Russians had been here.

As there was now no appearance of inhabitants, Captain Portlock was determined on leaving the bay. On the 27th they unmoored; but meeting with contrary winds, were obliged to run into the bay again and anchor.

The captains now resolved on examining the coast of Montague Island up towards the sound, which they did immediately after anchoring; but did not discover the least trace of inhabitants. They accordingly returned to their vessels. During this excursion they had seen some gulls and eagles of the white-headed species: likewise several small birds.

On the 1st of May, as the captains were desirous of examining every place where there was any likelihood of meeting inhabitants, they went out again

in the whale-boats; Captain Portlock having previously left orders with Mr. Macleod to weigh anchor during his absence, if the wind proved favourable. A number of the people of both vessels had permission to recreate themselves on shore, but as there was a sudden S. W. breeze, the signal was immediately made for them to return, when Mr. Macleod, according to the captain's orders, gave also the signal to unmoor: they therefore made sail, standing up the channel towards Prince William's Sound. At six o'clock they were close in shore, and came to anchor in a bay to the eastward, in 21 fathoms, over a muddy bottom. About four hours after, the captains returned, being as unsuccessful as before, in their survey. This bay where the ships were now lying, was called Hanning's Bay, after the family so called, who were chief supporters of the present undertaking.

On the 2d there being a S. W. breeze, they weighed, and stood up the channel towards Prince William's Sound. About two o'clock they approached the Green Islands: this passage is very dangerous in the night, or bad weather, as the channel is scarcely a mile in the broadest part, free from sunken rocks. At six o'clock they passed three beds of kelp, near which there was shoal water. It was now dead low water. About nine o'clock they got into a bay in Montague Island, where they anchored in 14 fathoms water, over a muddy bottom, and moored with the stream anchor to the N. E. in 14 ditto.

On the 3d the King George's carpenter was sent on shore to cut down some trees for sawing into plank. Captain Portlock also went up the bay to found and examine it; but meeting with no natives, returned on board not a little disappointed.

Early on the 4th they unmoored, and began to warp towards the head of the bay. When the King George was heaving up their stream anchor, the stock broke close to the flank, and rendered it good for nothing. In the afternoon they came to with the best bower, in eight fathom water, and moored the vessel with a stream cable to a tree on shore. The next day was employed in various operations.

On the 6th a single canoe, with one Indian, appeared; but he had nothing to dispose of. This visitor received a present, in order to encourage others to come, and as he departed in seeming good humour, future visits were every moment expected.

It was apprehended by Capt. Dixon, that part of the Queen Charlotte's false keel was knocked off, by a shock which the lately received against a whale, as it was supposed: however, upon examination, all was discovered safe: her sheathing was somewhat worm-eaten, but every thing else was in good order.

There were a great number of ducks and geese flying about: but the captains were unwilling to fire at them, for fear of alarming the Indians.

On the 8th they were visited by three canoes, which contained five Indians. They had nothing, however to dispose of, except two river otter-skins and two seal-skins, which Capt. Portlock purchased, and gave them also a present, by way of encouragement.

The boats having been sent out a few days before this with Captain Dixon, in order to acquire every necessary information, they returned on the 10th. The following are the particulars of this excursion, according to the captain's journal.

The captain intended first to make Hinchinbroke Cove, and to proceed from thence to Saug Corner Cove, where there was the greatest probability of meeting with inhabitants. He went with the two whale-boats and the King George's long-boat; but bad weather coming on, he was obliged to put into Cove in Montague Island about eight o'clock; in

about an hour after proceeded round a large bay. Here hunting party, belonged to Cape the afternoon, he and made the whale

As the Indians on, Capt. Dixon and the remainder he might call the Indians feulked at no doubt for an but finding the they then left the

At four o'clock captain weighed, broke, where he At this place he few sea-otter skins towards Saug Corner make him under there. Though his curiosity, and know whether this yet the day being ed to keep his as the weather was standing for Saug Cornices, would be a great difficulty.

A strict and vigil this night, if possible preceding ore. TH with for furs during the from that wh the N. E. end of M was very daring and directly attack the the boats till day- is no doubt but th the captain had br occasioned them to hopes of obtaining disappointed, they discontented.

Early in the mo out for Saug Corner whole day being little way, so that take her in tow; t that he did not arr in the evening.

four o'clock in the any of the natives created a great well remembered by the natives in

last voyage, in open During the night

near them; but at 8th, two Indians c gave the captain to at no great distanc to conduct him to to accept this prop offer, and set off in

boat at anchor and his progress, took a view whether part, or whether th with a false report.

He had not got had, and his guides continued the search by which time he large bay, and th with heavy storms c most advisable to he arrived about the

about an hour after the weather cleared up, and he proceeded round the N. E. end of the island into a large bay. Here he found some inhabitants on a hunting party, who, as he afterwards understood, belonged to Cape Hinchinbroke. As it was late in the afternoon, he came to anchor in the long-boat, and made the whale-boats fast, one at each side.

As the Indians did not depart when night came on, Capt. Dixon ordered six hands to keep watch, and the remainder to have their arms ready, so that he might call them at a moment's notice. The Indians sculked about till near two o'clock, waiting no doubt for an opportunity to cut the boats off; but finding the men attentive to all their motions, they then left them.

At four o'clock in the morning of the 6th, the captain weighed, and stood over for Cape Hinchinbroke, where he came to anchor at half past ten. At this place he found several Indians, and purchased a few sea-otter skins. The Indians frequently pointed towards Snug Corner Cove, and endeavoured to make him understand that a vessel lay at anchor there. Though this circumstance strongly excited his curiosity, and made him particularly anxious to know whether this piece of intelligence was true, yet the day being by this time far spent, he determined to keep his present situation during the night, as the weather was very unpromising; so that their standing for Snug Corner Cove, under such circumstances, would be attended with some degree of danger and difficulty.

A brief and vigilant look-out was more necessary this night, if possible, than they had found it the preceding one. The Indians, whom they had traded with for furs during the afternoon, were a different tribe from that which was met with in the bay at the N. E. end of Montague Island: their behaviour was very daring and insolent, though they did not directly attack the English, and they did not leave the boats till day-light the next morning. There is no doubt but that a sight of the various articles the captain had brought to trade with these people, occasioned them to lurk about the whole night, in hopes of obtaining a booty; but finding themselves disappointed, they paddled away, seemingly much discontented.

Early in the morning of the 7th, the captain set out for Snug Corner Cove; but the wind during the whole day being very light, the long-boat made little way, so that the whale-boats were obliged to make her its tow; this retarded his passage so much, that he did not arrive in the cove till eleven o'clock in the evening. Contrary to his expectation, he found no inhabitants in the cove, neither did he perceive any of the natives; notwithstanding which, he ordered the boats to keep a strict watch to be kept as before, well remembering that the Discovery was boarded by the natives in this very cove, during Capt. Cook's last voyage, in open day.

During the night, none of the inhabitants came near them; but at day-light in the morning of the 8th, two Indians came along-side in a canoe, and gave the captain to understand that there was a ship at no great distance; at the same time they offered to conduct him to her for a string of beads. Glad to accept this proposal, he willingly embraced their offer, and set off with the whale-boats, leaving the long-boat at anchor, as he was afraid she would only retard his progress, and he was exceedingly anxious to know whether there really was a vessel in this part, or whether the Indians had been amusing him with a false report.

He had not got far before the weather grew very bad, and his guides gave him the slip; however, he continued the search along shore till twelve o'clock, by which time he had got into the entrance of a large bay, and the weather growing very squally, with heavy storms of snow and sleet, he thought it most advisable to return to the long-boat, where he arrived about three o'clock.

No. 9.

At half past six o'clock, six canoes came into the cove where they lay, and told the captain there was a ship not far off, to which they were going, and offered to shew him the way: the weather was then very bad, but as they were going up the inlet, and not out to sea, as his other guides had done in the morning, he set out with them in his own whale-boat, leaving the other whale-boat, and the long-boat, in the cove.

At ten o'clock in the evening, they arrived in the creek where the vessel he so much wished to see lay. He found her to be a snow, called the Nootka, from Bengal, commanded by a Capt Meares, under English colours.

Capt. Meares had wintered in the creek where Capt. Dixon found him, and his vessel was fast in the ice. The scurvy had made sad havoc amongst his people, he having lost his second and third mates, the surgeon, boatwain, carpenter, cooper, sail-maker, and a great number of the fore-mast men, by that dreadful disorder; and the remaining part of his crew were so enfeebled at one time, that Capt. Meares himself was the only person on board able to walk the deck.

It gave him very great pleasure to find two vessels so near, who could assist him in some measure in his distress; and Capt. Dixon had no less satisfaction in assuring him, that he should be furnished with every necessary he could possibly spare. As Capt. Meares's people were now getting better, he desired Captain Dixon not to take the trouble of sending any refreshments to him, as he would visit them very shortly in his own boat.

Capt. Dixon left the Nootka at three o'clock in the morning of the 9th, and got to his boats about eight: at ten o'clock he weighed, and stood down for their ships, being now convinced that there was no prospect of his meeting with any furs of consequence. Towards noon it grew nearly calm, and the whale-boats were obliged to take the long-boat in tow.

While they were proceeding in this manner across the sound, some canoes joined them, and one of the Indians had a few sea-otter skins, which he offered to sell. Happening to cast his eyes on a frying-pan, which the captain's people in the long-boat had to dress their victuals with, he requested to have it in barter; accordingly, it was offered him, but he absolutely refused to take it entire, and desired them to break off the handle, which he seemed to regard as a thing of inestimable value, and rejected the bottom part with contempt.

Towards six o'clock, the wind freshening, the whale-boats were cast off, and soon afterwards the weather grew very rough, with constant snow and sleet, which occasioned the boats to separate. The night was very stormy, and the captain did not get on board his own vessel till four o'clock in the morning of the 10th.

Captain Meares, accompanied by his first mate, Mr. Ross, waited upon Captain Portlock, in their own boat: he met with a very hearty reception, and exchanged some bags of rice for other articles, which he and his company were in great want of. Capt. Meares mentioned that several ships had, at different times, been trading on the coast, from India and China. This information gave Capt. Portlock much uneasiness; for as there had been so many before-hand, it was natural to suppose that the Indians were at present drained of their furs, and consequently their intended traffic would be much hurt. As Captain Portlock likewise understood that another ship was expected to arrive at King George's Sound early in June next, he deemed it expedient that the King George and Queen Charlotte should separate. A consultation accordingly took place with Captains Portlock and Dixon, and it was at last agreed upon that the Queen Charlotte should push on for King George's Sound, in order to get the start of the expected vessel. Mess. Hayward and Hill, with six of

• B h

the

the best men, were likewise to make for Cook's River, in the King George's long-boat, while the King George was to stay in Prince William's Sound till the boat's return. Messrs. Hayward and Hill were to meet Captain Portlock in Hinchinbrooke cove, before the 20th of July: if they exceeded that time, they were to endeavour to procure for themselves and men a passage to China from this sound; but if they could not find a vessel that was that way bound, they were then to proceed immediately to Kodiak, and procure a passage to Europe by way of Asia.

On the 11th all hands were busily employed in wooding, watering, brewing, and working in the hold. The watering was completed in the afternoon.

In order to assist Captain Meares in carrying his vessel to China, Capt. Portlock lent him two good seamen, George Willis and Tho. Dixon, who cheerfully acquiesced to go on board the Nootka. These men were to be returned at China. Capt. Meares was likewise furnished with a large supply of refreshments of every kind, particularly cocoa-nuts, for the sake of his sick people. At five o'clock the captain, and his first mate, Mr. Ross, took leave of Capt. Portlock. The particulars relative to Captain Meares's misfortunes, are reserved for our future account of that voyage.

The 12th. Every thing was now getting ready for sailing. At six o'clock in the evening Messrs. Hayward and Hill set off in the long-boat for Cook's River, being furnished with six weeks provisions.

On the 13th several canoes visited the vessels; in one of them was a chief of great consequence, whose name was Sheenaawa. There was no trade, though every one was busy; the Indians in thieving, and the English in watching: these were the most audacious thieves that were yet met; their very children were expert in the art. Captain Portlock perceiving their intention to pillage the boat, was obliged to send out the whale-boat ready armed, in order to prevent it. The captain's motive for ad-

mitting the chief and his people on board his vessel, was in hopes that such indulgence would encourage them to bring furs: these rogues, however, while they sung and danced, in order to amuse the captain's people, were conveying every moveable away: at first they began to steal iron and clothes, and then every thing they could meet with. Whenever detected in a theft, they relinquished it without any kind of concern, but they could hardly be prevailed upon to restore any thing that they were once in possession of: the captain was at last induced, by compulsive means, to make them stop their depredations; and now having left the vessel, and seeing the Queen Charlotte's whale-boat lying at anchor about two miles off, where some of the crew were fishing, these Indians paddling out of the bay, made directly up to them, and finding them unarmed, presently seized their fishing-lines, and were about forcing their anchor out of the boat: upon this, Capt. Portlock dispatched his whale-boat and yawl, well manned, to prevent their designs. Capt. Dixon likewise fired a twivel gun, and the plunderers were immediately dispersed, but not without carrying off some spoils. One of these Indians attempted to run a spear through a young man in the boat, because he refused to give up his line: he was, however, prevented by their chief, who was fortunately contented with plundering in quiet.

Capt. Dixon having taken leave of Capt. Portlock, early on the 14th they weighed; the King George steered for Hinchinbrooke, and the Queen Charlotte kept standing for the passage between Cape Hinchinbrooke and Montague Island.

On the 15th the King George came to anchor, with the bell bower, in seven fathom water, over a muddy bottom, and moored with the small bower.

The Queen Charlotte having been delayed with the baffling winds, did not reach Port Mulgrave till the 23d. She anchored about eight o'clock at night, in the northward point, with the small bower, in 65 fathoms, over a muddy bottom.

BOOK II.

CHAPTER I.

Adventures of the King George continued—Appearance of the Country—Excellent Sea-Otter Skins purchased—Capt. Portlock examines the Harbour—Sees the Ensign flying—Returns on board—Five Canoes along-side—A few more Skins purchased—Captain Portlock determined to apply to Capt. Meares for a Supply of Articles to barter with—Fixes on the second Mate for the Expedition—The Carpenter and others build a Punt for it—Crabs and Mussels procured—Several Canoes—Various Employments—A Visit from two Canoes—Information—Great Uneasiness—Fears removed—Messrs. Cresleman and Briant sent on a trading Expedition—A Party sent to sow some Seeds—Return of Messrs. Cresleman and Briant—A plundering Party—Prudence of the Boats' Crew—Whale-boat and Yawl sent to assist the Nootka—Messrs. Hayward and Hill returned—Their Account—Sent out again—The Surgeon and sick People go on Shore—A Quantity of fine Halibut and Cod—A Visit from a Party of Indians—Manners of the Indians—Character of their Chief—His singular Request—Complied with—Herrings and Salmon caught—Return of the Whale-boat and Yawl—Unsuccessful—Wonderful Number of Salmon caught—The sick People recreated—Return of the Long-boat—Wood and Water completed—Anchor weighed—Proud along the Coast—Anchorage—Visited by Natives—Various Occurrences—Long-boat sent on an Expedition—Two Natives sleep on Board—The Captain's Apprentice on Shore—A fair Trade carried on—Natives dine with the Captain—Visited by another Tribe—Remarks.

THE King George and Queen Charlotte being now separated, we must accordingly divide our relations of their adventures till they meet again; therefore, for the present, we shall follow the King George.

On the 16th, early in the morning, they hove up the small bower, and having hauled the ship within shore of the bell bower, re-anchored again, in five fathoms, over a muddy bottom, and moored the ship head and stern.

The appearance of the country was very unpromising, the land being covered with very deep snow. There were two fresh-water rivulets at the head of the harbour, doubtless productive of salmon in due season.

In the course of this day, several canoes came

along-side, with some fish and sea-otter skins. There were about twelve sea-otter skins (of excellent quality) purchased, but at a most exorbitant price.

On the 18th Capt. Portlock went in the whale-boat to examine the harbour: he was for some time engaged in this business, but when within sight of his vessel, he perceived the ensign flying, which was the appointed signal to signify a visit from the natives; accordingly, he returned on board, (having postponed his present business) and perceived some canoes along-side, of whom he purchased a few more skins of the same excellence. He enquired if there were any salmon in the fresh-water rivulets; but was informed that it was not yet the time, till the snow which covered the hills was melted.

Captain

Capt. Portlock which were like way of traffic, Meares for a supply had shewn him: this application of force might be mate, Mr. Macleivate business, or care of the vessel of either under the ship for any determined to find man, with the Nootka. But they had no boat way of getting a canoe, which was manage, it was contrive some father therefore began to build a wide, and about proved of the purpose not fail to be useful the boats were a

As the harbour was a number of tons, and they required a quantity of each with a trading party sea-otter skins a weather being sent briskly for cutting wood, a penter, with his

On the 22d two a few good skins that the adjacent and that it was whose chief was the chief belonging Three canoes before the ship the next a few halibuts.

The whale-boat found; they had north point of the very heavy gale of her appearance, her crew were not but might probably all perish: neither look for and afford risk of losing her weather growing boat was sent in refreshments for both boats came much better state whale-boat met bay, making an been a fruitless them in tow; for side before it began before.

From this to the business from going interval only three cod and halibut party one day, an. The weather now fumed their differ

On the 4th of Bryant were sent a trading expedition harbour they lay which means they trade intended for

Capt. Portlock not being in possession of articles which were likely to make a good market in the way of traffic, was determined to apply to Captain Meares for a supply, in return for the favours he had shewn him: the captain first intended to make this application in person, but apprehended his absence might be of material consequence, as his first mate, Mr. Macleod, whom he generally sent on private business, or was occasionally entrusted with the care of the vessel, was now so ill as to be incapable of either undertaking an expedition, or minding the ship for any length of time: he was therefore determined to send his second mate, Mr. Cresleman, with the whale-boat and yaul, on board the Nootka. But now another difficulty arose, for as they had no boat left by the ship, nor any other way of getting on shore but in the Sandwich island canoe, which was both difficult and dangerous to manage, it was accordingly deemed expedient to contrive some safer kind of conveyance: the carpenter therefore, assisted by several other hands, began to build a punt of twelve feet long, six feet wide, and about three feet deep: the captain approved of the plan very much, as this punt could not fail to be useful in wooding and watering while the boats were absent.

As the harbour afforded very fine crabs and mussels, a number of the people were sent to procure some, and they returned in the evening with a good quantity of each. Several canoes came along-side with a trading party, who brought some very good sea-otter skins and a few indifferent ones. The weather being fine, all their operations on shore went briskly forward; one part were employed cutting wood, another sawing plank, and the carpenter, with his assistants, about the punt.

On the 22d two canoes visited them, and brought a few good skins. The captain now understood that the adjacent country was called Tacklaccimuke, and that it was inhabited by a tribe, the name of whose chief was Nootuck, and the name of another chief belonging to the same tribe was Coocha. Three canoes belonging to Nootuck's tribe came to the ship the next day, but brought nothing except a few halibuts.

The whale-boat returned on the 25th from the sound; they had parted with the yaul just off the north point of the bay. The next day they had a very heavy gale of wind, and the yaul not making her appearance, it gave them great uneasiness, as her crew were not only exposed to the weather, but might probably be driven out of the sound and all perish: neither could the whale-boat be sent to look for and assist them, without running a great risk of losing her crew likewise. However, the weather growing moderate on the 27th, the whale-boat was sent in search of the yaul, with proper refreshments for her crew, and at nine o'clock both boats came along-side; the yaul's crew in a much better state than could be expected. The whale-boat met the yaul at the entrance of the bay, making an effort to get in, which must have been a fruitless one, had they not met and taken them in tow; for the boats were scarcely got along-side before it began to rain and blow as violently as before.

From this to the 30th bad weather prevented any business from going forward on shore. During this interval only three canoes came along-side, with cod and halibut sufficient to serve the ship's company one day, and a few middling sea-otter skins. The weather now growing moderate, the parties resumed their different employments on shore.

On the 4th of June Messrs. Cresleman and Bryant were sent with the whale-boat and yaul, on a trading expedition, up an opening between the harbour they lay in and Snug-Corner Cove, by which means they were likely to obtain part of the trade intended for the Nootka. Just as night came

on a few Indians came along-side with some halibut and cod, but no furs.

On the 6th, the weather being fine, a party was sent to dig a piece of ground for a garden, on a small island situated in the entrance of the cove, and which was named Garden Island. After the ground was ready, a variety of seeds were sown in it, such as onion, cabbage, Scotch kale, favoy, radish, thyme, purslane, spinach, celery, cauliflower, mullard, turnip, cress and rape, with peas, beans, French beans, lettuce, oats, barley, &c. The soil being tolerably good, it would be rather extraordinary if, among so great a variety, nothing should come to perfection. In the evening the whale-boat and yaul returned from their expedition, with a few very good skins, which they purchased of a chief whose name was Sheenaawa, and who was conjectured to be the same person who paid them a visit at Montague Island. The captain intended them for a longer trip, but it seems they unluckily got into a large flat bay, where the boats grounded, and before they could extricate themselves from the shoals the tide ebbed, and left them dry for near two miles round.

Sheenaawa and his tribe, which consisted of near two hundred men, saw their situation and paid them a visit, most of them armed with knives and spears. The boats crews' at first were greatly alarmed at their situation; but their fears rather subsided, when they found that plunder was what the Indians wanted: this they endeavoured to prevent, but at the same time kept their plunderers in good temper; which was the most prudent method the people could possibly have taken, for had they acted in any other manner, and strove to have prevented them from stealing by force, not a man in either boat could have escaped the vengeance of their numerous opponents. This plundering party obtained an excellent booty in their own estimation; they stole most of the trading articles, two muskets, two pitols, and some of the people's cloaths; but what old Sheenaawa seemed to regard as a thing of inestimable value, was Mr. Cresleman's quadrant, which he seized, together with his ephemeris and requisite tables. It was at this time, that they purchased the skins just mentioned: Sheenaawa's people affecting to traffic as a sort of introduction to their depredations.

On the 9th, Captain Portlock being at Garden Isle, saw the Nootka turning in towards the port; on this, the whale-boat and yaul were immediately sent to her assistance; and in the afternoon, she anchored just without the King George.

On the 10th some Indians came into the bay, and appeared shy on seeing the Nootka, which could not be accounted for any other way, than they having fired at some of the natives just before they left Sutherland's Cove, and wounded one of them. Captain Meares went on board the King George, to request of Captain Portlock to send some of his men on board the Nootka, to examine her masts, pumps, sides, &c. and otherwise assist him, which was complied with.

On the 11th the long-boat returned from Cook's River, having been very successful. Messrs. Hayward and Hill assuring Capt. Portlock, that much more business might be done in another trip; as soon as the boat was cleared, he ordered her to be fitted out with provisions, and an assortment of trade, for a second expedition. After the boat's arrival in Cook's River, soon after getting above Point Bede, they fell in with a body of Kodiak Indians, who they supposed were hunting on account of the Russians; but they saw no Russian party, and the inhabitants in the river behaved in a friendly manner. Early next morning the boat sailed again for Cook's River; with positive orders to return by the 20th of July.

On the 19th, at one o'clock, the Nootka being ready for sailing, weighed anchor, and stood out for the

essel, rage while cap-way: and then-with-y be were in- stop essel, ying the if them an' boat: boat signs. I the not these young up his chief, ing in Port- King Queen ween anchor, over a ower. with grave lock at ower, Capt. wa more ent- Muscles nces- eeds- ewas- ent out Party rerning caught Priced Two with the There nt quae. whale- ne time ight of ich was m the having ed some a few uired if vulets; me, till l. Captain

the cove. Spruce-beer, which was now in good order, was daily served out; and the sick people found great benefit from it.

On the 20th, Surgeon Hoggan, and the people who had been ill, through the dampness of the weather, took a walk on shore, and gathered a good quantity of water-creffes, which they found growing near the fresh-water rivulets. The people caught plenty of flounders along-side, with hook and line; these, together with crabs, which were now very fine, proved an excellent change from salt provisions: Some of them, in fishing along-side for flounders; caught several cod and halibut: on this, the canoe was sent, on the 22d, at some distance into the bay, to try for them, and they soon returned with a quantity of fine halibut and cod. This success induced them to send her out frequently with a fishing party, and they caught considerably more than what was sufficient for daily consumption, so that the remainder was salted for sea-store. In the afternoon, a party of Indians visited the ship, bringing a few sea-otter skins; they pointed to the S. W. and gave them to understand that plenty of furs might be procured from that quarter. On this, Captain Portlock dispatched the whale-boat and yaul on the 24th, on a trip to the S. W. part of the Sound, with provisions for a month, and a proper assortment of trade. Some of the people, who had leave to go on shore, ascended the highest hills in the neighbourhood; on the sides of which they found good quantities of snake-root, and a variety of flowers in full bloom. In the evening they observed two Indian boats, and several canoes, come into the bay: they landed on a sandy beach, about three miles distant from the ship. Early next morning their new visitors came along-side: the party consisted of about 25 persons. Their chief appeared to be a well-disposed man, rather low in stature, with a long beard, and seemed about 60 years of age: he was entirely disabled on one side, probably by a paralytic stroke; his name was Taatucktellingnuke; the country he came from was called Cheenecock, and situated in the S. W. part of the Sound. The old man made Captain Portlock a present of a good skin, but had little to sell except a few salmon. The whole of this party were very friendly, and well disposed. The country where Shecnaaws and his tribe take up their residence is called Taatucklagmute: they, it seems, are the most powerful tribe about the Sound, and hated by all their neighbours, with whom they are continually at variance. These Indians lodged in temporary huts, composed only of a few sticks and a little bark: the principal part of their food was fish, and by way of variety they eat the inner rind of the pine-bark dried, but their greatest luxury was a kind of rock-weed covered with the spawn of some fish or other, of which they gathered and ate great quantities; they also eat the inner rind of the angelica and hemlock roots, which though poison to Englishmen, by constant and habitual use, becomes to them familiar and serviceable.

The party who were daily sent out to fish for cod and halibut had their hooks and lines often broke by large ground sharks; several of them were killed, but they were of no use, their livers yielding scarcely any oil.

On the 26th, Taatucktellingnuke visited the ship, and was particularly anxious to take one or two of the people with him on shore to spend the night, offering at the same time to leave some of his people on board as hostages till their return. Capt. Portlock complied with this singular request, and gave two of the people leave to accompany him on shore: he left three of his tribe on board, being desirous to convince them that he intended no harm. This friendly old chief came, early the next morning, on board in one of his boats; and, after exchanging hostages, and receiving a few presents, he went on shore highly pleased.

On the 30th, in hauling the seine, they caught a large quantity of herrings, and some salmon: the herrings, though small, were very good; and two hogheads of them were salted for sea-store.

On the 6th of July at noon, the whale-boat and yaul returned from their expedition, without the least success, not having seen a single canoe during their trip. Captain Portlock was now convinced that nothing could be done by sending the boats on another expedition, and expecting the long-boat's return in a few days, after which he intended to get to sea as quick as possible, all hands were set to work in getting the ship ready. Large quantities of salmon were daily caught, but the unsettled state of the weather not permitting them to cure it on board, the boatswain was sent with a party on shore, to build a kind of house to smoke them in.

On the 9th the house was finished, and the boatswain, with his party, were employed in smoking salmon; they had sufficient room to hang 600 fish up conveniently, and seven fires being constantly burning, they were cured very well.

On the 11th the seine was frequently hauled, and not less than 2000 salmon were caught at each haul; indeed, they were now in such numbers along the shores, that any quantity whatever might be caught with the greatest ease.

On the 21st Captain Portlock took several of the people who were lately recovered from sickness on shore, to take a walk and gather water-creffes. This little excursion had a wonderfully good effect on every one; they sat down on the grass and made a hearty meal on fried pork and salmon; and, by way of salad, had an abundance of water-creffes: they likewise gathered a sufficient quantity to serve every person on board. Near the place where they landed was a fresh-water lake, in which there was abundance of salmon, and not far from it was a piece of wild wheat growing, at least two feet high, amongst which they found the water-creffes. This wheat, with proper care, might certainly be made an useful article of food. They returned on board in the evening without seeing any Indians.

Next day at noon, the long-boat came along-side, and all her crew in good health. In this trip they had experienced a great deal of very bad weather, and had not met with such good success as they expected. They fell in with numbers of the Kodiak Indians, who always behaved in the most friendly manner, as did all the inhabitants of the river.

On the 24th they completed their wood and water, and every thing from the shore was got on board. They lopped all the branches off the highest tree on Garden Island, and fixed a staff about ten feet long at the top, with a wooden vane on it, and near the bottom was inscribed the ship's name, with the year and day of the month.

On the 26th, every thing being ready for sea, they weighed anchor at two o'clock in the morning, and stood out of the cove. On quitting the harbour, (which obtained the name of Port Etches) Capt. Portlock at first intended to stand out of the Sound by way of Cape Hinchinbroke; but on opening that passage the weather looked very thick and dirty, on which he came to the resolution of pushing for the passage on the west side of Montague Island. Accordingly they stood to the S. W. but meeting with contrary winds, did not get through till the morning of the 31st, when they were well clear of the land, the S. W. point of Montague Island being three leagues distant.

We shall here relate some few observations which have been made by Captain Portlock on Prince William's Sound, but as we shall be obliged to renew our description of this place in the voyage of Capt. Cook, we shall there give a more copious account of the manners, customs, &c. of the natives.

The men are short in stature, with flat faces and noses, and ill-shaped legs; but they have good teeth,

they caught a
e salmon: the
ood; and two
a-flore.
whale-boat and
n, without the
e canoe during
ow convinced
ling the boats
ing the long-
ich he intended
hands were fet
Large quanti-
at the unfetted
them to cure it
ith a party on
oke them in.
and the boat-
yed in smoking
hang 600 fish
eing constantly

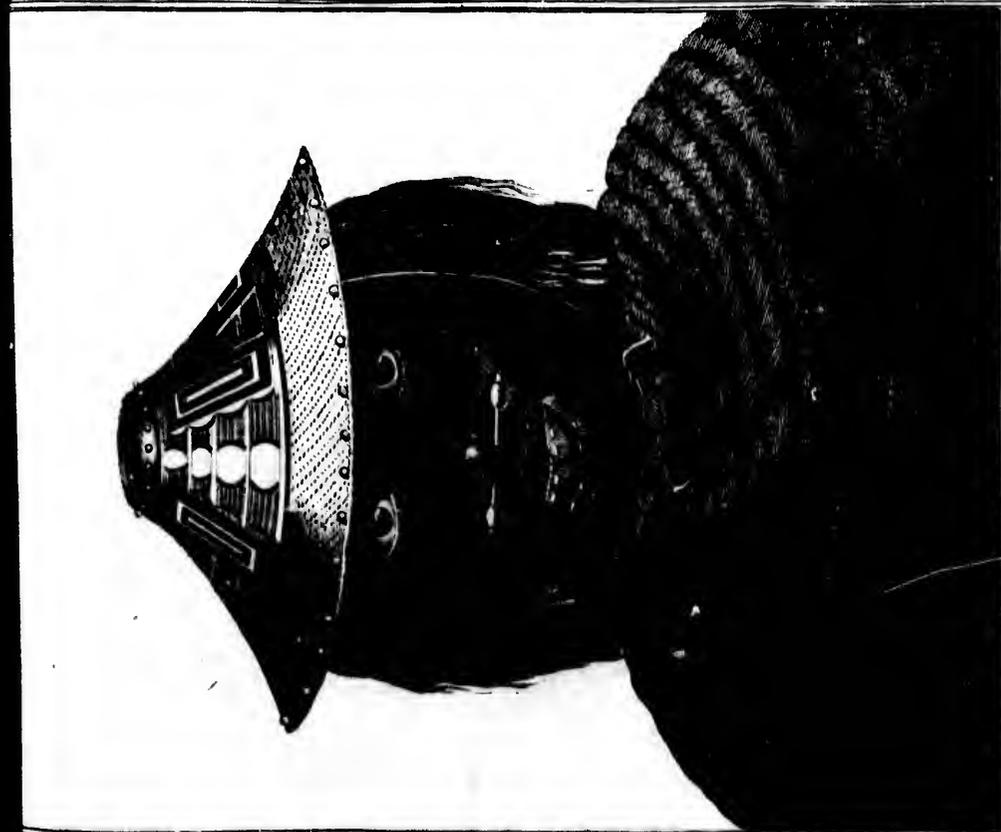
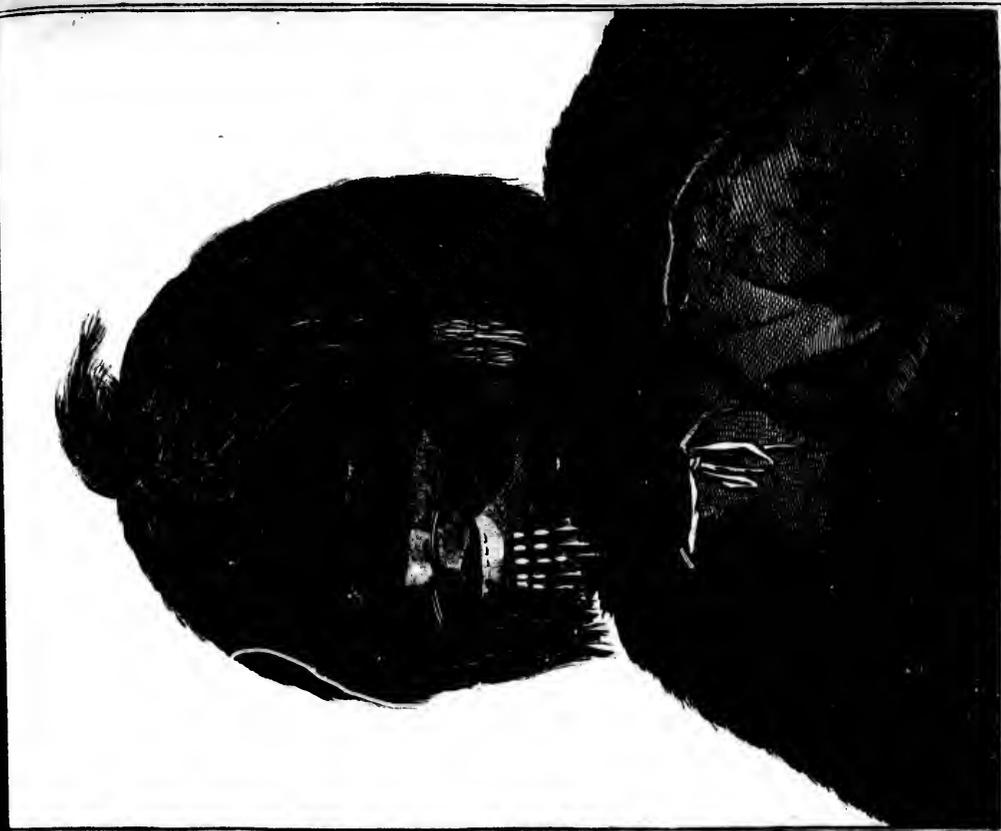
tly hauled, and
ht at each haul;
nbers along the
might be caught

nk several of the
from sickness
r water-creffes.
fully good effect
grafs and made
almon; and, by
of water-creffes:
quantity to serve
place where they
which there was
r from it was a
ft two feet high,
r-creffes. This
ertainly be made
turned on board
Indians.

came along-side,
In this trip they
ry bad weather,
cefs as they ex-
s of the Kodiak
he most friendly
of the river.
their wood and
ore was got on
es off the highest
a staff about ten
vane on it, and
hip's name, with

g ready for sea,
ck in the morn-
On quitting the
e of Port Etches)
stand out of the
broke; but on
oked very thick
he resolution of
side of Montague
o the S. W. but
not get through
n they were well
Montague Island

bservations which
tlock on Prince
be obliged to re-
n the vnyages of
more copious ac-
of the natives.
ith flat faces and
hav/ good teeth,
good



Portrait of A WOMAN of PRINCE WILLIAM'S SOUND.

Portrait of A MAN of PRINCE WILLIAM'S SOUND.

good eyes, and
(which is black
cut it upon the
is the only wa
There is very li
and the men.
most of the int
withstanding the
filthy in neglect
becoming louty
nalinets, they
whenever there

The men are p
they are exceedi
any presents, bu
liberties taken
make any reman
the reader has h
that instead of
disgrace among
estimation, and
most admired.
daubed with pa
and admiration
opportunity of p
asionally from
skins which they
conceal their st
them to their
putting inclinat
and would no de
if the intercour
been of any dur

The country a
kind, a sort of h
there is also a g
rasberry, straw
constant bushes,
celery, water-cro
angelica, hemloc
which the Engl
while they were
used by the Eng
ingly well and to
for a day and a
well purged: on
buds of the youn
the pine tops, ma

The inhabitan
imals they can ge
having no other
fish they roast be
mal food in bask
thereto red-hot
their country af
pine-tree.

Their winter h
from four to six
broad, or therea
the crevices filled
fined dwellings
the summer the
shelter in small st
with a little bark

A fuller descrip
dialect, shall be g

Having got cl
ham's Sound, the
breeze from the
wards to the se
The weather wa

On the 3d e
fine weather: the
deck; the ship
scraped fore and

Their progress
tarded afterwar
ward, that the
port near the sit
Crown Sound.

good eyes, and a good scent. They wear their hair, (which is black and straight) very long; but they cut it upon the death of a relation or friend, which is the only way whereby they denote mourning. There is very little difference between the women and the men. They are fond of ornaments, like most of the inhabitants of other islands; yet notwithstanding their partiality to finery, they are very filthy in neglecting their persons, and consequently becoming lousy; and as a further proof of their uncleanliness, they frequently make use of those vermin whenever there is a scarcity of food.

The men are particularly attentive to the women; they are exceedingly happy when their ladies receive any presents, but highly provoked if there are any liberties taken with them. It is unnecessary to make any remarks on their thieving disposition, as the reader has had proofs of that; but we must add, that instead of dexterity in thieving being held in disgrace among them, it is on the contrary in high estimation, and he that is the most notorious is the most admired. The professed thief is curiously daubed with paint, in order to attract the notice and admiration of spectators, and give his fingers an opportunity of pillering. They slip their arms occasionally from out of the sleeves of those frocks of skins which they always wear, and under these frocks conceal their stolen articles, till they can convey them to their canoes; yet, notwithstanding this pilfering inclination, they are a good kind of people, and would no doubt be soon corrected of this vice, if the intercourse between them and the English had been of any duration.

The country abounds with large trees of the pine kind, a sort of hazel, and a great quantity of alder: there is also a great deal of fruit-bushes, bilberry, raspberry, strawberry, alderberry, red and black currant bushes, &c. They have also plenty of wild celery, water-creffes, four dock, shepherd's purse, angelica, hemlock, wild peas, &c. None of the seed which the English had sown produced any thing while they were there. The alder-buds were once used by the English as greens; they boiled exceedingly well and tender, and were much relished, but for a day and a half the partakers thereof were well purged: on some it acted as an emetic. The buds of the young black currant-bushes, mixed with the pine tops, made very pleasant tea.

The inhabitants live upon whatever fish and animals they can get. They dry their fish in the sun, having no other way of preserving it: their fresh fish they roast before a fire. They dress their animal food in baskets or wooden vessels, by putting thereto red-hot stones. They eat the vegetables their country affords, and the inner bark of the pine-tree.

Their winter habitations are ill contrived, being from four to six feet high, ten feet long, eight feet broad, or thereabouts, built with thick plank, and the crevices filled up with dry moss. In these confined dwellings a great number live together. In the summer they wander about, and occasionally shelter in small sheds erected of a few sticks covered with a little bark, or their canoes.

A fuller description of their weapons, customs, and dialect, shall be given in Capt. Cook's voyages.

Having got clear of the passage into Prince William's Sound, they proceeded E. S. E. with a light breeze from the westward, which changing afterwards to the southward, they steered E. by N. The weather was now very pleasant.

On the 3d every advantage was taken of the fine weather: the sailors' hammocks were got upon deck; the ship aired with fires, being previously scraped fore and aft, and sprinkled with vinegar.

Their progress to Cape Edgecombe was so retarded afterwards, by the wind shifting to the eastward, that the captain was now resolved to seek a port near the situation in which Capt. Cook placed Cross Sound.

No. 9.

On the 5th Mount Fairweather bore N. 10 deg. W. near twenty leagues distant. This is the highest land on this part of the coast, and forms several mountains.

On the 6th, an opening in the land was discovered, situated eight leagues to the S. E. of Cross Cape. The land seemed to be composed of low, woody islands, among which appeared several places for good shelter. On approaching it they had 20 and 25 fathoms over a muddy bottom, and there were some high barren rocks just in the entrance.

They were followed by a large Indian boat, with 12 people in her, three of whom were men, and the rest women and children. These people were, no doubt, led by curiosity to view the ship. The King George having run up towards the N. W. part of the harbour, after passing a small island near the north shore covered with trees, they anchored about noon with the small bower, in 31 fathoms, over a muddy bottom, and moored with the best bower to the eastward, entirely land-locked.

The boat which had followed them now came along-side, singing and extending their arms as tokens of peace: their language was totally different from that spoken by the natives in Prince William's Sound; nor were they marked with paint, as is the custom in the Sound and River. Their boat was made of a large pine-tree, the inside of which was neatly cut out, and the body ingeniously tapered away towards the ends until they came to a point.

The captain gave his new visitors some presents, and by shewing them a sea-otter's skin, and making signs, expressed a desire to have some: they, in return, expressed an inclination to serve him.

The captain having seen among their possessions a tin kettle and some towels, much like those which belonged to Capt. Dixon, he was inclined to think that the Queen Charlotte had touched near this neighbourhood, especially as he understood from these natives that they had received those gifts from a vessel which had been in a port eastward of Cape Edgecombe, and which had two masts. As Capt. Portlock had intended to send the long-boat on a trading expedition, he was now resolved to fit her out with all possible dispatch, as it was probable the Queen Charlotte might be somewhere about the Cape.

As soon as the Indians received their presents, they left the ship, and went on shore; they returned immediately after, with a few good dry sea-otter skins; but they were not so particular in dressing and stretching them as the natives of Prince William's Sound and Cook's River; one of their dressed skins being shewn to a chief among these Indians, he knew immediately whence it came, and also described what sort of people those in the Sound were, informing the captain that they had a frequent intercourse with them, in the course of which some quarrels arose, and battles were consequently the issue.

The daggers which these people use in battle can stab at either end, having three, four, or five inches tapered to a sharp point above the hand.

When evening approached, the Indians were about taking their leave again; but as they were desirous to secure the captain's friendship, they proposed leaving one of their party on board for the night, and taking one of his people on shore. This the captain cheerfully acquiesced with, as these men were neither inclined to thievery or mischief, and it was also a favourable opportunity of making some necessary discoveries relative to their country and manners. One of the captain's men was accordingly set with them on shore, while for his greater security two Indians (who were handsome, good-looking men, and appeared to be brothers) were retained. During their stay on board, they behaved remarkably well.

On the 7th, the Indians returned with the man they had taken away the night before, but they brought

C c

brought very little trade. The person who went on shore with them reported, that their residence was at the foot of a hill, near a river of fresh water, which issued out of an adjacent valley. Their house, for they had but one, appeared to be only a temporary habitation, and they seemed to have but few articles of trade amongst them.

About this time the long-boat was hoisted out, and having been properly equipped, was sent on a trading expedition towards Cape Edgcombe, and among the islands to the S. E. of that cape, with the same party that went with her to Cook's River. They had orders to return in 17 days; and in case they met with the Queen Charlotte, to desire Capt. Dixon to return with them, and stay in the offing till the King George was ready to join her; it being now Captain Portlock's intention to leave the coast about the latter end of the month, and proceed for China, unless they met with a better trade.

On the 8th the carpenter was sent on shore, to cut down some white cedar, with which the country abounded, for the purpose of sawing into sheathing boards. The remainder of the ship's company were put to several necessary employments.

A small canoe, with one man and a woman in her, came along-side this day; but they had nothing to dispose of: they staid for a short time, and then returned on shore, to inform their tribe (as it was supposed) of the ship's being in the harbour. The Indian boat repeated their visit towards evening, and the two young men who before slept on board were now desirous of spending another night in the vessel. The captain readily complied with their desire, and one of his apprentices, Joseph Woodcock, slept on shore with the natives. The Indians took up their abode that night in a small bay near the ship, where there was a hut erected, which was far more miserable than their other habitation.

The whale-boat caught some salmon to-day, some of which was exceedingly good, and others were very bad, with a disagreeable colour, which were thrown away.

The small canoe which came in the morning with the man and woman in her, repeated her visit about

eight o'clock; she was accompanied with two large boats, which contained about 25 men, women, and children. These people behaved exceedingly well, and promised to bring some good furs the next morning. They staid for about an hour, and when they took their leave retired to the small bay where the Indian boat went. Some had built temporary huts, and others sheltered themselves among the rocks. The next morning they fulfilled their promise, and brought with them some good sea-otter and a quantity of fine black skins. As this tribe did not shew the least thieving disposition, several of them were admitted on board, and they traded very fairly. It being dinner-time, and every thing accordingly prepared in the cabin, the captain asked his new visitors to partake; they readily accepted his invitation, and so well did they relish the victuals, that they were obliged in a short time to replenish the dishes. During the second course these guests eat as hearty as before. When they had satisfied themselves, they then admired the vessel, and in a short time after returned to shore, highly delighted with their entertainment, and some presents which they had received.

Another Indian boat, from the N. W. appeared in the afternoon, with two men, a boy about twelve years old, and a young child. One of the men appeared to be a person of consequence, being remarkably majestic and well-looking. There were some good sea-otter skins, and several wild geese bought of these Indians, who were adorned with ornaments quite different from any hitherto seen.

When they had finished trading, the good-looking fellow, who seemed to be a chief, requested the captain's permission to stay on board with the young lad for that night. Captain Portlock immediately acquiesced, and sent Joseph Woodcock on shore with the other man and child.

The next morning (the 10th) this man and boy took their leave of the English; the former assuring the captain that he would in ten days time visit him again, and bring with him more sea-otter skins.

CHAPTER II.

Trade still carried on—Indian Tea discovered—Captain Portlock visits the Indians' Residence—Some of the Natives marked with the Small-Pox—Employments—Return of the Long-Boat—Their Account—James Blake saved by John McCoy—The Captain surveys part of the Sound—Description of an Edifice—A Visit from the supposed Chief, who acts different Characters—Natives fond of Joseph Woodcock—The King George weighs Anchor, and stands out of the Sound—Character of the North-West Natives—They weigh, and come to sail—Owhyhee seen—Visited by several Canoes—Push on for Atouai—Edge away for Wymoa Bay—The Hogs of that Island tabooed—News of the Nootka and Queen Charlotte—Captain Dixon's Letter tabooed—A Messenger dispatched to the King—Capt. Portlock anchors at Oneebow—Visited by the King, &c.—Observations, Remarks, &c.—Anchor weighed—They proceed to China.

ON the 11th August another strange tribe came into the Sound from the eastward, in two large boats, consisting of 25 men, women, and children. They disposed of a few small black skins, and some good sea-otter ditto. When they had satisfied their curiosity, they retired to a convenient house on shore, in a bay not far from the ship, which was well covered with cedar-bark; for this tribe did not herd with the other Indians.

On the 12th some of the ship's company were sent on shore, to recreate themselves. This party, in their ramble, discovered a quantity of Indian tea: which, upon trial, proved an excellent substitute for their other tea, which by this time was nearly expended. Captain Portlock, in the forenoon, went in the whale-boat with Mr. Whilbye and one of the young Indians, (who were constant visitors) in order to visit their residence. After proceeding a considerable way up the Sound, they arrived at the Indian's habitation about noon, and found one small temporary house and the ruins of two others,

which had been much larger, and appeared to have been made use of as winter habitations. On the beach was a large boat, capable of holding thirty persons, and three others to hold ten people each. From this circumstance, the captain expected to have seen a numerous tribe, and was quite surprised to find only three men, three women, the same number of girls, and two boys about 12 years old, and two infants. The oldest of the men was very much marked with the small-pox; as was a girl, who appeared to be about 14 years old. The old man endeavoured to describe the excessive torments he endured whilst he was afflicted with the disorder that had marked his face, and gave Captain Portlock to understand that it happened some years ago: he said the distemper carried off great numbers of the inhabitants, and that himself had lost ten children by it. He had ten strokes tattooed on one of his arms, which were so many marks for the number of children he had lost.

As none of the of age were marked with the disorder raging for years; and a of the coast in a poor wretches were amongst them probably they came of August. To season of the year any of them escape and children were house near a lake with stinking fish hundred yards, creek that ran were strewn in places were beds or twelve feet in bad such a dreadful young Indian his wretched scenes now been absent earnestly entreated.

The sufferings disorder was at considerable; and no populated, it being A number of the from the eastward and one man in p disorder; but not had the least trouble make it probable unfortunate Indian harbour somewhat none of the natives having any interest happily escaped that.

On the 13th an went on shore to brought home some sea-otter skins was this day.

On the 14th e in wooding and the carpenters in t

On the 15th, expedition to the when they had bro skins. The people number of articles: King George; f that it was pretty that neighbourhood and busied in put the Indians cut t for the shore. Th them, and destroy fled into the woo long-boat's return fell overboard, b another of the cr him with an oar, water till they got

On the 16th an as usual, and on t in the whale-boat landing in a small erected probably t guished chief. T polls, each about the ground, about About twelve feet rough boarded flo Indian chest was de edifice which poi pointed the resemb of the inhabitants v

As none of the children under ten or twelve years of age were marked, there is great reason to suppose the disorder raged but little more than that number of years; and as the Spaniards were on this part of the coast in 1775, it is very probable that these poor wretches caught this fatal infection. They were amongst them in the height of summer, and probably they caught the disorder about the month of August. To see their manner of living at that season of the year, one would think it a miracle that any of them escaped with their lives: men, women and children were all huddled together in a close house near a large fire, and entirely surrounded with stinking fish: round the house, for at least one hundred yards, and all along the banks of a little creek that ran down by this miserable dwelling, were strewed with stinking fish; and in several places were beds of maggots a foot deep, and ten or twelve feet in circumference; nay, the place had such a dreadfully offensive smell, that even the young Indian himself, though habituated to such wretched scenes from his earliest infancy, having now been absent a few days, could not bear it, but earnestly entreated the captain to return on board.

The sufferings of the poor Indians, when the disorder was at its height, must have been inconceivable; and no doubt the country was nearly depopulated, it being at present very thinly inhabited. A number of the Indians who came into the Sound from the eastward were marked with the small-pox, and one man in particular had lost an eye by that disorder; but none of the natives from the westward had the least traces of it. These circumstances make it probable that the vessel, from which these unfortunate Indians caught the infection, was in a harbour somewhere about Cape Edgecombe; and none of the natives to the westward of this found having any intercourse with her, by that means happily escaped the disorder.

On the 13th another party of the ship's company went on shore to recreate themselves. They also brought home some Indian tea: some very fine sea-otter skins were also purchased of the natives this day.

On the 14th every person was employed, some in wooding and watering, and others in fishing; the carpenters in sawing cedar, &c.

On the 15th, the long-boat returned from her expedition to the eastward of Cape Edgecombe, when they had brought some pretty good sea-otter skins. The people with whom they bartered had a number of articles, the same as those on board the King George; such as tin kettles, rings, &c. so that it was pretty evident the Charlotte had been in that neighbourhood. Whilst they were at anchor, and busied in putting the boat to rights, some of the Indians cut their cable, and afterwards made for the shore. The people in the long-boat pursued them, and destroyed their canoes; but the Indians fled into the woods with precipitation. On the long-boat's return, James Blake, one of the people, fell overboard, but was providentially saved by another of the crew, John McCoy, swimming to him with an oar, by which he kept himself above water till they got him on board.

On the 16th and 17th the people were employed as usual, and on the 18th, Captain Portlock went in the whale-boat to survey part of the sound, and landing in a small bay, found a sort of monument, erected probably to the memory of some distinguished chief. This edifice was composed of four posts, each about twenty feet long, and stuck in the ground, about six feet distant from each other. About twelve feet from the ground there was a rough boarded floor, in the middle of which, an Indian chest was deposited; and on that part of the edifice which pointed up the sound, there was painted the resemblance of a human face. As none of the inhabitants were near, they intended to exa-

mine the chest; but on one of the boat's crew attempting to get up for that purpose, the whole fabric had like to have given way, on which he desisted, as Captain Portlock was not willing to destroy a building that probably was looked on by the Indians as sacred. The captain returned on board in the afternoon: during his absence Mr. Hill had purchased a few excellent skins.

On the 20th, their late visiter from the N. W. made his appearance in a large boat, along with about twenty men and women, and twelve children. This supposed chief came along-side with great parade, and singing in their usual way, and by way of addition, their singing was accompanied by instrumental music, such as a large old chest for a drum, and two rattles. He was dressed in an old cloth cloak that formerly had been scarlet, with some old gold fringe about the shoulders, and ornamented with buttons down each side: with this coat, and his hair full of white down, (which they always wear when in "ull dress) he displayed great importance. He had besides in his boat, another old dress that was composed of different coloured pieces, and worn chiefly by his wife. The chief did not produce any thing for sale, but soon went on shore, probably to sort his trade, for he soon returned; but did not come on board until he had entertained them with singing; during which time, the chief acted different characters, and always changed his dress for each representation; at the same time, some of his people held up a large mat by way of scene, to prevent them on board from seeing what was going on behind the curtain. At one time he appeared in the character of a warrior, with all the ferocity of an Indian about him; and at another time, he represented a woman, in which character he wore a very curious mask, representing a woman's face. After this entertainment was over, the chief and some of his people went on board, and trade commenced. During the day, Captain Portlock bought about twenty-five pieces of good sea-otter skins; but the chief traded in so very tedious a manner, that he could not purchase the whole of his furs before the evening came on. The chief remained on board with one of his people; and as he required a hostage, Joseph Woodcock was sent on shore with his party.

Woodcock having frequently been on shore as a hostage, was well known to the natives, and they seemed very fond of his company. On one of these occasions, he remained amongst the Indians for three days, during which time he had an opportunity of seeing their customs and mode of living. Their sith and nastiness were beyond conception; their food, which consisted chiefly of fish, was mixed up with stinking oil, and other ingredients equally disagreeable; and the remains of every meal were thrown into a corner of their hut, upon a heap of the same kind that was in a state of putrefaction, which, together with large quantities of fat and stinking oil, caused a very loathsome and offensive smell; and what rendered it still worse, the same apartment served them both to eat and sleep in.

This uncomfortable situation, frequently induced Woodcock to take a ramble into the woods; but he was always narrowly watched by some of his new companions, who seemed to apprehend that he was endeavouring to make his escape from them. Once in particular, having rambled a considerable distance from the Indians place of residence, he began to amuse himself with whistling, not expecting, if the natives heard him, it could possibly be a matter of offence; but in this he was mistaken, for several of them immediately ran up to him and insisted upon his giving over: at first he did not comprehend their meaning, and went on with his whistling; however, one of them soon put a stop to it, by laying his hand on Woodcock's mouth, being apprehensive that he meant the whistling as a signal for some

some of his companions to come for him. Except their watching him so closely, they always treated him with great kindness, and at meal-times gave him what they considered as choice dainties; mixing his fish with plenty of stinking oil, which in their opinion gave it an additional and most agreeable relish; and he found it no easy matter to persuade them to let him eat his fish without sauce.

On the 21st trade again commenced, and the chief at last disposed of all his furs. Captain Portlock finding the adjacent neighbourhood was stripped of all their furs, determined to go to sea the first opportunity. Accordingly, in the morning of the 22d, they weighed anchor, and stood out of the Sound.

This party from the N. W. were much more addicted to thieving than any of the Indians in the Sound; and it was astonishing to see with what patience they would wait, when once they had fixed on any thing to steal, and with what dexterity they would convey their booty away. One fellow took a liking to Captain Portlock's drinking-mug, and he got it under his frock; but, unfortunately for the poor fellow, it happened to be half full of beer, a part of which spilling over, discovered the thief. Notwithstanding two people were constantly in the cabin to watch the Indians, one fellow found an opportunity to get a cutlafs under his frock, and was not discovered till he was going down the side of the ship; and another found means to steal four pair of worsted stockings, with which he got out of the ship undiscovered. The men are about the size of Europeans: their aspect is fierce and savage; this and their dress give them an appearance of warriors. They use daggers, and long-pointed spears; are easily provoked, and are very vindictive when enraged. On account of some trifling disagreements in trade, the captain was frequently threatened: however, as he kept his pistols ready charged before him, he was prudently guarded against any violent attack. These natives, it is supposed, are unacquainted with polygamy, as not even a chief was seen with more than one woman, to whom he appeared particularly attentive and affectionate.

The women at this Sound, (which has obtained the name of Portlock's Harbour) disfigure themselves in a most extraordinary manner, by making an incision in the under lip, in which they wear a piece of wood of an oval form: they wear them large in proportion to their age, and some old women had them as large as a tea-saucer. The weight of this trencher weighs the lip down, and leaves all the lower teeth entirely exposed; which gives them a very disagreeable appearance. When eating, they generally take more in the mouth than they can swallow, and after masticating it, they put part on the piece of wood, and take it in occasionally as they empty their mouths. The children have their lips bored when about two years old, and wear a piece of copper-wire to prevent it from closing; this they wear until they are about fourteen years old, when they take out the wire and introduce a piece of wood nearly the size of a button. Both sexes (as is the general characteristic among the Indians) are addicted to indolence and laziness, are fond of dirt and filth, and differ but little in their manners and customs from those of Prince William's Sound: were it not for their nastiness, the women are very engaging; their carriage is modest, and their features in general pleasing. Their apparel is the same of that worn by the men. Long hair is deemed a great ornament: the women wear theirs either clubbed behind, or tied up in a bunch on the crown of their head: the men wear theirs sometimes tied, but more generally loose, dressed with birds' down. The wives dress their husbands' hair, and also keep their treasures. The men and women eat together.

On the 22d they weighed, and came to sail; the next day they cleared the rocks, and on the 24th

they stood to the S. W. by S. the land in sight; the wind S. E. by S. the weather thick and rainy. Nothing remarkable occurred during their passage from the coast to Sandwich Islands. Sept. 27th they saw Owl-hee, about eight leagues distant.

On the 28th they were visited by several canoes, who brought in great abundance the different productions of their island. A quantity of hogs, vegetables, &c. were purchased.

The King George now left Owhyhee, and pushed on for Attouli.

On the 1st of October, after it was dark, several Indians were heard calling after the English, and presently a canoe was seen paddling towards the vessel: she was from Mowee, but had nothing to dispose of; after staying a few minutes alongside the ship, she returned towards the shore. This canoe was so very small, that she could hardly contain the two men who were in her.

October 3d, they were about two leagues from the fourth point of Attouli; on which they edged away for Wymoa Bay. In running along-shore they met with several canoes, from whom it was understood that their king was at Oneehow, and that before he left the island he had tabooed the hogs. Capt. Portlock was also informed, that the Nootka and Queen Charlotte had been at that island; that the former did not anchor, but proceeded to Oneehow, where she lay; and that the latter remained but two days in the bay. The captain was likewise informed, that Captain Dixon had left a letter for him with Abbenooe, which lay at his house in Wymoa. This induced the captain to stretch in for the bay, and being about a mile from the shore, brought the maintop-fail to the main.

Tahiree the king's son came on board, and informed the captain that the letter was tabooed in the house, consequently the captain must wait till Abbenooe arrived, or sent directions for its delivery. As this was the case, Captain Portlock bore away for Oneehow, where he came to anchor on the 5th with a view of procuring all the yams that he could until the messenger who was sent for the letter arrived. The king's son and a chief of some consequence, named Tabooaranee, accompanied the captain to Oneehow.

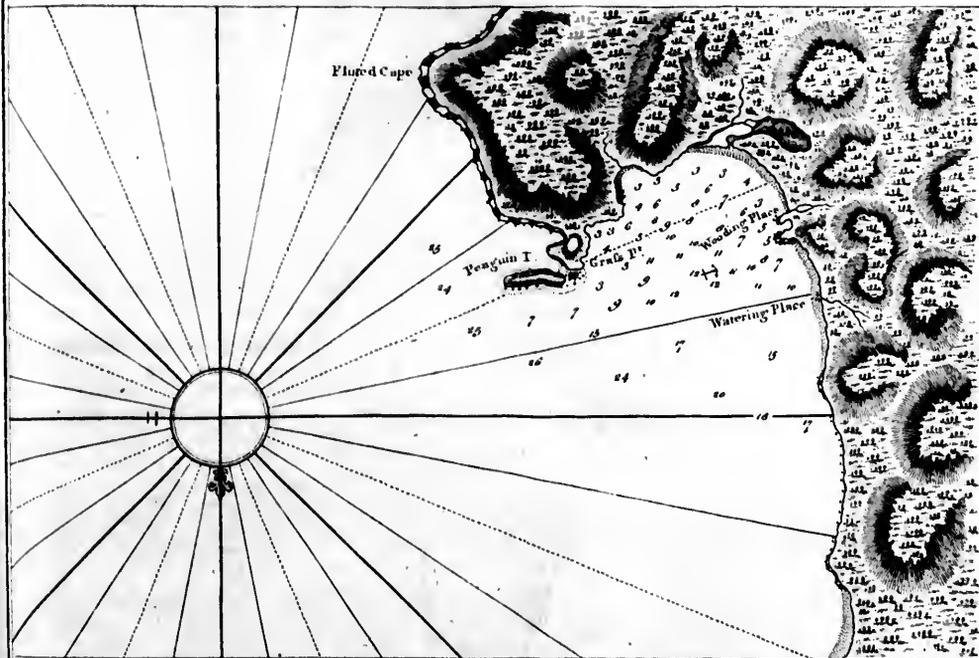
About two in the afternoon, the king, Abbenooe, and several chiefs, came on board, and brought with them a quantity of yams and potatoes. Tabooaranee the chief (who belonged to Owhyhee) was received very cordially by the king and his people. Abbenooe informed Captain Portlock, that the letter which was at Wymoa should be sent for immediately, and insisted upon the captain's staying at Oneehow, till the messenger returned, which would be in the course of thirty-six hours. A canoe was accordingly dispatched for it, and during its stay a brisk trade was carried on: they were likewise supplied with water by the natives. The captain's boats returned in the evening, not having made any great purchase. One of the crew had lost his shoe in the surf, and Abbenooe being informed of the place where he had dropt it, would, in spite of all intreaties to the contrary, go in search thereof, though it was now evening, and the wind blowing very fresh: for this old man observed that one shoe was of no use, and accordingly he went to seek it. In less than an hour he returned with the shoe and buckle, and exulted not a little upon his success.

The time was now diverted with different accounts: Tabooaranee the chief, informed Captain Portlock that he was present when Captain Cook was killed. A great number of the people were wounded from the fire at different times, the majority of whom perished. Several of the chiefs upon the return of the English, were afraid that they came to resent their countryman's fall. The chief also showed the captain a dagger, similar to that with which Captain Cook suffered. This chief was a tall, well-made, handsome fellow.



VIEW of the South Side of ADVENTURE BAY.

PLAN
of
ADVENTURE BAY.
on
VAN DIEMENS LAND
Lat $46^{\circ} 20' S$ Long $147^{\circ} 25' E$
1771



Nautic Miles



T. Bowen sculp.

London, Published by, *How, Begg, at the Kings Arms, N^o. 6. Peter Street Row.*

On the 6th, there
by a chief, which was
chief mate of the Ne
pleted their watering

On the 7th the m
for Capt. Dixon's let
was immediately del

The following are
upon the inhabitants
to other navigators.
of the natives, their p
civil, military and r
the voyages of Cap
voyages the reader v
factory in this work

" I advise all those
" to these islands, fo
" refreshing, to mak
" to the southward o
" the south side of t
" but what shews it
" any that lay half a
" come the length
" off that point a r
" which is easily di
" loured water. In
" hogs and vegetabl
" and after sailing
" begin to get a supp
" be procured at th
" mean not after you
" ward of Karakako
" wards Karakooa
" ply of fine hogs, b
" taro, sugar-cane, a
" This island is n
" and between Karak
" may procure all the
" and you may also
" fresh water enoug
" they do not cheat
" with salt water, w
" if you are not care
" people were cheate
" is the situation I
" pork; you will ha
" air, and at the far
" smooth water, whic
" with greater care an
" From this part I
" run for the west en
" distances of these i

*Proceedings of the Queen
Their Character—N
—Their Language—
Description of the P
the Coast—Anchorag
A brisk Trade—He
Indians attempt to
Natives, &c.*

WHEN the Queen
King George,
hopes of meeting with
King George's Sound
till the 22d of May, w
an inlet, and consequ
with inhabitants and
was determined to tr
very unfavourable, th
till the next morning
whale-boat was hoist
second mate, sent into
for the purpose of find

On the 6th, there was a letter brought on board by a chief, which was left by a Mr. David Ross, chief mate of the Nootka. This day they had completed their watering.

On the 7th the messenger whom Abbenoo sent for Capt. Dixon's letter, returned from Attoui. It was immediately delivered to Capt. Portlock.

The following are Captain Portlock's sentiments upon the inhabitants and island, with his directions to other navigators. As to a minute description of the natives, their persons, houses, canoes, customs, civil, military and religious, he refers the reader to the voyages of Captains Cook and King, which voyages the reader will find more ample and satisfactory in this work than in any other edition.

" I advise all those whose business may lead them to these islands, for the purpose of watering and refreshing, to make the island of Owhyhee, a little to the southward of the east point, and run down the south side of the island: there is no danger but what shews itself, nor indeed did I perceive any that lay half a mile from the shore, until you come the length of the south point. There is off that point a reef that runs off about a mile, which is easily discovered by breakers and coloured water. In this run you may get small hogs and vegetables enough for present supply; and after sauling round the south point you will begin to get a supply of salt, which article cannot be procured at the eastern part of the island; I mean not after you get to the eastward and northward of Karakakooa Bay; and as you draw towards Karakakooa, you will get a plentiful supply of fine hogs, bread-fruit, and sweet potatoes, taro, sugar-cane, and cocoa-nuts.

" This island is not famous for the sweet-root; and between Karakakooa and the south point you may procure all the refreshments the island affords, and you may also get the natives to bring off fresh water enough for present use. Take care they do not cheat you, by filling their calabashes with salt water, which they will do, and sell it, if you are not careful in tasting: several of my people were cheated this way. And hereabouts is the situation I would recommend for salting pork; you will have the open and unconfined air, and at the same time moderate breezes and smooth water, which enable the canoes to come off with greater care and safety with their hogs and salt.

" From this part I would advise the navigator to run for the west end of Ranal, (the bearings and distances of these islands from each other will be

" found by consulting the chart of them in Capt. Cook's last voyage) and from that point sail directly for the west point of Morotoi. Should night come on, there is anchorage to the northward of the west point of Morotoi, sheltered from the prevailing winds. After leaving this island, sail directly for the S. E. point of Woahoo, and on rounding that point anchor in King George's Bay. If found necessary to stay there any time, it would be advisable to buoy the cables. At this island I would advise the watering and wooding business to be done, not by sending on shore for either article, but by encouraging the natives to bring them to the vessel.

" To give any further directions respecting the navigation among these islands would be superfluous, as every particular on that head may be collected from the detail of occurrences during our second visit to them. I cannot help observing, that I think their situation and produce may be productive of material benefit to our new settlement at Botany Bay, and at the same time be a considerable saving to government in the articles of provisions, which may be purchased here at a trifling expence."

On the 4th of November they passed the islands of Saypan and Tinian. The white cattle, which Lord Anson says the island of Tinian so much abounds with, were seen grazing on the plains. Both these islands appeared remarkably beautiful, on account of their abounding in trees.

From this to the 18th, nothing material happened. Early this morning they were surrounded by a number of Chinese fishing-boats; and soon afterwards a Chinese vessel was seen steering towards them. They shortened sail, and a boat was sent on board her for a pilot: she soon returned with one, who having made his terms with captain Portlock, conveyed the ship to Macao-roads.

On the 20th, at half past ten, they came to anchor with the best bower, in nine fathoms, muddy bottom. The city of Macao bearing N. W. half N. distant about six leagues.

On the 21st they weighed and stood towards Macao, and at half past four anchored with the best bower in four fathoms and a half, muddy bottom, in Macao-road. The town bearing E. by S. three leagues distant. The whale-boat was sent on shore to Macao at five in the morning: she returned with a letter from Capt. Dixon, whose adventures during this separation shall be the subject of our two succeeding chapters.

CHAPTER III.

Proceedings of the Queen Charlotte—Anchorage—Description and Name of the Harbour—Visited by the Natives—Their Character—Manners, Ornaments, &c.—Description of their Huts—Singular Way of depositing their Dead—Their Language—Scarcity of Furs, &c.—The Queen Charlotte weighs Anchor—Arrives at Norfolk Sound—Description of the Place—Various Remarks upon the Natives, &c.—The Vessel weighs Anchor—Proceeds along the Coast—Anchorage—Description of Port Banks—Various Transactions—Departure—Meet with Natives—A brisk Trade—Heppab Island discovered—Remarks—Trade kept up—Description of one of the Chiefs—The Indians attempt to steal Furs—Two English Vessels met—Brief Account of the American Coast—Character of the Natives, &c.

WHEN the Queen Charlotte took leave of the King George, she kept coasting along, in hopes of meeting with an harbour on her passage to King George's Sound. Nothing material occurred till the 22d of May, when there being every sign of an inlet, and consequently a likelihood of meeting with inhabitants and a good trade, Capt. Dixon was determined to try it; but as the weather was very unfavourable, the examination was postponed till the next morning, when about six o'clock the whale-boat was hoisted out, and Mr. Turner, the second mate, sent into the bay, which bore N. N. E. for the purpose of finding an anchoring-place.

No. 9,

In about two hours Mr. Turner returned, and informed the captain that he had discovered an excellent harbour, and seen a number of inhabitants. Upon this the yawl was hoisted out, and sent a-head with the whale-boat, in order to tow the vessel into the bay; but, after struggling for some time, they found all their towing was to no purpose, as the tide was very strong against them. They then began to warp up the bay; but their progress was very slow, as it was eight o'clock in the evening when they came to anchor with the small bower, in 65 fathoms water, over a muddy bottom, about a mile's distance from shore.

* D d

While

While warping into the bay, they were visited by several canoes. Those canoes were quite different from those in Prince William's Sound, being constructed altogether of wood, much in the form of the English whale-boats, and finished in a very neat manner.

On the 24th there were a great number of natives seen on the beach, near the entrance of a narrow creek, which appeared to lead a great distance into the country, and widened as it advanced in shore. Those natives made signals to the English to come on shore. There was also a smoke seen at a small distance round the point, proceeding from behind some pines: the captain imagining this to be the chief residence of the Indians, went in the whale-boat to survey the place, in hopes of finding a more convenient anchorage: he met with several inhabitants, and a few temporary huts. They weighed anchor at eight o'clock, and began to ply into the harbour to the northward, having now a fresh easterly breeze. In the forenoon they anchored in eight fathom water, over a soft muddy bottom, close to the shore, and very near two large huts. In this harbour they were comfortably sheltered from wind and weather, being completely land-locked. The islands which surrounded, were entirely free from snow: those islands formed several creeks and harbours. There was some high mountainous land to the northward and westward covered with snow, and which appeared to be part of the continent: there were a great many pine-trees of different species, witch-hazel, brushwood, &c. Their vegetation was at present in too young a state to admit of any judgment on its quality. There were several shrubs of different kinds springing up: also a few wild-geese and ducks, which the captain occasionally shot, to the great surprize of the inhabitants. This harbour, which was in latitude 59 deg. 32 min. N. and in longitude 140 deg. W. was named by Capt. Dixon Port Mulgrave, in honour of the Right Honourable Lord Mulgrave.

During their stay here, they were constantly visited by the natives. They were greatly pleased at the arrival of the ship; and understanding that they were come for furs, an old man brought ten excellent sea-otter skins, which he sold for towces. This circumstance, together with their seeing very few ornaments amongst the Indians, gave them reason to expect a good traffic; but a few days convinced them that their conjectures were built on a sandy foundation, for they procured very few valuable furs, and the Indians were remarkably tedious in their trading: four or six of them would come along-side in a canoe, and wait an hour before they produced any thing to sell; they then by significant shrugs, would hint at having something to dispose of, and wish to see what would be given in exchange, even before their commodity was exposed to view. If this manœuvre did not succeed, a few trifling pieces of old sea-otter skins were produced, and a considerable time was taken up in concluding the bargain. This harbour was calculated to contain about seventy inhabitants, including women and children; they in general are about the middle-size, their limbs straight and well-shaped; but like the other inhabitants on the coast, are particularly fond of painting their faces with a variety of colours; so that it is no easy matter to discover their real complexion: however, one woman was prevailed on by persuasion and a trifling present, to wash her face and hands, and the alteration it made in her appearance was absolutely surprizing; her countenance had all the cheerful glow of an English milk-maid; and the healthy red which flushed her cheek, was even beautiful: contrasted with the whiteness of her neck: her eyes were black and sparkling; her eyebrows the same colour, and most beautifully arched; her forehead so remarkably clear, that the translucent veins were seen meandering even in their minu-

test branches: in short, she was what would be reckoned handsome, even in England. But this symmetry of features is entirely destroyed by a custom extremely singular, and which has never been mentioned by any navigators whatever: an aperture is made in the thick part of the under-lip, and increased by degrees in a line parallel with the mouth, and equally long. In this aperture, a piece of wood is constantly wore, of an elliptical form, about half an inch thick; the superficies not flat, but hollowed out on each side like a spoon, but not quite so deep; the edges are likewise hollowed in the form of a pulley, in order to fix this precious ornament more firmly in the lip, which by this means is frequently extended at least three inches horizontally, and consequently distorts every feature in the lower part of the face. This curious piece of wood is worn only by the women, and seems to be considered as a mark of distinction, it not being worn by all indiscriminately, but only by those who appeared in a superior station to the rest.

Their huts are the most wretched that can be conceived: they are formed of a few poles stuck in the ground, without order or regularity, enclosed and covered with loose boards; and so little care is taken in their construction, that they are quite insufficient to keep out the snow or rain; the numerous chinks and crannies serve, however, to let out the smoke, no particular aperture being left for that purpose. The inside of these dwellings exhibits a complete picture of dirt and filth, indolence and laziness; in one corner are thrown the bones and remaining fragments of victuals left at their meals; in another, are heaps of fish, pieces of stinking flesh, grease, oil, &c. In short, the whole served to shew in how wretched a state it is possible for human beings to exist; and yet these people appear contented with their situation, and probably enjoy a greater portion of tranquillity than is to be found under the gilded roofs of the most despotic monarch. 'Tis probable, that the chief reason why these Indians take no greater pains in the structure of their habitations is, that their situation is merely temporary; no sooner does the master of a tribe find game begin to grow scarce, or fish not so plentiful as he expected, than he takes down his hut, puts the boards into his canoe, and paddles away to seek out for a spot better adapted to his various purposes; which having found, he presently erects his dwelling in the same careless manner as before.

The whale-boat was one day sent out with seven people to catch halibut, which are very plentiful at this place, but their success was greatly inferior to that of two Indians who were fishing at the same time; which is rather extraordinary, if we consider the apparent inferiority of their tackle to that of Captain Dixon's people. Their hook is a large simple piece of wood, the shank at least half an inch in diameter; that part which turns up, and which forms an acute angle, is considerably smaller, and brought gradually to a point; a flat piece of wood, about six inches long, and near two inches wide, is neatly lashed to the shank, on the back of which is rudely carved the representation of an human face. 'Tis not likely that this was altogether intended as an ornament to their hooks, but that it is intended as a kind of Deity to insure their success in fishing, which is conducted in a singular manner: they bait their hook with a kind of fish, called by the sailors *quid*, and having sunk it to the bottom, they fix a bladder to the end of the line as a buoy, and should that not watch sufficiently, they add another. One man is sufficient to look after five or six of these lines: when he perceives a fish bite he is in no great hurry to haul up his line, but gives him time to be well hooked, and when the fish is hauled up to the surface of the water, he knocks him on the head with a short club provided for that purpose, and afterwards stows his prize away at his leisure. This

is done to prevent (very large) from his canoe in their

They dress their into a kind of very fish, seal, porpoise sometimes they make same method, which ing; though Captain pans, and pointed. The Indians are plant which appears content, however, state, they generally sometimes the inner with a refinous substance a mile and a half were a number of ground; at that distance constructed with such Captain Dixon concludes Indian contrivance were erected by some be satisfied in this city of going to the found it to be a kind may be called so, was fitted in the earth.

The manner in which is very remarkable: body, and wrapping into a square box, oblong chest. At certain the body, a thin drove into the earth, the upper ends meet with a kind of rope. About two feet from piece of timber goes to each pole: one which contains the cured with rope: that with two or three times both, which a let into the wood, a hours by way of admission, are uniform are sometimes fixed side the body; the h in the manner already during their stay had what ceremony was their dead.

Their language is Prince William's Sound uncouth and difficult are in general very clear was some time before known, as they had their poverty. The here were the sea-cloaks, made from t bought with towces, are by no means for one, being formed of excavated, and reduced large enough to contain

The captain having to be purchased, det gave the first opportunity of June they carried warped out of the sail they stood out of

The wind having days they plied to the wind shifted to the for the coast. The a combe, and they had harbour; but as they not attempt to anchor

is done to prevent the halibut (which sometimes are very large) from damaging, or perhaps upsetting his canoe in their dying struggles.

They dress their victuals by putting heated stones into a kind of wicker-basket, amongst pieces of fish, seal, porpoise, &c. and covered up close; sometimes they make broth, and fish-soup by the same method, which they always preferred to boiling; though Captain Dixon gave them some brass pans, and pointed out the mode of using them. The Indians are particularly fond of chewing a plant which appears to be a species of tobacco; not content, however, with chewing it in its simple state, they generally mix lime along with it, and sometimes the inner rind of the pine-tree, together with a resinous substance extracted from it. About a mile and a half from where the ship lay at anchor were a number of white rails, on a level piece of ground; at that distance they appeared to be constructed with such order and regularity, that Captain Dixon concluded them beyond the reach of Indian contrivance, and consequently, that they were erected by some civilized nation: willing to be satisfied in this particular, he took an opportunity of going to the spot, and to his great surprize, found it to be a kind of burying-place, for that it may be called so, where dead bodies are not deposited in the earth.

The manner in which they dispose of their dead is very remarkable: they separate the head from the body, and wrapping them in furs, the head is put into a square box, and the body into a kind of oblong chest. At each end of the chest which contains the body, a thick pole, about ten feet long, is drove into the earth in a slanting position, so that the upper ends meet together, and are firmly lashed with a kind of rope prepared for that purpose. About two feet from the top of this arch, a small piece of timber goes across, and is very neatly fitted to each pole: on this piece of timber the box which contains the head is fixed, and strongly secured with rope: the box is frequently decorated with two or three rows of small shells, and sometimes both, which are very neatly and ingeniously let into the wood, and is painted with various colours by way of additional ornaments; the poles, however, are uniformly painted white. These poles are sometimes fixed upright in the earth, and on each side the body; the head, however, is always secured in the manner already described. The English during their stay had no opportunity of learning what ceremony was made use of in thus depositing their dead.

Their language is quite different from that of Prince William's Sound, or Cook's River. It is very uncouth and difficult to pronounce. These people are in general very close and uncommunicative. It was some time before their scanty stock of furs was known, as they had cunning enough to conceal their poverty. The different sorts of furs purchased here were the sea-otter, land-beaver, and a few cloaks, made from the earless marmot. They were bought with towees, beads, &c. Their large canoes are by no means so neatly constructed as the small one, being formed of one large tree, which is rudely excavated, and reduced to no particular shape; yet large enough to contain twelve or fourteen people.

The captain having got all the furs that were here to be purchased, determined on leaving Port Mulgrave the first opportunity. Accordingly on the 4th of June they carried a small anchor a-head, and warped out of the harbour. Having then made sail they stood out of the sound.

The wind having kept to the eastward for several days they plied to the southward. On the 10th the wind shifted to the S. W. and now they stood in for the coast. The next day they saw Cape Edgecombe, and they had the prospect of an excellent harbour; but as night was far advanced they did not attempt to anchor.

On the 12th the whale-boat was hoisted out, and sent a-head to sound. There was now a large boat full of people seen at a great distance; something like a white flag was hoisted up, and various conjectures were made of the people, some thinking them Russians, others Spaniards. Upon a nearer view the boat proved to be an Indian canoe, and the supposed flag was a tuft of white feathers, which was erected by these Indians on the top of a pole as a signal of friendship and peace. There were some furs purchased of these visitors, who informed the captain that the adjacent harbour was very populous, and that there were a quantity of furs there. The whale-boat returned about six o'clock, when the yaul was hoisted out, and both boats sent a-head for the purpose of towing the vessel into the bay.

They now stood right in for a bay, which they saw to the northward, and which appeared well-sheltered. The whale-boat was sent out again, with Mr. Turner, up the sound to look for a harbour, and the yaul was sent into the bay a-head, with Mr. White, to examine the soundings. Mr. White returned first, and reported that there was excellent anchorage in eight to twelve fathoms, over a sandy bottom. At twelve o'clock they came to anchor at eight fathoms. The whale-boat returned about four in the afternoon, and Mr. Turner reported that there were several good harbours, but that it was in general rocky bottom: the captain deemed it therefore best to keep his present situation. Mr. Turner further reported that he saw a large cave, formed by nature in the side of a mountain, about four miles to the northward of the anchoring-birth: curiosity prompted him to go on shore, in order to examine it, as there appeared something, which, at a distance looked bright and sparkling. On getting into the cave, he found the object which attracted his attention, to be a square box, with a human head in it, deposited in the manner already described at Port Mulgrave: the box was very beautifully ornamented with small shells, and seemed to have been left there recently, being the only one in the place.

This harbour, which was called Norfolk Sound, is a very extensive place; but how far it stretches to the northward is uncertain. The shore here, in common with the rest of the coast, abounds with pines. There is also greater quantities of the witch-hazel here than had been hitherto met with. There were also various kinds of flowering-trees and shrubs; amongst which were wild-gooseberries, currants, and raspberries: wild-parsley is found in great plenty, and they frequently picked great quantities of it, which eat excellently, either as a salad, or boiled among soup. The faranne, or wild-lily-root, grows here in great plenty and perfection. There were very few wild-ducks or geese seen here, and those shy and difficult of approach. Captain Dixon was frequently on shore with his fowling-piece, but he shot any thing that came in his way, indiscriminately; his motive being rather to shew the Indians the effects of fire-arms, than to pursue game; and the event shewed that his intention was completely answered. The inhabitants frequently caught halibut: and large quantities of salmon were frequently seen hung up on shore to dry; but they were not willing to sell it, which shews that fish is a principal and favourite article of food here: a few salmon, indeed, were bought, but they were of a very inferior kind to those met with in Cook's River. Fish, however, being the only fresh provision in their power to obtain, the boat was frequently sent out with six hands, to catch fish for the ship's company; and they were always tolerably successful, catching great numbers of fine rock-fish, and some hake, but very few halibut. There are great quantities of muscles in some parts of the sound; together with a few crabs, star-fish, &c.

On the 15th a number of canoes, full of inhabitants, came along-side: after a considerable time spent in singing, a brisk trade commenced, and they bought a number of sea-otter skins. The people seemed far more lively and alert, than those they had left at Port Mulgrave; and from every appearance, they had reason to expect an excellent trade at this place. Towees were the article of traffic held in the first estimation by the natives; but they always refused small ones, wanting them in general from eight to fourteen inches long. Besides these, they traded with pewter basons, hatchets, howls, buckles, rings, &c. Of these, the basons were best liked; for though the hatchets and howls were obviously the best tools these people could possibly have had, yet they were only taken in exchange for furs of inferior value. Beads of every sort were constantly refused with contempt, when offered by way of barter, and would scarcely be accepted of as presents. Amongst the people who came to trade, was an old man, who seemed remarkably intelligent: he gave them to understand, that a good while ago there had been two vessels at anchor near this place, one of which was considerably larger than the *Queen Charlotte*; that they carried a great number of guns, and that the people resembled them in colour and dress. He shewed Captain Dixon a white shirt they had given him, and which he seemed to regard as a great curiosity: on examining it, the captain found it to be made after the Spanish fashion, and immediately judged these vessels described by the Indian to be Spaniards, who were on this coast in 1775. Though trade principally engaged Captain Dixon's attention, yet a variety of necessary employments were carried on, and parties were frequently sent on shore to cut fire-wood, fill water, &c. &c.

Though the natives were very civil at first, and suffered the people to follow their various employments unmolested; yet they soon grew very troublesome, attempting to pick their pockets, and even to steal their saws and axes, in the most open and daring manner: indeed they could scarcely be restrained from these proceedings without violence; which it was neither the captain's interest or inclination to offer, if it could possibly be avoided. Luckily, the natives had frequently seen him shoot birds, and as the people went on shore well armed, the sight of a few muskets kept the Indians in a kind of awe.

The number of inhabitants were estimated at four hundred and fifty, including women and children. Their make, shape, and features, are pretty much the same with those at Port Mulgrave. Their faces are also painted with a variety of colours. The women ornament, or rather distort their lips, in the same manner as has already been described; and it should seem, that the female who is ornamented with the largest piece of wood, is most respected by her friends, and the community in general. This curious operation of cutting the under-lip of the females never takes place during their infancy, but seems confined to a peculiar period of life. When the girls arrive at the age of fourteen or fifteen, the center of the under-lip, in the thick part of the mouth, is simply perforated, and a piece of copper-wire introduced to prevent the aperture from closing: the aperture afterwards is lengthened from time to time in a line parallel with the mouth, and the wooden ornaments are enlarged in proportion, till they are frequently increased to three, and even four inches in length, and nearly as wide; but this generally happens when the matron is advanced in years, and consequently the muscles are relaxed. Their traffic, and indeed all their concerns, appear to be conducted with great order and regularity: they constantly came along-side to trade at day-light in the morning; and never failed to spend more than half an hour in singing, before the traffic commenced. The chief of a tribe has the entire ma-

nagement of all the trade belonging to his people, and takes infinite pains to dispose of their furs advantageously. Should a different tribe come along-side to trade whilst he is engaged in traffic, they wait with patience till he has done; and if, in their opinion, he has made a good market, they frequently employ him to sell their skins; sometimes, indeed, they are jealous of each other, and use every precaution to prevent their neighbours from observing what articles they obtain in exchange for their commodities. About twelve o'clock they constantly left the ship and went on shore, where they staid about an hour, which time was taken up in eating. This evidently shews that they have at least one fixed meal in the day, and that it is regulated by the sun: they likewise frequently left the ship about four in the afternoon; but this time was not so exactly observed as at noon. When the traffic of the day is pretty well over they begin to sing, and never leave off till the approach of night: thus beginning and ending the day in the same manner. One peculiar custom is practised by the traders here, totally different from that of any other part of the coast: the moment a chief has concluded a bargain, he repeats the word *Coo Coo* thrice, with quickness, and is immediately answered by all the people in his canoe, with the word *Wboab*, pronounced in a tone of exclamation, but with greater or less energy, in proportion as the bargain he has made is approved of. One of the chiefs, who came one day with some furs, happening to call his eyes on a piece of Sandwich Island cloth, which hung up in the shrouds to dry, became very importunate to have it given him. The man to whom the cloth belonged parted with it very willingly, and the Indian was perfectly overjoyed with his present. After selling what furs he had brought with great dispatch, he immediately left the ship and paddled on shore, without singing a parting song, as is generally the custom.

Early the next morning he appeared along side dressed in a coat made of the Sandwich Island cloth, given him the day before, and cut exactly in the form of their skin-coats, which greatly resembled a waggoner's frock, except the collar and wrist-bands. The Indian was very proud of his newly-acquired dress; and the captain greatly pleased with this proof of these people's ingenuity and dispatch. The coat fitted exceedingly well; the seams were sewed with all the strength the cloth would admit of, and with a degree of neatness equal to that of an English mantua-maker.

On their endeavouring to get the meaning of some words in the Indian language from one of the chiefs, and pointing to the sun, he gave them to understand, that notwithstanding their apparent superiority, in possessing various useful articles which the Indians did not, yet that their origin was the same; that they both came from above, and that the sun animated and kept alive every creature in the universe. This man had, no doubt, some idea of a Supreme Being; and if the probability of their morning and evening hymn, being intended as a kind of adoration to that Supreme Being, be admitted, it will serve to give no very inadequate idea of their religion. Besides their ordinary dress, the natives at this place have a peculiar kind of cloaks, made purposely to defend themselves from the inclemency of the weather; they appear to be made of reeds, sewed very closely together, and are exactly the same with those worn by the inhabitants of New Zealand. The furs purchased at this place were about 200 excellent sea-otter skins, a good quantity of inferior pieces of sea-otter, together with a large parcel of indifferent pieces and slips; about 100 good seals, and a great number of fine beaver tails.

On the 22d Capt. Dixon determined to leave the harbour the first opportunity; and the next day, a light breeze coming on from the westward, they weighed and got under sail. It was the captain's intention to keep well in with the land all along the coast,

y
r
y
re
p
at
-
-
as
ic
nd
us
r.
re,
he
in,
is,
ma
one
in
red
me
nd-
to
m.
it's
er-
he
tely
ing

tude
oth,
orm
ag-
uds.
red
this
The
wed
and
lith

ome
tels,
and,
in
hans
that
mi-
erfe.
cme
and
tion
e to
Be-
place
y to
wea-
very
hole
furs
llent
ces of
erent
great

e the
ay, a
they
tain's
g the
coast,

The INSIDE of A HIPPAH, in NEW ZEALAND.



coast, in order to
 was a probability
 o'clock, a fine ent
 N. E. they stood in
 to anchor in: a fe
 locked, and within
 this appeared a mo
 take up their abode
 seen; on this a fou
 ing, in order to c
 tants, if there shou

On the 24th Cap
 to look for inhabita
 harbours. A passa
 eastward of their sta
 but he returned wi
 considerable distanc
 foot of a mountain,
 supply of fresh wa
 vestiges of an Indi
 been recently taken
 the residence of some
 of flowers and flow
 in the valley near t
 bitants were found
 larly eligible for a
 so as there is a prob
 mon in due season.
 Port Banks, in hon
 land to the northwa
 vation sufficient to
 and though its sid
 snow, yet the numer
 pop out their bushy
 dreary and horrific
 to the N. W. of C
 the land is consider
 to grow in the moist
 together with the
 surrounding beaches
 to the higher land, a
 whole both pleasing

On the 26th they
 calm the boats were
 of the bay. They
 keeping close in wit
 On the 27th they
 ance of two rocky
 steered directly for
 land flattered them
 a fine bay; but Mr.
 in the whale-boat
 clared that the great
 and that there was n
 age. The weather
 there were frequent
 the southward. On
 this time they plied
 still hazy. On the
 northward, which bo
 about four leagues
 about noon, they sav
 by E. the extreme
 by N. and the easter
 leagues distant. Th
 this bay, but withou
 for the land close by
 tacks on board.

About seven o'clock
 came along-side the
 city of excellent be
 they did not seem
 offered various artic
 They were so attent
 they could not lifte
 their curiosity was gr
 and the captain, for
 soon in possession of a
 these people the cap
 was very thickly in
 plenty of furs to be s

coast, in order to examine every place where there was a probability of finding inhabitants. At six o'clock, a fine entrance presenting itself to the E. N. E. they stood in for it, and soon afterwards came to anchor in a secure harbour, completely land-locked, and within musket-shot of the shore. Though this appeared a most eligible spot for the natives to take up their abode in, yet no people were to be seen; on this a four-pounder was fired in the evening, in order to excite the curiosity of the inhabitants, if there should be any within hearing.

On the 24th Capt. Dixon went in the whale-boat to look for inhabitants in the adjacent creeks and harbours. A passage up a corner of the bay, to the eastward of their station, first engaged his attention; but he returned without success. The creek run a considerable distance inland, and terminated at the foot of a mountain, from whence it received a copious supply of fresh water. Near this place were the vestiges of an Indian hut, which seemed to have been recently taken away, and probably had been the residence of some hunting party. Various kinds of flowers and flowering shrubs were springing up in the valley near the rivulet, and though no inhabitants were found here, yet the place seems peculiarly eligible for a summer residence, and the more so as there is a probability of meeting with fine salmon in due season. The captain called this harbour Port Banks, in honour of Sir Joseph Banks. The land to the northward and southward rises to an elevation sufficient to convey every idea of winter; and though its sides are perpetually covered with snow, yet the numerous pines, which ever and anon pop out their bushy heads, entirely divest it of that dreary and horrid cast with the barren mountains to the N. W. of Cook's River. To the eastward, the land is considerably lower, and the pines appear to grow in the most regular and exact order; these, together with the bush-woods and shrubs on the surrounding beaches, form a most beautiful contrast to the higher land, and render the appearance of the whole both pleasing and romantic.

On the 26th they weighed anchor, and as it was calm the boats were sent a-head to tow the vessel out of the bay. They now stood out of the harbour, keeping close in with the coast.

On the 27th they saw land, which had the appearance of two rocky islands, bearing N. E. They steered directly for these, and on approaching the land flattered themselves with the hope of meeting a fine bay; but Mr. Turner having been dispatched in the whale-boat to examine it, on his return declared that the greatest part thereof was shoal water, and that there was no convenient place for anchorage. The weather was now thick and hazy, and there were frequent squalls. They kept standing to the southward. On the 28th they saw land: from this time they plied occasionally, the weather being still hazy. On the 30th they saw an island to the northward, which bore from N. E. by E. to E. by N. about four leagues distant. On the 1st of July, about noon, they saw a deep bay, which bore N. E. by E. the extreme point to the northward N. E. by N. and the easternmost land S. E. about seven leagues distant. They made every effort to reach this bay, but without effect; however they stood in for the land close by the wind, with their starboard tacks on board.

About seven o'clock several canoes full of Indians came along-side the vessel. These displayed a quantity of excellent beaver cloaks, but which at first they did not seem inclined to dispose of, though offered various articles in exchange by the English. They were so attentive in admiring the ship, that they could not listen to any proposals; but when their curiosity was gratified they then began to trade, and the captain, for the value of a few towecs, was soon in possession of all their skins, cloaks, &c. From these people the captain understood that the island was very thickly inhabited, and that there were plenty of furs to be had on shore.

No. 10.

The captain accordingly made for shore, and when within a mile thereof he perceived the village where these people dwelt: it consisted of about six huts, which were regularly built, and pleasantly situated; but the shore being rocky, afforded no place for anchorage. They now advanced towards a promising bay, which opened to the eastward; but could not possibly make it, on account of the wind and tide: accordingly, they hove-to, for the sake of trading with the natives, who by this time were assembled about the vessel, in ten canoes, to the number of about 120. Several beautiful sea-otter, and other excellent skins, were bought; and as all the natives were eager in selling their goods, a brisk trade was carried on. About 300 sea-otter skins were purchased in one hour. As soon as business was over, they made sail, and stood out for the bay, with the hopes of making the harbour the next morning.

On the 3d the same Indians repeated their visit, but they had nothing now to dispose of.

On the 5th, a fresh tribe of Indians came along-side, of whom were purchased a number of excellent cloaks. These people bargained for pewter basons, brass pans, tin kettles, &c. but the other tribe preferred towecs.

Capt. Dixon now judged it more advantageous to ply along-shore occasionally than come to anchor, especially as he had every reason to conclude that the natives did not live together in one social community, but were scattered about in different tribes, and probably at enmity with each other. The Indians did not leave the ship till evening came on, and then promised to return the next morning with more furs; which they did, and which they disposed of with the same facility as before. The furs in each canoe seemed to be a distinct property, and the people were particularly careful to prevent their neighbours from seeing what articles they bartered for. Meeting now with a fresh tribe of Indians, Capt. Dixon was convinced that coasting along shore to the eastward was attended with better and speedier success than lying at anchor could possibly be.

On the 7th, being close in-shore, a number of canoes were seen putting off; on which they shortened sail, and lay-to for them. The place these people came from had a very singular appearance, and on examining it narrowly, it was found that they lived in a very large hut, built on a small island, and well fortified after the manner of an hippah, on which account this place was distinguished by the name of Hippah Island. The tribe who inhabit this hippah seem well defended by nature from any sudden assault of their enemies; for the ascent to it from the beach is steep, and difficult of access; and the other sides are well barricaded with pines and brush-wood. Notwithstanding which, they have been at infinite pains, in raising additional fences of rails and boards; so that they must surely repel any tribe who should dare to attack their fortification. A number of circumstances had occurred, since their first trading in Cloak Bay, which served to shew that the inhabitants at this place were of a more savage disposition, and had less intercourse with each other, than any Indians met with on the coast; and there was great reason to suspect that they were cannibals in some degree. Capt. Dixon no sooner saw the fortified hut just mentioned, than this suspicion was strengthened, as it was, he said, built exactly on the plan of the hippah of the savages at New Zealand. The people, on coming along-side, traded very quietly, and strongly importuned those of the Queen Charlotte to go on shore; at the same time giving them to understand, (pointing towards the east) that if they visited that part of the coast, the inhabitants there would cut off their heads.

A number of excellent cloaks, and some good skins, were purchased from this party, which consisted of not more than 30 people, and as they were well armed with knives and spears, it is probable

E e

they

they expected to meet their enemies, being equally prepared for war or trade.

Trade being over, Capt. Dixon proceeded to the eastward, and on the 9th fell in with another tribe of Indians; from whom he purchased some very good cloaks, and a few good skins. In one of the canoes was an old man, who appeared to have some authority over the rest, though he had nothing to dispose of: he gave them to understand, that in another part of these islands, (pointing to the eastward) he could procure a plentiful supply of furs: on which Capt. Dixon gave him a light-horseman's cap: this present added greatly to his consequence, and procured him the envy of his companions in the other canoes, who beheld the cap with a longing eye, and seemed to wish it in their possession. There were likewise a few women amongst them, who all seemed pretty well advanced in years: their under lips were distorted in the same manner as those of the women at Port Mulgrave and Norfolk Sound, and the pieces of wood were particularly large. One of these lip-pieces appearing to be peculiarly ornamented, Captain Dixon wished to purchase it, and offered the old woman to whom it belonged a tatchet; but this she refused with contempt: towces, basons, and several other articles, were afterwards shewn to her, and constantly rejected. The captain began now to despair of making his wish for purchase, and had nearly given it up, when one of the people happening to shew the old lady a few buttons, which looked remarkably bright, she eagerly embraced the offer; and was now altogether as ready to part with her wooden ornament, as before she was desirous of keeping it. This curious lip-piece measured three and 7-8ths inches long, and two and 5-8ths inches in the widest part; it was inlaid with a small pearly shell, round which was a rim of copper. In standing along-shore to the eastward, they met with different tribes of Indians, with whom they traded much in the same manner as before.

They now kept close in with the shore, and on the 13th were visited by a fresh party, consisting of about 36; of whom some excellent skins and cloaks were purchased: when these Indians had disposed of their articles, they could not be prevailed on to quit the vessel, though she was making sail: however, on account of a thick fog which came on, they paddled away, being about eight miles from the coast. The weather continued thick and foggy from this to the 20th; during which time they met with several canoes, and purchased for knives, buckles, brass pans, &c. some furs and cloaks, but of an inferior kind to those hitherto bought.

On the 23d they met eight canoes, containing near a hundred people; of whom they purchased a few good cloaks and skins.

On the 24th eleven canoes came along-side, containing near 180 men, women, and children, which was by far the greatest concourse of people they had seen at any one time; but curiosity, it seems, had chiefly induced the natives to visit the ship at that time, for they brought scarcely any thing to sell: indeed, till now, they seldom had seen any women or children in the trading parties; for the men, probably expecting to meet with their adversaries, for the most part left the women and children behind, that they might be out of danger.

The land which they had been cruising along for some time was now judged to be a group of islands; and as it was pretty evident that no more trade could be expected on that side, Capt. Dixon purposed standing round a point to the S. E. in order to try what the opposite side afforded.

After proceeding round the point, they fell in with several tribes of Indians, who brought some very good furs: several of whom they knew to be their old friends.

On standing round the islands, land was seen to the eastward, which they supposed to be the conti-

nent; and on the 29th, the tide setting out from that land, it frequently drove large patches of seaweed, long grass, and pieces of wood, by the vessel, which made them conclude that there is a large river setting out from that part of the coast. The river called Los Reys, by De Fonte, is near this place; and though what he says about it is almost incredible, yet, from the above circumstance, it appears very probable that there are deep inlets into the country.

On the 29th no less than eighteen canoes came along-side, containing more than 200 people. This was not only the greatest concourse of traders they had seen, but what rendered the circumstance additionally pleasing was the great quantity of excellent furs they brought, and the facility with which they traded.

There was amongst these traders an old chief, whom they had seen on the other side these islands, and who now appearing to be of the first consequence, Captain Dixon permitted him to come on board. The moment he got on the quarter-deck, he began to tell a long story, the purport of which was, that he had lost in battle the cap which had been given him; and, by way of corroborating this circumstance, he shewed several wounds which he had received in defending his property. Notwithstanding this, he begged for another cap, intimating at the same time that he would never lose it but with his life. The captain, willing to gratify his ambition, made him a present of another, and found it was not bestowed in vain, for he became extremely useful to them in their traffic: whenever any dispute or mistake arose, in the unavoidable hurry occasioned by so great a number of traders, they always referred the matter to him, and were constantly satisfied with his determination.

On Capt. Dixon pointing to the eastward, and asking the old man whether any furs were to be procured there, he gave the captain to understand, that it was a different nation from his, and that he did not even understand their language, but was always at war with them; that he had killed great numbers, and had many of their heads in his possession. The old fellow seemed to take particular pleasure in relating these circumstances, and took uncommon pains to make Capt. Dixon comprehend his meaning: he closed his relation with advising him not to go near that part of the coast, for that the inhabitants there would certainly destroy him and his people.

The captain endeavoured to learn how the Indians disposed of the bodies of their enemies who were slain in battle; and though he could not clearly understand the chief, yet there is some reason to think that these poor wretches are feasted on by the victors. The heads are always preserved, as standing trophies of victory.

This chief had the most savage aspect of any yet seen; and his whole appearance sufficiently marked him as a proper person to lead on a tribe of cannibals. His stature was above the common size; his body spare and thin; and though at first sight he appeared lank and emaciated, yet his step was bold and firm, and his limbs apparently strong and muscular; his eyes were large and goggling, and seemed ready to start out of their sockets; his forehead deeply wrinkled, not merely by age, but from a continual frown; all this, joined to a long visage, hollow cheeks, high elevated cheek-bones, and a natural ferocity of temper, formed a countenance not easily beheld without some degree of emotion: however, he proved very useful, in conducting the traffic so as to give general satisfaction; and the intelligence he gave Captain Dixon, and the methods he took to make himself understood, shewed him to possess a strong natural capacity. Besides at least 350 skins, which were procured from this party, they brought several racoon cloaks, each cloak consisting of seven racoon skins, neatly sewed together; they

they had also a great variety of furs, some most excellent for and chiefly collected towards evening, having disposed of the ship and paddles.

On the 30th evening, but they brought inferior quality, intended for stock was nearly been out on a fish of halibut, which to the ship's company.

Hitherto all the these islands; though they had behaved this evening they mischievous disposition shewed a considerable people who had got their traffic more favoured by various the people on board canoes paddled still piled against one of the Indians thrust his the furs, but perceived they paddled. Dixon, however, he was able to pursue a distance, ordered them, but did not with any fatal effect.

As no further trade Capt. Dixon deemed George's Sound, either hand when he expected that place.

On the 1st of August which contained four to sell, and came near the captain that one of consequence of a war squets were fired; tained no enmity against willing to be on ground not betray the least along-side, but on the in assuring the English with them.

On the 2d Cape four leagues distant o'clock the rocks of about two leagues distant well proceeding squet calm, they were for as the weather was and what still added haziness of the weather discerning any object. In the course of four dispersed, and the S. W. were then no boats were now seen had soundings now rocky bottom: after a line of 120 fathoms safely over the rocks George's Sound.

On the 3d the boats permitted to rest. alarmed with the noise the rocks, the people the boats hoisted out the weather was still clear of all danger, O. S. about five leagues.

The weather continued days. On the 6th

they had also a good quantity of oil, in bladders of various sizes, from a pint to a gallon: this was a most excellent sort for the lamp, was perfectly sweet, and chiefly collected from the fat of animals. Towards evening, these numerous tribes of Indians having disposed of every saleable article, they left the ship and paddled for the shore.

On the 30th eight canoes came off to the ship, but they brought very few furs, and those of an inferior quality, intimating at the same time that their stock was nearly exhausted. Some of them had been out on a fishing party, and caught a number of halibut, which proved a seasonable refreshment to the ship's company.

Hitherto all the people that had been met with at these islands, though evidently of a savage disposition, had behaved in a quiet, orderly manner; but this evening they gave a convincing proof of their mischievous disposition, and that in a manner which shewed a considerable degree of cunning. The people who had got the halibut to sell artfully prolonged their traffic more than was customary, and endeavoured by various means to engage the attention of the people on board. In the mean time several canoes paddled sily a-stern, and seeing some skins nailed against one of the cabin-windows, one of the Indians thrust his spear through it, in order to steal the furs, but perceiving the noise alarmed those on deck, they paddled away with precipitation: Capt. Dixon, however, willing to make them sensible that he was able to punish attempts of this sort, even at a distance, ordered several muskets to be fired after them, but did not perceive that they were attended with any fatal effects.

As no further trade was expected from this part, Capt. Dixon deemed it expedient to make for King George's Sound, especially as the time was nearly at hand when he expected to join Captain Portlock at that place.

On the 1st of August they were visited by a canoe which contained fourteen people: they had nothing to sell, and came merely on purpose to inform the captain that one of their companions was dead, in consequence of a wound he received when the muskets were fired; but notwithstanding they entertained no enmity against the English, and were still willing to be on good terms with them. They did not betray the least apprehension when they came along-side, but on the contrary, were very strenuous in assuring the English that they were not at variance with them.

On the 2d Cape St. James bore S. S. W. about four leagues distant. In the afternoon at five o'clock the rocks off the cape bore S. 36 deg. W. about two leagues distant. On account of a heavy swell proceeding from the S. E. attended with a calm, they were for some time in a critical situation, as the weather was drifting directly upon the rocks; and what still added to their danger, was the extreme haziness of the weather, which prevented them from discerning any object, even at the smallest distance. In the course of four hours the fog very fortunately dispersed, and the swell abated: the rocks bearing S. W. were then not quite a mile distant. The boats were now sent a-head to tow the vessel: they had soundings now from 75 to 100 fathoms over a rocky bottom: afterwards finding no bottom with a line of 120 fathoms, they concluded themselves safely over the rocks. They now stood on for King George's Sound.

On the 3d the boats were taken in, and the people permitted to rest. In an hour after the watch being alarmed with the noise of the surf beating against the rocks, the people were instantly called up, and the boats hoisted out again, to tow the vessel a-head: the weather was still hazy. In the evening they were clear of all danger, Cape St. James bearing W. half S. about five leagues distant.

The weather continued thick and foggy for several days. On the 6th Woody Point was seen bearing

N. W. by W. about four leagues distant, and a split rock off the point N. 28 deg. W.

On the 8th they saw a sail, and presently after a smaller vessel in company, which they imagined to be the King George and her long-boat. However, on coming up with them, they proved to be the Prince of Wales and Princess Royal, two vessels from London, which had been fitted out by the proprietors of the King George and the Queen Charlotte. Captain Dixon understanding from these vessels, which had been in King George's Sound, that the King George was not arrived there, deemed it unnecessary to make the Sound, and therefore determined on proceeding to Sandwich Islands.

On the 9th they took leave of the Prince of Wales and Princess Royal, and shaped a course for their next destination.

We shall conclude this chapter with some general observations which were made by the Queen Charlotte, relative to the Coast of America, and which, in addition to what has been said, and will be introduced on future occasions, must give the reader a perfect and satisfactory idea of the place.

This extensive country exhibits upon the whole, a picture of a large continued forest. It is covered with pines of different species, intermixed with alder, birch, witch-hazel, &c. besides various kinds of brush-wood: and the valleys and low grounds, which are exposed to the sun, and sheltered from the wind, afford wild currants, gooseberries, raspberries, and various other flowery shrubs. The soil on the hills is a kind of compost, consisting of rotten mofs and old decayed trees. This is frequently washed down into the vallies by the sudden melting of the snow, and there incorporating with a light sand, forms a soil in which most of the English garden productions might be cultivated with success.

It is impossible to ascertain the number of inhabitants the coast, from Cook's River to King George's Sound, may contain; but from a moderate computation, there cannot be less than ten thousand; indeed, appearances might warrant the conjecture of there being more, as the women appear very prolific, and the people are totally free from that long catalogue of diseases, which luxury and intemperance have introduced amongst more civilized nations. But then it must be remembered, that neighbouring tribes are generally at war with each other; and these commotions, both from the nature of their weapons, and the savage disposition of the people, must be attended with fatal consequences; besides, there is reason to suppose, that numbers are yearly lost at sea, as they go out to a very considerable distance from the land on fishing-parties, and should bad weather suddenly come on, it is impossible for their canoes to live. These circumstances certainly tend to depopulate the country, and in some measure account for its being so thinly inhabited.

The hair of both sexes is long and black, and would be an ornament to them, were it not for the large quantities of grease and red ochre constantly rubbed into it, which not only gives it a disgusting appearance, but affords a never-failing harbour for vermin. Sometimes, indeed, the women keep their hair in decent order, parting it from the forehead to the crown, and tying it behind after the manner of a club. The young men have no beards; but this does not arise from a natural want of hair on that part, for the old men had beards all over the chin, and some of them had whiskers on each side the upper-lip. As this supposed defect amongst the natives of America has occasioned much speculative enquiry amongst the learned and ingenious, every opportunity was taken of learning how it was occasioned; and they were given to understand, that the young men got rid of their beards by plucking them out, but as they advance in years the hair is suffered to grow. It might be imagined, that the children of these savages would enjoy the free and unrestrained

unrestrained use of their limbs from their earliest infancy: this, however, is not altogether the case. Three pieces of bark are fastened together, so as to form a kind of chair; the infant after being wrapped in furs, is put into this chair, and lashed so close, that it cannot alter its posture even with struggling; and the chair is so contrived, that when a mother wants to feed her child, or give it the breast, there is no occasion to release the infant from its shackles. Soft moss is used by the Indian nurse to keep her child clean; but little regard is paid to this article, and the poor infants are often terribly exoriated; and this neglect is apparent even in children of six or seven years old.

Ornaments seem to differ in particular places, more than dress. The aperture, or second mouth above the chin, seems confined to the men of Cook's River and Prince William's Sound; whilst the wooden ornament in the under-lip is worn by the women only, in that part of the coast from Port Mulgrave to Queen Charlotte's Islands. Besides the ornaments already mentioned, the Indians are very fond of masks or visors, and various kinds of caps, all which are painted with different devices; such as birds, beasts, fishes, and sometimes representations of the human face; they have likewise many of these devices carved in wood, and some of them are far from being ill executed. These curiosities are greatly valued, and are carefully packed in neat square boxes, that they may the more conveniently be carried about. Whenever any large party came to trade, these treasures were first produced, and the principal persons dressed out in all their finery, before the singing commenced. In addition to this, the chief (who always conducts this vocal concert) puts on a large coat made of the elk skin, tanned, round the lower part of which is one or sometimes two rows of dried berries, or the beaks of birds, which make a rattling noise whenever he moves. In his hand he has a rattle, or more commonly a contrivance to answer the same end, which is of a circular form, about nine inches in diameter, and made of three small sticks bent round at different distances from each other; great numbers of birds' beaks and dried berries are tied to this curious instrument, which is shook by the chief with great glee, and in his opinion makes no small addition to the concert. Their songs generally consist of several stanzas; to each of which is added a chorus. The beginning of each stanza is given out by the chief alone; after which both men and women join, and sing in octaves, beating time regularly with their hands or paddles: mean while the chief shakes his rattle, and makes a thousand ridiculous gesticulations, singing at intervals in different notes from the rest; and this mirth generally continues near half an hour, without intermission.

It is hard to say whether or no they make use of

any hieroglyphics, to perpetuate the memory of events; but their numerous drawings of birds and fishes, and more especially their carved representations of animals and human faces, warrant a supposition of the kind. Many of these carvings are well proportioned, and executed with a considerable degree of ingenuity, which appears rather extraordinary amongst a people so remote from civilized refinement.

It is unknown when iron was introduced on this coast, but it must doubtless be a considerable time ago, and their implements certainly are not of English manufacture; so that there is little doubt of their being obtained from the Russians. Their knives are so very thin, that they bend them into a variety of forms, which answer their every purpose nearly as well as if they had recourse to a carpenter's tool-chest.

Among their manufactures, there is a kind of variegated blanket, or cloak, something like the English horse-cloths; which do not appear to be woven, but made entirely by hand, and are neatly finished. These cloaks are made of wool, collected from the skins of beasts killed in the chase; they are held in great estimation, and only worn on extraordinary occasions. Besides the skin-coats, worn in common, they have large cloaks purposely for wear, made of the elk skin, tanned, and worn double, sometimes three-fold.

These people, notwithstanding their uncultivated state, have a notion of gaming. The gaming implements, which were seen, consisted of 52 small round bits of wood, differently marked with red paint, and about three inches long: two persons play with these, and the game consists in putting them in particular places. One man at Port Mulgrave lost his spear, knife, and several towees, in about an hour: notwithstanding, the unfortunate gamester was very patient and quiet.

They calculate time by the moons, and remember extraordinary events for a generation. Two or three different languages are spoken on the coast; but from the information gained from the old chief at Queen Charlotte's Island, it is supposed that they are not generally understood. Though every tribe at Queen Charlotte's Island is governed by its respective chief, yet they are divided into families, which seem to have regulations of their own. The chief usually trades for the whole tribe; but upon any disagreement, every family claim a right to dispose of their own furs; which the chief immediately assents to. Whether the chief is allowed any thing for his trouble, is unknown.

Some of the natives were very jealous of their wives, and would seldom permit them to come on board: other husbands were so kind, that they obliged their ladies to accept of the least invitation. The women are particularly fond of their children.

CHAPTER IV.

A Number of Canoes met—A brisk Trade—An audacious Thief punished—Ship's Company afflicted with Scurvy—Whahoo seen—Visited by their old Acquaintance—Their Friendship—Anecdotes—Remarks—Additional Observations on the People—Proceed for China—Pass three Islands—In sight of the Lima Islands—Anchor in Mas Roads—Proceed to Wampoa—Transactions—Meet the King George.

AUGUST 9th Woody Point bore N. by E. seven leagues distant: from this to the 12th the weather was tolerably fine, and they had a smart breeze at N. W. After this the winds were changeable, and there were frequent calms.

Sept. 2d they steered due west, in order to make Owbyhee, which they saw on the 5th, bearing from S. S. W. to W. one-fourth N. about 14 leagues distant.

On the 6th they bore away to the westward, where they met a number of canoes coming from shore: accordingly they hoove-to, and purchased several small hogs, and a quantity of potatoes.

In about three hours the canoes increased, and a brisk trade was carried on. Several of the Indians, both for the sake of plunder, and to gratify their curiosity, climbed up the vessel's side: one of them, whose audacity in thieving was remarkable, seized a poker which belonged to the armourer's forge, and jumped overboard. He swam away with great exultation, bearing off his prize, notwithstanding it was repeatedly demanded: the captain immediately ordered his men to fire at the offender, conscious that if he over-looked such an outrageous theft, the rest of the natives would be encouraged to act in the same manner, and it would be impos-

sible to withstand. The canoes were discharged, and the men to bring him further harm should be brought; Surgeon under-lip was severely struck his under-lip the surgeon for a towee captain for a towee affair did not in for they still continued happened.

The captain now in order to procureibles, &c. for he did anchor at this island.

Several of the very much afflicted scarcely any person and many were laid they had such an the American Coast a very good passage performed in less than any longer delayed the indisposed would a seasonable supply of them considerable this scorbute commenced by the people falted who (at no kind of sallow beef and pork.

On the 7th they before, by which a supply of provisions

On the 8th they westernmost point of five leagues distant, followed by a number of a fresh steady breeze o'clock they hoove-to point: the people to for curiosities: they lie for the ship's under-made sail, and bore intended to take in the small island Tah eight leagues distant Ranai bore N. 10 d several canoes came purchased some fish heavy squalls in the close-reef the top-sail at night the weather

On the 10th What twelve o'clock the in eight and a half bottom interspersed mean to stay any longer necessary to procure we came along-side, and on shore for water brought, as every th They were visited by ing, but they consist came very fond of the favours as before. T

in getting the rigging The next day Abb form his old friends pay them a visit, an supplied with water

The King Tahietee noon, with his nephew ber of attendants: he and some cocoa-nuts he received from the Tahietee enquired

No. 10.

sible to withstand their depredations. Several muskets were discharged, and the culprit was severely wounded. The captain now intreated his countrymen to bring him on board, assuring them that no further harm should be offered him: when he was brought, Surgeon Lauder dressed his wounds. His under-lip was severely lacerated by a ball which struck his under-jaw: he seemed very thankful to the surgeon for his attention, and petitioned the captain for a towee, which was given to him. This affair did not in the least intimidate the Indians, for they still continued their trade as if nothing had happened.

The captain now plied off and on occasionally, in order to procure a good supply of hogs, vegetables, &c. for he did not think it worth his while to anchor at this island.

Several of the ship's company at this time were very much afflicted with the scurvy: there was scarcely any person without some touches thereof, and many were laid up with it. Happy it was that they had such an extraordinary good passage from the American Coast to Owhyhee, it being reckoned a very good passage in five weeks, and this was performed in less than a month, for had they been any longer delayed, there is no doubt but several of the indisposed would have perished. However, the seasonable supply of fresh pork, vegetables, &c. did them considerable service. It was supposed that this scorbutic complaint was in a great measure accelerated by the vast quantities of halibut, which the people salted while on the coast, and always eat (at no kind of allowance) in preference to the ship's beef and pork.

On the 7th they kept plying occasionally as before, by which means they procured an ample supply of provisions by the evening.

On the 8th they stood along the shore for the westernmost point of the island, which was about five leagues distant, bearing south. They were followed by a number of canoes, which for the sake of a fresh steady breeze, they left behind. At one o'clock they hove-to, being well in with the S. W. point: the people took this opportunity of trading for curiosities: they also purchased a quantity of line for the ship's use. In two hours after they made sail, and bore up for Whaloo, where they intended to take in wood and water. At six o'clock the small island Tahoura bore N. 60 deg. W. about eight leagues distant. At noon the W. end of Ranai bore N. 10 deg. W. about 10 miles distant: several canoes came from Ranai, of whom they purchased some fishing-lines. On account of some heavy squalls in the evening, they were obliged to close-reef the top-sails, and single-reef the main-sail: at night the weather grew moderate.

On the 10th Whaloo was seen right a-head, and at twelve o'clock they came-to with the best bower, in eight and a half fathom water, over a sandy bottom interspersed with rocks. They did not mean to stay any longer here than was barely necessary to procure wood and water. Several canoes came along-side, and some of the natives were sent on shore for water; but there was very little brought, as every thing was tabooed by the king. They were visited by additional canoes in the evening, but they consulted chiefly of females, who became very fond of the English, and granted them favours as before. The people were now employed in getting the rigging fore and aft.

The next day Abbenooe came on board, to inform his old friends that the king would shortly pay them a visit, and afterwards they should be supplied with water and provisions.

The king Tahietterre accordingly came about noon, with his nephew Myaro, and the usual number of attendants: his majesty brought a fine hog, and some cocoa-nuts, as a present; and in return he received from the captain some towees, &c. &c. Tahietterre enquired after Captain Portlock, and

No. 10.

appeared very anxious to see him again; Myaro and some of the chiefs also enquired after Piapia, whom they left at Attoui.

As soon as the king went on shore, the natives were sent with a considerable quantity of water, and the next day they supplied them with wood, fruit, &c. they also brought a few hogs, vegetables, &c. The king and his attendants repeated their visit about noon, bringing and receiving presents as before.

Having now completed their wooding and watering business, they weighed anchor on the 13th, and made sail to Attoui. At this time Abbenooe and his attendants were on board, and as they were not willing to take the old man to Attoui, they made several boards in the bay. However in a few hours the priest's canoe came along-side, and afterwards another with the king and his retinue. His majesty now came on board, and expressed much concern at their going away so soon: he observed that they were expeditiously supplied with wood and water in consequence of his commands, and that Captain Portlock (whom he called Po-pote) should meet with the same attention whenever he arrived. The captain, in order to shew himself sensible of his goodness, presented his majesty with a few axes and saws, which were highly acceptable. The king was much delighted at seeing the vessel under sail, and admired greatly the activity of the sailors. When nearly abreast Whit-ti-tee Bay (which was the king's residence), he took his leave, with many professions of friendship.

On the 15th they saw the king's Mount, Attoui, bearing N. W. by W. half W. nine leagues distant. The next day they were within two miles of the east side of Attoui: they were now visited by a great number of canoes, which brought them potatoes, taro, &c. which were purchased for nails. Several here were so rejoiced to see their old acquaintance, that they could not refrain from tears. What a picture of true friendship!

No base dissimulation sways the heart,
Nor know they aught of wheedling flattery's art,
Still foes or friends, they are as they have been,
And nothing say, but what they really mean!

The captain now heard that Abbenooe and his son were on shore at Attoui, and having come-to with the small bower in 19 fathom water, over a sandy bottom, about two miles to the eastward of their former situation. They were visited by the son Tyheera, who reported that a vessel had been there since the Queen Charlotte left Attoui, by whom they were used very ill, the captain thereof having killed several of his countrymen; on which account, his father, not knowing the Queen Charlotte at so great a distance, was afraid to leave the shore. Upon Captain Dixon's declaring that no trade should be carried on till Abbenooe was present, the son dispatched a canoe for his father, and hoisted a signal to assure him all was well. In about half an hour the old priest arrived, and expressed much happiness on seeing his friends. He regretted very much the absence of Captain Portlock.

On the 17th they were surrounded with canoes, who supplied them with a great quantity of fine hogs and vegetables. The next day they received visits from several chiefs. Due notice was given of the king's visit, who came on board in the forenoon, with his daughter and two nieces, his attendants singing all the way.

Tiaao was greatly pleased to see them again, and enquired particularly after Po-pote. He seemed solicitous to accommodate them with every thing the island afforded; and, indeed, all the chiefs vied with each other in supplying their various wants. Amongst the many instances of kindness and good-natured attention they met with at this time from the chiefs in general, an action of No-ho-in-ti-lie-ttee must not be omitted, as it does him the greatest

* F f honour,

honour, and would reflect credit even on a person of education and refined sensibility. No-ho-mi-ti-hee-tee had been often on board when they were last at Attoui, and by that means was personally acquainted with all the people: being naturally curious and inquisitive, he now took an opportunity of going amongst them, to ask a number of questions about the voyage. On going down between decks, he met with the carpenter, who had been troubled with a lingering disorder for a considerable time, and at present was very weak and poorly: his pale countenance and emaciated figure affected poor No-ho-mi-ti-hee-tee very sensibly; a tear of pity stole unheeded down his cheek, and he began to enquire about his complaint in a tone of tenderness and compassion; seeing him very weak and infirm, he gently chafed and pressed the sinews and muscles of his legs and thighs, and gave him all the consolation in his power: presently afterwards he came upon deck, called his canoe, and went on shore in a hurry, without taking leave of any person on the quarter-deck, which was contrary to his usual custom; but he returned very shortly, bringing a fine fowl along with him, which he immediately carried down to the carpenter; told him to have it dressed immediately, and he hoped it would make him better in a day or two. No-ho-mi-ti-hee-tee's father having been plundered by the king's messenger of the valuables which his son gave him, as before mentioned; it is necessary here to observe that the culprit was afterwards put to death, by order of the king, upon a complaint being made by the chief.

At noon a fresh breeze springing up from the northward, Captain Dixon wished to embrace this opportunity of weighing anchor; but on looking over his stock of vegetables, it was judged necessary to procure a further supply. No sooner were the king and chiefs informed of this circumstance than they all went on shore, promising to return shortly with great plenty of taro; accordingly, by three o'clock they all returned, each bringing a large double canoe, loaded with taro and sugar-cane, so that now they were completely furnished with every necessary article the island afforded. The expedition and dispatch with which this last taro was brought, and their free and generous manner in bringing it on board, both surprised and pleased Captain Dixon, and he was not slow in making suitable returns. To the king he gave a *pabou*, a large baize cloak edged with ribbon, and a very large towie; which pleased him so much, that he began to think himself the greatest monarch in the universe. The other chiefs were rewarded with towies, axes, and saws, entirely to their satisfaction. The ladies too (of whom they had no small number on board) were liberally ornamented with buttons and beads; in short, all parties were perfectly pleased, and were profuse in their professions of kindness and acknowledgment.

Notwithstanding all that has been said relative to this island and the inhabitants, we think it necessary here to insert some occasional remarks which were made by Captain Dixon and his company. He informs us, that these people, in their temper and disposition, are harmless, inoffensive, and friendly; not subject to passion, or easily provoked: in their manners they are lively and cheerful, ever ready to render any little service in their power even to strangers, and pursue every thing they undertake with unremitting diligence and application. When attached to any person, they are steady in their friendship; and are not easily tempted to neglect the interest of a person for whom they have once professed a regard. Their language is soft, smooth, and abounds with vowels: in their conversation with each other, it appears very copious; and they speak with great volubility, when conversing with each other; but when conversing with their visitors they only make use of those words which are most ex-

pressive and significant. The Sandwich Islanders, in general, are about the middle size; their limbs straight, and well proportioned. Some of the chiefs, and particularly the women, are inclined to corpulency, and their skin is smoother and softer than those of the common rank; but this is owing to want of exercise, and an unlimited indulgence in the article of food. They are in general of a nut colour, though some of the women are fairer, and their hands and fingers are remarkably small and delicate. Both sexes go naked, except about the waist: the men wear a narrow piece of cloth, called a *marow*, barely sufficient to cover the adjacent parts. The *abou*, or women's dress, is much larger, and generally reaches from the waist to the middle of the thigh. The beards of the men are suffered to grow; their hair is cut close on each side of the head, but grows long from the forehead to the back of the neck, somewhat resembling an helmet. The women cut theirs quite close behind, and on the top of the head: the front is turned up in the form of a toupee, and is frequently daubed with cocoa-nut oil, and lime made from shells, which often gives it a sandy, disagreeable colour. Sometimes, by way of ornament, they wear a wreath of flowers, fancifully disposed, about the head; instead of a bracelet, a shell is tied round the wrist, and a fondness for this ornament has rendered buttons so much esteemed by these gay damsels in general; the neck too is decorated with various sorts of shells, fastened on strings after the manner of a necklace. But the most beautiful ornament worn by the women is a necklace, or *arai*, made from the variegated feathers of the humming-bird, which are fixed on strings so regular and even as to have a surface equally smooth as velvet; and the rich colour of the feathers gives it an appearance equally rich and elegant. The caps and cloaks worn by the men are still superior in beauty and elegance. The cloaks are, in general, about the size of those worn by the Spaniards: the ground is net-work, and the feathers are sewed on in alternate squares, or triangular forms of red and yellow, which have a most brilliant appearance. The ground of the caps is wicker-work, in the form of a helmet; the elevated part, from the forehead to the hind part of the neck, is about a hand's breadth, and generally covered with yellow feathers; the sides of the cap with red. This cap, together with the cloak, has an appearance equally splendid, if not superior, to any scarlet and gold whatever. These truly elegant ornaments are scarce, and only possessed by chiefs of high rank, who wear them on extraordinary occasions. There are cloaks of an inferior kind, which have only a narrow border of red and yellow feathers, the rest being covered with feathers of the tropic and man of war bird. Nor are these caps and cloaks, though confessedly elegant in a superior degree, the only proofs of invention and ingenuity shewn by these people in matters of ornament. Their mats are made with a degree of neatness equal to any of European manufacture, and prettily diversified with a variety of figures stained with red. Those used to sleep on are plain, and of a coarser kind, but made with an equal degree of neatness and regularity. Cloth is another article which gives these Indians equal scope for fancy and invention. It is made from the Chinese paper-mulberry tree, and when wet (it being of a soft malleable substance) is beat out with small square pieces of wood, from 12 to 18 inches wide, and afterwards stamped with various colours, and a diversity of patterns, the neatness and elegance of which would not disgrace the window of a London linen-draper. The different colours with which their cloth is stamped are extracted from vegetables found in the woods. There is another kind of cloth, much finer than the above, and beat out to a greater extent; it is of a white colour, and frequently wore by the Aree women, in addition to

the *abou*. Fans are used neatly woven; the and the handle frequently-flaps are very c with alternate pieces distance has the upper part, or flap bird. Fish-hooks and so contrived as those intended for made of wood. This is so very various, to give them different form, with a long n are tall and circular bottom; others again mouth, yet are sufficient many of these are v lated lines, which a Their houses greatly and are nearly that door-place is so very enter almost double. vance for a door, The inside of their d a coarse mat is spread no separate apartment appropriated for repose with mats of a finer are placed on a wooden and wooden bowls an constitute the whole are possessed of hogs out-houses appropriate method universally p in baking, which is d a hole is dug in the answer the purpose o which a number of ho covered with leaves, is laid on them; more another layer of hot st covered. If a hog is filled with hot stones. mode of dressing victua can tell the exact time done; and in baking y them on board the Ch young tops of taro, fo as for greens, though on them so as to eat pal only finished with nea the same time are lallin industry. They are m from 12 to 40 or 50 feet trees, and bringing each their rude unfastioned time and unremitting a tal about an inch thick, tional boards neatly s single canoes are steady double ones are held tog firmly lashed to each p and parallel with the ca which serves to carry h they want to convey f and at the same time i principal persons of both who paddle, always sit Their paddles are about greatly resemble a baker's trowel at catching fish. wooden images represent they esteem as their god doubt whether religion i tion amongst them, for e might be purchased for their yava dishes are su

the ahou. Fans and fly-flaps are used by both sexes. The fans are usually made of the cocoa-nut fibres, neatly wove; the mounting is of a square form, and the handle frequently decorated with hair. The fly-flaps are very curious; the handles are decorated with alternate pieces of wood and bone, which at a distance has the appearance of finisred work: the upper part, or flap, is the feathers of the man of war bird. Fish-hooks are made of the pearl oyster-shell, and so contrived as to serve for both hook and bait: those intended for sharks are considerably larger, and made of wood. The form of their gourds or calabashes is so very various, that they certainly make use of it to give them different shapes: some are of a globular form, with a long narrow neck like a bottle; others are tall and circular, but of equal width from top to bottom; others again, though narrower towards the mouth, yet are sufficiently wide to admit the hand: many of these are very prettily stained with undulated lines, which at a distance appear like paint. Their houses greatly resemble an hay-stack in shape, and are neatly thatched with flags or rushes: the door-place is so very low, that they are obliged to enter almost double. They have no better contrivance for a door, than a few temporary boards. The inside of their dwellings are kept neat and clean; a coarse mat is spread on the floor, and as they have no separate apartments, that part of the room appropriated for repose is rather elevated, and covered with mats of a finer sort. The household utensils are placed on a wooden bench, and consist of gourds and wooden bowls and dishes, which, in general, constitute the whole of their furniture. Those who are possessed of hogs or fowls keep them in small out-houses appropriated for that purpose. The method universally practised to dress their victuals is baking, which is done in the following manner: a hole is dug in the ground, sufficiently deep to answer the purpose of an oven; at the bottom of which a number of hot stones are laid; these being covered with leaves, whatever they want to dress is laid on them; more leaves are now laid on, and another layer of hot stones being added, the oven is covered. If a hog is baked, the belly is always filled with hot stones. Custom has rendered this mode of dressing victuals so very familiar, that they can tell the exact time when any thing is sufficiently done; and in baking yams or taro they far excelled them on board the Charlotte. They also dress the young tops of taro, so as to be an excellent substitute for greens, though on board they could never boil them so as to eat palatably. The canoes are not only furnished with neatness and ingenuity, but at the same time are lasting proofs of perseverance and industry. They are made of a single tree, and are from 12 to 40 or 50 feet long. The hollowing these trees, and bringing each end to a proper point, with their rude unfafhioned tools, must be a work of time and unremitting attention: they are in general about an inch thick, and heightened with additional boards neatly fitted round the sides. The single canoes are steaded by an outrigger, and the double ones are held together by semicircular poles, firmly lashed to each part of the canoe; over these, and parallel with the canoe, is a kind of platform, which serves to carry hogs, vegetables, or any thing they want to convey from one place to another, and at the same time is a convenient seat for the principal persons of both sexes, whilst the towtoes, who paddle, always sit in the body of the canoe. Their paddles are about four or five feet long, and greatly resemble a baker's pail. They are very dexterous at catching fish: and have a number of wooden images representing human figures, which they esteem as their gods; but it is a matter of doubt whether religion is held in any great estimation amongst them, for every god among the islands might be purchased for a few towees. Sometimes their yava dishes are supported by three of these

little wooden images; and this is reckoned a masterpiece in their carving.

These people appear subject to very few diseases; and though they doubtless have been injured by their connection with Europeans, yet so simple is their manner of living, that they pay little regard to this circumstance, and seem to think it an affair of no consequence. It is probable that most of their disorders proceed from an immoderate use of yava; it weakens the eyes, covers the body with a kind of leprosy, debilitates and emaciates the whole frame, makes the body paralytic, hastens old age, and, no doubt, brings on death itself.

Their songs, or heevas, rather resemble a quick energetic manner of speaking, than singing; and the performers seem to pay more attention to the motions of the body, than the modulations of the voice. The women are the most frequent performers in this kind of merriment; they begin their performance slow and regular, but by degrees it grows brisker and more animated, till it terminates in convulsions of laughter. It is very evident that these people have not the least idea of melody, as the tones and modulation in all their songs are invariably the same; however, there seems to be some degree of invention in the composition of the words, which are often on temporary subjects; and the frequent peals of laughter are, no doubt, excited by some witty allusion contained in them. They have drums, which sometimes are beat as an addition to their heevas; these are about 12 or 16 inches high, several holes are cut in the sides, and a hog's skin, and sometimes a shark's, is strained over one end: the sounds however are dull and heavy.

On the 18th of September every thing was ready for making sail; and having cleared the bay, their friends repaired to their canoes, and took leave of the English in the most affectionate manner: they now steered S. by E. with a fresh breeze at E. N. E. The next day they steered S. S. W.

There was little variety during this voyage: the weather was very changeable. There were two severe squalls on the 12th of October; but which providentially did no harm. On the 22d they saw two islands; one bearing N. 55 deg. W. and the other N. 80 deg. W. about four leagues distant. On approaching the land they saw three islands, supposed to be Tinian, Aguigan, and Saypan, according to Anfon's description: the E. end of Tinian bearing N. 30 deg. E. about four leagues distant; the W. end of Aguigan N. W. by N. about four miles ditto; and the peak of Saypan N. N. E. ditto. Then appeared a small island at the W. end of Aguigan. As these islands are entirely free from rocks or shoals, they are a very comfortable harbour for vessels, and may be entered in the night-time with much security, provided the weather be moderate. Tinian is by far the largest, almost extending from S. E. to N. W. It has a beautiful appearance, and is said to afford variety of refreshments. Saypan is the next in extent. Aguigan is very narrow, and seems to be only six miles long.

From this to November, the weather continued squally, and the nights very dark. On the 4th they saw the Bntel Tabago Xima Islands.

On the 7th they saw land, bearing N. W. about five leagues distant. In the forenoon they passed six Chinese fishing-boats: in the afternoon they met a great number, and about five o'clock perceived the large rock, Pedro Blanco, bearing W. about ten miles distant.

On the 8th, the land which they saw the preceding day proved to be the Lema Islands, bearing from N. E. to W. N. W. about five leagues distant. These islands are very numerous; but dreary and barren to the view. They saw at a distance several Chinese boats; and having made a signal for a pilot, an old China-man came on board: he produced several certificates, and after some time agreed to convey

convey the vessel to Macao for thirty dollars, being twenty less than his first demand. After this several pilots came on board; and it was now understood that before they proceeded to Canton it was necessary to obtain a permit from the custom-house; during which time they were obliged to anchor at Macao, in six fathom water, over a soft muddy bottom.

On the 9th Capt. Dixon went in the whale-boat to Macao, in order to procure the permit. He returned the next day about noon, being delayed through the remarkable tardiness of the Chinese. The captain brought with him a pilot, to convey the vessel to Canton: upon which the old Chinaman was discharged. They weighed anchor at one o'clock, and made sail with a favourable wind and tide, proceeding towards the Bocca Tygris, which they passed on the 14th, and anchored in five fathoms and a half. They were now visited by an officer in a mandarine boat, whose business it is to prevent any illegal trade. The next morning they weighed anchor, and made sail: the winds being light and variable, the boats were sent out a-head to tow the vessel. On the 16th, about six o'clock in the morning, they came to anchor at the bottom of Whampoo Roads, in four fathoms and a half: the captain now went in a Chinese passage-boat to Canton for the purpose of learning from the East-India Company's supercargoes the best manner of facilitating their business. At eleven o'clock they weighed, and began to warp through the fleet up the river; about three they anchored with the small bower, in four fathoms and a half, over a muddy bottom, mooring with the stream-anchor. The people were now employed in unbending the sails, and other necessary business, while the captain was busy in procuring fresh provisions, which at this place is no easy mat-

ter, on account of the numerous impositions which are practised. The captain, during his stay, was informed that nothing could be done with respect to the furs, till the superintendent of the Chinese customs had been on board to measure the vessel, which would not take place till the King George, which was hourly expected, arrived.

A Captain Tasker, from Bombay, whose vessel lay near the Queen Charlotte, very kindly furnished Captain Dixon with beef for the present; for whenever the officer supplied a ship, he always modestly demanded a gratuity of 300 dollars, besides a very handsome profit he derived from his catering. The ship's company were now allowed two pounds of beef each per day, with greens. The vegetables were procured from the custom-house boat; and a leger of arrack was purchased from a Dutchman, for 45 dollars. The officer, however, having found out Captain Tasker's generosity, put a stop to it; consequently the ship's company were about to return to their salt provisions, as the captain was resolved not to indulge the officer's modest demand; however Mr. Moore, first mate of the Royal Admiral, (Capt. Huddart) upon understanding the business, undertook to supply them with beef, on condition that their boat was sent for it every day: this polite offer was readily accepted, and a quantity of beef every morning conveyed from the Royal Admiral to the Queen Charlotte.

On the 23d Capt. Dixon went to Canton, where he was informed that the King George was arrived at Macao: he returned the same evening, and the next day went in the whale-boat, with seven men, to meet the King George, and render her every possible assistance. On the 25th the King George and Queen Charlotte were together.

CHAPTER V.

Proceedings of the King George and Queen Charlotte—Death of Mr. Macleod—Vessels measured—Capt. Portlock's Surprise at meeting an old Acquaintance—Mutual Joy—Anecdotes of Tiaana—Queen Charlotte surveyed, and repaired—Disposal of the Furs—Teas sent on board—Description of Canton, &c.—Departure of the Vessels from Macao—Death of Surgeon Lauder—They proceed through the Straits of Banca and Sunda—King George and Queen Charlotte part—Particulars of each—They meet at St. Helena—Their Departure—Five of the King George's Crew nearly poisoned—Arrival in England—Conclusion.

AS soon as the King George had anchored, Capt. Dixon visited Capt. Portlock, and those gentlemen communicated to one another their success.

On the 26th Captains Portlock and Dixon went to Canton, and were amused by Mr. Browne, president of the supercargoes, that the superintendent of the China customs (John Tuck, as he is commonly called) would come as soon as possible to measure the vessels, after which their business should be dispatched with the utmost expedition. The captains returned from Canton on the 27th.

On the 29th Mr. Macleod, first mate of the King George, died, in consequence of an old complaint in the urethra: he was taken ill on the 28th, with drinking some stale porter after dinner on board the *Locko* Indianman, which occasioned a relapse of his disorder. He was buried on Frenchman's Island, in the forenoon of the 30th.

On the 2d of December the superintendent, or John Tuck, came down from Canton and measured the vessels; after which a factory was hired at Canton, and on the 5th the cargo of both vessels were sent up there.

As the Queen Charlotte's company were sometimes disappointed in receiving beef from the Royal Admiral, they were supplied now by Captain Portlock, who had agreed with an officer for fresh provisions on his arrival in the river.

Captain Portlock, a little after his arrival, paid a visit to a Mr. Cox, who was an English gentleman resident in Canton. The captain was very much surprised to meet with his old friend Tiaana here,

whom he became acquainted with at the Sandwich Islands; nor was Tiaana less astonished at seeing the captain, whom he embraced in the most cordial and affectionate manner. As soon as his transports of joy subsided, he asked several questions respecting the people at the islands, and informed the captain that he accompanied Captain Meares, who brought him to Macao, and placed him under the care of Mr. Ross, his chief mate, to whom Tiaana was particularly attached.

During his stay, Tiaana was introduced to every place worthy his notice: he was dressed in a cloak and a fine feathered cap, and carried always a spear in his hand, to shew he was a person of consequence. Afterwards, by the persuasion of Mr. Ross, he wore a light fatten waistcoat, and a pair of trousers. He frequently attended the places of divine worship, where he behaved with the greatest decorum, kneeling, standing, &c. according to the different ceremonies of the congregation. The customs and manners of the Chinese often provoked the indignation of Tiaana, and he was once going to throw the pilot overboard during his voyage, being offended with his behaviour: notwithstanding this warm disposition, he displayed several instances of generosity and humanity. Being once at an entertainment, which was given by Capt. Tasker, of the *Milford*, he was after dinner moved with compassion, at seeing a number of poor Tartars (who were in small sapans about the vessel, according to custom, asking alms; he solicited Capt. Tasker's permission to give them some food, remarking that it was great shame to let poor people want victuals, and

that in his country to his importunity of all the broken to distribute it at most equal and fix

Tiaana was singularly well made, and a pleasing animal, and other expressions admired; and, from the gentlemen of the cows, sheep, goat oranges, mangoes, with instructions for that could be accepted to his country, was

The time was now and repairing the 1788: two East-India Charlotte, by orders their sending any not judge her proceeding accordingly given to expediting which a to assist them. On-plete, and a cargo of vessel. Their principal East-India company and the inferior on Chinese merchant, w

Canton is extremely healthy. The lower rice, and now and indulge themselves with tables consist of cabbages, &c. and abundance of these, meet with them. The pork, geese, ducks, so far remarkably long inants, their heads women dress their hair in curls on the top. Those of the higher class As small feet are esteemed ladies, they are cramped thereby frequently rendered both ingenious and cult to be understood in columns from the beginning at the right hand at the left. In respect every thing by tens, and fans, use wooden balls in a kind of open box. Their chief money is silver, which is idolatry, as even god, which is an image specious place, and ornaments: in the night burning near this image a number of wives, but no foreigner is allowed them, on pain of imprisonment. Notwithstanding this for painting, architecture, and important of music. By weight.

February 6th they were willing to lie below the ready to go down the on board, which he did jumped down the river, M. E. and anchored due of the King George's n. Hurison, and Tho. Portlock the ship, and absent and was immediately directed to look for them: he fo

that in his country they had no beggars. According to his importunities, there was a collection made of all the broken victuals, and Tiaana went himself to distribute it among them, which he did in the most equal and impartial manner.

Tiaana was six feet two inches in height, exceedingly well made, but inclined to corpulency: he had a pleasing, animated countenance, fine piercing eyes, and other expressive features; he was universally admired, and, previous to his departure for Attoui, the gentlemen of Canton furnished him with bulls, cows, sheep, goats, rabbits, turkeys, &c. &c. also oranges, mangoes, and different kinds of plants, with instructions for their cultivation: every thing that could be acceptable, or would be of importance to his country, was added to his cargo.

The time was now employed in disposing the furs and repairing the vessels. On the 20th of January, 1788, two East-India captains surveyed the Queen Charlotte, by orders of the supercargoes, previous to their sending any teas on board; and as they did not judge her properly secured, directions were accordingly given to remedy all the defects, for the expediting which a carpenter and caulker were sent to assist them. On the 23d she was rendered complete, and a cargo of teas were sent on board each vessel. Their principal furs were delivered to the East-India company's supercargoes for 50000 dollars, and the inferior ones were purchased by an old Chinese merchant, whose name was Chicungua.

Canton is extremely populous, but reckoned unhealthy. The lower kind of people live chiefly on rice, and now and then a little fish; but the rich indulge themselves with every luxury. Their vegetables consist of carrots, greens, turnips, potatoes, cabbages, &c. and notwithstanding there is an abundance of these, yet the poor people seldom meet with them. They have plenty of beef, mutton, pork, geese, ducks, fowls, &c. The men wear their hair remarkably long, in a neat triple plait: while infants, their heads are frequently shaved. The women dress their hair, which is long, in neat circular folds on the top of the head, in a conical form. Those of the higher class, wear different ornaments. As small feet are esteemed a great beauty among the ladies, they are cramped up from their infancy, and thereby frequently rendered cripples. Their artists are both ingenious and expert: their language difficult to be understood; their method of writing is in columns from the top to the bottom, always beginning at the right hand margin, and concluding at the left. In respect to numbers, they reckon every thing by tens, and instead of figures to cast up sums, use wooden balls, which run on small spindles in a kind of open box, which they are very expert in. Their chief money is Spanish dollars. Their religion is idolatry, as every family have their household god, which is an image generally fixed in some conspicuous place, and decorated with various ornaments: in the night-time a light is kept constantly burning near this image. The people of rank keep a number of wives, polygamy being allowable; but no foreigner is allowed to have any connection with them, on pain of imprisonment or a heavy fine.

Notwithstanding these people are very remarkable for painting, architecture, &c. yet they are totally ignorant of music. Every thing in China is sold by weight.

February 6th they weighed and came to sail, wishing to lie below the shipping, that they might be ready to go down the river when the pilot came on board, which he did at nine o'clock; they then warped down the river, with a light breeze from the N. E. and anchored during dinner-time. Three of the King George's men (Robert Spencer, John Hunsford, and Tho. Potts) stole a boat from along-side the ship, and absented themselves. Mr. Hayward was immediately dispatched with another boat to look for them: he found them near the Bank-

shells; they went for the purpose of buying liquor, and purchased sufficient to have kept all the crew drunk for some time. These men, since the vessel's arrival at Whampoo, were remarkable for their drunkenness, and consequent idleness.

The next day they were occasionally towing down the river. On the 8th they passed through the Bocca Tigris, with a fresh breeze at N. W. On the 9th they stood down Macao-roads to the southward. The pilot was now discharged: from this to the 13th the weather was for the most part fair.

Several on board the King George were laid up with fluxes and fevers, which were imputed by the surgeon to their frequent intoxications at Whampoo; however, on the 14th, they were all upon the recovery.

On the 16th they steered S. W. by S. with a view of making the island Pulo Sapata.

The surgeon and cooper's mate belonging to the Queen Charlotte were now taken very ill. Captain Portlock and his surgeon visited them the next day, and took with them some port wine. It was intended to remove the sick of the Queen Charlotte to the King George, that they might have the benefit of the surgeon's attendance, Mr. Lauder being now totally incapable of performing his duty: however, as they were in a fair way of recovery, this removal was afterwards deemed unnecessary. Capt. Portlock returned to his vessel on the 18th. The Queen Charlotte now made three inches of water an hour, and as her leak seemed to increase, Capt. Portlock deemed it necessary to stay by her till she was further examined.

On the 20th they saw the island Pulo Sapata, bearing S. W. about four leagues distant. On the 25th they saw the islands of Aramba, extending from E. N. E. to S. E. by E. about four leagues distant.

On the 26th Surgeon Hoggan, at the desire of Capt. Portlock, visited Surgeon Lauder on board the Queen Charlotte; this gentleman still continuing very ill. In the afternoon, at six o'clock, the island Panfang bore N. W. by W. about five leagues distant.

On the 27th they saw Dominis, bearing S. W. Pula-Taya bearing S. 45 deg. W. and the Peak of Linging N. 64 deg. W.

On the 28th, at half past eleven, the Queen Charlotte hoisted her colours half-mast high. The King George accordingly shortened sail, and spoke to her. Capt. Portlock was now informed that Mr. Lauder was dead. At noon they saw the three islands, which extended from S. by E. to E. N. E. the nearest distant about three miles, and the farthest seven leagues.

Nothing material occurred during the remainder of this month. On the 1st of March they were joined by the Lansdown-Indiaman, Captain Storey, from China, bound to London.

On the 2d they had variable soundings from ten to three fathoms over muddy and sandy bottoms. On the 3d they stood over to the Sumatra shore, and were driven very near a shoal that lies between the Island of Luspura, and the first point of Sumatra, by a strong tide setting to the S. E. Both the King George and Queen Charlotte passed it over in three fathoms, but the Lansdown struck, and stuck fast, upon which she made a signal of distress. The King George and Queen Charlotte now anchored in six fathoms, and hoisted out their boats to give assistance, but the Queen Charlotte's whale-boat was scarcely in the water, before she filled; she was therefore hoisted in again to be repaired by the carpenter. In a short time after this, the Lansdown made a signal for further assistance. Captain Portlock accordingly dispatched four of his men with an officer in the yawl, and Captain Dixon went himself in his own boat. The yawl returned in about an hour's time, and Captain Dixon early the

next morning. The Lansdown had grounded on the small shoals off Lufpura, but was soon hove off without any damage.

The Queen Charlotte now hove short, in order to be ready whenever Captain Portlock should make the signal for weighing: at twelve o'clock they weighed and made sail: the weather was now cloudy, and they had constant lightning. On the 7th they saw the Sisters bearing S. W. by W. about four leagues distant. On the 8th the Lansdown was almost out of sight. The next day they had very squally weather, with continual thunder and lightning: at mid-night the King George lost sight of the Queen, but recovered her at day-light. Several of the ship's company were now very ill with fluxes, and on the 11th the King George lost her armourer's mate, Thomas Pafford, who was buried in the evening. The whale-boat was sent out by Captain Portlock to look for some turtle about the reef, but returned the next day without success.

On the 14th the island of Java extended from S. E. by E. to S. about five or six leagues distant. The next day the boats were sent on shore for water, also to cut wood: the sick people were likewise sent with them to recreate themselves. The next day their wooding and watering were completed. The wood was obtained from North Island, where there are no inhabitants to prevent its being cut; the water from the Sumatra shore, which was remarkably good.

North Island is only two miles in circumference: it is entirely covered with trees of various kinds, and consequently a refuge for the feathered tribe. Sumatra is inhabited by Malays, who abide here for the purpose of trading with those vessels which occasionally anchor in the adjacent roads; and likewise to prey upon the wrecks. Some turtle was purchased from one of their boats, for the ship's use.

On the 30th Captain Portlock sent for Captain Dixon, and they now agreed to part, and make each of them the best of their way to St. Helena. On the 1st of April they lost sight of each other: during this month and the greater part of June, the weather was very bad, attended with thunder, lightning, and rain.

May 16th the Queen Charlotte's pumps were choaked up, which was very unfortunate, as the vessel, when on the starboard-tack, made a good deal of water: however, the starboard-pump was immediately hoisted up, and as it was found choaked with the sand, which had been used as a flooring for the teas (and which, owing to the tempestuous weather, had worked through the ceiling), nine inches were cut from its bottom, and being thus cleared, it was immediately got down again. The Queen's company had been hitherto upon a stinted allowance of water, but as the weather was now so remarkably stormy, they were permitted to take as much as they wanted.

Captain Dixon, by advice of the officers, had the fore-hold broke open, in order to examine that part. The tea that had been lodged there, was dry and in good order, nor was there the least appearance of any water being lodged in that part of the vessel: the larboard pump was hoisted up, and cleared of sand. May 18th they found a leak under the counter, upon which they got up a number of articles which were stowed in the run, and of little consequence, and hove them overboard. The weather still continued very squally.

The King George, in doubling the Cape of Good

Hope, kept much nearer the land than the Queen had done, and consequently did not experience a continuance of so much bad weather. June 12th the King George saw the island of St. Helena, bearing W. by N. about seven leagues distant. On the 13th they shortened sail and brought-to, there being a brisk breeze at S. E. with heavy weather. The whale-boat was now sent on shore with an officer, to inform the governor of the vessel's arrival. In about two hours the boat returned, with the governor's directions to come in: upon this, they made sail for the bay, and at five in the evening anchored with the small bower, in 13 fathoms, and moored with the belt bower in 19 ditto, to the N. W. over a fine black muddy bottom. The carpenters were employed in repairing the sheathing, cleaning the bottom, &c. &c. while the rest were busy in receiving fresh provisions on shore, &c. The people were permitted to recreate themselves on shore.

On the 18th the King George had completed her water, and the Queen Charlotte had just arrived, which prevented Captain Portlock from sailing that day, as he intended. The next day the King George, having received the governor's dispatches, made sail, having previously saluted the garrison with nine guns, which was returned with an equal number. They had now a continuance of moderate breezes from the S. E. On the 25th five of Capt. Portlock's men having eat hearty of bonnetos for dinner, which had been caught at St. Helena, salted and hung up, they were seized in about an hour's time with violent pains in their heads, their bodies were very much swelled and inflamed, and an eruption appeared upon their skins. Sweet oil was administered, which speedily removed those alarming complaints. In the evening they were nearly recovered: the remainder of this poisonous fish was thrown overboard.

Nothing material now occurred to either vessel, while proceeding for England. On the 22d of August the King George arrived; and on the 17th of September the Queen Charlotte, both ships' companies being well and in good spirits.

As the grand motive for this voyage was to trade for furs, with an expectation of acquiring emolument adequate to their labour and dangers, it will no doubt be enquired whether this design was fully answered. Though the King George's Sound Company have not obtained any wonderful gain from this voyage, yet they have been so far gainers, that it is evident this branch of commerce, instead of being a losing one, must be exceedingly profitable and lucrative to every enterprising merchant who is willing to engage therein. Proper allowance must be made for the inexperience of the first adventurers: it could not be expected that the King George would immediately answer the utmost extent of the Company's wishes. The King George and Queen Charlotte brought home upwards of two thousand sea-otter skins, which sold from eighty to ninety dollars each, besides a large quantity of inferior furs.

Having now furnished our readers in the most complete manner, with Captains Portlock and Dixon's interesting Voyage Round the World in the King George and Queen Charlotte, and regularly given the Adventures of each (which were never before properly united), we shall proceed with the Voyages of Captains Meares, Tippin, and Douglas, in the Nootka, &c. &c. as the most proper to succeed Captain Portlock's, on account of their meeting, which has been already mentioned.



B
North

N C

F H

IN

The No

With all the INFO
and COMMUN

Being an Entire N
Sea-Otter, and th
both to the IMP
and Full than an

Which, with the sever
with a Variety of El

THE following
particularly sup
distinction at E
regiment on this occ
fully acknowledged.

January 20th, 1786
choiced for the sake of
fitted out by the comm
in the ports of the H
Nootka, of 200 tons,
by Capt. Meares; and
100 ditto, to be comm
a lieutenant of the roy

A committee was ne
tom to arrange the ne
voyage, when (on the
were proposed, viz. to
opium to Malacca, and
Master General of the
his suite, to Madras
mer of these offers, it v
ductive of about three
conveyance of Mr. Bu

A NEW, COMPLETE, AND GENUINE
HISTORY OF
THE INTERESTING VOYAGES FROM
BENGAL and CHINA
TO THE
North West COAST of AMERICA,

IN THE
NOOTKA and SEA-OTTER;

UNDER THE COMMAND OF
Captains MEARES and TIPPING.

Undertaken and Performed in 1786 and 1787.

AND IN THE
FELICE and IPHIGENIA;

UNDER THE COMMAND OF
Captains DOUGLAS and MEARES,

Made in the Years 1788 and 1789.

INCLUDING MANY NEW AND ADDITIONAL ACCOUNTS OF

The North West COAST of AMERICA;

With all the **INFORMATIONS, DISCOVERIES, ADVENTURES, &c.** contained in the **JOURNALS**
and **COMMUNICATIONS** of the several **OFFICERS** and **GENTLEMEN** therein concerned.

Being an Entire New **HISTORY** of the **DISTRESSES** and **MISFORTUNES** of the *Nootka* and
Sea-Otter, and the several **ADVANTAGES** derived from the *Felice* and *Iphigenia*, with respect
both to the **IMPROVEMENT** of **NAVIGATION** and **EXTENT** of **COMMERCE**, more **Accurate**
and **Full** than any **Accounts** hitherto **Published**.

Which, with the several other **VOYAGES** and **TRAVELS** to be included in this Collection, will be **Embellished**
with a **Variety** of **Elegant COPPER-PLATES**, **Drawn** upon the **Spots**, and **Engraved** by **Eminent Artists**.

INTRODUCTION.

THE following commercial expedition was particularly supported by several persons of distinction at Bengal, whose liberal encouragement on this occasion Capt. Meares has gratefully acknowledged.

January 20th, 1786, there were two vessels purchased for the sake of this expedition. They were fitted out by the commercial zeal of British subjects in the ports of the East: the first was called the *Nootka*, of 200 tons, which was to be commanded by Capt. Meares; and the other the *Sea-Otter*, of 100 ditto, to be commanded by William Tipping, a lieutenant of the royal navy.

A committee was now appointed by the proprietors to arrange the necessary preparations for this voyage, when (on the 20th of February) two offers were proposed, viz. to freight the *Sea-Otter* with opium to Malacca, and to convey Mr. Burke, Pay-Master General of the King's forces in India, with his suite, to Madras in the *Nootka*. As the former of these offers, it was calculated, would be productive of about three thousand rupees, and for the conveyance of Mr. Burke the same sum was to be

paid, the committee readily accepted them, and it was now intended as soon as possible to make sail.

At this time all kinds of stores and provisions were extremely scarce at Bengal: there was barely a sufficiency laid in for twelve months. They expected some assistance from Madras, which was to complete their equipment for eighteen months.

The *Nootka* was strongly manned, but the men were such as necessity made choice of. The ship's company were about forty, including the purser, surgeon, five officers, boatwain, and ten lascars, who embarked at Madras. Capt. Meares was very much disappointed in not being able to get a carpenter, especially as he experienced the disagreeable consequences of wanting so useful an artisan.

Captain Tipping was to proceed from Malacca to the N. W. coast of America, where it was intended that the *Nootka* and *Sea-Otter* should meet.

It is necessary here to observe, that these were voyages of commerce, and not of discovery; notwithstanding which, this commercial undertaking boasts of so many incidents, that to the reader it may *discover* something novel and original.

CHAPTER I.

The Nootka proceeds on her Passage—Arrives at Madras—Protest for Malacca—Death of the Boatswain—Arrival—Provisions, &c. laid in—Enter the China Seas—Anchor at Grafton Isle—Departure—Driven among five Islands—In Danger on every Side—Escape—Alarmed—Again—A thick Fog—In immense Danger for four Days—Anchor at Ounalashka—Remarks—Difficulties—Visited by the Natives—They become troublesome—Are dispersed—A Fall of Snow—Several sick—Deaths of the Surgeon and Pilot—Consequent Distresses—Horrid Situation of the Nootka and Crew—Visited by Capt. Dixon—Assisted by Captain Portlock—Thaw of the Ice—Recovery of the Sick—A young Female Native purchased—Weather becomes clear—The Island of Owhyhee made—Tiaana taken on board—Loss of the Sea-Otter, and Crew.

ON the 2d of March, 1786, the Nootka got under sail, and in the evening Mr. Burke and his suite came on board. They now proceeded on their voyage, in ten days they lost sight of land, and on the 27th arrived in Madras: nothing material occurred during the time, except the expedition of their passage, which was remarkable. They now landed their passengers, and procured necessary additions of stores and provisions.

On the 7th of April they prepared to put to sea: they now proceeded for Malacca: this passage was remarkably tedious; and the crew very much afflicted with the scurvy; the boatswain, who was one of the most useful hands on board, died: they did not arrive at Malacca till the 23d of May; previous to which Captain Tipping, having completed all his business here, sailed for America. They now procured another supply of provisions; and laid in a quantity of wood and water. On the 29th they put to sea, and entered in a few days the China seas, proceeding with a strong S. W. monsoon.

On the 22d of June they saw Balhee Islands; and on the 26th anchored at Grafton Isle, in six fathom water, about a mile distant from shore. This bay is small, but very pleasant: it is surrounded by high land, handsomely cultivated. A large village is near the water; on a gentle eminence; which, together with the trees, mountains, and a rivulet, form a scene romantic and beautiful.

These isles were taken possession of by the Spaniards in 1782, who expected to have found some rich metals in them. The natives seemed very free and inoffensive. Captain Meares, during his stay, which was four days, was treated very civilly by the governor and his garrison, who did not prevent his trading with the natives. They procured here a quantity of hogs, goats, ducks, fowls, yams, potatoes, &c. for pieces of iron.

They left these islands on the 1st of July, and proceeded along the Japan Isles. On the 1st of August they saw the isles of Amluc and Atcha: they made for the former, and anchored there two days, during which time they were visited by the Russians and natives.

In their passage to Ounalashka, they were driven among five islands, called Pat Sopka; and as they now could not see their way, on account of a continued fog, they were surrounded with dangers on every side: they had, however, a fortunate escape. These islands are uninhabited, and seem to be nothing more than huge masses of entire rock: two of them bear the resemblance of a sugar-loaf.

On the 5th of August they met some canoes who were fishing for whales. On the 6th at night they were alarmed by hearing the surge of the sea upon the shore: they tacked and stood on for two hours, and were alarmed again with the same noise: they tacked again, and saw some land at day-break over the mast-head, which was covered with snow. A thick fog continued for four days, during which time they were endeavouring, but in vain, to obtain a passage; every way seemed to be blocked against them. In this distressing situation, they were continually alarmed with the hoarse dashing of the surges; and as there were no soundings, their fears were inexpressible. On the 6th the fog dispersed; their joy could now only be equalled by their awe at seeing the immense danger they escaped. As it was impossible, on account of the strong current,

to go southward by the channel through which they came, they bore up and went to the northward. Having got as far to the eastward as Ounalashka, they were enabled by a strong N. wind to get through between Utimah and Ounalashka. As soon as they got round to the S. side of the island, a Russian came and piloted their vessel into an harbour.

On the 20th of August they left Ounalashka, and proceeded down the continent, with a view of passing the Shumagin Islands, which they saw on the 27th. Several canoes came to them from the shore, which was about four leagues distant: the dress and manners of the people, as well as the construction of the canoes, appeared to be the same as those of the Fox isles.

On the 28th they proposed to make one port to the westward of Cook's River. They steered for a large opening which they saw, and which seemed to be formed by an island, and appeared very extensive on being approached. In expectation of being visited by the natives, they continued their course for about twenty leagues up the strait, and at last met with a canoe which had three people in it, one of whom proved to be a Russian seaman. This man came on board the Nootka, and gave them some necessary information; but which was by no means agreeable, as it was contrary to their expectations of a good trade.

They continued their passage through the straits, which were called Petrie's Strait, in honour of William Petrie, Esq; they are upwards of 10 leagues in length, and 15 in breadth. They anchored in Cape Douglas, and were shortly visited by a number of canoes, of whom they purchased two or three otter-skins.

They were now detained by several heavy gales of wind, but were determined the very first opportunity to quit the river, and to proceed to Prince William's Sound; in order to winter there if possible.

On their arrival at Snug Corner Cove, in Prince William's Sound, the weather was very boisterous, nor did they see a native for three days, which led them to imagine that the inhabitants had retired from the coast, and were gone to the southward during the cold weather. Captain Meares from seeing some wood which had been fresh cut on shore, concluded that his partner Captain Tipping had been here before him, and was now gone for China: in this situation they were oppressed with difficulties, the badness of the weather discouraged them from proceeding, and from the dreary prospect of this place, they could neither expect trade or refreshments: the seamen were exceedingly dissatisfied and unhappy. However, on the 4th of October they met with several canoes, the natives were exceedingly affable and generous: from these they understood that the Sea-Otter had been here, and that Captain Tipping had purchased several skins.

As they were now satisfied that the sound was uninhabited, they were determined to look for a harbour where they might stay during the winter. The boats were accordingly sent out; and the next day they found a very commodious one, about 15 miles E. N. E. from their present situation; where they anchored on the 7th. The people were now employed in cleaning and airing the vessel.

They were constantly visited by the natives, who frequently exhibited their dexterity at thieving.

MEAS
About the middle few skins; but that they became English were rat they were distressed on the 25th, as the only incommoded signals, but even there were two gusted effect: afterwards was fired with gun created so much their canoes in n they became quieter, were afterwards put.

There were now prevented them from and closing it in all. Hitherto they caught they were leaving occasionally supplied. tain sheep, which were seen there. All the fish had entirely nor were there any were all white with with ice: the people fished them no less snow became as desirable, they were obliged and amusement.

The natives still could not restrain fire of course made the All the ship's crew were. Their situation was there was no prospect rest of all necessary for.

The beginning of by increasing the cold to keep fires night and proceeded from a ten of their forces, was at sequence thereof several the beginning of the and towards the end the surgeon, whose in sequence: four of the died. The number of ary, and four more were visions too were nearly apprehension became.

Notwithstanding they were constantly visited other clothing but from otters and seals to defend seemed to be as much the English; and were of Captain Meares's men.

The succeeding number of the sick aged with additional of the month the first situation now was truly by the loss of the forti which was at present the indisposed received and the justice of the now obliged to best according to the belt was their present calam continually dragged up fetched the wood, and the ice: the groans of and their mournful con horror; their cordial pr and the only things that the sick were biscuit, r flour: crews and sent Two or three eagles were No. 11.

About the middle of the month they collected a few skins; but the natives were at last so numerous that they became absolutely troublesome, and the English were rather perplexed how to behave, as they were desirous to avoid hostilities; however, on the 25th, as they continued to increase, and not only incommoded the English in spite of all their signals, but even endeavoured to steal their axes, there were two guns presented, which had the desired effect: afterwards a twelve-pound cannonade was fired with grape-shot, the explosion of this created so much alarm that half of them overset their canoes in making their escape; upon which they became quiet, and several fine sea-otter skins were afterwards purchased.

There were now frequent falls of snow, which prevented them from covering the vessel with spars, and closing it in all round the sides, as was intended. Hitherto they caught a quantity of salmon, but now they were leaving the small rivers. They were occasionally supplied by the natives with some mountain sheep, which were the only land animals that were seen there. About the beginning of November the fish had entirely deserted the creeks and coves, nor were there any birds to be seen: the mountains were all white with snow, and the vessel surrounded with ice: the people frequently skated, which afforded them no little recreation; but when the snow became as deep on the ice as it was on the shore, they were obliged to give over this exercise and amusement.

The natives still continued very friendly, but could not refrain from their itch of stealing, which of course made the English particularly careful. All the ship's crew were at present in good health.

Their situation was now extremely unpleasant; there was no prospect of any consolation, being bereft of all necessary support and recreation.

The beginning of the year added to their troubles, by increasing the cold: they were frequently obliged to keep fires night and day, but the smoke which proceeded from a temporary stove, formed of one of their forges, was at last so offensive, that in consequence thereof several of the crew fell sick. About the beginning of the month a dozen kept their beds, and towards the end two dozen, among whom was the surgeon, whose indisposition was of great consequence: four of these unfortunate people shortly died. The number of the sick increased in February, and four more were lost. Their stock of provisions too were nearly exhausted, while sorrow and apprehension became general.

Notwithstanding the severity of the weather, they were constantly visited by the natives, who had no other clothing but frocks made of the skins of sea-otters and seals to defend them from the cold. They seemed to be as much distressed for provisions as the English, and were greatly concerned for those of Captain Meares's men that died.

The succeeding month was still cold and raw: the number of the sick increased, and the scurvy raged with additional violence. About the middle of the month the surgeon and the pilot died. Their situation now was truly lamentable, being deprived by the loss of the former of that medical assistance which was at present so much wanted: several of the indisposed received great benefit from exercise, and the juice of the pine-tree. Capt. Meares was now obliged to perform the duties of a surgeon, according to the best of his abilities; but so great was their present calamity, that dead bodies were continually dragged upon the sledge on which they fetched the wood, and committed to chafins in the ice: the groans of the dying filled the vessel, and their mournful condition represented a scene of horror; their cordial provisions were long expended, and the only things that could be administered to the sick were biscuit, rice, and a small quantity of flour: crabs and sea-gulls were rare delicacies. Two or three eagles were killed, and esteemed de-

licious food: they were obliged also to kill, with great reluctance, a male and a female goat, who were made pots of during the voyage, in order to serve the sick with broth, which they kept for fourteen days. This month still continued cold and severe; the beginning of the next was the same; but about the middle thereof there were some heavy southerly gales, which promised a favourable change of weather; notwithstanding which the sick people grew worse, and the three Lascars, with four Englishmen, died.

About the 30th of April the natives brought them some herring and sea-fowl, which were distributed among the sick, and exceedingly well relished: every encouragement was given to the natives to continue their bounty; who now began to console the English with an assurance that the cold would soon be gone; the gradual appearance of the sun seemed to confirm their declaration; and on the beginning of May a wonderful change took place, both in the people and the weather. Several of the seamen, who had been very much reduced, were now miraculously recovered, chiefly owing to the salutary effects of the pine-juice.

On the 17th of May the king of the island, with his retinue, came on board in great state, to congratulate the English on the return of summer. Capt. Meares now understood that two vessels had been seen at sea; which comfortable intelligence was confirmed on the 19th, by the arrival of two canoes, conducting a boat with Capt. Dixon, of the Queen Charlotte: his presence afforded universal joy. Capt. Meares sent a letter to Capt. Portlock, requesting his assistance per favour of Capt. Dixon: however, a few hours after Capt. Dixon's departure, Capt. Meares thinking that his presence would have greater weight, had the long-boat hoisted out, in order to proceed to the King George; and, notwithstanding the boat was in a deplorable and dangerous way, yet the captain, with five of his men, and a first officer, ventured in her, and by the providential fineness of the weather got along-side the King George about three o'clock the following evening, the boat being half full of water: the boat was afterwards caulked by the King George's carpenter, and rendered fit for their return to the Nootka. Captain Meares brought back with him some brandy, gin, flour, molasses, &c. which Capt. Portlock delivered to him for the use of his men.

On the 12th of May the weather became very pleasant. The main body of ice being thawed, the vessel now swung to her anchors: the sick were recovering apace, except two, who were so far gone as to baffle the utmost attention: vegetables, as yet, were not attainable, the snow not being quite gone. On the 17th the ice was entirely thawed.

They were constantly visited by the natives, and the King and his chiefs. His majesty brought a young woman, and offered her for sale: the captain purchased her for an axe and a small quantity of glass beads. She remained on board the Nootka near four months, apparently content with her situation. The captain understanding that she belonged to a tribe who lived to the southward, intended, while coasting along in quest of furs, to have restored her to her country people; but unforeseen misfortunes prevented this humane design.

The reader has been already presented with a description of those natives: we shall, however, add some occasional remarks, which were made by Capt. Meares during his long stay in those islands.

"The people are remarkably ferocious, and possess an uncommon degree of insensibility to pain:
"of this there was a very singular proof on the following occasion; several broken glasses having been thrown out of the vessel with other rubbish,
"one of the natives, in searching among them for what he might deem worthy of preservation, cut his foot in a very severe manner. The English wanted him to dress the wound according to their
"manner,

"but he and his companions instantly turned the whole into ridicule, and to shew their disregard of pain, they took some of the glass and scarified their legs and arms in a most extraordinary manner."

After having buried 23 men in this unfortunate cove, they left it with great pleasure on the 21st of June. The crew now consisted of only 24 people, including the captain, his officers, and two sailors whom they got from Capt. Portlock; and notwithstanding some of these people were not quite recovered from their late illness, yet they were so elate with their departure, that they were all now in high spirits. On the 22d they got out to sea, and for ten days could get no farther to the southward than 57 deg. Several of the people were now laid up with swelled legs, from being so frequently wet upon deck. Captain Meares, therefore, judged it prudent to stand in for land; and accordingly made for a very high peak, of a singular form, about forty leagues distant. As soon as they approached the shore, they were visited by several canoes, which were made quite different to those in the Sound, being constructed of a solid tree, from 50 to 70 feet in length, but no broader than the tree itself. The inhabitants were likewise of singular manners and appearance: the women were particularly hideous and uncommon; they were ornamented, or more properly speaking disfigured, in the same manner as the natives of Prince William's Sound, though unacquainted with those people. This is the first time they were ever seen by any navigator.

The weather becoming very clear, they proceeded with a northerly wind to Owhyhee: indeed, had it not been so fine and favourable, in all probability they never should have reached the Sandwich Islands, owing to the miserable condition of the vessel: besides, the crew were not quite recovered, some being still laid up, one of whom was lost; however, as

soon as they entered this salubrious clime, every complaint vanished.

They remained at these islands about a month, during which they experienced much hospitality and kindness from the natives, several of whom when they were about to depart strongly solicited to accompany them. Capt. Meares consented to take Tiaana, the king's brother, who embarked with them, to the great dissatisfaction of the other chiefs, who envied his departure. The character of this native has been already given in the preceding voyage.

On the 2d of Sept. they left Sandwich Islands, and on the 20th of October arrived in the Typa, an harbour near Macao, after a very favourable voyage.

They had scarcely come to anchor, when there was every sign of a storm; which, if it had taken place before their arrival, their vessel, on account of its shattered state, could never have encountered. The people likewise, on account of so long an absence, being entirely unacquainted with the political state of the nation, were very much alarmed at seeing two French vessels of war in those seas; and as they saw several boats filled with troops coming off from them, they concluded the worst: however, their apprehensions of meeting with enemies were, after some time, removed. Now fresh calamities took place: the storm which threatened became to very violent, that the Calypso, one of the French vessels, could scarcely keep her place with five anchors; how great, therefore, must be the Nootka's danger, that had only one anchor left: they were obliged to run her ashore, as the only way of preserving her; and by the generous assistance of Count de Kergarieu, the officers and seamen of the Calypso frigate, they were happily enabled to accomplish their safety.

Captain Meares now anxiously enquired after his partner; but there being no intelligence whatever of Captain Tipping, it was concluded that the Sea-Otter and her crew perished.

CHAPTER II.

Two Vessels fitted out—Their Names and Commander—Crew, &c.—They leave Typa—Proceed to Sea—The Iphigenia sprung a Leak—Her Foremast dangerously sprung—Apprehensions—The Iphigenia in a critical Situation—The Captain's Determination—Proceed along the Coast of Luconia—Goat Island seen—Also Luban Islands, &c. &c.—The Vessels put in a State of Defence against Pirates—Captain Douglas's Men afflicted with the Scurvy—The Island of Panay passed—A Mutiny on board the Felice—Its happy Suppression—The Sandwich Islanders taken ill—Death and Character of the Woman—Cattle destroyed—Anchorage at Magindanao—The Carpenters employed in repairing the Iphigenia—A China-man lost—An Invitation from the Governor—Accepted—A kind Reception—Invitation to a Ball—Behaviour and Character of the People.

IN January, 1788, Captain Meares (by the assistance of some British merchants resident in India) purchased and fitted-out two vessels in the best manner: they were strongly built, copper-bottomed, &c. in order to endure every kind of severity; they were called the Felice and Iphigenia. The Felice was of 230 tons burthen, and to be commanded by Captain Meares: the Iphigenia, of 200 ditto, to be commanded by Captain Douglas.

The crews consisted of Europeans and Chinese: the latter, being esteemed industrious and hardy, were taken by way of experiment. Among these were artificers of every denomination, especially smiths, carpenters, &c. both Chinese and European, to the number of forty. The Chinese were, in all, fifty; several others solicited to embark, but the above number was deemed sufficient. Provisions of the most salutary kind were laid in, besides a sufficient stock of warm clothing, &c. A great quantity of useful animals were also taken on board, for the service of Tiaana's countrymen; every person being anxious to testify their regard for this amiable Indian. On board of each vessel were embarked six cows and three bulls, four bull and cow calves, several goats, turkeys, rabbits, pigeons, &c. &c. also several lime and orange-trees, which were destined for Attoui.

Besides Tiaana, there were other natives of Sandwich Isles, that had been brought to China by different vessels, who were now received on board in order to restore them to their country: they consisted of a woman of the island of Owhyhee, whose name was Winee: she enjoyed but a very poor state of health; also a man and a boy of the island of Mowee; the man was very robust and strong: there was likewise another of King George's Sound.

On the 22d of January both vessels weighed from the Typa, with a view of proceeding to sea; but being disappointed in their design by a sudden calm, were obliged to re-anchor. In the evening, about nine o'clock, being favoured with a S. E. breeze, the Felice made a signal for weighing: accordingly they put to sea, and continued standing to the Grand Ladrone till midnight, when the Felice was obliged to shorten sail, in order to keep up with the Iphigenia, which was now considerably ahead. At this time there was a great fog; on which account they were more careful not to separate; notwithstanding (the fog still continuing) Captain Meares lost sight of the Iphigenia the next night: as soon as the fog cleared away, she was perceived about a league to leeward of them. The Felice fired several times, that the other might judge of her situation.

They

They now kept coast of Luconia; to shorten sail, as her: this suggestion of their parting of the Soloo Sea.

The Iphigenia's copper, which obliged pump going. The casiness, for fear who are too frequent ideas: the captain it the first favourable

The Chinese were cattle began to drift of the vessel: as it was not possible to preserve the vessel and being at present judged it expedient to provide comfortable intended, if possible, bull, and one bull hoped would become

On the 25th the vessel spoke to her. It was so dangerously secure it immediately to afford her any assistance very high, and the Indeed, the present account of the tempest which surrounded, hensions.

The weather being 26th, no assistance could be a flag erected for account of the great critical situation.

Two fine goats on by a sudden roll of the was also killed for the

On the 27th Captain partner, that the health was entirely rotten, at difficulty the carpenter's security: however, by ten over-head, and he They now determined to call a survey of the expedient to make for extremity of Magind Iphigenia's mast, or be condemned.

The island of Luconia previous to this they with the shoals. calm, and at night the S.W. They now stood six or seven leagues, and continued burning during

The 29th the land was about six leagues distant, and for the most the great quantity of fresh was undoubtedly inhab pleasant, and the sea re

On the 30th they stood to make Goat Island, which lay to the north island was seen the next about six leagues distant height, and well covered was no sign of any inhabitants

As the weather was took this opportunity of pirates, with whom the guns were accordingly a day of powder and ammunition the masts of the Iph

They now kept eastward, in order to make the coast of Luconia; the Felice being frequently obliged to shorten sail, as the Iphigenia was not able to keep her: this suggested to Captain Meares the necessity of their parting company, when they had got clear of the Solow Sea.

The Iphigenia had now sprung a leak above the copper, which obliged Captain Douglas to keep one pump going. This accident occasioned much uneasiness, for fear it might discourage the seamen, who are too frequently influenced by superstitious ideas: the captain was therefore resolved to remedy it the first favourable opportunity.

The Chinese were exceedingly sea-sick, and the cattle began to droop, by the continual tumbling of the vessel: as it was therefore deemed impossible to preserve them all during so long a voyage, and being at present in want of fresh food, they judged it expedient to kill two of them now, and provide comfortable messes for the sick crew. They intended, if possible, to preserve two cows and a bull, and one bull and one cow calf, which they hoped would become inured to the voyage.

On the 25th the Iphigenia spread abroad the signal of distress; upon which the Felice bore up and spoke to her. It was understood that her foremast was so dangerously sprung, that it was necessary to secure it immediately; it was impossible, however, to afford her any assistance at present, as the sea ran very high, and the wind was remarkably strong. Indeed, the present situation of the Iphigenia, on account of the tempestuous weather, and the shoals which surrounded, occasioned no small apprehensions.

The weather being equally tempestuous on the 26th, no assistance could yet be afforded. There was a stage erected round her mast-head; but, on account of the great hollow sea, she was in a very critical situation.

Two fine goats on board the Felice were crushed, by a sudden roll of the vessel. Another of the cattle was also killed for the crew.

On the 27th Captain Meares understood from his partner, that the head of the Iphigenia's foremast was entirely rotten, and that it was with the utmost difficulty the carpenters could keep it in a state of security: however, before night, her fore-top was strewn over-head, and her lower rigging set up.

They now determined, on the first opportunity, to call a survey of the carpenters, and deemed it expedient to make for Samboingan, on the southern extremity of Magindanao, in order to repair the Iphigenia's mast, or build a new one, if the old was condemned.

The island of Luconia was seen on the 28th; previous to this they were apprehensive of falling in with the shoals. Towards evening it became calm, and at night they had a fresh breeze from the S.W. They now stood off and on the shore about five or seven leagues, and saw several fires, which continued burning during the greater part of the night.

The 29th the land bore from N. N. E. to S. S. E. about six leagues distant. It seemed very mountainous, and for the most part covered with wood: by the great quantity of smoke which was seen, the place was undoubtedly inhabited. The weather was now pleasant, and the sea remarkably smooth.

On the 30th they stood to the S. by E. in order to make Goat Island, guarding against the shoals which lay to the northward of that island. Goat Island was seen the next day, bearing N. E. by N. about six leagues distant. It appeared of a moderate height, and well covered with wood, but there was no sign of any inhabitants.

As the weather was very favourable, they now took this opportunity of defending the vessels against pirates, with whom those seas are infested. The guns were accordingly mounted, and a proper quantity of powder and ammunition provided. At this time the masts of the Iphigenia were also surveyed;

and she was supplied with necessary articles by the Felice, for her defence.

The carpenters having surveyed the Iphigenia, returned to the Felice, and declared the mast to be totally unfit for the voyage; indeed it was very much feared whether it would carry her to Samboingan: all that was possible they did to secure it.

At noon the island of Mindoro was seen, which bore S. E. by E. about ten leagues distant. They had now a strong easterly wind, proceeding from the Luban mountains. They made for the shore of Mindoro; but as the wind still continued from the E. they were greatly afraid of being drove in with the Calamine Islands, which are not only numerous, but attended with much danger. They kept up as much sail as possible, and fortunately reached Mindoro about midnight: as it was now dark and squally, the signal was made to the Iphigenia to heave-to, with her head off shore: Captain Meares deemed it too hazardous to run on an unknown coast with these disadvantages. There was a fierce gale, and no ground with a hundred fathom line. The inhabitants had lighted several fires along the shores on the tops of the mountains, which continued burning all night.

The island of Mindoro is very extensive; several parts seem very mountainous, and others moderately high. There is little doubt but what the place is very well inhabited, by reason of the continual and numerous fires which were seen: those parts which were distinctly seen were exceedingly delightful. The groves of trees, verdant hills, extensive lawns, &c. &c. displayed a most luxuriant and romantic prospect.

The next morning (Feb. 1st) the Iphigenia was four leagues a-head the Felice, but her partner having made sail, joined her by noon. Mindoro now bore S. E. by E. about six leagues distant. At night the wind was still fierce, and the sea rough, which occasioned some apprehension for the masts and yards. In order to clear the Calamine Islands, they hauled close under the shore of Mindoro. The fires on the mountains were now more numerous than they were the preceding night.

On the 2d, about nine o'clock, they saw the Calamine Islands, which bore S. W. to S. E. about 17 leagues distant. As the weather was very favourable, they kept the shores of the Philippines, carrying a constant press of sail.

The scurvy had now made its appearance on board the Iphigenia. Several of the seamen were ill, and particularly the carpenter and two of the quarter-masters: there were several alarming symptoms, particularly the swelling of their legs, and their gums becoming putrid. Every antiscorbutic that they had was applied, and spruce-beer given in the room of spirits. The salt provisions were always carefully soaked before they were made use of: rice and peas alternately boiled every day, and tea and sugar given for breakfast. There was also a plentiful allowance of water, and great pains taken to preserve cleanliness.

On the 3d, having lost sight of Mindoro, they saw the island of Panay about noon, which bore from N. E. by E. to S. E. about nine leagues distant. They had now agreeable weather, and a N. E. wind. On the 4th they ranged up this island, about four leagues distant from Panay, and their latitude 10 deg. 36 min. N. They had no soundings with eighty fathom line.

The country had a very rich appearance, and several villages were seen on the declivity of the hills. The houses appeared both neatly and regularly built, and their fine verdure and rivulets formed a most delightful scene. No canoe, or fishing-boat, was however seen.

A mutiny was now discovered on board the Felice, but (before it was productive of any fatal effects) it was immediately crushed by gentle means. The circumstances were inserted in the log-book of the vessel,

vessel, in order to stamp a degree of disgrace upon the authors, it being Captain Meares opinion that shame is in many cases more efficacious than even severe punishment.

The natives of Owyhee, who were on board, were exceedingly ill: Winee, the woman, had caught a fever, and the generous Tiaana, from his constant attendance upon her, was also confined to his bed: indeed the woman was so bad, that there were no hopes of her recovery. All that remained therefore to be done for her, was to make her dissolution as easy as possible: she expired on the 5th of February. Tiaana was so exceedingly moved with her death, that it was greatly apprehended his health would have materially suffered on the occasion. He had received from his poor country-woman, the day before her death, a plate looking-glass, a china basin and bottle, and a gown, hoop, cap, petticoat, &c. for his wife: this was a token of gratitude for his kind attention to her. The rest of her property she left to her father and mother, and were accordingly entrusted to Tiaana to be delivered to them.

The flock of cattle was now considerably reduced, through the bad weather. All the goats except two had perished; and only one bull, one cow, and one cow calf, now remained.

On the 5th the southern extremity of Point de Naffo bore E. N. E. about seven leagues distant. During night they steered to the southward and eastward; and on the 6th, at day-break, they made the southern extremity of the island of Magindanao, which bore east, about eight leagues distant. This island seemed very high and mountainous. They had no ground with 100 fathom line. They now steered for Samboingan.

On the 7th, at noon, they saw the island of Basilan, which had a very remarkable appearance, on account of a number of hills of a conical form: one of them (which being the highest was the most conspicuous) resembled the cap of a Chinese mandarin. At half past four they made Samboingan; but the tide of ebb being strongly against them, the signal was made for anchoring, which they did in 11 fathoms, over a muddy bottom, about two miles distant from the fort, and within a quarter of a mile from the shore.

The boats were now hoisted out, and the carpenters sent to survey the wood of the country: on their return they reported, that the timber was not only fit for their purpose, but they could get as much as they wanted. The next morning they were sent again, with an officer and a strong party of men, to cut down some spars for top-sail yards, and steering sail-booms, for the Felice. An equal number were dispatched by the Iphigenia, to cut a foremast, while the pinnace was employed in sounding and surveying the channel: they found from five to thirty fathoms, over a rocky bottom.

The carpenters returned about noon, with a top-sail yard and the booms; a foremast was also cut for the Iphigenia. A China man, who accompanied them, having strayed into the woods, was lost, and supposed to have been seized by the Malaysans, as the place where the men were at work was infested by several of these savages, well armed.

An officer arrived from the governor, to compliment the captains on their arrival, and invite them to an entertainment, which was prepared on purpose: he likewise gave some necessary information relative to the places which abounded with the best wood and water, and assured the captains that the governor would render them every assistance in his power. Meares and Douglas returned their hearty thanks, and accepted of the governor's polite invitation.

It was now resolved that the vessels should moor nearer to the village; accordingly they weighed, and anchored abreast of Fort Caldera, where they were saluted with nine guns; which compliment was immediately returned.

When the captains, with their officers, &c. waited upon the governor, according to invitation, they were received with the greatest politeness, and every attention paid them. The governor was attended by three priests, one, who was old, had been a long time resident in the island; the other two were young. They had plenty of refreshments, according to the Spanish fashions; and were also supplied with sweetmeats, cordials, and every thing that the island afforded, for the use of the vessels.

On the 10th, the governor sent two galleys, completely armed, to accompany the boats of both vessels, which were now dispatched for the sake of cutting another foremast for the Iphigenia, as the former was disappropos of. The boats were likewise well manned and armed, in order to be defended against the Malaysans, who were continually on the watch to commit depredations. The people on board the vessels were in the mean time employed in their different necessary operations. The carpenters, &c. returned with a very fine tree. During the excursion, they met with no enemy.

The captains had now resolved between themselves to separate, for as the Iphigenia could not possibly be ready for sea some time, Captain Meares thought his stay not only unnecessary, but would be a delay of some consequence; accordingly the Felice was provided with every thing she wanted, in order to leave Samboingan as soon as possible.

The native of King George's Sound remained on board the Felice, but Tiaana was now consigned to Captain Douglas's care, as it was intended that the Iphigenia should bend her course to his native country. It was hoped also that the novelty of the scenes on shore would amuse Tiaana, and remove that grief which the death of Winee had occasioned.

They received on board the Felice several fine hogs, and a quantity of rice, vegetables, fruit, &c. as they intended to put to sea as soon as the weather was favourable. Captain Meares, previous to his departure, sent an invitation to the governor, in return for his politeness: this was very readily accepted; and the captain's company, and that of his friends, were likewise requested to a ball which the governor intended to give that evening.

When the governor and his suite visited the captains, according to invitation, every exertion was used to render the place as agreeable and comfortable as possible, in return for the many favours which he had shewn them. On his going on shore, he expressed great satisfaction at the attention that was paid him.

On the 11th, at four o'clock, the Felice hove short, the tide being then in their favour, with a fresh breeze from the northward; one of the anchors had hooked a rock, and in endeavouring to disentangle it from its hold, the cable gave way, and it was unfortunately lost. The Iphigenia gave her partner three cheers, as the Felice was palling close to her under sail, which were accordingly returned.

The following is a correct description of the ball which the governor had prepared for his visitors the night before the Felice's departure: also Captain Meares's account of the country.

"The governor's ball commenced at eight o'clock in the evening: the company met at his house. The ladies, who were escorted by a number of young men of Samboingan, were dressed after the manner of the island, which borders on (as we may suppose it to be borrowed from) the fashions of Manila. It consisted of a veil, which fell gracefully to the ancles, and was so arranged as to heighten real charms, and to make one fancy beauty even where nature had denied it. The arms alone were bare; but the folds were so contrived as half to discover the bosom, while the entire figure, in all the simplicity of nature, could not be described, as being concealed from the exploring eye. Their ancles and wrists were adorned with bracelets of gold, which gave (at

" may be supposed
" appearance th
" them were ext
" arch looks, wh
" they were heig
" less agreeable.
" its utmost per
" graced by thei
" dances, severa
" pliment to the
" with far less gr
" assemblies, than
" of the Phillippi
" till twelve o'clo
" with every app
" faction.
" For such mea
" people are indeb
" himself joined i
" have been not o
" of the religion it
" employed, who,
" make their missi
" pines, instead of
" severity of discipl
" which renders co
" flood, and is in fu
" and benevolent sp
" The village or
" on the banks of a
" self immediately
" shaded by groves
" of its inhabitants
" are included the c
" spective families.
" ral small look-ou
" 12 feet high, in al
" kept; so that it ap
" in a continual state
" The houses are b
" which are of very
" They are erected on
" covered with mats
" for their hogs, catt
" ones are occupied
" little excite our aff
" instead of creatin
" ment among the na
" knowledge of the
" should insensibly fr
" toms of the very
" affect to despise. B
" but little to boast,
" decent church, wh
" is a very poor plac
" they could judge, i
" for the governor's
" keep them from any
" Towards the land,
" a simple barrier, wit
" non. To a very
" place would become
" Felice and Iphigeni
" ance, have rendered
" curious in this settle
" consisted of from 15
" Macilla; in which p
" self was born.—T
" of discipline by no m
" which they garrisoned
" Samboingan is the
" pines, and crimes of
" there by banishment t
" any of the delinquer
" suspect that there w
" close confinement.
" Inconsiderable, how
" appear, the governor
" dollars in the three y
" No. 11.

" may be supposed) somewhat of a richness to an appearance that was already elegant. Many of them were extremely handsome; nor did certain arch looks, which appeared to be habitual, though they were heightened by the dance, render them less agreeable. The fandango was performed in its utmost perfection: the minuet was not disgraced by their motions; and English country dances, several of which were performed in compliment to the English, have been often exhibited with far less grace and agility in many of our best assemblies, than in this distant and remote corner of the Philippine Islands. This amusement lasted till twelve o'clock, when all the company retired, with every appearance of the most perfect satisfaction.

" For such means of innocent amusement, the people are indebted to the venerable padre, who himself joined in the dance. Indeed it would have been not only to the honour of Spain, but of the religion it professes, if such men had been employed, who, like this amiable priest, could make their missions a source of comfort and happiness, instead of accompanying them with that severity of discipline, and cruelty of compulsion, which renders conversion insincere or misunderstood, and is in such direct opposition to the mild and benevolent spirit of Christianity.

" The village or town of Samboingan is situated on the banks of a small rivulet, which empties itself immediately into the sea; and is agreeably shaded by groves of cocoa trees. The number of its inhabitants are about 1000, among which are included the officers, soldiers, and their respective families. In its environs there are several small look-out houses, erected on posts of 12 feet high, in all of which a constant guard is kept; so that it appears as if the Spaniards were in a continual state of enmity with the natives.

" The houses are built of those simple materials which are of very general use in the Eastern seas. They are erected on posts, and built of bamboo, covered with mats: the lower apartments serve for their hogs, cattle, and poultry, and the upper ones are occupied by the family. Nor did it a little excite our astonishment, that the Spaniards, instead of creating an emulation and improvement among the natives, from their own superior knowledge of the arts and conveniences of life, should insensibly sink into the manners and customs of the very people whose ignorance they affect to despise. But, though their houses have but little to boast, their piety has produced a decent church, which is built of stone. The fort is a very poor place of defence; and is, as far as they could judge, in an absolute state of decay; for the governor's cautious spirit took care to keep them from any particular examination of it. Towards the land, its whole defence consisted of a simple barrier, with two or three pieces of cannon. To a very moderate force, indeed, this place would become an easy capture: indeed the Felice and Iphigenia might, without any assistance, have rendered the Spanish power very precarious in this settlement. The military force consisted of from 150 to 200 soldiers, natives of Macilla; in which place also the governor himself was born.—They appeared to be in a state of discipline by no means unworthy of the fortresses which they garrisoned.

" Samboingan is the Botany Bay of the Philippines, and crimes of a certain nature are punished there by banishment to this place. We did not see any of the delinquents, but we had reason to suspect that there were several in some kind of close confinement.

" Inconsiderable, however, as this settlement may appear, the governor is supposed to clear 30,000 dollars in the three years of his residence there.

No. 11.

" This advantage he derives from furnishing the soldiers with cloathing and provision,—from gold dust, cinnamon, spices, and other contraband goods.

" The conduct of the inhabitants was governed by the most pleasing decorum, for which they are solely indebted to the civilizing spirit of the old padre, as his two fellow-labourers in the spiritual vineyard were rather calculated to deprave than improve the poor people committed to their charge: indeed the former was of that amiable, conciliating disposition, which is so well adapted to the cultivation of savage manners. We were equally surpris'd at hearing a very tolerable band of music, which was composed of natives of the country: it consisted of four violins, two bassoons, with several flutes and mandolins. This unexpected orchestra were acquainted with some of the select pieces of Handel; they knew many of our English country-dances, and several of our popular and favourite tunes; but in performing the Fandango, they had attained a degree of excellence that the nicest ears of Spain would have heard with pleasure. The Malayans possess, in common with other savage nations, a sensibility to the charms of music, and are even capable of attaining no inconsiderable degree of perfection in that delightful science.

" Magindanao is a very extensive island, about 120 miles in breadth, and 160 in length. It is a fertile, luxuriant soil. There are in some places very high mountains, and several delicious pastures, where vast herds of cattle roam at large. There are several large lakes in the middle of the island; the borders of which are inhabited by tribes of savage natives, who think themselves as great as the sovereign of Magindanao, and equally free and independent. They are constantly at war with the Mahometans, who are the chief inhabitants of this island. They are called Hilloonas, and profess no kind of religion, but live in a state of barbarism and ignorance.

" These people are called by the Spaniards, *Negros del Monte*, or Negroes of the Mountain, on account of their resemblance to the race of Africa, both in their persons and manners. They are supposed to be the original lords of Magindanao, and, indeed, of all the Philippines; the *Isla de Negros*, or Isle of Negroes, is, in particular, entirely peopled by them, where they are at constant enmity with the Spaniards. The Mahometan natives of the island are a robust people, of a deep copper colour, and are esteemed intelligent merchants. If the Hilloonas are believed to have been the original inhabitants of Magindanao, it is very reasonable to suppose that they fled to the mountains to preserve their liberty, when they were invaded by the Mahometan hosts, which spread like locusts, during the thirteenth and fourteenth centuries, over the eastern archipelago. Their savage ignorance and barbarous dispositions seem to have become so habitual, as to leave them without the least desire, or, perhaps, without even the least idea of any superior degree of intellectual nature. The missionaries whom the zeal for infidel conversion, so well known in the Roman Catholic Church, employed to preach Christianity to these inhuman people, were instantly seized and murdered by them.

" The sovereign of Magindanao is a powerful prince, and has several inferior chiefs who acknowledge him as their head. Nevertheless there are others of them who refuse submission to him, and are consequently in a continual state of war; so that peace, at least, does not appear to be one of the blessings of this island. The Spaniards, indeed, assert their right to the entire dominion of Magindanao, but it is mere asser-

* 1 1

tion;

The lofty mountains of Jelolo had now a tremendous appearance. The great gulph of Chiauw was under their lee, while several low, sandy islands, connected with shoals, were about five leagues off Morinlay, in the channel along which they steered. They passed those islands, every attention being paid to the soundings, and the men continually on the look-out. The shoals, which were about four miles distant, were quite apparent, and as the surf was rolling in a dreadful manner over them, conveyed many alarming ideas. Their soundings were from six to eight fathoms; and when out of the channel from 14 to 30, over a hard sandy bottom. The islands are about five leagues in extent, N. and S. Being now clear of all danger, they made for the S. end of Morinlay, and continued their course to the E. S. E. with a N. E. wind, which was invariable, as well as the strong currents setting to the S. and S. W.

On the 22d they saw the island of Wagiew, which bore from S. E. by W. to W. about six leagues distant. The weather was still sultry, and the winds light. Having thus for a month endured a tedious and dangerous navigation, they were now approaching an island which they feared would also render it unprofitable. The people already began to feel the sad effects of the warm weather; and were not a little discouraged by the appearance of a tedious passage to America. Every means were applied to keep down the scurvy.

On the 23d a favourable wind revived the drooping spirits of the men: they accordingly changed their course to the N. E. and in a little time got a considerable distance from Wagiew. Another group of islands were now seen, very extensive, covered with wood, and surrounded with shoals and reefs of rocks, bearing from N. W. to N. E. by E. about five miles distant. Several canoes were seen paddling between the reefs, two of which, with five men in each, approached the vessel, and called out *Tate, tate!* but no entreaties could prevail on them to come along-side. They beheld the ship with the greatest surprise, and threw themselves into the strangest positions. These people were jet black, and woolly headed, like those at Papua; they were stout, and well made: their features like those of the African negroes. Their canoes were very narrow, and long: to keep them on a balance, a large out-rigger ran out on one side, with net-work between, made with strong cord, which was evidently worked from the rind of the cocoa-nut. As these islands had not been placed on the charts, Captain Meares called them the *Tate* Isles, after the word which the natives made use of. At noon they left those islands, the wind being still favourable.

On the 27th they saw Freewill Isles, being four, and the largest no more than five leagues in appearance: also a large village, situated on the shore of the island, seemingly an entire uncultivated forest.

They were visited by several canoes, containing at least 500 natives, all of whom were men. The canoes were built in the same manner as those of the Sandwich Islands, and held half a dozen or seven people. The people also possessed the same manners, and spoke the same language. They came along-side the vessel in a very free and friendly manner, and cheerfully exchanged a quantity of cocoa-nuts and coin-line for small bits of iron, which they received with reiterated expressions of joy.

They continued their course to the N. E. with a gentle breeze from the W. N. W.

On the 28th the wind was changeable, and the weather squally. The next day they discovered land from the mast-head; and, upon examination, found it to be the Freewill Islands. This circumstance was not believed at first, till it was confirmed by the return of some of their late friends, who brought a very handsome present of cocoa-nuts,

and could hardly be persuaded to take any thing in return for it.

On the 1st of March they lost sight of these islands, but still experienced the same disagreeable weather, and several squalls of rain, in consequence of which, the crew were very much dejected, and several of them laid up with colds, &c. Their progress was exceedingly slow, owing to the violent currents. Every means were still practised to suppress the scurvy, and a plentiful allowance of water continued.

On the 3d while the weather was extremely tempestuous, they discovered the foremast dangerously sprung below the hounds, while the vessel pitched exceedingly, owing to a heavy sail. The top-mast and top-gallant-mast were now got down on deck, and the sails unbent: every one, particularly the carpenters, were now employed to remedy this evil.

The majority of the cattle were likewise destroyed by the rolling of the vessel; the goats were all killed in one day: several plants intended for the Sandwich Islands, were likewise lost. The weather still continued stormy and unfavourable. On the 5th the mast of the vessel was secured: they kept standing to the N. W.

As soon as the weather became favourable, they overhauled their sails; and also prepared two new complete suits of sails new roped, lined, and middle-stitched: they also repaired their old ones. All the people on board, coopers, armourers, &c. were likewise employed.

It was now intended immediately on their arrival in King George's Sound, to build a sloop of fifty tons, which would be of the greatest use, not only in collecting furs, but exploring the coast when occasion required. The carpenters were therefore employed in preparing the moulds and model: the plan was immediately laid, and a party from the crew selected, who were to be left on shore with the artificers, while employed in building the vessel. It was thought necessary to make the arrangements soon, that there might be no delay when the operations were begun.

The month of April commenced with extreme bad weather, rain, thunder, lightning, &c. On the 1st the sea was remarkably rough, and the vessel was pitched so heavy, that she suffered great damage, her head-rails were carried away, &c. As there was every appearance of a violent storm approaching, the top-gallant yards and masts were got down, and the main-sail furled, the top-sails were close-reefed, and the mizen balanced; the main-top-sail was kept abroad, the rest handed. When the storm took place the vessel's head was kept to the N. E. there were heavy squalls from the S. E. and S. W. both very violent, but the latter more prevalent in this situation, it was expected every minute that the masts would be shattered to pieces. They set the fore-sail in order to scud before the storm: the vessel plowed her way remarkably fast, and they were obliged to heave-to in a high sea. As soon as this awful tempest was over, they scudded to the N. E. with a smart breeze from the S. W.

On the 3d the weather became calm, but the storm returned at noon, and the sea was as high as ever. At night it became moderate again: they stood to the N. E. till the 4th, the wind having shifted to the E. S. E. afterwards it fixed itself in the N. E. quarter; the weather became fine, and they stood to the N. W. They now saw land bearing E. N. E. about eight leagues distant.

On the 5th they steered to the N. E. the wind having shifted to the S. E. They thought they saw something like land to the E. S. E. but on account of the haziness of the weather, they were not sure whether it was land or a fog-bank: however, in a little time they were convinced it was land. It appeared to be a barren island of no great extent, about

about six miles distant: they sailed along the shores of this island, and presently after saw another: the fog still continued, and there was a strong breeze with much rain. They could not see the direct number of those isles, but as they perceived a large grampus spouting up water close to the shore, they called them Grampus isles. The weather continued tempestuous till the 6th, when it grew clear. It now became as cold, as before it was warm: accordingly they reduced the allowance of water without any inconvenience. Having now a favourable wind, they proceeded to the north as fast as possible: several small islands were seen on the 9th. In the morning at nine o'clock they thought they saw a large vessel under a great crowd of sail: They concluded it was a galleon bound to China from New Spain, accordingly they began to write several letters, to inform their friends in China of their welfare; but when they were within two leagues of the object, this supposed galleon was a huge rock, that was standing alone in the middle of the water. The first who discovered the deception, diverted himself for a long time with the different observations which were made by the sailors, one of whom began to fancy that he saw her colours. This rock, which is one of the most wonderful that was ever seen, was called Lot's Wife, as it resembled a pillar of salt upon a near view. At noon they were a-bread of it: it then bore E. N. E. about four miles distant.

This rock displayed a very awful sight: it rose almost perpendicular to the height of about 350 feet. A small black rock appeared a little above the water, about 50 yards from its western edge. On the S. E. side there were caverns, into which the waves rolled with most tremendous fury. As they met with a piece of a canoe floating on the water, they were in hopes of soon meeting land. From this to the 23d, there were continual storms; the wind then became moderate, and the weather somewhat fair. There were still several showers of snow and hail. On the 24th they had another fierce storm, attended with heavy rain: the vessel strained exceedingly in her rolling, and her rigging was very much damaged. The next day the wind shifted to the W. N. W. and the weather became moderate: indeed they had now a continual succession of gales, also of clear and stormy weather, during the remainder of this month.

The month of May introduced very pleasant weather: they pursued their course to the eastward. About the 5th they had occasional squalls, and threatening fogs. The squalls of hail and snow became very frequent about the 8th.

On the 10th they kept running during the night under a press of sail directly in for the American coast, which appeared on the 11th, bearing E. by S. about 13 leagues distant. There was a ridge of vast mountains on the continent, the tops of which were buried in the clouds; and which illuminated the atmosphere, by the reflection of snow, with which it was covered over. When within four leagues of the land, the wind shifted to the S. E. by E. upon which they tacked, and stood for sea.

The Princess Royal, of London, was now seen under the weather land of the sound, bearing down to them.

There were several heavy gulls, and continual squalls, on the 11th; which prevented them from carrying any sail: these squalls were attended with hail and snow, and at last terminated in a storm. They had now lost sight of land, and the vessel had so exceedingly strained, that two pumps were disabled, and there were six feet water in the hold. The storm did not abate till the next day at noon; in consequence of which the ship was in great distress, being very much worn, and bailing the water from the hold, which was still increasing. They stood in for land, which they saw again at seven o'clock in the evening: but finding they had been blown to leeward by the storm, they were obliged, mortifying as it was, to re-tack, and stand out again for sea, with a N. N. W. wind, the sound bearing N. E. about seven leagues distant. The night being very stormy, the crew were employed in bailing the water out of the pumps, it being then impossible to repair the pumps: they also lay-to, under the reefed foresail.

The next day was equally stormy, and the vessel as much distressed as before: she wore, and her head pointed in for the land. The weather moderated about eight o'clock; upon which they made sail, and at ten o'clock anchored (to their great satisfaction) in Friendly Cove, in King George's Sound, a-bread of the village of Nootka, within 100 yards of the shore, in four fathoms. In this comfortable harbour they enjoyed themselves, and the weather still continuing stormy, felt no little solace in being thus happily secured.

We shall now return to the Iphigenia, and inform our readers in the succeeding chapter how she has been employed during this tedious passage of the Felice from China to the N. W. coast of America. After which we shall resume the account of her consort; and thus give the proceedings of each vessel in a regular manner.

CHAPTER IV.

Proceedings of the Iphigenia—The extraordinary Behaviour of the Governor of Samboingan—Captain Douglas's Men arrested—Ship seized—The Governor's unreasonable Demand—The Captain's Behaviour—Business settled—Departure of the Vessel, without taking Leave—A tedious Passage—Dangerous Reef of Rocks—A small Island—Make for Land—Visited by several Canoes—Description of the Island, Natives, &c.—Recovery of Tianna—Death of Tawnee—Various Occurrences—Two Islands seen—Several Canoes—Arrival at the Pelow Islands—Concern of the Natives at the Vessel's not stopping—Amleck Island seen—Land mistaken for Trinity Island—A Hurricane—Particulars of their Progress—Visited by two Canoes—A Boat sent on Shore—Dealings with some of the Natives—A short Allowance, &c. &c.

AS soon as the Felice had departed, all hands on board the Iphigenia were employed in making ready for sea; but the governor now, who had been so exceedingly polite before, became all of a sudden ungenerous and assuming. Capt. Douglas having received some cattle, bags of rice, and a quantity of vegetables, waited on the governor and invited him to dinner, meaning to present him with some bars of iron, which Capt. Meares left behind on purpose, understanding that they were the most acceptable gifts: This invitation was accepted by the governor; and during the entertainment, he

appeared as quite agreeable as before; but understanding that the principal part of the cargo consisted of iron, he meditated artful means of procuring this valuable acquisition, as in Magindano it purchases gold. The governor invited the company in the evening to a ball. The next day Capt. Douglas sent his officer on shore, to know what demand was made for the articles received, the vessel being now ready for sea: it was supposed that the account would be about 250 dollars: however the officer was informed that the whole of the demand was expected to be paid in iron, which should

should be weighed the officer was about was arrested by a dark prison. The ordinary delay of learn the cause; the and detained, while was dispatched to the captain was almost knowing that his frequently sullen, he gavelled, and went on the reason of those ex governor informed tained to secure his should not depart till was put on shore. monstrated, the govern The captain then rec seventy-eight bars of half of what he had lars in the vessel. h cept of nothing but in premtorily refused, filled in such a disti be immediately thro ed the governor, who and dollars; but refus the people whom he he had received some and which was accord of this cruel delay the bongian till the 22nd. fring a gun.

She had now a ver obliged to proceed with of the numerous island proached.

On the 2d of March reef of rocks, which e miles; they were not They proceeded now t ward.

On the 9th they saw half N. about 12 leagues were seen on the shore.

On the 10th, they ma by several canoes, which distance, holding up co signal of peace. They v on board, and testified that they had never se these people: it was unde water was to be had at deemed advisable to s supply.

They were revisited t noon, who brought with which they exchanged so This island consisted league in circumference, dure and cocoa-nuts. T unknown, as there was n and taro-root. There v tall that it appeared at a hill.

The natives are stout a be about two hundred seemed very anxious to h but upon the captain's greatly alarmed that he wards, notwithstanding h his respect for it. The those at the Sandwich I equally as active in the w Tianna was now entire another Sandwich Island during his illness, was no and in spite of all the ca No. 11.

should be weighed according to his pleasure. As the officer was about returning with this answer, he was arrested by a file of soldiers and conveyed to a dark prison. The captain wondering at the extraordinary delay of his officer, sent another boat to learn the cause; these people were likewise arrested and detained, while a large proa, with fifty men, was dispatched to seize the Iphigenia. At first the captain was almost inclined to sink the proa; but knowing that his people on shore would consequently suffer, he gave them quiet possession of the vessel, and went on shore to the governor, to enquire the reason of those extraordinary proceedings. The governor informed the captain that he was determined to secure his payment, and therefore the vessel should not depart till the iron which he demanded was put on shore. In vain Captain Douglas remonstrated, the governor would hear no reason. The captain then returned on board, and ordered seventy-eight bars of iron to be landed (which was half of what he had): he also collected 120 dollars in the vessel; but the governor would accept of nothing but iron, which the captain at last peremptorily refused, and declared that if he persisted in such a dishonest demand the vessel should be immediately thrown upon his hands: this alarmed the governor, who forthwith accepted the iron and dollars; but refused, even now, to release the people whom he had put into confinement till he had received some wine, which was promised him, and which was accordingly delivered. On account of this cruel delay the Iphigenia did not leave Samboingan till the 22nd. She weighed anchor without firing a gun.

She had now a very tedious passage, and was obliged to proceed with the greatest care, on account of the numerous islands which they constantly approached.

On the 2d of March she fell in with a dangerous reef of rocks, which extend E. and W. about ten miles; they were not clear of them till the 6th. They proceeded now to the northward and eastward.

On the 9th they saw a small island, bearing E. half N. about 12 leagues. A great number of lights were seen on the shore.

On the 10th, they made for land, and were visited by several canoes, which at first kept at a respectful distance, holding up cocoa-nuts in their hands as a signal of peace. They were soon persuaded to come on board, and testified by their great astonishment that they had never seen a vessel before. From these people it was understood that plenty of good water was to be had at the island; it was therefore deemed advisable to stop here a day and get a supply.

They were revisited by the canoes in the afternoon, who brought with them cocoa and taro-root, which they exchanged for iron.

This island consisted of low land: it is about a league in circumference, and well covered with verdure and cocoa-nuts. The produce of the island is unknown, as there was nothing seen but cocoa-nuts and taro-root. There was one tree so remarkably tall that it appeared at a distance like a vessel under sail.

The natives are stout and robust, there seemed to be about two hundred in number. One of them seemed very anxious to have a pistol which he saw; but upon the captain's discharging it, he was so greatly alarmed that he would not touch it afterwards, notwithstanding he kissed the barrel to show his respect for it. Their canoes are the same of those at the Sandwich Islands, and the men seem equally as active in the water.

Tiaana was now entirely recovered; but Tawnee, another Sandwich Islander, who attended Tiaana during his illness, was now exceedingly ill himself, and in spite of all the care which was bestowed on

No. 11.

him died the 23d. Several of the crew were likewise ill.

As the winds continued light and variable, they made to the northward on the 28th, being determined to land the sick as soon as possible.

They had now frequent squalls of rain and variable weather for several days.

On the 4th of April they saw two low islands, also some land about twelve leagues distant. As they were at present in want of wood and other necessaries, the captain intended to take the first opportunity of supplying the vessel, accordingly they made for this land, which seemed likely to afford them a place of security; however, on nearer approach, it proved to be a cluster of islands, upon which they altered their course, and made for two low islands.

In the evening they were visited by several canoes, who exchanged some taro and cocoa-nuts for knives, nails, &c. Several others after this appeared, and the same traffic was continued; some of the natives, however, having got a few nails in their possession, refused to make any compensation, upon which Captain Douglas fired a musket over their heads, and the culprits were so alarmed that they immediately jumped into the water, and hid themselves under the lee of their canoe; those that were innocent kept their places, nor betrayed the least sign of fear.

They were now among the Pelew Islands, a description of which has been already given in Captain Wilson's voyage. Captain Douglas was, however, unacquainted with the misfortunes of the Antelope, nor could he understand why so many canoes followed the Iphigenia, upon her departure from the islands, wherein the people expressed an eager anxiety to discourse with her; but as the vessel's situation was critical, on account of the rocks, there was no attention paid to their cries, whereupon one of the natives discovered the greatest distress, which bordered upon absolute frenzy. It was afterwards supposed that this was the king Abba Thulle, who, perhaps, was expecting the return of his son Lee Boo.

The largest of the two islands was called by Capt. Douglas Moore's Island, in honour of his friend Mr. Hugh Moore, bearing S. by E. half E. about six leagues distant. Two others were called Good Look-out Islands, bearing W. S. W. half S. about four leagues distant. These were low and sandy.

They continued for some days looking out for a harbour; but not meeting with a commodious one, the Captain gave up the idea for fear his arrival at the coast of America might be too late.

On the 30th they saw the Island of Amluke, bearing N. by E. about 24 leagues distant.

On the 3d of May, as they were approaching land, and expecting a visit from the natives, they now cleaned their fire-arms.

On the 5th they thought they saw Trinity Island; but on the 9th it appeared to be an island forming part of the coast between Foggy Island and Trinity Island. The hills were covered with snow: the low lands seemed to possess good verdure, but there were no trees to be seen.

On the 10th they saw land, bearing E. N. E. about 10 leagues distant. This land was called Cape Collings.

On the 11th they saw the Island of Kodiack, and the next day Trinity Island. They directed their course through the passage between Trinity Island and the main, with a fine breeze from N. N. W. they had regular soundings from seven to seventeen fathoms, over a fine sandy bottom.

They were visited by a native in a small canoe, who complimented them after the Russian manner. A short time after another canoe, with one man, came up; he offered them the skin of a grey fox for a few beads, which he seemed very well pleased with; but as he was not able to fasten the skin in

° K k

time

time to the vessel, which at this time was making rapidly, he took it back with him.

The jolly-boat was now dispatched with an officer (Mr. Adamson) on shore, to get some fish. He procured some halibut from the natives, who requested snuff in return, holding out their boxes to be filled. These people, though they possessed much of the Russian appearance, were Kodiack hunters, or natives of Cook's river; though about two years ago, the latter seemed highly averse to snuff.

On the 16th they saw Cape Greville, bearing W. about nine leagues distant. The extremities of the land from the Island of St. Hermogenes bore N. W. by N. ten leagues to the S. W. by W. They passed Barren Islands at midnight.

On the 17th in the morning they were visited by two canoes from Point Bede, and a little while after by a Russian from the same place, with a few Kodiack hunters. They brought some fresh salmon, for which they had a little brandy and tobacco.

When they ran up Cook's River, they were visited by seven or eight canoes; but such was the poverty of this place, that not a bit of fur was to be had. On account of a strong tide, they were obliged to anchor in five fathoms and a half, about two miles from shore.

The boat was now hoisted out, in order to go on shore to look for the watering-place, and observe the behaviour of the natives. On landing, they found a small river running by the side of the huts, and the natives very shy. About fifty or three score of them sat basking in the sun, on the opposite side of the river, who took no notice whatever of the boat's crew. As the Iphigenia was in great want of wood, water, and fish, it was absolutely necessary to remain in their present situation, till a sufficient supply was obtained of these essential articles.

On the 18th they moved the ship higher up, so as to lie opposite the mouth of this river; but before the tide became favourable they touched the ground; they therefore ran out the keedge, hove-up immediately, slipped the hawser, and made sail, when they found a bank on the outside with only two fathoms and a half: it being at this time low water, the boat was sent a-head to sound; when they ran up the river about eighteen miles, and came to with the flood, over a sandy bottom, and about a mile and an half from the shore, which had a steep beach. The boat was then sent to find out the most convenient place for watering.

They were now revisited by several canoes which they saw yesterday: and though the natives had nothing to sell, they continued near the ship till the evening. Some of them, indeed, caught a few salmon, which were purchased with beads. It appeared as if these people were on the watch to prevent any of the natives up Cook's river from visiting the ship.

On the 19th they were employed in brewing, wooding, watering, &c.

On the 20th they sighted the anchor and moored ship, when all hands were employed in wooding and watering. The net was also hauled into the mouth of the river for salmon, but without success.

On the 21st five canoes came down the river, and the people in them called out *Noota, Noota*, as soon as they got along-side the ship. Five otter-skins were purchased of these people, but they would take nothing except broad bar-iron; two feet of which were paid for each skin.

It appeared as if they were at war with the Russians and Kodiack hunters, each of them being armed with a couple of daggers. They earnestly entreated the captain to go higher up the river, and gave him to understand that it was from the report of his guns, which he ordered to be fired morning and evening, that they knew of his arrival. They also informed him that they had got a considerable quantity of Natunichucks, or sea-otter skins, but were afraid to bring them down, on account of the Russians.

On the 22d their watering was completed. The long-boat also having received some damage, she was hauled up on the beach, and the carpenters and caulkers employed in repairing her; they were likewise to work to prepare a couple of masts and yards for her, as it was intended to dispatch her up the river as high as Point Possession, on the information of the natives.

On the 24th, the long-boat being finished, she was launched, and dispatched, with the turn of the tide, well manned and armed, on her intended expedition, under the command of the chief officer.

The captain ordered them to proceed up as high as Point Possession; to look into most of the small bays or low lands in search of inhabitants, and to barter his iron or beads for sea-otter skins, black foxes skins, and salmon. If he met with any Russians, he was instructed to treat them with civility; but at the same time to be upon his guard, and not to suffer either them or the natives to enter into his boat. In case of bad weather, or if by any unforeseen accident he should be detained four or five days, Captain Douglas mentioned his design, at the end of that time, to follow him with the ship up the river to Point Possession; and that he should fire guns to give him notice of his approach. The officer, however, was ordered to do his utmost to return to the ship at the end of five days.

The captain likewise sent the carpenter and caulker on shore to procure some spars for oars, which were very much wanted; but for which they were under the necessity of tracing the banks of the river to a considerable distance, before they could find any that would answer their purpose. When these people returned on board, they declared, that as the long-boat turned the point, they heard the discharge of eleven great guns. Though Captain Douglas was, in some degree, alarmed when he first received this intelligence; yet, as he had been informed, by a Russian who went on board the Iphigenia at Point Bede, that none of his countrymen were so high up the river; and as the long-boat, if she had been attacked, would have returned, the wind being fair to come back to the ship, it was concluded, as it afterwards turned out, that these great guns were nothing more than muskets, which the people had fired at some ducks, and whose report was conveyed by the wind, which blew right to the place where the carpenters were at work.

On the 25th they were visited by two canoes, which brought a sea-otter cut through the middle, and otherwise mangled. It appeared as if these natives thought that the flesh was wanted, and not the skin; but no satisfactory explanation could be obtained, as they did not understand any words that were addressed to them; and indeed gave no cause for supposing that they had ever traded with any European people. They had not a single bead of any kind in their possession; and the few which were now given them seemed to attract that kind of admiration which is awakened by objects that have been never, or at least seldom, seen before.

On the 26th two canoes came from the southward; in one of which was the Russian who had paid the Iphigenia a visit from Point Bede. He brought a present of some salmon, which was returned by a small parcel of tobacco. In the afternoon twelve double canoes came along-side from the southward; the people in them were Kodiack hunters, but they had neither skins nor fish, though they promised to bring some of the latter in the morning.

On the 27th the long-boat returned, having obtained nothing but one very indifferent sea-otter skin, and about two dozen of split salmon. The officer, Mr. Adamson, reported, that as high up the river as 60 deg. 42 min. N. he met with Russians and Kodiack hunters, who followed him from village to village, and had got entire possession of the river. At six o'clock the ship was unmoored; and, on the

turn of the tide down the river. They now stood with light winds; the feamen were now disappointed. On the 2d of the month, owing to a strong wind, the coast was so high that the natives of which

Proceedings of the Ground given to the European given to the Commanish, and the

DURING this several natives admiring the vesting, infatuating means endeavours in collecting a number of canoes. Camekala, the name was exceedingly high country: the absence of quills, and another chiefs of consequence unbusiness. Camekala with brass buttons cockade, good line all his countrymen: the whole body of the terrible noise on the side great joy at his who almost wept here. As soon as these people to the king's house, prepared; but Camekala the English cookery, the English entertainments, and the English returning the English return. Maquilla and Call who had been on a visit a prince of great consequence, returned on the twelve war-canoes, clothed from the sea-otter skins; they down, and their faces ochre. Maquilla, they with a high cap on. They approached the exceedingly melodious correct in respect to the was likewise very expressive their paddles against the they paddled round the canoes along-side; when came on board. On they made them, their garments, which they and remained naked; with blankets to cover and descending into Maquilla seemed to be good open countenance was about 40, and likewise. Their attendants were a spot of ground was by Maquilla, for the erected on the 28th, being timber, &c.

turn of the tide, they weighed anchor and dropped down the river.

They now stood to the southward and eastward, with light winds and calms. Both captain and seamen were now on a short allowance, owing to the disappointment in salmon.

On the 2d of July the vessel laboured exceedingly, owing to a heavy swell, and their progress along the coast was very slow.

On the 6th they saw Montague Island, the extremities of which bore from N. by E. to N. by W.

The captain wished to avoid this island, on account of the sunken rocks which lie in the inner passage; but, owing to a violent contrary wind, he was obliged to direct his course there. On the 7th they were within a mile and a half of the island. On the 8th they were in the mid channel, between Montague Island and the Green Islands. They now stood in for Snug Corner Bay, where they anchored on the 9th, in five fathom water, and where we shall now leave the *Iphigenia* and return to the *Felice*.

CHAPTER V.

Proceedings of the Felice continued—Camekala's Reception—Description of Maquilla and Callicum—A Spot of Ground given to the English for a House that is begun—Natives assist the Artists—Maquilla and his Chiefs ape the European Fashions—The Grindstone stolen—A general Commotion—The Pinnace stolen—Instructions given to the Commanding Officer, respecting the new Vessel they put to Sea—Occurrences—Description of Wacananih, and the Islands—Sudden Confusion, Presents, &c.—Departure of the Vessel, and her Progress.

DURING this time the *Felice* was visited by several natives, who assembled for the sake of admiring the vessel. Captain Meares used every insinuating means of attracting them; nor were his endeavours ineffectual, being constantly visited by a number of canoes, who supplied them with fish.

Camekala, the native who was on board the *Felice*, was exceedingly happy in being restored to his country: the absence, however, of his brother Maquilla, and another relation, Callicum, (who were chiefs of consequence, and on a visit) gave him some uneasiness. Camekala, being dressed in a scarlet coat with brass buttons, a cocked hat with a smart cockade, good linen, &c. attracted the notice of all his countrymen: he was welcomed on shore by the whole body of inhabitants, who made a most terrible noise on the occasion. His relations testified great joy at this meeting, especially an old aunt, who almost wept herself blind.

As soon as these salutations were over, they went to the king's house, where a magnificent feast was prepared; but Camekala being lately accustomed to the English cookery, did not much relish his countrymen's entertainment. The evening was celebrated with songs and dancing. Early in the evening the English returned on board.

Maquilla and Callicum, the relations of Camekala, who had been on a visit of ceremony to Wicananih, a prince of great consequence of a trix to the southward, returned on the 16th of May, attended with twelve war-canoes, containing each about 18 men, clothed from the neck to the ankle with beautiful sea-otter skins; their hair powdered with white down, and their faces bedaubed with red and black ochre. Maquilla, the chief, stood in the middle, with a high cap on, ornamented with feathers. They approached the vessel with a song, which was exceedingly melodious, as they were remarkably correct in respect to the tone and time: their action was likewise very expressive, as they beat time with their paddles against the gunwale of the boat. Twice they paddled round the vessel; then brought their canoes along-side; while Maquilla and Callicum came on board. On receiving some presents which were made them, they threw off their sea-otter garments, which they laid at the feet of the donors, and remained naked: in return, they were presented with blankets to cover them, which they accepted, and descending into their canoes took their leave. Maquilla seemed to be about 30 years old, with a good open countenance, and well made. Callicum was about 40, and likewise possessed of good features. Their attendants were very comely men.

A spot of ground was now granted to the English by Maquilla, for the purpose of building a house for their accommodation on shore. This was partly erected on the 28th, the natives having assisted in bringing timber, &c.

On the 5th of June the necessary business of the vessel was done, wood, water, &c. was brought on board. A very brisk trade was likewise carried on for furs; but there was such a fickleness in their traffic as occasioned some trouble.

On the 6th the English were invited on shore by Maquilla, who, on this occasion, was dressed in an European suit of clothes and a ruffled shirt, which were given him by Camekala; his hair was powdered and queued. The chiefs who attended had also some part of an English dress, and in imitating the European fashions of bowing, taking off the hat, &c. they afforded no little entertainment.

On the 7th the grindstone was stolen; application was made to Maquilla for its recovery, but in vain: as, therefore, there was no remedy, the theft, though of some importance, was overlooked.

On the 10th, as the natives were about to remove to a bay, about two miles from the sound, where there was a great quantity of fish, a general commotion took place in the village, and in a short time half the houses disappeared. These houses are so constructed that their removal requires but little trouble. About this time the pinnace, a very large fine boat, was stolen: large rewards were offered for her recovery, but all in vain. It was supposed that she was broken up for the sake of the nails, &c.

On the 11th preparations were made for sailing, the weather being now fine and pleasant, previous to which the officers and party, who were to remain on shore to complete the new vessel, were landed, and necessary instructions given to the commanding officer. This vessel was now in great forwardness.

Due notice was given Maquilla of the *Felice's* intended departure; he was acquainted that her return would be in about four months, when it was supposed the new vessel would be ready. His attention and friendship were earnestly requested to the party who were left on shore, and in order to secure his attachment he was promised all the goods and chattels belonging to the house upon their final departure from the coast. Maquilla readily complied with their requests. They now set sail, intending to trace the southern part of the coast from King George's Sound, and pursued their course to the S. E. with the long-boat in tow. The wind becoming contrary the vessel tacked, and violent and squally weather ensued.

On the 13th they saw the hill above Wicananih, which resembles a sugar-loaf: it bore N. E. by E. about seven leagues distant. As they stood in for the shore they were visited by several canoes, some of which contained about twenty men, who were comely and brawny, and dressed in beautiful sea-otter skins. Two of them came along-side the vessel, and the people in them readily came on board. There were two chiefs, Hanwah and Ditooche, who were remarkably handsome; they earnestly invited

the English to Wicananish: upon receiving some presents these chiefs took their leave.

In a little time the weather broke up, and they now stood along the shore. Presently after they were visited by another number of canoes, in the foremost of which was Wicananish, who readily came on board, and in a most excellent manner piloted the vessel into his harbour. They anchored between the main and the islands, where they were well sheltered. They now purchased of the natives wild-onions, berries, fish, &c.

On the 14th, as the weather was very fine, the captain and a party explored the island. They were invited by the chief to an entertainment, where they were received by a great concourse of women and children.

Wicananish, in a very hospitable manner, met them half way from the entrance, and conducted them to a seat near his own, where they indulged their curiosity.

The chief's house was enclosed with a vast area. It contained a large square, boarded up close on all sides to the height of twenty feet, with planks of an uncommon breadth and length. Three enormous trees, rudely carved and painted, formed the rafters, which were supported at the ends and in the middle by gigantic images, carved out of huge blocks of timber. The same kind of broad planks covered the whole to keep out the rain; but they were so placed as to be removed at pleasure, either to receive the air and light, or let out the smoke. In the middle of this spacious room were several fires, and beside them large wooden vessels filled with fish soup. Large slices of whale's flesh lay in a state of preparation to be put in similar machines filled with water, into which the women, with a kind of tongs, conveyed hot stones from very fierce fires, in order to make it boil: heaps of fish were stewed about, and in this central part of the place, which might very properly be called the kitchen, stood large seal-skins filled with oil, from whence the guests were served with that delicious beverage. The trees that supported the roof were of a size which would render the mast of a first-rate man of war diminutive, on a comparison with them; it was wonderful how such strength as must be necessary to raise those enormous beams, could be found by a people wholly unacquainted with mechanic powers. The door by which this extraordinary fabric was entered, was the mouth of one of these huge images, which, large as it may be supposed, was not disproportioned to the other features of this monstrous visage. They ascended by a few steps on the outside, and after passing this extraordinary kind of portal, descended down the chin into the house, where they found new matter for astonishment in the number of men, women, and children, who composed the family of the chief, which consisted of at least eight hundred persons. These were divided into groupes, according to their respective offices, which had their distinct places assigned them. The whole of the building was surrounded by a bench, about two feet from the ground, on which the various inhabitants sat, eat and slept. The chief appeared at the upper end of the room, surrounded by natives of rank, on a small raised platform, round which were placed several large bladders, over which hung bladders of oil, large slices of whale's flesh, and proportionable goblets of blubber. Lessons of human skulls, arranged with some attention to uniformity, were disposed in almost every part where they could be placed, and were considered as a very splendid decoration of the royal apartment.

As soon as the English appeared, the guests had made a considerable advance in their banquet. Before each person was placed a large slice of boiled whale, which, with small wooden dishes filled with oil and fish soup, and a large muscle-shell, by way of spoon, composed the economy of the table. The

servants were busily employed in preparing to replenish the several dishes as they were emptied, and the women in picking and opening the bark of a tree, which served the purpose of towels. If the luxury of this entertainment is to be determined by the voraciousness with which it was eaten, and the quantity that was swallowed, it must be considered as the most luxurious feast that was ever beheld. Even the children, and some of them were not more than three years old, possessed the same rapacious appetite for oil and blubber as their fathers. The women, however, are forbidden from eating at these ceremonials.

As soon as the feast was over, the English were desired to shew the presents which they intended for the chief: a great variety of articles, brought for that purpose, were accordingly displayed; among which were several blankets, and two copper tea-kettles. The eyes of the whole assembly were riveted on these unusual objects, and a guardian was immediately assigned to the two tea-kettles, who, on account of their extraordinary value and beauty, was ordered to place them with great care in the royal coffers, which consisted of large chests rudely carved, and fancifully adorned with human teeth. About 50 men now advanced in the middle of the area, each of them holding up before us a sea-otter skin, of near six feet in length, and the most jetty blackness. As they remained in this posture, the chief made a speech, and giving his hand in token of friendship, informed the English that these skins were the return he proposed to make for our presents, and accordingly ordered them to be immediately sent to the ship.

The chief appeared to be entirely satisfied with the presents he had received; and the English were equally pleased with his magnificence and politeness. When about to take leave, the ladies of the chief's family advanced towards the English from a distant part of the building, whither they had retired during the entertainment. Two of them had passed the middle age, but the other two were young, and the beauty of their countenances was so powerful as to predominate over the oil and red ochre which, in a great measure, covered them. One of the latter, in particular, displayed so sweet an air of diffidence and modesty, that no disgust of colour, or deformity of dress, could preclude her from awakening an interest even in minds cultured to refinement. As the English had not, very fortunately, disposed of all the treasure they had brought on shore, they presented the ladies with a few beads and ear-rings that remained.

From this to the 17th a brisk trade was carried on with the natives. The chief generally paid the Felice a visit every day, and both natives and English lived on very friendly terms. The natives brought them abundance of fish of various kinds, salmon and salmon-roust of the best flavour, cod, halibut, rock-fish, and herrings fresh from the sea; the women and children also sold them cray-fish, berries, wild onions, sallads, and other esculent plants.

On the 17th the English were invited by Wicananish on shore, to engage in a barter for furs. As soon as they had landed, they were conducted, as before, to his house, where they found the number of his family to be rather increased than diminished. No form or ceremony, however, was now employed; the whole family seemed to enjoy a sociable intercourse with each other; the women were permitted to eat with the men, and the whole company appeared with the familiarity of unbefeatured faces, so that the English had an opportunity of examining the comeliness of one sex, and the beauty of the other.

The sea-otter skins and other furs were now produced, to the number of thirty, and of the most beautiful kind; which, after a considerable deal of negotiation, were at length purchased; for the English found, to their cost, that these people, like those

of Nootka, possess gains of mercantile prevailed here as would interfere in conclusion of it tditional donation

When Capt. M was a sudden and village; a confidantly filled with in a moment, wer the captain was ap taken place betwe it appeared that a specting some of t this sudden comm ventured to visit th Wicananish, the e fall upon the intru seized and brought made the most car and even proceede was quickly destro fierce and cruel to acquainted with me

From this to the and constant rain. ing, they got under Wicananish (who ca a harbour which wa beng sent a-head t in a very commodio

The inhabitants h they were of a bold, thought it highly pr and vigilant. On the their arms, and severa on seeing this, depart rage, and refused no prohibited his people the next day, by tom him, and which were grateful manner.

On the 28th the in about removing.

From a canoe which Sound, with a present had the satisfaction to were there were in goo few vessel in great for They now weighed

Departure from Wicananish
Jealous Appearance—
Revisited—None of the
A disagreeable Situation
of them—Con' nue the
Name—Anchor in Per
ple the Straits of De
mental—Account of the
Party that were left th
work—They proceed to

THEY now left Wicananish to the southward along the coast, where they were exceeding chagrined at their course they perceived occasionally visited by canoes resembling those of Port Jackson. They arrived at a bay, called John De Fuca's, which, being to be all the way to a small island in this Strait, adjoining to the coast that resembled an oil barrel, by a number of natives.

of Nootka, possessed all the cunning necessary to the gains of mercantile life. The same rage for presents prevailed here as in the Sound, and even the ladies would interfere in making a bargain, and retard the conclusion of it till they had been gratified with additional donations.

When Capt. Meares was about to embark, there was a sudden and universal confusion throughout the village; a considerable number of canoes were instantly filled with armed men, and being launched in a moment, were paddled to the ship. At first the captain was apprehensive that some broil had taken place between the natives and the crew; but it appeared that a matter of political jealousy, respecting some of their neighbours, was the cause of this sudden commotion. Some strangers having ventured to visit the ship without the knowledge of Wicananish, the chief had ordered his people to fall upon the intruders, one of whom they had now seized and brought on shore; and though the English made the most earnest intercession in his behalf, and even proceeded to threats on the occasion, he was quickly destroyed. They are so remarkably fierce and cruel to each other, as to be totally unacquainted with mercy and forgiveness.

From this to the 20th they had very bad weather, and constant rain. As it cleared up in the evening, they got under sail, and was piloted again by Wicananish (who came on board on purpose) into a harbour which was named Port Cox, the boats being sent a-head to sound. They now anchored in a very commodious harbour.

The inhabitants here were very numerous, and as they were of a bold, intrepid nature, the English thought it highly prudent to be particularly careful and vigilant. On the 21st, therefore, they displayed their arms, and several blunderbusses. Wicananish, on seeing this, departed from the vessel in a great rage, and refused not only to trade himself, but prohibited his people: peace however was restored the next day, by some presents which were made him, and which were returned by the chief in a very grateful manner.

On the 28th the inhabitants of the village were about removing.

From a canoe which arrived from King George's Sound, with a present from Maquilla, the captain had the satisfaction to hear, that his people who were there were in good health and spirits, and the new vessel in great forwardness.

They now weighed anchor, and pursued their

course along shore; the weather was fine, and there was a light westerly breeze.

Captain Meares, in his description of Wicananish, &c. relates "that the harbour affords good shelter and anchorage. An archipelago of islands seems to extend from King George's Sound to this place, and still further to the southward. The channels between these islands are innumerable; but the necessary occupations of the ship would not allow us time to send out boats for the purpose of examining them: it is supposed, however, that there is no channel for ships but that which was entered, and which is an exceeding good one.

"These islands are covered thick with wood, with but very few clear spots, at least that we could discern. The soil is rich, producing wild berries, and other fruit in great abundance. The timber is of uncommon size, as well as beauty, and applicable to any purpose. There are several groves, almost every tree of which was fit for masts of any dimensions. Among a great variety of other trees that were observed, there were the red oak, the larch, the cedar, black and white spruce fir, &c.

"The men are very cunning, and practise much artifice. The women, in particular, would play a thousand tricks, and treat the discovery of their fineness with an arch kind of pleasantry that baffled reproach. They were very superior in personal charms to the ladies of Nootka, and possessed a degree of modesty which is not often to be found among the savage nations; but no entreaty or temptation could prevail on them to come on board the ship.

"The people of Wicananish are also very superior in point of industry and activity to those of King George's Sound. At day-break, without regard to the weather, the village was always empty; the men were employed in killing the whale, hunting the sea-otter, or catching fish, and the women were in the woods, gathering berries, or traversing the sands and rocks in search of cray and shell-fish.

"Besides two villages, there were several other places of residence, to which the chief occasionally resorted, according to the season of the year, the calls of necessity, or the invitations of pleasure. In one of these places there were about 26 houses, each of which were capable of containing 100 inhabitants."

CHAPTER VI.

Departure from Wicananish—Proceed to the Southward along the Shore—Visited by a Number of Natives—Their Savage Appearance—The Chief surly and disagreeable—Their rude and violent Behaviour to the Long-boat—Revisited—None of them invited on board—Visited by other Canoes—Cape Flattery seen—Bay of Queenhithe—A disagreeable Situation—Released by a favourable Wind—Remarkable Land visited by Strangers—Description of them—Continue their Course—Curious Observations—Possession taken of John De Fuca Straits in the King's Name—Anchor in Port Esfingham—Visited by the Natives—Occasional Remarks—Long-boat dispatched to explore the Straits of De Fuca—A violent Conflict with these People—Captain's Men return wounded—Injury not mortal—Account of the Attack—Departure from Port Esfingham—Anchor in Friendly Cove—Account of the Party that were left there—Progress of the new Vessel—A Mutiny happily terminated—The Mutineers made to work—They proceeded to Port Cox—Anchor there—Remarks—Their Return to Friendly Cove.

THEY now left Wicananish, and proceeded to the southward along the coast. The natives were exceedingly chagrined at their departure. In their course they perceived several villages, and were occasionally visited by canoes, the people somewhat resembling those of Port Cox in their manners and persons. They arrived at the entrance of a great strait, called John De Fuca, after its original discoverer, seeming to be about 14 leagues broad, and to consist of a small island which formed the entrance of this strait, adjoining which was a remarkable rock that resembled an obelisk. They were shortly visited by a number of natives, of a very savage ap-

pearance. Their chief Tatootche, who was among the number of visitors, was exceedingly surly and disagreeable: his face was entirely black, and covered with a kind of sand that glittered. He would hardly permit his people to trade with the English, and when he received a present made no return.

The long-boat was dispatched well armed and manned to look for an anchoring-place, but returned in the evening after a fruitless search. The island was a solid rock, and bore a deceitful appearance. The boat, during her excursion, was frequently incommoded by the natives, who committed many rude and violent depredations. The captain's men

were prevented by the prudence of the officer from retreating.

They continued their course to the southward, standing along the shore with fine weather. They then entered John De Fuca straits.

On the 30th about 400 natives, with their chief, came from the island of Tootoche. They went several times round the vessel, admiring her; but as the English did not like Tootoche's conduct, there were none of them invited on board. These people, after singing a very melodious song, returned to their island, and the Felice still continued her course to the southward, with a gentle breeze. As they steered onwards, they were continually surrounded by canoes, from villages on the high banks of the sea. These people earnestly invited the vessel to their respective shores: they could not, however, be prevailed upon to come on board the vessel.

These villages were numerous and extensive, yet there was no bay that promised the least security: the land appeared exceedingly wild.

Cape Flattery was seen at a distance in the evening: this place seemed likewise destitute of any secure bay.

On the 1st of July, in the morning, they saw the bay of Queenhithe, where the crew of the boat belonging to the Imperial Eagle were destroyed. It was now so very gloomy, that they could not see the village; neither did they perceive any canoes, or inhabitants. Destruction Island, which is low, flat, and without a single tree, was seen about a mile distant from the island. They steered to the S. W. and were embayed with thick weather and rain; they could neither anchor, on account of a heavy swell which rolled into the bay, nor expect to weather the westerly land on account of the great westerly swell: as the better tack, they therefore stood till noon to the S. S. E. afterwards to the W. N. W. then kept under a press of sail, with hopes of weathering Destruction Island. The weather now clearing up, they saw the island a point under their lee-bow, about a mile and a half distant, while a heavy sea was drifting them fast in with the shore: they immediately cast anchor, in a very wild situation, on a muddy bottom, but where it was impossible that the anchor could hold long, on account of the continual rolling of the sea.

This situation was rendered still more disagreeable, by the constant reflections on the cannibals of Queenhithe, to whose savage cruelty they were nearly exposed: however the wind suddenly veering to the S. S. E. they were enabled to tack, and steer off the shore with a howling sheet. In the evening, thinking they had sufficient oiling, they wore and stood in again for land.

On the 2d they saw land, bearing E. about seven leagues distant: it was called Saddle Hill, on account of its strong resemblance to a saddle. They were prevented from making this land, owing to the bad weather, which endangered the long boat that they had stowed astern. The wind shifted to the S. W. the next day, and then they stood in for land.

On the 4th the land was seen, bearing from N. to N. E. It was remarkably high in the northern quarter; therefore this mountain was called Olympus. It was covered with snow.

On the 5th they still kept standing in for land. At noon they were within two miles of the shore, but the place seemed dreary, and there was no sign of inhabitants: the land was low and flat. They were in a short time, however, convinced that the place was inhabited, by the appearance of a canoe with a man and boy; they came along-side the vessel, which now hove-to, but could not be persuaded to come on board. They made them some presents, and in return received two sea-otter skins.

These people resembled those of Nootka in their dress and manners, but were without ornaments: their language sounded quite different; they had, however, an idea of trade.

As there was now a likelihood of trade, they became anxious to find an harbour: accordingly they coasted it along the shore, and were in expectation of meeting a good port at Cape St. Roe, which lay on a high bluff promontory, which they doubled on the 6th, though they did not see the least appearance of an inhabitant. There was now a prospect of a promising bay, the boundaries of which were formed of high land at a great distance. As they steered in breakers were seen right a-head, which extended across the bay as seen from the mast head; they therefore hauled out, and directed their course to the opposite shore, in order to see if there was any channel. This promontory was called Cape Disappointment, and the harbour Deception Bay. It was now proved that no such river as St. Roe exists.

Not being able to find any place of shelter for the vessel, they bore up for a distant head-land, keeping their course within two miles of shore. As they sailed along, they perceived many spacious lawns, and the land had a very delightful appearance: notwithstanding, there was not the least appearance of any inhabitants. A large opening now appeared, but being closed by a low sandy beach nearly level with the sea, they were disappointed again in finding an harbour. This they called Quicksand Bay, and the adjoining head-land Cape Grenville. The distant southerly head-land was called Cape Look-out. This cape, which is very high, terminates abruptly in the sea. There are three large remarkable rocks about two miles distance therefrom: they were about a quarter of a mile distant from each other, and were called the Three Brothers. They now proceeded to the northward, as their progress to the southward was so unfortunate. They did not make land till the 10th of July: then they perceived the high land which formed the eastern shore, in the straits of De Fuca.

On the 11th they dispatched the long-boat to seek an anchoring-place: she returned with a favourable report, and piloted them into a fine spacious harbour, formed by a number of islands, which were rather high, and well wooded: they anchored in eight fathoms, over a muddy bottom, well secured from the wind and sea. They called this place Port Ellingham, in honour of Lord Ellingham.

They were now visited by several canoes, which contained a large number of natives. Of these they purchased an abundance of fish, and plenty of wild berries and onions. They also took possession of the straits of John de Fuca, in the name of the King of Great-Britain, agreeable to the general form.

On the 13th they were visited again by the natives, who brought them furs of different kinds; also fish, &c. The long-boat was dispatched to explore the straits of De Fuca.

On the 20th the long-boat returned; but her surprisèd was the captain, to find that his men were severely wounded, in a violent conflict with the natives of the straits: this occasioned their sudden return. The attack was begun by the savages: they boarded the boat, with the design of taking her, in two canoes, containing between forty and fifty men, who were most probably some of their choicest warriors. Several other canoes also remained at a small distance, to assist in the attempt; and the shore was every where lined with people, who discharged at their vessel continual showers of stones and arrows.

A chief in one of the canoes, who encouraged the advance of the others, was most fortunately shot in the head with a single ball, while in the very act of throwing a spear of a most enormous length at the cockswain. This circumstance caused the canoes to draw back, and deprived the natives who were already engaged of that support which must have ensured them the victory. Indeed, it is wonderful how the boat's company, which consisted only of thirteen men, and who were attacked with the most courageous fury by superior numbers, escaped by numerous weapons which were instantly discharged from the shore.

In this engaging spirit and resolute fire-arms among was clove, and for their lives. C by an individual engagement took was armed with with a cutlass. time, equal couraging ear had not the force of his er sunk beneath it. and gave him a e the cutlass, to de notwithstanding l wounds, contrived for his life to the who disdain to k man who was wound the action, with the attempting to rid h became, by his cou very principal instr

The whole attention referred to their wound of them were much finding that no mor any. The officer w in the head, which spot, if a thick hat b weapon. One of th breall, and another in the arrow had enterer incision absolutely ne it. A fourth receive but the weapon whic short of the vital part bruised in a terrible n of the enemy; even t thousand places by ar in the awning that co which, by receiving fill of large stones t measure saved the ca destruction.

While returning de by a small canoe, wh belonged to the tribe purchased some fish: offered for sale two bu recently just cut off, a be the heads of two p whom they murdered, they held these nativ during their stay with

They now prepare King George's Sound, cover the extent of t ectual.

On the 21st, it and were entirely cle. Port Ellingham is a bour. There is exch building of 90 ft. The about the found, thau extensive as that of No

On the 22d they stood day to the W. N. W.

On the 24th the acas could not possibly clo

On the 25th, the weat of King George's Sou about six leagues distan

On the 26th they an audience of one mon found their party on sh equally rejoiced at the Police. The new vessel the chief part of her

In this engagement the natives behaved with a spirit and resolution that relisted the usual terror of fire-arms among a savage people; for the contest was close, and for some time the English fought for their lives. One of them had been singled out by an individual savage for his victim, and a fierce engagement took place between them. The native was armed with a stone bludgeon, and the sailor with a cutlass. They both manifested, for some time, equal courage and dexterity; but if an intervening oar had not broke a blow, armed with all the force of his enemy, the Englishman must have sunk beneath it. It however failed of its object, and gave him an opportunity, by a severe stroke of the cutlass, to deprive the native of an arm, who, notwithstanding such a loss, and several other wounds, contrived to swim from the boat, indebted for his life to the noble mercy of his conqueror, who disdained to kill him in the water. The seaman who was wounded in the leg, continued, during the action, with the arrow in his flesh; and without attempting to rid himself of the torturing weapon, became, by his courageous and active exertions, a very principal instrument in preserving the boat.

The whole attention of the vessel was now transferred to their wounded people; but though several of them were much hurt, they were consoled with finding that no mortal injury had been received by any. The officer was wounded by a barbed arrow in the head, which would have killed him on the spot, if a thick hat had not deadened the force of the weapon. One of the seamen was pierced in the breast, and another in the calf of the leg, into which the arrow had entered so far as to render a very large incision absolutely necessary, in order to discharge it. A fourth received a wound very near the heart, but the weapon which gave it very fortunately fell short of the vital parts. The rest of the people were bruised in a terrible manner, by the stones and clubs of the enemy; even the boat itself was pierced in a thousand places by arrows, many of which remained in the awning that covered the back part of it, and which, by receiving the arrows, and breaking the fall of large stones thrown from slings, in a great measure saved the captain's party from inevitable destruction.

While returning down the straits, they were met by a small canoe, wherein there were two men who belonged to the tribe of Wicanamith; of these they purchased some fish; but these vile savages having offered for sale two human heads, which were apparently just cut off, and which they understood to be the heads of two people belonging to Tatootche whom they murdered, so disgusted the English that they held these natives in the utmost detestation during their stay with them.

They now prepared for joining their party in King George's Sound, as their endeavours to discover the extent of the straits were at present ineffectual.

On the 21st, in the morning, they put to sea, and were entirely clear of the Sound by noon.

Port Bellingham is an exceeding commodious harbour. There is excellent timber on the coast for building vessels. There are several places of shelter about the sound, though the sound is not near so extensive as that of Nootka.

On the 22d they stood to the S. W. and the next day to the W. N. W. to make land.

On the 24th the weather became so bad, that they could not possibly close with the shore.

On the 25th, the weather being clear, the entrance of King George's Sound was seen bearing E. N. E. about six leagues distant.

On the 26th they anchored in Friendly Cove, after an absence of one month and 25 days, where they found their party on shore safe and well, who were equally rejoiced at the safety and welfare of the Felice. The new vessel was in great forwardness; the chief part of her iron-work being done: she

was completely in frame, her sides planked, decks laid, &c.

The building of this new vessel having created much curiosity among the natives, several parties of strangers came to see it. This gave the English many opportunities of collecting a quantity of furs.

Captain Menres was very happy to find that Maquilla had strictly fulfilled all his promises, and that Callcum during his absence had relisted great attention and friendship towards his people, by whose immediate orders they were regularly supplied with fish, and other provisions. They were not, however, a little alarmed, during the Felice's absence, by a report which some of the people of Wicanamith had brought to them, insinuating that a great part of the Felice's crew was destroyed by the natives of Tatootche. As this story was related previous to the action of the long-boat with the people of the straits, it proved to be a mere fabrication, but for what purpose is unknown.

On the 27th the crew were permitted to recreate themselves on shore, the weather being remarkably fine. The next day they returned to their labour, with their usual spirits.

It was now agreed upon to proceed again to sea, in order to visit Port Cox, and renew their commercial business there; this intention was, however, frustrated, by the boatswain and some of the boatmen belonging to the vessel, who had re-commenced a dangerous mutiny. It seems that ever since the first attempt the arms had been removed from the quarter-deck to the cabin: it was the mutineers' intention to seize the arms, and put the first officer to death, the rest of the people at this time being employed on shore; but the officer having fortunately gained the cabin before them, whereto the arms had been removed, he defended the door with a loaded blunderbuss, until some of the officers, who were sitting on the quarter-deck of the new vessel, being alarmed by his cries for assistance, immediately armed themselves, and hastened on board the vessel. Thus prepared, they turned the crew on deck, where they soon discovered the ringleaders in the business. Menaces being used of punishing those who persisted to be disobedient, the men who were inclined to serve the captain were therefore warned to separate from the disobedient; accordingly, on their presenting their arms, the crew joined the captain, leaving the ringleaders, who consisted of the boatswain and eight others, that obstinately refused to return to their duty. The captain (as now the vessel was perfectly secure) being unwilling to shed any blood, gave them their choice either to go into irons or be turned on shore with the savages; the latter being preferred, they were accordingly landed, with every thing that belonged to them, by which means good order was again restored.

The party on shore were prohibited from having any communication with these rebellious men, nor were they, on any pretence, to admit them, or any of them, into the house. A strict watch was also kept on board.

On the 29th one of the sailors made a voluntary confession of this business. They had bound themselves by a paper, which almost all the crew had signed, to get possession of the ship as soon as possible, quit the coast of America, and steer their course to the Sandwich Islands, thence to some port where they might dispose of the cargo. The writing being destroyed, their intentions with respect to the officers were not known; no doubt, they were either to be murdered, or to be left at Nootka. The sailors who had joined in the mutiny declared, that they were obliged to consent, through the menaces of the ringleaders.

From the loss of those seamen who had rebelled, they were prevented from making another voyage to Port Cox, as intended; so that now their chief object was to finish the new vessel as soon as possible.

The mutineers had built themselves a large hut, where they retired, and a canoe (which the captain had purchased) was sent them, in order to enable them to catch fish. Maquilla and Callicum came on board the day after the mutiny, and being struck with the magnitude of their offence, was equally surpris'd at the lenity which was shewn them. Maquilla requested permission to put the mutineers to death; which request was treated with the strongest marks of displeasure. Callicum propos'd taking them into his house: this the captain readily consented to, on an assurance that no personal injury should be offer'd them. The next day they were accordingly employ'd by Callicum in fetching water and other menial services, during which they were attended by low-conditioned natives, to watch and keep them to this duty. As they had part'd with some of their clothes before this to procure fish, the remainder of them were taken away by the chiefs, and they were now oblig'd to labour for their own maintenance, as well as for that of their new masters.

On the 6th of August the Princess Royal was seen. She disappeared afterwards. The captain now resolv'd to proceed to Port Cox, as he was apprehensive the Princess Royal might get the furs which were collect'd for him: accordingly, he renew'd his promises with Maquilla and Callicum, and as they were now going to war against an enemy (more powerful and numerous than themselves) at some distance to the northward, the captain promis'd to furnish them with fire-arms and ammunition, which would insure their victory, provided they still continu'd kind to his men. This proposal not only confirm'd their friendship, but animat'd them with new vigour. The captain was also promis'd, that instead of putting to death their captives, as was the general practice, they would make them slaves, like the mutineers.

They now prepar'd for war, while the power that Maquilla carried with him consist'd of twenty war-canoes, containing each thirty stout men, who were frightfully painted.

Captain Meares, previous to his departure for Port Cox, gave some necessary instructions to those men whom he left behind: he likewise strictly prohibited their having any connection with the mutineers.

After they had clear'd the mouth of the Sound, they saw the Princess Royal within two miles of them: the boat was hoist'd out, and Capt. Meares paid her a visit: he was received by Capt. Duncan in a very friendly manner: after some private conversation, they parted. The Princess Royal pursu'd her course to the S. S. E. and the Felice continu'd along-shore. In the evening Capt. Meares was oblig'd to tack and stand to sea, by reason of a contrary wind. On the 10th they got down a-breast of Port Cox, and found the Princess Royal had arriv'd a few hours before in a small bar-harbour. The Felice enter'd Port Cox.

On the 11th the long-boat was dispatch'd to Wicananish, with presents. This chief had remov'd to his winter-quarters, which were about 35 miles distant from the vessel. The boat came back in the evening, with presents in return: the next day she was dispatch'd again, with several articles to trade, and did not return till the 14th. The following is extract'd from the officer's account of the success of his trade; with a description of the winter-residence of Wicananish.

On the morning of the 13th he arriv'd at Cliquoat, which consist'd, like the other towns, of such houses as are already describ'd, but more commodiously construct'd, possessing a greater share of their rude magnificence than any which were yet seen. It was very large and populous; and the dwelling of the chief much more capacious than that which he occupi'd in the village near the sea, when they first visit'd his territories. The inhabitants were,

at this time, busily employ'd in packing up fish in mats, securing the roes of them in bladders, cutting whales into slices, and melting down blubber into oil, which they pour'd into seal-skins. All this mighty preparation was the provident spirit of catering for the winter: and the incredible quantities of these various provisions which the English saw collect'd, promis'd, at least, that famine would not be an evil of the approaching season. On these shores the winter is the happy portion of the year, which is appropriated to luxury and ease; nor are they then ever arous'd into action, but to take some of those enormous whales, which, at that season, frequent their seas, in order to feast on the neighbouring chiefs who may come to visit them.

Wicananish received all the presents which the captain had sent, with expressions of extreme satisfaction; particularly a copper tea-kettle which was honour'd with his peculiar attention: it was borne away by him with an air of triumph, to be plac'd among his treasures; and with repeated declarations, that no consideration whatever should again induce him to yield up such a valuable deposit. Twelve brass-hilted swords were likewise among their presents, which were favour'd with the most grateful admiration; and a great variety of articles had been purposely manufactur'd to suit the fancy of the women, who vied with each other in their cordial attentions to the English. A more brisk trade was then carry'd on with the inhabitants than had been hitherto experienced; a considerable quantity of furs were obtain'd, and the boat return'd well freighted with the produce of the voyage, and her people perfectly satisfi'd with their reception from Wicananish.

On the 18th the long-boat was again dispatch'd to the town, to take their farewell message, and which was of more consequence, their farewell present to Wicananish. The captain on this occasion intend'd to prove the disinterestedness of his friendship, by selecting such a variety of articles as would suit even the most varying fancy of this fickle people. To these were also added several coats, profusely trimm'd with buttons, and the head of a large copper still. This sumptuous present was order'd to be made without receiving any thing in return.

On the 19th in the evening the boat return'd, having punctually execut'd the captain's orders; and having brought a message from the chief, that he propos'd to visit the ship the next day; and therefore begg'd the captain to defer his departure for the purpose of receiving him.

On the 20th Wicananish, attend'd by his brother, his two sons, three of his wives, and a great number of people from the town, who attend'd their chief, in order to gain another opportunity of trading with the English, accordingly paid the captain a visit: no small quantity of furs were, at this time, procur'd from them. The chief present'd them with several sea-otter skins of the most valuable kind; and, though there was every reason to believe that he intend'd to rival the English in generosity, by refusing to receive any return, he could not bring himself to send back a couple of muskets, and a quantity of ammunition, which were too tempting to be resist'd by the delicacy of his sentiments, and might prove too useful in defending himself against his powerful neighbour, Tatootche, not to be received with the most grateful satisfaction. He enquir'd, in the most affectionate manner, how many moons would pass away before their return; and solicit'd the captain, in the strongest terms, to prefer his part and harbour to every other.

One of his sons, a young man of about nineteen years of age, express'd a very earnest desire to depart with the captain; but this offer he thought it prudent to decline, from a recollection of the anxiety he had suffer'd on Tiaana's account. This youth was the most pleasing, in his figure and appearance, of any person that had been seen on the American coast.

coast. He not only sagacious, but every token of fine disposition.

Wicananish an every token of fine disposition that the captain was

On the 20th the 24th arriv'd safe

*Proceedings of the
Late fight of her
Returns with a
of Vengeance and
People employ'd—
Felice at Nootka
separate again.*

AS soon as the
pleated their
14th of July they
out of the Cove:
cloudy. On the 1
Kay's Island. The
close in with the Ca
20 fathoms over a c

On the 22d they
N. E. about 16 lea
themselves to the n
being changeable, th
parallel with the coa
times at a great dista

On the 31st they
where they saw fin
clear, the long-boa
plore the bay, and
They had from 10 to
bottom. The Iphige
long-boat (which wa
and ran down toward
a half they got sight
came along-side, whe
heavy sea. She was a
fit.

On the 2d of Augu
afternoon they perce
N. W. by W. about

The jolly-boat was
to look about the sho
She return'd about n
thirty natives in a l
Iphigenia anchor'd w
thoms, over a fine bot
bay, in honour of th
sea-otter skins, &c. we

On the 5th they w
party, who brought fo
notwithstanding were
of salmon. At nine o
and proceed'd along
very anxious to return
climate did not agree
as much clothing on
was scarcely able to be

On the 6th they w
thinking they saw som
jolly-boat was sent out
understand that they w

They were now visit
withstanding the sever
naked. The captain g
lets, and a jacket, with
that he offer'd to them
was an inhabitant. As
the captain piloted the v
easily talk. About 11 at
hiboms, over a rocky l

No. 12.

craft. He not only appeared to be very quick and sagacious, but even to possess an amiable and docile disposition.

Wicaneanish and his people took their leave with every token of sincere regret, and repeated entreaties that the captain would soon return.

On the 20th the Felice put to sea, and on the 24th arrived safe at King George's Sound, where

she anchored in her old situation. The captain not only found that his men were all well, but they had been remarkably diligent, the vessel being now in great forwardness. The mutineers were still servants to the natives.

We shall now return to the Iphigenia, whom we left at Snug Corner Bay, in order to bring her again in company with her consort.

CHAPTER VII.

Proceedings of the Iphigenia continued—She leaves Snug Corner Bay—Her slow Progress—Long-boat sent out—Loss of her—Run down towards her—Take her in—Mount St. Elias perceived—Jolly-boat sent out—Returns with a Canoe—A Visit from the Natives—Islands of Ice—Visits repeated—An extraordinary Instance of Vengeance and Intrepidity—Several Skins purchased—Anchorage in Sea-Otter Harbour—Boats sent out—People employed—Anchorage at Port Meares—Three Chiefs invited to Dinner—Pass Rose Point—Joins the Felice at Nootka Sound—Arrangements made—Repentance of the Mutineers—Taken again on board—Vessels separate again.

AS soon as the crew of the Iphigenia had completed their wooding, watering, &c. on the 14th of July they weighed anchor, and turned out of the Cove: the weather was now calm and cloudy. On the 18th they stood for the S. end of Kay's Island. The succeeding morning they were close in with the Cape, when they had from 10 to 20 fathoms over a clayey bottom.

On the 22d they stood in for land, bearing N. N. E. about 16 leagues distance, in order to shew themselves to the natives; and thus, the weather being changeable, the Iphigenia proceeded to run parallel with the coast, sometimes near and at other times at a great distance from land.

On the 31st they made sail towards low land, where they saw smoke. As the weather was now clear, the long-boat was sent out, in order to explore the bay, and make every necessary enquiry. They had from 10 to 15 fathom water, over a rocky bottom. The Iphigenia having lost sight of the long-boat (which was driven out to sea) now wore and ran down towards her. In about an hour and a half they got sight of her, and in an hour after came along-side, when she was struggling with a heavy sea. She was now hoisted in, and they made sail.

On the 2d of August land was seen; and in the afternoon they perceived Mount St. Elias bearing N. W. by W. about 20 leagues distant.

The jolly-boat was sent out the next morning, to look about the shore and seek for inhabitants. She returned about noon, accompanied with near thirty natives in a large canoe. Upon this the Iphigenia anchored with her best bower, in 27 fathoms, over a fine bottom. This was called Tiaana's bay, in honour of that chief. Several dresses of sea-otter skins, &c. were purchased of the natives.

On the 5th they were re-visited by the same party, who brought some inferior dresses, but which notwithstanding were purchased, with a quantity of salmon. At nine o'clock they weighed anchor, and proceeded along the shore. Tiaana was now very anxious to return to Owhyhee, as the present climate did not agree with him. Though he had 25 much clothing on him as he could carry, yet he was scarcely able to bear the cold.

On the 6th they were high up the Sound, and thinking they saw some islands at a distance, the jolly-boat was sent out, and on her return it was understood that they were islands of ice.

They were now visited by one native, who notwithstanding the severity of the weather was quite naked. The captain gave him a hat, a pair of trousers, and a jacket; with which he was so delighted, that he offered to shew them the village whereof he was an inhabitant: As it was very dark and hazy, the captain piloted the vessel himself, which was no easy task. About 11 at night they came-to, in 17 fathoms, over a rocky bottom.

No. 12.

The next morning they were visited by five canoes, of whom some dresses and 40 sea-otter skins were purchased. These people were such arch dealers, that the captain was obliged to give them their own price.—The following extraordinary account of female vengeance and intrepidity, is related by Captain Douglas.

"One of the chiefs having unintentionally interrupted a canoe, in which was a woman, from coming close to the ship, she seized a paddle, and struck him so violently with it on the head, that he was almost disabled from employing a similar instrument to ward off the blows which followed. In this manner they continued their contest, the one in striking, and he in defending himself, for near half an hour; when Captain Douglas, in order to put an end to this singular fray, fired a musquet over their heads, with concomitant signs of his displeasure, but without effect: for the woman now stepped into the canoe of the man, who appeared to be in a state of complete humiliation, and pulling out a knife from some part of her dress, she spoke for some time, and then cut him across the thigh. Though the blood gushed in streams from the wound, she was about to repeat her violence, when Capt. Douglas interfered in such a manner as to oblige this vengeful dame to return to her own boat, and give the bleeding object of her vengeance an opportunity to paddle away to the shore. During the whole of this engagement, if it may deserve that name, not one of the men dared to interfere; nay it appeared that they were in such an entire state of submission to female controul, that they could not dispose of a skin till the women had granted them the necessary permission."

On the 8th they were visited by eight canoes, of whom a large number of sea-otter skins were purchased. They now weighed anchor and made sail, proceeding S. E. along the shore. They saw a large bay in the afternoon; but there being no sign of inhabitants, they tacked and stood out. They also saw another the next day, which likewise proved deserted: accordingly they made sail, and on the 11th ran across the mouth of a large bay, which forms two capes: the southern one is high, and called Cape Adamson; the other to the N. is low towards the sea, but gradually increases to a great height: this is called Cape Barnett. Cape Adamson lies in latitude 55 deg. 28 min. N. in long. 226 deg. 21 min. E. Cape Barnett in lat. 55 deg. 39 min. N. in long. 226 deg. 4 min. E. They proceeded a great way up the bay, and entering the mouth of a strait passage, steered to the N. In the evening they anchored with the best bower, in 17 fathoms, over a sandy bottom, about half a mile distant from shore. The vessel was now entirely land-locked, and the bay was called Sea-Otter Harbour, from

M m

the great quantity of those animals which were seen in the water.

On the 12th the jolly and long-boats were sent out; the first to sound, and the other to look for a watering-place. The long-boat returned without success; however the captain discovered a plentiful run of good water on the opposite shore. There were no natives to be seen, though several places where there had been fires. The people were now employed in overhauling the rigging, cutting wood, getting water, &c.

The captain went out in the jolly-boat to explore the head of the straits, and returned in the evening, without making any material discovery. They steered through the mouth of the straits.

On the 13th they saw a small island about two miles in circumference, S. S. E. eight miles distant. It was called Douglas Island. There were a few others, low and rocky, lying off its N. and S. ends. They passed Douglas Island with clear weather, but a thick fog came on soon after, just as they were steering in for a bay, which bore N. E. by N. From this bay they were presently visited by two canoes, of whom they purchased 26 sea-otter skins, made in dresses, and a few birds.

On the 14th the weather became somewhat clear, and they made for shore. In the afternoon they got within a small island, that was about a quarter of a mile distant from the main land; where they were becalmed.

They were now visited by two large canoes, containing each about 40 people; with these there was a chief, and as they approached the vessel they sung a very pleasing chorus. The ship was driving down at this time very fast towards the island, which was under her lee, owing to an adverse tide: the chief was accordingly requested to take the rope, and tow the vessel higher up the bay; which he immediately performed, while his party still continued their chorus. The Iphigenia anchored in 23 fathoms, over a bottom of shells and sand. This bay was called Port Meares. It has two large arms or branches of the sea: the one turns N. N. E. and the other about N. N. W.

From this to the 17th a brisk trade was carried on: a quantity of sea-otter skins was purchased. These natives were exceedingly kind, and remarkably honest.

On the 18th they were visited by the natives of the northern branch of the sea, who approached the vessel with a chorus like their neighbours. Of these about 60 excellent skins, made into dresses, were purchased.

On the 20th the captain invited three of the chiefs to dinner: they seemed highly pleased with their entertainment, and communicated as much information as they were capable of. This afternoon they weighed and made sail, proceeding to the S. E. At night the weather became thick, so they hove-to, with the vessel's head to the northward and westward.

The next morning, the weather clearing up, they wore and made sail to the S. E. They now ran along the shore, with a fresh breeze from the westward, making for a bay which the natives had directed them to: they had from nine to 11 fathoms. The fog came on again very thick, and as they saw land from the mast-head, trending due N. they were resolved to know if this land joined the main, or if there were any passage; accordingly they set a press of sail, and steered for the bluff high land, that bore N. At this time there were no canoes to be seen. Towards evening it cleared up, so that they had a perfect view of both sides. They passed a sandy point, which was called Point Rose, and discovered that the land did not join the main, but formed a large island, which took a southerly direction.

On the 23d, seeing no canoes, they stood to the S. E. having land on both sides. The weather was now clear.

On the 25th they lost sight of land, and were now determined to steer at once for Nootka Sound, the entrance of which they were close in with the preceding evening; but it falling calm, and the tide getting out, they anchored with their best bower in 23 fathoms.

On the 27th they stood in for the sound, and about 11 o'clock anchored in Friendly Cove, where they joined the Felice.

This meeting was productive of so much hilarity, that by the command of the captains, it was made a holiday. At this time the crew of the Iphigenia were quite recovered from that disorder under which they laboured when they parted with the Felice: Tiaana was likewise in good health and spirits. On this day it happened that Maquilla and Callicum returned victors from their war-expedition, which did not add a little to the general joy. As there were several baskets in their canoes which they would not open, it was apprehended (as it afterwards proved) to contain the heads of those enemies who were slain: the number of which were about thirty: Maquilla also lost some of his men. The musquets which the English had lent them, were now returned: the ammunition had been entirely expended, for they had fired several times, by which means they gained the victory.

The artificers of the Iphigenia were likewise employed, as well as those of the Felice, in completing the new vessel. Every hand was now busy in forwarding this schooner, and also in preparing the other two vessels for sea, as it was intended as soon as the new vessel was launched, that the Felice should proceed to China, and the Iphigenia with the schooner perform the rest of their commercial concerns.

On the 7th of September Maquilla and Callicum visited Captains Meares and Douglas, and informed them, that they with all their people should remove to their winter residence, which was about thirty miles distant from the vessels.

The dismal situation of the mutineers began now to be considered: these unhappy wretches earnestly implored forgiveness, and made many promises of future fidelity. Notwithstanding the great danger there was in taking back those men, yet the captains thought it too cruel to leave them behind. On conditions therefore of forfeiting the wages which were due for nine months; and that their future pay should be proportioned to their good behaviour, they were admitted to their former situation: they were however divided among the two crews, in order to lessen the power of communication. The boatwain who had likewise added theft to his offence, was put under confinement in the house on shore, this being deemed absolutely necessary.

The chiefs, Maquilla and Callicum, now came to take their final leave. They were presented with a musquet, some ammunition, a few blankets, and other tokens of reward.

On the 17th a sail was seen in the offing: as it was supposed to be the Princess Royal, the long-boat was dispatched to her assistance. However, instead of the Princess, it proved to be a sloop named the Washington, from Boston in New England, of about 100 tons burthen, which they conveyed into the sound.

A little time after this the boatwain broke loose from his confinement, having stolen several articles, with which he escaped into the woods. It was afterwards understood, that the master of the Washington supported him in his concealment, and when an opportunity arrived, received him on board his vessel, in which he did duty before the mast.

On the 20th the vessel was complete, and ready to be launched: Maquilla, Callicum, and a numerous body of his people came from their winter residence to see it. This vessel was named the North West America, it being the first that was ever built

and

and
bein
unc
way
her
forg
brin
a ve
laun
and
won
nilh
oper
A
for t
frou
On
foll
Capt
"
" bo
" to
" ag
" par
" cop
" as
" au
" S
" mee
" will
" poll
Depart
overl
of P
Vist
-Co
for C
at Ch
Sear
Quee
from
in O
T
Se
with a
hour
o'clock
with a
gerous
in the
was got
were co
were at
now bal
the carg
progress
heavy w
was a vic
ceeded to
The w
manner
brought
sail, on t
on the l
lunched
When th
sime open
this bein
dang
lodged on
set had op
Thus rem
ceeding w
Nothing

and launched in this part of the globe. On the gun being fired, the vessel started from the ways with uncommon velocity, and was nearly making her way out of the harbour, had not the boats towed her to her intended situation. It seems they had forgotten to place an anchor and cable on board to bring her up, as is the general custom in launching a vessel. Tiaana was on board the vessel when launched, and expressed the greatest astonishment and delight. All the natives were struck with wonder; nor were the Chinese carpenters less astonished, being totally unacquainted with this last operation.

A commander, officers and crew were appointed for the North West America, and she received stores from both the Felice and Iphigenia.

On the 24th the Felice was ready for sea, and the following orders were given to Captain Douglas by Captain Meares.

"On your return to Macao seal up your log-book, charts, plans, &c. &c. and forward them to Daniel Beale, Esq; Canton, who is the ostensible agent for the concern; and you have the most particular injunctions not to communicate or give copies of any charts or plans that you may make, as your employers assert a right to all of them, and as such will claim them.

"Should you, in the course of your voyage, meet with the vessels of any other nation, you will have as little communication with them as possible; should they be of superior force, and

"desire to see your papers, you will shew them. You will be on your guard against surpris. Should they be either Russian, English, Spanish, or any other civilized nation, and be authorized to examine your papers, you will permit them, and treat them with civility and friendship; but at the same time you must be on your guard. Should they attempt to seize you, or even carry you out of your way, you will prevent it by every means in your power, and repel force by force: you will on your arrival protect publicly, before a proper officer, against such illegal procedure, and ascertain, as near as you can, the value of your cargo and vessel, and send such protest, with a full account of the transaction, to us at China.

"Should you, in such conflict, have the superiority, you will then take possession of the vessel that attacked you, as also her cargo, and bring both, with the officers and crew, to China, that they may be condemned, and their crews punished as pirates."

Having now sent all the stores they could spare on board the Iphigenia, and received in return her cargo of furs, &c. they took their farewell the officers, &c. of the Iphigenia, and North West America, having on this occasion come on board the Felice; and on the 24th, after three cheers from each vessel, the Felice put to sea, and another separation took place.

CHAPTER VIII.

Departure of the Felice from the Sound—A Storm—An Alarm—Consequent Uneasiness—Spars and Booms launched overboard—Vessel leaved—Proceed with greater Facility—Arrive at Toe-yah-yah Bay—Visited by Canoes—Quantity of Provisions purchased—Information—Proceed to Attoui and Oneebow—Anchor in Wymoa Bay—Occasional Visits—Feelings of the Natives on Tiaana's Account—Political State of the Islands—Death of Tiaana meditated—Communication with the English prohibited—Proceed to Oneebow—Surrounded by old Friends—A Letter left for Captain Douglas—Provisions laid in—Departure—The Island of Botol Tobago Xima—A Storm—Arrive at China—Translations of the Iphigenia and the Schooner, during the absence of the Felice—They quit Nootka Sound—A Meeting between Tiaana and his Brother—Anchor in Karakakooa Bay—Visit from the King and Queen—The North West America parts from her Cable—Divers procured to recover it—The Iphigenia parts from hers—Consequent Conjectures—Tiaana takes leave of the Captain, and is landed with all his Goods, &c. in Owhyhee.

THE night after the Felice left King George's Sound there was a great storm, accompanied with a very heavy mountainous sea: the vessel laboured exceedingly. On the 25th, about four o'clock in the morning, they were greatly alarmed with a supposition that the ship had sprung a dangerous leak, for at first there was four feet water in the hold, which gained in in four hours that it was got above the ground tier of calks. The men were constantly employed at the pumps, which were at last choaked with the small ballast. They now baled the water from all the hatchways, while the carpenters were repairing the pumps. The progress of the vessel was very slow, she was so heavy with the water in her hull: at this time there was a violent gale from the N. W. and they proceeded to the southward.

The water in the vessel now increased in such a manner, that they were very much alarmed. They brought the ship to under the close-reefed main-top-sail, on the larboard tacks. All the spars and booms on the lee side of the deck were immediately launched overboard, by orders of the captain. When the vessel was put on the other tack, the same operation was performed on the other side: this being done, they discovered that their past danger proceeded from the great weight of timber lodged on the deck, which with the heavy rolling sea had opened her seams and admitted the water. This remedied, however, she was capable of proceeding with greater ease and rapidity.

Nothing material occurred after this. On the

15th of October they made the island of Owhyhee. On the 17th they discovered land bearing from E. S. E. to W. N. W. about six leagues distant: they now hove-to for the night, and the next day very early in the morning bore up, and proceeded under a gentle sail to close in with the land: they hove-to in the entrance of Toe-yah-yah Bay, which is situated on the western side of the island. They were soon visited by a number of canoes, of whom were purchased a quantity of hogs, pigs, taro-root, plantains, sugar-cane, fowls, &c. &c. This was a very seasonable relief, as the Felice was in great want of provisions, owing both to their tedious passage, and the large portion of stores which were given to the Iphigenia. The boats were all filled with hogs, upwards of 400 of which were now purchased with vegetables, &c. They were visited by only one chief, who came in a double canoe paddled along by twelve men: he was accompanied by his wife, and two daughters. This chief sent on board the Felice some large hogs and a quantity of cocoa-nuts, and presently after came on board, when the captain made him a suitable return.

From this chief it was understood that old Te-recoho was poisoned, and that he was succeeded by Tiaana's uncle. This revolution was the occasion of a very dreadful war between the people of Owhyhee, and those of the island of Mowee, under the government of Titeere. The chief was now informed, that Tiaana was on his way home in another vessel, and the captain willing to insure him a good reception, delivered, in the presence of a nu-

merous

and launched in this part of the globe. On the gun being fired, the vessel started from the ways with uncommon velocity, and was nearly making her way out of the harbour, had not the boats towed her to her intended situation. It seems they had forgotten to place an anchor and cable on board to bring her up, as is the general custom in launching a vessel. Tiaana was on board the vessel when launched, and expressed the greatest astonishment and delight. All the natives were struck with wonder; nor were the Chinese carpenters less astonished, being totally unacquainted with this last operation.

A commander, officers and crew were appointed for the North West America, and she received stores from both the Felice and Iphigenia.

On the 24th the Felice was ready for sea, and the following orders were given to Captain Douglas by Captain Meares.

"On your return to Macao seal up your log-book, charts, plans, &c. &c. and forward them to Daniel Beale, Esq; Canton, who is the ostensible agent for the concern; and you have the most particular injunctions not to communicate or give copies of any charts or plans that you may make, as your employers assert a right to all of them, and as such will claim them.

"Should you, in the course of your voyage, meet with the vessels of any other nation, you will have as little communication with them as possible; should they be of superior force, and

"desire to see your papers, you will shew them. You will be on your guard against surprise. Should they be either Russian, English, Spanish, or any other civilized nation, and be authorized to examine your papers, you will permit them; and treat them with civility and friendship; but at the same time you must be on your guard. Should they attempt to seize you, or even carry you out of your way, you will prevent it by every means in your power, and repel force by force: you will on your arrival protest publicly, before a proper officer, against such illegal procedure, and ascertain, as near as you can, the value of your cargo and vessel, and send such protest, with a full account of the transaction, to us at China.

"Should you, in such conflict, have the superiority, you will then take possession of the vessel that attacked you, as also her cargo, and bring both, with the officers and crew, to China, that they may be condemned, and their crews punished as pirates."

Having now sent all the stores they could spare on board the Iphigenia, and received in return her cargo of furs, &c. they took their farewell: the officers, &c. of the Iphigenia, and North West America, having on this occasion come on board the Felice; and on the 24th, after three cheers from each vessel, the Felice put to sea, and another separation took place.

CHAPTER VIII.

Departure of the Felice from the Sound—A Storm—An Alarm—Consequent Uneasiness—Spars and Booms launched overboard—Vessel eased—Proceed with greater Facility—Arrive at Toe-yah-yah Bay—Visited by Canoes—Quantity of Provisions purchased—Information—Proceed to Attoui and Oneebow—Anchor in Wymoa Bay—Occasional Visits—Feelings of the Natives on Tiaana's Account—Political State of the Islands—Death of Tiaana meditated—Communication with the English prohibited—Proceed to Oneebow—Surrounded by old Friends—A Letter left for Captain Douglas—Provisions laid in—Departure—The Island of Botol Tobago Xima—A Storm—Arrive at China—Transactions of the Iphigenia and the Schooner, during the Absence of the Felice—They quit Nootka Sound—A Meeting between Tiaana and his Brother—Anchor in Karakakooa Bay—Visit from the King and Queen—The North West America parts from her Cable—Divers procured to recover it—The Iphigenia parts from hers—Consequent Conjectures—Tiaana takes leave of the Captain, and is landed with all his Goods, &c. in Oowhyhee.

THE night after the Felice left King George's Sound there was a great storm, accompanied with a very heavy mountainous sea: the vessel laboured exceedingly. On the 25th, about four o'clock in the morning, they were greatly alarmed with a supposition that the ship had sprung a dangerous leak, for at first there was four feet water in the hold, which gained so in four hours that it was got above the ground tier of casks. The men were constantly employed at the pumps, which were at last choked with the small ballast. They now baled the water from all the hatchways, while the carpenters were repairing the pumps. The progress of the vessel was very slow, she was so heavy with the water in her hull: at this time there was a violent gale from the N. W. and they proceeded to the southward.

The water in the vessel now increased in such a manner, that they were very much alarmed. They brought the ship to under the close-reefed main-top-sail, on the larboard tacks. All the spars and booms on the lee side of the deck were immediately launched overboard, by orders of the captain. When the vessel was put on the other tack, the same operation was performed on the other side: this being done, they discovered that their past danger proceeded from the great weight of timber lodged on the deck, which with the heavy rolling sea had opened her seams and admitted the water. This remedied, however, she was capable of pro-

ceeding. On the 15th of October they made the island of Oowhyhee. On the 17th they discovered land bearing from E. S. E. to W. N. W. about six leagues distant: they now hove-to for the night, and the next day very early in the morning bore up, and proceeded under a gentle sail to close in with the land: they hove-to in the entrance of Toe-yah-yah Bay, which is situated on the western side of the island. They were soon visited by a number of canoes, of whom were purchased a quantity of hogs, pigs, taro-root, plantains, sugar-cane, fowls, &c. &c. This was a very seasonable relief, as the Felice was in great want of provisions, owing both to their tedious passage, and the large portion of stores which were given to the Iphigenia. The boats were all filled with hogs, upwards of 400 of which were now purchased with vegetables, &c. They were visited by only one chief, who came in a double canoe paddled along by twelve men: he was accompanied by his wife, and two daughters. This chief sent on board the Felice some large hogs and a quantity of cocoa-nuts, and presently after came on board, when the captain made him a suitable return.

From this chief it was understood that old Te-recooboo was poisoned, and that he was succeeded by Tiaana's uncle. This revolution was the occasion of a very dreadful war between the people of Oowhyhee, and those of the island of Mowee, under the government of Titeere. The chief was now informed, that Tiaana was on his way home in ano-

merous body of natives, a present, which he said was a mark of Tiaana's attachment to his uncle: it was accepted with due reverence, and publicly tabooed.

As they intended to supply themselves in the most ample manner with pork in this island, and then proceed to Oneehow and procure a sufficient quantity of yams, a brisk trade was accordingly carried on with the natives, and in a short time they had purchased a plenty to suffice them till their arrival at China. They therefore made sail and proceeded to Attoui and Oneehow, though it was not without much difficulty that they got clear of the natives: they were prevented by light winds, from reaching Attoui till the 23d, on which day at noon they anchored in Wymoa Bay. During their passage by other islands, they were frequently visited by canoes, from whom they got young pigs, sugar-canes, &c. The canoes were prevented from approaching the vessel when anchored in Wymoa Bay, on account of a violent storm: the next day, however, as the weather was more moderate, though still tempestuous, they were visited by two men and a girl in a small canoe, of whom they purchased a small pig and some cocoa-nuts. These people on their first interview with the captain, burst into tears when enquiring for Tiaana. They informed the captain that Taheo on account of his old age resigned his government to Abineei, who was the avowed enemy of Tiaana. In consequence of which, Tiaana's brother (Namaatchow) had fled with his family to a distant part of the island to escape the tyranny of Taheo, and therefore war was pronounced on both sides. A proclamation was now issued by Taheo that Tiaana should be put to death if he landed, and all his subjects were forbid to have any communication with the vessel which it was imagined brought home Tiaana; but notwithstanding the prohibition, these people ventured out, with a view of apprising Tiaana of his danger.

As no other canoes ventured out, it was deemed unnecessary to stay here any longer; accordingly they weighed and proceeded to Oneehow, where they anchored on the 25th in the evening. They were here surrounded with old friends of both sexes, particularly the faithful Friday, who procured them a quantity of large yams (though at this time very scarce), and several other necessary articles. The captain left a letter with Friday for Captain Douglas, to apprise him of the political state of Attoui, and direct him how to act with respect to Tiaana, that he might be secure from the menaces of his unnatural brother.

On the 27th they prepared for their departure, and having weighed anchor pursued their voyage, with a wind from the E. N. E. From this to the 20th of November nothing material occurred. Preparations were now making for those tempestuous seas which they were about to enter.

On the 1st of December they made the Islands of Botol Tobago Xima. The weather was now thick and unpleasant, and as the clouds were exceedingly dark there was every appearance of an approaching storm, which came on at eight o'clock, attended with violent rain; they were now obliged to run the vessel in order to avoid the China Seas. They pursued their course to the S. W. the storm still continuing, and what was still worse, increasing in such a manner that they could hardly carry any sail at all.

As there was no sight of land on the 2d they imagined they were considerably advanced in the China Sea; they hauled up N. W. by W. in order to make the coast of China, which was seen on the 4th, and on the 5th in the evening they anchored in the roads of Macao.

The Iphigenia remained in Friendly Cove after the departure of the Felice till the 27th of October, on account of the necessary preparations in equipping

the North West America for sea; but as nothing particular occurred during this interval, we shall therefore, pass it over.

The Iphigenia and North West America proceeded on their way to the Sandwich Islands, and on the 6th of December were in sight of Owhyhee, just about the time when the Felice had made Macao.

When they had arrived off Mowee they were visited by several canoes, by whom they were supplied with hogs, plantains, yams, &c. This was a very seasonable relief, as their provisions were now nearly expended.

A present of hogs was ordered for the ship by Harwallence, brother-in-law to Tiaana, as soon as ever he was informed of his arrival. At the request of Tiaana an invitation was sent to Harwallence, and Tiaana now dressed himself in his best apparel in order to receive him. Their meeting was extremely affectionate, and felt by every spectator. Harwallence requested Captain Douglas to remain with him a few days, promising he should be supplied with whatever provisions he wanted; but as the captain could find no secure anchorage he was obliged (though reluctantly) to decline his politeness.

On the 7th Tiaana was visited by several friends, and on the 8th a number of canoes came off from Toe-yah-yah Bay with hogs, fowls, &c. There was now very heavy rain, and they lost sight of the North West America; but in seven hours after recovered her. The Iphigenia then went to till the North West America came up. Tiaana was now visited by several relations, and the captain received a present from the king, with the assurance of a visit as soon as he had anchored.

On the 10th they made for the bay. One of the chiefs, who had visited Tiaana, now went to invite the king, by his particular desire; about two in the afternoon the king approached the vessel in a large double canoe, attended by twelve others of the same size, beautifully adorned with feathers. As soon as he came on board, Captain Douglas saluted him with seven guns. After crying over Tiaana for a considerable time, the king presented Captain Douglas with a most beautiful fan, and two long-feathered cloaks. The light winds and number of canoes hanging on the ship, prevented her from making any way through the water: so that it became a matter of necessity to request his majesty to taboo the ship, with which he readily complied, desiring permission, at the same time, for himself and several of the chiefs to sleep on board.

They continued working into the bay till two o'clock in the morning; when they dropped anchor in twenty-one fathoms water, at the distance of three-quarters of a mile from shore. The king professed the warmest friendship for the captain of the Iphigenia, declared that the island should belong to him while he remained there, and to prove the sincerity of his regard, exchanged names with him. But however flattering all these attentions might be, Captain Douglas thought it not impossible but that some attempt might be made to seize the schooner, as she appeared to be small, and her crew few in number: he therefore, in the evening, carried the king on board the North West America, when by saluting him with all her guns, and other explanations concerning the possibility of defending her, when attacked, by retiring to close quarters, the difficulty of getting possession of her must have appeared very evident to the royal visitor. When, however, Tiaana explained to him the manner and time in which she was built, he intreated that a carpenter might be left at Owhyhee to assist Tiaana in forming such another; and, indeed, to earnest were the requests of them both on this subject, that it was necessary to make something of a conditional promise, at least, for their present satisfaction.

On the 12th the captains of both ships, Douglas and Funter, accompanied the king and Tiaana in the jolly-boat on shore. They were met on the beach by three priests, who chanted a kind of song, and presented a small hog and cocoa-nut; the former of which was given by the king to Capt. Douglas. This ceremony continued about ten minutes; after which they were introduced into a large house spread with mats, and a kind of party-coloured cloth; when, after the repetition of these ceremonies, and the priest had chanted a third song, two baked hogs were brought in, of which the English alone eat, and then proceeded to take a walk, in which they were not interrupted by a single person, as all the natives were tabooed on the occasion, and of course confined to their houses.

During this excursion nothing was seen worthy notice. It being extremely hot, they returned and dined with the king, on fresh fish and potatoes. The other chiefs sat at some distance during dinner, and made their meal on roasted dogs, taro-roots and potatoes; as at this season of the year even the chiefs are forbidden to eat hogs and fowls, from the king down to the lowest erec. In the evening the king and queen returned with Captain Douglas on board the Iphigenia, as they considered it the highest honour to sleep in his cot.

On the 17th the men were chiefly employed in killing and salting down the hogs; but as the coppers on board for heating the water were very small, they made but slow progress in this necessary occupation.

On the 14th the schooner came under the stern of the Iphigenia; when Capt. Funter gave the very disagreeable intelligence that she had parted her cable. After having moored her to the Iphigenia, Tiaana was requested to go on shore, and entreat the king to send off his divers, in order to recover the anchor; and at eight o'clock he came off with them. The schooner having lain in 30 fathom water, and not having lost more than three or four fathoms of cable, a very great depth must have remained for the natives to have explored, in order to succeed in the business about which they were to be employed. The following ceremony, however, was to be performed before they entered upon their search: when their canoes were arrived at the place where the anchor lay, several calabashes with taro-root were presented by a chief to six men, who employed about half an hour at the repast; when one of the chiefs who accompanied them gave three loud yells, and raised a piece of white cloth over his head: at this signal the six men plunged into the sea, and disappeared in a moment. Four of the six remained beneath the water about five minutes; the fifth continued about a minute longer, and when he came up was almost exhausted: two men immediately seized and dragged him to the boat. In the mean time there was no appearance of the sixth, who was considered as lost, when he was seen near the surface of the water, but sinking down again; three of the divers, however, plunged instantly after him, and brought him up, but in a senseless state, and with streams of blood issuing from his mouth and nostrils. It was some time before he was sufficiently recovered to inform them that he had not only got hold of the cable, but had cleared it. This man, according to the account of Captain Funter, of the North West America, was beneath the water the space of seven minutes and an half. It appeared, however, that the anchor was in too great a depth of water to afford any prospect of its being recovered. These people were amply rewarded for their exertions.

Captain Douglas having given orders to right the anchor, thought it prudent to move further in towards the village of Kowrowa, and dropped anchor in 20 fathom water, about a quarter of a mile from the shore; but, finding it to be bad ground, a warp was run out, and the ship hauled into 14 fathom water.

On the 15th the jolly-boat was sent to found, when, on its being discovered that the ground was by no means clear of the coral rock, on the Kowrowa side, they weighed anchor, and warped the ship opposite Sandy Bay, on the Karakakooa side, where they dropped the bower anchor in 20 fathom water, with a bottom of grey sand.

As the king had given Tiaana a large tract of land in Owhyhee, where he might live in a state of honour and security till the reigning distractions and jealousies of the government of Attoui had subsided, Tiaana was now resolved to remain in this island.

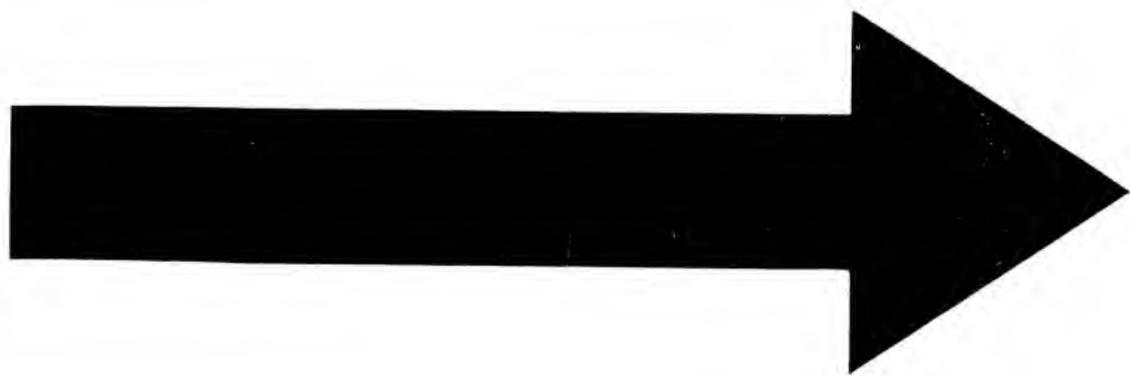
On the 19th, as there was every appearance of a storm, the captain was determined to get under way, and go in search of some place, among the other islands, where the vessels might lie in safety. In the morning, therefore, they unmoored the ship; but, in heaving the small bower, they found the cable had parted. On the very instant this discovery was made, the king and his chiefs secretly quitted the ship and paddled hastily to the shore. As the clinch was cut, to all appearance, by design, there was little doubt on whom to fix the mischief: Tiaana, therefore, was sent to inform the king of the circumstance, as well as the suspicions connected with it; and that if the anchor was not found, his town should be blown about his ears. This threat had the desired effect, for in a short time Tiaana returned with a party of divers, who, after a repetition of the ceremonies already described, leaped into the water and disappeared. The longest period which any of them remained under water was four minutes, but no anchor was to be seen. They were sent down a second time, with the same success: at length the buoy-rope was hooked with a small grapnel, so that the divers had now no excuse whatever as to the uncertainty where the anchor lay; accordingly two of them went down with a three and half inch rope, and bent it in 20 fathoms as well as if they had been on shore; so that this important object was fortunately recovered, the loss of which would have been very distressing, as they had only one bower left, and an heavy sheet-anchor, but without any cable of sufficient strength to bring the latter to the bows.

On the 20th, as they were heaving up the anchor, in order to get an offing, an heavy squall appearing to be brewing from the westward, the king, accompanied by Tiaana and several chiefs, came on board; but the former, when he found that we shot out from the bay, thought it time to depart, and accordingly left the ship, attended by upwards of 100 canoes.

Upon getting an offing they hove-to, and the weather becoming clear, Tiaana's treasures were ordered to be landed. Tiaana, after entreating Capt. Douglas again and again to bring his family from Attoui to Owhyhee, took a most affectionate leave of him and the whole crew, who had so long been his constant companions and friends, and who were equally concerned at this parting. As Tiaana left the ship, accompanied by a numerous train of his relations in their respective canoes, Capt. Douglas ordered a salute of seven guns, as a mark of esteem to that respectable chief, and immediately made sail to the N. W.

The greatest indignity which can be offered to any of these natives, and which is occasionally practiced by the great against the inferior, is to strike or kick them. One day the king being on board the Iphigenia while Captain Douglas was shaving, his majesty was requested by his attendants to undergo the same operation; but this not being agreeable to the king's disposition, he took the request in dudgeon, and thought proper to kick them all one after the other, not only without remorse, but even without mercy.

On the 21st they made for Mowee, and steering for the west point of the island, came to anchor in the evening, in five fathoms and a half, over a bottom of sand and shells.



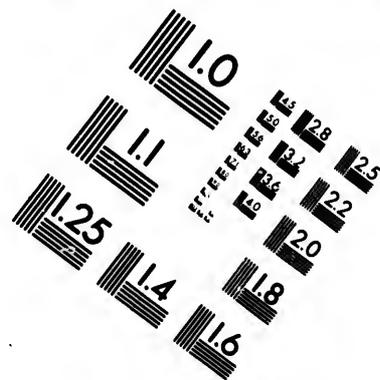
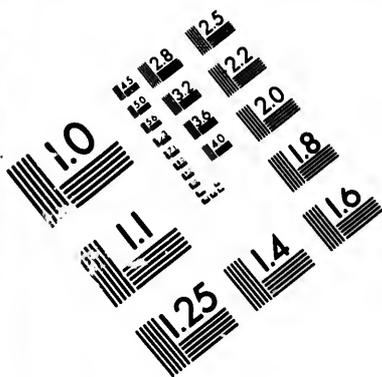
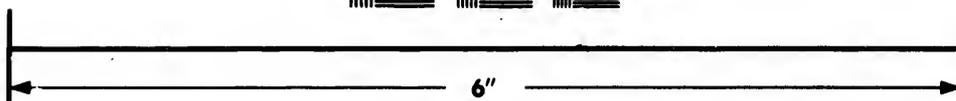
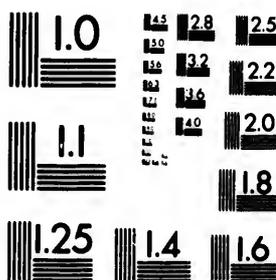


IMAGE EVALUATION
TEST TARGET (MT-3)



Photographic
Sciences
Corporation

25 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 879-4992

15 28 25
22 20
8

01

CHAPTER IX.

Proceedings of the Iphigenia—Natives attempt to cut her Cable—Captain sends a Present to the King—A Visit from the King—Presents—Another Visit—Anchors and Cables stolen—Restored through Menaces—Joined by the North West America—Employments—Island of Attoui seen—Anchor in Wymoa Bay—Behaviour of the King and Natives—Captain informed of their dangerous Designs—Consequent Threats—They run over to Woahoo—Anchorage—They make Owyhee—Visited by Tiaana—Political Situation of the Country unfolded—A Request of Tiaana's—Complied with—Fire-arms and Ammunition presented to the King and Tiaana—A Quarrel among the Captain's Men—Obstinacy of Jones—Disappointed in making Tam Bay—A Conspiracy—Discovery—Bird Island—Arrival at Nootka Sound—Conduct of the Spanish Commander—Iphigenia seized, &c.—Her Departure—Proceeds to the Northward—Visited by Natives—Anchorage—Various Accounts—A Conspiracy among the Natives—Discovered by the Women—Cox Channel passed—Trade carried on—Return to the Sandwich Islands—A Design formed against the English by the King, &c. of Owyhee—Their Escape—Cursory Remarks—Proceed to China—Arrive off Macao—Conclusion.

WHILE at anchor off the Island of Mowee the natives attempted to cut the Iphigenia's cable, for which one of them was severely corrected. After having spent several days in beating about for a good anchoring-place, they worked round the S. E. end of the Island of Woahoo, and on the 30th in the evening were close in with a large bay. The next day, on account of a heavy sea, they were obliged to make sail, and push out from the land. Afterwards they tacked, and stood in, for the purpose of finding good anchorage; the jolly-boat was dispatched to sound a distant bay, and having given the signal for anchorage, the Iphigenia ran in, and on the 1st of January 1789 anchored in eleven fathoms.

The captain now sent a present to Titeere, the king, and an invitation to see him. The king paid the Iphigenia a visit in the afternoon. He was saluted on his arrival with five guns, and another present given him. The hogs, &c. having been tabooed, his majesty now promised that the taboo should be taken off, and that they should be immediately supplied with what they wanted.

On the 2d the king repeated his visit, and brought a very handsome present of hogs, fish, a turtle, taro-root, potatoes, &c. he returned on shore in the afternoon. Some short time after his departure Captain Douglas followed him in the jolly-boat. The king received him very kindly, and took him round the village to shew him every curiosity. On the captain's taking leave of the king he was promised another royal visit the next day. Accordingly on the 3d the king came again on board the Iphigenia, and brought another turtle, some hogs, &c. but notwithstanding he behaved with the greatest kindness and good-nature, he contrived, even in the midst of a violent gale of wind, to heave up, and get on shore two anchors, with their cables. As this was a loss of the utmost consequence, and, situated as they were, would have prevented their future progress, it became absolutely necessary to be very serious in their endeavours to recover them. The king did not attempt to hide the theft; and the people whom Captain Douglas sent the next day to him to demand the restoration of the anchors and cables, saw them lying in his house; indeed they seem to have been taken with no other view than to compel Captain Douglas to leave some of his armourers at Woahoo, as the condition of their being restored. However, the anchors, &c. were regained, on presenting the king with a pistol, a musket, and a small quantity of ammunition; accompanied also with some very necessary menaces, that if he did not restore the articles he had taken, he would immediately burn his town, and destroy the inhabitants.

The North West America, not being able to keep up with the Iphigenia, had been for several days beating off the W. point of the island till the 10th, when she joined her consort.

From this to the 25th they were employed in laying in provisions, also wooding, watering, &c. In the afternoon the two vessels got under way, and stood out of the bay.

On the 26th they saw the Island of Attoui, bearing W. by N. half N. They had a strong current against them, with a westerly wind during night.

On the 29th they anchored in Wymoa Bay in twenty-three fathoms, over a muddy bottom.

Upon the appearance of the Iphigenia and North West America, Taheo, the king, and all the chiefs, had gone to a considerable distance up in the country, dreading the effects of Tiaana's anger, who, they had been informed, was on board one of the vessels, and had tabooed every thing on shore; but as it was understood that the chief, whose vengeance was so much dreaded, had been left at Owyhee, messengers were immediately sent after Taheo, who, in consequence of this information, returned in about three days to Wymoa; and on his arrival, several canoes were sent off with hogs, potatoes, and yams, for which a most exorbitant price was demanded. A couple of hatchets, or eighteen inches of bar iron, was expected even for an hog but of a middle size. This exorbitant disposition arose principally from the suggestions of a boy, whose name was Samuel Hitchcock, who had run away from Captain Colnett, and was become a great favourite with Taheo himself; indeed, so great was his influence with the king, that one of the natives having stolen from him a small piece of cloth which he wore round his middle. Taheo ordered the culprit to be pursued to the mountains, whither he had fled, and when the wretched creature was taken, both his eyes were torn from their sockets, a pahoo was then driven through his heart, and his flesh stripped from the bones, as a bait for sharks.

Notwithstanding Taheo returned to Wymoa, he still retained apprehensions as to his safety; nor would he accept of Captain Douglas's invitation to come on board the Iphigenia; but feigned, as an excuse, that he had been ill used by the crew of a ship some time before. This alarm, indeed, in a short time subsided, and he paid his occasional visits to the ship, and a friendly communication, at least to all appearance, took place between the English and the inhabitants.

However the captain now received secret information that the king, and Abinui his minister, were forming dangerous designs against him and his people. He was particularly cautioned against a poisonous root well known to the inhabitants of the Sandwich Islands, which, when ground to powder, might be easily scattered about the ship, or thrown upon their cloaths, without being observed, and whose power is of such a deadly nature, that if the smallest quantity should be inhaled by the mouth or nostrils, the consequence is immediate death. Captain Douglas, therefore, though he did not very much suspect any murderous intention in Taheo, or the natives, thought it a prudent precaution, at all events, to make known his intention, if any attempt was made to poison any of the provisions sold to them, that not only his island, but every inhabitant therein should be destroyed.

After they had laid in a quantity of hogs and roots (but which were by no means equal to their expectations, being insufficient for their immediate necessities)

necessities) and had made proper repairs to sails, cordage, &c. &c. they determined to go to Onecheow; and as Namutahaw, with his relations, and four women, expressed their wish to accompany Tiaana's wife and child to Owyhee, the captain took them all on board, in the expectation that they would be of great service to him in procuring such provisions as he wanted, in the which he now purposed to make.

On the 18th of February the Iphigenia and North West America got under way; but as they continued weilerly the captain thought it most prudent to run over to Woahoo. As they became so scanty in provisions as to require a new supply, on the 21st they bore away for Wymoa, and anchored in the same place as before on the 23d.

The king now came on board, and some of the passengers having informed him of the price for provisions at Attoui, he was disposed to increase the exorbitant demands of the neighbouring islands, and no inconsiderable quantity of powder and iron for those were now become the favourite articles was demanded for a single hog; so that very summary methods were obliged to be employed in order to procure the necessary supplies. In consequence it was found that manaces had always the effect.

On the 24th, having a favourable wind, the captain took this opportunity of making Owyhee, where he hoped not only to meet with a greater quantity of provisions, but also more reasonable prices.

On the 2d of March, when they were about ten leagues from shore, they were visited by Tiaana, who came on board from a part of the island called Toee-hye; when he had embraced his wife and child, he conducted the ship into a bay called Tiroway, where they anchored in six fathoms of water, over a fine sand. In the evening by the provident care of Tiaana, they received a considerable quantity of refreshments.

On the 3d the jolly-boat was sent to sound the bay, when good ground was found all across from fourteen to twenty-two fathoms of water, over a fine brown sand. The king having been on board, the jolly party did not arrive till four in the afternoon; he was accompanied by his queen and daughter, two dispatch boats, having quitted his heavy car and attendants. He appeared to be overjoyed at their return, expressed his hopes that Tiaana paid them all proper attention in his absence, assured them that his power in the island, and he himself possessed in it, was at their command. Indeed, the quantity of provision with which he caused them to be furnished, and his anxious labours to forward the wishes of Captain Douglas, every thing, proved, beyond a doubt the sincerity of his professions.

On the 4th Tiaana, Tome-hony-haw, and several other chiefs, came on board the Iphigenia, and after the whole company were dismissed by the king except Tiaana; who having thrown a feathered cloak over Captain Douglas, in the name of the sovereign and himself, began to unfold the secrets of their political situation. Setting forth that Taheo, king of Attoui, and Titeere, the sovereign of Mowee, Ra Morotai, and Woahoo, had entered into a compact with Terremoweeere, the surviving son of Terremoweeere, who lived on the weather-side of the island, to possess Tome-hony-haw of his rank and power for no other reason but because he had permitted Tiaana to fix his settlement at Owyhee; that Taheo had been furnished by the Captains Portlock, Dixon, &c. with a quantity of arms and ammunition, on an express condition that he would not afford supplies whatever to Captain Mearns and his associates; for the truth of which information, he appealed to the reception which that gentleman had lately found on putting into the island of Attoui, where he could not obtain any refreshments of any kind. The speech, which was of considerable length

APTER IX.

tempt to cut her Cable—Captain sends a Present to the King—A Visit to the Anchors and Cables stolen—Restored through Menaces—Joined by the King and of Attoui seen—Anchor in Wymoa Bay—Behaviour of the King and dangerous Designs—Consequent Threats—They run over to Woahoo—Political Situation of the Country unfolded—A Request by Tiaana—Political Situation of the Country unfolded—A Quarrel among and Ammunition presented to the King and Tiaana—A Conspiracy—Bird Disappointed in making Yam Bay—A Conspiracy—Discovery—Bird of the Spanish Commander—Iphigenia seized, &c.—Her Departure by Natives—Anchorage—Various Accounts—A Conspiracy among the Channel passed—Trade carried on—Return to the Sandwich Islands—The King, &c. of Owhyhee—Their Escape—Curfory Remarks—Proceed

of Mowee Iphigenia's corrected. ting about on the 30th bay. The they were in the land. for the purly-boat was aving given ran in, and in eleven fa-

Titeere, the king paid n. He was and another having been that the taboo d be imme-

and brought fish, a turtle, in shore in the his departure the jolly-boat, and took him riosity. On g he was pro- Accordingly d the Iphige- &c. but greatest kind- even in the heave up, and r cables. As equence, and, revented their ecessary to be ecover them. theft; and the e next day to e anchors and e; indeed they he view than ve some of his dition of their ors, &c. were vic. a pistol, a ammunition; ecessary menaces, e he had taken, n, and destroy

ing able to keep or several days nd till the 10th, re employed in, watering, &c. nder way, and

necessities) and had made proper repairs in their sails, cordage, &c. &c. they determined to proceed to Onecheow; and as Namitahaw, with six of his relations, and four women, expressed their wishes to accompany Tiaana's wife and child to Owhyhee, the captain took them all on board, in the expectation that they would be of great service to him in procuring such provisions as he wanted, in the island which he now purposed to make.

On the 18th of February the Iphigenia and North West America got under way; but as the wind continued westerly the captain thought it most prudent to run over to Woahoo. As they became now so scanty in provisions as to require a necessary supply, on the 21st they bore away for Woahoo, and anchored in the same place as before on the 23d.

The king now came on board, and some of the passengers having informed him of the price paid for provisions at Attoui, he was disposed to imitate the exorbitant demands of the neighbouring island; and no inconsiderable quantity of powder and shot, for those were now become the favourite articles, was demanded for a single hog; so that very penny methods were obliged to be employed in order to procure the necessary supplies. Indeed it was found that manaces had always the desired effect.

On the 24th, having a favourable wind, the captain took this opportunity of making Owhyhee, where he hoped not only to meet with a greater quantity of provisions, but also more reasonable prices.

On the 2d of March, when they were about two leagues from shore, they were visited by Tiaana, who came on board from a part of the island called Toee-Hye; when he had embraced his wife and child, he conducted the ship into a bay called by the natives Tiroway, where they anchored in sixteen fathoms of water, over a fine sand. In the evening, by the provident care of Tiaana, they received a considerable quantity of refreshments.

On the 3d the jolly-boat was sent to sound the bay, when good ground was found all across it, from fourteen to twenty-two fathoms of water, over a fine brown sand. The king having been on a fishing party did not arrive till four in the afternoon; he was accompanied by his queen and daughter, in two dispatch boats, having quitted his heavy canoes and attendants. He appeared to be overjoyed at their return, expressed his hopes that Tiaana had paid them all proper attention in his absence, and assured them that his power in the island, and all he himself possessed in it, was at their command. Indeed, the quantity of provision with which he caused them to be furnished, and his anxious endeavours to forward the wishes of Captain Douglas in every thing, proved, beyond a doubt the sincerity of his professions.

On the 4th Tiaana, Tome-homy-haw, and several other chiefs, came on board the Iphigenia, and soon after the whole company were dismissed by the king, except Tiaana; who having thrown a feathered cloak over Captain Douglas, in the name of the sovereign and himself, began to unfold the secrets of their political situation. Setting forth that Taheo, king of Attoui, and Titeere, the sovereign of Mowee, Ranai, Morotoi, and Woahoo, had entered into a compact with Terremoweeere, the surviving son of Terrecoo, who lived on the weather-side of the island, to dispossess Tome-homy-haw of his rank and power, for no other reason but because he had permitted Tiaana to fix his settlement at Owhyhee; that Taheo had been furnished by the Captains Portlock, Dixon, &c. with a quantity of arms and ammunition, on an express condition that he would not afford any supplies whatever to Captain Meares and his associates; for the truth of which information, he appealed to the reception which that gentleman had lately found on putting into the island of Attoui, where he could not obtain any refreshments of any kind. The speech, which was of considerable length,

concluded with entreating Captain Douglas to leave two of his men behind him, till his return from America, together with a swivel-gun, his own fowling-piece, and whatever other arms and ammunition could be spared by him. The preparations which Captain Douglas had seen at the other islands, and the great demand he had experienced for powder, shot, and muskets, induced him to give some credit to the scheme which Tiaana had just mentioned: he, therefore, complied with that part of the request which related to the fire-arms, and immediately ordered the carpenter on shore, to form a stage on one of the largest double canoes, to receive the swivel: which being finished, the next day was brought along-side the Iphigenia, when the gun was mounted; but it was with great difficulty that the king could prevail on his people to keep their paddles in their hands while he discharged the piece.

On the 6th early in the morning, the wind being from the southward and eastward, a signal was made for the king to come on board, when they got under way, steering for the bay of Toee-Hye. His majesty was accompanied by his queen, Tiaana, and other principal chiefs, while those of an inferior rank attended the ship in a fleet of thirty canoes. At half past five in the afternoon, they anchored in ten fathoms of water, opposite the village of Toee-Hye. The king and his company went on shore in the evening.

On the 7th, the king sent the captain a present of thirty hogs, a quantity of salt, cocoa-nuts, potatoes, and taro. As the trade-wind was now blowing fresh, Captain Douglas requested that he might, if possible, be favoured with immediate supplies, as he was in haste to sail for America. Tome-homy-haw, therefore, dispatched messengers up the country, with orders for every one who had an hog to bring it immediately to the village, on pain of death: and at ten the next morning, he himself came off with a present of fifty hogs, some of which weighed fifteen stone. In the course of the day other necessary articles were sent on board, particularly twelve geese. In the evening Captain Douglas, after presenting some fire-arms and ammunition to the king and Tiaana, took his leave of them; and at midnight got under way.

On the 9th they proceeded to Woahoo, where having got a considerable quantity of wood, and made some addition to the stock of taro and sugarcane, they continued their course to Attoui; and on the 12th in the evening, came to an anchor about two miles to the eastward of the anchoring-ground.

On the 13th early in the morning they got the boats out, and towed the ship into her former berth. Taheo and the other principal chiefs were gone to Punna; and Abinui was the only person of consequence remaining at Wymoa, who sent a present of an hog on board, but did not think proper to accompany it.

On the 14th the long-boat was sent on shore for water, when the men on duty got to quarrelling with so much violence, as to draw their knives against each other; and when Mr. Viana attempted to part them, a seaman, of the name of Jones, threatened to knock him down. Captain Douglas ordered Jones to immediate punishment; to which, with the most horrid execrations, he refused to submit, and ran for the fore-top, in expectation of meeting with the blunderbusses which were generally kept there primed and loaded, in case of an attack from the natives, but was prevented from gaining his object by Captain Douglas, who fired a pistol over his head, and threatened him with a second discharge if he proceeded another step. As it was very evident that several of the ship's crew were disposed to support him, he was ordered either to deliver himself up to punishment, or instantly to leave the ship; which he did without the least

hesitation, and tranquillity was immediately restored.

Their watering being now completed, they got under way for Oncheow, in order to obtain a supply of yams. But as they could not make Yam Bay, on account of contrary winds, they were forced to bear up for the other bay; and on the 15th they anchored in 13 fathoms of water.

Captain Douglas being now informed of a design agitated by several of the seamen to go off with the jolly-boat, gave orders to the officers to keep a strict watch; nevertheless, during the night, the quarter-master and two of the sailors had got on shore in some of the canoes that were along-side. They had formed a plan to get off with the boat, and at the same time to set fire to the ship; but being prevented in their diabolical enterprise, they had taken an opportunity to escape to the island: two of them, however, by the active zeal of honest Friday, the before mentioned native of Oncheow, were shortly brought back to the ship; but the quarter-master, who was the ringleader in the mischief, could not be brought off on account of the surf, and was therefore left behind: for such was the situation of both vessels, being in want of many necessary articles (the North West America having also lost her anchor) that though, according to Captain Meares's instructions, Capt. Douglas was to have proceeded to the northward, he was under the necessity of proceeding immediately to the coast of America, where he had every reason to hope he should meet with a ship from China.

They had now procured a sufficiency of yams for a month; accordingly, on the 18th, the vessels proceeded together to the N. W. from N. N. E. On the 19th land was seen, which bore the form of a paddle: it was high at each end, and low in the middle. It is barren on N. E. and W. sides: on the S. it is covered with verdure; and as it only seemed accessible to birds, was therefore called Bird island.

As the compasses flew about each way four or five points in a moment, it was impossible to steer the vessel for three days together. During this voyage they were likewise upon short allowance.

On the 20th of April the Iphigenia stood in for the Sound. The next day one Aching, a seaman, died, in consequence of a fall.

On the 24th a sail was seen in the offing. Captain Douglas sent out his long-boat, and found her to be the North West America. She anchored about noon in the cove. The next day her sails were unbent, and all hands employed to stop her leaks.

On the 26th she was re-fitted out for trade, and dispatched to the northward on the 29th, for the purpose of procuring commodities, and exploring the archipelago of St. Lazarus.

On the 6th of May a Spanish ship of war called the *Princesa*, commanded by Don Stephen Joseph Martinez, mounting 26 guns, anchored in Nootka Sound; and on the 13th she was joined by a Spanish sloop of 16 guns, called the *St. Carlos*, loaded with cannon, &c. Capt. Douglas had been invited on board the *Princesa*, and brought the commodore a present. These gentlemen, with Captain Kendrick, who arrived from Mowena, took a walk after dinner. After this the same party dined with Captain Kendrick, &c. The captain, his officers, the Spanish commodore, &c. dined also with Capt. Douglas.

Capt. Arrow, who commanded the Spanish sloop *St. Carlos*, requested Captain Douglas's company to dinner on the day of his arrival; but the captain, being indisposed, declined the invitation; he was, however, visited by the commodore, Captains Kendrick and Arrow, &c. in the evening.

On the 14th the Spanish commodore sent for Captain Douglas and Mr. Viana on board the *Princesa*. As soon as the captain was on board, he took out a paper, and told him, that it was the King of Spain's orders to take all the vessels he met with on

the coast of America, and that he was now his prisoner. The captain urged the distress they were in before they reached the harbour; the vessel without cables; no pitch nor tar on board, to stop her leaks; no bread on board, nor any thing to live on but salt pork; that if he had steered for any port in South America, the Spaniards would not have seized his vessel, but supplied him with the necessaries he was in want of, agreeable to the laws of nations; to take him a prisoner in a foreign port, that the King of Spain had never laid claim to, was a piece of injustice that no nation had ever attempted before; but that, sooner than be detained as a prisoner, (although the vessel had like to have foundered before they got into the harbour) if he would give him permission, he would instantly leave the port. This was denied. Forty or fifty men, with some officers, went on board, hoisted the Spanish colours, and took possession of the *Iphigenia*. The keys of the captain's chest were demanded; his charts, journals, papers, and in short every thing that was in the vessel they took possession of; he was not so much as allowed to go on board. He was told that his papers were bad; that they mentioned he was to take all English, Russian and Spanish vessels that were of inferior force to the *Iphigenia*, and send or carry their crews to Macao, there to be tried for their lives as pirates. The captain told him they had not interpreted the papers right; that though he did not understand Portuguese, he had seen a copy of them in English at Macao, which mentioned, if he was attacked by any of those three nations, to defend himself, and if he had the superiority to send the captain and crew to Macao, to answer for the insult they offered. The padries and the clerk read the papers over, and said they had interpreted the papers right.

On the 15th Captain Kendrick came down from Mowena: Captain Douglas having been informed that Capt. Kendrick was privy to his being taken prisoner, and that it was settled when the Spanish commodore was last at Mowena, when he came on board the *Iphigenia* he refused to see him. This being reported to the Spanish commodore, he was ordered, at ten o'clock at night, (although very unwell) to turn out, and carry his bed on board the Spanish sloop, it both raining and blowing at the time. Here he remained for some time, without any body to speak to: his servant, who was a Manila-man, and spoke the language very well, was not permitted to come near him, for fear of his discovering some of their proceedings that was carrying on. In short, they stole a number of things, and afterwards laid the blame on his servant. His people were divided between the two vessels, and every method made use of to entice them to enter. The sails were bent, and some new running rigging wove. A captain was appointed, and officers, to carry him to St. Blas. His officers were to be detained, and one half of his people on board the two Spanish ships, and he was requested to choose the quietest of his men to go along with him. A list of them he was desired to give to the commodore, as they were to sail in a few days. This he would not comply with, but told him he might send home if he thought proper; that the *Iphigenia* was not fit to go to sea till she was caulked, and her leaks stopped. This they immediately set about. After taking every thing out of her, copper, iron, trade of every kind, and all the Sandwich Island pork, they filled the after-hold with sand ballast, that they had been at so much pains to get out. The schooner *North West America*, and the *Felice*, being daily expected in, none of them were permitted to speak to the natives, although he found an opportunity to speak to Maquilla, and the other chiefs, as did Mr. Ingraham, chief officer of the *Columbia*. They requested them to have boats ready to go off to Captains Meares and Funter, and acquaint them not to come into Nootka. They instantly shifted

their village about four miles from Nootka, that Captain Douglas was the same as Captains Meares and Funter, of his being captured. One of the *Iphigenia*'s, the servant, natives for some silt they Spaniards, not understanding him on board the commodore into the stocks, where he and threatened severely, if he had requested the natives to be taken to the Captains Meares and Funter. When they found he was doing about the other vessels, if the natives had not told him in the offing; he answered after this set at liberty, but verily with the Indians, nor by Captain Douglas afterwards. Captain Kendrick; he denied being taken; that the Spaniards obliged to him he would take as soon as he arrived in the said every thing, and made up prevent the business.

On the 22d the irons were which were made by Captain They were now to proceed and Captain Douglas was on choose one half of his men, as remain with his officers. Fine would enter, or desert him, he preference to any. Before the his own private papers might be a wife a copy of his ship papers, him. The interpreter, when which mentions his defending himself, attacked, and, if he had the aggressors to Macao to be tried, toned to the commodore, in he thought the papers very good. him, if that was the only cause against him, it would not be diffi- him in any court of justice in Eu- got every thing out of her that and what things he had belong- bed him of in as gentle a manner by letting him know he must h- his servant, stove, charts, &c. &c. to return the vessel, and suppl- provisions to carry him to the if he would sign a paper that w- and presented him. This he refus- all he had witnessed, and knew paper. Mr. How, supercargo of requested to write a letter to Cap- Mr. Ingraham, to come down fr- witnesses to the papers he was to

On the 24th they arrived; the preted to Capt. Douglas, which commodore arrived on such a da- in the bay of St. Lawrence, Noot- distress, and in want of every th- not stopped his navigation, but every necessary he was in want o- the Sandwich Islands. This pap- refused signing, for two reasons: not only stopped him in his na- taken possession of the ship, and belonged to her; another was, th- lay no claim to a port they had nor had any of the King of Spain- tered. The commodore said, in- was second officer on board a king- on discovery, that saw the port, bay of St. Lawrence. Captain D- having the chart of that voyage h- leave to differ in opinion from his- chief to sign the papers, the comm- he would keep the vessel, and see- No. 13.

of America, and that he was now his prisoner. The captain urged the distress they were in they reached the harbour; the vessel without pitch nor tar on board, to stop her leaks; had on board, nor any thing to live on but salt; that if he had steered for any port in South America, the Spaniards would not have seized his vessel, but supplied him with the necessaries he was in want of, agreeable to the laws of nations; to take him prisoner in a foreign port, that the King of Spain had never laid claim to, was a piece of injustice that no nation had ever attempted before; that, sooner than be detained as a prisoner, (although the vessel had like to have foundered before she got into the harbour) he would give him his freedom, he would instantly leave the port. This was denied. Forty or fifty men, with some officers, on board, hoisted the Spanish colours, and took possession of the Iphigenia. The keys of the cabin chest were demanded; his charts, journals, and in short every thing that was in the vessel was taken possession of; he was not so much as allowed to go on board. He was told that his papers were bad; that they mentioned he was to take all the Russian and Spanish vessels that were of inferior force to the Iphigenia, and send or carry the crews to Macao, there to be tried for their crimes as pirates. The captain told him they had not interpreted the papers right; that though he did not understand Portuguese, he had seen a copy of them in English at Macao, which mentioned, if he was attacked by any of those three nations, to defend himself, and if he had the superiority to send the captain and crew to Macao, to answer for the rest they offered. The padries and the clerk read the papers over, and said they had interpreted the papers right.

On the 15th Captain Kendrick came down from Mowena: Captain Douglas having been informed that Capt. Kendrick was privy to his being taken prisoner, and that it was settled when the Spanish commodore was last at Mowena, when he came on board the Iphigenia he refused to see him. This being reported to the Spanish commodore, he was ordered, at ten o'clock at night, (although very late) to turn out, and carry his bed on board the Spanish snow, it both raining and blowing at that time. Here he remained for some time, without any body to speak to: his servant, who was a Nilla-man, and spoke the language very well, was permitted to come near him, for fear of his differing some of their proceedings that was carrying on. In short, they stole a number of things, afterwards laid the blame on his servant. His people were divided between the two vessels, and every method made use of to entice them to enter the sails were bent, and some new running rigging made. A captain was appointed, and officers, to carry him to St. Blas. His officers were to be divided, and one half of his people on board the Spanish ships, and he was requested to choose the best of his men to go along with him. A list of them he was desired to give to the commodore, they were to sail in a few days. This he would not comply with, but told him he might send home the schooner thought proper; that the Iphigenia was not to go to sea till she was caulked, and her leaks mended. This they immediately set about. After getting every thing out of her, copper, iron, trade every kind, and all the Sandwich Island pork, filled the after-hold with sand ballast, that they were at so much pains to get out. The schooner North West America, and the Felice, being daily expected in, none of them were permitted to speak to the natives, although he found an opportunity to speak to Maquilla, and the other chiefs, as did Ingraham, chief officer of the Columbia. They expected them to have boats ready to go off to Mowena, and acquainted them to come into Nootka. They instantly stuffed their

their village about four miles to the northward, so that Captain Douglas was in great hopes both Captains Meares and Funter would have intelligence of his being captured. One of his people on board the Iphigenia, the servant, was bargaining with the natives for some fish they had in their boat; the Spaniards, not understanding what was said, ordered him on board the commodore's ship, and put him into the stocks, where he was strictly examined, and threatened severely, if he did not tell whether he had requested the natives to go and caution Captains Meares and Funter not to come into Nootka. When they found he had not mentioned any thing about the other vessels, they wanted to know if the natives had not told him they had seen a vessel in the offing: he answered they had not. He was after this set at liberty, but ordered never to converse with the Indians, nor speak to them in future. Captain Douglas afterwards had a conference with Captain Kendrick; he denied being accessory to his being taken; that the Spanish commodore had mentioned to him he would take Capt. Meares prisoner as soon as he arrived in the harbour; that he had said every thing, and made use of all his interest to prevent the business.

On the 22d the irons arrived from Mowena, which were made by Captain Kendrick's armourer. They were now to proceed instantly to St. Blas, and Captain Douglas was once more requested to choose one half of his men, as the other half was to remain with his officers. Finding not one of them would enter, or desert him, he declined giving the preference to any. Before they sailed, he requested his own private papers might be delivered up, likewise a copy of his ship papers, which was promised him. The interpreter, when he came to that part which mentions his defending himself in case he was attacked, and, if he had the superiority, to carry the aggressors to Macao to be tried for the insult, mentioned to the commodore, in his presence, that he thought the papers very good. Capt. Douglas told him, if that was the only cause he had to allege against him, it would not be difficult for him to call him in any court of justice in Europe. He had now got every thing out of her that he took a liking to; and what things he had belonging to himself he robbed him of in as gentle a manner as he possibly could, by letting him know he must have his gold watch, his secant, stove, charts, &c. &c. He now proposed to return the vessel, and supply the captain with provisions to carry him to the Sandwich Islands, if he would sign a paper that was already prepared and presented him. This he refused to comply with, till he had witnesses, and knew the contents of the paper. Mr. How, supercargo of the Columbia, was requested to write a letter to Captain Kendrick and Mr. Ingraham, to come down from Mowena to be witnesses to the papers he was to sign.

On the 24th they arrived; the papers were interpreted to Capt. Douglas, which mentioned that the commodore arrived on such a day, and found him in the bay of St. Lawrence, Nootka; that he was in distress, and in want of every thing; that he had not stopped his navigation, but supplied him with every necessary he was in want of to carry him to the Sandwich Islands. This paper Capt. Douglas refused signing, for two reasons; one was, he had not taken possession of the ship, and every thing that belonged to her; another was, the Spaniards could lay no claim to a port they had never before seen, nor had any of the King of Spain's vessels ever entered. The commodore said, in the year 1775 he was second officer on board a king's frigate that was on discovery, that saw the port, and named it the bay of St. Lawrence. Captain Douglas told him, having the chart of that voyage by him, he begged leave to differ in opinion from him. If he did not chuse to sign the papers, the commodore then said, he would keep the vessel, and send her along the

No. 13.

coast as a privateer, to trade with the natives. The papers were instantly laid aside, and Capt. Kendrick went up to Mowena. The same evening the commodore told him his orders were to take Captain Kendrick, if he should fall in with him any where in those seas; and mentioned it as a great secret, that he would take both him and the sloop Washington, as soon as she arrived in port.

On the 24th, and succeeding day, there was a violent storm; the commodore requested Captain Douglas would go on board the Iphigenia with his officers and people, and secure her: having nothing on board to secure her with, he declined having any thing to do with her; the commodore was therefore under the necessity of sending two eight-inch howitzers, and making her fast to Hog Island. As he was not permitted to go on shore, he did not know much of what was carrying forward there; they were busy in erecting forts on Hog Island, and, by what he learned, they were cutting down large trees to build houses. The commodore acquainted him, that last year, when he was at Onalaska, Mr. Ismyloff told him, he expected three vessels from Kamtschatka, with a number of men; that on their arrival at Onalaska, he was to take the command, and conduct them to Nootka Sound, where they were to form a settlement; that he expected to arrive at Nootka by the middle of July, or 1st of Aug. 1789; that two Russian frigates were to sail from Peterburgh by the way of Cape Horn, and join them in Nootka Sound, with stores and other necessaries that they might want. On his arrival at St. Blas last year, he sent an express to the viceroy, who ordered him to sail immediately for Nootka, and erect forts to keep the Russians out. He likewise acquainted him, that in the year 1786 two English vessels were cast away, one was drove ashore at her anchors on the island Maidenoi Ostroff; that all the hands perished, except three men that happened to be on shore: they were sent overland to Peterburgh. The officers of the other vessel being on shore, they put to sea, and as there was no person on board that could navigate the vessel, she was never afterwards seen or heard of. As they now had got possession of Capt. Douglas's charts and journals, the Spanish commodore intended to send the St. Carlos, Capt. Arrow, to the northward, as soon as they could get her bottom cleaned and her sides caulked. Capt. Kendrick was likewise ready for sea, and he was going to push to the northward. Captain Douglas's people were after him every hour in the day, requesting that he would sign the papers, that they might get on board their own vessel. Although the commodore had promised to supply him with what he thought would be necessary to carry him to the Sandwich Islands, and made this promise before Mr. How and Mr. Ingraham, still there was no dependence to be put on his word; however, on the 26th this paper was once more produced, and Capt. Douglas was under the necessity of signing it.

On the 26th Capt. Douglas carried his people on board, and took possession of the Iphigenia: he was not above half an hour on board, when a message came that he was wanted on board the Princeessa. When he went on board, he was told by Don Joseph Stephen Martinez (in the presence of Mr. Ingraham) that, although he had given him back the Iphigenia, he would not permit him to sail till the arrival of the schooner North West America, and that he must sell her to him for the price that Capt. Kendrick and his officers should set on her. The captain told him the schooner did not belong to him; that he had no power to sell her, and that he might act as he thought proper on the occasion. In the afternoon the Spaniards left the ship, each carrying off what he could lay his hands on.

Captain Douglas was still detained from proceeding to sea, until the arrival of the North West America; it being insisted upon that he should dispose of her for 400 dollars, this being the price

which

which one of the American captains had set upon her. After much solicitation, he obtained a scanty supply of stores and provisions; for which it was demanded he should give bills on his owners. The prices far exceeded either the quality or quantity of the articles.

As the North West America did not return so soon as was expected, Don Martinez insisted that Captain Douglas should order it to be delivered to him for the use of his Catholic Majesty; and as the captain had not liberty to depart till he acquiesced, he wrote a letter of an evasive nature, and left it for Captain Funter, which the commodore, being ignorant of the English language, was satisfied with.

The Iphigenia being at last free, on the 3d of June quitted Friendly Cove, and continued her course to the northward, with the wind at S. E. On the 5th it was very foggy weather; which cleared away on the 6th. They now saw a small barren island, which they lost sight of in the afternoon, when they were surrounded with a number of small islets and rocks; upon which they bore up, to look out for some place of shelter before night. They passed between a low island and the main land; being becalmed and set down by the current to a small island, where there were no soundings with 80 fathoms, the boats were hoisted out, and the vessel towed clear of the island into 26 fathoms, when they anchored over a muddy bottom.

On the 7th a ledge of rocks was seen above water, (it being now low water) within less than a cable's length of the vessel: upon which they weighed anchor (a fresh breeze springing up) and worked out of the sound. They afterwards anchored in 55 fathoms at the entrance of the sound. At noon they weighed again, and stood to the S. W. The weather was now clear and fair.

Early in the afternoon they perceived a canoe paddling towards the ship: upon which they shortened sail, and purchased three dresses of sea-otter skins. The Captain, understanding from these natives that there were more skins to be had at an adjoining village, accordingly wore and stood to the N. E. in company with the canoe. In the evening they anchored in 35 fathoms, opposite to a village which stands upon a high rock. Captain Douglas called this place Fort Pitt, as it has the appearance of a fort. In latitude 54 deg. 58 min. in long. 229 deg. 43 min. E.

The captain bought several sea-otter skins of the natives here, and the next day when trade ceased he weighed anchor and stood to the westward. The captain called this large sound Buccleugh's Sound; where there are several arms and branches, some of which take an easterly direction, and run as far as the eye could see; a few others took a northerly direction, and were in the captain's opinion joined with Port Meares and Sea-Otter Sound. A low island, which lies off Cape Farmer, was called Petri's Island; and an high mountain on the west side of the sound was called Mount St. Lazaro. They made sail at night, to clear a small rocky island that lies off Cape Murray. They now steered right up the sound, passing about eight islands which lay in the middle of it. In the afternoon an officer was sent out in the long-boat, to sound and discover a place of security; he returned in about three hours, and reported that there was a very fine cove about four miles higher up the sound. In the evening they anchored in 15 fathom water, over a bottom of sand and shells.

This harbour the captain thinks is by much the best on the coast of America. The entrance of it is about half a mile from shore to shore; off which an island is situated of about a mile in circumference, so that a vessel may lay there secure from all winds. At the bottom of the Cove, which is about two miles from the entrance, there is a very fine beach, where there is also a small island in the middle of it, round which the tide flows. It was called

Haines's Cove. In latitude 54 deg. 57 min. N. and in long. 228 deg. 3 min. E.

From this to the 17th they were employed in purchasing furs, fish, oil, &c. and making some necessary repairs to the ship and rigging.

On the 17th an altercation having taken place between the chiefs of the two villages, on different sides of the cove, they made preparations for war; but the bloody conflict seemed to have been prevented by the women, who having quarrelled among themselves for near an hour, reconciled thereby the hostile parties. One of these chiefs with his attending canoes, paddled round the Iphigenia, and saluted the captain with a pleasing song: this was understood as a compliment to the captain for not having meddled in the business. The other party hastened to shore, and were congratulated by the women and children, who testified no small triumph on the occasion.

On the 19th they weighed anchor, and made sail out of the cove. The weather was now cloudy, but moderate: the wind from the S. W. At noon there was an appearance of an inlet, which bore S. S. W. and they stood across a deep bay: their soundings were irregular. They called this McInty's Bay; in latitude 53 deg. 58 min. N. in longitude 228 deg. 6 min. E.

On the 20th the long-boat was dispatched to the head of the bay, to explore the place. The officer on his return reported, that toward the head of the bay a bar run across, on which the long-boat got a-ground, but that there appeared a large sound within it.

They were visited by several canoes, of whom they purchased a stock of furs. The weather now became thick and hazy.

The long-boat was dispatched again in the afternoon well armed and manned, in order to seek an anchorage, and examine the place. After this, the captain perceiving about a dozen canoes, which were followed by several others, he made sail after the long-boat, which by this time had given a signal for anchorage. They anchored in 25 fathoms, about two miles distant from shore, and the same from a small barren island, which was the residence of Blackow Conechaw, a chief whom Captain Douglas had seen in his last voyage, and who now came with his attendants, and welcomed his arrival with a grand chorus of two hundred voices: this done, he exchanged names with the captain, which is a great compliment among these chiefs.

This night they were visited by two canoes, these dropped down with the tide, as it was imagined, and lay on their paddles, with hopes of finding the English asleep: finding themselves, however, discovered, and being threatened with destruction if they did not keep off, they made for shore with great precipitation.

On the 21st they stood up the inlet, and anchored in 18 fathoms: this was called Cox's Channel. The long-boat was dispatched to sound: there were no soundings with 80 fathoms of line, but about the rocks there were from 20 to 30 fathoms.

Several female natives having been invited on board, they informed the captain this night, that there was a design formed against him by the same party whom they drove away the preceding night, and whose number was very considerable, to surprise them as soon as the lights were extinguished, and make an attempt upon the vessel: it was likewise their intention to cut off all their heads. The captain accordingly gave private directions to the gunner, who, when the lights were put out, perceived a canoe coming out from among the rocks, upon which he gave the alarm, by firing a gun, which was accompanied by several musquets, which obliged the canoe to make hastily for shore.

On the 22d they were visited by the old chief Blackow Conechaw, who was peculiarly ornamented on the occasion, having four skins of the ermine hanging

hanging from Captain Douglas of last night, upon his motive for it was for the sake that the tribe was the opposite the women had appeared moreover as these people if This old chief, consequence, be lie to the capta On the 23d the harbour, which Tartanez side; about a cable's le

From this to the chasing skins, a departure. They bars and chains been taken away

On the 26th the fresh supply of next day he returned to unmoor: they nel, while several by the rapidity of Several skins were jackets, coats, trousers, &c. &c. a chain-plate was not brittleness, which in manufacturing great quantity of other necessary articles The village of Tiful and romantic signs of former culture numerous.

They now quitted the Sandwich Islands, occurred worthy of re

Having reached the sign was formed by delroy the captain vessel. This villain by the prudent and The treacherous chief their evil purpose of reason the ring-lead selves on board. So and one of them a secretly armed, and intended massacre at king's elder brother fixed upon to destroy brother to murder one of the chiefs, to who was the principal such a particular sail alive into the sea. 7 in their canoes, till a signal for the attack the vessel had been remains in the most far strangers might island hereafter.

This diabolical design by Tiaana, with tears he could not prevent to have any there in was so closely watched with the greatest anxiety for the discovery The captain was soon by their secretly conveyed: however, he was stons, nor at present of distrust; knowing th

hanging from each ear, and one from his nose. Captain Douglas reported to him the proceedings of last night, upon which the chief assured him, that his motive for living at present along-side the vessel, was for the sake of giving her occasional assistance: that the tribe which offered this violence inhabited the opposite shore, and it was by his command the women had apprised the captain of their intentions: he moreover advised Captain Douglas to destroy these people if they repeated their malevolence. This old chief, who was one of great distinction and consequence, behaved exceedingly friendly and polite to the captain.

On the 23d they ran across the channel to a small harbour, which is called Beal's Harbour, on the Tartance side; here they anchored in 19 fathoms, about a cable's length from the shore.

From this to the 27th they were employed in purchasing skins, and making preparations for their departure. They were obliged to cut up the hatch-bars and chain-plates, as their stock of iron had been taken away by the Spanish Commodore.

On the 26th the chief went on shore to procure a fresh supply of provisions for the captain. The next day he returned, and the captain gave orders to unmoor: they now steered through Cox's Channel, while several canoes kept them in tow: having by the rapidity of the tide got out, they hove-to. Several skins were now purchased of the natives for jackets, coats, trowlers, kettles, pots, frying-pans, bakens, &c. &c. as the iron which belonged to the chain-plate was now objected to, on account of its brittleness, which rendered it to them of no utility in manufacturing it. Indeed, the captain lost a great quantity of furs, for the want of iron, and other necessary articles of trade.

The village of Tartance has an exceeding beautiful and romantic appearance: there are evident signs of former cultivation. The tribe is also very numerous.

They now quitted Nootka Sound, and proceeded to the Sandwich Islands; during which, nothing occurred worthy of relation.

Having reached Owhyhee, a very dangerous design was formed by the chiefs of this place to destroy the captain and his crew, and plunder the vessel. This villainous plan was happily prevented by the prudent and manly behaviour of the captain. The treacherous chiefs intended to have executed their evil purpose on board the vessel, for which reason the ring-leaders had now introduced themselves on board. Some had daggers in their hand, and one of them a pistol; in short, they were all secretly armed, and each had some vile part in this intended massacre allotted to him to perform. The king's elder brother and Aropee were the persons fixed upon to destroy the captain, the king's younger brother to murder the boatswain, and Parceonow, one of the chiefs, to make away with Mr. Adamson, who was the principal officer: the rest were to stab each a particular sailor, and throw all that remained alive into the sea. The natives were now to lie still in their canoes, till the chiefs on board gave them a signal for the attack. It was also intended when the vessel had been pulled to pieces, to carry the remains into the mountains, and conceal them, for fear strangers might be deterred from visiting the island hereafter.

This diabolical design was revealed to the captain by Tiaana, with tears and lamentations, who, though he could not prevent their intentions, nobly refused to have any share in the conspiracy: however, he was so closely watched by the conspirators, that it was with the greatest difficulty he found an opportunity for the discovery.

The captain was soon convinced of their treachery, by their secretly conveying away the queen from the vessel: however, he wisely concealed his apprehensions, nor at present betrayed the least appearance of distrust; knowing that if he gave an abrupt alarm,

his people might drive these disappointed assassins to despair, and perhaps bring on the evil which he wished to avoid: he was therefore determined to adopt a more quiet method, which would be productive of less danger; accordingly, under some pretences, he got the pistol from one of the chiefs, and the daggers one by one from the rest, and having thus completely armed himself by disarming his enemies, waited patiently the arrival of Tiaana, to consult with him how he should proceed. As soon as he arrived, the captain took him alone into his cabin, and bolting the door, insisted upon a full discovery of every thing. Tiaana, in the greatest distress, fell at his feet, and laid the whole blame upon the king, recommending at the same time that the captain should put him instantly to death: upon this the captain jumped on board with a loaded pistol in each hand, and the chiefs finding themselves not only detected, but baffled in their intentions, instantly hurried into their canoe, and left the vessel with the greatest expedition.

All intercourse between the English and natives would certainly have terminated now, was it not absolutely necessary to procure provisions for the remainder of their voyage. Accordingly, an humble apology was accepted of from the king, who threw all the blame upon his chiefs, and an occasional communication renewed with the natives, the English still retaining their utmost care and prudence. A quantity of hogs, fruit, &c. were now laid in. The king humbly requested the captain's forgiveness before his departure; while Tiaana still continued to lament the treachery of his countrymen. The captain readily shook hands with all, in hopes that as atonement for the past they might give their friendship and protection to whatever British vessels may hereafter reach this island.

On the 28th they anchored in Wittee Bay, in the island of Woahoo. The rudder-chains were cut up, in order to purchase provisions of several canoes by whom they were now visited.

From this to the 4th of October nothing material occurred, when they anchored safe in the roads of Macao.

The North West America, during her voyage amongst the Charlotte Isles, had procured about 215 excellent sea-otter skins, and about the same number of inferior ones: ignorant of the transactions which had taken place between Capt. Douglas and the Spanish commodore during her absence, she returned to King George's Sound on the 9th of June, 1789; immediately on her appearance, Don Joseph Stephen Martinez sent out several boats manned and equipped for war, and conveyed the North West America into the sound, where they anchored her close to the Spanish ships of war; they then took possession of the schooner, her cargo, &c. All the sea-otter skins were taken out of her, and put on board the Princess Royal, for their own use and advantage. Captain Funter and his men were made prisoners, and removed to the Spanish ships of war, where they were confined.

At last they were permitted by Don Martinez to return to China, in the American ship Columbia, where they arrived on the 2d of November 1789.

Such are the interesting Voyages of Captains Meares, Tipping, Douglas, &c. which are herein fully and properly united, for the satisfaction of our NUMEROUS Readers. We are happy, or to use a more significant expression, PROUD to think that the fruits of our labour, already exhibited, have acquired UNIVERSAL approbation. To retain that Accuracy and Attention which have so strongly recommended our Collection will be the greatest mark of Gratitude which we can shew. As we have, therefore, began, so we mean to continue. Our Readers shall next be presented with a NEW translation of Saugnier and Brisson's voyages to the coast of America; which we presume will be found equally interesting, entertaining and correct as any of the preceding narratives.

NEW,

NEW, COMPLETE, AND GENUINE
HISTORIES OF
Voyages to the COAST of AFRICA,

Undertaken and Performed in 1783, 1784, 1785, and 1786,

By Messrs. SAUGNIER and BRISSON,

IN THE

DEUX AMIES, St. FRANCOIS de SALES, GUSTAVUS
ADOLPHUS, FURET, St. CATHERINE, &c.

UNDER THE COMMAND OF

Captains CARVIN, SENEGAL, MARE, DUBUISON, LE TURC, &c.

With Full and Circumstantial ACCOUNTS of their SHIPWRECK, Subsequent
SLAVERY, Various DISTRESSES, &c.

Including some Interesting DETAILS of the MANNERS of the ARABS of the DESERT,
the EMPIRE of MOROCCO, &c. &c.

Being an Entire New HISTORY of the ADVENTURES and HAZARDS of SAUGNIER, &c.
with an Impartial ACCOUNT of the SLAVE TRADE as carried on at SENEGAL and
GALAM, Fully and Accurately Translated from the FRENCH, by W. H. PORTLOCK, Esq.

Which, with the several other VOYAGES and TRAVELS to be included in this Collection, will be Embellished
with a Variety of Elegant COPPER-PLATES, Drawn upon the Spots, and Engraved by Eminent Artists.

INTRODUCTION.

THE hero of the Voyage of our first book (Saugnier) after completing his studies, and having no turn for the ecclesiastical profession, for which he was designed, resolved on seizing the first opportunity that offered to indulge his juvenile thirst for fame. He received a tolerable education; but from the narrowness of his circumstances it was a matter of doubt what line of life he should pursue. His parents were then endeavouring to settle one of his brothers, who bought a grocer's stock in trade at a very reasonable rate. M. Saugnier staid with him on condition of paying his board, worked hard, and after a year's apprenticeship he was capable of earning wages at other shops in Paris, and in this way he passed seven years of his life with different grocers. Becoming weary at last of this dull life, and not being anxious to enter the church, he still retained an ardent inclination of trying his fortune in the colonies.

Two of his countrymen having projected a plan of settling at Senegal, M. Saugnier was very desirous to join in their scheme, but then he wanted money; and as he well knew his parents would never indulge his romantic intentions, he pretended to them that he was about entering into treaty with a grocer's stock in trade. This having met their approbation, they advanced what money was supposed to be necessary at first, and this was all, indeed, he could obtain.

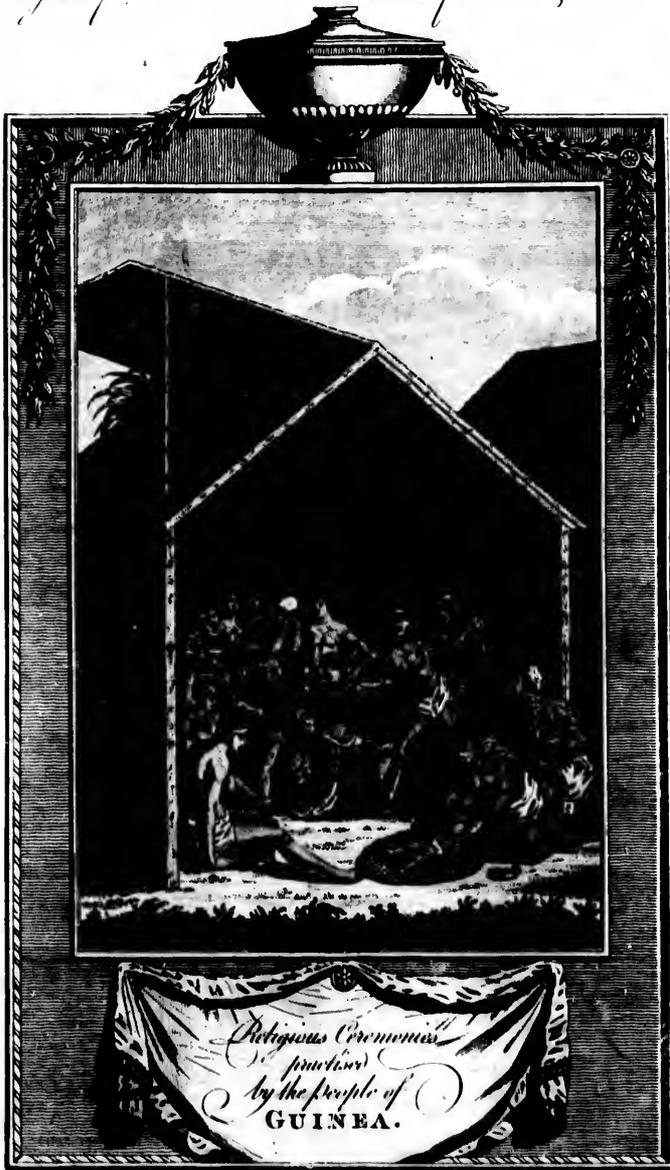
At Nantz the Marquis de Biccaria (of a Swiss family) second captain of the African battalion, was waiting for the Catherine, a vessel belonging to M. Aubry de la Fosse, the head of a commercial house in Senegal. The officer made a verbal agreement with M. Aubry, for M. Saugnier's and his companions passage, at 300 livres each. Accord-

ingly, when the vessel was ready, they set off; but as soon as they arrived at Nantz, M. Aubry understanding that it was their intention to settle at Senegal, became consequently alarmed at a competition in the colony, which might be prejudicial to the interests of his own house; he therefore demanded 1000 livres for the passage of each, without even allowing them any baggage but their trunks. M. Saugnier and his friends objected to these unexpected conditions, and were resolved to wait a more favourable opportunity. After delaying a fortnight at Nantz, they heard that there were vessels frequently fitted out at Bourdeaux for Senegal; where they accordingly repaired, travelling on foot behind their baggage. At Rochelle they put their things on board a Bourdeaux hoy, and proceeded on their journey. When they arrived at Bourdeaux, they began to be very uneasy about their clothes, &c. as they had not the precaution to insure their effects; however in three weeks their baggage arrived safe, which afforded no little satisfaction, as by this time their money was nearly expended, and they had not a change of clothes.

Count de Repentigny, brigadier of the king's armies, formerly colonel of the regiment, and afterwards governor of the French possessions in Africa, procured a passage immediately for M. Saugnier's two friends, on board the Bayonnois, while M. Saugnier was on the point of returning home in despair; however the Chevalier de Presnel, a gentleman of Picardy, having received orders to remain in France, M. Saugnier obtained his vacant place on board the Deux Amies, a vessel Dutch-built, of about 300 tons burthen, and commanded by Capt. Carvin.

BOOK

Engraved for PORTLOCK'S. *New* COLLECTION of VOYAGES & TRAVELS.



Published by Wm. Wood, April 5 1784.

A,

US

quent

BERT,

R, &c.
L. and
S, Esq.

ellished
artists.

ff, but
under-
ttle at
ompe-
cial to
re de-
ithout
runks.
unca-
a more
tright
ls fe-
where
behind
things
n their
ney be-
ce, as
fects,
d lak,
s time
ad not

king's
after-
frica,
gniet's
e M.
ome in
a gen-
eman
place
ilt, of
Capt.

OOK

*M. Saugnier embarks
His Imprudence
—Account of the
overfet—Long-tail
Captain attempts
Mors—Suffering*

M. Saugnier embarked on the 19th of the days in the river, failed in company, evening lost sight of the storm on their return, consequently obliged now intended to the wind abated to

On the 7th of the weather were now receiving no danger the hardships of the care of his vessel to youth, while he received a young man, intoxicated a watch, let the vessel soon felt the intelligence, and the captain received, instantly remedied the mischief. Every thing still fine, the captain gave some instructions, and again.

On the 14th of the watch, saw land at which they were. They took the lofty there are none at all that they were those

In consequence of the crew began to declare the vessel was proved to be the case at 1 o'clock in the morning watch had been relieved seen the land.

All the people in the account of the terrible striking on the sand, distinguished; horrified side, and the sailors receiving what they were been-coop, and another sea broke entirely over sight, the fury of the of the place where the and death before their recollection, and drove

The ship, being in water at first: about beat by the breakers, incessantly, the made appeared more urgent that she continued upon her in that position, laboured to lighten the nearer and nearer to the

The captain now put they might come to some embarrassed circumstances they were. Some asserted one of the Canary Islands of Africa. Being recoiled with fright, their whole safest means of reaching it was.

BOOK I.
CHAPTER I.

M. Saugnier embarks on board the Deux Amies—Violent Storms—Care of the Vessel submitted to the Lieutenant—His Imprudence—Captain alarmed—Evil remedied—A terrible Shock—Boatwain's Agility—Mate's Intrepidity—Account of the People where they are wrecked—Their Cruelty to the Mate—The Captain's Resolves—Barge overset—Long-boat lost—Intrepidity of the Cooper—Captain becomes desperate—M. Bardon's Resolution—The Captain attempts his own Life—Bardon drowned—M. Saugnier, and others, swim to Shore—Behaviour of the Moors—Sufferings of M. Saugnier.

M. Saugnier embarked on board the *Deux Amies* the 19th of December, 1783; they were ten days in the river, detained by contrary winds. They sailed in company with the *Bayonnoise*, but towards evening lost sight of her. They met with violent storms on their reaching Cape Finisterre, and were consequently obliged to lay-to for five days. They now intended to put into the nearest port, but as the wind abated they proceeded again to sea.

On the 7th of January, 1784, as the wind and weather were now very favourable, the captain perceiving no danger, and exceedingly fatigued with the hardships of the preceding days, submitted the care of his vessel to his lieutenant, an inexperienced youth, while he retired to his cabin to repose. This young man, intoxicated with the idea of commanding a watch, let the helmsman steer as he pleased. The vessel soon felt the ill consequence of this negligence, and the captain, aroused by a shock which he received, instantaneously ran upon deck, and remedied the mischief with wonderful presence of mind. Every thing being now safe, and the weather still fine, the captain, after giving his lieutenant some instructions, submitted the vessel to his care again.

On the 14th the mate, taking the lieutenant's watch, saw land about three leagues distant, for which they were running with the wind abaft. They took the lofty mountains for Mogadore, where there are none at all; however, they soon discovered that they were those of *Wel de Non*.

In consequence of the lieutenant's imprudence, the crew began to murmur, and several sailors declared the vessel was in imminent danger, which proved to be the case on the 17th of January, at four o'clock in the morning, just after the lieutenant's watch had been relieved, without any one's having seen the land.

All the people in the cabins hastened on deck, on account of the terrible shock occasioned by their striking on the sand-bank, but nothing could be distinguished; horrible cries were heard on every side, and the sailors ran about the deck, not knowing what they were doing. One laid hold of a hen-coop, and another of the rigging, while the sea broke entirely over them; the darkness of the night, the fury of the waves, the officers' ignorance of the place where they had run the ship a-ground, and death before their eyes, deprived them of all recollection, and drove them to despair.

The ship, being Dutch built, made very little water at first: about half after five, being much beat by the breakers, which followed one another incessantly, she made a great deal, and the danger appeared more urgent. The boatwain perceiving that she continued upright, and wishing to keep her in that position, cut away the masts, and laboured to lighten the vessel, that she might drive nearer and nearer to the shore.

The captain now put a stop to all business, that they might come to some kind of resolution in these embarrassed circumstances. They knew not where they were. Some asserted that they were ashore on one of the Canary Islands, and others on the coast of Africa. Being recovered, however, from their first fright, their whole attention was turned to the safest means of reaching the land, be it wherever it was.

They were about a quarter of a league from it, nor could they distinguish any thing on the shore. M. Decham, the master's mate, about 19 years of age, of a bold and intrepid disposition, now tied the deep sea-line round his waist, that it might serve him to tow a somewhat thicker rope ashore, that would have been a great assistance to the crew in case of the ship's going to pieces, and bravely leaped into the sea.

The rocks, among which he was obliged to swim, obliged him to let go the line; so that his courage was unavailing. Overcome with fatigue and cold, he sheltered himself from the wind in a cask that was now carried to the beach by the sea. As soon as he entered it, they saw an animal running along the sea-side, which those in the ship supposed a tiger; it was a dog belonging to some Moors, who soon after made their appearance.

Those who occupy the country where they were wrecked are called *Mongcars*, governed by chiefs of hordes, but who acknowledge no sovereign but the Emperor of Morocco, to whom however they pay no tribute, and whose very laws they do not observe. These people are miserably poor, destitute of every thing, and live only upon what they can find or steal. The earth they inhabit being insufficient to supply their wants, they eagerly seize every thing that seems likely to satisfy them. They came running down in crowds to the sea-side, and made a most hideous noise. Upon which the wretched Decham left his cask, and throwing himself into the sea, attempted to swim back to the ship; but he was soon stopped by the Moors, who pursued him. They forced him back to the beach, stripped him of his shirt, and led him to the top of the hill. The crew now standing on the fore part of the ship, stretched out their arms towards them, and implored their mercy; but their weak voices did not reach them, nor did they take notice of their gestures. They saw them with their glasses make a hole in the sand, wherein they put the wretched Decham, and covered him.

He was guarded by two men, while the others returned to the beach; part of them leaped into the sea, and swam towards the vessel; the rest were employed in picking up the fragments of the casks which the sailors had thrown overboard. They then put fire to them, ran to fetch Decham, and carried him between four, and exposed him to the flames. They now handed him about from one to another, sometimes suspending him by the feet, and at other times holding him transversely. Being joined by another party, they began to dance round the fire, and make a horrid noise.

The sailors, not being able to conceive their reasons for thus tantalizing their countryman, supposed they were about killing in order to eat him. Indeed their imagination worked so strong, that some declared they saw them tearing him to pieces, and concluding them to be cannibals, they became deaf to all orders and advice, and declared that if they came on board they would fight while they had life. Thus, impressed with fear and the workings of fancy, they were for some time before they could be prevailed upon to lighten their vessel, and put their arms in order. As soon, however, as they began, the captain ordered them to leave off, with

view of repairing well armed in parties to the beach. For this purpose the barge was hoisted out, and four sailors, who were resolved to make a desperate defence, went into her, being provided with two swivels loaded with cartridge shot. However, this project failed, by the overloading of the barge. The men were saved by ropes, which were thrown out. They now resolved upon using the long-boat, and suggested the idea of laying a deck over her; the Captain supposing by these means to reach the Canary Islands, while others thought it would be easier to make Senegal; which opinion at last prevailed. After all their struggling, they were only able to nail on a few planks, and having now hoisted her out, they moored her along-side with stout ropes, for fear of its oversetting like the barge. Their provisions, arms, money, &c. were now put on board. They embarked, but were soon obliged to get out again, the sea ran so very high, and one of the ropes by which she was moored breaking, she dashed with great violence against the ship's side: however she was moored again, but became so full of leaks that it was impossible to hoist her in: they were therefore obliged to leave her to the mercy of the waves. The Moors perceiving her nearly upon the beach, seized and hauled her over the sand, and having taken every thing out of her, set fire to her. The crew, ignorant of their customs and laws, looked upon this as the greatest cruelty and indignity.

The vessel made but little progress, and was still suffering perceptibly: she beat towards the middle; her deck was loosened, and every thing threatened a speedy destruction. What still increased the crew's consternation, was the little prospect there appeared of an asylum upon shore, even if they were so fortunate as to reach it.

The cooper, who was a man of amazing intrepidity, and an excellent swimmer, declaring that suspense was to him more terrible than death itself, proposed swimming ashore, and told his friends that he would make them a signal if the Moors did not kill him. His surprising resolution astonished all, and he leaped without any hesitation into the sea. About a dozen Moors went to meet him, and having assisted him in reaching the beach, there stripped him of his shirt, and exposed him as they had Decham to a fire, while they danced round him, making a hideous noise. After this ceremony he was conveyed from the crew's sight, who were still in a state of ignorance whether he was killed or not.

Captain Carlin, who had hitherto supported his fate with becoming fortitude, now lost all his patience, and desperately resolved upon blowing up the vessel; this however M. Bardon, second lieutenant of the African battalion, opposed: this gentleman with a drawn sword, seconded by the officers, threatened to destroy any man that would approach the magazine, where there were several thousand weight of powder. Upon this the captain became cool, and begged forgiveness: the crew now retired to the fore part of the vessel. Messrs. Sauguier, Follie, a cabin-boy, and a landsman still watched the motions of the captain, who threw himself upon his bed, then rose, came upon deck, and was so alarmed at the dances and fires of the Moors, that he returned to his bed, began to pray, and leaning down his head, discharged two pistols in his mouth. At first he was thought dead, but the surgeon having dressed his wounds, perceived that he had missed the vital parts. The crew were, however, exceedingly discouraged by his lacerated countenance, and some proposed tying a swivel round his waist, and throwing him into the sea, lest the Moors should ascribe his wounds to them. This cruel resolve was however over-ruled.

The next morning at break of day, the mate assembled all hands on deck, and they were now employed in making a raft, intending to wait for the ebb-tide.

The Moors perceiving all quiet upon deck, about 11 o'clock swam to the vessel with an intention of boarding her. The crew upon hearing their noise, threw out ropes to them and took them on board: they now paid no attention to answers or questions, but proceeded immediately to plunder. The crew finding themselves disappointed in obtaining assistance, and anxious to reach land, got the raft into the water about two o'clock: ten only could find room therein, four of whom were washed off by the violence of the surf, and M. Bardon in consequence thereof drowned. The Moors who leaped instantaneously overboard, preserved two of the others, and the mate who was the fourth, returned to the vessel. The others, among whom was the captain, landed safe, and were conducted by the Moors to a hill, where they had kindled a fire, and there stripped and left them. Those that remained on board were now employed about another raft, which could only contain five persons, four of whom reached the shore without any accident, the other was assisted by a Moor.

Only six now remained in the wreck, among whom was M. Sauguier: there was no possibility of making another raft, so that it was suggested to get ashore by the help of bundles, which were thrown into the sea. Sauguier was the first who made the attempt, and his good success encouraged the remainder to follow his example, which they did with equal safety.

They were all assembled on the hill round a great fire, where they were left by the Moors for half an hour. On their return, which was about half an hour after, they examined them according to custom, and conducted them half a league up the country. Here they divided, one party having returned towards the beach, while M. Sauguier and the rest of his fellow-sufferers were left with the other, who began to dispute among themselves, who should be masters of those intended slaves.

They now rushed upon them with drawn daggers, while the helpless wretches, thinking they were about to destroy them, and anxious to procrastinate their lives a little longer, took to flight. They were pursued by the Moors, who were struggling one with the other to seize them. A bloody conflict ensued: several of the French were desperately wounded. Two Moors, who had stopped M. Sauguier, furiously contended with each other, while one insisted that he was his slave; this provoking the other, he endeavoured to settle the dispute by stabbing M. Sauguier, who parrying off the blow that was made at him, had two fingers hurt by the sabre. His adversary, seizing this opportunity, proved his claim by murdering this assassin.

M. Sauguier was now led by his new master to the place where his relations, wives, slaves, &c. were. They applied fire to his wound, which stopped the progress of the poison, and stanch'd the blood; also plants dipped in turtle oil, which effected a perfect cure.

As the Moors still continued to dispute among themselves upon every trifling business, M. Sauguier every now and then supposed that they were sacrificing his wretched fellow-sufferers. Two of his countrymen he saw knocked down by his side; and while they were bringing faggots to renew the fire, and stones to support it, he began to think that they were preparing torments: however their dressing his wound partly removed his apprehensions. Still he was tormented by the women, who were dancing round him, expressing both joy and wonder. Out of curiosity, they plucked his hair. In the evening they gave him some milk to drink, which was very acceptable.

The Arabs of Laara were the only persons present at the wreck, but notwithstanding they were obliged to share the spoils with the Moors of Biladulgarid, which is a well-armed warlike nation, known also by the name of Monselemines. It was to an Arab of this nation that M. Sauguier was slave.

ut
of
fe,
d:
f-
he
ng
elt
ld
off
n-
ed
he
ed
he
he
re,
e-
ner
of
the

om
ng
ore
che
pt.
to
ty.
eat
half
to
the
re-
nd
the
bo

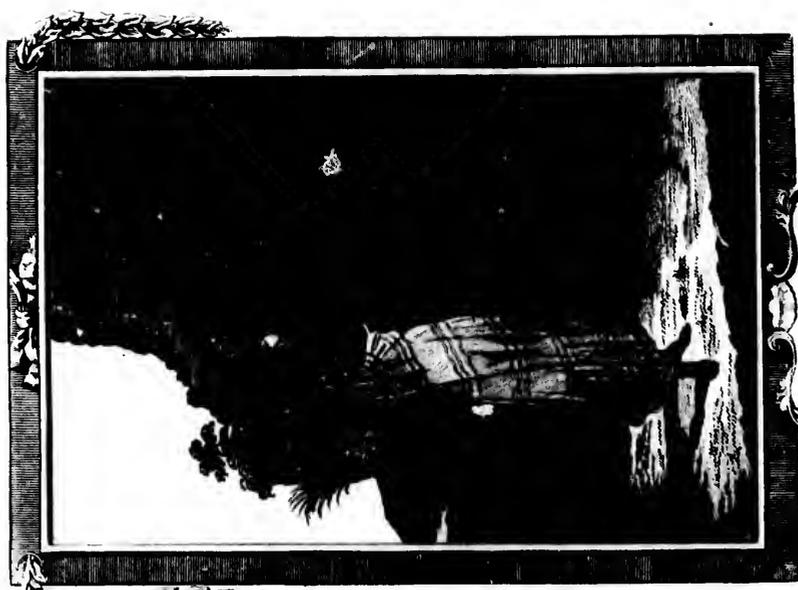
ers,
cre
ate
ere
one
fict
ely
ng-
hle
ng
by
ow
the
ty,

to
ere.
the
ed;
d a

ng
ier
ri-
his
nd
re,
hat
ref-
ns.
ere
er.
the
sch

ent
ed
id,
lo
ab
P.

M. Saugnier for
Is carried av
velling—Dis
Description of
Anxiety, Etc.
tended like a
Merchants—
Their mutual



A FEMALE of MOROCCO



A FEMALE Habesha, inhabiting the
Seydis

THE unfort
captivity p
upon the beach
of Zaara were
and allowed e
which their ma
to cover them
belonged to t
this naturally l
who belonged
comfortable fit
people were ac
river of Senega
hopes that if h
with an opport
Impressed wi
project of escap
kept his wives a
watched, about
made for the in
ignorant where
velled half a lea
of Moors: the
which were full
him with goat-
milk to drink.
Though exc
nights without
walk; at night
One day, as f
were prepared.
to get up behin
of the party be
to travel in this
or where he wa
He arrived at
tents, where he
the fatigue of t
remained only tw
(who were nake
proceeded towa
rivers, and afte
stopped. On t
from M. Saugn
Upon seeing t
which were in
of his feet with
with sand and
to walk withou
These people
vessels that cou
war which the
cantons preven
Three days th
Finding it imp
returned by th
journey of 30
During this l
was milk, mi
barley-meal or
There is ver
if cultivated,
cessaries of life
fles, which M
Moors, in wh
them for him.
they contented
and cheerfully

CHAPTER II.

M. Saugnier forms the Project of escaping—Effects it—Meets another Party of Moors—Their Behaviour to him—Is carried away by a Moor—Taken from that Moor by others—Their Intentions of selling him—Tedious travelling—Disappointed in their Purpose—Obliged to return—Their Kindness and Humanity to M. Saugnier—Description of the Country, Customs, &c.—M. Saugnier sold—His Occupations—Sold again—His Sufferings, Anxiety, &c.—Sold again—Sets off for Cape Non—Termination of his Sufferings—No longer a Slave, but attended like a Master—Is allowed to see his Countrymen—Proposals for his Liberty by the English and French Merchants—M. Saugnier, and five of his Countrymen redeemed—How his Countrymen were previously treated—Their mutual Congratulations—Further Adventures.

THE unfortunate slaves were the day after their captivity permitted by their masters to assemble upon the beach. Those who belonged to the Arabs of Zaara were treated with the greatest kindness, and allowed either skins or some of the clothes which their masters had plundered from the wreck to cover them. M. Saugnier, and the rest who belonged to the Monselemines, were all naked: this naturally led M. Saugnier to suppose that those who belonged to the former tribe possessed a more comfortable situation; and understanding that these people were accustomed to see Europeans in the river of Senegal and at Portaudie, he conceived hopes that if he belonged to them he might meet with an opportunity of being carried to Senegal.

Impressed with this idea, he began to form the project of escaping from the place where his master kept his wives and servants. As he was very little watched, about nine o'clock in the morning he made for the interior part of the country, though ignorant where he was going. Scarce had he travelled half a league, when he was met by a party of Moors: these men conducted him to their tents, which were full of camels and goats. They covered him with goat-skins sewed together, and gave him milk to drink.

Though exceedingly fatigued, he passed two nights without sleep. All day he was obliged to walk; at night they stopped to rest themselves.

One day, as soon as the sun appeared, the camels were prepared. A Moor now obliged M. Saugnier to get up behind him, and having left all the rest of the party behind by the sea-side, he continued to travel in this way, without knowing what for or where he was going.

He arrived about the middle of the day at other tents, where he was permitted to rest himself after the fatigue of the preceding days. Here he remained only two days, for three well-armed Arabs (who were naked) took him away by violence, and proceeded towards the south. They crossed several rivers, and after a tedious march of 16 days they stopped. On the first day the blood which issued from M. Saugnier's feet had marked the ground. Upon seeing this the Arabs drew out the thorns which were in them, and having scraped the soles of his feet with their daggers, plastered them over with sand and tar, by which means he was enabled to walk without any pain.

These people intended to sell M. Saugnier to the vessels that come to Senegal to buy gum; but the war which then raged between the princes of those cantons prevented the execution of their design. Three days they spent in a wood of gum trees. Finding it impossible to sell him at Senegal, they returned by the same way they came, and after a journey of 30 days they arrived at their tent. During this laborious march, M. Saugnier's food was milk, mixed with camel's urine, and a little barley-meal or millet stirred up in brackish water.

There is very excellent land in the forest, which, if cultivated, would no doubt produce all the necessaries of life. They found an abundance of truffles, which M. Saugnier relished very much; the Moors, in whose company he was, often procuring them for him. Being accustomed to live on milk, they contented themselves with that of their camels, and cheerfully denied themselves their roots on his

account. Indeed M. Saugnier was used exceedingly well by his conductors; they treated him with humanity, and procured him whatever seemed to please him the most, whenever it was in their power.

M. Saugnier was so sincerely attached to them, that it was not without regret he saw them set off the day after their arrival; nor did he ever see them again. During the journey, when they stopped in the evening, they went themselves in quest of wood for the night, and left him to take care of the camels and baggage: very often too, when they perceived he was much fatigued, they would stop two or three hours till he rested.

The horde to which he belonged consisted of 52 tents, sometimes united, sometimes divided, according as the convenience of pasturage required. These tents are made of a black and stout stuff, woven of goat's and camel's hair, and about 18 inches wide; they are sewed together, and two cross sticks support the tent. All their furniture consists of some straw ropes for their cattle, an earthen pot to warm their milk or boil their meat, a ladle, a mat, a knife, a pike, and a great stone, which serves them as a hammer to drive in the pins of the tent. Thus happy, though poor, they live in perfect tranquillity. The men keep their flocks, &c. the women spin, dress their victuals, &c. Both sexes wear goat-skins alike.

The finery of the men consists in the beauty of their arms, such as sabres, daggers, and mulkets, and in a string of large white chrysol; that of the women in necklaces of amber, coral, or glass beads of every kind, in gold or silver ear-rings, according to their wealth, &c.

M. Saugnier passed two days without being desired to do any work; on the third he was sent to fetch wood for the tent. For this purpose an old cord was given him, and a child accompanied him, to shew him which was the best for the purpose.

Notwithstanding the whole country be covered with bushes, they are so careful in preserving them, that they never touch a green stick. M. Saugnier was frequently two whole hours seeking dead wood; and when his faggot was sufficient for the day's consumption he carried it to the tent, while his naked shoulders, lacerated by the burthen, used to be bloody all over.

Pleased with his punctuality and assiduity in furnishing the necessary quantity of wood, he was next employed in making butter. For this purpose they put their milk in a goat's skin, suspend it on three sticks, and shake it for about two hours. Such was his business during his stay with these people.

An opportunity at last arrived of disposing of M. Saugnier, when his master received a barrel of meal, and an iron bar about nine feet long, in exchange for his person.

Early the next day they set off, and walked for nine successive days. It is the custom of all the people of Africa to begin their journey at sun-rise, and not to stop till it is about 15 feet. In the daytime they eat nothing but a small wild fruit resembling the jujube-tree, which is in great plenty.

As soon as each day's journey was over, M. Saugnier was obliged, like the negro slaves, to go and fetch wood, to keep them warm during the night, and to protect them from the serpents and wild

beasts that over-run the country. A little barley-meal, mixed up, as before, with brackish water, was now his only food.

These people are all exceedingly kind and hospitable. When a stranger arrives, they greet him with the salutation of friendship, and often deny themselves food, for the sake of supplying him with refreshments.

As soon as M. Saugnier had arrived among the Moors in rebellion against the Emperor of Morocco, he was sold again. His new master gave him no rest, sending him the very next day to keep his camels, the care of the goats being generally entrusted to children. Thus abandoned to his own reflections, and totally ignorant of the fate of his fellow-sufferers, he passed every day in the midst of the mountains.

His long tedious journeys left him without an idea of the country he was in, and the hope of his deliverance began to vanish. He saw no period to his misfortunes; they grew more and more intolerable; his strength perceptibly diminished, and every time he changed his master he found it still a change for the worse.

Each evening, on his return to the tent, plenty of camel's milk was given him, but the unfrequency of his meals, and the poorness of this fare, would certainly never have sufficed to keep up his strength, if he had not, during the day, provided some truffles, and other wild roots, which necessity had made him acquainted with while on the road with his first masters.

M. Saugnier was sold again, his health being already impaired, and was conducted by his new master to his tent, where he did not remain long. Being very poor, he carried him to a neighbouring market, to endeavour to make some profit by his person. He there met with an Arab, who bought him for two young camels, and sold him at the market the day after. He received money in exchange.

In Zaara trade is only carried on by barter. It was in this place that M. Saugnier saw money for the first time: the sight of which revived his hopes, as he began to think he was not far from a civilized state.

Every new master now treated him worse than the last; while, by being thus handed over, he was approaching the Morocco dominions, where he would have had still more to suffer, if he had been unfortunate enough to belong to any one but the Emperor.

When it was dark they set off, and took their way towards Cape Non. Four Arabs, who were at the market while the Moor was buying him, lay in wait for them when the night was coming on. They were only armed with their daggers, and as M. Saugnier's present master knew them, he had no distrust of their intentions. Seeing one of them in the act of stabbing him, M. Saugnier cried out; his master avoided the blow, and shot his adversary dead. The others immediately attacked him; M. Saugnier now ran to his assistance, and with the help of his stick, stretched one of them at his feet; he stabbed him instantly, while the two others fled. They took nothing but the daggers of the two that were killed, and continued their journey. This master instead of selling M. Saugnier, as was his intention, now turned him over to his brother, who was remarkably rich.

Here terminated his sufferings. He was obeyed by the negro slaves; the women gave him every thing he could desire; he had no longer any work to do; and if he went out with the cattle it was for his own pleasure.

M. Saugnier began to have some knowledge of the Arabic, and was promised to be conducted to *Hali Laze*, the chief of Glimi, that he might be conveyed, as soon as possible, to the country subject to the dominion of the Emperor of Morocco. He

remained eight days at his house without belonging to him; at length, however, he bought him for a hundred and fifty dollars, all in little pieces, of the value of ten *sous*. As these pieces were fifteen hundred in number, for fear of any mistake, M. Saugnier and his master counted them over for two days running.

The chief of Glimi had a house, which in that country might well pass for a superb palace. He had a great number of negroes, negresses, horses, cows, camels, and almost every thing that is to be seen in their farm-houses. He had been formerly at Paris, in the suit of an Ambassador of Morocco; zealous of discontent, and the stronger one of saving his head, had forced him to take the command of the Moors in rebellion against the Emperor, and he resisted the power of that prince by the force of arms.

This chief treated M. Saugnier well, exacted no labour from him, and gave him clothes; he was now sheltered from the inclemency of the air, and had straw given him, of which he made a bed. He had two meals a day: indeed he had food in abundance, and frequently shared his dinner either with a sailor of Provence, who happened to be then at Glimi, or with M. Lanaspze, their mate, and son of the owner; for on the market-days M. Saugnier was allowed to have some of his countrymen to regale. He used to ask the women for victuals, and was never refused. This treatment soon restored our hero to his wonted strength and health.

Proposals were now made for M. Saugnier's liberty, by the French and English merchants who were settled at Mogadore, as soon as they were informed of his misfortune by the different brokers who were dispersed about the country for the sake of commerce; and Bentahar, a Moor, who lodged at his master's, bought him for 180 dollars. M. Saugnier was witness to the bargain, and argued himself concerning the price of his ransom; nor did the Moor buy him but on the assurance M. Saugnier gave him that he would be paid by the French merchants, the moment he should make himself known at Mogadore.

At the same time five of his companions were got together, namely, M. Follie, a native of Paris, and officer of administration of colonies, whom he purchased for 250 dollars. M. Decham, master's mate, a native of Bourdeaux, and the first who got ashore, cost him 95 dollars. The boatswain and two sailors were sold for only 85 or 90 each.

From the moment M. Saugnier left the wreck till his arrival at Glimi, the principal city of Cape Non, he was ignorant of the fate of the rest of the crew.

Their mate, M. Lanaspze, was in the same place, but left free from all constraint by his masters. He was not bought, though it could not be ascertained what motive could prevent Bentahar from entering into treaty for his ransom. As soon as he heard of M. Saugnier's arrival he came to see him, and found him in the outward court-yard: he looked like a walking spectre. At first M. Saugnier did not recollect him, nor did he remember him; taunted by the sun, wearing their hair and beards like the Moors, and dressed in their fashion; there was nothing surprising in their being so much altered. In a few moments, however, they were in one another's arms. Their words died away upon their lips; but the tears that trickled down their cheeks expressed the warmth of their sentiments. They passed the whole day together, and related their sufferings to each other with satisfaction.

M. Saugnier understanding M. Follie was in the same town with them, set off immediately, accompanied by the mate and several Moors, and repaired to the place where he was detained. M. Follie belonged to a cruel Moor, who treated him with the greatest barbarity; he slept upon the hard ground, and was denied the smallest liberty. Little accom-

tomed to fatigue, consequence of to force him to v

There was in t belonging to th master; he lived with another, no tation. Bentahar off with them, an out a ransom; bu was removed up ing what became own fault, in k No doubt he fou the very moment for him to obtain

M. Saugnier le they had all been persons insisted this general per them to acquaint that they had as y who had followed that as to themse treatment; that t to unload the ship grind corn, fetch that they were cr without even kno wounds with whic confirmed the tru

While they con escaped such rigor the Moors, after t their masters, had that several Arabs the ship, from wh powder; that man ed; and that the c days with no suste knocked on the he report of his fate M. Saugnier's, for the crew who cert

The city of Glim met with Jews: th well as in all the Croix, almost all through their han

M. Saugnier and fr the House of some Town—Arrival at Description of the Jealousy—The En to Slavery again, Their Appearance Kindness of the River of Lions—Ostend—Set off fr

M. SAUGNIER having been of Bentahar the A with no little facin as St. Croix, (whic travelled by night f Arabs, and becomi When about half a small rivulet of c road which was th paired to a large b they proceeded (stil They were five day St. Croix.

The following da No. 13.

tomed to fatigue, he was covered with sores, the consequence of the blows given him by the Moors, to force him to walk beyond his strength.

There was in the same place a sailor of Provence, belonging to their ship, who was claimed by no master; he lived sometimes with one, sometimes with another, nobody giving him the least molestation. Bentabar was in hopes that he would set off with them, and thought he should have him without a ransom; but the very day of their departure he was removed up the country, without their knowing what became of him. He lost his liberty by his own fault, in keeping for ever with the Moors. No doubt he found himself obliged to remain, at the very moment it would have been the most easy for him to obtain his liberty.

M. Saugnier learned from his fellow-slaves, that they had all been uneasy as to his fate; that several persons insisted they had seen him killed; that this general persuasion of the crew had induced them to acquaint the French consul with his death; that they had as yet no information respecting those who had followed their masters to the south of Africa; that as to themselves, they had met with horrible treatment; that they had been forced by hard blows to unload the ship; that they had been obliged to grind corn, fetch wood, and attend the cattle; and that they were cruelly beat for the smallest fault, without even knowing they had done amiss. The wounds with which they were covered, but too well confirmed the truth of their recital.

While they congratulated M. Saugnier on having escaped such rigorous treatment, they told him that the Moors, after fighting to know who should be their masters, had at length set fire to the wreck; that several Arabs had been killed by splinters from the ship, from whence they had not taken out the powder; that many of their people had been wounded; and that the captain, after having lived twelve days with no sustenance but a little brandy, had been knocked on the head upon the beach. Perhaps the report of his fate was as ill-founded as that of M. Saugnier's, for M. Follie was the only one of all the crew who certified his death.

The city of Glimi was the first place where they met with Jews; they were very numerous there, as well as in all the towns between that place and St. Croix, almost all the trade that is carried on passing through their hands. The Mahometans of these

cantons treat them like slaves. Cruel as was the Arab, M. Follie's master, and however determined in his enmity to the Christians, he told that gentleman to suffer nothing from the Jews, who had gone his halves in the purchase.

When M. Follie lived with the Jew, M. Saugnier used to go and see him without any reserve, accompanied, it is true, by Moors attached to the interests of his master; nor did the Jew ever dare to refuse M. Follie leave to go out and walk with him. The Moors that accompanied him were surprised they should ask it, and gave him to understand that he might go out when he pleased, and that they would bear the Jew, if he dared to offer him the smallest affront.

The Jew of Glimi, whose name was Good Jacob, had received orders from Mess. Cabaner and Depra to assist these unfortunate people; the letter imported that he might spend 200 ounces of silver to supply their wants. They did not know that by the word ounce is understood in Barbary a little piece of money of about the value of ten *seus*; and as the letter was written in French and Arabic, M. Saugnier persuaded his master that 200 dollars were the sum the Jew was ordered to spend on their account. He put a musket-ball in one scale, and in the other small pieces of money till they amounted to the same weight. Induced by this representation, the Arabs obliged the Jew to dress them in the most elegant manner.

Their mistake was of the greatest use to them, and guarded them against the excessive cold on the summit of Mount Atlas, which they were obliged to cross, and which is at all times covered with snow.

M. Saugnier's share of the expence amounted to about 15 dollars and a half. M. Follie, M. Lanaspze, and himself, were the only three who had Moorish cloaks.

It being out of the power of M. Lanaspze to accompany M. Saugnier and his party; at the time of parting Lanaspze gave Saugnier nine Louis d'ors in gold, his watch-chain, and a seal, which he had fortunately concealed from his master's knowledge, by holding the little parcel in his hands when he was stripped, and then concealing it in the sand. Afterwards, when permitted to put on an old pair of breeches, he put the parcel into his pocket, where he still kept it.

CHAPTER III.

M. Saugnier and five of his Companions at liberty—They set off for Mogadore—Dread of being surpris'd—Go to the House of some Jews—Roads very bad—Journey severe—They meet with an uninhabited House—Ruins of a Town—Arrival at St. Croix—Meet a good Reception—Conducted to the House of Mess. Cabanes and Depras—Description of the City of Mogadore, St. Croix, &c.—Of the Governor of Mogadore—A remarkable Instance of Jealousy—The Emperor in a Rage—Bentabar takes to flight—His Anger appeas'd—M. Saugnier, &c. reduced to Slavery again, but more tranquil than before—Orders to set off for Morocco—Arrival—Prior's contumely—Their Appearance before the Emperor—His Kindness—Gives them their Liberty—Remarks thereupon—Further Kindness of the Emperor—They set off, and pass through Cities of Barbary—A strange Punishment—Pass the River of Lions—See several Places—Set off for Cadix—Embark on board the St. Francois de Sales—Arrive at Osend—Set off for Dunkirk—Delay at Li,je—Arrive at St. Quentin.

M. SAUGNIER, and five of his companions, having been now redeemed, by the great care of Bentabar the Arab, they set off for Mogadore, with no little satisfaction. They proceeded as far as St. Croix, (which the Arabs call Agader) having travelled by night for fear of being surpris'd by the Arabs, and becoming their slaves again.

When about half a league from Glimi they crossed a small rivulet of clear water, and now leaving the road which was the greatest thoroughfare, they repaired to a large house on the plain, from whence they proceeded (still by night) to a very thick wood. They were five days on the road between Glimi and St. Croix.

The following day they went to the house of some

Jews, which was situated on an eminence; here they passed the night, and from thence entered defiles, running parallel to the sea. As the roads were very bad, obstructed by mountains and thick woods, this day's journey was exceedingly severe.

They forded a small river about eight leagues from St. Croix, near which they found an house built in the French manner, which was then uninhabited. Half a league from this are the ruins of a town, which seems by its situation and extent to have been once a place of consequence. They could not learn the name thereof. They now descended to well cultivated plains, which brought them to the seaside. They then crossed the river which waters the walls of St. Croix on their camels.

As soon as they had reached St. Croix, each Christian was obliged to pay about five sours. That town contains nothing remarkable. It was formerly one of the most commercial of all Barbary; but it is now almost in ruins, and only defended by a miserable fort, with twelve pieces of cannon, and even these are of no service.

They slept near a fountain, the work of the Portuguese, who was once in possession of the country. From thence they continued their journey without accident, notwithstanding the difficulty of roads cut through the rocks, and the precipices and forests of the Atlas mountains, the chain of which begins at St. Croix de Barbarie.

They met with a very good reception from the English merchants to whom they were addressed, and who conducted them to the French house of Messrs. Cabanes and Depras. They found on their arrival there the most satisfactory letters from M. Mure, the French vice-consul, residing at Salle, who, having nothing so much at heart as their deliverance, had employed every means to redeem them from slavery without making known his intentions.

The city of Mogadore, so called by the Christians, from the name of a small island, which is situated to the south of it, and in which consists the goodness of the harbour, is only known to the Arabs by that of Souera. It is a new town, and the only place where the Christians have full liberty of trade. It runs out into the sea on a rock, and is surrounded by sand on every side; towards the harbour it has three strong batteries for its defence, the principal one of twenty-four pounders of the same number.

There are about two hundred and fifty French renegades, all in the pay of the Emperor, who have the care of these batteries. The town is inhabited by Christians of every nation, by Jews, to whom the Emperor advances a capital, and by Moors, engaged in trade. It is the best fortified and most commercial of the whole empire of Morocco. The Christians have two priests there of the Spanish mission, and enjoy their religion without any molestation.

A great trade was formerly carried on at St. Croix de Barbarie, but the reigning Emperor, the founder of Mogadore, ordered the merchants to remove to the latter town, and St. Croix is now a wilderness.

M. Saugnier cannot conceive the motive that prevents the French from giving their real names to the towns of this country. Every thing in that regard is totally changed. St. Croix is only known to the Arabs by the name of Agader, Mogadore by that of Souera, and so on. The name given to those cities in France not being known in the country, the French travellers who visit Barbary are frequently perplexed.

When the governor of Mogadore was informed of their arrival, he sent for them to his house. The governor is a man of a mild and affable disposition, can neither write nor read, and owes his elevation to the post he holds to the signal marks of bravery he shewed in the presence of the Emperor. He had their names taken down by the Mahometan priests, and sent off a courier immediately, to inform the Emperor of their arrival.

The Emperor, on receiving the news, fell into a dreadful fit of rage. Two months before he had given the most positive orders to the governors of the provinces in the vicinity of the desert, to use their utmost endeavours to extricate them from the hands of the wandering Arabs.

Being remarkably jealous of his authority, he looked upon this affair as an attack upon it; nor could he bear the idea of Christians being more readily obeyed, in his own dominions, than himself. He broke out into threats, condemned to death the Arab, whom the English had sent to their assistance, wrote to the merchants in the severest terms, threatening to burn alive the first person who, from that time, should dare to interfere in the redemption of

a captive of any nation whatever. In consequence of this the captains of all the ships in the road were forbid to receive M. Saugnier and his companions; a strict watch was kept over them, nor were they suffered to go to any distance from the city.

The Arab, Bentahar, having received timely information of the Emperor's designs, and of the sentence of death pronounced against him, saved his life and his fortune by a hasty retreat to the people who had kept M. Saugnier and the rest in slavery.

However, a few presents, ingeniously administered to the favourite sultanas, soon dispelled the anger of the prince. He was made to understand that the French had not been bought by the merchants, but that their relations, informed of their misfortunes, had sent them the necessary sums of money; and that, ignorant of his laws and will, they might themselves, without meaning to offend him, have entered into treaty for their ransom.

These arguments had due weight, but he was determined to have them in his power; therefore, on the 15th of May, the governor of Mogadore sent for them to the public square. There, by order of his master, he repaid the French merchants the money they advanced for their deliverance. He told them that the Emperor pardoned them, as well as the Arab, whom they had employed to put an end to their distress; he then delivered them into their hands, after having made known to the people that they belonged to the Emperor.

Though a while ago they were free, they were now again reduced to slavery; they were not, however, required to work. The manner in which they were received by the governor, the respect shewn them by the Moors, the liberty they were left at to go where they pleased, the accounts they heard of the rest of the crew, every thing in short contributed to restore tranquillity to their minds, and make them easy.

This was the first time they received French dresses. A coat, waistcoat, and breeches of blue cloth, three shirts, two handkerchiefs, a silk cravat, a hat, a night-cap, and two pair of shoes, were given to each of them; an expence that might amount to thirty-six dollars a-piece.

They had been told that the Emperor's son, the governor of Teroudan, had advanced towards Cape Non, at the head of an army of eight thousand men. His orders were to get the French, either by money or by force. They conceived hopes that this enterprise would be attended with success; but the French merchants were of a different opinion. They told them that the delay in the execution of the Emperor's orders is solely occasioned by the avarice of that prince. He generally employs the Jews to advance the necessary money, and does not reimburse them. He thinks them but too happy to have an opportunity of obeying him at the expence of their fortune, and from thence arises the tardiness with which the individuals of that nation are sure to proceed.

On the 15th of June they received orders to set off for Morocco. A numerous caravan serving as an escort to the royal treasure, arising from the customs paid by foreign ships that put in at Mogadore, insured the safety of their arrival.

The English and French merchants were the only persons that came to take leave of them; they left them with tears in their eyes, and promised them all the assistance in their power, in case they should not be able to obtain their freedom from the Emperor.

This journey from Mogadore to Morocco, was neither tedious nor laborious; in quality of the Emperor's slaves, a mule was given to each of them, not without great displeasure on the part of the Moors to whom they belonged. The sovereign never pays; and these people instead of selling their commodities at Mogadore, were obliged to follow them to Morocco.

ence
were
ons;
they

in-
fen-
his
ople
ry.
ered
nger
that
ants,
sfor-
ney;
ight
have

was
fore,
e sent
er of
s the
He
well
n end
their
e that

e now
ever,
y were
them
to go
of the
ted to
them

rench
f blue
cravat,
were
might

n, the
Cape
men.
money
rpric
rench
y told
Empe-
ice of
ws to
burse
ave an
f their
s with
o pro-

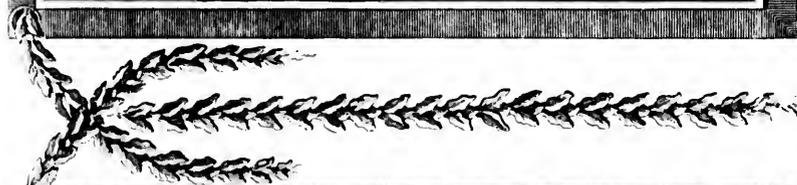
to let
ing as
n the
Moga-

e only
y left
em all
should
Empe-

was
e Em-
them,
of the
ereign
g the r
follow



In ARAB OF THE DESERTS



Morris sculp.



Apprentice of a man of Boudary

The Jew, the E
 ders to supply the
 arrival this wretch
 the camels, fetch
 commanded the c
 Moors to take ca
 Jews, and forbad
 which they availed
 merchandize) at l

On the 20th o
 much fatigued by
 Jews, and four c
 their arrival, to c
 that prince had f
 of an army of 1200
 had beat his lieute
 Atlas. The Emp
 Saugnier and his
 of the priests of th
 vent in the quarter

The prior, acco
 his nation, treated
 tines. He highl
 experiencing the
 them rather like
 them even the thin
 M. Mure, their vic
 sum to defray their

Happily indeed
 long. His presen
 scale of their duty;
 wished to see them
 of June they had th
 presence.

The Emperor w
 his troops. He im
 lutions, ordered the
 spoke to them with
 questioned them con
 in which they had b
 in misfortune, and
 whom they belonge
 in a short time to
 manner in which th
 and, on hearing the
 the care of the Kail
 sponsible for any c
 They remained abou
 rocco, all the inhab
 marks of kindness.

This town is lar
 the houses are very l
 There are a number
 are made.

M. Saugnier and
 peror's slaves, their
 Moors; and accordi
 every curiosity in th
 they remarked was
 which a man can ase
 Morocco is situated
 the distance of ten h

On the 5th of Ju
 orders to prepare
 before the Emperor,
 which being unexpect

At this time there
 the commercial hou
 the white flag. It
 determined to have
 to M. Chenier, cons
 had driven from his
 Mess. Cabanes and
 mitting all the mo
 M. Royer, of Mar
 house, had just take

The very reasons
 their servitude were,
 their liberty. The
 attends for his fault

The Jew, the Emperor's principal scribe, had orders to supply their wants. In the evening of their arrival this wretch wanted to oblige them to unload the camels, fetch wood, &c. but the Alcaide, who commanded the caravan, perceiving it, ordered the Moors to take care of the French, ill treated the Jews, and forbid them to follow the caravan (of which they availed themselves for the safety of their merchandize) at less than half a league distance.

On the 20th of June they arrived at Morocco, much fatigued by the heat, that had killed three Jews, and four camels. The Alcaide wished, on their arrival, to conduct them to the Emperor; but that prince had set off in the morning, at the head of an army of 12000 men, to punish the rebels, who had beat his lieutenant, and taken refuge on Mount Atlas. The Emperor not being at Morocco, M. Saugnier and his party were entrusted to the care of the priests of the Spanish mission, who had a convent in the quarter of the Jews.

The prior, according to that pride so peculiar to his nation, treated them with insupportable haughtiness. He highly extolled their good fortune, in experiencing the kindness of his *community*; treated them rather like slaves than Christians, and refused them even the things of the first necessity, although M. Mure, their vice-consul, had sent him a sufficient sum to defray their expenses.

Happily indeed the Emperor's absence was not long. His presence had reduced the rebels to a sense of their duty; he heard of the people's arrival, wished to see them immediately, and on the 28th of June they had the happiness of appearing in his presence.

The Emperor was now employed in exercising his troops. He immediately put a stop to the evolutions, ordered the French to approach his person, spoke to them with a kindness they little expected, questioned them concerning the names of the places in which they had been separated from their fellows in misfortune, and about those of the masters to whom they belonged, and promised to send them in a short time to France. He enquired into the manner in which they were treated at the convent; and, on hearing their complaints, entrusted them to the care of the Kailebes Basha, making his head responsible for any complaint that might be made. They remained about eight days in the city of Morocco, all the inhabitants shewing them the greatest marks of kindness.

This town is large and populous, but ill-built; the houses are very low, and the streets very narrow. There are a number of squares, in which all bargains are made.

M. Saugnier and his companions being the Emperor's slaves, their persons were held sacred by the Moors; and accordingly they saw, without difficulty, every curiosity in the capital. Among the things they remarked was a very lofty tower, to the top of which a man can ascend on horseback; and though Morocco is situated in a plain, it is to be seen at the distance of ten leagues.

On the 5th of July, the Basha having received orders to prepare his troops, they appeared again before the Emperor, who gave them their liberty, which being unexpected afforded them no little joy.

At this time there was a talk of war with France: the commercial house at Mogadore no longer hoisted the white flag. It was said that the French were determined to have satisfaction for the insult offered to M. Chenier, consul at Sallee, whom the Emperor had driven from his presence in the rudest manner. Mess. Cabanes and Depras, of Mogadore, were remitting all the money they could to France; and M. Royer, of Marfeilles, having abandoned his house, had just taken shipping for Europe.

The very reasons that seemed likely to prolong their servitude were, no doubt, those that hastened their liberty. The Emperor, wishing to make amends for his fault, was therefore induced to set

this people free: perhaps they might owe their deliverance to gratitude, for news had just been brought to Morocco that 200 Moors had been assisted by a vessel from Marfeilles, after having tried all the Italian and Mahometan ports in vain; that the assistance of which they stood in need had been every where refused them; that they would have died of want but for the assistance of the Marfeilles ship, and that they were then performing quarantine in that port, from whence they would set off to return to their own country when an opportunity arrived.

Be this as it may, the Emperor having ordered them a gratification of three dollars each, they set off on the 5th, well mounted, and with an escort of 800 foot and 200 horse.

The Moorish soldiers took care to pitch their tent every day near that of the general. With this escort they passed through the greatest part of the cities of Barbary, their little army being every where augmented by fresh reinforcements, and received with honour in every town.

In the town they found a Marfeilles captain, who had turned renegade, to avoid, according to the Emperor's law, a punishment of 500 stripes, for being shipwrecked near this place, as the Emperor pretends it must be done on purpose, it being impossible, he thinks, that vessels can run ashore on his coast. Those captains who are on their way to Barbary are exempt from this punishment.

They encamped before Azemor, where they made some stay. The Basha hired 300 men, and having given them 10 ounces each, they joined their line of march. They now passed the river of Lions, and encamped on the opposition bank: then proceeding along the coast, they saw Darzabadda, Mowforia, Fadal, and several other towns, which were in ruins, and only known for the trade they carry on in corn.

As soon as they had reached Rabate, they were delivered up to the governor of that place, by the Basha. Account of their arrival was now sent to M. Mure, the French vice-consul, who came immediately to see them. He was very much surpris'd when he was told all the honours they had received in the towns of Barbary. For fear any disagreeable change might take place in the Emperor's sentiments, every due arrangement was made to expedite their journey, and they were dispatched for Tangier without delay.

The two towns Rabate and Sallee, which are generally confus'd with each other, are divided by the river. The former, which is the residence of the French consul and the governor, is the most extensive and considerable: both these towns are paved. There is a tower in Rabate, similar to that of Morocco, whereby the inhabitants may see the vessels in the offing. There is also a supply of fresh water, by means of an aqueduct, erected by an English engineer, which conveys it two leagues from the town. Sallee is a King's port.

Fresh troops having been now levied, on the 25th of July they set off with a new escort. Three of the mules (which were provided by M. Mure) were left behind in a small town in ruins about 20 leagues from Sallee, as they were rendered useless through fatigue. In consequence thereof they were frequently obliged to travel on foot to Tangier, where they arrived on the 31st, and received a much better reception from the Spanish consul (to whom they were addressed) than from the monks of the mission. The consul immediately reported the Emperor's wishes to the governor of that place; who thereupon issued orders that every expedition should be made for their setting off for Cadiz.

The captain of the Spanish vessel, who came to Tangier to procure corn and poultry, departed in the evening, and the next morning they arrived at Cadiz, where they hoisted their flag.

They were now visited by the physicians, who sent them to perform quarantine on board the *Lazarretto*,

retto, about two leagues distant from the town.

They were three days in this hulk, without being able to set a foot on shore. At last they were landed, and placed in a kind of barn, where they were but barely sheltered from the rain.

They were revisited by the physicians on the 11th of August. Their health being now ascertained, they departed from the barn.

M. Boirel, the French vice-consul of Cadiz, received them very kindly, and having supplied them with every necessary, facilitated their return to their native places.

M. Saignier embarked the 28th of August on board the St. Francois de Sales, a vessel of 200 tons burthen, commanded by Capt. Sinical, of Dunkirk. After a tedious, disagreeable passage, and having been beating five days off the harbour, they arrived at Ostend on the 11th of October. The next day the captain conducted M. Saignier to Dunkirk. His passport being now examined, he left Dunkirk on the 14th; and having delayed at Lisle, on account of his indisposition, he did not arrive at St. Quentin till the 21st of October, 1784.

CHAPTER IV.

M. Saignier's ill Reception at Home—His Resolution—An unexpected Letter—Encouraged to pursue his former Projects—Measures taken—Repairs to Paris—Stays two Months to no Purpose—Embarks on board the Gustavus Adolphus—An agreeable short Voyage—Makes Cape Blanco—A dangerous Bar crossed—Proceed to Senegal—Description of the Island—M. Saignier resolves to undertake a Voyage to Galam—He embarks on board the Furet—The Ship baptized, according to Custom—Ceremony thereof—A Canoe of Negroes discovered—Disagreeable Intelligence—They anchor—Stranded on the Moorish Coast—Proceed on their Way—See the Village of Berne—Ditto of Blas—Arrive at Pudur—Arrogance of the King of the Trepars—The Vessel put in a State of Defence—M. Saignier's Project, and Success—Curfory Remarks—Arrive at Saldec—At Galam—Departure.

M. SAUGNIER now restored to his family, was in hopes of enjoying domestic ease and happiness; but the story of his sufferings being disbelieved, his relations treated him with coolness and indifference. Having received 300 livres from one of his uncles, and a few articles from his mother, who was rather in humble circumstances, he was resolved upon returning to Paris, and though contrary to his inclination, engage himself in his original line of business. He remained at his mother's house till he had recovered his health, having, in the interim, made applications in writing to several shop-keepers in the capital. Encouraged, however, by an unexpected letter from the elier of his two former companions, who had at first suggested a settlement in Senegal, and had been now apprised of M. Saignier's arrival in France, he became resolved on resuming his former projects. He made every effort therefore of obtaining additional supplies from his family, and on his mother's becoming security, obtained 300 livres more.

With this he repaired to Paris, where he staid two months with his partner, to no purpose, in hopes of being made head of a company who were seeking an exclusive privilege for the gum-trade in Senegal. After being amused with fair promises, which ended in nothing, they set off for Bourdeaux, where they expected to meet with vessels taking in freight, which happened according to their expectations.

After remaining in Bourdeaux about a fortnight M. Saignier embarked on board the Gustavus Adolphus, which belonged to M. Lamalathie, merchant of Bourdeaux, and was under the command of Capt. Mare of Havre. This vessel was to trade along the coast, and thence to set sail for India, when the provisions for the garrison of Senegal were delivered. M. Saignier was allowed by M. Lamalathie a commission upon such negroes as he might purchase in union with the captain. This offer, though by no means profitable, was however accepted by M. Saignier, and matters accordingly adjusted.

M. Saignier's partner remained at Bourdeaux to fit out the brig Furet, of about 70 tons burthen, which set sail about six weeks after M. Saignier's departure.

The Gustavus Adolphus being an excellent sailer they had a very agreeable short voyage. They had some violent gales on leaving the Canary Islands, which having sprung their main-mast, deterred the captain from prosecuting his voyage to India, as it was totally impossible to repair it in a proper manner. He staid at Goree for about a twelve-month, where having finished his business he proceeded to America. Warned by the late misfor-

tunes of M. Saignier, the captain wisely resolved upon keeping well out to sea.

Having the next day made Cape Blanco, they saw two wrecks; one seemed a frigate, and the other a vessel of about 150 tons.

On the 12th of June 1785, they were in sight of Senegal. They now crossed a bar, which being the effect of several successive furls that continually follow, and break upon each other with uncommon violence, is reckoned by the seamen exceedingly dangerous: this surf is occasioned by the current of the river, which is thrown back upon itself by the sea, into which it flows. There is also a flat formed by the sand, which is carried down by the stream, and cast back by the sea, which renders the passage inaccessible to large vessels. M. Saignier went over it in the pilot's boat: at this time there was only 13 feet water. Having now crossed the bar, they went on shore, and notwithstanding the extreme heat of the sun, proceeded to Senegal along the Barbary Point, which is a piece of sandy ground that separates the Niger from the sea.

The island of Senegal is a bank of sand in the middle of the river. It is a thousand geometrical paces long, and about sixty in its greatest width; is almost on a level with the river, and with the sea, being defended from the latter by Barbary Point, which is of greater elevation than the colony. The eastern branch of the river is the more considerable of the two, being about four hundred toises across; the western branch is only from fifty to two hundred toises wide. The ile consists entirely of burning sands, on the barren surface of which are scattered flints, thrown out among their ballast by vessels coming from Goree, or with the ruins of buildings formerly erected by Europeans. There is scarcely such a thing as a garden upon the island; for the European seeds do not thrive here. It is not surprising that the soil is so unproductive; for the air is strongly impregnated with sea salt, which pervades every thing, and consumes even iron in a very short space of time. The heats are excessive, and rendered still more insupportable by the reflection of the sand, so that from ten in the morning until four in the afternoon it is almost impossible to do any work. During the months of January, February, March, and April, the heats are moderated; but in August, and in the following ones, they become so oppressive as to affect even the natives themselves. The nights are a little less sultry; not always, however, but only when the sea-breeze sets in. It is then, that the inhabitants of the colony breathe a fresher air; yet this air in our climate would seem a burning vapour. The nights are nevertheless

nevertheless troublesome of the sea-br... the inhabitants ar... which are called... painful, and their... bitants find but a... rains. They gener... ter, which defend...

There is no good agreeable is bro... and through the... are dug in the sand... by this means they... ing all the trouble... retains a brackish... water four leagues... from Senegal to... enough to be of g... general very bad, a... if not drilled the d... away. In respect... pound millet in wo... then it is so ill pre... teeth.

The trade at th... by three European... pany's house, whic... of the gum-trade, o... was certainly the m... worst regulated; th... the company having... commerce. It was... The second of M. A... better conducted... ried on a more con... ance of the house... formerly captain of... the person, who tal... nier's unhappy ship... year 1784, had mad... tive bargains, whic... men to their ruin... and 1786, several h... without going from... him his life.

The third house w... who traded solely on... formerly cooper to t... that island fell into... refuge in Senegal... acquainted with the co... guage as well as the... their manner, and a... of the best bargains... write nor read, huc... country, obtained a... but though he coul... himself unable to r... Vigneux; who, ign... had nevertheless a g... sortment of his arti... the natives, who det... company.

In respect to inhab... than six thousand n... of the Tapades, or n... bitants of the count... file, unless convict... constructed in the m... upon four stakes, su... negro inhabitants... may rise to about t... direction, is commo... beds are composed o... supported by forked... foot from the groun... miscuously, men, w... is made in the mid... with finoke, and ver... The men are tall... No. 14.

nevertheless troublesome, notwithstanding the comforts of the sea-breeze. The instant the sun is set, the inhabitants are assailed by an infinity of gnats, which are called musquitos; their stings are very painful, and their multitude incredible. The inhabitants find but a poor defence in their gauze curtains. They generally bescream themselves with butter, which defends them from their stings.

There is no good water in the country; the most agreeable is brought forty leagues down the river, and through the most infectious swamps. Wells are dug in the sand to the depth of five or six feet, by this means they obtain water; but notwithstanding all the trouble they are at to freshen it, it still retains a brackish taste. There is a spring of good water four leagues above Gendiole, upon the way from Senegal to Goree; but which is not large enough to be of general utility. The meat is in general very bad, and the fish has a peculiar ill taste: it not dressed the day it is caught, it must be thrown away. In respect to the negroes food, the females pound millet in wooden mortars upon the sand, but then it is to be prepared, that it grates between the teeth.

The trade at this time was chiefly monopolized by three European houses. The first was the company's house, which, besides the exclusive privilege of the gum-trade, dealt also in slaves. This house was certainly the most considerable, but without the worst regulated; the persons who had been sent by the company having no knowledge whatever of this commerce. It was therefore the least formidable. The second of M. Aubry de la Poste, of Nantz, was better conducted. With a smaller stock they carried on a more considerable trade; the superintendance of the house was committed to M. Vigneux, formerly captain of a ship from Nantz. He was the person, who taking the advantage of M. Saugnier's unhappy shipwreck, which happened in the year 1784, had made one of those surprisingly lucrative bargains, which allure so many of his countrymen to their ruin. He made also, in the years 1785 and 1786, several highly advantageous speculations without going from Senegal; the last, however, cost him his life.

The third house was conducted by M. Paul Benis, who traded solely on his own bottom. He had been formerly cooper to the company at Goree, and when that island fell into the hands of the English, took refuge in Senegal. He was the man the best acquainted with the colony. He spoke the negro language as well as the negroes themselves, lived after their manner, and always found means to lay hold of the best bargains. This man, who could neither write nor read, had, by a long residence in the country, obtained a thorough knowledge of trade; but though he could rival the company, he found himself unable to stand the competition of M. Vigneux; who, ignorant as he was of the country, had nevertheless a great advantage in the better assortment of his articles, and the friendly advice of the natives, who detest whatever bears the name of company.

In respect to inhabitants, Senegal contains more than six thousand negroes, including the captives of the Tapades, or negroes born of the black inhabitants of the country. They are never put up to sale, unless convicted of some crime. Their huts, constructed in the form of bee-hives, and supported upon four stakes, surround the habitations of the negro inhabitants. The entire height of those huts may rise to about twelve feet; the width, in every direction, is commonly from ten to twelve. The beds are composed of hurdles laid upon cross-bars, supported by forked stakes at the height of about a foot from the ground. Here the slaves sleep promiscuously, men, women, girls, and boys. A fire is made in the middle of the hut, which is filled with smoke, and very offensive.

The men are tall, and the women are accounted

the handsomest negroes of all Africa. The Senegalians may be considered as the most courageous people of that part of the world, without even excepting the Moors. Their courage, however, is more nearly allied to temerity than bravery. In the course of the voyage to Galam, they meet the greatest dangers with gaiety and song; they dread neither musquet nor cannon, and are equally fearless of the cayman or crocodile. Should any of their companions be killed, and devoured by these animals before their face, they are not deterred from plunging into the water, if the working of the ship require it. These excellent qualifications, which distinguish them, and on which they value themselves so much, do not however preserve them from the common contagion of the country, which inclines them all to rapine. They are emulous to surpass one another in all the arts of over-reaching and fraud. The conduct of the Europeans has, no doubt, encouraged these vices, as much as the lessons of the marabouts, who inculcate the duty of plundering the christians whenever they can.

The Yolof negroes of Senegal are a compound of christianity and mahometanism. Those on the continent are of the same way of thinking, and their religious practices are kept up only for the sake of form. A bar of iron, or a few beads, will make them change their opinion at will. By such means are they acted upon; a sufficient proof of their want of all religious principle. The marabouts, or priests, and the men of their law, are no better than the rest.

The colony of Senegal is surrounded with islands, which, on account of the proximity of the sea, are all more unhealthy than that on which the town is built. They are full of standing pools, that, when dried up by the sun, exhale a putrid vapour that carries mortality with it, and desolates these islands. It is doubtless the same cause that takes off so many of the French at Senegal, during the dangerous season of the year. This also may be in part occasioned by the bad quality of the water which flows from the ponds in the neighbourhood of the colony, and though incorporated with that of the river, comes down little agitated by the current, and is easily distinguished by a rapidness of taste.

None of the French at Senegal, belonging to the several houses of commerce, being inclined to make the voyage to Galam, (a place of considerable trade) because none of them had ever been in that part of the country, M. Saugnier resolved to undertake it himself. He saw how much superior the other houses were in point of funds and resources, and sought therefore to obtain, some how, an advantageous foundation for his. This point could be gained only by acquiring an accurate knowledge of the country. He hoped, by that means, that though unable to stand a competition in the colony, he should at least in the trade on the river have a decided advantage over every other house. He determined then to set off for Galam.

While they were waiting the arrival of the Furet, they were employed in collecting salt for themselves, and for the king's ship which was bound up the river. This traffic of salt is carried on at the bar of Senegal; the articles of exchange are, swords, gunpowder, balls, flints, and glass ware.

On the 26th of July the fleet got under way, and sailed up the river. It consisted of 27 vessels, freighted by the inhabitants; together with a vessel of 50 tons, called the Moor, belonging to Paul Benis; the great bark of M. Vigneux, superintendant of the house of Aubry, of Nantz, burthen 180 tons, and a king's ship, called the Bienfaisant, Capt. Thevenor, an inhabitant of Senegal, carrying the customs or dues for the several princes of the country.

The company, ever slow in their operations, had not yet any vessels ready, when the Furet brig appeared in view. The same day that she came before the fort she entered the river. They proceeded immediately

mediately to unload her. She was then repaired, and loaded for the slave trade.

On the 16th of August M. Saugnier embarked on board the vessel, and sailed from Fort Louis. This vessel was of 70 tons burthen, light and an excellent sailer; she had a crew composed of 24 laptots, (that is negro sailors) four gourmets, (i. e. officers) a linguist, a carpenter, a mate, six pileuses, (i. e. women cooks) and a dozen of repasses, (i. e. negro children who serve aboard ship like cabin boys).

The governor of Senegal, Count de Repintigny, had engaged M. Saugnier to collect together all the straggling vessels, in order to escort them to the rendezvous of the convoy. In the evening of the same day he met with a vessel belonging to one Soliman, who had left the colony three days before him. He had only three laptots aboard, and M. Saugnier did not think himself obliged to delay his voyage, on account of a person so imprudent as not to supply himself with a number of hands sufficient to work his ship. M. Saugnier's negroes, however, who knew the orders which their master had received from the governor, endeavoured to persuade him to give him some assistance; he ordered him to return to Senegal, which was only eight leagues distant; he thought proper to comply with his desire.

They handed their sails about eight o'clock in the evening; being then at the great Merigots, which extend to Portandic. The ship was afterwards baptized according to the custom of the negroes, and all those who had not before passed that place were obliged to submit to the same ceremony. At the same time they made M. Saugnier fire a salute with his small train of artillery, consisting of six swivels, with six French and some English wall-pieces. In order to perform this ceremony with due pomp, the linguist, accompanied by two gourmets, cast anchor and assembled the crew. He caused all the artillery to be charged, filled a vase with water from the river, and threw it at three several times upon different parts of the ship. At each operation, in order to render the ceremony as august as possible, a salute was fired; and after the baptismal rites were performed upon the vessel, the same linguist proceeded to baptize those who had not yet made the voyage: these are commonly the whites and the repasses. He sprinkled water of the river on my chin and forehead; a ceremony which was announced by a general discharge of the artillery. In short, to close this festivity with becoming cheer, M. Saugnier gave the crew a present of good liquor. Their sloop now joined them, and the evening was spent in good cheer and hilarity.

They had scarcely got down to the cabin, in order to take a little rest, when the laptots of the watch gave them notice, that they heard a noise of oars on the river. They instantly were on the look-out, and soon saw that it was a canoe rowed by negroes, who used every effort to come up with them. As soon as they got on board, they informed them that the boat la Malcine, belonging to Scipio, the master of his vessel, had run aground and sunk, ten leagues beyond Podor; that Admet Moctar, king of the Traffarts, a Moorish tribe, claimed half the goods saved from the wreck, giving no better reason than that such was the will of God, since he had suffered the vessel to be wrecked on the coast. M. Saugnier immediately wrote to the Count de Repintigny, governor of Senegal, requesting he would give him his instructions how to act on the occasion, and having given the negroes something to eat, instantly ordered them away for the colony. As M. Saugnier was desirous to wait at Podor for the governor's answer, before he should come to any decisive agreement with Admet Moctar, he declined proceeding, but anchored opposite the village of Reims. During the evening they had good game. At five in the morning, the wind freshening considerably, the vessel drove at her anchors, and stranded on the Moorish coast. In consequence thereof they lost an anchor,

and notwithstanding all the pains they took they could never lay hold of it with the drag. This river is full of sand-banks, and it is only off Doumons that there is cause for real apprehensions. These small trading vessels are hauled ashore every night; and when it is necessary to proceed, the negroes soon set them afloat, by plunging into the water and pushing them off. It often happens that in this operation some are drowned; but this is the only method they know, and they consider it as the readiest and least laborious.

They proceeded on their way, and saw on an extensive plain a Moorish camp, consisting of 80 or 100 tents: these people seemed desirous to dispose of some cattle and captives, but there was no time to treat with them.

On the 19th they saw the village of Berne, situated on the Moorish coast, near the desert of Zaara, which extends to this part of the river. On leaving the desert, on the opposite shore they saw the village of Brac, belonging to the king of the Walon negroes. The present prince had been minister to the former king, whom he caused to be assassinated by the Moors of Halicory, king of the Bracnars. It was under the specious pretence of public good that he seized upon the throne: but his treachery cost him his life; for having some disputes with Halicory, the latter caused him to be strangled a few months after the departure of M. Saugnier.

On the 20th they arrived at Podor, and found the sheriff's boat there, which put to sea as soon as they were in sight. M. Saugnier went in the evening on shore to the fort, where he was received by Admet Moctar, king of the Traffarts. This haughty prince, departing from his original demand, insisted that the whole of shipwrecks belonged to him: not content with a share, he would have all, and even alleged that the very laptots were his captives, and wanted to compel M. Saugnier to pay their ransom, whom he thought to intimidate with menaces, hoping to become master of all the merchandize which Scipio's laptots had saved from the wreck, and which the commandant at Podor had been weak enough to deliver to him. He was deaf to all reason, and threatened to attack M. Saugnier, if his wishes were not complied with: but M. Saugnier, before he had left the vessel to go to the fort, had put her in a state of defence, the fire-arms having been all prepared for an engagement. M. Saugnier now secretly commanded the mate to allure as many Moors on board the vessel as he could, then to disarm and secure them. In the mean time Admet Moctar, enraged at the inflexibility of M. Saugnier, sent one of his officers to his brother, with orders to seize the vessel; which orders he supposed M. Saugnier was ignorant of, supposing him unacquainted with his language; but M. Saugnier, framing some pretence, withdrew from the assembly, and dispatched a truly negro to apprise the mate of the prince's villainy; and still to allure as many more of the Moors as he could, and when he had disarmed to secure them. Scipio well understanding the Arabic language, immediately comprehended the prince's design; and having not only reproached, but even threatened him, made an abrupt departure: but as soon as he had reached the vessel, he perceived the prince's brother both disarmed and in chains; and finding that the crew were in perfect safety by these precautions, he returned to the fort. Mean time M. Duchozel, commandant of Podor, being informed of this prince's manoeuvres by M. Saugnier, put a detachment under arms, and repairing to the prince, assured him, that if he did not immediately make up matters with M. Saugnier, fatal consequences must ensue, as he would never permit a vessel of his nation to be attacked under the cannon of the fort he commanded. This alarmed Admet Moctar, particularly as he understood that all the negroes of the village had taken up arms in defence of the crew, and that all his soldiers were disarmed. M. Saugnier, surrounded

surrounded by the pistols primed and his own language, confounded him and make promises of restitution of the estate the prince having not comply with he willingly return Sc was seized; to do signed by himself ther, who was in co Saugnier then in preventive of being never ventured to however, Sydy Hel Saugnier shewed the evening, after part departed.

The next day as received Scipio's boat the governor's order now landed and were a second engagement as atonement for the sent of two oxen, others. He also had returned from Galatia, they took leave humour.

On the 24th, Scipio directed at his vessel, in hopes were employed for weighing her, but finally, they were com mast, bowsprit, rudder they lost an excellent who having plunged occasion, was never he was carried off by diles, of which the r

In the evening the Donguelle, where they chased for a small q then cleared the Devil distant from the villag

On the 31st of A The next day M. Saugnier, stumbled over against a table, which day, after being blood recovered his reason the 4th of October.

Some presents having of Galani, M. Saugnier It is built of clay, that terraced in others, and constructed. Here he tion, that he quickly He took an airing e river: two negroes ca became too troublesome and was put under a l him from the rays of t

The price of slaves part of which consisted they sailed immediately mart for the traffic of a luge is situated 15 leagues of the neighbouring vi Senegalians, for making general rendezvous, un attack upon the convoi deo on account of the s king's ship, and that b not yet reached Galani Baquelle, and the othe alone, which drew but well armed to comman

surrounded by the bravest of his men, with his pistols primed and loaded, now upbraided him in his own language, for his villainous designs. This confounded him more, and he began to cringe and make promises. M. Saugnier insisted upon a restitution of the effects which he had seized, which the prince having made use of, said that he could not comply with this demand, but that he would willingly return Scipio the full value of whatever was seized; to do which, an engagement was now signed by himself and ministers; also by his brother, who was in consequence thereof liberated. M. Saugnier then invited the prince on board; but apprehensive of being detained as his brother was, he never ventured to pay him a visit. His brother, however, Sydy Heli went on board, to whom M. Saugnier shewed the force of his fire-arms. In the evening, after partaking of some refreshments, he departed.

The next day as they were making sail, they perceived Scipio's boat, which was just returned with the governor's orders from Senegal. M. Saugnier now landed and went to admit Moctar, who signed a second engagement similar to the first: the prince, as atonement for the past, made M. Saugnier a present of two oxen, ten sheep, and some ostrich feathers. He also hoped to see him again, when he returned from Galam, which M. Saugnier promising, they took leave of each other with mutual good-humour.

On the 24th, Scipio (with M. Saugnier's permission) directed his course towards the wreck of his vessel, in hopes of saving something: the crew were employed for the chief part of the day in weighing her, but finding it impossible to get her aloft, they were content with taking out the main-mast, bowsprit, rudder, and anchor. The next day they lost an excellent diver, of the name of Bacary, who having plunged into the water on some trifling occasion, was never seen more. It was supposed he was carried off by one of the alligators, or crocodiles, of which the river is full.

In the evening they anchored off the village of Donguelle, where three elephants teeth were purchased for a small quantity of gunpowder. They then cleared the Devil's Mouth, a rock about a league distant from the village.

On the 31st of August they arrived at Saldee. The next day M. Saugnier while escaping a violent squall, stumbled over the chests, and struck his head against a table, which occasioned a fever: the next day, after being bled, he became delirious, nor recovered his reason till he arrived at Galam, on the 4th of October.

Some presents having been made to Sirman, king of Galam, M. Saugnier went on shore to his house. It is built of clay, thatched with reeds in some parts, terraced in others, and upon the whole commodiously constructed. Here he was treated with such attention, that he quickly began to recover his health. He took an airing every day on the banks of the river: two negroes carried him; and when the heat became too troublesome, he returned to his abode, and was put under a kind of shed, which sheltered him from the rays of the sun.

The price of slaves being now fixed at 70 bars, part of which consisted of four pieces of guinea-blues, they sailed immediately to Tamboucanee, a principal mart for the traffic of negroes and ivory. This village is situated 15 leagues from Galam. The lords of the neighbouring villages, exasperated against the Senegalians, for making Galam the place of their general rendezvous, united their forces to make an attack upon the convoy, which was detained at Saldee on account of the shallowness of the river. The king's ship, and that belonging to M. Vigneux had not yet reached Galam. The one had stopped at Baquelle, and the other at Cotterat. The Furet alone, which drew but six feet water, was sufficiently well armed to command respect. She immediately

hoisted sail and advanced to the assistance of the convoy. The courage of Scipio, M. Saugnier's captain, was well known among the negro princes, they were afraid of contending with him, his presence put an end to the faction and imposed peace upon the negroes.

The delay occasioned by the payment of customs at Saldee, had proved very prejudicial to them. M. Saugnier was under the necessity of embarking the 25th of October to go down to Senegal. He had made but little progress in the slave-trade; however, he procured six negroes with some damaged guinea-blues, all of which he should have got rid of, had he been able to protract his departure; but being unwilling to risk his ship, he left Scipio with the long-boat to trade in the customary manner at Tamboucanee. The king of Galam, who had shewn him every kind of attention, accompanied him on board. As he had been a slave in Morocco, he looked on him with admiration. The respect in which all these people hold the Emperor, extended even to his person: this petty monarch had given up his chamber and a good bed to M. Saugnier, while the whites employed in the convoy on the king's account, were only lodged under sheds. M. Molinard, who was one of them, was an engineer, and was sent out to take a plan of the river, and to explore the gold mines. He fell ill at Saldee, and died on his return from Galam to Senegal.

The king of Galam was very fond of wine, and M. Saugnier regaled him with that liquor every day during his residence in his house. He took care, however, not to give him any but at night; and in order to obtain it, he laid him under the necessity of returning the bottles, on which account he ordered his people to take the greatest care of them. Having attended him on board, he was obliged to be carried back to his village, for he had drank to excess, to prove how much he regretted his departure. This prince had purchased of M. Saugnier thirteen beads of coral, half a string of amber, twenty-eight silver bells, and three pair of bracelets for his women. He was to have paid him in gold or ivory, but having neither of those articles, he gave him a fine negro, although the things M. Saugnier had sold him amounted to no more than sixty-three bars. In acknowledgment of his liberality, M. Saugnier made him a present of a sabre, with a pistol in the hilt, of a little wool for his wives, and to his favourite, who alone had borne him sons, also some rows of glass beads, and about four ounces of scarlet wool. This favourite pretended to be a christian: She had formerly been mistress to one Labrue, an agent for the factory of Senegal.

The village of Galam is small, and known only as the place of meeting of the inhabitants of Senegal, for the purpose of settling their mercantile concerns, and on account of a wretched fort built by the French in the time of the former African company, the late king of Galam was a freeman among the Saracolets, and formerly a laptot at Senegal. Considered by the negroes as a man of bravery, and speaking good French, he was placed in the fort by the company in quality of broker. The grand souquet of Tuago, chieftain of the country, gave him the absolute property of the village of Galam, on condition of his charging himself with the receipt of the customs paid by European vessels. His son, the present king of Galam, was brought up at Senegal, and understood French and English perfectly. When the company abandoned the fort, he took possession of the cannon, put himself at the head of a party in the country, became formidable to his sovereign, and lastly, entirely independent. He has several villages subject to his authority. The laptots of Senegal are received by him in the most cordial manner, and every voyage he detains some of them by his kindness, particularly those belonging to the Saracolet nation, being willing to give several slaves in exchange for one of these.

The

The tribes, which in this part of Africa occupy the lands situated between the rivers of Senegal and Gambia, are all of the Saracolet nation. The Saracolets acknowledge as sovereign the grand fouquet of Tuago. They are a laborious people, cultivate their lands with care, are plentifully supplied with all the necessaries of life, and inhabit handsome and well-built villages; their houses, of a circular form, are for the most part terraced; the others are covered with reeds, as at Senegal; they are enclosed with a mud wall a foot thick, and the villages are surrounded with one of stone and earth of double that solidity. There are several gates, which are guarded at night for fear of a surprise. This nation is remarkably brave, and it is very uncommon to find a Saracolet slave. They always defend themselves with advantage against their assailants. Such Saracolets as are exposed to sale may be safely purchased, for none are to be met with but such as have been condemned by the laws for some misdemeanor; in such case these wretches could not escape slavery, even by taking refuge in their own country; for they would be restored to their masters, or would be put to death, if the convoy should have failed.

The religious principles of this people is nearly allied to Mahometanism, and still more to natural religion. They acknowledge one God; and believe that those who steal, or are guilty of any crime, are eternally punished. They admit a plurality of wives, and believe their souls to be immortal, like their own. They think lightly of adultery; for as they allow themselves several wives, they are not so unjust as to punish women who distribute their favours among several gallants; a mutual exchange is then permitted, one woman may be bartered for another, unless she be free, or a native of the country.

On the 24th of October M. Saugnier received a message from Scipio, who perceived the water lowering at Tambouance, advising him to quit Galam. The next morning M. Saugnier embarked: however the mate and boatwain insisted upon staying longer, as the laptots had not as yet sold their salt: this obliged M. Saugnier to assume his authority, particularly as the laptots, who adhered to him, were inclined to murder these men for disobedience: however the mate and boatwain, for fear of being put into irons, became quiet, and having now weighed anchor they set sail.

CHAPTER V.

They strike upon a Sand-Bank—Endeavour to lighten the Vessel in vain—Information sent to Scipio—He comes to their Assistance—His surprising Skill—Vessel got in deep Water—Scipio takes his Leave—Passes the Village of Baquelle—Vessel loses her Head-way—Founders upon the Rocks—Captain Mambao sends to their Assistance—The Goods thrown overboard—Natives, Laptots, &c. plunder—M. Saugnier embarks on board Mambao's Vessel—The Lord of Baquelle's Character—He visits M. Saugnier—Behaviour of the grand Fouquet of Tuago—Loss of some Laptots—M. Saugnier looks to his personal Safety—Gets aboard Mambao—Arrival of Masse—His Advice, which is followed—Embarks on board the Bienfaisant—M. Saugnier recovers apace—Their slow Progress impeded by different Obstacles—Anxiety for the rest of the Convoy—They get clear of many Sand-Banks—Strike on that of Haliburum—Vessel lightened—Scipio's Arrival at Donnous—The Manner he saved the Vessel that was wrecked—Deceives and defies the grand Fouquet—The Poulos attacked—Scipio's Success and good Management—Apprehensions about the Convoy—Their safe Arrival—M. Saugnier sails for France—Description of Goree—A Sailor seized—M. Saugnier sets off by Land, and arrives at Dacar—His Relapse—Recovery—Arrival at L'Orient.

ON the 25th of October, the water having lowered a foot, they struck upon a sand bank. They now threw their salt overboard, in order to lighten the vessel, but it had no effect. M. Saugnier therefore dispatched a saracolet to inform Scipio of the accident, who arrived the following day in the afternoon to his assistance. Previous to this they had worked hard for 24 hours to liberate the vessel, but in vain. Scipio, however, being well acquainted with the river, and having examined all the passes, consoled them with hopes of soon disengaging them from their distressing situation. In order to refresh the men, he gave orders that they should rest for two hours and repose themselves, which he likewise did himself: he then gave the necessary directions, and in less than half an hour the vessel was got into deep water. He remained on board a whole day, in order to steer them clear of other dangerous shoals, which they passed without any trouble. He then pointed to the mate and boatwain some other parts of the river which were equally dangerous, and having traced the course which they should make, took his leave, in order to continue his traffic at Tambouance.

They found the Furet about 10 leagues from Galam: she lay at anchor off Corterat, nor being able to make her way to Galam for want of water.

On the 2d of November they passed the village of Baquelle, and entered into the canal of that island. The boatwain being incapable of stemming the current, the vessel through his imprudence lost her head-way, and about nine in the morning they foundered upon the rocks. At this time there was a Senegal captain, one Peter Mambao, who arrived at Baquelle with a cargo of salt. Upon seeing their distress, he immediately sent out his boat to their assistance, on board of which M. Saugnier put the

most valuable of his articles; one of his chests, however, was lost. The rest of the goods were now throwing overboard, as the hold of the vessel was full of water; while the natives had assembled on the bank, in order to plunder whatever they could find. The very laptots began to pillage the people, being anxious to indemnify themselves for the toils they endured, and their wages, which would consequently be lost with the vessel. M. Saugnier went on board Mambao's vessel, which was about half a league distant from his own.

Amadi Tkioncoli, lord of Baquelle, of infamous character, now determined to take advantage of their unfortunate situation. He came to M. Saugnier on board Mambao's ship, and made him a tender of his house, and a good warehouse to store the goods he had saved. All the Senegalians assured him he might rely upon his word, to which he was indeed compelled by necessity. Every thing preserved from the wreck was carried to the house of this prince. The next day M. Saugnier went on shore, and repaired to the village of Baquelle, being pressed by Amadi's solicitations, and perceiving that Mambao was unwilling to expose himself any longer on his account. He was accommodated with a kind of a tent, that while it screened him from the heat of the sun, admitted the fresh air; and on the first day he was treated with the greatest respect and attention.

The grand fouquet of Tuago, being informed by his son, who had been some days on board the vessel, of M. Saugnier's misfortune, came to Baquelle with a numerous escort of cavalry to share the plunder. This king pretended, according to the custom of the Moors, that the vessel, freight, crew, with M. Saugnier himself, were all become his property. He would have taken immediate possession of the principal

nearly
natural
believe
me, are
of wives,
ke their
as they
so un-
favours
is then
another,

ceived a
er low-
Galam.
however
longer,
lt: this
, parti-
were in-
: how-
ing pur
weighed

comes to
illage of
te.—The
The
of some
, which
eded by
n that of
wrecked
—Appre-
A Sailor
Orient.

ts, hon-
ere now
lel was
oled on
y could
people,
he toils
l confe-
r went
half a

famous
age of
ugnier
nder of
goods
im he
indeed
d from
rince.
nd re-
ed by
ambao
on his
d of a
eat of
e first
nd at-

ed by
vessel,
: with
nder.
of the
Saug-
Ho
prin-
cipal



The
FUNERAL CEREMONY of the GUEBRES

cipal articles, had
the return of Scipio

M. Sangnier had
Galam, to deliver
these princes that
Morocco, and that
upon them the
ventured to offer

On account of
proper to desist
his laptots; they
court-yard, and
prisoners. M. S.
being very ill wa
negroes.

There were but
nier's crew, four
the vessel was wr
to save the powder
blew up upon cle
hands was so des
next day, and th
were near him w
one of them reco
to carry on the
parched to Scipio
tain, and the com
the Bienfaïtant, b
them of his situat
were able to work
to weigh his ves
had cut the riggi
would not have t
tempt. M. Sang
for a reinforcement
embarrassment. S
in Bafca's long-b
with their courage
attempt every thi
at eleven o'clock
the whole night.

had seen his vesse
tely plundered h
there was now no
it now behoved h
since he was still
desired him to ob
going, they add
M. Sangnier had
advised him to en
with them. Havi
he reached Mamb
him going out, d
through a suppos
tempt an escape, o
tion and respect
Morocco, and wh
ing violence to a
be the reason as i
banks of the river
and from thence g
ing he embarked
on dugh the wh
nine o'clock in the
was under the com

The village of B
beautiful. The s
huts are all of ear
and are almost all
lightful, and well
along the river t
This village contain
if one may give th
of these countries
the foremost rank
are situated along

When M. Saug
informed of the ar
gal, who was one
away from Baquel

cial articles, had not the lord of Baquelle, dreading the return of Scipio, prevented him.

M. Saugnier had taken two Moors on board at Calam, to deliver to Admet Moctar: they informed these princes that he was a slave to the Emperor of Morocco, and that they would infallibly draw down upon them the resentment of the Moors, if they ventured to offer him any violence.

On account of this the grand fouquet thought proper to desist; yet a close watch was kept over his laptots; they were not allowed to pass the second court-yard, and they considered themselves all as prisoners. M. Saugnier was at full liberty, but being very ill was obliged to be supported by two negroes.

There were but 17 laptots remaining of M. Saugnier's crew, four of whom were disabled; for when the vessel was wrecked, and the men endeavouring to save the powder, a barrel containing four pounds blew up upon deck. The man who had it in his hands was so desperately wounded that he died the next day, and the bodies of the three others who were near him were so miserably scorched that only one of them recovered. The rest were with Scipio, to carry on the slave-trade. A courier was dispatched to Scipio; likewise to M. Vigneux's captain, and the commandant of the King's ship called the Bienfaisant, by M. Saugnier's orders, to apprise them of his situation, for having but 13 laptots that were able to work, he could not make any attempt to weigh his vessel; besides, the Saracolets, who had cut the rigging and taken away the cordage, would not have suffered them to make such an attempt. M. Saugnier was therefore obliged to wait for a reinforcement, to extricate himself from his embarrassment. Six or seven resolute laptots arrived in Balca's long-boat; who, being well acquainted with their courage, had sent them, with orders to attempt every thing for their assistance: they came at eleven o'clock in the morning, having travelled the whole night. They told M. Saugnier that they had seen his vessel; that the Saracolets having entirely plundered her and taken away all her rigging, there was now no remedy for his misfortune; that it now behoved him to look to his personal safety, since he was still left at liberty; their sloop, they desired him to observe, was well armed; they were going, they added, to take the merchandize which M. Saugnier had left on board Mambao, and they advised him to endeavour by all means to embark with them. Having acquiesced, in about two hours he reached Mambao's vessel. The guard, who saw him going out, did not oppose his passage, either through a supposition that he was too weak to attempt an escape, or owing perhaps to the consideration and respect which they pay the Emperor of Morocco, and which might deter them from offering violence to a man who had belonged to him. Be the reason as it may, M. Saugnier reached the banks of the river without meeting any molestation, and from thence got aboard Mambao. In the evening he embarked with his merchandize. They kept on during the whole night; and on the 7th, about nine o'clock in the morning, reached the vessel which was under the command of Balca.

The village of Baquelle is exceedingly strong and beautiful. The streets are wide and straight; the huts are all of earth, surrounded with great courts, and are almost all terraced. The gardens are delightful, and well situated: they offer to the view along the river the most agreeable of prospects. This village contains about 3000 inhabitants; and if one may give the name of town to the habitations of these countries, Baquelle will certainly stand in the foremost rank. It is the best fortified of all that are situated along the banks of the Niger.

When M. Saugnier had taken a little rest, he was informed of the arrival of Maffe, a mulatto of Senegal, who was one of his gourmets. He had run away from Baquelle with his boat, carrying with

him at the same time about 800 pounds of ivory, forty pieces of guiney-blues, a few muskets, and a barrel, containing about 100 pound weight of gunpowder. Three resolute laptots (among whom was Sagot) had been the companions of his flight. Two of these laptots were Saracolets. They had concealed the cloth in their knapfacks, and Maffe, who was a dextrous fellow, had obtained from the lord of Baquelle permission to follow M. Saugnier, by insinuating to that prince, that since M. Saugnier was no longer in his power, he would do well to permit him to join him; that this action on the part of the prince would appease his resentment, and that as he was ignorant of the negro language, and that as he (Maffe) served him as interpreter, the prince could not adopt a better instrument to make him forgive and forget the past. Maffe did not lose his pains; and scarcely had he obtained this permission, than without mentioning to any person his intended departure, he repaired to M. Saugnier's boat, which the people of the country imagined belonged to Mambao, and with all possible diligence embarked with the merchandize above mentioned. Scarcely had he set sail, when he was pursued from the village of Baquelle by a body of men, who fired upon him, but were too late to prevent his escape. He reached the middle of the river, and sailed the whole night without meeting any accident.

Maffe, on his arrival on board the vessel of Balca, made enquiry after the King's ship; and having learnt that it was at no great distance, he proposed to M. Saugnier to embark on board the boat, in order to overtake her. This M. Saugnier immediately did, as his present situation was exceedingly disagreeable.

He embarked with him in the night, having no more than the three laptots above mentioned. His twivels were in order, mounted upon the gunwale of the boat, and charged, in case of an attack. His people were all armed, each with a double-barrelled mulquet, and he proceeded, confiding entirely in their care. They were 37 hours under sail. They arrived on the 14th, at seven in the morning, and went on board the Bienfaisant, commanded by Thevenot, a wealthy inhabitant of Senegal.

Capt. Thevenot endeavoured, by his kind attentions to M. Saugnier, to mitigate his distress. His vessel, fitted out solely for the purpose of paying the duties, was well armed and commodious. M. Saugnier was well lodged; had a good table, and being longer exposed to the dew, nor to the ardour of the sun, his fever, which was solely the consequence of a weakness, arising from the continual fatigue he had so long undergone, visibly abated. After having been eight days on board, it left him entirely. The river gradually lowering, and the vessel drawing nine feet water, Thevenot determined to use the greatest speed to return and avoid the shoals, which are frequent in the river. Notwithstanding his incessant care, together with the experience of the boatswain, who was then on his 45th voyage, and the uninterrupted labour of the laptots, they made but little way: different obstacles impeded their progress. To complete their misfortunes, when they arrived at Saldee they were informed that a party of the Poules were determined to stop the convoy. This intelligence induced the captain to depart immediately, without staying to take any millet on board. They touched the ground at the passage of the grand canal, ten leagues below Saldee. The Poules, who had seen them, came to wait for them near the Devil's-mouth: they hoped to surprise them here; but when they founded the two channels which run through this rock, every one set to work, and they soon disengaged themselves. The captain had taken care to put the cargo and trunks on a point of the rock which rises in the middle of the river, nor could the Poules get at it to plunder. They lost, however, the small quantity of millet, which, according to custom, is generally

left on the Moorish coast, to lighten the vessel when near this dangerous passage. The Bienfaïtant was the first vessel which returned; but they were not without fears for the rest: they dispatched an express by land, to inform the remainder of the convoy of the measures which had been taken to attack and surprize them; but this messenger, who was one of the tribe of the Poules, was better pleased to stop near the rock, and share in the plunder of the convoy, than to warn the vessels of the danger. They received no news from their companions, nor did they see any of the convoy, which made them fear that the whole had been stopped.

After having got clear of many sand-banks, they struck again on that of Haliburum. It then became necessary to lighten the vessel, and they employed half the day in that business. At night they saw the boat of the Paul, Captain St. Jean. He had been attacked at the rock, but as his vessel drew but little water, and his crew was numerous, he passed without loss. He informed M. Saugnier that his partner Scipio, the day after his departure, had arrived at Baquelle; that he had weighed his vessel, saved the cargo, and would be with them soon. On the 11th of December he arrived at Doumons, the general rendezvous of the convoy on their return from Galam.

On the arrival of M. Saugnier's courier at Tamboucanee, Scipio deposited his merchandize on board the different Senegalian vessels, and putting a stop to his traffic, came off with his laptots in the boat. Scipio instead of landing at Baquelle, went with his men to examine the vessel which was left upon the rocks; from thence he repaired to Tuago, and presented himself before the grand fouquet, made him a tender of his services, and promised to spend his whole life with him. The prince, glad to engage a man of such courage and reputation, received him with the greatest politeness.

Scipio, finding him disposed as he could wish, represented that he could not do him any essential service, unless M. Saugnier's ship was first cleared from the rocks; that, by means of repairing the vessel, he might expeditiously transport his troops where the war required them; that his neighbours, and the governors of the different provinces, would by this means be taught to hold him in greater fear, and learn to respect his authority; that Sirman himself would soon return to his duty, particularly when he should perceive that the Senegalian laptots were united against him to bring him to submission. These measures were approved of by the prince; and Scipio, in order to bring about his designs, recovered the cordage which the Saracolets had taken away; and with their assistance succeeded, after much labour, in heaving down the vessel upon the sand. He then requested the grand fouquet to restore him his laptots, who being more expert in naval matters than the Saracolets, would facilitate the repairs of the vessel while the convoy remained; a thing impossible to effect after their departure for Senegal. The lord of Baquelle received an order, and let the laptots go. With their assistance, Scipio turned the ship keel upwards; and several Senegalian vessels, among the rest the Moor, coming by, he borrowed a sufficient number of laptots, got her up again, after having repaired the damage her keel had suffered, dismissed the Saracolets, who had been very useful to him, and made towards Baquelle. Being called upon to fulfil his engagements by the grand fouquet, he replied, that if the fouquet was king on land, he was monarch on the river, and now ready for battle: he disdained, he said, to be a slave to a negro king! The vessel no longer leaked; Scipio, with none but his own laptots on board, moored her across the principal passages of the river, and waited for the returned vessels. He felt himself too much obliged to St. Jean to detain his laptots, and as soon as the vessel had undergone

her repairs sent them back to him. He then forced the laptots belonging to the convoy to come on board him, and summoned the lord of Baquelle to restore him all the merchandize that he had purchased by trick, or taken by force. Amadi, at first, hesitated; but contented the moment he saw Scipio was about to make a descent in order to set his village on fire, and to carry off whatever should come in his way. He gave back the goods, of which M. Saugnier had taken an account in writing; and restored besides two barrels of gunpowder, of 100 lb. weight each, which was forgot in the catalogue.

The Senegal captains were not inclined to expose their sailors in M. Saugnier's behalf; but those brave fellows, accustomed to fight under the command of Scipio, and acknowledging no other leader but him, could not reconcile to themselves the idea of abandoning him. Besides they had hopes of plunder in attacking the village of Baquelle, and they believed themselves to be invincible under his orders. Every thing being in readiness for the onset, Scipio began to proceed down the river. The army of Tuago was already drawn out upon the bank. The grand fouquet wanted to take vengeance on Scipio, and hoped that with small arms alone he should be able to prevent his passage; but the balls only grazed the ship, the barricado kept Scipio's men in safety; and his swivels, from which several discharges were made, soon scattered the undisciplined troops that tremblingly advanced against him. Without loss of time, he continued his way as far as Yanne, the residence of the principal minister of the almayy of the Poules. This man informed him, that the Tamplirs, dissatisfied with the distribution of the duties made by the almayy, were assembled together; that forming a numerous body, they waited at the rock for the return of the vessels. Scipio determined anew either to conquer or die. He dispatched several expresses to the other ships of the convoy, to prevail on them not to sail but in a body, in order to repel the attacks of the Poules. As his vessel drew too much water to wait for the convoy, he determined to sail prepared for every event. His design was to make himself master of the passage; to resist at that post every attempt of the enemy, and to wait there the arrival of the convoy. He hoped, with the assistance of the sailors from Senegal, to repel the combined force of the Poules, and to indemnify himself for the losses of the voyage by the captures made on this people; but circumstances changed his resolution. His crew were considerably diminished, having lost five men; and M. Saugnier taken with him three, together with a gourmet: there now remained only 22 on board, the greater part of whom were so reduced by the fatigue attendant on such a dangerous voyage, that little dependence could be placed on their assistance. In this dilemma he armed the negroes he had retaken on board of Mambau; and as they were his countrymen, being from Baabarn, he found no difficulty in determining them to fight, in case of an attack on the part of the Poules. Having thus resolved, he advanced with confidence to that part of the river where he knew the negroes were waiting to plunder the ship. Four leagues before he arrived at the rock he cast anchor, and took post in a wood with twelve resolute laptots, in order to reconnoitre the motions of the enemy. Here he surprized two princes, who were going to join the forces of the Poules; carried them on board his vessel, and put them in irons. He then weighed anchor, and appeared at seven in the morning in that part of the channel where the water was most deep.

As soon as he had reached the rock, he saw both sides of the river lined with an innumerable multitude of Poules, shouting with joy, and preparing to oppose his passage. He remained, according to his first intention, the whole day inactive on board;

at night he found a foot less water than he retired into the the exultations and now undetermined urged him to the to enable him to enemies. He had succeeded. At that spot where the towers were stationed, he in his girdle, he accompanied by twelve Poules, who inflamed princes, who were he then obliged they were put in

The next morning several of their came aboard; Scipio then and desired him to continued to attack he was determined that as for him, he wait for the convoy his vessel, he would Senegalans, massacre him. When this chiefs, they thought messenger to Scipio, would restore the further molestation mere promises, rest He assured them, would liberate the rock; which satisfied dare to interrupt it of two days the water hour, and the passage. In order to pass the vessel; but as merchandize, the with enemies, Scipio agreed to give the 14 double-barrel powder, and to supply surety for the persons required that the troops should instantly complied assisted him to get

They remained the convoy; while to obtain intelligence concluded that their course to Sen. Scarcely had they received intelligence tered into a capitulation would soon appear their arrival at Podor.

In addition, however, the vessel and merchandize at Tuago which contained his

The governor had a caria commandant M. Duchozel. He Saugnier appeared embarked with M. agent at Podor. The company's vessel him on account of the injuries he had Senegal. They felt a strong current, a colony, where they 1786, after a tedious

at night he founded the channel, found there was a foot less water than the vessel drew. At day-light he retired into the ward-room, from whence he heard the exultations and threats of the Poules. He was now undetermined what part to act. His courage urged him to the battle, but he had not men enough to enable him to go on shore and repel his numerous enemies. He had recourse then to stratagem, and succeeded. At sun-set, after having observed the spot where the tamprirs that commanded the Poules were stationed, he swam on shore with a sabre stuck in his girdle, and his musquet on his head, accompanied by twelve of his crew. He attacked the Poules, who instantly fled, and took prisoners six princes, who were not able to make their escape. He then obliged them to swim to the vessel, where they were put in irons.

The next morning the Poules, perceiving that several of their chiefs were wanting, sent a man aboard: Scipio shewed the princes to their messenger, and desired him to inform the tamprirs, that if they continued to attack and molest him in his business, he was determined to cut off the heads of the captives; that as for him, he did not fear them; that he would wait for the convoy, and that then, setting fire to his vessel, he would open the pass, and, aided by the Senegalians, massacre all the Poules that opposed him. When this resolution was reported to the chiefs, they thought proper to send a second messenger to Scipio, in order to tell him, that if he would restore the princes, he should meet with no further molestation. But Scipio, not trusting to mere promises, refused to hearken to their request. He assured them, that if he was not molested, he would liberate the prisoners as soon as he passed the rock; which satisfied the Poules, who now did not dare to interrupt his progress. During the course of two days the water lowered more and more every hour, and the passage became less and less practicable. In order to succeed, it was necessary to lighten the vessel; but as there was no place to deposit the merchandize, the banks of the river being covered with enemies, Scipio, in order to save the ship, agreed to give the tamprirs 30 pieces of guiney-blues, 14 double-barrelled musquets, 14 barrels of gunpowder, and 10 fustils of the better kind. As a surety for the performance of the capitulation, he required that the son of the tamprir who commanded the troops should be put into his hands: this was instantly complied with; and the Poules themselves assisted him to get through this dangerous passage.

They remained six days at Doumons, waiting for the convoy; while several couriers were dispatched to obtain intelligence, but to no purpose. Having concluded that the convoy was lost, they continued their course to Senegal, being six vessels in company. Scarcely had they arrived at Podor, when they received intelligence that the whole convoy had entered into a capitulation at the rock, and that they would soon appear in sight; which three days after their arrival at Podor they found to be true.

In addition, however, to M. Saugnier's misfortunes, the vessel aboard of which Scipio had left his merchandize at Tamboucanee was lost, and that which contained his ivory pillaged at the rock.

The governor had appointed the marquis of Becaria commandant of the fort Podor, in the room of M. Duchozel. He arrived the day on which M. Saugnier appeared before that place. M. Duchozel embarked with M. Saugnier; and also the company's agent at Podor. The latter would not proceed in the company's vessels; and M. Saugnier received him on account of his situation, notwithstanding the injuries he had received from the directors of Senegal. They set sail from Podor with a fair and a strong current, which soon brought them to the colony, where they arrived the 24th of December, 1786, after a tedious and disagreeable voyage.

It is thought that Podor, on account of the air, is the most dangerous spot in all this part of Africa. The village, and the fort, are situated on the banks of the river, in the territory belonging to the Poules. The fort, which forms a circle, with four towers, was constructed by the English: It has no ditch, and being at the distance of 200 toises from the river, may, in case of hostilities with the Poules, easily be cut off from the water. It is consequently of no utility, since it can neither protect the vessels that pass the river, nor be relieved by them. The unwholeness of the air is occasioned by the surrounding swamps, which are scarcely ever dried up.

M. Saugnier finding a return of his complaint, determined to return to France for the recovery of his health: accordingly he waited an opportunity, and Capt. Clouët Dubuisson, of Havre, commander of the Furet, which had been repaired, (and which, after remaining a month at Goree, and the Cape de Verd Islands, was to proceed directly for Havre) having offered him a passage, he accepted it.

About eleven o'clock they got out to sea, and the next day at eight in the morning anchored in the harbour of Goree. This island is only a desert rock, and totally unproductive. There are, however, a few gardens, which furnish a little fallad. It is destitute of water, although indeed there are three small springs on the mountain, which are guarded with great care, reserved for the commandant, and furnish water only for his use. The commandants are often so inhuman as to refuse water to their countrymen, even when they have more than they have occasion for themselves.

Scarcely had the Furet set sail before M. Saugnier observed on shore a sailor of a very suspicious appearance. Having him seized by the negroes, and brought before the commandant, he acknowledged that he had concealed himself, in order to avoid being an accomplice in the depredations committed by a Bermudian vessel, that, under pretext of taking in provisions, had put in for a few days to Goree. The deposition of this man alarmed M. Saugnier exceedingly; he apprehended that this ship (which in fact was a pirate, but which could not be detected, as all her credentials were in due form,) intended to attack the Furet. This was really the case; but that vessel being an excellent sailer, would not let the pirate come up with her; she ran under the cannon of the fort, and they perceived the Bermudian steer off.

M. Saugnier set off by land from Goree the 9th of April in the evening, and arrived at Dacar, where he put up for the night at the house of the marabout of the village: next morning he set out upon his journey, escorted by his son, and a negro of Senegal named Wally. He had an Arabian horse, that he seldom rode, being accompanied by the elder Floquet, who had been to Goree in the Bayonnaise. They arrived on the 14th about nine o'clock in the evening, after a journey of five days, constantly sleeping in the open air, walking along the sea shore, and broiling under a burning sun. It was too late to enter the colony; nevertheless Saerguy, one of their gourmets in the Galam voyage, carried him thither in his canoe, unperceived by the centinels.

At this time M. Saugnier's health was visibly mending, and this journey, far from weakening, had re-established his strength. Being, however, perplexed with crosses, another relapse was the consequence, and when the ship set sail on the 30th of June, 1786, he was carried on board in a state of insensibility. Two hours after they weighed anchor. The voyage, though long, was prosperous; and M. Saugnier entirely recovered his health on the passage, and on the 23d of August, 1786, they arrived safe at L'Orient.

BOOK II.

CHAPTER I.

Narrative of M. de Brisson—He embarks for Senegal, on board the St. Catherine—The Captain and his Mate pay no Attention to his Cautions—They strike—Masts cut away—Water comes into the Cabin—Captain dismayed—Brisson strives to raise his Spirits—Long-Boat hoisted out—Overset—Thrown upon the Beach—Brisson swims to the Captain, &c.—Get the Boat afloat—All landed—Their Adventures—Meet Inhabitants—Some of Brisson's Companions wounded—Stripped, &c.—Brisson's Behaviour to a Priest—Jealousy and Discord of the Savages—Brisson, &c. assassinated—Seized—A Contention—An Arab offers to stab Brisson—The strange Manner by which he is prevented—Meets the Companions he had lost—Cruelty of the Women.

IN the month of June, 1785, M. de Brisson received orders from the Marshal De Castries, minister and secretary of state for the department of the marine, to embark on board the St. Catherine for Senegal, under the command of Capt. le Turc.

Having proceeded from the coast of France to the Canaries, on the 10th of July they passed between those islands and that of Palma.

Brisson, apprehensive of the danger to which vessels are exposed in those latitudes from the strength of the current, frequently warned the captain; but neither he nor his mate paid proper attention to those necessary precautions; in consequence of which the vessel struck, and they found themselves involved in a kind of basin formed by rocks: the masts were immediately cut away to lighten the vessel, but in vain, for the water had already found its way into the cabin.

Captain le Turc was exceedingly dismayed, and Brisson did every thing in his power to raise his drooping spirits, but his despondency still continued: however M. Yan, the second mate, M. Suret, a passenger, with three English sailors and others, animated by the example of Brisson, hoisted out the long-boat, and during a tedious night they struggled against a violent sea, in hopes when the morning appeared they might be able to land in safety on the beach.

The captain, mate, and 3-4ths of the crew, who wanted courage to try the only chance which remained to save them, staid in the vessel, and threw a tow rope into the boat, in order to haul her back again, in case the adventurers succeeded: but they had scarce touched the water with their oars, when, on account of the eddy of the sea, they were obliged to drop them: the boat now overset, the waves dispersed, and they were all thrown upon the beach, except one M. Devuize, whom Brisson saved from being drowned.

Brisson and Yan leaped into the water, and swam to their wretched companions who remained on board the wreck, and whom they soon prevailed upon to get the boat afloat, but which they did not effect without a great deal of trouble; an ample compensation, however, attended their labour, as all the crew were presently got on shore.

As soon as they had landed, they climbed up the rocks, in order to see whereabouts they were; for none of them could tell what distance the land might be from Senegal. On the top of these rocks they perceived an immense plain, covered with white sand; over which there were some creeping plants, resembling the branches of coral. There were also some hills at a distance, covered with a kind of wild heath, and which appeared like a wood of some extent: advancing towards these hills, they saw some camels dung upon the ground, and soon after perceived several grazing in different places. They were then sure that this district was inhabited, and felt themselves more at ease after the discovery; for not knowing among what people their fate had conducted them, they were the happier on approaching human habitations, as hunger and thirst, which began to be importunate, might have driven them to direful extremities.

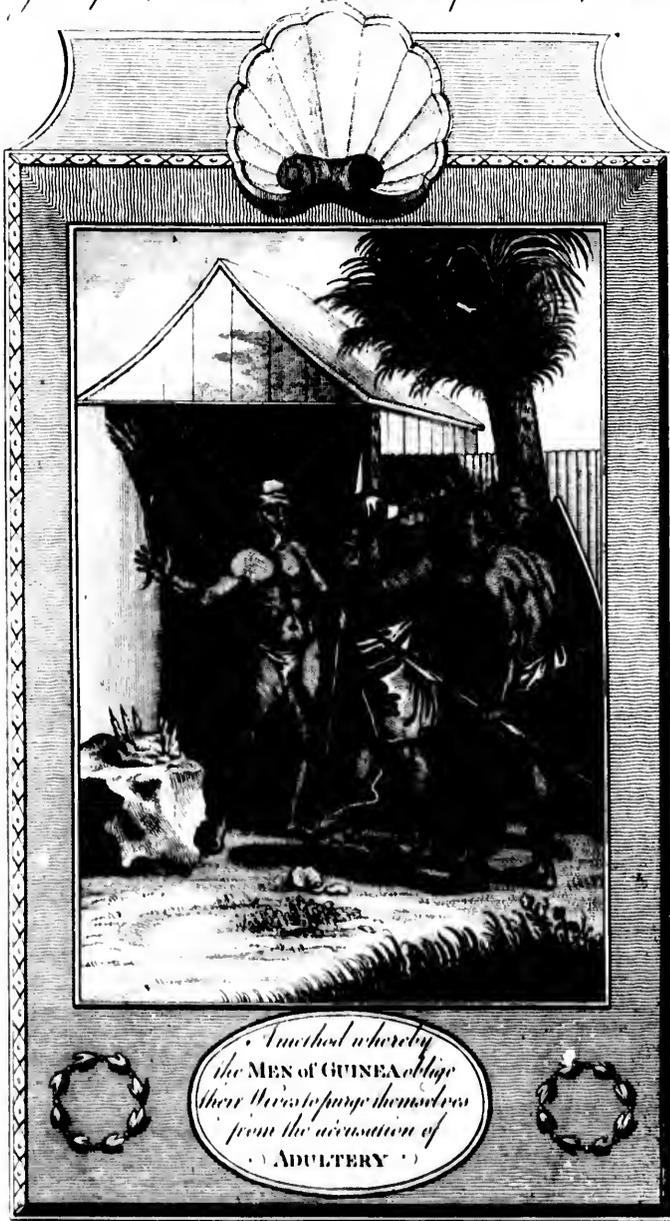
They now discovered some children at a distance, halting to collect their herds of goats, and drive

them away. Brisson immediately concluded that they had been desecrated, and that their appearance had excited some apprehension. The cries of the children spread the alarm through the neighbouring camps, and they soon saw the inhabitants advancing to meet them. No sooner did they make out what they were, than they separated, began to skip and dance upon the sand, covered their faces with their hands, and howled and cried in the most dreadful manner; this was enough to convince Brisson and his party that they were little acquainted with European faces. Their gestures, and the measures they took to surround the crew, did not afford a favourable presage: Brisson, however, cautioned his friends not to separate, but to walk on in an orderly manner, until he should be near enough to make himself heard. Having in former voyages to Senegal learnt a few words of Arabic, from which he hoped to derive much advantage on the present occasion; accordingly, he began by tying a white handkerchief to the end of his cane, in the form of a flag, in hopes that they might have some knowledge of this signal, especially if any of them had ever been at Senegal, or seen shipping on their coast.

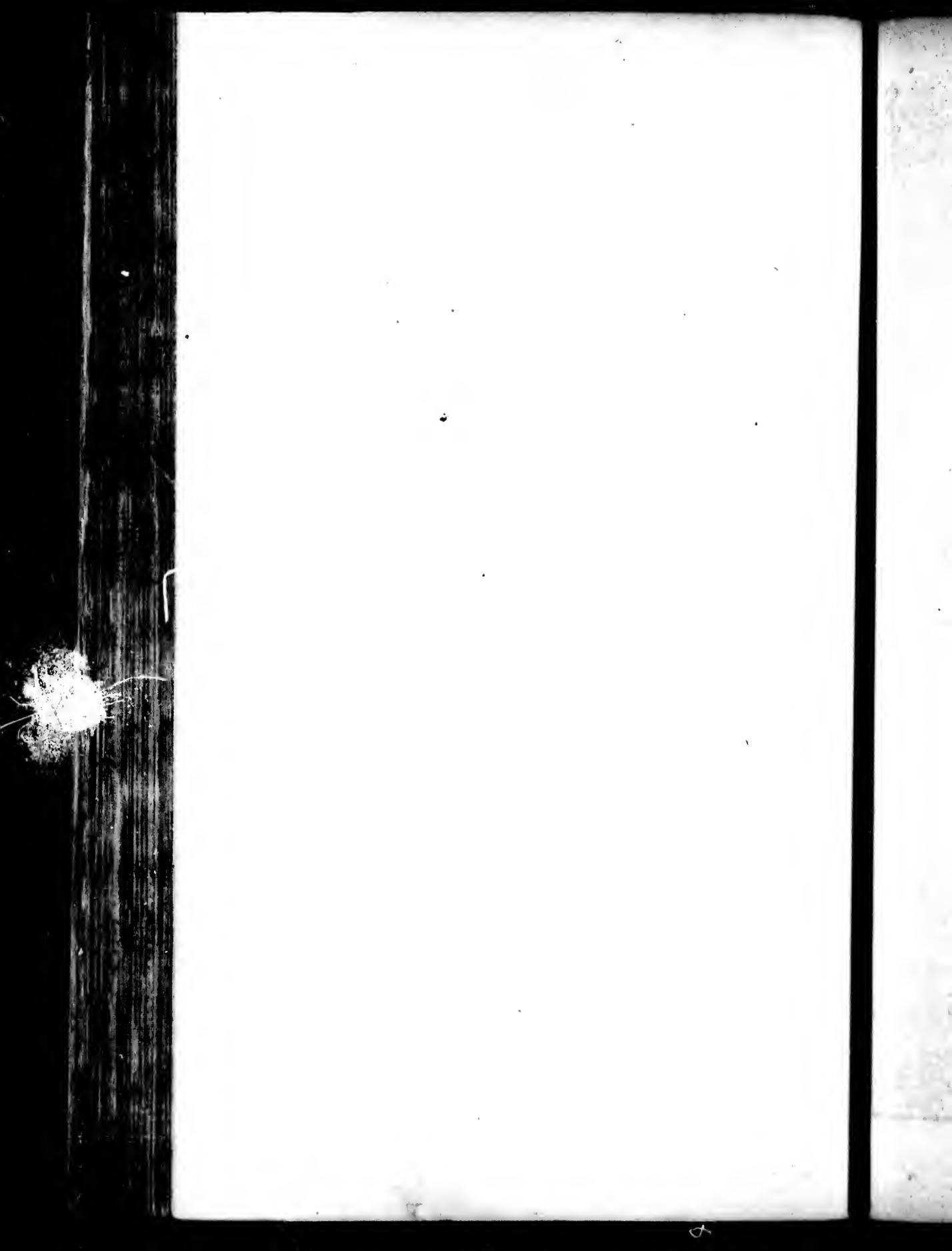
As soon as they approached the savages, some of Brisson's companions, among whom were the first and second mates, dispersed; but they were immediately surrounded, and seized by the collar. It was not till that moment, when the rays of the sun were reflected from the polished steel of their daggers, that they discovered them to be armed; which not having perceived before, Brisson had advanced without fear. The two unfortunate men, who had been carried off, not making their appearance again, all his efforts to stop the others became fruitless: fear took possession of their minds; they uttered unanimous cries of despair, and ran off in various directions. The Arabs, armed with weighty cutlasses, and little maces, rushed on them with incredible ferocity; and Brisson had soon the misfortune to see some of them wounded, and others stripped naked, and stretched out almost breathless on the sand.

Brisson, in the midst of this horrible massacre, perceiving an unarmed Arab, and from his dress taking him for one of those who had accompanied Prince Allicoury, in a visit he had formerly made on the island of St. Louis, immediately ran to throw himself into his arms; but the disdain with which he viewed Brisson and his party soon convinced them that they were not less unfortunate than the rest: having taken Brisson by the hand, he looked at it with attention, counted his fingers, and then put his hand into the hollow of his, making at the same time several motions with his head. He then asked him who he was, what he came to do there, and how he had found his way thither. Brisson traced the form of a ship upon the sand, and by the means of a few Arabic words he was acquainted with, assisted with signs, made him understand that he solicited his assistance to conduct them to the place of their destination: he added, that he had about him wherewith to recompense his trouble; and this last article he seemed to understand better than the preceding ones; for immediately after he locked his fingers in Brisson's, as an assurance that from that moment they were closely connected; and told him, with equal haste, to deliver to him the effects of which he

Engraved for PORTLOCKS. See COLLECTION of VOYAGES & TRAVELS.



Published by R. DODD, near St. Pauls Church, 1784





The LANDING of CAPT. COOK, &c. at ERRAMANGA, one of the NEW HEBRIDES.

Page 104.



he had just spoo-
handſome watch
them, a gold
buckles, a ring
fork, and ſpoon.
With great care,
his treaſure in his
to abandon him.

As ſoon as the
on what part of
Briſſon pointed it
called ſeveral of his
him. From the
him, Briſſon perceiv-
of conſequence; w
caſe, as he was th

As ſoon as they
gan to utter loud
viſible in their face
of diſcord. They
and his companion
the ſhip every thing
they all declined
ming, and they w
ſelves: while thoſe
the moſt jealous ap-
ticularly the women

In the mean time
ready ſpread over
rages, whoſe num
further jealouſy,
every quarter: the
riſt loſt their lives,
being able to plund
ing crew, and tore
they had upon their
attentive to Briſſon
then, and which the

Briſſon's maſter,
was every moment
friends, whom he v
nerſhip of twelve
themſelves under his
means of acquiring
portion he had receiv
made the neceſſary
what had already be
the diviſion of the
withdrew from the
ſon and his party
wherein they were l
one another, was n
with moſt.

Their maſter's firſt
puloſly, for fear the
concealed. He took
handkerchiefs, givin
he did not, ſome of
Briſſon's declaring th
already, he deſired ſ

The name of their
del Zouza; his tribe
the Ouadelims becau
on friendly terms. I
to find that they had
moſt ferocious among
of Arabia. He foreſ
thing but hardſhips
happily delivered.

Briſſon's maſter ha
caution and care the
turned to the beach to
to him from the pla
mean time a band of
their hut: when they
every thing, they laid
and his companions.
who took him by the
one way and then att
which remained was n

he had just spoken. Brisson gave him two very handsome watches, with the chains belonging to them, a gold stock-buckle, two pair of silver buckles, a ring set with brilliants, a silver cup, fork, and spoon, and two hundred livres in specie. With great care, and still greater mystery, he hid his treasure in his blue shirt, promising Brisson not to abandon him.

As soon as the Arab's booty was secure, he asked on what part of the coast they had been shipwrecked. Brisson pointed it out to him; and he immediately called several of his people, and told them to follow him. From the manner in which they addressed him, Brisson perceived that his protector was a man of consequence; which afterwards proved to be the case, as he was their *talbe* or priest.

As soon as they arrived at the sea-side, they began to utter loud cries of joy; but the jealousy, visible in their faces soon prompted them to a spirit of discord. They determined on making Brisson and his companions swim on board, and get out of the ship every thing it was possible to save; but they all declined it, on the pretence of not swimming, and they were obliged to go aboard themselves: while those who remained ashore expressed the most jealous apprehensions of their success, particularly the women.

In the mean time the news of the wreck was already spread over the country; and the greedy savages, whose numbers could not fail to excite still further jealousy, were seen running down from every quarter: they soon came to blows, and several lost their lives. The women, enraged at not being able to plunder the vessel, fell upon the suffering crew, and tore off the small remains of clothes they had upon their backs: they were particularly attentive to Brisson's; which he had preserved till then, and which they thought deserved a preference.

Brisson's master, perceiving the number of Arabs was every moment increasing, called two of his friends, whom he very wisely admitted to the partnership of twelve shipwrecked men that had put themselves under his protection. This was the best means of acquiring partizans; and of preserving the portion he had reserved for himself. After having made the necessary stipulations, as well for sharing what had already been got out of the ship, as for the division of the slaves that had been made, he withdrew from the crowd by way of securing Brisson and his party against any insult. The hut wherein they were lodged, or rather heaped upon one another, was miserably infected, and covered with mofs.

Their master's first care was to search them scrupulously, for fear they should still have any thing concealed. He took away even their shirts and handkerchiefs, giving them to understand that if he did not, some other would. However, upon Brisson's declaring that he had given him enough already, he desisted from stripping him.

The name of their master was Sidy Mahamet del Zouza; his tribe that of Labdesseba; he avoided the Ouadelims because they did not live with them on friendly terms. Brisson was very much grieved to find that they had fallen into the hands of the most ferocious among the inhabitants of the Deserts of Arabia. He foresaw that they should have nothing but hardships and trouble to undergo, till happily delivered.

Brisson's master having now buried with great caution and care the treasure he had received, returned to the beach to see if there was aught coming to him from the plunder of the wreck. In the mean time a band of Ouadelims came and besieged their hut: when they had examined and plundered every thing, they laid violent hands upon Brisson and his companions. Brisson was seized by two, who took him by the arms and dragged him first one way and then another: the little of his dress which remained was now an object of jealousy and

fury. Others however advancing, surrounded and carried him off: when they had stripped him of his shirt and neck-kerchief, they drove him behind a heap of sand, and indulged their utmost cruelty: the wretched Brisson concluded himself utterly lost, especially as they were now preparing cords to tie him. During this mournful dilemma, one of his master's associates hastened up, charged them with having committed unheard-of outrages in the hut of Sidy Mahamet, and conjured them to stop. This emissary further declared, that the priest being incensed at their having trod down the holy-books of their religion, were immediately to be brought to trial for such sacrilegious conduct: the only way to appease his anger and prevent any fatal consequences, was to restore him his slave. This menace had the desired effect, and Brisson having been separated from his wretched companions, was now delivered up to the emissary, whose name was Nouegen: he conducted him immediately to the place where the council was assembled. As soon as he introduced Brisson, he requested that for the trouble he was at in carrying him off, he should be one of his slaves; adding, that he had the greatest right to him, for that he saw him deliver to Sidy Mahamet, a quantity of valuable effects. Brisson was now surrounded by a multitude of women and children; who continued gazing at him with the greatest attention.

The priest enraged at his emissary's claim, and particularly at his having discovered the effects, evinced the greatest anger and indignation, uttering the severest menaces if Brisson was not restored to him. Upon this Nouegen swelled with pride and vexation, and drawing his dagger, offered to kill Brisson, since he could not be his. The priest now covered Brisson with his long string of 115 small black balls, somewhat resembling the rosaries which the catholics use, and then took out a little book which hung to his girdle, while the women assisted in recovering Brisson from the hands of Nouegen, and delivering him up to the priest, for fear he should pronounce an anathema against Nouegen, of which the common people are in great awe of.

Some little distance Brisson perceived his companions whom he despaired of ever seeing again. They had ate nothing for two days; nor was Brisson less exhausted than they; but the critical circumstances in which he had found himself, had so agitated his spirits, that he had in a manner lost the faculty of feeling the want by which he was so hardly pressed.

As soon as he recovered himself, he reflected on the danger from which he had so fortunately escaped; and his emotion was so great, that he could not refrain from weeping. He endeavoured to conceal from every eye this testimony of his sensibility and grief: but some women perceiving it, instead of being moved to compassion, threw sand in his eyes, as they said, to wipe away his tears.

During three days of their slavery, they had as yet had nothing to eat but a little meal, spoiled by the salt water, and rendered still more detestable by a mixture of barley-meal, that had been long kept in goat-skins; and even this wretched repast was interrupted by cries of alarm, which they heard at some distance.

One of Sidy Mahamet's friends ran up to him, to advise him to hide himself as fast as possible, as the Ouadelims were pouring in from all quarters, with the intention of carrying off what his horde had captured.

A place of rendezvous was agreed upon, after which they went and hid themselves behind some hillocks of sand, where they remained till some Arabs of a different tribe, but equally interested in the preservation of their plunder, came to join them, and reinforce their band. A guide, who had gone before them, had placed small pyramids of stones

from distance to distance, to point out the road they were to follow, and to prevent their falling into the midst of some hostile horde, particularly that of the Ouadelims. These people, indeed, are universally so greedy and rapacious, that friends or enemies, they are almost equally to be feared. At break of day, all those that had Christian slaves, having joined them, they set off on their march for the inland country, where the families of their respective masters resided.

All this while Briffon suffered much, especially from thirst. It became so painful to them to move their tongues, that they did not dare to ask one another any questions. They were obliged to go the same pace as the camels, which were hurried on at a rapid rate; and their masters, from the fear of their being taken from them, marched and counter-marched them in many different ways, that it was fifteen days before they reached their habitation, while, by following the direct road, they should have arrived there in five at most.

After having climbed up mountains of a prodigious height, and entirely covered with small grey stones as sharp as flints, they descended into a sandy bottom, thickly sown with prickly thistles. There they slackened their pace: the soles of their feet were by this time all over blood, and it became impossible for them to get on any further: Briffon's master was obliged to take him up behind him on his camel; but this attention on his part, so far from being a relief to him, was the cause of his suffering unheard-of torments. The camel's pace is naturally very heavy, and his trot exceedingly hard. As he was naked, he had nothing between him and the animal's bare back, so that in a short time he was dreadfully galled. His blood streamed down the flanks of the camel: but this spectacle, instead of exciting the sensibility and compassion of these barbarians, served them as matter of amusement. They made a sport of his sufferings; and that they might enjoy it the better, urged on the beasts upon which they were mounted. His fores would, no doubt, have become incurable, if he had not come to a violent, though necessary resolution, of letting himself fall upon the sand. All the hurt he met with in falling, was the being pricked from head to foot by the thistles.

When night was approaching, they perceived a very thick smoke, and Briffon thought they were arrived at some hamlet where they should find something to eat, and above all something to drink; but he soon saw that it was nothing but underwood, behind which their guide had taken up his lodging. Briffon went and stretched himself out behind a bush, and there waited for death; but scarcely had he laid down, when an Arab of his company came to make him get up and unload his camel. Briffon was so incensed at the manner in which this man gave him orders, that he answered him without any ceremony. Immediately he snatched off his head an old sailor's hat, that had been given to Briffon instead of his own, spit upon it as a mark of contempt, and seized him very roughly by the arm to drag him towards the camel. As soon as he laid his hand upon Briffon, he was no longer master of his resentment: he gave him a blow in the face with his fist; and disengaging himself from his hands, took up a stick with a lance at the end, ran up to strike him, but he took to his heels, and

thus escaped the effects of Briffon's anger.

At the same time he perceived his master advancing towards him. Not knowing his design, Briffon called out to him, that if his intention was to avenge his countryman, he would find him prepared to go any length, rather can suffer himself to be struck. This resolution and threats made him laugh; however, he dispelled his slave's apprehensions, by telling him he had nothing to fear. This adventure made him imagine that with firmness he might avoid a great deal of ill-treatment, to which he could not fail of being exposed if he shewed any signs of fear, and he often experienced afterwards, that this idea was well-founded.

He now saw preparations made which gave him a great deal of uneasiness. Flints were heated in a large kind of furnace: he saw a great stone, which was lying under a bush, taken up; a hole was dug in the earth, and the Arabs frequently repeating his name, burst into violent fits of laughter. At length they called him, and made him draw near the hole they had just dug. He whom Briffon had beat made him a number of signs with his hand, passing it backwards and forwards along his neck, as if he was going to cut off his head, or meant to make him understand that he should lose his. Determined as Briffon was to make a stout resistance, all these gestures excited very unpleasant feelings: however, on approaching the cavity, he saw a leathern bottle, a little bag containing barley-meal, and a goat that had been lately killed, taken out of it. The sight of these provisions restored him to his tranquillity, although he was ignorant of the use to which the heated flints were to be applied. At length he saw a wooden vessel, in which some barley-meal had been thrown, filled with water; and the heated pebbles, thrown into it, served to make it boil. It was thus that their masters made a kind of paste, which they kneaded in their hands, and swallowed without chewing. As to the slaves, their repast consisted of the same meal, mixed up with water: it was thrown upon a carpet, which served their master to put under his feet during the prayer, and as a mattress at night. After having for a long time kneaded this paste, he delivered it to Briffon to divide it with his fellow slaves. It is impossible to conceive how nauseous it was to the taste. The water with which it was made had been procured upon the sea-side, and then inclosed in a raw goat's-skin: to prevent it from corrupting, a kind of tar had been put into it, and had given it a most horrid smell. The same water was given them for their drink, and bad as it was, in very small quantities.

The Arab whom Briffon struck hearing that he complained, gave him the remains of his paste, and told him that the next day they should eat the goat, which had been killed on purpose for them, as he had given him to understand by his signs. Briffon testified to him, half by words and half by gestures, his great surprise at the finding of these provisions; and he employed the same language to tell him that the guide, who had gone on before them, had procured them in a neighbouring hamlet, and had hid them under ground, to conceal them from the sight of the Moors, in case any should pass that way. When their repast was over, each of them retired behind a bush, and lay down to repose.

CHAPTER II.

Further Misfortunes of Briffon during his Captivity—Customs of the Arabs—Women worse than the Men—Treatment two of Briffon's Companions—Account of the extraordinary Plains they traversed over towards the East—Kindness of Sidy Salem to the Slaves—Briffon mistakes it—Renew their March—Discover a Hamlet—Briffon's Hope of obtaining his Liberty—Two of his Companions cruelly beaten—The Reason—Briffon's Courage on the Occasion—Quarrels with his Master—His Master endeavours to appease him—Briffon's wretched Situation—Cruel Usage, &c.—All the Work falls upon him—Delivers a Letter for the Consul at Soira to a Jewish Merchant—Real Character of Sidy Mahamet—Briffon's Hope vanishes—Unhappy Fate of the Second Captain—Briffon's Health impaired.

EARLY

EARLY the unhappy matters to affirm being done, they but a scanty stool soon they halted a single tree to sun, which came heads. They were camels, and in a piece of business country all the tr with thorns. As find, the goat w they continued to ters regaled them they considered a meat was dressed, without giving the find that was stic credible voracity. bones, they made tear away the little them to their slaves patch, and reload new their march w

When the sun w its fiery rays (for i ways sets in a rec scattered here and hecks and herds re habitants of the car out in crowds to me the kind laws of H loaded them with a most inhuman treat ions were reduced women especially, fa took a pleasure in t

Briffon, having r his camel, perceived a double-barrelled ge sented his breast to act of firmness, to accustomed, alonish tributed to strengt perance of not feari se. He now appro thrown by an unkn ped to be that of head: he was stunnec recovered his senses, called out for veng spread fright and t even the savages, wh not knowing what m One of them, howe Briffon on the breast v and made him vomit

They staid but one bitants of which, ho ginning, were good e for three or four day in advancing toward little pebbles, as whit but as a lentil. While found beneath their fe excavated. These r country being entirel place whatever. The a reddish vapour. It volcanoes on every si the feet like sparks of is seen in the air: a pro thing dreadful in it, small breeze arise, th extreme lassitude; his up, and little pimples, swarming, cover his bo

EARLY the next day Brissou, and the rest of the unhappy slaves, were commanded by their masters to assemble and load their camels. This being done, they continued their journey, having but a scanty stock of provision with them. About noon they halted in a plain, where they did not find a single tree to shade them from the rays of the sun, which came down perpendicularly upon their heads. They were now employed in unloading the camels, and in tearing up roots to make a fire; a piece of business the more disagreeable, as in this country all the trees, roots, and shrubs are covered with thorns. As soon as the fire had heated the sand, the goat was entirely covered with it, and they continued to feed the flames, while their masters regaled themselves with the raw grease, which they considered as a great dainty. As soon as the meat was dressed, it was taken up; and the Arabs, without giving themselves the time to take off the sand that was sticking to it, devoured it with incredible voracity. After having well gnawed the bones, they made use of their nails, the better to tear away the little remaining flesh; they then threw them to their slaves, enjoining them to eat with dispatch, and reload the camels, that they might renew their march without loss of time.

When the sun was near setting, by the light of its fiery rays (for in this country the sun almost always sets in a red horizon) they discovered tents scattered here and there upon a rising ground, and flocks and herds returning from pasture. The inhabitants of the camp they were approaching came out in crowds to meet them; but, far from practising the kind laws of hospitality in their regard, they loaded them with abuse, and made them suffer the most inhuman treatment; two of Brissou's companions were reduced to a most dreadful state: the women especially, far more ferocious than the men, took a pleasure in tormenting them.

Brissou, having removed to a little distance from his camel, perceived all on a sudden a man level a double-barrelled gun at him; upon which he presented his breast to him, and bid him fire. This act of firmness, to which he was no doubt little accustomed, astonished him, and his surprise contributed to strengthen Brissou's idea, that an appearance of not fearing these people keeps them in awe. He now approached the man, when a stone, thrown by an unknown hand, but which he suspected to be that of a woman, struck him on the head: he was stunned for a moment; as soon as he recovered his senses, he fell into a violent rage, and called out for vengeance. This was enough to spread fright and terror among the children; and even the savages, who were come out to meet them, not knowing what might be the matter, took flight. One of them, however, before he retired, struck Brissou on the breast with the butt-end of a musquet, and made him vomit blood.

They staid but one day in this canton, the inhabitants of which, however ill-disposed in the beginning, were good enough to give them provisions for three or four days. The plains they traversed, in advancing towards the east, were covered with little pebbles, as white as snow, and as round and flat as a lentil. While walking, they heard a hollow sound beneath their feet, as if the ground had been excavated. These regions afford no variety, the country being entirely flat, and not producing any plant whatever. The horizon is there obscured by a reddish vapour. It looks as if there were burning volcanoes on every side. The little pebbles sting the feet like sparks of fire: neither bird, nor insect, is seen in the air: a profound silence, that has something dreadful in it, prevails. If now and then a small breeze arise, the traveller immediately feels extreme lassitude; his lips crack, his skin is parched up, and little pimples, that occasion a very painful smarting, cover his body. The rays of the sun are

likewise so fierce, that the sight is thereby exceedingly endangered.

They proceeded from this immense plain into a second, which the wind had furrowed from distance to distance with a firm sand of a reddish colour. Some odoriferous plants, which reared their heads above the ridges of the furrows, were instantly devoured by the camels, who were as hungry as their masters. They had the good fortune, in quitting this sandy plain, to find a bottom surrounded with mountains, the soil of which was white, and of a marly nature. It was in this kind of valley, at the foot of some broom, forming a kind of bower with its interwoven branches, that they met with water to quench their raging thirst. They drank it with the greatest gút, although very bitter, covered with green moss, and in smell very offensive.

In the evening they reached a horde that was encamped at the distance of a few leagues. Here they met a very good reception; the road to other habitations was pointed out to them, and they were told that they should meet with all the necessary assistance to enable them to reach the residence of their masters. This happened very lucky, as their conductors had gone astray.

The brother-in-law of Brissou's master, who was one of the chiefs of the horde, took particular care of all the slaves. He ordered camel's milk, and ostrich's flesh dried in the sun, and chopped up small, to be given them. He was particularly kind to Brissou, and proposed purchasing him of his brother, who had been long his debtor; but this proposal made Brissou tremble, for it seemed to threaten him with a long captivity. He therefore ran in haste to acquaint his master with the intentions of his brother-in-law, and begged him not to consent to any such arrangement. Brissou also gave him to understand that his ransom would amount to more than his brother would give him, who assured him that he should not leave him, except to go to Morocco or Senegal, which should be ere long. This hope filled Brissou with inexpressible joy: however, notwithstanding his grateful sense of Sidy Salem's kind behaviour, his proposal left unpleasant apprehensions on his mind. This Sidy Salem perceived, and told Brissou that he might one day repent the not having accepted his offers.

They rested three days among the Arabs of the horde called Laroussie, and then set off on their march, to advance further up the country, where they were to meet the families of their leaders. After sixteen days fatigue, and the most dreadful want, they arrived quite exhausted and worn out.

Early in the morning they perceived a hamlet that promised at first sight a delightful residence. Several tents spread under tufted trees, and innumerable flocks and herds feeding upon the hills, made this place look like the retreat of happiness and peace; but, on a nearer approach, it had a different appearance. The trees which they admired at a distance, were old gum trees; and their boughs, thick-set with thorns, rendered the shade they diffused about them inaccessible.

They were now met by several black slaves, who are generally employed to tend the camels, these men kissed their feet, and enquired about their welfare; while the children, at a greater distance, made the air re-echo with their joyful cries, and the women standing respectfully at the entrance of their tents, waited for their husbands. As they approached, their wives advanced with a submissive air, laid their right hand upon their husbands' heads, kissed it, and threw themselves prostrate on the ground. When this ceremony was over, they cast on Brissou and his companions a look of curiosity, and began immediately to load them with abuse. The children, following their example, pinched them, pulled out their hair, and tore their flesh with their nails.

The

ad-
sign,
was
pre-
sent
to
him
then-
This
is he
which
and any
wards

him
in a
which
dug
his
length
the hole
I beat
passing
if he
make
Deter-

ce, all
ellings:
a lea-
-meal,
ken out
him
of the
applied.
h some
water;
rved to
made a
hands,
e slaves,
xed up
which
ring the
having
vered it
It is
s to the
ad been
ed in a
ping, a
given it
s given
in very

that he
ste, and
ne goat,
as he
Brissou
ellures,
visions;
im that
ad pro-
had bid
the sight
at way
retired

They ter-
- East-
- Brissou's
- on the
- nation-
- Merchant
- Brissou's

EARLY

The masters now divided their slaves. When Sidy Mahamet had received the carefles of all his family, Briffon asked him which of the women that surrounded him was his favourite: he shewed her to him; and Briffon approached to give her two handfuls of cloves, that his master had carefully preserved, on purpose that by offering them to her Briffon might attract a more favourable notice. Briffon knew that the Moorish women were passionately fond of odours, particularly of that of cloves. However, she received his present with insulting haughtiness, and drove him from her tent with contempt. A short time after this woman came to order Mess. Devoife, Baudré, and Briffon, who had fallen to her husband's lot, to unload the camels, to clean a kind of kettle, and to go and tear up roots to make a fire. While she was come to make known her will to them, her husband had placed himself on the knees of one of his concubines, where he had fallen fast asleep.

Briffon having returned from making faggots saw two of his companions cruelly beaten, and stretched out upon the sand. They had been treated thus, because, their strength being entirely exhausted, they had not been able to fulfil the task assigned them. Briffon awaked his master with redoubled cries, reminded him of the promise he made him, and begged him to conduct him without delay to Senegal or to Morocco; otherwise he declared that, though it cost him his life, he would have him robbed of all the valuable effects he delivered to him.

His master now became very uneasy on account of the approach of several of his neighbours, who were witnesses to the vehemence of his anger, for fear Briffon should recount the number of the effects he delivered to him. His master therefore came to him, took him by the arm, and pushed him hastily into his tent, desiring him not to make so much noise, and promising him a porringer of milk; upon Briffon's desiring him to carry it to his companions, he answered he was going to give them some, and therefore begged him to be quiet. Sidy now, in the presence of Briffon, forbade his wife to require him to do the least hard work, and also forbade Briffon to obey her. He likewise ordered some barley to be boiled for the slaves.

It was now the end of August and there was no sign of any travelling preparations. Briffon had already asked Sidy Mahamet what he was waiting for to conduct him to Sehegal. He answered that he was looking out for two stout and vigorous camels, that might be able to bear the fatigue of the journey, and that they should set off as soon as he could procure them. Briffon was the more desirous of expedition, as the nights began to be very cool; and the abundant dew wetted them even behind the bushes, which served for a retreat.

Briffon applied again to his master, who answered in such a way, as to persuade him of every thing thought proper.

The flocks, which were now famished, could no longer find pasture; and in the evening on their return, the ewes and goats brought back their udders almost empty. It was their milk, however, and that of the camels, that was to serve as the support of a numerous family. Of course the portion of the slaves was diminished, and they received their scanty allowances after the dogs were served, and in their very distress.

While Briffon one evening was coming back with his flock, one of his ewes brought forth a lamb upon the declivity of a hill. He took it in his arms, and carried it with equal haste and care to his master's favourite. He presented it to her, as soon as he perceived her, thinking she would receive it with the same pleasure she had always testified on similar occasions. He asked her at the same time if she would give him the first of the mother's milk, according to their custom of giving it to him who

has the care of the flock. By way of answer, she threw a knife at his legs, drove him out of her tent with contempt, and loaded him with abuse. Her husband, witness to this brutality, came and told him, that he would make him amends, by giving him a larger quantity of milk. He always believed his master; but how great was his astonishment, in passing behind the tent, to hear the villain laughing with his wife at the blow she had just given him.

The month of October had now nearly expired, and not a drop of water as yet fallen. Briffon's situation became more wretched every day: he had nothing but a sorry bit of packing cloth round his waist. The plains, vallies, every thing was parched up, and nothing remained for the nourishment of the cattle: the season was far advanced. For three years, the heavens had refused its rain to the inhabitants of the deserts. A universal desolation prevailed; when an Arab from a distant country came to tell them, that abundant rains had fallen in several cantons. Joy immediately succeeded to fear and grief; every one rolled up his tent, and all set off together for the newly-watered country. This was the thirtieth time that they changed their abode. Briffon was always employed to fet up and spread the tents, and load the baggage: often he was obliged to carry heavy burthens, to relieve the camels; and he thought himself happy, if the flocks followed in good order, and did not give him the trouble of collecting them.

His companions were so exhausted, that they could do nothing; all the work consequently fell upon him, and he was obliged to divide with them the surplus of food that he procured by endeavouring to make himself useful; for as they were useless, the Arabs gave them little or nothing to eat.

At length they arrived at the place so much desired, from whence Briffon hoped soon to set off to enjoy his liberty; but his master, who till then had combined the most persuasive language with the blackest deceit, now ceased his dissimulation, and openly acted the tyrant.

They were encamped on sand so wet, that the mere pressure of their bodies made the water spring up in considerable quantities. The hour of milking the camels being come, Briffon was called to receive his portion, and that of his companions: the latter seemed to be larger than usual; but on tasting it, they perceived that the augmentation was nothing but rain water, of which the dose was every day to much increased, that they had soon nothing but water a little whitened with milk, which weakened them to an incredible degree, and reduced them to the hard necessity of seeking their food with the cattle. The wild plants that they trod under foot, and raw snails, were from that time almost their only aliment till the moment of their deliverance. They were now put to new fatigues: Briffon was charged to yoke the camels to the plough, to till the ground, and to sow the seed; and his master, not content with employing him in his own service, hired him out to other Arabs for a portion of milk. Sidy, being often upbraided by Briffon, and like wife by other Arabs more compassionate than he, and ever jealous of his possessing Briffon's jewels, which they considered as inestimable, now sent for Briffon, and asked if at Mogadore a good ransom would be given for each of them: Briffon told him he should be satisfied; upon this he was told a Jewish merchant was to call to-morrow to give him some paper, and he should be permitted to write to those from whom he expected assistance. The Hebrew merchant called, and Briffon wrote a letter, which he addressed to the consul at Soira, on if there should not be one there to the person who might represent him, begging him to commiserate their ills, and to afford them the speediest relief.

There was a Moorish girl, who constantly fed her flocks in company with Briffon's, who perceiving him a dupe to his master, soon convinced him of

his error, and the she assured him, brothers, who had him, he would not also added, that his was only to amuse serious intention of removed he might perhaps murdered.

Moulem Adarar ing heard a vague a had brought with very rich Christian than 100 leagues nate enough howe prince, who had r

This conversati Briffon despair of He fell into the that day experie vexation.

He now no lon fields. One eveni ther had invited usual, he was oblig bouring hamlet.

captain, scarcely to his body, stretched his mouth one of weakness had doub ing. Hunger had se was frigitful to beh lutely obliterated.

Some short time any longer to supp senseless under a g the attacks of an en ravens, hovering ov the venomous anim and darting on the immediately began t these savages, still birds of prey, witne difference, and with afford assistance to returned to his tent master for inhumanly the small quantity of because his emaciated rendered him incapal

Briffon's health, w sustained him under t and disease, now yiel and every day annou decline. Already, lik inhospitable climat, the pungency of his g change, finding his bo of scale, resembling th His feet, miserably w

Briffon meets a Sailor— about him—Not satis reproached—Benevol The Arabs driven to the Arabs—His Succ nise—Briffon resore —His Hopes almost e

THEY now quitted search of one th encamped in the neigh where Briffon met with who was a slave as well that six of his compan after their shipwreck, who was gone back to

his error, and the real character of Sidy Mahammed. She assured him, that had it not been for his two brothers, who had taken such a strong liking to him, he would not care how he used him. She also added, that his promise of giving him his liberty was only to amuse him, as he never entertained any serious intention of so doing, for fear if Briffon was removed he might be taken, seized, robbed, and perhaps murdered, by Moulem Adaram.

Moulem Adaram was son to the Emperor. Having heard a vague account of the effects which Briffon had brought with him, he imagined that he was a very rich Christian, and came in consequence more than 100 leagues to purchase him. He was fortunate enough however never to belong to this cruel prince, who had revolted against his father.

This conversation with the Moorish girl made Briffon despair of ever seeing his country again. He fell into the deepest despondency; and from that day experienced nothing but new subjects of vexation.

He now no longer met his companions in the fields. One evening, when the coolness of the weather had invited his camels to stray further than usual, he was obliged to follow them to a neighbouring hamlet. He now perceived the wretched captain, scarcely to be known but by the colour of his body, stretched out upon the sand. He had in his mouth one of his hands, which his extreme weakness had doubtless prevented him from gnawing. Hunger had so disfigured him, that his corpse was frightful to behold; all his features were absolutely obliterated.

Some short time after the second captain, unable any longer to support his excessive weakness, fell senseless under a gum-tree, where he lay exposed to the attacks of an enormous serpent. The famished ravens, hovering over their prey, frightened away the venomous animal with the noise of their cries, and darting on the body of the defenceless victim, immediately began their voracious repast. Four of these savages, still more cruel than these ferocious birds of prey, witnessed this horrid scene with indifference, and without making the least effort to afford assistance to the unhappy sufferer. Briffon returned to his tent impressed, and reproached his master for inhumanly refusing his unhappy associate the small quantity of milk necessary for subsistence, because his emaciated condition and ill state of health rendered him incapable of working any longer.

Briffon's health, which had hitherto miraculously sustained him under the severest pressures of difficulty and disease, now yielded to their painful inflictions, and every day announced fresh symptoms of its rapid decline. Already, like the poisonous reptiles of this inhospitable climate, he had twice cast his skin; but the pungency of his grief was increased by the third change, finding his body covered with a kind of scurf or scale, resembling the natural coating of the Arabs. His feet, miserably wounded by thorns, afforded but

a tottering support to his exhausted body; and the wanton cruelty of their savage diversion, in frequently setting dogs to pursue him, from whose jaws he could never extricate himself before he had felt the severity of their fangs, all contributed to his incapacity of longer tending the camels. But, to complete his misfortune, towards the end of February and beginning of March, the excessive heats had dried up the water they found in the canton, and not a drop of rain had fallen to nourish the ground which he had tilled and sown. As pasture for their cattle could no longer be found, they were on the point of perishing, when the two tribes of the Labdesieba and Ouadelims, after having held separate deliberations, resolved to go in search of more promising lands.

The tribe of the Ouadelims carried their ravages as far as Goudnum, 300 leagues distant from the place of our encampment. Several herds of the Labdesieba, of a less roving disposition, staid behind; and as their numbers were inconsiderable, they found subsistence for their flocks in the neighbouring cantons. They killed and eat several sheep, and continued living in this manner till the end of the following month, the period destined for their departure from the deserts, where the most frightful misery menaced the distressed inhabitants.

Happily for Briffon, an Arab, who had a Christian slave in his suite, who belonged to their vessel, offered to sell him to Briffon's master at a very low price; and the latter, who concerned himself very little as to the means of their support, readily offered a camel for this new slave. The bargain being concluded, he was charged with the work of Briffon's usual employment. The interval of leisure derived from this relief, contributed in some measure to restore Briffon to his usual strength.

When they had eaten up all the snails which were found in their circuit, they came to the resolution of smothering several young kids in the night-time, knowing that their masters would reject their carcasses, as their law does not permit them to eat the flesh of any animal that has not expired under the knife. They were at length discovered in the commission of the fact: however, they escaped punishment, though not without great abuse, and the intimidating menaces of death, should they be again found guilty of similar offences. It was therefore necessary for them to concert new means for their support. Briffon soon recovered strength enough to make faggots, which he had not the least difficulty in disposing of, it being the custom of this country not to extinguish the fire during the night, and the women, to whom the care of the family is consigned, being too idle to cut wood for themselves. By this little traffic, he was not only enabled to alleviate his own misery, but likewise that of M. Devoise, whose sufferings at length terminated with his death.

CHAPTER III.

Briffon meets a Sailor—His lamentable Account—Briffon's Despondency—Misses the Keeper of the Camels—Enquires about him—Not satisfied—Is informed the next Day of his Fate—Briffon's Behaviour on the Occasion—His Master reproached—Benevolence of Sidy Sellem—His Prediction verified—Briffon's Resolution—Good Effects thereof—The Arabs driven to great Distress—Their Manner of getting Water—Briffon becomes desperate—Fights with the Arabs—His Success—Forms a Project to escape—Robs his Master—Sidy Mahammed's Uneasiness—His Promises—Briffon restores the Treasure, on certain Conditions—Briffon agreeably surpris'd with News of his Delivery—His Hopes almost extinguish'd.

THEY now quitted their present situation, in search of one that was more fertile. They encamped in the neighbourhood of different tribes, where Briffon met with Denoux, one of their sailors, who was a slave as well as himself. He told Briffon that six of his companions were carried away soon after their shipwreck, by the son of the Emperor, who was gone back to France; that M. Taffaro,

their head surgeon, died in consequence of some blows he received on the head; also their second lieutenant, Sieur Reboin, and that the rest, in order to preserve themselves from perishing through want, had changed their religion.

This sailor's account added much to Briffon's despondency. While lost in thought and contemplation, he perceived behind a bush his master's

camels returning without their keeper. Briffon enquired what was become of him; but receiving no satisfactory answer, he was resolved the next morning to inform himself.

On the following day Briffon learned from a young herdman that Sidy Mahammed having for some time past suspected the baker to be guilty of sucking milk from the camels, had watched, and detecting him in the fact, immediately seized him by the throat and strangled him. It seems, if a Christian only touch the paps of their cattle, they are deemed impure, and the proprietor, or any other Arab, is at liberty to punish the offender with death.

Briffon scarce believing the existence of such cruelty, even among these monsters, ran to the tent, and asked for an explanation of what the youth had just imparted to him. A general silence confirmed the truth, and filled him with rage and indignation. The brother-in-law of his master, (the only person who on this occasion expressed even a sentiment of compassion) reproached Sidy Mahammed for not having sold these slaves to him, when he proposed to purchase them from him, instead of treating them so cruelly, especially Briffon, as the riches he obtained from Sim should have induced him to treat him with more gentleness and respect.

This latter reproach awakened the jealousy of all present, who unanimously undertook Briffon's defence. Sidy Sellem was the sole person who spoke through benevolence, the rest not chusing to deliver their sentiments after him, in compliment to his age and his riches. This was the same Sidy Sellem, of the tribe of La Rouffy, who had behaved so kindly to them after their shipwreck, and predicted that Briffon should one day repent the rejection of a proposal he had made to purchase him.

Briffon was now the only slave in the hamlet, nor had he any person to whom he could disclose his griefs; his situation daily became more deplorable, notwithstanding he resolved to bear it with fortitude. This resolution and the behaviour he adopted towards those who would have humiliated him, gained him a sort of consideration among the savages, so that they permitted him at times to remain in the back part of their tents, and often to drink out of their vessels. His master no longer employed him to keep his camels: it is true he ceased to speak of liberty; but if he had, his perfidy was so well known to Briffon, that he could not have believed him.

Briffon still found it necessary to continue making up faggots, in order to procure himself a subsistence, but thirst frequently threw him into the most inconceivable agonies. The Arabs themselves were driven to the greatest distress, several dying from hunger and thirst; nor did the present season promise any succour, being the fourth in which the drought had destroyed the harvest. This calamity so embittered the minds of the different tribes, that they were at perpetual variance, stealing each other's cattle, in order to dry the flesh; milk was very scarce, and water more so, as it is rarely to be found in the desert, except in the vicinity of the sea, where it is black, salt, corrupt and noisome; which disagreeable drink, and the want of pasturage, cause the Arab ever to keep at a distance from the coast. Though in want of every kind of provision, yet no one dared to seek it at a distance. In this calamitous situation, Briffon was a melancholy witness of the straits to which necessity can reduce the human race: the camels that were killed supplied water to those Arabs who had not the means of procuring milk, they preserving with the utmost care the liquid they found in the stomach of the slaughtered animal, pressing it from the dung. The water they thus preserved was of a greenish colour, and in which they frequently dressed their meat; that drawn from the stomach of the goats had the taste of fennel and a sweet smell, nor did the broth made therewith taste disagreeable; but that procured from the camel was much less pleasing to the appetite. What ap-

peared really astonishing was, that those beasts, particularly the camel, who drank but two or three times in the year, and lived on very dry food, contained a prodigious quantity of water in their stomachs.

Briffon now becoming desperate, asked leave of his master to repair to the spot where his flocks were feeding, that joining with the inhabitants he might assist in detaching them from pillage. His offer was accepted; his master gave him the camel on which he rode and a pistol, being the only one he possessed, praying Heaven for the safety of his beast and the success of his party. Briffon departed, accompanied by a relation of his master's, and arrived with his conductor into the midst of the warriors, who appeared to him in the greatest disorder. Briffon knew not whether they were flying, or were encountered hand to hand, as he could distinguish nothing but a confused heap of men enveloped in a cloud of dust, nor could he conceive how they recognized friends from foes. The camel, which doubtless was not accustomed to such expeditions, marched slowly towards the enemies fire. Briffon soon lost his conductor—he saw him almost instantly drop, from a shot which pierced his brain. The camel being scared, plunged with the greatest violence, and at length threw Briffon at a distance from him, on an hillock of sand; an Arab immediately attacked him, fired, but missed him, when suddenly receiving a wound himself, he fell at his feet. A second instantly took his place, advancing towards Briffon with his poignard, ready to pierce his heart, when by a miracle, as he raised his arm to strike the blow, his weapon entangled in his turban, which floated loose on his shoulders: Briffon profited by this accident, striking him with the butt end of his pistol, so that he fell senseless before him. This was the only use he could make of his weapon, having no ammunition but what it contained, and already twice missing fire. These accidents are very common, as the arms and powder are equally bad; a circumstance which causes the Arabs battle. He soon decided, the greatest injury they do being the tearing each other's faces with their nails, and some wounds given with their poignards. The camels, accustomed to these combats, mingle in the confusion, loving, biting, and dispersing the enemies with greater effect than even the men can with their arms.

As soon as the battle was over, several of the Arabs came to Briffon, and commended his valor, having thought that Briffon had killed three men, when in reality he had only wounded one; however he left them in their error, and unloaded his pistol to favour the deceit.

Briffon having thus far succeeded, now formed the project to escape, first taking from his master all the jewels he had before given him. With these he purposed to go over to another tribe, as he thought any Arab whom he might chance to meet would be glad to accompany him to Morocco for the reward he could then offer. This project appeared to him excellently devised, though he neither knew the road nor the dangers he might have to encounter: he therefore hastened to put it in execution, concealing the whole of the property in a hole till the next day, when he intended to endeavour to procure himself some covering to defend him from the cold.

It was not long before Sidy Mahammed discovered the loss of his treasure; he ran immediately to the thicket where Briffon was, employing prayers, threats, and caresses, to obtain restitution of his wealth, and yet more particularly to entreat him not to divulge his possessing it to any person. His entreaties, however, would have been of little effect, had Briffon not reflected, that during the night, if he attempted to escape, it was very possible that he might fall into the hands of some wretch too poor to undertake so long a journey, and who willing to possess his property might dispose of him with his dagger. These ideas determined him to relinquish it; and he pretended to be affected by his entreaties,

though

par-
mes
ined
s.
ve of
were
ight
was
which
essed,
d the
anied
h his
o ap-
rtition
coun-
thing
ud of
nized
s was
lowly
s con-
rom a
being
and at
on an
d him,
ving a
tially
th his
a mi-
ow, his
d loofe
cident,
so that
only ute
unition
ng fire.
ms and
ch cau-
greatit
s laes
th their
se com-
ng, and
an even

of the
valo r,
ce mtr,
however
s pitol

formed
after all
hefe he
thought
ould be
reward
to him
he read
ter: he
cealing
xt day,
himself

disco-
ately to
prayers,
of his
eat him
p. His
e^oat,
nt, if he
that he
o pool
ling to
th his
inquish
reaties,
though

though he resolved to keep the ascendance his fears gave him over him; accordingly he therefore informed him, that if he did not keep his word, he would a second time deprive him of all which he now returned. Sidy Mahammed renewed his oaths, promising to give him in future, evening and morning, a portion of milk. He kept his word, but was careful of quitting Briffon, fearful that his neighbours, or particularly his relations, with whom Briffon frequently was, should be informed of what he had achieved, and that he should a second time be deprived of his treasure, and never be able to recover it again.

Sidy Mouhammet, sheriff of the tribe of Tragea, having one day after this seen Briffon, asked who he was, and was soon informed, as well also of what he had possessed at Senegal, in powder, guns, &c. The sheriff instantly called, and asked Briffon what situation he filled at the Isle of St. Louis? which question being answered, he observed him nearly, and expressed great astonishment at finding him in such a situation. This man, having seen Briffon at Senegal, give orders for the delivery of goods out of the King's magazine, imagined they belonged to him. The brother-in-law of his master, encouraged by this information, immediately purchased Briffon, giving five camels for his bargain. This agreement was unknown to Briffon, who, when he heard it, was struck with astonishment and joy. On returning with his master from watering the camels, his mistress commanded him to carry into a neighbouring tent a leathern bucket which had been lent her. Sidy Sellem was present; he called to Briffon, and told him he must prepare to depart with him on morrow for Mogadore. Briffon had been so entered with this hope, and his expectation so frequently disappointed, that he could not persuade himself he spoke truth. Several Arabs, who were present, assured him it was really intended, and the old man protesting it still more firmly, Briffon threw himself at his feet, weeping, sobbing, and alternately laughing, unmindful of every consideration but the joy he felt at the information he had received.

Sidy Mahammed now informed Briffon that he no longer appertained to him, observing that he had kept his promise, and that Briffon should again see his native country. At this moment Briffon forgot all his former resentment, in the rapture of the present expectation; a pleasure which was doubled, when they informed him he should have a travelling companion, whom they added was but a short distance from them. This companion, to Briffon's great surprise, was the unfortunate baker. He asked him, by what means he was risen from the dead? The baker told him, that one day Sidy Mahammed found him walking the she camel; he ran instantly upon him, giving him so hard by the throat, and giving him such severe blows, that he fell senseless at his feet. He was much astonished, on his recovery, to find himself alone, with his throat bathed in blood: he dragged himself as well as he could into the aperture of a rock, from whence he heard echo several times repeat the voice of his barbarous master, who had returned to seek him, and now called him loudly; doubtless curiosity of what had become of him was a strong motive, as he must necessarily imagine he left him expiring. The baker determined not to answer, being resolved either to die of hunger, or gain the sea-coast, hoping there to discover some vessel. In effect he reached it in ten days, having during that time no nourishment but swallows, nor any drink but his own urine. The sight of a small fishing vessel, which lay at an anchor near land, redoubled his strength, and he ran hastily towards the shore, hoping by his signals to engage the captain to send his boat to his relief; but he had hardly advanced a few steps between the rocks which surround the coast, when he was suddenly seized by two young Arabs, who dragged him to some distance from the shore. The distress he

felt at finding himself in their power, the grief he sustained from failing in his enterprise, added to the extreme hunger he experienced, had doubtless overcome him, had they not immediately afforded him some succour. From that day they became his masters, and employed him to keep their goats, they having no other flocks, nor any other means of existence, except fishing; yet are much more gentle and laborious than the Arabs who live in the interior parts. About fifteen days ago, they informed him they were going to conduct him to the Sultan, and as they had brought him hither, he supposed this was the rendezvous agreed on with Briffon's master, when they informed him they had taken him.

Briffon having heard the information of the baker, informed him that they were really going to depart for Morocco, and that they had a long journey to undertake. The next day the inhabitants of the tribe of Tragea assembled round Sidy Sellem, making a long prayer; after which they brought a large pot of broth, composed of the farinous part of some wild grain; they joined to this provision a large quantity of milk, and numberless wishes for a prosperous journey.

Sidy Mahammed bid Briffon a most affectionate adieu. He sincerely wished he might arrive in safety, and that his next voyage might be happier than the last. He requested he would not forget to send his wife some scarlet cloth; which he was to give to Sidy Sellem. Briffon promised to send what he asked for. Sidy Mahammed now assisted him to get on a large camel, which the baker and Briffon were allowed to travel on, but which they were necessitated to quit some few days after; nor were they alone in this misfortune, for from want of pasture these animals were unable to proceed with any luggage. In this country they are not equal to much fatigue; besides, the want of saddles would have prevented their making use of those beasts for any length of time. They were therefore obliged to walk during the remainder of their journey.

One day, having reached a valley, which the rain lately fallen had covered with verdure, Sidy Sellem was determined to stop, that his almost famished beasts might graze; himself ascending a high mountain which bounded the valley, and from whence he could see the beasts feed that he was taking to the city for sale. Briffon followed, and at length passed him, firmly believing it was the road they were to pursue. What confirmed him in this opinion was, that the old man let him continue his walk without opposition, and that he also discovered a beaten path before him. When he arrived at the summit, he went a little aside from the path to clean his long beard, which, notwithstanding his utmost care, was full of vermin. He had passed near an hour in the thicket, when finding none of their travellers approach, he returned to the top of the mountain: but how great was his surprise, when he discovered no one, nor knew what road they had taken, or what path to pursue; for as a number of hordes had encamped on this spot, for the purpose of feeding their cattle, an infinity of paths led to it. Thus situated he could devise no means but calling loudly on Sidy Sellem: at length he discovered at a distance four or five Arabs, who advanced towards him. Briffon hastened to meet them, firmly believing them to be his own people, but soon recognized his error, for one of the most powerful of these barbarians, accompanied by a great dog, seized him, the Arab instantly knocking him down by a blow which he struck him on the head with the flat of his sabre, and the others immediately joining him, dragged him into a desile of the rock, which led to their asylum.

Thus his hopes of liberty were again extinguished by the prospect of a more cruel slavery than he had yet experienced! He was lost in these melancholy reflections, when the barbarians gained a slope which led to a cavity, where doubtless they intended concealing

cealing him; but coming to a sudden opening, Briffon discovered in a valley below the mountain their flock and little caravan, which contained about twenty persons; despair gave him strength, and making a sudden effort, he escaped from these wretches, running precipitately towards his old man, Sidy Sellem, for refuge, while the vagabonds, alarmed at their superior number, ran away.

Briffon was severely reprimanded by his master, who desired that in future he would be careful not to quit them: Briffon, in return, complained that he had not informed him that the path which he saw him take was not that himself intended to pursue; and that also he had continued his journey without calling or causing him to be sought after. He replied, that he intended to have taken the same path, but had been obliged to descend into the valley to collect the camels, who having been so long deprived of herbage had strayed from each other in grazing.

During the space of the six following hours they redoubled their speed, taking also a contrary road, that they might deceive their enemies should they pursue them; neither had they any food until the evening of the second day, being 48 hours without any nourishment but some handfuls of wild endive, which Briffon gathered in the valley.

At day-break they continued their journey, crossing some mountains, which led them to a plain covered with calcined stones, greatly resembling the coal that had been burnt in their forges; these stones in some places were overspread with a whitish earth, on which lay the trunks of large trees, apparently torn up by the roots, and entirely stripped of their bark, the branches being brittle as glass, and twisted like cordage. The wood was of a yellow colour, resembling the liquorice, and the interior part of the trunks full of a coarse powder. The wood, stones and dust, which latter was enclosed in the trunks of the trees, possessed neither taste nor smell.

CHAPTER IV.

They proceed on their Journey—Pass several high Mountains—Meet two Springs of Water—Briffon seized—Rescued by his Master's means—They approach the City of Goudanum—Description thereof—Their Habitations, Traffic, &c.—Briffon's Departure—His Strength exhausted, &c.—His Inexpressible Joy—Occasional Inquietude—Meets two Europeans—Kindness of Dupras and Cabanes—Arrival at Morocco—Account of the King of Morocco's Troops—The rough Manner in which he is introduced to the King—The King's strange Behaviour—Briffon and the Baker sent to the Royal Kitchen—Briffon returns to his new Dwelling—Description of the Palace, Town, Inhabitants, &c.—Briffon released from Slavery—Curious Remarks.

AS they proceeded, they reached mountains, which were so prodigiously high, that they appeared piled on each other, and which formed several tremendous precipices, on account of their divisions. There were likewise some surrounding valleys, environed by rocks, which were dreadful to behold. They met with two springs, one of which was black, muddy, and of a sulphureous smell; the other was exceedingly clear, being separated from the first by a sand-bank about 15 feet broad. Both waters were exceedingly pleasant to the taste. After two days journey, they were on the sea-shore; and a few days after they advanced towards Morocco, having crossed some high mountains, covered with pebbles of different colours.

They were three days and four nights passing these forests, during which time they met no alarm from the wild beasts who resort in the deserts of Africa. The farther they advanced the more their miseries decreased, as they frequently met with fields of barley fit to be cut, among which Briffon could sit and eat with a pleasure difficult to express. Water was no longer scarce, and they often met with hamlets where they were well received; even in some of those which might have been dangerous to other travellers, Sidy Sellem was respected, because he had been to Mecca. Notwithstanding, the Arabs of the tribe of Telkocnes are held in the greatest consideration for hospitality.

After having received him with the customary honours due to a stranger, at their usual hour they brought him barley, flour, and milk. What he left appertained to Briffon; and which, retiring to a distance, he shared with his new companion, the baker; for, in travelling, a Christian (more particularly than at another time) must neither eat, drink, nor sleep near his master. One evening, after supper, Briffon dug a hollow in the sand, to lay him down in shelter from the cold, wrapping the cloth he wore about his body on his head, to defend his eyes from the sand. He had hardly attempted to fall asleep, when he heard the report of two guns very near him, and found himself instantly seized. He tore the covering off his head; it was on fire, doubtless from the wadding of the gun. One of those who held him asked if he was wounded, and upon his answering in the negative ordered him to

follow them. Sidy Sellem, who had awoke at the report of the guns, ran to the place where he heard Briffon's voice, complaining of his behaviour to his slave, and their want of hospitality to a person like himself. The Arab mountaineer replied with great arrogance, he was ignorant that he belonged to him; that as he watched his flocks, seeing a man concealed in the sand, he took him for one of those nightly thieves who steal their young goats. Sidy Sellem feigned to believe him, praised his zeal, and rescued Briffon from his hands. As soon as he thought all still in the hamlet, he hastened to depart from a spot which might prove dangerous to himself as to his slave.

These Arabs of the tribe of Telkocnes are the worst situated of any in the deserts, living in the midst of mountains of sand which have been formed by the wind. They may be truly said to wish to deprive themselves even of the light of day, so difficult is it to penetrate into their retreats, or to explore the way from them. The neighbouring plains are infested with enormous serpents.

They now approached the famous city of Goudanum, which was discovered through the points of rock built on an elevation, and whose environs announced a formidable fortification; but, on a nearer view, the walls were found made of earth, and broken in several places; some inhabitants shewed themselves at the little windows on the house-tops, and were doubtless meditating whether they could do them any injury. The chief of the town, informed that Sidy Sellem was at the head of their little caravan, came to meet them, followed by four negro slaves, who carried an umbrella made of palm leaves, which he presented to him.

This city is the refuge of all the rebellious Arabs of the different tribes, and is divided into two parts, the lower being governed by Sidy Adella, and the higher, which is not unlike fort Eabat, by another commander. The houses are all constructed alike, being four large walls surrounding a prodigious space of ground, those of the same party living together; these walls are very high, have but one entrance, nor any light but what comes from the roof, which is left uncovered. The door, which serves for the whole circumference, is guarded by large dogs; every inhabitant also of the dwelling keeps one for

his own security enclosed in their o laged by all their more dextrous tha

They have two late specie, the ex

principal object.

cloths, and particu son and white, whi dealers, who purch parts, give camels fit being about four gains on this artic dates, horses, sheep, combs, looking-gl ticles, which are di parts, the consump where there are day

What is most fur lens trade; they ar

most outrageous the bread from the

and insist on his gi frequently accompan

and always with iusts with patience: self, by his skill in

and the art with wh are in general very i

The two chiefs have no superiority, in point of property.

Briffon left Goudan and on his way to Re

with hamlets and call very high mountains, have been taken for

a nearer view bore a ve were no longer so wel

prached the city they They had now bec

Briffon's strength was almost to suppuration

stank under his calami perpetually re-animati

ble assurances. Wh beheld the French fla

of other nations apper anchor in the bay of M

knew by the name of S At length they arrive

was not free from inqu he quitted France tha

great M. de Chenier had been necessitated

He knew not whether if a fresh consul suppli

had cause for fear. on entering the city, a

who, after considering informed Mess. Dupras

These gentlemen, who those whom misfortune

came immediately to fe shocked at his revolting

shedding tears of joy t assist an unfortunate su

them immediately, eng them, desiring him to

of any agreement Briffon him. Briffon likewise

him to conduct Sidy Sel they contented, desiring

as his own, treating h attention, and friendship

to their own habiliments

for him.

Briffon was soon after

No. 15.

his own security; for without that caution, though enclosed in their own habitation, they would be pillaged by all their inmates, who might be bolder or more dextrous than themselves.

They have two markets; and though they circulate specie, the exchange of merchandize is their principal object. They have very good woollen cloths, and particularly some of a mixture of crimson and white, which they use as cloathing. The dealers, who purchase to sell again in the interior parts, give camels in exchange, their ordinary profit being about four hundred for one, and yet their gains on this article is much less than on wheat, dates, horses, sheep, oxen, asses, gunpowder, tobacco, combs, looking-glasses, and many other small articles, which are difficult to procure in the interior parts, the consumption being in the little towns, where there are days fixed for the sale of them.

What is most surprizing is, that scarce any but Jews trade; they are, notwithstanding, exposed to the most outrageous affronts. An Arab will snatch the bread from the hand of a Jew, enter his hut, and insist on his giving him a handful of tobacco, frequently accompanying the demand with a blow, and always with insolence, which the poor Jew suffers with patience: it is true he recompenses himself, by his skill in disposing of his merchandize, and the art with which he deceives the Arabs, who are in general very ignorant.

The two chiefs who command at Gouadnum have no superiority, except they exceed each other in point of property.

Briffon left Gouadnum, after a stay of eight days; and on his way to Regaden was perpetually meeting with hamlets and caillies, for the most part built on very high mountains, and which at a distance might have been taken for very elegant dwellings, but on a nearer view bore a very different appearance. They were no longer so well fed, and the nearer they approached the city they met the less hospitality.

They had now been 66 days on their journey; Briffon's strength was exhausted; his feet swelled almost to suppuration, and he must infallibly have sunk under his calamities, had not his master been perpetually re-animating his courage with comfortable assurances. With joy inexpressible he now beheld the French flag unshrouded, as well as those of other nations appertaining to the vessels lying at anchor in the bay of Mogadore, which he yet only knew by the name of Soira.

At length they arrived at the city; but still Briffon was not free from inquietude, as he had heard before he quitted France that the Emperor had very ill treated M. de Chenier on his embassy, and that he had been necessitated to complain to his own court. He knew not whether he had been redressed, and if a fresh consul supplied his place; at all events he had cause for fear. His suspicions soon vanished on entering the city, and meeting two Europeans, who, after considering him attentively, went and informed Mess. Dupras and Cabanes of his situation. These gentlemen, who made it their study to relieve those whom misfortune had thrown into this country, came immediately to seek him, and, without seeming shocked at his revolting appearance, embraced him, shedding tears of joy to have it in their power to assist an unfortunate sufferer. They took him with them immediately, engaging his master to follow them, desiring him to be perfectly easy on account of any agreement Briffon might have contracted with him. Briffon likewise entreated them to permit him to conduct Sidy Sellem and his son with them; they consented, desiring him to use their dwelling as his own, treating him with the greatest care, attention, and friendship, and cloathing him entirely in their own habiliments, until they had some made for him.

Briffon was soon after visited by all the Europeans

No. 15.

at Mogadore, congratulating him on the change in his situation, and also on his arrival in the city on the most fortunate time it could have happened, being the entrance of the new consul, who brought considerable presents from France for the Emperor. Briffon was presented the same day to the governor, who informed them of the order to repair to Morocco, the Emperor having declared that henceforward he would see all the slaves, and that they should receive from himself the tidings of liberty.

Briffon, Sidy Sellem, and the baker, in eight days departed. They were furnished with mules, a tent, provisions, and proper attendants, and after four days journey arrived at Morocco.

The guard who had the care of Briffon presented him to the consul and vice-consul; they offered him a table and habitation, until he could return to France. A second guard came to inform him, that the Emperor knew of his arrival, and had commanded him to be brought instantly before him. Briffon immediately obeyed, following the guard, who took him through several spacious courts, with high walls and sand floors, almost insufferable from the sun lying on them the whole day.

They arrived at last into one where the King's guard were assembled: those employed about his person are armed with guns; their cloathing consists of different coloured tunics, and cloaks with hoods not unlike a friar's. On their heads they wear a small red cap, ornamented on the top with a blue tassel. Their feet are almost naked, going but half into their slippers, which obliges them to trail as they walk. They sling their guns across them, and wear a girdle, to which they attach their pouches. Those who appeared out of service had no weapon but a white stick.

The horsemen are dressed the same, except that they wear half-boots without feet, and spurs of the enormous length of nine or ten inches, which have much the appearance of large iron spikes. Their horses have almost always their flanks cut to the quick, as they take particular pleasure in spurring them.

While Briffon waited for an audience, he saw a captain review his company, who was seated on the ground with his elbows on his knees, which were bent upwards, and his chin supported with his hands. The soldiers advanced two by two, and received his orders, prostrating themselves before him; after which they retired.

Five or six of those who were only armed with white sticks seized Briffon by the collar, as though he had been a thief, and opening a large folding-door, resembling those of barns, they pushed him rudely forward into an inner court, where he in vain sought for something that might announce the grandeur of Majesty. After advancing fifteen or twenty paces towards a kind of wheel-barrow, they commanded him (pushing him roughly at the same time) to prostrate himself before this wheel-barrow, which contained the Emperor, who, supporting one foot on his knee, was amusing himself in playing with his toes. He looked at him during some minutes; then asked him, whether he was not one of those Christian slaves whose vessel had been wrecked on his coast about a year before, and what business called him to Senegal. He then remarked that he was wrecked through his misconduct; asked why he did not keep sea-room, enquired if he was rich and married, giving him scarce time to answer his questions. He then called for ink and paper, and taking a small reed, which he used as a pen, he traced the four winds, shewing Briffon that Paris was in the north.

Briffon's master was immediately introduced with the same ceremonies as he had been himself. The Emperor asked him, if he had paid a large purchase

X x for

for Briffon, and what were his intentions in coming to Morocco. He immediately replied, that his first incentive in travelling through immense countries was to prostrate at the feet of his sovereign the most humble of his slaves. After some short conversation, the Emperor ordered the guards to take charge of Briffon and the baker until further orders, and to give them food from the royal kitchen. The guard expressed great surprize to Briffon, that his Majesty had deigned to converse so long with a slave.

The next day the consul asked the guard to permit Briffon to be with him, saying, that should the Emperor ask for him, they could fetch him immediately. Briffon now went to his new dwelling, which was a kind of cave that had before been inhabited by the Spanish ambassador, the Emperor, willing to use equal attention to the French consul, having ordered him the same lodging. This palace, which is one of the finest the King has at his disposal, is nothing more than a long cave built in the earth, the roof being supported by two rows of pillars, and the entrance to it a gradual slope; nor is there any air but what enters through the little openings in the roof. The Emperor keeps his tents and warlike stores in it, nor is there any thing else to be seen there, except bats, rats, and spiders. This dwelling is in one of the King's most delightful gardens, being decorated with olive, quince, pomegranate, and apple-trees; yet the high walls which surround it might easily furnish the idea to those that walk in it that they were state prisoners. Though the Emperor provides the Ambassadors with a dwelling, he supplies them with no furniture whatever, but gives orders for them to be daily served with a certain quantity of mutton, beef, poultry, water, bread, &c.

The King's palace consists of six vast courts, surrounded with walls. The exterior of the seraglio resembles a barn, and the mosque is built in the same taste. The town is separated from the palace by heaps of mud, offal, and bones of slaughtered beasts, piled on each other, and which may be said to form the circumference of the city. These pyramids of filth reach even into the interior parts of the town, in many places being so much higher than the houses, that they exclude the light of day: the sun shining on these mountains of nastiness, increases the putrefaction, and renders the sight doubly loathsome. The houses are so ill constructed, that they bear more resemblance to pig-sties than human dwellings; neither are the streets airy, being very narrow, and in many places covered with straw.

One day that the ambassador from New-England, the consul, and Briffon, were on horseback, wishing to take an airing, they were obliged to relinquish their intention, and return home as speedily as possible; the people surrounded them, and prevented their advancing, although they were protected by the Emperor's guard, and without which they had doubtless fallen a sacrifice to their brutality; nor did even their presence restrain them sufficiently, for Briffon received a violent blow on the head with a stone.

The dispositions of the people in the city are but little different from those in the desert; they are rather more polished, and much fairer; accustomed to meet with Europeans, they express less astonishment at their manners, though they treat them with the utmost insolence.

The withed-for time now came when Briffon's slavery was to cease. One day the King on quitting the mosque ordered the consul to attend, with the Christian slaves, in the place of public audience. Briffon, the baker, and five others who belonged to a vessel called the Two Friends, which was wrecked previous to theirs, received their liberty, and had permission to embark from which of the King's ports was most convenient; while proper officers were ordered to accompany them to the residence appointed the consul.

The Emperor was mounted on a beautiful horse, caparisoned in scarlet and blue cloth, with his crupper ornamented with nob's of gold: by the side of the Sovereign walked an equeiry, who carried an umbrella to defend his Majesty from the sun. The guard follow on foot in the greatest silence, all announcing fear, a glance from the King spreading universal consternation; for giving command, he sees fall without the least emotion the head of one or more of his subjects; nor is the last word of the condemnation hardly articulated before the unhappy victim is lifeless on the ground. Yet the rich, if they chuse to buy his favour, may live in safety, and commit every crime with impunity.

Before Briffon's departure Sidy Selem retired, having been very well satisfied with the consul's generosity.

It is now necessary to add some cursory observations, in order to furnish the reader with a just idea of the manners and customs of the people already spoken of.

The Moors occupy the three kingdoms of Surr, Fez, and Morocco. That part of Boudigera that is washed by the Atlantic Ocean is inhabited by the native Arabs, and by the fugitive Moors from the empire of Morocco, too enlightened to remain under the dominion of a master who rules over his people with absolute sway, and who makes his safety and happiness consist in the misery of his subjects. This mixture forms one and the same nation, known indiscriminately by the appellation of Mouslemeines.

Zaara, as far as the Niger, contains a variety of wandering nations, all proceeding from Arabs, Moors, and fugitive Portuguese, who took refuge there when the family of the Sherifs made themselves masters of the three kingdoms of Barbary. All these people bear indiscriminately the names of Nars, Moors, or Arabs. They are subdivided into various nations, of which the most considerable are the Mongearts, Trafars, and Bracnars.

The first of these three denominations is a term of contempt among the people who surround them; no doubt because those who bear it, less versed than their neighbours in the use of arms, are in general occupied by the care and the feeding of their cattle; while the Mouslemeines, on the contrary, though shepherds also, are warriors to a man.

The Trafars and the Bracnars are no more than other nations scattered about on the northern banks of the Niger.

Religion, according to these people, is mahometanism in all its purity. They offer up prayers three times a day, sometimes oftener; but they are never pronounced in public, unless when a mahometan priest is with the horde, who seldom comes but on account of the children's education. Then all the Arabs assemble at the hour of prayer, place themselves in a line, turn to the east, and, wanting water in the desert, rub their face and arms with sand, while the priest recites aloud the general prayer, which is the same as that rehearsed by the public crier on the mosques in the civilized countries.

The priests are employed in travelling about the country to instruct the children. There is nothing like force in their education. The Arabs of the desert are even ignorant of the custom of constraining wills. The little boys meet in the morning of their own accord, at the place of instruction, which is to them a place of recreation. They go there with a small board inscribed with the Arabic characters, and a few maxims of the Koran. The biggest, and the best informed, receive their lessons directly from the priests, and afterwards communicate them to their fellows. The children themselves teach one another to read; nor are they ever corrected. It would be a crime to beat a child, who, according to the received ideas, has not sufficient reason to distinguish good from evil.

Thofe

horse,
is crup-
side of
riced an
. The
all an-
reading
and, he
of one
of the
unhap-
ie rich,
safety,
retired,
consul's
observa-
just idet
airca'y
of Sur,
ricd that
d by the
rom the
in under
is people
ety and
subjects.
natio,
of Mon-
ariety of
Arabs,
ic refuge
e them-
Barbar,
ames of
led into
rable are
is a term
el than;
led than
general
r cutter;
though
re that
n banis
ahome-
prayers
ut they
when a
feldom
ocation,
prayer,
it, and,
nd arms
general
by the
untries
out the
nothing
s of the
praise
ning of
, which
go there
ic this
he big-
lessons
nment-
mselves
ver cor-
h, who
fficient
Tho'



Various POSTURES of Ceremonies
used by the TURKS in Prayer.

Those who are made priests before the least public consideration of the nation, are every

It is generally children under fifteen. Their number is left but four, lost in a meeting of action performed.

If, at the age of a year, or other time, his flock, he loses a page of a river, stream, and he attacks, another is a warrior of a attack, he is completely shaved.

Seldom does a without having, are ashamed of before themselves.

Infinite respect be their family.

as the priests, and the Arabs who visit the tomb of are distinguished by signifies matter, we bear the distinction.

War is not the afflicts this nation split in their batt made by their thieves; for theft the laws. All that impunity, is to avoid not to be caught is severely punished.

own horde; but is killed at the very

When an Arab return from thence care to keep his jacketed. Neighbouring by his inclusion in the country appear hope of booty (upon they may have not when the night is to pillage.

Their intention is to endeavour to surprise, matters of every thing. But it sometimes happens to plunder, being his country, keeps guard, fires upon him he observes, and the dagger. The report brings out the neighbourhood of the laws of help the weaker side. They rally kill the aggressors by a speedy flight.

In these cases it is not rods there; the dead, nor do the family even content themselves with they were killed, turn and heaping up all the tomb.

The chiefs of lord families. The difference; the chief often

Those who persevere in the study of the Koran are made priests, after having past an examination before the learned elders, and enjoy the greatest public consideration. They have no need of cattle, those of the nation being their's, they find their subsistence every where.

It is generally at seven or eight years of age that children undergo the painful operation of circumcision. Their head is also shaved, nothing being left but four locks of hair, one of which is cut off in a meeting of the family, at each remarkable action performed by the child.

If, at the age of twelve or thirteen, he kill a wild boar, or other beast of prey, that should fall upon his flock, he loses one of his locks. If, in the passage of a river, a camel be carried away by the stream, and he save it by swimming to its assistance, another is cut off. If he kill a lion, a tiger, or a warrior of an hostile nation, in a surprize or an attack, he is considered as a man, and his head is entirely shaved.

Seldom does an Arab reach the age of twenty, without having deserved this honour, for as they are ashamed of being treated like children, they expose themselves to the greatest dangers to obtain it.

Infinite respect is paid to all old men, whatever be their family. They enjoy the same prerogatives as the priests, and equal consideration with them and the Arabs who have had the good fortune to visit the tomb of Mahomet at Mecca. The latter are distinguished by the appellation of *Sidi*, which signifies master, while the rest of the nation only bear the distinctive names they received at their birth.

War is not the most formidable scourge that afflicts this nation; for there is always little blood spilt in their battles. Much greater ravages are made by their private quarrels. They are all thieves; for theft is in a manner authorized by the laws. All that is necessary to practise it with impunity, is to avoid prosecution, by taking care not to be caught in the fact. It is true that theft is severely punished, if an Arab rob another of his own horde; but to be punished, he must be detected at the very moment.

When an Arab is going to market, or on his return from thence, if he do not take the greatest care to keep his journey a secret, he is often attacked. Neighbouring Arabs are desirous of profiting by his indolence, and as there are no persons in the country appointed to apprehend robbers, the hope of booty spurs them on to the attack. That they may have nothing to fear, they lay in wait, when the night is coming on, for him they mean to pillage.

Their intention is never to kill; they only endeavour to surprize, disarm, and make themselves masters of every thing that comes in their way. But it sometimes happens that the man they intend to plunder, being acquainted with the customs of his country, keeps an attentive ear, stands on his guard, fires upon his assailants at the first motion he observes, and then fights desperately with his dagger. The report of the musquet frequently brings out the neighbouring Arabs, who, in virtue of the laws of hospitality, take the defence of the weaker side. They run up well armed, and generally kill the aggressors, if they do not save themselves by a speedy flight.

In these cases it little matters who falls; the affair ends there; the dead man passes for the aggressor; nor do the family ever seek for vengeance. They content themselves with burying the dead where they were killed, turning their heads to the east, and heaping up all the stones at hand upon their tomb.

The chiefs of hordes are always the eldest of their families. The difference of wealth is not considered; the chief often having several individuals at

his house richer than himself, who nevertheless obey him in every particular; he is, properly speaking, their king; examines their difference with the old men, and judges without appeal. As to himself, he cannot be tried, but by the chiefs of several hordes assembled.

Whatever losses an Arab may meet with, he is never heard to complain; he rises superior to poverty, supports hunger, thirst, and fatigue, with patience, and his courage is proof against every event. He employs, however, every means in his power to avert misfortune; and often exposes himself to the greatest dangers to procure matters of no real utility.

When the father of a family dies, all the effects in his tent are seized upon by the eldest son present at his decease. Gold, silver, trinkets, every thing disappears, and the absent children have only an equal share in the division of the cattle and the slaves. The girls are entirely excluded from all participation, and take up their residence with their eldest brother. If the deceased leave children in helpless infancy, the mother takes them with her to her sister's, if she have a sister married; if not, to her own maternal roof.

The women are much more respected among the Mongearts than among the neighbouring nations; they are nevertheless in a state of subjection that nearly approaches slavery. All the freemen and slaves of the same religion eat together, the remains serving for the women. Although polygamy be authorized by their religion, few Arabs however take more than one wife. They repudiate her, it is true, at will, when she does not bear them boys, but then she is free to live with another man; but if, on the contrary, she have the good fortune to have one or more male children, her husband's regard for her is inconceivable.

When a woman is not agreeable to her husband, or when he is disagreeable to her, they have it in their power to part. The formality in this case consists in the wife's retiring to her parents. If the husband be attached to her he goes thither in quest of her; but if she persist in refusing to return she is free, and at liberty to marry another. If however she have had a child, especially a boy, she has not the same privilege; in that case, if her retreat should last more than eight days, it might be punished with death.

When a man beats his wife, it is a sure sign that he is sincerely attached to her, and that he does not mean to part with her; if he content himself with reproaches, the wife thinks herself despised, and infallibly retires to her parents. Hence it is that in the most trifling disputes the women are cruelly beaten: they prefer it to the complaints that the husband might make to their parents; this proof being the most certain one of a man's fondness for his wife. When a girl marries, she makes up her mind to such treatment, deeming it much more supportable than the humiliations she would otherwise experience from her family, in consequence of her husband's complaints. The wife brings no portion to her husband: the fidelity of the women is incorruptible.

Such have been the Adventures, Captivity, Misfortunes, &c. of SAUGNIER and BRISSON, accurately and fully translated from their own Works.—It is true we have expunged some unnecessary repetitions and extraneous remarks, which abound in the original, for the sake of preserving that unity and connection which render History the more agreeable.—We shall now, for the further entertainment of our NUMEROUS READERS, proceed with the celebrated ABBE ROCHON's relation of his Voyage to Madagascar and the East Indies; while the same care and attention which have been paid to the former, translation shall likewise be obvious in this.

A NEW, COMPLETE, AND GENUINE
HISTORY OF
A VOYAGE to MADAGASCAR
AND THE
EAST-INDIES;

UNDERTAKEN AND PERFORMED

By the Celebrated *ABBE ROCHON*,

Member of the Academies of Sciences of *Paris* and *Petersburgh*; Astronomer of the Marine; Keeper of the King's Philosophical Cabinet; Inspector of Machines, Money, &c.

With Full and Circumstantial ACCOUNTS of the different ISLANDS, &c.
and their POSITIONS according to his ASTRONOMICAL OBSERVATIONS.

Including *M. BRUNEL's* REMARKS on the CHINESE TRADE, Fully and Accurately
Translated from the FRENCH by *W. H. PORTLOCK, Esq.*

Which, with the several other VOYAGES and TRAVELS to be included in this Collection, will be Embellished
with a Variety of Elegant COPPER-PLATES, Drawn upon the Spots, and Engraved by Eminent Artists.

INTRODUCTION.

THE Moorish vessels were the first which navigated the Gulphs of Persia and Bengal; they set out from the ports of the Red Sea, and for the chief part directed their course to the Gulph of Persia. They frequently proceeded along the coasts of Abyssinia, and without losing sight of land entered the Channel of Mozambique, where they traded with the natives both of the coast of Africa and Madagascar. The ports which they generally visited on the African coast were Querimbe and Mozambique; in Madagascar, Vingara and Bombetoe.

Notwithstanding the ignorance of pilots and imperfection of charts the Asiatics frequently engaged in hazardous attempts. They have often ventured into the open ocean; and when they had traversed the Gulph of Bengal proceeded to the Moluccas and the Philippines, through the Straits of Sunda and Molucca, for the sake of a lucrative commerce, as a reciprocal exchange of Persian and Indian merchandise, with the merchandise of China and Japan, was productive of a trade mutually advantageous.

The Portuguese next, having found a passage to the seas of Asia, by the Cape of Good Hope, endeavoured to exclude every other nation, and enrich themselves by the great commerce of that vast continent. Vasco de Gama having opened to the Europeans a passage to the seas of Africa, the Europeans and Portuguese consequently became rivals.

The trade which the Moors carried on in the Asiatic seas, though not to be compared with the extensive commerce since carried on by the European nations, was by no means despicable. The design of Abbe Rochon in this undertaking is not to give a history of the progress and decline of the European establishments in India, which would be both tedious and unnecessary, seeing so many celebrated historians have already expatiated upon the subject; but to set forth, in a faithful account of the Island of Madagascar, the several advantages which might be derived from settlements there, were they formed on such an eligible plan as would promote both the happiness and instruction of the natives.

In order to render this work in every respect advantageous to the navigator, who is inclined to go to India, the last chapter is devoted entirely to some necessary remarks on the Chinese Trade, extracted from the works of *M. Brunel*. There are other extracts likewise borrowed from the same elegant writer, in order to illustrate the following history of Rochon.

The principal settlements which the French had in the Indian seas were the Isles of France and Bourbon; these were discovered by the Portuguese, who called the former *Cimi*, and the latter *Mascotenas*. The port of the former is the arsenal of the French forces and the center of their commerce. The Isle of Bourbon has no port capable of receiving vessels of magnitude. The principal place in this isle is called *St. Dennis*. It is in this town that the governors of the colony reside. Since the Isle of Bourbon was inhabited, the volcano there has never occasioned any devastation, though its eruptions are very common. The access to the volcano is difficult; the country is burnt up and a desert for more than six miles round, while precipices, heaps of ashes, &c. render its ascent very dangerous and troublesome. For the satisfaction of our readers we shall extract from *M. Brunel's* Memoirs an account of this volcano:

"It is situated almost at the summit of a hollow truncated mountain, the base of which, gently inclining, rests on a bed of calcined earth, at the distance of a full league from the sea. Though the matter it contains in its bowels boils up continually, it does not always swell so much as to rise through the crater. When an eruption takes place, the melted lava may be seen flowing down the sides of the mountain in undulations, which follow each other in succession, and exhibit the appearance of a flaming cascade. The light which it diffuses to a great distance, whether at land or at sea, is equal to that of the moon when she shines with full splendour. It is even a tradition, believed in the country, that this natural pharos first drew hither those Europeans who visited these coasts.

"The

Engraved for PORTLOCK'S. *his* COLLECTION of VOYAGES, & TRAVELS.



Various (Economic) Customs in the EAST INDIES. when a WOMAN has obtained leave to BURY her ALIVE with her DECEASED HUSBAND.
Published by W. Woodfall & Co. 1787.

er of
&c.
ately
lified
tiffs.
ct ad-
to go
o some
racted
er ex-
legant
history
ch had
te and
nguefe,
alcor-
of the
merce.
receiv-
ace in
n that
he Isle
re has
crup-
olcano
a de-
preci-
e very
ion of
s Me-
ollow
ly in-
at the
gh the
ually,
rough
e, the
ides of
each
re of a
es to a
qual to
splen-
coun-
r those
"The

" The environs covered with fal-
pumice-stone, and
which distingu
the frequency
attended with earth
of the inhabitants
a phenomenon, wh
dangerous. It ma
remark, that water
from this volcano,
are found in the isl

" In the month
observed in one c
summit of the mo
densed vapours, of
from the ancient c
24th lava ran into
been thrown up, i
breadth in some pl
month after, the
abundance, formed
sixty fathoms in bre
feet in depth. The
of more than thirty
the lava fell into the
greenish yellow, and
of the same colour
This current, paralle
in the like manner of
formed a projection,
sand mixed with a
days after the arrival
crust was formed at
possible to ascend t
place from which it
became insupportable
the tragical fate of P
One however may v
walk on a torren
to examine its
at the superficie

like thick ice, whill
through the crevices,
felt freedom below; t
obstacles, it flows b
covers it with fresh
therefore, and sinuosi
durable degree of sol
ought to observe with
" On the first of Au
but it still emitted sm
red at the bottom. S
or mouth was thought
the distance of a leaguo
of the island. Clouds
proceeded from a ravi
in approach during th
the end of that time it
and smoke issued from
to be the retreat of cer

*Observations on the Isle of
The Danger of Hurricane
Rebon's and Peivre's
about, and the Crew mi
—Consequent Ruins—
principal Objects of Re
of Secheyles Islands—F
Remarks.*

WHEN the ile of F
the ground was
The hills which hang ov
it from the rage of wind
the very tops. Torrent
No. 15.

" The environs of the volcano are parched and covered with sal-ammoniac, native sulphur, alom, pumice-stone, and scorria. A remarkable peculiarity which distinguishes his from all other volcanoes is, the frequency of eruptions, which are never attended with earthquakes: the security, therefore, of the inhabitants is not disturbed by the vicinity of a phenomenon, which every where else is highly dangerous. It may not, perhaps, be improper to remark, that water has never been seen to spout up from this volcano, and that no hot mineral springs are found in the island.

" In the month of June, 1787, this volcano was observed in one of its greatest eruptions. The summit of the mountain was covered with condensed vapours, of a blackish colour, which rose from the ancient crater in spiral clouds. On the 24th lava ran into the sea. Nine days after it had been thrown up, it extended eighty fathoms in breadth in some places, and in others forty. A month after, the matter, which flowed then in abundance, formed a current to the sea of about sixty fathoms in breadth, and from fifteen to sixteen feet in depth. The waves smoked at the distance of more than thirty fathoms from the place where the lava fell into the water, appearing around of a greenish yellow, and forming a band to the leeward of the same colour, nearly a league in length. This current, parallel to one older, and consisting in the like manner of several strata of melted matter, formed a projection, the basis of which was volcanic sand mixed with a kind of iron dross. Eleven days after the arrival of the lava at the sea, a solid crust was formed at its surface, upon which it was possible to ascend to within fifteen paces of the place from which it issued; but, as the heat then became insupportable, the observer called to mind the tragical fate of Pliny, and repressed his curiosity. One however may venture, without any danger, to walk on a torrent of flowing lava, if care be taken to examine its effects. In flat places it soon cracks on the superficies, which then becomes hard like thick ice, whilst the liquid matter may be seen through the crevices, continuing its course in perfect freedom below; but, sometimes, meeting with obstacles, it flows back, breaks the crust, and covers it with fresh boiling lava. In declivities, therefore, and sinuosities, it is long in acquiring a durable degree of solidity; and this the curious ought to observe with attention.

" On the first of August the lava ceased to flow; but it still emitted smoke, and appeared extremely red at the bottom. Some time after another crater or mouth was thought to have been discovered at the distance of a league from St. Dennis, the capital of the island. Clouds of smoke and a strong heat proceeded from a ravine, which it was impossible to approach during the space of a month; but at the end of that time it was perceived that the heat and smoke issued from a cavern, which was found to be the retreat of certain Maroon negroes. Fire

having been kindled in this place, either by accident, or on purpose, it had been nourished by a quantity of leaves, stalks of maize, and other combustible substances, lodged in it for a long time, which burned very slowly, because the cavern received little air. The remains of birds nests found here plainly shewed that this cavern had not always been exposed to the like degree of heat; and this, added to other observations, quieted those alarms which had been excited by this new appearance. The isle of France, in the neighbourhood, is considered as a country which has been exposed to violent convulsions of nature. It abounds with caverns, cascades, precipices, subterranean arches, iron mines, calcined stones, vitrifications, torrefied sand, and pyrites, which are striking vestiges of ancient volcanoes; but, on account of their antiquity, their situation cannot now be ascertained, nor their craters distinguished. The most elevated mountains in this island are not above five hundred fathoms high, whereas in the isle of Bourbon there are peaks which rise more than fifteen hundred fathoms. These two islands, which are distant from each other only thirty leagues, were, doubtless, formerly united, and have been detached by some prodigious effort of nature. We have every reason to believe that they are still connected at the bottom of the sea, and that there are subterranean passages which form a communication between them.

" The earthquake, which happened at the isle of France, on the 4th of August 1786, seems to support this conjecture. That morning, at thirty-five minutes after six, a calm succeeded a strong breeze from the E. and E. S. E. which had prevailed for four days. A hollow noise, which terminated in a sudden explosion, like the report of a cannon, was heard in the S. W. quarter; and at the same instant two smart shocks were felt, one vertical and the other horizontal. At that time the barometer did not indicate the smallest change in the atmosphere; and the E. S. E. breeze commenced a quarter of an hour after, and continued till eleven the night following. This strange phenomenon was not attended with any accident fatal to the isle of France; and, by accounts from the isle of Bourbon, it appeared, that the volcano there had thrown up much larger quantities of lava than for some days preceding.

" We have reason therefore to suppose that the combustible substances in the caverns of the isle of France, after fermenting, caught fire, and that having then endeavoured to force a passage, they experienced a resistance proportional to their force, which must have produced those shocks above mentioned; and that making an effort afterwards in every direction, they found a passage through subterranean galleries to the isle of Bourbon, where, meeting with less resistance, they issued through the crater of the volcano, which prevented that island from experiencing any shocks, though there might be the same commotion in both places."

CHAPTER I.

Observations on the Isle of France—The Ingenuity and Labour of M. De Tromelin in clearing the Harbour, &c.—The Danger of Hurricanes—Their Evil and irresistible Consequences—Account of the Hurricane in 1771—Rochon's and Poivre's Warnings, which were disregarded—The Le Verd Geland lost—The Ambulante Flute tossed about, and the Crew miraculously saved—A second Hurricane—M. Brunel's Account of another—Various Disasters—Consequent Ruins—Want of Provisions, &c. &c.—The French Colonies indebted to M. Poivre—One of the principal Objects of Rochon's Voyage—Position of the Shoals, &c. with which the Archipelago abounds—Accounts of Secheyles Islands—Flat of Cargados—Salba de Maba—Island of Diego Garcia, and the Adu Isles—Curjory Remarks.

WHEN the isle of France was first inhabited, the ground was all cleared by means of fire. The hills which hang over the harbour, and defend it from the rage of winds, have been cultivated to the very tops. Torrents having been formed in

consequence of the trees being either burnt, or cut down, the harbour was choked up by the gravel; of course the anchoring ground is exposed to the violence of the sea and wind.

M. de Tromelin, a very eminent captain in the navy.

navy, became anxious to remedy this evil. M. Poivre was now Intendant of France and Bourbon. M. de Tromelin having obtained permission, in the name of the colony, of the Duke de Praslin, then minister of the marine, proceeded now to change the course of the torrents, by dykes and channels; this cleared the harbour, and prevented it from being choked up in future: by means of gunpowder he likewise broke to pieces under the water that part of the bank which opposed the passage of ships.

The hurricanes here are irresistible: they are always accompanied with rain, thunder, and an earthquake. The atmosphere seems to be all fire, and the wind rages equally tremendous from every quarter of the horizon. If the celerity of the wind exceed 50 feet per second, it is impossible to resist its force: the strongest built houses are thereby thrown down, and the largest trees torn up by the roots. There is no dependence on the weight of anchors or the strength of cables, nor can even a good bottom avail a vessel in her mooring.

At the time of the hurricane both Abbe Rochon and M. Poivre were exceedingly uneasy at the sudden falling of the mercury. It was then four in the afternoon, and M. Poivre invited the port captain to his house: but that officer, who had been an eye-witness of the hurricane in the year 1761, was not struck, as they were, with the variation of the barometer. He said, that there were more certain means of foretelling hurricanes. Twenty-four hours, said he, before the hurricane commences, the blacks come down from the mountain, and announce its approach. Besides, the setting of the sun will determine what measures should be taken, in order to prevent, as much as possible, those accidents which are inseparable from these dreadful phenomena. M. Poivre's entreaties and Rochon's observations not being capable of persuading the captain, they were obliged to wait till sun-set. The sky was then pure and serene; but the mercury still continued to fall in the tube of the barometer. The sun set very beautifully, and the port captain, who had been a long time in the service of the East India company, left them in high spirits, and perfectly secure respecting the misfortunes with which the island was threatened. He seemed to pity them, for considering the variation of the barometer as a matter of so much importance.

The hurricane, however, commenced at seven in the evening, that is to say an hour after sun-set. Before nine all the vessels were driven on shore, except the Ambulante flute, and a small corvette, called le Verd Galand. By a sudden gust the flute was forced out to sea, and the corvette being made fast to her by a cable, was entirely lost. The Ambulante, without sails, without rudder, and without provisions for the sailors, and a detachment of the Irish regiment of O'Clare, who did duty on board, was tossed about by the winds for more than twelve hours. By their frequent shifting she was driven quite round the island, and at length cast, in a most miraculous manner, upon the only part of the coast where man in such a violent storm could save their lives. What renders these disasters more distressing is, the impossibility of their mutually assisting each other. They must remain motionless amidst the ruins by which they are surrounded; they must patiently wait for their fate, without being able to foresee or avoid it. The violence and fury of the wind prevent them from quitting whatever place they have chosen for shelter.

This hurricane continued eighteen hours without intermission, and with equal violence. Neither the large quantities of rain which fell, nor the thunder and lightning, were able to allay the fury of the winds: but at three o'clock the next day the mercury, which had fallen 25 lines, remained for some minutes stationary. A little time after it again rose, the sudden gusts then ceased, the wind became more

steady, and at six in the evening it was possible to give some assistance to the unfortunate people who had been shipwrecked. During this hurricane, the communications in different parts of the island were interrupted by the falling of trees, and the overflowing of waters. They were three weeks without any news of the Ambulante, which had been cast on shore at a place distant only six leagues from Port Louis in the Isle of France. All the crops which they had brought for the use of the island were destroyed. On that account it was requisite that every effort should be made to repair those vessels which had suffered least by the storm: accordingly M. de Tromelin set about this important service to the colony and to commerce. It was necessary to dispatch instantly the greater part of these vessels to Madagascar, in search of stores and provisions of every kind. M. Poivre had taken the salutary precaution to make several vessels winter at the Cape of Good Hope. These vessels, when informed of the disaster which had befallen the Isle of France, brought it supplies in abundance, and these supplies saved the colony; for they arrived soon after the second hurricane, which happened the succeeding month, the new ravages of which had depressed the courage and hopes of the unfortunate inhabitants. The damage which the ships sustained in the harbour by the violence of the waves and the impetuosity of the wind, in the second hurricane, was much inferior to what they had sustained by the first. The variation of the barometer informed them of their danger, and they each used the utmost expedition to provide for their safety.

We shall here deviate awhile, in order to take notice of a hurricane which happened at the Isle of France on the night between the 9th and 10th of April, 1773, and which according to M. Brunel's account was attended with the most dismal effects.

The storm began about nine in the evening, when the moon appeared above the horizon; but its greatest violence was between eleven and one in the morning. The fury of the wind, and the noise of the thunder, were dreadful; while the lightning, which made the earth and the heavens appear as if on fire, still added to the horror of the scene. The fear of the inhabitants did not cease till towards five in the morning; but when day appeared the spectacle was dreadful beyond description. More than 300 houses were destroyed in the town of Port Louis; all the roofs were carried away, and the principal church was reduced to a heap of ruins. Many of the people were buried under the rubbish; others, bruised and mutilated, solicited assistance from their neighbours, who were not in a situation to afford them relief; and the streets were strewn with nails, splinters of wood, and fragments of every kind. All the vessels in the harbour, in number 32, were driven on shore, and greatly damaged. Of several small barks, nothing was to be seen but the keels; and one had entirely disappeared, without leaving the smallest trace that could lead to a discovery of its fate. Dead bodies were seen floating amidst the wreck of the ships; and such of the sailors as had escaped death, struggling against the irritated waves, were making useless efforts to reach the shore. In short, nothing presented itself to the sight but consternation, misery, and distress. The desolation in the country was no less afflicting; the maize, rice, and corn, were cut and dispersed; the coffee and cotton plants, nutmeg, sugar-canes, and cinnamon trees, were torn up by the roots; the oldest trees were overturned or twisted by the violence of the wind; manufactories and work-shops were destroyed, and the grass appeared dry and withered, as if burnt. In one of the windward quarters of the island the sea, hurried along by the tempest beyond its usual boundaries, rose more than 40 feet, drove the inhabitants to the neighbouring eminences, in order to avoid being overwhelmed in their houses, and extended to the adjacent plains

and woods, when various kinds. want of provision fous pe, bound, colony; but a few wards procured in del, the Cape of gascar, and the Po

The French co Poivre for some tentive in enrichin with every necessi chafed from the o

One of the pri voyage was to dete and quickfands, w which divides the Indian Ocean.

In order to avoi and shoals, situat set out from the I ed, during the twe and indirect route of the true positio unsafe for any sq course. Abbe Ro nomical observatio most dangerous o which Rochon pa chyles Islands, the the Island of Sa

The Island of Sa of 4 deg. 38 min. S 15 min. E. from l harbour, and cover of the mountains.

toroises, some of w In 1769 Rochon determine its posi Secheyles and the a only by monstrous ment has been since netmegs and cloves the Isle of Palms, that celebrated fru cocoa of the Mald

Among the num subjects is the port of which Rochon judg conference; has a is like that of a is not above a qua high enough to incle able of containing is about four lea breadth is about on and has two entranc passages are exceed latitude 7 deg. 14 E. from Paris. W about in this are known.

Cayados and St. by M. d'Apres: the cent, and the latter The Adu Islands, v connected by a rec afford a passage fr form a bay about si passage which affor eastern side; the w This bay, which is of a sand bank nearly f a league in circumfe tity of shell-fish in fish. The isles are trees.

The Isle of Sable is flat and about a ronce. At its north

and woods, where it left, when it retired, fish of various kinds. This misfortune occasioned such a want of provisions, that bread was sold at eighteen sous per pound, according to the currency of the colony; but a supply of corn and rice was afterwards procured from Bengal, the coast of Coromandel, the Cape of Good Hope, the island of Madagascar, and the Persian Gulph.

The French colonies are much indebted to M. Poivre for some valuable plants, as he was very attentive in entrusting the colony entrusted to his care with every necessary production that could be purchased from the old East India Company.

One of the principal objects of Abbe Rochon's voyage was to determine the situation of the shoals and quicksands, with which the archipelago abounds, which divides the mountains of Bourbon from the Indian Ocean.

In order to avoid this archipelago of small islands and shoals, situated to the north, the vessels which set out from the Ile of France for India were obliged, during the two monsoons, to pursue a tedious and indirect route; for as navigators were ignorant of the true position of those dangerous shoals, it was unsafe for any squadron to attempt a more direct course. Abbe Rochon was the first, who, by astronomical observation, determined the position of the most dangerous of these small islands. Those to which Rochon particularly attended were the Sechelyes Islands, the flat of Cargados, Salha de Maha, the Island of Diego-Garcia, and the Adu Isles.

The Island of Sechelyes is situated in the latitude of 4 deg. 38 min. S. and in the longitude of 53 deg. 15 min. E. from Paris. It is an exceeding good harbour, and covered with wood to the very top of the mountains. It abounds with land and sea tortoises, some of which weigh three hundred pounds. In 1769 Rochon spent a month here in order to determine its position with the utmost exactness: Sechelyes and the adjacent isles were inhabited then only by monstrous crocodiles; but a small establishment has been since formed in it for the cultivation of nutmegs and cloves. In one of these islands, called the Isle of Palms, there is found a tree which bears that celebrated fruit, known by the name of the cocoa of the Maldives, or sea cocoa.

Among the number of the most remarkable objects is the port of Diego Garcia. That island, which Rochon judged to be twelve leagues in circumference, has a very pleasing aspect. Its form is like that of a horse-shoe. Its greatest breadth is not above a quarter of a league; yet the land is high enough to inclose and shelter a vast basin, capable of containing the largest fleet. This basin is about four leagues in length, and its mean breadth is about one. It forms an excellent harbour, and has two entrances on the northern side. These passages are exceedingly beautiful. It is situated in latitude 7 deg. 14 min. S. and in longitude 68 deg. E. from Paris. With regard to the shoals which abound in this archipelago, they are as yet not all known.

Cayados and St. Brandon have been confounded by M. d'Apres: the former has the form of a crescent, and the latter that of an equilateral triangle. The Adu Islands, which are twelve in number, are connected by a reef of rocks, which at low water afford a passage from the one to the other. They form a bay about six miles in circumference. The passage which affords an entrance to it lies on the eastern side; the water is about 30 fathoms deep. This bay, which is of a circular form, has in its middle a sand bank nearly square, and almost a quarter of a league in circumference. There is a great quantity of shell-fish in it and other different kinds of fish. The isles are flat and covered with cocoa-trees.

The Isle of Sable (which was discovered in 1722) is flat and about a quarter of a mile in circumference. At its northern and southern extremities

fresh water fit for drinking may be found at 15 feet depth. The most elevated part of this flat is only fifteen feet above the level of the sea; it is six hundred fathoms long and three hundred broad. The island is very barren and destitute of shelter.

The Island of Madagascar was discovered by Laurence Almyda in 1506; but it was long before known to the Persians and Arab.

The Portuguese when they discovered this island gave it the name of St. Lawrence. The French called it Ile Dauphine in the reign of Henry IV. Its real name is Madecasse, which has been since corrupted into Madagascar.

This island is divided into twenty-eight provinces, which are, Anosy, Manapani, the valley of Amboule, Vohitzan, Watte-Manahore, Ycondre, Etomampo, Adchimevilly, Erendranes, Vohizy-Angombes, Manacarongha, Mantatane, Antaveres, Ghalemboule, Tamatave, Sahavah, Voulou-Voulou, Andafoutchy, Mangahaby, Adcimoutchy, Mandrarey, Ampatre, Caremboule, Mahafalley, Houlovey, Sivah, Yvandrhou, and Machicores.

This large island extends almost N. N. E. and S. S. W. and lies between the twelfth and twenty-sixth degrees of southern latitude.

We may reckon that the superficies of this island, so celebrated for the fertility of its soil, and the variety of its production, contains two hundred millions of acres of excellent land. It is watered on all sides by streams and large rivers; and above all by a great number of small rivulets, which have their sources at the bottom of that long chain of mountains which separates the eastern from the western coast. The two highest mountains in the island are Vigagora in the north, and Botismene in the south. These mountains contain in their bowels, abundance of fossils and valuable minerals.

This wild and romantic country, intersected by ridges and valleys, are full of precipices which must strike the traveller with awe and surprise; the summits thereof are covered with old venerable trees. The noise of the cascades, which are inaccessible, is likewise awful and immense; the eye, however, is delighted with beautiful hills, which are covered with vegetation throughout the year. Here herds of cattle and flocks of sheep find ample nourishment; for such is the flourishing state of agriculture, that the fields always abound in rice, potatoes, &c. notwithstanding the severity and vicissitudes of the seasons.

The fortunate inhabitants of Madagascar never moisten the earth with their sweat; they turn it up slightly with a pick-axe; and this labour alone is sufficient. They make small holes in the ground at a little distance from each other, and throw into them a few grains of rice, over which they spread a little mould with their feet. What proves the great fertility of the soil is, that a field sown in this manner produces an hundred fold.

The forests contain a prodigious variety of beautiful trees, palms of every kind, ebony, wood for dying, bamboos of an enormous size, orange and lemon trees, &c. &c. excellent timber fit for masts, and for building houses or ships, may also be had.

These numerous trees and shrubs are surrounded by a multitude of parasite plants and vines. In these forests may be found agaric and mushrooms, the colours of which are lively and agreeable, and which have an exquisite flavour. All the forests of Madagascar abound with plants unknown to botanists, some of which are aromatic and medicinal, and others fit for dying: also flax, a kind of hemp, which, in length and strength, surpasses that of Europe, the sugar-cane, wax, different kinds of honey, tobacco, indigo, black-pepper, gum lac, amber, ambergrease, several silky and cottony substances, &c. &c.

We shall in our next chapter give a full account of the natives, their manners, &c.

CHAPTER II.

Account of the Islanders—Their Persons, Sentiments, &c.—Their Industry, Ingenuity, and Taste for Mechanical Arts—Dexterity of the Women—A remarkable Instance of the Happiness they enjoy in their own Manners, &c.—The Natives divided into a Number of Tribes—Customs of each—Manner of Living—Their Food—Ways of dressing it—Account of the Southern Part of Madagascar—Residence and Manners of the Chiefs—Language—Religion—Different Provinces, &c.

THE inhabitants of Madagascar are called *Malegaches*, or *Madecasses*. They are portly in their persons, and rise above the middle stature. The colour of their skin is different: among one tribe it is of a deep black, and among another tawny: some have a copper-coloured tint; but the colour of the greater part is olive. All those who are black have woolly hair, like the negroes on the coast of Africa. Those who are of a complexion similar to that of the Indians and Mulattoes, have as lank hair as the Europeans. Their nose is not flat; they have a broad open forehead; their lips are thin; and their features are regular and agreeable. These people generally display in their countenance a peculiar character of frankness and good-nature. They never shew any desire of learning but things which relate to the simplest wants of mankind; and this desire is always extremely moderate: they are very indifferent respecting knowledge which cannot be obtained without reflection. A natural want of care, and a general apathy render every thing insupportable to them that requires attention. Sober, light, and active, they spend the greater part of their lives in sleeping, and amusing themselves in innocent recreations.

The Malegache, like the savage, is destitute both of virtue and vice. To him the present is every thing; he is susceptible of no kind of foresight; and he does not even conceive that there are men on the earth who give themselves uneasiness respecting futurity. He is a free being who enjoys peace of mind, and health of body; being absolute master of himself, his freedom is confined by no check or restraint; he goes wherever he thinks proper, acts as he chooses, and does what he pleases, except what may hurt a fellow-creature. It never entered the mind of a Malegache to attempt to domineer over the thoughts or actions of any one: each individual has his own peculiar manner of living; and his neighbour never disturbs him, nor even thinks of attempting it.

The industry of these people, in forging iron and other metals, is very remarkable. They are also very clever in twisting small cables, which are employed in fishing for whales, and mooring their piraguas. Indeed their natural ingenuity and taste for mechanical arts, would render it a very easy task to introduce into Madagascar several branches of commerce. The women are very dexterous and notable, in weaving beautiful pieces of stuff, which serve them for clothing: some of them are made of the filaments of the leaves of a plant called *raven*; others, which are in greater estimation with the natives, are manufactured of silk and cotton. The population of Madagascar is very extensive, and labour and raw materials exceedingly cheap.

The following is a remarkable instance of the happiness which these people enjoy, in following their own manners; and how devoted they are to their own laws and customs.

"Vander Stel, governor of the Cape of Good Hope, having procured a Hottentot child, caused him to be educated according to the manners and customs of Europe. Fine clothes were given to him; he was taught several languages, and his progress fully corresponded with the care taken of his education. Vander Stel, entertaining great hopes of his talents, sent him to India under the protection of a commissary-general, who employed him with advantage in the company's affairs. After the death of the commissary, this Hottentot

"returned to the Cape. A few days after, while on a visit to some Hottentots, his relations, he formed a resolution of pulling off his European dress, in order to clothe himself with a sheep's-skin. He then repaired to Vander Stel, in this new attire, carrying a bundle containing his old clothes, and presenting them to the governor; addressed him as follows: 'Be so kind, Sir, as to observe, that I for ever renounce these clothes; I am determined to live and to die in the religion, manners, and customs of my ancestors.' The only favour I have to beg of you is, that you will suffer me to keep the necklace and curtains which I now wear.' Having delivered this speech, he immediately betook himself to flight, without waiting for the governor's answer, and was never afterwards seen at the Cape."

The natives of Madagascar are divided into a great number of tribes. It is supposed that the population of this island may amount to four millions. This calculation is by far too great; however, it is impossible to ascertain the truth, as the island, which is divided into a great number of societies, are all distinct one from the other: each society inhabits that canton which it finds most convenient, and governs itself according to its own usages. A tribe is composed of several villages, who have all a particular chief: this chief is sometimes elected, but for the most part succeeds by hereditary right. The lands are not divided: they belong to those who take the trouble to cultivate them. These people are not acquainted either with locks or bolts, and live in a very frugal manner. Hunger regulates their hours of repast. It is, however, common to see them dine at ten in the morning, and sup at four in the afternoon. Their food consists of very white rice, exceedingly light, and well boiled, which they besprinkle with a succulent kind of soup, made from fish or flesh, and seasoned with ginger, pimento, saffron, and a few aromatic herbs. This simple dish is served up in the leaves of the raven, which are used for plates, dishes, and spoons. These vessels are always clean, and are changed at every meal. They have only two ways of dressing their food: they either broil it upon coals, or boil it in earthen vessels, which are curiously made.

It is in the eastern coast of Madagascar which the French have frequented. The province of Carnali, in which Fort Dauphine stands, is very populous. Almost all the villages are built upon eminences; they are surrounded by two rows of strong palisades; and within these there is a parapet of earth four feet in height. Large bamboos, placed at the distance of five feet from each other, and sunk to a considerable depth in the ground, serve to strengthen the palisades: but some of these villages are fortified also by a ditch six feet deep and ten broad.

The residence of the chief is called *Donac*: it contains two or three buildings, surrounded by a peculiar kind of enclosure, where the chief lives with his women and his children.

The chiefs always go armed with a susee, and a stick headed with iron, to the other extremity of which is affixed a small bunch of cow's hair: they cover their heads with a cap made of red woollen cloth. It is by their caps, above all, that they can be distinguished by their subjects. The authority of these chiefs is very much limited; yet in the province of Carcanoli they are supposed to be the proprietors of all the land, which they distribute among their

Engraved

THE

THE LAPLAND

THE AFRICAN

THE HOTTENTOT



THE AMERICAN



THE LAPLANDER



THE CHINESE



THE AFRICAN



A GREENLANDER





[The main body of the page is blank white space.]

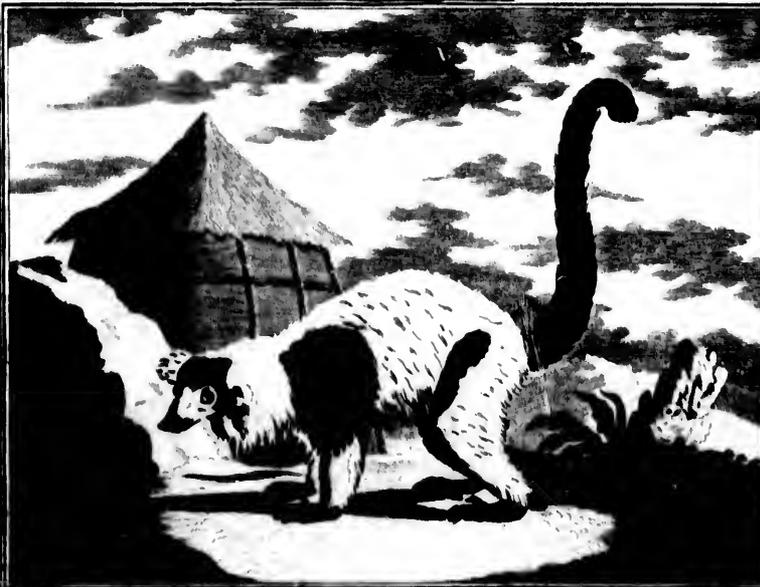


Remark

London: Published by the Author, at the Kings Arms, in Pall-mall.



A Remarkable Animal found on one of the *Hesperian* Islands in Capt. Cook's first Voyage.



The *VARI. or Mongoose*, a native of *MADAGASCAR*.

their subjects, in
The people of
entirely ignorant
even some histor
guage; but their
characters. They
medicine, geoman
authors are both s
celebrated come f
which country ma
The Matanes are
the island, becau
The art of writing
this island by the
about 300 years ag
valley of Ambouk
papyrus nilotica, wh
janga. They pull
bark of this tree; o
which they moille
them across each o
them well down.
lye of althes, and
wooden mortar til
This paste is wash
a frame made of ba
When this operation
out to dry in the su
tion of rice water.
lour; but when it is
the ink. Their pe
Their ink from a de
bark of a tree, whi
more shining than b
The Arabic langu
the N. W. part of th
well known that th
establishments along
cording to geograph
doms of Monomotap
took possession also
these princes, when
the adjacent isles, d
country. They still
able trade with Ade
Abyssinia. They hav
Bombetoc in Madag
which enables them
island, for the purpo
means they have intre
some traces of Mah
gaches. Formerly, th
and the Portuguese of
which were founded
nations entertained fo
of Comora and Mad
upon the Portuguese
Africa, which did th
destroyed some of the
became gradually ext
the Portuguese power
of jealousy. An atten
20 years ago, to take
of hostilities, in orde
ment at Cape St. Seb
intention of this establ
The Portuguese thoug
than a factory; but th
with success. M. Bo
of Bourbon, saw the
establishment.

Notwithstanding th
Arabs, Mahomecanis
gress in it; indeed, if
fluence from pork, ar
which have very little
these people, the dese
elves have lost sight
their religious opinion
future existence; like

their subjects, in order to be tilled and cultivated.

The people of the province of Carcanoffi are not entirely ignorant of the art of writing. They have even some historical books in the Madecasse language; but their learned men use only the Arabic characters. They have among them treatises on medicine, geomancy, and judicial astrology. Their authors are both forerchers and physicians. The most celebrated come from the province of Matatane, in which country magic is preserved in its full glory. The Matatanes are dreaded by the other natives of the island, because they excel in this art of deception. The art of writing has, doubtless, been brought into this island by the Arabs, who made a conquest of it about 300 years ago. Their paper is made in the valley of Amboule: it is manufactured from the papyrus *nitatica*, which the Madecasses name *Jangajanga*. They pull off with great dexterity the inner bark of this tree; divide it into very thin filaments, which they moisten with water; and having laid them across each other, in various directions, press them well down. They are then boiled in a strong ley of ashes, and afterwards pounded in a large wooden mortar till they are reduced to a paste. This paste is washed and drenched with water, upon a frame made of bamboos, in the form of a grate. When this operation is finished, the leaves are spread out to dry in the sun, and are glazed with a decoction of rice water. This paper is of a yellowish colour; but when it is well glazed, it does not imbibe the ink. Their pens are made of the bamboo. Their ink from a decoction in boiling water of the bark of a tree, which they call *arandrato*. It is more shining than black.

The Arabic language has made some progress in the N. W. part of the island of Madagascar. It is well known that the Arab princes formed large establishments along the African coast, which, according to geographers, correspond with the kingdoms of Monomotapa and Mono-Emugi. They took possession also of the island of Comora; and these princes, when they emigrated to Africa and the adjacent isles, did not forget their ancient country. They still indeed carry on an inconsiderable trade with Aden, Mascate, and the coasts of Abyssinia. They have also, on the small river of Bombetoc in Madagascar, a kind of settlement, which enables them to visit different parts of that island, for the purposes of commerce. By these means they have introduced their language, and left some traces of Mahometanism among the Malegaches. Formerly, there subsisted between the Arabs and the Portuguese of India a hatred and animosity, which were founded solely on the zeal these two nations entertained for their religion. The Arabs of Comora and Madagascar made frequent attacks upon the Portuguese establishments on the coast of Africa, which did them great injury: they even destroyed some of their settlements; but this hatred became gradually extinguished, when the decline of the Portuguese power rendered them less the objects of jealousy. An attempt was made at Goa; about 20 years ago, to take advantage of this suspension of hostilities, in order to form a Portuguese settlement at Cape St. Sebastian, in Madagascar. The intention of this establishment was merely religious. The Portuguese thought of forming a mission, rather than a factory; but this project was not attended with success. M. Bolle, an inhabitant of the isle of Bourbon, saw the melancholy remains of this establishment.

Notwithstanding this island is frequented by the Arabs, Mahometanism has not made any great progress in it; indeed, if we except circumcision, abstinence from pork, and some few trifling practices, which have very little influence over the conduct of these people, the descendants of the Arabs themselves have lost sight of the fundamental parts of their religious opinions. They do not believe in a future existence; like the Manichees, they admit of

two principles, one supremely good, and the other extremely wicked. They never address their prayers to the former; but they entertain a great dread of the latter, to whom their sacrifices are continually offered.

The whites, who inhabit the province of Anossi and Carcanoffi, pretend to be descended from Imina, the mother of Mahomet. They have assumed the name of Zafferahimini. The whites, who inhabit Foulepointe, Nossi-Hibrahim, and the bay of Antongil, are sprung some from the pirates, and others from the Jews: for this reason, they call themselves Zaffe-Hibrahim, that is to say, the descendants of Abraham. Besides these, there is a third kind of whites, who say they were sent to Madagascar by the caliph of Mecca, to instruct the Malegaches in the secrets of nature, and the religion of Mahomet. These impostors seized upon the province of Matatane, after they had expelled and massacred the Zafferahimini, who governed that district. They are called Zaffi-Cafimanbou. Their complexion is darker than that of the other whites, and their profession is, to teach to read and write the Arabic language.

The Zafferahimini, in the province of Anossi and Carcanoffi, believe that they came originally from the sandy plains on the borders of Mecca. On this account they are called Ontampassemaca, and are divided into three classes, the Rhoandrians, the Anacandrians, and the Ontzatsi. The first, and most honourable class, is that of the Rhoandrians. People of this class have assumed to themselves the privilege of killing animals. Among savages, and people who subsist by hunting, the trade of a butcher is almost always held in great distinction. The Rhoandrians are the nobility of the country; and it is always from this class that the sovereign is chosen. The Anacandrians are descended from the Rhoandrians, and a woman of an inferior class: for this reason, they share with the Rhoandrians the honour and advantage of killing, for the other islanders, such animals as are necessary to their subsistence. The Ontzatsi are the last class of the Ontampassemaca; but they enjoy no particular marks of distinction. They are generally brave soldiers, skilled in the art of war, who can throw a stone with great dexterity, and spend their time in dancing, sleeping, and amusing themselves.

The blacks are divided into four classes: the Voadziri, the Lohavohits, the Ontzoa, and the Endeves. The Voadziri are the descendants of the ancient sovereigns of the island. They are generally pretty rich in slaves and flocks; and they are allowed to possess several villages. These people must be held in great consideration among the islanders of Madagascar, for they have preserved, notwithstanding the despotism of the Arabs, who conquered the province of Anossi, the right of killing, when they are not in the presence of a Rhoandrian or an Anacandrian, such animals as belong to their subjects. The Lohavohits are much less powerful than the Voadziri. They can never possess more than one village; and, however rich they may be in flocks, they must always send for a Rhoandrian, or an Anacandrian, to kill whatever animals they want to eat.

The people of Ontzoa have no power whatever; and the Endeves are looked upon as slaves from their birth.

It is the belief of those islanders who possess any kind of erudition, that God created from the body of the first man seven women; these are supposed to be the mothers of the different castes. That of the Rhoandrians is believed to be the offspring of the first man and woman, formed from the brain. The Anacandrians from the neck, and the Ontzatsi from the left shoulder: the Voadziri from the right side; the Lohavohits and the Ontzoa from the thigh and calf of the leg, and the Endeves from the soles of the feet: these last are looked upon as the meanest extraction.

CHAPTER III.

Further Account of the Malegaches—The Attention of the Men to the Women—Their Happiness when in their Company—Description of the Women—Their Customs in time of War—Joyful Assemblies—Skill of their Physicians—Efficacious Remedy for the Venereal Disease—M. de Modave takes possession of the Government of Fort Dauphin in the Name of the King of France—His Account of the Dwarfs in the interior Parts of Madagascar—Of a Kimoa Woman—Further Remarks—Of the N. E. part of Madagascar—Destruction of a small French Establishment at Foulpointe—Of the Northern Part—Lands, &c. belonging to Foulpointe.

THE natives of the province of Anossi are exceedingly intelligent. They are possessed of sense, vivacity, and good-nature. They are so very fond of women, that they are never sad in their company: they are particularly attentive to them, it being their greatest delight to contribute towards their happiness. The woman is never obliged to obey like a slave, nor does the husband command like a tyrant. These women are genteel and pleasing; have good features, fine eyes, white teeth, and a smooth skin.

The chiefs here, especially those that are rich, enjoy a plurality of wives, though they never espouse more than one legally; the rest being considered as concubines. This custom is not attended with disagreeable consequences in Madagascar, as all these women live very happy together: besides, a divorce may take place as often as the conjugal union displeases either the husband or the wife. When they part, however, by mutual consent, they restore to each other the property they possessed before marriage. In Madagascar adultery is looked upon as a robbery, and punished as such. These people; therefore, pay the utmost respect to marriage; they forewarn strangers to behave with decency to their wives; but they offer them their daughters, and think themselves much honoured when they have children by them. Wives may be known by their hair, which is separated into tresses, and bound up in the form of a nosegay on the top of the head: The virgins suffer it to fall carelessly over their shoulders. Husbands are always in high spirits when with their wives; their presence inspires them with joy; as soon as they perceive them, they begin to dance and sing, and make use of several amorous expressions. The Malegache women appear to be happy, and are generally in good humour. Even Europeans are delighted with their agreeable behaviour.

When the men are at war, the women sing and dance incessantly, throughout the whole day, and even during a part of the night. They imagine that these continual dances animate their husbands, and increase their vigour and courage. They scarcely allow themselves time to enjoy their meals. When the war is ended, they assemble at sun-set, and renew their singing and dancing, which always begin with much noise, and the sound of various instruments. Their songs are either panegyrics or satires, and are to all appearance very interesting. Whenever a woman finds that her health betrays any signs of having had familiar intercourse with the Europeans, she absents herself from those joyful assemblies, in order to avoid the wit and reproaches of her companions, and to put herself under the care of the physicians. This custom prevents the venereal disease from spreading so much in this island as it has in Europe. Besides, their physicians have found out a very happy remedy for this disorder, which is said to be extremely efficacious. They order the patient to chew and swallow some particular leaves, lying alternately on the back and belly, in a horizontal position. The patient must not be loaded with clothes; and in order that perspiration may not be impeded, she must be surrounded on all sides with a strong brisk fire during the whole time that the remedy acts. The virus of the disease generally accumulates in the soles of the feet; and the effects there formed is seldom attended with disagreeable consequences. Great care is taken that the patient may not be incommoded by the heat of the fire.

By the cruelty of the Europeans, the Malegaches have been forced to employ much treachery; and how can they be blamed, seeing that every advantage was taken of their weakness; and, in return for their hospitality, they have met with every unkind treatment! We have several instances of this, particularly in 1642, when Captain Picault obtained an exclusive privilege, for himself and associates, to trade in Madagascar; and Promis was authorised by the Crown to take possession of Madagascar in the name of the King, with orders to choose the most eligible spot for their intended establishment. The village of Manghefia appeared the most convenient and promising, as it abounded in rich fields of rice and potatoes, and a quantity of horned cattle: The meadows hereof were watered by a navigable river, which springs from the bottom of Mount Sliava. The docks were exceedingly commodious, abounding in timber of all kinds, and the harbour conveniently sheltered by the island of St. Lucia from the sea winds. The unwholesomeness of the climate, however, made great destruction among Pronis's small colony, which obliged him to leave this place immediately, and retire to the peninsula of Thalangar, remarkable for its salubrity and situation of defence. Here there is excellent anchoring ground; and the fort, which is called Port Dauphin, is surrounded with substantial walls, constructed of lime and sand. Vessels; however, in this port are much exposed to N. E. winds. The lake of Amboul is supplied with water by the river of Fanthere. This lake is 50,000 fathoms in circumference, and 40 feet in depth. The river Fanthere is navigable for boats to the distance of 15 to 20 leagues from its mouth. The great bay of Loucan encloses on the southern side the point of Itapera, which lies to the north of Fort Dauphin, and which is likewise sheltered from the sea winds by the island of St. Clair, which prevents the small river thereof from being choked up with sand. Pronis found this place more favourable to the establishment than the village of Manghefia; but being destitute of abilities to conduct it properly, the people under his command revolted, and put him in chains. He was released from his imprisonment by a vessel which arrived from France; and he was sold to the governor of the Isle of France all the wretched Malegaches who belonged to the establishment. This created much indignation from the islanders, particularly as there were sixteen women among these slaves. His successor, Flacourt, likewise violated the hospitality which had been shown him. The islanders were also ill treated by others.

M. Poivre having gone to Madagascar in the year 1769, when M. de Modave was governor of Fort Dauphin, made it his study to examine all the plants, &c. The loss of this eminent naturalist is very much regretted by Rochon, who had been spectator of his indefatigable industry.

The following extraordinary account of a race of pignies is recorded by M. de Modave:

"The dwarfs in the interior parts of the large island of Madagascar form a considerable nation called in the Madecasse language, *Quimo* or *Kimoa*. The distinguishing characteristics of these small people are, that they are whiter or at least paler in colour than all the negroes hitherto known; their arms are so long that they can stretch their hands below their knees without stooping; and that the women have scarcely any breasts, except when they suckle; and even then the greater part of them

are obliged to nourish their young; these inhabitants of Madagascar are very lively and themselves to the as they are much warlike: they have neighbours, who purpose. Though and weapons, for use of gunpowder they have always liberty amidst the remedy difficult to much to their various kinds of rear a great number of children, which form a They hold no commerce with whom the sake of commerce they procure all which they possess, was between them; island is to carry slaves, the diminution from the latter injury they are so fond of it to a certain degree from the tops of the advancing; with even plains below: The their stocks to they leave them, and them to the indigence at the same time denounce to attack them: without to penetrate far proof that it is neither that they purchase their weapons are a sign of the utmost dexterity.

"Some short distance inhabitants of that part of small barrows of graves, which, as a great massacre of the field by their ancestors. M. de Modave, in about the end of the year of seeing a Kimoa woman three feet seven inches in the tallest among them; as well as the child, as from being ill-proportioned, exceedingly long, and the body as far as the woolly; her features projected nearly to those of an inhabitant of Madagascar; she looked, and was good-looking; as far as could be seen.

"A short time before her death, she made her escape, and being carried away from the island.

"Diminution of stature is almost general under the Kingdom. Both under the highest mountains of Madagascar, where the Kingdom is high above the level of the sea, the productions which appear to be stunted, and a great many of the trees depend on that cause they have become stunted of the highest mountains of the highest mountains. The ordinary height of the mountains, and that of the

are obliged to make use of cow's milk in order to nourish their young. With regard to intellectual faculties, these Kimos are not inferior to the other inhabitants of Madagascar; who are known to be very lively and ingenious; though they abandon themselves to the utmost indolence; but the Kintios, as they are much more active, are also much more warlike: they have never yet been overcome by their neighbours, who have often made attempts for that purpose. Though attacked with superior strength and weapons, for they are not acquainted with the use of gunpowder and fire-arms, like their enemies, they have always fought with courage, and retained liberty amidst their rocks; which, as they are extremely difficult of access, certainly contribute very much to their safety. They live there upon rice, various kinds of fruits, roots and vegetables, and rear a great number of oxen and sheep with large tails, which form also a part of their subsistence. They hold no communication with the different castles by whom they are surrounded, either for the sake of commerce or on any account whatever, as they procure all their necessities from the lands which they possess. As the object of all the petty wars between them and the other inhabitants of the island is to carry away on either side a few cattle or slaves, the diminutive size of the Kintios saves them from the latter injury. With regard to the former, they are so fond of peace, that they resolve to endure it to a certain degree; that is to say, till they see from the tops of their mountains a formidable body advancing; with every hostile preparation, in the plains below. They then carry the superfluity of their flocks to the entrance of the defiles, where they leave them, and make a voluntary sacrifice of them to the indigence of their elder brethren; but at the same time denouncing with the severest threats to attack them without mercy, should they endeavour to penetrate farther into their territories; a proof that it is neither from weakness nor cowardice that they purchase tranquility by presents. Their weapons are assegays and darts, which they use with the utmost dexterity.

Some short distance from Fort Dauphin, the inhabitants of that part of the country shew a number of small barrows or earthen hillocks, in the form of graves, which, as is said, owe their origin to a great massacre of the Kimos, who were defeated in the field by their ancestors.

M. de Modave, in his voyage to Fort Dauphin, about the end of the year 1770, had the satisfaction of seeing a Kintios woman, aged about thirty, and three feet seven inches in height. Her complexion was the fairest among the inhabitants of the island; she was well formed though low of stature, and far from being ill-proportioned; her arms were exceedingly long, and could reach without bending the body as far as the knee; her hair was short and woolly; her features, which were agreeable, approached nearer to those of an European than to an inhabitant of Madagascar; she had naturally a pleasant look; and was good-humoured, sensible, and obliging, as far as could be judged from her behaviour.

A short time before their departure from Madagascar, she made her escape into the woods, for fear of being carried away from her native country.

Diminution of stature, in respect to that of the Europeans, is almost graduated as from the Laplander to the Kintios. Both inhabit the coldest regions and the highest mountains in the world. Those of Madagascar, where the Kimos live, are 16 or 1800 fathoms high above the level of the sea. The vegetable productions which grow on these elevated places appear to be stunted; such as the pine, the oak, and a great many others, which from the class of trees descend to that of humble shrubs, merely because they have become alpicôles, signifying inhabitants of the highest mountains.

The ordinary height of the men is three feet six inches, and that of the women a few inches less.

The men wear their beards long, and cut in a round form. The Kimos are thick and squat; the colour of their skin is lighter than that of the other islanders, and their hair is short and woolly. They manufacture iron and steel, of which they make their lances and assegays. When they perceive bands of travellers preparing to traverse their country, they tie their oxen to trees on the frontiers, and leave other provisions, in order that these strangers may find the means of subsisting. When the strangers, however, are so imprudent as to molest them, by behaving in a hostile manner, and are not contented with the presents usual in the like circumstances, the dwarfish Kimos know how to defend themselves bravely, and repel by force those who have the temerity to attempt to penetrate into the valley where they reside, and which is almost inaccessible.

Remouzai, who, in quality of captain, followed the father of the chief Maimbou, in the two unfortunate expeditions which he undertook against these people, in order to carry away a part of their flocks, and afterwards sell them at Fort Dauphin, owed his safety merely to the knowledge he had of the high and steep mountains by which their valley is surrounded. Remouzai had been several times among the Kimos, and was employed as a guide by Maimbou's father when he ventured to attack them. The first incursion had no success; but the second was much more fatal: Maimbou's brother was killed; his small army was put to flight, and the number of those who escaped these pignies was very inconsiderable.

Maimbou was not old enough to accompany his father in this expedition; but he had conceived such an aversion to the Kimos, that he fell into a violent passion whenever they were mentioned in his presence; he wished much to exterminate that race of apes, for by such injurious appellation, he distinguished those dwarfs.

A chief of the Mahaffalles, a people residing near the Bay of St. Augustine, who came from a chief in the neighbourhood of the fort, with a view of exchanging silk and other merchandize for oxen, said, in the hearing of one of M. de Modave's officers, that he had been several times in the country of the Kimos, and that he had even carried on war against them. This chief added, that for some years these people had been harassed by their neighbours, who had burnt several of their villages. He boasted also of having in his possession a man and a woman of that race, who he said were about the age of 20 or 25.

From the accounts of this chief and Remouzai, it is apparent that the valley of the Kimos is abundant in cattle and provisions of every kind. These little people are industrious, and apply with much skill and labour to the cultivation of the earth. Their chief enjoys a much more absolute authority, and is more respected, than any of the other chiefs in the different districts of Madagascar. The extent of their valley is unknown: it is surrounded by very high mountains, and situated at the distance of 60 leagues to the N. W. of Fort Dauphin; it is also bounded on the W. by the country of the Maratanes. Their villages are built on the summits of small steep mounts, which are so much the more difficult to be ascended, as they have multiplied those obstacles that render approach to them almost impracticable. The chief of the Mahaffalles and Remouzai did not agree respecting two points which are particularly worthy of being ascertained. The general opinion of the people of Madagascar is, that the Kimos women have no breasts, and that they nourish their children with cow's milk. It is asserted also, that they have no menstrual flux; but that at those periods, when other women are subject to this evacuation, the skin of their body becomes of a blood-red colour. Remouzai declared this opinion was well founded; but the chief of the Mahaffalles contradicted it.

The most frequented parts of the N. E. part of the island of Madagascar are Foulepointe, St. Mary, and the Bay of Antongil. It is in these three places that the French have attempted to form all their establishments. The inhabitants of this coast are still better, and more humane, than those of the province of Carcanossi. They are ignorant of the use of locks or bolts, and shut the doors of their houses with nothing else than thorns, or the branches of trees. They expose all their treasures, as they entertain no suspicions of their neighbours. Their houses might easily be thrown down, as they are built of nothing else but mats and leaves.

The pirates, who carried on their depredations in the Indian seas, alarmed at the great preparations which were making to put an end to their robbery, took refuge on the N. E. coast of Madagascar. It appears that they formed their establishment at the Isle of Nossy-Hibraham, named by the French St. Mary. One of the extremities of this island reaches within eleven leagues of Foulepointe, and the other extends to the Bay of Antongil. By contracting alliances with the islanders, the pirates gained their confidence and friendship. This foreign land became to them and their children a new country: they imitated its manners, and adopted its customs. In fertile and rich regions, abounding in every thing necessary for subsistence, it is almost impossible to find any advantage by attacking the property of another; since the only riches of the inhabitants are those of the soil, and the soil belongs in common to all. It is not to be wondered at then that pirates, returning continually to this place of shelter to repair and re-victual their ships, should be favourably received by the Malegaches, since they shared in their opulence, without knowing how they acquired it.

In 1722, several nations, alarmed by the enormous losses which their commerce sustained, by the continual depredations of these pirates, united together to deliver the Indian seas from the oppression of these formidable tyrants, who had seized a large Portuguese vessel, in which were Count de Reccira and the archbishop of Goa; and the same day another vessel, which carried 32 guns. The pirates, elate with success, made a long and desperate resistance. Before they were extirpated, it was necessary to bring a considerable force against them; to terrify them by the severest punishment, and to pursue them through the most imminent dangers, even to the place of their retreat, where they were obliged to set fire to their vessels. Such were the severe means employed to clear the Indian seas of these plunderers, who had infested them from the time that Vasco de Gama opened a passage to India by the Cape of Good Hope.

When these banditti first established themselves in the island, cattle and sheep were of no value. Rice, and various kinds of provisions, had no other price than that which was affixed on them by navigators; and it even appears, that during the time of their piracy they spent the fruits of their long voyages in drunkenness and debauchery, on their return from every expedition.

It was these profligates who first introduced the slave-trade into the N. E. part of Madagascar. It was not, however, without causing much trouble and disorder that they were able to overcome the aversion which the Malegaches had for that horrid traffic. Before this epoch several European ships had made vain efforts to induce them to sell their prisoners and malefactors. Their negotiations for this purpose, instead of being attended with success, were rejected with indignation, and sometimes punished in an exemplary manner, when they ventured to employ stratagem or force. The pirates were too well acquainted with the intrepid spirit of the Malegaches to use these means; and they were sensible that they were too few in number to subdue them, or to dictate to them concerning a trade which

they detested. The least violence, in this respect, would have occasioned their destruction; and with still more certainty that of their wives and children. The surest way of accomplishing their end, therefore, was to kindle up among these people the flames of discord; and, taking advantage of their intestine wars, to prevail on them to dispose of their prisoners, who, on account of their number, could not fail of being a burthen to them.

Rochon was witness to the entire destruction of a small French establishment at Foulepointe, about the end of the year 1768. Though assistance of every kind was speedily given to the unfortunate people who belonged to it, not one of them could be saved. The robust as well as the weak, all fell victims to disease, in the course of a very short time. On account of the salubrious sea air, with which their vessel was surrounded, and which corrected, in some degree, the fatal effects of the putrid exhalations, Rochon happily escaped this calamity. Besides, as soon as the first symptoms of the disease appeared in the village, all communication with the land, except what was indispensably necessary, was rigorously forbidden. The crew were no longer allowed to have any intercourse with the islanders; nor were their piraguays suffered to approach the vessel. Without this precaution, the infection might have been introduced into the ship; and no means could have been devised to check its progress.

No part in the northern quarter of Madagascar is free from putrid and malignant fevers; but these cruel diseases do not every year occasion the same ravages. Their violence and duration seem to depend more particularly on the direction of the wind. When it blows long from the N. the evil is at its height. There are few men robust and strong enough to resist the influence of this dangerous wind, which prevails only from the end of October till the beginning of May.

The northern part of Madagascar being more fertile in productions of every kind than the southern part, is consequently more frequented by European vessels; but the interior part of the country has never yet been visited. When Rochon was at the Isle of France, he in vain endeavoured to procure such information as might enable him to write a description of it: however, the ideas with which he was furnished were, in a great measure, vague and uncertain. The high mountains of Vigagora, which must be traversed, present, at every step, obstacles capable of stopping men the most accustomed to brave dangers of every kind. When Rochon found himself surrounded by rocks, a small cord held by his guides revived his courage, and facilitated an access to the highest precipices: silk cords are preferable to those of hemp, because they are stronger and much lighter.

The place most frequented by the Europeans in the northern part of Madagascar, is called Foulepointe; but the natives give it the name of *Vouloou Vouloou*. The harbour is surrounded by a reef of rocks, which break the force of the waves, and shelter ships from heavy seas. The shores of it are very bold, and the least depth of the water is twenty-three feet at low tides. The reef, which consists of coral rocks, is joined to the main land and stretches N. N. E. whilst the coast stretches N. N. W. The entrance of the harbour, which is on the north side, is about fifty fathoms in breadth. The depth of the basin is about fifty fathoms: it is capable of containing ten large vessels, which may anchor along-side of each other in from thirty to thirty-five feet of water. The ground is sure; but in the winter season, the entrance is shut by a thinning sand-bank, which is dissipated when the south-east succeed the north winds or calm weather. The sea never rises or falls more than four or five feet the time of spring or neap-tides. During the late part of the year, the reef of rocks appears above the water; and abundance of natural productions may be there

found on them, black coral, insects and shells, which the brilliancy of the cabinets of the rivers here are loaded with oysters adhere to of the most singular little distance from there are found vessels from that of the sea experienced a femi mixed with stones spered with an int of natural glass. deg. 40 min. 20 min.

Vessels can procure every kind in abundance markets are well furnished no check or restrictions. Some years refused to sell hogs who lived at the distance of the port, and who was a bidden them. This would be threatened did not endeavour to animals: but this prevents Europeans from procuring where they may be villages in the neighbourhood not numerous; they on the declivities of only by palisades. The multitude of useful tree, bamboos, oranges and bananas, the fruit esteemed by the Europeans is the raven, a black

Description of Cochinchina
Place—*Tung's Houphou*
Rejoicings in consequence
—Hospitality—Partiality
—*for Infidelity*—*Trade*
of greatest Trade—*Part*
not allowed to open the

THE kingdom of Tonquin; on the west by the kingdom of the name the Kemouys. length, and extends to twenty-seventh degree greatest breadth does not it is divided into eleven Diabear, Quambing, Dwards the north. The Cham, Quanghia, pharang, Nanlang, and contains the royal city, which reside, is the most of the river. This capital is beautiful river, which is capable of bearing ships and a dreadful inundation banks have been formed small vessels only can enter. This city is intersected in manner, in order to No. 16.

found on them, such as marine plants, mosses, black coral, insects, valuable madreporae, sea stars, and shells, which by the variety of their form, and the brilliancy of their colours, serve to ornament the cabinets of the curious. The mouths of the rivers here are bordered with mangles which are loaded with oysters of an excellent taste. These oysters adhere to the branches, and form clusters of the most singular and remarkable figures. At a little distance from those parts which the sea covers, there are found veins of a kind of sand different from that of the shore, and which appears to have experienced a semivitrification. This sand is intermixed with stones of a soft friable nature, interspersed with an infinite number of small fragments of natural glass. Foulepointe lies in latitude 17 deg. 40 min. 20 sec. and longitude 47 deg. 30 min.

Vessels can procure at Foulepointe provisions of every kind in abundance, and at a low price. The markets are well supplied when commerce experiences no check or restraint on the part of the Europeans. Some years ago the people of Foulepointe refused to sell hogs and pigs, because an old man who lived at the distance of four leagues from the port, and who was accounted a sorcerer, had forbidden them. This Omiasse pretended that they would be threatened with great misfortunes if they did not endeavour to destroy the race of these filthy animals: but this prohibition does not prevent the Europeans from procuring them in the mountains, where they may be found in large herds. The villages in the neighbourhood of Foulepointe are not numerous; they are dispersed here and there on the declivities of little hills, and are defended only by palisades. They are agreeably shaded by a multitude of useful trees, such as the cocoa-nut tree, bamboos, orange and lemon trees, wild vines, and bananas, the fruit of which are so much esteemed by the Europeans: but the most remarkable is the *raven*, a kind of palm-tree known in

Madagascar only, and which is prepared and eaten in the same manner as that of the cabbage-palm. This tree rises to a great height: it is covered with a hard bark, and its wood, which is fibrous and hard, is employed for constructing houses. The walls and partitions of these houses are formed of the ribs of its leaves, which have the solidity of wood and the pliability of leather, and which are fastened together in a very ingenious manner. The leaves serve to roof them, and makes an excellent covering: also of these leaves the Madecasses make their plates, dishes, cups, &c.

The lands belonging to Foulepointe abound with rich pastures and cattle. The river Ongleby, which is deep in some places and in others broad and shallow, produces plenty of fish, and is covered with water-fowl. Piraguas fall up it for more than twenty leagues: however, this river, like all the rest in Madagascar, is filled with monstrous crocodiles. Rochon one day saw an ox dragged away and devoured by one of these monsters, which are a terror even to the islanders.

About a few leagues from Foulepointe, towards the high mountains of *Ambatimene*, the land begins to rise, and the plains and the valleys are sheltered from the winds by little hills. The heat here is not incommodious, because the country is high and covered with wood: the low lands, which are less cultivated, are more wild and rural. The islanders in this part do not keep their cattle, but suffer them to wander about without a guide, and without shackles. The meadows, which are situated at the bottom of the valleys, are watered by a multitude of streams and rivulets, the windings of which are exceedingly romantic and agreeable. There are yams and rice of different kinds, various sorts of roots, peculiar to this place, with turnips, beans, &c. &c. Towards the close of the year 1768, Rochon brought home a variety of trees, plants, shrubs, &c. from this place.

CHAPTER IV.

Description of Cochinchina—Divided into eleven Provinces—Hue the most beautiful of all—Government of the Place—King's Household—His Wealth—Mode of acquiring it—A strange Tax—The manner of imposing it—Rejoicings in consequence thereof—The Activity, Industry, &c. of the Cochinchinese—Their Poverty and Ignorance—Hospitality—Partiality for the Chinese—For Women—Polygamy allowable—Manners of the Women—Punishment for Infidelity—Their Religion, &c.—Mountains of Cochinchina inhabited by Wild Beasts—Value of their Timber—Various Productions of Mountains and Land—Their Trade—Traffic with the Chinese—Fuiso the place of greatest Trade—Principal Articles in exchange—Remarks on the Chinese Trade by M. Brunel—The Chinese not allowed to open their Mines—Pretended Motive of the Prohibition.

THE kingdom of Cochinchina is bounded by Tonquin; on the south by Ciampa and Cambodia; on the east by the Indian ocean; and on the west by the kingdom of Laos, and a savage people named the Kemouys. It is about 150 leagues in length, and extends from the eleventh to the twenty-seventh degree of northern latitude. Its greatest breadth does not exceed 12 or 15 leagues. It is divided into eleven provinces, four of which, Dinbat, Quambing, Dinhnoe, and Hus, lie towards the north. The seven southern provinces are Cham, Quangzha, Quinhin, Fouyen, Fanriplanrang, Nanlang, and Bounay. Hue, which contains the royal city, where the kings of Cochinchina reside, is the most beautiful of all these provinces. This capital is situated near a large and beautiful river, which was formerly so deep as to be capable of bearing ships of great burthen; but since a dreadful inundation which lately happened, sand-banks have been formed at its mouth, so that small vessels only can enter it.

This city is intersected by canals after the Chinese manner, in order to facilitate the transportation of merchandize, and for the convenience of

the inhabitants, who are pretty numerous, and who could not endure the great heats of summer without bathing two or three times a day. The king maintains about twelve or fifteen thousand soldiers around his palace, to protect his person as well as to defend his states; and near three hundred neat galleys, which, in time of war, serve to convey troops from one place to another, and in the time of peace to carry the monarch when he travels: for he never quits his palace but in that manner. Those which he uses are extremely beautiful, and even richly gilt: especially those of his women, part of whom always accompany him wherever he goes. His prince also keeps four hundred elephants trained to war; indeed the strength of his kingdom consists in the number of these animals.

In respect to the government of Cochinchina, it is monarchical. The sovereign is absolute master of the whole kingdom, which he governs with the assistance of his four principal ministers, two of whom are called his right hand, and two his left hand. These ministers have the power of appointing to all employments, both civil and military. Each province

vince is under the management of a governor, who both commands the militia and administers justice. The whole militia are divided into two distinct bodies, sea and land soldiers, and both of these are divided into regiments. In the province of Phan-riphanrang the governor has the title of viceroi.

The finest men that can be found in the kingdom compose the king's household. The most beautiful company of these is that which is distinguished by the title of *golden fabres*. The men of this company are picked from all the other companies. They are the strongest, as well as the bravest, and their authority, consequently, greater than the others.

The king of Cochinchina is rich in gold and money, of which he has always several edifices full. His great wealth arises from a tax paid by all his subjects, from the age of 19 to that of 60. This tax is greater or less, according to the strength and situation of each individual. Every three years the governor of each province causes a new list to be made out of all those who, according to law, have attained to the proper age of taxation. To enable him to do this, the chief of every village forms a list with great care, and carries a copy of it to the governor, who orders all those whose names are inserted in it to appear before him on the day appointed. They all strip themselves from head to foot: the mandarin then causes his officers to examine them; and those who are robust and well-proportioned, and who seem to have most strength to labour, are taxed at a higher rate than those who, being feeble and weak, or in a bad state of health, can with difficulty gain a livelihood. This tax, which goes into the king's treasury, is paid according to the strength or situation of each individual, either in gold, money, or rice. Every year, in the seventh month, the taxes of all the provinces are transported to court with great pomp and magnificence. On this occasion there are great rejoicings in the capital for a month, during which the people are employed in feasting, seeing plays, artificial fireworks, and various other entertainments.

The Cochinchinese, compared with the Indians, are brave, active, and industrious. They are fond of truth, and closely adhere to it when they know it. They are, however, poor and ignorant; but extremely polite to each other, and to strangers. They have a great esteem for the Chinese, on account of their learning. The king, above all, is very fond of them; and encourages them to frequent his ports, for the sake of carrying on commerce with them. The Cochinchinese are much addicted to women; and polygamy is allowed amongst them. A man generally has as many wives as he can maintain; and the law gives him great authority over them, as well as over his children. Women convicted of infidelity to their husbands, are condemned to be exposed to the fury of elephants. The women, who are not remarkable for their modesty, go quite naked to the middle; and they publicly bathe, without any ceremony, in the view of every body. In their persons, the Cochinchinese have a great resemblance to the Chinese, except that they are more tawny: their women are beautiful, and very fair. Their dress is the same as that which was used in China before the irruption of the Tartars. The mandarins of letters in Cochinchina have adopted the Japanese dress. They preserve their hair, particularly the women, some of whom have it so long that it reaches to the ground: this they esteem a great beauty.

The religion of this country is similar to that of China. The Christian religion has been lately tolerated, and makes no little progress. Some princes and mandarins of the first rank are Christians. Their learning consists in being able to read Chinese books, and acquiring a knowledge of the morality which they contain. This knowledge qualifies them for becoming mandarins.

Cochinchina is chiefly composed of mountains;

the valleys and plains between are well cultivated. The hills are inhabited only by tygers, elephants, and various other animals. The mountains, though uncultivated, are covered with woods and forests, the timber of which is of great utility, and by which means the Cochinchinese procure rose-wood, ebony, iron-wood, sapan, the cinnamon-tree, calambour, sandal wood, and in general all those kinds of woods which are used in India for constructing houses, barks, and furniture; or from which gum, balm, and perfumes, are extracted.

The mountains also produce honey, wax, rattan, and gamboge: likewise ivory, and even gold, in pretty large quantities. Mines of this metal are very abundant. The land, when cultivated, is extremely fertile, and the people reap every year two crops of rice, which is sold almost for nothing. They abound with all the fruits of India, such as ananas, mangoes, citrons, oranges, and with many others peculiar to itself. They have likewise plenty of pepper; together with arec and betel. They have also abundance of cotton; but they are not acquainted with the art of making it into fine cloth. They cultivate mulberry-trees, upon which they feed silk-worms, and manufacture a kind of coarse silk stuffs. Besides these, they have excellent sugar; but are very ill supplied with vegetable productions. They have a quantity of oxen, but no sheep; however, they are rich in poultry. They have also very good fish, but they never eat it.

The Cochinchinese being rather poor, are but little acquainted with the nature of trade, and are totally ignorant of foreign trade, except with the Chinese, and some time ago with the inhabitants of Japan. The articles they get from China are, stannan, copper, white, red and yellow porcelain, tea, medicines, embroidered silk stuffs, paint, paper gilt and coloured, which is used for sacrifices, and a many more. In return for these, they give gold, ivory, sugar-candy, arec, eagle-wood, timber, nutt, pepper, salt-fish, birds' nests, horns of the rhinoceros, gamboge, &c. &c. All business, and contracts of every kind, begin and terminate with presents. Merchandise is paid for in gold, silver, and a kind of coin much used in this country called *caches*. Faifo is the place of greatest trade in Cochinchina, there being about 6000 Chinese, (all rich merchants) who married in the country, and pay tribute to the king. This place contains two churches, one of which belongs to the Portuguese Jesuits, and the other to the Spanish Frans. Cochinchina has several ports, some of which are very convenient.

In respect to the Chinese trade, M. Brunel remarks, that China, of all the Asiatic countries, abounds most in superfluities. A very profitable and extensive trade might be carried on, if the commodities which the place produces were justly considered. There are several rich mines of gold and silver in China; but they are not allowed to be opened, for fear they might occasion too great a circulation of money. The pretended motive for prohibition is, for fear any lives may be lost exploring the mines: of course, brass and copper are the only metals that are current in this place. There are some bankers who carry on a traffic with them, but in business of this kind the Europeans never have any concern. In China, there is no current money, except these *caches* and halfpence; payments are made by weight, and the Chinese are frequently obliged to cut their gold and silver pieces in order to give or receive due weight when they are settling their accounts. They weigh their gold and silver in scales; but for the payment of trifling sums a small steelyard is employed. Seeing that money is not received in China, but by weight, specie of every kind is taken; however, they carefully examine the quality before.

The Chinese weights are the *pic*, the *caty*, and the *tael*. A *pic* is one hundred weight; a *caty* one pound, and a *tael* one ounce.

The name of contains one foot. The Chinese foot ten inches.

Instead of a board, having 10 at certain distance and five at the top is equal to five. When they have the board: where immediately added to error. This operation most facility.

Tea grows on a tree who collect the leaves the new moon when whether it falls in the beginning of March leaves are perfectly ripened: but this is accounted the best, exceedingly dear, for those who collect is gathered about the middle of April. Part to maturity; and required only half the without any distilling for some, and last collected about the of May, when the growth, either in the people who neglect confine themselves which are selected into classes according

The leaves of the pointed, indented beautiful green color of five white petals and is succeeded by containing two or are wrinkled, and root is fibrous, and perisies of the growth well in a rich as in all over China; but the tea is of a better

The manner of when the leaves are the steam of boiling and they are then placed over a mode that shrivelled appearance brought to Europe. kinds of the tea-plant industry, have contented.

There are three kinds which, called common of the mountain; the at the top; and the t in the middle.

The congo is both bohea tea. They are of Nankin, and are The first is known to but oftener under the name is called *bin tea*, and

Green teas do not bohea tea. They are of Nankin, and are The first is known to but oftener under the name is called *bin tea*, and

The name of the Chinese measure is a *cob*, which contains one foot, eight inches, and three lines. The Chinese foot is called *tebi*, and is divided into ten inches.

Instead of a pen the Chinese calculate with a board, having small wooden balls string upon it, at certain distances, two of which are at the top, and five at the bottom. Each of these balls at the top is equal to five, and those at the bottom to one. When they have cast up a sum, they mark it on the board: when a second is cast up, it is immediately added to it, and generally without any error. This operation is performed with the utmost facility.

Tea grows on a small shrub, the leaves of which are collected twice or thrice every year. Those who collect the leaves three times a-year, begin at the new moon which precedes the vernal equinox, whether it falls in the end of February, or the beginning of March. At that period most of the leaves are perfectly green, and hardly fully expanded; but these small and tender leaves are accounted the best of all; they are scarce, and exceedingly dear. The second crop, or the first for those who collect the leaves only twice a-year, is gathered about the end of March, or the beginning of April. Part of the leaves have then attained to maturity; and though the other part have acquired only half their size, they are both collected without any distinction. The third, or the second for some, and last crop, is more abundant, and is collected about the end of April, or the beginning of May, when the leaves have attained to their full growth, either in size or number. There are some people who neglect the two first crops, and who confine themselves entirely to this; the leaves of which are selected with great care, and distributed into classes according to their size and goodness.

The leaves of the tea shrub are oblong, sharp-pointed, indented on the edges, and of a very beautiful green colour. The flower is composed of five white petals disposed in the form of a rose, and is succeeded by a pod of the size of a silberd, containing two or three small green seeds, which are wrinkled, and have a disagreeable taste. Its root is fibrous, and spreads itself out near the superficies of the ground. This shrub grows equally well in a rich as in a poor soil. It is to be found all over China; but there are certain places where the tea is of a better quality than in other.

The manner of preparing tea is very simple: when the leaves are collected, they are exposed to the steam of boiling water, in order to soften them; and they are then spread out upon metal plates, placed over a moderate fire, where they acquire that shrivelled appearance which they have when brought to Europe. In China there are only two kinds of the tea-shrub; but the Chinese, by their industry, have considerably multiplied each of them.

There are three kinds of bohea tea; the first of which, called common bohea, grows at the bottom of the mountain; the second, called congo, grows at the top; and the third, named fouchong, grows in the middle.

The congo is bohea tea better prepared. The fouchong grows on the middle of the mountain, and being sheltered from the injuries of the weather, acquires a greater degree of fineness than the rest.

Green teas do not grow in the same places as the bohea tea. They are brought from the province of Nankin, and are distinguished into three sorts. The first is known under the name of *songlo tea*, but oftener under that of *green toukay*; the second is called *bin tea*, and the third *hayssuen tea*. There

are also some other kinds; but the greater part of them are unknown, or of little importance to foreigners.

There is another kind of tea in China called *poncul-teba*, to which the Europeans give the name of *tea in balls*. It is procured from the province of *Fle-tebien*, or *Tunnan*, and is a composition or mixture of different teas formed into balls. When it is used, a small quantity of it is cut off, and suffered to infuse a much longer time than common tea. It is not agreeable to the taste, but it has a peculiar virtue of curing disorders of the breast, and facilitating digestion.

China ink is a composition of fish-glue, ox-gall, and lamp-black. When in a liquid state, it is poured into small wooden moulds, where it is suffered to harden. The Chinese consider it as an excellent remedy for spitting of blood.

There are two kinds of Galega. One is a thick plant, that is covered with a hard reddish bark: it is whitish in the inside, and has a bitter taste. The other, which is smaller, is reddish both within and without, and has a stronger and more aromatic taste.

They have two kinds of gum, gumbage and gum-lac. Gumbage is a resinous, gummy juice, of a yellow colour, and is used in medicine: the other, gum-lac, is employed in the composition of Spanish wax.

There is a plant called cuscuma, very like ginger. This bears a purple flower; the fruit is like an Indian chestnut, and the seeds, which resemble peas, are fit for eating. They are boiled with meat, and mixed also with rice, &c. This is likewise used in medicine.

Quicksilver is the natural production of several parts of China and the East-Indies. It is found in mountains, white as chalk, and covered with flexible stones. There are two kinds of cinnabar, one natural and the other artificial.

China likewise produces rhubarb: also borax, which is a kind of salt proper for accelerating the effluxion of metals. There is a China root, called *Smilax China*, as large as a child's hand. It is frequently used by the natives instead of rice, and contributes not a little to make them lusty. In the province of Onansi it is used with great success as a medicine. There is a kind of bilious, fermented, and nearly corrupted blood, which is taken from a bag under the belly of a species of roe-buck, and which is distinguished by the appellation of *musk*. *Toutanag* is a white metallic alloy, made of tin and bismuth, hard, compact, and heavy. The mother of pearl comes from Cochinchina and Campaja: they are at first large thick oyster-shells, smooth and silvery within, and of a grey colour on the outside. The Chinese varnish is a composition of a viscous liquor, extracted from different shrubs and small reddish worms.

The above being a COMPLETE History of all the REMARKS, PARTICULARS, &c. relative to Madagascar and the Chinese Trade, as made by ABBE ROCHON and M. BRUNEL, faithfully and accurately translated from their Works, we shall now proceed to give the interesting Journal of LIEUTENANT BIGH'S Voyage in his Majesty's Ship the BOUNTY, for the purpose of conveying the Bread-fruit to the West-Indies; with also the important Narrative of the Mutiny on board the vessel, and the subsequent Voyage of the Captain and the remaining crew in the Ship's boat from TOROA to TIMOR: the whole being united, and written in a more uniform and correct manner than the Public have hitherto witnessed.

A NEW, COMPLETE, AND AUTHENTIC
HISTORY OF
A VOYAGE to the SOUTH-SEAS,

Undertaken by Command of his Majesty, and Performed in 1787, 1788, and 1789,

In His Majesty's Ship the BOUNTY,

UNDER THE COMMAND OF

Lieutenant WILLIAM BLIGH,

For the Purpose of conveying the BREAD-FRUIT-TREE from the SOUTH-SEA-ISLANDS to the WEST-INDIES.

Including the subsequent VOYAGE of Part of the CREW in the SULL'S BOAT, from *Tofoa*, one of the *Friendly Islands*, to *Temor*, a Dutch Settlement in the *East-Indies*.

With a Full and Circumstantial Narrative of the MUTINY on Board the said Ship, and several other Interesting Particulars contained in the JOURNALS and COMMUNICATIONS of Captain BLIGH, Surgeon LEDWARD, Messrs. FRYER, NELSON, &c. &c. more Accurate and Full than any hitherto published.

Which, with the several other VOYAGES and TRAVELS to be included in this Collection, will be Embellished with a Variety of Elegant CHARTS, MAPS, and other COPPER-PLATES, Engraved by Eminent Artists.

INTRODUCTION.

AGREEABLE to the request of several merchants and planters of his majesty's West-India possessions, who were desirous of introducing the bread-fruit-tree into those islands, his majesty was graciously pleased to give his consent, and accordingly a vessel (which was called the *Bounty*) the most fit for the undertaking, was purchased and taken into dock at Deptford, for the purpose of being properly equipped for the intended voyage.

August 16, 1787, the command of the *Bounty* was given to Lieutenant William Bligh. Her burthen was about 215 tons: her length on deck 90 feet 10 inches, and her breadth 24 feet 3 inches. The preparations and fixtures were formed in a manner very commodious, according to a plan proposed by Sir Joseph Banks; however, her masts, being according to the proportion of the navy, they were afterwards shortened at the desire of the captain, who, considering the nature of the voyage, thought them too much for her. Among other alterations the quantity of ballast was lessened; instead of the usual weight (which is 45 tons of iron) the captain ordered only 19 tons to be taken on board; being of opinion that in violent storms of wind vessels are more subject to misfortunes when heavy in their bottom. The captain was also willing to allow for the weight of the stores and provisions.

The ship did not come out of dock till the 3d of September. After this it was found necessary to employ the carpenters and joiners for the ample completion of their business.

The men and officers consisted of one lieutenant, to command, one master, one surgeon, one boatswain and mate, one gunner and mate, one carpenter, mate and crew, two master's mates, two midshipmen, two quarter-master's mates, one sail-maker, one armourer, one corporal, one clerk and steward, and twenty-three seamen; the whole amounting to the number of forty-four. Besides these there were two skilful men appointed to have the management of the plants which were intended to be brought home.

We may look upon this voyage as the first which was designed to reap advantage from the discoveries which had been recently made. The introduction of Bread-fruit into the West-Indies, it was naturally expected, would be of essential benefit to the inhabitants in constituting an article of food; it was therefore intended that the two gardeners, who accompanied them, one of whom, David Nelson, had been employed in a similar manner by Captain Cook in his last voyage, should select as many trees and plants as appeared to them of a proper species and size, to be taken on board the *Bounty*.

Though there have been several accounts of the Bread-fruit, and we shall have occasion to mention it in other succeeding voyages, particularly Cook's and Anson's, yet for the immediate satisfaction and convenience of our readers we shall give an extract from Dampier's account thereof in his Voyage Round the World, performed in 1688.

"The Bread-fruit (as we call it) grows on a large tree as big and high as our largest apple-trees. It has a spreading head, full of branches, and dark leaves. The fruit grows on the boughs like apples: it is as big as a penny-loaf when wheat is at five shillings the bushel: it is of a round shape, and hath a thick tough rind; when the fruit is ripe it is yellow and soft, and the taste is sweet and pleasant. The natives of Guernsey use it for bread. They gather it when full grown, while it is green and hard; then they bake it in an oven, which scorches the rind and makes it black; but they scrape off the outward black crust, and there remains a tender thin crust, and the inside is soft, tender, and white, like the crumb of a penny-loaf. There is neither seed nor stone in the inside, but all is of a pure substance like bread. It must be eaten new, for if it is kept above twenty-four hours it grows harsh and choaky; but it is very pleasant before it is too stale. This fruit lasts in season eight months in the year, during which the natives eat no other sort of food of bread kind. There is plenty of this fruit growing on the rest of the Ladrone Islands."

BOON

Intention to proceed
Make for Spitzbergen
frequent Losses—T
polite Answer—
Anchor—Proceed
agement given
Warm Clothes or
Harbour—Cape
pumped every Ho
Gunner laid up
making for the C
—Anchor in Simo

THEY intended
round Cape
advanced, every e
standing which, th
finish their work b
ably postponed.

On the 4th of O
board, and conduc
the 9th they proce
took in their stora
eighteen months, w
of traffic with the n
anticorbutics were

On the 15th the
not arrive there til
count of the bad we
been obliged to anc
out of it on the 28th
the 23d of Decembe
pulled through the N
down the Channel.
mantop-gallant-fail
yard, but catching
very providentially

They had now a
sea, which continu
Christmas-day, whe
this severe storm th
the spare yards and f
chains: the boats w
with great difficulty
filled with water, a
was damaged, and re

On the 5th of J
Teneriffe, bearing W
leagues distant. Th
25 fathoms of water
wards the W. to the
An officer was in
on the governor, to
putting in to repair
fined by the late stor
refreshments. The
sweater, that every th
they should have.

The captain was r
and several officers,
welcome him on his
moored, Captain Blig
personal respects to h

This being an un
ments, the captain co
reasonable price. Ex
was brought off by
a great surf on the
was given for water.

During their stay: th
quent calms and smal
Every thing being
anchor on the 10th,
the captain's opinion
No. 16.

BOOK I.
CHAPTER I.

Intention to proceed to the Society Islands—Unavoidably postponed—Take in their Stores, &c. at Long Reach—Make for Spithead—Departure from thence—A Seaman providentially saves his Life—A severe Storm—Consequent Losses—The Island of Teneriffe seen—Anchorage near Santa Cruz—Message sent to the Governor—His polite Answer—Capt. Bligh pays his personal Respects to him—Season unfavourable for Refreshments—Weigh Anchor—Proceed to Otaheite—Allowance curtailed—The People informed of the Intent of the Voyage—Encouragement given—Very heavy Rain—Vessel aired, cleaned, &c.—Dolphins, &c. caught—Christian promoted—Warm Clothes ordered—A Seaman punished for Insolence, &c.—A Porpoise caught—Convenience of New Year's Harbour—Cape St. John perceived—Unfavourable Winds—Bad Weather—A violent Storm—Another—Vessel pumped every Hour—They lose Ground—The Cook breaks one of his Ribs—Another dislocates his Shoulder—The Gunner laid up—Birds caught—Wonderfully improved—Live Stock decreased—The Captain determines on making for the Cape of Good Hope—Searches for Tristren du Cunba—Gives it over—Sees the Table Mountain—Anchor in Simon's Bay—Curfory Remarks.

THEY intended to proceed to the Society Islands round Cape Horn, and the season being far advanced, every expedition was used; notwithstanding which, the shipwrights being unable to finish their work before, their sailing was unavoidably postponed.

On the 4th of October, 1787, the pilots came on board, and conducted them down the river. On the 9th they proceeded to Long-Reach, where they took in their stores, arms, &c. also provisions for eighteen months, with several articles for the sake of traffic with the natives of the South-Seas. Several antiseptics were likewise provided.

On the 15th they made for Spithead, but did not arrive there till the 4th of November, on account of the bad weather and cross winds. Having been obliged to anchor at St. Helen's, they worked out of it on the 28th: they failed from Spithead on the 23d of December, and with a fresh easterly wind passed through the Needles, and directed their course down the Channel. A seaman, while furling the maintop-gallant-sail in the afternoon, fell off the yard, but catching hold of the maintop-mast-stay, very providentially saved his life.

They had now a very violent wind, and a heavy sea, which continued till the 29th, except on Christmas-day, when it was moderate. During this severe storm they lost several casks of beer; the spare yards and spars out of the starboard main-chains: the boats were likewise staved, and were with great difficulty secured. The cabin being also filled with water, a great quantity of their bread was damaged, and rendered useless.

On the 5th of January they saw the Island of Teneriffe, bearing W. S. W. half W. about twelve leagues distant. The next day they anchored in 25 fathoms of water, on a coast which inclines towards the W. to the road of Santa-Cruz.

An officer was immediately dispatched to wait on the governor, to inform him of the necessity of putting in to repair the damages which were occasioned by the late storm, and likewise to obtain some refreshments. The governor returned a polite answer, that every thing which the island afforded they should have.

The captain was now visited by the port-master and several officers, whom the governor sent to welcome him on his arrival. When the vessel was moored, Captain Bligh went on shore and paid his personal respects to his excellency.

This being an unfavourable season for refreshments, the captain could only procure wine at any reasonable price. Every thing that was purchased was brought off by the shore-boats, (there being a great surf on the shore) and five shillings a ton was given for water. They had moderate weather during their stay: the winds were N. E. with frequent calms and small rain.

Every thing being now completed, they weighed anchor on the 10th, with a S. E. wind. It being the captain's opinion that unbroken rest contributes

No. 16.

much towards the health and spirits of the crew, he divided his people into three watches, and as it was his intention to proceed to Otaheite without further delay, every body was put upon two-thirds allowance, and the water was ordered to be filtered through drip-stones.

All night they proceeded towards the S. S. W. having the wind at S. E. In the morning they lost sight of land.

The captain now informed his people of the intent of his voyage, and, by way of encouraging them in their duty, promised to promote every one immediately that deserved it.

They had mostly a southerly wind, till the 17th, when it came to the N. E. and continued so till the 25th. The weather now became very wet, and having prepared awnings with hoses, they saved some water. The winds were light and variable, with frequent calms, and the air close and sultry.

The beginning of February brought very heavy rain, by which means all the empty water-casks were nearly filled. The vessel was now aired with fires, and sprinkled with vinegar, and every opportunity taken of washing and drying the people's wet things, and cleaning the ship.

On the 7th the weather became fine, and continued so for some time. They had also a fine S. E. trade-wind. On the 23d the rain returned; by which means they saved about a ton of good water. On the 24th they caught five dolphins, and a shark.

The 2d of March being Sunday, divine service was performed as usual, in the afternoon. Mr. Fletcher Christian, who had the charge of the third watch, was likewise promoted as lieutenant. Nothing material happened for the remainder of the week.

On the 8th they tried for soundings, but could find no bottom with 240 fathoms of line. The boat was sent after a turtle, that was seen floating; when examined, it was found in a putrid state, and several crabs feeding on it. The people were now ordered to put on warm clothes, in order to encounter the cold climate.

On the 10th they had bottom at 23 fathoms; afterwards they could find none with 160 fathoms of line. They stood toward the W. S. W. at night, with a southerly wind, and got into soundings again.

On the 11th a number of large whales were seen, with two spout-holes on the back of the head. One Matthew Quintel, a seaman, received 24 lathes this day, in consequence of a complaint made against him by the waiter, for mutinous and insolent behaviour.

On the 15th they caught a porpoise; on which they made a hearty dinner.

On the 15th their latitude was 43 deg. 6 min. S. and their longitude 58 deg. 42 min. W. They had soundings at 75 fathoms, over a fine greenish sandy bottom. They continued running to the southward, and on the 19th were within 20 leagues of

3 B

Port

Port Desire; however they did not attempt to make for land, as the wind was blowing treth from the N. W. and the weather thick and foggy.

On the 20th the wind suddenly changed to W. S. W. and blew very hard. They now steered to the S. S. E. and discovered the coast of Terra del Fuego, bearing S. E. on the 23d in the morning early. In the forenoon they were off Cape St. Diego. The captain now deemed it prudent, on account of the wind being unfavourable, to go round to the eastward of Staten Land rather than attempt passing through the Straits le Maire. In order to have the wind more regular, and avoid being exposed to the heavy squalls that come off from the land, they did not sail within less than six leagues of the coast.

The captain was almost tempted to put in at New Year's Harbour, which is a very convenient port, as the access thereto is both easy and safe; however the season being far advanced, and the people all in good health, the captain retained his former resolution of proceeding to Otaheite without stopping.

Towards sunset they perceived Cape St. John bearing S. S. E. about six leagues distant: they stood to the southward all night, with W. S. W. and S. W. winds. In the morning Cape St. John bore N. W. about 10 leagues distant.

They had now very unfavourable winds, and disagreeable weather till the 31st, when they were flattered with a N. N. E. wind, which became variable at night, and the next day settled again in the W. and N. W. with the same bad weather as before.

On the 2d of April the wind came round to the S. W. and increased to a very violent gale. The storm was exceedingly great in the morning, and the sea remarkably heavy, attended with severe squalls of hail and sleet, both this and the succeeding day. The vessel, however, lay-to very well under a main and fore-stay-sail.

On the 4th the weather became moderate. A constant fire was now kept in night and day, and one of the watch always attended to dry the people's cloaths. The weather continued favourable till the 9th, when it became almost as bad as before. On the 12th they were obliged to pump the vessel every hour, and the decks being leaky the captain thought it necessary to allot the great cabin (of which little use had been made before) to those people who had uncomfortable births; by such removal the between-decks were less crowded. The hammocks were taken every morning and put in the cabin when the weather was too wet to keep them on deck. The between-decks were continually aired with fires and cleaned. In addition to these misfortunes they found, notwithstanding they exerted their utmost, and kept the most advantageous tacks, they were losing ground.

The next day (13th) the motion of the vessel was so violent that the cook broke one of his ribs by a fall, and another man dislocated his shoulder. The gunner, who had the charge of the watch, was also laid up with the rheumatism; this being the first upon their sick-list since they commenced their voyage.

Birds were exceedingly plenty about the ship, several of which they caught; but as they were all lean, and had a fishy taste, they kept them cooped up, and crammed them with ground corn, which improved them in such a wonderful manner as to render them exceedingly agreeable.

This unexpected supply was very seasonable, as the sheep and poultry were all destroyed by the late storms, and none of the live stock remained except the hogs.

On the 20th they were flattered again with a temporary change in the weather. In the evening the westerly wind returned, and it became as stormy as before.

The captain being now thirty days attempting a

passage to the Society Islands, perceived how vain and impracticable it was to obtain it this way. It was in vain to expect any favourable winds or weather now, as the season was so far advanced; being determined, therefore, to bear away for the Cape of Good Hope, in order to proceed from thence to the eastward round New Holland, on the 22d he ordered the helm to be put a-weather, there being now a strong westerly wind. Seven, besides the gunner, were now confined, chiefly with the rheumatism; the rest of the crew, though much fatigued, were in good health.

The stormy weather still continued, with westerly winds, which convinced the captain of the propriety of his determination.

On the 25th the nearest of the Falkland Islands was about twenty-three leagues, bearing N. 13 deg. W. It was deemed unnecessary and but loss of time to stop at these islands, as their stock of water was sufficient to serve them till they reached the Cape of Good Hope.

On the 9th of May they approached the situation of Tristen da Cunha, their latitude being 37 deg. 7 min. S. and longitude 15 deg. 26 min. W. As it was the captain's wish to make this island, they kept their wind on different tacks during night, that they might be nearly in the same place at daylight in the morning. No land being seen however in the morning, they continued to steer to the eastward, and ran all day, but could not discover the least appearance of land, though the weather was remarkably clear. The captain now changed his course to the northward, and steered N. E. At night the weather became very bad, and Captain Bligh determined to give over his search for Tristen da Cunha (being at this time eastward of the situation ascribed thereto), and resume his course towards the Cape of Good Hope. The weather still continued foul and cloudy.

On the 22d, in the afternoon, they saw Table Mountain, of the Cape of Good Hope. They now steered for False Bay, as at this time of the year it is not deemed safe to ride in Table Bay.

On the 23d they anchored in the outer part, and the next day the vessel was secured in Simon's Bay, which is the inner part of False Bay. When moored, Noah's Ark bore S. 35 deg. E. about three quarters of a mile distant, and the Hospital S. 72 deg. W.

They now saluted the fort, which was returned with an equal complement of guns. Captain Bligh having sent a message to the governor, to apprise him of their arrival, went on shore, and visited a Dutch vessel that was now lying in Table Bay bound for Europe, by whom he sent letters to the Admiralty.

The captain issued immediate directions in order to have their wants supplied. As the vessel was so leaky that they were obliged to pump every hour in their passage from Cape Horn, they proceeded instantly to caulk her; likewise to repair her sails and rigging. They examined also the state of their stores and provisions: the latter, particularly their bread, was very much damaged.

As long as they tarried here, the ship's company were treated with fresh meat, new bread, and vegetables.

Captain Bligh, a short time after his arrival, went over to Cape Town, to wait upon his excellency, M. Vander Graaf, who was so exceedingly polite as to make matters as comfortable and commodious as possible.

Cape Town is very respectable, and well fortified: the greatest attention is paid to military order and discipline. The captain however found provisions much dearer than when he was here before, which was eight years ago.

The captain during his stay, carefully procured what seeds and plants would be of value at Otaheite, and the adjoining islands.

vain
le
wea-
being
pe of
to the
dered
ow a
nner,
ism;
re in

sterly
riority

lands
deg.
ols of
water
Cape

uation
deg.
As it
they
night,
e day-
wever
e call-
er the
r was
ed ha
At
Cap-
ch for
ard of
courte
cather

Table
y now
year it

rt, and
's Bay,
When
about
ospital

turned
h Bligh
approve
lited a
le Bay
to the

n order
was fo
hour in
led in-
ils and
f their
y their

company
and ve-

arrival,
e excel-
edingly
d com-

ortified:
der and
ovisions
, which

rocured
Drahteit,

On

On account of the necessary business to be performed, they were not ready for sea till June the 19th. They were obliged to delay here thirty-eight days, during which, the ship's company received all the advantage that could be derived from the

different refreshments of the place. On the 1st of July they took their leave, and as they ran out of the bay, saluted the platform with thirteen guns, which were returned. They now steered towards the E. S. E.

CHAPTER II.

Variable Winds—Indifferent Weather—A Number of Oceanic Birds—A Storm—A Seaman thrown over the Wheel—St. Paul's Island seen—Description thereof—A remarkable Sugar-loaf Rock—A hot Spring—They approach Van Dieman's Land—See the Rock of Mewstone—Description thereof—Another high Rock—A high Mountain—They attempt to get into Adventure Bay—Disappointed by baffling Winds—Anchor—Weigh, and anchor again in Adventure Bay—Remarks—Capt. Bligh examines the Place for Wood and Water—Haul the Seine without Success—Observations by Mr. Nelson—A Party sent to dig a Saw-pit, and saw Trees—Several taken ill with eating Muscles—Some Fruit Trees, Roots, &c. planted—Signs of the Place being inhabited—Interview with the Natives—Description of them—Discover some Scorpions, Centipedes, &c.—Weigh Anchor—Remarks—Discover some rocky Islands—Death of a Seaman—See the Island Maitea—See Otateite—Visited by Canoes—They anchor.

DURING the first week after they left False Bay the winds were variable, attended with much rain, thunder, and lightning. For the most part, the winds were between the S. and W. blowing very strong. During the southerly wind, they saw a great number of oceanic birds, which immediately disappeared when the wind came from the northward.

On the 30th of July they had a strong westerly wind, and were therefore ludding under the fore-sail and close-reefed maintop-sail. A little after noon the wind blew with so much violence, that before they could get the sails clewed up the vessel was almost driven fore-castle under. When they had taken the sails in, they got the vessel to the wind, and eased her very much by lowering the lower yards, and getting the topgallant-masts upon deck. They now lay to till eight the next morning, and then under a reefed fore-sail they bore away; but the sea ran so very high in the afternoon, that it was very unsafe to stand on: accordingly, they brought to the wind again, and remained lying-to all night. A seaman at the steerage was thrown over the wheel, and very much hurt. About noon the weather became moderate, and they bore away again under the reefed fore-sail; running to the eastward, in order to make the Island of St. Paul.

On the 28th, early in the morning, St. Paul was seen, bearing E. by N. about 15 leagues distant. They ran along the S. side, about a league distant from the shore.

The higher parts of this land were apparently covered with verdure; however, it was supposed to be nothing more than moss, which is very common on the tops of rocky islands. The extent of this island is about five miles from E. to W. and three ditto from N. to S. Towards the E. end there was a very remarkable sugar-loaf rock, which was exceedingly high: it is said that there is good anchorage, in 23 fathoms, abreast of this: the E. point bore S. W. by S. It is also reported that there is good fresh water on this island, and a spring which is so hot as to be capable of boiling fish as well as if there was a fire underneath. The latitude is 38 deg. 39 min. S. There were several whales about the shore.

During the forenoon the weather was tolerably fair, but afterwards they had an unfavourable squall.

The center of St. Paul was in latitude 38 deg. 47 min. S. In longitude 77 deg. 39 min. E.

When about three leagues beyond the island, they proceeded towards E. S. E. and for several days saw a great deal of rock-wood.

The month of August commenced with very bad weather, attended with snow and hail. On the 13th they approached Van Dieman's land: when about 30 leagues distance, there was nothing except a seal seen to indicate the nearness of the coast.

On the 19th, in the afternoon, they saw the

rock of Mewstone. This lies near the S. W. Cape of Van Dieman's Land, bearing N. E. about six leagues distant. They had now a strong wind from the N. W. After they had passed this rock, they were sheltered from a very heavy sea, which ran from the westward. They were abreast the S. cape at night, and saw several fires. They had now a light variable wind.

The rock of Mewstone is very high and flatly. It lies five leagues to the S. E. of the S. W. cape; and in Captain Bligh's opinion all vessels bound this way should endeavour to make this rock. In latitude it is 43 deg. 47 min. To the northward, between this and the main, are several islands; among these is another high rock, resembling the Mewstone, bearing N. by W. from the latter: there is also a high mountain on the main land, N. N. E. from the Mewstone; which, in this direction, appeared notched like a cock's comb, but when seen from the eastward, is then quite round, to all appearance.

On the 20th they attempted to put into Adventure Bay, but found it impracticable, owing to the baffling winds. On the 21st, early in the morning, they anchored in the outer port, and weighed anchor at sun-rise: at noon they anchored again, in a more comfortable situation in the bay, and moored the vessel. Penguin Island bore N. 57 deg. and half E. about two miles distant. Cape Frederick Henry N. 23 deg. E. and the mouth of the Lagoon S. 16 deg. E.

They had for the most part westerly winds, attended with very heavy weather, in their passage from the Cape of Good Hope. They were not, however, molested with fogs, which are very common here in the summer months, as may be seen in our former voyages. It was Capt. Bligh's opinion, after he had passed St. Paul's Island, that there was a westerly current, the vessel being every day to the westward of the reckoning.

As soon as the ship was moored, the captain went in a boat to examine the place, and seek the most convenient spot to wood and water at: this he found to be at the west end of the beach, the surf being less there than at any other part of the bay, though it was very considerable every where. The water, which was a collection from the rains, and in a gully about 60 yards from the beach, was very good. They hauled the seine with very little success, having only taken a few small flounders and some flat-headed fish, which are called foxes. There was no appearance of the place being lately inhabited.

The captain returned on board in the evening, and the next morning dispatched a party on shore to procure wood and water. On account of the surf they were obliged to raft off the wood in bundles to the boat.

On the 23d their wooding and watering business was

was very much impeded by the increase of the surf. Mr. Nelson, the botanist, went to explore the place; he saw a tree, in a very good condition, which was thirty three feet and a half broad and proportionably high. He also picked up a male opossum, which had died, or been recently killed, though there was no appearance of a wound. The tail was fourteen inches, and from that to the ears fourteen inches more. The forest trees were now shedding their bark; several of them were one hundred and fifty feet high. Those which were cut down were quite decayed. There are several other kinds of firm good wood, but neither these nor the forest trees fit for masts.

They had greater success with their hooks and lines than by hauling the seine, having caught several good rock cod on board the vessel. A quantity of eagles were seen, and some herons with beautiful plumages; also a number of parroquets. There were some wild ducks in the lake, and a few oyster-catchers, gulls, &c. about the beach.

The captain now sent a party to dig a saw-pit, and to saw trees into planks, which they were in great want of. During this week the winds were very moderate, but the weather unsettled. On the 29th there was a strong breeze from the S. W. with thunder, lightning and rain. They had now very great success in fishing.

Several of the crew were taken ill by eating mussels; it was the captain's opinion that they had eat too many. They found some spider-crabs, the males of which were good, but the females, which abounded, very bad. They discovered on the trunk of a tree, which was decayed, the signatures of "A. D. 1773." Some of the fruit-trees which the captain brought from the Cape of Good Hope were planted on the east-side of the bay, as Mr. Nelson deemed that the more eligible spot, being freer from wood than any other spot, clear of underwood, and less liable to be consumed by the fires which are made by the natives. They planted three fine young apple-trees, nine vines, six plantain-trees, a number of orange and lemon seed, cherry-stones, plumb, peach, pumpkins, apricot-stones, apple and pear kernels, with two kinds of Indian corn. They likewise planted on a flat near the watering-place, which seemed a promising situation, four potatoes, cabbage-roots, onions, &c.

On the 1st of September they discovered, for the first time, signs of the place being inhabited. On the low land near Cape Frederick Henry they saw some fires, and by the assistance of glasses they discovered the natives at day-light.

Captain Bligh now remained with those parties who were employed in preparing the wood and water, in expectation of a visit from the natives; but, disappointed in his hopes, he was determined on visiting them. They accordingly set out in a boat towards Cape Frederick Henry, where they arrived about eleven o'clock. As it was impossible to land, the boat came to a grapple, where they waited near an hour in hopes of seeing the natives, as they had passed several fires. To the captain's great astonishment, Mr. Nelson's assistant (Brown) came out of the wood. This man had been wandering in search of plants, and told the captain that he had seen some of the natives.

He had met, he said, an old man, a young woman, and about three children. On their first interview, the old man was very much alarmed; but upon Brown's giving him a pen-knife, he became quite easy and familiar. The young woman, however, he sent away, though apparently against her inclination. Brown also saw some wretched wigwams, in which were nothing but a few kangaroo skins spread on the ground, and a basket composed of rushes.

A short time after this they heard the natives voices, and about twenty persons appeared from

the wood. The men went round to some rocks, where the boat could get nearer to the shore: the women remained behind. The captain endeavoured to approach these rocks, but could not come nearer to them than about twenty yards; he was consequently obliged to make a bundle of what presents he intended for them, and throw it to shore. In the mean time these people made a great noise, holding their arms over their heads: they spoke in such a quick manner, that not a word they uttered could be distinguished. The captain showed them the presents before he tied them up, but they would not untie the bundle till they thought the captain was going away. When, therefore, the boat made a motion of departure, they opened the parcel, and taking out the different articles, distributed them about, and placed them on their heads. The captain now returned to them, upon which they instantly dropped the things, not seeming to take any notice of what was given them. Some more beads and nails were thrown on shore in the same manner: the captain made signs to them to come to his vessel, while they were making signs to him to land: but as this was impracticable, the captain left them, entertaining hopes of seeing them again at the watering-place.

The colour of these natives was a dull black, and the skin of their shoulders and breast was scarified. They were rather short, and painted black, so that they appeared all alike footy. One among them was painted with red ocher: they had a very quick sight, and their agility was surprising. When the presents were thrown to them, they caught them with wonderful dexterity: they ran with great facility over the rocks. They were quite naked, and while they were discoursing at their heels, with their knees close into their arm-pits.

The captain, in his return to the vessel, landed at the point of the harbour, near Penguin Island.

Several scorpions, centipedes, and a number of black ants, (about an inch long) were found among the wood that they had cut.

On the 2d they were making preparations for sailing the next day; but were prevented on the 3d by a calm. The captain was in great hopes of seeing some of the natives again, as they behaved so friendly and familiar on their first interview: but they never repeated their visit, though they still continued to keep fires upon the low land to the northward during night.

On the 4th they weighed anchor, and sailed out of Adventure Bay with a pleasant breeze at N. W. At 12 o'clock the southernmost parts of Maui's Isles bore N. 52 deg. E. about five leagues distant. Penguin Island S. 86 deg. W. and Cape Frederick Henry N. 65 deg. W. They had now soundings at 57 fathoms, over a fine sandy bottom.

Adventure Bay is a very safe and convenient place for any number of vessels to take in wood and water during the summer months; but as the southerly winds are very strong in winter, it is exceedingly troublesome to land, particularly on account of the surf which is in all parts of the shore. The soundings are very regular: there are some patches of weed near the W. shore; but there being depths from five to nine fathoms, there is not the least danger.

As soon as they were clear of the land they steered towards E. S. E. in order to pass to the southward of New Zealand, where the captain was in hopes of meeting with constant westerly winds; contrary, however, to his expectations the winds were variable, in general blowing strongly from the eastward. The weather was likewise foul and misty.

On the 14th they altered their course and steered to the northward of east. They frequently saw rockweed, which, it was supposed, was drifted from New Zealand. Being exposed to a long swell which

which came from rougher.

On the 19th cluster of small about four leagues indication of it was at N. E. the islands nearer to the southward were so foul, that extent appeared from E. to W. S. Their number there were some but no verdure these is the largest covered at seven tain was ten miles and the eastern 75 fathoms, over run six leagues from bottom 104 fathom sand. These islands S. In longitude some penguins, and forked tail, when

On the 21st the trosses, and some bottom with 230 f On the 2d of Octo ber of small blubber some of them were mined, but no dit these and the comm In the night the fevered over with lu quantities of these

On the 3d they Being now well to islands, they saw some of oceanic birds. which the crew had done before.

On the 9th James of a seeming good of an asthmatic com ill on his arrival at bed and thought of which he was bled a hollow cough ensued

On the 13th they day some fish. Fro light variable winds, day they had a good

From this to the 25 Early in the morning bearing S. W. by W distant, in latitude 112 deg. 24 min. E. high, and its greatest The natives chiefly in but little support in deep from the top do close in to the north received a few habitations remarkably neat, on a situated in a grove of They were followe

They weigh Anchor, and with a Present—The House and Family—A Captain—An Alleea Several Particulars r Captain visits Tinab, some late Transactions nished before the Nati —A Wrestling Match No. 17.

which came from the N. E. they found the sea much rougher.

On the 19th, about break of day, they saw a cluster of small rocky islands, bearing E. by N. about four leagues distant. There was not the least indication of the nearness of land. As the wind was at N. E. they could not possibly approach these islands nearer than three leagues, while passing to the southward of them. The weather was likewise so foul, that they had not a distinct view. Their extent appeared to be about three miles and a half, from E. to W. and about half a league from N. to S.

Their number, great and small, were thirteen: there were some white spots like patches of snow, but no verdure to be seen. The westernmost of these is the largest: they are high enough to be discovered at seven leagues distance. When the captain was ten miles distant from the nearest of them, and the easternmost bore N. he found bottom at 75 fathoms, over a fine white sand. When they had run six leagues further to the E. S. E. they found bottom 104 fathoms, over a fine brimstone-coloured sand. These islands are in latitude 47 deg. 44 min. S. In longitude 179 deg. 7 min. E. They saw some penguins, and a white kind of gull with a forked tail, when in sight of these islands.

On the 21st they saw a seal, a quantity of albatrosses, and some rock-weed. They could find no bottom with 230 fathoms of line.

On the 2d of October it was quite calm. A number of small blubbers were seen about the vessel; some of them were taken up in a bucket and examined, but no difference could be seen between these and the common blubbers in the West-Indies. In the night the sea frequently appeared to be covered over with luminous spots, occasioned by the quantities of these blubbers.

On the 3d they steered more to the northward. Being now well to the eastward of the Society Islands, they saw some whales, a seal, and a number of oceanic birds. Several albatrosses were caught, which the crew fattened in the manner they had done before.

On the 9th James Valentine, a very able seaman, of a seeming good constitution, died in the night of an asthmatic complaint. He was taken slightly ill on his arrival at Adventure Bay, where he was bled and thought out of all danger: the arm in which he was bled afterwards became inflamed, a hollow cough ensued, and continued till his death.

On the 13th they saw several birds, and the next day some fish. From this to the 19th they had light variable winds, with intervening calms. This day they had a good trade wind.

From this to the 25th nothing material occurred. Early in the morning they saw the island Mairea, bearing S. W. by W. quarter W. about six miles distant, in latitude 17 deg. 50 min. S. longitude 112 deg. 24 min. E. This island is round and high, and its greatest extent is about three miles. The natives chiefly inhabit the S. side, as they find but little support in the north side, which is quite steep from the top down to the sea. While steering close in to the northward of the E. end, they perceived a few habitations, particularly a house remarkably neat, on a small eminence, delightfully situated in a grove of cocoa-nut trees.

They were followed by about a dozen natives

along shore, who were holding up to view large pieces of cloth; but the surf on the shore being very high, it was impossible to have any communication with them. There are two very remarkable rocks near the E. end, and a reef which runs about half a league off to the eastward.

They now proceeded to the westward, and about six in the evening they saw Otaheite, bearing W. quarter S. The captain desired the surgeon to examine all the men previous to their arrival at Otaheite, where, as they intended to stay some time, it was naturally expected that the sailors would at intervals be connected with the female natives. The surgeon reported them to be all unblemished, and free from any venereal complaint.

Having run about 25 leagues from Maitea, they brought-to till day-light on the 26th; when they discovered Point Venus, bearing S. W. by W. about four leagues distant. On their approach they were visited by a great number of canoes. As soon as they were satisfied in some enquiries which they thought proper to make, they assembled in vast numbers, notwithstanding every effort was used to prevent it, for they not only incommoded the men, but were working the vessel in, and the deck was so full in about a quarter of an hour that the captain could scarcely find his own people. As they were prevented, by light variable winds, from finding a commodious berth for the vessel, they were obliged in the forenoon to anchor in the outer part of Matavai Bay, in 13 fathoms.

As soon as they were anchored the number of visitors increased, but no person of any consequence as yet appeared. There were several inferior chiefs, who made the captain a present of some hogs, and received some presents in return. Bread-fruit was now very scarce, but they were supplied with great abundance of cocoa-nuts.

Among the several enquiries which these natives made relative to their former acquaintance, they were particularly curious about the death of Capt. Cook. They likewise asked after Sir Joseph Banks. They understood that Capt. Cook was dead, but were ignorant by what means; and the ship's company were particularly commanded by Capt. Bligh not to mention, nor even hint at the circumstances. It seems they were informed of Capt. Cook's death by a vessel which had been there, some said about four months ago, and others three months; and which remained at Otaheite for about one month. They said that Lieut. Watts, who had been there before in the Resolution with Capt. Cook, was in this vessel.

Capt. Bligh was informed by these people, that Omai, and both the New Zealand boys that had been left with him, were dead. They all agreed they had a natural death. Otoo, the chief of Matavai, was absent at another part of the island. A message was dispatched to him, to inform him of the Bounty's arrival. The natives appeared exceedingly good-humoured and friendly, nor did they betray the least inclination to dishonesty.

The captain was so exceedingly crowded, that he was obliged to postpone the removal of the ship till the next day, being unwilling to affront his visitors by compelling them to retire before they were inclined. They continued all day with the captain on board.

CHAPTER III.

They weigh Anchor, and moor in a more convenient Place—Visited by several Chiefs—Two Messengers from Otoo with a Present—The Vessels amply supplied—The Captain goes on shore with the Chief of Matavai—Visits the House and Family—A polite Reception—Kindness of the Women, &c.—They take an affectionate Leave of the Captain—An Altercation on board—Oreepyab in a Rage at finding one of his Countrymen attempting to thieve—Several Particulars relative to the Natives, Otoo, &c.—Presents, &c.—Provisions brought to the Vessel—The Captain visits Tinab, who was Otoo—Remarks—The Buoy of the best Bower Anchor taken away—Account of some late Transactions—A Concert—Christian sent to erect a Tent—Peculiar Ceremonies—The Boat-keeper punished before the Natives—Petty Thefts—Plants collected—A painted Head exhibited—A Company of Strollers—A Wrestling Match, &c. &c.

EARLY in the morning, on the 27th, before the natives had time to repeat their visit, they weighed anchor and worked further into the bay, having found a more commodious birth within a mile's distance from the shore: they re-anchored in seven fathoms water; Point Venus bearing N. 16 deg. E. the W. point of Onetree Hill, S. W. by S. and the point of the reef, N. 37 deg. W.

They were this day visited by several chiefs of consequence, who expressed great happiness on seeing Captain Bligh, particularly Otow, the father of Otow, and his brother Oreepyah; likewise another chief of Matavai, whose name was Poeno. The captain gave presents to all these chiefs.

Two messengers now arrived from Otow to acquaint the captain that this chief was making the utmost expedition to pay him a visit. He also sent the captain, by these messengers, a present of a small pig and a young plantain-tree. By means of all these presents, and what was otherwise procured, the vessel was so well stocked that every person had as much as he could possibly make use of.

When the vessel was moored the captain went on shore with Poeno, the chief of Matavai, followed by several of the natives. The chief conducted Captain Bligh to the place where they had fixed their tents in 1777, requesting he would now make the same use of the ground. They now crossed over the beach and entered a most delightful walk shaded with bread fruit-trees, which led to the chief's house. Here was Poeno's wife and his sister-in-law, who were at work staining a piece of cloth red. They behaved very polite to the captain, requesting he would sit down on a mat (which was immediately spread for that purpose) and partake of some refreshments, which were accordingly prepared. Several strangers also attended, to congratulate the captain on his arrival; they behaved with the greatest politeness and good-nature. The multitude of natives which assembled round the house was so great that the captain shortly became exceedingly incommoded by the consequent heat: this being perceived they accordingly drew back and pressed as little as possible. Among the throng the captain perceived a man who had lost his arm, just above the elbow; this amputation appeared to have been performed with great skill, as the stump seemed admirably covered, and the cure quite perfect.

The captain during his stay in the chief's house made several enquiries, but received very unsatisfactory answers to all his questions. After staying about an hour the captain rose in order to take his leave, but was detained by the women, who very politely came to him with a mat and a fine piece of cloth, in which they dressed him after their own fashion. Thus attired, the mistress of the house and her sister took him each by the hand, and accompanied him as far as the water-side; here they took an affectionate leave of him, promising they would shortly return his visit.

This island was very much improved since the captain was here before. It was now enriched with shaddocks, which fruit he introduced in it: they had also young goats, capsicoms, pumpkins, &c. which, with other articles, they offered for sale.

On the captain's return to the vessel there was an altercation on board, occasioned by one of the natives attempting to steal a tin pot. Oreepyah, when informed of the cause, was exceedingly enraged, and so provoked with the thief, that doubtless he would have killed him had he not fortunately made his escape. He obliged all the natives to leave the vessel, and begged the captain, when another thief was detected, that he would instantly order him to be tied up and give him a due quantity of lashes.

The picture of Captain Cook had been brought on board by a man in the forenoon to have it repaired, the frame thereof being broken, and the picture damaged in the back ground. This picture

had been left with Otow in 1777, who was desired, whenever any English came, to show it to the captain, and it would be acknowledged as a token of great friendship and respect.

In the afternoon the captain was visited by Whydooah, who was Otow's youngest brother. This man, notwithstanding his youth, seemed quite stupified by his immoderate use of the yava. All the male visitors left the vessel about sun-set.

Early on the 28th the captain received word that Otow was arrived; upon this he immediately dispatched a boat, with Mr. Christian, to conduct him to the vessel. He came, attended by great numbers, and was very happy at seeing the captain; Otow now introduced his wife to the captain, and, as their kissing consists of joining noses instead of lips, Captain Bligh saluted her after the Otaheite fashion. Otow had changed his name to Tinah, as the name of Otow, with the title of Earee Rahe, had, according to the custom of their country, devolved to his eldest son, who as yet was not of age. At the request of Tinah, the captain and he exchanged names; this being a token of friendship among the chiefs.

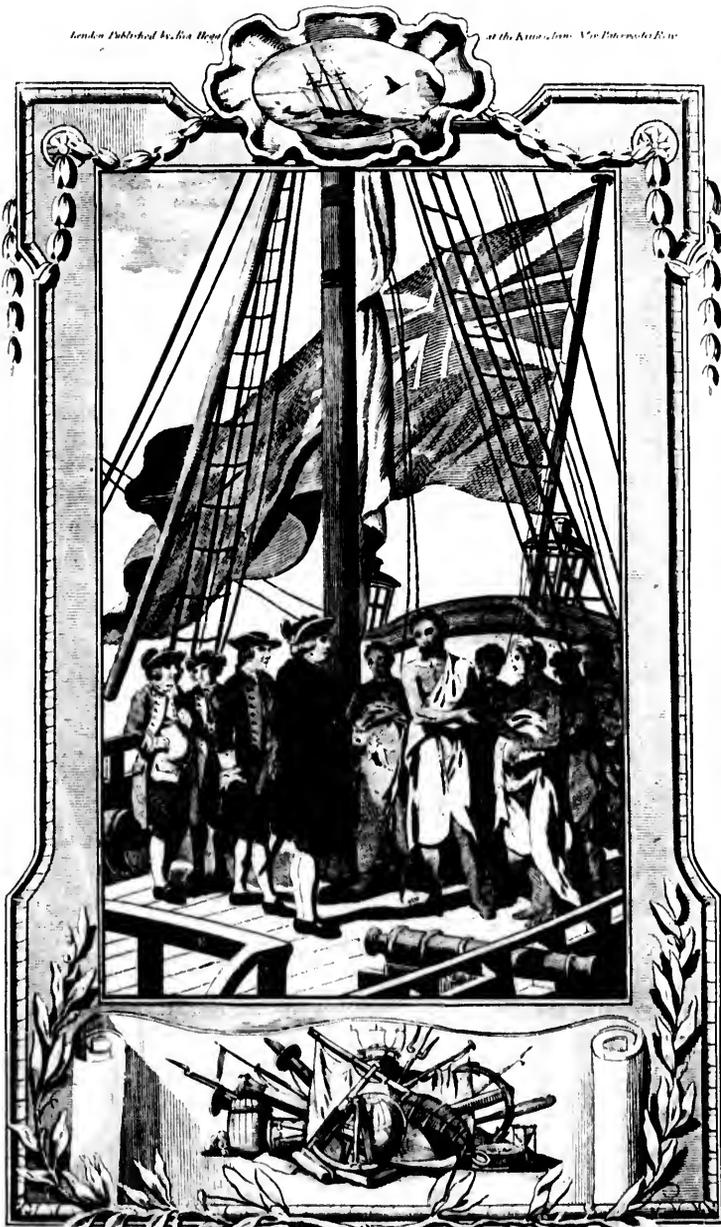
Tinah's wife was called Iddeah; she had a companion, who was dressed with a large quantity of cloth in the form of a hoop. Upon their introduction to the captain, this was taken off and presented to him, with some bread-fruit, a large hog, &c.

Captain Bligh now took his visitors into the cabin, and in return for their kindness gave them some hatchets, files, small adzes, gimblets, saws, looking-glasses, two shirts, red feathers, &c. &c. He gave Iddeah some ear-rings, necklaces, beads, &c. and as she expressed an inclination for iron, two quantities thereof were made out for her and her husband. They seemed extremely well satisfied with their present, and much conversation passed with one another concerning them. In order to prove their high satisfaction with the reception they met, they were determined on spending the whole day with the captain, requesting he would show them the vessel, and the cabin wherein he slept. The captain immediately indulged them in their wishes, though contrary to his own inclination; for, according to his apprehensions, they took a fancy to so many things that they got nearly double the presents that were intended them. Some of the great guns were also fired at the request of Tinah; the natives were very much surprised at the great distance which the shot fell at, and expressed their admiration with loud shouts.

Besides Tinah and Iddeah his wife, several other chiefs dined with the captain, particularly Otow, Tinah's father, and two of his brothers, Oreepyah and Whydooah, &c. &c. Tinah is about thirty-five years of age, near if not more than six feet four inches in height, and proportionably stout. His wife, Iddeah, is likewise taller than the generality of women at Otaheite; she was exceedingly pleasant, and possessed of a fine animated countenance. Tinah, during dinner, had one of his attendants with him in order to feed him; this being customary among superior chiefs. The women are not allowed to eat in the presence of the men; Iddeah therefore dined with some of her companions in private. They all eat very hearty, and seemed to relish their English entertainment.

In order to prevent any kind of disturbance while procuring the provisions necessary for the vessel, Mr. Peckover, the gunner, was appointed by the captain to make whatever bargains seemed the best with the natives. Matters being thus arranged, provisions were procured in great plenty. Some hogs were bought which weighed 200lb. several were purchased for salting. They likewise purchased several goats at a very easy rate.

As the English and natives were very intimate, there was scarce a man on board the vessel that was not chosen by some one or other as a friend. Several



Chief and other Natives of Otaheite.
visited Capt. Cook in his second Voyage to the South Sea.

at
 f-
 m-
 n-
 ;
 d,
 of
 ite
 as
 ue,
 le-
 ge.
 ex-
 hip
 om-
 of
 duc-
 nt
 .
 the
 hem
 aw,
 &c.
 eads,
 iron,
 and
 ushed
 affed
 er to
 they
 hole
 shew
 (sept.
 their
 stion;
 ook a
 ouble
 of the
 anah:
 great
 their
 other
 Dow,
 pyah
 nity-
 four
 His
 rality
 plea-
 dance,
 dants
 mary
 owed
 before
 ivare,
 their
 bance
 r the
 inted
 emed
 as ar-
 lenty.
 o. fe-
 scwife
 mate,
 r was
 several
 of

of the chiefs were there was no po crew, particularly the likeness of some with the captain as he eat four times of a very hearty dinner secure the presents and on which he had quelled Captain Blum; but the captain in his cabin, which use, Tinah was per-

The captain had seek for plants; given to all the com voyage a secret from be tempted to enhance plants, and occasion his assistant, on the the greatest hopes of They met with two planted by Nelson which were not as yet

The next day, being Tinah's visit, with him with his wife, related to him, in a mile to the eastward had a numerous train him: these people, possible; for though as still they carefully attending good-natured

The captain made distributed various chiefs. He likewise children who were in sioned much droll art of near 12 years of age in arms, in order to receive much diversion, and the things he brought

The captain likewise ten of his, Moannah consequence in the captain thought it his The captain made them deeming the situation planted some cucumbers These chiefs were informed should be sown there, which they seemed very they were made to undress grow into trees, and produce

The captain returned accompanied by Moannah went back to Poceno's, While the captain was came from Tinah to him at his brother O near the beach. The captain with his request, and people here, who, on him to sit down by Tinah now pressing forward, fine piece of cloth, about ditto long, was spread upon Tinah brought out another put over the captain's feet according to the manner dressed. There were nine of 100 lb. each, and a quantity and cocoa-nuts, placed sent: after this he was end to the other of the ground; during which with loud shouts of joy over, Tinah requested things that were given

of the chiefs were very much disappointed that there was no portrait-painter among the ship's crew, particularly Tinah, who was very anxious for the likeness of some of his family. Tinah continued with the captain all the afternoon; during which he eat four times of roast pork, though he had made a very hearty dinner. Being at a great loss how to secure the presents which the captain had given him, and on which he had placed no little value, he requested Captain Bligh would put them up safe for him; but the captain giving him a key of a locker in his cabin, which he resigned to him for his own use, Tinah was perfectly easy.

The captain had sent Meil, Nelson and Brown to seek for plants; previous to this strict orders were given to all the company to keep the object of this voyage a secret from the natives, for fear they might be tempted to enhance the value of the bread-fruit plants, and occasion other difficulties. Nelson and his assistant, on their return, reported that they had the greatest hopes of being successful in their mission. They met with two fine maddock trees, which were planted by Nelson in 1777: they were full of fruit, which were not as yet ripe.

The next day, being the 29th, the captain returned Tinah's visit, which was expected. He found him with his wife, and three children who were related to him, in a small shed about a quarter of a mile to the eastward of Matawai Point. The captain had a numerous train, for every one he met followed him: these people, however, were as polite as possible; for though anxious to satisfy their curiosity, still they carefully avoided pressing, and were exceedingly good-natured.

The captain made Tinah another present, and distributed various little articles among the other chiefs. He likewise gave beads to several little children who were in arms: this, however, occasioned much droll artifice, as several boys and girls of near 12 years of age were brought to the captain in arms, in order to receive his favours, which created much diversion, and the captain soon got rid of all the things he brought on shore.

The captain likewise visited Poeno, and a relation of his, Moannah; these being men of great consequence in the island, and with whom the captain thought it his interest to be on good terms. The captain made them some valuable presents, and denominated the situation a very good one for a garden, planted some cucumber, fennel, melon seeds, &c. These chiefs were informed, that several other seeds should be sown there, for their future service; with which they seemed very much pleased, especially as they were made to understand that these seeds would grow into trees, and produce them fruit.

The captain returned to the vessel to dinner, accompanied by Moannah. In the afternoon they went back to Poeno's, and planted some more seeds. While the captain was thus employed, an invitation came from Tinah to him, requesting he would meet him at his brother Oreepyah's house, which was near the beach. The captain immediately complied with his request, and found a great concourse of people here, who, on his entrance, made way for him to sit down by Tinah. The crowd, which was now pressing forward, was desired to retire, and a fine piece of cloth, about two yards wide, and forty ditto long, was spread upon the ground, while Oreepyah brought out another piece of cloth, which he put over the captain's shoulders and round his waist, according to the manner in which the chiefs are dressed. There were now two large hogs, upwards of 200 lb. each, and a quantity of baked bread-fruit and cocoa-nuts, placed before the captain as a present: after this he was requested to walk from one end to the other of the cloth, which was spread on the ground; during which they hailed him a friend with loud shouts of joy. When this ceremony was over, Tinah requested the captain would send the things that were given him on board, and which

completely filled the boat. Capt. Bligh, therefore, waited till she came back from the vessel, in order to bring the chiefs on board with him, and make them a return for their politeness. As soon, therefore, as they entered the ship, the captain presented Tinah with gifts superior to any that were yet made, and which Tinah distributed among the other chiefs, not being himself sole proprietor of what had been given to the captain, several having joined in furnishing those articles which composed their present, particularly Oreepyah, Moannah, and Poeno. Tinah, who undertook the division of the things, took good care of himself; notwithstanding, every one was so well pleased with his distribution, that there was not the least murmur heard.

On the 30th Tinah, and his lady Iddeah, visited the captain again on board. The captain knowing that they preferred pork to tea, ordered large dishes of roast and boiled pork for their breakfast; and large dishes were indeed necessary, as their attendants were very numerous.

The arrival of the Bounty being now publicly known, the captain had more visitors to-day than ever. Several strangers from the most remote parts of the country came to pay their respects. It being therefore necessary, for the sake of furnishing additional presents, to cut some hooks and thimbles out of the blocks, the captain thought proper during this operation to clear the vessel of all but the chiefs and their attendants. A presumptuous fellow, however, in opposition to these orders, attacked the centinel: upon which the captain pretended to be very angry, that they might see the dangerous consequence of opposing a man on his duty. The offender made his escape, while the rest appeared very sorry for the cause, and alarmed at the captain's assumed rage.

The captain was visited to-day by two chiefs of great consequence, Earees of the districts of Iteeah and Atahhooroo, and whose names were Marremar and Poohaitah Otee his son. Tinah appeared very jealous during the captain's attention to these Earees. They took their leave about sunset, and were conveyed to shore by one of the ship's boats, which is looked upon as a peculiar favour, and always preferred to any of their own canoes. There was a race rowed between their five-oared cutter and one of their double canoes with four paddles, at the request of these chiefs. The exertions on both sides were very great, but the cutter was the winner. While she was returning to the vessel, Oreepyah stopped and detained her till a large piece of cloth which he sent for was brought, and which he himself fastened to the boat-hook, to be borne as a trophy of their victory.

On the 31st Tinah sent Moannah on board the Bounty, to inform the captain that he was afraid to see him, as he knew there were some things stolen from the vessel, which he had sent his people in search of, in hopes to recover them. The captain, however, sent a boat with a kind invitation to Tinah and his friends to come on board, being unwilling that any misdemeanor of others should cause a coolness between them. Before this the captain apprehended that there was something wrong, for they were not visited as before by any canoes; and on diligently examining the vessel, they discovered that the buoy of the best bower anchor was stolen. Tinah accepted the captain's invitation, and returned in the boat with several of his friends. They were as free as ever with the captain, and under no kind of apprehensions. Oreepyah had gone in search of the buoy, which prevented him from going with the captain to Oparre this morning, as they had previously agreed upon. At noon, however, the captain resolved upon repairing to Oparre, under pretence of visiting Oroo, son of Tinah, who was the Earee Rahie, and lived with the rest of Tinah's children at Oparre; but, in fact, the captain was induced to this excursion for the sake of exploring the

the place, and seeing if Nelson could possibly procure any plants there. The captain took with him a very handsome present for young Otoo, as he understood him to be a person of the highest rank in the island. Moannah was to have been of the party, but he thought it advisable to stay behind and prevent his countrymen from doing any more mischief. The captain was only accompanied by Tinah, Iddeah, and Poeno.

When they had sailed about half an hour they arrived at Oparre, which is a district next to the westward of Matavai. During this time Tinah entertained the captain with an account of the different circumstances since he was with them before. He told him that about five years after Captain Cook's departure, the inhabitants of the island Eimes, joined with those of Attahooras (a district of Otaheite), made a descent on Oparre: that he and several of his people, having made a fruitless resistance, were obliged to take refuge in the mountains, while the enemy secured their property, destroying that which they could not take away. At this time some of the cattle and sheep which had been left them by Captain Cook were killed and eaten, and the rest removed to Eimes. The cows, he added, had by this time produced eight calves, and the ewes ten young ones. The ducks and geese had likewise increased, but the turkeys and peacocks did not breed at all. The enemy had likewise destroyed some very fine habitations, and slight sheds which were in this part of Otaheite, in 1777,* and plundered them of several large canoes.

In the course of this conversation, Tinah understanding that the captain intended to visit some of the neighbouring islands, endeavoured to dissuade him from his purpose, assuring him, that if he went further, every thing would be stolen from him, but if he remained in Matavai, he should be supplied plentifully with every thing that he wanted, declaring that they were all his friends, and friends to King George. Captain Bligh then told him that the valuable presents which he had delivered to him were from the King; upon which Tinah declared that he would send something in return, and while enumerating the different articles which he intended to collect for his Majesty, he happened to mention the bread-fruit: the captain took this favourable opportunity of slightly hinting that bread-fruit, he knew, would be the most acceptable. Tinah expressed great joy in being able to send what would be acceptable, and promised that a quantity of bread-fruit trees should be put on board for King George.

When they arrived at Oparre they were surrounded by a great throng of natives. The captain expecting to have met Oreepyah there, enquired for him, but was informed that he had not as yet returned from seeking the things which were stolen. The party, however, went under a shed belonging to Oreepyah, to wait for him, and in a short time he arrived, having brought with him one of the hoops of the bouy, and an iron scraper. The captain returned him his sincere thanks for the great trouble he had taken, assuring him he was perfectly satisfied, for it was still understood that Captain Bligh was offended at the theft. Some short time after, they took leave of Oreepyah, and proceeded on their visit to young Otoo.

After they had walked a few minutes, the captain was abruptly stopped by Tinah, who informed him

* As this subject will be repeated more fully in Captain Cook's voyage, we have therefore only slightly touched upon the considerable changes which have happened since that time. Our readers will have a more copious and entertaining account of the several districts of Otaheite in the interesting narration of Captain Cook's, which, as it must be occasionally referred to, will be found very necessary to compare with this.

that no person could be admitted into the presence of his son who was covered above the shoulders; as an example, he took off his own upper garments, requesting the captain to acquiesce with the ceremony. Captain Bligh readily complied, assuring him he had no objection to pay him as much homage as he would his own king; taking therefore off his hat, Tinah threw a piece of cloth round his shoulders, and they proceeded. Having now gone a mile further towards the hills, through an agreeable shade of bread-fruit trees, they stopped at the side of a small serpentine river, where they were within view of a house, on the opposite side, about fifty yards distance. The captain was now desired by Tinah to address his son by the title of Too Earee Rahie. Notice being given of their arrival, the young king was brought out on an inan's shoulders from the house, clothed in a fine piece of cloth, and two of Tinah's children were brought in the same manner. The captain, according to his instructions, addressed him by his title, declaring that he was his friend, that he hated thieves, and that he was from Britannia. The presents which had been brought by the captain was divided into three parts, one of which was delivered to a messenger who attended for that purpose, for the Earee Rahie, with the ceremonious declaration mentioned above. The two other parts were in the same manner presented to the two children.

Captain Bligh wanted to go over the river to the young king, (as in his present station he could not see him distinctly), but this was contrary to their custom. He returned therefore with Tinah to Oreepyah's house.

The Too Earee Rahie that thus maintained so much state, was only six years old. Tinah had four children by his wife. The two others which were brought out with the Earee Rahie, were a girl and a boy, their names Terrance Oroah and Terrecapanooia. The fourth, which was an infant girl, called Tahanydooah, the captain did not see.

As soon as they had reached the place where Tinah had first stopped the captain to apprise him of the manner in which it was necessary he should appear before his son, he now stopped him again, and taking off the cloth which he had thrown over his shoulders, requested he would put on his hat and be covered as before.

The captain having expressed a desire to see more of the country, Tinah conducted him back by another way. Having entered the boundary of the king's land, which was signified by the trunk of a tree, carved in a very rude manner, Tinah desired the captain again to take off his hat, while the rest of the company uncovered their shoulders, this being a mark of respect due to the king, rigidly observed by all who walk on this path.

Having reached a house which belonged to Tinah, they stopped here to rest themselves, during which time they were entertained by a concert of one drum and three flutes, and singing by four men. After the entertainment, the captain gave some presents to the performers, and they now repaired to a house belonging to Oreepyah, to whom the captain paid his compliments, as it was expected, these people being very punctilious in returning visits.

Tinah now made the captain a present of a fine large hog, and some cocoa nuts, after which he introduced an uncle of his to him, who was almost blind with age, and much tattooed; his name was Mowworoah: the captain made this chief a present, and then Tinah, Poeno, Oreepyah and their wives repaired to his boat, while a great number of people assembled on the beach to see them go off. By the desire of Tinah, the captain fired a pocket pistol, which threw the gazing crowd into a great fright; but when they saw no harm was done, they began to shout and make a great noise.

Among the captain's own people who attended him in this expedition was Nelson, whom he brought

with him on purpose could. He had no seek after plants, natives who were still he was convinced this place abounded at Matavai.

They returned to the place which time moored again in sight of Matavai. Tinah and the captain, with several English vessels, a large ship, and a small boat, wished might be seen.

Having fixed a vessel nearer the shore, the captain moored again in sight of Matavai.

This day Captain Bligh returned to the place which time moored again in sight of Matavai. Tinah and the captain, with several English vessels, a large ship, and a small boat, wished might be seen.

A grand entertainment was given by Tinah, dancing by three called Heiva. The captain returned to the place which time moored again in sight of Matavai.

On the 2d of November, the captain of the party to erect a tent, was informed that the natives, Moannah, and a girl, had fixed a boundary, and were to enter without having been given notice.

The tents were entirely of mats, and were to be erected in places which were to be marked throughout, that they were conferring a favour on the party herein appointed. The natives were nine persons, of whom one (Mr. Brown) thought, on account of an obligation, was to be taken care of.

This day the captain, who dined with the natives, was personally obliged to them, as the attention had been dismissed, and to this indulgence, he was obliged to feed himself. He was sometimes subject to a cold, but when they called Oamoo, they limited time.

The captain was accompanied by him with the party of the Arcey, made the principal made by the side of a the captain had frequent occasion, how him, which was drag as they arrived at the quantity of bread-fruit ready dressed, and a man who sat at the principal Arcey: he who attended Tinah, oration composed of continued for the space being previously tin was now desired while five men, one and the rest a bark

* The ceremony of explained in our future No. 17.

with him on purpose of making what discoveries he could. He had not however much opportunity to seek after plants, on account of the multitude of natives who were continually pressing forwards, but still he was convinced by the little he had seen, that this place abounded equally as much in plants as at Matavai.

They returned to the ship in about an hour, during which time much conversation passed between Tinah and the captain respecting the magnitude of English vessels, and the various articles which Tinah wished might be sent to Otaheite in one of these large ships.

Having fixed a tent on Point Venus, they moored the vessel nearer thereto on the 1st of November, and moored again in six fathoms, the point bearing N. N. E.

This day Captain Bligh had Tinah and several chiefs to dinner: after which he went on shore with his company, and made a visit to Tinah's father and son. The captain likewise visited the garden which he had made near Poeno's house, and found every thing had been taken care of according to his directions.

A grand entertainment was now prepared for the captain by Tinah, which consisted of singing and dancing by three men and a young girl: it was called Heiva. When the performance was over, Capt. Bligh returned to his vessel.

On the 2d of November, as soon as it was daylight, the captain dispatched Mr. Christian with a party to erect a tent. Afterwards, attended by Tinah, Moannah, and Poeno, he went himself and fixed a boundary, within which none of the natives were to enter without permission, due notice thereof having been given to them by the chiefs. These tents were entirely devoted for the reception of the plants which were to be lodged therein. The captain had acted with so much prudence and caution throughout, that the chiefs, instead of thinking they were conferring a favour, by carrying the plants to the party herein appointed to receive them, (which were nine persons, including Messrs. Nelson and Brown) thought, on the contrary, that they were under an obligation by having them accepted.

This day the captain had no visitors, except Tinah, who dined with him, and whom he was occasionally obliged to feed, and lift the wine to his mouth, as the attendants whose occupation it was had been dismissed, and the chief was so accustomed to this indulgence, that he was absolutely incapable of feeding himself. The wives of the Earees are sometimes subject to this duty after the birth of a child, but when they perform a ceremony which is called Oammo, they are then exempt from it for a limited time.

The captain was invited by Tinah after dinner to accompany him with a present of provisions to a party of the Arrecoys, in which ceremony he was made the principal person. This offering was made by the side of a river, near the banks of which the captain had frequently walked before: on the present occasion, however, a canoe was provided for him, which was dragged by eight men. As soon as they arrived at the landing-place, they saw a large quantity of bread-fruit, likewise a number of hogs ready dressed, and a quantity of cloth. There was a man who sat at some distance, that was called a principal Arreoy: he was addressed by one of those who attended Tinah, standing on his canoe, in an oration composed of some short sentences, which continued for the space of a quarter of an hour, a huc being previously made by the crowd. The captain was now desired to hold one end of the cloth, while five men, one of whom had a sucking pig, and the rest a basket of bread-fruit, were desired

to follow him. Thus they proceeded to the Arreoy, before whom they laid down their offering. Tinah dictated to the captain several words, which he repeated; the meaning of which he did not understand. The imperfect manner in which the captain repeated those words was the occasion of no little mirth. This ceremony being over, the captain was introduced to another Arreoy, who had come from Ulietea; upon which the same business commenced again; and Tinah understanding that the captain had children in his own country, directed him to make another offering on their account. Accordingly the captain presented three baskets of bread-fruit, a small pig, and another piece of cloth, which were remaining, to the Arreoy; whom he first addressed, and who attended to all his orations, as dictated by Tinah, with profound attention and the utmost gravity, receiving the articles presented more as his right than as a gift.

The Arrecoys, it seems, are highly respected, being, as the captain judges, a society of men who have been distinguished for their merit. They are permitted to carry on their amours to a great length, but all their children are destroyed. They are generally warriors, and therefore in times of danger they are restricted in their amours, for fear of debilitating themselves. The natives declare that the society of Arrecoys is absolutely necessary, in order to prevent too great a multiplication of people: notwithstanding which, none of the lower class of the inhabitants are admitted into this society. As an instance of the cruelty of this institution, Teppahoo, of the district of Tetaha, and Tettechowdeah his wife, and Otoo's sister, were obliged to sacrifice their children, to the number of eight, as soon as born.

Mr. Peckover, the gunner, according to the captain's orders, now carried on a trade for provisions in the tent; and Moannah resided there, in order to prevent his countrymen from committing any further depredations or occasioning disturbances.

Tinah, Oreepyah, Poeno, and Moannah, continually dined with the captain, who had frequently other guests from the adjoining districts.

Much perplexity is occasioned by the variety of names which one chief lays claim to. The captain was very often embarrassed in knowing by what title he should address his guests: indeed it often happens that a person is unacquainted with the subject of conversation by the name which he is mentioned, though he is well known to him by person.

The captain showed Tinah the preparations which were making for conveying the bread-fruit plants which he promised King George on board. Tinah was exceedingly happy, and told the captain that he expected King George would send him in return the different articles which he enumerated.

In the afternoon of the 3d of November the gudgeon of the rudder belonging to the large cutter was stolen, in such a sly and dexterous manner as to escape the notice of the man who was appointed to take care of her. Previous to this several petty thefts were committed, owing to the carelessness and inattention of the captain's people; and as these kind of accidents are very often likely to interrupt harmony and peace, the captain thought it proper to punish the boat-keeper, in the presence of the natives, for his negligence; accordingly, he was ordered a dozen lashes. Tinah, and several chiefs who were present, supplicated very hard for his forgiveness. The women appeared exceedingly sorry. His punishment, no doubt, had the desired effect among the natives.

The captain this day received from the natives two different kinds of roots, which grow like yams: one of them is a sweet root, called Etee; it abounds very much in the Friendly Islands, and is eaten as a sweetmeat: the other is like the Tyah in the West-Indies, and is called Appah. He likewise got a fruit, very juicy and refreshing, called Ayyah, which

* The ceremony of this offering will be more fully explained in our future voyages.

is the jambo of Batavia; these are eaten in large quantities, and are as large as middle sized apples. There were also some avocs, a very high flavoured delicious fruit, but which as yet were not ripe.

On the 4th, Tinah introduced to the captain a particular acquaintance of his, who was a chief from the island Ulitea, whose name was Tootaha. The captain understanding that he was a priest, and possessed of great knowledge, desired Tinah to take whatever articles he thought worthy his acceptance, and such was the modesty of Tinah, that he was not near as generous as the captain would have been. The captain was likewise visited to day by Oedidee, who had been at sea with Captain Cook, in 1773 and 1774. The little English, which this man had learned during that expedition, he had almost forgot.

On the 5th, they began to take up plants, which they were enabled to do with greater satisfaction to themselves, by the assistance of the natives, who understood better how to prune and take them up. The weather was now variable, there were frequent showers of rain, attended with lightning.

As the curiosity of the natives was now in a great measure satisfied, the captain and his people were not so much incommoded by numbers as before; besides, the badness of the weather obliged them for the most part to be at home. The chiefs of Matavai, Oparre, and some other islands, were the captain's present visitors. The natives dropped following them whenever they went out to walk, so that they now enjoyed their excursions, and whatever house they visited, met therein a warm reception, without any kind of officiousness which their curiosity at first occasioned. The people of Otahite are the most easy in their manners, they are exceedingly hospitable and well behaved, devoid of both formality and forwardness. They have no notion of that ceremonious politeness of pressing their guests to partake of more refreshment; when they say they are satisfied, or prolong their visits when they have an inclination to depart; they expect that their visitors will eat as much, and stay as long as they like, therefore they despise that teasing kind of ceremony which is so common in our civilized countries.

The most polite are chiefly the most rude,
Whose boundless hospitality is such,
They make their friends to eat and drink too much,
And then so over-good, so very kind,
Will force our stay, when to depart inclin'd:
But here a different picture let us view,
The test of friendship!—friendship the most true!
'Tis from the heart that they their friends invite,
Without formality they are polite;
Their native friendship, which they cannot feign,
Is always open, unofficious, plain,
And how much better than good manners seem,
When every guest, whate'er he wills, may do.

As the chiefs were frequently expressing a wish to see some of the English ladies, the captain disposed for mirth, permitted the ship's barber, who suggested the joke, to dress up a painted head, which he brought from London, like those exhibited in hair-dressers shops, and to which he added a body, which he skillfully contrived of a stick and a quantity of cloth. The deception being complete, and the feature of the face very regularly made, the captain reported that there was an English lady on board. All the chiefs and their attendants were very curious, and the quarter-deck was immediately cleared, in order that the might make her appearance. The figure being handed up the ladder, and conducted to the after part of the deck with great ceremony, the natives all shouted for joy at seeing the beautiful English woman; several requested to know of the captain if she was his wife. An old female native approached the sham lady with great reverence, and laid a present of cloth and bread-fruit at her feet; but, when she discovered the trick, she was exceed-

ingly mortified, and ran away with her presents; to the great diversion of Tinah and the rest of his countrymen, who enjoyed the joke. These people were very curious about the English ladies, and having made many enquiries respecting their colour, features, &c. strictly enjoined the captain, whenever he came again, to bring his vessel full of them.

Among the several articles which the natives brought the captain, there was some very fine sugar cane, of about six inches round. Tinah having understood that they made their sugar thereof, was very desirous to know by what method; the natives were particularly partial to the sugar loaf, a piece of which always constituted part of the English presents.

Nelson had now completed a large garden near the tents; wherein the different kinds of seeds which they collected at the Cape of Good Hope were sown. There were likewise some fruit stones and almonds dispersed among the chiefs, with rose seed, as they particularly delight in the odour of roses, and the women were fond of ornamenting themselves therewith; instructions were also given them how to manage them.

The weather was still variable, and on the 6th, they had westerly winds, with much rain. The captain was very much hurt to find his garden-ground had been greatly abused, and what added not a little to his mortification, was the indifference of the chiefs, who did not seem concerned about it. The captain gave Poeno (as the place of his residence was very favourable for agriculture) two orange plants, a fig tree, two pine-apple plants, and some vines, which were all in a flourishing state.

About a hundred plants were got in pots at the tents, and all promised well; the cabin was likewise prepared for their reception.

The captain having received from Oreepyah, Tinah's brother, a present of a large hog, and a quantity of bread-fruit, which presents, by the bye, were of greater expense than when they were purchased. Tinah, in a whisper, begged the captain to return them, and not to accept any more of his presents. This request proceeded from his selfish disposition, as he grudged Oreepyah the gifts, which of course he would receive from the captain in return. However, Oreepyah being a man of very great consequence and spirit, the captain did not pay any attention to this advice.

On the 8th they had collected about 252 plants in their tents, where, for their further security, the guard was increased, though without any immediate cause, as the natives still behaved with the greatest decorum.

The captain, during his meals, was always obliged to keep a cominal at the hatchway, in order to prevent his being incommoded with too much company, nor was this by any means disagreeable to the chiefs, who, on the contrary, seemed pleased with the restriction, and esteemed it a high compliment whenever any one of their acquaintance was admitted. This day Tinah requested leave to introduce a priest as he called him; the captain immediately acquiesced, and his presence occasioned some religious conversation, during which it appeared that they believed in a great God, whom they called Oro, and others of less consequence.

This day the weather became fine again, and they were of course visited by both friends and strangers. Tinah acquainted the captain that some performers, who were strollers about the country, were now waiting for their attendance, as there was a writing match (or in their own phrase a *heiva*) to be performed for their entertainment on shore. Accordingly the captain, with several of his visitors, set off about a quarter of a mile from their tents, where they perceived a great number of people in a circle. As soon as the company had taken their seats, a dancing heiva began, which was performed by two girls and four men; this lasted half an hour, and consisted of those wanton gestures and motions

which we have described. When the dance ended, the cloth to be brought to the captain, were desired, and the remaining others, they carried off them. Several ment.

This being done, the place soon became a party of the natives from the women thought worth it; a little better than she was attacked, opposed and held fast her clover along the ground took notice of her, and his assistance; up and the young woman party.

Soon after a ring v. lers were so numerous sible to restore order lay one hand upon ing of the arm at t they strike a very is kept hollow, crea at a considerable frequently, and w becomes exceeding breaking, bleeds c found from so man of people in a wo general challenge; agree to a trial, th ward, joining the the fingers. They advantage; at leng by the hair, and a fore either receives formed any thing h and, as they were lled longer than also were parted.

Further Anecdotes of the Remarks—He leaves Tottaha purchased— Tempehuous Wealth Harbours explored— Captain dejects— Revo

ON the 13th the c to dinner. He drink his Majesty's he removed, the captain's of the wine and the to. ly insist upon its being dinner, in an overflow were remarkably cheer tain with various ane gave an account of th in the island Huclidean Cook. They likewise bull and a cow all be separated, the bull be and the cow at the dist therefore resolved on t Tottaha, which was bu ble preserve the breed Having drank their v on shore: the captain v his tent, and continued during which time the

which we have described in our former voyages. When the dance ended, Tinah ordered a long piece of cloth to be brought; his wife Iddeah, and the captain, were desired to hold the two first corners, and the remaining part being supported by many others, they carried it to the performers, and gave it them. Several other chiefs made a like payment.

This being done, the wrestling began, and the place soon became a scene of confusion and noise. A party of the Arreos also began to exercise a privilege, which it seems they are allowed, of taking from the women such of their clothes as they thought worth it; so that some of them were left little better than naked. One young woman, who was attacked, opposed them with all her strength, and held fast her cloth, though they almost dragged her along the ground. Observing that the captain took notice of her, she held out her hand, and begged his assistance: upon this the captain interposed, and the young woman kept possession of her property.

Soon after a ring was again made, but the wrestlers were so numerous within it, that it was impossible to restore order. "In these challenges, they lay one hand upon their breast, and on the bending of the arm at the elbow, with the other hand, they strike a very smart blow, which, as the hand is kept hollow, creates a sound that may be heard at a considerable distance; and this they do so frequently, and with such force, that the flesh becomes exceedingly bruised, and, the skin breaking, bleeds considerably. At this time the sound from so many resembled that of a number of people in a wood felling trees. This is the general challenge; but when any two combatants agree to a trial, they present their hands towards, joining them only by the extremities of the fingers. They begin by watching to take an advantage; at length they close, seize each other by the hair, and are most commonly parted before either receives a fall. Only one couple performed any thing like the part of good wrestlers; and, as they were an equal match, this conflict lasted longer than any of the others; but they also were parted.

"Iddeah was the general umpire, and managed with so much address as to prevent any quarrelling, and there was no murmuring at her decisions. As her person was large, she was very conspicuous in the circle. Tinah took no part in the management. Upon the whole, this performance exhibited greater strength than skill or dexterity."

Tinah had been for some time talking of visiting the island of Tethuroa, which lies eight or ten leagues N. from Otaheite, to fetch his mother; and on the 11th proposed to the captain to sail there in his vessel: however he seemed to feel no great disappointment at the captain's not complying with his desire. Tethuroa, he said, was the property of his family. He likewise mentioned an island called Roo-opow, the situation of which he described to be to the eastward of Otaheite four or five days sail, and that there were large animals upon it with eight legs. The truth of this account he very strenuously insisted upon, and wished the captain to go thither with him. Captain Bligh was at a loss to know whether or not Tinah himself gave credit to this whimsical and fabulous account; for they are so frequently inclined to be merry, that sometimes it is hard to tell whether they are in jest or earnest.

Their ideas of geography are very simple: they believe the world to be a fixed plane, of great extent; and that the sun, moon, and stars, are all in motion round it. As they think the English great travellers, and capable of doing any thing, the captain has frequently been asked if he had not been as far as the sun and moon.

Tinah mentioned another island, called Tappuhoi, situated likewise to the eastward, the inhabitants of which were said to be all warriors, and that the people of Otaheite did not dare to go there. He likewise added, that very lately a canoe from Tappuhoi was at the island of Maitea; that as soon as they landed they began to fight with the people of Maitea, who killed them all, except a young lad, and a woman, who have since been at Otaheite. The captain saw the boy Tinah alluded to, but who was incapable of giving any satisfactory account of the business.

CHAPTER IV.

Further Anecdotes of the Natives—The Captain taken ill—His Expedition to Tettaha—Sees a beautiful Heifer—Remarks—He leaves the Place—Bread-Fruit Plants increase—A scandalous Report—The Heifer that was at Tettaha purchased—A Visit from Tinah's Mother—Her Nephew—Tinah and Oreepyah at variance—A Theft—Tempestuous Weather—Preparations for sailing—Death of the Surgeon—Mr. Ledward succeeds him—Two Harbours explored—An Excursion—Remarks—Vessel removed to Tauruh Harbour—Three Men belonging to the Captain desert—Recovered—Various anecdotes.

ON the 13th the captain had a large company to dinner. It being always customary to drink his Majesty's health as soon as the cloth was removed, the captain's guests became so fond both of the wine and the toast, that they would frequently insist upon its being drank in the middle of their dinner, in an overthrowing bumper. This day they were remarkably cheerful, and entertained the captain with various anecdotes; among which they gave an account of the vines which were planted on the island Hucheine, and elsewhere, by Captain Cook. They likewise remarked, that there was a bull and a cow alive at Otaheite, but that they were separated, the bull being at a place called Itteah, and the cow at the district of Tettaha. The captain therefore refused on the first opportunity to go to Tettaha, which was but a little way off, and if possible preserve the breed of these useful animals.

Having drank their wine after dinner, they went on shore: the captain was taken exceedingly ill at his tent, and continued in much pain near an hour, during which time the natives appeared very much

concerned, and administered all the relief that they possibly could. He found himself quite recovered on his return to the vessel.

The next morning (the 14th) several of the natives, and even strangers, were enquiring after his health. This day, the weather being remarkably fine, the captain determined on going to Tettaha, and looking for the cow which had been mentioned the preceding day: accordingly, he invited Tinah, Oreepyah, and Voceno, to accompany him, who all complied, and they set off together after sun-rise in the launch. This place is about four leagues from Point Venus. When they had arrived, a messenger was dispatched by Tinah to the chief of the district, whose name was Teppahoo, to inform him of Capt. Bligh's arrival. This chief did not make his appearance, but sent to know whether the captain came to see the cow or take it away. In answer to this a message was returned, that he came only to see it. The captain was now desired to proceed further along shore to the westward, in the boat. Mean while Tinah purchased some fish of the fish-

ing canoes, which he eats raw with salt water for sauce. As soon as they were landed, they were surrounded by a great number of people, and presently after Tippahoo the chief appeared. The captain and Oreepyah accompanied him about a quarter of a mile, when he was shown a most beautiful heifer; the captain was exceedingly hurt that this fine animal and the bull should be separated, especially as he had flared in the toil and trouble of bringing them over. There being nothing of further consequence to attract the notice of the captain, he departed from this place, which is very inferior to Matavai in point of luxuriance and cultivation. The captain previous to his departure made the chief a present, and invited him on board the *Bounty*. All the time Tinah remained in the boat, there was no kind of respect paid him, nor even a cocoa-nut or a bread-fruit given him, without purchasing it. Being obliged to row against the wind, on their return they stopped to refresh at Oparre, and about eight o'clock they arrived to the vessel; the captain's company ended with him to supper.

On the 17th the captain went on shore to examine the state of the bread-fruit plant. During his absence Tippahoo, the chief of Teataha come on board, and left a hog as a present for the captain. Their collection of bread-fruit plants still continued increasing.

Tinah still continued the captain's constant visiter, and this day having left the table sooner than usual, his brother Oreepyah and Oedidee informed the captain that Tinah's wife Iddeah was gracious with her husband's servant, being the very person who always fed Tinah at dinner. They also hinted, that instead of its being without Tinah's knowledge it was by his desire. The captain was unwilling to believe this scandalous report, but not only these, but the rest of the company agreed in the story.

The captain had lately remarked that the place in his cabin which he had resigned to Tinah in order to keep his presents secure, instead of being increased with the additional favours which were daily bestowed, seemed on the contrary to be diminishing; at length he discovered, that Iddeah kept another hoard in the cabin, which she was by degrees filling with the articles which belonged to her husband; apprehending, that if Tinah's locker was once full, the captain would give no more presents. At Tinah's request the carpenters were ordered by the captain to make a chest large enough for himself and wife to sleep on.

On the 21st a message came from Tippahoo to the captain to inform him, that the heifer was brought to Matavai; the captain went immediately on shore and purchased it, with a quantity of sugar-loaf, pair of scullars, shirt, hatchet, spike nail, gimblet, file, knife, &c. The chief seemed highly pleased with his bargain; and the captain sent the heifer to Pocono's residence where there was plenty of grass.

The captain was invited in the afternoon to another entertainment, which he describes in the following manner:

"Twelve men were divided into four ranks with two women in the front, behind them all stood a priest, who delivered a speech which lasted about ten minutes, and which was listened to with the utmost attention. During this, the picture of Captain Cook (which had been brought for that purpose) was placed by Captain Bligh's side. As soon as the priest had finished his oration, a piece of white cloth was wrapt round the picture, and another piece round the captain. The priest then began another speech, but of a shorter duration, and an old man placed a piece of plaited cocoa-nut leaf at Captain Bligh's feet, another piece at Tinah's, and another under the picture. After this the dancing began, which was carried on in the same stile as before."

In order to please the natives, the captain ordered the head of the ship which bore the figure of a woman, well carved, to be painted in sprightly colours. The natives admired the figure prodigiously, which did not a little increase their curiosity to see English ladies.

Elder brothers, it appeared, are allowed to be connected with the wives of their younger brothers; however, if any person, who does not belong to the family, aims at such intimacy, it is immediately refuted.

Tinah, at the request of the captain, had a light shed, which was supported by posts erected this day on shore at Point Venus, where the captain designed to make his observations.

On the 24th Tinah being about to leave the captain for a few days, he treated him with a turtle for his dinner, which he caught upon the reefs. Tinah requested the captain would send for his mother in the morning, who was just arrived from the Island of Tethuoa, and take care of her till he returned. This the captain readily promised to do, and the next day the boat was dispatched to Oparre, which returned in the afternoon with Oberree-roah (the name of Tinah's mother) and two female attendants. This woman being very old and corpulent, it was with the greatest difficulty they could assist her into the vessel. As soon as she was on board she sat down, and clasping the captain's knees in her arms, expressed great satisfaction at this interview by a large flood of tears. Her attendants now produced three pieces of cloth, a large hog, some cocoa nuts, plantains, bread-fruit, &c. as a present. This poor woman being fatigued with her journey was desirous of remaining on board all night. The captain immediately gave orders that every necessary accommodation should be prepared. This woman had with her a favourite cat, that was the kitten of one which was given to her by Captain Cook. She entertained the captain with all the different occurrences, which happened to her since Captain Cook's departure from Otaheite.

On the 25th this old lady being desirous to go on shore, the captain made her a present of several articles, which she declined accepting at present, as it was not then convenient to take them with her.

Only Moosnah and Pocono dined with the captain to-day. They hinted, that Tinah and his brother Oreepyah were at variance, and it was suspected that when the vessel was gone they would have a battle. The captain for some time perceived that they were cool to each other. They had disagreed, it seems, about their wives, and though Captain Bligh frequently endeavoured to reconcile them, still they retained their anger and animosity.

The chief of Uheeta, nephew of the old lady, arrived this afternoon in a canoe, and brought with him an ewe, but which was in a very bad condition. The captain having purchased it at a very easy rate, sent it to Pocono's residence to be kept with the heifer.

On the 28th Tinah and his wife returned to Matavai, and were very glad to see the captain. They brought a present of a hog, and some bread-fruit.

On the 29th the captain was very sorry to find that most of the melons, cucumbers, &c. in the gardens, near the tents were destroyed by insects; this soil, being for the greatest part sandy, was very unfavourable to the rest of the seeds. The captain therefore fixed upon another spot, at a greater distance from the sea side, where several kinds of seed were sown according to his desire.

In the night the rudder of one of the boats was stolen from the tents. Tinah hearing of the theft, was afraid to see the captain, who came on shore the 31st of December; however, as the loss was not very great, Captain Bligh sent to inform him, that he was angry with no one, but the person who committed

committed the theft several others came to see their discover the thief, indeed, as the natives remarkably honest, those who had any illands were guilty of

The youngest brother was elected a very visiter of the captain, building for himself

promised that his canoe On the 5th about breeze from the N. to break very high weather had been ve at night it turned a heavy broken sea no were compelled to t and every man was though he was wet ran: the vessel rolled

On the 6th, the wind that it was impossible they struck yards a entirely on their an belled the river to l on which their tents were forced to cut a part of the beech, at the sake of preserving

Notwithstanding the beech, Tinah, his wife went in a canoe to see nately made their w They had each a padd moll surprizing skill. they embraced the cap tentive for the safety fa became more mod continued the fame.

but her husband remain On the 7th the wind N. and N. W. and was the captain was no lution. This day, abou the vessel, and brought with a quantity of Some short time he a having made the capta on shore in the mornin to visit their relations were exceedingly unca

The captain was like wife; this woman was being the captain, that her face was instantane the severe manner in w bark's tooth, which is culans of either joy or as possible, checked h seemed to subside with Pocono declared that him if any thing happe would hourly employ trees to enable him to b

The captain perceiv danger in Matavai Bay, rations to be made for

On the 8th the weath tin went on shore, an ception from Oberree-

The captain was very which had been covere obtained not the least d her; some were strikin were not as yet buddin captain refrained some on board, this b No

committed the theft. Accordingly, the chief with several others came to the captain's tents, and promised to use their utmost exertions, in order to discover the thief, and get the rudder restored. Indeed, as the natives had behaved hitherto remarkably honest, the captain suspected that some of those who had arrived from the neighbouring islands were guilty of the present crime.

The youngest brother of Tinah, Whydooh, who was esteemed a very great warrior, was constantly a visitor of the captain's. Tinah was now about building for himself a house, and the captain had promised that his carpenters should assist him.

On the 5th about the afternoon they had a fierce breeze from the N. W. which occasioned the sea to break very high across the Dolphin Bank. The weather had been very unsettled for some time, but at night it turned out remarkably bad. Such a heavy broken sea now came into the bay, that they were compelled to batten all the hatchways down, and every man was obliged to stay upon deck, though he was wet to the skin with the violent rain: the vessel rolled in a terrible manner.

On the 6th, the wind increased in such a manner, that it was impossible to put to sea; accordingly they struck yards and top-masts, and depended entirely on their anchors. The torrents of rain felled the river to such a degree, that the ground on which their tents stood became an island; they were forced to cut a passage for the river through a part of the beach, at a distance from the tents, for the sake of preserving their bread-fruit plants.

Notwithstanding the sea broke very high on the beach, Tinah, his wife, and Moannah, ventured out in a canoe to see the captain, and very fortunately made their way good through the surf. They had each a paddle, which they managed with most surprising skill. As soon as they got on board they embraced the captain, and seemed very apprehensive for the safety of the vessel. At noon the sea became more moderate, though the wind still continued the same. Iddeah departed at sun-set, but her husband remained with the captain all night.

On the 7th the wind began to shift, between the N. and N. W. and was abated so considerably, that the captain was no longer alarmed at their situation. This day, about noon, Iddeah returned to the vessel, and brought with her a very fine hog, with a quantity of bread-fruit and cocoa-nuts. Some short time she and her husband left the vessel, having made the captain promise, that he would be on shore in the morning, if the weather cleared up to visit their relations, who, they assured them, were exceedingly uneasy on their account.

The captain was likewise visited by Poeno and his wife; this woman was so exceedingly rejoiced at seeing the captain, that before he could prevent her, her face was instantaneously covered with blood, by the severe manner in which she beat herself with a shark's tooth, which is always their custom on occasions of either joy or grief. The captain, as soon as possible, checked her fury, and her agitation seemed to subside with the drying up of her blood. Poeno declared that the captain should live with him if any thing happened the vessel, and that they would hourly employ themselves in cutting down trees to enable him to build another.

The captain perceiving it unsafe to stay much longer in Matavai Bay, ordered immediate preparations to be made for sailing.

On the 8th the weather having cleared up, the captain went on shore, and met with a very warm reception from Oberree-roah, and his other friends.

The captain was very happy to find that the plants which had been covered from the spray, off the sea, sustained not the least damage during this bad weather; some were striking out young shoots, others were not as yet budding; by Nelson's advice, the captain refrained some days from having them taken on board, this botanist imagining that the

No

plants might be produced from their roots; there were some boxes accordingly filled with them.

On the 9th they were assisted by several natives in hauling the launch on shore to be repaired, during which, a fine youth, about ten years of age, was thrown down, and unfortunately a roller that was placed under the boat went over him. At this time the surgeon was very ill, Captain Bligh therefore dispatched a messenger for Mr. Ledward, his assistant, who, on his arrival, examined the boy, and gave no little satisfaction by pronouncing his limbs all perfectly secure, and that he had suffered no material injury.

The surgeon, who had been for some time confined to his cabin, became now so very bad, that Mr. Ledward recommended he should be moved to some place, where he might have more air; this however was productive of no good effect, as he died in about an hour after. Mr. Ledward, the assistant, was now appointed surgeon by the captain.

The next day, it being the captain's will to have the deceased interred on shore, Tinah, to whom it was mentioned, immediately repaired to inform his father of the captain's desire, it being necessary, he said, to ask his consent. Having returned in a short time, he told the captain it was perfectly agreeable, and the spot of ground which he requested, should also be granted for the burial-place. Accordingly the captain, accompanied with Tinah, went on shore, taking two men with him to dig a grave. When they had reached the place, they found that the natives had already begun it. The grave was marked out very exactly at East and West. In the afternoon, about four o'clock, the body was conveyed to the place of interment. Several of the natives, with all the chiefs attended, and behaved with most profound decorum during the funeral service.

On the twelfth the captain went in his boat to examine the harbours about Oparre: he found two formed by the reefs, the westernmost, which is called by the natives Taowne Harbour, though it seems the most convenient for sailing in and out, does not appear sufficiently sheltered from a N. W. wind or sea. There is a remarkable mountain, which the natives called Wowry, and which bears S. S. E. from the entrance, by which this harbour may be distinguished. It is about a league and a half distant from Point Venus. The easternmost is called Toahroah Harbour. This is small but secure: the chief objection to this harbour is the difficulty of getting out with the common trade-wind. The entrance, which is on the east side, being no more than about a hundred yards wide, and the depth without, inconvenient for warping. On the south side of the entrance is a Morai, the reef side is to be kept on board, and a look-out to be kept from aloft, it being a much better place than the deck to perceive the shoal water. This harbour is about three miles distant from Point Venus.

On the 14th, it being Sunday, several of the principal natives attended divine service: they all behaved exceedingly well except one, when the women began to laugh at their general responses; however, upon the captain's looking seriously, they were ashamed, and did it no more. They seemed surprised after the service, that there was *no offering* to be made.

As the weather, which had been for some days fair, appeared now quite settled, the captain still continued in *Matavai Bay*, there being no apprehension of danger.

On the 17th, the captain, accompanied by Nelson, and his old friend Moannah, took an excursion into the country. This journey, which was on the low land, was exceedingly pleasant; the land was covered with bread-fruit and cocoa-nuts, and there were several rows of neat houses, where there was a multitude of children. They proceeded along the valley, where they also found a number of houses, and several bread-fruit trees, which were much smaller than those they had seen before. They

• 3 E

likewise

likewise met with other plantations of yams, taro, cloth plant, yava, &c. They were frequently interrupted in their walk by a river, which had several crofs windings, and over which they were obliged frequently to be carried on men's shoulders. When they arrived at a Morai, they perceived a great assembly of natives. The priests, it seems, were performing their devotions. During the ceremony sixteen men were sitting on their heels, and there was a pole in the front, covered with a plaited cocoa-nut branch. A number of small pieces of the same leaf plaited, and which they call habyree, were placed before each of these men, who had likewise a piece thereof round their wrists.

The chief priest repeated a prayer with a loud voice, while all the rest joined in the response. This being done, they arose, and carried each a habyree, which they placed at the foot of the pole, and then returned to prayer, which continued till all the habyree were disposed of in the same manner; upon which the ceremony concluded. There was likewise an offering of plantains and bread-fruit placed near the pole, which was left for the Eatua.

While thus employed in prayer a roasted hog had been prepared for them, of which the captain and his company were invited to partake; but Captain Bligh, willing to make the most of his time before the sun became too warm, declined this invitation, and Moannah gave directions to have some refreshments ready for them when they returned.

They proceeded up the valley, which became gradually narrow, and had advanced a considerable way beyond all the houses and plantations, when they were suddenly stopped by a cascade, that fell into the river from a height of above two hundred feet: at this time the fall was not great, but during the heavy rains it must be considerable. The natives look upon this as one of their curiosities. The fall of water is the least wonderful part; the cliff, over which it comes, is perpendicular, forming an appearance as if supported by square pillars of stone, and with a regularity that is surprising. Underneath is a pool eight or nine feet deep, into which the water falls; and in this place all the natives, from some religious idea, make it a rule to bithone one in their lives.

There is a close connection between the hills here, which are exceedingly well covered with wood. From the craggy appearance of the road, the Captain avoided the mountain, which is called Peeah Roah, and about seven miles from the road by which they went.

They dined in the house of an old acquaintance of Nelson's, where a young pig was provided for them, on which they made a very hearty meal. It was for this man that they had, in 1777, planted the two shaddock plants, which they had brought from the Friendly Islands, and which were now very fine trees, and full of fruit.

They do not take much pains in their plantations, except with the yava and the cloth-plant, both of which they are careful to keep clear of weeds. Many of the plantations of the cloth-plant were fenced with stone, and surrounded with a ditch. The yams and plantains are mostly on the higher grounds.

When dinner was over they returned to the ship. The captain was much delighted, in this walk, with the number of children that he saw in every part of the country: they are very handsome, sprightly, and full of antic tricks. They have many diversions that are common with the boys in England; such as flying kites, swinging, cats cradle, dancing or jumping in a rope, wrestling, and walking upon stilts.

On the 19th they had much rain, and a long swell set into the bay. They had a fierce breeze from the E. and E. S. E. The captain had not yet

determined, whether, on leaving Matavai Bay, he would go to the Island Eimeo, or to the harbour of Toahroah near Oparre: this uncertainty made Tinah, and the rest of his friends, very uneasy; and they appeared much distressed on his desiring them, this afternoon, to send on board all the things which they wished to have repaired by the forge, as soon as possible, that what they wanted might be done before the vessel left Matavai, which he told them would be in a few days. They very earnestly intreated him to stay one month longer. This the captain said was impossible, and asked Tinah if he would not go with him to Eimeo; but he said, that, notwithstanding his protection, he was certain the Eimeo people would watch for an opportunity to kill him. Tinah remained on board with the captain all night, but Iddeah his wife went on shore, and returned early in the morning, bringing with her some axes, and other things, which by her desire were immediately repaired by the forge.

On the 20th the captain went on shore, and found Otow, Oberree-roah, Moannah, and several others, in great tribulation at the thoughts that they were to soon to leave them. All the people of Matavai were much concerned at his intention of going to Eimeo, and took every opportunity to prejudice him against the people of that island: but as their motive was obvious, the captain did not attend to their dissuasions; however, their apparent affection for him, and regret for his departure, made so great an impression, that the next day he sent the master in the launch to re-examine the depth of water between this bay and Toahroah Harbour. The master returned in the evening, and acquainted the captain, that he found a good bottom, with not less than sixteen fathoms depth all the way. The harbour of Toahroah appeared every way safe, Captain Bligh determined to go the vessel there as speedily as possible, and having published his intention, the natives were full of joy and happiness on the occasion.

The plants, which were 774 pots, all in a healthy state, were taken on board. Whenever any plant had an unfavourable appearance, it was replaced by another. The number of those rejected was 320 of which not one in ten but was found to be growing at the root.

"The natives," according to Captain Bligh's information, "reckon eight kinds of the bread-fruit tree, each of which they distinguish by a different name: Patteah, Eroroo, Awanna, Mi-re, Ompowerro, Appeere, Rowdeeah. The leaf of the Patteah, Mi-re, and Rowdeeah, differs from the rest; the Mi-re is more sinuated; the Rowdeeah has a large broad leaf, not at all sinuated. The difference of the fruit is principally in the Patteah and Rowdeeah. In the first, the fruit is rather larger and more of an oblong form: in the last, it is round and not above half the size of the others. The captain enquired if plants could be produced from the seed, and was told they could not, but that they must be taken from the root. The plants are best collected after wet weather, at which time the earth balls round the roots, and they are not liable to suffer by being moved. About the end of February they do not bear the bread-fruit, as the fruit is not then in perfection; but there is no part of the year in which the trees are entirely bare."

Early on the 25th they unmoored, and the vessel went in the launch to Oparre, with directions that after landing them, the launch should meet the vessel in the entrance of Toahroah Harbour, show the safest part of the channel. They got the ship under sail about half past ten, and ran under top-sails: when they were near the house it fell calm, and the ship shot past her. They immediately let the anchor go, but, to their great surprise, found the ship going on and forwards. She

run on for a day, the time. This as they were obliged to get the ship about cables sweep a row without much delay.

On the 26th the captain congratulated the natives, and Tinah conducted the vessel to the beach, and made use of, and for his purposes. Tinah desired the captain to address and presenting readily assented to the proposition. They then spent a short time in the company of the natives, who all made the chief a short pig, which he made reply. Tinah then sent three several tin small pig, and the chief told him was next for King George Moannah then got to, made an oration which was, that the natives received their were good people and invited them to come bring their pigs, and they would receive they took nothing finally, that every man while they occupied my visit in the dark, this oration the ceremony.

Their present situation and convenient. They by the reefs in smooth beach without the least very good water, run of the harbour. The plants to be landed with them as at Mat according to his desire.

On the 29th, the chief of the natives seized an cleaver. This being by the natives, the chief's restoration; however, who were then on board their utmost endeavours to bring Tinah, contentions, brought the cleaver up with great reluctance to Attahooroo's present for his trouble it was by way of a compliment, he could not do.

The captain was accompanied, and relations of children on board, or though so near them, were occupied on shore by a fever, and the captain's fence or alarm to men from approaching. The vessel was still the natives, who brought plenty, that scarcely a day on board the scarcity of bread-fruit was much trouble a consumption. There was approaching, which the die in five or six weeks. The natives also were become they call Vayhee were in

run on so early, that they had not perceived it at the time. This accident occasioned much trouble, as they were obliged to send anchors out altern to get the ship afloat: in doing which, one of the cables swept a rock, and was not got clear again without much difficulty.

On the 26th the chiefs, and indeed all the natives, congratulated the captain on the safety of his vessel. Tinah conducted him to a house near the water-side, abreast the ship, which he desired the captain to make use of, and which was large enough for all his purposes. Tinah and his brother Oreepyah then desired the captain would stay and receive a formal address and present, which they called Otee. Having readily assented, a stool was brought for him to sit on. They then left him with Moannah, and in a short time Tinah returned with about twenty men, who all made a stop at some distance, and a priest said a short prayer to the Eatua, to which the rest made reply. A man was then sent to the captain three several times, bringing him each time a small pig, and the stem of a plantain leaf. The first they told him was for the God of Brittanee, the next for King George, and the last for himself. Moannah then got up, and without being dictated to, made an oration for the captain; the purport of which was, that the captain through his representative received their offering with thanks; that they were good people and friends; and therefore he exhorted them to commit no thefts: he told them to bring their pigs, cocoa-nuts, and bread-fruit, and they would receive good things in return; that they took nothing without their consent; and finally, that every man was to quit the place (the house they occupied) at night; for if they made any visit in the dark, they would be killed. After this oration the ceremony concluded.

Their present situation was exceedingly pleasant and convenient. This ship was perfectly sheltered by the reefs in smooth water, and close to a fine beach without the least surf. A small river, with very good water, runs into the sea about the middle of the harbour. The captain gave directions for the plants to be landed, and the same party to be with them as at Matavai. Tinah's dwelling was according to his desire adjoining the captain's.

On the 29th, the butcher being rather careless, some of the natives seized an opportunity of stealing his cleaver. This being an article highly esteemed by the natives, the captain had no great hopes of its restoration; however he complained to the chiefs, who were then on board, and they promised to use their utmost endeavours to recover it. Some short time after Tinah, contrary to the captain's expectations, brought the cleaver on board. It was given up with great reluctance by the thief, who had conveyed it to Attahoooo. The captain offered Tinah a present for his trouble, but, understanding that it was by way of a compensation for recovering the cleaver, he could not be prevailed upon to accept it.

The captain was constantly visited by Tinah, his wife, and relations; but he never had the royal children on board, or even in sight of the vessel, though so near them. The ship's company, who were occupied on shore, were divided from them by a river, and the captain, unwilling to give them any cause of alarm, strictly prohibited the men from approaching the place where they were.

The vessel was still supplied with provisions by the natives, who brought them cocoa-nuts in such plenty, that scarcely a pint of water was drank during the day on board the vessel. Though there was a scarcity of bread-fruit, they still purchased without much trouble a sufficiency for their present consumption. There was, however, another harvest approaching, which they expected would be fit for use in five or six weeks. The better kind of plantains also were become scarce; but a kind which they call Vayhee were in great plenty. This fruit

does not hang on the trees like the other kinds, but grows upon an upright stalk of considerable strength and substance. Though this plantain is inferior in quality to most of the others, it affords great subsistence to the natives.

They likewise received continually on board presents of fish, chiefly dolphin and albacore, and a few small rock fish. Their fishing is mostly in the night, when they make strong lights on the reefs, which attract the fish to them. Sometimes, in fine weather, the canoes are out in such numbers, that the whole sea appears illuminated. In the canoes they fish with hook and line, and on the reefs they strike the fish with a spear. Some likewise carry out small nets, which are managed by two men. In the daytime their fishing canoes go without the reefs, sometimes to a considerable distance, where they fish with rods and lines, and catch bonetas, and other fish. Whenever there is a show of fish, a fleet of canoes immediately proceed to sea. Their hooks being bright, are used without bait, in the manner of artificial flies. Their rods are made of bamboo; but when there are any very large fish, they make use of an out-rigger over the fore part of the canoe, about 25 feet in length, which has two prongs at the extremity, to each of which is fastened a hook and line; and when a fish takes the hook, there are two men in the stern of the canoe who raise it up immediately with ropes.

On the 5th, when the watch was relieved at four o'clock in the morning, they missed the small cutter. Capt. Bligh, upon this information, immediately mustered his crew, and found upon an examination that three of his men were wanting, viz. Charles Churchill, who was the ship's corporal; William Mutpar, a seaman, and John Millward, ditto, who had been centinel from twelve to two in the morning.

Upon a further scrutiny, it was discovered that these men had taken away eight stand of arms and ammunition; but nobody on board appeared the least acquainted with their design, or had the smallest knowledge of the place of their rendezvous. Capt. Bligh went on shore, to inform the chiefs of his loss, and solicit their assistance in recovering those deserters. He understood that the boat which they had taken was at Matavai, and that they had made for the island Tethuroa in a sailing canoe. Capt. Bligh now dispatched the master to Matavai for the boat, while one of the chiefs voluntarily accompanied him: however, they met the boat about half way, with five of the natives, who at their own accord were bringing her back to the vessel.

Tinah and some others chiefs, who were solicited to seek the deserters, assured the captain that they would exert their utmost endeavours in recovering them. Oreepiah and Moannah agreed to go to Tethuroa the next morning, in search of them. Oreepiah, however, enquired of the captain if he thought that they had pocket pistols, for he was apprehensive that they might do mischief with these, even when they were surpris'd and seized. The captain removed all those fears, by assuring them that they had none.

On the 6th these chiefs, according to promise, set off at day-light, in two canoes, for Tethuroa; but the weather became so boisterous, that they were obliged to return in the forenoon, and the captain was exceedingly happy to see them get safe in, as the sea ran very high without the harbour. Oreepiah and Moannah both promised the captain, that they would sail again as soon as the weather should be fine. From the first of this month, the weather and winds had been much unsettled, with a great deal of rain. Their former station at Matavai appeared not at all safe, the sea at times breaking high over the Dolphin bank, and making a great swell in the bay.

On the 9th they had a strong wind at sea, though in the harbour they had only light breezes. Poeno visited the captain to-day: he was apprehensive that he was displeas'd with him, on account of his deserters having been carried to Tethuroa, by a canoe from Matavai. He declared, that the business had been done before he heard of it; and that the only service in his power he had not neglected to do for him, which was the sending their boat back. As this was really an act of friendship, the captain expressed many obligations. Poeno said, that there was no doubt, from the directions Tinah had given, that as soon as the weather would admit the canoes to go out, the deserters would be recovered.

On the 10th, unfortunately, one of the officers on shore plucked a branch from a tree called Tutuce, that bears the oil nut, which was growing at a Morai. As soon as he entered the house with it, where the captain's people were busy, all the natives, both men and women, immediately went away. After this Capt. Bligh found the branch tied to one of the posts of the house, and being exceedingly displeas'd at such a piece of wantonness ordered it to be taken away; but the natives, notwithstanding, would not come near the place. They said the house was taboned, and none of them could approach it till the taboo was taken off, which could only be done by Tinah. To take any thing away from a Morai is regarded as a kind of sacrilege, and, they believe, gives great offence to the Eatua. Tinah, at the captain's request, took off the taboo, but not before the afternoon. This was performed by an offering of a plantain leaf at the Morai, and a prayer made to the Eatua. This ceremony being over, the natives became as familiar in the house as ever.

The captain had frequently hinted to Tinah his wish of obtaining the bull from Itceah, in hopes of keeping up this useful breed, but finding this chief indifferent about the matter, he commissioned Poeno to bargain for it, who readily undertook the business, and after dinner departed about it.

On the 13th the weather being finer than usual, Orepeyah sailed with two canoes for Tethuroa. Some business prevented Moannah from accompanying him, but he followed the next day with two other canoes.

On the 14th, the wood on board the vessel being expended, they received a supply from Tinah.

On the 16th, the captain accompanied Tinah near a Tupapou, where he was surpris'd by a sudden outcry of grief. Having expressed a desire to see the distressed person, Tinah took him to the place, where they found a number of women, one of whom was the mother of a young female child that lay dead. On seeing their unexpected visitors their mourning not only ceased immediately, but to the captain's astonishment, they all burst into an immoderate fit of laughter, and, while they remained, appeared much diverted with their visit. This strange behaviour can only be attributed to their extreme levity of disposition, and not the want of maternal affection, which has been so remarkably conspicuous upon other occasions.

On the 18th a message came from Poeno, to acquaint the captain that he had been successful in his negotiation for the bull, which he had driven part of the way by land, but could not get farther on account of the rivers, and therefore desired a boat should be sent for him. Upon this the launch was ordered to be got ready, and at two o'clock the next morning, Mr. Fryer, the master, set off in her, and returned with Poeno, and the bull in the afternoon. The bull remained at Oparre during the night, and the next day he was taken to Matavai, and left with the cow.

On the 21st the person from whom Poeno had the bull, came to receive the stipulated payment, which was one of every article of traffic the captain had in his possession. This man, whose name was

Oveevee, said, he was inspired by a divine spirit; and that in all matters of consequence he was consulted, for that he conversed with the Eatua. It was, he said, the Eatua that ordered him to demand the bull from Tinah, which not to have complied with, would have been the height of impiety. The captain endeavoured to convince the chiefs of the roguery of this man, thinking he had a fair argument to prove it by his selling that which the Eatua had ordered him to keep; but here he was easily defeated, for the Eatua, as this man afterwards asserted, told him to sell the captain the beast. This being the case, Captain Bligh said he would not give the animals to any person; that they were now legally his, and that he would leave them under the protection of Poeno and Tinah, who he hoped would take care of them for him till he returned. Understanding the captain's views, they both promised the animals should be attended to, and declared, that while they were considered as his property, they would not part with them on any consideration.

On the 22d the captain received a message from Teppahoo, letting forth that the deserters had passed this harbour, and were at Tetaha, about five miles distant. The cutter was ordered to be got ready, and a little before sun-set the captain left the ship, taking Oedidee with him. By his advice he landed at some distance from the place where the deserters were; but thinking it necessary to have the boat within call, and Oedidee assuring him that there was safe landing farther on, he directed the boat to proceed along-shore, whilst Oedidee and he walked along the beach. The night was very dark and windy, and the shore being rocky, the captain soon lost sight of the boat. A few of the natives had joined them in their walk; and, from their manner, the captain had reason to suspect them of a design to seize upon them, with an intention, no doubt, to plunder: he was provided with pocket-pistols, and on producing one, they left them. Oedidee was so much alarmed that he could scarce be prevailed upon to proceed. When they arrived at Teppahoo's house, they were very kindly received by him and his wife. The cutter was arrived, but, there being a very high surf, the boat could not come within a hundred yards of the shore.

The deserters, as they were informed, were in a house close to them, and the captain imagined there would be no great difficulty in securing them, with the assistance of the natives. They were, however, apprised of the captain's arrival; and when he was near the house, they came out, without their arms, and delivered themselves up. The captain now sent directions off to the boat for one of his people to come on shore, and for the boat to return to the place where he had landed. He likewise secured the arms, which he delivered to Teppahoo to take care of for the night. One musket and two bayonets were missing, which the men said were lost, by the overturning of the canoe in which they came from Tethuroa.

These deserters also added, that at Tethuroa they had seen Orepeyah and Moannah, who had made an attempt to secure them. They said it was their intention to have returned to the ship; and it is probable that they were so harassed by the natives, watching for an opportunity to surprize them, that they might wish to have the merit of returning of their own accord, to avoid the disgrace of being seized and brought back. At the time they delivered themselves up, it was not in their power to have made resistance, their ammunition being spoiled by the wet.

The captain now took leave of Teppahoo, who presented them with a plentiful supply of provisions, and they proceeded with the deserters towards the boat; but as the wind had increased, and it rained hard, Captain Bligh determined to remain on shore all the morning; and having found shelter for the people they passed the remainder of the night without accident. The next day he sent for the arms, and they returned safe to the vessel.

This day, at captain on having some concern that Orepeyah and Moannah they had not done captain, however, satisfied of their that he already corrections to them for his account. He actually seized and prevailed upon, by peaceably to the others, however, finding of their arms again revoked their promise.

On the 30th 1789 with nineteen laste was a transgression a direct violation of would on no account though several of the for him.

As yet Orepeyah a from Tethuroa. The principal people of several seasons, when It was described to small keys, surrounding cocoa-nuts and plantain fruit, and other produce from Otateite. When less than 100 fail of c

The captain was and his wife: he had and had made Oparre benefit of the surgeon this time he complain throat. Mr. Ledward said there had been a moeth, which, though of having been large: found, yet the surgeon cancerous, and would lesion.

On the 31st, agreeab the inside of the vessel, in order to destroy better doing of which shore. They were mo cock-roaches, as these

The Natives Skill in Sur the Occasion—Captain Visit to an old Widow Natch, by Women—A Otateite—In view of another Situation—Vif

ON the 3d of Febru at another wrest put his arm out of unfortunate fall. The c Surgeon Ledward; bu about men took hold of t laying their feet against t chely replac'd. When much surpris'd as every, as they shew'd placed round a man, what they would broken. The you covered, there being a ticles, which proceede A little before sun-set part of the beach near ed themselves with

This day, at dinner, Tinah congratulated the captain on having recovered his men, but expressed some concern that they had not been brought by Oreepyah and Moannah; lest he should imagine they had not done every thing in their power. The captain, however, assured him, that he was perfectly satisfied of their good intentions to serve him, and that he already considered himself under many obligations to them for the trouble they had been at on his account. He learnt afterwards that they had actually seized and bound the deserters, but had been prevailed upon, by fair promises of their returning peaceably to the ship, to let them loose: the deserters, however, finding an opportunity to get possession of their arms again, setting the natives at defiance, revoked their promise.

On the 30th Isaac Martin, a seaman, was punished with nineteen lashes, for striking an Indian. This was a transgression of so serious a nature, and such a direct violation of the captain's orders, that he would on no account be prevailed on to forgive it, though several of the chiefs made great intercession for him.

As yet Oreepyah and Moannah were not returned from Tethuroa. This place is resorted to by the principal people of this part of Otaheite, at particular seasons, when fish are in great plenty there. It was described to the captain to be a group of small keys, surrounded by a reef: their produce is cocoa-nuts and plantains. During the season, bread-fruit, and other provisions, are daily carried over from Otaheite. When the deserters were there, not less than 100 sail of canoes were at Tethuroa.

The captain was constantly visited by Teppahoo and his wife: he had for some time past been ill, and had made Oparre his place of residence, for the benefit of the surgeon's advice and assistance. At this time he complained of a hoarseness and sore-throat. Mr. Ledward, on examining him, discovered there had been two holes in the roof of his mouth, which, though healed, had the appearance of having been large: the adjacent parts appeared found, yet the surgeon was of opinion that they were cancerous, and would no doubt bring on his dissolution.

On the 31st, agreeable to the captain's directions, the inside of the vessel was washed with boiling water, in order to destroy the cock-roaches; for the better doing of which the chests were removed on shore. They were more particular in killing the cock-roaches, as these vermin are very destructive

to plants. At this time there were no rats at Otaheite, though, when Capt. Cook was there, they were so plenty, that every house abounded with them: they were likewise so tame, that they never ran away from any one, but would flock round the people while at meals, and eat whatever was given to them. It is supposed that these rats were entirely destroyed by the breed of cats which were at that time left in Otaheite.

This day the captain, Tinah and his wife, after breakfast, went to Matavai. Tinah having made too free with the yava, was quite unfocible; but Iddeah, who was exceedingly cheerful, made ample amends for him. When they arrived at Poeno's house, the captain was very well pleased to find the bull and cow together, in a very fine pasture, and likely to increase. Some of the things which were sown in the garden had failed; others were in a very thriving state, particularly the Indian corn, two vines, a pine-apple plant, fig-tree, and some slips of a shaddock tree.

From this they proceeded to the garden at Point Venus. Here the hogs had almost destroyed every thing. Some Indian corn under ground, pease, and the Jamaica callico, green and oca, had escaped.

They now returned to the vessel, where there was a comfortable dinner prepared; by which Tinah was somewhat recovered from his intoxication. As soon as the cloth was removed, Tinah very seriously proposed to the captain to take him, his wife, and two attendants, to England. He said he was very desirous to see King George, who he was sure would be very glad to see him. The captain was not a little surpris'd at Tinah's proposal; but not willing absolutely to refuse his request, amused him with a promise that he would previously ask King George's permission to carry them to England, which when he obtained he would come in a larger vessel, and have such accommodations provided as would be necessary for their voyage.

It seems Tinah was very much in dread that his enemies would attack him, as soon as the vessel departed from Otaheite; and as his particular friend Teppahoo was indisposed, he naturally apprehended that his adversaries would be too powerful for him. The captain, however, to remove those fears, and prevent any future altercation, declared, that if any injury was offered to the people of Matavai and Oparre during his absence, he would revenge it on his return, and shew the transgressors no mercy.

CHAPTER V.

The Natives Skill in Surgery proved—An unfortunate Accident—Consequent Uneasiness—Tinah's Behaviour on the Occasion—Captain's Anger—Suggestions—Reconciliation—A short Heiwa performed for the Captain—A Visit to an old Widow Lady—An Entertainment in compliment of the Captain—A Disturbance—A Wrestling Match, by Women—A Theft—The Culprit taken and punished—Various Occurrences—They unmoor—Leave Otaheite—In view of the Island Huabeine—Visited by Canoes—Remarks—Anchor in Annamooka—Remove to another Situation—Visit—Thefts—They get under Sail—Between the Islands of Tofoa and Katoa.

ON the 3d of February the captain was present at another wrestling match; when a young man put his arm out of joint at the elbow, by an unfortunate fall. The captain immediately sent for Surgeon Ledward; but, before he arrived, three boat men took hold of the youth, and two of them clung their feet against his ribs, his arm was immediately replaced. When Mr. Ledward came, he expressed much surpris'e at their considerable skill in surgery, as they shewed by a number of sticks which they placed round a man's arm, and bound with a cord, what they would have done if the bone had been broken. The young man's arm was quite recovered, there being only a small swelling of the muscles, which proceeded from the strain.

A little before sun-set the inhabitants met at the end of the beach nearest the vessel, where they amused themselves with dancing, exercising the

lance, and other entertainments, till it was dark. This kind of merriment was quite common, every fine evening, and afforded no small diversion to the ship's company, who were constant spectators thereof.

The wind having now blown fresh in the night, they discovered on the 6th, at day-light, that the cable by which the ship rode was cut in such a manner near the water's edge, that only one strand remained whole. This gave the captain much concern, as the vessel was not only thereby endangered, but it might likewise occasion a coolness between the English and natives, who had been hitherto on such good terms. Tinah came on board while they were securing the vessel, and though the captain had no reason to suspect his fidelity, yet he thought it proper to insist upon a discovery, and that the offender should be immediately brought to him. The captain's anger on this occasion created universal alarm,

alarm, and Teppahoo and his family, with Tinah's father and mother, were so dismayed, that, notwithstanding there was violent rain, they immediately left Oparre, and retired to the mountains. However, Tinah and his wife remained, declaring their innocence, and upbraiding the captain for his unjust anger with them. Tinah promised to use his utmost endeavours in bringing the culprit to justice, but then he was apprehensive, as he, (and indeed the captain himself) suspected that it was one or more of the strangers who had come from other parts of the island, that if the offender was of the islands Eimeo, Tierraboo, or Attahooroo, he could not get him delivered up. The captain likewise imagined that this outrage might have been committed by some of the jealous strangers, more out of enmity to the people of Matavai and Oparre, than to him, in order perhaps to diminish that confidence and regard which were so long maintained on both sides, particularly too, as the captain had declared he would revenge any injury that was offered to them during his absence. However, the captain still retained his anger, in order to stimulate Tinah to a discovery. Afterwards indeed, the captain had very good reason to suspect that some of his own people were the offenders.

A stage was now erected, by order of the captain, on the fore-castle, that the centinel might have a better view of the cables; the watch was likewise increased.

Oreepyah returned in the afternoon from Tethuroa. He and Moannah were very near being lost in the bad weather; Moannah took shelter at Eimeo. Several of the canoes at this time were overfet.

On the 8th, Tinah and Iddeah, after being absent the whole preceding day, visited the captain, who assured him, that notwithstanding they had made a most diligent search, they were not able as yet to discover the offender; the captain not being satisfied, expressed great coolness, which hurt the feelings of Iddeah so much, that she burst into a flood of tears; upon this, the captain, melted with pity, resumed his former good humour, but strongly recommended to them, if ever they wished to see King George, or had any regard for him, to renew their search, and discover, if possible, the offender; this being promised, a reconciliation took place, of which word was sent to Otow and Teppahoo, whose return was now importuned.

In the afternoon the captain received an invitation from the Earec of Tierraboo, the S. E. division of Otahete, which, however, he declined, but sent him a handsome present by the messenger. This present indeed was sent at the instigation of Tinah, and it was observed, by Captain Bligh, with pleasure, that Tinah had given away the major part of the things he had given him, some he had bestowed through political views, and others out of friendship.

There being a grand heiva to be performed at Teitaha, where the presence of Teppahoo and his family were, consequently they took their leave of the captain on the tenth, and the next day some of the performers, stopping on their way, sent the captain a polite message, that if he pleased, they would stay a while and perform a short heiva for his entertainment. Captain Bligh having acquiesced, this heiva commenced with a dance by two young girls, while the drums and flutes were playing. After this they suddenly dropped all their dress, which was intended as a present for the captain, and made an abrupt departure. The men now began to dance, while the natives appeared more delighted than usual with this entertainment, it being in fact more indecent than the rest.

The captain now accompanied Tinah and his wife on a visit to an old widow lady, whose name was Wanow-ooro. There was great ceremony used upon their meeting; having just landed she was sitting on the beach by the head of her canoe. There was a priest and three men with Tinah, who had for an offering a young dog, a fowl, and two young plantain boughs. The old lady addressed herself in some

short sentences to Tinah, and his party, who were seated at a respectful distance, upon which they exchanged their offerings, her's being exactly the same of his. This curious ceremony being over, Tinah, no longer restrained, ran and embraced her in a most affectionate manner: she was conducted to a shed, where they staid for some time, Tinah having delivered orders that she and her attendants should be supplied with every thing they wanted. When the captain was preparing for his departure, he invited Wanow-ooro on board, but she declined his invitation on account of her age and weakness.

On the 13th a grand heiva was prepared, in compliment to the captain, by Tinah, and several strangers were arrived from all parts to be present at it. The captain went on shore, and a great multitude of people had already collected together, to behold the sight.

Tinah and several other chiefs came to meet the captain, while a ring was made at a little distance from their post. As soon as they were seated, the heiva began by a dance of women, and the several other ceremonies which are customary on this occasion: after this, the men proceeded to wrestle, and there being no longer any order, the captain was entreated by Otow to put a stop to the entertainment, as he suspected that some strangers, who were present, delighted to do them harm. The tumult and confusion became general, every one took to his arms, and the captain finding that his own power was insufficient to quell the riot, repaired to his post, and ordered all his men under arms. Tinah and Iddeah were exceedingly concerned about the captain for fear he should meet with some harm. Iddeah came to see him safe at his post, but declined staying under his protection; she promised, however, to return as soon as peace was restored; she had a double covering of cloth round her waist, which was girded with a large rope.

Two guns were fired from the vessel without any shot, by order of the captain. This had the desired effect, and the tumult in a short time ceased. Tinah and Iddeah now returned to the captain to let him know that all was quiet: these, and several of the chiefs went on board with the captain, and dined with him.

The captain went on shore again with Tinah and his friends. Tinah had ordered three large hogs to be dressed, and a quantity of bread-fruit provided before he went on board with the captain; these he now requested might be presented to the different parties, who had come to see the entertainment. Agreeable to Tinah's instructions, the captain presented one part thereof to the chief people of Attahooroo, another to the Arreoyos, and another to the performers of the heiva. They were received by the different parties with great thankfulness.

The hospitality of Tinah was always remarkable; he never let an opportunity slip of displaying his liberality when any of the principal people came either to visit him or see the vessel. He was more ready in giving than receiving presents, nor was there the least appearance of ostentation in his good nature; in short this amiable disposition made amends for his failings.

On the 16th the captain was invited to a wrestling match by women. Their mode of challenging, and method of attack, were just the same as practised by the men; the only difference was, that the women appeared rather more violent. Though there was no instance at present, nor during the captain's stay at Otahete, yet it was alleged that the women sometimes would wrestle with the men, and Iddeah was reported to be very famous in this exercise.

On the 17th the captain took a walk with Tinah to see his country residence, which lay towards the hills. The house was exceedingly neat, in a pleasant situation, surrounded by plantations.

On the 18th, the captain went to Matavai to look after the Indian corn, which he expected to be now full ripe for gathering. However on his arrival, he

found that the w
the natives.

Nothing materi
captain received a
ding from Iddeah
also brought a bun
on which were abo
in the carriage.

On the 25th Idde
which gave her g
ferred to send her
declined his assist
Tettaha to come ar

On the 2d of M
lived near the tent
and retired toward
when he landed,
bedding, and part
stolen in the night
plaint was immedi
sequence thereof w
A general alarm t
Some short time aft
from the vessel, wh
Tinah, Oreepyah, an
tant house, whence
to the callward. A
Captain Bligh, who
information of the
pursuit of him. It
brought that the cr
party soon after app
had been stolen, exc
had hold of the thi
captain. The capta
his party for the trou
on the injustice of t
particular in dealing
assured them, that if
the least offence, the
mished. Tinah embrac
and went immediat
while Captain Bligh,
an example of the off
tant island, ordered hi

They were now mal
and were supplied wit
of Tinah, who had dir
from the country on p
of being attacked aft
the captain to leave hi
mission, which were acc
ferred pillows to musk
would leave them a p
death could fight with
other. Oedidee was
Iddeah a bold resolut
capable of loading an
the most experienced f
On the 6th the mas
found Taowne harbour
intended departure hav
tives came from all p
some iron tools repaire
of Spanish iron were li
Earec of Teerraboo, in
adzes, which was acco
They had now a lo
winds, with a great de
nal canoes arrived from
of the Arreoyos, and th
an Arreoy woman, nam
stayed at Tethuroa aft
that place.

On the arrival of Hu
called Hocepippee was
consulted of visiting sev
mer. A present was ma
woman; and Tinah bei
present, which was ma

On the arrival of Hu
called Hocepippee was
consulted of visiting sev
mer. A present was ma
woman; and Tinah bei
present, which was ma

On the arrival of Hu
called Hocepippee was
consulted of visiting sev
mer. A present was ma
woman; and Tinah bei
present, which was ma

found that the whole was taken away by some of the natives.

Nothing material occurred till the 23d, when the captain received a present of a very fine taro pudding from Iddeah for their dinner to-day. Tinah also brought a bunch of bananas, that weighed 81 lb. on which were about 186 fine fruit. Some were lost in the carriage.

On the 25th Iddeah's youngest child was taken ill, which gave her great uneasiness. The captain offered to send his surgeon to look at him, but she declined his assistance, as she expected a man from Tettaha to come and inform her what to do.

On the 2d of March, the inhabitants who had lived near the tents, had now quitted their houses, and retired towards the mountains. The captain, when he landed, was informed that a water cask, bedding, and part of an azimuth compass, were stolen in the night from the post on shore. A complaint was immediately sent to Tinah, who in consequence thereof was afraid to visit the captain. A general alarm took place among the natives. Some short time after, the captain having returned from the vessel, where he breakfasted, he perceived Tinah, Oreepyah, and a number of people, at a distant house, whence they all marched, proceeding to the eastward. At this time Oedidee was with Captain Bligh, who said that they had just gained information of the thief, and were now gone in pursuit of him. In about an hour after word was brought that the criminal was seized. The whole party soon after appeared, with the articles which had been stolen, except the bedding; while Tinah had hold of the thief, whom he delivered up to the captain. The captain, after thanking Tinah and his party for the trouble they had taken, expatiated on the injustice of stealing from those who were so particular in dealing fair with them; for the captain assured them, that if any of his people offered them the least offence, they should be immediately punished. Tinah embraced the captain after his speech, and went immediately in search for the bedding, while Captain Bligh, thinking it prudent to make an example of the offender, who belonged to a distant island, ordered him a severe flogging.

They were now making preparations for sailing, and were supplied with a quantity of wood, by order of Tinah, who had directed trees to be brought down from the country on purpose. Tinah, apprehensive of being attacked after the vessel sailed, requested the captain to leave him some fire-arms and ammunition, which were accordingly promised; they presented pistols to muskets, and as the captain said he would leave them a pair, Tinah remarked that Iddeah could fight with one, and Oedidee with the other. Oedidee was an excellent marksman, and Iddeah a bold resolute woman, who was already capable of loading and firing a musket as well as the most experienced fowler.

On the 6th the master, Mr. Fryer, was sent to found Taowne harbour. The news of the captain's intended departure having been spread, several natives came from all parts of the islands, to have some iron tools repaired at the forge. Several pieces of Spanish iron were likewise sent by Waheatua, the Earee of Tearraboo, in order to be made into small axes, which was accordingly done.

They had now a long continuance of westerly winds, with a great deal of rain. On the 13th several canoes arrived from Tethuroa, with a large tribe of the Arreoyo, and the wife of Oreepyah, who is an Arreoyo woman, named Huheine Moyere. She stayed at Tethuroa after Oreepyah departed from that place.

On the arrival of Huheine Moyere, a ceremony called Hoocpippee was performed, which chiefly consisted of visiting several friends in a public manner. A present was made by Iddeah to the Arreoyo woman; and Tinah being absent, Iddeah received a present, which was made up by all the principal

people for young Otoo, the Earee Rahie. It was carried by 24 men on their shoulders, in baskets decorated with slips of cloth, which they had on each end of a pole.

On the 14th the captain was visited by an old man upwards of 70 years of age, who was held in great respect by all the natives. His nephew, Tupia, departed from these islands in 1769, in the Endeavour, and died at Batavia. He requested the captain, if ever he came again to Otaheite, to bring him a lock of his hair.

Teppahoo, the Earee of Tettaha, now published a prohibition against killing or selling hogs, there being very few in that district, so that it was deemed necessary they should have time to breed. As the captain was promised to be still supplied by his friends at Matavai and Oparre, notwithstanding the great consumption he had already occasioned, he did not think it prudent to solicit the favour at Tettaha, when contrary to the will of the Earee. The same prohibition was to take place at Matavai and Oparre, when the captain was gone; but, in compliment to him, it was generously postponed.

On the 19th, in the evening, the captain's clerk, Mr. Samuel, who had been two days absent on an excursion to the mountains, returned, and reported the tops of the high mountains were barren, but the rest were well covered with wood. He met with nothing remarkable.

On the 27th two parais, (or mourning dresses) which were long in preparation, were exhibited in Tinah's house. This was intended as a present to King George, and a long prayer in behalf of mutual friendship was made use of on the occasion. Tinah could not refrain from tears, when delivering it to the captain to take on board: indeed all the natives seemed affected with his departure.

The plants were now removed to the vessel: the roots had made their appearance through the bottom of the pots, and would doubtless have made their way into the ground, had it not been timely prevented. They were all in very good order, being in 74 pots, 39 tubs, and 24 boxes. The number of bread-fruit plants alone were 1015.

The weather became very fine, and there appeared a settled trade-wind. Hitherto they were constantly visited by several strangers, who came to take their leave. Some petty thefts were committed, chiefly owing to the negligence of the watch. Capt. Bligh now made his last presents to Teppahoo and other friends, several of whom, particularly Oedidee, earnestly requested to accompany him to England.

As the captain intended to sail early on the 4th of April, Tinah, Iddeah, and all their relations, came the preceding day and dined with him. The vessel was exceedingly crowded with natives, who brought great quantities of plantains, cocoa nuts, bread-fruit, hogs, goats, &c. This evening there was no entertainment, as before. Tinah, and his party, remained on board all night.

Early on the 4th they unmoored: the stock of the best bower anchor broken in stowing the anchor, it having been eaten very much by worms. Having weighed, they were obliged to tow the ship out of harbour with their boats and two sweeps, there being no wind. As this harbour was very narrow, only a few of the natives were permitted to stay on board: several, however, attended in their canoes, till the wind became strong, when they were obliged to take their leave. They stood off and on for the remainder of the day. The captain gave Tinah two muskets, a pair of pistols, and a good stock of ammunition: these, and the other presents, were, by the captain's orders, put into one of the ship's boats; upon which they took an affectionate leave of each other.

Having got sight of the Island Huheine on the 5th, they brought to near the entrance of Owharre Harbour, where they had a full view of the harbour. The natives imagined the vessel was coming into

into the harbour, but the captain did not choofe to anchor: it was therefore some time before they were visited by any. At last three men approached them in a canoe, who brought with them some cocoa-nuts: one of these diverted the captain exceedingly, by pretending, with great solemnity, that he was the Earec Rahic. The captain gave him some nails. Afterwards they were visited by a double canoe, which had ten men, one of whom, being a youth, recollecte the captain, and called him by his name. A number of canoes succeeded, of whom various articles were purchased.

While they were making sail, they perceived an Indian swimming towards the shore, which would have been a miracle if he had reached. They took him up and put him in a canoe which was very fortunately along-side. The captain understood that this man was insane, but could not learn by what means he came so far from land.

On the 6th they steered more to the westward, in hopes of reaching the Friendly Islands.

On the 9th they had very squally weather, and thick black clouds in the E. They saw a waterspout at a short distance, which derived no small advantage from the darkness of the clouds.

On the 11th they saw land to the S. S. W. about five leagues distant: it seemed an island of some height. They now stood to the N. W. In the evening they tacked to the southward, and perceived about nine keys, which were covered with trees. All this day they endeavoured to get near land, but could not, the wind being light and unfavourable. They had a heavy squall at night, which compelled them to clew up all their sails. A calm succeeded this.

They had variable winds with intervening calms on the 12th. About the afternoon they were within three miles of the southernmost key, where they were able to discern some inhabitants: they were soon visited by a canoe with four men, who did not betray any surprize on their meeting. The captain gave them some beads, and they came into the vessel: the leader, who was a man of greater consequence than any of the rest, and an Earec, examined the vessel with some curiosity, none of them however would venture into the cabin. Seeing one of the seamen with some broiled fresh pork in a bowl, they all partook thereof, with some boiled plantains. When the leader understood the captain was the chief of the vessel, he approached him and joined noses. After this he presented to him a large mother of pearl shell which hung round his neck: he was highly delighted at seeing the captain fasten it round his in the same manner.

The language was almost the same as at Otaheite. The name of the large island was Wytootackee, and the Earec was called Lomakkayah. They said that there were no hogs, dogs, or goats upon the island, nor had they yams or taro; but that plantains, cocoa-nuts, fowls, bread-fruit, and avces were there in great abundance. Notwithstanding they said that no hogs were on the island, it was evident they had seen such animals: for they called them by the same name as is given to them at Otaheite, which made the captain suspect that they were deceiving him. However, he ordered a young boar and sow to be put into their canoe, with some yams and taro, which articles being plenty, they could well spare. He also gave each of them a small adze, a knife, some beads, nails, a looking-glass, &c. The latter they examined with great curiosity; but with the iron-work they appeared to be well acquainted.

When preparing for their departure, the chief of the canoe took possession of every thing the captain had given to the others. One of them shewed some signs of dissatisfaction; but, after a little altercation, they joined noses, and were reconciled. It was thought they were all going to leave the ship; but only two of them went into the canoe, the other two purposing to stay on board all night, and to

have the canoe return for them in the morning. However it being explained to them that the ship might be driven from the island in the night, they reluctantly consented to leave them. They were very solicitous that somebody from the ship should go on shore with them; and just before they went, they gave the captain a wooden spear, which was a common long staff, pointed with the *toa* wood, and the only thing, except the paddles, that they had with them.

These people were tawowed across the arms and legs, but not on the loins or posteriors, like the people of Otaheite. From their knowledge of iron, they have doubtless communication with Hervey's Islands, which are not more than eighteen leagues distant from them. They seemed very friendly and inoffensive.

They proceeded to the westward with a breeze from the S. and on the 18th saw Savage Island, also, on the 21st the Island Caow, bearing from the mast-head N. W. by W. 3-4ths W. At noon it was about 19 leagues distant. This island, which is high, has a sharp-pointed top, and is the northernmost of the Friendly Islands.

They were not able to reach Annamooka till the 23d, where they anchored in 23 fathoms. They were soon visited by several canoes, who brought yams and cocoa-nuts, but none of the natives would come on board without first asking the captain's permission. They were also visited by a canoe from the Island Mango, wherein was a chief, called Latoomy lange, who dined with the captain.

This station not being convenient for watering, they moved more to the eastward on the 29th, and anchored in 21 fathoms. They were about half a league distant from shore.

They were now visited by several large sailing-canoes, which arrived from different islands in the neighbourhood of Annamooka; in these were two chiefs, whose names were Kunacappo and Noocahoo: there was an old lame man with them, called Tapa, whom the captain had been acquainted with in 1777, and with whom the captain was capable of conversing. From his information Captain Bligh understood that some of his old friends were at Tongataboo, and that all the cattle he had left there were still alive, and had bred. Tapa and the chiefs now examined the vessel, and expressed much surprize at seeing the bread-fruit and other plants. The captain made them each a present, and afterwards invited them to go on shore with him in his boat, which they readily complied with, and the captain took with him Nelson, in order to make his observation, and procure, if possible, some more bread-fruit plants.

As soon as they were landed, they were surrounded by two hundred people on the beach, the greater part of whom were women and children. Tapa supposing the captain would have a party on shore, as he had when he was there before, gave him the use of a large boat-house. During this excursion, the captain was very happy to find that the plants and seeds, which had been formerly sown here, were not thrown away. On the captain's return to the landing-place, an humble present of cocoa-nuts was brought him, with which he appeared perfectly satisfied, and gave the women and children beads and trinkets.

The captain invited the chiefs to dinner, and on his return to the vessel, he was happy to find that a brisk trade had been carried on. Several plantains and some bread-fruit were brought on board, but no hogs. Afterwards they purchased hogs with dogs, fowls, shadocks, &c. of other canoes, which contained about a hundred people. They had very fine large yams in great abundance, some of which weighed about forty-five pounds. In the afternoon they were visited by two of the name of Tubow, a family of great rank in the Friendly Islands, one of whom was a chief of the island Lafooga.

The captain chief and Tapa, in They found a nurse captain having ob his people to cut v to the vessel.

The natives he marks of mourning of hair, and likewise common to several. finger of their right about six years old.

On the 25th part get wood and water employed, when or an adze. This was mediate enquired could only recover r

On the 26th Nelson plants, but he was in his spade from him. grapnel was also ste in short, the native captain's people coul a principal chief am inhabitants in awe.

all his men on board, they unmoored, and At this time all the c

*Seachery and Villainy
The Resolution and A
Make for the Island?
-Captain's Suspicion
upon a small Allowan*

NOTWITHSTANDI

island Kotoo, with fired by some of the na surprize no canoes cam duced to the westward, night, in order to wind being then northe

On the 28th of April, day-light, Christian, w with the master at arms Beckett, a seaman, can while he was yet aslee secured him with cords

him if he made the lea who thus attacked the others at his cabin door curtains; the rest had m captain, upon enquiring

that, was insulted and a d in a very cruel man his shirt. In the in

had secured the i surgeon, Mess. Elip in confinement bel secured by centinel painter, boatswain, and (mark) on deck. The bo

Christian, who was at th the launch out, and destroyed if he did not done, Mr. Samu Hayward and Ha

The master, one of t requested permission to c leave, yet he was in a very short tim The captain endeavou to dissuade these i No. 18.

fooga. The captain took a walk on shore with this chief and Tapa, in order to explore a wooding-place. They found a number of very good trees; and the captain having obtained Tapa's permission to send his people to cut wood, took his leave and returned to the vessel.

The natives here were disfigured by numerous marks of mourning, such as bloody temples, the loss of hair, and likewise the loss of fingers, which was common to several. Some men wanted the middle finger of their right hand, and a number of boys about six years old had lost both their little fingers.

On the 25th parties were dispatched on shore, to get wood and water. They had scarce been an hour employed, when one of them lost an axe, another an adze. This was made known to Tapa, who immediately enquired into the business: however, they could only recover the axe.

On the 26th Nelson went on shore to get some plants, but he was insulted by the natives, who took his spade from him. Tapa recovered this. A boat's grapnel was also stolen from the watering party: in short, the natives were so numerous, that the captain's people could do nothing, except they had a principal chief among them, who could keep the inhabitants in awe. The captain, therefore, ordered all his men on board, and prepared to sail. At noon they unmoored, and were under sail at one o'clock. At this time all the chiefs were on board, and the

captain informed them that unless the grapnel was restored, he was determined to detain them in the vessel: at this they were greatly surprised and alarmed. Canoes were dispatched in order to recover it; but as the chief was gone off to another island, there was no possibility of getting it till the next day. The captain, however, detained the chiefs till sun-set, when they began to be so very uneasy, that they cried bitterly, and beat their faces in a terrible manner. Capt. Bligh seeing their distress, and being now assured that they were innocent of the theft, gave them not only their liberty, but several presents of no small value to them. Their joy was now as great as their sorrow had been before, and they departed in their canoes with no little satisfaction, having taken leave of Capt. Bligh in a most cordial and affectionate manner.

They had now light and variable winds, with which they stood to the northward all night.

On the 27th they were between the islands of Tofoa and Kotoo.

Hitherto they had a prosperous and pleasant voyage, and the captain was solacing himself with the pleasing hopes of having completed an undertaking adequate to the wishes of all the proprietors. But an unexpected change ensued, which totally destroyed those wishes, and exposed Capt. Bligh to imminent danger.—This we have reserved for our second book.

BOOK II.

CHAPTER I.

Treachery and Villainy of some of the Captain's People, who mutiny—The cruel Manner in which they treat him—The Resolution and Attention of the Clerk—Capt. Bligh, and eighteen of his People, sent adrift in the Boat—Make for the Island Tofoa—Their Intentions—Supplies procured with great Difficulty—Treachery of the Natives—Captain's Suspicions—An Attack meditated—Their Escape—They proceed to New Holland—Agree to live upon a small Allowance till their Arrival.

NOTWITHSTANDING they kept near the island Kotoo, with expectations of being visited by some of the natives, yet to their very great surprise no canoes came off to the vessel. They now steered to the westward, intending to keep this course all night, in order to pass to the S. of Tofoa, the wind being then northerly.

On the 28th of April, early in the morning, before day-light, Christian, who had the morning watch, with the master at arms, gunner's mate, and Thobekett, a seaman, came into the captain's cabin, while he was yet asleep, and having seized him, secured him with cords, and threatened to destroy him if he made the least noise. Besides these four who thus attacked the captain, there were three others at his cabin door. Christian was armed with cut-throats; the rest had muskets and bayonets. The captain, upon enquiring the motives for proceeding thus, was insulted and abused, and his hands being tied in a very cruel manner, he was forced on deck in his shirt. In the interim, the other party of mutineers had secured the master, master's mate, gunner, surgeon, Mess. Elphinstone and Nelson, were kept in confinement below, and the fore hatchway was secured by centinels. They now ordered the carpenter, boatwain, and Mr. Samuel, (the captain's clerk) on deck. The boatwain was commanded by Christian, who was at the head of these rebels, to cast the launch out, and threatened to be instantly destroyed if he did not immediately obey. This being done, Mr. Samuel and two midshipmen, Mess. Hayward and Hallet, were ordered into the launch.

The master, one of those confined below, now requested permission to come on deck; though he obtained leave, yet he was ordered back again to his cabin in a very short time.

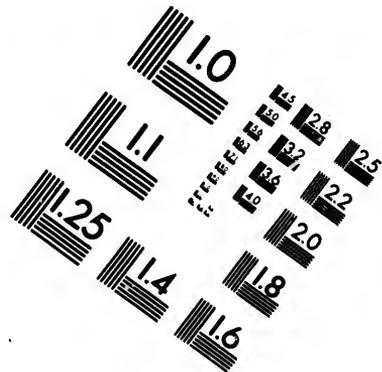
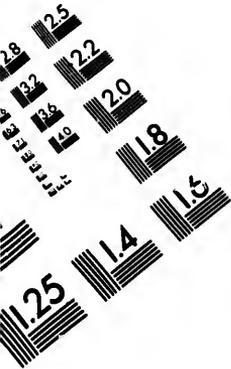
The captain endeavoured, by the most gentle means, to dissuade these infatuated men from those

base acts of violence: but all his solicitations were ineffectual. Christian, having changed his cut-throats for a bayonet, took a strong hold of the cord which tied the captain's hands, and threatened most violently to kill him on the spot, if he did not be quiet. The rest of the villains who guarded the captain had their pieces cocked and bayonets fixed. Several were now hurried into the boat, while the boatwain and some of the seamen who were to join them were permitted to stay on board awhile, in order to collect lines, canvas, twine, sails, &c. These men got a 28 gallon cask of water, about 150 lb. of bread, a little wine and rum, a quadrant and compass. The captain's map, ephemeris, book of observations, sextant, time-keeper, with all his drawings, surveys, &c. they would not let out of the ship. Mr. Samuel exerted his utmost to get them, but in vain; happily, however, he had secured the captain's journals, commission, and some material ship papers, which he did with surprising resolution, though strictly watched and guarded. The carpenter, after much dispute, was permitted to take his tool chest. Christian was for a long time determining within himself, whether he should detain the carpenter or his mates: however, upon giving the preference to the latter, the carpenter was ordered to join the rest in the boat.

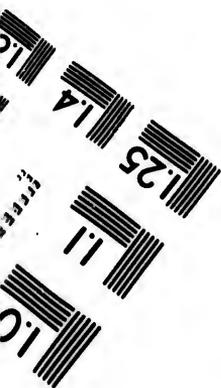
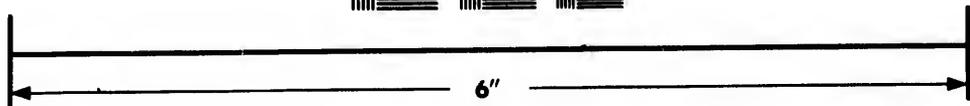
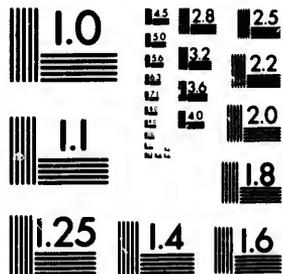
During the whole business, there was a great altercation among the mutineers. After they had forced those of the seamen into the boat whom they did not choose to keep, Christian ordered a dram to be served to every one of his own people. After this the officers were called upon deck, and forced over the side into the boat, while the captain was kept apart from every one abaft the mizen-mast, still held by Christian, who was armed with a bayonet: the guard round him had uncocked their pieces, on the captain's daring them to fire.

The captain was exceedingly thirsty, and one of





**IMAGE EVALUATION
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic
Sciences
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WESTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503

the guard, Isaac Merlin, who was inclined to serve him, fed him with shaddock. This man's partiality being observed, he was immediately removed from the captain. Afterwards he attempted to leave the vessel; and get into the boat; he was, however, by compulsion, obliged to join the mutineers: likewise Joseph Coleman, the armourer, and McIntosh and Norman, two carpenters, were detained against their will. This they declared to the captain, upon their separation. One Michael Byrne, also, wanted to get into the boat.

Neither persuasions nor remonstrances had any effect. The captain was not only thus abused, but they made a laughing-stock of his helpless situation. He asked for arms, but they told him he was so well acquainted with the people to whom he was going, that he could not want for any. Christian, being informed by the master at arms that the officers and men were in the boat, informed Captain Bligh that he must go with him, declaring that if he shewed the least reluctance, he should be put to death. Accordingly, he was forced by a tribe of armed russians over the side, where they untied his hands. Upon this the boat was veered astern by a rope. The mutineers threw them some pieces of pork, clothes, &c. likewise four cutlasses, notwithstanding their previous denial of arms. Thus, after being insulted and ridiculed, the captain and eighteen of his people were cast adrift in the wide ocean, while Christian and 24 others, the most able men of the ship's company, kept possession of the vessel, and steered in sight of the boat to the W. N. W. This the captain believed to be done in disguise, for after they were all put into the boat he heard some of the mutineers cry "huzza for Otaheite."

Notwithstanding the villainy and ingratitude of Christian, yet the recollection of the many kindnesses which the captain had shewn him produced some signs of remorse. When the captain remonstrated with him, and reminded him of the many instances of friendship which he had received from him, he appeared greatly disturbed, stopped him from proceeding, and frequently exclaimed that he was in hell!

After some little reflection, the captain endeavoured to recover his spirits, from a consideration that one day or other he should be able to account to his king and country for the present unexpected misfortune. Having very little wind, they rowed pretty fast towards Tofoa, bearing N. E. about 10 leagues distant.

It is wonderful how secretly the mutineers had planned their intentions. About thirteen of those who were with the captain in the boat had lived forward among the seamen, and never observed the smallest circumstance that could lead to any suspicion; even the captain himself was on the most friendly terms with Christian. On the very day he put his villainy into execution, he was engaged to dine with the captain: he was likewise invited the preceding night to sup with him, but evaded the invitation by pretending he was very ill, which being believed, for his honour and integrity were never suspected, gave the captain much uneasiness.

The captain's motive for going to Tofoa was to get a supply of bread-fruit and water, and afterwards to proceed to Tongataboo, and solicit the King Poulaho for leave to equip a boat, and furnish themselves with a necessary stock of provisions, in order to enable them to make for the East-Indies: what they had at present in the boat was very insufficient for their subsistence, there being only 1 solb. of bread, 16 pieces of pork, each piece weighing upon an average two pounds, six quarts of rum, six bottles of wine, 28 gallons of water, and four empty barricoes.

There being a moderate easterly breeze, they were able to sail, but did not reach Tofoa till it was dark. After some fruitless efforts, they were obliged to

give up all thoughts of landing, the shore exceedingly steep and rocky, and there being no anchorage, they were forced to keep the boat to the lee with two oars. Thus determined for the night, they took their repose as well as the fortunate circumstances would permit, each having been allowed half a pint of grog for the support of his spirits.

On the 29th, as soon as day appeared, they proceeded along shore, to find, if possible, a landing place. They discovered a cove with a rocky point at the N. W. part of the island, after some search they found a place where the rocks were not so high: here, within twenty yards of the shore, they dropped the grapnel. A great surf ran on the beach, however, as their unhappy situation could not admit of much delay, they were resolved on attempting, let the attempt be ever so hazardous. Accordingly, Mr. Samuel, and some others, landed, who climbed the cliffs, and by their assistance got into the country, where they began to search about for supplies. The rest, who were in the boat, still kept their situation, there being no other way as yet discovered into the country. Mr. Samuel and his party returned about noon: they had discovered no natives, but there were signs that the place was inhabited. They likewise despaired of getting a sufficient supply of water, there being no fresh water, however they brought with them a little, which they had found in holes. Seeing that there was no certainty of obtaining a speedy supply, they deemed it expedient to be very sparing of what there was: their allowance, therefore, for this dinner, was, a small bit of bread, and a glass of rum. Notwithstanding this calamitous condition, they kept up their spirits, and behaved with uncommon resolution, which afforded no small comfort to the captain.

Though the weather was very fair, yet as there was a smart breeze from the E. S. E. they did not venture to sea. The captain being determined to keep their first stock entire as long as possible, was likewise resolved to take advantage of the calm, and make further endeavours to get relief from this island: accordingly, they went ashore and rowed along shore. After a long look they discovered at last some cocoa-nut trees, growing on the top of high precipices; and, notwithstanding it was very dangerous landing, on account of the surf, yet their necessities enabled them to counter their difficulties, and having climbed the cliffs, some of them got about 20 cocoa-nuts, others slung them to ropes, by which they were hauled into the boat through the surf. They returned to their former situation, as they find none more commodious than this cove, and now partook of a cocoa-nut each for their dinner and went to rest.

On the 30th both wind and weather were such that having made a fruitless attempt to sail they were obliged to return and remain in the boat. They were now determined to get into the country by climbing the cliffs, as Mr. Samuel and his party had done before; previous to which each was allowed a spoonful of rum, and a bit of bread. The natives, for the purpose of ascending the precipices, had thereto fixed long vines, by means of which the captain, Mess. Samuel, Nelson, and others, landed. They found some deserted huts, and a plantain walk, but in such an uncultivated manner that three small bunches of plantains could only be collected from it. In advancing further, they descended a deep gully, that led towards a mountain volcano. In hopes of finding some water they made diligent search; but could only find about nine gallons from the place. After searching further on without any success, this being exceedingly barren and dreary, they were much fatigued to the boat. The captain being faint, that had it not been for the assistance

people, he would never have been able to have defended the precipice. Being now all assembled about noon, each man partook of an ounce of pork, two plantains, and half a glass of wine. Those who remained in the boat during the captain's excursion, had been employed in looking for fish, but without any success.

It being determined that another party should take a different route in the afternoon, in hopes of meeting with some natives who might assist them, they accordingly set out, but returned in the evening, as unsuccessful as those who had gone before, and equally fatigued.

There was a cave about 150 yards from the water-side, at the head of the cove: the distance across the stony beach was about an hundred yards. As there was no danger of being surprised in this situation, the captain was determined to remain on shore this night with a part of his people, that the rest might have more room in the boat, and consequently enjoy a more comfortable night's repose. The master, in the boat, was directed to lie at a grapple, and be very vigilant in case of any attack. After some other necessary directions, the captain and his party repaired to the cave; and having kindled a good fire, which they kept up all night, they boiled a few plantains, and after a scanty supper upon one plantain and a pint of grög each, they fixed the watches, and settled themselves for the night.

Early the next day (May 1st) they took a different road again, in hopes of making some discovery: during this journey they suffered greatly for want of water: however, they met with four natives, two men, a woman, and a child. The captain used every means of procuring the friendship of these two men, who accompanied him and his people to the cave, having brought with them two cocoa-nut shells of water. After this they went, by the captain's desire, for more water; also some bread-fruit, plantains, &c. They were visited shortly after this by other natives, and about noon there were no less than thirty assembled, from whom they obtained some small relief. The captain, being still determined not to use any of the bread or water in the boat, issued about one ounce of pork, and a quarter of a bread-fruit, with half a pint of water to each man for dinner.

The natives with whom they had seen, were very kind and honest. They fold the provisions which they brought, for a few buttons and beads: there was no particular chief among them. It having been planned among the captain and his people, that they should conceal the unfortunate circumstance of the mutiny, for fear of creating evil designs among the natives; accordingly when these people enquired about the vessel, they pretended that she had overfeted and sunk, and that the rest of the crew had perished. The natives believed this story, though they neither expressed joy or sorrow on the occasion, only some little surprize. It was the captain's intention to stay here as long as there could be any thing got, and then put to sea as soon as ever the wind and weather were favourable. Several of the natives were coming and going the whole afternoon; they brought a very small quantity of water, but a sufficiency of cocoa-nuts, plantains, and bread-fruit for another day. They enquired very much after nails, but as this article was too valuable at present to be parted with, the captain pretended that they had none. Some cocoa-nuts and bread-fruit were likewise purchased of a canoe which came in with four men.

The natives having evidently very little to spare, by the small quantities they brought, the captain no longer flattered himself with hopes of procuring a sufficiency here to stock them for their voyage: notwithstanding, he was very happy to find that their stock of provisions was somewhat increased.

At sunset the natives left them in quiet possession of the cove, which led them to expect another visit the next day, and a further supply of water and food, with which they were determined to fail as soon as possible.

At night they kindled a fire as before, and fixed the watch, then, after their scanty allowance, went to repose.

The captain's people now became more cheerful than before, and being unanimously determined to exert their utmost, in hopes of surmounting their present difficulties, they bore all their distresses with remarkable fortitude and resignation.

On the 2d, early in the morning, the captain dispatched a party of his people with empty shells, to see if they could possibly get some water among the gullies in the mountains. During their absence the captain was visited by a greater number of natives than he had seen the preceding day, two canoes likewise came in from round the N. side of the island: in one of which was an old chief, whose name was Macca-ackavow. Another good-looking chief, called Eefow, accompanied the party, who had been in search of water. These chiefs had a knowledge of the captain, having known that he was with Captain Cook, and likewise heard of his being at Annamooka: the captain made each of these chiefs a present. There was likewise a youth (whose name was Negeete) who recollected Captain Bligh immediately, having seen him at Annamooka. This young man expressed much happiness at their meeting. Eefow promised to accompany the captain to Tongataboo, as soon as the weather was fine, to see Poulaho and Tecnow, who were there.

Notwithstanding the natives were now so kind and affable, yet the captain soon after discovered their secret intentions to plunder him. As this time they were very numerous, and attempted to haul the boat on shore; upon which the captain brandished his cutlass, and desired Eefow, the chief, to command them to be quiet. This he did, and immediately they desisted.

A party of the captain's people had now procured about three gallons of water in the mountains. While they were absent, the captain bought up all the bread-fruit that was brought to them, and likewise some spears to arm his men with, as he was unwilling to trust to the four cutlasses, two of which were in the boat. They now employed their time in getting off to the boat the articles which they had purchased, while they heard a continual knocking of stones among the natives, which is the certain sign of an intended attack. However, the captain still appeared on the most friendly terms with the chiefs, with whom he shared his scanty allowance. They were very anxious for the captain to sit down, but this he declined, being aware of their evil intentions, for both Nelson and the captain himself suspected that their design was to catch hold of him whenever they had an opportunity; to avoid which, he sat his dinner standing, keeping a vigilant eye over all their motions: after dinner they got their things into the boat by degrees, the natives still continuing to encrease, and making preparations for their stay in the cove all night. They kindled fires and held consultations among themselves, which rendered their intentions more apparent. The captain immediately dispatched orders to the master to keep the boat as near the shore as possible, that they might the more easily embark, when they were ready for their departure. While the captain was sending his journal down to the boat, which he had on shore, in order to write down the occurrences, one of the natives attempted to snatch it, but was prevented by the gunner. Their hostile intentions were now palpable, and every one on shore with the captain, as soon as he gave the word, which was about sunset, immediately secured what-

the people were
next day (May 3)
storm, by the fiery
in a short time after.
Their distress and
great, particularly as
was very near being
re, ordered all the
to be thrown over-
board sails, by which
ably lightened, and
to the water
an opportunity, they
h the carpenter very
tool-chest was like-
purpose.

dingly wet and cold,
person a spoonful of
fruit, (which at other
deemed eatable) for
ed to make the pro-
and therefore seriously
to their agreement.
N. E. to E. S. E. and
they were still obliged
fear the boat would
g: the night was so
rely make use of their
er, they derived great
f rum, which the cap-
person.

d a small flat island of
W. S. W. about five
ch person had his share
nich was the allowance

aw other islands, and
oned about eight, bear-
V. to N. W. by N. the
agues distant. At this
te, and they proceeded
een the islands. In the
ree more; to the south-
reef-sail, they steered.
per a few broken pieces
they had a comfortable
y fair.

w pieces of yams, which
r breakfast. After this
a great part of which,
l rotten, but which not-
y glad to keep for use,
ome of it, and a quarter

covered two islands, one
leagues distant, and the
ight ditto. They steered
ernmost, and having pil-
the night to the N. W.

was very moderate from
er remarkably fine. They
y in the morning from
nd to N. E. by E. They
in the N. W. At twelve
and, about two miles dis-
S. 3-4th W.

for his dinner a quarter
ilk, and the meat, which
They were very happy
but terribly disappointed
hile endeavouring to take

ands, between which the
eared very extensive an-
eight: towards night the
between them, about
shore. They now fell
there was only four
wat

water, without the least indication thereof, to give
any warning. It seemed to extend about a mile on
each side of them. This night they proceeded W.
by N. and each person had for supper an ounce of
damaged bread and a quarter of a pint of water.

They were now put on watch and watch, in
order to afford more room to those whose turn it
was to lie down, which they did on the boats
bottom or the chest, without any covering; by
which means they were so constantly wet and cold
that they could scarcely move when they got up.

On the 7th, it being a very raw disagreeable
morning, they had a spoonful of rum and a bit of
bread for breakfast.

On approaching the land, which lay in the W.
they perceived some curious rocks, which had a
variety of forms. The land, being high and low
in different places, and a great deal covered with
wood, was exceedingly pleasant to the view. There
being some small rocky islands off the N. E. part,
they proceeded between these and an island about
four leagues to the N. E. They were suddenly set
very near to the rocky islands, by an unexpected
lee current, which, by the dint of good rowing,
they got clear of, having passed close to the reef
that surrounded them. Being now followed by
two large sailing canoes, which appeared very eager
in their pursuit, they rowed with the utmost expedi-
tion, as they were apprehensive of some bad designs.

They had now a great deal of rain, thunder, and
lightning, with light winds at N. N. E. Only one
of the canoes gained upon them, but gave over
chase in the afternoon, when within two miles dis-
tance of them.

It could not be ascertained whether the inten-
tions of these people were friendly or hostile; how-
ever, though they might have benefited by their
intercourse, yet, as they were in a defenceless
situation, it would not have been at all prudent to
have run a risk of their enmity.

By means of the rain, which became very heavy
at four o'clock, they increased their stock of water
considerably, having, besides, fully quenched their
thirst for the first time since they had been at sea.
However they suffered by the rain as well as be-
nefited, being so extremely wet all night as to bring
on severe fits of cold and shivering. As soon as
the weather became fine they stripped and dried
their clothes.

On the 8th they had for dinner an ounce and a
half of pork, a tea-spoonful of rum, half a pint of
coconut milk, and an ounce of bread. They
were never able to catch any fish, though they saw
great numbers of them.

They cleaned the boat in the afternoon, and got
every thing as dry as possible. At night they had
their usual allowance for supper.

On the 9th, in the afternoon, they fitted a pair
of shrouds for each mast, and contrived a canvas
weather-cloth round the boat, and raised the quar-
ters about nine inches, by nailing on the seats of
the stera-sheets, which they found of great benefit.

They had very fine weather now, and a mode-
rate wind in the S. E. quarter, till evening, when
the weather suddenly changed, and they had very
heavy rain, with thunder and lightning. As they
were exceedingly wet and cold each person had a
tea-spoonful of rum. The wind increasing, and
the weather still continuing bad, they got no sleep
this night; however, at midnight, they caught
about twenty gallons of water. The succeeding
day was equally disagreeable. They were now
obliged to steer where they could, and to keep be-
fore the waves, for fear the boat should fill: they
were likewise obliged to keep two men constantly
bailing the water, the sea broke so very high. This
day each person had half an ounce of pork for
dinner. The allowance regularly served to each
person was 1-2 3/4th of a pound of bread and a quar-

No. 18.

ter of a pint of water, three times, for breakfast,
dinner, and supper.

The rain abated somewhat at noon; the wind,
however, still continued strong from S. S. E. to
S. E. The weather was very squally, and the sea
broke very high.

On the 11th, having suffered greatly from the
cold and rain of the preceding night, each person
had a tea-spoonful of rum. They were now obliged
to bale with all their strength, as the sea frequently
ran over their stern. The sun having appeared
about noon gave them much consolation, and they
partook of their scanty allowance with as much
satisfaction as possible; this night, however, was
equally dreadful as the preceding, and they ex-
perienced the same toil, danger, and uneasiness,
which rendered them full of complaints the next
day. They had their usual quantity of rum with
their daily allowance. About noon it was calm,
and no sun to be seen. They now steered for the
northward of the New Hebrides. The rain still
continued, and they had heavy squalls in the after-
noon, the wind blowing from the southward.
They were so exceedingly wet and cold that they were
all obliged to strip, and wring their clothes through
the salt water, which afforded them some little
warmth. They were obliged constantly to bale,
and the rum being nearly expended, their allow-
ance thereof was denied. The succeeding day
being equally disagreeable, added still more to their
troubles.

On the 14th the rain still continued, with gloomy
weather. They had some smart breezes at S. E.
Early this morning they discovered four islands
from S. W. by S. about eight leagues distant, to
N. W. by W. three-quarters W. six ditto. All these
islands were high, but one remarkably so. They
saw another small island, and some rocks, about
noon, bearing N. W. by N. about four leagues;
also another W. eight ditto. They passed the
westernmost island about four in the afternoon.

On the 15th before day-break, they discovered
another island bearing N. N. W. about five leagues
distant. They also saw a number of oceanic birds.

These islands were at first imagined to be a part
of the New Hebrides, but the captain afterwards
believed them to be a new discovery. They were
inhabited, as smoke was seen in several places, and
appeared exceedingly fertile.

The rainy weather still continued, the wind at
S. E. The night was so very dark that they could
scarcely see to steer, while the sea broke exceedingly
high.

On the 16th, in addition to their scanty allowance
for dinner, each person was indulged with an ounce
of salt pork. There being some little sunshine;
they were in hopes of being able to dry their wet
cloaths, but the rain soon returned, with strong
breezes at S. E. by S. The night was very dread-
ful, so dark that they did not know where they
were steering, while they had repeated storms of
thunder and lightning.

Every one complained the next day, having suf-
fered greatly from the exercise and fatigue of the
preceding night. The captain was frequently folli-
cited for an extra-allowance, but knowing the
great necessity of being economical in this their
unhappy situation, he peremptorily refused. How-
ever when they suffered more than usual from the
severity of the nights, they had each a tea-spoonful,
and sometimes two, of what little rum there was
remaining. They had also this day, in addition to
their allowance, an ounce of pork. At noon a
water-spout was very near on board them. This
night was also dark and dismal, and the sea very
high.

On the 18th the rain abated, but the night was
equally dreadful.

They had now very severe weather till the 23d,
during

ever belonged to him, and carried it to the boat. The chief stopped the captain, and enquired if he would not stay with them all night. The captain excused himself, by saying his presence was wanting in the boat; but, in hopes to amuse him, promised to trade with them the next day, if the weather permitted; likewise to go along with them to Tongataboo, according to agreement. Macca-ackavow, being offended that the captain would not sleep on shore, declared openly that they would kill him, and immediately departed. Eefow likewise left the captain, and they were now making preparations to commence the attack, by knocking stones together as before. The captain (while he and his people were walking down the beach full of apprehensions) took Nageete by the hand, who said would have detained the captain, under pretence of speaking to Eefow; but his treacherous intention of promoting the attack was apparent, and Capt. Bligh was determined to kill him on the spot, if they had begun at that time. The carpenter had orders not to quit Capt. Bligh till all his people were in the boat. When Nageete found that the captain was absolutely determined upon departing, he broke loose and left him.

They were now all got into the boat except one man, who obstinately quitted the boat while the captain was getting on board, and ran up the beach to cast the stern-fast off: notwithstanding the master and others repeatedly called to him, while assisting the captain into the boat, yet he did not return. Upwards of 200 men began the attack, which was instantaneous, and the unfortunate wretch who had quitted the boat fell a sacrifice to their rage. A furious shower of stones took place, and several of the Indians got hold of the stern, and would undoubtedly have dragged the boat on shore, had not the captain very fortunately a knife in his pocket, with which he immediately cut the rope. They now hauled off to the grapnel, the stones still flying about, with which they were all more or less hurt. They now filled their canoes with stones, in which twelve daring fellows set off in pursuit of the boat to renew the attack. The captain and his people were very near being defeated; their grapnel was foul, but the fluke broke, and having got to the oars, they fortunately pulled to sea. However, those men who were in the canoes paddled round them, and continued the attack, which those in the boat were obliged to sustain, having no method of returning it, except by the stones which entered the boat, but which were very insufficient for their defence: the boat being likewise very heavy, they could not clofe, of which the assassins took every advantage: however, the captain threw overboard some clothes, which, according to his expectation, they stopped to take up, during which the boat made as rapid advances as possible, and it being now almost dark, the men in the canoe gave over the attack, and returned to shore.

The captain began to think, by the wanton behaviour of these natives, how very unavailing his visit would be to Poulabo, and withal how dangerous, seeing that for the want of fire-arms, which always kept these people in terror, he should probably be exposed to further insults. Having set their sails, they steered along shore by the W. side of the island Tofoa, with a fresh easterly wind. After much rumination on their unhappy condition, they had but little hopes of relief, except at New Holland, till their arrival at Timor, which was 1200 leagues, where there was a Dutch settlement. Their stock of provisions was now examined, and it was agreed upon by all to live each day upon one ounce of bread, and a quarter of a pint of water. Provisions, which were but scanty at first, were now considerably decreas'd by the confusion of the attack: however, they bore their loss with the greatest patience, and having got the boat, which was small

and deep laden, into some order, the people were divided into watches. Early the next day (May 3) there was a strong indication of a storm, by the fiery redness of the sun, which began in a short time after, while the sea ran very high. Their distress and danger were at present very great, particularly as their bread (which was in bags) was very near being spoiled. The captain, therefore, ordered all the clothes which could be spared to be thrown overboard, with some rope and spare sails, by which means the boat was considerably lightened, and they were thereby better enabled to balt the water out. As soon as they had an opportunity, they put the bread into a chest which the carpenter very fortunately had on board; his tool-chest was likewise appropriated to the same purpose.

The people were now exceedingly wet and cold, so that the captain gave each person a spoonful of rum, with a quarter of a bread-fruit, (which at other times they would not have deemed eatable) for dinner: the captain was resolved to make the provisions last for eight weeks, and therefore seriously exhorted his men to continue to their agreement.

The wind was now from N. E. to E. S. E. and the weather tempestuous. They were still obliged to keep baling the water, for fear the boat would fill; which was very fatiguing: the night was so very cold, that they could scarcely make use of their limbs the next day: however, they derived great benefit from a tea-spoonful of rum, which the captain at this time allowed each person.

On the 4th they discovered a small flat island of a tolerable height, bearing W. S. W. about five leagues distant. This day each person had his share of five small cocoa-nuts, which was the allowance for all their dinners.

About two o'clock they saw other islands, and between three and four reckoned about eight, bearing from S. round by the W. to N. W. by N. the nearest being about four leagues distant. At this time the wind was moderate, and they proceeded to the N. W. by W. between the islands. In the evening they discovered three more; to the southward of which, under a reefed-sail, they steered. They had this night for supper a few broken pieces of bread-fruit; after which they had a comfortable repose, this night being very fair.

On the 5th they had a few pieces of yams, which were found in the boat, for breakfast. After this they examined their bread, a great part of which, being damaged, they found rotten, but which notwithstanding they were very glad to keep for use, having dined that day on some of it, and a quarter of a pint of water.

In the evening they discovered two islands, one bearing W. by S. about six leagues distant, and the other N. W. by N. about eight ditto. They steered to windward of the northernmost, and having past it, resumed their course for the night to the N. W. and W. N. W.

On the 6th the wind was very moderate from the E. N. E. and the weather remarkably fine. They saw a number of islands early in the morning from S. S. E. to the W. and round to N. E. by E. They were resolved to pass those in the N. W. At twelve they saw a small sandy island, about two miles distant, bearing from E. to S. 3-4ths W.

This day each person had for his dinner a quarter of a pint of cocoa-nut milk, and the meat, which was about two ounces. They were very happy in having hooked a fish; but terribly disappointed afterwards in losing it, while endeavouring to take it into the boat.

In the evening the islands, between which they steered to the N. W. appeared very extensive and fruitful, and of a good height: towards night they were very near mid-way between them, about five leagues distant from each shore. They now fell in with a coral bank, where there was only four feet

water, without the any warning. It is each side of them.

by N. and each per-

damaged bread and

They were now

order to afford mo-

was to lie down,

bottom or the che-

which means they w-

that they could fear-

On the 7th, in the

morning, they had a

bread for breakfast.

On approaching t-

they perceived some

variety of forms.

in different places,

wood, was exceeding

being some small ro-

they proceeded betw-

four leagues to the N

very near to the roc-

lee current, which, i-

they got clear of, h-

that surrounded them

two large sailing cano-

in their pursuit, they fr-

tion, as they were appr-

They had now a gre-

lightning, with light v-

of the canoes gained up

chase in the afternoon,

tance of them.

It could not be sta-

tions of these people w-

ever, though they mig-

intercourse, yet, as t-

situation, it would not

have run a risk of their

By means of the rain

at four o'clock, they en-

considerably, having b-

thrift for the first time.

However they suffered

sited, being so extremel-

on severe fits of cold a-

the weather became s-

their clothes.

On the 8th they had

half of pork, a tea-spo-

cocoa-nut milk, and a

were never able to catch

great numbers of them.

They cleaned the boat

every thing as dry as po-

their usual allowance for

On the 9th, in the af-

of shrouds for each m-

weather-cloth round the

ters about nine inches,

the stern-streets, which

They had very fine w-

rate wind in the S. E. o-

the weather suddenly ch-

heavy rain, with thunder

were exceedingly wet an-

tea-spoonful of rum.

the weather still continu-

this night; however, a-

about twenty gallons of

day was equally disagr-

obliged to steer where th-

fore the waves, for fear

were likewise oblig-

ing the water, the sea

day each person had h-

dinner. The allowance

person was 1-2 5th of a p-

No. 18.

during which time they were occasionally allowed two tea-spoonfuls of rum. The rain was at times so very heavy, that they were apprehensive it would fill the boat, and were constantly obliged to keep baling, and by the frequent breaking of the sea, they were frequently prevented from taking advantage of the rain, by adding somewhat to their stock of fresh water. They were frequently filled with horror and dismay, and the captain became apprehensive that some of his people would perish.

Though the weather became fair about noon on the 23d, still it blew very hard, and the sea was very high: however the wind moderated towards evening, and they eat their scanty supper with more cheer than usual. This night was very fair.

On the 24th, for the first time this fortnight, they enjoyed the comfortable warmth of the sun. They stripped, and hung their clothes up to dry. They took this opportunity of examining the state of their bread, and, according to the consumption that was made, found a sufficiency for one month longer, by which time the captain hoped to reach Timor: notwithstanding which, he thought it necessary to lessen the allowance, for fear after all they might be obliged to go to Java, which would occasion a delay. Having, therefore, repented to his people the propriety of guarding against disappointment, and promising to increase the allowance if they made any rapid advances, they all cheerfully acquiesced with the proposal.

On the 25th a noddy, which is about the size of a small pigeon, was caught with the hand, and being divided into 18 portions, was distributed with the usual allowance of bread and water for dinner. The bones and all were eaten, with salt water for sauce. They caught in the same manner a booby in the evening, which is as large as a duck. This bird was killed for supper, and the blood thereof given to three of the men who were the most indisposed. This was divided in the same manner that the noddy was, and entrails, beak, &c. all devoured.

The weather still continued fine, and they had fresh breezes from the S. E. This day another booby was caught; the blood of which was given in the same manner to those who were most in need of nourishment, and the rest distributed as before for dinner.

They now began to feel a different inconvenience from the change of weather, several being exceed-

ingly languid and faint on account of the powerful heat of the sun. This evening they were doubly fortunate, having caught two boobies, the stomachs of which contained several small cuttle-fish and flying-fish. These were all saved for dinner the next day.

On the 27th, having passed much drift wood, they deemed themselves near the reefs of New Holland. The weather was still fair, and they had a fresh breeze at E. S. E. This day every person thought he had feasted, having a better dinner than they had for some time, by the distribution of the two boobies and the entrails. From the clouds being now fixed in the W. they were positive of being near land.

On the 28th, at one in the morning, the person at the helm heard the sound of breakers: the captain saw them close under their lee, being scarcely a quarter of a mile distant from them. They immediately veered on a wind to the N. N. E. and in a short time were clear of them.

On the 29th, about nine o'clock, they saw the reefs of New Holland. On approaching them the wind came at E: while the sea broke furiously over every part. They were obliged to lie along the line of the breakers. They presently found themselves embayed, and in a critical situation: for want of strength they could do nothing with their oars, so that they began to think they should be under the necessity of attempting to push over the reef: however, they happily discovered a break therein, about a mile's distance, within which was an island of a moderate height, about the same direction, bearing W. half N. By means of a strong stream running to the westward, they entered this passage, which was about a quarter of a mile broad, with deep water. Being now in smooth water, within the reefs, they endeavoured to keep near them, to try for fish; but the tide set them to the N. W. therefore they bore away in that direction, being determined to land whenever an opportunity offered.

The island which was first seen Capt. Bligh called Direction Island, bearing W. S. W. five leagues, in latitude 12 deg. 51 min. S.

Being now within the reefs, and in view of the coast of New Holland, they returned thanks to God for having enabled them to surmount so many difficulties, and began to comfort themselves with the hopes of being soon able to accomplish their wishes.

CHAPTER II.

Temporary Reliefs discovered—Description of the Island called Restoration—Some Natives seen—The Captain and his People put to Sea—Embayed—Another Party of Natives seen—Their Token of Friendship—Captain lands—Parties receive Orders—Some of the People dissatisfied—One becomes disobedient—Captain's Behaviour—Peace restored—Cursory Remarks—Several Islands passed—They proceed from the Coast of New Holland to the Island of Timor—The People taken ill—Their Joy at seeing Timor—Arrive at Coupang—Attention of the Governor, &c. &c.

SEVERAL parts of the land which they saw were covered with wood. In proceeding towards the shore, having fallen in with a point of a reef connected with that towards the sea, they came to a grapnel, in order to look for fish; but were unsuccessful. Having seen two islands about four miles to the W. by N. they made for the nearest; but finding it only a heap of stones, proceeded to the next, which lay close to the other, and towards the main. They found a bay on the N. W. side, and a fine sandy point to land at. They looked if there were any signs of natives: they saw some old fire-places, but nothing to create any apprehensions during their stay. One half of the company were now ordered to sleep on shore, and the other half in the boat. They looked for some oysters in the rocks, but it being dark could gather only a few. The night was calm, and those on shore had a very comfortable rest, though without fire, having no means to kindle one.

During the night, one of the gudgeons of the rudder came out, and was lost. The captain dreaded this misfortune when at sea, and for fear of the world had grumets fixed on each quarter of the boat for oars: this, however, would have been a dangerous experiment; it was lucky, therefore, that the accident happened when they were able to remedy the defect, which happily they did, having found a large staple in the boat which answered the purpose completely.

They made a fire the next day, by the help of a magnifying-glass, and fortunately found a piece of brimstone and a tinder-box, which had been thrown into the boat, and were now of essential service. Parties having been out in search of oysters, returned with a large quantity, and some fresh water with these, some bread, and a little pork, they made a stew in a copper-pot, which they had fortunately brought from the vessel. Each person had a full pint of this, and it was highly acceptable.

Thoug

Though all the company had some complaint, yet considering the difficulties they had undergone, they were very frivolous. The captain had a severe pain in his stomach, the rest were afflicted with a weakness in their joints, a violent tenesmus, dizziness in the head, &c. &c.

Fortunately in the place where they found the oysters, they discovered a well, which produced a sufficiency of water during their stay: there was likewise a small run of excellent water on the S. side of the island.

During their excursions they found two huts which were miserably built: also a pointed stick, about three feet long, with a slit in the end of it, which the natives use to sling stones with. These were sure indications of the place being lately inhabited. They likewise perceived the track of the kangaroo.

This island is about a league in circumference. It consists chiefly of high rocks and stones covered with wood: the soil is very bad, consequently the trees few and small. There were several parrots, wild pigeons, &c. which made the captain regret the want of fire-arms. Except the place where they landed, the shore of this island is very rocky. The captain called this island Restoration Island, both on account of being here the day of the anniversary of King Charles II. and because the title was so applicable to their present situation, being restored to fresh life and vigour.

A quantity of oysters were brought in for supper, which were dressed as before, and each person had a full pint and a half of stew. After supper they divided again, and the party who were to sleep on shore had a good fire all night.

The pork, which had not been secured like the bread, having been made away with by some unknown person, the remainder, which was about two pounds, was divided at once. On the 30th they had this and some oysters for dinner, and while some of the people were out gathering oysters, and filling their water vessels, the captain staid in the boat, to get it in readiness for sea.

Having procured about sixty gallons of water and some oysters, they prepared to embark, when they saw about twenty natives on the opposite shore, armed with spears, entirely naked, and apparently black, who began to halloo, and make signs for them to come to them; they saw the heads of several more on the top of the hills. The captain now deemed it prudent to be off as soon as possible, for fear they might be pursued by their canoes. Accordingly they directed their course within two small islands, that lie to the N. of Restoration Island, passing between them and the main land, towards Fair Cape, which they were abreast of by eight o'clock, having a strong tide in their favour. At night having steered more towards the W. they met with low land towards the N. E.

On the 31st, before day-break, they found themselves embayed, they were therefore obliged to stand back for a short time to the southward. They had now a low sandy coast in view, which was apparently barren and destitute of inhabitants. They saw several small islands towards the N. E. about six miles distant: the E. part of the main being N. four miles, and Fair Cape S. S. E. about six leagues. They made for the channel between the nearest island and the main land, which were about one mile asunder: they saw large shoals of fish, but could not catch any.

While they were passing this strait, they perceived another party of natives, who were armed with spears, and apparently of the same form and colour as those they had seen before. The captain beckoned to them to approach, having laid the boat close to the rocks, but none of them would venture within two hundred yards of them. Notwithstanding, they shouted, and made signs for the captain and his people to land, waving green

branches of the bushes which were near them, as a token of friendship; a little further off they perceived a larger party, who joined the rest; and behaved in the same manner; however, as they were exceedingly numerous, the captain was resolved not to land.

Perceiving an island of a good height, bearing N. half W. about four miles distant, they were resolved to land there, and from thence take a survey of the coast: they arrived about eight o'clock in the morning, at this island; the shore was rocky, but as the water was smooth, they landed without any difficulty. The captain now ordered two parties to go out, one to the Northward, and the other to the Southward, in search of supplies, while some were likewise appointed to take care of the boats. The men being oppressed with weakness and fatigue, began to appear dissatisfied; some who were desired to seek supplies, declared they would rather go without any dinner than be obliged to seek it, imagining their employment was more fatiguing than that allotted to their companions: one of these was presumptuous enough to insult the captain, declaring that he was every bit as good a man. Captain Bligh perceiving the danger of tolerating such insolence, was determined to check it in time, and either preserve his authority or die in the attempt; seizing therefore a cutlass, he ordered the offender to take hold of another, and defend himself; finding the captain thus desperate, he called out that he was going to kill him, and beginning to recollect himself, immediately made concessions: the captain, in order to retain their former peace and harmony, was satisfied to overlook it.

Those who had been in search of supplies, returned with some clams and oysters, and a few small dogfish that they found in the holes of the rocks; they were likewise so fortunate as to obtain a full supply of water in the hollow of the rocks, on the North part of the island.

During their examination of the island, they found in a sandy bay, an old canoe, about 33 feet long, turned topsyturvy, and half buried in the beach; it was capable of carrying about twenty men. Not deeming this place sufficiently secure from the Indians, they were determined to make for a small key, which was N. W. by N. and which they deemed the safest resting-place for the night.

This day being Sunday, when they came to this island, the captain accordingly named it Sunday Island. It lies N. by W. 3-4ths W. from Restoration Island, in latitude 11 deg. 58 min. S.

Each person had this day a full pint and half of stewed oysters and clams, thickened with small beans. After dinner they completed their water; the weather was now very fair, with a fresh breeze at S. E. by S. They steered, according to their determination, for the small key, N. W. by N. which they did not reach until it was dark, but finding it impossible to land, without running the hazard of staving the boat, on account of a reef of rocks which surrounded, they came to a grapnel for the night.

On the 1st of June, at day-break, they got on shore, and tracked the boat into shelter: they were now about four leagues distant from the main.

The captain dispatched some of his men to seek supplies, but they could only get a few clams and some dolichos; they made a mess of these and some oysters, which they brought from Sunday Island for dinner.

Another party who had been sent to the easternmost key, returned about noon; one of them, Nelson, the botanist, was taken so ill, that he was carried by two men to the boat. He was afflicted with a violent heat in his bowels, the loss of his feet and sight, and a great thirst; this was occasioned with over exercise during the excessive heat of the sun. The captain gave him some wine, with pieces of bread soaked in it, by which means he began to recover. The boatswain and carpenter were likewise

very ill with sickness of the stomach and a head-ach. occasioned in a great measure by eating some of the dolicos raw. Several others were exceedingly distressed with the tenesmus; in short, there was no one free from complaint.

This island was for the most part sandy, and consequently barren, notwithstanding it produced some small toa trees and others. The captain, in his walk round the island, found several cocoa-nut shells, the remains of an old wigwam, and the backs of two turtle. Some of his people also found three sea-fowls' eggs; but there was not the least sign of any quadruped. There were fish in the lagoon, but they could not catch any.

The captain directed the fire to be made in the thicket, for fear if there were any natives near hand they might be discovered by its light: however, they did not entertain much apprehension, as they intended to make but a short stay. Several took a comfortable sleep, while those who were not disposed to rest employed themselves in dressing clams for to-morrow's dinner, and likewise in cutting up some in slices to bring with them.

Particular orders were given that they should not make a large fire, or suffer it to blaze up after it was dark. The captain now took a walk about the beach, in order to observe if the fire could be seen at a distance; and while he was consoling himself with the idea that it could not, suddenly the whole island appeared in a blaze. The captain immediately returned to learn the cause, and understood that one of his men obstinately determined, in spite of Mess. Samuel and Peckover, whom the captain had appointed superintendants, to have a fire to himself, in kindling which the flames rapidly spread among the neighbouring grass. The captain expressed much displeasure at such misconduct, for had there been any natives near hand, it might have been attended with fatal consequences.

About eight o'clock Mess. Samuel and Peckover went out to watch for turtle, while three others went to the E. key to endeavour to catch birds. The rest being indisposed took their rest, except Mess. Hayward and Elphinstone, who were appointed to keep watch. Those who had been seeking birds returned at midnight, having got only 12 noddies: one of them (Robert Lamb) having separated from his companions, disturbed the birds, otherwise they might have caught a great number. The captain was exceedingly provoked with this man for such imprudence: afterwards, when they came to Java, he acknowledged that while he was by himself he had eaten nine birds raw. Mess. Samuel and Peckover had watched for turtle till three o'clock, without any success.

They half dressed the noddies, that they might keep the better; these and a few clams being all the supply that they could procure here. The captain fastened some pieces of iron, and a few brass buttons, to a tree, for the natives; and, having enjoyed a comfortable night's rest, prepared for their departure at dawn of day.

On the 2d they proceeded to the N. by W. with a S. E. wind: the sea became exceedingly rough, after they had proceeded two leagues to the northward. In the morning they met with a large shoal, on which were two sandy keys: they passed on to the northward, between these and two others which were four miles to the W. the roughness of the sea still continuing. At twelve o'clock they fell in with six other keys, which produced some brush-wood and small trees. The country appeared exceedingly hilly, while the northernmost land was sloping towards the sea. There was a flat-topped hill nearly abreast them, which the captain called Pudding Pan Hill, on account of its singular shape: two others, which lay a little to the northward, he named the Paps.

It was impossible for the captain to make minute observations, or ascertain the depth of water, being

deprived of the necessary means: indeed, if they had been in possession of their fathom lines, &c. it could not have been expected that they would have made any delay in such a critical situation.

This day each person had for dinner his fair division of six birds, with the allotted allowance of bread and water: Nelson, who was recovering apace, was allowed half a glass of wine. At first their allowance was issued by guess; but the captain, willing to be both exact and impartial, had lately contrived a pair of scales with two cocoa-nut shells, and having accidentally some pistol balls in the boat, one of which weighed 27½ grains, this was adopted as the proportion of weight which each person was to receive of bread, &c.

Hitherto they had regulated their time by the gunner's watch, which this day unfortunately stopped, so that they could only judge of time by noon, sun-rise and sun-set.

The weather was now very fair, and they had fresh breezes from the S. S. E. and S. E. while they stood to the N. by W. they had more sea, being less sheltered by the reefs which lay to the eastward. At noon they steered to the N. W. and passed a large and seemingly commodious inlet, which lay in latitude 11 deg. S. About sun-set they arrived to an island about three leagues northward of this: they could only land at a sandy point, under which they took shelter; which being a dreary situation, they preferred sleeping this night in the boat. Those whom the captain had sent to see if this place produced any thing, reported that they had only seen some turtle, bones and shells; so that it appeared the island had been lately inhabited. It consisted chiefly of rocks, which were rudely connected, though here and there it was covered with wood. This place the captain called Turtle Island; its latitude 10 deg. 52 min. S. about 42 miles W. from Restoration Island. They lay at grapple till daylight. This day (the 3d) the weather was very cloudy, and they had a smart breeze. Abreast of Turtle Island the coast seemed a sandy desert; but having proceeded to the northward, it ended in a point, where there were several small islands adjoining. They sailed between these. There was a high mountainous island with a flat top, and four rocks to the S. E. of it, which they called the Brothers. Having discovered after this a number of high islands in an extensive opening which appeared in the main land, they called them the Bay of Islands. They perceived several other small islands and keys to the northward; the most northerly of which being mountainous, was remarkable for having a very high round hill on it: the smaler was distinguished by a single peaked one.

To the northward and westward of the Bay of Islands the coast is high and woody, with a broken appearance. There were apparently several commodious places for shipping, and fine bays. The captain called the northernmost of these islands Wednesday Island, (this day being Wednesday). They fell in with a large reef to the N. W. of the island: this the captain supposes joined a number of keys, which they had in view from the N. W. to the E. N. E. They stood to the S. W. half a league; their latitude 10 deg. 31 min. S. Wednesday Island bearing E. by S. five miles; the westernmost land in sight, about three leagues distant: the islands to the northward from N. W. by W. to N. E. and the reef from W. to N. E. about one mile distant.

This day each person had six oysters, in addition to his share of bread and water for dinner.

While steering to the S. W. towards the westernmost part of the island, in sight, in the afternoon they fell in with some large sand banks, that ran off from the coast. The captain called this Shoal Cape. In order to get round these shoals, they were obliged to steer to the northward again; after which they proceeded to the W.

Before it was dark they arrived to a rock, which they had mistaken for a small island that appeared bearing W. It abounded with boobies, and was therefore called Booby Island, both by Capt. Bligh, who at this time was ignorant that it had been seen before, and also by Capt. Cook, who took the same notice of its being thus resorted to by these birds. Capt. Bligh afterwards imagined that the opening, which he called the Bay of Islands, was Endeavour Straits, and that their track had been to the northward of Prince of Wales's Isles.

In the evening they were again in the open ocean: the captain endeavouring to comfort his men with hopes of being in safety in a few days time; indeed, notwithstanding their dangerous situation, his people still enjoyed uncommon spirits and fortitude. After supper (which was no better than usual) they directed their course to the W. S. W. in order to counteract the southerly winds, should they become violent.

On the 4th they saw a number of water snakes, that were ringed yellow and black. This day they had each six oysters, in addition to their usual dinner. Scanty as their allowance was, each person seemed satisfied therewith. As for the captain, he never felt himself very hungry or thirsty, but was content with his allowance. Notwithstanding the weather was both mild and fair, yet they were obliged to employ two men constantly in baling water. About noon they passed a great deal of rock-weed.

On the 5th they had each six oysters again, as before. A few boobies came about them in the evening, and they caught one of them. The blood was divided among three of the weakest men, and the bird reserved for the next day's dinner. For supper some had a quarter of a pint of water, and others (who were more in need) half a pint. They suffered very much by the cold during night, being constantly wet with the sea.

On the 6th the captain perceived that some one had stolen a few of the clams which had been hung up for sea-store, but every one declared himself innocent. This day the booby, which was reserved, was distributed for dinner. In order to prevent any grumbling about the several parts, as some would no doubt prefer one to another, the captain adopted the following method, which is commonly used at sea: one person turns his back on the object that is to be divided, while another points separately to the portions, asking each time of the other, who shall have this? which he determines by mentioning whatever person's name he chuses. This impartial method of division certainly gives every man an equal chance of the best share.

Their store of bread was examined in the afternoon, and according to their present consumption a month's allowance was still remaining: there being now every prospect of a quick passage, the captain, agreeable to his promise, granted the former allowance.

On the 7th every one was complaining of some ailment, having been miserably wet and cold during the night. They had now a very high sea. An ounce of dried clams, being all that was remaining, was served to each person for dinner. They changed their course about noon to W. N. W. keeping more from the sea, as the wind was very fierce: they had likewise heavy rain. Surgeon Ledward, and Lieutenant Lebogue, were exceedingly ill: they had now and then a tea spoonful or two of wine, which was reserved on purpose for the indisposed.

On the 8th the weather became moderate: the wind at S. E. They saw a few gamets, and in the afternoon caught a small dolphin, which was the first they got. Each person had two ounces of this with the oil for dinner, and the remainder was reserved for the next day. In the evening they had a very smart gale, which continued all night, during which they were obliged constantly to bale. On the next day they complained very much of different

pains and aches, which the severity of the night had occasioned. Surgeon Ledward, and Lebogue, had each a little wine. The captain still encouraged his people to keep up their spirits, assuring them they would soon be at Timor, as they were now advancing at a fine rate. The remains of the dolphin, which was about an ounce for each person, was distributed this day for dinner. The captain having eat some of the stomach of the fish, which came to his share, was for some time exceedingly ill.

On the 10th they all appeared very ill, having endured great toil and uneasiness the preceding night. They had ghastly countenances, with an apparent debility of understanding; while some complained of weakness and swelled legs, and others of a lethargy. The surgeon and Lebogue were visibly hastening to their end: out of the little wine which remained, they had occasionally some tea spoonfuls, from which they derived much benefit. Having met with a quantity of birds and rock-weed, they knew they were not far from land: the captain, however, was aware that there were several islands between the E. part of Timor and New Guiney. They experienced more ease and comfort this night than before, the wind having abated considerably.

On the 11th an extra allowance of water was given to those who most required it. The people were exceedingly cheerful this day, having passed the eastern part of Timor. They saw several birds, and being upon the watch caught a booby in the evening, which they kept for dinner the next day.

On the 12th they saw Timor, the sight of which created universal joy. It then bore from W. S. W. to W. N. W. Having hauled on a wind to the N. N. E. till day-light, the land bore from S. W. by S. to N. E. by N. about two leagues distant from shore.

They now began to consider the great goodness of Providence, in being able with such poor allowance to reach this coast in 41 days in an open boat, a distance of 3618 miles from Tofoa, and that not one of them during such distress and danger had perished. They could hardly believe their success, and with grateful hearts attributed this miraculous deliverance to divine grace.

Not being able to proceed N. E. with the wind, they bore away after day-light along shore to the S. S. W. The country, which exhibited several beautiful situations, was exceedingly delightful: as there were only a few small huts to be seen, it was therefore supposed that no European inhabited this part of the island. It was impossible to land, as there was much sea running on the shore. The booby which had been caught the preceding day was now divided for dinner.

The weather became very hazy, and the wind blew fresh at E. and E. S. E. They proceeded during the afternoon along a low shore, where there were no signs of cultivation, though covered with a quantity of palm trees. The country, however, improved by sun-set, and they perceived several great smokes.

Captain Bligh deemed it most prudent to keep this situation till the next morning, for fear they might run past any settlement during the night: they therefore brought-to under a close-reefed foresail. They were about half a league distant from shore, in shoal water. After their usual allowance for supper, they enjoyed a little sleep, as the boat lay-to very well.

On the 13th, very early in the morning, they wore and stood in shore till day-light, having drifted during night about three leagues to the W. S. W.

They now examined the coast, but there being no appearance of a settlement, they bore away to the westward, with a strong breeze against a weather current, which occasioned much sea. The weather was now foul and hazy. Awhile the shore was high, and covered with wood; but afterwards they had low land. In the forenoon they perceived the

coast, inclining towards the S. part thereof bearing W. S. W. half W. high land appeared at the same time in the S. W. They stood towards the outer land, which they discovered to be the Island Roti.

Having returned to the shore they had left, they brought to a grapnel in a sandy bay, for the sake of making more minute observations on their present situation. During their stay here, they perceived several great smokes, and the carpenter and mauler being very solicitous to go in search of supplies, the captain at last gave his permission: however they soon altered their mind, as they found no other in the boat inclined to join them.

Having made as exact a calculation as they could, they continued steering along shore. The country now appeared exceedingly beautiful, covered with wood and a quantity of fan palm trees, which appeared like cocoa-nut walks.

During the afternoon the weather was dark and hazy, and they had a strong breeze at E. S. E. They now ran through a very dangerous breaking sea, occasioned by a strong tide setting to windward, and shoal water; after which, they saw a fine bay, with a good entrance, about three miles wide. As this promised well, they came to a grapnel near the E. side of the entrance, in a small sandy bay, where they perceived a hut, some cattle, and a dog. In order to discover the inhabitants, the boatswain and gunner were immediately sent to the hut. They returned in a short time with five of the natives, and reported that they had found two families, and were received by the women with European politeness. The natives informed the captain that the governor resided at a place called Coupang, some distance to the N. E. These people brought them a few pieces of dried turtle, and some ears of Indian corn, which was the more valuable gift, as the turtle was so hard that it required to be well soaked in hot water before it could be eaten. They offered to bring other refreshments, but the captain was unwilling to make any delay, and having signified to one of these men, that if he would enter the boat and shew them the way to Coupang, he should be amply rewarded for the trouble, the native to whom the proposal was made with the greatest good-nature complied, and about half past four they sailed, keeping close to the E. shore, under all their sail, by the direction of their pilot.

On the approach of night, the wind dying away, they had recourse to their oars, which, notwithstanding their weakness, they were able to make some use of: however, as their progress was slow, they came to a grapnel about ten o'clock, and, for the first time, each person had a double allowance of bread, with a little wine, for supper.

The natives whom they had seen were of a dark tawny colour, with long black hair. Their dresses consisted of a square piece of cloth round the hips, in the folds of which a large knife was stuck, and another hanging by the four corners from the shoulders, which served as a pocket for their beetle equipage, which they were continually chewing.

On the 14th, after a comfortable repose, they weighed early in the morning, and continued to keep the E. shore on board, in very smooth water. Having passed an island to the westward, which the pilot called Pulo Samon, they were again to sea. The northern entrance of this channel is near two miles wide, with apparently deep water.

It is impossible to describe the pleasure which was felt in hearing two cannon which were fired. Some short time after they perceived two square-rigged vessels and a cutter at anchor to the eastward. They endeavoured to work to windward, but losing ground on each tack, they were obliged to take to their oars again. Keeping close to the shore, they rowed till about four o'clock, when they brought to a grapnel, and had another allowance of bread and wine. When they had rested, they weighed, and rowed till it was day-light, when they came to a grapnel off a small fort and town, which their pilot informed them was Coupang.

In the course of their passage they had made a small jack of some signal flags used by boats to shew the depth of water in sounding, which the boatswain had secured out of the Bounty. These were hoisted in the main-shrouds, as a signal of distress, the captain being unwilling to land without previous permission.

They were hailed to land a little after day-break, by a soldier. Accordingly they did; when they found themselves surrounded by a number of Indians. Captain Bligh was exceedingly happy to find an English sailor, who belonged to one of the vessels in the road, and whose captain was the second person in the town; to whom he requested to be conducted, being informed that the governor was so ill that no one could speak to him.

This captain's name was Spikerman, who, upon hearing Capt. Bligh's misfortunes, behaved with the greatest humanity, and gave immediate orders that the people in the boat should be taken to his own house, where, for they were scarcely able to walk, they were assisted, and a comfortable breakfast of bread, butter, and tea, provided.

Capt. Spikerman went himself to the governor, Mr. William Adrian Van Elle, to know what time would be the most convenient for Capt. Bligh to see him. The governor appointed eleven o'clock; but, notwithstanding his extreme ill health, he was so anxious about Capt. Bligh, that he saw him before that time, and received him in a manner truly polite and affectionate, declaring, that though his ill state of health would not permit him to *assist* the captain himself, yet he would issue such directions that neither Capt. Bligh nor his people should want for assistance. For the captain, he ordered a house to be immediately prepared, and said that his people should be either accommodated at the hospital, or on board Capt. Spikerman's vessel, whichever was more agreeable. He likewise gave directions that victuals should be dressed for them at his own house, and regretted that Coupang could not afford them better accommodations.

The captain, on his return to Capt. Spikerman's house, found that every attention had been paid to his people, particularly in respect to apparel. Being then conducted to the house intended for him, where servants were in readiness to attend him, finding it spacious and convenient, he desired his own people to be lodged with him, appropriating one apartment to his own use, another to the master, surgeon, Nelson, and the gunner; the left to the other officers, and the outer apartment to the men: the hall was free for the officers, and a piazza, by which the house was furrounded, to the men. When the governor was apprized of the captain's intention, he immediately sent furniture, and every necessary which was required, having desired the captain to let him know whatever he wanted, by communicating his wishes to his son-in-law, Mr. Timotheo Wanjon, who was equally assiduous in rendering every thing as comfortable and agreeable as possible.

Capt. Bligh dined with Mr. Wanjon, having first seen his own people enjoy a hearty meal on a good dinner which was sent to them by the governor. The captain retired very soon to his chamber, (which was furnished with every convenience) in order to partake of that rest and quietness which were so essential towards the re-establishment of his health.

As soon as an opportunity offered, Capt. Bligh presented to the governor a formal account of the loss of the Bounty, with a complete descriptive of the mutineers, requesting that instructions might be sent to all the Dutch settlements to stop the vessel in his Majesty's name if she made her appearance. Nelson obtained leave of the governor to explore the plants of the country, as the place was so well abundant with many curious and medicinal plants; however he was prevented by severe indisposition from availing himself of this indulgence. He, and all the rest who were ill, were constantly attended by Mr. Max, the town surgeon, whose kindness and attention were remarkable.

Description of Coupang—Customs, &c. of Mr. Wanjon—They embark—A polite Reception

THE settlement the Dutch have formed in the year 1771, in different parts of the settlement on the N. produce of the place the latter is in great part situated in a road for shipping, to deg. 12 min. S. habit the neighbourhood indolent disposition, no little advantage of on in small Chinese burthen. There is a country people, but the inland people are extremely dirty, which many diseases. They Europeans.

The king of the island by the Dutch called the place of his residence which is about four He does not bear an owing, as the Dutch Portuguese on the N. a civil war broke out his nephews, which when it was settled r These disturbances w goes to the island, ha provisions, which, the people, is not likely to

Capt. Bligh, during his residence, was introduced to the king of the greatest civility. R propped Indian corn, d were ordered to be laid an elderly man; he found his waist, with a linen jacket, and a ce neck: his dwelling was three apartments, and situation was more agreeable, together with ag He was attended by a s refreshments with their bread, and having made with a present of a round inches diameter, where stamped, which he pr

in return made him a p being acceptable, was put water into their liquor, and are capable of use time, without being Christianity has been who have taken much p over it has not gained neighbourhood of Coup was christened by the name is Bacchee Baunc Coupang for the native appointed to perform d laws being translated i

Fruit is in great plenty bread-fruit tree, which island of Otaheite; but it eaten with sugar and m mind as that at Otaheite, fruit of Timor weighs

CHAPTER III.

Description of Coupang—The Settlement—King of the Island—Capt. Bligh introduced to him—His Reception, &c.—Customs, &c. of the Place—The Captain's Intention of hiring a Vessel—Purchases a Schooner by the Assistance of Mr. Wanjon—This Gentleman's Attention—Death and Burial of David Nelson—The Schooner ready for Sea—They embark—Leave Coupang—An affectionate Leave—Several Islands seen, &c.—Anchor off Passourwang—A polite Reception from Van Rie—Description of the Place—Conducted to Sourabaya—Arrival at Batavia.

THE settlement at Coupang, being the only one the Dutch have on the island of Timor, was formed in the year 1630. They have residents in different parts of the country. There is a Portuguese settlement on the N. side of the island. The chief produce of the place is sandal wood and bees-wax: the latter is in greater plenty. The town of Coupang is situated in a great bay, which is an excellent road for shipping. The town lies in latitude 10 deg. 12 min. S. The natives, or those who inhabit the neighbourhood of Coupang, are of a very indolent disposition, which the Chinese have taken no little advantage of. Their trade is chiefly carried on in small Chinese vessels, from 10 to 30 tons burthen. There is a small market at Coupang for country people, but very little business is done in it. The inland people are strong and active, but extremely dirty, which consequently subjects them to many diseases. They live at a distance from the Europeans.

The king of the island, or chief of the natives, is by the Dutch called Keyser, signifying an emperor. The place of his residence is called Backennoffy, which is about four miles distance from Coupang. He does not bear an entire sway over the natives, owing, as the Dutch report, to the intrigues of the Portuguese on the N. side of the island. In 1786 a civil war broke out between the king and one of his nephews, which did not terminate till 1788, when it was settled rather in favour of the king. These disturbances were exceedingly disadvantageous to the island, having occasioned a scarcity of provisions, which, through the indolence of the people, is not likely to be soon remedied.

Capt. Bligh, during his stay at Coupang, was introduced to the king of the island, and received with the greatest civility. Refreshments of tea, rice cakes, roasted Indian corn, dried buffalo flesh, arrack, &c. were ordered to be laid before him. The king was an elderly man; he had a cheque wrapper girded round his waist, with a silk and gold belt, a loose linen jacket, and a coarse handkerchief about his neck: his dwelling was a large house, divided into three apartments, and surrounded by a piazza. The situation was more agreeable than the house itself, which, together with the furniture, was very dirty. He was attended by a few chiefs, who partook of the refreshments with them; after which the king retired, and having made but a short stay, returned with a present of a round plate of metal about four inches diameter, whereon the figure of a star was stamped, which he presented to the captain, who in return made him a present of some arrack, which being acceptable, was well received. They never put water into their liquor, and being thereto accustomed, are capable of drinking a large quantity at one time, without being overcome.

Christianity has been introduced by the Dutch, who have taken much pains in establishing it: however it has not gained much ground, except in the neighbourhood of Coupang. The king of the island was christened by the name of Barnardus; his Indian name is Bachee Baunock. There is a church at Coupang for the natives, and a Malay clergyman appointed to perform divine service there, the scriptures being translated into the Malay language.

Fruit is in great plenty at Timor, particularly the bread-fruit tree, which is as common here as in the island of Otaheite; but it is not used as bread, being eaten with sugar and milk. It is exactly the same kind as that at Otaheite, but not so good. A bread-fruit of Timor weighs half as much more as one of

the same size at the other place. There is also another kind of bread-fruit tree, which produces seeds like the windor beans, and which are equally the same to the taste.

There is a resemblance of language between the natives of this place and those of the South-Sea islands. The captain also saw some offerings of baskets of beetle and tobacco placed on their graves. When a king dies, there is a large feast prepared, to which all the people are invited: then, after a few days, the corpse is put into a coffin, wherein it is closed up, and kept three years before it is buried.

Capt. Bligh, in order to secure his arrival at Batavia before the October fleet sailed for Europe, gave public notice of his intention to hire a vessel to convey them there. Several proposals were therefore made, but the demands were exorbitant; the captain therefore deemed it better to purchase a small schooner in the road, which was 34 feet long, for which he gave 1000 rix-dollars. Mr. Wanjon cheerfully took upon himself to answer this demand, the captain finding it somewhat difficult to raise money. This gentleman also provided him with proper means of defence, the coast of Java being frequently infested with small piratical vessels. The captain, therefore, received of Mr. Wanjon, as a loan, to be returned at Batavia, four brass twivel guns, and 14 stand of small arms, with sufficient ammunition.

This schooner, which received the name of his Majesty's schooner Resource, was immediately fitted for sea. In the mean time the governor sent the captain a present of some fine plants, which, for want of sufficient room in the packet by which he returned to Europe, the captain was unfortunately obliged to leave at Batavia. Mr. Wanjon likewise delivered him some seeds, for his Majesty's garden at Kew; which were accordingly delivered: also some of the mountain rice, cultivated at Timor on the dry land, which was forwarded to his Majesty's botanic garden at St. Vincent, and other parts in the West-Indies.

On the 20th of July Mr. David Nelson, the botanist, died of an inflammatory fever. The captain sincerely regretted the loss of this valuable and good man. He was interred the next day, behind the chapel, in the burying-ground appropriated to the Europeans of the town. The body was carried by twelve soldiers dressed in black, preceded by the minister; Capt. Bligh followed next, and Mr. Wanjon, the second governor; then ten gentlemen of the town, and the officers of the harbour; after whom Capt. Bligh's officers and people.

On the 19th of August, the schooner being re-victualled and ready for sea, notice thereof was given. Capt. Bligh took an affectionate leave of the hospital, and friendly inhabitants of Coupang; and having embarked on the 20th, in the afternoon, they sailed. While running out of the harbour, they exchanged salutes with the fort and shipping, having the launch by which they were so miraculously preserved in tow. The weather was fair, and they had a moderate breeze at S. E. they steered N. W. by N.

On the 22d they saw the island Flores the northward, distant about ten leagues. There are two high peaked mountains, bearing N. half E. and N. N. W. which resemble each other in shape, the westernmost being a volcano. The country near the sea-coast is fine and open, but the interior parts of this place are woody and mountainous.

On the 25th, at noon, they were off Toorn's island,

Island, which bore N. W. by N. about four leagues distant. This island is about four leagues in circumference, and appears very irregular and craggy. The land near the shore is low and woody, and on the S. W. part of the island there is a curious high peak.

On the 27th they were near the Straits of Mengaryn: they then steered for the Straits of Sapi, intending to pass through, but there being strong currents setting to the S. E. for want of sufficient wind to enable them to stem, they were obliged to decline their intention. Accordingly, they steered again for the Straits of Mengaryn, and on the 29th, being favoured with a fresh breeze from the S. S. E. they ran through them in the afternoon. After which they kept to the westward, and ran along the N. side of the island Sumbawa, near the coast of which is a very high mountain, and at the foot many runs of good water, by which vessels may be readily supplied.

On the night of the 31st they kept diligently under arms, as several proas were seen rowing about them.

On the 3d, 4th, and 5th, they continued sailing along the N. side of the Island Lombock, on which there is a very high mountain: indeed the islands hereabouts are generally distinguished by high mountains. This island appears to be exceedingly well covered with wood. During the nights of these three days they perceived fires upon the high lands, at a distance from the coast.

The high land of Cape Sandana was seen in the afternoon of the 6th, which is the N. E. part of Java. This is a low cape, projecting from the high land already noticed: it appeared in latitude 7 deg. 46 min. S. in longitude from Coupang 11 deg. 33 min. W. They were off this cape the next day, and steered to the westward along the coast of Java.

On the 10th, at noon, they anchored off Passourwang, which is a Dutch settlement on the coast of Java, in two fathoms, about half a league distant from shore; the entrance of the river bearing S. W. This coast is so exceedingly shoal, that large vessels are obliged to anchor about four miles distant from land.

As soon as the vessel was secured, the captain went in his boat on shore. A few mangrove bushes were growing on the banks of the river, near the entrance, which were muddy. They saw some hogs running among these, and others which were dead, and in such a putrid state as to render the place exceedingly offensive, and make the captain heartily sorry of having approached it. When they had gone about a mile up the river, (the course of which was serpentine) they discovered a very pleasant country. Having landed at a small but well-constructed fort, they met with a very cordial reception from the commandant, M. Adrian Van Ryc. The captain now took a pilot to conduct them to Sourabaya, having sent on board a small bullock, and other provisions, by the return of the boat.

The country of Passourwang is very well cultivated, and the houses neatly built. Rice is the chief produce of this settlement, of which large quantities are exported. It appears to be a well-regulated busy settlement. They have good roads, and ports are established along the coast. There are but few Dutch here, but a great number of the Javanese: their chief maintains great splendor and magnificence.

Passourwang lies in latitude 7 deg. 36 min. S. in longitude 1 deg. 44 min. W. of Cape Sandana.

On the 11th, about noon, they sailed, and in the evening of the next day anchored in about seven fathoms in Sourabaya road, where they found seven square-rigged and several smaller vessels riding: the flag-staff bore S. 1-4th W. about one mile distant from shore. It was now too late to send a boat on shore.

On the 13th, before it was day-light, three guard-boats, agreeable to the general orders which are issued here concerning the first arrival of all strange vessels, stationed themselves near the Resource, and informed the captain that he must neither land nor send a boat on shore till permission was sent, which was not till nine in the evening; whereupon the guard-boats immediately left them.

The governor, M. Ant. Barkay, and M. de Bose, commandant of the troops, received the captain with great civility. These gentlemen behaved exceedingly kind and hospitably, and advised the captain to remain till the 16th, when he would be in less danger of pirates, as some armed vessels were to sail at that time, with whom he might keep company.

This place being situated on the banks of a river, about a mile and a half distant from the shore, only the flag-staff can be seen from the road. Vessels of 100 tons burthen can navigate the river with ease up to the town. On one side the bank is very commodious for tracking. There is a considerable trade carried on here by the Chinese, who have a town on the side of the river opposite to Sourabaya.

The country is exceedingly pleasant near the town: it is flat, and the soil light, so that they plow with a single bullock. They have a fine breed of horses, which are very handsome, and remarkably strong, though small. A number of fierce tigers infest the interior parts of the country near the mountains, on which account travelling inland is very dangerous.

Capt. Bligh was introduced by M. Barkay and M. de Bose to two of the principal Javanese. They were attended with several men, who were armed with pikes, and arranged in great military order. There was a concert of music here for their entertainment, which consisted of songs, drums, and a fiddle with two strings. Capt. Bligh hired a pilot here to conduct them to Batavia.

They left Sourabaya on the 17th, in company with three proas. About noon they anchored at Crefley, a town belonging to the Dutch, with a small fort. Having staid about two hours here, they weighed anchor. This place was in latitude 7 deg. 9 min. S. in longitude from Cape Sandana 1 deg. 55 min. W.

On the 18th they passed the Straits of Medura along the coast of Java. Their soundings were regular all the way to Samarang, off which place they anchored in the afternoon of the 22d.

The shoalness of the coast renders the road to Samarang exceedingly inconvenient, both on account of the landing, which is in a river that cannot be entered before half flood, and on account of the great distance that large vessels (whereof there were a great number) are obliged to lie from the shore.

Capt. Bligh was met at the landing-place by the equipage master, who provided him with a carriage to the governor's house, which was about two miles from the town of Samarang. The captain requested leave to recruit their provisions, and get a new main-mast, having sprung theirs in the passage from Sourabaya: permission was accordingly granted.

The town of Samarang is well fortified: it is surrounded by a wall and a ditch, and next to Batavia is the most considerable settlement that the Dutch enjoy in Java. Provisions are exceedingly cheap here. Their buildings are good. They have an excellent hospital; and a public school, intended chiefly for mathematical instruction. They had also a good theatre.

Samarang lies in latitude 6 deg. 57 min. S. longitude from Cape Sandana 40 deg. 7 min. W.

The governor having directed a galley mounted with six twivels to accompany the Resource, they left Samarang together on the 26th, and on the 1st of October anchored in Batavia road.

CHAPTER IV.

Captain Bligh's Introduction to the Sabander and Governor-General of Batavia—Meets with a polite Reception—His Requests granted—The Captain taken ill—Removed to a Country-House—Somewhat better—Obliged to separate from his People—Death of Thomas Hall—Examination &c. of the Officers and People—Captain Bligh, his Clerk, and a Seaman embark on Board the Vlyde Packet—Passage to England—Conclusion.

THE Captain having landed at a house near the river, where it is customary for strangers to go and give an account of themselves, went on shore in the afternoon. He was introduced to Mr. Englehard, the sabander, by a Malay gentleman, whose residence was in the environs of the city, on the side nearest the shipping.

The sabander conducted the captain to the governor-general, from whom he met with a very polite reception. The captain informed him of all the circumstances relating to the mutiny, &c. and requested his excellency's permission to embark in the first vessel that sailed for England: previous to which he also requested that his people might be taken care of, and that he should have leave to dispose of the schooner and launch. The governor-general cheerfully complied with these requests. Captain Bligh then took his leave, and having returned with the sabander, all the articles he wanted were committed to paper in due form, in order to be laid before the council the succeeding day.

Captain Bligh had brought from the governor of Coupang, addressed to the governor-general at Batavia, a full account of his voyage and distresses, which had been translated into Dutch, according to the captain's information.

The captain, during his stay at Batavia, lodged in a large hotel, which is entirely appropriated to the use of strangers: strangers not being allowed to reside at any other place. Notwithstanding it is situated near the great river, in the most wholesome and airy part of the city, yet owing to its extreme heat, the captain was taken very ill in the night, with a violent pain in his head.

On the 2d the sabander and Captain Bligh attended the council, who sat at nine o'clock in the morning, and complied with every thing the captain desired.

The captain's indisposition increased very much on his return to the hotel, and a violent fever ensued. The sabander, apprised of his situation, immediately brought Mr. Aanforp, the head-surgeon of the town-hospital, to see him: in the course of the day the fever abated, but the head-ach still continued. The captain was invited this day to dine with the governor-general, but was prevented by his indisposition.

The captain solicited permission to hire a house in the country, as he still retained a severe head-ach, owing to the closeness and heat of his lodging in the hotel. His excellency not only complied with his request, but immediately issued orders that he should be accommodated at the house of Mr. Sparling, the physician or surgeon-general, which was about four miles from the city.

Thomas Hall, one of the captain's men, being very ill of a flux, was likewise sent with permission to the country-hospital, which building is very airy and convenient.

On the 6th the captain was conveyed at sun-rise to Mr. Sparling's house, where every accommodation was prepared. He was so benefited by the change of air, that in the evening he was able to visit to the governor-general, with Mr. Sparling, at one of his country-seats, where he found a numerous company; all the ladies being attired in the Malay fashion, and richly ornamented. Several of the company invited the captain to their country-houses, and some very kindly pressed him to make their residence his abode till his health re-

covered. Captain Bligh still continued very ill, and Mr. Sparling, thinking it necessary, towards the re-esta-

blishment of his health, that he should leave Batavia as soon as possible, represented his situation to the governor-general, who was of opinion that the homeward-bound vessels were so much crowded, that it would be impossible for all the captain's people to be accommodated in one ship, therefore he deemed it the most commodious and best way, to send them home in different vessels. A separation being thus unavoidable, the captain resolved upon following the advice of Mr. Sparling, and accordingly notified to his excellency, a wish to embark in a packet that was to sail for England in a week's time, and to take with him, by his permission, as many of his people as was convenient. He was informed that according to his desire, he should be accommodated with a passage for himself and two of his people (the vessel being too small to admit of more) and that the rest of his men should be conveyed to England as soon as possible.

On the 10th the Resource was sold by auction for 295 six-dollars: she was purchased by a Captain John Eddie, an Englishman, who commanded an English vessel from Bengal.

The launch was likewise sold by auction, which the captain would not have parted with, but found it inconvenient to take her to Europe. Thomas Hall died at the hospital this day.

On the 16th Captain Bligh, his clerk John Samuel, and John Smith a seaman, embarked on board the Vlyde packet, commanded by Captain Peter Couvret, bound for Middleburgh. They weighed anchor and sailed out of the road about seven o'clock.

On the 18th they passed the straits of Sunda, and steered to the N. of the Coco's Isles.

No material occurrence took place during their passage to the Cape of Good Hope. On the 16th of December they anchored in Table Bay.

Early on the 17th the captain went on shore and paid his respects to his excellency, M. Vander Graaf, who received him very cordially, and having settled all necessary business, they departed from the cape the 2d of January 1790, and lost sight of land the next day. On the 15th the island St. Helena was in sight, and on the 21st the island Ascension. On the 10th of February they had a N. E. wind, which blowing fresh, covered their sails with a fine orange-coloured dust.

On the 13th of March they discovered the hill of Portland, and on the 14th in the evening Capt. Bligh left the packet, and was landed at Portsmouth by an Isle of Wight boat.

About a fortnight after Captain Bligh's departure, Mr. Elphinstone, the master's mate, and Peter Linkletter, a seaman, died. The remainder of his people were provided with passages in the earliest ships. One Robert Lamb died on his passage; also Surgeon Ledward: the rest arrived safe.

Having now laid before the Public a full and circumstantial account of Captain Bligh's voyage, loss of the Bounty, and consequent distresses; curiously, no doubt, being excited to know what became of Christian, the mutineer, and his vile accomplices, we shall, for the further satisfaction of our numerous Readers, proceed next with Captain EDWARDS's Voyage in his Majesty's Frigate PANDORA, which for its several Discoveries, and the various Misfortunes that befel the Crew during their narrow escape from Shipwreck and Famine, will be found as interesting and entertaining as this already related; and, seeing the same exactness and accuracy shall still be preserved, equally worthy of the Public's patronage.

A NEW, COMPLETE, AND GENUINE
HISTORY OF
A VOYAGE ROUND the WORLD,

I N

His Majesty's Frigate PANDORA,

UNDER THE COMMAND OF

Captain EDWARD EDWARDS,

Undertaken and Performed in 1790, 1791, and 1792.

WITH SEVERAL INTERESTING ANECDOTES OF THE

MUTINEERS, CHRISTIAN, CHURCHILL, &c. &c. who piratically carried off the BOUNTY.

Including all the DISCOVERIES, ADVENTURES, INFORMATION, &c. contained in the JOURNALS and COMMUNICATIONS of

Captain EDWARDS, Surgeon HAMILTON, Lieutenants HAYWARD, CORNER, Mess. CUNNINGHAM, INNES, and several of the other Officers and Gentlemen.

Being an Entire New HISTORY of all those Interesting OCCURRENCES, DISCOVERIES, &c. made in the SOUTH SEA; with a Full and Circumstantial Account of the several DISTRESSES which were endured through SHIPWRECK and FAMINE, in a VOYAGE between ENDEAVOUR STRAITS and the ISLANDS of TIMOR, in four open Boats—the Pinnace, Red Yawl, Launch, and Blue Yawl; being the Distance of eleven Hundred Miles.

Which, with the several other VOYAGES and TRAVELS to be included in this Collection, will be Embellished with a Variety of Elegant CHARTS, MAPS, and other COPPER-PLATES, Engraved by Excellent Artists.

INTRODUCTION.

TWO very urgent reasons were the occasion of the following voyage: first, it was thought necessary that the straits of Endeavour should be minutely surveyed, in order that the passage to Botany Bay might be accomplished with greater ease and facility; and secondly, it being judged highly essential, that every possible means should be immediately taken, of bringing to exemplary punishment the audacious mutineers of his Majesty's late ship the *Bounty*, it being of the most serious consequence to government, for if such villainy was not checked and exposed in time, every future project of navigation might not only be frustrated, but great expences incurred for nothing.

Captain Bligh, during his short stay at the Cape of Good Hope, Batavia, &c. let no opportunity slip of giving every necessary information relative to this unfortunate business, for the sake of speedily detecting and bringing to judgment the authors of his distress. He left a letter at the Cape of Good Hope, to be forwarded to Governor Phillips at Port Jackson, by the first opportunity. He also wrote to Lord Cornwallis from Batavia, and every letter contained a short account of his voyage, with a descriptive list of the pirates, so that all India was apprized of the mutiny, and consequently prepared for seizing the offenders.

On the 10th of August 1790, Captain Edwards was appointed by government to put in commission at Chatham, and take command of the *Pandora* frigate, of twenty-four guns, and a hundred and sixty men.

Their progress was however retarded by a great naval armament, which was then equipping. This prevented that necessary care and attention which were absolutely essential, in respect to the men chosen for this voyage: consequently from some

infected clothes, a contagious distemper took place which from its severity and malignant nature, occasioned much distress during the beginning of their voyage; particularly as the vessel afforded proper accommodations for sick people, owing to its confined state.

A great quantity of provisions and stores was prepared; every officer's cabin, and even the captain's, were filled therewith, it being deemed proper to take an additional complement of new stores, for the purpose of refitting the *Bounty*, they should have the good fortune to recover her.

Every article that promised to be of the least utility was now carefully provided and put on board; antiscorbutics especially to guard against the scurvy; also a time-keeper, and a quantity of iron, to be made into knives, &c. for the purpose of trading with the natives. It was also their intention to bring home some plants of the bread-fruit-tree, that the laudable intentions of government should not be entirely frustrated by the piratical seizure of his Majesty's ship the *Bounty*. Though it was impossible to provide all the accommodations necessary, as the vessel could not contain them, yet the officers most generously agreed among themselves to give up their cabins, and, in short, to sacrifice every comfort and convenience for the purpose of making room for whatever booty of plants fortune might put into their way. So many and philanthropic resolutions were certainly worthy the highest commendation.

Having dropped down to Sheerness, they sailed under the command of Admiral Dalrymple and Sir Richard King, passing the Downs, arrived at Portsmouth, where the officers and men received six months pay in advance, and their final directions.

A Malignant Fever
Complete their Voyage
of the British Flag
Rio Janeiro inclining
which relieved the
sailors.

HAVING passed they proceeded was about this time taken ill: Mr. Innes happened to be the 35 were confined to the deck of the vessel rendered distressing; however, he was relieved as humanely as possible.

While approaching was perceived bearing before their departure talk of a Spanish war, by her mistaken appearance, and accordingly as soon as their gun-boats got along-side, she was taken, and found her to be the *Shark*, which had been recalled to Admiral Corbet's departure from Spitzbergen.

The weather was not had several squalls with

Having passed the point to anchor two days afterwards and were immediately who said that a difference existed, but matters were between the Courts of St.

The malignant fever their leaving England to the: almost every man and several of the convalescing approaching the line: every article which was a preservation of health, and was provided by the Lords in their sailing: in consequence there is little doubt of the result.

White's ventilator was put of evacuating the fresh being at this time intolerable of the confined state of the not the desired effect.

During their stay at St. much civility from the shades were somewhat objection. Having completed the product, which is considered exceedingly commodious received a plentiful quantity of pineapples, bananas, and departed from the island.

There were several wars in which they fired several occurred till the 28th of the land of the Brazils; and the fort at Rio Janeiro was returned with an equal As soon as they anchored the captain, that according to a party of soldiers of Edwards would not agree to go on shore to visit the countermanded.

Capt. Edwards having taken the British flag, now paid They met with a vessel

CHAPTER I.

A Malignant Fever takes place—An Alarm—Of no consequence—Anchorage in Santa Cruz—The Fever rages—Complete their Watering, &c. and leave the Island—Anchor of Rio Janeiro—The Captain keeps up the Dignity of the British Flag—Visits the Vice-Roy—Politely received—Description of the Public Gardens—The Colonists of Rio Janeiro inclined to Rebellion—Departure—Progress—Surgeon Hamilton's Remarks on the salutary Articles which relieved the Seamen—Anchor in Mutavy Bay—Pursue the Mutineers—Take their Boat, &c.—Transactions.

HAVING passed the white cliffs of Albion, they proceeded with a favourable breeze. It was about this time that several of the crew were taken ill: Mr. Innes, the surgeon's only mate, happened to be the first, and in a few days after 25 were confined to their beds. The crowded state of the vessel rendered their situation still more distressing; however, every relief that could be suggested was humanely offered by Capt. Edwards.

While approaching the latitude of Madeira, a sail was perceived bearing down upon them. Having before their departure from England heard some talk of a Spanish war, they immediately conjectured by her mistaken appearance that this was a ship of war, and accordingly prepared for action: however, as soon as their guns were run out, and all hands at quarters got along-side, they discovered their mistake, and found her to be his Majesty's ship the *Shark*, which had been dispatched with orders of recall to Admiral Cornish, who a little before their departure from Spithead had failed for the West-Indies.

The weather was now exceedingly bad, and they had several squalls with thunder, lightning, rain, &c. Having passed the peak of Teneriffe, they came to anchor two days after in the road of Santa Cruz, and were immediately boarded by the port master, who said that a difference with the English was expected, but matters were now happily settled between the Courts of St. James's and Madrid.

The malignant fever which had taken place on their leaving England began now to rage very violently: almost every man was laid up in his turn, and several of the convalescents had a relapse upon approaching the line: happily they had on board every article which was essential towards the preservation of health, and which had been considerately provided by the Lords of the Admiralty previous to their sailing: in consequence of which timely relief there is little doubt but several lives were preserved.

White's ventilator was made use of for the purpose of evacuating the foul air from below, the air being at this time intolerably hot; but, on account of the confined state of the vessel, the machine had not the desired effect.

During their stay at Santa Cruz, they met with much civility from the inhabitants, who notwithstanding were somewhat reserved, it being their disposition. Having completed their water from an aqueduct, which is constructed with great skill, and exceedingly commodious for watering vessels, they received a plentiful quantity of lemons, oranges, pomegranates, bananas, &c. &c. and immediately departed from the island.

There were several water-spouts about the vessel, at which they fired several guns. Nothing material occurred till the 28th of December, when they saw the land of the Brazils; and on the 30th they sailed for the fort at Rio Janeiro with 15 guns, which was returned with an equal number.

As soon as they anchored, an officer acquainted the captain, that according to their custom they must send a party of soldiers on board; but this Captain Edwards would not agree to, and therefore refused to go on shore to visit the viceroy till this ceremony was countermanded.

Capt. Edwards having thus supported the dignity of the British flag, now paid his respects to the viceroy. They met with a very kind reception. The

viceroy's suit of carriages were ordered to attend the British officers, and M. le Font, the surgeon-general, who spoke English with ease and fluency, shewed them every mark of politeness and attention on the occasion: he carried them through the principal streets, and introduced them to the public gardens, built by the late viceroy, and which were laid out with great taste and expence.

"All the extremity of the garden is a fine terrace, which commands a view of the water, and is frequented by people of fashion as their grand mall: at each end of the terrace there is an octagonal built room, superbly furnished, where afternoon entertainments are sometimes given. On the pannels are painted the various productions and commerce of South America, representing the diamond fishery, and the process of the indigo trade; the rice grounds and harvest, sugar plantation, South-Sea whale fishery, &c. these were interspersed with views of the country, and the quadrupeds that inhabit those parts. The ceilings contained all the variety, the one of the fish, the other of the fowl of that continent. The compartments of the ceiling of the one room was enriched in shell-work with all the variegated shells of that country, and in the compartments are delineated all the variety of fish that the coast of South-America produces. The other compartment is enriched with feathers, and so imitatively blended as to produce the happiest effect. In this ceiling are painted all the birds and fowls of the country, in all their splendid elegance of plumage. The sofas and furniture are rich in the extreme; and in this elegant recess an idle traveller may have an agreeable lounge, and at one view comprehend the whole natural history of this vast continent. In the centre of the terrace there is a jet d'eau, in form of a large palm-tree, made of copper, which at pleasure may be made to spout water from the extremity of all the leaves. This tree stands on a well-disposed grotto, which rises from the gravel-walk below to the level of the terrace, and terminates the view of the principal walk. Near the foot of the grotto two large alligators, made of copper, are continually discharging water into a handsome basin of white marble, filled with gold and silver fishes.

"There are fine orangeries, and lofty covered arbours, in different parts of the garden, capable of containing a thousand people. Here the Egyptian nymphs hold their nocturnal revels; but intrigue is attended with great danger, as the stiletto is in general use, and assassination frequent, the men being of a jealous sanguinary turn, and the women fond of gallantry, who never appear in public unveiled. When Bouganville, the French circumnavigator, called here, his chaplain was assassinated in an affray of that kind; but, since that accident, orders were given that a commissioned officer should attend all foreign officers, and a soldier the privates; and all strangers, on landing, are conducted to the main-guard for their escort. This answers a double purpose, as they are much afraid of strangers smuggling, or carrying money out of the country, under the mask of personal protection, every motion is watched and scrutinized, nor can any thing be purchased of a merchant till he has settled with the officer of the police how much he shall exact for his goods."

They

They likewise met with great civility from the officers of the army, who gave them some presents of red bird skins, in order to procure the friendship of those natives whom they expected to meet.

Lieutenants Hayward and Corner were particularly assiduous in procuring those plants, &c. which they thought might be of use to cultivate at Otaheite, and which they nursed with peculiar care for that purpose.

During their stay here a conspiracy was detected, as the spirit of revolt is very prevalent among the people, to the great injury of their trade. In consequence of this, several people of distinction were thrown into dungeons, while a strong guard were placed over them, to prevent all intercourse: since, in order to check this rebellious disposition, a regiment of black slaves, willing enough to bear arms against their oppressive masters, is embodied.

Their slaves, whom they keep in chains, execute all their public works, during which they perform a kind of melancholy dirge in recitative, which being accompanied with the clanking of their chains, renders the music exceedingly mournful.

Having in our preceding voyages given a description of the town, buildings, &c. we shall with Capt. Edwards take leave of the place, who on the 8th of January, early in the morning, proceeded on his voyage.

While running down the coast of the Brazils, they perceived several spermæcti whales. Having passed by the Straits of Magellan, on the 31st they saw Cape St. Juan, Staten and New Year's Islands.

The weather now became exceedingly cold, while those who had been so dangerously indisposed experienced a speedy recovery. As they advanced, having fortunately encountered the tempestuous regions of Cape Horn, the weather became exceedingly pleasant, and the health of the people quite established.

We shall here, for the benefit of navigators in general, make mention of those things to which Surgeon Hamilton imputes the recovery of the men.

The four crout kept during the voyage in the highest perfection, and was often eat as a salad with vinegar, in preference to recent cut vegetables from the shore. A cask of this grand antiscorbutic was kept open for the crew to eat as much of as they pleased; from which they derived much salutary benefit.

Likewise the essence of malt afforded a delightful beverage, and, with the addition of a little hops, in the warmest climates, made as good strong beer as could be procured in England. They were likewise supplied with malt in grain, but preferred the essence, it being less liable to decay, and takes up but little room, which is a very valuable consideration in long voyages.

They also found great benefit from cocoa, which was much relished by the men, takes up little room, and affords great nourishment. Indeed, it is the only article of nourishment in sea victualling; for what can in reason be expected from beef or pork, after it has been salted a year or two?

They found much advantage from wheat, which they rough ground in a mill occasionally as they wanted it, and with the addition of a little brown sugar, made it a pleasant nourishing diet, of which the men were extremely fond. Another great advantage attending it, is, that it does not require half the quantity of water which pease do.

They likewise found new bread extremely beneficial to the sick and convalescent, and availed themselves of every opportunity of baking for half the complement at a time. As the flour keeps so much longer found than biscuit, it may be needless to remark its superior advantages; besides, it is not liable to be damaged by water, or otherwise, so much as bread, as a crust forms outside, which protects the rest. It likewise is preferable in point of stowage.

The dividing the people into three watches had a double good effect, as it gave them longer time to sleep, and dry themselves before they turned in, and as the majority of the crew consisted of landmen, the fewer there were on deck the more necessary they found their exertions in acquiring a due knowledge of the service.

They unfortunately sprung a leak in the after-part of the vessel, which reached the bread-room, and damaged a great quantity thereof: 1515 lb. they were obliged to throw overboard, besides which there remained a great quantity still injured, which was kept for the use of the cattle.

On the 4th of March they saw Easter Island. They now set the forge to work, and the armourers were employed in making knives, and other small articles, for the sake of trading with the natives.

On the 16th they discovered a lagoon island, of about four miles extent, which they called Ducie's Island, in honour of Lord Ducie. It seemed to be well covered with wood, but there was no appearance of inhabitants.

On the 17th they discovered another, which they called Lord Hood's Island. This was about six miles long. They saw a great many trees, but no sign of inhabitants.

On the 19th they discovered another, which they called Carysfort Island, in honour of Lord Carysfort. This was much the same of Ducie's Island.

On the 22d they passed Maitea, and on the 23d anchored in Matavy bay in the island of Otaheite.

Early in the morning they were visited by a canoe with one native, who, by embraces and salutes, assured them as he came on board, expressed great joy on seeing them. When Lieut. Hayward was introduced to him, who had been purposely concealed from him on his first coming, it is impossible to describe his astonishment.

From this man it was understood that the mutineers had been on the island, and had deceived the natives, by informing them that Capt. Bligh had gone to settle at Whyteetakee, and that Capt. Cook was living there: however, the truth of this being suspected, and Christian apprehensive of some evil designs, left Otaheite with nine of his party in the Bounty.

Lieutenants Corner and Hayward were now dispatched in the launch and pinnace, with 26 men to the N. W. part of the island, to make what further discoveries they could respecting the mutineers. Joseph Coleman, who was armourer of the Bounty, came on board the Pandora; and, in short time after, two of the Bounty's midshipmen and afterwards Richard Skinner.

On the 25th the launch and pinnace returned having chased the mutineers on shore, and taken possession of their boat. The lieutenants reported that the mutineers had taken refuge in the heights and claimed the protection of Tamatrah, a chief of Papara, who was the legal king of Otaheite, as the family of Otoo were deemed usurpers.

On the 27th the captain sent his boat with present of some rum to the king Otoo, with an invitation, which he accepted, and the next day by majesty; with his family and attendants, among whom was Oedidee, a chief, visited the Pandora.

King Otoo has two queens at Tiarahoo. The all three sleep together, and live in the most perfect harmony, though of different ages, for his principal queen, who is a robust coarse-looking woman, about thirty, and the other, a handsome delicate creature, whose name is Alredey, scarcely fifteen.

Lieut. Corner was now appointed to march across the country with a detachment of men, and if possible get between the mountains and mutineers. This gentleman was deemed exceedingly capable of the task, having during his youth bore a commission in the land service.

Lieut. Hayward was likewise appointed to



View of Matavia Bay, in OTAHEITE, taken from One Tree Hill, which Tree is a new Species of the Erythrina.

bark by water, with the chiefs, particularly the lieutenant like-woman, who had been a vessel that had visited being unruly and man was, however, five, and of great use, had now been among months, during which all their manners, and ledge of their language.

On the 28th Lieutenant Venus with his party, aided him, acted as the common people a position over the heights was absolutely necessary, a cataract, or river, mountains, and formations had to ford it sixteen journey, which gave strength of the natives. The former went over could not stem the rapids their help. They went to the ship for ropes and heights, which otherwise

Having halted awhile with to one of the natives who told him he might find the natives ready dressed and ran to a temple, where they served to their god, a roasted pig, that had been killed.

This striking instance of the lieutenant; but the natives had more than he could do.

During this expedition to drain the natives from the Cava grounds of the natives were on the eve of a war hereditary right of the natives.

Having now arrived at the chief, they met with a reception; after being received and drink, the officer went to visit the morai of Mr. Corner judging it necessary to gain the attention, to gain the natives, ordered his party to volleys over the decease of his best new cloaths on the ground, and a cartridge from one of the natives set fire to the paper cloaths, and a unlucky disaster threw the natives into perplexity; for, agreeable to the natives and estate would be for the corpse of his father to be injured.

In the mean time the party were busy. The natives of the upper district, and of the lower, now a very sincere friend of his liberal presents, and considerably assisted in the expedition.

The mutineers having no hope of resource, the natives while Lieutenant Haywood was in front; under cover of a shelter in a hut in the valley by Brown, who crept up to them while they were asleep, distinguishing their toes; as the natives' shoes are easily discovered.

Next day Lieutenant Haywood and were sent down the valley, and were sent down the valley, guard, with their hands

bark by water, with another party, and several of the chiefs, particularly Oedidee, accompanied him. The lieutenant likewise took one Brown, an Englishman, who had been left on shore by an American vessel that had visited the place, on account of his being unruly and troublesome on board. This man was, however, exceedingly cunning and active, and of great utility on those occasions. He had now been among the natives upwards of twelve months, during which he became accustomed to all their manners, and had acquired sufficient knowledge of their language.

On the 28th Lieutenant Corner landed on Point Venus with his party. The chiefs who accompanied him, acted as conductors, and a number of the common people assisted in carrying the ammunition over the heights: and indeed their assistance was absolutely necessary, having to cross a rapid cataract, or river, which came down from the mountains, and formed so many curves. They had to ford it sixteen times in the course of their journey, which gave evident proofs of the superior strength of the natives over the English seamen. The former went over with ease, where the sailors could not stem the rapidity of the torrent without their help. They were, however, forced to send to the ship for ropes and tackles to gain some heights, which otherwise they could not ascend.

Having halted awhile, the lieutenant expressed a wish to one of the natives for something to eat, who told him he might be supplied with plenty of victuals ready dressed; upon this he immediately ran to a temple, where meat had been regularly served to their god, and came running with a roasted pig, that had been presented that day. This striking instance of impiety startled the Lieutenant; but the native assured him that the god had more than he could possibly make use of.

During this expedition they could scarcely restrain the natives from committing depredations on the Cava grounds of the upper districts, as they were on the eve of a war with them, respecting the hereditary right of the crown.

Having now arrived at the residence of a great chief, they met with a very kind and hospitable reception; after being refreshed with plenty of meat and drink, the officer was conducted by the chief to visit the morai of the dead chief his father. Mr. Corner judging it necessary, by every mark of attention, to gain the good graces of this great man, ordered his party to draw up, and fire three volleys over the deceased, who was brought out in his best new cloaths on the occasion; but the burning cartridge from one of the muskets unfortunately set fire to the paper cloaths of the dead chief. This unlucky disaster threw the son into the greatest perplexity; for, agreeable to their laws, his title and estate would be forfeited to the next heir if the corpse of his father be either stolen or otherwise injured.

In the mean time Lieutenant Hayward and his party were busy. Tamarrah, the prince of the upper district, and of great consequence, became now a very sincere friend to the captain, on account of his liberal presents, by which means they were considerably assisted in their endeavours.

The mutineers having been cut off from every hope of resource, the natives harassed them behind, while Lieutenant Hayward and his party advanced in front; under cover of night they had taken shelter in a hut in the woods, but were discovered by Brown, who creeping up to the place where they were asleep, distinguished from the natives by feeling their toes; as people unaccustomed to wear shoes are easily discovered from the spread of their toes. Next day Lieut. Hayward attacked them, but they grounded their arms without opposition, and were sent down to the boat under a strong guard, with their hands tied behind their backs.

No. 19.

Previous to this there were two natives killed; one was shot in the dusk of the evening by one of the centinels, who had his musket twice beat out of his hand, from the natives pelting our party with large stones; but, the instant he was shot, some of his friends rushed in and carried off the body.

The other native was shot by the mutineers: when attacked by the natives, they took to a river. A stone being thrown by one of the natives at the wife, or woman, of one of the mutineers, enraged him so much, that he immediately shot the offender.

There was a prison built, for their accommodation, on the quarter deck, that they might be secure, and apart from the ship's company; and that it might have every advantage of a free circulation of air, which rendered it the most desirable place in the ship. Orders were likewise given that they should be victualled, in every respect, the same as the ship's company, both in meat, liquor, and all the extra indulgencies, notwithstanding the established laws of the service, which restricts prisoners to two-thirds allowance; but Capt. Edwards, considering how long they must needs be confined, behaved with the greatest humanity.

A conspiracy was formed among the natives on shore, to cut their cables, should there happen to be a fierce gale from the sea, which would admit of an opportunity. This however was timely discovered by Oripai, the king's brother, who was a chief of much sense and penetration. The captain was not a little alarmed at this discovery, as several of the prisoners had been married to the daughters of the most respectable chiefs in the district, opposite to where they lay at anchor.

The captain experienced the greatest civility from the king, his two brothers, and all the principal chiefs. These expressed the greatest anxiety for both his and his people's safety. While the prisoners were on board they kept watch during the night, and were remarkably vigilant for fear of the cables being injured, continually reminding the centinels of their duty, and spurring them on to keep a careful look-out.

The prisoners were daily visited by their wives, who were permitted to bring their children; and the poor captive fathers lamenting over their tender offspring, rendered the scene truly distressing. These unhappy men were supplied with all the delicacies that the country afforded, by their faithful wives, who on this occasion demonstrated the greatest affection and tenderness.

On the 30th they received a formal visit from the king, his two queens, and the chiefs, who on this occasion had a band of music. The ladies had so much cloth wrapt round them, by which they were rendered so unwieldy and bulky, that it was with the greatest difficulty they were got on board. The king brought a present of some hogs, bananas, cocoa-nuts, &c. Also a quantity of ready-dressed puddings.

The next day a grand heiva was ordered, for the entertainment of the captain and his officers, on Point Venus. A band of music was ordered to attend them as soon as they had landed, and they were conducted to the place where the king and his retinue were waiting to receive them. A ring was immediately made, and the entertainment began, which was similar to those already described.

The following circumstance respecting Churchill, the principal ringleader of the mutineers, was related to the captain, which is a striking instance of that real friendship which prevails among the natives. Churchill having become the friend of a great chief in the upper districts, became on his death (as he died without issue) heir to his estate and title, agreeable to the law of Tyoship. Thompson, however, of the Bounty, having fallen out with Churchill, shot him, which enraged the natives so much that to revenge the death of Churchill, their chief, they immediately

went in the cutter, and took a strict survey of the island.

Lieutenants Hayward and Corner landed on the different isles with cork-jackets; but the surf running very high all round, rendered it exceedingly dangerous, and in many places impracticable. Had they not been expert swimmers, in duty of this kind, they must have certainly been drowned, as they had not only themselves and the party to take care of, but also the arms and ammunition to preserve from the wet.

In the afternoon, about four o'clock, Mr. Sival, the midshipman, came on board in the jolly-boat, and brought with him several very curious stained canoes, representing the figures of men, fishes, and boats. He had committed some mistake in the orders he was sent to execute, and was ordered to return immediately to rectify it; but the boat did not come back again. A few minutes after she left the ship, the weather became thick and hazy, and began to blow fresh; so that, even with the assistance of glasses, they could not see whether she made the shore or not. It continued to blow during the night, so as to prevent the party on shore from coming on board. They had been employed during the day in searching all the islands with particular attention, having every reason to suspect the mutineers were there, from finding the Bounty's yard and spars. But at last, wore out with fatigue in marching, and swimming through so many reefs, and having no victuals the whole day, in the evening they began to forage for something to eat. The gigantic cockle was the only thing that presented. Of the shell of one they made a kettle, to boil some junks of it in. Some of these cockles are larger than three men can carry. Of this coarse fare and some cocoa-nuts, by the assistance of a good appetite, they made a tolerable hearty supper; they then set the watch, and went to sleep. They had thrown a large nut on the fire before they lay down, and forgot it; but in the middle of the night the milk of the cocoa-nut became so expanded with the heat, that it burst with a great explosion. Their minds had been so much engaged in the course of the day with the enterprise they were employed in, expecting muskets to be fired at them from every bush, that they all jumped up, seized their arms, and were some time before they were convinced of their error.

On the 23d the boats returned; but there was no intelligence of the jolly-boat. The tender received a fresh supply of provisions and ammunition; at the same time they had orders to cruise in a certain direction, to look for the jolly-boat; and Palmerston's Isles was appointed as a rendezvous to meet again.

Lieutenant Corner now came on board, in a canoe not much bigger than a butcher's tray. The cutter was sent a second time to search the reefs, but returned without success. They then run down with the ship in the direction the wind had blown the preceding day, in hopes of finding the boat; but after a whole day's run to leeward, and breaking up again by traverses to the isles, saw nothing of her. The tender hoisted in sight in the evening, and they again searched the isles without success. All further hopes of seeing her were given up, and they proceeded on their voyage.

The fate of the unfortunate men who were in the jolly-boat could never be ascertained. On leaving the vessel there was a piece of salt beef thrown to them, and no doubt they were able the next day to satiate their thirst, as there were heavy showers of rain.

On the 6th of June an island was discovered: the captain called it the Duke of York's Island.

Captain Edwards now dispatched the two yauls, covered by the tender, with Lieutenants Hayward and Corner, to examine this island. A short time after their departure there were some huts seen

from the vessel; a signal was accordingly made to apprise the lieutenants of the danger, that they might proceed on shore with the utmost caution.

On their return Lieutenants Hayward and Corner reported, that they had seen a ship's wooden buoy; they had also found nets of different sizes hanging up in the huts, with a variety of fishing utensils. They had also discovered in several parts of the creek stages and wharfs, which led them to believe that this was an island only inhabited in the fishing season by some of the neighbouring nations. They found near the beach the skeleton of a very large fish, which they imagined to be a whale. They were likewise struck with the venerable appearance of a place which resembled a druidical temple, and was exceedingly curious. The falling of a very large old tree, formed an arch, through which the interior part of the temple was seen, which heightened the perspective, and gave a romantic solemn dignity to the scene. At the extreme end of the temple, three altars were placed, the center one higher than the other two, on which some white shells were regularly piled.

When they had thus examined the island, they re-visited the huts, and hung up a few knives, looking-glasses, and some other trifles, that the natives, on their return, might know the place had been frequented during their absence.

On the 12th we discovered another island, which the Captain called the Duke of Clarence's Island. In running along the land they perceived several canoes crossing the lagoons. The tender's signal was made to cover the boats in landing, and Lieutenants Hayward and Corner sent to reconnoitre the beach, to discover a landing-place. In performing this they approached the natives in their canoes, who made signs of peace to them; however, on account of some diffidence on their side, they had no intercourse with them. They found several burying-places here, which indicated it to be a principal residence; also some old cocoa trees, &c.

On the 18th, we discovered an island of greater extent than any hitherto seen in the south. This was called, in honour of the first lord of the admiralty, Chatham's Island. It is beautifully diversified with hills and dales, of twice the extent of Orahete, and a hardy warlike race of people: the natives described a large river. The natives with whom they traded seemed very fair and honourable. Some were in mourning for their king Fenow. Having made an unsuccessful search for the mutineers, they continued their voyage.

On the 21st another island, of about forty miles long, was discovered, the natives called it Otutuc-lah. It is well wooded with immense large trees, whose foliage spreads like the oak; and there is a deal of shrubbery on it, bearing a yellow flower.

The natives here are remarkably handsome: some of them had their skins tinged with yellow, as a mark of distinction, but which at first led the English to imagine they were diseased. Neither sex wear any clothing, but a girdle of leaves round their middle, stained with different colours. The women adorn their hair with chaplets of sweet-smelling flowers, and bracelets, and necklaces of flowers round their wrists and neck. They were exceedingly timid on their first coming on board; also perfectly ignorant of fire-arms, never having seen a European ship before. They made many gestures of submission, and were struck with wonder and surprise at every thing they saw. Amongst other things, they brought some most remarkable fine puddings, which abounded with aromatic spices, that excelled in taste and flavour the most delicate seed-cake.

The captain and his people traded with them the whole day, and got many curiosities. Birds and fowls, of the most splendid plumage, some resembling the peacock, and a great variety of the parrot kind, were brought on board.

Before

Before evening the women went all on shore, and the men began to be troublesome and pilfering. The third lieutenant had a new coat stole out of his cabin; and they were making off with every bit of iron, &c. which lay in their way.

A fierce breeze coming on, they were obliged to make off from the land. Those who were engaged in trade on board were so anxious, that the captain had got almost out of sight of their canoes, before they perceived the ship's motion, whereupon they all jumped into the water instantaneously; but one of them, more earnest than the rest, hung by the rudder-chains for a mile or two, thinking to detain the vessel.

In the evening they unfortunately parted company, and the captain lost sight of the tender. False fires were burnt, and great guns and small arms were fired without success: the weather became very thick and disagreeable.

On the 23d and 24th they continued to cruise for her, near where they parted company, which was off a piece of remarkable high land. What was most unfortunate, water and provisions were then on deck for her, which were intended to have been put on board of her in the morning. She had the day before received orders, in case of separation, to rendezvous at Annamooka, and to wait there for the vessel. A small cag of salt, and another of nails and iron-ware, were likewise put on board of her, to traffic with the Indians, and the latitudes and longitudes of the places the captain would touch at, in his intended rout. She had a boarding netting fixed, to prevent her being boarded, and several seven-barrelled pieces and blunderbusses likewise aboard.

The Pandora proceeded to the eastward, and they saw that island which was discovered by Monf. Bouganville.

On the 28th they saw the Happai Islands, discovered by Capt. Cook, and before noon the group of islands to the eastward of Annamooka, and sailed down between Little Annamooka and the Falafagee Island. The next day they anchored in the road of Annamooka.

A large sailing canoe was now hired, and Lieut. Hayward and one private sent to the Happai and Feegee Islands, to make enquiry after the Bounty and the tender; but no intelligence was received. Here they found an axe, which had been left by Capt. Cook. Several hogs, yams, &c. were likewise purchased of the natives.

The inhabitants of Annamooka are the most audacious robbers in the South Seas; while two or three of the officers were taking a walk on shore one evening, who had the precaution to take their pistols with them, they were surrounded by several of the natives, with apparent intention to pilfer; however on their presenting the pistols to them, they sheered off. The captain having joined the officers, and brought his servant with him, carrying a bag of nails, and some trifling presents, which he meant to distribute amongst these natives, took the bag from him, and dispatched him with a message to the boat, on which the inhabitants followed him. As soon as he got out of sight of his master, they stripped him naked, and robbed him of his cloaths, and every article he had, but one shoe, which he used for concealing his nakedness. At this juncture Lieutenant Hayward arrived from his expedition, and called the assistance of the guard in searching for the robbers. They saw the natives all running, and lurking behind the trees, which led them to suspect there was some mischief brewing; but they soon discovered the poor servant, with a bayonet in his hand, naked and vowing vengeance against the natives, for the treatment he had received. Night coming on, they went on board, but the poor fellow's cloaths were never recovered.

On the 30th the king of Annamooka, whose name is Tatafee, paid the captain a visit.

The people here seem to be somewhat civilized, and have notions of private property, as every one's land is ascertained by a fence, agreeable to the plan of the Chinese railing. They likewise shew an inclination to industry, having all their highways and roads leading to public places in great order. Nor are they less inclined to cultivation, as shrubbery is planted with great taste on each side of the gravel-walk leading to their houses: several have rows of pine-apples on each side of their avenue. Lieutenants Corner and Hayward took great pains in instructing them how to transplant their pine-apples, and they paid no little attention to his advice.

The women are more masculine than those at Otaheite, but they have very animated countenances, which render them exceedingly agreeable. They have a toy, with which they amuse themselves, similar to a cup and ball. They are very fond of displaying their charms, which they do in a very successful manner.

Several very handsome girls were brought by their own mothers on board to be disposed of. At first their demands were exorbitant, as no less than broad axes would content them: from this, however, they fell to old razors, and at last to scissars and nails. This trade became at last so common, that many of the poor girls were purchased; and in such case it is customary to hold a council of matrons, who distinguish the unfortunate girl by making a gash in her fore-finger. In this manner the razors were used, and had there been more aboard, there is no doubt but all the girls would have suffered in the same manner.

A brisk trade was carried on: they had purchased an abundance of hogs, and found the pork much superior to that at Otaheite. They had also procured several ton weight of excellent yams.

The captain sent a party on shore to cut wood for fuel, and grafs for the sheep. The natives, however, would not suffer any of the grafs to be touched. They became exceedingly troublesome; and though this party was attended with a guard of armed men, the inhabitants still intruded, and committed whatever thefts they could. One of them made a blow at Lieut. Corner with his club, which fortunately missed his head, and only stunned him in the back of his neck. Mean time the offender stole his handkerchief, and was making off; but the lieutenant having recovered himself in time, levelled his musket at him, and shot him dead. Another party was dispatched to get water, and these were equally harassed and interrupted.

King Tatafee was now about collecting tribute from the islands under his jurisdiction; and accordingly went in the Pandora to Tofoa. The captain, previous to his sailing, left a letter with a principal chief of the island for Mr. Oliver, the commander of the tender, in case he should arrive before the captain's return.

During the night they admired the burning mounting on Tofoa; and early the next day two canoes were dispatched on shore, to announce the arrival of Tatafee and Tabou, who intended to have gone on shore in the Pandora's barge, which the thought would add to their consequence. They were, however, met on the way by the tributary princes in their canoes.

These princes, in doing homage, came along-side the barge; bowed their heads over the side of the canoe; while Tatafee, agreeable to custom, put his foot upon their heads. This king distributed all the presents he received from the English, when he landed, amongst his subjects.

They met here with some of the people who insulted Capt. Bligh's men in the boat at Murderer's Cave. Upon seeing Lieut. Hayward, (whom the recollected) they seemed somewhat apprehensive of his anger. Capt. Edwards endeavoured to convince the king, Tatafee, of his disapprobation of that business; but fearful the tender might likewise be

CAPTA

tacked on her arrival,

displeasure too far. It was the captain's booby, but herein he was in an unfavourable chance of an unfavourable success to Carooa and proceeded to Carooa and likewise intended to have in hopes of finding it would to fall in with the islands.

On the 12th of July the islands in the N. W. were upon their examination to the Friendly Isles, and the favourable wind was

On the 14th they saw the Navigator's Isles; the natives called Tumalua. Saw at a little distance, to land; however, they were on their voyage.

On the 15th they reached some of Bougainville, which circumstance that he was murdered by them

On the 18th they discovered the next day ran

They proceed on their Voyages of some—A stranded Pandora jurists on a K. die of Infamy—Four

EVERY thing being proceeded on their and discovered an extensive called Proby's Island, in Proby. The land was more large and commodious. The natives call

brisk trade was carried whom they purchased for

They now made for reached on the 7th. To whom they gave some having committed a theft, and did not appear again. These people had their cheek bones much

They now steered between Saoto, and on the 8th dayward. They founded, but they ran down the island

hilly, and well covered were cultivated to the number of inhabitants. number of houses. It miles in length. The cap island, in honour of Lo by the natives Rotumah.

They were met by several in them rested on the war-hoop at stated periods with clubs, and meant to the magnitude and novel man of war, struck them and fear; besides, being arms, they were so started that they made off with what they had come with hostile as women with them.

These natives wore bracelets of white shells. They were curiously marked with tattoos, birds, &c. They were thieving, and uncommon. One fellow was making

tacked on her arrival, he was careful not to carry his displeasure too far.

It was the captain's intention to visit Tongataboo, but herein he was prevented by the continuance of an unfavourable wind. He therefore proceeded to Catooa and Navigator's Isles, which he likewise intended to have done before, but delayed in hopes of finding the tender. They now endeavoured to fall in with the easternmost of these islands.

On the 12th of July they discovered a cluster of islands in the N. W. quarter; however they postponed their examination of these till their return to the Friendly Isles, as they were unwilling to lose the favourable wind which they now had.

On the 14th they saw three isles, supposed to be the Navigator's Isles; the largest of which the natives called Tumaluah. The inhabitants, whom they saw at a little distance, made feveral signs for them to land; however, they thought proper to proceed on their voyage.

On the 15th they reached Oteetuelah, where they found some of Bougainville's cloaths, &c. from which circumstances there is little doubt but what he was murdered by the natives.

On the 18th they discovered a cluster of islands, and the next day ran down the N. side till they

came to an opening, where they perceived the sea on the other side. They were informed by the natives, that there were excellent watering-places in different parts within a sound; which is formed by some of the islands to the S. E. and N. W. They were visited by several of the inferior chiefs, and the natives seemed very kind and honest. Their religion, customs, language, &c. are similar to those at Annamooka, but their behaviour is far better.

The country is well covered with wood; there are several beautiful paroquets, a number of which were brought to the frigate by the natives.

The captain distinguished these islands by the names of Earrington's, Sawyer's, Hotham's, and Jarvis's. The sound was called Curtis's; and the whole group of islands had the general denomination of Howe's Islands.

On the 23d they passed another island, supposed to be Pylellaart island.

On the 26th they perceived Middleburgh Island, between which and Euah they ran down. They examined this island, but met with no success; after this they passed Tongataboo, where they procured refreshments, and on the 29th they anchored again in Annamooka, and lamented very much that during their absence the tender had not been heard of.

CHAPTER III.

They proceed on their Voyage—Several Islands discovered—Description of the different Inhabitants—Hostile Intentions of some—A wonderful Escape—Lieut. Corner sent in the Boat to look for a Passage—Anxiety for her return—Pandora prizes on a Reef—Her Wreck—Great Distress—Crew leap overboard—Several drowned—One Conceived of Insanity—Four Boats fitted out—They embark in them for Timor.

EVERY thing being now ready for sailing, they proceeded on their voyage the 5th of August, and discovered an extensive island, which the captain called Proby's Island, in honour of Commissioner Proby. The land was hilly, and the houses much more large and commodious than any they had yet seen. The natives call the island Onooafow. A brisk trade was carried on with these people, of whom they purchased several articles.

They now made for Wallis's Island, which they reached on the 7th. They were visited by a canoe, to whom they gave some presents; but the natives having committed a theft, made an abrupt departure, and did not appear again.

These people had their little fingers cut off, and their cheek bones much bruised and flattened.

They now steered between Santa Cruz and Sperito Santo, and on the 8th discovered land to the westward. They founded, but could find no bottom. They ran down the island, which was remarkably hilly, and well covered with wood. The mountains were cultivated to the very top, which indicated a number of inhabitants. There appeared a great number of houses. It seemed to be about seven miles in length. The captain called this Grenville's Island, in honour of Lord Grenville. It is called by the natives Rotumah.

They were met by several canoes; the men who were in them rested on their paddles, and gave the war-hoop at stated periods. They were all armed with clubs, and meant to attack the English; but the magnitude and novelty of such an object as a man of war, struck them with a mixture of wonder and fear; besides, being perfectly ignorant of firearms, they were so started at the report of a musket, that they made off with the utmost expedition. As they had come with hostile intentions, they brought no women with them.

These natives wore bracelets, necklaces, and girdles of white shells. Their bodies were every where curiously marked with the figures of men, dogs, fishes, birds, &c. They were exceedingly expert in thieving, and uncommonly athletic and strong. One fellow was making off with some booty, but

No. 20.

was detected; and although five of the stoutest men in the ship were hanging upon him, and had fast hold of his long flowing black hair, he overpowered them all, and jumped overboard with his prize. There is a high promontory on this island, which was called Mount Temple by the captain.

On the 11th they run over a reef of coral, in 11 fathom water, which was called Pandora's reef: they were exceedingly alarmed, but passed it in five minutes, and on sounding immediately afterwards, found no bottom.

Early on the 12th they discovered an island, well wooded, but not inhabited. It had two remarkable promontories on it, one resembling a mitre, and the other a steeple; for which reason they called it Mitre Island. They passed it, and stood to the westward; and at ten the same morning discovered another island to the N. W. which they called Cherry's Island, in honour of — Cherry, Esq; commissioner of the victualling-office. This was entirely cultivated, and had a vast number of inhabitants, though only a mile in length. The beach from the E. round by the S. is a white sand, but too much surf for a boat to attempt to land.

On the 13th they discovered another island to the N. W. which they called Pitt's Island. It was very hilly, and covered with wood even to the top. No inhabitants were seen, but there being smoke in several parts of it, there is no doubt but it is inhabited.

On the 17th, at midnight, they discovered breakers on each bow. They had just room to wear ship, and as this wonderful escape was from the vigilance of one Wells, who was looking out a head, it was called Wells's Shoals. In the morning, at day-light, they put about, to examine the danger they were in, and found they had got embayed in a double reef, which will very soon be an island. They run round its N. W. end, and on the 23d saw land, which they supposed to be the Luifiade, a cape bearing N. E. and by E. This was called Cape Rodney; and another, contiguous thereto, Cape Hood. There was a mountain between them, which they named Mount Clarence.

• 3 M

They

They proceeded to the westward, keeping Endeavour Straits open, for their greater security.

On the 25th they saw breakers; upon which they hauled up, and passed to the westward of them: the sea broke very gently on them. These were called Look-out Shoals. Before noon they saw more breakers, the reef of which was composed of very large stones. This was called Stony-reef Island.

They now stood to the westward, where there appeared to be an opening. They perceived an island in that direction; and a reef extending a considerable way to the N. W. They now hauled upon the wind, seeing their passage obstructed, and stood off and on, under an easy sail in the night, till day-light; and on the 28th bore away, and discovered four islands, to which the name of Murray's Islands was given. On the top of the largest, there was something resembling a fortification. They discovered at the same three two-masted boats. They kept running along the reef, and in the forenoon thought they saw an opening.

The captain ordered Lieut. Corner to get ready, and discover if there was a passage for the ship: he went to the top-mast head, to look well round him before he went; after which he took with him in the boat an axe, some fuel, provisions, a little water, a compass, &c.

About five in the afternoon, a signal was made from the boat, that a passage through the reef was discovered for the ship; but wishing to be well informed in so intricate a business, and the day being far spent, waited the boats coming on board; they made a signal for the boat's return, which they repeated. Night closing fast upon them, and considering their former misfortunes of losing the tender and jolly boat, it was deemed necessary, both for the preservation of the boat, and the success of the voyage, to exert their utmost to recover her as soon as possible.

They now kindled false fires, and fired muskets from the ship, which were answered by the boat reciprocally; and as the flashes from their muskets in the boat were distinctly seen by those in the ship, she was reasonably expected soon on board. Having founded, they found bottom with 110 fathom line, and afterwards with 50 fathom. The boat was now seen close under the stern; they were at the same time lying to, to prevent the ship fore-reaching. Immediately on founding this last time, the top-sails were filled; but before the tacks were hauled on board, and the sails trimmed, she struck on a reef of rocks, and at that instant the boat got on board. Every possible effort was attempted to get her off by the sails; but that failing, they were furl'd, and the boats hoisted out with a view to carry out an anchor. Previous to this, the carpenter reported she made eighteen inches water in five minutes; and in a quarter of an hour more she had nine feet water in the hold, which created no small apprehensions.

All the crew were now at the pumps, and to bale at the different hatchways. Some of the prisoners were let out of irons, and turned to the pumps. At this dreadful crisis, it blew very violently; and the boat so hard upon the rocks, that it was expected every minute she would go to pieces. About ten she beat over the reef; and they let go the anchor in fifteen fathom water. It was now a dark stormy night, which added not a little to their fears.

The captain ordered the guns to be thrown overboard; and what hands could be spared from the pumps were employed thrumming a top-sail, to haul under her bottom, to endeavour to fodder her. In addition to this distress, one of the chain-pumps gave way; and she gained fast upon them. The scheme of the top-sail was now laid aside, and every soul fell to baling and pumping. All the boats, excepting one, were obliged to keep a long distance off, on account of the broken water, and the very high surf that was running near them. They baled

with their utmost powers; for had she gone down before day-light, every soul must have perished. She now took a heel, and some of the guns they were endeavouring to throw overboard run down to leeward, which crushed one man to death: about the same time a spare top-mast came down from the booms, and killed another.

The crew being exceedingly faint and fatigued, were allowed some refreshment. Fortunately they had between decks a cask of excellent strong ale, brewed at Annamooka. This was tapped, and served regularly to all hands; which was much preferable to spirits, as it gave them spirits without intoxication. The men behaved with great resolution and intrepidity, and were remarkably obedient to their captain's orders.

As soon as day began to dawn, a council of war was held among the officers; and as she was then settling fast down in the water, it was their unanimous opinion, that nothing further could be done for the preservation of his Majesty's ship. It was therefore recommended to the crew to look to themselves, and take as much care as possible of their lives.

The prisoners were now restored to liberty, and permitted to shift for themselves. The booms, sparren-coops, and every thing buoyant, were cut loose in hopes when the ship sunk something might remain for them to catch hold of. The men were still remarkably obedient, and exercised themselves hard at the pumps; but the water came in so violently at the gun-ports, that the labour was ineffectual. The ship taking a very heavy heel, lay down quite on one side: whereupon one of the officers informed the captain that the anchor on their bow was under water, and that she was inevitably gone: he then jumped over the quarter into the water, bidding him to follow, which he did. All the crew did the same, while she took her last heel, and instantly went down. The boats, on account of the tide, were at some distance, but they did their best to take up some of the drowning men, whose cries were exceedingly piercing. When the sun rose, they discovered a sandy key, which seemed about 30 paces long, and about four miles distance. Here, as soon as the boats had arrived, they mustered their remains, having lost 35 men and four prisoners.

Very fortunately a small barrel of water, a cask of wine, some biscuit, and a few muskets and cartridge boxes, had been preserved. They now rested, in order to recover themselves, as they suffered exceedingly from the heat of the sun, and the quantity of salt-water which, while they were swimming, filled their stomachs, and caused a most intolerable thirst, which was still more painful, as no water was allowed to be served out the first day. A guard was placed over the prisoners, and the boats were hauled up in one of which having found a saw and a hammer they were the better enabled to make preparations for their voyage: accordingly they proceeded to cut up the floor boards of all the boats into uprights round which they stretched canvas, in order to keep the water from breaking into the boats at sea; likewise to repair another, which was in a very bad condition. Having made tents of the boats sails, and set the watch, they went to sleep as soon as it was dark. One of the crew, (Connell) having incautiously drank a quantity of salt water to ease his thirst, went mad in the night, and behaved so outrageously, that they thought the poor creature had stolen the wine and got drunk: in a very short time after he died.

Early the next morning the captain dispatched Mr. George Passmore in one of the boats to visit the wreck, in hopes that he might find something that might turn out of some use to them. In about two hours he returned with about 15 feet of the lightning chain, which they cut up, being coppered in order to make nails thereof for refitting their boats: he likewise brought a piece of the topgallant

mast, which had been clinging to it.

They had boiled which was cut into exceedingly thirsty, a man had a wine glass paper parcel of tea; heers joined their allies captain in his tent. Spoonful thereof was with which they moist and derived great be-

Having now made flock, it was found th of two small wine glass per day. They the squadron without lo appointed the following

In
Capt. Edwards
Mr. Richards,
Mr. Packer, g

They proceed on their Voyage—account of their savages—Are attacked by some savages with Sleep at Sea—Visited by a Captain with Refreshments— in England.

Each boat being furnished with longitude of the island of 1100 miles from this the 30th of August the squadron, having formed upon the thwarts, tier of men.

Previous to this there pair of wooden scales, bread might be served of their better subsistence chief part of their provisions under Lieut. Corner's care. During night they to the low line about day-t After this the red and to examine and found the and seek a watering-place; they providentially collect water at the edge had sufficiently quenched quart bottles and a tea-k clear the pinnace and launch far distant as not to be which the yauls made to

The coast appeared very far as they could judge country seemed to abound

When they had passed by two canoes, which, who struggled very these men stood up in made many signs to invite it most prudent to be nearly naked, and had they had heard an indi-

Two hours after this the man, who were lying—night they were alarmed—others 2-head. They had; and in their present worn out and fatig they got out of their

man, which had been brought away, and a cat that was clinging to it.

They had boiled some of the gigantic cockle, which was cut into junks; but the men were so exceedingly thirsty, that they could not eat. Each man had a wine glass of water in the evening. A paper parcel of tea having been preserved, the officers joined their allowance, and had tea with the captain in his tent. When it was made, a salt-cellar spoonful thereof was passed from one to another, with which they moistened their mouths by degrees, and derived great benefit from it.

Having now made an examination of their small stock, it was found that there was only an allowance of two small wine glasses for 16 days, for each man per day. They therefore made ready the little squadron without loss of time, while the captain appointed the following order of sailing:

In the Pinnace,
Capt. Edwards, Lieut. Hayward.
Mr. Richards, master's mate.
Mr. Packer, gunner.

Mr. Edmonds, captain's clerk.
Sixteen privates, and three prisoners.

In the Launch,

Lieut. Corner.
Mr. Gregory Bentham, purser.
Mr. Montgomery, carpenter.
Mr. Bovington, master's mate.
Mr. M'Kendrick, midshipman.
Twenty-four privates, and two prisoners.

In the Red Yawl,

Lieut. Larkan.
Mr. George Hamilton, surgeon.
Mr. Reynolds, master's mate.
Mr. Matson, midshipman.
Eighteen privates, and two prisoners.

In the Blue Yawl,

Mr. George Passmore, master.
Mr. Cunningham, boatswain.
Mr. James Innes, surgeon's mate.
Mess. Fenwick and Pycroft, midshipmen.
Fifteen privates, and three prisoners.

CHAPTER IV.

They proceed on their Voyage in the Boats—Curfery Remark:—Followed by two Canoes—They avoid the Natives, on account of their Savage Appearance, &c.—Approach an inhabited Island—Receive some Water from the Natives—Are attacked by some of them—Arrows let fly—Muskets discharged—None of either side killed—Refresh themselves with Sleep at Laforey's Island—Search for Water—Successful—Discoveries—Fill the Carpenter's Boats with Water, for want of Utensils—Proceed on their Voyage—Discover several Islands—Discover Land—Get on Shore—Visited by a Chinese Chief, and some of the Natives—His Humanity—They are supplied by the Natives with Refreshments—Occurrences—Embark for Coupang—Arrival—Transactions—Proceed to Batavia—Land in England.

EACH boat being supplied with the latitude and longitude of the island of Timor, the distance of 1100 miles from this place, about 12 o'clock on the 30th of August they embarked in their little squadron, having formed a platform by laying the masts upon the thwarts, whereby they stowed two tiers of men.

Previous to this there was made for each boat a pair of wooden scales, that a musket-ball weight of bread might be served to each man. For the sake of their better subsistence, they kept together, the chief part of their provisions being in the launch, under Lieut. Corner's care.

During night they towed each other, and cast off the low line about day-break.

After this the red and blue yawls proceeded a-head, to examine and found the coast of New South Wales, and seek a watering-place. Having entered a fine bay, they providentially found a spring of fine excellent water at the edge of the beach. After they had sufficiently quenched their thirst, they filled two quart bottles and a tea-kettle. They now made sail under the pinnace and launch, who by this time were so far distant as not to be able to observe any signal which the yawls made to them of their success.

The coast appeared very barren and dreary, and as far as they could judge of the soil and land the country seemed to abound in minerals.

When they had passed round the bay, they were surprised by two canoes, with three black men in each, who struggled very hard to come up to them. These men stood up in the canoes, waved, and made many signs to invite them over, but they judged it most prudent to avoid them, as they were entirely naked, and had very fierce looks, besides they had heard an indifferent account of these natives.

Two hours after this they joined the pinnace and launch, who were lying-to for them. At ten at night they were alarmed with the dreadful cry of the canoes a-head. They had got amongst a reef of rocks; and in their present condition, being already worn out and fatigued, it is difficult to say how they got out of them, as the place was fraught

with danger all round. Having run along, they came to an inhabited island, from which they promised themselves a supply of water. As soon as they approached the place, the natives flocked down to the beach in crowds. They were jet black, and neither sex had either covering or girdle. They made signals of distress to them for something to drink, which they understood, and, on receiving some trifling presents of knives, and some buttons cut off their coats, they brought them a cag of good water, which they emptied in a minute, and then sent it back to be filled again: however, they would not bring it the second time, but put it down on the beach, and made signs to them to come on shore for it. This they declined, as they observed the women and children running and supplying the men with bows and arrows. In a few minutes they let fly a shower of arrows amongst the boats, but luckily not a man was wounded: an arrow fell between the captain and third lieutenant, and went through the boat's thwart and stuck in it. It was an oak plank, inch thick. They immediately discharged a volley of muskets at them, which put them all to flight: there were, however, none of them killed.

They now made for other islands in sight, and sent some armed men on shore, with orders to keep near them, and run close along-shore in the boats: but they returned without success. They called this Plumb Island, from its bearing a kind of fruit resembling plumbs, but not fit for use.

They steered in the evening for the Prince of Wales's Islands; and about two o'clock in the morning came to an anchor, with a grapple, alongside of an island, which they called Laforey's Island.

As this was the last place from which they could expect any relief, every man had permission to refresh himself with sleep. Early in the morning they were roused by the howling of wolves, who retired as soon as they saw them. Lieut. Corner was dispatched with a party on shore to look for some water. As soon as they landed, they discovered a foot-path which led down into a hollow, where they were led to suspect that water might be found; and, on digging

The next day, being the 16th of Sept. they went up the creek in one of the boats about four miles off, in order to purchase some provisions for their sea stores at one of their towns. They met the king, who was both well mounted and attended as soon as they entered the town; but his majesty scarcely vouchsafed them a look. They left this place at noon, having procured some pigs, &c. and as it was dark while they were sailing along the coast, they put into a bay, for fear they might overshoot their port; and having halloed and made a noise upon seeing a light on shore, the natives came to them with torches, and assisted them on land. They then kindled fires, and dressed their victuals, in order to lose no time. Early the next day they proceeded on their voyage, and landed at Coupang in the afternoon.

They were very kindly received, and hospitably treated, both by the governor and lieutenant governor of this place. They remained here five weeks; during which time the governor endeavoured to render the place as agreeable as possible: they were sumptuously entertained at his table every day, while cards or concerts were prepared for the evening's amusement.

Some short time before the captain's arrival, a boat came on shore here with eight men, a woman, and two children. These people pretended they were part of the crew of an English brig wrecked in those seas, and that the rest with their captain had separated from them at sea in another boat: as they drew on the British government, they were supplied with every thing they required, while the governor behaved to them with uncommon attention. A whimsical adventure, however, led to a discovery of these people: as soon as Capt. Edwards arrived the captain of a Dutch East-Indiaman (who spoke English) hastened to them with the supposed glad tidings of their captain having arrived. Their surprise and confusion now denominated that they were impostors; upon which they were ordered to be apprehended, and confined in the castle. The woman, and one of the men, fled into the woods, and were soon taken. They confessed they were English convicts, who had escaped from Botany Bay by the assistance of the governor's fisherman, who was a good seaman and navigator, and whose time of transportation was expired. The performance of this voyage displayed uncommon skill, and their journals afforded both interesting and curious anecdotes.

The Rembang Indiaman, under the command of Captain Dulleberg, was now sitting out for sea. In this vessel the captain and his people intended to embark for Batavia.

Belthazar's burial took place during the captain's stay here. This was the late king of Coupang; and the governor, lieutenant governor, and all the Europeans, were invited upon the solemn occasion: as soon as the body was interred, the company's troops fired three volleys, and about 4000 people were served with refreshments. A sumptuous dinner was likewise prepared for the Dutch and English officers, while the first toast that was drank was the dead king's health. There were several other curious details. The young king was now invested with the royal dignity; the ceremony of which consisted in his drinking a bumper of brandy and gunpowder, which was stirred round with the point of a sword. When installed he went to pay his respects to the governor, preceded by music and colours.

The armourer was now employed in forging bolts and fetters for the prisoners and convicts.

The Rembang Dutch Indiaman being now ready, they embarked on board of her the 6th of October, and took with them the prisoners and convicts. From this to the 12th they had frequent calms, and a cold weather. In passing the Straits of Alice they suffered much sickness.

A very dreadful storm arose while they were passing the Island of Flores. The sails of the vessel were in a short time broke to pieces: she made a quantity of water, while the pumps were so choaked that they were quite useless. During this there was dreadful thunder and lightning; and they were driving down with great impetuosity on a savage shore, about seven miles under their lee.

In this dilemma, the Dutch seamen were so terrified that they retired from deck, while the English sailors, with extraordinary exertions, combated with the tempest, and preserved the ship. There is no doubt but the Dutch are very resolute, and willing to labour, but they are always dismayed at thunder and lightning.

On the 21st they got through Alice, and perceived three proas; whereupon they made preparations to defend themselves, but met with no occasion.

On the 22d they discovered the islands of Kanga-junk and Ulk, and ran through the channel which lies between them.

On the 23d they saw the Island of Madeira. On the 26th the Island of Java; and anchored at Samarang on the 30th.

As soon as they came to anchor they discovered their tender here, which they imagined had been lost. Their surprise on this occasion could only be equalled by their pleasure. It is impossible to paint that excess of joy which naturally took place, or describe those noble emotions, the praise-worthy sympathy which marked every countenance, while imparting to each other their mutual sufferings.

The following is Mr. Oliver's account of the sufferings which his men endured during their separation:

"The night we parted company, the savages attacked us in a regular and powerful body, in their canoes; and as they never saw a European vessel before, nor were able to conceive any idea of fire-arms, the conflict, of course, lasted longer than it otherwise would; for, seeing no missile weapon made use of, when their companions were killed, they did not suspect any thing to be the matter with them, as they tumbled into the water. Our seven-barrelled pieces made great havoc amongst them. One fellow had agility enough to spring over their boarding-netting, and was levelling a blow with his war-club at me, but luckily I shot him dead before he effected his purpose.

"On not finding the ship next day, we gave up all further hopes of her, and steered for Annamooka, (the rendezvous Captain Edwards had appointed). Our distress for want of water was exceedingly great, and had so strong an effect on one of the young gentlemen, that the day following he became delirious, and continued so for some months after it.

"We at last made the island of Tofoa, near to Annamooka, which we mistook for it. After trading with the natives for provisions and water, they made an attempt to take the vessel from us, which they always will to a small vessel, when alone; but they were soon overpowered with the fire-arms. We were, however, obliged to be much on our guard afterwards, at those islands which were inhabited.

"After much diversity of distress, and similar encounters, we at last made the reef that runs between New Guiney and New Holland, where the Pandora met her unhappy fate; and after traversing from shore to shore, without finding an opening, we boldly gave it the stem, and beat over the reef. The alternative was dreadful, as famine presented itself on the one hand, and shipwreck on the other.

"We were soon landed at a small Dutch settlement; but the governor having a description of

"the Bounty's pirates from our court, and our vessel being built of foreign timber, served to confirm them in their suspicions; and as no officer in the British navy bears a commission or warrant under the rank of lieutenant, where, by seal of office, their person or quality may be identified, they had only their bare word to depend on. They, however, behaved to us with great precaution and humanity: although they kept a strict guard over us, nothing was withheld to render our situation agreeable; and we were sent, under a proper escort, to this place."

The town of Samarang is remarkable for its beauty and regularity; the houses (which are very handsome) built all in a very fanciful manner. Every street terminates with a public building, which gives it much consequence.

This settlement being exceedingly lucrative, the governor is changed every five years. It is reckoned next to Batavia.

Notwithstanding the beauty of the town, it is suffering much from the introduction of canals, which will no doubt render the place in time exceedingly unwholesome, by the putrid exhalations which must consequently arise from the stagnant water.

While Captain Edwards was here, a regiment of the Duke of Wurtemberg were doing duty: several persons of rank and fashion were among them, who behaved exceedingly polite to the captain and his people.

The Dutch here are continually at civil war, as many disagreements arise from their supplying the petty princes with ammunition and warlike stores. By means of these dissensions, the number of prisoners are considerable, and the slave trade, which is comprised of these, amply supplied thereby. Not long ago, however, these people rebelled, and forced the Dutch to retire within their trenches.

The people of this place make it a rule to bathe every morning and evening, in a fine river appropriate to that purpose, which runs in the centre of the town, and is exceedingly convenient. Captain Edwards and his men, during their stay, availed themselves occasionally of this custom, which proved a considerable benefit, by recovering their strength. Though this place abounds with many advantages, it is still attended with several evils: even in the enjoyment of the refreshing stream, the people are subject to the venomous bites of snakes, alligators, and other reptiles, with which this land overflows. There is one particular snake, which is exceedingly frightful, and which creeps upon the ground: it is called the Cowk Cowk, and makes a noise at particular times like a cuckoo clock. It is something between the toad and lizard, about a foot and a half long: its bite is reckoned mortal, and it is dreaded very much even by the inhabitants. The alligators, which are very numerous here, are equally daring and dangerous. It is said that several who have been bathing about the shallow parts of the river above the town have been devoured by these. The governor informed both Captain Edwards and Surgeon Hamilton, that one day while he was hunting, his black boy being obliged to cross a shallow part of the river, was instantly seized by an alligator; upon which he dismounted, and having slew the alligator, happily rescued the youth out of his mouth.

There is a disorder, something like the small-pox, which is very prevalent here. A person only experiences it once in his life, during his infancy, and seldom or ever dies of it; its duration, however, is much longer than that of the small-pox.

Having left Samarang they arrived in a few days at Batavia, while several of the crew were confined with sickness.

Immediately on their arrival the sick people were sent to the hospital. While proceeding down the canal, several dead bodies which were floating,

struck the boat, and afforded no agreeable spectacle, especially to sick people.

Having left Batavia in order to make for the cape, one of the convicts, before they had left Java, jumped overboard in the night, and swam to the Dutch arsenal at Honrooft.

They saw the relics of Lord Cathcart, while passing Banton. They passed the island of Sumatra without meeting any thing material.

During their passage through the straits of Sunda they suffered great sickness, in consequence of which several of the crew died.

Their passage to the Cape of Good Hope was exceedingly tedious and disagreeable. As soon as they arrived they met with many civilities, particularly from a Colonel Gordon, a gentleman of well known literary and military abilities.

During their stay they were very much delighted with the gaiety of the town, as the inhabitants partake much of the manners of Bath. They resemble the English more than the Dutch in their dress and customs.

An uncommon rage has lately taken place here for building. Their houses, however, are not so neat as those of Samarang, though they may be more pleasing to the generality of spectators, seeing that their style is gaudy, and consequently striking at first sight, whereas that of Samarang is chaste, and will bear scrutiny.

There are several gardens here, but they suffer exceedingly from the quantity of monkeys with which the place is infested. The curious mode practised by these antic creatures in making depredations on gardens, is thus described by Surgeon Hamilton:

"They place a proper picket, or advanced guard, as sentinels, when a party is drawn up in a line, who hand the fruit from one to another, and when the alarm is given by the picket guard, they all take flight, making sure that by that time the booty is conveyed to a considerable distance. But should the picket be negligent in their duty, and suffer the main body to be surprised, the delinquents are severely punished."

The town here is likewise intersected and consequently spoiled by canals, which are carried to the top of a mountain. Indeed the Dutch never think of studying wholesomefness; the very hospital is an example of their indifference towards health, for the windows are so very small, that the patients therein are deprived of the salutary effects of air.

They remained some short time at the cape for the purpose of recovering their sick, who were treated in a very kind manner, and received all the assistance which the place could afford. The captain and the rest of his people still experienced a continuance of favours and politeness, and shared much in the diversions of the place. After they had sufficiently refreshed themselves here, they took leave of their friends, and prepared for their departure.

Having left the cape they passed St. Helena, the island of Ascension, and arrived at Holland. In a short time after they had the inexpressible felicity of being landed again on their native shore.

Having thus laid before the Public a full and accurate account of Captain Edwards's Voyage, in the Pandora Frigate, the Launch, Pinnace, Red and Blue Yauls, we shall now proceed with the interesting Voyages of Captain Cook, which, for the sake of giving in the most copious and satisfactory manner, several descriptions and discoveries have been omitted in our preceding Voyages, for the sake of introducing them in these, in order to give the credit, where it is due, to their original discoverer. His first Voyage in his Majesty's Ship the Endeavour, shall be our first care, the rest shall be introduced in disorder, while the third and last Voyage shall contain the unfortunate death of this much lamented navigator, with curious anecdotes of his life.

A NEW, COMPLETE, AND GENUINE
HISTORY OF
A VOYAGE ROUND the WORLD,

I N
His MAJESTY'S SHIP the ENDEAVOUR,

UNDER THE COMMAND OF
Captain JAMES COOK,

Undertaken and Performed in 1768, 1769, 1770, and 1771:

BEING

The FIRST VOYAGE of that Celebrated NAVIGATOR.

Including all the ADVENTURES, DISCOVERIES, INFORMATION, &c. contained in the
JOURNALS and COMMUNICATIONS of

Captain COOK, Sir JOSEPH BANKS, Dr. SOLANDER, &c.

Being an Entire New HISTORY of all those Interesting OCCURRENCES and Important
DISCOVERIES which were made in the SOUTHERN HEMISPHERE, &c. during a Period
of nearly Three Years, in which Time the Circumnavigation of the Globe was completed.

Which, besides the several other VOYAGES as well as TRAVELS with which this valuable Collection
is to abound, will be Embellished with a Variety of Elegant COPPER-PLATES, Drawn upon the
Spot, and Engraved by Eminent Artists.

INTRODUCTION.

THE following Voyage, being the FIRST per-
formed by the celebrated Captain Cook, was
undertaken by order of his present Majesty,
principally for the purpose of making discoveries
in the Southern Hemisphere, which might tend to
the advantage of future navigators. Accordingly
the Endeavour, a bark of 320 tons, which had
been originally built for the coal trade, was by
royal authority devoted to the service of Captain
Cook, having on board ten carriage and twelve
swivel guns. Captain Cook was appointed com-
mander of this vessel, and while she was equipping
for the voyage several bold adventurers procured
the Captain's permission to accompany him: among
the most celebrated of the party was Mr. (now Sir
Joseph) Banks; this gentleman was possessed of
considerable landed property in Lincolnshire, and
upon his leaving the University of Oxford in 1763
he made a voyage to the coast of Newfoundland
and Labrador. Far from being discouraged with
all the difficulties and dangers which attended his
first expedition, he determined on accompanying the
captain in this voyage.

There was also Dr. Solander, a native of Sweden,
and a gentleman of acknowledged abilities, who
had studied under the famous Linnaeus, and was
justly celebrated for his natural philosophy. Mr.
Banks engaged the doctor to accompany him, who
was just established, having been then appointed to
a place in the British Museum, which he filled with
credit to himself, and in which he gave universal
satisfaction.

Besides the doctor, Mr. Banks took with him
two draughtsmen, with the intention of employing
one in painting subjects of natural history, and the
other in delineating figures and landscapes. He
likewise took four servants, two of whom were
negroes, and a secretary in his retinue.

Mr. Banks and the doctor were induced to un-
dertake this laudable voyage with Captain Cook,
not only for the sake of making new discoveries,
but likewise for attaining a sufficient knowledge
of particular plants, productions, &c. hitherto un-
known, which might be of general utility:

The Endeavour was esteemed a vessel of the best
construction for their design, particularly because
she was what the sailors call a good sea-boat: she
was exceedingly roomy, would take and lie on the
ground, and might also be managed by fewer hands
than other vessels of the same burthen.

Having been victualled for eighteen months, and
a good store of ammunition and other necessaries
provided, her complement of officers and men was
Captain Cook, the commander, two lieutenants
under him, a master and boatswain, each having
two mates, a surgeon and carpenter, each having
one mate, a gunner, a cook, a clerk and steward,
two quarter-masters, an armourer, a sail-maker,
three midshipmen, forty-one able seamen, twelve
marines, and nine servants, being in all eighty-five
persons.

Both Captain Cook and Mr. Banks kept journals
of this voyage, and were exceedingly attentive in
preserving accuracy and order. The former chiefly
confined himself to a minute account of all nautical
incidents, and a very particular description of the
figure and extent of the countries he had visited;
while the latter took notice of all the chief pro-
ductions, &c. Journals were likewise kept by several
of the other officers and crew. The following co-
pious and faithful history contains all their informa-
tions united, on which account the first person plural
is adopted, in order to render the narrative more
interesting.

The several advantages which have been derived
from the discoveries of Captain Cook, are too well
known

known to need any illustration. He answered in a most ample manner the intentions of his three voyages, by having afforded such information as was of the greatest utility to all future adventurers. He aimed at much, and he accomplished much, by fully demonstrating what a variety of useful purposes might be effected by occasionally repeating the voyages he had so happily made. The persevering endeavours of Captain Cook brought also to light the several idle stories of those speculative philosophers, who held out such false pictures of imagination, as to persuade men that there was a continent equal at least in extent to all the civilized countries in the known northern hemisphere; where new men, new animals, new productions of every kind might be brought forward to view, and discoveries effected which would open inexhaustible treasures of commerce; but these visionary prospects were soon confuted by the searches of Captain Cook, who, instead of this land of promise, this valuable paradise,

discovered nothing but barren rocks, mountains of ice, dreary seas, &c. Thus has this brave navigator, not only benefited the world by lessening the dangers and distresses formerly experienced in those seas which are within the line of commerce and navigation now actually subsisting, but likewise in discouraging future unprofitable searches.

A faithful and accurate relation of these voyages are the best tribute that can now be paid to his memory.

The Endeavour having been equipped with all possible expedition, due notice was given of the day appointed for her sailing; previous to which Capt. Cook, Mr. Banks, and Dr. Solander, received several visits from persons of the first distinction, who all joined in hearty wishes for their success, and contributed as much as possible to remove the pain of their present parting, by anticipating the pleasure they should feel on their future meeting.

BOOK I.

CHAPTER I.

Departure of the Endeavour from Plymouth—Her Passage to the Island of Madeira—A Description of its natural Curiosities, and Trade—A particular Account of Funchiale, the Capital of Madeira—The Passage from Madeira to Rio de Janeiro—Account of this Capital of the Portuguese Dominions in South America, and of the circumjacent Country—Incidents which happened while the Endeavour lay in the Harbour of Rio de Janeiro.

ON the 26th of August, 1768, we got under sail, and took our departure from Plymouth. Nothing of any material consequence occurred during this week, except that on the 31st we saw several of those birds which the seamen call Mother Carey's Chickens, and which are looked upon by them as a certain indication of a storm; however, we were very happy to find that the prognostication was on this occasion false.

On the 2d of Sept. we perceived land between Cape Finisterre and Cape Ortegal, on the coast of Galicia, in Spain.

Several marine animals were discovered in this course, hitherto unknown, at least unnoticed by our naturalists. One of these, described as a new species, is of an angular form, about three inches in length, and one in thickness: it had a hollow passage quite through it, and a brown spot at one end. Four of these animals appeared to adhere together by their sides, but as soon as they were put into the water they separated, and swam about, shining with a brightness that resembled the vivid colour of a gem. There was also another of these animals, which exceeded any that we had yet discovered in brightness and variety: it was equal in colour and splendor to those of an opal.

We also caught several birds among the rigging of the ship, when about ten leagues distance from Cape Finisterre, which Linnæus had not noticed.

On the 12th we discovered Puerto Santo and Madeira; and on the 13th moored with the stream anchor in the road of Funchiale. Mr. Weir, the master's mate, was unfortunately carried overboard and drowned, while heaving up the anchor.

The island of Madeira, upon being approached from the sea, appears exceeding beautiful, the sides of the hills being covered with plantations of vines, which are green when all kinds of herbage, except here and there, are burnt up, which at this time happened to be so.

As no one is suffered here to land from on board a ship, without previous permission, a boat came to us from the officers of health in the forenoon of the day we had anchored, and leave being granted, we landed accordingly at Funchiale, which is the chief

town in the island, and proceeded directly to the house of a Mr. Cheap, a considerable merchant, and at that time the English consul, who gave us a very warm reception, and treated us with uncommon politeness and civility.

We continued on the island only five days, during which time the season happened to be the worst in the year for searching after natural curiosities. Notwithstanding this unfavourable opportunity, Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander were determined on satisfying their curiosity as much as possible: these gentlemen, accordingly, by the kind assistance of Dr. Heberden, who is the chief physician of the island, and brother to Dr. Heberden, of London, after an excursion about three miles from the town, collected a few plants in flower. Mr. Banks enquired after and found the tree called *Laura Indica*; he supposes the wood of this to be what is called Madeira mahogany, there being no real mahogany in Madeira.

The people of Madeira are very deficient in trade, having no other article to export than wine. The Madeira wine is made by pressing out the juice in a square wooden vessel. The size of this is proportioned to the quantity of wine; and the servants, having taken off their stockings and jackets, get into it, and with their elbows and feet press out as much of the juice as they can. In like manner the stalks, being tied together, are pressed under a square piece of wood, by a lever with a stone fastened to the end of it.

While we remained upon this island there were no wheel-carriages to be seen, nor have the people any thing that resembles them, except a hollow board or sledge, upon which those wine vessels are drawn that are too big to be carried by hand. They have also horses and mules, very proper for their roads; but their wine is, notwithstanding, brought to town from the vineyards where it is made in vessels of goat-skins, which are carried by men on their heads.

The inhabitants of Madeira are ingenious, but far from industrious. The country is indebted to nature for many gifts. The soil is so very rich, and there is such a variety in the climate, that there is scarcely an article, either of the necessaries or luxuries of life

which cannot be had in any other part of the world. Walnuts, chestnuts, pineapples, &c. grow almost spontaneously in the soil, and are produced in plenty, all they care for. Beef, mutton, and the captain's own use.

Funchiale (w) is a fine city, lying fennel in the bottom of a bay, and a portion to the north and the streets and churches are full of images of saints, wretchedly executed. The Franciscans, is united in most of the islands; the most considerable is a small chapel, and ceiling, is of bones; the thigh of a scull is placed in the middle, visited the good received us with said they, "to be compared, but if you fast-day, we will polite invitation.

There are many hills in particular is near the hills are covered with chestnuts and whole forests of vines and Paobran, unknown in Europe, and would be useful, and would be. The number of iron to amount to iron house duties produced of 20,000, a year balance of trade is very going to Lisbon, Spanish. This country about a stilling; worth about three

On the 19th of Sept. Madeira, and on the 20th Salvages, northward of these was about 20 leagues. On the 23d the Port half south. Its appearance for when most part black, the mountain with a waruth of pres. There is no issues from the chimney from the hand of this mountain is dried and forty-eight

On the 30th we visited the Verd Islands, in latitude 21 deg. 51 min. we observed numbers very beautiful, the On the 7th of Oct. boat, and caught a man of war; together taceous animals, water; and on the 10th gull, not defective of a red colour, some showers of rain damage our utensils.

On the 25th we observed some monies; and on the

which cannot probably be cultivated here. On the hills walnuts, chestnuts, and apples flourish, almost without culture. Pine-apples, mangoes, guanas, and bananas, grow almost spontaneously in the town. They have corn which is large grained and fine, and it might be produced in plenty; but for want of being attended to, all they consume is imported from other countries. Beef, mutton, and pork are remarkably good, and the captain took some of the former on board for his own use.

Funchale (which took its name from *Foncho*, signifying fennel in the Portuguese language) is situate at the bottom of a bay, and though it is extensive in proportion to the rest of the island, it is but poorly built, and the streets are narrow and badly paved. The churches are full of ornaments, with pictures and images of saints; the first arc, for the most part, wretchedly executed, and the latter are dressed in laced cloaths. The taste of the convents, especially of the Franciscans, is better; neatness and simplicity being united in most of the designs of the latter. The infirmary also is a piece of good architecture, and one of the most considerable in this place. In this convent is a small chapel, the whole lining of which, both sides and ceiling, is composed of human skulls and thigh bones; the thigh bones are laid across each other, and a skull is placed in each of the four angles. When we visited the good fathers, just before supper-time, they received us with great civility. "We will not ask you," said they, "to supper with us, because we are not prepared, but if you will come to-morrow, though it is a full-day, we will have a turkey roasted for you." This polite invitation it was not in our power to accept. There are many high hills in this island; Pico Ruivo in particular is near 5100 feet high. To a certain height these hills are covered with vines, above which are numbers of chestnuts and pine-trees; and above these again whole forests of various sorts of trees. The *Mirmulano* and *Paobranco* which are found among them, are unknown in Europe. The latter of these is very beautiful, and would be a great ornament to our gardens. The number of inhabitants in Madeira are computed to amount to about eighty thousand; and the custom-house duties produce to the king of Portugal a revenue of 20,000*l.* a year, clear of all expences. But the balance of trade is against the people; for all their money going to Lisbon, the currency of the island is in Spanish. This coin consisteth of pisterrens, worth about a shilling; bits about sixpence, and half bits worth about three-pence.

On the 19th of September the Endeavour sailed from Madeira, and on the 21st we saw the islands called the Salvages, northward of the Canaries. The principal of these was about five leagues to the south half west. On the 23d the Peak of Teneriffe bore west by south half south. Its appearance at sun-set was very striking; for when most part of the island appeared of a deep black, the mountain still reflected rays, and glowed with a warmth of colour which no painting can express. There is no eruption of visible fire, but a heat issues from the chinks near the top, too strong to be borne by the hand when held near them. The height of this mountain is 15,396 feet, which is but one hundred and forty-eight yards less than three miles.

On the 30th we saw Bona Vista, one of the Cape de Verd Islands, in latitude 16 deg. north, and longitude 21 deg. 51 min. west. In our course to Teneriffe, we observed numbers of flying fish, which appeared very beautiful, their sides resembling burnished silver.

On the 7th of October Mr. Banks went out in a boat, and caught what our sailors call a Portuguese man of war; together with several shell fishes, or testaceous animals, which are always found floating upon the water; and on the 25th this gentleman shot a black-tail gull, not described by Linnæus, and whose dung is of a red colour. We had now variable winds, with some showers of rain, and the air was so damp as to damage our utensils considerably.

On the 25th we crossed the line with the usual ceremonies; and on the 28th when the ship was in the la-

itude of Ferdinand Noronha, longitude 32 deg. 5 min. west, we began to look out for the island, and for the shoals which are laid down as lying between it and the main; but neither the island nor shoals could be discovered. On the 29th we perceived that luminous appearance of the sea mentioned by navigators, which emitted rays like those of lightning. As Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander were not thoroughly satisfied with any of the causes hitherto assigned for this phenomenon, and supposing it was occasioned by some luminous animals, they threw out a calling net, in order to try by experiment whether they were right in their conjectures. A species of the Medusa was taken, which bore some resemblance to metalline substance greatly heated, and emitted a whitish light; they caught also some crabs which glittered very much; animals which had not before been taken notice of by the curious researchers into the secrets of nature.

As provisions by this time began to grow short, we resolved to put into the harbour of Rio de Janeiro; and on the 8th of November we saw the coast of Brasil. Upon speaking with the crew of a Portuguese fishing boat, we were informed by them, that the land which we saw was to the south of Santo Espirito, Mr. Banks, having bought of these people some fish, was surprized, that they required English shillings: he gave them two which he happened to have about him; for he imagined Spanish silver to have been the only currency, and it was not without some dispute that they took the rest of the money in pisterrens. The fresh fish which was bought for about nineteen shillings, served the whole ship's company. We stood off and on along shore till the 12th, having in view successively Cape Thomas and an island just without Cape Frio, and then made sail for Rio de Janeiro on the 13th in the morning. Capt. Cook sent his first lieutenant in the pinnace before to the city, to inform the governor, that we had put into that port in order to procure refreshments, and a pilot to bring us into proper anchoring ground. The pinnace returned, but the lieutenant had been detained by the viceroy, till the captain should come on shore. When the ship had come to an anchor, a ten oared boat filled with soldiers approached, and rowed round her, but no conversation took place. Afterwards another boat appeared, which had several of the viceroy's officers on board. They enquired from whence the Endeavour came? what was her cargo? what number of men and guns she carried? and to what port she was bound? which questions having been punctually and truly answered, the Portuguese officers apologized for having detained the lieutenant, and pleaded the custom of the place in excuse for their behaviour.

On the 14th Captain Cook went on shore, and obtained leave to furnish the ship with provisions; but this permission was clogged with the conditions of employing an inhabitant as a factor, and of sending a soldier in the Endeavour's boat every time she came from shore to the vessel. To these uncivil terms the Captain made many objections; but the viceroy was determined to insist on them, neither would he permit Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander to remain on shore, nor suffer the former to go up the country to collect plants. Captain Cook conceiving from these and other marks of jealousy, that the viceroy thought they were come to trade, used all his endeavours to convince him of the contrary; and acquainted him, that they were bound to the South Seas, to observe the transit of Venus over the disk of the sun, an object of great consequence to the improvement of navigation; but the viceroy by his answer seemed to be entirely ignorant of this phenomenon. An officer was now appointed to attend the captain, which order he was desired to understand as an intended compliment: however, when he would have declined such a ceremony, the viceroy very politely forced it upon him.

Dr. Solander and Mr. Banks were not a little chagrined on hearing that they would not be permitted to reside on shore, and still more so when they understood, that they were not even allowed to quit the ship; for

the viceroy had ordered, that the captain only, with such sailors as were required by their duty, should come on shore. Whether this arose from his jealousy in regard to trade, or from the apprehensions he entertained of the extraordinary abilities of the two gentlemen in search of new discoveries, it is certain that they were highly disagreeable to Mr. Banks and the Doctor, who were resolved, if possible, to evade the order. With this view they attempted to go on shore, but were stopped by the guard-boat; yet several of the crew, without the knowledge of the centinel, let themselves down by a rope from the cabin window into the boat about midnight, and drove away with the tide till they were out of hearing. They afterwards lay on an unfrequented part of the country, and were treated by the inhabitants with great civility.

Capt. Cook, uneasy under the restrictions of the viceroy, remonstrated with him, but the latter would return no other answer, than that the king his master's orders must be obeyed. The Captain, thus repulsed, and much displeas'd, resolv'd to go no more on shore, rather than, whenever he did so, to be treated as a prisoner in his own boat; for the officer who was so polite as to accompany him, constantly attended him, both to and from the shore. Two memorials were now drawn up and presented to the viceroy, one written by the captain, and the other by Mr. Banks; but the answers returned were by no means satisfactory. Several papers pass'd between them and the viceroy to no good purpose, the prohibition still remaining as before; from whence the captain thought it necessary, in order to vindicate his own compliance, to urge the viceroy to an act of force in the execution of his orders. For this purpose he sent lieutenant Hicks with a packet, giving him his order not to admit of a guard in his boat. As this gentleman was resolv'd to obey his captain's commands, the officer of the guard-boat did not oppose him by force, but acquainted the viceroy with what had happen'd, on which the lieutenant was sent away with the packet unopened. When returned, he found a guard of soldiers placed in the boat, and insisted on their quitting it. Whereupon the officer seized the boat's crew and conducted them under an escort to prison, and the lieutenant was sent back to the ship guarded: When the captain was inform'd of this transaction, he wrote to the viceroy to demand his boat and her crew, inclosing the memorial which Mr. Hicks his lieutenant had brought back. These papers he sent by a petty officer to avoid continuing the dispute concerning the guard, which must have been kept up by a commissioned officer. An answer was now promis'd by the viceroy; but before this could arrive, the long-boat, which had four pipes of rum on board, was driven to windward, (the rope breaking that was thrown from the ship,) together with a small skiff that was fasten'd to the boat. Immediate orders were given for manning the yawl, which, being dispatched accordingly with proper directions, returned, and brought the people on board the next morning; from whom Captain Cook learned, that the long-boat having fill'd with water, they had brought her to a grappling and quitt'd her, and falling in with a reef of rocks on their return, they were forced to cut the fastening of Mr. Banks's little boat, and send her adrift. The captain now dispatch'd another letter to his excellency, wherein he inform'd him of the accident, desir'd he would assist him with a boat to recover his own, and, at the same time, renew'd his demand of the delivery of the pinnet and her crew. The viceroy granted the request, but in his answer to the captain's remonstrance, suggest'd some doubts that he entertain'd, whether the Endeavour was really a king's ship, and also accus'd the crew of smuggling. Capt. Cook, in his reply, said, that he was willing to shew his commission, adding, if any attempt should be made to carry on a contraband trade, he request'd his excellency would order the offender to be taken into custody. The dispute being thus terminated, Mr. Banks attempt'd to

clude the vigilance of the guard, which he found means to do, and got safe on shore on the 26th, in the morning. He took care to avoid the town, and pass'd the day in the fields, where he could best gratify his curiosity. Mr. Banks found the country people inclin'd to treat him with civility, and was invit'd to their habitations. But it was afterwards heard, that search had been making for this gentleman when absent. He and Dr. Solander, therefore, resolv'd to run no more risks in going on shore, while they remain'd at this place.

On the 1st of December, having taken in water and provisions, we got, with leave from the viceroy, a pilot on board, but the wind prevent'd us from putting to sea. A Spanish packet from Buenos Ayres, bound for Spain, arriving the next day, the captain of her with great politeness offer'd to take our letters to Europe. The favour was accepted, and Captain Cook deliver'd into his hands a packet for the secretary of the Admiralty, containing copies of all the papers that had pass'd between him and the viceroy, leaving the duplicates with his excellency. On the 5th we weigh'd anchor, and tow'd down the bay, but were stopp'd at Santa Cruz, the principal fortification, the order from the viceroy to let us pass, by an unaccountable negligence, not having been sent; so that it was not till the 7th that we got under sail. When we had pass'd the fort the guard-boat left us, and our pilot was discharged. It was observ'd, during our stay in this harbour, that the air was fill'd with butterflies, chiefly of one kind, and the greatest part above our mast-head. Of the town and neighbouring country we shall give the following description.

Rio de Janeiro was probably so call'd because discover'd on the festival of St. Januarius, from whence we may suppose the river Januarius took its name, and also the town, which is the capital of the Portuguese in America. This town is situat'd on the west side of the river, from which it is extend'd about three quarters of a mile. The ground whereon it stands is a level plain. It is defend'd on the north side by a hill, that extends from the river, having a small plain which contains the suburbs and king's dock. On the south is another hill running towards the mountains which are behind the town. This is neither ill design'd nor ill built; the houses in general are of stone, and two stories high; every house having, after the manner of the Portuguese, a small balcony before its windows, and a lattice of wood before the balcony; its circuit is about three miles; and it appears to be equal in size to the largest country towns in England. The streets are straight, and of a convenient breadth, intersecting each other at right angles; the greater part, however, lie in a line with the citadel, call'd St. Sebastian, which stands on the top of a hill that commands the town. The principal street is near 100 feet in width, and extends from St. Benedict to the foot of Castle-hill. The other streets are commonly twenty or thirty feet wide. The houses adjoining to the principal street are three stories high, but in other places they are very irregular, though built after the same manner as at Lisbon. Water is convey'd to a fountain in the great square, from an aqueduct, rais'd upon two stories of arches. The water at this fountain, however, is so bad, that we could not drink it with pleasure. The churches are richly ornamented, and there is more religious parade in this place than in any of the popish countries in Europe. Not a day pass'd without a procession of some parish, with various insignia, splendid and costly in the highest degree. But the inhabitants may pay their devotions at the shrine of any saint, without waiting for a procession; for a small cupboard, having a glass window, and in which is one of these tutelary gods, is plac'd before almost every house, and a lamp is kept constantly burning, lest the old proverb should be verified, "Out of sight, out of mind." Before these faints the people pray and sing with such vehemence, that in the night they were distinctly heard by our sailors on board the ship.

In this town are four convents, the first is that of the

Benedictines, the structure contains an elegant painting, which fronts the very elegant mother from Lisbon situated on the town; before it is brown granite, is employed in eastern extremity of the Jesuits convent hospital.

In the right of the palace, the composite one lane is 90 feet from the place, the first entrance to which there is the guard-room who are relieve nine; and adjoining prison being in the guard-room upper story, which half way, and for right and the other saloon, where the viceroy is in the anti-chamber.

The left wing building, which is a trading people fountain, of which supplied with water three miles, from the place is continued waiting to the street is an altar, north-east end of the nation is very convenient who bring vegetables market. Negroes at different commodities employ their leisure.

The form of government in fact very defective of the town from the sea, or transporting sure. In order to prisons into the country certain bounds are and sometimes at night and if a man is transgresses, where they are sent to prison.

The inhabitants numerous, and consists of many nations, which last winter. The township consists of many white people, and 6000, making together 10000.

The military is composed of regular troops, six being twelve regiments of are servilely submit to, that if any of them taking off his hat, he immediately knock'd the officers to the ground they are oblig'd to receive his commands. In Rio de Janeiro are drawn by mules No. 1.

Benedictines, situated near its northern extremity: the structure affords an agreeable prospect, and contains an elegant chapel, ornamented with several valuable paintings. The second is that of the Carmelites, which forms the centre angle of the royal square, and fronts the harbour; its church was rebuilding in a very elegant manner, with fine free stone, brought thither from Lisbon. The third is that of St. Anthony, situated on the top of a hill, on the south side of the town; before this convent stands a large basin of brown granite, in the form of a parallelogram, which is employed in washing. The fourth is situated at the eastern extremity of the town, and was formerly the Jesuits convent, but is now converted into a military hospital.

In the right angle of the royal square stands the viceroy's palace; this, with the mint, stables, goal, &c. compose one large building, which has two stories, and is 90 feet from the water. In passing through the palace, the first entrance is to a large hall or guard-room, to which there is an ascent of three or four steps. In the guard-room are stationed the viceroy's body-guards, who are relieved every morning between eight and nine; and adjoining to the hall are the stables, the prison being in the back part of the building. Within the guard-room is a flight of stairs for ascending to the upper story, which divides at a landing-place about half way, and forms two branches, one leading to the right and the other to the left. The former leads to a saloon, where there are two officers in constant attendance; the viceroy's aid-de-camp at the same time waiting in the anti-chamber to receive messages and deliver orders.

The left wing of the royal square is an irregular building, which consists chiefly of shops, occupied by trading people. In the centre of this square is the fountain, of which we have made mention, as being supplied with water from a spring at the distance of three miles, from which it is brought by an aqueduct. The place is continually crowded with negroes of both sexes waiting to fill their jars. At the corner of every street is an altar. The market-place extends from the north-east end of the square along the shore, and this situation is very convenient for the fishing-boats, and those who bring vegetables from the other side of the river to market. Negroes are almost the only people who sell the different commodities exposed in the market, and they employ their leisure time in spinning cotton.

The form of government is in its constitution mixed, but in fact very despotic; the viceroy and civil magistrate of the town frequently committing persons to prison, or transporting them to Lisbon, at their own pleasure. In order to prevent the people from making excursions into the country, in search after gold and diamonds, certain bounds are prescribed them, sometimes at a few, and sometimes at many miles distance from the town; and if a man is taken up by the guard without the bounds, where they constantly patrole, he is immediately sent to prison.

The inhabitants of Rio de Janeiro are exceeding numerous, and consist of Portuguese, Negroes, and Indians, which last were the original natives of the country. The township of Rio is but a small part of the Capitanea or province; yet is said to contain 37,000 white people, and 629,000 blacks, many of whom are free, making together 666,000, in the proportion of 17 to 1.

The military is composed of twelve regiments of regular troops, six being Portuguese, and six Creoles, and twelve regiments of provincial militia. The inhabitants are servilely submissive to the regulars, and it has been said, that if any of them should omit the compliment of taking off his hat, when he meets an officer, he would be immediately knocked down. But the subordination of the officers to the viceroy is equally mortifying, for they are obliged to wait three times every day to know, or receive his commands: the answer frequently is, "there is nothing new."

In Rio de Janeiro the gentry keep their chaises, which are drawn by mules; the ladies however use a sedan

chair, boarded before and behind, with curtains on each side, which is carried by two negroes on a pole connected with the top of the chair by two rods, coming from under its bottom, one on each side, and resting to the top. The apothecaries shops commonly serve the purposes of coffee-houses, as the people meet in them to drink capillaire, and play at back-gammon. When the gentry are seen abroad, they are well dressed, though at home but loosely covered. The shopkeepers have generally short hair, and wear linen jackets with sleeves. The women in general, as in most of the Portuguese and Spanish settlements in South America, are more ready to grant amorous favours than those of any other civilized parts of the world. As soon as the evening began, females appeared at the windows on every side, who distinguished such of the men as best pleased their fancies, by throwing down nosegays: and Dr. Solander and two other gentlemen received so many of these love tokens, that they threw them away by handfuls.

Without the Jesuits college on the shore, is a village called Neustra Señora del Gloria, which is joined to the town by a very few intervening houses. Three or four hundred yards within the Jesuits college, stands a very high castle, but it is falling to decay. The bishop's palace is about three hundred yards behind the Benedictine convent, and contiguous to it is a magazine of arms, surrounded by a rampart.

The inhabitants of Rio de Janeiro maintain a whale-fishery, which supplies them with lamp oil. They import brandy from the Azores, and their slaves and East India goods from their settlements in Africa, their wine from Madeira, and their European goods from Lisbon. The current coin is Portuguese, which is struck here; the silver pieces are called patacks, of different value; and the copper are five and ten ree pieces: This place is very useful for ships that are in want of refreshment. They water, as we have before observed, at the fountain in the great square, but the water is not good. We landed our casks on a smooth sandy beach, which is not more than a hundred yards distant from the fountain, and, upon application to the viceroy, a centinel is appointed to look after them. The harbour is safe and commodious, and distinguished by a remarkable hill, in the shape of a cone, at the west point of the bay. The entrance is not wide, but it is easy, from the sea-breeze which prevails from noon to sun-set, for any ship to enter before the wind. The entrance of the narrow part is defended by two forts, La Cruz, and Lozia; they are about three quarters of a mile from each other. The bottom being rocky, renders it dangerous to anchor there, but to avoid it ships must keep in the mid-channel. The coast abounds with a variety of fish, among which are dolphins and mackarel. Provisions, except wheaten bread and flour, are easily procured. Yams and cassada are in plenty. Beef, both fresh and jerked, may be bought at two-pence farthing a pound, but it is very lean. The people jerk their beef, by taking out the bones, and cutting it into large but thin slices. They then cure it with salt, and dry it in the shade. It eats very well, and, if kept dry, will remain good a long time at sea. Mutton is scarcely to be procured. Hogs and poultry are dear. Garden-stuff and fruit are in abundance, but the pumpkin only can be preserved at sea. Tobacco also is cheap, though not good. Rum, sugar, and molasses are all excellent, and to be had at reasonable prices.

The climate of Rio de Janeiro is healthy, and free from most of those inconveniencies incident to tropical countries. The air is seldom immoderately hot, as the sea breeze is generally succeeded by a land wind. The seasons are divided into dry and rainy, though their commencement of late has been irregular and uncertain, for the latter had failed for near four years preceding our arrival; but at this time the rain had just began, and fell in heavy showers during our stay: formerly the streets have been overflowed by the rain, and rendered impassable with canoes.

The adjacent country is mountainous, and chiefly covered with wood, a small part of it only being cultivated. Near the town the soil is loose and sandy, but farther from the river it is a fine black mould. It produces all the tropical fruits in great plenty, and without much cultivation; a circumstance exceeding agreeable to the inhabitants, who are very indolent. The mines, which lie far up in the country, are very rich. Their situation is carefully concealed, and no one can view them, except those concerned in working and guarding them. About twelve months before our

arrival, the government had detected several jewellers in carrying on an illicit trade for diamonds, with slaves in the mines; and immediately afterwards a law passed, making it felony to work at the trade, or to have any tools fit for it in possession, the civil officers having indiscriminately seized on all that could be found. Near 40,000 negroes are annually imported to dig in the mines, so pernicious to the human frame are those works. In 1776, 20,000 more were draughted from the town to supply the deficiency of the former number.

C H A P. II.

The departure of the Endeavour from Rio de Janeiro—Her passage to the entrance of the Streight of Le Maire—The inhabitants of Terra del Fuego described—Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander ascend a mountain in search of plants—An account of what happened to them in this excursion—The Endeavour passes through the Streight Le Maire—An account of her passage, and a further description of the inhabitants of Terra del Fuego, and its productions—Remarks respecting the south east part of Terra del Fuego, and the Streight of Le Maire—Directions for the passage westward round this part of America, into the South Seas—The passage of the Endeavour from Cape Horn to the newly discovered islands—An account of their figure and appearance—The inhabitants described, with a narrative of the various incidents during the course, and on the Endeavour's arrival among them.

ON the 8th of December, having procured all necessary supplies, we took our departure from Rio de Janeiro; and on the 9th an amazing number of atoms were taken out of the sea. These were of a yellowish colour, and few of them were more than the fifth part of an inch long; nor could the best microscope on board the Endeavour discover whether they belonged to the vegetable or animal creation. The sea was tinged in such a manner with these equivocal substances, as to exhibit broad streaks of a similar colour, for near the space of a mile in length, and for several hundred yards in breadth. Whence they came, or for what designed, neither Mr. Banks nor Dr. Solander could determine. Perhaps they might be the spawn of some marine animal, unknown to either ancient or modern philosophers.

On the 11th we hooked a shark. It proved to be a female. When opened we took six young ones out of it, five of which were alive, and swam briskly in a tub of water, but the sixth appeared to have been dead some time. From this time we met with no material occurrence till the 22d, when we discovered numerous birds of the procellaria kind, in latitude 39 deg. 37 min. south, and longitude 49 deg. 16 min. west; we also discovered great numbers of porpoises of a singular species, about 15 feet in length, and of an ash colour. On the 23d we observed an eclipse of the moon; and about seven o'clock in the morning, a small white cloud appeared in the west, from which a train of fire issued, extending itself westerly: about two minutes after we heard two distinct loud explosions, immediately succeeding each other, like those of cannon, after which the cloud disappeared. On the 24th we caught a large loggerhead tortoise, weighing one hundred and fifty pounds. We likewise shot several birds, one an albatross, which measured between the tips of its wings nine feet and an inch, and from its beak to the tail two feet one inch and an half. On the 30th we ran upwards of fifty leagues, through vast numbers of land insects, some in the air, and others upon the water; they appeared to resemble exactly the flies that are seen in Greenland, though they were thirty leagues from land, and some of these insects are known not to quit it beyond three yards. At this time we judged ourselves to be nearly opposite to the bay called Sans Fond (without bottom) where it is supposed by some writers, that the continent of America is divided by a passage: but it was the opinion of our circumnavigators, that there might be a large river, which probably had occasioned an inundation. On the 31st we had much thunder, lightning and rain. This day and the three following, we saw several whales; likewise a number of birds

about the size of a pigeon, with white bellies and grey beaks.

On the 3d of January we saw the appearance of land, in latitude 47 deg. 17 min. south, and longitude 61 deg. 29 min. 45 sec. A. D. 1769; west, which we mistook for Pepy's island. In appearance it so much resembled land, that we bore away for it; and it was near two hours and an half before we were convinced, that it was one of those deceptions which sailors call a Fog-bank. At this time our teamers beginning to complain of cold, they were furnished with a pair of trowsers, and a Magellanic jacket, made of a thick woollen stuff called Fearnought. On the 11th, after having passed Faulkland's Island, we saw the coast of Terra del Fuego, at the distance of about four leagues from the west to south-east by south. As we ranged along the shore to the south-east, smoke was perceived, made probably, by the natives as a signal, for it was not to be seen after we had passed by.

On the 14th we entered the streight of Le Maire, but were afterwards driven out again with such violence (the tide being against us) that the ship's bow-sprit was frequently under water. At length, however, we got anchorage in a small cove, on the east of Cape St. Vincent, the entrance to which our captain named St. Vincent's Bay. The weeds which grow here upon rocky ground are very remarkable, they appear above the surface in eight and nine fathoms water. The leaves are four feet in length, and many of the stalks, though not more than an inch and a half in circumference, above one hundred.

Dr. Solander and Mr. Banks went on shore, where having continued four hours, they returned about nine in the evening, with upwards of an hundred different plants and flowers, of which none of the European botanists had taken any notice near this bay. The country in general was flat, and the bottom, in particular, was a grassy plain. Here was plenty of wood, water, and fowl, and winter bark was found in great plenty. The trees appeared to be a species of the birch, but neither large nor lofty. The wood was white, and they bore a small leaf. White and red cranberries were found in these parts.

On the 18th we came to an anchor in twelve fathom water, upon coral rocks, before a small cove, at the distance of about a mile from the shore. At this time two of the natives came down upon the beach, as if they expected that the strangers would land; but as there was no shelter here, the ship was got under sail again, and the Indians retired disappointed. The same afternoon about two o'clock, we came into the bay of Good Success, and the vessel coming to an anchor, the captain

went on shore, and Solander, in order discourse with the proceeded above or when two of the Indians up, and threw away in their hands, and returned to their some distance behind to advance, though uncouth. Thus a sort of mutual the rest of the English conversing with them. Capt. Cook and to the ship, dressed beads and other provisions on shore with them; brandy, making signs their proper drink made several long and them was intelligible covering of a globe garment that was maintained on board above, Mr. Banks acceded them to their company to know what their were as little disposed enquire. None of the inches in height, but robust, though their faces, high cheeks nostrils, small black eyes different teeth, and after their ears and forehead were with brown original natives of America garments were the skin they wrapped round their wore on their heads over their foreheads, a few or tendons of a feet were painted on with red, white, and blue or four perpendicular lines and noses. The women each ankle, and each was the middle. They carried packs, and were generally bear and drudgery.

Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander, set out from the bay, and returning in the wood, they ascended a peak till the afternoon they took for a plain, to find it a swamp, covered with snow, and so inflexible: however, as the high, they stepped over a boggy ground. They, but now the weather; the blasts of wind blow fell thick; nevertheless, the hope of finding a better over this swamp, an accident concerned them: Mr. Banks, whom Mr. Banks had seen, it was absolutely necessary, and such as were necessary; but Mr. Banks, who proceeded, and a where they found satisfied their curiosity in coming to the company in great abundance, covered. They had p

went on shore, accompanied by Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander, in order to search for a watering place, and discourse with the Indians. These gentlemen had not proceeded above one hundred yards before the captain, when two of the Indians that had feated themselves, rose up, and threw away the small sticks which they held in their hands, as a token of amity. They afterwards returned to their companions, who had remained at some distance behind them and made signs to their guests to advance, whom they received in a friendly though uncourteous manner. In return for their civility, some ribbons and beads were distributed among them. Thus a sort of mutual confidence was established, and the rest of the English joined the party, the Indians conversing with them in their way, in an amicable manner. Capt. Cook and his friends took three of them to the ship, dressed them in jackets, and gave them bread and other provisions, part of which they carried on shore with them; but they refused to drink rum or brandy, making signs that it burned their throats, as their proper drink was water. One of these people made several long and loud speeches, but no part of them was intelligible to any of us. Another stole the covering of a globe, which he concealed under his garment that was made of skin. After having remained on board about two hours, they returned on shore, Mr. Banks accompanying them. He conducted them to their companions, who seemed no way curious to know what their friends had seen, and the latter were as little disposed to relate as the former were to enquire. None of these people exceeded five feet ten inches in height, but their bodies appeared large and robust, though their limbs were small. They had broad flat faces, high cheeks, noses inclining to flatness, wide nostrils, small black eyes, large mouths, small, but indifferently teeth, and straight black hair, falling down over their ears and foreheads, the latter being generally smeared with brown and red paints, and like all the original natives of America, they were beardless. Their garments were the skins of seals and guanoes, which they wrapped round their shoulders. The men likewise wore on their heads, a bunch of yarn which fell over their foreheads, and was tied behind with the leashes or tendons of some animals. Many of both sexes were painted on different parts of their bodies with red, white, and brown colours, and had also three or four perpendicular lines pricked across their cheeks and noses. The women had a small string tied round each ankle, and each wore a flap of skin fastened round the middle. They carried their children upon their backs, and were generally employed in domestic labour and drudgery.

Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander, attended by their servants, set out from the ship on the 16th, with a design of going into the country as far as they could that day, and returning in the evening. Having entered a wood, they ascended a hill, through a pathless wilderness till the afternoon. After they had reached what they took for a plain, they were greatly disappointed to find it a swamp, covered with birch, the bushes interwoven, and so inflexible that they could not be divided; however, as they were not above three feet high, they stepped over them, but were up to the ankles in boggy ground. The morning had been very fine, but now the weather became cold and disagreeable; the blasts of wind were very piercing, and the snow fell thick; nevertheless they pursued their route in hope of finding a better road. Before they had got over this swamp, an accident happened that greatly disconcerted them: Mr. Buchan, one of the draughtsmen, whom Mr. Banks had taken with him, fell into a hole. It was absolutely necessary to stop and kindle a fire, and such as were most fatigued remained to assist him; but Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, and Mr. Monkhouse proceeded, and attained the spot they had in view, where they found a great variety of plants that gratified their curiosity and repaid their toil. On returning to the company amidst the snow which now fell in great abundance, they found Mr. Buchan much recovered. They had previously sent Mr. Monkhouse

and Mr. Green back to him and those that remained with him, in order to bring them to a hill which was conjectured to lie in a better track for returning to the wood, and which was accordingly fixed on as a place of rendezvous. They resolved from this hill to pass through the swamp, which this way did not appear to be more than half a mile in extent, into the covert of the wood, in which they proposed building a hut, and kindling a fire, to defend themselves from the severity of the weather. Accordingly, the whole party met at the place appointed, about eight in the evening, whilst it was still day-light, and proceeded towards the next valley.

Dr. Solander, having often passed over mountains in cold countries, was sensible, that extreme cold when joined with fatigue, occasions a drowsiness that is not easily resisted; he therefore intreated his friends to keep in motion, however disagreeable it might be to them. His words were—Whoever sits down will sleep, and whoever sleeps will wake no more.—Every one seemed accordingly armed with resolution; but, on a sudden, the cold became so very intense as to threaten the most dreadful effects. It was now very remarkable, that the Doctor himself, who had so forcibly admonished and alarmed his party, was the first that insisted to be suffered to repose. In spite of the most earnest intreaties of his friends, he lay down amidst the snow, and it was with difficulty that they kept him awake. One of the black servants also became weak and faint, and was on the point of following this bad example. Mr. Buchan was therefore detached with a party to make a fire at the first commodious spot they could find. Mr. Banks and four more remained with the Doctor and Richmond the black, who with the utmost difficulty were persuaded to come on; and, when they had traversed the greatest part of the swamp, they expressed their inability of going any farther. When the black was told that if he remained there he would soon be frozen to death, his reply was, That he was so much exhausted with fatigue, that death would be a relief to him. Doctor Solander said he was not unwilling to go, but that he must first take some sleep, still persisting in acting contrary to the opinion which he himself had delivered to the company. Thus resolved, they both sat down, supported by some bushes, and in a short time fell asleep. Intelligence now came from the advanced party, that a fire was kindled about a quarter of a mile farther on the way. Mr. Banks then awakened the Doctor who had already almost lost the use of his limbs, though it was but a few minutes since he sat down; nevertheless, he consented to go on, but every measure taken to relieve the black proved ineffectual. He remained motionless, and they were obliged to leave him to the care of a sailor, and the other black servant, who appeared to be the least hurt by the cold, and they were to be relieved as soon as two others were sufficiently warmed to fill their places. The Doctor, with much difficulty, was got to the fire; and as to those who were sent to relieve the companions of Richmond, they returned without having been able to find them. What rendered the mortification still greater was, that a bottle of rum (the whole stock of the party) could not be found, and was judged to have been left with one of the three that were missing.

A fall of snow continuing for near two hours, there now remained no hopes of seeing the three absent persons again. At twelve o'clock, however, a great shouting was heard at a distance, which gave inexpressible satisfaction to every one present. Mr. Banks and four others went forward and met the sailor, who had just strength enough left to walk. He was immediately sent to the fire, and they proceeded to seek for the other two. They found Richmond upon his legs, but incapable of moving them; the other black was lying senseless upon the ground. All endeavours to bring them to the fire were fruitless; nor was it possible to kindle one upon the spot, on account of the snow that had fallen, and was falling, so that there remained no alternative, and they were compelled to leave the two unfortunate negroes to their fate, after they had made them

them a bed of the boughs of some trees, and covered them over thick with the same. As all hands had been employed in endeavouring to move these poor blacks to the fire, and had been exposed to the cold for near an hour and a half in the attempt, some of them began to be afflicted in the same manner as those whom they were to relieve. Briscoe, another servant of Mr. Banks, in particular, began to lose his sensibility. At last they reached the fire, and passed the night in a very disagreeable manner.

The party that set out from the ship had consisted of twelve; two of these were already judged to be dead, it was doubtful whether the third would be able to return on board, and Mr. Buchan, a fourth, seemed to be threatened with a return of his fits. The ship they reckoned to be at the distance of a long day's journey, through an unfrequented wood, in which they might probably be bewildered till night, and, having been equipped only for a journey of a few hours, they had not a sufficiency of provisions left to afford the company a single meal.

At day-break on the 17th nothing presented itself to the view all around but snow, which covered alike the trees and the ground; and the blasts of wind were so frequent and violent, that their journey seemed to be rendered impracticable, and they had reason to dread perishing with cold and famine. However, about six in the morning, they were flattered with a dawn of hope of being delivered, by discovering the sun through the clouds, which gradually diminished. Before their setting out, messengers were dispatched to the unhappy negroes; but these returned with the melancholy news of their death. Though the sky had flattered the hopes of the survivors, the snow continued falling very fast, a circumstance which impeded their journey, but a breeze springing up about eight o'clock, added to the influence of the sun, began to clear the air, and the snow falling in large flakes, from the trees, gave tokens of a thaw. Hunger prevailing over every other consideration, induced our travellers to divide the small remainder of their provisions, and to set forward on their journey about ten in the morning. To their great astonishment and satisfaction, in about three hours they found themselves on the shore, and much nearer to the ship than their most sanguine expectations could have suggested. When they looked back upon their former route from the sea, they found that instead of ascending the hill in a direct line, they had made a circle almost round the country. On their return, these wanderers received such congratulations from those on board, as can more easily be imagined than expressed.

Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander went on shore again on the 20th of this month, landing in the bottom of the bay, where they collected a number of shells and plants, hitherto unknown. After having returned to dinner, they went to visit an Indian town, about two miles up the country, the access to which, on account of the mud, was difficult. When they approached the town, two of the natives came out to meet them, who began to shout in their usual manner. They afterwards conducted Mr. Banks and the Doctor to their town. It was situate on a small hill, over-shaded with wood, and consisted of about a dozen huts, constructed without art or regularity. They were composed of a few poles, inclining to each other in the shape of a sugar-loaf, which were covered on the weather side with grass and boughs, and on the other side a space was left open, which served at once for a fire-place and a door. They were of the same nature of the huts that had been seen at St. Vincent's Bay. A little grass served for beds and chairs, and their utensils were a basket for the hand, a satchel to hang upon the back, and a bladder for water, out of which they drank through a hole near the top. This town was inhabited by a tribe of about fifty men, women and children. Their bows and arrows were constructed with neatness and ingenuity, being made of wood highly polished, and the point, which was either glass or flint, very skilfully fitted. These latter substances were observed among them unwrought,

as also cloth, rings, buttons, &c. from whence it was concluded that they sometimes travelled to the northward, as no ship, for years past, had touched at this part of Terra del Fuego. The natives here did not shew any surprize at the sight of fire-arms, but appeared to be well acquainted with their use. It is likely that the spot on which the Doctor and Mr. Banks met them, was not a fixed habitation, as their houses did not seem as if they were erected to stand for any long time, and they had no boats or canoes among them. They did not appear to have any form of government, or any ideas of subordination. They seemed to be the very outcasts of men; and a people that passed their lives in wandering in a forlorn manner over dreary wastes; their dwelling being a detached hovel, and their clothing scarcely sufficient to keep them from perishing with cold, even in those climates. Their only food was shell-fish, which on any one spot must soon be exhausted; nor had they the rudest implement of art, not even so much as was necessary to dress their food, yet amidst all this, we are told, that they appear to enjoy that content which is seldom found in great and populous cities; a species of content, which, if they really enjoyed it, must have arisen from stupidity, a satisfaction the offspring of the greatest ignorance. Such is the state of uncultivated nature; such the rude form which uncivilized man puts on. The wants of these people seemed to be few; but some wants all mankind must have, and even the most simple of them, these poor savages appeared scarcely in a condition to gratify. The calls of hunger and thirst must be obeyed, or man must perish, yet the people in question seemed to depend on chance for the means of answering them. Those who can be happy in such a situation, can only be so, because they have not a due feeling of their misery. We know that there have been admirers of simple nature amongst the philosophers of all ages and nations; and certainly simple nature has her beauties. In regard to the vegetative and brute creation, she operates with resistless energy; her power is prevalent as her pencil is inimitable; but when we ascend in the scale of beings, and come to examine the human race, what shall we find *them*, without cultivation? It is here that instinct ends and reason begins; and without entering into the question, Whether a state of nature is a state of war? when we observe the innumerable inconveniences to which those are subject on whom the light of science never dawned, we may easily determine in the favour of those arts which have civilized mankind, formed them into societies, refined their manners, and taught the nations where they have prevailed, to protect those rights which the untutored savages have ever been obliged to yield to the superior abilities of their better instructed invaders, and have thus fallen a prey to European tyranny.

We observed in this place seals, sea-lions, and dogs, and no other quadrupeds; nevertheless it is probable there are other kinds of animals in the country; for Mr. Banks remarked from a hill, "an impression of the foot-steps of a large animal on the surface of a bog, but of what kind it was he could not determine. No any land-birds were seen larger than an English black-bird, hawks and vultures excepted. Ducks and other water-fowls we saw in abundance; also shell-fish, clams, and limpets. The country, though uncleared, had neither gnat, musquito, nor any other noxious or troublesome animals. A great variety of plants were found by the Doctor and Mr. Banks. The wild celery and scurvy-grass are supposed to contain antiscorbutic qualities, which will therefore be of service to the crews of such ships as hereafter may touch at this place, after a long voyage. The latter is found in abundance near springs and in damp places, particularly at the watering place in the bay of Good Success, and it resembles the English cuckow flower, or lady's-smock. The wild celery is like what grows in our gardens in England, but the leaves are of a deeper green. This plant may be found in plenty near the beach, and upon the land above the spring tides. In taste it is between that of celery and parley. The grateful seaman, long con-

as, &c. from whence it was
 natives travelled to the north-
 east, had touched at this
 The natives here did not
 of fire-arms, but appeared
 their use. It is likely that
 and Mr. Banks met them,
 as their houses did not seem
 and for any long time, and
 among them. They did not
 government, or any ideas of
 ed to be the very outcasts of
 ed their lives in wandering
 eary wastes; their dwelling
 their cloathing scarcely suf-
 fering with cold, even in
 food was shell-fish, which
 exhausted; nor had they
 , not even so much as was
 yet amidst all this, we are
 joy that content which is
 opulous cities; a species of
 ally enjoyed it, must have
 satisfaction the offspring of the
 the state of uncultivated
 which uncivilised man puts
 ple seemed to be few; but
 it have, and even the most
 savages appeared scarcely
 The calls of hunger and
 an must perish, yet the peo-
 depend on chance for the
 Those who can be happy
 y be so, because they have
 erty. We know that there
 e nature amongst the phi-
 lions; and certainly simple
 In regard to the vegetative
 rates with restless energy
 er pencil is inimitable; but
 e of beings, and come to
 at shall we find them, with-
 hat instinct ends and reason
 ing into the question, Who
 ate of war? when we ob-
 veniences to which those
 ht of science never dawned,
 the favour of those arts
 and, formed them into so-
 cets, and taught the nations
 , to protect those rights
 have ever been obliged to
 s of their better instructed
 en a prey to European ty-

seals, sea-lions, and dogs,
 nevertheless it is probable
 animals in the country; for
 hill, an impression of the
 l on the surface of a bog,
 could not determine. Not
 ger than an English black-
 sheep. Ducks and other
 ance; also shell-fish, clams,
 though unclear, had nei-
 other noxious or trouble-
 iety of plants were found
 ks. The wild celery and
 contain antiscorbutic qual-
 of service to the crew
 touch at this place, after
 found in abundance near
 particularly at the water-
 Success, and it resembles
 or lady's-smock. The
 s in our garden in Eng-
 deeper green. This plant
 the beach, and upon the
 In taste it is between that
 grateful seaman, long con-
 fined

to falt provisions, enjoy this healing vegetable
 diet, as a special blessing of an all-gracious Providence,
 particularly visible in providing in different climates
 different food and nourishment, suitable to his nature,
 wants and necessities.

On Sunday, Jan. 22, having got in our wood and
 water, we sailed out of the bay, and continued our
 course through the Streight; and in passing this, our
 withstanding the description which some voyagers have
 given of Terra del Fuego, we did not find that it had,
 agreeable to their representations, such a forbidding
 aspect. On the contrary, we found the sea coasts and
 the sides of the hills clothed with verdure. Indeed
 the summits of the hills were barren, but the valleys
 appeared rich, and a brook was generally found at the
 foot of almost every hill; and though the water had a
 reddish tinge, yet it was far from being ill tasted. Upon
 the whole, it was the best we took on board during our
 voyage. Nine miles westward of cape St. Diego, the
 low point that forms the north entrance of the Streight
 of Le Maire, are three hills, called the Three Bro-
 thers; and on Terra del Fuego is another hill, in the
 form of a sugar-loaf, which stands on the west side, not
 far from the sea. We had not that difficulty mentioned
 in the history of Lord Anson's voyage, in finding where
 the streight of Le Maire lies. No ship can well miss
 the streight that keeps Terra del Fuego in sight, for it
 will then be easily discovered; and Staten island, which
 lies on the east side, will be still more plainly perceived,
 for there is no land on Terra del Fuego like it. And
 let it be further particularly observed, that the entrance
 of the streight should be attempted only with a fair
 wind, when the weather too is moderate, and likewise,
 upon the beginning of the tide of flood, which here
 falls out upon the full and change of the moon, about
 one or two o'clock; let it also be remembered, to keep
 as near the shore of Terra del Fuego as the winds will
 permit.

The streight of Le Maire is bounded on the west by
 Terra del Fuego, and on the east by the west end of
 Staten island, and is nearly five leagues in length, nor
 less in breadth. The bay of Good Success is seated
 about the middle of it, on the side of Terra del Fuego,
 which presents itself at the entrance of the streight
 from the northward; and the south end of it may be
 distinguished by a land-mark, resembling a road from
 the sea to the country. It affords good anchorage, and
 plenty of wood and water. Staten land did not ap-
 pear to Captain Cook in the same manner as it did to
 Commodore Anson. That horror and wildness, men-
 tioned by the Commodore, were not observed by our
 gentlemen; on the contrary, the land appeared to be
 neither destitute of wood nor verdure, nor was it co-
 vered with snow; and on the north side we saw the
 appearances of bays and harbours. It is probable, that
 the season of the year and other circumstances might
 concur to occasion such different representations of a
 land, which all our circumnavigators must own to be
 unfriendly and agreeably situated. On the west side
 of the cape of Good Success, whereby is formed the
 south-west entrance of the streight, we saw the mouth
 of Valentine's bay; from whence the land lies in a di-
 rection west-south-west for more than twenty leagues,
 appearing high and mountainous, with several inlets
 and bays. Fourteen leagues from the bay of Good
 Success, south-west half west, and nearly three leagues
 from the shore, is New Island; terminating to the
 north-east, in a remarkable hillock; and seven leagues
 from hence, south-west, lies Evout's isle; a little to the
 west of the south of which are two small low islands,
 near to each other, called Barnevelt's. These are partly
 surrounded with rocks, which rise to different heights
 above the water, and are twenty-four leagues from the
 streight of Le Maire. Three leagues south-west by
 south, from Barnevelt's islands, is the south-east point
 of Hermit's islands, which lie south-east and north-
 west. They appeared to us in different points of view,
 sometimes as one island, and at others as part of the
 main. From the south-east point of these islands to
 Cape Horn, the course is south-west by south, distant
 No. 2.

three leagues. Hermit, who commanded the Dutch
 squadron in 1624, certainly put into some of them, and
 Chapenham, vice admiral of this squadron, first dis-
 covered that Cape Horn was formed by a cluster of
 islands. Between the streight Le Maire and Cape Horn
 we found, when near the shore, the current setting ge-
 nerally strong to the north-east; but we lost it at the
 distance of fifteen or twenty leagues from land.

January the 26th, we took our departure from Cape
 Horn, and the farthest southern latitude we made was
 60 deg. 10 min. and our longitude was then 74 deg.
 30 min. west. Cape Horn is situated in 55 deg. 53
 min. south latitude, and 68 deg. 13 min. west longi-
 tude. The weather being very calm, Mr. Banks failed
 in a small boat to shoot birds, when he killed some
 sheer-waters, and albatrosses. The latter were larger
 than those which had been taken to the northward of
 the streight, and proved to be very good food. At
 this time we found ourselves to be 12 deg. to the west-
 ward, and three and a half to the northward of the
 streight of Maghellan, having, from the east entrance
 of the streight, been three and thirty days in sailing
 round Cape Horn. Notwithstanding the doubling of
 Cape Horn is represented as a very dangerous course,
 and that it is generally thought passing through the
 streight of Magellan is less perilous, yet the Endeavour
 doubled it with as little danger as she would the
 north Foreland on the Kentish coast; the heavens were
 serenely fair, the wind temperate, the weather plea-
 sant, and, being near shore, we had a very distinct
 view of the coast. The Dolphin, in her last voyage,
 which was performed at the same season with ours,
 was not less than three months in passing through the
 streight of Magellan, not including the time that she
 lay in Port Famine; and it was the opinion of Captain
 Cook, that if we had come through the streight, we
 should not at this time have been in these seas; and
 should have suffered many inconveniences which we
 have not experienced. It is a question, Whether it
 is better to go through the streight of Le Maire, or
 to stand to the eastward, and go round Staten land?
 This can only be determined according to particular
 circumstances, which may make one or the other more
 eligible. The streight may be passed with safety by
 attending to the directions already given; but if the
 land is fallen in with to the eastward of the streight,
 and the wind should prove tempestuous, it would be
 best, in our opinion, to go round Staten land. In any
 case, however, we cannot approve of running into
 the latitude of 61 or 62, before any attempt is made
 to stand to the westward.

March the 1st, we found ourselves both by observa-
 tion and the log, in latitude 38 deg. 44 min. south,
 and 110 deg. 33 min. west longitude, a concurrence
 very singular in a run of 660 leagues; and which
 proved, that no current had effected the ship in her
 course, and it was likewise concluded, that we had
 not come near land of any considerable extent; for
 currents are always found at no great distance from
 the shore. Mr. Banks killed above sixty birds in one
 day; also two forest flies, such as had never yet been
 described; he also found a cuttle-fish, of a species dif-
 ferent from those generally known in Europe. This
 fish had a double row of talons, resembling those of a
 cat, which it could put forth or withdraw at pleasure.
 When dressed it made excellent soup. On the 24th,
 our latitude was 22 deg. 11 min. south, and 127 deg.
 55 min. west longitude. On the 25th, a young marine
 about twenty, threw himself overboard, on account of
 a quarrel about a piece of seal skin, which he took by
 way of frolic; but being charged with it as a theft, he
 took the accusation so much to heart, that in the dusk
 of the evening he threw himself into the sea, and was
 drowned.

On the 4th of April, about 10 o'clock, A. M. Peter
 Briscoe, servant to Mr. Banks, discovered land to the
 south, at the distance of about three or four leagues.
 Captain Cook immediately gave orders to haul for it,
 when we found an island of an oval form, having a
 lagoon or lake in the center, that extended over the
 D greater

ined to salt provisions, enjoy this healing vegetable diet, as a special blessing of an all-gracious Providence, particularly visible in providing in different climates different food and nourishment, suitable to his nature, wants and necessities.

On Sunday, Jan. 22, having got in our wood and water, we sailed out of the bay, and continued our course through the Strait; and in passing this, notwithstanding the description which some voyagers have given of Terra del Fuego, we did not find that it had, agreeable to their representations, such a forbidding aspect. On the contrary, we found the sea coasts and the sides of the hills clothed with verdure. Indeed the summits of the hills were barren, but the valleys appeared rich, and a brook was generally found at the foot of almost every hill; and though the water had a reddish tinge, yet it was far from being ill tasted. Upon the whole, it was the best we took on board during our voyage. Nine miles westward of Cape St. Diego, the low point that forms the north entrance of the Strait of Le Maire, are three hills, called the Three Brothers; and on Terra del Fuego is another hill, in the form of a sugar-loaf, which stands on the west side, not far from the sea. We had not that difficulty mentioned in the history of Lord Anfon's voyage, in finding where the Strait of Le Maire lies. No ship can well miss the Strait that keeps Terra del Fuego in sight, for it will then be easily discovered; and Staten island, which lies on the east side, will be still more plainly perceived, for there is no land on Terra del Fuego like it. And let it be further particularly observed, that the entrance of the Strait should be attempted only with a fair wind, when the weather too is moderate, and likewise, upon the beginning of the tide of flood, which here falls out upon the full and change of the moon, about one or two o'clock; let it also be remembered, to keep as near the shore of Terra del Fuego as the winds will permit.

The Strait of Le Maire is bounded on the west by Terra del Fuego, and on the east by the west end of Staten island, and is nearly five leagues in length, nor less in breadth. The bay of Good Success is seated about the middle of it, on the side of Terra del Fuego, which presents itself at the entrance of the Strait from the northward; and the south end of it may be distinguished by a land-mark, resembling a road from the sea to the country. It affords good anchorage, and plenty of wood and water. Staten land did not appear to Captain Cook in the same manner as it did to Commodore Anfon. That horror and wildness, mentioned by the Commodore, were not observed by our gentlemen; on the contrary, the land appeared to be neither destitute of wood nor verdure, nor was it covered with snow; and on the north side we saw the appearances of bays and harbours. It is probable, that the season of the year and other circumstances might concur to occasion such different representations of a land, which all our circumnavigators must own to be unfriendly and agreeably situated. On the west side of the Cape of Good Success, whereby is formed the south-west entrance of the Strait, we saw the mouth of Valentine's bay; from whence the land lies in a direction west-south-west for more than twenty leagues, appearing high and mountainous, with several inlets and bays. Fourteen leagues from the bay of Good Success, south-west half west, and nearly three leagues from the shore, is New Island; terminating to the north-east, in a remarkable hillock; and seven leagues from hence, south-west, lies Evout's Isle; a little to the west of the fourth of, which are two small low islands, near to each other, called Barnevelt's. These are partly surrounded with rocks, which rise to different heights above the water, and are twenty-four leagues from the Strait of Le Maire. Three leagues south-west by south, from Barnevelt's islands, is the south-east point of Hermit's islands, which lie south-east and north-west. They appeared to us in different points of view, sometimes as one island, and at others as part of the main. From the south-east point of these islands to Cape Horn, the course is south-west by south, distant No. 2.

three leagues. Hermit, who commanded the Dutch Squadron in 1624, certainly put into some of them, and Chapenham, vice admiral of this Squadron, first discovered that Cape Horn was formed by a cluster of islands. Between the Strait Le Maire and Cape Horn we found, when near the shore, the current setting generally strong to the north-east; but we lost it at the distance of fifteen or twenty leagues from land.

January the 26th, we took our departure from Cape Horn, and the farthest southern latitude we made was 60 deg. 10 min. and our longitude was then 74 deg. 30 min. west. Cape Horn is situated in 55 deg. 53 min. south latitude, and 68 deg. 13 min. west longitude. The weather being very calm, Mr. Banks sailed in a small boat to shoot birds, when he killed some sheer-waters, and albatrosses. The latter were larger than those which had been taken to the northward of the Strait, and proved to be very good food. At this time we found ourselves to be 12 deg. to the westward, and three and a half to the northward of the Strait of Magellan, having, from the east entrance of the Strait, been three and thirty days in sailing round Cape Horn. Notwithstanding the doubling of Cape Horn is represented as a very dangerous course, and that it is generally thought passing through the Strait of Magellan is less perilous, yet the Endeavour doubled it with as little danger as she would the north Foreland on the Kentish coast; the heavens were serenely fair, the wind temperate, the weather pleasant, and, being near shore, we had a very distinct view of the coast. The Dolphin, in her last voyage, which was performed at the same season with ours, was not less than three months in passing through the Strait of Magellan, not including the time that she lay in Port Famine; and it was the opinion of Captain Cook, that if we had come through the Strait, we should not at this time have been in these seas; and should have suffered many inconveniences which we have not experienced. It is a question, Whether it is better to go through the Strait of Le Maire, or to stand to the eastward, and go round Staten land? This can only be determined according to particular circumstances, which may make one or the other more eligible. The Strait may be passed with safety by attending to the directions already given; but if the land is fallen in with to the eastward of the Strait, and the wind should prove tempestuous, it would be best, in our opinion, to go round Staten land. In any case, however, we cannot approve of running into the latitude of 61 or 62, before any attempt is made to stand to the westward.

March the 1st, we found ourselves both by observation and the log, in latitude 38 deg. 44 min. south, and 110 deg. 33 min. west longitude, a concurrence very singular in a run of 660 leagues; and which proved, that no current had effected the ship in her course, and it was likewise concluded, that we had not come near land of any considerable extent; for currents are always found at no great distance from the shore. Mr. Banks killed above sixty birds in one day; also two forest flies, such as had never yet been described; he also found a cuttle-fish, of a species different from those generally known in Europe. This fish had a double row of talons, resembling those of a cat, which it could put forth or withdraw at pleasure. When dressed it made excellent soup. On the 24th, our latitude was 22 deg. 11 min. south, and 127 deg. 55 min. west longitude. On the 25th, a young marine about twenty, threw himself overboard, on account of a quarrel about a piece of seal skin, which he took by way of frolic; but being charged with it as a theft, he took the accusation so much to heart, that in the dusk of the evening he threw himself into the sea, and was drowned.

On the 4th of April, about 10 o'clock, A. M. Peter Briscoe, servant to Mr. Banks, discovered land to the south, at the distance of about three or four leagues. Captain Cook immediately gave orders to haul for it, when we found an island of an oval form, having a lagoon or lake in the center, that extended over the greater

greater part of it. The surrounding border of land was low and narrow in many places, especially towards the south, where the beach consisted of a reef of rocks. Three places on the north side had the same appearance, so that on the whole the land seemed to resemble several woody islands. To the west was a large clump of trees, and in the center two cocoa-nut trees. When within a mile of the north side, though we cast out a line, no bottom could be found at 130 fathom, nor any good anchorage. This island was covered with trees, but we could discern no other species than the palm and the cocoa-nut. Several of the natives were discovered on shore; they appeared to be tall, with heads remarkably large, which probably some bandage might have increased. Their complexion was of the copper colour, and their hair was black. Some of these people were seen abreast of the ship, holding poles or pikes of twice their own height. They appeared also naked, but when they retired, on the ship's passing by the islands, they put on a light-coloured covering. Some clumps of palm-trees served them for habitations, which at a distance appeared like hilly ground, and the view of the groves was a very agreeable one. Our captain called this place Lagoon Island. It lay in 18 degrees south latitude, and 139 west longitude. In the afternoon we again saw land to the north-west, by sun-set we reached it, when it appeared to be a low island of a circular form, and about a mile in circumference. The land was covered with verdure of various kinds, but no inhabitants were visible, nor any cocoa-nut trees. This island is distant from that of Lagoon about seven leagues north, and 6a west, which our gentlemen on board named Thumb Cap.

On the 5th, we continued our course with a favourable wind, and about three o'clock discovered land to the westward. It was low, in form resembling a bow, and in circumference seemed to be ten or twelve leagues. Its length is about three or four leagues, and its width about two hundred yards. The beach was flat, and seemed to have no other herbage upon it than sea-weeds. The resemblance of a bow was preserved in the arch and cord forming the land, while the intermediate space was taken up by water. The arch, in general, was covered with trees of various verdure and different heights. This island, from the smoke that was discovered, appeared to be inhabited, and we gave it the name of Bow Island.

On the 6th, about noon, we again saw land to the west, and at three o'clock we came up with it. This land seemed to be divided into two parts, or rather a collection of islands, (to which we gave the name of the Groups) to the extent of about nine leagues. The two largest were divided from the others by a strait, the

breadth of which was about half a mile. Some of these islands were ten miles or more in length, but appeared like long narrow strings of land, not above a quarter of a mile in breadth; but they produced trees, however, of different kinds, among which was the cocoa-nut tree. Several of the inhabitants came out in their canoes, and two of them shewed an intention of coming on board; but these, like the rest, stopped at the reef. From the observations made, these people appeared to be about our size, and well made. Their complexion was brown, and they were naked. In general, they had two weapons, one was a long pole, spear-pointed, and the other resembled a paddle. Several of their canoes were constructed in such a manner as not to carry more than three persons; others were fitted up for six or seven; and one of these boats hoisted a sail, which was converted into an awning when a shower of rain fell. Captain Cook would not stay for any of them, neither could we determine, whether the signals made were meant for defiance, or for invitations; one party waving their hats, and another answering by shouting: In this respect it was not judged prudent to try the experiment, in order to be convinced, as the island appeared of no importance, and the crew not being in want of any thing it could produce. This curiosity was therefore laid aside, in expectation of soon discovering the island, where we had been directed to make our astronomical observations, the natives of which, it was reasonable to conjecture, would make no resistance, having already experienced the danger of opposing an European force.

On the 7th, we discovered another island, judged to be in compass about five miles, being very low, and having a piece of water in the center. It appeared to abound in wood, and to be covered with verdure, but we saw no inhabitants upon it. It was named Bird Island, from the number of birds that were seen flying about. This lies in latitude 17 deg. 48 min. south, and 143 deg. 35 min. west longitude; distant ten leagues, in the direction west, half north from the west end of the Groups.

On the 8th, in the afternoon, we saw land to the northward, and came abreast of it in the evening, at about five miles distance. This land seemed to be a chain of low islands, of an oval figure, and consisted of coral and sand, with a few clumps of small trees, and in the middle of it was a lagoon. On account of its appearance, it was called Chain Island.

On the 10th, after a tempestuous night, we came in sight of Onaburgh Island, called by the natives Maitea. This island is circular, about four miles in circumference, partly rocky, and partly covered with trees.

C H A P. III.

The ENDEAVOUR arrives at OTAHEITE, or George the Third's Island—Rules established by Captain COOK for conducting a TRADE with the Natives—An Account of several Incidents during his Stay in this Island—An OBSERVATORY and FORT erected—Excursions into the WOODS—Visits from several of the Chiefs—The MUSIC of the Natives, and their Manner of BURYING their Dead described—Other Excursions and Incidents both on Board and on Shore—First Interview with OBEREA, the supposed QUEEN of the ISLAND—The Fort described—The Quadrant stolen, and the Consequences—A Visit to TOOTAHAI, an Indian Chief—A WRESTLING MATCH described—European Seeds are sown—The INDIANS give our People Names.

ON the 11th we made Otahcite, or as Captain Wallis had named it, King George the Third's Island. The calms prevented our approaching it till the morning of the 12th, when a breeze sprung up, and several canoes were seen making towards the ship. Few of them, however, would come near, and those who did could not be persuaded to come on board. They had brought with them young plantains and branches of trees, which were handed up the slips side, and, by their desire, were stuck in conspicuous parts of the rigging, as tokens of peace and friendship. We then purchased their commodities, consisting of cocoa-nuts, bananas, bread-fruit, apples and figs, which

were very acceptable to the crew. On the evening of the same day we opened the north-west point of the isle, to which the Dolphin's people had given the name of York Island. We lay off and on all night, and in the morning of the 13th we entered Port Royal Harbour, in the island of Otahcite, and anchored within half a mile of the shore. Many of the natives came off immediately in their canoes, and brought with them bread-fruit, cocoa-nuts, apples, and some hogs, which they bartered for beads and other trinkets with the ship's company. The tree which bears the bread-fruit, is about the size of a horse-chestnut: its leaves are near a foot and a half in length, in shape oblong, and very

much resemble those of the fig-tree, unlike the cantaloupe melon: it is like the apple, and its core is as large as a nut. The substance of this fruit is somewhat greenish, and as white as the oianc-ore, and when eaten it has a sweetness.

Among those who came on board was an elderly man, named Owah Gore and others who had visited the island Wallis. Owah being considered as a very useful man, they studied to gratify all his wishes. As George's Island was not likely to be visited, the natives were drawn up to be observed by the ship's board his majesty's bark the Endeavour, establishing a regular trade with the natives. The rules of these rules were, "That in quarrels and confusion, every one should endeavour to treat the inhabitants with humanity, and by all fair means to establish friendship with them. That no other person, belonging to the ship, should be appointed to barter with the natives, or offer to trade, for any goods, fruit, or other produce of the island, except leave so to do. That no person should trade, or offer to trade with the ship's stores: and, that no sort of iron, or any other metal, should be given in exchange for any thing, but for provisions." These necessary rules, by Capt. Cook, and, being his orders, the observance of them were annexed certain penalties, the punishment according to the rules of the navy.

When the bark was properly secured, Mr. Banks, and Dr. Solander, went on shore under arms, and their friends followed. They were received by some hundred natives with awe and reverence, who exchanged presents, and offered to conduct them to a place which would be more convenient for their stay than that where they had landed. Our English made the Indians some presents, which were very thankfully received. They went out about four miles through groves of bread-fruit and cocoa-trees. Intermingled with the dwellings of the natives, which were without walls. In the course of the day we found but few fowls or hogs, and under the conductors, nor any of the people who were seen, were persons of rank. Those of our crew, who had before been in the Dolphin, were likewise of opinion, that the residence had been removed, as no trace of it could be discovered.

Next day, in the morning, before the ship, several canoes came about her side, whose crews denoted them to be the natives. Two of these came on board, and presented upon a friend: one of them chose to be the other Captain Cook. The ceremony of taking off their cloaths in great part was upon their adopted friends. They were returned by our gentlemen presents of some trinkets. They then made signs for their friends to go with them to the place of the latter being desirous of being acquainted with the people, and finding out a more convenient place to accept the invitation, and went with them to the place named by Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, and others. We all landed in two boats, about three miles, among a great number of natives, who conducted us to a large house, where we were introduced to a middle-aged man, named Tootahah. When we were seated, Mr. Banks a cock, a hen, and a piece of pork, which compliment was returned

f a mile. Some of
ore in length, but ap-
of land, not above a
they produced trees,
ong which was the
habitants came out in
ewed an intention of
e the reef, stopped at
s made, these people
d well made. Their
were naked. In ge-
was a long pole,
mbed a paddle. See-
cted in such a manner
persons; others were
of these boats hoist-
to an awning when a
ok would not stay for
termine, whether the
nce, or for invitation;
another answering by
not judged prudent to
be convinced, as the
ce, and the crew not
d produce. This cu-
n expectation of soon
had been directed to
the natives of the
ture, would make no
nenced the danger of

other island, judged to
being very low, and
nter. It appeared to
red with verdure, but
It was named Bird
that were seen flying
deg. 48 min. south,
gitude; distant ten
if north from the west

we saw land to the
it in the evening, at
land seemed to be a
gure, and consisted of
ps of small trees, and

On account of its
Island.
ous night, we came
alled by the natives
about four miles in
partly covered with

Captain COOK for
Island—An OBSER-
—The MUSIC of the
s both on Board and
described—The Qua-
G MATCH described

On the evening of
h-well point of the
had given the name
on all night, and in
d Port Royal Hai-
nd anchored within
the natives came off
brought with them
d some hogs, which
r trinkets with the
ears the bread-fruit,
; its leaves are very
e oblong, and very
much

much resemble those of the fig-tree. The fruit is not
unlike the cantaloupe melon: it is inclosed in a thin
skin, and its core is as large as a man's thumb. The
substance of this fruit is somewhat like that of new
bread, and as white as the oiancre almond. It must
be roasted, and when eaten it has the taste of a slight
suetness.

Among those who came on board the Endeavour,
was an elderly man, named Owhaw, known to Mr.
Gore and others who had visited this island with Cap-
tain Wallis. Owhaw being considered by our gentle-
men as a very useful man, they studied to please him,
and to gratify all his wishes. As our continuance in
George's Island was not likely to be very short, certain
rules were drawn up to be observed by every person on
board his majesty's bark the Endeavour, for the better
establishing a regular trade with the natives. The sub-
stance of these rules were, "That in order to prevent
quarrels and confusion, every one of the ship's crew
should endeavour to treat the inhabitants of Otaheite
with humanity, and by all fair means to cultivate a
friendship with them. That no officer, seaman, or
other person, belonging to the ship, excepting such
only who were appointed to barter with the natives,
should trade, or offer to trade, for any kind of provi-
sion, fruit, or other produce of the island, without hav-
ing express leave so to do. That no person should
barter, trade, or offer to trade with any part of the
ship's stores: and, that no sort of iron, or any thing
made of iron, nor any sort of cloth, or other useful ar-
ticles in the ship, should be given in exchange for any
thing but provision." These necessary rules were signed
by Capt. Cook, and, being his orders, to the non-ob-
servance of them were annexed certain penalties, be-
sides the punishment according to the usual custom of
the navy.

When the bark was properly secured, Capt. Cook,
Mr. Banks, and Dr. Solander, went on shore, with a
party under arms, and their friend the old Indian.
They were received by some hundreds of the natives
with awe and reverence, who exchanged the tokens of
peace, and offered to conduct them to a spot of ground,
which would be more convenient for them to occupy,
than that where they had landed. On their way, the
English made the Indians some presents, which the
latter very thankfully received. They now took a cir-
cuit of about four miles through groves of the bread-
fruit and cocca-trees. Intermingled with these were
the dwellings of the natives, which consisted of huts
without walls. In the course of their journey they
saw but few fowls or hogs, and understood that none
of their conductors, nor any of the people they had
hitherto seen, were persons of rank in the island.
Those of our crew, who had before been at Otaheite in
the Dolphin, were likewise of opinion, that the queen's
residence had been removed, as no traces of it were now
to be discovered.

Next day, in the morning, before they could leave
the ship, several canoes came about her filled with peo-
ple, whose dress denoted them to be of the superior
class. Two of these came on board, and each of them
brought upon a friend: one of them chose Mr. Banks,
and the other Captain Cook: The ceremonials consisted
of taking off their cloaths in great part, and putting
them upon their adopted friends. This compliment
was returned by our gentlemen presenting them with
some trinkets. They then made signs for their new
friends to go with them to the place of their abode; and
the latter being desirous of being acquainted with the
people, and finding out a more convenient harbour,
accepted the invitation, and went with them, accom-
panied by Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, Captain Cook,
and others. We all landed in two boats at the distance
of about three miles, among a great number of the na-
tives, who conducted us to a large habitation, where
we were introduced to a middle-aged man, named
Tootahah. When we were seated, he presented to
Mr. Banks a cock, a hen, and a piece of perfumed
bread, which compliment was returned by a present

from Mr. Banks. We were then conducted to several
other large dwellings, wherein we walked about with
great freedom. The ladies so far from shunning,
invited, and even pressed us to be seated. By fre-
quently pointing to the mats upon the ground, and
sometimes drawing us down upon them, we had no
doubt of their being less jealous of observation than
we were; but the huts that are all open, except a roof,
afforded no place of requisite retirement. Walking
afterwards along the shore, we met, accompanied by
a great number of natives, another chief named Tu-
bourai Tamaide, with whom we settled a treaty of
peace, in the manner before described. This chief
gave us to understand, that he had provisions at our
service, if we chose to eat, which he produced, and
we dined heartily upon bread-fruit, plantains, and
fish. During this visit, Tomio, the chief's wife, placed
herself upon the same mat with Mr. Banks, close by
him; but as she was not young, nor appeared ever
to have possessed many charms, this gentleman paid
little attention to her; and Tomio received an addi-
tional mortification, when Mr. Banks beckoned to a
pretty girl, who, with some reluctance, came and
placed herself by him. The princess was somewhat
chagrined at this preference given to her rival; never-
theless she continued her assiduities to her guest. This
whimsical scene was interrupted by an event of a more
serious nature; Dr. Solander having missed his opera
glass, a complaint was made to the chief, which inter-
rupted the convivial party. The complaint was enforced
by Mr. Banks's starting up and striking the but-end of
his musquet against the ground, which struck the In-
dians with such a panic that all of them run precipi-
tately out of the house, except the chief and a few
others of the superior class. That no disadvantageous
notions might be entertained of them on account of
this circumstance, the chief observed, with an air of
great probity, that the place which the Doctor had
mentioned on this occasion, was not within his district,
but that he would send to the chief of it, and endea-
vour to recover it, adding, that if this could not be
done, he would make the Doctor compensation, by
giving him as much new cloth, (of which he produced
large quantities) as should be thought equal to the va-
lue. The case however was brought in a little time,
and the glass itself soon after, which deprived us of
the merit we should otherwise have had in refusing
the cloth which had been offered us. But it afforded
an opportunity of convincing the natives of our gene-
rosity, by lavishing rewards upon them for an action,
to which self-interest had been the motive, rather than
any sentiment of probity; to which, from numerous
transactions, they appeared to be absolutely strangers.
After this adventure was amicably terminated, we re-
turned to the ship about six o'clock in the evening. On
Saturday the 15th, in the morning, several of the
chiefs, one of whom was very corpulent, came on
board from the other point, bringing with them hogs,
bread-fruit, and other refreshments, in exchange for
which they received linen, beads, and other trinkets;
but some of them took the liberty of stealing the
lightening chain. This day the captain, attended by
Mr. Banks, and some of the other gentlemen, went on
shore to fix on a proper spot to erect a fort for their de-
fence, during their stay on the island, and the ground
was accordingly marked out for that purpose; a great
number of the natives looking on all the while, and be-
having in the most peaceable and friendly manner.

Mr. Banks and his friends having seen few hogs and
poultry in their walks, they suspected that they had
been driven up the country; for which reason they
determined to penetrate into the woods, the tent be-
ing guarded by a petty officer and a party of marines.
On this excursion several of the natives accompanied
the English. While the party were on their march
they were alarmed by the discharge of two pieces fired
by the guard of the tent. Owhaw having now called
together the captain's party, dispersed all the Indians,
except three, who in token of their fidelity broke
branches

der had infringed one of the rules enjoined by the Captain for trading with the natives, he was flogged on board in their sight. When the first stroke had been given, they were humane enough to interfere, and intreated earnestly that the culprit might be untied; but when this favour was denied them, they shewed strong signs of concern, and burst into tears.

On the 28th, Terapo, one of Tubourai Tamaide's female attendants, came down to the fort in the greatest affliction, the tears gushing down her eyes. Mr. Banks seeing her full of lamentation and sorrow, inquired upon knowing the cause, but instead of answering, she struck herself several times with a flark's tooth upon her forehead, till an effusion of blood followed, while her distress was disregarded by several other Indians, who continued laughing and talking with the utmost unconcern. After this, she gathered up some pieces of cloth, which she had thrown down to catch the blood, and threw them into the sea, as if she wished to prevent the least trace and mark of her absurd behaviour. She then bathed in the river, and with remarkable cheerfulness returned to the tent, as if nothing extraordinary had happened. During the forenoon of this day, the Indian canoes were continually coming in, and people of both sexes filled the tents of the fort. Mr. Malineux, master of the Endeavour, seeing a woman whose name was Oberea, he declared she was the same person, whom he judged to be the queen of the island, when he was there with Captain Wallis. The eyes of every one were now fixed on her, of whom so much had been said by the crew of the Dolphin, and in the account given of her by the captain. With regard to her person, she was tall, and rather large made; she was about forty years of age, her skin white, and her eyes had great expression in them: she had been handsome, but her beauty was now upon the decline. It was not long before an offer was made to conduct her on board the ship, which she accepted. Many presents were made her, particularly a child's doll, which she viewed very attentively. Captain Cook accompanied her on shore, and when we landed, he presented him with a hog and some plantains, in return for his presents, which were carried to the fort in procession, Oberea and the Captain bringing up the rear. In the way they met Tootahah, who, though not king, seemed to be at this time invested with sovereign authority. Envy is found among those who are supposed to be the children of simple nature. Her influence was plainly visible in a manner which to us was rather a subject of laughter than of serious consideration. Tootahah no sooner saw the doll, than he discovered strong symptoms of jealousy, nor could any method be found of conciliating his friendship, but that of complimenting him with a baby also. A doll was now preferable to a hatchet; but a very short time taught the Indians the superior value of iron, which, on account of its usefulness, prevailed over every other consideration. To such of the men who came from time to time on board, the ships provisions seemed to be very acceptable, but the women did not chuse to taste them; and though they were invited to dine with our gentlemen, yet, for reasons known only to themselves, they preferred the eating of plantains with the servants.

On the 29th, near noon, Mr. Banks paid a visit to Oberea, but was informed that she was asleep under the awning of her canoe; and, going to call her up, was surprised at finding her in bed with a young fellow of about twenty-five years of age, a discovery which caused him to retire rather disconcerted; but he soon understood that a commerce of this kind was by no means considered as scandalous, the ladies frequently turning the men to amorous dalliance, of which they made no secret; and as to young Obadee, found in bed with the queen, he was well known by every one to be the object of her lascivious hours. The queen soon got up, and dressed herself to wait upon Mr. Banks, and after having, as a token of her particular regard, put on him a suit of fine cloth, they proceeded together to the tents. In the evening Mr. Banks visited Tubourai Tamaide. He was astonished

to find this chief and his family in tears, and not being able to discover the cause, he soon took leave of them. Upon his return the officers told him, that Owah had foretold, that the guns should be fired within four days, and as this was the eve of the third day, they were alarmed at the situation they judged themselves to be in. As we were apprehensive of ill consequences from this prepossession, the centinels were doubled at the fort, and we thought it necessary to keep under arms; but Mr. Banks walking round the point, at two in the morning, and finding nothing that might tend to encourage his suspicions, he dropped them, and rested secure in the fort. This our little fortification was now complete. A bank of earth four feet and an half high on the inside, and a ditch without ten feet broad and six deep, formed the north and south sides. On the west, opposite the bay, was another bank (with palisadoes upon it) four feet high; but a ditch was unnecessary, the works being at high-water mark. Upon the river's bank, on the east side, was a range of water-casks, filled with water. This being thought the weakest side, we planted two four pounders, and mounted six swivel guns, which commanded the only two avenues from the woods. We had about forty-five men in this fort, including the officers, and other gentlemen who resided on shore.

On the 30th, Tomio came in great haste to our tents, and taking Mr. Banks by the arm, told him, that Tubourai Tamaide was dying, owing to somewhat that had been given him by our people, and intreated him instantly to go to him. Accordingly Mr. Banks went, and found the Indian very sick. He had been vomiting, and had thrown up a leaf, which they said contained some of the poison. Mr. Banks having examined the leaf, found it was nothing but tobacco, which the Indian had begged of some of the ship's company.

The matter, however, appeared in a very serious light to Tubourai Tamaide, who really concluded from the violent sickness he suffered, that he had swallowed some deadly drug, the terror of which no doubt contributed to make him yet more sick. While Mr. Banks was examining the leaf, he looked up to him, as if he had been jull on the point of death. But when the nature of this deadly poison was found out, he only ordered him to drink of cocoa-nut milk, which soon restored him to health, and he was as cheerful as before the accident happened. These people seemed in particular instances to be sometimes strangely afflicted from slight causes.

On the 1st of May, Captain Cook having produced an iron adze, which was made in imitation of the stone ones used by the natives, shewed it to Tootahah, as a curiosity. The latter snatched it up and insisted on having it; and though he was offered the choice of any of the articles in the chests which were opened before him, yet he would not accept of any thing in its stead. A chief dined with us that day, who had been on board some time before, accompanied by some of his women that used to feed him. He now came alone; and when all things were set ready for dinner, the Captain helped him to some victuals, supposing that he would have dispensed with the ceremony of being fed; but he was deceived; for the chief never attempted to eat, and would have gone without his dinner, if one of the servants had not fed him. The next morning, May 2, we took the astronomical quadrant and some of the instruments on shore that afternoon; and to our great surprise, when we wanted to make use of the quadrant, the next day, it was not to be found; a matter which was looked upon as the more extraordinary, as a centinel had been placed for the whole night within a few yards of the place where it was deposited. Our own people, at first, were suspected of being concerned in this theft, and, as the instrument had never been taken out of the case, it was suspected that some person might have carried it off, under the supposition that its contents were articles used in traffic. A strict search was made in and about the fort, and a considerable reward offered in order to

obtain it again. But all this proving fruitless, Mr. Banks, accompanied by Mr. Green and some other gentlemen, set out for the woods, where they thought they might probably get some tidings of what was stolen. In their way, they met with Tubourai Tamaide and some of the natives. This chief was made to understand by signs, that they had lost the quadrant, and that as some of his countrymen must have taken it, they insisted upon being shewn the place where it was concealed. Having proceeded a few miles together, after some enquiry, Tubourai Tamaide was informed who the thief was, and it was found that he was then at a place about four miles distant. As they had no arms but a brace of pistols, not caring to trust themselves so far from the fort, a message was dispatched to Capt. Cook, requesting him to send out a party to support them. The captain accordingly set out with a party properly armed, after having laid an embargo upon all the canoes in the bay.

In the mean time, Mr. Banks and Mr. Green proceeded on their way, and at the place which had been mentioned, were met by one of Tubourai Tamaide's own people, bringing with him part of the quadrant; the case and the other parts of the instrument were recovered soon afterwards, when it was found that it had received no real injury, though it had been taken to pieces.

When they returned in the evening, they were much surprised to find Tootahah under confinement in the fort, while a crowd of the natives surrounded the gate, discovering marks of the greatest anxiety for the fate of their chief. The occasion of his detention originated from the conduct of the Indians: alarmed at Capt. Cook's having gone up the country with an armed party, most of the natives left the fort that evening, and one of the canoes attempted to quit the bay. The lieutenant who commanded on board the ship, having it in charge not to suffer any canoe to depart, sent a boat to detain her, but she no sooner approached than the Indians jumped into the sea. Tootahah being of the number, was taken up, and sent by the lieutenant to the officer that commanded at the fort, who concluded he should do right to detain him prisoner, while the poor chief thought of nothing but being put to death, till Capt. Cook caused him to be returned, to the great joy of his countrymen. But the natives were still inclined to bear this affair in their minds, and as a proof of it, they neglected to supply the market with provisions. Mr. Banks walking into the woods, heard great murmurings concerning the treatment of Tootahah, who, as they said, had been ill used and beaten, though Mr. Banks declared he was quite ignorant of his having received such treatment.

The chief now sent for such hogs to be restored as he had left behind him, at first intending them as a present, which by this time, perhaps, he did not think the English had merited; but they refused to send them unless he would come himself, thinking by an interview to promote a reconciliation; and this they were the more desirous of, as they were told it would be a fortnight before he would pay them a visit.

On the 3d provisions were extremely scarce, as the markets continued to be ill supplied on the account already mentioned; and it was not without some difficulty, that Mr. Banks got a few baskets of bread-fruit from Tubourai Tamaide. Tootahah on the 4th sent for an axe and a shirt in return for the hogs, which were accordingly promised to be brought him the next day. He sent again early in the morning of the 5th, and Mr. Banks and the Doctor set out in the pinnace, taking with them one of Tootahah's people and soon reached Eparre, where he resided, which was a few miles to the westward. When they arrived there, they found a great number of the natives waiting for them on the shore, and were conducted directly to the chief, the people, notwithstanding the offence they had so lately taken, shouting out in their language, "Tootahah is your friend." He was sitting under a tree, and some old men were standing about him. Having made signs for them to be seated, he asked for the axe,

which was then given him by Capt. Cook, as also the shirt that he had demanded, and a broad-cloth garment, which latter he put on, and was well pleased with the present. They ate a mouthful together in the boat, and were afterwards conducted to a large court-yard on one side of the chief's house, where they were to be entertained with wrestling after the manner of the country. He himself sat at the upper end of the area, having several of his principal men on each side of him, who appeared as judges of the sport, which was as follows:

Ten or twelve combatants entered the area, and after many simple ceremonies of challenging, they engaged, and each endeavoured to throw his antagonist by mere strength: thus they seized each other by the hand, or other parts of the body, grappling, without the least art, till one, by having a greater hold, or stronger muscular force, threw his antagonist on his back. The conquest was applauded by the old men with a few words repeated in a kind of tune, and with three huzzas. After one engagement another succeeded; but if the combatants could not throw each other in the space of a minute, they parted, either by consent, or the intervention of their friends. Several women of rank in the country were present, but it was thought they only attended this amusement in compliment to the English gentlemen. A man with a stick who made way for us when we landed, officiated as master of the ceremonies, keeping order among the people, and those of them who pressed forward struck with his stick very smartly. During these athletic sports, another party of men performed a dance for the space of a minute, but neither of these parties took the least notice of each other, their attention being wholly fixed on their own endeavours to please and conquer. At the conclusion of this entertainment, not unlike the wrestling matches of remote antiquity, we were told, that some hogs, and a large quantity of bread-fruit were preparing for our dinner, very agreeable intelligence to those whose appetites were sharpened by their journey; but our host, instead of setting his two hogs before us, ordered one of them to be carried into our boat. Here we thought to have enjoyed our good cheer, and yet we neither dined on shore, nor in the boat, but at the desire of Tubourai Tamaide proceeded as far as the ship: no small mortification this, as we had to row four miles, while our dinner was growing cold: however we were at last gratified with our promised repast, of which our chief and his friends had a liberal share. This friendly reconciliation between them and us, operated on the natives like a charm: for it was no sooner known that Tubourai Tamaide was on board, than provisions of all kinds were brought to the fort in great plenty.

On the 8th, early in the morning, Mr. Molineux the Master, and Mr. Green set out in the pinnace to the eastward, in order to procure some poultry or hogs. They saw many of the latter, and one turtle, yet could not purchase either because they belonged to Tootahah, and without his permission the people could not be prevailed upon to sell them. Hence we concluded that Tootahah was indeed a prince; and we afterwards learnt, that, in this part of the island, he acted as regent for a minor, whom we never saw all the time of our stay here. However, some time afterwards, having produced some nails to barter for provisions, we obtained near twenty cocoa-nuts, and some bread-fruit for one of the smallest size, so that we soon had plenty of these articles, though no hogs. In this excursion Mr. Green imagined he had discovered a tree six yards in circumference; but, on his return, he was informed by our two gentlemen, that it was a species of the fig, whose branches bending down to the earth take fresh root, and thus form a mass of trunks, which being all united by a common vegetation, might easily be mistaken for one trunk or body.

On the 9th in the forenoon, Oberea paid us a visit accompanied by her favourite Obadee, presenting with a hog and some bread-fruit. This was the first visit we had received from this lady, since the loss

our quadrant, and that this time our forge was ordered a new subject by Capt. Cook an additional obligations on them, to spare hours, to contribute to have produced different kinds of tools, upon as would have been requested to have done gratified in this particular broken axe, desiring it was mended, and to be returned home. On their return home a case which had lain on the 10th we saw few seeds of melons and came up except melon seeds were spoiled by

An extraordinary Visit—**TAMAIDE** found an extraordinary Amusement making to observe the Description of an Indian Cookery—A Burying Expedition—A Burial—Preparations made Departure of the EN

On the 12th of the ceremony was performed. As Mr. Banks was with them as usual, for advanced in procession Indians on each side of the visitors to pass, who presented him with some kinds of plants. Tupia, in his master of the ceremonies, which were had them down in bundles of cloth were pieces, which being divided the women, called Oora principal, stepping upon Obadaha as high as her manifested simplicity, to ceremony she requested, the other two were then presented. He had him; but he could not make them the ceremony. In the morning were visited by Obadaha female attendant, and whom we were told it had been reported.

On the 13th Tubourai was finishing his gun on the air, an action which he was as he imagined to be. And as the ignorant natives were afraid to see him to fear his great serious matter of what only as a joke, and, not understand, that for him to insult. The offence immediately, with his familiarity being approached, he determined to follow him from the fort, and he found him in the mid

our quadrant, and the confinement of Tootahah. By this time our forge was set up and at work, which afforded a new subject of admiration to the Indians, and our Capt. Cook an additional opportunity of conferring obligations on them, by permitting the smith, in his leisure hours, to convert the old iron, which they were supposed to have procured from the Dolphin, into different kinds of tools. Oberca produced as much old iron as would have made for her another axe; this she requested to have done; however the lady could not be gratified in this particular, upon which she brought a broken axe, desiring it might be mended. The axe was mended, and to all appearance she was content. On their return home, the Indians took with them the canoe which had lain some time at the point.

On the 10th we sowed, in ground properly prepared, seeds of melons and other plants, but none of them came up except mustard. Mr. Banks thought the seeds were spoiled by a total exclusion of fresh air, they

having all been put into small bottles, and sealed up with rosin. We learnt this day, that the Indians called the island Otaheite, the name by which we have distinguished it; but we were not so fortunate in our endeavours to teach them our names; and, after repeated attempts to pronounce them, which proved fruitless, they had recourse to new ones, the productions of their own invention. Capt. Cook they named Tootie; Mr. Hicks, Hete. The master they called Boba, from his christian name Robert; Mr. Gore, Toarro; Dr. Solander, Torano; Mr. Banks, Tapane; Mr. Green, Eterce; Mr. Parkinson, Patani; Mr. Sporing, Polini; and so on for the greatest part of the ship's crew. These perhaps were significant words in their own language; and we are inclined to this opinion, because Mr. Monkhouse, who commanded the party that shot the man for stealing a musket, they named Matte, which was not merely an arbitrary sound, but in their language it signified dead.

C H A P. IV.

An extraordinary Visit—Divine Service attended by the natives of OTAHEITE—An uncommon Sight—TUBOURAI TAMAIDE found guilty of Theft—A VISIT paid to TOOTAHAIH—Various Adventures at that Time, and an extraordinary Amusement of the INDIANS—A Relation of what happened at the Fort, while Preparations were making to observe the TRANSIT of VENUS—The Observations made with great Success—A particular Account and Description of an Indian Funeral—An unusual Character among the INDIANS—A Robbery at the Fort—Specimen of Indian Cookery—A Narrative of various Incidents—A Circumnavigation of the Island, and Occurrences during this Expedition—A Burying-place, and a Morai or Place of Worship described—An Inland Expedition of Mr. BANKS—Preparations made by the Crew of the ENDEAVOUR to leave the Island of OTAHEITE—An Account of the Departure of the ENDEAVOUR, and the Behaviour of the Natives, particularly of TUPIA, on this Occasion.

On the 12th of this month (May) an uncommon ceremony was performed by some of the natives.

As Mr. Banks was sitting in his boat, trading with them as usual, some ladies, who were strangers, advanced in procession towards him. The rest of the Indians on each side gave way and formed a lane for the visitors to pass, who coming up to Mr. Banks, presented him with some parrots feathers, and various kinds of plants. Tupia, who Rood by Mr. Banks, acted as his master of the ceremonies, and receiving the branches, which were brought at six different times, laid them down in the boat. After this some large bundles of cloth were brought, consisting of nine pieces, which being divided into three parcels, one of the women, called Oorattooa, who appeared to be the principal, stepping upon one of them, pulled up her cloaths as high as her waist, and then, with an air of unaffected simplicity, turned round three times. This ceremony she repeated, with similar circumstances, on the other two parcels of cloth; and the whole being then presented to Mr. Banks, the ladies went and fastened him; but for which extraordinary favours, she made them fix a present as he thought would best please them. In the evening the gentlemen of the ship were visited by Oberca, and Otheorea, her favourite female attendant, who was a very agreeable girl, and whom we were the more pleased to see, because it had been reported that she was either sick or dead.

On the 13th Tubourai Tamaide offended Mr. Banks by snatching his gun out of his hand, and firing it in the air; an action which also much surprised that gentleman, as he imagined him totally ignorant of the use of it. And as the ignorance of the people of those countries in regard to this particular, must always cause them to fear their guests, Mr. Banks therefore made a serious matter of what, probably, the other meant only as a joke, and, not without threats, gave him to understand, that for him but to touch the piece was a high insult. The offender made no reply, but set out immediately, with his family, for Eparre. Great inconvenience being apprehended from this man, and as in many instances he had been particularly useful, Mr. Banks determined to follow him. He set out the same evening from the fort, accompanied by Mr. Molineux, and found him in the middle of a large circle of people,

the picture of extreme grief, which was also visible in the countenances of his attendants. One of the women expressed her trouble in the same manner as Terapo had done, upon another occasion. Mr. Banks lost no time in endeavouring to put an end to all animosity. The chief was soothed into confidence, and, a double canoe being got ready, they all returned together to the fort before supper: and as a pledge of sincere reconciliation, both he and his wife passed the night in the tent of Mr. Banks. That very night, notwithstanding their presence, one of the natives attempted to scale the barricadoes of the fort; but, being discovered by one of our sentinels, he ran away much faster than any of our people could follow him. The temptation which caused him to attempt what might have cost him his life was, doubtless, the iron and iron tools which were in use at the armourer's forge; incitements to theft which none of the Indians could resist.

On Sunday the 14th, in the morning divine service was performed at the fort. We hoped to have had the presence of some of the Indians, but before the time fixed on for beginning the service, most of them were gone home. Tubourai Tamaide and his wife were present, but though they behaved with much decency, they made no enquiries with respect to the ceremonies, and their brethren were as little inquisitive upon their return. The day thus begun with acts of devotion, was concluded with those of lewdness exhibited among the natives by way of entertainment. Among the rest a young fellow lay publicly with a girl about twelve years of age, in the presence of many of our people, and a great number of the Indians, without the least sense of impropriety or indecency. Oberca, and some women of the first rank in the country were spectators, who even gave instructions to the girl how to perform her part, which, young as she was, seemed unnecessary.

On Monday the 15th, Tubourai Tamaide was detected in having committed a theft. Mr. Banks had a good opinion of this chief, but, when his honesty was put to the test, a basket of nails, left in the corner of the tent, proved irresistible. He confessed the fact of having stolen four nails, but when restitution was demanded, Tamaide said the nails were at Eparre. High words passed on the occasion, and, in the end, the Indian produced one of the nails, and was to be forgiven on restoring the rest; but his virtue was not equal

to the talk, and he withdrew himself, as usual, when he had committed any offence. At this time our long-boat was so much eaten with worms, that it was found necessary to give her a new bottom. On examining the pinnace, thinking she might be in the same state, we had the satisfaction to perceive, that not a worm had touched her. This difference in the condition of the two boats we attributed to the different ingredients with which their bottoms were paid; the long-boat had been paid with varnish of pine, and the pinnace painted with white lead and oil; which last coating we think to be the most eligible for the bottoms of all boats intended for this part of the world.

On the 24th, Mr. Hicks was sent to Tootahah, who had removed from Eparre to a place called Tettahah. The chief having sent several times to request a visit from the captain, promising at the same time, that he would acknowledge the favour by a present of some hogs, the business of Mr. Hicks was, to obtain, if possible, the hogs, upon easier terms than the required visit. He was received in a friendly manner by Tootahah, who, upon his arrival, produced one hog only but promised three more that were at a distance the next morning. Mr. Hicks waited patiently till the appointed time; but when the morning came, he was obliged to depart with the single hog that had been presented to him.

On the 25th, Mr. Banks seeing Tubourai Tamaide and his wife Tomio at the tent for the first time since the former had been detected in stealing the nails, he endeavoured to persuade him to restore them, but in vain. As our gentlemen treated him with reserve and coolness which he could not but perceive, he was short, and he departed in a very abrupt manner. Mr. Banks could not the next morning persuade him to effect a reconciliation by bringing down the nails.

On the 27th, Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, Captain Cook, and some others, set out in the pinnace to visit Tootahah, who had again removed to a place called Atahourou, six miles from his last abode; and not being able to go half way thither in a boat, it was almost evening before we arrived. We found the chief, as usual, sitting under a tree with a great crowd about him. Having made our presents in due form, consisting of a yellow stuff petticoat, and other trifling articles, we were invited to supper, and to pass the night there. Our party consisted of six only; but the place was crowded with a greater number than the houses and canoes could contain. Among other guests were Oberea with her train of attendants. Mr. Banks having accepted of a lodging in Oberea's canoe, left his companions in order to retire to rest. Oberea had the charge of his cloaths; but notwithstanding her care, they were stolen, as were also his pistols, his powder-horn, and several other things out of his waistcoat pockets. An alarm was given to Tootahah, in the next canoe, who went with Oberea in search of the thief, leaving Mr. Banks with only his breeches and waistcoat on, and his musket uncharged. They soon returned, but without success. Mr. Banks thought proper to put up with the loss at present, and retired a second time to rest; just as he had composed himself to sleep, he was roused by some music, and observed lights at a little distance from the shore. He then rose to go and find his companions. As soon as he approached the lights, he found the hut where Captain Cook and three others of the gentlemen lay, when he began to relate his misadventure to them; they told him in return, that they had lost their stockings and jackets. In effect Dr. Solander, who joined them the next morning, was the only one that escaped being robbed, and he had slept at a house that was a mile distant. This accident, however, did not prevent Captain Cook, Mr. Banks, and the rest that were at the hut, from attending to the music which was a sort of concert called Heiva, and consisted of drums, flutes, and several voices. They retired again to their repose, after this entertainment was over.

Their cloaths, and the other things which had been stolen, were never heard of afterwards, but Mr. Banks

got some cloaths from Oberea, in which he made a whimsical appearance.

On the 28th, we set out for the boat, having obtained only one hog which had been intended for our supper the preceding night; so that, all things considered, we had little reason to be satisfied with our excursion. On our return to the boat, we had a specimen of the agility of the Indian swimmers, some of whom, merely for diversion, swam in a surf where no European boat could have lived, and where our best swimmers must have perished, had they accidentally fallen in with it.

At this time the preparations were made for viewing the transit of Venus, and two parties were sent out to make observations from different spots, that in case of failing on one place, they might succeed in another. They employed themselves for some time in preparing their instruments, and instructing those gentlemen who were to go out, in the use of them; and on Thursday, the first of June, they sent the long-boat with Mr. Gore, Mr. Monkhouse (the two observers) and Mr. Sporing, the latter of whom was a friend of Mr. Banks, with proper instruments to Emayo. Others were sent to find out a spot that might answer the purpose, at a convenient distance from their principal station.

The party that went towards Emayo, after rowing the greater part of the night, having hailed a canoe were informed of a place by the Indians on board which was judged proper for their observatory, where they accordingly fixed their tents. It was a rock that rose out of the water about 140 yards from the shore.

Saturday the 3d (the day of the transit) Mr. Banks as soon as it was light, left them, in order to go and get fresh provisions on the island. This gentleman had the satisfaction to see the sun rise without a cloud. The king, whose name was Tarrao, came to pay him a visit, as he was trading with the natives, and brought with him Nuna his sister. As it was customary for the people in these parts to be seated at their conferences, Mr. Banks spread his turban of Indian cloth which he wore as a hat, upon the ground, on which they all sat down. Then a hog and a dog, some coconuts, and bread-fruit were brought, being the king's present; and Mr. Banks sent for an adze, a shirt, and some beads, which were presented to his majesty, who received them with apparent satisfaction. Tubourai Tamaide, and Tomio, who had gone with Mr. Banks came from the observatory, when Tomio, who was said to be related to Tarrao, gave him a long nail, and left a shirt as a present to Nuna. Afterwards the king, his sister, and three beautiful young women their attendants, returned with Mr. Banks to the observatory where he shewed them the transit of Venus, when the planet was upon the sun, and acquainted them, that he view it in that situation was the cause of his undertaking a voyage to those remoter parts. According to this gentleman's account, the produce of this island is nearly the same with that of Otaheite; the people also resembled those of that island: he had seen many of them upon it who were acquainted with the nature of trading articles. The parties that were sent out to make their observations on the transit, had good success in the undertaking; though they differed rather more than might have been expected in their account of the contact.

Mr. GREEN's account was as follows:

	Hours.	Min.	Sec.
The first external contact	9	25	4
The first internal contact, or total emersion	9	44	4
The second internal contact, or beginning of the emersion	3	14	8
The second external contact, or total emersion	3	38	12

Latitude of the ob-
served south—longitud
from Greenwich

While the gentle
viewing the transit,
broke into the store-
a quantity of spike-
was found out; he
in his possession; b
dozen of lathes, by

On the 4th, the t
transit were absent
keeping his Majesty
28th, when we celebra
chiefs partook of our
his Majesty's health
nearest imitation they
About this time an e
dying, gave the Engl
the ceremonies used t
the dead bodies of th
observed, they do not
already seen the descr
the bread-fruit, &c
Tamaide's account, wa
la the front of the fo
placed, where the relat
taken of their grief.
some pieces of cloth, w
of the mourners, who
a shark's tooth upon th
houses were erected: a
which remained some t
the chief mourner resid
in a particular manner
ceremony. When the d
land near the spot, at
answer the purposes of
Cape. Wallis could not
worship among them.
arr about to speak of, th
last of it, which may n
sious reader. It was per
Banks was so desirous of
make a part in it, when
not be a spectator on an
accordingly in the eveni
was deposited, where he
deceased, and was afterw
prisons. Tubourai Tama
whole dress was whimsi
graceful. Mr. Banks was
dressed, and had no other c
cloth, that was tied rou
blackened over with charc
of several others, and
who were no more covere
then began, and the
words, which were judg
approached the body, and
came up to his own h
by permission, toward
of the Indians to slun
table; they accordingly
as soon as this can
the mourners proceede
then entered the we
which became immediatel
rest of the procession,
got an Indian was vi
that they called Ni
in the same chara
the natives were to be see
summer, saying Imatta
the ceremony bathed in
dress. Such was
which Mr. Banks perfor
received applause from Tu
summer. What can have

Latitude of the observatory 17 deg. 29 min. 15 sec. South—longitude, 149 deg. 32 min. 30 sec. west from Greenwich.

While the gentlemen and officers were busied in viewing the transit, some of the ship's company having broke into the store-room, took the liberty of stealing a quantity of spike-nails. After a strict search the thief was found out; he had, however, but few of the nails in his possession; but he was ordered to receive two dozen of lathes, by way of example.

On the 4th, the two parties went out to observe the transit were absent; on which account we deferred keeping his Majesty's birth-day to the next day, the 5th, when we celebrated the same, several of the Indian chiefs partook of our entertainment, and in turn drank his Majesty's health, by the name of Kihiaro, the nearest imitation they could produce of King George.

About this time an old female of some distinction arriving, gave the English an opportunity of observing the ceremonies used by these islanders in disposing of the dead bodies of their people; which, as we have observed, they do not directly bury. The reader has already seen the description of the bier, the placing the bread-fruit, &c. which, according to Tubourai Tamaide's account, was a kind of offering to their gods.

In the front of the square space, a sort of stile was placed, where the relations of the deceased stood to give token of their grief. There were under the awning some pieces of cloth, whereon were the tears and blood of the mourners, who used to wound themselves with a shark's tooth upon these occasions. Four temporary houses were erected at a small distance, in one of which remained some of the relations of the deceased; the chief mourner resided in another, and was dressed in a particular manner, in order to perform a certain ceremony. When the corpse is rotten, the bones are buried near the spot, and these places were found to answer the purposes of religious worship, though Capt. Wallis could not perceive the traces of any such worship among them.

Concerning the ceremony we are about to speak of, the following is the account we have of it, which may not be unentertaining to the curious reader. It was performed on the 10th, and Mr. Banks was so desirous of being present, that he agreed to take a part in it, when he was informed that he could not be a spectator on any other condition. He went accordingly in the evening to the place where the body was deposited, where he was met by the relations of the deceased, and was afterwards joined by several other persons. Tubourai Tamaide was the principal mourner, whose dress was whimsical, though not altogether unbecomely. Mr. Banks was obliged to quit his European dress, and had no other covering than a small piece of cloth, that was tied round his middle; his body was blacked over with charcoal and water, as were the bodies of several others, and among them some females, who were no more covered than himself. The procession then began, and the chief mourner uttered some words, which were judged to be a prayer, when he approached the body, and he repeated these words as he came up to his own house. They afterwards went, by permission, towards the fort. It is usual for the Indians to shun these processions as much as possible; they accordingly ran into the woods in great haste, as soon as this came in view. From the fort the mourners proceeded along the shore, crossed the river, then entered the woods, passing several houses, which became immediately uninhabited; and during the progress of the procession, which continued for half an hour, not an Indian was visible. Mr. Banks filled a pipe that they called Nineveh, and there were two others in the same character. When none of the natives were to be seen, they approached the chief mourner, saying Imatata; then those who had assisted in the ceremony bathed in the river, and resumed their former dress. Such was this uncommon ceremony, which Mr. Banks performed a principal part; and received applause from Tubourai Tamaide, the chief mourner. What can have introduced among these

Indians so strange a custom, as that of exposing their dead above ground, till the flesh is consumed by putrefaction, and then burying the bones, it is perhaps impossible to guess; nor is it less difficult to determine, why the repositories of their dead should be also places of worship.

On the 12th, the Indians having lost some of their bows and arrows, and strings of plaited hair, a complaint was made to the Captain. The affair was enquired into, and the fact being well attested, the offenders received each two dozen of lathes. The same day Tubourai Tamaide brought his bow and arrows, in order to decide a challenge of shooting between him and Mr. Gore; but it appeared they had mistaken each other, Mr. Gore intending to discharge his arrow at a mark, while the Indian meant only to try who could shoot farthest. The challenge was dropped, in consequence of the mistake being discovered; but Tubourai Tamaide, in order to display his skill, kneeling down, shot an arrow, unfeathered, (as they all are) near the sixth part of a mile, dropping the bow the instant the arrow was discharged. Mr. Banks having this morning met several of the natives, and being informed that a musical entertainment was expected in the evening, he and the rest of the English gentlemen resolved to be present at the same. They went accordingly, and heard a performance on drums and flutes by a kind of itinerant musicians. The drummers sung to the music, and the English were much surprized when they found that they were the subject of their lays. The songs they therefore concluded to be extemporary effusions, the rewards whereof were such necessaries as they required.

On the 14th, in the night, an iron coal rake for the oven was stole; and many other things having at different times been conveyed away, Captain Cook judged it of some consequence to put an end, if possible, to such practices, by making it their common interest to prevent it. He had already given strict orders, that the sentinels should not fire upon the Indians, even if they were detected in the fact; but many repeated depredations determined him to make reprisals. About twenty-seven of their double canoes with sails were just arrived, containing cargoes of fish; these the Captain seized, and then gave notice, that unless the rake, and all the other things that had been stolen, were returned, the vessels should be burnt. The menace produced no other effect than the restitution of the rake, all the other things remaining in their possession. The Captain, however, thought fit to give up the cargoes, as the innocent natives were in great distress for want of them; and in order to prevent the confusion arising from disputes concerning the property of the different lots of goods which they had on board. About this time another incident had nearly, notwithstanding all our caution, embroiled us with the Indians. The Captain having sent a boat on shore to get ballast, the officer not meeting immediately with what he wanted, began to pull down one of the sepulchral mansions of the dead; which sacrilegious act of violence was immediately opposed by the enraged islanders. Intelligence of this dispute being received by Mr. Banks, he went to the place, and a reconciliation was soon effected, which put an end to the dispute, by sending the boat's crew to the river-side, where a sufficient quantity of stones were to be had without a possibility of giving offence. This was the only instance in which they offered to oppose us; and (except the affair of the fort, which has been related) the only insult offered to an individual was, when Mr. Monkhouse, the surgeon, took a flower from a tree which grew in one of their sepulchral inclosures. Upon this occasion, an Indian came suddenly behind him, and struck him; Mr. Monkhouse laid hold of the assailant, but two of his countrymen rescued him, and then they all ran off as fast as they could.

On the 19th, in the evening, while the canoes were still detained, Oberea, and several of her attendants, paid us a visit. She came from Tootahab's palace in a double canoe, and brought with her a hog, bread-fruit,

fruit, and other presents, among which was a dog; but not a single article of the things that had been stolen; she said, had been taken away by her favourite Obadee, whom she had beaten and dismissed. She seemed, however, conscious that her story did not deserve credit, and appeared at first much terrified; though the surmounted her fears with great fortitude, and was desirous of sleeping with her attendants in Mr. Banks's tent; but this being refused, she was obliged to pass the night in her canoe. A whole tribe of Indians would have slept in the ball tent, but were not permitted. The next morning Obeera returned, putting herself wholly in our power, when we accepted of her presents, which she doubtless thought, and justly too, the most effectual means to bring about a reconciliation. Two of her attendants were very assiduous in getting themselves husbands, in which they succeeded, by means of the surgeon and one of the lieutenants: they seemed very agreeable till bed-time, and determined to lie in Mr. Banks's tent, which they accordingly did, till the surgeon having some words with one of them, Mr. Banks thrust her out, and she was followed by the rest, except Otea-Tea, who cried some time, and then he turned her out also. This had like to have become a serious affair, a duel being talked of between Mr. Banks and Mr. Monkhouse, but it was happily avoided. We had been informed, that in this island dogs were esteemed more delicate food than pork, as those bred by the natives to be eaten fed entirely upon vegetables. The experiment was tried. Tupia undertook to kill and dress the dog, which he did, by making a hole in the ground, and baking it. We all agreed it was a very good dish.

On the 21st we were visited by many of the natives, who brought with them various presents. Among the rest was a chief, named Oamo, whom we had not yet seen. He had a boy and a young woman with him. The former was carried on a man's back, which we considered as a piece of state, for he was well able to walk. Obeera and some of the Indians went from the fort to meet them, being bare-headed, and uncovered as low as the waist; circumstances we had noticed before, and judged them marks of respect which was usually shewn to persons of high rank. When Oamo entered the tent, the young woman, though seemingly very curious, could not be prevailed upon to accompany him. The youth was introduced by Dr. Solander; but as soon as the Indians within saw him, they took care to have him very soon sent out. Our curiosity being raised by these circumstances, we made enquiry concerning the strangers, and were informed that Oamo was the husband of Obeera, but that, by mutual consent they had been for a considerable time separated, and the boy and girl were their children. The former was called Terridiri; he was heir apparent to the sovereignty of the islands, and when he had attained the proper age, was to marry his sister. The present sovereign, Outou, was a minor, and the son of a prince, called Whappai. Whappai, Oamo, and Tootahah, were all brothers; Whappai was the eldest, and Oamo the second; wherefore, Whappai having no child but Outou, Terridiri was heir to the sovereignty. To us it appeared singular, that a boy should reign during the life of his father; but in the island of Otaheite a boy succeeds to his father's authority and title as soon as he is born; but a regent being necessary, that office, though elective, generally falls upon the father, who holds the reins of government till the child is of age. The reason that the election had fallen upon Tootahah, was on account of his warlike exploits among his brethren. Oamo was very inquisitive, asking a number of questions concerning the English, by which he appeared to be a man of understanding and penetration. At this time, a woman, named Teete, who came from the west of the island, presented to the captain an elegant garment. The ground was a bright yellow, it was bordered with red, and there were several crosses in the middle of it, which they had probably learned from the French.

On the 23d, in the morning, one of our hands being

missing, we enquired for him among the natives, and were told he was at Eparre, Tootahah's residence in the wood, and one of the Indians offered to fetch him back; which he did that evening. On his return he informed us, that he had been taken from the fort, and carried to the top of the bay by three men, who forced him into a canoe, after having stripped him, and conducted him to Eparre, where he received some cloaths from Tootahah, who endeavoured to prevail on him to continue there. We had reason to conclude this account true; for the natives were no sooner acquainted with his return, than they left the fort with precipitation.

On June the 26th, early in the morning, Captain Cook setting out in the pinnace with Mr. Banks, failed to the eastward with a design of circumnavigating the island. They went on shore in the forenoon, in a district in the government of Ahio, a young chief, who at the tents had frequently been their visitant. And here also they saw several other natives whom they knew. Afterwards they proceeded to the harbour where M. Bougainville's vessel lay, when he came to Otaheite, and were shewn the watering place, and the spot where he pitched his tent.

Coming to a large bay, when the English gentlemen mentioned their design of going to the other side, their Indian guide, whose name was Titubaola, said he would not accompany them, and also endeavoured to dissuade the captain and his people from going; observing, "that country was inhabited by people who were not subject to Tootahah, and who would destroy them all." Notwithstanding, they resolved to put their design into execution, loading their pieces with ball, and the last Titubaola ventured to go with them. Having rowed till it was dark, they reached a narrow isthmus which severed the island in two parts, and there formed distinct governments. However, as they had not yet got into the hostile part of the country, it was thought proper to go on shore to spend the night where Oorotova, the lady who had paid her compliments in so extraordinary a manner at the fort, provided them with a supper, and they proceeded for the other government in the morning. They afterwards landed in the district of a chief called Maraitata, and his father was called Pahairede. The former of these names signifies the burying place of men, and the other the stealer of boats. These people gave the captain a very good reception, sold them a hog for a hatchet, and furnished them with provisions. A crowd of the natives came round the English gentlemen, amongst whom however they met only two with whom they were acquainted; but they saw several European commodities, yet they perceived none that came out of the Endeavour. Here they saw two twelve pound shot, one of which had the king's broad arrow upon it, yet the natives said they had them from M. Bougainville. They afterwards advanced till they reached that district which was under the government of Waheatau, who had a son: it was not known in whose hands the sovereign power was deposited. There they found a spacious plain with a river, which they were obliged to pass over in a canoe, though the Indians that followed them swam over without any difficulty. They proceeded on their journey for a considerable way along the shore till at last they were met by the chief, who had with him an agreeable woman, of about 22 years of age who was called Toudiddle. Her name was not unknown to the English, who had often heard of it, and she was supposed to bear the same rank here as Obeera bore in the other part of the island. The path through which they now passed appeared to be better cultivated than any of the rest, and the burial places were more in number: they were neat, and ornamented with carvings; and in one a cock was seen, which was painted with the various colours of the bird. Though the country was apparently fertile, very little bread fruit was to be found here, a nut called Ahee furnishing the principal subsistence of the inhabitants.

Being fatigued with their journey, they went on board their boat, and landed in the evening on an island which was called Otooareite, to seek for refreshment. Mr.

Banks going into the
was dark could disc
found some of the nu
bread-fruit. There w
part of this island,
appeared to be extren
three miles distance,
whom they well knew
that they obtained a
parted. When they
ward, they landed ag
Mthiabo, the chief.
acquainted. He sup
nuts, and they p
bottle, which he ch
articles presented bef
to be seen here,
the natives, and were l
by Capt. Wallis's peo
near the same place fe
kenned fresh, and had
were fastened to a boar
they could not get any
extraordinary appear
When they left the
over the shoals. In th
to the north-west side
so that on the south-east
get it at the isthmus.
and some beautiful we
should be glad to see th
ception the invitation.
reception from the chi
who gave directions to f
in dressing their provis
fish, and they supped at
with Mthiabo. Part
them to sleep in, and fo
well. Mthiabo having b
under the notion of uti
down, made off with it
by that gentleman or his
of the robbery being pr
of the natives, they set o
had proceeded only a ver
near by a person bringi
chief had given up rather
principle of honesty. Or
house entirely deserted;
ing, the sentinel gave t
nothing. Captain Cook
mentioned at this accoun
law, though it was a clea
was to be seen. Their sit
agreeable. The party co
coming with them only o
noble, without a spare
after having remained so
coming from these circum
the Indians might take
had been driven away by
Banks and his companion
them they departed. Th
north side of Tiarrabou,
island, about five mile
harbour equal to any in
small populous, and the i
ward with great civility
The last district in Tia
was governed by a ch
building a house, a
hatchet, but the p
could not trade for na
had, however, following
They were afterwar
had failed about a le
men. Their request wa
tain met with some of C
them a very large hog
the hog for an axe

Banks going into the woods for this purpose, when it was dark could discover only one house, wherein he found some of the nuts before mentioned, and a little bread-fruit. There was a good harbour in the southern part of this island, and the surrounding country appeared to be extremely fruitful. Landing at about three miles distance, they found some of the natives, whom they well knew, yet it was not without difficulty that they obtained a few cocoa-nuts before they departed. When they came a little farther to the eastward, they landed again, and here they were met by Mathiabo, the chief, with whom they were not at all acquainted. He supplied them with bread-fruit and cocoa-nuts, and they purchased a hog of him for a glass bottle, which he chose in preference to all the other articles presented before him. A turkey-cock and a pig were seen here, which were much admired by the natives, and were supposed to have been left there by Capt. Wallis's people. They observed in a house near the same place several human jaw-bones, which seemed trellis, and had not lost any of the teeth, and were fastened to a board of a semicircular figure; but they could not get any information of the cause of this extraordinary appearance.

When they left the place, the chief piloted them over the shoals. In the evening they opened the bay on the north-west side of the island, which answered to that on the south-east in such a manner as to interlock it at the isthmus. Several canoes came off here, and some beautiful women giving tokens that they should be glad to see them on shore, they readily accepted the invitation. They met with a very friendly reception from the chief, whose name was Wiverou, who gave directions to some of his people to assist them in dressing their provisions, which were now very plentiful, and they supped at Wiverou's house in company with Mathiabo. Part of the house was allotted for them to sleep in, and soon after supper they retired to rest. Mathiabo having borrowed a cloak of Mr. Banks, under the notion of using it as a coverlet when he lay down, made off with it without being perceived either by that gentleman or his companions: however, news of the robbery being presently brought them by one of the natives, they set out in pursuit of Mathiabo, but had proceeded only a very little way before they were met by a person bringing back the cloak, which this thief had given up rather through fear than from any principle of honesty. On their return, they found the house entirely deserted; and, about four in the morning, the centinel gave the alarm that the boat was missing. Captain Cook and Mr. Banks were greatly astonished at this account, and ran to the water-side; but, though it was a clear star-light morning, no boat was to be seen. Their situation was now extremely disagreeable. The party consisted of no more than four, having with them only one musquet and two pocket pistols, without a spare ball or a charge of powder. After having remained some time in a state of anxiety, arising from these circumstances, of which they feared the Indians might take advantage, the boat, which had been driven away by the tide, returned; and Mr. Banks and his companions had no sooner breakfasted than they departed. This place is situated on the north side of Tiarrabou, the south-east peninsula of the island, about five miles east from the isthmus, with a harbour equal to any in those parts. It was fertile and populous, and the inhabitants every where benevolently disposed with great civility.

The last district in Tiarrabou, in which they landed, was governed by a chief named Omoe. He was building a house, and was very earnest to purchase a hatchet, but the gentlemen had not one left. He would not trade for nails, and they embarked, the chief, however, following them in his canoe with his family. They were afterwards taken on board, but when they had sailed about a league, desired to be put on shore. Their request was complied with; when the captain met with some of Omoe's people, who brought them a very large hog. The chief agreed to exchange the hog for an axe and a nail, and to bring the

beast to the fort. As the hog was a very fine one, Mr. Banks accepted the offer. They saw at this place one of the Indian Etoas, a sort of image, made of wicker-work, which resembled a man in figure; it was near seven feet in height, and was covered with black and white feathers; on the head were four protuberances, called by the natives Tara etc, that is, little men. Having taken their leave of Omoe, the gentlemen set out on their return. They went on shore again after they had rowed a few miles, but saw nothing, except a sepulchral building, which was ornamented in an extraordinary manner. The pavement, on which was erected a pyramid, was very neat; at a small distance there was a stone image, very uncouthly carved, but which the natives seemed to hold in high estimation. They passed through the harbour, which was the only one fit for shipping, on the south of Oporoucou, situate about five miles to the westward of the isthmus, between two small islands, not far from the shore, and within a mile of each other. They were now near the district called Paparra, which was that where Oamo and Oberca governed, and where the travellers intended to spend the night. But when Mr. Banks and his company landed, about an hour before it was dark, it appeared they were both set out to pay them a visit at the fort. However, they slept at Oberca's house, which was neat, though not large, and of which there was no inhabitant but her father, who shewed them much civility.

They took this opportunity of walking out upon a point, upon which they had observed at a distance some trees called Etoa, which usually grow upon the burial places of these islanders. They call those burying grounds Morai. And here Mr. Banks saw a vast building, which he found to be the Morai of Oamo and Oberca, which was the most considerable piece of architecture in the island. It consisted of an enormous pile of stone work, raised in the form of a pyramid, with a slight of steps on each side. It was near 270 feet long, about one third as wide, and between 40 and 50 feet high. The foundation consisted of rock stones; the steps were of coral, and the upper part was of round pebbles, all of the same shape and size. The rock and coral stones were squared with the utmost neatness and regularity, and the whole building appeared as compact and firm as if it had been erected by the best workmen in Europe. What rendered this last circumstance the more extraordinary was the consideration, that when this pile was raised, the Indians must have been totally destitute of iron tools either to shape their stones or for any other necessary purpose, nor had they mortar to cement them when made fit for use; so that a structure of such height and magnitude must have been a work of infinite labour and fatigue. In the centre of the summit was the representation of a bird carved in wood; close to this was the figure of a fish in stone. The pyramid constituted part of one side of a court or square, the sides of which were nearly equal; and the whole was walled in, and paved with flat stones; notwithstanding which pavement several plants, and trees which the natives call Etoa, grew within the inclosure. At a small distance to the westward of this edifice was another paved square, that contained several small stages, called Ewattas by the natives; which appeared to be altars, whereon they placed the offerings to their gods. Mr. Banks afterwards observed whole hogs placed upon these stages or altars.

On Friday the 30th they arrived at Otahorou, where they found their old acquaintance Tootahah, who received them with great civility, and provided them a good supper and convenient lodging; and though they had been so shamefully plundered the last time they slept with this chief, they spent the night in the greatest security, none of their cloaths nor any other article being missing the next morning. They returned to the fort at Port Royal harbour on the 1st of July, having discovered the island, including both peninsulas, to be about 100 miles in circumference.

After their return from this tour, they were very much in want of bread-fruit, none of which they had

been able to provide themselves with, as they had seen but little in the course of their journey; but their Indian friends coming round them, soon supplied their want of provisions.

On the 3d, Mr. Banks made an excursion, in order to trace the river up the valley to its source, and to remark how far the country was inhabited along the banks of it. He took some Indian guides with him, and after having seen houses for about six miles, they came to one which was said to be the last that could be met with. The master presented them with coconuts and other fruits, and they proceeded on their walk, after a short stay. They often passed through vaults formed by rocky fragments in the course of their journey, in which, as they were told, benighted travellers sometimes took shelter. Pursuing the course of the river about six miles farther, they found it banked on both sides by rocks almost 100 feet in height, and nearly perpendicular; a way, however, might be traced up these precipices, along which their Indian guides would have conducted them, but they declined the offer, as there did not appear to be any thing at the summit which could repay them for the toil and dangers of ascending it. Mr. Banks sought in vain for minerals among the rocks, which were naked almost on all sides, but no mineral substances were found. The stones every where exhibited signs of having been burnt, which was the case of all the stones that were found while they staid at Otaheite, and both there and in the neighbouring islands the traces of fire were evident in the clay upon the hills. On the 4th, a great quantity of the seeds of water-melons, oranges, limes and other plants, brought from Rio de Janeiro, were planted on each side of the fort, by Mr. Banks, who also plentifully supplied the Indians with them, and planted many of them in the woods. Some melons, the seeds of which had been sown on the first arrival of the English at the island, grew up and flourished before they left it.

By this time they began to think of making preparations to depart; but Oamo, Obeera, and their son and daughter visited them before they were ready to sail. As to the young woman, (whose name was Toimata) she was curious to see the fort, but Oamo would not permit her to enter. The son of Wahatua, chief of the S. E. peninsula, was also here at the same time; and they were favoured with the company of the Indian who had been so dextrous as to steal the quadrant, as above related. The carpenters being ordered to take down the gates and palisadoes of the fort, to be converted into fire-wood for the Endeavour, one of the natives stole the staple and hook of the gate; he was pursued in vain, but the property was afterwards recovered, and returned to the owners by Tubourai Tamaide.

Before their departure, two circumstances happened which gave Capt. Cook some uneasiness. The first was, that two foreign sailors having been aboard, one of them was robbed of his knife, which as he was endeavouring to recover, he was dangerously hurt with a stone by the natives, and his companion also received a slight wound in the head. The offenders escaped, and the captain was not anxious to have them taken, as he did not want to have any disputes with the Indians.

Between the 8th and 9th, two young marines one night withdrew themselves from the fort, and in the morning were not to be met with. Notice having been given the next day that the ship would sail that or the ensuing day; as they did not return, Capt. Cook began to be apprehensive that they designed to remain on shore; but as he was apprised in such a case no effectual means could be taken to recover them without running a risque of destroying the harmony subsisting between the English and the natives, he resolved to wait a day, in hopes of their returning of their own accord. But as they were still missing on the tenth in the morning, an inquiry was made after them, when the Indians declared, that they did not propose to return, having taken refuge among the mountains, where it was im-

possible for them to be discovered; and added, that each of them had taken a wife. In consequence of this, it was intimated to several of the chiefs that were in the fort with the women, among whom were Tubourai Tamaide, Tomio, and Obeera, that they would not be suffered to quit it till the deserters were produced. They did not shew any signs of fear or discontent, but assured the captain that the marines should be sent back. In the mean time Mr. Hicks was dispatched in the pinnace to bring Tootahah on board the ship, and he executed his commission without giving any alarm. Night coming on, Capt. Cook thought it not prudent to let the people, whom he had detained as hostages, remain at the fort; he therefore gave orders to remove them on board, which greatly alarmed them all, especially the females, who testified the most gloomy apprehensions by floods of tears. Capt. Cook escorted Obeera and others to the ship; but Mr. Banks remained on shore with some Indians, whom he thought it of less importance to detain. In the evening one of the marines was brought back by some of the natives, who reported that the other, and two of our men who went to recover them, would be detained while Tootahah was confined. Upon this Mr. Hicks was immediately sent off in the long boat with a strong body of men, to rescue the prisoners; at the same time the captain told Tootahah, that it was incumbent on him to assist them with some of his people, and to give orders, in his name, that the men should be set at liberty; for that he would be expected to answer for the event. Tootahah immediately complied, and this party released the men without any opposition.

On the 11th, about seven in the morning, they returned, but without the arms that had been taken from them when they were made prisoners; these, however, being restored soon after, the chiefs on board were allowed to return, and those who had been detained on shore were also set at liberty. On examining the deserters, it appeared that the Indians had told the truth; they having chosen two girls, with whom they would have remained in the island. At this time the power of Obeera was not so great as it was when the Dolphin first discovered the island. Tupia, whose name has been often mentioned in this voyage, had been his prime minister. He was also the chief priest, consequently well acquainted with the religion of the country. He had a knowledge of navigation, and was thoroughly acquainted with the number, situation, and inhabitants of the adjacent islands. The chief had often expressed a desire to go with us, when we continued our voyage.

On the 12th in the morning he came on board, with a boy about twelve years of age, his servant, named Taiyoto, and requested the gentlemen on board to let him go with him. As we thought he would be useful to us in many particulars, we unanimously agreed to comply with his request. Tupia then went on shore for the last time to bid farewell to his friends, to whom he gave several baubles as parting tokens of remembrance.

Mr. Banks, after dinner, being willing to obtain a drawing of the Morai, which Tootahah had in his possession at Eparre, Capt. Cook accompanied him thither in the pinnace, together with Dr. Soland. They immediately upon landing repaired to Tootahah's house, where they were met by Obeera and several others. A general good understanding prevailed. Tupia came back with them, and they proceeded to visit the gentlemen early the next day, they were told the ship would then sail.

On the 13th these friendly people came very early on board, and the ship was surrounded with a number of canoes, filled with Indians of the last sort. Between eleven and twelve we weighed anchor, and notwithstanding all the little misunderstandings between the English and the natives, the latter, who possessed a great fund of good nature and much docility, took their leave, weeping in an affectionate manner. As to Tupia, he supported himself thro-

this scene with a boldness from his eyes, it is to be concealed them did his

the historical and descriptive Manner and government.

PORT Royal bay selected by captain half a degree of its northern extremity of the bay, lies in 14 feet of coral rock several excellent bays, one of them, is Port Matavai, may be seen from the mountain in the fourth from point keep the west point of Venus, close on board a male, in order to avoid whereon there is but a hill. The most proper eastern side of the bay. Instead of which runs a ridge for a fleet of ships upon the whole island is purchased of the natives friendly terms with the very uneven. In the middle of the island which may be seen at the between these ridges and the different breadths in distance any where a mile covered by a number of extensive, and covered with which form almost one of the ridges are not parts. The only part of the island, are the low land ridges and the sea. They are ranged along yards distant from each other groups of the plants cloth. According to the old furnish above six feet of bread-fruits, coconuts, yams, jamba, a delicate mulberry, several species of trees, all which are either with little culture, or with little culture, garden-stuff, the tame animals are hogs, ducks, pigeons, parrots, the only quadrupeds are found. In the sea is a genus which constitutes their chief employment. The people in general are cannibals. The males are very shapely; the women are of our English stature below our standard.

We here beg leave to remark the publication of the King's Voyages Complete, written in such a Manner as has been to us an unnecessary length, by Capt. Cook and other Authors. THE FOLLOWING EDITION of the Voyages is published at an easy Rate of such a Price as all the SPLENDID

this scene with a becoming fortitude. Tears flowed from his eyes, it is true, but the effort that he made to conceal them did him an additional honour. He went

with Mr. Banks to the mast-head, and waving his hand took a last farewell of his country. Thus we departed from Otaheite, after a stay of just three months.

C H A P. V. *

A historical and descriptive account of Otaheite—Of the island and its productions—Of the inhabitants—their dress—Dwellings—Manner of living—Dressions—Manufactures—Arts—Sciences—Language—Diseases—Religious ceremonies—and government.

PORT Royal bay, in the island of Otaheite, as settled by captain Wallis, we found to be within half a degree of its real situation; and point Venus, the northern extremity of this island, and the eastern part of the bay, lies in 149 deg. 30 min. longitude. A reef of coral rock surrounds the island, forming several excellent bays, among which, and equal to the best of them, is Port Royal. This bay, called by the natives Matavai, may easily be discovered by a remarkable high mountain in the center of the island, bearing the south from point Venus. To sail into it, either keep the west point of the reef that lies before Point Venus, close on board, or give it a birth of near half a mile, in order to avoid a small shoal of coral rocks, whereon there is but two fathom and an half of water. The most proper ground for anchoring is on the eastern side of the bay. The shore is a fine sandy beach, which runs a river of fresh water, very convenient for a fleet of ships. The only wood for firing upon the whole island is that of fruit trees, which must be purchased of the natives, or it is impossible to live on friendly terms with them. The face of the country is very uneven. It rises in ridges that run up into the middle of the island, where they form mountains which may be seen at the distance of sixty miles. Between these ridges and the sea is a border of low land of different breadths in different parts, but not exceeding any where a mile and a half. The soil being watered by a number of excellent rivulets, is extremely fertile, and covered with various kinds of fruit trees, which form almost one continued wood. Even the tops of the ridges are not without their produce in these parts. The only parts of the island that are inhabited, are the low lands, lying between the foot of the ridges and the sea. The houses do not form villages, but are ranged along the whole border at about twenty yards distant from each other. Before them are large groups of the plain trees, which furnish them with cloth. According to Tupia's account, this island furnish above six thousand fighting men. The produce is bread-fruit, cocoa nuts, bananas, sweet potatoes, yams, jamba, a delicious fruit, sugar-cane, the mulberry, several sorts of figs, with many other plants and trees, all which the earth produces spontaneously, or with little culture. But here are no European fruit, garden-stuff, pulse, nor grain of any kind. The tame animals are hogs, dogs, and poultry; the wild ducks, pigeons, parroquets, and a few other birds. The only quadrupeds are rats, and not a serpent is to be found. In the sea is a great variety of excellent fish, which constitutes their chief luxury, and to catch it their chief employment.

The people in general are of a larger make than the Europeans. The males are mostly tall, robust, and well shaped; the women of the higher class above the size of our English ladies, but those of inferior rank are below our standard, and some of them very

short. Their natural complexion is a fine clear olive, or what we call a brunette, their skin delicately smooth and agreeably soft. Their faces in general are handsome, and their eyes full of sensibility. Their teeth are remarkably white and regular, their hair for the most part black, and their breath is entirely free from any disagreeable smell. The men, unlike the original inhabitants of America, have long beards, which they wear in various shapes. Circumcision is generally practiced among them from a motive of cleanliness, and they have a term of reproach with which they upbraid those who do not adopt this custom. Both sexes always eradicate the hair from their arm-pits, and they reproached our gentlemen with want of cleanliness: their motions are easy and graceful, and their behaviour, when unprovoked, affable and courteous. Contrary to the custom of most other nations, the women of this country cut their hair short, whereas the men wear it long, sometimes hanging loose upon their shoulders, at other times tied in a knot on the crown of the head in which they stick the feathers of birds of various colours. A piece of cloth of the manufacture of the country, is frequently tied round the head of both sexes in the manner of a turban, and the women plait very curiously human hair into long strings, which being folded into branches, are tied on their foreheads by way of ornament. They have a custom practiced in many hot countries, of anointing their hair with cocoa nut oil, the smell of which is not very agreeable. Having, among their various inventions no sorts of combs, they were infested with vermin, which they quickly got rid of when furnished with those convenient instruments.

They stain their bodies by indenting or pricking the flesh with a small instrument made of bone, cut into short teeth, which indentures they fill with a dark blue or blackish mixture, prepared from the smoke of an oily nut (burnt by them instead of candles) and water. This operation, called by the natives Tattaowing, is exceedingly painful, and leaves an indelible mark on the skin. It is usually performed when they are about ten or twelve years of age, and on different parts of the body; but those which suffer most severely are the breech and the loins, which are marked with arches, carried one above another a considerable way up the back. Mr. Banks was present at an operation of tattaowing, performed upon the posteriors of a girl about twelve years old. It was executed with an instrument that had twenty teeth, and at each stroke, which was repeated every moment, serum mixed with blood issued. She bore the pain with great resolution for several minutes: but at length it became so intolerable, that she murmured and burst into most violent lamentations; but her operator was inexorable, whilst some females preface both child and bear her. Mr. Banks was a spectator for near an hour, during which time one side only was tattaowed, the other having undergone the

We here beg leave to remark to our very NUMEROUS SUBSCRIBERS, that this much admired Work is not only far preferable to any other publication of the kind whatever, on account of its Elegance, large Size, Cheapness, Authenticity, and its including all Voyages & Travels Complete, written in an admirably pleasing and elegant style, but also because every Sheet of our Letter-press comprehends at least one new Matter as has been given in three Sheets belonging to other Works of the kind, which, to catch the Penny, by spinning out the Matter to an unnecessary length, is offered to the public at an extravagant Price. The common reduced Magazine Size, in which single Voyages of Capt. Cook and other Voyagers have been published, is universally objected to by the public: so that by the publication of this new FOLIO EDITION of VOYAGES and TRAVELS, the public at large will be agreeably accommodated, not only by being enabled to see at an easy Rate of such a vast Quantity of Matter included by our close Method of Print, but likewise by acquiring at the same Time all the SPLENDID LARGE FOLIO COPPER-PLATES (not on a reduced Scale, but) in the ORIGINAL SIZE, and in the price of only SIXPENCE each.

now, which signifies a bearer of children, by way of reproach.

Personal cleanliness is much esteemed among these Indians. Both sexes are particular in washing three times a day, viz. when they rise in the morning, at noon, and before they go to rest. They are also very cleanly in their cloaths; so that no disagreeable effluvia are found to arise in the largest communities.

Cloth is the chief manufacture of Otaheite, and of this there are three sorts, all which are made out of the bark of different trees, namely the mulberry, the bread-fruit, and a tree which bears some resemblance to the West-Indian wild fig-tree. The first of these produces the finest cloth, which is seldom worn but by those of the first rank. The next sort is made of the bread-fruit tree, and the last of that which resembles the wild fig-tree. But this last sort, though the coarsest, is finer than the other two, which are manufactured only in small quantities, as the same manner is used in manufacturing all these cloths. The following description will suffice for the reader's information.

The bark of the tree being stripped off, is soaked in water for two or three days; they then take it out, and separate the inner bark from the external coat, by scraping it with a shell, after which it is spread out on plantain leaves, placing two or three layers over one another, care being taken to make it of an equal thickness in every part. In this state it continues till it is almost dry, when it adheres so firmly that it may be taken from the ground without breaking. After this process, it is laid on a smooth board, and beaten with an instrument made for the purpose, of the coarsest heavy wood called Etoa. The instrument is about fourteen inches long, and about seven in circumference; is of a quadrangular shape, and each of the four sides is marked with longitudinal grooves or furrows, differing in this instance, that there is a regular gradation in the width and depth of the grooves on each of the sides; the coarsest side not containing more than ten of these furrows, while the finest is furnished with above fifty. It is with that side of the mallet where the grooves are deepest and widest that they begin to beat their cloth, and proceeding regularly, finish that which has the greatest number. By this beating, the cloth is extended in a manner similar to the gold that is formed into leaves by the hammer; and it is also marked with small channels resembling those which are visible on paper, but rather deeper; it is in general beat very thin; when they want it thicker than common, they take two or three pieces and paste them together with a kind of glue prepared from a root called Epa. This cloth becomes exceedingly white by bleaching, and is dyed of a red, yellow, brown, or black colour; the first is exceedingly beautiful, and equal, if not superior, to any in Europe. They make the red colour from a mixture of the juices of two vegetables, neither of which used separately has this effect: the first, of various kinds, is another considerable manufacture, in which they excel, in many respects, the Europeans. They make use of the coarsest sort of bark on, and in wet weather they wear the finer. They excel in the basket and wicker work; both men and women employ themselves at it, and can make a great number of different patterns. They make ropes and lines of all sizes of the bark of the Poerou, and their fishing nets are made of these lines; the fibres of the cocoa-nut they make thread of, such as they use to fasten together the several parts of their canoes, the forms of which are various, according to the use which they are applied. Their fishing lines are esteemed the best in the world, made of the bark of the nettle, a kind of nettle which grows on the mountains; they are strong enough to hold the heaviest and most voracious fish, such as bonettas and albacores; in short, they are extremely ingenious in every expedient for catching all kinds of fish.

The tools which these people make use of for building houses, constructing canoes, hewing staves, and for cleaving, carving, and polishing timber, consist of nothing more than an adze of stone, and a chif-

fel of bone, most commonly that of a man's arm; and for a file or polisher, they make use of a rasp of coral and coral sand. The blades of their adzes are extremely tough, but not very hard; they make them of various sizes, those for felling wood weigh six or seven pounds, and others which are used for carving, only a few ounces: they are obliged every minute to sharpen them on a stone, which is always kept near them for that purpose. The most difficult task they meet with in the use of these tools, is the felling of a tree, which employs a great number of hands for several days together. The tree which is in general use is called Aoié, the stem of which is straight and tall. Some of their smaller boats are made of the bread-fruit tree, which is wrought without much difficulty, being of a light spongy nature. Instead of planes, they use their adzes with great dexterity. Their canoes are all shaped with the hand, the Indians not being acquainted with the method of warping a plank.

Of these they have two kinds, one they call Ivahahs, the other Pahies; the former is used for short voyages at sea, and the latter for long ones. These boats do not differ either in shape or size, but they are in no degree proportionate, being from sixty to seventy feet in length, and not more than the thirtieth part in breadth. Some are employed in going from one island to another, and others used for fishing. There is also the Ivahah, which serves for war; there are by far the longest, and the head and stern are considerably above the body. These Ivahahs are fastened together, side by side, when they go to sea, at the distance of a few feet, by strong wooden poles, which are laid across them and joined to each side. A stage or platform is raised on the fore part, about ten or twelve feet long, upon which stand the fighting men, whose missile weapons are slings and spears. Beneath these stages the rowers sit, who supply the place of those who are wounded. The fishing Ivahahs are from thirty or forty to ten feet in length, and those for travelling have a small house fixed on board, which is fastened upon the fore part, for the better accommodation of persons of rank, who occupy them both day and night. The Pahies differ also in size, being from sixty to seventy feet long, they are also very narrow, and are sometimes used for fighting, but chiefly for long voyages. In going from one island to another, they are out sometimes a month, and often at sea a fortnight or twenty days, and if they had convenience to row more provisions, they could stay out much longer. These vessels are very useful in landing, and putting off from the shore in a surf, for by their great length and high stern they landed dry, when the Endeavour's boats could scarcely land at all.

They are very curious in the construction of these boats, the chief parts or pieces whereof are formed separately, without either saw, plane, chisel, or any other iron tool, which renders their fabrication more surprising and worthy observation. These parts being prepared, the keel is fixed upon blocks, and the planks are supported with props, till they are sewed or joined together with strong plaited thongs, which are passed several times through holes bored with a chisel of bone, such as they commonly make use of, and when finished they are sufficiently tight without caulking. They keep these boats with great care in a kind of shed, built on purpose to contain them.

Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander were at a loss to find out their method of dividing time, they always made use of the term Malama, which signifies the moon; whenever they spoke of time, either past or to come, they reckon thirteen of these moons, beginning again when they are expired. This proves that they have some idea of the solar year; but these gentlemen could not discover how they computed their months, to make thirteen equal to the year, as they said these months consisted of twenty-nine days, one day in which the moon was invisible being included. They, however, knew the prevailing weather that was to be expected, as well as the fruits which would be in season. As to the day, they divide it into twelve equal parts, six of which be-

long

long to the day, and the other six to the night. When they numerate, they reckon from one to ten, making use of their fingers, and changing hands, till they come to the number which they intended to express; and joining expressive signs to their words, in the course of their conversation. But they are not so expert in measuring distances, for when they attempt describing the space between one place and another, they are obliged to express it by the time that would be taken in passing it.

With regard to their language, it is soft, as it abounds with vowels, and easy to be pronounced; but very few of their nouns or verbs being declinable, it must consequently be rather imperfect. However, we found means to be mutually understood without much difficulty. The following specimen will possibly enable the reader to form some notion of the language of those islanders.

Aheine, a woman	Midee, a child
Aihoo, a garment	Mutee, a kiss
Aimao, take care	Myty, good
Arce, a chief	Neeheco, good night
Aouna, to-day	Oboboa, to-morrow
Aoy, water	Oowhau, the thighs
Eahoo, the nose	Ore' dehaiya, a large nail
Eawow, to scold	Ore' ceteca, a small nail
Eci, to eat	Otaowa, yesterday
Eeyo, look you	Pahie, a ship
Emoto, to box	Parawei, a shirt
Epanoo, a drum	Poa, a night
Epecei, an ebo	Poe, ear-rings
Fpehe, a song	Tane, a husband
Erowoo, the head	Tatta te hommanne maitai,
Huaheine, a wife	a good-natured person
Itoya, to fall	Tea, tribute
Kipoo a memehce, a chamber-pot	Teine, a brother
Mahana, a day	Tooaheine, a sister
Marooowhai cry	Tooanahoe, you and I
Matau, the eyes	Toonoah, a mole in the skin
Matte roah, to die	Tumatau, a bonnet
Mayneene, to tickle	Wahoa, fire
Meyoooo, the nails	Waow, I.

The natives of this country are seldom afflicted with any diseases, except sometimes an accidental fit of the cholick; but they are subject to the erisipelas, attended with cutaneous eruptions somewhat resembling the leprosy; and if they have it to any considerable degree, they are excluded from society and live alone, in a small house in some unfrequented part of the island. The management of the sick belongs to the priests, whose method of cure consists generally of prayers and ceremonies, which are repeated till they recover or die. If the former happens, it is attributed to their mode of proceeding; if the patient dies, then they urge that the disease was incurable.

The religion of these islanders appears to be very mysterious; and as the language adapted to it was different from that which was spoken on other occasions, we were not able to gain much knowledge of it. Tupia, who gave us all the information that we got in regard to this particular, informed us, that his countrymen imagined every thing in the creation to proceed from the conjunction of two persons. One of these two first (being the supreme deity) they called Taraotahetoomo, and the other Tapapa; and the year, which they called Tettowmatatayo, they suppose to be the daughter of these two. They also imagine an inferior sort of deities, known by the name of Eatuwa, two of whom, they say, formerly inhabited the earth, and they suppose that the first man and woman descended from them. The Supreme Being they stile "The causer of earthquakes;" but more frequently address their prayers to Tane, whom they conceive to be a son of the first progenitors of nature. They believe in the existence of the soul in a separate state, and suppose that there are two situations differing in the degrees of happiness, which they consider as receptacles for different ranks, but not as places of rewards and punishments.

Their notion is, that the chiefs and principal people will have the preference to those of lower ranks. For as to their actions they cannot conceive them to influence their future state, as they believe the deity takes no cognizance of them. The office of priest is hereditary; there are several of them of all ranks; the chief is respected next to their kings; and they are in general superior to the natives, not only in point of divine knowledge, but also in that of astronomy and navigation. They are not at all concerned with the ceremony of marriage, which is only a simple agreement between the man and the woman, and when they chuse to separate, the matter is accomplished with as little ceremony as was thought necessary to bring them together. These people do not appear to worship images of any kind; but they enter their Morais with great awe and humility, their bodies being uncovered to the waist when they bring their offering to the altar.

As to their form of government, there is a sort of subordination among them which resembles the early state of all the nations of Europe when under the feudal system, which reserved authority to a small number, putting the rest entirely in their power. The ranks of the people of this island were these, Earee Rahie, signifying a king or supreme governor; Earee, answering to the title of baron; Mannahoonies, to that of vassal; and Toutou, under which name was included the lowest orders of the people, such as are called villains according to the old law term. The Earee Rahie, of which there are two here, one belonging to each peninsula, had great respect shewn them by all ranks. The Earees are lords of one or more of the districts, into which these governments are divided; and they separate their territories into lots, which are given among the Mannahoonies, who respectively cultivate the share that they hold under the baron. But they are only nominal cultivators; this, as well as all other laborious work, being done by the Toutou, or lower class of the people. The sovereign, or Earee Rahie, and the baron, or Earee, are succeeded in titles and honour by their children, as soon as they are born; but their estates remain in their possession, and subject to the management of their parents. Every district under the command of an Earee furnishes a proportionate number of fighting men, for the defence of the common cause in case of a general attack; and they are all subject to the command of the Earee Rahie. Their weapons consist of slings, in the use of which they are very dextrous, and of long clubs remarkably hard, with which they fight obstinately and cruelly, giving quarter to their enemies in time of battle.

While we staid at Otaheite, there was a good understanding between the Earees of the two peninsulas though it seems that the Earee of Teareebau called himself king of the whole island; this was a mere nominal claim, and was considered as such by the inhabitants. There is not any thing among them substituted for money, or a general medium by which every desirable object may be purchased or procured; neither can a permanent good be obtained by force or fraud. The general commerce with women sets aside almost every excitement to commit adultery. In a word, in a government so little polished, though distributive justice cannot be regularly administered; as, at the same time, there can be but few crimes whereon to exercise it, the want of this justice is not so severely felt as in more civilized societies.

Soon after our arrival at this island, we were surprised of the natives having the French disease among them. The islanders called it by a name expressive of its effects, observing that the hair and nails of the who were first infected by it fell off, and the flesh rotted from the bones, while their countrymen, and even nearell relations, who were unaffected, were much terrified at its symptoms, that the unhappy sufferer was often forsaken by them, and left to perish in the most horrible conditions.

Thus have we given an accurate, full, and complete description of the island in its present state; we shall only add a few remarks, which we apprehend may

of use to such as after have it in. As this island with refreshment it might be made European cattle, useful vegetable soil. The troublefome, nor the E.

We had frequ sometimes, though We learnt from T October, November no doubt but this variable, they are the S. W. or W. S. calm, and when the which shew that the out at sea, for with

The Endeavour continued Ulietea, Otaheite and Discover a morai, of the Endeavour Poverty Bay—This The inhabitants descend from Tolaga to Mer country and its forts on the banks of the in an island, and on

ON the 13th of J Otaheite, and the weather and a gentle Tupia now informed the distance of about Huaheine, Ulietea, Otaheite, and other reefs, to be got in great an island to the

oa. It is situated on the north was a small low island settled inhabitants.

On the 15th we made of the calms which Tupia often prayed to be laden of his success, but, by never applying to bear that he knew his prayer was concluded.

On the 16th we found the island of Huaheine, several canoes, some fearful of coming Tupia removed their canoe along-side, and the queen, came on board whatever was shewn her any thing but what some time they became, whose name was Tupia, who was offered to exchange names readily accepted.

very similar to those of Otaheite; but, if Tupia like them addicted to having anchored in the bay on the W. side of the (Owparre) we went to some other gentlemen of Tupia. The moment himself as low as the house to follow his began a speech, or p

of use to such gentlemen in the navy who may hereafter have it in their orders to touch at the same.

As this island can be useful only by supplying ships with refreshments in their passage through these seas, it might be made to answer fully this important end; European cattle, plants, garden-stuff, and the most useful vegetable would doubtless flourish in so rich a soil. The cereals remarkably fine, the heat is not troublesome, nor do the winds blow constantly from the E.

We had frequently a fresh gale from the S. W. sometimes, though very seldom, from the N. W. We learnt from Tupia, that S. W. winds prevail in October, November, and December, and we have no doubt but this is true. At the time the winds are variable, they are always accompanied by a swell from the S. W. or W. S. W. The same swell happens on a calm, and when the atmosphere is loaded with clouds, which shew that the winds are variable or westerly out at sea, for with a trade wind the weather is clear.

In these parts the trade wind does not extend farther to the S. than 20 deg. beyond which we generally found a gale from the westward. The tides here are perhaps as inconsiderable as in any part of the world. A S. or S. by W. moon makes high water in the harbour of Matavai, and its perpendicular height seldom exceeds 10 or 12 inches.

We shall defer a further description of this island till we come to the captain's second voyage, as we shall then have occasion to mention it again, when we shall more particularly expatiate upon every principal information, and give our readers a vocabulary of their language, more full and copious than any hitherto offered, and arranged in grammatical order, to convey a proper idea of their nouns, verbs, &c. with necessary explanations, respecting the pronunciation of the different words, phrases, and sentences. For the present, without further digression, we shall follow the Endeavour in her progress.

CHAPTER VI.

The Endeavour continues her voyage—Visits the islands in the neighbourhood of Otaheite—Description of Huahaine, Ulitea, Otaha and Bolobola islands, which the captain takes possession of in the name of his Britannic Majesty—Discover a morai, altar, &c.—Several incidents, and various particulars relative to the inhabitants—The passage of the Endeavour from Otaheite to New Zealand—Events on going ashore, and incidents while the ship was in Poverty Bay—This and the adjacent country described—Excursions to Cape Turnagain, and return to Tolaga—The inhabitants described, and a narrative of what happened while we were on that part of the coast—The range from Tolaga to Mercury Bay—Incidents that happened on board the Endeavour and ashore—A description of the country and its fortified villages—She sails from Mercury Bay to the Bay of Islands—A description of the Indians on the banks of the river Thames, and of the timber that grows there—Interviews and skirmishes with the natives in an island, and on different parts of the coast—Range from the Bay of Islands round North Cape.

ON the 13th of July, 1768, we left the island of Otaheite, and continued our course, with clear weather and a gentle breeze.

Tupia now informed us that there were four islands at the distance of about one or two days sail, called Huahaine, Ulitea, Otaha, and Bolobola, where hogs, fowls, and other refreshments, very scarce on board, were to be got in great abundance. He also mentioned an island to the northward, which he called Ooa. It is situated N. half W. eight leagues distant from the northern extremity of Otaheite. It was a small low island, but as Tupia said without any settled inhabitants.

On the 15th we made but little way, on account of the calms which succeeded the light breezes. Tupia often prayed to his god Tane for a wind, and begged of his success, which indeed he took care to procure, by never applying to Tane till he saw a breeze near that he knew it must reach the ship before his prayer was concluded.

On the 16th we founded near the N. W. part of the island of Huahaine, but found no bottom at 70 fathoms. Several canoes put off; but the Indians seemed fearful of coming near the bark, till the sight of Tupia removed their apprehensions. They then came along-side, and the king of the island, with his queen, came on board. They seemed surprised whatever was shewn them, but made no enquiries for any thing but what was offered to their notice. At some time they became more familiar; and the king, whose name was Oree, as a token of amity, offered to exchange names with Capt. Cook, which was readily accepted. We found the people here very similar to those of Otaheite in almost every particular; but, if Tupia might be credited, they are more like them addicted to thieving.

Having anchored in a small but convenient harbour on the W. side of the island, (called by the natives Ouparre) we went on shore with Mr. Banks and some other gentlemen, accompanied by the king of the island. The moment we landed, Tupia unceremoniously thrust himself as low as the waist, and desired Mr. Banks to follow his example. Being seated, he began a speech, or prayer, which lasted about

20 minutes; the king, who stood opposite to him, answering him in what seemed to be studied replies. During this harangue, Tupia delivered, at different times, a handkerchief, a black silk necklock, some plantains and beads, as presents to their Eatua, or deity; and in return, for our Eatua, we received a hog, some young plantains, and two bunches of feathers, all which were carried on board. These ceremonies were considered as a kind of ratification of a treaty between us and the king of Huahaine.

On the 17th we went again on shore, and made an excursion into the country, the productions of which greatly resembled those of Otaheite; the rocks and clay seemed, indeed, more burnt: the boat-houses were curious, and remarkably large. The level part of the country affords the most beautiful landscapes that the imagination can possibly form an idea of. The soil is exceedingly fertile, and the shore is lined with fruit trees of different kinds, particularly the cocoa-nut; however, in some places there were salt swamps and lagoons, which produced neither trees nor plants.

On the 18th we went again on shore, and Tupia being engaged with his friends, we took with us Taiyota, his boy. Mr. Banks proposed taking a more perfect view of a kind of chest, or ark, which he had before observed. The lid of this ark was neatly sewed on, and thatched in a peculiar manner with palm-nut leaves. It was placed on two poles, and supported by small carved arches of wood. These poles served to remove it from one place to another, in the manner of our sedan-chairs. We remarked, that this chest was of a form resembling the ark of the Lord among the Jews; but it is still more remarkable, that, enquiring of Tupia's servant what it was called, he told us, Ewharre no Eatua, the House of God, though he could give no account of its meaning or use. Our trade with the natives went on slowly; we got, however, eleven pigs, and were not without hopes of obtaining more the next morning.

On the 19th we offered them some hatches, for which we procured three very large hogs. As we intended to sail in the afternoon, king Oree and others of the natives came on board to take their leave.

H—K

Captain

Capt. Cook presented to Oree a small pewter plate, stamped with this inscription, "His Britannic Majesty's ship Endeavour, Captain Cook commander, 16 July, 1769." We gave him also some medals, or counters, resembling our English coin, and other trifles, which he promised to keep in order to remember us. We now made sail for the island of Ulitea, distant seven or eight leagues from Huaheine.

On the 20th, by the direction of Tupia, we anchored in a bay, formed by a reef, on the N. side of the island. Two canoes soon came off from the shore, and the natives brought with them two small hogs, which they exchanged for some nails and beads. The captain, Mr. Banks, and other gentlemen, now went on shore, accompanied by Tupia, who introduced them with the same kind of ceremonies that had taken place on their landing at Huaheine; after which Capt. Cook took possession of this and the three neighbouring islands, Huaheine, Otaha, and Bolabola, in the name of his Britannic Majesty.

The island of Ulitea abounds with hogs and green plantains, which latter is an excellent substitute for bread, as it will keep good for a fortnight, and very often three weeks. Good water may also be had here, and a supply of other provisions. The inhabitants seem in general smaller and blacker than those of the other islands: they also appear less orderly, which perhaps may be considered as the consequence of their having become subject to the natives of Bolabola. Ulitea, though now reduced to a state of dependence, was once the most eminent of this cluster of islands, and no doubt the first seat of government, seeing that the royal family of Otaheite is descended from that which reigned here before the late revolution.

The island of Huaheine lies in 16 deg. 43 min. S. latitude, and 150 deg. 52 min. W. longitude, about 50 leagues distant from Otaheite, and is 20 miles in circumference. Its productions are a month forwarder than those of Otaheite, as we found by several of the fruits, &c. Mr. Banks collected only a few new plants, but found a species of the scorpion which he had not before seen. The inhabitants are very lazy, but are plumper and larger made than those of Otaheite; the women very fair, and we thought them very handsome. Both sexes seemed to be less timid, and less curious. They made no enquiries when on board the ship; and, when we fired a gun, though apparently frightened, yet they did not fall down, as our friends at Otaheite constantly did when we came among them; but it is to be considered, that the former had never experienced its power of dispensing death.

The island of Otaha is adjoining Ulitea: the natives of both these places had long lived in friendship, and were likewise on good terms with those of the island of Huaheine. However, the people of Otaha soon joined those of Bolabola, which of course occasioned an altercation, while the Uliteans made application to their friends of Huaheine for assistance to oppose these two powers. For some time the contest was doubtful; but at last Huaheine was invaded by the men of Bolabola, who consequently took possession of the island. The Uliteans were very much hurt at this, and renewing the attack, though very inferior in force, yet being superior in skill, they surpris'd the people of Bolabola, killing several and obliging others to fly. By this means the island of Huaheine was recovered. Previous to this, the Bolabolans having refused to admit the allies of Otaha to an equal share of the conquests, the alliance was broke, and all the islands being now in opposition, a tedious war ensued, the result of which was that Otaha as well as Ulitea was conquered by Bolabola, and both became subject to that government, who appointed chiefs as their deputies to take care of each

island. This is but a brief account of the revolution, but as we shall have occasion to renew the subject in a future voyage, we mean to be more copious in our relation thereof.

The harbour of Bolabola, which is called by the natives Oteavanoga, is exceedingly extensive; it is situated on the W. side of the island. It is exceedingly commodious for the reception of vessels. The high, double-peaked mountain, which is in the middle of the island, appeared to be barren on the E. side, but on the W. it has trees and bushes on its most craggy parts. The lower grounds all round towards the sea are covered with cocoa, palm, and bread-fruit trees, like the other islands of this ocean; and the many little islets that surround it on the inside of the reef add both to the amount of its vegetable productions and the number of its inhabitants. It is not half so extensive as the island of Ulitea, being only about eight leagues in compass. The inhabitants, however, have acquired no inconsiderable fame by their valour, for which they are not only highly respected, but even dreaded by the inhabitants of Otaheite, though an island almost out of their reach. They never fly in battle, and always beat at least an equal number of islanders, if not more.

The chief articles for trade in these islands are, hatchets, axes, chisels, nails, red feathers, cloth, beads, knives, scissars, looking-glasses, &c. These, and the like are held in great estimation, and will purchase a quantity of pork, fruits, fish, fowls, &c. Shirts are likewise a good commodity to trade with, especially with the women. They were always esteemed as valuable presents, and such as were inclined to be gallant were scarcely left a shirt on their back. These islands are exceedingly fertile and agreeable; the natives, copying the bounty of nature, equally liberal, for they are always ready to contribute plentifully and cheerfully to the wants of navigators. Some of the islanders are more superstitious than others, who will not allow herons and wood-peckers to be destroyed. Their manner of dressing their meat is universally the same, and during the whole of their various operations they exhibit a cleanliness well worthy of imitation. They are very exact in washing their meat before it is dressed: they take out the entrails, and carry them away in a basket, but what is done with them cannot be ascertained. Those who have eaten of their victuals, declare that they possess a superior taste and flavour, owing to their excellent manner of cooking.

While on our rambles in Ulitea, we walked to a large morai, called by the natives Taodeboatea, which we found different from the sepulchral monuments of Otaheite, being composed of four walls, about eight or nine feet high, and built of large coral stones, surrounding a court of about 30 feet square. At a small distance we found an altar, or cwiatta, whereupon lay the last oblation, or sacrifice, a hog about 80 lb. weight, which had been offered whole, and very nicely roasted. We also saw four or five Ewharre-no-eatua, or houses of God, to which carriage poles were fitted. From hence we proceeded to a long house, where among rolls of cloth we saw the model of a canoe, about three feet long, to which were fastened eight human jaw-bones: we concluded they were trophies of war, but Tupia affirmed they were the jaw-bones of the natives of this island. Night now advanced with quick paces, but Mr. Banks and the doctor continued their walk along the shore, and saw another Ewharre-no-eatua; also a tree of the fig kind, the trunk of which was about 42 paces in circumference, of the same nature as that already described.

On the 21st the master was sent to inspect the S. part of the island, and a lieutenant was dispatched in the yawl to sound the harbour where the Endeavour lay. While the captain went on the pinnace to take a

on,
in
our
the
it is
red.
The
mid-
E. E.
its
und
and
ean;
e in-
ege-
ants.
, be-
nha-
rable
only
abi-
their
at at
s are,
eads,
d the
hase a
ts are
cially
as va-
e gal-
These
; the
r libe-
olenti-
Some
thers,
to be
eat is
f their
s well
asking
it the
what
Those
t they
their
d to a
boats,
monu-
walls,
e coral
square.
whatta,
a bog
whole,
or five
ch car-
ceeded
we law
p which
cluded
ed they
iland.
r. Banks
e shore,
e of the
aces in
already
P the S.
ched in
leavour
o take
view



vic of that part of the
ward. Mr. Banks, D
shore, trading with
the productions and
was nothing, howev
ferred itself at presen

We were now prev
gales from getting u
put to sea, and steer
wards an opening, at
leagues, in effecting
of striking on a rock
out on a sudden " r
but alarm us greatly
taken, or the ship we
many of which are as
hood of these islands.

Oopoa bay, where
very commodious, be
number of shipping,
reef of rocks. Its situ
of the island. The
cocoa-nuts, yams, son
try round about the
so plentiful as at Otah
ernmost opening in th
bour, by which we ent
length wide; it lies o
island, and may be si
which lies to the S. 1
from which are two o
Tanou. Between thes
we went out of the ha
a mile wide.

We were within a
Otaha the next day
to land, the wind hav
morning, Mr. Banks
long-boat with the ma
on the east side of the
and convenient. We f
a large quantity of pla
The produce of this is
that of Ulictea, but it
received the same com
as was usual for them
was by uncovering the
clothes round their bod
ward, and at eight o'cl
the high peaks of Bolab
cessible in this part, and
to weather the S. end

On the 30th we disc
called Maurua, but saic
a reef, and without any
habited, and yielded ne
adjacent islands. In th
which may be seen at cle
In the afternoon, findi
some harbour that lay
intended to put into on
leak which had sprung
like in some additional
against us, we plied on a
ck of August, and havi
channel, which led into
harbor.

On the 2d, in the m
we came into a proper
thems. Many of the n
pigs, fowls,
very easy terms.
on shore, and spent
we shewed them g
to the houses of t
who had ran hastily
of a long mat spreac
sly sitting at the farth
served some very you
maner, who kept their p



(An Engraving) Representation of a DANCE in OTAHUTEA.

Watercolor

view of that part of the island which lay to the northward. Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, &c. went again on shore, trading with the natives, and searching after the productions and curiosities of the country. There was nothing, however, worthy of remark which offered itself at present to view.

We were now prevented by hazy weather and brisk gales from getting under sail till the 24th, when we put to sea, and steered northward within the reef, towards an opening, at the distance of about five or six leagues, in effecting which we were in great danger of striking on a rock, the man who sounded crying out on a sudden "two fathoms," which could not but alarm us greatly; but either the master was mistaken, or the ship went along the edge of a coral rock, many of which are as steep as a wall in the neighbourhood of these islands.

Oopoa bay, where the Endeavour lay at anchor, is very commodious, being large enough to hold a great number of shipping, and secured from the sea by a reef of rocks. Its situation is off the easternmost part of the island. The provisions consist of plantains, cocoa-nuts, yams, some hogs, fowls, &c. The country round about the place where we landed was not so plentiful as at Otaheite or Huaheine. The southernmost opening in the reef, or channel into the harbour, by which we entered, is little more than a cable's length wide; it lies off the easternmost point of the island, and may be found by a small woody island, which lies to the S. E. of it, called Oatara. N. W. from which are two other islets, called Opururu and Tamou. Between these is the channel through which we went out of the harbour, upwards of a quarter of a mile wide.

We were within a league or two of the island of Otaheite the next day; but could not get near enough to land, the wind having proved contrary. In the morning, Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander went in the long-boat with the master, in order to sound a harbour on the east side of the island, which they found safe and convenient. We then went on shore and purchased a large quantity of plantains, some hogs, fowls, &c. The produce of this island was much the same with that of Ulitea, but it seemed to be more barren. We received the same compliment from the Indians here as was usual for them to pay their own kings, which was by uncovering their shoulders, and wrapping their clothes round their bodies. We made sail to the northward, and at eight o'clock on the 29th we were under the high peaks of Solabola. We found the island inaccessible in this part, and likewise that it was impossible to reach the S. end of it till late at night.

On the 30th we discovered an island which Tupia called Maurua, but said it was small, surrounded by a reef, and without any commodious harbour, but inhabited, and yielded nearly the same produce as the adjacent islands. In the middle is a high round hill, which may be seen at eleven or twelve leagues distance. In the afternoon, finding ourselves to windward of some harbour that lay on the W. side of Ulitea, we intended to put into one of them, in order to stop a leak which had sprung in the powder-room, and to take in some additional ballast. The wind being right against us, we piled on and off till the afternoon of the 31st of August, and having made the entrance of the channel, which led into one of the harbours, came to anchor.

On the 2d, in the morning, when the tide turned, we came into a proper place for mooring in 28 fathoms. Many of the natives came off, and brought hogs, fowls, &c. which were purchased for very easy terms. Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander went on shore, and spent the day very agreeably; the natives shewed them great respect, and conducted them to the houses of the chief people: they found some who had ran hastily before them standing on each end of a long mat spread upon the ground, and the chief sitting at the farther end of it. In one house they observed some very young girls dressed in the neatest manner, who kept their places waiting for the strangers

to accost them; these girls were the most beautiful the gentlemen had ever seen. One of them, about seven or eight years old, was dressed in a red gown, and her head was decorated with a great quantity of plaited hair; this ornament is called Tamou, and is held in great estimation among them. She was sitting at the upper end of one of their long mats, on which none of the people present presumed to set a foot; and her head was reclined on the arm of a decent-looking woman, who appeared to be her nurse: Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander, upon their approach, presented her with some beads, which she stretched her hand out and accepted with as much dignity and ease as if she had been accustomed all her life to European politeness.

We were entertained with a dance in one of the houses different from any we had seen before. The performer put upon his head a large piece of wicker-work, about four feet long, of a cylindrical form, covered with feathers, and edged round with shark's teeth. With this head-dress, which is called a Whou, he began to dance with a slow motion, frequently moving his head so as to describe a circle with the top of his wicker cap, and sometimes throwing it so near the faces of the by-standers as to make them jump back: this they considered as an excellent piece of humour, and when practised upon any of the English gentlemen was productive of the greatest mirth.

On the 3d, while Mr. Banks and the doctor were going along the shore to the northward, with a design to purchase stock, they met with a company of dancers, who retarded the progress of their excursion. The company was composed of six men and two women dancers, with three drums. They were informed that these dancers were some of the principal people of the island, and though they were an itinerant troop, they did not, like the strolling parties of Otaheite, receive any gratuity from the by-standers. The women wore a considerable quantity of tamou, or plaited hair, ornamented with flowers of the cape-jessamine, which were stuck in with great taste, and made an elegant head-dress. The women's necks, breasts, and arms, were naked; the other parts of their bodies were covered with black cloth, which was fastened close round them, and by the side of each breast, next the arms, was a small plume of black feathers, worn like a nose-gay. Thus apparelled, they advanced sideways, keeping time with great exactness to the drums, which beat quick and slow; soon after they began to shake themselves in a most whimsical manner, and put their bodies into a variety of strange postures, sometimes sitting down, and at others falling with their faces to the ground, and resting on their knees and elbows, moving their fingers at the same time with a quickness scarcely to be credited. The chief dexterity, however, of the dancers, as well as the amusement of the spectators, consisted in the lasciviousness of their attitudes and gestures. Between the dances of the women a kind of dramatic interlude was performed by the men, consisting of dialogue as well as dancing; but the subject of this interlude was entirely unknown for want of a sufficient knowledge of their language.

The next day Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, and some other gentlemen, were present at a more regular dramatic entertainment. The performers, who were all men, were divided into two parties, one dressed in brown, and the other in white, by way of distinction. Tupia being present, informed them that the party in brown acted the parts of a master and his servants, and the party in white a gang of thieves; the master having produced a basket of meat, which he gave in charge to his servants; which party exhibited a variety of expedients in endeavouring to steal this basket, and the brown as many in preventing the accomplishment of their design. After some time had been spent in this manner, those to whom the basket was entrusted, laying themselves down on the ground round it, pretended to fall asleep; the other party, availing themselves of this opportunity, stole gently upon them, and carried off their booty: the servants awaking soon after, discovered their loss, but their concern

was only temporary, as they began to dance with as much alacrity as before, having entirely forgot the basket.

On the 5th some hogs, fowls, and several large pieces of cloth, many of them being 50 or 60 yards in length, together with a quantity of plantains, coconuts, &c. were sent to Capt. Cook, as a present from the Earec Rahie of the island of Bolabola, accompanied with a message, which signified that he intended waiting on the captain, as he was then in the island.

The king of Bolabola did not visit us on Sunday the 6th agreeable to promise; his absence, however, was not in the least regretted, as he sent three young women to demand something in return for his present. After dinner, we set out to pay the king a visit on shore, since he did not think proper to come on board. As this man was the Earec Rahie of the Bolabola man, who had conquered this, and was the dread of all the neighbouring islands, we were greatly disappointed, instead of finding a vigorous enterprising young chief, to see a poor feeble old dotard, half blind, and sinking under the weight of age and infirmities. Our reception here was not attended with that state and ceremony which the other chiefs had paid us.

Having stopped a leak, and taken on board a fresh stock of provisions, on the 9th we sailed out of the harbour. Though we were several leagues distant from the island of Bolabola, Tupia earnestly requested that a shot might be fired towards it; which, to gratify him, the captain complied with. This was supposed to have been intended by Tupia as a mark of his resentment against the inhabitants of that place, as they had formerly taken from him large possessions which he held in the island of Ulietea, of which island Tupia was a native, and a subordinate chief, but was driven out by these warriors. We had great plenty of provisions, both of hogs and vegetables, during the time we continued in the neighbourhood of these islands, so that we were not obliged to use any considerable quantity of the ship's provisions, and we had flattered ourselves that the fowls and hogs would have supplied us with fresh provisions during the course of our voyage to the southward; but in this we were unhappily disappointed, for as the hogs could not be brought to eat any European grain, or any provender whatever that the ship afforded, we were reduced to the disagreeable necessity of killing them immediately on leaving those islands; and the fowls all died of a disease in their heads, with which they were seized soon after they had been carried on board. Being detained longer at Ulietea in repairing the ship than we expected, we did not go on shore at Bolabola; but after giving the general name of the Society Islands to the islands of Huaheine, Ulietea, Bolabola, Otaha, and Mauria, which lie between the latitude of 16 deg. 10 min. and 18 deg. 55 min. S. we pursued our course, standing southerly for an island, to which we were directed by Tupia, at above 100 leagues distant. This we discovered on Sunday the 13th; it was called Obitera, according to Tupia's information.

We stood in for land on the 14th, and saw several of the inhabitants coming along the shore. One of the lieutenants was dispatched in the pinnace to sound for anchorage, and to obtain what intelligence could be got from the natives concerning any land that might be farther to the S. Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, and Tupia, went with the lieutenant in the boat. When they approached the shore, they observed that the Indians were armed with long lances. A number of them were soon drawn together on the beach, and two jumped into the water, endeavouring to gain the boat; but she soon left them, and some others that had made the same attempt, far enough behind her. Having doubled the point where they intended to land, they opened a large bay, and saw another party of the natives standing at the end of it, armed like those whom they had seen before. Preparations were then made for landing; on which a canoe full of Indians came off towards them. Observing this, Tupia received orders to acquaint them that the English did

not intend to offer them violence, but meant to traffic with them for nails, which were produced. Thus informed, they came along-side the boat, and took some nails that were given them, being seemingly well pleased with the present. Yet, a few minutes after, several of these people boarded the boat, desiring to drag her on shore; but some muskets being discharged over their heads, they leaped into the sea, and having reached the canoe, put back with all possible expedition, joining their countrymen, who stood ready to receive them. The boat immediately pursued the fugitives; but the crew, finding the surf extremely violent, did not venture to land there, but coasted along shore, to try if they could find a more convenient place. Soon after the canoe got on shore, a man opposite the boat flourished his weapon, calling out at the same time with a shrill voice, which was a mark of defiance, as Tupia explained it to the English. Not being able to find a proper landing place, they returned, with an intention to attempt it where the canoe went on shore; whereupon another warrior repeated the defiance: his appearance was more formidable than that of the other; he had a high cap made of the tail feathers of a bird, and his body was painted with various colours. When he thought fit to retire, a grave man came forward, who asked Tupia several questions, relating to the place from whence the vessel came, as, Who were the persons on board? whether they are bound? &c. After this it was proposed that the people in the boat should go on shore and trade with them, if they would lay aside their weapons; but the latter would not agree to this, unless the English would do the like. As this proposal was by no means an equal one, when it was considered that the hazard must for many reasons be greater to the boat's crew than the Indians, and as perfidy was dreaded, it was not complied with. Accordingly they declined landing, and sailed from hence to the southward, since neither the bay which the Endeavour entered nor any other part of the island furnished good harbour or anchorage.

The natives here are very tall, well made, and have long hair, which, like the inhabitants of the other islands, they tie in a bunch on the top of their heads; they are likewise tattooed in different parts of their bodies, but not on their posterioriors. The island does not shoot up into high peaks like the others that they visited, but is more level and uniform, and divided into small hillocks, some of which are covered with groves of trees; however, none of those bearing the bread-fruit were seen, and not many cocoa-trees, but a great number of those called Etoa, were seen on the sea coast of this island. Both the nature of their cloth and the manner of wearing it differed in many respects from what had been observed in the progress of our voyage. All the garments that these people wore were dyed yellow, and painted with a variety of colours on the outside. One piece formed their whole habit, having a hole in it through which they put their heads; this reached as far as their knees, and was tied round their bodies with a kind of yellowish substance. Some of them also wore caps of the same kind, as we have already mentioned, and others bound a piece of cloth which resembled a turban round their heads.

On the 15th, having a fine breeze, we sailed from this island; but on the 16th it was hazy, and we bore away for what resembled several high peaks of land. The weather clearing up, we were convinced of our mistake, and resumed our course accordingly. We saw a comet on the 30th, about four o'clock, which was then about 60 deg. above the horizon. Land was discovered at W. by N. on Thursday the 7th of Oct. and in the morning of the 8th we came to an anchorage opposite the mouth of a small river, scarcely half league distant from the coast.

The captain, Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, and some other gentlemen, having left the pinnace at the mouth of the river, proceeded a little farther when we landed, leaving the yawl to the care of some of our boys, and went up to a few small houses in the

neighbourhood. Some revealed themselves in the course of our absence from the pinnace and brandished their arms, alarming the boys, the The cockswain of the pinnace, however, was not over their heads, but following the boat; in walked his piece, and a spot. Struck with astonishment, the others accompanied, but as soon as they returned to the woods with the report of the gun, they returned to the boats, and returned immediately to the pinnace. On the 9th there were several of the place where they landed the preceding evening, and they appeared to be in a state of alarm, and yawl, being followed by Capt. Cook, with the yawl, went on shore to the river, over which the Indians were sitting on mats, and each producing either a piece of stone, with which they twist round, directed to speak to them, and were agreeably surprised to see the natives (speaking a different dialect) appeared to be very hostile, and the usual threatening words were fired at some distance, and happened to fall into the water, rather terrified, and having now drawn up to the side of the river, informed them of our design: to this they consented, and over to them to the other proposal was agreed to, unless they would quit their weapons, in token of friendship could make such a concession, and therefore to cross the river, the Indians to come over, and remained on one of them, followed by several others, and the beads and iron were barter, but proposed to us; which being observed several times to snatch our post-guard, from the instance they were still our endeavours were frustrated; and we were unable to understand, and hence would be punished, and them, nevertheless, had a dagger, when his retiring a few paces, his temerity cost him his life, and a musquet loaded with powder. Soon after the pinnace, and we returned to the yawl, and discharged our piece.

On account of the behaviour of the natives, we wanted of fresh water, and continued his voyage round the bay, and some of the natives might convey through their countrymen, and attend with disaffection to facilitate this design, and towards land, and giving them with our

neighbourhood. Some of the natives that had concealed themselves in the neighbourhood, took advantage of our absence from the boat, and rushed out, advancing and brandishing their wooden lances. This alarming the boys, they dropped down the stream. The cockswain of the pinnace then fired a musketoon over their heads, but it did not prevent them from following the boat; in consequence of which he leaped his piece, and shot one of them dead on the spot. Struck with astonishment at the death of their companion, the others remained motionless for some time, but as soon as they recovered their fright retreated to the woods with the utmost precipitation. The report of the gun brought the advanced party back to the boats, and both the pinnace and yawl returned immediately to the vessel.

On the 9th there were a great number of the natives near the place where the gentlemen in the yawl had landed the preceding evening, and the greatest part of them appeared to be unarmed. The long-boat, pinnace, and yawl, being manned with marines and sailors, Capt. Cook, with the rest of the gentlemen, and Tupia, went on shore, and landed on the opposite side of the river, over against a spot where several Indians were sitting on the ground. These immediately started up, and began to handle their weapons, which produced either a long pike, or a kind of trumpet, made of stone, with a string through the handle by which they twist round their wrists. Tupia was directed to speak to them in his language; and we were agreeably surprised to find that he was well understood, the natives speaking in his language, though in a different dialect. Their intentions at first appeared to be very hostile, brandishing their weapons in the usual threatening manner; upon which a musketoon was fired at some distance from them: the ball appeared to fall into the water, at which they appeared rather terrified, and desisted from their menaces. Having now drawn up the marines, we advanced nearer to the side of the river. Tupia again speaking, informed them of our desire to traffic with them for provisions: to this they consented, provided we would go over to them to the other side of the river. The proposal was agreed to, upon condition that the natives would quit their weapons; but the most solemn assurances of friendship could not prevail with them to make such a concession. Not thinking it prudent therefore to cross the river, we in our turn intreated the Indians to come over to us, and after some time prevailed on one of them so to do. He was presently surrounded by several others. They did not appear to value the beads and iron which we offered in the way of a barrier, but proposed to exchange their weapons for ours; which being objected to, they endeavoured several times to snatch our arms from us, but being kept on guard, from the information given us by Tupia that they were still our enemies, their attempts were repeatedly frustrated; and Tupia, by our directions, gave them to understand, that any further offers of violence would be punished with instant death. One of them, nevertheless, had the audacity to snatch Mr. Cook's dagger, when his back was turned to them, and retiring a few paces, flourished it over his head; but his temerity cost him his life, for Mr. Monkhouse fired a musquet loaded with ball, and he instantly dropped. Soon after they retreated slowly up the country, and we returned to our boats, having previously discharged our pieces loaded only with small

On account of the behaviour of the Indians, and our want of fresh water, Capt. Cook was induced to continue his voyage round the bay, with a hope of meeting some of the natives aboard, that by civil usage might convey through them a favourable idea of us to their countrymen, and thereby settle a good correspondence with them. An event occurred which, though attended with disagreeable circumstances, proved to facilitate this design. Two canoes appeared, sailing towards land, and Capt. Cook proposed intercepting them with our boats. One of them got

clear off, but the Indians in the other, finding it impossible to escape, began to attack our people in the boats with their paddles. This compelled the Endeavour's people to fire upon them, when four of the Indians were killed, and the other three, who were young men, jumped into the water, and endeavoured to swim to shore; they were, however, taken up, and conveyed on board. At first they discovered all the signs of fear and terror, thinking they should be killed; but Tupia, by repeated assurances of friendship, removed their apprehensions, and they afterwards eat heartily of the ship's provisions. Having retired to rest in the evening, they slept very quietly for some hours, but about midnight, their fears returning, they appeared in great agitation, frequently making loud and dismal groans. Again the kind caresses and friendly promises of Tupia operated so effectually, that they became calm, and sung a song, which at the dead of night had a pleasing effect. The next morning, after they were dressed according to the mode of their own country, and were ornamented with necklaces and bracelets, preparations were made for sending them to their countrymen, at which they expressed great satisfaction; but finding the boat approaching Capt. Cook's first landing-place, they intimated that the inhabitants were foes, and that after killing their enemies they always eat them. The captain, nevertheless, judged it expedient to land near the same spot, which he accordingly did, with Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, and Tupia, resolving at the same time to protect the youths from any injury that might be offered to them. These had scarcely departed on their return to their friends, when two large parties of Indians advanced hastily towards them, upon which they again flew to us for protection. When the Indians drew near, one of the boys discovered his uncle among them, and a conversation ensued across the river, in which the boy gave a just account of our hospitality, and took great pains to display his finery. A short time after this conversation, the uncle swam across the river, bringing with him a green bough, a token of friendship, which we received as such, and several presents were made him. Notwithstanding the presence of this relation, all three of the boys, by their own desire, returned to the ship; but as the captain intended to sail next morning, he sent them ashore in the evening.

At six o'clock in the morning of the 11th we weighed and set sail, in hopes of finding a better anchoring place, Capt. Cook having given the bay (called by the natives Toaneora) the name of Poverty Bay; and the S. W. point he called Young Nick's Head, on account of its first having been perceived by a lad named Nicholas Young. In the afternoon we were becalmed; and several canoes full of Indians came off from the shore, who received many presents, and afterwards bartered even their clothes, and some of their paddles, so eager were they to be possessed of European commodities. The Indians were armed with bludgeons, made of wood, and of the bone of a large animal: they were well contrived for close fighting, and bore the name of Patou-Patou. Having finished their traffic, they set off in such a hurry that they forgot three of their companions, who remained on board all night. These testified great fears and apprehensions, notwithstanding Tupia took much pains to convince them they were in no danger; and about seven o'clock the next morning a canoe came off, with four Indians on board. It was at first with difficulty the Indians in the ship could prevail on those in the canoe to come near them, and not till after the former had assured them that the English did not eat men. The chief came on board, whose face was tattooed, with a remarkable patou in his hand; and with this canoe the three Indians left the ship. Capt. Cook gave the name of Cape Table to a point of land about seven leagues to the S. of Poverty Bay; its figure greatly resembling a table; and the island, called by the natives Teahowry, he named Portland Island, it being very similar to that of the same name

in the British Channel. It is joined to the main by a chain of rocks, nearly a mile in length, partly above water. There are several shoals, called shambles, about three miles to the N. E. of Portland, one of which the Endeavour narrowly escaped; there is, however, a passage between them with 20 fathom water. Some parts of Portland Island, as well as the main, were cultivated; and pumice stone, in great quantities, lying along the shore, within the bay, indicated that there was a volcano in the island. High palings upon the ridges of hills were also visible in two places, the purposes of which seemed to be for religion.

On the 12th a number of Indians came off in a canoe, who were dishgured in a strange manner; these danced and sung, and at times appeared to be peaceably inclined, but at others to menace hostilities. Notwithstanding Tupia strongly invited them to come on board, none of them would quit the canoe. Whilst the Endeavour was getting clear of the shambles, five canoes full of Indians came off, and seemed to threaten the people on board, by brandishing their lances, and other hostile gestures. A four-pounder, loaded with grape-shot, was therefore ordered to be fired, but not pointed at them. This had the desired effect, and made them drop astern. Two more canoes came off whilst the Endeavour lay at anchor; the Indians in these behaved very peaceably and quiet; they received several presents, but would not come on board.

In the morning of the 13th we made for an inlet, but finding it not sheltered stood out again, and were chased by a canoe filled with Indians, but the Endeavour out-sailed them. She pursued her course round the bay, but did not find an opening. The next morning we had a view of the inland country. It was mountainous, and covered with snow in the interior parts, but the land towards the sea was flat and uncultivated, and in many places there were groves of high trees. Nine canoes full of Indians came from the snow, and five of them, after having consulted together, pursued the Endeavour, apparently with a hostile design. Tupia was desired to acquaint them, that immediate destruction would ensue, if they persevered in their attempts; but words had no influence, and a four-pounder, with grape shot, was fired, to give them some notion of the arms of their opponents. They were terrified at this kind of reasoning, and paddled away faster than they came. Tupia then hailed the fugitives, and acquainted them that if they came in a peaceable manner, and left their arms behind, no annoyance would be offered them: one of the canoes submitting to the terms, came along side the ship, and received many presents; but this friendly intercourse was soon interrupted by the return of the other canoes, who persisted in their menacing behaviour.

On the 15th some fishing-boats paid us a visit; these people conducted themselves in an amicable manner. Though the fish which they had on board had been caught so long that they were not eatable, Capt. Cook purchased them, merely for the sake of promoting a traffic with the natives. In the afternoon a canoe with a number of armed Indians came up, and one of them, who was remarkably cloathed with a black skin, found means to defraud the captain of a piece of red baize, under pretence of bartering the skin he had on for it. As soon as he got the baize into his possession, instead of giving the skin in return, agreeable to his bargain, he rolled them up together, and ordered the canoe to put off from the ship, turning a deaf ear to the repeated remonstrances of the captain against his unjust behaviour. After a short time this canoe, together with the fishing-boats which had put off at the same time, came back to the ship, and trade was again renewed. During this second traffic with the Indians, one of them unexpectedly seized Tupia's little boy, Taiyota, and pulling him into his canoe, instantly put off, and paddled away with the utmost speed; several muskets were immediately discharged at the people in the canoe, and one of them receiving a wound, they all let go the

boy, who before was held down in the bottom of the canoe. Taiyota, taking advantage of their confusion, immediately jumped into the sea, and swam back towards the Endeavour: he was taken on board without receiving any harm; but his strength was so much exhausted with the weight of his cloaths, that it was with great difficulty he reached the ship. In consequence of this attempt to carry off Taiyota, Capt. Cook called the cape off which it happened Cape Kidnappers, lying in latitude 39 deg. 43 min. S. and longitude 182 deg. 24 min. W. and is very distinguishtable by the high cliffs and white rocks that surround it. It forms the S. point of a bay, which was denominated Hawke's Bay, in honour of Admiral Hawke, and is distant from Portland Island about 13 leagues.

As soon as Taiyota had recovered from his fright he produced a fish, and informed Tupia that he intended to offer it to his Eatua, or God, in gratitude for his happy escape; this being approved of by the other Indian, the fish was cast into the sea. Captain Cook now passed by a small island, which was supposed to be inhabited only by fishermen, as it seemed to be barren, and Bare Island was the name given to it, and to a head-land in latitude 40 deg. 34 min. S. and longitude 182 deg. 55 min. W. because the Endeavour turned, he gave the name of Cape Turnagain. It was never certainly known whether New Zealand was an island before this vessel touched there; on the account the Lords of the Admiralty had intrusted Capt. Cook to sail along the coasts as far as 40 deg. S. and if the land extended farther to return to the northward again. It was for this reason that the captain altered his course, when he arrived at the cape above-mentioned: the wind having likewise veered about to the S. he returned, sailing along the coast nearly in his former track. Between this and Cape Kidnappers Bay the land is unequal, and somewhat resembles our downs and small villages, and many inhabitants were observed. The ship came abreast of a peninsula, in Portland Island, named Terakaka on Wednesday the 19th. At this time a canoe with five Indians came up to the vessel: there were two chiefs among them, who came on board, and staid all night. One of these was a very comely person, and had an open and agreeable countenance. They were extremely grateful for the presents which they received, and displayed no small degree of curiosity. They would not eat nor drink, but their attendants devoured the victuals set before them in a most voracious manner.

On the 19th we passed a remarkable head-land which we called Gable End Foreland. Three canoes appeared here, and one Indian came on board: during his stay we gave him some small presents.

Several of these Indians wore pieces of green stone round their necks, which were transparent, and resembled an emerald. These being examined, appeared to be a species of the nephritic stone. Several pieces were procured by Mr. Banks, and it appeared that they furnished the islanders with their principal ornaments. The form of some of their faces was agreeable; their noses were rather prominent than flat. Their language nearly resembled that of Otaheite, nor was their accent so guttural as that of others.

On the 20th we anchored in a bay two leagues to the N. of the Foreland. To this bay we were invited by the natives in canoes, who behaved very amicably and pointed to a place where they said we should find plenty of fresh water. We determined here to get some knowledge of the country, tho' the harbour not so good a shelter from the weather as we expected. Two chiefs whom we saw in the canoes came on board: they were dressed in jackets, the one ornamented with red feathers, the other with dogs-skin. They presented to them linen and some spike nails, but did not value the last so much as the inhabitants of other islands. The rest of the Indians traded with us without the least imposition, and we directed them to acquaint them of our views in coming thither.

promise that they should receive no injury, if they offered none to us. The chiefs returned in the afternoon, and towards the evening we went on shore, accompanied by the captain, Mr. Banks, and Dr. Solander. We were courteously received by the inhabitants, who did not appear in numerous bodies, and in other instances were scrupulously attentive not to give offence. We made them several small presents; and, in this agreeable tour round the bay, we had the pleasure of finding two streams of fresh water. We remained on shore all night, and the next day Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander discovered several birds, among which were quails and large pigeons. Many stages for drying fish were observed near where we landed, and some houses with fences. We saw dogs with pointed ears, and very ugly; also sweet potatoes, like those which grow in America. The cloth-plant grew spontaneous. In the neighbouring valleys, the lands were laid out in regular plantations; and in the bay we caught plenty of crabs, cray-fish, and horse-mackerel, larger than those upon the English coasts. The low lands were planted with cocoas, the hollows with gourds; but as to the woods, they were almost impassable, on account of the number of fiddle-jacks which grew there. We went into several of the houses belonging to the natives, who received us in a very polite manner, and without the least reserve shewed us whatever we desired to see. At other times we found them at their meals, which our presence never interrupted. At this season, fish constituted their chief food; with which they eat, instead of bread, roots of a kind of fern; which, when roasted upon a fire, are sweet and clammy, but taste not disagreeable, though rather unpleasant from the number of their fibres. They have doubtless an abundance of excellent vegetables in other seasons of the year.

The faces of the men were not in general painted; but they were daubed with dry red ochre from head to foot, their apparel not excepted. Though in personal cleanliness they were not equal to our friends at Otahiti, yet in some particulars they surpassed them: their dwellings were furnished with privies, and they had dunghills, upon which their offals and filth were deposited. The women of this place paint their faces with a mixture of red ochre and oil, which, as they are very plain, renders them in appearance more homely. This kind of daubing being generally wet upon their cheeks and foreheads, was easily transferred to those who saluted them, as was frequently visible upon the noses of our people. The young ones, who were complete coquets, wore a petticoat, under which was a girdle, made of the blades of grass, strongly perfumed, to which was pendant a small bunch of the leaves of some fragrant plant. Chastity is held in very little estimation. They resorted frequently to the watering-place, where they freely bestowed every favour that was requested. An officer meeting with an elderly woman, he accompanied her to her house, and having presented her with some cloth and beads, a young girl was singled out, with whom he was given to understand he might retire. Soon after an elderly man, with two women, came in as visitors, who with much formality saluted the whole company, after the custom of the place, which is by gently joining the tips of their noses together. On his return, which was on Saturday the 21st, he was furnished with a paddle, who, whenever they came to a brook or rivulet, took him on his back, to prevent his being wet. Many of the natives were curiously tattooed; an old man, in particular, was marked on the breast with various figures. One of them had an axe made of green stone, which we could not purchase, though many things were offered in exchange. These Indians at night danced in a very uncouth manner, with various gestures, lolling out their tongues, and making many grimaces. In their dances, old men are as performers as the young.

As Mr. Banks was rather apprehensive that we might be left on shore after it was dark, he applied the evening to the Indians for one of their canoes

to convey us on board the ship. This they granted with an obliging manner. We were eight in number, and not being used to a vessel that required a nice balance, we overfet her in the surf; no one, however, was drowned; but it was concluded, to prevent a similar accident, that half our number should go at one time. Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, Tupia, and Taiyota, were the first party who embarked again, and arrived safe at the ship, as did the remainder of our company, all not a little pleased with the good-nature of our Indian friends, who cheerfully contributed their assistance upon our second trip. During our stay on shore, several of them went out in their canoes, and trafficked with the ship's company. At first they preferred the cloth of Otahiti to that of Europe, but in the course of a day it decreased in its value 500 per cent. These people expressed strong marks of astonishment, when shewn the bark and her apparatus. This bay is called by the natives Tegadoo, and is situated in 38 deg. 10 min. S. latitude. We were now determined to quit it.

On Sunday the 22d, in the evening, we weighed anchor and put to sea, but the wind being contrary we stood for another bay a little to the S. called by the natives Tolaga, in order to complete our wood and water, and to extend our correspondence with the natives. We found a watering-place in a small cove a little within the S. point of the bay, which bore S. by E. distant about a mile. Several canoes with Indians trafficked with us for glass bottles in a very fair, honest manner.

On Monday the 23d, in the afternoon, we went on shore, accompanied by the captain, Mr. Banks, and Dr. Solander. We examined and found the water extremely good; also plenty of wood, and the natives shewed us as much civility as those from whom we had lately departed. At this watering-place we set up an astronomical quadrant, and took several solar and lunar observations.

In the morning of the 24th, Mr. Gore, and the marines, were sent on shore to guide the people employed in cutting wood and filling the calks with water. Capt. Cook, Mr. Banks, and the doctor, also went on shore: the latter were employed in collecting plants. In our walks through the vales, we saw many houses uninhabited, the natives residing chiefly in sheds, on the ridges of the hills, which are very steep. In a valley between two very high hills, we saw a curious rock that formed a large arch opposite the sea. This cavern was in length about 70 feet, in breadth 30, and near 50 in height, commanding a view of the bay, and hills on the other side, which had a very pleasing effect. Indeed, the whole country about the bay is agreeable beyond description, and, if properly cultivated, would be a most fertile spot. The hills are clothed with beautiful flowering shrubs, intermixed with a number of tall, stately palms, which perfume the air, making it perfectly odoriferous. Mr. Banks and the doctor, among other trees that yielded a fine transparent gum, discovered the cabbage-tree, the produce whereof, when boiled, was very good. We met with various kinds of edible herbage in great abundance, and many trees that produced fruit fit to eat. The plant from which the cloth is made is a kind of Hemerocallis; its leaves afford a strong glossy flax, equally adapted to cloathing and making of ropes. Near their houses sweet potatoes and plantains are cultivated.

We met an old man on our return, who entertained us with the military exercises of the natives, which are performed with the patoo-patoo and the lance. The former has been already mentioned, and is used as a battle-axe: the latter is 18 or 20 feet in length, made of extreme hard wood, and sharpened at each end. A stake was substituted for a supposed enemy. The old warrior first attacked him with his lance, advancing with a most furious aspect. Having pierced him, the patoo-patoo was used to demolish his head, at which he struck with a force which would at one blow have split any man's skull: from whence we

concluded no quarter was given by these people in time of action to their foes.

The number of natives here are by no means considerable. They are tolerably well shaped, but lean and tall: their faces resemble those of the Europeans; their noses are aquiline, their eyes dark coloured, their hair black, which is tied upon the top of their heads, and the men's beards are of a moderate length. Their tattooing is done very curiously, in various figures, which makes their skins resemble carving; it is confined to the principal men, the females and servants using only red paint, with which they daub their faces, that otherwise would not be disagreeable. Their cloth is white, glossy, and very even; it is worn principally by the men, though it is wrought by the women, who indeed are condemned to labour and drudgery.

On the 25th we set up the armourers forge on shore for necessary uses, and got our wood and water without the least molestation from the natives, with whom we exchanged glass bottles and beads for different sorts of fish. Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander went again in search of plants; Tupia, who was with them, engaged in a conversation with one of the priests, and they seemed to agree in their opinions upon the subject of religion. Tupia, in the course of this conference, enquired whether the report of their eating men was founded in truth; to which the priest answered, it was, but that they eat none but declared foes, after they were killed in war. That they carried their resentment even beyond death was apparent from this savage idea.

On the 27th Capt. Cook and Dr. Solander went to inspect the bay, when the doctor was not a little surprised to find the natives in the possession of a boy's top, which they knew how to spin by whipping it, and he purchased it out of curiosity. Mr. Banks was during this time employed in attaining the summit of a steep hill, that had previously engaged their attention, and near it he found many inhabited houses. There were two rows of poles, about 14 or 15 feet high, covered over with sticks, which made an avenue of about five feet in width, extending near 100 yards down the hill, in an irregular line: the intent of this erection was not discovered. When the gentlemen met at the watering-place, the Indians sang their war song, which was a strange medley of shouting, sighing, and grimace, at which the women allided.

The next day Capt. Cook, and other gentlemen, went upon the island at the entrance of the bay, and met with a canoe that was 67 feet in length, six in breadth, and four in height; her bottom, which was sharp, consisted of three trunks of trees, and the sides and head were curiously carved. We also came to a large unfinished house. The posts which supported it were ornamented with carvings, that did not appear to be done upon the spot, and as the inhabitants seem to set great value upon works of this kind, future navigators might find their advantage in carrying such articles to trade with. Though the posts of this house were judged to be brought here, the people seemed to have a taste for carving, as their boats, paddles, and tops of walking-sticks evince. Their favourite figure is a volute, or spiral, which is sometimes single, double, and triple, and is done with great exactness, though the only instruments we saw were, an axe made of stone, and a chissel. Their taste, however, is extremely whimsical. Their huts are built under trees, their form is an oblong square; the door low on the side, and the windows are at the ends; reeds covered with thatch compose the walls; the beams of the eaves, which come to the ground, are covered with thatch; most of the houses had been deserted, through fear of the English, upon their landing. There are many beautiful parrots, and great numbers of birds of different kinds, particularly one whose note resembles the European black-bird; but here is no ground-fowl, or poultry, nor any quadrupeds, except rats and dogs, and these were not numerous. The dogs are considered as delicate food, and their skins serve for ornaments to their apparel. There

is a great variety of fish in the bay; shell and crustaceous fish (some of which weigh near 12 pounds) are very plentiful.

Sunday, October 29th, we set sail from this bay. It is situate in latitude 38 deg. 22 min. S. four leagues to the N. of Gable End Foreland: there are two high rocks at the entrance of the bay, which form a cover very good for procuring wood and water. There is a high rocky island off the N. point of the bay, which affords good anchorage, having a fine sandy bottom, and from 7 to 13 fathom water, and is likewise sheltered from all but the N. E. wind. We obtained nothing here in trade but some sweet potatoes, and a little fish. This is a very hilly country, though it presents the eye with an agreeable verdure, various woods, and many small plantations. Mr. Banks found a great number of trees in the woods, quite unknown to Europeans; the fire-wood resembled the maple tree, and produced a gum of whitish colour; other trees yielded a gum of a deep yellow green. Notwithstanding the soil appears very proper for producing every species of vegetables, their only roots were yams and sweet potatoes.

On Monday the 30th, sailing to the northward, we fell in with a small island about a mile distant from the N. E. point of the main, and this being the most eastern part of it, the captain named it East Cape, and the island East Island: it was but small, and appeared barren. The cape is in latitude 37 deg. 42 min. 30 sec. S. There are many small bays from Tolaga Bay to East Cape. Having doubled the cape, many villages presented themselves to view, and the adjacent land appeared cultivated. This evening Lieut. Hicks discovered a bay, to which his name was given.

On the 31st, about nine, several canoes came off from shore with a number of armed men, who appeared to have hostile intentions. Before they had reached the ship, another canoe, larger than any that had yet been seen, full of armed Indians, came off, and made towards the Endeavour with great expedition. The captain now judging it expedient to prevent, if possible, their attacking him, ordered a gun to be fired over their heads: this not producing the desired effect, another gun was fired with ball, which threw them into such consternation, that they immediately returned much faster than they came. This precipitate retreat induced the captain to give the cape, off which it happened, the name of Cape Runaway: it lies in latitude 37 deg. 32 min. S. and longitude 181 deg. 48 min. W. We also found that the land, which during this day's run appeared like an island, was one, and we named the same White Island.

On the 1st of November, at day-break, not less than between 40 and 50 canoes were seen, several of which came off as before, threatening to attack the Endeavour. One of their chiefs flourished his pike, and made several harangues, seeming to bid defiance to those on board the vessel. At last, after repeated invitations they came close along-side; but instead of the usual disposition to trade, the haranguing chief uttered a sentence, and took up a stone, which he threw against the ship, and immediately after they seized their arms. They were informed by Tupia, of the dreadful consequences of commencing hostilities; but this admonition they seemed little to regard. A piece of eloquence, however, happening to attract their eyes, they began to be more mild and reasonable. A quantity of dried fish, mufcles, and conger-eels was now purchased, and fraud was attempted by this company of Indians, some others that came after them took goods from the vessel without making proper returns. As one of them that had rendered himself remarkable for these practices, and seemed proud of his skill in them, was going off with his canoe, a musquet was fired over his head, which circumstance produced good order for the present: yet when those savages began to traffic with the sailors, they renewed their frauds, and one of them was bold enough to seize some linen that was hung dry, and run away with it. In order to induce his return, a musquet was first fired over his head,

this not answering the
with small shot, yet he
This being perceived
western, and set up th
quence of their behavi
parations to attack the
to fire a four-pounder,
effect on the water ter
retreated to the shore w
In the afternoon, abo
pretty high island to t
perceiving other rocks
not being able to w
we bore up between
in the evening a doub
fishion as those of Ota
entered into a friendly c
and was told that the
was called Mowtohora.
the main land, pretty h
We imagined the disposi
talk with Tupia, to be i
that they began their u
of stones into the shi
W. of this island, up
centre of a large plain,
to which we gave the n
is very conspicuous, an
min. longitude 193 q
On the 2d, in the m
appeared, and one, whic
had pelted us the night b
with Tupia, and U
they complimented
ness. We returned th
which made them infla
between ten and eleven
land and the main land
of a moderate height, bu
and villages. The villag
the sea, more exten
surrounded by a dicit
the top of it. There we
embled forts, and the w
being tolerably well defe
On the 3d we passed the
which Capt. Cook name
the morning, distant fr
discovered a cluster of s
Court of Aldermen. Th
the main, between whic
isly barren, but very hi
and was now much chang
barren, and the country
chief who governs the dist
this coast was named
three canoes, built differ
ned, came along-side the
med of the trunks of w
burning; but they wer
more ornamented. We
that had been discovere
from fathom water, the th
number of canoes, and t
not seem disposed for
of hostility. A bird
we, some Indians, with
ought it on board; an
tain gave them a piece
mented upon them in a d
pected; for, when it was
distance, and endeavoure
anchor; and notwithstanding
at them, they seemed
attered. They even thro
ming; on Sunday night
when they found the shi
ly, they immediately rec
day-break on the 4th a
appearance, containin

this not answering the end, he was shot in the back with small shot, yet he still persevered in his design. This being perceived by his countrymen, they dropped their arms, and set up the song of defiance. In consequence of their behaviour, though they made no preparations to attack the vessel, the captain gave orders to fire a four-pounder, which passed over them; but its effect on the water terrified them so much, that they retreated to the shore with the utmost precipitation.

In the afternoon, about two o'clock, we discovered a pretty high island to the westward. Some time after perceiving other rocks and islands in the same quarter, but not being able to weather them before night, we bore up between them and the main land. In the evening a double canoe, built after the same fashion as those of Otaheite, came up, when Tupia entered into a friendly conversation with the Indians, and was told that the island, close to which we lay, was called Mowtohora. It was but a few miles from the main land, pretty high, but of no great extent. We imagined the disposition of the Indians, from their talk with Tupia, to be in our favour, but when it was dark they began their usual salute, by pouring a volley of stones into the ship, and then retreated. S. W. W. of this island, upon the main land, and in the centre of a large plain, is a high circular mountain, which we gave the name of Mount Edgucumbe. It is very conspicuous, and is seated in latitude 37 deg. 7 min. longitude 193 deg. 7 min.

On the 2d, in the morning, a number of canoes appeared, and one, which proved to be the same that had pelted us the night before, came up. After conferring with Tupia, and behaving peaceably about an hour, they complimented us with another volley of shot. We returned the salute by firing a musket, which made them instantly take to their paddles. Between ten and eleven we sailed between a low flat island and the main land. The last appeared to be of moderate height, but level, full of plantations and villages. The villages were upon the high land near the sea, more extensive than any we had seen, and surrounded by a ditch, and a bank with rails on the top of it. There were some inclosures that resembled forts, and the whole had the appearance of being tolerably well defended.

On the 3d we passed the night near a small island, which Capt. Cook named the Mayor; and at seven in the morning, distant from hence about six leagues, we discovered a cluster of small islands, which we called the Court of Aldermen. These were twelve miles from the main, between which were other small islands, mostly barren, but very high. The aspect of the main land was now much changed, the soil appearing to be barren, and the country very thinly inhabited. The chief who governs the district from Cape Turnagain in this coast was named Teratu. In the afternoon three canoes, built differently from those already mentioned, came along-side the Endeavour. They were formed of the trunks of whole trees, rendered hollow by burning; but they were not carved, nor in any manner ornamented. We now sailed towards an inlet that had been discovered, and having anchored in seven fathom water, the ship was soon surrounded by a number of canoes, and the people on board them did not seem disposed for some time to commit any act of hostility. A bird being shot by one of our crew, some Indians, without shewing any surprise, brought it on board; and, for their civility, the captain gave them a piece of cloth. But this favour granted upon them in a different manner than was expected; for, when it was dark, they began a song of defiance, and endeavoured to carry off the buoy of anchor; and notwithstanding some muskets were fired at them, they seemed rather to be irritated than to be deterred. They even threatened to return the next morning; on Sunday night eleven of them were seen, when they found the ship's crew were upon their shore, they immediately retired.

At day-break on the 4th about twelve canoes made their appearance, containing near 200 men, armed

with spears, lances, and stones, who seemed determined to attack the ship, and would have boarded her, had they known on what quarter they could best have made their attack. While they were paddling round her, which kept the crew upon the watch in the rain, Tupia, at the request of the captain, used a number of dissuasive arguments, to prevent their carrying their apparent designs into execution; but we could only pacify them by the fire of our muskets: they then laid aside their hostile intentions, and began to trade; yet they could not refrain from their fraudulent practices, for after they had fairly bartered two of their weapons, they would not deliver up a third, for which they had received cloth, and only laughed at those who demanded an equivalent. The offender was wounded with small shot; but his countrymen took no notice of him, and continued to trade without any discomposure. When another canoe was struck for their mal-practices, the natives behaved in the same manner; but if a round was fired over or near them, they all paddled away. Thus we found that theft and chicane were as prevalent among the inhabitants of New Zealand as those of Otaheite. In searching for an anchoring place, the captain saw a fortified village upon a high point, and having fixed upon a proper spot, he returned; upon which we weighed, ran in nearer to the shore, and cast anchor upon a sandy bottom, in four fathom and a half water. The S. point of the bay bore due E. distant one mile, and a river distant a mile and a half, which the boats can enter at low water S. S. E.

On the 5th, in the morning, the Indians came off to the ship again, who behaved much better than they had done the preceding day. An old man in particular, named Tojava, testified his prudence and honesty, to whom, and a friend with him, the captain presented some nails, and two pieces of English cloth. Tojava informed us, that they were often visited by free-booters from the north, who stripped them of all they could lay their hands on, and at times made captives of their wives and children; and that being ignorant who the English were upon their first arrival, the natives had been much alarmed, but were now satisfied of their good intentions. He added, that for their security against those plunderers, their houses were built contiguous to the tops of the rocks, where they could better defend themselves. Probably their poverty and misery may be ascribed to the ravages of those who frequently stripped them of every necessary of life. Having dispatched the long-boat and pinnace into the bay to haul and dredge for fish, but with little success, the Indians on the banks testified their friendship by every possible means. They brought us great quantities of fish dressed and dried, which, though indifferent, we purchased, that trade might not be discouraged. They also supplied us with wood and good water. While we were out with our guns, the people who staid by the boats saw two of the natives fight. The battle was begun with their lances; but some old men taking these away, they were obliged to decide the quarrel, like Englishmen, with their fists. For some time they boxed with great vigour and perseverance, but at length they all retired behind a little hill, so that our people were prevented from seeing the issue of the combat. At this time the Endeavour was heeled, and her bottom scrubbed in the bay, as she was very foul.

On the 8th we were visited by several canoes, in one of which was Tojava, who, desiring two canoes, hastened back again to the shore, apprehending they were freebooters; but, finding his mistake, he soon returned; and the Indians supplied us with as much excellent fish as served the whole ship's company. This day a variety of strange plants were collected by Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander. They staid on shore till near dark, when they observed how the natives disposed of themselves during the night. They had no shelter but a few shrubs. The men lay nearest the sea; and the women and children most distant from it.

extensive as Ulitea. Several canoes filled with Indians, came along-side here, and the Indians sang their war song, but the Endeavour's people paying them no attention, they threw a volley of stones, and then paddled away; however they presently returned their insults. Tupia spoke to them, making use of his old arguments, that inevitable destruction would ensue if they persisted; they answered by brandishing their weapons, intimating, that if the English durst come on shore they would destroy them all. Tupia still continued in expostulating with them, but to no purpose; and they soon gave another volley of stones; but upon a musquet being fired at one of their boats, they made a precipitate retreat. We cast anchor in 23 fathom water in the evening, and early the next morning sailed up an inlet. Soon after two canoes came off, and some of the Indians came on board: they knew Tajava very well, and called Tupia by his name. Having received from us some presents, they retired, peaceably and perfectly satisfied to all appearance.

We came to an anchor in the bay called by the natives Ooshaouragee. On Monday the 20th, after having run five leagues from the place where we had anchored the night before. Capt. Cook, Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, and others set off in the pinnace to examine the bottom of the bay, and found the inlet end of a river, about nine miles above the ship. We entered into the same with the first of the flood, and before we had proceeded three miles, the water was perfectly fresh. Here we saw an Indian town, built upon a small dry sand-bank, and entirely surrounded by a deep mud, the inhabitants of which with much cordiality invited us to land and gave us a most friendly reception. We were now fourteen miles up the river, and finding little alteration in the face of the country, we landed on the west side to examine the lofty trees which adorned its banks, and were of a kind that we had not seen before. At the entrance of a wood we met with one ninety-eight feet high from the ground, quite straight, and nineteen feet in circumference; and as we advanced we found others still larger. The wood of these trees is very heavy, not fit for masts but would make exceeding fine planks. Our carpenter, who was with us, observed, that the timber resembled that of the pitch pine which is lightened by tapping. There were also trees of other kinds, all unknown to us, specimens of which we brought away. We re embarked about three o'clock with the first of the ebb, and Capt. Cook gave to the river the name of the Thames, it having a resemblance to the river of that name in England. It is not so deep, but it is as broad as the Thames is at Greenwich, and the tide of flood is as strong. On the evening of the 21st we reached the ship, happy at being on board, but all extremely tired.

Wednesday the 22d, early in the morning, we made sail, and kept plying till the flood obliged us once more to come to an anchor. The Captain and Dr. Solander went on shore to the west, but made no observations worth relating. After these gentlemen departed, the ship was surrounded with canoes, which kept Mr. Banks on board, that he might trade with the Indians, who bartered their arms and cloaths for paper, taking no unfair advantages. But though they were in general honest in their dealings, one of them took a fancy to a half minute glass, and being detected in secreting the same, it was resolved to give him a smatch of the cat-o-nine tails. The Indians interferred to stop the current of justice; but being opposed they got their arms from their canoes, and some of the people in them attempted to get on board. Mr. Banks and Tupia now coming upon deck, the Indians applied to Tupia, who informed them of the nature of the offender's intended punishment, and that he had no interference over Mr. Hicks, the commanding officer. They appeared pacified, and the criminal received not only a dozen, but afterwards a good drubbing from an old man, who was thought to be his father. The canoes immediately went off, the Indians saying, they should be afraid to return again on board. Tupia, however brought them back, but they seemed to have lost that

confidence which they before reposed in us. Their day was short, and after their departure we saw them not again, though they had promised to return with some fish to us.

Thursday the 23d, the weather still continuing unfavourable, and the wind contrary, we kept plying down the river, anchoring between the tides; and at the north-west extremity of the Thames, we passed a point of land which the captain called Point Rodney; and another, at the north-east extremity, when we entered the bay, he named Cape Colville, in honour of Lord Colville. Not being able to approach land, we had but a distant view of the main for a course of near thirty miles. Under the name of the river Thames, the captain comprehended the whole bay. Cape Colville is to be distinguished by a high rock, and lies in 36 deg. 26 min. of south latitude, and 194 deg. 27 min. west longitude. The Thames runs south by east from the southern point of the cape. In some parts it is three leagues over, for about fourteen leagues, after which it becomes narrower. In some parts of the bay the water is 26 fathoms deep; the depth diminishes gradually, and in general the anchorage is good. To some islands that shelter it from the sea Captain Cook gave the name of Barrier Islands; they stretch north-west and south east ten leagues. The country seemed to be thinly inhabited; the natives are well made, strong, and active; their bodies are painted with red ocre, and their canoes ornamented with carved work, and very ingeniously constructed.

Friday the 24th, we continued steering along the shore, between the islands and the main; and in the evening anchored in an open bay, in about fourteen fathom water. Here we caught a large number of fish of the sciennie, or bream kind, enough to supply the whole ship's company with provision for two days. From our success Capt. Cook named this place Bream Bay, and the extreme points at the north end of the bay he called Bream Head. Several pointed rocks stand in a range upon the top of it, and some small islands which lie before it were called the Hen and Chickens. It is situated in latitude 35 deg. 46 min. seventeen leagues north-west of Cape Colville. There is an extent of land about thirty miles, between Point Rodney and Bream Head, woody and low. No inhabitants were visible; but we concluded it was inhabited from the fires perceived at night.

We left the bay on the 25th, early in the morning, and continued our course slowly to the northward, at noon our latitude was 36 deg. 36 min. south, and we saw some islands which we named the Poor Knights, at north-east by north, distant three leagues; the northernmost land in sight bore N. N. W. we were now at the distance of two miles from the shore, and had twenty-six fathom water. Upon the islands were a few towns that appeared fortified, and the land seemed well inhabited round them.

Towards night on the 26th, seven large canoes came off to us, with about two hundred men. Some of the Indians came on board, and let us know, that they had an account of our arrival. These were followed by two larger canoes, adorned with carving. The Indians, after having held a conference, came a-long side of the vessel. They were armed with various weapons, and seemed to be of the higher order. Their patoo-patoos were made of stone and whale-bone, ornamented with dog's hair, and were held in high estimation. Their complexion was darker than that of those to the south, and their faces were stained with amoco. They were given to pilfering, of which one of them gave an instance pretending to barter a piece of talc, wrought into the shape of an axe, for a piece of cloth; nor was he disposed to fulfill his agreement, till we compelled him to do it, by firing a musquet over his head, which brought him back to the ship, and he returned the cloth. At three in the afternoon we passed a remarkable high point of land, bearing west, and it was called Cape Brett, in honour of Sir Piercy Brett. At the point of this cape is a round high hillock, and north-east by north, distant about a mile, is a curious arched rock like that which has been already described. This

cape or at least part of it, is called by the natives Motugogo, and lies in 35 deg. 10 min. 30 sec. fourth latitude, and in 185 deg. 23 min. west longitude. To the south-west by west is a bay, in which is many small islands, and the point at the north-west entrance the captain named Point Pococke. There are many villages on the main as well as on the islands, which appeared well inhabited, and several canoes filled with Indians made to the ship, and in the course of bartering shewed the same inclination to defraud as their neighbours. These Indians were strong and well proportioned; their hair black, and tied up in a bunch stuck with feathers: their chiefs had garments made of fine cloth, decorated with dog's skin; and they were tattooed like those whom we had seen before.

In the morning of Monday the 27th, we found ourselves within a mile of many small islands, laying close under the main, at the distance of twenty-two miles from Cape Brett. Here we lay anxiety two hours, during which time several canoes came off from the islands, which we called Cavalles, the name of some fish which we purchase of the Indians. These people were very insolent, using many frantic gestures, and pelting us with stones. Nor did they give over their insults, till some small shot hit one who had a stone in his hand. A general terror was now spread among them, and they all made a very precipitate retreat. For several days the wind was so very unfavourable, that the vessel rather lost ground than gained any.

Having, on the 29th, weathered Cape Brett, we bore away to leeward, and got into a large bay, where we anchored on the south-west side of several islands, and suddenly came into four fathoms and a half water. Upon sounding, we found we had got upon a bank, and accordingly weighed and dropped over it, and anchored again in ten fathoms and a half, after which we were surrounded by thirty-three large canoes, containing near three hundred Indians all armed. Some of them were admitted on board, and captain Cook gave a piece of broad cloth to one of the chiefs, and some small presents to the other. They traded peaceably for some time, being terrified at the fire-arms, with the effects of which they were not unacquainted; but whilst the captain was at dinner, on a signal given by one of the chiefs, all the Indians quitted the ship, and attempted to tow away the buoy; a musquet was now fired over them, but it produced no effect; small shot was then fired at them, but it did not reach them. A musquet loaded with ball, was therefore ordered to be fired, and Otegoogoo (son of one of the chiefs) was wounded in the thigh by it, which induced them immediately to throw the buoy overboard. To complete their confusion, a round shot was fired, which reached the shore, and as soon as they landed they ran in search of it. If these Indians had been under any kind of military discipline, they might have proved a much more formidable enemy; but acting thus, without any plan or regulation, they only exposed themselves to the annoyance of the fire-arms, whilst they could not possibly succeed in any of their designs. The Captain, Mr. Banks, and Dr. Solander, landed upon the island, and the Indians in the canoes soon after came on shore. The gentlemen were in a small cove, and were presently surrounded by near 400 armed Indians; but the captain not suspecting any hostile design on the part of the natives, remained peaceably disposed. The gentlemen, marching towards them, drew a line, intimating that they were not to pass it: they did not infringe upon this boundary for some time; but at length, they sang the song of defiance, and began to dance, whilst a party attempted to draw the Endeavour's boat on shore, these signals for an attack being immediately followed by the Indians breaking in upon the line; the gentlemen judged it time to defend themselves, and accordingly the captain fired his musquet, loaded with small shot, which was seconded by Mr. Banks's discharging his piece, and two of the men followed his example. This threw the Indians into confusion, and they retreated, but were rallied again by one of the chiefs, who shouted and waved his patoo-patoo. The Doctor

now pointed his musquet at this hero, and hit him: this stopped his career, and he took to flight with the other Indians. They retired to an eminence in a collected body, and seemed dubious whether they should return to the charge. They were now at too great a distance for a ball to reach them, but these operations being observed from the ship, she brought her broadside to bear and by firing over them, soon dispersed them. The Indians had in their skirmish two of their people wounded, but none killed: peace being thus restored, the gentlemen began to gather celery and other herbs, but suspecting that some of the natives were lurking about with evil designs, they repaired to a cave, which was at a small distance. Here they found the chief, who had that day received a present from the Captain: he came forth with his wife and brother, and solicited their clemency. It appeared that one of the wounded Indians was a brother of this chief, who was under great anxiety lest the wound should prove mortal, but his grief was in a great degree alleviated, when he was made acquainted with the different effects of small shot and ball; he was at the same time assured, that upon any farther hostilities being committed, ball would be used. This interview terminated very cordially, after some trifling presents were made to the chief and his companions. The prudence of the gentlemen cannot be much commended: for had these 400 Indians boldly rushed in upon them at once with their weapons, the musquetry could have done very little execution; but supposing twenty or thirty of the Indians had been wounded, as it does not appear their pieces were loaded with ball, but only small shot, there would have remained a sufficient number to have massacred them, as it appears they do not give any quarter, and none could have been expected upon this occasion. It is true, when the ship brought her broadside to bear, the might have made great havoc amongst the Indians; but this would have been too late to save the party on shore. Being in their boats, the English rowed to another part of the same island, when landing and gaining an eminence, they had a very agreeable and romantic view of a great number of small islands, well inhabited and cultivated. The inhabitants of an adjacent town approached unarmed, and testified great humility and submission. Some of the party on shore who had been very violent for having the Indians punished for their fraudulent conduct, were now guilty of trespasses equally reprehensible, having forced into some of the plantations and dug up potatoes. The captain, upon this occasion shewed strict justice in punishing each of the offenders with twelve lashes: one of them being very refractory upon this occasion, and complaining of the hardship, thinking an Englishman had a right to plunder an Indian with impunity, received, for his reward, six additional lashes.

It being a dead calm on the 30th, two boats were sent to sound the harbour; when many canoes came up and traded with great probity; the gentlemen went again on shore and met with a very civil reception from the natives; and this friendly intercourse continued all the time they remained in the bay, which was several days. Being upon a visit to the old chief, he shewed them the instruments used in tattooing, which were very like those employed at Otaheite upon the like occasion. They saw the man who had been wounded by the ball, when the attempt was made to carry off the ship's buoy; and though it had gone through the fleshy part of his arm, it did not seem to give him the least uneasiness or pain.

We weighed anchor on Tuesday the 5th of December, in the morning, but were soon becalmed, and a strong current setting towards the shore, we were driven in with such rapidity, that we expected every moment to be run upon the breakers, which appeared about water not more than a cable's length distance, and we were so near the land, that Tupia, who was totally ignorant of the danger, held a conversation with the Indians, who were standing on the beach. We were happily relieved however, from this alarming situation by a fresh breeze suddenly springing up from the shore

shore. The bay was of islands, on account of which we caught but procured great plenty, extremely expert in fishing in the form of their traps; they were of such length, and remarkable for such plenty that it was yards without meeting them. These people did not seem of any particular value to live in a standing their villages from the south, and according to their

There were several canoes in the bay, and by we found our way in the afternoon we saw several of the canoes but a light breeze sprang up. The next morning we were attacked and stood in distant nearly six leagues were in with the landward of the Caval bay, which was named there is formed by five miles, and which is called. The wind was steered for the westward got the length of it calm we were visited having heard of our however we bought them, by the assistance two days sail from where the land chain south extended no concluded to be the he called Cape Maria ed us, that to the sensitive country distant the named Ulimar hogs, called in their which the chief who in given them.

A breeze sprung off to the north, and to be 34 deg. 44 min. morning the land, low and barren, but forms a peninsula,

January the 1st 1770
A full description
turns to Cape
particulars—The
departure of the
Zealand—its first
dress, ornaments,
dign, and language

A. D. 1770. On and stood to the eastward; found our distance eleven leagues; and about four leagues water. On the 3d, trending away to the naked eye. It we met with a vic

shore. The bay which we had left was called the Bay of Islands, on account of the numerous islands it contains; we caught but few fish while we lay there, but procured great plenty from the natives, who were extremely expert in fishing, and displayed great ingenuity in the form of their nets, which were made of a kind of grass; they were two or three hundred fathoms in length, and remarkably strong, and they have them in such plenty that it is scarcely possible to go a hundred yards without meeting with numbers lying in heaps. These people did not appear to be under the government of any particular chief or sovereign, and they seemed to live in a perfect state of friendship, notwithstanding their villages were fortified. The flood comes from the south, and there is a current from the west; according to their observations on the tides.

There were several observations made of the sun and moon, on the 7th of December, being Thursday, whereby we found our latitude to be 185 deg. 36 min. west. In the afternoon we were close under the Cavalles. Several of the canoes put off and followed the Endeavour, but a light breeze springing up, we did not wait for them. The next morning, being the 8th, at ten o'clock we tacked and stood in for the shore, from which we were distant nearly six leagues. By day-light on the 9th we were in with the land, about seven leagues to the westward of the Cavalles; and soon after came to a deep bay, which was named Doubtless Bay. The entrance thereto is formed by two points, distant from each other five miles, and which lie west north-west and east south-east. The wind preventing us putting in here, we steered for the westernmost land in sight, and before we got the length of it, we were becalmed. During the calm we were visited by several canoes; but the Indians having heard of our guns, were afraid to come on board; however we bought some of their fish, and learned from them, by the assistance of Tupia, that we were about two days sail from a place called Moore Whennua, where the land changed its shape, and turning to the south extended no more westward. This place was concluded to be the land discovered by Tasman, which he called Cape Maria Van Diemen. They also informed us, that to the north-north-west there was an extensive country discovered by their ancestors, which they named Ulimaroa, where inhabitants lived upon hogs, called in their language Booha, the very name which those who inhabited the South-sea Islands had given them.

A breeze sprung up on Sunday the 10th, we stood off to the north, and found by observation our latitude to be 34 deg. 44 min. south. On the 11th, early in the morning the land, with which we stood in, appeared low and barren, but not destitute of inhabitants. It forms a peninsula, which the captain called Knuckle

Point, and the bay that lies contiguous thereto he named Sandy Bay. In the middle of this is a high mountain, which we called Mount Camel, on account of its resemblance to that animal. We saw one village on the west side of this mount, and another on the east side. Several canoes put off but could not reach the ship, which tacked, and stood to the northward, till the afternoon of the 12th, when she stood to the north-east. Towards night we were brought under double reefed topails; and in the morning it was so tempestuous as to split the main topail and the fore mizen-top sails. Early in the morning of the 14th we saw land to the southward, at the distance of eight or nine leagues; and on the 15th we tacked and stood to the westward. On the 16th we discovered land from the mast head, bearing south-south-west.

On Sunday the 17th we tacked in thirty-five fathom, and found we had not gained one inch to windward the last twenty-four hours. We saw a point of land, the northern extremity of New Zealand, which Capt. Cook named North Cape. It lies in latitude 34 deg. 22 min. south, and in 185 deg. 55 min. west longitude; we continued standing off and on till the 23d, when about seven o'clock we discovered land bearing south half east. On the 24th we saw the same land south-east by south four leagues distant, which we judged to be the Islands of the Three Kings. The chief of these is in latitude 34 deg. 12 min. south, and 187 deg. 48 min. west longitude, and distant about 14 and 15 leagues from North Cape. Mr. Banks went out in the long-boat and shot some birds that nearly resembled geese, and they were very good eating.

On Christmas-day, December the 25th, we tacked, and stood to the southward. On the 26th we had no land in sight, and were twenty leagues to the westward of North Cape. At mid-night we tacked and stood to the northward. On the 27th it blew a storm from the east, accompanied with heavy showers of rain, which compelled us to bring the ship to, under her main-sail. The gale continued till Thursday the 28th, when it fell about two o'clock in the morning; but at eight increased to a hurricane, with a prodigious sea. At noon the gale somewhat abated, but we had still heavy squalls. On the 29th, in the evening, we wore and stood to the north-west.

On Saturday the 30th, we saw land bearing north-east, which we concluded to be Maria van Diemen; and it corresponded with the account we had received of it from the Indians. We wore at mid-night, and stood to the south-east. On the 31st we tacked at seven in the evening, and stood to the westward. We were now distant from the nearest land about three leagues, and had forty fathom water and upwards.

C H A P. VII.

January the 1st 1770, the Endeavour continues her voyage round North Cape to Queen Charlotte's Sound—A full description of that part of the coast—Transactions in the sound—She sails between two islands, and returns to Cape Turnagain—A shocking custom of the inhabitants—A visit to a Hippab, and other remarkable particulars—The circum-navigation of this country completed—The coast and Admiralty Bay described—The departure of the Endeavour from New Zealand, and other remarkable particulars—A descriptive account of New Zealand—Its first discovery by Tasman—Situation and productions—An account of the inhabitants—Their dress, ornaments, and manner of life—Their canoes, navigation, tillage, weapons, music, government, religion, and language—The arguments in favour of a Southern Continent set aside.

A. D. 1770. **O**N New Year's Day, being Monday, at six in the morning, we tacked, and stood to the eastward. At noon we stood to the westward; found our latitude to be 34 deg. 37 min. south; our distance from the Three Kings ten or eleven leagues; and from Cape Maria van Diemen about four leagues and an half, in fifty-four fathom water. On the 3d we saw land; it was high and flat, trending away to the south-east, beyond the reach of the naked eye. It is remarkable, that at midsummer we met with a violent gale of wind, in latitude 350

south; and that we were three weeks in getting ten leagues to the westward, and five weeks in getting fifty leagues, for it was so long since we passed Cape Brett at this time.

Thursday the 4th we stood along shore. The coast appeared sandy, barren, dreary, and inhospitable. Steering northward on the 6th we saw land again, which we supposed to be Cape Maria. On the 7th we had light breezes, and were at times becalmed, when we saw a sun-fish, short and thick, with two large fins, but scarcely any tail, resembling a shark

On the 12th of July, three Indians visited Tupia's tent, and after remaining some time, went for two others, whom they introduced by name. Some fish was offered them, but they seemed not much to regard it; after eating a little, they gave the remainder to Mr. Banks's dog. Some ribbands which had been given them, to which medals were suspended round their necks, were so changed by smoke, that it was difficult to judge what colour they had been, and the smoke had made their skins look darker than their natural colour, from whence it was thought that they had slept close to their fires, as a preventative against the sting of the musquitos. Both the strangers had bones through their noses, and a piece of bark tied over their foreheads; and one of them had an ornament of strings round his arm; and an elegant necklace made of shells.

On the 19th, we saw several of the women, who, as well as the men, were quite naked. We were this day visited by ten Indians, who seemed resolved to have one of the turtles that was on board, which they repeatedly made signs for, and being as repeatedly refused, they expressed the utmost rage and resentment, one of them in particular, having received a denial from Mr. Banks, he stamped, and pushed him away in a most violent manner. At length they laid hands on two of the turtles, and drew them to the side of the ship where the canoe lay, but the sailors took them away. They made several similar attempts, but being equally unsuccessful, they leaped suddenly into their canoe, and rowed off.

The Indians still continuing in fight, a musquet charged with ball was fired, the report only of which sent them out of sight; but their voices being heard in the woods, the Captain with a few people went to meet them. Both parties stopped when in sight of each other; at which time an old Indian advanced before the rest a little way, but soon halted, and after having spoke some words, which we could not understand, he retreated to his companions, and they all retired slowly in a body. Having found means to seize some of their darts, we continued following them about a mile, and then sat down upon some rocks, the Indians sitting down also about an hundred yards from us. The old man again came forward, having a lance without a point in his hand; he stopped several times at different distances, and spoke, whereupon the Captain

Sunday, the 29th, we got the anchor up, and all ready to put to sea, but the weather being unfavourable, postponed it till Saturday the 4th. We stood off E. by N. with the pinnace a-head to keep sounding. About noon we came to an anchor, when the harbour from whence we had sailed bore S. 70 W. distant about five leagues. The Captain here named the northernmost point of land in sight, Cape Bedford, and the harbour we had quitted, Endeavour River. Our latitude by observation was now 15 deg. 32 min. S.

On Saturday, the 4th, Captain Cook went up to the mast-head to look at some dangerous shoals, several of which he saw above the water. This day such a quantity of fish was caught, as allowed a dividend of two pounds to each man. During the six following days, we attempted to sail between the shoals and breakers, by which we were every way surrounded. On the 10th, we were between a head-land and three islands, which had been discovered the preceding day. We now entertained hopes of being out of danger; but this not proving to be the case, we called the head-land Cape Flattery. Some land was now discovered, and was generally taken for the main; but in the Captain's opinion, a cluster of islands. Upon this diversity of sentiments, it was resolved to bring the ship to an anchor. This done, the Captain landed, and from a high point took a survey of the sea-coast, by which he was confirmed in his conjecture.

On Saturday, the 11th, early in the morning, Mr. Banks and Capt. Cook went to visit the largest of the three islands, and having gained the summit of the highest hill, they beheld a reef of rocks, whereon the sea broke in a frightful manner; but the hazy weather preventing a perfect view, they lodged under a bush during the night, and next day seeing what had the appearance of a channel between the reefs, one of the mates, on the 12th, was sent out in the pinnace to examine it; and at noon returned, having found between fifteen and twenty-eight fathom of water; but it blew so hard, that the mate did not dare to venture into one of the channels, which he said appeared to be very narrow; but the Captain judged he had seen them to a disadvantage. On our return to the ship, the Captain named this place the Lizard Island, on account of our having seen no other animals but lizards. During our absence from the ship, the mate had landed on several low islands, where he had seen great heaps of shells,

and her there was had risen and brot but in the mome breeze, hardly di the vessel in an ob hopes, however, stance, were destru ed in a few minut ed, before we ha gained. At this reef, and a you found that its bre of the ship, the other side of the preserving life, but this was imp water in the inter with amazing im quarter of a mile the distance of ne When the ebb ti drove the vessel vi of destruction was opening, and a li it, and were drive vented the ship fr channel. The sh crew were gratefu they had been ve name of Providen through which th ninent dangers. in fight, was deno near it Weymouth

On the 13th, we were called Forb point of land on Head. On the 15 islands, the land A point was seen, which took the na many other island Bird lies, from flocks of birds. were seen, on several Indian hut 8.

upon seeing us up in arms. At two we anchored in a very safe cove on the north-west side of the bay, and moored in eleven fathom water, with a soft ground. In passing the point of the bay we had observed an armed centinel on duty, who was twice relieved; and now four canoes came off, for the purpose, we imagined, of reconnoitring; for none of the Indians would venture on board, except an old man who seemed of elevated rank. His countrymen expostulated with him, laid hold of him, and took great pains to prevent his coming aboard, but they could not divert him from his purpose. We received him with the utmost civility and hospitality. Tupia and the old man joined noses, according to the custom of the country, and having received several presents, he retired to his associates, who began to dance and laugh, and then retired to their fortified village. Whether their expressions of joy were tokens of enmity or friendship we could not determine, having seen them dance when inclined both to war and peace. Capt. Cook and another gentleman now went on shore, at the bottom of the cove, where they met with plenty of wood, and a fine stream of excellent water, and on harling the seine were very successful, having caught three hundred weight of fish in a short time, which was equally distributed among the ships crew.

At break of day, on the 16th, we were employed in careening the bark, when three canoes came off with a great number of Indians, who brought several of their women with them, which circumstance was thought to be a favourable preface of their peaceable disposition;

visited another cove, about two miles from the ship. There was a family of Indians who were greatly alarmed at the approach of these gentlemen, all running away except one; but upon Tupia's conversing with him, the others returned. They found, by the provisions of this family, that they were cannibals, here being several human bones that had been lately dressed and picked, and it appeared that a short time before, six of their enemies having fallen into their hands, they had killed four and eaten them, and that the other two were drowned in endeavouring to make their escape. They made no secret of this abominable custom, but answered Tupia, who was desired to ascertain the fact, with great composure, that his conjectures were just, that they were the bones of a man, and testified by signs, that they though human flesh delicious food. Upon being asked, Why they had not eaten the body of the woman that had been floating upon the water? they answered, She died of a disorder, and that more over the she was related to them, and they never ate any but their enemies. Upon Mr. Banks still testifying some doubts concerning the fact, one of the Indians drew the bone of a man's arm through his mouth, and this gentleman had the curiosity to bring it away with him. There was a woman in this family whose arms and legs were cut in a shocking manner, and it appeared she had thus wounded herself because her husband had lately been killed and eaten by the enemy. Some of the Indians brought four skulls one day to sell, which they rated at a very high price. The brains had been taken out, and probably

harbour. The succeeded allowed to go on shore gentlemen employed t they were very successf their excursion met wit advantage of an elevat ed by two or three wid such as, though simple answering every purpo tives. Within these stakes, fixed in the cart tory over the besieged tion of that district, as who are killed, but the by their inhuman conqu

Mr. Banks and Dr. on the 22d in collecti made some observations east side of the inlet, high hills, and formed the straight; the oppos He also discovered a v been deserted, and not inhabited. There were coast, that seemed entire bitants were upon the On the 24th, we were on a very high rock, I fine natural arch, one si and the other rose out of ceived us with great civ 6.

was within a hundred yards of the rock, between which
and her there was nothing left but the chasm, and which
had risen and broke to a wonderful height on the rock ;
but in the moment we expected instant destruction, a
breeze, hardly discernable, aided the boats in getting
the vessel in an oblique direction from the rock. The
hopes, however, afforded by this providential circum-
stance, were destroyed by a perfect calm, which succeed-
ed in a few minutes: yet the breeze once more return-
ed, before we had lost the little ground which had been
gained. At this time a small opening was seen in the
reef, and a young officer being sent to examine it,
found that its breadth did not much exceed the length
of the ship, that there was smooth water on the
other side of the rocks. Animated by the desire of
preserving life, we now attempted to pass the opening ;
but this was impossible; for it having become high-
water in the interim, the ebb tide rushed through it
with amazing impetuosity, carrying the ship about a
quarter of a mile from the reef, and the soon reached
the distance of near two miles, by the help of the boats.
When the ebb tide was spent, the tide of flood again
drove the vessel very near the rocks, so that our prospect
of destruction was renewed, when we discovered another
opening, and a light breeze springing up, we entered
it, and were driven through it, with a rapidity that pre-
vented the ship from striking against either side of the
channel. The ship now came to an anchor, and our
crew were grateful for having regained a station, which
they had been very lately most anxious to quit. The
name of Providence Channel was given to the opening
through which the ship had thus escaped the most im-
minent dangers. A high promontory on the main land
in sight, was denominated Cape Weymouth, and a bay
near it Weymouth Bay.

On the 18th, we discovered several small islands, which
were called Forbes's Islands, and had a sight of a high
point of land on the main, which was named the Bolt
Head. On the 19th, we discovered several other small
islands, the land of which was low, barren, and sandy.
A point was seen, and called Cape Greenville, and a bay
which took the name of Temple Bay. In the afternoon
many other islands were seen, which were denominated
Bird Isles, from their being frequented by numerous
flocks of birds. On the 20th many more small islands
were seen, on one of which were a few trees, and
several Indian huts, supposed to have been erected by

Great Britain: and three voyeys of mar arms being
fired, and answered by an equal number from the En-
deavour, the place received the name of Possession
Island. The next morning we saw three naked women
collecting shell-fish on the beach; and weighing anchor,
gave the name of Cape Cornwall to the extreme point
of the largest island on the north-west side of the pas-
sage: some low islands near the middle of the channel
receiving the name of Wallis's Isle; soon after which
the ship came to an anchor, and the long-boat was sent
out to found. Towards evening we sailed again, and
the captain landed with Mr. Banks, on a small island
which was frequented by immense numbers of birds,
the majority of which being boobies, the place re-
ceived the name of Booby Island. We were now ad-
vanced to the northern extremity of New Holland,
and had the satisfaction of viewing the open sea to the
wellward.

To the passage we had sailed through, Capt. Cook
gave the name of Endeavour Straights. New South
Wales is a much larger country than any hitherto
known, and not deemed a continent, being larger than
all Europe, which is proved by the Endeavour's having
coasted more than 2000 miles, even if her track were re-
duced to a strait line. Northward of the latitude of 33
deg. the country is high, yet not mountainous; but to
the southward of that latitude, it is mostly low and even
ground. The hills in general are diversified by lawns
and woods, and many of the valleys abound with her-
bage, though, on the whole, it cannot be deemed a
fertile country.

It does not appear to be inhabited by numbers any
way proportioned to its great extent; not above thirty
being ever seen together but once, which was when
those of both sexes and all ages got together on a rock
off Botany Bay, to view the ship. None of their vil-
lages consisted of more huts than would afford shelter
for fourteen or fifteen men, and these were the largest
numbers that were assembled with a view to attack us.
No part of the country appeared to be cultivated,
whence there must necessarily be fewer inhabitants on
the inland parts than on the sea-coast. The men are
well made of the middle size, and active, in a high
degree; but their voices are soft, even to effeminacy.
Their colour is chocolate, but they were covered
with dirt, as to look almost as black as negroes. Their
hair is naturally long and black, but they commonly
cropped

harbour. The succeeding day the ship's company were
allowed to go on shore for their amusement, and the
gentlemen employed themselves in fishing, in which
they were very successful. Some of the company in
their excursion met with fortifications that had not the
advantage of an elevated situation, but were surround-
ed by two or three wide ditches, with a draw-bridge,
such as, though simple in its structure, was capable of
withstanding every purpose against the arms of the na-
tives. Within these ditches is a fence, made with
stakes, fixed in the earth. A decisive conquest or victo-
ry over the besieged, occasions an entire depopula-
tion of that district, as the vanquished, not only those
who are killed, but the prisoners likewise are devoured
by their inhuman conquerors.

Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander, employed themselves
on the 22d in collecting of plants, whilst Capt. Cook
made some observations on the main land on the south-
east side of the inlet, which consisted of a chain of
high hills, and formed part of the south-west side of
the strait; the opposite side extended far to the east.
He also discovered a village, and many houses that had
been deserted, and another village that appeared to be
inhabited. There were many small islands round the
coast, that seemed entirely barren, and what few in-
habitants were upon them lived principally upon fish.
On the 24th, we visited a hippah, which was situated
on a very high rock, hollow underneath, forming a
fine natural arch, one side of which joined to the land,
and the other rose out of the sea. The inhabitants re-
ceived us with great civility, and very readily shewed

the Endeavour ready for proceeding.

We were visited by our old friend Topoa, on Mon-
day the 29th, in company with other Indians, from
whom we heard, that the man who had received a
wound near the hippah, was dead; but this report
proved afterwards groundless; and we found that To-
poa's discourses were not always to be taken literally.
During the time the bark was preparing for sea, Mr.
Banks and Dr. Solander often went on shore; but their
walks were circumscribed by the luxuriant climbers
which filled up the space between the trees, and ren-
dered the woods impassible. Capt. Cook also made
several observations on the coast to the north-west, and
perceived many islands, forming bays, in which there
appeared to be good anchorage for shipping. He also
erected another pyramid of stones, in which he put
some bullets, &c. as before, with the addition of a
piece of our silver coin, and placed part of an old
pendant on the top, to distinguish it. Returning to
the ship he met with many of the natives, and pur-
chased a small quantity of fish of them.

Some of our people, who were sent out early in the
morning, on Tuesday the 30th, to gather celery,
met with about twenty Indians, among whom were five
or six women, whose husbands had lately been made
captives. They sat down upon the ground together,
and cut many parts of their bodies in a most shocking
manner, with shells, and sharp pieces of talc or jasper,
in testimony of their excessive grief. But what made
the horrid spectacle more terrible, was, that the male
Indians who were with them, paid not the least atten-
tion to it, but with the greatest unconcern imaginable,
employed

to navigate the vessel, the boats were made to bring her on shore: it was therefore determined to send the boats, while the ship kept in consequence of this resolution, on the 3d, Capt. Cook, Mr. Banks, and the boat's crew, and Mr. Gore from the ship in the pinnace, well armed. We rowed directly when come within two hundred fathoms the water so shallow, that we were obliged to land in the care of two of the boats. We had no sooner reached the shore, than several prints of human feet were seen in the water, from whence it was conjectured that the natives had been there. We went on to a great distance, and as we were within a hundred yards of the shore, we were obliged to retreat with caution, that our retreat might not be discovered. We walked by the side of a grove of cocoa-nut trees, which were shaded, or hut, which had been built, and near it lay a number of huts. At a small distance from this grove, and having now advanced from the boat, three Indians with a hideous shout, at about twenty yards; and as they ran towards us, they threw something out of their hands, and burnt exultation made no report; and the natives at us. No time was to be lost, we loaded with small shot, and they did not feel; for, without a third shot: we therefore now had a second time. It is presumed, as they all took to flight. We improved this instruction of the natives was no more to our defence, and with all exertions. In the way we perceived more Indians were coming, and we got into the water, we were coming round a point at the distance of yards. When they saw us, they waited till their main body arrived, while we entered the boat. We now took a view of the coast. They made much the same appearance

of the ship. We now sailed at a moderate pace till next morning at three o'clock; after which we were on ground with 120 fathoms. Before noon we were in sight of land, which was conjectured to be either the Amoo Islands, or Timor Laot. We were now in latitude 9 deg. 37 min. S. and in longitude 233 deg. 10 min. W. We stood off and on during the night, and on Wednesday the 12th, we saw a number of fires on the coast in several places, from whence it was conjectured that the place was well peopled. The land and breezes being now very slight, we continued in sight of the island for two days, when it was observed that we reached in many places quite to the sea-coast, and there that was not the case, there were large and noble trees of the cocoa-nut tree, which ran about a mile up the country, at which distance great numbers of houses and plantations were seen; yet neither natives nor cattle were perceived, which was thought a very extraordinary circumstance. On the 16th, we had sight of the little island called Semau; and the same day saw the island Semau, at a distance to the southward of Timor. The island of Semau is chiefly covered with bushy wood without any trees; but there are a number of fan-palm trees on it, growing near the sandy beaches; and the whole consists of alternate hills and valleys. The island of Semau is not so hilly as Timor, but resembles it greatly in other respects. As the ship was now clear of all the islands which had been laid down in such maps as were on board, we made sail during the night, and were furnished the next morning at the sight of an island to the S.W. which we flattered ourselves was a new discovery. Before noon we had sight of houses, groves of cocoa-nut trees, and large flocks of sheep. This was a welcome sight to people whose health was declining in want of refreshment, and it was instantly resolved to purchase the purchase of what we stood for much in need of. The second lieutenant was immediately dispatched in the pinnace, in search of a landing-place; and he returned with him such things as it was thought might be acceptable to the natives.—During Mr. Gore's absence, the people on board saw two men on horseback on the hills, who frequently stopped to take a view of the vessel. The lieutenant soon returned with an account that he had entered a little cove, near which were a few houses; that several men advanced and invited him to land; and that they conversed together as long as they could by signs. He reported that these people were very like the Malays, both in person and dress; 66.

came to an anchor at seven in the evening, and hours being seen hoisted on the beach the next morning, the captain concluded, that the Dutch had a settlement on the island, he therefore dispatched the second lieutenant to acquaint the governor, or other principal resident, who they were, and that the ship had put in for necessary refreshments. The lieutenant having landed, he was received by a kind of guard of something more than twenty Indians, armed with muskets, who after they had taken down their colours from the beach, proceeded without the least military order; and thus escorted him to the town, where the colours had been hoisted the preceding evening. The lieutenant was now conducted to the Raja, or King of the island, to whom, by means of a Portuguese interpreter, he made known his business. The Raja said, he was ready to supply the ship with the necessary refreshments; but that he could not trade with any other people than the Dutch, with whom he was in alliance, without having first obtained their consent; he added, however, that he would make application to the Dutch agent, who was the only white man among them. To this agent, whose name was Lange, and who proved to be the person that was seen from the ship in the European dress, a letter was dispatched, and in a few hours he came to the town, behaved politely to the lieutenant, and told him he might buy what he thought proper of the inhabitants of the island. This offer being freely made, and readily accepted, the Raja and Mr. Lange intimated their wishes to go on board the ship, and that two of the boat's crew might be left as hostages for their safe return. The lieutenant gratified them in both these requests, and took them on board just before dinner was served. It was thought that they would have sat down without ceremony; but now the Raja intimated his doubts, whether being a black, they would permit him to sit down with them. The politeness of the officers soon moved his scruples, and the greatest good humour and civility prevailed among them. Our dinner consisted chiefly of mutton, which when the Raja had tasted, he requested of us an English sheep, and the only one we had left was presented to him. Our visitors now informed us, that the island abounded with buffaloes, sheep, hogs, and fowls, plenty of which should be driven down to the shore the next day. This put us all in high spirits, and the liquor circulated rather faster than either the Indian or the Saxon could bear; but they had, however, the resolution to express a desire to depart, before they were quite intoxicated. When they came upon deck, they

are poor, and their canoes traffic we had with them was had some knowledge of iron, parts had not. On our arrival with our paper; but they were spoiled by the wet, they had broad-cloth, and red Kersey. We stood over to the eastward, and the rapidity of the current very much retarded us. Queen Charlotte's Sound, we were in danger of being driven over the rocks, but after having passed the cable, the ship was brought to anchor, not more than two cables length, and remained, being obliged to stay there till after midnight. On the 7th, we were in a breeze with a tide of ebb, and the wind with great swiftness. A straight line lies between Cape Parnaroo, the distance between the two is several leagues. The length of the strait is uncertain. In passing it, we were in the north-east shore, for on this side Cape Tierrawitte lies in 41 deg.

45 deg. 45 min. South, to which Capt. Cook gave the name of Cape Saunders, in honour of Admiral Saunders. We kept off from the shore, which appeared to be interspersed with trees, and covered with green hills, but no inhabitants were seen. Several whales and seals were seen on the 4th of March; and on the 29th we saw a ledge of rocks, and from after another ledge at three leagues distance from the shore, which we passed in the night to the northward, and at day-break observed the others under our bows, which was a fortunate escape; and in consideration of their having been so nearly caught among these, they were denominated the Traps. We called the southern-most point of land, the South Cape, and found it to be the southern extremity of the whole coast. Proceeding northward, the next day we fell in with a barren rock about fifteen miles from the main land, which was very high, and appeared about a mile in circumference; Solander's Island was the name given to it. We discovered, on the 13th, a bay containing several islands, where we concluded if there was depth of water, shipping might find shelter from all winds. Dusky Bay was the appellation given to it by the captain, and five high peaked rocks, for which it was remarkable, caused the point to be called Five Fingers. The westernmost point of the land upon the whole coast, to the southward of Dusky Bay, we called West Cape. The next day we passed a small narrow opening, where

thought to be a part of the southern continent, which many have so eagerly sought. They are situated between the 34th and 48 deg. of south latitude, and between 181 deg. and 194 deg. west longitude. The northern island is called Fahlionauwee, and the southern is named Tovy Poenamoo by the natives. The former though mountainous in some places, is strewed with wood, and in every valley there is a rivulet. The soil in those valleys is light, but fertile and well adapted for the plentiful production of all the fruits, plants, and corn of Europe. The summer, though not so hot, is in general of a more equal temperature than in England; and from the vegetables that were found here it was concluded, that the winters were not so severe. The only quadrupeds that were discovered were dogs and rats, and of the latter very few, but the former the inhabitants (like those of Otahete) breed for food. There are seals and whales on the coasts, and we once saw a sea-lion. The birds are hawks, owls, quails, and some melodious song birds. There are ducks, and fags of several sorts, like those of Europe, and the gannet, which is of the same sort. Albatrosses, shearwaters, penguins, and pintados, also visit the coast. The insects found here are, butterflies, flesh-flies, beetles, sand-flies, and musquitos. Tovy Poenamoo is barren and mountainous, and appeared to be almost destitute of inhabitants. The sea that washes these islands abounds with delicate and wholesome fish. When ever the vessel came to an anchor,

cropped it short: in some few instances it is slightly curled, but in common quite straight; it is always matted with dirt, yet wholly free from lice; their beards are thick and bushy, but kept short by fingering. The woman were seen, only at a distance, as the men constantly left them behind when they crossed the river. The chief ornament of these people is the bone that is thrust through the nose, which the sailors whimsically called their spirit-sail yard; but besides this they wore necklaces formed of shell, a small cord tied twice or thrice round the arm between the elbow and shoulder, and a string of plaited human hair round the waist. Some few of them had an ornament of shells hanging across the breast. Besides these ornaments they painted

their bodies and limbs white and red, in stripes of different dimensions; and they had a circle of white round each eye, and spots of it on the face. Their ears were bored, but they did not wear ear-rings. They accepted whatever was given them, but seemed to have no idea of making an adequate return; and they would not part with their ornaments for any thing that was offered in exchange. Their bodies were marked with scars, which they signified were in remembrance of the deceased. Their huts were built with small rods, the two ends of which were fixed into the ground, so as to form the figure of an oval; they are covered with pieces of bark and palm-leaves.

C H A P. X.

The Endeavour continues her voyage from South Wales to New Guinea—An account of incidents upon landing there—She proceeds from New Guinea to the Island of Savu.—Runs from Savu to Batavia.

ON the 23d of August, 1770, in the afternoon, after leaving Booby Island, we had light airs till five o'clock, when it fell calm, and we came to an anchor in eight fathom water, with a soft sandy bottom. On Friday, the 24th, soon after the anchor was weighed, we got under sail, steering N. W. and in a few hours one of the boats a-head made the signal for shoal-water. We instantly brought the ship to, with all her sails standing, and a survey being taken of the sea around her, it was found that she had met with another narrow escape, as she was almost encompassed with shoals, and was likewise so situated between them, that she must have struck before the boat's crew had made the signal, if she had been half the length of a cable on either side. In the afternoon we made sail with the ebb tide, and got out of danger before sun-set, when we brought to for the night.

On Sunday, the 26th, it was the Captain's intention to steer N. W. but having met with those shoals, we altered our course, and soon got into deep water. On the 27th we pursued our voyage, shortening sail at night, and tacking till day-break of the 28th, when we steered due N. in search of New Guinea. At this time our latitude by observation was 8 deg. 52 min. S. We here observed many parts of the sea covered with a kind of brown foam, to which our sailors gave the name of spawn. It is formed of an incredible number of minute particles, each of which, when seen through the microscope, was found to consist of a considerable number of tubes, and these tubes were subdivided into little cells. The foam being burnt, and yielding no smell like what is produced by animal substances, we concluded it was of the vegetable kind. This has often been seen on the coast of Brazil, and generally makes its appearance near the land. A bird called the Noddy was found this evening among the rigging of the ship. Land having been this day discovered from the mast head, we stood off and on all night, and at day-break we sailed towards it with a brisk gale. Between six and seven in the morning we had sight of a small low island, at about a league from the main, in latitude 80 deg. 13 min. S. and in longitude 221 deg. 25 min. W. and it has already been distinguished by the names of Bartholomew and Wherimoyen. It appeared a very level island, clothed with trees, among which is the cocoa-nut; and we judged it to be inhabited by the smoke of the fires which were seen in different parts of it. The boats were now sent out to sound, as the water was shallow; but as the ship, in sailing two leagues, had found no increase in its depth, signals were made for the boats to return on board. We then stood out to sea till midnight, tacked, and stood in for land till the morning.

On Thursday, the 30th, when about four leagues distant, we had sight of it, and its appearance was

still flat and woody. Abundance of the brown foam was still seen on the surface of the sea, and the sailors, convinced that it was not spawn, gave it the whimsical name of sea-law-dust. We now held a northward course, scarcely within sight of land, and as the water was but just deep enough to navigate the vessel, many unsuccessful attempts were made to bring her near enough to get on shore: it was therefore determined to land in one of the boats, while the ship kept plying off and on. In consequence of this resolution,

On Monday, Sept. the 3d, Capt. Cook, Mr. Banks, and Dr. Solander, attended by the boat's crew, and Mr. Banks's servant, set off from the ship in the pinnace, being in all twelve persons well armed. We rowed directly to the shore, but when come within two hundred yards of it, we found the water so shallow, that we were obliged to leave the boat, in the care of two of the sailors, and waded to land. We had no sooner reached the shore, than we saw several prints of human feet on the sand, below high water mark, from whence it was evident, that the natives had been there. We concluded they could be at no great distance, and as a thick wood came down within a hundred yards of the water, we proceeded with caution, that our retreat to the boat might not be cut off. We walked by the side of the wood, and came to a grove of cocoa-nut trees, not far from which was a shed, or hut, which had been covered with leaves, and near it lay a number of fresh shells of the fruit. At a small distance from this place we found plantains; and having now advanced about a quarter of a mile from the boat, three Indians rushed out of the wood with a hideous shout, at about the distance of a hundred yards; and as they ran towards us, the foremost threw something out of his hand, which flew on one side of him, and burnt exactly like gun-powder, but made no report; and the other two threw their lances at us. No time was to be lost; we discharged our pieces, loaded with small shot only; which we imagine they did not feel; for, without retreating, they cast a third dart: we therefore now loaded with ball, and fired a second time. It is probable some of them were wounded, as they all took to their heels with great agility. We improved this interval, in which the destruction of the natives was no longer necessary to our own defence, and with all expedition returned to our boat. In the way we perceived signals on board, that more Indians were coming down in a body; and before we got into the water, we perceived several of them coming round a point at the distance of about five hundred yards. When they saw us they halted, and seemed to wait till their main body should join them. They continued in this station, without giving us any interruption, while we entered the water, and waded toward the boat. We now took a view of them at our leisure. They made much the same appearance

as the New Hollanders, their stature, and having their hair also like them stark straight, they were shouting at a distance, which seemed to be directed at us, probably a hollow cry, produced fire and smoke. The crew on board perceived their appearance, and thought it necessary to fire some muskets at them, fired some muskets at them, which being heard by the natives, they retired very slowly. The lances that had been thrown were made of a reed, or hard wood, and were of hard wood, and were light, ill made.

This place is in latitude 6 deg. 30 min. S. The coast of this country is low, and a luxuriance of wood and herbs, and a beautiful. The cocoa-nut, bread-fruit, all flourish here in the most of the trees, shrubs, and plants on the South Sea islands.

On the 3d, we made fail to the west to spend no more time upon the Saturday the 8th, we passed the point of which Capt. Cook would have only ten fathom water, the ground being fresh, we made sail of the ship. We now tacked next morning at three o'clock, and went on with 120 fathoms of sail of land, which was composed of Anou Islands, or Timor Laout Islands, 9 deg. 37 min. S. and in longitude 100 deg. 10 min. W. We stood off and on till Wednesday the 12th, we fired some muskets in several places, from whence we perceived that the place was well peopled, the breezes being now very slight, we made sail for two days, when we reached in many places quite to the west, that was not the case, there were some of the cocoa-nut tree, which we perceived, which was thought to be the country, at which distance great plantations were seen; yet neither of them were perceived, which was thought to be the country.

On the 16th, we had sight of the land, and the same day saw the land to the southward of Timor, which was chiefly covered with bushes; but there are a number of hills near the sandy beaches; and alternate hills and valleys. The hills are hilly as Timor, but resemble the hills of the island. As the ship was now clear of the land, we made sail during the night, and the next morning at the light of day we were in latitude 5. W. which we flattered ourselves to be. Before noon we had sight of the land, and large flocks of birds were seen to people whole of the island, and it was thought that the purchase of what we found on the island was worth the trouble. The second lieutenant was with him such things as it was thought to be the natives. During the day, the people on board saw two of the hills, who frequently stop to the vessel. The lieutenant soon perceived that he had entered a little bay, and a few houses; that several of the hills were seen to land; and that they could be by signs. He reported they were very like the Malays, both in appearance and in manners.

shells, and found the fins of them, which the Indians had left hanging on the trees, so fresh, that they were dressed and eaten by the boat's crew.

On Sunday the 12th, the officers held a consultation, and we were unanimous in opinion, that it would be best to quit the coast altogether, till we could approach it with less danger; in consequence of which concurrent opinions, we failed on Monday the 13th, and got through one of the channels in the reef, happy at finding ourselves once more in the open sea, after having been surrounded by dreadful shoals and rocks for near three months. We had now sailed above 1000 miles, during which run we had been obliged to keep sounding, without the intermission of a single minute; a circumstance which, it is supposed, never happened to any ship but the Endeavour.

On Tuesday the 14th, we anchored, and by observation, our latitude was 13 deg. 46 min. S. and at this time we had no land in sight. On the 15th we steered a westerly course, in order to get sight of land, that we might not overshoot the passage, if a passage there was between this land and New Guinea. Early in the afternoon we had sight of land, which had the appearance of hilly islands, but it was judged to be part of the main, and we saw breakers between the vessel and the land, in which there was an opening; to get clear, we set all our sails, and stood to the northward till midnight, and then went on a southward tack for about two miles, when the breeze died away to a dead calm. When day-light came on we saw a dreadful surf break at a vast height, within a mile of the ship, towards which the rolling waves carried her with great rapidity. Thus distressed, the boats were sent a-head to tow, and the head of the vessel was brought about, but not till she was within a hundred yards of the rock, between which and her there was nothing left but the chafin, and which had risen and broke to a wonderful height on the rock; but in the moment we expected instant destruction, a breeze, hardly discernable, aided the boats in getting the vessel in an oblique direction from the rock. The hopes, however, afforded by this providential circumstance, were destroyed by a perfect calm, which succeeded in a few minutes: yet the breeze once more returned, before we had lost the little ground which had been gained. At this time a small opening was seen in the reef, and a young officer being sent to examine it, found that its breadth did not much exceed the length of the ship, that there was smooth water on the other side of the rocks. Animated by the desire of preserving life, we now attempted to pass the opening; but this was impossible; for it having become high-water in the interim, the ebb tide rushed through it with amazing impetuosity, carrying the ship about a quarter of a mile from the reef, and she soon reached the distance of near two miles, by the help of the boats. When the ebb tide was spent, the tide of flood again drove the vessel very near the rocks, so that our prospect of destruction was renewed, when we discovered another opening, and a light breeze springing up, we entered it, and were driven through it, with a rapidity that prevented the ship from striking against either side of the channel. The ship now came to an anchor, and our crew were grateful for having regained a station, which they had been very lately most anxious to quit. The name of Providence Channel was given to the opening through which the ship had thus escaped the most imminent dangers. A high promontory on the main land in sight, was denominated Cape Weymouth, and a bay near it Weymouth Bay.

On the 18th, we discovered several small islands, which were called Forbes's Islands, and had a sight of a high point of land on the main, which was named the Bolt Head. On the 19th, we discovered several other small islands, the land of which was low, barren, and sandy. A point was seen, and called Cape Grenville, and a bay which took the name of Temple Bay. In the afternoon many other islands were seen, which were denominated Bird Isles, from their being frequented by numerous flocks of birds. On the 20th many more small islands were seen, on one of which were a few trees, and several Indian huts, supposed to have been erected by

the natives of the main land, as temporary habitations during their visit to these islands. On the 21st we sailed through a channel, in which was a number of shoals; and gave the name of York Cape to a point of the main land which forms the side of the channel. A large bay is formed to the south of the cape, which was called Newcastle Bay, and in which are several little islands; on the north-side of the cape the land is rather mountainous, but the low parts of the country abound with trees; the islands discovered in the morning of this day, were called York Isles. In the afternoon we anchored between some islands, and observed, that the channel now began to grow wider; we perceived two distant points, between which no land could be seen, so that the hope of having at length explored a passage into the Indian Sea, began to animate every breast; but, to bring the matter to a certainty, the captain took a party, and being accompanied by Messrs. Solander and Banks, they landed on an island, on which they had seen a number of Indians, ten of whom were on a hill, one of them carrying a bow and a bundle of arrows, the rest armed with lances; and round the necks of two of them hung strings of mother of pearl. Three of these Indians stood on shore, as if to oppose the landing of the boat, but they retired before it reached the beach. The captain and his company now ascended a hill, from whence they had a view of near forty miles, in which space there was nothing that threatened to oppose their passage, so that the certainty of a channel seemed to be almost indubitable. Previous to their leaving the island, Capt. Cook displayed the English colours, and took possession of all the eastern coast of the country, from the 38th deg. of S. latitude to the present spot, by the name of New South Wales, for his sovereign the King of Great Britain: and three volleys of small arms being fired, and answered by an equal number from the Endeavour, the place received the name of Possession Island. The next morning we saw three naked women collecting shell-fish on the beach; and weighing anchor, gave the name of Cape Cornwall to the extreme point of the largest island on the north-west side of the passage: some low islands near the middle of the channel receiving the name of Wallis's Isle; soon after which the ship came to an anchor, and the long-boat was sent out to sound. Towards evening we sailed again, and the captain landed with Mr. Banks, on a small island which was frequented by immense numbers of birds, the majority of which being boobies, the place received the name of Booby Island. We were now advanced to the northern extremity of New Holland, and had the satisfaction of viewing the open sea to the westward.

To the passage we had sailed through, Capt. Cook gave the name of Endeavour Straights. New South Wales is a much larger country than any hitherto known, and not deemed a continent, being larger than all Europe, which is proved by the Endeavour's having coasted more than 2000 miles, even if her track were reduced to a straight line. Northward of the latitude of 33 deg. the country is hilly, yet not mountainous; but to the southward of that latitude, it is mostly low and even ground. The hills in general are diversified by lawns and woods, and many of the valleys abound with herbage, though, on the whole, it cannot be deemed a fertile country.

It does not appear to be inhabited by numbers any way proportioned to its great extent; not above thirty being ever seen together but once, which was when those of both sexes and all ages got together on a rock off Botany Bay, to view the ship. None of their villages consisted of more huts than would afford shelter for fourteen or fifteen men, and these were the largest numbers that were assembled with a view to attack us. No part of the country appeared to be cultivated, whence there must necessarily be fewer inhabitants on the inland parts than on the sea-coast. The men are well made of the middle size, and active, in a high degree; but their voices are soft, even to effeminacy. Their colour is chocolate; but they were so covered with dirt, as to look almost as black as negroes. Their hair is naturally long and black, but they commonly

ance as the New Hollanders, being nearly of the stature, and having their hair short cropped. They were also like them stark naked. During this they were shouting at a distance, and setting off fires, which seemed to be discharged by a sort of slick, probably a hollow cane, this being swung sideways, produced fire and smoke like that occasioned by a musquet. The crew on board the ship saw this appearance, and thought the natives had fired. Those who went out in the boat, and had rowed several of them, fired some musquets above their heads, the balls of which being heard by the natives rattling among the trees, they retired very deliberately, and our boat returned to the ship. Upon examining the lances that had been thrown at us, we found they were made of a reed, or bamboo cane, the points of which were of hard wood, and barbed in many places. They were light, ill made, and about four feet long. This place is in latitude 6 deg. 15 min. S. The coast of this country is low land, but covered with a luxuriance of wood and herbage beyond description beautiful. The cocoa-nut, bread-fruit, and plantain trees, all flourished here in the highest perfection, together with most of the trees, shrubs, and plants, that are common to the South Sea islands. This day, Monday, the 3d, we made sail to the westward, being resolved to spend no more time upon this coast.

On Saturday the 8th, we passed two small islands, one of which Capt. Cook would have landed, but having only ten fathom water, the ground being also rocky, the wind blowing fresh, we might have endangered the safety of the ship. We now sailed at a moderate rate till next morning at three o'clock; after which we had no ground with 120 fathoms. Before noon we had sight of land, which was conjectured to be either the Amoo Islands, or Timor Laot. We were now in latitude 9 deg. 37 min. S. and in longitude 233 deg. 40 min. W. We stood off and on during the night, and on Wednesday the 12th, we saw a number of fires and smoke in several places, from whence it was conjectured that the place was well peopled. The land and breezes being now very slight, we continued in sight of the island for two days, when it was observed that we reached in many places quite to the sea-coast, and here that was not the case, there were large and noble groves of the cocoa-nut tree, which ran out a mile up the country, at which distance great numbers of houses and plantations were seen; yet neither natives nor cattle were perceived, which was thought a very extraordinary circumstance.

On the 16th, we had sight of the little island called Semau; and the same day saw the island Semau, at a distance to the southward of Timor. The island of Semau is chiefly covered with bushy wood without trees; but there are a number of fan-palm trees on it, growing near the sandy beaches; and the whole consists of alternate hills and valleys. The island of Semau is not so hilly as Timor, but resembles it greatly in other respects. As the ship was now clear of all the islands which had been laid down in such maps as were on board, we made sail during the night, and were surprised the next morning at the sight of an island to the S. W. which we flattered ourselves was a new discovery. Before noon we had sight of houses, groves of cocoa-nut trees, and large flocks of sheep. This was welcome sight to people whose health was declining for want of refreshment, and it was instantly resolved to attempt the purchase of what we stood so much in need of. The second lieutenant was immediately dispatched to the pinnacle, in search of a landing-place; and he returned with him such things as it was thought might be negotiable to the natives.—During Mr. Gore's absence, the people on board saw two men on horseback on the hills, who frequently stopped to take a view of the vessel. The lieutenant soon returned with an account that he had entered a little cove, near which he had a few huts; that several men advanced and invited him to land; and that they conversed together as well as they could by signs. He reported that these people were very like the Malays, both in person and dress;

and said that they had no other arms but a knife which each of them wore in his girdle.

The lieutenant not being able to find any place in which the ship might come to an anchor, he was dispatched again with money and goods to buy such necessaries as were immediately wanted for the sick. Dr. Solander attended the lieutenant, and during their absence, the ship stood on and off the shore. Soon after the boat had put off, two other horsemen were seen from the ship, one of whom had a laced hat on, and was dressed in a coat and waistcoat, of the fashion of Europe. These men rode about on shore taking little notice of the boat, but regarding the ship with the utmost attention. As soon as the boat reached the shore, some other persons on horseback, and many on foot hastened to the spot, and it was observed that some cocoa-nuts were put into the boat, from whence it was concluded, that a traffic had commenced with the natives. A signal being made from the boat that the ship might anchor in a bay at some distance, the immediately bore away for it. When the lieutenant came on board, he reported, that he could not purchase any cocoa-nuts, as the owner of them was absent, and that what he had brought were given him, in return for which he had pressed the natives with some linen.

When the ship had entered the bay, in the evening, according to the directions received, an Indian town was seen at a distance; and upon which a jack was hoisted on the fore-top-mast head, presently afterwards three guns were fired, and Dutch colours were hoisted in the town; the ship, however, held on her way, and came to an anchor at seven in the evening. The colours being seen hoisted on the beach the next morning, the captain concluded, that the Dutch had a settlement on the island, he therefore dispatched the second lieutenant to acquaint the governor, or other principal resident, who they were, and that the ship had put in for necessary refreshments. The lieutenant having landed, he was received by a kind of guard of something more than twenty Indians, armed with musquets, who after they had taken down their colours from the beach, proceeded without the least military order; and thus escorted him to the town, where the colours had been hoisted the preceding evening. The lieutenant was now conducted to the Raja, or king of the island, to whom, by means of a Portuguese interpreter, he made known his business. The Raja said, he was ready to supply the ship with the necessary refreshments, but that he could not trade with any other people than the Dutch, with whom he was in alliance, without having first obtained their consent; he added, however, that he would make application to the Dutch agent, who was the only white man among them. To this agent, whose name was Lange, and who proved to be the person that was seen from the ship in the European dress, a letter was dispatched, and in a few hours he came to the town, behaved politely to the lieutenant, and told him he might buy what he thought proper of the inhabitants of the island. This offer being freely made, and readily accepted, the Raja and Mr. Lange intimated their wishes to go on board the ship, and that two of the boat's crew might be left as hostages for their safe return. The lieutenant gratified them in both their requests, and took them on board just before dinner was served. It was thought that they would have sat down without ceremony; but now the Raja intimated his doubts, whether being a black, they would permit him to sit down with them. The politeness of the officers soon moved his scruples, and the greatest good humour and civility prevailed among them. Our dinner consisted chiefly of mutton, which when the Raja had tasted, he requested of us an English sheep, and the only one we had left was presented to him. Our visitors now informed us, that the island abounded with buffaloes, sheep, hogs, and fowls, plenty of which should be driven down to the shore the next day. This put us all in high spirits, and the liquor circulated rather faster than either the Indian or the Saxon could bear; but they had, however, the resolution to express a desire to depart, before they were quite intoxicated. When they came upon deck,

they were received in the same manner as when they came aboard, by the marines under arms; and the Raja expressing a desire to see them exercise, his curiosity was gratified.

Wednesday the 19th, in the morning, Capt. Cook, attended by several gentlemen, went on shore to return the Raja's visit; but the principal intention was to purchase the cattle and fowls, which they had been allotted the preceding day should be driven down to the beach. We were greatly chagrined at finding no steps had been taken to fulfill this promise: however, we proceeded to the house of assembly, which, with a few other houses built by the Dutch East-India Company, are distinguished from the rest, by having two pieces of wood, resembling a pair of cows horns, fixed at each end of the roof. At the house of assembly we saw Mr. Lange and the Raja, whose name was A Madocha Lomi Djara, surrounded by many of the principal people; Capt. Cook having informed them, that he had loaded his boat with goods, which he wished to exchange for necessary refreshments, permission was given him to land them. We now endeavoured to make an agreement for the hogs, sheep, and buffaloes, which were to be paid for in cash; but this business was no sooner hinted than Mr. Lange took his leave, having first told the captain, that he had received a letter from the governor of Concordia, in Timor, the contents of which should be disclosed at his return. As the morning was now far advanced, and we had no fresh provisions on board, we requested the Raja's permission to buy a small hog and some rice, and to order his people to dress the dinner for us. He very obligingly replied, that if we could eat victuals dressed by his subjects, which he could scarcely suppose, he would do himself the honour of entertaining us. A dinner being thus procured, the captain sent off his boat to bring liquors from the ship. It was ready about five o'clock, and after we were seated on mats, which were spread on the floor, it was served in six and thirty baskets. We were then conducted by turns to a hole in the floor, near which stood a man with water in a vessel, made of the leaves of the fan-palm, who assisted us in washing our hands. This done we returned to our places and expected the king. Having waited some time, we enquired the reason of his absence, and were informed that the person who gave the entertainment never partook of it with his guests. When dinner was ended, the wine passed briskly, and we invited the Raja to drink with us, but he again excused himself, saying, the man who entertained his guests should never get drunk with them. We did not drink our wine at the place where we had dined; and the remains of the dinner we left to the seamen and servants, who immediately took our places. Mr. Lange, the Saxon Dutchman, now began to communicate to us the contents of the letter, which he pretended to have received from the governor of Concordia, and wherein he said, instructions were given, that if the ship should touch at this island, and be in want of provisions, the should be supplied; but he was not to permit her to remain longer than was necessary; nor were any large presents to be made to the natives of low rank, nor to be even left with their superiors to be divided among them after the ship had sailed; but he added, any trifling civilities received from the Indians might be acknowledged by a present of beads, or other articles of very small value. It is probable that the whole of this story was a fiction; and that by precluding our liberality to the natives, the Saxon Dutchman hoped more easily to draw all the presents of any value into his own pocket.

On Thursday the 20th, Dr. Solander went again on shore with Capt. Cook, and while the former went up to the town to speak to Lange, the captain remained on the beach with a view of purchasing provisions. Here he met with the old Indian, who, as he appeared to have some authority, we had among ourselves distinguished by the name of the Prime Minister. In order to engage this man in our interest, the captain presented him with a spying-glass; but only a small buffalo was offered to be sold. The price was five guineas, nearly twice its real value. Three, however, were offered, which the

dealer thought a good price; but said he must accept the king with what had been bid before he could get the bargain. A messenger was immediately dispatched to the Raja, and on his return brought word, that less than five guineas would be taken for the buffaloes. The captain absolutely refused to give the sum demanded, which occasioned the sending away a second messenger, and during his absence, Dr. Solander, seen coming from the town, followed by above a dozen men, some of whom were armed with muskets and others with lances. Upon enquiring into the meaning of this hostile appearance, the doctor informed the purport of a message from the king was, according to Mr. Lange's interpretation, that the people would not trade with us because we had refused to give more than half the value for their commodities; that we were not to expect permission to trade upon terms longer than this day.

A native of Timor, whose parents were Portuguese came down with this party, and delivered to the captain what was pretended to be the order of the Raja, which was in substance the same that Lange had told Solander; but it was afterwards discovered that this was a counterfeit of Lange's in the scheme of extortion. The English gentlemen had at the same time no doubt but that the supposed order of the Raja was a consequence of these men, and while they were debating how to act in this critical conjuncture, anxious to bring the king to a speedy issue, the Portuguese began to drive a great number of the natives as had brought palm-fruit, fowls to sell, and others who were now bringing in hogs and buffaloes to the market. At this juncture Capt. Cook happening to look at the old man who had been distinguished by the name of prime minister, imagining that he saw in his features a disapprobation of the late proceedings; and, willing to improve the advantage, he grasped the Indian's hand, and gave him a broadsword. This well-timed present produced all good effects that could be wished: the prime minister was enraptured at so honourable a mark of distinction, and brandishing his sword over the head of the pertinent Portuguese, he made both him and a man commanded the party, sit down behind him on the ground. The whole business was now accomplished, the natives, eager to supply whatever was wanted, brought their cattle in for sale, and the market soon flooted. For the first two buffaloes, Capt. Cook gave ten guineas; but he afterwards purchased the rest by way of exchange, giving a musket for each, at this rate he might have bought any number he thought proper. There remained no doubt but that Lange's profit out of the two that were sold; and that his loss for having said the natives would take nothing but gold for their cattle, was, that he might the more of share in the produce. Capt. Cook purchased of the natives of this island some hundred gallons of palm-syrup, a small quantity of galleck, a large number of eggs, some limes and cocoa nuts, thirty dozen of three hogs, six sheep, and nine buffaloes. We had obtained these necessary articles, now prepared for our use from this place.

The island of Savu is situated in 10 deg. 35 min. latitude, and 237 deg. 30 min. W. longitude. Its length is between twenty and thirty miles. Its breadth Capt. Cook could not ascertain, as he only sailed the north side of it. The harbour in which the bay, was called Saba, from a district of the country denominated; and there are two other bays on the eastern parts of the island. The rains in this country are in March or April, and fall again in October, November, and these rains produce abundance of dyos, millet, and maize, which grow best in the finest uses in the country. Besides these articles, the island produces tobacco, cotton, betel, manioc, oranges, manness, guinea corn, rice, callavance, water-melons.

The most remarkable and useful tree that grows on the island is the fan-palm. Its uses are so various, it requires particular notice. At certain times it succeeds in some for all other food both to man and

A kind of wine, called toddy, is extracted from this tree, by cutting the buds, and tying under them small baskets, made of the leaves. The juice which trickles into these vessels is collected morning and evening, and is the common drink of all the inhabitants. The natives call this liquor dua or duac, and both the syrup and figar, gula. The syrup is not unlike treacle, but is somewhat thicker, and has a more agreeable taste. The figar is of a reddish brown, probably the same with the Jugata fugata figar upon the continent of India, and to our taste it was more agreeable than any cane figar, unrefined. We at first apprehended that the syrup, of which some of our people eat great quantities, would have occasioned fluxes, but what effect it produced was rather salutary than hurtful. This syrup is used to fatten hogs, dogs, and fowls; and the inhabitants themselves have subsisted upon this alone for several months, when other crops have failed, and animal food has been scarce. With the leaves of this tree the natives thatch their houses, and make baskets, caps, umbrellas and tobacco-pipes. They make leaf account of the fruit, and as the buds are wounded for the tuac or toddy, there is very little produced. It is nearly of the size of a full grown turnip; and the kernels must be eaten before it is ripe, otherwise they are so hard, that the teeth will not penetrate them.

As fire-wood is very scarce, the natives, by the following method, make a very little answer the ends of cooking and distillation. A hollow is dug underground, like a rabbit burrow, in a horizontal direction, about two yards long, with a hole at each end, one of which is large, and the other small. The fire is put in at the large-hole, and the small one serves for a draught. Circular holes are made through the earth which covers this cavity, on which are set earthen pots, large in the middle, and smaller towards the bottom, so that the fire acts upon a large part of the surface. They contain generally about eight or ten gallons each, and it is surprising to see with what a small quantity of fuel they are kept boiling. In this manner they boil all their victuals, and make all their syrup and figar. The Peruvian Indians have a contrivance of the same kind; and perhaps by the poor in other countries it might be adopted with advantage.

In this island both sexes are enslaved by the pernicious custom of chewing beetle and arca, contracted even while they are children. With these they mix a sort of white lime, composed of coral stones and shells, to which is added frequently a small quantity of tobacco, whereby their mouths are rendered disgusting both to the sight and the smell; for the tobacco infects their breath, and the beetle and lime make the teeth both black and rotten. We saw many of both sexes whose fore teeth were consumed, irregularly, almost down to the gums, and corroded like iron by rust. This loss of teeth has generally been attributed to the tough stringy coat of the arca nut; but our gentlemen imputed it wholly to the lime; for the teeth are not loosened or broken, as might be the case by chewing of hard and rough substances, but they are gradually wasted, as even metals are by powerful acids; and they may not be mistaken who suppose that sugar has a bad effect upon the teeth of Europeans, seeing refined sugar contains a considerable quantity of lime, and it is well known, that lime will destroy bone of any kind. When the natives are at any time not chewing beetle and arca, they then are smoking. The manner of doing this is by rolling up a small quantity of tobacco, and putting it into one end of a tube, about six inches long, as thick as a goose quill, and made of a palm-leaf. The women in particular were observed to swallow the smoke.

The island is divided into five districts or negrees, each of which is governed by a Raja. These are called Laai, Seba, Regecua, Timo, and Maffara. We went ashore at Seba, and found a Raja that governed with absolute authority. He was about five and thirty, and the most corpulent man we had seen upon the whole island. But though he governed with an unlimited authority, he took very little regal pomp upon him.

He was directed almost implicitly by Mannu Djarme, the old man, his prime minister, already mentioned; yet notwithstanding the power with which he was invested, he was universally beloved, a sure proof that he did not abuse it. Mr. Lange informed Capt. Cook, that the chiefs who had successively prelied over the five principalities of this island, had lived for time immemorial in the most cordial friendship with each other; yet, he said, the people were of a warlike disposition, and had always courageously defended themselves against foreign invaders. We were told also, that the inhabitants of the island could raise, on a short notice, 7,300 fighting men armed with musquets; of which number Laai was said to furnish 2,600, Seba 2000, Regecua 1,500, Timo 800, and Maffara 400. Besides the arms already mentioned, each man is furnished with a large mally pole-ax, which, in the hands of people who have courage, must be a formidable weapon. In the use of their lances these people are said to be so expert, that they can pierce a man through the heart at sixty or seventy yards distance; yet the Raja had always lived at peace with his neighbours. This account of the martial prowess of the inhabitants of Savu may be true; but during our stay we saw no appearance of it. Before the town house indeed, we saw about one hundred spears and targets, which served to arm those who were sent down to intimidate us at the trading place, but they seemed to be the refuse of old armories, no two being of the same make or length, for some were six, others sixteen feet long. Not one lance was among them, and though the musquets were clean on the outside, within they were eaten by the rust into holes; and the people themselves appeared to be so little acquainted with military discipline, that they came down like a disorderly rabble, every one having a cock, some tobacco, or other merchandise, and few or none of their carouch boxes were furnished with either powder or ball, but a piece of paper was thrust into the holes to save appearances. We likewise saw before the house of assembly a great gun, some swivels, and patararoes; but the great gun lay with the touch-hole to the ground, and the swivels and patararoes were not in their carriages.

The inhabitants of Savu are divided into five ranks, namely, the kajas, the land owners, the manufacturers, the servants, and the slaves. The Rajas are chief; the land owners are respected in proportion to their estates, and the number of their slaves, which last are bought and sold with their estates; but a fat hog is the price of one if purchased separately. Notwithstanding a man may thus sell his slave, or convey him with his lands, yet his power does not extend farther, as he may not even strike him without the Raja's permission. The estates of these land-holders are of very different extent: some of them not possessing above five slaves, whilst others have 500. When a man of rank goes abroad, one of his slaves follows him with a silver hilited sword or hanger, ornamented with horse hair tassels, and another carries a little bag containing tobacco, beetle, arca, and lime. This is all the state that even the Rajas themselves take upon them.

These people have a great veneration for antiquity. Their principal boast is of a long line of venerable ancestors. Those houses that have been well tenanted for successive generations, are held in the highest esteem; even the stones which are worn smooth by having been sat upon for ages, derive a certain value from that circumstance. He whose progenitors have bequeathed him any of these stones, or whose wealth has enabled him to purchase them, causes them to be ranged round his habitation, for his servants and slaves to sit upon. The Raja causes a large stone to be set up in the chief town of each district as a monument of his reign. In the province of Seba, thirteen such stones were seen as well as the remains of several others which were much worn. These stones were all placed on the top of a hill, and some of them were of such an enormous size that it was amazing by what means they could have been brought thither; nor could any information on this head be obtained from the natives:

these monuments, however, indicated that for a series of generations, the island had been regularly governed.— When a Raja dies, proclamation is made that all those who have been his subjects shall hold a solemn festival. On this they proceed to the hill where these stones are erected, and fast for several weeks, killing all the animals that suit their purpose, wherever they can be found, in order to furnish the treat, which is daily served up on the monumental stones. When they have thus exhausted their whole stock, they are compelled to keep a fast; and when the feast happens to end in the dry season, when they cannot get vegetables to eat, they have no other subsistence than the palm syrup and water, till the few animals which have escaped the general massacre have bred a sufficient number for a fresh supply, except the adjacent district happens to be in a condition to relieve them.

The natives of Savu have an instrument with which they clear the cotton of its seeds; it is about seven inches in height and fourteen in length. They have also a machine with which they spin by hand, as was the custom before the invention of spinning wheels in Europe.

The inhabitants of this island were in general robust and healthy, and had every mark of longevity. The small pox, however, is a distemper with which they are acquainted, and which they dread as much as a pestilence. When any person is attacked by it, he is carried to a spot at a distance from the houses, where his food is conveyed to him by means of a long stick, as no one dares to venture near him. Abandoned by all his friends, he is there left to live or die as it may happen, without being admitted to any comforts of the community.

The Portuguese very early visited this island, on which they established a settlement, but soon after they were succeeded by the Dutch, who without formally taking possession of the place, sent a number of trading vessels in order to establish a commerce with the natives. Most of the Dutch purchases, it is supposed, are confined to a supply of provisions for the Spice-Islands, the inhabitants of which breed but a small number of cattle. The Dutch East India Company made an agreement with the several Rajas of the islands, that a quantity of rice, maize, and callavances should be annually furnished to their people, who, in return, were to supply the Rajas with silk, linen, cutlery wares, and arrack. Certain small vessels, each having on board ten Indians, are sent from Timor to bring away the maize and callavances, and a ship that brings the articles furnished by the Dutch, receives the rice on board once a year; and as there are three bays on this coast, this vessel anchors in each of them in turn. The Dutch articles of commerce are accepted by the Rajas as a present; and they and their chief attendants drink of the arrack without intermission till it is exhausted.

It was in the agreement above-mentioned that the Rajas stipulated, that a Dutch resident should be constantly on the island. Accordingly this Lange, whom we have mentioned, was sent thither in that capacity, and a sort of assistant with him, whose father was a Portuguese, and his mother a native of Timor, with one Frederic Craig, whose father was a Dutchman, and his mother an Indian. Mr. Lange visits the Raja in state, attended by fifty slaves on horse-back, and if the crops are ripe, orders vessel to convey them immediately to Timor, so that they are not even housed upon the island. It is likewise part of his business to persuade the landholders to plant, if he perceives that they are backward in that particular. This resident had been ten years on the island, when the Endeavour touched there, during all which time he had not seen any white persons, except those who came annually in the Dutch vessel, to carry off the rice, as above-mentioned. He was married to a native of Timor, and lived in the same manner as the natives of Savu, whose language he spoke better than any other. He sat on the ground like the Indians, and chewed betle, and seemed in every thing to resemble them, except in his complexion and

the dress of his country. As to Mr. Craig, his assistant, he was employed in teaching the natives to write and read, and instructing them in the principles of Christianity. Though there was neither clergyman nor church to be seen upon the island, yet this Mr. Craig averred, that in the township of Seba only, there were 600 Christians; as to the religion of those who have not embraced Christianity, it is a peculiar species of Paganism, every one having a god of his own, somewhat after the manner of the Cemies heretofore mentioned. Their morality, however, is much purer than could be expected from such a people. Robberies are scarcely ever committed. Murder is unknown among them; and though no man is allowed more than one wife, they are strangers to adultery, and almost so to the crime of simple fornication. When any disputes arise between the natives, the determination of the Raja is decisive and satisfactory. Some observations were made upon the language of the natives, by the gentlemen, while the vessel lay here; and a kind of vocabulary formed, a sketch of which we have here inserted:

Momonne,	-	A man.
Mobunne,	-	A woman.
Catoo,	-	The head.
Row catoo,	-	The hair.
Matta,	-	The eyes.
Rowna matta,	-	The eye-lashes.
Swanga,	-	The nose.
Cavaranga,	-	The cheeks.
Wodecele,	-	The ears.
Vaio,	-	The tongue.
Lacoco,	-	The neck.
Soofoo,	-	The breasts.
Caboo soofoo,	-	The nipples.
Dulloo,	-	The belly.
Affoo,	-	The navel.
Tooga,	-	The thighs.
Rootoo,	-	The knees.
Baibo,	-	The legs.
Dunceaia,	-	The feet.
Kissivei yilla,	-	The toes.
Camacoo,	-	The arms.
Wulaba,	-	The hand.
Cabaou,	-	A buffalo.
Djara,	-	A horse.
Vave,	-	A hog.
Doomba,	-	A sheep.
Kefavoo,	-	A goat.
Guaca,	-	A dog.
Maio,	-	A cat.
Mannu,	-	A fowl.
Carow,	-	The tail.
Pangoutoo,	-	The back.
Ica,	-	A fish.
Unjoo,	-	A turtle.
Nicu,	-	A cocoa-nut.
Boacree,	-	Fan palm.
Caella,	-	Avoca.
Canana,	-	Beetle.
Aou,	-	Lime.
Maanadoo,	-	A fish-book.
Tata,	-	Taton, or marks on the skin.
Lodo,	-	The sun.
Wurroo,	-	The moon.
Aidassce,	-	The sea.
Ailea,	-	Water.
Aoc,	-	Fire.
Maate,	-	To die.
Tabudge,	-	To sleep.
Tate too,	-	To rise.
Uffe,	-	One.
Lhua,	-	Two.
Tullu,	-	Three.
Uppah,	-	Four.
Lumme,	-	Five.
Unna,	-	Six.
Pedu,	-	Seven.
Arru,	-	Eight.
Saou,	-	Nine.

Singooroo,	-	Ten.
Singurunguffe,	-	Eleven.
Lhuangooroo,	-	20.
Singaffu,	-	100.
Setuppah,	-	1000.
Selacuffa,	-	10,000.
Serata,	-	100,000.
Sereboe,	-	1,000,000.

It is here necessary to observe, that this island has not been laid down in any of the charts hitherto published, and as to our account of it, let it be remembered, that except the facts in which we were parties, and the account of the objects which we had an opportunity to examine, the whole is founded merely upon the report of Mr. Lange, upon whose authority it must therefore rest.

Of the islands in the neighbourhood of Savu, the principal is Timor, which is annually visited by the Dutch residents on the other islands, in order to make up their accounts. Some of the towns on the north side of Timor are in the hands of the Portuguese; but the Dutch possess a far greater proportion of the island, on which they have built a fort, and erected several store-houses. There are three small islands, called the Solars, which produce great abundance of the various necessaries of life, that are carried in small vessels to the Dutch settlements on the island of Timor. These islands are low and flat, and one of them has a commodious harbour. To the westward of the Solars lies the little island of Enle, in the possession of the Portuguese, who have built a considerable town on the N. E. point of it; and close to the town is an harbour where ships may ride in safety. The island of Rotte has a Dutch resident, whose business is similar to that of Mr. Lange on the island of Savu. Rotte produces, besides such things as are common to other islands, a considerable quantity of sugar, which is made to a great degree of perfection. There is likewise a small island lying to the west of Savu, the chief produce of which is the areca nut, of which the Dutch receive in exchange for European commodities, as large a quantity every year as load two vessels.

About two years before the Endeavour was in these seas, a French ship was wrecked on the coast of Timor: she had been lodged on the rocks several days, when the wind tore her to pieces in an instant, and the Captain, with the greater part of the seamen were drowned; but the lieutenant, and about eighty men, having reached the shore, travelled across the country of Concordia, where their immediate wants were relieved, and they afterwards returned to the wreck, in company with some Dutchmen and Indians, who assisted them in recovering all their chests of bullion, and other effects. This done they returned to Concordia, where they remained several weeks; but in this interval death made such havock among them, that not above half their number remained to return to their native country, which they did as soon as a vessel could be fitted out for them.

On Friday, the 21st of September, in the morning, we got under sail, and bent our course westward, along the north side of the island of Savu, and of another lying to the westward of it, which at noon bore S. S. E. distant two leagues. At four in the afternoon, in latitude 10 deg. 38 min. S. and longitude 238 deg. 28 min. W. we discovered a small low island. In the evening of the 23d, we got clear of the islands, and on the 26th, our latitude by observation was 10 deg. 51 min. S. and our longitude 252 deg. 11 min. W. On the 28th, we steered all day N. W. with a view of making the land of Java, and on the 30th, Capt. Cook took into his possession the log-book and journals, at least all he could find of the officers, petty officers, and seamen, whom he strictly enjoined secrecy with respect to where they had been. At seven in the evening we had thunder and lightning, and about twelve by the light of the flashes we saw the west end of Java.

On Monday, October the 1st, at six o'clock in the

morning, Java Head bore S. E. by E. distant five leagues. Soon after we saw Prince's Island, and at ten Cracatoa, a remarkable high peaked island. At noon it bore N. 40 E. distant seven leagues. On the 2nd, we were close in with the coast of Java, in fifteen fathom water, along which we stood. In the forenoon a boat was sent ashore, in order to procure some fruit for Tupia, who was at this time extremely ill. Our people returned with four cocoa-nuts, and a small bunch of plantains, for which they had paid a shilling; but some herbage for the cattle the Indians gave our seamen, and assisted them to cut it. The country had a delightful appearance, being every where covered with trees, which looked like one continued wood. About eleven o'clock we saw two Dutch East Indiamen, from whom we heard with great pleasure, that the Swallow had reached the English channel in safety, having been at Batavia about two years before. We also learnt, that there was stationed here a fly boat or packet, to carry letters, as was said, from the Dutch ships, that came hither from Batavia, but the Captain thought it was appointed to examine all ships, that should have passed the strait. We had now been some hours at anchor, but in the evening a light breeze springing up, we got under sail, yet having little wind, and a strong current against us, we reached no further by eight in the morning, of the 3d, than Bantam Point. We now perceived the Dutch packet standing after us, but the wind shifting to the N. E. she bore away. We were now obliged to anchor; which we did in twenty-two fathom water, at about two miles from the shore. At six o'clock in the evening, the country boats came along side of us, on board one of which was the master of the packet. They brought in them fowls, ducks, parrots, turtle, rice, birds, monkeys, and other articles, with an intention to sell them, but having fixed very high prices on their commodities, and our Savu stock being not yet expended, very few articles were purchased. The Captain indeed gave two dollars for twenty-five fowls, and a Spanish dollar for a turtle, which weighed about six and thirty pounds. We might also for a dollar have bought two monkeys, or a whole cage of rice-birds. The master of the packet brought with him two books, in one of which he desired of our officers, that one of them would write down the name of our ship and commander; the place from whence we came; to what port bound; with such other particulars relating to ourselves, as we might think proper, for the information of any of our countrymen who might come after us. In the other book the master himself entered the names of our ship and its Captain, in order to transmit them to the governor and council of the Indies. We perceived, that in the first book many ships, particularly Portuguese, had made entries of the same kind with that for which it was presented to us. Mr. Hicks, our lieutenant, however, having written the name of the ship, only added "from Europe." The master of the packet took notice of this, but said, that he was satisfied with any thing we thought fit to write, it being intended solely for the information of our friends.

Friday the fifth, we made several attempts to sail with a wind that would not stem the current, and as often came to an anchor. In the morning a proa, with a Dutch officer, came along-side of us, and sent to Captain Cook a printed paper in exceeding bad English, duplicates of which he had in other languages, all regularly signed, in the name of the governor and council of the Indies, by their secretary; the contents whereof were the following enquiries, contained in nine questions.

1. The ship's name, and to what nation she belonged?
2. If she came from Europe, or any other place?
3. From what place she had last departed?
4. Whereunto designed to go?
5. What and how many ships of the Dutch company by departure from the last shore there layed, and their names?

6. If one or more of these ships, in company with the Endeavour, is departed for this or any other place?

7. If during the voyage any particularities is happened, or seen?

8. If not any ships in sea, or the straits of Sunda, have seen, or hailed in, and which?

9. If any other news worth of attention, at the place from whence the ship lastly departed, or during the voyage, is happened?

BATAVIA in the Castle.

By order of the Governor General, and the
Counsellors of India;

J. BRANDER BUNGL. Sec.

The officer observing, that the Captain did not chuse to answer any of the above questions, except the first and fourth, he said that the rest were not material, though it was remarked that just afterwards he affirmed he must dispatch the paper to Batavia, at which place it would arrive by the next day. This examination was rather extraordinary, and the more so, as it does not seem to have been of any long standing.

As soon as the Dutch officer departed, the anchor was weighed, but in four hours the ship was forced to come to an anchor again, till a breeze sprang up; she then held on her course till the next morning, when on account of the rapidity of the current, the anchor was dropped again. At last we weighed on the 8th, and stood clear of a large ledge of rocks, which we had almost ran upon the preceding day. But in the forenoon we were once more obliged to anchor near a little island that was not laid down in any chart on board. It was found to be one of those called the Milles Isles. Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander having landed upon it, collected a few plants, and shot a bat which was a yard long, being measured from the extreme points of the wings; they also killed a few plovers on this island, the breadth of which does not exceed one hundred yards, and the length five hundred; they found a house and a little spot of cultivated ground, and on it grew the Palma Christi, from which the West Indians make their castor oil.

In a little time after the gentlemen returned to the ship, some Malays came along-side in a boat, bringing with them pompians, dried fish, and turtle, for sale; one of the turtles, which weighed near one hundred and fifty pounds, they sold for a dollar, and seemed to expect the same piece of money for their fruit; but it being hinted to them that a dollar was too much, they desired that one might be cut, and a piece of it given to them, but this not being complied with, they at length sold twenty-six pompians for a Portuguese pe-racka. When they departed, they intimated their wishes, that this transaction might not be mentioned at Batavia.

We now made but little way till night, when the land-breeze springing up, we failed to the E. S. E. and on the following day, by the assistance of the sea-breeze, came to an anchor in the road of Batavia. At this place we found a number of large Dutch vessels, the Harcourt East-Indiaman from England, which had lost her passage to China, and two ships belonging to the private trade of our India company. The Endeavour had no sooner anchored, than a ship was observed, with a broad pendant flying, from which a boat was dispatched to demand the name of the vessel, with that of the commander, &c. To these enquiries Captain Cook gave such answers as he thought proper, and the officer who commanded the boat departed. This gentleman, and the crew that attended him, were so worn out with the unhealthiness of the climate, that it was apparent many deaths would follow; yet at present there was not one invalid on board of our ship, except the Indian Topia. The Captain now dispatched an officer to the governor of the town, to apologize for the Endeavour's not saluting; for he had but three guns proper for the purpose, except swivels, and he was apprehensive that they would not be heard. The ship was so leaky, that she made about nine inches water in

an hour, on the average; part of the false keel was gone: one of her purtps was totally useless, and the rest so much decayed, that they could not last long. The officers and seamen concurring in opinion that the ship could not safely put to sea again in this condition, the Captain resolved to solicit permission to leave her down; but as he had learned that this must be done in writing, he drew up a petition, and had it translated into Dutch.

On Wednesday, October the 10th, the Captain and the rest of the gentlemen went on shore, and applied to the only English resident at Batavia; this gentleman, whose name was Leith, received his countrymen in the politest manner, and entertained them at dinner with great hospitality. Mr. Leith informed us, that a public hotel was kept in town, by order of the Dutch governor, at which place merchants and other strangers were obliged to lodge, and that the landlord of the hotel was bound to find them warehouses for their goods, on the condition of receiving ten shillings on every hundred pounds of their value, but as the Endeavour was a king's ship, her officers, and the other gentlemen, might reside where they thought proper, only asking leave of the governor, whose permission would be instantly obtained. Mr. Leith added, that they might live cheaper in this way than at the hotel, if they had any person who spoke the Batavian tongue, whom they could rely on to purchase their provisions, but as there was no such person among the whole ship's crew, the gentlemen immediately bespoke beds at the hotel. In the afternoon Captain Cook attended the governor-general, who received him politely, and told him to wait on the council the next morning, when his petition should be laid before them, and every thing that he solicited should be granted. Late in the evening of this day, there happened a most terrible storm of thunder and lightning, accompanied with very heavy rain. In this storm the main-mast of a Dutch East Indiaman was split and carried away by the deck; and the main-top-mast and main-top-gallant-mast were torn to pieces; it is supposed, that the lightning was attracted by an iron spindle at the main-top-gallant-mast-head. The Endeavour, which was at a small distance from the Dutch ship, escaped without damage, owing, most probably, to the electrical chain which conducted the lightning over the vessel.—A centinel on board the Endeavour, who was charging his musket at the time of the storm, had it shaken out of his hand, and the ram-rod broken to pieces; the electrical chain looked like a stream of fire, and the ship sustained a very violent shock.

On Thursday the 11th, Capt. Cook waited on the gentlemen of the council, who informed him that all his requests should be complied with. In the interim the other gentlemen made a contract with the master of the hotel, to furnish them and their friends with as much tea, coffee, punch and tobacco, as they might have occasion for, and to keep them a separate table, for nine shillings a day English money; but on the condition that every person who should visit them, should pay at the rate of four shillings and six-pence for his dinner, and the same sum for his supper and bed, if he chose to sleep at the hotel; they were likewise to pay for every servant that attended them fifteen pence a day. It was soon discovered, that they had been much imposed on; for these charges were twice as much as could have been demanded at a private house: They appeared to live elegantly, but at the same time were but ill supplied. Their dinner consisted of fifteen dishes, all served up at once; and their supper of thirteen, but of these, nine or ten were of the most ordinary, because the cheapest, (poultry) that could be purchased, and even some of these dishes were observed to be served up four times successively: a duck, which was hot at dinner, was brought cold in the evening, the next day served up as a fricasse, and was converted into forced meat at night. We, however, only sared as others had done before us: it was the constant custom of the conscientious master of the hotel, to treat all his guests in the same manner; if we took no notice

of it, all was well, for I
oments of us: if we re
ment, the table was bet
all, in the end, we had
ever, after a few days,
ed party, a small boat
which he paid forty-five
ere far from having t
they expected: for no
as an occasional guest
were continually ru
sibly, to ask what was t
small private persons in
some articles of traffic,
age, and Mr. Banks
are open chaifes; they h
by a man sitting on a kit
he Mr. Banks paid tw
Our Indian friend T
heard on account of h
belious kind, yet he per
that was offered him.
bank, in hopes that he m
to the ship, and even th
battles and low spirited,
son than he seemed as
the carriages, streets, peo
objects, wholly new to
disposed power of fashi
collected at the scene, his
prepared. About this t
to the superintendent of
the ship was to be repa
one of the ships that
was sent to Mr. Stephe
of our arrival at this pla
expected difficulty in
pences that would be in
our; private persons ha
nation to advance the fu
a written application to
lared the Shebender to
money he might want on
Thursday the 18th,
delay of some days, we
the ship along-side of t
order to take out her f
nine days, we began to
the climate and situati
and grew every day wor
was seized with an infl
Banks and Dr. Solander
the two servants of the
short, almost every per
fell sick in a few days,
low swampy situation of
dirty-canals, that interfe
On the 26th, when fo
duty, we erected a tent
whole life we began to
to the ship, in hopes of
this could not be done,
ring to be laid down
the 28th, Mr. Banks co
or as it is called here,
pleased with the spot ne
pitched for him. Whe
over him, he expresse
tion. On the 30th Mr
ing, from humanity al
whose fits of an intermi
lar tertian, and were fo
frailies while they lasted
could scarcely crawl fro
Dr. Solander's fever i
the surgeon, was confir
On Monday the 5th
avoidable delays, the fl
day Mr. Monkhouse, o
26.

of it, all was well, for the landlord had the better customers of us; if we remonstrated against such treatment, the table was better supplied from time to time, till, in the end, we had no reason to complain. However, after a few days. Mr. Banks hired for himself and party, a small house, next door to the hotel, for which he paid forty-five shillings per month; but they were far from having the conveniencies and privacy they expected: for no person was permitted to sleep in it as an occasional guest, under a penalty: and Dutchmen were continually running in without the least ceremony, to ask what was to be sold, it being a custom for most private persons in Batavia to be furnished with these articles of traffic. Every one here hires a carriage, and Mr. Banks engaged two. These carriages are open chaises; they hold two persons, and are driven by a man sitting on a kind of coach-box: for each of these Mr. Banks paid two rix-dollars a day.

Our Indian friend Tupia had hitherto continued on board on account of his disorder, which was of the bilious kind, yet he persisted in refusing every medicine that was offered him. Mr. Banks sent for him to his quarters, in hopes that he might recover his health. While in the ship, and even in the boat, he was exceedingly talkative and low spirited, but he no sooner entered the town than he seemed as if re-animated. The houses, the carriages, streets, people, and a multiplicity of other objects, wholly new to him, produced an effect like the supposed power of fascination. But if Tupia was astonished at the scene, his boy Tayeto was perfectly enraptured. About this time we had procured an order from the superintendent of the island of Oorust, where the ship was to be repaired, to receive her there, and by one of the ships that sailed for Holland, an account was sent to Mr. Stephens, secretary to the admiralty, of our arrival at this place. Here the captain found an unexpected difficulty in procuring money for the expenses that would be incurred by refitting the Endeavour; private persons had neither the ability nor inclination to advance the sum required; he therefore sent a written application to the governor himself, who ordered the Shebarder to supply the captain with what money he might want out of the company's treasury.

Thursday the 18th, early in the morning, after a delay of some days, we ran down to Oorust, and laid the ship along-side of the wharf, on Cooper's Island, in order to take out her stores. After little more than three days, we began to experience the fatal effects of the climate and situation. Tupia sunk on a sudden, and grew every day worse and worse. Tayeto, his boy, was seized with an inflammation on his lungs. Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander were attacked by fevers, and the two servants of the former became very ill; in short, almost every person both on board and ashore fell sick in a few days, owing, as we imagined, to the low swampy situation of the place, and the numberless dirty canals, that intersect the town in all directions.

On the 26th, when few of the crew were able to do duty, we erected a tent for their reception. Tupia, of whose life we began to despair, desired to be removed to the ship, in hopes of breathing a freer air; however this could not be done, as she was unrigged and preparing to be laid down at the careening-place; but on the 28th, Mr. Banks conveyed him to Cooper's Island, or as it is called here, Kuypor, and, as he seemed pleased with the spot near which the ship lay, a tent was pitched for him. When the sea and land breezes blew over him, he expressed great satisfaction at his situation. On the 30th Mr. Banks returned to town, having, from humanity alone, been two days with Tupia, whose fits of an intermitting fever, now became a regular tertian, and were so violent as to deprive him of his senses while they lasted, and left him so weak, that he could scarcely crawl from his bed. At the same time Dr. Solander's fever increased, and Mr. Monkhouse, the surgeon, was confined to his bed.

On Monday the 5th of November, after many unavoidable delays, the ship was laid down, and the same day Mr. Monkhouse, our surgeon, fell a sacrifice to this

fatal country; whose loss was more severely felt, by his being a sensible, skillful man, and dying at a time when his abilities were most wanted. Dr. Solander was just able to attend his funeral, but Mr. Banks, in his turn, was confined to his bed.

Friday the 9th, our Indian boy Tayeto paid the debt of nature, and poor Tupia was so affected at the loss, that it was doubted whether he would survive it till the next day. In the mean time the ship's bottom having been carefully examined, it was found to be in a worse condition than we apprehended. The false keel was considerably gone to within twenty feet of the stern post; the main keel was injured in many places; much of the sheathing was torn off; and several planks were greatly damaged: two of them, and half of a third, particularly, for the length of six feet, were so worn, that they were not above an eighth part of an inch thick, and the worms had made their way quite into the timbers: yet, in this condition, the Endeavour had sailed many hundred leagues, where navigation is as dangerous as in any part of the globe. How much misery did we escape, by being ignorant that so considerable a part of the bottom of the vessel was thinner than the sole of a shoe, and that every life on board depended on so slight a barrier between us and the unfathomable ocean!

Dr. Solander and Mr. Banks were now so worn down by their disorder, that the physician declared they had no chance for recovery but by removing into the country. In consequence of this advice a house was hired for them, at the distance of about two miles from the town, which belonged to the master of the hotel, who engaged to supply them with provisions, and the use of slaves. While these gentlemen were taking measures for the recovery of their health, we received an account of the death of our faithful Tupia, who sunk at once after the loss of his boy, Tayeto, whom he loved with the tenderness of a parent. On the 14th, the bottom of the ship was thoroughly repaired, and much to Capt. Cook's satisfaction, who bestowed great encomiums on the officers and the workmen at the Marine-yard; in his opinion there is not one in the world, where a ship can be laid down with more convenient speed and safety, nor repaired with more diligence and skill. At this time Captain Cook was taken ill. Mr. Sporing also, and a sailor who attended Mr. Banks, were seized with the deadly intermittents, and only ten of the ship's company were capable of doing duty. As to Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander, they recovered slowly at their country house, which was open to the sea-breeze, and situated upon a running stream; circumstances that contributed not a little to a free circulation of air.

The ship being repaired, the sick people received on board her, and the greater part of her water and stores taken in, she sailed from Oorust on the 8th of December, and anchored in the road of Batavia: twelve days were employed in receiving the remainder of her provisions, water, and other necessaries, though the business would have been done in much less time, but that some of the crew died, and the majority of the survivors were so ill, as to be unable to give their assistance.

On the 24th, Capt. Cook took leave of the governor, and attended by Mr. Banks and the other gentlemen who had hitherto lived in the town, repaired on board the ship, which got under sail the next morning. The Endeavour was saluted by the fort, and by the Elgin East Indiaman, which then lay in the road; but soon after these compliments were returned, the sea-breeze setting in, they were obliged to come to anchor. Since the arrival of the ship in Batavia Road every person belonging to her had been ill, except the sail-maker, who was more than seventy years old, yet this man got drunk every day while we remained there. The Endeavour buried seven of her people at Batavia, viz. Tupia and his boy, three of the sailors, the servant of Mr. Green the astronomer, and the surgeon; and at the time of the vessel's sailing, forty of the crew were sick, and the rest so enfeebled by their late illness, as to be scarcely able to do their duty.

C H A P. XII.

A descriptive account of the town of Batavia, &c.—The Endeavour sails to the Cape of Good Hope—An account of the inhabitants of Prince's Island—The arrival of the Endeavour at the Cape of Good Hope—The Cape and St. Helena described—Remarks on the Hottentots—The Endeavour returns to England, June 12, 1771.

Batavia, situated in 6 deg. 10 min. S. latitude, and 106 deg. 50 min. E. longitude from the meridian of Greenwich, is built on the bank of a large bay, something more than twenty miles from the Straight of Sundra, on the north side of the island of Java, on a low boggy ground. Several small rivers, which rise forty miles up the country, in the mountains of Blauwen Berg, discharge themselves into the sea at this place, having first intersected the town in different directions. There are wide canals of nearly stagnated water in almost every street, and as the banks of the canals are planted with trees, they appear at first very agreeable; but these trees and canals combine to render the air pestilential. Some of the rivers are navigable, more than thirty miles up the country; the Dutch appear to have chosen this spot to build the town on, for the sake of water carriage, in which convenience Batavia exceeds every place in the world, except the towns of Holland.

The new church in Batavia, is a fine piece of building, and the dome of it may be seen far off at sea. This church is illuminated by chandeliers of the most superb workmanship, and has a fine organ: most of the other public buildings are ancient, constructed in an ill taste, and gave a very comely idea of Dutch clumsiness. Their method of building their houses seems to have been taught them by the climate. On the ground-floor there is no room but a large hall, a corner of which is parted off for the transaction of business; the hall has two doors, which are commonly left open, and are opposite each other, so that the air passes freely through the room, in the middle of which there is a court, which at once increases the draft of air, and affords light to the hall; the stairs which are at one corner, lead to large and lofty apartments above. The female slaves are not permitted to sit in any place but the alcove formed by the court, and this is the usual dining place of the family.

Batavia is encompassed by a river of shallow water, the stream of which is very rapid; within this river, which is of different widths in various places, is an old stone wall, much decayed in many places, and within the wall is a canal, wider in some places than in others, so that there is no entering the gates of the town but by crossing two draw-bridges; there are but few guns on the ramparts, and no persons are permitted to walk there. There is a kind of citadel, or castle, in the N. E. corner of the town, the walls of which are both broader and higher than they are in other parts; it is furnished with a number of large guns, which command the landing-place.

In the harbour of Batavia, any number of ships may anchor, the ground is so excellent that the anchor will never quit its hold. This harbour is sometimes dangerous for boats, when the sea-breezes blow fresh; but, upon the whole, it is deemed the best and most commodious in all India. There is a considerable number of islands, which are situated round the outside of the harbour, and all these are in the possession of the Dutch, who destine them to different purposes.

The fruits of this country are near forty in number, and of some of these there are several kinds. Pine-apples grow in such abundance, that they may be purchased, at the first hand, for the value of an English farthing; we bought some very large ones for a half-penny a-piece, and their taste is very excellent. The sweet oranges of Batavia are good of their kind, but very dear at particular times. The shaddocks of the West-Indies, called here Pamplemooles, have an agreeable flavour. Lemons were very scarce when the Endeavour lay in the harbour, but limes were altogether as plentiful, and sold at little more than two-pence the

score. There are many kinds of oranges and lemons, but none of them excellent. Of mangoes there are plenty, but their taste is far inferior to the melting peach of England, to which they have been compared. Of bananas, there are an amazing variety of sorts, some of which being boiled, are eaten as bread, while others are fried in batter, and are a nourishing food: but of the numerous sorts of fruit, three only are fit to be eaten. Grapes are sold from one shilling to eighteen-pence a pound, though they are far from being good. The tamarinds are cheap and plentiful. The water-melons are excellent of their kind, and are produced in great abundance. The pumpions are boiled as turnips, and eaten with salt and pepper. The papans of this country are superior to turnips, if the cores are extracted, after paring them when they are green. The guava has a strong smell, and a taste not less disagreeable. The sweet lop is a fruit that has but little flavour: it abounds in large kernels, from which the pulp is sucked. The taste of the cullard-apple very much resembles the dath from which its name is taken. The cathu apple produces a nut which is not unknown in England, but the fruit has such an astringent quality, that the Batavians seldom eat of it: the nut grows on the top of the apple. The cocoa-nut is plentiful in this country, and there are several kinds of this fruit, the best of which is very red between the shell and the skin. The jamboo is a fruit that has but little taste, but is of a cooling nature. Of the jambu-eyer, there are two kinds, the white and the red: they have no kind of taste, but that of a watery acid. The jambu-eyer mauwar, smells like a rose, and its taste is not unlike that of conserve of roses. The mangollan is of a dark red colour, and not larger than a small apple: to the bottom of this fruit adhere several little leaves of the blossoms, while on its tops are a number of triangles combined in a circle; it contains several kernels ranged in a circular form, within which is the pulp, a fruit of most exquisite taste; it is equally nutritious and agreeable, and is constantly given to persons who are troubled with inflammatory or putrid fevers. The sweet orange of this country is likewise given in the same disorders. The pomegranate of these parts differs in nothing from that generally known in England. The durion takes its name from the word Dure, which, in the language of that country, means prickles, and the name is well adapted to the fruit, the shell of which is covered with sharp points, shaped like a sugar-loaf: its contents are nuts not much smaller than chestnuts, which are surrounded with a kind of juice resembling cream; and of this the inhabitants eat with great avidity: the smell of this fruit is more like that of onions, than any other European vegetable, and its taste is like that of onions, sugar, and cream intermixed: the inside of the durion, when ripe, is parted lengthways, into several divisions. The nauca is a fruit that smells like garlic and apples mixed together: its size in the gardens of Batavia, is not bigger than that of a middling sized pompon, and its shape is nearly the same: it is covered with prickles of an angular form. The champada is in all respects like the nauca, only that it is not so large. The rambuan contains a fruit within which is a stone, that is perhaps the finest acid in the world: this fruit is not unlike a chestnut with its hulk on; and it is covered with small prickles of a dark red colour; and so soft as to yield to the slightest impression. The gambolan resembles a damascen both in colour and size, and is of a very astringent nature. The boe bidana tastes like an apple, and is likewise extremely astringent: its size is that of a gooseberry, its form round, and its colour yellow. The nam nam makes an excellent fritter, if

fried in batter, but is of it is rough, its length shape not unlike that the canam are two (p) are like those of an a most impossible to be pulp of a sharp taste, fruit is covered with a scarcely fit to be eaten and of a most unpleasant the streets of Batavia which are inclosed in of the size of a small few kernels of a yellow not unlike that of a this fruit is very remarkable of scales, resembling and the blimbing, are adapted to make four ing beffe is another fruit ably sweeter.

Of the fruits not known at Batavia, are the boe law preserved in sugar, for which the Batavians are eaten by strangers the guilindina, the has the appearance of in the islands of the good, though the tree is like the bread-fruits of fruit are eaten weekly, at distant places of those who reside Here the fruit-sellers the goods at low rates are thrown together at the by the inhabitants of houses, and they are called and gums, which is furnished the air from the canals and ditches about

In this country there are many species of flowers worth remarking. The bang carenassi, are perceived scarcely any return with which we are acquainted and seem to be of the munga which is no flower, is of a singular bon tanjong is of a agreeable smell; it is a confumence, and con it the appearance of somewhat like a jonquil. A large tree of There is also an excellent fundal malam, which night. This flower as night comes on, is very much like the being made into por upon thread, are called an evening. The several other sorts have mentioned, because there is not a called the pandang which being fired the natives of both this mixture, which and sleep under this chintz being their o

Formerly the only Java was pepper. from thence by the use of in the count pepper, and are for No. 10.

fried in batter, but is not esteemed when raw: the rind of it is rough, its length is about three inches, and its shape not unlike that of a kidney. The catappa and the canara are two species of nuts, the kernels of which are like those of an almond, but so hard, that it is almost impossible to break them. The madja contains a pulp of a sharp taste, which is eaten with sugar: this fruit is covered with a hard shell. The funtal is a fruit scarcely fit to be eaten, being at once astringent, acid, and of a most unpleasant taste, yet it is publicly sold in the streets of Batavia: it contains a number of kernels, which are inclosed in a thick skin. The salack is nearly of the size of a small golden pippin, and contains a few kernels of a yellow colour, the taste of which is not unlike that of a strawberry; but the covering of this fruit is very remarkable, as it consists of a number of scales, resembling those of a fish. The chefema and the blimbing, are two sour fruits, exceedingly well adapted to make four sauce, and pickles. The blimbing bessa is another fruit of the same kind, but considerably sweeter.

Of the fruits not in season when Captain Cook was at Batavia, are the boa atap, and the kinship, which he saw preserved in sugar: and there are several other sorts which the Batavians are fond of, but they are never eaten by strangers: among those are the moringa, the guilindina, the killer, and the foccum; this last has the appearance of the bread-fruit which is produced in the islands of the South Seas, but it is not near so good, though the tree on which it grows is almost exactly like the bread-fruit tree. At Batavia vast quantities of fruit are eaten. There are two markets held weekly, at distant places, for the better accommodation of those who reside in different parts of the country. Here the fruit-sellers meet the gardeners, and purchase the goods at low rates. We are told it is not uncommon to see fifty or sixty loads of pine-apples carelessly thrown together at those markets. Flowers are strewn by the inhabitants of Batavia and Java, about their houses, and they are constantly burning aromatic woods and gums, which is supposed to be done by way of purifying the air from the stench that arises from the canals and ditches about the town.

In this country sweet-scented flowers are plentiful, many species of which being entirely unknown, are worth remarking. The combang toquin, and combang carenassi, are particularly fragrant flowers, which bear scarcely any resemblance to any of those flowers with which we are acquainted. They are very small, and seem to be of the dog-bane species. The camungs which is more like a bunch of leaves than a flower, is of a singular smell, but very grateful. The bon tanjong is of a pale yellow cast, and has a very agreeable smell; it is about an inch and a half in circumference, and consists of pointed leaves, which give it the appearance of a star. The champacka smells somewhat like a jonquil, but is rather of a deeper yellow. A large tree upon the island produces this flower. There is also an extraordinary kind of flower called fundal malam, which signifies the intriguer of the night. This flower has no smell in the day-time, but as night comes on, it has a very fragrant scent, and is very much like the English tuberose. These flowers being made into nosegays of different shapes, or strung upon thread, are carried through the street for sale on an evening. The gardens of the gentlemen produce several other sorts of flowers besides these which we have mentioned, but they are not offered to sale, because there is not a sufficient plenty of them. A plant, called the pandang, is produced here, the leaves of which being shred small, and mixed with other flowers, the natives of both sexes fill their cloaths and hair with this mixture, which they likewise sprinkle on their beds, and sleep under this heap of sweets, a thin piece of chintz being their only covering.

Formerly the only spice that grew on the island of Java was pepper. A considerable quantity is brought from thence by the Dutch, but very little of it is made use of in the country. The inhabitants prefer cayen pepper, and are fond of cloves and nutmeg, but these

first are too dear to be commonly used. Near the island of Amboyna are some little isles, on which the cloves grow, and the Dutch were not easy till they all became their property. Scarcely any other nutmegs are found but on the island of Banda, which however furnishes enough for all the nations that have a demand for that commodity. There are but few nutmeg-trees on the coast of New Guinea. The island of Java, of which we have already spoken, produces horses, buffaloes, sheep, goats, and hogs. The sort of horses said to have been met with here when the country was first discovered, appeared to be nimble animals though small, being generally seldom above thirteen hands high. The horned cattle of this country are different from those of Europe. They are quite lean, but of a very fine grain. The Chinese and the natives of Java eat the buffaloes flesh, which the Dutch constantly refuse, being impressed with a strange idea that it is feverish. The sheep are hairy like goats, and have long ears: they are mostly found to be tough and ill-tasted. There happening to be a few from the Cape of Good Hope at Batavia, some of them were purchased at the rate of one shilling a pound. The hogs, especially those of the Chinese stock, are very fine food, but so fat as that the lean is separately sold the butchers, who are Chinese; the fat, they melt and sell to their countrymen to be eaten with their rice. Yet though these hogs are so fine, the Dutch prefer their own breed, and the consequence is that these latter are sold at extravagant rates.

As the Portuguese shoot the wild hogs and deer, they are sold at a moderate price, and are good eating. As to the goats of this country they are as indifferent as the sheep. Dogs and cats are found here in abundance, and there are numbers of wild horses at a considerable distance from Batavia, on the mountains. There are a few monkeys seen near the town; but there are many on the mountains and desert places, where there are also tygers, and a few rhinoceroses.

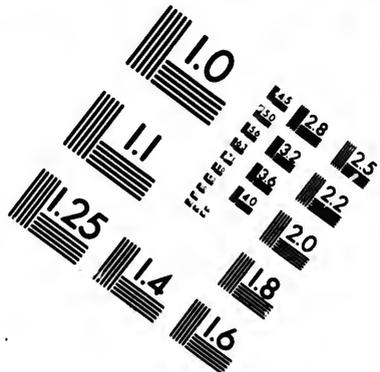
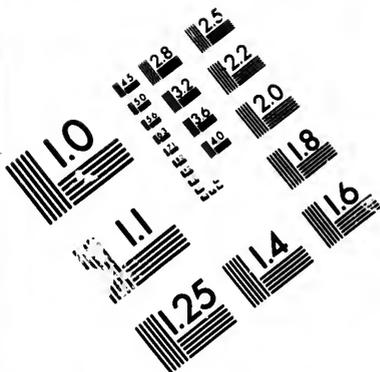
Of fish an astonishing quantity is taken here, and all are fine food, except a few that are scarce; yet the inhabitants will not eat those that are found in abundance, but purchase those which are worse and scarcer, a circumstance that contributes to keep up the price of the latter. A prejudice likewise prevails among the Dutch which prevents them from eating any of the turtle caught in these parts, which are very good food, though not equal to those that are found in the West-Indies. Very large lizards are common at Batavia; some of them are said to be as thick as a man's thigh; and Mr. Banks shot one five feet long, which being dressed, proved very agreeable to the taste. We found snakes of two different sorts; and thrushes might have been purchased of the Portuguese, who were the only dealers in this sort of birds, and venders of wild fowl in the country. In the island are palm-wine, and arrack. Of the former are three sorts, the first of which is drank in a few hours after it is drawn from the tree, and is moderately sweet; the second and third sorts are made by fermentation, and by putting several sorts of herbs and roots into the liquor.

In Java, the religion of Mahomet is professed, for which reason the natives do not make use of wine publicly: but in private few of them will refuse it. They also chew opium, whose intoxicating qualities prove its recommendation to the natives of India.

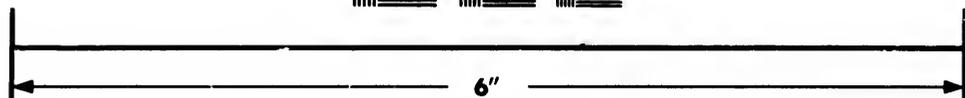
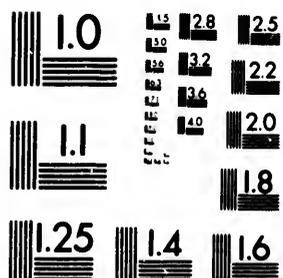
If we exclude the Chinese, and the Indians of different nations, who inhabit Batavia and its environs, the inhabitants only amount to a small number, not a fifth part of whom are said to be Dutchmen, even by descent. The Portuguese out-number all the European settlers on the island. The troops in the service of the states of Holland, are composed of the natives of almost all the nations of Europe; but the greater part of them are Germans. When any person goes to reside at Batavia, he is obliged to enter first as a soldier, to serve their company for five years. Afterwards he applies for a leave of absence to the council, which being granted as a thing of course, he engages in any business that he thinks proper to chuse. There is however a sort of policy in this matter, since the Dutch have thus

always





**IMAGE EVALUATION
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic
Sciences
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503

1.5 1.8
2.0 2.2
2.5 2.8
3.2 3.6
4.0 4.5

10
11
12
13
14

always a force ready to arm and join their troops in this country upon any emergency; all places of power and profit are held by the Dutch, and no foreigner has any share in the management of public affairs.

Notwithstanding all the men of other countries are bound to observe the rules above-mentioned, yet women from all parts may remain here unmolested. It appeared that the whole place could not furnish fifty females who were natives of Europe; yet the town abounded with white women, who were descended from Europeans, that had settled there at different times, all the men having paid the debt of nature; for so it is, that the climate of Batavia destroys the men much faster than the women. These women follow the delicate custom of chewing beetle, after the example of the native Javanese, whose dress they imitate, and whose manners they copy, in all respects. Mercantile business is conducted at Batavia with the slightest trouble imaginable. When a merchant receives an order for goods of any kind, he communicates the contents of it to the Chinese, who are the universal manufacturers. The Chinese agent delivers the effects on board the ship for which they are bespoke, and taking a receipt for them from the master of the vessel, he delivers it to the merchant, who pays the Chinese for the goods, and reserves a considerable profit, without the least trouble, risque, or anxiety. But when a merchant imports goods of any kind, he receives them himself, and lodges them in his own warehouses. It may be wondered that the Chinese do not ship the goods on their account, but from this they are restricted, and compelled to sell them to the merchants only. The inhabitants of Java distinguish the Portuguese by the name of Oranferane, that is, Nazarene-men; but these use the general term of Caper, or Casir, respecting all who do not profess the religion of Mahomet, and in this they include the Portuguese. But the Portuguese of Batavia are so only in name; for they have neither any connection with, or knowledge of the kingdom of Portugal, and they have changed the religion of the church of Rome, for that of Luther; with the manners of the natives, they are wholly familiarised, and they commonly speak their language, though they are able to converse in a corrupt kind of Portuguese. They dress in the habit of the country, with a difference only in the manner of wearing their hair; their noses are more peaked and their skin of a deeper cast than that of the natives. Some of them are mechanics and artificers, others subsist by washing of linen, and the rest procure a maintenance by hunting.

The Indians of Batavia, and the country in its neighbourhood, are not native Javanese, but are either born on the several islands from whence the Dutch bring their slaves, or the offspring of such as have been born on those islands; and these having been made free either in their own persons or in the persons of their ancestors, enjoy all the privileges of freemen. They receive the general appellation of believers of the true faith. The various other Indian inhabitants of this country attach themselves each to the original customs of that in which themselves or their ancestors were born, keeping themselves apart from those of other nations, and practising both the virtues and vices peculiar to their own countries. The cultivation of gardens, and the consequent sale of flowers and fruit afford subsistence to great numbers of them: these are the people who raise the beetle and areca, which being mixed with lime, and a substance that is called Gambir, the produce of the Indian continent, is chewed by persons of all ranks, women as well as men: indeed some of the politer ladies make an addition of cardamum, and other aromatics, to take off the disagreeable smell with which the breath would be otherwise tainted. Some of the Indians are very rich, keep a great number of slaves, and live, in all respects, according to the custom of their respective countries, while others are employed to carry goods by water; and others again subsist by fishing. The Oranflams, or believers of the faith, feed principally on boiled rice, mixed with a small quantity of dried shrimps and other fish, which are imported from China,

and a little of the flesh of buffaloes and chickens; they are fond of fruit, of which they eat large quantities, and with the flour of the rice they make several sorts of pastry. They sometimes make very superb entertainments, after the fashion of their respective countries; but, in general, they are a very temperate people; of wine they drink very little, if any, as the religion of Mahomet, which they profess, forbids the use of it. When a marriage is to be solemnized among them, all the gold and silver ornaments that can be procured, are borrowed to deck out the young couple, who, on these occasions, never fail to make the most splendid appearance; sumptuous entertainments are given by those who can afford them, which continue twelve or fourteen days, and frequently more, during all which time the women take care that the bridegroom shall not visit his wife privately, though the wedding takes place previous to the festival. All these Indians, though they come from different countries, speak the Malay language if it deserves that name. On the island of Java there are two or three different dialects, and there is a language peculiar to every small island; it is conjectured that the Malay tongue is a corruption of the language of Malacca. The hair of these people, which is black without a single exception, grows in great abundance; yet the women make use of oils, and other ingredients, to increase the quantity of it: they fasten it to the crown of the head with a bodkin, having first twined it into a circle, round which they place an elegant wreath of flowers, so that the whole head-dress has a most beautiful appearance. It is the universal custom both with the men and women, to bathe in a river once every day, and sometimes oftner, which not only promotes health, but prevents that contraction of skin, that would be otherwise unavoidable in so hot a climate. The teeth of the Oranflams have some particulars in them well worthy of notice. With a kind of whetstone they rub the ends of them till they are quite flat and even; they then make a deep groove in the teeth of the upper jaw, in the centre between the bottom of each tooth and the gum, and horizontally with the latter; this groove is equal in depth to a quarter of the thickness of the teeth; yet none of these people have a rotten tooth, though according to the dentists of England and France, such a thing must be unavoidable, as the tooth is placed much deeper than what we call the enamel. The teeth of these people become very black by the chewing of beetle, yet a slight washing will take off this blackness, and they will then become perfectly white; but they are very seldom washed, as the depth of the colour is very far from being thought disagreeable. Most of our readers must have heard of the Mohawks; and these are the people who are so denominated, from a corruption of the word amock, which will be explained by the following story and observations. To run amock is to get drunk with opium, and then seizing some offensive weapon, to fall forth from the house, kill the person or persons supposed to have injured the amock, and any other person that attempts to impede his passage, till he himself is taken prisoner or killed on the spot. While Captain Cook was at Batavia, a person whose circumstances in life were independent, being jealous of his brother, intoxicated himself with opium, and then murdered his brother, and two other men who endeavoured to seize him. This man, contrary to the usual custom, did not leave his own house, but made his resistance from within it; yet he had taken such a quantity of the opium, that he was delirious, which appeared from his attempting to fire three muskets, neither of which had been loaded, nor even primed. Jealousy of the women is the usual reason of these poor creatures running amock [or a-muck] and the first object of their vengeance is the person whom they suppose to have injured them. The officer, whose business it is to apprehend these unhappy wretches, is furnished with a long pair of tongs, in order to take hold of them without coming within the reach of the point of their weapon. Those who may be taken alive, which is not often the case, are generally wounded; but they are always broken upon the wheel; and if the

phy-

physician, who is appointed to think them likely to be mortal, distilled immediately, and the place rally the spot where the first m. A number of absurd customs p people, and opinions no less rid that the devil, whom they call S sickness and adversity; therefore, they offer meat, money, and other sacrifices. Should one am should he dream for two or three imagines the Devil has laid his when, upon neglect to fulfil; he ment will certainly be sickness commands may not be revealed spicuity. To interpret his dream his wits to the uttermost, and il or figuratively, directly or by c explanation that satisfies him, h or priest, who unravels the myste night, by a comment, in whic that Satan wants victuals or mo on a little plate of cocoa-nut lea branch of a tree near the river, be the opinion of these people earth the devil "walketh thro Banks once asked, whether the money, or eat the victuals; money it was considered rather fender, than a gift to him who h therefore if it was devoted by s ighly into whose hands it cam was generally the prize of some that way; but respecting the m opinion, that, although the De parts, yet by bringing his mou all its savour without chang afterwards it was as insipid as v

Another superstitious notion more unaccountable. They when delivered of children, are lvered of a young crocodile, being received carefully by the sely carried down to the river. The family in which such a bi happened, constantly puts vic their amphibious relation, esp long as he lives, goes down to to fulfil his fraternal duty: fo according to the general opini sick: or death. We are at opinion to extra vagant and ab to be unconnected with any re it should be pretended to happ be deceived into a belief of it any apparent interest in the more difficult to solve. The surdity, however, is certain, s current testimony of every In about it; and as to its origin, rise in the islands of Celeb places, many of the inhabitant families; but however that b over all the eastern islands, e and westward as far as Java dile twins are called Sudaras, one of the innumerable and of their existence, as was c oclar demonstrations; yet relation we will not vouch.

At Benecotch was born a young female slave, who b guage. This girl told Mr. E on his death bed, informed h for his Sudara, and in a sole give him meat when he sh in what part of the river he what name he was to be c quence of her father's injunct part of the river he had del

physician, who is appointed to examine their wounds, thinks them likely to be mortal; the punishment is inflicted immediately, and the place of execution is generally the spot where the first murder was committed. A number of absurd customs prevailed among these people, and opinions no less ridiculous. They believed that the devil, whom they call Satan, is the author of sickness and adversity; therefore, when sick, or in distress, they offer meat, money, and other things, as propitiatory sacrifices. Should one among them be restless, or should he dream for two or three nights successively, he imagines the Devil has laid his commands upon him, when, upon neglect to fulfil, he concludes his punishment will certainly be sickness or death; though such commands may not be revealed with sufficient perspicuity. To interpret his dream, therefore, he strains his wits to the uttermost, and if, by taking it literally or figuratively, directly or by contraries, he can put no explanation that satisfies him, he applies to the Cavin or priest, who unravels the mysterious suggestions of the night, by a comment, in which it generally appears, that Satan wants victuals or money. These are placed on a little plate of cocoa-nut leaves, and hung upon the branch of a tree near the river, so that it seems not to be the opinion of these people, that in prowling the earth the devil "walketh through dry places." Mr. Banks once asked, whether they thought Satan spent the money, or eat the victuals; they said, that as to the money it was considered rather as a mulct upon an offender, than a gift to him who had enjoined it; and that therefore if it was devoted by the dreamer, it did not signify into whose hands it came, and they supposed it was generally the prize of some stranger who wandered that way; but respecting the meat, they were clearly of opinion, that, although the Devil did not eat the gross parts, yet by bringing his mouth near it, he sucked out all its favour without changing its position, so that afterwards it was as insipid as water.

Another superstitious notion of this people is still more unaccountable. They imagine that women, when delivered of children, are at the same time delivered of a young crocodile; and that those animals being received carefully by the midwives, are immediately carried down to the river, and put into the water. The family in which such a birth is supposed to have happened, constantly puts victuals into the river for their amphibious relation, especially the twin, who as long as he lives, goes down to the river at stated times, to fulfil his fraternal duty; for an omission of which, according to the general opinion, he will be visited with sickness or death. We are at a loss to account for an opinion so extravagant and absurd, especially as it seems to be unconnected with any religious mystery, and how it should be pretended to happen by those who cannot be deceived into a belief of it by appearances, nor have any apparent interest in the fraud, is a problem still more difficult to solve. The strange belief of this absurdity, however, is certain, for which we had the concurrent testimony of every Indian who was questioned about it; and as to its origin, it seems to have taken its rise in the islands of Celebes and Boutou, at which places, many of the inhabitants keep crocodiles in their families; but however that be, this opinion has spread over all the eastern islands, even to Timor and Cream, and westward as far as Java and Sumatra. The crocodile twins are called Sudaras, and we shall here relate one of the innumerable and incredible stories, in proof of their existence, as was confidently affirmed, from ocular demonstrations; yet for the credibility of this relation we will not vouch.

At Benecoolen was born and bred among the English a young female slave, who had learnt a little of the language. This girl told Mr. Banks that her father, when on his death bed, informed her that he had a crocodile for his Sudara, and in a solemn manner charged her to give him meat when he should be dead, telling her in what part of the river he was to be found, and by what name he was to be called up. That in consequence of her father's injunctions, she repaired to that part of the river he had described, and standing upon

the bank, called out Radja Pouti, "white king;" whereupon the crocodile came to her out of the water, and eat from her hand the provisions she had brought him. Being desired to describe this paternal uncle, she said, that he was not like other crocodiles, but much handsomer, that his body was spotted and his nose red; that he had bracelets of gold upon his feet, and earrings of the same metal in his ears. This ridiculous tale was heard by Mr. Banks patiently to the end, and he then dismissed the girl, without reminding her, that a crocodile with ears was as strange a monster as a dog with a cloven foot. Not long after this a servant whom Mr. Banks had hired at Batavia, a son of a Dutchman by a Javanese woman, told his master, that he had seen a crocodile of the same kind, and it had been seen by several others both Dutchmen and Malays. This crocodile the servant said was very young, two feet long, and its feet were ornamented with bracelets of gold. I cannot credit these idle stories, said Mr. Banks. The other day a person asserted that crocodiles had earrings, and you know that cannot be true, because crocodiles have not ears. Ah, Sir, replied the man, these Sudara Oran are unlike other crocodiles; for they have five toes upon each foot, a large tongue that fills their mouth, and ears likewise, though indeed they are very small. Who can set bounds to the ignorance of credulity and folly! However, in the girl's relation were some things in which she could not be deceived; and therefore must be guilty of wilful falsehood. Her father might command her to feed a crocodile, in consequence of his believing it to be his Sudara; but its coming out of the river at her call, and eating the food from her hand, must have been a fable of her own invention, and being such, it was impossible that she could believe it to be true. However, the girl's story, and that of the man's, evinces, that they both believed the existence of crocodiles that were Sudaras to men; and the fiction invented by the girl may be easily accounted for, if we do but consider, how earnestly every one desires to make others believe what he believes himself. The Bougis, Macassars, and Boetons, are so firmly persuaded that they have relations of the crocodile species, that they perform a periodical ceremony in remembrance of them. Large parties go out in a boat, furnished with great plenty of provisions, and all kinds of music. They then row backwards and forwards, in places of the river where crocodiles and alligators are most common, singing and weeping by turns, each invoking his kindred, till a crocodile appears, when the music instantly stops, and provisions, beetle, and tobacco, are thrown into the water. This civility is intended to recommend themselves to their relations at home; not without hopes, perhaps, that it will be accepted instead of more expensive offerings which may not be in their power to pay.

The Chinese stand in the next rank to the Indians, and are very numerous, but possess very little property. Many of them live within the walls, and are shop-keepers. We have already mentioned the fruit-sellers of Passar Pissang; but others have a rich stock of European and Chinese goods. However, the far greater part of these people live without the walls, in a quarter by themselves, which is called Campang China. Most part of them are carpenters, joiners, smiths, taylor, slipper-makers, dyers of cotton, and embroiderers. They maintain the character of industry, universally bestowed upon them; and many are scattered about the country, where they cultivate gardens, sow rice and sugar, or keep cattle and buffaloes, whose milk they bring every day to town. Yet notwithstanding their commendable spirit of industry, we must observe, there is nothing honest or dishonest; provided there is no danger of a halter, that the Chinese will not readily do for money; and though they work with much diligence, nor are sparing of their labour, yet no sooner have they laid down their tools, than they begin to game either at cards or dice, or at other diversions altogether unknown among Europeans. To these they apply with such eagerness, as scarcely to allow time for necessary refreshments of food and sleep. In manners they are al- ways

ways rather obsequious; and in dress they are remarkably neat and clean, in whatever rank of life they are placed. A description of their persons or dress is unnecessary, seeing the better kind of China paper common in England, exhibits an exact representation of both, though perhaps with some slight exaggerations. With respect to their eating, they are easily satisfied; but the few that are rich have many savory dishes. The food of the poor is rice, with a small proportion of flesh or fish; and they have the advantage of the Mahomedan Indians, on account of their religion; for the Chinese, being under no restraint, eat, besides pork, dogs, cats, frogs, lizards, serpents, and a great variety of sea animals, which the other inhabitants do not consider as food. They also eat many vegetables, which an European, except he was perishing with hunger, would not taste. They have a singular custom respecting the burying their dead; for they cannot be prevailed upon to open the ground a second time, where the body has been deposited. On this account, in the neighbourhood of Batavia, their burying-grounds contain many hundred acres; and the Dutch, pretending this to be a waste of land, will not sell any for this purpose, unless at an exorbitant price. The Chinese, however, contrive to raise the purchase money, and afford another instance of the folly and weakness of human nature, in transferring a regard for the living to the dead, and making that an object of solicitude and expence, which cannot receive the least benefit from either. Under the influence of this universal prejudice, they take an uncommon method to preserve the body entire, and to prevent the remains of it from mixing with the earth that surrounds it. To this end they enclose it in a large thick wooden coffin, hollowed out of solid timber like a canoe. This when covered and let down into the grave, is surrounded with a coat of mortar, called Chinan, about eight or ten inches thick, which in a short time cements, and becomes as hard as stone. The relatives of the deceased attend the funeral ceremony, with a considerable number of female mourners, hired to weep. In Batavia, the law requires, that every man should be interred according to his rank, which is in no case to be dispensed with; so that if the deceased has not left sufficient to pay his debts, an officer takes an inventory of what was in his possession when he died, and out of the produce buries him in the manner prescribed, leaving only the overplus to his creditors.

The lowest class of people in this country are the slaves, by whom the Dutch, Portuguese, and Indians, whatever their rank or situation, are constantly attended. They are bought in Sumatra, Malacca, and almost all the Eastern Islands; but the natives of Java, very few of whom live in Batavia, are exempted from slavery, under the sanction of very severe penal laws, seldom we believe violated. These slaves are sold from ten to twenty pounds sterling each; but girls, if handsome, will fetch sometimes a hundred. Being of an indolent disposition, they will not do much work, and are therefore content with a little victuals, subsisting altogether upon boiled rice, and a small quantity of the cheapest fish. They are natives of different countries, on which account they differ from each other extremely both in person and temper. The Papua, as they are here called, or the African negroes are the worst, most of them thieves and all incorrigible; consequently they may be purchased for the least money. The next class to these are the Bougis and Macassars, both from the island of Celebes; who in the highest degree are lazy, though not so much addicted to theft as the negroes; yet they are of a cruel and vindictive spirit, whereby they are rendered exceeding dangerous, especially as to gratify their resentment, they make no scruple of any means, nor of sacrificing life itself. Besides these there are Malays and slaves of other denominations; but the best, and of course the dearest, are those brought from the island of Bali; and the most beautiful women from Nias, a small island on the coast of Sumatra; but being of a tender and delicate constitution, they quickly fall a sacrifice to the unwholesome air of Batavia. All these slaves are wholly in the power of their masters, who may

inflict upon them any punishment that does not take away life; and should one die in consequence of punishment, though his death may be proved not to have been intended, yet the master is called to a severe account, and generally sentenced to suffer capitally. For this reason a master seldom corrects a slave with his own hands, but by an officer called a Marineu, one of whom is stationed in every district. The duty of this officer is to quell riots, and to take offenders into custody; but more particularly to apprehend runaway slaves, and punish them for such crimes as the master has supported by proper evidence; the punishment, however, is not inflicted by the Marineu in person, but by slaves who are appointed to the business. The punishment is stripes, the number being proportioned to the nature of the offence; and the instruments are rods made of rattans, which are split into tender twigs for the purpose, and every stroke draws blood. A common punishment costs the master a rixdollar, and a severe one a ducatoon, about six shillings and eight-pence. The master is also obliged to allow a slave, as an encouragement, three dubbelcheys, equal to about seven-pence half-penny a week; this is also done to prevent his indulging his strong temptations to steal.

Respecting the government of this place we can say but little. We observed a remarkable subordination among the people. Every house-keeper has a certain specific rank, according to the length of time he has served the company. The different ranks thus acquired are distinguished by the ornaments of the coaches, and the dresses of the coachmen: some ride in plain coaches, some are allowed to paint them with different devices, and some to gild them. The coachmen also are obliged to appear in clothes quite plain, or ornamented in various manners and degrees.

The chief officer in this place has the title of governor-general of the Indies, to whom the Dutch governors of all other settlements are subordinate; and they are obliged to repair to Batavia in order to have their accounts passed by him. Should they appear to have been criminal, or even negligent, he detains them during pleasure; sometimes three years; for they cannot without his permission quit the place. The members of the council, called by the natives *Edele Herren*, and by the English, *Idoleers*, are next in rank to the governor-general. These assume so much state, that whoever meets them in a carriage, are expected to rise up and bow, and after this compliment, they drive to one side of the road and stop, till the members of the council are past; their wives and children expect also the same homage, and it is commonly paid them by the inhabitants. Some English Captains have thought this a slavish mark of respect, derogatory to their dignity as servants of his Britannic majesty, and for this reason have refused to pay it; nevertheless, when in a hired coach, nothing but a menace of immediate death could prevent the coachman from honouring the Dutch grandee, at the expence of their mortification.

With respect to the distribution of justice, it is administered in Batavia by the lawyers, who have peculiar ranks of distinction among themselves. Their decisions in criminal cases seem to be severe with respect to the natives, but lenient in a partial degree to their own people. A christian is always indulged with an opportunity of escaping before he is brought to trial, whatever may be his offence, and when convicted, he is seldom punished with death. On the contrary, the poor Indians are hanged, broken upon the wheel, and even impaled alive. As to the Malays and Chinese they have judicial officers of their own, named captains and lieutenants, who determine in civil cases, subject to an appeal to the Dutch tribunal. The taxes laid upon these people by the company are very considerable, among which, that exacted for liberty to wear their hair is not the least. The time of payment is monthly, and to save the charge and trouble of collecting them, notice is given of this by hoisting a flag upon the top of a house in the middle of the town, and the Chinese find that it is their interest to repair thither when a payment is due without delay.

ment that does not take
is in consequence of punish-
may be proved not to have
ter is called to a severe ac-
to suffer capitally. For
corrects a slave with his own
d a Marineu, one of whom
The duty of this officer
offenders into custody, but
and runaway slaves, and
as the master has support-
punishment, however, is not
erson, but by slaves who are
The punishment is stripes,
ned to the nature of the of-
s are rods made of rattans,
wigs for the purpose, and
common punishment costs
a severe one a ducatoon,
pence. The master is also
an encouragement, three
seven-pence half-penny a
prevent his indulging his

it of this place we can say
remarkable subordination
house-keeper has a certain
the length of time he has
fferent ranks thus acquired
ments of the coaches, and
some ride in plain coaches,
m with different devices,
coachmen also are obliged
ain, or ornamented in va-

place has the title of go-
to whom the Dutch go-
nts are subordinate; and
Batavia in order to have
Should they appear to
egligent, he detains them
three years; for they can-
nit the place. The mem-
the natives Edele Heeren,
are next in rank to the
sume so much state, that
riage, are expected to rise
ompliment, they drive to
till the members of the
and children expect also
ommonly paid them by the
Captains have thought
derogatory to their dig-
nic majesty, and for this
nevertheless, when in a
ance of immediate death
rom honouring the Dutch
eir mortification.

dition of justice, it is ad-
awyers, who have pecu-
g themselves. Their deci-
be severe with respect to
artial degree to their own
ys indulged with an op-
he is brought to trial,
and when convicted, he
On the contrary, the
en upon the wheel, and
the Malays and Chinese
their own, named captains
ne in civil cases, subject
ribunal. The taxes laid
any are very considerable,
or liberty to wear their
e of payment is monthly,
uble of collecting them,
ing a flag upon the top
e town, and the Chinese
pair thither when a pay-

At

At Batavia the current money consists of ducats, va-
hed at one hundred and thirty-two stivers; ducatoons
eighty stivers; imperial six-dollars, sixty rupees, thirty;
schellings, six; double cheys, two stivers and a half;
and doits one fourth of a stiver. During our stay here
Spanish dollars were at five and five-pence; and we were
told they were never lower than five shillings and four-
pence, ev at the Company's warehouse: For English
guineas the exchange upon an average was nineteen
shillings; for though the Chinese would give twenty
shillings for some of the brightest, those that were
much worn were valued at only seventeen shillings.
There are two sorts of coin current here of the same
denomination; these are milled and unmilled; the
former of which is of most value. A milled ducatoon
is valued at eighty stivers; and an unmilled one at no
more than seventy-two. A six-dollar is equal to forty-
eight stivers, about four shillings and six-pence English
currency. All accounts are kept in six-dollars and
stivers, which here, at least, are nominal, like our pound
sterling.

On Thursday, the 27th of December, early in the
morning, we weighed, left the harbour of Batavia, and
stood out to sea. On the 29th, after much delay by
contrary winds, we weathered Pulo Pare, and stood for
the main. On the same day passed a small island be-
tween Batavia and Bantam, called Manater's island.
On Sunday the 30th, we weathered Wapping and Pulo
Babi islands, and the next day, being the 31st, we stood
over to the Sumatra shore.

On the morning of this new year's day, being Tues-
day, January the 1st, we steered for the
A. D. 1771. Java shore, and continued our course, as
the wind permitted us, till three o'clock in the after-
noon of the 5th, when we cast anchor on the south-
east side of Prince's Island, in eighteen fathom wa-
ter, in order to recruit our stores, and procure refresh-
ments for the sick, many of whom were much worse
than they were at our departure from Batavia. Mr.
Banks and Dr. Solander, accompanied by the Captain
and other gentlemen, went ashore. We met upon the
beach some Indians, by whom we were conducted to
one, who, they said, was their king. Having ex-
changed a few compliments with this person, we entered
upon business; but in settling the price of turtle could
not agree. Upon this we took leave, the Indians dis-
persed; and we proceeded along shore in search of a
watering place. We happily succeeded in finding a
very convenient one, and had reason to believe, with
care in filling, it would prove agreeable to our wishes.
On our return, some Indians, who remained with a
canoe upon the beach, sold us three turtle, but we were
obliged to promise, that we would not tell the king.
On Sunday the 6th, we renewed with better success our
traffic for turtle. About noon the Indians lowered
their demands slowly, insomuch, that before the even-
ing they accepted our stipulated price, and we had tur-
tle in plenty. In the mean time, the three we had pur-
chased were served to the ship's company, who, till
yesterday, had not fed on salt provisions from the time
of our arrival at Savu, which was now near three
months. Mr. Banks, in the evening, paid a visit to the
king, by whom he was received very graciously at his
palace, in the middle of a rice field, notwithstanding
his majesty was busily employed in dressing his own
supper. The day following, Monday the 7th, the In-
dians resorted to the trading place with fowls, fish,
monkeys, small deer, and some vegetables; but no tur-
tle appeared till next day, Tuesday the 8th, after which
some were brought to market every day, while we staid,
but the whole quantity together was not equal to that
we bought the day after our arrival.

Friday the 11th, Mr. Banks having received intelli-
gence from a servant he had hired at Batavia, that the
Indians of this island had a town situated near the shore,
to the westward, he determined to go in search of the
same. With this view he set out in the morning, ac-
companied by the second lieutenant; and apprehend-
ing his visit might not be agreeable to the natives, he
brought such of them as he met, that he was in search of

No. 10.

plants, which was indeed also true. Having come to
a place where there were three or four houses, they met
with an old man, of whom they ventured to make a
few enquiries concerning the town. He would have
persuaded them, that it was at a great distance; but
perceiving they proceeded forward, he joined company,
and went on with them. The old man attempted se-
veral times to lead them out of the way, though with-
out success; but when at length they came within sight
of the houses, he entered cordially into their party, and
conducted them into the town, the name of which is
Samadang. It consists of about four hundred houses,
and is divided by a brackish river into two parts, one
called the old, and the other the new town. When
they had entered the former, they were accosted by se-
veral Indians whom they had seen at the trading place,
and one of them undertook to carry them over to the
new town, at two-pence per head. The bargain be-
ing made, they embarked in two small canoes, placed
along-side of each other, and lashed together, to pre-
vent their over-setting. They landed safely, though
not without some difficulty; and when they came to
the new town, the people shewed them every mark of
a cordial friendship, shewing them the houses of their
king and principal people. Few of the houses were
open at this time, the inhabitants having taken up
their residence in the rice-grounds, to defend their
crops against the birds and monkeys, who without this
necessary precaution would destroy them. When their
curiosity was satisfied, they hired a large sailing boat
for two rupees, value four shillings, which conveyed
them to the bark time enough to dine upon one of the
small deer, weighing only forty pounds, which proved
to be exceeding good and savoury food. In the evening
we again went on shore, to see how our people went on,
who were employed in wooding and watering, when we
were told, that an axe had been stolen. Application
was immediately made to the king, who, after some
altercation, promised, that the axe should be restored
in the morning; and it was accordingly brought to us
by a man, who pretended, that the thief, afraid of a
discovery, had left it at his house in the night.

On Sunday, the 13th, having nearly completed our
wood and water, Mr. Banks took leave of his majesty,
to whom he had made several trifling presents, and at
parting gave him two quires of paper, which he gra-
ciously accepted. During their conversation, the king
enquired, why the English did not touch at the island
as they had used to do. Mr. Banks replied, that the
reason was, he supposed, because they found a deficiency
of turtle, of which there not being enough to supply
one ship, many could not be expected; and to supply
this defect, Mr. Banks advised his majesty to breed cat-
tle, buffaloes, and sheep; but he did not seem disposed
to adopt this prudent measure.

On Monday, the 14th, we had got on board a good
stock of fresh provisions, consisting of turtle, fowl,
fish, two species of deer, one about the size of a sheep,
the other not bigger than a rabbit; also cocoa-nuts,
plantains, limes, and other vegetables. The deer,
however, served only for present use, for we could sel-
dom keep one of them alive more than twenty-four
hours.

The trade on our parts, was carried on chiefly with
Spanish dollars, the natives seeming not to set value
upon any thing else; so that our people who had a ge-
neral permission to trade, parted with old shirts and
other articles, which they were obliged to substitute for
money to great disadvantage. On Tuesday, the 15th,
in the morning, we weighed, with a light breeze at
N. E. and stood out to sea. We took our departure
from Java Head, which is in latitude 6 deg. 49 min. S.
and in longitude 253 deg. 12 min. West.

Prince's Island, where we were stationed about ten
days, in the Malay language, called Pulo Selan, and in
that of the inhabitants, Pulo Pancitan, is a small
island, situated in the western mouth of the strait of
Sunda. It is woody, a very small part of it having
been cleared. We could perceive no remarkable hill
upon it; but a small eminence, just over the landing
place,

Z

place, has been named, by the English, the Pike. Formerly this place was much frequented by India ships belonging to various nations, especially from England; but of late they have forsaken it, because the water is bad, and touch either at North Island, or at New Bay, a few leagues distant from Prince's Island, at neither of which places any considerable quantity of other provisions can be procured; and, upon the whole, we must give it as our opinion, that Prince's Island is more eligible than either of them; for though, as we have already observed, the water is brackish, if filled at the lower part of the brook, yet higher up we found it excellent.

The first, second, and perhaps the third ship, that arrives here in the season, may be well supplied with turtle; but such as come afterwards must be content with small ones. What we purchased were of the green kind, and cost us, at an average, about three farthings a pound. They were neither fat nor well flavoured, which circumstance we imputed to their being long kept in pens of brackish water, without food. The fowls are large, and we bought a dozen of them for a Spanish dollar, which is about five-pence a piece. The small deer cost us two-pence a piece, and the larger, two only of which were brought to market, a rupee. The natives sell many kinds of fish by hand, and we found them tolerably cheap. Cocoa-nuts, if they were picked, we bought at the rate of a hundred for a dollar; and if taken promiscuously, one hundred and thirty. Plantains we found in abundance; also pine apples, water-melons, jaccas, and pompions, besides rice, yams, and several other vegetables, all which we purchased at reasonable rates.

In this island the inhabitants are Javanese, and their Raja is subject to the Sultan of Bantam. In their manners and customs they resemble the Indians about Batavia; but they are more jealous of their women, for all the time we were there, we saw not any of them, except one by chance in the woods, as she was running away to hide herself. They profess the Mahomedan religion; but not a mosque did we discover in the whole island. While we were among them, they kept the fast called by the Turks Ramadan, with extreme rigour, not one of them touching a morsel of victuals, nor would they chew their beetle till sun-set. Their food is likewise the same with that of the Batavian Indians, except the addition of the nuts of the palm, by eating of which, upon the coast of New Holland, some of our people were made sick, and some of our hogs poisoned. We enquired by what means these nuts were deprived of their noxious deleterious quality, and were informed, that they first cut them into thin slices, and dried them in the sun, then steeped them in fresh water for three months, and afterwards, pressing out the water, dried them a second time in the sun; but after all, we found they are eaten only in times of scarcity, when they mix them with their rice to make it go farther.

The houses of these people are built upon piles, or pillars, and elevated about four or five feet above the ground. Upon these is laid a floor of bamboo canes, at

such a distance from each other, as to leave a free passage for the air from below. The walls also are of bamboo, interwoven hurdlewise, with small sticks, and fastened perpendicularly to the beams which form the frame of the building; it has a sloping roof, so well thatched with palm-leaves, that neither the sun, nor rain can find entrance. The ground-plot, upon which the building is erected, is an oblong square. On one side is the door, and in the space between that and the other end of the house, in the center, towards the left hand, is a window. A partition runs out from each end of the house, which continues so far as to leave an opening opposite the door. Each end of the house therefore, to the right and left of the door, is divided into two apartments, all open towards the passage from the door to the wall on the opposite side. In that on the left hand, next to the door, the children sleep; that opposite to it is for the use of strangers; in the inner room, on the left hand, the master and his wife sleep; and that opposite to it is the kitchen. The only difference between the poor and the rich, with respect to these houses, consists in their size: but we must except the royal palace, and the house of one Gundang, the next man in riches and influence to the king; for those instead of being wattled with sticks and bamboos, are enclosed with boards. These people have occasional houses in the rice fields, at the season when they are infested with the birds and monkeys. They differ only from their town houses, by being raised ten feet instead of four from the ground.

The inhabitants of this island are of a good disposition; and dealt with us very honestly; only like other Indians, and the retailers of fish in London, they would ask twice, and sometimes thrice as much for their commodities as they would take. As what they brought to market belonged in different proportions, to a considerable number of the natives, they put all that was bought of one kind, as cocoas or plantains together, and when we had purchased a lot, they divided the money that was paid for it among the proprietors, in a proportion corresponding with their contributions. Sometimes, indeed, they would change our money, giving us 240 doits, amounting to five shillings, for a Spanish dollar, and ninety-six, amounting to two shillings, for a Bengal rupee.

The natives of Prince's Island have a language of their own, yet they all speak the Malay language. Their own tongue they call Catta Gunung, the language of the mountains. They say that their tribe originally migrated from the mountains of Java to New Bay, and then to their present station, being driven from their first settlement by tygers, which they found too numerous to subdue. Several languages are spoken by the native Javanese, in different parts of their island; but the language of these people is different from that spoken at Samarang, though distant only one day's journey from the residence of the Emperor of Java. The following list contains several corresponding words in the languages of Prince's Island, Java, and Malacca.

PRINCE'S ISLAND.	ENGLISH.	JAVANESE.	MALAY.
Jalma	A man.	Oong Lanang,	Oran Lacki Laki.
Becang,	A woman.	Oong Wadong,	Parampuan.
Oroculatacke,	A child.	Lari,	Anack.
Holo,	The head.	Undasi,	Capalla.
Erung,	The nose.	Erung,	Edung.
Mata,	The eyes.	Moto,	Mata.
Chole,	The ears.	Cuping,	Cuping.
Cutock,	The teeth.	Untu,	Ghigi.
Beatung,	The belly.	Wutong,	Prot.
Serit,	The backside.	Celit,	Pantat.
Pimping,	The thigh.	Poopoo,	Paha.
Hulloctoor,	The knee.	Duncul,	Lontour.
Metis,	The leg.	Sickil,	Kauki.
Cucu,	A nail.	Cucu,	Cucu.
Langan,	A hand.	Tangan,	Tangan.
Ramo Langan,	A finger.	Jari,	Jaring.

In this specimen chosen, because the language is unknown to the Malay, the

SOUTH-SEA ISLANDS.	
Mata	-
Maa	-
Einu	-
Matte	-
Outou	-
Euwa	-
Owhie	-
Eu	-
Mannu	-
Eyca	-
Tapao	-
Tooua	-
Eufwhe	-
Etannou	-
Enammou	-
Hearu	-
Taro	-
Uta	-

But the similitude in the words expressive that they have with the assistance of and who was on board up the following column will appear, that the

SOUTH-SEA ISLANDS.	
Tahie	-
Rua	-
Torou	-
Haa	-
Reina	-
Wheny	-
Hetu	-
Waru	-
Ira	-
Aboura	-

From the similitude that of the South Sea, concerning the people cannot easily be referred to Java and Madagascar the Javanese has long an olive cast; whereas and his hair woolly; the opinion of their hair possibly, the learning of courses, one through Asia, disseminating the terms of number, which language of people with each other.

In the month of February and made the best of Hope; but now the fact imbibed at Batavia, alarming symptoms; Our situation in a short the ship was little better those who did duty, were confined to their in the last stage of the every night we com Banks was among the time we despaired of we buried Mr. Sporing retinue, Mr. Parkinson Green the astronomer his mate, Mr. Monk's sail-maker, and his assistant the marines, two of the and nine sailors; in all

In this specimen the different parts of the body are chosen, because they are easily obtained from those whose language is unknown; and it is worthy of observation, that the Malay, the Javaneſe, and the language in

Prince's Iſland, have words, which if not exactly ſimilar to thoſe uſed in the South Sea Iſlands, are manifeſtly derived from the ſame ſource, as will appear from the following liſt.

SOUTH-SEA.	MALAY.	JAVANESE.	PRINCE'S ISLAND.	ENGLISH.
Mata	Mata	Moto	Mata	An eye.
Maa	Macan	Mangan	—	The ear.
Einu	Menum	Gnumbe	—	To drink.
Matte	Matte	Matte	—	To kill.
Outou	Coutou	—	—	A loſe.
Euwa	Udian	Udan	—	Rain.
Owhe	—	—	Awe	Bamboo cane.
Eu	Soufou	Soufou	—	A beaſt.
Mannu	—	Manny	Mannuck	A bird.
Eyca	Ican	Iwa	—	A fiſh.
Tapao	—	Tapaan	—	The foot.
Tooura	Udang	Urang	—	A lobſter.
Eufwhe	Ubi	Urve	—	Yams.
Etannou	Tannam	Tandour	—	To bury.
Enammou	Gnamuck	—	—	A muſquito.
Hearu	Garru	Garu	—	To ſcratch.
Taro	Tallas	Talus	—	Cocoa-roots.
Uta	Utan	—	—	In-land.

But the ſimilitude in theſe languages is more remarkable in words expreſſing number, which ſeems to prove that they have one common root. Mr. Banks, with the aſſiſtance of a negro ſlave, born at Madagaſcar, and who was on board an Engliſh ſhip at Batavia, drew up the following comparative table, from whence it will appear, that the names of numbers, in particular,

are in a manner common to all theſe countries: but we muſt obſerve, that in the iſland of Madagaſcar, the names of numbers, in ſome inſtances, are ſimilar to all theſe, which is a difficulty not eaſy to be ſolved; yet the fact will appear unqueſtionable from the following liſt of words, drawn up, as we have obſerved, by Mr. Banks.

SOUTH-SEA ISLANDS.	MALAY.	JAVANESE.	PRINCE'S ISLE.	MADAGASCAR.	ENGLISH.
Tahie	Satou	Sigi	Hegie	Iſſe	One.
Rua	Dua	Lorou	Dua	Rua	Two.
Torou	Tiga	Tullu	Tollu	Tellou	Three.
Haa	Ampat	Pappat	Opat	Effats	Four.
Reina	Lima	Limo	Limah	Limi	Five.
Wheny	Annam	Nunnam	Gunnap	Ene	Six.
Hetu	Tudju	Petu	Tudju	Titou	Seven.
Waru	Delapau	Wolo	Delapan	Walou	Eight.
Iva	Sembilan	Songo	Salapan	Sivi	Nine.
Aboura	Sapoulou	Sapoulou	Sapoulou	Tourou	Ten.

From the ſimilitude between the Eaſtern Tongue and that of the South Sea, many conjectures may be formed concerning the peopling of theſe countries, which cannot eaſily be referred to Madagaſcar. The people of Java and Madagaſcar appear to be a different race: the Javaneſe has long hair, and his complexion is of an olive caſt; whereas a native of Madagaſcar is black, and his hair woolly; yet this will not conclude againſt the opinion of their having had common anceſtors: and, poſſibly, the learning of ancient Egypt might run in two courſes, one through Africa, and the other through Aſia, diſſeminating the ſame words in each, eſpecially terms of number, which might thus become part of the language of people who never had any communications with each other.

In the month of February we held on our courſe, and made the belt of our way for the Cape of Good Hope; but now the fatal ſeeds of diſeaſe, our people had imbibed at Batavia, began to appear, with the moſt alarming ſymptoms, in dyſenteries and ſlow fevers. Our ſituation in a ſhort time was truly deplorable, and the ſhip was little better than an hoſpital, in which thoſe who did duty, were too few to attend thoſe who were confined to their hammocks. Many of theſe were in the laſt ſtage of the deſtructive diſorder, and almoſt every night we committed a body to the ſea. Mr. Banks was among the number of the ſick, and for ſome time we deſpaired of his life. In the courſe of ſix weeks we buried Mr. Sporing, a gentleman of Mr. Banks's retinue, Mr. Parkinson, his natural hiſtory painter, Mr. Green the aſtronomer, the boatſwain, the carpenter, and his mate, Mr. Monkhouſe the miſhiſpman, our jolly ſul-maker, and his aſſiſtant, the cook, the corporal of the marines, two of the carpenters crew, a miſhiſpman, and nine ſailors; in all three and twenty perſons, beſides

the ſeven that we had buried at Batavia. Such was the havock diſeaſe made among our ſhip's company, though we omitted no means, which we conceived might be a remedy; and to prevent the infection from ſpreading, we purified the water taken in at Prince's Iſland with lime, and waſhed all parts of the bark between decks with vinegar.

Friday the 15th of March, about ten o'clock P. M. we brought the ſhip to an anchor off the Cape of Good Hope. Capt. Cook repaired immediately to the governor, who cheerfully promiſed him every reſreſhment the country afforded; on which a houſe was hired for the ſick, and it was agreed they ſhould be lodged and boarded for two ſhillings each man per day. Our run from Java Head to the Cape afforded few obſervations that can be of uſe to future navigators, but ſome occurrences we muſt not paſs over in ſilence. We had left Java Head eleven days before we got the general S. E. trade-wind, during which time, we did not advance above 5 deg. to the ſouthward, and 3 deg. to the W. having an unwholeſome air, occaſioned probably by the load of vapours, which the eaſtern wind, and weſterly monſoons, bring into theſe latitudes, both of which blew in theſe ſeas, at the time we happened to be there. Our diſeaſes were certainly aggravated by thoſe poiſonous vapours, and unwholeſome air, particularly the flux, which was not in the leaſt degree checked by any medicine; ſo that whoever was ſeized with it, conſidered himſelf as a dead man; but we no ſooner got into the trade wind, than we felt its ſalutary effects. It is true, we buried ſeveral of our crew afterwards, but they were ſuch as had been taken on board in a ſtate ſo low and feeble, that there was ſcarcely a poſſibility of their recovery. We ſuſpected at firſt, that this dreadful diſorder might have been generated by the water that

we took on board at Prince's Island, or by the turtle we purchased there; but this suspicion we found to be groundless; because all the ships that came from Batavia at the same season, suffered in like manner, and some even more severely, though none of them touched at Prince's Island in their way.

Not many days after our departure from Java we were attended by the boobies for several nights successively, and as these birds are known to roost every night on shore, we concluded land was not far distant; perhaps it might be the island of Selam, which in different charts, is very differently laid down both in name and situation. After these birds had left us, we were visited by no more, till we got nearly a-breadth of Madagascar, where in latitude 27 deg. three quarters S. we saw an albatross, the number of which increased every day, with others of different kinds, particularly one about the size of a duck, of a very dark brown colour, with a yellowish bill; and they became more numerous as we approached the shore. When we got into soundings, we were visited by gannets, which we continued to see as long as we were upon the bank that stretches off Anguillas to the distance of forty leagues, and extends along shore to the eastward, from Cape False, according to some charts, one hundred and sixty leagues. The real extent of this bank is not exactly known; it is however useful as a direction to shipping when to haul in, in order to make the land.

At the time the Endeavour lay at the Cape of Good Hope, the Houghton Indiamen sailed for England. She had hurried near forty of her crew, and when she left the Cape, had many of her hands in a helpless condition, occasioned by the scurvy. Other ships likewise experienced a proportionable loss by sickness; so that our sufferings were comparatively light, considering that we had been absent near three times as long. We continued at the cape till the 13th of April, in order to recover the sick, procure stores, and to do some necessary work upon the ship and rigging. When this was finished we got all the sick on board, several of whom were still in a dangerous state; and on Sunday the 14th, having taken leave of the governor, we unmoored, and got ready to sail.

The history of Caffraria is well known in Europe, and a description of the Cape of Good Hope has been given by most of our circumnavigators; yet we think a particular account of this country will be acceptable to our numerous subscribers; and they will meet with some particulars which fell under our observation, that have either been wholly omitted or misrepresented in other narratives.

Caffraria, or Caffraria is well situated for navigation and commerce, both which advantages are almost wholly neglected. The interior part of the country is fertile, but wants the benefit of cultivation. The inhabitants are naturally sagacious, but their faculties are absorbed in indolence; thus both the lands and minds of the people require improvement; but lest cultivation in the first should introduce luxury, and information in the last produce disobedience, neither of these are encouraged by the politic Dutch, who possess a great part of the sea coast. This country extends about seven hundred and eighty miles from N. to S. that is, from Cape Negro to the Cape of Good Hope, from hence turning N. E. to the mouth of the river Spiritu Santo, it runs about six hundred and sixty miles; and proceeding up the country almost to the equinoxial line, it is about one thousand seven hundred and forty miles farther. In some places it is nine hundred, and in others not above six hundred broad. Caffraria is so named from the Caffres, its inhabitants; though some authors affirm, that this name is a term of reproach given by the Arabs to all who have but confused notions of the deity, and which the Portuguese have by mistake applied to these people.

The Cape of Good Hope, which is the most southern part of Africa, was first discovered, A. D. 1493, by Bartholomew Diaz, admiral of a Portuguese fleet, who on account of the boisterous weather he met with

when near it, distinguished it by the name of Cabodotoros Tormentos, or the Cape of all plagues; since which, no place in the universe has been more spoken of, though little of the country, except the coast, has been penetrated or known. The reason why it has so much attracted the attention of mariners of all nations, is, their being under a necessity of frequently calling there for water or other refreshments, and also of doubling it, in their voyages to the East-Indies. But John king of Portugal, not liking the name which his admiral had bestowed upon this large promontory, changed it to that of Cabode Bona Esperanca, the "Cape of Good Hope," which appellation it hath ever since retained.

Neither Diaz, nor his successor Vafende Gama, though they saw the Cape, thought proper to land: but in 1498 the Portuguese admiral, Rio del Infanta, was the first who ventured ashore; and from his report, Emanuel, king of Portugal, on account of the eligibility of the situation, determined to establish a colony there; but the Portuguese, who are naturally pusillanimous, having taken it into their heads, that the inhabitants of the Cape were cannibals, were too much afraid of being devoured. To obey their sovereign in making the settlement he intended: however, some time after, another body of these timid adventurers made good their landing, under the conduct of Francis d'Almeida, a viceroy of Brasil, when the Portuguese were shamefully defeated by the scarce armed, and unwarlike natives. The viceroy and fifty of his men being killed in the engagement, the remainder retired with precipitation to their ships. The Portuguese were much disappointed and chagrined at the idea of such martial superiority in a people by them deemed at once savage and despicable. They determined to be revenged; but not having magnanimity enough to shew a becoming resentment, they contrived a most inhuman and cowardly expedient. About two years after, touching at the cape, they landed with all the appearance of amity, accompanied with strong professions of friendship, and under this mask brought with them a large cannon loaded with grape shot. The unsuspecting natives, overjoyed by the gift of so great a treasure, began to drag it away by the means of two long ropes, which had been previously fastened to the muzzle. Great numbers laid hold of the ropes, and many others went before by way of triumph, when the treacherous Portuguese firing off the cannon, a prodigious slaughter ensued, as most of the people stood within the range of the shot. Many were killed, several wounded; and the few who escaped, abandoned with the utmost precipitation the fatal present.

About the year 1600, the Dutch began to touch at the Cape, in their way to and from the East-Indies; and becoming annually more sensible of the importance of the place, they effected a settlement in 1650, which since that time hath risen to great power and opulence, and been of essential service to that nation. M. Van Riebeeck, a surgeon, in his return from India, observing the convenience of the place for a settlement, and laying before the Dutch East India Company a plan of its advantages, the scheme was approved, and the projector appointed governor. This Adventurer sailing with four ships to the cape, entered into a negotiation with the people, who, in consideration of fifty thousand guilders, or four thousand three hundred and seventy-five pounds sterling, agreed to yield up to the Dutch a considerable tract of country round the Cape. Van Riebeeck, in order to secure his new purchase, immediately erected a strong square fort; laid out a large garden, and planted it with a great variety of the productions from Europe, that he might render the place as commodious and agreeable as possible. Having thus successfully founded a settlement, the Dutch Company proposed, in order the more effectually to establish it, that every man, who would settle three years at the Cape, should have an inheritance of sixty acres of land, provided that during that space he would so improve his estate, as to render it sufficient to maintain himself, and contribute something towards the maintenance of the

the garrison; and at the expiration of the time, he might either keep possession of it, or sell it, and return home. Induced by these proposals, many went to seek their fortunes at the Cape, and were furnished on credit with cattle, grain, plants, utensils, &c. The planters, however, at length grew weary of their habitations for want of conjugal society; therefore the governors of the company, to prevent their leaving the place, provided them with wives from the Orphan-houses, and other charitable foundations. In process of time they greatly increased, and spread themselves further up the country, and along the coast, till they occupied all the lands from Saklanna Bay, round the southern point of Africa, to Nossel Bay, on the E. and afterwards purchased Terra de Natal, in order to extend their limits still farther.

It appears, however, that on the first settlement of the Dutch at the Cape, all the Hottentot tribes did not acquiesce in the sale of the country to foreigners; for the Gunyemains dissented from the agreement of the others, and, in 1659, disputed the possession of the purchased territories with the Dutch. They always made their attack in boisterous weather, as thinking the fire-arms then of less use and efficacy; and upon these occasions they would murder indiscriminately all the Europeans they could meet, burn down their houses, and drive away their cattle. At length a Hottentot, called by the Dutch Doman, who had resided some time at Batavia, and afterwards lived at Cape Town, retired to his countrymen, and persuaded them, that it was the intent of the Europeans to enslave them, and stirred them up to war. Accordingly they took up arms, and being headed by Doman, attended by another chief named Garabinga, they committed great depredations. But the Hottentots themselves at length growing tired of the war, one hundred of them, belonging to one nation, came unarmed to the Dutch fort, with a present of thirteen head of fine excellent cattle, in order to sue for peace. This, it may be imagined, was readily granted by the Dutch, who were heartily sick of a contest, in which themselves were such great losers, without reaping any advantages from it.

Notwithstanding all that has been said to the contrary, no country we saw during the voyage, makes a more forlorn appearance, or is in reality a more sterile desert. The land over the cape, which constitutes the peninsula formed by Table Bay on the N. and False Bay on the S. consists of high mountains, altogether naked and desolate: the land behind these to the E. which may be considered as the Isthmus, is a plain of vast extent, consisting almost wholly of a light kind of sea sand, which produces nothing but heath, and is utterly incapable of cultivation. All the spots that will admit of improvement, which together bear about the same proportion to the whole as one to one thousand, are laid out in vineyards, orchards, and kitchen grounds; and most of these little spots lie at a considerable distance from each other. There is also the greatest reason to believe, that in the interior parts of the country, that which is capable of cultivation, especially what is situated at no great distance from the coast, does not bear a greater proportion to that which is barren; for the Dutch told us, that they had settlements eight and twenty days up the country, a distance equal at least to nine hundred miles, from which they bring provisions to the Cape by land; so that it seems reasonable to conclude, that provisions are not to be had within a less compass. While we were at the Cape, a farmer came thither from the country, at the distance of fifteen days journey, and brought his children with him. We were surprised at this, and asked him, if it would not have been better to have left them with his next neighbour. Neighbour I said the man, I have no neighbour within less than five days journey of me. Surely the country must be deplorably barren in which those who settle only to raise provisions for a market, are dispersed at such distances from each other. That the country is every where destitute of wood is a certain fact; for timber and planks are imported from Batavia, and fuel is almost as dear as food. We saw not a tree,

except in plantations near the town, that was six foot high; and the stems, that were not thicker than a man's thumb, and roots as thick as an arm or leg, such is the influence of the winds here to the disadvantage of vegetation, without considering the sterility of the soil.

Cape Town is the only one the Dutch have built here, and it consists of about a thousand houses neatly built of brick, whitened in general on the outside. They are covered only with thatch, for the violence of the S. E. winds would render any other roof inconvenient and dangerous. The streets are broad and commodious, crossing each other at right angles. In the main one is a canal, on each side of which is planted a row of oaks, that have grown tolerable well, and yield an agreeable shade. In another part of the town is also a canal, but the slope of the ground in the course of both is so great, that they are furnished with locks at intervals of little more than fifty yards. The houses in general have pleasant gardens behind, and neat court yards before them. Building, as well as tillage, is greatly encouraged here, and land given for either purpose to those who chuse to accept of it; but then the government claims an annual tenth of the value of the former, and produce of the latter, and a tithe of all purchase money when estates are sold. The town extends from the sea shore to the Company's garden, spreading along Table Bay. The fort is in a valley at a small distance, its form pentagonal, it commands the landing-place, and is garrisoned by two hundred soldiers. The governor's storehouses are within it, other officers besides himself have apartments here, as well as six hundred servants: the same number of slaves are lodged in a commodious building in the town, which is divided into two wards, the one for the men, the other for the women; and there is a house of correction for the reception of dissolute persons of either sex. The hospital for sick seamen is of essential use to the Dutch fleets in going to or returning from India. The church is a large edifice, elegantly plain; but the roof and steeple are thatched, for the reason already mentioned. Thatching indeed, from the nature of the hurricanes, seems absolutely necessary; but from the method in which it was formerly done, it appears that it was frequently attended with danger, and we were informed, there used to be shelving pent houses erected on both sides the streets, to shelter passengers in rainy weather; but these brought the inhabitants under such dangers and inconveniences, that they were all pulled down by order of government. Sailors and Hottentots were continually assembling, and smoking their pipes under them, and sometimes, through carelessness let them on fire. The government laid hold of that occasion to rid the streets of those fellows that were continually pestering them, by publishing an order, which is still in force, and from time to time republished, that no Hottentot, or common sailor, shall smoke in the street, and that upon presuming so to do they should be tied to the whipping post and be severely lashed. This has kept the streets clear of all who have no business there; for it is with great difficulty that either the seamen or Hottentots can forbear smoking while they are awake, if they have tobacco, which they are seldom without. What is most to be admired at the Cape is the Company's garden, where they have introduced almost all the fruits and flowers that are found in the other three quarters of the globe; most of which are improved, and flourish more than they did in their respective climates and countries from whence they were brought; and the garden is watered with springs that fall down from Table Mountain just above them. Apples and pears are planted here, with the grapes of Asia, as well as those of Europe, all of a delicious flavour. Here are also excellent lemons, oranges, citrons, figs, Japan apples, and a great variety of other fruits. In this place a much greater proportion of the inhabitants are Dutch than in Batavia; and as the town is supported principally by entertaining strangers, and supplying them with necessaries, every man to a certain degree, imitates the manners and customs of the nations with which he is chiefly concerned. The ladies, however, are so faithful to the

mode of their country, that not one of them will stir without a chaudpied, or chauffer, which is carried by a servant that it may be ready to place under her feet, whenever she sits down: though few of these chauffets have fire in them, which indeed the climate renders unnecessary.

Notwithstanding the natural sterility of the climate, industry has supplied this place with all the necessaries, and even luxuries of life in the greatest profusion. The beef and mutton are excellent, though the oxen and sheep are natives of the country: the cattle are lighter than ours, more neatly made, and have horns that spread to a much wider extent. The sheep are clothed with a substance between wool and hair, and have tails of an enormous size: we saw some that weighed twelve pounds, and we heard there were many much larger. Good butter is made from the milk of cows, but the cheese is very much inferior to our own. Here are hogs and a variety of poultry; also goats, but these last are never eaten. Hares are to be found exactly like those in Europe; likewise many kinds of antelopes; quails of two sorts, and bustards all well flavoured but not juicy. The fields produce European wheat and barley: the gardens European vegetables; fruit of all kinds; besides plantains, guavas, jambu, and other Indian fruits, but these are not in perfection; the plantains, in particular, are very bad, and the guavas no larger than gooseberries. The vineyards also produce wines of various sorts, but not equal to those of Europe, except the Constantia, which is made genuine only at one vineyard, about ten miles distant from the town. There is another vineyard near it, where wine is made, and called by the same name, but it is greatly inferior.

With respect to the animals of this country, the wild differ in nothing from those found in other parts. There are great numbers of domestic animals in the various colonies and settlements at the Cape, and the woods and mountains abound with wild beasts. The horses, which were brought originally from Persia, are of a bay or chestnut colour, and rather small. The dogs have a very unlighty appearance, and are of little use. Among the wild beasts, the elephant claims the first place. The rhinoceros is of a dark ash colour, and has a snout like a hog. A horn projects about two feet from the nose, resembling in shape a plough-share, and of a grey dingy colour. With this he tears up the ground, pulls up trees by their roots, throws large stones over his head, and rips up the elephant, to whom he is a mortal enemy. Another horn of about six inches long, turns up from his forehead. His legs are short, his ears small, and his sense of smelling surprizingly acute. When he scents any thing he pursues in a right line, and tears up every thing in his way; but his eyes being exceedingly small and fixed, he can only see straight forward, so that it is easy to avoid him by stepping aside, as he is a long time in turning himself about, and longer still in getting sight again of the object. He will not attack a man without being provoked, or unless he is dressed in scarlet. When he has killed any creature, he licks the flesh from the bones with his rough tongue, which is like a rasp. He feeds much on herbs, thistles, and a plant resembling juniper, and which, from its fondness of it, is called rhinoceros-bush. The blood, skin, and horn of this animal, are medicinally used, and said to be very efficacious in many disorders. Wine, poured into cups made of the horn, bubbles up in a strange kind of fermentation, appearing as if boiling. Should a small portion of poison be put into the wine, the cup splits; but if poison only is poured into the cup, it flies into a thousand pieces; hence cups made of this horn are deemed excellent safeguards, and, on that account, independent of their salubrious qualities, are highly valued. At the Cape, wolves are of two kinds; the one resembles a sheep dog; and is spotted like a tyger; the other is like an European wolf: they both prowl about, and do great mischief in the night-time, but lie concealed in the day. Lions, tigers, leopards, &c. also abound here, and are so troublesome, that the person who kills one of either

sort, is rewarded with twenty-five florins, or fifty shillings. The flesh of the lion is esteemed equal to venison, and the fat is much valued. Here are much larger buffaloes than in Europe. They are of a brown colour: the horns are short, and curve towards the neck, where they incline to each other. Between them is a tuft of hair upon the forehead, which adds to the fierceness of the look. The skin is exceeding hard, and the flesh rather tough. He is a strong fierce creature, and is enraged at a foot in length, like many other animals. We saw here elks five feet high, with horns a foot long. This is a very handsome creature, having a beautiful head and neck, slender legs, and soft smooth hair of an ash colour. Their upper jaw is larger than the under, the tail about a foot in length, and the flesh by the Cape epicures is said to exceed the best beef. They run swift, and climb the rocks with great agility, though they usually weigh about four hundred pounds each. Another singular animal is that called Slink-stox, from its offensive smell both living and dead; it is about the size of a common house dog, and made much like a ferret. The goats are of various species. One, called the blue goat, is of a fine azure colour. The spotted goat is larger, and beautifully marked with brown, white, and red spots. The horns are a foot long. The flesh fine eating. The rock-goat is no larger than a kid, but very mischievous in the plantations. The diving-goat is much like the tame one, and receives its name from its method of squatting down in the grass to hide itself. We saw another animal called a goat, without any additional appellation, it is of the size of a hart, and extremely beautiful. The hair of the sides and back is grey, streaked with red, and that on the belly white. A white streak passes from his forehead to the ridge of his tail, and three others surround his body in circles. The female hath no horns; but those of the male are three feet in length, and the flesh is exceedingly delicate. The horns of the hart do not branch like those of Europe; but the roebuck is in every respect like ours. Wild cats are of several sorts. The first the Dutch call the civit cat, not that it is really the animal of that name, but because of the fine scent of the skin. The next is called the tyger-cat, from its being very large, and spotted like a tyger. The third sort is the mountain cat, which, as well as the tame cat resembles those of Europe. The fourth species is denominated the blue cat, from its colour, having a fine blue tinge, with a beautiful red list down its back. There is a species of mice peculiar to this country, called the rattle-mouse, which is about the size of a squirrel, and makes a rattling noise with its tail. It is very nimble, lives upon nuts and acorns, and purrs like a cat. Among the hogs with which this country abounds, is the wild hog, or rather wild boar, which is very fierce, and harbours in woods, and the earth hog, which is of a red colour, and without teeth: this lodges like a badger in holes, and feeds upon ants; these he procures by forcing his long rough tongue into their hills, from whence he draws it with a great number glued thereto. Many jackalls, some ermines, baboons, monkeys, &c. are found about the Cape; and frequently do great mischief in the gardens, orchards, and vineyards. The porcupine is very common, and its flesh esteemed delicious. There are two sorts of wild asses in this country, one of which is a beautiful creature, called the zebra, and bears a greater affinity in make and shape to the horse than the ass. Indeed the ears are somewhat like those of the latter animal; but in all other respects it has a much more noble appearance. It is admirably well made, exceeding lively, and so extremely swift, that it throws almost every pursuer at a distance. Its legs are fine; it has a twisted tail, round fleshy haunches, and a smooth skin. The females are white and black, and the males white and brown. These colours are placed alternately in the most beautiful stripes, and are parallel, distinct, and narrow. The whole animal is streaked in this admirable manner, so as to appear to a distant beholder as if covered with ribbons. Most naturalists affirm, that the zebra never can be tamed. That which was pre-

ferred to her present ma-
several years at the stable
vicious till its de-
young, and every possib-
able: it fed upon hay,
assembled the barking c-
age of an ass. The can-
has been found in the c-
Carerter having, b-
performed a voyage ro-
ship of war, mentions
late Dr. Matty, secreta-
the scarcity of this crea-
here been found in Eu-
when I think there we-
give a more certain kno-
disagreeable to you, as
has been doubted by m-
the Cape of Good Hope
island discoveries, for
from eighteen months
they have discovered n-
parties crossed many
which they found two
caught the young one.
alive to Cape Town, b-
took off his skin, and
month, been sent to Hi-
is now in the cabin
Linnaeus ranks this ani-
head is like that of a fl-
six inches long, cover-
The neck resembles a
seven feet. It has a
ears, and a tongue lik-
the fore ones being con-
the body is but smal-
fastened with red; the
end; the upper jaw c-
both the fore feet toge-
after the other like of
long from the tail to the
feet from the ground.
A great variety of
Cape, both wild and
engles, namely, 1. T
corollas; to obtain u-
gular method. Havi-
it, it drops it upon
the shell is broken, a-
prey. 2. The dung-
of animals to subsist
common goose, is
3. The duck-eagle, w-
pally on ducks. He
1. The water goose
mountain goose, wh-
green head, and gre-
named from its rem-
pockets, and tobacco
kinds of geese are
so easily taken, tha-
think the same ge-
But of all the numer-
the flamingo is one
neck, and is larger
ably long, and of a
like those of a goose
black points; the l-
the upper part of
hour, and the lower
Reptiles are very
the following serpe-
from resembling th-
fond of winding it-
bored asp, speckle-
veral yards long, &
the amazing veloci-
enemy. Some call
numerous white sp-

presented to her present majesty queen Charlotte, and kept several years at the stables near Buckingham-gate, continuing vicious till its death, though it was brought over seas, and every possible means used to render it tractable: it fed upon hay, and the noise it made rather resembled the barking of a mastiff dog, than the braying of an ass. The camelopardalis, we were informed, has been found in the countries round the Cape, Captain Carteret having, by order of his present majesty, performed a voyage round the world in the Swallow ship of war, mentions this animal in a letter to the late Dr. Matty, secretary to the Royal Society. "From the scarcity of this creature (says he) as I believe, none have been found in Europe, since Julius Cæsar's time (when I think there were two of them at Rome) I imagine a more certain knowledge of its reality will not be disagreeable to you, as the existence of this fine animal has been doubted by many. The present governor of the Cape of Good Hope has sent out parties of men on inland discoveries, some of which have been absent from eighteen months to two years, in which traverse they have discovered many curiosities. One of these parties crossed many mountains and plains, in one of which they found two of those creatures, but they only caught the young one. This they endeavoured to bring alive to Cape Town, but unfortunately it died. They took off his skin, and it has, as a confirmation of this truth, been sent to Holland." The skin here alluded to is now in the cabinet of natural history at Leyden. Linnaeus ranks this animal among the deer kind. Its head is like that of a stag; the horns are blunt, about six inches long, covered with hair, but not branched. The neck resembles a camel's, only longer, being near seven feet. It has a mane like that of a horse; feet, ears, and a tongue like those of a cow; slender legs, the fore ones being considerably longer than the hinder; the body is but small, covered with white hair, and spotted with red; the tail is long, and bushy at the end; the upper jaw contains no fore teeth; he moves both the fore feet together when he runs, and not one after the other like other animals; he is eighteen feet long from the tail to the top of the head, and is sixteen feet from the ground when he holds up his head.

A great variety of birds and fowls are found at the Cape, both wild and tame. Here are three sorts of eagles, namely, 1. The bone breaker, which feeds on tortoises; to obtain the flesh of which it uses this singular method. Having carried the tortoise aloft in the air, it drops it upon some hard rock, by which means the shell is broken, and the eagle can easily come at its prey. 2. The dung-eagle, which tears out the entrails of animals to subsist on, and, though no bigger than a common goose, is exceeding strong and voracious. 3. The duck-eagle, so called because it feeds principally on ducks. Here are also wild geese of three sorts. 1. The water goose, which resembles ours. 2. The mountain goose, which is the largest of all, having a green head, and green wings. 3. The crop goose, so named from its remarkable large crop, of which bags, pockets, and tobacco-pouches are made. All these kinds of geese are such good eating, so plentiful, and so easily taken, that the people of the Cape do not think the tame geese worth the trouble of breeding. But of all the numerous birds that are to be found here, the flamingo is one of the most singular. It has a long neck, and is larger than a swan; the legs are remarkably long, and of an orange tawny, and the feet are like those of a goose; the bill contains blue teeth with black points; the head and neck are entirely white; the upper part of the wings are of a bright flame colour, and the lower black.

Reptiles are very numerous at the Cape, particularly the following serpents, 1. The tree serpent, so called from resembling the branch of a tree, and from being fond of winding itself about trees. 2. The ash coloured asp, speckled with white and red, which is several yards long. 3. The shoot serpent, so named from the amazing velocity with which it darts itself at an enemy. Some call it the eye serpent, on account of the numerous white spots resembling eyes, with which its

skin is marked. 4. The blind flow worm, a black scaly serpent, spotted with brown, white, and red. 5. The thirst serpent, or inflamer, a most venomous and dangerous serpent, about three quarters of a yard long; it has a broad neck, black back, and is very active. 6. The hair serpent, which is about three feet in length, as thick as a man's thumb, and received its name from its yellow hair. Its poison is so malignant, that nothing but the serpent stone can prevent its being mortal. This stone is said to be an artificial composition, prepared by the Bramins in India, who keep the secret to themselves. It is shaped like a bean, in the middle whitish, the rest of a sky-blue. Whenever this is applied, it sticks close without bandage or support, and imbibes the poison till it can receive no more, and then drops off. Being laid in milk, it purges itself of the venom, turning the milk yellow, and so is applied again, till by its not sticking, it proves that the poison is exhausted.

The neighbouring sea affords a plentiful supply of fish to the inhabitants of the Cape. The meat of the sea cows is much admired. The flying fish, which has wings like a bat, is reckoned a great delicacy. The brown fish is as big as an ox, and is deemed good food either fresh or salted. The bennet is near three feet long, and weighs about seven pounds; the eyes and tails are red; the fins yellow, and the scales purple, with gold streaks. The meat is of a crimson colour, and so remains after it is dressed; nevertheless it is delicious eating. The gold fish has a streak from head to tail, circles round his eyes of a gold colour, it is eighteen inches long, weighs about a pound, and its flesh of an exquisite taste. The brestem is found only about the Cape. Of this fish there are two sorts; the one has a black back, and purple head; the other is of a dark blue colour, and the former is rounder than the latter. They are both cheap and wholesome food. The stone braillem is good either fresh or salted, resembles a carp in make, but is more delicious in taste. One species of this fish is called flat nose, from the shape of the head, and is much more valued than the other sort. The red stone fish is exceeding beautiful to the eye, and exquisite to the taste: the back is scarlet spotted with blue, and bespangled with gold; the eyes are of a bright red, and surrounded with a silver circle, and the belly is of a pale pink colour, has a shining silver tail, resembles a carp both in shape and taste, and weighs about a pound. Of shell-fish, which are innumerable, there is a singular species called Klin-koufen, which has an upper and under shell, thick, rough, twisted, and incrusted. In vinegar the crust will drop off, and the shell exhibits an admirable pearl colour. Sea-funs and sea-stars, are small round shell-fish, and receive their denominations from the great variety of prickles, which shoot from them like rays of light. The fish called pagger has a prickly shell, and is much dreaded by the people of the Cape, as a wound from one of its protuberances turns to a mortification, unless great care is taken to prevent it. The sea-spout resembles a piece of moss sticking fast to the rocks. It is of a green colour, emits water, and within is like a tough piece of flesh. The torpedo, or cramp-ray is a very curious fish. The body is circular, the skin soft, smooth and yellow, marked with large annular spots; the eyes small, and the tail tapering. It is of different sizes, and weighs from five to fifteen pounds. The narcotic or benumbing quality of this fish was known to the ancients, and hath furnished matter of speculation to the philosophers of all ages. If a person touches it when alive, it instantly deprives him of the use of his arm, and has the same effect if he touches it with a stick. Even if one treads upon it with a shoe on, it affects not only the leg, but the thigh upwards. They who touch it with the feet are seized with a stronger palpitation, than even those who touch it with the hand: this numbness bears no resemblance to that which we feel when a nerve is a long time pressed, and the foot is said to be asleep; it rather appears to be like a sudden vapour, which passing through the pores in an instant, penetrates to the very springs of life, from whence it diffuses itself all over the body

body, and gives real pain. The nerves are so affected, that the person struck imagines all the bones of his body, and particularly those of the limb that received the blow, are driven out of joint. All this is accompanied with an universal tremor, a sickness of the stomach, a general convulsion, and a total suspension of the faculties of the mind. In short, such is the pain, that all the force of our promises and authority could not prevail upon a seaman to undergo the shock a second time. It has been observed, that the powers of this fish decline with its strength, and entirely ceases when it expires. This benumbing faculty is of double use to the torpedo: first it enables it to get its prey with great facility; and secondly it is an admirable defence against its enemies, as by numbing a fish of superior force with its touch, it can easily escape. The narcotic power of the torpedo is greater in the female than the male. According to Appian, it will benumb the fisherman through the whole extent of hook, line and rod. The flesh of this remarkable fish having, however, no pernicious quality, is eaten by the people of the Cape in common with others.

The air at the Cape of Good Hope is salutary in a high degree; so that those who bring diseases from Europe generally recover health in a short time; but the diseases that are brought hither from India are not so certainly cured. The weather at the Cape may be divided into two seasons, namely, the wet monsoon, and the dry monsoon; the former begins in March, and the latter in September; so that summer commences at the Cape about the time that it concludes with us. The inconveniences of the climate are excessive heat in the dry season, and heavy rains, thick fogs, and N. W. winds in the wet season. Thunder and lightning are never known here but in March and September. Water seldom freezes, and when it does, the ice is but thin, and dissolves upon the least appearance of the sun. In the hot weather, the people are happy when the wind blows from the S. E. because it keeps off the sea-weeds which otherwise would float to the shore, and corrupt there. The appearance of two remarkable clouds, which frequently hang over the summits of the two mountains of Table-hill and Devil-hill, commonly enable the inhabitants of this country to prognosticate what weather will happen. The clouds are at first small, but gradually increasing, they at length unite into one cloud, which envelops both mountains, when a terrible hurricane soon ensues. A gentleman, who resided many years at the Cape, says, "The skirts of this cloud are white, but seem much compacter than the matter of common clouds. The upper parts are of a lead colour, owing to the refracted rays of light. No rain falls from it, but at times it discovers great humidity, when it is of a darker hue; and the wind issuing from it is broken, raging by gusts of short continuance. In its usual state, the wind keeps up its first fury, unabated for one, two, or three, or eight days, and sometimes a whole month. The cloud seems all the time undiminished, though little fleeces are seen torn from the skirts from time to time, and hurried down the sides of the hills, vanishing when they reach the bottom; so that during the storm the cloud seems to be supplied with new water. When the cloud begins to brighten up, those supplies fail, and the wind proportionably abates. At length the cloud growing transparent, the wind ceases." During the continuance of the S. E. wind, the Table-valley is torn by furious whirlwinds. If they blow warm, they are generally of short duration, and in this case the cloud soon disappears; but when the wind blows cold, it is a sure sign it will last long, except an hour or two at noon, or midnight, when it seems to recover new strength, and afterwards renews its boisterous rage.

Near the Cape the water of the ocean is of a green colour, owing principally to the coral shrubs, and the weed called tromba. The first, while in the water, are green and soft; but when exposed to the air, they grow hard, and change their colour to white, black, or red. The latter are ten or twelve feet in length, hollow within, and when dry, become firm and strong. They

are often framed into trumpets, and the sound they produce is very agreeable to the ear.

The sources of the rivers in this country are in the mountains: they glide over a gravelly bottom, are clear, pleasant, and salubrious; but other streams are dark, muddy, and unwholesome. Here are a few brackish springs, whose waters medicinally used, greatly purify the blood; and several hot baths are very efficacious in various disorders. Upon the whole, the reputation of the Cape waters is so great, that every Danish ship returning from India, is obliged to fill a large cask with the clear sweet water that abounds here for the use of his Danish majesty.

The soil in general about the Cape consists of a clayey earth, and is so fat, that it requires but little manuring. White and red chalk are found in abundance; the former is used by the Dutch, to whitewash their houses, and the latter by the Hottentot women to paint their faces. Various bituminous substances of several colours are found in Drakenstein colony, particularly a kind of oil which trickles from the rocks, and has a very rank smell. With respect to minerals, silver ore has been found in some of the mountains, and also several iron mines. The Namaqua Hottentots, who are situated above three hundred miles from the cape, bring copper to trade with the Dutch.

When we speak of agriculture, it is to be observed, that the Europeans of the Cape, and their lands, are implied; for the Hottentots in general detest the very idea of cultivation, and would sooner starve than till the ground, so greatly are they addicted to sloth and indolence. The working of the plough here is so laborious from the stiffness of the soil, that it frequently requires near twenty oxen to one plough. The sowing season is in July, and the harvest about Christmas. The corn is not thrashed with a flail, but trod out by horses or oxen, on an artificial floor made of cow-dung, straw, and water, which when mixed together cements, and soon becomes perfectly hard. It is laid in an oval form. The cattle are confined by halters which run from one to the other, and the driver stands in the middle, where he exercises a long stick to keep them continually to a quick pace. By this method half a dozen horses will do more in one day, than a dozen men can in a week. A tythe of the corn belongs to the Dutch Company, and the rest they purchase at a price stipulated between them and the husbandmen.

We have already observed of the inhabitants of the Cape, that their number bears a greater proportion to the natives and strangers, than those in Batavia; and have only to add, that the women in general are very handsome; they have fine clear skins, and a bloom of colour that indicates a purity of constitution, and high health. They make the best wives in the world, both as mistresses of a family and mothers, and there is scarcely a house that does not swarm with children. The common method in which strangers live here, is to lodge and board with some of the inhabitants, many of whose houses are always open for their reception; the rates are from five shillings to two a day, for which all necessaries are found. Coaches may be hired at twenty-four shillings a day, and horses at six; but the country affords very little temptation to use them. There are no public entertainments, and to those that are private, all strangers of the rank of gentlemen are always admitted.

We come now to speak of the Caffres or natives of this country, none of whose habitations, where they retain their original customs, are within less than four days journey from Cape Town; those that we saw at the Cape were all servants to Dutch farmers, whose cattle they take care of, and are employed in other drudgery of the meanest kind. There are sixteen Hottentot nations, which inhabit this southern promontory; at least, there are so many that hold a correspondence with the Dutch, though it is presumed, there are many more to the northward.

The stature of the Hottentot men is from five to six feet in height, their bodies are proportionable, and

well made: they are scarce ever any crooked, any farther than themselves by flattening noses, looking on a man as well as their eyes, are naturally thick: negroes, and they have taken a great care to darken their skin to resemble the negroes; but are much less than the white in them; is a calumny, and in a manner, which usually excites the sailors, to visit the shore, where a great many will offer to satisfy by a crowd of people, what Mr. Kolben has

The head of the man mixed together; and their heads in the skin and makes them a very them, and preserves the heat of the sun; and of cat-skin or lamb skin a thong of the same men also wear a krot or other skins, over the middle; and, by their neck, is open woolly or hairy hides the other: this serves this is all the winding If he be a captain or instead of a sheep-skins, wild cat-skin value upon: but those generally, than those who wear them as have them touch the

A Hottentot also he in which he keeps his some dahka (which is a little piece of wood against witchcraft. rings on his left arm, which when he travels two sticks, the first of feet long, and an iron the other, called his and of the same thick used as a dart, to which he seldom in his left hand he has which is fastened a serves him as a hat. They wear a kind of hide of an ox or cow, travel through stone buskins, to preserve but ordinarily their

The women wear raised; and these are under their chins, or day, winter or summer mantles, one upon ed with a thong, ab down to the middle: what of the men to ce larger dimensions than their legs they wrap thickness of a jack-k that they lift up their much like a trooper distinction of their is not all their finer instead of a sheep mantle of wild ca No. 11.

well made: they are feldom either too fat or lean, and scarce ever any crooked or deformed persons amongst them, any farther than they disfigure their children themselves by flattening and breaking the gristles of their noses, looking on a flat nose as a beauty. Their heads as well as their eyes, are rather of the largest: their lips are naturally thick: their hair black and short like the negroes, and they have exceeding white teeth: and after they have taken a great deal of pains with greafe and soot to darken their natural tawny complexions, resemble the negroes pretty much in colour. The women are much less than the men; and what is most remarkable in them, is a callous flap or skin that falls over the pudenda, and in a manner conceals it. The report of which usually excites the curiosity of the European sailors, to visit the Hottentot villages near the cape, where a great many of those ladies, on seeing a stranger, will offer to satisfy his curiosity for a halfpenny, before a crowd of people, which perfectly spoils the character that Mr. Kolben has given of their modesty.

The head of the men are covered with greafe and foot mixed together, and going without any thing else on their heads in the summer-time, the dust sticks to it, and makes them a very filthy cap, which they fay cools them, and preserves their heads from the scorching heat of the sun; and in the winter, they wear flat caps of cat-skin or lamb skin, half dried, which they tie with a thong of the same leather under their chins. The men also wear a krossie or mantle, made of sheep skins or other skins, over their shoulders, which reaches to the middle; and, being fastened with a thong about their neck, is open before. In winter they turn the woolly or hairy sides next their backs, and in summer the other: this serves the man for his bed at night; and this is all the winding sheet or coffin he has when he dies. If he be a captain of a village, or chief of his nation, instead of a sheep-skin, his mantle is made of tyger-skins, wild cat-skins, or some other skins they set a value upon: but though these mantles reach no lower, generally, than their waists, yet there are some nations who wear them as low as their legs, and others that have them touch the ground.

A Hottentot also hangs about his neck a greasy pouch, in which he keeps his knife, his pipe and tobacco, and some dahka (which intoxicates like tobacco) and a little piece of wood, burnt at both ends, as a charm against witchcraft. He wears also three large ivory rings on his left arm, to which he fastens a bag of provisions when he travels. He carries in his right hand two sticks, the first called his kirri, which is about three feet long, and an inch thick, but blunt at both ends; the other, called his rackum-stick, about a foot long, and of the same thickness, but has a sharp point, and is used as a dart, to throw at an enemy or wild beast; which he seldom misses, if he be within distance. In his left hand he has another stick, about a foot long, to which is fastened a tail of a fox or wild cat; and this serves him as a handkerchief to wipe off the sweat. They wear a kind of sandals, also made of the raw hide of an ox or elephant, when they are obliged to travel through stoney countries; and sometimes have buskins, to preserve their legs from bushes and briars; but ordinarily their legs and thighs have no covering.

The women wear caps, the crowns whereof are a little raised; and these are made of half dried skins, and tied under their chins. They scarce ever put them off night or day, winter or summer. They usually wear two krossies or mantles, one upon another, and, as these are only fastened with a thong, about their necks, they appear naked down to the middle: but they have an apron, larger than that of the men to cover them before, and another of still larger dimensions that cover their hind parts. About their legs they wrap thongs of half dried skins, to the thickness of a jack-boot, which are such a load to them, that they lift up their legs with difficulty, and walk very much like a trooper in jack-boots: this serves both for distinction of their sex, and for ornament. But this is not all their finery; if they are people of any figure, instead of a sheep skin, they wear a tyger skin, or a mantle of wild cat skin. They have also a pouch

hanging about their necks, in which they carry something to eat, whether they are at home or abroad, with their dahka, tobacco, and pipe. But the principal ornaments both of men and women are brass or glass beads, with little thin plates of glittering brass and mother of pearl, which they wear in their hair, or about their ears. Of these glass or brass beads strung, they also make necklaces, bracelets for the arms, and girdles, wearing several strings of them about their necks, waist, and arms, choosing the smallest beads for their necks: those are finest that have most strings of them, and their arms are sometimes covered with bracelets from the wrist to the elbow. The largest beads are on the strings about the middle: in these they affect a variety of colours, all of which the Dutch furnish them with, and take their cattle in return. There is another kind of ornament peculiar to the men, and that is, the bladder of any wild beast they have killed, which is blown up, and fastened to the hair as a trophy of their valour. Both sexes powder themselves with a dust they call bachu; and the women spot their faces with a red earth or stone (as ours do with black patches) which is thought to add to their beauty, by the natives; but, in the eyes of Europeans, renders them more frightful and shocking than they are naturally. But as part of their dress, we ought to have mentioned, in the first place, the custom of daubing their bodies, and the inside of their caps and mantles, with greafe and soot. Soon after their children are born, they lay them in the sun, or by the fire, and rub them over with fat or butter, mixed with soot, to render them of a deeper black, it is said; for they are naturally tawny; and this they continue to do almost every day of their lives, after they are grown up, not only to increase their beauty, but to render their limbs supple and pliable. As some nations pour oil upon their heads and bodies, so these people make use of melted fat: you cannot make them a more acceptable present than the fat or scum of the pot that meat is boiled in, to anoint themselves.

Nor are the Hottentots more cleanly in their diet than in their dress; for they choose the guts and entrails of cattle and of some wild beasts (with very little cleansing), rather than the rest of the flesh, and eat their meat half boiled or broiled; but their principal food consists of roots, herbs, fruits or milk: they seldom kill any of those cattle, unless at a festival, they only feed on such as die of themselves, either of diseases or of age, or on what they take in hunting; and when they are hard put to it, they will eat the raw leather that is wound about the womens legs, and even soles of shoes; and as their mantles are always well stocked with lice of an unusual size, they are not ashamed to sit down in the public streets at the cape, pull off the lice, and eat them. And we ought to have remembered, that they boil their meat in the blood of beasts when they have any of it. They rather devour their meat than eat it, pulling it to pieces with their teeth and hands, discovering a canine appetite and fierceness: they abstain, however, from swines-flesh, and some other kinds of meat, and from fish that have no scales, as religiously as ever the Jews did. And here it may not be improper to say something of the management of their milk and butter: they never strain their milk, but drink it with all the hairs and nastiness with which it is mixed in the milking by the Hottentot women. When they make butter of it, they put it into some skin made in the form of a soldier's knapsack, the hairy side inwards; and then two of them taking hold of it, one at each end, they whirl and turn it round till it is converted into butter, which they put up for anointing themselves, their caps and mantles with, for they eat no butter; and the rest they sell to the Dutch, without clearing it from the hairs and dirt it contracts in the knapsack. The Hollanders, when they have it indeed, endeavour to separate the nastiness from it, and sell it to the shipping, that arrives there, frequently for butter of their own making; and some they eat themselves (but surely none but a Dutchman could eat Hottentot butter) and the dregs and dirt that is left they give to their slaves; which having been found to create diseases, the governor of the cape

ferences between the several nations, and occasion bloody wars; which brings us now to treat of their arms, and the arts and stratagems they use in war.

The arms of a Hottentot are, 1. His lance, which resembles a half pike, sometimes thrown, and used as a missile weapon; and at others, serves to push with in close fight, the head or spear whereof is poisoned. 2. His bow and arrows, the arrows bearded and poisoned likewise, when they engage an enemy or wild beast they do not intend for food. Their bows are made of iron, or olive-wood; the string of the sinews or guts of some animal: the quiver is a long narrow case, made of the skin of an elephant, elk, or ox, and slung at their backs, as soldiers sling their knapsacks. 3. A dart of a foot long, which they throw exceeding true, scarce ever missing the mark they aim at, though it is not above the breadth of half a crown; these also are poisoned, when they engage an enemy or a wild beast that is not to be eaten: and lastly, when they have spent the rest of their missile weapons, they have recourse to stones, seldom making a discharge in vain; and, what is most remarkable in their shooting or throwing arrows, darts, or stones, they never stand still, but are all the while skipping and jumping from one side to the other, possibly to avoid the stones and darts of the enemy. They are all foot, and never engage on horseback; but have disciplined bulls or oxen taught to run upon the enemy, and to toss and disorder them; which these creatures will do with the utmost fury on the word of command, not regarding the weapons that are thrown at them: for though the Hottentots have numbers of large elephants in their country, they have not yet learned the art of taming them, or training them up to war, as the military men in the East India do. Every able bodied man is a soldier, and possessed of a set of such arms as has been described; and on the summons of his prince, appears at the rendezvous with all imaginable alacrity and contempt of danger, and every man maintains himself while the expedition lasts. As their officers, civil and military, have no pay, so neither do the private men expect any; a sense of honour, and the public good, are the sole motives for hardening their lives in their country's service.

The Hottentots, in war, have very little conception of discipline, nor indeed is it possible they should; for the only method of raising an army, is, for the kraal captains to order the people to follow them; the only method of maintaining one, is by hunting as they march: and the only way of deciding a dispute between two nations, is, by fighting one battle; the success of which determines the whole affair. In an engagement, they attack with an hideous yell, fight in great confusion, and put more confidence in their war oxen than their own skill: for, as we have hinted above, these animals, when trained to the business, are better disciplined and much more formidable, than the Hottentots themselves. The principal inducements to their entering into a war at any time, is the preservation of their territories. As they have no land marks or written treaties to adjust the exact bounds of every nation, they frequently disagree about the limits of their respective countries; and, when any neighbouring nation grazes their cattle upon a spot of ground another claims, satisfaction is immediately demanded; and, if it be not given, they make reprisals, and have recourse to arms. But this is not the only occasion of wars amongst the Hottentots: they are not always that chaste and virtuous people Mr. Kolben has represented them; some amongst Helen (or Hottentots possibly may appear amiable in one another's eyes, with all the grease and carrion they are clothed with) has snitten a neighbouring chief, perhaps, who prevails on his people to kill him in the rape of the desired female; and this frequently sets their tribes together by the ears. The stealing each others cattle is another cause of deadly strife; for though each kraal punishes theft amongst themselves with death, yet it is looked upon as an heroic act to rob those of another nation; at least the booty of the people are so backward in giving up the plunder, that they frequently come to blows upon it.

When they march into the field, every man follows his particular captain, the chief of his kraal; they observe little order; neither do they take the precaution of throwing up trenches to defend themselves: and what is still more surprising, have no shields to defend themselves against missile weapons, though some say they will ward off a lance or dart, and even a stone, with a little truncheon about a foot long, which they carry in their hand. The several companies advance to the charge at the command of their chief; and, when those in the front have shot one flight of arrows, they retreat and make room for those in the rear; and, when they have discharged, the former advance again, and thus alternately they continue till they have spent all their missile weapons, and then they have recourse to stones, unless they are first broken and dispersed by a troop of bulls; for the wife chiefs and generals of each side, according to the European practice, remaining on an eminence in the rear, to observe the fortune of the day, when they observe their people are hard pressed, give the word of command to their corps de reserve of bulls, who break into the body of the enemy, and generally bring all into confusion; and that side that preserves their order best, on this furious attack of these bulls of Basan, are sure to be victorious. The skill of the general seems to be chiefly in managing his bulls; who never engage each other, but spend their whole rage upon the men, who have, it seems, no dogs of English breed to play against them, or this stratagem would be of little service: but we should have observed, that as the battle always begins with horrid cries and noise, which perhaps supplies the place of drums and trumpets; so the victors insult with no less noise over the conquered enemy, killing all that fall into their hands: but they seldom fight more than one battle, some neighbouring power usually interposing to make up the quarrel, and of late the Dutch perform this good office, between such nations as lie near their settlements. From their wars with each other, we naturally proceed to their wars with wild beasts, with which their country abounds more than any other; these people, it seems, esteem it a much greater honour to have killed one of these foes to mankind, than an enemy of their own species.

Instances are not wanting of a Hottentot's engaging singly with the fiercest wild beasts, and killing them; but usually the whole kraal or village assemble, when a wild beast is discovered in their neighbourhood, and, dividing themselves in small parties, endeavour to surround him. Having found their enemy, they usually set up a great cry, at which the frightened animal endeavours to break through and escape them: if it prove to be a rhinoceros, an elk, or elephant, they throw their lances at him, darts and arrows being too weak to pierce through their thick hides: if the beast be not killed at the first discharge, they repeat the attack, and load him with their spears; and, as he runs with all his rage at the persons who wound him, those in his rear follow him close, and ply him with their spears, on whom he turns again, but is overpowered by his enemies, who constantly return to the charge, when his back is towards them, and scarce ever fail of bringing the creature down, before he has taken his revenge on any of them. How hazardous soever such an engagement may appear to an European, these people make it their sport; and have this advantage, that they are exceeding swift of foot, and scarce ever miss the mark they aim at with their spears: if one of them is hard pressed by the brute, he is sure to be relieved by his companions, who never quit the field till the beast is killed, or makes his escape: though they sometimes dexterously avoid the adversary, they immediately return to the charge, subduing the fiercest either by stratagem or force. When attacking a lion, a leopard, or a tyger, their darts and arrows are of service to them; and therefore they begin the engagement at a greater distance, than when they charge an elephant or rhinoceros; and the creature has a wood of darts and arrows upon his back, before he can approach his enemies, which make him retreat and rage and fly at them

with

with the greatest fury; but those he attacks, nimbly avoid his paws, while others pursue him, and finish the conquest with their spears. Sometimes a lion takes to his heels, with abundance of poisoned darts and arrows in his flesh: but, the poison beginning to operate, he soon falls, and becomes a prey to those he would have preyed upon. The elephant, the rhinoceros, and the elk, are frequently taken in traps and pitfalls, without any manner of hazard. The elephants are observed to go in great companies to water, following in a file one after another, and usually take the same road till they are disturbed: the Hottentots therefore dig pits in their paths, about eight feet deep, and four and five over; in which they fix sharp stakes pointed with iron, and then cover the pit with small sticks and turf, so as it is not discernible: and as these animals usually keep in one track, frequently one or other of them falls in with his fore feet into the pit, and the stake pierces his body; the more he struggles, the deeper the weight of his monstrous body fixes him on the stake. When the rest of the herd observe the misfortune of their companion, and find he cannot disengage himself, they immediately abandon him: whereupon the Hottentots, who lie concealed, in expectation of the success of their stratagem, approach the wounded beast, stab him with their spears, and cut his largest veins; so that he soon expires; whereupon they cut him to pieces, and, carrying the flesh home, feast upon it as long as it lasts. His teeth they make into rings for their arms, and, when they have any ivory to spare, dispose of it to the Europeans. The rhinoceros and elk are frequently taken in pitfalls, as the elephants are. The Hottentot, who kills any of these, or a lion, leopard, or tyger, singly, has the highest honour conferred upon him, and several privileges, which belong only to such intrepid heroes. At his return from this hazardous and important service, the men of the kraal deputy one of the seniors to congratulate him on his victory, and desire that he will honour them with his presence; whereupon he follows the old deputy to the assembly, whom he finds, according to custom, sitting upon their heels in a circle; and, a mat of distinction being laid for him in the center, he sets himself down upon it: after which the old deputy urines plentifully upon him, which the hero rubs in with great eagerness, having first scratched the grease off his skin with his nails; the deputy all this while pronouncing some words unintelligible to any but themselves. After this, they light a pipe of tobacco, which they smoke and hand one to another till there remain nothing but ashes in the pipe, and these the old deputy strews over the gallant man, who rubs them in as they fall upon him, not suffering the least dust to be lost. After which the neighbours having severally congratulated him on his advancement to the high honour, they disperse, and go to their respective tents. The conqueror, afterwards, fastens the bladder of the furious beast he has killed to his hair, which he ever after wears as a badge of his knight-hood; and is from that time esteemed by every one a brave man, and a benefactor to his country. When returned to his tent, his neighbours seem to vie which of them shall oblige him most, and are, for the next three days, continually sending him one delicious morsel or other; nor do they call upon him to perform duty during that time, but suffer him to indulge his ease: but, what is still more unaccountable, his wife, or wives, (for he may have more than one) are not allowed to come near him for three days after this honour is conferred on him; but they are forced to ramble about the fields, and to keep to a spare diet, lest they should, as Mr. Kolben furnishes, tempt the husbands to their embraces: but on the third day in the evening, we are told the women return to the tent, are received with the utmost joy and tenderness; mutual congratulations pass between them; a fat sheep is killed, and their neighbours invited to the feast, where the prowess of the hero, and the honour he has obtained, are the chief subject of their conversation.

There is scarce any wild beast, but the flesh is good eating, if it be not killed with poisonous weapons; but

the tyger is the most delicious morsel; and as the whole kraal partake of the feast, the person who kills him meets with a double share of praise, as he both robs the country of an enemy, and pleases their palates. But to return to the field sports of the Hottentots: when they hunt a deer, a wild goat or a hare, they go singly, or but two or three in company, armed only with a dart or two, and seldom miss the game they throw at: yet, as has been observed already, so long as they have any manner of food left, if it be but the raw hides of cattle, or shoe soles, they will hardly be persuaded to stir to get more; though it is true, when they apprehend their cattle in danger from wild beasts, no people are more active, or pursue the chase of them with greater alacrity and bravery. From hunting, we proceed to treat of their fishing; at which they are very expert; taking fish with angles, nets, and spears; and they get a certain fish, called rock-fish, particularly by groping the holes of the rocks near the shore, when the tide is out: these are mightily admired by the Europeans; but having no scales, the Hottentots will not eat them.

The manner of the Hottentot's swimming, is as particular as of his fishing; for he stands upright in the sea, and rather walks and treads the water, than swims upon it, his head, neck, and shoulders being quite above the waves, as well as his arms, and yet they move faster in the water than any European can; even in a storm, when the waves run high, they will venture into the sea, rising and falling with the waves like a cork.

The next thing we shall notice, is the marriages of the Hottentots: and it seems, every young fellow has such regard to the advice of his father, (or rather the laws and customs of the country require it) that he always consults the old man before he enters into a treaty with his mistress, and if he approves the match, the father and son, in the first place, pay a visit to the father of the damsel, with whom having smoked, and talked of indifferent things for some time, the father of the lover opens the matter to the virgin's father, who having consulted his wife, returns an answer immediately to the proposal: if it be rejected, the lover and his father retire without more words; but if the offer be approved by the old folks, the damsel is called and acquainted, that they have provided a husband for her, as she must submit to their determination, unless she can hold her lover at arms end, after a night's struggling; for we are told, that when the parents are agreed, the two young people are put together, and if the virgin loses her maidenhead, she must have the young fellow, though she be never so averse to the match: but then she is permitted to pinch and scratch, and defend herself as well as she can; and if she holds out till morning, the lover returns without his mistress, and makes no further attempts; but if he subdues her, she is his wife to all intents and purposes, without further ceremony; and the next day the man kills a fat ox, or more, according to his circumstances, for the wedding dinner, and the entertainment of their friends, who resort to them upon the occasion, bringing abundance of good wishes for the happiness of the married couple, as is usual among politer people. The ox is no sooner killed, but the company get each some of the fat, and grease themselves with it from head to foot, powdering themselves afterwards with buchu, and the women, to add to their charms, make red spots with ocher, or red chalk, on their black faces. The entertainment being ready, the men form a circle in the area of the kraal (for a large company cannot sit within doors) and the women form another; the bridegroom sitting in the middle of the men's circle, and the bride in the center of her own sex. Then the priest enters the men's circle, and urines upon the bridegroom, which the young man rubs in very joyfully. He then goes to the ladies circle, where he does the bride the same favour. The old man goes from the bride to the bridegroom, till he has exhausted all his store. The priest then pronounces his benediction in these words: "That they may live long and happily together; that they may have a son before the end of the year; and that he may

prove a brave man, like." After which the pots glazed with g... knives since the Euro... divide their meat p... make use of their tee... and eating it as vor... no other plates or na... the napkins they we... usually serve them fr... a pipe is filled with... round, every one tak... handing it to the ne... Hottentots are imm... quors, music and da... first, nor practise the... The Hottentots al... more than three wive... to marry or lie with... relation. A father fe... or three cows, and a... and with these he... and we do not find th... than a cow, or a cou... be returned to the... having had any child... bore any children to... his, even though the... not leave their daugh... when they die; but a... eldest brother, and... when the father is de... chise them; nor has... but what the eldest... great fortunes amon... love; an agreeable co... am at: their chiefest... poorest man's daugh... no fortune, does no... daughter of a prince... time, is obliged to c... and so for every husb... their man or woman... sufficient cause before... the woman, however... the man is allowed to... as he pleases at the... never is master of a... his father dies and le... business the bride an... after their marriage f... new materials, in whi... there as the man; a... week's time, the new... the mean time in the... When they resort to... keep house together, great share of the... die, milks them, cu... morning for roots b... and boils, or broils th... let indolently at hour... trouble of getting up... for him by the dru... has, still the more i... making provision fo... them. It is said he... in the field; but exp... do, at least, as much... he does. He will all... a hunting with the m... piece of venison, or... and if he is of any... it two or three hour... den in the art. He... cattle, and purchase... Dutch, with necessa... ments, for which the... the: their wives are ne... business of buying

prove a brave man, and an expert huntsman, and the like." After which, the meat is served up in earthen pots glazed with grease; and some of them having knives since the Europeans came amongst them, they divide their meat pretty decently; but more of them make use of their teeth and claws, pulling it to pieces, and eating it as voraciously as so many dogs, having no other plates or napkins than the stinking corners of the napkins they wear; the sea shells without handles usually serve them for spoons. When they have dined a pipe is filled with tobacco, which they smoke all round, every one taking two or three whiffs, and then handing it to the next. It is singular, that though the Hottentots are immoderately fond of spirituous liquors, music and dancing, yet they do not drink the first, nor practise the latter at weddings.

The Hottentots allow of polygamy; but seldom have more than three wives at a time; and it seems it is death to marry or lie with a first or second cousin, or any near relation. A father seldom gives his son more than two or three cows, and as many sheep, upon his marriage; and with these he must make his way in the world; and we do not find they give more with their daughters than a cow, or a couple of sheep; but the latter are to be returned to the father, if the bride dies without having had any children: on the contrary, if she ever bore any children to her husband, the portion becomes his, even though the children are defunct. They do not leave their daughters, or younger sons, any thing when they die; but all the children depend upon the eldest brother, and are his servants, or rather slaves, when the father is dead, unless the elder brother infranchise them; nor has the mother any thing to subsist on, but what the eldest son allows her. There being no great fortunes among them, they match purely for love; an agreeable companion is all their greatest men aim at: their chiefs intermarry frequently with the poorest man's daughter; and a brave fellow, who has no fortune, does not despair of matching with the daughter of a prince. A widow, who marries a second time, is obliged to cut off a joint of one of her fingers; and so for every husband she marries after the first. Either man or woman may be divorced, on shewing sufficient cause before the captain and the rest of the kraal; the woman, however, must not marry again, though the man is allowed to marry, and have as many wives as he pleases at the same time. A young Hottentot never is master of a hut or tent till he marries, unless his father dies and leaves him one: therefore the first business the bride and bridegroom apply themselves to, after their marriage feast, is to erect a tent or hut of all new materials, in which work the woman has as great a share as the man; and this taking them up about a week's time, the new married couple are entertained in the mean time in the tents of some of their relations. When they resort to their new apartment, and come to keep house together, the wife seems to have much the greatest share of the trouble of it: she foddors the cattle, milks them, cuts out the firing, searches every morning for roots for their food, brings them home, and boils or broils them, while the drone of a husband lies indolently at home, and will scarce give himself the trouble of getting up to eat when the food is provided for him by the drudge his wife. The more wives he has, the less the more indolent life he leads, the care of making provision for the family being thrown upon them. It is said he will, in his turn, attend his cattle in the field; but expects every one of his wives should do, at least, as much towards taking care of them as he does. He will also, sometimes, but very rarely, go a hunting with the men of his kraal, and bring home a piece of venison, or a dish of fish; but this is not often; and if he is of any handicraft trade, he may work at it two or three hours in a week, and instruct his children in the art. He also takes upon him to sell his cattle, and purchase tobacco, and strong liquors of the Dutch, with necessary tools, beads and other ornaments, for which the Hottentots barter away their cattle: their wives are not permitted to intermeddle in the business of buying and selling, this being the sole

prerogative of the man. When a woman brings a living son into the world, there is great rejoicing; but the first thing they do with the child, is to daub it all over with cow-dung; then they lay it before the fire, or in the sun; till the dung is dried; after which they rub it off, and wash the child with the juice of certain herbs, laying it in the sun, or before the fire again, till the liquor is dried in, after which they anoint the child from head to foot with butter, or sleeps fat melted, which is dried in as the juice was: and this custom of anointing their bodies with fat, they retain afterwards as long as they live. After the child has been thus smeared and greased, the mother gives it what name she thinks proper, which is usually the name of some wild beast, or domestic animal. When the woman is well again, and able to leave her hut, she rubs herself all over with cow-dung; and this filthy daubing is by these delicate people termed a purification. Being thus delightfully perfumed, and elegantly decorated with sheep's guts, she is permitted to go abroad, or to see company at home.

If the woman has twins, and they are girls, the man proposes it to the kraal, that he may expose one of them, either upon pretence of poverty, or that his wife has not milk for them both; and this they usually indulge one another in; they do the same when they have a boy or girl; but always preserve the boys, though they happen to have two at a birth. The exposed child is carried to a distance from the kraal; and if they can find a cave or hole in the earth, that some wild beast has made, they put the child alive into it; and then having stopped up the mouth of the den with stones or earth, leave it there to starve: if they cannot meet such a cavity, they tie the infant to the lower bough of a tree, or leave it in some thicket of bushes, where it is frequently destroyed by wild beasts. They do not deal thus, however, as has been observed, by their male children: on the birth of a boy, they kill a bullock; and if they have twins, two bullocks; and make an entertainment for all the neighbourhood, who congratulate the parents on their good fortune; and, as with us, the greatest rejoicings are on the birth of the first son.

The males, at about ten years of age, are always deprived of their left testicle; the operation is performed with a dexterity that would surprize an European surgeon, and bad consequences are seldom or never known to ensue. A sheep is killed, and great rejoicings are made upon the occasion; but it is to be observed, that the men devour all the mear, and allow the women nothing but the broth. The reason of this absurd custom of mutilating their male youth is unknown; some of the Hottentots say, it is to make them run swift; but the greatest part of these people give their general reason, which they use upon all occasions, when they are unable to account for any of their absurd practices; namely, That it is the Hottentot custom; and has been practised by their ancestors time immemorial. At the age of eighteen, the male Hottentots, being deemed men, are admitted into male society: the men of the village (if it may be so called) squat down, and form a circle, as is usual upon most public occasions, the youth squats down without the circle, at some distance. The oldest man of the kraal then rises from the circle, and having obtained the general consent for the admission of a new member, he goes to the youth, acquaints him with the determination of the men of the kraal, and concludes his harangue with some verses, which admonish him to behave like a man for the future. The youth being then daubed with foot and fat, and well sprinkled with urine, is congratulated by the company in general in a kind of chorus, which contains the following wishes: that good fortune may attend him, that he may live long, and thrive daily; that he may soon have a beard, and many children; till it is universally allowed he is a useful man to the nation. A feast concludes the ceremony, but the youth himself is not permitted to participate of any part thereof till all the rest are served. Having been thus admitted into male society, it is expected that he should behave ill to

women in general, and to his mother in particular, in order to evince his contempt of every thing feminine. Indeed it is usual for a youth as soon as admitted, to go to his mother's hut, and cudgel her heartily, for which he is highly applauded by the whole kraal; and even the fustling parent herself admires him for his spirit, and protests that the blows do not give her so much pain, as the thoughts of having brought such a mettlesome son into the world afford her pleasure. The more ill treatment he gives his mother, the more esteem he obtains; and every time he strikes her she is in the highest raptures, and thanks providence for having blessed her with such a spirited child. So egregiously will custom counteract the very dictates of nature, and impose upon the understanding of the ignorant.

It may be proper now to say something of those officers amongst them, which the Europeans generally denominate their priests. These persons are called *surri* or *maller*, and are elected by every kraal: they are the men who perform the ceremony of making water at their weddings, and other festivals; the *surri* also is the person who extracts the left testicle from the young males at eight years of age; for all which he has no stated revenue, but a present now and then of a calf or a lamb, and makes one at all their entertainments. Every kraal also has its physician, as well as its priest, who are persons that have some skill in physic and surgery, and particularly in the virtues of salutary herbs: these also are chosen by a majority of voices, and make it their business to look after the people's health: but have no other reward neither for their pains, than voluntary presents. And such is the opinion of the Hottentots of these physicians, that, if they cannot effect a cure, they conclude they are certainly bewitched; as the doctor himself also never fails to give out: whereupon application is made to some pretended conjurer for relief: and if the patient happens to recover, it gives the cunning man, as we call him, a mighty reputation. The physician and surgeon, as has been hinted, is the same person; and though these gentlemen scarce ever saw a body dissected, it is said, they have pretty good notions of anatomy: they cup, bleed, make amputations, and restore dislocated limbs with great dexterity: cholicks and pains in the stomach they relieve by cupping. Their cup is an horn of an ox, the edges cut very smooth: the doctor, having sucked the part where the pain lies, claps on the cup; and, after it has remained some time, till he thinks the part is insensible, he pulls off the horn-cup, and makes two or three incisions, half an inch in length, with a common knife, having no other instrument: after which, he applies the cup again, which falls off when it is full of blood, but the patient, it is said, suffers great pain in the operation. If the pain removes to another part, they rub it with hot fat; and, if that does not ease the pain, they use the cup again on the part last affected; and, if the second cupping does not relieve the patient, they give him inward medicines, being infusions or powders of certain dried roots and herbs. They let blood in plethories and indispositions of that kind, having no other instrument than a common knife; and if bleeding will not effect the cure, they give the patient physic. For head-achs, which they are pretty much subject to in calm weather, they shave their heads in furrows, as they do when they are in mourning; but a brisk gale of wind usually carries off the head-ach, without any other application; and this they do not often want at the cape. They seldom make any other amputations, than of the fingers of such women as marry a second time, or oftener: and, in this case, they bind the joint below that which is to be cut off very tight, with a dried sinew, and then cut off the joint at once with a knife, stopping the blood with the juice of myrrh-leaves; after which, they wrap up the finger in some healing herbs, and never any part of the finger receives any hurt beyond the amputation. They have little or no skill in setting fractured limbs; but are pretty dexterous at resetting of dislocations.

The Hottentot physician, in case he meets with a soul in much, gives the juice of aloe leaves; and, if one dose

will not do, repeats it two or three days; and, for any inward ail, they give chiefly the powders, or infusions of wild sage, wild figs and fig-leaves, buchhu, garlic or fennel: but, whatever the disease be, it seems the patient never fails to sacrifice a bullock; or a sheep, upon his recovery.

The Hottentots are exceedingly superstitious, and fond of divination. In order to know the fate of a sick person, they slay a sheep alive: after having its skin entirely taken off, if the poor animal is able to get up and run away, it is deemed a propitious omen; but, on the contrary, if the excruciating pain kills it, they imagine that the patient will certainly die, and accordingly give him up intirely to nature, without taking any further care of him.

Whatever they believe of departed souls, they have no notion either of heaven or hell, or of a state of rewards or punishments; this is evident from the behaviour of a dying Hottentot, and those about him; neither he nor his friends offer up any prayers to their gods for the salvation of his soul; or even mention the state of departed souls, or their apprehensions of his being happy or miserable after death: however, they set up terrible howlings and shriekings, when the sick man is in his last agonies; and yet these very people are frequently guilty of murdering their ancient parents, as well as their innocent children; for when the father of a family is become perfectly useless and superannuated, he is obliged to align over his flock of cattle, and every thing else he has in the world, to his eldest son; and in default of sons, to his next heir male: after which, the heir erects a tent or hut in some unfrequented place, a good distance from the kraal or camp he belongs to; and, having assembled the men of the kraal, acquaints them with the condition of his superannuated relation, and desires their consent to expose him in the distant hut; to which the kraal scarce ever refuse their consent. Whereupon a day being appointed to carry the old man to the solitary tent, the heir kills an ox, and two or three sheep, and invites the whole village to feast and be merry with him; and at the end of the entertainment, all the neighbourhood come and take a formal leave of the old wretch, thus condemned to be starved or devoured by wild beasts: then the unfortunate creature is laid upon one of their carriage oxen, and carried to his last home, attended to the place, where he is to be buried alive by most of his neighbours. The old man being taken down, and set in the middle of the hut provided for him, the company return to their kraal, and he never sees the face of a human creature afterwards; they never so much as enquire whether he was starved to death, or devoured by wild beasts: he is no more thought of, than if he had never been. In the same manner they deal with a superannuated mother; only as she has nothing she can call her own, she has not the trouble of assigning her effects to her son. Whenever the Hottentots are upbraided with this unparalleled piece of barbarity, they reply, it would be a much greater cruelty to suffer an old creature to languish out a miserable life, and to be many years a dying, than to make this quick dispatch with them; and that it is out of their extreme tenderness they put an end to the lives of these old wretches; all the arguments in the world against the inhumanity of the custom, can make no impression on them: and, indeed, as long as the Dutch have resided at the cape, they have not been able to break them of one single custom, or prevail with them to alter any part of their conduct, how barbarous or absurd soever: and, it seems, the captain of a kraal is not exempted from seeing his funeral solemnized in this manner, while he is alive, if he happens to become useless. And this leads us to treat of such funerals as are solemnized after the person is really dead.

The sick man, having resigned his breath, is immediately bundled up, neck and heels together, in his sheep-skin mantle, exceeding close, so that no part of the corpse appears: then the captain of the kraal, with some of the seniors, search the neighbouring country for some cavity in a rock, or the den of a wild beast, to bury it in, never digging a grave; if they can find

one of these within the whole kraal, the corpse, seldom per more than six hours the neighbourhood ceased, the men sit circle, and resting (usual posture) as they clap their hands, and (father) lamenting brought out on the died, and not at their arms to the ground in different parties, crying all the way, hands, and perform and grimaces, which Dutchmen's mirth; forbear laughing at an occasion. Having prepared for it, they hills, stones, and pieced on the corpse, being stopped up, again before the tent their howling, and their departed friends men get up; and one of the men, and the women, urine upon where the kraals are so water enough for this number. Then the deceased; and, having the fire-place, they set the people, blessing the created was a person deceased again several days. That the ceremony always. If the deceased on the occasion; and buchhu, is tied about wear it while its rots of stinks being perfumes also wear the cauls of it seems is their mourning deceased are so poor, and then they shave their inch broad, leaving the between every furrow.

It is not an easy matter to get into the religious notions, he is speaking in his answers upon all respects are introduced, and remains in silence. Some whether the Hottentots most intelligent amongst them, that they believe the Gounya Taquoa, or his place of residence is that Gounya Taquoa is they have no mode of we give this reason, "That having greatly offended, suddenly have never from. They believe that the most the representative of has the direction of the pay to her when it is to assemble and worship moon, let the weather be, follow their bodies, groans, crying and howling, and some expressions of dependence on this infernal nature you; you are a Gounya, grant us pasture, &c. These and other frequently dancing while; and, at the end, ho! raising and

one of these within a moderate distance. After which the whole kraal, men and women, prepare to attend the corpse, seldom permitting it to remain above ground more than six hours. When all things are ready, all the neighbourhood assemble before the door of the deceased, the men sitting down on their heels in the circle, and resting their elbows on their knees (their usual posture) as the women do in another: here they clap their hands, and howl, crying, Bo, bo, bo! (i. e. father) lamenting their loss. The corpse being then brought out on that side the tent, where the person died, and not at the door, the bearers carry him in their arms to the grave, the men and women follow it in different parties, but without any manner of order, crying all the way, Bo, bo, bo! and wringing their hands, and performing a thousand ridiculous gestures and grimaces, which is frequently the subject of the Dutchmen's mirth; it being impossible, it is said, to forbear laughing at the antic tricks they shew on such an occasion. Having put the corpse into the cavity prepared for it, they stop up the mouth of it with ant hills, stones, and pieces of wood, believing the ants will feed on the corpse, and soon consume it. The grave being stopped up, the men and women rendezvous again before the tent of the deceased, where they repeat their howling, and frequently call upon the name of their departed friend: after which two of the oldest men get up; and one of them going into the circle of the men, and the other into the circle of the women, urine upon every one of the company; and, where the kraals are so very large, that two cannot find water enough for this ceremony, they double or treble the number. Then the old men go into the tent of the deceased; and, having taken up some ashes from the fire-place, they sprinkle them upon the bodies of the people, blessing them as they go: and if the deceased was a person of distinction, this is acted over again several days. But we should have remembered, that the ceremony always concludes with an entertainment. If the deceased had any cattle, a sheep is killed on the occasion; and the caul being powdered with buchu, is tied about the heir's neck, who is forced to wear it while it rots off, which is no great penance, all kinks being perfumes to a Hottentot. All the relations also wear the cauls of sheep about their necks; which seems to be their mourning, unless the children of the deceased are so poor, that they cannot kill a sheep; and then they shave their heads in furrows of about an inch broad, leaving the hair on of the same breadth between every furrow.

It is not an easy matter to come at a Hottentot's religious notions, he is sparing of his words, and laconic in his answers upon all occasions; but when religious topics are introduced, he generally conceals his sentiments in silence. Some on this account have doubted whether the Hottentots have any religion at all: but the most intelligent among the Dutch at the cape positively affirm, that they believe in a Supreme Being, whom they call Gounya Taquoa, or God of gods, and fancy that his place of residence is beyond the moon. They allow that Gounya Taquoa is a humane benevolent being, yet they have no mode of worshipping him; for which they give this reason, "That he cursed their first parents for having greatly offended him, on which account their posterity have never from that time paid him adoration." They believe that the moon is an inferior visible god, and the representative of the high and invisible: that she has the direction of the weather; and therefore they pray to her when it is unseasonable. They never fail to assemble and worship this planet at the new and full moon, let the weather be never so bad; and though they do not adore their bodies, grin and put on very frightful looks, crying and howling in a terrible manner, yet they have some expressions that shew their veneration and dependence on this inferior deity; as, "Mufchi Atze, salute you; you are welcome: Cheraqua kaka ehori, grant us pasture for our cattle and plenty of milk." These and other prayers to the moon they repeat, frequently dancing and clapping their hands all the while; and, at the end of every dance, crying, Ho, ho, ho! raising and falling their voices, and using

abundance of odd gestures, that appear ridiculous to European spectators; and which no doubt, made them at first, before they knew any thing of their language, conclude, that this could not be the effect of devotion, especially when the people themselves told them, it was not an act of religion, but only intended for their diversion. They continue thus shouting, singing and dancing, with prostrations on the earth, the whole night, and even part of the next day, with some short intervals, never resting, unless they are quite spent with the violence of the action; and then they squat down upon their heels, holding their heads between their hands, and resting their elbows on their knees; and, after a little time, they start up again, and falling to singing and dancing in a circle as before, with all their might.

The Hottentots also adore a fly about the bigness of a hornet, called by some the gold beetle: whenever they see this insect approach their kraai, they all assemble about it, and sing and dance round it while it remains there, strewing over it the powder of buchu, by botanists called spiræum; which when it is dried and pulverized, they always powder themselves with it at festivals. They strew the same powder also over the tops of their tents, and over the whole area of the kraal, as a testimony of their veneration for the adored fly. They sacrifice also two sheep as a thanksgiving for the favour shewn their kraal, believing they shall certainly prosper after such a visit; and, if this insect happens to light upon a tent, they look upon the owner of it for the future as a saint, and pay him more than usual respect. The best ox of the kraal also is immediately sacrificed, to testify their gratitude to the little winged deity, and to honour the saint he has been pleased thus to distinguish: to whom the entrails of the beast, the choicest morsel in their opinion, with the fat and the caul is presented; and the caul being twisted like a rope, the saint ever after wears it like a collar about his neck day and night, till it putrefies and rots off; and the saint only feeds upon the entrails of the beast, while the rest of the kraal feed upon the joints, that are not in so high esteem among them: with the fat of the sacrifice also the saint anoints his body from time to time, till it is all spent; and, if the fly lights upon a woman she is no less revered by the neighbourhood, and entitled to the like privileges. It is scarce possible to express the agonies the Hottentots are in, if any European attempts to take or kill one of these insects, as the Dutch will sometimes seem to attempt, to put them in a fright: they will beg and pray, and fall prostrate on the ground, to procure the liberty of this little creature, if it falls into a Dutchman's hands; they are, on such an occasion, in no less consternation than the Indians near Fort St. George, when the kite, with a white head, which they worship, is in danger. If a soldier takes one of these alive, and threatens to wring the neck of it off, the Indians will gather in crowds about him, and immediately collect the value of a shilling or two, to purchase the liberty of the captive bird they adore. But to return to the Hottentots: they imagine if this little deity should be killed, all the cattle would die of diseases, or be destroyed by wild beasts; and they themselves should be the most miserable of men, and look upon that kraal to be doomed to some imminent misfortune, where this animal seldom appears.

The Hollanders have sent several reverend divines to the cape as missionaries, who have spared no pains to bring the Hottentots off from their idolatry, and induce them to embrace Christianity; even their covetousness and ambition have been applied to, and temporal rewards offered them, on condition of their being instructed in the principles of Christianity. But no motives whatever, whether those relating to this or another state, have yet been able to make the least impression on any one of them: they hold fast and hug their ancient superstitions, and will hear of no other religion. The reason that they neither imitate the Europeans in their building, planting or cloathing, is because they imagine themselves to be religiously obliged to follow the customs of their ancestors; and that, if they should deviate from them in the least of these matters, it might

make way for a total change of their religion and manners, which they cannot think of without abhorrence. One of the Dutch governors at the cape bred up an Hottentot from his infancy, obliging him to follow the fashions and customs of the Europeans, to be taught several languages, and to be fully instructed in the principles of the Christian religion, cloathing him handsomely, and treating him, in all respects, as a person for whom he had a high esteem; and let him know, that he designed him for some beneficial and honourable employment. The governor afterwards sent him a voyage to Batavia, where he was employed, under the commissary his friend, for some time, till that gentleman died; and then he returned to the cape of Good Hope: but, having paid a visit to the Hottentots of his relations and acquaintance, he threw off all his fine clothes, bundled them up, and laid them at the governor's feet, and desired he would give him leave to renounce his Christianity, and live and die in the religion and customs of his ancestors: only begged the governor would give him leave to keep the hanger and collar he wore for his sake; which while the governor was deliberating with himself upon, scarce believing the fellow to be in earnest, the young Hottentot took the opportunity of running away, and never came near the cape afterwards, thinking himself extremely happy that he had exchanged his European cloaths for a sheep skin and the rest of the Hottentot; drefs and ornaments: the English East India company, we are informed, made the like experiment, bringing over two of that nation hither, whom they cloathed decently after the European manner, and used them, in all respects, with the greatest goodness and gentleness, hoping, by that means, to be better informed of the condition of their country, and whether it might be worth the while to make a settlement there: but the two Hottentots only learnt English enough to bewail their misfortune in being brought from their country and their friends; and, after two years trial of them, being again set on shore at the cape, they immediately stripped off their European clothes, and, having taken up the sheep skin mantle again, rejoiced beyond measure for their happy escape from the English.

The poor Hottentots sometimes employ themselves in making arms, viz. bows and arrows, lances and darts, bartering them with the rich for cattle, to begin the world with: others get elephants teeth, and what they do not use in making rings and ornaments for themselves, are generally disposed of, it is thought, to the Portuguese and other Europeans, who touch at Terra de Natal, and other parts of the eastern or western coast. The Hottentots sell very few teeth to the Dutch; though it is manifest they kill abundance of elephants: they supply the Hollanders however with cattle, and take wine, brandy or tobacco, in return; and an ox may be purchased of them for a pound of tobacco, and a large sheep for half a pound. As to coin, the reader will conclude they have none; nor do they ever see any, unless some small pieces of money the Dutch sometimes give them for their wages at the cape; and it must not be forgot, that the Hottentots find abundance of ostrich's eggs in the sand, which they barter with the sea-faring men, that touch at the cape, for brandy and tobacco; every sailor almost being proud of bringing home one of these egg shells to his friends, after he has fried and eaten the yolk, which makes a large pancake, and is pretty good food, but rather of the strongest.

Their butchers are said to be great artists in their way, and to handle a knife as dexterously as an anatomist: having tied the hind and fore legs of a sheep, they throw the creature on his back, and with cords, two of them extend it to its full stretch, while a third rips it up; so that all the entrails appear: then, with one hand, he tears the guts from the carcase, and, with the other, flirts the blood; avoiding as much as he can the breaking any of the blood-vessels about the heart; so that the sheep is a long time a dying: in the mean time he gives the guts to another, who just rids them of the filth, and rinses them in water, and part of them are broiled and

eaten amongst them, before the sheep is well dead: having scooped the blood out of the body of the animal with their hands or sea shells, they cut the rest of the guts in small pieces, and stew them in the blood, which is the Hottentots favourite dish. An ox also is killed in the same barbarous manner; being thrown upon his back, and his legs extended with cords, he is ripped up, and his guts taken out first; in which cruel operation the heart is half an hour a dying: they separate the parts with great exactness, dividing the flesh, the bones, the membranes, muscles, veins, and arteries, and laying them in several parcels every thing entire. The bones also are taken out of the flesh, and laid together in such order, that they might be easily formed into an exact skeleton: these they boil by themselves, and get the marrow out of them, with which they anoint their bodies. Of the sheep skin, as has been observed already, they make a mantle, if it be large: but, if it is small, they cut it into thongs, to adorn their women's legs: and the hide of an ox serves either to cover their tents, or to make girts and straps of, with which they bind their baggage on their carriage oxen when they decamp; and, if they have no other use for their ox-hides, they lay them by, and eat them when they want other food.

They have another artificer, who is both selmonger and taylor: that is, he dresses skins after their way, and then makes them into mantles: he takes a sheep skin just flayed off, and, rubbing it well with fat, the skin becomes tough and smooth; and, if it be for one of his countrymen, he rubs it over also with fresh cow-dung, and lays it in the sun till it is dry: then he rubs it with fat and cow dung again; which he repeats several times, till it becomes perfectly black, and flinks so, that no European can bear it; and then, with a little shaping and sewing, it is a complete mantle for a Hottentot: but, if it be dressed for a Dutchman, he only rubs the skin well with fat, which secures the wool from coming off. If he be to dress an ox's hide, he rubs the hairy side with wood ashes; then sprinkling it with water, rolls it up, and lays it a day or two in the sun; which expedients effectually bring off the hair: this skin is then well greased, stretched out, and dried again, when it is deemed good leather.

Their smiths do not only fashion their iron, but melt it from the ore: they find plenty of iron stones in several parts of their country; and having got a heap of these, they put them into a hole in the ground, heated and prepared for their purpose: then they make a fire over the stones, which they supply with fuel, and keep up till the iron melts: and then it runs into another hole, which they make for a receiver, a little lower than the first: as soon as the iron in the receiver is cold they break it to pieces with stones; and, heating the pieces again in other fires, beat them with stones, till they shape them into the heads of lances, darts, arrows, and bows, and such weapons as they use; for they scarce ever form any other utensils, but arms of this metal: they get the hardest flat stone, according to monseur Vogel, and, laying the iron upon it, as upon an anvil, beat it with another round stone, which serves them for a hammer; then they grind it upon the flat stone, and polish it as nicely as any European artificer could do with all his tools: they have some copper ore to which they melt in like manner; but they make no toys and ornaments for their dress of this metal: no indeed, do they ever work in iron, but when they want weapons. They would never labour, if their necessities did not sometimes compel them to it: but, when they do, no people work harder, or more indefatigably for they never leave a piece of work, till they have finished it.

The ivory-turner makes the ivory rings that are worn ornamentally about the arms; and considering that his only tool is a common clasp knife, which he purchases from the Dutch, the workmanship has great merit.

The potter or maker of earthen vessels is another art; but this, it seems, they are all dexterous at, even the family making the pots and pans they want. For the

they use only the all sand and gravel with the bruised and extraordinary cement materials into a kind of them as will make a hand upon a flat stone man urn; then they carefully, not leaving face; and having done they put the pot into by making a fire over it appears perfectly in own mats, with which but this is chiefly thither the flags and run plat them into mats the weather or light

The last artificer who has no better mat as the mats are made strong as those made buy and use them in

riages.

As to the way of tra on foot, except the carried on their bagg places for refreshmen the kraals in his way welcome from his coun their hospitality to f country or of Europea quantity of these peopl any confidence is plac landers travel either o not reach an Europea kraals of the Hottentot with a hut, and such may lie in the area of pleals, and the weath scarce both from rob bullus handitti on the give no quarter; but to hold them in abhorre feeding and punishing

Their language is v one word signifies sever being determined by the the pronunciation is f seem to flammer in al they are easily taught they can seldom be brot gre of intelligibility.

We shall here subjoin for the satisfaction of t

limb; kgou, a goole; har; quaqu, a pheas birds in general; knob, a wild ox; ounequ, a hare; a dog; konke, a dog; the heart; kgoye, a dog; komma, a houle; konkerey, a hen; the, a sheep; ghoulic, a sheep; ky; akaonoklau, gunpo, a quow, thunder; duck, a quon, an ass; naew, a quon, the beard; ka, a quon, an ox of burde; a dog; bikqua, the ho; a pigeon; anthuri, to; a quon, the devil; hal, a quon, a stream; tika, a quon, the mouth; khou, a quon; khoakamma, a b; an eye; tqualfou, a

The Hottentots have which they repeat twice the first term, and three plication of the latter.

No. 12.

they use only the earth of ant-hills, clearing them of all sand and gravel; after which, they work it together with the bruised ant-eggs, that are said to constitute an extraordinary cement. When they have moulded these materials into a kind of paste, they take as much of them as will make one of their pots, and fashion it by hand upon a flat stone, making it of the form of a Roman ura; then they smooch it within and without very carefully, not leaving the least roughness upon the surface; and having dried it in the sun two or three days, they put the pot into a hole in the ground, and burn it, by making a fire over it; and, when they take it out, it appears perfectly black: every family also make their own mats, with which they cover their tents or huts; but this is chiefly the business of the women: they gather the flags and rushes by the river side, or weave or plait them into mats so closely, it is said, that neither the weather or light can penetrate them:

The last artificer we shall mention is the rope-maker, who has no better materials, than such flags and rushes as the mats are made of, and yet they appear almost as strong as those made of hemp: the Dutch, at the cape, buy and use them in ploughing, and in draught-carriages.

As to the way of travelling here, the natives all travel on foot, except the aged and infirm; and these are carried on their baggage oxen. As there are no inns or places for refreshment, the travelling Hottentot calls at the kraals in his way, where he meets with a hearty welcome from his countrymen, who endeavour to shew their hospitality to strangers, whether of their own country or of Europe. Such indeed is the general urbanity of these people, and their strict integrity when any confidence is placed in them, that when the Hollanders travel either on foot or horseback, if they cannot reach an European settlement, they also call at the kraals of the Hottentots, where they are complimented with a hut, and such provision as they have, or they may lie in the area of the kraal, in the open air, if they please, and the weather be good; and here they are secure both from robbers and wild beasts; for the bush is banditti on the mountains are dangerous, as they give no quarter; but the Hottentot nations in general hold them in abhorrence, and unanimously concur in detesting and punishing them upon all occasions.

Their language is very inarticulate and defective; one word signifies several things, the definitive meaning being determined by the manner of pronouncing; and the pronunciation is so harsh and confused, that they seem to stammer in all they speak. Hence, though they are easily taught to understand other languages, they can seldom be brought to speak them with any degree of intelligibility.

We shall here subjoin a small Hottentot vocabulary, for the satisfaction of the curious; khauna, signifies a lamb; kgou, a goose; bunquava, trees; knoim, to bear; quaquu, a pheasant; tkaka, a whale; horri, kills in general; knobou, a fowling piece; qua-ara-ba, a wild ox; ounequa, the arms; quienkha, to fall; khalance, a dog; konkequa, a captain; quas, the neck; quau, the heart; kgoyes, a buck or doe; tikquoa, a god; komma, a house; khaaa, a cat; kowkuri, iron; kookkeroy, a hen; thoukou, a dark night; tkoume, ice; ghoudic, a sheep; toya, the wind; tkua, a valley; khaonoklau, gunpowder; kamkamma, the earth; quowou, thunder; duckatere, a duck; kamma, water; quatha, an ass; naew, the ears; kirri, a stick; monaha, the beard; ka-a, to drink; duriefa, an ox; bak-kaa, an ox of burden; ounvic, butter; houtou, a dog; bigqua, the head; kamma, a flag; kouquil, a pigeon; anthuri, to-morrow; kou, a tooth; kha-mount, the devil; bakqua, a horse; koo, a son; kammo, a stream; tika, grass; toqua, a wolf; koanqua, the mouth; khou, a peacock; gona, a boy; gois, a girl; khaokamma, a baboon; kerhanehou, a star; an eye; tquaslow, a tyger.

The Hottentots have only ten numerical terms, which they repeat twice to express the multiplication of the first term, and three times to express the re-multiplication of the latter. Their terms are: q'ku, one;

k'kam, two; kouna, three; kakka, four; koo, five; nanni, six; kounko, seven; khissi, eight; khaffi, nine; ghissi, ten.

Thus have we given a circumstantial and full account of the cape, its inhabitants, productions and adjacent country; from whence the French, at Mauritius, are supplied by the Dutch with salted beef, biscuit, flour, and wine: the provisions for which the French contracted this year were five hundred thousand lb. weight of salt beef, four hundred thousand lb. of flour; four hundred thousand lb. of biscuit, and one thousand two hundred leaguers of wine. We have only to add to this account a few observations on the bay, and garrison. The former is large, safe, and exceeding convenient. It is indeed open to the N. W. winds, but they seldom blow hard; yet as they sometimes occasion a great sea, the ships moor N. E. and S. W. The S. E. winds blow frequently with great fury, but their direction being right out of the bay prevents them from being dangerous. For the convenience of landing and shipping goods, a wharf of wood is run out near the town, to a proper distance. Water is conveyed in pipes to this wharf, and many large boats and hoys are kept by the Company to carry stores and provisions to and from the shipping in the harbour. This bay is covered by a small fort on the E. side of the town, and close to the beach; and is also defended by several out-works and batteries extending along the shore, as well on this side of the town as the other; nevertheless they are by their situation exposed to the shipping, and in a manner defenceless against an enemy of any force by land. As to the garrison, this consists of eight hundred regular troops, besides militia of the country, in which last is comprehended every man able to bear arms. By signals they can alarm the country in a very short time, and when these are made, the militia is to repair immediately to their place of rendezvous in the town.

On Sunday, the 14th of April in the morning, we weighed, stood out of the bay, and anchored at five in the evening under Penguin, or Robin Island. Here we lay all night, and being prevented from sailing by the wind, the Captain dispatched a boat to the island for a few trifling articles, which we had omitted to take in at the Cape: when our people drew near the shore, they were warned by the Dutch not to land at their peril. At the same time six men, armed with muskets, paraded upon the beach. The commanding officer in the boat did not think it prudent to risk the lives of his men, on account of a few cabbages, and therefore returned without them to the ship. To this island the Dutch at the Cape banish such criminals as are not thought worthy of death, for a certain number of years, according to the nature of their crimes. They are employed as slaves in digging lime-stone, which though scarce upon the continent is here in great abundance. A Danish ship touched at this island, having been refused assistance at the Cape, and sending her boat on shore, overpowered the guard, and then took as many of the criminals as were necessary to navigate her home; for she had lost great part of her crew by sickness. To this incident we attributed our repulse; concluding, that the Dutch to prevent a similar rescue of their prisoners, had ordered their garrison at this place, not to suffer any boat of foreign nations to land the crew, and come ashore.

On Thursday the 25th, we put to sea, and about four o'clock in the afternoon died our master, Mr. Robert Mollineux, a youth of good parts, but unhappily for his own self preservation too much addicted to intemperance, a habit we would caution all those who undertake long voyages to avoid, if they have any regard to their personal safety. We now continued our voyage without any other remarkable incident; and on Monday the 29th, we crossed our first meridian, having circumnavigated the globe from E. to W. and consequently lost a day, for which upon correcting our reckoning at Batavia, we made an allowance. On Monday the 1st of May, we came to anchor at break of day, before James's fort in the island of St. Helena; and as we

proposed to refresh here, Mr. Banks employed his time in visiting the most remarkable places, and in surveying every object worthy of notice.

St. Helena is situated in the Atlantic ocean, in six degrees W. longitude, and sixteen S. latitude, almost in the midway between Africa and America, being twelve hundred miles distant from the former, and eighteen hundred from the latter. It was so named by the Portuguese, who discovered it on St. Helen's-day. This island is 36 miles long, 18 broad, and about 61 in circumference. It is the summit of an immense mountain rising out of the sea, and of a depth unfathomable at a small distance round it. It may be discerned at sea, at above twenty leagues distance, and looks like a castle in the middle of the ocean, whose natural walls are of that height, that there is no scaling them. The small valley called Chapel-valley, in a bay on the east side of it, is defended by a battery of forty or fifty great guns, planted even with the water; and the waves dashing perpetually on the shore, make it difficult landing even here. There is also one little creek besides, where two or three men may land at a time; but this is now defended by a battery of five or six guns, and rendered inaccessible. No anchorage is to be found any where about the island, but at Chapel-valley bay, and as the wind always sets from the S. E. if a ship overshoots the island ever so little, she cannot recover it again. The feat of volcanoes has been found to be the highest part of the countries in which they are found. Hecla is the highest hill in Iceland; and the pike of Teneriffe is known to be the covering of subterraneous fire. These are still burning; but there are other mountains which bear evident marks of fire that is now extinct: among these is St. Helena, where the inequalities of the ground, and its external surface, are evidently the effects of the sinking of the earth; and that this was caused by subterraneous fire, is equally manifest from the stones, for some of them, especially those in the bottom of the valleys, are burnt almost to cinders. This island, as the Endeavour approached it on the windward side, appeared like a rude heap of rocks, bounded by precipices of an amazing height, and consisting of a kind of stone, which shews not the least sign of vegetation: nor is it more promising upon a nearer view. Sailing along shore, we came near the huge cliffs, that seemed to overhang the ship. At length we opened Chapel-valley, which resembles a trench, and in this valley we discovered the town. The sides of it are as naked as the cliffs next the sea; but the bottom is slightly clothed with herbage. In its present cultivated state, such appeared the island to us; and the first hills must be passed, before the country displays its verdure, or any other marks of fertility.

In Chapel-valley, a little beyond the landing place, is a fort where the governor resides with the garrison; and the town stands just by the sea-side. The greater part of the houses are ill built. The church, which was originally a mean structure, is in ruins; and the market-place nearly in the same condition. The town consists of about forty or fifty buildings, constructed after the English fashion, whither the people of the island resort when any shipping appears, as well to assist in the defence of the island, as to entertain the seamen if they are friends: for the governor has always sentinels, on the highest part of the island, to the windward, who give notice of the approach of all shipping, and guns are thereupon fired, that every man may report to his post. It is impossible for an enemy to approach by sea in the night time, and if discovered the day before, preparations are speedily made for his reception.

Notwithstanding the island appears a barren rock on every side, yet on the top it is covered with a fine layer of earth, producing grain, fruits, and herbs of various kinds; and the country after we ascended the rock, is diversified with rising hills and plains, plantations of fruit trees and kitchen gardens, among which the houses of the natives are interspersed, and in the open fields are herds of cattle grazing, some of which are fatted to supply the shipping, and the rest furnish the dairies

with milk, butter, and cheese. Hogs, goats, turkeys, and all manner of poultry also abound, and the seas are well stored with fish. But amidst all this affluence, the people have neither bread nor wine of their own growth: for though the soil is proper for wheat, yet the rats that harbour in the rocks, and cannot be destroyed, eat up all the seed, before the grain is well out of the ground; and though their vines flourish and produce them grapes enough, yet the latitude is too hot for making wine. This they have therefore from the Canaries, the Madeiras, or the Cape, as well as their flour and malt. Their very houses are some of them brought from Europe ready framed, there being no timber on the island, trees not taking deep root here on account of the rock that lies so near the surface: however, they have underwood enough for necessary uses. Besides grapes, they have plantains, bananas, figs, lemons, and such other fruits as hot countries usually produce. They also raise kidney beans, and some other kinds of pulse in their gardens; and the want of bread they supply with potatoes and yams.

In the year 1701, there were upon the island about two hundred families, most of them English, or descended from English parents. Every family has a house and plantation on the higher part of the island, where they look after their cattle, fruits, and kitchen garden. They scarce ever come down to the town, unless it be to church, or when the shipping arrive, when most of the houses in the valley are converted into punch-houses, or lodgings for their guests, to whom they sell their poultry, and other commodities; but they are not suffered to purchase any merchandise of the ships that touch here. Whatever they want of foreign growth or manufacture, they are obliged to buy at the company's warehouse, where twice every month, they may furnish themselves with brandy, European or Cape wines, Batavia arrack, malt, beer, sugar, tea, coffee, china, and japan-ware, linen, callicoes, chintz, muslins, ribbands, woollen-cloth and stuffs, and all manner of cloathing, for which they are allowed six months credit. Among the very few native productions of this island must be reckoned ebony, though the trees are now nearly extinct. Pieces of this wood are frequently found in the vallies of a fine black colour, and a hardness almost equal to iron; these pieces, however, are so short and crooked, that no use can be made of them. There are few insects here, but upon the tops of the highest ridges a species of snail is found, which has probably been there since the original creation of their kind. It is indeed very difficult to conceive how any thing not formed here, or brought hither by the diligence of man, could find its way to a place so severed from the rest of the world, by seas of immense extent.

The Portuguese, who discovered this island in 1502, stored it with hogs, goats, and poultry, and used to touch at it for water and fresh provisions in their return from India; but we do not find they ever planted a colony here; or, if they did, having deserted it afterwards, the English East-India Company took possession of the island A. D. 1600, and held it till 1673, without interruption, when the Dutch took it by surprize. However, the English, commanded by Capt. Munden, recovered it again within the space of a year, and took three Dutch East India ships that lay in the road at the same time. The Hollanders had fortified the landing place, and planted batteries of great guns to prevent a descent; but the English being acquainted with a small creek where only two men could go abreast, climbed up to the top of the rocks in the night time, and appearing next morning at the backs of the Dutch, they threw down their arms, and surrendered the island without striking a stroke: but, as we have before observed, this creek has been since fortified: so that there is now no place where an enemy can make a descent with any probability of success.

The affairs of the East-India Company are managed here by a governor, deputy-governor, and storehouse-keeper, who have certain settled salaries allowed, besides a public table, well furnished, to which all com-

manders, masters of ships, welcome. The natives their deliberations few; they might perhaps be land, yet the unavoidable to addresses at that d great hardships; and situation of this island ward-bound East-Ind experience would induc island; for though it i of life, the merchant modities there. The great many blacks, w themselves for two or among the rocks by provisions: but they taken.

The children and not the least red in near the tropics; but remarkable for their ru situations. Their h alcribed to the follow of a mountain always standly blow here: th most healthful exerci the island is frequen showers; and no no them. They are in tween the town in C which hill is so ste middle of it, they ca be avoided without g that they seldom wa servers of health.

these people they fee most insensitive, anc ever met with of Eng tincture of avarice c them, if they had n world, and how the small a spot of earth, the rest of mankind the necessaries of li ther parched with ex they lived in perfect of robbers, wild bea happy in the enjoym that as there were no planter being worth there were no poor i less than four hundr obliged to undergo t keep him in health.

Our thoughts were our native shore; and shores, on Saturday r filled out of the roo man of war, and his East Indianmen. W course for England u ceiving they out-fa make their port before made the signal to sp Capt. Elliot came on letter for the Admirai taining the common journals of some of th of the fleet till Th from us; and about lost our first lieutenan judicious, and usefu tion, of which ling symptoms when he l

manders, masters of ships, and eminent passengers are welcome. The natives sometimes call the result of their deliberations severe impositions; and though relief might perhaps be had from the company in England, yet the unavoidable delays in returning answers to addresses at that distance puts the aggrieved under great hardships; and on the other hand, was not the situation of this island very serviceable to our homeward-bound East-India ships, the constant trouble and expence would induce the company to abandon the island; for though it is furnished with the conveniences of life, the merchants find no other profitable commodities there. The masters of the plantations keep a great many blacks, who, upon severe treatment, hide themselves for two or three months together, keeping among the rocks by day, and roving at night for provisions: but they are generally discovered and taken.

The children and descendants of white people have not the least red in their cheeks, in all other places near the tropics; but the natives of St. Helena are remarkable for their ruddy complexions and robust constitutions. Their healthfulness may, in general, be ascribed to the following causes. They live on the top of a mountain always open to the sea breezes that constantly blow here: they are usually employed in the most healthful exercises of gardening and husbandry; the island is frequently refreshed with moderate cooling showers; and no noxious fens, nor salt marshes annoy them. They are used also to climb the steep hill between the town in Chapel-valley and their plantation; which hill is so steep, that, having a ladder in the middle of it, they call it Ladder-hill; and this cannot be avoided without going three or four miles about; so that they seldom want air or exercise, the great preservers of health. As to the genius and temper of these people they seemed to us the most honest, the most inoffensive, and the most hospitable people we ever met with of English extraction, having scarce any tincture of avarice or ambition. We asked some of them, if they had no curiosity to see the rest of the world, and how they could confine themselves to so small a spot of earth, separated at such a distance from the rest of mankind? They replied, that they enjoyed the necessaries of life in great plenty: they were neither parched with excessive heat, or pinched with cold: they lived in perfect security; in no danger of enemies, of robbers, wild beasts or rigorous seasons; and were happy in the enjoyment of a continued state of health: that as there were no rich men among them (scarce any planter being worth more than a thousand dollars) so there were no poor in the island, no man being worth less than four hundred dollars, and consequently not obliged to undergo more labour than was necessary to keep him in health.

Our thoughts were now employed on returning to our native shore; and having sufficiently recruited our stores, on Saturday the 4th of May, we weighed, and sailed out of the road in company with the Portland man of war, and his convoy, consisting of twelve sail of East Indianmen. With this fleet we continued our course for England until Friday the 10th, when perceiving they out-sailed us, and consequently might make their port before us, Capt. Cook, for this reason, made the signal to speak with the Portland, upon which Capt. Elliot came on board the Endeavour; to whom a letter for the Admiralty was delivered, with a box, containing the common log books of the ship, and the journals of some of the officers. We did not lose sight of the fleet till Thursday the 23d, when they parted from us; and about one o'clock in the afternoon, we lost our first lieutenant, Mr. Hicks, an active, skilful, judicious, and useful officer. He died of a consumption, of which lingering disorder he discovered some symptoms when he left England; so that it may be truly

said, that he was dying the whole voyage; and his decline was very gradual till we arrived at Batavia, from whence to the time of his dissolution, the slow consuming disease gained strength daily. The whole ship's company attended the funeral rites, and in the evening we committed his body to the sea with the usual ceremonies. The next day the Captain appointed Mr. Charles Clerk, a young man, to act in the room of Mr. Hicks.

We now every day drew nearer our desired haven; but what must be the condition of our once good ship, the Endeavour, may easily be imagined, from a slight recollection of the hardships she had surmounted, and the dangers she had providentially escaped. At this time our rigging and sails were so weather-beaten, that every day something was giving way. However, we held on our course, without any material occurrence that might endanger our safety, till Monday the 10th of June, when, to our great joy, Nicholas Young, the boy who first discovered New Zealand, called out land from the mast head, which proved to be the Lizard. The next day, being Tuesday, the eleventh, we proceeded up the channel. On Wednesday the 12th, with the pleasing hopes of seeing our relatives and friends, exciting sensations not to be described by the pen of the most able writer, we passed Beachy Head. At noon, to our inexpressible joy we were a-breast of Dover; and about three o'clock, P. M. we came to an anchor in the Downs. When we landed at Deal, our ship's company indulged freely that mirth, and sociable jollity, common to all English sailors upon their return from a long voyage, who as readily forget hardships and dangers, as with alacrity and bravery they encounter them.

We cannot close this book without joining in that general censure, which has been justly bestowed on Dr. Hawkefworth, the late compiler of a former account of this voyage of the Endeavour. An infidel may imbibe what chimeras may be best adapted to the gloomy temper of his mind; but we cannot but think him highly culpable in forcing them into a work of this kind; for though it may be said, that, with respect to efficient and final causes, the opinion of a general and particular Providence will form one and the same conclusion, yet we think it is of great comfort to all men, particularly to those who can trace the wonders of an almighty hand in the deep, to be sensible of a merciful interposition, concerned, and ever attentive to their support, preservation, and deliverance in times of danger. Besides, this sentiment of a divine Agent superintending, and correcting the disorders introduced by natural and moral evil, is, undoubtedly, a scripture-doctrine; and from the deductions of the mere light of nature, it must appear unreasonable to suppose, that the first Great Cause who planned the whole grand scheme of creation, should not be allowed to interfere with respect to particular parts, or individuals, as occasion, circumstances, or times may require. And whoever has duly considered the wonderful protection of the Endeavour in cases of danger the most imminent, particularly when encircled, in the wide ocean, with rocks of coral, her sheathing beaten off, and her false-keel floating by her side, a hole in her bottom, and the men by turns fainting at the pumps, cannot but acknowledge the existence of a Particular Providence. The history of Joseph can only afford a more striking instance of the interposition of a divine invisible hand. This our countrymen experienced; and we have good authority to assert, that our company in the Endeavour do acknowledge, notwithstanding the private opinion of the above mentioned compiler, that the hand of Superior Power was particularly concerned in their protection and deliverance. This omniscient and omnipotent power it is the incumbent duty of every christian to believe, confide in, and adore.

Capt. C O O K's SECOND VOYAGE,

TOWARDS THE
South Pole and Round the World,

UNDERTAKEN AND PERFORMED

By Order of his Present MAJESTY,
In his Majesty's Ships the Resolution and Adventure;

With a View principally of Discovering the supposed SOUTHERN CONTINENT, &c.

Begun the 9th of April 1772, and concluded on the 31st of July 1775:

Including a Narrative of Capt. FURNEAUX'S Proceedings in the Adventure after the Separation of the two Ships, during which Period several of his People were destroyed by the Natives of QUEEN CHARLOTTE'S SOUND.

I N T R O D U C T I O N.

THE king's expectations were not wholly answered by former discoveries, which were so highly blazoned both at home and abroad, and therefore his majesty projected this Second Voyage of Capt. Cook, and the Navy-board was ordered to equip two such ships as were most suitable to the service. Accordingly two vessels were purchased of Capt. William Hammond, of Hull, being about fourteen or sixteen months old. They were both built at Whitby, by the same person who built the Endeavour. The largest of the two, named the Resolution, burthen four hundred and sixty-two tons, was sent to Deptford to be fitted out; and the Adventure, three hundred and thirty-six tons, was equipped at Woolwich. On the 28th of November, 1771, Capt. Cook was appointed to the command of the Resolution; and Tobias Furneaux, who had been second lieutenant with Capt. Wallis, was promoted to the command of the Adventure. The Resolution had one hundred and twelve hands on board, officers included: and the Adventure eighty-one. In the former, James Cook was captain, Robert P. Cooper, Charles Clerk, and Richard Pickergill, were appointed lieutenants. Joseph Gilbert was master; James Grey, boatswain; James Wallis, carpenter; Robert Anderson, gunner; and James Patten, surgeon. John Edgcumbe was lieutenant of the marines, under whom were one serjeant, two corporals, one drummer and fifteen privates. The rest of the crew consisted of three master's mates, six midshipmen, two surgeon's mates, one captain's clerk, one master at arms, one corporal, one armourer, his mate, one sail-maker, his mate, three boatswain's mates, carpenter's three, gunner's two, four carpenter's crew, one cook, his mate, six quarter masters, and forty-five able seamen. In the Adventure, Tobias Furneaux was captain, Joseph Shank, and Arthur Kempe, lieutenants; Peter Fannin was appointed master, Edward Johns boatswain, William Oslard carpenter, Andrew Gloag gunner, Thomas Andrews surgeon: of master's mates, midshipmen, &c. as above, the number was twenty-eight, and thirty-three able bodied seamen.

James Scott was lieutenant of the marines, under whose command were one serjeant, one corporal, one drummer, and eight privates.

The two ships were ordered to be got in readiness with the utmost expedition, and both the Navy and Victualling boards paid an uncommon attention to their equipment; even the first lord of the Admiralty visited them from time to time; in consequence of which they were not restrained by ordinary establishments, every extra article thought necessary being allowed, in order that they might be fitted completely, and in every respect to the satisfaction of those who were to embark in them. Indeed Capt. Cook sailed with greater advantages in this expedition, than any of his predecessors who had gone out before on discoveries; and we may venture to say, no future commander will ever have a commission of a more liberal kind, nor be furnished with a greater profusion of the very best stores and provisions. He had the frame of a vessel of twenty tons, one for each ship, to serve occasionally, or upon any emergency, as tenders: he had on board fishing-nets, lines and hooks of every kind; he was supplied with innumerable articles of small value, adapted to the commerce of the tropical islands: he had on board additional cloathing for the seamen, particularly suited to a cold climate, to all which were added the best instruments for astronomical and nautical observations; in which were included four time-pieces on Mr. Harrison's principles, constructed by Mess. Arnold and Kendal. And that nothing might be wanting to procure information, and that could tend to the success of the voyage, a landscape painter, Mr. William Hodges, was engaged for this important undertaking, accompanied by Mr. (now L. r.) John Reinhold Foster and Son, who were thought the most proper persons for the line of Natural History, to which they were appointed with parliamentary encouragement. Mr. William Wales, and Mr. William Bailey, were likewise engaged to make astronomical observations; the former being placed by the board of longitude, in the Resolution, and Mr. Bailey

Bayley in the Adventure
tion the number of me
of the Admiralty, a
present and testimo
ries.

The two ships were
manner of necessaries
which were the follow
freer wort, designed
might engender the
who might be afflicted
ity prescribed for each
day, at the discretion
of which each seaman
week. This is cabbag
calks, after having
deemed by our navig
Cabbage cut small
added juniper berries,
wile put to the four
sourishing, and of gr
those that are in good
moons, and saloup, fo
administered to the si
salade of Carrots, re
Pellin, as a very grea
a such answer our
ected from yellow
parts, till it is brou
which it much resen
Juice of wort and
struck, and intended
beer, by mixing it wi
debted to Mr. Pelha
office; the commissio
half barrels of this ju

The Endeavour takes be
ber voyage to the Cap
parture from the Cap
meridian of the Cape
son in Dusky Bay.

A. D. 1772. THE
manner, as already re
April, dropped down
which place she was
on the 22d failed fro
she was joined by he
both ships took in th
May the 10th we fail
got out of the river,
very crank, on which
While some alteration
Lord Sandwich and S
order to see they wer
The Resolution being
from Sheerneck. On
Sandwich, in the Aug
seventeen guns, and
St Hugh Palliser, ha
board, which was th
attention they had pa
might tend to promo
About this time Co
of Admiralty his inst
the tenor and substan
ture was to be under
No. 13.

Boyley in the Adventure. Nor must we omit to mention the number of medals struck by order of the Lords of the Admiralty, and intended to be left both as presents and testimonies in new discovered countries.

The two ships were victualled and provided with all manner of necessaries for a three years voyage; among which were the following extra articles: 1. Malt, for sweet wort, designed for those whose habit of body might engender the scurvy, and as a remedy for such who might be afflicted with that disorder. The quantity prescribed for each patient, from one to six pints a day, at the discretion of the surgeon. 2. Sour Krout, of which each seaman was to be allowed two pounds a week. This is cabbage salted down, and close packed in casks, after having been properly fermented. It is esteemed by our navigators an excellent antiscorbutic. 3. Cabbage cut small and salted down, to which is added juniper berries, and anniseeds, which are likewise put to the four krout. 4. Portable soup, very nourishing, and of great utility both for invalids, and those that are in good health. 5. Oranges, rob of lemons, and saloup, for the use of the surgeons, to be administered to the sick and scorbutic only. 6. Mar-malade of Carrots, recommended by Baron Storch of Berlin, as a very great antiscorbutic, but it did not in such answer our expectation. This syrup is extracted from yellow carrots, by evaporating the finer parts, till it is brought to a consistence of treacle, which it much resembles both in taste and colour. 7. Juice of wort and beer, inspissated, as the foregoing article, and intended to supply at times the place of beer, by mixing it with water. For this we were indebted to Mr. Pelham, Secretary of the Victualling-office; the commissioners of which ordered thirty-one half barrels of this juice to be prepared for trial; nine-

teen whereof were stowed in the Resolution, and twelve on board the Adventure. Thus all the conveniences necessary for the preservation of health during a long voyage, were provided in abundance; and even some alterations were made in the customary articles of provisions; wheat being substituted in the room of a quantity of oatmeal, and sugar instead of oil.

A proposed voyage attended with such extraordinary preparations, patronized by parliament, as well as royal bounty, and the execution of which being superintended by the first officers of the admiralty, the navy, and by Capt. Cook himself, we do not hesitate to pronounce one of the most important that was ever performed in any age, or by any country; and we may also with truth assert, that the able navigator made choice of by his majesty, was equal to the task in which he was embarked. Every thinking person cannot but admire his skill, his fortitude, his care of his men, his vigilance in attending to the minutest intimations of former navigators, his perseverance amidst the dangers and hardships of rigorous seasons, his prowess in leading his company just so far as they were capable of proceeding; in short, his conduct throughout, which, while he kept every man singly in strict obedience to his duty, he conciliated the affections of all, and secured their esteem. The History of his Second Voyage, which we are now about to submit to the judgment of our numerous Subscribers will, we are persuaded, confirm the truth of this opinion; and we are happy in having received their unanimous approbation of the maps, charts, portraits, and views, which have been hitherto introduced, and which are all engraved from the originals by our most eminent artists. We hope for a continuance of their good opinion, which, in the execution of this work, we shall endeavour by all laudable means to merit and preserve.

B O O K II.

C H A P. I.

The Endeavour takes her departure from Deptford—Touches at the island of St. Jago, one of the Cape de Verdes—Pursues her voyage to the Cape of Good Hope—Account of transactions there, and incidents that happened in her passage—Her departure from the Cape—Continues her voyage in search of a Southern Continent—Sequel of this search, between the meridian of the Cape of Good Hope and that of New Zealand—Separation of the two ships, and the arrival of the Resolution in Dusky Bay.

A. D. 1772. **T**HE Resolution and Adventure being equipped in the most complete manner, as already related, the former on the 9th of April, dropped down the river as far as Woolwich, at which place she was detained by contrary winds; but on the 22d sailed from thence to Long Reach, where she was joined by her companion the Adventure, and both ships took in their marines, guns, and ammunition. May the 10th we sailed for Plymouth, but before we got out of the river, the Resolution was found to be very crank, on which account we put into Sheerness. While some alterations were making in her upper works, Lord Sandwich and Sir Hugh Palliser paid us a visit, in order to see they were executed in a proper manner. The Resolution being again ready for sea, we departed from Sheerness. On the 2d of July we met Lord Sandwich, in the Augusta Yacht, whom we saluted with seventeen guns, and his lordship, accompanied with Sir Hugh Palliser, honoured us with their presence on board, which was the last instance of that very great attention they had paid to a variety of particulars that might tend to promote the success of our undertaking.

About this time Capt. Cook received from the board of Admiralty his instructions, dated the 25th of June, the tenor and substance of which were, that the Adventure was to be under his command: that the two ships

were to proceed to the island of Madeira, from thence to the Cape of Good Hope: that having at this place refreshed the ships companies, and supplied them with provisions and other necessaries, they were to make the best of their way to the southward, in search of Cape Circumcision, which, by M. Bouvet, is said to be in latitude 54 deg. S. and in about 11 deg. 20 min. E. longitude, from the Royal Observatory in the Park at Greenwich; that if they fell in with this Cape, Capt. Cook was to endeavour, by all means in his power, to discover whether the same was part of the supposed continent, which had so much employed the national attention of different European powers, or only the promontory of an island: that, in either case, the gentlemen on board the two ships were diligently to explore the same, to the utmost extent possible; and to make such observations of various kinds, as might correspond with the grand object in view, and be in any respect useful to either navigation or commerce; not omitting at the same time proper remarks on the genius and temper of the inhabitants; whose friendship and alliance they were directed to conciliate, by all probable motives, and prudential means in their power: that they were to proceed on new discoveries to the eastward or westward, as the captains might judge most eligible, endeavouring only to run into as high a latitude, and as near the south pole as possible: that whatever might be

the result of their investigations with respect to Cape Circumcision, they were to continue their surveys to the southward, and then to the eastward, either in search of the said continent, should it not have been ascertained, or to make discoveries of such islands as might be seated in the hitherto unexplored and unknown parts of the southern latitudes: that, having circumnavigated the globe, they were to return to Spithead by the way of the Cape of Good Hope: and that to answer the intentions of government in this voyage as fully as possible, when the season of the year rendered it unsafe to continue in high latitudes, they were to repair to some known port to the northward; and after having refitted, &c. they were to return again, at the proper season, to the southward, in prosecution of new discoveries there. It may not be amiss here to observe, that these orders were not intended in any respect to cramp Capt. Cook, who was allowed, in case the Resolution should be lost, to continue his voyage in the Adventure: he had to the end assistants out of number: his stay was not even hinted at: he was not obliged to return at any limited time; in short he had ample power, full authority, and, in all unforeseen cases, he was to proceed according to his own discretion, and act entirely as he pleased. We beg leave further to observe, that in the history of this voyage, Greenwich is made our first meridian, and from hence the longitude is reckoned E. and W. to 180 deg. each way. And our readers will also take notice, that whenever the initial letters, A. M. and P. M. of ante-meridianum, and post-meridianum, are used, the former signifies the forenoon, and the latter the afternoon of the same day.

A copy of the above instructions we transmitted to Captain Furneaux, inclosed with Capt. Cook's orders, in which he appointed, should the two ships be separated, the island of Madeira for the first place of rendezvous; Port Praya for the second; the Cape of Good Hope for the third; and New Zealand for the fourth.

While we remained at Plymouth, our astronomers, Mr. Wales, and Mr. Bayley, made observations on Drake's Island; when the latitude was found to be 50 deg. 21 min. 30 sec. N. and the longitude 4 deg. 20 min. W. of Greenwich; whereby the true time for putting the time-pieces and watches in motion was ascertained. This was done on the 13th of July, and they were set a-going, in the presence of the two astronomers, Capt. Furneaux, Capt. Cook, and the two first lieutenants of the ships. These had each of them keys of the boxes which contained the watches, and were always to be present at the winding them up, and comparing the one with the other, unless prevented by indisposition. This day, the ships crews, according to the custom of the navy, received two months wages in advance. As a further encouragement, and that they might provide necessaries for the voyage, they were likewise paid the wages due to them to the 28th of the preceding May.

On Sunday the 12th of July, the Resolution broke from her moorings in the Sound, and was adrift together with the transport buoy to which she was fastened. All hands were on deck instantly, the cables were cleared, and the sails spread. We passed the Adventure, and came to an anchor, after having escaped the very apparent danger of being dashed against the rocks which are under the fort. This favourable event was looked upon by our seamen as an omen to the success of the voyage. It was undoubtedly an instance of the care of Divine Providence, exerted for our protection in so critical a moment. Indeed the whole of our voyage, equally with this circumstance, demonstrates, that a divine power was absolutely necessary to protect us in times of danger, and to give us a safe return.

On Monday the 13th at six o'clock, A. M. the two ships sailed from Plymouth Sound, in company, and passed the Eddystone, which is a lofty, well-contrived tower, of the utmost advantage to navigation and commerce. As we stood off shore, the wind increased, and the billows rolled higher and higher. Most of the seamen both old and young were affected with sickness. On the 20th, we fell in with Cape Ortegal on the coast

of Galicia. The country appears hilly, and the tops of the hills are covered with wood. The sea now grew perfectly calm, and the prospect which surrounded us was very delightful. When in sight of Cape Finisterre, bearing W. S. W. seven or eight leagues, we were met by a small French Tartan from Marseilles, freighted with flour from Ferrol and Corunna. We obtained from them a small supply of fresh water, which we much wanted, having been obliged to subsist on bread and our wine. On the 22d, in the afternoon, we passed two Spanish men of war, one of which fired a shot at the Adventure to bring her to; but on hailing her, and being told we were king's ships, made a proper apology, and very politely took leave, wishing us a good voyage. On Wednesday, the 29th, about nine at night, we anchored in Funchiale road, in the island of Madeira. After having saluted the garrison with eleven guns, and they had returned the compliment, we went on shore, accompanied by the two Forsters, and were conducted by Mr. Sills, a gentleman from the vice-consul, to the house of Mr. Loughnans, a considerable English merchant, who assisted us with every accommodation the island and his house afforded, during our stay. Here the officers and private men furnished themselves with such stocks of wine as they could conveniently purchase.

The Madeira, or Madera islands are only three in number; namely, Madeira, properly so called; the island of Puerto, or Porto Santo; and Ilha Deserta, or the Desolate Isle. They are situated to the N. of the Salvages, and in the Atlantic ocean, between thirty-two and thirty-three deg. and seventeen and eighteen deg. W. longitude, two hundred and fifty miles N. by E. from Teneriff, three hundred and sixty from Cape Cantin on the coast of Africa, and three hundred N. of the island of Faro. They were thus named from the principal of them, which was called by the Portuguese Madeira, signifying a wood or forest, from its being overgrown with trees. They were first discovered by an English gentleman, and many years after by the Portuguese; and as there is something extremely singular in both these occurrences, but more particularly the first, we shall, for the entertainment of our readers, relate the circumstances attending it.

In the reign of Edward III. king of England, a young gentleman, named Robert Machin, conceived a violent passion for Ann D'Arset, a beautiful and accomplished lady of a noble family. Machin, with respect to birth and fortune, was inferior to the lady; but his personal qualifications overcame every scruple on that account, and she rewarded his attachment with a reciprocal affection. Her friends, however, beheld the young gentleman in a different light; they fancied their blood would be contaminated by an alliance with one of a lower rank, and therefore determined to sacrifice the happiness of the young lady, to the hereditary pride of blood, and their own mercenary and interested motives. In consequence of these ideas, a warrant was procured from the king, under the sanction of which Machin was apprehended, and kept in close confinement, till the object of his affections was married to a nobleman, whose chief merit lay in his honorary title and large possessions; and immediately after the nuptial ceremony was over, the peer took his beautiful bride with him to a strong castle which he had in the neighbourhood of Bristol, and then the unfortunate lover was set at liberty.

After being released from his cruel confinement, Machin was acquainted that his mistress had been compelled to give her hand to another. This rendered him almost frantic, and he vowed to revenge the violence done to the lady, and the injury which he himself had sustained; and with this view, imparted his design to some of his friends and companions, who engaged to accompany him to Bristol, and assist him in whatever enterprise he undertook. Accordingly one of his comrades contrived to get himself hired by the nobleman as a servant; and by that means being introduced into the family, he soon found an opportunity to let the lady know the sentiments and intentions of her lover

when she fully entered to comply with what he solicited their design than usual, which the lord might otherwise have treated as a mere permission to benefit of her health granted. This point taken advantage of, he was accompanied by one of his companions, he has always to attend her.

Matters being thus usual, when her attendants who waited at the three immediately after the ship that lay at the board: and Machin on board, immediately set sail, instead of all on board being in a wind blowing hard the next morning, she was driven into a condition, they abandoned their flight. Without a pilot, a quite devoid of hope, a space of thirteen days at the fourteenth day could desire something appearance of land, great joy they could their pleasure; how by the reflection, that plainly perceived it whole nature and knowledge of. Soon from the sloop, in the country; when, they highly commended time believed there was

The lover and his then landed, leaving The country appeared and dales, shaded with many clear meandering birds of different species, arms, and hands, several kinds of wilding any violence to through several woods meadow admirably finely enamelled with green with a meandering stream in the midst of spreading tree, the birds repose under its shade would afford them food. They at length attended beneath this tree, through the boughs from the neighbouring huts, or arbour, agreeably in this pleasant excursions into admiring its strange pictures. Their happiness, however, was not long continued; for one night N. E. which tore the her to sea. The crew of Morocco, who whole crew was made Machin and his companions the next morning, they and was gone to the plunged them into the sea. The lady, thus afflicted, she had no other relief, by sad presages

when she fully entered into all his projects, and promised to comply with whatever he should propose. To facilitate their designs, the lady appeared more cheerful than usual, which lulled asleep every suspicion that her lord might otherwise have entertained; she also entreated permission to ride out daily to take the air for the benefit of her health, which requested her consent easily granted. This point being gained, she did not fail to take advantage of it, by riding out every morning accompanied by one servant only, which was her lover's companion, he having been previously pitched upon always to attend her by her own contrivance.

Matters being thus prepared, the one day rode out as usual, when her attendant conducted her to his friend, who waited at the sea side to receive her. They all three immediately entered a boat, and soon reached a ship that lay at some distance ready to receive them on board: and Machin, having the object of his wishes on board, immediately, with the assistance of his associates, set sail, intending to proceed to France; but all on board being ignorant of maritime affairs, and the wind blowing a hard gale, they missed their port, and the next morning, to their astonishment, found themselves driven into the main ocean. In this miserable condition, they abandoned themselves to despair, and committed their fates to the mercy of the waves. Without a pilot, almost destitute of provisions, and quite devoid of hope, they were tossed about for the space of thirteen days. At length, when the morning of the fourteenth day began to dawn, they fancied they could descry something very near them, that had the appearance of land; and when the sun rose, to their great joy they could distinctly perceive it was such. Their pleasure; however, was in some measure lessened by the reflection, that it was a strange country; for they plainly perceived it was covered with a variety of trees, whose nature and appearance they had not the least knowledge of. Soon after this, some of them landed from the sloop, in order to make their observations on the country; when, returning soon after to the ship, they highly commended the place, but at the same time believed there were no inhabitants in it.

The lover and his mistress, with some of his friends, then landed, leaving the rest to take care of the ship. The country appeared beautifully diversified with hills and dales, shaded with various trees, and watered by many clear meandering streams. The most beautiful birds of different species perched upon their heads, arms, and hands, unapprehensive of danger; and several kinds of wild beasts approached, without offering any violence to them. After having penetrated through several woody recesses, they entered a fine meadow admirably incircled with a border of laurels, finely enamelled with various flowers, and happily watered with a meandering crystal rivulet. Upon an eminence in the midst of this meadow, they saw a lofty spreading tree, the beauty of which invited them to repose under its shade, and partake of the shelter it would afford them from the piercing rays of the sun. They at length attempted to make a temporary residence beneath this tree; and, providing themselves with boughs from the neighbouring woods, they built several small huts, or arbours. They passed their time very agreeably in this place, from whence they made frequent excursions into the neighbouring country, admiring its strange productions and various beauties. Their happiness, however, was of no very long continuance; for one night a terrible storm arose from the N. E. which tore the ship from her anchor, and drove her to sea. The crew were obliged to submit to the mercy of the elements, when they were driven to the coast of Morocco, where the ship being stranded, the whole crew was made captives by the Moors.

Machin and his companions, having missed the sloop the next morning, they concluded she had foundered, and was gone to the bottom. This new calamity plunged them into the deepest melancholy, and so greatly affected the lady, that she could not support herself under it. She had indeed before continually fed her grief, by sad presages of the enterprize's ending in some

fatal catastrophe to all concerned; but the shock of the late disaster struck her dumb; so that she expired in three days afterwards, in the most bitter agonies. The death of the lady affected Machin to such a degree, that he survived her but four days, notwithstanding the utmost endeavours of his companions to afford him consolation. Previous to his death, he begged them to place his body in the same grave with her's, which they had made at the foot of an altar, erected under the beautiful lofty tree before-mentioned. They afterwards placed upon it a large wooden cross; and near that an inscription, drawn up by Machin himself, containing a succinct account of the whole adventure; and concluded with a request, that if any Christians should come thither to settle, that they would build and dedicate a church to Jesus Christ upon that spot. The remaining companions of Machin, after his death, determined to attempt returning to England in the sloop, which had been so well secured near the shore, as not to be in the least damaged by the storm which had driven away the ship. But, happening to take the same course the others had been forced upon, they unfortunately arrived in like manner upon some part of the coast of Morocco, where they met with exactly the same fate, being seized in a similar manner, and carried to the same prison. Here they met with several other Christian slaves, besides their own companions; particularly one John de Morales, a Spaniard of Seville. This man was an excellent sailor, and took a peculiar delight in hearing the English captives rehearse their adventures, by which means he learnt the situation and particular marks of this new discovered country, which he took care to retain in his memory.

In process of time, John I. king of Portugal, having entered into a war with the Moors, passed over into Africa with a formidable army; and in the year 1415 laid siege to and took Ceuta. In this expedition, he was accompanied by his sons, one of whom, prince Henry, took great delight in the study of the mathematics, particularly geography and navigation. Upon this occasion, they had a great opportunity of conversing with the Moors and African Jews; and informing himself, by their means, of the situation of several foreign countries, the seas about them, their coasts, &c. Hence grew an insatiable thirst for making new conquests; and from this time he was determined to devote his attention to the discovery of unknown countries. In consequence of which resolution, he retired, after the reduction of Ceuta, to the Algarves, where he found a new town within a league of Cape St. Vincent, erected a fort to defend it, and determined to send out ships from thence upon discoveries. The person he intended to employ as chief commander, upon these occasions, was a gentleman of extraordinary abilities, named Juan Gonfalso Zarco, who became famous not only for his maritime discoveries, but for being the first person who introduced the use of artillery on board ships. In 1418 he discovered Puerto Santo, one of the Madeiras; and in 1420 he passed the straits, and surveyed a considerable extent of the coast of Africa. In the mean time, a Spanish prince dying, left by his will a large sum of money for the purpose of redeeming Spanish Christians, who were kept as slaves in Morocco. Terms being agreed upon between the emperor of Morocco and the commissioners, for the redemption of those captives, a Spanish ship was sent to Morocco to fetch home the redeemed Christians, among whom was John de Morales before-mentioned. On the return of this ship to Spain, it happened to fall in with the squadron commanded by Juan Gonfalso Zarco, who was, as we have just noticed, then passing the straits to make observations on the coast of Africa. Spain and Portugal being at this time at war, Juan Gonfalso Zarco made prize of the Spanish ship; but finding it contained only redeemed captives, he was touched with compassion at the miseries they had already suffered during their slavery, and generously dismissed them, taking out only John de Morales, whom he found to be a very intelligent person, an able sailor, and an expert pilot.

When

When Morales was informed of the reason of his detention, and the discoveries that the Portuguese were upon, he was mightily rejoiced, and offered voluntarily to enter into the service of prince Henry. He then told the Portuguese commander of the island which had been lately discovered by the English, related the story of the two unfortunate lovers, and every other circumstance, which, during his captivity, he had heard from Machin's companions. Gonfalvo was so delighted with his relation, that he tacked about, and returned to the new town which prince Henry had built, called Terra Nabal. On his arrival, he introduced Morales to the prince, when the Spaniard again repeated all that he had before told to Juan Gonfalvo. The prince thought this worthy of becoming a national affair; and therefore, communicating the whole to the king his father, and the Portuguese ministry, they determined to pursue the discovery; and for that purpose fitted out a good ship, well manned and provided, and a sloop to go with oars, when occasion required; and Juan Gonfalvo was appointed to the whole command. Some Portuguese, on the discovery of Puerto Santo a short time before, had been left by Gonfalvo on that island; and judging by the account of Morales, concerning the situation of the island they were in quest of, that it could not be far from Puerto Santo, he determined to sail thither; where when he arrived, the Portuguese whom he had left behind, informed him, that they had observed to the north-east a thick impenetrable darkness, which constantly hung upon the sea, and extended itself upward to the heavens. That they never knew it to be diminished; but a strange noise, which they could not account for, was often heard from thence.

John de Morales appeared to be convinced that this was the island they were in search of; and Juan Gonfalvo was inclined to coincide with him; but all the rest were terrified at the accounts they had heard. It was therefore concluded to remain at Puerto Santo till the change of the moon, to see what effect that would have upon the shade, or whether the noise would cease. But perceiving no alteration of any kind, the panic increased among the generality of the adventurers. Morales, however, stood firm to his opinion of that being the island they were looking for; and very sensibly observed, that, according to the accounts he had received from the English, the ground was covered over with lofty shady trees; it was no wonder, therefore, that it should be exceeding damp, and that the humid vapours might exhale from it by the power of the sun, which, spreading themselves to the sky, occasioned the dark clouds they saw; and with respect to the noise, that might be occasioned by certain currents dashing against the rocks on the coast of the island.

Notwithstanding these obstacles, Juan Gonfalvo determined to proceed; and, setting sail the next day, he at length made land; and the fear of those who had been all along terrified, now vanished. The first point they saw, they named St. Lawrence's Point: doubling this, they found to the southward, rising land, whither Morales and others were sent in a sloop to reconnoitre the coast; and came to a bay which seemed to answer the description given by the English. Here they landed; and finding the cross and inscription over the grave of the two lovers, they returned to Juan Gonfalvo with an account of their success; whereupon he immediately landed, and took possession of the place, in the name of John I. king of Portugal, and prince Henry his son. Having built an altar near the grave, they searched about the island, in order to discover if it contained any cattle; but not finding any, they coasted westward, till they came to a place where four fine rivers ran into the sea, of the waters of which Juan Gonfalvo filled some bottles, to carry as a present to prince Henry. Proceeding farther, they came to a fine valley, which was intersected by a beautiful river, and after that to a pleasant spot covered with trees, some of which being fallen down, Juan Gonfalvo ordered a cross to be erected of the timber, and called the place Santa Cruz, or Holy Cross. After this, they began to

look out for a place proper to fix their residence in while they stayed: and at length found a fine tract of land, not so woody as the rest of the country, but covered over with fennel, which, in the Portuguese language, is called Funcho; from thence the town of Funchal, or Funchiale, took its name, which was afterwards built on the same spot.

Juan Gonfalvo, after having viewed other parts of the island, and finding daily cause for new admiration of the beauties continually discovered, returned to Portugal, and arrived at Lisbon in the end of August 1420, without having lost a single man in the whole enterprise: and a day of audience being appointed for him to make his report of his voyage, the king gave the name of Madeira to the new discovered island, on account of the great quantity of excellent wood found upon it. Soon after an order was made for Juan Gonfalvo to return to Madeira in the ensuing spring, with the title of captain-governor of Madeira, to which title the heir of his family at present adds that of count. He accordingly set sail on his second voyage in May 1421, taking with him the greatest part of his family, and arriving at Madeira he cast anchor in the road, till then called the English Port; but Gonfalvo, in honour of the first discoverer, then called it Puerto de Machino, from which name it was corrupted to Machico, which it now bears. He then ordered the large spreading beautiful tree before-mentioned (under which Machin and his companions had taken up their residence) to be cut down, and a small church to be erected with the timber; which, agreeable to Machin's request, he dedicated to Jesus Christ, and intersected the pavement of the choir with the bones of the two unfortunate lovers. He soon after laid the foundation of the town of Funchal, which afterwards became famous; and the altar of the new wooden church was dedicated to St. Catharine, by his wife Constantia, who was with him.

John I. king of Portugal, dying, his eldest son and successor Duarte, in consideration of the great sums of money expended in peopling this island, by prince Henry his brother, gave him the revenues of it for life. He likewise gave the spiritualities of it to the order of Christ, which endowment Alonzo XV. afterwards confirmed.

The island of Madeira, properly so called, is composed of one continued hill of a wonderful height, extending from east to west: the declivity of which, on the south side, is cultivated and interspersed with vineyards; and in the midst of this slope, the merchants have fixed their country seats, which help to render the prospect very agreeable. The air is more moderate than that in the Canary Islands, and the soil more fertile in corn, wine, sugar and fruits. Fine springs abound almost in every part, besides which there are eight good rivers. The great plenty of water first suggested the hint to prince Henry of sending sugar canes to Madeira from Italy, which greatly improved through the increase of heat, and produced more than in their native soil.

This island affords plenty of citrons, bananas, peaches, apricots, plumbs, cherries, figs and walnuts; with oranges of all sorts, and lemons of a prodigious size. Fruit-trees from Europe thrive here in perfection; and the natives are said to make the best sweetmeats of any in the world, and particularly greatly excel in preserving citrons and oranges, and in making marmalade and perfumed pastes, which greatly excel those of Genoa. The sugar made here is very fine, and has the smell of violets; this, indeed, is said to be the first place in the West where this manufacture was set on foot, and from thence was carried to America; but afterwards the sugar-plantations at Brazil prospering extremely, the greatest part of the sugar-canes in this island were pulled up, and vineyards planted in their stead, that produce excellent wines, which, the author of Lord Anson's voyage observes, seems to be designed by Providence to exhilarate and comfort the inhabitants of the torrid zone. The cedar-tree here is very strait, tall, and thick, and has a rich scent. The wood of the nasso tree is of a red rose colour; here are also the mastic

and gum-dragon a variety of other Europe and Africa curiosity; for which to fade; it grows always appears abundance; and a vast quantity of Indeed the soil is vines, that the growth of the bunch length. Here a of the colour of another fort is a former. A third is, it being of the in Teneriff; and is much inferior but mixed with colour and strength Madeira wines, heat of the sun, the bung is taken usually make about thousand of which ed, the greatest The wines that not equal in good West-Indies; and ened, if they re product of each between the pro and presses the ever, that while The people here

The principal Funchiale, and island at the bottom 33 min. 34 sec. made. We define tions, and Mr. W Mr. Ke. 3d's wa Funchiale, 17 de ka it is fortified b non, besides a e standing in the shore. This town the only place wh and even here the and a violent fire good time for land on. The town i the inhabitants are great number of settled there, who some English pro negroes and mul streets are strai houses are pretty built beautiful th pictures, and plat upon business th

Those women go to church but there be several before the mother her face; but the By their side walk of beads in his ha ger. This town whole island unde fragan to the arch the island also reli In the island a chico, which has Holy Cross, and other town is nar lutely contained th mistry of Jesuit:

and gum-dragon trees; and besides fruit-trees there are a variety of other trees, which are common both to Europe and Africa. The everlasting-flower is a great curiosity; for when it is plucked it cannot be perceived to fade; it grows like sage, flowers like camomile, and always appears fresh and blooming. Vines are in abundance; and from the grapes which they produce a vast quantity of the most delicious wines are made. Indeed the soil is so well adapted for the cultivation of vines, that the grapes exceed the leaves in number, and some of the bunches are sixteen or eighteen inches in length. Here are several sorts of these wines; one is of the colour of champagne, but is not much valued; another sort is a white wine, much stronger than the former. A third sort is excellent, and resembles malmsey; it being of the same nature with that which grows in Teneriff; and another resembles Alicante wine, but is much inferior to it in taste, and is never drank alone, but mixed with the other sorts, to which it gives a colour and strength to keep. It is observable of the Madeira wines, that they are greatly improved by the heat of the sun, when exposed to it in the barrel, after the bung is taken out. In the whole island they annually make about twenty-eight thousand pipes, eight thousand of which are drank there, and the rest exported, the greatest part being sent to the West-Indies. The wines that are brought directly to England, are not equal in goodness to such as are first carried to the West-Indies; and their flavour is exceedingly heightened, if they remain some time in Barbadoes. The product of each vineyard is usually divided equally between the proprietor, and the person who gathers and presses the grapes; it commonly happens, however, that while the merchant is rich, the gatherer is poor. The people here trade among themselves, or barter.

The principal town in the whole island is Funchal, or Funchale, and is seated in the south part of the island at the bottom of a large bay, in latitude 32 deg. 33 min. 34 sec. N. and in 17 deg. 12 min. W. longitude. We deduced the longitude from lunar observations, and Mr. Wales reduced the same for the observatory at Greenwich, which makes the longitude of Funchale, 17 deg. 10 min. 14 sec. W. Towards the sea it is fortified by a high wall, with a battery of cannon, besides a castle on the Loos, which is a rock standing in the water at a small distance from the shore. This town is the only place of trade, and indeed the only place where it is possible for a boat to land; and even here the beach is covered with large stones, and a violent surf continually beats upon it. The only good time for landing is before the sea-breeze comes on. The town is very populous, but the majority of the inhabitants are not natural-born Portuguese; for a great number of English and French Roman catholics settled there, who live after the Portuguese manner; some English protestants, and a prodigious number of negroes and mulattoes, both freemen and slaves. The streets are straight, and drawn by a line, and their houses are pretty well built; their churches are well built beautiful structures, enriched with gilding, fine pictures, and plate, and people are said to meet in them upon business that has little relation to devotion.

Those women who have no domestic chapels, never go to church but on Sundays and holidays; when, if there be several daughters, they walk two and two before the mother, each having a large thin veil over her face; but their breasts and shoulders are quite bare. By their side walks a venerable old man, with a string of beads in his hand, and armed with a sword and dagger. This town is the see of a bishop, who has the whole island under his spiritual jurisdiction, and is suffragan to the archbishop of Lisbon. The governor of the island also resides here.

In the island are two other towns; one called Machico, which has a church named Santa Cruz, or the Holy Cross, and a convent of Bernardine-friars; the other town is named Moncerito. In short, the island lately contained thirty-six parishes, a college, and a monastery of jesuits, five other monasteries, eighty-two

No. 13.

hermitages, and five hospitals. There are several fencibles and castles about the country, in which the merechants chiefly reside.

The ordinary food of the poorer people, in the time of vintage, is little else than bread and rich grapes; and were it not for their abstemiousness, fevers in the hot seasons would be frequent; therefore even the rich, in the hot months, are very moderate in their diet and drinking. The generality of the people affect great gravity in their deportment, and usually dress in black; but they cannot dispense with the spada and dagger, which even servants wear; so that you may see a footman waiting at table with a sword at least a yard long, and a great basket hilt to it. The houses in general are plain, as the inhabitants put themselves at no great expence in furnishing them. The windows are secured by wooden shutters at night, and instead of being glazed, are latticed. With respect to their marriages, affection is never considered, the principal enquiries are into family descent and circumstances; the women are prohibited from marrying Englishmen, unless the latter consent to embrace the Roman catholic religion. Murders are very frequent, on account of the great numbers of places deemed sanctuaries, and the ease with which a murderer can thereby screen himself from justice. But if the criminal is taken before he can reach the sanctuary, the punishment is only either banishment or imprisonment, both which, by a pecuniary composition, may be evaded.

Here are a great number of clergy, who are generally rich; but none who are descended from Moors or Jews are admitted to take orders. The churches are made repositories for the dead, and the corpse is curiously dressed and adorned; yet in the interment, store of lime is used, in order to consume the body as speedily as possible, which usually happens in a fortnight: so that there is then room for another corpse. The bodies of protestants are not allowed to be buried, but must be thrown into the sea; nevertheless they are permitted to be interred in consecrated ground, provided a handsome sum of money is paid to the clergy.

Puerto Santo is generally termed one of the Madeira islands, and lies to the north-east of Madeira, in 32 deg. 30 min. N. latitude, and in 16 deg. 5 min. W. longitude from London, and is only about 15 miles in circumference. It was discovered in the year 1412, by two Portuguese gentlemen, one of whom was Don Juan Goncalvo, sent by prince Henry, son to John I. king of Portugal, to double Cape Bajador, in order to make farther discoveries; but being surpris'd by a violent storm, were driven out to sea, and, when they gave themselves over for lost, had the happiness to find this island, which proving a safe asylum to them, they called it Puerto Santo, or the Holy Port.

This island produces wheat and other corn, just sufficient for the support of the inhabitants; here also are plenty of oxen, wild hogs, and a vast number of rabbits. There are trees which produce the gum called dragon's blood, and likewise a little honey and wax, which are extremely good. It has properly no harbour, but there is good mooring in the road, which affords a convenient retreat for ships going to Africa, or coming from the Indies; so that merchantmen often stop there, which affords considerable profit to the inhabitants, who are descended from the Portuguese, to whom the island is subject. The inhabitants are all Roman catholics, being under the spiritual jurisdiction of the bishop of Funchal in Madeira. They would live a very quiet life, were it not for the pirates, who often pay them troublesome visits. In the year 1617, they landed here, and carried off six hundred and sixty-three prisoners, besides plundering the place.

There is a little island called the Desart, which produces only orchilla-weed, and some goats are on it: it lies on the east-side of Madeira, at about six leagues distance.

On Saturday the 1st of August, having stowed on board a supply of water, wine, and other necessaries, we set sail, lost sight of Madeira, and stood to the

2 F

southward,

southward, with a gentle gale at N. E. On Tuesday the 4th, we saw the pleasant island of Palma, bearing S. S. W. distant about three or four leagues. This is one of the Canary isles. It may be seen, on account of its height, twelve or fourteen leagues at sea, and lies in latitude 28 deg. 38 min. N. and in 17 deg. 58 min. W. longitude. On Wednesday, the 5th, we passed the isle of Ferro, at the distance of fourteen leagues.

The island of Palma lies about fifty miles to the W. of Teneriffe, and two hundred W. of the continent of Africa. It is about thirty miles long, twenty broad, and seventy in circuit. On the N. E. part of the island, within land, is a high and spacious mountain, steep on all sides. This is called La Caldera, or the cauldron, from a hollow like that on the pike of Teneriffe. The summit is about two leagues in circumference, and on the inside the cauldron descends gradually from thence to the bottom, which is a space of about thirty acres. On the declivity of the inside spring several rivulets, which joining together at the bottom, issue in one stream through a passage to the outside of the mountain from which this brook descends; and having run some distance from thence, turns two sugar-mills. The water of this stream is unwholesome, on account of its being mixed with some water of a pernicious quality in the cauldron; all the inside of which abounds with herbage, and is covered with palms, pitch-pine, laurel, lignum rhodium, and retamas; which last have in this island a yellow bark, and grow to the size of large trees; but in the others they are only shrubs. The people here take great care not to let the he-goats feed on the leaves of the retama, on account of their breeding a stone in the bladder, which is mortal. Two rivulets spring on the outside of the cauldron; one of these runs northward to the village of St. Andrew, and turns two sugar-mills, and the other runs to the town of Palmas, which lies to the eastward. These are the only rivulets or streams of any consequence in the island: on which account the natives build tanks, or square reservoirs with planks of pitch-pine, which they maketight with caulking. These they fill with the torrents of rain-water that in the winter season rush down from the mountains, and preserve it for themselves and cattle: but the sheep, goats, and hogs, in places at a distance from the rivulets, feed almost all the year round on the roots of fern and asphodil, and therefore have little or no need of water, there being moisture enough in those roots to supply the want of that element. Though the south quarter of the island is most destitute of water, yet there is a medicinal well of hot water so close to the sea-shore, that the tide flows into it at full sea.

At Uguer is a cave, that has a long narrow entrance, so straight that people pass through it backwards, with their face to the mouth of the cave; but after they have got through this passage, they enter a spacious grotto, where water distils from between the large flakes of slate stones that hang from the roof; the least blow given to these, resounds with a noise like thunder through the cave. In the district of Tisuya is a mountain, which appears to have been removed by an earthquake from its original situation. The natives have a tradition, that the spot on which it now stands was a plain, and the most fertile spot in the whole island, till it was destroyed by the burning lava, and the fall of the mountain. Indeed, the effects of volcanoes are to be seen in almost every part of the island; for the channels where the burning matter, melted ores, and calcined stones and ashes ran, may be easily distinguished by a curious observer. Nunno de Penna, in his Historical Memoirs, relates, that on the 13th of November 1677, a little after sun-set, the earth shook for thirteen leagues with a dreadful noise, that continued five days, during which it opened in several places; but the greatest gap was upon the mountain of La Caldera, a mile and a half from the sea, from whence proceeded a great fire, which cast up stones and pieces of rock. The like happened in several places thereabouts, and in less than a quarter of an hour were twenty-eight gaps about the foot of the mountain, which cast forth abundance of flames and burning stones. The

same person adds, that on the 20th of November following, there was a second eruption of the same mount, from whence came forth stones and fire, with great earthquakes and thunders for several days, so that black cinders were taken up at seven leagues distance: the adjacent ground was entirely wasted, and the inhabitants forced to quit their dwellings. The last volcano that happened in this island was in 1750, when one of these rivers of fire ran, with great rapidity, from the mountains towards the town of Palmas, and discharged itself about a mile to the northward of the town, but we have not learnt that any considerable eruption hath happened since that time.

If we take a view of Palma at the distance of three leagues off at sea, the mountains seem full of gutters or beds formed by torrents of rain water; but these only appear little from their height and distance; for we find them to be large vallies, abounding with woods, on a nearer approach. In many places on the shore of this and the other islands, is found the black shining sand used to throw upon writing, to prevent its blotting. It appears to have been cast out of volcanoes, for the load-stone, when held near it, will draw up every grain of it.

The air, weather, and winds are nearly the same as at Teneriffe and Canaria, except that the westerly winds and rain are more frequent at Palma, on account of its lying more to the westward and northward, and on that account is not so far within the verge of the N. E. trade winds as those islands; whence it is particularly exposed to the S. wind, which mostly prevails in the latitudes adjacent to those of the N. E. trade-winds, as well as to variable winds from other quarters.

The climate here, and in Teneriffe, Canaria, and Gomera, differs greatly, according as a person lives in the mountains, or near the sea shore. During a calm, the heat seems almost intolerable near the shore, in the months of July, August and September; but the air is at the same time quite fresh and pleasant on the mountains. In the middle of winter the houses upon these, some of which are near the clouds, must be extremely cold, and the natives keep fires burning in their habitations all day long; but this is far from being the case near the sea, where they use fires only in their kitchens. The summits of all the Canary isles, except Lancerota and Fuerteventura, are generally covered with snow for eight months in the year. The summit of Palma formerly abounded with trees, but a great drought in 1545 destroyed them all; and though others began to spring up some time after, they were destroyed by the rabbits and other animals, which finding no pasture below, went up there, and destroyed all the young shrubs and trees, so that the upper part of the island is at present quite bare and desolate. Before the trees and shrubs were destroyed, a great deal of manna fell there, which the natives gathered and sent to Spain. The rabbits were first brought to Palma by Don Pedro Fernandez de Lago, the learned lieutenant-general of Teneriffe, and have since increased in a surprising manner.

Palma affords nearly the same productions as Canaria, but a great quantity of sugar is made here, particularly on the S. W. side of the island. The principal port is called by the same name, and is situated on the south side of the island. The road is about a quarter of a mile from the shore, where vessels generally ride in fifteen or twenty fathoms water; and with good anchors and cables, notwithstanding the easterly winds, they may ride with great safety in all the winds that blow in this part of the world. The town is large, containing two parish churches, several convents, with many private buildings, though they are neither so good nor so large as those in the city of Palmas in Canaria, or of the towns in Teneriffe. Near the mole is a castle or battery, mounted with some pieces of cannon, for the defence of the ships in the bay, and to prevent the landing of an enemy. There are no other towns of note in Palma; but many villages, the chief of which is called St. Andrew, where there are four engines for the making of sugar; but the land here-

abouts

abouts is very poor, from the island of necessary articles.

For the amusement here add an account particular description of Canaria, Teneriffe, persons, habit, diet

The Spaniards of the French the most westerly thirty miles long, circumference. Th in the center of reckoning the long pike of Teneriffe; reckon their first own country, as the from Paris, &c. I veiy a more distant is so many leagues of his own country, a distant land.

This island of Ferro from the sea-shore a distant extremely distant thus far, the veiling thus far, the is tolerably level and kinds of trees and herbs, and flowers, the bees thrive and mul manner, and excellent are but few springs of the scarcity of water do not drink in summer season, by digging up The great cattle are distils from the leaves made mention of this as miraculous; which but the author of the Conquest of the Canary count of it, which was tion of the curious.

In the cliff or steep island is surrounded mences at the sea, an cliff, where it joins, nated by the steep grows a tree called in bitants garlic, or sac preserved entire, so stantly distil so great ficient to furnish d Hierno, nature havin drought of the island and stands by itself: circumference; its h of the highest branfence of all the b and twenty feet. Th ed, and the lowest be the ground. Its fru like the kernel of a more aromatic; and laurel, but are larger, come forth in a pers always remains green fastens on many of erwoven, and some are at a small distan the trunk are two larg or rather one cistern of feet square, and sixe tains water for the o the other that which A cloud or mist ris which the fourth and above-mentioned ste

abouts is very poor, so that the inhabitants are supplied from the island of Teneriffe with grain and other necessary articles.

For the amusement of uninformed readers, we shall here add an account of the island of Ferro, and also a particular description of the present natives of the islands of Canaria, Teneriffe, Palma, Gomera, and Ferro; their persons, habit, diet, buildings, manners, customs, &c.

The Spaniards call the island of Ferro, Hierro, and the French the *isle de Fer*, or the island of Iron: it is the most westerly of all the Canaries, and is about thirty miles long, fifteen broad, and seventy-five in circumference. The French navigators formerly placed in the center of this island their first meridian for reckoning the longitude, as the Dutch did theirs at the pike of Teneriffe; but at present most geographers reckon their first meridian from the capital of their own country, as the English from London, the French from Paris, &c. It being more convenient, and conveying a more distinct idea to say, that such a place is so many leagues distant E. or W. from the capital of his own country, than to reckon the longitude from a distant land.

This island of Ferro rises on all sides steep and craggy from the sea-shore above a league, so as to render the ascent extremely difficult and fatiguing; but after travelling thus far, the rest of the island will be found to be tolerably level and fruitful, abounding with many kinds of trees and shrubs, and producing better grass, herbs, and flowers, than any of the other islands, whence bees thrive and multiply here in a very extraordinary manner, and excellent honey is made by them. There are but few springs in the whole island; and on account of the scarcity of water, the sheep, goats, and swine, do not drink in summer, but quench their thirst at that season, by digging up and chewing the roots of fern. The great cattle are watered at a place where water distils from the leaves of a tree. Many authors have made mention of this tree, some of whom represent it as miraculous; while others deny its very existence: but the author of the history of the Discovery and Conquest of the Canary Islands, gives a particular account of it, which we shall here insert for the satisfaction of the curious.

In the cliff or steep rocky ascent by which the whole island is surrounded, is a narrow gutter which commences at the sea, and is continued to the summit of the cliff, where it joins, or coincides, with a valley terminated by the steep front of a rock, on the top of which grows a tree called in the language of the ancient inhabitants *garfe*, or *sacred*, which for many years has been preserved entire, sound, and fresh. Its leaves constantly distil so great a quantity of water, that it is sufficient to furnish drink to every living creature in Hierro, nature having provided this remedy for the drought of the island. It is distinct from other trees, and stands by itself: its trunk is about twelve spans in circumference; its height from the ground to the top of the highest branch is forty spans, and the circumference of all the branches together is one hundred and twenty feet. The branches are thick and extended, and the lowest begin about the height of an ell from the ground. Its fruit resembles an acorn, but tastes like the kernel of a pine apple, only it is softer, and more aromatic; and the leaves resemble those of the laurel, but are larger, wider, and more curved. These come forth in a perpetual succession, whence the tree always remains green. Near it grows a thorn, which fastens on many of its branches, with which it is interwoven, and some beech trees, bresos, and thorns, are at a small distance from it. On the north side of the trunk are two large tanks or cisterns of rough stone, or rather one cistern divided; each half being twenty feet square, and sixteen spans deep. One of these contains water for the drinking of the inhabitants, and the other that which they use for their cattle, washing, and the like purposes.

A cloud or mist rises from the sea every morning, which the south and easterly winds force against the above-mentioned steep cliff; when the cloud having

no vent but by the gutter, gradually ascends it, and advances slowly from thence to the extremity of the valley, and then rests upon the wide-spreading branches of the tree, from whence it distils in drops during the remainder of the day, in the same manner as water drips from the leaves of trees after a heavy shower of rain. This distillation is not peculiar to the tree, for the bresos which grow near it also drop water; but their leaves being only few and narrow, the quantity is so trifling, that though the natives save some of it, yet they make little account of any but what distils from the tree; which, together with the water of some springs, is sufficient to serve the natives and their cattle. It has been remarked, that this tree yields most water in those years when the easterly winds have most prevailed; for by them alone the clouds or mists are drawn hither from the sea. A person lives near the spot on which the tree grows, who is appointed by the council to take care of it and its water, and is allowed a certain salary, with a house to live in. He daily distributes to each family of the district seven vessels filled with water, besides what he gives to the principal persons of the island.

Mr. Glafs says, he is unable to determine whether the tree which yields water at present be the same here described, but justly observes, that it is probable there have been a succession of them. He himself did not see this tree, for this is the only island of all the Canaries which he did not visit; but he observes, that he has failed with the natives of Hierro, who, when questioned about the existence of this tree, answered in the affirmative; and takes notice, that trees yielding water are not peculiar to this island, since one of the same kind in the island of St. Thomas, in the gulf of Guiney, is mentioned by some travellers.

By reason of a scarcity of water, the soil, in some parts of this island, is very barren; but in others it is fertile, and produces all the necessary articles for the support of the inhabitants. The sheep, goats, and hogs, that are brought up in those parts distant from the rivulets, feed almost all the year round on the roots of fern and asphodil, and therefore have little occasion for water, as the want of that element is supplied by the great moisture that is naturally in those roots.

There is only one small town in this island, and the most distinguished building in it is a parish church. Many small villages are dispersed about the town, but there are not any of them that deserve a particular description.

Small cattle, brandy, honey, and orchilla weed, are the chief articles of the trade carried on by the inhabitants of this island.

As to the original natives of the island of Ferro, we are told by travellers, that before it was rendered subject to Spain they were of a middle stature, and clothed with the skins of beasts. The men wore a cloak of three sheep-skins sewed together, with the woolly side outwards in summer, and next their bodies in winter. The women also wore the same kind of cloak, besides which they had a petticoat, which reached down to the middle of their legs. They sewed their skins with thongs cut as fine as thread, and for needles used small bones sharpened. They wore nothing on their heads, and their long hair was made up into a number of small plaits. They had shoes made of the raw skins of sheep, hogs, or goats. These people had a grave turn of mind, for all their songs were on serious subjects, and set to slow plaintive tunes, to which they danced in a ring, joining hands, and sometimes jumping up in pairs, so regularly that they seemed to be united; they still practise in Ferro this manner of dancing. Their dwellings consisted of circular inclosures, formed by a stone wall without cement, each having one narrow entrance. On the inside they placed poles or spars against the wall, one end resting on the top, and the other extending a considerable distance to the ground; and these they covered with fern, or branches of trees. Each of these inclosures contained about twenty families. A bundle of fern, with goat-skin spread over it, served them for a bed, and for bed-cloaths and coverings.

master of the house, nor any of the company, chuse to take much notice of it. Mr. Glas was once invited to dine with a gentleman, where a Franciscan friar made one of the company; but no sooner had they begun to eat, than the friar asked him if he was a christian? He answered, that he hoped so. He was then desired to recite the Apostle's creed; but answering, that he knew nothing about it, the reverend father stared full in his face, and exclaimed, "O thou black ass!" Offended at this piece of ill manners, our author asked, What he meant by treating him in that manner? When the friar only answered by repeating the abuse; the master of the house endeavoured in vain to persuade him to give over; but as the person did not at that time understand Spanish so well as to express himself fluently, he arose and left the house, after telling the gentleman, that he saw he was unable to protect him from insults at his own table. They treat with chocolate and sweetmeats in the morning and evening visits; but in the winter evenings with snow-water. People sup between eight and nine, and retire to rest soon after. The diet of the common people consists of gossio, fruit, and wine, with salt fish brought from the coast of Barbary. Some think their being subject to the itch, is owing to their eating so much of this last food. In the summer season fresh fish is pretty plentiful, but more scarce and dear at other times of the year.

People of rank here have houses too stories high, which are handsome square buildings, of stone and mortar, with an open court in the middle like our public houses in England, and like them have balconies running round, which are on a level with the floor of the second story. The street-door is placed in the middle of the front of the house, and within that door is a second, the space between them being the breadth of the rooms of the house. The court-yard, which is on the outside, is large or small according to the size of the building, and is usually paved with flags, pebbles, or other stones. In the centre of the court is a square or circular stone-wall about four feet high, filled with earth, in which are commonly planted orange, banana, or other trees common in these parts. The lower story of each quarter of the house consists entirely of store-rooms, or cellars. The stairs leading to the second story usually begin at the right or left hand corner of the entrance of the court, and consist of two flights of steps, which lead into the gallery, from which one may enter any room on the second story. The principal apartments are generally in that quarter of the house facing the street, which contains a hall with an apartment at each end. These rooms are the whole breadth of the quarter, and the hall is twice the length of any of the apartments at its extremities. The windows of these rooms are formed of wooden lattices, curiously wrought; none of them looking inwards to the court; but they are all in the outside wall. Some great houses have balconies in the middle of the front, or the outside above the gate, equal with the floor of the second story; and some have a gallery which runs from one end of the front to the other, but the outside of the house has seldom any. They white-wash all the apartments; and those at the extremities of the great halls, with some of the rest, are lined with fine mats about six feet high, and the floor is sometimes covered with the same. The sides of the windows of all the rooms are lined with boards to prevent people's cloaths being whitened; for they commonly sit in the window, there being benches on each side of it for that purpose; and when the master of the house intends to shew a stranger respect, he always conducts him to the window, to converse with him. The great hall, and the walls of some of the apartments, are hung with paintings, representing the virgin, the twelve apostles, saints and martyrs, usually drawn as large as life, and distinguished by some circumstance of their history. Thus St. Peter is usually represented looking at a cock and weeping, and a great bunch of keys always hangs at his girdle. St. Anthony preaching to the fishes, is one of their favourite paintings. Their beds have seldom any curtains, for these they consider as receptacles for fleas and bugs, which

abound here extremely. They chiefly use mattresses spread on the floor upon fine mats; besides the sheets, there is a blanket and above that a silk quilt. The sheets, pillows, and quilt are frequently fringed or pinked, like the shrouds used for the dead with us. There is a place in a particular apartment, raised a step higher than the floor, covered with mats or carpets; and there the women generally sit together upon cushions, both to receive visits from their own sex, and give directions concerning their household affairs. The houses of the peasants and lower sort of people, though only one story high, are built of stone and lime, and the roofs are either thatched or tiled. These are generally neat, clean and commodious. Indeed there is but little dirt or dust in these islands to make them uncleanly; for the ground is mostly rocky, and seldom wet, from the almost continual fine weather.

The deportment of the natives is grave, but at the same time tempered with great quickness and sensibility; the women, in particular, are remarkable for their sprightliness, and vivacity of their conversation, which is said greatly to exceed that of the English, French, or northern nations. The great families in these islands would be highly offended should any one tell them, they are descended from the Moors, or even from the ancient inhabitants of these islands; yet it would not perhaps be difficult to prove, that most of their customs have been handed down to them from those people. The gentry boast much of their birth, and indeed, that they are descended from the best families in Spain, there is no reason to doubt.

They have the utmost contempt for the employment of a butcher, taylor, miller, or porter. It is not indeed very surprizing, that they should not have any great esteem for the profession of a butcher, or that the employment of a taylor should be considered as somewhat too effeminate for a man; but it is difficult to imagine why millers and porters should be despised, especially the former; but it must be considered, that the millers here are generally esteemed great thieves; and as the master of every family sends his own corn to be ground, unless it be narrowly watched, the miller will take too much toll. It is said when any criminal is to suffer death, and the executioner happens to be out of the way, the officers of justice have the power of seizing the first butcher, miller, or porter they can find, and of obliging him to discharge that office; such is their dislike to persons of these occupations. Mr. Glas, once touching at the island of Gomera to procure fresh water, hired some poor ragged fishermen to fill the water casks, and bring them on board; but some time after, going to the watering place to see what progress they had made, he found the casks full, and all ready for rolling down to the beach, with the fishermen standing by, talking together, as if they had nothing farther to do. He reprimanded them for their laziness in not dispatching the business in which he had employed them; when one of them, with a disdainful air, replied, "What do you take us to be, Sir? "Do you imagine we are porters? No, Sir, we are fishermen." Notwithstanding all his intreaties and promises of reward, he was unable to prevail upon any of them to roll the cask to the water side; but was at last obliged to hire porters, to do the business. But the gentry of these islands, though for the most part poor, yet are extremely polite and well bred, the very peasants and labouring people have a considerable share of good manners, with little of that surly rusticity which is too common among the lower class of people in England; yet they do not seem to be abashed in the presence of their superiors. A beggar asks charity of a gentleman, by saying, "For the love of God, Sir, please to give me half a rial;" and if the other gives him nothing, he returns, "For the love of God, I beg your worship's pardon," and then departs.

The common people and servants here are much addicted to private pillering, for which they are usually punished by being discharged the service, beaten, or imprisoned for a short time. Highway robberies are seldom or never known; but murder is more common

than in England; and they have no notion of duels, for they cannot imagine that because a man has the courage to fight, he thereby atones for the injury done to another, or that it ought to give him a right to do him a greater. When the murderer has killed a man, he flies to a church for refuge, till he can find an opportunity to escape to another island; and if he had been greatly provoked or injured by the deceased, and did not kill him designedly, every body will be ready to assist him to escape, except the near relations of the person who has lost his life; yet quarrels are far from being frequent here, which may be owing to the want of taverns and other public houses, their polite behaviour, the little intercourse there is between them, and their temperance in drinking. Persons of the lower class never fight in public, but if one person puts another into a violent passion, the injured party, if able, takes his revenge in the best manner he can, till he thinks he has had satisfaction, without any regard to the equity of the method he uses for this purpose.

The inhabitants of the Canary islands are in general extremely temperate; or at least, if they are otherwise, it is in private only; for nothing can be a greater disgrace there, than to be seen drunk; and a man who can be proved a drunkard, is not permitted to give evidence, or take his oath, in a court of judicature. Hence those that are fond of liquor, intoxicate themselves in their chambers, and then lie down, in order to sleep till they are sober. Those of all ranks in these islands are extremely amorous; but their notions of love are pretty singular, which may perhaps be attributed to the want of innocent freedom between the sexes. However, they do not seem to be inclined to jealousy, any more than the English or French. It is usual for young people here to fall in love at sight, and if the parties agree to marry, but find their parents averse to their union, they complain to the curate of the parish, who goes to the house where the girl lives, and endeavours to persuade them to agree to her marriage; but if they refuse to consent to their union, he takes her away before their faces, without their being able to hinder him, and either places her in a convent, or with some of her relations, where she must remain till they consent to her marriage. We have been informed that a lady will sometimes send a man an offer of her person, in an honourable way; if he declines it, he keeps the matter secret till death, should he do otherwise, he would be looked upon by all people in the most despicable light. Young men are not allowed to court the youth of the other sex without an intention to marry them; for if a woman can prove that a man has, in any instance, endeavoured to engage her affections, she can oblige him to marry her. This, like many other good laws, is abused; for loose women taking advantage of it, frequently lay snares to entrap the simple and unwary; and sometimes worthless young men, form designs upon the fortunes of ladies, without having the least regard for their persons: there are not, however, many mercenary lovers in this part of the world, their notions in general being too refined and romantic to admit the idea of that passion being made subservient to their ambition or interest; and yet there are more unhappy marriages here than in the countries where innocent freedoms being allowed between the sexes, lovers are not so blinded by their passions, as not to perceive the frailties and imperfections of their mistresses. On the death of a man's wife, it is usual for some of his relations to come to his house, and reside with him for some time, in order to divert his grief, and not leave him till another relation comes to relieve the first, the second is relieved by a third, and thus they succeed each other for the space of a year.

Each of the Canary islands, as well as every town and family, hath a peculiar tutelary saint for its patron, whose day is celebrated as a festival, by a sermon preached in honour of the saint, and a service suited to the occasion. On these days, the street near the church is strewed with flowers and leaves, a multitude of wax candles are lighted, and a considerable number of fire works played off.

A kind of fair is generally held on the eve of these festivals, to which the people of the adjacent country resort, and spend the greatest part of the night in mirth and dancing to the sound of the guitar, accompanied with the voices not only of those who play on that instrument, but by those of the dancers. The dances practised here are farabands and solias, which are slow dances; those which are quick are the canario, first used by the Canarians; the fandango, which is chiefly practised by the vulgar; and the rapetes, which nearly resembles our hornpipe. Some of these dances may be termed dramatic, as the men sing verses to their partners, who answer them in the same manner. Most of the natives of these islands can play on the guitar, and they have in general excellent voices.

For the entertainment of the populace, plays are acted in the streets, at the feasts of the tutelary saints of Teneriffe, Canaria, and Palma; but the performance cannot be supposed to rise to any degree of perfection, as they are not professed actors, and only some of the inhabitants of the place seem to have a natural turn for acting.

The gentry frequently take the air on horseback; but when the ladies are obliged to travel, they ride on asses, and instead of a saddle, they use a kind of chair, in which they sit very commodiously. The principal roads are paved with pebble-stones, like those used in the streets of London. There are a few chariots in Canaria, the town of Santa Cruz, and the city of Laguna in Teneriffe; these are all drawn by mules, but they are kept rather for show than use; for the roads are not proper for wheel carriages, being steep and rocky. The lower class of people divert themselves with dancing, singing, and playing on the guitar; likewise with throwing a ball through a ring placed at a great distance, cards, wrestling, and quoits. The peasants, particularly those of Gomera, have the art of leaping from rock to rock when they travel, which is thus performed: the long staff or pole used on these occasions, has an iron spike at the end of it, and when a man wants to descend from one rock to another, he aims the point of the pole at the place where he intends to alight, and then throws himself towards it, pitching the end of the pole to as to bring it to a perpendicular, and then slides down it to the rock on which he fixed it.

In the convents, children are taught reading, writing, Latin, arithmetic, logic, and other branches of philosophy. The scholars read the classics; but the Greek is never taught here, and is entirely unknown even to the students in divinity. They are particularly fond of civil law and logic, but the latter is chiefly preferred.

The people belonging to these islands have a genius for poetry, and compose verses of different measures, which they set to music. Some of their songs, and other poetical pieces, would be greatly esteemed in any country were taste for poetry prevails. Few of those books called profane (to distinguish them from those of a religious kind) are read here, since they cannot be imported into the island without being first examined by the inquisition; a court which nobody cares to have any concern with. The history of the wars in Granada is in every body's hands, and is read by people of all ranks; they have also some plays, most of which are very good. Thomas a Kempis, and the Devout Pilgrim, are in every library, and much admired. But the books most read by the laity are the Lives of the Saints and Martyrs, which may be considered as kind of religious romances, stuffed with legends, and the most absurd and improbable stories.

With respect to the civil government of the islands of Canaria, Teneriffe, and Palma, which are called the king's islands, it will be proper to observe, in the first place, that the natives, on their submitting to the crown of Spain, were so far from being deprived of their liberty, that they were put on an equality with their conquerors, in which the Spaniards shewed great wisdom and policy; but how they came afterwards to act in quite contrary manner in America, is hard to determine: perhaps they might be apprehensive, that if the

proceeded with to they might in time and dispossess the informed, by late South America, as published in Septer repeatedly heard it in Chili and Peru, Spaniards do all the sure you, from un Peru and the cit interior part of the bars of gold and fil from them, and th lions of piaffres take ives will very soon fession, for they del child, and even kill and a native. quest of the Canar rated with the nativ one people with the lical union, the k islands more soldier of his dominions of cale, who is a just except the alguazils town or village of pointed by the royal in Canaria: they he time, and, in cases no disputes where the ceeds seventeen rial these magistrates is t in the same manner case relating to pro hundred dollars. F rates, appeals lie to first of whom is a la audience; but the king, is not obligec creary, clerk, or all glori generally hold times longer. Few able office, which i The proceedings of of the tinente, are t have been originally ther. Appeals are nient to the royal a bunal composed of f and fiscal, who are always appointed by is president of this c rifice. In criminal c determination; but or audience of Seville property.

In the Canary In toly to about an hur militia of which the always commander nels, captains, and king. There are als some of which are by the twelve regio some of the forts b under the direction o who also take care o vent nuisances, and the island by shippin in these islands from a bill of health from been examined by th revenue arises from the tiches, which scarce the clergy appropriat selves. This third p king of Spain, in c perpetual war again

proceeded with too much rigour against them at first, they might in time be induced to shake off the yoke, and dispossess their tyrannical masters, which we are informed, by late events, has proved to be the case in South America, as the following piece of intelligence, published in September 1782, announces: "You have repeatedly heard it reported, that there was a rebellion in Chili and Peru; in South America; and though the Spaniards do all they can to keep it a secret, I can assure you, from undoubted authority, that all the mines in Peru and the city of Pez, which is situated in the interior part of the country, where they lodged their bars of gold and silver, and other valuables, are taken from them, and there were one hundred and fifty millions of piastres taken out of the strong chests. The natives will very soon have the whole country in their possession, for they destroy every white man, woman, and child, and even kill every one begot between a Spaniard and a native." But to return. After the conquest of the Canary Islands, the Spaniards incorporated with the natives in such a manner as to become one people with them, and in consequence of this political union, the king of Spain is able to raise in these islands more soldiers and seamen than in any other part of his dominions of three times their extent. The alcade, who is a justice of peace, is the lowest officer except the alguazils; there is one of them in every town or village of note. These magistrates are appointed by the royal audience of the city of Palmas, in Canaria: they hold their places only for a certain time, and, in cases of property, can take cognizance of no disputes where the value of what is contended for exceeds seventeen rials, or seven shillings sterling. Over these magistrates is the alcade major, who is appointed in the same manner as the other, and cannot decide any case relating to property, that exceeds the sum of two hundred dollars. From the decision of those magistrates, appeals lie to the tiniente and corregidor: the first of whom is a lawyer, and nominated by the royal audience; but the latter, who is appointed by the king, is not obliged to be a lawyer, yet must have a secretary, clerk, or assistant bred to the law. The corregidor generally holds his place five years, and sometimes longer. Few of the natives enjoy this honourable office, which is commonly filled by Spaniards. The proceedings of the corregidor's court, and in that of the tiniente, are the same; these courts seeming to have been originally intended as a check upon each other. Appeals are made from the corregidor and tiniente to the royal audience of Grand Canaria, a tribunal composed of three oidores, or judges, a regent, and fiscal, who are usually natives of Spain, and are always appointed by the king. The governor-general is president of this court, though he resides in Tenerife. In criminal causes there is no appeal from their determination: but appeals are carried to the council or audience of Seville in Spain, in matters respecting property.

In the Canary Islands, the standing forces amount only to about an hundred and fifty men; but there is a militia of which the governor-general of the island is always commander in chief, and the officers, as colonels, captains, and subalterns, are appointed by the king. There are also governors of forts and castles, some of which are appointed by the king, and others by the twelve regidores of the islands, called the cavildo; some of the forts belong to the king, and the rest are under the direction of the regidores, or sub-governors, who also take care of the repair of the highways, prevent nuisances, and the plague from being brought into the island by shipping; for no man is allowed to land in these islands from any ship, till the master produces a bill of health from the last port, or till the crew have been examined by the proper officers. The royal revenue arises from the following articles: a third of the tithes, which scarcely amounts to a tenth part of them, the clergy appropriating almost the whole to themselves. This third part was given by the pope to the king of Spain, in consideration of his maintaining a perpetual war against the infidels. The second branch

consists in the monopoly of tobacco and snuff, which the king's officers sell on his account, no other persons being allowed to deal in those articles. Another branch of the revenue arises from the orchilla-weed, all of which in the islands of Tenerife, Canaria, and Palma, belong to the king, and is part of his revenue; but the orchilla of the other islands belongs to their respective proprietors. The fourth branch consists of the acknowledgment annually paid by the nobility to the king for their titles, which amounts to a mere trifle. The fifth branch is a duty of seven per cent. on imports and exports: and the sixth duty on the Canary West India commerce. All these branches, the sixth excepted, are said not to bring into the king's treasury above fifty thousand pounds per annum, clear of the expences of government, and all charges relating thereto.

Having departed from Madeira on the 1st of August, on the 9th we crossed the Tropic of Cancer, and at nine in the morning came in sight of Bonavista, bearing S. W. by W. about two leagues. This day Capt. Cook made from the inspissated juice of malt three puncheons of beer. The proportion of water to juice was ten of the former to one of the latter. We had on board nineteen half barrals of inspissated juice, fifteen of which were made from wort that had been hopped before it was inspissated. This you may mix with cold water, in a proportion of one part of juice to eight of water, or one part to twelve; then stop it down, and in a few days it will be brisk and fit to drink; but the first sort, after having been mixed as above directed, will require to be fermented with yeast, in the manner as is done in making beer; however, we found this not always necessary, as we at first imagined. This juice would be a most valuable article at sea, could it be kept from fermenting, which it did at this time by the heat of the weather, and the agitation of the ship, that all our endeavours to stop it were in vain.

On Monday the 10th we passed the island of Mayo, on our starboard side, and at two P. M. came to an anchor, eighteen fathom water, in Port Praya, in the isle of St. Jago, one of the Cape de Verdes. An officer was sent on shore for leave to procure what refreshments we wanted, which was readily granted; and on his return we saluted the fort with eleven guns. Here both ships were supplied with plenty of good water. We also recruited our live stock, such as hogs, goats and poultry, some of which continued alive during the remainder of the voyage.

The Cape de Verd islands are situated in 14 deg. 10 min. N. latitude, and 16 deg. 30 min. W. longitude. They were so called from a cape of the same name opposite to them, and were discovered by Anthony Noel, a Genoese, in the service of Portugal, in the year 1640, and are about twenty in number; but some of them are only barren uninhabited rocks. The cape took its name from the perpetual verdure with which it is covered. The Portuguese give them the name of Les Ilhas de Verdes, either from the verdure of the cape, or else from an herb called fargasso, which is green, and floats on the water all round them. His Portuguese majesty appoints a viceroy to govern them, who constantly resides in the island of St. Jago. The Dutch call them the Salt Islands, from the great quantities of that commodity produced in several of them. The principal of these are, 1. May, or Mayo; 2. San Jago, or Saint James's; 3. Sal or Salt; 4. Buena, or Bona Vista, or Good Sight; 5. St. Philip's, otherwise called Fuego, or the island of Fire; 6. St. John, or San Juan; 7. St. Nicholas; 8. St. Vincent; 9. St. Anthony; 10. St. Lucia; 11. Brava. Their soil is very stony and barren, the climate exceeding hot, and in some of them very unwholesome; however, the principal part of them are fertile, and produce various sorts of grain and fruits, particularly rice, maize, or Indian wheat, bananas, lemons, citrons, oranges, pomegranates, coconuts, and figs. They have also calavances, a sort of pulse like French beans, and great quantities of pumpkins, on which the inhabitants chiefly subsist. They produce also two other fruits of a remarkable nature, viz.

viz. the custard apple, and the papah. The former of these is as large as a pomegranate, and nearly of the same colour. The outside husk, shell, or rind, is in substance and thickness between the shell of a pomegranate and the peel of a Seville orange, softer than the former, yet more brittle than the latter. The coat or rind is also remarkable for being covered with small regular knobs or risings; and the inside of the fruit is full of a white soft pulp, which in its form, colour and taste, greatly resembles a custard, from whence it received its name, which was probably first given it by the Europeans. It has in the middle a few small black stones, but no core, for the whole of it is entire pulp. The tree that bears this fruit is about the size of a quince-tree, and has long slender branches that spread a considerable way from the trunk. Only some of the branches bear fruit, for though these trees are large, yet in general such trees do not produce above twenty or thirty apples. The fruit grows at the extremity of these branches, upon a stalk about nine or ten inches long. The other fruit, called the papah; is about the size of a milk melon, and resembles it in shape and colour both within and without; only in the middle, instead of flat kernels, which the melons have, these have a quantity of small blackish seeds, about the size of pepper-corns, the taste of which is much the same as that spice. The tree on which this fruit grows, is about ten or twelve feet high; the trunk is thickest at the bottom, from whence it gradually decreases to the top, where it is very thin and taper. It has not any small branches, but only large leaves, that grow immediately on the stalks from the body. The leaves are of a roundish form, and jagged about the edges, having their stalks or stumps longer or shorter, as they grow nearer or farther from the top: they begin to spring out of the body of the tree at about six or seven feet high from the ground, the trunk being below that entirely bare, and the leaves grow thick all the way from thence to the top, where they are very close and broad. The fruit grow only among the leaves, and most plentiful where the leaves are thickest; so that towards the top of the tree the papahs spring forth from it in clusters. It is, however, to be observed, that where they grow so thick, they are but small, being no bigger than ordinary turneps; whereas those nearer the middle of the trunk, where the leaves are not so thick, grow to the first-mentioned size.

Various sorts of poultry abound in these islands, particularly curlews, Guiney hens, and flamingoes, the latter of which are very numerous. The flamingo is a large bird, much like a heron in shape, but bigger, and of a reddish colour; they go in flocks, but are so shy, that it is very difficult to catch them: they build their nests in shallow ponds, where there is much mud, which they scrape together, making little hillocks, like small islands, that appear about a foot and a half above the surface of the water. They make the foundations of these hillocks broad, bringing them up taper to the top, where they leave a small hollow pit to lay their eggs in: they never lay more than two eggs, and seldom less. The young ones cannot fly till they are almost full grown, but they run with surprising swiftness: their tongues are broad and long, having a large lump of fat at the root, which is delicious in its taste, and so greatly admired, that a dish of them will produce a very considerable sum of money. Their flesh is lean, and of a dingy colour, but it neither tastes fishy, nor any ways unpleasant. Here are also several other sorts of fowls, as pigeons and turtle doves; miniotas, a sort of land fowl, as big as crows, of a grey colour, and the flesh well tasted; cruzias, another sort of grey-coloured fowl, almost as large as the former; these are only seen in the night, and their flesh is said to be exceeding salutary to people in a decline, by whom they are used. They have likewise great plenty of partridges, quails, and other small birds, and rabbits in prodigious numbers.

Many wild animals abound here, particularly lions, tigers and camels, the latter of which are remarkably large. There are also great numbers of monkeys, baboons, and civet-cats, and various kinds of reptiles.

The tame animals are horses, asses, sheep, mules, cows, goats and hogs; and here the European ships bound for the East Indies, usually stop to take in fresh water and provisions, with which they are always plentifully supplied.

Fish of various sorts abound in the sea, particularly dolphins, bonettas, mullets, snappers, silver fish, &c. and here is such plenty of turtle, that several foreign ships come yearly to catch them. In the wet season the turtles go ashore to lay their eggs in the sand, which they leave to be hatched by the heat of the sun. The flesh of the turtles, well cured, is as great a supply to the American plantations, as cod-fish is to Europe. The inhabitants go out by night and catch the turtles, by turning them on their backs with poles; for they are so large that they cannot do it with their hands.

In these islands are many European families, all of whom profess the Roman Catholic religion. The natives are all negroes, and much like their African neighbours, from whom they are supposed to be descended; though, as they are subject to the Portuguese, their own religion and language prevail among them. Both men and women are stout, and well limbed, and they are in general of a civil and quiet disposition. Their dress (particularly in the island of St. John) is very trifling, consisting only of a piece of cotton cloth wound round the waist. The women sometimes throw it over the head, and the men across the shoulders. Neither sex wear shoes or stockings, except on certain festivals. The men are particularly fond of wearing breeches, if they can get them, and are very happy if they have but a waistband and flap before, be they ever so ragged.

The island of Mayo, or May, obtained its name from its being discovered on the first of that month. It is situated in 15 deg. 5 min. N. latitude, near 300 miles from Cape Verd, and is about 17 miles in circumference. The soil is in general very barren, and water scarce; however, here are plenty of cows, goats, and asses; and also some corn, yams, potatoes and plantains. The trees are situated on the sides of the hills, and the natives have some water-melons and figs. The sea likewise abounds with wild fowl, fish and turtle. There grows on this island, as well as on most of the others, a kind of vegetable stone, extremely porous, of a greyish colour, which shoots up in stems, and forms something like the head of a cauliflower.

On the west side of the island is a sand-bank that runs two or three miles along the shore, within which is a large salina, or salt-pond, encompassed by the sand-bank, and the hills beyond it. The whole salt-pond is about two miles in length, and half a mile wide; but the greater part of it is generally dry. The north end, which is always supplied with water, produces salt from November till May, those months being the dry season of the year. The waters yield this salt out of the sea, through a hole in the sand-bank, and the quantity that flows into it is in proportion to the height of the tides: in the common course it is very gentle, but when the spring tides arise, it is supplied in abundance. If there is any salt in the pond, when the flush of water comes in, it soon dissolves; but in two or three days after it begins to congeal, and so continues till a fresh supply of water from the sea comes in again. A considerable trade for salt is carried on by the English, and the armed ships destined to secure the African commerce, afford the vessels thus engaged their protection. The inhabitants of the island are principally employed in this business during the season: they rake it together, and wheel it out of the pond in barrows, from whence they convey it to the sea-side on the backs of asses, which animals are very numerous here. The pond is not above half a mile from the landing-place; so that they go backwards and forwards many times in the day; but they restrain themselves to a certain number, which they seldom exceed.

There are several sorts of fowl, particularly flamingoes, curlews, and Guiney hens. Their chief cattle are cows, goats, and hogs, which are reckoned the best in all the Cape de Verd islands. Besides the fruits above-mentioned, they have calavanes and pumpkins, which are the common food of the inhabitants.

The inhabitants of the town, the principal contains two churches, is called St. John, a which has a church are very mean, small wood of the fig tree purpose that grows made of a sort of willow.

The Portuguese government is tolerably a that fades salt here is a present. He speaks in the salting fish very busy time with not any vessels of the ships come hither, whom they depend on of Portugal, the English nation. A trade here; and are ships from Barbado usually to freight with

The island of S situated about four between the 15th and 17th W. long. This is inhabited of all the ing it is very moun barren land in it.

the name of the island latitude. It stands between which there wide, that runs with that part of the walls with houses on each bottom, which encomp bay, where the sea ships ride there with near the landing place constantly kept, and a few small cannon.

The town of St. J houses, all built of stone church and a convent are in general very p chief manufacture is Portuguese ships port Brazil, and supply medicines in return.

A tolerable large t called Praya, where dom without ships, e of the European ship at this port to take seldom stop here on of Praya does not except a fort, situated in the harbour. The country people sell to the seamen a nally consist of bul plantains, and coco thers, drawers, hand and linen of any kind.

The port of Praya middle of the fourth the latitude of 14 de 30 min. W. longitu coming in from the island, and which lie of the bay is formed W. S. W. and E. N. Near the west point continually breaks a league. We water the head of the bay difficult to get it ab the beach. The refer

The inhabitants of this island live in three small towns, the principal of which is called Pimont, and contains two churches, with as many priests; the other is called St. John, and has one church; and the third, which has a church also, is called Lagos. The houses are very mean, small, and low; they are built with the wood of the fig tree (that being the only one fit for the purpose that grows on the island) and the rafters are made of a sort of wild cane which grows here.

The Portuguese governor of St. Jago grants the patent to the negro governor of this island, whose situation is tolerably advantageous, as every commander that takes salt here is obliged to compliment him with a present. He spends most of his time with the English in the salting season, which is his harvest, and a very busy time with all the natives. These people have not any vessels of their own, nor do any Portuguese ships come hither, so that the English are the chief on whom they depend for trade; and though they are subjects of Portugal, they have a particular esteem for the English nation. Asses are also a great commodity of trade here; and are so plentiful, that several European ships from Barbadoes and other plantations, come annually to freight with them to carry thither.

The island of St. Jago, or St. James's island, is situated about four leagues to the westward of Mayo, between the 15th and 16th deg. N. lat. and in the 23d of W. long. This island is the most fruitful and best inhabited of all the Cape de Verd islands, notwithstanding it is very mountainous, and has a great deal of barren land in it. The principal town is called after the name of the island, and is situated in 15 deg. N. latitude. It stands against the sides of two mountains, between which there is a deep valley two hundred yards wide, that runs within a small space of the sea. In that part of the valley next the sea is a straggling street, with houses on each side, and a rivulet of water in the bottom, which empties itself into a fine cove or sandy bay, where the sea is generally very smooth, so that ships ride there with great safety. A small fort stands near the landing place from this bay, where a guard is constantly kept, and near it is a battery mounted with a few small cannon.

The town of St. John contains about three hundred houses, all built of rough stone, and it has one small church and a convent. The inhabitants of the town are in general very poor, having but little trade. Their chief manufacture is striped cotton cloth, which the Portuguese ships purchase of them, in their way to Brazil, and supply them with several European commodities in return.

A tolerable large town is on the east side of the island, called Praya, where there is a good port, which is seldom without ships, especially in peaceable times. Most of the European ships bound to the East Indies touch at this port to take in water and provisions, but they seldom stop here on their return to Europe. The town of Praya does not contain any remarkable building, except a fort, situated on the top of a hill, which commands the harbour. When the European ships are here, the country people bring down their commodities to sell to the seamen and passengers; these articles generally consist of bullocks, hogs, goats, fowls, eggs, plantains, and cocoa-nuts, which they exchange for shirts, drawers, handkerchiefs, hats, waistcoats, breeches, and linen of any kind.

The port of Praya, a small bay, is situated about the middle of the south side of the island of St. Jago, in the latitude of 14 deg. 53 min. 30 sec. N. and 23 deg. 30 min. W. longitude. It is discovered, especially in coming in from the east, by the southermost hill on the island, and which lies west from the port. The entrance of the bay is formed by two points, rather low, being W. S. W. and E. N. E. half a league from each other. Near the west point are sunken rocks, whereon the sea continually breaks. The bay lies in N. W. about half a league. We watered at a well, behind the beach, at the head of the bay. The water is scarce, but it is difficult to get it aboard, on account of a great surf on the beach. The refreshments to be procured here will

be found in the course of our account of the islands. Other articles may be purchased of the natives in exchange for old cloaths, &c. Bullocks can only be bought with money; the price twelve Spanish dollars per head, weighing between 250 and 300 pounds; but the sale of them is confined to a company of merchants, to whom this privilege is granted, and who keep an agent residing on the spot. The bay is protected by a fort well situated for the purpose of defence.

The complexion of the natives of this town and St. Jago inclines to black, or is at least of a mixed colour, except some few of the better sort that reside in the latter, among whom are the governor, the bishop, and some of the padres (fathers) or priests. The people of St. Jago town, as they live under the governor's eye, are pretty orderly, though generally very poor, having little trade; but those about Praya are naturally of a thievish disposition, so that strangers who deal with them must be very careful, for if they see an opportunity, they will steal their goods and run away.

Sal, or Salt, is the windwardmost of all the Cape de Verd islands, and is situated in the 17th deg. of N. lat. and 5 deg. 18 min. W. long. from the Cape. It received this name from the great quantity of salt naturally produced here from salt water, that from time to time overflows part of the land, which is mostly low, having only five hills, and stretches from north to south about eight or nine leagues, but it does not exceed one league and a half in breadth. In this island are only a few people. These live in wretched huts near the seaside, and are chiefly employed in gathering salt for those ships that occasionally call here for that article. The best account of this barren island is given us by Capt. Roberts, who landed here, and relates the following story, which he says he was told by one of the blacks that resided in it. "About the year 1705, not long before I went ashore, the island was intirely deserted for want of rain by all its inhabitants except one old man, who resolved to die on it, which he did the same year. The drought had been so extreme for some time, that most of the cows and goats died for want of sustenance, but rain following, they increased apace, till about three years after they were again reduced by a remarkable event. A French ship coming to fish for turtle, was obliged, by stress of weather, or from some other cause, to leave behind her thirty blacks, which she had brought from St. Antonio to carry on the fishing. These people, finding nothing else, fed mostly on wild goats, till they had destroyed them all but two, one male and the other female; these were then on the island, and kept generally upon one mountain. A short time after an English ship (bound for the island of St. Mayo) perceiving the smoke of several fires, sent their boat on shore, and thinking they might be some ship's company wrecked on the island, put in there; when they understood the situation of the people, they commiserated their case, took them all in, and landed them on the island from whence they were brought."

The island of Buena Vista, or Bona Villa, thus named from its being the first of the Cape de Verd islands discovered by the Portuguese, is situated in the 16th degree of N. lat. two hundred miles W. of the coast of Africa, and is twenty miles long, and twelve broad, mostly consisting of low land, with some sandy hills, and rocky mountains. It produces great quantities of indigo, and more cotton than all the other Cape de Verd islands; yet there is not one of them where there are fewer cotton cloths to be sold: for the natives will not even gather the cotton before a ship arrives to buy it, nor will the women spin till they want it. They have, in general, the same animals as in the other islands, with plenty of turtle, and many sorts of fish. When the English land to take in a lading of salt, they hire men and asses to bring it down to the sea, for which they pay them in biscuits, flour, and old cloaths. This island had also formerly a pretty good trade for horses and asses, which are the best of all that are upon these islands. The people are very fond of silk, with which they work the bosoms of their shirts, shifts, caps, women's waistcoats, &c.

The people of this island prefer the English dress to their own; for most of them have suits of cloaths bought of the English, and have learned to make cotton cloth to imitate the European fashion. The women have one, two, or three cotton cloths wrapped about them like petticoats, tied on with a girdle about the hips, and sometimes without a girdle. Their shifts are made like a man's shirt, but so short, as scarcely to reach to the girdle; the collar, neck, and waistbands, of the young people of some rank, are wrought in figures with silk in various colours in needlework; but the old and the poor have theirs worked with blue cotton thread. Over their shifts they wear a waistcoat, with sleeves to button at the arms, not above four inches deep in the back part, but long enough before to tie with strings under their breasts. Over all they have a cotton cloth in the manner of a mantle; those of the married women are generally blue, and the darker the colour the richer it is reckoned; but the maidens, and gay young wives, and widows, wear blue and white, some spotted and some figured. They, however, rather choose, if they can get them, linen handkerchiefs wrought on the edges, and sometimes only on the corners, with red, green, and blue silk; the first being the colour they most admire. They wear neither shoes nor stockings, except in holidays; and, indeed, at other times the women have generally only a small cotton cloth wrapped round their waist, and the men a ragged pair of breeches; to which, if there be but a waistband, and a piece hanging to it before to hide what modesty teaches them to conceal, they think it sufficient. The people of Bona Vista are fond of the English, and most of them can speak a little of their language.

St. Philip, called also Fuego, or the Isle of Fire, received this latter name from a very large mountain, which frequently emits great quantities of fire and sulphur. It is situated in fifteen deg. twenty min. N. lat. and six deg. fifty-four min. W. from the Cape; is the highest of all the Cape de Verd islands, and appears at a distance like one continued mountain. On the west side of it there is a road for shipping, near a small castle situated at the foot of a mountain, but the harbour is not safe on account of the violent beating of the waves. The wind blows very strong round this island, and the shore being on a slant, the water is very deep, so that, except very near the castle, no ground is to be found within the lines. In this island water is very scarce, there not being a single running brook throughout it; notwithstanding which it is tolerably fertile, and produces great quantities of pumpions, water-melons, festroons, and maiz, but no bananas or plantains, and scarce any fruit trees except wild figs; however, in some of their gardens, they have guava-trees, oranges, lemons, and limes. They have likewise some good vineyards, but they make no more wine than just what they use themselves. Most of the inhabitants are negroes, there being an hundred blacks to one white; they are all Roman Catholics, though some of them introduce many pagan superstitions into that religion. They breed great numbers of mules, which they sell to other nations, and make cotton cloths for their own use.

The Portuguese, on their first peopling this island, brought with them negro-slaves, and a stock of cows, horses, asses, and hogs; but the king himself furnished the place with goats, which ran wild in the mountains. There are many of the latter animals here at this time, and the profits of their skins is reserved to the crown of Portugal. An officer, called captain of the mountains, has the management of this revenue, and no person dares, without his licence, kill any one of them.

St. John's is situated in fifteen degrees twenty-five min. N. lat. and seven deg. two min. W. of Cape Verd, and is very high and rocky. It has more salt-petre than any of these islands; this is found in several caves, covering the sides like a hoar-frost, and in some hollow rocks, like icicles, as thick as a man's thumb. This island abounds with pumpions, bananas, water-melons, and other fruit; and also with fowls; goats, asses, hogs,

&c. There are plenty of fish in the seas about St. John's, and most of the fish here have remarkable sharp teeth; and they generally use crabs and insects for baits. Fishing is the principal employment of the natives; hence they miss no opportunities of wrecks, or, when ships touch here, to procure all the bits of iron they can.

In this island, the salt is made by the heat of the sun, which shining on the water in the holes of the rocks, is thereby turned, and sometimes lies two feet thick. The natives usually go and get a quantity of salt early in the morning, fish the greatest part of the day, dry, splir, and salt their fish in the evening, and, having heaped them up let them lie in the salt all night. On the ensuing morning they spread them out to dry in the sun, and they are fit to use when wanted.

The baleas, a sort of whale or grampus, is very common near this island; and some affirm, that ambergris is the sperm of this creature. A great quantity of ambergris was formerly found about this island, but it is less plentiful at present. Some years before Capt. Roberts was here, Juan Carneira, a Portuguese, who was banished from Lisbon for some crime, having procured a little ship or shallop, traded among these islands; meeting at length with a piece of ambergris of an uncommon bigness, he not only procured his liberty, and leave to return before the term of his exile was expired, but had sufficient left, after defraying all charges, to put himself into a comfortable way of living, and a rock near to which he found the ambergris, is called by his name to this day.

The natives of this island do not amount to above two hundred souls, and are quite black. They are the most ignorant and superstitious of any of the inhabitants of these islands. But in their disposition they are simple and harmless, humble, charitable, humane, and friendly; pay a particular respect to their equals, reverence their elders, are submissive to their superiors, and dutiful to their parents. People wear in common only a slip of cotton fastened to a string before, which passing between the thighs, is tied to the same string behind; but when full dressed they also wear a piece of cotton cloth, (spun and wove by themselves) which the men hang over their shoulders, and wrap round their waists, while the women put it over their heads, and then wrap it about their bodies; and on both of them it extends to the calf of the leg, or lower. They use in fishing, long canes for rods, cotton lines, and bent nails for hooks. As to their hunting, the governor having the sole privilege of killing the wild goats, none dare hunt without his consent. This was a law made by the Portuguese when they peopled these islands from the coast of Africa, in order to prevent the entire loss of the breed.

When a general hunt is appointed by the governor, all the inhabitants are assembled, and the dogs, which are between a beagle and a greyhound, are called. At night, or when the governor thinks proper to put an end to the sport, they all meet together, and he parts the goats flesh between them as he pleases, sending what he thinks proper to his own house, with all the skins; and after he comes home, he sends pieces to those who are old, or were not out a hunting; and the skins he distributes amongst them as he thinks their necessities require, reserving the remainder of them for the lord of the soil. This is one of the principal privileges enjoyed by the governor; who is also the only magistrate, and decides the little differences that sometimes happen among the people. Upon their not submitting to this decision, he confines them till they do, in an open place walled round like a pound; but, instead of a gate, they generally lay only a stick across the entrance, and those innocent people will stay there without attempting to escape, except when overcome by passion, and then they rush out in a rage; but these are soon caught again, tied hand and foot, and a sentinel set to watch them, till they agree with their antagonist, ask the governor's pardon for breaking out of his prison, and have remained there as long as he thinks they have deserved. Nay, if one kills another, which hardly happens in an

age, the governor decided the relations of his friends, who are, in case a judgment to execute justice; such a scandal, that was by criminals he

About forty-five Nicholas Island, the to min. N. latitude from Cape de Verd de Verd islands, and rises like a sugar elevated part is flatly clear from rocks, very safe, but the winds are settled. spring of water in it, selves in supplying etc, with which the rable way at a che obtained in almost a well.

The town of St. island; it is close but even the church Avery, the celebrated office from the inh was afterwards rebuilt to the same extent as

The people are r They speak the Port are thievish and blood more ingenious, and other of the Cape de horses, hogs, and pos St. Nicholas understa which the inhabitants They likewise make being tolerable taylors cotton stockings, mal They are strong Rom are so obstinate, difficult to rule them. lemons, plantains, ba necks, sugar-canes, maiz, &c.

The island of St. Vi side, two leagues to forty-three leagues di on by N. It is five l of it there is a bay a entrance, surrounded w ing to the middle of ared from the wester the high mountains of this is the safest harbo and yet it is difficult o winds that blow with u mountains along the small bays on the south may anchor, and thith to load hides. The S here, but there is not even in any of the deep fresh water is seen to sp island.

St. Anthony is the m & Verd islands, and li nles from St. Vincent which runs from S. W. mountains on this illanc the pike of Teneriffe clouds. The inhabita number; and on the N the village, consisting ages, and inhabited by and white people, who speak the Portuguese la

age, the governor can only confine him till he has pacified the relations of the deceased, by the mediation of his friends, who are bound for the criminal's appearance, in case a judge should be ever sent from Portugal to execute justice; but imprisonment is here reckoned such a scandal, that it is as much dreaded as Tyburn was by criminals here.

About forty-five miles from the island of Salt is St. Nicholas Island, the N. W. point of which is in 17 deg. 10 min. N. latitude, and 6 deg. 52 min. W. longitude from Cape de Verd. It is the largest of all the Cape de Verd islands, except St. Jago. The land is high, and rises like a sugar-loaf, but the summit of the most elevated part is flat. The coast of this island is entirely clear from rocks and shoals. The bay of Paraghi is very safe, but the other roads are insecure till the trade winds are settled. Here is a valley which has a fine spring of water in it, and many persons employ themselves in supplying different parts with that useful article, with which they load asses, and carry it a considerable way at a cheap rate. Water may likewise be obtained in almost any part of the island, by digging a well.

The town of St. Nicholas is the chief place in the island; it is close built and populous, but all the houses, and even the church, are covered with thatch. Capt. Avery, the celebrated pirate, having once received some assistance from the inhabitants, burnt this town; but it was afterwards rebuilt, much in the same manner, and to the same extent as before.

The people are nearly black, with frizzled hair. They speak the Portuguese language tolerably well, but are thievish and blood thirsty. The women here are more ingenious, and better housewives than in any other of the Cape de Verd islands. Most families have horses, hogs, and poultry; and many of the people of St. Nicholas understand the art of boat-building, in which the inhabitants of the other islands are deficient. They likewise make good cloths, and even cloaths, being tolerable tailors, manufacture cotton quilts, knit cotton stockings, make good shoes, and tan leather. They are strong Roman Catholics, but their dispositions are so obstinate, that their priests find it very difficult to rule them. This island abounds in oranges, lemons, plantains, bananas, pompions, musk, water-melons, sugar-canes, vines, gum-dragon, festroons, maize, &c.

The island of St. Vincent is under 18 deg. of N. latitude, two leagues to the west of St. Lucia, and about forty-three leagues distant from the Isle of Salt, W. and by N. It is five leagues in length. On the N. W. side of it there is a bay a league and a half broad at the entrance, surrounded with high mountains, and stretching to the middle of the island. This bay is sheltered from the westerly and north-westerly winds, by the high mountains of the isle of St. Vincent; so that this is the safest harbour of any in all these islands; and yet it is difficult of access, because of the furious winds that blow with the utmost impetuosity from the mountains along the coast. There are several other small bays on the south-side of the island, where ships may anchor, and thither the Portuguese generally go to load hides. The S. E. side of this island is a sandy shore, but there is not a drop of water on the hills, nor even in any of the deep valleys, except one, in which fresh water is seen to spout out of the ground on digging a little.

St. Anthony is the most northward of all the Cape de Verd islands, and lies in 18 deg. N. latitude, seven miles from St. Vincent, with a channel between them, which runs from S. W. to N. E. Here are two high mountains on this island, one of which is nearly as high as the pike of Teneriffe, and seems always enveloped in clouds. The inhabitants are about five hundred in number; and on the N. W. side of the island there is a little village, consisting of about twenty houses or cottages, and inhabited by near fifty families of negroes and white people, who are all wretchedly poor, and speak the Portuguese language. On the north-side of

the island there is a road for shipping, and a collection of water in a plain lying between high mountains, the water running from all sides in the rainy season; but in the dry season the people are greatly distressed for water. The principal people here are a governor, a captain, a priest, and a schoolmaster, all of whom take much upon themselves, so that the people have some jingling verses concerning them, which imply, that the governor's staff, the beads of the priest, the schoolmaster's rod, and the captain's sword, give them a licence to feast on the natives, who serve as slaves to support their luxury and grandeur.

St. Lucia lies in latitude 17 deg. 18 min. N. It is high land, full of hills, and is about eight or nine leagues long. On the S. E. end of it are two small isles, very near each other. On the E. S. E. side is the harbour, where the shore is of white sand: here lies a small island, round which there is a very good bottom, and ships may ride at anchor in twenty fathom water, over against the island of St. Vincent.

Brava or the Savage, or the Defart Island, is about four leagues to the S. W. of Fuego. There are two or three small islands to the north of it. The best harbour lies on the S. E. side of the island, where ships may anchor next to the shore in fifteen fathom water. There is an hermitage and an hamlet just above the harbour. On the west-side of the island there is a very commodious road for such ships as want to get water.

On Friday the 14th of August, both ships having got on board a supply of refreshments and provisions, we weighed anchor, put to sea, and continued our voyage to the cape of Good Hope. On Sunday the 16th, in the evening, a luminous fiery meteor made its appearance; it was of a bluish colour, an oblong shape, and had a quick descending motion. After a momentary duration, it disappeared in the horizon; its course was N. W. We observed a swallow following our vessel, and making numberless circles round it, notwithstanding our distance from St. Jago was between fifty and sixty leagues. This harmless bird continued to attend the ship in her course the two following days. We observed many conitos in the sea, which shot past us with great velocity; but we could not take a single one, though we endeavoured to catch them with hooks, and strike them with harpoons. We were more successful in hooking a shark, about five feet long. On this fish we dined the next day. We found it rather difficult of digestion, but, when fried, it was tolerably good eating. Nothing very remarkable happened on board our ship the *Resolution*, except that on the 19th, one of our carpenter's mates fell overboard, and was drowned. He was sitting on one of the scuttles, from whence it was supposed he fell. All our endeavours to save him were in vain, for he was not seen till the instant he sunk under the ship's stern. We felt his loss very sensibly, he being a sober man, as well as a good workman; and he was much regretted even by his shipmates.

On Thursday the 20th, the rain descended not in drops, but in streams, and, at the same time, the wind was squally and variable, so that the people were obliged to keep deck, and of course had all wet jackets, an inconvenience very common, and often experienced by seamen. However, this disagreeable circumstance was attended with good, as it gave us an opportunity of spreading our awnings, and filling seven empty puncheons with fresh water. This heavy rain was succeeded by a dead calm, which continued twenty-four hours, and was followed by a breeze from S. W. Between this and the south point it held for several days, at times blowing in squalls, attended with rain and hot sultry weather. On the 27th instant, one of captain Furneaux's petty officers died on board the *Adventure*; but on board the *Resolution*, we had not one man sick, although a deal of rain fell, which, in such hot climates, is a great promoter of sickness. Capt. Cook took every necessary precaution for the preservation of our health, by airing and drying the ship with fires made between decks,

decks, and by making the crew air their bedding, and wash their cloaths, at every opportunity. Two men were punished on board the Adventure; one a private marine for quarrelling with the quarter-master; the other a common sailor for theft. Each of them received one dozen. This we mention to shew what strict discipline it was necessary to preserve on board, in order to establish a regular and peaceable behaviour in such hazardous voyages, when men, unaccustomed to controul, are apt to prove mutinous.

On Tuesday, September the 8th, we crossed the line in longitude 8 deg. W. Some of the crew, who had never passed the line before, were obliged to undergo the usual ceremony of ducking, but some bought themselves off, by paying the required forfeit of brandy. Those who submitted to an emersion, found it very salutary, as it cannot well be done too often in warm weather, and a frequent change of linen and cloaths is exceeding refreshing. On the 14th, a flying fish fell on our deck; we caught several dolphins; saw some aquatic birds; and, at various intervals, observed the sea covered with numberless animals. On Sunday the 27th, a sail was discovered to the W. standing after us; she appeared to be a snow, and shewed either Portuguese colours, or St. George's ensign. We did not chuse to wait till the approached nearer, or to speak to her. The winds began now to be variable, so that we made but little way, and not any thing remarkable happened till October the 11th, when we observed an eclipse of the moon. At twenty-four minutes, twelve seconds, after six o'clock, by Mr. Kendal's watch, the moon rose about four digits eclipsed; after which the following observations were made with different instruments and time-pieces, by our astronomers and others.

	h. m. s.	
{ By Capt. Cook	6 53 51	} a common refractor.
{ By Mr. Forster	6 55 23	
By Mr. Wales	6 54 57	a quadrant telescope.
By Mr. Pickersgill	6 55 30	a three feet refractor.
By Mr. Gilbert	6 53 24	the naked eye.
By Mr. Hervy	6 55 34	a quadrant telescope.

Mean 6 54 46; by the watch.

{ Watch slow of }
{ apparent time } 0 3 59

Apparent time 6 58 45; End of the eclipse.
Ditto 7 25 00 At Greenwich.

Difference of long. 0 26 14; = 6° 33' 30"

Longitude from Mr. Wales's Observations.

By the moon and star Aquila 5° 51' } Mean 6° 13' 0"
By the ditto & do. Aldebaran 6 35 }
By Mr Kendal's Watch 6 53;

On Monday the 12th, the weather being calm, we amused ourselves with shooting sea fowl. We were now accompanied by shearwaters, pintadoes, &c. and by a small grey petrel. This last is less than a pigeon, has a gray back, whitish belly, and a black stroke across from the tip of one wing to that of the other. These are southern birds, and, we believe, never seen within the tropics, or north of the line. They visited us in great flights; and about the same time we saw several animals of the molusca kind, within our reach, together with a violet-coloured shell, of a remarkable thin texture, and therefore seems calculated to keep the open sea; and not to come near rocky places, it being easily broken. Saturday the 17th, we discovered a sail to the N. W. which hoisted Dutch colours. She kept us company two days, but on the third we out-failed her. From the 12th to this day, we had the wind between the N. and E. a gentle gale. On Wednesday the 21st, our latitude was 35 deg. 20 min. S. and our longitude 2 deg. 4 min. 30 sec. E. From this time to the 23d the wind continued easterly, when it veered to the N.

and N. W. After some hours calm, we saw a seal, or as some thought, a sea lion. The wind now fixed at N. W. which carried us to our intended port. As we drew near to land, the sea fowl, which had accompanied us hitherto, began to leave us: at least they did not appear in such numbers; nor did we see gannets, or the black bird, commonly called the Cape Hen, till we were nearly within sight of the Cape. On Thursday, the 29th, at two o'clock P. M. we made the land of the Cape of Good Hope; for a particular description of which, and of the adjacent country, see page 92, &c. of this work. The Table Mountain, over the Cape Town, bore E. S. E. distant twelve or fourteen leagues: had it not have been obscured by clouds, it might, from its height, have been seen at a much greater distance. Friday the 30th, we stood into Table Bay, with the Adventure in company, and anchored in five fathom water. We were now visited by the master-attendant of the fort, some other officers belonging to the company, and Mr. Brandt. This last gentleman brought off to us many articles that were very acceptable; and the master attendant, as is customary, took an account of the two ships, enquiring particularly, if the small-pox was on board, a disorder dreaded above all others by the inhabitants of the Cape; for which reason a surgeon always attends on these visits. This day Capt. Cook sent an officer to wait upon Baron Plettenberg the governor, to inform him of our arrival; to which he returned a polite answer; and on the return of our officer, we saluted the fort with eleven guns, which compliment was acknowledged by the same number. The governor, when the captain accompanied by some of our gentlemen waited upon him, told them, that two French ships from the Mauritius about eight months before, had discovered land, in 48 deg. S. latitude, and in the meridian of that island, along which they sailed forty miles, till they came to a bay, into which when they were about to enter, they were driven off and separated in a hard gale, after having lost some of their people and boats, who had been sent out to sound the bay; but the La Fortune, one of the ships, arrived soon after at Mauritius, the captain of which was sent home to France with an account of the discovery. We also learned from the governor, that two other French ships from Mauritius, in March last, touched at the Cape in their passage to the Pacific Ocean, to which they were bound upon discoveries, under the command of M. Marion. Aotourou, the Indian, whom M. de Bougainville brought from Otaheite, was, had he been living, to have returned home with M. Marion. Having visited the governor and some of the principal inhabitants, we took up our abode at Mr. Brandt's, the usual residence of most officers belonging to English ships. With respect to accommodations, this gentleman spares neither expence nor trouble, in order to render his house as agreeable as possible to those who favour him with their company. We concerted measures with Mr. Brandt for supplying us with provisions, &c. all which he procured without delay, while our men on board were employed in overhauling the rigging, and the carpenters in caulking the ship's sides, &c. At the same time Mr. Wales and Mr. Bayley made observations for regulating the watches and other purposes. The result of these was that Mr. Kendal's watch had answered beyond our expectations, by determining the longitude of this place to within one minute of time to what it was observed in 1761, by Messrs. Mason and Dixon.

At this place two Dutch Indiamen arrived after us from Holland. Their passage was near five months in which one of the ships lost by the scurvy, and the other by putrid fevers, in all 191 men. One of the ships touched at Port Praya, and departed a month from thence before we came there, yet we arrived at the Cape three days before her. During our stay here, Mr. Forster, who employed his time wholly in the pursuit of Natural History and Botany, met with one Mr. Sparmann, a Swedish gentleman, who had studied under Linnaeus. Mr. Forster imported strongly Capt. Cook

to take him aboard to embark, the Captain ordered Mr. Forster to be taken aboard, and allowed Hodges also to employ Cape, town, and g... which were left with him to the admiral's hand.

On the 18th of N... board; but it was... In this interval the... day with fresh beef, what quantity of... the two ships, in ev... condition as when... some removes took... Lieutenant, Mr. Sha... der to return to Eng... which was granted... lieutenant, and Mr... was made second lie...

On the 22d we rep... leave of the governo... obliging manner ha... assistance we require... weighed, and salute... compliment was int... all night to the west... ing, which time the... pearance, which has... history, noticed an... cleared the land, we... Cape Circumcision.

N. W. point until th... the eastward. This... found ourselves to be... min. W. of the Cape... directing our course... expected to encounter... then ordered a waste... possible prevented; a... man with a fearless... by the Admiralty, at... them. Observing a... us, we put out hooks... several, and the ship's... mation, relieved the... heavy storm came fro... of moderate we... can very high, and fi...

On Sunday, Decem... deg. 41 min. S. and... The storm continued... together with hail, ra... well, were circumsta... extremely disagreeabl... ship hearing a noise of... burst out, and found... water: upon which al... the water increased up... need to come in thro... three-rooms. This ga... continued till the 8th... every no fails; and be... the eastward of our... remained of our reac... distress was augmented... the flock we had brou... the effects of the fu... severe cold weather;... made to the men's allo... On the morning of th... flattering prospect of... lions soon vanished;... and by one o'clock P... blow with such violen... pallant-malts. On th... about; but the sea r... than the fore-top-ma...

No. 15.

to take him aboard; and Mr. Sparman being willing to embark, the Captain consented; and he was engaged under Mr. Forster, who bore his expenses on board, and allowed him a yearly stipend besides. Mr. Hodges also employed himself in taking view of the Cape, town, and parts adjacent, in oil colours; all which were left with Mr. Brandt, to be forwarded by him to the admiralty, by the first ship bound for England.

On the 18th of November we had got every thing on board; but it was the 22d before we could put to sea. In this interval the crews of both ships were served every day with fresh beef, or mutton, new baked bread, and what quantity of greens they thought sufficient; and the two ships, in every respect, were put in as good condition as when they left England. At this time some removes took place in the Adventure. The first lieutenant, Mr. Shank, desired leave to resign, in order to return to England for the recovery of his health, which was granted. Mr. Kemp was appointed first lieutenant, and Mr. Burney, one of our midshipmen, was made second lieutenant, in the room of Mr. Kemp.

On the 22d we repaired on board, having first taken leave of the governor, and other officers, who in a most obliging manner had afforded us all the necessary assistance we required. At three o'clock, P. M. we weighed, and saluted the fort with fifteen guns, which compliment was instantly returned. We now stood all night to the westward, to get clear of the land, during which time the sea made the same luminous appearance, which has been already, in the course of our history, noticed and described. As soon as we had cleared the land, we directed our course, as ordered, to Cape Circumcision. We had a moderate gale from the N. W. point until the 24th, when the wind shifted to the eastward. This day by observation, at noon, we found ourselves to be in 35 deg. 25 min. S. lat. and 29 min. W. of the Cape of Good Hope. As we were now directing our course toward the antarctic circle, and expected to encounter soon with cold weather, the Captain ordered a waste of fresh water to be as much as possible prevented; at the same time he supplied each man with a fearnought jacket, and trowsers, allowed by the Admiralty, and also flops to such who wanted them. Observing a great number of albatrosses about us, we put out hooks and lines, with which we caught several, and the ship's company, though served with a heavy storm came from the W. N. W. with few intervals of moderate weather, for nearly a week: the sea ran very high, and frequently broke over the ships.

On Sunday, December the 6th, we were in lat. 48 deg. 41 min. S. and in 18 deg. 24 min. E. longitude. The storm continued, and the roaring of the waves, together with hail, rain, and a great agitation of the vessel, were circumstances that rendered our situation extremely disagreeable. A boy in the fore part of our ship hearing a noise of water running among the chests, jumped out, and found himself half way up the leg in water: upon which all hands worked at the pumps, but the water increased upon us. This was at last discovered to come in through a scuttle in the boatswain's stateroom. This gale, attended with hail and rain, continued till the 8th, with such fury, that we could carry no sails; and being driven by this means far to the eastward of our intended course, nor the least hope remained of our reaching Cape Circumcision. Our distress was augmented by the loss of a great part of our live stock we had brought from the Cape. Every man felt the effects of the sudden transition from warm to extreme cold weather; for which reason an addition was made to the men's allowance of brandy in both ships. On the morning of the 7th, the rising sun gave us a flattering prospect of serene weather; but our expectations soon vanished; the barometer was unusually low, and by one o'clock P. M. the wind, which was at N. W. blew with such violence as obliged us to strike our top-sail-masts. On the 8th the gale was somewhat abated; but the sea ran too high for us to carry more than the fore-top-mast stay-sail.

No. 15.

On Wednesday, the 9th, at three A. M. we wore ship to the southward, showers of snow fell, with squally weather. At eight made signal for the Adventure to make sail. On the 10th made another signal for her to lead, and saw an ice-land to the westward of us, in 50 deg. 40 min. S. latitude, and 2 deg. E. longitude of the Cape of Good Hope. The weather being hazy, Capt. Cook by signal called the Adventure under our stern; a fortunate circumstance this; for the fog increased so much, that we could not discern an island of ice, for which we were steering, till we were less than a mile from it. The sea broke very high against this island of ice, which Captain Furneaux took for land, and therefore hauled off from it, till he was called back by signal. We cannot determine with precision on the height or circumference of this ice-land; but, in our opinion such large bodies must drift very slowly, for, as the greatest part of them are under water, they can be little affected by either the winds or waves. It being necessary to proceed with great circumspection, we reefed our top-sails, and upon sounding found no ground with one hundred and fifty fathoms.

Friday, the 11th, in 51 deg. 50 min. S. lat. and 21 deg. 3 min. E. longitude, saw some white birds, and passed another large island of ice. The birds were about the size of pigeons, with blackish bills and feet. Capt. Cook thought them of the petrel kind, and natives of these frozen seas. The dismal scene in view, to which we were unaccustomed, was varied as well by these birds, as several whales, which made their appearance among the ice, and afforded us some idea of a southern Greenland. But though the appearance of the ice, with the waves breaking over it, might afford a few moments pleasure to the eye, yet it could not fail filling us with horror, when we reflected on our danger; for the ship would be dashed to pieces in a moment, were she to get against the weather side of one of these islands, when the sea runs high.

On the thirteenth, a great variety of ice islands presented themselves to our view, and the number of our attendant birds decreased. As we were now in the latitude of Cape Circumcision, according to Mr. Bouvet's discoveries, in the year 1739, yet we were ten deg. to the longitude of it; but some people on board were very eager to be first in spying land. In this field of low ice were several islands, or hills, and some on board thought they saw land over the ice; but this was only owing to the various appearances which the ice hills make, when seen in hazy weather. We had smooth water, and brought to under a point of ice: here we consulted on places of rendezvous, in case of separation, and made several regulations for the better keeping company. We then made sail along the ice.

On Monday the fourteenth a boat was hoisted out for two gentlemen to make some observations and experiments. While they were thus engaged, the fog increased so much, that they entirely lost sight of both of the ships. Their situation was truly terrific and alarming, as they were only in a small four oared boat, in an immense ocean, surrounded with ice, utterly destitute of provisions, and far from any habitable shore. They made various efforts to be heard, and rowed about for some time, without effect; they could not see the length of their boats, nor hear any sound. They had neither mast nor sail, only two oars. They determined to lie still, as the weather was calm, and hoped that the ships would not swim out of sight. A bell sounded at a distance, which was heavenly music to their ears. They were at last taken up by the Adventure, and thus narrowly escaped those extreme dangers. So great was the thickness of the fog sometimes, that we had the utmost difficulty to avoid running against the islands of ice, with which we were surrounded. We stood to the south on the seventeenth, when the weather was clear and serene, and saw several flocks of birds, which we were unacquainted with. The skirts of the ice seemed to be more broken than usual, and we sailed among it most part of the day; we were obliged to stand to the northward, in order to avoid it. On the eighteenth we got clear of the field of ice, but was carried among

the ice islands, which it was difficult to keep clear of. The danger to which we were now exposed, was preferable to being entangled among immense fields of ice. There were two men on board the Resolution, who had been in the Greenland trade; the one had lain nine weeks, and the other six, stuck fast in a field of ice. That which is called a field of ice is very thick, and consists but of one piece, be it ever so large. There are other pieces of great extent packed together, and in some places heaped upon each other. How long such ice may have lain here, is not easily determined. In the Greenland seas, such ice is found all the summer long, and it cannot be colder there in summer time than it is here. Upon the supposition that this ice which we have been speaking of is generally formed in bays and rivers, we imagined that land was not far from us, and that the ice alone hindered our approaching it. We therefore determined to fail to the eastward, and afterwards to the south, and, if we met with no land or impediment, there to get behind the ice, that this matter might be put out of doubt. We found the weather much colder, and all the crew complained of it. Those jackets which were too short were lengthened with baize, and each of them had a cap made of the same stuff, which kept them as warm as the climate would admit. Scorbutic symptoms appearing on some of the people, the surgeons gave them fresh wort every day, made from the malt we took with us for that purpose.

We stood once more to the southward on the twenty-second instant. On the twenty-third, we hoisted out a boat to make such experiments as were thought necessary. We examined several species of birds, which we had shot as they hovered round us with seeming curiosity.

On the twenty-fifth, being Christmas-day, we were very cheerful, and notwithstanding the surrounding rocks of ice, the sailors spent it in savage noise and drunkenness. On the twenty-sixth, we sailed through large quantities of broken ice. We were still surrounded with islands, which in the evening appeared very beautiful, the edges being tinged by the setting sun. We were now in latitude 58 deg. 31 min. S.

On the twenty-seventh we had a dead calm, and we devoted the opportunity to shooting petrels and penguins. This afforded great sport, though we were unsuccessful in our chase of penguins. We were obliged to give over the pursuit, as the birds dived so frequently, and continued so long under water. We at last wounded one repeatedly, but was forced finally to kill it with a ball; its hard glossing plumage having constantly turned the shot aside. The plumage of this bird is very thick, the feathers long and narrow, and lie as close as seals. These amphibious birds are thus secured against the wet, in which they almost continually live. Nature has likewise given them a thick skin, in order to resist the perpetual winter of these inhospitable climates. The penguin we shot weighed eleven pounds and a half. The petrels are likewise well provided against the severity of the weather. These latter have an astonishing quantity of feathers, two feathers instead of one proceeding out of every root. Glad were we to be thus employed, or indeed to make any momentary reflections on any subject, that we might in some measure change that gloomy uniformity in which we so slowly passed our time in these desolate and unfrequented seas. We had constant disagreeable weather, consisting of thick fogs, rain, sleet, hail, and snow; we were surrounded with innumerable quantities of ice, and were in constant danger of being split by them; add to which, we were forced to live upon salt provisions, which concurred with the weather to infect our masts of blood. Our seamen coming fresh from England did not yet mind these severities and fatigue, their spirits kept them above repining at them; but among some of us a wish prevailed to exchange our situation for a happier and more temperate one. The crew were well supplied with portable broth and four kreut, which had the desired effect in keeping them from the scurvy. The habit of body in one man was

not to be relieved by those expedients, but he was cured by the constant use of fresh wort. This useful remedy ought never to be forgotten in ships bound on long voyages, or the encomiums on the efficacy of malt cannot be exaggerated; great care must also be taken to prevent its becoming damp and mouldy, for if it is suffered to do so, its salutary qualities will become impaired in a long voyage.

On the 29th, the commanders came to a resolution, provided they met with no impediment, to run as far west as Cape Circumcision, since the sea seemed to be pretty clear of ice, and the distance not more than eighty leagues. We steered for an island of ice this day, intending to take some on board, and convert it into fresh water. On this island we saw a great number of penguins. The fight of these birds is said to be a sure indication of the vicinity of land. This may hold good where there are no ice islands, but not so when there are any, for there they find a resting place. We will not determine whether there are any females among them at so great a distance from land, or whether they go on shore to breed.

On the 31st, we stood for this island again, but could not take up any of the loose ice, for the wind increased so considerably, as to make it dangerous for the ships to remain among the ice; besides which, we discovered an immense field of ice to the north, extending further than the eye could reach. We had no time to deliberate, as we were not above two or three miles from it.

On the 1st of January, the gale abated, but there fell a good deal of snow and sleet, which froze on the rigging of the ships. The wind continued moderate the next day, and we were favoured with a sight of the moon, whose face we had not seen since we left the Cape of Good Hope. We were now in 59 deg. 12 min. S. latitude, and in 9 deg. 45 min. E. longitude. Several observations were made of the sun and moon. We were nearly in the longitude assigned by M. Bouvet to Cape Circumcision; but as the weather was very clear at this time, inasmuch that we could see at least fifteen leagues distance from us, it is most probable that what he took for land was no more than mountains of ice, surrounded by loose or packed ice, the appearances of which are so deceptive. From all the observations we could make, we think it highly probable that there is no land under the meridian between the latitude of 55 and 59 deg. We directed our course to the E. S. E. that we might get more to the S. We had a fresh gale and a thick fog, a good deal of snow and sleet, which froze on the rigging, and every rope was covered with fine transparent ice. This was pleasing enough to look at, but made us imagine it was colder than it really was, for the weather was much milder than it had been for many days past, and there was not so much ice in the sea. One inconvenience attended us, which was, that the men found it very difficult to handle the rigging.

On Friday the 8th, we passed more ice islands, which became very familiar to us. In the evening we came to one which had a vast quantity of loose ice about it, and, as the weather was moderate, we brought to, and sent the boats out to take up as much as they could. Large piles of it were packed upon the quarter-deck, and put into casks, from which, after it was melted, we got water enough for thirty days. A very little salt water adhered to the ice, and the water which this produced was very fresh and good. Excepting the melting and taking away the ice, this is a most expeditious method of supplying ships with water. We observed here several white whales, of an immense size. In two days afterwards we took in more ice, as did the Adventure. Some persons on board, who were ignorant of natural philosophy, were very much afraid that the unmelted ice, which was kept in casks, when the weather altered, would dissolve and burst the casks in which it was packed, thinking that, in its melted state it would take up more room than in its frozen one. In order to undeceive them, Capt. Cook placed a little pot of stamped ice in a temperate cabin, which, as it gradually

dually dissolved, This was a con- this sort subside we had frequent and trying exper to us on many a the opportunity of which is very nee

On the 17th circle; and adva which to all form table. We cou the weather was saw the whole fea We saw a new sp with a white bell the wings; we fa any of them fell i tartic petrel, a hereabouts.

In the afternoo and small. This ferent kinds of the Greenlandm several whales pl flocks of petrels. min. S.

We did not thi ern direction, as t the world produc have taken up m supposing it pra directly in searc French.

On the 19th, i in Capt. Cook's Egmont hen; fo bers of them to islands. They are and thick, of a ch under each wing. far from land; a stance to hope tha pointed; the ice i hither.

On the 21st, we wings. On the 2 amazing swiftness their sides, which went at least thr we went at the rat On the 31st, we p time of our sailin plotion equalled th

On the 1st of Fe sea weed floating quainted Capt. C divers, which very seas, and likewise These were certain could not tell wh

A narrative of vol Chavotte's Sound Capt. Furneaux's some low islands arrive at Otahiti

THE country The islands w Dusky Bay, were with woods; the v intermixed with the contrast. The roe

dually dissolved, took up much less space than before. This was a convincing argument, and their fears of this sort subsided. As we had now several fine days, we had frequent opportunities of making observations, and trying experiments, which were very serviceable to us on many accounts. The people likewise took the opportunity of washing their faces in fresh water, which is very necessary in long voyages.

On the 17th, before noon, we crossed the antarctic circle; and advanced into the southern frigid zone, which to all former navigators had remained impenetrable. We could see several leagues around us, as the weather was tolerably clear. In the afternoon we saw the whole sea covered with ice, from S. E. to S. W. We saw a new species of the petrel, of a brown colour, with a white belly and rump, and a large white spot on the wings; we saw great flights of them, but never any of them fell into the ships. We called it the Antarctic petrel, as such numbers of them were seen hereabouts.

In the afternoon we saw thirty-eight ice islands, large and small. This immense field was composed of different kinds of ice; such as field-ice, as so called by the Greenlanders, and packed ice. Here we saw several whales playing about the ice, and still large flocks of petrels. Our latitude was now 67 deg. 15 min. S.

We did not think it prudent to persevere in a southern direction, as that kind of summer which this part of the world produces was now half spent; and it would have taken up much time to have gone round the ice, supposing it practicable; we therefore resolved to go directly in search of the land lately discovered by the French.

On the 19th, in the evening, we saw a bird, which in Capt Cook's former voyage was called the Port Egmont hen; so called, because there are great numbers of them to be seen at Port Egmont in Falkland islands. They are about the size of a large crow, short and thick, of a chocolate colour, with a white speck under each wing. Those birds are said never to go far from land; and we were induced from this circumstance to hope that land was near, but we were disappointed; the ice islands had probably brought this bird hither.

On the 21st, we saw white albatrosses with black tipped wings. On the 29th, several porpoises passed us with amazing swiftness; they had a large white spot on their sides, which came almost up to their backs. They went at least three times as fast as our vessels, and we went at the rate of seven knots and a half an hour. On the 31st, we passed a large ice island, which at the time of our sailing by was tumbling to pieces. The explosion equalled that of a cannon.

On the 1st of February, we saw large quantities of sea weed floating by the ships. Capt. Furneaux acquainted Capt. Cook, that he had seen a number of divers, which very much resembled those in the English seas, and likewise a large bed of floating rock-weed. These were certain signs of the vicinity of land; but we could not tell whether it was to the E. or W. We

imagined that no land of any extent lay to the W. because the sea ran so high from the N. E. N. N. W. and W. we therefore steered to the E. lay to in the night, and resumed our course in the morning. We saw two or three egg birds, and passed several pieces of rock-weed, but no other signs of land. We steered northward, and made signal for the Adventure to follow, as she was rather thrown astern by her movement to the eastward. We could not find land in that direction,

we again steered southward. There was an exceeding thick fog on the 4th, on which we lost sight of the Adventure. We fired several signals, but were not answered; on which account we had too much reason to think that a separation had taken place, though we could not well tell what had been the cause of it. Capt. Cook had directed Capt. Furneaux, in case of a separation, to cruise three days in that place he last saw the Resolution. Capt. Cook accordingly made short boards, and fired half hour guns till the afternoon of the 7th, when the weather cleared up, and the Adventure was not to be seen in the limits of that horizon. We were obliged to lie till the 10th, and notwithstanding we kept firing guns, and burning false fires all night, we neither saw nor heard any thing of the Adventure, and were obliged to make sail without her, which was but a dismal prospect, for we were now exposed to the danger of the frozen climate without the company of our fellow-voyagers, which before had relieved our spirits, when we considered that we were not entirely alone in case we lost our own vessel. The crew universally regretted the loss of the Adventure; and they seldom looked around the ocean without expressing some concern that we were alone on this unexplored expanse. At this time we had an opportunity of seeing what we had never observed before, the aurora australis, which made a very grand and luminous appearance. Nothing material happened to us, but various changes of the weather and climate, till the 25th of March, when land was seen from the mast-head, which greatly exhilarated the spirits of our sailors. We steered in for the land with all the sail we could carry, and had the advantage of good weather and a fresh gale. The captain mistook the bay before us for Dusky Bay, the islands that lay at the mouth of it having deceived him. We proceeded for Dusky Bay, in New Zealand, but with much caution as we advanced nearer the land. We passed several islands, &c. and two leagues up the bay an officer was sent out to look for anchorage, which he found, and signified it by signal. Here we anchored in fifty fathoms water, and very near the shore. This joyful circumstance happened on the 26th of March, after we had been 117 days at sea, and sailed 3660 leagues, without so much as once seeing land. It might be supposed, from the length of time we had been at sea, that the people would have been generally affected by the scurvy; but the contrary happened, owing to the precautions we used. We had much reason to be thankful to the Divine Providence, that no untoward accident had befallen us, and that our crew were in good health.

C H A P. II.

A narrative of what happened in Dusky Bay, in New Zealand—Interviews with the natives—The Resolution sails to Charlotte's Sound—Is there joined by the Adventure—Transactions in this place, with observations on the inhabitants—Capt. Furneaux's narrative—The two ships proceed in company from New Zealand to the island of Otahete—Remarks on some low islands, supposed to be the same that were discovered by M. de Bougainville—The Resolution and Adventure arrive at Otahete—Are in a critical situation—An account of several incidents while they lay in Ootipiba Bay.

THE country appeared beautiful and pleasing. The islands we passed, before our entrance into Dusky Bay, were shaded with evergreen, and covered with woods, the various shades of autumnal yellow, intermixed with the evergreens, exhibited a delightful contrast. The rocky shores were enlivened with flocks

of aquatic birds, and the whole country resounded with the wild notes of the feathered songsters. As soon as we anchored we caught great numbers of fish, which eagerly took the bait laid for them. Our first meal upon fish here was looked upon as the most delightful we had ever made. Capt. Cook did not like the place in

in which we anchored, and sent lieutenant Pickersgill in search of a better, which he soon found. The captain led it, and called it Pickersgill harbour. This we entered on the twenty-seventh of March, by a channel which was scarcely twice the width of the ship. Here we determined to stay some time, and examine it thoroughly, as no one had ever entered it before, or landed on any of the southern parts of this country. Our situation was admirable for wood and water. Our yards were locked in the branches of trees, and near our stern ran a delightful stream of fresh water. We made preparations on shore for making all necessary observations, and perform necessary repairs, &c. &c. The five cattle we had left, which consisted of a few sheep and goats, would not taste the grass which grew on the shore; nor were they very fond of the leaves of tender plants which grew here. When we examined these poor creatures, we found their teeth loose, and they had other symptoms of an inveterate scurvy. We had not hitherto seen any appearance of inhabitants; but on the twenty-eight some of the officers went on a shooting party in a small boat, and discovering them, returned to acquaint Capt. Cook therewith. Very shortly a canoe came filled with them, within musket shot of the ship. They stood looking at us for some time, and then returned; we could not prevail upon them to come any nearer, notwithstanding we shewed them every token of peace and friendship. Capt. Cook, with several officers and gentlemen, went in search of them the same day. We found the canoe hauled upon the shore, where were several huts, with fire-places and fishing-nets, but the people had probably retired into the woods. We made but a short stay, and left in the canoe some medals, looking-glasses, &c. not chusing to search any further, or enforce an interview which they wished to avoid; we returned accordingly to the ship. Two parties went out the next day, but returned without finding any thing worth noticing.

On the first of April we went to see if any thing we had left in the canoe remained there. It did not appear that any body had been there, and none of the things meddled with. On the 2nd we again went on shore to search for natural productions. We killed three seals, and found many ducks, wood hens, and wild fowl, several of which we killed. Another party went ashore the same day, and took with them a black dog we had brought from the Cape, who ran into the woods at the first musquet they fired, and would not return. Both parties came back to the ship in the evening.

On the sixth, we made a shooting party, and found a capacious cove, where we shot several ducks; on which account we called it Duck Cove. We had an interview with one man and two women, as we returned in the evening, who were natives, and the first that discovered themselves; and had not the man hallooted to us, we should have passed without seeing them. The man stood upon the point of a rock, with a club in his hand, and the women were behind him with spears. As we approached, the man discovered great signs of fear, but stood firm; nor would he move to take up some things that were thrown to him. His fears were all dissipated by Capt. Cook's going up to embrace him; the captain gave him such things as he had about him. The officers and seamen followed the Captain, and talked some time with him; though we could not understand them. In this conversation, the youngest of the women bore the greatest share. A droll fellow of a sailor remarked, that the women did not want tongue in any part of the world. We were obliged to leave them on the approach of night; but before we parted Mrs. Talkative gave us a dance.

On the seventh we made them another visit, and presented them with several things; but they beheld every thing with indifference, except hatchets and spike nails. We now saw all the man's family, as we supposed, which consisted of two wives, the young woman we mentioned before, a boy about fourteen years old, and three small children. Excepting one woman (who

had a large wen upon her upper lip) they were well favoured; on account of her disagreeable appearance, she seemed to be neglected by the man. We were conducted to their habitation, which consisted of two mean huts, situated near the skirts of a wood. Their canoe lay in a small creek, near the huts, and was just large enough to transport the whole family from place to place. A gentleman of our party made sketches of them, which occasioned their calling him Toe-Toe; which, it seems, is a word which signifies marking or painting. On taking leave, the man presented Capt. Cook with some trilles, and a piece of cloth of their own manufacture; and pointed to a boat cloak, which he wished to have. The hint was taken, and one was ordered to be made for him of red baize. On the 9th we paid the natives another visit, and signified our approach by hallooting to them; but they neither met us on shore, nor answered us as usual; the reason of which was, that their time was fully occupied in dressing themselves to receive us. They had their hair combed and oiled, stuck with white feathers, and tied upon the crowns of their heads, and had bunches of feathers stuck in their ears. We were received by them with great courtesy in their dress. The man was so well pleased with the present of the cloak, that he took his patta-patoo from his side, and gave it to Capt. Cook. We continued here a little time, and took leave, spending the rest of the day in surveying the bay.

On Monday the twelfth this family paid us a visit in their canoe, but proceeded with caution as they approached the ship. We could not by any means persuade them to come on board, but put ashore in a little creek near us, and sat themselves down near enough to speak to us. Capt. Cook ordered the bagpipes to play, and the drum to beat; the latter only they regarded. They conversed very familiarly (though not well understood) with such officers and seamen as went to them, and paid a much greater regard to some than to others; we supposed that they took such for women. One of the females shewed a remarkable fondness for one man in particular, until she found out his sex; after which she would not let him approach her. We cannot tell whether she had before taken him for a female, or whether, in discovering himself, he had taken some liberties with her. In the evening the natives of Dusky Bay took up their quarters very near our watering-place, which was a clear proof that they placed a great deal of confidence in us. We passed two or three days in examining the bay and making necessary experiments and observations. We likewise shot great quantities of wild fowl.

On Monday the nineteenth, the man and his daughter before-mentioned ventured on board our ship, while the rest of the family were fishing in the canoe. Before the man would come into the ship, he struck the side of it with a green branch, and muttered some words, which we took for a prayer; after which he threw away the branch and came on board. We were at breakfast, but could not prevail on them to partake with us. They viewed every part of the cabin with apparent curiosity and surprise; but we could not fix the man's attention to any one thing for a moment. All we shewed him seemed beyond his comprehension, and the works of nature and art were alike regarded. The strength and number of our decks and other parts of the ship seemed to strike him with surprise. The man was still better pleased with hatchets and spike-nails than any thing our ship produced; when he had once got possession of these, he would not quit them. Capt. Cook and three other gentlemen left the ship as soon as they could disengage themselves from the visitors, whom they left in the gun-room, and went out in two boats to examine the head of the bay; at which place they took up their night's lodging; the next day they continued their observations, and fired at some ducks. Upon the report of the gun, the natives, who had not discovered themselves before, set up a most hideous roar in different places. The gentlemen hallooted in their turn, and retreated to their boats. The natives did not follow them, neither indeed could they, because a branch

of the river separated them. As they observed, the woods. A man on the banks of the river, a token of friendship near them, and two others appeared, they retreated like thick cover. The next night in the bark to return opposite shore, we induced to row, other gentlemen together, but the natives still till Capt. Cook difficulty that he his spear; at last grass plant in his hand whilst he from their food the captain did not of answer; they five took his coat. The Captain hatchet and a knife. They invited them wanted them to accepting of this in the skirts of the nearer. The two to their boats, but appearance of the appearance of the to watch them, thing except the in launching the boats any boats or canoe logs of wood tied to purposes; for the of which they lived ed with fish and some tives of this bay died. This party to and in the evening found that the visitor he and his family went into the woods this appears rather away without food made in order to catch food, for oil, and The flesh of them their entrails are equal took the summit made other remarks.

On Saturday the geese and a gander those brought from ried them to a cow goose-cave; this was not likely to be difficult plenty of food for to breed and spread had now several days opportunity of mutton.

On Tuesday the the sea more convenient the bay; we shot for with the day's experiment wind to carry us on had discovered, got on board. The which consisted children on fire, in order to Capt. Cook fowed seeds. This was the No. 15.

of the river separated them, but still made a great noise. As they continued shooting and making their observations, they frequently heard the natives in the woods. A man and woman appeared at last on the banks of the river, waving something in their hands as a token of friendship. The gentlemen could not get near them, and the natives retreated into the woods. Two others appeared; but as the gentlemen advanced, they retreated likewise, and the woods afforded them thick cover. The captain and his party passed the next night in the same place, and after breakfast embarked to return on board; but saw two men on the opposite shore, who hallooed to them, and they were induced to row over to them. Capt. Cook with two other gentlemen landed unarmed, and advanced all together, but the natives retreated, nor would they stand still till Capt. Cook went up alone. It was with some difficulty that he prevailed on one of them to lay down his spear; at last he did it, and met the captain with a grass plant in his hand, giving Capt. Cook one end to hold whilst he himself held the other. In this position they stood while the native made a speech, which the captain did not understand, but returned some sort of answer; they then saluted each other, and the native took his coat from his back, and put it on the captain. The Captain presented each of them with a hatchet and a knife, having nothing else with him. They invited the gentlemen to their habitation, and wanted them to eat, but the tide prevented their accepting of this invitation. More people appeared in the skirts of the woods, but did not approach any nearer. The two natives accompanied the gentlemen to their boats, but seemed very much agitated at the appearance of the musquets, which they looked upon as instruments of death, on account of the slaughter they had seen among the fowls. It was necessary to watch them, for they laid their hands on every thing except the musquets. They assisted the seamen in launching the boat. It did not appear that they had any boats or canoes with them, but used two or three logs of wood tied together, which answered the same purposes; for the navigation of the river, on the banks of which they lived, was not very difficult, and smarmed with fish and fowl. We apprehend that all the natives of this bay did not exceed more than three families. This party took leave of the man about noon; and in the evening returned to the ship, when they found that the visitors had staid on board till noon; that he and his family remained near them till that day, and went into the woods, after which they were never seen; this appears rather extraordinary, as they never went away without some present. Several parties were made in order to catch seals, which were very useful for food, for oil, and their skins were cured for rigging. The flesh of them is as good as beef-steaks, and their entrails are equal to that of a hog. We likewise took the summit of the mountain in this bay, and made other remarks.

On Saturday the twenty-fourth Capt. Cook took five geese and a gander, which were all that remained of those brought from the Cape of Good Hope, and carried them to a cove, which on this account he called goose-cove; this was a convenient place, for they were not likely to be disturbed by the inhabitants, there was plenty of food for them, and they were likely here to breed and spread the country with their species. We had now several days fair weather, which gave us a fine opportunity of making necessary preparations for departure.

On Tuesday the twenty-seventh we found an arm of the sea more convenient than that by which we entered the bay; we shot several ducks, and were much pleased with the day's expedition. All we now waited for was wind to carry us out of harbour by the new passage we had discovered. The tents and all other articles were got on board. The rubbish we had made on shore, which consisted chiefly of pieces of wood, &c. we set on fire, in order to dry the ground, which being done, Capt. Cook sowed the spot with various sorts of garden seeds. This was the best place we could find to place

them in. We made several efforts to sail, but the wind proving contrary we made but little way, and were obliged to anchor on the first of May on the north side of Long Island. Here we found two huts with fire places, which appeared to be lately inhabited. Capt. Cook was detained on board by a cold, and sent a party to explore an arm of the sea which turns in to the east. This party found a good anchoring place, with plenty of wild fowl, fish, and fresh water. We made several shooting parties when the wind would not permit us to sail. Before we leave Dusky Bay, we think it necessary to give our readers some description of it.

There are two entrances to this Bay, which are by no means dangerous; and there are numerous anchoring places, which are at once safe and commodious; at Cascade Cove, so called on account of the magnificent cascade near it, is room for a fleet of ships, and a very good passage in and out. The country is very mountainous, and the prospect is rude and craggy. The land bordering on the sea-coast, and all its lands, are covered with wood. There are trees of various kinds which are common in other countries, the timber of which is remarkably fine. Here are likewise a great number of aromatic plants, and the woods are so over-run with fuple jacks, that it is difficult to make way through them. The soil is undoubtedly composed of decayed vegetables, which make a deep black mould; it is very loose, and sinks at every step. This may be the reason why there are so many large trees blown down as we meet with in the woods. Except flax and hemp, there is very little herbage. The Bay abounds with fish, which we caught in great numbers. Seals are the only amphibious animals to be found here, but there are great numbers of them. Various kinds of ducks are to be found, as well as all other wild fowl. Here is likewise a bird which we called the wattle bird, because it has two wattles under its beak like those of a dunghill cock. Its bill is short and thick, its feathers are dark, and is about the size of an English black-bird. This we called the poy-bird, on account of two little tufts of curled hair which hang under its throat, called its poies, which is the Otaheitan word for earrings. The feathers of this bird are of a fine mazarine blue, except those of its neck, which are of a silver grey. The sweetness of its note is equal to the beauty of its plumage; its flesh is likewise luxurious food, though it is a great pity to kill them.

The small black sand flies are here very numerous and troublesome; they cause a swelling and intolerable itching wherever they bite. Another evil attending this bay is the almost continual rains that fall, but happily our people felt no ill effects from them. The place must certainly be healthful, as those of our crew, who were in any degree indisposed when we came in, recovered speedily.

The inhabitants of Dusky Bay are the same with those in other parts of New Zealand; they speak the same language, and adopt the same customs. It is not easy to divine what could induce these few families to separate themselves from the society of the rest of their fellow-creatures. It seems probable that there are people scattered all over this southern island, by our meeting with inhabitants in this place. They appear to lead a wandering life, and don't seem to be in perfect amity with each other.

On Tuesday the 11th of May, we again made sail, but met with more obstructions. We observed on a sudden a whitish spot on the sea, out of which a column arose which looked like a glass tube. It appeared that another of the same sort came down from the clouds to meet this, and they made a coalition and formed what is called a water-spout; several others were formed in the same manner soon after. As we were not very well acquainted with the nature and causes of these spouts, we were very curious in examining them. Their base was a broad spot, which looked bright and yellowish when the sun shone upon it; this appeared when the sea was violently agitated, and vapours rose in a spiral form. The columns were like a cylinder, and moved forward on the surface of the sea, and frequently

appeared crossing each other, they at last broke one after another, this was owing to the clouds not following them with equal rapidity. The sea appeared more and more covered with short broken waves as the clouds came nearer to us; the wind veered about, and did not fix in any one point. Within 200 fathoms of us, we saw a spot in the sea in violent agitation; the water ascended in a spiral form towards the clouds; the clouds looked black and lowering, and some hail stones fell on board. A cloud gradually tapered into a long slender tube directly over the agitated spot, and seemed descending to meet the rising spiral, and soon united with it. The last water-spout broke like others, no explosion was heard, but a flash of lightning attended this disjunction. The oldest mariners on board had never been so near water-spouts before, they were therefore very much alarmed. Had we been drawn into the vortex, it was generally believed that our masts and yards must have gone to wreck. From the first appearance, to the last dissolution, was three quarters of an hour.

On May the 18th, at five o'clock in the morning, we opened Queen Charlotte's Sound, and saw three flashes arising from a strong hold of the natives. We imagined them to be signals of the Europeans, and probably of our old friends in the Adventure; when we fired some guns, we were answered, and in a short time saw the Adventure at anchor. We were saluted by Capt. Furneaux with 13 guns, which we very cheerfully returned; none can describe the joy we felt at this most happy meeting.

As it must be pleasing to our Subscribers and Readers whose generous encouragement we have experienced, and it being our intention, in return, to render this work as complete, in every respect as possible, we shall here present them with a complete Narrative of Capt. Furneaux's proceedings, and of the various incidents that happened, during the separation of the two ships, to their joining again in Queen Charlotte's Sound; with an account of Van Diemen's Land.

A. D. 1773. **T**HE Adventure, on Sunday the 4th of February, after having lost sight of the Resolution, in a very thick fog, had no other means of again meeting with her, but by cruising in the place where they parted company, or by repairing to Charlotte Bay, the first appointed place of rendezvous, in case such a misfortune should happen. Soon after their separation, the people of the Adventure heard a gun, the report of which they judged to be on the larboard beam; upon which, they hauled up S. E. and fired a four pounder every half hour; but receiving no return, nor sight of their companion, they kept the course they had steered before the fog came on. In the evening it began to blow hard. The storm was attended with a prodigious fall of rain, every drop of the size of a common pea; and the sea broke over the ship's bows to the height of the yard arms; yet, at intervals, the weather was more clear; but at these favourable opportunities, they could not see their wished for object, the Resolution, which gave them many moments replete with inexplicable uneasiness. They then stood to the westward, to cruise in the latitude where they last saw her, according to agreement, in case of separation; but the storm returned with renewed fury, and the weather being again exceeding hazy, they were compelled to bring to, which untoward circumstance prevented them from reaching the intended place; however, they cruised as near the same as they could for three days, when, after having kept beating about the seas, in the most terrible weather that any ship could possibly endure, and giving all hopes over of joining their lost companion, they bore away for winter-quarters, 1400 leagues distant from them; and, having to traverse a sea entirely unknown, they took every precaution for their safety, and reduced the allowance of water to one quart a day for each seaman. On the 8th, they kept between the latitude 52 and 53 degrees S. and

reached to 95 deg. E. longitude. They had here hard gales from the W. attended with snow, sleet, and a long hollow sea from the S. W. On the 26th a meteor, called to the northward, the Aurora Borealis, or northern lights, appeared with uncommon brightness in the N. N. W. directing its course to the S. W. And what is more remarkable, after our separation from the Resolution to our making land, we saw but one of the ice-islands, though in the most part of our long run, we were 2 or 3 degrees southward of the latitude in which we first met with them; but we saw numberless sea birds, and porpoises, curiously spotted with white and black, frequently darted swiftly by our ship.

On Monday the 1st of March, having made no discovery of land, though we had travelled from latitude 48 to 45 degrees S. and from longitude 36 to 146 degrees, it was determined to bear away for Van Diemen's Land, in order to take in water, and repair our shattered rigging. This land, supposed to join New Holland, was discovered by Tasman A. D. 1642, and in the charts is laid down in latitude 44 deg. S. and longitude 140 deg. E. On the 9th, being Tuesday, about nine o'clock A. M. we fell in with the S. W. part of this coast bearing N. N. E. 8 or 9 leagues distant, and 140 deg. 10 min. E. longitude from Greenwich. It appeared moderately high and uneven near the sea, but the hills farther back formed a double land and much higher. We saw a point which bore N. four leagues off from us, much like the Ram-head off Plymouth. This we concluded to be the same that Tasman called the South Cape. About four leagues E. S. E. half E. from hence are three islands, and several rocks, resembling the Mewstone, (one of which we discovered) and they are not laid down by Tasman in his draughts. At the South East Cape, in latitude 43 deg. 36 min. S. and 147 deg. E. longitude, the country is hilly and full of trees, the shore rocky, and landing difficult, caused by the wind blowing continually from the westward, which occasions such a surf, that the sand cannot lie on the shore. On Wednesday the 10th A. M. the second lieutenant was dispatched in the great cutter, the ship being about four miles from the land, to find if there was any harbour or good bay. With much difficulty they landed, saw several places where the Indians had been, and one they had lately left. There was a path in the woods, which probably leads to their habitations, but our people had not time to pursue it. The soil appears to be very rich, and the lee country well clothed with wood, especially on the side of the hills. Plenty of water fell from the rocks, in beautiful cascades, for two or three hundred feet perpendicular into the sea. Not perceiving the least sign of any place to anchor in, we hoisted in the boat and made sail for Frederick Henry Bay. At three o'clock P. M. we were abreast of the westernmost point of a very deep bay called by Tasman, Stormy Bay. Several islands from the W. to the E. point of this bay, and some black rocks, we named the Friars. At seven, being abreast of a fine bay, with little wind, we came to, and by a good observation found our latitude to be 43 deg. 20 min. S. and our longitude 147 deg. 34 min. E. On Thursday the 11th, at day-break, we found a most commodious harbour, and at seven in the evening, we anchored in 7 fathom water, about one mile from the shore on each side. Maria's island is about 5 or 6 leagues off. Here we lay five days, and found the country exceeding pleasant. The soil, though thin, is rich; and the sides of the hills are covered with large trees, that grow to a great height before they branch off. They differ from any we had hitherto seen. All of them are of the evergreen kind, and the wood being very brittle, is easily split. Of these we found only two sorts. The leaves of one are long and narrow, and the seed, shaped like a button, has a very agreeable smell. The leaves of the other resemble those of the bay, and its seed that of the white thorn. From these trees, when cut down, issued, what the fergoons call, gum-bac. They are scorched near the ground, by the natives setting fire to the underwood in the most unfrequented places. Of the land birds, are some like a raven, others

of the crow kind, and birds. One of our fowl are ducks, teal, saw only an opossum which we pronounced we caught in the bay another fort called spots, and some Lagoons are trout which we caught we did not see any stroke of their fireward. It is evident their wigwams or either broken, or the largest ends are brought to a point a circular form, and the middle of which is a heap of muske, in one of their huts with, and some times others of their wigwams at one end, with which contained, other necessaries, away, leaving in the nails, and an old iron of these people few workmanship being keep out a shower ground, on dried deer about, in search of food and, from what an ignorant, wretched of a country capable, and a climate got on board our venture Bay, intending covering whether Holland.

On Tuesday the 17th of March we saw the main land, and the shore. Here the land level; the harbour or bay, safety. The land to the westward, and 50 min. is nothing appearing high, rock the northward, and soon after disconcerted shore, being very where we stood in the direction Furneaux was between New Holland very deep bay. S. S. E. and seen ward, he thought and make the best

On the 24th, a severe squall re-shipped many water, and with much one from being gale, which continued perate weather, we made the coast S. latitude, having from Adventure we first came in, being a confused steered along the was much retarded.

On Saturday, we desisted landing

of the crow kind, paroquets, and several sorts of small birds. One of our gentlemen shot a large white fowl of the eagle kind, about the size of a kite. The sea fowl are ducks, teal, and the feldrake. Of beasts we saw only an opossum, but observed the dung of others which we pronounced to be of the deer kind. The fish which we caught in the bay were mostly sharks, dog fish, and another sort called by the seamen nurfes, full of white spots, and some small ones not unlike sprats. In the Lagoons are trout, and other sorts of fish, a few of which we caught with hooks. During our stay here, we did not see any of the natives, but perceived the smoke of their fires, eight or ten miles to the northward. It is evident that they come into this bay from their wigwams or huts, which are formed of boughs, either broken, or split, and tied together with grafs: the largest ends are stuck in the ground, and the smaller are brought to a point at the top; making the whole of a circular form, which is covered with fern or bark, in the middle of which is the fire-place, surrounded with heaps of muscle, pear scallop, and cray-fish shells. In one of their huts we found the stone they strike fire with, and some tinder made of the bark of a tree. In others of their wigwams were one of their spears, sharp at one end, with some bags and nets made of grafs, which contained, we imagine, their provisions and other necessaries. We brought most of those things away, leaving in their room medals, gun-flints, a few nails, and an old iron-hooped empty barrel. The huts of these people seemed to be built only for a day, the workmanship being so slender, that they will hardly keep out a shower of rain. The inhabitants lie on the ground, on dried grafs, round their fires. They wander about, in small parties, from one place to another in search of food, the chief end of their existence; and, from what we could judge, they are altogether an ignorant, wretched race of mortals, though natives of a country capable of producing every necessary of life, and a climate the finest in the world. Having got on board our wood and water, we sailed out of Adventure Bay, intending to coast it, with a view of discovering whether Van Diemen's Land is part of New Holland.

On Tuesday the 16th, we passed Maria's Islands, and on the 17th Schouten's, when we hauled in for the main land, and stood off two or three leagues along shore. Here the country appeared well inhabited, and the land level; but we discovered not any signs of a harbour or bay, wherein a ship might anchor with safety. The land in lat. 40 deg. 50 min. S. trends to the westward, and from this latitude to that of 39 deg. 50 min. is nothing but islands and shoals; the land appearing high, rocky, and barren. We now stood to the northward, and again made land in 39 deg. but soon after discontinued this course, to fall in with the shore, being very dangerous. From Adventure Bay to where we stood away for New Zealand, the coast lies in the direction S. half W. and N. half E. and Capt. Furneaux was of opinion, that there are no straits between New Holland and Van Diemen's Land, but a very deep bay. The wind blowing a strong gale at S. S. E. and seeming likely to shift round to the eastward, he thought it most prudent to leave the coast, and make the best of his way for New Zealand.

On the 24th, having left Van Diemen's Land, a very severe squall reduced us to reefed courses. We shipped many waves, one of which stove the large cutter, and with much difficulty we prevented the small one from being washed over-board. After this heavy gale, which continued twelve hours, we had more temperate weather, accompanied with calms. At length we made the coast of New Zealand in 40 deg. 30 min. S. latitude, having run twenty-four deg. of longitude from Adventure Bay, in a passage of fifteen days. When we first came in sight of land, it appeared high, forming a confused group of hills and mountains. We steered along shore to the northward, but our course was much retarded by the swell from the N. E.

On Saturday, April the 3d, at six o'clock, A. M. we descried land, which upon a nearer approach we

knew to be that which lies between Rock Point and Cape Farewell, so named by Capt. Cook, when on his return from his last voyage. Cape Farewell, the south point of the entrance of the west side of the straits, bore E. by N. half N. three or four leagues distant. Sunday, the 4th, we continued our course, and stood to the eastward for Charlotte's Sound. On Monday, the 5th, we worked up to windward under Point Jackson. From Stephen's Island to this point, the course is nearly S. E. distance eleven leagues. We fired several guns while standing off and on, but saw not any inhabitants. At half past two P. M. we anchored in thirty-nine fathoms water, muddy ground; Point Jackson being S. E. half E. three leagues. At eight we weighed and made sail. Tuesday, the 6th, at eight o'clock A. M. had the Sound open, and worked up under the western shore. At ten came to, close to some white rocks, in thirty-eight fathoms, and on the 7th anchored in Ship Cove, in ten fathoms water, and moored the best bower to the N. N. E. In the night heard the howling of dogs, and people hallooing on the east shore. Capt. Furneaux now ordered the large cutter to be manned, and sent her, with a proper guard, to examine, whether there were any signs of the Resolution having arrived at that harbour. The boat returned, without the least discovery, but that of the post, erected by the Endeavour's people, on the top of a hill, with her name and time of her departure in 1770. Upon this, we instantly prepared to send the tents ashore, for the accommodation of those who were afflicted with the scurvy; while such who enjoyed health were very alert in catching fish, which proved of great service in recovering our sick, to whom fresh provisions were both food and physic.

On Friday, the 9th, three canoes came along-side the Adventure, having fifteen Indians of both sexes, all armed with battle axes, and with other offensive weapons made of hard wood, in the form of our officers' spontoons, about four feet in length; but they had neither bows nor arrows. A kind of mat was wrapt round their shoulders, and tied about their waists with a girdle made of grafs. Both men and women exhibited a most savage appearance, and were very unwilling to venture on board. The Captain made them presents, and by signs invited them to trade. They accepted the presents, and some of them assumed courage enough to trust themselves on deck. One of our gentlemen, seeing something wrapt up, had the curiosity to examine what it was, when, to his great surprize, he found it to be the head of a man, which, by its bleeding, seemed to be fresh cut off. As Capt. Cook had expressed his abhorrence of such unnatural acts, the Indians were very apprehensive of its being forced from them, and the man, to whom it belonged, trembled for fear of being punished. They therefore, with surprising dexterity, in order to conceal the head, shifted it from one to another, till it was conveyed out of sight; endeavouring, at the same time, to convince us by signs, that no such thing was in their possession. They then left the ship, and went on shore, not without some visible signs of displeasure. In this visit they often mentioned the name of Tupia, and upon being informed he died at Batavia, some of them with much concern enquired whether we killed him, or if he died a natural death. By these questions, we concluded these Indians were some of the same tribe who had visited the Endeavour's company. They returned in the afternoon, with fish and fern roots, which they bartered for nails, to them the most valuable articles; but the man and woman who had the head were not among them. Having a catalogue of words in their language, we called several things by name, at which they seemed much surprized, and offered a quantity of fish for the catalogue. On Saturday the 10th about eight in the morning, five double canoes came along-side the Adventure, with about fifty Indians, at the head of whom was their chief. We purchased of them, for nails, and bottles, their implements of war, stone hatchets, cloth, &c. upon which they set a high price. Several of their head men came

on board, nor would they quit the ship by fair means; but upon presenting a musquet with a bayonet fixed, they quickly took leave of us, seemingly in great good humour; and afterwards they visited us daily, bringing with them fish in abundance, which they exchanged for nails, beads and other trifles. They behaved quite peaceably, and, having disposed of their cargoes, departed at all times, seemingly, well pleased. We now placed a guard on a little island, which, at low water, is joined to Mortuara, called the Hippah, at which place was an old fortified town, that had been abandoned by the natives. We took possession of their houses, and by sinking a fort within side, made them very comfortable. Here our astronomer erected his observatory; at the same time we struck our tents on Mortuara; and having run farther into the cove with the ship, we moored her for the winter, on the west shore, and gave her a winter coat to preserve her hull; then after sending ashore the spars and lumber of the decks to be caulked, we pitched our tents near the river, at the watering-place.

On Tuesday, the 11th of May, several of our crew, who were at work on shore, very sensibly felt the shock of an earthquake, from which circumstance we think it probable, that there are volcanos in New Zealand, as these phenomena generally go together. On the 12th, the weather continuing fair, and the Indians friendly, the Captain and officers were preparing to go ashore, when about nine A. M. no less than ten canoes came paddling down the Sound. We counted one hundred and twenty natives all armed. When along-side of the ship, they expressed a desire to be admitted on board; but Capt. Furneaux, not liking their looks and gestures, gave orders, that a few only should be admitted at a time. These behaved so disorderly that the sailors were obliged to turn them out, and it now appeared plainly that the intentions of our visitors were to make themselves masters of the ship: however, finding the crew to be upon their guard, they became more civil, but not before a great gun was discharged over their heads, which alone intimidated them. Being thus reduced to order, the people on board produced several articles, such as beads, small clasp knives, scissars, cloth, paper, and other trifles, which they bartered for battle axes, spears, weapons of various sorts, fish-hooks, and other curiosities, the manufacture of the country. Being visibly disappointed in the execution of their grand design, they took to their canoes, all gabbling together in a language, a word of which no one on board could understand: but previous to their departure, the captain and officers made presents to these among them who appeared to be their chiefs, which they accepted with great apparent satisfaction.

Three months were now elapsed since the Adventure lost sight of the Resolution; but on the 17th she was seen at Jackson Point. We immediately sent out boats to her assistance, it being calm, to tow her into the Sound. In the evening she anchored about a mile without us, and next morning weighed and warped within us. The pleasure the ships companies felt at meeting can only be conceived by those who have been in like circumstances, each were as eager to relate as the others were to hear. Having thus related the progress of the Adventure, we now come to record the transactions of both ships after their junction. It were little more than a repetition of the Adventure's distresses to recapitulate the effects of the boisterous weather that were felt by the crew of the Resolution; being sometimes surrounded with islands of ice, out of which they could only extricate themselves by the utmost exertion of their skill in seamanship, sometimes involved in sheets of sleet and snow, and in mists so dark, that a man on the fore-castle could not be seen from the quarter deck; sometimes the sea rolling mountains high, while the running tackle, made brittle by the severity of the frost, was frequently snapping, and sometimes rendered immovable. Amidst the hardships of such a traverse, there is nothing more astonishing, than that the crew should continue in perfect health, scarce a man being so ill as to be incapable of duty. Nothing can

redound more to the honour of Capt. Cook, than his paying particular attention to the preservation of health among his company. By observing the strictest discipline from the highest to the lowest, his commands were duly observed, and punctually executed. When the service was hard, he tempered the severity thereof by frequently relieving those employed in the performance, and having all hands at command, he was never under the necessity of continuing the labour of any set of men beyond what their strength and their spirits could bear. Another necessary precaution was, that in fine or settled weather, the captain never suffered any of his men to be idle, but constantly employed the armours, the carpenters, the professed navigators, foremastmen, &c. in doing something each in his own way, which, though not immediately wanted, he knew there might be a call for before the voyage was completed. Having by this means left no spare time for gaming, quarrelling, or rioting, he kept them in action, and punished drunkenness with the utmost severity; and thus by persevering in a steady line of conduct, he was enabled to keep the sea till reduced to a very scanty portion of water; and when he despaired of finding any new land, and had fully satisfied himself of the non existence of any continent in the quarter he had traversed, he directed his course to Charlotte's Sound, the place appointed for both ships to rendezvous in case of separation, and appeared off the same, (as has been already related) on Tuesday, the 18th of May, 1773, and here we discovered our comfort the Adventure, by the signals she made to us, an event every one in both ships felt with inexpressible satisfaction.

The next morning after our arrival, being Wednesday, the 19th, Capt. Cook went off in the boat, at day-break, to gather scurvy grass, celery, and other vegetables. At breakfast time he returned with a boat load, enough for the crews of both ships; and knowing their salutary efficacy in removing scorbutic complaints, he ordered that they should be boiled with wheat and portable broth, every morning for breakfast, and with pease and broth for dinner, and thus dressed they are extremely beneficial. It was now the Captain's intention to visit Van Diemen's land, in order to determine whether it made a part of New Holland; but as Capt. Furneaux had cleared up this point, it was resolved to continue our researches to the east between the latitudes of 41 deg. and 46 deg. In consequence of this determination Capt. Cook ordered out his men to assist the crew of the Adventure in preparing her for sea. He was induced more especially to this, because he knew refreshments were to be procured at the Society Isles. On the 20th we visited the fortifications of the natives where the observatory was fixed. It is only accessible in one place, and there by a narrow, difficult path, being situated on a steep rock. The huts of the natives stood promiscuously within an inclosure of pallisades; they consisted only of a roof, and had no walls. Perhaps these are only occasional abodes, when the Indians find themselves in any danger. Capt. Furneaux had planted before our arrival, a great quantity of garden seeds, which grew very well, and produced plenty of salad and European greens. This day Capt. Cook sent on shore, to the watering-place, near the Adventure's tent, the only ewe and ram remaining of those we brought from the Cape of Good Hope. On the 21st we went over to Long Island, which consists of one long ridge, the top nearly level, and the sides steep. Here we found various kinds of stone, and sowed different kinds of garden seeds upon some spots which we cleared for that purpose. On Saturday, the 22d, we found the ewe and ram dead, whose death we supposed to have been occasioned by some poisonous plants. About noon we were visited by two small canoes in which were five men. They dined with us, and it was not a little they devoured. In the evening they were dismissed with presents. They resembled the people of Dusky Bay, but were much more familiar, and did not appear concerned at seeing us, which was probably owing to their having before visited the crew of the Adventure. Some of our crew made

use of their canoes they complained noes being restored

On Monday the Gilbert, the master rock we had discovered at the same time Furneaux and Mr. by on a shooring in which were 14 they asked was coming toll he was the same enquiry Capt. Furneaux getting aboard in a some Indians in a people, had also having loaded al be very small and This day the Reso firmly who came of our food, and wanted to know t before we could r found that the old others Kotugh-a-3, pupurua. The l age, very lively an vocaciously, and made of wild fow wine which the cap some sweet Cape his tongue was wanted the captai hurt at a refusal. being also denied a length was so fu On Saturday the 2 surrounded us with change, for which engerness with wh of them being deti tions of this count many women who their cheeks were large knees, an exercis, and litt These ladies were no opportunity of women since our soon found out, t part of their charac enuel: a spike n robe: the lady w and to exact from mult obverse to th to the discredit of submitted to this reluctance; and they pliance by the a men. The New ghs disgraceful cor offering their dau embraces of every tied women were kind of traffic, custom in New Ze on a number of m her character; but fidelity is expect characteristic of th men. Several of expressive counten looked very favou over their faces, described in our evening they all huts opposite to t prepared their su which they cau No. 15.

use of their canoes to set themselves ashore, on which they complained to the Captain; and, upon their canoes being restored, they seemed highly delighted.

On Monday the 24th, early in the morning, Mr. Gilbert, the master, was dispatched to sound about the rock we had discovered in the entrance of the found; at the same time Capt. Cook, accompanied by Capt. Furneaux and Mr. Forster, set off in a boat to the west bay on a shooting party. They met a large canoe, in which were 14 or 15 people; and the first question they asked was concerning the welfare of Tupia. Being told he was dead, they expressed some concern. The same enquiry, as has been observed, was made of Capt. Furneaux when he first arrived, and on our getting aboard in the evening, we were informed, that some Indians in a canoe, who were strangers to our people, had also enquired for Tupia. Mr. Gilbert having founded all round the rock, which he found to be very small and steep, returned late in the evening. This day the Resolution received another visit from a family who came with no other intent than partaking of our food, and to get foin of our iron work. We wanted to know their names, but it was a long time before we could make them understand us. At last we found that the oldest was called Towahanga, and the others Kotughia, Koghoaa, Khoaa, Kollakh, and Taupaperua. The last was a boy about twelve years of age, very lively and intelligent. He dined with us, eat voraciously, and was very fond of the crust of a pie made of wild fowl. He did not much relish Madeira wine which the captain gave him, but was very fond of some sweet Cape wine, which elevated his spirits and his tongue was perpetually going. He very much wanted the captain's boat cloak, and seemed much hurt at a refusal. An empty bottle and a table-cloth being also denied him, he grew exceeding angry, and at length was so fullen, that he would not speak a word. On Saturday the 29th instant, a great number of natives surrounded us with canoes, who brought goods to exchange, for which they got good returns, owing to the eagerness with which our sailors outbid each other, all of them being desirous of having some of the productions of this country. Among these Indians we saw many women whose lips were of a blackish hue, and their cheeks were painted with a lively red. They had large knees, an ill-learned bandy legs, owing to want of exercise, and sitting in their canoes cross legged. These ladies were very agreeable to our crews, who had no opportunity of indulging an intercourse with other women since our departure from England; and they soon found out, that chastity was not a distinguishing part of their character. Their consent was easily purchased: a spike nail, or an old shirt, was a sufficient bribe: the lady was then left to make her man happy, and to exact from him another present for herself. We must observe to the credit of some of these women, and to the discredit of their men, that several of the former submitted to this prostitution with much seeming reluctance; and they were sometimes terrified into a compliance by the authority and even menaces of the men. The New Zealanders encouraged by the gain of this disgraceful commerce, went through both the ships, offering their daughters and sisters to the promiscuous embraces of every one for iron, tools, &c. but the married women were not obliged to carry on this infamous kind of traffic. Indeed it seems to be an established custom in New Zealand for a girl to bestow her favour on a number of men, without the least infringement on her character; but after marriage, the strictest conjugal fidelity is expected from her. Sketches of the most characteristic of their faces were taken by our draughtsmen. Several of the old men in particular, had very expressive countenances; and some of the young ones looked very savage, owing to their bushy hair hanging over their faces. Their dress is like what is exactly described in our copper-plates for this work. In the evening they all went on shore, and erected temporary huts opposite to the ships. Here they made fires, and prepared their suppers, which consisted of fresh fish, which they caught with great dexterity. One of these

No. 15.

Indians Capt. Cook took over to Mortuara, and shewed him some potatoes, in a thriving condition, which were planted by Mr. Fannen, master of the Adventure. The man was so well pleased with them, that of his own accord, he began to hoe up the earth round the plants. He was then conducted to other plantations of turnips, carrots, and parsnips, of which it was easy to give them an idea, by comparing them with such roots as they were well acquainted with. We must further remark of these people, that not any of our methods of sowing are equal to theirs.

On the 30th instant, we went over to Long Island, to collect some hay which the crews had made, and to bring some vegetables on board. In this trip we found several new plants, and shot some small birds, which we had not seen before. In the afternoon, leave was given to some of our sailors to go on shore, where they again purchased the embraces of the women. These fellows must have been very keen indeed, or they would have been disgusted with the uncleanness of their doxies, all of whom had a disagreeable smell, which might be scented at a considerable distance; and their clothes as well as hair swarmed with vermin to a very great degree; which they occasionally cracked between their teeth. It is surprising how men, who had received a civilized education, could gratify the animal appetite with such loathsome creatures. While this party were on shore, a young woman on board stole one of our seamen's jackets, and gave it a young man of her own tribe; upon the sailor's taking it from the Indian, he received several blows on the face by the young fellow's fist. At first the sailor took this as a joke, but upon perceiving the assailant to be in earnest, he gave him a hearty English drubbing, and made him cry out for quarters. At this time Capt. Cook continued his employment of sowing, in different spots cleared for the purpose, all sorts of vegetables that he thought would grow in this country, such as potatoes, beans, peas, corn, &c.

On Tuesday the 1st of June we were visited by several natives whom we had not seen before, and who brought with them sundry new articles of commerce, among these were dogs, some of which we purchased. Of these people we saw a few oddly marked in their faces, by spiral lines deeply cut in them. Such kind of marks were very regular in the face of a middle-aged man, named Tringho Waya, who appeared to be a person of note, and to have authority over his brethren. This company seemed to understand perfectly well how to traffic, and did not like we should make hard bargains. Some of them entertained us with a dance on the quarter deck, previous to which they parted with their upper garments, and stood in a row. They sung a song, and us chorus all together, making during the performance many frantic gestures. Music accompanied this song and dance, but it was not very harmonious.

On Wednesday the 2d, we set ashore on the east-side of the found a male and a female goat. The latter, which was more than a year old, had two fine kids, that were killed by the cold some time before we arrived in Dusky Bay. Capt. Furneaux likewise put on shore, in Cannibal Cove, a boar and two breeding sows, which were left to range in the woods at pleasure. Should they remain unmolested by the natives till they become wild, they will then be in no danger, and in time this country may be stocked with these useful animals. In an excursion made this day by some of our people to the east, they met with the largest seal they had ever seen. They discovered it swimming on the surface of the water, and got near enough to fire at it, but without effect; and after pursuing it near an hour, they were obliged to give over the chase. By the size of this animal, it probably was a sea-lioness; Capt. Cook was of this opinion from having seen a sea-lion when he entered this found, in his former voyage; and he thought these creatures had their abode in some of the rocks, that lie off Admiralty Bay, and in the strait. On the 3d, some boats were sent to Long Island, to bring away the remainder of the hay, and our carpenter

2 L

went

went over to the east-side of the sound, to cut down some spars, which were much wanted. On their return, one of the boats was chased by a large double canoe, containing about fifty men. Prudence dictated to effect an escape by failing, for though the Indians might have no hostile intentions, yet this was a necessary caution.

Friday the 4th of June, being his Majesty's birthday, we hoisted our colours, and prepared to celebrate the day with the usual festivities. Early in the morning our friends brought us a large supply of fish. One of them promised to accompany us in our voyage, but afterwards altered his mind, as did also some others who had made a like promise to the people of the Adventure. It was very common for these people to bring their children with them, not with the unnatural intention of selling them, as was reported, but in expectation that we would make them presents. A man brought his son, a boy about ten years of age, and presented him to Capt. Cook, who thought at first he wanted to sell him: but we soon found the desire of the father was inclined only towards a white shirt, which was given to his son. The boy was so highly delighted with his new garment, that he went all over the ship, presenting himself before every one who came in his way. This freedom, or perhaps the colour of his dress, or the boy's antic gestures, offended old Will, the ram goat, who by a sudden butt knocked him backwards on the deck. The shirt was dirtied; the misfortune seemed irreparable to the boy, who feared to appear before his father in the cabin, until brought in by Mr. Forster; when he told a very lamentable story against Gouray, the great dog (for so they called all the quadrupeds we had aboard) nor would he be reconciled till his shirt was washed and dried. From this trifling story may be seen how liable we are to mistake these people's meaning, and to ascribe to them customs they are utter strangers to. This day a large double canoe approached, well manned: it came within musket shot, and contained about thirty men. Our friends on board told us they were enemies very earnestly. Among these new visitors, one stood at the head of the canoe, and another at the stern, while the rest kept their seats. One of them held a green bough, the New Zealand flag in his hand, and spoke a few words. The other made a long harangue, in solemn and well articulated sounds. Being invited aboard, he at last ventured, and was followed soon by the rest, who eagerly traded with us. They directly saluted the natives on board, by an application of their noses, and paid the same compliment to the gentlemen on the quarter-deck. The chief's name was Teiratu. They all enquired for Tupia, and were much concerned at hearing of his death. These people were taller than any we had hitherto seen in New Zealand, and their dress and ornaments bespoke them superior to the inhabitants of Queen Charlotte's Sound. Their tools were made with great attention, and were elegantly carved: we obtained a few of these, and also some musical instruments from them. They made but a short stay, and, embarking, they all went over to Motuara, where, by the help of our glasses, we discovered four or five canoes, and several people on the shore. About noon Capt. Cook, accompanied by several other gentlemen followed them, and were received with every mark of friendship. The captain distributed several presents, among which were a great number of brass medals inscribed with the king's title on one side and the ship which undertook this voyage on the other. Teiratu appeared to be the chief among these people, by the great degree of respect paid him. Capt. Cook conducted Teiratu to the garden he had planted, and obtained a promise from him that he would not suffer it to be destroyed.

Early in the morning of the 7th of June, we sailed from this place in company with the Adventure, but had frequent hindrances from contrary winds. On the twenty-second of July we were in lat. 32 deg. 30 min. long. 133 deg. 40 min. W. And now the weather was so warm, that we were obliged to put on lighter cloaths. We did not see a single bird this day, which was

rather remarkable, as not one day had hitherto passed since we left the land without seeing several. Capt. Cook having heard that the crew of the Adventure were sickly, went on board the 29th of July, when he found the cook dead, and 20 men ill with the scurvy and flux. Only three men were on the sick list on board the Resolution, which was certainly owing to the captain's absolutely enforcing the eating celery and scurvy-grass with the food, though at first the crew did not like it.

All hopes of discovering a continent now vanished, as we had got to the northward of Capt. Carteret's tracts, and we only expected to see islands till our return to the S. Every circumstance considered, we were induced to believe that there is no Southern Continent between New Zealand and America; it is very certain that this passage did not produce any sure signs of one.

On the 6th of August, Capt. Furneaux came on board the Resolution to dinner, and reported, that his people were much better, that the flux had quite left them, and that the scurvy was at a stand. The scorbutic people had been well supplied with cyder, which in a great measure contributed to this happy change. Land appeared to the south on the eleventh instant at day break, which we judged to be one of those islands discovered by Mons. Bougainville. We called it Resolution Island, it lies in the latitude of 17 deg. 24 min. longitude 141 deg. 39 min. W. We did not stay to examine it, as it did not appear large enough to supply our wants; we therefore determined to make the best of our way to Otaheite, where we were sure of a plentiful supply of refreshments. In the evening we saw land again, which in all probability was another of Mons. Bougainville's discoveries. This we called Doubtful Island. On the morning of the 12th instant at day-break, we discovered land at about two miles ahead of us, so that we were advised of our danger but just in time. This was another small half drowned island. The sea broke against it in a dreadful surf. This island is in latitude 17 deg. 5 min. longitude 143 deg. 16 min. W. We called it Furneaux Island. On the 17th, we saw another of these islands in latitude 17 deg. 4 min. longitude 144 deg. 30 min. W. It is with very great propriety that Mons. Bougainville calls these low overflowed islands the Dangerous Archipelago. We were under the necessity of proceeding with the utmost caution, especially in the night, as we were surrounded by them, which the smoothness of the sea sufficiently indicated. On the 14th, we found ourselves clear of these islands, and steered our course for Otaheite. We saw Onaburg Island (which was discovered by Capt. Wallis) on the 15th, at five in the morning, and acquainted Capt. Furneaux that it was our intention to put into Oatipia Bay, near the south end of Otaheite, and get what refreshments we could in that part of the island, before we went to Matavai.

On the 18th, we were within a league of the reef. On account of the breeze failing us, we hoisted out our boats to tow the ships off, but they could not keep us from being carried too near the reef. Many inhabitants came on board from different parts, who brought fruits, &c. to exchange; they most of them knew Capt. Cook again, and enquired for Mr. Banks and others, but none of them asked for Tupia. Our situation became still more dangerous as the calm continued. On sending to examine the western point of the reef, in order to get round that way into the bay, we found that there was not sufficient depth of water. Both ships were carried with great impetuosity towards the reef, and all the horrors of shipwreck now stared us in the face. The breakers were not two cables length from us, and we could find no bottom to anchor. The Resolution came at three fathoms water, and struck at every fall of the sea, but the Adventure brought up under our bow without striking. The dreadful surf which broke under our stern threatened our shipwreck every moment. At length we found ground a little without the basin, and got the ship afloat by cutting away

away the bower and same direction. We and all the boats escaping shipwreck board the ships which but were totally in we were striking, seemed quite uncom Bay, very near the number of the na Presents were made other articles, in fowls, &c. but we their promise. Furneaux landed and to view the w with great civility supply of water.

We recovered to we were obliged to in the time of our vered. We were not in large quant on shore, under th not get any hogs said to be seen abo belonged to Wah seen. A man w board with sever were made, but things over the q the same nature deck, the captain out of the ship. the conduct of the muskets over his that he quitted his sending a boat to the shore pelted went himself in a ordered a cannon the coast, which brought away. They soon became returned. Two Tupia, but they cause of his de Banks, and other Capt. Cook before ple, that there two kingdoms, peninsula, was s in this battle T old friends fell.

On the 19th, sion along the (whom they m whom in return soth, one of the shore. Some c accord, who k musquet. We them in this bu 21st, a chief ca lent of fruit, w we had drawn t He had so arti discover the c emotion when three of them matter; he the really ho, and bananocs and Waheatow w wished to see company with they were like mile from th vancing to m

away the bower anchor, and the tide ceased to act in the same direction. We happily towed off the Resolution, and all the boats were ordered to assist the Adventure. We happily got once more safe at sea, after narrowly escaping shipwreck. A number of the natives were on board the ships while we were in this perilous situation, but were totally insensible of any danger, even while we were striking, and when they parted with us they seemed quite unconcerned. We anchored in Oati-piha Bay, very near the shore, and were visited by a great number of the natives, who brought roots, fruit, &c. Presents were made to their chiefs of shirts, axes, and other articles, in return for which they promised hogs, fowls, &c. but we believe they never intended to keep their promise. In the afternoon, Captains Cook and Furneaux landed to found the disposition of the natives, and to view the watering-place. The natives behaved with great civility, and we had a very convenient supply of water.

We recovered the Resolution's bower anchor, which we were obliged to leave; but the Adventure lost three in the time of our extremity, which were never recovered. We were still supplied with fruit and roots, but not in large quantities. A party of men were trading on shore, under the protection of a guard. We could not get any hogs from the natives, though plenty were said to be seen about their habitations, they all said they belonged to Waheatow, their chief, whom we had not seen. A man who pretended to be a chief came on board with several of his friends, to whom presents were made, but he was detected in handing several things over the quarter gallery; and as complaints of the same nature were alledged against those on the deck, the captain took the liberty to turn them all out of the ship. The captain was so exasperated at the conduct of the pretended chief, that he fired two muskets over his head, which terrified him so much, that he quitted his canoe and took to the water. On sending a boat to take up the canoe, the people from the shore pelted the boat with stones. The captain went himself in another boat to protect her, he likewise ordered a cannon loaded with ball to be fired along the coast, which terrified them sufficiently, and he brought away the canoes without any opposition. They soon became friends again, and the canoes were returned. Two or three people began to enquire after Tupia, but they were soon satisfied when they heard the cause of his death. Several people asked for Mr. Banks, and other people who were at Otaheite with Capt. Cook before. We were informed by these people, that there had been a battle fought between the two kingdoms, that Toutaha, the regent of the greater peninsula, was slain, and that Otoo reigned in his stead. In this battle Tubourai, Tamaide, and several of our old friends fell. A peace was now fully established.

On the 19th, the two commanders made an excursion along the coast, and were entertained by a chief (whom they met) with some excellent fish, &c. to whom in return they made several presents. On the 20th, one of the natives stole a gun from the people on shore. Some of the natives pursued him of their own accord, who knocked him down and brought back the musket. We imagine that fear operated more with them in this business than any other motive. On the 21st, a chief came to visit us, who brought in a present of fruit, which proved to be some cocoa-nuts that we had drawn the water from and thrown overboard. He had so artfully tied them up, that we did not soon discover the deceit. He did not betray the least emotion when we told him of it, and opened two or three of them himself, as if he knew nothing of the matter; he then pretended to be satisfied that it was really so, and went on shore, from whence he sent some bananas and plantains. We were informed that Waheatow was come into the neighbourhood, and wished to see Capt. Cook, who accordingly went in company with Capt. Furneaux and some gentlemen: they were likewise attended by some natives. About a mile from the landing place they met the chief, advancing to meet them with a numerous train. When

the prince perceived the company, he halted. He knew Captain Cook very well, as they had seen each other several times in 1769. He went at that time by the name of Terace, and took his father's name at his death. We found him sitting on a stool; and as soon as the usual salutation was over, he seated Capt. Cook on the same stool with himself; the rest sat on the ground. He enquired after several who had been on the former voyage, and seemed sorry when we told him we must sail the next day, offering the captain that if he would stay he should have hogs in plenty. Capt. Cook made him many presents, and staid with him the whole morning. This party returned on board of ship to dinner, and made this chief another visit in the afternoon, made him more presents, and he gave us two hogs. At the different trading places some others we got, so that a meal's fresh pork served for the crews of both ships.

Early in the morning of the 24th, we put to sea, and were accompanied by several canoes, who brought cargoes of fruit for sale; neither did they return till they had disposed of them. The sick people on board the Adventure got much relief from these fruits. We left a lieutenant on shore, in order to bring some hogs, which they promised to send by him. He returned on the 25th, and brought eight pigs with him. We arrived at Mutavai Bay in the evening of the 25th, and our decks were crowded with natives before we could get to anchor, almost all of them were acquainted with Capt. Cook. Otoo their king and a great crowd were got together on the shore. Capt. Cook was going on shore to pay him a visit, but was told that he was gone to Oparee in a fright; which seemed very extraordinary to the captain, as all others were much pleased to see him. Maritata, a chief, was on board, and advised the captain to defer his visit till next morning. The captain set out on the 26th for Oparee, after having given directions to fetch tents for the reception of the sick, &c. Capt. Furneaux, Maritata and his wife, and some others, went with the captain. They were conducted to Otoo as soon as they were landed, who sat on the ground under a shady tree, with a great number of people around him. Capt. Cook made him several presents, after the usual compliments had passed, being very well persuaded that it was much to his interest to establish a friendship with this man. His attendants also had presents made to them, they offered cloth in return, which was refused, being told that what was given was merely out of friendship. Otoo enquired for all the gentlemen who had been there before, as well as for Tupia, and promised to send some hogs on board, but was very backward in saying he would come on board himself, being, as he said, much afraid of the great guns. He was certainly the most timid prince, as all his actions demonstrated. He was a personable well made man, six feet high, and about thirty years of age. His father and all his subjects were uncovered before him, that is, their heads and shoulders were made bare.

On the 27th, the king Otoo came to pay us a visit, attended by a numerous train; he sent before him two large fish, a hog, some fruits, and a large quantity of cloth. After much persuasion he came on board himself, accompanied by his sisters, a younger brother, &c. with many attendants, who all received presents; and when they had breakfasted, carried them home to Oparee. Upon landing, an old lady, the mother of Toutaha, met Capt. Cook, seized him by both hands, and, weeping bitterly, told him that her son and his friend Toutaha were dead. Had not the king taken her from Capt. Cook, he must have joined her lamentations. It was with a good deal of difficulty that the captain prevailed on the king to let him see her again, when he made her some presents. Capt. Furneaux gave the king a male and female goat, which we hope will multiply. A lieutenant was sent to Attahourou on the 28th, to purchase hogs. The king, with his sister and some attendants, paid us another visit soon after sun-rise, and brought with them a hog, some fruit, and some more cloth. They likewise went on board the Adventure,

Adventure, and made Capt. Furneaux the same presents. Soon after they returned, and brought Capt. Furneaux with them. Capt. Cook made them a good return for the presents they brought, and dressed out the king's sister to the greatest advantage. The king was carried again to Oparee, when his Otaheitan majesty thought proper to depart, and was entertained as he went with bagpipes and the seamen dancing. Some of his people danced also in imitation of the seamen, and performed their parts tolerably well. Tootaha's mother again presented herself to Capt. Cook; but could not look upon him without shedding many tears. The next day the king promised to visit us again, but said we must first wait upon him. The lieutenant whom we sent for hogs returned only with a promise of having some, if he would go back in a few days.

On the twenty-ninth the commanders took a trip to Oparee, early in the morning, attended by some officers and gentlemen, and made the king such presents as he had not before seen. One of them was a broad sword; at the sight of which he was very much intimidated, and desired it might be taken out of his sight. With a vast deal of argument he was prevailed upon to suffer it to be put on his side, where it remained a very short time. We received an invitation to the theatre, where we were entertained with a dramatic piece, consisting of comedy and dance. The subject we could not well find out; though we heard frequent mention of Capt. Cook's name during the performance. The performers were one woman, which was no less a personage than the king's sister, and five men, and their music consisted of only three drums. The whole entertainment was well conducted, and lasted about two hours. When this diversion was over, the king desired us to depart, and loaded us with fruit and fish. The king sent more fruit and fish the next morning.

In the evening of the thirtieth we were alarmed with the cry of murder from the shore. A boat was immediately armed, and sent on shore, to bring off any of our people who might be found there without orders, and to discover the occasion of the disturbance. The boat soon returned, with a seaman and three marines; others were taken, who belonged to the Adventure, and even put under close confinement till the morning, when they were severely punished according to their demerits. The people would not confess any thing, and it did not appear that any material injury had been done. The disturbance might be occasioned by the fellows making too free with the women; notwithstanding this, the alarm was so great, that the natives fled from their habitations in the night; and the inhabitants of the whole coast were terrified. The king himself had fled a great way from the place of his abode; and when Capt. Cook saw him, he complained to him of the disturbance. Capt. Cook presented the king with three Cape sheep, as it was his last visit. With this present he was very well pleased, though he had not much reason to be so, as they were all weathers; this he was made acquainted with. The king's fears were now dissipated, and he presented us with three hogs, one of which was very small, which we took notice of. Soon after a person came to the king, and seemed to speak very peremptorily about the hogs, and we thought he was angry with him for giving us so many, and more so when he took the little pig away with him; but we were much mistaken, for soon after we were gone, another hog was brought to us, larger than the other two. The king seemed much affected when Capt. Cook told him he should leave the island the next day. They embraced each other several times, and departed.

On the first of September we determined to depart, as the sick were nearly recovered, the necessary repairs of the ship were completed, and plenty of water provided. Most of the day was employed in unmooring the ships; and in the afternoon the lieutenant returned, who had been sent for the hogs promised. With him came Poutarou (the chief of the district of Attahou-nou), with his wife, to pay Capt. Cook a visit, and

made him a present of two hogs and some fish. The lieutenant got likewise two more hogs. As the wind was westerly, we were obliged to dismiss our friends sooner than they wished; but they were very well satisfied with the reception they met with. A young man, named Poreo, came on board some hours before we got under sail, and desired to go with us, to which we consented; and at the same time he asked for an axe and a spike nail for his father, who came with him on board. They were accordingly given him, and they parted with great indifference, which seemed to indicate that they had deceived us, and no such constancy subsisted. Presently a canoe, conducted by two men, came along-side, and demanded Poreo in the name of Otoo. We informed them that we would part with him if they would return the hatchet and spike nail, but they said they were ashore; so the young gentleman sailed along with us, though he wept when he saw the land at our stern. On the second we steered our course for the island of Huahine, and the Resolution anchored in twenty-four fathoms water on the third instant, but the Adventure got ashore on the north side of the channel, but she was happily got off again without receiving any damage. The natives received us with the utmost cordiality, several of whom came on board before our commanders went on shore. Some presents were distributed among them, which were gratefully returned by a plentiful supply of hogs, fruit, &c. Here we had a fine prospect of being plentifully supplied with fresh pork and fowls, which was to us very pleasing. Two trading parties were sent ashore on the fourth instant, which were very well conducted. Capt. Cook was informed that Oree was still ashore, and wanted to see him. The commanders, with Mr. Foster, went to the place appointed for the interview, accompanied by one of the natives. The boat was landed before the chief's house, and we were desired to remain in it till the necessary ceremony was gone through. There stood close to the shore five young plantain trees, which are their emblems of peace: these were, with some ceremony, brought on board separately. The first three were each accompanied by a young pig, whose ears were ornamented with cocoa-nut fibres; the fourth plantain tree was accompanied by a dog. All these had particular names and meanings, which we could not understand. The chief had carefully preserved a piece of pewter, with an inscription on it, which Capt. Cook had presented him with in 1769, together with a piece of counterfeit English coin, which, with a few beads, were all in the same bag the captain made for them; these the chief sent on board. This part of the ceremony being over, we were desired by our guide to decorate three young plantain trees with nails, looking-glasses, beads, medals, &c. With these in our hands we landed, and were conducted through the multitude. We were directed to fit down a few paces before the chief, and the plantains were laid one by one before him. We were told that one was for God, another for the king, and the third for friendship. This being done, the king came to Capt. Cook, fell on his neck, and kissed him. A great effusion of tears fell down the venerable cheeks of this old man; and if ever tears spoke the language of the heart, surely these did. Presents were made to all his attendants and friends. Capt. Cook regarded him as a father, and therefore presented him with the most valuable articles he had. He gave the captain a hog, and a good deal of cloth, with the promise that all his wants should be supplied. Soon after we returned on board, fourteen hogs were sent us, with fowls and fruits in abundance. In the morning of the fifth instant we were visited by this good old man, who brought a hog and some fruit; indeed he sent the captain every day ready dressed fruit and roots in great plenty. This morning the lieutenant went on shore in search of more hogs, and returned in the evening with twenty-eight, and about seventy more were purchased on shore.

On Monday the sixth of September the trading party went on shore as usual; it only consisted of three people. Capt. Cook went on shore after breakfast, and

learned that one of the and troublesome. was equipped in his own hand. The captain received him bent of face, and obliged informed that this suspicious of him, time a gentleman men assaulted him, his trousers; lucky they struck him. They made off with of the natives bro This gentleman pr where a number of fled at seeing him them to return, a who were innocen plaint, he and his soon as his grief wa to the people, telli when the captain well to them. He the things the gen should be returne After this he desir boat, but the peo used every argum impossible to des intreaties they ut tears, and every suasive arguments insisted on going were in the boat, only person who siter, and the sh to her brother. bers, as far as it landed. The chi and enquired a went into a cottag king wanted to difficulty dissuad returned to the b who had travell panied by sever on going into th We returned to hearty dinner; t ate nothing. W confidence they amidst the acc now perfectly re all quarters, th returned, and tions.

We went to were unmooring, valuable and u with this inferi Majesty's ships 1773." After wanted, we to tionate one. crowded, as on fowls, &c. So came, and int and desired us their exempla been glad to b taken to disc as the Adven under sail. We were near two another affect here, we pro fides fowls a this island, C named Omai No. 5.

learned that one of the inhabitants had been very insolent and troublesome. This man was shewn to the captain, equipped in his war habit, and he had a club in each hand. The captain took these from him, as he perceived him bent on mischief, broke them before his face, and obliged him to retire. The captain being informed that this man was a chief, became a little suspicious of him, and sent for a guard. About this time a gentleman had gone out botanizing alone; two men assaulted him, and stripped him of every thing but his trousers; luckily they did him no harm, though they struck him several times with his own hanger. They made off when they had done this, and another of the natives brought a piece of cloth to cover him. This gentleman presently appeared at the trading place, where a number of the natives were assembled, who all fled at seeing him. Capt. Cook persuaded some of them to return, assuring them that none should suffer who were innocent. When the king heard this complaint, he and his companions wept bitterly; and as soon as his grief was asswaged, he made a long harangue to the people, telling them the baseness of such actions, when the captain and his crew had always behaved so well to them. He then took a particular account of the things the gentleman had lost, and promised they should be returned, if it was in his power to find them. After this he desired Capt. Cook to follow him to the boat, but the people being apprehensive of his safety, used every argument to dissuade him from it. It is impossible to describe the grief they expressed in the intreaties they used; every face was bedewed with tears, and every mouth was filled with the most dissuasive arguments. Oree was deaf to them all, and insisted on going with the captain; when they both were in the boat, he desired it might be put off. The only person who did not oppose his going, was his sister, and she shewed a magnanimity of spirit equal to her brother. We proceeded in search of the robbers, as far as it was convenient by water, and then landed. The chief led the way, travelled several miles, and enquired after them of all he saw. We then went into a cottage, and had some refreshment. The king wanted to proceed farther, and was with great difficulty dissuaded from it by Capt. Cook. When we returned to the boat, we were met by the king's sister, who had travelled over land to that place, accompanied by several other persons. The king insisted on going into the boat with us, as well as his sister. We returned to the ship, and the king made a very hearty dinner; though his sister, according to custom, ate nothing. We made them suitable presents for the confidence they had placed in us, and set them ashore amidst the acclamations of multitudes. Peace was now perfectly re-established, provisions poured in from all quarters, the gentleman's hanger and coat were returned, and thus ended these troublesome transactions.

We went to take our leave of Oree while the ships were unmooring, and presented him with things both valuable and useful. We left him a copper-plate, with this inscription. "Anchored here, his Britannic Majesty's ships Resolution and Adventure, September 1773." After we had traded for such things as we wanted, we took our leave, which was a very affectionate one. On returning to the ships, they were crowded, as on our arrival, with canoes filled with hogs, fowls, &c. Soon after we were on board, the king came, and informed us that the robbers were taken, and desired us to go on shore, that we might behold their exemplary punishment. This we should have been glad to have done, as so much pains had been taken to discover them; but it was out of our power, as the Adventure was out of harbour, and we were under sail. The good old king staid with us till we were near two miles out at sea, and then, after taking another affectionate leave, parted. During our stay here, we procured upwards of three hundred hogs, besides fowls and fruit in great abundance. While at this island, Capt. Furneaux engaged a young man, named Onai, a native of Ulitea, who had been dis-

possessed of his property by the people of Bolabola, to accompany him on his voyage. This young man has a good understanding, honest principles, and a natural good behaviour. But his history is so well known in England, that we will not enlarge upon it.

On Wednesday the 8th, we entered the harbour of Ohamaneno; the natives crowded about us with hogs and fruit as soon as we were anchored. We refused the hogs, as we had already more than we could manage; but several of the principal people obliged us to take them whether we would or no. We made a visit on the 9th to Oreo, who is the chief of this part of the island of Ulitea. He expressed great satisfaction on seeing Capt. Cook again, and desired him to exchange names with him, which the latter agreed to: this is a distinguishing mark of friendship. Here we traded as usual, but the balance of trade was much in our favour. On the 10th, the chief entertained us with a comedy; a very entertaining part of which was a theft, committed, with amazing dexterity, by a man and his accomplice. Before the thief has time to carry off the prize, he is discovered, and a scuffle ensues; the discoverers are vanquished, and the thieves go off in triumph. We returned to dinner after the play was over, and as we were walking on shore in the evening, one of the natives informed us that there were nine uninhabited islands to the westward.

Oreo and his son paid us a visit early in the morning of the 11th of September, and brought, as usual, hogs and fruit with them. We dressed the youth in a shirt, and some other articles, of which he was not a little proud. After staying some hours, they went ashore, and so did Capt. Cook soon after, but to another part of the shore. When the chief heard he was landed, he went of his own accord and put a hog and some fruit in the boat, and returned without saying any thing of it to any other person. He afterwards came with some friends to dinner. After dinner, Po-orau, who is the most eminent chief of the island, made us a visit. He was introduced by Oreo, and brought a present with him; for which he received a handsome return. We promised to visit both the chiefs the next morning: which we accordingly did, in company with several gentlemen. Another play was acted, and two very pretty young women performed, otherwise this piece was not so entertaining as the one we saw before.

On the 14th, we went on shore for a supply of bananas and plantains, for sea store. Oreo and some friends paid us a pretty early visit, when we informed him, that we would dine with him on shore, and desired he would let us have two pigs for dinner, dressed in their fashion. We found the floor of the chief's house strewn thick with leaves, and we were soon seated round them. Soon after the pigs came tumbling over our heads upon the leaves; and they were both so hot as scarcely to be touched. The table was ornamented with hot bread-fruit and plantains: we had likewise a quantity of cocoa-nuts to drink. We never saw victuals dressed cleaner nor better in our lives, and it had a most exquisite flavour, much superior to victuals dressed in our mode; how they contrived it we cannot tell, but though one of these hogs weighed fifty pounds at least, it was well done in every part, and not too much done in any. Oreo and his son, with some male friends, dined with us. We had a great number of attendants and people who came to see us thus dine in public, to whom pieces of pork were handed. The chief did not refuse his glass of Madeira whenever it came to his turn, and we never at this, or at any other time, saw him affected by it. The boat's crew took the remainder when we had dined. In the afternoon we were again entertained with a play.

On the 15th, we had a sufficient proof of the timorous disposition of these people. We rather wondered that none of them came to the ships as usual. We were afraid that as two men of the Adventure's crew staid out all night contrary to orders, that the natives had stripped them, or done them some other injury, and were afraid we should revenge their conduct. We

went ashore, and found the neighbourhood nearly deserted. Presently the two men made their appearance, and reported that they had been very civilly treated. We could get no account of the cause of their flight, and could only learn from a few persons who ventured near us, that several were killed and wounded, and pointed to their bodies where the balls of the guns went in and out. Capt. Cook was very uneasy at this relation, fearing for the safety of the people gone to Otaha. In order to get the best information, the captain determined to go to the chief himself, whom after much searching for, he found seated under the shade of a house, with a great many people round him. There

was a great lamentation as soon as Capt. Cook approached, the chief and all his company burling into tears. After all this piece of work, it was found that the cause of their alarm was on account of our boats being absent, supposing that the people in them had deserted us, and that we should adopt violent methods to recover them. They were satisfied when Capt. Cook assured them there was no cause for alarm, and that the boats would certainly return. On the morning of the 16th, we paid the chief a visit, who was in his own house in perfect tranquillity. At this time Porco left us.

C H A P. III.

A Spanish ship visits Otaheite—State of the islands—Remarks on the diseases and customs of the Natives—Mistaken notions concerning the women, corrected—Passage from Ulitea to the Friendly Isles—Hervey's Island discovered—Incidents at Mid-dleburgh—The two ships arrive at Amsterdam—A place of worship described—Incidents that happened during their stay at that island—The above islands described—Their produce—Cultivation—Houses—Canoes—Navigation—Manufactures—Weapons—Customs—Government—Religion and language of the inhabitants.

ON the 17th of September, being Friday, we determined to put to sea, having a good supply of all kinds of refreshments. Before we sailed, Orco and his son paid us a visit. Several canoes filled with fruit and hogs surrounded us: of the latter we could receive no more, our decks being so crowded with them that we could scarcely move. In both ships were about three hundred and fifty. Orco and his friends did not leave us till we were under sail, and earnestly importuned us to tell them when we should return. Capt. Cook, as many young men offered to come away with us, took one on board, about 18 years of age, named Oedidee, a native of Bolahola, and a near relation of the great Opoony, chief of the island. When we were out of the harbour and had made sail, a canoe was observed following us conducted by two men; whereupon we brought to, and when along-side, they delivered to Capt. Cook a present of roasted fruit, and roots, from Orco. The captain after having made them a proper return set sail to the west, with the Adventure in company. We shall here give some further account of these islands, some things, which are rather interesting, having been omitted in the relation of daily transactions and incidents.

A few days after our arrival at Otaheite we were told that a ship, about the size of the Resolution, had visited Owhaiurua Harbour, at the S. E. end of the island; at which place, after having remained three weeks, she departed about three months before our arrival. Four of the natives went away in her, whose names were Debedeha, Paodou, Tanadoce, and Opahiah. We conjectured she was a French ship, but at the Cape of Good Hope, we were informed she was a Spaniard, sent out from America. The natives of Otaheite complained of a disorder communicated to them by the people in this ship, which they described as affecting the head, throat, and stomach, and at length they said it killed them. This ship they called Pahai-no Peppe (ship of Peppe) and the disease they named Apano Pep-pe, just as they call the venereal disease Apano Pretane, (English disease) yet to a man, they say this loathsome distemper was introduced among them by M. de Bougainville; and they thought he came from Pretane, as well as every other ship that touched at the island. We were of opinion, that long before these islanders were visited by Europeans, this, or a disease near a kin to it, had existed among them; for they told us people died of a disorder, which we imagined to be venereal, before that period. But be this as it may, the disease is far less common among them than it was in 1769, when we first visited these isles. In the years, 1767 and 1768, the Island of Otaheite, as it were, swarmed with hogs and fowls; but at this time it was so ill supplied with these animals, that

hardly any thing could tempt the owners to part with them; and the little stock they had, seemed to be at the disposal of their kings. When we lay at Oaiti-piha Bay, in the kingdom of Tiarrabou, or lesser Peninsula, we were given to understand, that every hog and fowl belonged to Waheatoua; and that all in the kingdom of Opoouonu, or the greater Peninsula, belonged to Orco. While at this island we got only 24 hogs in 17 days; half of which came from the kings themselves, and the other half we were inclined to think were sold us by their permission. But with respect to all the fruits produced in the island, with these we were abundantly supplied, except bread-fruit, which was not in season. Cocoa-nuts and plantains, we got the most of; the latter, with a few yams and other roots, supplied the place of bread. At Otaheite we procured great plenty of apples, and a fruit resembling nectarine, called by the natives Aheeya. This fruit was common to all the isles. Of all the seeds, brought by Europeans to those islands, none thrived so well as pumpkins, but these they do not like. We attributed the scarcity of hogs to two causes: first, to the great number of these animals which have been consumed, and carried away for stock, by the ships that have touched here of late years; secondly, to the frequent wars between the two kingdoms. Two we know have commenced since the year 1767; but at present peace reigns among them, though they do not seem to entertain a cordial friendship for each other. We could not learn the occasion of the late war, nor who were victorious in the conflict; but we learnt, that in the last battle which terminated the dispute, numbers were killed on both sides. On the part of Opoouonu, Toutaha, our very good friend was killed, and several other chiefs. Toutaha was buried in his family Morai at Oparree; and several women of his household, with his mother, are now under the protection, and taken care of by Orco, the reigning prince; one, who did not appear to us, at first, to much advantage. We could learn but little of Waheatoua of Tiarrabou; but we observed, that this prince, not more than 20 years of age, appeared in public with all the gravity of a man of fifty; yet his subjects do not uncover before him, or pay him that outward obedience as is done to Orco; yet they shewed him equal respect, and when abroad, or in council, he took upon him rather more state. His attendants were a few elderly men, who seemed to be his principal advisers. Such was the present state of Otaheite, but the other islands, that is Huaheine, Ulitea, and Otaha, appeared in a more flourishing condition, than they were at time when we first visited them; since which, having enjoyed the blessings of peace, the people possess not only the necessaries, but many of the luxuries of life in great profusion; but

as we have treated journal and narrative shall not trouble our readers; but only add, clear up any mistake. In our first voyage to believe that the native preme deity human father the two captains, others went to a mor we had, as upon all sible man, belonging language of the native or burying place, was body, and some via plantains, &c. before they offered to him h sacred in the affirmat introductory question of the human species. Taata-emo, that is k they were dead; but We asked him if any hogs were given to k answers seemed to be that men for certain sacrificed, provided deem themselves, an among the lower cla ing those of whom some pains to explain we were not sufficient to make ourselves co we have not the least of the fact, having that it is undoubtedly man sacrifices to according to his c depends solely on the on any solemn occasi and, when he comes that h has been and pri having the m m e; and t m e the name calling most probabl ment.

These people have manner, of preparin we have noticed in is pressed from the r we first thought. T quantity of the root t one spits the juice h same platter. Whe procured; more or l ing to the strength lized liquor is strain five shavings. Hav fit for drinking, wh It drinks flat and in and an intoxicating sw in one instance; that reason, with g a time. The root is Europeans do toba them eat the same. cultivated at Ulitea believe there are few dure more or less of We must not omi has been done the who have represent without exception, t to any purchaser, w the enjoyment of eit men, of the higher difficult to be obtai whatever, and even admit of no such fa

as we have treated at large of these islands in our journal and narrative of Capt. Cook's first voyage, we shall not trouble our readers with unnecessary repetitions; but only add, under this head, new matter, or clear up any mistakes, and seeming inconsistencies. In our first voyage to these islands, we were inclined to believe that the natives offered to their supreme deity human sacrifices. To clear up this matter the two captains, Cook and Furneaux, with some others went to a morai, in Matavai. In our company we had, as upon all other occasions, an intelligent, sensible man, belonging to the Resolution, who spoke the language of the natives tolerably well. In this Morai, or burying place, was a Tupapow, on which lay a dead body, and some viands. We first enquired, if the plantains, &c. before us, were for the Etua, and if they offered to him hogs, dogs, and fowls? They answered in the affirmative. We then, after a few more introductory questions, asked, if they sacrificed any of the human species to the Etua? They answered, yes, Taata-eno, that is bad men, who they first beat till they were dead; but good men were not sacrificed. We asked him, if any Europeans were? They replied, that hogs were given to Etua, and only Taata-eno. All the answers seemed to tend to the same point, and meant, that men for certain crimes were condemned to be sacrificed, provided they had not wherewithal to redeem themselves, and such will generally be found among the lower class of people. But, notwithstanding those of whom these enquires were made took some pains to explain the whole of this religious rite, yet we were not sufficiently acquainted with their language to make ourselves complete masters of the subject; but we have not the least doubt remaining of the certainty of the fact, having since been informed by Onai, that it is undoubtedly a custom with them to offer human sacrifices to the Supreme Being. The object, according to his account, or who shall be sacrificed, depends solely on the pleasure of the high priest, who, on any solemn occasion, retires alone into the temple, and, when he comes from thence, informs the people, that he has seen and talked with the Etua; (the high priest having this privilege) that he requires a human sacrifice; and that such a particular person is the one; the names, and who immediately is killed, falling most probably a victim to the priest's resentment.

These people have a simple, but, to us, a nauseous manner, of preparing the plant called Ava-ava, which we have noticed in the first part of this work. This is pressed from the roots, and not from the leaves, as we first thought. The makers of the liquor chew a quantity of the root till it is soft and pulpy; then every one spits the juice he has pressed out into one and the same platter. When a sufficiency for their use is thus procured, more or less water is mixed with it, according to the strength required; after which the diluted liquor is strained through some fibrous stuff like fine shavings. Having undergone this process, it is fit for drinking, which is always done immediately. It drinks flat and insipid, but has a pepperish taste; and an intoxicating quality, the effect of which we saw in one instance; however, the natives drink it, for that reason, with great moderation, and but little at a time. The root is sometimes chewed by them as the Europeans do tobacco, and sometimes we have seen them eat the same. Great quantities of this plant are cultivated at Ulitea, at Otaheite very little; but we believe there are few islands in this sea that do not produce more or less of it.

We must not omit to remark here, that great injustice has been done the women of the Society Isles, by those who have represented them as a race of prostitutes without exception, who will sell their favours for gain to any purchaser, which is far from being true; for the enjoyment of either the married or unmarried women, of the higher and middling classes, is a favour as difficult to be obtained here, as in any other country whatever, and even many women in the lower class will admit of no such familiarities. That the proportion

of prostitutes are greater than that of other countries may be true, and most of them were such who frequented our ships and tents on shore. By observing these to mix indiscriminately with women of the first rank, we concluded hastily, that all females were of the same turn, and that the only difference was in the price; but the truth is, as we have more than once before observed, the woman who prostitutes herself, does not seem, in the popular opinion, to have committed a crime, which ought to exclude her from the esteem and society of the community in general. It must be confessed that all the women in this part of the world are complete coquets, and that few among them fix any bounds to their conversation; therefore it is no wonder that they have obtained the character of women of pleasure; yet we would think it very unjust, if the ladies of England were to be condemned in the lump, from the conduct of those on board of ships in our naval ports, or of those who infest the purlieus of Covent-garden, and Drury-lane.

Respecting the geography of these isles, we think it necessary to add to what has been said in the narrative of our former voyage, that we found the latitude of the bay of Oaitipaha, in Otaheite, to be 17 deg. 46 min. 28 sec. S. and the east longitude from Point Venus, to be 0 deg. 21 min. 25 sec. and an half, or 149 deg. 13 min. 24 sec. W. from Greenwich. It is highly probable, that the whole island is of greater extent than at first we supposed it to be in 1769. by two miles, and 4 in. 3 quarters respectively. When our astronomer made their observations on Point Venus, they found the latitude to be 17 deg. 29 min. 13 sec. S. which differs by two seconds from that determined by Mr. Green and Capt. Cook; and its longitude, namely, 149 deg. 34 min. 49 sec. and an half W. may be as accurately laid down, for any thing yet known to the contrary.

After our departure from the Society Isles, and leaving Ulitea, it was our intention to get into the latitudes of the islands of Middleburgh and Amsterdam, to which end, on Friday the 17th of September, we steered to the west, inclining to the south, with a view of getting clear of the tracks of former navigators. We proceeded at night with great circumspection, frequently laying to, lest we should pass any land unobserved. On the 21st, and the whole of the 22nd, we had rain, thunder, lightning, a large swell from the south, and the wind blew from the N. W. for several days; a sign to us, that, in that direction, no land was near us. This was discovered from the mast-head, on Thursday, the 23d, stretching from S. by W. to S. W. by S. We hauled up with the wind at S. E. and found it to consist of two or three small islets, united by breakers, as are most of the low isles in the sea; the whole being in a triangular form, and about six leagues in circuit. This island is in latitude 19 deg. 18 min. S. and in 158 deg. 54 min. W. longitude. Each of the small connected isles are clothed with wood, particularly of the cocoa-nut kind; but we saw no traces of inhabitants, and had reason to believe there were none. To these islets we gave the name of Hervey's Island, in honour of Capt. Hervey of the navy, one of the lords of the Admiralty, and now earl of Bristol. As the landing on this isle would have occasioned a delay, we resumed our course to the west, in which we saw some men of war, tropic birds, and flying fish. On Saturday, the 25th, we again began to use our sea biscuit, the fruit being all consumed; but of fresh pork each man had every day a necessary allowance. On Wednesday, the 29th, in latitude 21 deg. 26 min. S. we altered our course at noon W. half S.

On Friday, the 1st of October, at two o'clock P. M. we made the island of Middleburgh, and the next morning bore up for the west side thereof, passing between the same, and a small island that lay off it, where we found a clear channel two miles broad. After running about two thirds of its length, half a mile from the shore, we observed it assumed another aspect, and offered a prospect both of anchorage and landing. Upon this we plied in under the island. We were now visited by two canoes, which came boldly along-side of us,

us, and several of the Indians entered the Resolution without hesitation; which mark of confidence determined us to visit them if possible. After making a few trips, we found good anchorage, and came to in 25 fathoms water, at three cables length from the shore. We had scarcely anchored, when we were surrounded with Indians, some in canoes, and some swimming, several came on board, and among them a chief, named Tiotoony, to whom Capt. Cook presented a hatchet, spike-nails, and other articles, with which he was highly pleased. A party of our people, in company with Tiotoony, went on shore, who were conducted to a little creek formed by the rocks, right abreast of the ships, where landing was very easy, and the boats secure against the surf. Here we were saluted with loud acclamations, by an immense croud of people, who shewed the most evident signs of pacific intentions, not one of them having so much as a stick, or any weapon in their hands. They thronged so thick round the boats with cloth, matting, &c. that it was some time before we could make good our landing. Many of them, who could not get near the boats, threw over the others whole bales of cloth, and retired immediately, without either asking, or waiting to get any thing in return. At length the chief caused them to open to the right and left, and make room for us to land. We were then conducted up to his house, which was situated about 300 yards from the sea, at the end of a fine lawn, and under some shaddock trees. In the front was the prospect of the sea and the ships at anchor. Plantations abounding with the richest productions of nature, were placed behind, and on each side. We were seated on mats, laid on the floor, and the natives placed themselves in a circle round on the outside. Having with us bag-pipes, Capt. Cook ordered them to be played, and in return, the chief directed three young women to sing a song, which they did with an exceeding good grace: and a few presents being distributed among these young women, set all the rest in the circle singing, who did not sit down unrewarded. Their songs were in no wise harsh, but on the contrary musical and harmonious. Having continued here some time, at our own request, we were conducted to another plantation, where the chief had a house, into which we were introduced. Bananoes and cocoa-nuts were set before us, and a bowl of liquor, prepared in our presence, of the juice of ava, in the manner already related; the latter of which was presented to each of us in cups made by the folding of green leaves, containing near half a pint each cup; but Capt. Cook was the only person who tasted the liquor; however, the bowl was soon emptied by the natives, of which both men and women partook; but we observed that the same cup was never filled twice, nor did two persons drink out of it; each had a fresh cup and fresh liquor. The house we were now entertained in was situated at one angle of the plantation, abounding with fruit and trees, whose fragrance diffused a pleasing odour, and the spreading branches made an agreeable shade. Before the house was an area, on which we were seated. It being now noon, we returned on board to dinner, with the chief Tiotoony in our company. We had on the table fresh pork, but he eat nothing, which we thought somewhat extraordinary. After dinner we again went on shore, and were received as before. Mr. Forster, with his botanical party, and some other gentlemen, took a walk into the country. Our two captains were conducted to the chief's house, where fruit, and some greens were set before us. Having just dined we could not eat much; but Oedidee and Omai did honour to the desert. We now intimated a desire of seeing the country, and Tiotoony very readily gratified our wishes. He led us through several plantations, laid out with great judgment, and inclosed with fences made of reeds. Most of them belonged to our hospitable chief, and were all in very good order, and planted with various fruit trees. Hogs and very large fowls, the only domestic animals we saw, were running near the houses, and in the lanes that separated the plantations. Every person was very much pleased with this delight-

ful country, and the friendly reception we met with and we much regretted, that the season of the year, and other circumstances, would not permit our longer stay. In the evening we returned on board, and on Saturday the 2d of October, the ships were crowded with people the whole day, trafficking in perfect good order. On the 3d, early in the morning, while the ships were preparing to get under sail, Captains Cook and Furneaux, accompanied by Mr. Forster, went off in the boat, to take leave of our hospitable chief. He met us at the landing-place, and had we not excused ourselves, he would have entertained us at his house. We therefore spent half an hour with him, seated on the grass, in the midst of a vast croud of the natives, who seemed to vie with each other in doing what they thought would give us pleasure. Having made the chief a present, consisting of various articles, he was given to understand that we were going away, at which he seemed not at all affected. He went with us into our boat, with two of his friends, intending to accompany us aboard, but when he saw the Resolution under sail, he and his companions went into a canoe, and returned on shore. It is remarkable, that on shore this friendly Indian never made the least exchange; but now, during his stay in the boat, he bartered fish-hooks for nails, and engaged the trade in a manner wholly to himself.

On Saturday, October the 3d, as soon as Capt. Cook came on board, we departed from Middleburg, and made sail down to Amsterdam. When we were about half way between the two isles, we were met by three canoes, and the people made several attempts to come on board, but without effect, as the rope we threw out to them broke, and we did not shorten sail. They were likewise unsuccessful in boarding the Adventure. We ran along the south-west coast of Amsterdam, at the distance of half a mile from the shore, whereon the sea broke in a great surf. By the help of glasses, we saw the face of the whole island, which, in every part that came under our observation, appeared covered with plantations. Along the shore we perceived the natives running in great numbers, and displaying small white flags, the emblems of peace, which signals we answered by hoisting a St. George's Ensign. At this time three of the natives of Middleburg, who had continued too long on board the Adventure to return, quitted her, and swam to the shore, from whence we concluded they had no strong inclination to accompany us in our voyage. We had no sooner opened the west side of the isle, than several canoes, having four men in each, came boldly along-side, and, when they had presented us with some ava root, came on board with out the least ceremony. Having got into Van Diemen's Road, we anchored in 18 fathoms water, little more than a cable's length from the breakers; and our coasting anchor, to keep the ship from tacking on the rocks, lay in 47 fathoms water. By this time we were surrounded with people, and our seamen were so eager in purchasing their curiosities, even at the expense of cloaths; that Capt. Cook found it absolutely necessary to prohibit any farther commerce of this sort. The good effect of this order, was, that on the 4th, the natives brought us fowls, pigs, bananoes, and cocoa-nuts in abundance, for which we exchanged small nails and pieces of cloth, even old rags would purchase pigs and fowls. A trading party was now settled, and our commanders went on shore, attended by Mr. Forster and other officers, in company with a chief named Attago, who had attached himself to Capt. Cook, the first moment of his coming aboard, which was before the ships came to anchor. This person of some note presented the captain with several articles, and as a greater testimony of friendship exchanged names with him; a custom, which, as we have observed, is practised at Otaheite, and the Society Isles. We were received on shore with the same demonstrations of joy as at Middleburg, and the gentlemen set out into the country, except the two commanders, who distributed presents to such of the natives as Attago pointed out, who were afterwards discovered to be of superior rank to himself; though at this time, by the attention paid

met with
year, and
anger stay.
Saturday
with people
order. On
were pre-
Furneaux,
the boat, to
us at the
selves, he
We there-
the grass, in
seemed to
right would
a present,
understand
ned not at
with two
is aboard,
re and his
on shore.
dian never
his stay in
, and en-
elf.
apt. Cook
burg, and
were about
it by three
to come
threw out
il. They
adventure.
erdam, at
hereon the
glasses, we
every part
d covered
ceived the
ying small
signals we
At this
had con-
to return,
nce we
company
d the west
four men
they had
rd with out
Dieme's
little more
our coast-
the rocks,
were fur-
to eager in
xpence of
necessary
ort. The
e 4th, the
cocoa-nuts
d nails and
e pigs and
our com-
orster and
ed Attago,
e first mo-
before the
note pre-
and as a
aines with
d, is prac-
e were re-
of joy as
it into the
distributed
pointed out,
erior rank
ention paid
to

View of MONUMENTS. & in EASTER ISLAND.



to him, he appeared
 ing complained of
 us under the shade
 who were ordered to
 pass the prescribed
 those of Otaheite.
 we hinted our desir
 Atago immediatel
 terminated in an
 we saw a place of
 eighteen feet high
 by a stone parapet w
 which the mount, c
 building with a g
 twenty by fourteen
 within fifty yards
 the green. Three
 priests, begun a
 house, which laste
 ing ended, they c
 We made them pret
 then proceeded to v
 did not shew the
 built in every respect
 posts and rafters, c
 eaves came down
 and the open space
 made of palm-leave
 to the top of this, w
 house was a gravel
 fine gravel, in the ce
 of blue pebbles, rais
 of the building stood
 and another lay on
 over and over by A
 other log of wood
 were not considered
 ship. We put sever
 this matter, but did
 our readers are to be
 we hardly could und
 thought it necessary
 laid down upon the
 other things, which
 and put in his pock
 they could cut such
 with which the wa
 mount, some of the
 six inches thick. T
 of grove, was open
 fronted the green,
 which appeared to
 trees that composed
 tree, of which are m
 very common in the
 place of worship, in
 called A-fia-tou-ca.
 On our return to
 road leading into the
 and as level as a bow
 reflected it, all incl
 fences, and shaded b
 abouts is surprizingl
 easily have imagined
 upon that Europe co
 delightful walks, and n
 Nature assisted by ar
 epe than in this fert
 public one, which w
 ried no more space
 did the boundaries
 inches each, and in
 useful trees and pla
 fine appearances;
 scene. In this tran
 bers of people going
 coming from them;
 either turning to th
 or standing still with
 had passed by them.

to him, he appeared to be the principal person. Having complained of the heat, Attago shewed and seated us under the shade of a large tree; and the people, who were ordered to form a circle, next attempted to pass the prescribed bounds, and crowd upon us, as did those of Otahite. After having been here some time, we hinted our desire to see the country; whereupon Attago immediately conducted us along a lane that terminated in an open green, on one side of which we saw a place of worship, built on a mount about eighteen feet high. It was an oblong square, inclosed by a stone parapet wall, about three feet in height; from which the mount, covered with green turf, rose to the building with a gradual slope. The building was twenty by fourteen feet. When we had advanced within fifty yards of its front, every one sat down on the green. Three elderly men, whom we took for priests, began a prayer, having their faces to the house, which lasted about ten minutes, and this being ended, they came and seated themselves by us. We made them presents of what we had about us, and then proceeded to view the premises, to which they did not shew the least reluctance. The house was built in every respect like their common dwellings, with posts and rafters, covered with palm thatch. The eaves came down within three feet of the ground, and the open space was filled up with strong matting made of palm-leaves as a wall. In the front, leading to the top of this, were two stone steps; and round the house was a gravel walk: the floor also was laid with fine gravel, in the center whereof was an oblong square of blue pebbles, raised six inches higher. In one angle of the building stood an image roughly carved in wood, and another lay on one side. This image was turned over and over by Attago, as he would have done any other log of wood, which convinced us, that they were not considered by the natives as objects of worship. We put several questions to Attago concerning this matter, but did not understand his answers; for our readers are to be informed, that, at our first arrival, we hardly could understand a word the people said. We thought it necessary to leave an offering, and therefore laid down upon the platform some medals, nails, and other things, which our friend immediately took up and put in his pocket. We could not conceive how they could cut such large stones out of the coral rocks, with which the walls were made that inclosed the mount, some of them being ten feet by four, and near six inches thick. The mount, which stood in a kind of grove, was open only to view on that side which fronted the green, and here five roads met, most of which appeared to be public. Among the various trees that composed the groves, we found the Etoa tree, of which are made clubs, and a sort of low palm, very common in the northern parts of Holland. This place of worship, in the language of Amsterdam, is called A-fia-tou-ca.

On our return to the water side, we turned off to a road leading into the country, about sixteen feet broad, and as level as a bowling-green, several other roads intersected it, all inclosed on each side with neat fences, and shaded by fruit-trees. The country hereabouts is surprisingly fertile, inasmuch, that we might easily have imagined ourselves in the most pleasant situation that Europe could afford. Here are various delightful walks, and not an inch of uncultivated ground. Nature assisted by art no where appears to more advantage than in this fertile spot. The roads, even the high public one, which was about sixteen feet broad, occupied no more space than was absolutely necessary, nor did the boundaries and fences take up above four inches each, and in many places of these were planted useful trees and plants. On every side you saw the same appearances; nor did change of place alter the scene. In this transporting place we met great numbers of people going to the ships laden with fruit, and coming from them; all of whom gave us the road, by either turning to the right or left hand, sitting down, or standing still with their backs to the fences, till we had passed by them. In many of the cross roads, were

A-fia-tou-ca, whose mounts were surrounded with pallisades. After having walked several miles, we came to a more spacious one, near to which was a large house, the property of an old chief, who was one of our company. Here we were regaled with fruit; but our stay was short, and our guides having conducted us down to our boat, we returned with Attago to our ship to dinner. When aboard an old man was ushered into the cabin; we placed him at table, and soon perceived he was a man of consequence, for Attago, the chief being almost blind, sat with his back towards him; and as soon as the old man returned ashore, which was after he had tasted the fish, and drank two glasses of wine, Attago took his place at the table, finished his dinner, and drank also two glasses of wine. After dinner we all went ashore again. We found the old chief, who, in return for his slender meal, presented us with a hog. Before we set out for the country, Capt. Cook went down with Attago to the landing-place, where he found Mr. Wales laughing at his perplexing situation. The boats that brought us ashore not having been able to get close in with the landing-place, Mr. Wales had pulled off his shoes and stockings to walk through the water, and, when on dry ground, sitting down, he put them between his legs, in order to put them on, when in an instant they were snatched away by a person behind him, who immediately mixed with the crowd. The man he could not follow bare-footed over the sharp coral rocks; the boat was put back to the ship, all his companions had made their way through the crowd; and he was found by the captain in this forlorn condition; but the friendly Attago soon set him at liberty, by finding out the thief, and recovering the shoes and stockings. We now began our excursion into the country. Having passed the first-mentioned Afiatouca, the old chief shewed us a pool of fresh water, though we had not made the least enquiry for any. It is very probable this is the bathing place for the king and his nobles, mentioned by Tasman. From hence we were conducted down to the shore of Maria Bay, or N. E. side of the isle, where we were shewn a boat-house, in which was a large double canoe not yet launched. The old chief did not fail to make us sensible that it belonged to him. Night now approaching, Attago attended us to the boat, and we returned aboard. As to the botanizing and shooting parties, that were out with us the same day, they were all civilly treated, and well entertained by the natives. The party also at the market on shore had a brisk trade, and many advantageous bargains. They procured plenty of bananas, yams, cocoa-nuts, pigs, and fowls, for nails and pieces of cloth. A boat from each ship was employed to bring off their cargoes, by which means we obtained cheaper, and with less trouble, a good quantity of refreshments from those of the natives who had no canoes to carry their commodities off to the ships.

On Tuesday the 5th, early in the morning, the captain's friend, Attago, brought him a hog and some fruit, for which, in return, he received a hatchet, a sheet, and some red cloth. The pinnace having been sent on shore to trade, as usual, soon returned, and we were informed that the natives, in many respects, were exceeding troublesome. The day before they had stole the boat's grappling, and at this time they were for taking every thing out of the pinnace. It was therefore judged necessary to have on shore a guard, and accordingly the marines were sent, under the command of Lieutenant Edgecumbe. These were soon after followed by the two commanders, Attago, and several of the gentlemen. On landing, the old chief presented Capt. Cook with a pig; and then Mr. Hodges, accompanied by the two captains, took a walk into the country, in order to make drawings; after which, they all returned with Attago, and two other chiefs on board to dinner, one of which last had sent a hog on board the Adventure, some hours before, for Capt. Furneaux, without requiring any return; a singular instance of generosity this: but Attago did not omit to put Capt. Cook in mind of the pig the old king gave him in the

morning, for which he had in return, a chequed shirt, and a piece of red cloth. He desired to put them on, which when done, he went upon deck, and shewed himself to all his countrymen. He had done the same with the sheet the captain gave him in the morning; but when we went on shore in the evening, the old chief took to himself every thing Attago and others had got in their possession. This day the different trading parties procured for both ships a good supply of refreshments; the sailors therefore had leave to purchase any curiosities they might fancy; which opportunity they embraced with great eagerness; indeed they became quite the ridicule of the natives from their thirst after trifles, who jeeringly offered them sticks and stones, in exchange for other things; and one waggish boy took a piece of human excrement on the end of a stick, and offered it for sale to every one he met. This day a fellow found means to get into the master's cabin, and stole some books and other articles, with which he was making off in his canoe. On being pursued by one of our boats, he left the canoe, and took to the water; but as often as our people attempted to lay hold of him, he dived under the boat, and at last, having unshipped the rudder, got clear off. Other daring thefts were committed at the landing-place. One man stole a seaman's jacket, and would not part with it till pursued and fired at.

Wednesday the 6th our friend Attago visited us again as usual, brought with him a hog, and assisted us in purchasing many more. We went afterwards on shore, visited the old chief, with whom we stayed till noon, and then returned on board to dinner, accompanied by Attago, who never one day left Capt Cook. Being about to depart from this island, a present was made for the old king, and carried on shore in the evening. When the captain landed, he was informed by some of the officers, that a far greater man than any we had yet seen, was come to pay us a visit. Mr. Pickersgill said, he had seen him in the country, and believed he was a man of great consequence, by the extraordinary respect paid him by all ranks of people; some of whom, when they approached him, fell on their faces, and put their head between their feet; nor do any pass him without permission. Upon his arrival, Mr. Pickersgill and another gentleman took hold of his arms, and escorted him down to the landing-place, where we found him seated with such an affected gravity, that we really thought him an idiot, whom, from some superstitious notions, the people were ready to adore. When Capt. Cook saluted and addressed him, he neither answered, nor took the least notice of him. And as there appeared in the features of his countenance not any alteration, the captain was about to leave him to his private cogitations: but an intelligent youth cleared up all our doubts, and from his information, we were now fully convinced, that what we took for a stupid fool was the principal head man, or king of the island. Therefore the present, intended for the old chief, was presented to him. It consisted of a shirt, an axe, a piece of red cloth, a looking glass, some nails, medals, and beads; all of which were put upon, or laid down by his majesty, without his speaking one word, or turning his head either to the right or left. We departed from this living statue, and had not been long on board, before he sent us a present of provisions, consisting of about twenty baskets of roasted bananas, four bread and yams, and a roasted pig, weighing about twenty pounds. We now no longer questioned the real dignity of this sullen chief. When these things were brought down to the water side, Mr. Edgecumbe and his party were coming off to the vessels, and the bearers of the present said it was from the Areeke, (that is king) of the Island, to the Areeke of the ship.

On Thursday the 7th of October, early in the morning, our two commanders, accompanied by Mr. Forster, went ashore, to make a return to the Areeke of the island for his last night's present. They soon found Attago, of whom we learnt, that his majesty's name was Ko-haghee-too-Fallangou. After some little time he appeared with a very few attendants. By Attago's

desire we all fat down under a tree, and the king seated himself on a rising ground, about twelve yards from us. We continued some minutes facing each other, expecting Attago would introduce us to his majesty; but observing no signs of this, the two captains went, and having saluted the king fat down by him. They then put on him a white shirt, and laid down before him a few yards of red cloth, a brass kettle, a few, two large spikes, three looking glasses, twelve medals, and some strings of beads. All this time he behaved in the manner before related, sitting like a statue; his arms seemed immovable; he spoke not one word, nor did he seem to know what we were about. When we gave him to understand by signs and words, that we should soon depart from his island, he made not the least reply; but when we had took leave, we perceived he conversed with Attago, and an old woman; and in the course of this conversation he laughed heartily in spite of his assumed gravity; for it could not be his real disposition, seeing he was in the prime of life, and these islanders like all others we had lately been acquainted with, are much given to levity. We were now introduced by Attago into another circle of respectable old people of both sexes, among whom were our friend, the aged chief, and the priest, who was generally in his company. We concluded, that the juice of pepper-root, had the same effect that strong liquors have on Europeans, when they drink too much of them; for we observed, that the reverend father could walk very well in the morning, but in the evening was generally led home by two friendly supporters. We were a little at a loss how to take leave of the old chief, having, we feared, almost exhausted all our choicest store on the king; but having examined our pockets, and Capt. Cook's treasury bag, which he always carried with him, we collected together a tolerable good present both for the chief and his friends. This old chief had a natural air of dignity, which the king had not. He was grave, but not sullen; would talk at times in a jocular manner, and when conversing only on indifferent subjects, would endeavour to understand us, and be understood himself. The priest in all our visits would repeat a short prayer, which none in the company attended to, and which for our parts we did not understand. Having continued a social conversation with these friends near two hours, we bid them farewell, and repaired to our ship with Attago, and a few of his friends, who after breakfast were dismissed loaded with presents. Attago very strongly importuned us to call again at this island on our return, and requested of the captain, more than once, to bring him a suit of clothes like those he then had on, which was his uniform. This friendly islander, during our stay, was, on several occasions, very serviceable to us. He daily came on board in the morning, soon after dawn, and frequently stayed with us till the evening. When on board or on shore, he performed every kind office for us in his power, the expense for his services was trifling, and we thought him a very valuable friend.

The supplies which we procured from this island were about one hundred and fifty pigs, double that number of fowls; as many bananas, &c. as we could find room for, and, had we continued longer, we might have had more than our wants required. We were now about to depart, when, in heaving the coasting cable, it broke, by being chafed by the rocks; by which accident we lost nearly half the cable, together with the anchor, which lay in forty fathoms water, without any buoy to it, from whence a judgment may be formed of this anchorage. At ten o'clock P. M. we got under sail, but our decks being encumbered with fruit, fowls, &c. we kept plying under the land till they were cleared. Before we continue the history of this voyage, we shall here give a particular account of this island, and its neighbouring one of Middleburgh, a description of which we doubt not will afford an agreeable entertainment to our readers, and very numerous subscribers, who have favoured this work with a generous encouragement, equal to our most sanguine expectations and wishes.

These

These two islands Abel Janfen Tafman, which he named Amformer is called by the latter Ea-oo-wee. The spot, they are found of 21 deg. 29 min. at the longitude of 177 min. W. Middleburgh is 10 leagues in circumference, but has been seen 12 leagues at especially on the S. The superior parts are not neglected gives an advantage here we see dispersed groves of cocoa-nut with thick grass, with every direction, and greatly improves the soil.

The island of To something like an island which are seven leagues in length, and lies nearly in the middle of much of an equal more than 80 feet above the sea, and that of coral rocks, on which before it reaches the shore, wherein we anchored island, having a reef the sea breaks continue not more than three miles out that is an unfavourable observation, the our cables sustained bottom is none of the best in plantations, productions of nature, and a fruit like a Quahete Ahuya; in the articles, produce others which they have vegetables, the additional assistance produce and cultivation as at Amsterdaim, or The lanes and rocks, as to open a view of the island to the villages, most of the plantations: they are not only difference from the framing. The them, planted rose fragrance perfume furniture is composed of nut shells, and for stools or forms. for bedding, with or three earthen vessels of a bomb-shell, and other; the others five or six points these utensils, we of some other island, among them were as large as any in use as not better. We were very desirous these isles are not quadrupeds, except pigeons, tur baldcoots with a bat in abundance here as in the other the same; as he having two or three very fine thread, ours. The conf

These two Islands were first discovered by Capt. Abel Jansen Tasman, a Dutchman, in January 1642-3, which he named Amsterdam and Middleburgh. The former is called by the natives Tonga-tabu, and the latter Ea-oo-wee. From observations made on the spot, they are found to be situated between the latitude of 21 deg. 29 min. and 21 deg. 3 min. S. and between the longitude of 174 deg. 40 min. and 175 deg. 15 min. W. Middleburgh, the southermost isle, is about 10 leagues in circumference, and from its height may be seen 12 leagues at sea. It is bounded by plantations, especially on the S. W. and N. W. sides; but the interior parts are not so well cultivated; yet even this neglect gives an additional beauty to the whole island; for here we see dispersed, forming an agreeable variety, groves of cocoa-nut and other trees, lawns clothed with thick grass, with plantations, roads and paths in every direction, making a charming confusion, as greatly improves and enlivens the prospect.

The island of Tongatabu, or Amsterdam, is shaped something like an isosceles triangle, the longest legs of which are seven leagues each, and the shortest four. It lies dearly in the direction of E. S. E. and W. N. W. much of an equal height, but rather low, being not more than 80 feet above the level of the sea. Both this isle, and that of Middleburgh, are guarded by a reef of coral rocks, on which the force of the sea is spent before it reaches the shore. Van Diemen's Road, wherein we anchored, is under the N. W. part of the island, having a reef of rocks without it, over which the sea breaks continually. The extent of the bank is not more than three cables length from the shore; without that is an unfathomable depth; and, as we have before observed, the loss of an anchor, and the damage our cables sustained, are plain indications that the bottom is none of the best. This island is wholly laid out in plantations, abounding with the richest productions of nature, as bread-fruit, plantains, sugar-cane, and a fruit like a nectarine, called Fighega, and at Otaheite Ahuya: in short, here are to be found most of the articles, productions of the Society Islands, besides others which they have not. The same may be said of vegetables, the stock of which we increased by an additional assortment of garden seeds, &c. The produce and cultivation of Middleburgh is much the same as at Amsterdam, only a part of the former is cultivated. The lanes and roads are laid out in so judicious a manner, as to open a free communication from one part of the island to the other. We here saw no towns or villages, most of the houses being situated in the plantations: they are neatly constructed, but in their dimensions do not exceed those in the other islands. The only difference seems to consist in the disposition of the framing. They have small areas before most of them, planted round with trees, or shrubs, whose fragrant perfume the very air. The whole of their furniture is composed of a few wooden platters, cocoa-nut shells, and some neat wooden pillows shaped like stools or forms. Their common clothing serves them for bedding, with the addition of a mat. We saw two or three earthen vessels among them; one in the shape of a bomb-shell, with two holes in it, opposite each other; the others resembled pipkins, containing about five or six points. Having seen no great number of these utensils, we concluded they were the manufacture of some other isle. The only domestic animals we saw among them were hogs and fowls. The latter are as large as any in Europe, and their flesh equally good, if not better. We believe they have no dogs, as they were very desirous of those we had on board. In these isles are no rats, nor did we discover any wild quadrupeds, except small lizards. The land birds are pigeons, turtle-doves, parrots, paroquets, owls, baldcoots with a blue plumage, small birds, and large bats in abundance. The same sorts of fish are found here as in the other isles. Their fishing-tackle is much the same; as hooks made of mother of pearl, gigs having two or three prongs, and nets composed of a very fine thread, with the meshes made exactly like ours. The construction of their canoes is remarkably

ingenious, exceeding in point of workmanship, every thing of this kind we saw in this sea. They are formed of several pieces sewed together, in so neat a manner, that on the outside it is difficult to discern the joints. On the inside, all the fastenings pass through ridges. They are of two sorts, namely, double and single; the single ones are from 20 to 30 feet in length, and about 20 or 22 inches broad in the middle.

The stern terminates in a point, and the head is somewhat like the extremity of a wedge. At each end is a kind of deck, open in the middle, for about one third part of the whole length. The middle of their decks in some of them, is ornamented with white shells, stuck on little pegs, and placed in rows. They work these single canoes sometimes with sails, but oftner with paddles, the short blades whereof arc broadest in the middle: they have all out-riggers. The double canoes are made with two vessels about 60 or 70 feet long, and 4 or 5 broad in the middle. Each end terminates in a point, and the hull differs but little in its construction from the single canoe, being put together exactly in the same manner; but they have a rising in the middle round the open part, somewhat like a trough which is made of boards, well compacted and secured to the body of the vessel. Two such vessels as above mentioned are placed parallel to each other, and fastened by strong cross beams, secured by bandages to the upper part of the risings. The vessels are about six feet asunder. Over these beams, and others, supported by stanchions fixed on the bodies of the canoes, is laid a boarded platform, whereon steps a mast that may easily be raised or let down. All parts of the double canoes are strong, yet as light as the nature of the work will admit; and they may be immersed in the water to the very platforms, without being in the least danger of filling; and so long as they hold together, it is scarce possible, under any circumstance whatever, to sink them. By the nature of their construction, they are not only vessels of burden, but fit for short voyages from one island to another, and are navigated with a latteen-sail, or triangular one, extended by a long yard, a little curved or bent. Their sails are composed of mats, and their ropes like ours, some four or five inches. A little shed is raised upon the platform, for to screen the crew from the sun, and for other purposes. Here they have a moveable fire-herth, which is a square shallow wooden trough, filled with stones. From off the platform is the way into the hold, wherein they stand to bail out the water. Capt. Cook was of opinion, that these double canoes are navigated either end foremost, and that in changing tacks, the sail is only shifted, or gibbed; but we cannot speak with certainty of this matter, not having seen any of them under sail, or with the mast and sail au end, but what were at a great distance from us.

The only piece of iron we saw among these people was a small awl, which had been made of a nail; all their working tools of are stone, bone, shells, &c. as at the other islands. Every one who sees the work executed with these tools, cannot but be struck with admiration at both the ingenuity and patience of the artificers. They had little knowledge of the utility of iron, but enough to prefer nails to beads, and such trifles. Shirts, cloth, jackets, and even rags, were more esteemed by them than the best edged tool, on which account we parted with few axes but what were given as presents; however, if we include the nails exchanged for curiosities, by the companies of both ships, with those given for refreshments, &c. they could not get from us less than 500 weight, great and small.

As to the natives of these islands, both sexes are of a common size with Europeans; but with respect to complexion, their colour is that of a lightish copper, and more uniformly so than among those of Otaheite and the Society Isles. Of our gentlemen, some thought these people were a much handsomer race; others were of a contrary opinion, of which number Capt. Cook was one. It is certain, that they have in general regular features, with a good shape: they are also active, brisk,

We can say very little of the religion of these people. The Asiaticous may be appropriated to this purpose; but some of our gentlemen thought these buildings were only burying places. It is certain particular persons made speeches in them, which we understood to be prayers; perhaps, they may be both temples and burying places, as at Otaheite; but with respect to the images being idols, we had many reasons to be of a contrary opinion. Mr. Wales told us, that one of these images was set up

for him and others to shoot at, not very respectful this to divinity; and yet we have seen the Portuguese, when their wishes were not gratified, treat their tutelary saints with much greater familiarity. It appeared however very plain to us, that these Asiaticous are much frequented for one purpose or other; for the areas before them were covered with green sod, and the grass was very short, by being often fat upon and much trodden, which doubtless prevented its growth.

C H A P. IV.

The Resolution and Adventure continue their voyage from Amsterdam—proceed for Queen Charlotte's Sound—An interview with the inhabitants—The final separation of the two ships—Transactions and incidents in Charlotte's Sound—The inhabitants discovered to be Cannibals—A description of the coast—The Resolution departs from the Sound, and proceeds in search after her consort—Course of the Resolution in search of the supposed continent; and the methods pursued to explore the Southern Pacific Ocean—Arrives at Easter Island—Transactions there—An expedition into the inland part of the country, with an account of some gigantic statues, and description of the whole island.

ON Thursday, the 7th of October, we made sail to the southward, and our route determined was, to make for Queen Charlotte's Sound in New Zealand, there to take in a supply of wood and water, and then to proceed on farther discoveries to the S. and E. On the 8th, we made the Island of Pitaiti, distant eight leagues, and bearing S. W. by W. half W. This was also discovered by Tasman, and lies in latitude 22 deg. 26 min. S. and in 175 deg. 59 min. W. longitude; distant 32 leagues from the fourth end of Middleburgh, in the direction of S. 52 deg. W. Two remarkable hills rise therefrom of a considerable height, and seemingly disjointed from each other by a low valley. We now, after a few hours calm, stretched with a S. W. wind to the S. E. but, on Sunday, the 10th, it veered round to the S. E. and E. S. E. upon which we resumed our course to the S. S. W.

On Thursday the 11th at five o'clock, A. M. we made the land of New Zealand, extending from N. W. by N. to W. S. W. We now stood in shore till we were abreast of Table Cape and Portland Island, which is joined to it by a ledge of rocks; we were gazed at by the natives as we passed: but none of them ventured to come off in their canoes. We advanced to the Black Cape on the twenty-second, and now several inhabitants took courage and boarded us, among whom was a chief; he was clothed elegantly, and his hair was dressed in the high fashion of the country. We entertained him in the cabin, and his companions sold us some fish. These people were very fond of nails, and the chief received them with much greater eagerness than when the captain gave him hogs, fowls, seeds, and roots. We obtained from him a promise not to kill any, and if he keeps his word, there are enough to stock the whole island; the present consisted of two fows, two boars, four hens, and two cocks; we likewise gave him several useful seeds, and instructed him in the manner of setting them. These people very well remembered the Endeavour having been on their coast. The Adventure was now a good way to leeward, and as we were obliged to tack, she was consequently separated from us; but we were joined by her on the twenty-fourth. The wind was now very high, so that we could carry hardly any sail; we endeavoured to make Cape Palliser, the northern point of Eakeinomaue, but we had such a hard gale for two days; that drove us off the land just as we were in sight of port: This was very mortifying; but two favourable circumstances attended it, for we were in no danger of a lee shore, and it was fair over head. In the evening of the twenty-fifth we endeavoured to find the Adventure, which the storm had separated, but without effect, the weather being so hazy, that we could not see a mile round us. On the twenty-eighth we saw the Adventure about five miles to leeward, and we kept company with her till the night of the twenty-ninth, when she disappeared, nor did we see her at day-light. *Charlotte's*

Sound was the appointed place of rendezvous; and as we had separated from the Adventure, we were obliged to make for it, otherwise Capt. Cook would have fought a supply of wood and water further south. We stood to the eastward, in hopes of meeting with the Adventure. On the second of November the morning was very clear, and we kept a sharp look-out for the Adventure; but as we could not see her, we judged she was got into the Sound. We accordingly made for the shore of Eakeinomaue. In doing which we discovered an inlet, which the captain had never observed before, on the east side of Cape Teerewhitte. We anchored in twelve fathoms water, at the entrance of this inlet; and several of the inhabitants came on board, who were extravagantly fond of nails. We ran up into Ship Cove on the third of November, where we expected to see the Adventure, but were disappointed. Here we were obliged to unbend the sails, which had been very much damaged in the late storms. Several people came on board, who remembered the Endeavour when on this coast, particularly an old man called Goubiah. The empty casks were ordered on shore, and the necessary repairs both to them and the ships were ordered to be made. We were unsuccessful in our fishing parties, who caught no fish, but were well supplied by the natives with that useful article. On opening the bread casks, we found a great deal of it damaged; that which remained good we baked over again, in order to preserve it.

On Friday the fifth, one of the natives took an opportunity of stealing one of the seamen's bag of cloaths, which, with some difficulty, we recovered. This made our people more cautious in future. We found one of the fows which Capt. Furneaux had put on shore, and were informed that the boar and other fow were taken to another part, but not killed. We were mortified very much when we heard that old Goubiah had killed the two goats which Captain Cook put on shore, and were concerned to think that our endeavours to stock this country with useful animals were likely to be rendered fruitless, by those very people for whose benefit they were designed. But nature had amazingly assisted our intentions in the gardens, where every thing was in a flourishing state, except the potatoes, which were most of them dug up. We put on shore another boar and fow, with two cocks, and four hens. We purchased a large quantity of fish from the natives, who were very much inclined to theft; we detected them picking our pockets very frequently. Several strangers came to visit us in five canoes, they took up their quarters in a cave near us, and decamped the next morning with six of our small water casks. All the people whom we found on our arrival likewise went with them. Some of them returned in a day or two, and supplied us with fish.

On Monday, the fifteenth, we made a party to the summit of one of the hills, in order to look for the Adven-

Adventure, but were disappointed, and totally at a loss to know what was become of her. When we returned, the natives were collected round our boat, to whom we made some presents, and went on board. We were very well supplied with fish during our stay here. On the twenty-second we took one boar and three sows, together with some cocks and hens, into the woods, where we left them with provision sufficient for ten or twelve days, with hopes that the natives would not discover them till they had bred. Our officers having visited the dwelling-places of several of the natives, found some human bones, from which the flesh appeared to be lately taken; and on the twenty-third, they being on shore, saw the head and bowels of a youth, lately killed, lying on the beach; his heart was stuck on a fork, and fixed at the fore part of one of the largest canoes. The head was bought, and brought on board, where one of the natives broiled and eat it before the whole ship's company, and the sight made several of them sick. Oedidee, whom we had brought with us, expressed his horror at this transaction in terms which it is impossible for us to describe. It is certain that the New Zealanders are cannibals, which this circumstance fully proves; but from all we could learn, they only eat the flesh of those slain in battle. This youth had fallen in a skirmish with some of the natives, as well as several others; but how many, or what was the cause of the quarrel, we could not learn.

Our crew had for 3 months past lived almost wholly on fresh provisions and vegetables; and we had, at this time, neither a scurvy nor sick person on board. Before we quitted the Sound, we left a memorandum, setting forth the day of our departure, what course we intended steering, &c. and buried it in a bottle, where it must be discovered, should Capt. Furneaux touch here, though we did not place any great expectation in such an event. We sailed from hence on the twenty-fifth of November, and fought the Adventure in several harbours, but without effect. All hopes of seeing her again were now vanished, and we set about our intended discoveries by ourselves. The ship's company were perfectly fatigued with Capt. Cook's care and conduct, and did not express any uneasiness at our being unattended.

On Friday, the twenty-sixth, we steered to the south, and on Monday the sixth of December found ourselves antipodes to our London friends. We were then in S. latitude 50 deg. 17 min. and E. longitude 179 deg. 40 min. We met with several flights of our old companions, albatrosses, petrels, &c. We sailed through large quantities of loose ice on the fourteenth of November, and discovered many ice islands. We were soon embayed by the ice, and were obliged to stretch to the N. W. We were now in much danger, owing to the ice islands and the fog. We attempted to take some of the ice on board, but without effect; but on the seventeenth we succeeded, and got on board as much as we could manage.

Tuesday, the twenty-first, we came the second time within the antarctic circle; and on a sudden got among a great quantity of loose ice, and a cluster of ice islands, which it was very difficult to steer clear of, as the fog was very thick. On the twenty-fourth they increased so fast upon us, that we could see near an hundred round us, besides an astonishing quantity of small pieces. Here we spent the twenty-fifth, being Christmas-day, in much the same manner as we did the preceding one.

A. D. 1774. On the second of January, we steered N. W. in order to explore great part of the sea between us and our track to the south; but were obliged to steer north-easterly the next day, and could not accomplish our design. Many of the people were attacked with slight fevers while we were in these high latitudes, but happily they were cured in a few days. Taking every circumstance into consideration, it is not very probable that there is any extensive land in our track from Otaheite, which was about two hundred leagues; and that any lay to the west is still less probable; we therefore steered N. E. There was no sign

of land; and therefore on the eleventh we altered our course, and steered S. E. On the twenty-fifth we found ourselves in a pleasant climate, and no ice in view; on the twenty-sixth came a third time within the antarctic circle. On Sunday, the thirtieth, we saw a very extensive field of ice, and within the field we distinctly enumerated ninety-seven ice hills of various sizes; it is probable that such mountains of ice were never seen in the Greenland seas. On this account, the attempt to get farther to the south, though not absolutely impossible, was yet both rash and dangerous. The majority of us were of opinion that this ice extended to the pole, as it might possibly join some land to which it has been contiguous since the earliest times. Should there be land to the south behind this ice, it certainly can afford no better retreat for man, beast, or birds, than the ice itself, with which it must certainly be covered. As we could not go any farther to the south, we thought it advisable to tack, and stand back to the north, being at this time in the lat. 71 deg. 10 min. S. and 106. deg. 54 min. W. Happily for us we tacked in good time; for we had no sooner done it, than a very thick fog came on; which would have been highly dangerous when we fell in with the ice.

On the first of February we were able to take in some more ice, which, though it was cold work to collect, served us for present consumption when melted. Capt. Cook was now well satisfied that no continent was to be found in this ocean, but that which is totally inaccessible; he therefore determined to pass the ensuing winter within the tropic, if he met with no other object worth pursuing. It was determined to steer for the land discovered by Juan Fernandez, or, in failure of this pursuit, to search for Easter Island or Davis's Land, which we knew very little about. The sailors, and all on board acceded to these designs, and were happy at the thoughts of getting into a warmer climate. We had continual gales from the eighth to the twelfth instant, when it fell a dead calm. The weather varied every day considerably till the twenty-fifth, when Capt. Cook was persuaded that the discovery of Juan Fernandez, if any such was ever made, could be nothing but a small island, not worth notice. On the twenty-fifth, Capt. Cook was taken so ill as to be obliged to keep his bed, and recovered very slowly. It is something very extraordinary, that when he could eat nothing else he had a mind to eat a dog of Mr. Forster's, which was killed, and he relished both the flesh and the broth made of it. This seems very odd kind of food for a sick man: and, in the opinion of many people, would create much greater sickness than it was likely to be any means of removing.

On the 11th of March land was seen from the mast-head, which proved to be Easter Island; and on the 13th, we came to an anchor in 36 fathoms water, before the sandy beach. One of the natives came on board the ship, where he staid two nights. He measured the length of the ship, and called the number by the same names as the Otaheiteans do; but otherwise we could not understand his language. A party of us went ashore on the 14th, and found a great number of the natives assembled, who were pacifically inclined, and seemed desirous to see us. We made signs for something to eat, after we had distributed some trinkets among them; they brought us some sugar-canes, potatoes, and plantains. We very soon found out that these gentlemen were as expert thieves as any before met with; we could scarce keep any thing in our pockets and it was with some difficulty that we could keep our hats upon our heads. These people seemed to understand the use of a musket, and to be very much afraid of it. Here were several plantations of potatoes, sugar-canes, and plantains; but otherwise the country appeared barren and without wood. We found a well of brackish water, and saw some fowls. As the natives did not seem unwilling to part with these articles, and as we were in want of them, we determined to stay a few days. A trade was accordingly opened with the natives, and we got on board a few casks of water. A party of officers and men were sent up the country in order

order to examine it; among the natives. was opened, but foot spot from whence they had stolen these potatoes. From that they are not themselves than to strange followed by a crowd proceeded far, they with his face painted and walked along with a distance, that of tation from them. to foot. They found barren; though in of the roots before ruins of these plantations made of stone, but much defaced. long, and six feet head of each statue able magnitude. places a poor sort of a fruitful part of plantations. Their journey; but they were, on account of found the natives obliged to fire for from them their bows. The shot hit this dropped the bag and

The Resolution sails for the island of St. Christophers, &c.—The arrival at the island. Her reception there.

1774. On Wednesday the 20th we departed for the Marquesas, there if nothing more in April, we discovered 9 deg. 20 min. and about nine leagues over another, we presently afterwards the Marquesas discovered various unsuccessful came at last before thirty-four fathoms. Several canoes appeared with some difficulty; they were a hatchet. From fruit. Great numbers, and brought fruit and plantains. We often detected making no return to till Capt. Cook one man, who had to get farther into a convenient place. Cook saw there a fire that they were certainly committing well got into the some men in their iron stanchions in immediate

order to examine it; and Capt. Cook remained on shore among the natives. An advantageous trade for potatoes was opened, but soon put a stop to by the owners of the spot from whence they were dug. It seems that they had stolen these potatoes; for they all ran away at his approach. From this circumstance it is pretty evident that they are not more strictly honest amongst themselves than to strangers. This reconnoitring party were followed by a crowd of natives; and before they had proceeded far, they were met by a middle-aged man, with his face painted. He had a spear in his hand, and walked along with him, keeping his countrymen at a distance, that our people might receive no molestation from them. This man was punctured from head to foot. They found the greatest part of the island barren; though in many places there were plantations of the roots before mentioned. They met with the ruins of three platforms of stone work. On each of these platforms had stood four very large statues, made of stone, but they were now fallen to the ground, and much defaced. These statues were fifteen feet long, and six feet broad across the shoulders. On the head of each statue was a round red stone, of considerable magnitude. Travelling on, they found in some places a poor sort of iron ore, and afterwards came to a fruitful part of the island, on which were several plantations. They could get no good water in their journey; but they were obliged to drink what they could get, on account of the extremity of their thirst. They found the natives so addicted to theft, that they were obliged to fire some small shot at a man, who took from them their bag of provisions and implements. The shot hit this fellow in the back, on which he dropped the bag and fell; but he soon afterwards got

up and walked off. Some delay was occasioned by this affair. The man before mentioned ran round them and repeated several words, which they could not understand; and afterwards they were very good friends together, no one attempting to steal any thing more. A number of the natives were assembled together on a hill at some distance, with spears in their hands, but dispersed at the desire of their countrymen. There appeared to be a chief among them, which wore a better cloth than the rest. He had a fine open countenance, and was very well made. His face was painted, and his body punctured. They met with some pretty fresh water towards the eastern end of this island, but it was rendered dirty by a custom which the inhabitants have of washing themselves in it as soon as they have drunk. Let the company be ever so large, the first that gets to the well jumps into the middle of it, drinks his fill, and washes himself all over; the next does the same, and so on till all of them have drunk and washed.

Great numbers of the gigantic statues, before described, are to be seen on this part of the island; one of which they measured, and found it to be twenty-seven feet long, and eight feet broad across the shoulders. One of these figures, of an astonishing height, being landing, it afforded shade for the whole party to dine under, which consisted of thirty persons. Many gained the summit of a hill, but could not see any bay or creek, nor discover any signs of fresh water. They returned to the ship in the evening. No shrubs worth mentioning were found in this excursion, neither did they see an animal of any sort, and but very few birds. They could not discover any thing in the whole island to induce ships, in the utmost distress, to touch at it.

C H A P. V.

To the Resolution sails from Easter Island to the Marquesas—Transactions and incidents while she lay in Resolution Bay, in the island of St. Christina—Departs from the Marquesas—These islands described, with an account of the inhabitants, their customs, &c.—The Resolution prepares to leave Otaheite—Another naval review—A description of the island—Her arrival at the island of Euboea—An expedition into the same—Various incidents related—The ship proceeds to Ulitea—Her reception there—Incidents during her stay—Character of Oedidee—General observations on the islands.

ON Wednesday, the 16th of March, we took our departure from Easter Isle, and steered for the Marquesas islands, intending to make some stay there if nothing material intervened. On the 6th of April, we discovered an island, when we were in latitude 9 deg. 20 min. and longitude 138 deg. 14 min. we were about nine leagues distance from it. We soon discovered another, more extensive than the former, and presently afterwards a third and a fourth; these were the Marquesas discovered in 1595 by Mendana. After various unsuccessful trials to come to an anchor, we came at last before Mendana's port, and anchored in thirty-four fathoms water, at the entrance of the bay. Several canoes appeared, filled with natives, but it was with some difficulty they were persuaded to come alongside; they were at last induced by some spike nails and a hatchet. From these people we got some fish and fruit. Great numbers of them came along-side next morning, and brought with them one pig, some bread-fruit and plantains, for which they received nails, &c. We often detected them in keeping our goods, and making no return; which practice was not put a stop to till Capt. Cook fired a musket-ball over the head of one man, who had repeatedly served us so. We wanted to get farther into the bay, and accordingly sought after a convenient place to moor the ship in. When Capt. Cook saw there were too many natives on board, he desired that they might be well looked after, or they would certainly commit many thefts. Before the captain was well got into the boat, he was told that a canoe, with some men in her, were making off with one of the iron stanchions from the opposite gangway. The captain immediately ordered them to fire over the canoe,

but not to kill any body. There was such a noise on board, that his orders were not distinctly heard, and the poor thief was killed at the third shot. The rest that were in the canoe leaped overboard, but got in again just as Capt. Cook came up to them, and threw overboard the stanchion. One of the men sat laughing as he laded the blood and water out of the boat, but the other looked very serious and dejected. We afterwards had reason to think that the father of the latter had been shot. The natives retired with great precipitation at this unhappy accident; but their fears were in some measure allayed by the captain's following them into the bay, and making them presents. We found fresh water ashore, which we very much wanted. One would have imagined that the fatality attending one poor fellow's thieving, would have discouraged them from making any more attempts of the like nature; but no sooner was our kedge anchor out, but two men came from the shore, wanting to take away the buoy, not knowing what was fastened to it. Left they should take away the buoy, a shot was fired, which fell short of them: of this they took not the least notice; but when another was fired, which went over their heads, they instantly let go the buoy, and returned to the shore. This last shot had a good effect; for by this they saw that they were not safe at any distance, and they were ever afterwards much terrified at the sight of the musket. However, they still continued to practice their art of thieving; but it was judged better to put up with it, as we did not intend making a long stay here. A man who had the appearance of a chief came off to us with a pig upon his shoulder; he was presented with a hatchet in return, and afterwards great numbers

numbers of the natives came along-side, and carried on some traffic. Peace being now established, another party of men were sent ashore. The natives received us civilly, and we got a supply of water, as well as some hogs and fruit. On the 9th, another party went ashore, and were met by a chief of some consequence, attended by several of the natives. Presents were made to him; but we could not prevail on him to return with us to dinner. In the afternoon another party was made to the southern cove, which came to the house that belonged to the man we had killed. His son inherited his substance, which consisted of five or six pigs; but he fled at our approach. We should have been glad to have seen him, as we wanted to convince him that we bore the nation no ill-will, though we killed his father, and to have made him some presents by way of a small compensation. We collected a good many pigs and other refreshments this day, and returned on board in the evening. We also obtained several pigs from the different canoes that came along-side of us on the 10th instant; and by this time we had a sufficient number to afford the crews a fresh meal. A party was made on this day, which was successful in the purchase of several more pigs, and a large quantity of fruit. We had now a fine prospect of getting a supply of all manner of refreshments; but our expectations were frustrated, by some of our crew having been on shore, and selling them such articles as they had never before seen, which made the natives despise the hatchets and nails, which before they so much prized. As this was the case, and we had much need of refreshment, having been a long time at sea, it was determined to remove our quarters, and make sail for Otaheite, hoping to fall in with some of those islands discovered by the Dutch and other navigators, where our wants might be effectually relieved. We had been nineteen weeks at sea, living the whole time upon salt provisions, and therefore could not but want some refreshments; yet we must own, with grateful acknowledgements to goodness supreme, that on our arrival here, it could scarcely be said we had one sick man, and but a few who had the least complaint. This Capt. Cook attributed to the number of antiscorbutic articles on board, and to the great attention of the surgeon, who was very careful to apply them in time. On Monday, the 11th, at three o'clock, we weighed from St. Christina, and stood over for La Dominica, and the night was spent in plying between the two isles. On the 12th, we steered to the S. and at five P. M. Resolution Bay bore E. N. E. half E. distant five leagues, and the island of Magdalena about nine leagues, which was the only view we had of it.

But we shall now in our narrative return to the Marquesas. These are five in number, namely, La Magdalena, St. Pedro, La Dominica, Santa Christina, and what we named Hood's Island, which is the northernmost, in latitude 9 deg. 26 min. S. Its breadth is unequal, and it is about 16 leagues in circumference. The surface is full of rugged hills rising in ridges, which are disjoined by deep valleys clothed with wood, as are the sides of some of the hills; the aspect is, however, barren; yet it is nevertheless inhabited. St. Pedro is about three leagues in circuit, and lies south four leagues and a half from the east end of La Dominica. Christina lies under the same parallel, four leagues more to the west. This isle is nine miles in length, and about twenty-one in circumference. These islands occupy one degree in latitude, and nearly half a degree in longitude, namely, from 138 deg. 47 min. to 139 deg. 13 min. W. which is the longitude of the west end of Dominica.

The port of Madre de Dios, which was named Resolution Bay, is situated not far from the middle of the west side of St. Christina, under the highest land in the island. The south point of the bay is a steep rock, terminating in a peaked hill. The north point is not so high, and rises in a more gentle slope. In the bay are two sandy coves; in each of which is a rivulet of excellent water. For wooding and watering, the northern cove is most convenient. We saw here the little ca-

cade mentioned by Quiros, Mendana's pilot; but the village is in the other cove.

The productions of these isles, which came within our knowledge, are nearly the same as at the Society Isles, namely, hogs, fowls, plantains, yams, and some other roots; also bread fruit and cocoa-nuts, but of these not in abundance. Trifles highly valued at the Society Isles, are lightly esteemed here, and even nails; at last, in their opinion, lost their value.

The natives, in general, are the finest race of people in this sea. They surpass all other nations for shape and regular features. The affinity of their language to that of Otaheite, and the Society Isles, shews that they are of the same nation. Oedidee could converse with them, though we could not. The men are curiously tattooed, from head to foot, with various figures, that seem to be directed more by fancy than by custom. These punctures cause the skin to appear of a dark hue; but the women who are not much punctured, and youths who are not at all, are as fair as some Europeans. The men are about five feet six inches high; but none of them were fat and lusty like the Ercates of Otaheite, yet we saw not any that could be called meagre. Their eyes are neither full nor lively; their teeth not so good as those of other nations, and their hair is of many colours, except red. Some have it long; the most prevailing custom is to wear it there; but a bunch on each side of the crown they tie in a knot. In trimming their beards, which is in general long, they observe different modes: some part it, and tie it in two bunches under the chin; some plait it, some wear it loose, and others quite short. Their clothing is much the same as at Otaheite, but not so good, nor in such plenty. The men, for the most part, cover their nakedness with the Marra, which is a slip of cloth passed round the waist, and between the legs. This simple dress is quite sufficient for modesty, and the climate. The women wear a piece of cloth round their loins, like a petticoat, reaching below the middle of their legs, and a loose mantle over their shoulder. Their head dress, and what seems to be their principal ornament, is a broad fillet, made curiously of the husks of cocoa-nuts, in the front of which is placed a mother-of-pearl shell, wrought round to the size of a tea-saucer. Near this is one smaller, of very fine tortoiseshell, perforated in curious figures; and in the center is another round piece of mother-of-pearl, about the size of half a crown; before which is another piece of perforated tortoiseshell the size of a shilling. Some have this decoration on each side, in smaller pieces; and all have annexed to them the tail-feathers of cocks or tropic birds, which stand upright, and the whole makes a very singular ornament. Round the neck they wear a kind of ruff or necklace of light wood, covered with small red peas, fixed on with gum. Round their legs and arms they have bunches of human hair, fastened to a string. Instead of hair they sometimes use short feathers; but all these ornaments we seldom saw on the same person. The chief, indeed, who came to visit us, was completely dressed in this manner; but their ordinary ornaments are necklaces and amulets composed of shells, &c. All had their ears pierced, yet we saw not any with ear-rings.

Their houses are in the valleys, and on the sides of hills, near their plantations, built after the same manner as at Otaheite, but much meaner, being only covered with the leaves of the bread-tree. Most of them are built on a pavement of stone, an oblong, or square, which is raised above the level of the ground. These pavements are likewise near their dwellings, on which they eat and amuse themselves. In their eating, these people are not very cleanly. They are also dirty in their cookery. They dress their pork in an oven of hot stones; but fruit and roots they roast, and having taken off the rind, they put them into a trough with water, out of which we have seen both men and hogs eat at the same time. Once we saw them make a batter of fruit and roots in a vessel that was loaded with dirt, and out of which the hogs had been that moment eating, without washing either their, or their hands, which

but the
e within
Society
nd some
but of
d at the
en nails;
f people
or shape
gauge to
hat they
ife with
uriously
res, that
cullom.
a dark
ed, and
Euro-
s high;
rees of
called
; their
d their
ave it
ther;
e in a
general
t, and
, some
athing
d, nor
cover
cloth
This
he cli-
their
ble of
lder-
ncipal
fibres
cli is
o the
vey
nd in
pearl,
other
ling.
naller
rbis
d the
the
ood,
um.
hu-
they
ents
eed,
an-
cars
of an-
co-
em
re,
efe
ch
in
not
ng,
th
gs
t-
h
nt.
s,
h



The CHIEF, at STA CHRISTINA.



A principal WOMAN of STA CHRISTINA.

which were equal
 individuals are nat-
 ional. Their
 have also flings
 velocity, but not
 made of wood,
 grows near the sea.
 Their length is
 breadth about five
 formed out of
 is curved, and
 which projects
 carved figure, has
 shape and face.

but they are
 only tame fowls
 quadrupeds no other
 well inhabited
 breeding beautiful
 did not shoot as
 from apprehensions
 tives.

On Sunday, the
 steered W. by S.
 being a chain of
 reef of coral rocks
 we came to a creek
 a communication
 Having a desire of
 we hoisted out a boat
 While the Resolute
 were seen in different
 clubs, and a group
 of the creek. As
 disposition, two boats
 under the command
 accompanied by Mr
 without any opposi-
 the shore; but per-
 fifty, all armed, came
 closer in shore, with
 in case they should
 without any thing

Mr. Cooper we were
 tives hovered about
 in their hands; and
 on shore were
 their reinforcement
 prudent to embark
 dered them to assist
 the crew, &c. we
 tives attempted to
 posed to detain the
 ple to depart at the
 dog for a single pig
 this was not a pro-
 saw no fruit but
 by barter, only two
 from sounding in
 no passage from
 creek, at its entrance
 thirty deep; farther
 that the bottom
 coral rocks. We
 such a place, and
 judgment of the
 new discoveries.

The natives covered and visited
 oval form, about
 lies in 14 deg. 2
 deg. 56 min. We
 the inhabitants
 darker colour than
 more savage in
 not so fertile as
 exposed to the sun
 support, by which
 and more robust
 of the same nation

which were equally dirty; but the actions of a few individuals are not sufficient to fix a custom on a whole nation. Their weapons are clubs and spears. They have also slings with which they throw stones with great velocity, but not with a good aim. Their canoes are made of wood, and the bark of a soft tree, which grows near the sea, and is very proper for the purpose. Their length is from sixteen to twenty feet, and their breadth about fifteen inches. The head and stern are formed out of two solid pieces of wood; the former is curved, and the latter ends in a point; the latter, which projects horizontally, is decorated with a rude carved figure, having a faint resemblance of a human shape and face. Some of these canoes have a latteen sail, but they are generally rowed with paddles. The only tame fowls we saw were cocks and hens; and of quadrupeds no other than hogs; but the woods were well inhabited by small birds, whose plumage is exceeding beautiful, and their notes sweetly varied. We did not shoot as many of them as we might have done, from apprehensions of alarming and terrifying the natives.

On Sunday, the 17th, at ten o'clock A. M. having steered W. by S. land was seen bearing W. half N. being a chain of low islets, connected together by a reef of coral rocks. We ranged the N. W. coast till we came to a creek or inlet, and which seemed to have a communication with a lake in the center of the island. Having a desire of surveying these half drowned islets, we hoisted out a boat, and sent the master in to sound. While the Resolution ran along the coast, the natives were seen in different places armed with long spears and clubs, and a group of them were observed on one side of the creek. As they shewed some signs of a friendly disposition, two boats were sent ashore well armed, under the command of Lieutenant Cooper, who was accompanied by Mr. Forster. We saw our people land without any opposition from a few natives standing on the shore; but perceiving, a little time after, forty or fifty, all armed, coming down to join them, we stood closer in shore, with the view of supporting our people in case they should be attacked; but our boat returned without any thing of this kind having happened. By Mr. Cooper we were informed, that many of the natives hovered about the skirts of the wood with spears in their hands; and that the presents he made to those on shore were received with great coolness. When their reinforcement arrived, his party thought it most prudent to embark, especially as the captain had ordered them to avoid, if possible, an attack. When the crew, &c. were all in the boats, some of the natives attempted to push them off, others seemed disposed to detain them; at length they suffered our people to depart at their leisure. One of them procured a dog for a single plantain, which led us to conjecture this was not a production of their island; indeed, they saw no fruit but cocoa-nuts, of which they could get, by barter, only two dozen. When the master returned from sounding in the creek, he reported that there was no passage from thence into the lake; and that the creek, at its entrance, was fifty fathoms wide, and thirty deep; farther up thirty wide, and twelve deep; that the bottom was rocky, and the sides bounded by coral rocks. We were not inclined to run the ship into such a place, and therefore, after having formed some judgment of the natives, we prepared to proceed on new discoveries.

The natives call this island Tiookea, which was discovered and visited by Commodore Byron. It is of an oval form, about thirty miles in circumference, and lies in 14 deg. 27 min. 30 sec. S. latitude, and in 144 deg. 56 min. W. longitude. They, and perhaps all the inhabitants of the low islands, are of a much darker colour than those of the higher ones, and seem more savage in their nature. These low islands are not so fertile as some others; the inhabitants are much exposed to the sun; they depend upon the sea for their support, by which means they are darker in colour, and more robust; yet there is no doubt of their being of the same nation. A fish is an emblem of their pro-

No. 17.

cession, and a figure of one was marked on the bodies of the men, who in general are well made, stout, and fierce.

On Monday, the 18th, we saw such another island as that we had left, to the westward, which we reached by eight o'clock A. M. We ranged the S. E. side at one mile distant from the shore. It lies S. W. by W. two leagues from the west end of Tiookea, in 14 deg. 37 min. S. latitude, and in 145 deg. 10 min. W. longitude. These we apprehend to be the same, to which Commodore Byron gave the name of George's Islands. We left them on the 19th, and at seven o'clock A. M. discovered another of these half-overflowed islands, which are so common in these southern latitudes. In general they are surrounded with an unfathomable sea, and their interior parts are covered with lakes, which would be excellent harbours, were they not shut up from the access of shipping, which, according to the report of the natives, is the case with most of them. Of the great number we ranged, not a passage was to be discovered into one of them. We were told, that they abound with fish, particularly turtle, on which the natives subsist, and sometimes exchange with the inhabitants of the higher islands for cloth, &c. This island, (by which, while in this part of the ocean, we would be understood to mean a number of little isles, or islets, connected together into one by a reef of coral rocks) is about five leagues long, and three broad, and is in 15 deg. 26 min. S. latitude, and in 146 deg. 20 min. longitude. Near the south end we discovered from the mast head, distant four leagues, another of these low isles; soon after a third, bearing S. W. by S. It extends W. N. W. and E. S. E. in which direction its length is twenty-one miles, but its breadth not more than six. It appears, in every respect, like the rest, only it has fewer islets, and less firm land on the reef which surrounds the lake. While ranging the north coast, we saw people, huts, canoes, and what appeared to be stages for drying of fish. The natives were armed with the same weapons, and seemed to be the same sort, as those in the island of Tiookea. Approaching now the west end we saw a fourth island, bearing N. N. E. It lies six leagues west from the first. These four clusters we named Palliser's isles, in honour of Sir Hugh Palliser, comptroller of the navy.

On Wednesday the 20th, at day-break, hauling round the west end of the third island, we found a great swell rolling in from the S. by which we knew that we were clear of these low islands; and being not within sight of land, we made the best of our way for Otaheite, having a strong gale at east, attended with showers of rain. It is here necessary to take notice, that this part of the ocean, from the latitude 20 deg. down to 12 deg. and from the meridian of 138 deg. to 150 deg. W. is so strewed with low isles, that a navigator cannot proceed with too much circumspection; but whether these isles be any of those discovered, and laid down in the charts of the Dutch navigators, cannot be determined with any degree of certainty; especially when we consider, that their discoveries are not handed down to us with sufficient accuracy. Thursday, the 11th, we made the high land of Otaheite; by sun-set was in with Point Venus, and the next morning, at eight o'clock, anchored in Matavai Bay, in seven fathoms water. Our arrival was no sooner known to the natives, than they paid us a visit, expressed the most lively congratulations, and supplied us with fish and fruit sufficient for the whole crew. Our first business was to erect tents for the reception of such of our people as were required on shore. Sick we had none, for the refreshments we got at the Marquesas, had been the means of removing every complaint of the scorbutic kind, and of preserving the whole crew in good health. We also sent ashore Mr. Wales's instruments; our chief reason for putting into this place being to afford him an opportunity to ascertain the error of the watch by the known longitude, and to determine precisely its rate of going.

On Sunday, the 24th, Otoo and other chiefs, with a train of attendants, brought us ten large hogs, besides fruit, which made their visit exceedingly agreeable. As

the king's coming had been announced to us, and knowing how much it was our interest to keep this chief our friend, Capt. Cook met him at the tents, and conducted the whole of this retinue, with himself, on board, where they staid dinner, and appeared highly pleased with their reception. Next day, notwithstanding we had much thunder, lightning, and rain, the king came again to see us, and brought with him another present, consisting of a large quantity of refreshments. When at Amsterdams, we had collected, among other curiosities, some red parrot feathers. These precious valuables procured us hogs, fruit, and every other thing the island afforded. Our having them was a fortunate circumstance; for our stock in trade being greatly exhausted, without these we should have found it difficult to have supplied the ship with necessary refreshments. When we put into this island, we intended to stay no longer than Mr. Wales had made the necessary observations for the purposes already mentioned; and supposing we should meet with no better success than we did the last time we were here. But the reception we had already met with, and the few excursions we had made to the plains of Matavai and Oparree, convinced us of our error; for at these two places we found built, and building, a large number of canoes and houses of every kind: people living in spacious houses, who had not a place to shelter themselves in eight months before; also several hogs in every house, with many other signs of a rising state. On account of these favourable circumstances, we resolved to make a longer stay at this island, and to repair the ship, which was now indispensably necessary. Accordingly the empty casks and sails were got ashore, the ship was ordered to be caulked, and the rigging to be overhauled.

On Tuesday, the 26th, Capt. Cook, accompanied by some of the officers and gentlemen, went down to Oparree, to visit Otoo by appointment. When arrived, we saw a number of large canoes in motion, but were much surpris'd at perceiving more than three hundred ranged along shore, all completely equipped and manned; besides a vast number of armed men upon the shore. We landed in the midst of them, and were received by a vast multitude, some under arms, and some not. The cry of the former was Tiyo no Towha, and of the latter was Tiyo no Otoo. Towha, we afterwards learnt, was admiral, or commander of the fleet. Upon our landing we were met by a chief, named Tee, uncle to the king, of whom we enquired for Otoo. Soon after we were met by Towha, who received us in a friendly manner. He took Capt. Cook by the one hand, and Tee by the other, and dragged him, as it were, through the crowd that was divided into two parties, both of which proclaimed themselves his friends, by crying out Tiyo no Tee. One party wanted him to go to Otoo, and the other to remain with Towha. When come to the usual place of audience, Tee left us to go and bring the king. Towha insisted on the captain's going with him, but he would not consent. When Tee returned, he took hold of his hand in order to conduct him to the king. Towha was unwilling he should sit down, and desired him to go with him; but this chief being a stranger, he refused to comply. Tee was very desirous of conducting the captain to the king; Towha opposed, and he was obliged to desire Tee to desist, and to leave him to the admiral and his party, who conducted him down to the fleet. Here we found two lines of armed men drawn up before the admiral's vessel, in order to keep off the crowd that we might go on board; and when the captain made an excuse, a man squatted down, and offered to carry him, but he would not go. At this time Towha quitted us, without our seeing which way he went, nor would any one inform us. We were now jostled about in the crowd. We saw Tee, and inquiring of him for the king, he told us he was gone into the country of Matavai, and he advised us to repair to the boat, which we accordingly did, as soon as we could get collected together. When in our boat we took our time to reconnoitre the grand fleet. We told an hundred and sixty large double canoes, equipped, manned, and armed;

but we believe they had not their full complement of rowers. The chiefs and all those on the fighting flags, were habited in cloth, turbans, breast plates, and helmets. Some of the latter seemed much to incumber the wearer. Be this as it may, the whole of their dress added a grandeur to the prospect, and they were so complaisant as to shew themselves to the best advantage. Their vessels were full dressed with flags, streamers, &c. so that the whole fleet made such a noble appearance, as we had never before seen in this sea, and what no one could have expected. Their instruments of war were clubs, spears, and lances. The vessels were ranged close along side of each other, having their heads to the shore, and their sterns to the sea. The admiral's vessel was nearly in the center. We counted, exclusive of the vessels of war, an hundred and seventy sail of smaller double canoes, all rigged with mast and sail, which the war canoes had not. These we judged were designed for transports, victuallers, &c. for in the war canoes were no sorts of provisions whatever. We conjectured that in these three hundred and thirty vessels there were no less than seven thousand seven hundred and sixty men, a number incredible, especially as we were told they all belonged to the districts of Atahourou and Ahopatea. Most of the gentlemen, by their calculations, thought the number of men belonging to the war canoes exceeded this, allowing to each war canoe forty men, and to each of the small canoes eight. Having viewed this fleet, it was our intention to have gone on board, could we have seen the admiral. We enquired for him, but to no purpose. At last Tee came, by whom we were informed, that Otoo was gone to Matavai. This intelligence gave rise to new conjectures. When we got to Matavai, our friends told us, that this fleet was part of the armament intended to go against Eimeo, whose chief had thrown off the yoke of Orahete. We were still at a loss to account for the flight of Otoo from Oparree, for we were informed he neither was nor had been at Matavai. We therefore went thither again in the afternoon, where we found him, and learnt, that the reason of his absconding in the morning was, because some of his people had stole some of the captain's clothes which were washing at the tents, and he feared retribution would be demanded. He repeatedly asked Capt. Cook if he was not angry, nor could he be easy till assured, that the pilferers might keep the stolen things. Towha also was alarmed, thinking that Capt. Cook was displeas'd, and jealous of seeing such a force so near us, without knowing its destination. It happened unluckily that Oedee was not with us in the morning; for Tee, who was the only man we could depend on, served rather to increase our perplexity. Thus by mutual misunderstanding, we lost a favourable opportunity of scrutinizing the naval force of this isle, and making ourselves better acquainted with its manœuvres. It was commanded by an intelligent and brave chief, who was dispos'd to have satisfied us in all questions we had thought proper to ask; and from the nature of the objects, which were before us, we could not well have misunderstood each other. All mistakes being now rectified, and presents having pass'd between Otoo and Capt. Cook, we took leave and returned on board.

On Wednesday, the 27th, in the morning, Towha sent us, by two of his servants, two large hogs, and some fruit. The bearers of this present had orders not to receive any thing in return, nor would they when offered them. Some of our gentlemen went with the captain in his boat down to Oparree, where we found Towha, and the king; after a short visit, we brought them both on board, together with Tarevato, the king's younger brother. When we drew near the ship, the admiral, who had never seen me before, expressed strong signs of surprize, and when on board, he was shew'd, and beheld every part of it with great attention. When Towha retired after dinner, he put a hog on board without our knowledge, or waiting for a return; and soon after Otoo and his attendants departed also. There was a jealousy between these two chiefs, on what account we could not learn,

nevertheless Otoo desirous we should fore frankly declare our assistance against Eimeo was no rupture as they had inform'd us we could not find of annexing that own, as it was for Cook gave them on this subject. Finally, we believ'd for next day, being king of Tarrabou he requested a friendly sent him. Otoo, Towha, visit, and brought some of the most among other repleas'd, the captain we have seen must not omit to say, one of the fiscal a cask from in the act, he was iron. Otoo and situation, and O requesting with at liberty; but people were put against the native punish this man done in an extreme known, he, Otoo in consequence of ed ashore to the under arms, and his sister, and Otoo and his whom the captain just it was in his friends, and who out giving cert exchange. The Otoo, that the this man might of others of his kind of crimes time or another well understood only he desired (or killed.) T very great. T them at a pro of them all, c with a cat-o-ni with great firm this the natives pleas'd; which had remain'd thing going gued them for We understood could gather, he mentioned our people; present conduct a different on ably graceful, dience, proved said not one w harangue, the their exercise being very q ves, is a fee of the native amazement

nevertheless Otoo paid Towha much respect, and was desirous we should do the same. Otoo had the day before frankly declared, that the admiral was not his friend. When on board, both these chiefs requested our assistance against Tiarabou, notwithstanding there was no rupture as this time between the two states, and they had informed us, that their joint forces were intended against Eimeo. The reason of this duplicity we could not find out: perhaps they were desirous of annexing that kingdom, by our alliance, to their own, as it was formerly: be that as it may, as Capt. Cook gave them no encouragement, we heard no more on this subject. Our endeavours to maintain a neutrality, we believe, were well received by both parties; for next day, being Thursday, the 28th, Wahea-toua, king of Tiarabou sent us a present of a hog, for which he requested a few red feathers, which were accordingly sent him. On the 29th, early in the morning, Otoo, Towha, and several chiefs, again paid us a visit, and brought with them not only provisions, but some of the most choice curiosities of the island, and among other returns, with which they seemed well pleased, the captain did not forget to repay the civilities we had received from the admiral, Towha. We must not omit taking notice, that the preceding evening, one of the natives was detected in an attempt to steal a cask from the watering place, and being caught in the act, he was sent on board, and we put him in irons. Otoo and the other chiefs saw the culprit in this situation, and Otoo earnestly interceded in his behalf, requesting with many intreaties, that he might be set at liberty; but he was told by Capt. Cook, that as our people were punished for the least offence committed against the natives of Otaheite, it was but justice to punish this man also, which he was determined to see done in an exemplary manner, especially as it was well known, he, Otoo, would not do it himself. The man, in consequence of the captain's resolution, was conducted ashore to the tents, where a guard was ordered out under arms, and the offender tied up to a post, Otoo, his sister, and many of the natives being spectators. Otoo and his sister begged hard for the man; with whom the captain expostulated, telling Otoo, how unjust it was in his people to steal from us who were their friends, and who never took any thing from them without giving certain articles, which he enumerated, in exchange. The captain laboured also to convince Otoo, that the punishment he was about to inflict on this man might prove the means of saving the lives of others of his subjects; for if they continued in such kind of criminal practices, some would certainly, one time or another, be shot dead. We believe he pretty well understood our commander, and seemed satisfied, only he desired the criminal might not be Mattered, (or killed.) The concourse of people was by this time very great. The captain therefore drew a line for them at a proper distance, and then, in the presence of them all, ordered the fellow two dozen of lashes with a cat-o-nine-tails. This chastisement he received with great firmness, and was then set at liberty. Upon this the natives were going away, apparently not much pleased; which Towha perceiving, who all the time had remained silent, though very attentive to every thing going on, he stepped forward, and harangued them for near half an hour, in short sentences. We understood little of his speech, but from what we could gather, it was a recapitulation of Capt. Cook's: he mentioned several advantages they had received from our people; and having reprimanded them for their present conduct, he exhorted them to adopt and pursue a different one for the future. His action was remarkably graceful, and the profound attention of his audience, proved him to be a masterly speaker. Otoo said not one word. When Towha had concluded his harangue, the marines were ordered to go through their exercise. They fired in volleys with ball, and being very quick in charging, and in their manoeuvres, is scarcely possible to describe the astonishment of the natives during the whole time, particularly the amazement of those to whom this fight was quite a

novelty. The chiefs with all their retinue, now took leave, we are apt to think not less frightened than pleased at what they had seen. In the evening Mr. Forster and his party returned from an excursion they had made to the mountains, where they had spent the night. Mr. Forster collected some new plants, and found others which grew in New Zealand. He saw the island of Huahine, situated forty leagues to the westward; whereby a judgment may be formed of the height of the mountains of Otaheite.

On Saturday the 30th, we saw ten war canoes go through part of their paddling exercise. They were properly equipped for war, and in landing we observed, that the moment the canoe touched the ground, all the warriors leaped out, and with the assistance of a few people on shore, dragged the canoe on dry land to its proper place; which done, every one walked off with his paddle, &c. Such was their expedition, that in five minutes time after putting ashore, no one could tell that any thing of the kind had been going forward. The warriors on the stage encouraged the rowers to exert themselves, and we observed some youths in the curved stern elevated above the rest, with white wands in their hands, placed there perhaps to look out, and give notice of what they saw. The king's brother Tarevato, knowing that Mr. Hodges made drawings of every thing curious, intimated of his own accord, that he might be sent for; and thus an opportunity was unexpectedly afforded our draughtsman, to collect materials for a picture of the Otaheite fleet, as it appears when assembled at Oparree. Being present when the warriors undressed, we could scarcely conceive how it was possible for them to stand under the quantity of cloth with which they were clad, in time of action. Many rounds of this composed a kind of turban or cap, which, in the day of battle, might prevent a broken head, and some by way of ornament, had fixed to these caps dried branches of small shrubs, interwoven with white feathers.

On Sunday the 1st of May, several chiefs supplied us with a large quantity of provisions; and the day following our friend Towha sent us a present of a hog, and a boat loaded with various sorts of fruit and roots. We received also another present from Otoo, brought by Tarevato. On the 3d, upon examining into the condition of our provisions, we found our biscuit much decayed, and that the airing we had given it at New Zealand was not of the service we expected; we therefore were now obliged to have it on shore, where it underwent another airing and picking, in doing which we found a great part thereof wholly rotten and unfit for use. We attributed this decay of our bread to the ice we frequently took in, which made the hold damp and cold, which, when to the north, was succeeded by a contrary extreme of intense heat; but whatever was the real cause of our loss, it put us to a scanty allowance of this valuable article, and we had bad bread to eat besides. On Thursday the 5th, in the afternoon, the botanists made another excursion up the country, to the mountains; they returned the evening of next day, and in their way made some new discoveries. On Saturday the 7th, in the morning, we found Otoo at the tents, of whom the captain asked leave to cut down some trees for fuel. He took him to some growing near the sea shore, the better to make him comprehend what sort we wanted; and he seemed much pleased when he understood, that no trees should be cut down that bore any kind of fruit. This assurance from us he repeated several times aloud to the people about us. In the afternoon we were honoured, when on board, with a visit from the whole royal family, consisting of Otoo, his father, brother, and two sisters: but this was properly her father's visit, who brought the captain a complete mourning dress, a present he much valued; for which he had in return whatever he desired, which was not a little; and to the rest of the company were presented red feathers. The whole were then conducted ashore in the captain's boat. Otoo and his friends were so well pleased with the reception they met with, that, at parting, we were granted the liberty of cutting down

every thing ready for our market, when they were permitted to bring them. Otoo desiring to see some of the great guns fired, his wish was complied with, but the light, which was entirely new, gave him as much pain as pleasure; but in the evening, when we entertained him with a shew of fire-works, he expressed much greater satisfaction. We have before had occasion to observe, that these people were continually watching opportunities to rob us; and seeing the offenders were continually foreseen, we cannot but think, that the chiefs either encouraged, or had not power to prevent thievish practices. We thought it more extraordinary that they should so often attempt what they knew might cost them their lives; and they well knew also they should be obliged to make restitution, if the article stolen was of any great value. They were fully sensible of these consequences, and therefore, the moment a theft was committed, every one took the alarm, and went off with his moveables as fast as possible; but if the article was a trifle, or such as we usually gave them, no commotion happened, because, in general, little or no notice was taken of it. Whether we obliged them to make restitution or not, the chief frequently secreted himself, and he must be reconciled before the people were permitted to bring in any refreshments; and we are persuaded it was by his orders the supplies were detained from us. These they imagined we could not do without, not considering, that their war canoes, dwellings, and even fruit, were entirely in our power. Their propensity to thieving must be almost insupportable, otherwise our uniform conduct towards them would have had its due weight: for, except detaching their canoes for a time, we never touched the smallest article of their property. When two extremes were under our consideration, we always chose the most equitable and mild; and frequently settled disputes, or effected a reconciliation, by trifling presents, notwithstanding we were the party aggrieved. A present to a chief always succeeded to our wish, and put things on a better footing than they had been before. In all our differences they were the first aggressors; and our people very seldom infringed the rules prescribed by our commander. Had the captain pursued less eligible methods, he might have been a loser in the end; for had he destroyed any of the natives, or part of their property, all he could expect would have been the empty honour of obliging them to make the first advances towards an accommodation. Nor is it certain this would have been the event. They were made our fast friends by three motives; their own benevolent disposition, mild treatment from us, and the dread of our fire-arms. Had we not continually had recourse to the second, the first would have been of little use to us; and a too frequent application of fire arms might have excited revenge, perhaps taught them in a little time, that they were not such terrible things as they had conceived them at first to be. They knew their strength in the superiority of their numbers, and who can lay what an enraged multitude might do by undauntedly closing with even an European enemy.

On Wednesday, the 11th, a large supply of fruit came to market, and among the rest a present from Towha, the admiral; for which the captain made a suitable return. At this time all the necessary repairs of the ship being nearly finished, it was resolved to leave Otaheite in a few days; to this end every thing was ordered off from the shore, that the natives might see we were about to leave them. On the 12th, Obeera, whom we had not seen since 1769, paid us a visit, bringing with her hogs and fruit. Otoo also came soon after her, with a number of attendants, and a large quantity of provisions. Capt. Cook was very generous in his returns of presents, and in the evening entertained them with fire-works, thinking it might be the last time we might see these friendly people, who had so liberally relieved our wants.

On Friday, the 13th, we were not ready to sail, but the wind was favourable, and the weather fair. Oedidee was not yet returned from Attahourou, and various reports were circulated concerning him. Some said he was at Matavai; others, that he intended not

to return; and there were those who affirmed he was at Oparree. With a view of discovering the truth, a party of us repaired to Oparree, where we found him. Towha was also here, who, notwithstanding he was afflicted with a swelling in his feet and legs which had taken away the use of them, had nevertheless resolved to see the captain before he sailed, and had advanced with this intent thus far on his journey. The day being far spent, we were obliged to shorten our stay, and after having seen Otoo, we returned on board with Oedidee. This youth, we found, was desirous of remaining at Otaheite; the captain therefore told him he was at liberty to remain here, or to quit us at Ulitea, or to go with us to England. That if the latter was his choice, he must look upon him as his father, as it was very probable he would never return to his own country. The youth threw his arms about his neck, wept much, and said, many of his friends persuaded him to remain at Otaheite. Oedidee was well beloved in the ship; on which account every one was persuading him to go with us. But Capt. Cook thought it an act of the highest injustice to take a person from these isles, when there was not the least prospect of his returning, under any promise which was not in his power to perform. Indeed, at this time, it was quite unnecessary, seeing many young men offered voluntarily to go with us, nay, even to remain and die in Pictance, as they call our country. Several of our gentlemen would have taken some as servants, but Capt. Cook prudently rejected every solicitation of this kind, knowing, they would be of little use to us in the course of the voyage; besides, what had still greater weight with the captain, was, that he thought himself bound to see they were afterwards properly taken care of.

On Saturday, the 14th, early in the morning, Oedidee came on board, and Mr. Forster prevailed upon him to go with us to Ulitea. Towha, Poatatu, Oamo, Happi, Oberea, and many more of our friends paid us a visit. The wife of Towha was with him, and this chief was hoisted in, and placed on a chair, on the quarter deck. Among other presents, we gave the admiral an English pendant, which, after he had been instructed in the use of it, pleased him more than all the rest. Soon after these friends had left us, we saw a number of war canoes coming round the point of Oparree, to which place the captain, accompanied by some of our officers and gentlemen, hastened down, in order to have a nearer view of the fleet. We arrived there before all the canoes were landed, and had an opportunity of observing in what manner they approached the shore. No sooner had they got before the place where they intended to land, than they formed themselves into divisions, consisting of three or more canoes lashed square and along-side of each other; after which each division paddled in for the shore, one after another, in so judicious a manner, that they formed, and closed a line along the shore to an inch. The rowers were encouraged by their warriors, and directed by a man who stood with a wand in his hand at the head of the middlemost vessel. By words and actions he directed the rowers when all should paddle, and when either the one side or the other should cease, &c. for the steering paddles were not sufficient to direct them. They observed all these motions with such quickness, and answered so exactly, as plainly shewed them to be expert in their business. Mr. Hodges made a drawing of them, as they lay ranged along the shore, after which we took a nearer view, by going on board several of them.

This fleet, which consisted of sixty sail, belonged to the little district of Tetaha, and were come to Oparree, to be reviewed before the king, as the former fleet had been, the manner of whose equipment we have already described, and as that of this fleet was exactly the same, a repetition must be here needless. On this fleet were attending some small double canoes, called Marals, having in their fore part a kind of double bed-place laid over with green leaves, each just sufficient to contain one person. These they told us were to place their dead upon, their chiefs we suppose they meant, otherwise their slain must be very

few. Otoo, at our request, ordered some of their troops to go through their exercise on shore. Two parties first began a battle with clubs; they then proceeded to single combat, and exhibited the various methods of fighting with surprising agility; parrying off the blows and pushes with great alertness and dexterity. Their arms are clubs and spears. In using the club, all blows aimed at the legs, were evaded by leaping over it, and those designed for the head, by couching a little, and leaping on one side. The spear, which is used at times as a dart, was parried, by fixing the point of a spear in the ground right before them, holding it in an inclined position, more or less elevated, according as they saw to what part of the body their antagonist intended to make a push, or to throw his dart at; and by moving the hand a little to the right or left, either the one or the other was turned off with great ease. These combatants had no superfluous dress upon them. An unnecessary piece of cloth or two which they had on when they began the combat, were presently torn off by some of the spectators, and given to our gentlemen. This review being over, the fleet departed without any order, as fast as they could be got afloat; and Otoo conducted us to one of his dock-yards, where the two large pahies, or canoes, were building, each of which was an hundred and eight feet long. They were designed to form one joint double canoe, and were almost ready for launching. The king begged of the captain a grappling and rope, to which he added an English jack and pendant, and desired the Pahie might be called the Britannia. This he readily agreed to, and the was immediately so named. When we came to the boat, we found in it a hog, and a turtle of about sixty pounds weight: this had been put in privately by Otoo's order, that the chiefs about him might not be offended by their being deprived of an entertainment. The king would likewise have presented to us a large shark they had prisoner in a creek (some of his fins being cut off to prevent his escaping) but the excellent pork, and fish, with which we were supplied at this isle, had spoiled our palates for such rank food. We were accompanied on board by the king, and Tee, his prime minister, who after dinner took an affectionate farewell. Otoo had importuned us the whole day, and most earnestly requested of us, that we would return to Otaheite. When about to depart, he desired of the captain to permit a youth, whom he took by the hand, to go in the ship to Amsterdamb, in order to collect for him red feathers. The youth was very desirous of going, but as he could not return, the captain, with the view of satisfying Otoo, promised him, that if any ship should be sent thither from Britain, the important article of red feathers should not be forgotten. The captain, we believe, was disposed to have obliged the king; but it is to be remembered, we had resolved to carry no one from the isles (except Oedidee, if he chose to go) and the captain had just refused Mr. Forster the liberty of taking a boy with him, for reasons already mentioned. But if curiosity excited a desire in the youth of Otaheite to go with us, the treatment we had met with at this place had induced one of our gunner's mates to remain at it. To this end he had formed a plan which he knew was not to be executed with success while we lay in the bay; and no sooner were we out, the sails set, and the boats out, than he took the opportunity, being a good swimmer, to slip overboard. He was discovered before he had got clear of the ship, and a boat being hoisted out, presently returned with the runaway. About midway between us and the shore, a canoe was observed coming after us, intended without doubt to take him up; for when the people in her saw our boat, they stood off at a greater distance. This we found was a preconcerted plan between the man and some of the natives, with which Otoo was acquainted, and had encouraged. The gunner's mate was an Irishman by birth, and we had picked him up at Batavia, in our first voyage. He had neither friends, nor connections, to confine him to any particular part of the world, where then could he be so happy as at one of

these isles? Here he might enjoy in ease and plenty, not only the necessaries, but the luxuries of life, which leads us, before we leave this celebrated island of Otaheite, to give some account of its present state, especially as it differs much from what it was even eight months ago; and in order to give our subscribers, and numerous readers a more distant idea of its situation, general figure, extent, and the character of its inhabitants, we must beg of them to indulge us with the liberty of a recapitulation of several things, which have already appeared in detached parts of this work; so that the whole may be brought into one view, and its distinct heads ranged in their proper order. We have already mentioned the improvements we found in the plains of Oparree and Matavai. The same was observed in every other part that came under our observation. It seemed to us almost incredible, that so many large canoes and houses could be built in so short a space as eight months; but the iron tools which they had got from the English, and other nations, who have lately touched at the island, no doubt, had accelerated the work, and of hands they cannot be in want. The great increase in the number of their hogs no less excited our admiration; though, probably, they were not so scarce when we were here before, as we then imagined; as, not chusing to part with any, they might have conveyed them out of sight.

The situation of this isle is perhaps the best in the world, being exposed to none of those vicissitudes of heat and cold, which are observed to have so sensible an effect on the health and spirits of those who live in remoter regions. Its exact position is from latitude 17 deg. 28 min. to that of 17 deg. 53 min. S. and from longitude 149 deg. 10 min. to 149 deg. 40 min. W. It lies nearly N. W. and S. E. and is divided into two distinct principalities by an isthmus, or neck of land, and three miles over. The north-westerly division is, however, much larger, and more fertile, but by no means so well cultivated as the south-easterly division; which shews, that even the defects of nature, if we may be allowed to call them so, have their use, in prompting men to industry and art, to supply their wants. The figure of the largest peninsula, is nearly circular, being from N. to S. about twenty miles, and from E. to W. about the same. The whole is surrounded with a reef of rocks. The lesser peninsula is rather of an oval form, and from the neck of land on the N. W. side, to the little isle of Otooareite on the S. E. is about twelve miles; but from the mouth of the river Omatea on the south, to that of Owahe on the north, not more than eight. The circumference of the largest peninsula is about sixty miles, of the smallest about twenty-four; but in sailing round both, the line will be extended to ninety nearly.

For a particular account of the produce of the island, we are indebted no doubt to the indefatigable industry of Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander; in whose catalogue are the following particulars, namely, bread-fruit, coconuts, bananas of thirteen sorts; plantains, a fruit not unlike an apple, which when ripe is very pleasant; sweet potatoes, yams, cocoas, a kind of arum; a fruit called by the natives jan-bu, very delicious; sugarcane; a root of the saloop kind, called pea; a plant called ethee; a fruit named ahee, not unlike a kidney bean, and which, when roasted, tastes like chestnuts; a tree called wharra, producing a fruit not unlike a pine apple; a shrub called nono; the morinda, which also produces fruit; a species of fern; and a plant called ava, of which the roots only are chewed: all these, which serve the natives for food, the earth produces spontaneously; besides which there are a great variety of shrubs and plants, which serve for various purposes of building houses, vessels, tools of different kinds, manufactures, dyes, &c. to enumerate which would be tedious. Of four footed animals the island produces but few, none having been seen by the Europeans on their first landing, but hogs, dogs, and rats, of which last the inhabitants are very fond. Their wild fowl are ducks only, and the birds that haunt the wood, except small birds, are chiefly pigeons, and pa-

requers; but varieties are not is it so well flav it may be prop Capt. Furneau seemed to prom they were put female kids, wh gate their Spect The natives see to like their situ condition. We this circumstan spread over a which we left, derstood one w with a flock of we left at Ulte

The natives, ther above the l of the simplest tory, nor their lated to provoke with the ocean exercise; and th tern countries ments, is by the who have repres supplies liberally character. Eve houses, public their utensils, in boats, and fishin their industry. nish cloth; and with an incurabl not appear, th siderable progress with strict truth, yet if we were to Onia, who were thought to have l chiefs have unde that comparison prince and peasa countries, where racters. Their v fonal charms as i those of superior family distinction the first rank to tioned youth, to of the family is i are otherwise ser ing with the cana of their cohabit class of people. the pride of ance yet they have n but by oral tradi line, but what n Having no schoo cation, example the pattern set b what the mothe that is not to be u arts, as in China hete husbandry are rather amuse compelled to we stations chance s murmuring aga bountiful. One in order to giv omitted, and th between the fexer nity. The very strude, who in g standard as thei tattooed, wom

roquets; but with fish the coast abounds, of which the varieties are numberless. Poultry is not in plenty, nor is it so well flavoured as what we have in Europe. Here it may be proper to observe, that the two goats, which Capt. Furneaux gave to Otoo, when we were last here, seemed to promise fair for answering the end for which they were put on shore. The ewe soon after had two female kids, which were at this time ready to propagate their species; and the old ewe was again with kid. The natives seemed to be very fond of them, and they to like their situation; for they were in exceeding good condition. We may therefore reasonably hope from this circumstance, that, in a few years, they may be spread over all the isles in this ocean. The sheep which we left, died in a short time after; but we understood one was yet alive. We also furnished them with a flock of cats, not less than twenty, besides what we left at Ulietea and Huahine.

The natives, particularly the chiefs, are in size, rather above the largest Europeans. Their food, which is of the simplest kind, is not such as to promote gluttony, nor their drink, which is chiefly water, calculated to provoke intemperance. Their daily intercourse with the ocean accustoms them from their youth to exercise; and the business of fishing, which in northern countries is the most laborious of all employments, is by them practised as their amusement. They who have represented them as indolent, because nature supplies liberally all their wants, have mistaken their character. Even their chiefs are artists, and their houses, public edifices, canoes, and manufactures, their utensils, instruments of war, working tools, their boats, and fishing tackle, are all proofs incontestible of their industry. Employments of this kind tend to banish sloth; and no person was ever known to languish with an incurable disease among them, though it does not appear, that the medical art has yet made any considerable progress. Much has been said, and in general with strict truth, of the gracefulness of their persons; yet if we were to judge of the whole by Autorou, and Omia, who were brought to England, they might be thought to have little claim to that perfection; yet their chiefs have undoubtedly a comparative dignity; but that comparison is to be confined at home between prince and peasant, and not extended to European countries, where grace and dignity are leading characters. Their women differ from each other in personal charms as in all other countries; but in stature, those of superior rank take especial care to preserve the family distinction. It is not uncommon for ladies of the first rank to single out a handsome well-proportioned youth, to prevent degeneracy, when the stature of the family is in danger of being reduced; but they are otherwise scrupulous in nothing so much as in mixing with the canaille, and there is scarcely an instance of their cohabiting indiscriminately with the lower class of people. There is, perhaps, no nation where the pride of ancestry is carried to a greater height, and yet they have no means of recording their pedigree, but by oral tradition, nor any rule for continuing the line, but what nature has impressed upon the mother. Having no schools, nothing is to be acquired by education, example is their principal instructor and guide; the pattern set by the father is followed by the son, and what the mother does, that the daughter learns; but that is not to be understood to perpetuate husbandry and arts, as in China, in particular families; for in Otaheite husbandry and arts are not imposed as tasks, but are rather amusements to pass away time. None are compelled to work, yet all are employed; their several stations chance seems to have allotted; and here is no murmuring against providence for not being more bountiful. One precaution observed among the great in order to give vigour to their chiefs must not be omitted, and that is, they never suffer an intercourse between the sexes till both parties arrive at full maturity. The very reverse of this is practised by the multitude, who in general are as much below the common standard as their chiefs exceed it. They are almost all tattooed, women as well as men. In this there seems

to be something mystical; the priest performs the operation, and the very children are encouraged by example to endure the pain, than which nothing can be more acute. To have a thousand punctures all at once, with the blood starting at every puncture, is more, one would think, than a child could bear, yet they suffer it with a fortitude of which in Europe an instance cannot be found. Their hair is almost universally black. The men wear it long, waving in ringlets down their shoulders; but the women cut it short round their ears: both sexes suffer none to grow under their arms; and are very delicate in keeping every part about them sweet and clean. To this end they frequently bathe, seldom suffering a day to pass without going into the water more than once. Indeed they anoint their heads with an oil expressed from the cocoa-nut, which sometimes proves rancid, and emits a disagreeable smell; otherwise in their persons they are without a taint. Mr. Banks said, "that if our sailors quarrelled with these people, they would not agree with angels," which sufficiently denotes the goodness of their disposition. We have mentioned that Waheatou is related to Otoo. The same may be said of the chiefs of Eimeo, Tapamannoo, Huahine, Ulietea, Otaha, Bohlabol, for these are all related to the royal family of Otaheite. It is a maxim with the Earees, and others of superior rank, as we have just observed, never to intermarry with the Toutous, or others of inferior rank; and probably this custom might give rise to the establishment of the class called Earees: it is certain these societies prevent greatly the increase of the superior classes of people, of which they are composed, and do not interfere with the lower or Toutous; for we never heard of one of these being an Earee; nor that a Toutou could rise in life above the rank in which he was placed by his birth.

The customs of these people observed in their eating, as our readers must have perceived from what has already been said on this subject, are very singular, and they seem to entertain some superstitious notions, not easily discoverable by strangers. The women are not permitted to eat with the men; not, as it should seem, to mark their inferiority, but in conformity to a custom which habit has established into a law; nor is it usual for any of them to eat in company, except upon certain days of festivity, when great numbers of them assemble together. A messenger from one of our English captains found Oberea, the then supposed queen of the island, entertaining a company, which he supposed could not be less than a thousand. The messes were all brought to her by the servants, who had prepared them; the meat being put into the shells of cocoa-nuts, and the shells into wooden trays; and the distributed them with her own hands to the guests, who were seated in rows. This done she sat down herself upon a seat somewhat elevated above the rest, and two women placing themselves, one on each side, fed her like a child. When she saw the messenger, she ordered a mess for him. They have two ways of dressing their animal food, namely, broiling and baking. The first is performed over hot stones, without any other contrivance than that of placing the meat upon the clean stones, and when done enough on one side, they turn it, and broil the other. Their manner of baking is very singular and curious. They first dig a hole in the ground, in depth and dimensions proportioned to the thing they have to dress; they then place a layer of wood at bottom, and over that a layer of stones, and so alternately a layer of wood and a layer of stones, till the hole is full: the fire is then kindled, and the stones made hot; this done they take out the fire, and placing the stones that are least heated one beside the other at the bottom of the hole, they cover them with fresh leaves; and on these they put the meat intended to be baked; then after laying another layer of green leaves, they fill up the hole with the remaining hot stones, and close the whole with the mould that was first dug out of the pit. In this situation the meat is suffered to remain for three or four hours; and when taken out is then so savoury, as not to be exceeded by the

the best European cookery. Almost all the flesh and fish eaten by the chiefs in the island is dressed in one or the other of the above two ways: the latter is most in use among the gentry; and the former among the commonalty, who sometimes indeed eat their fish without dressing. Tables they have none, and those of the highest quality dine on the ground under the shade of a spreading tree; fresh green leaves serve them for a cloth, and a basket which is set down by them holds their provision; these, and two cocoa-nuts, one filled with salt water, the other with fresh, complete the whole preparation for a meal. When this is done, they wash their hands and mouths, and then, if nothing calls them abroad, they usually lay themselves down to sleep. It was long before any of them could be persuaded to eat with Europeans, and they certainly, like the Jews, have some superstitious ceremonies to be observed in the preparation of the food they eat, which, if omitted, renders it unclean, or they would not have continued scrupulous so long. Even the food of their women is differently prepared from that of the men; and if touched by unhallowed hands, is accounted unfit for use. Some of the gentlemen, when invited to their houses, eat out of the same basket, and drank out of the same cup, with their hosts; but it was observed, that the elderly women were always offended with this liberty; and if they happened to touch the victuals of any of the ancient matrons, or even the basket that held it, they never failed to express their dislike, and to throw it away; nor could the women of fashion ever be persuaded to eat with the gentlemen, when dining in company: but what seems most strange, and hardly to be accounted for, they would go, five or six in company, into the servants apartments, and eat heartily of whatever they could find; nor did they seem in the least disconcerted, if they were discovered; yet it was not easy to persuade any of them when alone, in private with a gentleman, to eat with him, nor would they ever do it but under the most solemn promises of secrecy.

Their amusements are various, such as music, dancing, wrestling, shooting with the bow, darting their lances, swimming, roving, and slinging of stones. Their music it must be confessed is very imperfect, consisting only of a flute and drum, yet with these, companies go about the country, and frequent their festivals, being in equal estimation with them as maudlin dancers were formerly with us, and the diversion they make is not unfamiliar. In shooting the long bow, or in throwing the lance, they by no means excel; neither are they very dexterous at wrestling; but at throwing stones, and swimming, they are perhaps equal to any people upon earth. Among other diversions, they have their heivas, nearly corresponding with our English wakes. The young people meet together to dance and to make merry; and at these times their minstrels and players constantly attend, as formerly persons of the same character were wont to do all over England, and in some counties the vestiges of that ancient custom remain to this day. At these heivas, however, their female performers, in their dances, have no regard to decency; and though the same end was no doubt in view in the institution of the wake and heiva, yet what in England was concerted with the utmost secrecy, is publicly avowed and practised in Otaheite. But though the instrumental music of the Otaheiteans is much confined, their vocal music is by no means contemptible; yet in the sweetness of the voice consists all the melody, for they have no rules to regulate the tones. Their songs are accompanied with words of their own composing, which they can vary into long and short verses, sprightly or solemn, as occasion presents; and as their language is exceeding harmonious and musical, a stranger is no less delighted with the arrantest nonsense, than he would be with the most sublime composition. The heivas are indiscriminately frequented by all ranks of people; but there is still a more exceptionable meeting held by those of high rank, to which such only are admitted who are properly initiated. These people form a distinct society, in which

every woman is common to every man; and at their meetings, which are distinguished by the name of Ar-reoy, the sports they practise are beyond imagination wanton. We may trace somewhat like this in the history of the ancient inhabitants of our own island. Perhaps it would be no exaggeration to add, that in the city of London, there are as many men as the whole island of Otaheite contains, who devote themselves entirely to the pleasures of sensuality, and who attach themselves to no one woman, but enjoy indiscriminately all they may; and that there are an equal number of women to be met with, who are at all times ready to gratify their desires.

Dress, among the ladies of Otaheite, seems to be as much studied, as in more civilized nations. However, neither the feet nor legs, even of the quality, have any covering, or any defence from the ground, or the scorching heat of the sun, which at some seasons is very intense; but they are very nice in ornamenting their heads, and in shading their faces. That part of their head-dress, in which they pride themselves most, is threads of human hair, so delicately plaited, that it is not unusual for them to have garlands of this manufacture wound round their heads; the plaits whereof being interwove with flowers have a very pretty effect, and are exceedingly becoming to young faces. In their ears they wear ornaments, which, before the European beads, consisted of bone, tortoiseshell, or any thing shining and shewy. The other part of their dress is very simple; being a piece of cloth about a yard and a half wide, and between three and four yards long, having a hole cut in the middle, just big enough to let the head pass easily through; this flows round them, and covers them a little below the waist; from thence a large quantity of the same cloth is gathered in folds, and tied round them as we tie a cravat round the neck, which, being drawn into a large knot, is again spread out, and flows artlessly down before, nearly as low as the knees, while the greatest quantity of the cloth falls down behind, in appearance not unlike the dress of the Roman orators. This habit is far from being ungraceful, and there is little difference between that of the sexes, except that the lower garment of the men are nearly of an equal length before and behind. The cloth they wear is of very different textures. What is worn in dry weather is no other than paper made of the rinds of trees; but that which they put on when it rains is more substantial, and is properly a kind of matting incomparably plaited. The shape of their clothing, like that of our own, is nearly the same from the prince to the peasant, the only distinctions being the quantity worn, and the colour; the lower class of people wearing only one single garment; the better sort as many as, were they made of broad cloth, would burden them to carry. One thing, however, appears singular. When they salute each other, they constantly unbare themselves from the waist upwards, throwing off their tunics, as we may call them, with the same ease, and for the same purpose, as we pull off our hats. This salutation is common to the women as well as the men, and is the universal practice. We have occasionally mentioned how fond the people of Otaheite are of red feathers, which they call Oora; and these are as highly valued here as jewels are in Europe; especially what they call Oravine, which grow on the head of the green parouquet; and though all red feathers please, none are esteemed equally with these. They are such good judges as to know very well how to distinguish one sort from another; and many of our people attempted in vain to deceive them with other feathers dyed red. These ornaments of dress are made up in little bunches, consisting of eight or ten, and fixed to the end of a small cord about three or four inches long, which is made of the outside fibres of the cocoa-nut, twisted so hard that it is like a wire, and serves as a handle to the bunch. When composed in this manner, they are used as symbols of the Eatuas, or divinities, in all their religious ceremonies. Sometimes they hold one of these bunches, and at others, only two or three feathers between the fore-finger and thumb,

thumb, and say a could understand. island, will do w others, the finest a must also have a spike-nails, files, especially sheets a the ladies very def The arts in the five, namely, arch rivation, and pain one remarkable sp which is the Mora It is a prodigious wide at the base, r of 44 feet. These rowing gradually, on which near the carved in wood; a ments of a fish u siderable part of O is 360 feet by 354 paved with the lam As this square is growing within it distance the most can paint. At w learnt, for they h but being contru dimensions, neatly joined as hardly mind of a nice ob while he examines mals of materials island wherein no materials could be pile by rain, witho harder than the sul and, lastly, how th afterwards be raised and cover in the bu der of every ordinar mery of the who part, as to displa must afford a feat ordinary seamen ca ture, and strong p miration of all who perhaps, as long a being solid, and w not equally affect th carving in stone the produced, and ind work with are con that there are any, have reason to hope with the use of iron of that metal amo will speedily be pro the acuteness of carving in wood, that did not discov in this art. Their with it; and in fo lence is discernib have to work with With regard to th sorting with their rior to them. Th to the seas they h of a single instan Most of them are the purpose of a which on these ill common violence not unlike the p are used by our fi ther like those use they are no where of them are more No. 18.

thumb, and say a prayer, not one word of which we could understand. Whoever makes a voyage to this island, will do well to provide himself with red feathers, the finest and smallest that are to be got. He must also have a good stock of axes and hatchets. Spike-nails, files, knives, looking-glasses, beads, and especially sheets and shirts, which our gentlemen found the ladies very desirous of having.

The arts in the island of Otaheite may be reduced to five, namely, architecture, carving, ship-building, navigation, and painting. Of their architecture there is one remarkable specimen existing in the greater island, which is the Morai, or sepulchral monument of Oberoa. It is a prodigious pile of stone 267 feet long, and 87 wide at the base, raised by flights of steps to the height of 44 feet. These steps are each four feet high, narrowing gradually, till they end in a small entablature, on which near the middle stands the figure of a bird carved in wood; and at some distance the broken fragments of a fifth cut in stone. This pile makes a considerable part of one side of a square court, whose area is 360 feet by 354, inclosed within a stone wall, and paved with the same materials through its whole extent. As this square is surrounded with trees, and has many growing within it of a particular kind, it forms at a distance the most delightful grove that imagination can paint. At what time it was erected could not be learnt, for they have no records of past transactions; but being constructed of coral stones, many of large dimensions, neatly squared and polished, and so nicely joined as hardly to discover a seam, it must fill the mind of a nice observer with admiration and rapture, while he examines all its parts. To think how such a mass of materials could be brought together in an island wherein no quarries are to be found; how these materials could be cut with such exactness, as to form a pile by rain, without cement, and that with tools little harder than the substance to which they were applied; and, lastly, how these enormous blocks of stone could afterwards be raised to the height of 44 feet, to close and cover in the building, must surely excite the wonder of every ordinary beholder; but to mark the symmetry of the whole, so justly proportioned in every part, as to display the most consummate judgment, must afford a feast to an enlightened mind, of which an ordinary seaman can have no relish. This noble structure, and strong proof of genius, will remain the admiration of all who may have the pleasure of seeing it, perhaps, as long as the island itself shall endure; for being solid, and without a cavity, no time, that will not equally affect the island, can destroy it. Of their carving in stone there are but very few specimens to be produced, and indeed, when their tools they have to work with are considered, it is more to be admired, that there are any, than that there are so few; but we have reason to hope, that now they are made acquainted with the use of iron, and have considerable quantities of that metal among them, that their improvements will speedily be proportioned to their advantages, and the acuteness of their understanding. But of their carving in wood, we saw not a tool, or ordinary utensil, that did not discover evident proofs of their expertness in this art. Their vessels for navigation are all adorned with it; and in some of their performances an excellence is discernible, which, with such tools as they have to work with, no European carver could exceed. With regard to their ship-building, they are upon a footing with their neighbours, if not at present superior to them. Their ordinary vessels are well adapted to the seas they have to navigate, and we never heard of a single instance of one of them being cast away. Most of them are elevated at the head and stern, for the purpose of defending the rowers from the surf, which on these islands breaks upon the shore with uncommon violence. Those of Otaheite are in form not unlike the punt boats, with flat bottoms, such as are used by our fishermen on the river Thames, or rather like those used for the same purpose on the Severn: they are no where wider than three feet, though some of them are more than 60 feet long; nor are they any

No. 18.

inch deeper in the body, though at the head and stern they rise with a curvature more than 12 feet. As it would be impossible to navigate these vessels, so long, and so narrow, without some contrivance to keep them upright, they place two of them as near as can be of the same dimensions, along-side of each other, at three, four, or five feet distance, and with strong spars join them together; then raising a mast in each, they hoist a square sail, the yards of which are fastened above and below to the corresponding masts, and thus equipt, with a cabin erected between them to stow their provisions, they will keep the sea for several days. In rigging their double canoes, they have a rule for proportioning the height of the masts to the length of the keel, and of fitting the sail to the height of the mast; they likewise have a contrivance of failing in single canoes by means of out-riggers, which project on the lee-side of the vessel, and prevents their over-letting; to this out-rigger one corner of the sail is made fast, which sail being wide at the bottom, and rounding to a point at the top, very much resembles what the boatmen call a shoulder of mutton sail, frequently seen on the river Thames. To those who have been told, that the mason can joint with so much nicety as to be imperious to water, it will not seem strange that their carpenters can do the same with respect to timber; yet it certainly must require much art, and incredible labour, first to fell the tree, then to cleave it out into planks, then to hollow it out into the intended shape; next to smooth and polish it, after that to joint it, and last of all to put it together, and saw it; for they were wholly ignorant of the art of bolting it with wooden bolts, or jointing it together by means of mortices, till the Europeans visited them. It is no wonder, therefore, that they dreaded nothing so much as the destruction of their boats, when threatened by the English for any offence, nor that they should be more careful in covering their boat-houses from the sun and rain, than they are in securing their dwellings from the same injury. As the whole art of navigation depends upon their minutely observing the motions of the heavenly bodies, it is astonishing with what exactness their navigators can describe the motions, and changes of those luminaries. There was not a star in the hemisphere, fixed, or erratic, but Tupia could give a name to, tell when, and where, it would appear, and disappear; and, what was still more wonderful, he could tell, from the aspect of the heavens, the changes of the wind, and the alterations of the weather, several days before they happened. By this intelligence he had been enabled to visit most of the islands for many degrees round that of which he was a native. By the sun they steer in the day, and by the stars in the night; and by their skill in predicting the weather, they can, without danger, lengthen or shorten their voyage as appearances are for or against them. Having no medium wherewith to trade, their voyages seem wholly calculated for discovery, or to increase their acquaintance with other nations. Riches they do not seem solicitous to acquire. They certainly interchange their commodities among themselves, as well as with strangers; the fisherman barter his fish for the planter's bread-fruit, and so of the rest; yet every man seems to be a fisherman, and every man a planter: this shews, that we are still strangers to their civil œconomy. It had been good policy to have suffered two or three young persons, who were desirous of staying behind, to have settled among them, especially, as there was reason to believe, that the island would again be visited, if for no other reason than to restore to them the native who had voluntarily undertaken a voyage to Europe; but against this Capt. Cook seems to have been carefully guarded. With respect to the art of painting among these people, to us it appeared to be in a rude state, being chiefly confined to the figures represented on their bodies, and the ornaments on their canoes. The figures on their bodies are generally those of birds and fishes, sometimes after nature, and sometimes the effusions of fancy; but whatever is represented, the outline is traced with surprising exactness. This art is solely confined to the

2 R

priest-

priesthood, and is performed like baptism as a rite, without which, after a certain age, none are accounted worthy of society. From twelve to fourteen is the period allotted for the performance of this rite, for before that age children are thought unable to endure the smart. The other sort of painting in use among these islanders may be rather called daubing, consisting only in colouring the rude carvings in their pleasure boats, &c. sometimes with one colour, sometimes with another, but most commonly with red. We shall close this head with a few remarks on their marine force, or war canoes, considered as their grand fleet. Capt. Cook when last at Otaheite conceived rather an unfavourable opinion of Otoo's capacity and talents; but the rapid improvements since made in the island convinced us, that he must be a man of good parts; and it is certain that he has some judicious, sensible men about him, who have a great share in the government: but we cannot say how far his power extends as king, nor how far he can command the assistance of the other chiefs, or is controulable by them: this however is certain, that all have contributed towards bringing the isle to its present flourishing state: yet we found it not without divisions among their great men. The king told us, that Towha, the admiral, and Poatatoa, were not his friends. These being two leading chiefs, Otoo must have been jealous of them on account of their great power; yet on every occasion he seemed to court their interest. We are inclined to think they raised by far the greatest number of vessels and men, to go against Eimeo, and were to be the two commanders in the expedition, which, according to common report, was to take place five days after our departure. Waheatoua, king of Tiarabou, was to join this fleet to that of Otoo, and that young prince was to be one of the commanders. One would think so small an island as Eimeo, would have endeavoured to settle matters by negotiation rather than resist the united force of those two powerful nations; yet nothing was heard or talked of but fighting. Towha said more than once, that he should die in the action. Oedidee thought the battle would be fought at sea; but we thought it most probable, that the people of Eimeo would remain at home on the defensive, as we were informed they did about five or six years ago, when attacked by the people of Tiarabou, whom they repulsed. We were told, that five general officers were to command in this expedition, of which number Otoo was one; and, if they named them in order according to the posts they held, Otoo was only the third in command; which seems probable enough; for he being but a young man he could not have sufficient experience to be commander in chief, where the greatest skill and judgment seemed to be necessary. Capt. Cook was disposed to have staid five or six days longer, had he been sure the expedition would have taken place in that time, but it seemed they wanted us to be gone first. It was sometimes reported that it would not be undertaken before ten moons; as if it was necessary to have that time to put every thing in order. For several days before we sailed, Otoo and the other chiefs had ceased to solicit our alliance and assistance, which they were continually doing at first; and after Capt. Cook had assured Otoo, that if they got their fleet ready in time he would sail with them down to Eimeo, we heard no more of it. Probably they thought it more political to be without us, knowing it was in our power to bestow the victory on whom we pleased. Be this as it may, they undoubtedly wanted us to be gone before they undertook any thing; and thus we were deprived, much against our inclination, of seeing the whole fleet assembled on this occasion, and, perhaps of being spectators of a well conducted engagement at sea. What number of vessels were appointed for this grand expedition we could not learn. We heard of no more than two hundred and ten, besides a number of small canoes for transports, and the allied fleet of Tiarabou, the strength of which we could not gain the least intelligence: nor could we learn the number of men necessary to man this fleet. Whenever the question was asked, the answer was Warou, warou,

warou te Tata, that is many, many, men. Allowing forty to each war canoe, and four to each of the others, which is a moderate computation, and the number will amount to nine thousand; an astonishing number, if we consider they were to be raised in only four districts, and one of them, namely, Matavai, did not equip a fourth part of the fleet. That of Tiarabou is not included in this account; and many other districts might be arming which we knew nothing of; yet we think the whole island of Otaheite did not arm on this occasion, for we saw not any preparations making at Oparree. We believe that the chief, or chiefs, of each district, superintending the equipping of the fleet belonging to that district; after which they must pass in review before the king, who by this means knows the state of the whole intended to go on service. The number of war canoes belonging to Attahourou and Ahopata is an hundred and sixty; to Tettaha forty; to Matavai ten; now if we suppose every district in the island, of which there are forty-three, to raise and equip the same number of war canoes as Tettaha, according to this estimate, the whole island can raise and equip one thousand seven hundred and twenty war canoes, and sixty-eight thousand able men, allowing forty to each canoe; and seeing these cannot amount to above one third part of the number of both sexes, children included, the whole island cannot contain less than two hundred and four thousand inhabitants. This at first sight exceeded our belief; but when, upon a review of this calculation, we considered the vast swarms of natives which appeared wherever we went, we were convinced our estimate was not much, if at all too great. There cannot, in our opinion, be a stronger proof of the richness and fertility of Otaheite (not forty leagues, or 120 miles, in circuit) than that of its supporting such a number of warriors and warlike inhabitants, all artists, and possessed of a fleet both their glory and defence. Such is the present state of the arts in this celebrated island, which, had Tupia lived to have come to England, and to have returned again to his own country, would, no doubt, have received still more rapid improvements; for he was a man of real genius, a priest of the first order, and an excellent artist. His boy Tayota was the darling of the Endeavour's crew, being of a mild and docile disposition, ready to do any kind office for the meanest in the ship; never complaining, but always pleased. They both died much lamented at Batavia, the occasion of which has been related in its proper place.

The manufactures of Otaheite are of various kinds; that of cloth is in the highest estimation among them. The material of which one sort is made is neither spun, nor woven in a loom, but in every respect is prepared after the first simple manner of making paper before mills were applied to facilitate the labour. The bark is first stripped from the tree and laid in the water, as we do flax, to soak: it is then directed of the rind by scraping, till only the fibres of the inside remain. When properly cleansed, it is placed upon leaves, one layer by the side of another, till it is of sufficient breadth; and in the same manner it is extended to what length the manufacturer chuses, or the ground will admit; and to strengthen it and increase its breadth, one layer is laid over another till it is of the substance required. This done, it is left to drain, and when just dry enough to be raised from the ground, it is placed upon a kind of stage, made of smooth boards, and beat with a square beater about a foot long, and two or three inches broad. On each of the four sides of this beater parallel lines are cut lengthwise: these lines differ in fineness, in a proportion from small twine to a silken thread. They first begin with the coarsest side of the beater, and finish with the finest. By the continual application of this beater, in which two people are continually employed, who stand opposite to each other, on each side of the stage, and regulate their strokes like smiths on an anvil, the cloth, if cloth it may be called, in its rough state thins apace, and as it thins, it of course increases in breadth. When it has undergone this process, it is then spread out to

whiten, which w
to the ladies, wh
over, and to ren
pleted, it is col
which it is rolled
the reader will re
fabrics may be va
the materials of v
flowed upon it.
rent trees is ma
Chinese paper nu
wild fig-tree: O
are made; but o
first and second
ter will resist the
ing this cloth, aft
it is again beaten
very soft and plia
ere is that of r
plants and shrubs
fineness not to be
known in Europ
their sails, the co
ing in rainy weat
siderable article,
not unlike a wil
likewise excel, bu
purchased for the
ingate much more
Europe, being th
Their filling nets
ords made of hur
their heads, and
amusement of the
yond any thing th
Banks is said to h
of it, near two th
our finest thread,
joining, neither h
the performance,
a quickness that
likewise a manufa
which every native
kind of emulation
it is not to be wo
many different sort
of them incompar
of this kind, th
Endeavour's peop
a man upwards of
work, which they
of their deities.
covered with feath
pear, and black in
to paint or stain,
to be a representa
four protuberance
which the nativ
Other manufactur
of notice, are thei
the workmanship
various sorts, thei
but in this last it
tools, they should
their ingenuity.
We come now
which we have in
a distinct and p
made formerly bu
divided into two
not long. The k
family of Opourea
lated, and we bel
dependent on the
of the whole isla
rou; the king of
in the same man
do. This homa
Tavavoo, his br
to his hair; and
have sometimes f

which, when sufficiently done, it is delivered to the ladies, whose province is to look it carefully over, and to remove all blemishes. Thus far completed, it is coloured, generally red or yellow, after which it is rolled and laid up for use. By this process the reader will readily comprehend in what manner the fabric may be varied into fine or coarse, according to the materials of which it is made, and the labour bestowed upon it. In Otaheite the bark of three different trees is made use of in this manufacture; the Chinese paper mulberry, the bread-fruit tree, and the wild fig-tree. Of the first and second the finest sorts are made; but of the last, the most durable. The first and second imbibe water like paper, but the latter will resist the rain. They have a method of washing this cloth, after it has been worn, and when washed it is again beaten; by this last process it is rendered very soft and pliable. Another considerable manufacture is that of matting, made likewise of the rinds of plants and shrubs, which are worked to a degree of fineness not to be equalled by any thing of the kind known in Europe. Of this manufacture are made their sails, the covering of their beds, and their cloathing in rainy weather. Their cordage is another considerable article, which is made of the rind of a plant not unlike a wild nettle. In this manufacture they likewise excel, but we do not learn that any of it was purchased for the ship's use. Their lines made for fishing are much superior to any thing of the kind used in Europe, being stronger and infinitely more durable. Their fishing nets have the same advantages; but the cords made of human hair, which the ladies wind round their heads, and which, like netting, is the chief amusement of the ladies there, is incomparably beyond any thing that can be conceived in twilling. Mr. Banks is said to have had in his possession a specimen of it, near two thousand yards in length, and as fine as our finest thread, not having one knot, or apparent joining, neither have they any engine to assist them in the performance, but all is done by the hand, and with a quickness that almost exceeds belief. They have likewise a manufacture of basket, or wicker work, of which every native is a proficient; and as they have a kind of emulation in excelling in this kind of work, it is not to be wondered at, that there should be as many different forms, as there are different makers, some of them incomparably neat. But among the curiosities of this kind, that which was most admired by the Endeavour's people, when at this isle, was the figure of a man upwards of seven feet high, represented in basket work, which they imagined was a representation of one of their deities. This wicker skeleton was completely covered with feathers, white where the skin was to appear, and black in those parts which it is their custom to paint or stain, and upon the head, where there was to be a representation of hair. Upon the head were four protuberances, three in front, and one behind, which the natives called Tare-ete, or little men. Other manufactures of less account, yet not unworthy of notice, are their weapons of war, which seem to be the workmanship of the owners, their fishing tackle of various sorts, their working tools, and their jewelry; but in this last it cannot be expected, considering their tools, they should have any scope to display or exercise their ingenuity.

We come now to speak of their civil government, of which we have it not in our power to give our readers a distinct and perfect idea. This island of Otaheite made formerly but one kingdom; how long it has been divided into two we cannot pretend to say, we believe not long. The kings of Tiarabou, are a branch of the family of Opououou; at present the two are nearly related, and we believe the former is, in some measure, dependent on the latter. Otoo is styled Earee de-he of the whole island; and we were told, that Wahae-tou, the king of Tiarabou, must uncover before him, in the same manner as the lowest order of his subjects do. This homage is not only paid to Otoo, but to Tairarou, his brother, and his second sister, to the one as heir, and to the other as heir-apparent. We have sometimes seen the Eowas and Whannos covered

before the king, but whether by courtesy or by virtue of their office, we could not learn. These men, who are the principal persons about the king, and form his court, are generally, if not always his relations. Tee, so often mentioned in this narrative, was one of them. The Eowas, who hold the first rank, attend in turns, a certain number each day, so that they may be called lords in waiting. We seldom found Tee absent, and his attendance was necessary, as being best able to negotiate matters between Capt. Cook and the chiefs; on this service he was always employed, and he executed the same, we have reason to believe, to the satisfaction of both parties. The Eowas and Whannos always eat with the king; nor do we know of any one being excluded from this privilege, but the Toutous; for as to the women, as we have already observed, they never eat with the men, let their rank be ever so much elevated. Notwithstanding these established orders, there was very little about Otoo's person or court, whereby a stranger could distinguish the king from the subject. We rarely saw him dressed in any thing but a common piece of cloth wrapped round his loins; so that he seemed to avoid all outward pomp, and even to demean himself more than any of his Earees around him. We have seen his majesty work at a paddle, in coming to and going from the ship, in common with others in the boat; and even when some of his Toutous sat looking on; and such is the uncontrolled liberty of this happy isle, that every individual has free access to him without the least ceremony; hence it is, that the Earees and other chiefs are more beloved than feared by the bulk of the people. We should think ourselves happy in knowing more of this mild and equal government, than the general outline; for as to the orders of the constituent parts, how constructed, disposed, and connected, so as to form one body politic, we can say but little. From what we have been able to discover, and gather from information, it seems very evidently to be of the feudal kind; and a remarkable conformity appears between the political establishment of Otaheite, and that of the ancient Britons, which consisted of several small nations, under several petty princes, or chiefs, who in cases of common danger united under one head. These chiefs had all of them their respective families, who multiplying, became a distinct class from the common people, and preserved by their personal courage, and tenacity, a very great influence over them. Of these two classes, added to that of the priesthood, the whole body politic consisted; so that among them, what one class found necessary to command, the other was ready to execute. Hence it was that industry took place, and arts were invented; and this seems to be the present state of the islanders of whom we are now speaking. Laws they had none, but such as arose from the idea of superiority and submission, such as excited parents to correct the faults of their children; neither have the Otaheiteans any other at this day. There is no crime among them that subjects a man to death, and when life is taken away, it is always in the heat of passion or resentment, and not the effect of formal accusation and deliberate punishment. The contentions that arose among the chiefs became the quarrels of the whole community, and those quarrels necessarily led the parties to have recourse to arms, and in proportion as the contentions grew more frequent, the weapons that were contrived for defence, grew more desperate. It was not, however, till after civilization took place, that contentions for liberty began to spread devastation among people of the same community. In their primary state of subjection, the people never entertained a thought that they were in slavery; they obeyed as children do their parents, from a principle originating in nature, which induces the weak to submit to the strong, and those of uninformed understanding to be governed by those whose wisdom and courage they readily acknowledge. This, in our opinion, is an impartial and just representation of the state of the civil government in Otaheite, wherein none think themselves slaves, yet few are free.

As to the religion of this people, we are as much at a loss

lofs for materials to form an opinion on this subject as former navigators. The little information we have hitherto received is so vague and contradictory, that nothing with certainty can be said about it. We have said they have idols, yet they appear not to be idolaters; that they have places of worship, yet never assemble in congregations to pay adoration; that they acknowledge deities of several orders, but that they have no forms of addressing them; and that they mutter somewhat like extemporary prayers, yet have no oratories, or forms of devotion, nor any set times for private or public worship. They have priests likewise of several orders, who have different offices assigned; but few of those offices are particularized, except that they preside and pray at funerals, and are the principal attendants at their Morais, or burying places; though it does not appear that any ceremonies of devotion are performed there. The offices that have been observed as appertaining to the priesthood are three, namely, circumcising, tattooing, and praying at the funerals of the dead. That of circumcising is not performed after the manner of the Jews, but after a peculiar manner of their own, and has no doubt the purity of the circumcised for its object, in bringing every part about them into contact with the water, with which they constantly wash three times every day. Tattooing, whatever its object, is never omitted; and praying for the dead is a proof that they believe in the soul's existing in a separate state, after death, which is confirmed by their placing meat and drink in their burying places. In this custom, they are far from being singular. Among the ancient Romans, in the infancy of their state, they placed meat upon the tombs of their deceased friends, that the ghosts might come out and eat, as they believed they would; and when they intended to express the most abject state of human wretchedness, they used to say, "such a creature gets his food from the tombs." The character of the Tahowa in Otaheite, very nearly corresponds with that of Druid among the ancient Britons. He is the chief priest, and his erudition consists in learning the several traditional memorials of ancient times; in being made acquainted with the opinion of their ancestors, concerning the origin of things; and in the repetition of short mysterious sentences, in a language which none but those of their own order can understand. The Brahmans of the east have their mystic, unknown tongue, as have also all the followers of the great Zoroaster. The priests are superior also to the rest of the people in the knowledge of navigation and astronomy, and in all the liberal arts, of which these people have any idea. Thus far the character of the Tahowa agrees with that of Druid, in every particular. The Druids were the only persons of any sort of learning, which consisted in the observation of the heavens, knowledge of the stars, whereby they presaged future events; they had the care of all religious matters, and their authority was absolute. The chief of the Druids, was pontiff or high priest, whose dignity was elective. Thus we might trace the conformity of the customs and manners of nations remote from each other, in their infant state, but we wave such an enquiry, as it might be thought foreign to our business in hand.

We shall conclude this historical sketch of Otaheite with a brief account of their funeral ceremonies, in which the priest and the people jointly assist. When a native is known to be dead, the house is filled with relations, who deplore their loss; some by loud lamentations, and some by less clamorous, but more genuine expressions of grief. Those who are the nearest degree of kindred, and most affected by the event, are silent; the rest are one moment uttering passionate expressions, or exclamations in a chorus, and the next laughing and talking, without the least appearance of concern, much like the manner of the wild Irish; but this solemnity is continued for a day and a night, whereas by the Irish it is continued several nights. On the next morning the body is shrouded, and conveyed to the sea side on a bier, upon the shoulders of the bearers, and attended by the priest, who having prayed

over the body, repeats his sentences during the procession. When they arrive at the waters edge, it is set down on the beach: the priest renews his prayers, and taking up some of the water in his hand, sprinkles it towards the body, but not upon it. It is then carried back forty or fifty yards, and soon after brought again to the beach, where the prayers and sprinkling are repeated. It is thus removed backwards and forwards several times; and during the performance of this ceremony, a house has been built, and a small piece of ground railed round, in the center of which a stage is erected whereon they place the bier, and the body is left to putrify, till the flesh is wasted from the bones. As soon as the body is deposited in the Morai, the mourning is renewed. The women now assemble, and are led to the door by the nearest relation, who strikes a shark's tooth several times into the crown of her head: the blood copiously follows, and is carefully received upon pieces of cloth, or linen, which are thrown under the bier. The rest of the women follow this example, and the ceremony is repeated at the interval of two or three days, as long as the sea and sorrow of the parties hold out. The tears also which are shed upon this occasion are received upon pieces of cloth, and offered as oblations to the dead. Some of the younger people cut off their hair, which is likewise thrown under the bier. This custom is founded on the notion, as some of our gentlemen thought, that the soul of the deceased is hovering about the place where the body is deposited; that it observes the actions of the survivors, and is gratified by such testimonies of their affection and grief; but whether this is part of the natives faith is very problematical; neither, in our opinion, is it certain, that the priest is an attendant in the funeral procession down to the waters edge; for in the funerals at which Mr. Banks was a party, no mention is made of a priest; and Tuberaï Tumaide, who was chief mourner, performed the whole of the funeral service. The natives are all said to fly before these processions, and the reason assigned is, because the chief mourner carries in his hand a long flat stick, the edge of which is fet with sharks, and in a phrensy, which his grief is supposed to have inspired, he runs at all he sees, and if any of them happen to be overtaken, he strikes them most unmercifully with his indented cudgel, which cannot fail to wound them in a most dangerous manner; but this reason, though a plausible one, does not, in our judgment, seem to come up to what is said in the course of the relation, by the compiler of Capt. Cook's voyage, who tells us, that while the corpse is carrying in procession, the people every where fly and hide themselves in the woods, and that none but those immediately concerned in it, if they can avoid it, come in sight. Were it only for fear of the cudgel that these people fled, they need not run so far as the woods, nor to quit their houses (as Mr. Banks observed they did when the corpse of an old woman, whose funeral he attended, came by in procession) to hide themselves in holes; it would have been sufficient for them to have kept out of the reach of the cudgel; but they must be awed by some secret motive; some superstitious dread of some misfortune happening to them, should they meet the corpse, either in an unlucky place, or in an ominous situation; as at this day many people in the northern parts of Britain get out of the way of a corpse when carrying to the grave, for these or the like reasons. The people of Otaheite, we think, are not intimidated by the apprehension of being beaten; but they may have a dread upon them of they know not what; yet it is such a dread as insensibly impels them to keep at a distance, and if they are by accident surprized, and meet a corpse at the corner of a street, or the rounding of a hill, they never fail to bless themselves, and turn the way the corpse is carrying, and walk in the same direction for several paces to avert the bad effects of the unlucky omen, which they always interpret against themselves. In an account of the funeral ceremonies of the islanders in the South Seas, the writer, who judged from what he himself saw, and not from what

was reported to him, is accompanied with two or three hogs, fish, and fowls, which are offered to lay them in strewn and flowers of bread occasionally rang, which every one of the Morai, where for the deceased, and wounding a sharks teeth; at the next river or themselves, which the body is corrupted (the skeleton is built for that purpose by two birds called heron, and a blue these birds, or the ferings that are met they are eaten at a have spared no pains friends and fellow other doubtful agreed, however, instance so strong, vening they bestow friends, and in their Morais, but of the ordinary deile of the principally belongs: how moon herd we could rered to rot upon our principals affor particular; indeed upon what is striking the ordinary occur multitude; these d. We shall just add head, that the Orah surgeons, by profess consists in prayers and scriptions; yet we r they are deficient in instances occur in which, to say no knowledge is what was pierced through the jagged bone of at his back, and cam was perfectly cured, effects of his wound. crushed, his face be beat out, the hollow lid; yet this man, appearance felt no r thone through his h action, and yet, str seem, he like the o to enjoy a good state for the truth of all th which we think are e we may be allowed to that they are inco that Otaheite have a know of which we are eithe of their healing qualifi island of Otaheite a ready to envy them remembered as a foil to sleep in security: the wake neighbours, land; for if in the nes, they happen to neither man, woman No. 19.

was reported to him, tells us, that the priest, accompanied with two boys painted black, attend the Morai, or place where the corpse is deposited, to receive the hogs, fish, and other provisions, which on these occasions are offered to the Ethooa, or deity of the place, and to lay them upon an altar. This priest is also employed in strewing over the body of the deceased leaves, and flowers of bamboo; and for two or three days he occasionally ranges the adjacent fields and woods, from which every one retires on his approach. The relations, in the mean time, build a temporary house near the Morai, where they assemble, and the females mourn for the deceased, by singing songs of grief, howling, and wounding their bodies in different places with sharks teeth; after which they bathe their wounds in the next river or sea, and again return to howl and cut themselves, which they continue for three days. After the body is corrupted, and the bones are become bare, the skeleton is deposited in a sort of stone-pyramid built for that purpose. These Morais are frequented by two birds sacred to their gods, namely, the grey heron, and a blue and brown king-fisher; but whether these birds, or the priest and his attendants eat the offerings that are made to the presiding deity, or whether they are eaten at all, we are not informed, though we have spared no pains in making enquiries among our friends and fellow voyagers, concerning this and several other doubtful and questionable particulars. It is agreed, however, that the piety of the natives is in no instance so strongly expressed as in the profusion of covering their bellows upon the remains of their deceased friends, and in the ornaments with which they decorate their Morais; but these Morais are not the receptacles of the ordinary dead, but appropriated solely to the use of the principal families to which each respectively belongs: how it fares with the bodies of the common herd we could not learn, whether they are suffered to rot upon the ground, or under it; nor have our principals afforded us information concerning this particular; indeed they seem to have been most intent upon what is striking in high life, without regarding the ordinary occurrences that daily pass among the multitude; these did not much attract their notice. We shall just add to what has been said under this head, that the Otaheiteans have neither physicians nor surgeons, by profession, except the priest, whose relief consists in prayers and ceremonies, not in drugs or prescriptions; yet we must not conclude from hence, that they are deficient in the art of healing. Two or three instances occur in the relations of different voyagers, which, to say no more, are striking proofs of their knowledge in what is necessary to preserve life. Tupia was pierced through the body with a lance, headed with the jagged bone of the sting-ray: the weapon went in at his back, and came out just under his breast; yet he was perfectly cured, and never complained of any bad effects of his wound. One man had his head almost crushed, his face beat in, his nose flattened, and one eye beat out, the hollow of which would almost admit one's fist; yet this man, we are told, was cured, and to all appearance felt no remaining pain. A third had a stone through his head with a sling, in the time of action, and yet, strange and improbable as it may seem, he, like the others, we are informed, appeared to enjoy a good state of health. We will not vouch for the truth of all the circumstances in these relations, which we think are rather of the marvellous kind, yet we may be allowed to infer from the facts themselves, that they are incontestible proofs, that the natives of Otaheite have a knowledge of the virtues of balsams, of which we are either not possessed or are ignorant of their healing qualities. From this narrative of the island of Otaheite and its inhabitants, some will be ready to envy them their felicity; but it must be remembered as a foil to this, that they do not always sleep in security: they are frequently surprized by their warlike neighbours, and whole districts are depopulated; for if in the invasions of one another's territories, they happen to prove successful, the victors spare neither man, woman, nor child. But it is time now

to return to the ship, which on the 14th of May we left under sail, and that night she cleared the reef.

On Sunday the 15th, we had an open sea, with a fine breeze in our favour, and pursued our voyage to the N. W. and N. W. by W. The same night we made the island of Huaheine, and anchored in the north entrance of O'Wharre harbour. Oree, the chief, and several of the natives paid us visits. Oree, among other articles, brought with him a hog; and the next day, being the 16th, Capt. Cook returned Oree's visit, presenting to him some red feathers, which he held in his hand, and muttered over them a prayer. This morning the people began to bring us fruit. The chief sent us two hogs, which were followed by himself and friends who came to dine with us. Oree asked for axes and nails, which were readily given him. These he distributed as he pleased, but bestowed the largest share upon a youth who appeared to be his grandson. After the distribution was over they all returned ashore. Mr. Forster, and a party with him, went up the country to examine its productions; which he continued as a daily task during the ship's continuance in this harbour. As a servant of Mr. Forster's was walking along the shore, without a companion, he was beset by several stout fellows, who would have stripped him, had not some of our people arrived to his assistance. One of the men made off with a hatchet. This day the number of natives that came about the ship was so great, that it was found necessary to place sentinels in the gangways, to prevent the men from coming on board; but no opposition was made to the women, so that the ship was crowded with them.

On Tuesday, the 17th, we found Oree, and a great number of the principal people assembled in a house consulting together. We heard the late robbery mentioned by them several times; but the chief assured us, neither himself nor his friends had any hand in the same, and desired Capt. Cook to kill with his guns those that had. We could not learn where the robbers were gone, and therefore, at present, took no more notice of the affair. In the evening a dramatic entertainment was exhibited. The subject of the piece was that of a girl running away with us from Otaheite. This was not wholly a fiction, for a girl had taken her passage with us from Ulitea, and was at this time present when her own adventures were represented: she could hardly refrain from tears while the play was acting; and it was with much difficulty we persuaded her to stay out the entertainment. At the conclusion of the piece, the girl's return to her friends was represented; and the reception she met with was not a favourable one. It is very probable that this part of the comedy was designed to deter others from going away with us.

On Wednesday, the 18th, king Oree came and dined on board, and the Captain, at his desire, ordered the great guns to be shotted, and fired into the water, by way of salute at his arrival and departure: indeed he had by Oedidee given us to understand, that he expected the same honours to be paid to him, as had been shewn to the chiefs of Otaheite. A party of petty officers having obtained leave to amuse themselves in the country, they took with them some hatchets, nails, &c. in bags, which were carried by two natives, who went with them as their guides, to shew the way. These fellows made off with the fruit reposed in them, and artfully enough effected their escape. The party had with them two muskets; and after it had rained some time, the natives pointed out some birds for them to shoot. One of the guns went off, and the other missed fire several times. At this instant, when the fellows saw themselves secure from both, they took the opportunity to run away, and not one of the party, being all much surprized, had presence of mind enough to pursue them. On the 19th a report was current, that the natives intended to rise and attack the ship. The captain, though he did not think them serious in such an attempt, yet was unwilling totally to disregard the intimation: he therefore ordered twenty stand of arms to be in readiness, in case any commotion should

not command any thing, though he had promised us hogs and fruit in abundance; they were now in possession of his brother. We had here an opportunity of seeing them kill and dress a pig, which was done in the following manner: three men first strangled the hog; the hog was laid on his back, two men laid a stick across his throat, pressing at each end, the third man stuffed up his fundament with grass, and held his hind legs. The hog was kept in this position for ten minutes, before he was dead. An oven, which was close by, was heated. They laid the hog on the fire as soon as he was dead, and singed off his hair; he was then carried to the sea-side and washed. The carcase was then laid on clean green leaves, that it might be opened. They first took out the lard, and laid it on a green leaf, the entrails were then taken out and carried away in a basket; the blood was put into a large leaf. The hog was then washed quite clean, and several hot stones were put into his body; it was then placed in the oven on his belly, the lard and fat were put in a vessel, with two or three hot stones, and placed along-side the hog; the blood was tied up in a leaf, with a hot stone, and put into the oven; they covered the whole with leaves, on which were placed the remainder of the hot stones; they afterwards threw a great deal of rubbish in, and covered the whole with earth. A table was spread with green leaves, while the hog was baking, which took up little more than two hours. We sat down at one end of the table, and the natives, who dined with us, at the other; the fat and blood were placed before them, and the hog before us. We thought the pork exceeding good indeed, and every part of it was well done. The natives chiefly dined of the fat and blood, and said it was very good victuals. The whole of this cookery was conducted with remarkable cleanliness. This estate of Oedidee was small, but very pleasant; and the houses

formed a pretty village. After we had dined, we returned to the ship. In our way we saw four wooden images, each two feet long. They stood on a shelf, had a large piece of cloth round the middle, a turban on their heads, stuck with cocks feathers. They told us these were their servants' gods.

On Tuesday the 31st, the people hearing that we intended sailing, brought abundance of fruit on board, which continued on the 1st of June. We were informed that two ships had arrived at Huaheine. The person who brought the information described the persons of Capt. Furneaux and Mr. Banks so well, that we had no doubt of the truth of the assertion; we therefore thought of sending a boat over there, but a man came on board, and declared the whole to be a lye. We could not confront the fellow who brought the intelligence, for he was gone away, and the danger of sending the boat was put a stop to.

On Saturday the 4th of June, the chief and his family came on board to take leave, bringing a handsome present with them. These people denied that there were any ships at Huaheine. We were very much importuned to return to this place; when we told them we could not, their grief was bitter, and we believed it to be real. They desired Capt. Cook to acquaint them with his burial place, and said they would be buried with him. A strong proof of affection and attachment. We left Oedidee here, as we could not promise that more ships would be sent from England to those islands: he left us with infinite regret. Oedidee did not leave us till we were out of the harbour, and said to fire some guns, it being his Majesty's birth-day. This youth was of a gentle, docile, humane disposition, and would have been a better specimen of the natives than Omiah.

CHAPTER VI.

Departure of the Resolution from Ulitea—Incidents at Savage Island—Insolence of the ferocity of the natives—Description of this island—Passage from hence to Rotterdam—Remarkable transactions at this place, and the insolence of the natives—An account of the people in Turtle Island—One called by the natives Ambrym discovered—Transactions while here, and ferocious behaviour of the inhabitants—A particular description of these people—The Resolution continues her course from Port Sandwich—Passes Three-bill and Shepherds Islands—Steers in a direction for Sandwich Island, in order to discover the southern extremity of the Archipelago—Hostile behaviour of the natives of Sandwich Isle, and of several islands, particularly Tanna, and Erromango—An account of a Volcano—Character of Paowang a great chief—A description of the country, &c.—Departure of the Resolution from the island of Tanna—The natives described—Arrives at Erromango—The western coast of the New Hebrides explored—More new islands discovered—Inhabitants and country about Cape Colnett described—The island of Pines discovered, with an account of these and other trees.

THE day after we left Ulitea we saw land, which proved to be a low island discovered by Capt. Wallis, and called by him Howe Island. We saw land again on the 16th, which we called Palmerston Island, in honour of lord Palmerston, one of the lords of the Admiralty. On the 20th we discovered land again, and inhabitants appearing upon the shore; we equipped two boats, and as we approached, the inhabitants retired into the woods. When we landed, we took post on a high rock, to prevent a surprise, and the botanizing party began collecting plants, with which the country seemed covered. Capt. Cook took two men with him and entered the woods, but on hearing the inhabitants approach they returned. We made every friendly sign in our power, but were answered by menaces; and one of the natives threw a stone, which struck one of our party. Two muskets were fired indiscriminately, and they all retreated into the woods. Having embarked, we proceeded along the coast till we came to a place where four canoes lay. In order to prevent being surprised, and to secure a retreat, the men were drawn up upon a rock, from whence they had a view of the heights. Capt. Cook and only four gentlemen with him went to look at the canoes. Very soon after the natives rushed out of the wood upon us, and we endeavoured to no purpose to bring them to a

parley; they threw their darts, and appeared very ferocious. We discharged some muskets in the air, but this did not intimidate them, for they still threw darts and stones. Capt. Cook's musquet missed fire, otherwise he would certainly have killed the ring-leader of them. The men drawn upon the rock fired at some who appeared on the heights, which rather allayed the ardour of our antagonists, and we had an opportunity to join the marines. We do not think any of the natives were hurt, but they all retreated into the woods; and seeing we could make nothing of them, we returned to the ship. Capt. Cook named this place Savage Island, from the conduct and aspect of the islanders; its situation is south latitude 19 deg. 1 min. west longitude 169 deg. 37 min. its form is circular, and is about 11 leagues in circumference. The country appears entirely covered with trees and shrubs. Nothing but coral rocks were to be seen along the shores. The inhabitants do not appear to be very numerous: they go intirely naked, except round the waist, and seem stout well made men. Some of them had their thighs, breast, and faces painted black.

We steered for Rotterdam, and as we drew near it several canoes laden with fruit came along-side of us, but we did not shorten sail. The people on board them wanted as much to go towards their coast, telling us, as well

well as they were able, we might safely anchor there. They enquired for Capt. Cook by name. We came to anchor on the north-side of the island on the 26th instant. The inhabitants brought to us great quantities of yams and haddocks, for which we gave them old rags and nails. A party of us went ashore to look for water, and were civilly received by the natives. We got some water, but it was rather brackish. We got a plentiful supply of fruit and oats, as well as water, but happened to leave the surgeon on shore. He got a canoe to bring him off; but just as he was getting into it, one of the natives snatched away his musquet and ran off with it, after which no person would bring him on board. He certainly would have been stripped, had he not presented a tooth-pick case to them, which they took for a little gun. When Capt. Cook heard of this transaction, he went ashore; but the natives fled at his approach. We did wrong in not taking any steps for the recovery of the gun, as it encouraged the inhabitants to make more depredations. A boat was sent ashore on the 28th for some water, when the people behaved in a rude and daring manner: it was with difficulty they got their water-casks filled, and into the boats again. The lieutenant who commanded this party had his gun snatched from him, and most of the people had something or other taken away from them. This was the effect of ill timed lenity. Capt. Cook landed soon after, and resolved to have the gun restored. All the marines were ordered ashore armed. As the botanising party were in the country, three guns were fired from the ship to alarm them, as we did not know how the natives might behave to them. The natives knew well enough what we intended, and brought the musquet long before the marines got ashore. When the lieutenant and the marines arrived, they all fled; Capt. Cook seized two double canoes in the cove, and threw a few small shot into a fellow's legs, who made some resistance. We very soon obtained the other musquet, and then the canoes were restored. When we returned to the cove, the people wanted to persuade us that the man Capt. Cook fired at was dead, which we thought very improbable. Capt. Cook desired a man to restore a cooper's adze which had been stolen that morning, and he went away, as we thought, to fetch it; but we were mistaken, for he soon returned with the wounded man stretched out on a board apparently dead. The surgeon was sent to dress his wounds, which in his opinion were but slight, and of no consequence. Capt. Cook still insisted upon the adze, and with a great deal of difficulty obtained it. An old woman presented a young girl to Capt. Cook, giving him to understand that she was at his service. The girl was artful enough, and wanted to bargain for a shirt and a spike nail, neither of which the captain had with him. He was then given to understand that he might retire with her upon credit, which he refused. The old procurefs then abused him, saying he was insensible to her charms; the girl was very pretty, and wanted to go aboard a ship with the captain; but he would not take her, as he had given orders no women should be admitted there.

On the 29th we sailed, and a great many canoes came up with us, loaded with fruit, &c. which were exchanged for the usual commodities. The passion of our people for curiosities was as great as ever, and they were stripped of most of the clothes the ladies of Otaheite had left them. We stretched out for Amatafoa on the 30th, and several canoes came to us from all parts with the common articles; out of one of them we got two pigs, which in this part of the world are a scarce commodity.

On Friday the first of July we discovered land, the master and the boat were sent into the sound to find anchorage, four or five people were discovered on the shore, who retreated as the boat advanced, and they all fled to the woods when the boat landed. The master returned, and brought word there were no soundings without the reef; that he rowed in for the shore, intending to speak to the people, who were about twenty in number, armed with clubs and spears; but they all

returned into the woods on his approach. He left some trifles upon the rocks, which they certainly found, for several people were seen at the place soon afterwards. The number of inhabitants on this island are supposed to be very few, and it is very probable that the few who are there only came to catch turtles, of which there are a great number here. This island is situated S. latitude 19 deg. 48 min. W. longitude 178 deg. 2 min. We called it Turtle Island.

After a good deal of stormy weather we saw an island, called by the natives Ambrym, on the 21st of July. We discovered a creek as we drew nearer the shore, which had the appearance of a good harbour; many people were assembled, who invited us on shore, but we did not chuse to go, as they were armed with bows and arrows. We sent out two armed boats to discover a port about a league more to the south, where we anchored in eleven fathoms water. Several of the natives came off to us, but acted with great caution; at last they trusted themselves alongside, and exchanged arrows for pieces of cloth. The arrows were pointed with bone, and dipped in a green gummy substance, which we imagined to be poisonous. Presents were made to two men who ventured on board, and others came at night for the same purpose, but they were not admitted.

On the 22nd, in the morning, several natives came round us; some swam, and others came in canoes. We prevailed on one man with some difficulty to come on board, and he was followed by more than we wished. Various articles were given to four of them, which were taken into the cabin; these they shewed to others in the canoes, who were very well pleased with their reception. We were all put in confusion by an accident which happened while these were in the cabin. One of the natives who had been refused admittance into one of our boats bent his bow at the boat-keeper, to shoot a poisoned arrow at him; he was prevented by some of his countrymen, and Capt. Cook was acquainted with it. Capt. Cook went on deck, and saw a man struggling with him, who had leaped out of the cabin window for this purpose. The fellow again pointed his arrow at the boat-keeper; and on Capt. Cook's calling out, he pointed the arrow at the Captain, who instantly fired a musquet at him. This staggered him for a little while, but he again pointed his arrow; a second shot obliged him to desist. Several began to shoot arrows on the other side; but they were all sent off in the utmost confusion, by a four pound shot being discharged over their heads. They all to a man leaped overboard. We permitted them to come and take away their canoes, and some again came alongside the ship. We heard the beating of drums on shore as soon as the four pounder was fired, which we took for the signal for the country to assemble under arms. However, we determined to go on shore and seek for wood and some refreshments, which we were very much in want of.

We landed in the face of five hundred men, armed with bows, arrows, spears, and clubs, but they made no opposition. Capt. Cook advanced alone, with nothing but a green branch in his hand; on seeing this, a person who seemed to be a chief gave his bow and arrows to another, and came to meet him in the water, took the captain by the hand, and led him up to the crowd. The marines were at this time drawn up on the beach. Capt. Cook distributed several presents among them. We made signs that we wanted wood for not one word of their language could we understand, and in return they made signs for us to cut down the trees. They brought a small pig for a peace offering, and we flattered ourselves with the hopes of procuring more, but these were vain and delusive; for we only got a small quantity of water, and about half a dozen cocoa-nuts. They parted freely with their arrows, but we could not purchase of them any bows without a great deal of difficulty. They did not seem to set the least value upon any thing we presented them with, nor did they like we should proceed farther than the beach, and seemed very desirous of our returning

le left some
found, for
afterwards,
e supposed
e few who
n there are
S. latitude
min. We

we saw an
the 21st of
nearer the
harbour;
on shore,
rmed with
boats to dis-
uth, where
ral of the
caution;
exchanged
ointed with
ce, which
made to
rs came at
re not ad-

ives came
in canoes.
y to come
we wished.
hich were
hers in the
eir recep-
a accident
bin. One
tance into
keeper, to
evented by
was ac-
, and saw
out of the
ow again
on Capt.
the Cap-
This stag-
ointed his
Several
they were
our pound
y all to a
to come
ne along-
tims on
hich we
le under
ore and
we were

s, armed
ey made
with no-
g this, a
and ar-
e water,
to the
n up on
prelens
d wood
under-
or down
e offer-
of pro-
ave; for
at half a
their ar-
y bows
at seem
ed them
er than
turning
on



Page 40.

The Landing of CAPT. COOK, &c. at MALLICOLO, one of the NEW HEBRIDES.

on board: this was
 wood, and they
 country. In the
 along the buoy,
 anchor; and when
 for it, he immedi-
 thing they had at
 and Mr. Forster
 which bore a resemblance
 They saw a great
 pigs and fowls.
 another near it. As
 in search of fresh
 rioty of these people
 them came on board
 der sail, they came
 and gave us much
 which rather surpris-
 a most thievish race.

The people of
 portioned, dark
 native size. Their
 their features were
 their beards are
 The men go quite
 waifs. The women
 Their faces, however
 Some of them
 which they carry
 of red petticoat.
 generally kept at
 They wear brass
 shell, hogs tusks
 and rings made
 stone, an inch or
 their noses, which
 sprinkle water on
 branch, as tokens
 bows, arrows, &c.
 all the natives were
 ferent language.
 fruits are not re-
 and a bitch, they
 seemed very fond
 take care to preserve
 one, and we name

Continuing on
 fourth of July we
 of which we care
 circumference, &c.
 it. We therefore
 then passed a great
 Shepherd's isles
 bridge. We did not
 islands; but there
 hundred and eighty
 lands to consist
 which we could not
 tensive island was
 of these we call
 and the largest
 Sandwich, first
 came down as we
 to invite us in a
 some likewise
 appeared very
 with woods and
 at this time, we
 peared a bay
 shelter from the
 our object as to
 Archipelago, was
 tion of Sandwich

On the first of
 the island, and
 ashore by various
 chored, but there
 Besides we were
 therefore range
 our course, we

on board: this we did after we had cut down some wood, and they all retired into different parts of the country. In the afternoon we observed a man bringing along the buoy, which had been taken from the kedge anchor; and when we sent some of our crew ashore for it, he immediately delivered it. This was the only thing they had attempted to take from us. Capt. Cook and Mr. Forster went to examine some of their houses, which bore a resemblance to those on the other isles. They saw a great number of fine yams, and several pigs and fowls. They called this island Mallecoia, another near it Apee, and a third Paoom. We went in search of fresh water, but without success. The curiosity of these people was soon satisfied, for none of them came on board the ship. When they saw us under sail, they came off to us in a number of canoes, and gave us many proofs of their extreme honesty, which rather surprized us, as we had lately been among a most thievish race.

The people of this island are very ugly and ill-proportioned, dark in their complexion, and of a diminutive size. Their heads are long, their faces flat, and their features very much resemble those of a baboon: their beards are of a dark colour, strong and bushy. The men go quite naked, except a wrapper round their waists. The women we saw were as ugly as the men. Their faces, heads, and shoulders were painted red. Some of them had a bag round their shoulders, in which they carry their children; and they wear a sort of red petticoat. We saw but few of them, as they generally kept at a distance when we were on shore. They wear bracelets, and ear-rings made of tortoise shell, hogs tusks bent circular round the right wrist, and rings made of shells. They run a piece of white stone, an inch and a half long, through the bridge of their noses, which are pierced for that purpose. They sprinkle water over their heads, and present a green branch, as tokens of friendship. Their weapons are bows, arrows, clubs and spears. They seem unlike all the natives we have met with, and speak quite a different language. Their country must be fertile, but the fruits are not remarkably good. We left them a dog and a bitch, they having none on the island, and as they seemed very fond of them, we doubt not but they will take care to preserve them. The harbour is a very good one, and we named it Port Sandwich.

Continuing our course from hence, on the twenty-fourth of July we discovered several small islands, one of which we came very near. It is about 12 miles in circumference, and has three high peaked hills upon it. We therefore named it Three Hill island. We then passed a group of small islands, which we called Shepherd's isles, in honour of Dr. Shepherd of Cambridge. We discerned people in every one of these islands; but there were no soundings near them at one hundred and eighty fathoms. We found the southern lands to consist of one large island, the extremities of which we could not see. On the north side of this extensive island we saw three or more smaller ones. One of these we called Montague, another Hinchinbrook and the largest Sandwich, in honour of the earl of Sandwich, first lord of the Admiralty. Several people came down as we passed Montague island, and seemed to invite us in a friendly manner on shore. We saw some likewise on Sandwich island, the surface whereof appeared very delightful, being agreeably diversified with woods and lawns. As we could not approach it at this time, we steered more to the west, as there appeared a bay to run up in that quarter, and a good shelter from the winds. But as this was not so much our object as to discover the southern extremity of the Archipelago, we steered E. S. E. which was the direction of Sandwich island.

On the first of August, we gained the N. W. side of the island, and saw several inhabitants, who invited us ashore by various signs. Here we should have anchored, but the wind obliged us to alter our design. Besides we wanted to explore the lands to the S. E. therefore ranged along the coast. As we continued our course, we saw a light ahead; and it being near

evening we did not chuse to proceed any farther, but stood off and on all night. When the sun rose next morning it disappeared, and we saw not any land but the coast we were near. On the 3d, we sent a boat on shore to get some wood if possible, being much in want of that article; but our people could not land on account of a high surf of the sea; and they saw not any natives on that part of the isle. Having anchored in seventeen fathoms water, under the N. W. side of the head of the land, we saw several people on the shore, some endeavouring to swim off to us; but they all retired when they perceived our boat approach towards them. On the 14th, a party went out armed to find a proper landing place, and where we might gain a supply of wood and water. We gave the inhabitants some medals, &c. with which they appeared much pleased, and directed us to a bay fit for our purpose. As we went along the shore their numbers increased prodigiously. We tried several places to land, but did not approve of their situation. At length we came to a fine sandy beach, where Capt. Cook stepped out without wetting his foot. He took but one man with him out of the boat, and landed in the face of a large number of people, having only a green branch in his hand. The inhabitants received him with great politeness. One of them, who appeared to be a chief, made the natives form a semicircle round the head of the boat, and chastised such as attempted to prevent it. The captain gave this person several articles, and by signs signified his want of fresh water; upon which a little was presently presented to him in a bamboo, and having made signs for something to eat, they brought him yams and cocoa-nuts. Their behaviour was in every respect agreeable, yet we did not much like their appearance, as they were all armed with bows, arrows, clubs, spears, and darts. On this account we kept a good look-out, and watched particularly the motions of the chief, who wanted us to haul the boat on shore. He renewed his signs for this to be done, and then held a conference with some of the natives. One circumstance appeared rather suspicious, he refused some spike nails that we offered him. Capt. Cook immediately returned to the boat, upon which they attempted by force to detain us. Very fortunately the gang board happened to be laid out for the captain to run into the boat; this some of the natives unhooked from the stern as we were putting off; they then hooked it to the head of the boat, and attempted to haul her on shore. Some of them were daring enough to take the oars out of a few of our peoples hands. They in some measure desisted, on Capt. Cook's presenting a musket, but went on again in an instant, seemingly determined to haul the boat on shore, and to detain us. The chief was at the head of this party, and others stood at a small distance behind, with stones, darts, and other missile weapons, ready to support them. Our own safety was now become our only consideration, for signs and threats had not the effect we expected. The captain therefore resolved to make the chief suffer alone a victim to his own treachery; but at this critical moment his piece did not go off. This increased their insolence, and they began to assault us with stones, darts, and arrows. We were now ordered to fire. The first discharge threw them into confusion; but they were very reluctantly driven off the beach by the second. After this they continued a kind of bush fighting, by throwing stones from behind trees, and sometimes a dart or two. Four of them lay to all appearance dead on the shore, but two of them afterwards crawled in among the bushes. It was a fortunate circumstance for these *Abalians*, that more than half our musquets misfired, otherwise we should have done much more execution among them. One of our crew was wounded in the cheek with a dart, which entered near two inches; and an arrow struck Mr. Gilbert's breast, but it hardly penetrated the skin. Having returned after this skirmish was ended on board, the captain ordered the anchor to be weighed, with a view of proceeding with the ship to the landing-place. While this was doing, several of the natives appeared

on a low rocky point, displaying the two oars which they had taken from us in the late scuffle. We thought they were desirous of returning the oars, and that their manner of behaving might be a token of submission: nevertheless, that they might understand the effect of our great guns, we fired a four pound shot at them, which, though it fell short, terrified them so much, that we saw no more of them, and when they went away they left the two oars standing up against the bushes. By this time our anchor was at the bow, when a breeze sprung up at N. upon which we set our sails, and plyed out of the bay, for here we could not supply our wants with convenience, and in case a better place could not be found to the S. we had it in our power at any time to return hither.

The natives of this island are of a middle size, regular features, and pretty well made. They are of a different race from those of Mallicolæ, as well in their persons, as their language. Their complexions are naturally dark; yet they paint their faces, some with black, and some others with red pigment. Their hair is curly, but somewhat woolly. The women were not very inviting, being rather ugly. They wear a petticoat made of a plant like palm leaves; and the men go in a manner naked, having only a belt and wrapper round their waist. They live in houses covered with thatch, and their plantations are laid out by line, and fenced round. We saw no canoes in any part of the island.

On Thursday the 4th of August, at two o'clock P. M. we cleared the bay, and steered for the fourth end of the island. We discovered on the S. W. side of the head a pretty deep bay; its shores low, and the land appeared very fertile, but being exposed to the S. E. winds, until better known, we think that on the N. W. side preferable. The promontory or peninsula, which divides these two bays, we named Traitor's Head, from the treacherous behaviour of its inhabitants; it forms the N. E. point of the island, and is situated in the latitude of 15 deg. 43 min. S. and in 169 deg. 28 min. E. longitude. It terminates in a saddle hill, which may be seen 16 or 18 leagues off at sea. We continued our course to the S. S. E. when the new island we had before discovered, appeared over the S. E. point of one near us, distant about 10 leagues. Leaving the hill, we steered for the east end of the former, being directed by a great light we saw upon it. On the 5th, at sun rise we came in sight of an island, being high table land, bearing E. by S. and also discovered another little low isle which we had passed in the night. Traitor's Head was still in sight, and the island to the S. extended from S. 7 deg. W. to S. 87 deg. W. distant four miles. The light seen in the night we now found to have been a volcano. A rumbling noise was heard, and it threw up great quantities of smoke and fire. We now steered for the island; and discovered a small inlet which had the appearance of a good harbour. Two armed boats, under the command of Lieut. Cooper, were sent off in order to sound, while the ship stood on and oil, to be ready to follow or to afford any assistance that might be required. We observed a number of the natives on the east point of the entrance, also several canoes; and when our boats entered the harbour they launched some, but came not near. At this time Lieut. Cooper made the signal for anchorage, and we stood in with the ship. The wind having left us when we were within the entrance, we were obliged to drop anchor, in four fathoms water. The boats were now sent out to find a better anchorage; and while we were thus employed, many of the natives came in parties to the sea-side all armed, some swam off to us, others came in canoes. At first they seemed afraid of us, and kept at a distance, but by degrees waxed bolder, and at length came under our stern, and made some exchanges. Those in one of the first canoes threw towards us some cocoa-nuts. The captain went out in a boat, picked them up, and in return gave them several articles. Others were induced by this to come along-side, who behaved in a most insolent manner. They attempted to tear our flag from the staff, would have knocked the rings from the rudder, and we had no sooner thrown out the buoys of the anchor from the

boats than they got hold of them. We fired a few musquets in the air, of which they took no notice, but a four pounder alarmed them so much, that they quitted their canoes, and took to the water. But finding themselves unhurt, they got again into their canoes, flourished their weapons, hallooed in defiance, and went again to the buoys, but a few musquetoon shot disappointed them. They all retired in haste to the shore, and we sat down to dinner, unmolested. In the interval of those transactions, an old man, who seemed to be amicably disposed, came several times, in a small canoe between us and the shore, bringing off each time cocoa-nuts and yams, for which he took in exchange whatever we offered him. Another was in the gangway when the great gun was fired, after which we could not prevail on him to flay. In the evening we landed at the head of the harbour, with a party of men well armed. The natives made not the least opposition, though we had one body on our right, and another on our left, all armed. We distributed among the old people some presents of cloth and medals, and filled two casks with fresh water, an article we gave them to understand we much wanted. We got in return plenty of cocoa-nuts, but could not prevail on them to part with their weapons, which they held constantly in a posture of defence. The old man was in one of these parties, but by his behaviour, we judged his temper to be pacific. We thought, by their pressing so much, in spite of all our endeavours to keep them at a distance, that little would be wanting to induce them to attack us; but we re-embarked very soon, and thus, probably, their scheme was discovered.

Saturday the 6th, we brought the ship as near the landing place as possible, that we might overawe the natives, and cover the party on shore, who were to get a supply of wood and water, which we much wanted. While we were upon this business, we observed the natives assembling from all parts, all armed, to the amount of some thousands, who formed themselves into two divisions, as they did the preceding evening, on each side the landing place. At intervals a canoe came off, at times conducted by one, two or three men, bringing us cocoa-nuts, &c. for which they did not require any thing in return, though we took care they should always have something; but their principal intention seemed to be, to invite us ashore. The old man before mentioned, came off to us several times, and the captain, with a view of making him understand that he wanted to establish a friendly intercourse, took his weapons that were in the canoe, and threw them overboard, and made him a present of a piece of cloth. He understood the meaning of this, for we saw him frequently in conversation with his countrymen, to whom he made our request known, going first to one party, then to another, nor did we afterwards see him with his weapons, or in a warlike manner. Soon after a canoe, in which were three men, came under our stern, one of whom behaved very outrageously, brandishing his club, and striking with it the ship's side; at last he offered to exchange his weapon for a string of beads, and other trifles; these we sent down to him by a line, of which he had no sooner got possession, than he made off, without delivering his club. We were not sorry for this, as it afforded us an opportunity of showing the people on shore the effect of our fire arms. We therefore, without hesitation, complimented this fellow with the contents of a fishing piece, loaded with small shot, and when the others were out of the reach of musquet shot, we fired some musquetoons, or wall pieces at them, which made them take to the water. But all this seemed to make very little impression on the people ashore, who began to halloo, and seemingly made a joke of it. Having secured the ship, with her broad-side to the landing place, and scarcely musquet shot off, we planted our artillery in such a manner as to command the whole harbour, and then embarked with a party of seamen, supported by the marines, and moved to the landing place, where we have before observed the natives were drawn up in two divisions. The intermediate space between them was about 40 yards, in which

fred a few
notice, but
they quited
ding them-
es, flourish-
and went
ot soon dis-
the shore,
the inter-
med to be
small canoe
time cocoa-
ge whatever
y when the
not prevail
t the head
rmed. The
gh we had
our left, all
ople some
calks with
eriland we
ocoon-nuts,
their wea-
ure of de-
arties, but
be pacific.
fpite of all
that little
s us; but
ably, their

s near the
erawe the
ere to get
ch wanted,
rd the na-
ie amount
into two
, on each
came off,
bringing
quire any
nd always
h fecind
ore men-
captain,
e wanted
weapons
oard, and
e under-
requently
hom he
ity, then
with his
a canoe,
y, one of
his club,
e offered
nd other
which he
f, with-
or this,
people
etckore,
with the
all if or,
mutquet
eces at
But all
he pro-
e made
broad-
th-out,
o com-
with a
rowed
revera
be in-
ads, in
which

VIEW of the ISLAND of TANNIA.



which were la
and a yam. B
recds were stu
angles to the sh
They remained
man stood, and
invited us to la
looked somethi
been caught in
the divisions to
the least regard
mented, and, es
armed. From
they meant to a
we wished to a
killed or wound
off without for
better to frigh
viour, and there
on our right, w
effect, but they f
The ship was t
three great gun
immediately lan
right and left; s
his ground, we
natives returned
came without th
them. We mad
and they gave us
ours first. Thu
presents we mad
on their conduc
belonged to us,
they threw us do
no notion of exc
we always took
We took the old
Paowang) to the
wanted to cut d
contented, provi
bet. At the fam
we put into our l
with a view of le
wanted. Thus
we returned on b
In the afternoon
the launch with
with the seine, ca
let and other fish
of the natives ap
friend Paowang,
only one we got at
volcano, which w
mitted vast quan
violent rumbling
shower of rain, w
like that of thund
flames were seen
loaded with ashe
They resembled a
ground to powder
come to the eyes.

On Sunday the
again, early in th
before, but not in
we landed in ord
found most of the
but the younger b
to stand to our a
lieutenants who
wounded a man
others behaved be
they all retired in
at dinner an old
examined several
friends on shore.
with such of the n
who only made t
guard was thoug

which were laid a few plantains, two or three roots, and a yam. Between these and the water, four small reeds were stuck upright in the sand, in a line at right angles to the shore, for what purpose we could not learn. They remained here for some days. By these the old man stood, and two companions, who by various signs invited us to land, but we thought these a decoy, and looked something like the trap we had like to have been caught in at the last island. We made signs for the divisions to retire back, but to these they paid not the least regard, their number every moment was augmented, and, except two or three old men, not one unarmed. From all these circumstances we concluded they meant to attack us as soon as we landed; but this we wished to avoid, as many of them must have been killed or wounded, and we could not expect to come off without some damage. We thought it therefore better to frighten them into a more peaceable behaviour, and therefore a musquet was fired over the party on our right, which for about a minute had the desired effect, but they soon returned to their daring behaviour. The ship was then ordered, by signal, to fire two or three great guns, which presently dispersed them. We immediately landed, and marked out the limits on the right and left, by a line. Our old friend, who stood his ground, we rewarded with a present. Some of the natives returned, with a more friendly aspect. Many came without their weapons, but the greatest part with them. We made signs that they should lay them down, and they gave us to understand, that we must lay down ours first. Thus both sides stood under arms, and the presents we made to the old people had little influence on their conduct. Many were afraid to touch what belonged to us, and climbing the cocoa-nut trees, they threw us down the nuts, but they seemed to have no notion of exchanging one thing for another, though we always took care they should have a compensation. We took the old man (whose name we now found to be Paowang) to the woods, and made him understand we wanted to cut down some trees, to which he readily consented, provided fruit trees were not of the number. At the same time we cut down some trees, which we put into our boats, and a few small casks of water, with a view of letting the natives see what we chiefly wanted. Thus far matters were pretty well settled: we returned on board to dinner, and they all dispersed. In the afternoon a fishing party went out. We loaded the launch with water, and having made three hauls with the seine, caught upwards of 300 pounds of mullet and other fish. During this time not above thirty of the natives appeared; among whom was our truly friend Paowang, who made us a present of a pig, the only one we got at this place. Throughout the night the volcano, which was about four miles to the west of us, emitted vast quantities of fire and smoke, attended by a violent rumbling noise: this was increased by a heavy shower of rain, which fell at this time. The noise was like that of thunder, or the blowing up of mines; the flames were seen to rise above the hills: and the air was loaded with ashes, with which every thing was covered. They resembled a kind of fine sand, or rather stone ground to powder, and the dust was not a little troublesome to the eyes.

On Sunday the 7th, the natives began to assemble again, early in the morning, with their weapons, as before, but not in such numbers: notwithstanding this, we landed in order to get water, and cut wood. We found most of the old people disposed to be our friends, but the younger being daring and insolent, obliged us to stand to our arms. Mr. Edgcombe, one of the lieutenants who commanded the party, fired, and wounded a man with a swan-shot, after which the others behaved better, and when our people embarked they all retired in a peaceable manner. While we were at dinner an old man came on board, and after having examined several parts of the ship, returned to his friends on shore. We were now on a tolerable footing with such of the natives who lived in the neighbourhood, who only made their appearance, so that a sergeant's guard was thought sufficient for the protection of the

wood and water parties. Some of our people had left an ax on the beach or in the woods, which Paowang returned to us; also a few other articles which had been lost through negligence. The natives invited some of our people to go home with them, on condition that they would strip themselves naked as they were; a proof of their not harbouring a design of robbing them, whatever other they might have. On the 8th, early in the morning, the launch was sent under the protection of a party of marines in another boat, to take in wood, water, and ballast, when the natives seemed pretty well reconciled to us. On the 9th, our people were employed about the same business, and Capt. Cook was received very courteously by the natives, though armed, inasmuch that there was no longer any occasion to mark out the limits by a line, seeing they observed them without this precaution. He prevailed on a young man, named Wha-a-gou to accompany him on board, but nothing in the ship seemed to engage his attention. The goats, dogs, and cats, he called by the same name, which in his language signifies hogs. He seemed more fond of a dog and bitch than of any other animals, and we presented him with one of each. He sat down to dinner with us, but would only just taste our salt pork; however he eat pretty heartily of yam, and drank a glass of wine. Some of this young man's friends were probably doubtful of his safety, and therefore followed him in a canoe, but on his speaking to them out of the cabin window, they went on shore, and soon returned with a cock, some cocoa-nuts, and a sugar cane. After dinner he was conducted ashore loaded with presents. Upon landing, some of his friends took Capt. Cook by the hand, and, as we understood, would have led him to their habitations, but on the way, they made a sudden stop, and were unwilling he should proceed. The captain was desired to sit down. During this interval several of our gentlemen passed us, at which they expressed great uneasiness, and importuned the captain so much to order them back, that he was obliged to comply. Indeed they were not only jealous of our going up the country, but even along the shore of the harbour. While we were waiting here, our friend Paowang brought us a present of fruit and roots, by a party of 20 men, though they might all have been carried by two; perhaps this might be done with the view of making the present appear the greater; for one had a bunch of plantains, another a yam, a third a cocoa nut, &c. The captain paid these porters, though the present was in return for one he had made in the morning. Wha-a-gou and his friends were still for detaining us, and seemed to wait with impatience for something to give us in return for the dogs, but night approaching, we desired to depart; and they complied with our solicitations. We now learnt, by means of Mr. Forster's enquiries, that the proper name of this island is Tanna. The natives also told us the names of other neighbouring isles. That we touched at last is called Erronango, the small one which we saw the morning we landed here, Immer; the table if and to the east, discovered at the same time, Erronan, or Footoona; and one that lies to the S. E. Annatton; all which islands are to be seen from Tanna. It is a little remarkable, that the natives of this island were more scrupulous in taking any thing from the sailors, than those of any other nation, and never would touch with their bare hands what was given them, but always received it between green leaves, which they afterwards tied up and carried upon the ends of their clubs; and if any of our seamen touched their skin, they always rubbed the part with a green leaf. When these people make a wonder at any thing, they cry Hebow, and shake their right hands. They wear bracelets, like as the Indians of Venomous Bay, in which they stick their hair prickler, and likewise their slings, with which they throw their javelins: and it is astonishing with what dexterity and force some of them will hit a mark. One of them, in the presence of the first lieutenant, shot a fish as it swam along in the sea, at the distance of 26 yards, with a bow and arrow, which fish the lieutenant carried on board with the arrow sticking in his body,

as a proof of what he had seen performed. But notwithstanding their delicacy and skill as marksmen, they gave us to understand that they kill one another; and one day when the inhabitant about the bay had marched forth armed, on an expedition, to a distant part of the island, those that remained invited us to feast upon a man whom they had barbiqued, which invitation our gentlemen refused with the utmost disgust. It has been said, that no nation could be cannibals, had they other flesh besides human to eat, or did not want food; but we cannot ascribe the savage custom of these people to necessity, since the island abounds with plenty of hogs, fowls, vegetables, and fruit. While some of our people were employed in searching for ballast, they discovered water issuing from the crevices of a rock, hot enough to draw tea; which circumstance led to the discovery of some hot springs, at the foot of the cliff, below high water mark. In one place the waters were so hot, that there was no bearing the finger in them: in another they were just hot enough to bear to plunge the whole body, but not remain long therein. Two of the ship's company, who had been troubled with rheumatic complaints, at times, throughout the voyage, went accompanied with the surgeon, to one of these springs, but found the stones so hot that they could not stand upon them, without first plunging in some of their cold garments, to keep the soles of their feet from touching them; but the effect of these waters was found to be only a temporary relief.

On Wednesday the 10th, Mr. Wales, accompanied by some of the officers, proceeded for the first time into the country, and met with civil treatment from the natives. They saw in the course of this and another excursion, several fine plantations of plantains, sugar-canes, &c. and by this time, the natives in our neighbourhood, appeared so well reconciled to us, that they expressed no marks of displeasure at our rambling shooting parties. But after we had been several days raking in wood and water, they began again to be troublesome, watching every opportunity to level their arrows at the guard, and seemed to be restrained only by the fear of their musquets from proceeding to extremity. It is more than probable, however, that an act of violence on the part of our men, might, by a wanton use of their fire-arms, have caused their resentment; for in the afternoon of this day, a few boys, having thrown two or three stones at the wood-cutters, they were fired at by the petty officers present on duty. Having occasion for some large timber to repair the decays of the ship, orders had been given a few days before, to cut down a tree of vast growth; and for the convenience of getting it aboard, to saw it into three pieces. This tree so divided, the natives eyed with pleasure, not suspecting our men intended to carry it off, but to leave it in compliment to them, as it suited exactly their ideas of constructing just double the number of canoes. To the cutting down and sawing the trees the natives made no opposition; but when they saw the sailors employed in rolling down the body of the tree to the water's edge, they could not help looking furlly; and one of them, probably more interested than the rest, was frequently seen to offer his spear at the labourers, but was restrained for fear of the guard; at length he watched his opportunity, and, starting from behind a bush, was levelling an arrow at the commanding officer, when he was discovered, and shot dead. The ball tore his arm to pieces, and entered his side. His companions instantly carried off the body, and laid it in the wood, where the ship's surgeon went to examine it, but found the man totally deprived of life. Capt. Cook was much displeas'd with the conduct of these officers, and took measures to prevent a wanton use of fire-arms for the future. The ship's company were now permitted to go ashore only by turns, for the preservation of their health; and the captain knowing the natives wanted nothing so much as an opportunity to revenge the death of their companions, strictly enjoined them never to walk alone; nor to stray more than 100 yards from the guard.

On Thursday the 11th, during the night, the volcano was very troublesome, and threw out great quantities of fire and smoke, with a most tremendous noise, and sometimes we saw great stones thrown into the air. In several parts of the harbour, places were found from whence a sulphureous smell issued, and the ground about these were very hot. Mr. Foster and his botanizing party, on one side of the harbour, fell in with our friend Paowang's house. Most of the articles he had received from us were seen hanging about the bushes and trees near his dwelling. On the 12th, the volcano was more furious than ever, and we were much molested with the ashes. Some of our gentlemen attempted to ascend a hill at some distance, with an intent of observing the volcano more distinctly; but they were obliged to retreat precipitately, the ground under them being so hot, that they might as well have walked over an oven: the smell too of the air was intolerably sulphureous, which was occasioned by a smoke that issued from the fissures of the earth; yet in this smoke the natives seek a remedy for cutaneous disorders. Mr. Foster observing a man holding a child over the smoke, had the curiosity to enquire the reason, who made him understand, by shewing the child's eruptions, that it was troubled with the itch. The rain that fell this day was a mixture of water, sand, and earth; so that we had, properly speaking, showers of mire. The natives pretended to be unwilling, that we should this day go far up the country by ourselves, and offered their services to conduct us to the mouth of the volcano. We readily accepted their offer, but instead of shewing us the way to the place, we found ourselves near the harbour before we discovered the trick.

On Saturday the 13th, Paowang came on board to dine with us. We took this opportunity of shewing him every part of the ship, and a variety of trading articles, hoping he might see something that he liked, and so a traffic be carried on with the natives for refreshments, of which what we had hitherto obtained were very trifling. But Paowang beheld every thing with the greatest indifference, except a wooden sand-box, of which he took some notice. On the 14th, a party of us endeavoured to get a nearer view of the volcano, and took our rout by the way of one of those hot places already mentioned. In the way we dug a hole, into which was put a thermometer of Fahrenheit's construction. The mercury rose to 100 degrees; but the instrument remained in the hole near three minutes without its rising or falling. At this place the earth was a kind of white clay, and had a sulphureous smell. It was soft and moist under the surface, over which was a thin dry crust, having upon it some sulphur, and a vitriolic substance, tasting like alum. The place affected most by the heat, and where we made the experiment, was not above eight or ten yards square. Near this was a fig-tree which seemed to like its situation. We proceeded up the hill through a country entirely covered with plants, shrubs, and trees, inasmuch that the bread-fruit, and cocoa-nut trees, were in a manner choked up. Here and there we met with a few people, a house or two and some plantations in different states; one appearing of long standing; another lately cleared; and several just ready for planting. The clearing a piece of ground must be a work of much time and labour, seeing their working tools, though the same as those used in the Society Isles, are inferior to them; nevertheless their method is judicious, and as expeditious as well can be. They dig under the roots of the large trees, and there burn the branches, plants, and small shrubs. In some parts, the soil is a rich black mould; in others a kind of compost formed of decayed vegetables and the ashes of the volcano. We now came to a plantation where we saw a man at work, who offered to be our guide. We had not walked far before we came to the junction of two roads, in one of which stood a man with a sling and stone, which he would not lay down till a musquet was pointed at him; he seemed, however, determined to dispute the road with us, and partly gained his point,

for our guide led
lowed, hallooing
and, indeed, we
natives, among
in her hand. T
of a hill, and p
harbour. But n
to that we had l
any farther with
we saw other hill
seemed as far off
fore resolved to
doing, we were r
we thought to op
for when they saw
on unmolested, an
of fruits. What
brought down the
people courteous
to a contrary con
not to blame, if
norance of our r
them a friendly v
stances attending
pole, notwithstanding
to invade their co
without their dan
landing by a sup
not therefore be
When we endeavor
they might natura
especially if we c
both among them
We must here obse
of opinion, that t
natural passion, M
plant bag, having
as the carrying of
this country, othe
take him for a wo
our party, and as
hill, having his ba
the conversation a
considered him as
they discovered th
much surprize, Er
It is a man! Ev
well assured, they
hence it is plain, l
edures and opinio
We are not much
been undeceived, b
people would hav
practice of which t
pected.
In the evening,
country on the ot
met from the nat
sincerely treatment
oblige us in every
the village we had
about 20 houses, l
dwellings in Engla
open at both ends
reeds, and all were
are 40 feet long, an
few other mean he
from the others by
corpse was deposit
hung a basket, with
leaves quite lieft
the middle, but th
request. He wou
which one end of
to do it; and shew
look into the basket
human hair tied b
woman present had
have purchased the
by signs, that they
No. 20.

for our guide led us another way. The other man followed, hallooing, as we supposed, for a reinforcement, and, indeed, we were presently joined by others of the natives, among whom was a young woman with a club in her hand. These people conducted us to the brow of a hill, and pointed to a road leading down to the harbour. But not choosing to take this, we returned to that we had left, and here our guide refused to go any farther with us. Having ascended another ridge, we saw other hills between us and the volcano, which seemed as far off as at our first setting out. We therefore resolved to return, and just as we were about so doing, we were met by 20 or 30 people, assembled as we thought to oppose our advancing into the country, for when they saw us returning, they suffered us to go on unmolested, and by the way regaled us with a variety of fruits. What we did not eat on the spot, they brought down the hill with us. Thus we found these people courteous and hospitable, when not prompted to a contrary conduct by jealousy; for which they were not to blame, if we consider their rude state, and ignorance of our real design. This indeed was to pay them a friendly visit, but considering all the circumstances attending this, might they not reasonably suppose, notwithstanding fair appearances, that we came to invade their country? Did we not enter their ports, without their daring to oppose? Did we not effect a landing by a superiority of our arms? Would they not therefore be jealous of such intruding strangers? When we endeavoured to advance into their country they might naturally form unfavourable notions of us; especially if we consider how often they are at war both among themselves and with their neighbours. We must here observe, that some of our gentlemen were of opinion, that these people were addicted to an unnatural passion, Mr. Forster's man, who carried his plant bag, having been once or twice attempted: but as the carrying of bundles is the office of the women of this country, others thought, the natives might mistake him for a woman. This man was to-day one of our party, and as he followed the captain down the hill, having his bag as usual, we plainly understood by the conversation and actions of the natives, that they considered him as a female; and when by some means they discovered their mistake, they exclaimed, with much surprize, Erramange! Erramange! It is a man! It is a man! Every one now perceived, and was well assured, they had before mistaken his sex; and hence it is plain, how liable we are to form false conjectures and opinions of a people, with whose language we are not much acquainted: for had we not now been undeceived, it is not to be doubted but that these people would have been charged with the odious practice of which they had through ignorance been suspected.

In the evening, a party of us again walked into the country on the other side of the harbour, where we met from the natives, among whom was Paowang, friendly treatment. They discovered a readiness to oblige us in every thing in their power. We entered the village we had visited on the 9th instant, containing about 20 houses, built like the roof of our thatched dwellings in England, with the walls taken away, and open at both ends; but others are partly clofed with reeds, and all were covered with palm thatch. Some are 40 feet long, and 16 in breadth. Besides these, we saw other mean hovels. One of these was separated from the others by a reed fence, and we understood a corpse was deposited therein. At one end of the hut hung a basket, with a piece of roasted yam, and some leaves quite fresh. We had a strong inclination to see the inside, but the man peremptorily refused our request. He would neither remove the mats with which one end of the hut was clofed up, nor suffer us to do it; and shewed an unwillingness to permit us to look into the basket. He had two or three locks of human hair tied by a string round his neck, and a woman present had several about her neck. We would have purchased them, but they gave us to understand by signs, that they were a part of the hair of the de-

ceased, and on that account they could not part with them. This custom is similar to that among the natives of Otaheite and New Zealand, the former make Tamau of the hair of their departed friends, and the latter ear-rings and necklaces of their teeth. Not far from most of the large houses, the stems of four cocoa-nut trees were fixed upright in the ground, in a square, about three feet from each other, for the purpose of hanging cocoa-nuts to dry. Near most of them is also a large tree or two, whose branches afford an agreeable retreat from the heat of the scorching sun. This part of the island is well cultivated, abounding with plantains, roots, and fruit trees. One of our people weighed a yam which exceeded 55 pounds. The trees too are of an extraordinary size: but a wide circle in the interior part of the island, discovered nothing to the eye but a dreary waste, covered with cinders, and tainting the air with sulphur. Other surrounding islands looked pleasant to the eye; but according to the report of the natives of Tanna, abounding in nothing of which they themselves could want.

On Monday the 15th, preparations were continued on board to set sail, the ship was slooped above and below: the hold fresh stowed; the ballast shifted; the wooding and watering were finished; the rigging set up; and a few hands only were on shore making brooms; in short every thing was placed in such order, as if the ship had been but just fitted out at home for a long voyage. One of the botanical party this day shot a pigeon, in the craw of which was a wild nutmeg. Mr. Forster endeavoured, without success, to find the tree. During their excursion, they observed in most of the sugar plantations deep holes dug, four feet deep, and five in diameter, which, on enquiry, we found were designed as traps to catch rats in. These animals, so destructive to sugar-canes, are here in great plenty. Round the edge of these pits, as a decoy, and that the rats may be more liable to tumble in, the canes are planted as thick as possible. On the 16th, we found our tiller very much damaged, and by neglect, we had not a spare one aboard. We knew of but one tree in the neighbourhood that would do for our purpose. The carpenter was sent ashore to examine it, and upon his report a party of men were directed to cut it down, after the consent of the natives had been obtained. They did not make the least objection, and our men went instantly to work. Much time was necessary to cut it down, as the tree was large; and before they had finished their work, word was brought to the captain, that our friend Paowang was not pleased. Paowang was sent for, and our necessity explained to him. We then made him a present of a piece of cloth and a dog, which readily obtained his consent, and the voices of those who were with him in our favour. Having thus obtained our point, we conducted our friend on board to dinner; after which we went with him ashore to pay a visit to an old chief, who was said to be the king of the island; though as Paowang took little notice of him, we doubted the fact. His name was Geogy. He had a cheerful open countenance, though he was old, and wore round his waist a broad red and white chequered belt. His son was with him, who could not be less than 50 years old. At this time a great concourse of people from distant parts were assembled near the watering place. The behaviour of many was friendly; of others daring and insolent; which we did not think prudent to resent, as our stay was nearly at an end.

On Wednesday, the 17th, Old Geogy, and his son, with several of his friends, dined with us on board the ship, every part of which they viewed with uncommon attention and surprize. They made a hearty dinner on a pudding made of plantains and greens; but would hardly taste our salt beef and pork. In the afternoon they were conducted ashore by the captain, after he had presented them with a hatchet, some medals and a spike nail. On the 18th, the captain and Mr. Forster tried, with Fahrenheit's thermometer, when the tide was out, the head of one of the hot springs; and where the water bubbled out of the sand

from under the rock, at the S. W. corner of the harbour, the mercury rose to 202 deg. It is an opinion with philosophers, that volcanos must be on the summits of the highest hills; yet, this volcano is not on the highest part of the ridge, but on the S. E. side of it; and some of the hills on this island are more than double the height of that on which the volcano is, and close to it. Nor is it less remarkable, that in wet or moist weather, the volcano is more violent in its eruptions. We must here content ourselves with stating facts: the philosophical reasoning on these phenomena, we leave to men of more abilities, whose talents may lay in this line. On Friday the 19th, we prepared for sailing, as the tiller was finished; but the wind being unfavourable, the guard and a party of men were sent ashore, to bring off the remainder of the tree from which we had cut the tiller. The captain went with them, and found a good number of the natives collected together near the landing-place, among whom various articles were distributed. At the time our people were getting some large logs into the boat, the sentry presented his piece at one of the natives, and, without the least apparent cause fired at, and killed him. A few of the natives had just before advanced within the limits, to see what we were about, but upon being ordered back, they readily obeyed. The fellow of a sentry pretended, that a man had laid his arrow across his bow, so that he apprehended himself in danger; but this had been frequently done, out of a bravado, so shew they were armed, and prepared equally with ourselves. Capt. Cook was highly exasperated at this rascal's rash conduct; and most of the people fled with the utmost precipitation. As they ran off, we observed one man to fall; and the captain went with the surgeon, who was sent for to the man, whom they found expiring. His left arm was much shattered, and from hence the ball had entered his body by the short ribs, one of which was broken. What rendered this incident the more affecting was, that the man who bent the bow was not shot, but one who stood by him. The natives were thrown into such consternation, that they brought abundance of fruit, which they laid down at our feet. They all retired when we returned aboard to dinner, and only a few appeared in the afternoon, among whom were Paowang, and Wha-a-gou.

On Saturday, the 20th, the wind was favourable for getting out of the harbour; for during the night it had veered round to the S. E. At four o'clock A. M. we therefore began to unmoor, and, having weighed our anchor, put to sea. As we sailed we heard a noise, not unlike psalm singing. It was now too late to enquire into the cause; probably the natives were performing some religious acts. We thought that the east point of the harbour was sacred to religion, for some of our people had attempted to go to this point, and were prevented by the natives. They were always jealous of our proceeding into the country beyond certain limits: they might be apprehensive of an invasion, and that we meant to take their country from them. All we can say is, that no part of our conduct justified such a conclusion. We never gave them the least molestation; nor did we touch any part of their property, nor even their wood and water, without having first obtained their consent. Even the cocoa-nuts hanging over the heads of the workmen, were as safe as those in the middle of the island. We caught a large quantity of fish, and were tolerably well supplied by the natives with fruit and roots; and should certainly have obtained more refreshments, had we had any thing on board that suited their taste. Our cloth was of no use to those who go naked, and they had not any knowledge of the utility of iron. Though the people of this island, after feeling the effects of the European fire arms, were peaceable, they were not in general friendly; nor were they like the Indians in the Society Isles, fond of iron: they wished for some of the tools with which they saw our seamen cut down wood; but, except an adze or two, they never attempted to steal any thing. The coopers left their calks during the night un-

guarded; nor were they under any apprehensions about their cloaths, which they suffered to lie carelessly here and there while they were at work. These people discovered none of that disposition to thievery which it has been said every Indian inherits naturally. In their course of trade, they totally disregarded beads and baubles, and seemed to prefer Rotterdam fish hooks, and turtle-shell, to every thing else that was offered them. They would not permit the sailors to have any communication with their wives; nor were they easily persuaded to part with their arms on any account. The produce of the island they freely parted with, not requiring any thing in return; but on whatever was bestowed labour in the construction, they set a high value.

This island of Tanna produces abundance of plantains, cocoa-nuts, bread fruit, yams, a kind of potato, a fruit like a nectarine, wild figs, sugar-cane, and a fruit not unlike an orange, but which is never eaten. The bread fruit, cocoa-nuts, and plantains, are neither so plentiful, nor so good, as at Otaheite; but sugar-cane and yams are of superior quality, and much larger. We saw here a few fowls, and a great number of hogs, but the latter did not fall to our lot; and we did not see in all our excursions any other domestic animals. We met with some small birds, with a most beautiful plumage, which we had never seen before. Our botanists found many curious plants and trees; as great a variety as at any island we had visited. The inhabitants appear to subsist chiefly on the productions of the land, and are not much indebted to the sea, though there are plenty of fish on the coast. We never found any fishing tackle among them, nor saw any one out a fishing, except on the shoals, or along the shores of the harbour, where they would strike with a dart such fish as came within their reach, and in this art they were very expert. They were surprized at our method of catching fish with the seine, and, we believe, were not well pleased with our success. The small isle of Irmer was chiefly inhabited by fishermen, and the canoes we saw pass to and from the isle, and the east point of the harbour, we observed were fishing canoes. These were of unequal sizes, and composed of several pieces of wood clumsily sewed together. The joints are covered on the outside by a thin batten champed off at the edges, over which the bandages pass. The sail is latteen, extended to a yard and boom, and hoisted to a short mast. Some of the large canoes have two sails, and all of them out-riggers. They are navigated either by paddles or sails.

These people have little resemblance or affinity to those of the Friendly Islands, and those of Mallicollo, except in their hair, which is much like what the people of the latter island have. The colours are black and brown, growing to a tolerable length and curly. They part it into small locks, which they cue round with the rind of a slender plant, down to about an inch of the ends. Each of these locks is somewhat thicker than the common whip-cord; and they appear like a parcel of small strings hanging down from the crowns of their heads. Their beards are generally short, strong and bushy. The women wear their hair cropped, as do the boys, till they approach manhood.

We took some pains to discover how far their geographical knowledge extended, and found it not to exceed the limits of their horizon. To Erronan we may ascribe one of the two languages they speak, which is nearly, if not exactly, the same as that spoke at the Friendly Islands. It is therefore probable, that by a long intercourse with Tanna, and the other neighbouring islands, each hath learnt the other's language, which they speak indiscriminately. The other language which the people of Tanna, Erromango, and Anaton speak, is properly their own. It is different from any we had before met with, and bears no affinity to that of Mallicollo; from whence we conclude, that the natives of these islands are a distinct nation of themselves. Mallicollo, Apee, &c. were names unknown to them; they even knew nothing of Sandwich Island, which is much the nearer. These people are rather slender

made, and of the countenances, gnomable, like the males are put to walk unconcerned with heavy burdens. Perhaps the men are defending the parties of women a party of men are them, though not a burden at the far of Tanna are not handsome enough kinds of drudgery dark coloured, than any resemblance blacker than they the colour of blackment which is respectively the first only on the face, The women wear men nothing but rings, and amuletsexes. The amulet Zealand; the bracelets the necklaces, the sea-shells. The to the shell. Some Friendly Islands, where it was more to sale. Hence a few turtle, though fail. Towards the begin to enquire which we conclude of more value ar which their tools not shaped like an like an ax; and it made a hole, into

If we except the ple have few art coarse kind of m used chiefly for canoes is very cl of others we have rows, stones, club place most depend bearded edges. of a becket, that six inches long, the other. The right hand, and dart, where it is the dart between which serve only communicated b former flies off comes greater th the finger ready birds and fish v huting the mark hat, suppose the but if twice that mark the size of the weapon 60 of all their might, l arrows are made Some are bearded birds have two, general, are bran ten inches long, half diameter. T Every one carries or a bow and arrow on board. arms of these pe own words, "I

made, and of the middle size. They have agreeable countenances, good features, and are very active and nimble, like the other tropical inhabitants. The females are put to all laborious works; and the men walk unconcerned by their side, when they are loaded with heavy burdens, besides a child at the back. Perhaps the men think, that their carrying their arms, and defending them, is sufficient. We often saw large parties of women carrying various kinds of articles, and a party of men armed with clubs and spears to defend them, though now and then we have seen a man carry a burden at the same time, but not often. The women of Tanna are not very beautiful, yet they are certainly handsome enough for the men, who put them to all kinds of drudgery. Though both men and women are dark coloured, they are not black, nor do they bear any resemblance to negroes. They make themselves blacker than they really are, by painting their faces of the colour of black-lead. They use also a sort of pigment which is red, and a third sort brown, all these, especially the first, they lay on with a liberal hand, not only on the face, but on the neck, shoulders, and breast. The women wear a petticoat made of leaves, and the men nothing but a belt and wrapper. Bracelets, earrings, and amulets, are indiscriminately worn by both sexes. The amulets are made of the green stone of Zealand; the bracelets of sea-shells or cocoa-nuts; and the necklaces, chiefly worn by the women, mostly of sea-shells. The valuable ear-rings are made of tortoise-shell. Some of our people having got some at the Friendly Islands, brought it to a good market here, where it was more esteemed than any thing we offered to sale. Hence we concluded these people caught but few turtles, though one was seen just as we got under sail. Towards the time of our departure, the natives began to enquire after hatchets and large nails; from which we concluded, that they had found iron to be of more value and use than stone, shells, or bones, of which their tools are made. Their stone hatchets are not shaped like an adze, as in the other islands, but more like an ax; and in the helve, which is pretty thick, is made a hole, into which the stone is fixed.

If we except the cultivation of the ground, these people have few arts worth mentioning. They make a coarse kind of matting, and cloth of the bark of a tree, used chiefly for belts. The workmanship of their canoes is very clumsy; and their arms come far short of others we had seen. Their weapons are bows, arrows, stones, clubs, spears, and darts. On the last they place most dependence, and these are pointed with three bearded edges. In throwing them, they make use of a becket, that is a piece of stiff plaited cord about six inches long, with an eye at one end, and a knot at the other. The eye is fixed on the fore finger of the right hand, and the other end is hitched round the dart, where it is nearly on an equipoise. They hold the dart between the thumb and remaining fingers, which serve only to give it direction, the velocity being communicated by the becket and fore finger. The former flies off from the dart the instant its velocity becomes greater than that of the hand, but it remains in the finger ready to be used again. They kill both birds and fish with darts, and are pretty certain of hitting the mark, within the compass of a crown of a hat, suppose the object to be distant eight or ten yards; but if twice that distance, it is chance if they hit a mark the size of a man's body, though they will throw the weapon 60 or 70 yards; for they always throw with all their might, let the distance be what it may. Their arrows are made of reeds pointed with hard wood. Some are bearded; some not; and those for shooting birds have two, three, and four points. The stones in general, are branches of coral rocks, from eight to fourteen inches long, and from an inch to an inch and a half diameter. These are generally kept in their belts. Every one carries a club, and besides that, either darts, or a bow and arrows, but never both. One of our gentlemen on board, made the following remarks on the arms of these people, which we shall here insert in his own words, "I must confess, I have often been led to

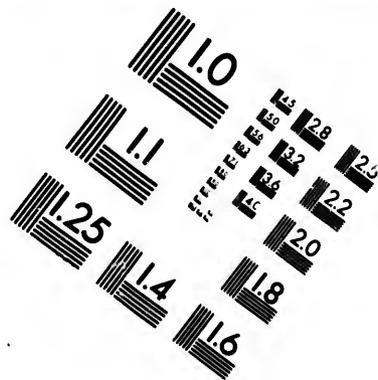
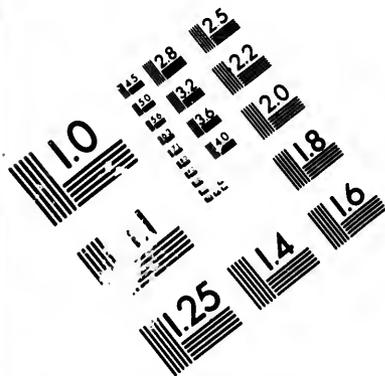
think the feats which Homer represents his heroes as performing with their spears, a little too much of the marvellous to be admitted into an heroic poem; I mean when confined within the strait flays of Aristotle. Nay, even so great an advocate for him as Mr. Pope, acknowledges them to be surprizing. But since I have seen what these people can do with their wooden spears, and those badly pointed, and not of a very hard nature, I have not the least exception to any one passage in that great poet on this account. But if I see fewer exceptions, I can find infinitely more beauties in him; as he has, I think, scarcely an action, circumstance, or description of any kind whatever, relating to a spear, which I have not seen and recognised among these people; as the whirling motion, and whistling noise, as the spears fly; their quivering motion, as they stick in the ground; the warriors meditating their aim, when they are going to throw; and their shaking them in their hand, or brandishing them, as they advance to the attack, &c."

As to the religion and government of these people, we are little acquainted with the last, and to the first are utter strangers. Chiefs they seem to have among them; at least some were announced to us as such, but they appeared to have very little authority over the rest of the people. Old Geogy was the only one to whom we saw a particular respect paid; but whether this was owing to his rank or age, we cannot say. On many occasions we have seen the old men respected and obeyed. Paowang was so, yet we never heard him called chief, nor could we perceive he had any more power than his neighbours, and we may say the same of every other person in our neighbourhood.

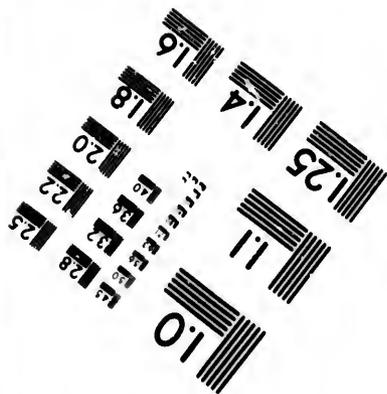
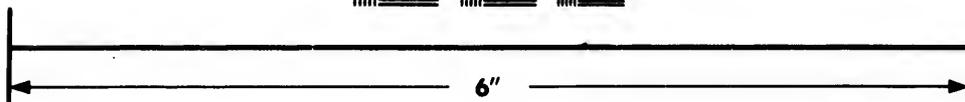
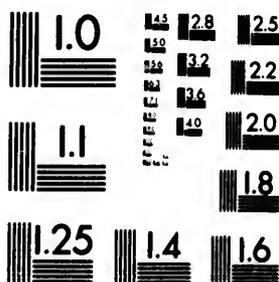
The Resolution being the first ship that ever entered this harbour, Capt. Cook named it Port Resolution. It is situated on the north side of the most eastern point of the island, and about E. N. E. from the volcano, in latitude 19 deg. 32 min. 25 sec. and half south, and in 169 deg. 44 min. 35 sec. east longitude. It is but a small creek, running in S. by W. half W. three quarters of a mile, and is about half that in breadth. The depth of water in the harbour is about six to three fathoms, the bottom sand and mud. The landing place is exceeding convenient for taking in wood and water, both of these necessary articles being near the shore. After the water had been a few days on board it stunk, but turned sweet again; and when at the worst the tin machine would, in a few hours, recover a whole cask. We now stretched, with a fresh gale, to the eastward, in order to have a nearer view of Erronan. Having passed this island at midnight, we tacked, and on Sunday the 21st, steered S. W. intending to get to the south of Tanna, and nearer Annatom; for though the morning was clear, we had made no discovery of any islands to the east. At noon, in latitude 20 deg. 33 min. 30 sec. Port Resolution bore north, 86 deg. west, distant about 18 miles; Tanna extended from south, 88 deg. W. to N. 64 deg. W. Traitors Head north 58 deg. W. distant 60 miles; the island of Erronan, north, 86 deg. E. distant 15 miles; and Annatom from S. half E. to S. half W. distant 30 miles. At two o'clock P. M. seeing no more land ahead of us, we bore up round the S. E. end of Tanna, and ran along the south coast at one league from shore. It seemed to be a bold one unguarded by rocks, and the country made a fine appearance, full as fertile as that in the vicinity of the harbour. At six o'clock we saw over the west end of Tanna, in the direction of north 16 deg. W. the high land of Erromango. We passed the island at eight, and shaped our course for Sandwich Isle, in order to complete our observations on that, and of the isles to the N. W. At four o'clock P. M. we approached the S. E. end. We found it to trend in the direction of W. N. W. In the middle of this range, very near the shore, we discovered three or four small isles, behind which appeared a safe anchorage. We continued our run along the coast to its western extremity, and then steered N. N. W. from the S. E. end of Mallicollo.

On the 23d, we came in sight of the islands Pa-oom, Apee, and Ambrym. The first of these appeared now





**IMAGE EVALUATION
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic
Sciences
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 372-4503

28
32
22
20

01

to be two islands. We continued our course to within half a league of Mallicollo, on the S. W. side, which we ranged at that distance. The direction of the land, from the S. E. point is W. by S. for about six leagues, and then N. W. by W. for three leagues, terminating in a high point or head land, in latitude 16 deg. 29 min. to which the name was given of S. W. Cape. The coast is low, indented with creeks, and projecting points; but, probably, these points might be little isles under shore. One we know to be such, lying between two and three leagues of the cape. A round rock, or islet, which, by an elbow in the coast, forms a fine bay, lies close to the west side, or point of the cape, connected with it by breakers. We were agreeably surprized with the beauty of the forests in Mallicollo, from whence we saw smoke ascend in various places, a plain indication of their being inhabited: the circumjacent land appeared very fertile and populous. We observed troops of natives on several parts of the shore; and two canoes put off to us, but as we did not shorten sail, they could not overtake the ship. The most advanced land from the S. W. cape, bore N. W. by N. at which it seemed to terminate. At noon we were two miles from the coast, and by observation we found our latitude to be 16 deg. 22 min. 30 sec. S. and our never failing watch shewed, that we were 26 min. W. of it. At this time the S. W. cape bore S. 26 deg. E. and the most advanced point of land for which we steered, bore N. W. by N. We had run the length of it by three o'clock P. M. and found the land trending more and more to the north. We reached its utmost extremity after dark, when we were near enough the shore to hear the voices of the people, who were assembled round a fire they had made on the beach. We now hauled round the point, stood again to the north, and spent the night in Bougainville's passage, being assured of our situation before sun-set.

On Wednesday, the 24th, we had advanced nearly to the middle of the passage, and the N. W. end of Mallicollo extended from S. 30 deg. E. to S. 58 deg. W. We now steered N. by E. then north along the east coast of the northern land. At first this coast appeared continued, but we found it was composed of several low woody isles, most of them of small extent, except the southernmost, which in honour to the day, was named St. Bartholomew. It is near seven leagues in circumference, and forms the N. E. point of Bougainville's passage. We continued our course N. N. W. along a fine coast covered with woods; in some places were white patches which we judged to be chalk. On the 25th, at day break, we were on the north side of the island, and steered west along the low land under it, for the bluff head; beyond which, at sun rise, we saw an elevated coast, stretching to the north, as far as N. W. by W. Having doubled the head, we perceived the land to trend south, a little easterly, and to form a large deep bay, bounded on the west by the above mentioned coast. It was our opinion, and every thing conspired to make us conclude, that this was the bay of St. Philip and St. Jago, discovered by Quiros in 1606. In order to determine this point, we stretched over to the west shore, from which we were one league at noon, and in latitude 14 deg. 55 min. 30 sec. S. and in 167 deg. 3 min. E. At half past four o'clock P. M. we were only two miles from the west shore, to which we had been drove by a N. E. swell. Here we saw large bodies of the natives collected together. Some ventured off in canoes; but they took sudden fright at something, nor could all our signs of friendship induce them to come along-side. Their nakedness was covered with some flag-grass, fastened to a belt, and which hung down, nearly as low as their knees: this was their only covering. Their complexion was very dark and their hair woolly, or cut short. The calm continued till near eight o'clock, and in the interval of time, we were drove into eighty-five fathom water; so that we were under the apprehensions of being obliged to anchor on a lee shore, in a great depth, and in a gloomy dark night; but contrary to our expectations our fears were removed; for a breeze sprung up

at E. S. E. and when we had hardly room to veer, the ship came about; our sails filled on the starboard tack; and we (such was the kind interposition of an invisible agent) stood off N. E. On the 26th, we were about eight miles from the head of the bay, that is terminated by a low beach; behind which is an extensive flat covered with wood, and bounded on each side by a ridge of mountains. We found our latitude at noon to be 15 deg. 5 min. S. and at one o'clock, having a breeze at N. by W. we steered up to within two miles of the head of the bay. Mr. Cooper and Mr. Gilbert were sent out to sound and reconnoitre, while we stood off and on with the ship. By this, time and opportunity were afforded for three sailing canoes to come up, which had been following us. They would not come along-side, but advanced near enough to receive such things as were thrown out to them, fastened to a rope. They appeared to be of the same colour as the inhabitants of Mallicollo, but were stouter, made and taller: their beards were frizzled and their hair woolly: yet several circumstances concurred to make us think they were of another nation. The numerals, as far as six, they expressed in the language Anamocha, and called the adjacent lands by the same names. Some had their hair long, tied upon the crown of the head, and ornamented with feathers like the New Zealanders. Others wore a white shell tied on their foreheads. They wore bracelets on their arms, and a belt round their waists. Some were painted with a blackish pigment. They had prongs with them, which looked like instruments to catch fish, and the only arms we saw among them were gigs and darts. Their canoes were most like those of Ianna, and navigated in much the same manner. They gave us the names of such parts as we pointed to; but the name of the island we could not get from them. On the return of the boats we were informed by Mr. Cooper and others, that they had landed at the head of the bay, near a fine stream of fresh water. We steered down the bay, being not in want of any thing, and the wind having shifted to S. S. E. Throughout the fore part of the night, on the west side of the shore, the country was illuminated with fires, from the sea shore to the summit of the mountains. On Saturday the 27th, at day-break, we found ourselves two thirds down the bay, and at noon we were the length of the N. W. point, which bore N. 83 deg. W. distant five miles; and by observation our latitude was 14 deg. 39 min. 30 sec. Some of our gentlemen were doubtful of this being the bay of St. Philip and St. Jago, because no place answered to the port of Vera Cruz; but the captain gave very good reasons for a contrary opinion. A port is a very vague term, like many others in geography; and what Quiros calls the port of Vera Cruz, might be the whole haven or harbour, or the anchorage at the head of the bay, which in some places may extend farther off than where our boats landed. The river was probably one of those mentioned by Quiros, and, if we were not deceived, we saw the other.

The bay is every where free from danger, and of an unfathomable depth, except near the shores, which are for the most part low. It hath sixty miles sea coast; eighteen on the east side, which lies in the direction of S. half W. and N. half E. six at the head; and thirty-six on the west side, the direction of which is S. by E. and N. by W. from the head down to two thirds of its length, and then N. W. by N. to the N. W. point. The two points which form the entrance of the bay, are in the direction of S. 53 deg. E. and N. 53 deg. W. distant from each other thirty miles. The bay, as well as the flat land at the head of it, is bounded by a ridge of hills: one to the west is very high, and extends the whole length of the island. Upon this appeared a luxuriant vegetation wherever the eye turned. Rich plantations adorned the sides of the hills, forests reared their towered heads; and every valley was watered with a running stream; but of all the productions of nature the cocoa-nut trees were the most conspicuous. Capt. Cook named the east point of the bay Cape Quiros, in memory of its first discoverer. It is in lat. 14 deg. 56 min. S. and in 167 deg. 13 min. E.

longitude. The N. W. point he named Cape Cumberland, in honour of his royal highness the duke. This lies in latitude of 14 deg. 38 min. 45 sec. S. and in longitude 166 deg. 49 min. 30 sec. E. It is the N. W. extremity of this Archipelago. On the 28th, and 29th, we took every opportunity, when the horizon was clear, to look out for more land, but none was seen: it is probable that there is none nearer than Queen Charlotte's Island, discovered by Capt. Carteret, about 90 leagues N. N. W. from Cape Cumberland, and the Captain thought this to be the same with Quiros's Santa Cruz. On Tuesday the 30th, we plying up the coast with a fresh breeze.

On Wednesday the 31st, we weathered the S. W. point of the island. The coast which trends east, northerly, is low, and seemed to form some creeks or coves; and as we got farther into the passage, we perceived some small low isles lying along it, which seemed to extend behind St. Bartholomew Island. Having now explored the whole Archipelago, the season of the year made it necessary to return to the south; but we had yet some time left to make observations on any land we might discover between this and New Zealand; at which last place the Captain intended to touch, in order to recruit our stock of wood and water for another southern course. To this end, at five o'clock P. M. we tacked, and hauled to the southward, with a fresh gale at S. E. At this time the S. W. point of the Island Tierra del Espiritu Santo, the only remains of Quiros's continent, bore north 82 deg. W. which Capt. Cook named Cape Lisburne. It lies in latitude 15 deg. 40 min. and in 165 deg. 59 min. east longitude. It may perhaps be pleasing to our readers to give a summary and more accurate view of the islands in this Archipelago, as the foregoing account, being given journal-wise, may not be thought perspicuous, or plain enough, either as to situation or description.

The islands which compose this Archipelago are not easily numbered. We counted upwards of seventy in sight at one time, and they seem to be inhabited by people of very different natures and complexions. Some we saw were woolly-headed, and of the African race; others were of a copper colour, not unlike the New Zealanders; some were of the mulatto colour, and a few like the natives of Rotterdam, of a brownish black, with long hair and thorn beards. The high nations, however, that were entertained of the vast riches of these islands, of their abounding in pearls, silver, and precious stones, do not seem well founded, neither does the island of Manicula answer by any means, the pompous description given of it by the Spanish writers, who found their report on the relation of an Indian chief, and on that of a captive, whom Quiros seized, and carried to Mexico. From the former Quiros learned, that to the N. W. of his country (Taumaco) there were more than 60 islands, and a large country, which he called Manicula; that, to explain which were small, he made circles, and pointed to the sea with his finger, and made signs that it surrounded the land; and for the larger he made greater circles, and the same signs; and for that large country he opened both his arms, without joining them again, thereby insinuating, that it extended without end; and by signs he shewed which people were whites, negroes, Indians, and mulattoes, and which were mixed; that in some islands they eat human flesh; and for this he made signs by biting his arm, shewing clearly thereby his abhorrence of such people. He also gave them to understand, that in the great country, there were cows or buffaloes. From the captive Quiros learnt, that in some of those islands, there were pearls as large as small pebbles; that the pearls were white and shining; and that when they looked at them against the sun, the shining lustre dazzled their eyes; that, at five days of their sailing from a country which he named, lay that great country Manicula inhabited by many people, dun-coloured, and mulattoes, who lived in large towns; that the country was high and mountainous, with many large rivers; that he, with many others, had gone to it

No. 50.

in one of their embarkations, in quest of the trunk of a great tree, of the many that are in it, to make a paria-gua; and that he saw there a port larger, and the entrance narrower, than that of St. Philip and St. Jago, and that the bottom was sand, and the shore thingle; he added, that the inhabitants had warlike instruments pointed with silver. This captive, after he had learnt the Spanish tongue, confirmed what he had said of the Great Country, and what the chief had said of the many islands, and of the different nations with which they were peopled; some luty, having their bodies punctuated; others not so, of various colours, long hair, red, black, curled and woolly. And being shewn some stones impregnated with silver, he said, in the great country he had seen such kind of stones, and likewise at Taumaco, where the natives used some to punctuate themselves, and others for ornament. From these intimations, several Navigators have interred, that if Quiros had stood to the southward, that course would have undoubtedly discovered to him the great Southern Continent, or as Quiros emphatically expresses it, "the mother of so many islands." Yet after all, THIS VOYAGE has shewn all these questionless affirmations, and probable conjectures, to be no other than mere assumptions founded on a false hypothesis. The course which Talman pursued in 1722, joined to that of Capt. Cook's, has demonstrated the non-existence of a Southern Continent, in the direction in which Mr. Dalrymple so positively asserts Quiros might have found it; and indeed every other direction from the line to 50 deg. of southern latitude, between which he has given it a place.

The islands of this Archipelago towards the north, were first discovered by that able navigator Quiros, a Spanish captain, in 1606, and was considered as part of the Southern Continent, which, at that time, was supposed to exist. They were next visited (for the French are very ready to reap the fruits of other peoples labours) by M. de Bougainville in 1768, who except landing on the Isle of Lepers, discovered no more than that the land was not connected, but composed of islands, which he called the Great Cyclades. But our great navigator, and experienced commander, Capt. Cook, left no room for conjecture, respecting the great objects he had in view; for besides ascertaining the extent and situation of these islands, he has added to them several new ones; and having explored the whole with mathematical precision, we think he had a right to name them, as he did, the New Hebrides; by which name we shall in the remaining parts of our narrative distinguish them. Their situation is between the latitude of 14 deg. 29 min. and 20 deg. 4 min. S. and between 166 deg. 41 min. and 170 deg. 21 min. E. longitude, extending 125 leagues, or 375 miles, in the direction of N. N. W. half W. and S. S. E. half E. We shall describe them for the sake of perspicuity in the following numerical order:

I. The Peak of the Ezoile, as it was named by M. de Bougainville. This is the most northern isle, and, according to his reckoning, lies N. by W. eight leagues from Aurora, in latitude 14 deg. 29 min. longitude 168 deg. 9 min.

II. Tierra del Espiritu Santo, which lies farthest north, and was discovered by Quiros in 1606. This is the most western and largest of all the Hebrides. It lies in the direction of N. N. W. half W. and S. S. E. half E. and is 66 miles long, 36 broad, and 180 in circumference. The land is exceeding high and mountainous; and the hills in many parts rise directly from the sea. Every place, except the cliffs, is beautifully adorned with woods and regular plantations. The bay of St. Philip and St. Jago, forms an excellent harbour, and we doubt not of there being good bays along the south and east coasts of other smaller islands.

III. Mallicollo is the next considerable island, extending N. W. and S. E. In this direction it is 54 miles long. Its greatest breadth is at the S. E. which is 24 miles. The N. W. end is 16 miles broad; and nearer the middle one third of that breadth. These

X

unequal

unequal measurements, particularly near the centre, are caused by a wide and pretty deep bay, on the S. W. side. If we may form a judgment of the whole of this island from what we saw of it, we must conclude it is very fertile and populous. The hills are in the center of the island, from which the land descends, with an easy slope to the sea coast, where it is rather low.

IV. St Bartholomew, situated between the S. E. end of Tierra del Espiritu Santo, and the north end of Mallicollo; the distance between which latter island and St. Bartholomew is eight miles. The middle of it is in latitude 15 deg. 48 min. Between this island and that of Mallicollo, is the passage through which M. de Bougainville went; whose descriptions have very little pretensions to accuracy.

V. The isle of Lepers is situated between Espiritu Santo and Aurora, being distant from the former eight leagues, and from the latter three. It lies nearly under the same meridian as the S. E. end of Mallicollo, in latitude 15 deg. 22 min. Its figure approaches nearest to an oval, and it is near 60 miles in circumference. We determined its bounds by several bearings; but the lines of the shore were traced out by inspection, except the N. E. part, where there is an anchorage half a mile from the land. We must here observe, that, Aurora, Whitsuntide, Ambrym, Paom, and its neighbours Apee, Three-hills, and Sandwich Islands, lie all under the same meridian of 167 deg. 29 min. E. extending from the latitude of 14 deg. 51 min. 30 sec. to 17 deg. 53 min. 30 sec.

VI. Aurora Island lies N. by W. and S. by E. in which direction it is 33 miles in length; but in breadth, we think, it scarcely exceeds seven miles, except where the natives have their plantations; its surface is hilly, and every where covered with wood.

VII. Whitsuntide Island, one league and a half to the south of Aurora, of which it is the same length, but somewhat broader; and lies in the direction of north and south. Except such parts that seemed to be cultivated, and which are pretty numerous, it appeared considerably high, and covered with wood.

VIII. Ambrym, from the north side to the south end of Whitsuntide Island, is two leagues and a half. In circumference this island is about 17 leagues. The shore is rather low, and the land rises with an unequal ascent to a high mountain. We judged it to be well inhabited from the quantity of smoke which we perceived to ascend out of the woods, in such parts of the island as passed under our observation; for the whole of it we did not see.

IX. Paom, of this and its neighbourhood we saw but little, and therefore can only say of this island, that it soars up to a great height in the form of a hay-cock. The extent of this and the adjoining isle (if they are two) do not exceed three or four leagues, in any direction; for the distance between Ambrym and Apee is scarcely five leagues, and they are situated in this space, and east from Port Sandwich, distant about eight leagues.

X. Apee. The direction of this island is about 24 miles N. W. and S. E. and it is not less than 60 miles in circumference. It has a hilly surface, rising to a considerable height, and is diversified with woods and lawns; we speak here only of the west and south parts, for the others we did not see.

XI. Shepherd's Isles, which are a cluster of small ones, of different dimensions, in the direction of S. E. and extending off from the S. E. point of Apee, about five leagues.

XII. Three-hills. This island lies four leagues south from the coast of Apee, and is distant 17 leagues, S. E. half S. from Port Sandwich. A reef of rocks, on which the sea continually beats, lies W. by N. five miles from the west point.

XIII. Sandwich Island is situated nine leagues, in the direction of south from Three-hills. To the east and west of which line are,

XIV. Two-hills Island.

XV. The Monument.

XVI. Montagu Islands.

XVII. Hinchinbrook.

XVIII. Two or three small isles, lying between Hinchinbrook and Sandwich Island, to which they are connected by breakers. Sandwich Island is 75 miles in circumference, and its greatest extent is 30 miles. It lies in the direction of N. W. by W. and S. E. by E. We viewed the N. W. coast of this island only at a distance. From the fourth end of Mallicollo, to the N. W. end of Sandwich Isle, the distance, in the direction of S. S. E. is 22 leagues.

XIX. Erromango lies in the same direction; and is situated 18 leagues from Sandwich Island. It is about 75 miles in circumference. The middle of it is in latitude 18 deg. 54 min. longitude 169 deg. 19 min. E. From the distance we were off when we first saw it, appeared of a good height.

XX. Tanna. This island is situated six leagues from the fourth side of Erromango, extending S. E. by S. and N. W. by N. It is about 24 miles long in that direction, and every where about nine or twelve miles broad.

XXI. Annatom. This is the southernmost island, and lies in latitude 20 deg. 3 min. longitude 170 deg. 4 min. and 12 leagues from Port Resolution, south 3 deg. E. Its surface is hilly, and of a tolerable height; more we cannot say of it.

XXII. Imner, which is in the direction of N. E. half E. four leagues from Port Resolution in Tanna and,

XXIII. Erronan, or Footoona, east, lies in the same direction, distant 11 leagues. This island is the most eastern of all the Hebrides, and appeared to be more than five leagues in circumference. It is high, and the top flat. A small peak, seemingly disjoined from the isle, though we thought it was connected by land, lies on the N. E. side. This is an accurate description of the principal islands in the Archipelago to which our commander gave the name of the Hebrides; but, as we have before observed, there are many others of lesser note, of which we had only a transient view, and therefore cannot pretend to describe.

To this account, in order to render it complete, I shall annex the lunar observations, made by our astronomer, Mr. Wales, for ascertaining the longitude of these islands, concerning which Capt Cook observed, "That each set of observations, consisting of between five and ten observed distances of the sun and moon, or moon and stars, the whole number amounts to several hundred, and these, by means of the watch, have been reduced to all the islands; so that the longitude of each is as well determined as that of the two ports under mention, namely, Sandwich and Resolution. To prove this we need only observe, that the longitude of the two ports, as pointed out by the watch and by the observations, do not differ two miles. This shows likewise, what degree of accuracy these observations are capable of, when multiplied to a considerable number, made with different instruments, and with the sun and stars, or both sides of the moon. By this last method, the errors which may be either in the instruments or lunar tables, destroy each other, as also those that may arise from the observer himself; for some are more critical, and closer observer than others. If we consider the number of observations that may be obtained in the course of a month (supposing the weather to be favourable) we shall perhaps find this method of ascertaining the longitude in places as accurate as most others; at least it is the most easy, and attended with the least expence. Every thing bound to foreign parts is, or may be, supplied upon easy terms, with a sufficient number of good quadrants proper for making the solar or lunar observations; and the difference of the price between a good and bad quadrant, can never be an object with an officer. The most expensive article, and what is in some measure necessary, in order to arrive at the utmost accuracy is a good watch; but for common use, and where the strict accuracy is not required, this may be dispensed with.

nds.
ok.
three small isles, lying between
Sandwich Island, to which they are
Sandwich Island is 75 miles
its greatest extent is 30 miles.
of N. W. by W. and S. E. by E.
coast of this island only at a dif-
end of Mallicollo, to the N. W.
the distance, in the direction of

ies in the same direction; and is
Sandwich Island. It is about
ence. The middle of it is in la-
longitude 169 deg. 19 min. E.
were off when we first saw it, it
ight.

island is situated six leagues from
mango, extending S. E. by S. and
out 24 miles long in that direc-
ere about nine or twelve miles

This is the southernmost island,
0 deg. 3 min. longitude 170 deg.
from Port Resolution, south 30
is hilly, and of a tolerable height;
of it.

which is in the direction of N. by
s from Port Resolution in Tanna,

or Footroona, east, lies in the same
leagues. This island is the most
brides, and appeared to be more
circumference. It is high, and on
ll peak, seemingly disjoined from
thought it was connected by low
E. side. This is an accurate def-
incipal islands in the Archipelago,
mander gave the name of the
we have before observed, there are
note, of which we had only a
therefore cannot pretend to def-

in order to render it complete, we
observations, made by our astro-
for ascertaining the longitude of
rning which Capt Cook observed,
servations, consisting of between six
ances of the sun and moon, or moon
number amounts to several hundreds
of the watch, have been reduced to
that the longitude of each is as well
of the two ports undermentioned
nd Resolution. To prove this we
that the longitude of the two ports
watch and by the observations, did

This shews likewise, what degree
servations are capable of, when mul-
able number, made with differen-
th the sun and stars, or both side
is last method, the errors which may
ments or lunar tables, destroy each
that may arise from the observa-
more critical, and closer observa-
consider the number of observa-
obtained in the course of a month
her to be favourable) we shall per-
od of ascertaining the longitude of
most others; at least it is the most
with the least expence. Every thing
parts is, or may be, supplied upon
efficient number of good quadrants
the solar or lunar observations; and
e price between a good and bad
be an object with an officer. The
ele, and what is in some measur-
to arrive at the utmost accuracy
ut for common use, and where the
t required, this may be dispensed
with

C. VIEW in the ISLAND of NEW CALEDONIA.



COOK'S SECC

with; and it is to b
of finding the longi
culbit that any m
ible practice, may
well as the astronom
ference has seldom c
made by Mr. Wales
the same time.

Lunar Observati

For ascertaining
duced by the wat
and Port Resolution

*New Caledonia discover
—Observations on
depart from New
Zealand—Remarks
Island—She arrive*

ON September
out of sight o
We continued our c
at five o'clock, foun
in 165 deg. E. long
A.M. we discovered
S. S. E. to W. by S
were we six leagues
At this time the lat
by N. round by the
ten in the west, we
connected land,
the S. E. seemed
tory, which
our midshipmen
law two or three
had come off t
before sun se
th; we observe
Colnet, and
We bore do
that had
desired to enter
observing an ecl
open. We ther
and the channel
sailing canoes
served them in
parts; but so
imagined. We
pretty near us
and our boats f
that what
was low land
nimity, which
called Balab
for a channel,
the office
good anchorage
and obliging.
return, they pref
within the reef
Landy Ile, lying
the canoes. We
miles, and at
the bottom i
well sheltered
the low sands
ery of a mile,
one mile. T
and the chanp
four miles.

with; and it is to be observed, that the ordinary way of finding the longitude by a quadrant, is not so difficult; but that any man with proper application, and a little practice, may soon learn to make observations as well as the astronomers. Indeed, not any material difference has seldom occurred; between the observations made by Mr. Wales, and those made by the officers at the same time.

Lunar Observations made by Mr. WALES,

For ascertaining the longitude of the Hebrides, reduced by the watch to Port Sandwich in Mallicollo, and Port Resolution in Tanna.

APPENDIX I. PORT SANDWICH.

Mean of 10 sets of observ. before 167° 56' 33"¹/₂
 2 ditto, at midday 168 2 37 ¹/₂
 2 ditto, at night 167 52 57

Mean of these means 167 57 22 ¹/₂ E. Long.

II. PORT RESOLUTION.

Mean of 20 sets of observ. before 169° 37' 35"¹/₂
 2 ditto, at midday 169 48 48
 2 ditto, after 169 47 22¹/₂

Mean of these means 169 44 35

C H A P. VII.

New Caledonia discovered—Incidents—The country described—An account of the customs, manners, and arts of the natives—Observations on the coast and some low islands—Remarkable incidents while exploring these—The Resolution is obliged to depart from New Caledonia—This, in Capt. Cook's opinion, is the largest island in the South Pacific Ocean, except New Zealand—Remarks upon it—Continues her voyage to New Zealand—Observations respecting the discovery of Norfolk Island—She arrives at Queen Charlotte's Sound—An account of incidents while the ship lay there.

ON September the 1st, being Thursday, we were out of sight of land, and no more was to be seen. We continued our course to the S. W. and on the 3d at five o'clock, found ourselves in 19 deg. 49 min. and in 165 deg. E. longitude. On the 4th, at eight o'clock A.M. we discovered land, which at noon extended from S. S. E. to W. by S. distant six leagues. At five P. M. were six leagues off, when we were stopped by a calum. At this time the land extended from S. E. by S. to W. by N. round by the S. W. but as some openings were seen in the west, we could not determine whether it was one connected land, or a cluster of islands. The coast to the S. E. seemed to terminate to the S. E. in a high promontory, which was named Cape Colnet, after one of our midshipmen, who first discovered this land. We saw two or three canoes under sail, and we thought they had come off to us, but they struck their sails a few minutes before sun set, and we saw them no more. On the 5th, we observed the coast extended to the S. E. of Cape Colnet, and round by the S. W. to N. W. by W. We bore down to N. W. and came before an anchorage, that had the appearance of a good channel. We desired to enter it, in order to have an opportunity of observing an eclipse of the sun, which was soon to appear. We therefore sent out two armed boats to reconnoitre the channel; and at the same time we saw 12 sailing canoes near us. All the morning we had observed them in motion, and coming off from different parts; but some were lying on the reef, fishing as we imagined. When we hoisted out our boats they came pretty near us; but upon seeing this, they returned, and our boats followed them. We now were convinced, that what we had taken for openings in the coast was low land, all connected, except the western extremity, which, as we afterwards learnt, was an island, called Balabae. The boats having made a signal for a channel, we stood in with the ship. The commanding officer of the boats reported, that there was a good anchorage, and that the natives were very friendly and obliging. He gave them some medals, and returned, they presented him with some fish. Having landed within the reef, we hauled up S. half E. for a small sandy isle, lying under the shore, being followed by the canoes. We proceeded up the bay more than three miles, and at length anchored in five fathoms, the bottom a fine sand mixed with mud, and we were well sheltered from the wind and sea. At this anchorage the low sandy isle bore E. by S. distant three miles, and from the shore of the main we were one mile. The island of Balabae bore N. W. by W. distant four miles. A great number of the natives sur-

rounded us before we had well got to anchor, in 16 or 18 canoes, without any sort of weapons, and we prevailed upon one boat to come near enough to receive some presents. In return, they tied two fish to the rope, that stunk intolerably. An intercourse being thus opened by mutual exchanges, two of the natives ventured on board the ship, and presently after she was filled with them. Some dined with us, but they would not eat our salt beef, pork, or pease soup: we happened to have some yams left which they were very fond of. These they called Oobee, a name not unlike Oofee by which they are called at most of the islands, except Mallicollo; nevertheless we found these people spoke a language to which we were entire strangers. They were quite naked, except the belt and wrapper, which they used as the inhabitants of the other islands. They had no knowledge of our dogs, cats, and goats, &c. not having even a name for them, but they shewed a remarkable attachment to pieces of red cloth and spike nails. After dinner time, a party of us went ashore with two armed boats, and landed amidst a great number of people, who were induced by curiosity alone to see us, for they had not so much as a stick in their hands, and received us with great courtesy. They expressed a natural surprize at seeing men and things so new to them as we were. Presents were made to such as a man, who had attached himself to Capt. Cook, pointed out; but he would not suffer the captain to give the women, who stood behind, any beads or medals. We saw a chief whose name was Teaboona, who called for silence soon after we landed. Every person instantly obeyed him, and listened with extraordinary attention. When he had finished his harangue, another spoke, who was no less respectfully attended to. Their speeches were composed of short sentences. We thought ourselves to be the subject of them, though we could not understand them. Having by signs enquired for fresh water, some pointed to the east, others to the west; but our friend undertook to conduct us to it, and for that purpose embarked with us. The ground we passed was beautifully cultivated, laid out in several plantations, and well watered. We rowed near two miles to the east, where we observed the shore to be mostly covered with mangroves. We entered among these by a narrow creek or river, which brought us to a little straggling village where we were shewn fresh water. Near this spot the land was richly adorned with plantations of sugar-canes, yams, &c. and watered with little rills, conducted by art from the main springs, whose source was in the hills. We saw several cocconut trees, which had not much fruit on them, and heard the crowing of cocks, but saw none. Some roots were baking

baking on a fire, in an earthen jar, which would hold six gallons, and we did not doubt, but that this was of their own manufacture. Mr. Forster shot a duck, as it flew over our heads, and explained to the captain's friend how it was killed. He desired to have the duck, and informed his countrymen in what manner it was shot. The tide not permitting us to stay longer in the creek, we took leave of these amicable people, from whom we had nothing to expect but good nature, at the privilege of visiting their country without molestation, as it was easy to see these were all they could bestow. Though this did not satisfy our demands, it gave us much ease and satisfaction, for they certainly excelled all the natives we had hitherto met with in friendly civility.

On Tuesday, the 6th, in the morning, hundreds of the natives came to visit us: some swam, and others came in canoes. Before ten o'clock our decks, and other parts of the ship, were quite full of them. The captain's friend brought some fruit and a few roots: the rest had with them only their clubs and darts, which they exchanged readily for nails, pieces of cloth, and other trifling articles. Teabooma came with them, but went out of the ship imperceptibly, and by that means lost the present that was intended for him. After breakfast lieutenant Pickersgill was sent with two armed boats in search after fresh water, for what was found the preceding day could not conveniently be got on board. Mr. Wales also, and lieutenant Clerke, went to the little island, to make preparations for observing the eclipse of the sun, which was expected to be in the afternoon. Mr. Pickersgill having succeeded, soon returned. The launch was therefore ordered out to complete our water, and the captain repaired to the isle, to assist in the observation. The eclipse came on about one o'clock P. M. We lost the first contact by intervening clouds, but were more fortunate in the end; and by observations taken with different instruments, by Capt. Cook, Mr. Wales, and Mr. Clerke, the latitude of the isle, at the place of observation, was found to be 20 deg. 17 min. 39 sec. S. The longitude by the distance of the sun and moon, and moon and stars, 48 sets, 164 deg. 41 min. 21 sec. E. The same by the watch 163 deg. 58 min. Mr. Wales measured the quantity eclipsed by Hadley's quadrant, a method never before thought of. The captain was of opinion, that it answers the purpose of a micrometer to a great degree of certainty: if so, it is a great addition to the use of this valuable instrument. In the evening we visited the watering place, which was a fine stream, at the head of a small creek. The casks were conveyed by a small boat down the creek to the beach, over which they were rolled, and then put into the launch. The boat could enter the creek only at high water. Near this watering place was plenty of excellent wood for fuel, an article we did not at present want. In the evening of this day, about seven o'clock, died Simon Monk, our butcher. His death was occasioned by a fall down the fore hatchway, the preceding night. We could not but lament the loss of so useful a hand; especially as he was well respected and much esteemed on board the ship.

On Wednesday, the 7th, we made a party to take a view of the country. When we had landed, two of the natives undertook to be our guides. We ascended the hills by a pretty good path; and in the way met several people, who accompanied us, so that in a short time our train became numerous. From the summit of one of the hills we saw the sea in two places, whereby we could determine the breadth of this country, which does not exceed thirty miles. A large valley lay between the ridge we were upon, and the advanced hills, through which glided a serpentine river, and on the sides of the hills were several straggling villages. The valley appeared rather romantic, by the villages, interspersed with woods, winding streams, and beautiful plantations, which much improved the scene. The other parts of the island were mostly rocky and barren. The little soil that is upon the mountains and high places is burnt up by the sun; yet it is coated with

coarse grass and plants, and here and there trees and shrubs. There is a great similitude between this country and New Holland, under the same parallel of latitude, obvious to every one who had seen both places. We returned by a different road to that we came by, and passed through some of the plantations in the plain, which were laid out with great judgment, and appeared to be well cultivated. All the nations in these seas recruit their land by letting it lay in fallow, but they seem not to have any idea of manuring it; except by setting fire to the grass with which it is over-run. Having finished our excursion by noon, we returned on board to dinner, with one of our guides with us, whose attention and fidelity were rewarded at a very trifling expence. In the afternoon, the captain's clerk, being ashore, purchased a fish which one of the natives had struck. It had a large, long, ugly head, and bore some resemblance to the sun fish. It was ordered for supper, as we had no suspicion of its being poisonous. Providentially, the time the draughtsman took up in preparing this fish, made it too late for us to have it dressed; but the captain, and the two Messrs. Forsters tasted of the liver and roe, and in the middle of the night, they found themselves seized with a weakness and stupor, which affected their whole frame. The captain had almost lost his sense of feeling, not being able to distinguish between light and heavy bodies; a quart pot and a feather seemed the same in his hand. An emetic, and after that a sweat, were taken by these gentlemen, which proved an efficacious remedy. When they rose in the morning, they found one of the pigs dead, who had eaten the entrails; and when the natives came on board, and saw the fish hang up, they expressed their abhorrence, signifying it was not wholesome food. It is a little remarkable they did not do this when the fish was to be sold, nor after it was purchased. On the 8th in the afternoon, Teabooma, the chief, brought a present to the captain, consisting of a few yams, and sugar canes. In return for which, among other articles, a dog and bitch was sent him, nearly full grown. The dog was red and white, but the bitch was the colour of an English fox. This was done with the view of stocking the country with this species of animals. It was some time before Teabooma could believe the present was intended for him; but when he was convinced of this, he sent them immediately away, and seemed lust in excess of joy. On the 9th, lieutenant Pickersgill and Mr. Gilbert were dispatched in the launch and cutter to explore the coast to the west, which could not be so well effected by the ship, on account of the reefs. A party of men was also sent ashore to cut brooms; but Capt. Cook and Messrs. Forsters were confined aboard, though much better. On the 10th, Mr. Forster was so well recovered as to go into the country in search of plants. On Sunday, the 11th, in the evening, the boats returned, and we were informed by the commanding officers, that having reached an elevation the morning they had set out, they had from thence a view of the coast; and both Mr. Gilbert and Mr. Pickersgill were of opinion, that there was no passage for the ship to the west. From this place, accompanied by two of the natives, they went to Balabea. They were received by Teabi, the chief of the island, and the people who came in great numbers to see them, with strong intimations of friendship. Our people, that they might not be crowded, drew a line between them and the natives, who understood and complied with the restriction. One of these had a few cocoa-nuts, which a sailor would have bought, but the man being unwilling to part with them, walked off, and, being followed by the sailor, he sat down on the sand, made a circle round him, as he had seen our people do, and signified that the other was not to come within it, and the injunction was strictly observed. This excursion to Balabea was rather a fruitless one; for they did not reach the isle till near sunset, and left it again before sun-rise, the next morning; and the two following days were spent in getting up to the ship. In going down to the isle, they saw a great number of turtles, but could not strike any, the

land and sea being rather tempestuous. The cutter sprung a leak, and suddenly filled with water, so that they were obliged to throw several things over-board, to prevent her being lost, and by lightning her, to stop the leak. From a fishing canoe they met, they got as much fish as they could eat.

On Monday, the 12th, early in the morning, the carpenter was ordered to repair the cutter. The captain being desirous of stocking this country with hogs as well as dogs, the former being more useful of the two, he took with them in the boat a young boar and dog, and went up the mangrove creek in search of his friend, the chief, in order to give them to him. We were informed by the natives, that he lived at some distance, but they would send for him: but he not returning as soon as we expected, Capt. Cook resolved to give them to the first man of consequence he might meet with. In consequence of this determination, they were offered to a grave old man, who shook his head, and made signs for us to take them into the boat again. On our refusing to comply, they seemed to hold a consultation what was to be done. After this, our guide offered to conduct us to the chief, (or Areeke) and he accordingly led us to a house, where eight or ten middle aged persons were seated in a circle. To these the captain and his pigs were formally introduced. They desired the captain with great courtesy to be seated, who began to expatiate on the merits of his two pigs, explaining to them their nature and use, and how they would multiply: in short, he enhanced their value as much as possible, that they might take the more care of them. In return for our present we had six yams brought us, after which we went on board. In the afternoon we made a trip to the shore, and on a tree near the watering place, an inscription was cut, setting forth the ship's name, date, &c. as a memorial and proof that we were the first discoverers of this country. Much the same had been done in other places we had touched at. Near this place is a little village, which we now found to be much larger than we expected. It was surrounded with good cultivated land, regularly laid out, planted, or planting, with taro or eddy root, yams, &c. small rills, in pleasing meanders, continually watered the taro plantations. These roots are planted, some in square or oblong patches, which lie horizontal, and are sunk below the level of the adjacent land, by which means they can let into them, as much water as they think requisite. Others are planted in ridges, about four feet broad, and three high. On the top of the ridge is a narrow gutter, for conveying the little rills to the roots. The plantations are laid out with such judgment, that the same stream waters several ridges. These are sometimes the boundaries to the horizontal plantations, and where this method is used, which is frequently done for the benefit of a pathway, not an inch of ground is lost. Some of the roots are better tasted than others; nor are they all of the same colour; but they are all wholesome food. The tops are eaten by the natives, and we thought them good greens. The whole family, men, women, and children, work in these plantations. Having now fully satisfied our curiosity for the present, we returned on board, when the captain ordered all the boats to be hoisted in, that we might be ready to set sail, and put to sea.

The inhabitants of this country are strong, robust, active, friendly, courteous, and not addicted to pilfering, as all other nations are in this sea. They have in general better features than the natives of Tanna, and are a much stouter race; but in some we saw a resemblance of the negroes, having thick lips, flat noses, and full cheeks. Their hair and beards are black. The former is very rough and frizzled; and frequently wants scratching, for which they have a well contrived instrument, weaving it always in their rough mop heads. It is a kind of comb made of sticks of hard wood, from seven to nine inches long, and about the thickness of a knitting needle. Twenty of these, sometimes fewer, are fastened together at one end, parallel to, and nearly one tenth of an inch from each other.

The other ends, that are a little pointed, spread out like the sticks of a fan. Some have their hair tied up in clubs, and others, as well as the women, wear it cropped short. They also wear their beards cropped in the same manner. They are much subject to swelled and ulcerated legs, particularly the men, as also to a swelling of the scrotum. When they go out in their canoes, and when unemployed, they wear a coarse kind of matting, of their own manufacture, and the men of note have a stiff, cylindrical black cap, which appeared to be a capital ornament, and mark of distinction among them. The dress of their women is a short petticoat, made of the leaves of the plantain tree, fastened by a cord round their waists. This is at least six inches thick, but not one longer than necessary for the use designed. The outer filaments are dyed black, and the right side is ornamented with pearl oyster-shells. Both sexes are adorned with ear-rings, necklaces, amulets, and bracelets, made of large shells, which are placed above the elbow. Various parts of their bodies are punctured. They appear to be a race between the natives of Tanna, and those of the Friendly Islands, and they bear some resemblance to those of New Zealand; their language, in some respects, appear to be collected from these three countries. In honesty and a friendly disposition, they certainly excel all others. However, notwithstanding this, they must sometimes be engaged in war, otherwise they would not be so well provided as they are, with weapons of various sorts. Their clubs are near three feet in length, and variously formed, some with heads like an hawk, others with round heads. They are all made very neatly. Their darts and spears are ornamented with carvings. They take some pains to shape the stones for their slings, which are in the form of an egg, only pointed alike at both ends. In striking fish with a dart, they are very dexterous, which we believe is the only method they have of catching them, for we saw neither hooks nor lines in their possession. Their tools are much the same as in the other islands. They build their houses circular, resembling a bee-hive, and full as close and warm; into which they enter by a square opening, just big enough to admit a man upon his knees. The roof is lofty and brought to a point at top; the side walls are five feet and a half high; both roof and sides are covered with thatch, made of coarse long grass. On the top of most of their dwellings is a wooden post, which is generally ornamented either with carving, or shells, or both. Within are platforms for the conveniency of laying any thing on, and in some houses are two floors, one above the other. On the floors dry grass is laid, and mats are spread for the principal people to sleep, or sit on. In most of them we found a fire burning; and in some two fire places, but they are very smoaky and hot, having no chimney, nor vent for the smoak but the door; an atmosphere which to Europeans must be very disagreeable, and as to ourselves we could scarcely endure it a moment; but with respect to the natives, the smoak is a necessary evil, as it prevents the musquitoes from molesting them, and these are very numerous. Their houses are better calculated for a cold than a hot climate; and it is owing to their internal heat, that these people are so chilly when in the open air, and without exercise. We often saw them make little fires at different places, and squat down round them, only to warm themselves. In some particulars their houses are very neat; for besides the ornaments at top, we saw some with carved door-posts. There are not any partitions in them, consequently they cannot have any of our ideas that make privacy necessary. They cook their victuals in the open air, without doors; and the earthen jar, before mentioned, seems to be the only article of their household utensils worth notice. In this they bake their roots and fish. They use three or five stones, in the form of a sugar-loaf, to keep the jars from resting on the fire, and that it may burn the better. On these the jars lie inclined on their sides; and three stones are for one jar, five for two. The stones are fixed in the ground, and their pointed ends are about half a foot above the surface.

face. Water is their only liquor, and their subsistence is on fish, roots, and the bark of a certain tree, which last they roast before they chew it. Some of our people seemed to relish the taste of it, which is sweet and insipid. Their fruit trees do not yield much fruit. Plantains are not in abundance; sugar canes and bread-fruit are very scarce; and the cocoa-nuts are but thinly planted.

Notwithstanding nature has been rather scanty in her favours to the island, it is not thinly peopled on the sea coast, and in the valleys that are capable of cultivation. We saw, it is true, great numbers of the natives every day, but we believe they came from all parts on our account. Down the coast, to the west, there are but few inhabitants; but from the east, they came daily in large bodies, over the mountains, to visit us. We must, however, confess, that what parts of this country we saw, are not fit to support many inhabitants, most of these being barren rocky mountains, the grass growing on which is useless to people who have no cattle. The sea, perhaps, may compensate for the sterility of the land. A coast encircled with reefs and shoals, cannot fail of affording a plentiful supply of fish. Our botanical party did not complain for want of employment. They observed several plants, common to the eastern and northern islands; and, among other productions, discovered the tree, the bark of which, being easily peeled off, is used in the East-Indies for caulking of ships. The bark is soft, white, and ragged; the wood very hard; the leaves long and narrow, in colour, of a pale deep green, and in smell, a fine aromatic. They found also a species of the passion flower, which, we are informed has never before been known to grow wild any where but in America. Of the land birds, which are very numerous, we saw several to us unknown, as a kind of turtle doves, very beautiful, many small birds, and one resembling a crow, though much smaller, and its feathers are tinged with blue. We endeavoured, but in vain, to obtain the name of the whole island; but we got the names of several districts, with those of their chiefs. Balade was the name of the district we were at, and Tea Baoma the chief. Tea is a title prefixed to the names of all, or most of their great men. The captain's friend, by way of distinction, called him Tea Cook. Their canoes are very clumsy, though somewhat like those of the Friendly Isles. Most of them are double canoes. They are navigated by one or two latten sails. The sail is made of pieces of matting; the ropes of the coarse filaments of the plantain tree. They sail well, but are not calculated for rowing or paddling. They are about thirty feet long, and the deck or platform, about twenty-four in length, and ten in breadth. In our traffic with these people, small nails were of little value, nor did they admire beads, looking-glasses, &c. and even a hatchet was not so valuable as a spike nail. Their women here as well as at Tanna, are very chaste, and we never heard, that one of our people ever obtained the least favour from any one of them. Indeed their ladies would sometimes divert themselves by going a little aside with our gentlemen, as if they meant to be kind, and then would in a moment run away laughing at them. These people deposit their dead in the ground. Some of our gentlemen saw a grave, resembling one of Roman tumuli, in which, they were informed, lay the remains of a chief slain in battle. Round his grave spears, darts, and paddles, were stuck upright in the ground.

On Tuesday, the 13th of September, at sun rise, we weighed, and stood for the same channel we came in by. At half past seven we were in the middle of it, when the isle of Balabea bore W. N. W. As soon as we were clear of the reef, we bore up along the outside of it, steering N. W. by W. as it trended. At noon the island of Balabea bore S. by W. distant about four leagues; and at three o'clock P. M. it bore S. by E. half E. From this place the reef inclined to the N. and then to N. W. Advancing to N. W. we raised more land, so that Mr. Gilbert was mistaken, and did not see the extremity of the coast. At five this land

bore W. by N. half N. distant near seven leagues. On the 14th, the reef still trended N. W. along which we steered, with a light breeze, at E. S. E. At noon we had lost sight of Balabea, and at three o'clock, we ran by a low sandy isle, the space between which, and the north-westernmost land was strewed with shoals. At sun set, we could but just see the land, which bore S. W. by S. about ten leagues distant. No land was seen to the westward of this direction; the reef trended away W. by N. and from the mast-head seemed to terminate in a point; so that every appearance frustrated our expectations, and induced us to believe, that we should soon get round the shoals. On the 15th, seeing neither land nor breakers, we bore away N. W. by W. but the shoals still continuing, we plied up for a clear sea to the S. E. by doing which, we did but just weather the point of the reef we had passed the preceding evening. To render our situation the more dangerous, the wind began to fail us; in the afternoon it fell a calm; and we were left to the mercy of a great swell, setting directly for the reef, which was not more than a league from us. The pinnace and cutter were hoisted out to tow the ship, but they were of little service. At seven o'clock, a light air at N. N. E. kept her head to the sea; and on the 16th, at eleven o'clock A. M. we hoisted in the boats, and made sail to S. E. A tide or current had been in our favour all night, and was the cause (under God) of our getting so unexpectedly clear of the shoals. On Tuesday the 20th, at noon Cape Colnet bore N. 78 deg. W. distant six leagues. From hence the land extended round by the S. to E. S. E. till it was lost in the horizon, and the country appeared variegated with many hills and valleys. We stood in shore till sun-set, when we were about three leagues off. Two small islets lay distant from us five miles, and others lay between us and the shore. The country was mountainous, and had much the same aspect as about Balade. On the 21st, we found ourselves about six leagues from the coast. On the 22d, we stood in for the land, which at noon extended from N. 78 deg. W. to S. 31 deg. half E. round by the S. The coast in this last direction, seemed to trend more to the S. in a lofty promontory, which, in honour of the day, was named Cape Coronation, in latitude 22 deg. 2 min. and in 167 deg. 7 min. 30 sec. E. longitude. On the 23d at day-break, a high point appeared in sight, beyond the cape, which proved to be the S. E. extremity of the coast, to which we gave the name of Queen Charlotte's Foreland. It lies in latitude 22 deg. 16 min. S. and in 167 deg. 14 min. E. longitude. At noon, as we drew near Cape Coronation, we saw in a valley to the south a vast number of elevated objects, from whence a great deal of smoke kept rising all the day. Captain Cook was of opinion these were a singular sort of trees, being, as he thought, too numerous to resemble any thing else. Some low land under the Foreland was entirely covered with them. The wind having veered round to the south, we tacked, and stood off, not thinking it safe to approach the shore in the dark. We stood in again at day-break, on the 24th, and at noon observed in latitude 21 deg. 59 min. 30 sec. Cape Coronation bearing west, southerly, distant seven leagues, and the North Foreland south, 38 deg. W. At sun-set we discovered a low land, lying S. S. E. about seven miles from the Foreland, surrounded with shoals and breakers.

Sunday the 25th, we stood to S. S. W. with a view of getting round the Foreland, but as we advanced, we perceived more low isles, beyond the one already mentioned. We therefore stood to the south, to look for a passage without these. We got a light breeze at 7 o'clock, which enabled us to steer out E. S. E. and to spend the night with less anxiety. On the 26th, we stretched to the S. E. for an island distant six leagues; and on the 27th, we tacked and stood to S. W. with the hopes of weathering it, but we fell two miles short, which obliged us to tack about a mile from the east side of the island, the extremes bearing from N. W. by N. to S. W. the hill W. and some low isles, lying off the S. E. point, S. by W. These last seemed to be connected with the

island by breakers covered with the ele much the appear the captain named th on the S. W. side the Isle of Pines is a deg. 38. min. S. ar made two attempts to with no better succ midnight. On ourselves several lea The coast for the west, we saw a small low isle. nearly a league distan appeared; so that the isles that li di we steered N. V with a view of falli two low islets, ed by breakers, v board; on which of S. W. to g 1 o'clock P. M. more b small head were feen and from the smoo that they might also were in a manner made a short trip to leath, and again had, which we co back we came before these places, and then lation of fine sand, heard. We spent over the known space under the uneasy ap eminent danger. at day-light, which founded, having had e, and at a very lit on the forecassell the kee bow, which We now kept a good thickly, but after all t our part, we must a convinced, that we o the interposition of a was now inclined to q ener, he refused his which had been the concerning which m maintained. Beside the useful to future n miles distant from the mentioned in our jo down to that which proached, we percei neighbouring shoals, thor under its west a see round the poin to windward; but a formed a narrow ch against us, rendered fore anchored in the mile from the islan sent a party on sho who found the tree proper for spars, of The carpenter and altho, to cut down purpose. While t took down the be lands, &c. The h deg. 30 min. E. th Foreland north 14 above it, seen over the most advanced half a point S. dist captain named the l

Island by breakers. The skirts of this island were covered with the elevations before mentioned, which rendered much the appearance of tall pines, and therefore the captain named the island from them. The round part of the S. W. side may be seen fourteen leagues off. This Isle of Pines is about a mile in circuit, in latitude 23 deg. 38. min. S. and in 167 deg. 40 min. E. Having made two attempts to weather the island before sun-set, with no better success than before, we stretched off at midnight. On the 28th, at day break, we found ourselves several leagues to windward of the Isle of Pines. The coast from the S. E. round by the south to the west, we saw was strewed with sand banks, breakers, and small low isles. We ranged the outside of these at nearly a league distance, and as we passed some others appeared; so that they seemed to form a chain extending to the isles that lie off the Foreland. In the afternoon we steered N. W. by W. with a fine gale at east, with a view of falling in with the land; but we discovered two low islets, bearing W. by S. They were covered by breakers, which seemed to join those on our starboard; on which account we found it necessary to haul off S. W. to get clear of them all. At three o'clock P. M. more breakers appeared, which from their small head were seen to extend as far as east-fourth, and from the smoothness of the sea, we conjectured, that they might also extend to the north-east; so that we were in a manner surrounded with them. Having made a short trip to N. N. E. we stood again to the south, and again had the alarming sight of a sea full of shoals, which we could only clear by tacking in the track we came before. We tacked again nearly in the same place, and then anchored in a strong gale, in a bottom of fine sand, having a chain of breakers to the seaward. We spent the night in making short boards over the known space we had traversed in the day; but under the uneasy apprehensions of being in the most imminent danger. This was very evident on the 29th, at day-light, which shewed our fears were not ill-founded, having had breakers continually under our lee, and at a very little distance from us. The people on the fore-castle and lee gangway, saw breakers under the lee bow, which we avoided by quickly tacking. We now kept a good look-out, and managed the ship skillfully, but after all the most prudent endeavours on our part, we must ascribe glory to God, being fully convinced, that we owed our safety and preservation, to the interposition of a Divine Providence. Capt. Cook was now inclined to quit this dangerous coast, but, however, he resolved first to see what those trees were, which had been the subject of our speculations, and concerning which many contrary opinions had been maintained. Besides, he thought the discovery might be useful to future navigators. Being now but a few miles distant from the low islands lying off the Foreland, mentioned in our journal on the 25th instant, we bore down to that which was nearest to us. As we approached, we perceived it was unconnected with the neighbouring shoals, and thought we might get to anchor under its west and lee side. Having hauled therefore round the point of the reef, we attempted to ply to windward; but another reef to the north, which formed a narrow channel, through which ran a current against us, rendered this attempt fruitless. We therefore anchored in thirty-nine fathoms water, about a mile from the island, and having hoisted out the boat, sent a party on shore, accompanied by the botanists, who found the trees to be a sort of spruce pines, very proper for spars, of which we were very much in want. The carpenter and his crew, after dinner, were sent ashore, to cut down such trees as would best answer our purpose. While this work was doing, Capt. Cook took down the bearings of the several circumjacent lands, &c. The hill on the Isle of Pines bore S. 59 deg. 30 min. E. the low point of Queen Charlotte's Foreland north 14 deg. 30 min. W. the high land above it, seen over two low isles, north, 20 deg. W. and the most advanced point of land to the west, bore W. half a point S. distant seven leagues. This point the captain named the Prince of Wales's Foreland. It lies

in latitude 23 deg. 29 min. S. and in 166 deg. 57 min. E. longitude: when first seen above the horizon, by reason of its height, it looks like an island. The true direction of the coast from the Foreland to this point, had been ascertained from several bearings.

On this small Isle, which is not quite a mile in circumference, grew, besides the pines, a variety of other trees, shrubs, and plants; and these having sufficiently employed the botanists during our stay, on this account the captain named the little island Botany Isle. We saw here several pigeons, doves, and water-snakes, different from any we had seen; likewise a hawk of the same kind as our English fishing hawks. A number of fire-places, and some remains of turtle, were signs of people having lately visited this place. In the sand lay the wreck of a canoe, exactly of the same make as those we had seen at Balade; and we now were convinced, that of these pines they made their canoes. Some of these trees measured 30 inches in diameter, were 70 feet long, and would have served very well for a foremast, had we wanted one. As trees of so large a size are the produce of so small a spot, it is reasonable to suppose, that larger ones are the growth of the main. This discovery may be valuable to future navigators; for except New Zealand, we know of no island in the Pacific ocean, where a ship can be supplied with a mast or yard, were they ever so much distressed for want of one. This was the opinion of our carpenter, who was both mast-maker and shipwright in Deptford-yard. These trees shoot out their branches smaller and shorter than other pines, so that when wrought for use their knots disappear. We observed that the largest had the shortest branches, and were crowned at the top with a head like a bush. The wood is white, close grained, tough, yet light. Turpentine had oozed out of most of the trees, which the sun had formed into rosin. This was found adhering to the trunks, and laying about the roots. The seeds are produced in cones. We found here another small tree or shrub, of the spruce fir kind: also a kind of scurvy-grass, and a plant, which when boiled, eat like spinnage. The purpose being answered for which we landed on this island, the captain determined not to hazard the ship down to leeward, but to try to get to the southward of the shoals. The extent of this S. W. coast had been already pretty well determined; a more accurate survey might be attended with great risk and many dangers; it was too late to set up and employ the frame of the little vessel we had on board, and should the Resolution be hemmed in, we might by that means lose the proper season for getting to the south; these reasons induced the Captain to make some trips to weather the shoals to the leeward of Botany Isle. But when this was thought to be effected,

On Friday the 30th, at three o'clock P. M. it fell calm, the swell, assisted by the current, set us fast towards the breakers, which were yet in sight to the S. W. but at ten o'clock a breeze springing up, we steered E. S. E. not venturing farther south till day light.

On Saturday, October the 1st, we had a very strong wind at S. S. W. attended by a great sea, so that we had reason to rejoice at having got clear of the shoals before this gale overtook us. We were now obliged to stretch to the S. E. and at noon were out of sight of land.

On the 2d, in the afternoon, we had little wind, and a great swell; but at eleven, a fresh breeze springing up, we stood to the south. We were now in the latitude of 23 deg. 18 min. and in 169 deg. 49 min. E. longitude.

On the 3d, at eight o'clock A. M. we had a strong gale with squalls from the S. W. and the Captain laid aside all thoughts of returning to the land we had left. Nor could such an attempt be thought a prudent one, when we consider, that we had a vast ocean yet to explore to the south; that the ship was already in want of necessary stores; that summer was approaching very fast, and that any considerable accident might detain us from pursuing the great object of this voyage another year. Thus necessity compelled us to leave a coast, for the first time, which we had discovered, but not fully explored.

explored. The captain named it New Caledonia, and in his opinion, it is, next to New Zealand, the largest island in the South Pacific Ocean. The extent is from latitude 19 deg. 37 min. to 22 deg. 30 min. S. and from longitude 163 deg. 37 min. to 170 deg. 14 min. E. It lies nearly N. W. half W. and S. E. half E. and is about 87 leagues long, but its breadth does not anywhere exceed 10 leagues. It here must be noted, that in the extent given to this island, is included the broken or unconnected lands to the N. W.

On Thursday the 6th, we continued our course to New Zealand, with this view we failed S. S. E. having a blowing fresh gale, but at noon it fell calm. At this time we found ourselves by observation, in latitude 27 deg. 50 min. S. and in 171 deg. 43 min. E. longitude. During the calm, which continued all this day, the carpenters were employed in caulking the decks. This was done with varnish of pine, covered with coral sand, as they had neither pitch, tar, nor rosin left. The experiment with respect to the cement, far exceeded their expectations. In the afternoon, two albatrosses were shot, which, at this time, we thought equally good as geese.

On the 7th a breeze sprung up, and fixed at S. E. by S. The day following we had a gentle gale, attended with fine weather. On the 9th we were in latitude 28 deg. 25 min. and in 170 deg. 26 min. E. longitude. In the evening, Mr. Cooper struck a porpoise. It was six feet long, and a female, called by naturalists the dolphin of the antients, and which differs from the common porpoise in the head and jaw, which are long and pointed. This had 88 teeth in each jaw. It was first soaked in water, then roasted, broiled, and fried. To us who had long subsisted on salt meat, it was more than palatable; and we thought the halibut, and lean flesh, a delicious feast.

On the 10th we discovered land, situated in latitude 29 deg. 2 min. 30 sec. S. and in 168 deg. 16 min. E. longitude. Capt. Cook called it Norfolk Island, in honour of the Howard family, who have the title of the duke of Norfolk. We anchored here in 22 fathoms water, on a bank of coral sand, mixed with broken shells. After dinner, a party of us embarked in two boats, and landed on the island behind some large rocks. It was uninhabited, and we were undoubtedly the first who ever set foot upon it. We observed many trees and plants common to New Zealand, particularly the flax plant, which grows very luxuriant here. We found in great abundance the spruce pine trees, straight and tall, and many of them as thick as two men could fathom. The soil of this island is rich and deep, the woods perfectly clear from underwood, and for about 200 yards from the shore, the ground is covered with shrubs and plants. We found here many sea and land fowl, of the same kind as in New Zealand; likewise cabbage-palm, wood-forrel, fow-thistle, and samphire. The cabbage-trees were not thicker than a man's leg, and from 10 to 20 feet high. The cabbage, each tree producing but one, is at the top, inclosed in the stem. This vegetable is not only wholesome, but exceedingly palatable; and some excellent fish we caught made a luxurious entertainment.

On Tuesday the 11th, we failed from Norfolk Island, which we weathered, having stretched to S. S. W. We found the coast bounded with rocky cliffs and banks of coral sand. On the south side lie two isles, which serve as roosting and breeding places, for white boobies, gulls, tern, &c. A bank of coral sand and shells, surrounds the isle, and extends, especially southward, seven leagues off. Our intention at this time was to refresh the crew, and repair the ship, in Queen Charlotte's Sound.

On Monday the 17th, we had in view Mount Egmont, perpetually covered with snow, bearing S. E. half E. distant about eight leagues. The wind now blew a fresh gale, with which we steered S. S. E. for Queen Charlotte's Sound. The wind at last increased in such a manner, that we could carry no more sail than the two courses, and two close-reefed topails: under these we steered for Cape Stevens, which we made at 11 o'clock at night.

On the 18th, we made a trip to the north, and boated away for the sound. We hauled round Point Jackson at nine A. M. and at 11 o'clock anchored before Shag Cove, the wind and tide not permitting us to get further. Capt. Cook in the afternoon went ashore, and looked for the bottle, with the memorandum, which he had when last here, but it was taken away by some person or other. The seine was hauled twice and only five fish caught: but several birds were shot, and the nest of some shags were robbed of their young ones.

On the 19th, the ship was warped into the cove and moored. The sails were unbent, several of the rigging having been much damaged in the late gale. The main and fore courses were condemned, and the topmasts were struck and unrigged. The forge was set up and tents erected on shore for the reception of a guard &c. Plenty of vegetables were gathered for the refreshment of the crew, which were boiled every morning with oatmeal and portable broth for breakfast. From some circumstances, as cutting down trees with axes, and a place found where an observatory had been set up in our absence, we had no doubt but the Adventure had been in this cove since we left it.

On the 20th our men began to caulk the ship's sides, and on Saturday the 22d, the captain accompanied by the botanists went to visit our gardens in Motu, which we found had been wholly neglected by those of the natives to whom we had given them in charge; nor had any care or cultivation been bestowed on them. Nevertheless, the soil seemed to agree well with the plants, for many of them were in a flourishing condition. Not having hitherto seen any of the natives, we made a fire on the land, hoping this would induce them to come down to us.

On the 24th, we saw two canoes coming down the sound, which, when the ship was seen by the people retired behind a point on the west-side. After breakfast we went in search of them, and having fired several birds, the report of our pieces gave notice of our being near, and they discovered themselves by hallooing to us in Shag Cove; but when we landed, and drew near to their habitations, they all fled, except two men, who maintained their ground, with their weapons in their hands. The moment we landed they knew us, and their fears subsided. Those who had fled returned from the woods, embraced us over and over again, and expressed their joy at seeing us, by jumping and dancing in a frantic manner; but the men would not suffer some women we saw at a distance to come near us. We made them presents of hatchets and knives, and in return they gave us a quantity of fish they had just caught. The next morning they brought us more fish, which they bartered for Otaheitean cloth. We asked them on what account they were afraid of us, and all that was become of our old friends? To these questions we got no satisfactory answers; but they talked much about killing, which was variously understood by us.

On Wednesday the 26th, some of the natives went to the tents, and told our people, that a ship like ours had lately been lost, that some of the men landed at Vanna Aroa, near Terrawhitte, on the other side the strait; that a dispute happened between them and the natives; that several of the latter were shot; and that the natives got the better of them when they could fire no longer, and both killed and ate them. One of the relaters of this strange tale, said it was 20 or 30 days ago; but another said it was two moons since and described, as well as he could, in what manner the ship was beat to pieces. The following day they told the same story to others, which made the captain, and indeed all of us, very uneasy about the Adventure; but when the captain enquired himself, and endeavoured to come at the truth of these reports, the very people who raised them, denied every syllable of what they had said, and seemed wholly ignorant of the matter; so that we began to think the whole relation had reference only to their own people and boats. On the 28th, we again went on shore, but found no appearance of the hogs and fowls we had left behind. Having been a shooting to the west bay, in our return we got some fish from the natives

atives for a few tribes of the party to the woods. We find small birds. O. remarkable that all the Tuesday, the 1st number of strangers, principal article of green stone, some of and ever seen. On the botanizing party, that Capt. Fur to be a boar we could seeing our mid-ident afforded us will be stocked with Pickersgill was told, of a ship had cleared, though mar by them. On the plentiful supply of the morning Capt. G man, and the Messin, and proceeded a passage that way, met by some fishermen passage by the head men in a canoe confirming what the understand, that the We therefore laid a head of the sound, on the S. E. side the isle of Mortuaru called Kotieghenooe the natives. Their attendants had whom we were received people encouraged view. We therefore of the sea, E. of several fine covers we found it open, into the strait. A few days after another setting P. M. this tide ceased. The outlet lies S. E. Terrawhitte. A line thirteen fathoms we deemed necessary to is or out of this cove return on board before other necessary observations strong hold, about on the north side, the inhabitants made without paying any of our way for the ten o'clock, bringing among which last we some kind as those these, and several of particular name for On Sunday, the

The Departure of the *Endea* to Christmas and an historical passage through the Geographical Observations on the *St. James* Island—Na

THURSDAY, and sailed from New Zealand, having No. 21.

atives for a few trifling presents. As we came back, some of the party thought they heard a pig squeak in the woods. We shot this day a good many wild fowl and small birds. On the 31st, it was somewhat remarkable that all the natives left us.

Tuesday, the 1st of November, we were visited by a number of strangers, who came from up the sound. The principal article of trade they brought with them was green stone, some of which were the largest pieces we had ever seen. On the 3d, a large black sow was seen by the botanizing party, which we discovered to be the same that Capt. Furneaux left behind him. Supposing it to be a boar we carried over to Long Island a sow, but seeing our mistake, we brought her back. This incident afforded us some hopes, that this island in time will be stocked with such useful animals. Lieutenant Packer's ill was told the same story by one of the natives, of a ship having been lost, but the man declared, though many people were killed, it was not by them. On the 5th, we obtained a seasonable and plentiful supply of fish from our old friends. Early in the morning Capt. Cook, accompanied by Mr. Sparrman, and the Messrs. Forsters, embarked in the pinnace, and proceeded up the sound in order to discover a passage that way out to sea by the S. E. We were met by some fishermen, who all declared, there was no passage by the head of the sound; and soon after four men in a canoe concurred in the same opinion, confirming what the others had said, but they gave us to understand, that there was such a passage to the east.

We therefore laid aside our first design of going to the head of the sound, and proceeded to this arm of the sea, on the S. E. side, which is about five leagues above the site of Mortuara. Within the entrance, at a place called Kotieghnooe, we came to a large settlement of the natives. Their chief, Tringo-bohee, and some of his attendants had lately been on board the ship, by whom we were received with great civility; and these people encouraged us to pursue the object we had in view. We therefore continued our course down this arm of the sea, E. N. E. and E. by N. having a view of several fine coves, which we passed, and at length we found it open, by a channel about a mile wide, into the strait. A strong tide ran out, and we had observed another setting down the arm. Near four o'clock P. M. this tide ceased, and was succeeded by the flood. The outlet lies S. E. by E. and N. W. by W. from Terrawhitte. A little within the entrance, we found thirteen fathoms water: but, from its situation, it seemed necessary to have a trading wind either to go in or out of this channel; but having determined to return on board before night, we had not time to make other necessary observations. We saw a Hippah, or strong hold, about two miles within the entrance, built on the north side, which we omitted visiting, though the inhabitants made signs for us to come on shore; but, without paying any regard to them, we made the best of our way for the ship, and returned on board about ten o'clock, bringing with us a few fish and birds, among which last were some ducks we had shot, of the same kind as those in Dusky Bay. The natives knew these, and several other sorts, by the drawings, and had a particular name for each.

On Sunday, the 6th, our old friends returned, and

took up their abode near the tents. An old man, named Pedero, made Capt. Cook a present of a staff of honour, such as the chiefs carry; and, in return, the captain dressed him up in a suit of old cloaths, which made him very happy. He had a fine person, and his colour only distinguished him from an European. We enquired of him and his companion, if the Adventure had been there during our absence, and they gave us to understand, that she arrived a little time after our departure; that she staid about twenty days, and had been gone ten moons; and that neither she, nor any other ship, had been stranded on the coast. This account made us easy respecting the Adventure, but did not wholly remove our suspicions of some misfortune having happened to strangers. This day we went with a number of hands, in order to catch the sow and put her to boar, but we returned without seeing her. Pedero dined with us, partook heartily of every thing set before him, and drank more wine than any one at table, without being in the least intoxicated.

On the 8th, we put a boar, a sow, and two pigs on shore, near Cannibal Cove; so that we hope all our repeated endeavours to stock this country will not prove fruitless. We found a hen's egg a few days ago, and therefore believe, that some of the cocks and hens we left here are still in being. On the 9th, we unmoored, and shifted our station farther out the cove, for the more ready getting to sea; but at present, the caulkers had not finished the sides of the ship, and we could not sail till this work was completed. Our friends brought us a large supply of fish, and, in return, we gave Pedero a large empty oil jar, with which he seemed highly delighted. We never saw any of our presents after they received them, and cannot say whether they gave them away, or what they did with them; but we observed, every time we visited them, they were as much in want of hatchets, nails, &c. as if we had not bestowed any upon them. Notwithstanding these people are cannibals, they are of a good disposition, and have not a little humanity. We have before observed the inconveniencies attending them for a want of union among themselves; and we are persuaded, though upon the whole very numerous, they are under no form of government. The head of each tribe, or family, is respected; respect may command obedience; but we are inclined to think, not one among them has either a right or power to enforce it. Very few, we observed, paid any regard to the words or actions of Tringo-bohee, though he was represented to us as a chief of some note. In the afternoon we went into one of the coves; where, upon landing, we found two families employed in different manners: some were making mats, others were sleeping; some were roasting fish and roots; and one girl was employed in heating stones, which she took out of the fire as fast as they were hot, and gave them to an old woman, who sat in the hut. The old woman placed them one upon another, laid over them some green celery, and over all a coarse mat; she then squatted herself down on the top of the heap, and sat very close. Probably this operation might be intended as a cure for some disorder, to be effected by the steams arising from the green celery, and we perceived the woman seemed very sickly.

On Sunday, the 6th, our old friends returned, and

took up their abode near the tents. An old man, named Pedero, made Capt. Cook a present of a staff of honour, such as the chiefs carry; and, in return, the captain dressed him up in a suit of old cloaths, which made him very happy. He had a fine person, and his colour only distinguished him from an European. We enquired of him and his companion, if the Adventure had been there during our absence, and they gave us to understand, that she arrived a little time after our departure; that she staid about twenty days, and had been gone ten moons; and that neither she, nor any other ship, had been stranded on the coast. This account made us easy respecting the Adventure, but did not wholly remove our suspicions of some misfortune having happened to strangers. This day we went with a number of hands, in order to catch the sow and put her to boar, but we returned without seeing her. Pedero dined with us, partook heartily of every thing set before him, and drank more wine than any one at table, without being in the least intoxicated.

On the 8th, we put a boar, a sow, and two pigs on shore, near Cannibal Cove; so that we hope all our repeated endeavours to stock this country will not prove fruitless. We found a hen's egg a few days ago, and therefore believe, that some of the cocks and hens we left here are still in being. On the 9th, we unmoored, and shifted our station farther out the cove, for the more ready getting to sea; but at present, the caulkers had not finished the sides of the ship, and we could not sail till this work was completed. Our friends brought us a large supply of fish, and, in return, we gave Pedero a large empty oil jar, with which he seemed highly delighted. We never saw any of our presents after they received them, and cannot say whether they gave them away, or what they did with them; but we observed, every time we visited them, they were as much in want of hatchets, nails, &c. as if we had not bestowed any upon them. Notwithstanding these people are cannibals, they are of a good disposition, and have not a little humanity. We have before observed the inconveniencies attending them for a want of union among themselves; and we are persuaded, though upon the whole very numerous, they are under no form of government. The head of each tribe, or family, is respected; respect may command obedience; but we are inclined to think, not one among them has either a right or power to enforce it. Very few, we observed, paid any regard to the words or actions of Tringo-bohee, though he was represented to us as a chief of some note. In the afternoon we went into one of the coves; where, upon landing, we found two families employed in different manners: some were making mats, others were sleeping; some were roasting fish and roots; and one girl was employed in heating stones, which she took out of the fire as fast as they were hot, and gave them to an old woman, who sat in the hut. The old woman placed them one upon another, laid over them some green celery, and over all a coarse mat; she then squatted herself down on the top of the heap, and sat very close. Probably this operation might be intended as a cure for some disorder, to be effected by the steams arising from the green celery, and we perceived the woman seemed very sickly.

On Sunday, the 6th, our old friends returned, and

took up their abode near the tents. An old man, named Pedero, made Capt. Cook a present of a staff of honour, such as the chiefs carry; and, in return, the captain dressed him up in a suit of old cloaths, which made him very happy. He had a fine person, and his colour only distinguished him from an European. We enquired of him and his companion, if the Adventure had been there during our absence, and they gave us to understand, that she arrived a little time after our departure; that she staid about twenty days, and had been gone ten moons; and that neither she, nor any other ship, had been stranded on the coast. This account made us easy respecting the Adventure, but did not wholly remove our suspicions of some misfortune having happened to strangers. This day we went with a number of hands, in order to catch the sow and put her to boar, but we returned without seeing her. Pedero dined with us, partook heartily of every thing set before him, and drank more wine than any one at table, without being in the least intoxicated.

On the 8th, we put a boar, a sow, and two pigs on shore, near Cannibal Cove; so that we hope all our repeated endeavours to stock this country will not prove fruitless. We found a hen's egg a few days ago, and therefore believe, that some of the cocks and hens we left here are still in being. On the 9th, we unmoored, and shifted our station farther out the cove, for the more ready getting to sea; but at present, the caulkers had not finished the sides of the ship, and we could not sail till this work was completed. Our friends brought us a large supply of fish, and, in return, we gave Pedero a large empty oil jar, with which he seemed highly delighted. We never saw any of our presents after they received them, and cannot say whether they gave them away, or what they did with them; but we observed, every time we visited them, they were as much in want of hatchets, nails, &c. as if we had not bestowed any upon them. Notwithstanding these people are cannibals, they are of a good disposition, and have not a little humanity. We have before observed the inconveniencies attending them for a want of union among themselves; and we are persuaded, though upon the whole very numerous, they are under no form of government. The head of each tribe, or family, is respected; respect may command obedience; but we are inclined to think, not one among them has either a right or power to enforce it. Very few, we observed, paid any regard to the words or actions of Tringo-bohee, though he was represented to us as a chief of some note. In the afternoon we went into one of the coves; where, upon landing, we found two families employed in different manners: some were making mats, others were sleeping; some were roasting fish and roots; and one girl was employed in heating stones, which she took out of the fire as fast as they were hot, and gave them to an old woman, who sat in the hut. The old woman placed them one upon another, laid over them some green celery, and over all a coarse mat; she then squatted herself down on the top of the heap, and sat very close. Probably this operation might be intended as a cure for some disorder, to be effected by the steams arising from the green celery, and we perceived the woman seemed very sickly.

On Sunday, the 6th, our old friends returned, and

took up their abode near the tents. An old man, named Pedero, made Capt. Cook a present of a staff of honour, such as the chiefs carry; and, in return, the captain dressed him up in a suit of old cloaths, which made him very happy. He had a fine person, and his colour only distinguished him from an European. We enquired of him and his companion, if the Adventure had been there during our absence, and they gave us to understand, that she arrived a little time after our departure; that she staid about twenty days, and had been gone ten moons; and that neither she, nor any other ship, had been stranded on the coast. This account made us easy respecting the Adventure, but did not wholly remove our suspicions of some misfortune having happened to strangers. This day we went with a number of hands, in order to catch the sow and put her to boar, but we returned without seeing her. Pedero dined with us, partook heartily of every thing set before him, and drank more wine than any one at table, without being in the least intoxicated.

On the 8th, we put a boar, a sow, and two pigs on shore, near Cannibal Cove; so that we hope all our repeated endeavours to stock this country will not prove fruitless. We found a hen's egg a few days ago, and therefore believe, that some of the cocks and hens we left here are still in being. On the 9th, we unmoored, and shifted our station farther out the cove, for the more ready getting to sea; but at present, the caulkers had not finished the sides of the ship, and we could not sail till this work was completed. Our friends brought us a large supply of fish, and, in return, we gave Pedero a large empty oil jar, with which he seemed highly delighted. We never saw any of our presents after they received them, and cannot say whether they gave them away, or what they did with them; but we observed, every time we visited them, they were as much in want of hatchets, nails, &c. as if we had not bestowed any upon them. Notwithstanding these people are cannibals, they are of a good disposition, and have not a little humanity. We have before observed the inconveniencies attending them for a want of union among themselves; and we are persuaded, though upon the whole very numerous, they are under no form of government. The head of each tribe, or family, is respected; respect may command obedience; but we are inclined to think, not one among them has either a right or power to enforce it. Very few, we observed, paid any regard to the words or actions of Tringo-bohee, though he was represented to us as a chief of some note. In the afternoon we went into one of the coves; where, upon landing, we found two families employed in different manners: some were making mats, others were sleeping; some were roasting fish and roots; and one girl was employed in heating stones, which she took out of the fire as fast as they were hot, and gave them to an old woman, who sat in the hut. The old woman placed them one upon another, laid over them some green celery, and over all a coarse mat; she then squatted herself down on the top of the heap, and sat very close. Probably this operation might be intended as a cure for some disorder, to be effected by the steams arising from the green celery, and we perceived the woman seemed very sickly.

C H A P. VIII.

The Departure of the Resolution from New Zealand—Her passage from hence to Terra del Fuego—The run from Cape Desada to Christmas Sound—The coast described—Incidents and transactions in the Sound—A description of the country, and an historical account of the inhabitants—The Resolution departs from Christmas Sound—Doubles Cape Horn—Her passage through Strait Le Maire, and round Staten Land—A harbour in this isle discovered—The coasts described—Geographical Observations—Remarks on islands, and the animals found in them, near Staten Land—Departure from Staten Land—Nautical observations—The island of Georgia discovered, and a descriptive account of the same.

THURSDAY, Nov. 19, at day-break, we weighed anchor, and sailed from Queen Charlotte's Sound, in New Zealand, having a fine breeze at W. N. W. All

our sails being set, we got round the Two Brothers, and stretched for Cape Campbell, at the S. W. entrance of the strait. We passed this at four o'clock P. M. distant

five leagues, and then steered S. S. E. half E. On the 11th, at seven o'clock P. M. Cape Palliser bore N. half W. distant sixteen leagues, from which Cape, for the third time, we took our departure. We now steered S. by E. in order to get into the latitude of 54 or 55 deg. Capt. Cook's intention being to cross this vast ocean in these parallels, hoping by this course to pass over those parts, which, the preceding summer, were left unexplored. On the 12th, A. M. we were in latitude 43 deg. 13 min. 30 sec. S. and in 176 deg. 41 min. E. longitude, when we saw an uncommon fish of the whale kind; and, in the afternoon, the Pintado Peterels began to appear. On the 13th, at seven in the evening, we hauled up towards a fog bank, which we took for land; after which we steered S. E. by S. and saw a seal. At noon, by observation, we found our latitude to be 44 deg. 25 min. S. longitude 177 deg. 31 min. E. On the 14th, we saw another seal in latitude 45 deg. 54 min. and 179 deg. 29 min. E. long. On the 15th, having passed the great meridian of 180 deg. E. which divides the globe into two equal parts, we began to reckon our longitude west of Greenwich. At noon our latitude observed was 49 deg. 33 min. longitude 175 deg. 31 min. W. On Thursday the 17th, we saw a seal, some penguins, and pieces of sea weed. On the 19th we were in latitude 53 deg. 43 min. and on the 20th, at noon, in latitude 54 deg. 8 min. longitude 162 deg. 18 min. W. Monday, the 21st, we steered S. E. by S. and at noon we saw abundance of blue peterels, in latitude 55 deg. 31 min. longitude 160 deg. 29 min. On the 22d, at noon, our latitude by observation was 55 deg. 48 min. longitude 156 deg. 56 min. W. In the afternoon, having a light breeze at S. S. E. we steered east, northerly; and, in the night, was a faint appearance of the Aurora Australis. On the 23d, we were in latitude 55 deg. 46 min. S. longitude 156 deg. 13 min. W. when a fresh gale blew from the west, and we steered now E. half N. On the 26th, we were in latitude 55 deg. 8 min. S. and in 148 deg. 10 min. W. longitude.

On Sunday, the 27th, we steered east, having a steady fresh gale; and at noon, were in latitude 55 deg. 6 min. S. and in 138 deg. 56 min. W. longitude. In this parallel, not a hope remained of finding any more land in the southern Pacific Ocean. We resolved therefore to steer for the west entrance of the Straights of Maghellan, with a view of coasting the south side of Terra del Fuego, round Cape Horn, to the Strait Le Maire. We thought this track might be an advantage to navigation and geography, as the world is little acquainted with that shore. In the afternoon we had squally weather, which carried away our top-gallant-mast. On the 28th A. M. the bolt rope of the main top-sail broke, whereby the sail was split. The ropes; to our square sails especially, are not of a size and strength sufficient to wear out the canvas. At noon we were in latitude 55 deg. 20 min. S. and in 134 deg. 16 min. W. longitude. On the 29th, the wind abated; and on the 30th, at 8 o'clock P. M. the wind veering to N. E. we tacked, and stood to E. S. E. We were now in latitude 55 deg. 22 min. S. and in 128 deg. 45 min. W. longitude. Several albatrosses and peterels were seen.

On Thursday, the 1st of December, at three o'clock P. M. it fell a calm, but at about seven, we got a wind at S. E. with which we stood N. E. On the 5th, a fine gale at south, enabled us to steer east, with very little deviation to the north; and the wind now altering to S. W. and blowing a steady gale, we continued to steer east, inclining a little to south. At six o'clock in the evening, we were in latitude 53 deg. 8 min. and in 115 deg. 58 min. W. longitude. On the 6th, we had some snow showers; and on Wednesday, the 7th, a fine pleasant gale, with showers of rain. On the 9th, at noon, we found ourselves by observation, in latitude 53 deg. 37 min. and in 103 deg. 44 min. west longitude. The wind veered now to N. E. and afterwards came insensibly round to the south by the E. and S. E. On the 10th we passed a small bed of sea weed, in latitude 54 deg. longitude 102 deg. 7 min. W. On the 11th, we

steered E. half a point N. and on the 12th, at six in the evening, we were in latitude 53 deg. 35 min. longitude 95 deg. 52 min. W. Many and various sorts of albatrosses were hovering about the ship. On Monday the 12th, we had a calm which continued till midnight, when a breeze from the south fixing at west, we steered east. On the 14th, in the morning, we found the variation of the compass to be 13 deg. 25 min. E. in latitude 53 deg. 25 min. longitude 87 deg. 53 min. W. which increased in such a manner, that on the 15th in the latitude of 53 deg. 30 min. longitude 82 deg. 23 min. W. it was 170 E. This day we saw a penguin and on the 16th, a seal, and some diving peterels. On Saturday the 17th, the variation increased to 21 deg. 38 min. being in latitude 53 deg. 16 min. S. and in 75 deg. 9 min. west longitude. All this day we steered east by north, and east half north, under all the sail we could carry, in hopes of seeing the land before night; but not making it till ten o'clock, we steered east, in order to make sure of falling in with Cape Desseada. At midnight we made the land, extending from E. by N. to E. by S. about six leagues distant; upon which we brought to with the ship's head to the south. Having founded, we found seventy-five fathoms water the bottom good. The land before us we concluded to be the west coast of Terra del Fuego, near the west entrance of the Straights of Maghellan. This being the first run made by Capt. Cook in a high southern latitude, we have been very particular in noting all the material circumstances we could collect together. In this course the weather had been neither unusually stormy, nor cold. Before we arrived in the latitude of 50 deg. the mercury in the thermometer fell gradually from sixty to fifty; and in the latitude of 55 deg. it was generally between forty-seven and forty-five once or twice it fell to forty-three. These observations were made at noon. We had now entirely left the southern Pacific Ocean, and we trust the world will give our captain some credit for having well explored the same; nor could, in our opinion, more have been done towards obtaining that end, in one voyage than has been effected in this. We must not omit to observe, that soon after we left New Zealand, Mr. Wales contrived, and fixed up an instrument, which measured with great accuracy, the angle the ship rolled in, when sailing large, and in a great sea; and that in which she lay down, or heeled, when falling upon wind. The greatest angle he observed the Resolution to roll, the sea at the time not being unusually high was 38 deg.

On Sunday, the 18th, we made sail, and steered S. E. by E. along the coast. Near a league from the main is a high ragged isle, which we called Landfall. At four o'clock A. M. we were N. and S. of the high land of Cape Desseada, distant nine leagues; but few of the low rocks laid to lie off it. This cape lies in latitude 53 deg. S. and in 74 deg. 40 min. W. longitude. We continued to range the coast, and at eleven o'clock, we passed a projecting point, having a round surface; and of considerable height, to which we gave the name of Cape Gloucester. It has the appearance of an island, and is situated S. S. E. half E. seventeen leagues from the isle of Landfall. Between these the coast forms two bays, strewed with rocky islets, rocks and breakers. The coast appeared unconnected, as if formed of a number of islands. The land is very mountainous, rocky, and barren, but in some places covered with tufts of wood, and patches of snow. From Cape Gloucester, the direction of the coast is nearly S. E. but to Cape Noir, for which we steered, the course is S. S. E. At noon Cape Gloucester bore north distant eight miles, and the most advanced point of land bore S. E. by S. distant seven leagues. At three o'clock we passed Cape Noir, situated in latitude 53 deg. 30 min. S. and in 73 deg. 39 min. W. longitude. When at a distance, the land of the cape appeared to be an island disjoined, but upon a nearer approach we found it connected by a low neck of land. Two rocks lie at the point of the Cape, the one pointed like a sugar-loaf, the other not so high, with a rounder face

and two leagues from the Cape are two rocky points, S. by E. After passing these last, we crossed the great bay of St. Barbara, steering E. S. E. The land at the bottom of it, which we just perceived, could not be less than seven leagues off. We observed a space, in the direction of E. N. E. from Cape Noir, where no land was to be seen: this may be the channel of St. Barbara, which opens into the Straights of Maghellen, as mentioned by Frazier; with whose description we found the cape to agree very well.

On the 19th, at two o'clock A. M. we passed the S. E. point of the bay of St. Barbara, which the Captain called Cape Desolation, on account of the country near it, being the most desolate and barren that ever was seen. It lies in latitude 54 deg. 55 min. S. and in 72 deg. 12 min. W. longitude. To the east of the Cape about four leagues, and at the mouth of a deep inlet, is a pretty large island, and some others less considerable. In latitude 55 deg. 20 min. S. we were three leagues from an island, which Capt. Cook named Gilbert Isle, after his master. Its surface is composed of several unequal peaked rocks, nearly of the same height with the rest of the coast. S. E. of this isle are breakers, and some smaller islands. Scarcely any prospect can appear with a more barren and savage aspect, than the whole of this country; which is composed of rocky mountains, without a single trace of vegetation to enliven or vary the scene. The mountains of the coast terminate in horrible precipices, whose craggy summits tower to a vast height; and those that are inland are covered with snow; but the former are not. The first we judged to belong to the main of Terra del Fuego; and the last to be islands, which to appearance formed a gulf. Having made a short trip to the south, we stood for land, the nearest point of which, in sight, bore off ten leagues. It is a lofty promontory, E. S. E. from Gilbert Isle, in latitude 55 deg. 26 min. S. and 70 deg. 25 min. W. longitude. From our present point of view, it terminated in two high towers, and between them, a hill shaped like a sugar loaf. To this we gave the name of York Minister. To the westward of this head land, about two leagues, we discovered a large inlet, the west point of which we fetched in with; and necked in 41 fathoms water, not more than half a league from the shore. To the westward of this inlet we saw another, with several islands at its entrance.

On Tuesday the 20th, we perceived the ship to drive off the shore out to sea, which we attributed to a current, for by the melting of the snow, the inland waters will occasion a stream to run out of most of these inlets. In the evening, a breeze springing up at E. by S. we stood in for the land, being desirous of entering one of the many ports, in order to take a view of the country, and to recruit our stock of wood and water. In standing in for an opening, apparently on the east side of York Minister, we founded in 40 and 60 fathoms water. Our last soundings were nearly between the two points that form the entrance to the inlet, which we observed to branch out into two arms. We stood for that to the east, as being clear of islets; but upon sounding, found no bottom with a line of 120 fathoms. In this disagreeable situation a breeze springing up, our captain resolved to stand up the inlet; but upon approaching, our safety depended on casting anchor, we therefore continued sounding, but always to no notification, in an unfathomable depth. We were hauled up under the east-side of the land, and finding a small cove, sent the boat a-head to sound, while we kept with the ship as near the shore as possible. The boat soon returned with the information we wished for, and we thought ourselves happy, when we had anchored in 30 fathoms, in a bottom of sand and broken shells.

On the 21st, a party was sent out with two boats, to look for a more secure station. They found a cove above the point under which the ship lay, in which was a succeeding good anchorage. At the head of it was a sandy beach, a valley covered with wood, and a stream of fresh water; conveniences more favourable than we should expect would be found in such a place. Here

also they shot three geese out of four. Orders were now dispatched by Lieut. Clerke to remove the ship into this place, and we proceeded with Capt. Cook in the other boat, farther up the inlet. We now discovered, that the land we were under, which disjoined the two arms, as mentioned before, was an island, at the north end of which the two channels united. We returned on board, and found every thing in readiness to weigh; which was done, and all the boats sent out to tow the ship round the point; but a light breeze springing up, we were obliged to drop the anchor again, lest the ship should fall upon the point. However, we soon after got round this under our stay-sails, and anchored in 20 fathoms water. We were now shut in from the sea by the point above-mentioned, which was in one with the extremity of the inlet to the east. Our distance from shore was not more than a third of a mile; and islets off the next point above us, covered the ship from the N. W. from which quarter the wind had the greatest force. All hands were immediately employed, some to clear a place to fill water; some to cut wood, and others to pitch a tent, for the reception of a guard, and Mr. Wales could find no better station for his observatory than the top of a rock, not exceeding nine feet over.

On Thursday the 22d, two parties were sent out, one to examine and draw a sketch of the channel, on the other side of the island, and the Captain, attended by the botanists, to survey the northern side of the sound. In our way to this latter place, we landed on the point of a low isle covered with herbage, several spots of which had been lately burnt; these, with a hut we discovered, were signs that people were in the neighbourhood. From hence we proceeded round the east end of Burnt Island, over to what we supposed to be the main land of Terra del Fuego, where we discovered a fine harbour, surrounded by high rocks, down which glided many purling streams, and at their feet were some tufts of trees, very fit for fuel. Capt. Cook named this harbour the Devil's Bafon. It is divided into two parts, an inner and an outer one; and the communication between them is by a narrow channel five fathoms deep. We found at one time 17 in the outer bafon, and 23 in the inner one. This last is shaded from the sun in his meridian splendor, and, though very secure, is intolerably gloomy. The outer harbour has not so much of this inconvenience, is equally safe, and rather more commodious. It lies about a mile distant from the east end of Burnt Island, in the direction north. We discovered other harbours to the west of this, and found wood for fuel, and fresh water, in or near them all. Before one was a stream of fresh water, which came out of a large lake, continually supplied by a falling cascade. The whole country is a barren rock, except the fire wood which grows here, and what we saw of it affords no other vegetation of any kind. But to compensate for this dreary scene of sterility, about the sea coast, the all-bountiful God of nature has scattered many large and small, but fruitful low islands, the soil of which is a black rotten turf, composed of decayed vegetables. On one of these we saw several huts that had lately been inhabited. Near them was a good deal of celery; we put as much as we could conveniently stow in our boat, and at seven o'clock in the evening we returned on board. During our absence a fatal accident had befallen one of our marines, who had not been seen since 11 o'clock the preceding night. We supposed he had fallen overboard, and was drowned. In this excursion we shot only one duck, three snags, and about the same number of rails or sea-pies. The other party, among whom were Lieutenants Clerke and Pickersgill, returned on board some hours before us. On the west side of the outer channel, they discovered a large harbour and one smaller, of both which they took sketches.

On the 23d, Lieut. Pickersgill went out to examine the east side of the sound, while the Captain proceeded in the pinnace to the west-side, with a view of going round the island under which the ship lay, which he called Shag Island, and in order to take a survey of the

the passage leading to the harbours our two lieutenants had discovered the day before. If coming from sea, it is necessary to leave all the rocks and islands, lying off and within York Minster, on the larboard-side, and the black rock, off the south-end of Shag Island, on the starboard. When abreast of the south-end of that island, we hauled over for the west shore, taking care to avoid the beds of weeds, indications of rocks, some of which were 12 fathoms under water; but we thought it the safest way always to keep clear of them. The entrance into the large harbour, which we called Port Clerk, is to the north of some low rocks, lying off a point on Shag Island. This harbour lies in W. by S. a mile and a half. It hath wood and fresh water, and from 12 to 24 fathoms deep. To the southward of Port Clerk, seemed to be another harbour, formed by a large island; without this, between it and York Minster, the whole sea appeared strewed with islets, rocks, and breakers. At the south end of Shag Island the shags breed in vast numbers, in the cliffs of the rocks. We shot some of the old ones, but could not come at the young ones, which are by much the best eating. We likewise brought down three wild geese, a valuable acquisition at this time. We returned and got on board at seven o'clock in the evening, Mr. Pickersgill, who had just before arrived, informed us, that the land opposite to our station is an island; that on another more to the north, he found many terns eggs; and in a cove between that and the East Head, he had shot one goose, and got some young gossings.

On Saturday the 24th, two sporting parties went over one of the N. E. side of the island above mentioned, which was named Goose Island; and the other, accompanied by Capt. Cook, went by the S. W. side. When under the island we had plenty of sport, having shot as many geese as served for a Christmas meal for our men, which proved much more agreeable to them than fat beef and pork. We all returned heartily tired, by climbing over the rocks, when we had landed, in pursuit of our game. In the south of the island were abundance of geese, it being their moulting season, when most of them come on shore, and are not disposed to fly. Our party got sixty-two, and Mr. Pickersgill with his associates fourteen. Plenty of shags were seen in the cove, but we proceeded without spending time or shot upon them. We were informed by our people on board, that a number of natives, in nine canoes, had been along-side, and some of them in the ship; they seemed well acquainted with Europeans, and had several of their knives among them.

On the 25th, being Christmas day, we had another visit from them. They appeared to be of the same nation, we had formerly seen in Success Bay; and which M. de Bougainville calls Pecharas, because they continually used this word. They are a diminutive, ugly, half-starved, beardless race; almost naked, being only slightly covered with a seal-skin or two joined together, so as to make a cloak, which reached to their knees; but the greatest part of them had but one skin, which scarcely covered their shoulders, and all their lower parts were quite naked. The women are clothed no better than the men, except that they cover their nakedness with a seal-skin flap. They are inured from their infancy to cold and hardships, for we saw two young children at the breast entirely naked. They remained all the time in their canoes, having their bows and arrows with them, and harpoons, made of bone, with which we imagined, they strike and kill fish. Both they and their cloaths smelt most intolerably of train oil. We threw them some biscuit, but they seemed much better pleased with our presents of medals, knives, &c. Their canoes were made of bark, and on each of them was a fire. They had also large seal hides, which may serve as covering to their huts, on shore, in foul weather. They all departed before dinner, nor did we believe, any one invited them to partake of our Christmas cheer, which consisted of geese, roast and boiled, goose-pye, &c. a treat little known to us; and which was heightened by Madeira wine, the only article of our provisions that was mended by keeping. Per-

haps our friends in England did not celebrate Christmas more cheerfully than we did; and, with such fare it would have been a real disappointment to have had our appetites spoiled, by the distaste of those filthy people, and by the stench they always carried about them. We called this place Christmas Sound, in honour of the day, and the joyful festival we had celebrated here. On the 26th, we were again visited by some of the natives, and as it was very cold in the evening, and they stood shivering on the deck, the Captain from an impulse of humanity, gave them some old canvass and baize for covering.

On Tuesday the 27th, every thing on shore was ordered on board. The weather being fine and pleasant, a party of us went round by the south side of Goose Island, and picked up 31 of these kind of birds. On the east-side of the island, to the north of the east point, is a good place for ships to lay in that are bound for the west. When we returned on board, we found all the work done, and the launch in, so that we now only waited for a fair wind to put to sea. The entrance of Christmas Sound, which we expected soon to leave, is three leagues wide, and situated in latitude 55 deg. 27 min. S. and in 70 deg. 16 min. W. longitude; in the direction of north 37 deg. W. from St. Idelsons Isles, distant 10 leagues. We think these isles to be the best land mark for finding the sound. It is advisable for no one to anchor very near the shore, for we generally found there a rocky bottom. The refreshments to be procured at this place are wild fowl, very good celery, and plenty of muscels, not large, but well tasted. The geese are smaller than our English tame ones, but eat as well as the best of them. The gander is all white; the female spotted with black and white, with a large white spot on each wing. Here is also a kind of duck, which our people called the race-horse, on account of its swiftness on the water, for the wings being too short to support the body in the air, it cannot fly. We believe, from certain circumstances, the people do not live here throughout the whole of the winter season, but retire to parts where the weather is less severe. To appearance, they are the most wretched of all the natives we have seen. They live in an inhospitable climate, and do not seem to have sagacity enough to provide themselves with the comforts of life, particularly in the article of cloathing. Barren as this country is, our botanists found therein many unknown plants. In the woods is the tree which produceth the winter bark; also the holly-leaved cranberry; and plenty of berries, which we called cranberry; with many other sorts common in these straits.

On Wednesday the 28th, we sailed from this sound with a light breeze at N. W. At noon Point Nativity being the east part of the sound, bore N. half W. distant one league and a half. We steered S. E. by E. and E. S. E. till four o'clock, P. M. when we hauled to the south, for the sake of a nearer view of St. Idelsons. The coast appeared indented as usual, and at this time we were abreast of an inlet lying E. S. E. At the west point of this are two high peaked hills, and below them to the east, two round ones, or small isles, in the direction of N. E. and S. W. from each other. At half past five o'clock, we had a good sight of Idelsons Isles. These are situated about six leagues from the main, in latitude 55 deg. 53 min. S. and in 69 deg. 41 min. W. longitude. We now resumed and continued our course to the east. At sun-set the nearest land bore S. E. by E. three fourths E. and the west point of Nassau Bay, discovered by Admiral Hermite in 1624, bore north 10 deg. E. six leagues distant. This point, in some charts is called False Cape Horn, as being the southern point of Terra del Fuego. It lies in latitude 55 deg. 39 min. S. From the above mentioned inlet to this false cape the direction of the coast is nearly E. half a point distant 14 or 15 leagues.

On the 29th, at three o'clock A. M. we steered S. by S. at four Cape Horn, for which we now made sail bore E. by S. at a distance it is known by a round hill over it; and though to the W. N. W. there is a point not unlike this, yet their situations will always

sufficient to distinguish
half past seven we
Southern Atlantic
the N. W. side of
the other low str
north of it. From
course is E. S. E.
The rocky point of
direction E. N. E.
the southern point
There seemed to
into Nassau Bay.
and on the west f
forming good bays
Horn is laid down
had not in our po
hazy weather rend
hence we steered
that lie off Mistak
steered N. E. half
At eight o'clock in
the strait, we sho
The lugger-loaf on
W. the point of S
the same name, be
On the 30th, da
the current over t
springing up at N
Bay. We hoisted
two guns, we perce
made by the nativ
which was the plac
here in 1769. A
in order to discover
to be seen there;
found any. Our
cad, and nailed
where it was likely
to be behind us,
Pickersgill landed
associates with gre
seal skins, had bra
be the same kind o
found. The brace
somewhat like the
workmanship of
Pickersgill's repo
seal, and we had
particularly on the
are exceeding num
south coast of Ne
the same by Strate
evening to N. W.
On Saturday th
for the east end of
bore south 60 deg.
Terra del Fuego fo
hazy, we could c
coast; but as we
were free of unque
most eastern one
waited some time
clear up as we wist
the island, for the
it necessary. We
miles, and foundin
we continued our
number of seals an
people who were
hauling round it, w
unbroken water.
ground, we cast ar
mile from the isle
deg. E. to N. 55
having soon after c
John, or the east
75 deg. E. distant
us from the north
fourth. The other l
from the north wi
No. 22.

sufficient to distinguish the one from the other. At half past seven we passed this cape, and entered the Southern Atlantic Ocean. Two peaked rocks are on the N. W. side of the cape, resembling sugar loaves; also other low straggling rocks to the west, and one south of it. From Christmas Sound to this Cape, the course is E. S. E. one fourth E. distant 31 leagues. The rocky point three leagues from Cape Horn, in the direction E. N. E. we called Mistaken Cape. It is the southern point of the easternmost of Hermitic Isles. There seemed to be a passage between these two capes into Nassau Bay. In this passage some isles were seen, and on the west side, the coast had the appearance of forming good bays and harbours. In some charts Cape Horn is laid down as part of a small island, which we had not in our power to confirm or contradict, as the hazy weather rendered every object indistinct. From hence we steered E. by N. half N. without the rocks that lie off Mistaken Cape. Having passed these, we steered N. E. half E. and N. E. for Strait le Maire. At eight o'clock in the evening, finding ourselves near the strait, we shortened sail, and hauled the wind. The sugar-loaf on Terra del Fuego bore north 33 deg. W. the point of Success Bay just open of the cape of the same name, bearing north 20 deg. E.

On the 30th, during the calm, we were driven by the current over to Staten Land; but a light breeze springing up at N. N. W. we stood over for Success Bay. We hoisted our colours, and, having before fired two guns, we perceived a smoke rise out of the woods, made by the natives above the south point of the bay, which was the place where they resided when we were here in 1769. A party was now sent into Success Bay, in order to discover if any traces of the Adventure were to be seen there; but they returned without having found any. Our ship's name, &c. were written on a card, and nailed to a tree which stood near the place where it was likely the Adventure would water, should she be behind us, and put into this place. When Mr. Pickerill landed, the natives received him and his associates with great courtesy. They were clothed in seal skins, had bracelets on their arms, and appeared to be the same kind of people we had seen in Christmas Sound. The bracelets were made of silver wire, wrought somewhat like the hilt of a sword, and no doubt, the workmanship of an European. According to Mr. Pickerill's report, the bay was full of whales and seals, and we had observed the same in the strait, particularly on the Terra del Fuego side, where the whales were exceeding numerous. Having now explored the south coast of Terra del Fuego, we resolved to do the same by Staten Land. At nine o'clock the wind veering to N. W. we tacked, and stood to S. W.

On Saturday the 31st in the morning, we bore up for the east end of Staten Land; when, at half past four bore south 60 deg. E. the west end fourth a deg. E. and Terra del Fuego fourth 40 deg. W. The weather being hazy, we could only now and then get sight of the coast; but as we advanced to the east, several islands were seen of unequal extent. We were abreast of the most eastern one at eight o'clock, A. M. when we waited some time for clear weather; but as it did not clear up as we wished, we hauled round the east end of the island, for the sake of anchorage, if we should think it necessary. We were now distant from the isle two miles, and sounding found only 29 fathoms water. As we continued our course, we saw on this island a great number of seals and birds, a strong temptation to our people who were in want of fresh provisions; and in hauling round it, we had a strong race of a current, like unbroken water. At length, after fishing for the best ground, we cast anchor in 21 fathoms water, about a mile from the island, which extended from north 18 deg. E. to N. 55 deg. and half W. The weather having soon after cleared up, we had a sight of Cape St. John, or the east end of Staten Land, bearing south 75 deg. E. distant four leagues. The island sheltered us from the north wind, and Staten Land from the south. The other isles lay to the west, and secured us from the north wind; yet we were not only open to

the N. E. and E. but to the N. W. winds. We might have avoided this situation, by anchoring more to the west, but the Captain was desirous of being near the island, and of having it in his power to get to sea with any wind. In the afternoon a large party of us landed, some to kill seals, and others birds or fish. The island was so stocked with the former, which made such a continual bleating, that we might have thought ourselves in Essex, or any other country where cows and calves are in abundance. Upon examination we found these animals different from seals, though they resembled them in shape and motion. The male having a great likeness to a lion, we called them on that account lions. We also found of the same kind as the New Zealand seals, and these we named sea-bears. We shot some of the large ones, not thinking it safe to go near them; though, in general, they were so tame, that we knocked some down with our sticks. Here were a few geese and ducks, and abundance of penguin and shags; the latter of which had young ones almost fledged, consequently just to our taste. In the evening our party returned sufficiently laden with provisions of various sorts.

On the 1st of January, being Sunday, Mr. Gilbert was sent out to Staten Land, in search of A. D. 4775, a good harbour, nothing more being wanting, in the opinion of Captain Cook, to make this place a good port for ships to touch at for refreshments. Another party went to bring on board the beasts we had killed the preceding day. The old lions and bears were good for nothing but their blubber, of which we made oil; but the flesh of the young ones we liked very well: even the flesh of the old lionesses was not much amiss; but that of the males was abominable. Captain Cook took an observation of the sun's meridian altitude (his height at noon) at the N. E. end of this island, which determined its latitude at 54 deg. 40 min. 5 sec. S. Having shot a few geese, some other birds, and supplied ourselves plentifully with young shags, we returned on board in the evening. About ten o'clock the party returned from Staten Land, where they found a good port, in the direction of north, a little easterly, from the N. E. end of the Eastern Island, and distant three leagues to the westward of Cape St. John. The marks whereby it may be known, are some small islands lying in the entrance. The channel, which is on the east side of these islands, is half a mile broad. The course is in S. W. by S. turning gradually to W. by S. and W. The harbour is almost two miles long, and near one broad. The bottom is a mixture of mud and sand, and hath in it from 10 to 50 fathoms water. Here are several streams of fresh water, with good wood for fuel. On this island are an innumerable number of sea-gulls, the air was quite darkened with them, upon being disturbed by our people; and when they rose up, we were almost suffocated with their dung, which they seemed to emit by way of defence; and it stunk worse than what is vulgarly called Devil's-dung. This port was named New-Year's Harbour, from the day on which it was discovered, and is certainly a very convenient one for shipping, bound to the west, or round Cape Horn. It is true, ships cannot put to sea with an easterly or northerly wind; but these winds are never known to be of long continuance, and those from the south or west quarters are the most prevailing.

On Tuesday the 3d, we weighed and stood for Cape St. John, which, in the evening, bore N. by E. distant four miles. This cape, being the eastern point of Staten Land, is a rock of considerable height, situated in latitude 54 deg. 46 min. S. and in 64 deg. 7 min. W. longitude, having a rocky islet lying close under the north point of it. To the westward of the cape is an inlet, which seemed to communicate with the sea to the south; and between this and the cape is a bay. Having doubled the cape, we hauled up along the south coast. At noon Cape St. John bore north 20 deg. E. distant about three leagues; Cape St. Bartholomew, or the S. W. point of Staten Land, south 83 deg. W. two high detached rocks north 80 deg. W. By observation

ship. We now steered due east; and on the 11th, were in latitude 54 deg. 38 min. longitude 45 deg. 10 min. W. On the 12th, being Thursday, we steered east northerly; and at noon observed in latitude 54 deg. 38 min. S. and in 42 deg. 8 min. W. longitude, which is near 3 deg. E. of the situation, laid down by Mr. Dalrymple for the N. E. point of the gulph of St. Sebastian; but we had no other intimations of land, than seeing a seal, and a few penguins; and we had a small flock from E. S. E. which we think would not have been, had any extensive track of land lay in that direction. On Friday, the 13th, we stood to the south till noon, when finding ourselves in latitude 55 deg. 17 min. we stretched to the north. We now saw several penguins, and a snow petrel, which we judged to denote the vicinity of ice. We also found the air much colder than we had felt it since we left New Zealand. In the night we stood to the N. E. On Saturday, the 14th, at two o'clock, P. M. in latitude 53 deg. 56 min. 30 sec. S. and in longitude 39 deg. 24 min. W. we discovered land, in a manner wholly covered with snow. We founded in one hundred and seventy-five fathoms, muddy bottom. The land bore E. by S. distant twelve leagues. On the 15th, the wind blew in squalls, attended with snow and sleet, and we had a great sea to encounter. At past four P. M. we stood to the S. W. under two courses; but at midnight the storm abated, so that we could carry our top-sails double reefed. On the 16th, at four o'clock, A. M. we stood to the east, with a moderate breeze, and at eight saw the land extending from E. by N. to N. E. by N. At noon, by observation, we were in latitude 54 deg. 25 min. 30 sec. and in 38 deg. 18 min. W. longitude. The land was now about eight leagues distant. It proved to be an island, and we called it Willis Island, from the name of the person who first discovered it from the mast-head. It is a high rock of no great extent. We bore up to it with a view of exploring the northern coast; and as we advanced perceived another isle to the north, between that and the main. Observing a clear passage between both we steered for the same, and in the midway found it to be two miles broad. Willis's isle is in the latitude of 54 deg. S. and in 38 deg. 23 min. W. longitude. The other, which was named Bird Island, a number of fowls being seen upon the coast, is not so high, but more extensive; and is near the N. E. point of the main land, which Capt. Cook named Cape North. We saw several masses of snow, or ice, in the bottoms of some bays on the S. E. coast of this land, particularly in one which lies about three leagues to the S. S. E. of Bird Isle. On Monday, the 16th, having got through the passage, we observed the north coast trended E. by N. for about three leagues, and then E. and E. by S. to Cape Buller, which is eleven miles. We ranged the coast till near night, at one league distance, when on sounding we found fifty fathoms, and a muddy bottom. On the 17th, at two o'clock, A. M. we made for the land. We neared along shore till seven, when, seeing the appearance of an inlet, we hauled in for it. The captain accompanied by Mr. Forster, and others went off in a boat, to reconnoitre the bay before we ventured in with the ship. They landed in three different places, displayed our colours, and took possession of the country in his majesty's name. The head of the bay was terminated by ice-cliffs of considerable height; pieces of which were continually breaking off, which made a noise like a cannon. Nor were the interior parts of the country less horrible. The savage rocks raised their lofty summits till lost in the clouds, and valleys were covered with seemingly perpetual snow. Not a tree, nor a shrub of any size were to be seen. The only signs of vegetation were a strong bladed grass, growing in tufts, wild burnet, and a plant like moss, seen on the rocks. Sea-bears, or seals, were numerous: the shores swarmed with young cubs. Here were also the largest penguins we had yet seen. Some we brought aboard weighed above thirty pounds. We found the same sea-fowls as at the last island; also divers, the new

white birds, and small ones, resembling those at the Cape of Good Hope, called yellow birds, which, having shot two, we found most delicious morsels. We saw no other land birds than a few small larks, nor did we meet with any quadrupeds. The rocks bordering on the sea were not covered with snow like the inland parts; and they seemed to contain iron ore. When the party returned aboard, they brought with them a quantity of seals and penguins. Not that we wanted provisions; but any kind of fresh meat was acceptable to the crew; and even Capt. Cook acknowledged, that he was now, for the first time, heartily tired of salt diet of every kind; and that though the flesh of penguins could scarcely be compared to bullocks liver, yet its being fresh was sufficient to make it palatable. The captain named the bay he had surveyed, Possession Bay; though according to his account of it, we think it to be no desirable appendage to his majesty's new possessions. It lies in latitude 54 deg. 5 min. S. and in 37 deg. 18 min. W. eleven leagues to the east of Cape North. To the west of Possession Bay, and between that and Cape Buller, lies the Bay of Isles, so called from the number of small isles lying before and in it.

On Tuesday, the 17th, we made sail to the east, along the coast; the direction of which from Cape Buller, is 73 deg. 30 min. E. for the space of twelve leagues, to a projecting point, which was named Cape Saunders. Beyond this is a pretty large bay, which obtained the name of Cumberland Bay. At the bottom of this, as also in some other smaller ones, were vast tracks of frozen ice, or snow, not yet broken loose. Being now just past Cumberland Bay, we hauled off the coast, from whence we were distant about four miles. On the 18th, at noon, by observation, we were in latitude 54 deg. 30 min. S. and about three leagues from the coast, which stretched from N. 59 deg. W. to S. 13 deg. W. In this direction the land was an isle, which seemed to be the extremity of the coast to the east. At this time the nearest land was a projecting point, terminating in a round hillock, which, on account of the day was called Cape Charlotte; on the west side of which lies a bay, and it was named Royal Bay; and the west point we called Cape George. This is the east point of Cumberland Bay, in the direction of S. E. by E. from Cape Saunders, distant seven leagues. The Capes Charlotte and George lie in the direction of south 37 deg. E. and north 37 deg. W. six leagues distant from each other. The isle above mentioned was named Cooper's, after our first lieutenant. It is in the direction of S. by E. and eight leagues from Cape Charlotte. The coast between them forms a large bay, which we named Sandwich Bay. On the 19th, at sun-rise new land was discovered, which bore S. E. half E. At the first sight it had the appearance of a single hill, in the form of a sugar-loaf; but soon after, other detached parts were visible above the horizon near the hill. We observed at noon in latitude 54 deg. 42 min. 30 sec. S. A lurking rock, that lies off Sandwich Bay, five miles from the land, bore W. half N. distant one mile. In the afternoon we had a view of a ridge of mountains, behind Sandwich Bay, whose icy tops were elevated high above the clouds. At six o'clock, Cape Charlotte bore north 31 deg. W. and Cooper's Island W. S. W.

On Friday the 20th, at two o'clock, A. M. we made sail to the S. W. round Cooper's Island, which is one rock considerably high, about five miles in circuit, and one distant from the main. Here the main coast takes a S. W. direction for five leagues to a point, which we called Cape Disappointment, off of which are three small isles. The most southern one is a league from the Cape, green, low, and flat. From the point, as we continued our course S. W. land was seen to open in the direction of north 60 deg. W. distant beyond it nine leagues. It proved to be an isle, and was named Picker-gill Island. A point of what we had hitherto supposed to be the main, beyond this island, soon after came in sight in the direction of north 55 deg. W. which united the coast at the very point

We therefore tacked, and stood back to the west, with the wind at north. We were now surrounded with ice-islands, all nearly of an equal height, with a flat level surface, but of various extent. The loose ice, with which the sea appeared strewed, had broke from these islands.

On Sunday the 19th, having little wind, we were obliged to traverse in such courses, as were most likely to carry us clear of them, so that we hardly made any progress, one way or other, throughout the whole day. The weather was fair, but remarkably gloomy, and we were visited by penguins and whales in abundance.

On the 30th, we tacked and stood to the N. E. and almost throughout the day it was foggy, with either sleet or snow. At noon we were in latitude 59 deg. 30 min. S. and in 29 deg. 24 min. W. At two o'clock, passed one of the largest ice-islands we had seen during our voyage; and some time after two smaller ones. We now stood to N. E. over a sea strewed with ice. On the 31st we discovered land a-head, distant about one league. We hauled the wind to the north, but not being able to weather it, we tacked in 175 fathoms water, a league from the shore, and about half a one from some breakers. This land consisted of three rocky islets of considerable height. The outmost terminated in a lofty peak, like a sugar-loaf, to which we gave the name of Freeland Peak, after the man who first discovered it. The latitude is 59 deg. S. and 27 deg. W. longitude.

To the east of this peak, was seen an elevated coast, whose snow-cap'd summits were above the clouds. It extended from N. by E. to E. S. E. and we named it Cape Bristol, in honour of the noble family of Harvey. Also in latitude 59 deg. 13 min. 30 sec. S. and in 27 deg. 45 min. W. another elevated coast appeared in sight, bearing S. W. by S. and at noon, it extended from S. E. to S. S. W. distant from four to eight leagues. This land we called Southern Thule, because the most southern that has yet been discovered. Its surface rises high, and is every where covered with snow. There were those of our company, who thought they saw land in the space between Thule and Cape Bristol.

We judged it more than probable that these two lands are connected, and the space is a deep bay, which, though these are mere suppositions, was called Forster's Bay. Being not able to weather Southern Thule, we tacked and stood to the north, at one o'clock, and at four Freeland Peak was distant four leagues. Soon after the wind fell, and we were left to the mercy of a great westerly swell, which fell right upon the shore; but at eight o'clock, the weather clearing up, we saw Cape Bristol, which bore E. S. E. ending in a point to the north, beyond which we could see no land. Thus we were relieved from the fear of being carried away by the swell, and cast on the most horrible coast in the world. We continued our course to the north all night, with a light breeze at west.

On Wednesday the first of February, at four o'clock in the morning, we had a view of a new coast. At six it bore north 60 deg. E. and being a high promontory, we named it Cape Montague. It is situated in latitude 51 deg. 27 min. S. and in 26 deg. 44 min. W. longitude; eight leagues to the north of Cape Bristol. We saw land in several places between them, whence we concluded the whole might be connected. We wish it had been in our power to have determined this with greater certainty, but prudence would not permit the attempt, nor to venture near a coast the dangers of which have been already sufficiently pointed out. One ice-land, among many others on this coast, particularly attracted our notice. It was level in surface, of great extent both in height and circuit, and its sides were perpendicular, on which the waves of the sea had not made the least impression. We thought it might have come out from some bay in the coast. At noon we were east and west of the northern part of Cape Montague, distant five leagues. Freeland Peak was 12 leagues, and bore south 16 deg. E. By observation we found our latitude to be 58 deg. 25 min. In the afternoon, at two o'clock, when standing to the north we saw land, which bore north 25 deg. E. It extended

No. 22.

from north 40 deg. to 52 deg. E. and it was imagined more land lay beyond it to the east. Cape Montague at this time bore south 66 deg. E. at eight 40 deg. and Cape Bristol S. by E.

On the 2nd, at six o'clock A. M. having steered to the north during the night, new land was discovered, bearing north 12 deg. E. distant 10 leagues. We saw two hummocks just above the horizon, of which we soon lost sight. We now stood, having a fresh breeze at N. N. E. for the northernmost land we had seen the preceding day, which, at this time, bore E. S. E. By ten o'clock we fetched in with it, but not having it in our power to weather the same, we tacked at three miles from the coast. This extended from E. by S. to S. E. and appeared to be an island of about 10 leagues circuit. The surface was high, and its summit lost in the clouds. Like all the neighbouring lands, it was covered with a sheet of snow and ice, except on a point on the north side, and on two hills seen over it, which probably were two islands. These were not only clear of snow, but seemed covered with green turf. We saw also large ice-islands to the south, and others to the N. E. At noon we tacked for the land again, in order if possible to determine whether it was an island; but a thick fog soon prevented the discovery, by making it unsafe to stand in for the shore; so that having returned, we tacked and stood to N. W. to make the land we had seen in the morning. We left the other under the supposition of its being an island, and named it Saunders Isle, after Capt. Cook's honourable friend Sir Charles Saunders. It lies in latitude 57 deg. 49 min. S. and in 26 deg. 44 min. W. longitude, distant 12 leagues from Cape Montague. The wind having shifted at six o'clock, we stood to the north; and at eight we saw Saunders Island, extending from S. E. by S. to E. S. E. We were still in doubt if it were an island, and could not at this time clear it up, as we found it necessary to take a view of the land to the north, before we proceeded any farther to the east. With this intent we stood to the north, and on the 3d, at two o'clock A. M. we came in sight of the land we were searching after, which proved to be two isles. On account of the day on which they were discovered, we called them Candlemas Isles. They lie in latitude 57 deg. 11 min. S. and in 27 deg. 6 min. W. longitude. Between these we observed a small rock; there may perhaps be others; for the weather being hazy occasioned us to lose sight of the islands, and we did not see them again till noon, at which time they were three or four leagues off. We were now obliged, by reason of the wind having veered to the south, to stand to the N. E. and at midnight came suddenly into water uncongeniously white, at which appearance the officer on watch was so much alarmed, that he immediately ordered the ship to be put about, and we accordingly tacked instantly. There were various opinions aboard concerning this matter; probably it might be a shoal of fish; but some said it was a shoal of ice; and others thought it was shallow water.

On Sunday the 4th, at two o'clock A. M. we resumed our course to the east, and at six tried if there were any current, but found none. At this time some whales were playing, and numbers of penguins flying about us: of the latter we shot a few, different from those on Staten Land, and at the isle of Georgia. We had not seen a seal since we left that coast, which is somewhat remarkable. By observation at noon, we found ourselves in latitude 56 deg. 44 min. S. and in longitude 25 deg. 33 min. W. We now having a breeze at east, stood to the south, intending to regain the coast we had lost; but the wind at eight o'clock in the evening, obliged us to stand to the east, in which run we saw many ice-islands, and some loose ice. As the surmation of ice-islands has not been fully investigated, we will here offer a few hints and observations respecting them. We do not think, as some others do, that they are formed by the water at the mouths of great cataracts or large rivers, which, when accumulated, break off, owing to their ponderous weight; because we never found any of the ice, which we took up, in

3 B

the

the least incorporated, or connected with earth, which must necessarily adhere to it, were this conjecture true. Furthermore, we are not certain whether there are any rivers in these countries, as we saw neither rivers nor streams of fresh water there. The ice-lands, at least in those parts, must be formed from snow and sleet consolidated, which gathers by degrees, and are drifted from the mountains. In the winter, the seas or the ice cliffs must fill up the bays, if they are ever so large. The continual fall of snow occasions the accumulation of these cliffs, till they can support their weight no longer, and large pieces break off from these ice-lands. We are inclined to believe, that these ice cliffs, where they are sheltered from the violence of the winds, extend a great way into the sea.

On the 5th, having seen no penguins, we thought that we were leaving land behind us, and that we had passed its northern extremity. At noon we were 3 deg. of longitude to the east of Saunders' Isle; and by observation in the latitude of 57 deg. 8 min. S. and in 23 deg. 34 min. W. longitude. In the afternoon we again stretched to the south, in order that we might again fall in with the land, if it took an east direction.

On Monday the 6th, we held on our course till the 7th at noon, when we found our latitude to be 58 deg. 15 min. S. and longitude 23 deg. 34 min. W. and not seeing any signs of land, we concluded, that what had been denominated Sandwich Land, was either a group of islands, or a point of the continent; for in Capt. Cook's opinion, the ice that is spread over this vast Southern Ocean, must originate in a track of land, which he firmly believes lies near the pole, and extends farthest to the north, opposite the Southern Atlantic and Indian Oceans; for ice being found in these farther to the north, than any where else, induced the Captain to conclude, that land of considerable extent must exist near the south. Upon a contrary supposition it will follow, that we ought to see ice every where under the same parallel; but few ships have met with ice going round Cape Horn; and for our part, we saw but little below the sixtieth degree of latitude in the Southern Pacific Ocean; on the other hand in this sea, between the meridian of 40 deg. W. and fifty or sixty degrees east, we found ice as far north as 51 deg. Others have seen it in a much lower latitude. Let us now suppose there is a Southern Continent within the polar circle. The question which readily occurs, will be; What end can be answered in discovering or exploring such a coast? Or what use can the same be either to navigation, geography, or any other science? And what benefits can result therefrom to a commercial state? Consider for a moment, what thick fogs, snow, storms, intense cold, and every thing dangerous to navigation; must be encountered with by every hardy adventurer; behold the horrid aspect of a country impervious by the animating heat of the sun's rays; a country doomed to be immerged in everlasting snow. See the islands and floats on the coast, and the continual falls of the ice cliffs in the ports: these difficulties, which might be heightened by others not less dangerous, are sufficient to deter every one from the rash attempts of proceeding farther to the south, than our expert and brave commander has done, in search of an unknown country; which when discovered would answer no valuable purpose whatever. By this time we had traversed the Southern Ocean, in such a manner, as to have no doubt in determining that there is no continent, unless near the pole, and out of the reach of navigation. We have made many new discoveries, and ascertained the exact situation of several old ones. Thus was the end of our voyage fully answered, a southern hemisphere sufficiently explored, and the necessity of a search after a southern continent put an end to. We should have proceeded to farther discoveries; but our Captain thought it cruel to detain the people who sailed with him any longer without the necessary refreshments, especially, as their behaviour merited every indulgence; for neither officers nor men ever once repined at any hardship, nor expressed any uneasiness, or additional

fear of danger, on account of our separation from Adventure. It was now high time to think of returning home; and could we have continued longer we should have been in great danger of the scurvy breaking out among us; and we do not know any good purpose farther discoveries would have answered; therefore steered for the Cape of Good Hope, intending to look for Bouvet's discovery, Cape Circumcision, and the isles of Denia and Marisevon. But before we could finish the narrative of this voyage, it may not be thought improper to collect a few observations from our most eminent writers, on Terra Magellanica, Patagonia, part of which coast lies within the straits, the island of Terra del Fuego, and Falkland's Islands. Terra Magellanica received its name from Ferdinand Magellan; a Portuguese officer, who likewise gave name to those straits which lead from the south to the north sea; he being the first who sailed through them. The appellation of Patagonia was derived from a principal tribe of its inhabitants, called Patagons. The whole country, which goes under the name of Patagonia, extends from Chili and Paraguay to the utmost extremity of South America, that is, from 35 almost to 55 degrees of south latitude, being 700 miles long and 300 broad where widest. The northern parts contain almost inexhaustible stock of large timber, but in the southern districts there is scarcely a tree to be seen fit for any mechanical purpose. The lofty mountains, called the Andes, traverse the whole country from north to south. There are incredible numbers of wild horned cattle and horses, which were first brought thither by the Spaniards, and have increased amazingly, the pasture also is good. Some writers tell us that fresh water is scarce; but were that the case, we cannot see how the present inhabitants, and such multitudes of cattle could subsist. The east coast is chiefly low land, with few or no good harbours; that called St. Julian is one of the best. The inhabitants of Patagonia consist of several Indian tribes, as the Patagons, Pampas, Collares, &c. They are a savage, barbarous people, of a copper colour, like the rest of the Americans, with coarse black hair, and no beards. They are mightily addicted to painting themselves, and make streaks on their faces and bodies. They go almost stark naked, having only a square garment, in the form of a blanket, made of the skins of several animals, and sewed together, which they sometimes wrap round them in extreme cold weather, and they have also a cap of the skins of fowls on their heads. Former voyagers represented them as monstrous giants of 12 feet high, whereas they are no taller than the other Americans. The women, as in other places, are very fond of necklaces and bracelets, which they make of sea shells. The natives chiefly live on fish and game, and what the earth produces spontaneously. This country abounds with an animal, called camel sheep by some authors, but their true name is guanaco. They partake of the nature of a camel, though they have no bunch on the back, and they were formerly made use of to carry burdens. They have also a bird called an ostrich, but not so large, and they differ from the African ostriches in having three toes, whereas those have but two. A great number of islands, or clusters of islands, lie on the coasts of Patagonia.

The island of Terra del Fuego, or the Land of Fire, as it was called by the first discoverers, on account of their having observed some great fires upon it (supposed to be volcanoes) as they passed it in the night, is separated from the continent by the Magellanic Straits, has a rough appearance, being very mountainous, but intersected with deep narrow vallies, and is well watered. The natives of this country are short in their persons, not exceeding five feet six inches at most, their heads large, their faces broad, their cheek-bones very prominent, and their noses very flat. They have little brown eyes, without lids; their hair is black and hanging about their heads in disorder, and beset with train oil. On the chin they have a few straggling short hairs instead of a beard, and from their nose there

a constant discharge. The whole is the most loathsome which human nature can see, no other cloaths but a piece of skin hung from the neck, being fastened to their body, and being paid to them, as to be an olive oil, resembling that of olives, though seldom, with the strongest compunctivity. They have a great many of their infants, and their infants are very fat. The situation among the mountains nearer to the other nation. The weapon of the men is a spear, and pointed at the end with a piece of bone, made of boughs, and is one side is open, and a whole of miserable hovels. The above-mentioned mountains; but the voyage to the South was so rigorous as to kill Anson's Voyage to the South Sea, that were several sorts of trees were found. Among these, and a species of the size of small ones. In some places the birds were a species, which ran about, leaving the water with plumage, with a yellow feathers: at the ported duck. The people and falcons. They were covered with large skins, and was said to be more than the Falkland's Islands. Sir Richard Hawkins, when he was with them Hawkins' Mahebaeth. The present given them by Captain Cook, who was adopted by Halley. The late Lord Egmont, in 1764, then visited the South Sea; and made possession of the British majesty, as a valuable acquisition, represented by Captain Cook, that gentleman, as found (says he) a species, which the soil was prospect than that forms almost perpetually the winds of winter, who lie but two calendar weeks without any herbs and vegetables; the people; and cold climates, had wild celer and fowls. Gnats, which, when they were found in places, of sea lions, are water.

Though the soil is an English settlement, possessed by the

a constant discharge of mucus into their ugly open mouth. The whole assemblage of their features forms the most loathsome picture of misery and wretchedness which human nature can possibly be reduced. They had no other cloathing than a small piece of seal-skin, which hung from their shoulders to the middle of the neck, being fastened round the neck with a string. The rest of their body was perfectly naked, not the least regard being paid to decency. Their natural colour seems to be an olive-brown, with a kind of gloss resembling that of copper; but many of them disguise themselves with streaks of red paint, and sometimes, though seldom, with white. Their whole character is the strongest compound of stupidity, indifference, and inactivity. They have no other arms than bows and arrows, and their instruments for fishing a kind of fish-hooks. They live chiefly on seals flesh, and like the fat is their part of food. There is no appearance of any subordination among them, and their mode of living approaches nearer to that of brutes, than that of any other nation. The children go naked, and the only weapon of the men is a long stick generally hooked, and pointed at the end like a lance. They live in huts made of boughs, and covered with mud, branches &c. One side is open, and the fire-place is in the middle, and a whole family herd together in one of these miserable hovels.

The above-mentioned islands are all very barren and mountainous; but from what Mr. Forster says, in his Voyage to the South Sea, the climate would not appear to be so rigorous and tempestuous as it is represented in Anson's Voyage. Upon the lower grounds and islands, that were sheltered by the high mountains, several sorts of trees and plants, and a variety of birds, were found. Among the trees was Winter's bark-tree, and a species of arbutus, loaded with red fruit of the size of small cherries, which were very well tasted. In some places there is also plenty of celery. Among the birds was a species of duck of the size of a goose, which ran along the sea with amazing velocity, bearing the water with its wings and feet: it had a grey plumage, with a yellow bill and feet, and a few white feathers: at the Falkland Islands it is called a log-headed duck. Among the birds are also plenty of geese and falcons. The rocks of some of the islands are covered with large muscle-shells, the fish of which is said to be more delicate than oysters.

Falkland's Islands were first discovered in 1594, by Sir Richard Hawkins, who named the principal of them Hawkins' Maidenland, in honour of queen Elizabeth. The present name Falkland was probably given them by Capt. Strong, in 1689, and afterwards adopted by Halley.

The late lord Egmont, first lord of the Admiralty in 1764, then revived the scheme of a settlement in the South Seas; and commodore Byron was sent to take possession of Falkland's islands in the name of his Britannic majesty, and in his journal represents them as a valuable acquisition. On the other hand, they are represented by Capt. M'Bride, who in 1766 succeeded that gentleman, as the outcasts of nature: "We found (says he) a map of islands and broken lands, of which the soil was nothing but a bog, with no better prospect than that of barren mountains, beaten by storms almost perpetual. Yet this is summer; and if the winds of winter hold their natural proportion, those who lie but two cables length from the shore, must pass weeks without any communication with it." The herbs and vegetables which were planted by Mr. Byron's people, and the fir-tree, a native of rugged and cold climates, had withered. In the summer-months, wild celery and sorrel are the natural luxuries of these islands. Goats, sheep, and hogs that were carried thither, were found to increase and thrive as in other places. Geese of a filthy taste, snipes, penguins, foxes, and sea lions, are also found here, and plenty of good water.

Though the soil be barren, and the sea tempestuous, an English settlement was made here, of which we were dispossessed by the Spaniards in 1770. That violence

was, however, disavowed by the Spanish ambassador, and some concessions were made to the court of Great Britain; but in order to avoid giving umbrage to the court of Spain, the settlement was afterwards abandoned.

On Tuesday, the 7th, we resumed our course to the east, and this day only three ice-islands were seen. At eight o'clock in the evening, we hauled the wind to the S. E. for the night. On the 8th, at day-light, we continued our course to the east, being in latitude 58 deg. 30 min. S. and in 15 deg. 14 min. W. longitude. In the afternoon passed three ice islands. On the 9th, we had a calm most part of the day; the weather fair, except at times a snow shower. We saw several ice islands, but not the least intimation that could induce us to think that any land was near us. We stood now to N. E. with a breeze which sprung up at S. E. On the 10th we had showers of sleet and snow; the weather was piercing cold, inasmuch that the water on deck was frozen. The ice-islands were continually in sight. On the 11th, we continued to steer east. In the morning we had heavy showers of snow; but as the day advanced, we had clear and serene weather. At noon we were in latitude 58 deg. 11 min. and in 7 deg. 55 min. W. longitude. On the 12th, we had ice islands continually in sight, but most of them were small and breaking to pieces. On Monday, the 13th, we had a heavy fall of snow; but, the sky clearing up, we had a fair night, and so sharp a frost, that the water in all our vessels on deck, was next morning covered with a sheet of ice. On the 14th, we continued to steer east, inclining to the north, and in the afternoon crossed the first meridian, or that of Greenwich, in the latitude of 57 deg. 50 min. S. At eight o'clock we had a hard gale, at S. S. W. and a high sea from the same quarter. On the 15th, we steered E. N. E. till noon, when by observation, we were in latitude 56 deg. 37 min. S. and in 4 deg. 11 min. E. longitude. We now sailed N. E. with a view of getting into the latitude of Cape Circumcision. We had some large ice islands in sight, and the air was nearly as cold as the preceding day. The night was foggy, with snow showers, and a smart frost. On Thursday, the 16th, we continued our course N. E. and at noon we observed in latitude 55 deg. 26 min. S. and in 5 deg. 52 min. E. longitude, in which situation we had a great swell from the south, but no ice in sight. At one o'clock we stood to S. E. till six, when we tacked, and stood to the north. At this time we had a heavy fall of snow and sleet, which fixed to the masts and rigging as it fell, and coated the whole with ice. On the 17th, we had a great high sea from the south, from whence we concluded no land was near in that direction. At this time we were in latitude 54 deg. 20 min. S. and in 6 deg. 33 min. E. longitude. On the 18th, the weather was fair and clear. We now kept a look-out for Cape Circumcision; for if the land had ever so little extent in the direction of N. and S. we could not miss seeing it, as the northern point is said to lie in 54 deg. On the 19th, at eight o'clock in the morning, land appeared in the direction east by south, but it proved a mere fog-bank. We now steered east by south and S. E. till seven o'clock in the evening, when we were in latitude 54 deg. 42 min. S. and in 12 deg. 3 min. E. longitude. We now stood to N. W. having a very strong gale, attended with snow showers. On Monday, the 20th, we tacked and stretched to N. E. and had a fresh gale attended with snow showers and sleet. At noon we were in latitude 54 deg. 8 min. S. longitude 12 deg. 59 min. E. but had not the least sign of land. On the 21st, we were 5 deg. to the east of the longitude in which Cape Circumcision is said to lie, and continued our course east, inclining a little to the south, till the 22nd, when, at noon, by observation we were in latitude 54 deg. 24 min. S. and in 19 deg. 18 min. E. longitude. We had now measured in the latitude laid down for Bouvet's land, thirteen degrees of longitude; a course in which it is hardly possible we could have missed it; we therefore began to doubt its existence; and concluded, that what the Frenchman had seen, could be nothing more

more than a deception, or an island of ice: for after we had left the southern isles, to the present time, not the least vestige of land had been discovered. We saw, it is true, some seals, and penguins; but these are to be found in all parts of the southern ocean, and we believe flugs, gannets, boobies, and men of war birds, are the most indubitable signs that denote the vicinity of lands, as they seldom go very far out to sea. Being at this time only two degrees of longitude from our route to the south, when we took our departure from the Cape of Good Hope, it was in vain for us to continue our course to the east, under this parallel; but thinking we might have seen land farther to the south, for this reason, and to clear up some doubts, we steered S. E. in order to get into the situation in which it was supposed to lie. On the 23d, from observations on several distances of the sun and moon, we found ourselves in the latitude of 55 deg. 25 min. S. and in 23 deg. 21 min. E. longitude; and having run over the track in which the land was supposed to lie, without seeing any, we now was well assured the ice-islands had deceived M. Bouvet; as at times they had deceived us. During the night the wind veered to N. W. which enabled us to steer more north; for we had now laid aside all thoughts of searching farther after the French discoveries, and were determined to direct our course for the Cape of Good Hope, intending only by the way to look for the isles of Demia, and Marsveven, which by Dr. Halley are laid down in the latitude of 41 deg. 5 min. and 4 deg. E. longitude from the meridian of the Cape of Good Hope. On Friday the 25th, we steered N. E. and were at noon in latitude 52 deg. 58 min. S. longitude 26 deg. 31 min. E. This day we saw the last ice-island.

On Wednesday, the first of March, we were in latitude 46 deg. 44 min. S. and in 23 deg. 36 min. W. longitude; and we took notice, that the whole time the wind blew regular and constant northerly, which included several days, the weather was always cloudy and very hazy; but as soon as it came south of west, it cleared up. We also observed, that the barometer began to rise several days before this change happened. On the 3d, in the afternoon, we had intervals of clear weather, but at night the wind blew a heavy squall from S. W. whereby several of our sails were split, and a middle stay-sail was wholly lost. Our latitude was 45 deg. 8 min. S. longitude 30 deg. 50 min. E. On Wednesday, the 8th, the thermometer rose to 61 deg. and we were obliged to put on lighter cloaths. We were now in latitude 41 deg. 30 min. S. longitude 26 deg. 51 min. E. We had not yet seen any signs of land, but albatrosses, petrels, and other sea birds, were our daily visitors. On the 11th, the wind shifted suddenly from N. W. to S. W. which occasioned the mercury to fall as suddenly from 62 to 52 deg. so different was the state of the air between a northerly and southerly wind. Our latitude this day was 40 deg. 40 min. S. longitude 23 deg. 47 min. E.

On Sunday, the 12th, some albatrosses and petrels were shot, which proved an acceptable treat. This day we were nearly in the situation, in which the isles of Demia and Marsveven are said to lie, and not the least hope of finding them remained. On the 13th, we stood to N. N. W. and at noon by observation, were in latitude 38 deg. 51 min. S. which was above thirty miles more than our log gave us; to what this difference was owing, we could not determine. The watch also shewed that we had been set to the east. At this time we were two degrees north of the parallel in which the isles are laid down, but found not any encouragement to persevere in our endeavours to find them. This must have consumed more time, we think, in a fruitless search; and every one, all having been confined a long time to stale and salt provisions, was impatient to get into port. We therefore, in compliance with the general wish, resolved to make the best of our way to the Cape of Good Hope. We were now in latitude 38 deg. 38 min. S. and in 23 deg. 37 min. E. longitude.

On Thursday, the 16th, at day-break, we descried

in the N. W. quarter, standing to the westward, two sail, one of which shewed Dutch colours. At ten o'clock we stood to the west also, and were now in the latitude of 35 deg. 9 min. S. and in longitude 23 deg. 38 min. E. About this time, a quarrel arose between three officers, and the ship's cooks, which was not reconciled without serious consequences. Those three gentlemen, upon some occasion or other, entered the cook-room with naked knives, and with oaths, unbecoming their character, swore they would take away the lives of the first who dared to affront them. It seems they had formerly met with some rebuffs for too much frequenting the cooks apartments, which had hitherto passed in joke; but now a regular complaint was laid before the captain, of their unwarrantable behaviour, and of the danger the men were in of their lives; into which complaint the captain was under a necessity of enquiring; and upon finding it just, of confining the offenders in irons. While they were in this situation, the articles of war being read, it was found that the offence was of such a nature as hardly to be determined without a reference to a court martial, in order to which the two who appeared most culpable, were continued prisoners upon parole, and the third was cleared. After this business had engrossed the Captain's attention, he called the ship's crew together, and after recounting the particulars of the voyage, the hardships they had met with, the fatigues they had undergone, and the cheerfulness they had constantly shewn in the discharge of their duty, he gave them to understand, how much it would still more recommend them to the Lords of the Admiralty, if they would preserve a profound silence in the ports they had yet to pass and might enter, with regard to the courses, the discoveries they had made, and every particular relative to this voyage; and likewise, after their return home, till they had their lordships permission to the contrary; requiring, at the same time, all those officers who had kept journals to deliver them into his custody, to be sealed up, and not to be opened till delivered to their lordships at the proper office. In the interim they were to be locked up safely in a chest. This request was cheerfully complied with by every commissioned officer.

On Friday, the 17th, we observed at noon in the latitude of 34 deg. 49 min. S. in the evening we saw land, about six leagues distant, in the direction of E. N. E. And there was a great fire or light upon it, throughout the first part of the night. On the 18th, at day-break, we saw, at the same distance, the land again, bearing N. N. W. At nine o'clock, we sent out a boat to get up with one of the two ships before noticed; we were so desirous of hearing news, that we paid no attention to the distance, though the ships were at least two leagues from us. Soon after we stood to the south, a breeze springing up at west. At this time three more sail were seen to windward, one of which shewed English colours. The boat returned at one o'clock P. M. and our people in it had been on board a Dutch Indiaman, coming home from Bengal; the ship was the Bownkerk Polder, the Captain Cornelius Bosch. The captain very politely made us a tender of sugar, arrack, and of any thing that could be spared out of the ship. By some English mariners on board her, our people were informed, that our consort had arrived at the Cape of Good Hope twelve months ago; adding, that a boat's crew had been murdered and eaten by the natives of New Zealand. This intelligence sufficiently explained the mysterious accounts we had received from our old friends, in Queen Charlotte's Sound.

On the 19th, at ten o'clock in the morning, the English ship bore down to us. She was the True Briton, Capt. Broadly, on her return from China. A letter to the secretary of the Admiralty was committed to the care of the captain, who generously sent us fresh provisions, tea, and other articles. In the afternoon, the True Briton stood out to sea, and we in for land. At six o'clock, we tacked within five miles of the shore, distant, as we conjectured, about six leagues from Cape

Aquila,

Aquila. On
west; and on
over the Cape
leagues. The
Bay; with us,
the 22nd, but
we having gain
bay we found
was an English
directly to En
copy of his j
drawings to
with thirteen
with an equal
story of the A
the addition of
French ship i
struction of the
doubt, by the
savage barbaric
vation, still mi
satisfaction abo
a letter for our
loss of the boa
lotte's Sound.
Capt. Cook, a
on Baron Plette
and his principl
greatest politen
all kinds may
now, after the
gan to taste, a
custom here fr
compliance wit
and Mr. Sparm
well known to
ness to serve the
glected; and b
bread, fresh m
restored to the
past hardships
All hands w
fects. Almost
was to be repl
charges here fo
the Dutch both
dalous advanta
our casks, riggs
condition, is e
ting the globe,
our return to it
thousand miles
torial circumst
which had been
71 deg. we spr
broke so much
the Cape, the
learn the succed
to the earnest
common men
took care to g
Hence many th
fore it was kno
ther the Resolu
return to Europ
ships put in an
namely, English
ships, frigates,
Manilla. We
nation have to
whom were all
pean states. V
things in readi
were obliged to
laved for want
cessary to caul
On Wednesd
finished, and h
provisions, and
No. 23.

Aquilas. On the 20th, we stood along shore to the west; and on the 21st, at noon, the Table Mountain, over the Cape Town, bore N. E. by E. distant ten leagues. The next morning we anchored in Table Bay; with us, in our reckoning, it was Wednesday the 22nd, but with the people here, Tuesday the 21st, we having gained a day by running to the east. In the bay we found ships of different nations, among which was an English East Indiaman, from China, bound directly to England. In this ship Capt. Cook sent a copy of his journal, together with some charts and drawings to the Admiralty. We saluted the garrison with thirteen guns, and the compliment was returned with an equal number. We now heard the deplorable story of the Adventure's boat's crew confirmed, with the addition of a false report, concerning the loss of a French ship upon the same island, with the total destruction of the captain and his crew, propagated, no doubt, by the Adventure's people, to render an act of savage barbarity, that would scarcely admit of aggravation, still more horrible. But, which gave us full satisfaction about this matter, Capt. Furneaux had left a letter for our commander, in which he mentions the loss of the boat, and ten of his men, in Queen Charlotte's Sound. The day after our arrival at this place, Capt. Cook, accompanied by our gentlemen, waited on Baron Plettenberg, the Dutch Governor, by whom, and his principal officers, they were treated with the greatest politeness; and as at this place refreshments of all kinds may be procured in great abundance, we now, after the numerous fatigues of a long voyage, began to taste, and enjoy the sweets of repose. It is a custom here for all the officers to reside on shore; in compliance with which, the captain, the two Forsters, and Mr. Sparrman took up their abode with Mr. Brandt, well known to our countrymen for his obliging readiness to serve them. Our people on board were not neglected; and being provided daily with fresh baked bread, fresh meat, greens, wine, &c. they were soon restored to their usual strength, and as soon forgot all past hardships and dangers.

All hands were employed now to supply all our defects. Almost every thing except the standing rigging was to be replaced anew; and it is well known the charges here for naval stores are most exorbitant; for the Dutch both at the Cape and Batavia, take a scandalous advantage of the distress of foreigners. That our casks, rigging, sails, &c. should be in a shattered condition, is easily accounted for. In circumnavigating the globe, we mean, from leaving this place to our return to it again, we had sailed no less than sixty thousand miles, equal nearly to three times the equatorial circumference of the earth; but in all this run, which had been made in all latitudes, between 9 and 71 deg. we sprung neither low-masts nor top-mast; nor broke so much as a lower, or top-mast shroud. At the Cape, the curiosity of all nations was excited, to learn the success of our discoveries, and in proportion to the earnestness of the solicitations, wherewith the common men were pressed, by foreign inquisitors, they took care to gratify them with wonderful relations. Hence many strange stories were circulated abroad, before it was known by the people at large at home, whether the Resolution had perished at sea, or was upon her return to Europe. During our stay here several foreign ships put in and went out, bound to and from India, namely, English, French, Danes, and three Spanish ships, frigates, two going to, and one returning from Manilla. We believe it is but lately, that ships of this nation have touched here; and these were the first to whom were allowed the same privileges as other European states. We now lost no time in putting all things in readiness to complete our voyage; but we were obliged to unhang our rudder, and were also delayed for want of caulkers; and it was absolutely necessary to caulk the ship before we put to sea.

On Wednesday, the 26th of April, this work was finished, and having got on board a fresh supply of provisions, and all necessary stores, we took leave of the

No. 23.

governor, and his principal officers. On the 27th, we went on board, and soon after, the wind coming fair, we weighed, and put to sea. When under sail, we saluted the garrison, as is customary, and they returned the compliment. When clear of the bay we parted company with some of the ships who failed out with us: the Danish ship steered for the East-Indies, the Spanish frigate, Juno, for Europe, and we and the Dutton Indiaman, for St. Helena. Depending on the goodness of Mr. Kendal's watch, we determined to attempt to make the island by a direct course. The wind, in general, blew faint all the passage, which made it longer than common.

On Monday the 15th of May, at day-break, we saw the island, distant fourteen leagues, and anchored at midnight, before the town, on the N. W. side of the island. Governor Skettowe, and the gentlemen of the island, treated us, while we continued here, with the greatest courtesy. In our narrative of Capt. Cook's former voyage, we have given a full description of this island; to which we shall only add, that the inhabitants are far from exercising a wanton cruelty towards their slaves. We are informed also, that wheel carriages, and porters knots have been in use among them for many years. Within these three years a new church has been built; some other new buildings are erecting; a commodious landing-place for boats has been made, and other improvements, which add both strength and beauty to the place. Here we finished some necessary repairs, which we had not time to complete during our stay at the Cape. Our empty water casks were also filled, and the ship's company had fresh beef, at five-pence per pound. This article of refreshment is exceeding good, and the only one to be procured, worth mentioning. On the 21st, in the evening, we took leave of the governor, and then repaired on board. The Dutton Indiaman, in company with us, was ordered not to fall in with Ascension, for which we steered, on account of an illicit trade, carried on between the Company's ships, and some vessels from North America; who, of late years, had visited the island, on pretence of fishing, when their real design was to wait the coming of the India ships. The Dutton was therefore ordered to steer N. W. by W. or N. W. till to the northward of Ascension. With this ship we were in company till the 24th, when we parted. A packet for the Admiralty was put on board, and she continued her course N. W. On Sunday, the 28th, we made the island of Ascension, and on the evening anchored in Cross Bay, on the N. W. side, half a mile from the shore, in ten fathoms water. The Cross-hill, so called on account of a flag staff erected upon it in form of a cross, bore S. 38 deg. E. and the two extreme points of the bay extended from N. E. to S. W. We had several fishing parties out every night, and got about twenty-four turtle weighing between four and five hundred weight each. This was our principal object, though we might have had a plentiful supply of fish in general. We have no where seen old wives in such abundance; also cavalies, conger eels, and various other sorts.

This island lies in the direction N. W. and S. E. and is ten miles broad, and five or six long. Its surface is very barren, and scarcely produces a shrub, plant, or any kind of vegetation, in the space of many miles; instead of which we saw only stones and sand, or rather flags and ashes; hence from the general appearance of the face of this island, it is more than probable, that, at some time, of which we have no account, it has been destroyed by a volcano. We met with in our excursions a smooth even surface in the intervals between the heaps of stones; but as one of our people observed, you may as easily walk over broken glass bottles as over the stones; for if you slip, or make a false step, you are sure to be cut or lamed. At the S. E. end of the isle is a high mountain, which seems to have been left in its original state; for it is covered with a kind of white marl, producing purslain, spurge, and one or two sorts of grass. On these the goats feed, which are to

be found in this part of the isle. Here are good land crabs, and the sea abounds with turtle from January to June. They always come on shore to lay their eggs in the night, when they are caught by turning them on their backs, in which position they are left on the beach till the next morning when the turtle-catchers fetch them away. We are inclined to think, that the turtles come to this island merely for the purpose of laying their eggs, as we found none but females; nor had those we caught any food in their stomachs. We saw also near this place abundance of aquatic birds, such as tropic birds, men of war, boobies, &c. On the N. E. side we found the remains of a wreck; the seemed to have been a vessel of one hundred and fifty tons burthen. We were informed, that there is a fine spring in a valley between two hills, on the top of the mountain above-mentioned; besides great quantities of fresh water in holes in the rocks. While the Resolution lay in the road, a sloop belonging to New-York anchored by her. She had been to the coast of Guinea with a cargo of goods, and came here under a pretence to take in turtle; but her real intention was, we believe, to traffic with the officers of our homeward bound East-Indiamen: for she had lain here near a week, and had got on board twenty turtle; whereas a sloop from Bermuda, had failed but a few days before, with one hundred and five on board, which were as many as she could take in; but having turned several more on different beaches, they inhumanly ripped open their bellies, for the sake of the eggs, and left the carcasses to rotify. The centre of this island of Ascension is situated in the latitude of 8 deg. S. and 14 deg. 28 min. 30 sec. W. longitude.

On Wednesday, the 31st of May, we departed from the island of Ascension, and steered, with a fine gale at S. E. by E. for that of Fernando de Noronha, on the coast of Brasil, in order to determine its longitude. In our passage for this place we had very good weather, and fine moon-light nights, which afforded us many opportunities of making lunar observations. On the 9th of June we made the island, which had the appearance of several detached hills, the largest of which very much resembled the steeple of a church. As we advanced, and drew near it, we found the sea broke in a violent surf on some funken rocks, which lay about a league from the shore. We now hoisted English colours, and bore up round the north end of the isle, which is a group of little islets; for we perceived plainly, that the land was unconnected, and divided by narrow channels. On one of these, next the main, are several strong forts, rendered so by the nature of their situation, which is such as to command all the anchoring and landing-places about the island. We continued to sail round the northern point, till the sandy beaches, before which is the road for shipping, and the forts were open to the westward of the said point. As the Resolution advanced, a gun was fired, and immediately the Portuguese colours were displayed on all the forts; but not intending to stop here, we fired a gun to the leeward, and stood away to the northward, with a fresh breeze at E. S. E. The hill, which appears like a church tower, bore S. 27 deg. W. five miles distant; and from our present point of view it appeared to lean, or over-hang to the east. Fernando de Noronha is in no part more than six leagues in extent, and exhibits an unequal surface, well clothed with wood and herbage. Its latitude is 3 deg. 53 min. S. and its longitude carried on by the watch, from St. Helena, is 32 deg. 34 min. W. Don Antonio d'Ulloa, in his account of this island, says, "that it hath two harbours, capable of receiving ships of the greatest burden; one is on the north side, and the other on the N. W. The former is, in every respect, the principal, both for shelter and capaciousness, and the goodness of its bottom; but both are exposed to the north and west, though these winds, particularly the north, are periodical, and of no long continuance. You anchor in the north harbour (which Capt. Cook called a road) in thirteen fathoms water, one third of a league from the shore, bot-

tom of fine sand; the peaked hills bearing S. W. 3 deg. southerly." This road, or, (as Ulloa terms it) harbour, is very secure for shipping, being sheltered from the south and east winds. A mariner in our ship, had been aboard a Dutch East Indiaman, who, on account of her crew being sickly, and in want of refreshments, put into this isle. By him we were informed, that the Portuguese supplied them with some buffaloes; and that they got their water behind one of the beaches, from a small pool, scarcely big enough to dip a bucket in.

On Sunday, the 11th of June, at three o'clock P. M. in longitude 32 deg. 14 min. we crossed the line. We had equally weather from the E. S. E. with showers of rain, which continued, at times, till the 14th, and on the 3th the wind became variable. At noon we were in the latitude of 3 deg. 49 min. N. and in 31 deg. 47 min. W. longitude. We had now for most part of the day, dark, gloomy weather, till the evening of the 15th, at which time we were in latitude 5 deg. 47 min. N. and in 31 deg. W. longitude. After this we had three successive calm days, in which we had fair weather and rains alternately; and sometimes the sky was obscured by dense clouds, which broke in very heavy showers of rain. On Sunday, the 18th, we had a breeze at east, which fixed at N. E. and we stretched to N. W. As we advanced to the north, the gale increased. On Wednesday, the 21st, Capt. Cook ordered the still to be set to work, with a view of making the greatest quantity possible of fresh water. To try this experiment, the still was fitted to the largest copper we had, which held about sixty-four gallons of salt water. At four o'clock, A. M. the fire was lighted, and at six the still began to run. The operation was continued till six in the evening; at which time we had obtained thirty-two gallons of fresh water, and consumed one bushel and a half of coals. At noon, the mercury in the thermometer was eighty-four and a half, as high as it is generally found to rise at sea. Had it been lower more water would have been procured; for it is well known, that the colder the air is, the cooler the still may be kept, whereby the steam will be condensed faster. This invention, upon the whole, is a useful one, but it would not be prudent for a navigator to trust wholly to it; for though, with plenty of fuel, and good coppers, as much water may be obtained, as will be necessary to support life, yet the utmost efforts that can be employed in this work, will not procure a sufficiency to support health, especially in hot climates, where fresh water is most wanted; and in the opinion of Capt. Cook, founded on experience, the best judge of this matter, nothing can contribute more to the health of seamen than their having plenty of sweet fresh water.

On Sunday, the 25th, we were in latitude 16 deg. 12 min. N. and in 37 deg. 20 min. W. longitude. Observing a ship to windward, bearing down upon us, we shortened sail; but, on her approaching, we found by her colours she was Dutch; we therefore made sail again, and left her to pursue her course. On the 28th, we observed in the latitude of 21 deg. 21 min. N. longitude 40 deg. 6 min. W. and our course made good was N. by W. On the 30th, a ship passed us within hale, but she was presently out of sight, and we judged her to be English. We were now in the latitude of 24 deg. 20 min. N. longitude 40 deg. 47 min. W. In latitude 29 deg. 30 min. we saw some sea-plants, commonly called gulph-weed, because it is supposed to come from the gulph of Florida; it may be so, and yet it certainly vegetates at sea. We continued to see this plant in small pieces, till in the latitude of 36 deg. N. beyond which parallel we saw no more of it. On Wednesday, the 5th of July, the wind veered to the east; and the next day it was a calm. On the 7th and 8th we had variable light airs; but on the 9th, the wind fixed at S. S. W. after which we had a fresh gale, and steered first N. E. and then E. N. E. our intention being to make some of the Azores, or Western Isles. On Tuesday the 11th, we were in latitude 36 deg. 45 min.

45 min. N. and in
we defcried a fail
we came in sight
On Thursday,
and on the 14th,
De Horta, and a
thoms water, abo
design in touchin
mons, from whe
nacy the longitud
by the master of
we cast anchor, to
the S. W. point of
E. point, N. 33 d
of the town N.
George's island N
and the isle of P
S. 45 deg. E. di
the Pourvoyer, a
sloop, and a brig
the captain sent to
arrival to the gove
Mr. Wales an opp
shore. This was
acted as consul,
not only procure
Mr. Wales with a
up his instrumts
gentleman discove
even his house was
and day; and the
liberal and hospita
place, the crew of
of fresh beet, and
water, at the rate
fire two boats is
ships are allowed,
no trading exper
Fresh provisions
poultry, for sea-
are not only small
bullocks and hogs
of wine to be had.
Before we proceed
during our abode a
readers, to give the
all the Azores, or
different geograph
America, Africa,
central point: but
propriety be conf
They are a group
ocean, between tw
well longitude, a
north latitude, niri
and as many east o
number, viz. St. I
Terceira, St. Geor
Carvo.
These islands wa
ships in 1439, and
1447, to whom th
most were named
dance of flowers of
They are all fertile
who resides at Ang
of the bishop, wh
The income of t
amounts to about
On every island the
the police, militia,
is at the head of t
an appeal to a high
to the supreme co
islands are said to b
St. Miguel, the
circumference, co
inhabitants, and is
chief town is Pant
ravaged by the En

45 min. N. and in 36 deg. 45 min. W. longitude, when we descried a sail steering to the west; and on the 12th, we came in sight of three more.

On Thursday, the 13th, we made the isle of Fayal, and on the 14th, at day-break, we entered the bay of De Horta, and at eight o'clock anchored in twenty fathoms water, about half a mile from the shore. Our design in touching at this place, was to make observations, from whence might be determined with accuracy the longitude of the Azores. We were directed by the master of the port, who came on board before we cast anchor, to moor N. E. and S. W. in this station, the S. W. point of the bay bore S. 16 deg. W. and the N. E. point, N. 33 deg. E. The church at the N. E. end of the town N. 38 degrees W. the west point of St. George's island N. 42 deg. E. distant eight leagues; and the isle of Pico extending from N. 74 deg. E. to S. 45 deg. E. distant five miles. In the bay we found the *Pourvoyer*, a large French frigate, an American sloop, and a brig belonging to Fayal. On the 14th, the captain sent to the English consul, and notified our arrival to the governor, begging his permission to grant Mr. Wales an opportunity to make his observations on shore. This was readily granted, and Mr. Dent, who acted as consul, in the absence of Mr. Gathorne, not only procured this permission, but accommodated Mr. Wales with a convenient place in his garden, to set up his instruments; and in several other particulars, this gentleman discovered a friendly readiness to oblige us: even his house was always at our command, both night and day; and the entertainment we met with there was liberal and hospitable. All the time we staid at this place, the crew of our ship were supplied with plenty of fresh beef, and we purchased about fifty tons of water, at the rate of about three shillings per ton. To hire more boats is the most general custom here, though ships are allowed, if they prefer many inconveniences, to trail expence, to water with their own boats. Fresh provisions may be got, and hogs, sheep, and poultry, for sea-stock, at reasonable rates. The sheep are not only small, they are also very poor; but the bullocks and hogs are exceeding good. Here is plenty of wine to be had.

Before we proceed with our own observations, made during our abode at Fayal, it may be agreeable to our readers, to give them a brief account and description of all the Azores, or Western Islands. These have by different geographers, been variously deemed parts of America, Africa, and Europe, as they are almost in a central point: but we apprehend they may with more propriety be considered as belonging to the latter. They are a group of islands, situated in the Atlantic ocean, between twenty-five and thirty-two degrees of west longitude, and between thirty-seven and forty north latitude, nine hundred miles west of Portugal, and as many east of Newfoundland. They are nine in number, viz. St. Maria, St. Miguel, or St. Michael, Terceira, St. George, Graciosa, Fayal, Pico, Flores, and Corvo.

These islands were first discovered by some Flemish ships in 1439, and afterwards by the Portuguese in 1447, to whom they now belong. The two westernmost were named Flores and Corvo, from the abundance of flowers on the one, and crows on the other. They are all fertile, and subject to a governor-general, who resides at Angra in Terceira, which is also the seat of the bishop, whose diocese extends over all the Azores. The income of the latter, which is paid in wheat, amounts to about two hundred pounds sterling a year. On every island there is a deputy-governor, who directs the police, militia, and revenue; and a juiz, or judge, is at the head of the law department, from whom lies an appeal to a higher court at Terceira, and from thence to the supreme court at Lisbon. The natives of these islands are said to be very litigious.

St. Miguel, the largest, is one hundred miles in circumference, contains about twenty-nine thousand inhabitants, and is very fertile in wheat and flax. Its chief town is Ponta del Gado. This island was twice ravaged by the English in the time of queen Elizabeth.

Terceira, is reckoned the chief island, on account of its having the best harbour; and its chief town, named Angra, being the residence of the governor-general and the bishop. The town contains a cathedral, five other churches, eight convents, several courts of offices, &c. and is defended by two forts.

The island of Pico, so called from a mountain of vast height, produces excellent wine, cedar, and a valuable wood, called teixos. On the south of the island is the principal harbour, called Villa das Lagens.

The inhabitants of Flores having been many years ago infected with the venereal disease, by the crew of a Spanish man of war, that was wrecked upon their coast, the evil, it is said, still maintains its ground there, none of the inhabitants being free from it, as in Peru, and some parts of Siberia.

Travellers relate, that no poisonous or venomous animal is to be found in the Azores, and that if carried thither, it will expire in a few hours. One tenth of all their productions belong to the king, and the article of tobacco brings in a considerable sum. The wine, called Fayal wine, is chiefly raised in the island of Pico, which lies opposite to Fayal. From eighteen to twenty thousand pipes of that wine are made there yearly. All of these islands enjoy a salubrious air, but are exposed to violent earthquakes, from which they have frequently suffered.

Villa de Horta, the chief town in Fayal, like all the towns belonging to the Portuguese, is crowded with religious buildings; there being no less, in this little city, than three convents for men, and two for women. Here are also eight churches, including those belonging to the convents, and that in the Jesuits college. This college is a noble structure, and seated on an elevation, in the pleasantest part of the city. Since the expulsion of that order it has been suffered to go to decay, and, in a few years, by the all consuming hand of time, may be reduced to a heap of ruins. The principal produce of Fayal is wheat and Indian corn, with which the inhabitants supply Pico, which, in return, sends them wine, more than sufficient for their consumption, great quantities being annually shipped from De Horta, (for at Pico there is no road for shipping) for America, whence it has obtained the name of Fayal wine. The Villa de Horta is situated in the bottom of a bay, close to the edge of the sea. It is defended by two castles, one at each end of the town, and a stone work, extending along the sea-shore, from the one to the other. But these works serve more for show than defence; but it is a pity they should be suffered to run to decay; seeing they heighten greatly the prospect of the city, which is very beautiful from the road; but, setting aside the religious houses and churches, we saw not another edifice, that has any thing, either within or without, to recommend it. It is not the custom, in these parts, among the Portuguese or Spaniards, to have glass windows, but in this town the churches, and a country-house, lately belonging to the English consul, have their windows glazed: all others are latticed, which gave them in our eyes, the appearance of prisons. Before this Villa, at the east end of the island, is the bay or road of Fayal, which faces the west end of Pico. It is a semi-circle about two miles in diameter; and its depth, or semi-diameter, is three-fourths of a mile. The bottom is sandy, and the depth of water from six to twenty fathoms; but, near the shore, particularly at the S. W. head, the bottom is rocky; as it also is without the line that connects the two points of the bay; on which account it is not safe to anchor too far out. The bearings which we have laid down, when moored in this road, are sufficient to direct any steersman to the best ground. The winds to which this road lies most exposed are those that blow from between the S. S. W. and S. E. but as you can always get to sea with the latter, this is not so dangerous as the former; and we were told, there is a small cove round the S. W. point, called Porto Pierre, where small vessels are heaved down, and wherein a ship may lay tolerably safe. Upon the whole, we by no means think this road of Fayal a bad one. were

were informed, by a Portuguese captain of the following particulars, which, if true, are not unworthy of notice. However, his account may be attended to by captains of ships, though not entirely relied on. This Portuguese told us, that in the direction of S. E. about half a league from the road, and in a line between that and the fourth side of Pico, lies a concealed sunken rock, covered with twenty-two fathom water, and on which the sea breaks from the south. He also gave us to understand, that of all the shoals about these isles that are laid down in our charts, and pilot books, only one has any existence, which lies between the islands of St. Mary and St. Michael, called Hormingan. He further informed us, that the distance between Fayal and the island of Flores, is forty-five leagues; and that there runs a strong tide between Fayal and Pico, the flood setting to the N. E. and the ebb to the S. W. but out at sea, the direction is E. and W. By various observations, the true longitude of this bay was found to be 28 deg. 39 min. 18 sec. and an half.

On Wednesday, the 19th, at four o'clock, A. M. we sailed out of the bay, and steered for the west end of St. George's island. Having passed this, we shaped our course E. half S. for the island of Terceira; and after a run of fourteen leagues, we found ourselves not more than one league from the west end. We now proceeded as expeditiously as the wind would permit, for England; and on Saturday, the 29th, we made the land near Plymouth. On the following day, the 30th, we cast anchor at Spithead, when Capt. Cook, in company with Messrs. Wales, Forsters, and Hodges, landed at Portsmouth, and from thence set out for London. The whole time of our absence from England was three years and eighteen days; and, owing to the unbounded goodness of an Almighty Preserver, who indulgently favoured our attempt, and seconded our endeavours, notwithstanding the various changes of climates (and they were as various as can be experienced) we lost only one man by sickness, and three by other causes. Even the single circumstance of keeping the ship's company in health, by means of the greatest care and attention, will make this voyage remarkable, in the opinion of every humane person; and we trust the grand end of this expedition, and the purposes for which we were sent into the southern hemisphere, were diligently and sufficiently pursued. The Resolution made the circuit of the southern ocean, in a high latitude, and Capt. Cook traversed it in such a manner, as to leave no room for a mere possibility of there being a continent, unless near the pole, and consequently out of the reach of navigation. However, by having twice explored the tropical sea, the situation of old discoveries were determined, and a number of new ones made; so that, we flatter ourselves, upon the whole, the intention of the voyage has, though not in every respect, yet upon the whole, been sufficiently answered; and by having explored so minutely the southern hemisphere, a final end may, perhaps, be put to searching after a continent, in that part of the globe, which has of late years, and, indeed, at times, for the two last centuries, engrossed the attention of some of the maritime powers, and been a favourite theory among geographers of all ages. The probability of there being a continent, or large track of land, near the Pole, has been already granted; and we may have seen part of it. The extreme cold, the numberless islands, and the vast floats of ice, give strength to this conjecture, and all tend to prove, that there must be main land to the south; but, that this must extend farthest to the north, opposite to the southern Atlantic and Indian oceans, we have already assigned several reasons; of which one is, the greater degree of cold in these seas than in the southern Pacific Ocean, under the same parallels of latitude; for in this last ocean, the mercury in the thermometer, seldom fell so low as the freezing point, till we were in latitude 60 deg. and upwards; whereas, in the other oceans, it fell as low in the latitude of 54 deg. the cause whereof we attributed to a greater quantity of ice, which extended farther north in the Atlantic and Indian oceans, than in the

south Pacific Sea; and supposing the ice to be first formed at, or near land, of which we are fully persuaded, it will be an undeniable consequence, that the land extends farther north. But what benefit can accrue from lands thus situated, should they be discovered? lands doomed to everlasting frigidness; and whose horrible and savage aspect no language or words can describe. Will any one venture farther in search after such a country, than our brave and skilful commander has done? Let him proceed, and may the God of universal nature be his guide. We heartily wish him success, nor will we envy him the honour of his discovery. In behalf of ourselves, the Editors who have the honour of submitting to the judgment of the public, this New, and Complete History of Captain Cook's Second Voyage, we must not say much, as by that judgment we stand or fall: thus much, however, we will venture to say, that this narrative is not defective in point of intelligence, that the facts are true, and that the whole is expressed in an easy style, which, we flatter ourselves will not be displeasing to our numerous friends, whose favours we here take the opportunity of gratefully acknowledging. It has been observed, that the principal officers of the Resolution delivered their journals into the custody of Captain Cook; and, on his arrival in England, Captain Furneaux also put into his hands a narrative of what happened in the Adventure after her final separation from the Resolution. But it is here necessary to remark further, that some officers, in both ships, reserved their private journals, and certain ingenious memorialists, to gratify the curiosity of their friends. From such materials these sheets are composed; nor have we had recourse to any printed authorities, but from the sole view of correcting errors in some places, and rendering this undertaking, a full, comprehensive, and perfect work. This premised, we shall now lay before our readers, a complete narrative of Capt. Furneaux's proceedings in the Adventure; to which we shall subjoin the improvements that have been made, respecting the means of preserving the health of our seamen, and particularly those that were used by Capt. Cook in his voyages; and to these we shall add, a table of the language of the natives of the Society Isles, with an explanation of their meaning in English, &c. &c.

A new, accurate, concise, and complete Account of CAPT. FURNEAUX's proceedings in the ADVENTURE, from the time he was separated from the RESOLUTION, to his arrival in England; wherein is comprised a faithful relation respecting the boat's crew, who were murdered, and eaten by the Cannibals of QUEEN CHARLOTTE'S SOUND in New ZEALAND.

IN October we made the coast of New A. D. 1773. Zealand, after a passage of fourteen days, from Amsterdam, and stood along shore till we reached Cape Turnagain, when a heavy storm blew us off the coast for three days successively, in which time we were separated from our consort, the Resolution, and saw her not afterwards, in the course of her voyage. On Thursday, the 4th of November, we regained the shore, near to Cape Palliser. Some of the natives brought us in their canoes abundance of cray-fish and fruit, which they exchanged for our Otaheite cloth, nails, &c. On the 5th, the storm again returned, and we were driven off the shore a second time by a violent gale of wind, accompanied with heavy falls of sleet, which lasted two days; so that by this time our decks began to leak, our beds and bedding were wet, which gave many of our people colds; and now we were most of us complaining, and all began to despair of ever getting into the sound, or, which we had most at heart, of joining the Resolution. We combated the storm till Saturday, the 6th, when, being to the north of the Cape, and having a hard gale from S. W. we bore away for some bay, in order to complete our wood and water, of both which articles we were at present

in great want, the allowance thought fix or eight of that scanty produce 38 deg. 30 longitude, we forenoon anchor ground, which This harbour is shelves, it affords here are regular Wood when the winds times, which a sea. The natives Queen Charlotte have regular pl roots. They had purchased with of their canoes, late, adorned with had all the apparatus we found it had due preservation been the head of it was at an ill people observed their whole voyage less than sixty and three feet consisting of that in the night sixty-two feet long with carvings, of very curious were closed with shells, in which pearl, and a large shell retained feet carved upon had also a high adorned with feathers almost reached might be temporary vessels, and this of which Quin and where two large ships as he 12th, having some wood, we fearfully out which the floor, so that either tack, we arrived the anchored, we attended with the weather had fort, having returned Sound, the appointed time ready for in stopping, leak in a most threatening On the 14th sent them to in on the last day make the land. the ship as five o'clock, A. M. this time, to the tempestuous was blown to pieces figure. On Monday expended, we once of a quarter ing backward and ther became miserable wind, we safety our desires Straits, we ca

ice to be soft. For some days past we had been in the allowance of one quart of water, and it was thought six or seven days more would deprive us even of that scanty pittance. On Tuesday, the 9th, in latitude 38 deg. 21 min. S. and in 178 deg. 37 min. E. longitude, we came abreast of Tolaga bay, and in the forenoon anchored in eleven fathoms water, stiff, muddy ground, which lays across the bay for about two miles. This harbour is open from N. N. E. to E. S. E. never-theless, it affords good riding with a westerly wind; and here are regular soundings from five to twelve fathoms. Wood and water are easily procured, except when the winds blow hard easterly, and then, at such times, which are but seldom, they throw in a great sea. The natives about this bay are the same as those at Queen Charlotte's Sound, but more numerous, and have regular plantations of sweet-potatoes, and other roots. They have plenty of fish of all sorts, which we purchased with nails, beads, and other trifles. In one of their canoes, we saw the head of a woman lying in state, adorned with feathers, and other ornaments. It had all the appearance of life, but, upon a nearer view we found it had been dried; yet, every feature was in due preservation and perfect. We judged it to have been the head of some deceased relative, kept as a relic. It was at an island in this bay, where the Endeavour's people observed the largest canoe they met with during their whole voyage. It was, according to account, no less than sixty-eight feet and a half long, five broad, and three feet six inches high: it had a sharp bottom, consisting of three trunks of trees hollowed, of which that in the middle was longest: the side planks were sixty-two feet long, in one piece, and were ornamented with carvings, not unlike filagree work, in spirals of very curious workmanship, the extremities whereof were clofed with a figure that formed the head of the vessel, in which were two monstrous eyes of mother of pearl, and a large shaped tongue; and, as it descended, it still retained the figure of a monster, with hands and feet carved upon it very neatly, and painted red. It had also a high peaked stern, wrought in filagree, and adorned with feathers, from the top of which two long streamers depended, made of the same materials, which almost reached the water. From this description we might be tempted to suppose, these canoes to be the vessels, and this to be the country, lying to the south, of which Quiros received intelligence at Taumai; and where Toabia said they ate men, and had such large ships as he could not describe. On Friday, the 12th, having taken aboard ten tons of water, and some wood, we set sail for the Sound; but we were scarcely out when the wind began to blow dead hard on the shore, so that, not being able to clear the land, on either tack, we were obliged to return to the bay, where we arrived the next morning, the 13th; and, having anchored, we rode out a heavy gale of wind, at E. by S. attended with a very great sea. We now began to fear the weather had put it out of our power to join our consort, having reason to believe she was, in Charlotte Sound, the appointed place of rendezvous, and by this time ready for sea. Part of the crew were now employed in slopping leaks, and repairing our rigging, which was in a most shattered condition.

On the 14th and 15th, we hoisted out our boats, and sent them to increase our stock of wood and water; but on the last day the surf rose so high, that they could not make the land. On Tuesday, the 16th, having made the ship as snug as possible, we unmoored at three o'clock, A. M. and before six got under way. From this time, to the twenty-eighth, we had nothing but tempestuous weather, in which our rigging was almost blown to pieces, and our men quite worn down with fatigue. On Monday, the 29th, our water being nearly expended, we were again reduced to the scanty allowance of a quart a man per diem. We continued beating backward and forward till the 30th, when the weather became more moderate; and having got a favourable wind, we were so happy at last as to gain with safety our desired port. After getting through Cook's Straits, we cast anchor at three o'clock, P. M. in

Queen Charlotte's Sound. We saw nothing of the Resolution, and began to doubt her safety; but, upon having landed, we discovered the place where she had pitched her tents; and, upon further examination, on an old stump of a tree, we read these words, cut out, "Look underneath." We complied instantly with these instructions, and, digging, soon found a bottle, corked and waxed down, wherein was a letter from Capt. Cook, informing us of their arrival at this place, on the third instant, and their departure on the 24th, and that they intended spending a few days in the entrance of the Straits, to look for us. We immediately set about the necessary repairs of the ship, with an intention of getting her to sea as soon as possible. On the 1st of December, the tents were carried on shore, the armourer's forge put up, and every preparation made for the recovery of the lick. The coopers were dispatched on shore, to mend the calks, and we began to unstow the hold to get at the bread; but, upon opening the calks we found a great quantity of it entirely spoiled, and most part so damaged, that we were obliged to bake it over again, which unavoidably delayed us some time. At intervals, during our stay here, the natives came on board as usual, with great familiarity. They generally brought fish, or whatever they had, to barter with us, and seemed to behave with great civility; though twice, in one night, they came to the tents, with an intention of stealing, but were discovered before they had accomplished their design. A party also came down in the night of the 13th, and robbed the astronomer's tent of every thing they could carry away. This they did so quietly, that they were not so much as heard, or suspected, till the astronomer getting up to make an observation, missed his instruments, and charged the sentinel with the robbery. This brought on a pretty severe altercation, during which they spied an Indian creeping from the tent, at whom Mr. Bailey fired, and wounded him; nevertheless he made a shift to retreat into the woods. The report of the gun had alarmed his confederates, who, instead of putting off from the shore, fled into the woods, leaving their canoe, with most of the things that had been stolen, a-ground on the beach. This petty larceny, it is probable, laid the foundation of that dreadful catastrophe which soon after happened.

On Friday, the 17th, at which time we were preparing for our departure, we sent out our large cutter, manned with 7 seamen, under the command of Mr. John Rowe, the full mate, accompanied by Mr. Woodhouse, midshipman, and James Tobias Swilley, the carpenter's servant. They were to proceed up the Sound to Grass Cove, to gather greens and celery for the ship's company, with orders to return that evening; for the tents had been struck at two in the afternoon, and the ship made ready for sailing the next day. Night coming on, and no cutter appearing, the captain and others began to express great uneasiness. They sat up all night, in expectation of their arrival, but to no purpose. At day-break, therefore, the Captain ordered the launch to be hoisted out. She was double manned, and under the command of our second lieutenant, Mr. Burney, accompanied by Mr. Freeman, master, the corporal of marines, with five private men, all well armed, and having plenty of ammunition, two wall pieces, and three days provision. They were ordered first to look into East Bay, then to proceed to Grass Cove, and, if nothing was to be seen or heard of the cutter there, they were to go farther up the Cove, and return by the west shore. Mr. Row having left the ship an hour before the time proposed for his departure, we thought his curiosity might have carried him into East Bay, none of our people having ever been there, or that some accident might have happened to the boat; for not the least suspicion was entertained of the natives, our boats having been higher up, and worse provided. Mr. Burney returned about eleven o'clock the same night, and gave us a pointed description of a most horrible scene indeed! the substance, and every material particular of whose report, are contained in the following relation, which includes the remarks of those who attended Mr. Burney.

On Saturday, the 18th, pursuant to our orders, we left the ship, about nine o'clock in the morning. Having a light breeze in our favour, we soon got round Long Island and Long Point. We continued sailing and rowing for East Bay, keeping close in shore, and examining with our glasses every cove on the larboard side, till near two o'clock in the afternoon, at which time we stopped at a beach on our left, going up East Bay, to dress our dinner. While we were cooking we saw an Indian on the opposite shore, running along a beach to the head of the bay; and when our meat was just done, we perceived a company of the natives, seemingly very busy; upon seeing which, we got immediately into the boat, put off, and rowed quickly to the place where the savages were assembled, which was at the head of this reach; and here, while approaching, we discerned one of their settlements. As we drew near some of the Indians came down upon the rocks, and waved for us to depart; but perceiving we disregarded them, they altered their gestures, and wild notes. At this place we observed six large canoes hauled upon the beach, most of them being double ones; but the number of people were in proportion neither to the size of these canoes, nor the number of houses. Our little company, consisting of the corporal, and his five marines, headed by Mr. Burney, now landed, leaving the boat's crew to guard it. Upon our approach the natives fled with great precipitation. We followed them closely to a little town, which we found deserted; but while we were employed in searching their huts, the natives returned, making a shew of resistance; but some trifling presents being made to their chiefs, they were very soon appeased. However, on our return to the boat, the savages again followed us, and some of them threw stones. As we came down to the beach, one of the Indians had brought a bundle of Hepatoos, or long spears, but seeing Mr. Burney looked very earnestly at him, he walked about with seeming unconcern. Some of his companions appearing to be terrified, a few trifles were given to each of them. From the place where we now landed, the bay seemed to run a full mile, N. N. W. where it ended in a long sandy beach. After dinner we took a view of the country near the coast, with our glasses, but saw not a canoe, or signs of inhabitants, after which we fired the wall-pieces, as signals to the cutter, if any of the people should happen to be within hearing. We now renewed our search along the east shore; and came to another settlement, where the Indians invited us ashore. We enquired of them about the cutter, but they pretended ignorance. They seemed very friendly, and fold us some fish.

At about five o'clock in the afternoon, and within an hour after we had left this place, we opened a small bay adjoining to Grafts Cove, and here we saw a large double canoe, just hauled upon the beach, with two men and a dog. The two savages, on seeing us approach, instantly fled, which made us suspect, it was here we should have some tidings of the cutter. On landing, and examining the canoe, the first thing we saw therein was one of our cutter's rullock ports, and some shoes, one of which, among the latter, was known to belong to Mr. Woodhouse. A piece of flesh was found by one of our people, which at first was thought to be some of the salt meat belonging to the cutter's men, but, upon examination, we supposed it to be dog's flesh; a most horrid and undeniable proof soon cleared up our doubts, and convinced us we were among no other than cannibals; for, advancing further on the beach, we saw about twenty baskets tied up, and a dog eating a piece of broiled flesh, which, upon examining, we suspected to be human. We cut open the baskets, some of which were full of roasted flesh, and others of fern-root, which serves them for bread. Searching others, we found more shoes, and a hand, which was immediately known to have belonged to Thomas Hill, one of our fore-castle men, it having been tatowed with the initials of his name. We now proceeded a little way in the woods, but saw nothing else. Our next design was to launch the canoe, intending to destroy her;

but seeing a great smoke ascending over the nearest hill, we made all possible haste to be with them before sun-set.

At half after six we opened Grafts Cove, where we saw one single, and three double canoes, and a great many natives assembled on the beach, who retreated to a small hill, within a ship's length of the water-side, where they stood talking to us. On the top of the high land, beyond the woods, was a large fire, from whence all the way down the hill, the place was thronged like a fair. When we entered the cove, a musketoon was fired at one of the canoes, as we imagined they might be full of men lying down; for they were all afloat, but no one was seen in them. Being doubtful whether their retreat proceeded from fear, or a desire to decoy us into an ambushade, we were determined not to be surpris'd, and therefore running close in shore, we dropped the grappling near enough to reach them with our guns; but at too great a distance to be under any apprehensions from their treachery. The savages on the little hill, kept their ground, hallooing, and making signs for us to land. At these we now took aim, resolving to kill as many of them as our bullets would reach; yet it was some time before we could dislodge them. The first volley did not seem to affect them much; but, on the second, they began to scramble away as fast as they could, some howling and others limping. We continued to fire as long as we could see the least glimpse of any of them, through the bushes. Among these were two very robust men, who maintained their ground without moving an inch, till they found themselves forsaken by all their companions, and then, disdainingly to run, they marched off, with great composure and deliberation. One of them, however, got a fall, and either lay there, or crawled away on his hands and feet; but the other escaped without any apparent hurt. Mr. Burney now improved their panic, and, supported by the marines, leapt on shore, and pursued the fugitives. We had not advanced far from the water-side, on the beach, before we met with two bunches of celery, which had been gathered by the cutter's crew. A broken oar was stuck upright in the ground, to which the natives had tied their canoes; whereby we were convinced this was the spot where the attack had been made. We now searched all along at the back of the beach, to see if the cutter was there, but, instead of her, the most horrible scene was presented to our view, that was ever beheld by any European; for here lay the hearts, heads, and lungs, of several of our people, with hands and limbs, in a mangled condition, some broiled, and some raw; but no other parts of their bodies, which made us suspect, that the cannibals had feasted upon, and devoured the rest. To complete this shocking view of carnage and barbarity, at a little distance we saw the dogs gnawing their entrails. We observed a large body of the natives collected together on a hill, about two miles off; but, as night drew on a-pace, we could not advance to such a distance; neither did we think it safe to attack them, or even to quit the shore, to take an account of the number killed, our troop being a very small one, and the savages were both numerous, fierce, and much irritated. While we remained almost stupified on the spot, Mr. Fannen said, that he heard the cannibals assembling in the woods; on which we returned to our boat, and, having hauled alongside the canoes, we demolished three of them. During this transaction, the fire on the top of the hill disappeared, and we could hear the savages in the woods at high words; quarrelling, perhaps, on account of their different opinions, whether they should attack us, and try to save their canoes. They were armed with long lances, and weapons, not unlike a serjeant's halbert in shape, made of hard wood, and mounted with bone instead of iron. We suspected, that the dead bodies of our people had been divided among those different parties of cannibals, who had been concerned in the massacre; and it was not improbable, that the group we saw at a distance by the fire, were feasting upon some of them, as those on shore had been, where the remains were found,

found, before the expected visit: be traces of more t could we find the It now grew dar carefully the reme ing off, made the place, not witho blood-thirsty inh part of the Sound or four miles high reaching from the ter-side; the mid- the fire, like a ho having consulted t that we could, by than the poor fat savages. Upon volley towards w but by going in an wet, and four of the situation more cr ammunition was i these reasons, w could be hoped. fo and arrived safe a account of this tr far enough out of man of them mult It may be prop number of men Row, our first ma Francis Murphy, Captain's servant, an, belonging to Thomas Hill, Mi galle-men. Most healthy people in our best seamen. I the head of the C belonging to Mr. ceived; and the o with T. H. as be mangled remain with the usual cer committed to the found; nor any c two of which w rowlers. We do was the effect of savages; for two all the forenoon in and bartered with rather inclined to originated in a qu was decided on about too secure, a opportunity might deed; and what a found out, thatou seen them miss fi charged, they mu do any execution, take proper adva we concluded, th general meeting on the Indians of Sha canoe, which form seen four days bef ing affair, we wer tuary winds, in habitants. It is a neaux had been se Cook, where the signs of any, but appeared as if they years; and yet, i tered the same co hundred, or two prized of his comi

found, before they had been disturbed by our unexpected visit: be that as it may, we could discover no traces of more than four of our friends bodies, nor could we find the place where the cutter was concealed. It now grew dark, on which account, we collected carefully the remains of our mangled friends, and putting off, made the best of our way from this polluted place, not without a few execrations bestowed on the blood-thirsty inhabitants. When we opened the upper part of the Sound, we saw a very large fire about three or four miles higher up, which formed a complete oval, reaching from the top of a hill down almost to the water-side; the middle space being inclosed all round by the fire, like a hedge. Mr. Burney and Mr. Fannen having consulted together, they were both of opinion, that we could, by an attempt, reap no other advantage than the poor satisfaction of killing some more of the savages. Upon leaving Grays Cove, we had fired a volley towards where we heard the Indians talking; but by going in and out of the boat, our pieces had got wet, and four of them missed fire. What rendered our situation more critical was, it began to rain, and our ammunition was more than half expended. We, for these reasons, without spending time where nothing could be hoped for but revenge, proceeded for the ship, and arrived safe aboard before midnight. Such is the account of this tragical event; the poor victims were far enough out of hearing, and in all probability every man of them must have been butchered on the spot.

It may be proper here to mention, that the whole number of men in the cutter were ten, namely, Mr. Rowe, our first mate, Mr. Woodhouse, a midshipman, Francis Murphy, quarter-master, James Sevilley, the Captain's servant, John Lavenaugh, and Thomas Milton, belonging to the after-guard; William Facey, Thomas Hill, Michael Bell, and Edward Jones, fore-castle-men. Most of these were the stoutest and most healthy people in the ship, having been selected from our best seamen. Mr. Burney's party brought on board the head of the Captain's servant, with two hands, one belonging to Mr. Rowe, known by a hurt it had received; and the other to Thomas Hill, being marked with T. H. as before mentioned. These, with other mangled remains, were inclosed in a hammock, and with the usual ceremony observed on board ships, were committed to the sea. Not any of their arms were found; nor any of their cloaths, except six shoes, no two of which were fellows, a frock, and a pair of trousers. We do not think this melancholy catastrophe was the effect of a premeditated plan, formed by the savages; for two canoes came down, and continued all the forenoon in Ship Cove, and these Mr. Rowe met, and bartered with the natives for some fish. We are rather inclined to believe, that the bloody transaction originated in a quarrel with some of the Indians, which was decided on the spot; or, our people rambling about too secure, and incautious, the fairness of the opportunity might tempt them to commit the bloody deed; and what might encourage them was, they had found out, that our guns were not infallible; they had seen them miss fire; and they knew, that when discharged, they must be loaded before they could again do any execution, which interval of time they could take proper advantage of. From some circumstances we concluded, that after their success, there was a general meeting on the east side of the Sound. We knew the Indians of Shag Cove were there, by a long single canoe, which some of our people with Mr. Rowe had seen four days before in Shag Cove. After this shocking affair, we were detained four days in the Sound by contrary winds, in which time we saw none of the inhabitants. It is a little remarkable, that Captain Furneaux had been several times up Grays Cove with Capt. Cook, where they saw no inhabitants, and no other signs of any, but a few deserted villages, which appeared as if they had not been occupied for many years; and yet, in Mr. Burney's opinion, when he entered the same cove, there could not be less than fifteen hundred, or two thousand people. Had they been apprized of his coming, we doubt not they would have at-

tacked him; and seeing not a probability remained of any of our people being alive, from these considerations, we thought it would be imprudent to renew the search, and sent a boat up again.

On Thursday, the 23d of December, we departed from, and made sail out of the Sound, heartily vexed at the unavoidable delays we had experienced, to contrary to our sanguine wishes. We stood to the eastward, to clear the straits, which we happily effected the same evening, but we were baffled for two or three days with light winds before we could clear the coast. In this interval of time, the chests and effects of the ten men who had been murdered, were sold before the mast, according to an old sea custom. We now steered S. S. E. till we got into the latitude of 56 deg. S. At this time we had a great swell from the southward, the winds blew strong from S. W. the weather began to be very cold; the sea made a continual breach over the ship, which was low and deep laden, and by her continual straining, very few of our seamen were dry either on deck or in bed. In the latitude of 58 deg. S. and in 213 deg. E. longitude, we fell in with some ice, and standing to the east, saw every day more or less. We saw also the birds common in this vast ocean, our only companions, and at times we met with a whale or porpoise, a seal or two, and a few penguins.

On the 10th of January 1774, we arrived a-breast of Cape Horn, in the latitude of 61 deg. S. and in the run from Cape Palliser in New Zealand to this cape we were little more than a month, which is one hundred and twenty-one degrees of longitude in that short time. The winds were continually westerly, with a great sea. Having opened some casks of pease and flour, we found them very much damaged; for which reason we thought it most prudent to make for the Cape of Good Hope, intending first to get into the latitude and longitude of Cape Circumcision. When to the eastward of Cape Horn, we found the winds came more from the north, and not so strong; and frequent from the westward, as usual, which brought on thick foggy weather; so that for several days together, we were not able to make an observation, the sun all the time not being visible. This weather lasted above a month, in which time we were among a great many islands of ice, which kept us constantly on the look out, for fear of running foul of them. Our people now began to complain of colds and pains in their limbs, on account of which we hauled to the northward, making the latitude of 54 deg. S. We then steered to the east, with an intention of finding the land laid down by M. Bouvet. As we advanced to the east, the nights began to be dark, and the islands of ice became more numerous and dangerous.

On the 3d of March, we were in the latitude of Bouvet's discovery, and half a league to eastward of it; but not perceiving the least sign of land, either now, or since we obtained this parallel, we gave over a further search after it, and hauled away to the northward. In our last track to the southward, we were within a few degrees of the longitude assigned for Bouvet's discovery, and about three degrees to the southward; if therefore there should be any land thereabout, it must be a very inconsiderable island; or, rather we are inclined to think, a mere deception from the ice; for, in our first setting out, we concluded we had made discoveries of land several times, which proved to be only high islands of ice, at the back of large fields, which M. Bouvet might easily mistake for land, especially as it was thick foggy weather.

On the 17th, in the latitude 48 deg. 30 min. S. and in 14 deg. 26 min. E. longitude, we saw two large islands of ice. On the 18th, we made the land of the Cape of Good Hope, and on the 19th, anchored in Table Bay. Here we found Commodore Sir Edward Hughes, with his majesty's ships Salisbury, and Sea Horse. We saluted the garrison with thirteen guns, and the commodore with an equal number; the latter returned the full complement, and the former, as usual, saluted us with two guns less. At this place Capt. Furneaux left a letter for Capt. Cook; and here we remained

mained to refit the ship, refresh the people, &c. &c. till the 16th of April, when we hoisted sail for England; and on the 14th of July, to the great joy of all our sailors, anchored at Spithead.

From a review of the whole, our readers must see, how much this nation is indebted to that able circumnavigator Captain Cook. If they only compare the course the Resolution steered, and the valuable discoveries she made, with that pursued by the Adventure, after she parted company; the contrast will be sufficiently striking. How meritorious also must that person appear in our judgment, who hath not only discovered, but surveyed vast tracks of new coasts; who has dispelled the illusion of a terra australis incognita, and fixed the bounds of the habitable earth, as well as those of the navigable ocean, in the southern hemisphere. No proposition was ever more clearly demonstrated, that there is no continent undiscovered in the southern hemisphere, between the equator and the 50th deg. of southern latitude, in which space all who have contended for its existence have included, if not the whole, at least the most considerable part. But, at the same time that we declare ourselves thus clearly convinced of the non-existence of a continent within the limits just mentioned, we cannot help acknowledging our ready belief, that the land our navigators have discovered, to the S. E. of Staten Land, is part of a continent, projecting from the north, in a narrow neck, and expanding to the southward and westward, in like manner as the South American Continent takes its rise in the south, and enlarges as it advances northward, more particularly towards the east. In this belief we are strengthened by the strong representation of land seen at a distance by our navigators, in latitude 72 deg. and 25 deg. longitude, and by the report of Theodore Gerrards, who, after passing the straits of Magellan, being driven by tempests into the latitude of 64 deg. S. in that height came in sight of a mountainous country, covered with snow, looking like Norway, and seemingly extending from east to west. These facts, and the observations made by Capt. Cook, corroborate each other; and, though they do not reduce the question to an absolute certainty, yet the probability is greatly in favour of the supposed discovery. To conclude these reflections, and to place the character of our judicious navigator in the most striking point of view, we need only add, as proposed, an uncontested account of the means, by which, under the divine favour, Capt. Cook, with a company of 118 men, performed a voyage of three years and eighteen days, throughout all the climates, from 52 deg. N. to 71 deg. S. with the loss only of one man by sickness; and even this one began so early to complain of a cough, and other consumptive symptoms, which had never left him, that his lungs must have been affected before he came on board to go the voyage. Did any, most conversant in the bills of mortality, whether in the most healthful climate, and in the best condition of life, ever find so small a list of deaths, among such a number of men within that space? How agreeable then must our surprize be, to find, by the assiduity and unremitting exertions of a single skilful navigator, the air of the sea acquitted of all malignity, and that a voyage round the world has been undertaken with less danger, perhaps, to health, than a common tour in Europe! Surely distinguished merit is here conspicuous, though praise and glory belong to God only!

RULES for preserving the HEALTH of SEAMEN in long VOYAGES; and the MEANS employed by CAPT. COOK, to that End, during his VOYAGE ROUND the WORLD, in his MAJESTY'S SHIP the RESOLUTION.

Before we enter upon this subject, which hath for its object the saving the lives of men, it will be necessary to say something on that disorder to which seamen are peculiarly subject; and to consider, how many have perished by marine diseases, before any considerable

improvements were made in the means either of their prevention or cure. The sickness most destructive to mariners, and against the dreadful attacks of which preservatives have been contrived, is the scurvy. This is not that distemper erroneously so called, among land-men; but belongs to a class of diseases totally different from it. So far is the common received opinion from being true, which affirms, "there are few constitutions altogether free from a scorbutic taint," that, unless among sailors, and others, circumstanced like them, more particularly with respect to those who use a salt and putrid diet, and especially if they live in foul air and uncleanliness, we are inclined to think there are few disorders less frequent. Nor do we believe, which is another vulgar notion, that the sea-air is the cause of the scurvy; since, on board a ship, cleanliness, ventilation, and fresh provisions would preserve from it, and upon the sea-coast, free from marshes, the inhabitants are not liable to that disorder, though frequently breathing the air from the sea. We should, for these reasons, rather ascribe the scurvy to other causes; and we believe it to be a beginning corruption of the whole habit, similar to that of every animal substance when deprived of life. This has been verified by the symptoms in the scorbutic sick, and by the appearances in their bodies after death. With respect to the putrifying quality of sea-salt, we may remark, that salted meats, after some time, become in reality putrid, though they may continue long palatable, by means of the salt; and common salt, supposed to be one of the strongest preservatives from corruption, is, at best, but an indifferent one, even in a large quantity; and in a small one, so far from impeding putrefaction, it rather promotes that process in the body. Some are of opinion, that the scurvy is much owing to intense cold, which checks perspiration; and hence, say they, arises the endemic distemper of the northern nations, particularly of those around the Baltic. The fact is partly true; but we are doubtful about the cause. In these countries, by reason of long and severe winters, the cattle, being destitute of pasture, can barely live, and are therefore unfit for use; so that the people, for their provisions, during that season, are obliged to kill them by the end of autumn, and to salt them for above half the year.

This putrid diet then, on which they must so long subsist, seems to be the chief source from whence the disease originates. And if we consider, that the lowest class of people in the north, have few or no greens nor fruit, in winter, little or no fermented liquors, and often live in damp, foul, and ill-aired houses, it is easy to conceive, how they should become liable to the same disorder with seamen; whereas, others, who live in a high latitude, but in a different manner, are free from it. Thus we are informed by Linnaeus, that the Laplanders are unacquainted with the scurvy; for which no other reason can be assigned, than their never eating salted meats, nor indeed salt with any thing, but their using all the fresh flesh of their rein-deer. And this exemption of the hyperborean nations from the general distemper of the north, is the more remarkable, as they seldom taste vegetables, and bread never. Yet in the very provinces bordering on Lapland, where they use bread, but scarcely any vegetables, and eat salted meats, they are as much troubled with the scurvy as in any other country. But here we may properly observe, that the late improvements in agriculture, gardening, and husbandry, by extending their salubrious influence to the remotest parts of Europe, and to the lowest class of people, begin sensibly to lessen the frequency of that complaint, even in those climates wherein it has been most brief and fatal. Again, it has been asserted, that those who live on shore, or landmen, will be affected with the scurvy, though they may have never been confined to salt meats; but of this we have not met with any instances, except among such who have breathed a marshy air, or what was otherwise putrid; or among those who wanted exercise, fruits, and the common vegetables; under which particular circumstances we grant, that the humours will corrupt in the same man-

though not
men. In the w
filled with Fro
among them, no
died with salted
allowance of tre
though with-out ve
the necessary supp
and foul, the h
ambient moat, and
air were so small
that the men sold
A representation ha
in consequence th
with roots and gre
which were quartered
had the liberty of a
they all quickly n
that the scurvy foo
from their having b
their diet, they w
Such is the nature
destructive to sailors.

Let us now take
veget; and by a ce
comes, we shall see
and value of the
been most success
its prevention and
establishment of th
was fitted out, and
who was then stit
equipment consist
and eighty men c
were so weakened
only three degrees
the merchants, wh
were obliged to do
on shore, and at S
ment on this side t
in all, nearly a fou
that before they ha
of their destination.
in that age, an intel
it upon record, "th
had used the sea, he
land mariners who
done." If then in
of England, so mar
sea-faring men, wh
since that early dat
sily increasing, new
yet so little advance
medicine. And w
it might have been
aggrandize the nava
and her commerc
improvement; yet,
and few measures w
of seamen, more t
informed ancestors.
petition of Commis
and lord, affords a
this assertion. Afte
Muir, the scurvy
squadron; and by
vanced but a little
sailors died of it in
any on board, wh
touched with the s
that time been quit
the ninth month,
Fernandez, the Ce
and such an amaz
make in this single
that island the had
ing able to muster
going duty, than t
mult-men. This w
ship which reach
No. 24.

though not in the same degree, with those of the men. In the war, when Sittinghurst Castle in Kent was filled with French prisoners, the scurvy broke out among them, notwithstanding they had never been served with salted victuals in England, but had daily allowance of fresh meat, and bread in proportion, though without vegetables. And besides the want of this necessary supply of greens, the wards were crowded and foul, the house damp, by reason of a circumambient moat, and the bounds allotted for taking the air were so small, and in wet weather so swampy, that the men seldom were disposed to quit the house. A representation having been made of these deficiencies, in consequence thereof the prisoners were supplied with roots and greens for boiling in their broth, which were quartered out in a dry situation, where they had the liberty of air and exercise; and by these means they all quickly recovered. We think it probable that the scurvy sooner appeared among these strangers, from their having been taken at sea, and therefore, from their diet, they were more disposed to the disease. Such is the nature and cause of that sickness most destructive to sailors.

Let us now take a transient view of its dreadful ravages; and by a contrast between the old and present times, we shall see, more evidently, the importance and value of the means proposed, and which have been most successfully employed by Capt. Cook, for its prevention and cure. In the first voyage for the establishment of the East-India Company, a Squadron was fitted out, and under the command of Lancaster (who was then styled general) in the year 1601. The equipment consisted of four ships, with four hundred and eighty men on board. Three of those vessels were so weakened by the scurvy, when they had got only three degrees beyond the equinoctial line, that the merchants, who had embarked on this adventure, were obliged to do duty as common sailors. At sea, on shore, and at Soldania, the then place of refreshment on this side the Cape of Good Hope, there died in all, nearly a fourth part of their complement, and that before they had proceeded half way to the place of their destination. Sir William Hawkins, who lived in that age, an intelligent and brave sea-officer, has left upon record, "that in twenty years, during which he had used the sea, he could give an account of ten thousand mariners who had been consumed by the scurvy alone." If then in the very infancy of the naval power of England, so many were destroyed by that baneful sea-scurvy men, what must have been the havoc made since that early date, while our fleet has been gradually increasing, new ports for commerce opening, and yet so little advancement made in the nautical part of medicine. And within our own remembrance, when it might have been expected, that whatever tended to aggrandize the naval power of Great Britain, and to extend her commerce, would have received the highest improvement: yet, even at these latter dates, we shall find few measures were adopted to preserve the health of seamen, more than had been known to our unimproved ancestors. The successful but mournful expedition of Commodore Anson, afterwards an admiral, and lord, affords a melancholy proof of the truth of this assertion. After having passed the straits of La-Maire, the scurvy began to rage violently in this little Squadron; and by the time the Centurion had advanced but a little way into the South Sea, forty-seven sailors died of it in that ship; nor were there scarcely any on board, who had not, in some degree, been touched with the distemper, though they had not at that time been quite eight months from England. In the ninth month, when abreast of the island of Juan Fernandez, the Centurion lost double that number; and such an amazing swift progress did the mortality make in this single ship, that before they landed on that island she had buried 200 of her hands; not being able to muster any more in a watch, capable of doing duty, than two quarter masters, and six fore-mast-men. This was the condition of one of the three ships which reached that island; and the other two

suffered in proportion. Nor did the destroyer stop here his cruel ravages, but, after a few months respite, renewed his attacks; for the same disease broke out afresh, making such havoc, that before the Centurion (in which were the whole surviving crews of the three ships) had reached the island of Tinian, there died sometimes eight or ten in a day, so that when they had been only two years on their voyage, they had lost a larger proportion than of four in five of their original number, and all of them after having entered the South Sea, of the scurvy: but we apprehend this was not strictly the case; but that the cause of so great a mortality was a pestilential kind of distemper, distinguished on land by the name of the jail, or hospital fever; and indeed, in the observations made by two of Commodore Anson's surgeons, it is affirmed, that the scurvy at that time was accompanied with putrid fevers: however, it is not material, whether the scurvy, or fever combined with it, were the cause of the destructive mortality in Lord Anson's fleet, since it must be acknowledged both arose from foul air, and other sources of putrefaction; and which may now, in a great measure, be obviated, by the various means fallen upon since the time of that expedition: and this naturally leads us, in due order, to take a view of the principal articles of provision, and other methods employed by that prudent as well as brave commander, Capt. Cook. We shall mention all such articles as were found the most useful; and in this list of preservative stores, shall begin with

I. Sweet wort. This was distributed, from one to three pints a day, or in such proportion as the surgeon judged necessary, not only to those men who had manifest symptoms of the scurvy, but to such also as were judged to be most liable to it. Beer hath always been esteemed one of the best antiscorbutics; but as that derived all its fixed air from the malt of which it was made, this was thought to be preferable in long voyages, as it would take up less room than the beer, and keep longer sound. Experience has since verified the theory; and in the medical journal of Mr. Patten, surgeon to the Resolution, we find the following passage, which fully corroborates the testimony of Capt. Cook and others, in favour of Sweet Wort, as being the best antiscorbutic medicine yet known. "I have found (observes this gentleman) the wort of the utmost service in all scorbutic cases during the voyage. As many took it by way of prevention, few cases occurred where it had a fair trial; but these, however, I flatter myself, will be sufficient to convince every impartial person, it is the best remedy hitherto found out for the cure of the sea scurvy; and I am well convinced, from what I have seen the wort perform, and from its mode of operation, that if aided by portable soup, four-kroot, sugar, sago, and currans, the scurvy, that maritime pestilence, will seldom, or never make its appearance among a ship's crew, on the longest voyages; proper care with regard to cleanliness and provisions being observed." It hath been constantly observed by our sea-surgeons, that in long cruizes, or distant voyages, the scurvy never makes its alarming appearance, so long as the men have their full allowance of small beer; but that when it is all expended, the disorder soon prevails: it were therefore to be wished, that our ships would afford sufficient room for this wholesome beverage. But, we are informed, the Russians both on board, as well as on land, make the following middle quality between wort and small beer. They take ground malt and rye meal in a certain proportion, which they knead into small loaves, and bake in the oven. These they infuse occasionally in a proper quantity of warm water, which begins so soon to ferment, that in the space of 24 hours, their brewage is completed, and a small, brisk, acetous liquor produced, to which they have given the name of quas. Dr. Mounsey, who lived long in Russia, in writing to his friends in England, observes, that the quas is the common and salutary drink both of the fleets and armies of that empire, and that it was peculiarly good. The same gentleman having visited the several prisons in the city of Muscov, was surprized to find it full of

malefactors, but more so when he could discover no fever among them, nor learn that any acute distemper, peculiar to jails, had ever been known there. He observed that some of those places for confinement had a yard, for the use of the prisoners, but in others without that advantage, they were not sickly: so that he could assign no other reason for the healthful condition of those men, than their kind of diet, which was the same with that of the common people of the country, who live mostly on rye-bread (a strong acescent) and drink quas. Upon his return to St. Petersburg, he had made the same enquiry there, and with the same result. From this account it should seem, that the rye-meal both quickens the fermentation, and adds more fixed air, since the malt alone could not so readily produce such a tart, brisk liquor. And there is little doubt, but that whenever the other grains can be brought to a proper degree of fermentation, they will more or less in the same way become useful. That oats will, we are convinced from an experiment made by Capt. Cook. When on a cruise in the Effex, a 74 gun ship, and the scurvy breaking out among his crew, he recollected a kind of food most proper on that occasion, which he had seen used in some parts of the north, called Sooins. This is made by putting some oat-meal into a wooden vessel; then pouring hot water upon it, let the infusion continue until the liquor begins to taste sourish, that is, till a fermentation comes on, which, in a place moderately warm, may be produced in about two days. The water must then be poured off from the grounds, and boiled down to the consistence of a jelly. This the Captain ordered to be made and dealt out in messes, being first sweetened with sugar and seasoned with some prize French wine, which, though turned sour, improved the taste. This diet chiefly, not less palatable than medicinal, and by abstaining from salt meats, quite recovered his scorbutic sick, not only in this, but in subsequent cruises, without his being obliged to send one of them on shore because they could not recover at sea. Before the power of the fixed air in subduing putrefaction was known, the efficacy of fruits, greens, and fermented liquors was commonly ascribed to the acid in their composition; and we have still reason to believe, that the acid concurs in operating that effect. In case of a scarcity in these articles, or a deficiency of malt, or when the grain should be spoiled, other substitutes may be found very serviceable; as distilled water, acidulated with the spirit of sea salt, in the proportion of only ten drops to a quart; or with the weak spirit of vitriol, thirteen drops to the same measure, which may be given to those who are threatened with the scurvy, at least three quarts of this liquor daily, to be drank with discretion, as they shall think proper. The fixed air abounds in wine, and perhaps no vegetable substance is more replete with it than the juice of the grape. If we join the grateful taste of wine, we must rank it the first in the list of antiscorbutic liquors. Cyder is also excellent, with other vinous productions of fruit; indeed this salutary fixed air is contained more or less in all fermentable liquors, and begins to oppose putrefaction as soon as the working, or intestine motion commences.

II. The next article of extensive use, was Sour-krou, (four cabbage) a food of universal repute in Germany. Its spontaneous fermentation produces that acidity which makes it agreeable to the taste of all who eat it. The *Effex* had a large quantity of this wholesome vegetable food on board, and it spoils not by keeping: in the judgment of Capt. Cook, four-krou is highly antiscorbutic. The allowance for each man, when at sea, was a pound, served twice a week, or oftener, as was thought necessary. Some of the distinguished medical writers of our times, have disapproved of the use of cabbage as an anti-scorbutic; notwithstanding the high encomiums bestowed upon it by the ancients, (witness what Cato the elder, and Pliny the naturalist, say on the subject) and although it hath had the sanction of the experience of nations, for many past ages;

and by experiments laid before the Royal Society, some of our most eminent physicians, it has been demonstrated, that this vegetable, with the rest of supposed alcalcescents, are really acescents; and the scurvy is never owing to acidity, but to a species putrefaction; that very cause of which the ill-grounded classes of alcalcescents was supposed to be a promoter.

III. Portable Soup was another article with which the *Resolution* was plentifully supplied. An ounce of each man, or such other quantity as circumstances pointed out, was boiled in their pease daily, three days in every week; and when vegetables were to be had was boiled with them. Of this were made several nourishing messes, which occasioned the crew to eat greater quantity of vegetables than they would otherwise have done. This broth being freed from all fat and having by long boiling evaporated the most putrescent parts of the meat, is reduced to the consistence of a glue, which in effect it is, and will, like other glues in a dry place keep sound for many years.

IV. The Rob of Oranges and Lemons, which the surgeon made use of in many cases, with great success. Capt. Cook, it has been observed, did not much rely on these acids as a preservative against the scurvy; for which the following reason has been assigned by one of our most eminent physical professors. These preparations being only sent out upon trial, the surgeon of the ship was told how much he might give for a dose, without strictly limiting the quantum. The experiment was made with the quantity specified, but with so little success, that judging it not prudent to lose more time, he set about the cure with the wine alone, of the efficacy of which he was fully convinced while he reserved the robs for other purposes; more particularly for colds, when to a large draught of warm water, with some spirits and sugar, he added a spoonful of one of them, and with these ingredients made a grateful sudorific that answered his intention. To which we may add, as worthy of notice, that as they had been reduced to a small proportion of their bulk by evaporation, it is probable they were much weakened, and that with their aqueous particles they had, by the fire, lost not a little of their aerial. If therefore a further trial of these juices were to be made, they should be sent to sea purified and entire in casks, agreeable to a proposal sent into the Admiralty some years ago by an experienced surgeon of the navy. Upon the whole, the testimonies in favour of the salutary qualities of these acids are so numerous, and so strong, that we should look upon some failures, even in cases where their want of success cannot so well be accounted for as in this voyage, not a sufficient reason for striking them out of this list of preservatives against the consuming malady to which seamen are particularly subject. Nor must we omit observing under this head, that Capt. Cook says not more in praise of vinegar than of the robs, as appears from an extract of a letter which he wrote to the president of the Royal Society, dated Plymouth Sound, July 7th, 1776. "I entirely agree with you, (says the Captain) that the dearth of the Rob of Lemons, and of Oranges, will hinder them from being purchased in large quantities; but I do not think these so necessary; for though they may assist other things, I have no great opinion of them alone. Nor have I a higher opinion of vinegar. My people had it very sparingly during the late voyage; and towards the latter part, none at all; and yet we experienced no ill effects from the want of it. The custom of washing the inside of the ship with vinegar I seldom observed, thinking fire and smoke answered the purpose much better." We will not controvert the position here laid down by Capt. Cook, nor would we infer from hence, that he thought vinegar of little service to a ship's company, but only that as he happened in this voyage to be sparingly provided with it, and yet did well, he could not therefore consider a large store of vinegar to be so material an article of provisions, as was commonly imagined: but notwithstanding the Captain supplied its place with four krou, and trusted chiefly to fire

for purifying the navigators will not be a useful article. In seasoning, very proper for the sick, and may be used as a medicine. In order to prevent infection, it is certainly a good one who may be convinced. Thus much for the addition to the long voyages, which is occasioned, as occasioned; to which he added, or his company were to command the account. V. Captain Cook's head of two; that three divisions, each watch by the boat every man had either, whereas, at watch a duty at once, they can have but one, they cannot handle calls them open, fibres. When served, and no men, with such fish-seamen do; need call, ought not to be indulged with as much labourers? I officers to expose to as possible; and we know to what was the name commander. people from the scowling over his deck; a polar circle, he provoked their Maghwellen stuff, with their heads; and this working in rain in high southern latitudes to him who what honorary reward, who contrived to have many; mealment, on the return the loss of her bold, having every danger the prosperity, open empire! VI. Unremitted reflection, and a variety to procure, and in To this end, some put into a proper cessity to every part of the air nearest to the lighter, and, by the hatchways into a room is filled with heated in its turn, placed with other the fire for some time the foul air is in fresh admitted. In burning, act prevent the corrupted nearly thus aired has been observed that all the old twickly than those construction; which

for purifying his decks, yet it is to be hoped future navigators will not wholly omit such a refreshing and useful article. It is at least a wholesome variety in washings, very proper for cleaning the receptacles of the sick, and may be used at times, successfully as a medicine. The physician himself will smell to vinegar to prevent infection from contagious diseases, and the smell is certainly agreeable to the sick, especially to such who may be confined to a foul and crowded ward. Thus much for the salutary articles that have of late been added to the naval stores of all the king's ships on long voyages, which Capt. Cook ordered to be dispensed, as occasion might require, in a bountiful manner; to which he added the following regulations, either wholly new, or hints from Sir Hugh Palliser, Captains Campbell, Wallis, and other experienced friends; and, as from these he formed a plan, to which all his ship's company were to conform, he made them his own, and we may therefore justly place the merit to our skillful commander's account.

V. Captain Cook put his crew at three watches, instead of two; that is, he formed his whole crew into three divisions, each of which was ordered upon the watch by the boatswain four hours at a time; so that every man had eight hours free, for four of duty: whereas, at watch and watch, the half of the men being on duty at once, with returns of it every four hours, they can have but broken sleep, and, when exposed to wet, they cannot have time to get dry, before the whistle calls them up, or they may lie down to rest themselves. When service requires, hardships must be endured, and no men in the world encounter them so readily, and with such alacrity, as our thorough bred English seamen do; nevertheless, when there is no pressing call, ought not our brave, hardy mariners to be indulged with as much uninterrupted rest as our common labourers? Indeed it is the practice of all good officers to expose their men as little to wet weather as possible; and we doubt not but they will pay attention to what was made an essential point with our humane commander. In the torrid zone he shaded his people from the scorching rays of the sun, by an awning over his deck; and in his course under the southern polar circle, he provided for each man what the sailors called their Maghellan jacket, made of a substantial woollen stuff, with the addition of a hood for covering their heads; and this garb they found most comfortable for working in rain and snow, and among the loose ice in high northern latitudes. If Rome decreed a civic crown to him who saved the life of a single citizen, what honorary rewards, what praises are due to that hero, who contrived, and employed, such new means to save many; means, whereby Britannia will no more lament, on the return of her ships from distant voyages, the loss of her bold sons, her intrepid mariners, who, by braving every danger, have so liberally contributed to the prosperity, opulence, and glory, of her maritime empire!

VI. Unremitted care was taken to guard against putrefaction, and a variety of measures pursued, in order to procure, and maintain, a purity of air in the ship. To this end, some wood, and that not sparingly, being put into a proper stove, was lighted, and carried successively to every part below deck. Wherever fire is, the air nearest to it, being heated, becomes specifically lighter, and, by being lighter, rises, and passes through the hatchways into the atmosphere. The partial vacuum is filled with the cold air around, and that being heated in its turn, in like manner ascends, and is replaced with other air as before. Thus, by continuing the fire for some time, in any of the lower apartments, the foul air is in a good measure driven out, and the fresh admitted. Besides, the acid steams of the wood, in burning, act probably here as an antiseptic, and correct the corrupted air that remains. The ship was generally thus aired with fires once or twice a week. It has been observed by an officer of distinguished rank, that all the old twenty gun ships were remarkably less sickly than those equal in dimensions, but of modern construction; which circumstance he could no other-

wife account for, than by the former having their fire-places or kitchen in the fore part of the deck immediately above the hold, where the flue vented so ill, that, when the wind was a-stern, every part was filled with smoke. This was a nuisance for the time, but which was abundantly compensated by the good health of the several crews: for those fire-places dried the lower decks, much more when placed below, than they can now under the fore-castle upon the upper deck. But the most beneficial end answered by these portable stoves was, their drying up the damps, and foul moisture, especially in those places where the air was most likely to be corrupted for the want of a free circulation. This foul moisture is formed of the breath, and perspirable matter of a multitude of men, of the animals or live stock, and of the steams of the bilge water from the well, where the stagnated corruption is the greatest. This putrid humidity, being one of the principal sources of the scorbutic disease, was, in order to its removal, particularly attended to; and, while the fires were burning, some of the hands were employed in rubbing hard, with canvass or oakum, every part of the ship that was damp and accessible. But the advantage of these means for preserving the health of mariners, appeared no where so conspicuous, as in purifying the well; which, being situated in the lowest part of the hold, the whole leakage runs into it, whether of the ship itself, or the casks of spoiled meat, or corrupted water. Yet this place was rendered both safe and sweet, by means of an iron pot filled with fire, and let down to burn therein: we say safe, because the noxious vapours, from this sink alone, have often been the cause of instantaneous death to those who have unwarily approached to clean it; and not to one only, but to several successively, when they have gone down to succour their unfortunate assistants. When this wholesome process could not take place, by reason of stormy weather, the ship was fumigated with gunpowder, mixed with vinegar or water. The smoke could have little effect in drying, but it might correct the putrid air, by means of the acid spirits from the sulphur and nitre, assisted, perhaps, by the aerial fluid, then disengaged from the fuel, to counteract putrefaction. These purifications by gunpowder, by burning tar, and other resinous substances, are sufficiently known. We wish the same could be said of the ventilator, invented by Dr. Hales, the credit of which, though we are convinced of its excellence, is far from being established in the navy. Perhaps Capt. Cook had not time to examine it, and therefore would not encumber his ship with a machine he had possibly never seen worked, and of which, he had, at best, received but a doubtful character; and we find he was not altogether unprovided with an apparatus for ventilation. He had the windfalls, which he found very serviceable, particularly between the tropics. They take up little room, require no labour in working, and the invention is so simple, that they can fail in no hands; but yet their powers are small, in comparison with those of Hales's ventilator; add to which, they cannot be put up in hard gales of wind, and they are of no use in dead calms, when a circulation of air is chiefly necessary, and required.

VII. The attention of Capt. Cook was directed not only to the ship, but to the persons, hammocks, bedding, cloaths, &c. of the crew, and even to the utensils they used, that the whole might be constantly kept clean and dry. Proper attention was paid to the ship's coppers; and the fat which boiled out of the salt beef and pork, the Captain never suffered to be given to the people, being of opinion that it promotes the scurvy. Cleanliness is not only conducive to health, it also tends to regularity, and is the patron of other virtues. If you can persuade those who are to be under command, to be more cleanly than they are disposed to be of themselves, they will become more sober, more orderly, and more attentive to their duty. The practice in the army verifies this observation; yet, we confess, a mariner has indifferent means to keep himself clean, had he the inclination to do it; but, in our opinion, sea-officers

officers might avail themselves of the still for providing fresh water for the purpose of washing; seeing it is well known that salt water will not mix with soap, and linen wet with brine, seldom thoroughly dries. As for Capt. Cook, one morning, in every week, he passed his ship's company in review, and saw that every man had changed his linen, and was, in other points, as clean as circumstances would permit; and the frequent opportunities he had of taking in fresh water among the islands in the South Sea, enabled him to allow his crew a sufficient quantity of this wholesome article for every use; and this brings us to another useful means conducive to the health of seamen.

VIII. Capt. Cook thought fresh water from the shore preferable to that which had been kept some time on board a ship, and therefore he was careful to procure a supply of this essential article wherever it was to be obtained, even though his company were not in want of it: nor were they ever at an allowance, but had always sufficient for every necessary purpose. Nor was the Captain without an apparatus for distilling fresh water; but, though he availed himself sometimes of the invention, he did not rely on it, finding by experiments, that he could not obtain by this means nearly so much as was expected. This was no disappointment to him, since within the southern tropic, in the Pacific Ocean, he discovered so many islands, all well stored with wholesome springs; and when in the high latitudes, far from a single fountain, he found the hardships and dangers inseparable from the frigid zone, in some degree compensated by the singular felicity he enjoyed, of extracting inexhaustible supplies of fresh water from an ocean strewed with ice. Those very shoals, fields, and floating mountains of ice, among which he steered his perilous course, and which presented such terrifying objects of destruction, were the very means of his support, by supplying him abundantly with what he most wanted. That all frozen water would thaw into fresh, was a paradox that had been asserted, but met with little credit: even Capt. Cook himself expected no such transmutation; and therefore was agreeably surpris'd to find he had one difficulty less to encounter, namely, that of preserving the health of his men so long on salt and putrid provisions, with a scanty allowance of, perhaps, foul water, or only what he could obtain by the use of the still. An ancient writer, of great authority, no less than one of the Pliny's, had assigned, from theory, bad qualities to melted snow; but our judicious commander affirms, that melted ice of the sea is not only fresh but soft, and so wholesome as to shew the fallacy of human reason, unsupported by experiments. And, what is very remarkable, though in the midst of flocks, falls of snow, thick fogs, and much moist weather, the Resolution enjoyed nearly the same state of health, she had experienced in the temperate and torrid zones. Indeed, towards the end of the several courses, some of the mariners began to complain of the scurvy, but this disease made little progress; nor were other disorders, as colds, diarrhæas, intermittents, and continued fevers, either numerous, alarming, or fatal. Nor, must we omit here, the remark of a celebrated physician, who justly observes, "that much commendation is due to the attention and abilities of Mr. Patten, the surgeon of the Resolution, for having so well seconded his Captain in the discharge of his duty. For it must be allowed, that in despite of the best regulations, and the best provisions, there will always be, among a numerous crew, during a long voyage, some casualties, more or less productive of sickness, and unless there be an intelligent medical assistant on board, many, under the wisest commander, will perish, that otherwise might have been saved. We shall observe, once more,

IX. That Capt. Cook was not only careful to replenish, whenever opportunity permitted, his casks with water; but he provided his men with all kinds of refreshments, both animal and vegetable, that he could meet with, and by every means in his power: these, even if not pleasing to the palate, he obliged his people

to use, both by example and authority; but the benefits arising from refreshments of any kind, soon became so obvious; that he had little occasion to recommend the one, or exert the other. Thus did this expert and humane navigator employ all the means and regulations; which the art of man suggested, or the God of nature provided, for the most benevolent purpose, even that of preserving the health and lives of those entrusted to his care. Here is greater merit than a discovery of frozen; unknown countries could have claimed; and which will exist, in the opinion of every benevolent mind, a subject of admiration and praise, when the disputes about a southern continent, shall no longer engage the attention, or divide the judgment of philosophical enquirers. This is a memorial more lasting than the mimic bust, or the emblazoned medal; for this can never perish, but will remain engraven on the hearts of Englishmen to their latest posterity. May future navigators spring out of this bright example, not only to perpetuate his justly acquired fame, but to imitate his labours for the advancement of natural knowledge, the good of society, and the true glory of Great Britain.

A TABLE of the LANGUAGE used by the NATIVES of the SOCIETY ISLES, in GRAMMATICAL ORDER; to which is affixed an EXPLANATION of their MEANING in ENGLISH.

NOUNS.	
Warracle	Anger
Monnoa	Amusement
Maa	Aliment
Taete	Action
Fete	Abuse
Nohora	Abode
Teeho	Adulterer
Toe	Axe
Ereouroa	Assembly
Taata, toa	Assassin
Tarra	Asperity
Owha	Arrow (body of)
Omea	Point of ditto
Eoomie	Arrow
Oomia	Answer
Madoohowhy	Approbation
Reema	Arm
Ee	Armpit
Evarre	Arches
Waura	Alive
Oopeere	Adulteress
Nana	Avery
Arra, Era	Awake
Parou, mou	True
Fata, hoito	Averse
Peepeere	Avaricious
Ama, Heama	Ashamed
Emotto	A Battle
Poe	Head
Eteoe, Eatce	Bag
Eraeunoo	Bait
Eenecoo	Bamboo
Epa	Bank
Hohore	Bark
Moene	Basket of cocoa leaves
Erreyv	Ditto a fiber's
Papa Maicca	Ditto of plantain stalk
Apoaira	Ditto of cocoa leaves large
Vaihee	Ditto of ditto small
Hena	Ditto of twigs round
Fanna toonea	Bastard
Peeretee	Beetle
Erao	Bee
Eroee, Moia	Bed
Oome oome	Beard
Omorre	Battle-axe
Mydidde	Babe
Eecve, toata	Bastebel
Etama	Brolber
Eevee	Bone

Nouns.
 Eeva
 Toa, Ehoori
 Moie
 Toona, taata
 Toomee
 Ove, cooha
 Eawoo
 Monoo
 Horoo
 Taparoo
 Pepe
 Da
 Te, arrehoo
 Peerra
 Eibana
 Arahooa
 Mydidde
 Yama
 Teeteere
 Ooro
 Eatea
 Eho
 Tappooroo
 Ebooroo
 Pooroo
 Toome
 Ery
 Oma
 Ahooba
 Era
 Toa
 Emo
 Eoonoo
 Oopoboto
 Teura
 Emona Maoure
 Ere, ere
 Mita-po
 Mancea
 Oawera
 Mooto
 Auraua
 Pappa
 Oora
 Tora
 Ohoee
 Orahoee
 Teura
 Epecho
 Pe, peere
 Mire
 Peceya
 Nouna
 Eowa
 Mooto
 Teici
 Awarerewa
 Toopoe
 Emotoo too
 Bee
 Euate
 Aeon
 Eru
 Opee
 Pappiaca
 Manceo
 Eon, thea
 Too, Etoo
 Tamatti
 Etooi
 Trapoo
 Taata Emoo, Eimo
 Pecha
 Moa peeriaia
 Eare
 Tenou
 Emammaten
 Toa

NOUNS.

Boil
Boat, or canoe
Blood
Blister
Blasphemer
Bladder
Bitch
Bo'zness
Bird
Benevolence
Beggars
Butterfly
Bunch (of fruit)
Buds
Bonetto, a fish
Bow
Bow-string
Boy
Branch
Briskness
Bread-fruit
Ditto (a particular kind)
Ditto (paste of)
Bread-tree (gum of the)
Ditto (leaf of the)
Ditto (pith of the)
Bread-plate
The Brow
Brow
Bruin
Boards (carved of a Maray)
Back
Bad
Baked
Bald-headed
Bare
Barren-land
Black
Blind
Blunt
Broiled
Broken
Brown
A Crab
Crayfish
Curlew
Convulvulus
Cork
Cordage
Corner
Covetousness
Cough
Covering of a fish's gills
Coyness
Crab (land)
Crack
Cripple
Cookoo (a brown)
The Crown of the head
Cramp
Core of an apple
Cloth-plant
Claw of a bird
Cbin
Chest of the body
Cheek
A Calm
Ditto
Cane (sugar)
Cap
Caterpillar
Center (or middle)
Chatterer
Cheek
Chicken
Chief (or king)
Ditto (an inferior one)
Cliffs
Club-beater

NOUNS.

Eao
Moa, etoa
Potte potte
Aree
Poo-roowaha, Poo-roo
Erede, vac
Enehaoo
Pahoro, Palicre
Waheine, Mocho, Etoonea
Ooraoo
Paraou maro, Para paraou
Waheine, pooha
Madoo, howhy
Evaheca
Tatou
Teeya
Mareede
Ey
Parooy
Heappa, heappa, Aade pooes
ei, Oora pooce ei
Ooar ara
Aheere, Ooa
Pooheere
Ooera
Teeboota
Aho
Ewhou, arra
Etoo
Porhaoo
Eoore, tehai
Fanou, evahio
Wara
Mammatea
Teeteere, Etirra
Poore, poore
Epooneina, Etooy
Ooama, Eooce
Teate
Evaheca
Eoo, Eecwera
Ooa, pceape, Ehotto
Ooopeco
Motoo
Etee
Epee
Hawa, hawa
Ehoonoo
Oo, atahai
Maheine
Heeva
Parace
Ooboota
Aouna
Adooa
Ooree
Eohoo
Mateina
Pahoo
Mora
Eoo
Poerece
Marama rama
Ootataheita
Matte noa
Tareea, toorce
Mona
Aheao
Erepa
Ehoonoo
Ecca
Faoooue
Ewaou
Mattou
Topotta
Efao
Oomaro
Parremo
Cloud
Clock
Cock-roach
Cocoa-nut
Ditto (bush of a)
Ditto (oil of)
Ditto (leaves of)
Comb
Concubine
Crimson (colour)
Conversation
Contempt (name of)
Consent
Confusedness
Computation
Company
Cold (sense of)
Caution
Cloth round the waist, and a shirt
Ditto (yellow)
Ditto (gummed)
Ditto (nankeen)
Ditto (dark brown)
Ditto (brown thin)
Ditto (an oblong piece of)
Ditto of any kind
Clay
Clapping (a noise)
Clappers
Circumcision
Child-bearing
Cheerfulness
Chalk
Celerity
Chequered, or painted
Choaked
Clean
Clear
Close
Cooked (victuals)
Crammed, or crowded
Crooked
Cut, or divided
A Devil
Disease
Diarrhæa (looseness)
Denial
Drop
Daughter
Dance
Head-dress at funerals
Door
Dolphin
Doll
Dog
Ditch
District
Drum
Duck
Dug, or nipple
Darkness
Day-light
Day-break
Death (natural)
Deafness
Deep-water
Dew
Dirt and nastiness
Disapprobation
Dishonesty
Dissatisfaction
Down (soft hair)
Dread
Drops of rain
Dumbness
Dry
Drowned

Nouns.		Nouns.	
Ecoo	Dressed, not raw	Temy de paaree	Fellow (a young clever one, boy)
Taurooa	Double	Eooha	Female kind
Roa	Distant	Fenoaa, maa	Fertile, land
Taeava	Displeas'd	Eote	Few
Epootooa	Decrepit	Mahouta	Flown
Matic roo	Dead	Ooaro	Forgot
Taatac	An Enemy	Erepa	Foul
Tooo	Echo	Eanna, anna	Fresh
Hcawy	Ebbims, or sea-egg	Pyra, Oopya, Paya	Full (satisfied)
Poe note tarcea	Ear-ring	Moboona	A Grandson
Tareca	Ear	Ouroo	Great great grandfather
Tatooree	Ditto (the inside of)	Too boona tahetoo	Great grandfather
Ehooro te Manoo	Egg	Toobooa	Grandfather
Peery	Egg-bird (white)	Taata Aec, Erapoa nooc	Glutton
Matta	The Eye	Hecocoota	Glass (looking)
Tooa, matta	Eye-brow	Tatooy	Girthing manufacture
Ohoihoi	Evening	Tooneca	Girl
Tetooce	Euphorbium-tree	Tatooa	Girdle
Todree	Elbow	Eho-oo	Gimblet
Tooty	Excrement	Awoutoo	Garland of flowers
Ooataao, Tataoaa	Empty	Orabooboo	Gut (the blind)
Eta, eta	Entire	Aao	Cuts of animals
Oohytei	Equal	Horoa	Generosity
Etoo	Erect	Anonoho	Graft
Poorehooa	A Fly	Tapa	The Groin
Wcewo	Flute	Poorc, poore	Green
Oomamae	Fly-catcher (a bird)	Arahai	Great
Rypocca	Fog	Tomo	Grasping
Taouna	Fool	Mamahou, Maroo	Good-natured
Moa	Fowl	Efarre	A Hut, or house
Apoa	Furunculus (a boil)	Awhatta	House on props
Eecda	Flesh-mark	Efarrepota	Ditto (a large one)
Motoo	Fissure	Ehamootc	Ditto (of office)
Makcera	Fishing-rod	Matau	Hook (fish)
Ewha	Fish-pot	Ecaoure	Ditto (a particular sort)
Epa	Fishing-wall	Erooa	Hole
Eya	Fish	Boa	Hog
Etata	Ditto (the cuckold)	Maoo, Maooa	Hill
Paiau	Ditto (flat green and red)	Taiha	Ditto (called one tee)
Oomorehe	Ditto (a yellow and flat)	Otoo	Heron (a blue)
Eeume	Ditto (green and flat)	Trapappa	Ditto (a white)
Marara	Ditto (flying)	Totera	Hedge-bog (the sea)
Ereema	Finger	Toe	Hatchbet
Epatta	Phillip	Tootou	Harbour
Taharee	Fan	Oraro	Harangue
Ehoo	Fart	Eteete	Hammer
Medooa tanne	Father	Eroroo	The Hair
Tanne, te hoa	Ditto (a step)	Hinnahcina	Ditto (grey)
Hooroo, hooroo manoo	Feather	Ehoo	Ditto (red)
Emoteea	The Face	Peepce	Ditto (curled)
Mamo-oo	Fern-tree	Oetooto	Ditto (woolly or frizzled)
Tiira	Fin of a fish	Epootc	Ditto (tied up)
Pooa	Flower of a plant	Ereema	Hand
Tapooy	Foot	Peeleoi	Ditto (deformed)
Ery	Forehead	One one	Ditto (a motion with)
Ahea	Frapping of a flute	Oopo	Head
Avec	Fruit (yellow)	Evoua	Ditto (born)
Hoooro te manoo	Ditto (perfume)	Enanca	Head-ach, occasioned by drunkenness
Hoooro	Fruit	Ahoutoo	Heart (of an animal)
Foo-ce	Friction	Peere, peere	Iibijicus (a flower)
Taina	Freckles	Po-oorou	Ditto (with yellow flowers)
Tocarre tarcea	Flowers for ear-ornaments	Etooc, Eoowha	Hiccup
Tecarrcoowa	Ditto open	Etohe	Hips
Pooa	Ditto of a plant	Tamorou	Ditto (punctuated)
Papa	Flameless	Epacc no t'Eraec	Horizon
Da-hee-ere-c-reupa	Flapper (a fly)	Maheine, Amauhattoi	Housewife (the industrious)
Amoto	Fish (striking with in dancing)	Ecaoure	Honesty
Eahai	Fire	Efao	Hoariness
Fafa	Feeling (sense of)	Eta, eta	Hardiness
Farara, Toororec	Feebleness	Mahanna, hanna	Heat
Hooroo, hoóroo, te manoo	Feathers (red)	Teimaha	Heavy
Mattou	Fear	Mato	High
Macc	Fat of meat	Poheca	Hot
Moe, momy	Fainting	Fa, atta, atta	Humorous
Faatra atta	Facetious	Pororec, Poeca	Hungry, or Hungry
Hawarre	False	Moioo	An Ill
Peca	Fat		
Eheicu, Faea	Fatigued		

Nouns.
 Mahéine Opatáine
 Ete
 Eia
 Taboone
 Weata
 Oore, eecone
 Teohe
 Twytte
 Teey
 Taea
 Eraboo
 Myro
 Peepere
 Tee, tee
 Roa
 Poo
 Teey
 Tapona
 Yaboo
 Tebona
 Tee, poo
 Etoore
 Omo
 Eoro
 Eere, dahai
 Emoteea
 Poohooa
 Matte
 Eoonoa
 Hwa, hava
 Hecocotta
 Teonai
 Mo-o
 Tuta, hawarre
 To
 Ebaouna
 Eia, Eara
 Fenoa. Whenoa
 Parou
 Tamoro dee, te Tim
 Noe
 Teey
 Ayy
 Maramama
 Oowaira
 Oroo
 Teotoo, arapoa
 Opeca
 Hea, hea, Papoo
 Aooewewa
 Eawwa
 Mima
 Ete
 Tei, tei
 Arahai
 Aeo
 Toohai
 Poo, poo. Poo
 Non ou
 Tuto toa
 Worou, worou
 Ma-oo. Mouta
 Midooa, wahéine
 Epepe
 Whattarau
 Mirama
 Atoonoa
 Ryporea
 E
 Teera
 Fianue
 Moea
 Porou
 Eerec
 Ottaha

Nouns.

Maheine Opataiechu *Inquisitive (a tattling woman)*
 Etee *Image of a human figure*
 Eia *Jaw (the lower)*
 Taboone *Jealousy (in a woman)*
 Weeta *Ignorance*
 Oore, eeeone *Ill-natured*
 Teobe *Imps*
 Tawytte *Incest*
 Teopy *Indolence*
 Taeca *Industry*
 Erahoo *Ink (for punctuation)*
 Myro *Itch (the)*
 Pepeere *Inhospitable*
 Te, tee *Indigent*
 Ria *Immense*
 Poo *Immature*
 Teopy *Indolent (idle)*
 Tipona *A Knot*
 Vahodoo *Ditto (a double one)*
 Tebona *Ditto (a female one)*
 Te, poo *Knuckle*
 Dooree *Knee*
 Omo *Kite that boys play with*
 Eoro *King-fisher*
 Eree, dahai *King*
 Eateca *Kernel of a cocoa-nut*
 Poohoua *The Kidnies*
 Matte *Killed*
 Ootoo *A Loufe*
 Eeonoa *Lover*
 Hwa, hava *Loofenes*
 Heocotta *Looking-glass*
 Teonai *Lobster*
 Mo-o *Lizard*
 Tuta, hawarte *Liar*
 To *Lance, or spear*
 Ebaoua *Lagoon*
 Eia, Eara *Ladder*
 Foooo. Whenoa *Land, a country*
 Paoa *Language*
 Timoro dee, te Timoro dee *Ditto used in dancing*
 Noe *Largenes*
 Teopy *Lazinefs*
 Ayy *Leg (the)*
 Maramama *Day-light*
 Owaira *Lightning*
 Ootoo *Lips (the)*
 Teetoo, arapoa *Lungs (the)*
 Opeca *Lusty*
 Hea, hea, Papoo *Lew*
 Aoweewa *Loofe*
 Ewawa *Loathsome*
 Mama *Light*
 Ete *Little*
 Tai, tei *Lame*
 Arhai *Large*
 Aeo *Lean of meat*
 Teohai *Lean, slender*
 Poo, poo. Poo *A Musket, or any kind of fire-arms*
 Non ou *Muscle-shell*
 Tuto toa *Murderer*
 Worou, worou *Multitude*
 Ma-oo. Mona *Mountain, or bill*
 Mahooa, wahcine *Mother*
 Epepe *Moth*
 Whattarau *Monument (funeral)*
 Marama *Month (lunar)*
 Atoonoa *Mole, or mark*
 Ryporee *Mist, or fog*
 Ei *Measure*
 Teera *Mast of a canoe*
 Fvanne *Mat*
 Moca *Ditto (a silky kind)*
 Pourou *Ditto (a coarse sort)*
 Eerece *Mark (a black one on the skin)*
 Ottaha *Man of war bird*

Nouns.

Taata, Taane *Man*
 Taata, hamaneeno *Ditto (a bad one)*
 Tooncea *Maid, or girl*
 Etoa *The Male of any animal*
 Teropoo *Middle of any thing*
 Marama *Moon*
 Oopoepeoc *Morning*
 Evaha *Mouth*
 Heeva *Music*
 Eeva *Mourning*
 Tapao *Ditto (leaves used on that occasion)*
 Ooata *Motion*
 Mouateitei *Mountains of the first order*
 Mouahaha *Ditto of the second ditto*
 Pererou *Ditto of the third ditto*
 Mamma, hao *Modesty*
 Otoora, heipo *Midnight*
 Ehoohoo *Maggots*
 Worou, worou, manoo, manoo *Many*
 Para, Pe *Mature*
 Wararee *Moist*
 Patca *Motherly*
 Matte. Matteroa *Murdered*
 Fatebooa *Mute*
 Eeeca *A Noun, or name of a thing*
 Taatatooboo *Native*
 Oopaia *Net (fishing one)*
 Oporo *Night shade*
 Eoo *Nipple*
 Eriha *Nit*
 Aree *Nut (cocoa)*
 Eechee *Ditto a large compressed ditto*
 Popoheo *The Noftrils*
 Aceoo *Nail*
 Eure *Ditto of iron*
 Ace *Neck*
 Tatou *Numeration*
 Wawatea *Noon*
 Po. Eao *Night*
 Narreda *Needles*
 Taturra *Naked*
 Peere, peere *Narrow*
 Erepo *Nasty*
 Hou *New*
 Poto. Whattata *Nigh*
 Emoo *Noisy*
 Oohoppe, pooia *An Orphan*
 Ooomoo *Oven*
 Ewhatto *Owner*
 Iteca *Oyster (large sort)*
 Pahooa *Ditto (another sort)*
 Erapao *Ointment plaister*
 Ty, Meede *The Ocean*
 Ooapee *Outside of a thing*
 Maray Wharre *Ornaments (burial)*
 Tooce, tareca *Ditto (for the ear)*
 Warawara *Order*
 Monoc *Oil (perfumed)*
 Oopeca *Obesity (fatness)*
 Nonoa *Odoriferous*
 Orawheva *Old*
 Eatea *Open (spacious)*
 Ferei *Ditto (not shut)*
 Watoowheitte *Opposite*
 Tahoua *A Priest*
 Eoua *Porpoise*
 Oorahoo *Poll*
 Omo *Plant*
 Erabo *Ditto (a small sort)*
 Epecho *Plain*
 Hooahoua *Pimple*
 Eroope *Pigeon (a wood)*
 Oooopa *Ditto (green and white)*
 Oooowydoro *Ditto (black and white)*
 Popoec *Pudding*
 Hawa, hawa *Purging*
 Taata no Erapao *Physician*

NOUNS.		NOUNS.	
Aroumaicca	Petticoat of plantain leaves	Owhay	Stone
Awa	Pepper-plant	Painoo	Ditto (polished, to make the page upon)
Teaoo	Peg	Tame	Stick (a walking)
Poc	Pearl	Everee	Star-fish
Pye, pye	Parvement	Efaitoo. Hwetto	Star
Ear	Path, or road	Etotee	Stage (a fighting)
Earecea	Pass, or strait	Tao	Spear
Parooroo	Partition	Ewhaeono	Span
Eaa	Parroquet (green)	Opai	Sore
Eveence	Ditto (blue)	Heeva	Song
Mgedoa	Parent	Myde	Son
Anoho	Pair	Hoonoa	Son-in-law
Ehoc	Paddle of a canoe	Tectec	A Snipe, or rather a bird resembling one
Etanca	The Palate	Poohecaroo	Snake (sea)
Apooreema	Palm of the hand	Ema	Sling
Etaroo	Part below the tongue	Toocine	Sister
Amaa, Eatta	The peduncle, or stalk of a plant	Parooy	Skirt (white)
Oc, oc, or oi, oi	Point of any thing	Pahec	Ship
Ahooa	Pumpkins	Porehoo	Shell (Tyger)
Oomarra	Potatoes (sweet)	Otco	Ditto (a small one)
Awaawa	Poison (bitter)	Mao	Shark
Faicc	Plantains (bitter)	Towtow	Servant, or common person
Maicca, Maya	Plantain-tree (the fruit of the)	Maray	Sepulchre
Patoonche	Persons of distinction	Papa	Srat
Mahce	Pagle (a fermented)	Fatoo whaira	Scam, between two places
Mamma	Pap	Heavy	Sea-egg
Mamy	Pain (the sense of)	Etata	Scop, with which water is emptied from a canoe
Meatee	Peeled	Etona	Scab
Rec	Petty (small)	Eceoo	Saw
Paeca	Plane (smooth)	Ewhoe	Skate-fish
Maroo	Pleased (not cross)	Mahanna. Era	The Sun
Tectec	Poor	Teineca te Mahanna	Ditto (the meridian)
Wahapoo	Pregnant	Eaha	Sting of a quiver
Teopa	Prone, or face downwards	Ponau	Stopper of ditto
Eooc	Pure, clear	Paracea	Stomach
Pecha	Quiver	Tapooy	Sole of the foot
Fallebooa	Quickness	Eracc	Sky
Etirre	Quickness	Eercc	Skin
Hoc, Fagherre	A Rudder, or steering-paddle of a canoe	Erecawo.	Side
Taura	Rope	Atou, atou	Ditto (the right)
Apoo, Ea	Root	Aroode	Ditto (the left)
Pao	Rock	Eata	Sbore
Eaou	Reef of rocks	Etoroo te paia	Seyne (a net)
Ecea. Taata	Robber, or thief	Hooatootoo, Ehoocero	Seed of a plant
Eara	Road, or path	Tacc, Meede	Sea
Maino	Ring	Poohe	Sea-cat
Awao	Rib	Eecai	Sail of a canoe
Ehoonooa	Refusal	Tyty, Meede	Salt, or salt-water
Yorec. Eyone	Rat	Eone	Sand
Oo-cc	Rasp, or file	Whaitha	Saturn
Maitoe	Raft of Bamboo	Eoora	Smoke
Enooa	Rambow	Tabooa, Manoo	Saunder's island
Maiho	Rait (spotted with black, &c.)	Poa	Scales of a fish
Pooance	Ditto (another sort)	Otoobo, Otoobo	Scissors (a pair of)
T, Ewahei	The Remainder	Eheco	Scoring (the sense of)
Enooa	Ringworm (a disease)	Arawha	Ship-wreck
Toorooc	Rolling of the ship	Tama	Shoes (mud, or fishing)
Ooataponc	Running (to escape)	Matte my Mamy	Sickness
Tooc, tooc	Respiration	Faea	Sighing
Eoa	Rain	Fattebooa	Silence
Ewao wao	Rank (in smell)	Moeroa	Sleep, or death
Eotta	Raw meat	Fatattoo, Ootoo, too, too	Smelling (the sense of)
Parourc	Raw fruit	Bappara	Smutting (with charcoal, at funeral ceremonies)
Oora, oora. Matde	Red	Machecai	Sneezing
Ewha	Rent	Hoope	Mucus
Epotoo	Rich	Teirida	Soberness
Para. Pai Oopai	Ripe	Maroo	Softness
Ooawaira	Roasted, or broiled	Mamay	Soreness, or pain
Roope	Rotten	Paecna	Sound
Tarra, tarra	Rough	Mattaareva	Squint-eyed
Eroo	A Swell (of the sea)	Euhaou	Suicide
Horowai	Surf of the sea	Eto, Too	Sugar-cane
Taropa	Storm	Weeala	Stupidity
Papa. Papa, rooa	Stool, to lay the head on when asleep	Apee	Striking (in dancing)

Totoone	Namooa, Neen
	Pahore, honc
	Maroo, maroo
	Ovee
	Popotoo
	Opance, Puopee
	Oowhyada
	Narra, marua,
	Ete
	Paya
	Mato
	Peere, peere
	Oomara
	Aboola
	Pohcea
	Fatecraha
	Aow
	Eiapayroy
	Maneco
	Too, pppou
	Ehoouo
	Eharrc pootoo p
	Ero
	Tou Erao
	Manooroa
	Enee
	Ero
	Ehoppc
	Epora
	Too
	Ocoo
	Tamata
	Jaehceco
	Arpoo
	Erema, crahai
	Eroo
	Mahca
	Ereeroa. Parou
	Andou
	Fai
	Oooce, teepo
	Pateere
	Hocaire
	Fitebooa
	Paraou, no te op
	Waheey
	Meomcoo
	Apeuhau
	Tooc, tooc
	Eworeroo, Ewo
	Abooucc
	Opai
	Arcooi
	Poo
	Epa
	Mannahouna
	Oomutte
	Aiboo
	Youroua
	Ewoua
	Ar, hai, Mai, a
	Nana
	Mouna
	Ootee
	Waheine
	Waheine mou
	Evarouat Eato
	Ereou
	Milae oupancc
	Mahcine
	Watooncea
	Erahci
	No. 25.

Nouns.
 Tootoone *Stones, such as stand upright before the huts*
 Nanooa, Neeneo *Sinking*
 Pihooce, hoore *Scratched*
 Maroo, maroo *Steady*
 Oace *Sharp (keen edged)*
 Popotoo *Short*
 Opioce, Pnoepee *Sbit (not open)*
 Oowhyada *Similar*
 Marra, maroa, Fata *Slew*
 Ete *Small*
 Pava *Smooth*
 Mato *Steep (approaching to a perpendicular)*
 Pece, peere *Strait (not wide)*
 Omara *Strong (as a strong man)*
 Aboola *Struck*
 Pohera *Sultry*
 Fataeha *Supine (with the face up)*
 Aow *A Tide, or current*
 Eiapayroy *Title (belonging to a woman of quality)*
 Manoo *Toe*
 Too, Pappou *Tomb*
 Ehoouo *Tortoise*
 Eare pootoo pootoo *Town*
 Eao *Tree*
 Tai Eao *Ditto from which clubs, &c. are made*
 Manooroa *Tropic bird*
 Eace *Turban*
 Eo *Tail*
 Ehoppe *Ditto of a bird*
 Epiroa *Tetulum*
 Eoo *Teat, or dug*
 Oeo *Tern (a bird)*
 Tamata *Tasting (sense of)*
 Eaceheo *The Teeth*
 Arpoa *Throat*
 Erema, erahai *Thumb*
 Eero *Tongue*
 Mahca *Twins*
 Eraeroa, Paraou, mou *Truth*
 Aoudou *Trembling*
 Fifi *Touching*
 Otoo, teepo *Time (a space from 6 to 10 at night)*
 Patece *Thunder*
 Hocaire *Throwing (in dancing)*
 Fitebooa *Thoughtfulness*
 Parou, no te opoo *Thoughts*
 Wahey *Thirst*
 Meomoo *Thicknes (in solid bodies)*
 Apeuhau *Tenants*
 Toce, toce *Thick (substance)*
 Eworeeroo, Eworepo *Ditto (muddy)*
 Ahoouce *Tough*
 Opai *An Ulcer*
 Areoi *Unmarried person*
 Poo *Unripe*
 Epao *A Vapour (luminous)*
 Mannahouna *Vassal, or subject*
 Oomutte *Vessel (in which liquor is put)*
 Aiboo *Ditto (any hollow one)*
 Yourooa *Venus*
 Ewoua *The Veins*
 Ara, hai, Mai, arahai *Vast*
 Nana *A Wry neck*
 Mouna *Wiggle*
 Oute *Wound*
 Waheine *Woman*
 Waheine mou *Ditto (a married one)*
 Ewarouat Eatooa *Wife (to one who sneezes)*
 Ereou *Wing (of a bird)*
 Malace oupance *Window*
 Mahine *Wife*
 Watonoea *Widow*
 Eralhei *Wedge*

Nouns.
 Toria *Wart*
 Taatooa *Warrior (or rather a man-killer)*
 Mattay *The Wind*
 Mattae *Ditto (the South-East)*
 Momoa *Wrist*
 Epoum, maa *Whistling (used to call the people to meals)*
 Avy *Water*
 Patoa *Water-creffes*
 Erao *Wood of any kind*
 Meco, meco *Wrinkled*
 Eimeo *Tork Island*
 Peenata *Young*
 Heappa *Yellow*

PRONOUNS.
 Wou, Mee *I, myself, me*
 Nooo *Mine*
 Totaooa *They*
 No-oe *Thine*
 Taooa, Aroorooa *We, both of us*
 Oe *You*
 Nana *He*

VERBS.
 Eteci *To Abide*
 Eooawai *Agitate*
 Fhootee *Angle*
 Homy, Hapymy *Ask for a thing*
 Fyroo, tooty *Wipe the backside*
 Taprahai *Bastinade*
 Oboo *To Bathe*
 Teimotoro *Bawl*
 Toopy *Beat upon*
 Erookoo *Beat a drum*
 Parry *Bespatter*
 Erooy *Belch*
 Fafefe *Bend any thing*
 Etatee *Bewail*
 Aahoo *Bite, as a dog*
 Fatte *Blow the nose*
 Fhoocce, Ehooc-o *Bore a hole*
 Etooo *Bow with the head*
 Owhatte, Owahanne, Fatte *Break a thing*
 Watte weete we wahoo *Breathe*
 Homy *Bring a thing*
 Doodooc *Burn a thing*
 Too-otooooo *Call a person*
 Eamo *Carry any thing*
 Evaha *Carry anyone on the back*
 Popoe, Peero *Catch a thing*
 Amawheea *Catch a ball*
 Ehootc *Catch fish with a line*
 Ey *Chew*
 Ehec, te me, myty *Chuse*
 Taharcc *Cool with a fan*
 Tararo *Court a woman*
 Eneai *Creep on the hands and feet*
 Aaooa *Crow, as a cock*
 Tacc *Cry*
 Eparoo *Cuff*
 Otce *Cut the hair with scissars*
 Oono *Darn*
 Eooce *Desire*
 Faweewo *Dip meat in salt water*
 Eaoowai *Disengage (untie)*
 Faecta *Distort the limbs, &c.*
 Atooha *Distribute*
 Ehopoo *Dive under water*
 Etea *Draw a bow*
 Erao *Draw by force*
 Eu, hauhoo t'Ahoo *Dress (put on cloaths)*
 Aoenoo *Drink*
 Etotooroo, Etooroo *Drop, or leak*
 Ey, Maa *Eat*

VERBS.		VERBS.	
Hohōra	Expand	Orōo	Put a thing away
Topa	To Fall down	Epy	Recline upon
Tearro	Feel	Epouie te rya	Reef a sail
Atee	Fetch it	Moomoomoo	Rend
Eneotto	Fight	Enoho	Resile
Eiote	Finish	Atoo	Rise up
Māhōra	Fist (to open the)	Ewhaoowhaoo	Rise
Panoo	Float on the face in the wa- ter	Euome, Ehoe	Row with oars
Eraire	To Fly (as a bird)	Horoce	Rub a thing
Hefeto	Fold up	Ewhano	Sail
Ehanne	Frisk	Ooao	Scrape a thing
Hoatoo	Give any thing	Erarao	Scratch
Harre	Go, or walk	Oo, Paeme	Search for a thing lost
Erawa	Go, or quit a place	Ehopoc	Send
Haro	Go, begone	Etoce	Sew, or string
Atee	Go fetch it	Eoowai	Shake a thing
Harawai	Grasp	Evaroo, Whanne, whanne	Shave
Eannatehacee	Grate the kernel of a cocoa- nut	Atete	Shiver
Werōoa	Grow	Atomo	Sink
Etoce, toowhe	Grunt, or strain	Anoho	Sit down
Ewoia	Pull the hair	Teepy	Ditto cross legged
Terace	Hew	Moe	Sleep
Ehooa	Hide a thing	Moeroa	Ditto (the long feet, death)
Tapca	Hinder	Tooroore, moe	Ditto (when sitting)
Elebaou, Wapoota	Hit a mark	Aheoi	Smell
Teehe	Hiss	Ehairoo	Snatch
Mou	Hold fast	Eparooparoe	Soften
Tooo	Halloo	Paraou	Speak
Atee te Efaire	Keep at home	Fmare	Spill
Ewhae	Inform	Tootōoa	Spit
Facete	Interrogate	Hohora	Spread out
Ehōora, telawhy	Invert	Nonce-c	Squeeze hard
Mahouta, Araire	Jump, or leap	Roromce	Ditto gently
Talce	Kick	Tatahy	Stamp, or trample on a thing
Fmaa	Kindle	Atcarenona	Stand up
Ehōce	Kiss	Wahee, te dirre	Starle
Eete	Know	Woredo	Steel
Ehea	Labour (work)	Fou, fou	To Sink, or smell ill
Atta	Laugh	Peero, peero	Ditto (as excrement)
Ewhēcoo	Leave	Tecteco	Stool (to go to)
Erawai	Lift a thing up	Atoo	Step
Eteraha, Tepoo	Lie down, or rest one's self.	Oteote	Suck (like a child)
Atoonoo t'Eccwera	Light, or kindle a fire	Aboone	Surround
Teepy	Loll, or be lazy	Ho-ome	Swallow
Ewhatoroo t'Arere	Loll out the tongue	Ewhaapoo te ma	Take care of the vituals
Tapoone	Look for a thing lost	Evevette	Ditto off, or unlose
Ehenaroe	Love	Eooyao	Ditto a friend by the hand
Hohōra, te Moeya	Make the bed	Hahy, whatte	Tear a thing
Facete	Measure a thing	Ewhace te boa	Tend hogs
Ewharidde	Meet one	Taora	Throw, or heave a thing
Tootooe	Melt or dissolve a thing	Evaratowha	Ditto (a lance)
Oohappa	Miss a mark	Amahōoa	Ditto (a ball)
Apoopooe	Mix things together	Harrewai	Throw a thing away
Fpoota	Mince, or cut small	Mynceua	Tickle
Etoohce	Mack	Ty	Tie a knot
Hamamma	Open (the mouth)	Tatahe, Tatahy	Trample upon
Ewhaou	Mutter or stammer	Ooatitte, Eta	Tremble or shake with cold
Atouou	Nod	Hooodeepeepe	Turn about
Tehaddoo	Open	Ooahoe	Turn
Emaooina	Overcome	Tawerece	Twist a rope
Ehapoo	Overturn	Eete	Understand
Oupouppou, tcaho	Pant, or breathe quickly	Taturra	Undress
Whata	To Paddle a canoe's head to the right	Erooy	Vomit
Wemma	Ditto ditto to the left	Arra, arra. Era	Wake (awake)
Atee, Eatee	Peel the skin of a nut	Avouoia	Walk out
Ehee te'mai my ty	Pick, or choose	Hooapeepe	Walk backwards and for- wards
Ooma	Pinch	Mare	Wash
Arcete	Pluck up	Eteae	Watch
Hohootee	Ditto hairs from the beard	Ha noa, a, taeu	Weep, or cry
Eoowhee	Plunge a thing in the water	Evoce	Wet, or sharpen
Mance	Pour out	Mapoo	Whistle
Rorome	Press, or squeeze	Ohemoo	Whisper, or backbite
Eawa, Erooy	Puke	Eamou, amoo	Wink
Eroo, Eroo, Eharoo	Pursue and overtake a per- son	Horoce	Wipe (clean a thing)
Toorece	Push with the hand	Hamamma	Tarn

Awai to Peo
Tienneca
Teedira
No, reid
waho-oo
moa
Bobo
Bobo doora
poe, addoo
te'lo
Yaiba. Au
Yabaca
Boy-a
To beckon
To bid
Friend-(a
A fulfil
Hid year
How do you

PARTICLES.	
Awai to Peerec-ai	Admiration (an interjection)
Tienneca	Above
	All
	Alone
	Before (in opposition to behind)
	Between
Teediraro	Below (in opposition to above)
	Ditto (underneath, or far below)
	Day, to day
	Eight
	Four
	From (there)
	Ditto (without)
	Ditto (before)
	Half
	Immediately
	Morrow (to)
	Ditto (the day after to)
	Ditto (the second day after to)
	Night (to day at night, or to night)
	Nine
Yaiha. Aoure. Acc.	No
	One
	Over (more than the quantity)
	Out
	Perhaps
	Seven
	Six
	Surprize or admiration (an interjection)
	Ten
	There
	Three
	Two
	Under
	Under sail
	When
	Yes
	Yesterday
	Yesterday

PHRASES AND SENTENCES.

Tarappe,	To beckon a person with the hand.
Taata horaoce,	You are a generous man.
Heamance,	Boy—a familiar way of speaking.
Ateera,	How done. It is enough. Or there is no word.
Farcewai,	To hide the face, as when ashamed.
Ehoa,	Friend—(a way of addressing a stranger.)
Eapatte,	A salutation to a particular friend.
Atobianoo,	Hammer it out.
Mamoo,	Hold your tongue, be silent, or quiet.
Tehanooc,	How do you do, or how is it with you?
Vaiizeo,	Keep it to yourself.

Alicoa,	My legs ache, or are tired.
Eoma te tarcea,	To prick up the ears.
Harrencia,	To walk quickly.
Enara,	Shew it me.
Hoina,	Smell it.
Neeate otoo te parou no nona,	He speaks not from his heart, his words are only on his lips.
Atecarenona,	Stand up.
Arcea, Arceana,	Stay, or wait a little.
Taureaa,	Shall I throw it?
Popocunoo,	A little time, a small space.
Tamoo,	A long time, a great while.
Arceana,	Wait, stay a little.
Woura, woara,	Well received, or well esteemed.
Poorotoo,	It is well, charming fine.
Ehara, Eharya, Yehaeca,	What's that? (inquisitively).
Owy te accoa,	What do you call that? What is the name of it?
Whaea,	When? at what time?
Tehea,	Where is it?
Owy, tanna, Owy nana,	Who is that? what is he called?
Aceoo,	Will I not do it? (expressed angrily)
Terra, tanne,	She is a married woman, she has got another husband.

EXPLANATION of the foregoing and following TABLES, so far as respects the pronunciation of the words.

Whatever rules may be laid down for pronouncing a living language, they can be of little service to a person desirous of speaking the same with purity: that pronunciation being best, if not only attained, by living in the country, and a friendly communication with the natives. However, for the better understanding the language in these tables, we shall make a few observations on the powers of the vowels, viz.

A. is sounded the same as A long in the English tongue, as in the word *angel*; **e** has three powers, and has the same simple sounds as in the words *eloquence, bred, then.*

I. in the middle of words, sounds like that vowel in the word *indolence.* Sometimes it is represented by **y.** And sometimes by the proper diphthong *ee.*

O. is often expressed by *oo,* and sounds the same as in the word *good.*

U. is generally expressed by *eu,* and has a long and short sound, as in the words *unity, umbrage.*

T. In the middle or end of words, sounds like *t,* as *ty, my.* But before a vowel, or at the beginning of a word, it is a consonant, as in the English words *yes, yell.*

The diphthongs *ee* and *oo* are proper, and make but one simple sound.

T A B L E II.

A Comparative VIEW, shewing by Inspection the Difference between the LANGUAGES in the SOUTH SEA, from EASTER ISLAND to NEW CALEDONIA—WESTWARD.

ENGLISH.	OTAHUTE.	EASTER ISLAND.	THE MARQUESAS.	AMSTERDAM.	NEW ZEALAND.	MALICOLLO.	TANNA.	NEW CALEDONIA.
<i>A Beer</i>	Efanna	Wagga	Evaa	Fanna	Tawagga	Nabroos	Nafanga	Wang
<i>Cane</i>	Evaa	Moa	Moa	Ecoo	—	Naroo	Nabooy	Necoo
<i>Cocoa-nut</i>	Moa	—	—	Booacka	—	Moeroo	—	—
<i>Fowl</i>	Boa	—	—	—	—	Birroos	Booga	—
<i>Hog</i>	Taata	Papa	Tecte	—	—	Barang	Naroomaan	—
<i>Man</i>	Walheine	—	Veheine	Matta	—	Rabin	Naibraan	Tama
<i>Woman</i>	Matta	Matta	Matta	—	Matta	Maitang	Nancemaiuk	Tevein
<i>The Eye</i>	Tareca	Tarecan	Booena	—	Tarecka	Talingan	Fencencngok	Gaingeng
<i>Ear</i>	Ereema	Rcema	Eoomy	Ereema	Reenga	—	Noogwanaium	Garmoing
<i>Hand</i>	Oopoo	Aopoo	—	—	Takaopo	Balaïne	Ooc	Ooc
<i>Head</i>	Avay	Evy	—	—	—	Ergoar	Ooc	Ooc
<i>Water</i>	Eoaa	Oaa	—	—	—	—	Namawar	Oobe
<i>Rain</i>	Eoche	Oche	—	Ooic	—	Nanram	Ooic	—
<i>Tam</i>	Eya	Ecka	—	Babalanga	Ecka	Namoo	Tanarec	Hamban
<i>Fish</i>	Ahoo	Ahoo	Ahoo	—	Kakahoo	—	Tagooroo	—
<i>Club</i>	Ooroo	—	Maicc	—	—	Borabe	—	—
<i>Bread-fruit</i>	Tatou	—	Epatoo	Tatou	Moko	—	—	Gan, gan, galang
<i>Pine-apple</i>	Wou, ou	—	Wou	—	Ou	—	—	—
<i>I, myself</i>	Oc	—	Oc	—	—	—	—	—
<i>Tea</i>	Aynoo	Accnoo	Accnoo	—	—	Noate	Nooc	Oodoo
<i>To drink</i>	Aita	—	—	—	Katta	—	Hiarith	Ap, Gyep
<i>Laugh</i>	Al	—	—	Ero	Al	—	Eco	Eco, oc Elo
<i>Yes</i>	Ayma	Eifa	—	Erlia	Kaourc	—	Eia	Eva
<i>No</i>	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
NUMERALS.								
<i>One</i>	A Tahay	Katahacc	Attahacc	Tahacc	—	Tickacc	Reedcc	Wageaing
<i>Two</i>	E Rooa	Rooa	Aooa	Eooa	—	Ery	Karoo	Waroo
<i>Three</i>	Toroo	Toroo	Atoroo	Toroo	—	Eri	Kahar	Wateen
<i>Four</i>	A Haa	Haa, Faa	Afaa	Afaa	—	Ebas	Kaphar	Wambeck
<i>Five</i>	E Recma	Recma	Accma	Necma	—	Ercm	Kerurum	Wannin
<i>Six</i>	Aooa	Hoooa	Aooa	—	—	Tookacc	Warecure	Wanningceek
<i>Seven</i>	A Heicoo	Heicoo	Aheicoo	—	—	Maicoo	Maicoo	Wanninno
<i>Eight</i>	Aaooa	Vaooa	Aaooa	—	—	Faooa	Makoo	Wanninno
<i>Nine</i>	Aeeva	Eeeva	Aeeva	—	—	Goodibaa	Makoo	Wanninno

List of the BARK ENDEAVOUR'S OFFICERS and PASSENGERS in Capt. COOK'S FIRST VOYAGE round the WORLD.

OFFICERS, &c.	NAMES.	Their subsequent Fortunes, or what became of them.
Commander,	Capt. James Cook,	Killed on his third voyage, then a Post-captain.
	2d Lieutenant Zachariah Hicks,	Died homeward bound, after leaving St. Helena.
	*3d Lieutenant John Gore,	Now a Post captain in Greenwich-hospital.
	Robert Molineux,	Died homeward bound, after leaving the Cape of Good Hope.
Master,	John Gatheray,	Died of a flux shortly after leaving Batavia.
Boatwain,	William Satterly,	Ditto.
Carpenter,	John Thomson,	Ditto.
Cook,	Stephen Forwood,	Now or lately gunner of the Achilles, of 64 guns.
Gunner,	William Brougham Monkhouse,	Died ashore at Batavia.
Surgeon,	Charles Clerke,	Died on the fourth voyage, a master and commander.
Master's Mate,	Richard Pickersgill,	A lieutenant of the royal navy, drowned by accident in the Thames.
Ditto,	Alexander Weir,	Drowned outward bound at Madeira.
Ditto,	John William Bootie,	Died of a flux after leaving Batavia.
Shipman,	Jonathan Monkhouse,	Ditto.
Ditto,	Patrick Saunders,	Left the ship at Batavia, and died there soon after.
Ditto,	James Magra, alias James Maria Matra,	Since consul of the Canary Islands.
Ditto,	Francis Wilkinson,	Died at Deptford soon after his return.
Ditto,	Isaac George Manley,	A lieutenant of the royal navy.
Surgeon's Mate,	William Perry,	Navy surgeon, lost on Scilly, in the Nancy Packet from India.
Captain's Clerk,	Richard Orton,	A purser of the royal navy.
Master or Purser's Steward,	William Dawson,	Ditto.
Surgeon of Marines,	John Edgcumbe,	Now a captain.

PASSENGERS.

	Joseph Banks, Esq;	The present president of the Royal Society, now Sir Joseph.
	Dr. Daniel Solander,	Died lately in London.
Physician of Mr. Banks,	Herman Diadrich Sporeing,	A Swede, died of a flux after leaving Batavia.
	Sydney Parkinson,	A Quaker, ditto.
	— Buchan	Died, after a short illness, at Otaheite, of fatigue.
	Charles Green,	Died of an inverted gout, after leaving Batavia.

* Capt. Gore has completed four Voyages round the World, besides serving long in the former war on board the Windsor, &c. &c.

List of the SLOOP RESOLUTION'S OFFICERS and MEN, in Capt. COOK'S SECOND VOYAGE round the WORLD.

THE RESOLUTION.

OFFICERS, &c.	NAMES.	
Captain,	James Cook.	1
Lieutenants,	Richard Pickersgill.	1
	Robert H. Cooper.	1
	Charles Clerke.	1
Master,	Joseph Gilbert.	1
Boatwain,	James Gray.	3
Carpenter,	James Wallis.	3
Gunner,	Robert Anderson.	2
Surgeon,	James Patten.	2
Master's Mates,		4
Shipmen,		45
Surgeon's Mates,		6
Captain's Clerk,		1
Assistant,	Hogg,	2
Master at Arms,		1
		16

Corporal	1
Armourer	1
Mate	1
Sail-maker	1
Mate	1
Boatwain's Mates	3
Carpenter's Mates	3
Gunner's Mates	2
Carpenter's Crew	4
Cook	1
Mate	1
Quarter Masters	6
Able Seamen	45
Lieutenant of Marines,	John Edgcumbe.
Serjeant	1
Corporals	2
Drummer	1
Privates	16

LIST of the ADVENTURE'S OFFICERS and MEN in Capt. COOK'S SECOND VOYAGE Round the WORLD.

THE ADVENTURE.			
OFFICERS, &c.	NAMES.		
Captain,	Tobias Furneaux.	Armourer	1
Lieutenants,	Arthur Kemp.	Mate	1
	Joseph Shank.	Sail-maker	1
Master,	Peter Fannin.	Mate	1
Boatswain,	Edward Johns.	Boatswain's Mates	2
Carpenter,	William Offord.	Carpenter's Mates	2
Gunner,	Andrew Gloag.	Gunner's Mate	1
Surgeon,	Thomas Andrews.	Carpenter's Crew	4
Master's Mates,		Cook	1
Midshipmen,		Mate	1
Surgeon's Mate,		Quarter Masters	4
Captain's Clerk,		Able Seamen	33
Master at Arms,		Lieutenant of Marines	1
Corporal,		James Scott	
		Sejeant	1
		Corporal	1
		Drummer	1
		Privates	8

* * Having prepared a *Complete Narrative* (from *Duplicates* of the *Original Journals* of several Officers, who failed in the *Resolution*, when she was destined to explore the *Pacific Ocean*) of *Capt. COOK'S THIRD and LAST VOYAGE*, the *Editors* of this *Complete COLLECTION* of *Remarkable VOYAGES ROUND THE WORLD*, thought their duty to *Compare* it with all the *different accounts* hitherto published of that *Celebrated Voyage*, merely to correct any circumstance which might have been placed in various points of view by the several writers. The *different relations* of this Voyage, as already given to the public, by *Evans, Newbery, Moore, Ellis, Jones, King*, &c. &c. together with those published in *Magazines* and *News-papers*, as well as the Editions published by, and dedicated to the *Lords of the Admiralty*, have been carefully consulted, and have not only been found to contain each other very materially, but also to vary in some very important points from the manuscripts and materials, which have furnished our own account.—We think it therefore to bestow some time, and considerable pains, to investigate the inconsistencies here alluded to, in order that we may be enabled to present to our very numerous subscribers, and the Public, (in the course of this work) what we pledged ourselves to do in our *Proposals*, viz. to give a *New, authentic, full, and complete account* of *COOK'S LAST VOYAGE* to the *Pacific Ocean*, and which will contain all the *facts, incidents, and circumstances*, related in the most *satisfactory manner*. In the mean time, nothing shall be wanting to render this work *absolutely the best extant*; all the large splendid *Copper-plates, Maps, Charts, &c.* will be delivered as they are received from the several *Engravers*, and directions in their being placed right will be given in the last number. The *grand General Chart* of the *World* is executed with the *utmost accuracy* and will be published without any unnecessary delay, shewing *Capt. Cook's different routes* in his *Three successive voyages*, and all his *Discoveries* in one point of view. Our numerous readers will also shortly be presented with a *large Folio Print*, finely engraved, representing the *Death of Capt. Cook*. We shall now proceed to give a *new and accurate Account* of *Commodore BYRON'S VOYAGE Round the World*, as it was the first undertaken and performed during the *present reign*; after which we intend to record those of *WALLIS, COOK, TERET, &c.* and the public may depend, that the only reason we have not given *Cook's Third Voyage* in the part of our *Collection*, is, that we may be able to give a *more full and satisfactory account* of that *Celebrated Voyage*, than has ever been published by any person or persons whatever; and, after having performed our arduous task, we doubt not but our *Subscribers*, and the *Public* at large, will readily acknowledge, that under our care and circumspection, we shall have detected numerous fallacies which have been foisted on the *Public* and represented *facts and circumstances* as they *really happened* in the course of the respective *Voyages, &c.*



NEW, AU
A VO

By the

In his

For making

A genuine Acc
also a Survey
cumstantial,
riolities, dit
July, 1764.
Months, an

*Ext. acc. diary p
Circumstances
and is there p
Passage from
Islands, and
harbour of R
made known,
the, and the
the harbour
tagonia, ten
the inhabit
inhabitants
pleasing circ*

A. D. 1764.

regn, by pat
ries in the u
phere; and v
tention, foou
ing a great
pole. In 17
dable desig
which, on v
to fit out t
frigate, for
Dolphin wa
three lieuten
board; the
three lieuten
The honou
was appoin
and the cou
to Capt. M
for the pu
hitherto u

NEW, AUTHENTIC, and COMPLETE ACCOUNT and NARRATIVE, of
A VOYAGE Round the WORLD,

UNDERTAKEN AND PERFORMED

By the Hon. Commodore (now Admiral) BYRON,

In his Majesty's Ship the DOLPHIN, accompanied by
 Capt. MOUAT, in the TAMAR Sloop.

UNDERTAKEN PRINCIPALLY

For making Discoveries in the SOUTHERN OCEAN, between the Cape of GOOD HOPE,
 and the MAGELLANIC STRAITS;

And Containing, among a Variety of other interesting Particulars,

A genuine Account of the Straits of Magellan, and of the gigantic race of People called Patagonians; also a Survey of several Islands discovered in the Southern Hemisphere; together with a minute, circumstantial, and full Description of the several Places; People, Animals, Vegetables, and Natural Curiosities, discovered and seen in the Course of this remarkable Voyage; which was begun on the 3d of July, 1764, and completed the 9th of May, 1766, containing a Period of more than Twenty-two Months, and included in the Years 1764, 1765, and 1766.

C H A P. I.

Extraordinary preparations made, and precautions used, for this voyage—Names of the two ships, number of men, &c.—Circumstances previous to hoisting the broad pendant, and our setting sail—The Dolphin takes in her guns at Long Reach, as she there joined by the Tamar Frigate—They sail from the Downs, and arrive at Plymouth—Anchor in the Sound—Passage from Plymouth to Madeira—Observation on this island—Run from hence to St. Jago, one of the Cape de Verd Islands, and anchor in Port Praya—Observations on the island and port—They make the coast of Brazil, and enter the harbour of Rio de Janeiro—Observations—Departure from this port, bound, as we thought, to the East Indies—Orders made known, which were to go on discoveries to the South Sea—The Dolphin and Tamar make Cape Blanco, Penguin Ile, and the harbour of Port Desire—The Dolphin in danger of being lost at this last place—Observations on the harbour and adjacent country—Departure from Port Desire in search of Peppy's Island—Anchor on the coast of Patagonia, ten leagues within the mouth of the Straits of Magellan—An account of the extraordinary stature of some of the inhabitants seen there—Proceed up the Straits of Magellan to Port Famine—An account of the harbour, coast, and inhabitants—A description of the country, particularly the woods, and the beautiful Sedger—Favourable and pleasing circumstances during our stay here.

A. D. 1764. **H**IS present Majesty, very early in life formed a plan for distinguishing his reign, by patronizing the prosecution of New Discoveries in the unknown regions of the Southern Hemisphere; and we have been told, that he declared his intention, soon after he came to the crown, of appropriating a great part of his revenue for that particular purpose. In 1764, orders were given for carrying this laudable design into execution; in consequence of which, on the 18th of April, preparations were made to fit out the Dolphin ship of war, and the Tamar frigate, for a supposed voyage to the East Indies. The Dolphin was a sixth rate, mounting 24 guns, and had three lieutenants, 37 petty officers, and 150 seamen on board; the Tamar mounted 16 guns, having on board three lieutenants, 22 petty officers, and 90 seamen. The honourable Commodore (now Admiral) Byron was appointed commander in chief, in the Dolphin, and the command, under him, of the frigate, was given to Capt. Mouat. Both of these vessels were fitted out for the purpose of making discoveries of countries hitherto unknown, within the high southern latitudes,

and in climates adapted to the production of commodities useful in commerce, particularly in the Atlantic Ocean, between the Cape of Good Hope, and the Straits of Magellan. The instruction from the Admiralty-board to the commodore, likewise directed him to make an accurate survey of Peppy's Island, and those which had been named by Sir John Narborough, Faulkland's Islands, in honour of lord Faulkland; which, though first discovered, and since visited by British navigators, had never been sufficiently examined, so as that an accurate judgement might be formed of their coasts, natives and productions. Great care was taken, and extraordinary precautions used, in preparing for this voyage. The bottom of the Dolphin was sheathed with copper; as were likewise the braces and pintles for the use of the rudder, which was the first experiment of the kind, that had ever been made on any vessel. On the 14th of May, being ready for sea, she left the dock, when we received a number of men from the old hulks, which had been for some time used to receive on board materials for the use of the ship. The next day we got in our masts,

and

and with all expedition possible, began to put up the rigging; the greatest part of the hands being now, from the time of her leaving the dock, principally employed in receiving the stores, and in shipping the ablest seamen, till the 9th of June, when we slipped our mooring, and sailed for Long Reach, where we received our guns, and were joined by our intended consort, the Tamar frigate.

On the 14th, we received on board a pilot for the Downs, and at six o'clock, A. M. weighed anchor with little wind, and with our boats a-head: our draught of water forward being then 15 feet six inches, and abaft 14 feet 6 inches. At seven o'clock the Dolphin striking the bottom, swung round; however, the ground being very muddy, it soon gave way, and this accident was attended with no other consequence, than her lying in the mud about two hours. This circumstance at our first setting out, which occasioned only a small delay, instead of checking the ardour of our men, served only to inspire them with hopes of meeting with fewer crosses in the prosecution of their voyage. On the 16th we anchored in the Downs, and moored the ship. During our continuance here, we sent the pilot on shore, and received from Deal a large twelve-oared barge, for the service of our ship, with a quantity of fresh beef and greens. This day the Tamar passed us for Plymouth, and on the following day we received the honourable Capt. Byron on board.

Thursday the 21st, we weighed and sailed from the Downs; and in the night had a violent squall of wind, which, at that season of the year might be reckoned rather uncommon. On the 22nd, at eight o'clock, A. M. we anchored in Plymouth Sound, and saluted the admiral with 13 guns; and at nine, having received a pilot on board, sailed into Hamoaze, and lashed along side the Sheer Hulk. As the Dolphin had taken the ground, the men on board were, according to orders, employed in getting out the guns and booms for docking; it being thought advisable to examine if she had sustained any damage, when it appeared, that the ship had happily not received any hurt. On the 28th she came out of dock, and having replaced her guns and stores, we sailed into the sound, where we moored, and found the Tamar lying between the island and the main, having unbung her rudder, to repair some small damage she had sustained. While we remained at Plymouth, our men received two months pay advance, in order to enable them to purchase necessaries; a privilege granted to all his Majesty's ships bound to distant ports; at which time the inhabitants on shore have the liberty of coming on board to sell them shirts, jackets, and trowsers, which are termed slops. After a stay of four days, the honourable John Byron, our Commodore, hoisted his broad pendant, he being, as was reported, appointed commander in chief of all his Majesty's ships in the East Indies. Immediately upon this a signal was made for sailing, by firing a gun, and loosing our top sails, which being set, and another gun fired, we took our departure from Plymouth, on the 3d of July, having his Majesty's frigate the Tamar in company.

On Wednesday the 4th of July, we shaped our course, with a fine breeze, for the island of Madeira, during which run, we had the vexation of observing, that our consort was a very heavy sailer. On Thursday the 12th, in the evening, we descried the rocks near Madeira, called the Deserts, from their desolate appearance; and on the 13th we came to anchor in Funchiale Bay; so named from the great abundance of a beautiful kind of fennel that grows on the shore. It is on the south part of the island, and at the bottom is the city of the same name, seated on a small plain, from which three rivers run into the sea, forming an island called Loo Rock, it being entirely barren. Upon this is placed a castle, and the town is also defended by a high wall, and a battery of cannon. This island is composed of one continued hill, of a considerable height, extending from east to west; the declivity of which on the south side is interspersed with vineyards, and in the midst of this slope are the country-seats of

the merchants, which add greatly to the beauty of the prospect. The air is so temperate, that the inhabitants feel little inconvenience from heat and cold, there being here a perpetual spring, which produces blossoms and fruit throughout the year. The soil is so fertile, that it produces more corn than any of the adjacent islands, of double the extent. The grass shoots up so high, that they are obliged to burn it; and when they plant sugar canes in the ashes, in six months time they will produce a considerable quantity of sugar. The island abounds with fine cedar-trees, and almost all kinds of rich fruits, particularly grapes, as large as our common plumbs; but all the fine fruits are too luscious to be eaten in any great quantities. The natives are said to make the best sweet-meats in the world; they excel too in preserving oranges, as also in making marmalades and perfumed pailles. The sugar made here is not only remarkably fine, but has the smell of violets; and the wine of this island will keep better in long voyages and in hot countries, than that of any other place in the known world, on which account great quantities of it are bought up for the use of ships, and exported to the West Indies. Their convents have a venerable appearance, from their age and structure. Some of the nuns belonging to them are handsome, and, at particular hours, have the liberty of conversing with strangers, through a double barred grate. Their chief employment consists in making curious flowers of all sorts, little baskets, and other trinkets, in needle-work, which they sell to their visitors, and the money is appropriated to the use of the convents. Notwithstanding the extraordinary fertility of the island, provisions of all kinds are very dear, the inhabitants living chiefly on fruit and roots. There are some hogs and fowls, but they cannot be procured without great difficulty, except by way of exchange for old cloaths, which, in whatever condition, or of whatever kind, are eagerly sought after by the poor among the natives. While we continued here, we were supplied with fresh beef, very indifferent of the kind, as their bullocks, either from want of sweet pasture, or from nature, are both lean, and under the common size. On our arrival in the road of Funchiale, we found the Ferrit and Crown sloop lying at anchor, who saluted our Commodore on his hoisting the broad pendant, the fort also returned our salute with eleven guns: and on the 14th, Commodore Byron waited on the governor, by whom he was received with great politeness; and on the day following the governor returned his visit at the house of the consul. Having taken in our water, wine, and other refreshments, for the use of both the ships companies, on the 19th we began to prepare for proceeding on our voyage.

On Friday the 20th, we took leave of the governor by firing eleven guns, which compliment he returned from the citadel; and at three o'clock, A. M. we weighed anchor and set sail, in company with his Majesty's ships the Crown, Ferrit and Tamar. It is observable, that in leaving this island ships are in a manner becalmed, till they get four or five leagues to the leeward; where they are sure to find a brisk trading wind. The next day we made the island of Palma, one of the Canaries. We now parted company with the Crown and Ferrit, and, on the 22d, spoke with his Majesty's ship Liverpool from the East Indies, by whom we sent letters to England. This day we examined our water-casks, and concluded we were under a necessity to touch at one of the Cape de Verd islands for a fresh supply. On the 26th, our water being foul and stinking, we were obliged to have recourse to a kind of ventilator, which forced the air through the water in a continued stream, whereby it was purified. On the 27th, in the morning, we made the isle of Sal, one of the Cape de Verres, when observing several turtles on the surface of the sea, we hoisted out our boats, in order to strike some of them, but they all disappeared before our people were within reach of them. Indeed we had little chance of catching any sorts of fish, for none of the finny tribe would come near the ship, because the was smeared with copper.

On Monday the island of St. Iago, about a mile from Port Praya, in a small fortification named the complex many season, which very unsafe; for makes a frightful tornado may be rows, and may pang; on which 15th of August, in the month of most fruitful of a withstanding its keys not only pro kinds, and may towns, besides R. makes the govern the priests are part of the inhabitants to forty sufficient to cover soldiers, and the indigent wretches natives flock from kinds of provision cloaths, particularly highest value, and may be provided specie, fruit, and But, however w the first view, from the fertility faras, but what luxuries of life. supply of water moored, signal- ture.

On Thursday, sail, and put to sea after, the search the health of our down in fevers, the utmost care themselves, before we lost a good the Tamar came away. In these in plenty, but w of which disapp

On Thursday Cape Frio, on of south latitude guide from Lo entered the har in eighteen fat S. E. half S. a gear-loaf, prefer side, at the four the largest in th at W. N. W. a N. On the 14 run in between rule from the with eleven gu Our first care v the ships comp of them, espe ready made its On the 19th, who received arms: the nob lace, while 15 flag: his excel was received phin, in a mar occasion all th yards with the No. 26.

On Monday the 30th, at two o'clock P. M. we saw the island of St. Jago; and at three came to an anchor, about a mile from the shore, in the bay called Port Praya, in nine fathoms water, having saluted a small fortification belonging to the Portuguese, who returned the compliment. At this time it was near the rainy season, which, when set in, renders this harbour very unsafe; for a rolling swell from the southward makes a frightful surf on the shore, and every hour a tornado may be expected, which at times is very furious, and may produce fatal consequences to shipping; on which account no vessel comes here after the 15th of August, till the rainy season is over, which is in the month of November. St. Jago is the largest and most fruitful of all the Cape de Verd Islands; and notwithstanding its being rocky and mountainous, the valleys not only produce Indian corn, but fruits of various kinds, and plenty of cotton. The island has four towns, besides Ribeira Grande, the capital, in which resides the governor, Oviadone, and bishop. Most of the priests are negroes, as indeed are far the greatest part of the inhabitants, there being only about three whites to forty blacks, who have scarce cloaths sufficient to cover their nakedness. There are but few soldiers, and those, to outward appearance, are most indigent wretches. A ship no sooner arrives, than the natives flock from all parts of the island with different kinds of provisions; and these they exchange for old cloaths, particularly black, on which they set the highest value, and for a mere trifle of that kind, you may be provided with a sufficient quantity of turkeys, geese, fruit, and other necessary articles of sea-stock. But, however wretched these people may appear at the first view, they live in the greatest plenty, and from the fertility of the soil, enjoy not only the necessaries, but what in other places would be esteemed the luxuries of life. Having by this time got on board a supply of water, fresh provisions, and fruit, we unmoored, signal having been made for our departure.

On Thursday, the 2nd of August, we got under sail, and put to sea, with the Tamar in company. Soon after, the scorching heat, and unceasing rain, affected the health of our crew, many of whom began to fall down in fevers, notwithstanding the commodore took the utmost care to make the men, who were wet, shift themselves, before they laid down to sleep. On the 5th we lost a good deal of way, by shortening sail till the Tamar came up, who had her topsail yard carried away. In these hot latitudes, ships generally take fish in plenty, but we were not able to catch one, the cause of which disappointment, we have already noticed.

On Thursday, the 11th of September, we descried Cape Frio, on the coast of Brazil, in the 23d degree of south latitude, and the 42nd deg. 20 min. W. longitude from London. The next day, about noon, we entered the harbour of Rio de Janeiro, and anchored in eighteen fathoms water, fort St. Acrouse bearing S. E. half S. a remarkable peak, in the form of a sugar-loaf, presenting itself to our view on the larboard side, at the south by east, and Snake's Island, which is the largest in the harbour, appearing close by the town at W. N. W. and the north end of the town at W. half N. On the 14th, we received a pilot on board, and ran in between the island and main, not a quarter of a mile from the shore, and at noon saluted the citadel with eleven guns, which were immediately returned. Our first care was to get on board fresh provisions for the ships companies, which began to be in great want of them, especially of greens, the scurvy having already made its appearance among the men on board. On the 19th, our Commodore visited the governor, who received him in state, putting the guard under arms: the nobility conducted him to the viceroy's palace, while 15 guns were fired in honour of the British flag; his excellency afterwards returned the visit, and was received by the Commodore on board the Dolphin, in a manner suitable to his high rank. On this occasion all hands manned the ship, standing on the yards with their arms extended just to touch each other;

and a salute was given with 15 guns, which was returned by an equal number from the citadel. On the 9th of October, Lord Clive, in the Kent Indiaman, paid Commodore Byron a visit, when he likewise received the same compliment, both at his coming on board, and his going away. The same day a pilot came on board to conduct us into the road, and at six o'clock P. M. we weighed, and set our sails; but having little wind, we were obliged to come again to an anchor, and wait till the next morning, during which time we had an opportunity of making a few observations on the harbour, which seems capable of receiving an hundred sail of ships in good anchorage, with sufficient room for them to ride in safety. The town of Rio de Janeiro is commodiously seated at the back of Snake's island, which being not above five hundred yards from it, commands, from the fortifications erected on it, every thing that can possibly come to annoy the town; and there are several other islands at the entrance fortified with different batteries. These fortifications appear so formidable in the eyes of the Portuguese, that they are so vain as to think, the whole power of Europe would not be sufficient to deprive them of their possession; yet we may safely affirm, that six sail of our men of war of the line would be able to destroy all their batteries in a few hours.

From the 15th of September to the 18th of October, our men were employed in watering, wooding, caulking, &c. We had six Portuguese caulkers to assist our carpenter, who were paid at the rate of six shillings sterling per diem, though it is certain, that one of our English caulkers would do as much in one day, as they could do in three; but though slow and inactive, they perform their work very completely. In this port the air is refreshed by a constant succession of land and sea-breezes; the former comes in the morning, and continues till towards one o'clock, and soon after is regularly succeeded by a strong sea-breeze. These contribute to render the port very healthy and pleasant, and are justly esteemed so salutary, that the negroes term the sea-breeze the Doctor. The soil of Brazil is generally fertile, it producing a variety of lofty trees fit for any use, many of them unknown in Europe; and the woods abound with rich fruits, among which are a considerable number that are neither known in Europe, nor in any parts of America. Oranges and lemons grow here in as great plenty, as nuts in our woods in England. The sugar-cane flourishes here in the utmost perfection, and great quantities of excellent sugar, indigo, and cotton, are exported from hence into Europe. Great quantities of gold are also found by the slaves, numbers of whom are employed in searching for it in gullies of torrents, and at the bottom of rivers; and this country is also famous for its diamonds; With respect to the animals of Brazil, all the horses, cows, dogs and cats are said to have been brought from Europe: among those natural to the country are a great variety of monkeys, Peruvian sheep, deer and hares; the racoon, the armadillo, the flying squirrel, the guano, the opossum, the ant-bear, and the sloth. Among the fowls are many parrots, parroquets, macaws, and other birds remarkable for the beauty of their plumage; with a great variety of singing birds, and several species of wild geese, wild ducks, common poultry, partridges, wood-pigeons and curlews. However, the country of Brazil is no less remarkable for the multitude, the variety, and incredible size of its snakes, and other venomous reptiles. In Rio de Janeiro the viceroy is invested with the same power over the natives, as the king of Portugal enjoys over his subjects in Lisbon. The inhabitants, who are of a brown complexion, have a great number of negro slaves, which they purchase in the public markets, where they are chained two and two together, and generally driven round the town to be exposed to view. The women here are very swarthy, and have disagreeable features; but those of a superior rank are seldom seen, as they are never suffered to go out of doors but by night. The Portuguese are naturally of so jealous a disposition, that strangers, merely by looking at their women incur their resentment, and are

in danger of suffering by that spirit of revenge, which universally prevails in this country; on which account the women are obliged to be always on their guard. Indeed, they here seldom enter upon matrimony; but when tired of each other, they separate by mutual consent, and then endeavour to find out another paramour to supply the place of the former. As soon as the evening approaches, the Portuguese of this city go their rounds, and enter upon scenes of debauchery, which we may venture to affirm are as frequent and flagitious as those between the inhabitants of Lisbon. Rio de Janeiro is seated near the side of a number of high hills, from whence to the southward is a very large aqueduct, which supplies the whole town with water. This aqueduct, which extends across a deep valley, consists of above fifty arches placed in two rows, one upon another, and in some parts rise upwards of a hundred yards from the bottom of the valley. By this means the water is conveyed into two fountains, from whence the inhabitants fetch all they want. These stand opposite the viceroy's palace, which is a stately stone building, and the only one in the whole city that has windows; the other houses in the town having only lattices. At the further end of the palace stands the jail for criminals, which from its structure, and the multiplicity of its iron grates, is far from adding any beauty to the palace, to which it joins. The churches and the convents are extremely magnificent, and calculated to strike the passions of the people who resort to them. On the altar pieces, and other parts of those structures, are many fine figures of our Saviour, the Virgin Mary, the Apollles, and other saints. In these churches a great number of friars and monks of different orders are constantly employed to celebrate mass to as many as happen to assemble; the churches being always open, and wax tapers kept continually burning; whence, in passing by these structures, all those of their persuasion pay due reverence, by pulling off their hats, and crossing themselves, with every other token of respect. In almost every corner of the streets are niches, in some of which are placed crucifixes, and in others some saint, dressed in linen and silk, or other stuffs. The cathedral and Jesuits college, which are the most magnificent buildings in this city, may be seen from the harbour, and form an agreeable distant prospect. A considerable trade is carried on here by a number of merchants who reside in the city. Every year at least forty or fifty sail of ships come from Lisbon, and different parts of the Brazils, besides some ships that trade to Africa, and the small craft that frequent the neighbouring ports. The European ships bring leather, linen, and woollen cloths, coarse and fine bays, serges, hats, stockings, thread, biscuit, iron, hardware, pewter, and all kinds of kitchen furniture, with other commodities; and in return carry from thence sugar, tobacco, snuff, brasil, and other drying and medicinal woods, fustic, raw hides, train oil, &c. With respect to their food, it must be acknowledged, that their beef is very indifferent, as through the excessive heat of the weather, they are obliged to eat it soon after killing, which is performed in the following manner: they drive a number of bullocks into an inclosed place, and then throwing a rope over that they intend to kill, take him out from among the rest, and confine his head down by means of a rope, when a negro butcher coming behind him cuts the hamstrings of his hind legs, and when the beast falls, he sticks a knife in his head exactly between his horns. These cattle are so wild and unmanageable, that few except negro butchers, chuse to encounter them; and yet they are so small, that when the skin, ossal, &c. are taken away, they in general do not weigh more than two hundred and a half. Such are the ingenious remarks of our journalst, who was an officer on board the Dolphin; and our readers will, perhaps, remember, that we have given a full and complete account of the Brazils, and Rio de Janeiro, in the 7th and some of the following pages of this work.

While we continued at the Brazils, yams were served to the ship's company instead of bread, at two pounds a day each man: but we procured sugar, tobacco, and

other commodities at a very reasonable price. Fowls and hogs are however very dear, the chief food of the negroes being fish and Indian corn; the latter of which they cultivate in great quantities, and plenty of the former they catch out at sea, they having a considerable number of fishing canoes, in which they go out in the morning, assisted by the land-breeze, which, as we have before observed, rises regularly at that time, and return in the evening with the sea-breeze, which is no less invariable. In this port they have not only a yard for building ships, but a convenient island, where they can heave down a vessel of any size. A Spanish South-seaman, was obliged to put into this port, while we lay here, in order to heave down, and repair the damage she had sustained. During our stay, Commodore Byron lived on shore, having a commodious house situated on the top of a hill to the northward, where the viceroy and others paid him frequent visits, and shewed him all the respect, that a stranger of his rank could possibly claim. The following piece of information may be of service to future navigators, particularly to those of our own nation.—“The Portuguese, at Janeiro, practice every artifice in their power to entice away the seamen from the ships which touch there; and if by cajoling or intoxicating them, they can get any men without their power, they immediately send such up the country, and keep them there till the ship to which they belong has left the place. By these arts, five men from the Dolphin, and nine from the Tamar, were seduced; the latter were recovered, but the former were effectually seceded.” All hands were now, being the 16th of October, employed to complete the fitting the Dolphin and Tamar for sea, having all the reason possible to believe, that we were bound to the East-Indies, and that we should now proceed to the Cape of Good Hope; the scheme having been so well concerted by the Commodore, as even to deceive Lord Clive, who pressed him with great importunity to allow him to take his passage in the Dolphin, we being in much greater readiness for sea than the Kent, which had besides the misfortune to have many sick on board: but to this the Commodore could not consent; yet flattered his lordship with the hopes of his taking him on board on their meeting at the Cape.

On Saturday, the 20th, we left this port, and the coast of Brazil, bound as we thought for the Cape of Good Hope, but when at sea, by steering to the southward, we to our great surprize found our mistake; and on the 22nd, we were relieved from our suspense; for a signal being made for the commander of the Tamar frigate to come on board, he and our own company were informed, that the Commodore's orders were to go on discoveries into the South Sea: a circumstance that, from the manner of which it was received, furnished the greatest reason to believe, that no one on board had before the least notice of the voyage in which they were now engaged. To this information the Commodore added, that the good behaviour of our company, by order of the lords of the Admiralty, would be rewarded with double pay and other emoluments. This declaration was received with marks of the highest satisfaction; the crew promised obedience to the Commodore as to any orders he should give, and expressed their willingness to do all in their power for the service of their country. Some French writers have given a forced and very inolevolent turn to this generous conduct; but the daring spirit which characterizes British seamen is too well known, for any one to suppose, that an increase of pay was necessary to prompt them to do their duty in perilous service: and the instances of disinterested generosity which distinguish the British nation, cannot leave the true motive which actuated the board of Admiralty, when it thus distributed its bounty, any ways equivocal, or exposed to the misconstruction of invidious men. To make the acquiescence of the French sailors, under the inattention of their government, when M. de Bougainville sailed round the world, an occasion for casting a reflection on the English sailors, for the contrary conduct of government, in a similar circumstance, bespeaks a species of mean slybery, which can disgrace none but those

who practice that polished na
On Monday, the flo
guns overboard
land on the morn
being arrived
round the weather
the latter end of C
in the northern an
sides sixteen degre
A little more than
terable heat, so the
svely felt. The
were to continue
voyage, had dispo
ports where we ha
that now, findi
with cold, they ap
with the necessary
On Friday the
delivered to the li
sions, they having
clera from him.
with vast flocks
brown and white
larger than pigs
33 min. S. and in
ty of rock weed,
perceived the wa
flood in for land,
and in 55 deg. 17
we steered all nu
17th, we found ge
latitude was 42 d
min. W. About
forecastle called
time it was excee
had a good deal
Comodore himself
an island, which f
the land adjoining
the S. E. We w
and founded in
thought himself
of getting clear
the land still ke
hills looking blu
tance, when see
board alerted,
sandy beaches,
hour, what had
vanished; and, t
to have been a
call a fog-bank
calioned by rid
higher latitude
to be accounted
Others have be
fusions. The
outh, that he h
Ireland and gre
tices that grew
no such island
though several
to seek it. A
that if the wea
us to see what
man on board
had been discov
S. and in 60
appearance w
a sudden and
the weather
sky grew black
which reform
beach. The
quarter when
the apprehen
to make the

those who practice it, and which the spirited rivalship of that polished nation does not countenance.

On Monday, the 29th, it blew a violent hurricane, and during the storm we were obliged to throw four of our guns overboard. It continued all night, but subsided on the morning of the 30th, when we made sail, and being arrived in latitude 35 deg. 30 min. S. we found the weather exceeding cold, though at this time the latter end of October, which answers to our April, in the northern and temperate zone, and we were between sixteen degrees nearer the line than at London. A little more than a week before, we had suffered intolerable heat, so that such a sudden change was most severely felt. The seamen, having supposed, that they were to continue in a hot climate during the whole voyage, had disposed of all their warm clothing at the ports where we had touched, as also their very bedding; so that now, finding their mistake, and being pinched with cold, they applied for flops, and were furnished with the necessary articles for a cold climate.

On Friday the 2nd of November, the Commodore delivered to the lieutenants of both ships their commissions, they having hitherto acted only under verbal orders from him. On the 4th, the ship was surrounded with vast flocks of birds, among which were some brown and white, and several pintadoes, somewhat larger than pigeons. We also in latitude 38 deg. 53 min. S. and in 51 deg. W. longitude, saw a quantity of rock weed, and several seals. On the 10th, we perceived the water discoloured, and the next day we stood in for land, being in latitude 41 deg. 16 min. S. and in 55 deg. 17 min. W. longitude. On the 11th, we steered all night S. W. by W. and on Monday the 12th, we found ground at the depth of 45 fathoms: our latitude was 42 deg. 34 min. S. longitude 58 deg. 17 min. W. About four o'clock, P. M. our people in the forecastle called out, "Land right a-head!" At this time it was exceeding black round the horizon, and we had a good deal of thunder and lightning: the Commodore himself imagined what we first decried to be an island, which seemed to rise in two rude craggy hills; the land adjoining to it appeared to run a long way to the S. E. We were now steering in a S. W. direction, and sounded in 52 fathoms water. Our commander thought himself embayed, and entertained little hope of getting clear before night. We now steered E. S. E. the land still keeping the same appearance, and the hills looking blue, as they generally do at a small distance, when seen in dark rainy weather. Many on board asserted, that they saw the sea break upon the sandy beaches, but after having made sail about an hour, what had been taken for land, in a moment, vanished; and, to the astonishment of every one, proved to have been a mere *deception visus*, which seamen call a fog-bank. These delusions are frequently occasioned by ridges of clouds, and sometimes, in the higher latitude, by an extraordinary quality of the air, to be accounted for only by the doctrine of refraction. Others have been equally deceived by these kind of illusions. The master of a vessel, not long since made oath, that he had seen an island between the west end of Ireland and Newfoundland, and even distinguished the trees that grew upon it; yet it is now well known, that no such island exists, at least it could never be found, though several ships were afterwards sent out on purpose to seek it. And Commodore Byron was of opinion, that if the weather had not cleared up soon enough for us to see what we had taken for land disappear, every man on board would freely have made oath that land had been discovered in this latitude of 43 deg. 46 min. S. and in 60 deg. 3 min. W. longitude. This false appearance was succeeded, on Tuesday the 13th, by a sudden and tremendous hurricane. Notwithstanding the weather was extremely fine, in the afternoon the sky grew black to windward, and a noise was heard, which resembled the breaking of the sea upon a shallow beach. The birds were observed flying from the quarter whence the storm issued, and shrieking through the apprehension of its approach. It was not possible to make the necessary preparations before it reached us.

The sea rolled on towards us in vast billows covered with foam. Orders were instantly given to haul up the fore sail, and let go the main sheet; but before we could raise the main tack, the Dolphin was laid upon her beams. We now cut the main tack, for it was impossible to cast it off, upon which, the main sheet struck down the first lieutenant, much bruised him, and beat out three of his teeth. The main-top sail not being quite handed was split to pieces. The Tamar split her main-sail, but being to the leeward, she had more time to prepare; and had not sufficient warning been given by the agitation of the sea, the Dolphin must have been overfet, or her masts would have been carried away. It was the opinion of all our people, that had this storm approached with less warning, and more violence, or had it overtaken us in the night, the ship must have been lost. Our Commodore thought this gust of wind more violent than any one he had encountered; it lasted about twenty minutes, and then subsided. It blew, however, hard all night, and on the 14th, we had a great swell. The sea also appeared as if tinged with blood, owing to its being covered with small red crayfish, of which great quantities were taken up in baskets by the ship's company.

On the 15th, our three lieutenants and the master were so ill as to be incapable of doing their duty; but the rest of our hands were in good health. Our latitude this day was 45 deg. 21 min. and longitude 63 deg. 2 min. E. On the 16th, we shaped our course for Cape Blanco, agreeable to the chart of it, laid down in Anson's voyage; and after many hard gales of wind, on the 17th, we saw the Cape, and for two days struggled hard to reach Port Desire. We now stood into a bay to the southward of the Cape, but could find no port. On the 20th, we made Penguin Island, and as Port Desire was said to be three leagues to the N. W. of it, a boat was sent out, and having found it we stood in for land; and anchored four miles from the shore.

On Wednesday the 21st, we weighed in order to enter the harbour of Port Desire; but found it very rocky, and not above a quarter of a mile from side to side. On our sailing up, the wind was at S. S. W. directly in our favour, and the weather being remarkably temperate, all our boats were round the ship; but on a sudden the wind came about to the N. E. which being directly against us, we made all possible haste to get our sails furled; but being within the harbour we could not return, and the tide of flood running with excessive rapidity, we were obliged to let go both anchors, and before we could bring her up, she took the shore. This was followed by a cold rainy night, rendered more melancholy and gloomy by the reflection, that the boats were all driven to sea, where every person in them would probably perish, and that we ourselves had no reason to expect our ever getting off, as both the wind and tide were against us, but that we should be obliged to live, or perhaps perish, on this desert coast of Patagonia, several hundred leagues to the southward of any European settlement; but at length, to our great joy, our twelve-oared barge providentially drove into the harbour, by which means the ship was preserved, for without this timely assistance she must have perished, we having no boat to carry out an anchor. After many attempts, we carried out our stream anchor, which, when the tide turned, enabled us, by weighing our other anchors, to get into the middle of the harbour, where, with the Tamar in company, we moored both ships; but as it blew very hard, we were obliged to take down our yards and topmasts. Mean while two of our boats had been driven on shore, and the men suffered extremely from its raining very hard all night; but notwithstanding this they returned the next day. As to our long boat, it was carried many leagues out to sea, with only two men in it; we had therefore little prospect of seeing them again; but on the 23d they returned with the boat into harbour, though they were almost starved to death with the severity of the cold and want. On their first appearance we sent a boat to their assistance, which brought them on board.

This

This harbour is not much more than half a mile over. On the south shore is a remarkable rock, rising from the water in the form of a steeple, which appears on entering the harbour's mouth. Abreast of this rock we lay at anchor in seven or eight fathoms water, moored to the east and west, with both bows, which we found extremely necessary, on account of the strong tide that regularly ebbs and flows every twelve hours. Indeed the ebb is so rapid, that we found by our log-line it continued to run five or six knots an hour; and in ten minutes after the ebb is past, the flood returns with equal velocity; besides, the wind generally blows, during the whole night, out of the harbour. It is also necessary to observe, that the ground is far from affording good anchorage; for, as it principally consists of light sand, it is not to be depended on, and if one anchor should start, while the tide is rushing in, the ship would immediately take the shore, before the other anchors could possibly bring her up. However, it may fairly be conjectured, that there is firmer anchorage farther up the harbour, especially for a ship that requires only a small draught of water; for on sending our boats two or three leagues up, they found good anchorage and less tide. On the north shore, about four or five miles above the before mentioned rock, there are some white cliffs that rise to a great height, and, at a distance, nearly resembling chalk, though their whiteness is merely owing to great flocks of birds voiding their dung upon them. The country all around is likewise interspersed with rocks, high and craggy, but between each precipice the ground is covered with long and coarse grass. The valleys form a barren, comfortless prospect, in which there is nothing to entertain the eye but great numbers of wild beasts and birds, and many large heaps of bones that lie scattered about, especially by the side of every stream of water. But we saw no Indians, nor the least sign of the human species. Among the animals we found, near the shore, a great number of seals of different sizes. These live both on the land and in the water, and are so fierce that they cannot be encountered without danger. The head has some resemblance to that of a dog with cropt ears, but in some it is of a rounder, and in others of a longer make. They have large eyes, and whiskers about the mouth: their teeth are extremely sharp, and so strong that they can bite a very thick stick in two. Though without legs, they have a kind of feet or fins, which answer the different purposes of swimming and walking; these have five toes like fingers, armed with nails, and joined together with a thin skin like those of a goose; by the help of which they shuffle along very fast through the sand, or over the small rocks on the shore. Their skins, which are covered with short thick hair, are black, but frequently spotted with different colours, as white, red or grey, and are often manufactured into caps, waistcoats, tobacco-pouches, and the like. The old ones, which are about eight feet long, make a hoarse barking, somewhat like a dog, and the young ones mew like a cat. The largest of them will yield about half a barrel of oil; and their skins, if properly cured, would be of considerable value. Some of our men used to eat the young ones, and their entrails were thought by them as good as those of a hog. Here are likewise a great number of guanicoes, a kind of wild deer, called by some Peruvian sheep, their backs being covered with a very fine soft wool. They have a long neck, and the head resembles that of a sheep; but they have very long legs, and are cloven footed like a deer, with a short bushy tail. These are as large as a middle sized cow, and, when freed from the skin and oil, weigh about two hundred and a half. Their flesh is excellent, either fresh or salted, and after so long a voyage, was very serviceable in refreshing our seamen. They herd together in companies of twenty or more, and the method we pursued in killing them was by sending a party of men in the night, who searched for them by the springs of water to which they resort; and there, lying in ambush among the bushes, they had an opportunity of shooting them at their pleasure; yet these animals, when sensible of danger, suddenly

escape; for they are very swift of foot. In this place are also hares of a prodigious size; for they weigh when alive, near 20 pounds, and, when skinned, are as big as a fox. These are chiefly inhabitants of the valleys. With respect to the feathered race, here are a great number of ostriches, but not near so large as those in Africa. These birds, which are remarkable for the length of their necks and legs, and the shortness of their wings, have been considered by naturalists as holding the same place among birds, as camels do among beasts. Their small head has some resemblance to that of a goose, and their plumage consists of greasy feathers, covering the back as far as the tail, but those on the belly are white. They have four toes on each foot, one behind and three before; and from the shortness of their wings, are unable to raise their bodies from the ground; yet, by their help, they will run with amazing swiftness. We found great quantities of these eggs, some of which are of an enormous size. There is here also another extraordinary large bird, which is called the wild eagle, whose body is about the size of a large turkey of 30 pounds weight. They have a very stately appearance, and are of a dark brown hue, intermixed with different coloured feathers; but what is most curious in these birds, is, their having a crown on their heads, and a ring of feathers round their necks. The barrels of the large feathers or quills in their wings are each half an inch in diameter, and their wings when extended reach 14 feet, from point to point. The penguin, which is also found here, is about the size of a gannet; but, instead of feathers, is covered with a kind of ash-coloured down. Its wings, which resemble those of young gulls, are too short and unledged to permit it to fly, but are of use to it in twimming, and also to assist it in leaping along upon the ground. These birds appear heavy and inactive upon land, where they seem regardless of danger, and are easily knocked down with a stick; yet are active enough upon the water. Their flesh, however, is disagreeable, on account of its having a fishy taste; but their eggs are very good. In the evening they retire to the rocks near the sea, where they stay till the morning. But to return to the history of our voyage.

On Saturday the 24th, both ships being safely moored in the harbour, the Commodore went on shore, and shot a hare, weighing 26 pounds, and saw others, which appeared to be as large as fawns. Landing again, on the 25th, he found the barrel of an old musket, with the king's broad arrow on it, and an oar of a singular form. The musket barrel had suffered so much by the weather, that it might be crumbled to dust between the fingers; it was probably left there by the Wager's people, or by Sir John Narborough, when he was in these parts. Here were some remains of fire, but no inhabitants could be discovered. This party shot several wild ducks, and a hare, which ran two miles before it dropped, with the ball in its body; the flesh of which animal was of an excellent flavour, and as white as snow. Here they found the skull and bones of a man; and caught a young guanicoe, very beautiful, and which grew very tame on board, but died a short time afterwards. On the 27th, we discovered two springs of tolerable good water; and, on the 28th, a run of it was brought on board; but it is to be observed, the mineral qualities of these springs, unfortunately prevented their being of any use to us in supplying our ship with water; and we could not even find a quantity of pure wholesome water fit for our present use. We had sunk several wells to a considerable depth, where the ground appeared moist, but, upon visiting them, had the mortification to find, that, altogether, they would not yield more than thirty gallons in 24 hours. On the south shore the rocks are not so numerous as on the north side; and there are more hills and deep valleys; but they are covered only with high grass; and a few small shrubs. Hence this is but a bad place to touch at, by any ship that is under the necessity of wooding and watering. This day, when a party went on shore, they saw such a number of birds take flight, as darkened the sky, nor could the men walk a step without tread-

ing on eggs; and a little distance from them with stone killed and would be young birds. The furgeon of the crew being sent to the animal taking at him, but could not find the ground, till they had behind them, came leisurely.

During our stay in fitting and carpenters were small, which had been already sent to go in safety, but, when a double allowance was ordered on shore, we also found the rock in form of a S. S. W. of the the ground, with a way of mark. At the, and receive was made for the had the flesh a neck, which the, doublets, con as a good are of h between "cers whenever they had of December, or we took her on board, which had been distant about S. On Wednesday, five and six in the derail, having for out E. N. E. with feeling our course Island, said to have down in latitude longitude. In our 45 deg. from the Cape Blanco, Samuel Pepys, E when lord high A that it had not or find ships might rebounded with w ment for wooding successful attempt procure a fresh tu mortification to win and intellectu ill from the sear Commodore resolved ing in want of w course, large wh about the ship, a as. On the 13th and in 66 deg. 4 is in the evening that the Comm higher than any No. 26.

ing on eggs; and as the birds hovered over their heads a little distance, the men would knock down many of them with stones and sticks. After some time they perceived and would eat the eggs they had carried off, though young birds were in abundance of them. They saw no traces of inhabitants on the river, but numerous herds of guanicoes, which were exceeding shy. The ferguson of the Dolphin, one of the party, shot a tiger-cat, a small, but very fierce animal. Some of the crew being sent on shore for water, on the 30th, two of them discovered a large tyger lying on the ground. The animal taking no notice of them, they threw stones at him, but could by no means provoke him. He remained on the spot, and continued stretched on the ground, till their companions, who were a little way behind them, came up, and then he walked away very deliberately.

During our stay at this place, our men were employed in fitting and completing the ship for sea; and the carpenters were particularly obliged to fish our main-mast, which had been damaged at the head. Others, as has been already mentioned, were employed as rangers to go in search of water, though without success; but, when they were on this duty, they had a double allowance of brandy, and small tents were erected on shore, for their own use. Before our departure, we also sunk two calks, one of them on the north shore from the place of anchorage, a-breast of the rock in form of a steeple. The other calk was sunk on the south shore, two miles and a half to the S. W. of the steeple rock, and near a gentle declivity, on which we erected a post twelve feet high from the ground, with a piece of board nailed across it, by way of mark. At length, having equipped the ship with ballast, and received proper ballast from the shore, signal was made for sailing. Our crew were greatly refreshed by the provisions they met with at this place, having had the shells of the guanicoes served three times a week, which they found to be delicious food; and this, doubtless, contributed greatly to their continuing in a good state of health, as were also all on board our

commodore: besides a perfect unanimity subsisted between the officers and men of both ships, who maintained a friendly intercourse with each other, whenever they had an opportunity. On Saturday, the 11th of December, our cutter being thoroughly repaired, we took her on board, and on the 2nd, we struck our tents, which had been set up at the watering-place. This bears about S. E. of the steeple rock, from which it is distant about two miles and an half.

On Wednesday, the 5th, we unmoored, and between five and six in the evening, weighed. We now got under sail, having fair and pleasant weather, and steered about E. N. E. with a favourable gale at N. N. W. directing our course from Port Desire, in search of Peppy's Island, said to have been seen by Cowley, who lays it down in latitude 47 deg. but makes no mention of its longitude. In our charts it is laid down in longitude of 74 deg. from the meridian of London, bearing E. by S. of Cape Blanco; and it received its name in honour of Samuel Pepys, Esq; secretary to James duke of York, when lord high Admiral of England; who pretended, that it had not only a good harbour, in which a thousand ships might safely ride at anchor, but that it was surrounded with wild fowls, and was extremely convenient for wooding and watering; but after many unsuccessful attempts to discover this island, in order to procure a fresh supply of wood and water, we had the mortification to find, that all our endeavours were in vain and ineffectual. We were therefore obliged to desist from the search, and on the 11th, at noon, the Commodore resolved to stand in for the main, both ships being in want of wood and water. Having changed our course, large whales were observed to swim frequently about the ship, and birds in great numbers flew round us. On the 15th, being in latitude 50 deg. 33 min. S. and in 66 deg. 59 min. W. longitude, we were, about five in the evening, overtaken by the hardest gale at S. W. that the Commodore had ever been in, with a sea still higher than any he had seen in going round Cape Horn

with lord Anson. The storm continued the whole night, during which we lay to under a balanced mizen, and shipped many heavy seas.

On Sunday, the 16th, at eight o'clock A. M. it began to subside; at ten we made sail under our courses; and, on the 18th, in latitude 51 deg. 8 min. S. and in longitude 71 deg. 4 min. W. we saw land from the mast head. Cape Virgin Mary (the north entrance of the Strait of Magellan) bore S. 19. deg. 50 min. W. distant nineteen leagues. The land, like that near Port Desire, was of the downy kind, without a single tree. On the 19th, we stood into a deep bay, at the bottom of which appeared a harbour; but we found it barred, the sea breaking quite from one side of it to the other. At low water it was rocky and almost dry; and we had only six fathom when we stood out again. In this place we observed porpoises, which were milk white, with black spots, pursuing the fish, of which there were great numbers.

Thursday, the 20th, we had little wind with thunder and lightning from the S. W. at four o'clock, A. M. we saw an extremity of land belonging to Cape Fairweather, extending from S. to W. We were now at the distance of four leagues from the shore; when founding, we found twenty-five fathoms water, with soft ground, and the latitude of the Cape to be in 51 deg. 30 min. S. We never sailed above five or six miles from the shore, and, in passing between the last-mentioned Cape and Cape Blanco, we had no soundings with twenty-five fathoms line. The coast here appears in white cliffs, with level buff land, not unlike that about Dover and the South Foreland. We now came in sight of Cape Virgin Mary, from which we were distant five leagues, and also the land named Terra del Fuego. We found the coast to lie S. S. E. very different from Sir John Narborough's description; and a long spit of land running to the southward of the Cape for more than a league. We had very fair weather all the morning, and, at three o'clock, P. M. Cape Virgin Mary bore N. W. half N. About two leagues to the westward, a low neck of land runs off from the Cape; we approached it without danger, and, at six, anchored with the best bower in fifteen fathoms water, at which time the Cape bore N. half E. about seven miles; but the Tamar was so far to leeward, that she could not fetch the anchoring ground, and therefore kept under way all night.

On the 21st, at three o'clock, A. M. we weighed, and again got under sail; and at six the extremes of Terra del Fuego appeared, extending from the S. E. by S. to the S. W. by S. four or five leagues distant. At eight we perceived a good deal of smoke issuing from different quarters, and, on our nearer approach, saw plainly a number of people on horseback. This is the coast of Patagonia, and the place where the half starved remains of the crew of the Wager, as they were passing the strait in their boat, after the loss of the ship, saw a number of horsemen, who waved what appeared to them like white handkerchiefs, inviting them to come on shore. Mr. Bulkley, the gunner of the Wager, who published an account of her voyage and misfortunes, says, that they were in doubt whether these people were Europeans, who had been shipwrecked on the coast, or natives of the country about the river Gallagoes. At ten o'clock we anchored in fourteen fathoms on the north shore, and saw Cape Virgin Mary, which appeared over the low neck of land to the E. N. E. and Point Possession to the W. by S. We were now about a mile from the land, and had no sooner come to an anchor, than we saw with our glasses a number of horsemen abreast of the Dolphin, riding backward and forward, and waving something white, as an invitation for us to come on shore. Immediately our twelve-oared boat was hoisted out, which was manned with the Commodore, Mr. Marshal, the second lieutenant, the journalist, to whom we are indebted principally for the history of this voyage, and a party of men all well armed. Mr. Cumming, our first lieutenant, followed in the six oared cutter.

On our first approaching the coast, evident signs of surprize were visible among some in our boat, on seeing

men of a most enormous size, to the number of about five hundred; while others, perhaps, to encourage the rest, observed, that those gigantic people were as much surprized at the sight of our muskets, as we were at seeing them; though it is highly probable they did not know their use, and had never heard the report of a gun: however, this was sufficient to remind us, that our fire-arms gave us an advantage much superior to that derived from stature and personal strength. The people on shore as we advanced kept waving and hallooing; but we could not perceive they had among them weapons of any kind. When we had rowed within twenty yards of the shore, we lay on our oars, and observed some on foot near the beach, but the greater part were on horseback, drawn up upon a stony spit, which ran a good way into the sea, and where it was very difficult to land, the water being shallow, and the stones very large. They now shouted with great vociferation, and by their countenances seemed eagerly desirous of having us land. After the most amicable signs which we were capable of understanding; or they of giving, a signal was made for them to retire backwards, to a little distance, with which they readily complied. The Commodore now held a short consultation with his officers on the propriety of landing, when one, fired with the thoughts of making a full discovery in regard to these Indians, made a motion to approach nearer and jump on shore, but the Commodore objected to it, and would not suffer any man to go before himself. In a short time we attempted to land, most of our boat's crew being up to the middle in water. The Commodore, regardless of such kind of difficulties, pushed resolutely on, and, having with great intrepidity leaped on shore, drew up his men upon the beach, with the officers at their head, and ordered them not to move from that station, till he should either call or beckon to them. Commodore Byron now advanced alone towards the Indians; but, perceiving they retreated as he advanced, upon this he made signs that one of them should come forward. These being understood, one who appeared afterwards to be a chief, advanced towards him. His stature was gigantic, he being nearly seven feet high. Round one of his eyes was a circle of black paint, and one of white round the other: the rest of his face was painted with various colours, and he had the skin of some wild beast, with the hair turned inwards, thrown over his shoulders. His hair was long and black, hanging down behind. The Commodore and Indian chief having paid their compliments to each other, in a language mutually unintelligible to the person to whom it was addressed, they walked together towards the main body of the natives, few of whom were shorter than the above-mentioned standard, and the women large in proportion. Mr. Byron now made signs for them to sit down on the ground, which they did, and the old men chanted some strains, in a most doleful cadence, with an air of serious solemnity. The eyes of no one person were painted with the same colours, some being white and red, and some black and white. Their teeth are remarkably even, well set, and as white as ivory. Our Commodore, who had the precaution to take with him on shore a number of trinkets, such as strings of beads, and the like, in order to convince them of our amicable disposition, distributed them with great freedom, giving to each some as far as they went. He then took a whole piece of green ribbon, and, putting the end into the hands of the first Indian, he continued it to the next, and so on as far as it would reach; while none of them attempted to pull it from the rest, and yet they seemed more delighted with it, than with the beads. When the ribbon was thus extended, he pulled out a pair of scissors, and cut it between each two of those who held it, leaving about a yard in the possession of each, which he afterwards tied about their heads. It was remarked, that though the presents were insufficient to supply them all, not one pressed forward from the station assigned him, nor seemed to envy the superior good fortune of his neighbour. They were now so delighted with the different trinkets, which they had an opportunity of viewing as the beads hung round

their necks, and fell down before on their bosoms, that the Commodore could scarce restrain them from caressing him, particularly the women, whose large and masculine features corresponded with the enormous size of their bodies. We saw some infants in their mothers' arms, whose features, considering their age, bore the same proportion to those of their parents. Except the skins which these Indians wore, most of them were naked, a few only having upon their legs a kind of hoop with a short pointed stick fastened to each heel, which served as a spur. Some of their women had collars round their necks. Among them was one of the gigantic size, and most disagreeably painted, who had her hair adorned with beads of blue glass, hanging in two divisions down before her shoulders: she had also bracelets of pile gold, or brass, upon her arms. From whence this finery could be procured was a subject of wonder, as from their great amazement at first seeing us, we conjectured that they had never beheld any of our dwarfish race before. It may however be concluded from the accounts of Sir John Narborough, and others, who have taken notice of these Indians, that they are able to change their situation with the sun, spending their summer here, and in winter removing farther to the north, in order to enjoy the benefit of a milder climate. Hence Sir John and others have related, that they saw men of an uncommon size, at least eight or ten degrees more to the northward; whence it may be reasonably conjectured, that during one part of the year, they may have some intercourse with the Indians bordering on the Spanish settlements, and that from them they might have purchased these ornaments. There are those who may dispute the fondness of these Goliath-like Indians for glass, beads, and other trinkets which among civilized nations are held in no estimation; but such should remember, that, in themselves, the ornaments of unpolished and civil life are equal, and that those who live nearly in a state of nature have nothing that resembles glass, so much as glass resembles a diamond; the value which we set upon a diamond, therefore, is more capricious than the value they set upon glass. The love of ornament seems to be a ruling passion in human nature, and the splendour and transparency of glass, and the regular figure of a bead, excite pleasing ideas. The pleasure which a diamond gives among us is, principally, by its being a mark of distinction, thus gratifying our vanity, which is independent of, and frequently over rules natural affections; is gratified by certain lines and hues, to which we give the name of beauty: it must be remembered also, that an Indian is more distinguished by a glass button or bead, than any individual among us by a diamond; though, perhaps, the same sacrifice is not made to vanity, as the possession of his finery is rather a testimony of his good fortune, than of his influence or power, in consequence of his having what, as the common medium of all earthly possessions, is supposed to confer virtual superiority, and intrinsic advantage. One of the Indians shewed our Commodore the bowl of a tobacco-pipe, made of red earth, and by signs intimated that he wanted some tobacco, none of which they had among them. On this the Commodore beckoned to the sermen, who still remained drawn up on the beach, three or four of whom instantly running forward, the Indians were alarmed, and jumping up in an instant were preparing to retire, as it was supposed, to fetch their arms. The Commodore therefore stopped the sailors, directing one of them only to come forward, when he had got all the tobacco they could muster among them. This restored good harmony, and all the Indians resumed their places, except an old man who sang a long song, at nearly the conclusion of which Mr. Cumming brought the tobacco. This gentleman, though six feet two inches high, was himself astonished at the diminutive figure he cut among the strangers, who were broad and muscular in proportion to their height. Their language appeared to us to be nothing more than a jargon of sounds, without any mixture of the Spanish or Portuguese, the only European tongues of which it was possible for them to obtain any knowledge; and which it is probable it would have been mixed, had they

any immediate
neglect of some
before our lan-
means were on
shore, they di-
stance. The
case, yet they
bore no propo-
bottle was a le-
that served for
in use among
women rode at
straps; yet it
which we land
and slippery.
the sun with a
with their sing-
particular circ-
They appeared
sition, and see-
themselves.
tobacco, they
finery which w-
pointed to the
tion to give us
being so great-
probable, that
unaware of
who was equa-
beauty, though
der from the
he must return
again, appear-
making signs
plausible prom-
them from the
who were so di-
that we heard th-
ater. When t-
they kept their
follow him. A-
in his account
they all appear-
the signals or i-
them, and beha-
nature. Such
from the paper
gained no pro-
fore of his acqui-
tion of his affe-
shall insert here-
as, which we
so an officer in
same time with
The Dolphin
into the mouth
deck observed t-
stature, stand-
looking attent-
which they see-
while others, w-
glasses a much
country; b-
sogginess of the
to be becalmed
no time would
in order to see
of their manne-
for himself and
filled with men
should be any
of those who
shore did not
weapon among
in company w-
Indians, who w-
they very read-
yards. He th-
towards them,
was soon incre-

any immediate intercourse with the Spaniards or Portuguese of South America. We must not omit, that before our landing, the greatest part of these Patagonians were on horseback, but on seeing us gain the shore, they dismounted, and left their horses at some distance. Their horses were not large, nor in good case, yet they were well broken, and very swift, but bore no proportion to the size of their riders. The bridle was a leathern thong, with a small piece of wood that served for a bit, and the saddles resembled the pads in use among the country people in England. Their women rode astride, and both men and women without stirrups; yet they galloped fearlessly over the spit upon which we landed, the stones of which were large, loose and slippery. These people looked frequently towards the sun with an air of adoration, and made motions with their fingers, in order to make us sensible of any particular circumstance they wanted us to understand. They appeared to be of an amiable and friendly disposition, and seemed to live in great unanimity among themselves. After they had been presented with the tobacco, they made signs for us to go with them to the smoke which we saw at a distance, and at the same time pointed to their mouths, as if intimating an inclination to give us refreshment; but their number at present being too greatly superior to ours, and it being not improbable, that still greater multitudes might surround us unawares from the inland country, our Commodore, who was equally remarkable for his prudence and bravery, though it not advisable to venture any farther from the water-side, and therefore intimated, that he must return to the ship, on which they sat down again, apparently much concerned. At length, after making signs that we would depart, with the most plausible promises, by gestures, of returning again to them from the ship, we left these Patagonian Indians, who were so distressed and afflicted at our departure, that we heard their lamentations for a considerable time after. When the Commodore took his leave of them they kept their seats, not one offering to detain, or follow him. Another officer on board the Dolphin, in his account of these extraordinary people, adds, that they all appeared to be very sagacious, easily understood the signals or intimations which our people made to them, and behaved with great complacency and good nature. Such is the information we have received from the papers of our journalist, whose veracity required no proof, among those who have had the pleasure of his acquaintance; but as evidences in corroboration of his assertions, and the truth of the facts, we shall insert here the following account of the Patagonians, which we received from a gentleman, who was also an officer in one of the ships, and on shore at the same time with our author.

The Dolphin having entered ten or twelve leagues into the mouth of the straits of Magellan, the men on deck observed thirty or forty people of an extraordinary stature, standing on the beach of the continent, who, looking attentively on them, made friendly signs, by which they seemed to invite them to come on shore; while others, who stood aloft, discovered with their glasses a much greater number, about a mile farther up the country; but ascribed their apparent size to the lightness of the air. The ship happened at this instant to be becalmed; the honourable Mr. Byron, thinking no time would be lost by going ashore, resolved to land, in order to see these Indians, and learn what he could of their manners; he therefore ordered a six-oared boat for himself and officers: and one of twelve oars to be filled with men and arms, as a security, in case there should be any attempt to surprize or injure him, or any of those who went with him; though the people on shore did not seem to have any thing like an offensive weapon among them. On the Commodore's landing, in company with his lieutenant, he made signs to the Indians, who were crowding round him, to retire, which they very readily did, to the distance of thirty or forty yards. He then, attended by his lieutenant, advanced towards them, about twenty yards, and their number was soon increased to upwards of five hundred men,

women, and children. Several civilities at this time passed on both sides, the Indians expressing their joy and satisfaction by singing uncouth songs, shaking hands, and sitting with looks of pleasure, with their wives and children round the Commodore, who distributed among them ribbons and strings of beads, with which they appeared highly delighted. He tied necklaces round the necks of several of the women, who seemed to be from seven to eight feet high; but the men were, for the most part, about nine feet in height, and some more. The Commodore himself measures full six feet, and, though he stood on tip-toe, he could but just reach the crown of one of the Indian's head, who was not, by far, the tallest among them. The men are well made, broad set, and of a prodigious strength. Both sexes are of a copper colour; they have long black hair, and were covered partly with skins, which were fastened about their necks by a thong; the skins worn by the men being loose, but the womens were girt close with a kind of belt. Many of the men and women rode on horses, which were about fifteen hands and a half high, all of them astride; and they had among them some dogs, which had a picked snout like a fox, and were nearly of the size of a middling pointer. These friendly people invited the Commodore, and all those who were landed, to go with them up the country, shewing a distant smoke, and pointing to their mouths, as if they intended to give us a repast; and, in return, the Commodore invited the Indians to come on board, by pointing to the ship; but neither of them accepted of the others invitation, and therefore, having passed two hours in an agreeable conversation, carried on wholly by signs, they parted, with all the marks of friendship. The country (observes this gentleman) is sandy; but diversified with small hills, covered with a short grass, and with shrubs, none of which, as Sir John Narborough has long before remarked, is large enough to make the helve of an hatchet.

Another gentleman on board has favoured us with an account that exactly tallies with the above, with these additional circumstances. That when they were ten or twelve leagues within the straits, they saw through their glasses many people on shore of a prodigious size; which extraordinary magnitude they thought to be a deception, occasioned by the haziness of the atmosphere, it being then some what foggy; but on coming near the land, they appeared of still greater bulk, and made amicable signs to our people to come on shore. That when the ship failed on to find a proper place of landing, they made lamentations, as if they were afraid our people were going off. He also says, there were near 400 of them, and about one third of the men on horses not much larger than ours; and that they rode with their knees up to the horses' withers, having no stirrups. That there were women and many children, whom some of our people took up in their arms and killed, which the Indians beheld with much seeming satisfaction. That by way of affection and esteem, they took his hand between theirs and patted it; and that some of those he saw were ten feet high, well proportioned, and well featured; their skins were of a warm copper colour, and they had neither offensive nor defensive weapons. He also says, that they seemed particularly pleased with lieutenant Cumming, on account of his stature, he being six feet two inches high, and that some of them patted him on the shoulder, but their hands fell with such force, that it affected his whole frame.

There is nothing about which travellers are more divided, than concerning the height of these Patagonians. M. de Bougainville, who visited another part of this coast, in the year 1767, asserts, that the Patagonians are not gigantic; and that what makes them appear so, is their prodigious broad shoulders, the size of their heads, and the thickness of all their limbs. Some time before the hon. Mr. Byron made this voyage, it was the subject of warm contest among men of science in this country, whether a race of men upon the coast of Patagonia, above the common stature, did really exist; and the contradictory reports, made by ocular witnesses,

witnesses, concerning this fact, tended greatly to perplex the question. It appears that, during one hundred years, almost all navigators, of whatever country, agree in affirming the existence of a race of giants upon those coasts; but, during another century, a much greater number agree in denying the fact, treating their predecessors as idle fabulists. *Barbenais* speaks of a race of giants in South America; and the *Unca Garcilasso de la Vega*, in his history of *Peru*, is decisively on the same side of the question. For *Quenado* lib. 1. chap. 13 and 14, records the American traditions concerning a race of giants, and a deluge which happened in remote times, in those parts. Magellan, Loaisa, Sarmiento, and Nodal, among the Spaniards; and Cavendish, Hawkins, and Knivet, among the English; Sebald, Oliver de Noort, le Maire, and Spilberg, among the Dutch, together with some French voyagers, all bear testimony to the fact, that the inhabitants of Patagonia were of a gigantic height: on the contrary, Winter, the Dutch admiral *Hermite*, *Froger*, in *De Genes's* narrative, and Sir John Narborough, deny it. Sir Francis Drake, who failed through the straits, says nothing concerning it; and his silence on this head can only be accounted for, on the supposition, either that he saw no inhabitants on the coast in his passage, or that there was nothing extraordinary in their appearance. To reconcile these different opinions, we have only to suppose that the country is inhabited by distinct races of men, one of whom is of a size beyond the ordinary pitch, the other not gigantic, though perhaps tall and remarkably large limbed; and that each possess parts of the country separate and remote from each other. That some giants inhabit these regions, can now no longer be doubted; since the concurrent testimony of late English navigators, particularly Commodore Byron, Captains Wallis and Carteret, gentlemen of unquestionable veracity, establish the fact, from their not only having seen and conversed with these people, but even measured them. But it is now time to proceed with the history of our voyage.

On Friday, the 21st of December, at three o'clock P. M. we weighed, and worked up the strait of Magellan, which is here about three leagues broad, not with a view to pass through it, but to take in a proper stock of wood and water, not chusing to trust wholly to the finding of Falkland's Islands, which we determined afterwards to seek. At eight in the evening we anchored in 25 fathoms water, at the distance of three miles N. N. E. from Port Possession, in view of two remarkable hummocks, which Bulkley, from their appearance, distinguished by the name of the Asses Ears. On the 22nd, at three o'clock, A. M. we weighed and steered S. W. by W. about four leagues, when the water shoaled to six fathoms and a half, we being then over a bank of which no notice has hitherto been taken, and full three leagues from the shore; but, in two or three casts of the log-line, it deepened to 13 fathoms. When the water was shallowest, the Asses Ears bore N. W. by W. and the north point of the first narrow W. by S. distant somewhat more than five miles. We now steered S. W. by S. two leagues to the first narrow, as it is usually called, which brought us through. This narrow is about three miles over, and is the narrowest part of the straits; and through it a regular tide runs with great rapidity. In this run we saw an Indian upon the south shore, who kept waving to us as long as we were in sight; also some guanicoes upon the hills. The land is on each side surrounded with these; but the country is entirely barren, without a single tree, yet we here observed great quantities of smoke from different parts of the shore. The course of the first narrow to a little sea, or the sound, is S. W. by W. about eight leagues. The land on each side is of a moderate height, and rather highest on the north shore, but runs low towards the second narrow. On sounding from the first to the second narrow, we found from 20 to 25 fathoms water, with

good anchorage; and it was there about seven leagues from the north shore to the island of Terra del Fuogo. At the entrance, or east end of the second narrow, lies Cape Gregory, which is a white cliff of a moderate height; and a little to the northward of it is a sandy bay, in which you may ride in eight fathoms water, with very good anchorage. When abreast of Cape Gregory we steered S. W. half W. five leagues, through the second narrow, having a depth of water from 20 to 25 fathoms. We went out of the west end of this narrow about noon, and steered three leagues south for Elizabeth's Island. At this part of the narrow, on the south shore, is a white headland, called Sweetflakes Foreland. The wind being right against us, we anchored in seven fathoms. The island bore S. S. E. about a mile distant, and Bartholomew's Island bore E. S. E. In the evening six Indians came down to the water-side, and continued for some time waving and hallooing to us, but seeing their labour fruitless they went away. Between the first and second narrows the flood sets to the S. W. and the ebb to the N. E. but being past the second narrow, the course, with a leading wind, is S. by E. three leagues between St. Bartholomew's and Elizabeth's Islands, where the channel is one mile and a half over. The flood sets through to the southward with great vehemence and rapidity, so that when near it appears like breakers, and the tide round the islands sets different ways.

On Sunday, the 23d, we had very moderate weather, but hazy, with intervals of fresh breezes. In the morning we weighed, and worked between the two islands: we got over on the north shore before the tide was spent, and anchored in 10 fathoms. St. George's Island bore N. E. by N. distant three leagues; a Point of land, which we named Porpoise Point, N. by W. distant five miles, and the southernmost land S. by E. distant about two miles. In the evening we again got under sail, and steered S. by E. and at ten o'clock we anchored about a mile from the north shore, in 13 fathoms. Sandy Point now bore S. by E. distant four miles; Porpoise Point, N. N. W. three leagues, and St. George's Island N. E. four leagues. On the 24th, we sent the boat to sound between Elizabeth's and St. Bartholomew's Islands, and found it a very good channel, with deep water. On this occasion we saw a number of Indians, who hallooed to us from Elizabeth's Island. Both the men and women were of the middle size, well-made, and with smooth black hair. Their complexion was olive-coloured, and their bodies were rubbed over with red earth, mixed with grease. They are very active and swift of foot. Their cloathing consists of skins of seals, otters and guanicoes, sewed together in a piece about four feet square, and wrapped round their bodies. They have likewise a cap made of the skins of fowls, with the feathers on; and upon their feet were pieces of skins, to answer the purpose of shoes: besides, some of the females had pieces of skin fastened round their waists. The women however had no caps, but wore a kind of necklace, formed of shells. Several of the men had nothing wrapped round them, but were entirely naked. This day the Commodore, accompanied by his second lieutenant, landed upon Sandy Point, where they found plenty of wood, with exceeding good water, and for four miles of their walk the shore was very pleasant. A fine level country is over the point, and the soil, to all appearance, is extremely rich. The ground was covered with different kinds of flowers, that perfumed the air with their fragrance, among which, where the blossoms had been shed, we saw berries innumerable, even the grass was intermixed with peas in blossom. In this luxuriant herbage a multitude of birds were feeding, which, on account of their uncommonly beautiful plumage, we called painted geese. In our walk from Sandy Point, which was more than 12 miles, we saw no part of the shore where a boat could land without great danger, the water being every where shoal, and the sea-breaking very high.

even leagues
a del Fuogo.
ond narrow,
of a moder-
it is a sandy
ht fathoms
hen abreast
all W. five
ng a depth
at out of the
teered three
this part of
e headland,
being eight
The island
of Bartholo-
ng six Indi-
continued for
but seeing
Between the
o the S. W.
the second
is S. by E.
and Eliza-
mile and a
southward
ur when near
d the islands

ry moderate
est breezes.
ed between
th shore be-
o fathoms.
stant three
ed Porpoise
he southern-
es. In the
red S. by E.
mile from the
nt now bore
at, N. N. W.
N. E. four
at to found
ew's Islands,
deep water.
ndians, who
Both the
well made,
plexion was
rubbed over
ey are very
g consists of
ed together
pped round
made of the
upon their
purpose of
d pieces of
omen how-
elace, form-
ng wrapped
his day the
ond lieute-
they found
er, and for
ry pleasant.
and the soil,
The ground
owers, that
ong which,
berries in-
d with peas
a multitude
of their un-
inted geese.
more than
here a boat
ater being
very high.
In

London: Published by the King of the Kingdom of the Netherlands.



The Mode of DANCING in the Island of Ulivai.



A true representation of a MORAI, or BURIAL PLACE, in Ulivai.

COMMODORE

In little recesses
fresh water, we
wants, belonging
lately occupied,
scarcely extinguish
variety of plants,
of which to scan
We returned in
found at anchor
and at the distan
During our abier
in hauling the fe
great quantity of
which were sixty
good sport; for
lupes, and othe
especially at this
ar of this place
they could have
By a good obser
deg. 10 min. S.

On Tuesday
weighed at eight
steered S. by E. a
three miles, but
thoms. Every
non, with respect
the verdure of
afford a most ex
of the shore have
such long voyag
time of the year
these islands bein
from the equator
only one to the so
sailing towards th
found as in steer
between 60 and
generally prevail
very furiously in
August, and Sept
ing round the ca
ships seldom att
At three P. M.
Sandy Point bea
south point of
miles. The tide
ably by the shore
The land here
with water: in
covered with
weighed, and ste
northernmost po
S. by E. half E.
was out from th
and the water
fishoms, at the
the r. 6. The p
be taken in star
floats very sudd
shore there is bu
Soundings will
Aunc's Point; i
lathoms, it will
On Thursday
Famine. Our s
were sheltered fr
Edlam blows, an
bottom of the ba
it is all fine fo
found a consider
green or dry, th
sides the straits
trees that have
drifted by the b
like our birch, l
trunks of some
meter, and 60
cut down for ou
properly dried,
No. 27.

In little recesses of the woods, and always near to fresh water, we discovered a great number of wigwams, belonging to the Indians, which had been very lately occupied, for in some of them the fires were scarcely extinguished. Plenty of wild celery, and a variety of plants, were seen in many places, the utility of which to seamen in a long voyage is well known. We returned in the evening to the ships, which we found at anchor in Sandy Bay, in 10 fathoms water, and at the distance of about half a mile from the shore. During our absence, some of our men were employed in hauling the seine, and in three hours had caught a great quantity of fish, of an extraordinary size; among which were sixty large mullets. A shooting party had good sport; for the place abounds with geese, teal, snipes, and other birds. This excellent food was, especially at this time, very acceptable, for the keen air of this place had made our people so hungry, that they could have eaten three times their allowance. By a good observation we found our latitude to be 53 deg. 10 min. S.

On Tuesday the 25th, being Christmas-day, we weighed at eight o'clock, A. M. and with little wind, steered S. by E. along-side of the shore between two and three miles, but had no sounding with a line of 40 fathoms. Every thing here was in the greatest perfection, with respect to the appearance of the trees, and the verdure of the lands, which in different places afford a most enchanting prospect; and many parts of the shore have pasture for sheep or cows, which in such long voyages are generally on board. At this time of the year the sun is 17 hours above the horizon, these islands being situated nearly at the same distance from the equator, as the middle part of Great Britain, only one to the south, and the other to the north. In sailing towards the South Pole, the same alteration is found as in steering towards the north, till you run between 60 and 70 degrees, when the westerly winds generally prevailing in the southern ocean, and blowing very furiously in the months of April, May, June, July, August, and September, there is no probability of sailing round the cape in these months, for which reason ships seldom attempt it, unless in the proper season. At three P. M. we cast anchor in 18 fathoms water, Sandy Point bearing N. N. W. three leagues, and the south point of Fresh Water Bay, S. E. half E. two miles. The tide here runs very slow, but rises considerably by the shore, where we observed it to flow 16 feet. The land here is diversified with woods, and abounds with water: in some places it rises very high, and is covered with perpetual snow. On the 26th we weighed, and steered S. S. E. for Port Famine. The northernmost point, called St. Anne's, at noon, bore S. by E. half E. distant three leagues. A reef of rocks runs out from this point S. E. by E. about two miles; and the water will suddenly shoal from 60 to 20 fathoms, at the distance of two cables length from the reef. The point itself is very steep, and care must be taken in standing into Port Famine, for the water shoals very suddenly, and at more than a mile from the shore there is but nine feet water, when the tide is out. Soundings will soon be got by hauling close round St. Anne's Point; but when there is no more than seven fathoms, it will not be safe to go farther in.

On Thursday the 27th, we anchored at noon in Port Famine. Our situation was extremely eligible, for we were sheltered from all winds, except the S. E. which seldom blows, and was a ship to be driven on shore in the bottom of the bay, she could not receive any damage, for it is all fine suit ground. In this harbour may be found a considerable quantity of excellent wood, either green or dry, the latter lying along the shore on both sides the straits, which are almost covered with the trees that have been blown down from the banks and drifted by the high winds. These trees are somewhat like our birch, but are of so considerable a size, that the trunks of some of them are two feet and a half in diameter, and 60 feet in length. Many of these were cut down for our carpenter's use, who found, that when properly dried, they were very serviceable, though not

fit for masts. As to drift wood, there is a quantity sufficient to have furnished a thousand sail.

Port Famine obtained its name from a party of Spaniards, who had planted a colony on the shore; but for want of a regular supply of provisions, were starved to death. There are still some remains of buildings, though they are now almost covered with earth. We saw them on a hill, that has been cleared of wood, and which is not far from where our ships lay. The river Sedger discharges itself into the bay. This river is about half a cable's length broad at the entrance, and is just navigable for boats. In going into it we met with two flats, one on the starboard-side, and the other on the larboard, which we discovered at half ebb; these render it somewhat difficult to go up the river, except after half flood, when it may be navigated with great pleasure and ease, by keeping in the middle of the channel. About two miles up the river it is not above 30 yards over, at which place we found on our right, a fine gravelly steep beach, so that the boats had the convenience of coming along-side of it, in order to receive the water in calks, which we found to be excellent. The Commodore, with a party, went up the river four miles, but could proceed no farther, the trees which had fallen across the stream impeding the boat's way; one of the stumps of them having made a hole in her bottom, she was immediately filled with water; but, with difficulty they hauled her on shore, and contrived to stop the leak, so that they made a shift to return in her to the ship. This river has perhaps as beautiful an appearance as it is possible for the most luxuriant fancy to conceive. Its agreeable windings are various; and on each side is a fine grove of stately trees, whose lofty heads jut over the river, and form a pleasant shade. Some of them are of a great height, and more than eight feet in diameter, which is proportionably more than eight yards in circumference; so that four men joining hands could not compass them; among others, we saw the pepper-tree, or winter's-bark, in great plenty. To complete this delightful spot, the wild notes of different kind of birds are heard on all sides, and the aromatic smell of the various sorts of flowers which adorn its banks, seem to unite in gratifying the senses of the enchanted stranger. The flowers with which in many places the ground is covered, are not inferior to those that are commonly found in our gardens, either in beauty or fragrance. Such are the charms which nature has lavished on a spot, where the Indians alone can behold its beauties; while they are probably insensible of those attracting scenes, which persons of the most improved taste might contemplate with no small pleasure; and were it not for the severity of the cold in winter, this country, by cultivation, might be made the finest in the world. The leaves of the trees, the dimensions of whose trunks we have already noticed, resemble those of our bay-trees. The rind is grey on the outside and pretty thick. This is the true winter's bark, a name which is obtained from its being brought in the year 1567, from the Straits of Magellan, by Mr. William Winter. This bark, on being taken off the tree and dried, turns to the colour of chocolate. It has an acrid, burning, pungent taste, and is esteemed an excellent remedy against the scurvy. It is, however, extremely fragrant, and the tree, when standing, has a strong aromattick smell. We frequently made use of the bark on board our ship in pies, instead of pepper, and being steeped in water it gives a very agreeable flavour. These trees are likewise found in the woods, in many other places in the straits, and also on the east and west coasts of Patagonia. The land in the woods, in some places, consists of gravel, in others of sand, and in others of good brown earth; but old fallen trees and underwood obstruct the passage through them. These woods near the shore, extend up the sides of very high hills, but the mountains further within land rise much higher, and their barren rugged summits covered with snow, are seen peeping over the hills next the shore. Indeed, the land on each side the shore rises to a great height, particularly on the island of Terra del Fuego, on the south-side of the

straits, where there are high barren rocks covered with everlasting snow. These have a black dreary aspect, and must have a considerable influence on the air, which they render cold and moist. This evidently appeared even while we were there, though this was their midsummer, when every thing must naturally be in the highest perfection. But notwithstanding the weather, when the sun shone out, was very warm, yet it was unsettled, and we had frequently heavy rain and thick fogs. In the woods are innumerable parrots, and other birds of the most beautiful plumage. We shot every day geese and ducks enough to serve the Commodore's table, and that of several others: we had, indeed, plenty of fresh provisions of all kinds, particularly fish, of which we caught such numbers as supplied our men three times a week. We must not omit here, that we saw many Indian huts, built with small branches of trees, and covered with leaves and mud, but we never met with a single inhabitant. The country between this and Cape Forward, which is distant about three leagues, is exceeding fine: the soil appears to be very rich, and there are no less than three pretty large rivers, besides many brooks. While we continued in this port, the Commodore and a party went one day to Cape Forward. Upon setting out we intended to have gone farther; but the rain having fell very heavy, we were glad to stop at the Cape, and make a good fire to dry our clothes. The Indians had de-

parted so lately from this place, that the wood, which lay half burnt, was still warm. Soon after our fire was kindled, we perceived another on the Terra del Fuego shore, a signal, probably, which we did not understand. The rain having abated, we walked over the cape, and found the strait to run about W. N. W. The hills as far as we could see, were of an immense height, very craggy, and covered with snow from the very base upwards. The Commodore having ordered a tent to be erected on the borders of a wood, and near a rivulet, three seamen were stationed there to wash linen, and they lay in the tent. One evening, soon after they had retired to rest, they were awakened by the deep and hollow roarings of some wild beasts, which approached nearer every moment. Terrified with apprehensions of being devoured, they made and kept up a blazing fire, round which the beasts walked at a small distance till dawn of day, when they retired. We did not credit this story, for the relations could not tell us what kind of beasts they saw, only they were very large; yet it must be acknowledged, that, at different times, when on shore, we tracked many wild beasts in the sand, but never saw one. And as we were returning through the woods, we found two very large skulls, which by the teeth, appeared to have belonged to some beasts of prey, but of what kind we could not guess.

C H A P. II.

The Dolphin and Tamar steer back from Port Famine in search of Falkland's Islands—Arrive at Port Egmont—Observations on this port and the adjacent country—Run from Falkland's Islands to Port Desire, and through the Straits of Magellan as far as Cape Monday—The Florida storeship happily discovered—A strange sail makes her appearance, and follows the Dolphin, which proved to be the Eagle, commanded by M. Bougainville—A description of different parts of the Straits—Passage from Cape Monday into the South Sea—The Dolphin in a critical situation—Observations on Tuesday Bay—Enters the Pacific Ocean—And touches at Maja-Fuero—Observations on this Island.

A. D. 1765. **WE** began this New-year in Port Famine, where we enjoyed every blessing, which after so long a voyage we had reason to expect. We had fish, wood, and water, in abundance: both our ship and the Tamar were in good condition, and the success of our voyage, with the continued kindness of our Commodore, kept our men in high spirits. Having completed the wood and water of both ships, and provided every necessary that was wanted, on Friday the 4th of January, we weighed, and set sail from Port Famine, standing over to the Island of Terra del Fuego, where we saw great quantities of smoke rising from different quarters, which we supposed to be raised by various parties of Indians. The intention of the Commodore was now to steer back again in search of Falkland's Islands. With this view on the 5th, we held on our course N. W. by N. four leagues, and then three leagues north, between Elizabeth and Bartholomew Islands, after which we steered N. E. half E. from the second narrow to the first, being a run of eight leagues. We proceeded through the first narrow against the flood; but the tide of flood setting strong to southward, drove the ship directly towards the south shore, which might have proved of fatal consequence to the ship; for as we were under a very high rocky cliff in 50 fathoms water, if there had happened a sudden squall of wind, we must have been inevitably lost: however, the flood set us back again into the entrance of the first narrow, and we cast anchor in 40 fathoms, within two cables length of the shore. On the 6th, at one o'clock, A. M. we weighed, and had a pleasant northerly breeze with the tide of ebb; but this breeze soon abating, the tide set the ship to the N. W. and at five she took the ground on a sand bank of 15 feet, which reduced us to no small extremity; but providentially, in about half an hour, she swung by the force of the tide into deeper water. This shoal, not mentioned by any former navigators,

is very dangerous, as it lies directly in the track between Cape Virgin Mary and the first narrow, and just in the middle between the north and south shores. It is more than two leagues long, equally broad, and in many places very steep; so that should a ship ground upon it in a hard gale of wind, the would probably soon be beat to pieces. When we were upon this bank, Point Possession bore N. E. distant three leagues, and the entrance of the narrow S. W. distant two leagues. About six o'clock, A. M. we anchored, and at noon worked with the ebb tide till two, but finding the water shoal, we came again to anchor, about half a mile from the south-side of the bank: at which time the Alles Ears bore N. W. by W. distant four leagues. On the 7th, about eight o'clock, A. M. we weighed and steered about half a mile S. E. by E. We now got our boats out, and towed the ship into the deepest water in the fourth channel; by which means we anchored in 14 fathoms, the tide of flood making strong against us; and then being for the distance of half a mile round us encompassed with shoals, that had only eight feet water, we sent our boat to sound, in order to find a channel; and after being disappointed more than once, we at length weighed for the last time, and left the coast.

On Tuesday the 8th, by observation we found ourselves in latitude 51 deg. 50 min. We now brought to for the Tamar, who had come through the north channel, and was some leagues astern of us. This day we had strong gales from the westward; and in the forenoon a most violent squall of wind which sprung our main-mast, but effectual methods were taken immediately by our carpenter to secure it. On the 9th, we were in latitude 52 deg. 8 min. S. and in 68 deg. 31 min. W. longitude, at which time Cape Virgin Mary bore S. 83 deg. W. distant 33 leagues. On the 10th, our course was N. 18 W. for 13 leagues; and our latitude 51 deg. 31 min. S. longitude 68 deg.

44 min.

44 min. W. On
for 33 leagues.
8 min. W. and C
day we had strong
great sea. In the
comfort being form
made an easy sail
flood in again, an
the land a-head, w
and at the same ti
which appeared to
near each other, f
almost even with
we judged to be
Islands. Intendin
the land which ap
by some low grou
hauling out of th
rocks, stretching
northward of us,
we had taken for th
This land consists
rocks, except the
approach near it,
pearance of Staten
and we saw larg
When we were ne
we found ourselv
hard at S. W. se
would have made
shore; we mention
hereafter avoid fa
observed in latitud
54 min. W. longit
On Sunday the
flood in for the
coast of which we
league to the east
torrents of rain, a
came from the w
such velocity, that
set us very fast to
in the world, and
some distance from
for us a fresh gale
our great joy, we
advise every one,
give the north pa
now brought to in
22 min. W. longit
Monday the 14
with tufts of gra
our course along
saw a low rocky is
about three leagu
which here forms
of the other islan
tufts of grass. E
and on the 15th
towards the land.
These were gone
the agreeable ne
bay, entirely secu
entrance lying to
side very high, a
broad, not in the
to obstruct the p
13 fathoms, with
this bay is not er
ner is there the
passing on the s
harbours open t
which we enter
was given of P
honourable the
miralty, under
pally undertake
seven leagues fi
good mark to k
two miles from

44 min. W. On the 11th, our course was N. 87 E. for 33 leagues. Cape Virgin Mary bore S. 73 deg. 8 min. W. and Cape Fairweather W. 2 deg. S. This day we had strong gales at S. W. accompanied with a great sea. In the evening we espied land, but our comfort being some leagues after, we wore ship, and made an easy sail off. On the 12th, at day break, we stood in again, and at four o'clock recovered sight of the land a-head, which was taken for De Werts Islands, and at the same time we saw other land to the south, which appeared to be a considerable number of islands near each other, some of them seeming very low, and almost even with the surface of the water, and which we judged to be what are called in the charts New Islands. Intending to stand in between these, we found the land which appeared to be unconnected, was joined by some low ground, and formed a deep bay. When hauling out of this we discovered a long low reef of rocks, stretching out for more than a league to the northward of us, and another between that, and what we had taken for the northernmost of De Werts Islands. This land consists chiefly of mountainous and barren rocks, except the low part, which is not seen till you approach near it, and the whole has very much the appearance of Staten Land. Birds and seals abound here, and we saw large whales spouting round the ship. When we were near enough to discern the low land, we found ourselves wholly embayed, and had it blown hard at S. W. so high a sea must have rolled in, as would have made it impossible to keep clear of the shore; we mention these particulars, that all ships may hereafter avoid falling into this bay. At noon we observed in latitude 51 deg. 27 min. S. and in 63 deg. 54 min. W. longitude.

On Sunday the 13th of January, at day-break, we stood in for the north part of the island by the coast of which we had been embayed. Being about a league to the eastward, it fell calm, and poured down torrents of rain, after which a most uncommon swell came from the westward, and ran so high, and with such velocity, that we expected every moment it would set us very fast towards the shore, as dangerous as any in the world, and we could see the surge breaking at some distance from it mountains high; very fortunately for us a fresh gale sprung up at S. E. with which, to our great joy, we were able to stand off, and we would advise every one, who may hereafter come this way, to give the north part of this island a good birth. We now brought to in latitude 51 deg. S. and in 63 deg. 22 min. W. longitude.

Monday the 14th, we discovered a flat island covered with tufts of grass as large as bushes. We continued our course along the shore six leagues farther, and then saw a low rocky island, bearing S. E. by E. and distant about three leagues from the land we were coasting, which here forms a very deep bay, and bears E. by N. of the other island on which had been seen the long tufts of grass. During the night we stood off and on, and on the 15th, at three o'clock, A. M. we stood in towards the land, and hoisted out our boats to sound. These were gone till noon, when they returned with the agreeable news of having found a fine convenient bay, entirely secure from the fury of the winds, with its entrance lying to the northward. The land is on each side very high, and the entrance, which is half a mile broad, not in the least dangerous, there being nothing to obstruct the passage, and the depth is from seven to 13 fathoms, with soft muddy ground. The shore of this bay is not encompassed with sunken rocks or sands, nor is there the least danger in approaching it. In passing on the starboard-side, many fine small bays and harbours open to the view, and to the third of these, which we entered, and found of great extent, the name was given of Port Egmont, in honour of the right honourable the earl of Egmont, first lord of the Admiralty, under whose direction this voyage was principally undertaken. The mouth of it is S. E. distant seven leagues from the low rocky island; which is a good mark to know it by. At the distance of about two miles from the shore, there is about eighteen

fathoms water; and about three leagues to the westward of the harbour, there is a remarkable white sandy beach, off which a ship may anchor till there is an opportunity to run in. We moored in 10 fathoms, with fine holding ground. This harbour is so commodious, that we think it proper to give a particular description of that and the adjacent country.

Port Egmont is surrounded by a range of islands, perfectly disjointed, and each placed in a convenient and agreeable situation. There are three different passages into this port, one from the S. W. another from the N. E. and the third from the S. E. and this last we found capable of receiving a ship of the greatest burthen. This harbour is of such capacity, as to be able to contain the whole royal navy of England, which might lie here in perfect security. As the adjacent country has all the requisities for a good settlement, it is probable, that was it added to the crown of Great Britain, it would in time become a most flourishing spot. There are here many cascades of water, which are so conveniently situated, that by bringing casks along-side the shore, many of them may be filled at once. One inconvenience, however, attends this place, which is, that there are no trees; but this is of small consequence; for in the proper season of the year, young trees might easily be brought through the straits to these islands, where there is no doubt but they would grow and prosper. On our first arrival we sowed the seeds of turnips, radishes, lettuces, &c. and before we left the harbour many of them began to spring up very fast, and we have since heard, that some persons who arrived here after our departure, eat of those roots and salad. It must however be acknowledged, that the wheat which we also sowed, being put into the ground at an improper season, though it sprang up, did not come to perfection. This we learnt from a person who lately came from hence in one of his Majesty's ships of war. The pasture ground of this island is so rich, that the grass rose as high as our breasts, which rendered our walking rather troublesome. We cut down great quantities of it for the use of our sheep. It is not to be doubted, but that was this country to be properly examined, many valuable discoveries might be made with respect to its vegetables and minerals; for upon a slight survey of the hills, we found a kind of iron ore, and have some reason to believe, that if an exact scrutiny was made, other ores might be found of greater value. On our first going on shore, the water side was entirely covered on every side with different kinds of birds, of very beautiful colours, and so tame, that in less than half an hour we knocked down as many as we could conveniently carry away in our boats; particularly white and painted geese, a great number of penguins, cape hens, and other fowls. Those which we called painted geese, were nearly of the size of ours, only of a different colour, having a ring of green feathers on the body, and spots on different parts, with yellow legs. A stranger would scarcely forbear smiling at this time upon seeing our ship, for never was any shop in Leaden-hall-market so plentifully supplied with poultry, and the men in every part were busily employed in picking them. As by experience we found they had a strong taste from their feeding upon sea-weeds, small fish, and particularly limpets, of which there are great plenty as large as oysters, we found out a new method of dressing them, which rendered even these fowls extremely palatable; so that we had as much provisions, and of the nicest sorts, as we could desire. The method we pursued, was by cutting them into pieces over night, and letting them lie in salt-water till the next day, and after being thus purged by lying in soak, we made them, with a sufficient quantity of flour, into pies. Besides these fowls, we met with a prodigious quantity of ducks, snipes, teal, plover, small birds, and fresh-water geese, which last, living entirely by the fresh ponds, have a most delicious taste, and are not inferior to those we are accustomed to eat in England. They are entirely white except their legs. We frequently sent two of our men in search of them, who were sure to bring home half a dozen, or more, which they found a sufficient load, being not a little encumbered

cumbered by the height of the grafs. We found also a great number of feals, some of them very large, and several men were employed on shore, at a place we called Blubber's Bay, from the number of those animals we killed for their oil: for when boiled they yielded a sufficient quantity of it for the ships companies to burn in lamps, while the men preserved their skins for waists-coats, and other uses. We were not surpris'd at meeting with such a great number of feals, when we afterwards found that they had sometimes 18 or more, at a litter.

Sea-lions of a prodigious size are also found on the coast. The Commodore was once unexpectedly attacked by one of these, and extricated himself from the impending danger with great difficulty. We had many battles with this amphibious animal, the killing one of which was frequently an hour's work for six men: one of them almost tore to pieces the Commodore's mastiff dog by a single bite. The maller having been sent to found the coast, four very fierce animals ran after the boat's crew till they were up to the middle in water, and having no fire-arms, they were obliged to put off from the shore. The next day the Commodore and his party saw a sea-lion of an enormous size, and the crew being well armed instantly engaged him. While they were thus employed, one of the other animals pos'd towards them; but a ball being instantly lodged in his body, he was soon dispatched. Five of these creatures were killed in their attempts to seize the men, whom they always pursued the moment they got sight of them. They were of a mixed shape, between a wolf and a fox, moil like the latter, but of the size of the former. They burrow in the ground like a fox, feed on feals and penguins, and are very numerous on the coast. The sailors, in order to be rid of such disagreeable intruders, set fire to the grafs, which burnt so rapidly, that the country was all in a blaze for a few days, and these animals were seen running to seek shelter from the fury of the flames. On the north-side of this harbour is the principal island, to which we frequently went on shore, on account of its situation, and the fine prospect it afforded from a prodigious high hill, which cannot be ascended without difficulty; but on gaining the summit, the great fatigue of ascending it, is fully recompens'd, by the delightful view it commands of the ships at anchor, with every part of the harbour; of the three passages into Port Egmont, the sea which surrounds you on every side; and all the adjacent islands, which are upwards of fifty, small and great, all of which appeared covered with verdure. While we lay in this harbour the crew breaktasted on portable-soup and wild celery, thickned with oatmeal, which made a very nutritive mess.

On Wednesday the 23d, the Commodore, with the Captains of the Dolphin and Tamar, and the principal officers went on shore, where the Union Jack being erected on a high staff, and spread, the Commodore took possession of this harbour, and all the neighbouring islands, for his Majesty King George the third, his heirs and successors, by the name of Falkland's Islands. The colours were no sooner spread, than a salute was fired from the ship. Our seamen were very merry on the occasion, a large bowl of arrack punch being carried on shore, out of which they drank, among many other toasts, Success to the discovery of so fine a harbour. It was the opinion of the honourable Commodore Byron, that these islands are the same land to which Cowley gave the name of Pepys's Island, and as the Commodore seems not to entertain a doubt in his own mind, we shall lay before our readers, the reasons he has been pleas'd to give the public in support of his opinion:

"In the printed account of Cowley's voyage" (observes Commodore Byron) he says, "We held our course S. W. till we came into the latitude of 47 deg. where we saw land, the same being an island, not before known, lying to the westward of us: it was not inhabited, and I gave it the name of Pepys's Island. We found it a very commodious place for ships to water at, and take in wood, and it has a very good harbour, where a thousand sail of ships may safely ride. Here is great

plenty of fowls, and, we judge, abundance of fish, by reason of the grounds being nothing but rocks and sands." To this account there is annexed a representation of Pepys's Island, in which names are given to several points and head lands, and the harbour is called Admiralty Bay; yet it appears that Cowley had only a distant view of it, for he immediately adds, "the wind being so extraordinary high that we could not get into it to water, we stood to the southward, shaping our course S. S. W. till we came into the latitude of 53 deg." and though he says, that "it was commodious to take in wood," and it is known that there is no wood on Falkland's Islands, Pepys's Island and Falkland's Island may, notwithstanding, be the same; for upon Falkland's Islands there are immense quantities of flags with narrow leaves, reeds, and rushes, which grow in clusters, so as to form bushes about three feet high, and then shoot about six or seven feet higher: these at a distance have greatly the appearance of wood, and were taken for wood by the French who landed there in the year 1764, as appears by Permetty's account of their voyage. It has been suggest'd, that the latitude of Pepys's Island might, in the manuscript from which the account of Cowley's voyage was printed, be expressed in figures, which if ill made, might equally resemble 47 and 53; and therefore as there is no island in these seas in latitude 47, and as Falkland's Islands lie nearly in 51, that 51 might reasonably be concluded to be the number for which the figures were intended to stand: accordingly therefore was had to the British Museum, and a manuscript journal of Cowley's was there found. In this manuscript no mention is made of an island not before known, to which he gave the name of Pepys's Island, but land is mentioned in latitude 47 deg. 40 min. expressed in words at length, which exactly answers to the description of what is called Pepys's Island in the printed account, and which here, he says, he supposed to be the Islands of Sebald de Wert. This part of the manuscript is in the following words: "January 1683. This month wee were in the latitude of 47 deg. and 40 min. where we espied an island bearing west from us, wee having the wind at N. E. wee bore away for it, it being too late for us to goe on shore, we lay by all night. The island seem'd very pleasant to the eye, with many woods, I may as well say, the whole land was woods. There being a rock lying above water to the eastward of it, where were an innumerable company of turtles, being of the bignesse of a small goose, which turtles would strike at our men as they were aloft: some of them wee killed and eat: they seem'd to us very good, only tast'd somewhat fishy. I sail'd along that island to the southward, and about the S. W. side of the island there seem'd to me to be a good place for shippes to ride: I would have had the boat out to have gone into the harbour, but the wind blew fresh, and they would not agree to go with it. Sailing a little further, keeping the lead, and having 26 and 27 fathoms water, and wee came to a place, where wee saw the weeds rise, having the lead againe found but seven fathoms water. Feeling danger went about the shipp there, were then fearful to stay by the land any longer, it being all rocky ground, but the harbour seem'd to be a good place for shippes to ride there; in the island seeming likewise to have water enough; there seem'd to me to be harbour for 500 sail of shippes. The going in but narrow, and the north-side of the entrance shallow water that I could see, but I verily believe that there is water enough for any shipp to goe in on the south-side, for there cannot be so great a lack of water, but must needs scowe a channell away at the ebbe deepe enough for shipping to goe in. I would have had them stood upon a wind all night, but they told me they were not come out to go upon discovery. Wee saw likewise another island by this that night, which made me think them the Sibb e D'wards. The same night we steer'd our course againe W. S. W. which was but our S. W. the compasse having two and twenty degrees variation easterly, keeping that course till we came in the latitude of three and fifty degrees."

In both the printed and manuscript account, this land is said to lie in latitude forty-seven, to be situated

situated to the
vered, to appe
great number
frequented by
both accounts
on shore, and
till he came in
fore be little d
Pepys's island
supposed to
it is not diffic
the supposition
appear to be w
in forty-seven,
Falkland's isla
the country ag
the map is of
running up the
been probably
about the year
name of Falkl
divides them.
unprinted in th
these islands is
sociate of Cave
Hawkins saw la
mour of his ma
Hawkin's Maid
seen by some F
zier, probably
louins, a name
Spaniards." So
discovery of th
niards now enj
remains the en
red, and given

We had now
harbour of Port
for our departu
board, he havin
and repairing it
continued in the
eight o'clock, w
with the wine
scarcely out at
the weather be
not see the rock
to be safe anch
to our expectati
up, though it ble
after having run
we saw a remark
Tamar. Five
called it Edisto
another head-land
Cape Dolphin,
leagues farther
Cape Dolphin,
having the app
Sound, though
trance of the f
We steer'd from
north, to a low
to. During the d
downs, having n
grafs in various
take notice, that
island is describ
hath already b
asserted, that t
many hills of w
the latitude whe
nor any foundi
pretended disc
islands), we he
probably had n
where you meet
foggy weather,
deceive even an
take them for la
No. 27.

situated to the westward of the ship when first discovered, to appear woody, to have an harbour where a great number of ships might ride in safety, and to be frequented by innumerable birds. It appears also by both accounts, that the weather prevented his going on shore, and that he steered from it west-south-west, till he came into latitude fifty-three: there can therefore be little doubt but that Cowley gave the name of Pepsy's island after he came home, to what he really supposed to be the island of Sebald de Wert, for which it is not difficult to assign several reasons; and though the supposition of a mistake of the figures does not appear to be well grounded, yet, there being no land in forty-seven, the evidence that what Cowley saw was Falkland's islands, is very strong. The description of the country agrees in almost every particular, and even the map is of the same general figure, with a strait running up the middle. The two principal islands have been probably called Falkland's islands by Strong, about the year 1689, as he is known to have given the name of Falkland's Sound to part of the strait which divides them. The journal of this navigator is still unprinted in the British Museum. The first who saw these islands is supposed to be Captain Davies, the associate of Cavendish in 1692. In 1594, Sir Richard Hawkins saw land, supposed to be the same, and in honour of his mistress, Queen Elizabeth, called them Hawkins's Maiden Land. Long afterwards they were seen by some French ships from St. Maloes, and Frezier, probably for that reason, called them the Malouins, a name which has been since adopted by the Spaniards." So much for the dispute concerning the discovery of these celebrated islands, which the Spaniards now enjoy unmolested, while to England only remains the empty honour of having discovered, explored, and given them a name.

We had now completed our watering, surveyed the harbour of Port Egmont, and provided every necessary for our departure. This evening the smith came on board, he having been employed on shore, in making and repairing iron work for the use of the ship. We continued in the harbour till Sunday the 27th, when, at eight o'clock, A. M. we left Port Egmont, and sailed with the wind at south-south-west. But we were scarcely out at sea, when it began to blow hard, and the weather became so extremely hazy, that we could not see the rocky islands. We now most heartily wished to be safe anchored in Egmont harbour; but contrary to our expectations, in a short time the weather cleared up, though it blew a hard gale all the day. At ten o'clock, after having run along the shore east, about five leagues, we saw a remarkable head-land, which was named Cape Tamar. Five leagues farther we passed a rock, and called it Edystone. We now sailed between this and another head-land, to which was given the name of Cape Dolphin, in the direction of east-north-east, five leagues farther. The distance from Cape Tamar to Cape Dolphin, is about eight leagues, and from its having the appearance of a sound, it was called Carlisle Sound, though it is since known to be the northern entrance of the strait between the two principal islands. We steered from Cape Dolphin along the shore east, half north, to a low flat cape, or head-land, and then brought to. During the course of this day, the land we saw as all downs, having neither trees nor bushes, but large tufts of grass in various places. It may not be improper here to take notice, that as in most of the charts of Patagonia, an island is described by the name of Pepsy's island, as hath already been mentioned, where travellers have asserted, that they have seen trees in abundance, and many rills of water; but that after several attempts in the latitude where it was said to be discovered, no island nor any sounding could be found; in justice to the pretended discoverers of that and other imaginary islands, we here beg leave again to observe, that they probably had no intention to deceive, for on this coast, where you meet with frequent gales of wind, and thick foggy weather, we found the banks of fogs were apt to deceive even an accurate observer, and make him mistake them for land. Thus we ourselves have frequently

No. 27.

imagined, that we saw land very near; but suddenly a breeze of wind springing up, our supposed land disappeared, though we did not think ourselves above a league and a half from it, and convinced us of our mistake by opening to our view an unbounded prospect. So easily does the mind of man, when set on one particular object, form to itself chimerical notions of its darling pursuit, and when harassed, as we will suppose, by the distresses that frequently attend an enterprize of this nature, make an imaginary discovery of land, where nothing but a thick fog, and a vast extent of sea, are to be found.

On Monday the 28th, at four o'clock, A. M. we made sail, and steered east-south-east, and south-south-east to two low rocky islands, about a mile from the main; and to a deep sound between these, we gave the name of Berkley's Sound. About four miles to the southward of the south point of this sound, the sea breaks very high, on some rocks that appear above water. The coast now wore a dangerous aspect; rocks and breakers being at a considerable distance from the shore, and in all directions, and the country appeared barren and desolate, much resembling that part of Terra del Fuego which lies near Cape Horn. The sea rising here very high, we tacked and stood to the northward, to prevent our being driven on a lee-shore. Having now run no less than seventy leagues of this island, we concluded, it must be of considerable extent. Some former navigators have made Falkland's islands, to be about two hundred miles in circumference, but in the opinion of our Commodore, they are near 700 miles. At noon we hauled the wind and stood to the northward, the entrance of Berkley's Sound bearing at three o'clock, S. W. by W. six leagues off; and in the evening we stood to the westward, the wind having shifted to the S. W. On Tuesday, the 5th of February, at one o'clock P. M. we again made the coast of Patagonia, bearing S. W. by S. six leagues distant. At two we passed by Penguin Island; and at three standing towards the harbour of Port Desire, which was two leagues distant, we to our great satisfaction, discovered the Flora storeship, which had been fitted out at Deptford, and had on board a great quantity of new baked bread, packed in new calks, besides brandy, flour, beef, and all such necessary provisions and stores for the use of our two ships. This vessel, whose arrival was so opportune for the prosecution of our voyage, was dispatched by the lords of the Admiralty, with as much secrecy as the Dolphin, with respect to the ignorance of the men on board as to their place of destination. When the first sailed from Deptford, she was fitted out for Florida; nor did the master know, till he arrived southward of the line, that he was ordered to recruit the Commodore's vessels. We had for some time past been uneasy, concluding that this ship had probably met with some accident that had obliged her to return; but her appearance agreeably removed all the anxiety we had felt from this groundless conjecture; and indeed it was very happy for us, that we fell in with her at this juncture, which was the more seasonable, as for some time we had been reduced to a short allowance of certain articles of provisions, which she was able to supply us with; but had this not been the case, a worse consequence must have ensued, namely, that of being obliged to steer to the Cape of Good Hope, in order to purchase provisions, and consequently losing our voyage; as by this delay it would be too late for us to attempt a passage into the South Sea, either by passing the straits of Magellan, or doubling Cape Horn, consequently an end would be put to all our discoveries, and the expence of fitting us out be thrown away. At four o'clock P. M. having anchored in Port Desire, the master of the storeship came on board the Dolphin, bringing a packet from the lords of the Admiralty to the Commodore. This person was a midshipman in his Majesty's service, and was to have a commission as soon as he found the Commodore. He had been several days in search of Pepsy's Island; but was like us obliged to desist, and having crossed the latitude in which it was supposed to lie, had met with a storm that had greatly damaged his masts and sails. In the evening

3 M

ing

ing the master of the Florida left the Dolphin, and by order of the Commodore, our carpenters attended him on board his own ship, to repair the damages she had sustained. During our run from Falkland's islands to Port Desire, the number of whales about the Dolphin rendered our navigation dangerous. One blew the water upon our quarter deck, and we were near striking upon another; they were of uncommon size, much larger than any we had yet seen.

On Thursday the 7th, the night proved very tempestuous; when both the Tamar and Florida made signals of distress, having been driven from their moorings up the harbour. They were got clear of the shore with great difficulty, as they were the next night, when they both drove again. Finding the store-ship was in constant danger of being lost, the design of unloading her in this harbour was given up, and the Commodore determined to take her with him into the strait. Capt. Mount of the Tamar having also informed us, that his rudder was sprung, it was secured with iron clamps in the best manner he could, there being no timber to be found proper for making her a-new one. Having by the thirteenth completed the repairs of our respective ships, we made ready to leave this port, as by the rapidity of the tide, the boats could have little or no communication with the store-ship: it was therefore resolved to sail back to the Eastward, and take in our stores at one of the Ports we had before visited. One of our petty officers, well acquainted with the strait, and four of our seamen, were put on board the Florida, to assist in navigating her, and she was ordered to make the best of her way to Port Famine. On the 14th, we put to sea, and when, a few hours after, abreast of Penguin Island, we got sight of the store-ship, a long way to the eastward. On Saturday the 16th, about six o'clock, A. M. Cape Fairweather bore W. S. W. distant five leagues; and on the 17th, we hauled in for the strait of Magellan, and at six o'clock A. M. Cape Virgin Mary bore S. distant five miles. On the 18th, we passed the first narrow. To our great surprize, in the morning of the second day after we left Port Desire, we discovered a strange sail, which our Commodore apprehended might be a Spanish man of war of the line, who was come to intercept us; and in consequence of that surmise, boldly gave orders, that all on board the Dolphin and Tamar should prepare to give her a warm reception by firing all our guns, and then boarding her from both ships; but while we were bringing to and waiting for her, it grew dark, and we lost sight of her, till the next morning, when we saw her at three leagues distance, and found she still followed us, while we sailed towards Point Famine. She even came to an anchor when we did. We were now employed in getting up our guns, having only four upon deck, which had been used for signals, the rest having for a considerable time before lain in the hold. We soon however got fourteen upon deck, and then came to an anchor, having the Tamar a-stern, with a spring on our cable; and that we might give her as warm a reception as possible, we removed all our guns to one side, pointing to the place where the vessel must pass. While we were thus busily employed in taking all the measures prudence could suggest to defend us from an imaginary danger, an accident that happened to the store-ship shewed that we had nothing to fear, and that the vessel against which we were arming ourselves, ought not to be considered as an enemy; for while the Florida was working to the windward, she took the shore, on a bank about two leagues from our ship. About the same time the strange vessel came up with her, and seeing her distress cast anchor; and immediately began to hoist out her boats to give her assistance; but before they had reached the store-ship, our boats had boarded her, and the commanding officer had received orders not to let them come on board; but to thank them in the politest manner for their intended assistance. These orders were punctually obeyed, and with the aid of our boats only, the store-ship was soon after got into deep water. Our people reported, that the French vessel was full of men, and seemed to have a great many officers. At

six o'clock in the evening, we worked through the second narrow; and at ten passed the west end of it. We anchored at eleven off Elizabeth's Island, and the French ship did the same, in a bad situation, southward of St. Bartholomew's Island, whereby we were convinced she was not well acquainted with the channel.

On Tuesday the 19th we weighed, and at six o'clock A. M. we steered between Elizabeth and Bartholomew Islands, S. S. W. five miles, when we crossed a bank, where among the weeds we had seven fathoms water. This bank is situated W. S. W. above five miles from the middle of George's Island. To avoid danger, it is necessary to keep near Elizabeth's Island, till the western-shore is but a short distance, and then a southern course may be sailed with great safety, till the reef, which lies about four miles to the northward of St. Anne's Point, is in sight. The Frenchman still followed us, and we thought she came from Falkland's Islands, where is a French settlement, to take in wood, or that she was on a survey of the Strait of Magellan, in which we were now sailing. On the 20th, we hoisted out our boats, and towed round St. Anne's Point into Port Famine. Here we anchored, at six in the evening, and soon after the French ship passed by us to the southward. During our stay in this port, we were principally employed, in receiving provisions from the store-ship, and completing our wood and water. On the 25th, finding that both the ships had received as much stores and provisions as they could possibly stow, the Commodore sent home all the draughts of the places he had caused to be taken by the store-ship, with express orders, that if they were in any danger of being boarded and examined by any foreign ships, their first care should be to throw the plans and packets into the sea. On taking leave of the Florida, our boatswain, and all that were sick on board the Dolphin and Tamar, obtained leave to return in her to England; the Commodore in the mean time, declaring openly to the crew in general, that if any of them were averse to proceeding on the voyage, they had free liberty to return; an offer which only one of our men accepted. We now with the Tamar sailed from Port Famine, intending to push through the strait before the season should be too far advanced. At noon we were three leagues distant from St. Anne's Point, which bore N. W. three or four miles from Point Shutup, which bore S. S. W. Point Shutup bears from St. Anne's Point, S. half E. and they are about four or five leagues asunder. Between these two points there is a flat-shoal, which runs from Port Famine before the river Sedger, and three miles to the southward. At three o'clock, P. M. we passed the French ship, which now anchored in a small cove. She had hauled close to the shore, and we could see large piles of wood cut down, and lying on each side of her. Upon our return to England, we learnt this ship was the Eagle, commanded by M. Bougainville, and that her business in the strait was, as the Commodore had conjectured, to cut wood for the French settlement in Falkland's Islands. From Cape Shutup to Cape Forward, the course is S. W. by S. distance seven leagues. At eight in the evening we brought to, Cape Forward bearing N. W. half W. distant about a mile. This part of the strait is eight miles over, and off the cape we had 40 fathoms within half a cable's length of the shore.

On the 26th, at four o'clock, A. M. we made sail, and at ten we kept working to windward, looking out at the same time for an anchoring-place, and endeavouring to reach a bay about two leagues to the westward of Cape Forward. An officer was sent into this bay to find, who finding it fit for our purpose we entered it, and at six o'clock P. M. anchored in nine fathoms water. On the 27th, at six o'clock, A. M. we continued our course through the strait, from Cape Holland to Cape Gallant. This cape is very high and steep, and between it and the former cape is a reach, three leagues over, called English Reach. Five miles south of Cape Gallant is Charles's Island, of which it is necessary to keep to the northward. We steered along

the north shore, Eastward of a Bay called Wood's Bay. The mountains foliate in appearance except perhaps the steep, and covered with snow. From about three leagues past Passage Bay, and is low between this and very small; but the miles long. The westernmost Point Passage narrow: between is not more than for navigators to the north-ward. On Wednesday stood in for Elizabeth's good growth of rivulet of fresh water, excessive gales from violence, that we ward, where we 13 fathoms and a bay; but soon after stream anchor, and the ship still out, and was in the ever, we let go before wind still continued was so near the keep clear of the dense which had to be our friend, destruction; for of our stream-ank broke; and being overboard. We cut into 10 fathoms tion from whence chored with our On Friday the weighed, attended At seven passed M. Elizabeth's, on two leagues W. Bachelor's River, from hence lies the we passed at nine for a smoke, and of Indians in detour, put their can our ship. The most hideous of our hands, as fig after having freyng the ship the accomplishment, as like kind before. muddling nature with long black Their bodies were mals unknown to had not a suffice We trafficked with dance of things, p to receive with the fond of the biscu pretty freely, the part with any that had bows and appeared almost in cceeding tough curious workman twisted gut. The long, were point

the north shore, at the distance of about two miles. Eastward of Cape Holland is a spacious sandy bay, called Wood's Bay, in which there is good anchorage. The mountains on each side the strait are more desolate in appearance than any others in the world, except perhaps the Cordeliers, both being rude, craggy, steep, and covered from the bottom to their summits with snow. From Cape Gallant to Passage Point, distant about three leagues, the coast lies W. by N. by compass. Passage Point is the east point of Elizabeth's Bay, and is low land, off of which lies a rock. Between this and Cape Gallant are several islands, some very small; but the easternmost, Charles's Island, is six miles long: the next is called Monmouth's Island, and the westernmost, Rupert's Island: this lies S. by E. of Point Passage. These group of islands make the strait narrow: between Port Passage and Rupert's Island, it is not more than two miles over, and it is advisable for navigators to go to the northward of them all, keeping the north-shore on board.

On Wednesday the 27th, at six o'clock, P. M. we stood in for Elizabeth's Bay, and anchored in ten fathoms, good ground. In this bay there is a good rivulet of fresh water. On the 28th, we met with excessive gales from the W. N. W. which blew with such violence, that we were driven three leagues to the eastward, where we cast anchor on the top of a rock, in 13 fathoms and a half water, a cable's length from the bay: but soon after we parted, or rather started our stream anchor, and fell off the rock: it was very dark, and the ship still kept driving with her whole cable out, and was in the greatest danger of being lost; however, we let go both bows in 17 fathoms water. The wind still continued to blow very hard, and the ship was so near the rocks, that the boats could but just keep clear of the surf off the shore: but that Providence which had hitherto attended us, still continued to be our friend, and preserved us from impending destruction: for the next morning we were in the cable of our stream anchor, both the flukes of which were broke; and being thus rendered useless, it was thrown overboard. We now with our gub and stay-fails ran out into 10 fathoms, till we were exactly in the situation from whence we had been driven, where we anchored with our best bower.

On Friday the 1st of March, at five o'clock, A. M. we weighed, attended with light gales and moderate weather. At seven passed Muscle Bay, a league to the westward of Elizabeth's, on the southern shore. At eight we were two leagues W. by N. of this bay, and abreast of Bachelor's River, which is on the north shore. A league from hence lies the entrance of St. Jerom's Sound, which we passed at nine. In our course along this coast we saw a smoke, and soon after discovered a great number of Indians in detached parties, some of whom, on seeing us, put their canoes into the water, and made towards our ship. When within musket shot, they began a most hideous shouting, and we halloed, and waved our hands, as signals for them to come on board, which after having frequently repeated, they did. On entering the ship they surveyed it with no small signs of astonishment, as if they had never seen a vessel of the like kind before. These Indians were in general of a middling stature; and of a very brown complexion, with long black hair, that hung down to their shoulders. Their bodies were covered with the skin of some animals unknown to us; but many of the poor wretches had not a sufficient quantity to cover their nakedness. We trafficked with them, or rather gave them abundance of things, particularly cloaths, which they seemed to receive with thankfulness: they were also exceeding fond of the biscuit, which we distributed among them pretty freely, though they appeared rather unwilling to part with any thing in return: Some of these people had bows and arrows, made of such hard wood, that it seemed almost impenetrable; the bows were not only exceeding tough and smooth, but wrought with very curious workmanship; and the string was formed of a twisted gut. The arrows, which were about two feet long, were pointed with flint shaped like a harpoon,

and cut with as great nicety, as if they had been shaped by the most exact lapidary; and at the other end a feather was fixed to direct its flight. They have also javelins. These Indians seem to be very poor and perfectly harmless, coming forth to their respective employments at the dawn of day, and when the sun sets, retiring to their different habitations. They live almost entirely on fish, and particularly on limpets and mussels, the latter of which they have in great plenty, and much larger than those we met with in England. Their boats are but indifferently put together: they are made chiefly of the bark of trees, and are just big enough to hold one family: when they land, being very light, they haul them upon shore, out of the reach of the tide, and seem very careful in preserving them. In the structure of some of these boats no small degree of ingenuity is evident. They are formed of three pieces, one at the bottom, which serves for the keel and part of the sides, and is fashioned both within and without by means of fire; upon this are placed two upper pieces, one on each side, which are sewed together, and to the bottom part, like a seam sewed with a needle and thread. All their boats in general are very narrow, and each end formed alike, both sharp, and rising up a considerable height. These Indians are very dexterous in striking the fish from their canoes with their javelins, though they lie some feet under water. In these instances, they seem to shew the utmost extent of their ingenuity; for we found them incapable of understanding things the most obvious to their senses. On their first coming aboard, among the trinkets we gave them were some knives and scissars, and we tried to make them sensible of their use; but after our repeated endeavours, by shewing the manner of using them, they continued as insensible as at first, and could not learn to distinguish the blades from the handles. There are plenty of seals in this part of the straits, but we did not meet with many fowl, owing doubtless to the intense cold, nor did we find the woods infested with any kind of wild beasts. On sailing to the westward we found an irregular tide, which sometimes ran 18 hours to the eastward, and but six to the westward; at other times, when the westerly winds blew with any degree of strength, it would constantly run for several days to the east. At intervals we had hard gales of wind, and prodigious squalls from the high mountains, whose summits are covered with snow. The straits are here four leagues over, and it is difficult to get any anchorage, on account of the unevenness, and irregularity of the bottom, which in several places close to the shore has from 20 to 15 fathoms water, and in other parts no ground is to be found with a line of 150 fathoms. We now steered W. S. W. for Cape Quod. Between this and Elizabeth's Bay is a reach about four miles over, called Crooked Reach. In the evening of the 4th, we anchored abreast of Bachelor's River, in 14 fathoms. The entrance of the river bore N. by E. distant one mile, and the northernmost point of St. Jerom's Sound, W. N. W. distant three miles. About three quarters of a mile eastward of Bachelor's River, lies a shoal, upon which there is not more than six feet water when the tide is out: it is distant about half a mile from the shore, and may be known by the weeds that are upon it. We here saw several Indians dispersed in different quarters, among whom we found a family which struck our attention. It was composed of a decrepit old man, his wife, two sons and a daughter. The latter appeared to have tolerable features, and an English face, which they seemed desirous of letting us know; they making a long harangue, not a syllable of which we understood, though we plainly perceived it was in relation to the woman, whose age did not exceed thirty, by their pointing first at her, and then at themselves. Various were the conjectures we formed in regard to this circumstance, though we all agreed that their signs plainly shewed that they offered her to us, as being of the same country. In one particular they appeared to be quite uncivilized, for when we came up to them, they were tearing to pieces and devouring raw fish. On the 5th, we sent the boats a-head to tow, but could not gain a bay on the north shore, which appeared to be

an excellent harbour, fit to receive five or six sail; we were therefore obliged to cast anchor on a bank, with the stream anchor, Cape Quod bearing W. S. W. distant about six miles. An officer was now sent to look out for a harbour, but he did not succeed.

On Wednesday the 6th, we moored in a little bay opposite Cape Quod; and the Tamar, which could not work up so far, about six miles to the eastward of it. This part of the strait is only four miles over, and its aspect dreary and desolate beyond imagination, owing to the prodigious mountains on each side of it, which rise above the clouds, and are covered with perpetual snow.

On Thursday the 7th, at eight o'clock we weighed, and worked with the tide. At noon, Cape Quod bore E. by S. and Cape Monday, the westernmost land in sight on the fourth shore, W. by N. distant ten leagues. The tides here are very strong, and the ebb sets to the westward, with an irregularity for which it is very difficult to account. At one the Tamar anchored opposite Cape Quod, in the bay we had just left; and in the evening we anchored in a small bay on the north shore, five leagues to the westward of Cape Quod. The marks to know this bay are two large rocks that appear above water, and a low point, which makes the east part of the bay. The anchorage is between the two rocks, the easternmost bearing N. E. half E. distant about two cables length, and the westernmost, which is near the point, W. N. W. half W. at about the same distance: there is also a small rock which shows itself among the weeds at low water, and bears E. half N. distant about two cables length. Should there be more ships than two, they may anchor farther out in deeper water. We found in this part of the strait few birds of any kind, and but a small quantity of muscles along the shore; and though we sent out our boat into a bay to haul the seine, it returned without success, not any fish being to be found. However, we frequently found great quantities of red berries, somewhat resembling our cranberries, which being wholesome and refreshing proved of considerable service to the ship's company. They are about the size of an hazle nut, and the chief provisions of the Indians in these parts. On the 8th., we found abundance of shell-fish, but saw no traces of people. In the afternoon, the Commodore went up a deep lagoon under a rock, at the head of which was a fine fall of water, and on the east-side of it several small coves, calculated for the reception of ships of the greatest burthen. We returned with a boat load of very large muscles. On the 9th, we got under way, at seven o'clock, A. M. and at eight saw the Tamar very far after. We now stood to the N. W. with a pleasant breeze at S. by E. but when abreast of Cape Monday Bay, the wind took us back, and continued from six o'clock to eight, at which time Cape Monday Bay bore E. half N. six leagues. On the 10th, at six o'clock, A. M. Cape Upright bore E. by S. distant three leagues. From Cape Monday to Cape Upright, which are both on the fourth shore, and distant from each other about five leagues, the course is W. by N. At ten a violent storm of wind came on, which was very near effecting our destruction; for it was very thick rainy weather, and we suddenly discovered sunken rocks on our leeward, just appearing above the surface of the water, at the distance of about half a mile from us. We tacked immediately, and in half an hour it blew so hard, that we were obliged to bear up before the wind, and go in search of an harbour. We were soon after joined by the Tamar, who had been six or seven leagues to the eastward of us all night. At six in the evening we came to anchor in a bay, in 16 fathoms water; but the anchor falling from the bank into 30 fathoms, the ship almost drove on shore; happily the anchor closing with a rock brought us up. We now weighed, and on the 11th steered into a proper anchoring place, on a bank, where the Tamar was riding, entirely surrounded with high precipices, where we lay not more than two cables length from the shore. There is a basin at the bottom of this bay, within which is ten fathoms, and room enough for six or seven sail to lie in perfect

security. Having at this time heavy squalls of wind, attended with much rain, the Commodore, with a generosity that endeared him to the crew, distributed as much cloth among the sailors as would make all of them long waistcoats; a present highly acceptable at this season of the year, and the more so, as the officers and men, on leaving England, from their expecting to sail directly to India, had provided no thick clothing. And that no partiality might be shewn to those on board his own ship, he ordered a sufficient quantity for the use of Capt. Moutat's company in the Tamar.

On Tuesday the 12th, while we were employed in searching after wood and water, the Tamar's boat was sent to the westward, with an officer from both ships, to look for harbours on the southern shore. On the 14th, the boat returned with the agreeable news, that they had found several bays, particularly five between the ship's station and Cape Upright, where we might anchor in safety. When the Commodore heard this, in order to encourage his men in the discharge of their duty, he ordered a double allowance of brandy to be given to every one on board, which, with their warm fear-nought jackets, provided by government, proved both comfortable and salutary; for some hills, which, when we came first to this place, had no snow upon them, were now covered, and the winter of this dreary and inhospitable region seemed to have set in at once. Those in the boat, during their absence, were benighted, and obliged by distress of weather to land, and take shelter under a tent which they had taken with them. They saw a number of Indians employed on the shore, in cutting up a dead whale, which scented the place for some distance around, it being in a state of putrefaction. This they supposed was designed for food, seeing they cut it in large slices, and carried them away on their shoulders to another party at a distance, who seemed employed round a fire: however, it is equally probable, that like the Greenlanders, they might be making oil for their lamps against the approaching severity of winter. One of the officers told us, that near Cape Upright some Indians had given him a dog, and that one of the women had offered him a child which was sucking at her breast, but for what purpose he could not say. How much sorer by their appearance, and manner of life, these seemingly forlorn rational beings may be degraded in the eyes of Europeans, we ought not from this trifling incident, to attribute to them such a strange depravity of nature as makes them destitute of affection for their offspring; or even to think that it can be surmounted by the necessities or wants attending the most deplorable situation; a notoriety of facts and universal history are against even a supposition of this kind. On the 15th, at eight o'clock, A. M. we made sail, and in the afternoon we anchored on the east-side of Cape Monday, in Wash Pot Bay. The pitch of the cape bore N. W. distant half a mile, and the extreme points of the bay from E. to N. by W. The nearest shore was a low island between us and the cape, from which island we lay about half a cable's length. We had at this place frequent showers of rain and hail, with the air all the time excessive sharp.

On Saturday the 16th, at six o'clock, A. M. we unmoored, and at eight a strong current set us to the eastward. In this perplexing situation we were driven about from place to place, losing perhaps in a few hours, what we had been six days and nights working to the westward; for when the wind continues with violence there is no regular tide; but on the contrary, a constant westerly current running two miles an hour. Perceiving we lost ground, we came to an anchor, but finding the ground to be rocky we weighed again; and every man on board the rest of the day, and the whole night, continued on deck, during which time the rain pouted down in unremitting torrents. Notwithstanding this incessant labour, on the 17th, we had the mortification to find we had been losing way on every tack, and at nine o'clock, A. M. we were glad to anchor in the very bay we had left two days before. It continued to rain, and blow violently for two days longer, so that we began to think, without a favourable

wind, it would quarter in one of these boats, but no anchorage, the wind veered, we worked to windward, at intervals obliged to mean while the never lost sight leagues to the good anchorage. disappointments, concern, we four, which had them; however, the extraordinary portable soup to the whole ship, and on Monday greatest humane own table, what of those attacked vented from rage, and, to our great to the westward. in a commodious where the Tamar place very safe, remarkable, that no weather, added both ships, in spirits.

On Saturday again set sail, and which rolled in the afternoon, we ward of Cape Monday found at the bottom the 24th, the boat's second lieutenant time we had no weather, with struggle the evening the able to get round boat was sent again besides materials land, and find it evening they returned and had found two very good upon flood to the N. The straits here mountains seemed head of our ship. We continued under a violent sea from obliged to lie to four in the afternoon and in less than the distance of we therefore tacked. At eleven we saw we were much all of our situation, lowering, and the heard dashing against the disaster which menacing; but a immediate destruction, our ship veered the breakers, on the southward. which we had officers and men care us from the their alacrity and these those who merit this transfusion now made a signal pointing her case No. 48.

wind, it would be our ill fortune to spend the winter quarter in one of these coves. The Commodore had sent out a boat to probe the bay on the north shore, but no anchorage could be found. On the 21st, we set sail, the wind veering from S. W. by W. to N. N. W. we worked to windward with continual squalls, which at intervals obliged us to clue all our sails. In the mean while the Tamar, whom till this time we had never lost sight of, by a favourable breeze, got a few leagues to the westward, where she lay two days in good anchorage. Harassed as we were by continual disappointments, to add still more to our vexation and concern, we found our men were attacked by the fever, which had made its appearance on many of them; however, by the assistance of vegetables, and the extraordinary care of the Commodore, who caused portable soup to be served to the sick, and twice a week to the whole ship's company, on Fridays with pease, and on Mondays with oatmeal; and who with the greatest humanity never spared to distribute from his own table, whatever might be of use for the recovery of those attacked by this dreadful disorder, it was prevented from raging with any great inveteracy. On the 22d, to our great joy we made way, the current setting to the westward. At six in the evening, we anchored in a commodious bay on the east-side of Cape Monday, where the Tamar lay in 18 fathoms. We found this place very safe, the ground being excellent. It is remarkable, that notwithstanding the late severity of the weather, added to their incessant labour, the crew of both ships, in general, retained both health and spirits.

On Saturday the 23d, at eight o'clock, A. M. we again set sail, and in a few hours opened the South Sea, which rolled in with a prodigious swell. At four in the afternoon, we anchored about a league to the eastward of Cape Upright, in a good bay, with a deep sound at the bottom, by which it may be known. On the 24th, the boat was sent to the westward, with the second lieutenant, in search of an harbour, at which time we had continued rains, and cold unhealthy weather, with strong gales from the N. W. At six in the evening the boat returned without having been able to get round Cape Upright. On the 25th, the boat was sent again, with arms, and a week's provisions, besides materials for erecting a tent, in case they should land, and find it necessary to make use of it. In the evening they returned, having been about four leagues, and had found two anchoring places, neither of them very good; upon which we weighed, and on the 26th, stood to the N. W. to windward of Cape Monday. The straits here are four or five leagues over, and the mountains seemed to be ten times as high as the mast head of our ship, but not much covered with snow. We continued under sail, till the wind increasing, and a violent sea from the westward coming on, we were obliged to lie to under our close reefed top-sails. At four in the afternoon, the weather became very thick, and in less than half an hour we saw the south shore, at the distance of about a mile, but got no anchorage; we therefore tacked, and stood over to the north shore. At eleven we saw the land on the north shore, at which we were much alarmed; when to heighten the danger of our situation, the sky suddenly became dark and lowering, and the noise of the waves, which we plainly heard dashing against the precipices, seemed to foretell the disaster which we thought ourselves near experiencing; but at the very instant, when we expected immediate destruction, by hoisting out our head sails, our ship veered round on the other tack, and left the breakers, on which we made sail with our head to the southward. During this critical situation, from which we had been so providentially delivered, the officers and men united in doing their utmost, to extricate us from the impending danger, and behaved with that alacrity and intrepidity, which so strongly characterize those who compose our naval force, who justly merit this transient testimony to their honour. We now made a signal for the Tamar to come up, supposing her safe to be equally desperate with our own:

No. 28.

however the soon failed a-head, firing a gun, and showing lights, whenever she saw land. Our situation was now very alarming; the storm increased every moment, the weather was exceeding thick, the rain seemed to threaten another deluge, we had a long dark night before us, we were in a narrow channel, and surrounded on every side with rocks and breakers. By the violence of the wind, our mizen-top-sail was split from the yard, and rendered entirely useless. During this tempestuous night we parted company with our consort. We now brought to, keeping the Dolphin's Head to the S. W. but there being a prodigious sea, it broke over us so often, that the whole deck was almost under water. After bending a new mizen-top-sail, and repairing as well as we could the damages our ship had suffered, on the 27th, about five in the morning, to our inexpressible joy, the day began to dawn upon us; but the weather was so hazy, that no land could be seen, though we knew it could not be far distant, and it might be close under our lee. We therefore made a signal for the Tamar to come under our stern, which having done, we bore away, and, at seven, both ships came to an anchor in Cape Monday Bay, about one mile to the eastward, with the small bower, in 23 fathoms water, and veered out to a whole cable. We had twice in this perplexing traverse been within four leagues of Tuesday's Bay, at the western entrance of the strait, and had twice been driven back 10 or 12 leagues by the fury of opposing storms. When the season is so far advanced as it was when we attempted the passage through this strait, it is a most difficult and dangerous undertaking, as it blows a hurricane incessantly night and day, and the rain is as violent and constant as the wind, with such fogs as often render it impossible to discover any object at the distance of twice the ship's length. Our Commodore, after attending to the necessary refreshments of his officers and men, who had endured the greatest fatigues, thought proper to name the high-land, which we had so miraculously escaped, Cape Providence. It rises to a very great height, and projects to the southward, being situated about four or five leagues from Cape Monday, but upon the opposite shore. On the 28th, finding our cables much damaged by the rocks, we condemned our best bower, and cut it into junk. We also bent a new one, which we rounded with old rigging eight fathoms from the water. In the mean time the Tamar had parted from her anchor, and was drove over to the east-side of the bay. She was brought up at a small distance from some rocks, against which she might otherwise have been dashed to pieces. On the 29th, at seven o'clock, A. M. we weighed and set sail, but, at intervals, were attended with hard squalls from the westward, and heavy rains. While we were working to windward, the Tamar, steering by the south coast, ran a-ground, and made the signal of distress, by firing a gun, and hoisting her ensign in the mizen-illustrous; on which we stood again into the bay, bore down to her assistance, and hoisted out our boats. We sent anchor hawlers, with which they soon hove her off, and she came to anchor near us in Monday Bay.

On Saturday the 30th, the winds were so violent as perfectly to tear up the sea, and carry it higher than the top-masts. The storm came from W. N. W. and was more furious than any preceding one. A dreadful sea rolled over us, and dashed against the rocks with a noise like thunder. Happily, we did not part our cables, of which we were in constant apprehension, knowing the ground to be foul. Finding the ship laboured much, we lowered all the main and fore-yards, let go our small bower, veered a cable and a half on the best bower, and having bent the sheet cable, stood by the anchor all the rest of the day. On the 31st, about one o'clock, A. M. the weather, though somewhat moderate, continued till midnight to be dark, rainy, and tempestuous, when soon after the wind changed to the S. W.

On Monday the 1st of April, we had soft and moderate gales, yet still the weather continued thick; attended with heavy rain. At eight o'clock, A. M. we weighed our best bower, and found the cable much wounded

not caught a great number of fish. They had no found-
ings with 100 fathoms line. On the 28th, however, we
came to an anchor on the east-side of the island, in 24
fathoms water, at which time the extremities of the
island appeared on the S. and N. W. The tops of the
mountains are not always to be seen, they being in some
parts covered with clouds, which hang hovering over
them, and the air on their tops being seldom clear. At
eleven in the morning we sent out our boat, with an
officer, to find out a convenient place to wood and wa-
ter in on shore.

The surface of this island is very irregular; but the
valleys have a beautiful verdure, and their sides are full
of trees from the top to the bottom. At a great dis-
tance indeed those beauties are not visible, but when
within a mile or thereabouts, they form a most deligh-
tful prospect. The goats, which we saw in great num-
bers, were so shy, that we found it difficult to get near
them, especially within the distance of a musket shot;
however, we made a shift to kill some, and we thought
them to be excellent food, particularly the kids. We
observed a remarkable circumstance, with respect to
two of them which we shot, they having had their ears
cut when young. It is probable, that the men who
were sent on board the *Trial Sloop* by lord Anson,
to examine into the state of this island, had more serious
employment than that of sitting the ears of the goats;
and it appears much more probable, that some solitary
Spaniard had dwelt here, who, like his namesake, at Juan
Fernandes, when he caught more than he wanted,
worked, and let them go. However, during our stay
at this place, we saw no traces of any human being.
Round the south-side of the shore we found a red earth,
impregnated with large veins of a gold colour. The
shores are every where very steep, and near them you
cannot find less than from 24 to 30 fathoms. We found
every where difficult to get on shore, it being full of
rocks and large stones, with a very great surf. Round
the island we met with great quantities of fish, such as
carallies, bream, moids, and congers of a particular
kind: with a singular sort of fish called chimney-
sweepers, somewhat like our carp, only larger. There
is another species of valuable fish, which we called cod.
It is not exactly like our cod in shape, but the taste is
equally agreeable. We likewise found a great number
of cray-fish, which were so large as to weigh eight or
ten pounds each. We saw a multitude of sharks, one
of which was near carrying off one of our men. As
the great swell would not permit the boat to approach
the shore, he was swimming a cask to it; but the sailor
who was always left to take care of the boat, saw the
shark within a few yards of his companion, just ready
to seize upon him, and called to him to hasten ashore,
which, through his great fright, he could hardly reach.
The boat-keeper having the boat-hook in his hand,
brack at the shark with great force, but without any
visible effect. The dog-fish we met with here are very
mischievous, and destroy abundance of the smaller sort
of fish: they frequently obliged us to haul in our lines,
for when near, no other fish are to be found. Besides
these, the shore is generally crowded with seals and sea-
lions. The dog-fish does not appear to have the least
resemblance of a dog, or any other animal, and there-
fore it is difficult to determine the derivation of its
name. It has a roundish body, and instead of scales,
is covered with that rough skin used by joiners and
cabinet-makers for polishing wood, generally known
by the name of fish-skin. Its back is of a brownish ash-
colour; but its belly is commonly white, and smoother
than the rest of its body. The eyes are covered with
a double membrane, and the mouth armed with a
double row of teeth. It has two fins on the back, with
sharp prickles standing before them. It brings forth
its young alive, and is never very large, seldom weigh-
ing more than 20 pounds. The sea-lion has some re-
semblance to a seal, but is of a much larger size, for
these animals, when full grown, are from 12 to 30 feet
in length, and from 8 to 15 feet round. The head is
small in proportion to the body, and terminates in a
snout. In each jaw they have a row of large pointed

teeth, two thirds of which are in sockets: but the others,
without them, are most solid, and stand out of the
mouth. They have small eyes and ears, with whiskers
like a cat, and small nostrils, which are the only part
destitute of hair. The males are distinguished by
having a large snout or trunk, hanging five or six in-
ches below the end of the upper jaw, which the females
have not. The skin of the sea-lion is covered with a
short light dun coloured hair, but his fins and tail,
which when on shore, serve him for feet, are almost
black; the fins or feet are divided at the ends like toes,
but are joined by a web, that does not reach to their ex-
tremities, and each toe is furnished with a nail. They
are so extremely fat, that on cutting through the skin,
which is near an inch in thickness, there is at least a
foot of fat before you come to either lean or bones;
and yet they are so full of blood, that if deeply wounded
in 10 or 12 places, there instantly gushes out as many
fountains of blood, spouting to a considerable distance.
Their flesh resembles in taste that of beef; and their
fat, on being melted, makes good oil. The males are of
a much larger size than the females, and both of them
continue at sea all the summer, and coming ashore at
the beginning of winter, stay there during that season,
when they engender, and bring forth their young,
having commonly two at a birth, which they suckle with
their milk. On shore they feed on the verdure that
grows near the water: and sleep in herds, in the moist
miry places they can find, with some of the males at a
distance, who are sure to alarm them if any one ap-
proaches, sometimes by snorting like horses, and at
others, by grunting like hogs. The males have fre-
quently furious battles about their females.

This island is usually called by the Spaniards, the
Lesse Juan Fernandes, it being about 22 leagues to
the W. by S. of the island more frequently called by
that name: and is termed Mafa-Fuero, from its being
at a greater distance from the continent. In his way
to this place, the Commodore was not far from the spot,
where he had endured the extremity of wretchedness
24 years before, when he was a midshipman, under
Captain Cheap, on board the *Wager*, a frigate of
28 guns, one of the squadron which was commanded
by Commodore Anson, in his memorable expedition to
the South Sea, and which was wrecked on the shore of
an island on the coast of Chiloe. In many respects this
island and that of Juan Fernandes resemble each other:
the shore of both is steep, and for the most part have
little fresh water; but no spring was here found com-
parable to that of the watering place at the Greater
Juan Fernandes: they are both mountainous, and
adorned with a variety of trees, which with the different
bearings of the hills, and the windings of the valleys
form, even from the sea, the most rude, and at the same
time the most elegant prospects. None of the trees of
the greater Juan Fernandes are large enough for any
considerable timber, except the myrtle, the trunks of
some of which are of such a size, as to be worked 40 feet
in length. But the oaks of the greater Juan Fer-
nandes are much fewer in number than at Mafa-Fuero;
the Spaniards having placed no oaks on the latter
island, in order to destroy them. With respect to
the plenty of excellent fish, and the number of amphi-
bious animals, as seals and sea-lions, which line the
shores of both, they perfectly resemble each other. In
Mafa-Fuero are many cascades, or fine falls of water,
pouring down its sides into the sea. But our stay here
was so short, and we were so seldom on shore, that
we had neither leisure nor opportunity to view this
little island, with the accuracy and precision that might
be wished, and that was absolutely necessary for taking
a full view of the delightful spots which we saw, with
the confusion that necessarily attends a distant prospect.
The greatest disadvantage belonging to this island is
that of not having such a commodious harbour, as the
island of Juan Fernandes.

While we were taking in water for the ships, when-
ever our men found any great surf, they by order of the
Commodore, swam to and from the boats in cork
jackets; for he would by no means admit of their going
into

into the water without putting them on, he being fully sensible, that when properly secured on the body, the person who uses them cannot possibly sink, or suffer any considerable inconvenience, if he does but take care to keep his head above the surface of the water, which is easily done. But these jackets afforded no defence against the sharks, which were often very near the swimmers, and would dart even into the very surf to seize them: our people however providentially escaped them. One of these voracious fish seized a large seal close to one of the watering boats, and devoured it in an instant; and the Commodore saw another do the same, close to the stern of the ship. The following little adventure also took place while we lay off this island. The gunner and one of the seamen, who were with others, on shore for water, were left behind all night, being afraid to venture in the boat, as the sea ran high. The Commodore being informed of this circumstance, sent them word, that as blowing weather might be expected, the ship might be driven from her moorings in the night; in which case they would infallibly be left behind. This message being delivered, the gunner swam to the boat; but the sailor saying, he had rather die a natural death than be drowned, refused to make the attempt: and taking a melancholy farewell of his companions, resolved to abide his fate; when just as the boat was going to put off, a midshipman took the end of a rope in his hand, and swam on shore, where he

remonstrated with the disconsolate tar on the foolish resolution he had taken, till having an opportunity of throwing the rope, in which was a running knot, round his body, he called to the boats crew to haul away, who instantly dragged him through the surf into the boat: he had, however, swallowed so much water that he appeared to be dead; but by holding him up by the heels, he was soon recovered; and on the day following was perfectly well.

Having taken in as much wood and water as the weather would permit, the surf sometimes swelling in such a manner, as to prevent our boats coming near the shore, we thought of leaving the island; but before our departure, in the evening of the 29th, the Commodore removed Captain Mouat from the Tamar, and appointed him Captain of the Dolphin, all flag-officers having a commander under them. This occasioned several other changes. Mr. Cumming, our first lieutenant, was appointed Captain of the Tamar, and we received in his room Mr. Carteret, her first lieutenant. The Commodore also gave Mr. Kendal, one of the mates of the Dolphin, a commission as second lieutenant of the Tamar. After these promotions, on the 30th we weighed, and steered along the E. and N. E. side of the island, but could find no anchoring place; we bore away therefore, with a fresh breeze at S. E. and at noon the center of the island was distant eight leagues in the direction of S. S. E.

C H A P. III.

The Dolphin and Tamar continue their course from the Island of Maza-Fuero westward—Arrive off certain beautiful Islands which are named the Islands of Disappointment, because no places of anchorage could be found—The natives of these Islands described—King George's Islands discovered—Another Island is seen, and called the Prince of Wales's Island—A description of these Islands—Also a particular account of the inhabitants, and of several incidents that happened while the ships were exploring them—The Island of Danger passed—The Duke of York Island discovered—Another new Island found, which receives the name of Byron's Island—The persons and behaviour of the Indians described.

ON the first of May, being Wednesday, we continued to steer N. by W. but on the second, at noon, we altered our course, and steered due west, with the view of falling in with an island, which is laid down in the charts by the name of Davis's Land, in latitude 27 deg. 30 min. S. but on Thursday the 9th, the Commodore laid aside his design, being in latitude 26 deg. 46 min. S. and in 94 deg. 45 min. W. longitude; and having a great run to make, he determined to steer a N. W. course, till he should fall in with a true trade wind, and then to search for Solomon's Islands; but the discovery of both these spots of land was reserved for a future navigator; for the Commodore, in crossing the southern ocean, missed of the islands, which have since been named the Society Isles; and about the same distance to the southward of the Marquesas, discovered by Mendana, a Spaniard, in the year 1597, and afterwards explored by Captain Cook. We had hitherto enjoyed a continued series of fine weather; but the nearer we approached the line, the crew began to fall down with the scurvy very fast, and every day, to the end of this month, brought with it an increase of that dreadful disorder. On the 10th, and following day, we saw several dolphins and bonettas round the ship, and observed a few birds which had a short beak, all their bodies being white, except the back, and the upper part of their wings. On the 14th, in latitude 24 deg. 30 min. S. and in 97 deg. 45 min. W. longitude, we saw more of these birds, and several gannets, from whence imagining we might approach toward some land, we kept a good look-out, but found our expectations disappointed.

On Thursday the 16th, two remarkable birds, as large as geese, with white bodies, and black legs were observed flying very high, from whence it was conjectured that we had passed some main-land, or islands, to the southward of us; for the last night we observed, that,

notwithstanding we had a great swell from that quarter yet the water became quite smooth for a few hours after which the swell returned. On Wednesday the 22nd, being in latitude 20 degrees 52 min. S. and in 115 deg. 38 min. W. the swell from the southward was so great, that we expected every minute, to see our masts roll over the ship's side; to prevent which, and to ease the ship, we hauled more to the northward. This day we caught, for the first time, two bonettas and were visited by some tropic birds, larger than any we had seen before. Their whole plumage was white and they had in each of their tails two long feathers.

On Sunday the 26th, we were in latitude 16 deg. 55 minutes S. and in 127 deg. 55 min. W. longitude when we saw two large birds about the ship, all black except their necks and beaks. The feathers of their wings and tails were long, yet they flew very heavily. We supposed them, from this last circumstance, to be a species that did not fly far from the shore. We had imagined that before we had run six degrees to the northward of Maza-Fuero, we should have been favoured with a settled trade wind to the S. E. but the wind still continued to the north, though we had a most continual swell from the S. W. On the 28th, two other birds, one black and white, and the other brown and white, would have settled on the yards, but were intimidated by the working of the ship. On the 31st our people began to fall down with the scurvy very fast which made us wish for land. At length, after a passage of 31 days,

On Friday the 7th of June, at one o'clock, A. M. the Tamar made the signal of seeing land; on which we brought to till daylight; and in the mean time flattered ourselves with the pleasing hopes of getting some kinds of refreshments, of which we stood in great need, especially for those who were sick; and we knew, that the islands, which are situated within

twenty degrees with fruit of all the pleasure of beautiful trees, a regaled with the poor wretches gazing on this had forbidden them not easily be abundance, the powerful antiseptic their mortification scattered about want of which the effectually beyond the circumference officer having been that no bottom could length from the beach with a range of three soundings could be fishes, had we at the surf upon the have been in gre island lies in the in 145 deg. 4 mi extends 12 miles island is a good de walked over the b have been broken ed, for we saw nu fears in their har They ran along th hallooing, and flu They frequently b threw themselves motionless, as if t ting to signify the should presume: r various signs of ar by our people in th nile disposition. T be gone; and alw the shore, to movo any it; and thos pany it; and thos tance, they could opposite to them. have defenders c withheld them fro as no anchorage thought it most island. These Ind with well propor tremely active, and Their women, wh their bosoms, had and hanging dowo taught them to ce was their only clo to about 50 in n perceive their haw grove we ever fa notice, that in one in the sand two s fastened several th some of them were them, as we supp visible being to Among other sign our men threw t none of which the but with great exp which we saw on this was done the to watch for an of that they might d On Saturday th second time, that about this island. No. 28.

twenty degrees of the line, are frequently well stored with fruit of all kinds. Soon after day-break, we had the pleasure of seeing a low small island, covered with beautiful trees, and on sailing to the leeward, we were regaled with the smell of the finest fruits. The poor wretches who were able to crawl upon deck, stood gazing on this little paradise, which however nature had forbidden them to enter, with sensations which cannot easily be conceived. They saw cocoa-nuts in abundance, the milk of which is perhaps the most powerful antiscorbutic in the world; and to increase their mortification, they saw the shells of many turtles scattered about the shore. These refreshments, for want of which they were languishing to death, were as effectually beyond their reach, as if there had been half the circumference of the globe between them; for an officer having been quite round the island, reported, that no bottom could be found, within less than a cable's length from the shore, which was surrounded, close to the beach with a steep coral rock; and that, at the distance of three quarters of a mile from the shore, no soundings could be had with 140 fathom of line. Besides, had we at one place cast anchor in 45 fathoms, the surf upon the shore was so great, that the ship would have been in great danger of being stranded. This island lies in the latitude of 14 deg. 5 min. S. and in 145 deg. 4 min. W. longitude from London. It extends 12 miles in length; and in the body of the island is a good deal of water, which was, we apprehend, washed over the banks, as some of them appeared to have been broken. We soon perceived it was inhabited, for we saw numbers of Indians upon the beach, with spears in their hands, that were at least 16 feet long. They ran along the shore, abreast of the ships, dancing, hallooing, and shouting in the most hideous manner. They frequently brandished their long spears, and then threw themselves backwards, and lay a few minutes motionless, as if they had been dead; doublets meaning to signify thereby, that they would kill whoever should presume to go on shore. Notwithstanding various signs of amity and good will were made them by our people in the boat, nothing could abate their hostile disposition. They made in their turn signs for us to be gone; and always took care, as the boat sailed along the shore, to move in the same direction, and accompany it; and though the men saw some turtle at a distance, they could get at none, as those Indians still kept opposite to them. The sailors were eager to fire on the brave defenders of their native soil, but their officers withheld them from such a wanton act of cruelty; and as no anchorage could be found, the Commodore thought it most advisable to steer to the adjacent island. These Indians are of a very black complexion, with well proportioned limbs, and seemed to be extremely active, and fleet of foot to an astonishing degree. Their women, who were only to be distinguished by their bosoms, had something twisted round their waists, and hanging down from thence, to hide what nature taught them to conceal, as had also the men; and this was their only clothing. They altogether amounted to about 50 in number; and to the S. W. we could perceive their huts, under the shade of the most lovely grove we ever saw. While sailing along shore, we took notice, that in one place the natives had fixed upright in the sand two spears, to the top of which they had fastened several things that fluttered in the air, and that some of them were every moment kneeling down before them, as we supposed, invoking assistance of some invisible being to defend them against their invaders. Among other signs of good will that they could devise, our men threw them bread, and many other things, none of which they vouchsafed so much as to touch, but with great expedition hauled five or six large canoes, which we saw on the beach, up into a wood. When this was done they waded into the water, and seemed to watch for an opportunity of laying hold of the boat, that they might drag her on shore.

On Saturday the 8th, the boats having reported a second time, that no anchoring ground could be found about this island, we worked, at six o'clock, P. M.

under the lee of the other island, which lay to the westward of the former, and sent out our cutter to find for a place to anchor in. We now observed several other low islands, or rather peninsulas, most of them being joined one to the other by a neck of land, very narrow, and almost level with the surface of the water, which breaks high over it. Here, to our great disappointment, no refreshments could be procured, owing to the inaccessible nature of the coast; and we saw a much greater number of Indians surrounding the shore, who, with spears of equal length, followed us in like manner, several hundreds of them running about the coast in great disorder; and at the same time we beheld the island covered with a prodigious number of cocoa-nut, plantain, and tamarind trees. Having waited some time with great impatience for the return of our cutter, we fired a gun, as a signal for our men to come on board, which terribly alarmed the Indians, who seemed to consult among themselves what measures it would be most prudent for them to take. They kept abreast of the boats, as they went sounding along the shore, and used many threatening gestures, to deter them from landing. Their canoes they dragged into the woods, and at the same time the women came with great stones in their hands to assist the men in preventing, what they doubtless thought to be, our hostile intentions. The cutter returned near noon, bringing much the same account of this as of the other island, there being no soundings at a cable's length from the shore, with a line of 100 fathoms. This gave us inexpressible concern, as we had now 30 sick on board, to whom the land air, the fruit and vegetables, that appeared so beautiful and attractive, would have afforded immediate relief and returning health. Finding it impossible to obtain those tempting refreshments which hung full in our view, we quitted, with longing eyes, this paradise in appearance, to which the name was with propriety given of the Islands of Disappointment. Continuing our course to the westward, on the 9th we saw land again, at the distance of seven leagues, W. S. W. At seven o'clock, P. M. we brought to for the night. In the morning of the 10th, being within three miles of the shore, we found it to be a long low island, with a white beach of a pleasant appearance, covered with cocoa-nut and other trees, and surrounded with a rock of red coral. We stood along the N. E. side, within half a mile of the shore, and the natives, on seeing us, made great fires, and ran along the beach, abreast of the ships in great numbers, armed like the natives of the islands we had last visited, and like them, they appeared to be a robust and fierce race of men. Over the land we could discern a large lake of salt-water, which appeared to be two or three leagues wide, and to reach within a small distance of the opposite shore. Into this lake we observed a small inlet, about a league from the S. W. point, where is a little town seated under the shade of a fine grove of cocoa-nut-trees. The Commodore immediately sent off the boats to found; but they could find no anchorage, the shore being every where perpendicular as a wall, except at the mouth of the inlet. We stood close in with the shore, and saw hundreds of the natives ranged in good order, and standing up to their waists in water; they were all armed, like those we had seen in the other islands, and one of them carried a piece of mat, fastened to the top of a pole, which we imagined was an ensign. They made a loud and incessant noise; and in a little time, many large canoes came down to the boats, but with no friendly intentions, for we soon perceived their main design was to haul our boats on shore. One of them went into the Tamar's boat, and with the greatest adroitness seized a seaman's jacket, and jumping overboard with it, never once appeared above water, till he was close in shore among his companions; another got hold of a midshipman's hat, but not knowing how to take it off, he pulled it downwards, instead of lifting it up; so that the owner had time to prevent his taking it away. Our seamen bore these insults with much patience, as transgressions of the simple children of nature.

Finding about noon, that there was no anchorage here, we steered along the shore to the westernmost point of the island, and when we came to it we saw another island, bearing S. W. by W. at about four leagues distance. We were now about one league beyond the inlet, where we had left the natives; but they were not contented with our having quietly left them; for we now observed two large double canoes sailing after the ship, with about thirty men in each, all armed after the manner of their country. The boats were a good way to leeward of us; and the canoes passing between the ship and the shore, seemed to chase them with great resolution. Upon this the Commodore made a signal for the boats to speak with the canoes, which they no sooner perceived, than they turned towards the Indians, who being instantly seized with a sudden panic, hauled down their sails, and paddled away at a surprizing rate. The boats, however, came up with them; but notwithstanding the dreadful surf that broke upon the shore, the canoes pushed through it, and were instantly hauled upon the beach. Our boats followed them, when the natives, dreading an invasion of their country, prepared to defend it with javelins, clubs, and stones: upon seeing this, our men fired, and killed two or three of them; one of whom who stood close to the boats, received three balls, which passed quite through his body; yet he afterwards took up a large stone, and died in the action of throwing it. The Indians carried off the rest of their dead, except this one man, and made the best of their way back to their companions at the inlet. The boats then returned, and brought off the two canoes they had pursued. One of them was 32 feet long, and the other somewhat less: both were of a very curious construction, and must have been formed with prodigious labour. They consisted of planks exceedingly well wrought, and in many places adorned with carving; these planks were sewed together, and over every seam there was a slip of tortoiseshell, very ingeniously fastened to keep out the weather. Their bottoms were as sharp as a wedge; and the boats being very narrow, two of them were joined laterally together by a couple of strong spars, so that there was a space of about eight feet between them. A mast was hoisted in each, and a sail was spread between the masts: this sail was made of matting, and remarkable for the neatness of its workmanship. Their paddles also are very curious, and their cordage as good, and as well made as any in England, though it appeared to be made only of the outer covering of the cocoa-nut. When these vessels sail, several men sit on the spars which hold the canoes together. The surf which broke high upon the shore, rendering it impossible to procure refreshments for the sick, in this part of the island, we returned back to the inlet, in order to try what more could be done there; but the boats being sent to sound the inlet again, returned, and confirmed their former account, that it afforded no anchorage for a ship. While the boats were absent, a great number of the natives were seen upon the spot where we had left them in the morning, who seemed very busy in loading and manning some canoes which lay close to the beach. The Commodore, thinking they might be troublesome, and being unwilling to have recourse to the sanguinary means which had before been used, fired a shot over their heads, which produced the intended effect, for they instantly dispersed. Just before the close of the evening, our boats landed, and brought off a few cocoa-nuts, but saw none of the inhabitants.

On Tuesday the 11th, in the morning, the Commodore, with all the men who were ill of the scurvy, and capable of doing it, went on shore, where they continued the whole day. The houses were totally deserted, except by the dogs, who howled incessantly, from the time we came on shore, till we returned to the ship. The wigwams were low mean structures, thatched with the leaves of cocoa-nut trees; but they were delightfully situated in a fine grove of stately trees: many of which were such as we were entirely unacquainted with. The shore was covered with coral, and shells of very large pearl oysters, and the Commodore firmly believed,

that as profitable a pearl fishery might be established here as any in the world. In one of the huts was found the carved head of a rudder, which had evidently belonged to a Dutch long-boat. It was very old and worm-eaten. A piece of hammered iron, a piece of brass, and some small iron tools, were also found, all which had most probably been obtained from the same ship to which the boat belonged. The inhabitants of these islands were not over-burdened with cloathing: the men we saw were naked, but the women had a piece of cloth of some kind hanging from the waist as low as the knee. The cocoa-nut tree seems to furnish them with all the necessaries of life, particularly food, sails, cordage, timber, and vessels to hold water. Clofe to their houses we discovered buildings of another kind, which appeared to be burying-places. They were situated under lofty trees that gave a thick gloomy shade: the sides and tops were of stone, and they somewhat resembled in their figure, the square tombs with a flat top in our country church-yards. Near these buildings we found many neat boxes, full of human bones; and upon the branches of the trees that shaded them, hung a great number of heads and bones of turtles, and a variety of other fish, inclosed with a kind of basket work of reeds. We here saw no venomous creature; but the musquetoos covered us from head to foot, and infested not only the boat, but the ship, being an intolerable torment. We observed a great number of parrots, and parroquets, with a variety of other birds, altogether unknown to us. We saw also a beautiful kind of doves, so tame, that some of them frequently came close to us, and followed us into the Indian huts. The fresh water here is good, but rather scarce: the wells that supply the natives being so small, that when two or three cocoa-nut shells have been filled from them, they are dry for a few minutes; but as they presently fill again, if a little pains were taken to enlarge them, they would abundantly supply any ship with water. We obtained cocoa-nuts and scurvy-grafs in great quantities, which were most inestimable acquisitions, as by this time there was not a man on board who was wholly untouched with the scurvy. All this day the natives kept themselves closely concealed, and did not even make a smoke upon any part of the island, as far as we could see. In the evening we all returned on board, highly pleased with this day's amusement and work. This island lies about 67 leagues from the Islands of Disappointment, in the direction of W. half S. and in the latitude of 14 deg. 29 min. S. longitude 148 deg. 50 min. W. The inhabitants seem to have some notions of religion, as we saw a place, which we concluded to be appropriated to their manner of worship. A rude, but very agreeable avenue opened to a spacious area, in which was one of the largest and most spreading cocoas we saw in the place; before which were several large stones, probably altars; and from the tree hung the figure of a dog adorned with feathers.

On Wednesday the 12th, we visited another island which had been seen to the westward; and steered S. W. by W. close along the N. E. side of it, which is about six or seven leagues long. This island makes much the same appearance as the other, having a large salt lake in the middle of it. The ship no sooner came in sight, than the natives repaired in great numbers to the beach, armed in the same manner as those already described, but not of such boisterous manners. The boats founded as usual along the shore, but had strict orders not to molest the Indians, except it should be absolutely necessary in their own defence; but on the contrary, to use every gentle method in order to obtain their confidence and good will. They rowed as near the shore as they durst for the surf; and making signs of their wanting water, the Indians readily understood them, and directed them to run down farther along the shore, which they did, till they came abreast of such a cluster of houses, as we had just left upon the other island. The Indians followed them thither, and were there joined by many others. The boats immediately hauled close into the surf, and we brought to with the ships, at a little distance from the shore; upon which, a

flour old man, with
from the houses to
man, and appeared
king. On his making
retired to a small cove
the water's edge, he
of a tree, and in the
he pressed to his b
long speech, or rather
confidence. We were
him, but to shew our
ings, we threw him
would neither touch
touched by others,
into the water, and
after which he rose
thrown from the boat
friendly appearance
down their arms; and
one of the midship
of confidence and
with his clothes on
shore, on which they
and dancing as if t
examine his clothe
cularly shewed his
waistcoat; upon w
it to them. This
effect; for he had
than one of the Ind
moment snatched it
it. He therefore,
the best of his wa
however upon good
seam off to us, som
others a little-fresh
endeavoured to tow
could not make our
ever, probably hav
of any kind been ef
no anchorage coul
we saw two very larg
and some cordage
Comodore gave the na
of his present Maj
latitude 14 deg. 41
On Thursday the
to the westward, ab
land, bearing S. S
mediately stood se
and to be about 60
King George's Islan
tion of South 80
15 deg. S. and th
53 min. W. longi
of it, and the app
pleasant green sur
every part of the
tance, and at abou
islets. It has a nar
and N. by E. We
canoes dispersed a
which was given
Island. From its
28 deg. W. and o
ritude 14 deg. 28
longitude. The m
which to this day
were attended with
evening took their
appearances we con
tion; the discoverer
had not the sickn
an insuperable ba
the swell continu
about the ship; f
distant, we proceed
this part of the oc
they being so low
before they are f

flout old man, with a long white beard, came down from the houses to the beach, attended by a young man, and appeared to have the authority of a chief or king. On his making a signal, the rest of the Indians retired to a small distance, and he then advanced to the water's edge, holding in one hand the green branch of a tree, and in the other grasping his beard, which he pressed to his bosom. In this attitude he made a long speech, or rather song, for it had an agreeable cadence. We were sorry that we could not understand him, but to shew our good will, while he was speaking, we threw him some trifling presents, which he would neither touch himself, nor suffer them to be touched by others, till he had done. He then walked into the water, and threw to us the green branch; after which he took up the things which had been thrown from the boats. Every thing having now a friendly appearance, we made signs that they should lay down their arms; and most of them having complied, one of the midshipmen, encouraged by this testimony of confidence and friendship, leaped out of the boat with his clothes on, and swam through the surf to the shore, on which the Indians stocked round him, singing and dancing as if to express their joy, and began to examine his clothes with seeming curiosity; they particularly shewed signs of admiration on viewing his waistcoat; upon which he took it off, and presented it to them. This act of generosity had a disagreeable effect; for he had no sooner given away his waistcoat, than one of the Indians untied his cravat, and the next moment snatched it from his neck, and ran away with it. He therefore, to prevent his being stripped, made the best of his way back to the boat. We were still however upon good terms, and several of the Indians swam off to us, some of them bringing a cocoa-nut, and others a little fresh water in a cocoa-nut shell. We endeavoured to obtain from them some pearls, but we could not make ourselves understood. We should, however, probably have succeeded better, had an intercourse of any kind been established between us; but unluckily no anchorage could be found for the ships. In the lake we saw two very large vessels, one of which had two masts, and some cordage aloft. To these two islands the Commodore gave the name of King George's Islands, in honour of his present Majesty. That which we last visited lies in latitude 14 deg. 41 min. S. longitude 149 deg. 15 min. W.

On Thursday the 13th, having continued our course to the westward, about three o'clock, P. M. we descried land, bearing S. S. W. distant six leagues. We immediately stood for it, and found it to lie E. and W. and to be about 60 miles in length. It is distant from King George's Islands about 48 leagues, in the direction of south 80 deg. W. situated in the latitude of 15 deg. S. and the westernmost end of it in 151 deg. 53 min. W. longitude. We ran along the south-side of it, and the appearance of the country exhibited a pleasant green surface; but a dreadful surf breaks upon every part of the shore, with foul ground at some distance, and at about three leagues are many rocks and shoals. It has a narrow neck of land running S. by W. and N. by E. We saw a number of Indians and several canoes dispersed about different parts of the island, to which was given the name of the Prince of Wales's Island. From its western extremity, we steered north 28 deg. W. and on the 16th at noon, observed in latitude 14 deg. 28 min. S. and in 156 deg. 23 min. W. longitude. The mountainous swell from the southward, which to this day we had lost, now returned; and we were attended with vast flocks of birds, which in the evening took their flight to the southward; from which appearances we concluded, more land lay in that direction; the discovery of which we should have attempted, had not the sickness of the crews in both ships been an insuperable bar to such an attempt. On the 17th, the swell continued, and various kinds of birds flew about the ship; supposing therefore land to be not far distant, we proceeded with caution, for the islands in this part of the ocean render navigation very dangerous, they being so low, that a ship may be close in with them before they are seen. Nothing material occurred on

the 18th and 19th. On the 20th, we found our latitude to be 12 deg. 33 min. S. longitude 167 deg. 47 min. W. The prince of Wales's Island, distant 313 leagues.

On Friday the 21st, at seven o'clock, A. M. we again saw land a-head, bearing W. N. W. and distant about eight leagues. It had the appearance of three islands from this point of sight; and the Commodore took them for Solomon's Islands, seen by Quiros, in the beginning of the 17th century, and very imperfectly described by him. But on our nearer approach, we found only a single island, about 12 miles in length, surrounded with shoals and breakers, on which account it was named the Island of Danger. The reef of rocks which we first saw, when we approached this isle, lies in latitude 10 deg. 15 min. S. and in 169 deg. 28 min. W. longitude; and it bears from this reef W. N. W. distant nine leagues. From the Prince of Wales's Island it bears north 76 deg. 48 min. W. distant nine leagues. As you run in with the land, you see the sands, and about seven leagues off from the most eastern parts of the island, lies a ridge of rocks, near a quarter of a mile in length, and when abreast of these, the island bears W. by N. We sailed round the north end, and upon the N. W. and W. side saw innumerable rocks and shoals, which stretched near two leagues into the sea, and were extremely dangerous. But as to the island itself, it had a more beautiful and fertile appearance than any we had seen before, and like the rest abounded with people and cocoa-nut trees. The habitations of the natives we saw standing in groups all along the coast. At a distance from this we observed a large vessel under sail. It was with much regret that we could not sufficiently examine this place, which we were obliged to leave by reason of the rocks and breakers; that surrounded it in every direction, which rendered the hazard attending a minute survey, more than an equivalent to every advantage we might procure.

On Sunday the 23d, having still proceeded in our course to the westward, at nine o'clock, P. M. the Tamar, who was a-head, fired a gun, and our people imagined they saw breakers to the leeward; but we were soon convinced, that what had been taken for breakers, was nothing more than the undulating reflection of the moon, which was going down, and shone faintly from behind a cloud in the horizon. We had this day excessive hard showers of rain, on which we seized such a favourable opportunity of filling our casks with a fresh supply of water. This is performed on board of ship, by extending large pieces of canvass in an horizontal position, hanging them by the corners, and placing a cannon ball, or any heavy body in the centre; by which means the rain running trickling down to the middle, pours in a stream into the casks placed under. In this manner the Manilla ships, during the long passages they make through the South Seas, recruit their water, from the great showers of rain which at this season of the year fall in these latitudes, for which purpose they always carry a great number of earthen-jars with them. On the 24th, we had moderate fair weather, and at ten o'clock, A. M. we descried another island, bearing S. S. W. distant about seven or eight leagues. We found it to be low, and covered with wood, among which were cocoa-nut trees in great abundance. But though the place itself has a pleasant appearance, a dreadful sea breaks upon almost every part of the coast, and a great deal of foul ground lies about it. A large lake is in the middle of this island, and it is near 30 miles in circumference. It is about four leagues in length from E. to W. nearly as much in breadth, and lies in latitude 8 deg. 33 min. S. and in 178 deg. 16 min. W. longitude from London. We sailed quite round it, and, when on the lee-side, sent our boats out to found for an anchoring-place. They returned with the unfavourable news that no soundings were to be got near the shore. However, having been dispatched a second time to procure some refreshments for the sick, they landed with great difficulty, and brought off about 200 cocoa-nuts, which to persons in our circumstances, were an inestimable treasure. They found on shore thousands of sea-fowl sitting on their nests,

ness, and so divested of fear, that they did not attempt to move at the approach of the seamen, but suffered themselves to be knocked down, having no apprehension of the mischief that was intended them. The ground was covered with land crabs; these were the only animals we saw, nor did we observe the least sign of any inhabitants; and it was supposed never before to have received the mark of human foot-steps. The Commodore was inclined to believe, that this island was the same that in the French charts is laid down about a degree to the eastward of the great island of Saint Elizabeth, which is the principal of Solomon's Islands, but being afterwards convinced of the contrary, he named it the Duke of York's Island, in honour of his late royal highness.

On Friday the 28th, we gave up all hopes of seeing Solomon's Islands, which we had expected to visit, and should certainly have found, had there been any such islands in the latitude in which they are placed in our maps. These islands are said to have been discovered by Ferdinand de Quiros, who represented them as exceeding rich and populous; and several Spaniards who have pretended that they were driven thither by stress of weather, have said that the natives, with respect to their behaviour, were much like those of the continent of America, and that they had ornaments of gold and silver; but though the Spaniards have at different times sent several persons in search of these islands, it was always without success: which must probably proceed, either from the uncertainty of the latitude in which they are said to be found, or the whole being a fiction. There is, indeed, good reason to believe, that there is no good authority for laying down Solomon's Islands in the situation that is assigned them by the French: the only person who has pretended to have seen them, is the above mentioned Quiros, and we doubt whether he left behind him any account of them, by which they might be found by future navigators. However, we continued our course in the track of these supposed islands, till the 29th, and being then 10 deg. to the westward of their situation in the chart, without having seen any thing of them, we hauled to the northward, in order to cross the line, and afterwards to shape our course for the Ladrone Islands, which though a long run, we hoped to accomplish, before we should be distressed for water, notwithstanding it now began to fall short. This day we observed in latitude 8 deg. 13 min. S. and in 176 deg. 20 min. E. longitude.

On Tuesday the 2nd of July, at four o'clock, P. M. we discovered an island bearing north, distant six leagues. We stood for it till sun-set, and then kept off and on for the night. In the morning we found it to be a low flat island, of a most delightful aspect, full of wood, among which the cocoa-nut tree was very conspicuous.

How ever, we had the mortification to find much foul ground about it, upon which the sea broke with a threatening surf. We steered along the S. W. side of it, which we judged to be about four leagues in length, and soon perceived that it was not only inhabited, but very populous. Immediately about 60 canoes, or rather proas, put off to the ships, none of which had fewer than three, nor more than six persons on board. These Indians had nothing of that fierce disposition, which had, in many instances, totally cut off all friendly intercourse. After gazing at the ships for some time, one of them suddenly sprung out of his proa into the sea, and swam to the Dolphin, then ran up the sides like a cat. He had no sooner reached the decks, than sitting down, he burst into a violent fit of laughter; then started up, and ran all over the ship, attempting to steal whatever he could lay his hands on; but, being stark naked, he was always foiled. A seaman put him on a jacket and trowsers, which caused great diversion, as he displayed all the antics of a monkey. At length he leaped over-board, with his new habiliments, and swam back to his proa. The success of this adventurer encouraged several others to swim to the ship, and whatever they could seize they carried off with astonishing agility. These Indians are tall, well proportioned, and clean limbed; their skin of a bright copper colour; their features exceeding regular; and their countenances expressing a surprising mixture of intrepidity and cheerfulness. Their hair is black and long, which some wore tied up behind in a great bunch, others in knots; some had long beards, some only whiskers, and some nothing more than a small tuft at the point of the chin. Except their ornaments, they were all stark naked: these consisted of shells very prettily disposed, and strung together, and were worn round their necks, wrists and waists. All their ears were bored, but no ornaments were seen in them; though as the lobes of their ears hung down almost to their shoulders, it is highly probable, that something of considerable weight is at times affixed to them by way of ornament. One man in the group appeared to be a person of consequence: he had a string of human teeth round his waist, which nothing that was shewed him could induce him to part with. Some were unarmed, but others had a very formidable weapon, consisting of a kind of spear, very broad at the end, and stuck full of shark's teeth, which are as sharp as a lancet at the sides, for about three feet of its length. The officers shewed them cocoa-nuts, and made signs that they wanted more; but instead of giving any intimation that their country furnished such fruit, they endeavoured to seize upon those they saw. To this island we gave the name of Byron's Island. It is seated in latitude 1 deg. 18 min. S. and in 173 deg. 46 min. E. longitude.

C H A P. IV.

The two ships depart from Byron's Island—Cross the Equinoctial Line—Arrive at Tinian—Anchor in the very spot where Lord Anson lay in the Centurion—A description of that Island, with remarkable incidents and transactions—Observations on the Indians, and the construction of their proas—They sail from the Ladrone Islands—Touch at the Isle of Palo Tinian.—An account of the Malays—Arrive at Batavia—A particular description of the state and situation of this country.—Passage from Batavia to the Cape of Good Hope—Observations during our stay there—Set sail and pass the Island of St. Helena—The Tamar steers for Antigua in order to refit—and the Dolphin on the 9th of May, 1766, anchor in the Downs.

ON Wednesday the third of July, we sent out the boats to sound, soon after we had brought to off Byron's Island; when returned, they reported, that there was depth of ground at thirty fathom, within two cables length of the shore, but as the bottom was coral rock, and the soundings much too near for a ship to lie in safety, we were obliged to make sail, without having procured any refreshments for our sick. We now steered nearly due north, and crossed the line two degrees beyond the extremity of our stern longitude from London, or in 178 deg. E. In our course, we saw great quantities

of fish, but none could be taken, except sharks, which were become a good dish even at the Commodore's own table.

On Sunday the 21st, all our cocoa-nuts by this time being expended, the men began to fall down again with the scurvy. These nuts had, in an astonishing manner, checked the progress of this dreadful disorder; many whose limbs were become as black as ink, who could not move without the assistance of two men, and who, besides being entirely disabled, suffered excruciating pain, had been in a few days, by eating these nuts

so far recovered, as well as they did temper. The favourable Lord Anson's voyage Ladrone, (a range on one of which the natives) induced friendly an asylum called and exhausted 28th, in latitude 1 30 min. E. long parallel of Tinian, On the 30th we again islands of Saypan, between two and three On the 31st, we stood at noon, hauling between that island a point of it, in 16 4 in the very spot where in August 1742. Commodore went to tents might be erected being at this time in the last stage died since our setting several but which Indians the year before had been at the should come for some vertical, and the rav affirmed, that he had of Guinea, in the St. Thomas, which meter which was killed at 86 degrees, heat of the blood a it would have risen fixed upon for the devoured to push beautiful laws a voyage; but the trees overgrown with three yards before to be continually hallo being separately lo the weather was int but their shoes, thin wan to pieces by the er, they got throa feebly; but found stubborn kind of re their heads, and which continually the whipcord. Dur with flies from head to speak, they were which never failed having walked thro they killed, and a beach, as wet as if larged, that they On Thursday they ed to fetch the bull setting up more re was very ill of the for himself, and too we also erected the iron work of both in getting the water well at which they thought to be the it was the worst we for the water was n Also the road wh situation at this sea and large coral roc in the sand, is in per We did not perce No. 29.

so far recovered, as to do their duty, and even go aloft as well as they did before they were seized by this distemper. The favourable report which the writer of Lord Anson's voyage had made of Tinian, one of the Ladrones, (a range of islands so named by Magellan, on one of which he lost his life, in an encounter with the natives) induced our Commodore to proceed to it as a friendly an asylum, as that was described to be, for distressed and exhausted mariners. Accordingly on the 28th, in latitude 13 deg. 9 min. N. and in 158 deg. 50 min. E. longitude; and being now nearly in the parallel of Tinian, we shaped our course for that island. On the 30th we again saw land, which proved to be the islands of Saypan, Tinian, and Aiguigan, which are between two and three leagues distant from each other. On the 31st, we steered along the east-side of them, and at noon, hauling round the south point of Tinian, between that island and Aiguigan, anchored at the S. W. point of it, in 16 fathoms water, on good ground, and at the very spot where Lord Anson lay in the Centurion, in August 1742. A soon as the ship was secured, the Commodore went on shore, to fix upon a place where tents might be erected for the sick, not a single man being at this time free from the scurvy, and many were in the last stage of it: yet not one on board had died since our setting out from England. We found several huts which had been left by the Spaniards and Indians the year before; for this year none of them as yet had been at the place, nor was it probable that they should come for some months, the sun being now almost vertical, and the rainy season set in. The Commodore affirmed, that he never felt such heat, either on the coast of Guinea, in the West Indies, or upon the island of St. Thomas, which is under the line. The thermometer which was kept on board the Dolphin, generally stood at 86 degrees, which is but 9 degrees less than the heat of the blood at the heart, and had it been on shore, it would have rose much higher. After a spot had been fixed upon for the tents, six or seven of the men endeavoured to push through the woods, in search of the beautiful lawns and meadows described in Anson's voyage: but the trees stood so thick, and the place was so overgrown with underwood, that they could not see three yards before them; they were therefore obliged to be continually hallooing to each other, to prevent their being separately lost in this trackless wilderness. As the weather was intolerably hot, they had nothing on but their shoes, shirts and trowsers; and these were soon worn to pieces by the bushes and brambles: at last, however, they got through, with incredible labour and difficulty; but found the lawns entirely overgrown with a stubborn kind of reed or brush, in many places higher than their heads, and no where lower than their middles, which continually entangle their legs, and cut them like whipcord. During this excursion, they were covered with flies from head to foot; and whenever they offered to speak, they were sure of having a mouthful, many of which never failed to get down their throats. After having walked three or four miles they saw a bull, which they killed, and a little before night got back to the beach, as wet as if they had been dipt in water, and so fatigued, that they were scarce able to stand.

On Thursday the 1st of August, a party was dispatched to fetch the bull, and our people were employed in setting up more tents. As the Commodore himself was very ill of the scurvy, he ordered a tent to be pitched for himself, and took up his residence on shore, where we also erected the smith's forge, in order to repair the iron work of both ships. We were likewise employed in getting the water casks on shore, and clearing the well at which they were to be filled. This well we thought to be the same the Centurion watered at, but it was the worst we had met with during the voyage, for the water was not only brackish, but full of worms. Also the road where the ships lay was a dangerous situation at this season, for the bottom is a hard sand, and large coral rocks, and the anchor having no hold in the sand, is in perpetual danger of being cut to pieces. We did not perceive these disagreeable circumstances

No. 29.

when we first cast anchor, thinking then the ground to be good; but finding the contrary after having moored, to prevent any bad consequences, we rounded the cables and buoyed them up with empty casks. Afterwards finding the cables much damaged, we resolved to lie single for the future, that by veering away, or heaving in, as we should have more or less wind, we might always keep them from being slack, consequently from rubbing, and this expedient succeeded to our will. At the full and change of the moon, a prodigious swell tumbles in here; and it once drove in from the westward with such fury, that we were obliged to put to sea for a week; for had our cable parted in the night, and the wind been upon the shore, which sometimes happens for two or three days together, the ship must inevitably have been lost on the rocks. Thus had we arrived at this delightful island, after a passage of four months and twenty days, from the straits of Magellan, with this surprising and happy circumstance, that during this long run, though many had great complaints of the scurvy, from the salt provisions they had been obliged to live upon, yet through the care of the Commodore, in causing the people to be supplied at stated times with portable soup, and the refreshments we had obtained from several islands, we had not buried a single man; and we had now by being favoured with fair weather, an opportunity of sending our sick on shore, into the tents, which some of our men had soon prepared for their reception. But while we staid here, two died of fevers; and in the Commodore's opinion, from the almost incessant rains, and violent heat, during the season we were here, this beautiful and fertile island is one of the most unhealthy spots in the world. We frequently dispatched parties into the woods in search of cattle, which, from the account published in the history of Commodore Anson's voyage, we expected to find in numbers; but to our disappointment, a few only were discovered at a great distance from the tents, so very shy, that it was difficult to get a shot at them; and more so to drag them six or seven miles to the tents, the woods and lawns which we have already described, being so thick, as greatly to obstruct our passage; for though the beasts themselves had made paths through these woods, we could not proceed in them without the greatest difficulty. During the first week we killed only three white bullocks, one of which our men could not bring down to the shore, before it was covered with maggots, and stunk most intolerably: nor was this the worst; for the sailors suffered such inexpressible fatigue as frequently brought on fevers, occasioned by the warmth of the climate, the prodigious number of flies by day, and the musquitoes by night; these last resemble our gnats in England, but are larger, more numerous, and much more troublesome. They were also in their march much embarrassed with centipedes, scorpions, and a large black ant, little inferior to either of them in the malignity of its bite. We had also to encounter with an innumerable number of other venomous insects, altogether unknown to us, by which we suffered so severely, that many were afraid to lie down in their beds: nor were those on board in a much better situation than those on shore; for numbers of these tormentors being conveyed to the ship by the wood, they took possession of every birth, and left the poor seamen no place of rest either below or upon deck.

On Wednesday the 7th, we sent on shore to the tents, which was called the hospital, 16 of our ship's company; and the next day John Watton, our quarter-master, departed this life; and soon after died Peter Evans, one of the seamen belonging to the Tamar. This day we got our copper oven on shore, and baked bread, which we served to the sick; the whole being under the inspection of the surgeon. Poultry we procured upon easy terms, for the birds were in great plenty, and easily killed; but the flesh of the best of them was very ill tasted. Our principal resource for fresh meat was the wild hog, with which the island is well stocked. These animals are exceeding fierce, and a carcass of some of them frequently weighed 200 weight. They were killed without

3 P

much

much trouble, but a black belonging to the Tamar contrived a method to ensnare them, so that we took great numbers of them alive, which was an unpeakable advantage. But being very desirous of procuring some beef in an eatable state, with less risk and labour, we sent a boat, upon the information of Mr. Gore, to the N. W. part of the island, where the cattle were very numerous. A party was also sent with a tent for their accommodation, who shot them; and they were immediately killed, cut up, and conveyed to the boats: however, sometimes such a sea broke upon the rocks that it was impossible to approach them, and the Tamar's boat lost three of her best men by attempting it.

This island of Tinian, is situated in 15 deg. 8 min. north latitude, and 114 deg. 50 min. west longitude from Acapulco, in New Spain; and is 12 miles in length, but only half as much in breadth. It produces limes, four oranges, cocoa-nuts, bread-fruit, guavas, and papaws in abundance; but we found no water-melons, furevey-grass, or sorrel. The cocoa-nut, which we have so often mentioned in describing the new discovered islands, is one of the most beautiful, as well as the most admirable of all the vegetable productions, and is also found in many other parts of the world, particularly in the East and West Indies. It is a species of the palm. The trunk is large, straight, and insensibly grows smaller from the bottom to the top. On the upper part of the trunk are the branches, which form a beautiful head. The fruit hangs in branches by strong stalks; some of which are always ripe, others green, and some just beginning to button, while the blossoms, which are yellow, are still in bloom. The fruit is of different sizes, and of a greenish colour: it is covered with two rinds, the outer composed of long, tough, brown threads; but the second is extremely hard, and has within it a firm white substance, in taste nearest to that of a sweet almond. The people of several countries eat it with their meat as we do bread, and squeeze out of it a liquor that resembles almond-milk, which on being exposed to the fire, is converted into a kind of oil, that is used both in sauces and in lamps. In the middle of the nut is also a considerable quantity of a clear cool liquor, that has the taste of sugar-water, and when drank is very refreshing. What is called the cabbage consists of a cluster of many white, thin, brittle flakes, which have somewhat of the taste of almonds, and, when boiled, has a resemblance to the taste of an English cabbage, but is sweeter and more agreeable. But the most remarkable fruit of this island is the bread-fruit, it being generally eaten by the Europeans who come here instead of bread, to which it is even preferred. It grows upon a lofty tree, which, near the top, divides into spreading branches, covered with leaves of a deep green colour, notched on the edges, and from 12 to 18 inches in length. The fruit which grows single on all parts of the branches, is seven or eight inches long, of an oval form, and covered with a rough rind, and when gathered green, and roasted on the embers, has its inside soft, tender, white, and crummy like bread. Its taste comes nearest to that of an artichoke's bottom. This excellent fruit is in season eight months in the year. As it ripens it turns yellow, and growing softer, has the taste of a ripe peach, and a fragrant smell, but is then said to be unwholesome, and apt to produce the flux. The fish, however, caught about this coast appear to be unwholesome. Some of our officers after having eaten a dish of fine looking fish, were taken ill with a violent purging and vomiting, which had like to have been attended with fatal consequences. Mr. Walter, in his history of Commodore Anson's voyage, observes, that the few they caught at their first arrival, had surfeited those who eat of them, and therefore the people on board the Centurion thought it most prudent to abstain from fish. This observation, added to our own experience, is a sufficient proof of their being prejudicial. Indeed, at first, from taking the word surfeit in a literal sense, we concluded, that those who tasted the fish, when the late Lord Anson came hither, were made sick

merely by eating too much of them; from which supposition we were led to think, that there could be no reason for a total abstinence with respect to this kind of food, but only a caution to eat with temperance. However, we were soon made wiser by experience; for though all our people eat sparingly of this fish by way of experiment, nevertheless all who tasted them were soon afterwards dangerously ill. Besides the above mentioned fruit, this island produces cotton and indigo in abundance, and would certainly be of great value if it was situated in the West Indies. The surgeon of the Tamar, an ingenious and very judicious gentleman, enclosed a large spot of ground here, and made a very pretty garden; but our short stay would not permit us to derive any advantage from it. However, amidst such plenty we enjoyed, the want of its produce might very well be dispensed with.

It is surprising that an island thus abounding with the necessaries and luxuries of life, should be destitute of inhabitants, but it seems it was once populous; and that an epidemical sickness having carried off multitudes of the inhabitants of this and the neighbouring islands, the Spaniards removed the rest to Guam, to supply the numbers that had died there, where languishing for their native soil, and their former habitations, the greatest part of them died with grief. Indeed we saw the ruins of their deserted town, which is now over-grown with trees and bushes. But though Tinian is uninhabited, the Indians of Guam, and other of the neighbouring islands, frequently resort thither to jerk beef, and carry it away. These Indians are a bold, strong, well limbed people; and if we may judge from the admirable structure of their flying proas, the only vessels they use at sea, they are far from being deficient in point of understanding. These vessels move with such amazing swiftness, that it is generally allowed by all who have observed them with attention, that they will run at least 20 miles an hour. The construction of these proas is very remarkable, the head and stern being exactly alike; but the sides very different, that intended for the windward side being built rounding, while the lee-side is flat. The body is formed of two pieces joined endways, and nearly sewed together with bark: and as the stait run of her leeward side, and her final breadth, would certainly cause her to overfet, a frame called an out-rigger, is laid out from her to the windward, to the end of which is fastened a log, made hollow, in the shape of a small boat: thus the weight of the frame balances the proa, and that, with the small boat, always in the water, prevents her oversetting to the windward. The vessel generally carries six or seven

Indians, two of whom sit in the head and stern, who steer the proa alternately, with a paddle, according to the tack she goes on; he in the stern being the steersman; the rest are employed in setting and trimming the sail, or bailing out the water she may accidentally ship. Thus by only shifting the sail, these vessels with either end foremost, can, with astonishing swiftness, run from one of these islands to another, and back again, without ever putting about. While we lay at this place, the Tamar was sent to examine the island of Saypan, which is much larger than Tinian, rises higher, and has a much pleasanter appearance. The Tamar anchored to the leeward, at the distance of a mile from the shore, and in ten fathom water, with much the same kind of ground as we had in the road of Tinian. Some of the Tamar's company landed upon a fine sandy beach, which is six or seven miles long, and walked up into the woods, where they discovered many trees very fit for top masts. They saw no fewer than any tracks of cattle, but plenty of hogs and guanoes: also large heaps of pearl oyster-shells thrown up together, and other signs of people having been there: possibly the Spaniards may go thither at some seasons of the year, and carry on a pearl fishery. As we shall have an opportunity of again mentioning these places in our accounts of other voyages, we here, for the amusement of our numerous subscribers, insert what other navigators, and judicious writers, have related both of the Philippine and Ladron Islands, both situated

the Pacific Ocean, &c.

An authentic account

The Philippine Sea, part of the Pacific Ocean, is situated between the 10th and 18th degrees of eastern longitude, and the 6th and 14th degrees of north latitude. There are several islands in this sea. The chief are Manila or Luconia, Iloilo, Zamboanga, and Sitoua, which are situated about 400 miles from each other.

The capital of the Philippine Sea, is the city of Manila, situated on the island, being enclosed by a wall and a harbour, but of difficult access, and surrounded by low lands which lie in a plain.

The chief buildings in Manila are the convents; one of which is the support of the government, who are provided with a house to marry, have their crowns given them, and are richly adorned with silks and jewels as splendid as those here, as in most of the islands.

The island of Luzon, and the water in the bay, is of excellent breed of horses, and is well situated for the bay and port, which is a large circular bay, and is well land-locked. The streets and grand houses are built in the style of the Spanish, and were built by George II. was an opportunity; but consideration of its fortifications, and that of Cavite, which is a bay where the ships are stationed.

The city is healthy, and has a very fruitful soil, but is some disadvantageous, being out to sea to the westward of the islands: here the winds are often in great violence.

The trade from Manila is chiefly in such commodities as Mexico and Peru, manufactures, particularly sugar, which is more than 50,000 packs, and with vast quantities of other goods, which are much wanted in the city of Manila, and there are not less than 2000 manufacturers, who transport annually to the city of Manila, and is not open to the junks, being for the propagation of each ship is divided into all of the same size, and such a quantity of ships as the tonnage is limited by royal orders, it should be frequently known to the bulk of the

the Pacific Ocean, and at no great distance from each other.

An authentic account of the Philippine, and Ladron, or Marian Islands.

The Philippine Islands are situate in the Chinese Sea, part of the Pacific Ocean, between 114 and 130 degrees of eastern longitude, and between 5 and 19 degrees of north latitude, about 100 leagues S. E. of China. There are 1100 of them, and several very large. The chief of the most northerly of them is Manila or Luconia, which is the largest of the Philippines, and is situate in 15 deg. of north latitude, being about 400 miles long and above 180 broad in most places.

The capital of this island, and of all the rest, is the city of Manila, situate on a bay in the S. W. part of the island, being two miles in circumference, surrounded by a wall and other works, a very commodious harbour, but of difficult access, on account of the rocks and sands which lie before it; a castle defends the entrance.

The chief buildings are the cathedral, parish churches and convents; one of the religious houses is appropriated to the support of orphans, daughters of the inhabitants, who are provided for during their lives; or, if they chuse to marry, have a portion of two or three hundred crowns given them. Their churches, chapels, and altars are richly adorned, and their processions on holidays as splendid as in Spain. The college of the jesuits here, as in most Popish countries, is more magnificent than any of the rest.

The island of Luconia, or Manila, is esteemed healthful, and the water in it the best in the world. It produces all the fruits of warm climates, and has an excellent breed of horses carried thither from Spain. It is well situated for the Indian and Chinese trade; and the bay and port, which lies on the west-side of it, is a large circular basin of ten leagues diameter, entirely land-locked. The city of Manila, which stands on the east-side, is large and contains several spacious streets and grand houses; and at the beginning of the first war with the Spaniards, in the reign of king George II. was an open place, only defended by a little fort; but considerable additions have lately been made to its fortifications. The port peculiar to the city is that of Cabite, which lies two leagues to the fourthward, and here the ships employed in the Acapulco trade are stationed.

The city is healthfully situated, and well watered, and has a very fruitful country in its neighbourhood; but it is some disadvantage to its trade, that it is difficult getting out to sea to the eastward, through such a number of islands: here the Spaniards waste abundance of time, and are often in great danger.

The trade from hence to China and India consists chiefly in such commodities as are intended to supply Mexico and Peru, namely, spices, Chinese silks, and manufactures, particularly silk stockings, of which no less than 50,000 pair have been shipped in one cargo, with vast quantities of Indian stuffs, callicoes and chints, which are much worn in America, together with other small articles, such as goldsmiths-work, &c. wrought at the city of Manila by the Chinese, of which nation there are not less than 80,000 residing there, as servants, manufacturers, or brokers. All these articles are transported annually to the port of Acapulco in Mexico: this trade is not open to all the inhabitants of Manila, but is restrained to the convents of Manila, principally to the jesuits, being a donation to support the missions for the propagation of the Catholic faith. The tonnage of each ship is divided into a certain number of bales, all of the same size; and the convents have a right to embark such a quantity of goods on board the Manila ships as the tonnage of their bales amount to. The trade is limited by royal edicts to a certain value; according to some, it should not exceed 600,000 dollars; but it is frequently known to amount to three millions.

The bulk of the people of Manila are of Chinese or

Malayan extraction, and there are some blacks. The Spaniards, though fewest in number, have the government in their hands. The adjacent country is full of fine plantations, farms, and country-houses of the principal inhabitants. Upon the mountains, in the middle of the country, the people live in tents and huts, under the spreading trees. The plains are overflowed in the rainy season, the houses built upon high pillars; and the people have no communication but by boats during the rains, which usually fall in June, July, August, and September, and then happen terrible storms of wind and thunder. Earthquakes are frequent; the city of Manila has suffered several times by them; and from the volcanoes, which abound here, issue torrents of fire and melted minerals. These are the inconveniences we meet with; but the fair season is for the most part exceedingly pleasant.

The city of Manila contains about 3000 inhabitants; and during the second war in the reign of King George II. was in the year 1763, taken by admiral Cornish and Sir William Draper. It was, however, stipulated to be ransomed; but the ransom-money hath never yet been intirely discharged. The priests take prodigious pains to make converts to the Romish faith, and have been pretty successful in their endeavours. The Indians pay a poll-tax; and a considerable sum of money is annually allowed for the support of female orphans, both of Spanish and Indian parents.

The complexions of the several people who inhabit these islands are very different. The blacks are as black as the Caffres of Afric, but differ from them in their features and long hair, and therefore are supposed to be of Indian extraction; and as they possess the mountainous and inaccessible parts of the country, it is conjectured, that they were the original inhabitants, and driven up thither by succeeding adventurers.

The descendants of the Malaysians (inhabitants of Malacca) are very tawny, the Chinese not so dark, and the Spaniards are pretty near the colour of the Chinese. There is also a nation of painted people, called Pintados, who colour their skins like our ancestors the Picts.

The natives are for the most part of a moderate stature, and their features just; the Spaniards have taught them to cloath themselves, except the blacks, who only tie a cloth about their loins, and another about their heads, and usually go bare-foot.

Rice and fish are most eaten by those who live near the sea-coasts, and the mountaineers eat the flesh they take in hunting, and the fruits of the earth, which grow spontaneously in great plenty. Their liquor is water, which they usually drink warm as the Chinese do. They have also palm-wine, and spirituous liquors distilled from the juice of the sugar-cane, rice, &c. They bathe twice a day in cold water, either for health or diversion, or both: plays are another diversion, and they are entertained frequently with dancing and mock fights.

These islands are extremely well situated for trade; all the rich merchandize of India is sent from hence to America, and the treasures of Mexico and Peru are brought hither annually, by which exchange, it is said, they make a profit of 400 per cent.

Few countries enjoy a more fruitful soil; the people in many places live upon what the earth produces spontaneously, and the surface of the ground is exceeding beautiful; the trees are ever green, and seldom without fruit.

Their neat cattle run wild in the mountains, and are hunted, as well as deer, wild hogs and goats. The monkeys and baboons found here are very sagacious: during the season, when there is no fruit to be got, they go down to the sea-side to catch oysters; that the fish may not pinch their paws, they put a stone between the shells to prevent their shutting close. Wax is so plentiful, that they make no other candles, and never burn lamps. Their bees are of several kinds, some of them very large, and make their combs in the woods, producing such quantities of honey as would almost subsist the natives.

Medicinal

Medicinal and sweet gums, issuing from the bodies of trees are part of the produce: serpents of various kinds are found in these islands; but the fathers who relate that some of them are so large, they will swallow a stag, horns and all, surely do not expect to be believed, any more than when they relate, that the leaves of trees are converted into insects; but the last of these stories may proceed from a mistake, for it is certain that some insects deposit their eggs (as they do with us) upon the leaves of trees, which are hatched there, as is the case of the cochinal fly; and they might ignorantly imagine that those insects proceed from the leaf. The alligators are very dangerous; and the ignana, a kind of land alligator, does a great deal of mischief. Among their birds, are peacocks, parrots, cocatoos, and turtle-doves, which are very beautiful, fowls with black bones, and the bird tavan, which lays a number of eggs in trenches in the sand, and leaves them to hatch there. The saligan fastens her nest to some rock, as a martin does against a wall, which dissolving into a kind of jelly in warm water, is esteemed delicious food. Here is also the xolo bird, which eats like a turkey; the camboxa is a well tasted fowl peculiar to these islands. The herrero or carpenter, is a fine large green bird. It is called the carpenter, because its beak is so hard, that it digs a hole in the trunk, or some large branch of a tree, in order to build its nest.

Their fruits are mangoes, plantains, bananas, coconuts, tamarinds, casia, and the cocoa or chocolate nut, which has been brought over from Mexico; oranges, lemons, and all manner of tropical fruits. The cinnamon and nutmeg-tree have been planted here; but degenerate, and are good for little.

A great deal of good timber and dying woods grow in these islands; and the calamba, or sweet-wood, a kind of cane, grows in the mountains, which, if cut, yields a draught of water, and is of great service to the natives.

They have one plant that has all the properties of and is used as a substitute for opium; of this the natives are very fond, and frequently intoxicate themselves with it.

Flowers and sweet herbs grow wild here, but they do not cultivate them in their gardens, and there are abundance of medicinal, as well as poisonous herbs and flowers, which do not only kill those who touch or taste them, but so infect the air, that many people die in the time of their blossoming; on the contrary, these islands are providentially well furnished with antidotes, particularly the bezoar stone, which is found in the belly of a creature much like a deer; and the root dilao, which is like ginger, and heals wounds made by any venomous beast, being bruised and boiled with oil of coconuts.

The tree camandog is so venomous, that the pilchards eating the leaves which fall into the sea die; as will the persons who eat the poisoned fish. The liquor which flows from the trunk of this tree serves these people to poison the points of their darts which they blow through the trunks above-mentioned: the very shadow of the tree is so destructive, that, as far as it reaches, no herb or grass grows, and if transplanted, it kills all the other plants it stands near, except a small shrub which is an antidote against it, and always with it: a bit of a twig of this shrub, or a leaf carried in a man's mouth, is said to be a security against the venom of the tree, and therefore the Indians are never without it.

The maka bukay, which signifies the giver of life, is a kind of ivy which twines about any tree, and grows to the thickness of a man's finger; it has long shoots like vine branches, of which the Indians make bracelets, and esteem them a preservative against poison. There are many other trees and plants of extraordinary virtue in these islands; among others, there is the sensitive plant, in all respects like a colewort, which growing out of a rock avoids the touch, and retires under water: there is another that grows on St. Peter's Hill about Manila, which is not very tall, and has little leaves, which whenever it is touched, draws back and closes all its leaves together; for which reason the Spaniards call it la vergin cosa, that is, the bashful.

There grows near Cathalagan, in the island of Samar, a plant of a surprising virtue, discovered by the fathers of the society, as they tell us, of late years: the Dutch have also some knowledge of it, and, it is said, will give double the quantity of gold for it. The plant is like ivy, and twines about any tree it grows near: the fruit which grows out of the knots and leaves resembles a melocooton in bigness and colour, and within has eight, ten, or sixteen kernals as big as a hazel nut, each green and yellow, which when ripe, drop out of themselves.

The usual dose given of it is the weight of half a royal, that is the sixteenth part of an ounce, powdered and mixed in wine or water; if it has no effect the first time, the dose is repeated, and is a powerful antidote against any poison, either of venomous herbs or darts, which are used by the natives of Macassar, Borneo, and the Philippines.

The general language spoken in these islands is the Malayan tongue; besides which, every people have a language peculiar to themselves. They write on cocconut leaves, with an iron style or pen; and arts and sciences have been introduced by the Spaniards, the natives having nothing of this kind to boast of before their arrival.

All these islands, except Mindanao and Paragon, are under the jurisdiction of a Spanish viceroy, who has governors under him in every other island and town of consequence, and the like courts are erected for the trial of civil and criminal causes, as in Old Spain. The archbishop of Manila, the bishops and their commissaries, determine ecclesiastical causes as in Europe, but there lies an appeal from them to the pope's delegate, who resides in one of the islands. The court of inquisition has also a commissary here. But notwithstanding the Spaniards are represented as sovereigns of these islands, this must only be understood of the open country and the sea-coasts, in which there may be 300,000 souls; but there are not a tenth part of the inhabitants, the rest look upon themselves as a free people: every mountain-molt is possessed by a different tribe, who make war upon one another, the Spaniards seldom intermeddling in their quarrels. The Chinese were formerly so numerous here, that they disputed the authority of the Spaniards over them: it is computed that 40,000 of them resided in and about the city of Manila; but the Spaniards compelled them to submit, and banished some thousands of them, the rest were permitted to remain here to carry on their manufactures; for they are almost the only artificers.

Their arms are bows, arrows, and lances or spear-broad swords, and tubes or trunks, through which they blow poisoned arrows, the slightest wounds whereof are mortal, if immediate remedies are not applied. They have cane shields also covered with a buffalo's hide and a head piece for defensive arms.

These savages, as the Spaniards call them, worship one supreme God, and their ancestors, as the Chinese do from whom most of them are descended; they worship also the sun and moon, and almost every thing they see, whether animate or inanimate, groves, rocks, rivers, and one particular tree, which they would esteem it sacrilege to cut down, believing the souls of some of their friends may reside in it, and that in cutting the tree they may wound a near relation. Instead of temples they have caves, wherein they place their idols, and sacrifice to them. Some beautiful young virgins first wounds the victim with a spear, and then the priests dispatch the animal; and, having dressed the meat, is eaten by the company. Superstition prevails among them; they have their lucky and unlucky days; and certain animals cross the way when they are going upon business, they will return home, and go out no more that day. The Spaniards tolerate them in their idolatrous worship; and suffer them to game on paying to the government 10,000 crowns per annum. They are also much given to a detestable vice; and did not imagine it to be a crime, till the Spaniards punished them for it.

The men purchase their wives here as in China; and the marriage ceremony is performed by a priest, who

sacrifices some animal, and the bride is led home, and entertainment as at an own tribe, and with first degree; some other tribes allow for reasonable cause named after heroes circumstance that as soon as they marry parents are obliged

The dead are washed and put in a close coffin that contains the arms of a woman: mourning is a dismal noise. They do not burn the dead, but have an entertainment with mirth and festivity, and then the next Spaniards of Philippina, between channel, called the point whereof is called near 400 miles in circumference, governed of Sebu, which lies where Magellan first set foot, and the chief town named Manila, has a bishop's see, has churches and monasteries, and is chiefly by blacks.

Many of the Philippine islands, except Manila, being in breadth. It is peopled by different nations, whose faces are situated on the forehead, whose faces are those who possess the Philippine, and another situated on the N. W.

are so hot as might be seen by the sea which lay the flat country from the east, and set westwards succeed; at three flowers a day with violent hurricanes wind continues westwards they have fuel by the roots, the rice see the sun or the August the air is very

erate in September from the east again, sometimes N. E.

Mindanao, the capital island, in 123 degrees and 6 degrees, 20 minutes, and about two being built on bamboo surface of the ground when they have no boats. The built along the wind

palace is supported by the front great guns in or be cannot come up to the water on the bar, at

The natives are very lazy and indolent; but none are in a necessity for their lazy disposition, and the other from no man being sure of the industry.

No 29.

sacrifices some animal on the occasion; after which, the bride is led home, and the whole concludes with an entertainment as at other places. They marry in their own tribe, and with their nearest relations, except the first degree; some of them are confined to one wife, other tribes allow a plurality of women, and divorces for reasonable causes on either side. Children are either named after heroes or flowers, or from some accidental circumstance that occurs at the time of their birth; but as soon as they marry, they chuse new names, and their parents are obliged to make use of their old ones.

The dead are washed and perfumed, wrapped in silk, and put in a close coffin, near which a chest is placed that contains the arms of a man, or domestic utensils of a woman: mourners are hired to assist in making a dismal noise. They bury their dead as in China, and do not burn them: as soon as the body is buried, an entertainment is made, and all is converted to mirth and festivity. In general, they mourn in black garments; and shave their heads and eye-brows.

The next Spanish island to that of Manila is Samar or Philippina, between which and Manila is a narrow channel, called the Strait of Manila, the N. E. point whereof is called Spirito Sancto; the island is near 400 miles in circumference, the chief town Cebu, governed by a Spanish alcade. The island of Schu, which lies in 10 deg. S. latitude, is the place where Magellan first set up the Spanish colours; the chief town named Nombre de Dios, afterwards made a bishop's see, has in it a cathedral and several other churches and monasteries. The island of Negros lies west of Schu, and was so named because it is inhabited chiefly by blacks. Mindanao lies the most southerly of the Philippine Islands, and is the largest of them in breadth. It is possessed by people of different nations and different religions; but the Mahometans, who are situate on the sea-coasts, are much the most numerous, whose sovereign is titled Sultan of Mindanao. Those who possess the middle of the island are called Hillanons, and another nation titled Solognes, are situate on the N. W. coast. The air of this island is not so hot as might be expected, being refreshed frequently by the sea breezes, and the periodical rains, which lay the flat country under water. The winds blow from the east, from October to May, and then turn about and set westerly; next month the rains and storms succeed; at first there are not more than two or three showers a day; they afterwards come oftener, with violent hurricanes and loud thunder, and the wind continues westerly until November, during which time they have such storms that trees are blown up by the roots, the rivers are overflowed, and they do not see the sun or stars sometimes in a week: about August the air is very cool, the rain and winds are moderate in September, and in October the wind blows from the east again, and it continues fair till April, and sometimes May.

Mindanao, the capital city, lies on the south-side of the island, in 12; deg. 15 min. of eastern longitude, and 6 deg. 20 min. north latitude, near the mouth of a river, and about two miles from the sea; the houses being built on bamboo pillars, 16 or 18 feet above the surface of the ground, on account of the annual floods, when they have no communication with one another but by boats. The city is about a mile in length, built along the winding bank of the river; the Sultan's palace is supported by 180 trees, and has 20 cannon mounted in the front; and several of the nobility have great guns in or before their houses. Large ships cannot come up to the town, there being scarce 11 feet water on the bar, at the entrance of the river.

The natives are held to be men of a sprightly genius, but very lazy and indolent, and will rather thieve than work; but none are more active when they find there is a necessity for it; and there may be two reasons for their lazy disposition, one from the heat of the climate, and the other from the tyranny of the government, so man being sure he shall enjoy what he acquires by his industry.

No 29.

The Mindanays are of a low stature, and very slender, of dark tawny complexions, black eyes and hair, flat faces, short noses, wide mouths, and black teeth, which they take abundance of pains to dye of that colour; and they wear the nails of their left hands almost as long again as their fingers, scraping and dyeing them with vermilion.

The men have a haughty mien, and yet are said to be very compliant to foreigners, unless they are insulted, and then they seldom fail to resent the affront, and destroy their enemy by poison or a dagger, never hazarding their persons in a duel.

Their habit is a linen frock and drawers, and a small piece of linen cloth, tied about their heads, but they go bare-foot: the complexion and features of the women are better than those of the men; but yet they too much resemble the other sex, and cannot be admired for their beauty; they wear a frock like the men, and a piece of cloth round their waists; the sleeves of the frock being large, and coming down to their wrists. Their hair is tied up in a roll at the hinder part of their heads.

The men shave their heads, all but a lock that is left in the middle of the crown, like other Mahometans; their beards are very thin, being pulled up by the roots with tweezers. People of figure are clothed in silk or fine callico; the women go bare-foot as well as the men, and adorn their arms and fingers with bracelets and rings. They are not restrained from conversing with their countrymen or foreigners.

The food of people of condition is flesh, fish, and fowl of all kinds, except hogs flesh, which the Mahometans never touch. The poorer sort content themselves with rice and fago. Rice is the principal part of the meal with all of them; they take it up with their hands, using neither knives or spoons; and their meat, whatever it be, is boiled to rags, that it may very easily be pulled to pieces with their fingers. They usually drink water, but make a pretty strong liquor with plantains; they wash before and after every meal, and bathe several times a day. Swimming is one of the chief diversions of the women, as well as the men, to which they are used from their infancy.

Upon joyful occasions the dancing girls, as they are called, are sent for to divert the company; but this dancing consists only in screwing themselves into lascivious postures, and addressing their great men with flattering speeches. They have plays and mock fights also acted before them, and hunting of wild beasts is their principal rural sport, in which their women partake; but their hunting is only driving the deer and other game into an inclosure, from whence they cannot escape, and then shooting at them.

Mindanao is a fruitful soil, well watered with rivers, and their mountains afford excellent timber. Of the libby, or fago-tree, there are large groves: the fago is the pith of a tree which the natives eat instead of bread, and is frequently brought over to Europe, being so grained, that it is sometimes taken for a seed. They have no corn but rice. Plantains, guavas, mangoes, and all tropical fruits, abound here. Cloves and nutmegs have been transplanted hither, and appear fair to the eye; but it is said they degenerate, and the fruit is good for nothing: if these plants were cultivated, possibly they might equal those of the spice islands.

Here are no beasts of prey in this island, but almost every other useful animal, such as horses, cows, buffaloes, and hogs, with bunches over their eyes; here are also snakes, scorpions, and other venomous insects; and the feathered kind are the same as in Manila.

The Malayan language is generally spoken here; and the Mahometans have the koran and books of devotion, in the Arabic language. The liberal arts do not flourish here; they are forced to employ the Chinese to keep their accounts for them; nor have they so much as a clock or a watch in all the country, but beat upon drums every three hours, that people may know the time of the day. There are scarce

any other working trades, except goldsmiths, carpenters, and blacksmiths, who perform their work very well with the tools they have, for the smiths have neither vice nor anvil, nor the carpenters any saws, but when they have split their planks, plane them with the ax or adze. Their diseases are fluxes, fevers, and the small-pox; and some are affected with a kind of leprosy, or dry scurf, which covers the body, and itches intolerably.

The religion of the sultan, and those who inhabit the sea-coasts, is Mahometanism, and that of the inland people is Paganism, differing little from the Chinese. In allowing a plurality of wives and concubines, the Mahometans of this island imitate those of Turkey, only they allow their women greater liberties, suffering them to converse freely with their acquaintance or strangers; but it is said they are so prejudiced against swines flesh, that one of their great men refused to wear a pair of shoes made by an European, when he was informed that the threads with which they were sewed were pointed with hogs bristles. They look upon themselves to be defiled, if they touch any thing which belongs to a hog; they durst not kill them lest they should be defiled by the touch of the weapon they make use of, which occasions these animals to multiply so fast, that the island is over-run with them. They are very glad to see the Europeans kill them, but must undergo several ablutions or washings, if they should happen to touch a man that had eaten its flesh.

The sultan of Mindanao is an absolute prince, and his throne hereditary; both the persons and purses of his subjects are in his power, and if he knows any of them abound in wealth, he borrows it of them. He has one great minister, in whom he lodges the administration of the government, both civil and military, to whom both natives and foreigners must apply themselves for liberty to trade. Their wars are chiefly with the mountaineers, who inhabit the middle of the island, with whom they are very cautious of coming to a general engagement; but when the armies are pretty near, they begin to intrench and cannonade each other, and will remain in the same camp some months, sending out parties to make incursions into the enemies country, and surprize defenceless places. Their arms are a cruce or short dagger, and a broad sword, a spear, and bows and arrows.

The most considerable of the Philippines that have not been mentioned, are Mindora, S. W. of Manila; Panay, and Leyte, which lie north of Mindanao; and the island of Paragoa, which lies very near the north part of Borneo, and is subject to one of the princes of that island.

Philippina was the first that was discovered of this cluster of islands, and consequently gave name to the rest. It lies between 12 and 14 degrees north latitude, and is the most fertile and pleasant of all the Philippines, exhibiting a scene of perpetual verdure; for here the sun is powerful, without being disagreeable.

The Ladrone Islands are situate in the Pacific Ocean, in 140 degrees of eastern longitude, and between 12 and 28 degrees of north latitude. Guam or Ignana, the largest, is situate in 13 deg. 31 min. north latitude, 7500 miles west of Cape Corientes in Mexico, according to Dampier. The other inconsiderable islands are, 2. Sarpanta. 3. Bonavista or Tinian. 4. Sefpara. 5. Anatan. 6. Sarignan. 7. Guaguan. 8. Alama-guan. 9. Pagon. 10. The burning mountain of Griga. 11. Magna. 12. Patas. 13. Disconocida; and, 14. Malabrigo.

Guam is about 12 leagues long and four broad, lying N. and S. It is pretty high champaign land, sloping down towards the coast. The east-side, which is the highest, is fenced with steep rocks, on which the waves constantly beat, driven by the trade wind. The west-side is low land, in which are several little sandy bays divided by rocks.

The natives of Guam are of a good stature, have large limbs, a tawny complexion, black long hair, small

eyes, thick lips, and are long visaged. They are sometimes afflicted with a kind of leprosy, otherwise the country is healthful, especially in the dry season. The rains begin in June, and last till October, but are not violent.

The island produces rice and most tropical fruits, and one fort, which Dampier has named bread-fruit, grows upon a tree like apples, and at its full bigness is as large as an ordinary foot ball; it has a hard thick rind, and within a soft yellow pulp, of a sweetish taste; the natives eat it instead of bread, having first baked or roasted it in the embers: it is in season eight months in the year, and grows only in these islands.

Dampier relates, that when he was there (about the year 1700) there were not above 100 Indians upon the island, though he was informed there had been 3 or 400 sometime before: and the reason given why there was no more at that time was, because most of them had burnt their plantations, and fled to other islands on their being used ill by the Spaniards.

Their swift-sailing sloops, or flying proas, are the admiration of all that see them; the bottom of the vessel, or the keel, is of one piece, made like a canoe, 28 feet in length, built sharp at both ends, one side of the sloop flat, and the other rounding with a pretty large belly; being four or five feet broad, with a mast in the middle. They turn the flat side to the wind, and having a head at each end, sail with either of them foremast, and have never any occasion to tack. Dampier computed they would sail 24 miles an hour. The tide never rises above two or three feet at this island.

The writer of Lord Anson's voyage relates, that they arrived at the island of Tinian or Bonavista, one of the Ladrone Islands, which lies north of Guam, on the 27th of August, 1742, being situated in 15 deg. 8 min. north latitude, and 114 deg. 50 min. west of Acapulco in America. This island is 12 miles in length, and 6 in breadth, extending from the S. S. W. to N. N. E. The soil is dry and sandy, and the air healthful; the land rises in gentle slopes from the shore to the middle of the island, interrupted by valleys of an easy descent. The valleys and gradual swellings of the ground are beautifully diversified by the encroachments of woods and lawns; and the woods consist of tall spreading trees, celebrated for their aspect or their fruit; the turf of the lawns clean and uniform, composed of the trefoil, intermixed with a variety of flowers; the woods in many places, open, free from bushes, and unobscured, affording most elegant and entertaining prospects.

The cattle on this island were computed to amount to 10,000, (we suppose he means horned cattle) all perfectly white except their ears; besides which there were hogs and poultry without number. The cattle and fowls were so fat, that the men could run them down and were under no necessity of shooting them. The flesh is well tasted, and very easy of digestion.

About the beginning of the present century, the island was said to contain at least 30,000 inhabitants, when a dreadful mortality raging among them, prodigious numbers died, and the calamity prevailed with equal violence in the islands of Rota and Guam; the Spaniards obliged those that remained at Tinian remove to Guam, in order to make good the deficiency by the number of the souls that had perished in the island; since which time, Tinian has been wholly uninhabited. The ruins of the buildings in Tinian, few of which are of a particular form, evince it to have been once a populous place. The island of Rota has not anything in it that demands particular attention. Its produce is rice, which is cultivated by a few Indians who live there undisturbed, but are subject to the Spaniards governor.

Though the other islands are uninhabited, they are generally exceeding fertile, the air good, and the climate temperate. They also produce plenty of provisions, but they are seldom visited, on account of the great inconvenience arising from the want of water for anchorage.

age. Tinian is n
but even there it is
In the month of Se
dore Byron's ships
ended with fatal
men; she had, as
the surf suddenly
water, by which m
deep craggy rocks
drowned; and the
great difficulty effe
ming to shore, the
untill swell which
Several other isla
the eastward of the
the New Philippine
from Manila (infer
tions) gives the fol
to be at the town
found 29 palars, c
covered islands, wh
winds which blow
May. They had r
gether, according t
able to make any lar
they were 35 perso
their wives and chi
several perished by
voyage; they were
man from Guivar
them, that all the pe
wish their wives
however, they were
harbour, and they la
They eat cocoa-nuts
very freely, but wou
man food of the A
formerly been call
their interpreters; t
sisted of 32 inter
and sails their coun
head of the Mariana
that their country
all the islands are u
who keeps his cour
natives go half nak
their bodies, making
but the women and
plexion and shape
the tawny Philippine
a cloth about their l
another loofe about
There is little diffe
and women, but th
men hangs a little lo
is different both fr
and the Ladrone Isla
the Arabs: the wo
among them, wear
portulicshell. They
they were at sea with
of wicker basket with
which they hauled
rain water, which th
they have no cows,
run away at the sig
of the other; neither
or any four footed be
but hens, which they
they were surprized
having never seen a
they were at their m
pear that they have
is meals, but eat an
or thirilly, and then b
by taking him by the
his face: among the
a large shell, sharpen
other metals in their
for the many tools

Tinian is more commodious in this particular, but even there it is very unsafe from June to October. In the month of September, the Tamar, one of Commodore Byron's ships, met with an accident, that was attended with fatal consequences to two of her best seamen; she had, as usual, sent her boat on shore, when the surf suddenly rose so high as to fill the boat with water, by which means the men were dashed against the steep craggy rocks near the shore, and two of them drowned; and the rest who were six in number, with great difficulty escaped suffering the same fate, by swimming to shore, they being frequently repelled by the unusual swell which prevailed at that time.

Several other islands have lately been discovered to the eastward of the Philippines; and from them called the New Philippines, of which father Clan, in a letter from Manila (inserted in the Philosophical Transactions) gives the following account: that he happening to be at the town of Guivam, in the island of Samar, found 29 palars, or inhabitants of certain newly discovered islands, who were driven there by the easterly winds which blow in those seas from December to May. They had run before the wind for 70 days together, according to their own relation, without being able to make any land till they came in sight of Guivam: they were 35 persons, and embarked in two boats, with their wives and children, when they first came out, but several perished by the hardships they underwent in the voyage: they were under such a consternation when a man from Guivam attempted to come on board them, that all the people which were in one of the vessels, with their wives and children, jumped overboard; however, they were at length persuaded to steer into the harbour, and they landed the 28th of December, 1696. They eat cocoa-nuts and roots which were brought them very freely, but would not touch boiled rice, the common food of the Asiatics. Two women who had formerly been cast on shore from the same islands, were their interpreters; they related that their country consisted of 32 islands, and by the form of their vessels and sails their country seemed to be in the neighbourhood of the Mariana, or Ladrone Islands; they related that their country was exceeding populous, and that all the islands are under the dominion of one king, who keeps his court in the island of Lamare: the natives go half naked, and the men paint and stain their bodies, making several sorts of figures upon them, but the women and children are not painted; the complexion and shape of their face is much like those of the many Philippines or Malaya: The men wear only a cloth about their loins which covers their thighs, and another loose about their bodies which they tie before. There is little difference betwixt the dress of the men and women, but that the cloth which covers the women hangs a little lower on their knees, their language is different both from the people of the Philippines and the Ladrone Islands, and comes nearest to that of the Arabs: the women that seem most considerable among them, wear necklaces, bracelets, and rings of tortoiseshell. They subsisted themselves all the time they were at sea with the fish they catched, in a kind of wicker basket with a great mouth, ending in a point, which they hauled after them; and their drink was plain water, which they happened to be supplied with: they have no cows, or dogs, in their islands, and they run away at the sight of the one, and the barking of the other; neither have they any horses, deer, cats, or any four footed beasts whatever, or any land fowls but hens, which they breed up, and never eat their eggs: they were surprized at the whiteness of the Europeans, having never seen any people of this complexion, as they were at their manners or customs: it does not appear that they have any religion, nor do they use any other meals, but eat and drink whenever they are hungry or thirsty, and then but sparingly. They salute any one by taking him by the hand or foot, or gently stroking his face: among their tools they have a saw made of a large shell, sharpened with a stone, having no iron or other metals in their country; and were surprized to see the many tools used in building a ship. Their

arms are lances or darts, headed with human bones and sharpened. They seem to be a people of much life and courage, but of a peaceful disposition; and are well proportioned, but not of a large size. We now proceed with the narrative of our voyage.

On Monday, the 30th of September, after having been at the island of Tinian nine weeks, we found our sick pretty well recovered; and this day the tents were ordered to be struck, and to be brought, with the forge and oven on board the ships. We also laid in two thousand cocoa-nuts, and a quantity of limes, for the use of the seamen, the Commodore having experienced them to be efficacious antidotes against the scurvy. On Tuesday, the 1st of October, we weighed, and sailed from Tinian and the rest of the Ladrone islands. Having finished our business on which we were sent, by the discovery of those Islands in the South-Seas, according to our original destination, we bent our thoughts towards returning home, and it was proposed, should we be so fortunate as to find the N. E. monsoon set in, before we should get the length of the Balhé islands, to touch at Batavia, which our Commodore preferred to any port of China for recruiting his ships, he being deterred from touching at the latter, and particularly at Canton, by the safe and ungenerous usage which Lord Anson received there, after a voyage of much longer duration, and attended with a series of the most dreadful distresses and misfortunes, that called for pity and assistance. We had very little wind this day and the next, till the evening, when it came to the westward and blew fresh. On the 3rd, in the morning we stood to the northward, and made the island of Anatacan; remarkably high, and the same that was first fallen in with by Lord Anson. On the 10th, we observed in latitude 18 deg. 33 min. north, and in 136 deg. 50 min. east longitude. On Friday, the 18th, several land birds were seen about the ships, which appeared to be very much tired: a very remarkable one was caught; it was about the size of a goose, and all over as white as snow, except the legs and beaks, which were black, the beak was curved, and of so great a length and thickness, that it is not easy to conceive how the muscles of the neck (which was about a foot long, and as small as that of a crane) could support it. We kept it alive about four months upon biscuit and water, but it then died, apparently for want of nourishment, being almost as light as a bladder. It was very different from every species of the toucan that is represented by Edwards; and in the opinion of our Commodore, has never been described. These birds appeared to have been blown off some island to the northward, that is not laid down in the charts. On Tuesday the 22nd, at six o'clock A. M. the northernmost of the Balhé islands, being Grafton's, bore south, distant six leagues. We proceeded without touching at this place, which was proposed, and steered westward again. By our reckoning, which however the experience of Captain Gore has since disproved, it lies in latitude 21 deg. 8 min. north, and in 118 deg. 14 min. east longitude. The principal of these islands are five in number, but we were induced not to touch at any one of them, on account of the dangerous navigation from thence to the Straits of Banca. On the 24th, we were in latitude 16 deg. 59 min. north, and 113 deg. 1 min. east longitude. We therefore kept a good look-out for the Triangles, which lie without the north end of the Prasli, and occasion a most dangerous shoal. On the 30th, we found ourselves in latitude 7 deg. 17 min. north, and in 104 deg. 21 min. east longitude. This day we observed several large bamboos floating about the ship. On Saturday the 2nd of November, we found by observation, our latitude to be 3 deg. 54 min. north, longitude 103 deg. 30 min. east; and on the 3rd, we came in sight of the island of Pulo Timoan, bearing S. W. by W. distant about 12 leagues. On the 5th, we anchored in a bay on the east side of the island, in sixteen fathoms water, and at about the distance of two miles from the shore. On Wednesday the 6th, we landed, in hopes of procuring fresh provisions, but found the inhabitants, who are Malaya, a surly insolent set of people. On seeing us approach the shore, they

came

came down to the beach in great numbers, each man having a long knife in one hand, a spear headed with iron in the other, and a dagger by his side. Notwithstanding these hostile appearances, we landed, but could only purchase about a dozen of fowls, a goat and a kid; for which we offered them knives, hatches, bill-hooks, and the like, which they refused with great contempt, and demanded rupees in payment. Having none of these pieces, we were at a loss how to pay for what we had purchased, but recollecting we had some pocket handkerchiefs, they accepted of them, though they took only the best. These people are well made but small in stature, and of a dark copper colour. There was among them an old man, dressed somewhat in the fashion of the Persians, but all the rest were naked, except some pieces of cloth, which were fastened with silver clasps round their waists; and they wore a kind of turbans, made up of handkerchiefs upon their heads. We saw not any of their women, whom they probably took care to keep out of our sight. Their houses are neatly built of slit bamboo, and raised upon pillars about eight feet from the ground. Their boats are of an admirable good construction, and some of them of large dimensions. In these they probably trade to Malacca. This island is mountainous, woody, and produces the cocoa-nut, and cabbage tree, in great abundance; but the natives would not permit us to have any of their fruit. We saw also some rice grounds; but what may be the other productions of this island we cannot say. In the bay is excellent fishing, though the fish runs very high. We hazarded our seine with great success, but could easily perceive that by so doing we offended the inhabitants, who considered all the fish about the island as their own property. Two fine rivers run into this bay, and the water is excellent; we filled as many casks with it as loaded the boats twice. Some of the natives brought down to us an animal, which had the body of a hare and the legs of a deer. One of our officers bought it; and we would have kept it alive, had it been in our power to have procured proper sustenance; but this being impossible, it was killed, and we found it excellent food. We staid here only two nights and one day, and all the time, had the most violent thunder, lightning, and rain we had ever known. This island of Pulo Timen lies off the eastern coast of the peninsula of Malacca, in latitude 3 deg. 12 min. north longitude 105 deg. 40 min. east. Finding that nothing more was to be procured at this place,

On Thursday the 7th, in the morning we set sail, and after arriving in the latitude of Pulo Condore, we had nothing but tornades, and tempestuous weather. On the 10th, at seven o'clock, A. M. the east end of Lingen bore S. W. by W. distant 12 leagues. At noon we anchored with the kedge in twenty fathoms; and at one o'clock P. M. we saw a small island, which bore S. W. half S. distant ten leagues. On Monday the 11th, we weighed, and, having made sail, we descried some small islands, which we supposed to be Dorvines, bearing W. half N. distant seven leagues. At noon by observation we found our latitude to be 18 min. south. On the 12th, at 10 o'clock A. M. we saw a small Chinese junk; and on the 13th, a small island, called Pulo Toté. At four o'clock P. M. we came to an anchor, and saw a small sloop about four miles distant from us, which hoisted Dutch colours. In the night we had violent rain with hard squalls. On Thursday the 14th, we weighed, and at nine o'clock A. M. made sail. The vessel we had seen the day before still laying at anchor, we sent a boat with an officer to speak with her: the officer was received on board with great civility; but was much surprized at finding, that he could not make himself understood, for the people on board were Malays, without a single white man among them; they made tea for our men immediately, and in every respect behaved with great hospitality. This vessel was of a singular form, her deck was of slit bamboo, and she was steered, not by a rudder, but by two large pieces of timber, one upon each quarter. This day the wind became more moderate and variable from N. N. W. to W. S. W. On the 15th we set sail, and at two o'clock

P. M. Monopin hill bore S. by E. distant ten leagues, having the appearance of a small island. It bears S. by W. from the seven islands, and is distant from them seven leagues, in the latitude of two deg. south. From the seven islands we steered S. W. by S. and soon after saw the coast of Sumatra, bearing from W. S. W. to W. by N. distant seven leagues. In the evening we anchored; and on the 16th, at four A. M. we continued our course S. by E. till the peak of Monopin Hill bore east, and Batacarang Point, on the Sumatra shore S. W. in order to avoid a shoal called Frederick Hendrick, which lies nearly midway between the Banca and Sumatra shore. We then steered E. S. E. and kept mid-channel, to shun the banks of Palambam River, and that which lies off the westernmost point of Banca. When abreast of Palambam River we regularly shoaled out water, and when we had passed it, we deepened it again. We held on our course E. S. E. between the third and fourth points of Sumatra, which are about ten leagues distant from each other. The high land of Queda Banca appeared over the third point of Sumatra, bearing E. S. E. From the third point to the second, the course is S. E. by S. at the distance of eleven leagues. The high land of Queda Banca, and the second point of Sumatra bear E. N. E. and W. S. W. from each other. The strait is five leagues over, and the mid channel is twenty-four fathoms. At six o'clock in the evening we anchored; and at five in the morning on the 17th, we weighed, with a moderate gale at west. On Tuesday, the 19th, we met with an English ship, belonging to the East India Company, whose Captain with great generosity, presented our Commodore with a sheep, a dozen of fowls, and a turtle. This was a most acceptable present, for we had now nothing to eat but the ship's provisions, which were become very bad. Our beef and pork stunk intolerably, and our bread was rotten and full of worms. In the afternoon we anchored, and sent a boat to sound for the shoals which lie to the northward of Laspára, which island bore from us S. E. by S. distant six leagues. On the 20th we worked between the shoals and the coast of Sumatra, and having got through the strait, well known to navigators, on the 27th, we steered between the islands of Edam and Horn, and entered the road of Batavia, where we anchored without the shipping.

On Wednesday the 28th, we moored near the town and saluted the fort with eleven guns, which were returned. We here observed, that, since our leaving England, we had lost a day in our reckoning, by having steered westward a year; so that by the Dutch account this day was the 29th of November. We counted in this road more than one hundred sail great and small, among which was an English ship from Bombay, and the Palmouth man of war, which we found condemned and lying ashore, and all the men cleared for England, except the warrant officers, who were left here till the Lords of the Admiralty should think proper to recall them. A Dutch Commodore belonging to their company is always stationed here, who in the eyes of his countrymen is a person of very great consequence. He thought fit to send his *cockswain*, a very dirty ragged fellow, who asked the Commodore many impertinent questions, as whence we came, &c. at the same time pulling out a book, pen, and ink, in order to set down the answers; but our gentlemen being impatient to save him any more trouble, desired him immediately to walk over the ship's side, and put off his boat, with which he was graciously pleased to comply. The Commodore went on shore, and visited the Dutch Governor at his country house, by whom he was received with great politeness, and told that he might take a house in any part of the city, or be lodged at the hotel. Any inhabitant of Batavia permitting a stranger to sleep, though but for a single night in his house, incurs a penalty of 50 dollars: the hotel being the only licensed lodging house, the governor appoints the keeper of it, who was at this time a Frenchman. This hotel is the most superb building in the city, having more the air of a palace than an inn. During our stay at this place, we were supplied with good greens, fruits of all kinds, and

plenty of fresh quantity of water for a hundred and dried and fifty to caulking the Dol with varnish. Many sick in either more unhealthy than as the rainy season procure arrack at fowls resolved to ever, we had an account of what our friends and relatives. The island of lies six degrees south of Sumatra, distant ten leagues from the Sunda. It is supposed to extend almost due which is hardly different in different are several good flourishing towns. Though Java is fit for more temperate the east and west the shore, besides in the month of February the weather is thicker and lightning sometimes so violent, for the low countries violence attends that is that of desroy would otherwise flourish and rice ripen not only furnish the soil with every necessary which is very fertile and highly improved but what ever can be made a very incon of the country beyond the entrance to the where obliucted by whose heads seem a great variety of abundance; and in is called jambos, gives as an infallible ages with great vigour has no resemblance inhabitants in large layers mixed with certain cure for the general, very rich, and of which are red. With respect to the white to an orange single one sometimes This fruit, if left of the year round, keep four or five months, that we brought mango fruit rises from small twigs of a tree. Pepper and a small distance of sugar canes, from quantity of sugar, but, it is as durable as the wood being of against the worms, which will gnaw a lot of wood. The one half of them No. 30.

plenty of fresh meat: we took also on board a great quantity of water, at the rate of five shillings a leger, or a hundred and fifty gallons. A ship of four hundred and fifty tons, built at Bombay, was employed in caulking the Dolphin, and paying her bottom and sides with varnish. When we arrived here, we had not one man sick in either ships; but knowing Batavia to be more unhealthy than any other part of the East Indies, and as the rainy season was at hand, and our men could procure arrack at a very low rate, it was for these reasons resolved to make our stay as short as possible: however, we had an opportunity of enquiring into the state of this country, and we hope the following particular account of what we learnt will not be disagreeable to our friends and readers.

The island of Java, the capital whereof is Batavia, lies six degrees south of the line, and is divided from Sumatra, distant therefrom five leagues, by the straits of Sunda. It is supposed to be 420 miles in length, extending almost due east and west; but its breadth, which is hardly any where more than 150 miles, is different in different places. On the north coast of Java are several good harbours, commodious creeks, and flourishing towns, with many islands near the shore. Though Java is situated so near the equator, few climates are more temperate and healthful at particular seasons, the east and west winds blowing all the year all along the shore, besides the general land and sea-breezes, but in the month of December the coast is very dangerous, on account of the violence of the westerly winds. In February the weather is changeable, with storms of thunder and lightning; and in May the rains are sometimes so violent, for three or four days together, that all the low countries are laid under water: one great inconvenience attends this disagreeable circumstance, which is that of destroying infinite broods of insects, that would otherwise destroy the fruits of the earth. Their sugar and rice ripen in July and October, which months not only furnish the inhabitants with all kinds of fruits, but with every necessary and luxury of life. The land, which is very fertile about the sea-coast, is finely diversified with hills and valleys, which, near Batavia, is highly improved by rich plantations, spacious canals, and whatever can add to the charms of a country naturally pleasant and agreeable. But the Dutch have made a very inconsiderable progress in the cultivation of the country beyond the neighbourhood of that city, the entrance to the inland parts being almost every where obstructed by impassable forests, or by mountains, whose heads seem to touch the clouds. Java produces a great variety of fruit: there are here cocoa trees in abundance; and in the plains is found a tree, whose fruit is called jambos, the juice whereof is used by the natives as an infallible remedy against the flux, which often rages with great violence. The Indian sorrel, which has no resemblance to that in England, is eaten by the inhabitants in large quantities with their salads, and its leaves mixed with saw-dust of sandal wood, is used as a certain cure for the tooth-ach. Their fruits are, in general, very rich, particularly their pumpions, the inside of which are red, and taste not unlike our cherries. With respect to their shape, they bear the nearest resemblance to an orange, but are of a much larger size; a single one sometimes weighing eight or ten pounds. This fruit, if left on the tree, continues in perfection all the year round, and when gathered, will, with care, keep four or five months. We thought them so excellent, that we brought many of them to England. The mango fruit rises from a white flower that grows on the small twigs of a tree, every way as large as our English oak. Pepper and coffee also grow in the country, and at a small distance from Batavia are several plantations of sugar canes, from which is made a considerable quantity of sugar. What is here called the Indian Oak, is as durable as any that can be found in Europe, the wood being of such a consistence, as to be proof against the worms, and, what is more, against the mice, which will gnaw a passage through almost every other sort of wood. The leaves of this tree boiled in water; all one half of them is consumed, is, among the natives;

the general remedy against pleurisy. In short we were told, that almost all sorts of garden stuff thrive in Batavia, and that those brought not only from Surat and Persia, but from Europe, yield near that city a great increase, so that their kitchen gardens produce peas and beans, with roots and herbs sufficient for the consumption of the inhabitants: however rice is the only corn that grows in the island. The woods and forests of Java abound with a prodigious variety of wild beasts, as rhinoceroses, tygers, foxes, buffaloes, apes, wild horses, jackals, and crocodiles. Their cows are nearly as large as ours in England, and have generally two or three calves at a time: their sheep are also nearly of the size of ours. They have likewise a prodigious number of hogs, whose flesh is esteemed excellent, and far preferable to beef or mutton. Here are a variety of fowls, particularly partridges, pheasants, wood-pigeons, wild peacocks, and bats so large, that the body of one of them is as big as that of a rat, and their wings when extended reach at least three feet, from the extremity of one to that of the other. With respect to reptiles, they have many that are very pernicious, particularly scorpions, among which we saw several that were at least a quarter of a yard in length; but those of a smaller size are so common, that it is hardly possible to remove a chest, a looking-glass, or a large picture, without finding them, and being in danger of suffering by their sting. The same creature smothered in oil, and applied to the wound is a general remedy against their poison. Besides these, there are a great number of snakes of different sizes, from one foot in length to ten. Among a variety of valuable animals useful to man, there are none more plentiful than fish, of which there are many kinds, and very good, as also a great number of turtle.

The island of Java was formerly divided into several petty kingdoms, which are at present united under the jurisdiction of the king of Bantam, who is in the possession of the eastern part of the island, as the Dutch are of the western, and some parts of the coast. The natives of Java are, according to the Dutch, not only proud beyond measure, but skilled in all the arts of imposture. Their faces are flat, and of a brown cast, with small eyes, like the ancient Chinese, from whom they boast their original descent. The men, who are strong and well proportioned, wear round their bodies a piece of calico, which among the more wealthy is flowered with gold. The women are in general small of stature, and have a piece of calico, which reaches from their arm-pits to their knees. The principal part of them, especially those near the coast, are Mahomedans, and the rest Pagans. In the western part of the island are many towns, and in the eastern, the cities of Balambuan and Matarani are those in which the king of Bantam resides, who is styled the Emperor of Java. Batavia was formerly no more than an open village inhabited by Pagans, and surrounded by a palisado of bamboos; but since the Dutch have established a settlement, it is become one of the finest cities in the Indies. It lies in 5 deg. 50 min. south latitude, and is watered by many small rivulets which unite into one stream, before they discharge themselves into the sea. The city is of a triangular form, fortified with a stone wall that has twenty-two bastions, and four great gates, two of which are exceeding magnificent. The harbour is very capacious, being large enough to contain a thousand vessels in perfect security from the violence of the winds. It is shut up every night with a chain, through which no ship can pass without permission, and paying a fixed duty, to enforce which ordinances it is guarded by a strong party of soldiers. The streets run in right lines, and are most of them thirty feet broad, and paved with brick near the houses. Fifteen of the streets have canals of water running through them, and over one of those canals are four strong bridges, each consisting of four arches twelve feet broad: but in the city there are fifty-six bridges, besides many draw-bridges without the walls. The streets are so crowded, that from four in the morning till late at night it is difficult to pass through them, on account of the concourse of people

continually engaged in business. We may observe of the public buildings, that the Chinese hospital is a neat structure; supported by a tax laid on marriages, burials, and public shews, as well as the voluntary contribution of the Chinese-merchants. In the same street is a foundling-hospital, and also a building, in which are lodged all the artificers in the Dutch East-India Company's service. The company have likewise a great rope-yard, that employs a considerable number of the poorer sort of people, who work under the shade of the nut-trees planted on each side. To the west end of this yard are the company's warehouses, for mace, cinnamon, cloves, and other commodities. In the castle, which is of a quadrangular figure, built upon a flat, are apartments for all the members of the council of the Indies. The palace is within the walls of the castle, and is appropriated to the use of the governor. It is built with brick, but is extremely magnificent, and loftier than the other buildings of the city. On the top of the turret belonging to the palace, is placed an iron ship, curiously wrought, for the purpose of a weather cock, which is so large that it may be seen some leagues out at sea. Round the city forts are erected, to protect the inhabitants of the plain from the incursions of the original natives, who before they were erected, frequently came down upon the people, and plundered their plantations. Among the principal public buildings are a very handsome town-house; a spinnery, or house of correction; also four or five churches for the Dutch Calvinists; besides a great number of religious structures for the use of persons of other religions. The garrison consists of 1000; and there is a troop of horse, as a guard for the company's possessions lodged in the city: these men are of good stature, and when drawn up in their uniform, make no despicable appearance.

The inhabitants of Batavia are a compound of various nations, among whom the Dutch are the most powerful and wealthy. Next to these are the Chinese, who are, perhaps, the most ingenious cheats in the world. They farm the excise and customs, and indeed are sure to be concerned in every thing from which they have a chance of deriving the least profit. They live under a governor of their own, and dress in the same manner as those in China; but wear their hair long and nearly braided, paying, in this last circumstance, no manner of regard to the Tartarian edicts, which in China oblige the natives to cut off all their hair but one lock. It is remarkable that on the top of a mount of earth, underneath which lie the remains of one of their governors, stands a table, whereon is placed a cup, into which the Chinese sometimes put money and provisions as an offering to the soul of the deceased. This is situated in the midst of a grove, without one of the city gates. The Malaysians, who are the next in riches and trade to the Chinese, also live under a governor of their own. Their houses are covered with leaves, and surrounded with cocoa-trees. Their dress is the same with the Chinese, and they are generally chewing betel. The Martykers, or Topasses, are idolaters of various nations, who live both within and without the city, and seem to be a people of easy disposition, who accommodate themselves without much difficulty, to the customs and manners of the people among whom they reside. Their merchants carry on a considerable commerce: others of them are of different trades, and particularly excel in gardening. They dress in much the same manner as the Dutch, and their houses are of stone, well built, and covered with tiles. Besides these, there are people of many other nations, all of whom have their different dresses, customs, manners, and places of religious worship. So that the inhabitants of this city make a more motly appearance than can be conceived by any who have not seen them. The roads about the city, for many miles, are as good as any in England: they are very broad, and by the side of them runs a canal, shaded with trees, which is navigable for vessels of a very large size. On the other side of the canal are gardens, and the country houses of the citizens, (most of whom keep their carriages, it being

almost a disgrace to be seen on foot) where they spend as much of their time as possible, the situation being less unwholesome than the city, which is built on a swamp; and the trees, though they have a pleasant appearance, must undoubtedly prevent the noxious vapours that are perpetually arising from being dispersed, by obstructing the circulation of the air. Thus we have given a particular account of every thing we saw in Batavia worthy of observation; of which place the reader will find a still more circumstantial, full, and complete description, in the history of Capt. Cook's first voyage, page 82 of this work. We now prepared for our departure; and having fitted the Dolphin, taken in our water, and a sufficient stock of fresh provisions, together with a quantity of rice and arrack,

On Monday the 10th of December, we weighed anchor, and set sail with the Tamar in company, being saluted, on our leaving the road, by the English ship, the Dutch Commodore and the fort. We passed by the Thousand Islands, which extended along the north-side of Java, almost to the west point of New Guinea. Commodore Roggewein sailing through the midst of them, and finding it impossible to count them, gave them, we are told, the general name of the Thousand Islands. They are inhabited by a savage people of a black complexion, who are almost naked, and these islands are famous for producing a beautiful kind of bird, known among us by the name of the bird of paradise. We also passed by a multitude of other small islands, commonly called the Bed of Roses. After which we entered the Straits of Sunda, where the land on each side is very high, both on the shore of the island of Sumatra, and that of Java, the passage between which constitutes the Straits of Sunda. The land of the last mentioned island is very irregular, and the inhabitants extremely poor. They trafficked with us chiefly for old cloaths; and we had an opportunity of supplying ourselves with a great quantity of the finest green turtle, fowls, and fruit of all kinds. The Commodore bought for 10 rixdollars, as many turtle as weighed upwards of 1000 pounds weight, part of which he gave to our ship's company, and also sent a part to that of the Tamar. On the 14th, at seven in the evening, we came to an anchor on the north-side of Prince's Island, which lies within the south entrance of the Straits, in order to recruit our wood and water. We found this island well stocked with provisions of all kinds, and particularly fowls. The inhabitants are to all appearance free from the dominion of the Dutch, though according to the accounts given by the natives, they often fall victims to their unprovoked cruelties, as they frequently seize them, and reduce them to the condition of slaves; and even sell them in the same manner, as the negroes are purchased on the coast of Guinea. We lay off this island till the 19th, during which time, we repaired an inconsiderable damage the Dolphin had sustained, by having had some pieces of copper torn off the larboard bow, by the small bows anchor. This done, and having taken in as much wood and water as we could stow, we weighed, and working to the windward, before night got without Java Head. By this time a putrid fever raged among our crew, whereof three of our hands died, and many others lay in so dangerous a condition that we had little hopes of their recovery. On the 25th, being Christmas-day, our people were in high spirits, and not a little troublesome; but at this time we had an accident which gave us some concern. William Walter, a quarter gunner, was sitting asleep with a pipe in his mouth, and fell overboard; when, notwithstanding all possible means were used to save him, he was never seen more. This unfortunate man was a very good seaman, and universally respected by the officers and sailors on board.

On Monday the 10th of February, at A. M. we came in sight of the coast of Africa, in latitude 34 deg. 15 min. south and in 21 deg. 45 min. east longitude. On the 13th at three P. M. we made land to the eastward of Cape

d'Aquila, but had together. From the Cape of Good Hope the 13th, we passed Point, and at three in Table Bay, with under a close reefed some light Dutch Europe. In this to oblige us to lie and it was sometime our boats reached squalls, which at drive ships from entering the bay we was immediately re Commodore waited coach and fix to the Cape is a most excellent is a healthy climate refreshments of even a delightful spot, and belonging to the governor of very curious three fine ostriches, etc. The square, encompassed by mountains what is appropriated here appears with Commodore during his the governor's, where door, and a serjeant went abroad. In the fine fountain, which men with water. chiefly at Mr. Pjine enjoyed no recreation agreeably. The people on shore by turns completely drunk was This was chiefly owing who at they depend think it their interest and extraordinary care the time we continued work, all on board mutton and beef; sheep may be bought cleared of the offal. Their tails, which are composed of fat, which are not covered with a kind of down, interlocks are large, and for which they are them being harnesses, who goes before small, but very spirit of compliance concerning never known to lie an infallible sign by are out of order.

With respect to the in 35 deg. of south where the extreme known. It abounds the skirts of the mountains groves of the finest timber of delightful meadows of the most beautiful fragrance. The large productions, and the brought from the mountains as well as in their fall, and a native, is then not only in the clefts of the rocks, but near, one sort or other good-tree is likewise coloured leaves spec

d'Aquila, but had contrary winds for several days together. From hence the coast lies W. N. W. to the Cape of Good Hope, distant about 30 leagues. On the 13th, we passed between Penguin Island and Green Point, and at three o'clock P. M. came to an anchor in Table Bay, with a fresh gale, working to windward under a close reefed main and top-sails, and there found some light Dutch ships and Indiamen, bound for Europe. In this bay the S. E. wind blew so strong, as to oblige us to lie with our yards and top-masts struck; and it was sometimes with the greatest difficulty that our boats reached the shore, through the violence of the squalls, which at particular times are here so great, as to drive ships from their anchors out to sea. On our entering the bay we saluted the fort, which compliment was immediately returned: and on Friday the 14th, the Commodore waited upon the governor, who sent his coach and six to the water-side, to receive him. The Cape is a most excellent place for ships to touch at; it is a healthy climate, a fine country, and abounds with refreshments of every kind. The Company's garden is a delightful spot, and at the end of it is a paddock belonging to the governor, in which are kept a great number of very curious animals; among others were three fine ostriches, and four zebras of an uncommon size. The square, in which the old governor lives, is encompassed by many other grand buildings, besides what is appropriated to the use of that great officer, who here appears with the dignity of a prince. Our Commodore during his stay, resided in a house adjoining to the governor's, where he had a centinel always at the door, and a serjeant who attended him whenever he went abroad. In the middle of this square is a very fine fountain, which supplies the greatest part of the town with water. The officers of both ships resided chiefly at Mr. Pince's, and as for a long time we had enjoyed no recreation, we now spent our time very agreeably. The people also on board, had all leave to go on shore by turns, and they always contrived to get completely drunk with cape wine before they returned. This was chiefly owing to the civility of the inhabitants, who as they depend on the foreign ships who touch here, think it their interest to behave with good manners, and extraordinary compliance to all strangers. During the time we continued at the cape, which was three weeks, all on board both ships were supplied with fresh mutton and beef; for provisions are so cheap, that a sheep may be bought for a Spanish dollar, which, when cleared of the offal, will weigh 50 or 60 pounds. Their tails, which are remarkably large, are chiefly composed of fat, which eats like marrow. Their skins are not covered with wool, as ours in England, but with a kind of down, intermixed with long hair. The bullocks are large, and used for the most part in teams, for which they are preferred to horses; eight or ten of them being harnessed together, and conducted by a slave, who goes before to guide them. The horses are small, but very spirited; and we were told an odd circumstance concerning them, which is, that they are never known to lie down but when sick, and that this is an infallible sign by which their owners know when they are out of order.

With respect to the country in general, it is situated in 33 deg. of south latitude, and in a temperate climate, where the extremes of heat and cold are equally unknown. It abounds with the most beautiful landscapes, the skirts of the mountains being interspersed with lofty groves of the finest trees, and the valleys and plains consist of delightful meadow lands, adorned with a variety of the most beautiful flowers, that fill the air with their fragrance. The land also produces the finest vegetable productions, and the richest fruits, while most of those brought from the East and West Indies, flourish here as well as in their native soil. One of the most beautiful, and a native, is the aloe, of which are many sorts, seen not only in the gardens of the company, but in the clefts of the rocks, and, it is said, that throughout the year, one sort or other is continually in bloom. The Indian gold-trees is likewise a remarkable curiosity, having gold-coloured leaves speckled with red, with small greenish

blossoms. Here are also numbers of quince-trees, whose fruit is said to be not only larger, but better than the quinces of any other country in the known world. The Dutch have discovered several excellent methods of preserving them, and not only make great quantities of marmalade for their own use, but sell it to the ships that touch here for refreshments. No country abounds with a greater variety of animals. Among the wild beasts are the elephant, the rhinoceros, and the buffalo; with lions, tygers, leopards, wolves, wild dogs, porcupines, elks, harts, goats of various kinds, wild horses, the zebra, and many others. Among the most extraordinary of these is a small animal, somewhat larger than a squirrel, with a head that has some resemblance to that of a bear. It is called a rattle-mouse, from its frequently making a rattling noise with its tail. This is neither very hairy, nor very long. Its back is of a liver colour, and its sides nearly black. It purs like a cat, and lives for the most part on trees, leaping like a squirrel from one tree to another, feeding upon acorns, nuts, and the like. The feathered tribe are no less numerous; for besides many of those known in Europe, here are ostriches much larger than those we saw in the Straits of Magellan, flamingoes, spoon-bills, blue-birds, green-peaks, the long-tongue and many others. The flamingo is larger than a swan, and a very stately bird. Both the head and neck are as white as snow, and the latter is considerably longer than that of a swan. The bill is very broad, and black at the point, and the rest of it of a deep blue. The upper part of the wing-feathers are of a flame colour, and the lower black; but the legs, which are much longer than those of a stork, are of an orange colour, and the feet resemble those of a goose. Though they live upon fish, their flesh is both wholesome, and well tasted. The green-peak is all over green, except two red spots, one on its breast, and another on its head, and is a very beautiful bird. It feeds on insects, which it picks out of the bark of trees. The long-tongue is about the size of a bull-finch, and his tongue is not only very long, but said to be as hard as iron, and the end as sharp as the point of a needle; this being a weapon given it by the author of nature for its preservation. The feathers on the belly are yellow, and the rest speckled. At the Cape are also many sorts of excellent fish, a considerable number of which are common in Europe, and thers peculiar to these seas. The reptiles and insects are likewise extremely numerous, and among these are a variety of serpents, scorpions, and some centipedes. Thus to counterbalance the advantage this country affords, from the abundance of useful animals, there are also thrown into the scale many that are prejudicial and extremely dangerous; as if it was intended to shew to man, that amidst the greatest blessings and advantages bestowed on one of the most enchanting spots in the universe, it was necessary to mix a certain proportion of evil, to reduce it more to a level with those countries that are in some respects less desirable.

Both our ship and the *Tamar* by this time had received a fresh supply of wood, water, and all necessary stores, and being completely fitted for sailing to our native country, on Thursday the 6th of March, our Commodore took leave of the good old governor, and the next day we got under way, and sailed with a fine breeze at S. E. On Sunday the 16th, at six o'clock, A. M. we saw the rocks off the Island of St. Helena, bearing W. by N. distant about eight leagues; and at noon, 118 deg. 16 min. south latitude, we observed a strange sail which hoisted French colours, but in the evening ran her out of sight. We pursued our course without any thing material occurring till the 26th, when we were alarmed by the ship's running foul of a whale or grampus, on which she struck her head, and then her larboard bow. This put the Commodore and officers in no small consternation, lest the *Dolphin* should have suffered from the violence of the shock, as we were at that time running at the rate of six knots an hour; however we found the shock, though a rude one, attended with no bad consequence. We perceived the sea near the place where the ship struck, tinged

with

with blood, by which we supposed the whale was killed, or at least deeply wounded. On Tuesday the 25th, we crossed the equator, in longitude 17 deg. 10 min. and the next morning Captain Cumming of the Tamar, made the signal to bring to, and came on board the Dolphin to inform the Commodore, that the rudder braces were broke from the stern-post, whereby the rudder was rendered entirely useless: upon which the Commodore sent his carpenter with assistants on board the Tamar, who went to work upon a machine after the model of that which had been fixed to the Ipswich, and Grafton, each of which ships, at different times, steered home from Louisbourg by the help of such a substitute for a rudder. This machine was completed in about six days, and received some improvements from the ingenuity of the constructor: but it was thought better to send the Tamar to Antigua, in order to refit; accordingly on the 1st of April, the Tamar parted company with the Dolphin, steering for the Caribbee islands. In their passage they found the difference of sailing with the machine, to be only about five miles in forty-eight hours. After the departure of the Tamar, which was the first time of our being separated wholly from her since our leaving England, and in latitude 34 deg. north, longitude 35 deg. west, we had a most violent gale of wind, which drove us to the northward of the western islands, and into latitude 48 deg. north, longitude 14 deg. west. We came within two hundred leagues of the land, and spoke with several ships lately from England, who gave us very erroneous accounts of the bearing of the coast. We had now a strong easterly wind, which lasted several days, and the weather appeared to us piercing cold, from our having been, during so long a time, used to a warm climate. However, we at last had a favourable

wind, and on Thursday, the 7th of May, saw the island of Scilly. On the 9th, in the morning, we arrived in the Downs, where we cast anchor; having been nine weeks running from the Cape of Good Hope, and somewhat more than two and twenty months in the circumnavigation of the globe.

Thus ended a voyage, originally planned by his Majesty, George the Third, and which produced the discovery of those islands, that have lately engrossed the attention of the public. We have endeavoured to describe them, and our courses with accuracy, and with truth and authenticity, that might justly be expected from one who saw every thing of which we have given a description. By the assistance of divine providence, and the tenderness of our excellent Commodore, in causing the crews to be served with portable soup, and with the greatest humanity distributing provisions to the sick from his own table, that dreadful disease the scurvy was rendered less inveterate and fatal; and we lost, including those who were drowned, a very inconsiderable number of men, a number so inconsiderable, that it is highly probable, more of them would have died, in the course of a year, had they staid on shore. From our arrival at Spithead, till our leaving the ship in the river, no boats were suffered to come on board us, nor any answers to be given to enquirers, with respect to who we were, or from what port we were come; so that a variety of conjectures were formed as to our late voyage. After having waited a few days, each man, according to the promise of the Commodore, received double pay for his services, and had an opportunity of enjoying those comforts, which we, after an absence of twenty-two months from our native country, might be supposed ardently to wish for.

A NEW, ACCURATE, GENUINE, and COMPLETE HISTORY of
A VOYAGE Round the WORLD

PERFORMED

By Captain SAMUEL WALLIS, Esq.

In his MAJESTY'S Ship the DOLPHIN;

Having under his Command the SWALLOW SLOOP and PRINCE FREDERIC STORR-SHIP
 of which Mr. CARTERET and Lieutenant BRINE were appointed Masters:

UNDERTAKEN PARTICULARLY

With a view to make Discoveries in the SOUTH SEAS.

Which remarkable Circuit of the Globe was begun on FRIDAY, the 22nd of AUGUST 1766, and
 completed on FRIDAY the 20th of MAY 1768, containing a Period of 637 Days, and including
 in the Years 1766, 1767, and 1768.

INTRODUCTION.

NEVER was there perhaps collected together in any language, a more copious fund of rational entertainment than will be found in this comprehensive and complete work, of which the present voyage is a part. To trace the progress of the discoveries that have successively been made, in passing round the globe, must fill the reader's mind with such a variety of new information, as cannot fail to raise his wonder, and entertain him with inexpressible delight. In the course of this work he is safely conducted through regions that were

once thought inaccessible, and made acquainted with countries altogether different from that wherein he dwells. Every page he reads will furnish him with novelties, and every voyage will bring him nearer to the unknown country, in search of which so many able commanders have been sent in vain. The discovery of the western continent by Columbus, gave geographers reason to believe, that a like continent existed somewhere in the south. Without such an equipage he could not conceive how the globe could preserve its bal-

ance. Magellhaens
 who attempted to
 he passed the straits
 entered the Pacific O
 ever before failed. I
 oppine isles, and re
 owing surrounded the
 distraction, the sph
 followed by navigato
 of his glory, G
 pointed out, with b
 encountered, and th
 difficulties that ar
 able; many perished
 return home after
 which attended thes
 enterprize, and i
 the writings of th
 others, fully persuade
 endeavoured, a few
 men the spirit of
 honour to their coun
 the taste for un
 French seemed intri
 Dolphin and Tamar
 sight of renewing
 At this time, as we
 gious Sovereign
 making himself by
 discoveries in the un
 sphere; and surely
 march to his mari
 name in this lauda
 a passion natural
 would are placed be
 courage; by exam
 are a name. But h
 the earth with a
 the conquest of some
 remote, and it m
 of levelling fort
 lands and focs, be
 was, purchased at
 water than what is
 new discoveries, Ca
 own the glory of a
 the laudable motives
 ions, whose inhabi
 merced in savage d
 hazardous war, by v
 depended, and thous
 chance of succeeding
 than that of comp
 success in the discov
 much greater ac
 the conquest of any
 globe? Did not the li
 press harvest from th
 Alexander could bo
 the performance
 Emanuel, in suppor
 are discoveries in th
 foundation of the Pe
 ties in Europe are c
 the glory of aggranc
 come to posterity, b
 here, where shall we
 spread murder an
 descended to the gr
 that attended the
 opens, when he fav
 est, to transfer his
 deterritorial globe
 The success which
 100 days, in the ve
 has it yet produc
 compensate the sum

Magellhaens, a Portuguese mariner, was the first who attempted to immortalize his name by the discovery. He passed the straits, that to this day bear his name, and entered the Pacific Ocean, where no European vessel had ever before sailed. He discovered the Ladrones and Philippine isles, and returned by the Cape of Good Hope, having surrounded the whole earth, and proved to demonstration, the spherical figure of the globe. He was followed by navigators of different nations, who, emulous of his glory, sought to pursue the track he had pointed out, with better success; but the dangers they encountered, and the disasters they met with, rendered the difficulties that attended the prosecution insurmountable; many perished, and those who survived were glad to return home after a fruitless search. The ill success which attended these first attempts threw a damp upon the enterprize, and it remained long unnoticed, except in the writings of the learned. Some French geographers, fully persuaded of the reality of such a continent, endeavoured, a few years ago, to revive in their countrymen the spirit of enterprize, with a view to derive honour to their country, by completing the discovery; but the taste for uncommon navigations among the French seemed intirely extinct, and it was not till the Dolphin and Tamar had sailed from England that they thought of renewing it.

At this time, as we have elsewhere observed, our most glorious Sovereign had formed the design of distinguishing himself by patronizing the prosecution of new discoveries in the unknown regions of the southern hemisphere; and surely nothing can more endear a British monarch to his maritime people, than a steady perseverance in this laudable resolution. The love of glory is a passion natural to kings: the conquerors of the world are placed before them as patterns, and they are encouraged by example to seek occasions for war to acquire a name. But how much more glorious is it to enlarge the earth with a new region, than to triumph in the conquest of some rival state!—to extend protection to a remote, and it may be a defenceless people, than to level their fortresses, and by a general carnage of friends and foes, become master of a few desolated towns, purchased at an expence, a thousand times greater than what is necessary to insure the success of new discoveries. Can there be any comparison between the glory of a successful enterprize, founded on the laudable motives of diffusing happiness through regions, whose inhabitants, for ought we know, are yet immersed in savage darkness; and that of engaging in a hazardous war, by which millions of treasure must be expended, and thousands of lives sacrificed? Is not the chance of succeeding in the first case much more probable than that of conquering in the other? And does not success in the discovery of the long sought region promise much greater advantage to a trading nation, than the conquest of any part of the earth on this side the globe? Did not the little Phœnician state reap more glorious harvest from the discoveries of its merchants, than Alexander could boast from all his conquests? Was it the perseverance of the Princes Henry, John, and Emanuel, in supporting the expences of prosecuting new discoveries in the sixteenth century, that laid the foundation of the Portuguese greatness, whose territories in Europe are of no inconsiderable extent? But if the glory of aggrandizing a state, and perpetuating a name to posterity, be the chief object of human ambition, where shall we look for a monarch, who, after having spread murder and desolation throughout the world, descended to the grave with that heart-felt satisfaction, that attended the Florentine merchant Americus Vesputius, when he saw all Europe agreeing, with one consent, to transfer his name to more than a third part of the terrestrial globe?

The success which has attended his present Majesty's Voyages, in the voyages we are now relating, though it has as yet produced no extraordinary advantages to compensate the sums expended in the prosecution of

them, yet it has been such as to open the way to new islands, from whose inhabitants new arts may be learnt, and from whose productions new acquisitions may be made, both to the vegetable and fossil kingdoms, by which the boundaries of science may be enlarged, and the gardens of the curious enriched. Nor does it afford a small satisfaction to inquisitive minds, to be made acquainted with the genius, the arts, the various pursuits, the customs, the manners, the religious notions, the distinctions of rank, and the subordination that is to be met with among the people of various islands and countries, distinct from each other, and from us, in language, habits, learning, and ways of living. Who can read of the poverty and misery of the wretched inhabitants of Terra del Fuego, who have nothing but the skins of beasts thrown over them to defend them from the severity of the cold: natives of a most horrid climate: nor better provided with food than with raiment: who can read the story of these forlorn creatures, without lamenting the condition of human beings, destitute as these appear to be, of every comfort and convenience, and exposed every moment to the piercing rigour of the climate, and the still severer cravings of unsatisfied hunger! On the contrary, who can think of these, while at the same time, he is told of the pleasurable lives of those happy islanders, in the new discovered countries, who abound in flesh, fish, and fruits, even to profusion, without admiring the ways of providence, that, for purposes unknown to us, has so unequally bestowed its dispensations! In these voyages, when we read of men that eat men, not from hunger, but from savage ferocity, we shudder to think of the depravity of our nature, and are convinced of the necessity of bounding our passions by wholesome laws, and of correcting the irregularities of our appetites by the restraints of religion.

The variety of incidents that happened to our navigators, and in the course of their voyages, when historically recited, afford a peculiar kind of entertainment, not to be met with in other productions of a different kind. The many singular adventures, unforeseen dangers, and providential escapes, that every ship experienced in passing round the globe, can only be conceived by those who read, and believed by those who have seen the wonders of the deep. Nothing can excite or gratify curiosity more than relations of marvellous events that happen in succession, and in circumstances equally critical and important. There is not an object that presents itself either by sea or land, but affords some degree of use and speculation. The fish that swim about the ship, and the fowls that present themselves in the ocean, are indications by which the skilful mariner avails himself, either to guard against the storm, or to prepare for land; and our readers, as circumstances arise, either share his danger, or partake of his refreshment. We are now preparing for them new subjects of entertainment; and being about to pass again through the straits of Magellan, into the vast Pacific Ocean or South Sea, it may not be amiss to offer a remark on this immense body of water. It extends from the western coasts of North and South America, to the eastern shores of China, Tartary and Japan. From its most western boundary between Peru and Chili, to its most eastern point at Cochin-China, it very near rolls over an extent of 180 degrees of longitude; and it is now supposed, by the most accurate investigation that human skill and spirit will ever make, to reach quite to the South-Pole, and may possibly be as extensive towards the North; so that this sea may be said to embrace, within five degrees, an entire hemisphere of the globe of the world; to explore which, in a certain track, is the object of the voyage, undertaken by Captain Samuel Wallis. The history of this we shall now present to the view of our numerous subscribers, only observing that Captain Wallis in this circumnavigation of the globe, directed his course more westwardly than any former navigator within the tropics.

C H A P. I.

Preparations for this voyage, instructions, &c.—Names of the ships and commanders—Circumstances previous to their setting sail from Plymouth—Passage from thence to the coast of Patagonia—Captain Byron's account of the gigantic natives confirmed, with some additional circumstances—The three ships continue their course through the Straits of Magellan—The narrative of the Patagonians concluded—A particular and minute description of the coast on each side the Straits—The places in which the ships anchored during their passage, with an account of the shoals and rocks that lie near them.

A. D. 1766. **W**HEN the present honourable Admiral Byron, then Commodore, returned from his voyage round the world, Captain Samuel Wallis, Esq. was immediately appointed to the command of the Dolphin, in order to make another circuit of the globe, but particularly with a view to discoveries in the Pacific Ocean, having the Swallow, a sloop, mounting 14 guns, appointed to accompany him, the command of which was given to Mr. Carteret, a lieutenant under Commodore Byron, and who on his return was advanced to the rank of a master and commander. His complement was one lieutenant, 22 petty officers, and 90 seamen. The Prince Frederick store-ship, was likewise put under Captain Wallis's command, whose master was lieutenant Brine.

On the 19th of June, Captain Wallis, having received his commission, went on board the Dolphin, and the same day hoisted the broad pendant, and began to enter seamen; but agreeable to his orders, he took no boys either for himself or any of his officers. The Dolphin being now fitted for her intended voyage, the articles of war, and the act of parliament were read on board. On the 26th of July, she failed down the river, and on Saturday the 16th of August, at eight o'clock, A. M. anchored in Plymouth Sound. On Tuesday the 19th, Captain Wallis received his sailing orders, with instructions respecting the Swallow Sloop, and the Prince Frederick store-ship; and this day we took on board 3000 weight of portable soup, and a bail of cork jackets. Every part of the ship was filled with stores of various kinds, even to the stowage and state room; and an extraordinary quantity of medicines being provided by the surgeon, which consisted of three large boxes, and these were put into the Captain's cabin.

On Friday the 22nd, at four o'clock, A. M. the Dolphin, (on board of which was our journalist) departed from Plymouth, in company with the Swallow and Prince Frederick; and too soon, to our mortification, we found the Swallow to be a very heavy sailer.

On Sunday the 7th of September, we had a view of the island of Porto Santo, due west, and near noon came in sight of the east end of the island of Madeira. At five we ran between this and the Deserters, and at six anchored in Madeira Road, about a mile from the shore, in 24 fathoms water, with a muddy bottom. About eight the Swallow and Prince Frederick came also to an anchor. The next morning we saluted the governor with 13 guns, and the compliment was returned with an equal number. We failed from hence on the 12th, after having taken in beef, wine, and a large quantity of onions, as sea-stores. On the 16th, when off the island of Palma, failing at the rate of eight miles an hour, the wind suddenly died away, and for two minutes the vessel had no motion, though we were at least four leagues distant from the shore; and we found the ship 5 miles to the southward of her reckoning. Saturday the 20th, we caught eight bonettas, out of a great number which surrounded the ship, and this day we saw two herons flying to the eastward. The Swallow parted from us in the night, between the 21st and 22nd, and on Tuesday the 23rd, at noon, the nearest land of the island of Bonavilla bore from S. to W. S. W. and the east-end bore at the same time west, distant two leagues. We now thought it necessary to found, and had only 15 fathoms, rocky ground; at the same time we perceived a great rippling, occasioned, as we supposed, by a reef; also breakers without us, distant about one league in the direction of S. E. We steered between the rippling and the breakers, and the Prince Frederick passed very near the last, in the S. E. but had no soundings; yet these breakers are thought to be dan-

gerous. On Wednesday the 24th, at six o'clock, A. M. the tide of May bore W. S. W. distant six leagues; and soon after our consort, the Swallow, joined company again. At ten o'clock the west end of the island of May, one of the Cape de Verd Islands, bore north, distant five miles; and at noon the south end of Jago bore S. W. by W. distant four leagues. Between these two places we found a current, setting to the southward, at the rate of 20 miles in 24 hours. At near five o'clock, P. M. we cast anchor in Port Praya, in company with the Swallow, and Prince Frederick, in eight fathoms water, upon sandy ground. During the night we had much rain and lightning. On the 25th, we obtained leave from the commanding officer at the fort to get water and other necessaries. This being the best season at this place, and the rains so great as to render it exceeding difficult to get any thing down from the country to the ships; the small-pox being also at that time epidemic; the Captain detained every man on board who had not had that contagious distemper. However, we caught abundance of fish, and procured a supply of water, and some cattle from the island. We also found large quantities of wild purflain, which was very refreshing, either raw as a salad, or boiled in our broth with pease.

On Saturday the 28th, we put to sea, and at about six o'clock, P. M. the peak of Terra del Fuego bore W. N. W. distant 12 leagues. In the night we saw plainly the burning mountain. This day Captain Wallis ordered every man to be furnished with hot water, and lime, that he might supply himself with fish; and likewise to prevent infection, commanded that no man should keep his fish longer than 24 hours; for the Captain had observed that not only stale, but even dried fish, had tainted the internal air of the ship, and made the people sickly.

On Wednesday the 1st of October, we lost the trade wind, and had variable gales. We were now in latitude 10 deg. 37 min. north. On the 3rd, we found a current run S. by E. at the rate of six fathoms an hour, and on the 7th, the ship was 19 miles southward of her reckoning. On Monday the 20th, the crews of the three ships were served with oil, all the butter and cheese being consumed; and orders were issued, that during the remainder of the voyage, they should be served with vinegar and mustard once a fortnight. On the 22nd we judged we were within 60 degrees of latitude from the sight of a prodigious number of sea-fowls, among which was a man of war bird. This day we crossed the Equinoctial Line, in longitude 23 deg. 40 min. west from London. On Friday the 24th, orders were given for serving our ship's company with brandy, and the wine was reserved for such as might be sick. On the 27th, the Prince Frederick sprang a leak, and her crew were at this time so sickly, through the fatigue of pumping, and the badness of their provisions, that Lieutenant Brine, her commander, was apprehensive not being able to keep company much longer, unless some assistance could be given him. The Captain therefore sent a carpenter and six sailors on board, to had it not in his power to supply her with better provisions. As the carpenter found he could do little towards stopping the leak, the Dolphin and Swallow completed their provisions from the store-ship, and put on board her empty oil-jars, staves and iron-hoops. On Saturday the 8th of November, we were in latitude 25 deg. 52 min. south, and in 39 deg. 38 min. west longitude from London; and on the 9th, having lost a great number of albatrosses, we founded with 15 fathoms of line, but had no ground. On the 12th, though the summer season in these climates, yet we

found the weather
recourse to our this
at eight o'clock, P.
ordinary appearing
an horizontal line
it was near a minu
a train of light fo
minated than at m
observation in latit
51 deg. 24 min. w
and, we saw few
birds; with a grea
ings continued fro
On Monday the
A. M. we descried
small islands. At
south, and in 64 d
from W. by S. to
eight o'clock, P. M.
bore S. W. by W
Penguin Island
two leagues, and o
in latitude 48 deg.
west longitude, bor
remarked this day
the vast quantity
ship. The next d
the entrance of St.
three or four leagu
to 45 fathoms. O
50 deg. 45 min. S
longitude, when P
48 leagues. On S
54 min. fourth, long
more than two
of the land. W
northernmost cape,
south and Cape Fa
latitude 50 deg. 50
by observation in la
in 68 deg. 10 min.
which time we wer
extremities of the la
Penguin Island bo
leagues. On the 1
the river St. Croix
of the land S. by
A. M. we were tw
north there is b
has on the fourth f
fathoms quite cross
ance from point to
afterwards keeping
from each cape, we
Fair weather, at sever
a distant four leagu
and had front 30 to
On Tuesday the
51 deg. 52 min.
table. At one o'cl
the shore. At four
S distant four leagu
were very near the
lay close under the
water, bottom grave
Prince Frederick c
the cape, which bor
point like Dungeness
boat, to the distan
may be easily know
This day we saw fe
made signs for us to
being the 17th, Ca
the boats belonging
rick to come on boar
our own. We
apposite the Dolp
keeping up large fir
and armed, and h
about six o'clock v

found the weather so very cold, as to be obliged to have recourse to our thick jackets. On Wednesday the 19th, at eight o'clock, P. M. we saw a meteor of a very extraordinary appearance, in the N. E. which flew off in an horizontal line to the S. W. with amazing rapidity: it was near a minute in its progress, and left behind it a train of light so strong, that the deck was not less illuminated than at noon day. On the 21st, we were by observation in latitude 37 deg. 40 min. south, and in longitude from London. On the 21st deg. 24 min. west longitude from London. On the 21st, we saw whales, seals, snipes, plovers, and other birds; with a great number of butterflies. Our soundings continued from 40 to 70 fathoms.

On Monday the 8th of December, at six o'clock, A. M. we descried land, having the appearance of many small islands. At noon in latitude 47 deg. 16 min. south, and in 64 deg. 58 min. west longitude, it bore from W. by S. to S. S. W. distant eight leagues. At eight o'clock, P. M. the Tower Rock, at Port Desire, bore S. W. by W. distant about three leagues. At nine Penguin Island bore S. W. by W. half W. distant two leagues, and on the ninth, the same island, at noon, in latitude 48 deg. 56 min. south, and in 65 deg. 6 min. west longitude, bore S. by E. distant 19 leagues. We remarked this day, that the sea appeared coloured by the vast quantity of red shrimps that surrounded the ship. The next day, at noon, Wood's Mount, near the entrance of St. Julian's, bore S. W. by W. distant three or four leagues, and our soundings were from 40 to 45 fathoms. On the 11th, we observed in latitude 49 deg. 45 min. south, and in 67 deg. 10 min. west longitude, when Penguin Island bore N. N. E. distant 11 leagues. On Saturday the 13th, in latitude 50 deg. 54 min. south, longitude 68 deg. 15 min. west, we were not more than two leagues distant from the extremities of the land. We found Cape Bachy Head, the northernmost cape, to lie in latitude 50 deg. 16 min. south, and Cape Fairweather, the southernmost cape, in latitude 50 deg. 50 min. south. On the 14th, we were by observation in latitude 50 deg. 52 min. south, and in 68 deg. 10 min. west longitude from London, at which time we were six leagues from the shore, and the extremities of the land were from N. W. to W. S. W. Penguin Island bore N. 35 deg. east, distant 68 leagues. On the 15th, at eight o'clock, the entrance of the river St. Croix bore S. W. half W. and the extremities of the land S. by E. to N. by E. At eight o'clock, A. M. we were two leagues from the land. That on the north shore is high, and appears in three capes; but on the south shore it is low and flat. We had 20 fathoms quite across the opening of the river, the distance from point to point being about seven miles; and after wards keeping at the distance of about four miles from each cape, we had from 22 to 24 fathoms. Cape Fairweather, at seven in the evening, bore S. W. half S. distant four leagues. We stood off and on all night, and had from 30 to 22 fathoms water.

On Tuesday the 16th, at noon, we observed in latitude 51 deg. 52 min. south, and in 68 deg. west longitude. At one o'clock we were about two leagues from the shore. At four, Cape Virgin Mary bore S. E. by S. distant four leagues. At eight in the evening, we were very near the Cape, and before nine anchored in a bay close under the south-side of the cape, in 10 fathoms water, bottom gravelly. Soon after the Swallow and Prince Frederick came to an anchor between us and the cape, which bore N. by W. half W. and a low sandy point like Dungeness S. by W. From the cape was a shoal, to the distance of about half a league, which may be easily known by the weeds that are upon it. This day we saw several men riding on the shore, who made signs for us to land. Accordingly the next day, being the 17th, Captain Wallis ordered the signal for the boats belonging to the Swallow and Prince Frederick to come on board, and in the mean time we hoisted out our own. We had observed the natives to remain opposite the Dolphin all night, shouting aloud, and keeping up large fires. Our boats being all manned and armed, and having with us a party of marines, about six o'clock we reached the beach, the Captain

having left orders with the master to bring the ship's side to bear upon the landing place, and to keep the guns loaded with round shot. Captain Wallis with Mr. Cumming and several officers now landed; the marines were then drawn up, and the boats were brought to a grapling near the shore. The Captain having made signs for the Indians to sit down, he distributed among them combs, buttons, knives, scissars, beads, and other toys. The women were particularly pleased by a present of some ribbons. He then intimated that he should be glad to accept some guanicoes and ostriches, in exchange for bill-hooks and hatchets, which were produced, but they were either really or designedly ignorant of his meaning. Captain Wallis measured several of those Indians; among whom the tallest was six feet seven inches; others were one and two inches shorter; but the general height was from five feet ten to six feet. They are muscular and well made, but their hands and feet very small in proportion to the rest of their bodies. They are clothed with the skins of the guanico, sewed together into pieces about six feet long, and five wide: these are wrapped round the body, and fastened by a girdle, with the hairy-side inwards. The guanico is an animal, that in size, make, and colour, resembles a deer; but it has a hump on its back, and no horns. Some of these people wore a square piece of cloth, made of the hair of the guanico, and a hole being cut to admit the head through, it reached down to the knees. They have also a kind of bulkin from the middle of the leg to the instep, which is conveyed under the heel, but the rest of the feet is bare. Their hair and coarse hair is tied back with a cotton string; and their complexion is a dark copper. Both the horses and dogs which we saw, were of a Spanish breed. The horses appeared to be about 14 hands high. Both sexes rode altride; but the men were furnished with wooden spurs. Some of these had their arms painted; the faces of some were variously marked; and others had the left eye enclosed by a painted circle of a red colour. The eye-lids of all the young women were painted black. They had each a missile weapon of a singular kind tucked into the girdle. It consisted of two round stones covered with leather, each weighing about a pound, and fastened to the two ends of a string about eight feet long. This is used as a sling, one stone being kept in the hand, and the other whirled round the head, till it is supposed to have acquired sufficient power, and then it is discharged at the object, or any mark they wish to hit. They likewise catch guanicoes and ostriches by means of this cord, which is thrown so, that the weight twists round, and hampers the legs of the intended prey. They are so expert at the management of this double-headed shot, as our Captain called it, that they would hit a mark, not bigger than a shilling, with both the stones, at the distance of 15 yards. The language of these people is quite unintelligible. They were indeed often heard to repeat the word Ga-pi ta-ne, on which they were successively addressed in Portuguese, Spanish, Dutch, and French; but they had no knowledge of either of those languages. When they shook hands with any of the crew, they always said chevow; and they were amazingly ready at learning English words, and pronouncing the sentence "Englishmen come on shore," with great facility. During our stay on shore we saw them eat some of their flesh meat raw, particularly the paunch of an ostrich, without any other preparation or cleaning than just turning it inside out, and shaking it. We observed among them several beads, such as we gave them, and two pieces of red baize, which we supposed had been left there, or in the neighbouring country, by Commodore Byron. One man among them had a large pair of such spurs as are worn in Spain, brass stirrups, and a Spanish scimeter, without a scabbard; but notwithstanding these distinctions, he did not appear to have any authority over the rest. The women had no spurs. As above 100 of the natives seemed desirous to visit the ship, Captain Wallis took eight of them into the boats. These jumped in with the joy and alacrity of children going to a fair, and having no intention

ered about. The wigwams consisted of young trees, which, being sharpened at one end, and thrust into the ground, in such a manner as to form a circle, the other ends were brought to meet, and fastened together at the top. We saw likewise many high mountains, which, though the midst of summer in this part of the world, had their summits covered with snow; but about three parts of their height they were covered with wood, and some with herbage, except where the snow was not yet melted. On Friday the 26th, at two o'clock, A. M. we weighed; and at five, being midway between Elizabeth's Island, and St. George's, we struck the ground, but the next cast had no bottom with 20 fathoms. The Prince Frederick, who was about half a league to the eastward of us, had for a considerable time not seven fathoms: the Swallow which was two or three miles to the southward had deep water, for she kept near St. George's Island. We think it is safest to run down from the north-end of Elizabeth's Island, about two or three miles from the shore, and so on all the way to Port Famine. At noon, being three miles from the north-shore, we found by observation our latitude to be 53 deg. 12 min. south, longitude 71 deg. 20 min. west, from London. About four o'clock, we anchored in Port Famine Bay, and with all the boats out, towed in the Swallow and Store-ship. On the 27th, the sick were sent on shore, where a tent was erected for their reception, as was another for the accommodation of the sail-masters, and those who landed to get wood. This day, the weather being squally, we warped the ship further into the harbour, and moored her with a cable each way in nine fathoms. Cape St. Anne now bore N. E. by E. distant one mile, and Sedger River S. half W. On Sunday the 28th, all the sails were unbent and sent on shore to be repaired; the empty casks were also landed, with the coopers to trim them, and ten men to wash and fill them. We also hauled the seine, and caught plenty of fish resembling mullets, but the flesh was very soft; and among others were smelts, some of which weighed a pound and a half, and were 20 inches long. Indeed all the time of our stay at this place, we caught fish enough to furnish one meal a day both for the sick and the healthy: we gathered also great plenty of celery, and pea-tops, which were boiled with the pease and portable soup; besides these we found fruit that resembles cranberries, and the leaves of a shrub somewhat like our thorn, which were remarkably four. When we arrived here, many of our people had the scurvy to a great degree; but by the plentiful use of vegetables, and bathing in the sea, within a fortnight there was not a scorbatic person in either of the ships. Their recovery also was greatly promoted by the land air, and by being obliged to wash their apparel, and keep their persons clean. All hands were now employed in repairing the ship and making her ready for the sea. To this end the forge was set up on shore; and in the mean time a considerable quantity of wood was cut, and put on board the store-ship; and thousands of young trees were carefully taken up with the mould about them, to be carried to Falkland's Islands, which produce no timber. The Prince Frederick received orders to deliver these to the commanding officer at Port Egmont, and to sail to that place with the first fair wind.

On Wednesday the 14th of January, the A. D. 1767. the master of the cutter, which was victualled for a week, was sent to look out for anchoring places on the north shore of the strait; and this day we got all our people and tents on board, having taken in 75 tons of water, and 12 months of provisions for ourselves, and ten months for the Swallow, from on board the store-ship. On the 17th, the master of our cutter returned with an account, that he had found anchoring places; and this day the Prince Frederick sailed for Falkland's Islands. The master reported, that between where we lay and Cape Forward, he had been on shore at four places, where was good anchorage, and plenty of wood and water close to the beach; with abundance of cranberries and wild celery: that he had also seen a great number of currant bushes full of fruit, and a

variety of beautiful shrubs in full blossom, besides great plenty of winter's bark, a grateful spice, which we have already particularly described. On Sunday the 18th, at five o'clock, A. M. we sailed; and at noon, observed in latitude 54 deg. 3 min. south; here we found the strait to be two leagues. On the 19th, we came to an anchor, half a mile from the shore, near Cape Holland, opposite a current of fresh water, that falls rapidly from the mountains. Cape Holland bore W. S. W. half W. distant two miles; Cape Forward east; and by observation our latitude was 53 deg. 38 min. south. As a more convenient anchoring place, and better adapted for procuring wood and water, had been discovered, we made sail on the 22nd, and at nine in the evening, being about two miles distant from the shore, Cape Gallant bore W. half N. distant two leagues; Cape Holland E. by N. six leagues; and Rupert's Island W. S. W. At this place the strait is not more than five miles over.

On Friday the 23rd, we came to an anchor in a bay near Cape Gallant, in 10 fathoms water, a muddy bottom. The boats being sent out to found good anchorage every where, except within two cables length S. W. of the ship, where it was coral, and deepened to 16 fathoms. In this situation the east point of Cape Gallant bore S. W. by W. one fourth W. the extreme point of the easternmost land E. by S. a point making the mouth of a river N. by W. and the white patch on Charles's Island S. W. We now examined the bay and a large lagoon. The last was the most commodious harbour we had yet seen, having five fathom at the entrance, and four to five in the middle. It is capable of receiving a great number of vessels, had three large fresh water rivers, and plenty of wood and celery. We had here a feinc spoiled, by being entangled with the wood that lies sunk at the mouth of the rivers; but though we caught not much fish, we had wild ducks in such numbers as to afford us a very seasonable relief. Near this place are very high mountains, one of which was climbed by the master of our cutter, with the hope of getting a view of the South Sea; but, being disappointed in this expectation, he erected a pyramid, and having written the ship's name, and the date of the year, he left the same, with a shilling, within the structure. On the 24th, in the morning, we examined Cordes Bay, which we found much inferior to that in which the ships lay, the entrance being rocky, and the ground within it foul. It had, it is true, a more spacious lagoon, but the mouth of it was very narrow, and barred by a shoal, whereon was not sufficient depth of water for a ship of burden to float. Here we saw an animal that resembled an ass; as swift as a deer, and had a cloven hoof. This was the first animal we had seen in this strait, except at the entrance, where we found the guanicoes, and two dogs. The circumjacent country has a dreary and forbidding aspect. The mountains on both sides are of a stupendous height; whose lower parts are covered with trees, above which a space is occupied by weathered shrubs; higher up are fragments of broken rocks and heaps of snow; and the tops are totally rude, naked, and desolate. To see their summits towering above the clouds in vast crags, that are piled upon each other, affords to a spectator the idea, that they are the ruins of nature, devoted to everlasting sterility and desolation. This day we sounded about the Royal Islands, but found no bottom; wherever we came to an opening, we found a rapid tide set through; and they cannot be approached by shipping without the most imminent danger. And here, for the information of future navigators, we should observe, that in a run through this part of the strait, they should keep the north shore close on board all the way, and not venture more than a mile from it till the Royal Islands are passed. Through the whole day the current sets easterly, and the inlraught should by all means be avoided.

On Tuesday the 27th, we weighed with all expedition, and departed from Cape Gallant Road, which lies in 53 deg. 50 min. south latitude. At noon on the 28th, the west-point bore W. N. W. half a mile distant

tant. At two o'clock, the west point bore east, distant three leagues, and York Point W. N. W. distant five leagues. At five, we opened York Road, the point bearing N. W. distant half a mile; at which time the Dolphin was taken a-back, and a strong current with a heavy squall drove us so far to leeward, that it was with great difficulty we got into Elizabeth's Bay, and anchored in 12 fathoms water, near a river. The Swallow being at anchor off the point of the bay, and very near the rock, Captain Wallis ordered out all the boats with anchors and hawsers to her assistance, and she was happily warped to windward into good anchorage. At this time York Point bore W. by N. A shoal with weeds upon it, at the distance of cable's length, W. N. W. Point Passage S. E. half E. distant half a mile; a rock near Rupert's Isle S. half E. and a rivulet on the bay N. E. by E. distant about three cables length. Having this day at sun-set seen a great smoke on the southern shore, and on Prince Rupert's Island, early in the morning of the 29th, the boats were sent on shore for water. Our people had no sooner landed, than several of the natives came off to them in three canoes; and having advanced towards the sailors, made signs of friendship, which being answered to their satisfaction, they hallooed, and our men shouted in return. When the Indians drew near they were eating the flesh of seals raw, and were covered with the skins, which stank intolerably. They had bows, arrows, and javelins, the two last of which were pointed with flint. These people were of a middling stature, the tallest of them not exceeding five feet six inches. Their complexion was of a deep copper colour. Three of them being admitted on board the Dolphin, they devoured whatever food was offered them; but like the Patagonians would only drink water: like them too, they were highly diverted with a looking-glass, in which they at first stared with astonishment; but having become a little more familiar with it, they smiled at its effect; and finding a corresponding smile from the image in the glass, they burst into immoderate fits of laughter. The Captain going on shore with them, presented some trinkets to their wives and children, and received in return some of their weapons, and pieces of mundic, of the kind found in the tin mines of Cornwall. The sails of the canoes belonging to these Indians were made of the seal skin. To kindle a fire they strike a pebble against a piece of mundic, holding under it, to catch the sparks, some moss or down, mixed with a whitish earth, which takes fire like tinder: they then take some dry grass, and putting the lighted moss into it, wave it to and fro, and in a minute it blazes. When they left us, they steered for the southern shore, where we saw many of their huts; and we remarked, that not one of them looked behind, either at us or our ship, so little impression had the curiosities they had seen made upon their minds. As this seems to be the most dreary and inhospitable country in the world, not excepting the worst parts of Sweden and Norway, so the natives seem to be the lowest and most deplorable of all human beings. Their perfect indifference to every thing they saw, which marked the disparity between our state and their own, though it may preserve them from the regret and anguish of unsatisfied desires, seems, notwithstanding, to imply a defect in their nature; for those who are satisfied with the gratifications of a brute, can have little pretension to the prerogatives of men. These Indians when they gave to the gentlemen of our ship several pieces of mundic, intimated, that this substance was found in the mountains, and Captain Wallis is of opinion, that not only mines of tin, but more valuable metals are subsisting there.

On Tuesday the 3rd of February, we weighed, and, in a sudden squall, were taken a-back, so that both ships were in the most imminent danger of being driven ashore on a reef of rocks; the wind, however, suddenly shifting, we got off without much damage. At five o'clock, P. M. we anchored in York Road, Cape Quod now bore W. half S. distant six leagues; York Point E. S. E. distant one mile; Bachelor's River N. N. W. three fourths of a mile; the entrance of Jerom's Sound

N. W. by W. and a small island, on the fourth shore, W. by S. In the evening we saw five Indian canoes come out of Bachelor's River, and go up Jerom's Sound. Having sent out the boats in the morning of the 4th, we were informed on their return, that there was good anchorage within Jerom's Sound, and all the way thither from the ship's station; as likewise at several places under the islands on the fourth shore; but the force and uncertainty of the tides, and the heavy gusts of wind that came off the high lands, rendered these situations unsafe. This day Capt. Wallis went up Bachelor's River, and found a bar at the mouth of it, which, at certain times of the tide must be dangerous. We hauled the seine, but the weeds and stumps of trees prevented our catching any fish. When ashore we saw many wigwags and several dogs, which animals ran away the moment they were noticed. We gathered mushrooms, limpets, sea-eggs, celery, and nettles in abundance. We also saw some ostriches, but they were beyond the reach of our pieces. Three miles up the river, on the west-side, between two mountains of a stupendous height, one of which has received the name of Mount Misery, is a cataract, which has a very striking appearance. It is precipitated down an elevation of above 400 yards; half way over a very steep declivity, and the other half is a perpendicular fall: the sound of which is not less awful than the sight. On Saturday the 14th, at ten o'clock, A. M. we weighed, soon after the current set the ship towards Bachelor's River: we put her in stays, and while the was coming about, which she was some time in doing, we drove over a shoal, where we had little more than sixteen feet water with rocky ground. Our danger was great, for the Dolphin drew 16 feet more inches air, and 15 feet one inch forward; but when the ship gathered way, we fortunately deepened into three fathoms; and in a very short time, we got into deep water. We continued plying to windward till four o'clock, P. M. when, perceiving we had lost ground, we returned to our last station, and again came to an anchor in York Road.

On Tuesday the 17th, at five o'clock, A. M. we set sail, but notwithstanding we had a fine breeze at west, the ship was carried by a current with great violence towards the south shore; the boats were all towing a-head, the sails unfilled, yet we drove so close to the rocks, that we were seldom farther than a ship's length from them, and the oars of the boats were frequently entangled in the weeds. In this manner we were hurried along for near an hour, in momentary expectation of being dashed to pieces. All our efforts being ineffectual, we resigned ourselves to our fate, and waited the event in a state of suspense very little short of despair, but Providence interposed for our preservation, for at length we opened St. David's Sound, when, contrary to our expectations, a current rushed out of it, and set us into mid-channel. The Swallow knew nothing of our unhappy situation, being all the time on the north shore. We now sent our boats in search of an anchoring place, and our people returned with the agreeable intelligence, that they had found a convenient one in a small bay, to which the Captain gave the name of Butler's Bay, it having been discovered by Mr. Butler, one of our mates. We ran in with the tide which set fast to the westward, and anchored in 16 fathoms water; but the Swallow cast anchor in Island Bay, about six miles distance. Butler's Bay lies to the west of Rider's, on the fourth shore of the Strait, which is here about two miles wide. The extremity of the bay from W. by N. to N. half W. are about one fourth of a mile asunder. A small rivulet bore S. half W. and Cape Quod north, at the distance of four miles. We kept this station till Friday the 20th, when we encountered a most violent storm, attended with hail and rain, which increased till the evening, the sea breaking over the fore-castle upon the quarter-deck. We made use of every expedient in our power to keep the ship steady, and as the cables did not part, we were again wonderfully preserved, which, considering the narrowness of the strait, and the smallness of the bay in which we were stationed, might in the judgment

judgment of
for had the o
with a sail, a
with any othe
been dashed
circumstance
would innee
in the eveni
gradually de
we had the fa
but our haul
to the Swall
two days befo
plicity of the
alteration ha
the steered a
the could no
Her comman
very little fe
quitted of C
belt for the fe
" That as th
her to accom
it as long as
dered her a b
tend her mot
to either of us
assistance as
remained eigh
repairing the
storm. We c
were much les
fish, not with
four to five
neighbouring
pearance; the
their heads b
on the fourth
upon them a
beca first our
large island on
almost perille
make a large
the spot. He
with Mr. Pic
scence, in o
distant region
entrance of th
of the Strait,
Terra del Fue
fact, was mor
seen: the mo
while the vai
covered with
away, or conv
were as destit
they lay.

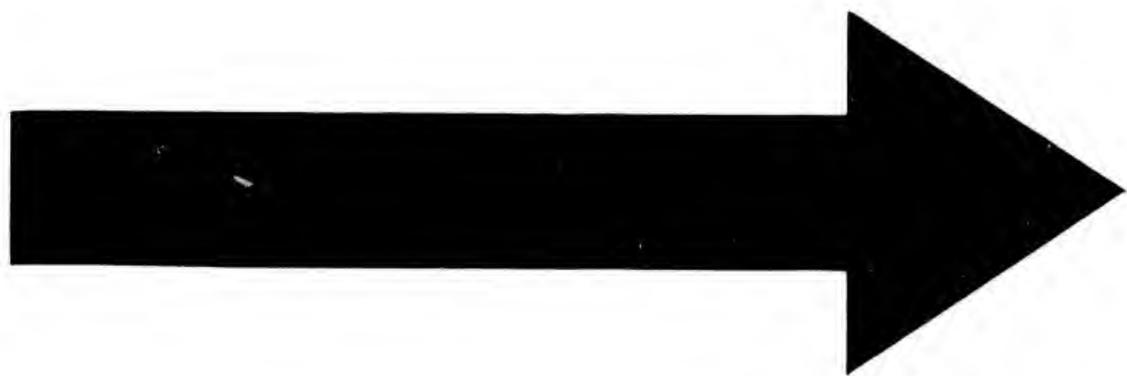
Sunday the
companion, t
north shore of
stood out of
to seek for
Notch now bo
and Cape Qu
At three o'cl
which we nam
rocky mounta
a lion. On th
the evening c
fathoms water
mity of the b
length and a
which forms
E. S. E. dist
this point and
at the bottom
N. E. by N. t
shoals run out
weeds that are
W. by S. half

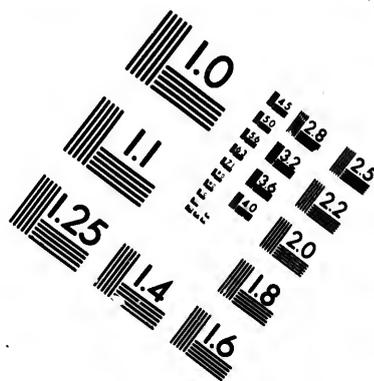
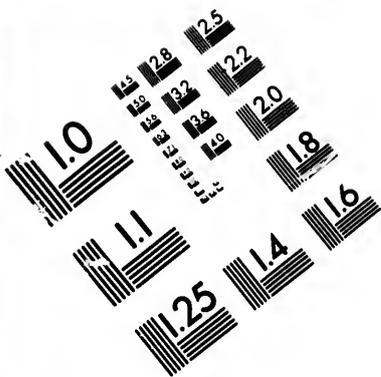
judgment of human wisdom be thought impossible; for had the cables parted, we could not have run out with a sail, and not having room to bring the ship up with any other anchor, we must without divine aid have been dashed to pieces in a few minutes; and under such circumstances it is highly probable, that every soul would immediately have perished. By eight o'clock in the evening the gale became more moderate, and gradually decreased during the night. On the 21st, we had the satisfaction to find that her cable was found, but our haulers were much robbed by the rocks. As to the Swallow, the storm had little affected her; but two days before she had very near been lost by the rapidity of the tide, in pushing through the islands. An alteration had been made in her rudder, nevertheless she steered and worked so ill, that it was apprehended she could not safely be brought to an anchor again. Her commander was of opinion, that she could be of very little service to the expedition, and therefore requested of Captain Wallis to direct what he thought best for the service. The captain returned for answer, "That as the Lords of the Admiralty had appointed her to accompany the Dolphin, she must continue to do it as long as it was possible: that as her condition rendered her a bad sailer, he would wait her time, and attend her motions; and that if any disaster should happen to either of us, the other should be ready to afford such assistance as might be in her power." In this bay we remained eight days, taking in wood and water, and repairing the little damage we had sustained in the late storm. We caught fish of various kinds, among which were mussels near six inches long; also a fine firm red fish, not unlike a gurnet, most of which were from four to five pounds weight. The mountains in this neighbourhood have a most rugged and desolate appearance; but their height could not be ascertained, their heads being lost in the clouds; and some of them, on the southern shore, were so naked, as not to have upon them a single blade of grass. Our master having been sent out in search of anchorage, landed upon a large island on the north-side of Snow Sound, and being almost perished with cold, the first thing he did was to make a large fire with some trees which he found upon the spot. He then climbed one of the rocky mountains, with Mr. Pecker-gill a midshipman, and one of the fencibles, in order to rake a view of the strait, and the distant regions that surround it. He observed the entrance of the found to be full as broad as several parts of the strait, and to grow but very little narrower on Terra del Fuego side. The country on the south, he said, was more dreary and horrid than any he had yet seen: the mountains hid their heads in the clouds; while the valleys were equally barren, being entirely covered with snow, except where it had been washed away, or converted into ice; and even these bald patches were as destitute of verdure as the rocks between which they lay.

Sunday the 1st of March, at four o'clock, A. M. our companion, the Swallow, was seen under sail, on the north shore of Cape Quod. At seven we set sail, and stood out of Butler's Bay; and at noon sent the boats to seek for anchorage on the north shore. Cape Notch now bore W. by N. half N. distant four leagues, and Cape Quod E. half N. distant three leagues. At three o'clock, P. M. we anchored in a small bay, which we named Lion's Cove, on account of a steep rocky mountain, the top whereof resembles the head of a lion. On the 2nd, we made sail again, and at five in the evening came to anchor in Good Luck Bay, in 28 fathoms water. A rocky island, at the western extremity of the bay, bore N. W. about a cable's length and a half from the Dolphin; and a low point which forms the eastern extremity of the bay, bore E. S. E. distant one mile. In the interval between this point and the ship are many shoals; and two rocks at the bottom of the bay, the largest of which bore N. E. by N. the smallest N. by E. From these rocks, shoals run out to the S. E. which may be known by the weeds that are upon them. Cape Notch bore from us W. by S. half W. distant one league. In the interme-

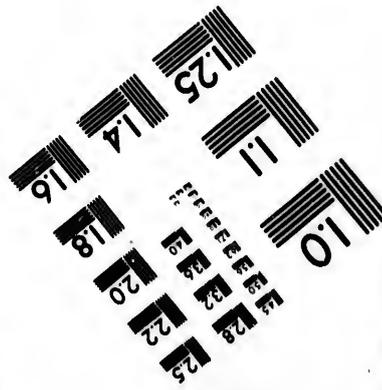
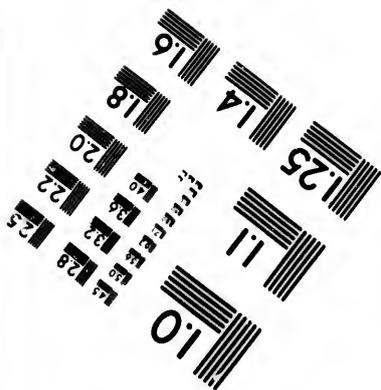
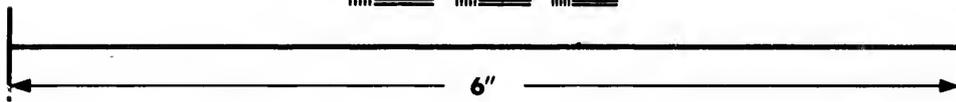
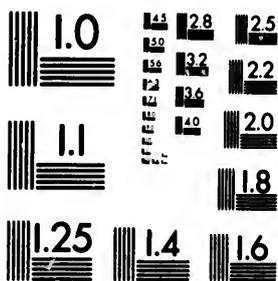
mediate space is a large lagoon, but, the wind blowing hard all the time of our laying here, we could not found it. Having moored, we sent two boats to assist the Swallow, by which she was towed into a small bay, where, as the wind was southerly, and blew fresh, she was in great danger, for the cove was exposed to S. E. winds, and was full of rocks. On the four following days we encountered such terrible weather, that we had no other prospect before us than that of immediate destruction: and our seamen were so prepossessed with the notion, that the Swallow could not ride out the storm, that they even imagined they saw some of her hands coming over the rocks towards them. The storm at length subsided, and the gale became more moderate on Saturday the 7th; we therefore at four o'clock, A. M. sent a boat to enquire after the Swallow, who in the afternoon returned with the welcome news that the ship was safe; but the fatigue of the people had been incredible, the whole crew having been upon the deck near three days and three nights. The gulls returned at midnight, though not with equal violence, but attended with hail, sleet, and snow. On the 8th, Captain Wallis ordered up, the weather being extremely cold, and their crews never dry, 11 bales of the thick woollen stuff, called sea-nought, and employed all the taylors to make them into jackets, of which every man in the Dolphin had one. Seven bales of the same cloth were also sent on board the Swallow, which made every man on board a jacket of the same kind. Three bales of finer cloth were cut up for the officers of both ships, which were very acceptable. On Sunday the 15th, seeing the Swallow under sail, we sent off our launch, whereby she was rowed into a very good harbour on the south shore, opposite to where we lay. The favourable account we received of this harbour determined us to depart from Good Luck Bay, and we thought ourselves happy when we got safe out of it. When abreast of the place where the Swallow lay at anchor, we fired several guns, as signals for her boats to assist us, and in a short time the master came on board, and piloted us to a very commodious station, where we cast anchor in 23 fathoms, bottom muddy. This bay, which we called Swallow Harbour, is sheltered from all winds, and excellent in every respect. There are two narrow channels into it, but neither of them dangerous.

On Monday the 16th, at nine o'clock, A. M. we weighed, and took the Swallow in tow. At five, P. M. being little wind, we cast her off. At nine we had fresh gales, and at midnight Cape Upright bore S. S. W. and W. On the 17th, by the advice of Captain Carteret, we bore away for Upright Bay, and he, being acquainted with the place, the Swallow was ordered to lead. At eleven o'clock we opened a large lagoon, and by means of a current, which set strongly into it, the Swallow was driven among the breakers close upon the lee-shore: she made signals of distress, and notwithstanding the weather was hazy, and the surf ran high, our boats took her in tow, but their utmost efforts to save her would have been in vain, had not a breeze from the shore happily relieved her. At noon a great swell came on, the waves ran high, and the fog was so thick, that we narrowly escaped shipwreck, in what we conjectured to be, the Bay of Islands; we therefore endeavoured to haul out, as the only chance of escaping; this we found no easy task, being obliged to tack continually, to weather some island or rock; but at four o'clock, P. M. the weather clearing up a little, we had a sight of Cape Upright, for which we immediately steered, and between five and six came safely to an anchor in the bay, in 46 fathoms, with a muddy bottom. A high bluff land on the north shore bore N. W. half N. distant five leagues, and a small island within us S. by E. half E. The Swallow, who was driven to lee-ward, notwithstanding she had two anchors a-head, was brought up about a cable's length astern of us, in 70 fathoms water. To clear her anchors, for which purpose we sent a considerable number of our hands, and to warp her into a proper berth, cost us the whole day, and was not only a work of time, but of the utmost difficulty and labour. On the 18th we sent our boats





**IMAGE EVALUATION
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic
Sciences
Corporation**

24 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4303

0
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25

26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46
47
48
49
50
51
52
53
54
55
56
57
58
59
60
61
62
63
64
65
66
67
68
69
70
71
72
73
74
75
76
77
78
79
80
81
82
83
84
85
86
87
88
89
90
91
92
93
94
95
96
97
98
99
100

boats to sound quite cross the strait, and this day we moored the ship in 78 fathoms, with the stream anchor. On the 19th, two canoes, having in them several Indians, came along-side the Dolphin. They were equally miserable and abject, with those we had before seen. A feamen gave one of them a fish, which he had just caught with a line, and it was then alive. The Indian seized it as a dog would a bone, and instantly killed it by biting it near the gills; he then began at the head, and proceeded on to the tail, champing up the bones, and devouring both the scales and the entrails. These people would drink no other liquor than water, but they eagerly tore in pieces, and swallowed down provisions of any kind, whether boiled, roasted, raw, salt, or fresh. Though the weather was very cold, their only covering was a seal-skin, and even that they put off when rowing. We observed that they all had sore eyes, occasioned probably by the smoke of their fires, and their filthy way of feeding and living made them smell as rank as a fox. They had with them some javelins, rudely pointed with bone, with which they used to strike seals, fish, and penguins. Their canoes were about 15 feet in length, three broad, and nearly the same measurement in depth. They were constructed with the bark of trees tacked together, either, with the sinews of some beast, or thongs cut out of a hide. A kind of rush was laid into the seams, and the out-side was smeared with resin or gum, which prevented the water from soaking into the bark. To the bottom and sides were sewed transversely 15 slender branches, bent into an arch; and some straight pieces were placed cross the top, from gunwale to gunwale, securely lashed at each end; but upon the whole the workmanship was very rough, nor had these people any thing among them, wherein there was the least appearance of ingenuity. The Captain presented them a hatchet or two, some beads, and a few other baubles, with which they departed, seemingly well satisfied, to the southward. During our stay here, we sent our boats as usual in search of anchoring places. Several small coves were discovered, but most of them dangerous. Twenty-two of the sailors belonging to one of the boats, staying one night on an island, about 30 Indians landed, ran immediately to the boat, and began to make off with every thing they could carry away; the sailors discovered what they were doing, and had just time to prevent their depredations. When opposed, they went to their canoes, and armed themselves with long poles and pointed javelins. They stood in a threatening attitude, and our people on the defensive; but the latter parting with a few trifles to them, they became friends, and peace and harmony were again restored. From this time to the 30th, we had hard gales, and heavy seas, accompanied with hail, lightning, and rain. Nevertheless, the men were sent frequently ashore for exercise, which contributed not a little to their health, and by them we had almost a constant supply of muscles and vegetables. On Monday the 30th, we improved the first interval of moderate weather, in drying the sails, and airing the spare ones, which last we found much injured by the rats. We also repaired the fire-place of the Swallow in the same manner as we had done our own, and set up a back with lime made of burnt shells. This day we saw several canoes full of Indians, on the east-side of the bay, and the next morning several came on board, and proved to be the same people which the boat's crew had seen on shore.

On the 1st of April, several other Indians came off to the ship, and brought with them several of the birds called race horses, which some of our company purchased for a few trifles. They behaved very peaceably, and the Captain presented them with several hatchets, and dismissed them with a few toys as usual. On the 2nd, eight Indians brought six of their children on board, whom the Captain gratified with bracelets and necklaces. These people were exceedingly tender in the treatment of their children; and a circumstance happened which proves that they are not less delicate in other respects. A boat was ordered on shore to get wood and water; at which time some of the Indians

were on board, and others in their canoes along-side the ship: the latter eyed the boat attentively; and, on her putting off, called aloud to their companions, who, without speaking, instantly handed down the children, and jumped into the canoes, which hurried after the boat, while the poor Indians cried in a most distressful tone. When our boat was near land, some women were seen among the rocks, to whom the Indians called aloud, and they all ran away; but the boat's crew having remarked their jealous fears, lay on their oars, to convince them that no injury was intended. The Indians landed, drew their canoes on shore, and hastily followed the objects of their affections. This day the master of the Swallow, who had been sent out to seek for anchoring places, returned with an account, that he had found three on the north shore, most of which were very good; one about four miles to the eastward of Cape Providence, another under the east-side of Cape Tamar, and a third about four miles to the eastward of it; but it must be observed, that the ground under Cape Providence is rocky. Our men at this time began to be troubled with fluxes, on which account, at the request of our surgeon, it was ordered, that no more muscles (which had been found continually in abundance) should be brought on board. On Friday the 10th, we made sail in company with the Swallow. At noon, Cape Providence bore N. N. W. distant five miles. At four P. M. Cape Tamar bore N. W. by W. half W. distant three leagues, and Cape Pillar W. distant ten leagues. Cape Upright bore E. S. E. half S. distant three leagues. On the 11th, having steered W. half N. all night, we found, at six o'clock, A. M. that we had run 38 miles by the log. At this time Cape Pillar bearing S. W. distant half a mile, the Swallow was about three miles astern of us, and being but little wind, we were obliged to crowd all the sail we could, to get without the strait's mouth. The Captain, at eleven o'clock, would have shortened sail for our comfort, but it was not in our power, for it was absolutely necessary for us to carry sail, in order to clear the isles of Direction. Soon after we lost sight of the Swallow, and saw her not again during the remainder of our voyage. At noon our latitude by observation was 52 deg. 38 min. and our longitude by computation 76 deg. west from London. The islands of Direction now bore north 21 west, distant three leagues. St. Paul's Cupola, and Cape Victory in one, north, distant seven leagues, and Cape Pillar east, distant six leagues. Happy did we now think ourselves in having cleared the Straits of Magellan, a dreary and inhospitable region, in which we had contended with innumerable difficulties, and escaped most imminent dangers in a passage of almost four months, namely, from December the 17th, 1766, to the 11th of April, 1767.

Our Journalists now proceeds to a description of the places in which the ships anchored, during their passage through the Straits from whence we have extracted such particulars, as may be of use to future navigators, furnish real improvement to those of our subscribers who belong to his majesty's navy, and afford an agreeable entertainment to our various and numerous classes of readers.

(1.) Cape Virgin Mary. This is a steep white cliff, which somewhat resembles the South Foreland. By observation and our reckoning it lies in latitude 51 deg. 24 min. south, and is 68 deg. 22 min. west longitude from London. Under this cape, when the wind is westerly, is a good harbour, but we saw no appearance either of wood or water. About a mile from the shore, you may anchor in ten fathom water, with coarse sandy ground. (2.) Possession Bay. The point of this lies in latitude 52 deg. 23 min. south, and in 68 deg. 57 min. west longitude. Here the soundings are very irregular, but the ground is throughout a fine soft mud and clay. The landing appeared to be good, but we could see no signs of either wood or water. It is necessary, in sailing into this bay, to give the point a good berth, there being a reef that runs about a mile right off it. (3.) Port Famine. This is an excellent bay, capacious enough for many ships to moor therein with the utmost safety. Wood and water are to be procured with ease,

geese, ducks, teal, &c. are in great abundance. It is situated in latitude 51 deg. 23 min. south, and 71 deg. 23 min. west longitude from London, in nine fathom, having brought by E. and the beautiful river Sedg. given a particular description in *modore Byron's voyage*) S. half the most eligible situation, though ground. In the year 1581, the S. here, which they named Philipps colony of 400 persons. Seventy were starved, and of the remainder search of the river Plata, and more as no tidings were ever heard of celebrated navigator Sir William this place in 1597; he found the of those unfortunate adventurers and brought him to England. First, Sir William named the bay, Cape Holland Bay. This lies in min. and in 72 deg. 34 min. west a fine rivulet, and close under the navigable for boats many miles; plenty of fire wood. We caught found plenty of muscles and lim country produces plenty of cranberries. We killed some geese, ducks, teal, the birds are not numerous. This falling into this bay, and in every ascending ground. (5.) Cape G. situated in 53 deg. 50 min. south 75 min. west longitude. The landing very irregular; and the best anchorage, where we found from 6 to 10 abundance of wood, vegetables, weening from two rivers. In this entered with great safety, there where a fleet of ships may moor in lagoon abounds with wild fowl, and about it, wild celery, muscles, and (6.) Elizabeth Bay. Its latitude south, and its longitude 73 deg. 24 cent quantities of wood may be plenty of ships, and they will find good water. We gathered a little celery here, but met with neither fish nor storage: is at Passage Point, at bearing S. E. and the river N. E. cables length: in this station, a fish known by the weeds, bears W. cable's length: the ground is coarse the entrance of this bay are two small above water. The most dangerous the east point of the bay, but avoided, by keeping at the distance cables length from the road. (7.) lies in latitude 53 deg. 39 min. account, 73 deg. 52 min. west longitude in all parts of this place is very found celery, cranberries muscles, and some fish, but not sufficient to company with a single meal. At the river's River is good watering, all round the bay. From the W runs off about a cable's length, which may easily be avoided. To anchor bay, bring York Point E. S. E.

The Dolphin proceeds on her voyage to
—Whiston Island—Queen Charlotte
King George the Third's; called by
—The customs, manners, &c. of
Particularly, a very circumstantial
No. 31.

others in their canoes along-side the boat attentively; and, on aloud to their companions, who, instantly handed down the children, canoes, which hurried after the Indians cried in a most distressful way as near land, some women rocks, to whom the Indians called away; but the boat's crew having fears, lay on their ears, to contrary was intended. The Indians on shore, and hastily followed the boat. This day the matter of being sent out to seek for anchorage, which he had found, most of which were very good; the eastward of Cape Providence, the eastward of Cape Providence, the eastward of it; but it must be round under Cape Providence in this time began to be troubled with wind, at the request of our surgeon, to more muscles (which had been abundance) should be brought on board, we made sail in company with the boat. At noon, Cape Providence bore N. E. distant three leagues. At four P. M. Cape Tamar bore N. W. distant three leagues, and Cape Upright bore N. E. distant three leagues. On the 11th, half N. all night, we found, at that we had run 38 miles by the log. The wind bearing S. W. distant half a league, about three miles after of us, we were obliged to crowd all sail, without the strait's mouth. At ten o'clock, would have shortened sail, but it was not in our power, for it was necessary for us to carry sail, in order to get into the strait. Soon after we lost sight of the strait, her not again during the remainder of our latitude by observation, and our longitude by computation. The islands of Direction west, distant three leagues. St. George's Bay, distant six leagues. Cape Victory in one, north, distant six leagues. The Pillar east, distant six leagues. We think ourselves in having cleared a narrow, a dreary and inhospitable reach, and contented with innumerable dangers, and most imminent dangers in a month, namely, from December 11th of April, 1767.

The Dolphin proceeds on her voyage from the strait to the westward. Several islands discovered in the South Sea, namely—Whitson Island—Queen Charlotte's—Egmont—Gloucester—Cumberland—Prince William Henry's—Osnaburg—King George the Third's; called by the natives Otabeite, with a particular, full, and complete description of those islands—The customs, manners, &c. of the natives—The several incidents which happened on board the ship and ashore—Particularly, a very circumstantial account of the inhabitants of Otabeite—Their arts, trade, domestic life, and character.

geese, ducks, teal, &c. are in great plenty, and fish in abundance. It is situated in latitude 53 deg. 42 min. south, and 71 deg. 23 min. west longitude. We moored in nine fathoms, having brought Cape St. Anne N. E. by E. and the beautiful river Sedger, (of which we have given a particular description in the history of Commodore Byron's voyage) S. half W. which perhaps is the most eligible situation, though the whole bay is good ground. In the year 1581, the Spaniards built a town here, which they named Philipville, and left in it a colony of 400 persons. Seventy-six of this number were starved, and of the remainder, 23 proceeded in search of the river Plata, and most probably perished, as no tidings were ever heard of them. When our celebrated navigator Sir William Cavendish arrived at this place in 1587, he found the only one that remained of those unfortunate adventurers, named Hernando, and brought him to England. From their melancholy fate, Sir William named the bay, Port Famine. (4.) Cape Holland Bay. This lies in latitude 53 deg. 57 min. and in 72 deg. 34 min. west longitude. Here is a fine rivulet, and close under the cape a large river, navigable for boats many miles; and the shore affords plenty of fire wood. We caught very little fish, but found plenty of muscles and limpets. The adjacent country produces plenty of cranberries and wild celery. We killed some geese, ducks, teal, and race-horses, yet the birds are not numerous. There is no danger in sailing into this bay, and in every part thereof is good anchoring ground. (5.) Cape Gallant Bay. This is situated in 53 deg. 50 min. south latitude, and 73 deg. 9 min. west longitude. The landing is good; the tide very irregular; and the best anchoring is on the east side, where we found from 6 to 10 fathoms. Here are abundance of wood, vegetables, and fish, with good watering from two rivers. In this bay, which may be entered with great safety, there is a spacious lagoon, where a fleet of ships may moor in perfect security. The lagoon abounds with wild fowl, and we found in, and about it, wild celery, muscles, and limpets in plenty. (6.) Elizabeth Bay. Its latitude is 53 deg. 43 min. south, and its longitude 73 deg. 24 min. west. Sufficient quantities of wood may be procured here for the use of ships, and they will find good watering at a small river. We gathered a little celery and a few cranberries, but met with neither fish nor fowl. The best anchorage is at Passage Point, at half a mile distance, bearing S. E. and the river N. E. by E. distant three cables length; in this station, a shoal, which may be known by the weeds, bears W. N. W. distant one cable's length; the ground is coarse sand and shells. At the entrance of this bay are two small reefs, that appear above water. The most dangerous of the two is at the east point of the bay, but this may easily be avoided, by keeping at the distance of about two cables length from the reef. (7.) York Road. This lies in latitude 53 deg. 39 min. south, and, by our account, 73 deg. 52 min. west longitude. The landing in all parts of this place is very good; and we found celery, cranberries, muscles, limpets, wild fowl, and some fish, but not sufficient to supply our ships company with a single meal. About a mile up Bachelor's River is good watering, and plenty of wood all round the bay. From the Western Point a reef runs off about a cable's length, which, when known, may easily be avoided. To anchor with safety in this bay, bring York Point E. S. E. Bachelor's River

N. by W. half W. The reef N. W. half W. and St. Jerom's Sound W. N. W. at the distance of half a mile from the shore. The current here frequently sets in three different directions; the water rises and falls about eight feet; but the tide is irregular. (8.) Butler's Bay. This is situated in latitude 53 deg. 37 min. south, and in 74 deg. 9 min. west longitude. It is not only small, but entirely encircled with rocks, on which account we would caution every navigator against anchoring at this place, if he can possibly avoid it. Here are some rock fish, and a few wild fowl, but celery and cranberries are very scarce. (9.) Lion's Cove. The same may be said of this as we have observed of the preceding bay; but though the water up a small creek is good, here is no wood. The latitude is 53 deg. 26 min. south; longitude, by our account, 74 deg. 25 min. west. (10.) Good Luck Bay. This is situated in latitude 53 deg. 23 min. and in 74 deg. 33 min. west longitude. Like several others, it is small, and the rocks with which it is surrounded, render it very difficult of access. We procured here a sufficient quantity of fresh water, but very little wood. Not any kinds of refreshments are to be expected at this place; indeed we caught only a few rock fish with hook and line. The ground is very coarse, and the cable of our best lower anchor was so much rubbed, that we were obliged to condemn it, and bend a new one. Circumstances may arise under which it may be thought good luck to get into this bay, but we thought it very good luck when we got out of it. (11.) Swallow Bay. This lies in latitude 53 deg. 29 min. south, and in 74 deg. 35 min. west longitude. The entrance is narrow and rocky, but when once entered, it is very safe, being sheltered from all winds. The rocks, by keeping a good lookout, may be easily avoided. As to the mountains that surround it they have a most horrid appearance, and seem to be deserted by every thing that has life; and we found no supply of provisions, except a few rock fish and muscles. The landing is very good, and the tide rises and falls between four and five feet. (12.) Upright Bay. This is in latitude 53 deg. 8 min. south, longitude 75 deg. 35 min. west. The entrance is very safe, and the water excellent. A sufficiency of wood may be procured for stock, but provisions are rather scarce. The landing is not good, the tide very irregular; and the water rises and falls above five feet. Besides these 12 bays, there are three others, a little beyond Cape Shut-up, which we named River Bay, Lodging Bay, and Wallis's Bay, the last of which is the best. Also between Elizabeth Bay and York Road lies Muscle Bay, wherein is exceeding good anchorage with a westerly wind. The ground of Chance Bay is very rocky, and therefore to be avoided. Not far from Cape Quod, to the eastward, lies Island Bay, which is by no means an eligible situation for shipping. There is likewise a bay with good anchorage, opposite to York Road, and another to the eastward of Cape Cross tide, but this latter one will hold only a single ship. Between Cape Cross and St. David's Head lies St. David's Sound, on the south-side of which we found a bank of coarse sand and shells, with a depth of water from 19 to 30 fathoms, where a ship might anchor in case of necessity; and the master of the Swallow found a very good final bay a little to the eastward of St. David's Head.

C H A P. II.

The Dolphin proceeds on her voyage from the strait to the westward. Several islands discovered in the South Sea, namely—Whitson Island—Queen Charlotte's—Egmont—Gloucester—Cumberland—Prince William Henry's—Osnaburg—King George the Third's; called by the natives Otabeite, with a particular, full, and complete description of those islands—The customs, manners, &c. of the natives—The several incidents which happened on board the ship and ashore—Particularly, a very circumstantial account of the inhabitants of Otabeite—Their arts, trade, domestic life, and character.

An expedition to discover the inland part of the country—And a variety of incidents and transactions, till we quitted the island to continue our voyage.

ON Sunday the 12th of April 1767, after having cleared the strait, we held on our course to the westward. Here it may be proper to observe, that, as all the hard gales by which we suffered, blew from the westward, we think it advisable to stand about 100 leagues and more to the westward, after sailing out of the Strait of Magellan, that the ship may not be endangered on a lee-shore, which at present is wholly unknown. As we continued our course a number of sheerwaters, pintadoes, gannets, and other birds, flew about the ship; the upper works of which being open, and the cloaths and bedding continually wet, the sailors, in a few days were attacked with fevers; and having a continuation of strong gales, hazy weather, and heavy seas, we were frequently brought under our courses. On Wednesday the 22nd, we observed in latitude 42 deg. 24 min. south, and in 95. 46 min. west longitude; and on Monday the 27th at noon, we found our latitude to be 36 deg. 54 min. south, and our longitude, by account, 100 deg. west from London. This day being fair, and the weather moderate, the sick were brought on deck, to whom were given salap, and portable soup, in which wheat had been boiled. The violent gales returned, so that the beds were again wet through, and it was feared that the ship would lose her masts; we therefore began to think of altering our course, in hope of better weather; and the rather, as the number of our sick increased so fast, that there was danger of soon wanting hands to navigate the vessel. On Monday the 4th of May, by observation, we found ourselves in latitude 28 deg. 20 min. south; and in 96 deg. 21 min. west longitude. On the 8th, we saw several sheerwaters and sea-swallows; and on Tuesday the 12th, we observed the same kinds of birds, and some porpoises about the ship. On the 14th, we saw the appearance of what we imagined to be high land, towards which a flock of brown birds were observed to fly; we therefore steered all night for 'this supposed land; but at day-break could see no signs of it. As the weather now became moderate, we found our people recovered very fast, and the carpenters were busied in caulking the upper works of the ship, and repairing the boats. On the 15th, our latitude was 24 deg. 50 min. south, and our longitude 106 deg. west. On Monday the 18th, a sheep, by the Captain's order, was distributed among our people who were sick and recovering. On Thursday the 21st we saw a number of flying fish; and on the 22nd some bonettas, dolphins, and flying-fish. About this time, such of the seamen on board as had been recovering from colds and fevers, began to be attacked by the scurvy, upon which, at the surgeon's representation, wine was served to them; wort was also made from malt for their use; and each of the crew had half a pint of pickled cabbage every day, notwithstanding which the men began to look very sickly, and to fall a prey to the scurvy very fast; to repel which they had wine served instead of spirits, with plenty of sweet wort and salop: portable soup was boiled in their peas and oatmeal; their births and cloaths were kept constantly clean; the hammocks were every day brought upon deck at eight o'clock in the morning, and carried down at four in the afternoon; some or other of the beds and hammocks were washed daily: the ship's water was rendered wholesome by ventilation, and every part between decks was cleansed with vinegar. This day our latitude was 20 deg. 18 min. south, and 111 deg. west longitude. On Tuesday the 26th, we saw two grampusses; and on the 27th, a variety of birds, one of which was taken for a land bird, and resembled a swallow. On the 31st, we found by observation our latitude to be 29 deg. 38 min. south, longitude 127 deg. 45 min. west.

On Monday the 1st of June, we saw several men of war birds, and on the third some gannets; and, the weather being at that time very various, we conceived hopes that we drew near to land. On the 4th a turtle swam

close by the ship; and the next day a great variety of birds were seen. On Saturday the 6th, the long wished-for land became visible from the mast-head, the man crying out, "Land in the north-west." This in the course of the day proved to be a low island, distant about six leagues. When within five miles of this island, we discovered a second to the W. N. W. The first lieutenant being at this time very ill, Mr. Furneaux, the second lieutenant was sent with two boats to the first island, the crews of each being well provided with arms. When the boats came near the island, two canoes were observed to put off to the adjacent one; and no inhabitants were seen to remain where our party landed. Here several cocoa-nuts, and a large quantity of scurvy-grafs were obtained, which proved a valuable acquisition to the sick, and a grateful refreshment to those in health. They returned in the evening to the ship, bringing with them some fish-hooks, which the islanders had formed of oyster-shells. In this excursion they discovered three huts, supported on posts, and open all round, but thatched with cocoa-nut and palm leaves. As no anchorage could be found, and the whole island was encompassed with rocks and breakers, Captain Wallis resolved to steer for the other island, giving the name of Whitsunday to this, because it was discovered on Whitsunday's Eve. Having approached the other island, Mr. Furneaux was again sent off with the boats, manned and armed. At this time about 50 of the natives were seen running about with fire-brands in their hands. Mr. Furneaux was instructed to steer to that part of the shore, where the natives had been seen, to avoid giving offence. When Mr. Furneaux drew near with the boats to the shore, the natives put themselves in a posture of defence with their pikes; but the lieutenant making signs of amity, and exposing to view a few trinkets, some of the Indians walked into the water to whom it was hinted that some cocoa-nuts and water would be acceptable, which was no sooner understood, than they ventured with a small quantity of each to the boats; and received nails and other trifles in exchange.

While bartering with them, one of the Indians stole a silk handkerchief with its contents, but the thief could by no means be discovered.

On Monday the 8th, Mr. Furneaux was again dispatched with the boats, and received orders from Captain Wallis to land, if he could do it without offending the natives. As this party drew near to the shore, they observed seven large canoes, each with two masts, lying ready for the Indians to embark in them. These having made signs to the crew to proceed higher up, they complied, and immediately the Indians embarked on board the seven large canoes and quitted the spot, being joined by two canoes at another part of the island. These latter the Indians steered in a direction of W. S. W. They were divided, two being brought along-side of each other, and fastened together, at the distance of about three feet asunder, by cross beams, passing from the larboard gunwale of one to the starboard gunwale of the other, in the middle and near each end. They appeared to be 30 feet in length, four in breadth, and three in depth. The people had long black hair hanging over their shoulders, of a dark complexion, of middle size, and were dressed in a kind of matting made fast round the middle. The women are beautiful, and the men justly proportioned. In the afternoon the second lieutenant being again sent on shore, the Captain commanded him to take possession of the island in the king's name, and to call it Queen Charlotte's Island. The boats returned loaded with cocoa-nuts and scurvy-grafs, after having found two wells of excellent water. Provisions for a week were now allotted for a mate and 20 men, who were left on shore to fill water; the sick were landed for the benefit of the air; and a number of hands were appointed to climb the cocoa trees and gather the nuts, which in our situation

and irascibility, till we quitted the
 the next day a great variety of
 Saturday the 6th, the long wished-
 from the mast-head, the man
 the north-west." This in the
 to be a low island, distant about
 within five miles of this island, we
 the W. N. W. The first lieu-
 very ill, Mr. Furneaux, the fe-
 sent with two boats to the first
 ch being well provided with arms,
 near the island, two canoes were
 the adjacent one; and no inhabi-
 remain where our party landed,
 and a large quantity of fcurry-
 which proved a valuable acquisition
 for refreshment to those in health,
 evening to the ship, bringing with
 which the islanders had formed
 is excursion they discovered three
 posts, and open all round, but
 nut and palm leaves. As no an-
 el, and the whole island was en-
 and breakers, Captain Wallis re-
 other island, giving the name of
 s, because it was discovered on
 having approached the other island,
 aia sent off with the boats, man-
 this time about 50 of the natives
 ut with fire-brands in their hands,
 instructed to steer to that part of
 natives had been seen, to avoid
 n Mr. Furneaux drew near with
 the natives put themselves in a
 ch their pikes; but the lieutenant
 sy, and exposing to view a few
 e Indians walked into the water
 d that some cocoa-nuts and water
 which was no sooner understood,
 th a small quantity of each to the
 nails and other trifles in exchange.
 h them, one of the Indians stole a
 its contents, but the thief could
 ured.

tion were very desirable. The water was brought on board on the 10th, but the cocoa-nuts and the vegetables, which the cutter was bringing off, were lost by the rolling of the waves; that almost filled her with water. Afterwards we made an island where we found several tools, including adzes, awls, and chisels, which were formed of shells and stones. The dead bodies were not buried, but left under a kind of canopy to decay above ground. This day the ship sailed again, after taking possession of the islands for the king; in testimony of which we left a flag flying, and carved his majesty's name on a piece of wood, and on the bark of several trees. We left shillings, sixpences, halfpence, bottles, nails, hatchets, and other things for the use of the natives. It was remarkable, that on this island we found the very people who had fled from Queen Charlotte's Island, with several others, in the whole near 100. It lies in 19 deg. 20 min. south latitude; and 138 deg. 30 min. west longitude, and received the name of Egmont Island. On Thursday the 11th, we observed about 16 persons on an island which was called Gloucester island; but as it was surrounded with rocks and breakers, we did not attempt to land. This day we likewise discovered another, which was called Cumberland Island; and, on the day following, a third, which received the name of Prince William Henry's Island. On Wednesday the 17th, we again discovered land, and at ten at night saw a light, which convinced us that it was inhabited, and remarked that there were plenty of cocoa-trees, a certain proof of there being no want of water. Mr. Furneaux was sent on shore the day following, with instructions to exchange some toys for such things as the island produced. He saw a great number of the people, but could find no place where the ship might anchor. Some of the natives, who had white sticks in their hands, appeared to have an antiquity over the rest. While the lieutenant was trafficking with them, an Indian diving into the water, seized the grappling of the boat, while his companions on shore had hold of the rope by which she was fastened, and attempted to draw her into the surf, but their endeavours were frustrated by the firing of a musquet, on which they all let go their hold. These Indians were dressed in a kind of cloth, a piece of which was brought to the ship. It was concluded from the number of the people seen, and their having some large double canoes on the shore, that there were larger islands at no great distance: the Captain, therefore, having named this place Onaburgh Island, made sail, and soon discovering high-land, came to an anchor, because the weather was very foggy. The next morning early we saw land, distant four or five leagues: but, after having sailed towards it some time, thought it prudent again to anchor, on account of the thickness of the fog; but it no sooner cleared away, than we found the ship encompassed by a number of canoes, in which were many hundreds of people. Having approached the ship, they beheld it with wonder, and talked with great earnestness. Some baubles were now shewn them, and signs were made for them to come on board, on which they rowed the canoes toward each other, and a general consultation took place; at the conclusion of which they all surrounded the ship with an appearance of friendship, and one of them delivered an oration, at the conclusion of which he threw into the sea the branch of a plantain-tree, which he had held in his hand. This being done, a young Indian of more apparent courage than the rest, ventured on board the ship. The Captain would have given him some baubles, but he refused the acceptance of them till those in the canoes came along-side, and, having held a consultation, threw on board several branches of the plantain-tree. Others now ventured on board; but it was remarked, that they all got into the ship at some improper part, not one of them, even by accident, finding the right place of ascent. A goat belonging to the ship, having run his horns against the back of one of the Indians, he looked round with surprise, and seeing the animal ready to renew the attack he sprang over the ship's side, and was instantly followed

by all his countrymen. Their terror, however, soon subsided, and they returned to the ship; and the sheep, hogs and poultry being shewn them, they intimated that they possessed the two latter species. The Captain then gave them nails and other trifles, and made signs that he wanted hogs, fowls, and fruit; but they could not comprehend him. They were detected in several attempts to take away any thing they could lay hold of; but one of them at length jumped overboard with a laced hat which he had snatched from one of the officers. The interior parts of the island abound in hills, clothed with timber-trees, above them are high peaks, from which large rivers descend to the sea; the houses, when seen at a distance resemble bairns, having no shelter but a roof; the land toward the sea is level, and produces the cocoa-nut, with a variety of other fruits; and the face of the whole country is picturesque beyond description. We now sailed along the shore, while the canoes, which could not keep pace with us, made towards the land. In the afternoon the ship brought to, and the boats being sent to found a bay that promised good anchorage, the Indian canoes stocked round them. The Captain, apprehensive that their designs were hostile, made a signal for the boats to return to the ship, and fired a gun over the heads of the Indians. Though they were frightened at the report; they attempted to prevent the return of the cutter; but she easily out-tailed them. This being observed by some canoes in a different station, they intercepted her, and wounded some of her people with stones, which occasioned the firing of a musquet, and some shot were lodged in the shoulder of the man who began the attack; which the Indians observing, they all made off with the utmost precipitation. The boats having reached the ship, preparations were made for sailing, but a large canoe making towards her at a great rate, it was resolved to wait the event of her arrival; on which an Indian, making a speech, threw a plantain branch on board, and the Captain returned the compliment of peace, by giving them a branch, which had been left on board by the other Indians: some toys being likewise given them, they departed very well satisfied. We now sailed, and the next morning were off a peak of land which was almost covered with the natives and their houses. On the 21st the ship anchored, and several canoes came along side of her, bringing a large quantity of fruit, with fowls and hogs, for which they received nails and toys in exchange. The boats having been sent to found along the coast, were followed by large double canoes, three of which ran at the cutter, staved in her quarter, and otherwise damaged her, the Indians at the same time, armed with clubs, endeavouring to board her; the crew now fired, and wounded one man dangerously, and killing another, they both fell into the sea, whether their companions dived after them, and got them into the canoe. They now tried if they could stand or sit, but as one was quite dead they laid him at the bottom of the canoe, and the wounded man was supported in a sitting posture. The ship's boats kept on their way, while some of the canoes went on shore, and others returned to the ship to renew their merchandise. While the boats continued out in several soundings, the natives swam off to them with water and fruit. The women were particularly urgent for the sailors to land, and putting off all their cloaths, gave hints, of the most indelicate nature, how acceptable their company would be. The boats being sent on shore with some small casks to get water, the Indians filled two of them, and kept all the rest for their trouble. When the boats came off the shore was crowded with thousands of men, women, and children. During this time several canoes remained along-side the ship, but the Captain would not permit a single Indian to go on board, as there was no guarding against their artful dispositions. On Monday the 22nd, the natives brought hogs, poultry, and fruit to the ship, which they bartered for knives and other things, so that the whole crew was supplied with

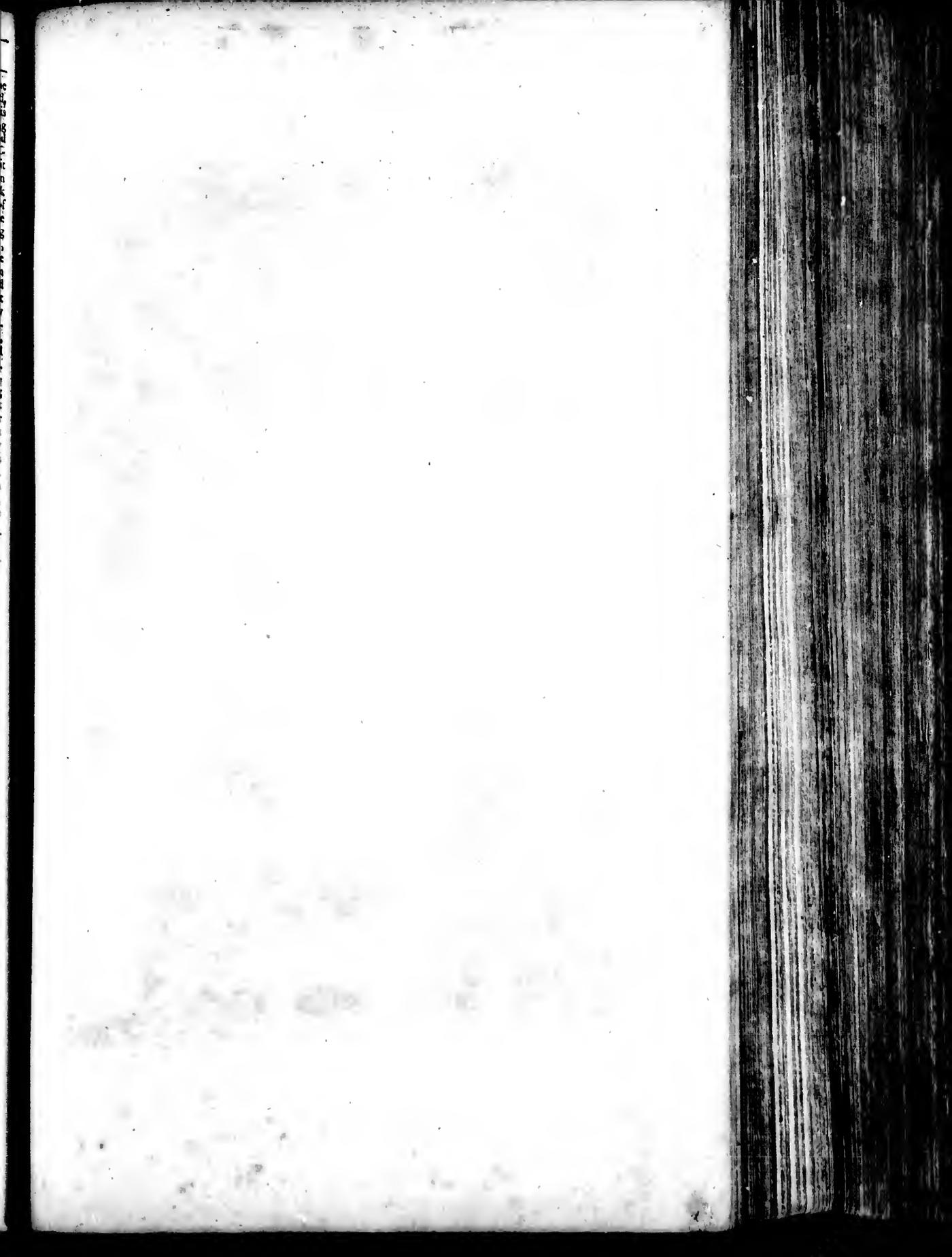
with meat for two days, by means of this traffic. The boats having been this day sent for water, every inducement was used by the inhabitants to persuade them to land, and the behaviour of the women was still more lascivious than before. Having procured a small quantity of water, the boats put off: on which the women shouted aloud, pelted them with apples and bananas, and shewed every mark of contempt and detestation. On the 23rd, we made sail, with intention to anchor off the watering-place, but, the man at the mast-head discovering a bay a few miles to the leeward, we immediately stood for it. The boats, which were a-head, making a signal for an anchorage, we prepared to bring to; but when the ship had almost reached the place, she suddenly struck, and her head remained immovable, fixed on a coral rock; in which situation she remained near an hour, when she was happily relieved by a breeze from the shore. During the whole time that she was in danger of being wrecked, she was encompassed by hundreds of Indians in their canoes; but not one of them attempted to board her. The Dolphin was now piloted round a reef, into an harbour, where she was moored. The master was then sent to sound the bay, and found safe anchorage in every part of it. In the mean time some small canoes brought provisions on board; but as the shore was crowded with large canoes, filled with men, the Captain loaded and primed his guns, supplied his boats with musqueteers, and kept a number of men under arms.

On Wednesday the 24th, the ship sailed up the harbour, and many canoes followed us, bringing provisions, which were exchanged for nails, knives, &c. A number of very large canoes advanced in the evening, laden with stones, on which the Captain ordered the strictest watch to be kept. At length some canoes came off, which had on board a number of women, who being brought almost under the ship, began to practice those arts of indelicacy already mentioned. During this singular exhibition the large canoes came round the ship, some of the Indians playing on a kind of a flute, others singing, and the rest blowing a sort of shells. Soon after a large canoe advanced, in which was an awning; and on the top of it sat one of the natives, holding some yellow and red feathers in his hands. The Captain, having consented to his coming along-side, he delivered the feathers, and while a present was preparing for him, he put back from the ship, and threw the branch of a cocoa-tree in the air. This was, doubtless, the signal for an onset, for there was an instant shout from all the canoes, which, approaching the ship, poured volleys of stones into every part of her. On this two guns, loaded with small shot, were fired, and the people on guard discharged their musquets. The number of Indians round the ship were full 2000, and though they were at first disconcerted, they soon recovered their spirits, and renewed the attack. Thousands of the Indians were now observed on shore, embarking as fast as the canoes could bring them off: orders were therefore given to firing the cannon, some of which were brought to bear upon the shore. This firing put a stop to all hostilities on the part of the Indians, for a small time; but the scattered canoes soon got together again, and having hoisted white streamers, advanced, and threw stones of two pound weight from slings, by which a number of the seamen were wounded. At this time several canoes approached the bow of the ship, from whence no shot had been yet discharged. In one of these was an Indian, who appeared to have an authority over the rest, a gun was therefore levelled at his canoe, the shot of which split it in two pieces. This put an end to the contest, the canoes rowed off with the utmost speed, and the people on shore ran and concealed themselves behind the hills.

After this skirmish we sailed for our intended anchoring place, and moored the ship within a little distance of a fine river. Some of our people who had been sent to survey the shore, returned the next morning with an account that they had found good fresh water (produced from the river above-mentioned) but that there was

not a canoe to be seen. Mr. Furneaux was sent the same day with all the boats, well manned and armed, and a number of marines, having orders to land his men under cover of the ship and boats. This being accordingly effected, he turned a piece of turf, and having hoisted a broad pendant upon a staff, took possession of the isle for his Britannic majesty, naming it King George the Third's Island. Some rum being then mixed with the river water, the king's health was drank by every person present. During the performance of this ceremony, two old men were seen on the opposite side of the river, who put themselves in a supplicating posture, and appeared to be much terrified. On this the English made signs to them to cross the river. One of them obeying the signal came over, and crawled on his hands and knees towards the lieutenant, who shewed him some stones that had been thrown at the vessel, but took pains at the same time to intimate, that no injury should be done to the Indians, if they were not the aggressors. He then caused some hatchets to be produced, giving the Indian to understand, that his people would be glad to exchange them for various kinds of provisions. Some trifles were also given to this old man, who expressed his gratitude by his gestures, and by dancing round the flag-staff, but when they saw the pendant shaken by the wind, they ran back with signs of fear and surprise. When they had recovered themselves from their fright, they brought two hogs which they laid down, and began dancing round the pendant as before. The hogs were afterwards put into a canoe, which the old Indian rowed towards the ship, and when he came along side of her pronounced a serious oration, in the course of which he delivered a number of plain-tain leaves, (one at a time, somewhat in the manner of the North Americans, closing their periods with belts of wampum.) After this he rowed back again, refusing at that time to accept of any presents. The noise of drums and other instruments were heard this night, and the next morning it was observed that the pendant was taken away, and the natives had quitted the coast. While the casks were filling with water, the old Indian already mentioned, crossed the river, and brought the English some fowls and fruits. At this time the Captain was ill, but though he was confined to the vessel, he had remarked from thence by the help of glasses what was doing on shore. In the course of his observations, he perceived many of the natives creeping behind the bushes towards the watering-place, at the same time that vast numbers advanced through the woods, and a large party came down the hill in view, all tending to the same quarter. Two divisions of canoes were besides seen making round the opposite sides of the bay. As the lieutenant had likewise observed the threatened danger, he got his people on board the boats; previous to which he had sent the old Indian to intimate to his countrymen, that the crew wanted nothing but water, and to prevail on them to keep at a proper distance while it was filling; but so far was this from having the proper effect, that the islanders made a prize of the casks, and those at some distance from the watering-place, went forward with all expedition, in order to keep pace with the canoes, which rowed along very swiftly. At the same time a number of women and children took their station on a hill, which commanded a prospect of the shipping. The canoes drawing near that part of the bay where the vessel was at anchor, took in many from the shore who were laden with bags filled with stones. Then they rowed towards the ship, on which orders were given to fire on the first party that approached in the canoes, which being done, the Indians made off frightened and astonished. Captain Wallis being now resolved that this action should put an end to all disputes, incensed at the behaviour of the natives, commanded his people to fire first into the wood, and afterwards towards the hill, whither the islanders had retreated; when finding at what a distance the guns could reach them, they dispersed and disappeared. After this the boats were sent out, a strong guard being appointed to attend the carpenters,

who,





Engraving published by the King's Arms, No. 1, Pall Mall, London.

CAPTAIN WALLIS, in conversation with OBEREA the QUEEN, whilst her attendants are performing a sportive DANCE, called the TIMRODEE.

CAPTAIN

who, according to
 does which could
 of the natives can
 branches of trees
 to the woods; ho
 some hogs and d
 left on the shore,
 as they wore, all
 to take away.
 conveyed the ho
 other articles; ha
 the beach in retu
 would by no mea
 way.

On Saturday th
 falling water, the
 side of the river.
 his manner, he c
 him to the bags
 down, and used h
 the English in the
 tired of self-defen
 so think his cou
 great openness int
 he suffered himse
 the lieutenant, an
 it was then hinte
 people of the is
 for the future, w
 satisfied, and an
 established with th
 the sick were sen
 care of the surge
 This gentleman
 the opposite side
 Indians, who fled
 space, one of the
 duck over, which
 the same time th
 his countenance.
 shot, and the na
 such a notion of
 raised their adm
 a great measure
 English during th
 might be another
 departure, as will
 ter was now app
 between the India
 quarrelling and p
 the natives some
 dize restitution w
 sides, the old Ind
 recovering any th
 In particular, an
 and pilfered a h
 preparations, as i
 goods were restor
 offender was also
 he had committe
 charged him; an
 terrible apprehen
 men, he was co
 their shouts of a
 to bring a roa
 gunner next day
 thrown him. Th
 were at this tim
 vessel, and the
 FURNEAUX, the
 duty with zeal
 pork, were pro
 fourteen days al
 his health. A p
 eggs, had been
 whether it was
 be learned, afte
 ever, no other
 we began to w
 No. 32.

who, according to orders, destroyed all the Indian canoes which could be met with. At length a small party of the natives came to the beach, stuck up some small branches of trees, as if for tokens, and then retreated to the woods; however they came again, and brought some hogs and dogs with their legs tied, which they left on the shore, together with a quantity of such cloth as they wore; all which they made signs to the sailors to take away. On this a boat was dispatched which conveyed the hogs on board, but left behind the other articles; hatchets and nails were also deposited on the beach in return for these presents; but the Indians would by no means accept them till the cloth was taken away.

On Saturday the 27th, a party being employed in filling water, the old Indian was seen on the opposite side of the river. After having delivered an oration in his manner, he came over, when the officer referred him to the bags and stones which had been brought down, and used his endeavours to convince him that the English in the late action had acted only from motives of self-defence. The old man, however, seemed not to think his countrymen much aggrieved, and with great openness intimated his opinion. However at last he suffered himself to be reconciled, shook hands with the lieutenant, and accepted some presents from him. It was then hinted to him that it would be best for the people of the island to appear only in small parties for the future, with which terms the Indian appeared satisfied, and an advantageous traffic was afterwards established with the natives. Matters being thus settled, the sick were sent on shore, and were lodged, under the care of the surgeon, in tents near the watering place. This gentleman shooting a wild duck, it dropped on the opposite side of the river, in the presence of some Indians, who fled directly; but stopping within a short space, one of them was at last persuaded to bring the duck over, which he laid at the surgeon's feet, but at the same time the agitation of his mind was visible in his countenance. Three ducks were killed by a second shot, and the natives were by this time possessed with such a notion of the effects of fire-arms, as whilst it struck their admiration, was supposed to contribute in a great measure to their good behaviour towards the English during their stay in these parts, though there might be another reason assigned for this before their departure, as will be apparent in the sequel. The gunner was now appointed to manage all affairs of trade between the Indians and the sailors, in order to prevent quarrelling and pillaging. This was a judicious choice; the natives sometimes stole certain trifles, but immediate restitution was made on the sight of a gun. Besides, the old Indian made himself very serviceable in recovering any thing that might have been taken away. In particular, an Indian swam one day over the river, and pilfered a hatchet, on which the gunner making preparations, as if he meant to go in search of him, the goods were restored by the old man's means, and the offender was also delivered up to the gunner. Though he had committed other robberies, yet the Captain discharged him; and all his punishment consisted in his terrible apprehensions. Being restored to his countrymen, he was conducted to the woods in the midst of their shouts of applause. This man had the gratitude to bring a roasted hog and some bread fruit to the gunner next day, as an acknowledgment for the lenity shewn him. The Captain, first lieutenant, and purser, were at this time very ill, so that the charge of the vessel, and the care of the sick, were committed to Mr. Furneaux, the second lieutenant, who discharged his duty with zeal and fidelity; and fruit, fowls, and fresh pork, were procured in such plenty that at the end of fourteen days almost every man had perfectly recovered his health. A piece of salt-petre, of the size of a small egg, had been found on the 25th on the shore; but whether it was brought from the ship or not, could not be learned, after the most diligent enquiry; but, however, no other piece was found. On the 2nd of July, we began to want fruit and fresh meat, owing to the

absence of the old Indian, but we had still a sufficient supply for the sick. On the 3rd, the ship's bottom was examined, when its condition was found to be nearly the same as when she left England. This day a shark was caught, which proved an acceptable present to the natives. The old Indian, who had visited the interior parts of the island in quest of provisions, returned on the 5th, and brought with him a roasted hog as a present for the Captain, who in return gave him a looking-glass, an iron pot, &c. His return was soon followed by some of the natives, who had never yet visited the market; and who brought some hogs that were larger than any yet purchased. Another sort of traffic was now established between the Indian girls and the sailors. The price of a female's favours was a nail or two; but as the seamen could not always get at the nails, they drew them out of several parts of the ship; nor could the offenders be discovered by the strictest enquiry. The damage done to the vessel might have been easily repaired; but a worse consequence arose from this traffic; for on the gunner's offering small nails for hogs, the Indians produced large spikes, demanding such as those. Some of the men made use of a particular device to gratify their passions; for when they could procure no more nails, they cut lead into the shape of them, and passed those pieces on their unsuspected paramours. When the Indians discovered the fraud, they demanded nails for the lead; but this just demand could not be granted, because it would have promoted the stealing of lead, and likewise injured the traffic with iron. In consequence of their connection with the women, the sailors became so impatient of controul, that the articles of war were read, to awe them into obedience; and a corporal of marines was severely punished for striking the master at arms. The Captain's health being nearly restored, he went in his boat to survey the island, which he found extremely delightful, and every where well peopled.

On Wednesday the 8th, the wood-cutters were entertained in a friendly manner by certain Indians, who seemed to be of a rank above those they had yet seen; and some of these visiting the Captain, he laid before them a thirty-six shilling piece, a guinea, a crown-piece, a dollar, some shillings, some new half-pence, and two large nails; intimating that they might take their choice, when they eagerly seized the nails, and then took a few half-pence, but left all the other pieces untouched. The Indians now refused to supply the market, unless they could get large nails in exchange; the Captain therefore ordered the ship to be searched, when it was found that almost all the hammock-nails were stolen, and great numbers drawn from different places; on which every man was ordered before the Captain, who told them, that not a man should go on shore till the thieves, were discovered; but no good consequence arose from his threats, at that time. Three days after, the gunner conducted to the ship a lady of an agreeable face, and portly mien, whose age seemed to be upwards of forty. This lady had but lately arrived in that part of the island, and the gunner observed that she seemed to have great authority, presented her with some toys; on which she invited him to her house, and gave him some fine hogs. She was afterwards taken on board, at her own desire. Her whole behaviour, shewed her to be a woman of fine sense and superior rank; the Captain presented her with a looking-glass and some toys, and gave her a handsome blue mantle, which he tied round her with ribbands. As she then intimated that she should be glad to see him on shore, he signified his intention of visiting her the next day. Accordingly, on Saturday the 12th, Captain Wallis went on shore, where he met him, attended by a numerous retinue, some of whom he directed to carry the Captain, and others who had been ill over the river, and from hence to her habitation, and the procession was closed by a guard of marines and seamen. As they advanced, a great number of Indians crowded to see them; but, on a slight motion of her hand, they made room for the procession.

CAPTAIN WALLIS'S VOYAGE, AS DESCRIBED BY O'HEAR, IN CONVERSATION WITH OBEREA, THE QUEEN, WHICH WAS TRANSLATED BY THE INTERPRETER, DANCE, CALLED DE TIRRODEE.

son to pass. When they drew near her dwelling, many persons of both sexes advanced to meet her, whom she caused to kiss the Captain's hand, while she signified that they were related to her. Her house was 320 feet in length, and about forty in breadth. The roof, which was covered with the leaves of palm-tree, was supported by a row of pillars on each side, and another in the middle. The highest part of the thatch on the inside, was 30 feet from the ground, and the space between the sides of the building and the edge of the roof, which was about 12 feet, was left open. The Captain, lieutenant, and purser, being seated, the lady helped four of her female attendants to pull off the gentlemen's coats, shoes, and stockings, which was awkwardly performed; the girls however smoothed down the skin, and rubbed it lightly with their hands for more than half an hour. The surgeon, being heated with walking, having pulled off his wig, one of the Indians screamed out, and the eyes of the whole company were instantly fixed on the wonderful sight, and they remained for sometime fixed in surprize. After this, the queen ordered several bales of cloth to be brought out, which were the produce of the country, which were now destined for the dress of the Captain and his attendants. It was intended that the Captain should be carried as he had been before, but as he refused the offer, the queen walked arm in arm with him, and lifted him like an infant over such wet and dirty places as they came to in their way. She gave him a sow big with young, and took her leave when she attended him to the beach. The gunner being dispatched to wait on her the next day with a present of bill-hooks, hatchets, &c. found her busied in entertaining some hundreds of the Indians who were regularly seated round her. She ordered a mess to be provided for the gunner, which he found to be very agreeable, and supposed to be fowls and apples cut small, and mixed with salt water. The provisions which were distributed by the queen, were served in cocoa-shells, which her servants brought in a sort of trays. This lady took her seat somewhat above the rest of the company, and when they were supplied, was fed by two women servants, standing on each side of her. It was observed that she received the Captain's presents with an air of great satisfaction, and the supply of provisions brought to market was now greater than ever, but the prices were raised, in a great measure owing to the commerce between the English seamen and the women of the island, of which we have taken notice; for which reason, besides the orders given for restraining the people belonging to the crew from going on shore, it was also thought proper to prohibit any women from passing the river.

On Tuesday the 14th of this month, the gunner being on shore, discovered a woman on the opposite side of the river, who seemed to be weeping in a most piteous manner. Perceiving that he seemed to take notice of her apparent distress, she sent a youth to him, who having made a long oration laid a branch of plantain at his feet, after which he went to fetch the woman, and also brought two hogs with him. The youth now made a long speech, and, in the end, the gunner was given to understand that her husband and three of her sons, had been killed when the English fired on the Indians as above related. She fell speechless on the ground after she had told her tale of woe, and two lads that attended her, seemed also to be much affected. The gunner seeing her distressed situation endeavoured to console her, and at last she became a little calmer, offered him her hand, and directed the hogs to be given him, nor would she accept any thing in return for her present. A large party rowed round the island in their boats on the 15th, in order to take a view of it, and to purchase provisions. Returning, they brought with them a number of hogs and fowls, and some cocoa-nuts. They found the island to be pleasant, and abounding with the necessaries of life, and saw a great number of canoes, several of which were not quite finished. The natives tools were formed of bones, stones, and shells. No other four footed beasts but dogs, and hogs, were

seen. The inhabitants ate all their meat either baked or roasted, as they neither had any vessel wherein water could be boiled, nor seemed to entertain an idea that it could be heated by fire so as to answer any useful purpose. One morning, when the lady we have mentioned was at breakfast, an Indian that attended her having observed the cock of an urn turned, to fill a tea-pot, he also turned the cock, when the scalding water falling upon his hand, he cried out and jumped about the cabin, while the Indians were equally surprized and terrified at the circumstance. The Captain received another visit from the queen on the 17th, and the same day a great quantity of provisions was purchased of some of the natives, whom we had never before dealt with. The next day the queen repeated her visit, and made the Captain a present of two hogs, and the master attending her home, she clothed him in the dress of the country, as she had done the Captain and his retinue. Our provisions received an increase on the 19th, by the gunner's sending on board a number of hogs and pigs, and abundance of fowls and fruits which he had purchased in the country. At this time an order was made that none of the sailors should be allowed to go on shore, except those that were appointed to procure wood, water, or other necessaries.

On Tuesday the 21st, the queen came again to visit Captain Wallis, and presented him with some hogs. She likewise invited the Captain to her house, who attended her home with some of his officers. She did wreaths of plaited hair round their hats, and on the Captain's she put a tuft of feathers of various colours, by way of distinction. She came back with them as far as the water-side on their return, and ordered some presents to be put into the boat at their departure. Captain Wallis having intimated before they put off, that he should leave the island in seven days time, she made signs that she wished him to stay 20 days; but he repeated his resolution, she burst into a flood of tears. We were now so well stored with hogs and poultry, that our decks were covered with them, and as the men were more inclined to eat fruit than meat, they were killed faster than they had been intended. The Captain presented his friend the old Indian with some cloth and other articles, and sent a number of things to the queen among which were a cat with kitten, turkies, geese, hens, and several sorts of garden seeds. This compliment was returned by a present of fruit and hogs. Pease and other European seeds were sowed here, and the Captain staid long enough to see them come up, and to observe that they were likely to thrive in the country.

On the 25th, a party was sent on shore in order to examine the country, and a tent was erected for the purpose of observing an eclipse of the sun. When it was ended, the Captain took his telescope to the queen, who shewed a surprize scarcely to be expressed, on discovering several objects with which she was well acquainted, but which were too distant to be seen without the help of a glass. He afterwards invited her and her retinue to come on board the ship, where an elegant dinner was prepared, of which all but the queen eat heartily; but she would neither eat nor drink. On the return of the party from their excursion, the queen was landed with her train. The Captain still keeping in the same mind as to the time of his departure, he wept again on being informed of his resolution. Our people who had been sent out this day, reported, that on their first landing they called on the old Indian, and took him into their company, walking some on one side of the river, and some on the other, till the ground rising almost perpendicular, they were all obliged to walk on one side. On the borders of the valley through which the river flowed, the soil was black, and there were several houses with walled gardens, and plenty of fowls and hogs. In many places channels were cut to conduct the water from the hills to the plantations. No underwood was found beneath the trees, but there was good grass; the bread-fruit and apple-trees were set in rows upon the hills, and the cocoa-nut grew upon

the level ground. various windings, the travellers he four miles they r an apple-tree. a loud shout from they were going but the old India He then went to observed that they afterwards return ments, in exchange other trifles from proceeded, lookin but found nothing And now the old companions to u turnings, but he d directions to the l min. After his d from the trees, a ner at the feet of selves red with e garments yellow v balance of these mountains were themselves at its mins so much at valley. Towards beautiful, the sic trees, and the vall ry was intersper bushes on the mou observed in many highest were inha the sides of the r with wood on the The soil even on case grew witho meric and ginge themselves fr y deviating fr pleasant situation which entertained They saw parrots. The lieutenant pla and plumbs, sever lemons and lime delightful spot, w hogs and several when they rewar repaired to the sh

On the 26th, with her usual p nking in wood ar greater number than we had ever to be persons of queen visited O remain ten days should certainly near. She now and was told in evening, when for her, she wep done. At lengt the ship's side, a servicable to the his son should sai came the youth was concluded old man to forse two boats were the officer, alar the natives, pre queen to come retire to the oth made signs for they were filling

the level ground. The streams now meandered through various windings, and the crags of mountains hung over the travellers heads. When they had walked about four miles they rested, and began their breakfast under an apple-tree. At this time they were alarmed by a loud shout from a number of the natives. On this they were going to betake themselves to their arms, but the old Indian made signs that they should sit still. He then went to his countrymen, and it was presently observed that they became silent and withdrew. They afterwards returned bringing with them some refreshments, in exchange for which they received buttons and other trifles from the lieutenant. The party then proceeded, looking every where for metals and ores, but found nothing of that sort worth attending to. And now the old Indian being tired, gave his English companions to understand that he was desirous of returning, but he did not leave them till he had given directions to the Indians to clear the way over a mountain. After his departure the countrymen cut branches from the trees, and laid them in a ceremonious manner at the feet of the seamen; they then painted their faces red with the berries of a tree, and stained their garments yellow with the bark of another. By the assistance of these people, the most difficult parts of the mountains were climbed, and they again refreshed themselves at its summit, when they saw other mountains so much above them, that they seemed as in a valley. Towards the sea the prospect was inexpressibly beautiful, the sides of the hills being covered with trees, and the valleys with grass, while the whole country was interspersed with villages. They saw but few houses on the mountains above them, but as smoke was observed in many places, it was conjectured, that the highest were inhabited. Many springs gushed from the sides of the mountains, all of which were covered with wood on the sides and with fern on the summit. The soil even on the high land was rich, and the fugacious grew without cultivation; as did likewise turmeric and ginger. Having a third time refreshed themselves they descended towards the ship, occasionally deviating from the direct way, tempted by the pleasant situation of several houses, the inhabitants of which entertained them in the most hospitable manner. They saw parrots, parroquets, green doves, and ducks. The lieutenant planted the stones of cherries; peaches and plumbs, several kinds of garden seeds, and oranges, lemons and limes. In the afternoon they rested on a delightful spot, where the inhabitants dressed them two hogs and several fowls. Here they staid till evening, when they rewarded the diligence of their guides, and repaired to the ship.

On the 26th, the Captain was visited by the queen with her usual presents, and this day we discontinued taking in wood and water, and prepared for sailing. A greater number of Indians now came to the sea-shore, than we had ever yet seen; and of these several appeared to be persons of consequence. In the afternoon the queen visited Captain Wallis, and solicited him to remain ten days longer; but being informed that he should certainly sail on the following day, she burst into tears. She now demanded when he would come again, and was told in 50 days; she remained on board till evening, when being informed that the boat waited for her, she wept with more violence than she had yet done. At length this affectionate woman went over the ship's side, as did the old Indian who had been so serviceable to the crew. This man had signified that his son should sail with the Captain; but when the time came the youth was not to be found, from whence it was concluded that parental affection had caused the old man to forfeit his word. The next morning early two boats were sent to fill a few casks with water; but the officer, alarmed at finding the shore crowded with the natives, prepared to return. This occasioned the queen to come forward, who ordered the Indians to retire to the other side of the river, after which she made signs for the boats to come on shore. While they were filling the water she ordered some presents to

be put into the boat, and earnestly desired to go once more to the ship, but the officer being ordered not to bring off a single native, she ordered her double canoe out, and was followed by many others. When she had been on board for an hour, weeping and lamenting, we took advantage of a fresh breeze, and got under sail. She now embraced the Captain and officers, and left the ship; but as the wind fell, the canoes put back, and reached the ship again, to which the queen's was made fast, and advancing to the bow of it she there renewed her lamentations. Captain Wallis presented her with several articles of use and ornament, all which she received in mournful silence. The breeze springing up again, the queen and her attendants took their final leave, and tears were shed on both sides.

The place where the ship had laid at anchor, was called Port Royal Harbour, and is situate in 17 deg. 30 min. of south lat. and 150 deg. west long.

The following are the particulars we have selected of the customs, manners, &c. of the people of Otaheite. With regard to their stature, the men are from five feet seven to five feet ten inches high, the standard of the women in general, near three inches shorter, the tallest among them being about five feet seven inches; they were mostly handsome, and some of them are described as being really beautiful. The complexion of such of the men as are much employed on the water is reddish, but their natural colour is what is called tawny. The colour of their hair is not like that of the East Indians and Americans, black, but is diversified like that of the Europeans, having among them black, brown, and red, and flaxen; most of the children having the latter; when loose, it has a strong natural curl, but it is usually worn tied in two bunches, one on each side the head, or in a single bunch in the middle. They anoint the head with the oil of the cocoa-nut, mixed with a root of a fragrant smell. The women as we have before observed, do not consider chastity as a virtue, for they not only readily and openly trafficked with our people for personal favours but were brought down by their fathers and brothers for the purpose of prostitution: they were, however conscious of the value of beauty; and the size of the nail that was demanded for the enjoyment of the lady, was always in proportion to her charms. When a man offered a girl to the care of a sailor, he shewed a stick of the size of the nail that was to purchase her company; and if our people agreed, she was sent over to them, for our seamen were not permitted to cross the river.

Their cloaths are formed of two pieces of cloth, made of the bark of a shrub and not unlike coarse china paper. In one of them a hole is made for the head to pass through, and this hangs down to the middle of the leg, from the shoulders both before and behind; the other piece which is between four and five yards long, and nearly one broad, they wrap round the body, and the whole forms an easy, decent, and graceful dress. They adorn themselves with flowers, feathers, shells, and pearls. The last are worn chiefly by the women; the Captain purchased two dozen of a small size and good colour but they were all spoiled by boring. Mr. Furneaux saw several in his excursion to the west, but he could purchase none with any thing he had to offer. It is an universal custom with both sexes, to mark the hinder part of their thighs and loins with black lines in various forms. This is done by striking the teeth of an instrument, somewhat like a comb, just through the skin, and rubbing into the punctures a kind of paste made of foot and oil, which leaves an indelible stain. The boys and girls under twelve years of age are not marked, but we saw a few men whose legs were punctuated, and these appeared to be persons of distinction.

One of the principal attendants on the queen, was much more disposed to imitate our manners than the rest; and our people, with whom he soon became a favourite, distinguished him by the name of Jonathan. This man Mr. Furneaux clothed completely in an English dress, and it became him extremely well. As it

was shoal water at the landing place, our officers were carried by the Indians on shore, and Jonathan, assuming state with this new finery, would be carried by some of his people in the same manner. In attempting to use a knife and fork at meals, at first his hand always came to his mouth, and the victuals, on the end of the fork, went away to his ear. Besides the articles already mentioned, these people eat the flesh of dogs. Rats abound in the island, but, as far as we could discover, they make no part of their food. In their rivers are good tasted mullets, but they are neither large nor in plenty. On the reef are cray-fish, conchs, muscles, and other shell-fish which they gather at low water, and eat raw with bread fruit before they come on shore. At a small distance from hence, they catch with lines, and hooks of mother of pearl, parrot-fish, groopers, and many other sorts, of which they are so fond, that we could seldom prevail upon them to sell us a few at any price. Their nets are of an enormous size, with very small meshes, with which they catch abundance of the small fry; but while they were using both nets and lines with great success, we could not catch a single fish with either; not even with their hooks and lines, some of which we had procured.

The manner in which they dress their food is somewhat singular. They first kindle a fire by rubbing the end of one piece of dry wood together, in the same manner as our carpenters whet a chisel. Having also dug a pit about half a foot deep, and two or three yards in circumference, they pave the bottom with large pebble stones, laid down smooth and even, and then kindle a fire in it with dry wood, leaves, and the husks of the cocoa-nut. When the stones are sufficiently heated, they take out the embers, and rake up the ashes on every side; then they cover the stone with a layer of green cocoa-nut tree leaves, and wrap up the animal that is to be dressed in the leaves of the plantain: if a small hog they wrap it up whole, if a large one they split it. When it is placed in the pit, they cover it with the hot embers, and lay upon them bread-fruit and yams, which are also wrapped up in the leaves of the plantain; over these they spread the remainder of the embers, mixing among them some of the hot stones, with more leaves upon them, and lastly to keep the heat in, they clove all up with earth. After a time proportioned to the size of what is dressing, the oven is opened, and the meat taken out, which is tender, full of gravy, and, in the opinion of Captain Wallis, better in every respect than that which is dressed in the European manner. Their only sauces are fruit and salt water; and their knives are made of shells, with which they carve very dexterously, always cutting from them. They were greatly astonished when they saw meat boiled in a pot by our gunner, who, while he presided over the market, used to dine on shore; but from the time that the old man was in possession of an iron pot, he, and his friends, had boiled meat every day. The iron pots which the Captain gave to the queen, were also constantly in use. The only liquor these people have for drinking is water; and they are ignorant of the art of fermenting the juice of any vegetable, so as to give it an intoxicating quality. It is true they occasionally pluck and chew pieces of the sugar cane, but have no idea of extracting any spirit from it.

By the scars, with which many of these people are marked, it seems evident, that they sometimes engaged in war with each other. The remains of wounds that were visible appeared to be made with stones, bludgeons, or other blunt weapons. That they have skill in surgery, the following instance affords us sufficient proof. One of our sailors, when on shore, had a large splinter run into his foot, and his mesmate tried in vain to extract it with a pen-knife. The old Indian, who happened to be present, called over one of his countrymen, who was standing on the opposite side of the river, who having examined the seaman's foot, went immediately down to the beach, and taking up a shell, broke it to a point with his teeth; with this instrument he laid open the place, and drew out the splinter. In the mean time the old man repaired to a wood, and returned with some

gum of the apple-tree, and, having spread it upon a piece of cloth, applied it to the wound, which, in two days time, was perfectly healed. Our surgeon afterwards used this vulnerary balsam with great success. In this island are several sheds enclosed within a wall, and the area is generally paved with large round stones; but it appeared not to be much trodden; for the grass grew every where between them. On the outside of the wall where several rude figures resembling men, women, hogs and dogs, carved on posts, that were fixed in the ground. We do not think these places are set apart for religious worship, of which we could not discover the least traces among these people; but we conjecture they may be repositories of the dead, for we saw many of the natives enter them, with a slow pace, and dejected countenance.

They have three kinds of canoes. One are formed out of single trees, used chiefly for fishing, and carry from two to six men. We saw many of these upon the reef. A second sort are made of planks sewed neatly together, and large enough to hold forty men. Two of them are generally lashed together, having two masts set up between them; but, if single, they have an outrigger on one side, and only one mast in the middle. They sail in these beyond the sight of land, probably to other islands, and bring home plantains, bananas, and other fruits. A third kind, not unlike the gondolas of Venice, are intended principally for show, and used by parties of pleasure. These are very large but have no sails. The middle is covered with a large awning, and some of the people sit upon it, and some under it. On the first and second day after our arrival, some of these vessels came near the ship; but afterwards we only saw three or four times a week, a procession of eight or ten of them passing at a distance, with streamers flying and a great number of small canoes attending them. They frequently rowed to the outward point of a reef, that lay about four miles to the westward of us, where they continued about an hour and then returned. These processions are made only in fine weather, and on such occasions the people on board are dressed; though in the other canoes, they have nothing but a piece of cloth wrapped round the middle. Those in the large canoes, who rowed and steered, were dressed in white; those who sat upon the awning and under it, in white and red; and two men, who were mounted on the brow of each vessel, in red only. The plank of these vessels is made by splitting a tree with the grain, into as many thin pieces as they can. The tree is first felled with a kind of hatchet, or adze, made of a hard greenish stone, fitted very completely into a handle: it is then cut into such lengths, as are required for the plank, one end of which is heated till it begins to crack, and then with wedges of hard wood they split it down: some of these planks are two feet broad, and from 15 to 20 feet long. They smooth them with adzes of the same materials and construction, but of a smaller size. We saw six or eight men sometimes at work upon the same plank, and, as their tools soon lose their edge, every man has by him a cocoa-nut shell filled with water, and a flat stone, whereon he sharpens his adze almost every minute. The planks are generally brought to the thickness of about an inch, and are afterwards fitted to the boat with the same exactness as would be expected from an expert joiner. To fasten these planks together, holes are bored, through which a kind of plaited cordage is passed, but our nails answered the purpose of fastening them together much better. The seams are caulked with dried rushes, and the whole outside of the canoe is paid with a gummy substance, produced from their trees, and which is substituted in the room of pitch. The wood which they use for their large canoes, is that of the apple-tree; which grows very large and strait. Many of these measured near eight feet in the girth, and from twenty to forty in the branches, with very little diminution in the size. Their small canoes are nothing more than the hollowed trunks of the bread-fruit tree, which is still more light and spongy. The trunk of this tree is six feet in girth.

In the opinion of Captain Wallis, this island of Otaheite

heite is one of the spots in the world, and we saw natives. The hill tops with herbage notwithstanding two days, and our scorpion, centipede only troublesome there were but few seems to be better we lay, for we saw evidence laden with by off this island, to the ship's crew expectations, for except the two were recovering.

Many assertions the first introduction. "It is certain of our people and therefore, as numbers of the world that it was not however, found here, and as no fresh this island by Dolphin, and the M. Bougainville, with that dreadful its miseries had together to him or to I think myself happy and my country well known, that ships keeps a list specifying their destination under his care, happened that I saw ships, when several the surgeon, alleged them from the list their cure was increased, who had man before me, true: if he alleged patient remained, I required him, as to sign the book hence. A copy of during this voyage, hence, when he was the surgeon's report formed by my assistance, by which the ship, in her voyage to the venerable England in the signed the book of months before our 19th of June 1769; the list, for that day on the 26th of February the island, which the ship's company within one day, at Otaheite; and several patients, in contracted the disease where we then lay. The old Indian, an intercourse with his son, a boat on board, to quit his home, when he thought fit to come either in him or his Dolphin left this No. 32.

he is one of the most healthy as well as delightful spots in the world. The climate appears to be very good, and we saw no appearance of disease among the natives. The hills are covered with wood, and the valleys with herbage. The air in general is so pure, that notwithstanding the heat, our flesh meat kept very well two days, and our fish one. We met with no frog, toad, scorpion, centipede, or serpent, of any kind; and the only troublesome insects that we saw were ants, of which there were but few. The south-east part of the island seems to be better cultivated and inhabited than where we lay, for we saw every day boats come round from thence laden with plantains and other fruits. While we lay off this island, the benefit we received, with respect to the ship's company, was beyond our most sanguine expectations, for we had not now an invalid aboard, except the two lieutenants, and the captain, and they were recovering, though still in a feeble condition.

Many assertions have been advanced with respect to the first introducers of the venereal disease into this island. "It is certain," (observes Captain Wallis) that none of our people contracted the venereal disease here, and therefore, as they had free commerce with great numbers of the women, there is the greatest probability that it was not then known in the country. It was, however, found here by Captain Cook in the Endeavour, and as no European vessel is known to have visited this island before Captain Cook's arrival, but the Dolphin, and the Boudeuse and Etoile: commanded by M. Bougainville, the reproach of having contaminated with that dreadful pest, a race of happy people, to whom his miseries had till then been unknown, must be due either to him or to me, to England or to France; and I think myself happy to be able to exculpate myself and my country beyond a possibility of a doubt. It is well known, that the surgeon on board his majesty's ships keeps a list of the persons who are sick on board, specifying their diseases, and the times when they came under his care, and when they were discharged. It happened that I was once at the pay table on board a ship, when several sailors objected to the payment of the surgeon, alleging, that although he had discharged them from the list, and reported them to be cured, yet their cure was incomplete. From this time it has been my constant practice when the surgeon reported a man to be cured, who had been upon the sick list, to call the man before me, and ask him whether the report was true: if he alleged that any symptoms of his complaint remained, I continued him upon the list; if not, I required him, as a confirmation of the surgeon's report, to sign the book, which was always done in my presence. A copy of the sick list on board the Dolphin, during this voyage, signed by every man in my presence, when he was discharged well, in confirmation of the surgeon's report, written in my own hand, and confirmed by my affidavit, I have deposited in the admiralty; by which it appears, that the last man on board the ship, in her voyage outward, who was upon the sick list for the venereal disease, except one who was sent to England in the store ship, was discharged cured, and signed the book on the 27th December 1766, near six months before our arrival at Otaheite, which was on the 19th of June 1767, and that the first man who was upon the list, for that disease, in our return home, was entered on the 26th of February 1768, six months after we left the island, which was on the 26th of July 1767; so that the ship's company was intirely free fourteen months within one day, the very middle of which time we spent at Otaheite; and the man who was first entered as a venereal patient, in our return home, was known to have contracted the disease at the Cape of Good Hope, where we then lay."

The old Indian, who had been so useful in carrying on an intercourse with the natives, had often intimated, that his son, a boy about fourteen years of age, should accompany him on board the ship; and the lad seemed well inclined to quit his country, and undertake the voyage; when the ship was about to sail, the youth thought fit to conceal himself, from a change of mind either in him or his father. A few months after the Dolphin left this island, M. de Bougainville touched

No. 32.

here, and with him one of the natives embarked; but from the disparity in their ages, it could not be the same person who had engaged to accompany Captain Wallis. The name of this adventurer was Aotourou. He left his country with great satisfaction and cheerfulness. His history is short, and as follows. The first European settlement that M. de Bougainville touched at, after leaving Otaheite, was Boero, in the Moluccas; The surprize of Aotourou was extravagant, as seeing men dressed in the European manner; houses, gardens, and various domestic animals; in great variety and abundance. Above all, he is said to have valued the hospitality that was there exercised, with an air of sincerity and freedom. As he saw no exchanges made, he apprehended the people gave every thing without receiving any return. He presently took occasion to let the Dutch understand, that in his country he was a chief, and that he had undertaken this voyage with his friends for his own pleasure. In visits, at table, and in walking, he endeavoured to imitate the manners and customs of the Europeans. When M. de Bougainville left Aotourou on board, on his first visit to the governor, he imagined the omission was owing to his knees being bent inwards, and with greater simplicity than good sense, he applied to some of the seamen to get upon them, supposing they would, by that means, be forced, into a straight direction. He was very earnest to know if Paris was as fine as the Dutch factory where he then was. At Batavia, the delight which he felt on his first arrival, from the sight of the objects that presented themselves might operate, in some degree, as an antidote to the poison of the place; but during the latter part of their stay here, he fell sick, and continued ill a considerable time through the remainder of the voyage; but his readiness in taking physic, was equal to a man born at Paris. Whenever he spoke of Batavia afterwards, he always called it enoué mate "the land that kills." This Indian, during a residence of two years in France, does not appear to have done much credit to himself or his country. At the end of that time he could only utter a few words of the language; which indocile disposition M. de Bougainville excuses with great ingenuity and apparent reason, by observing, that, "he was at least thirty years of age: that his memory had never been exercised before in any kind of study, nor had his mind ever been employed at all. He was totally different from an Italian, a German, or an Englishman, who can, in a twelve month's time, speak a French jargon tolerably well; but then these have a similar grammar; their moral, physical, political, and social ideas are much the same, and all expressed by certain words in their language as they are in the French tongue: they have therefore little more than a translation to fix in their memories, which retentive faculties have been exercised from their infancy. The Otaheitean man, or the contrary, having only a small number of ideas; relative on the one hand, to the most simple and limited society, and, on the other, to wants which are reduced to the smallest number possible, he would have, first of all, as it were, to create a world of new ideas, in a mind as indolent as his body; and this previous work must be done before he can come so far as to adopt to them the words of an European language, by which they are to be expressed." But Aotourou seems to have kept very much below the standard, which the French apologist pleads he was not required to surpass; for he really was not able, after two years instruction, to translate his Otaheitean ideas, few and simple as they were, into French. This itinerant embarked at Rochelle A. D. 1770, on board the Brisson, which was to carry him to the isle of France, from whence, by order of the French ministry, he was to be sent by the intendant to his native country; and for this purpose, M. de Bougainville informs us that he gave fifteen hundred pounds sterling, (a third part of his whole fortune) towards the equipment of the ship intended for this navigation. But notwithstanding these endeavours to restore the adventurous Aotourou to his country and connections, he had not reached them when Capt. Cook was at Otaheite in 1774: and Mr. Forster says he died of the small pox.

C H A P. III.

The Dolphin sails from King George the Third's Island—Her passage from thence to Tinian—Sir Charles Saunders's—Lord Howe's—Scilly—Boscawen's—Keppel's—and Captain Wallis's Islands discovered—The present state of Tinian described—Run from that island to Batavia—Incidents and transactions at this last place—The Dolphin continues her voyage to the Cape of Good Hope—Returns to England, and anchors on Friday the 20th of May, 1768, having circumnavigated the Globe, from the time of weighing anchor in Plymouth Sound, in just 637 days; and accomplished her voyage a month and a day sooner than she had done when under the command of Commodore Byron.

ON Sunday the 26th of July, 1767, we took our departure from the island of Otaheite: and on the 27th, passed the Duke of York's Island, the middle and west end whereof is very mountainous, but the east end is lower, and the coast just within the beach abounds with plantain-trees, cocoa-nuts, bread-fruit, and apple-trees. On the 28th, we discovered land, which was called Sir Charles Saunders's Island. It is about six miles long from E. to W. and lies in latitude 17 deg. 28 min. south, and in 151 deg. 4 min. west longitude. On the weather side are many great breakers, and the lee-side is rocky, nevertheless, in many places there appears to be good anchorage. In the center is a mountain, which seems to be fertile. The few inhabitants we saw appeared to live in a wretched manner, in small huts, very different from the ingenious natives of King George's Island. Cocoa-nut and other trees grew on the shore, but all of them had their tops blown away. On the 30th, we again made land, at day-break, bearing N. by E. to N. W. We stood for it but could find no anchorage, the whole island being encircled by dangerous breakers. It is about ten miles in length, and four in breadth, and lies in latitude 16 deg. 46 min. south, and in 144 deg. 13 min. west longitude. On the lee part a few cocoa nuts were growing, and we perceived smoke, but no inhabitants. The Captain named this new discovered land Lord Howe's Island. In the afternoon we discovered in latitude 16 deg. 28 min. south, longitude 155 deg. 30 min. west, a group of islands or shoals, exceeding dangerous; for in the night, however clear the weather, and by day, if it is hazy, a ship may run upon them without seeing land. At five o'clock we descried the breakers, running a great way to the southward; and soon after low land to the S. W. We turned to windward all night, and at nine o'clock of the 31st got round the shoals and named them Scilly Islands.

On Thursday the 13th of August, having continued our course westward, two small islands came in view. The first, at noon bore W. half S. distant five leagues, and had the appearance of a sugar loaf. The center of the second rose in the form of a peak, and bore W. S. W. distant six leagues. To one which is nearly a circle, in diameter three miles, we gave the name of Boscawen's island; and this we believe to be the only instance which occurs, of an island receiving the name of a deceased great man. Admiral Boscawen died in the year 1761. The other island, which is three miles and a half in length, we called Keppel's Isle. Port Royal at this time bore east 4 deg. south, distant 478 leagues. At two o'clock, P. M. we saw several inhabitants upon Boscawen's Island; but Keppel's being to windward, and appearing more likely to afford us good anchorage, we hauled up for it. At six, being distant therefrom nearly two miles, we observed by the help of our glasses, many of the natives upon the beach; but we did not attempt to anchor, on account of some breakers at a considerable distance from the island. However, on the 14th, early in the morning, the boats were dispatched to sound and visit the island. At noon they returned, without having found any ground, within a cable's length of it; but seeing a reef of rocks, they had hauled round the same, and got into a large deep bay full of rocks: without this was anchorage from 14 to 20 fathoms, bottom sand and coral; and within a rivulet of good water; but the shore being rocky, they went in search of a better landing place, which they found about half a mile farther, and went ashore. Our people reported, that the inhabitants were not unlike

those of Otaheite; they were clothed in a kind of matting, and were remarkable for having the first joint of their little fingers cut off. They seemed to be peaceably inclined, and three of them from their canoes came into the boats when they put off; but suddenly jumped overboard, and swam back to the island, where about 50 of their countrymen stood on the shore ready to receive them, but who would not advance nearer than about 100 yards to our people. These brought on board two fowls, and some fruit, but they saw not any hogs. Till this day, Captain Wallis had entertained a design of returning to England by the way of the Magellanic Straits; but as no convenient watering place was to be found in this island, and as the ship had received some damages, that had rendered her unfit to encounter a rough sea, he determined to sail for Tinian, from thence to Batavia; and so home by the Cape of Good Hope. By this route, as far as we could judge, we expected to be sooner at home, and supposing the ship might not be in a condition to make the whole voyage, we should still have a greater probability of saving our lives, as from this place to Batavia, we should have a calm sea, and be not far from port. We think it rather extraordinary that a thought should be entertained by Captain Wallis, of returning by the way we came; as, independent of the prodigious unnecessary risk that would be run, the honour of having gone over the entire circumference of the globe would have been lost: for a voyage into the South Sea would have had nothing attractive in its sound; but a voyage round the world, was calculated to draw general attention. In consequence of the above resolution, we passed Boscawen's Island, which is well inhabited, and abounds with timber; but Keppel's is by far the largest and best Island of the two. The former lies in latitude 15 deg. 50 min. south, longitude 175 deg. west; and the latter in latitude 15 deg. 55 min. longitude, 175 deg. 3 min. west from London. We continued our course W. N. W. and,

On Sunday the 16th, at ten o'clock, A. M. we discovered land bearing N. by E. and at noon were within three leagues of it. Within shore the land appeared to be high, but at the water-side it was low; and seemed to be surrounded with reefs that extended two or three miles into the sea. The coast is rocky, and the trees grow almost to the edge of the water. We hauled without a reef of rocks, to get round the lee-side of the island, and at the same time sent off the boats to sound and examine the coast. Our people found the trees to be of different sorts, many of them very large, but all without fruit: on the lee-side indeed were a few cocoa-nuts, but not a single habitation was to be seen: nor any kind of animals, either birds or beasts, except sea fowl. Soon after they had got near the shore, several canoes came up to them, each having six or eight men on board. They appeared to be a robust, active people, and were clothed with only a kind of mat that was wrapped round their waists. They were armed with large maces or clubs, such as Hercules is represented with, two of which they sold to our master for a few nails and trinkets. These people attempting to steal the cutter, by hauling her upon the rocks, a gun was fired close to one of their faces, the report of which so terrified them, that they decamped with the utmost speed. When the boats, on their return to the ship, came near to deep water, they were impeded by points of rocks standing up, the whole reef, except in one part, being now dry, and a great sea broke over it. The Indians observing this followed our boats in their canoes,

Launders's—Lord
de of Finian de-
vin continues ber-
of May, 1768;
days; and ac-
adere Byron.

d in a kind of
ng the first joint
ned to be peace-
eir canoes came
uddenly jumped
ad, where about
shore ready to
nce nearer than
ic brought on
ey saw not any
ad entertained a
way of the Ma-
watering place
he ship had re-
red her unfit to
sail for Tinian,
by the Cape of
we could judge,
d supposing the
ake the whole
r probability of
avia, we should
rt. We think
ould be enter-
by the way we
us unnecessary
ving gone over
ould have been
ould have had
yage round the
attention. In
ve passed Bos-
s, and abounds
he largest and
lies in latitude
5 deg. west,
in longitude,
We continued

A. M. we dis-
on were within
land appeared
; and seemed
d two or three
and the trees
We hauled
lee-side of the
boats to found
nd the trees to
ery large, but
d were a few
as to be seen:
beasts, except
ar the shore,
having six or
o be a robus,
only a kind of
They were
as Hercules is
to our master
le attempting
the rocks, a
the report of
ped with the
return to the
e impeded by
ref, except in
roke over it.
boats in their
canoes,



Houcaens Island. Latitude 23° 56' South Longitude 174° 36'

Olasburg Island. Latitude 17° 51' South Longitude 174° 31' West



Adm. Keppels Island. Latitude 23° 51' South Longitude 174° 33' West of London.



Wallis's Island. Latitude 23° 51' South Longitude 170° 25' West of London.



Walker Is.

London. Estimated by Mr. Kopp at the Angle Area 37 1/2 Square Miles.

CAPTAIN V

canoes, all along
and then they re
an extraordinary
of metal was seen
yet the natives
iron than they
copper or brass
returned, which
reported, that a
at two or three
choirage in 18,
coral. The op
where, if presse
moor, in eight f
with a greater le
the officers calle
Wallis's Island.
18 min. south, an
hobited in our bo
where we lay til
the current had
made sail to the

On Friday the
latitude, our lon
24 min. west fro
birds were seen a
and resembled
colour. On the
and in 188 deg
rippling, which
as far as the eye
founded, but fou

On the 3rd of
land, which was
Islands. The l
longitude 192 d
11 deg. 20 min
At five o'clock,
and at six, in
such as is dese
voyage. Perce
Spanish colours
two miles, at w
N. N. W. and
the 7th, we saw
land bird, very r
day the 17th, w
longitude 212 d
o'clock, A. M. v
W. by N. dista
came in sight
on Saturday th
fathoms, sandy
the store, and
no time, after
boats on shore,
freshments. In
limes, and coco
valids, were la
the smith's forg
Captain and fir
condition, wer
mate and 12 r
On the 20th, th
better situation
the ship a little
way. At six o'
in a fine young
we kept on the
with a good su
ple now on sho
we began the
penters were se
got on shore,
mend them:
iron work, an
The sick rec
breathed the l
from what wa

canoes, all along the reef till they got to the beach, and then they rowed back. We shall here remark, as an extraordinary circumstance, that although no sort of metal was seen on any of the lately discovered islands, yet the natives were no sooner possessed of a piece of iron than they began to sharpen it, but did not treat copper or brass in the same manner. When the boats returned, which was about six in the evening, the master reported, that all within the reef was rocky, but that at two or three places without it there was good anchorage in 18, 14, and 12 fathoms, upon sand and coral. The opening in the reef is 60 fathoms broad, where, if pressed by necessity, a ship may anchor, or moor, in eight fathoms; but it will not be safe to moor with a greater length than half a cable. This island the officers called after the name of our commander, Wallis's Island. It is situated in latitude 13 deg. 18 min. south, and in 177 deg. west longitude. Having hoisted in our boats we ran down four miles to leeward, where we lay till the morning; and then, finding that the current had set us out of sight of the island, we made sail to the N. W.

On Friday the 28th, we crossed the line into northern latitude, our longitude being, by observation, 187 deg. 24 min. west from London. During this course many birds were seen about the ship, one of which was caught, and resembled exactly a dove in size, shape, and colour. On the 29th, in latitude 2 deg. 50 min. north, and in 188 deg. west longitude, we crossed a great rippling, which stretched from the N. E. to the S. W. as far as the eye could reach from the mast-head. We sounded, but found no bottom, with a line of 200 fathoms.

On the 3rd of September, being Thursday, we saw land, which was thought to be two of the Piscadone Islands. The latitude of one of them is 11 deg. north, longitude 192 deg. 30 min. west, and that of the other 11 deg. 20 min. north, longitude 192 deg. 58 min. At five o'clock, A. M. we saw more land in the N. W. and at six, in the N. E. observed an Indian prow, such as is described in the account of Lord Anfon's voyage. Perceiving she made towards us, we hoisted Spanish colours: but she came no nearer than within two miles, at which distance she tacked, stood to the N. N. W. and was out of sight in a short time. On the 7th, we saw a curlew, and on the 9th, we caught a land bird, very much resembling a starling. On Thursday the 17th, we observed in latitude 15 deg. north, longitude 212 deg. 30 min. W. On the 18th, at six o'clock, A. M. we descried the island of Saypan, bearing W. by N. distant ten leagues. In the afternoon we came in sight of Tinian, made sail for the road; and on Saturday the 19th, we came to an anchor in 22 fathoms, sandy ground, at about a mile distant from the shore, and half a mile from the reef. We lost no time, after the ship was secured, in sending the boats on shore, to erect tents, and procure some refreshments. In a few hours they returned with oranges, limes, and cocoa-nuts. The surgeon, with all the invalids, were landed with the utmost expedition; also the smith's forge, and a chest of carpenter's tools. The Captain and first lieutenant, both being in a very sickly condition, went likewise ashore, taking with them a mate and 12 men to hunt for cattle in the country. On the 20th, the master informed us, that there was a better situation to the southward; we therefore warped the ship a little way up, and moored with a cable each way. At six o'clock in the evening, our hunters brought in a fine young bull, of near 500 weight, part of which we kept on shore, and sent the remainder on board, with a good supply of fruit. The amount of the people now on shore, sick and well, was 53. On the 21st, we began the necessary repairs of the ship. The carpenters were set at work to caulk her: all the sails were got on shore, and the sail-makers were employed to mend them: while the armourers were busy on the iron work, and making new chains for the rudder. The sick recovered very fast from the day they first breathed the land air: this, however, was so different from what we found it in Otaheite, that flesh meat

which there kept sweet two days, could here be scarcely kept sweet one. Near the landing-place we saw the remains of many cocoa-nut trees, which had all been wantonly cut down for the fruit; and we were obliged to go three miles into the country to procure a single nut. The hunters also suffered incredible fatigue, going frequently 10 or 12 miles, through one continued thicket, and the cattle were so wild, that it was very difficult to come near them. On this account one party was ordered to relieve another; and Mr. Gore with 14 men were stationed at the north part of the island, where cattle were in much greater plenty. At day-break every morning, a boat went off to bring in what they caught, or killed, and in this island we procured beef, poultry, papaw apples, and all the other refreshments, of which an account is given in Lord Anfon's voyage; but which differs in some particulars from the report made of this place by Commodore Byron. During our stay at this place, the ship was laid down by the stern, to get at some of the sheathing which had been much torn; and in repairing the copper, the carpenter discovered and stopped a leak under the lining of the knee of the head, by which we had reason to hope most of the water; that the vessel had lately admitted in foul weather, came in.

On Thursday the 15th of October, all the sick being recovered, our wood and water completed, and the Dolphin made fit for sea, every thing was ordered on board from the shore; and all our men were embarked from the watering-place, each having at least, 500 limes; and we had several tubs full of the same fruit on the quarter deck, for every one of the crew to squeeze into his water what he should think fit. On the 16th, at day break, we weighed, and sailed out of the bay, sending the boats at the same time to the north end of the island, to bring off Mr. Gore and his hunters. At noon they came on board with a fine large bull which they had just killed. On Wednesday the 21st, we held on a westerly course; on the 22nd, Tinian being distant 277 leagues, we saw several birds, particularly three resembling gannets, of the same kind that we had seen when within about 30 leagues of Tinian. On the 23rd, and the two following days it blew a violent storm, and we had much thunder, lightning, rain, and a great sea. The ship laboured very much: the rudder became again loose, and shook the stern, a defect which we had before experienced, and which we thought had been remedied at Tinian. The gales increasing split our gib and main-top-mast stay-sail: the fore-sail, and mizen-sail were torn to pieces; and, having bent others, we wore, and stood under a reefed fore-sail, and balanced mizen. The effects of the storm were more dreaded, as the Dolphin admitted more water than she had done at any time during the voyage. Soon after we had got the top-gallant-masts down upon the deck, and took in the gib-boom, a sea struck the ship upon her bow, and washed away the round-houses, with all the rails of the head, and every thing upon the fore-castle: nevertheless, we were forced to carry as much sail as the ship would bear, being by Lord Anfon's account rear the Bashee Islands; and by Commodore Byron's, not more than 30 leagues, with a lee-shore. The incessant and heavy rain had kept every man on board wet to the skin for more than two days and two nights, and the sea was breaking continually over the ship. A mountainous one, on Tuesday the 27th, staved all the half ports to pieces on the starboard side, broke all the iron stanchions on the gunwale, washed the boat off the skids, and carried many things overboard. We were, however, this day favoured with a gleam of sunshine; and on the 28th, the weather became more moderate. At noon we altered our course, steering S. by W. and past one o'clock, we saw the Bashee Islands bearing from S. by E. to S. S. E. distant six leagues. These are all high, but the northernmost is higher than the rest. Grafton Island, one of them is laid down by Captain Wallis in the latitude of 21 deg. 4 min. north, and in 239 deg. west longitude; but Captain King, in his relation of the conclusion of the last voyage of discovery

covery, asserts that this is erroneous, as the Resolution and Discovery fought for them in vain in that position; and Mr. Dalrymple in his maps has laid them down in 118 deg. 14 min. east longitude. At midnight of this day, the weather being very dark, with sudden gusts of wind, we missed one Edmund Morgan, a marine taylor. It was supposed he had fallen overboard, when under the influence of intoxication, he having found means to indulge himself with more than his allowance.

On Tuesday the 3rd of November, at seven o'clock, A. M. we discovered a ledge of breakers, in latitude 11 deg. 8 min. north, distant three miles. At eleven we saw another shoal in latitude 10 deg. 46 min. N. distant five miles. At noon we hauled off, being distant from them not more than one fourth of a mile. At one o'clock P. M. we saw shoal water on our larboard bow, and, standing from it, passed another ledge of breakers at two. At three o'clock we had in sight a low sandy point, in latitude 10 deg. 40 min. N. and in 247 deg. 12 min. west longitude, to which the name was given of Sandy Isle. At five, in 10 deg. 37 min. N. latitude and in 247 deg. 16 min. W. long, we saw a small island, which was named Small Key. Soon after, in latitude 10 deg. 20 min. N. longitude 247 deg. 24 min. another larger was seen, and called Long Island. On Wednesday, the fourth, we fell in with a fourth island, in latitude 10 deg. 10 min. N. and in 247 deg. 40 min. W. longitude. This we named New Island. On Saturday the 7th having continued our course, we passed through several rippings of a current; and this day we saw great quantities of drift wood, cocoa-nut leaves, things like cones of firs, and weeds, which swam in a stream N. E. and S. W. At noon we observed in latitude 8 deg. 36 min. N. longitude 253 deg. W. At two o'clock, P. M. we descried from the mast head the island of Condore, which lies in latitude 8 deg. 40 min. N. and in 254 deg. 15 min. west longitude by our reckoning. On the 8th, we altered our course, and on the 9th, the Captain took from the petty officers and fore-mast men all their log and journal books relative to the voyage. On Friday the 13th, we came in sight of the islands Timoun, Aros, and Pefang. On Monday the 16th, we again crossed the line into south latitude, in the longitude of 255 deg. W. and soon after we saw two islands, distant seven leagues. On the 17th, we had tempestuous weather with heavy rain. The two islands proved to be Pulo Fote, and Pulo Weste; and having made sail till one o'clock P. M. we saw at that time the seven islands. On the 18th, at two o'clock, A. M. a singular incident happened. At this time the weather was so tempestuous and dark, that we could not see from one part of the ship to the other, we had also heavy squalls and much rain. During the full violence of the wind, a flash of lightning suddenly discovered a large vessel close aboard of us. The steersman instantly put the helm a lee, and the Dolphin answering her rudder, just cleared the other ship, and thus escaped the impending destruction, which threatened to bury for ever in the vast deep every circumstance of the voyage. This was the first ship that had been seen since our parting with the Swallow in April; and it blew so hard, that, not being able to understand any thing that was said, we could not learn to what nation she belonged. The weather having cleared up at six o'clock, A. M. we saw a sail at anchor in the E. S. E. and at noon came in sight of Pulo Taya, near which we anchored at six in the evening, in 15 fathoms, sandy ground. On the 19th we sailed again, and saw two vessels a-head of us, but finding we lost much ground, came to an anchor again in 15 fathoms. On Friday the 20th, our small bower anchor parted, and could not be recovered. We immediately took in the cable, and perceived that it had been cut through with the rocks. On the 21st, at half an hour after six A. M. we saw the coast of Sumatra; and cast anchor in Batavia road on Monday, the 30th.

On Tuesday, the 1st of December, we saluted the governor with 13 guns, which, contrary to the usual custom, he returned with one more, instead of one less,

from the fort; and permission having been obtained to purchase provisions, we were soon supplied with beef, and plenty of vegetables, which the Captain ordered to be served immediately: at the same time he told the ship's company, that he would not suffer any liquor to be brought on board, and would severely punish those who made such an attempt, observing, in order to reconcile them to this regulation, that intemperance, particularly in a too free use of arrack, would inevitably destroy them. As a further preservative, the captain would not suffer a man to go on shore, except upon duty, nor were even these permitted to go into the town. At this time 14 sail of Dutch East Indiamen, and a great number of small vessels were laying in this road: Here also we saw the Falmouth, an English man of war, of 50 guns, lying upon the mud in a rotten condition. She touched at this inhospitable place, on her return from Manila, in the year 1762, and was condemned. On examining the stores and ship, every thing was found in so decayed a state, as to be totally useless. The officers and crew of this ship were in a miserable condition. The boatswain through vexation and distress had lost his senses, and was at this time in a Dutch hospital: the carpenter was dying; and the cook a wounded cripple. The warrant officers belonging to this wreck presented a petition to Captain Wallis, requesting that he would take them on board the Dolphin. They stated, that nothing now remained for them to look after; that they had ten years pay due, which they would gladly relinquish, to be relieved from their present sufferings; the treatment they received from the Dutch was most inhuman. They were not permitted to spend a single night on shore, and in sickness no one visited them on board: they were besides robbed by the Malays, and in continual dread of being murdered by them. Captain Wallis told them, with the utmost regret and compassion, that the relief they prayed for, it was not in his power to render; that as they had received charge of stores, they must wait for orders from home; but he assured them he would do all in his power to relieve them; and with this remote consolation only, the poor neglected, forgotten, unassisted suffering Englishmen took their leave with tears in their eyes. About six months before Captain Cook touched at Batavia, on board the Endeavour, in 1776, the Dutch thought fit to sell the Falmouth, and all her damaged stores, by public auction, and sent the officers home in their own ships.

The exorbitant prices which were demanded for cordage, and every other article, which the Dolphin stood in need of, obliged Captain Wallis to leave the place without procuring any thing of that kind, although his need of them was very great. During our stay at this place, which was eight days, the most salutary regulations were established, in order, if possible, to preserve the crew from the malignity of the climate; and the most beneficial consequences ensued. The ship's company continued sober and healthy the whole time; for, except a sailor who had been afflicted with rheumatic pains ever since we had left the Straits of Magellan, only one man was on the sick list.

On Wednesday the 2nd, our boatswain and carpenter we sent to examine such of the stores, belonging to the Falmouth, as had been landed at Onrust, with orders, that if any were fit for use they should be purchased. On their return they reported, that all the stores they had surveyed were rotten, except one pair of tacks, which they brought with them: the masts, yards, and cables were all dropping to pieces; and even the iron work was so rusty that it was worth nothing. They also examined her hull, and found her in a most shattered condition. Many of her ports were washed into one; the stern post was quite decayed; and there was no place in her where a man could be sheltered from the weather. The few unhappy sufferers who remained in her, were in as wretched a state as the ship, being quite broken and wore down, and expecting to be drowned as soon as the monsoon should set in. Among other necessaries, we were in want of an anchor,

and of the officers, from the them from the had been. able, that they the 5th, for the first visited the a better We now advantage we could no purchase, were four times its. any shift, rat shameful impos would give them, at which time if it were possibl had treated for. nothing more from the road of the 11th, at Sava, affected with co. which boat came al. for the use of the distance of two amazing number we imagined, to. we anchored. took in wood and. ves come down. which they parted. till the 19th, du. from the mai. side the ship. bruised, and m. fall he struck tw. burr, that he. then died: bu. broken. Whi. of our hands. quarter-master, ly useful, as he (p. rages. On Sun. made sail, and f. people began to. der something lik. D. 1768. than. k list, laid up w. and, diseases epi. geon's mate, w. who were appoint. taken ill in a day. service. The acc. the sick does him. birth to be made. with painted can. directing it to be. once or twice a day. constantly ventila. heated red hot, an. out to be drank: t. and salop, or sag. day; in a week st. fore or two on the. restoratives and no. and sugar, and fre. believe people in. freshments before. in discharging, w. his office; yet, sickness gained. tagious nature of. seized. To sug. grew very leaky.

conduct of the Dutch at Batavia, and at the Cape. The Asiatic Dutch can scarcely be induced to render the common offices of humanity to such of their species who resort to them to be saved from the jaws of death, and their rapacity knows no bounds: the African Dutch are disposed to administer every comfort to those who want relief, and in doing this no extortion is practised. The principle upon which the people at each settlement act is easily to be traced: at the first place, they suspect every foreign European ship which enters their port as endangering a secure possession of the most valuable branches of their commerce; in the latter, the wealth of the inhabitants, as well as the emoluments of government, are derived from the offices of humanity which they discharge. This day, at five o'clock, A. M. we put 56 gallons of salt water into the still; at seven it began to run, and, in little more than five hours, afforded us 42 gallons of fresh water, at an expence of nine pounds of wood, and 69 pounds of coals. What we drew off had no ill taste, nor, as we had often experienced, any hurtful quality. Captain Wallis never once put the ship's company to an allowance of water, during the whole voyage, always using the still, when we were reduced to 45 tons, and preserving the rain water with the utmost diligence; nor would he permit water to be fetched away at pleasure; but the officer of the watch had orders to serve out a sufficient quantity to those who might want it for tea, coffee, grog, and provisions of any kind. On Thursday the 26th, we had nearly got on board all our wood and water; all our hands, and the tents were brought off from the shore; and, upon a general muster, we had the happiness to find, that in our whole company, three only were incapable of doing duty, and that we had lost only the same number, since our departure from Batavia, by sickness. This day the Captain came on board; and on the 27th and 28th, after having stowed all our bread, a considerable quantity of straw, and above 30 sheep for sea stores, we unmoored, and lay waiting for a favourable wind.

On Thursday the 3rd of March, we got under sail. From many observations we had an opportunity of making at Green Point, we determined Table Bay to lie in latitude 34 deg. 2 min. south, and in 18 deg. 8 min. east longitude from Greenwich. On the 7th, we were in latitude 29 deg. 33 min. south, longitude 347 deg. 38 min. from London. On Saturday the 13th, we found a day had been lost by having sailed westward 360 deg. from the meridian of London; we therefore called the latter part of this day, Monday the 14th of March. On Wednesday the 16th, at six o'clock, P. M. we came in sight of the island of St. Helena, distant 14 leagues; and on the 17th, at nine o'clock, A. M. we cast anchor in the Bay. We found riding here the Northumberland Indiaman, Captain Milford, who saluted us with 11 guns, and we returned nine. All our boats being hoisted out as soon as possible, we sent one party to fill our empty casks with water, and others to gather purlain, of which there is great plenty. The Captain going on shore was saluted with 13 guns from the fort, which compliment we returned. The governor and principal gentlemen of the island met him upon landing; and having conducted him to the fort, requested that he would make that place his residence, during his stay; but our water being completed, and the ship made ready for sea, on the 18th, Captain Wallis returned on board; upon which he unmoored, at five o'clock, P. M. got under way, and set sail for our native country, happy old England. On Wednesday the 23rd, at five o'clock, A. M. we had in view the island of Ascension; and at eight a sail was seen to the eastward, which brought to, and hoisted a jack at her

main-top-mast head; but we had no sooner seen our colours than she went about, and stood in for land again. Passing by the N. E. side of the island, looked into the bay, but seeing no vessel there, and blowing a stiff gale, we held on our course. On Monday the 28th, we crossed; for the fourth time, the equinoctial line, getting again into north latitude.

On Wednesday the 13th of April, we passed a great quantity of gulph weed, and on Tuesday the 19th, perceiving the water to be discoloured, we sounded, and could find no bottom. On the 24th, at five o'clock, A. M. we came in sight of Cape Pico, bearing N. N. W. distant 18 leagues; and at noon, by observation, found Fyal to lie in latitude 38 deg. 20. min. north, and in 28 deg. 30 min. west longitude from London.

On Wednesday the 11th of May, we saw the Sloop of war Captain Hammond, in chase of a sloop, which he fired several guns. On this we also fired, and brought her to. She belonged to Liverpool, was called the Jenny, and commanded by Robert Christian. Captain Hammond informed us, that when he first saw her she was in company with an Irish wherry, and that soon as they discovered him, they took different ways; the wherry hauled the wind, and the Jenny bore away. At first he stood after the wherry, but finding he gained no ground, he bore away after the Jenny, who probably would like wife have outtailed him, and escaped, had not brought her to. She was laden with tea, brandy, and other goods, from Roscoe in France. Her brandy and tea were in small kegs and bags. Captain Wallis detained her, in order to her being sent to England, and from all appearances, which were strongly against her, we judged miss Jenny to be a smuggler; for though sailing a S. W. course, she pretended to be bound for Bergen in Norway. On the 13th, at five o'clock, A. M. the islands of Scilly appeared; and on Thursday the 19th, Captain Wallis landed at Hastings in Suffolk. On the following day this voyage was happily completed, and the circumnavigation of the globe successfully accomplished; for on Friday the 20th, the Dolphin came to an anchor in the Downs, having been 677 days from the time that she took her departure from Plymouth Sound. As the main end proposed by this arduous and hazardous undertaking was to make discoveries; Captain Wallis, when navigating those parts of the South Sea, which were imperfectly known, that nothing might escape him, constantly laid to every night, and made sail only in the day; notwithstanding which considerable delay in sailing, he accomplished his voyage a month and a day sooner than his predecessor had done in the same circumnavigation. The ill health which the Captain complains of almost through the voyage, may serve as a sufficient apology for the want of a more copious information in his narrative, concerning the places which he visited, particularly Ouhette, the Indian name of which he does not mention. In the relations of this commander, we see little of the watchful attention, curiosity, and ardent desire, to "catch the manners living as they rise," which were possessed by Captain Carteret, and which appear so eminently conspicuous in Captain Cook, wherever he is, and in whatever manner he is engaged; yet in justice to the respectable character of Captain Wallis, we must observe, that he constantly and indefatigably pursued the grand object of his voyage; and if we consider his nautical abilities, his amiable philanthropy, apparent in his conduct and behaviour to those under his command, together with his judicious observations as a mariner, at the several ports, and the various situations of the Dolphin at sea, we cannot but think he is deservedly worthy of being placed in the first rank of our able and skillful circumnavigators.

A NEW, AUTHENTIC, REMARKABLE, and ENTERTAINING

HISTORY and NARRATIVE, of A VOYAGE Round the WORLD;

UNDERTAKEN and PERFORMED

By that NEGLECTED and GALLANT OFFICER,

Capt. PHILIP CARTERET, Esq.

In His MAJESTY'S Sloop the SWALLOW;

During the Years 1766, 1767, 1768, and 1769.

CONTAINING,

A lively Description of the generous Nature of Captain CARTERET; the Inattention which was shewn to his Fitting-out; and his scanty Supply of Necessaries; together with an affecting and complete Account of the perilous Situation of the SWALLOW, on the western Extremity of the Magellanic Straits; who, notwithstanding her bad Sailing, dangerous Situations, and shattered Condition, without any Marks of Dependency from her Company, continued her Voyage, after her Separation from the DOLPHIN, and accomplished the Circumnavigation of the Globe; having set sail from Plymouth Sound, August the 22nd, 1766—parted from her Consort, the DOLPHIN, on the 11th of April, 1767—and anchored at Spithead, on the 20th of March, 1769.

The Whole being drawn up from authentic Journals and private Papers, and illustrated with a rich Variety of Communications from Captain JOHN HOGG, late of the Royal Navy.

INTRODUCTION.

CAPTAIN Philip Carteret, the history of whose voyage round the world we are about writing, had sailed with Commodore Byron on his expedition, and soon after his return, was appointed to the command of the Swallow Sloop, destined to accompany the Dolphin, and Prince Frederick Store-ship. The Captain having received his commission, bearing date July the 1st, 1766, was ordered to fit out the Swallow, which then lay at Chatham, with all possible expedition. This gallant officer describes emphatically, and in a most feeling manner, like his predecessor, Commodore Anson, the inattention which was shewn to his fitting-out. It had been hinted to him, that he was to go out in the Dolphin, but the amazing disparity of the two ships, and the distinguished superiority in the equipment of one to the other, induced him to conclude, that they could not be intended for the same duty; for whilst the Dolphin was furnished with every thing requisite for a long and dangerous navigation, the neglected Swallow Sloop had only a scanty supply of necessaries. Besides, she was an old vessel, having been built 30 years, and was by no means fit for a long voyage. Upon her bottom was only a slight thin sheathing, which was not even filled with nails to supply the want of a covering, that would more effectually keep out the worm. Captain Carteret of serving the Swallow to be totally unprovided with many things, which particular situations might render absolutely necessary for her preservation, applied for a forge, some iron, a small skiff, and several other things; not one of which articles he could obtain;

but was told, that the vessel and her equipment were very fit for the service she was to perform; though, at the same time, she had not a single trinket or toy put on board her, to enable her commander to procure refreshments from the Indians of the Southern Hemisphere. Add to all this, there was a deficiency of junk on board, an article essentially necessary in every voyage; and when application was made for this at Plymouth, the Captain was told, that a sufficient quantity was put on board the Dolphin. Thus circumstanced, it cannot be even supposed, that a commander of Captain Carteret's discernment, would think of being a consort with the Dolphin in her hazardous expedition; and we cannot but credit the declaration of this brave officer, when he tells us, he was therefore confirmed in his opinion, that if the Dolphin was to go round the world, it could never be intended that the Swallow should go farther than Falkland's Islands, where the Jason, a fine frigate, which was, like the Dolphin sheathed with copper, and amply equipped, would, in the Captain's opinion, supply her place. Nothing can place a commander of seamen in a more respectable point of view, than his appearing to possess equanimity and fortitude under the most disheartening circumstances. Numerous and great as these were, Captain Carteret resolved to serve his country in the line of his profession; and therefore proceeded to Plymouth Sound with the Swallow, in company with the Dolphin, under the command of Captain Wallis, and the Prince Frederick Store-ship, commanded by Lieutenant James Brine.

Brine. While the Swallow lay at this place, not being yet acquainted with his destination, Captain Carteret represented to Captain Wallis his being in want of junk, who sent him five hundred weight, a quantity so small

and insufficient, that we were soon reduced to the agreeable necessity of cutting off some of the cables, and to save our rigging.

C H A P. I.

The Swallow sails in company with the Dolphin, and Frederic Store-ship, from Plymouth Sound, Friday the 22nd August, 1766—Passage from thence to the Island of Madeira—Proceeds on her voyage to the Straits of Magellan—And anchors off Cape Virgin Mary—The bad condition of the Swallow in her navigation through the Straits—With great difficulty reaches Port Famine—Is obliged to continue her voyage, after her commander had requested of Captain Wallis to alter her destination—On the 11th of April, 1767, is separated from her consort, the Dolphin, without the least hope of seeing her during the remainder of the voyage—The gallant behaviour of Captain Carteret in this dangerous situation—The run of the Swallow from the western entrance of the Strait of Magellan to the island of Masafuera—Incidents and transactions whilst the ship lay off this island—Observations—She departs from Masafuera and makes Queen Charlotte's Islands—A description of those and their inhabitants—An obstinate skirmish with the natives—Egmont Island described, with an account of their country, canoes, and weapons.

A. D. 1766. **O**N Thursday the 21st of August, our ship's company on board the Swallow received two months pay; and the next day, Friday the 22nd, we weighed and made sail, with the Dolphin and Frederick store-ship. We proceeded together without any material occurrence, till the 7th of September, when we came to an anchor in the road of Madeira. On Tuesday the 9th, nine of our prime steamen left the ship secretly, and swam on shore naked. They left behind them all their clothes; and took only their money, which they had secured in handkerchiefs that were tied round their waists. They proceeded together till they came very near the surf, when one of them, somewhat terrified at the dashing waves, which here break very high on the shore, returned to the Swallow, and was taken on board, but the rest boldly pushed through. While Captain Carteret was writing to the consul, entreating his assistance to recover those brave but imprudent fellows, whose loss would have been severely felt, he received a message, by which he was informed, that they had been found by the natives naked on shore; that they had been taken into custody, but would be delivered up to his order. A boat was instantly dispatched to bring them on board, where they cut a most ridiculous figure, and seemed heartily ashamed of what they had done. When our noble Captain came upon deck, he appeared pleased at seeing the marks of contrition in their countenances, and asked in the mild tone of humanity, what could be their reasons and motives for quitting the ship, and deserting the service of their country, at the risk of being devoured by sharks, or dashed to pieces by the surf against the shore. To this they replied, that though they had indeed, at such risks, ventured to swim on shore, yet they had never entertained a thought of deserting the ship, which they were determined to stand by as long as they could swim; but that being well assured they were going a long voyage, and none being able to tell who might live or who might die, they thought it hard to be deprived of an opportunity of spending their own money, and therefore resolved once more to get a skinful of liquor, and then to have swam back to the ship, which they expected to have done before they were missed. The Captain having determined secretly not to inflict the punishment by which they seemed most heartily willing to expiate their fault, did not scrutinize severely their apology, observing only, that with a skinful of liquor they would have been in a very unfit condition to swim through the surf to the ship; and, hoping they would expose their lives only upon more important occasions, and that he should in future have no cause to complain of their conduct, upon these conditions, he would for this time be satisfied with that shame and regret, which he perceived plainly imprinted on their countenances, and which indicated a proper sense of their misbehaviour; at the same time, he advised them to put on their clothes and turn in,

being confident they wanted rest; adding, that as good swimmers might probably be wanted in the course of our voyage, he was very glad that he knew to whom he might apply. Captain Carteret endeared himself very much to these men by this act of tenderness, and he had scarcely dismissed them when he was infinitely gratified by the murmur of satisfaction which instantly ran through the ship's company; and the future conduct of the offenders amply repaid his well timed lenity, there being no service, during all the toils and dangers of the voyage, which they did not perform, with a zeal and alacrity that were much to their honour, and our advantage, as an example to the rest.

Friday the 12th of September, we sailed out of the road of Madeira; and were now convinced, we were sent upon a service, to which the Swallow and her equipment were by no means equal; for this day our commander received from Captain Wallis a copy of his instructions, who also appointed, in case of a separation, Port Famine, in the Strait of Magellan, to be the place of rendezvous. We continued our voyage, without any material incident, till we reached Cape Virgin Mary, where we saw the Patagonians, a full account of whom has been given in our history of the two expeditions performed by Commodore Byron and Captain Wallis, in their circuit round the world; and as the particulars in the narrative before us are the same, it will be needless to recite them. With much labour, and at no inconsiderable risk, (for we could but seldom make the Swallow tack, without a boat to row her round) we anchored in Port Famine, on the 28th of December; where we unshung our rudder, and having made it somewhat broader, we hoped to obtain an advantage in working the ship; but in this particular we were entirely disappointed.

On Tuesday the 17th of February, after A. D. 1767. having encountered many difficulties and dangers, we steered into Island Bay; and at this place our commander, in a letter to Captain Wallis, set forth in affecting language, the ill condition of the Swallow; requesting of him to consider what was best for the king's service whether she should be dismissed, or continue the voyage; to which Captain Wallis returned for answer, that as the Lords of the Admiralty had ordered the Swallow on this service; in conjunction with the Dolphin, he did not think himself at liberty to alter the destination of the former. In consequence of this reply, founded only on the single opinion of Captain Wallis, we continued to navigate the strait in company with the Dolphin; and as our Captain had passed it before, we were ordered to keep a-head and to lead the way, with liberty to anchor and weigh when and where he thought proper; "but (to use Captain Carteret's own words) perceiving, says he, that the bad sailing of the Swallow would so much retard the Dolphin, as probably to make her lose the season for getting

into high for the voyage, should lay to that I should the Strait by in much less by my ship that he might and stores, to her back to had rendered in my way of Patagonia think proper ledge of the success of the the Dolphin ed by his fir during the myself in the back to Eng "that the ve jointly, pur but he assur "in confide the Swallow pany with time, and at of Captain availing him duct of his this time th the sails she so much we had only be under the our compa western en South Sea orders, kept abreast of her a-head, was out of lights. A which, du by carryin studding-g danger. On Sat had been was the d at day-bre seen abov studded-l fight of Strait's m and in th a forge, but galli expanse these di dency w tain enc phin wa find mo ability, his fear confide up all arrive settled been d abreast ligned to the to fin not v create on, w Ne

into high southern latitudes, and defeat the intention of the voyage, I proposed to Captain Wallis, that he should lay the Swallow up in some cove or bay, and that I should attend and assist him with her boats till the strait should be passed, which would probably be in much less time than if he continued to be retarded by my ship; and I urged as an additional advantage that he might complete not only his stock of provisions and stores, but his company out of her, and then send her back to England, with such of his crew as sickness had rendered unfit for the voyage; proposing also, that in my way home, I would examine the eastern coast of Patagonia, or attempt such discoveries as he should think proper. If this was not approved, and my knowledge of the South Seas was thought necessary to the success of the voyage, I offered to go with him on board the Dolphin, and give up the Swallow to be commanded by his first lieutenant, whose duty I would perform during the rest of the voyage, or to make the voyage myself in the Dolphin, if he would take the Swallow back to England: but Captain Wallis was still of opinion "that the voyage should be prosecuted by the two ships jointly, pursuant to the orders that had been given;" but he assured Captain Carteret, at the same time, that, "in consideration of the very dangerous condition of the Swallow, the Dolphin should continue to keep company with her as long as it was possible, waiting her time, and attending her motions." The generous nature of Captain Carteret our readers will infer, from his not availing himself of this assurance, when stating the conduct of his superior officer in so trying an instance. By this time the Swallow was become so foul, that with all the sails she could set, it was not in her power to make so much way as the Dolphin, not even when the latter had only her top-sails and a reef in them: however, under these trying circumstances, we continued with our companion till the 10th of April, on which day the western entrance of the strait was open, and the great South Sea in sight. We had hitherto, agreeable to orders, kept a-head, but now, the Dolphin being nearly abreast of us, she set her fore-sail, which soon carried her a-head, of us; and by nine o'clock in the evening she was out of sight, for when the day closed she shewed no lights. A fine eastern breeze blew at this time, of which, during the night, we made every possible use, by carrying all our small sails, even to the top-gallant studding-sails, by which we were exposed to great danger.

On Saturday the 11th, notwithstanding every means had been used to come up with the fugitive, yet such was the disparity of sailing between the two ships, that, at day-break, the top-sails of the Dolphin could only be seen above the horizon; but we could perceive she had studded-sails set; and at nine o'clock we entirely lost sight of her, judging she might be then clear of the strait's mouth. The Swallow was now under the land; and in this bad sailing, ill provided ship, having neither a forge, nor a single trinket on board, was our neglected, but gallant officer, destined to proceed over the vast expanse of the great Southern Ocean; yet amidst all these discouraging circumstances, no signs of despondency were visible among our people, whom the Captain encouraged by telling them, that though the Dolphin was the best ship, he did not doubt but he should find more than equivalent advantages in their courage, ability, and good conduct. Such an ascendancy over his seamen, is a plain proof, how much they revered, confided in, and loved him. From this day, we gave up all hope of seeing our consort again till we should arrive in England, no plan of operation having been settled, nor any place of rendezvous appointed, as had been done from England to the strait. A noon, when abreast of Cape Pillar, a strong gale from S. W. obliged us to take down our sunal sails, and haul close to the wind; soon after which we had the mortification to find, that when we had made two boards, we could not weather the land on either tack. The gale increased, driving before it a hollow swell, and a fog came on, with violent rain, which compelled us to get close

No. 33.

under the south-shore. We now sent out our boat in search of Tuesday's Bay, which is said by Sir John Narborough to lie about four leagues within the strait, or to find out any other good anchorage. At five o'clock, P. M. we could not see the land, notwithstanding its mountainous height, though within half a mile of it; and at six, it was so dark that we could not see half the ship's length. Being concerned for the safety of our boat, we put out lights, made false fires, and fired a gun every half hour; and at last she reached the ship, but had made no discovery either of Tuesday's Bay, or any other anchoring place. During the remainder of the night we made sail, endeavouring to keep near the south shore. The next day, being the 12th, as soon as it was light, the boat was sent out again to explore the south shore for an anchoring place; and at five o'clock, P. M. when we almost despaired of her returning in time, saw her founding a bay; and stood in after her. The master said, that we might here safely cast anchor, which we did about six o'clock, and then the Captain retired to take some rest. In a few minutes after, he was disturbed by a universal shout and tumult among the people upon deck, and the noise of those below running to join them. When Captain Carteret came upon deck, the general cry was; the Dolphin! the Dolphin! in a transport of surprize and joy: but this delusive appearance soon vanished, and proved to be only water forced up, and whirled in the air by a gust of wind. The people were for a few minutes dejected by their disappointment, but before the Captain went down, he had the pleasure to see a return of their usual fortitude and cheerfulness. The little bay where we now lay, is about three leagues E. by S. from Cape Pillar, and bears S. by E. four leagues from the island which Sir John Narborough called Westminster Hall. The western point of this bay has a resemblance to a perpendicular oblong square, like the wall of a house; within its entrance are three islands, and within these a very good harbour, with anchorage in between 25 and 30 fathoms, bottom soft mud. We anchored without the islands, the passage on each side of them being not more than a cable's length wide. Our small cove is about two cables length broad; and in the inner part is from 16 to 18 fathoms, but where we lay it is deeper. The landing is every where good, with plenty of wood, water, mussels, and wild geese. As a current sets continually into it, our Captain is of opinion, that it has another communication with the sea to the south of Cape Defeada. Our master reported, that he went up it four miles in a boat, and could not then be above four miles from the western ocean, yet he still saw a wide entrance to the S. W. Here we rode out a very hard gale of wind, and the ground being very uneven, we expected our cables to be cut in two every minute, yet when we weighed, to our great surprize, they did not appear to have been rubbed in any part, though we found it very difficult to heave them clear of the rocks. From the north shore of the western end of the strait of Magellan, the land, which is the western coast of Patagonia, runs nearly N. and S. being a group of broken islands, among which are those laid down by Sharp, by the name of the Duke of York's Islands. They are indeed placed by him at a considerable distance from the coast; but if there had been many islands in that situation, the Dolphin, the Tamar, or the Swallow, must have seen them. Till we came into this latitude, we had tolerable weather, and little or no current in any direction, but when northward of 43 deg. we had a current setting strongly to the north, so that probably we then opened the great bay, which is said to be 90 leagues deep. Here we found a prodigious swell from the N. W. and the winds generally blew from the same quarter.

On Wednesday the 13th, we once more got again abreast of Cape Pillar; but between five and six o'clock, A. M. just as we opened Cape Defeada, the wind suddenly shifting, and its excessive violence produced a sea so dreadfully hollow, that we were in the utmost danger of sinking; yet we could not shorten sail, it being necess-

4 A

fery

means of procuring assistance from the boat, which, to escape the fury of a gathering storm, was obliged to return to the ship, into which it was safely received but a few minutes before the impending storm rushed forth, which, had the been upon the water, the mult have been inevitably sunk, and every soul on board perished. The three naked, defenceless mariners on shore, during the night, were doomed to "bide the pelting of the elements storm," without clothes, without shelter, without food, and without fire. To augment their distress, a heavy rain was then on shore, and had erected a tent; but the darkness of the night, and the impenetrable thickets of the woods, cut off all possibility of receiving succour from them. Being thus reduced to an entire state of nature, without the habits which render that state supportable, in order to preserve a living portion of animal heat, they lay one upon another, each man alternately placing himself between the other two. At the first dawn of light, they made their way along the shore, in search of the tent; an attempt to penetrate through the country being considered as fruitless. In this circuit they were frequently stopped by high, steep, bluff points, which they were obliged to swim round at a considerable distance; for, if they had not taken a sufficient compass, they would have been dashed to pieces against the rocks, in avoiding which they were every moment in danger of being devoured by sharks. About ten o'clock in the morning they joined their comrades, being almost perished with hunger and cold. They were received with the most cordial welcome, their shipmates sharing with them their cloaths and provisions; and it is hard to say of which they stood most in need. On the 18th, they were brought on board the ship, where the captain gave orders, that they should have all proper refreshments, and remain in their hammocks the whole night; and the next day we had the pleasure to find they were perfectly hearty, nor did they suffer any future inconvenience from the extreme hardships they had gone through. These men were three of the nine honest fellows, who had swam naked from the ship when the lay in the road of Maderia, to get a skin full of liquor. Than which nothing could paint more strongly the general character of English sailors, which may perhaps be defined to consist in a contempt of danger, a love of strong liquor, and a girl, and an aversion to be possessed of any coin, when embarked on a long voyage. This day the weather was moderate, and in the evening we were within half a mile of the anchoring ground from whence we had been driven; but the wind suddenly failing, and a current making against us, we could not reach it. During the whole night we had a perfect calm, so that in the morning of the 19th, we found the current and the swell had driven us no less than nine miles from the land; but a breeze springing up, we kept off and on near the shore, and in the interim sent the cutter for water, who as she rowed along shore caught as much fish with hook and line as served all the ship's company, which was some alleviation of our disappointment.

On Wednesday the 20th, we happily regained our station, and came again to an anchor, at two cables length from the beach, in 18 fathoms water, and moored with a small anchor in shore. We now sent out the long boat, who in a short time procured fish enough to supply all our company on board. The two following days we had exceeding bad weather. In the morning of the 21st, the wind blew with such violence along shore, that we frequently drove, though we had not less than 200 fathoms of cable out: however we rode out the storm without damage, but the rain was so violent, and the sea ran so high, that nothing could be done with the boats, which was the more mortifying, as it was for the sake of completing our water, that we had endured almost incessant labour, for five days and nights, to regain the situation in which we now lay. At a short interval, when the wind became more moderate, we sent three men ashore, abreast of the ship, to kill seals, and to make oil of their fat, for burning in the lamps and other uses. On the 22d in the morning,

the wind blew very hard, as it had done all night, but, being off the land, we sent the boats away at day-break, and about ten o'clock they returned with each of them a load of water, and a great number of pintado birds, or petrels. These were obtained from the people on shore, who told them, that when a gale of wind happened in the night, these birds flew faster into the fire than they could well take them out; and that during the gale of last night, they got no less than 700 of them. Throughout this day the boats were all employed in bringing water on board; but the surf was so great that several of the casks were staved and lost; however by the 23d, a few only were wanting to complete our stock. The weather now grew so bad that the Captain was impatient to sail: he therefore gave orders for all our people on shore to come on board. At this time the Swallow again drove from her moorings, dragging the anchor after her, till she got into deep water. We now brought the anchor up, and lay under bare poles, waiting for the boats. In the evening the long boat with ten men were taken on board; but there yet remained the cutter with the lieutenant and 18 men; which brings to our recollection a very similar situation, in which those on board the Centurion, under Commodore Anson, were thrown off the Island of Tinian. The weather becoming more moderate about midnight, the Swallow stood in for land; and on the 24th, at ten o'clock, A. M. we were very near the shore, but the cutter was not to be seen; about noon, however, she was happily discovered close under land, and in three hours time we took her crew on board. The Lieutenant reported, that the night before he had attempted to come off, but that he had scarcely cleared the shore, when a sudden gust of wind almost filled the boat with water, which narrowly escaped filling: that all hands bailing with the utmost activity, they fortunately cleared her; that he then made for the land again, which with great difficulty he regained, and having left a sufficient number of men with the boat, to watch and keep her free from water, he with the rest of the people went on shore. That having passed the night in a state of inexpressible anxiety and distress, they looked out for the ship with the first dawn of day, and seeing nothing of her, concluded that she had foundered in the storm, which they had never seen exceeded. They did not however give way to gloomy reflections, nor sit down in torpid despair, but began immediately to clear the ground near the beach of bushes and weeds, and to cut down several trees, of which they made rollers to assist them in hauling up the boat on land, in order to secure her, intending, as they had no hope of the ship's return, to wait till the summer season, and then attempt to make the island of Juan Fernandes: but these thoughts were lost in their happy deliverance. Having thus once more got our people and boats safe on board, we made sail from this turbulent climate; and thought ourselves fortunate not to have left any thing behind except the wood, which had been cut for firing.

It is a common opinion, that upon this coast the winds are constantly from the south to the S. W. though Frazier mentions his having had strong gales and high seas from the N. N. W. and N. West. quarter, which was unhappily our case. The island of Mafafuero, which lies in latitude 33 deg. 45 min. south, longitude 80 deg. 46 min. west from the meridian of London, is of a triangular form, about 23 miles in circumference; being west of Juan Fernandes; both of the islands are nearly in the same latitude. At a distance it has the appearance of a high mountainous rock. The fourth part is much the highest, and on the north end are several clear spots, which perhaps might admit of cultivation. On the coast in many places is good anchorage, particularly on the west-side, at about a mile from the shore, in 20 fathoms, and at nearly three miles, in 40 and 45 fathoms, with a fine black sand at the bottom. The author of the account of Lord Anson's voyage mentions a reef of rocks, which he says "runs off the eastern point of the island, about two miles

miles in length, which may be seen by the sea's breaking over them," but in this he is mistaken; though indeed there is a reef of rocks or shoal running off the western-side, near the fourth-end thereof. He is not less mistaken with respect to the distance of this island from Juan Fernandes, and its direction, for he makes the former 22 leagues, and the latter W. by S. but we found the distance one third more, and the direction is due west; for, as we have before observed, the latitude of both islands is nearly the same. On the S. W. part of the island there is a remarkable perforated rock, which is a good mark to come to an anchor, on the western-side, and here is the best bank of any about the place. To the northward of the hole in the rock, distance about a mile and a half, is a low point of land; and from hence runs the above-mentioned reef, in the direction of W. by S. to the distance of about three quarters of a mile, where the sea continually breaks upon it. To come to anchor, you must run in till the hole in the rock is ft at in, about a cable's length upon this low point of land then bearing S. by E. half E. and you may anchor in 20 and 22 fathoms, fine black sand and shells. Anchorage may likewise be found on the other sides of the island, particularly off the north point, in 14 and 15 fathoms, with fine sand. Plenty of wood and water may be procured all round the island, but not without much labour and difficulty, by reason of a great quantity of stones, and large fragments of rocks which have fallen down from the high land, and upon these such a violent surf breaks that a boat cannot approach safely within a cable's length of the shore; so that there is no landing here but by swimming from the boat, and then mooring her without the rocks; nor is there any method of getting off the wood and water, but by hauling them to the boat with ropes; but Captain Carteret observes there are many places where it would be very easy to make a commodious landing by building a temporary wharf, which it would be worth while even for a single ship to do, if she was to continue any time at the island. Here we found the seals so numerous, that, says the Captain, I verily think, if many thousands of them were killed in the night, they would not be missed in the morning. These animals yielded excellent train oil, and their hearts and plucks are very good eating, being in taste somewhat like those of a hog; and their skins are covered with the finest fur of the kind. In this island are many birds, among others vast numbers of pintadoes, and some very large hawks. While the tent was erected on shore, a king-fisher was caught, which weighed 87 pounds, and was five feet and a half long. Goats are to be found in great abundance, and may be easily caught. We had not an opportunity to botanize, or search after vegetable productions; but we saw several leaves of the mountain cabbage, which is a proof that the tree is a native of this place. The island is surrounded with abundance of fish, in such plenty, that a boat's crew, with three hooks and lines, may obtain as much in a short time as will serve 100 people: among others we caught cray-fish, cod, halibut, cavalliers, and excellent coal-fish. The sharks were so ravenous, that when we were founding one of them swallowed the lead, by which we hauled him above the water, but as he then disgorged it, we lost him. So much for this island of Masafuco, of which we have given several particular and full accounts in former parts of this work.

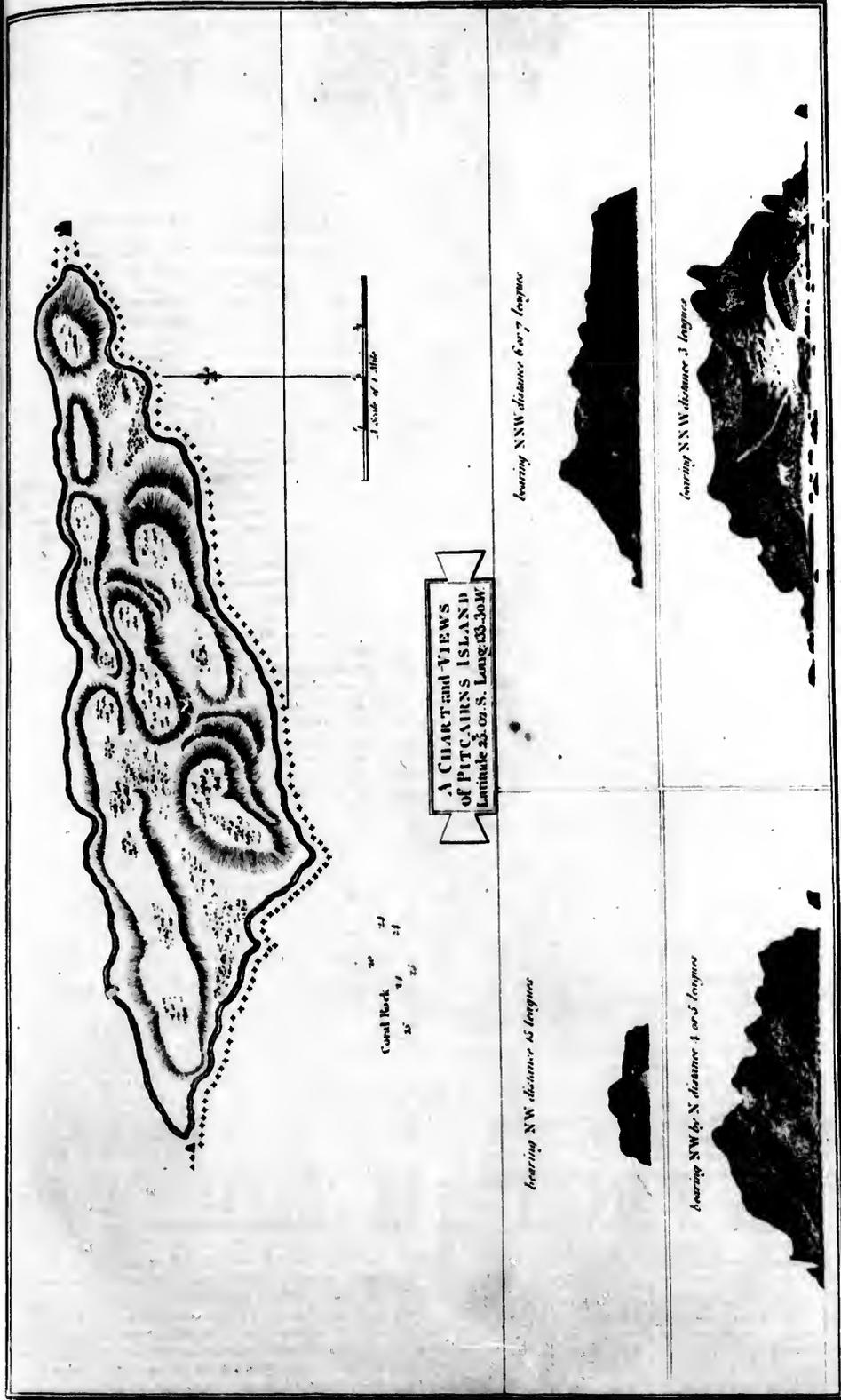
When we departed from hence, on Sunday the 24th of May, we sailed to the north, hoping to fall in with the S. E. trade wind; but having ran farther to the northward than was at first proposed, we looked out for the islands of St. Ambrose, and St. Felix, or St. Paul, which are laid down in Green's charts, published in the year 1753; but, as was supposed, we missed them by attending to the erroneous position which is ascribed to them in Robinson's navigation, who has laid down the island of St. Ambrose in 25 deg. 30 min. south latitude, and in 82 deg. 20 min. west longitude; but we might perhaps go too far to the northward, for we saw great numbers of birds and fish, which are in-

dications of land not far distant. We continued steering between the latitude of 25 deg. 50 min. and 30 deg. in search of those islands, till we had proceeded 5 deg. to the westward of our departure; we then directed our course more to the southward, and found ourselves in the latitude of 27 deg. 20 min. In this parallel we had light airs and foul winds, with a strong northerly current which led Captain Carteret to conjecture, that he was near the land which Roggewein visited in the year 1722, and called Eastern Land, and which some have supposed to be the same as a discovery before made by Davis, which in the charts is called Davis's Land; and in this conjecture concerning Eastern Land our commander has been found to be perfectly right, as Captain Cook happened to fall in with this spot in the year 1774; and by the position he assigns it, our navigator appears to have been not more than a degree to the southward of it. It was now, being June the 17th, the depth of winter, and we had hard gales with heavy seas that frequently brought us under our courses; and though we were near the tropic of capricorn, the weather was dark, hazy, and cold, with frequent thunder, lightning, sleet, and rain. The sun was above the horizon about ten hours in the four and twenty, but many days were frequently passed without seeing his face; and the weather was so thick, that when he was below it, the darkness was inexpressibly horrible; and this dreadful gloom in the day deprived us for a considerable time of an opportunity to make an observation; notwithstanding which dangerous circumstance we were obliged to carry all the sail we could spread both day and night, as the ship making way so slowly, and the voyage being so long, we were exposed to the danger of perishing by famine.

On Thursday the 2nd of July, in the evening, we discovered land to the northward of us; which appeared like a great rock rising out of the sea. It is situated in latitude 25 deg. 2 min. south, and in 133 deg. 21 min. west longitude. It is an island well covered with trees, and down the side of it runs a stream of fresh water. The height of it is so immense, that we saw it at the distance of more than 15 leagues. We judge it to be not more than five miles in circumference, and we could perceive no signs of its being inhabited. The Captain was desirous of sending out a boat to attempt a landing, but the surf, which, at this season, broke upon it with great violence, rendered it impracticable. We saw a great number of sea birds of somewhat less than a mile from the shore, and the sea here seemed not destitute of fish. Having been discovered by a son of Major Pitcairn, we called it Pitcairn's Island. This young gentleman was afterwards lost in the Aurora, in her passage to the East Indies; and his father, major of the marines, fell in the action of Bunker's Hill, and died in the arms of another of his sons. While in the neighbourhood of this island, we seldom had a gale to the eastward, so that we were prevented from keeping in a high south latitude, and were continually driving to the northward. The winds chiefly blew from the S. S. W. and W. N. W. and the weather was extremely tempestuous, with long rolling billows from the southward, larger and higher than any we had seen before. On the 4th the ship admitted a great quantity of water, and was otherwise in a very crazy condition, from the rough seas she had encountered. Our sails also, being much worn, were continually splitting; and our company who had hitherto enjoyed good health, began to be afflicted with the scurvy. When the ship lay in the Straits of Magellan, Captain Carteret had caused a small awning to be made, and covered it with a clean painted canvas, which he had for a floor-cloth in his cabin; and in this he caught so much rain water, at a very little expence of trouble and attendance, that the crew were never put to short allowance of this necessary article during the voyage. This method of obtaining rain water we have already particularly described; and is constantly practised by the Spanish ships, which annually cross the South Sea from the Manilas to Acapulco; and in their return. The awning also afforded shelter

We continued steer
 50 min. and 30 f
 d proceeded 5 deg
 ve then directed
 ound ourselves in
 parallel we had lig
 northerly current
 cture, that he wa
 ifisted in the year
 which some have
 ry before made by
 Davis's Land; and
 rn Land our com
 y right, as Captain
 spot in the year
 it, our navigator
 n a degree to the
 June the 17th, the
 s with heavy seas
 our courtes; and
 corn, the weather
 t thunder, light
 ove the horizon
 but many days
 is face; and the
 was below it, the
 nd this dreadful
 fiderable time of
 ; notwithstanding
 were obliged to
 day and night,
 the voyage be
 nger of perih-

vening, we dif
 which appeared
 It is situated in
 3 deg. 21 min.
 red with trees.
 of fresh water.
 w it at the dif
 ge it to be not
 and we could
 The Caprain
 upt a landing,
 upon it with
 We saw a
 is than a mile
 ot destitute of
 Major Pit
 young gen
 n her passage
 of the ma
 d died in the
 the neigh
 gale to the
 keeping in
 ly driving
 w from the
 extremely
 the south
 ren before.
 y of water,
 from the
 lfo, being
 our com
 began to
 lay in the
 ed a small
 n painted
 his cabin;
 very little
 rew were
 ry article
 ming rain
 l, and n
 hich an
 to Acc
 afforded
 shelter



London, Published by, Alex. Murray at the Kings Arms, N^o. 40. Parlaneer Row



Coral Bank
 20
 21
 22

23
 24
 25

A CHART and VIEWS
 of PITCAIRN'S ISLAND
 Latitude 23. 02. S. Longitude 133. 30. W

Bearing NW distance 2 1/2 leagues

Bearing NNW distance 6 or 7 leagues

Bearing NW distance 4 or 5 leagues

Bearing NNW distance 3 leagues

London. Published by Wm. F. Roy at the Kings Arms, 87 St. Martin's Lane

shelter fr
 geon like
 with the
 precauti
 men fo
 11th, in
 well, ano
 we calle
 of his p
 Wallis h
 prince h
 low piec
 with the
 but bein
 us, we c
 On Su
 on one o
 fo tame,
 covered
 hited.
 is a slip
 and sand
 to the di
 breaks w
 aspect to
 lame ma
 from it
 20 deg.
 other in
 15 min.
 cester's
 as the fit
 we went
 we had
 that dir
 fortunat
 which v
 to the
 fruit an
 became
 among
 we hau
 13th, in
 we lost
 7 min
 o'clock
 gitude
 conject
 to the
 the wi
 violent
 to us.
 her, a
 south,
 After
 drove
 20th,
 30 mi
 were i
 of Lo
 of Ar
 tinent
 increa
 yours
 of th
 were
 neces
 bably
 crew
 atten
 cond
 scare
 war
 fam
 to h
 illar
 in r
 ship
 ce

shelter from the inclemency of the weather. The surgeon likewise mixed a small quantity of spirits of vitriol with the water, which was thus preserved; and to these precautions the Captain imputed the escape which our men so long had from the scurvy. On Saturday the 11th, in latitude 22 deg. south, and longitude 141 deg. west, another small, low, flat island was discovered, which we called the Bishop of Osnaburgh's Island, in honour of his present majesty's second son; and as Captain Wallis had given the same name to another island, that prince holds two honorary fiefs in the South Sea. This low piece of land, which appeared to be almost level with the water's edge, is well clothed with verdure; but being to the south, and directly to the windward of us, we could not fetch it.

On Sunday the 12th, we saw two more small islands, on one of which a boat's crew landed; and found birds of the same, as to be taken by the hand. They were both covered with green trees, but appeared to be uninhabited. The southernmost, with which we were close in, is a slip of land in the form of a half moon, low, flat, and sandy. From the south end thereof a reef runs out to the distance of about half a mile, whereon the sea breaks with great fury. Notwithstanding its pleasant aspect it affords neither vegetables nor water; and the same may be said of the other island, which is distant from it about five leagues. One of them lies in latitude 20 deg. 38 min. south, longitude 146 deg. west: the other in 20 deg. 34 min. south, longitude 146 deg. 15 min. west, and we called them the Duke of Gloucester's Islands. They may be the land seen by Quiros, as the situation is nearly the same; but however this be, we went to the southward of it, and the long billows we had here, convinced us that no land was near us in that direction. Captain Carteret was peculiarly unfortunate in having seen four islands, not one of which was capable of yielding the least refreshment to the ship's company, in the important articles of fruit and water; in consequence of which the men became very sickly, and the scurvy made swift progress among them. The wind here being to the eastward, we hauled to the southward again; and on the 13th, in the evening, as we were steering W. S. W. we lost the long rolling billows in latitude 21 deg. 7 min. south, and got them again on the 14th, at seven o'clock, A. M. in latitude 21 deg. 43 min. south, longitude 149 deg. 48 min. west; from whence our Captain conjectured, that there was then some land, not far off, to the southward. From this day to Tuesday the 16th, the winds were variable, and blew very hard, with violent gusts, one of which was very near being fatal to us. These were accompanied with thick hazy weather, and heavy rain. We were then in latitude 22 deg. south, and in 70 deg. 30 min. west of our departure. After some time the wind settled, in the W. S. W. which drove us again to the northward, so that on Monday the 20th, we were in latitude 19 deg. south, and in 75 deg. 30 min. west of our departure. On the 22nd, we were in latitude 18 deg. south, longitude 151 deg. west of London; and 1800 leagues westward of the continent of America; yet in all this run not any signs of a continent were discovered. And the scurvy was now daily increasing among our people, and finding all our endeavours, from the badness of the weather and the defects of the Swallow, to keep in a high southern latitude, were effectual, Captain Carteret thought it absolutely necessary to fix upon such a course as might most probably tend to the preservation of the vessel and her crew. In consequence of this resolution, instead of attempting a S. E. course, in which, considering our condition, and the advanced season of the year, it was scarcely possible to succeed, we bore away to the northward, with a view of getting a trade wind; but at the same time keeping such a track, as, if the charts were to be trusted, was most likely to bring us to some island, where refreshments, of which we stood so much in need, might be obtained; we proposed that, if the ship could be put into a proper condition, to have proceeded at the proper season to the southward, and to

have attempted farther discoveries; and should a continent have been discovered, and a supply of provisions procured, we, in this case, intended to keep along the coast to the southward, till the sun had crossed the equinoctial line; and then, after having got into a high southern latitude, to have steered either west about to the Cape of Good Hope, or returned to the eastward, and in our way to England, to have touched, if necessary, at Falkland's Island. Wednesday the 22nd, in latitude 16 deg. south, and not before, we found the true trade wind; and on Saturday the 25th, we had foul weather, hard gales, and a great sea to the eastward. We were now in latitude 12 deg. 15 min. south, and seeing great flocks of birds, we were inclined to think, that we were near some land, particularly several islands, one of which was called by Commodore Byron, the island of Danger; none of which, however, could we see. On the 26th, in the morning, we were in latitude 10 deg. south, and in 167 deg. west longitude. We kept nearly in the same parallel, hoping to fall in with Solomon's Islands, this being the latitude in which the southernmost of them is laid down. At this time we had a strong trade wind, with violent squalls, and much rain.

On Monday the 3rd of August, we were 5 deg. to the westward of the situation of those islands in the charts; and about 2100 leagues distant from the continent of America. We were this day in latitude 10 deg. 18 min. south, and in 177 deg. 30 min. east longitude by account; yet it was not our good fortune to fall in with any land; but probably we might pass near some, which the haziness of the weather prevented our seeing; for in this run great numbers of sea-birds were frequently hovering about the ship; however, observes Captain Carteret, "as Commodore Byron, in his last voyage sailed over the northern limits of that part of the ocean in which the islands of Solomon are said to lie, and as I sailed over the southern limits without seeing them, there is great reason to conclude, that, if there are any such islands, their situation, in all our charts, is erroneously laid down." This day the current was observed to set strongly to the southward, though it had hitherto, from the Straits of Magellan, ran in a contrary direction, whence we concluded, that the passage between New Zealand and New Holland opened here in this latitude. The difficulties which our able navigator had to contend with, will appear to have been as great as the best seamen and the firmest minds were capable of making head against, from the following description which he gives of his perplexity at this time. "Our stock of log-lines, observes the Captain, was now nearly exhausted, though we had already converted all our fishing lines to the same use. I was for some time in perplexity how to supply this defect; but upon a very diligent enquiry, found that we had, by chance, a very few fathoms of thick untarred rope. This, which in our situation, was an inestimable treasure, I ordered to be untwisted; but as the yarns were found to be too thick for our purpose, it became necessary to pick them into oakham; and when this was done, the most difficult part of the work remained; for this oakham could not be spun into yarn, till by combing it was brought into hemp, its original state. This was not seamen's work, and if it had, we should have been at a loss how to perform it for want of combs, and it was necessary to make these before we could try our skill in making hemp. Upon this trying occasion we were again sensible of the danger to which we were exposed by the want of a forge; necessity, however, the fruitful mother of invention, suggested an expedient. The armourer was set to work to file nails down to a smooth point, with which was produced a tolerable succedaneum for a comb; and one of the quarter-masters was found sufficiently skilled in the use of this instrument to render the oakham so smooth and even, that we contrived to spin it into yarn, as fine as our coarse implements would admit; and thus we made tolerable log-lines, although we found it much more difficult than to make cordage of our old cables, after they had been converted

converted into junk, which was an expedient we had been obliged to practise long before. We also had long before used all our sowing sail-twine, and if (knowing the quantity with which I had been supplied was altogether inadequate to the wants of such a voyage) I had not taken the whole quantity that had been put on board to repair the seine into my own custody, this deficiency might have been fatal to us all.

We had now sailed over upwards of 110 deg. of longitude, in a dull shattered vessel, that, on account of her bad condition would scarcely answer the helm, nor had we met with any spot of earth which would afford us effectual relief. The scurvy continued to make great progress; inasmuch, that those hands which were not rendered useless by disease, were worn down by excessive labour; and, to render our situation completely ditreous, on the 10th of August, the Swallow sprung a leak in her bows, which being under water, it was impossible to come at while we were at sea. Our situation was now in the highest degree perilous; but on Wednesday the 12th, at break of day, land was discovered, which gave fresh spirits to our almost desponding crew, and the transport of joy which this prospect occasioned, may be compared to that which a criminal feels who hears the cry of a reprieve at the place of execution. The Captain counted seven islands, and we made sail towards two of them which were right ahead, and lay very near together. In the evening we came to an anchor on the north-east side of the largest and highest of them, whereon we saw two of the natives who were negroes, with woolly heads; and who were not covered with any kind of clothing. A boat having been sent on shore, the two negroes fled, and an account was brought back by our people, that there was a fine run of fresh water opposite to the ship, but that it would be difficult to procure the water, the whole country being covered with wood quite to the sea-shore. That no vegetables for the restoration of the sick could be found; nor any habitations, as far as the country had been examined, which appeared wild, forlorn and mountainous. These circumstances, added to the danger there might be of the natives attacking us from the woods, determined the Captain to look for a more convenient landing-place. On the 13th, therefore, at day-break, the master, with 15 seamen, well armed, and provided, were sent off in the cutter to the westward, in search of a watering-place, refreshments for the sick, and a convenient situation, where the ship might be laid down in order to examine and stop her leak. He received strict orders to be upon his guard against the natives, but at the same time to conciliate their good will, to procure which he took with him a few beads and other trifles, which by chance happened to be among the ship's company: He was also enjoined particularly by the Captain, to return to the ship if any occurrence happened that might occasion hostilities: he was likewise charged on no account to leave the boat, nor to suffer more than two men to go on shore at a time, while the rest stood ready for their defence; and the Captain recommended to him, in the strongest terms, a diligent discharge of his duty, in finding out a proper place for the ship; which service, of the utmost importance to us all, when performed, he was to return with all possible speed. At the time the cutter was dispatched on this expedition, the long boat was likewise sent off, with ten men on board, well armed, which soon returned laden with water. She was dispatched a second time, but upon our observing some of the natives advancing to the landing-place, a signal was made for her to return; for we knew not to what number they might be exposed, and we had no boat to send off with assistance, in case they should have been attacked. After our men had returned on board, we saw three of the Indians, who sat down on the shore, looking steadfastly on the ship for several hours. The lieutenant was sent to them in the long boat, with a few trinkets, to endeavour to establish some kind of intercourse, by their means, with the rest of the natives; but when the three

men saw the boat approaching, they quitted their station, and moved along the coast; where they were joined by three others. When they had conferred together, the former went on, while the latter advanced hastily towards the boat. This being observed from the ship, a signal was made for the lieutenant to act with caution, who, seeing only three men of the natives, backed the boat into shore and offered them some presents as tokens of friendship, at the same time concealing carefully their arms. The Indians regardless of the beads and ribbands, advanced resolutely, and then discharged their arrows, which went over the boat without doing any mischief; upon which they ran away instantly into the woods; and our people fired in their turn, without doing any execution, not one of them being wounded by the shot. In a short time after this the cutter came under the ship's side, the master who commanded her having three arrows sticking in his body. We needed no other proof to convince us he had acted contrary to the Captain's orders, as appeared fully from his own report, which was, in substance, as follows: He said, that having seen some Indian houses, but only a few of the natives, at a place about 14 miles to the westward of the ship, he came to a grappling, and veered the boat to a beach, where he landed with four men, armed with muskets and pistols: that the Indians, at first, were afraid of him, and retired, but that soon after they came down to him, and he gave them a few trifles, with which they seemed to be much pleased: that in return they brought him a broiled fish, and some broiled yams: that, encouraged by these appearances of hospitality, he proceeded with his party to the houses, which were not more than 20 yards from the water-side, and soon after saw a great number of canoes coming round the western point of the bay, and many Indians among the trees: that being somewhat alarmed at their motions, he left hastily the house where he had been entertained, and made the best of his way towards the boat; but that before he could embark, a general attack was made, with bows and arrows, as well on those in the boat, as on those upon the shore. Their number, according to his account, was between three and four hundred; their weapons were bows and arrows; the bows were six feet five inches long, and the arrows four feet four, which, he said, they discharged in platoons, as regularly as the best disciplined troops in England: that, being thus attacked, his party found it necessary to fire upon the Indians, which they did repeatedly, killing some, and wounding many more: still however they were not discouraged; but maintained the fight, pressing forward, and discharging their arrows in almost one continued flight: that when our people arrived at the boat, a delay was occasioned in hauling her off, by the grappling being foul; during which time, he, and half of his crew were desperately wounded: that at last they cut the rope, and ran off under their fore-sail, still keeping up their fire with blunderbusses loaded with eight or ten balls, which the enemy returned with a shower of arrows, and waded after them breast-high into the sea: when they got clear of the assailants, the canoes pursued them with great vigour, nor would they retreat till one of them was sunk, and many of the people in the others were killed. This is the account of the master, which, it is reasonable to suppose, was as favourable to himself as he could make it. This rash man, with three of our best hands, died some time afterwards of the wounds they had received. It appeared from the evidence of the survivors, that the Indians behaved with the greatest confidence and friendship, until the master arrogantly ordered the people who were with him, and who had been generously entertained, to cut down a cocoa-tree: and even persisted in that order, notwithstanding the natives discovered strong marks of displeasure. The Indians hereupon withdrew, and mustering their whole force, proved by their manner of attack, that their courage was equal to their hospitality. After this disaster, Captain Carteret dropped all thoughts of removing to a more

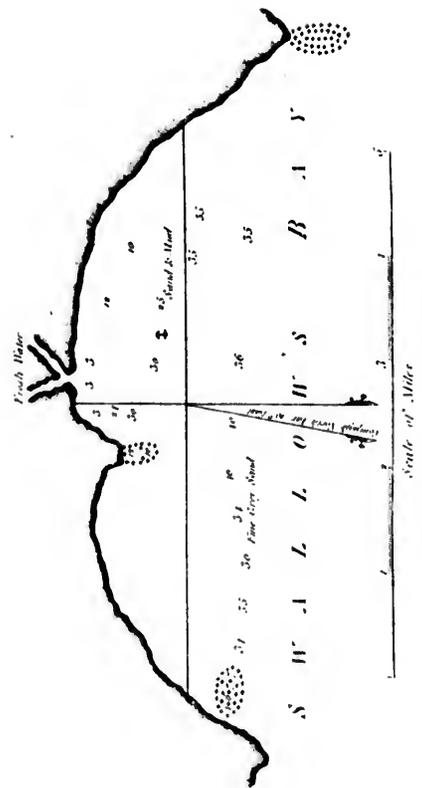
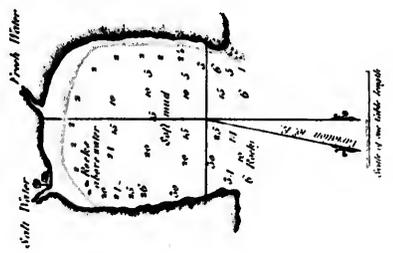
quitted their
 where they were
 and conferred to-
 latter advanced
 observed from
 lieutenant to act
 of the natives,
 ed them some
 same time con-
 sians regardless
 resolutely, and
 went over, the
 which they ran
 people fired in
 n, not one of
 a short time
 ip's side, the
 arrows sticking
 f to convince
 in's orders, as
 which was, in
 ing seen some
 ves, at a place
 he came to a
 ch, where he
 uets and pil-
 t of him, and
 own to him,
 they seemed
 ough him a
 ncouraged
 eceeded with
 t more than
 e saw a great
 tern point of
 s: that being
 ft hastily the
 d made the
 at before he
 with bows
 as on those
 g to his ac-
 ired: their
 ere six feet
 our, which,
 ularly as the
 ing thus ac-
 e upon the
 some, and
 ere not dig-
 g forward,
 continued
 he boat, a
 the grap-
 ed half of
 last they
 still keep-
 with eight
 a shower
 into the
 he canoes
 ey retreat
 people in
 t of the
 as as fa-
 his rash
 me time
 ved. It
 ors, that
 nce and
 he peo-
 nerously
 en per-
 res dif-
 ndians
 force,
 ourage
 ialter,
 ing to
 more

The North side of the longest of Queen Charlotte's Islands as it appears running along shore to the Westward.



The South side of a Village of the natives.

Byron's Harbour



London, Published by Alaric Ship at the Kings Arms in St. Pauls Church-yard

a mor
whaz
better
station
Acc
by the
the on
reduce
In the
near th
sculkin
motion
being
which
broadf
cellary
should
seen on
ble wo
their a
reduced
that lur
caused
ficed
place,
differen

Capt
and bil
had fei
able to
came li
which
aggrava
was dy
was ver
unfit fo
healthy
of the
heute
there w
ship ho
unprovi
which
the goo
with th
which t
circumd
pirited,
thought
ward,
proper
therefo
mont's
but Ca
New C
opinion
gave th
lay wa
thereof
The N
ron. F
E. and
miles.
the bot
ward o
it is ne
thoally
Point
From
high:
and ar
was fe
way'
beach,
bay b
called
the la
shore
distan
Howe

a more eligible harbour, but he determined to try what could be done towards putting the ship in a better condition, while we continued in our present station,

Accordingly, Friday the 14th, she was brought down by the stern, and means were found by our carpenter, the only one of the whole crew in tolerable health, to reduce the leak, though he could not quite stop it. In the afternoon the Swallow rode with her stern very near the shore; and we observed several of the natives skulking among the trees upon the beach, watching our motions. On the 15th, in the morning, the weather being fine, the ship was veered close in shore, upon which, having a spring upon our cable, we brought her broadside to bear. It was now become absolutely necessary, for the preservation of all on board, that water should be procured; but the only spring that had been seen on the island was skirted with a thick impenetrable wood, from whence the Indians could discharge their arrows unperceived; the Captain was therefore reduced to the painful necessity of driving them from that lurking-place, by discharging the ship's guns, which caused the lives of many of the natives to be sacrificed; for at the time the people were at the watering-place, their ears were assailed by dreadful groans from different parts of the wood, like those of dying men.

Captain Carteret had long been ill of an inflammatory and bilious disorder, of a nature similar to that which had seized Captain Wallis; yet, hitherto, he had been able to keep the deck; but this day the symptoms became so violent as to compel him to take to his bed, to which he was confined for some time afterwards. To aggravate our misfortunes, the master of the Swallow was dying of his wounds; Mr. Gower, our lieutenant, was very ill; the gunner and 30 of our seamen were unfit for duty; among which last were seven of the most healthy, who had been wounded with the master, three of them mortally; the recovery of the Captain and lieutenant was very doubtful; and, except these two, there was no one on board capable of navigating the ship home. It has already been observed, that we were unprovided with any toys, iron tools, or cutlery ware, which might have given us a chance for recovering the good-will of the natives, and establishing a traffic with them for those refreshments we most needed, and which they could have furnished us with. Under these circumstances, whereby our people were greatly disappointed, our commander was obliged to lay aside all thoughts of prosecuting the voyage farther to the southward, which the Captain intended, as soon as the proper season should return. On Monday the 17th, therefore, we weighed, having called this place Egmont's Island, in honour of a noble earl of that name; but Captain Carteret, in his chart, has called this island New Guernsey, of which he was a native. In his opinion it is the same as that to which the Spaniards gave the name of Santa Cruz. The place in which we lay was called Swallow Bay; the easternmost point thereof Swallow Point; the westernmost, Hanway's Point. The N.E. promontory of the island was named Cape Byron. From Swallow Point to Cape Byron is about 7 miles E. and from Hanway's Point to Cape Byron is about 10 miles. Between Swallow Point and Hanway's Point, in the bottom of the bay is a third point, a little to the westward of which we found the best anchoring-place, but it is necessary to give it birth, the ground near it being shoally. When we lay at anchor in this bay, Swallow Point bore E. by N. and Hanway's Point W. N. W. From hence a reef runs, whereon the sea breaks very high: the outer part of this reef bears N. W. by W.; and an island which has the appearance of a volcano, was seen just over the breakers. A little beyond Hanway's Point is a small village, which stands upon the beach, surrounded with cocoa-nut trees. It lies in a bay between Hanway's Point and another, which we called Howe's Point; the distance from the former to the latter is about five miles. We found close to the shore 30 fathoms water, but in crossing the bay, at the distance of two miles, we had no bottom. Beyond Howe's Point, another harbour opens, which had the

appearance of a deep lagoon, this we called Carlisle Harbour. Over against its entrance, and north of the coast, a small island was discovered, which we named Portland's Island. A reef of rocks runs on the west side of this to the main; and the passage into the harbour is on the east-side of it, running in and out E. N. E. and W. S. W. its width is two cables length, and it has eight fathoms water. The harbour may be a commodious one, but a ship must be warped both in and out, and would be in danger if attacked by the natives, who are bold even to temerity, and have a perseverance, not common among rude savages. West of Portland's Island, is a fine small round harbour, just big enough to receive three vessels, which was named Byron's Harbour. Our boat having entered it, found two runs of water, one fresh and the other salt; from observing the latter we judged it had a communication with Carlisle Harbour. Having proceeded about three leagues from where the Swallow lay at anchor, we opened the bay where the cutter had been attacked by the Indians, which we called for that reason Bloody Bay. Here is a rivulet of fresh water, and many houses regularly built. Near the water-side stood one neatly built and thatched; it seemed to be a kind of council-room, or state-house, and was much longer than any of the rest. In this the master and his party had been courteously received by the natives, before the wanton cutting down of the cocoa-nut tree. We were informed by those of our people who had been received here, that a large number of arrows were hung in bundles round the room, the floor and sides of which were covered with matting. In the neighbourhood of this place, they said, were many plantations enclosed by stone-walls and planted with fruit trees; the cocoa-nut trees we could discern from the ship, in great numbers, among the houses of the village. Three miles westward of this, we saw another village of considerable extent, in the front whereof, towards the sea, was an angular kind of breast-work, of stone, and near five feet high. Three miles from hence, as we proceeded westward, a bay was discovered, into which a river empties itself. It appeared, when viewed from the mast head, to run very far into the country, and we called it Granville's River. Westward of it is a point, which we named Ferrer's Point; from whence the land forms a large bay, near which is a town of great extent that seemed to swarm like a bee-hive. While the ship sailed by, an incredible number of the inhabitants came forth from their houses, holding something like a wisp of grass in their hands, with which they appeared to stroke each other, at the same time dancing, or running in rings. Sailing on about seven miles to the westward, we saw another point, on which was a large canoe, with an awning over it. To this we gave the name of Cape Carteret. From this a reef of rocks, that appears above water, runs out to the distance of about a cable's length. At a small distance was another village, fortified as that before mentioned. The inhabitants of this place likewise danced as the others had done; after which many of them launched their canoes and made towards the ship: upon which we lay to, that they might have time to come up; but when they approached near enough to have a distinct view of the Swallow, they lay upon their paddles, gazed at us, but would advance no farther. Being thus disappointed in our hopes of prevailing upon them to come on board, we made sail, and left them behind us. From Carteret Point the land trends away W. S. W. and S. W. forming a deep lagoon, at the mouth of which lies an island, which was named Trevanion's Island. There are two entrances into the lagoon, which, if it affords good anchorage, is certainly a fine harbour for shipping. Having crossed the first entrance, and being off the N. W. part of Trevanion's Island, which was named Cape Trevanion, we saw a great rippling, caused by the meeting of the tides. Having hauled round this cape, we perceived the land trend to the southward, and we continued to stand along the shore, till we opened the western passage into the lagoon between Trevanion's Island and the main; both of which, at this place, appeared

peared to be one continued town, and the inhabitants were innumerable. We found in this entrance a bottom of coral rock, with very irregular soundings. The natives no sooner observed that the boat had left the ship, than they sent off several armed canoes, who advanced to attack her. The first that came within bow-shot discharged her arrows at our people, who, being prepared, fired a volley, by which one of the Indians was killed, and another wounded. We fired at the same time from the ship, a great gun loaded with grape shot, on which all the canoes pulled hard for the shore, except the one with the wounded man, who being brought to the ship, the surgeon was ordered to examine his wounds, one shot had gone through his head, and one of his arms was broke by another. The surgeon was of opinion, that the former wound was mortal, in consequence of this he was put again into his canoe, and, notwithstanding his condition, he with one hand paddled away towards the shore. He was a young fellow, almost as black as a negro of Guinea, with a woolly head; of a common stature, well featured, and, like the rest of the people we had seen upon this island, quite naked. His canoe had an out-rigger, without a sail, but in workmanship it was very rude, being nothing more than part of the trunk of a tree wade hollow. We were now at the western extremity of the island; and the distance between that and the eastern extremity is 30 miles due E. and W. A strong current sets westward along the shore. The natives of Egmont Island are extremely nimble, active, and vigorous; and seem to be almost equally qualified to live in the water as upon land, for they were in and out of their canoes every minute. Their common canoes are capable of carrying about a dozen men, though three or four manage them with amazing dexterity. The men have a daring fortitude, which proves them to be descended from the same stock as those who now inhabit the Philippine Isles, lying about 45 degrees more to the westward, whose contempt of death was really astonishing when the city of Manilla was defended against the English, under the command of Sir William Draper.

As we sailed along shore, to raise our mortification to the highest pitch, hogs and poultry were seen in great abundance, with cocoa-nut trees, plantains, bananas, and a variety of vegetable productions, which would soon have restored to us the health and vigour we had lost, by the hardships of a long voyage: but no friendly intercourse with the natives could now be expected, and we were not in a situation to obtain what we wanted by force: besides, great part of the crew were disabled by sickness, and the rest were much depressed in their spirits, by a continual succession of disappointments and vexations; and if the men had been in health, we had not officers to lead them on, or direct them in any enterprize, nor even to superintend the duties that were

to be performed on board the ship; for even the Captain himself was still confined to his bed, dangerously ill. Thus situated, unable to proceed farther to the south, and in danger of being too late for the monsoon, he gave immediate orders for steering north-westward, with a view to fall in with the land which Dampier has distinguished by the name of Nova Britannia, and which was now distant about 12 deg. of longitude. In our distressful situation, it could not be expected, that Captain Carteret should examine all the islands we touched at; curiosity must yield to the instinctive principle of self-preservation; but we gave particular names to several of those we approached: and to the whole cluster we gave the general name of Queen Charlotte's Islands. To the southernmost of the two, which when we first discovered land were right a-head; the name was given of Lord Howe's Island, and the other was Egmont Island, of which we have already given a particular account. The latitude of Lord Howe's Island is 11 deg. 10 min. south; longitude 164 deg. 43 min. east. The latitude of Cape Byron, the N. E. point of Egmont Island, is 10 deg. 40 min. south; longitude 164 deg. 49 min. east. These two islands lie exactly in a line with each other, about N. by W. and S. by E. and including the passage between them, extend 11 leagues; the passage is very broad. Both of them appear to be fertile, have a pleasant appearance, and are covered with tall trees of a beautiful verdure. Lord Howe's Island, which is more upon a level than the other, is nevertheless high land. From Cape Byron, distant 13 leagues W. N. W. half N. by compass, is an island of a stupendous height, and in the figure of a cone. Its top is shaped like a funnel, from whence smoke issues, but we saw no flame; we thought it, however to be a volcano, and therefore called it Volcano Island. To a long flat island, that, when Howe's and Egmont's Island were right a-head, bore N. W. we gave the name of Keppel's Island. It is situated in latitude 10 deg. 15 min. south; longitude, by our account, 165 deg. 4 min. east. We discovered two others to the S. E. The largest we named Lord Edgcomb's Island, and the smaller Ourry's Island. The former, which has a fine appearance, lies in latitude 11 deg. 10 min. south; longitude 165 deg. 14 min. east, the latter is in latitude 11 deg. 10 min. south; longitude 165 deg. 19 min. east. Egmont Island, in general, is woody and mountainous, intermixed with many beautiful valleys. Several small rivers flow from the interior parts of the country into the sea, and we have mentioned many harbours upon the coast. The inhabitants, whom we have particularly described, do execution at an incredible distance with their arrows. One of them went through the boat's wash-board, and dangerously wounded a midshipman in the thigh. They were pointed with flint, and we saw among them no signs of any metal.

C H A P. II.

The Swallow departs from Queen Charlotte's Islands—Her run to Nova Britannia—Other islands discovered, with a description of them, and their inhabitants—Nova Britannia found to be two islands, with a strait between them—Several small islands discovered in the strait, with an account of the land and natives on each side—The Swallow enters St. George's Channel—Passage from thence to the island of Mindanao—A description of many islands that were seen, and incidents in this course—A geographical account of the coast of Mindanao, and the islands near it—Errors of all navigators corrected—The Swallow continues her voyage from Mindanao to the island of Celebes—A particular description of the strait of Macassar—Transactions while the Swallow lay off the town.

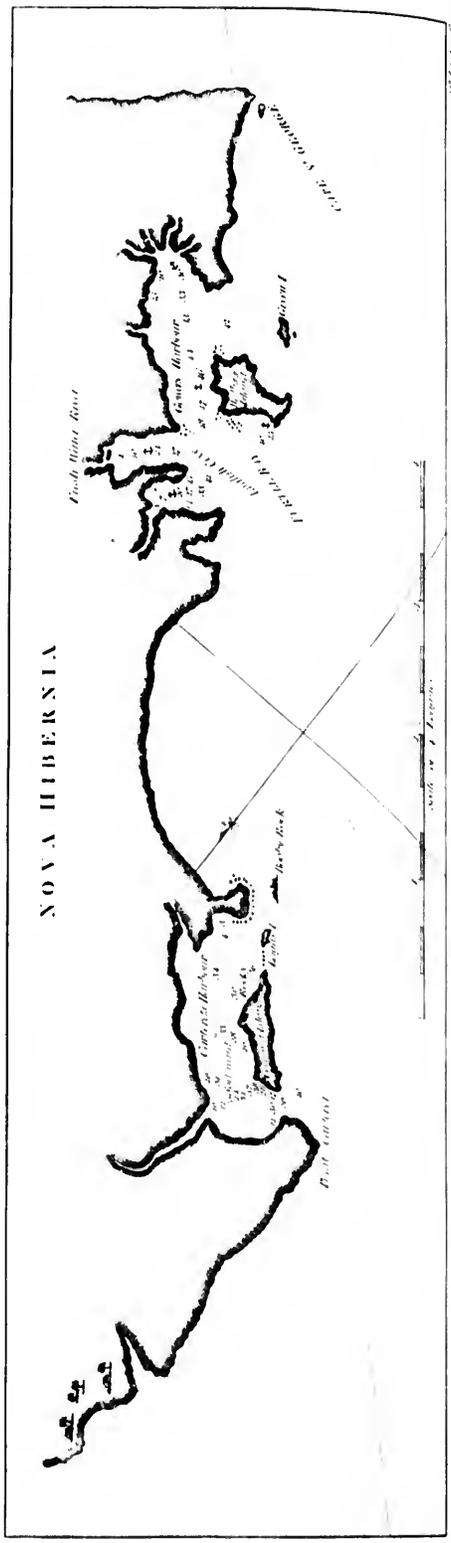
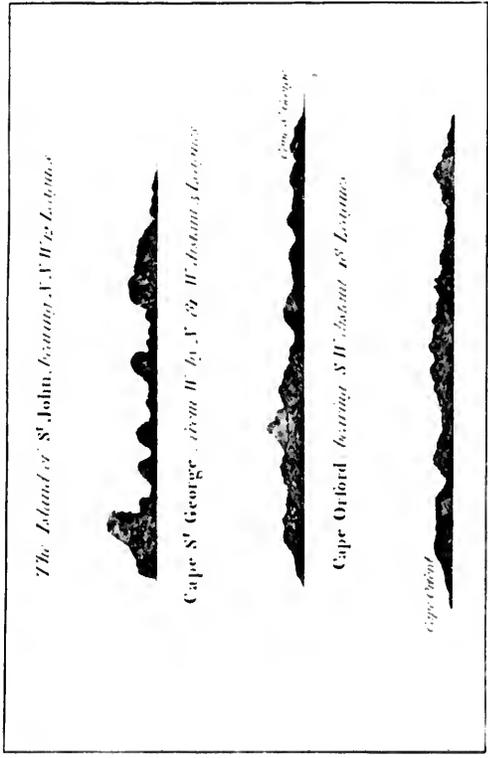
TUESDAY the 18th of August, we took our departure from Egmont Island, one of the cluster of islands which the Captain named Queen Charlotte's, with a fresh trade wind from the eastward. On the 20th a small flat island was discovered; and named after Mr. Gower, our lieutenant. It lies in latitude 7 deg. 56 min. south; longitude 158 deg. 56 min. east. The natives did not differ in any thing material, from those of the islands we had lately left; but some cocoa-nuts

were here procured in exchange for nails: and the inhabitants had intimated that they would furnish a fresh supply the next morning, being Friday the 21st, but, at day break, we found that a current had set the ship considerably to the southward of the island, and brought us in sight of two other islands. They are situated nearly E. and W. of each other, at the distance of about two miles. The smallest, which lies to the eastward, we called Simpson's Island, and to the other, which

ven the Cap-
angerously ill.
to the south,
monsoon, he
th-westward,
Dampier has
ia, and which
ude. In our
ed, that Cap-
e we touched
e principle of
ar names to
e whole cluf-
Charlotte's
which when
the name was
was Egmont
particular ac-
ed is 21 deg.
n. east. The
of Egmont
164 deg. 49.
n a line with
nd including
es; the pal-
to be fertile,
ed with tall
land, which
rtheless high
s W. N. W.
lous height,
aped like a
w no flame;
nd therefore
land, that,
ght a-head,
land. It
longitude,
discovered
amed Lord
land. The
in latitude
g. 24 min.
min. south;
land, in
mixed with
flow from
ea, and we
ast. The
cribed, do
eir arrows.
board, and
gh. They
r them no

with a
them—
Swallow
that were
Errors of
A par-

of the in-
urnish a
he 21st,
if set the
nd, and
they are
distance
to the
e other,
which



CAPTAIN

which has
Carteret's
fourth, and
leagues.
south; lon
from E. to
to the wi
Island, wh
the cocoa
natives ha
in it we fo
acceptable.
to men, a
joined. It
rudely pain
flance lom
to its size,
at Egmont
and their a
been seen
addition to
made, poi
were not w
some turtl
enough to
here, and
vice to th
Egmont I
southward,
islands, its
north-well
in with th
the bad co
would have
got to sea
or deep ba
course wi
who was d
some accid
overboard
Island, bro
but the ur
funk at o
our efforts
cut up, fr
against one
overboard.

On Mo
stretching
in latitude
17 min. e
the fame
him Oha
never bec
of opinion
this part
fiderable
large rock
with woo
to the no
strong fe
in with a
By the n
but we f
green ile
in latitu
leagues f
the 25th
high illa
Island;
ten leag
day the
ward, w
was seen
Not ma
Swallow
or gull,
St. Geo
tude 15
the bo

34

which has a lofty appearance, we gave the name of Carteret's Island. From Gower's, the east end bears south, and the distance between them is nearly 11 leagues. Carteret's Island is in latitude 8 deg. 26 min. south; longitude 159 deg. 14 min. east, and its length from E. to W. is 18 miles. As both these islands were to the windward of us, we sailed again to Gower's Island, which abounds with fine trees, many of them of the cocoa-nut kind. Here a canoe was seized, the natives having attempted to cut off the ship's boat: in it we found about 100 cocoa-nuts, which were very acceptable. The canoe was large enough to carry 10 men, and was very neatly built, with planks well joined. It was adorned with shell-work, and figures rudely painted, and the seams were covered with a substance somewhat like our black putty. With respect to its size, it was much larger than any one we had seen at Egmont Island. The appearance of these Indians, and their arms, were much the same as those that had been seen more to the eastward, only spears made an addition to their weapons. By some signs which they made, pointing to our muskets, we concluded they were not wholly unacquainted with fire-arms. We saw some turtle near the beach, but were not fortunate enough to take any of them; but the cocoa-nuts we got here, and at Egmont Island, were of inexpressible service to the sick. As from the time of our leaving Egmont Island we had a current setting strongly to the southward, and finding, in the neighbourhood of these islands, its force greatly increased, we now steered a north-westerly course, fearing we might otherwise fall in with the main land too far to the southward; and the bad condition of the ship, and sickness of the crew, would have rendered it impossible for us ever to have got to sea again, if we had been driven into any gulph or deep bay. On the 22nd, as we were continuing our course with a fresh gale, Patrick Dwyer, a marine, who was doing something over the ship's quarter, by some accident fell into the sea: we immediately threw on-board the canoe we had made a prize of at Gower's Island, brought the ship to, and hoisted out the cutter, but the unfortunate man, though strong and healthy, sunk at once, and was drowned, notwithstanding all our efforts to save him. The canoe we were obliged to cut up, she having received much damage by striking against one of the guns as our people were hoisting her overboard.

On Monday the 24th, we fell in with nine islands, stretching N. W. and S. E. about 15 leagues, and lying in latitude 4 deg. 36 min. south; longitude 154 deg. 17 min. east. These Captain Carteret supposes to be the same which were seen by Tafman, and called by him Ohang Java: the other islands he believes had never been visited by any European before: and he is of opinion, that there is much land not yet known in this part of the ocean. One of these islands is of considerable extent: the other eight are little better than large rocks; but, though low and flat, they are covered with wood, and abound with inhabitants. We steered to the northward of these islands, W. by S. having a strong south-westerly current. In the night we fell in with another pleasant island of considerable extent. By the many fires we saw, it appeared to be inhabited, but we saw none of the natives. We called this flat, green isle, Sir Charles Hardy's Island. It is situated in latitude 4 deg. 50 min. south; and bore west 15 leagues from the northernmost of the nine islands. On the 25th, at day break we discovered another large high island, which received the name of Winchelsea's Island; and is distant from Sir Charles Hardy's Island ten leagues, in the direction of S. by E. On Wednesday the 26th, an island was discovered to the northward, which the Captain supposed to be the same that was seen by Schouten; and called the island of St. John. Not many hours after, Nova Britannia appeared, and the Swallow entered what was thought to be a deep bay, or gulph, which Dampier had distinguished by the name of St. George's Bay. It lies in latitude 5 deg. south; longitude 152 deg. 19 min. east. Here we cast anchor, while the boats went to search for a good harbour; which, when

they returned, and reported to have found, the united strength of the whole ship's company was not sufficient to weigh the anchor; an instance of debility somewhat similar to that related in Commodore Anson's voyage, when the Centurion arrived at Tinian. It was not until the next day, when our strength was somewhat recruited that the anchor was brought up, and it was then found to have been so much injured, as to be totally unserviceable. No fish could be caught, either by the seine, or hook and line: some rock oysters and cockles were however, obtained, and in the country some cocoa-nuts, with wood and water. The upper part of the tree which bears the cocoa-nut, is called the cabbage, which is a white, crisp, juicy substance; if eaten raw it tastes somewhat like a chestnut, but when boiled is superior to the best parsnip. This was cut small into the broth, which was made of the portable soup, and being thickened with some oatmeal, made a most comfortable mess; for each of these cabbages we were forced to cut down a tree, which was done with great regret, but the depredation on the parent stock was unavoidable. This regimen, with the milk of the nut, relieved the sick presently, and recovered them very fast. Here we found nutmeg-trees in great plenty: they did not appear to be the best sort, which may be owing partly to their growing wild, and partly to their being too much in the shade of taller trees: all the different sorts of palm were also found. We likewise received great refreshment from the fruit of a tall tree, that resembles a plumb, and particularly that which in the West Indies is called the Jamaica plumb. Here we saw many trees, shrubs, and plants, altogether unknown; but no esculent vegetables of any kind. In the woods, a large bird with black plumage was seen, which made a noise like the barking of a dog. The only quadrupeds some of our people saw, were two of a small size, which were supposed to be dogs: they were very wild, and ran with great swiftness. None of the human race appeared, but we found several deserted habitations. By the shells scattered about them, with some sticks half burnt, and the embers of a fire, it appeared, that the natives had but just left the place when the Swallow arrived, or more probably they fled at her approach. If the people may be judged of from the appearance of their dwellings, they must stand low even in the scale of savage life, for they were the most miserable hovels we had ever seen. A small island in this bay we called Wallis's Island. The harbour, in which our ship lay, received the name of English Cove; and here Captain Carteret took possession of the country, with all its islands, bays, ports, and harbours, for the King his master; nailing upon a high tree a piece of board, faced with lead, on which was engraved an English union, the name of the ship, and her commander; the name given to the cove; and the time of coming in and sailing out of it.

On the 7th of September, being Monday, we left this cove, and anchored on the same day almost close to a grove of cocoa-nut trees, where plentifully supplied ourselves with fruit and the cabbage. We called this place Carteret's Harbour, which being formed by the main and two islands, one of them was named Leigh's, and the other Cocoa-nut Island. The Captain now resolved to sail for Batavia, while the moon continued favourable: on the 9th, therefore, we weighed anchor, and when about four leagues from land, the wind and current being both against us, we steered round the coast into a channel between two islands, which channel was divided by another island, to which Captain Carteret gave the name of the Duke of York's Island, near which are several smaller islands. To the south of the largest of them are three hills of singular form, which were called the Mother and Daughters, one of which we supposed to be a volcano from the large clouds of smoke that were seen issuing from it. A point we called Cape Palliser, lies to the east of these hills, and Cape Stephens to the west; north of which last, lies an island, which took the name of the Isle of Man. The country in general is mountainous and woody, and was supposed to be inhabited, from the number of fires seen

on it in the night. On the Duke of York's Island, the houses were situated among groves of cocoa-nut trees, and thus formed a most beautiful prospect. We brought to, for the night, and sailed again in the morning, when some of the Indians put off in canoes toward the ship; but the wind being fair and blowing fresh, it was not thought prudent to wait for them. We now steered N. W. by W. and lost sight of New Britain on the 11th, when it was found that what had been taken for a bay, was a strait, and it was called St. George's Channel, whilft the island on the north of it received the name of New Ireland. In the evening we discovered a large island, well clothed with verdure, which was denominated Sandwich Island: off this island the ship lay great part of the night, during which time a perpetual noise resembling the sound of a drum was heard from the shore. When we had almost cleared the strait, the weather falling calm, a number of canoes approached the ship, and though their crews could not be prevailed on to go on board, they exchanged some trivials with us for nails and bits of iron, which they preferred to every thing else that was offered them. Though the canoes of these people were formed out of single trees, they were between 80 and 100 feet in length. The natives were negroes, and their hair was of the woolly kind; but they had neither thick lips nor flat noses. They wore shell-work on their legs and arms, but were otherwise naked. Their hair and beards were powdered with white powder, and a feather was stuck into the head of each, above the ear. Their weapons consisted of a long stick and a spear: and it was observed, that they had fishing-nets and cordage.

Sailing from hence westward, we came in sight of the S. W. point of the island; it was called Cape Byron: near which is an island of considerable extent, which received the name of New Hanover. The strait we had now passed was called Byron's Strait: one of the largest islands we had seen, Byron's Island, and the S. W. point of New Hanover, Queen Charlotte's Foreland. On the following day, we saw several small islands, which received the name of the Duke of Portland's Islands. Having completely navigated St. George's Channel, the whole length of which is about 100 leagues, we held on a westward course, and on Monday the 14th, discovered several islands. The next morning some hundreds of the natives came off in canoes towards the ship, and were invited on board by every token of friendship and good will: notwithstanding which, when they came within reach, they threw several lances at the seamen on the deck. A great gun and several musquets were then fired at them, by which some were killed or wounded; on which they rowed towards shore; and after they had got to a distance, a shot was fired, so as to fall beyond them, to convince them that they were not out of the reach of the guns. Soon after, some other canoes advanced from a distant part of the island, and one of them coming nearer than the rest, the people in it were invited on board the ship: instead of complying, they threw in a number of darts and lances. This assault was returned by the firing of several musquets, by which one of the Indians was killed; on which his companions jumped over-board, and swam to the other canoes, all of whom rowed to the shore. The canoe being taken on board, was found to contain turtle, and some other fish, also a fruit of a species between an apple and a plumb, hitherto unknown to Europeans. These people were mostly negroes, with woolly hair, which they powdered, and went naked, except the ornaments of shells round their arms and legs. We now coasted along the islands, to which we gave the general name of the Admiralty Islands. They have a beautiful appearance, being covered with woods, groves of cocoa-nut trees and the houses of the natives. The largest we computed to be about 50 miles in length; and they produce many valuable articles, particularly spices. We discovered two small verdant islands, on Saturday the 19th, which were called Durour's Island and Matty's Island, the inhabitants of which last ran along the coast with lights during the

night. We had sight of other two small islands on the 14th, which were called Stephens's Islands, and which abounded with beautiful trees. We saw also three islands on Friday the 25th, in the evening, when the natives came off in canoes, and went on board the ship. They bartered cocoa-nuts for some bits of iron, with which metal they did not seem unacquainted, and appeared extravagantly fond of it. They called it parram, and hinted that a ship sometimes touched at their islands. These people were of the copper colour, and had fine black hair; but their beards were very small, as they were continually plucking the hair from their faces. Their teeth were even and white, and their countenances very agreeable. They were so extremely active that they ran up to the mast-head quicker than the sailors. Every thing that was given them they ate and drank with freedom, and seemed to have no sort of reserve in their behaviour. A piece of fine matting wrapped round their waists, constituted the whole of their dress, and good nature appeared to be the only rule of their actions. The current carrying the ship swiftly along, the Captain had not the opportunity of landing; and was therefore obliged to refuse gratifying these friendly people in that particular, though they very readily offered that some of their people should remain as hostages for the safe return of any of the officers or ship's company who should chuse to go on shore. Finding that their offer was not accepted, one of the Indians absolutely refused to quit the ship: he was carried in consequence, as far as the island of Celebes, where he died. This man was named Joseph Freewill, and we called the largest of the isles, Freewill Island, (by the natives called Pegan.) The names of the two other islands were Onata and Onello.

An island was discovered from the mast-head as we held on our course, on Monday the 28th, in the evening, but we neither landed there nor gave it a name. Monday, the 12th of October, we saw a small isle which we named Current Island, from the great strength of the southerly current in those parts; and the next day two islands were discovered, to which we gave the name of St. Andrew's Island. The next land appeared to be Mindanao, along the S. E. part of which we coasted, seeking for a bay which Dampier had described; but this we could not find. The boat, however, found a little cove at the southern extremity of the isle, near which a town and fort were seen. The people having descried the boat from the shore, a gun was fired, and several canoes came off after it. The lieutenant therefore retreated towards the ship, which when the canoes discovered, they retired and made towards the shore. We now stood to the eastward, and on Monday the 2d of November, anchored in a bay near the shore, whither the boats were dispatched to take in water. No signs appeared of that part of the island being inhabited: a canoe however came round a point, seemingly with a view of observing us, which rowed back again, after having taken a survey of the vessel. In the night, a great noise was heard on the shore, somewhat like the war-song of the Americans. The Captain therefore made proper preparations to defend himself in case hostilities should be commenced on the part of the islanders. One of the boats was sent on shore for water the next morning, and the other was ordered to hold herself in readiness, in case her assistance should be necessary. The crew had no sooner landed than several armed men came forward from the woods, and one of them held up something white, which being construed as a sign of amity, the Captain having no white flag on board, determined to send the lieutenant with a table cloth in order to answer the token of peace. For the present this had the desired effect. Two Indians, who spoke bad Dutch and Spanish, having at last made themselves understood by the officer, in the latter language, made several inquiries which chiefly turned upon desiring to be informed, whether the ship belonged to the States of Holland, and whether she was bound to Batavia or elsewhere. He also wanted to know

know wh
of guns
particular
some arm
lieutenant
he convey
When the
thinking
especially
while he
hundreds
their targ
defiance,
and arrow
hostile ap
sible, to a
and for t
display ag
approach
one of th
stool, bu
summons
arrows of
were Dur
shore, to
the dispos
irritated
ing inform
Carteret
Deceitful
but soon
altered hi
which wa
in such a

On Sat
strait of
of Celebes
at this fir
the west
boats fish
sight of
with ver
the T
crossed t
latitude;
violent,
now divid
the r
Nofters
more the
noctial l
us at th
time the
and wh
after in
seen the
guns an
enemy,
to the
Swallow
persons
belong
engage
infected
The
12th, v
almost
being
tavia,
we co
it was
on the
our de
distan
day th
Th
late th
that it
himf

know whether she was a ship of war, and what number of guns she carried. Having been relieved as to these particulars, he said they might proceed to the town; some armed Indians were ordered to retreat, and the lieutenant presented a silk handkerchief to the person he conversed with, receiving a neckcloth in return. When the Captain heard this, he was highly pleased, thinking that all matters were now in a proper train, especially as he had received a supply of water: but while he was enjoying this prospect, he perceived some hundreds of armed Indians on the shore, who held up their targets, and brandished their swords, by way of defiance, and at the same time discharged their lances and arrows towards the vessel. Notwithstanding this hostile appearance, the Captain was still willing, if possible, to avoid coming to extremities with the islanders, and for that purpose, sent the lieutenant on shore to display again the former sign of peace. As the boat approached the shore, but without landing her men, one of the natives beckoned them to come where he stood, but the lieutenant did not chuse to obey this summons, lest he should come within reach of the arrows of the islanders. He now concluded that there were Dutchmen or people in the Dutch interest on shore, to whose interference this apparent alteration in the disposition of the natives was owing, and who had irritated the natives against the Swallow's crew, on being informed that she was an English vessel. Captain Carteret however sailed from this place, which he called Deceitful Bay, with a full intention to visit the town; but soon after the wind blowing violently in shore, he altered his resolution, and steered directly for Batavia, which was probably the best course he could have taken in such a critical situation.

On Saturday the 14th of November, we reached the strait of Macassar, which strait lies between the islands of Celebes and Borneo. To a point of the former, we at this time gave the name of Hurmook Point; and to the westward of this point we discovered a great many boats fishing upon the shoals. On the 21st, we were in sight of two very small islands, which were covered with verdure, and Captain Carteret supposed them to be the Taba Isles, mentioned in the French charts. We crossed the equinoctial line, and came into southern latitude; on Sunday the 29th, the tornadoes becoming violent, and the current setting against us. Death had now diminished the crew, and sickness was daily weakening the remainder. We had sight of the Little Pater-Nosters (islands so called) which are situate something more than two degrees to the southward of the equinoctial line, but the winds and currents would not suffer us at that time to land for any refreshment. At this time the whole crew were alike afflicted with the scurvy; and what was very distressing we were attacked soon after, in the night by a piratical vessel, which had been seen the evening before. She engaged us with swivel guns and small arms: but though we could not see the enemy, we returned her fire so warmly that we sent her to the bottom, and all her crew perished. As to the Swallow she received some small damages, and had two persons wounded on board. The vessel that she sunk belonged to a pirate who had no less than thirty of them engaged in the business of plunder, which constantly infested these seas.

The diseases of our men now daily increased. By the 12th, we had lost 13 of our crew, and 30 others were almost on the point of death. The westerly monsoon being set in we could have no hopes of reaching Batavia, and our situation was such that we must perish if we could not speedily make land. On this account, it was resolved to steer for Macassar, a Dutch settlement on the island of Celebes; and happily we accomplished our design, coming to anchor off that island, at the distance of more than a league from Macassar, on Tuesday the 15th of December.

The governor sent a Dutchman on board the Swallow late that night, who seemed much alarmed on finding that she was an English ship of war, and would not trust himself in the cabin. Early the next morning, the

Captain dispatched a letter to the governor, requesting leave to buy provisions, and to shelter his ship till the season for sailing westward came on. The boat arriving at the shore, none of the crew were suffered to land; and, the lieutenant having refused to deliver the letter to any but the governor himself; two officers, called the Shebandar and the Fiscal, came to him with a message, importing that the governor was sick and had commanded them to come for the letter. The lieutenant, though he thought this was only a mere pretence, at length delivered the letter, which they took away with them. After the boat's crew had waited without any refreshments for several hours in the heat of the sun, they were told that the governor had ordered two gentlemen to wait on their Captain with an answer. As the boat lay off the wharf, our people on board observed a great hurry on shore, and concluded that all hands were busy in fitting out armed vessels, a circumstance which could not much contribute to our satisfaction. But according to the promise given, soon after the boat's return, two gentlemen of the names of De Cerf and Douglas, came with dispatches, desiring, that the ship might instantly depart from the port, without coming any nearer to the town; insisting that she should not anchor on any part of the coast, and that the Captain should not permit any of the people to land on any place under the governor's jurisdiction.

The Captain could not but sensibly feel the cruelty of this proceeding. As the strongest argument that could be used in answer to the letter, he shewed his dying men to the gentlemen, and urged the necessity of the case; nor could they but feel the propriety of granting refreshments to the subjects of a power at peace with their country, and who were in such a deplorable situation; but they observed that their orders were absolute and must be obeyed. Incensed at this treatment, Captain Carteret, at last, declared, that he would come to an anchor close to the town, and then if they persisted in refusing him necessary refreshments, that he would run the ship aground, when his crew would sell their lives as dear as possible. Being alarmed at this declaration, they intreated the Captain to remain in his present situation till further orders should arrive. This he promised, on condition that an answer should be sent before the setting in of the sea-breeze the next day.

In the morning early, it was observed that a sloop of war, and another vessel with soldiers on board, anchored under the ship's bows. They refused to speak with Captain Carteret, and as he weighed and set sail with the sea-breeze, they did the same, and closely followed him. As he proceeded, a vessel from the town approached him, wherein were several gentlemen, and Mr. Douglas among them; but, till the Swallow dropped anchor they could not come on board. They expressed some surprize at the English vessel's having advanced so far; but the Captain alledged that he had only acted according to his former declaration, which his present situation would sufficiently justify to every candid person.

These gentlemen brought with them two sheep, some fowls, fruit, and other provisions, which were extremely welcome to the English; but, after they had made several proposals, with which he could not comply, he shewed them the dead body of a man who had expired but a few hours before, and whose life might probably have been saved, had the Dutch sent them a timely supply of refreshments, and again declared his resolution of executing what he had threatened, if they would not comply with his requisition. His guests now enquired whether the ship had touched at the spice islands, and were answered in the negative. At last it was agreed, that the Swallow should sail for a bay at a little distance, where an hospital for the sick might be provided, and where provisions were generally plentiful, and, if there was a want of any article, they might be supplied occasionally from the town. It will be imagined that a proposal of this kind was readily agreed to by Captain Carteret; all he insisted upon was, that it should be ratified by the governor and council, which was afterwards

wards done in the proper manner. He could not forbear asking, however, for what reason the two vessels had anchored under his ship's bows. He received for answer, that this was only done in a friendly manner, to protect her from any insult that might be offered by the natives of the country. While this treaty was going forward, the English Captain had nothing to give his guests but rotten biscuit and bad salt meat: however, they had ordered an elegant dinner to be dressed on board their own vessel, which was afterwards served up at his table, and they parted in friendship.

The next day an officer from the town came on board, to whom the Captain applied to get money for his bills on the English government. He promised to endeavour to do this, and for that purpose went on shore, but when he returned in the evening, he said that there was no person in the town that had any cash to remit to Europe, and that the company's chest was quite empty. This was a great difficulty; however it was surmounted at last by an order being sent to the Resident at Bonthain, who had money to remit, and who, in consequence received the bills in question.

C H A P. III.

The Swallow sails from Macassar to Bonthain—Transactions during her stay at this place—A description of the town of Macassar and the circumjacent country—She proceeds from the bay of Bonthain, in the island of Celebes, to Batavia, in the island of Java—Remarkable incidents and transactions—The Swallow anchors at Onrust, in order to have her defects repaired—An account of the Dutch governor, and the courteous behaviour of Admiral Houting to Captain Carteret—The Swallow being refitted departs from Onrust—Loses many of her hands by sickness—Arrives at Princes Island in the Strait of Sunda—Run from thence to the Cape of Good Hope—Anchors in Table Bay—Makes the island of St. Helena—Proceeds to the island of Ascension, and comes to anchor in Cross Hill Bay—Continues her voyage—Is hailed by a French ship, commanded by M. Borgainville—Enters the English Channel—And, after a fine passage, and fair wind, from the Cape of Good Hope, anchors at Spithead, on Saturday the 20th of March, 1769, having been absent two years and seven months.

ON Tuesday the 15th, we anchored, as we have observed, at the distance of four miles from the town of Macassar, which, by our reckoning, lies in longitude 5 deg. 10 min. S. and in 117 deg. 28 min. E. longitude, having been in our run from the Strait of Magellan not less than 35 weeks. On Sunday the 20th, we sailed, at day-break, and in the afternoon of the ensuing day, anchored in the road of Bonthain. The guard boats were immediately moored close to the shore, to prevent all communication between our boats and those of the country. Captain Carteret having waited upon the resident, to settle the price, and mode of procuring provisions, a house was allotted to his use, situated near the sea-side, and close to a small fort of eight guns, the only one in this place. The house being fitted up as an hospital, the sick were landed, and as soon as our people were on shore, a guard of 36 privates, two sergeants, and two corporals, under the command of Le Cerf, was set over them, who were not permitted to above 30 yards from the hospital, nor were any of the natives suffered to come near enough to sell them any thing: so that the profits of the traffic fell into the hands of the Dutch soldiers, whose gains were immoderate; so great indeed, that some of them sold various articles at a profit of more than a thousand per cent. after having extorted the provisions at what price they pleased from the natives; and if a countryman ventured to express any signs of discontent, a broadsword was immediately flourished over his head: this was always sufficient to silence complaint, and send the sufferer quietly away. The Captain having remonstrated with Mr. Swellingable on the injustice of this procedure, he reprimanded the soldiers with beaming spirit: but this produced no good effect; and after this, Le Cerf's wife sold provisions at more than double the prime cost, while it was suspected, that he sold arrack to the seamen. It was the duty of one of the soldiers, by rotation, to procure the day's provision for the whole guard, which service he performed by going into the country with his musquet and gun; nor was this honest provider satisfied with what his bag would hold, for one of them, without any ceremony, drove down a young buffalo, and his comrades supplied themselves with wood to dress it from the pallisades of the fort. The Captain thought the report of this fact so extraordinary, that he went on shore to see the breach, and found the poor blacks repairing it. On the 26th and 27th, three vessels arrived here, one of which had troops on board, destined for the Banda Islands, but

their boats not being allowed to speak with any of our people, the Captain prevailed on the resident, to purchase for his use four casks of very good salt provisions, two being pork, and two beef. On Monday the 28th, above 100 country vessels, called proas, anchored in the bay of Bonthain. These vessels fish round the island of Celebes, going out at one moonsoon, and coming back with the other: they carry Dutch colours, and send the produce of their labours to China for sale.

On Monday the 18th of January, a letter from Macassar, was brought to the A. D. 1768, Captain, by which he was informed, that the Dolphin, our old consort, had been at Batavia. On Thursday the 28th, the secretary of the council, who accompanied Le Cerf hither, received orders to return to Macassar. Our carpenter by this time having greatly recovered his health, began to examine into the condition of the Swallow, and she was found to have several leaks; and as little could be done to these, we were reduced to an entire dependance on our pumps. Her main-mast was also sprung, and appeared to be rotten. As no wood could be procured here to make a new one, we patched it up, without either iron or forge, as well as we could. On the 29th of February, Le Cerf, the military officer was recalled, in order, as was reported, to make preparations for an expedition to the island of Bally, and on Monday the 7th of March, the largest of the guard boats, a sloop of 40 tons, was likewise ordered to return to Macassar, with part of the soldiers. On the 9th, the resident received a letter from the governor, enquiring when Captain Carteret would sail for Batavia, though he must have known this would not be before the eastern moonsoon set in, which would not be till May. These were suspicious circumstances, which gained strength toward the conclusion of the month, at which time a canoe was observed to paddle round the ship, several times in the night, and to retire, as soon as she was seen. It is proper to observe here, that the town of Macassar is in a district called Macassar, or Bony, the king whereof is an ally of the Dutch, who have frequently been repulsed in their attempts to reduce other parts of the island, one of which is inhabited by a people called Bugguesse, and another Waggs, or Toitora. The last place is fortified with cannon; for the natives were acquainted with the use of fire-arms, and were supplied with them from Europe, before the Dutch settled themselves at Macassar in the room of the Portuguese.

On Tuesday the 29th, a black man delivered a letter to

to our lieutenant the English was to acquiesce in conjunction to cut us off. On the 7th long letter, Macassar, to culpate him in conjunction with cut us off. his having required the writer might deserved; the letter, known been punished. By the 22nd take our dep

I. Of Southward given a full of Macassar, rude, to 5 d Borneo on. The length is about 300 near 200 m petty kingd are Celebes notial; an part of the usually used. The natives they compose country pro or small occ are instructe through a length; wi if they mak said to be m be much dro yet as the n penetrated, it is not cal with their c. They ha dustrious, people wha to arms ar may be 100 other side hired into that side, even the E service, bu too far; c them like Mutes in Macassar whenever. The peo their com high, and esteemed to make Chinesc la. They h covered w heads wh wear a ki. They c infants w and that ever seen. Their are alwa

to our lieutenant, directed to "The Commander of the English Ship at Bonthain," the purport of which was to acquaint the Captain, that the king of Bony, in conjunction with the Dutch, had formed a design to cut us off.

On the 7th of May, Captain Carteret received a long letter, written in Dutch, from the governor of Macassar, the general purport of which was, to exculpate himself from the charge of having, in conjunction with the king of Bony, formed a design to cut us off. He denied, in the most solemn manner, his having the least knowledge of such a project, and required the letter to be put into his hands, that the writer might be brought to such punishment as he deserved; but the Captain would not deliver up the letter, knowing that the writer would certainly have been punished whether the contents were true or false. By the 22d we were ready to sail, but before we take our departure we shall make a few observations.

I. Of the Celebes, or the Island of Macassar.

Southward of the Philippines (of which we have given a full description) lies the island of Celebes, or Macassar, extending from one deg. 30 min. N. latitude, to 5 deg. 30. min. S. having the great island of Borneo on the west, and the Moluccas on the east. The length of it from the S. W. point to the N. E. is about 300 miles, and in the broadest part of it, it is near 200 miles over. This island is divided into six petty kingdoms or provinces, the principal whereof are Celebes, on the N. W. lying under the equinoctial; and Macassar, which takes in all the south part of the island: the rest of the provinces were usually under the dominion of one of these.

The natives of this island are famous for the poisons they compound of the venomous drugs and herbs their country produces; of which, it is said, the very touch or smell occasions present death; the young gentlemen are instructed how to blow their little poisoned darts through a tube or hollow cane, about six feet in length; with these they engage their enemies; and if they make the least wound with these darts, it is said to be mortal. Though these weapons would not be much dreaded among people that are well clothed, yet as the natives engage naked, their skins are easily penetrated, and the poison operates so speedily, that it is not easy to cure them: they will strike a man with these darts at near an hundred yards distance.

They have strong robust bodies, are extremely industrious, and as ready to undergo fatigues as any people whatever; nor are any people more addicted to arms and hardy enterprises, inasmuch that they may be looked upon as almost the only soldiers on the other side the bay of Bengal; and accordingly are hired into the service of other princes and states on that side, as the Swifs are in this part of the world: even the Europeans frequently employ them in their service, but have sometimes suffered by trusting them too far; or rather, our people being too apt to use them like slaves, as they do the poor Portuguese and Mustees in their service; this is a treatment which the Macassarians will not bear, and never fail to revenge whenever it is attempted by our European governors.

The people of Macassar are of a moderate stature, their complexions swarthy, their cheek-bones stand high, and their noses are generally flat; the last is esteemed a beauty, and almost as much pains taken to make them so in their infancy, as to make the Chinese ladies have little feet.

They have shining black hair, which is tied up and covered with a turban, or cloth wound about their heads when they are dressed, but at other times they wear a kind of hat or cap with little brims.

They continually rub and supple the limbs of their infants with oil to render them nimble and active; and that is thought to be one reason there is hardly ever seen a lame or crooked person among them.

Their male children of the better sort, it is said, are always taken from their mothers at six or seven

years of age, and committed to the care of some remote relation, that they may not be too much indulged and effeminated by the caresses of the mother: they are sent to school to their priests, who teach them to write and read and cast accounts, and the precepts of the koran: their characters very much resemble the Arabic, which is not strange, since their ancestors, many of them, were Arabians.

Besides their books, every child is bred up to some handicraft trade; they are also taught several sports and martial exercises, if they are of quality; but the meaner sort are employed in husbandry, fishing, and ordinary trades, as in other places.

The women are remarkably chaste and reserved, at least they cannot help appearing so; for the least smile, or glance on any but their husbands, is held a sufficient reason for a divorce; nor dare they admit of a visit even from a brother, but in the presence of the husband; and the law indemnifies him for killing any man he shall find alone with his wife, or on whom she has conferred any mark of her favour. The inhabitants of this country are in general so little addicted to infamous practices, or litigious disputes, that they have neither attorneys or bailiffs among them. If any differences arise, the parties apply personally to the judge, who determines the matter with expedition and equity. In some criminal cases, such as murder, robbery, &c. he has a right to execute justice himself, by destroying the offender. On the other hand, the man keeps as many wives and concubines as he pleases, and nothing can be more ignominious than the want of children, and the having but one wife: the love of women, and the desire of children is universal; and according to the number of women and children the man possesses, his happiness is rated.

Their princes and great men wear a garment made of scarlet cloth or brocaded silk, with large buttons of gold; they have likewise a very handsome embroidered sash made of silk, in which their dagger and purse are placed, with their knife, cric, and other little trinkets. People of figure dye the nail of the little finger of the left-hand red, and let it grow as long as the finger. The women wear a muslin shift, or rather waistcoat, close to their bodies, and a pair of breeches, which reaches down to the middle of the leg, made of silk or cotton, and have no other head dress than their hair tied up in a roll, with some curls hanging down their necks; they throw a loose piece of linen or muslin over all when they go abroad; nor have they any ornaments but a gold chain about their necks. They are fond of a fine equipage and a great number of servants to attend them, and if they have not so many of their own as their quality requires, they will not stir out till they have got the usual number, by hiring or borrowing them. The furniture of their houses consists chiefly of carpets and cushions, and the couches they sleep on. They sit cross-legged on mats and carpets, as most Asiatics do.

This island produces most animals except sheep. There are monkeys and baboons in abundance, that will set upon travellers; some of them are quite black, some of a straw colour, and others white, the latter of which are generally as big as mastiffs, and much more mischievous than the others. Some have long tails, and walk on all-fours; others are without tails, and walk upright, using their fore-feet as hands, and in their actions greatly resemble the human species. Their going in large companies secures them from the more powerful beasts of the forests; but they are sometimes conquered by the large serpents, which pursue them to the tops of trees, and destroy them.

The natives do not scruple eating any flesh but pork, this no Mahometan will touch; but their food is chiefly rice, fish, herbs, fruit and roots; flesh they eat but little of. They have but two meals a day, one in the morning, and the other about sun-set; but their chief meal is in the evening; they chew betel and areka, or smoke tobacco mixed with opium most part of the day. Their liquor is tea, coffee, sherbet,

sherbet, or chocolate, and they have palm wine, arrac, or spirits, which they sometimes indulge in, though it is prohibited by their religion. They loll upon carpets at their meals, and eat off dishes made of china wood, silver or copper, which are set on little low lacquered tables; and take up the rice with their hands instead of spoons, which they seem not to know the use of. In the celebration of marriage the husband receives no other portion with his wife than the presents she received before marriage. As soon as the priest has performed the ceremony, the newly-married couple are confined in an apartment by themselves for three successive days, having only a servant to bring them such necessaries as they may have occasion for, during which time their friends and acquaintances are entertained, and great rejoicings made at the house of the bride's father. At the expiration of the three days the parties are set at liberty, and receive the congratulations of their friends; after which, the bridegroom conducts his wife home, and both apply themselves to business, he to his accustomed profession, and she to the duties belonging to housewifery, and the management of a family. When a man has reason to suspect his wife of infidelity, he applies to a priest for a divorce; and if the complaint appears just, there is no difficulty in obtaining it. In this case the secular judge pronounces the accused party guilty, declares her to be divorced, and settles the terms: both parties, after this judgment, have liberty to marry again.

The Macassarians had originally strange notions of religion: they believed there were no other gods but the sun and moon; and to them they sacrificed in the public squares, not having materials which they thought sufficiently valuable to be employed in erecting temples. According to their creed, the sun and moon were eternal, as well as the heavens, whose empire they divided between them. These absurdities, however, had not so lasting an influence either over the nobles or people, as is found from the religious doctrines of other nations: for the Turks and apostles of the koran arriving in the country, the sovereign and his people embraced Mahometanism, and the other parts of the island soon followed their example. They are great pretenders to magic; and carry charms about them, supposing these will secure them from every danger. When any one is so ill as to be given over by the physician, the priests are sent for, who, attributing the violence of their disease to the influence of some evil spirit, first pray to them, and then write the names of God and Mahomet on small pieces of paper, which are carefully hung about their necks; and if the patient does not soon recover, his death is considered as inevitable, and every preparation is made for his expected departure. These people perform their funeral ceremonies with great decency; to secure which, the meanest person makes provision while in health, by assigning a certain sum to defray the necessary expences attending it. As soon as a person is dead, the body is washed, and, being clothed in a white robe, is placed in a room hung with white, which is scented with the strongest perfumes. Here it continues for three days, and on the fourth it is carried on a palanquin to the grave, preceded by the friends and relations, and followed by the priests, who have attendants that carry incense and perfumes, which are burnt all the way from the house to the grave. The body is interred without a coffin, there being only a plank, at the bottom of the grave for it to lie on, and another to cover it: and when this last is placed, the grave is filled up.

Jampadan is another port-town about 15 miles south of Macassar River, one of the best harbours in India, and the first town the Dutch took from the natives; here they sunk or seized all the Portuguese fleet when they were in full peace with that nation. The rest of the towns and villages lying in the flat country near the sea, or the mouths of rivers, are for the most part built with wood or cane, and stand upon high pillars on account of the annual flood,

when they have a communication with one another only by boats.

About the Celebes are several islands that go by the same name, the principal of which is situated about five leagues from the S. E. corner. This island is about 80 miles long, and 30 broad: on the east-side of it is a large town and harbour called Callacassong, the streets of which are spacious and enclosed on each side with cocoa trees. The inhabitants are governed by an absolute prince, speak the Malayan tongue, and are Mahomejans. The Straits of Patience are on the other side of this island; they are so called from the great difficulty in passing them, which arises from the violence of the currents, and the contrariety of the winds.

11. *Of the situation, trade, and produce of Borneo, Sumatra, and Java, commonly called the Sunda Islands; and of the manners and customs of the inhabitants, &c.*

THE most considerable of the Sunda Islands, called so from the Straits near which they lie, are Borneo, Sumatra and Java.

Borneo extends from 7 deg. 30 min. N. latitude, to 4 deg. S. latitude, and from 107 to 117 degrees of longitude, being about 700 miles in length and 500 in breadth, and is computed to be 2 000 miles in circumference. The figure of this island being almost round, it probably contains a greater number of acres than any island hitherto discovered. To the eastward of it lies the island of Celebes or Macassar, to the south the island of Java, to the west the island of Sumatra, and to the N. E. the Philippine Islands.

The harbours of greatest note, and to which the Europeans usually resort, are Banjar Masien, Succadanea and Borneo, but much more to Banjar Masien than either of the other; the greatest quantities of pepper growing towards the source of that river, which falls into the sea 3 deg. 18 min. S. latitude. The town of Banjar formerly stood about 12 miles up the river, and was built partly on wooden pillars, and partly on floats of timber in the river; but there is now no sign of a town there, the inhabitants being removed to Tatas, about six miles higher.

The city of Borneo, formerly the residence of the principal sultan or king of the island, lies on the N. W. part of the island, in 4 deg. 55 min. N. latitude, and is a very commodious harbour. This city is very large, the streets spacious, and the houses well built; they are in general three stories high, covered with flat roofs, and the sultan's palace is a very elegant and extensive building. It is the chief seat of commerce in the island, and the port is continually crowded with ships from China, Canibodia, Siam, Malacca, &c. The English and Portuguese have some trade here, though no settled factory. The port of Succadanea lies on the west-side of the island, in 15 min. S. latitude, and was heretofore more resorted to by the Europeans than any other. Over against this, on the east-side of the island, stands another sea-port town, called Passeir, in 15 min. S. latitude, but is not a place of any great trade.

One of the most considerable inland towns is Cuytong, the sultan whereof is now the most potent prince in the island: this city lies about 100 miles up the river Banjar; and about 200 miles higher stands the town of Negaree, the residence of another sultan. The names of the other principal towns are Tanjongbuoro, Sedang, Tanjongdatoo, Sambas, Landa, Pisagadan, Cotapanjang Sampit, Tanjong, Selatan, Gonwarengen and Pomanooan.

Their chief rivers are, 1. Banjar. 2. Tatas. 3. Java. 4. Succadanea; and, 5. Borneo.

Some of the natives are very fond of having large ears; to obtain which they make holes in the soft parts of them when young; to these holes are fastened weights about the breadth of a crown piece, which are continually pressing on the ears, and expand them to such a length as to cause them to rest upon the shoulders.

CAPTAIN
The Ban
where they
were a deli
good
india, v
the. but t
almost peo
they called
near six fe
like a man
Among
caineers ge
dry season,
whom the
mines, and
The pri
from Borne
diamonds,
gems; and
besides bul
100 to 200
iron bars,
of spike
pounds we
work, final
blunderbut
purchasing
may be b
small ones
giving a ce
of one doll
half and
have a four
rings, wh
In the
kingdoms,
king. All
ranch of Bo
over the w
late years
kings equal
ticularly th
prince relict
Banjar Riv
erected on
the palace
room, wh
entertainm
is the thro
and silver
several ca
such wret
mental ne
greatest, o
port of B
pieces of
Negaree
above: h
poora, ab
handlome
which co
several a
his neigh
are suout
paid their
stranger
effect thi
valuable
and the f
portion t
Sumat
Indian o
gitule, a
deg. 30
cross the
Borneo
ocean ur
150 bro

on with one another

islands that go by
of which is situated
corner. This island
road: on the east-
neighbour called Calla-
spacious and enclosed
The inhabitants are
speak the Malayan
The Straits of Pa-
his island; they are
y in passing them,
f the currents, and

duce of Borneo, Su-
id the Sunda Islands
e inhabitants, &c.

Sunda Islands, called
ey lie, are Borneo,

0 min. N. latitude,
7 to 17 degrees of
in length and 500
2500 miles in cir-
cled being almost
er number of acres
To the eastward
Macassar, to the
west the island of
ippine Islands.

and to which the
Banjar Maffeen, Suc-
ore to Banjar Mas-
greatest quantities
of that river,
1 min. S. latitude,
about 12 miles up
wooden pillars, and
ver; but there is
nhabitants being
higher.

reference of the
land, lies on the
55 min. N. lati-
hour. This city
d the houses well
es high, covered
ce is a very ele-
the chief seat of
ort is continually
ambodia, Siam,
Portuguese have
ctory. The port
of the island, in
ore more resorted
. Over against
lands another
min. S. latitude,

d towns is Cay-
the most pretent
about 100 miles
00 miles higher
ence of another
cipal towns are
Sambas, Lan-
Tanjong, Sela-

Tatas. 3. Java.

of having large
les in the soil
hese holes are
a crown piece,
s, and expand
m to rest upon

The

The Banjarens are an hospitable friendly people,
where they are not abused, or apprehend foreigners
ore design upon their liberties; they seem to be men
of good sense, but not being acquainted with the
world, are frequently imposed upon in their traffic.

The animals here are the same as on the continent
of India, viz. bears, tygers, elephants, buffaloes, deer,
but the most remarkable is a small, and which is
almost peculiar to this island, is a monstrous mon-
key called the oran-outang, or in the woods,
near six feet high, and walks upon his hinder legs
like a man.

Among their minerals is gold, which the moun-
taineers get out of the sands of their rivulets in the
dry season, and dispose of it to the Banjarens, from
whom the Europeans receive it: there are also iron
mines, and the load-stone is found here.

The principal articles of merchandize imported
from Borneo by the Europeans, are pepper, gold,
diamonds, camphire, bezoar, aloes, mastic and other
gums; and the goods proper to be carried thither,
besides bullion and treasure, are small cannon from
100 to 200 weight, lead, calinancoes, cutlery wares,
iron bars, small steel bars, hangers, the smallest-
fort of spike nails, twenty-peony nails, grapplings of 40
pounds weight, red leather boots, spectacles, clock-
work, small arms with brass mountings, horse-pistols,
blunderbusses, gun-powder and looking-glasses. The
purchasing gold is a profitable article, and diamonds
may be had reasonably, though they are generally
small ones: they usually purchase gold with dollars,
giving a certain number of silver dollars for the weight
of one dollar in gold. The current money is dollars,
half and quarter dollars; and for small change they
have a lot of money made of lead in the form of
rings, which are strung on a kind of dry leaf.

In the inland part of this country are several petty
kingdoms, each of which is governed by a rajah, or
king. All the rajahs were formerly subject to the
rajah of Borneo, who was esteemed the supreme king
over the whole island; but his authority has been of
late years greatly diminished; and there are other
kings equal, if not more powerful than himself; par-
ticularly the king of Caytonge. The town where this
prince resides is situated about eighty miles up the
Banjar River. His palace is a very elegant building,
erected on pillars, and is open on all sides. Before
the palace is a large building, consisting only of one
room, which is set apart for holding councils, and
entertaining foreigners. In the centre of the room
is the throne, covered with a rich canopy of gold
and silver brocade. About the palace are planted
several cannon, which are so old, and mounted on
such wretched carriages, that they are neither orna-
mental nor useful. This prince is esteemed the
greatest, on account of the customs he receives at the
port of Banjar Maffeen, which are estimated at 8000
pieces of eight per annum. The king or Sultan of
Negaree is the most considerable prince next to the
above: his palace is situated at a place called Meta-
poora, about 10 miles from Caytonge. There is a
handsome armoury before the gates of his palace,
which contains a great number of fire arms, and
several cannon. He is always on good terms with
his neighbour the prince of Caytonge, and the rest
are subordinate to these two princes; great homage is
paid them by the natives, and it is difficult for a
stranger to get access to them: the only means to
effect this, is, by complimenting them with some
valuable present, for avarice is their darling passion;
and the stranger will be treated with respect in pro-
portion to the present he makes.

Sumatra is one of the Sunda Islands, situate in the
Indian ocean, between 93 and 104 deg. of eastern lon-
gitude, and between 5 deg. 30 min. N. latitude, and 5
deg. 30 min. S. latitude, the equinoctial line running
cross the middle of it; having Malacca on the N.
Borneo on the E. Java on the S. E. and the Indian
ocean on the west; and is 800 miles long, and about
150 broad. The air is generally unhealthy near the

coast, the country being very hot, and very moist,
and changing suddenly from sultry heat in the day-
time, to cold chilling winds in the night. It is the
first of the remarkable islands that form the great
Archipelago of the east, the entrance of which is, as
it were, blocked up by this island and Java, which
form a barrier separating the Indian from the Chinese
ocean; except that in the center between the two
islands there is an opening, which appears as if pur-
posely designed to admit a free passage for the advan-
ces of commerce. This opening is called the strait
of Sunda, the south part of which is the north of
Java, and called Java Head; and the north point is
the south of Sumatra, called Flat Point. These two
are about six leagues asunder, between which ships
pass from Europe directly to Batavia or China, with-
out touching at the Indies: they stretch away east
from the Cape of Good Hope, and make no land till
having traversed the whole Indian sea they arrive at
Java Head.

There is a chain of mountains which runs the
whole length of the island, from the N. W. to the
S. E. and here the air is something better than on
the coast; but the European factories are generally
situated at the mouths of rivers near the sea, for con-
venience of trade; and here three years may be
reckoned a long life, the salt stinking oafs sends up
such unwholesome vapours as perfectly poison for-
eigners that are sent thither. Here is a mountain
called Sindle-demon, about 40 miles S. E. of Ben-
coolen, which is a mile in height perpendicular;
the rocks near the west coast are generally barren,
producing little besides shrubs; but towards the
bottom of them grows some good timber. The
country has a great many small rivers, but none of
them navigable much above their mouths, falling
from high mountains, and discharging themselves
precipitately into the sea, either on the E. or W.
after a very short course; the rains continuing here,
as they do in most places near the equinoctial, six
months and upwards, every year, and no where with
more violence. The waters of the river Indapoorra,
during rains, look red for two miles beyond the
mouth out at sea, occasioned, it is said, by the great
number of oaks that grow in their boggy grounds,
and are almost covered when the floods are highest.
The waters of all their rivers, which overflow the
low countries, are very unwholesome, foul, and not
fit to be drank till they are settled, nor indeed till
they have been boiled, and tea or some other whole-
some herbs infused into them; and this, no doubt,
is one cause of the unwholesomeness of the air, it
being a very just observation, that wherever the water
is had the air is so too.

The island of Sumatra was antiently, and is at pre-
sent, divided into a great many kingdoms and states.

Achen, the metropolis of the kingdom, is situated
at the N. W. end of Sumatra, in 53 deg. 30 min. E.
longitude, and in 5 deg. 30 min. N. latitude, and is
much the most considerable port in the island. It
stands in a plain, surrounded with woods and marshes,
about five miles distant from the sea, near a pleasant
rivulet: it is an open town, without wall or moat,
and the king's palace stands in the middle of it, being
of an oval figure, about half a league in circum-
ference, surrounded by a moat 25 feet broad, and as
many deep: and about the palace there are cast up
great banks of earth instead of a wall, well planted
with reeds and canes, that grow to a prodigious
height and thickness, infomuch that they cover the
palace, and render it almost inaccessible; these reeds
also are continually green, and not easily set on fire.
There is no ditch or draw-bridge before the gates,
but on each side a wall of stone about ten feet high
that supports a terrace, on which some guns are
planted; and a small stream runs through the middle
of the palace, which is lined with stone, and has
steps down to the bottom of it, for the conveniency
of bathing. There are four gates, and as many
courts, to be passed before we come to the royal
apartments;

apartments; and in some of these outward courts are the king's magazines, and the standings of his elephants: as for the inward courts of the palace; foreigners, or even the natives, hardly ever approach them; and therefore a just description of these is not to be expected. But notwithstanding the fortifications of this place or castle, as it is sometimes called, are very mean and inconsiderable, yet the avenues to it are naturally well defended; for the country round about Achen is full of rivulets, marshes, and thick woods of cane or bamboo, which are almost impenetrable, and very hard to cut: there are several little forts erected also at proper distances in the marshes, where guards are planted to prevent any surprize. In the king's magazines, some authors tell us, are found a numerous artillery, and a good quantity of fire-arms, and that his guards consist of many thousand men; but that his greatest strength is in his elephants, who are trained up to trample upon fire, and stand unmoved at the report of a cannon; but this we shall examine more particularly when we come to speak of the maintenance of the prince, both with respect to domestic and military supplies, for later travellers do not seem to admire his power or grandeur. This city consists of 7 or 8000 houses, which take up the more ground because they are not contiguous, every person surrounding his dwelling with a pallisado pale that stands some yards distant from it; except in two or three of the principal streets where the markets are kept, and where foreigners inhabit, who chuse to live near one another, to defend themselves from thieves, robberies being very common here. The harbour, which is so large as to be capable of containing any number of the largest ships, is commanded by a spacious fortress encompassed with a ditch well fortified according to the Italian manner, and mounted with cannon. The English, Dutch, Dances, Portuguese, Guzarats, and Chinese, are the chief traders in this city. The king has a great number of horses, which, as well as the elephants, are rich and magnificent trappings. He is at no expence in times of war, for all his subjects are obliged to march at their own expence, and carry with them provisions for three months: he only furnishes them with arms, powder, lead, and rice, which is very trifling. In peace it does not cost him any thing even for the maintenance of his family, for his subjects supply him with all kinds of provisions: they also provide him and his concubines with cloaths. He is heir to all his subjects who die without issue male, and to all foreigners who die within his territories; and succeeds to the estates of all those who are put to death. From all which it appears, that the revenue of this prince, though not paid in money, is very considerable.

Having given the situation of the most considerable places on the east-side of Sumatra, we proceed through the straits of Sunda to the west-coast; and advancing from thence towards the north, the first English settlement we meet with is Sillabar, which lies in a bay at the mouth of a large river of the same name, in 4 deg. S. latitude. Here the English have a residence, or a small detachment from Marlborough fort, (erected soon after the destruction of York Fort at Bencoolen) to receive the pepper the natives bring hither. Ten miles to the northward of Sillabar stands the town of Bencoolen, where was the principal settlement the English had upon the island of Sumatra, from the year 1685 to the year 1719, when there happened a general insurrection of the natives, who cut off part of the garrison; the rest escaping in their boats to sea.

Bencoolen is known at sea by a high slender mountain that rises 20 miles beyond it in the country, called the Sugar-loaf. Before the town of Bencoolen there lies an island, within which the shipping usually ride, and the point of Sillabar extending two or three leagues to the southward of it, makes a large bay; besides these marks the old English fort, which fronted towards the sea, might have been discerned

when a ship came within seven or eight miles of the place. The town is almost two miles in compass and was inhabited chiefly by the natives, who built their houses upon bamboo pillars, as in other parts of the island. The Portuguese, Chinese, and English had each a separate quarter. The Chinese people built all upon a floor, after the custom of their country. The English houses were after their own model; but they found themselves under a necessity of building with timber, (though there was no want of brick or stone), upon account of the frequent earthquakes. The adjacent country is mountainous and woody, and in some parts are volcanoes that frequently vomit fire. The air is very unwholesome, and the mountains are generally covered with thick clouds that burst in storms of thunder, rain, &c. The soil is a fertile clay, and the chief produce is grass; but near the sea it is all a morass. There is a small river on the N. W. side of the town, by which the pepper is brought here from the inland part of the country; but there is a great inconvenience in shipping it, on account of a dangerous bar at the mouth of the river. The road is also dangerous for ships, as it has no other defence from the violence of the sea during the S. W. monsoons, than a small place called Rat Island, which, with the land point of Sillabar, makes the haven.

The pepper brought here comes from the territories of the two neighbouring rajahs, one of whom resides at Sindle-demand, at the bottom of a bay to or 12 miles to the north; and the other at Balar, 10 miles to the east. These two rajahs have houses in the town, whither they come when they have any business to transact with the English, who pay them half a dollar duty for every 560 pounds weight of pepper; and they also pay to the owner for every such quantity 10 Spanish dollars, weighing each 17 penny-weights and 12 grains.

The English have also other settlements to the N. W. of the above, particularly at Cattoun, situated about 40 miles from Bencoolen; Ippo, about 30 miles farther to the north; Bantall, which is upwards of 100 miles north of Bencoolen; and Mocho, situated a little to the south of Indrapour. There are likewise several good Dutch settlements on this island, the most considerable of which is Pullamban, or Pullamban, situate about 120 miles N. E. of Bencoolen. The chief article of trade here is pepper, of which the Dutch have prodigious quantities, being under contract with the king of Pullamban, and other Indian princes, to take it at a certain price, one half of which they pay in money, and the other in cloth.

Pullamban is a very large town, and pleasantly situated on the banks of a fine river, which divides itself into several branches that run by four channels into the sea. It continued to be a considerable city till the year 1639, when it was destroyed by the Dutch, in revenge for some injuries they pretended to have received from the natives.

Priaman lies nearly opposite to Pedang, about 100 miles N. W. of Indrapour. It is very populous, and plentifully supplied with most kinds of provision.

Ticow, another very considerable place, which is situated about seven leagues from Dalfaman, in 20 deg. S. latitude.

Barras, which belongs to the king of Achen, is one of the most considerable places on the west coast; it is situated on a fine river near the center between Ticow and Achen, and, like the former, no person must trade here without permission from the king.

The province of Andrigri is small, but remarkable for producing great quantities of pepper; and it is cheaper here than in any other part of the island.

Jamly is situated on a river on the east-side of the island, 30 miles from the sea, in 2 deg. S. latitude.

Pedir is situated about 30 miles east of Achen, and is a large territory: it has the advantage of an excellent river. It also produces a large quantity of silk, part of which is wove by the natives into stuffs, that are valued in most parts throughout the island.

island, an
of Coron
Paffai
place, si
is reman
large am
Cinqu
phire, w
Coroma
dunces.
In the
horses
rygers,
pines, a
other in
of the b
and has
solved
ston-nd
it is al
human
oultry
and fin
ful, an
but the
the g
soup,
scalom
metan
and fr
the far
except
- (f
years,
the w
are m
tea, c
of yo
They
Their
count
Le
langu
ligion
whic
Sum
Pag
felv
T
mo
hav
hai
the
wi
sty
in
dy
na
th
li
o
b
l
r

island, and the rest is sold to the inhabitants of the coast of Coromandel.

Passiman, almost under the equinoctial, is a large place, situated at the foot of a very high mountain, but is remarkable only for producing pepper, which is both large and excellent in its quality.

Cinquelo produces annually a large quantity of camphire, which the inhabitants of Surat, on the coast of Coromandel, purchase for 15 or 16 rials the coff, or 28 ounces. Daya abounds in rice and cattle.

In the island of Sumatra, they have a small breed of horses; they have also buffaloes, deer, goats, hogs, tigers, hog-deers, monkeys, squirrels, guanoes, porcupines, alligators, serpents, scorpions, muskatoes, and other insects: from the hog-deer is obtained a species of the bezoar-stone, which is of a dark brown colour, and has two coats; a small quantity of this stone, dissolved in any liquor, will remove an oppression of the stomach, rectifies foul blood, and restores the appetite: it is also very efficacious in other disorders incident to human nature. Here are also hens, ducks, and other poultry; pigeons, doves, parrots, parakeets, maccaws and small birds; sea and river fish also are very plentiful, and turtle or sea tortoise. They have elephants, but they are supposed not to be natives. Rice is much the greatest part of their food in all their meals: strong soup, made of flesh or fish, and a very little meat high seasoned, serves to eat with their rice. The Mahometans that inhabit the coast, abstain from swines flesh, and from strong liquors, as they do in all countries of the same faith. The mountaineers will eat any flesh, except beef, the bull being one of the objects of their worship, and if we could give any credit to their neighbours, the people of Achen, they eat human flesh; but the world is pretty well satisfied by this time that there are no nations of cannibals. Their common drink is tea, or plain water; but they sometimes use the liquor of young cocoa-nuts, which is very cooling and pleasant. They always sit cross-legged on the floor at their meals. Their salutations are much the same as in other Asiatic countries.

Learning is not to be expected here. The common language is the Malayan tongue, and the koran and religious books of the Mahometans are written in Arabic, which is now a dead language. The Mahometans of Sumatra speak and write the Malayan language. The Pagan mountaineers have a language peculiar to themselves.

The inhabitants of this island are in general of a moderate stature, and a very swarthy complexion: they have black eyes, flat faces, and high cheek bones: their hair is long and black, and they take great pains to dye their hair black; they likewise besmear themselves with oil from other hot countries, to prevent being stung by the insects; and let their nails grow exceedingly long, so long that they are transparent, and dyeing them with vermilion: the poorer sort go almost naked, having only a small piece of cloth fastened round the waist; and about their heads they wear a piece of linen, or a cap made of leaves, resembling the crown of a hat; but they have no shoes or stockings. The better sort wear drawers or breeches, and a piece of calico or silk wrapped about their loins, and thrown over the left shoulder, and they wear sandals on their feet, when in towns.

The coins of the country are, first cash, or pieces of metal, 1500 of which make one mas, valued at 15 pence, which is a gold coin. A pollom or copang is a quarter of a mas, 10 mas is one tael, which is an imaginary coin, and equivalent to 20 shillings sterling; dollars and other Spanish coins also are current here. With respect to their weights, five tael, make a buncal, 20 buncals one catty, and 100 catty one pecul, being 132 pounds English; three peculs are a China bahar of 396 pounds China weight; and of Malay weight, at Achen 422 pounds 15 ounces, and at Bencoolen, and the rest of the western coast, a bahar is 500 pounds

great weight, or 560 pounds English. They make their payments at Achen oftener in gold pieces than in coin.

Several other islands belong to Sumatra, among which is one called by the inhabitants Pulo Lanchakay, and, by the natives of Achen, Pulo, Lada, or the island of Pepper. This is a large island, situated in 6 deg. 15 min. N. latitude. In the centre of it are two high mountains separated from each other by a very narrow valley; and at the foot of these mountains is a plain at least 12 miles in length. Pepper is produced in it; but the island is very thinly inhabited. The soil of the plain is well calculated for all kinds of drugs, fruit, rice, and cattle; and, as it has several good springs and rivers, it might produce excellent pasturage; but the inhabitants only attend to the cultivation of pepper, that being the article which turns out most to their advantage. The other parts of the island are covered with thick woods, in which are some remarkable strait and lofty trees. The winds are westerly from the beginning of July to the end of October, during which time they have very heavy rains; and the climate; as in other parts of the same latitude, is very unwholesome. The island at present produces 500,000 pounds weight of pepper annually, which is said to be preferable to that of any other places in the Indies. The inhabitants are Malaysians, but are naturally better disposed than those of Achen; their habits are much the same in make, but not so elegant: they are very zealous Mahometans, and in their customs and ways of living differ little from the inhabitants of Achen.

The island of Lingen is situated about 60 miles N. E. of Jamby, and about the same distance to the S. E. of Johore. It is 50 miles in length, and 10 in breadth: the interior part of it is very mountainous, but that next the sea lies low, and is very fertile. It produces pepper and canes, and in some parts of it are great numbers of porcupines. That of Banca is very large, being at least 150 miles in length, and about 20 in breadth. The natives, like most of the Malaysians, are treacherous, and very un hospitable to such strangers as unfortunately happen to be shipwrecked on the coast. At the mouth of the straits of Banca is Lucipara, a small island but so barren, that it has but few inhabitants, and only produces a small quantity of pepper. There are several other small islands belonging to Sumatra, most of which are either uninhabited, or so insignificant as not to merit a particular description.

Java, one of the Sunda islands, is situate in the Indian ocean, between 102 and 113 degrees of east longitude, and between 5 and 8 degrees of south latitude, being 700 miles long, and upwards of 100 broad, having the island of Borneo on the north, the straits of Bally on the east, the Indian ocean on the south, and the straits of Sunda (from whence it is called one of the Sunda Islands) on the N. W.

The air of Java, near the sea, is generally unhealthful, unless where the bogs have been drained, and the lands cultivated; there it is much better, and in the middle of the island much more so. The worst weather upon the north coast of Java is during the westerly monsoon, which begins the first week in November, when they have some rain. In December the rains increase, and it blows fresh, and in January it blows still harder, and the rains continue very heavy till the middle of February, when both the wind and rains become more moderate and decrease, till the end of March. Their fair season commences in April, the winds are then variable, and it is sometimes calm, only at the change of the moon there are sudden gusts of wind from the west. In the beginning of May the eastern monsoon becomes constant, and in June and July there is a little rain; but in this monsoon they have generally clear, wholesome weather, until the end of September. In October the easterly wind blows faintly, and in November the westerly monsoon sets in again: when the westerly wind and currents are strongest here, namely, in December, January and February, there is no failing against them. The easterly winds and currents

rents are more moderate; ships may fail against this monsoon, and a ship may come from the westward through the straits of Sunda to Batavia almost at any time. There is good anchorage on the Java side, in 20 or 30 fathoms water: near the coast of Java and Borneo, from April to November, they have land and sea breezes from different points; the wind blows from the land between one and four in the morning, and continues till noon; at one or two in the afternoon it blows fresh from the sea for five or six hours.

A chain of mountains runs through the middle of the island from E. to W. which are covered with fine woods. It is said these mountains produce great quantities of gold: but the natives conceal it from the Europeans. The most distinguished of these mountains is called the Blue Mountain. The low lands are flooded in the time of the rains. Along the north coast of Java are fine groves of cocoa-nut trees, and wherever we see one of these groves, we do not fail to meet with a village of the natives.

The island was antiently divided into abundance of petty kingdoms and states, and when admiral Drake visited this island in his voyage round the globe, in the year 1579, he relates there were five kingdoms in it. We may now divide it into two parts, 1. The north coast, which is under the dominion of the Dutch; and, 2. The south coast, subject to the kings of Palamboar and Mataran. Bantam was, till lately, the most considerable kingdom of Java, but this king is now a vassal to the Dutch. We shall here give some account of the city.

Bantam, once the metropolis of a great kingdom (till the Dutch destroyed it, and deposed the king, is seated in a plain at the foot of a mountain, out of which issues three rivers, or rather one river dividing itself into three branches, two whereof surround the town, and the other runs through the middle of it. The circumference of this city, when in its glory, was not less than 12 miles, and very populous. It lay open towards the land; but had a very good wall to the sea, fortified with bastions, and defended by a numerous artillery; and the palace, or rather castle, where the king resided, was no mean fortification; besides which there were several public buildings and palaces of the great men, which made no ordinary figure in this country. It was also one of the greatest ports in the eastern seas, to which all nations resorted, but is now become a wretched poor place, and has neither trade or any thing to render it desirable. The principal inhabitants are removed, and the buildings ruined, their king deprived of his sovereignty, and become a vassal to the Dutch.

Batavia, by the Indians named Jacatra, and by the natives and Chinese Calacka, or Calappa, as they call the fruit of the cocoa-trees, (which are very common here, and said to be superior to any in the Indies) lies in 6 deg. S. latitude, longitude from London 106, and stands about 40 miles to the eastward of Bantam; it is situated at the bottom of a fine bay, in which there are 17 or 18 small islands, which break the violence of the winds and waves; inasmuch that 1000 sail may ride here very securely. Two large piers run out half a mile into the sea, between which 100 slaves are constantly employed, in taking up the mud and soil which is washed out of the town, or the mouth of the river would be soon choaked up. The city of the same name stands in a flat country, and is almost square, and about the bigness of Britol, regularly built like the towns in Holland, but with white stone. Their streets are wide and straight, and in 12 or 15 of the principal are canals, faced with stone, and planted with ever-greens: the sides of the streets also are paved, and over their canals are reckoned no less than 56 stone bridges; after which description there cannot be much occasion to tell the reader that the place is extremely pleasant, and that travellers are surpris'd with its beauty. It is surrounded with a good wall, and 22 bastions well furnished with cannon, and so contriv'd as to be of equal service against

an insurrection in the city, as against a foreign enemy; the guns being easily brought to point down the principal streets.

The houses are plain, but very neat, and behind them are large gardens well stocked with herbs and vegetables, and most kinds of fruit. They have several handsome public buildings, such as the great church: the stadt-house, the hospitals, the spin-house or house of correction, the pest-house, Chinese hospital, the house of artisans, &c. And there are two churches built for the reformed Portuguese, and another for the Malays: but they do not allow either the Papists or Lutherans the public exercise of their religion. The fort stands upon the west side of the city, and commands both the town and road: it is very large, and has four royal bastions faced with stone, but has no moat except the canals, which lie at some distance from the rampart, they have been mistaken for moats, they are about 25 feet broad, and fordable in most places; the inside of the fort is crowded with buildings, there being the general's house, as well as the houses of most of the principal officers, and companies servants: in the middle of the city there is a large square, which serves as a parade for the garrison, on the west-side of which stands the great church, on the south the stadt-house, on the north a fine range of buildings, and on the east is one of their great canals: there are also several spacious market-places in the city. The suburbs reach almost half a league into the country, and form a town larger than the former but not so compact: being intermixed with kitchen gardens and orchards. Here the Chinese chiefly live, and here they have their temples and burying places, and the free exercise of their religion, which is denied the Lutheran protestants. In this part of the town also live the Malays, and native Javans, and other nations, which the Dutch have transplanted from Banda, Amboyna, &c. There are small forts erected every way, at two or three leagues distance from the town, to defend the avenues; the Dutch being conscious that the king of Mataran and the natives would lay hold of any opportunity of repossessing themselves of their country, and driving the Hollanders from their coasts, however they may seem to acquiesce and tacitly consent, according to the modern phrase, to be insulted and tyrannized over by the Dutch, there is not a nation in India but would gladly throw off the yoke, and declare in behalf of liberty, and for any prince who should come to their relief.

The Dutch governor of Batavia takes great state upon him, and has in reality the power of a sovereign prince. The most considerable officer next to him is the director-general, whose business is to purchase such commodities as are brought to the port, and to dispose of such as are taken from it. He is sole master of all the magazines, and has the supreme direction of every thing that relates to the commercial interest of the company.

Batavia being a place of the greatest trade in India, the customs must be very considerable; more especially as the inhabitants are in general wealthy, and almost every article is subject to a duty. The taxes are paid monthly; and to save the charge and trouble of gathering them, on the day they become due a flag is displayed on the top of a house in the center of the town, and all parties are obliged immediately to pay their money to the proper officers appointed to receive the same. The money current here consists of several sorts; as ducats, which are valued at 132 sivers; ducatoons, at 80 sivers; imperial rix-dollars, at 60; rupees of Batavia, at 30; schellings, at six; double cheys, at two sivers and an half; and doits, at one-fourth of a siver. Some of these coins are of two sorts, though of the same denomination, namely, milled and unmilled, the former of which is of most value; a milled ducatoon is worth 80 sivers, but an unmilled one is not worth more than 72. All accounts are kept in rix-dollars and sivers, which are here merely nominal coins, like our pounds sterling. The Dutch, besides their land forces, which are very numerous, have men of war sufficient to engage any fleets

fleets they are
and from the
part of the g
of all the seas
to Cape Horn
Cherebon
is a place of
have a factor
duces most k
inhabitants ar
called sultans
the Dutch, a
the rest by th
is a good for
sitting of 80
is a large tem
princes of C
gated stones,
Palamboar
situate in 1
lat. on the fl
dia ships (som
from Borneo
for fresh wat
with such vic
watering ther
the Dutch, 1
country water
side of the t
rajah, or king
Palamboar,
minions reach
the south coa
its extent up
is said to pro
India corn,
are horses, b
have great p
poultry. Th
there are for
Mataran,
its dominions
up a consider
in the island
vernment.
the small v
supplied from
that is usen
these advan
ductions of
so low as to
This con
great quan
are also v
sheep, go
abound wit
of game
are, rice,
indigo; t
quality as
residence
of the k
Japara
be menti
of an em
top of w
siderable
small is
but they
that tim
duces a
hogs, a
with va
waters
luable
and int
kinds

fleets they are likely to meet with on the Indian seas: and from their great strength and importance in this part of the globe, they assume the title of "Sovereigns of all the seas, from the Cape of Good Hope eastward, to Cape Horn in America."

Cherebon is situate about 80 miles east of Batavia: it is a place of considerable extent, and where the Dutch have a factory. The country is very fertile, and produces most kinds of provisions, particularly rice. The inhabitants are under the dominion of four great lords, called sultans, one of whom is particularly attached to the Dutch, and for that reason is distinguished from the rest by the name of the company's sultan. Here is a good fort, where the Dutch have a garrison consisting of 80 men; about a mile and a half from which is a large temple containing the tombs of several of the princes of Cherebon. It is a lofty building of variegated stones, and very elegantly ornamented within.

Palamboan, the capital of the kingdom of that name, is situate in 114 deg. of E. long. and in 7 deg. 30 min. S. lat. on the straits of Bally, through which the East India ships sometimes pass, when they are homeward bound from Borneo; such ships touch at the town of Palamboan for fresh water and provisions; but the surf often beats with such violence on the shore, that makes it difficult watering there. This kingdom, which is independent of the Dutch, lies at the S. E. end of Java, in a pleasant country watered with several rivulets, which fall on each side of the town into the neighbouring straits. The rajah, or king of this country, generally resides either at Palamboan, or at a fort 15 miles from the sea. His dominions reach from the east end of Java, 80 miles along the south coast, and about 60 miles from N. to S. but its extent up the country is not known. This kingdom is said to produce gold, pepper, and cotton, also rice, India corn, roots, and garden stuff. Their animals are horses, buffaloes, oxen, deer, and goats, and they have great plenty of ducks, geese, and other sorts of poultry. The sovereign and his subjects are Pagans, but there are some Mahometans among them, and Chinese.

Mataram, when in its most flourishing state, extended its dominions over the whole island, and even now takes up a considerable part of it: this kingdom was the last in the island which the Dutch reduced under their government. The harbours afford docks for building all the small vessels employed in the service; and they are supplied from hence with the chief part of the timber that is used in their respective settlements. Besides these advantages, they are furnished with various productions of the country at stipulated prices, which are so low as to be extremely profitable to them.

This country is in general very fertile, and produces great quantities of rice, as also plenty of fruit. There are also various sorts of animals, particularly horses, sheep, gnats, and remarkable large oxen. The rivers abound with fish, and the woods produce great plenty of game; but the most valuable articles in this kingdom are, rice, pepper, cadiang, cotton, yarn, cardamum and indigo; the latter of which is esteemed to be as good in quality as any found in this part of the world. The residence of the king is usually at Mataram, the capital of the kingdom.

Japara is the last place of importance that remains to be mentioned in this island; it is situated at the bottom of an eminence called the Invincible Mountain, on the top of which is a fort built of wood. It is a very considerable town, and has a good road secured by two small islands. The English had once a factory here, but they were driven from it by the Portuguese, who at that time were masters of the place. This country produces almost every necessary of life, especially cattle, hogs, and poultry: they have also great plenty of rice, with various sorts of the most delicious fruits; and their waters abound with the best of fish. But the most valuable commodities here are pepper, ginger, cinnamon, and indigo. In the woods and mountains are several kinds of wild beasts. The natives, very much re-

semble those of other Indian nations, and have the same kind of customs and ceremonies.

The island of Balla, or lesser Java, is only divided from the larger by the straits of Bally, and eastward of this are the islands Lambock, Combava, Flores, Solor, Timor, and several more, upon which the Dutch have forts and settlements, and take the liberty of governing and even transplanting the natives whenever they please, from hence they frequently recruit their troops, and thus make one nation of Indians contribute to keep another in subjection.

The Bay on Bonchain is large, with good soundings, and a soft bottom of mud; wherein ships may moor with perfect security; nor is there any danger coming in; for the rocks at the entrance are above water, and a good mark for anchoring. We lay right under the hill, at the distance of about a mile from the shore. Fresh provisions were purchased here, at reasonable rates; the beef is excellent, but not in plenty; but rice may be had in any quantity; as may fowls and fruit. The natives at times, supplied us with turtle; for this, like pork, is a dainty which they never touch.

On Sunday the 22nd of May, at day break, we sailed from Bonchain Bay, keeping along shore till the evening, when we anchored in the passage between the two islands of Celebes and Tonikaky; the latter of which, according to our account, lies in latitude 5 deg. 31 min. S. longitude 117 deg. 17 min. E. On the 23d, we weighed, steered to the southward of Tonikaky, and stood to the westward. At three o'clock P. M. we were abreast of the easternmost of three islands, called by the Dutch Tonyd's islands. These make a right angle triangle with each other; the distance between the easternmost and westernmost is eleven miles, and their relative bearings are nearly east and west. At six o'clock, after we had sounded and got no ground, we suddenly found ourselves upon a shoal, having not three fathoms water, which, being smooth and clear, afforded us the sight of great crags of coral rocks under our bottom. We immediately threw all our sails aback, and providentially got off without damage. This is a very dangerous shoal and seemed to extend itself to the southward and westward, all round the two westernmost of these three islands, for near six miles, but about the easternmost island there seemed to be no danger; we observed also a clear passage between this island and the other two. The latitude of the easternmost and westernmost of these islands is 5 deg. 31 min. S. The easternmost is distant 34 miles due W. from Tonikaky, and the westernmost lies ten miles farther. On the 25th P. M. we found the water much discoloured; soon after we went over the northernmost part of a shoal. Here we found the water very foul when to the southward, but to the northward of us it appeared to be clear.

Thursday, the 2nd of June, we made that part of the island of Java which makes the easternmost point of the bay of Batavia, called Carawang. When we first got sight of the land we decreased gradually our soundings, and, having steered along the shore for Batavia, we had thirteen fathoms, in which depth, night coming on, we anchored, in sight of Batavia, near the two small islands called Leyden and Alkmar. On the 3d we came to an anchor in the road, which is so good that it may be considered as a harbour. We thought ourselves happy in having attained our present situation; for with great difficulty we had prevented the Swallow from sinking by the constant working of the pumps, during our whole passage from Celebes. In this road of Batavia we found laying eleven large Dutch ships, besides several that were less, one Spanish ship, a Portuguese snow, and several Chinese junks. On the 4th we saluted with 11 guns, which number was returned; and this being his Majesty's birth day, we afterwards fired 21 guns more on that occasion. In the afternoon captain Carteret waited upon the governor, requesting permission to repair the defects of the ship; but he was directed to petition the council. Accordingly on Monday

day the 6th when the council met, the captain sent a letter, stating to them the defects of the ship, and requesting permission to repair her; adding that he hoped they would allow him the use of such wharfs and store-houses as should be necessary. On the 7th in the afternoon, the shebander, Mr. Garrison, a merchant, as interpreter, and another person, came to the captain, saying, that he was sent by the governor and council for a letter, which they had heard he had received when at Bonthain, that the author of it, who had injured both him and their nation, might be punished. Captain Carteret acknowledged he had received information of a design to cut off the ship, but said, he had never told any one it was by means of a letter. The shebander then desired to know if the captain would take an oath, of his not having received the letter in question; to which the captain returned, that if the council had any such extraordinary requisition to make of him, he desired it might be writing, and then he would give such a reply, as, upon mature consideration, he should think proper. He then asked the shebander, what answer he had been instructed to give to his letter, concerning the refitting of the ship; to which the shebander replied, that the council had taken offence, at his having used the word *hoped*, all merchants having, upon a like occasion, used the stile of *request*; captain Carteret in return said, that no offence had been intended on his part, and that he had used the first words that occurred, which he thought most expressive of his meaning. On the 9th the same gentleman visited the captain a second time, when the shebander required a writing under his hand, importing, that he believed the report, of an intention formed at the island of Celebes to cut off the Swallow, was false and malicious, observing at the same time, that he hoped the captain had a better opinion of the Dutch nation, than to suppose them capable of suffering so execrable a deed to be perpetrated under their government. After this altercation Mr. Garrison read a certificate, which, he said, had been drawn up, by order of the council, for captain Carteret to sign. This the captain refused to do, because it appeared to be made a condition of complying with his request respecting the ship. During this conversation, the captain desired to see by what authority the Shebander made his requisition; he replied, he had no testimony of authority, but that of the notoriety of his being a public officer, and the evidence of the gentlemen who were present, who would confirm his declaration, that he acted in this particular by the express order of council. The captain now repeated his request of having the requisition of the council in writing; the Shebander said, he could not do this without an order from his superiors; the captain upon this absolutely refused to sign the paper.

On Wednesday, the 15th, the same three gentlemen paid captain Carteret a third visit, informing him, that the council had protested against his behaviour at Macassar, and his refusing to sign the certificate, as an insult upon them, and an act of injustice to their nation. The captain said, he was not conscious of having, in any instance, acted contrary to the treaties subsisting between the two kingdoms, unworthy of his character as an officer, honoured with a commission from his Britannic Majesty, or unsuitable to the trust reposed in him; nor did he think he had been used by the governor of Macassar as the subject of a friend and ally; he then requested, that if they had any thing to alledge against him, it might be reduced to writing, and laid before the king his master, to whom alone he thought himself to be responsible. With this answer they departed: and, the next day, the captain wrote a second letter to the governor and council, in which he represented, that the leaks of the Swallow were every day increasing, and urged, in more pressing terms, his request, that the might be repaired. In consequence of this application, on Saturday the 18th the Shebander informed us, that the council had given orders for the

repair of the ship at Onrust, and, as there was no store-house empty, they had appointed one of the company's vessels to receive our stores. The captain inquired of the Shebander, whether he had not an answer to his letter; he said he had not: nor was this the usual mode with the council, a message by him, or some other officer, being always thought sufficient. All disputes being now terminated, without any improper compliances on the part of this intrepid commander, he was, after this, supplied for his money with every thing he could desire from the company's stores, and a pilot was ordered to attend us to Onrust, where we came to an anchor on Wednesday the 22nd. We immediately began to clear the ship, and put her stores on board the company's vessel. On examination we found the poor weather-beaten Swallow in a very decayed state. Her bowsprit and cap, as well as her main yard, were rotten, and altogether unserviceable, her sheathing was every where eaten off by the worms, and the main planks were so much damaged, that it was absolutely necessary to have her down, before she could be sufficiently repaired; but the wharfs being at this time pre-engaged by other ships, her repairs did not commence till the 24th of July. When the Dutch carpenters came to examine her bottom, they were all of one opinion, that the whole should be shifted. This the captain strenuously opposed, being afraid, as the Swallow was an old ship, that should her bottom be opened, and found worse than was imagined, she might undergo the fate of the Falmouth, and be condemned: he therefore desired, that a good sheathing only might be put over all; but the Sawie, or master carpenter, would not undertake the required repairs, unless the captain would certify under his hand, that what should be done was in consequence of his own express orders, judgment; and direction; which the Dutchman thought was necessary for his own justification; for, said he, should the Swallow never reach England, the blame, if I go according to your directions, will nevertheless consequently fall upon me. This being thought a reasonable proposition, the Captain readily assented to it; but being by this act become responsible for the fate of the ship, he thought proper to have her surveyed carefully by our own carpenter and mate, lie himself with his officers always attending.

When the ship was repaired, the Captain being ill, and the people very sickly, we thought it better to run the risk of a few hard gales off the Cape, than to remain longer in this unhealthy place. We therefore, Wednesday the 15th of September, sailed from Onrust, without returning, as is usual, into Batavia Road, and the Captain, on account of his illness, sent his lieutenant, Mr. Gower, to take leave of the governor, and to offer him his service, if he had any dispatches for Europe. When we left this port 24 of our seamen, which were brought from Europe, had died, and the same number were now very ill, seven of whom died on our passage to the Cape; but we were so happy as to procure a number of English seamen at Batavia before our departure, which recruited the strength that had been wasted in the voyage, and without these recruits, in the Captain's opinion, we should not at last have been able to bring the ship home. On Monday the 20th, we anchored on the S. E. side of Prince's Island, in the strait of Sunda, at which time we had the wind fresh from the S. E. We shall here describe some other noted islands and places in the Indians seas.

(1.) The Nicobar Islands, which are situated in the Indian sea, between 7 and 10 degrees of north latitude, and between 92 and 94 degrees east longitude, near the entrance of the bay of Bengal, a little north of the island of Sumatra. These isles form three clusters: the middle, called Sombroero, are well inhabited, except one; the northern cluster, called Caronibara, are not so populous. The southern cluster of the Nicobars, are very mountainous, and the people much more savage than those of the middle and northern clusters. The priests

of Sombroero, we paint the inhabitants in his most to the the fourth end rocks near the woods, but ha would produc The groves of country near t not find an ac fa, we can p houses in every boo pillars, ei ground, the m and covered w These islan plexion a deep The men wea about their lo knets. Their it was not the d by the roots. cultivate the and they live country produ or commerce in their way t bring off hog affords, taki return.

(2.) The A are situated it Islands, in be longitude 92 to differ muc ducing rice, w as well as fit leagues W. S. abundance of

(3.) The fa 5 deg. 30 mi between 79 d gitude; at the Comorin. name of Tapa 300 in length part a mounta there are feve by rivulets. on the south division, is, b Europeans, A only on the te man's foot on go in pilgrim sion, having god Buddow this print of possessed thi ain Pico de its name fro was created the principal directions. which runs d discharging i rivers run w that none of pen when the create abund the dry seas except near where they fails them, sickness. T of the island tude 8 deg. open town w

of Sombbrero, are dressed much in the same manner as we paint the devil, by which appearance they keep the inhabitants in awe. The largest of these islands, which lies most to the south, is 40 miles long, and 15 broad: the south end is mountainous, and there are some steep rocks near the sea; the rest of the island is covered with woods, but has no high land. It is a rich soil, that would produce almost any grain, if it was cultivated. The groves of cocoa-nut trees that grow in the flat country near the sea, are exceeding pleasant; but we do not find an account of any towns; only, as we sail by sea, we can perceive groups, containing each five or six houses in every creek and bay, which are built on bamboo pillars, eight or nine feet above the surface of the ground, the roof being neatly arched with bended cane, and covered with palm branches.

These islanders are of the middle stature, their complexion a deep olive, their hair long and eyes black. The men wear no cloaths, but a piece of linen cloth about their loins; that of the women reaches below the knees. Their women might be esteemed handsome, if it was not the custom to pull the hair off their eye-brows by the roots. They neglect to clear the country, and cultivate the ground, which is over-run with wood; and they live chiefly on fish, and such fruits as the country produces spontaneously. They have little trade or commerce with any other people; but as ships sail in their way to and from the straits of Malacca, they bring off hogs, poultry, and such fruits as the country affords, taking tobacco, linen, and other necessaries in return.

(2.) The Andoman, and Cocoa Islands. The former are situated in the bay of Bengal, north of the Nicobar Islands, in between 10 and 15 degrees of north latitude, longitude 92 degrees east. These islands do not seem to differ much from those of Nicobar, except in producing rice, which is cultivated and eaten by the natives as well as fish and fruit. The Cocoa Islands lie 35 leagues W. S. W. of Cape Negrais; they produce great abundance of cocoa-trees, but are uninhabited.

(3.) The famous island of Ceylon; which lies between 5 deg. 30 min. and 10 deg. 16 min. N. latitude; and between 79 deg. 40 min. and 82 deg. 45 min. E. longitude; at the distance of about 190 miles from Cape Comorin. Ptolemy described this island under the name of Taprobane. It is 900 miles in circumference, 300 in length, and 140 in breadth. It is for the most part a mountainous country, covered with wood; but there are several fruitful plains and valleys, well watered by rivulets. A very remarkable mountain, which stands on the south side of Condula, the name of the northern division, is, by the natives, called Hamalel; but by the Europeans, Adam's Peak, being of a pyramidal form, only on the top is a little rocky plain, with a print of a man's foot on it, near two feet long, to which the natives go in pilgrimage once a year, to worship the impression, having a tradition, according to some, that their god Buddow ascended to heaven from hence, leaving this print of his foot, which the Portuguese, when they possessed this island, called Adam's foot, and the mountain Pico de Adam; but others affirm, that it received its name from a tradition of the natives, that Adam was created and buried here. In this mountain rise the principal rivers, which run into the sea in different directions. The largest of these is the Mavillagonga, which runs N. E. of the cities of Candy and Alatur, discharging itself into the ocean at Trincomale. These rivers run with such rapidity, and are so full of rocks, that none of them are navigable: the rains, which happen when the sun is vertical, increase their waters, and create abundance of torrents, which are not visible in the dry season. The air is for the most part healthful, except near the sea, and the north part of the island, where they have no springs, or rivers; and if the rain fails them, they are sure to be afflicted with famine or sickness. The chief towns are, 1. Candy, the capital of the island, and situate near the center of it, in latitude 8 deg. N. and 79 deg. E. longitude. This is an open town with fortifications, and yet almost inaccessible.

No. 37.

ble, being surrounded by rocks and thick woods that are impassable, except through some lanes, which are fenced with gates of strong thorns: and yet it appears that the Portuguese made themselves masters of Candy, and almost demolished it, obliging the king to retire to Digligyneur, five miles S. E. of Candy. 2. Columbo, the capital of the Dutch settlements, is a great port town in the S. W. part of the island, in 7 deg. N. latitude, and in 78 deg. E. longitude. It has a good harbour, defended by a castle, and several batteries of guns. In this castle resides the governor, merchants, officers and soldiers, belonging to the East India Company; and 4000 slaves have their huts between the castle and the sea. The Dutch have two hospitals here: one for the sick and wounded, and another for the orphans. As the boys grow up, they are entered into the sea and land service; and the girls are married at 12 or 13 years of age; and they have a Malabrian school for teaching the Indian language. 3. Negumbo, which is also a port town, lies about 25 miles north of Columbo. 4. Jaffrapatan, the capital of the province of the same name, and the northern division of this island. There is no cinnamon in this part of the island, nevertheless the Dutch have fortified it all round, to prevent any other nation sending colonies thither. 5. Trincomale is situate on the east-side of the island, about 80 miles south of Punta Pedra, the most northerly promontory of the island. 6. Battadalis is another fortress, 50 miles south of the former: besides which places, there are the seven little islands Ourature, Xho, Detcha, Analativa, Caradiva, Pongardiva, and Nainadiva.

With regard to the history of this island, the country villages of the natives are very irregular, being not laid out in streets, but every man incloses a spot of ground, with a bank or pale suitable to his circumstances, and there are frequently 20 or 30 of those inclosures pretty near together. The buildings are mean, the houses of the generality of the people, low thatched cottages, consisting of one or two ground rooms, the sides whereof are splintered with rattans or cane, which they do not always cover with clay, and if they do, it seems they are not permitted to white-wash them, this being a royal privilege. The better sort of people have a square in the middle of their houses, and as many rooms on the sides of it as the number of the family requires, with banks of earth raised a yard high above this square court, whereon they sit cross-legged, and eat or converse with their friends. Their meat is dressed in their yards, or a corner of the room. Their furniture consists of a mat, a stool or two, a few china plates, with some earthen and brazen vessels for water, and to dress their meat in, except one bedstead, which is allotted to the master of the house to sit or sleep on, and this is corded, if we may use the expression, with rattans or small canes; and has a mat or two and a straw pillow upon it, but no tester and curtains. The women and children lie on mats by the fire-side, covering themselves only with the cloth they wear in the day time; but they will have a fire burning at their feet all night, the poorest among them never wanting fuel, wood being so plentiful that no one thinks it worth while to claim any property in it. Their Pagodas or Temples, which are of any antiquity, are built of hewn stone, with numbers of images both on the inside and out, but no windows in them, and in all other respects like those on the neighbouring continent of India; but their temples of a modern date are little low buildings with clay walls, almost in the form of a dove-house; and besides their public temples, they have small chapels in their yards, sometimes not more than two feet square, which they set upon a pillar four feet high, and having placed in it the image they reverence most, they light candles and lamps before it, and every morning strew flowers while performing their devotions.

The natives are esteemed men of good parts and address, grave, yet of an easy temper. They eat and sleep moderately, but are lazy and indolent, which is

the case in most hot climates. It is said, that they are not given to thieving, but are much addicted to lying, which seems to be a paradox; for a man who will lie and deceive, would not make much scruple to cheat. They are far from being jealous, or restraining of their women from taking innocent freedoms. The men are of a moderate stature, and well-proportioned, wear long beards, and have good features; their hair and eyes are black; they have dark complexions, but not black as the natives upon the neighbouring continent of India are. They sit on mats and carpets on the floor, but have a stool or two for persons of distinction; but the vulgar are prohibited the use of stools. Young men of figure wear their hair long and combed back; but, in a more advanced age, caps in the form of a mitre are worn. Their dress is a waistcoat of callico, and a piece of the same wrapped round their waists, in which they put their knives and trinkets, and they have a hanger by their side, in a silver scabbard: besides which they walk with a cane or tuck, and a boy carries a box with betel and areca after them. The betel is a leaf of the shape of a laurel leaf, and the areca-nut about the bigness of a nutmeg, which they cut in thin slices, with an instrument made on purpose for it, and this, with a paste made of lime, they chew together almost all day long, as most other Indians do: this mixture seems to be a kind of opiate, and renders them perfectly easy while they use it. They have a person to carry a covered silver pot, or one made of some other metal, to spit in: for this composition has a nauseous smell, and it would be the greatest affront imaginable to spit on the carpets or floors in a friend's house, and those that chew it spit perpetually. It makes their lips very red, of which they are proud, and this may be one reason for their taking it; but there is nothing inviting in the taste of this luxurious dainty, though universally chewed, and is the first thing offered a stranger when he makes a visit. The women wear their hair long without any covering, and make it shine with coconut oil, which has a very rancid smell, though the natives esteem it a perfume, for custom will bring people to like almost any thing. The women are dressed in a callico waistcoat, which discovers their shape, and they wrap a piece of callico about them, which falls below their knees, and does the service of a petticoat: these are longer, or shorter, according to the quality of the person who wears them. They bore holes in their ears, in which they hang such a weight of jewels, or something that resembles them, that you may put a half crown through the hole of their ears: they load their necks also with weighty necklaces, which fall upon their breasts, containing a great many strings or rounds of beads: their arms are adorned with bracelets; and they have a number of rings on their fingers and toes; and a girdle of silver wire surrounds their waists. When they go abroad, they throw a piece of striped silk over their heads, which sometimes resembles a hood. The people are obliged to go bare-footed, because none but the king is allowed to wear shoes and stockings. The usual salutation among these people, is the same as in other parts of India, namely, the carrying one or both hands to their heads, according to the quality of the person they salute. Talkative people are in no repute; for the nearest relations, or most particular friends, do not talk much when they visit, but sit silent a great part of the time. A man before marriage, sends a friend to purchase the woman's cloaths, which she freely sells for a stipulated sum. In the evening he carries them to her, sleeps with her all night, and in the morning appoints the day of marriage; on which he provides an entertainment of two courses for the friends of both parties. The feast is held at the bride's house, when the young couple eat out of the same dish, sleep together that night, and on the ensuing morning depart for the bridegroom's habitation. The meaning of making a purchase of the bride's cloaths is, that she and her friends may be satisfied with respect to the man's circumstances. They are permitted to part with each other whenever they please; but if there should be any

children, the man is obliged to maintain the boys, and the women the girls; and they are so inclined to avail themselves of this liberty, that some of them have been known to change a dozen times. The profession of a midwife is unknown, as the women, in general, are both willing and qualified on that occasion to assist each other.

This island produces rice, of which they have several kinds: one of them will be seven months before it comes maturity, some six, and others five, between the seed time and harvest: that which grows fastest is the best talled, but yields the least increase; and all sorts of rice grow in water, the inhabitants are at great labour and expence in levelling the ground they design for tillage, and making channels from their wells and repositories of water, to convey to these fields: they cut out the sides of their hills from the top to the bottom, into little level plains, one above another, that the water may stand in them till the corn is ripe; and these levels not being more than six or eight feet wide, many of them look like stairs to ascend the mountain, at a little distance. In the north part of the island, where there are few springs, they have the rain water in great ponds, or tanques, of a mile in compass, in the time of the monsoons, and when their seeds are sown, let it down into them gradually, so that it may hold out till harvest. They do not thrash, but tread out their corn with oxen and buffaloes, frequently in the field where it grows. When it is reaped, they lay out a round spot of ground for this purpose, about 25 feet over, which they dig a foot and a half deep, and the women, whose business it is, bring the corn in bundles on their heads, after which the cattle are driven round the pit till they have trampled it out of the straw: then a new floor is laid; and with half a dozen oxen they will trample out 40 or 50 bushels a day. Before they begin to tread out the corn, they always perform a religious ceremony, and apply to their idols for a blessing on their labours. They have several other kinds of grain, which they eat at the latter end of the year, when rice begins to be scarce, particularly cocacan, which is as small as a mustard seed. Having beat this, and ground it into flour, they make cakes of it. This grain grows in dry ground, and is ripe within three or four months after it is sown. They have also a seed, called tolla, of which they make oil, and anoint themselves with it.

In this island are a great variety of fruits, but the natives seldom eat them ripe, or cultivate any but those which serve to make pickles for their soup or curree, and for sauces, when they are green, to eat with their rice. Of the betel they have great abundance, which they formerly exported to the coast of Coromandel, to great advantage, before the Dutch excluded them from all trade with foreigners. The fruit called jacka, is part of their food. They grow upon large trees, are round in their shape, and as big as a peck loaf. They are covered with a green prickly rind; have seeds and kernels in them as big as a chestnut, and are in colour and taste like them. They gather these jackas before they are ripe; and, when boiled, they eat much like cabbage; if suffered to grow till ripe, they are very good to eat raw. The natives roast the kernel in the embers, and carry with them when they take a journey, for their provision. There is another kind of fruit called jumbo, which is very juicy, and tastes like an apple: it is white; streaked with red, and looks very beautiful. They have also some fruits that resemble our plumbs and cherries; nor do they want any of the common India fruits, such as mangoes, coconos, pine-apples, melons, pomegranates, oranges of several sorts, citrons, limes, &c. They frequently dedicate their fruit to some demon, to prevent their being stolen; after which their neighbours dare not touch them, lest the demon, to which they are devoted, should punish them for the theft; and before the owner eats of it himself, he offers part of it to the idol. Their kitchen gardens are well stored with roots, plants, and herbs, for the Portuguese and Dutch have introduced

all manner of
gardens. The
they know very
perform many
Nor are they
and a delicious
are never cult
both sexes ado
they have wh
as those in Eu
famine, which
subject being
flower, which
evening, and c
Among the
tall and strait,
will cover 15
they wear a pi
to screen the
soldiers for ter
leaves are so t
through the th
likewise a tree
as a cocoa-tre
liquor; an ord
a day; and w
sugar, called j
hard, and ver
Dutch, as it w
guise, is the c
the woods, on
is of a middl
laurel leaf. V
red as scarlet
smell like cl
which neither
boiled in wat
sweetly, and
pers; but as th
burn it in th
they strip off
and then cut
pruning knife
little slips, an
lay them in t
manner we se
tree is white, a
has neither th
wind sets off
the air for n
incontestible
time of the
blossom.
Of the an
plants of a
hogs, goats,
had neither
ported by th
wolves. Th
trees, corn,
bandmen a
their corn,
The monkey
resembling
as do also f
animal in a
a hare. V
ticularly at
except iron
are pelted
wings, and
the light of
dead, and
other time
trees, or in
ger bees, c
combs up
per season
and take

all manner of European plants that grow in our kitchen gardens. They also abound in medicinal herbs, which they know very well how to apply, and with which they perform many notable cures.

Nor are they in want of flowers of various colours, and a delicious scent, which grow spontaneously; but are never cultivated: with these, the young people of both sexes adorn their hair. With a variety of others, they have white and red roses, as sweet and beautiful as those in Europe, and a white flower resembling jessamine, which the king reserves for his own use, no subject being allowed to wear it. There is another flower, which is observed to open about four every evening, and close again at four in the morning.

Among their trees the talipot, which grows very tall and straight, is in high repute. A single leaf of this will cover 15 or 20 men, and will fold up like a fan: they wear a piece of it on their heads, when travelling, to screen them from the sun. They also serve the soldiers for tents to lie under in the fields; and their leaves are so tough, that they make their way with them through the thickets without tearing them. There is likewise a tree called ketule, a kind of palm, as high as a cocoa-tree, from whence they draw a pleasant liquor: an ordinary tree yielding three or four gallons a day; and when boiled, it makes a kind of brown sugar, called jaggonry. The wood of this tree is black, hard, and very heavy. But that of most value to the Dutch, as it was formerly to the Arabs, and the Portuguese, is the cinnamon-tree, which grows commonly in the woods, on the S. W. part of the island. The tree is of a middle size, and has a leaf in the form of a laurel leaf. When the leaves first appear, they are as red as scarlet, and being rubbed between the fingers, smell like cloves. It bears a fruit like an acorn, which neither smells nor tastes like the bark; but if boiled in water, an oil swims on the top, which smells sweetly, and is used as an ointment in several distempers; but as they have great plenty of it they frequently burn it in their lamps. The tree having two barks, they strip off the outside bark, which is good for little, and then cut the inner bark round the tree with a pruning knife; after which they cut it long ways in little slips, and after they have stripped these pieces off, lay them in the sun to dry, which they roll up in the manner we see them brought over. The body of the tree is white, and serves for building, and other uses, but has neither the smell nor taste of the bark. When the wind sets off the island, the cinnamon groves perfume the air for many miles out at sea, of which we have incontestible evidence; and most likely it is at that time of the year, when the cinnamon trees are in blossom.

Of the animals that abound in this island, are elephants of a very large size; also oxen, buffaloes, deer, hogs, goats, monkeys, and some wild beasts; but they had neither horses, asses, or sheep, till they were imported by the Europeans; nor have they any lions or wolves. The elephants feed upon the tender twigs of trees, corn, and grass, as it is growing, and do the husbandmen a great deal of mischief, by trampling down their corn, as well as eating it, and spoiling their trees. The monkeys have black faces and white beards, much resembling old men. Alligators and crocodiles abound, as do also serpents of a monstrous size; and here is an animal in all respects like a deer, but not bigger than a hare. Vermin and insects are very numerous, particularly ants, which eat every thing they come at, except iron, and such hard substances. Their houses are pestered with them. When full grown they have wings, and fly up in such clouds, that they intercept the light of the sun; soon after which they fall down dead, and are eaten by fowls, who devour them also at other times. The common sort of bees build in hollow trees, or in holes of the rocks; but there are much larger bees, of a more lively colour, which form their combs upon the high boughs of trees, and, at the proper season, the country people go out into the woods and take their honey. In the season when the rains

begin to fall, they are troubled with small red leeches; which are not at first much bigger than a hair; these run up the bare legs of travellers, and fixing themselves there, are not easily removed, till the blood runs about their heels. The remedy used against their bite is, to rub the legs with a composition of ashes, lemon-juice, and salt. The bite of these creatures is so far from being attended with any ill consequences, that the bleeding, which is the effect of it, is esteemed very wholesome. Their fowls are geese, ducks, turkeys, hens, woodcocks, partridges, snipes, wild peacocks, partridges, and a beautiful sparrow as white as snow, all but its head, which is black, with a plume of feathers standing upright upon it. The tail of these birds is a foot in length.

In this island the inhabitants make savoury soups of flesh or fish, which they eat with their rice: people of condition will have several dishes at their tables, but they consist chiefly of rice, soups, herbs, garden-roots, and vegetables. Of flesh and fish they eat but little. Their meat is cut into small square pieces, and two or three ounces of it laid on the side of the dish by their rice, and, being seasoned very high, gives a relish to that insipid food. They use no knives or forks, but have ladles and spoons made of the cocoa-nut shell. Their plates are of brass or china-ware; but the poor have a broad leaf instead of a plate, and sometimes several leaves sewed together with bens, where broad ones are not to be had. Water is their usual drink, which they pour out of a cruce or bottle, holding it more than a foot above their heads; and some of them will swallow near a quart of water in this manner without gulping once. Neither wine nor beer is made in this country, but arrack and spirits are drawn from rice. They never eat beef, the bull and cow being objects of adoration. Neither the people in a high or low station eat with their wives: the man sits by himself, and the women and children eat after he has dined. In this woody and mountainous country are no wheel carriages, except what belong to the Dutch near the sea coast. The baggage is carried usually upon the backs of their slaves. The chief manufactures here are callico and cotton cloths: they make also brass, copper, and earthen vessels, swords, knives, and working tools: they also now make pretty good fire-arms; and goldsmith's work, painting, and carving, are performed tolerably well. We may trace their foreign trade up to the earliest ages. They supplied Persia, Arabia, Egypt, and Ethiopia, with their spices, before Jacob went down into Egypt, which is above 3000 years since, as appears by the history of Joseph's being sold to Ishmaelite merchants, who were travelling with a caravan across Arabia to Egypt with the spices of India, of which the cinnamon of Ceylon, that lies near the coast of hither India, was no doubt the chief; and so profitable was this branch of trade, that all the nations above mentioned sent colonies hither, whose descendants were planted here when the Portuguese first visited this coast.

Here the Portuguese language is spoken; however, the natives have a language of their own, which comes nearest to that spoken on the Malabar coast: the Bramins or priests speak a dead language, in which the books relating to their religion are written. They write upon the leaves of the talipot cut into pieces of three fingers broad, and two foot long, with a steel style or bodkin. They have long studied astronomy, which they learnt from the Arabians, and foretell eclipses tolerably well: they are great pretenders also to astrology, and by the planets calculate nativities, and direct people when will be the most lucky days to enter upon any affair of moment, or to begin a journey; and they find those who are weak enough to be imposed upon, though they may have been many times disappointed. Their year is divided into 365 days, and every day into 30 pays or parts, and their night into as many; and they have a little copper dish, with a hole in the bottom of it, which being put into a tub of water, is filled during one of their pays, when it sinks, and then it

is put into the water again to measure another pay; for they have neither sun-dials nor clocks.

In Ceylon, the criminals are frequently impaled alive; others have stakes driven through their bodies; some are hung upon trees; and many are worried by dogs, who are so accustomed to the horrid butchery, that, on the days appointed for the death of criminals, they, by certain tokens, run to the place of execution. But the most remarkable punishment is inflicted by the king himself, who rides an elephant trained up on purpose. The beast tramples the unhappy wretch to death, and tears him limb from limb. Some are punished by fines and imprisonment, at the discretion of the judges. When the fine is decreed, the officers seize the culprit, wherever they meet him, strip him naked, his clothes going as part of payment, and oblige him to carry a large stone, the weight being increased daily, by the addition of others that are smaller, till the remainder of the mulct is either paid or remitted. Any of the male cinglosses may indifferently charge another within hearing (as we do the constables) to aid and assist them in the execution of their duty, or upon any emergency; but the women are not permitted to mention the king's name, upon the severe penalty of having their tongues cut out for the offence. A creditor sometimes will go to the house of the debtor, and very gravely affirm, that if he does not discharge the debt he owes him immediately, he will destroy himself: this so terrifies the other, that he instantly collects all the money he can, even selling his wife and children rather than be deficient in his payment of the sum demanded. This is owing to a law, which specifies, that, if any man destroys himself on account of a debt not being discharged, the debtor shall immediately pay the money to the surviving relations, and forfeit his own life, unless he is able to redeem it by a large fine to the king. They have two modes of deciding controversies; the one is by imprecating curses to fall upon them if they do not speak the truth; and by the other, both persons are obliged to put their fingers into boiling oil, when the person who can bear the pain the longest, and with the least appearance of being affected, is deemed innocent. They have, however, methods of evading both these laws; the first, by using ambiguous expressions; and the latter, by certain preparations, which prevent the oil from doing them any injury. It is not lawful to beat a woman without permission from the king; so that the females may thank his majesty for all the blows they get. But they may be made to carry heavy baskets of sand upon their head as long as the man pleases, which is much more dreadful to them than a hearty drubbing. The circumstances of the children depend upon those of the mother; for if the mother is a free woman, they are free, but if she is a slave, they are always vassals.

They have neither physicians nor surgeons among them; yet, as to physic, every one almost understands the common remedies, applying herbs or roots, according to the nature of the complaint; and they have an herb which cures the bite of a snake. As they abound in poisonous herbs and plants, so they have others that are antidotes against them. Their diseases are chiefly fevers, fluxes, and the small-pox. They are never let blood, except by the leaches, already mentioned, from which they acknowledge they have sometimes received great benefit.

With regard to the religion of these people, they worship God, but make no image of him; however, they have idols, the representatives of some great men, who formerly lived upon the earth, and are now, they imagine, mediators for them to the supreme God of heaven. The chief of those demy-gods is Buddow, who according to their tradition originally came from heaven to procure the happiness of men, and ascended thither again from Adam's Mountain, leaving the impression of his foot upon the rock. They are said, likewise, to worship the devil, that he should do them no mischief; and another of their objects of worship is the tooth of a monkey. They worship also the sun,

moon, and other planets. Every town has its tutelary demon, and every family their penates, or household gods, to whom they build chapels in their courts, paying their devotions, and sacrificing to them every morning; but to the supreme deity they erect no temples or altars. There are three classes of idols, and as many orders of priests, who have their several temples, to which estates in land are appropriated. Buddow is the chief of these subordinate deities, and his priests in the greatest esteem, being all of the highest cast or tribe in the nation. They wear a yellow vest and mantle, have their heads shaved, and their beards grow to a great length. Their disciples fall down on their faces before them; and they have a stool to sit on wherever they visit, which is an honour only shewn to their princes and great men. These priests have no commerce with women, drink no strong liquor, and eat only one meal a day; but they are not debarred from flesh, except beef. They are filled sons of the god Buddow, and cannot be called to account by the civil power, whatever crimes they commit. There is a second order of priests, that officiate in the temples of other idols; these are allowed to follow any secular employment, and are not distinguished from the laity by their habits, but have, however, a certain revenue. Every morning and evening they attend the service of their temples; and when the people sacrifice rice and fruits, the priest presents them before the idol, and then delivers them to the singing men and women, and other servants that belong to the temple, and to the poor devotees, who eat the provisions: no flesh is ever sacrificed to the idols of this class. The third order of priests have no revenues, but build temples for themselves, without any election or consecration, and beg money to maintain themselves. These mendicants are mountebanks in their way, shewing a variety of whimsical tricks for their bread. They are prohibited by law, from touching the waters in wells or springs, nor must they use any but what is procured from rivers and ditches. They are considered in so despicable a light, that it is held disgraceful to have any connections with them. Wednesdays and Saturdays are the days they resort to their temples; and at the new and full moon they offer sacrifices to the god Buddow; and on new year's-day, in the month of March, they offer a solemn sacrifice to him, on a high mountain, or under a spreading tree that is deemed sacred. The principal festival of the Chingulays is observed in the month of July, in honour of the moon, when a priest goes in solemn procession with a garland of flowers, to which the people present their offerings. The ridiculous pageantry attending this festival, was attempted to be abolished in 1664, but the attempt occasioned an insurrection, so that the kings of Ceylon are obliged to let them continue the pompous mummery. They have also idols of monstrous shapes and forms, made of silver, brass, and other metals, and sometimes of clay; but those in Buddow's temples are the figures of men sitting cross-legged, in yellow habits, like his priests, representing some holy men, who, they say, were teachers of virtue, and benefactors to mankind.

The island of Ceylon was formerly divided into nine monarchies, but, at present it is under the dominion of one king, whose court is kept in the center of the island, at a place called Digligy-Neur: the palace is but newly built, the gates large, stately, and finely carved: the window-frames are made of ebony, and inlaid with silver; the king's elephants, troops, and concubines, are numerous. The guards are commanded by Dutch and Portuguese renegade officers. This monarch assumes great dignity, and demands much respect, which his subjects readily pay him, as they imagine, that all their kings immediately on their demise, are turned into gods. He expects that Christians should salute him kneeling, and uncovered, but requires nothing more of them. His title is, Emperor of Ceylon, king of Candy, prince of Onva, and the four Cories, great duke of the seven Cories, marquis of Duranura, lord of the sea-ports, and

and fisheries golden sun, offerings of h most inaccessible bridges are streams, nor country as im approach his day. The swords, guns subtle, but n enemy but by fell advantage nerate into a well guarded, acquainted w year 1595 th twelve years reigning kin upon his dem heir; but in with great in Candy invite dious war, a Portuguesc, a upon which mountains, a him their 12 years commu quently reta or murdering tions, and in (4.) The M from Male, of their king of Ceylon a 4 deg. S. to miles in leng part. They of them are e barrenness of country is di each of whi a circular fe These provi from each o gable for lar count of the sea, and rai these chamn which, when sugar. The ternately six certain; an The c. mate the equinox are tolerably freshing to commences which they winds, but October, at the winds scarce to be out that sea In gener great quant it, of both Here are al particularly grows wild excellent fr India figs, buffaloes, the king, these are o have not prodigio the woods Ne.

and fisheries of pearls and precious stones, lord of the golden sun, &c. His revenue consists in the gifts and offerings of his subjects; his palaces are built upon almost inaccessible places, for the greater security: no bridges are permitted to be erected over rivers or streams, nor any good roads to be made, to render the country as impassable as possible. None are suffered to approach his palace without a passport stamped in clay. The troops are hereditary, and their weapons are swords, guns, pikes, bows, and arrows. They are subtle, but not courageous, and will not engage an enemy but by surprise, or when there is some manifest advantage in their favour. It is so difficult to penetrate into the inland parts, and all the passes are so well guarded, that even the Dutch themselves are unacquainted with the greatest part of the island. In the year 1505 the Portuguese landed in Ceylon, and about twelve years after they established factories there, the reigning king permitting them to build forts; and, upon his demise, he declared the king of Portugal his heir; but in process of time the Portuguese behaving with great infolence and cruelty, the young king of Candy invited in the Dutch, in 1639, who after a tedious war, at length, in the year 1655, subdued the Portuguese, and became masters of the trade and coast: upon which they drove the king, their ally, into the mountains, and, with their wonted gratitude, made him their tributary. The Dutch have in subsequent years committed many cruelties, and the natives frequently retaliate by making excursions among them, or murdering all they meet with at a distance from the forts, and in the interior part of the island.

(4) The Maldives. The Maldivia islands, so called from Male, the chief of them, which is the residence of their king, lie about four hundred miles south west of Ceylon and cape Conorin. They extend from 4 deg. S. to 8 deg. N. latitude; and are about 600 miles in length, and upwards of 100 in the broadest part. They are said to be 1000 in number, but many of them are only large hillocks of sand, and from the barrenness of the soil, are uninhabited. The whole country is divided into 13 provinces, called Atollons, each of which contains many small islands, and is of a circular form, about 100 miles in circumference. These provinces all lie in a line, and are separated from each other by channels, four of which are navigable for large ships; but are very dangerous, on account of the amazing rocks that break the force of the sea, and raise prodigious surges. At the bottom of these channels is found a substance like white coral, which, when boiled in cocoa-water, greatly resembles sugar. The currents generally run east and west alternately six months, but the time of the change is uncertain; and sometimes they change from N. to S. The climate is exceeding sultry, this country lying near the equinoxial line on both sides: the nights, however, are tolerably cool, and produce heavy dews that are refreshing to the trees and vegetables. Their winter commences in April, and continues till October, during which they have perpetual rains, with strong easterly winds, but never any frost. The summer begins in October, and continues six months, during which time the winds are easterly, and the heat is so excessive as scarce to be borne, there not being any rain throughout that season.

In general these islands are very fertile, and produce great quantities of millet, and another grain much like it, of both which they have two harvests every year. Here are also several kinds of roots which serve for food, particularly a sort of bread-fruit, called nell-pou, which grows wild and in great plenty. The woods produce excellent fruits, as cocoas, citrons, pomegranates, and India figs. Their only animals for use are sheep and bullocks, except a few cows and bulls that belong to the king, and are imported from the continent; but these are only used at particular festivals. The natives have not much poultry, but they are supplied with prodigious quantities of wild fowl that are caught in the woods, and sold at a very low price. They have

also plenty of wild pigeons, ducks, rails, and birds resembling sparrow-hawks. The sea produces most kinds of fish, great quantities of which are exported from hence, for Sumatra. Among the fish is one called a cowrie, the shells of which (called in England black-moor's teeth) are used in most parts of the Indies instead of coin.

The only poisonous animals here are snakes; a dangerous sort of them infest the borders of the sea. The inhabitants also are much troubled with rats; dormice, pismires, and other species of vermin, which are very destructive to their provisions, fruit, and other perishable commodities; for which reason they build their granaries on piles in the sea, at some distance from the shore; and in this manner most of the king's granaries are built.

In these islands the natives are very robust, of an olive complexion, and well featured. They are naturally ingenious; and apply themselves with great industry to various manufactures; particularly the making of silk and cotton. They are cautious, and sharp in trading, courageous, and well skilled in arms. The common people go almost naked, having only a piece of cotton fastened round the waist, except on festival days, when they wear cotton or silk jerkins, with waist-coats, the sleeves of which reach only to their elbows. The wealthier sort tie a piece of cloth between their legs, and round the waist, next to which they have a piece of blue, or red cotton, that reaches to the knees, and to that is joined a large piece of cotton and silk, reaching to their ancles, and girded with a square handkerchief embroidered with gold or silver; and the whole is secured by a large silk girdle fringed, the ends of which hang down before; and within this girdle, on the left side, they keep their money and betel, and on the right side a knife. They set great value on this instrument, from its being their only weapon; for none but the king's officers and soldiers are permitted to wear any other. The rich have silk turbans on their heads, richly adorned, but those of the poor are made of cotton, and only ornamented with ribbons of various colours. The women are fairer than the men, and, in general, of a very agreeable disposition. They wear a coat of cotton, or silk, that reaches down to the ancles, over which they have a long robe of taffety, or fine cotton, that extends from the shoulders to the feet, and is fastened round the neck by two gilt buttons. Their hair, which is esteemed a great ornament, is black; and to obtain this, they keep their daughters heads shaved till they are eight or ten years of age, leaving only a little hair on their foreheads to distinguish them from the boys. They wash their heads and hair in water, to make the latter thick and long, and let it hang loose that the air may dry it; after which they perfume it with an odoriferous oil. When this is done, they stroke all the hair backwards from the forehead, and tie it behind in a knot, to which they add a large lock of a man's hair; and the whole is curiously ornamented with flowers of various sorts. The common people have houses built of cocoa-wood, and covered with leaves sewed one within another; but the superior sort build their houses of stone, which is taken from under the flats and rocks in the following manner: among other trees in this island, is one called Candou, exceedingly soft, and, when dry, and sawed into planks, is much lighter than cork: the natives, who are excellent swimmers, dive under water, and, having fixed upon a stone for that purpose, they fasten a strong rope to it: after this, they take a plank of the Candou-wood, which, having a hole bored in it, is put on the rope, and forced down quite to the stone: they then run on a number of other boards, till the light wood rises up to the top, dragging the stone along with it. By this contrivance the natives weighed up the cannon and anchors of a French ship that was cast away near their coast about a century ago.

The Maldivians, in general, are very polite, particularly those on the island of Male; but they are very libidinous, and fornication is not considered as any crime;

crime; neither must any person offer insult to a woman that has been guilty of misconduct previous to marriage. Every man is allowed to have three wives if he can maintain them, but not more. The girls are marriageable at eight years of age, when they wear an additional covering on their necks: the boys go naked till seven, when they are circumcised, and wear the usual dress of their country afterwards. These people are very abstemious in their diet, their principal food consisting of roots made into meal, and baked; particularly those called nell-pou, and elas, the latter of which they dress several ways: they also make a potage of milk, cocoa, honey, and bread, which they esteem an excellent dish; and their common drink is water. They sit cross legged at their meals, in the same manner as in other eastern countries. The floor on which they sit is covered with a fine mat, and they use bananà leaves instead of table cloths. Their dishes are chiefly of china, all vessels of gold, or silver, being prohibited by law: they are made round with a cover, over which is a piece of silk to keep out the ants. They take up their victuals between their fingers, and in so careful a manner as not to let any fall; and if they have occasion to spit, they rise from the table and walk out. They do not drink till they have finished their meal, for they consider that as a mark of rudeness; and they are very cautious of eating in the presence of strangers. They have no set meals, attending only to the call of nature, and all their provisions are dressed by the women, for to cook is accounted disgraceful to a man. Being naturally very cleanly, as soon as they rise in the morning they wash themselves, rub their eyes with oil, and black their eye-brows. They are also very careful in washing and cleansing their teeth, that they may the better receive the stain of the betel and areca, which is red, a colour they are particularly fond of. They present betel, which they keep always about them, upon occasional salutations, as we do snuff.

They have many pagan customs, though they profess the religion of the Mahometans. When they meet with any disaster at sea, they pray to the king of the winds; and there is in every island a place, where those who have escaped danger make offerings to him of little vessels made for the purpose, in which they put fragrant woods, flowers, and other perfumes, and then turn the vessel adrift to the mercy of the waves. They dare not spit to the windward, for fear of offending this aerial deity; and all the vessels that are devoted to him, are kept as clean as their mosques. They impute crosses, sickness, and death to the devil; and in order to pacify him, in a certain place, make him banquets and offerings of flowers. Each of their mosques is situated in the centre of a square, and round it they bury their dead: they are very neat buildings, have three doors, each ascended by a flight of steps: the walls within are wainscoted, and the ceiling is of wood beautifully variegated. The floor is of polished stone, covered with mats and tapestry; and the ceiling and wainscoting are firmly joined, without either nails or pegs. Each mosque has its priest, who, besides the duties of his office, teaches the children to read and write the Maldivian language, which is a radical tongue: he also instructs them in the Arabic tongue, and is rewarded for these services by the parents. Those of the people, who are very religious, go to their mosques five times a day; and before they enter it, they wash their feet, hands, ears, eyes and mouth. They who do not go to the mosque, may say their prayers at home; but if they are known to omit doing one or the other, they are treated with the greatest contempt, and every body avoids their company. They keep their Sabbath on Friday, which is celebrated with great festivity; and the same is observed on the day of every new moon. They have several other festivals in the course of the year: the most distinguished of which is called maude, and is held in the month of October, on the night of which Mahomet died. On this occasion a large wooden house, or hall, is erected on a particular part

of the island, the inside of which is lined with the richest tapestry. In the middle of the hall is a table covered with various sorts of provisions, and round it are hung a prodigious number of lamps, the smoke of which gives a most fragrant scent. The people assemble about 8 o'clock in the evening, and are placed by proper officers appointed for that purpose, according to their respective stations. The priests, and other ecclesiastics sing till midnight, when the whole assembly fall prostrate on the ground, in which posture they continue till the chief priest rises, when the rest follow his example. The people are then served with betel and drink, and when the service is entirely over, each takes a part of the provisions on the table, and preserve the same, as a sacred relic, with the utmost care. When two persons enter into the state of marriage, the man gives notice of his design to the pandiare, or naybe, who demands of him, if he is willing to have the woman proposed for his wife: on his answering in the affirmative, the pandiare questions the parents as to their consent; if they approve of it, the woman is brought, and the parties are married in the presence of their relations and friends. After the ceremony is over, the woman is conducted to her husband's house, where she is visited by her friends, and a grand entertainment is provided on the occasion. The bridegroom makes presents to the king, and the bride likewise pays the same kind of compliment to the queen. The man does not receive any dowry with his bride, and he is not only obliged to pay the expence of the nuptial ceremony, and to maintain her, but he must also settle a jointure upon her, though, if she thinks proper, she may relinquish it after marriage. A woman cannot part from her husband without his consent; but a man may at any time divorce his wife; however, if her assent to the separation is not obtained, she may demand her jointure; yet as this is considered as a mean act, it is seldom practised.

When any one dies, the corpse is washed by one of the same sex, of which there are several in each island appointed for that purpose. After this it is wrapped up in cotton, with the right hand placed on the right ear, and the left on the thigh. Then it is laid on the right side in a coffin of candou wood, and carried to the place of interment by six relations or friends, and followed by the neighbours, who attend without being invited. The grave is covered with a large piece of silk, or cotton, which, after the interment, becomes the property of the priest. The corpse is laid in the grave with the face towards Mahomet's tomb: and when deposited, the grave is filled up with white sand, sprinkled with water. In the procession both to and from the grave, the relations scatter cowries, for the benefit of the poor, and give pieces of gold and silver to the priest, according to the circumstances of the deceased. The priest sings continually during the ceremony; and when the whole is over, the relations invite the company to a feast. They inclose their graves with wooden rails, for they consider it as a sin for any person to walk over them; and they pay such respect to the bones of the dead, that no persons, not even the priests, dare to touch them. On this occasion they make little difference in their habits: the mourners only go bare-headed to the grave, and continue so for a few days after the ceremony of the funeral. If a person dies at sea, the body, after being washed, is put into a coffin, with a written paper, mentioning his religion, and requesting those who may meet with the corpse to give it a decent interment. They then sing over it, and after having completed their ceremonies, commit it to the waves on a plank of candou wood.

Male, the island where the king resides, is situated in the center of the rest, and is about five miles in circumference. The palace is built of stone, and divided into several courts and apartments; but it is only one story high, and the architecture very insignificant; however, it is elegantly finished within, and surrounded with gardens, in which are fountains and cisterns of water. The portal is built like a square tower; and on festival days

the musician
The ground floor
was three feet
with silk-tapestry
The king's bed
two pillars ornate
down his attend
usually a coat m
white and blue e
gold: under thi
that reaches do
large silk girdle
and a locket for
his head he we
esteemed, that n
This cap is lace
large gold button
and soldiers we
shoved once a w
handfuls of gilt c
family. When
genuitly particu
other persons, e
He has three pa
ries his fur, ano
his box of betel
cheese. He goe
pomp, his guar
on each others
attended on his
island. He eit
leaves, there be
queen appears
number of fema
give notice to t
four ladies carry
reaches to the g
from the several
ke. She and h
health, for
on the sho
top of it

light in the ch
ladies of quality
continually bur
never to admit
part where they
or five rows of
must sit up ti
names. The g
person consist
his grandees;
arms, cannon,
revenues const
priated to the
productions of
titles and offic
Besides these,
shipping; for
quainted with
he thinks prop
jects to purch
pleases to fix
modities as be
this country (s
of the Indies)
narrowly is it
with the loss
ing it to his o
live in the no
of being near
esteemed, tha
sending him t
punishment.

The gover
thing depend
province, has
and doctor o
the inferior p

with the rich-
ill is a table co-
and round it are
the smoke of
The people af-
and are placed
purpose, ac-
The priests, and
when the whole
which posture
when the rest
men served with
s entirely over,
the table, and
with the utmost
e state of mar-
to the pandiare,
e is willing to
on his answer-
sions the pa-
o of it, the wo-
harried in the
After the cere-
her husband's
s, and a grand
n. The bride-
the bride like-
to the queen,
with his bride,
xpence of the
but he must
if she thinks
age. A wo-
ut his consent;
ife; however,
eed, the may
sidered as a

ed by one of
n each island
it is wrapped
on the right
s laid on the
d, carried to
friends, and
without being
rge piece of
nt, beco-
s laid in the
omb: and
white sand,
oth to and
ics, for the
d and silver
s of the de-
g the cere-
elations in-
their graves
sin for any
uch respect
ot even the
ation they
mourners
inue fo for
If a per-
is put
ioning his
et with the
then sing
ceremonies,
wood.
situated in
in circum-
wed into
one story
however,
with gar-
of water.
on festival
days

the musicians sing and play upon the top of it. The ground floors of the respective apartments are raised three feet, to avoid the ants, and are covered with silk-tapestry, fringed and flowered with gold. The king's beds are like hammocks, between two pillars ornamented with gold, and when he lies down his attendants rock him to sleep. His dress is usually a coat made of fine white cloth or cotton, with white and blue edgings, fastened with buttons of solid gold: under this is a piece of red embroidered tapestry that reaches down to his heels, and is fastened with a large silk girdle fringed, with a great gold chain before, and a locket formed of the most precious stones. On his head he wears a scarlet cap, which is a colour of esteem, that no other person may presume to wear it. This cap is laced with gold, and on the top of it is a large gold button with a precious stone. The grandees and soldiers wear long hair, but the king's head is shorn once a week; he goes bare legged, but wears sandals of gilt copper, which are worn only by the royal family. When he goes abroad, his dignity is distinguished particularly by a white umbrella, which no other persons, except strangers, are permitted to use. He has three pages near his person, one of whom carries his sur, another his sword and buckler, and a third his box of betel and arca, which he almost constantly carries. He goes to the mosque on Fridays in great pomp, his guards dancing, and striking their swords on each others targets to the sound of music; and is attended on his return, by the principal people of the island. He either walks, or is carried in a chair by slaves, there being no beads of burden. When the queen appears in public, she is attended by a great number of female slaves, some of whom go before, to give notice to the men to keep out of the way; and four ladies carry a veil of white silk over her head, that reaches to the ground: on this occasion, all the women from the several districts meet her with flowers, fruits, &c. She and her ladies frequently bathe in the sea for health, for the convenience of which they have a bath on the shore close to the water, which is inclosed, the top of it covered with white cotton. The only light in the chambers of the queen, or those of the ladies of quality, is what lamps afford, which are kept continually burning, it being the custom of the country never to admit day-light. The drawing-room, or that part where they usually reside, is blocked up with four or five rows of tapestry, the innermost of which none small sit up till they have coughed; and told their names. The guards appointed to attend on the king's person consist of six hundred, who are commanded by his grandees; and he has considerable magazines of arms, cannon, and several sorts of ammunition. His revenues consist chiefly of a number of islands, appropriated to the crown, with certain taxes on the various productions of others; in the money paid to purchase titles and offices, and for licences to wear fine cloaths. Besides these, he has a claim to all goods imported by shipping; for when a vessel arrives, the king is acquainted with its contents, out of which he takes what he thinks proper, at a low price, and obliges his subjects to purchase them of him again, at what sum he pleases to fix, by way of exchange, for such commodities as best suit him. All the ambergris found in this country (which produces more than any other part of the Indies) is also the property of the king; and so narrowly is it watched, that a person would be punished with the loss of his right hand, if detected in converting it to his own use. Most of the nobility and gentry live in the north part of this island, for the convenience of being near the court; and so much is this quarter esteemed, that when the king banishes a criminal, the sending him to the south is thought to be a sufficient punishment.

The government here is absolute monarchy, every thing depending on the king's pleasure. Each atollon, or province, has a naybe, or governor, who is both a priest and doctor of the law. He not only presides over the inferior priests, and is vested with the management

of all religious affairs, but he is likewise intrusted with the administration of justice, both in civil and criminal cases. They are in fact so many judges, and make four circuits every year throughout their jurisdiction; but they have a superior, called the pandiare, who resides in the isle of Male, and who is not only the supreme judge of all causes, but also the head of the church: he receives appeals from the governor of each province, but does not pass sentence without consulting several learned doctors; and from him appeals are carried to the king, who refers the matter to fix of his privy council. The pandiare makes a circuit once a year through the island of Male (as does every governor in his respective province) and condemns all to be scourged who cannot say their creed and prayers in the Arabic tongue, and contrive them in that of the Maldivian. At this time the women must not appear in the streets unveiled, on pain of having their hair cut off, and their heads shaved, which is very disgraceful. They have various modes of punishment for crimes. If a man is murdered, the wife cannot prosecute the criminal; but if the deceased has left any children, the judge obliges him to maintain them till they are of age, when they may either prosecute or pardon the murderer. Stealing any thing valuable is punished with the amputation of a hand, and, for trifling matters, they are banished to the southern islands. An adulteress is punished by having her hair cut off, and those guilty of perjury pay a pecuniary mulct. Notwithstanding the law makes homicide death, yet a criminal is never condemned to die, unless it is expressly ordered by the king; in which case he orders his own soldiers to execute the sentence.

The chief articles exported from these islands are cocoa-nuts, cowries, and tortoise shells, the latter of which is exceeding beautiful, and not to be met with in any other place, except the Philippine Islands. The imported articles are, iron, steel, spices, china, rice, &c. all which, as has been observed, are ingrossed by the king, who sells them to his subjects at his own price. They have only one sort of money, which is silver, called lorrins, each of which is about the value of eight-pence. It is two inches long, and folded, the king's name being set upon the folds in Arabic characters. One thousand two hundred cowries make one lorrin. In their own market they frequently barter one thing for another. Their gold and silver is all imported from abroad, and is current here, as in all other parts of the Indies, by weight.

The Maldives are happily placed, with respect to each other, for producing mutual commerce, to the respective inhabitants; for though the 13 Atollons are in the same climate, and all of them very fertile, yet they produce such different commodities, that the people in one cannot live without what is found in another. The inhabitants have likewise so divided themselves, as greatly to enhance this commercial advantage; for all the weavers live in one island, the goldsmiths in another, and the like of the different manufactures. In order, however, to render the communication easy, these artificers have small boats, built high on the sides, in which they work, sleep, and eat, while sailing from one island to another to expose their goods to sale, and sometimes they are out a considerable time before they return to their fixed habitations.

(5.) Bombay. This is seated on an island near the west coast of India, in 19 deg. N. latitude, and in 72 deg. E. longitude. It is an excellent harbour, from whence the Portuguese, the first possessors of the Europeans, gave it the name of Boonbay, now corruptly called Bombay. The island on which it stands, is about 20 miles in circumference: the chief town is a mile in length, meanly built: the fort stands at a distance from it. The island is inhabited by English, Portuguese, and Moors: there are three or four more small towns on the island. The soil is barren, and the water bad; they preserve therefore the rain water in cisterns; and there is a well of pretty good fresh water about a mile from the town. The king of Portugal transferred this island to Charles II. king of England,

as part of the portion of the Infanta Katherine, whom he married in the year 1662, and the king afterwards gave it to the East India Company. The fort has been besieged both by the Mogul and the Dutch, but neither of them were able to take it. Notwithstanding Bombay lies within the tropics, yet the climate is not disagreeable to the constitution of Europeans; there being but few days in the course of the year, in which the weather is in any extreme. The short hot season precedes the periodical return of the rains: the night dews, however, are very dangerous, therefore great care should be taken not to be exposed to them. If people would but live temperately in this place, they need not be afraid of the climate, which is far healthier than in any other of the European settlements; and there are some good physicians on the island. They have wet weather at Bombay about four months in the year, which is commonly introduced by a very violent thunder storm: during this season all trading vessels are laid up. The rains begin about the latter end of May, and continue till September, when the black merchants keep a festival, gilding a cocoa-nut, which they consecrate and commit to the waves. What they abound in most is their groves of cocoa-nut trees, their rice fields, and onion grounds. Their gardens also produce mangoes, jacks, and other Indian fruits; and they also make large quantities of salt, with very little trouble, from the seawater.

The town or city of Bombay is a mile long, and surrounded by a wall or ditch; it has also a pretty good cattle; so that it is well secured, and esteemed one of the strongest places belonging to our East India Company. The houses of the English consist, in general, of a ground floor, with a court both before and behind, in which are out-houses and offices. Most of the windows are of transparent oyster-shells, which admit a tolerable good light. The flooring of their habitations is a sort of stucco, composed of shells that have been burnt; this they call chunam, which being well tempered, and becoming hard, receives an excellent polish. The English church is a very neat building, situate on a pleasant green, round which are the houses of the English; as to those in which the black merchants reside, they are, in general, ill contrived structures; and the pagodas of the gentoos, are most wretched edifices.

The government is entirely English, subordinate to the India Company, who appoint by commission a president and council; and the maritime and military force is under the immediate direction of the president, who is styled commander in chief. The common soldiers are of many nations; but what are called topasses, are for the most part black, or of a mixed breed from the Portuguese. There are also regular companies of the natives, who are called seapoys. Any popish priest, except a Portuguese, may officiate in the churches of the three Roman catholic parishes, into which Bombay is divided; but the English formed an objection against the Portuguese, from an apprehension that those fathers might have rather too close a connection with others of their own country, in the adjacent settlements belonging to their master: however, there are no disputes in this town about professions in religion, all alike being tolerated. Liberty of conscience, freedom of speech, riches, and honours, distinguish the people and climate.

Bombay is inhabited by a mixture of all nations; English, Portuguese, and Indians, amounting, as it is said, to 50 or 60,000. The president of Surat is usually governor of the place, who has a deputy here, and courts of justice, regulated as in England. The governor, when he is upon the island, appears in greater state than the governor of Fort St. George, being attended, when he goes abroad, by two troops of Moors and Bandarins with their standards. The natives, and those who are seasoned to the country, enjoy a tolerable good state of health, and, if they use temperance, live to a good old age. Near Bombay are several islands, the chief of which are Butcher's Island, Elephanta, and Salsette. The first took its name from great numbers of cattle being kept in it for the use of Bombay; and the

second from the enormous figure of an elephant cut in stone, and which, at a distance, has the appearance of one alive, the stone being exactly of the colour of the quadruped. On this island, which is nearly one entire hill, and about three miles in circumference, there is a temple hewn from the rock. This real curiosity is supported by two rows of pillars, and is 10 feet high. It is an oblong square, about 80 feet in length, and above 40 in breadth, and its roof is formed of the rock cut flat. At the farther end of this singular structure stand the figures of two giants, the faces of which, however, have been much mutilated. The Portuguese, when they became possessed of this island, disfigured and injured these pieces of antiquity as much as possible. The curious fabric has two doors, which front each other near or to the west, are several images, much disfigured, and there is one image standing erect, with a drawn dagger in one hand, and a child in the other. The other door, which opens on the left-hand, has an arch before it; at the upper end of which is a range of pillars, or colonnade, adjoining to an apartment ornamented with regular architecture, round the corners of which are some paintings. The whole of this temple differs from all of the most antique gentoo-buildings; but with respect to the era when genius and labour produced it, no discoveries have yet been made.

Salsette lies northward of Bombay, being about 26 miles long, and 9 broad. Here is a ruined place called Canara, where are several caverns in rocks, which considerably gratify the curiosity of such Europeans who visit them. The soil is extremely fertile, and great plenty of game is found in this island, which it must be acknowledged, is a most agreeable situation. It was originally comprehended under the regality of Bombay, and of consequence became the property of the English crown when Bombay was given to King Charles the second; but the Portuguese defrauded us of it; they, however, lost this island by the invasion of the Marattas, who inhabit the continent bordering on Bombay: they are a very formidable tribe of gentoos, who have extended their dominions by dint of arms. Their chief, or king, resides generally in the mountains of Decan, at a fort called Rarcé; reported to be the strongest place in the universe: it is so well and powerfully guarded by nature, that no enemy can approach it, being surrounded by steep, inaccessible rocks. In this fort the king, or marajah, holds his court, and lives in great splendor. He has long been the avowed foe of the Moguls, Subahs, and Nabobs; making war, and concluding treaties, just as he thought his interest might be best promoted. The Marattas are all bred to arms and agriculture: the use of the former, they learnt from the Europeans, though they depend greatly on their targets, which will turn the ball of a pistol, and even a musket from a distance. Their swords are excellent, with which they do great execution, but their muskets are very indifferent. Their horses are small, active, and will go through much fatigue. European arts and manufactures receive little encouragement among these people, who prefer those of their own country to the most curious that can be shewn them from foreign parts.

(6.) In 15 deg. 20 min. N. latitude, and 74 deg. 20 min. E. longitude from London, on an island, about 20 miles in length, and six in breadth, stands the large and strong town of Goa, which is the principal place belonging to the Portuguese in India: it was taken by them A. D. 1508. It has the convenience of a fine salt-water river, capable of receiving ships of the greatest burden, where they lie within a mile of the town. The banks of the river are beautified with a great number of handsome structures, such as castles, churches, and gentlemen's houses. The air without the town is very unwholesome, for which reason it is not so well inhabited as formerly. The viceroy's palace is a noble building, and stands at a small distance from the city, which leads to a spacious street, terminated by a beautiful church. Goa contains a great number of handsome churches, convents, and cloisters, with a stately large hospital,

hospital, all
The market
the shops are
Bengal, Chiu
church has a
ally ringing.
they have a
a great num
remain some
cannot be b
many gentoo
they are more
artful. The
but the chu
numbers of i
are spacious
they are poo
concentred w
little bread, r
have hogs ar
dicted to wo
ferble. Cap
hood on a h
churches, con
that there we
body of St.
Church, and
mincles. N
glass windows
of glass. Th
productions,
they distil fr
The river's m
ries, well p
and there are
This settleme
(7.) The il
at deg. 45 m
E. longitude;
The town, wh
and fortified
convent dif
The harbour
which is mad
flores. It was
structures bei
contains five
within, with
cageful; but
one fourth pa
taken by the
and other pla
with the loss
200 Portugue
who may am
(8.) The
Cape Roman
on of coming
by Malays,
headed by a
on which are
of trade are p
the character
(9.) Sine
which lie at
of Malacca,
Straits. 11
diamonds; a
fol of Sine
timber for t
(10.) Pul
stands in th
Bulia. It is
and 8 deg.
in length, a
above a m
ere of a mi
plexion is
black; thei
high: they
No. 3

hospital, all well endowed, and kept in good repair. The market-place takes up an acre of ground; and in the shops about it may be had the produce of Europe, Bengal, China, and other countries of less note. Every church has a set of bells, some of which are continually ringing. Their religion is Roman Catholic, and they have a most horrid cruel inquisition. There are a great number of Indian converts, who generally retain some of their old customs, particularly, they cannot be brought to eat beef. However, there are many gentoos in the city, who are tolerated, because they are more industrious than the Christians, and better artists. The clergy are very numerous, and illiterate; but the churches are finely embellished, and have numbers of images. Their houses, which are of stone, are spacious and handsome, and make a fine show; but they are poorly finished within. The inhabitants are contented with greens, roots, and fruit, which, with a little bread, rice, and fish, is their only diet, though they have hogs and fowls in plenty. They are much addicted to women, and are generally weak, lean, and feeble. Captain Hamilton, when he was in this island, found on a hill near the city, and counted above 80 churches, convents, and monasteries, and he was told, that there were about 30,000 priests and monks. The body of St. Francis Xavier is buried in St. Paul's Church, and, as they pretend, performs a great many miracles. None of the churches, except one, have glass windows, for they make use of oyster-shells instead of glass. The town itself has few manufactures, or productions, their best trade being in arrack, which they distil from toddy, the sap of the cocoa-nut tree. The river's mouth is defended by several forts and batteries, well planted on both sides with large cannon; and there are several other forts in different places. This settlement is 250 miles N. by W. of Cochin.

(7) The island of Diu or Dio. This is situated in 21 deg. 45 min. N. latitude, and in 68 deg. 55 min. E. longitude; and is three miles long, and two broad. The town, which bears the same name, is pretty large, and fortified by a high stone wall, with bastions at convenient distances, and well furnished with cannon. The harbour is well secured by two castles, one of which is made use of for powder, and other warlike stores. It was one of the best places in those parts, the structures being built of free stone and marble. It contains five or six fine churches well embellished within, with images and painting, built by the Portuguese; but it is much decayed of late years, not one fourth part of it being inhabited. In 1670 it was taken by the Arabs, who plundered all the churches, and other places, of their riches, but were driven away with the loss of 1000 men. There are not now above 200 Portuguese inhabitants, for the rest are Banians, who may amount to 40,000.

(8) The Iohor Islands. These lie to the N. E. of Cape Romano, but produce nothing fit for the carrying on of commerce. Pulo Aure, one of them, is peopled by Malays, who are said to form a kind of republic, headed by a chief. In this island are several mountains, on which are many plantations of cocoa-trees. Articles of trade are purchased here with iron, and the people have the character of being very honest, friendly, and hospitable.

(9) Sincapour, or Sincapora, is an island and town, which lie at the southernmost point of the peninsula of Malacca, and gave name to the S. E. part of Malacca Straits. Here is a mountain which yields excellent diamonds, and sugar canes grow to a great size. The soil of Sincapour is fruitful, and the woods produce good timber for ship-building.

(10) Pulo-Condore, the only one inhabited of several islands in the East India sea, lying off the coast of Cambolia. It is situated in 107 deg. 40 min. E. longitude, and 8 deg. 36 min. N. latitude. It is about 13 miles in length, and nine in breadth, but in some places not above a mile over. The inhabitants of this island are of a middle stature, and well shaped, but their complexion is exceedingly swarthy. Their hair is straight and black; their eyes are remarkably small, and their noses high; they have thin lips, small mouths, white teeth, No. 38.

and in their dispositions are very courteous. They go almost naked, except on particular occasions, when they are dressed in a long garment girded about the waist, and ornamented with various coloured ribbands. Their houses are built of bamboos, covered with long grass; but they are very small. They are raised several feet from the earth, on account of the dampness of the ground; and they have neither doors nor windows; so that one side is left open as well for convenience of light, as for the entrance of the people. They are very free of their women, and will bring them on board the ships, where they are kept by the sailors while they stay. These people are idolaters, but of what kind is not known; however, they have images of elephants in their temples which are mean edifices built of wood: on the south-side of the island is one of this kind; within it is the figure of an elephant, and without is that of a horse. The soil of this island is a blackish mould, but the hills are somewhat stony. The trees are not very thick, but large, tall, and fit for any use. The principal fruits are mangoes, a sort of grapes, and bastard nutmegs. The animals are hogs and lizards. There are fowls of various kinds; as turtle doves, pigeons, wild cocks and hens, parrots, and paroquets, and several sorts of birds, not known in Europe. The sea produces great plenty of turtles, limpets, and muscles. The chief employment of the inhabitants is to get tar out of the very large trees that grow here. In 1702, the English settled in this island, after the factory of Chufan, on the coast of China, was broke up. However, they continued here but a short time; for having made an agreement with some Macassars, natives of the island of Celebes, to serve for soldiers, and assist in building a fort, and not discharging them at the end of three years, (for which term they were engaged) they rose in the night, and murdered every Englishman they could find on the island. The English had purchased this island of the king of Cambodia, to whom, after this event, it again reverted. Few remains of the fort are now standing, it having been for the most part demolished. There are several other small islands in these seas, namely,

(1.) Pulo-Dinding, near the continent of Malacca, which belongs to the Dutch where they have a fort.

(2.) Pulo-Timon, on the eastern coast of the peninsula of Malacca, in 3 deg. 12 min. N. latitude, and 105 deg. 40 min. E. longitude. It is pretty large, covered with trees, and the valleys are very pleasant. It is often touched at for wood, water, and other refreshments, and there is great plenty of green turtles.

(3.) Pulo-Way, near the island of Sumatra: it is situated in 5 deg. 40 min. N. lat. and in 21 deg. 47 min. E. long. It is the largest of all those islands which form the entrance of the channel of Achem, and is peopled by culprits who are banished from thence.

(4.) Puna, 120 miles north of Patay. It lies at the entrance of the bay of Guaiquil, in 3 deg. 15 min. S. latitude, and 100 deg. 5 min. W. longitude.

Having given this copious, geographical, descriptive, and historical account of the most remarkable islands in the Indian sea, we shall now return to the Swallow Sloop, which we left at anchor off Prince's Island, in the Strait of Sunda.

Friday the 25th of September, we weighed, and got under sail, for we could not get a sufficient quantity of wood and water at Prince's Island, to complete our stock, the wet monsoon having but just set in, and consequently not rain enough had fell to supply the springs. We would have departed from this part of the island sooner, but we had the wind fresh from the S. E. which made a lee shore; but it being this day in our favour, and more moderate, we worked over to the Java shore. We anchored in the evening, in a bay called by some New, and by others Canty Bay, which is formed by an island of the same name. In these parts New Bay is the best place for wooding and watering; the water being so clear and excellent, that, in order to get a fresh supply, we staved all that had been taken on board at Batavia and Prince's Island. It is to be had from a fine strong run on the Java shore, which falls down from

the land into the sea, and by means of a horse it may be laded into the boats, and the casks filled without putting them on shore, which renders the work very easy and expeditious. There is a small reef of rocks within which the boats go, not in the least dangerous, and the boats lie in as smooth water, and as effectually sheltered from any swell, as if they were in a mill-pond; and if a ship, when lying here, should be driven from her anchors by a wind that blows upon the shore, she may, with the greatest ease, run up the passage between New Island and Java, where there is sufficient depth of water for the largest vessel, and a harbour, in which, being land locked, she will find perfect security. Wood may be procured any where, either upon Java or New Island, neither of which at this part are inhabited. In our present station, we had 14 fathoms water, with a fine sandy bottom. The peak of Prince's Island bore N. 13 W. The westernmost point of New Island S. 82 W. and the easternmost point of Java that was in sight, N. E. We were distant from the Java shore a mile and a quarter, and from the watering-place a mile and a half. In a few days having completed our wood and water, we weighed, and stood out of the strait of Sunda, with a fine fresh gale at S. E. which continued until we were distant from the island of Java 700 leagues.

On Monday the 23rd of November, we had in view the coast of Africa; on the 28th, at day-break, we made the land of the Cape of Good Hope; and, in the evening, cast anchor in Table Bay. Here we found only a Dutch ship from Europe, and a snow belonging to the cape, which was in the company's service, for the inhabitants are not permitted to have any shipping. This bay, in summer, is a good harbour, but not in winter; on which account the Dutch vessels lay here no longer than the 15th of November, after which they go to False Bay, where they are sheltered from the N. W. winds, which blow here with great violence. At this place we breathed a pure air, had wholesome food, went freely about the country, which is exceeding pleasant; and found the inhabitants hospitable and polite; there being scarcely a gentleman, either in a public or private station, from whom we did not receive some civility; and Captain Carteret observes, "he should ill deserve the favours they bestowed, if he did not particularly mention the first and second governor, and the fiscal." We continued near six weeks at the cape, in order to recover our sick.

On Wednesday the 20th of January, in the evening, A. D. 1769. we set sail, and before it was dark cleared the land. After a fine and pleasant passage, on Wednesday the 20th, we anchored off the island of St. Helena, from whence we again sailed on Sunday the 24th. On Saturday the 30th, we came in sight of the N. E. part of Ascension Island, and early in the morning ran in close to it. We sent out a boat to discover the anchoring place, and in the afternoon came to an anchor in Cross Hill Bay. To find this place, bring the largest and most conspicuous hill upon the island to bear S. E. When the ship is in this position, the bay will be open, right in the middle between two other hills, the westernmost of which is called Cross Hill, and gives name to the bay. A flag-staff is upon this hill, which, if a ship brings to bear S. S. E. half E. or S. E. by E. and runs in, keeping to till she is in 10 fathom water, she will be in the best part of the bay. In our run along the N. E. side of the island, we observed several other small sandy bays, in some of which our boat found good anchorage, and saw plenty of turtle. At this place, where we lay, they also abound. In the evening we landed a few men to turn the turtle, that should come on shore during the night, and in the morning they had secured 18, from 4 to 600 weight each. There being no inhabitants on this island, we, according to a usual custom, left a letter in a bottle, with our names, and destination, the date, and a few other particulars.

On Monday the 1st of February, we weighed, and set sail. On the 19th, we came in sight of a ship, in the south quarter, which hoisted French colours; and on Saturday the 20th, she tacked in order to speak with

us. Her commander, we, after she had left us, found to be M. de Bougainville, whose frequent traces of the English navigators had very remarkably occurred in the course of the three voyages, which they made round the world. This gentleman made a voyage to Faulkland's islands, called by the French, after the Dutch, Mauritius, in the year 1765, and was seen by Commodore Byron, in the straits of Magellan, as we have related in our history of that voyage. Soon after his return home, he sailed from port L'Orient, in November 1766, on board the Bourdeufe frigate, attended by the Etoile sloop, on a voyage of discovery, and to encompass the world: but being baffled in his attempts to pass the straits of Magellan, he returned to the eastern coast of South America, and wintered at Buenos Ayres. On the return of the season, he renewed his attempt with better success, touched at the island of Juan Fernandez, where he stayed two months, followed Captain Wallis and Captain Carteret, in the manner already related, and, by successfully completing his design, became the first native of France, who had gone round the world, at least in one continued voyage. At this time he was on his return in the Bourdeufe, having left the Etoile at the Mauritius: he had also touched at the island of Ascension; and after having hailed us, sent an officer on board, in order to receive some letters, which were to be conveyed to France, who, under colour of general conversation, endeavoured to obtain information concerning the route and incidents of our voyage, while by a string of plausible fictions he concealed their own; but Captain Carteret could not be brought to be communicative, so that all the endeavours of the Frenchman proved fruitless: on the other hand, the crew of the boat in which the officer had arrived soon imparted all they knew to those of our sailors who conversed with them. Capt. Carteret observes very justly on this transaction, "that an artful attempt to draw him into a breach of his obligation to secrecy, whilst the French commander imposed a fiction, that he might not violate his own, was neither liberal nor just."

We had now a fresh gale, and all our sails set, when the French ship, though foul from a long voyage, and we had been just cleaned, shot by us as if we had been at anchor. On Sunday, the 7th of March, we passed between the western islands of St. Michael and Terceira. As we proceeded farther to the westward, the gale increased, and on the 11th it blew very hard from W. N. W. with a great sea, which blew our fore-sail all to pieces, before we could get the yard down; this obliged us to bring to; and having bent a new sail, we bore away again. On Tuesday the 16th, we were in latitude 49 deg. 15 min. north, and on the 18th, we found ourselves by the depth of water in the channel. The next day we had a view of the Start-Point; and on the 20th after a fine passage, and a fair wind from the Cape of Good Hope, to our great joy, the Swallow came to an anchor at Spithead: and to what can we ascribe her arriving safe at last, after having gone through, apparently, insurmountable difficulties, but to the merciful interposition of a particular Providence. In following her and her brave crew, through this voyage, our astonishment is excited, not so much at the number and importance of the discoveries made, but that such wants, such embarrassments, and such dangers, as these neglected and devoted people had to encounter, should have been overcome, in a ship that had been thirty years in the service! It is also no less surprising, how it came to pass, that so able and gallant an officer should have been so cruelly treated, when sent upon a service, which, in almost every other instance, has been particularly attended to, and received the most ample supplies; and, to conclude, if we consider the many impediments which lay in the way of Captain Carteret, beyond what any other navigator had to struggle with, we must acknowledge that this voyage does great honour to him as the conductor of it: indeed this sensible officer seems to have been animated with the true spirit of discovery, and to have possessed such an uncommon share of fortitude and perseverance, as nothing short of death could subdue.

NEW, AU

A VO

By the

In his

A genuine

I N

It is fortunate nations, that the desire of novelty satisfy; that we earth, he is still, explore; and that his progress, he may chance to of

If the history terrified men from age, the particular, would provoke dreary regions that accustomed to feel sun, and are for the earth in hap whole quarter o omnihabitable by a very incor drupedes. The res that must r forsorn defects, from the favour merciful provid the earth, are, hour of the mo lution of the m

In the conte by nature to overcome; but rocks, and bulw silt in attempts mies; as the ce The hardest ar himself and his gets, and fustle most complicat turn home with

This observ brief recapitula detaken, with passage to Chin

The first who

NEW, AUTHENTIC, and COMPLETE ACCOUNT and NARRATIVE, of

A VOYAGE Towards the NORTH POLE,

UNDERTAKEN and PERFORMED

By the Hon. Com. PHIPPS, (now Lord MULGRAVE),

In his Majesty's Ship the RACEHORSE, accompanied by
Capt. LUTWYCH in the CARCASE SLOOP.

TO WHICH IS PREFIXED,

A genuine Account of the several Voyages undertaken for the Discovery of a
NORTH-EAST Passage to CHINA and JAPAN.

I N T R O D U C T I O N.

It is fortunate for commerce, and the intercourse of nations, that there is implanted in man's nature a desire of novelty, which no present gratification can satisfy: that when he has visited one region of the earth, he is still, like Alexander, fighting for another to explore; and that, after having escaped one danger in his progress, he is no less eager to encounter others, that may chance to obstruct him in the course of his pursuits.

If the history of former hardships could have deterred men from engaging in new adventures, the voyages, the particulars of which we are now about to relate, would probably never have been undertaken. The dreary regions that surround the poles are so little accustomed to feel the kindly influences of the enlivening sun, and are so destitute of the ordinary productions of the earth in happier climates, that little less than one whole quarter of the globe is, by its sterility, rendered uninhabitable by human beings, and but thinly occupied by a very inconsiderable number of the race of quadrupeds. The many and almost insuperable difficulties that must therefore be expected in traversing these frozen deserts, where no relief is to be expected, but from the favourable interposition of that power, whose merciful providence extends to the remotest corners of the earth, are, upon reflection, enough to cool the ardour of the most enterprising, and to stagger the resolution of the most intrepid.

In the contention between powers, equally formed by nature to meet an opposition, it may be glorious to overcome; but to encounter raging seas, tremendous rocks, and bulwarks of solid ice, and desperately to persist in attempts to prevail against such formidable enemies; as the conflict is hopeless, so the event is certain. The hardiest and most skillful navigator, after exposing himself and his companions to the most perilous dangers, and suffering in proportion to his hardiness the most complicated distresses, must at last submit to return home without success, or perish in his perseverance.

This observation will be sufficiently justified, by a brief recapitulation of the voyages that have been undertaken, with a view to the discovery of a north-east passage to China and Japan.

The first who attempted this discovery was Sir Hugh

Willoughby, with three ships, so early as the year 1553, the era of perilous enterprizes. This gentleman sailed to the latitude of 75 degrees north, within sight, as it is imagined, of New Greenland, now called Spitzbergen; but by a storm was driven back, and obliged to winter in the river Arzena, in Lapland, where he was frozen to death with all his company. He left upon his table a concise account of all his discoveries, in which he mentions, having sailed within sight of a country in a very high latitude, about which geographers are divided; some affirming, as has been said, that it could be no other than New Greenland, afterwards discovered, and named by the Dutch Spitzbergen; others, that what he saw was only a fog-bank; and of this latter opinion is Capt. Wood, an able navigator, of whom we shall have occasion to speak hereafter.

To Sir Hugh Willoughby succeeded Captain Burroughs, afterwards Comptroller of the Navy to Queen Elizabeth. This gentleman attempted the passage with better fortune, and returned full of hope, but without success. He passed the North cape in 1556, advanced as far north as the 78th deg. discovered the Wygate, or strait that divides Nova Zembla from the country of the Sammoys, now subject to Russia: and having passed the easternmost point of that strait, arrived at an open sea, from whence he returned, having, as he imagined, discovered the passage so painfully sought, and so ardently desired. Some affirm, his discoveries extended beyond the 80th deg. of latitude, to a country altogether desolate, where the mountains were blue and the valleys snow.

Be that as it may, the favourable report of Captain Burroughs encouraged Queen Elizabeth to fit out two stout vessels to perfect the discovery. The command of these ships was given to the Captains Jackmar and Pett, who, in 1580, sailed through the same strait, that had been discovered by Burroughs, and entered the eastern sea; where the ice poured in so fast upon them, and the weather became so tempestuous, that after enduring incredible hardships, and sustaining the most dreadful shocks of ice and seas, terrible even in the relation, they were driven back and separated; and neither Pett nor his ship or crew were ever heard of afterwards.

After

After this disaster and disappointment, the desire of visiting the frozen seas to the N. E. began to abate among the English, but was assumed by the Dutch with an obstinate perseverance, peculiar to that phlegmatic nation. The first Dutchman we read of who made the attempt was John Cornelius, of whose voyage, in 1595, we have but a very imperfect account; he was followed however in 1606 by William Barrans, or, as some write, Barents, an able and experienced seaman and mathematician, who being supplied with every necessary for so hazardous a voyage, by the generosity and patronage of prince Maurice, proceeded in the same course which had been pointed out to him by the English navigators; but having passed the Wygate, found the like incumbrances, and the like tempests which the English had experienced; and not being able to bear up against them, returned thoroughly convinced, that the wished-for passage was not to be attained in that direction. However, he traversed the coast of Nova Zembla, gave names to several promontories and head-lands, and planned to himself a new course to steer, by which he hoped to accomplish what he had failed in discovering, by following the steps of those who had gone before him.

In 1607, animated rather than discouraged by disappointment, he entered upon his second voyage, with the spirit of a man fully prepossessed with success. He had heard, that some of the whalers, who had now begun to frequent the north seas, had, either by design or accident, advanced much farther to the northward than those who had been purposely fitted out upon discoveries; he therefore determined to steer to the northward of Nova Zembla, till he should arrive at the height of the pole, under which he was persuaded he should find an open sea; and by changing his course to the southward, avoid those obstructions which had retarded his passage to the N. E.

In this hope he continued till he arrived on the coast of Nova Zembla, where, before he had reached the 77th deg. he was so rudely attacked by the mountains of ice, that every where assailed him, that not being able to withstand their fury, he was driven against the rocks, and his ship dashed to pieces. Barents and the greatest part of his crew got safe to land, but it was to experience greater misery than those underwent who perished in the attempt. They were obliged to winter in a country, where no living creature besides themselves appeared to have existence; and where, notwithstanding their utmost efforts to preserve their bodies from the cold, the flesh perished upon the bones of some of them, and others died of the most excruciating pains.

In this extremity, and notwithstanding the anguish they endured, those who survived had still the fortitude and ingenuity to frame a pinnacle from the wreck of their broken ship, in which, at the approach of summer, they made sail for Lapland; but before they arrived at Colu, their Captain died, and with him the hopes of perfecting his discovery.

It was now the active season for naval enterprizes. Private adventurers began to fit out ships for the north seas. Innumerable sea animals had been observed to bask upon the ice; the tusks of whose jaws were found to excel, in whiteness, the finest ivory, and their carcasses to yield plenty of excellent oil. In the infancy of the whale fishery, these were pursued with the same eagerness, with which both the English and Dutch endeavour at this day to make the whales their prey, and perhaps with no less profit. In following these, many islands were discovered to which they resorted, and, in course of time, the seas that were so formidable to the first discoverers, became frequented at the proper seasons by the ships of every nation.

Foreign navigators, however, were more sanguine in their notions of a N. W. passage, than of the existence of a passage to the N. E. and it was not till many unsuccessful trials had been made to discover the former, that the latter was again attempted. The celebrated Hudson, who discovered the straits that lead to the great western bay, which still bears his name; after he

had exerted his skill in vain to find a passage westward, was persuaded at last to undertake a voyage in search of a passage to the N. E. This he performed in 1610, but being discouraged by the miscarriages of others, and the fatal issue that had attended their obstinate perseverance, on viewing the face of the country, examining the currents, and traversing an immense continent of ice, that stretched along the ocean, in a direction from E. S. E. to W. N. W. he concluded, that no passage could be practicable in that direction, and therefore returned without making any other material discovery.

From this time till the year 1676, the prosecution of this discovery was totally neglected by the English; and though the Dutch whalers amused the world with wonderful relations of their near approach to the pole, yet little credit was given to their reports till the arrival of one John Wood, who had accompanied Sir John Narborough in his voyage to the South Sea, with a view to establish a new trade with the Chilians, and natives of that vast tract of country, reaching from the straits of Magellan to the confines of Peru.

This able and enterprising navigator, being himself an excellent mathematician and geographer, and reading in the Philosophical Transactions a paper, by which the existence of a N. E. passage to the eastern or Indian ocean was plausibly asserted, and this exactly coinciding with his own notions of the construction of the globe, he was induced, by this and other reasons, to apply to king Charles II. for a commission to prosecute the discovery; the accomplishment whereof, it was said, would add to the glory of his majesty's reign, and immensely to the wealth and prosperity of his kingdoms.

Many about the court of that needy prince, hoping to share in the profits of the voyage, were earnest in prevailing with his majesty to forward the design, who being himself fond of novelty, ordered the Speedwell frigate to be fitted out at his own charge, manned, victualled, and provided with every necessary; while the duke, his brother, and several other courtiers, joined in the purchase of a pinnac of 120 tons, to accompany her, which they likewise manned and victualled, and furnished with merchandizes, such as were thought marketable on the coasts of Tartary or Japan; the countries they most probably would first fall in with after their passage through the north sea.

These ships being in readiness, and commissions made out for their commanders, Captain Wood was appointed to direct the expedition, on board the Speedwell, and Captain Flawes to bear him company on board the Prosperous.

On the 28th of May 1676, they sailed from the Bury of the Nore, with the wind at S. W. and on the 4th of June cast anchor off Lerwick, in Brasley Sound, where they continued six days, to take in water and recruit their stores.

On Saturday the 10th, they weighed anchor and continued their voyage; and on the 15th they entered the polar circle, where the sun at that season of the year never sets. At noon the Speedwell broke her main-top-mast-yard in the slings, the first disaster that had happened, which, however, was easily repaired. The weather now began to grow hazey, a circumstance that frequently happens in the polar regions, and darkens the air with the obscurity of night.

From this time till June 22, when they fell in with the ice in latitude 75 deg. 59 min. N. nothing material occurred. On that day, at noon, they observed a continuation of ice stretching to an imperceptible distance, in a direction from E. S. E. and W. N. W. They bore away along the ice till the 28th, when they found it join to the land of Nova Zembla.

On the 29th, they stood away to the south, to get clear of the ice; but unfortunately found themselves embayed in it. At 11 at night the Prosperous bore down upon the Speedwell, crying out, ice upon the weather-bow, on which the Speedwell clapt the helm hard a-weather, and veered out the main-sail to wate the ship; but before she could be brought to on the other tack, she struck on a ledge of rocks, and stuck fast. They fired guns of dif-

For
trees, but were
that land could
stem of their
but from prov
Having left
all embarked
of July chang
and, on the 2
Thames, with
After the r
highest expect
rienced navig
passage by th
were the more
by the reason
opinion on th
discovery, he
persuaded ma
When, howev
was only that
solid body of
ty leagues; i
coasted along
peding, at ev
a certain dist
ocean; but
northward in
another; and
By this exp
confuted, na
between Spi
might be att
far as the po
fore pronou
geries which
der the pole
to the north
frozen, and
opinion upo
he saw were
southward,
fore it wou
To this p
the testimo
have them
latitude, ar
is no reason
It does
counts the
for the di
taken by
land, sinc
the prese
the Russi
taken pla
from Eur
for ever
But t
Great,
which d
maritim
ed fresh
unacqu
knew r
wonder
but in
and er
log his
conce
the r
W
prize
thoug
of th
T
to h
natio
ing
atch

trief, but were not heard, and the fog being so thick, that land could not be discerned, though close to the stern of their ship; no relief was now to be expected, but from providence and their own endeavours.

Having left the ship, and found Capt. Flawes, they all embarked on board the Prosperous, and on the 9th of July changed their course, and steered for England; and, on the 23d of August, they arrived safe in the Thames, without any remarkable accident intervening.

After the miscarriage of this voyage, on which the highest expectations had been formed, the most experienced navigators in England seemed to agree, that a passage by the N. or N. E. had no existence. They were the more confirmed in this error, for an error it is, by the reasons assigned by Capt. Wood, for changing his opinion on this matter: for, before he went upon the discovery, he was fully persuaded himself, and likewise persuaded many others, that nothing was more certain.

When, however, he first saw the ice, he imagined it was only that which joined to Greenland, and that no solid body of ice extended farther from land than twenty leagues; in this persuasion he altered his course, and coasted along in the direction in which the ice lay, expecting, at every cape or head-land of ice, after running a certain distance, to find an opening into the Polar ocean; but after running two or three glasses to the northward in one bay, he found himself entangled in another; and thus it continued till his ship was wrecked. By this experiment, he found the opinion of Barents confuted, namely, "that by steering the middle course between Spitzbergen and Nova Zembla, an open sea might be attained, in which a ship might safely sail as far as the pole." From his own experience, he therefore pronounced, that all the Dutch relations were forgeries which asserted, that any man had ever been under the pole; verily believing, that if there be no land to the northward of 80 degrees, that the sea is there frozen, and always continues so; and grounding his opinion upon this remark, that if the body of ice which he saw were to be conveyed ten degrees more to the southward, many centuries of years would elapse before it would be melted.

To this positive assertion, however, may be opposed, the testimony of many credible persons, some of whom have themselves sailed beyond the 80th degree of north latitude, and others upon evidence whose veracity there is no reasonable cause to bring in question.

It does not appear, however, from any authentic accounts that we can collect, that any voyage, professedly for the discovery of a N. E. passage, has been undertaken by either public or private adventurers in England, since that of Captain Wood in the year 1676, till the present year: and it is more than probable, that if the Russian discoveries on the north of Asia had never taken place, the thoughts of finding a practicable passage from Europe in that direction, would have lain dormant for ever.

But the vast and enterprising genius of Peter the Great, in forcing his subjects out of that obscurity in which they had long been involved, has opened to the maritime powers new sources of commerce, and furnished fresh motives for new enterprizes. From a people unacquainted with a vessel bigger than a bark, and who knew no navigation but that of their own rivers, that wonderful Prince not only taught them the use of ships, but instructed them in the true principles of building and equipping them. Nay, he did more; for after making himself known and admired throughout Europe, he conceived the design of opening a communication with the remotest parts of the globe.

With this design, he planned one of the boldest enterprizes that ever entered into the heart of man; and though he did not survive to see it executed, the glory of the achievement is wholly his.

The country of Kamtschatka was as much unknown to his predecessors, as it was to the rest of the civilized nations of the earth; yet he formed the design of making that savage country the centre of the most glorious achievements.

It was in the last year of this great Monarch's life,

that he commissioned Capt. Behring to traverse the wild, and then almost desolate, country of Siberia, and to continue his route to Kamtschatka, where he was to build one or more vessels, in order to discover whether the country towards the north, of which at that time they had no distinct knowledge, was a part of America, or not: and if it was, his instructions authorized him to endeavour, by every possible means, to seek and cultivate the acquaintance of some European people, and to learn from them the state of the country at which he should arrive. If he failed in this, he was to make such discoveries as circumstances should present, and commit to writing the result of his observations for the use of his imperial master.

To enter minutely into the particulars of Captain Behring's journey and voyage, would carry us beyond the limits prescribed for this Introduction; let it suffice to say, that after surmounting incredible difficulties, and suffering hardships which none but a Russian could have survived, he executed his commission successfully, and returned to Petersburg in safety, after an absence of five years, in which time, besides his voyage by sea, he had travelled, in going and returning, 18,000 miles by land.

It is from the second enterprizes of this astonishing man, and from the subsequent voyages of the Russians, that we are able to ascertain the existence of a N. E. passage: and it is from thence, and from the late voyage of Capt. Phipps; that, we think, we may fairly infer the practicability of it.

It must be acknowledged to the lasting honour of the noble lord who presides at the head of the admiralty board, and who patronized the undertaking, that the means to render it successful, was in every respect proportioned to the importance of the discovery.

The vessels that were made choice of were the properest that could be devised. Bomketches are in the first instance stoutly built, and not being over large, are best adapted for navigating seas that are known to abound with shoals and covered rocks; these vessels, besides their natural strength, were sheathed with plank of seasoned oak three inches thick, to fortify them against the shocks and pressure of the ice, that, in their progress, they must infallibly encounter. They were, besides, furnished, with a double set of ice poles, anchors, cables, sails, and rigging, to provide against the terrible effects of the severe and tempestuous weather, that frequently happens in high latitudes, even in the middle of the most temperate seasons. Nor was his lordship less careful to provide for the comfortable subsistence of the men, than for the preservation of their lives, by his wife directions in equipping their ships. His first care was, to issue orders for killing and curing a sufficient quantity of beef and pork in the best manner possible, that their provisions might be good and fresh; and his next, to cause 100 butts of porter to be brewed with the best malt and hops, that they might have proper drink to fortify them against the rigour of the climate they were about to pass. Their pease, oatmeal, rice, and molasse were all provided with equal care, and when all things were in readiness, the beer was stowed in the holds, and the vacancies filled up with coals, which served as ballast, that firing might not be wanting to warm and dry them when cold, or wet with labour, or with watching. Add to this, that a double quantity of spirits were put on board, with a large portion of wine, vinegar, mullard, &c. &c. and what, we believe, was never before thought of in the fitting out of any king's ship's, a considerable quantity of tea and sugar for the sick, in case any should be seized with that dreadful disorder, which rendered ship provisions loathsome to Capt. James's men, who were constrained to winter in Charlton Island in 1632.

Thus equipped and provided, the command of the Race Horse was given to the Hon. Constantine Phipps, as Commodore, and that of the Carcase to Captain Skiffington Lutwyck; the first mounting eight six pounders and 14 swivels, burthen 350 tons; the latter four six pounders and 14 swivels, burthen 300 tons. Let us now proceed to the journal of the voyage.

All things being now in readiness, the officers on board, and the men paid their bounty-money of three pounds per man, according to his Majesty's royal proclamation, for the encouragement of those who should voluntarily enter to undertake the voyage. On the 3rd of June 1773, the Commodore made the signal to weigh; but previous to their departure, the Carcase having been judged too deep to navigate those heavy seas through which she was to pass, the Captain obtained leave from the board of Admiralty to re-load 10 of her complement of men, and to put ashore six of the eight six-pounders with which she was equipped, with a quantity of provisions, proportioned to the number of men that it had been thought proper to discharge.

On Friday the 4th, being off Sheerness, the wind W. by N. and a fresh breeze, they took their departure; and continued their voyage without any material occurrence happening till Tuesday the 15th, when the Commodore made the signal to lie too. They were then off Brasley Island, and many fishing boats from Shetland being in sight, the men were invited on board, and some fish purchased of them at a cheap rate.

On the 15th, they took a new departure from Shetland, but the day following the fog thickened so much, that it almost approached to total darkness. During the continuance of the fog, the Commodore kept firing guns and beating drums, to prevent the Carcase from losing company. As it was impossible that one could see the other at a ship's length, it was found the more necessary to repeat and return the firing, lest they should run foul of each other before they could be apprize of their danger. About five in the morning the mist cleared up, and about nine the Commodore being in sight, made the signal to the Carcase to steer N. E. They were then in latitude 60 deg. 52 min. N. by observation; the north end of Shetland Island bearing N. by W. one half W. seven or eight leagues.

On the 17th, they observed a sail to the N. E. which the Commodore brought too, and spoke with. The breeze fresh, the weather hazy, and the wind variable, the Carcase carried away her main-top mast studding sail yard; which however, was very soon supplied. Latitude this day by observation 62 deg. 53 min. N.

Friday the 18th, being in the latitude of 65 deg. 9 min. N. the clothing allowed by the government, of which notice has already been taken in the introduction, was delivered out, and officers as well as men received their full proportion. This day the weather continued as before.

Saturday the 19th, the weather varied to every point of the compass, the Commodore brought too, and spoke with the Carcase. Made sail about three in the morning, and at nine a large swell. Tacked and stood to the eastward. Latitude 66 deg. 1 min. N. longitude from London 33 min. W.

Sunday the 20th, they pursued their course to the eastward, with the wind N. W. but variable; high breezes and clear air. They were now within the polar circle, and at mid-night had an observation of the sun, and found their latitude 66 deg. 51 min. N. Sounded on board the Commodore with a lead of 100 weight, and a line of 780 fathoms, to which was fastened a thermometer of Lord George Cavendish's construction. They found no bottom, but the water was 11 deg. colder at that depth than on the surface. The Carcase sounded with 450 fathoms only.

Monday 21, light breezes and cloudy weather. They observed a whale on the N. E. quarter, the first they had yet seen in the north seas. The weather now began to set in severe; the nights cold and the days cloudy. The Commodore observing a whaling snow with Hambro' colours flying, fired a shot, and brought her too. She happened to be homeward bound with seals, and Mr. Wyndham, a gentleman of fortune, who had embarked on board the Commodore, with a view to prosecute the voyage, finding nothing but foul weather and heavy seas, to gratify his curiosity, and being withal unable to endure the sea-sickness, took passage on board

the Hamburger, in order to return home; and having taken leave of his friends, by wishing them a happy voyage, the Snow's boat took him on board about seven in the morning, and at eight the Commodore and Carcase pursued their voyage.

Tuesday 22, the articles of war were read on board the Carcase. The weather began to be piercing cold; they had reached the 70th degree of north latitude, in a course nearly north, being only 14 minutes to the eastward of London; and from their leaving Shetland to this day, they had seen nothing remarkable: nor had any accident befallen either of the ships worth relating, except that of now and then snapping a rope, or breaking a yard; incidents easily repaired. This day it poured with rain; the air was thick, and the rain froze as it fell. Saw a large ship to the N. W. standing southward, but wanting no information that she could give, they pursued their voyage without speaking to her.

Wednesday 23, the rain continued; the weather hazy; heard three guns fire at a distance, but saw no ship or other object. The whales are here in no great plenty, and few ships appear in the open sea in pursuit of them. They generally at this season frequent the bays and creeks near the shore, and only break away when they are pursued or wounded.

On Thursday the 24th, the Commodore changed his course to E. N. E. and on the 25th, they were in latitude 74 deg. 7 min. N. and in 8 deg. 32 min. E. longitude from London. Served out to the ship's company plenty of mustard, pepper, vinegar, &c. The weather extremely cold and variable. At eight in the evening thick fog; at two in the morning fresh breezes; at eight clear weather; at eleven squally; and at noon calm, with fleet and snow.

On Saturday the 26th, at midnight, they had an observation, and found themselves in latitude 74 deg. 17 min. N. fresh gales, sometimes rain, fleet, and snow; at seven in the morning clear weather and an open sea.

Sunday 27, light airs from the southward, and cloudy weather; much warmer than the preceding day. It is remarkable, that the vicissitudes of heat and cold are more frequent here than in the more southerly latitudes. It often changes from temperate to extreme cold; and that suddenly.

It should seem likewise, that the ice frequently changes its place in this latitude; or that it is more solid near land than in the open sea; for, on the 23d of June, 1676, Captain Wood, being more to the eastward, fell in with ice right a-head, not more than a league distant. He steered along it, thinking it had openings, but found them to be bays. He founded, and found ground at 158 fathoms, soft green oar. In some places he found pieces of ice driving off a mile from the main body in strange shapes, resembling ships, trees, buildings, beasts, fishes, and even men. The main body of ice being low and craggy, he could see hills of a blue colour at a distance, and valleys that were white as snow. In some places, he observed drift wood among the ice. Some of the ice he melted, and found it fresh and good. This navigator never could advance farther to the north; but in seeking to penetrate the ice was ship-wrecked, as has been already related in the Introduction. He therefore judged the ice impenetrable, and that land or ice surrounded the pole. Our navigators found also much wood in this latitude floating about the ships, and saw great flocks of birds.

Monday 28, the weather altered: the wind west. Fresh breezes, with rain and fleet. Latter part thick fog.

Tuesday 29, being in latitude 78 deg. N. and in longitude 6 deg. 29 min. E. from London, came in sight of land, when the ships brought too, and the Captains held a consultation concerning their future course. The appearance of the land lay from E. S. E. to N. E. and this day they spoke with the Marquis of Rockingham, Greenlandman, who by their reckoning, were then

then in latitude the Commodore. This difference the proper allowance. The Greenlanders with well flavoured wife informed, that the day before pieces by its close. Wednesday weather. Half fathoms, soft called from its quarters E. at N. W. quarter to the east. fathom.

Thursday the midnight: the Point E. one in the morning a sail to the latitude 78 deg and found the

Friday 2, they and took the Mount Parnall to be 3960 feet distance resembling thing like a tu with the hills appearance, resembling trees exceeded the spl this happens, they shot some

Saturday 3, with a Hollander farther north this season.

chored in 15 fathoms, and found in about from the rock of four azimuth 25 min. W. soft brown in four leagues. Wood gave discovery of the have an opportunity to settle on whereby the horizon, the variations named. The poles to exist should be a It does not theis; and name was know any

Sunday 4, ed, and on Headland, bearing N. fight. Latitude longitude meter 47-

Monday 15 fathoms Race Ho which was crackling, dashing each other Hacluit's leagues. No

then in latitude 79 deg. 40 min. N. though by that of the Commodore, their latitude was only 78 deg. 3 min. This difference, it is probable, arises from not making the proper allowance for refraction in this high latitude. The Greenlandmen presented each of the Commanders with a deer and a half, which they found well flavoured venison, though not over fat. He likewise informed, that he had just come from the ice, and that the day before, three whalers had been crushed to pieces by its closing upon them suddenly.

Wednesday 30, pursued their course. Cloudy weather. Half past four in the morning founded 112 fathoms, soft blue mud. At this time Black Point, so called from its dark appearance, bore N. E. by E. three quarters E. at the distance of seven or eight leagues. At half past seven in the morning, saw two sail in the N. W. quarter. At half past twelve tacked and stood to the east. Sounded, and found ground at 115 fathom.

Thursday July 1, light breezes and clear weather at midnight: the sun as bright as at noon day. Black Point E. one half S. distant seven leagues. At three in the morning made Charles's Island, and at nine saw a sail to the westward whaling; they were then in latitude 78 deg. 18 min. N. by observation. Sounded and found the same depth as before.

Friday 2, light airs and moderate weather. Lay to and took the altitude of a mountain, which they named Mount Parnassus; found it from the level of the sea to be 3960 feet high, covered with snow, and at a distance resembling an ancient building, with something like a turret a-top. The foot of this mountain, with the hills adjoining, have sometimes a very fiery appearance, and the ice and snow on their sides resembling trees and shrubs, glisten with a brilliancy that exceed the splendor of the brightest gems. When this happens, a violent storm generally succeeds. Here they shot some sea fowl, but of an oily taste.

Saturday 3, proved a perfect calm. They spoke with a Hollander, who foretold, that a degree or two farther north was the utmost extent of their progress this season. Having doubled Cape Cold, they anchored in 15 fathom water, about three miles from the land, and sent the boats ashore for water, which they found in abundance, pouring down in little streams from the rocks. At five in the afternoon, by the mean of four azimuths, the variation was found to be 18 deg. 56 min. W. Sounded, and found only 65 fathoms, soft brown mud. Mount Parnassus E. N. E. three or four leagues. Among other reasons which Captain Wood gave for wishing to be employed on the discovery of the N. E. passage, one was, that he might have an opportunity of approaching the pole, in order to settle an hypothesis, which he had long framed, whereby the inclination of the magnetical needle under the horizon, in all latitudes and in all longitudes, with the variation of the compass, might be exactly determined. This navigator imagined two magnetical poles to exist: and that, by approaching the one, he should be able to determine the action of the other. It does not appear, that he ever explained his hypothesis; and there never has been but one man, whose name was Williams, since his time, who pretended to know any thing of the matter.

Sunday 4, light breezes and hazy weather. Sounded, and only 20 fathoms deep, rocky ground. Hacluit's Headland, or the northernmost point of Spitzbergen, bearing N. by E. seven leagues. Many whalers in sight. Latitude by observation 79 deg. 34 min. N. longitude from London 8 deg. 10 min. E. Thermometer 47.

Monday 5, at two in the afternoon sounded, and only 15 fathom water; rocky ground. Thick fog. The Race Horse fired guns as signals to keep company, which were answered by the Carcase. A dreadful crackling was heard at a distance, which proved the dashing and grinding of the loose pieces of ice against each other, which is heard at many leagues distance. Hacluit's Headland S. E. by S. distance six or seven leagues.

No. 39,

Tuesday 6, proved very foggy; the breezes slight, and islands of ice beginning to appear. At three in the afternoon the Commodore hauled up from a large body of packed ice, and the fog thickening, both ships kept firing volleys of small arms, to prevent their losing company. At half past ten in the evening, the extremities of the ice stretching from N. W. to E. N. E. the Commodore bore away; and at half past twelve lost sight of it. At half past one in the morning heard a violent surf to the S. E. At two tacked and stood to the westward. At half past five the fog gathering, they began firing volleys of small arms. At six saw the ice stretching from E. by S. to N. by E. and at seven was within sight of land. At ten Cloven Cliff stood E. S. E. distant about five or six leagues.

Wednesday the 7th, the weather cloudy. They found themselves beset among the loose ice, which increasing continually, gave them incredible trouble. Observing that it thickened to the eastward, they hauled up, and stood to the westward; but in tacking, they were in danger of running foul. It was with difficulty they could keep any course, for the drifts of ice came so thick, as to whirl the ships about, as if in a whirl-pool.

Thursday 8, the weather still remaining cloudy, and the wind variable, both ships still were entangled in the ice; and the Carcase being driven to leeward, hoisted out her long-boat to tow up with the Commodore. But the ice closing very fast, it was impossible for the boats to live. Orders were then given to tack and stand to the southward; but the ships not being able to make head against the accumulation of ice that continually gathered round them, were under a necessity of applying to their ice anchors and poles, in order to warp through it. At half past eight in the evening, the ice beginning to open, they again hoisted out their boats, and with difficulty towed the ships round a cape of ice projecting from the main body, and at last got clear. At ten the boats were hoisted on board. In extricating themselves from this dangerous situation, the Race Horse had her best bower-anchor snapt in the shank, close to the stock, and the Carcase lost her starboard bumpkin and head-rails.

It frequently happens, that ships beset among the ice in the manner above related, perish by being dashed to pieces against the solid fields of ice, or crushed by the broken pieces crowding upon one another, and rising so fast about the ship, as to exceed the height of her sides, and then there is no escaping. They were told by some experienced seamen, that the ice rises out of the sea as high sometimes as mountains; and that several of these mountains, by striking together and coalescing, form these islands of ice that are frequently seen in the lower latitudes, driving up and down the sea as the wind and tides direct them:

The greatest danger to be apprehended, is, however, from the loose ice; for the whalers often moor their ships to the solid fields of ice, that at certain seasons seem to rest upon the earth, and appear fixed to it, and there find the best fishing. In such situations it often happens, that little or no loose ice is to be seen; yet presently upon a change of wind, or the blowing of a storm, it shall pour in upon them so suddenly, that they sometimes perish in it. It is not possible to account for the astonishing quantity that will gather in this manner in less than an hour's time.

Though it seems to be agreed, that many of the largest fields of ice are frozen to the depth of the sea in which they are found, and that they are bedded on the solid earth, yet it is equally certain, that they are often rent asunder by the raging billows; and that in breaking, they produce the most terrifying noise in nature; nay, it is asserted, that the clashing of the pieces of loose ice against each other, on any extraordinary agitation of the waves, is attended with a roaring so loud, that a man who is near it can hardly hear the sound of his own voice.

Friday the 9th, they hauled up to the westward, and lost sight one of the other; but about nine next morning they came in sight, and joined company. The

weather being now piercing cold, the people had an additional quantity of porter and brandy delivered to them; two quarts of porter and a pint of brandy being now every man's daily allowance.

Saturday, July the 10th, the breeze fresh, and the weather cloudy. They failed between numberless pieces of ice, among which they saw several whales, but none of the whalers in pursuit of them. The ice now becoming solid and compact, they found it impracticable to continue their course. And the discovery of a passage to the pole in that direction (upon holding a consultation) appearing impracticable to every officer on board of both ships, the Commodore, at seven in the evening, hauled close to the wind; and the Carcase, as soon as she could extricate herself followed his example. The weather continuing foggy, with rain and snow, the sailors were almost worn out with turning and winding; and although they used the utmost precaution in working through the narrows, yet they could not always avoid striking against the mountains that every where surrounded them. During this night's work, they steered a hundred different courses, to follow the channels.

Sunday 11, having worked out of the ice, they failed along the main body, which appeared perfectly solid and compact, without any passage or inlet. This immense mass of ice extended N. E. as far as they could see from the mast-head; and, no doubt, might be a continuation of that in which they were engaged a few days before. The sea was now tolerably clear, for they met with no more fields, and only a few detached islands. At half past one in the morning they saw the land from S. by W. to S. S. E. At three in the morning they tacked; Cloven Cliff bearing S. S. E. six miles. At seven tacked again. At eight the Commodore bore away, and the Carcase stood after him. Cloven Cliff S. one half W. two or three leagues, latitude 79 deg. 56 min. N.

Monday 12, at eight in the evening Cloven Cliff bearing W. S. W. four or five miles, they founded in 15 fathoms water, and found a rocky bottom. Saw several English and Dutch Greenlanders at anchor in the Norways: That being their rendezvous to the northward, they never chuse to proceed farther. Here they found the current setting so fast to eastward, that they were forced to come to an anchor to keep from drifting on the ice; the swell from westward being so great, that had that happened, it would of consequence have starved the ships. At five in the morning a breeze from N. N. E. springing up, they weighed, and made sail. At eight Haclut's Headland W. S. W. one half W. six or seven leagues; at noon, latitude 80 deg. 2 min. N.

Tuesday 13, the weather being clear and calm, and a strong easterly current setting in, at eight in the evening they came to with their stream anchors and haufers in forty fathoms water; but at nine a breeze springing up from the eastward, they weighed, and next day came to an anchor in Snearingburgh Harbour. Cloven Cliff E. one half S. one mile. West point of Voogle Land N. N. W. one half W. distant one mile and a half; soundings 15 fathoms, sandy bottom.

Here they remained between five and six days to take in fresh water, during which time our journalist was employed in surveying the country, which to a stranger had a very awful and romantic appearance.

The country is stoney, and as far as can be seen full of mountains, precipices and rocks. Between these are hills of ice, generated, as it should seem, by the torrents that flow from the melting of the snow on the sides of those towering elevations, which being once congealed, are continually increased by the snow in winter, and the rain in summer, which often freezes as soon as it falls. By looking on these hills, a stranger may fancy a thousand different shapes of trees, castles, churches, ruins, ships, whales, monsters, and all the various forms that fill the universe. Of the ice-hills there are seven, that more particularly attract the notice of a stranger. These are known by the name of the Seven Icebergs, and are thought to be the

highest of the kind in that country. When the air clear, and the sun shines full upon these mountains the prospect is inconceivably brilliant. They sometimes put on the bright glow of the evening rays of the setting sun, when reflected upon glass, at his going down; sometimes they appear of a bright blue, like sapphire, and sometimes like the variable colours of a prism, exceeding in lustre the richest gems in the world, disposed in shapes wonderful to behold, all glittering with a lustre that dazzles the eye, and fills the air with astonishing brightness.

Snearingburgh harbour, where they landed, was first discovered by the Dutch. Here they erected sheds and conveniences for boiling the oil from the fat of the whales, instead of barrelling it up to be boiled at home. Here also, allured by the hope of gain, they built a village, and endeavoured to fix a colony; but the first settlers all perished in the ensuing winter. The remains of the village may be traced to this day; and their stoves, kettles, kardsels, troughs, ovens, and other implements, remained in the shape of solid ice long after the utensils themselves were decayed. Our voyagers were told, that the Russians have lately attempted the same thing, and that 10 out of 15 perished last winter in this second attempt.

Where every object is new, it is not easy for a stranger to fix which first to admire. The rocks are striking objects: before a storm they exhibit a fiery appearance, and the sun looks pale upon them, the snow giving the air a bright reflection. Their summits are almost always involved in clouds, so that it is but just possible to see the tops of them. Some of these rocks are but one stone from bottom to top, appearing like an old decayed ruin. Others consist of huge masses, veined differently, like marble, with red, white, and yellow; and probably, were they to be sawed and polished, would equal, if not excel, the finest Egyptian marble we now so much admire. Perhaps the distance and danger of carrying large blocks of stones, may be the reason that no trials have been made to manufacture them. On the southerly and westerly sides of these rocks grow all the plants, herbs, and mosses peculiar to this country; on the northerly and easterly sides the wind strikes so cold when it blows from these quarters, that it perishes every kind of vegetable. These plants grow to perfection in a very short time. Till the middle of May the whole country is locked up in ice; about the beginning of July the plants are in flower, and about the latter end of the same month, or beginning of August, they have perfected their seed. The earth owes its fertility, in a great measure, to the dung of birds, who build and breed their young here in the summer, and in the winter repair to more favourable climates.

The plants that are most common in Spitzbergen are scurvy-grass and crows-foot; there are besides small house-leek, and a plant with aloe-leaves; an herb like stone-crop; some small snake-weed; mouse-ear; wood-strawberry; periwinkle; and a herb peculiar to the country which they call the rock-plant. The leaves of this plant are in shape like a man's tongue, above six feet long, of a dull yellow colour. The stalk is round and smooth, and of the same colour with the leaf; it rises tapering, and smells like muskles. It is an aquatic, and rises in height in proportion to the depth of water in which it is found. There are other plants and herbs, but these are the chief. Of flowers, the white poppy seems the principal.

The rocks and precipices are full of fissures and clefts, which afford convenient harbour for birds to lay their eggs, and breed their young in safety. Most of these birds are water-fowl, and seek their food in the sea. Some, indeed, are birds of prey; and pursue and kill others for their own sustenance, but these are rare. The water-fowl eat strong and stony, and their fat is not to be endured. They are so numerous about the rocks, as sometimes to darken the air when they rise in flocks; and they scream so horribly, that the rocks ring with their noise.

There

There are kind of snow-Hudson's bay fowl, but the

The ice-birds are. He is his plumage, bright yellow tail, and almost

The other white bears, can subsist in

ered with hardly to be when the o

to be procur the warmer

abounds in tinent. But

tween Spitzbe continent, w

subsistence o desolate regi

bear is by fat which he is

land and w both. In su

use of the wh into the sea

the time of v sal sagacity

let them be vered with

are buried h subsistence o

question will before the w

found the w of this kind

comprehens that omnipo

These cr colour and t

need no def The lo

quainted Their head

they are bec mer for the

think, almo are seen in

ness, they

The Du

gry, they v

venous bir

make them

But the

can surviv

feed upon

tables whi

yet for ei

neither p

grafs wha

for so few

there is n

the distan

means of

the secret

man bein

these crea

Ampl

sounds a

adapted

or sea do

whalers

pleating

The f

it is a c

more ra

There are a few small birds like our snipes, and a kind of snow-bird, but different from that found about Hudson's bay. The gentlemen shot some of the water-fowl, but they were strong and ill-tasted.

The ice-bird is a very beautiful little bird, but very rare. He is in size and shape like a turtle-dove, but his plumage, when the sun shines upon him, is of a bright yellow, like the golden ring in the peacock's tail, and almost dazzles the eye to look upon it.

The other inhabitants of this forlorn country are white bears, deer, and foxes. How these creatures can subsist in the winter, when the whole earth is covered with snow, and the sea locked up in ice, is hardly to be conceived. It has been said, indeed, that when the ocean is all frozen over, and no sustenance to be procured in this country, they travel southerly to the warmer climates, where food proper for them abounds in the immense forests of the northern continent. But whoever considers the vast distance between Spitzbergen and the nearest parts of the northern continent, will be as much at a loss to account for the subsistence of these creatures in their journey, as in the desolate region where they undoubtedly remain. The bear is by far the best accommodated to the climate of which he is an inhabitant. He is equally at home on land and water, and hunts diligently for his prey in both. In summer he finds plenty of food from the refuse of the whales, sea-horses and seals, which is thrown into the sea by the whalers, and cover the shores during the time of whaling; and they have besides a wonderful sagacity in smelling out the carcasses of the dead, let them be ever so deeply buried in the earth, or covered with stones. The dead therefore that annually are buried here may contribute, in some degree, to the subsistence of a few of these creatures in winter; but the question will still recur, how the race of them subsisted before the whale-fishery had existence, and before men found the way to this inhospitable shore. Dispositions of this kind, as they are beyond the reach of human comprehension, serve only to raise our admiration of that omnipotent Being to whom nothing is impossible.

These creatures, as they differ in nothing but their colour and size from those commonly shewn in England, need no description.

The foxes differ little in shape from those we are acquainted with, but in colour there is no similitude. Their heads are black, and their bodies white. As they are beasts of prey, if they do not provide in summer for the long recesses of winter, it were, one would think, almost impossible for them to survive; yet they are seen in plenty, though, by their subtlety and swiftness, they are not easy to be caught.

The Dutch seamen report, that when they are hungry, they will feign themselves dead, and when the ravenous birds come to feed upon them, they rise and make them their prey.

But the most wonderful thing of all is, how the deer can survive an eight months famine. Like ours they feed upon nothing that can be perceived, but the vegetables which the earth spontaneously produces; and yet for eight months in the year, the earth produces neither plant, herb, shrub, or blade of any kind of grass whatever. They are, besides, but thinly clothed for so severe a climate, and what seems still worse, there is not a bush to be seen to shelter them, within the distance that any man has yet discovered. The means of their subsistence must therefore remain among the secrets of nature, never to be disclosed, as no human being can ever live here, so as to be able to trace these creatures to their winter's residence.

Amphibious creatures abound the most about the sounds and bays of Spitzbergen, and they seem best adapted to endure the climate. These are the seals, or sea dogs, and morises, or sea horses, of which the whalers avail themselves, when disappointed in completing their lading with the fat of whales.

The seal is sufficiently known; but the sea-horse, as it is a creature peculiar to high latitudes, is therefore more rare. It is not easy to lay how he came by his

name; for there is no more likeness between a sea-horse and a land-horse, than there is between a whale and an elephant. The sea-horse is not unlike the seal in shape. He has a large round head, larger than that of a bull, but shaped more like that of a pug-dog without ears, than any other animal we are acquainted with. He tapers all the way down to the tail, like the fish we call a lump, and his size is equal to that of the largest sized ox. His tusks close over his under jaw, like those of a very old boar, and are in length from one foot to two or more, in proportion to the size and age of the animal that breeds them. His skin is thicker than that of a bull, and covered with short mouse-coloured hair, which is sleeker and thicker, just as he happens to be in or out of season when he is caught. His paws, before and behind, are like those of a mole, and serve him for oars when he swims, and for legs to crawl when he goes upon the ice, or on shore. He is a fierce animal, but being unweildy when on land, or on the ice, is easily overcome.

These animals are always found in herds, sometimes of many hundreds together, and if one is attacked, the rest make a common cause, and stand by one another till the last gasp. If they are attacked in the water, they will fight desperately, and will even attempt the boats of their pursuers, if any of them are wounded, and not mortally. Some of them have been known to make holes in the bottom of the boat with their tusks, in defence of their young. Their eyes are large, and they have two holes in the upper part of the neck, out of which they eject the water, in like manner as it is ejected by whales.

Though the sea about Spitzbergen is full of fish, yet they rather appear to be designed by Providence for the sustenance of one another, than for the food of man. The mackarel, of which there are no great plenty, seem not only to be the most wholesome, and the most palatable, but also the most beautiful. They seem to be a different species to those caught upon our coasts. The upper part of the back is of a vivid blue; the other part as low as the belly of a gem-like green or an azure ground. Underneath the belly the colour is a transparent white, and the fins shine like polished silver. All the colours glow when alive in the sea with such a richness, that fancy can hardly form to itself any thing in nature more beautiful. Almost all the other fish on this coast are of an oily nature, and of a very indifferent flavour.

The saw, or sword-fish, is remarkable not only for the oddity of his shape, but also for his enmity to the whale. This fish takes his name from a broad flat bone, in length from two to four feet, which projects from his nose, and tapers to a point. On each side, it has teeth like a comb, at the distance of a finger's breadth asunder. He is also furnished with a double row of fins, and is of astonishing strength in the water. His length from ten to twenty feet. He seems to be formed for war, and war is his profession. The conflict betwixt him and the whale is dreadful, yet he never gives over till his sword is broken, or he comes off victorious.

The whale is a harmless fish, and is never known to fight but in his own defence. Yet when he is exasperated, he rages dreadfully. Though from his magnitude, he may be called the sovereign of the seas, yet like other sovereigns, he is liable to be vexed and hurt by the meanest reptiles. The whale's louse is a most tormenting little animal. Its scales are as hard as those of our prawns; its head is like the louse's head, with four horns, two that serve as feelers, the other two are hard, and curved, and serve as clenchers to fix him to the whale. On his chest, underneath, he has two carvers like scythes, with which he collects his food, and behind these are four feet, that serve him for oars. He has, moreover, six other clenchers behind, with which he can rivet himself so closely to his prey, that he can no otherwise be disengaged, but by cutting out the whole piece to which he is joined. He is jointed on the back like the tail of a lobster, and his tail covers him like a shield when he is feeding. He fixes himself

on the tenderest parts of the whale's body, between his fins, on his sheath, and on his lips, and eats pieces out of his flesh, as if eaten by vultures.

They found no springs of fresh water in Spitsbergen; but in the valleys, between the mountains, are many little rills caused by the rain and melting of the snow in summer; and from these rills the ships are supplied. Some are of opinion, that this water is unwholesome, but they are more nice than wise. The whaling people have drank of it for ages, and have found no ill effects from the use of it. Ice taken up in the middle of these seas and thawed, yields also good fresh water.

On board the Race Horse, Dr. Irvine, the gentleman who received the premium by a grant of parliament, for his discovery of an easy process for making salt-water fresh at sea, tried many experiments at Spitsbergen, and in the course of the voyage; the result of which will appear at a proper time. That gentleman had formed a project for preserving flesh-meat fresh and sweet in long voyages, but it did not answer in this.

In calm weather they remarked, that the sea about the islands appeared uncommonly still and smooth; that it was not suddenly moved at the first approach of blowing weather; but that when the storm continued, the waves swelled gradually, and rose to an incredible height. These swelling waves successively follow one another, and roll along before the wind, foaming and raging in a frightful manner, yet they are thought less dangerous than those that break short, and are less mountainous.

They observed likewise, that the ice that rested on the ground was not stationary, but that it changed place; and they learnt also, that in some seasons there was no ice, where this season they were in danger of being embayed. There does not, however, from thence appear the least reason to conclude, that any practicable passage to the Indian ocean can ever be found in this direction; for were it certain that the seas were always open under the pole, yet great bulwarks of ice evidently surround it, sometimes at a less, and sometimes at a greater distance. Moreover, were it possible that chance should direct some fortunate adventurer to an opening at one time, it would be more than a million to one, if the same opening were passable to the next who should attempt it.

There are many harbours about Spitsbergen, besides that of Smearingburg, where ships employed in the whale fishery take shelter in stormy weather; and there are some islands, such as Charles's Island, the Clifted Rock, Red-Hill, Hacluit's Headland, &c. that serve as land-marks, by which seamen direct their course. These islands are full of the nests of birds; but their eggs are as nauseous as the flesh of the fowls that lay them. The sailors sometimes eat them, but they are filthy food. Even the geese and ducks on the neighbouring islands eat filthy and strong.

The air about Spitsbergen is never free from isicles. If you look through the sun-beams transversely as you sit in the shade, or where you see the rays confined in a body, instead of dark motes, as are seen here, you see myriads of shining particles that sparkle like diamonds; and when the sun shines hot, as it sometimes does, so as to melt the tar in the seams of ships when they lie sheltered from the wind, these shining atoms seem to melt away, and descend like dew.

It is seldom that the air continues clear for many days together in this climate; when that happens, the whalers are generally successful. There is no difference between night and day in the appearance of the atmosphere about Spitsbergen, one being as light as the other, only when the sun is to the northward, you may look at him with the naked eye, as at the moon, without dazzle. The fogs here come on so suddenly, that from bright sun-shine, you are presently involved in such obscurity, that you can hardly see from one end of the ship to the other.

While our journalist was busy in making his observations, all belonging to the ships were differently en-

gaged in one employment or other; some in taking in water, some in fishing, some in hunting, some in handing the sails, and spreading them out to dry, some in scrubbing the ship, and some in viewing the country. The Commanders and officers, with Mr. Lyon, Mr. Robinson, &c. busied themselves in making observations, being furnished with an apparatus, that is said to have cost at least 1500 pounds. From such a set of instruments, in the hands of the ablest observers the nation can boast, some very considerable discoveries in the phenomena of the polar regions may be expected. They landed their instruments in a small island, in Vogle Sound, and had several opportunities during their stay of using them to advantage. Having erected two tents, the Captains from the fishery frequently visited the observers, and expressed their admiration not only at the perfection of the instruments, but likewise at the dexterity with which they were accommodated.

The ice began to set in a-pace, yet the weather was hot. The thermometer from 56 in the cabin rose to 90 in the open air. It was still 10 deg. higher on the top of a mountain to which it was carried. The island on which the experiments were made, they called Marble Island, from the rock by which it is formed. Having watered, and finished their observations, the ships prepared to depart.

Monday July the 19th, the Commodore made the signal to weigh; at two in the afternoon the ships were under sail, and as soon as they had made their offing, stood to the eastward. At three they tacked and steered northward; and before four were again entangled among the loose ice, through which they sailed, directing their course along the main body, which lay from N. W. to S. S. E.

Tuesday the 20th, they continued their course along the ice, but could discover no opening, though they searched every creek, and left no bay or turning unexamined. This day they observed what the sailors call a mock-sun, a phenomenon well enough known in this climate. Hacluit's Headland bore S. W. one half S. 46 leagues; the weather cloudy, with rain; excessive cold. Thermometer 37 deg. 46 min.

Wednesday the 21st, the severity of the weather increasing, an additional quantity of brandy was served out to the people, and every comfortable refreshment afforded them, that they themselves could wish or require. The course of the ice lay this day N. E.

Thursday 22, nothing remarkable.

Friday the 23d, they saw land from E. by S. to S. E. by S. At four in the morning, Hacluit's Headland bore S. E. 10 leagues; the wind variable, and the weather cold, with sleet and snow. Thermometer 40 deg.

Sunday 25, they had gentle breezes, with cloudy weather, and were engaged among some pieces of ice, separated from the main body, which kept them continually tacking and luffing. At length they entered among mountains and islands of ice, which came upon them so fast, that it was with the utmost difficulty they could proceed; the Carcase having several times struck against them with such violence, as to raise her head four feet out of the water. They now imagined, from the solidity and extent of these islands, that the late strong gales had caused a separation from the main body, the Commodore therefore changed his course with a strong gale to the eastward; in the morning the weather became moderate.

Monday 26, at seven in the morning, they came in sight of Red Hill, a small mount which commands an open plain, known by the name of Deers Field, by reason of its fertile appearance, it being the only spot on which they saw no drifts of snow. To the eastward lies Muffin's Island. Here they founded, and found 45 fathoms water; rocky ground. Captain Lutwyche sent out the long boat, with orders to found along the shore, and to examine the soil. This island is about a mile long, very low, and looks at a distance like a black speck. Though the soil is mostly sand and loose stones,

hardly so mu
markable for th
summer to lay th
not of one k
seefe, ducks,
seefe, rogers,
peculiar to
ere to numerou
be the men w
about filling th
On this island t
the sea-horse ma
the water; and
of victorious; b
saw that there w
were willing
as well as in th
accordingly land
time to assist in p
however, that th
one great bear ca
pious, and adva
the, that he put t
in them, it is said
Major.

On founding th
with islands beca
Red Hill E. by
10 to 30 fathom
than Red Hill b
increases to 11
current about 0
Tuesday 27, t
water moderate
greater, and to
which were seen
fish, and the su
licious this day
there was more p
ere beheld in t
which they were
found glittering
ants, which the
and distance, ha
illuminate a m
pea did not cot
own, they were
in longitude 11
light of seven ill
their course.

Wednesday
which, from ine
to piercing col
gate Straits bo
very spot wh
would be foun
they could dis
continued con
ready mentio
many bears, fo
be shot dead
good eating, a
whalers accou
of them large
In many part
unless they ar
a blow with a
their backs.
ters weighed

Thursday
ice, they fou
make the lea
ing, the Com
command o
which at a
with hills an
a tolerable l

Tuesday
to the main

one in taking in
 mings, some in
 em out to dry,
 in viewing the
 cers, with Mr.
 selves in making
 apparatus, that
 From such a
 ablest observers
 able discoveries
 may be expect-
 a small island,
 rtunities during
 Having erected
 ury frequently
 heir admiration
 truments, but
 y were accom-
 he weather was
 cabin rose to
 higher on the
 d. The island
 s, they called
 it is formed,
 servations, the
 ore made the
 the ships were
 e their offing,
 ked and steer-
 ain entangled
 ey failed, di-
 hich lay from
 or course along
 though they
 r turning un-
 at the sailors
 gh known in
 W. one half
 in; excessive
 weather in-
 ly was served
 retrenchment
 with or re-
 V. E.
 by S. to S.
 's Headland
 le, and the
 nometer 40
 with cloudy
 eces of ice,
 them con-
 they entered
 hich came
 ost difficul-
 versal times
 o raise her
 imagined,
 s, that the
 from the
 anged his
 the morn-
 y came in
 and, by rea-
 y spot on
 ward lies
 found 45
 ych sent
 he shore,
 t a mile
 a black
 se stones,
 and

hardly so much as a green weed upon it, yet it is
 remarkable for the number of birds that resort to it in
 order to lay their eggs, and breed their young; and
 are not of one kind only, but of many different sorts,
 as geese, ducks, burgomasters, ice-birds, malamucks,
 grebes, rogers, and almost every other species of
 birds peculiar to the climate; inasmuch, that the eggs
 were so numerous, and lay so thick upon the ground,
 that the men who landed found it difficult to walk
 without filling their shoes.
 On this island two bears were killed, and a sea-horse.
 The sea-horse made a desperate defence, being attacked
 from the water; and had there been only one boat en-
 gaged in the combat, he certainly would have come
 off victorious; but the crew of the Race Horse having
 seen that there were bears and sea-horses on this little
 island, were willing to share in the sport of hunting them,
 as well as in the pleasure of tasting their flesh. They
 accordingly landed in their boats, and came in good
 season to assist in pursuing the conquest. It happened,
 however, that their ammunition being almost spent,
 one great bear came up to revenge the death of his
 mate, and advanced so furiously, growling and bark-
 ing, that he put the whole company to flight, and some
 of them, it is said, had no great reason to laugh at the
 story.
 On founding the shores they remarked, that when the
 north islands bear N. 45 E. seven or eight leagues, and
 Red Hill E. by S. five miles, there is generally from
 30 to 37 fathom hard ground; but that closer on shore,
 Red Hill bears E. one-fourth S. about one mile,
 there is a shoal of 115 fathom, with soft black mud. The
 current about one mile an hour to the N. E.
 On Friday 27, the air being perfectly serene, and the
 weather moderate, the fishes seemed to enjoy the tem-
 perature, and to express it by their sporting. The
 whales were seen spouting their fountains towards the
 shore, and the sun-fish following their example. They
 observed this day few dolphins; the whole prospect in
 short, was more pleasing and picturesque than they had
 beheld in this remote region. The very ice in
 which they were beset looked beautiful, and put forth a
 thousand glittering forms, and the tops of the moun-
 tains, which they could see like sparkling gems at a
 small distance, had the appearance of so many silver stars
 illuminating a new firmament. But this flattering pros-
 pect did not continue long. By an accurate observa-
 tion, they were now in latitude 80 deg. 47 min. N. and
 in longitude 21 deg. 10 min. E. from London; and in
 sight of seven islands to the north, to which they directed
 their course.
 Wednesday 28, they had fresh easterly breezes, which,
 from moderate weather the day before, changed to
 piercing cold. At midnight the west end of Wey-
 gate Straits bore S. by E. so that they were now in the
 very spot where Barentz had supposed an opening
 would be found into the polar sea. Yet so far from it,
 they could discover nothing from the mast head, but a
 continued continent of solid ice, except the islands al-
 ready mentioned. On this ice, however, there were
 many bears, some of which came so near the ships as to
 be shot dead with small arms. These bears are very
 good eating, and where no better is to be purchased, the
 whalers account them as good as beef. They are many
 of them larger than the largest oxen, and weigh heavier.
 In many parts of their body they are musket proof, and
 unless they are hit on the open chest, or on the flank,
 a blow with a musket ball will hardly make them turn
 their backs. Some of the bears killed in these encoun-
 ters weighed from 7 to 800 weight.
 Thursday 29, sailing among innumerable islands of
 ice, they found the main body too solid for the ships to
 make the least impression upon it, and finding no open-
 ing, the Commodore resolved to send a party under the
 command of the first lieutenant to examine the land,
 which at a distance appeared like a plain, diversified
 with hills and mountains, and exhibited in their situation
 a tolerable landscape.
 Tuesday 30, the weather being clear, they ran close
 to the main body of the ice, and the sun continuing to

shine, made them almost forget the climate they were
 sailing in, but it was not long before they had reason for
 severe recollection. In coasting along, they observed
 many openings, and were in hopes, from their distant
 appearance, that a passage might be made between
 them; but upon trial it was found, as the Dutch fisher-
 men had foretold, that these appearances were deceitful.
 At one in the morning fine clear sun-shine, they founded
 in 16 fathom water, and found small stones at bottom.
 They were then about four miles from the N. E. part
 of the northernmost land; the easternmost land in sight,
 distant above five or six leagues.
 Saturday 31, at midnight, the easternmost land in sight
 lay E. N. E. which they could not make out to be an
 island. They rather judged it to be a continent, but
 found it impossible to determine with certainty, as it lay
 beyond their reach. At nine in the morning the Car-
 case hoisted out her cutter, and filled her empty water-
 casks with water from the ice.
 Sunday August 1, proved a day of trial. Lying too
 among the close ice, with the loose ice driving fast to shore,
 the Commodore was desirous of surveying the westernmost
 of the seven islands, which appeared the highest, in order
 to judge, from the prospect on the hills, of the possibility
 of proceeding farther on the discovery. With this view
 they carried out their ice-anchors, and made both ships
 fast to the main body, a practice very common with the
 fishing ships that annually frequent those seas. Of the
 reconnoitring party, were the Captains, the second lieuten-
 ants, one of the mathematicians, the pilots, and some
 chosen sailors, selected from both ships. They set out
 about two in the morning, and sometimes sailing, some-
 times drawing their boats over the ice, they with difficulty
 reached the shore, where the first objects they saw were
 a herd of deer, so very tame, that they seemed as curious
 to gaze at the strangers, as the strangers were pleased to
 see them; for they came five or six together so near, that
 they might have been killed with the thrust of a bayonet;
 a proof that animals are not naturally afraid of man, till,
 by the fate of their associates, they are taught the danger
 of approaching them; a proof too, that animals are not
 destitute of reflection, otherwise how should they con-
 clude, that what has befallen their fellow animals, will
 certainly happen to them, if they run the like risk?
 The gentlemen, however, suffered only one of these fear-
 less innocents to be fired at, and that was done by a
 sailor when they were absent on observation.
 After having ascended the highest hills on the sea-coast,
 and taken a view of the country and the ocean all round,
 the gentlemen descended, and about five in the afternoon
 embarked again on their return to the ships, at which they
 arrived safe about ten, after an absence of 20 hours.
 They were greatly disappointed by the haziness of the
 weather on the tops of the mountains, which confined
 the prospect, and prevented their taking an observation
 with the instruments they had carried with them for that
 purpose.
 Their situation now began to be serious, and it was
 discovered too late, that by grappling to the ice, as prac-
 tised by the Greenlanders, they had endangered the loss
 of the ships, the loose ice closing so fast about them that
 they found it absolutely impossible to get them disengaged;
 and there was, besides, great reason to fear, that one or
 both would soon be crushed to pieces. The Commu-
 dore set all hands to work to form a dock in the solid
 ice, large enough to moor both ships; and by the ala-
 crity with which that service was performed, the ships
 were preserved from the danger of immediate destruction.
 The ships being thus far secured, the officers, pilots,
 and masters, were all summoned on board the Commu-
 dore, to consult on what was to be done in their present
 unpromising situation; when it was unanimously agreed,
 that their deliverance was hopeless; and that they must
 either provide to winter upon the adjacent islands, or
 attempt to launch their boats into the open sea, which
 was already at a considerable distance; for the loose ice
 had poured into the bay in which they were at anchor
 with so much rapidity, and in such astonishing quanti-
 ties, that the open sea was already far out of sight. Be-
 fore any thing farther was undertaken, the men were
 4 N ordered

ordered to their quarters, that they might refresh themselves with sleep.

August 2, it was now thought advisable to make one desperate attempt to extricate the ships, by cutting a channel to the westward into the open sea. The scooping out the dock with so much expedition, by a party only of one ship, raised high expectations of what might be performed by the united labours of both the crews. No body of men ever undertook a work of such difficulty with so much cheerfulness and confidence of success, as the sailors observed on this occasion. Their ice-saws, axes, sledges, poles, and the whole group of sea-tools, were in an instant all employed in facilitating the work; but after cutting through blocks of solid ice from 8 to 15 feet deep, and coming to others of many fathoms, that exceeded the powers of man to separate, that was laid aside as a hopeless project; and another more promising, though not less laborious, adopted in its room.

On the 3rd of August, after the men had again refreshed themselves with sleep, it was resolved to fit up the boats belonging to both the ships with such coverings as were most easy to be accommodated, and of lightest conveyance; and by skating them over the ice, endeavour to launch them in the open sea. Could this be effected, they hoped, that by sailing and rowing to the northernmost harbour of Spitzbergen, they might arrive at that island, before the departure of the last ships belonging to the fishery for Europe.

While the boats were getting ready for this expedition, a second party were dispatched to the island, with orders to take the distance as exact as it was possible to the nearest open sea. As all the people belonging to the ships were not to be engaged in these services, those who were unemployed diverted themselves in hunting and killing the bears, that now, attracted perhaps by the savory smell of the provisions dressed on board the ships, came every day over the ice to repeat their visits. Several of these were killed occasionally, and this day they fought a sea-horse, in which engagement the second lieutenant of the Carcase signalized his courage in a most desperate rencounter, in which, however, he succeeded, though his life was in imminent danger.

On the 5th they had gentle breezes; but about four in the morning small fleet. The ice still surrounding them, and appearing to grow more and more solid and fixed, those who had till now retained hopes that the fourth-east wind would again disunite its substance, and open a passage for their deliverance, began to despair, as the wind had blown for twenty-four hours from that quarter, from which alone they could have relief, and not the least alteration to be perceived. The men, however, were as joyous as ever, and shewed not the least concern about the danger of their situation.

Friday the 6th, the weather calm, but foggy, and the winds variable; they discovered that the drift of the ship, with the whole body of ice, inclined fast to the eastward; and that they were already embayed in the very middle of the seven islands. They therefore sent off the pilots of both ships, with a party of sailors, to the northernmost island, to see what discoveries could be made from the promontories there. They returned at night, after a fatiguing journey, with a dismal account, that nothing was to be seen from thence but a vast continent of ice, of which there was no end; and that the thought of wintering in such a situation was more dreadful, than that of perishing by instant death.

Saturday 7, the wind set in N. N. E. veered to the N. to the N. E. and E. piercing cold. This day the boats were all brought in readiness on the ice, fitted with weather cloaths about 13 inches above the gunnels, in order to keep off the cold as much as possible, if by good fortune they should be enabled to launch them in an open sea. This day was employed chiefly in boiling provisions to put in the boats for the intended voyage; in delivering out bags to the men to carry their bread, and packing up such necessaries as every one could take along with him; for now every man was to be his own porter, the necessary provisions and liquors being found load enough for the boats, and twenty-five days bread

load enough for each man. This being adjusted, when night approached they were all ordered on board sleep.

Thursday 8, at six in the morning all hands were ordered to turn out, and a detachment of fifty men from each ship, headed by their respective officers, were pointed to begin the hard task of hauling the launches along the ice. Upon a general consultation of officers previous to this undertaking, it had been agreed, that an order issued accordingly, that no person on board whatever rank, should encumber himself with more cloaths than what he wore upon his back. Upon this occasion, therefore, the officers dressed themselves in flannels, and the common men put on the cloaths which the officers had thrown off.

In six hours, with the utmost efforts of human labour, they had only proceeded a single mile. After dinner they began to renew their labour, when word was brought that the whole body of ice had changed its situation, and was moving to the westward; that the ships were become a-float; and that the ice was parting. The joy which this news diffused through the two companies of haulers is easier to conceive than express. They instantly threw off their harness, ran to assist in working the ships, and once more to resume their proper employments. When they arrived at the ships, Captain Lutwyche, who was less beloved by his men than the Commodore, had by his example and judicious directions done wonders. Both ships were not only a-float, with their sails set, but actually cut and warped through the ice near half a mile. This ray of hope, however, was soon darkened; the body ice suddenly assumed its former direction to the eastward, and closed upon them again as fast as ever. While the ships remained in the ice-dock, they were lashed together for their greater security, but now being launched and a-float, the ice pressed upon them with such weight, that it was every moment expected that the hawser would break that held them together; orders were therefore given, that the hawser should be slackened, and the ships released.

For the remainder of the evening, and till two in the morning, the drift continued eastward, and all that while the ships were in danger of being crushed by the closing of the channel in which they rode. They had now drifted two miles to the eastward; the men were worn out with fatigue in defending the ships with their ice-poles from being engulfed; and now nothing but scenes of horror and perdition appeared before their eyes. But the Omnipotent, in the very moment, when every hope of deliverance from their own united endeavours had relinquished them, interposed in their favour, and caused the winds to blow, and the ice to part in an astonishing manner, rending and cracking with a tremendous noise, surpassing that of the loudest thunder. At this very instant the whole continent of ice, which before was extended beyond the reach of sight from the highest mountains, moved together in various directions, splitting and dividing into vast bodies, and forming hills and plains of various figures and dimensions. All hearts were now again revived, and the prospect of being once more released from the frozen chains of the north, inspired the men with fresh vigour. Every officer and every idler on board laboured now for life.

While the major part of the crews were employed in warping the ships with ice-anchors, axes, saws and poles, a party from both ships were dispatched to launch the boats. This was no easy task to accomplish. The ice, though split in many thousand pieces, was yet frozen like an island round the launches, and though it was of no great extent, yet the boats were of a weight hardly to be moved by the small force that could be spared to launch them. They were besides, by the driving of the ice, at more than five miles distance from the ships; and at this time no channels of communication were yet opened. But Providence was manifest even on this occasion; for the island on which the launches stood, parted while the men were hauling them, and by that lucky circumstance they were launched with great facility, without the loss of a man, though the ice cracked, as it were under their feet.

The

being adjusted, w
ordered on board
g all hands were
ut of fifty men fr
ve officers, were
hauling the launc
infatuation of offic
d been agreed, a
person on board
himself with m
is hack. Upon
ressed themselves
on the cloaths wh
fforts of human
e mile. After dir
n word was broug
ged its situation,
the ships were be
g. The joy wh
ompanies of haul
They instantly flo
ing the ships, a
ployments. Wh
twych, who was
umodore, had be
ns done wonder
their fails set, b
the ice near half
as soon darkene
rmer direction
gain as fast as eve
-clock, they we
ity, but now bei
upon them w
expected that th
together; orde
should be flac
and till two in
and all that wh
shed by the cle
They had not
men were won
with their ice-pole
ng but scenes d
their eyes. Ba
when every hop
endeavours ha
avour, and cau
part in an allo
a tremendous
nder. At thi
which before
from the high
directions, split
rning hills and
All hearts were
ring once more
north, inspired
er and every
ere employed
ves, saw and
ched to launch
nplish. The
was yet fro
though it was
weight hardly
be spared to
driving of the
the ships; and
ere yet open
this occasi
ood, parted
y that lucky
reat facility,
racked, as it

the people on board had not been able to force their
the ships much more than a mile, when the
the launches joined them. And now, excited by
curiosity or insinelt is not easy to determine, sever
came posting over the ice to be spectators of
departure, and advanced so near the ships, that they
have been easily mastered, had not the men been
seriously employed.
Friday the 10th, about two in the morning, the fog
thick, and the weather calm, and the men very
fatigued, they were ordered to their quarters, to
themselves with sleep. It was, besides very cold,
each rain fell; and as the wind was variable, they fell
make but little progress. The ice, in the morn
seemed rather to close upon them, than to di
ly, seemed apprehensive for their boats, they attem
and being apprehensive for their boats, they attem
with the launches on board, but that belonging to
Carcase, being either too unweildy, or the men too
fatigued to effect it, they slung her to the ship's
about eight the breeze sprung up fresh from the N.
increasingly cold, but opening the ice to the west
They then made all the sail they could, driving
the loosening ice, and parting it wherever it was
able with their whole force. Towards noon they
of the Seven Islands. And in a very little while
to their great joy, Spitzbergen was seen from the
Friday 11, the men who, with hard labour, cold
sweating, were much dispirited, on the prospect of
deliverance, and seeing the ice no longer adhere
removable bodies, began, after a little refreshment,
to resume their wonted cheerfulness. They continued
all this day through the loose ice.
Saturday the 12th, they cleared the ice, and bore away
all fails set for the harbour of Smearingburg, in
which they had before cast anchor. At two in the after
noon they anchored in North Bay, the north part of
the Sound bearing north 45 east, distance about four
miles. At half after four the Commodore made the
ice to weigh; and at half past nine, came to an anchor
at their former station, where they found four Dutch
whalers lying in readiness to depart. These
whalers acquainted the Commodore, that all the En
glish ships set sail on the 10th of July, the day to
which they are obliged by contract, to stay to entitle
themselves to receive the bounty-money, allowed by
the Government for the encouragement of that fishery.
About the same time the greatest part of the Dutch
ships likewise from Spitzbergen, on their voyage home;
and this a practice with these last, to take it by turns to
relieve the severity of the weather obliges them to leave
the ice, in order to pick up such men as may by acci
dent have lost their ships in the ice; and who, notwith
standing, may have had the good fortune to save
themselves by means of their boats. This is a very hu
mane institution, and does credit to the Dutch Govern
ment. Did the British Government bear an equal re
spect for individuals, so many valuable subjects could
never be suffered to migrate, as now annually hire ships
to convey themselves to seek their fortunes in new set
tlements.
The day of our voyagers return to Smearingburg
labour being fine, the Commodore ordered a tent to
be erected on the lower point to the S. W. where there was
a level plain for the space of two miles, and where all
the mathematical apparatus were again taken on shore
for a second trial.
The ovens were also here taken on shore, and a confi
derable quantity of good soft bread baked for the refresh
ment of the men.
The people were now fully employed in overhauling
the rigging, tarring the ships sides, taking in water, pay
ing and securing the masts, and in preparing the ships
for pursuing their voyage upon discovery; or, if that
was found impracticable, for returning home.
During the six days which the ships anchored here to
make observations, take in water, refresh the men and
provisions, our journalist made several excursions to the ad
joining islands, where the birds appeared in astonishing

numbers; it being the season for bringing forth their
young, and teaching them to fly, and to dive. Of all
the birds that breed in these islands, the burgermaster is
the largest, and the most ravenous; he is so called by the
Dutch, from his size and his authority, as he holds all
the other birds in subjection.
On the 19th of August the ships unmoored, and on the
20th they cleared the harbour. They found the
tide to flow N. E. and S. W. and to rise three feet seven
inches perpendicular height. On the 22nd, they again
found themselves beset with loose ice.
On the 23rd, the Carcase, being a heavier sailer than the
Race Horse, lost sight of the Commodore, and fired a six
pounder, which was answered. In the evening they came
in sight, and pursued their course with favourable wea
ther.
September 5. the Commodore sounded, and found
ground with 700 fathoms, very soft mud. The people
were employed eight hours in heaving up the lead with
the capstan. At three in the morning the sun risen,
took the amplitude, and found the variation to be 22
deg. 53 min. W.
September 7, at five in the afternoon, they had hea
vy squalls, with rain; at seven in the morning moderate
weather. This day, in 60 deg. 15 min. W. they found
their longitude, corrected by observation of sun and
moon, to be 5 deg. 59 min. E. Longitude by time keeper
4 deg. 45 min. E. a very remarkable difference.
The ships pursued their course home in company to
gether, with high seas and variable weather, till Septem
ber 11, when, at half after ten, the night dark, and the
weather moderate, the wind all at once veered to the
southward, and a strong gale with a great sea came on.
The ships parted, and never more came in sight till they
met off Harwich, on the English coast.
Our journalist being on board the Carcase, can now
only relate what happened to that sloop, till her arrival
in the River Thames.
When the gale came on, the Commodore's lights not
appearing, the Carcase fired a six-pounder, but that shot
not being returned by the Race Horse, it was conclud
ed, that the Commodore was at too great a distance to
hear the signal. At four in the morning the gale increas
ing, they close reefed the top-fails, and employed all
hands in lashing and securing the boats and booms, and
preparing to withstand the threatening storm.
Sunday, September 12, fresh gales, with frequent
showers of rain: handed gib and stay-fail; at two in the
afternoon hard squalls and violent showers of rain; hand
ed fore and mizen top-fail; saw a sail to southward
standing to eastward; cloudy and obscure sky; at ten at
night came on suddenly a very heavy squall; handed all
the top-fails; strong gale, with severe showers of rain.
At midnight blowing a violent storm of wind, reefed and
handed the main-fail and fore-fail; lowered down the
lower yards, balanced the mizen, and laid the ship too
under it, with her head to the westward; the sea making
a free passage over the ship. Shipped such heavy seas,
washed all the provisions and casks that were lashed on
the deck, over-board; kept two pumps continually go
ing; obliged to skuttle the boats, to prevent their being
washed over-board. At four in the morning shipped such
heavy seas, as washed all the booms and spars that had
been with all possible care secured on the deck, over
board. The ship mostly under water. At this time
one of the mates, the carpenter, and a fore-mast-man,
were washed over-board. The carpenter, a very careful
sober man, who was in the waste, securing the hatch
es and stores, was washed in and out at the port three times,
before he could secure himself. At ten in the morning
rather moderate. Set the mizen-stay-fail; swayed the
lower yards up, and set the courses. At half past eleven,
strong squalls and heavy gusts; handed both courses;
and settled the lower yards.
September 13, strong gales and squally. Continually
shipping heavy seas. At three in the afternoon rather
more moderate; set reef courses; swayed up the lower
yards, and set the main-top-fail. The ship now making
no water; at seven in the evening, set fore-top-fail and
gib; very heavy sea from S. W. quarter. At eight in the

the evening moderate and cloudy; let the third reef out of the main-top-sail; founded 35 fathoms fine brown sand.

September 15, light breezes, and clear weather; out all reefs, and swayed up the lower yards. At four in the afternoon saw a sail to the S. E. bore down and brought her too. She proved to be a Prussian fisherman, had been 10 days from Edinburgh; hoisted out the small cutter; the second lieutenant went on board of her, and brought a fine cargo of fish. At five the boat returned, we hoisted her on board, with plenty of mackerel and herrings. Made sail, and stood to S. W. founded every half hour; found from 13 to 15 and 18 fathoms, fine brown sand, mixed with black shells. At seven in the evening took the first reef, and hauled in the top-sails; fresh gales and cloudy. At two in the morning deepened in water to 20 fathom. Took in second reef of the top-sails; tacked ship, and stood to N. W. At five got into 15 fathom; and at seven into 10. At nine in the morning close reefed the top-sails, and at 10 handed them; fresh gales and violent rain.

September 16, rather more moderate; set the main-top-sail; squally, with rain; a confused sea from W. N. W. At five in the afternoon soundings from 5 to 12, from 27 to 32 and 34 fathoms, fine brown sand, black specks, fresh gales and cloudy. At eight took in first and second reefs of top-sails; at eleven at night close reefed the main and fore-top-sail, and handed the mizen; fresh gales, and cloudy weather. At four in the morning floated water to 22 fathoms; brown sand and broken shells. At eight took the first and second reefs out of the top-sail; hove down upon a sloop, which came from Gravesend; took on board the master, as a pilot to carry the ship through Yarmouth Roads, put on board one man in his room, and ordered his vessel to follow us. Stood to the southward.

September 17, fresh breezes, and cloudy weather; kept the lead going every half hour; found our sounding from 10 to 12 fathoms, fine brown sand. At six in the afternoon fresh gales; close reefed the main-top-sail; soundings from 10 to 16 fathom; broken shells and large stones. At seven close reefed the main-top-sail; kept a light in the poop-lantern for the sloop. At ten strong gales; handed the top-sails; laid her too under the main-sail; handed the fore-sail. At eleven at night got into five fathom; deepened to eight, nine and ten fathom brown sand. Lost sight of the fishing vessel; fired several guns, and made a signal in the mizen-shoulder. On setting the fore-top-mast stay-sail, it blew in pieces; bent a new one. A violent gale of wind; shipped a great quantity of water. At four rather moderate; set the fore-sail. At midnight set close; reefed top-sails. At half past six tacked; at seven saw the fishing vessel; bore down and spoke with her, who had split her main-sail in the night. At ten saw the land bearing S. W. by W. and S. and by W. At eleven being clear and moderate weather, took all the reefs out of the top-sails, and set the top-gallant-sails; saw Cromer light-house bearing S. 55 deg. W.

September 19, fresh breezes and clear weather; bent the sheet-cable, and hauled a range of the best and small bower-cables; bent both buoy ropes and bouys to the anchor. At five light breezes and fair; tacked and stood to the southward. At six tacked and stood to the north-west. Cramer N. W. and by N. four miles; light breezes, and pleasant weather; handed in top-gallant-sails, and handed the main-sail. At seven in the evening, to our great joy, saw Yarmouth Church, bearing S. W. At ten at night came to anchor with the best bower in twelve fathom, fine sand and clay; veered out to half a cable, and handed all the sails. At two in the morning fresh breezes and cloudy. At half past four weighed, and made sail. Employed in working from Winterstone Neils lights, to Yarmouth Roads, making several tacks. At seven in the morning set top-gallant-sails; at nine came to an anchor in Yarmouth Roads, with best bower in seven fathoms water; sand and clay. Came on board a pilot to carry the ship to the Nore.

September 20, good weather; sent down top-gallant-yards, and got every thing clear for striking top-masts. At five in the afternoon moored the ship.

September 21, fresh gales and cloudy, with frequent rain. At four in the afternoon sent down top-gallant-mast. At eight in the morning sent the long-boat ashore for water.

September 23, dark cloudy weather. At six in the evening swayed up the top-mast, and lower yards; the wind veered to N. W. we prepared to unmoor. Fresh gales, with frequent flashes of lightning. At seven in the morning set on top-gallant-mast, and began to unmoor. At eight veered away upon the best bower, and took up the small bower-anchor. At nine weighed and made sail. At ten got up the top-gallant-yards.

Saturday 25, at five came to an anchor in eleven fathoms. Orford light-house E. by S. four miles.

Sunday 26. At six in the evening came too with the best bower in seven fathoms water; Bally church W. by S. At two in the morning weighed, and came to anchor; Harwich lights N. W. by W. To their great surprise, saw the Race Horse at anchor. Came to anchor; Harwich church N. W.

Monday 27, at two in the afternoon weighed, and came to sail in company with the Race Horse. At eight in the evening came too in the Swin. At five in the morning weighed. Turning up the Swin at half past nine, came too; Whitaker Beacon N. N. E. one mile.

Tuesday 28, fresh breezes and cloudy weather. At half past three weighed, and came to sail. At half past six came too with the best bower in six fathoms water. At half past five weighed, and came to sail. At noon came too at the Nore with the best bower.

Wednesday 29, light breezes and fair weather. At half past five weighed, and made sail. Employed in working up the river. At half past ten came too with the best bower in the gallions, in three fathoms water.

Thursday 30, employed most of the afternoon in getting out the guns, and gunner's stores. At nine in the evening weighed, and came to sail. At ten ran foul of a large transport, and carried away the larboard mizen-shoulders, and part of the channel. At one in the morning came to anchor at Deptford. Warded along the Bedford Hulk, and moored. At six unbent the sails, and began to unrig.

This ended a voyage, which seems to have determined the question so much agitated concerning the navigation to the north pole, and proved what Captain Wood had before asserted, that no passage would ever be found practicable in that direction.

The fair prospect of acquiring fame by enlarging commerce, the hope of obtaining the parliamentary reward of twenty thousand pounds, and the desire of exposing the diligeny of Captain Middleton, who in 1740 was sent in a king's ship upon that service, but who publicly charged with having received a bribe to defeat the undertaking and discourage any further attempts, were incitements sufficient to prevail with Mr. Dobbs to solicit the equipment of two ships for another voyage, which he made not the least doubt would find the passage so long sought for in vain, and by the advantages attending the discovery exceed the most sanguine expectations of the adventurers.

The command of this expedition was given to Captain Ellis, who, on the 31st of May, 1746, passed Yarmouth in the Dobb's Galley, accompanied by the California Sloop, and conveyed to the north sea by the Looe man of war. But in proportion as Mr. Dobbs had flattered the avarice of the adventurers who were to share in the reward, and had elated himself with the thoughts of triumphing over the disgrace of Captain Middleton, so it happened, that when the ships returned without having effected any one thing of consequence, the chagrin of the former for having advanced their money on a visionary project, and the mortification of the latter in not being able to support his charge, were increased by every circumstance that could aggravate the disappointment. Captain Middleton now triumphed in his return, and the ship from England has since been induced to undertake the voyage, notwithstanding the greatness of the reward.

The first who conceived the idea of exploring the northern regions was Sebastian Cabbot. That enterprising

prising navigation to the north pole, and proved what Captain Wood had before asserted, that no passage would ever be found practicable in that direction.

The fair prospect of acquiring fame by enlarging commerce, the hope of obtaining the parliamentary reward of twenty thousand pounds, and the desire of exposing the diligeny of Captain Middleton, who in 1740 was sent in a king's ship upon that service, but who publicly charged with having received a bribe to defeat the undertaking and discourage any further attempts, were incitements sufficient to prevail with Mr. Dobbs to solicit the equipment of two ships for another voyage, which he made not the least doubt would find the passage so long sought for in vain, and by the advantages attending the discovery exceed the most sanguine expectations of the adventurers.

The command of this expedition was given to Captain Ellis, who, on the 31st of May, 1746, passed Yarmouth in the Dobb's Galley, accompanied by the California Sloop, and conveyed to the north sea by the Looe man of war. But in proportion as Mr. Dobbs had flattered the avarice of the adventurers who were to share in the reward, and had elated himself with the thoughts of triumphing over the disgrace of Captain Middleton, so it happened, that when the ships returned without having effected any one thing of consequence, the chagrin of the former for having advanced their money on a visionary project, and the mortification of the latter in not being able to support his charge, were increased by every circumstance that could aggravate the disappointment.

Captain Middleton now triumphed in his return, and the ship from England has since been induced to undertake the voyage, notwithstanding the greatness of the reward.

The first who conceived the idea of exploring the northern regions was Sebastian Cabbot. That enterprising

navigation to the north pole, and proved what Captain Wood had before asserted, that no passage would ever be found practicable in that direction.

The fair prospect of acquiring fame by enlarging commerce, the hope of obtaining the parliamentary reward of twenty thousand pounds, and the desire of exposing the diligeny of Captain Middleton, who in 1740 was sent in a king's ship upon that service, but who publicly charged with having received a bribe to defeat the undertaking and discourage any further attempts, were incitements sufficient to prevail with Mr. Dobbs to solicit the equipment of two ships for another voyage, which he made not the least doubt would find the passage so long sought for in vain, and by the advantages attending the discovery exceed the most sanguine expectations of the adventurers.

The command of this expedition was given to Captain Ellis, who, on the 31st of May, 1746, passed Yarmouth in the Dobb's Galley, accompanied by the California Sloop, and conveyed to the north sea by the Looe man of war. But in proportion as Mr. Dobbs had flattered the avarice of the adventurers who were to share in the reward, and had elated himself with the thoughts of triumphing over the disgrace of Captain Middleton, so it happened, that when the ships returned without having effected any one thing of consequence, the chagrin of the former for having advanced their money on a visionary project, and the mortification of the latter in not being able to support his charge, were increased by every circumstance that could aggravate the disappointment.

Captain Middleton now triumphed in his return, and the ship from England has since been induced to undertake the voyage, notwithstanding the greatness of the reward.

The first who conceived the idea of exploring the northern regions was Sebastian Cabbot. That enterprising

navigation to the north pole, and proved what Captain Wood had before asserted, that no passage would ever be found practicable in that direction.

The fair prospect of acquiring fame by enlarging commerce, the hope of obtaining the parliamentary reward of twenty thousand pounds, and the desire of exposing the diligeny of Captain Middleton, who in 1740 was sent in a king's ship upon that service, but who publicly charged with having received a bribe to defeat the undertaking and discourage any further attempts, were incitements sufficient to prevail with Mr. Dobbs to solicit the equipment of two ships for another voyage, which he made not the least doubt would find the passage so long sought for in vain, and by the advantages attending the discovery exceed the most sanguine expectations of the adventurers.

The command of this expedition was given to Captain Ellis, who, on the 31st of May, 1746, passed Yarmouth in the Dobb's Galley, accompanied by the California Sloop, and conveyed to the north sea by the Looe man of war. But in proportion as Mr. Dobbs had flattered the avarice of the adventurers who were to share in the reward, and had elated himself with the thoughts of triumphing over the disgrace of Captain Middleton, so it happened, that when the ships returned without having effected any one thing of consequence, the chagrin of the former for having advanced their money on a visionary project, and the mortification of the latter in not being able to support his charge, were increased by every circumstance that could aggravate the disappointment.

Captain Middleton now triumphed in his return, and the ship from England has since been induced to undertake the voyage, notwithstanding the greatness of the reward.

prising navigator, long before Magellan thought of a passage to the pacific ocean by the south-west, had made two voyages, with a view to direct his course to the same sea by the north-west. In these voyages, he discovered Newfoundland, the coast of the Esquimaux Indians, and had penetrated as far as the 64th degree of latitude, when a mutiny among his men, or rather an obstinate refusal to proceed any further, obliged him to return; yet he died in the persuasion that a passage in that direction certainly existed, and that he should have found it but for the opposition of his crew.

The next, who prepossessed with the same notion, undertook a voyage for discoveries towards the north, was Sir Martin Forbisher. He discovered Greenland, and in the latitude of 69 deg. north, passed a strait, which, though it still holds a place in our maps, has never been found navigable since. He made two other voyages, discovered many bays and capes, to which he gave names, but returned without attaining the principal object of his voyage, though like his predecessor, he asserted the certainty of its existence to his last hour.

To him succeeded Sir Humphry Gilbert, who in 1575, traversed the coast of Labradore, entered the mouth of the great river St. Lawrence, and, surrounding the island of Newfoundland, laid the foundation of the cod fishery, which has been prosecuted with immense advantage to his country ever since.

The rapid progress of discoveries in the southern hemisphere, which about this time were attended with vast profit to the adventurers, re-animating cotemporary navigators to prosecute, with more ardour than ever, their enterprises towards the north. The more the pacific ocean became known, the firmer the belief prevailed, that a passage into it by way of the north must certainly exist, and that whoever could discover it, would not only immortalize his name, but enrich his country.

The merchants of that time were no less eager to embark their money, than the navigators were to hazard their persons in any new project, where the hope of gain appeared to be well founded. A company therefore of wealthy persons in London agreed to join a company of merchants in the west, and to fit out two ships for the discovery of a passage, which all agreed was practicable, though none could tell readily were to find it. To the command of this expedition Captain John Davis was strongly recommended as an able navigator, and of a bold and enterprising spirit. Accordingly, on the 7th of June, 1685, he set sail from Dartmouth, in the Sun-shine of thirty tons, and accompanied by the Moon-shine of fifty-five tons, having on board both vessels forty-two hardy seamen. On the 19th of July they were alarmed by a mighty roaring, which was the more terrible, as the fog was so thick, that they could not see each other at a ships length. It proved only the crackling of the islands of ice, which was not then very well understood. On the breaking up of the fog they discovered land, which, from its horrid appearance, they named the Land of Desolation. On the 24th they were in 64 deg. 15 min. north, the sea open and the weather moderate. In this latitude they discovered land, and conversed with the natives, who appeared to be a harmless hospitable people, polite in their manners, neatly habited, and not ill-favoured. These friendly people, observing that the English admired their furs, went up in the country to bring down more, with which they traded with much simplicity. To an adjoining hill Davis gave the name of Mount Raleigh, from which he took his departure on the 8th of August, and on the 11th doubled the southernmost cape in view, to which he gave the name of the Cape of God's Mercy, and entered a strait, which bears the name of the discoverer to this day. In this strait he sailed sixty leagues, and on the 14th went on shore, and found evident signs of human inhabitants, being met by a pack of dogs (twenty in number) that expressed their joy, as if their masters had been returned after an interval of absence. One of those had on a leathern collar. The Captain was highly pleased with the promising appearance of the new straits, and consulting with the master, agreed to report, upon their return home, that they had found the wished-for passage to the western sea.

The weather changing from temperate to excessive cold, on the 20th it was resolved to set sail for England. On the 22nd of September they fell in with the land of Desolation, and on the 30th of the same month entered the port of Dartmouth without the loss of a man.

The account Captain Davis gave to his owners was so well received, that other merchants were desirous of joining in a second expedition, and accordingly he was again employed, and furnished with a much greater force.

On the 7th of May he sailed from Dartmouth in the Mermaid of 120 tons, in company with the Sun-shine and Moon-shine as before, and an additional pinnace of thirteen tons, called the North Star.

In the latitude of 60 degrees north Captain Davis divided his force, ordering the Sun-shine and North Star to seek a passage between Greenland and Iceland, while the Mermaid and Moon-shine continued their course to the strait as before. In the latitude of 64 degrees, and longitude 58 deg. 30 min. north from London, they fell again in with the land, and met the same people with whom they had traded the former year. Overjoyed to meet, they renewed their acquaintance, and while the English was preparing a pinnace to facilitate their discoveries, the natives came in numbers to carry on trade. As soon as the pinnace was fitted for sea, Captain Davis dispatched her to examine the inlets on the coast, and to trace their course up the main land; but that was productive of no essential discovery.

Though the natives attended them with an obsequious diligence, yet on their kindling a fire in their manner, and using some strange ceremonies, Captain Davis supposing them to be using idolatrous forgeries, first thrust the priest into the smoke, and then encouraged his men to tread out the flame, and to spurn the reeking coals into the sea. Unable to bear the insult, the natives for the first time began to shew resentment. They seized the boat from the stern of the Moon-shine, cut the cable belonging to the Mermaid, made prize of the implements that lay upon the shore, and, in short, declared open hostilities against the aggressors, who in return discharged their artillery among them, which instantly dispersed them.

No civilities, however, that could be shewn them, after the indignity offered to their priest, could ever after reconcile them, and the year following they found an opportunity to take a severe revenge. In the mean time one of them being made prisoner, was taken on board the Mermaid; who after recovering his fright, trimmed up his darts, repaired his fishing tackle, picked oakum, and set his hand to any thing he was set about; and, after a time, became a very pleasant companion on board.

On the 17th of July, in latitude 63 degrees 8 min. north, they fell in with a continent of ice, very high, like land, with bays and capes, and, till they examined it closely, could not be convinced that it was a mere congelation. They coasted it till the 30th, when the weather became so tempestuous and foggy, and withal so cold, that the throats, ropes, and sails were frozen and glazed with ice; and the men, who the year before found the sea open and the weather temperate, became so dispirited, that in an orderly manner they addressed their Commander, and intreated him to consider their present situation, to have regard to his own life, and the preservation of theirs; and not through boldness and an indiscreet zeal for a hopeless discovery, leave their widows and fatherless children to blacken his memory with bitter curses. Moved with their pitiable representation, he discharged the Mermaid with those who were most desirous of returning home, and proceeded in the Moon-shine to prosecute his voyage. Changing his course to recover the opposite shore on the 1st of August, in latitude 66 deg. 33 min. N. and longitude 70 deg. W. he discovered land, without either ice or snow. On the 2nd, they cast anchor in a fine road, and in a day or two were visited by the natives, who came to traffic. On the 14th, they set sail to the westward, and on the 16th, changed their course to the southward. On the 18th, they discovered a high promontory to the N. W. which having no land to the south, recovered their hopes of a free passage.

On doubling the Cape, they found the land trending away to the south in broken islands, and coasting along till they arrived at a fine opening, in latitude 57 deg. they failed 10 leagues, with woods and lawns on each side, abounding with deer and game of every kind. Here they staid till the 1st of September, and then set sail, coasting along to the northward; where they were again flattered with the hopes of a passage, by observing a strong current rushing in between two lands to the westward, which they were very desirous of approaching, but the wind blew directly against them.

On the 6th, returning to their former station, five of the crew fell into an ambuscade; for having ventured on shore unarmed in their boat, they were suddenly assaulted from the woods, two of them killed on the spot, two grievously wounded, and the fifth made his escape by swimming, with an arrow sticking in his arm. The same evening a furious storm arose, which lasted till the 10th, in which time they in a manner unrigged their ship, and were about to cut away her masts by the board, the cable of their sheet anchor parted, and they every moment expected to be dashed upon the rocks, and to be made a prey by the savage cannibals of the country; but the storm abating, and the sea growing calm, they recovered their anchor on the 11th, and made sail for England.

About the beginning of October they arrived at Dartmouth, where they found the Sun-shine, but the North Star having parted company in a hard gale on the coast of Greenland, was never more heard of.

This undaunted mariner had yet the courage to undertake a third voyage, and then sailed as far as the 73d degree of north latitude, but being deserted by his companions, was forced to return in great distress to his old port. Upon his return he wrote a letter to his patron, assuring him, that he had found an open sea in latitude 73 deg. N. and a strait 40 leagues broad, and concluded from thence that the passage was most certain.

From this period till the year 1610, we find no farther attempts made to revive this discovery; but in that year Mr. Henry Hudson, one of the most celebrated mariners of his time, was prevailed upon to undertake a voyage that was purposely set on foot to make trial of his skill. He sailed April 7th, 1610, steering directly to Davis's Straits, he there change his course to the westward, and struck out a new track that no mariner had ever failed before, which led him through the strait that still bears his name into the great bay that bounds the American continent on the N. E. and seems to communicate by various openings with the north sea. Here he continued traversing for almost three months in search of a passage to the westward, but finding himself embayed, he stood to the south, intending to winter in the midst latitude the bay would admit; accordingly, he is said to have wintered in latitude 52 deg. N. longitude 80 deg. W. where on the 1st of November his ship was frozen in, and being scantily provided with provisions, the crew mutinied, and in the end most barbarously contrived, as the writer expresses it, to turn the Captain, the carpenter, and all the sick men out of the ship, who were never more heard of. After which the leaders of the mutiny determined to make the best of their way for England; but in their passage home not a few perished, and those who survived suffered unspeakable misery.

But notwithstanding this disaster, and that it was certainly known that the Captain and all who were left behind were either drowned, starved, or murdered, the progress he had made in the discovery encouraged others to follow his track.

The next who adventured was Captain Button, a man of great abilities, courage, and experience. Patronized by Henry, Prince of Wales, he sailed in 1611, and having passed Hudson's Straits, pursued a different track from that of Captain Hudson, leaving his discoveries to the south, and shaping his course to the N. W.

After sailing more than 200 leagues, he fell in with a large continent, which, from its mountainous appearance, he named New Wales; but finding no passage to the westward, he followed the direction of the land to the southward, till he arrived at Port Nelson, where he wintered in 63 deg. 30 min. N. but, though he kept

three fires in his ship constantly burning, and his company killed incredible numbers of white partridges and other wild fowl, yet many of his men perished by the severity of the cold which in that climate was almost insupportable.

In 1615, Captain William Baffin undertook the examination of the extremity of that sea into which Davis's Straits opened a passage, and he so far succeeded, as to determine its extent, and to discover an outlet marked in our maps, by the name of Sir Thomas Smith's Sound, which is probably the only communication between our northern bays and the great pacific ocean, which nature has provided, in order to maintain a general circulation, without which it is hardly possible to conceive, that the equippage of the globe could for a moment be preserved.

In 1619, Captain John Monk, at the instance of his Danish Majesty, undertook this discovery, and arrived safe at the Cape Farewell, where though the tackle of the ship was so frozen and full of icicles, that the mariners could not handle the ropes, yet next day it was so hot, that they were forced to work in their shirts. He entered Hudson's Strait in the month of July, and was forced to winter in latitude 63 deg. 20 min. N. on an island that still retains his name; but the hardships he endured almost exceeded belief. In May 1620, he found himself alone in a cave dug in the earth, scarce alive, and almost morally certain, that all his mariners were dead. As soon as the weather would permit he crawled forth, and found, of all his crew, only two left. By removing the snow, they found some fresh herbs underneath, and by eating them, recovered from the scurvy. Unable to navigate their ships, they abandoned her to the savages, and, by a wonderful Providence, got safe to Norway in the pinnace. Being a man of uncommon resolution, he was still solicitous to perfect a discovery, which had baffled the researches of so many able navigators, and to acquire glory, by accomplishing that which they had failed to attain. He asserted the existence of such a passage so confidently, and laid down the method of finding it so plausibly, that he had persuaded the merchants of Norway to raise a joint stock to defray the expences of a second voyage; but applying to the King for his permission and protection, and relating to him his own sufferings, and those of his companions in his former voyage, his Majesty told him, he had already been the death of too many of his subjects, and wondered at his presumption to seek to murder more. To which Monk gave a quick reply, which provoked the king to strike him over his stomach with his cane. Whether the severity of the blow, or the sense of the indignity was the occasion, is not certain; but he quitted the royal presence with marks of strong resentment, and returning to his chamber, refused assistance, and three days after breathed his last.

Captain Luke Fox and Captain James were the next who professed engaged in this discovery; the first in a king's frigate, victualled for 18 months; the other in a small vessel of 70 tons, built at Brill on purpose; victualled and equipped by private adventurers.

Captain Fox departed in the spring of 1631, traced all the western bays discovered by former navigators, examined the westernmost part of Hudson's Bay, and returned in 1632. He published a pompous account of his discoveries, which, however, was never much regarded.

On the 3d of May, 1631, Captain James set sail from the Severn's Mouth, and on the 29th of June cleared Hudson's Straits, where he found himself so pelted with broken ice, as to put it out of his power to prosecute his discoveries to the north westward, as he had intended; he therefore ordered his masts to beer W. S. W. and on the 27th of July, after sustaining most dreadful shocks, found his ship enclosed so fast among the ice, that, notwithstanding it blew a hard gale, and all sails set, she stirred no more than if she had been in a dry dock. It was now that the men first began to murmur, and the Captain himself was not without his fears, lest they should here be frozen up and obliged to winter in the middle of the sea. By an observation which they

they made u
latitude 58
On the 5
opened, and
On the 13th
to clear them
and received
her over, an
They were
they had been
tion that can
and two days
pieces. On
the N. W. to
On the 16th
arose and dro
the 17th they
they made lar
anchor, and c
Having ween
evening came
they saw a fair
ready mention
changing mutu
Captain Jan
discoveries, an
for England.
The Captai
place to winter
many distlers,
gan to prepare
ferable life. O
lashed to the fl
sible grief their
Winter now
the days close
but shoals and
these the men b
prevail, and in
their strength to
day.
On the 4th o
N. they fell in w
impossible to d
down with fatig

they made upon the ice, they found that they were in latitude 58 deg. 54 min. N.

On the 5th of next month to their great joy the ice opened, and on the 6th, they were again in a clear sea. On the 13th, seeing some breakers a head, and luffing to clear them, the ship suddenly struck upon the rocks, and received three dreadful shocks, but the swell heaved her over, and on pumping the made no water.

They were now encumbered with rocks, as before they had been with ice, and in the most perilous situation that can be conceived, and so continued two nights and two days, every moment expecting to be dashed to pieces.

On the fogs clearing up they saw land from the N. W. to the S. E. by E. with rocks and breakers. On the 16th they weighed and made sail, when a storm arose and drove them within sight of Port Nelson. On the 17th they stood to the southward. On the 20th they made land, in latitude 57 deg. N. where they cast anchor, and called it the Principality of South Wales.

Having weighed, on the 27th they set sail, and in the evening came in sight of higher land; and on the 29th they saw a sail, which proved to be Captain Fox, already mentioned. They spoke together, and, after exchanging mutual civilities parted.

Captain James kept coasting along the shore to make discoveries, and Captain Fox made the best of his way for England.

The Captain now began to think of a convenient place to winter in. In this attempt they met with so many disasters, that at last having no hope left, they began to prepare themselves to make a good end of a miserable life. On the 19th they lost their shallop, though hauled to the ship by two hawlers, and to their inexpressible grief their boat was almost rendered irreparable.

Winter now began to set in a-pace, the nights long, the days close and foggy, the seas rough, and nothing but shoals and broken land to navigate. Added to all these the men began to sicken, an universal dejection to prevail, and in proportion as their distresses increased, their strength to bear up against them grew less every day.

On the 4th of November, being in latitude 52 deg. N. they fell in with an island, from which they found it impossible to depart. The men were quite worn down with fatigue, the sails so frozen as not to be un-

furled, the ropes congealed in the blocks, and the deck knee-deep in snow. In this forlorn condition they built a tent on shore for the sick, and in this tent they kept fires continually burning night and day, but the cold increased so fast, that beer, and even spirits froze by the fire-side.

The sufferings of the Captain and crew from the latter end of October, when they landed till the end of July, when they departed, are hardly to be paralleled.

This was the last voyage that was undertaken for the discovery of a north-west passage, till that of Captain Middleton. From all which, and the opinion of Captain James after his return, there is great reason to conclude, that what we have said of a north-east passage is likewise true of a passage by the north-west, that it most certainly exists, but will never be found practicable for mercantile purposes.

The voyage of Commodore Phipps, which his Majesty, in a particular manner, thought fit to patronize, was equipped with such care and circumspection, that nothing was found wanting during the course of it.

To this voyage, we have prefixed a brief recapitulation of the many attempts that have been made for the discovery of a north-east passage to China and Japan, and also have subjoined a like summary of the enterprises set on foot by government, or undertaken by private adventurers, for discovering a communication with the great Pacific ocean by a passage from the north-west.

The accounts are full of astonishing events, and wonderful descriptions of uncommon phenomena. In them we read of rivers and lakes of ice, huriling with imprisoned vapours; and of rocks, forests, beams of houses and buildings, splitting with a noise not less terrible than the loudest thunder. Of brandy, brine, and even spirits of wine, exposed to the open air, only for a few hours, freezing into a solid mass. Of mountains of ice frozen in the sea 100 fathom deep. Of snow hills that never thaw. And of winds that blister the flesh, and shrivel the skin like red-hot iron.

In this part of our work the distresses, dangers, providential deliverance, and unspeakable sufferings of those who have wintered in the dark and dreary regions of the north, are recounted with clearness; and the contents of many volumes are comprized with care and precision.



and his com-
arridges and
filled by the
e was almost

root: the ex-
which Davis
ceeded, as to
outlet marked
omas Smith's
unication be-
acific ocean,
tain a general
ossible to con-
uld for a mo-

instance of his
, and arrived
the tackle of
that the mari-
day it was fo
ir shirts. He
July, and was
min. N. on an
e hardships he
May 1629, he
e earth, scarce
ll his mariners
uld permit the
only two left.
fresh herbs un-
rom the scurvy,
andoned her to
ence, got safe to
of uncommon
ct a discovery,
many able navi-
thing that which
the existence of
own the method
suaded the mer-
k to defray the
ing to the King
relating to him
mpanions in his
he had already
ta, and wonder-
ore. To which
ed the king to
ane. Whether
f the indignity
mitted the royal
ent, and return-
and three days

s were the next
; the first in a
the other in a
n purpose; va-
rriers.
f 1631, traced
mer navigators,
son's Bay, and
mpous account
s never much

James set sail
ayth of June
nd himself so
of his power
estward, as he
naller to steer
ustaining most
so fast among
d gale, and all
had been in a
began to mur-
hout his fears,
bliged to win-
ervation which
they

NEW, AUTHENTIC and COMPLETE ACCOUNT, and NARRATIVE of
A VOYAGE Round the WORLD,

UNDERTAKEN AND PERFORMED

By Commodore (afterwards Lord) ANSON,

In his Majesty's Ship the CENTURION,

HAVING UNDER HIS COMMAND

The Gloucester, Pearl, Severn, Wager, Trial, and two Store Ships.

THE Spanish depredations in the year 1739, having roused the national resentment, and the pacific ministry who then were intrusted with the administration of affairs, finding it impossible any longer to prevent a war with Spain; several projects were proposed, and several plans formed, for distressing the enemy in the most effectual manner, by cutting off the resources by which alone they were encouraged to continue their insults, and by which alone they could be enabled to support a war. Among the rest, two expeditions were planned by Sir Charles Wager, then at the head of the admiralty, and two gentlemen named by him for carrying them into execution; which were no sooner laid before the privy council to be examined than they were unanimously approved.

Captain Anson, who was nominated to command the one, being out upon a cruise, a vessel was dispatched to order him to return with his ship, the Centurion, to Portsmouth; and Mr. Cornwall, who was appointed to command the other, was acquainted with the honour conferred upon him, and directed to prepare accordingly.

There are not to be found in the annals of Britain two expeditions, remote in the destination, yet having a connection one with the other, that promised equal advantages with these to the nation, equal honour to the promoters, or equal wealth and glory to the commanders: but by what fatality these expeditions were changed, or by what state-craft one came to be laid aside, and the other delayed,—who were the traitors that betrayed the secret of their destination, or who the demon of seduction was, that perverted the grand design to the pitiful purpose of one single pillaging project, remains at present among those secrets, which, perhaps, a second Dalrymple, in some remote period of time, may discover; when it will probably appear how much the influence of Chilian gold had operated in defeating the most formidable project for the humiliation of Spain that ever was devised; and how easy it is for a prime minister of England, in the plenitude of power, to defeat the best-concerted measures, backed and supported by the King in his council, when either pride, envy, avarice, or emulation, may prompt him to opposition.

The project, as at first intended, was to consist of two strong squadrons; one under Captain Anson was to take on board three independent companies of 100 men each, and Bland's regiment of foot (who was himself to command the land forces), and was to sail with all possible expedition by the Cape of Good Hope to the city of Manilla, in the island of Luconia; while that commanded by Captain Cornwall, of equal force, was

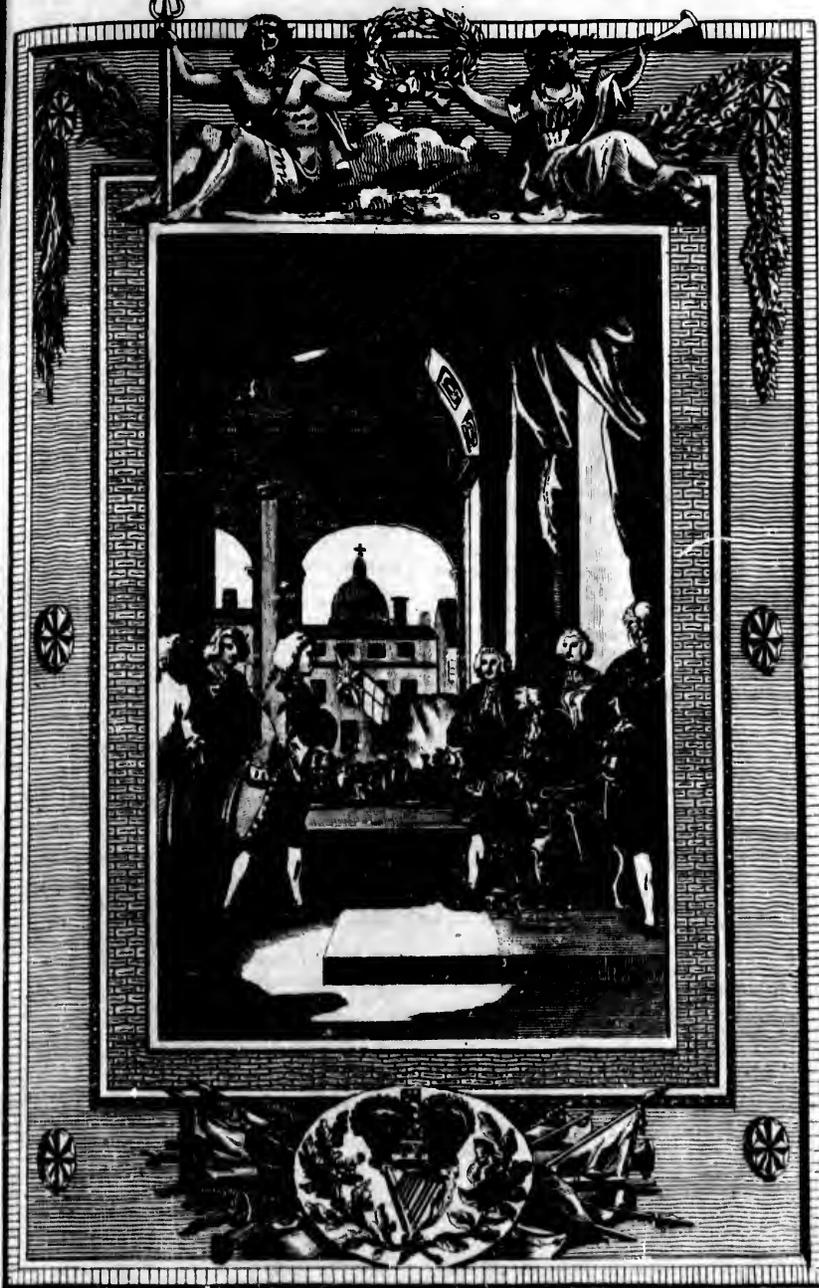
to proceed round Cape Horn into the South Seas, there to range the coasts of Chili, Peru, and Mexico; and when the commander in chief had made himself master of the royal treasures in that quarter, he was then to direct his course to the Philippines, and join the squadron of Captain Anson. This done, they were to act in conjunction, as circumstances should arise, or to wait for fresh orders from government to proceed on fresh enterprises. The reader will perceive, at first view, the vast importance of this noble undertaking, calculated at once to enrich the nation, and to determine the war without the effusion of much blood; for the places intended to be attacked were at that time incapable of resistance; and as they were in possession of the royal treasures, any failure in the return of which must of necessity oblige Spain to sue for peace, that haughty nation must thus have been subdued without a battle. But posterity will stand amazed when they are told the issue of this project, on which Sir Charles Wager was so intent, that though it was the 10th of September before Capt. Anson arrived in town, yet by the 18th he had received orders to take under his command the Argyle, Severn, Pearl, Wager, and Trial sloop, and to proceed to victual the same with the utmost expedition.

Before the end of December such dispatch had been made by that vigilant officer, that the ships were in readiness to take the troops on board, but in January, when Captain Anson attended the board to receive further orders, he was told by Sir Charles, that the Manilla expedition was laid aside, for what reason he knew not, but that the expedition to the South Seas was still intended; and that he and his squadron, as their first destination was now countermanded, should be employed in that service.

Accordingly on 10th of January, 1740, he received his commission as Commodore; yet it was not till the 10th of June that he obtained from the Duke of Newcastle his Majesty's instructions; and even then so many obstacles were thrown in the way, so many difficulties started, and so many delays contrived, that, before he was permitted to sail, which was not till the latter end of September, the Spaniards were so well informed of his design, that a person who had been employed in the South Sea Company's service, arrived from Panama, and was able to relate to the Commodore most of the particulars of his strength and destination, from what he had learnt among the merchants before he left the South Seas; but a still more extraordinary proof of their early and perfect intelligence was discovered soon afterwards; in the course of the voyage

COMM
the SE.

Published as the Act directs, by Alex. Hogg, at the Kings Arms, No 18, Paternoster Row.



COMMODORE (afterwards LORD) ANSON, attending KING GEORGE the SECOND, with an Account of his VOYAGE ROUND the WORLD.

...TIVE of
...RLD,
...N SON,

Ships.

South Seas, there
and Mexico; and
made himself master
was then to direct
in the Squadron of
are to act in con-
arise, or to wait
proceed on fresh
at first view, the
ing, calculated at
etermine the war
for the places in-
incapable of re-
of the royal trea-
must of necessity
ghty nation must
le. But posterity
the issue of this
was so intent, that
efore Capt. Anson
d received orders
, Severn, Pearl,
eed to victual the

Dispatch had been
ships were in re-
in January, when
receive further
t the Manila ex-
on he knew not,
as was still inten-
their first destina-
be employed in

1740, he received
was not till the
Duke of New-
en then so many
many difficulties
that, before he
the latter end of
informed of his
employed in the
d from Panama,
fore most of the
n, from what he
ore he left the
dinary proof of
was discovered
of the voyage
when

when the
squadron
with the
delay, h
pedition
in the f
pendant
exactly,
Pearl, w
was able
All de
constitu
victualli
400 men
dore; th
Richard
50 guns,
manic r
Mitchell
160 men
victualle
about 4
were ord
But how
of succ
various
month's
what ha
Board fr
originat
ordinary
exchange
complem
and the f
in the ch
and fresh
stead of
glad to
numbers
was no
about 100
raw mari
were they
in the lan
companie
of foot, a
from Che
capable o
other pa
But this
misfortun
ance of
consequ
which t
obliging
the Cape
was fore
tished lo
expiring
came to
bleeding
20, som
But t
authent
Thomas
turion,
and ret
Portim
server
Richard
ceived
fary to
der in
We
of fact
but, in
because
rial th
things
No.

when the Pearl, being separated from the rest of the Squadron, in a storm, on the coast of Brazil, fell in with the Spanish fleet, that, during the unprecedented delay, had been purposely fitted out to ruin the expedition, and found Admiral Pizarro so well instructed in the form and make of Commodore Anson's broad pendant, and those he employed had imitated it so exactly, that Capt. Mitchell, who commanded the Pearl, was decoyed by it within gun-shot, before he was able to discover his mistake.

All delays being at length overcome, the Squadron, consisting of five men of war, a sloop of war, and two victualling ships, namely, the Centurion, of 60 guns, 400 men, commanded by Captain Anson, as Commodore; the Gloucester, of 50 guns, 300 men, of which Richard Norris, Esq; was Commander; the Severn, of 50 guns, 300 men, the Hon. Edward Legg, Esq; Commander; the Pearl, of 40 guns, 250 men, Matthew Mitchell, Esq; Commander; the Wager, of 28 guns, 160 men, the Hon. John Murray, Commander; two victuallers, the Industry and Anne pinks, the largest of about 400, and the other about 200 tons burthen; were ordered to take the troops on board at St. Helen's. But how much the numbers, strength, and probability of success of this Squadron, were diminished by the various incidents that took place in near a twelve-month's procrastination, may fully be conceived by what has already been said. Had the honourable Board from whence the first idea of the expedition originated been permitted to direct, all the old and ordinary seamen on board the ships would have been exchanged for such as were young and able; the full complement of each ship would have been made up; and the salt provisions which had been so long on board in the channel would have been re-manded on shore, and fresh provisions replaced in their room: but, instead of these necessary precautions, the Captains were glad to retain their old crews; the deficiency in the numbers of which, amounting to more than 300 men, was no otherwise made up than by sending on board about 100 cripples from the hospitals, and a party of raw marines who had never been at sea before: nor were they more fortunate in the change that was made in the land-forces; for, instead of three independent companies, of 100 men each, and Bland's regiment of foot, as first promised, they had only 400 invalids from Chelsea allotted them, one part of whom was incapable of action by their age and infirmities, and the other part useless by their ignorance of their duty. But this diminution of strength was not the greatest misfortune that attended these measures; the importance of the time which was willfully waited was in its consequences the source of all those calamities to which the enterprize was afterwards exposed, by obliging the Commodore to make his passage round the Cape in the most tempestuous season, when, as it was foreseen, almost all the invalids, to a man, perished long before they arrived at the place of action, expiring in a most lamentable condition when they came to be attacked with the scurvy, with their wounds bleeding afresh, which had been healed some of them 20, some 30, and some 40 years before.

But to proceed: Of this voyage there are two very authentic and well-written accounts; one by Pasco Thomas, the mathematical master on board the Centurion, who sailed in her out of the British Channel, and returned with her in safety when she arrived at Portsmouth, and was an eye-witness and careful observer of all that passed: the other by the Rev. Mr. Richard Walters, Chaplain to the above ship, who received his materials, and every other assistance necessary to authenticate his narration, from the Commander in Chief.

We have chosen to follow the former in the narrative of facts, as most exact and least liable to imposition; but, in the explanatory part, we shall copy the latter; because, though Mr. Thomas suffered nothing material that passed to escape his notice, there were many things transacted, the motives for which he could only

No. 41.

guess at; but these motives Mr. Walters has, by means of the Commodore's assistance, been able to explain.

Being quite ready about the beginning of September, 1740, we put to sea three different times, but were as often put back to the road of St. Helen's by contrary winds and stormy weather. At last, on Thursday, Sept. 18, we sailed in company with the Lark and St. Alban's, two of his Majesty's ships, and several merchant-ships, besides our own Squadron; and Saturday evening saw some men-of-war, and a large fleet of merchantmen, waiting for us at Torbay. At one in the afternoon we joined them; and the Commodore hoisted his broad pendant, which was saluted by all his Majesty's ships in the fleet with 13 guns each. The King's ships which joined us here were, the Dragon, Chatham, Winchester, and South-Sea-Castle, and near 200 sail of merchantmen under convoy, some of whom were bound to the Mediterranean, and others to several parts of North America. We had at present the command of the whole fleet; and this same afternoon, seeing a ship to the south-west, we made the Dragon a signal for chasing her; but she proved one of our own ships, too far a-head of her station. At four this afternoon, the Start Point bore from us E. by N. at the distance of eight leagues.

Monday the 22d, we saw two sail to the westward, and sent the Trial sloop to speak with them. They were Dutch ships bound to Curaçoa, with soldiers for their garrisons there.

Thursday the 25th, the Winchester and South-Sea-Castle, with the merchant-ships under their convoy for Virginia, and other parts of North America, parted from us, and proceeded on their respective voyages. And Monday the 29th, the Dragon, Chatham, St. Alban's, and Lark, with the merchant-ships in their charge for the Mediterranean, did the like; and we had now no ships left in company but our own proper Squadron.

Tuesday the 30th, we spoke with a Dutch man-of-war, who came from Malta, bound for Amsterdam.

Friday, October the 3d, we spoke with two English merchant-ships from Lisbon for New-York, and the 8th we spoke with a French sloop from Rochelle. The 13th, one Philip Merrit, a common sailor, died, which I mention because he was the first man we lost on the voyage. The next day, by an order from the Commodore, we went to short allowance; that is, one third of the allowance granted by government is kept back, in order to make our provisions hold out the longer. The 24d, we spoke with a ship from Liverpool, and the next day with another from Glasgow, for the Cape de Verde Islands; as also with a small brigantine from Falmouth for Madeira, who kept us company thither. The next day we spoke with a Dutch ship from Surinam for Holland. The 26th, at six o'clock in the morning, we saw the land bearing W. N. W. distance six leagues, and at four in the evening anchored in Fonchiale road, in forty fathom water, a-breast the town of Fonchiale, and about a mile and a half from it. During this whole passage, we had almost continually contrary winds, and boisterous uncertain weather; by which means, a passage which is very commonly made in 10 or 12 days, took us up 38.

Our business in this place was only to water, and take in wine, and some private stock: but, soon after our arrival, we were informed, that they had seen from the island to the westward, about 16 or 18 sail of ships for several days together, which were supposed to be a junction of French and Spanish ships of war; and as we had reason to imagine that our expedition had long been known, there was little room to doubt, but that those ships were designed to intercept and destroy us before we could attempt any thing to the prejudice of Spain. On this news the Commodore sent out an English privateer which lay in the road, with one of his own officers, to see if they could discover them at sea, and what they were; but she returned the next day, having made no discovery.

Nov. 2, Captain Norris, at his own request, being in an ill state of health, with the consent of the Commo-

dore

dore quitted the command of the Gloucester, in order to return to England. The Gloucester was hereupon given to Captain Mitchell, the Pearl to Captain Kidd, the Wager to the Hon. Captain Murray, and the Trial sloop to David Cheap, our First Lieutenant; and as one of the Lieutenants of the Gloucester had quitted with Captain Norris, our two mates, who had long depended on the Commodore, were preferred to be Lieutenants on this occasion.

The 4th, at four in the afternoon, we weighed and put to sea, with all the Squadron under our command. An English sloop, which lay in the road, saluted us at our departure with nine guns, to which we returned five.

The 6th, at four o'clock in the evening, we saw the island of Palma, one of the Canary islands, in the latitude of 29 degrees north, and longitude from the meridian of London 19 degrees 44 minutes west. The same day we spoke with a French ship from Marseilles bound to Martinico, and the next morning with a Dutch ship from Amsterdam bound to Batavia, the metropolis of the Dutch settlements in the East-Indies.

The 11th, about four in the morning, we crossed the Northern Tropic for the first time in this voyage, in long. 24 deg. 24 min. west from London.

The 16th, being in the latitude of about 12 deg. 20 min. and the contract with our victuallers expiring in that latitude, the Anne pink fired a gun, and hoisted a red flag at her fore-top-mast head, to give us notice of it.

On the next day all the Lieutenants of the Squadron were by a signal ordered on board the Centurion, and orders were given to unlade the Industry pink, and each ship to take on board from her their respective quotas of provisions; in pursuance of which we immediately began to unlade her, lying by in the day, and making an easy sail in the night.

The 19th, having unloaded and discharged the Industry, at eight in the evening she parted from us, in order to proceed to Barbadoes, whither she was bound; but the Commodore having entered into a new contract with the master of the Anne pink, she was detained with us for his Majesty's service, our ships being too much encumbered to admit of taking on board any more provisions at this time.

The 28th, about five in the morning, we crossed the Equinoctial, in the longitude of 28 deg. 15 min. W. from London, the variation of the compass at that place being 35 min. E.

December the 2d, at eight in the morning, we saw a sail to the north-west, to which we gave chase. At night we lost sight of her; but next morning we saw her and gave chase again, but in the afternoon quitted her. We imagined this sail to be a tender on the Spanish fleet, sent purposely to get intelligence of us; but on our arrival at the Cape of Good Hope, in our return home, we learned that she was the East-India Company's packet bound for the island of St. Helena.

The 10th, expecting to be near the coast of Brazil, we sounded, and found 67 fathom water, on which we fired a gun for a signal, and altered our course more to the southward. This day died Thomas Waller, our surgeon, who was succeeded by Henry Ettrick, surgeon of the Wager; the surgeon of the Trial succeeded him, and Joseph Allen, our surgeon's first mate, was made surgeon of the Trial.

The 11th, we spoke with a Portuguese brigantine from Rio Janeiro, bound to Santos, one of the principal Portuguese settlements in the Brazils. The 13th, we crossed the South Tropic for the first time, in long. 38 deg. 36 min. W. from London.

The 14th, died Robert Weldon, our purser, who was succeeded by John Rule, purser of the Wager, and Commodore's Secretary; Thomas Harvey, one of our midshipmen, was made purser of the Wager, in the room of Mr. Rule.

The 17th, we saw the land of the Brazils, from W. to W. S. W. very mountainous, and full of woods. I have, for several days last past, found, by my observations, a strong current on this coast, setting to the

southward near three quarters of a mile an hour, which, perhaps, may be occasioned by the neighbourhood of the vast river of Rio de la Plata; another observation, which I shall have occasion to make after our leaving the coast of Brazil, will very much corroborate this conjecture.

The same day, at four in the evening, we had 40 fathom of water, muddy ground; the island of Alvaredo, a small island at the north-east end of the large island of St. Katharine's, then bearing N. W. by N. about eight leagues distant; and the next day at seven in the evening we came to an anchor in twelve fathom water, the north-east end of St. Katharine's bearing S. S. W. about three miles distant, and the island of Alvaredo, N. N. E. about six miles distant. Here we found the tide to set S. S. E. and N. N. W. We sent ashore a Lieutenant to the fort, to compliment the Governor, and to desire a pilot to carry us into the road. The Governor returned a very civil answer, and granted our request. The next morning we weighed and ran up the harbour, and about noon anchored in five fathom and a half water, in a place they there call Buon Porto; but being still too far from the watering-place, we on the 20th, about eleven in the morning, weighed and ran farther up between St. Katharine's and the main land of Brazil, and in the afternoon anchored and moored in five fathom water, about two miles from the watering-place; and the same evening our third Lieutenant went ashore with materials for building a tent, to shelter the people who were to be employed in watering. We likewise saluted the Portuguese fort with eleven guns, who returned us the like number.

Our ships beginning to be very sickly, tents were erected on shore, one for every ship, and the sick were sent ashore to them, with surgeons and proper attendants.

The agents for victualling, of which we had two with us, were ordered to procure what fresh provisions we could expend during our stay here, which they accordingly did; but though their meat, which is altogether beef, was both cheap and plenty, it was for the greatest part miserably bad, and scarce fit to be eaten.

The men throughout the whole Squadron began now to drop off apace with fevers and fluxes, occasioned chiefly, I believe, by the violent heat of the climate, and the bad air; the country being so very woody that the air must thereby be stagnated, and rendered unhealthy.

We continued here wooding, watering, and overhauling our rigging, till Sunday, Jan. 18, 1741, during which time we had variable uncertain weather, sometimes sea and land breezes, at other times strong gales of wind, with heavy rain, thunder and lightning, but always excessive heat.

While we lay here, we gave our ship a thorough cleansing, smoaked her between decks, in order to destroy the vermin, and washed every part with vinegar, which I mention because it is absolutely necessary in large ships, the stench of so many sick persons being noisome in hot climates.

Dec. 21, I observed an eclipse of the moon, and by comparing the time of the end of it, with a calculation I purposely made of it in the meridian of London, from Sir Isaac Newton's New Theory of the Moon, I found the place where the ship then lay to be 49 deg. 53 min. to the westward of the meridian of London. The calculation itself, and the time it ended at St. Katharine's, I have unfortunately lost; but as the longitude is thereby settled, they are of no farther use, and not worth retriving at the trouble of a new calculation.

Before we arrived at this island, we had received from the descriptions of Mr. Frezier, a French author, and some other persons who had been on the spot, such accounts as, together with the climate in which it is situated, gave us very great ideas of its fruitfulness, and hopes of a plentiful supply of every thing we wanted for a long run; but we found ourselves miserably mistaken in almost every article we expected.

As he
fishing
maids,
very bo
call a t
wife had
but fear
dogs.
atoes,
those cl
above m
and whi
there we
believe
knowled
however
in his re
apples,
cots, an
for tea-
we cut
acum th
I saw no
ing our
ties, b
are a m
together
rant and
here was
parts of
they nev
them, c
who was
than the
are some
Janeiro,
expert c
stood on
advantag
entrusted
a battery
to a litt
three oth
harbour,
The c
tainous,
so entan
bramble
scarce p
of very
the cour
even the
They
not very
armadill
as also
birds pr
plenty n
of them
The
capable
civilize
This
titude,
London
min. ea
Dec.
eighteen
under t
Centuri
protect
brigant
behaved
Govern
plained
a pret
stantial
afterwa
Seas.

As here are several fine sandy bays, we had very good fishing with a seine, for mullets, old wives, sting-rays, maids, turbots, and other flat fish, silver fish, bafs, a very boney long fish like a bafs, but which our seamen call a ten-pounder, and some other sorts. We likewise had fresh beef for present expending plenty enough, but scarce better than the carrion that we gave to our dogs. As for lemons, limes, plantains, bananas, potatoes, and other roots, fruits, and greens, with which those climates generally abound, which the authors above mentioned aver to be extremely plentiful here, and which we principally depended on for sea-stores, there were so few at the time of our being here, that I believe we could have consumed all that came to our knowledge of those things in one day. The officers, however, no doubt found plenty; as Mr. Walters agrees in his report with Frezier, that there was no want of pine-apples, peaches, grapes, lemons, citrons, melons, apricots, and adds, there were besides potatoes and onions for sea-stores. Sassafras is here in great plenty, and we cut much of it among other wood for fuel. Guaiacum they report to be very plenty here likewise, but I saw none of it, nor heard of any person who did during our stay. Rum and sugar they have in small quantities, but very indifferent and dear. The inhabitants are a mixture of Portuguese and Indians incorporated together, and appear to be very poor, idle, lazy, ignorant and rude. I believe the original of the Portuguese here was chiefly from felons, who fled hither from other parts of the Brazils to shelter themselves from justice; they never till lately having any government among them, except a Chief chosen from among themselves, who was more like a Captain of thieves and robbers, than the Commander of a colony. At present there are some European Soldiers, and a Governor from Rio Janeiro, whose name was Don Joffe Sylva de Paz, an expert engineer, who, as Mr. Walters observes, understood one branch of his business very well, which is the advantages which new works bring to those who are entrusted with the care of erecting them; for, besides a battery on a neck of land that narrows the channel to a little more than a quarter of a mile, there were three other forts carrying on for the defence of the harbour, none of which were then completed.

The country, both the main and the island, is mountainous, and all over-grown with thick woods, and those so entangled with the under-growth of thorny briars, brambles, and the like, that in most places they are scarce penetrable. These woods are reported to be full of very fierce tygers, which makes any excursions into the country dangerous, unless you go well armed, and even then much caution is necessary.

They have here some hogs and fowls, but I believe not very plenty; and in the woods are monkeys, apes, armadillos, and other wild creatures unknown to me; as also parrots, paroquets, and many other sorts of birds proper to the climate. Alligators are said to be plenty near the shores and in the lakes, but we saw none of them.

The country appears to me to be a good soil, and very capable of improvement, were the inhabitants more civilized and industrious.

This island lies in latitude 27 deg. 30 min. S. longitude, as before determined, 49 deg. 53 min. W. from London; and the variation of the compass 11 deg. 20 min. easterly.

Dec. 27, we discovered a sail in the offing, and the eighteen-oar'd barge was manned, and armed, and sent, under the command of the second Lieutenant of the Centurion, to examine her before she arrived within the protection of the fort. She proved to be a Portuguese brigantine from Rio Grande; but, though the officer behaved to the master with the utmost civility, yet the Governor took offence at our sending our boat, complained of the violation of the peace, and made that a pretence for sending Don Pizarro the most circumstantial intelligence of our force and condition, as we afterwards found by letters intercepted in the South Seas.

January 18, 1741, we left this island, having had a melancholy proof how much the healthiness of this place had been over-rated by former writers; for we found, that, though the Centurion alone had buried no less than 28 men since our arrival, the number of the sick in the same interval had increased to 96; and this very day we had three men die.

Before our departure the Commodore took every precaution to prevent a separation; but considering that, in such boisterous seas as we were about to encounter, he himself might be disabled, he called the officers together, and in a full council so ordered it, that, if but one ship escaped, the expedition should not be abandoned. Proper places of rendezvous were appointed; the time was settled for staying at these places; and, if the Commodore did not arrive in that time, the Captains were ordered to put themselves under the command of the senior, and to proceed without farther delay.

The 22d in the morning, we had very stormy weather, with some thunder, lightning, and rain; and the Trial carried away the head of her main-mast. A thick fog succeeding, we lay to, and soon after lost sight of the Pearl, the Trial, and the Anne pink. In the afternoon we got sight of and joined company with the Trial and the Anne, but the Pearl was still missing.

From hence to February the 13th, very variable weather, mostly foggy from latitude 35, or thereabouts, to latitude 39; the rest a mixture not much unlike our weather in England in the month of October, except that we had pretty often thunder and lightning, which are not so frequent with us in that month. Being past the latitude of 36 degrees to the southward, I observed the current, which had hitherto constantly set southerly, now on the contrary, set to the northward; and the great river of Rio de la Plata being situated in between 35 and 36 degrees south, strengthens my conjecture that those currents are occasioned by the flux and reflux of that mighty river.

February 13, we saw the land from S. by W. to S. half E. appearing plain, with very few risings, and of a very moderate height, our soundings at that time from 46 to 56 fathom, the first mud, the latter stony ground. This day, at four in the evening we were within about four miles of Cape Blanco on the coast of Patagonia, and in 12 fathom water; on which we hauled off, and ran along the coast, the soundings from 20 to 60 fathom water. At five the next morning we saw the land from W. by N. to S. W. half W. with an opening near the middle; which I believe to be the harbour of Port Desire, so called by Sir John Narborough. The northernmost land in sight is Cape Blanco, and the southernmost Penguin island, so called from the great numbers of penguins about it, of which birds Sir John's ship's company killed and salted large quantities for provisions, and which he reports to be very good and wholesome food. Cape Blanco is in the latitude of 47 deg. 10 min. S. longitude from St. Katharine's 17 deg. 38 min. W. which makes it from London 67 deg. 20 min. W. taking the N. E. point of St. Katharine's in 49 deg. 42 min. W. to be about 11 min. to the eastward of the place where the ship lay when I fixed it by observation.

The 17th, in the evening, we anchored about 17 or 18 leagues short of the harbour of Port St. Julian, so called by Sir Francis Drake, who touched there in his voyage round the globe, and where he condemned and executed Mr. Doughty, the next person in command to himself, on pretence of a conspiracy to murder him and ruin the expedition; whence a small island within the harbour is to this day called the Island of True Justice. The next morning we saw a sail at S. by E. which we believing to be the Pearl, made the signal for the return of all cruisers; but the not minding, as I suppose not seeing it, we ordered the Gloucester to chase, and at two in the afternoon the Gloucester and her chase, which to our great satisfaction proved to be

be the Pearl, joined us. They informed us, that, on January the 31st, their Commander, Captain Dandy Kidd, died; and that on the 7th instant they were chased by five large ships, which they believed to be Spanish men of war, and were some time within gunshot of them, though they never fired a gun, having endeavoured to decoy the Pearl by hoisting a broad red pendant, like that of the English Commodore, at the Admiral's main-top-mast head, and hoping by that means to be taken for our Commodore, and so to inveigle and make sure of their prey; Captain Mitchell, thus decoyed, narrowly escaped them, by running through a space of water, where the tides or currents making a great rippling, the Spaniards, who thought it was rocky and broken ground, were afraid to follow her. These ships we supposed to be the Spanish Squadron, commanded by Admiral Pizarro, the same who got so great a name among them for his conduct in bringing home their flota safe into Port Andero the last year, eluding the vigilance of our squadrons who waited for them off Cadiz, and was therefore looked on as the properest person to be sent to intercept us. We should not have been displeas'd, however, to have met them with our whole force, and did not much doubt to have either destroyed or disabled them. But the time of their destruction was not yet come; their miserable fate shall be related in its proper place.

We were now, being the 18th, sailing along shore for the harbour of St. Julian. I found the tide to set here N. and S. about a mile an hour. The time of flowing here on the full and change days is N. E. by E. and S. W. by W. nearest. We sent one of our boats with an officer in-stroke, to sound and endeavour to discover the mouth of the harbour. At six in the evening we came to an anchor in 12 fathom water. At eight the lieutenant returned, having found the harbour. We sent ashore our boats to make farther discoveries, and to endeavour some to get fresh water, and others to procure salt, (of which Sir J. Narborough observed, when he was here, that in February there was enough of it to load 1000 ships) for the use of the Squadron in the South Seas. We continued here till the 27th, during which time we stow'd most of our empty casks, in order to clear our ships as much as possible, and got up and mounted such of our guns as we had before struck down into the hold in order to ease the ships; for now, not knowing how soon we might meet with the Spanish Squadron, it was necessary to have them all in readiness. We could find no fresh water here, and but a very small quantity of salt, and no other refreshments whatever; all the country, as far as we could discover, being quite barren and desolate. We got some provisions out of the Anne victualler on board each of the other ships, repaired the Trial's mast, and assisted her and the victualler to overhaul and new-fix most of their rigging. Having lost the hopes of a supply of water here, we were put to the allowance of one quart a man for one day, and three pints for another, alternately; but, considering our passage had hitherto proved extremely stormy and cold, and a dead time of the year coming on very fast, it was thought proper, in order to keep the people in as good heart as possible, to give them whole allowance of all other provisions, which was ordered accordingly.

Here we farther secured our lower-deck guns, by nailing quoins under the trucks, in case the tackles, breechings, or iron-work, might give way, or fail in the stormy weather which we had much reason to expect.

Here likewise the Commodore removed the Hon. Captain Murray into the Pearl, in the room of Captain Kidd; and Captain Cheap into the Wager in the room of Captain Murray. He advanced Mr. Charles Saunders, his first lieutenant, to be commander of the Trial Sloop, in the room of Captain Cheap; and made Mr. Piercy Brett, first lieutenant of the Gloucester, second lieutenant of his own ship. The Trial being repaired, and the Pearl, who had thrown about 14 ton of water overboard when chased by the Spaniards, being sup-

plied from the other ships, we made ready to prosecute our voyage.

This harbour of Port St. Julian is a barred harbour, only fit to receive small ships and vessels. We lay off in the road about two miles from the mouth of it. It is not to be seen open from where we lay, one point shutting in another; and before any small ship or vessel pretends to venture into the harbour, they ought to send in their boats at low water, and fix poles or buoys on the ends of the shoals, which, in a manner, block up the passage. The country about it is pretty much on the level, except a few coping hillocks to the northward, and a pretty high one in the bay, which bears W. S. W. from the place where we lay at anchor. The latitude of Port St. Julian is 49 deg. 10 min. S. its longitude from London 69 deg. 48 min. W. and the variation of the compass 17 deg. 20 min. E. We had here uncertain boisterous weather, with much rain, some snow, and generally thick fog, with so much wind and sea as made us ride hard, and halted our departure from this uneasy situation.

Sir John Narborough and some others write, that they have often seen and conversed with the inhabitants in this and other parts of Patagonia, and have given wonderful descriptions of them; but as we saw none of them, I have nothing to say of that sort, nor indeed do I think there is any thing in this wild part of the world worthy of the least notice.

The 27th, at six in the morning, we made the signal, weigh'd, and put to sea; but the Gloucester being long in weighing her anchor, and the weather proving thick and hazy, we soon lost sight of her, and at one in the afternoon, tacked, and lay by for her coming up; at seven we fired a gun, a signal for her, and soon after she joined us, having broke her main-yard in the flings.

Previous to our leaving this port, a council was held on board the Centurion, at which all the officers by sea and land attended, when it was proposed by the Commodore, that their first attempt, after their arrival in the South Seas, should be the attack of the town of Baldivia, the principal frontier of the district of Chili. To this proposition the council unanimously agreed; in consequence of which, new instructions were given to the Captains of the Squadron, by which they were directed, in case of separation, to rendezvous at the island of Neutra Senora del Secoro, and there cruise for 10 days; after which, they were ordered to repair to the height of Baldivia, and there between 40 deg. and 40 deg. 30 min. to continue to cruise 14 days longer; and, if in that time they were not joined by the rest of the Squadron, they were then to quit that station, and direct their course to the island of Juan Fernandez.

March the 4th, in the morning, we pass'd by the Straights of Magellan, so near that we saw them very plain; the northernmost point of which, known by the name of Cape Virgin Mary, I found to be in the latitude of 52 deg. 28 min. S. longitude from London 70 deg. 55 min. W. variation of the compass 18 deg. 40 min. E. the soundings, when it bears about S. W. by W. at the distance of eight leagues, from 32 to 50 fathom, the bottom black-grey sand and mud. The afternoon of this day being very bright and clear, with small breezes, inclinable to calm, most of the Captains took the opportunity of this favourable weather to pay a visit to the Commodore; but, while they were in company together, they were all greatly alarmed by a sudden flame which burst out on board the Centurion, and which was succeeded by a cloud of smoke. However, they were soon relieved from their apprehensions, by receiving information, that the blast was occasioned by a spark of fire from the forge lighting on some gunpowder, and other combustibles, which the officers on board were preparing for use, in case we should fall in with the Spanish fleet; and that it had been extinguish'd without any danger to the ship.

The 6th, in the morning, we saw the land of Terra del Fuego, consisting of high craggy hills, towering
above

ready to prosecute

a barred harbour, ffels. We lay off the mouth of it. It we lay, one point small ship or vessel or, they ought to fix poles or buoys in manner, block up s pretty much on ocks to the north- bay, which bears e lay at anchor. eg. 10 min. S. its min. W. and the min. E. We had with much rain, hth fo much wind tenced our depar-

thers write, that h the inhabitants and have given e we saw none of rt, nor indeed do art of the world

made the signal, effer being long er proving thick nd at one in the coming up; at and soon after ain-yard in the

ouncil was held e officers by sea ed by the Com- eir arrival in the e town of Bal- (strict of Chh. mously agreed; ons were given hich they were jezvous at the and there cruise dered to repair etween 40 deg. cruise 14 days t joined by the to quit that land of Juan

passed by the aw them very known by the be in the lati- m London 70 s 18 deg. 40 S. W. by W. to 50 fathom, The afternoon r, with small Captains took her to pay a were in com- ed by a sud- enturion, and . However, henions, by s occasioned m some gun- ne officers on should fall in extinguished

nd of Terra s, towering above

London: Published by R. B. White, in Pall-mall, near St. James's Church.



ALBOUGAINVILLE *having French colours*
on a small Rock, in MAGHELLAN STRAIGHTS

above each other
horrid valleys
one cheerful
that the whole
of Desolation
dreary aspect
habitable earth
sirely its inh
human being
not overshoo
though I bel
Staten Land,
eastward of
Fuego frame
advantage th

The 7th, a
a point of la
James, bear
cent, S. E. h
thers, being
pearing almo
a very high f
up in the co
south from u
are near St
open them i
through the
much rippl
somewhat b
course thro
no shoals n
may incur a
is, the tide
straits, for i
again, and
of the tide.

fix or seven
eight; whic
ocean, com
Sea. This
from Londo
pals 21 deg
43 to 58 fa
stones. In
by the brig
weather, w
though the
morning o
gave place
from Engl
ly verified
trades, tha
succeeding
lowed one
scarcely r

when the
tered our
wind shi
swell to a
pest aro
us, turne
suing our
ward, by
much pr
selves fe
From th
tempests
experien
confels,
inconfid
these wi
time su
danger
and it
pearanc
one of
probab
escape
gunwa
No.

above each other, mostly covered with snow, with deep fertile valleys, some few scattered trees, no plains, nor one cheerful green through all the dismal prospect; so that the whole may not improperly be termed the Land of Desolation; and I much question whether a more dreary aspect is to be seen in any other part of the habitable earth; for voyagers say this is inhabited, but scarcely its inhabitants must be the most miserable of human beings. This evening we lay by, that we might not overlook the Straits of Le Maire in the night; though I believe, had we kept on, and passed round Staten Land, a small island or two, which lie to the eastward of those straits, and together with Terra del Fuego frame them, it would have been more to our advantage than by passing through them.

The 7th, at eight in the morning, we were very near a point of land on Terra del Fuego, called Cape St. James, bearing E. S. E. another called Cape St. Vincent, S. E. half E. the middlemost of the Three Brothers, being three high hills on Terra del Fuego, appearing almost contiguous to each other, S. by W. and a very high sugar-loaf hill, called Monte Gorda, farther up in the country, and appearing above them, bore south from us. It is by these marks that you know you are near Strait Le Maire; and indeed we began to open them in this position. By noon we were almost through them, being assisted by a very strong tide with much rippling, and which made to the fourthward somewhat before 10 o'clock in the morning. The course through is almost directly south, and there are no shoals nor rocks in the passage from whence you may incur any danger; the only thing you have to fear is, the tide's turning against you while you are in the straits, for in that case you are certainly hurried back again, and can have no passage there till the next turn of the tide. The breadth of this strait may be about six or seven leagues, and its length about seven or eight; which being passed, you enter into a vast open ocean, commonly known by the name of the South Sea. This strait lies in latitude 55 deg. S. longitude from London 67 deg. 30 min. W. variation of the compass 21 deg. 36 min. E. soundings in the straits from 43 to 58 fathom, the bottom black sand and pebble-stones. In passing through here, our joy was increased by the brightness of the sky and the serenity of the weather, which was indeed remarkably pleasing; for though the winter was now advancing apace, yet the morning of this day, in its brilliancy and mildness, gave place to none we had seen since our departure from England. But we here found what was constantly verified by all our observations in these high latitudes, that fair weather was ever the forerunner of a succeeding storm, and that sunshine and tempest followed one another like light and shade. We had scarcely reached the southern extremity of the straits, when the serenity of the sky, which had so much flattered our expectations, was all at once obscured, the wind shifted to the southward, and the sea began to swell to an astonishing height. Before night the tempest arose, and the tide, which had hitherto favoured us, turned furiously against us; so that, instead of pursuing our intended course, we were driven to the eastward, by the united force of wind and current, with so much precipitation, that in the morning we found ourselves seven leagues to the eastward of Strait Le Maire. From this time we had such a continual succession of tempestuous weather as surprized the oldest and most experienced mariners on board, and obliged them to confess, that what they had hitherto called storms were inconsiderable gales compared with the violence of these winds, which raised such short and at the same time such mountainous waves, as greatly surpassed in danger all seas known in any other part of the globe: and it was not without reason that this unusual appearance filled us with continual terror; for, had any one of these waves broke fairly over us, it must in all probability have sent us to the bottom. Nor did we escape with terror only; for the ship rolling incessantly gunwale-to, gave us such quick and violent motions,

No. 41.

that the men were in perpetual danger of being dashed against the masts or sides of the ship: and though we were extremely careful to secure ourselves from these shocks by grasping at some fixed body, yet many of our people were forced from their holds, some of whom were killed, and others greatly injured; in particular, one of our best seamen was carried over-board and drowned, another dislocated his neck, a third was thrown into the main hold and broke his thigh, and one of our boatswain's mates broke his collar-bone twice; not to mention many other accidents of the same kind. These tempests, so dreadful in themselves, though unattended by any other unfavourable circumstance, were rendered more mischievous to us by their inequality, and the deceitful intervals which they at some times afforded; for, though we were often obliged to lie-to for days together under a reefed mizen, and were frequently reduced to lie at the mercy of the waves under our bare poles, yet now and then we ventured to make sail with our courses double reefed; and the weather proving more tolerable, would perhaps encourage us to set our top-sails: after which, the wind, without any previous notice, would return upon us with redoubled force, and would in an instant tear our sails from the yards. And, that no circumstance might be wanting which could aggravate our distress, these blasts generally brought with them a great quantity of snow and sleet, which cased our rigging, and froze our sails, thereby rendering them and our cordage brittle, and apt to snap upon the slightest strain, adding inexpressible difficulty and labour to the working of the ship, benumbing the limbs of the people employed in handling the sails, or handling the ropes, and making them incapable of exerting themselves with their usual activity, and even disabling many by mortifying their toes and fingers.

And now, as it were to add the finishing stroke to our misfortunes, our people began to be universally afflicted with that most terrible, obstinate, and, at sea, incurable disease, the scurvy, which quickly made a most dreadful havock among us, beginning at first to carry off two or three a day, but soon increasing, and at last carrying off eight or ten; and as most of the living were very ill of the same distemper, and the little remainder who preserved their healths better, in a manner quite worn out with incessant labour, I have sometimes seen four or five dead bodies, some sown up in their hammocks, others not, washing about the decks, for want of help to bury them in the sea. But as the particulars of all the various disasters and sufferings of various kinds that befel us, would be endless, I shall only mention a few.

The 10th, 11th, and 12th, very stormy weather, with snow and sleet, and a very great overgrown sea from the S. W.

The 15th one William Baker fell overboard and was drowned. The 16th, the Anne pink, which had separated from us the 11th in the storm, again joined us, in lat. 59 deg. 40 min. S.

Part of the 17th, 18th, and 19th, very strong gales, and a great rolling sea from the N. W.

The 18th, we had again strong gales of wind with extreme cold, and at midnight the main-top-sail split, and one of the straps of the main dead-eyes broke.

The 23d, and part of the 24th, a most violent storm of wind, hail, and rain, with a very lofty sea. The 23d, in the evening, we sprung the main-top-sail yard, and split the main-sail into rags, the greatest part of which was blown overboard. On these accidents we furled all our other sails, and lay-to under a mizen.

The latter part of the 24th proving more moderate, we bent a new main-sail, got down the broken main-top-sail yard, and got up and rigged another in its place.

The 25th, it blew a very hurricane, and reduced us to the necessity of lying-to under our bare poles. As our ship kept the wind better than any of the rest, we were obliged in the afternoon to wear ship; in doing of which, we had no other expedient but clapping the helm a-weather, and manning the fore-boards; in the

execution

execution of which we had one of our best men canted overboard. We perceived, that, notwithstanding the prodigious agitation of the waves, he swam very strong; and it was with the utmost concern that we found ourselves incapable of assisting him. Indeed we were the more grieved at his unhappy fate, as we lost sight of him struggling with the waves, and conceived, from the manner in which he swam, that he might continue sensible for a considerable time longer of the horror attending his irretrievable situation.

The 26th being somewhat more moderate, we found two of our main-threads broke, which we repaired; we likewise bent our main-top-sail, and made sail.

The 30th, in the evening, the Gloucester made a signal of distress; and, on speaking with her, we found she had broke her main-yard in the flukes; an accident the more grievous, as it tended unavoidably to delay us in these inhospitable latitudes, where every moment we were in danger of perishing. The weather proving favourable, all the carpenters were ordered on board the Gloucester, and next day she was ready to sail.

The 3d, 4th, 5th, and 6th of April, a continued storm of wind and rain; a dreadful sea, and very cold weather. We lowered our yards, furled our courses, and lay by for the most part under a mizzen and mizzen-stay-sail. The 3d, about 11 o'clock at night, a raging sea took us on the larboard quarter, where it flowed in the quarter gallery, and rushed into the ship like a deluge. For some time it laid the ship down upon her side; but the providentially righted again, though slowly; it threw down and half-drowned all the people on the deck, broke one of the straps of the main dead-eyes, and snapped a mizzen and puttock shroud. This was the greatest sea which we had encountered since we came into those parts, and we met with but one such stroke more in the whole voyage; two or three such succeeding must certainly have sent us to the bottom.

The 7th, 8th, 9th, and 10th, continued very stormy and squally, with snow, hail, rain, and a large sea; the weather continuing very cold.

The 8th, at four in the evening, the Anne pink made a signal of distress; and, on speaking with her, we found she had sprung her fore-stay, and the gammoning of her bowsprit. This was the more unfortunate, as none of the carpenters were yet returned from the Gloucester. Nor was the Anne the only ship that suffered in this storm; the Wager lost her mizzen-mast and main-top-sail yard, owing to the badness of the iron work. In this dilemma we were obliged to bear away till these ships had made all fast.

The 10th, foggy and hazy. This afternoon the Severn and Pearl were far a-sterm, and seemed to me to lag delignedly. We made a very easy sail all day, and lay by at night, and fired several guns as a signal for them to join us; the weather being pretty moderate, and the wind fair for them, they might have effected it with ease. By the close of the evening we could but just see them, and from that time saw them no more. However, we heard afterwards in the South Seas, by letters taken on board some of the Spanish ships of their arrival at Rio Janeiro in the Brazils.

The 15th, the weather proved somewhat more moderate. At half an hour past one in the morning we saw two islands right a-head, at about two leagues distance; we immediately wore our ship, and stood off to the southward. Those islands were very unexpected, as well as unwelcome, we imagining we had been to the westward of all lands and islands of the coast of Terra del Fuego, but we now found our mistake, and that there was a necessity of our standing farther to the southward, in order to get a sufficient westing. Those islands I find to be in the latitude of 54 deg. 20 min. S. longitude from London 84 deg. 10 min. W. Mr. Walters supposes the land we fell in with on this occasion to be Cape Noir, and a part of Terra del Fuego.

From this time to the 23d we had nothing remarkable, the weather continuing very uncertain and variable, with a large sea and a very cold air; and the 21st, at nine at night, we were in the latitude of 60 deg.

5 min. S. being the greatest south latitude, we made during the voyage.

The 23d, very hard gales and squalls, with much rain. This evening we lost sight of the Gloucester, Wager, Trial, and Anne pink, being all the remainder of our Squadron, after the defection of the Severn and Pearl. The Wager's unfortunate catastrophe is well known; the others afterwards joined us at Juan Fernandez, as shall be related in its proper place.

The 24th, 25th, and 26th, the wind being mostly fair, though still blowing hard, we made pretty good run; under an easy sail to the north-westward. The 24th it blew a hurricane, and the men endeavouring to hand the top-sails, the clew-lines and bunt-lines broke, and the sheet being half flown, every seam in the fore-top-sail was soon split from top to bottom, and the main-top-sail hook so strongly in the wind, that it carried away the top lantern, and endangered the head of the mast; however, at length, some of the most daring of our men ventured upon the yard, and cut the sail away close to the reefs, though with the utmost hazard of their lives, whilst at the same time the fore-top-sail beat about the yard with so much fury that it was soon blown to shreds; nor was our attention to our top-sails our sole employment; for the main-sail blew loose, which obliged us to lower the yard to secure the sail, and the fore-yard being likewise lowered, we lay to under a mizzen. The 25th, we found much of our running rigging broken, which we repaired. The 27th, we went over the top-sails in the places of those split. Nothing more remarkable the rest of this month and the first week in the next, but stormy uncertain weather, and great sickness and mortality among our people.

Friday, May 8, at seven in the morning, we saw the main land of Patagonia appearing in high mountains covered mostly with snow. We likewise saw several islands, one of which we took to be the *Isla del Socorro*, so called by Sir John Narborough, in his account of his voyage into those parts; and from the fine description this gentleman had given of this island, (having been there in the very height of summer) this place was appointed for our first general rendezvous in the South Seas. An unhappy appointment it was in its consequences; for when the people, already reduced to the last extremity, found this to be the place of rendezvous, where they had hoped to meet the rest of their companions with joy, and what a miserable part of the world it appeared to be, their grief gave way to despair; they saw no end of their sufferings, nor any door open to their safety. Those who had hitherto been well and in heart, now full of despondency, fell down, sickened, and died; and, to sum up this melancholy part, I verily believe, that our touching on this coast, the long stay we made here, and our hinderance by cross winds, which we should have avoided in a direct course to Juan Fernandez, lost us at least 60 or 70 of our stoutest and ablest men as any in the navy. This unspeakable distress was still aggravated by the difficulties we found in working the ship, as the fury had by this time destroyed no less than 200 of our men, and had in some degree affected almost the whole crew. It were, indeed, endless to recite minutely the various disasters, fatigues, and terrors, which we encountered on this coast; all these went on increasing till the 22nd of May, at which time the fury of all the storms which we had hitherto experienced, seemed to be combined, and to have conspired our destruction. In this hurricane almost all our sails were split, and great part of our standing rigging broken; and, about eight in the evening, a mountainous overgrown sea took us on our larboard quarter, and gave us so prodigious a shock, that several of our shrouds broke with the jacks, by which our masts were in danger of coming by the board; our ballast and stores too were so strangely shifted, that the ship heeled afterwards two streaks a-port. Indeed, it was a most tremendous blow, and we were thrown into the utmost consternation, from the apprehension of instantly foundering. Our deplorable situation allowing no longer

th latitude. we made

squalls, with much
of the Gloucester
ing all the remainder
n of the Severn and
catastrophe is well
ed us at Juan Fer-
oper place.
wind being mostly
e made pretty good
th-westward. The
en endeavouring to
d bunt-lines broke,
y seam in the fore-
bottom, and the
e wind, that it car-
dangered the head
some of the mast
e yard, and cut the
ish the utmost ha-
ne time the fore-
much fury that it
ur attention to our
the main-sail blew
yard to secure the
lowered, we la- to
and much of our
repaired. The
eces of those split,
f this month and
y uncertain wea-
among our people,
morning, saw the
high mountains
we saw several
e the Island del
rough, in his ar-
; and from the
en of this island,
ht of summer),
general rendez-
appointment it
peopl, already
s to be the place
to meet the rest
at a miserable
their grief gave
their sufferings,
those who had
full of despon-
and, to sum up
that our touch-
here, and our
e should have
ndez, lost us at
as any in the
ill aggravated
the ship, as the
is than 200 of
ed almost the
to recte mi-
errors, which
went on in-
ne the fury of
experienced,
pired our de-
our sails were
ging broken;
ainous over-
er, and gave
our stauds
were in dan-
nd stores too
needed after-
a most trea-
to the utmost
of instantly
iving no lon-
ger



Illustration

Applying rules to the case of the MOSQUITO MEN, Three Years on the shores of Juan Fernandez; by Capt. W. P. Taylor.

Some of whom had been left

from the ship

ger a
of Ju
very
day,
cour
rall
seen
he di
nion
the w
craft
vering
appoi
men,
been a
The
saw th
half B
in the
the N
the r
our ar
the G
thom
St. Ka
such a
other
The
appear
our ha
brought
fool fo
the lik
her Co
Comm
plemen
recover
that on
were a
The
her on
tick, ar
The
being d
flaw o
and the
a condi
the ship
wards
stone
In this
Comm
The
moore
remain
on shor
in the
not les
We
for the
a copy
bread
makin
and, a
busily
wood
the fr
bread,
for wa
ing ot
were o
plenty
three
about
beside
curry
lines
for th
The

dife, which could only be exceeded by the perfection of the first.

It is astonishing, that, among all the voyagers who have visited this fortunate island before us, and who have obliged the world with descriptions of it, none of them have mentioned a charming little bird that, with its wild, various, and irregular notes, enchants the ear, and makes the woods resound with its melody. This untutored chorister is somewhat less in size than the goldfinch, its plumage beautifully intermixed with red and other vivid colours, and the golden crown upon its head so bright and glowing, when seen in the full light of the sun, that it surpasses all description. These little birds are far from being uncommon or unfamiliar; for they perched upon the branches of the myrtle-trees so near us, and sung so cheerfully, as if they had been conscious we were strangers, and came to give us welcome.

There is, besides the above, another little bird, unnoticed by any former writer, and which seems likewise peculiar to the island, and consequently without a name; it is still less than the former in size, but not inferior in beauty, though not so musical; the back, wings, and head, are of a lively green, intermixed with fine shining golden spots, and the belly a snow white ground, with ebony coloured spots, so elegantly varied as no art can imitate. To the catalogue of birds mentioned by former writers as inhabitants of this island, should also be added blackbirds and thrushes very like those in England; and owls, but of a diminutive size.

Of four-footed animals we saw none but dogs, cats, rats, and goats; and of the latter but few, as the dogs of various kinds, grey-hounds, mastiffs, pointers, spaniels, and mungrels, have thinned them in the plains, and driven them to the inaccessible mountains; yet some were shot by the hunters, and were preferred by them to the best venison. Among those presented to the Commodore were two or three venerable through age, that had been marked more than thirty years before by Selkirk, who trained them for his sport, slit their ears, and turned them loose to graze the mountains.

I remember we had once an opportunity of observing a remarkable dispute betwixt a herd of those animals and a number of dogs; for going in our boat into the eastern bay we perceived some dogs run very eagerly upon the foot, and being willing to discover what game they were after, we lay upon our oars some time to view them, and at last saw them take a hill, where, looking a little farther, we observed upon the ridge of it an herd of goats, which seemed drawn up for their reception. There was a very narrow path skirted on each side by precipices, in which the leader of the herd posted himself fronting the enemy, the rest of the goats being ranged behind him where the ground was more open; as this spot was inaccessible by any other path, excepting where this champion had placed himself, the dogs, though they ran up hill with great alacrity, yet when they came within about twenty yards, found they durst not encounter this formidable Goliath, for he would infallibly have driven the first that approached him down the precipice; they therefore quietly laid themselves down, panting, and did not offer to stir while we remained in sight.

These dogs have multiplied prodigiously, and have destroyed most of the cats as well as goats; the rats, however, keep possession, and were very troublesome guests in the night, when they generally paid us their visits. It is not easy to determine in what manner such a multitude of dogs subsist, as they are much more numerous than all the other four-footed creatures upon the island. Our people, indeed, were inclined to think, that they lived in a great measure upon the young leahons and seals, and supported their opinion by the report of the sailors, some of whom killed the dogs for food, who said they tasted fishy; and, truly, there is hardly any other way of accounting for the subsistence of these animals; for, as has been said, they have already destroyed all the goats in the accessible parts of

the country; so that there now remain only a few among the crags and precipices, where the dogs cannot follow them. These are divided into separate herds of 20 or 30 each, which inhabit distinct fastnesses, and never mingle with each other; by this means we found it extremely difficult to kill them, and yet we were so desirous of their flesh, that we discovered, I believe, all their herds, and it was thought, by comparing their numbers, that they scarcely exceeded 200 upon the whole island. The dogs had destroyed the pardellas, too, of which former writers have given a large account, so that there was not one of them to be seen; we found indeed their burrows in the earth, which leaves no room to doubt of their being found in plenty in Selkirk's time, as well as cats, of which there is now scarce one alive.

Flesh meat being thus extremely scarce, our people, being tired of fish, though excellent in their kind, at length condescended to eat seals, which, by degrees, they came to relish, and called them lamb. Of these, it being their brooding time, the numbers were incredible;—and likewise of the sea-lion,—these animals have frequently furious battles among themselves, principally about their females; and we were one day surprized by the sight of two animals, which, at first, seemed different from all we had ever observed; but, on a nearer approach, they proved to be two sea-lions that had been going one another with their tusks, and were covered with blood, with which they plentifully abound. This led us to watch them more closely, and one was observed larger than the rest, and from his driving off other males, and keeping a great number of females to himself, he was by the seamen humourously stiled the *Bastaw*. To this pre-eminence, however, he had not arrived without many bloody contests; for on our people's attacking him in the midst of his seraglio of females, he made a desperate defence, and, when overpowered, the signals of his bravery appeared in numerous scars on every part of his body.

We had now been ten days on this island, when some of our people from an eminence discerned a ship to leeward with her courses even with the horizon, without any other sail aboard than her main-top-sail; from which circumstance, it was immediately concluded, that it was one of our own Squadron; but the weather being hazy, no definite conjecture could be formed concerning her. She again disappeared for some days, and we were all thrown into the deepest concern, fearing the weakness of her condition had disabled her from working to windward, and that all her people had perished.

We continued our employ till the 26th, when we again saw the same ship; and, on her nearer approach, could distinguish her to be the *Gloucester*; and, making no doubt of her being in distress, the Commodore sent our boat on board her with water and refreshments. We found her in a miserable condition, not many above 100 people alive, and almost all those helpless with the scurvy; their water so very short, that they were obliged to allow but one pint a day to a man; and the continual flaws off the land, together with their being disabled in their sails and yards, hindered them from getting into the bay. The next day we sent them a fresh supply of fish, greens, water, and men to help to work the ship; soon after which the flaws drove them off again, and the ship appeared no more till the 30th, when at two in the afternoon she fired a gun, and made a signal of distress. She continued in this manner off and on, sometimes in sight, and sometimes not, till July 23, during which time, though we often relieved the people on board with water and other necessaries, yet their sufferings were insupportable, and their whole complement were reduced to about 96 living persons, all of whom must have perished in a few days more, had not the wind proved favourable to bring them into the bay; but providentially a fresh gale sprung up from the sea, and brought them to an anchor. We immediately sent men on board to assist in mooring the ship, and continued our constant assistance onwards, during our

our stay at this place. The 5th of August, the Commodore sent the Trial sloop to search the island of Little Juan Fernandez, lest any of the Squadron should have mistaken that island for the place of rendezvous, and might remain there in expectation of meeting the rest of the fleet.

On the 16th, the Anne pink, which was separated from us with the rest of the Squadron the 23d of April, appeared in sight. Her arrival gave us new spirits, she being laden principally with provisions, and we immediately were ordered full allowance of bread. This ship had been about two months in a safe harbour, on the main land, near the same parallel with del Socorro, where she had been directed by Providence, and where she lay in security, enjoyed plenty, and her people, 16 in number, being once freed from their fears of shipwreck, very soon recovered their wonted vigour, having experienced none of those hardships that were endured by the rest of the fleet. They told us they had seen some Indians, and one time took one of their canoes with a man, a woman, some children, a dog, a cat, &c. and some implements for fishery; but in a day or two the whole family, the dog excepted, made their escape from them in the ship's small boat, and left them their canoe in her stead. Those Indians, they say, understood a few Spanish words, and probably might have some little correspondence with the southern Spaniards of Chili, or their nearer bordering Indians; or, perhaps, some of the Fathers for propagating the faith may now and then have been among them. The principal refreshments they met with in this port, were wild celery, nettletops, and sorrel; cockles and muscles of an extraordinary size; good store of geese, sheep, and penguins. They judged it to lie in lat. 45 deg. 30 min. S. and it may be known by an island which faces it, and which the inhabitants call Inchin, and by a river in which they found excellent fish.

This vessel, the Anne pink, was the last that joined us at Juan Fernandez. The remaining ships of the Squadron were the Severn, the Pearl, and the Wager store-ship. The Severn and Pearl, as has been already observed, parted company off Cape Noir, and, as we afterwards learned, put back to the Brazils; so that of all the ships that came into the South Seas, the Wager was the only ship that was missing. Captain Cheap, who commanded her, knowing the importance of the charge he had in trust, without which no enterprize on shore could be undertaken, was extremely solicitous to reach Baldivia as the last place of rendezvous, and the first to be attacked, before the rest of the Squadron should have finished their cruise, that no blame might rest upon him, if the attack of that city should be judged improper to be carried into execution. But, whilst this brave officer was exerting himself in endeavouring to keep clear of the land in making the island of del Socorro, he had the misfortune to dislocate his shoulder, and thereby to disable himself from prosecuting with vigour the purpose he had in view. The ship being little better than a wreck, the crew in a miserable depending condition, the officers quite exhausted, the weather cold and stormy, and the wind and currents beating in-shore, all these unlucky circumstances occurring, so entangled the ship with the land, that all the efforts of the feeble crew could not prevent her from running upon a sunken rock, where she grounded between two small islands, not a musket-shot from the shore. In this situation she continued entire till every one on board might have reached the land in safety, and might have stored themselves with provisions, and every necessary for their present subsistence and future escape; but the moment the ship struck, all subordination ceased; one part of the crew got possession of the liquors, intoxicated themselves in a heady manner, and grew frantic in their cups; another part began to furnish themselves with arms, and to make themselves masters of the money and things of small value on board; while the Captain, and some of the principal officers, endeavoured in vain to maintain

No. 42.

their authority, and to preserve a proper discipline among them, in order to effect the deliverance of as many as it was possible from the common danger in which all of them were involved; but the mutinous disposition that prevailed rendered every effort for their preservation ineffectual. Those who remained in possession of the ship and her stores, pointed the cannon, and fired at those who had gained the land; those at land grew riotous for want of provisions; nothing but anarchy and confusion prevailed; and, what added to the catastrophe, a midshipman named Cozens, who had buffed himself in opposition to all good government, was, by the Captain, shot dead upon the spot. This put an end at once to all manner of subfervency; and after this every one thought himself at liberty to pursue what scheme he thought best for his own preservation.

Of about 130 persons who reached the shore, 30 died on the place; about 80 others, having converted the long-boat into a schooner, sailed to the southward, attended by the cutter. These, being distressed for want of provisions in redoubling Cape Horn, and having lost their cutter in a storm, suffered unprecedented hardships in their return to the coast of Brazil, where only 30 of them arrived to give an account of the miserable fate of their companions, several of whom died of hunger; others desired to be set on shore; and some, beginning to be mutinous, they landed and deserted. Of the 19 who were left behind in Wager Island with the Captain, 16 embarked on board the barge and the yawl, and attempted to escape to the northward; of these one was drowned in the yawl, and four were left on a desert part of the coast, where it is probable they all perished; the remaining 11, after a fruitless attempt to weather a point of land, called by the Spaniards Cape Tresfuentes, were forced to return to Wager Island, from whence they first set out, where meeting with a Chiloen Indian, who could speak a little Spanish, they agreed with him to pilot them to Chiloe; but, after coasting along for four days, the Captain and his officers being on shore, five in number, the other six persuaded the Indian to put to sea without them, by which the rest were reduced to the sad necessity of travelling near 600 miles, sometimes by land, and sometimes by water, till at length, after a variety of misfortunes and hardships not to be paralleled in romance, four of them, namely Captain Cheap, the Hon. Mr. Byron, who lately went round the world, Mr. Hamilton, and Mr. Campbell, arrived at Chiloe, where they were received by the Spaniards with great humanity. After some stay at Chiloe, the Captain and his three officers were sent to Valparaiso, and thence to St. Jago, the capital of Chili, where they continued above a year; but on advice of a cartel, the Captain, Mr. Byron, and Mr. Hamilton, were permitted to return to Europe; and Mr. Campbell, who in the mean time had changed his religion, chose to embark for Spain; but not meeting there with the encouragement he expected, he soon after returned to England, where he published an account of his adventures, but mentioned not a word of changing his religion, neither does he assign his reason for leaving Spain.

It is very remarkable, that the place where the Wager struck upon the rock, was so near the harbour where the Anne pink found shelter during the winter, that the Wager's people were within hearing of the pink's evening and morning gun, yet never had the thought to follow the sound, or to look out for any straggler from their own Squadron.

On the 22d, the Trial arrived from searching the island of Little Fernandez, and reported that it lies about 20 leagues due west from this where we lay; that it is about three leagues in compass, being very mountainous, with some woods and good runs of water, with multitudes of goats, fish, sea-lions, and seals, as with us; but no ships were to be seen, nor any marks of any having been there.

While we continued at Juan Fernandez, besides our necessary employments, we likewise began, and pretty

lar advanced, a wharf for the better landing and embarking such necessaries as we had occasion for. We kept two ovens, employed in baking bread for the ships companies; two smiths' forges for repairing old and fitting new iron-work, and made abundance of charcoal for future use. The Commodore likewise ordered the carpenters to take a careful survey of the Anne pink, the master of which set forth, that she was in so rotten a condition, as not to be fit to proceed nor return without very considerable repairs; which representation upon a survey being found to be true, the Commodore purchased her materials at a fair valuation, and ordered her to be broke up, and her crew to be put on board the Gloucester, that ship not having hands enough left to navigate her, much less to fight her, in case of an attack from the enemy.

This island lies in latitude 33 deg. 40 min. S. and longitude 87 deg. 37 min. W. from London; distance from the main continent 105 leagues; compass, by the best accounts of those who had been round it, 12 or 13 leagues. There are two small and very commodious bays within the points, which form the large one where we lay, one to the eastward, the other to the westward of us; and no doubt several others in other parts of the island; variation, by an observation July 2, in the morning, 8 deg. 4 min. half E. 'Twas reported, that the S. W. end of the island is much more flat and level than that where we resided, and the goats more numerous; but wood scarcer.

On Tuesday, Sept. the 8th, at noon we saw a sail at sea bearing N. E. by E. and, perceiving by our glasses that the could be none of our Squadron, nor an English built ship, we fired a gun as a signal for getting all our people on board; and, having taken several men out of the Trial, bent our sails, set up our rigging, and slipt our small bower cable, at six in the evening, we weighed in pursuit of her. In the morning of the next day we got down our flumps, which are generally set up in bad weather instead of top-gallant masts, and in their place got up our top-gallant masts and yards, rigged them, and bent their sails. At eleven the same morning we mustered and quartered the ship's company. At noon the island of Juan Fernandez bore W. half S. distance eight leagues; the two next days we saw nothing of the chase, nor any thing remarkable.

Saturday, Sept. 12, at five in the morning we saw a sail to windward, which bore down towards us, and at about two leagues distance she hauled up the lee clue-garnet of her foresail, shewed her Spanish colours, and fired a gun, which we supposed to be a signal concerted between her and others which came out in company with her; but we not answering nor regarding it, she hauled close on a wind and stood from us, endeavouring to escape; upon which we gave chase, and it proving sometimes hazy and foggy, we were in danger of losing sight of her. About nine in the morning we tacked, and at noon coming within gun-shot, we fired five shot at her rigging to bring her to; but the keeping on her course, we fired four more, on which she struck her colours, and surrendered without making any opposition. This ship happened not to be the same we went out after. She proved a rich merchant-ship, having on board 18,000. sterling in dollars and plate, with some jewels, and abundance of gold and silver twist; but the bulk of her cargo consisted in sugars and bale goods, most of the latter European, but some the produce of the country. She was called the Nuestra Señora del Monte Carmelo. She was of about 500 tons, was commanded by Don Manuel Zamorra, and had on board 13 passengers, most of them persons of fortune, amongst whom was the son of the Governor of the city of St. Jago, the capital of Chili: She came from Callao, a port of Lima, the capital of the empire of Peru, bound for Valparaiso in Chili, where those ships annually trade, exchanging silver in return for gold and corn, the latter being very scarce in Peru. Some of the prisoners informed us, that, if we had taken her in her return from Chili to Peru, we should have met with

as much gold in her as we had now found silver. She had in the whole a-board her 67 persons, many of them Indians and black slaves, who were afterwards very useful to us in assisting towards the ship's duty. She had been 27 days from Callao, and wanted not above two days fail to complete her voyage when we took her.

We found in this ship, on search among the letters from some merchants in Lima to their friends in Chili, an account of the fate of the Spanish Squadron which had been sent after us, viz. that, in attempting to pass the Cape, they had been forced to put back, after encountering the most terrible storms and most pressing famine, being reduced to two ounces of bread and half a pint of water each man a day; that, besides being grievously attacked by the scurvy, which had made greater havoc among them than among us, their ships were almost entirely disabled, their masts, sails, yards, rigging and hulls in a manner shattered and torn to pieces; that Admiral Pizarro, and one more of his Squadron, after having suffered the greatest extremities, had got, with the utmost difficulty, to Buenos Ayres, on the River Plate; that another of the Squadron, a ship of 70 guns, had been entirely lost near Rio Grande, and that two more had never been heard of; that on their return they had seen two large ships pass by very near them, which they supposed to be two ships of our Squadron, but the weather proving stormy, and the sea running mountains high; they could not interfere with or attack each other. Those ships of ours we believed to be the Severn and the Pearl, and hoped they were safely arrived at some port of the Brazils. Those letters came over land from Buenos Ayres to Lima, and with them came others containing Admiral Pizarro's advice and instructions to the Viceroy of Peru concerning us; wherein he told him, that, though he himself had been forced back in such a miserable condition, not having above 80 or 100 of his men living, and his ships in so ill a state that, till sufficient reinforcements could come to him from Old Spain, he could not possibly come into those seas, yet as the English were a stubborn and resolute people, and daring enough to persist obstinately in the most desperate undertakings, he did believe some of us might possibly get round; but as he experimentally knew what of necessity we must have suffered in that dreadful passage, he made no doubt but we should be in a very weak and defenceless condition; he therefore advised the Viceroy to fit out all the strength of shipping he could, and send them to cruise about the island of Juan Fernandez, where we must of necessity touch to refresh our people, and to repair our ships; and farther advised, that, in case of meeting us, they should not stand to fight or cannonade at a distance, in which possibly we might have the advantage, or make out escape, but should board us at once sword in hand; which must, if well executed, in our weak condition, infallibly prove the means of taking us.

This was a well-laid scheme, and in pursuance of it the Viceroy equipt three ships at Callao, one of 50, one of 30, and one of 20 guns, all double manned with the choicest men they could possibly procure, and sent them to wait for us accordingly. Those ships arrived at Juan Fernandez some time, I think, in May, and continued till about June the 6th, when, imagining that we must be either put back of lost, they quitted their station, and sailed for the port of Concepcion in Chili; and by this means we luckily missed them; had it happened otherwise, as we arrived there with only our single ship, in such a defenceless condition, and had they put their orders in execution with any tolerable degree of resolution, we must in all human probability have fallen into their hands.

Our prisoners informed us further, that those ships, during their cruise, had met with a storm, in which they had received so much damage, that it must be at least two months before they could again be fit to go to sea. The whole of this intelligence was as favourable as we could have wished; and now we were at no loss to account for the fresh marks we found at Juan Fernandez,

of that ill
people.
Sunday
prisoners
Juan Fern
derate, at
by N. at
next mor
ships in
small bow
place, and
The 15
our rigging
day, the
merchant
fear of an
crisis, an
The 17
wanting
the Glouc
19th, we
with the
The 19
Gloucest
soners be
prize with
allowance
the Anne
with Cap
pink, tog
him his
place wh
nerally to
perfed th
to fail to
and took
with the
to cruise
The 21
fight of t
at the d
until the
in which
received
The 2
hazy, we
ship, in c
two ships
so near,
el in En
by the T
which w
morning
Trial fir
away be
day half
found th
top-mast
us standi
gale at
spring h
left. T
intellige
ships at
hensions
tellige
destroye
we were
fueled
The ref
officers
there co
could b
being r
upon th
to Capt
the Tri
prize fi
mander

of that island's having been lately visited by some white people.

Sunday the 13th, having got on board most of the prisoners of note, and all the silver, we made sail for Juan Fernandez; and the weather proving very moderate, at six in the evening that island bore N. W. by N. at the distance of five leagues: At three the next morning we fired three guns, as a signal to the ships in the bay. At four we anchored, got in our small bower cable, which we had slipped at leaving the place, and moored our ship.

The 15th we employed in watering, and setting up our rigging, in order to pursue our voyage. And this day, the Commodore being informed that several merchant-ships were now pursuing their trade without fear of any surprize, the Trial was ordered out on a cruise, and proceeded immediately.

The 16th we got up a new top-gallant-mast, and wanting some cordage we were supplied with it from the Gloucester. This and the following days, until the 19th, we spent in getting every thing ready for sea with the utmost expedition.

The 19th we sent 28 of our prisoners on board the Gloucester, she being weakly manned, and those prisoners being good sailors. We likewise supplied the prize with two months provisions of all sorts, a full allowance for 20 men; put all the guns belonging to the Anne pink on board of her; and, having left orders with Captain Mitchell, of the Gloucester, to burn the pink, together with her useless stores, and appointed him his station off the town of Payta, which is the place where the ships between Lima and Panama generally touch to deliver part of their cargoes to be dispersed through the inland parts of Peru, with orders to sail to that station as soon as possible, we weighed, and took leave of our winter residence, in company with the prize, which the Commodore had fitted up to cruise against the enemy.

The 21st, at four in the evening, we had the last sight of this island, it then bearing from us W. by N. at the distance of 17 leagues. The remaining days, until the 24th, we had variable and uncertain weather, in which we split our main-top-sail and fore-sail, and received some other slight damage.

The 24th, at five in the evening, being somewhat hazy, we saw two sail to windward, on which we cleared ship, in order to be ready to engage, the largest of the two ships bearing down upon us. At seven the came so near, that we hailed her in Spanish, and the answered in English, and told us, that she was a prize taken by the Trial, and that her consort was the Trial itself, which was very much disabled. At eleven the next morning, there being a hard gale and high sea, the Trial fired two guns as a signal of distress, and bore away before the wind, and we after her. The same day half an hour past noon we spoke with the Trial, and found she had sprung her main-mast, and that her main-top-mast had come by the board; and as we were all of us standing to the callward next morning, with a fresh gale at south, she had the additional misfortune of spring her fore-mast; so that now she had not a mast left. This was a great obstruction; for now we had intelligence by the Trial's prize, that there were many ships at sea richly laden, and that they had no apprehensions of being attacked by us, having received intelligence that our squadron was either put back or destroyed. In the course, therefore, of the 48 hours we were detained in waiting upon the Trial, I am persuaded we missed the taking many valuable prizes. The result was, that a council being called, and all the officers convened together on board our ship, it was there concluded, that in her present condition the Trial could be of no farther service; and the Commodore, being resolved to separate the ships, in order to cruise upon the coast to the greatest advantage, gave orders to Captain Charles Saunders, the Commander, to burn the Trial, and in her room commissioned the Trial's prize for his Majesty's service, with the same Commodore, officers, and people. This ship, the Trial's

prize, was called by the Spaniards the Nuestra Señora de Arinzazie; but, being now commissioned for his Majesty's service, she was henceforth called the Trial's Prize. She was the largest ship we took in those seas, being between 5 and 600 tons, and loaded with bale goods, sugar, and other commodities, to a considerable value, and about 5000l. in specie and wrought silver.

The 28th, at nine in the morning, we parted with the Trial and both the prizes.

The 30th, we saw the main land of Chili. This day we began to exercise our people with small arms, which was the first time we had done it since we came into those seas, and which we continued at all proper opportunities during the voyage.

On the 1st of October, we came in sight of the high land of Valparaiso, bearing N. E. half E. at the distance of about 14 leagues. This city lies in the latitude of 32 deg. 58 min. S. its longitude from London is by my account 80 deg. 37 min. W.

On the 5th, the Commodore, being informed that there were murmurings amongst the people, because the prize-money was not immediately divided, ordered the articles of war to be read; and after that renoutrated to them on the danger of mutiny, and said he had heard the reason of their discontent, but assured them their properties were secured by act of parliament as firmly as any one's own inheritance, and that the money, plate, &c. were weighed and marked in public; so that any capable person, if he pleased, might take an inventory of the whole. He then read an account of the particulars, and told them they might (if they pleased) make choice of any person to take an inventory for them; or buy their parts. This spread a visible joy, and gave content to every one. We continued cruising off the coast of Valparaiso till the 8th, when at twelve at night we broke the main-top-sail-yard in the slings, or, which we unbent the top-sail and got down the broken yard. At ten in the morning we saw the high land of Choapa, and over it the Cordillera mountains, being part of that long ridge of mountains called the Andes, which run from one end of South America to the other, appearing excessively high, with their tops covered with snow.

The 14th, we crossed the south Tropic to the northward, and from this time, till we were some degrees to the northward of the Equator, met with nothing but fair weather and a smooth sea.

The 21st, at noon, the high land of Morro Quemado bore E. by N. at the distance of four leagues; and here we continued cruising off and on till Nov. 2, when, about six in the morning, we saw two sail of ships standing towards us; upon which we made a clear ship, and immediately gave them chase, when we soon perceived that they were the Trial and Centurion prizes. As we had the wind of them, we brought to, and waited their coming up, when Captain Saunders came on board, and acquainted the Commodore that he had cleared the Trial pursuant to his orders, and having scuttled her, he remained by her till she sunk; but that it was not till the 4th of October before this was effected, by reason of the great swell and hollow sea; that, during his attendance on the sloop, they were all driven so far to leeward, that they were afterwards obliged to stretch a long way to the westward, to regain the ground they had lost; that in their cruise they had met no prize, nor had seen any vessel on all the coast.

November the 3rd, at five in the evening, the island of Asia, in latitude 13 deg. 5 min. S. longitude 84 deg. 43 min. W. bore from us N. E. by E. distance five leagues.

The 5th, at four in the evening, we saw the high land of Barranca, bearing N. E. by E. distant eight or nine leagues; and half an hour after we saw a sail to the northward, to whom we gave chase, and cleared our ship for engaging. At ten in the evening we came up with her, fired eight guns, and took her. She came from Guaiquil, and was bound for Callao, with

timber, cocoa, cordage, tobacco, cocoa-nuts, and a small trunk with bale goods; all of little value to us, though a very considerable loss to the Spaniards. She was called the Santa Terefa, commanded by Don Bartolomeo Urrunaga, with between 30 and 40 people on board, passengers included, and five or six women, besides children. Our third lieutenant, two other officers, and a party of sailors, were sent on board to command and take care of her; and our other prizes being far a-fern, occasioned by our chasing this ship, we lay by till four the next morning, and fired a gun every hour as a signal for their joining us. This day I find, by the difference of our dead reckoning and observations, a current to set along this coast to the northward of near a mile an hour.

The 7th, we were employed in getting aboard several necessary stores, as planks, cordage, and the like, from our last prize, for the use of the Squadron. The sea here appeared for several miles of a blood-red colour, which the prisoners informed us was common in those parts. This day we found aboard the prize, in specie and plate, 50 pounds averduois weight.

The 9th, we brought from on board the Terefa 20 serons of cocoa, one of wax, and 180 fathom of three and a half rope.

The 10th, we brought from on board our first prize the Carmelo, the following goods, viz. cloth two bales, bays five ditto, sugar 182 loaves, straw mats two, tar one skin, raisins three bales, indigo four serons, cotton cloth one bale, hats two cases, and 25 loofe ones, skins one parcel, chocolate one bag, camlet one bale and two parcels, silks one box, lead four pigs, and combs one small parcel.

The 12th, at five in the morning, we saw a sail, to which we gave chase; but there being very little wind, we manned and armed our barge, pinnace, and the Trial's pinnace, and sent them to take her, and at eight they boarded and took her, and brought her to us at half an hour past ten. She was called the Carman, commanded by Signior Marcus Marina, and came out of Payta the day before, bound to Callao, laden with iron and cloth, being a very valuable cargo. We found on board an Irishman, named John Williams, who pretended himself a prisoner amongst them, and with much seeming joy entered with us. He informed us, that, amongst other ships in the port of Payta, they left in the road a bark which was taking in 400,000 dollars, with which she would sail for Panama in a day or two at farthest; and the Spanish prisoners being examined, and confirming the intelligence, and farther giving some account of the strength of the place, the Commodore resolved to attack it this very night, and made preparations accordingly. Mr. Thomas Simmers, mate of our ship, with one midshipman and about 10 or 11 men, were sent to command and take care of this last prize. At four in the afternoon, Point Nonura bore E. by S. half S. distant eight leagues. At ten at night, we sent our barge, pinnace, and Trial's pinnace, to attack the town of Payta by surprize. They had 49 men well armed, and were commanded by the lieutenants Brett, Dennis, and Hughes, who had orders, if possible, to secure the governor of Payta, and send him prisoner on board in order by that means to procure a supply of provisions, and a ransom for the town. Half an hour after eleven we founded, and found 43 fathom water, the ground mud, the island of Lobos bearing N. N. E. at the distance of three or four miles. At seven in the morning, Point Onado, being the point that forms the bay of Payta, bore S. S. E. two miles distant; and the town of Payta at the same time began to open in a direct line with it, distant about four miles; soon after which we saw our British colours flying on the castle. At ten the Trial's boat came on board, loaded with gold and silver, corn, wrought plate, jewels, and rich moveables. They informed us, that they took the town about two in the morning; and that, though the Spaniards had some time before been apprized of

our intent, they yet made a very faint resistance, having fired but two guns from their castle before our men landed, and a few small arms afterwards, when they all quitted the town with the greatest precipitation. The governor and his family made their escape in so much haste, that his lady was handed out of a window with no other clothes to cover her but her shift. All the inhabitants fled in the like confusion, except some negro women and children. In this action we lost one man, Peter Obrian, the Commodore's steward, who was shot through the breast by a musquet-ball; and had two wounded, to wit, Arthur Lusk, a quarter-master, and the Spanish pilot of the Terefa, whom we had made use of as a guide; the first through the fleshy part of the arm near the shoulder, the second through the wrist, but neither dangerously; and I have had it reported from several officers then on shore, that our men ran to the attack, and fired in so irregular a manner, that it was, and still remains a doubt, whether those were not shot by our people rather than by the enemy.

The town of Payta, at the time of the attack, had a fort with eight guns mounted, which commanded the town and harbour; and the balcony of the governor's house, which again commanded that fort, together with several other houses, was lined with armed men, of which there might be about 400 in the town; but these people having enjoyed a long peace, and being enervated by the luxury so customary in those parts, their arms in a bad condition, and no person of experience or courage to head them, it is no wonder that they made so small a resistance, and were all driven out of the town in less than half an hour by only 49 men; but I believe the noise of two drums which we made use of, together with the suddenness of the surprize, contributed to intimidate them, and facilitated our success.

On our getting possession of the castle, our commanding officer very inconsiderately ordered the guns to be thrown over the walls, which accordingly was executed; but some time after reflecting on the ill consequence which might attend that proceeding, he ordered two of them to be got up and re-mounted.

At eleven our barge came on board, loaded with money, plate, and jewels. This town contains about 140 or 150 houses; there are in it two churches, which, together with the governor's house and castle, are the only remarkable buildings. There are several large store-houses full of rich European, Asian, and American goods, all which were destroyed when we set the town on fire; of which in its place. The town lies in latitude 5 deg. 3 min. S. and longitude from London 88 deg. 48 min. W. This afternoon we employed ourselves in getting off the plunder, and provisions of hogs and fowls, which were here in great plenty. In the evening we anchored in 10 fathom water, the town bearing from us S. by E. half E. at about three miles distance, not being able to get farther in, by reason of the flaws of wind from off the land.

From this time to the 15th, we were employed in getting on board the plunder, which chiefly consisted of rich brocades, laced cloaths, bales of fine linens and woollens, Britannia's, slays, and the like; together with a great number of hogs, some sheep and fowls, cases of Spanish brandies and wines, a great quantity of onions, olives, sweet-meats, and many other things too tedious to name, all which the sailors hoped would have been equally divided amongst the ship's companies, but they found themselves disappointed.

We found in the road, one ship, two snows, one schooner, and two quarter-galleys, all which we took possession of. The 14th, in the morning, we saw a bark-log, as they call it, being a sort of raft made of the stumps of trees fastened together, overlaid with poles, and covered with small twigs twilled mat-wile, with several people in her coming along shore from the southward. She had a fort of mast and sail in her, and at first sight we knew not what to make of her; and some of our own boats being on board, we sent

the Carm
who com
ship, and
perceiving
the rock
he found
they we
evening
great nu
ably incr
as if they
kept ver
negroes
prisoners
especially
the coun
quite ba
other th
to them,
might b
journey
a starvin
of severa
during
infatuate
treat for
done, I
which c
not only
enough
which w
them.
The
that and
but wha
leagues
siderable
for their
touch he
in fresh
bread, a
to open
taken ar
all which
tempt t
conveni
proper
Panama
venience
Amo
in our
Jamaica
liberty,
of the S
panied
the ser
fancy t
Peru,
very co
the han
of this
He was
his pat
opport
handy
he was
vice, c
tinued
some i
shore,
and w
never,
The
Spanis
all the
worki
or me
Engla
the

the Carinen's boat, with Mr. Langdon, a midshipman, who commanded in the second place on board that ship, and some armed people, to pursue them, who perceiving it put on shore, and made their escape over the rocks. Mr. Langdon took their bark-log, which he found to be laden with dried fish, which we suppose they were carrying to Payta for a market. This evening the Spaniards, who had all along appeared in great numbers from the hills, and were now considerably increased, making a shew of warlike preparations, as if they designed in the night to attack our people in the town, they thereupon barricaded the streets, and kept very strict watches, to prevent a surprize. Several negroes delivered themselves up, desiring to be made prisoners, that they might have some food, and more especially water, to keep them from perishing; for the country thereabouts being for many miles round quite barren and sandy, without either water or any other thing necessary for life, and the nearest town to them, named as I think Sancta Cruz, whence relief might be got, being a day and a half or two days journey off, the people who had left the town were in a starving condition, and we had melancholy accounts of several dying among them for want chiefly of water during our small stay; and yet so greatly were they infatuated or frightened, that they never offered to treat for the ransom of the place, which if they had done, I believe it would not have been destroyed; in which case, they might have secured to themselves not only their habitations, but provisions and water enough (till they could have got a fresh recruit) which we should on that condition have readily left them.

The town seems to be very unhappily situated on that and some other accounts, they having no water but what is brought them by land carriage from several leagues off; so that they are obliged to keep very considerable quantities by them in earthen jars, not only for their own use, but for the ships who frequently touch here, where they likewise often unload, and take in fresh cargoes. They are in the same case as to grain, bread, and almost all other necessaries of life; and lie so open to an enemy, that the town has been often taken and ruined by the English, Dutch, and French; all which inconveniences, one would imagine, should tempt them to change their situation; but then the conveniency of their trade is so great, being the only proper place they can pitch on for a mart between Panama and Peru, that they prefer this lucrative conveniency to all other considerations.

Among the slaves who had desired to be entertained in our service, was one, who, having been a slave in Jamaica, had on the death of his master obtained his liberty, and thereupon entered himself a servant to one of the South Sea Company's factors, whom he accompanied to Porto Bello and Panama, and there got into the service of a Spanish gentleman, who took a great fancy to him, and with whom he went to Lima in Peru, where this master likewise dying left him a very considerable legacy; but the power being now in the hands of his executors, they not only defrauded him of this legacy, but made him a slave a second time. He was now at Payta with one of his new masters, on his passage from Lima to Panama, when he took this opportunity to come over to us; and being a very handy fellow, and accustomed to wait on gentlemen, he was immediately taken into the Commodore's service, came with us into England, and, I believe, continued with him till his death. This person gave us some information of the designs of the Spaniards on shore, and told us we had killed one or two of them, and wounded several others; but this account was never, that I know of, farther confirmed.

The 15th, in the morning, we set on shore all our Spaniards, and several of our Indian prisoners, keeping all the blacks and some of the Indians, to assist in working the ships, &c. To the blacks, who were all or most of them slaves, was promised their liberty in England, in case they would stand by and assist us

No. 42.

against our enemies the Spaniards; which they all promised very cordially; but we could soon discover, that, notwithstanding their seeming condescension, most of them would have much rather continued in the service of their old masters, than fail to accept of liberty with us; not that I believe those people were in love with slavery, or would not willingly have had their liberty, but then it must be on their own terms, the Spaniards in those parts being in great awe of the Indians, whom, though they have subdued, and seem to have incorporated among them, they dare not trust, but keep these blacks as guards, and use them well. The truth is, those Indians have still preserved, by tradition from father to son, the memory of the great cruelties which the first Spaniards exercised in those parts, and are angry enough at their present hard usage. They look on themselves as the natural lords of the country, and the Spaniards as covetous intruders, and cruel inhuman tyrants; and want only opportunity to make them sensible of their resentment, and to recover their lost country and liberty. 'Tis on this account that the Spaniards are very kind to their black slaves, whom they cherish and encourage highly, and look on them in the same light of a standing militia, always ready to arm against those Indians; so that, though the negroes in all other plantations in the West Indies are ever ready for revolts and rebellions, these on the contrary, are always ready to defend their kind masters with their lives. In effect they live very easy, are favoured by the Spaniards, and scorn and insult the poor Indians, who in return hate and detest both them and their masters; that being all that is left in their power.

This day an order was given to Mr. Brett, the then commanding officer on shore, to burn and destroy the town entirely, the two churches, which stood a little out of the way of the rest, only excepted; the Spaniards, as has been already said, never having made any advance towards treating for its ransom.

But now, before I entirely quit the relation of our transactions at this place, it may, perhaps, be expected, that I should give a more particular account of the booty we made, and of the loss the Spaniards sustained. I have already observed, that there were great quantities of valuable effects in the town; but, as most of them were what we could neither dispose of, nor carry away, the total of this merchandize can only be rudely guessed at. The Spaniards, in their representations sent to the Court of Madrid (as we were afterwards assured), estimated their whole loss at a million and a half of dollars; and when it is considered, that no small part of the goods we left behind us, were of the richest and most expensive species, as broad-cloths, silks, cambrics, velvets, &c. I cannot but think their valuation sufficiently moderate.

As to ourselves, the acquisition we made, though inconsiderable in comparison of what we destroyed, was yet far from despicable; for the wrought plate, dollars, and other coin, which fell into our hands, amounted to upwards of 30,000l. besides several rings, bracelets, and jewels, whose intrinsic value we could not then estimate: and over and above all this, the plunder, which became the property of the immediate captors, was very great; so that, upon the whole, it was by much the most important booty we met with upon that coast.

There remains still another matter to be related, which on account of the signal honour which our national character in those parts has thence received, and the reputation which our Commodore in particular has thereby acquired, merits a distinct and circumstantial discussion. I have already observed, that all the prisoners taken by us, were, before our departure, put on shore, and discharged, amongst whom there were some persons of considerable distinction, especially a youth of about 17 years of age, son of the Vice-president of the Council of Chili. As the barbarity of the buccaniers, and the artful uses the ecclesiastics had made of it, had filled the natives of those countries

4 T

with

with the most terrible ideas of English cruelty, we always found our prisoners, at their first coming on board us, to be extremely dejected, and under great horror and anxiety; particularly this youth, who, having never been from home before, lamented his captivity in the most moving manner, regretting, in very plaintive terms, his parents, his brothers, his sisters, and his native country; of all which, he was fully persuaded, he had taken his last farewell, believing that he was now devoted to the remaining part of his life to an abject and cruel servitude. Indeed, his companions on board, and all the Spaniards that came into our power, had the same desponding opinion of their situation. Mr. Anson constantly exerted his utmost endeavours to efface those terrifying impressions they had received of us, always taking care, that as many of the principal people among them as there was room for, should dine at his table by turns; and giving the most peremptory orders, too, that they should always be treated with the utmost decency and humanity: but, notwithstanding this precaution, it was generally observed, that for the first day or two they did not quit their fears, suspecting the gentleness of their usage to be only preparatory to some unthought-of calamity. However, being at length convinced of our sincerity, they grew perfectly easy in their situation, and remarkably cheerful; so that it was often disputable, whether or no they considered their being detained by us as a misfortune: for the youth I have above mentioned, who was near two months on board us, had at last so far conquered his melancholy fumes, and had taken such an affection to Mr. Anson, that it is doubtful to me, whether, if his own opinion had been asked, he would not have preferred a voyage to England in the Centurion, to the being set on shore at Payta, where he was at liberty to return to his country and friends.

This conduct of the Commodore to his prisoners, which was continued without interruption or deviation, gave them all the highest idea of his humanity and benevolence, and occasioned them, likewise, (as mankind are fond of forming general opinions) to entertain very favourable thoughts of the whole English nation. But whatever they might be disposed to think of Mr. Anson before the capture of the Teresa, their veneration for him was prodigiously increased by his conduct towards the ladies whom he took in that vessel; for, being informed that there were among them a mother and two daughters of exquisite beauty, who were of quality, he not only gave orders that they should be left in full possession of their own apartments, but also forbid, on the severest penalties, any of the common people on board from approaching them; and, that they might be the more certain of having these orders complied with, or of having the means of complaining if they were not, he permitted the pilot, who in Spanish ships is generally the second person on board, to stay with them as a guardian and protector. These were measures that seemed so different from what might have been expected from an enemy and an heretic, that the Spaniards on board, though they had themselves experienced his beneficence, were surprized at this new instance of it; and the more so, as all this was done without solicitation, and without the interposition of one friend to intercede in their favour. The ladies were so sensible of the obligations they owed him for the care and attention with which he protected them, that they absolutely refused to go on shore at Payta, till they had been permitted to wait on him on board the Centurion to return him thanks in person. Indeed, all the prisoners left us with the strongest assurances of their grateful remembrance of his uncommon treatment: a Jesuit, in particular, whom the Commodore had taken, and who was an ecclesiastic of some distinction, could not help expressing himself with great thankfulness for the civilities he and his countrymen had found on board, declaring that he should consider it as his duty to do Mr. Anson justice at all times, adding that his usage of the men prisoners was

such as could never be forgotten, and such as he should never fail to acknowledge upon all occasions; but that his behaviour to the ladies was so extraordinary, and so extremely honourable, that he doubted if all the regard due to his own ecclesiastical character would be sufficient to render it credible. Indeed, we were afterwards informed, that he and the rest of our prisoners had not been silent on this head; but that, both at Lima and at other places, they had given the greatest encomiums to our Commodore; that the Jesuit, in particular, as we were told, on his account, interpreted in a lax and hypothetical sense, that article of his church which asserts the impossibility of heretics being saved. But to return:

After we had finished our business, set the town in flames, and got the treasure on board, Mr. Brett, the officer who commanded the attack, having collected his men together, was directing his march towards the beach where the boats waited to take them on board, when the Spaniards on the hill behind the town, observing his retreat, resolved to try if they could not precipitate his departure, and thereby lay some foundation for future boasting. To this end a party of horse, all picked men singled out for this daring enterprise, marched down the hill with much seeming resolution; so that, had we not entertained a just opinion of their prowess, we might have imagined, that, now we were upon the open beach, with no advantages of situation, they would certainly have charged us: but we presumed, and we were not mistaken, that all this was mere ostentation; for, notwithstanding the pomp and parade they at first came on with, Mr. Brett had no sooner ordered his men to halt and face about, than the enemy stopt their career, and never dared to advance a step farther.

When our people arrived at their boats and were ready to go on board, they were for some time retarded by mulling one of their number; and being unable, on their mutual enquiries among each other, to inform themselves where he was left, or by what accident detained, they, after a considerable delay, resolved to get into their boats and to depart without him: but when the last man was actually embarked, and the boats were just putting off, they heard him calling to them to take him in. This place was by this time so thoroughly on fire, and the smoke covered the beach so effectually, that they could scarcely discern him, though they heard his voice. However, the Lieutenant instantly ordered one of the boats to his relief, who found him up to the chin in water, for he had waded as far as he durst, being extremely frightened with the apprehensions of falling into the hands of an enemy, enraged, as they doubtless were, at the pillage and destruction of their town. On enquiring into the cause of his flying behind, it was found that he had taken that morning too large a dose of brandy, which had thrown him into so sound a sleep, that he did not awake till the fire came near enough to scorch him. He was strangely amazed, at first opening his eyes, to see the houles on a blaze on one side, and several Spaniards and Indians not far from him on the other. The greatness and suddenness of his fright instantly reduced him into a state of sobriety, and gave him sufficient presence of mind to push through the thickest of the smoke, as the likeliest means to escape the enemy; and, making the best of his way to the beach, he ran as far into the water as he durst (for he could not swim) before he ventured to look back.

By the time our people had helped their comrade out of the water, and were making the best of their way to the squadron, the flames had taken possession of every part of the town, and burnt so furiously, both by means of the combustibles that had been distributed for that purpose, and by the slightness of the materials of which the houles were composed, and their aptitude to take fire, that it was sufficiently apparent no efforts of the enemy (though they flocked down in great numbers) could possibly put a stop to it, or prevent the entire destruction of the place, and all the mer-

chandize

chandise contained therein. Mr. Brett had the curiosity to delineate its appearance, together with that of the ships in the harbour.

Our detachment having now safely joined the squadron, the Commodore prepared to leave the place the same evening. At seven, Cape Blanco, in latitude 4 deg. 28 min. S. and longitude 88 deg. 16 min. W. from London, bore from us S. S. E. half E. about seven or eight miles distant. This afternoon and the next day we were employed in taking the most useful and valuable things out of the Santa Teresa and the Payta bark: we likewise designing to take every necessary thing which we conveniently could out of the Santa Teresa, in order to destroy her, and bring our strength into a less compass, we took her in tow, and set the Payta bark on fire with the same view. The next day we destroyed the Santa Teresa in the same manner, having got out of them both some anchors, cables, hawsers, yards, and top-masts, blocks, bales of goods, and several other necessaries.

The 17th, at three in the afternoon, the Gloucester, with a prize of hers in tow, joined us. This prize was called the Del Oro, and was chiefly laden with wine; however, out of her and a small boat which they took gone along shore, they got, in gold, silver, and wrought plate, to about the value of 17 or 18,000l. These two were all the prizes the Gloucester took in those seas.

On board this prize of the Gloucester were two horses, which being, I suppose, fat, and probably better food than their salt beef or pork, they killed and eat them; and this, I imagine, gave ground to that fiction which one of the spurious accounts of our voyage has given, of our eagerly hunting and eating wild horses, whereas in reality we never saw nor heard of a wild horse during our voyage.

The Gloucester had chased two or three ships which had escaped her, and one of those touched at Payta; and though they could give no certain account that the ship which had chased them was an enemy, yet the circumstances they gave were so strong, that it put the people of Payta upon securing their treasure, and the belt of their effects, not caring to be too well provided for the profit of such unwelcome visitants.

The 21st, at half past five in the morning, we saw the island of Plata, so called from Sir Francis Drake's having, as it is said, divided the treasure he took in the South Seas at this place. At two this afternoon the port of Manta bore S. E. by E. distant about eight or nine leagues. We at this time sent six months provisions on board the Carmen; and all the ships had orders, in case of separation, for several rendezvous on the coast of Mexico, or, in case of not meeting there, to make the best of their way to Macao, in China, where they were to wait the arrival of the Commodore.

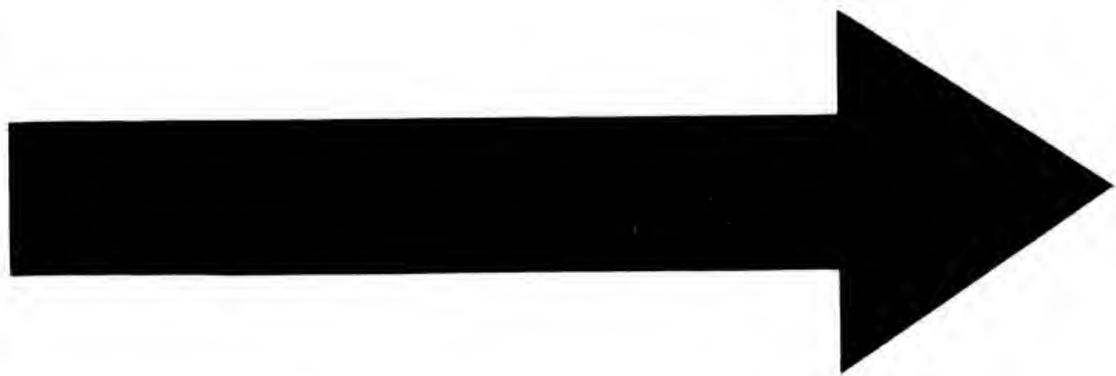
The 22nd, a division was made of the plunder of Payta, and the Commodore not appearing in that affair, it was done at the pleasure, and to the entire satisfaction, of five or six (no doubt) very disinterested officers; and, indeed, most things of this nature, during the course of the voyage being managed with the same discretion and honour, no room was left for complaining of particular partialities.

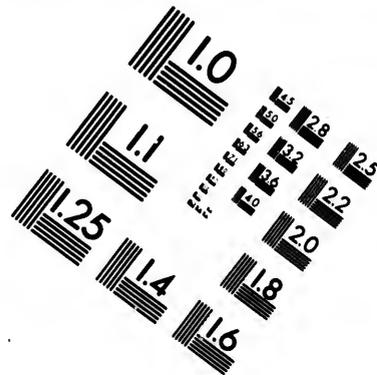
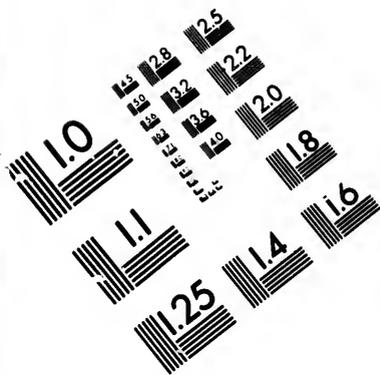
Here, however, we cannot help remarking a very considerable difference between the relation given by Paleoe Thomas, and that given by Mr. Walters: the former having asserted, that the Commodore did not interfere in the distribution; the latter, that it was by his prudent management, that a jealousy, which had arisen between those who were the real captors and those who remained on board the ship, was accommodated. Mr. Walters' account will set this matter in a true light; "And now, says he, (while the ships lay-to, in hopes of joining the Gloucester) a jealousy, which had taken its rise at Payta, between those who had been commanded on shore for the attack, and those who had continued on board, grew to such a height,

that the Commodore, being made acquainted with it, thought it necessary to interpose his authority to oppose it. The ground of this animosity was the plunder gotten at Payta, which those who had acted on shore had appropriated to themselves, considering it as a reward for the risques they had run, and the resolution they had shewn in that service. But those who had remained on board looked on this as a very partial and unjust procedure, urging, that, had it been left to their choice, they should have preferred the acting on shore to the continuing on board; that their duty while their comrades were on shore was extremely fatiguing; for, besides the labour of the day, they were constantly under arms all night, to secure the prisoners, whose numbers exceeded their own, and of whom it was then necessary to be extremely watchful, to prevent any attempts they might have formed in that critical conjuncture: that, upon the whole, it could not be denied, but that the presence of a sufficient force on board was as necessary to the success of the enterprize, as the action of the others on shore; and, therefore, those who had continued on board maintained, that they could not be deprived of their share of the plunder without manifest injustice. These were the contentions amongst our men, which were carried on with great heat on both sides; and, though the plunder in question was a very trifle in comparison of the treasure taken in the place (in which there was no doubt but those on board had an equal right), yet as the obliquity of the sailors is not always regulated by the importance of the matter in dispute, the Commodore thought it necessary to put a stop to this ferment betimes. Accordingly, the morning after our leaving Payta, he ordered all hands upon the quarter-deck, where addressing himself to those who had been detached on shore, he commended their behaviour, and thanked them for their services on that occasion; but then, representing to them the reasons urged by those who had continued on board, for an equal distribution of the plunder, he told them, that he thought these reasons very conclusive, and that the expectations of their comrades were justly founded; and therefore, he insisted, that, not only the men, but all the officers likewise who had been employed in taking the place, should produce the whole of their plunder immediately upon the quarter-deck, and that it should be impartially divided amongst the whole crew, in proportion to each man's rank and commission; and, to prevent those who had been in possession of the plunder from murmuring at this diminution of their share, the Commodore added, that, as an encouragement to others who might be hereafter employed on like services, he would give his entire share to be distributed amongst those who had been detached for the attack of the place. Thus, this troublesome affair, which, if permitted to have gone on, might, perhaps, have been attended with mischievous consequences, was, by the Commodore's prudence, soon appeased, to the general satisfaction of the ship's company: not but there were some few whose selfish dispositions were uninfluenced by the justice of this procedure, and who were incapable of discerning the force of equity, however glaring, when it tended to deprive them of any part of what they had once got into their hands."

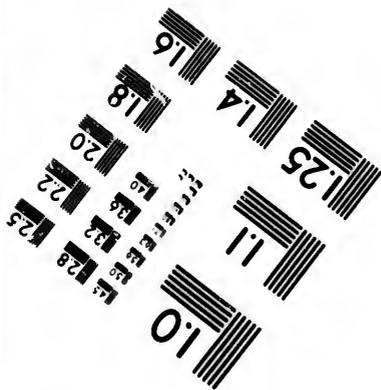
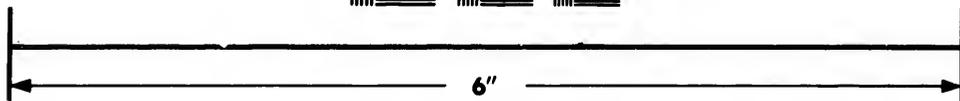
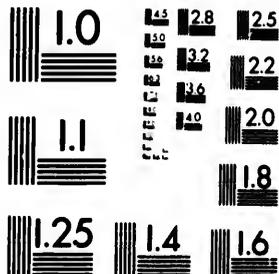
Being now joined by the Gloucester and her prize, it was resolved that we should stand to the northward, and make the best of our way either to Cape St. Lucas on California, or to Cape Corientes on the coast of Mexico. Indeed, the Commodore when at Juan Fernandez, had determined to touch in the neighbourhood of Panama, and to endeavour to get some correspondence over land with the fleet under the command of Admiral Vernon; for when we departed from England, we left a large force at Portsmouth, which was intended to be sent to the West Indies, there to be employed in an expedition against some of the Spanish settlements. And Mr. Anson, taking it for granted that this enterprize had succeeded, and that Porto Bello perhaps

might





**IMAGE EVALUATION
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic
Sciences
Corporation**

27 WEST MAIN STREET
YONKERS, N.Y. 14900
(716) 872-4103

128 125
122 120

01

might be then garrisoned by British troops, he hoped that, on his arrival at the isthmus, he should easily procure an intercourse with our countrymen on the other side, either by the Indians, who were greatly disposed in our favour, or even by the Spaniards themselves, some of whom for proper rewards might be induced to carry on this intelligence; which, after it was once begun, might be continued with very little difficulty; so that Mr. Anson flattered himself, that he might by this means have received a reinforcement of men from the other side, and that, by settling a prudent plan of operations with our Commanders in the West Indies, he might have taken even Panama itself, which would have given to the British nation the possession of that isthmus, whereby we should have been in effect masters of all the treasures of Peru.

Such were the projects which the Commodore resolved in his thoughts, at the island of Juan Fernandez, notwithstanding the feeble condition to which he was then reduced; but in examining the papers which were found on board the Carmelo, the first prize we took, we learned, that our attempts against Carthagena had failed, and that there was no probability that our fleet in that part of the world would engage in any new enterprize that would at all facilitate this plan. Mr. Anson therefore gave over all hopes of being reinforced across the isthmus, and consequently had no inducement at present to proceed to Panama, as he was incapable of attacking the place, and there was great reason to believe that, by this time, there was a general embargo on all the coast.

The only feasible measure, then, which was left us, was to steer as soon as possible to the southern parts of California, or to the adjacent coast of Mexico, there to cruise for the Manilla galleon, which we knew was now at sea, bound to the port of Acapulco; and we doubted not but to get on that station time enough to intercept her: but there was a business which we foresaw would occasion some delay, and that was the recruiting our water, it being impossible to think of venturing upon this passage to the coast of Mexico till we had procured a fresh supply. It was for some time a matter of deliberation, where we should take in this necessary article; but, by consulting the accounts of former navigators, and examining our prisoners, we at last resolved for the island of Quibo, situated at the mouth of the bay of Panama. Nor was it but on good grounds that the Commodore conceived this to be the properest place for watering the squadron. Indeed, there was a small island called Cocos, which was less out of our way than Quibo, where some of the buccaniers had pretended to find water; but none of our prisoners knew any thing of it, and it was thought too dangerous to risque the safety of the squadron, by exposing ourselves to the hazard of not meeting with water when we came there, on the mere authority of those legendary writers, of whose misrepresentations and fallacies we had almost daily experience. Determined, therefore, to take in water at Quibo, we directed our course northward, being eight sail in company, and consequently having the appearance of a very formidable fleet; and on the 19th, at day-break, we discovered Cape Blanco, bearing S. S. E. half E. seven miles distant. By this time we found that our last prize, the *Solidad*, was far from answering the character given of her as a good sailer; and she and the *Santa Teresa* delaying us considerably, the Commodore commanded them to be cleared of every thing that might prove useful to the rest of the ships, and then to be burnt. And having given proper instructions, and appointed a rendezvous to the *Gloucester*, and to the prizes, in case of separation, we proceeded in our course for Quibo.

On the 25th, Point Manta bore S. E. by E. at seven miles distance, and there being a town of the same name in the neighbourhood, Captain Mitchell in the *Gloucester* took the opportunity of setting on shore several of his prisoners. The boats were now daily employed in distributing provisions on board the

prizes, to compleat their stock for six months; and that the *Centurion* might be the better prepared to give the Manilla ship a warm reception, it happily the should fall in our way, the carpenters were ordered to fix eight stocks on the main and fore tops, which were properly fitted for the mounting of swivel guns.

On the 26th, we had sight of the island of Gallo; and from hence we crossed the bay of Panama, shaping our course in a direct line for Quibo. Here we found, in a few days, a very considerable alteration in the climate; for, instead of that uniform temperature where neither the excess of heat or cold was prevalent, we had now close and sultry weather, like that we met with on the coast of Brazil. We had, besides, frequent calms and heavy rains, which we at first ascribed to the neighbourhood of the line, where this kind of weather is observed to obtain at all seasons of the year; but, finding that it attended us for more than seven degrees of north latitude, we began to suspect that the stormy season, or, as the Spaniards call it, the *Vandewals*, was not yet past; though many writers, particularly Captain Shelvock, assert, that this season begins in June, and ends in November: but, perhaps, its end may not be always regular.

On the 27th, Captain Mitchell having cleared his largest prize, she was likewise set on fire; and now our fleet consisted only of five ships, and we were fortunate enough to find them all good sailers. On the 3rd of December we had a view of the island of Quibo, the east end of which bore from us N. N. W. four leagues distant, and the island of Quicara W. N. W. at about the same distance. When we had thus got sight of land, we found the wind to hang westerly; and therefore, night coming on, we thought it advisable to stand off till morning, as there are said to be some shoals at the entrance of the channel. At six the next morning, Point Marrato bore N. E. half N. three or four leagues distant. In weathering this point, all the squadron, except the *Centurion*, were very near it; and the *Gloucester*, being the leeward-most ship, was forced to tack and stand to the southward; so that we lost sight of her; and, the wind proving unfavourable, we saw her no more till we quitted the island. At seven in the evening we anchored in the Canal Bueno, or Good Channel, which is at least six miles in breadth, muddy ground. Next morning an officer was dispatched on shore to discover the watering-place, who, having found it, returned before noon; and then we sent our long-boat for a load of water, and at the same time weighed and stood further in with our ships, for the convenience of being sooner supplied; so that we were little more than two days in laying in all the wood and water we wanted. Whilst the ship continued here at anchor, the Commodore, attended by some of his officers, went in a boat to examine a bay which lay to the northward, and they afterwards ranged all along the eastern side of the island. In the places where they put on shore, in the course of this expedition, they generally found the soil to be rich, and met with great plenty of excellent water. In particular, near the north-east point of the island, they discovered a natural cascade, which surpassed, as they conceived, every thing of this kind which human art had ever yet produced. It was a river of transparent water, about 40 yards wide, which rolled down a declivity of near 150 feet in length. The channel itself was very irregular, entirely composed of rocks, both its sides and bottom being made up of large detached blocks, and by these the course of the water was frequently interrupted; for in some parts it ran sloping with a rapid but uniform motion, whilst in others it tumbled over ledges of rocks with a perpendicular descent. On the neighbourhood of this stream was a fine wood; and even the huge masses of rock which over-hung the water, and which by their various projections formed the inequalities of the channel, were covered with lofty forest trees. Whilst the Commodore, with those who accompanied him, were attentively viewing this place, and were remarking the

different blendings of the wood, there came in sight, a animate the prospect, a prodigious bird, hovering over this spot, playing on the wing above it, its appearance, by the glittering iridescent plumage; so that some refrained from a kind of transport, and the beauties which occurred in the

In three days we completed our passage, and were impatient to give time enough on the coast of the galleon; but the wind, being a night; and the next day, being a night; while we were hovering in sight of the *Gloucester*, a small sail to the northward chace, and coming up with her to be a bark from Panama, laden with oakum, rock salt, money to purchase a cargo of an inconceivable village of however, his a good market, and, in case of necessity, in

On the 12th of September who informed us, that, in the on her first approach towards her fore-top-mast, which had been scuttled, and prevented us from proceeding. We now scuttled a schooner, and on the 12th of December, having previously delinquent the conduct of the fleet. We arrived soon enough upon our expected, upon the increasing to fall in with the regular trade-tremendous vexation, we were that it was the 25th of December island of Cocos, which, according was only 100 leagues from us; we had the mortification to did not lose sight of that island. This island we found to be

min. N. We had flattered ourselves with a westerly gale we met with in the neighbourhood of the continent, but, distant, we hoped to be relieved by the eastern trade-wind; but in the we began at length to despair in view. This produced a general we had at first considered the and had indulged ourselves in the of the advantages we should our dependency was, in some favourable change of the we advanced a-pace towards our gain to revive. On the 17th we advanced to the latitude of 12 the 26th of January, finding of Acapulco, we raked and a view of making the land reckonings, to have fallen in though the weather was perfect of it at sun-set; about ten at on the larboard bow, bearing after, the *Trial's* prize made. As we had none of us any of was a ship's light, we were a firm persuasion that it was had been for long the object directly cast off the *Carmelo* all our canvas, making a ship the same. Thus we chafed hands at their respective quarters of engaging within half conceived the chace to and at other times to be with this constant and eager atten-

for six months; and that
better prepared to give
reception, if happily the
carpenters were ordered
main and fore tops, which
the mounting of swivel

of the island of Gallo;
the bay of Panama, shaping
Quibo. Here we found
considerable alteration in the
that uniform temperature
heat or cold was prevalent,
weather, like that we met
We had, besides, frequent
which we at first ascribed to
line, where this kind of
at all seasons of the year;
ed us for more than seven
began to suspect that the
wards call it, the Vande-
ugh many writers, particu-
rt, that this season begins
ber: but, perhaps, its end

itchell having cleared his
e set on fire; and now our
ips, and we were fortunate
od sailers. On the 3rd of
the island of Quibo, the
us N. N. W. four leagues
ajicara W. N. W. at about
we had thus got sight of
hang westerly; and there-
ought it advisable to stand
e said to be some shoals at

At six the next morning,
f N. three or four leagues
s point, all the squadron,
e very near it; and the
d-most ship, was forced to
ward; so that we lost sight
g unfavourable, we saw her
island. At seven in the
Canal Bueno, or Good
e miles in breadth, muddy
officer was dispatched on
-place, who, having found
d then we sent our long-
at the same time weighed
ships, for the convenience
o that we were little more
l the wood and water we
continued here at anchor,
some of his officers, went
which lay to the northward,
all along the eastern side
where they put on shore,
tion, they generally found
with great plenty of ex-
near the north-east point
a natural cascade, which
every thing of this kind
yet produced. It was a
out 40 yards wide, which
near 150 feet in length.
irregular, entirely com-
s and bottom being made
nd by these the course of the
oted; for in some parts it
uniform motion, whilst in
of rocks with a perpen-
ighbourhood of this stream
the huge masses of rock
nd which by their various
ualities of the channel,
trees. Whilst the Com-
ompanied him, were at-
and were remarking the
different

different blendings of the water, the rocks, and the wood, there came in sight, as it were to heighten and animate the prospect, a prodigious flight of mackaws, which, hovering over this spot, and often wheeling and playing on the wing above it, afforded a most brilliant appearance, by the glittering of the sun, and their variegated plumage; so that some of the spectators cannot refrain from a kind of transport when they recount the beauties which occurred in this extraordinary waterfall.

In three days we completed our business in this place, and were impatient to depart, that we might arrive time enough on the coast of Mexico, to intercept the galleon; but the wind, being contrary, detained us a night; and the next day, when we had gained an offing, while we were hovering about in hopes of getting sight of the Gloucester, we on the 20th discerned a small sail to the northward of us, to which we gave chase, and coming up with her took her. She proved to be a bark from Panama, called the Jesu Nazareno, laden with oakum, rock salt, and a small quantity of money to purchase a cargo of provisions at Cheripe, an inconsiderable village on the continent, which, however, has a good market, from whence future voyagers, in case of necessity, may be plentifully supplied.

On the 12th of September we joined the Gloucester, who informed us, that, in tacking to the southward, on her first approach towards the island, she had sprung her fore-top-mast, which had disabled her from working to windward, and prevented her from joining us sooner. We now scuttled and sunk the Jesu Nazareno, and, on the 12th of December, stood to the wellward, having previously delivered fresh instructions for the conduct of the fleet. We had now little doubt of arriving soon enough upon our intended station, as we expected, upon the increasing our offing from Quibo, to fall in with the regular trade-wind; but, to our extreme vexation, we were baffled for near a month, so that it was the 25th of December before we saw the island of Cocos, which, according to our reckoning, was only 100 leagues from the continent, and even then we had the mortification to make so little way, that we did not lose sight of that island again in five days. This island we found to be in the lat. of 5 deg. 20 min. N.

We had flattered ourselves, that the uncertain and western gales we met with were owing to the neighbourhood of the continent, from which as we got more distant, we hoped to be relieved by falling in with the eastern trade-wind; but in this too being disappointed, we began at length to despair of the great purpose we had in view. This produced a general dejection among us, as we had at first considered the project as almost infallible, and had indulged ourselves in the most boundless hopes of the advantages we should thence receive. However, our despondency was, in some measure, alleviated by a favourable change of the wind; and, as we now advanced a-pace towards our station, our hopes began again to revive. On the 17th of January, we were advanced to the latitude of 12 deg. 50 min. N. and, on the 26th of January, finding ourselves to the northward of Acapulco, we tacked and stood to the eastward, with a view of making the land; and we expected by our reckonings, to have fallen in with it on the 28th, yet, though the weather was perfectly clear, we had no sign of it at sun-set; about ten at night we discovered a light on the larboard bow, bearing from us N. N. E. and, soon after, the Trial's prize made the signal for seeing a sail. As we had none of us any doubt but that what we saw was a ship's light, we were all extremely animated with a firm persuasion that it was the Manilla galleon, that had been so long the object of our wishes. We immediately cast off the Carinelo, and pressed forward with all our canvas, making a signal for the Gloucester to do the same. Thus we chased the light, keeping all our hands at their respective quarters, under an expectation of engaging within half an hour, as we sometimes conceived the chase to be about a mile distant, and at other times to be within reach of our guns. In this constant and eager attention we continued all night,

No. 43.

always presuming that another quarter of an hour would bring us up to this Manilla ship, whose wealth we now estimated at round millions: but, when daylight came, we were most vexatiously disappointed, by finding that the light which had occasioned all this expectancy, was only a fire on the shore. At sun-rising, after this mortifying delusion, we found ourselves about nine leagues off land, extending from the N. W. to E. half N. On this land we observed two remarkable hammocks, which bore N. from us, and which a Spanish pilot and two Indians affirmed to be over the harbour of Acapulco; but we found them egregiously mistaken, these being in 17 deg. 56 min. whereas Acapulco lies in 17 deg. only.

Being now in the track of the Manilla galleon, it was a doubt with us, as it was near the end of January, whether she was or was not arrived: but, examining our prisoners about it, they allured us, she was sometimes known to come in after the middle of February; and they endeavoured to persuade us, that the fire we had seen on shore was a proof that she was yet at sea, it being customary, as they said, to make use of these fires as signals for her direction when she continued out longer than ordinary. On this reasoning of our prisoners, we resolved to cruise for her some days, and we accordingly spread our ships at the distance of 12 leagues from the coast, in such a manner that it was impossible she should pass us unobserved; however, not seeing her soon, we were very solicitous to gain some positive intelligence. With this view the Commodore resolved to send a boat under cover of the night into the harbour of Acapulco, to see if the Manilla ship was there or not. To execute this enterprize, the barge was dispatched the 6th of February, carrying a sufficient crew and two officers, as also a Spanish pilot and an Indian. Our barge did not return till the 11th, when the officers acquainted Mr. Anson, that they had mistaken the harbour, and that Acapulco lay a considerable distance more to the eastward, and that, not having a sufficient quantity of provisions for their passage thither, they were obliged to return to make known their disappointment. On this intelligence we made sail to the eastward, and the next day we dispatched the barge, with particular instructions to keep at a sufficient distance not to be seen from the shore. We watched six days without receiving any intelligence, so that we began to be uneasy for her safety; but on the 7th day she returned with advice, that, being at the very place they sought for, though they were then ignorant of their situation, they surprized a fishing canoe with three negroes, who told us that the Manilla galleon arrived at Acapulco on the 9th of January, but that, having delivered her cargo, she was taking in water and provisions in order to return; and that the Viceroy of Mexico had by proclamation fixed her departure from Acapulco to the 14th of March. This last news was most joyfully received by us, since we had no doubt but she must fall into our hands; and it was much more eligible to seize her on her return, than it would have been to have taken her before her arrival, as the money for which she had sold her cargo, and which she would now have on board, would be much more esteemed by us than the cargo itself. Thus we were a second time engaged in an eager expectation of meeting with this Manilla ship, which, by the fame of its wealth, we had been taught to consider as the most desirable capture that was to be made on any part of the ocean.

As it was the 19th of February when the barge returned, and brought us our intelligence, and the galleon was not to sail till the 3d of March, the Commodore resolved to continue the greater part of the intermediate time in his present station to the westward of Acapulco, in order to avoid a discovery from the shore. During this interval we were employed in getting all things in readiness to engage; and, when the long-winded-for 3d of March came, we were all so strongly prepossessed with the certainty of our intelligence, and with an assurance of her coming out of port, that some or other

of us were constantly imagining that they discovered one of our cutters returning with a signal; but, to our extreme vexation, both this day and the succeeding night passed away without any news of her approach. However, we did not yet despair, nor did we abate of our vigilance; but, after remaining till the 25th of March, we at length concluded, and we afterwards found it to be true, that we had been discovered, and that in consequence an embargo had been laid upon the galleon, and her departure postponed till the next year.

The cutters, having on that day finished their cruise before the harbour, returned to the squadron, and the signal being given for the fleet to join, it was determined to retire to Chequetan, to take in a fresh supply of water, which was then nearly exhausted. In the mean time a cutter, commanded by Mr. Hoghes, Lieutenant of the Trial's prize, was ordered to continue off the harbour of Acapulco for 24 days, in order that, if the galleon should set sail in that time, we might be speedily informed of it.

On the 5th of April we entered the harbour of Chequetan, in latitude 17 deg. 36 min. N. about 30 leagues to the westward of Acapulco. The watering-place has the appearance of a large standing lake, without any visible outlet into the sea, from which it is separated by a part of the strand. The origin of this lake is a spring that bubbles out of the ground, near half a mile within the country. We found its water a little brackish, but more considerably so towards the sea-side, for the nearer we advanced towards the spring-head, the sifter and fresher it proved. This laid us under a necessity of filling all our casks from the farthest part of the lake, which was facilitated by means of canoes which traversed the lake, and brought a number of small casks to the side next the beach; thence the water was started into larger vessels in the boats, and by that contrivance brought on board with very little trouble.

As the country hereabouts, particularly the tract of coast contiguous to Acapulco, appeared to be well peopled and cultivated, we hoped to have easily procured from thence some fresh provisions, and other refreshments, which we now stood much in need of. To facilitate these views, the Commodore, the morning after we came to an anchor, ordered a party of 40 men well armed to march into the country, and to endeavour to discover some town where they were to attempt to set on foot a correspondence with the inhabitants; for, when we had once begun this intercourse, we doubted not but by proper presents we should allure them to bring down to us whatever fruits or fresh provisions were in their power. As our prizes abounded with various sorts of coarse merchandize, which were of little consequence to us, though to them they would be extremely valuable, our people were directed on this occasion to proceed with the greatest circumspection, and to make as little ostentation of hostility as possible; for we were sensible we could find no wealth in those parts worth our notice; and what necessaries we really wanted, we expected would be better, and more abundantly supplied, by an open amicable traffic, than by violence and force of arms. But this endeavour of opening a commerce with the inhabitants proved ineffectual, and therefore we desisted from any more attempts of the same nature, contenting ourselves with what we could procure for ourselves in the neighbourhood of the port where we lay. We caught fish in abundance; among the rest cavallies, bream, mullets, soals, fiddle-fish, and lobsters; and we here, and in no other place, met with that extraordinary fish called the torpedo, which is in shape very much resembling the fiddle-fish, and is only distinguished from it in appearance by a brown circular spot of about the bigness of a crown piece, near the center of its back. This fish is, indeed, of a most singular nature, benumbing whoever touches it all over his body, but more particularly that limb which happens to come in immediate contact with it. The same effect, too, will be in some degree produced by touching the fish with any thing held in

the hand; and it has lately been discovered, that it can be communicated like the electrical shock to a circle, by means of a certain apparatus much simpler than that which is used in experiments in electricity.

The animals which we met with on shore were guanoes, with which the country abounds, and were by some reckoned delicious food. We found several sorts of prey, except we should esteem that enormous creature the alligator as such, several of which people discovered, but none of them very large. It is, however, certain, that there were great numbers of tigers in the woods, though none of them happened to make their appearance while we remained upon coast. Parrots and pheasants were found in plenty by no means proper for food, being dry and tasteless, though they were often killed and eaten, being by thought preferable to salt provisions.

The papah, lime, and a little flour plumb, were the fruits the woods furnished, and of these there was but a scanty portion; nor was there any other useful vegetable, except brook-lime, which, being esteemed antiscorbutic, was frequently eaten, though, from its bitterness it was exceedingly unpalatable.

While we lay at Chequetan, it was resolved, in consequence of mature deliberation, to destroy all our prizes, as the whole number of men on board our squadron did not amount to the complement of a fourth-rate man-of-war. It was therefore judged most prudent to fetter the ships, and to divide the men between the Chequetan and Gloucester, now preparing to set sail for China. Besides the necessary repairs for a voyage of such length, the removal of their stores and cargo into the men-of-war took up so much time, that it was not till the end of April before we were in a condition to leave the place.

It should have been remarked, that, from this harbour of Chequetan we discovered but one path through the woods into the country; and as this path was much beaten, we were from that circumstance convinced, that it was not unfrequented by the natives. As it passed by the spring-head, and was the only avenue by which the Spaniards could approach to surprise us, we at some distance beyond the spring-head felled several large trees, and laid them one upon another across the path, and at this barricade we constantly kept a guard. We, besides, ordered our men employed in watering, to have their arms always ready, in case of an alarm, and to march instantly to this post. And, though our principal intention here was to prevent our being disturbed by the enemy's horse, yet it answered another purpose, which was, to hinder our people from straggling singly into the country, where we had reason to believe they would be surprized by the Spaniards, who would doubtless be very solicitous to pick up some of them, in hopes of getting intelligence of our future designs. To avoid this inconvenience, the strictest orders were given to the sentinels, to let no person whatever pass beyond this post; but, notwithstanding this precaution, we missed one, Lewis Legere, who was the Commodore's cook. He was a Frenchman and a Roman Catholic, it was first imagined that he had deserted with a view of betraying all that he knew to the enemy; though this appeared, by the event, to be an ill-grounded surmise; for it was afterwards known, that he had been taken by some Indians, who carried him prisoner to Acapulco, from whence he was transported to Mexico, and thence to Vera Cruz, where he was shipped on board a vessel bound to Old Spain. But, the vessel being obliged by some accident, to put into Lisbon, Legere escaped on shore, and was by the British Consul sent from thence to England; where he gave the first authentic account of the safety of the Commodore, and of his principal transactions in the South Seas.

The relation he gave of his own seizure was, that he had rambled into the woods, at some distance from the barricade where he had first attempted to pass, but had been stopped and threatened to be punished; that he

princip

to be on the larboard side, abreast the main hatch-way, and not quite under water. The carpenters soon stopt it with very little trouble.

The 11th of June, we found a current to set to the southward, about 24 miles a day, but could not discover whether to the east or west, for want of opportunity to try it. This was by account about 450 leagues from Acapulco; and, much about this time, abundance of scorbutic symptoms, such as blackness in the skin, hard nodes in the flesh, shortness of breath, and a general lassitude and weakness of all the parts, began to prevail, almost universally, among our people. This with the great mortality we experienced from this distemper in our Cape Horn passage, and the time we might still expect to be at sea, having yet 1800 leagues to those islands called, by Sir Francis Drake, the Lardones, or Islands of Thieves, from the thievish disposition of the inhabitants, but by the Spaniards the Marian Islands, where only we could expect our next refreshments; and no trade-wind being yet settled; these considerations, I say, gave us dreadful apprehensions of what this passage might terminate in; and the event shewed that we had but too much reason for them.

The 14th, at five in the evening, the Gloucester, having sprung the head of her main-mast, 12 feet below the trussel-trees, fired a gun as a signal of distress; on which we brought to, and waited for her; and, after enquiring into, and hearing the cause, we sent them on board two carpenters to assist in fisting and securing it; but the carpenters in concert, having viewed and considered the damage, reported, the next day, that the mast was unfit to stand, and would not bear repairing; but that it must be shortened 26 feet from the head, and the top-mast be set on the stump. This, therefore, was concluded on, and ordered accordingly.

The 23rd, we found our own main-top-mast sprung in the wake of the cape; whereupon, we reefed it 20 inches, that is, we lowered it so much, and secured it there, and flected and set up the shrouds and backstays.

The 24th, in the evening, we got the top-mast down, and put up another in its place, and a man falling overboard, we brought the ship to, and took him up safe; likewise, the slings of our cross-jack-yards being broke, we fixed new ones, and the next day got up the fore-top-gallant-mast and yard.

The 27th, we made the Gloucester signal and sent our boat on board of her.

The 28th, we received from the Gloucester half an anchor-stock, for a farther security to the fore-mast.

The 29th, the Gloucester finished her jury-mast, and made sail on it. Nothing farther remarkable till July 1st, we had fresh gales, and cloudy weather, with some lightning.

The 2nd, we unbent the fore-sail, and bent another. We had, not only now, but for almost our whole passage, abundance of birds of prey, also flying fish, which are their proper food, and vast quantities of skip-jacks, albigores, &c. whereof we took a great number, which contributed much to our refreshment after the loss of the tortoisés, that generally leave all ships about 20 or 30 leagues off the land. I think this the more worthy of notice, because Dampier, Rogers, Cook, Cowley, and most other voyagers, some of whom have been not only once, but several times on this voyage, have reported, that they never saw a fish or fowl in this whole run. For my part I readily believe and conclude, that this difference in our observations and accounts is really occasioned by the different seasons of the year in which we happened to perform this passage; it being a known truth, and confirmed by the experience of thousands in all ages, that most fish have their different seasons for their different rendezvous.

The 10th, we saw three gannets, or, as they call them in Scotland, soland geese; being, by what I can learn from the most intelligent of that nation whom I have conversed with, and who often have opportunity to observe them in several different parts, of one and the

same species; we likewise saw some sea weeds; both which circumstances made us imagine that some islands or shoals were not far off, those fowls never being observed to fly very far out to sea.

The 11th, we unbent the fore-top-sail, and bent another.

The 12th, at noon, we were, by my account, 180 deg. 11 min. to the westward of the meridian of London, which is just 11 min. more than half round the globe, for which reason I note it. We were at this time, by my account, 1429 leagues distant from the port of Acapulco.

From this time till the 16th, we had fresh gales, with squalls and rain.

The 17th and 18th, we had moderate and cloudy weather.

The 19th and 20th, fresh gales, with abundance of rain. We made this observation, that, with rainy weather, or even slight transient showers, the fish bit more freely, and were caught in greater numbers, than with fair weather: which made our fishermen the more attentive at such times. It was likewise remarked, that the Gloucester, when they could find opportunity to fish, had always much greater success than we; whether their fishermen had more art than ours, or whatever else occasioned it, the fact is true. They had also a better way of disposing of them, when taken, if I may be allowed to judge, than we; for Captain Mitchell constantly ordered several boys, who were very dexterous at it, to catch fish for the ship's company, especially the sick; and those were very justly and regularly divided among them: whereas our fishermen were left at liberty to make their advantage of what they took, and to prey upon their suffering shipmates; and they took care not to overslip the opportunity, for the least fish you could purchase of them would cost you a bottle of brandy; which, at this time, was worth four, or perhaps, six and sometimes even eight shillings, or half a guinea; and you must be very thankful, and acknowledge yourself to be highly obliged into the bargain, or else expect none next time, and very often fail of it notwithstanding. About this time our people began to die very fast, and, I believe, above five parts out of six of the ship's company were ill, and expected to follow in a short time. Those, whose breath was any ways affected, dropt off immediately; but those, who were attacked first in the more remote parts of the body, languished generally a month or six weeks; the distemper advancing, in the mean time, towards the lungs, by a very regular and sensible approach. As I was myself one of those who were severely afflicted in this latter manner, I shall give such an account of its progress, as I found by experience in myself, and corroborated by the similar report of my fellow-sufferers. I was first taken, about the beginning of this month, with a slight pain on the joint of my left great toe; but, having hurt that a little while before, I imagined it to be the effect of that hurt, and minded it the less—(but here I shall observe, once for all, that if ever any part of the body had received a bruise, strain, or contusion, if not perfectly cured, the scurvy was sure to attack that part first;) but, in a little time, a large black spot appearing on the part affected, with very intense pains at the bone, gave me to understand my case. I now took physic often, by way of prevention, but to little purpose: several hard nodes now began to rise in my legs, thighs, and arms, and not only many more black spots appeared in the skin, but those spread, till my legs and thighs were for the most part as black as a negroe; and this accompanied with such excessive pains in the joints of the knees, ancles, and toes, as I thought, before I experienced them, that human nature could never have supported. It next advanced to the mouth; all my teeth were presently loose, and my gums, over-charged with extravasated blood, fell down almost quite over my teeth: this occasioned my breath to smell much, yet without affecting my lungs; but, I believe, one week more at sea would have ended me, and less than a month more, and all the rest. One thing was very remarkable

markable, and likewise universal, which was, that, when the distemper had far prevailed, if the afflicted person lay quiet in his hammock, he seemed to be perfectly well and hearty; but, if he was removed out of it, on any necessity, he immediately fainted away; and this was always a sure sign of the party's dissolution.

Since our passing Cape Horn, our surgeon, Henry Estrick, who was a very good practical surgeon, had been very busy in digressing a theory of feurvies, wherein he enumerated many cases very particularly, having been allowed to open and examine as many bodies as were abundantly sufficient for that purpose. His system was principally grounded on the observations made on a long passage in a very cold climate. He took abundance of pains to prove, by many instances, that the tone of the blood was broken by the cold nipping air, and rendered so thin, as to be unfit for circulation, or any other of the uses of life; and being thus deprived of a proper force and vigour, stagnation and death must necessarily ensue. From this supposition, he had laid it down as an infallible rule, that food of a glutinous nature, such as salt fish, bread, and several sorts of grain, were alone proper on such voyages. As for liquids, I know not which he had pitched on, as the most salutary, on this occasion. But this passage, in a very hot climate, where the symptoms were not only more dreadful, but the mortality much more quick and fatal, in proportion to the number of people, put our scheming doctor to a sad non-plus: he could not account for this on the same principles with the other; nay, they must be, in a manner, diametrically opposite. All this obliged him at last (though he was still endeavouring to reconcile contradictions), to own, that though some of the concurrent causes of this disease were plain enough, yet the grand cause was certainly the long continuance at sea, or an entire sterety; and that no cure but the shore would ever be effectual. The Commodore, on this great mortality, having by him a quantity of Ward's pills and drops, in order to experience whether they would be of any use, first tried them on himself, and then gave what he had left to the surgeon, to administer to such of the sick people as were willing to take them. The surgeon would not recommend them to any person, but several took them; though I know of none who believed they were of any service to them. They worked most people who took them very violently, both by vomit and stool: after which, as several told me, they would seem to be a little easier, though weaker, for perhaps a day or two, but then they always relapsed, and became worse than before; and this, together with the inefficacy of all that our surgeons could do in the case sufficiently shewed the vanity of attempting the cure of this distemper at sea.

And here, before I quit this subject, I shall endeavour to remove a prejudice, under which the afflicted have long severely suffered; and that is, from the notion generally prevalent, that none but the lazy are attacked with this disorder; whereas, the direct contrary is the truth; our experience having abundantly shewn, that the most laborious, active, stirring persons were oftenest seized with this disease; and the continuation of their labour, instead of curing, only helped to kill them the sooner.

Many undeniable instances might be given of this in our voyage; and, if future voyagers will give themselves the trouble of observing this hereafter, I am certain that the event will correspond with my assertion; nor does this distemper, in a general way, incline people to indolence, till it is com: to that height, that, at the least motion, the person is ready to faint. It is certain, that if the person afflicted desires to lengthen out his life as long as he can, his best way is to stir as little as possible. This I have seen verified by many instances.

The 23rd and 24th we reefed and repaired our rigging, which had suffered much in the variable weather.

No. 43.

The 26th, being, according to our reckoning, 300 leagues from the Ladrões, we met with a westerly wind, which did not come about again in four days. This was a most dispiriting incident, as we were all that while forced to lie to, the current insensibly driving us out of our course.

The 27th, our gunner, Henry Kipps, died of the feurvey, being one of the most able-bodied men, as well as the most active in the ship: he had taken Ward's medicines once or twice.

On the 28th we had calms with much rain, and received from the Gloucester 20 casks of flour, and four of groats. Having here an occasion of mentioning flour, it may not be amiss to take notice, that, since our departure from Juan Fernandez, the principal officers had always soft bread new baked, the biscuit being so much worm eaten, it was scarce any thing but dust, and a little blow would reduce it to that state immediately. Our beef and pork were likewise very rusty and rotten; and the surgeon endeavoured to persuade us from eating it, alledging it was, though a flow, yet a sure poison; but very little other food being to be had, we were reduced to a very deplorable condition.

The 29th, in the morning, the Gloucester's fore-capsplitting her fore-top-mast came by the board, and, in its fall, meeting with the fore-yard, broke it in the slings. As she was hereby rendered incapable of making any sail for some time, we were under a necessity, as soon as a gale sprung up, to take her in tow; and near 20 of the healthiest and ablest of our seamen were removed from the duty of our own ship, and were continued eight or ten days together to assist in repairing her damages; but these things, mortifying as we thought them, were only the commencement of our misfortunes; for, scarce had our people finished their business in the Gloucester before we met with a most violent storm from the western board, which obliged us to lie to. This storm lasted from the 10th to the 13th of August, attended with rain, thunder, and lightning, and such a lofty and dangerous sea, as I have seldom seen, and could not have believed in latitudes between the Tropics, especially for such a long duration. Most of the time we lay to, we drove to the northward; abundance of our people died daily; and the ship proving very leaky, every person who could stir, the principal officers not excepted, was obliged to take his turn at the pumps, and all little enough to keep us above water.

The 13th of August, at ten in the morning, the Gloucester made a signal of distress, and, being to windward, bore down towards us; but we observed she was long in wearing, rolled very much, and made bad steerage. About half an hour after noon they spoke with us, and told us that they were so leaky that they must quit their ship; that they had seven feet water in the hold; and that all the men they had capable of stirring were quite exhausted with pumping, and could work no longer. This was an additional misfortune, and seemed to be without resource; for, whilst the Gloucester's crew were thus enfeebled, our own sick were now so much increased, and those who still remained in health so over fatigued with labour, that it was impossible for us to lend them any aid: all therefore, that could be done was to send our boat on board for a more particular account of the ship's condition; as it was soon suspected, that the taking her people on board us, and then destroying the Gloucester, was the only measure that could be prosecuted in the present emergency both for the preservation of their lives and of our own.

Our boat soon returned with a representation of the melancholy state of the Gloucester, and of her several defects, signed by Captain Mitchell and all his officers; by which it appeared, that the ship was decayed in every part; that her crew was greatly reduced; that there remained alive no more than 77 men, officers included, 18 boys, and two prisoners; that of the whole number, only 16 men and 11 boys were capable of keeping the deck, and several of these very intirm; that

the water was so deep in the hold, that those who were yet alive were starving, and could neither come at fresh water nor provisions.

From this representation, which was in no one instance exaggerated, the Commodore sent immediately an order to Captain Mitchell, to bring his people on board the Centurion, and to take out such stores as could most easily be come at, among which he was very desirous of saving two cables, and a steel-anchor; but the ship rolled so much, and the men were so excessively fatigued, that it was with the greatest difficulty the prize-money was secured (the prize-goods amounting to many thousand pounds being abandoned); nor could any more provisions be got at, than five casks of flour (three of which were spoiled by the salt-water), a small quantity of brandy, and some living stock. Even this little business was so languishingly performed, that two days were wasted in the execution, during which time three or four of the sick perished on being moved.

As the weather was now calm, and we were uncertain how far distant we might be from Guam, a settlement in possession of the enemy, to whom the wreck of such a ship with guns and ammunition on board would have been a very valuable acquisition, the Commodore judged the most effectual way to prevent her from falling into their hands was to set her on fire: and accordingly, as soon as the Captain and his Officers had quitted her, the combustibles placed for that purpose were lighted, and she continued burning the whole night, and at six the next morning she blew up. Thus perished his Majesty's ship the Gloucester; and now it might have been expected, that, being freed from the embarrassment in which her frequent disasters had involved us, we should have proceeded on our way much brisker than we had hitherto done. However, we were soon taught, that our troubles were not yet to be relieved.

We were at this time in the utmost distress; the ship considerably lumbered with prize-goods, and the little room we had left thronged with the sick, whose numbers were now very much increased by those from the Gloucester; the dirt, nauvousness, and stench, almost every where intolerable; more people daily disabled with the disease; no sign of land, nor but very little wind, and that not fair but variable: very bad provisions and water, and the ship very leaky; and, though we discovered the leak to be in her bows on each side the stern, it lay in such a manner that we could not stop it, nay the attempting to do it rather made it worse. In this distress we made the best of every little spurt of wind.

Nothing farther remarkable happened till Sunday the 22d, when, about eight in the evening, we discovered two islands, one bearing W. half S. and the other S. W. by W. at the distance of about 10 leagues. We were overjoyed at this sight, and stood toward them with all our sail; but, there being little wind, we did not get near them till the next day about noon, when being about three miles off the largest and most promising of them, which appeared very hilly and full of trees, we sent on shore one of our Lieutenants in the cutter to make discoveries, who returned at nine in the evening, and gave us but a very indifferent account of the land. The trees were mostly cocoa-nut-trees, of which there were prodigious quantities (about 60 cocoa-nuts they brought on board with them); but they could find no water, nor any good place to anchor in: on this account it was thought fit to stand further to the southward, for some more proper place. This was a severe disappointment to most of the sick, who, on the sight of land, (on hearing that we were so near it) had begun sensibly to revive: but as persons in such circumstances are soon driven to despond when an aid they had depended upon deserts them, so this disappointment marred our hopes, and increased our dejection. We feared, that, if we met with more islands in the same run, they might be either as bad, worse, or inhabited by our enemies the Spaniards, who, in our weak condition, might easily be able to hinder us from proper refreshments: add to this, how near many of us were to death, and how little we could expect to survive while in

search of other islands. I know not whether these were the general thoughts of the sick, but I must own they were mine, and made our situation at that time appear infinitely worse to me than at any other in the whole course of our voyage. I was indeed very ill, and my illness might possibly occasion every thing to appear in its worst light, yet I never was one of those who were frightened at the apprehension, or even the visible approach of death; it had no unreasonable terrors in any of its prospects to me; and I always could, and I hope always shall be ready to meet it with calmness and perfect resignation: but I believe the healthiest and stoutest at that time had probably the greatest apprehensions; and I have since heard it from many of those, that they expected all to have perished, had we been so little as three weeks longer at sea; and I much question whether they were not right in that imagination.

On the 26th, at five in the morning, we saw three other islands, bearing from S. E. by S. to N. E. the middlemost of the three, which was the largest, due E.

The 27th, at three in the afternoon, being got pretty near the shore of the middlemost island, we sent our cutter and pinnace on shore for discovery. At four the pinnace came off, and brought with her an Indian paroo, with a Spaniard and four Indians, whom they took in her. They likewise told us, that they had in-shore a small bark of about 16 tons, and between 20 and 30 more people on the island, all of whom had been sent there from Guam to kill cattle and hogs, and make jerked beef, and cocoa-nut-oil, &c. for the Spanish garrison there; and that there are constantly people sent on that account, who, after some months stay at that place, are relieved by fresh parties for the same purpose. We secured both bark and paroo, together with all the Indians who fell into our hands, to hinder their carrying intelligence of us to the Spaniards at Guam. One of those Indians was a carpenter by trade, and his father was one of the principal builders at Manilla. This young man, having been ill used by the Governor at Guam, voluntarily entered with us, and became one of our carpenter's crew, and proved a very useful handy fellow.

The Spaniard being examined as to the state of the island we were now approaching, the account he gave surprized even our most sanguine hopes; and, though uninhabited, he said, it wanted none of those accommodations with which the best cultivated countries are furnished. On mustering up our whole force, as we drew near, all the hands we could collect capable of any kind of duty, even on the most pressing occasions, amounted to no more than 71 men, officers included. This number, inconsiderable as it may seem, were all of the united crews of the Centurion, Gloucester, and Trial, that could move without being assisted, notwithstanding that, when we left England, they consisted of near 1000 men.

When we had entered the road, our first business, after furling the sails and securing the ship, was to provide an hospital on shore for the sick; but the officer and seamen who were sent upon this service, returned joyfully, and acquainted us, that the Indians on shore had saved them that trouble, and had provided for us better than we could have done for ourselves; for, having erected a number of little cabbins for their accommodation during their residence on the island, and one in particular, which they made use of by way of storehouse to stow their provisions in, there could be nothing more suitably adapted for the reception both of the sick and the healthy than these erections. Accordingly, we instantly began landing ashore as many of the sick as could possibly be conveyed, among which number I myself was one; I say, as many as could possibly be conveyed; for we were all so extremely feeble and helpless, that we were no otherwise to be landed than by being carried in our hammocks, both in and out of the boats, on mens shoulders, in which service both the Commodore himself and his officers very humanely assisted; and, indeed, they were almost the only persons on board capable of performing it; the healthiest seamen being so much enfeebled, that

they

whether these were
but I must own they
at that time appear
other in the whole
ed very ill, and my
thing to appear in
of those who were
even the visible ap-
pable terrors in any
s could, and I hope
h calmness and per-
calthiest and stoutest
test apprehensions;
y of those, that they
we been so little as
such question whe-
agination.

ning, we saw three
by S. to N. E. the
the largest, due E.
on, being got pretty
land, we sent our
very. At four the
er an Indian paroo,
whom they took in
they had in-shore a
between 20 and 30
hom had been sent
ed hogs, and make
e. for the Spanish
stantly people sent
months stay at that
the same purpose.
together with all the
hinder their carry-
at Guam. One
ade, and his father
t Manila. This
y the Governor at
ed became one of our
ful handy fellow.
to the state of the
account he gave
apes; and, though
of those accom-
ated countries are
whole force, as we
ect capable of any
pressing occasions,
officers included.
ay seem, were all
Gloucester, and
assisted, notwith-
they consisted of

our first business,
the ship, was to pro-
t; but the officer
service, returned
Indians on shore
d provided for us
rveselves; for, hav-
ins for their ac-
on the island, and
use of by way of
here could be no
reception both of
ctions. Accord-
shore as many of
d, among which
many as could
ill so extremely
otherwise to be
our hammocks,
ens shoulders, in
himself and his
indeed, they were
le of performing
h enfeebled, that
they

they had but just strength enough left to help them-
selves.

The next day, being the 29th, the remainder of the
sick were brought on shore, of whom 21 soon died; but
the greatest part of the rest recovered surprizingly. As
soon as I was capable of stirring about, I found the
island to lie in latitude 14 deg. 58 min. N. [Walter says
15 deg. 8 min.] and in longitude 223 deg. 35 min. W.
from London, being, according to my reckoning, 117
deg. 7 min. W. from Acapulco. [Walter says 114 deg.
50 min. And here it is observable, how writers of the
first characters for veracity differ in their accounts of the
same places, by visiting them at different periods. The
description of this island of Tinian by Commodore By-
ron, who lately visited it in his voyage round the world,
bears no similitude to that we are now about to recite;
nor can any one conceive how an interval of only 30
years could occasion so remarkable an alteration in an
island that had lain uncultivated for many centuries be-
fore. But to proceed:]

The soil, upon examination, we found to be every
where dry and healthy; and being withal somewhat
sandy, it was thereby the less disposed to a rank and
over-luxuriant vegetation: and hence the meadows and
woods were nearer and smoother than is usual in hot
climates. The vallies and hills were most beautifully
diversified by the mutual encroachments of woods and
lawns, which skirted each other, and traversed the island
in large tracts. The woods consisted of tall and well-
spread trees, some celebrated for their beauty, and some
for their fruit; whilst the lawns were generally crowded
with herds of cattle, of which it was not uncommon to
see thousands feeding in a herd, and, being all milk-
white, it is no wonder that such an appearance excited
our longings, and increased our impatience, to kill and
eat. Add to these, the innumerable swarms of poultry
that crowded the woods, and, by their frequent crow-
ings, gave us in idea the pleasing apprehension of be-
ing in the neighbourhood of farms and villages; and
we even fancied, that in the covert of the woods we
should find such concealed. The cattle we had sight
of were computed at 10,000: and, besides these and
the poultry, we likewise found abundance of wild hogs,
which were excellent food, but fierce, and not easily
mastered. At first we killed them by shooting; but,
our ammunition failing, owing to an incident, we at
last hunted them down with dogs, several of which
joined us on the island, and, being trained to the sport
by the Indians, readily enough followed us, and as-
sisted us good diversion. In their conflicts with the
bears, some indeed were killed; but those that came off
victorious, were still more eager to engage in every new
pursuit.

This island was no less fortunate to us in its vege-
table than its animal productions; more particularly
abounding in such fruits and plants as were best adapted
to the cure of that disease by which we had been so
dreadfully debilitated. In the woods cocoa nuts were
to be gathered without number; and, what is remark-
able, cabbages grew on the same trees. There were,
besides, guavas, limes, sweet and sour oranges, and,
what is common to all the Tropical islands, bread-
fruit. In the plains we found water-melons, dandelion,
creeping-purslain, mint, scurvy-grass, and sorrel; all
which, together with the fresh-meats of the place, were
such salutary refreshments, that the sick, who were at
death's-door when they landed, before they had been a
week on shore, put on very different countenances, and
with their new complexions received a fresh recruit of
spirits.

Amidst such a variety of provisions as the land fur-
nished, it was thought unnecessary to indulge ourselves
in those offered us by the sea. From fish, therefore,
we wholly refrained; and the rather, as some we caught
at our first arrival surfeited those who eat of them.
This, however, was not regretted, as beef, pork, poul-
try, and wild-fowl, were in such plenty, that, except the
trouble of bringing them from a considerable distance
sometimes, there was no difficulty attending their pro-

curement. It were, indeed, an endless task to recount
all the excellencies and delicacies we met with in this
delightful island: nor is it easy to say which to prefer
where every thing is worthy of admiration; the neatness
of its lawns, the stateliness, freshness, and fragrance of
its woods, the happy inequality of its surface, and the
variety and elegance of the views it afforded,—all these
conspired to charm the sight, while at the same time the
excellency of its productions could not fail to gratify
the appetite. And these advantages were greatly
enhanced by the healthiness of the climate, by the
almost constant cool breezes that prevailed, and by the
frequent gentle showers that seemed to fall just to re-
fresh the earth, and add to its fertility; for these, in-
stead of the long-continued rains that in other coun-
tries fill the air with noxious vapours, and overflow the
earth with wasteful inundations, seemed just enough to
purify the air, and to refresh the soil; which was ob-
servable enough by the effect it had in increasing our
appetites, and promoting our digestion. This effect was,
indeed, remarkable, since those amongst our officers,
who were at all other times spare and temperate eaters,
were here in appearance transformed into gluttons;
for instead of one reasonable flesh-meal a day, they were
scarcely satisfied with three; and yet our digestion so
well corresponded to the keenness of our appetites, that
we were neither disordered nor even loaded by this un-
common repletion; for, after having made a large beef
breakfast, it was not long before we began to consider
the approach of dinner as a very desirable, and even
somewhat tardy event.

The principal inconveniences that attended our resi-
dence upon this island arose from the vast number of
mosquitoes and other troublesome flies, by which we were
perpetually teased; there was likewise a venomous lit-
tle insect, that, like the sheep-ticks in England, would
bury its head in the skin, and, if not instantly removed,
would cause an inflammation.

Running water there was none in the island; but that
defect was supplied by a large lake, or lagoon, almost in
the center of it, to which the cattle, in times of drought,
generally resorted; but the freshness of their pasture,
and the copious dews and gentle showers that often
moistened it, rendered that resource almost unnecessary.
There were, besides, springs of excellent water, and
near the surface wells might every where be dug, whose
waters, in any other place would not have been com-
plained of.

But the great danger we had to dread remains to be
told. During four months in the year, that is, from
the middle of June to the middle of October, when
the western monsoons prevail, the winds, about the full
and change of the moon, are variable, and blow with
such fury, that the stoutest cables afford no security to
ships riding at anchor in the road: and what adds to
the danger is the rapidity of the tide, which sets to the
S. E. and occasions such a hollow and over-grown sea as
is not to be conceived; inasmuch that, though we were
in a sixty-gun ship, we were under the dreadful appre-
hension of being pooped by it. During the rest of
the year the weather is constantly settled, and ships
have nothing to fear, if their cables are well armed,
which otherwise will suffer from the foulness of the
ground.

From the 29th of August, when our sick were all
put on shore, on the 12th of September, when the
Commodore himself landed, those who remained on
board were chiefly employed in mooring and securing
the ship, in shifting her guns to come at her leaks, and
in cackling the cables, to prevent their being galled by
the friction against the rocky bottom. At the same
time an anchor and cable were put on board the Spanish
bark, her own being only a heavy log of wood, and a
rope made of balsa; and some barrels of powder to be
dried and recovered, which by long keeping was be-
come moist.

From the 12th to the 18th, the hands were con-
tinually shifting, those who were so well recovered as
to be capable of duty were sent on board, and those who
had

had borne the burden of the labour were relieved and sent on shore.

On the 19th, the weather began to alter, and to threaten a storm: on that day, the next, and the 21st, it blew hard; however, we rode it out, and flattered ourselves that the prudence of our measures had secured us from accidents. On the 22d. the hurricane came on, and our only hope of safety seemed to depend on our putting out to sea; but the Commodore was on shore, and all communication with the land absolutely cut off. At five in the afternoon, the small bower parted, and the ship sprung off to the best bower. As night approached, the violence of the storm increased; yet, notwithstanding its inexplicable fury, the rapidity of the tide was such as to prevail over it, and to force the ship before it, as it were, in despite of its utmost rage. It was now that the sea broke all round us in a most tremendous manner; and that a large tumbling swell threatened to engulf us in its bosom: the long-boat, which was moored a-stern, was on a sudden canted so high that it broke the transom of the Commodore's gallery, and would, doubtless, have risen as high as the taffarel, had it not been for the stroke, which stove the boat to pieces; but yet the poor boat-keeper, though much bruised, was saved almost by miracle. About eight, the tide slackened; but, the wind not abating, the best bower cable, by which alone we rode, parted at eleven. In this extremity, Mr. Saumarez, our first lieutenant, who commanded in the absence of the Commodore, ordered guns to be fired, and lights to be shewn, as signals of distress; and, in a short time after, the night being excessively dark, the storm raging, the thunder roaring, and nothing to be seen but the blue lightning flashing through the rain, we were driven to sea, and by this catastrophe, the whole crew, both by sea and land, reduced to a state of despair; those on shore concluding they had now no means left them ever to get home; whilst those on board, being utterly unprepared to struggle with the fury of such seas and winds, expected each moment to be their last. In this state of despondency, while those on board were every moment in expectation of being dashed against the rocks of Aiguigan, an island at about three leagues from Tinian, those on shore were persuaded the ship could not survive the storm, the whole channel between the two islands appearing from the land like one continued breach, the sea swelling, breaking, and roaring, like mountains rolling over mountains, and forming the most awful and terrifying sight that the mind of man can possibly conceive. Indeed, the condition of those on board was truly pitiable; they were in a leaky ship, with three cables in their hawkes, to one of which hung their only remaining anchor; they had not a gun on board lashed; nor a port barred in; their shrouds were loose; and their fore-top-mast unrigged; and they had struck their fore and main yards down before the hurricane came on, so that there was no sail they could set except the mizzen: to add to their misfortunes, they were no sooner at sea, than, by the labouring of the ship, whole floods of water rushed in through the hawke-holes, ports, and scuppers; which, with the usual leakage, kept the pumps constantly at work. Persuaded that their destruction was inevitable, sinking, however, was only their secondary concern; they judged, by the driving of the ship, that they were making towards the land, and that, in the darkness of the night, they should no otherwise perceive it than by striking upon it; but day-light relieved them from their uneasy apprehensions, and shewed them that the island they so much dreaded was at a considerable distance, and that a strong northern current had proved the means of their preservation. It was not, however, till after three days that the turbulent weather that had driven them from Tinian began to abate; when every man in the ship was so worn out with fatigue, that they found it impossible to man the pumps, and hand the sails at the same time. They had twice attempted to heave up the main and fore-yards, in which they had as often miscarried by the breaking of the jeers, and in

the last effort one of their best men perished. During all this time the ship was driving to leeward, and dragging her sheet anchor, the only one she had left, with two cables an end at her bows. This was a circumstance of the greatest consequence, and required a speedy remedy; for though upon a third exertion of their whole force, they had replaced their yards, they durst not, while the anchor continued in that situation, venture to spread their canvas. Some rest and refreshment became necessary before a work of such labour could be proposed to a feeble and diminished crew, who hardly consisted of 100 men. It was, therefore, five days after their departure before they could secure their anchor; and now they set their courses, and, for the first time, stood to the eastward, in hopes of soon regaining the island, and rejoining their Commander and the rest of their company; but in this they were unhappily disappointed; for having run, as they thought, the distance necessary for making the island, and being in full expectation of seeing it, they found themselves bewildered by the irregularity of the currents, and knew not what course to steer, till, after several days uncertainty, they came at last in sight of Guam, from whence they directed their course with infinite labour to Tinian, the wind being constantly against them, and the tide variable. This severe employment held till the 11th of October, when, after nineteen days absence, they appeared again in the offing, and were reinforced from the shore, to the inexplicable joy of the whole crew.

A few days after the ship was driven off, some of the people on shore cried out, A sail! and this spread a general joy, supposing it to be the Centurion returning; but presently a second sail was descried, which wholly destroyed the first conjecture, and made it difficult to guess who they were. The Commodore turning his glass towards them, saw they were two boats; and instantly concluding that the Centurion was gone to the bottom, and that those were her boats returning with the remains of her people, this sudden suggestion wrought so powerfully upon him, that to conceal his emotion, he was obliged to retire to his tent, where he past some bitter moments in the firm persuasion that all his hopes were now at an end, and that, instead of distressing the enemy, he must himself with his people fall a prey to their relentless cruelty. He was, however, soon relieved from this mortifying thought, they appearing, upon their nearer approach, to be Indian proas directing their course towards the bay, with a view, as was supposed, to relieve their countrymen, or to take on board their provisions. On this intelligence, the Commodore ordered his people to conceal themselves; but the proas, after advancing within a quarter of a mile of the shore, lay by for the space of a few hours, and probably observing some change in the appearance of the place, which might raise their suspicion that an enemy lay in ambush, they got again under sail, and steered to the southward.

After this incident an opinion began generally to prevail, that the Centurion would never more appear at this island; and that she was either lost, or forced upon the coast of China, from whence, in her crazy condition, it would be impossible for her ever to return. Though the Commodore did not apparently give into this opinion, yet he was not without his fears; and, therefore, to provide against the worst, he proposed cutting asunder the Indian bark which they took on their first arrival, and lengthening her in such a manner as to be capable of taking on board all who were then upon the island, and following the ship if peradventure she should be driven to Mocoa. After some hesitation, owing to the difficulty attending the execution, the men were at length prevailed upon to engage in the work, and the Commodore by his example encouraged their diligence; for, being always at work by day-break himself, it was thought a disgrace to be idle when their Chief was employed. It fortunately happened, that the carpenters both of the Gloucester and Trial were on shore, and that they had brought for safety their chests

chests of tools with them. The smith, too, was on shore with his forge, but his bellows was still in the ship. This defect occasioned some delay; but was soon supplied by the ingenuity of his shipmates, one or other of them never being at a loss for expedients on such occasions; they limed a fresh hide for leather, the carpenters shaped out a wooden frame, and a gun barrel served for a nozzle. The smith being now in readiness to prepare the iron-work, some were employed in cutting down trees, and sawing them into plank, whilst the main-body were busied in digging out a draw-dock to receive the bark, and in laying of ways to heave her up and down. All, in short, were vigorously employed; and the work went on successfully for 16 days, in which time the bark was sawn afunder, her two parts separated, and placed at the proper distance from each other; and, the materials being all in readiness before-hand, they proceeded with no small dispatch in the enlargement, insomuch that they fixed the 5th of November as the day when they should be ready to depart. The alacrity with which this business was carried on, left no room for reflection among the common sailors, though their superiors were not without their fears. They had no sea-provisions, except some jerked beef, which the Indians had prepared and abandoned when they fled, and they had a run of 600 leagues before they could presume upon a supply; they had no bread, and the bread-fruit on the island could not be preserved at sea; they wanted salt; and, what was still a more necessary article in their present situation, they wanted ammunition for their defence, in case of an attack from the enemy; for, upon the strictest search, no more than 90 charges of powder could be collected, which was short of one round a-piece for each of the company; they were, too, in an unknown sea, and wanted instruments to direct their course: in short, though the common men had no other thought but how they should get on board, the officers foresaw a thousand difficulties, which were almost insurmountable to human apprehension, but which they carefully concealed, that the main business might not be retarded.

But, in the midst of these gloomy apprehensions, which, the nearer the time of their departure approached, still became the more serious, and when all hope of seeing the Centurion at Tinian had subsided, one of the Gloucester's men, being upon a hill at a distance looking out for cattle, perceived, as he fancied, something like a ship in the clouds, which, on steadily observing it, seemed to move slowly towards the land. It was not long before he was sensible of its approach, and persuading himself it was the Centurion, he in an extasy ran towards the landing-place, crying to his comrades, The ship! The ship! This being heard by the nearest, was echoed from mouth to mouth till it reached the spot where the Commodore was at work, who, on hearing the joyful news, threw down his axe, and joined in the general transport. In a few hours the Centurion appeared in the offing, and a boat with 18 men was sent off to reinforce her, and to carry fresh meats, fruits, and refreshments, for the crew. In the afternoon of the 11th of October she happily cast anchor, the Commodore went instantly aboard, and the joy and congratulations on that occasion were equally sincere and mutual.

The labour of the artificers was now at an end, and another kind of employment succeeded, which was that of laying in water for the remainder of the voyage. Now also hunting, shooting, setting and every device that could be contrived to catch live cattle, hogs, and poultry for stores, took place; while, at the same time, the Commodore and officers amused themselves with traversing the island, and examining more minutely its several parts. In one of these excursions, being on a rising ground, they observed, in a valley beneath them, the appearance of a small thicket, which, by attending to it, seemed to have a progressive motion, as indeed it had; but was no other than a parcel of cocoa-bushes trailed upon the ground by persons concealed beneath

them. From this uncommon circumstance, it was immediately concluded, that the Indians, whose boat they had surprized upon their first arrival, must be the persons who were dragging the bushes, and that it could not be far to the place of their concealment; they therefore kept their eye upon them, and traced them to their cell; but, to their surprize, when they came to enter it, they found it abandoned, though all things were ready prepared for dinner, and stood smoaking hot on a table of turf. The officers, having in vain endeavoured to track them, returned, and, with an appetite increased by the keenness of the pursuit, sat down to that meal which the poor hungry savages had abandoned. It consisted of felled sparrows, cocoa-nuts, and bread-fruit; all which they found ready drest, and in quantity as much as they all could eat.

On the third day after the second arrival of the ship, the Commodore being on board, a sudden gust of wind arose, and again brought home our anchor, and drove us out to sea. Our chief officers were now all on board; and only about 70 of our men, with a midshipman or two to command them, were employed on shore in filling water and catching cattle. Of these about 30 came off to us in the cutter, and the eighteen-oared barge was sent for the rest; but they not being in readiness, and the ship quickly driving out of sight, it was no longer in their power to join us. However, as the weather soon proved favourable, and we were now stronger and healthier than at our first disaster, in about five days we regained the road, and anchored safe in our former station. On our return we found the Spanish bark restored to her old dimensions, and the parts brought together, and in good forwardness to be completed; for the few remaining people, despairing of the return of the ship, had determined to follow her to her destined port. We now laboured indefatigably to get in our water, in order to sail, in which service two of our men employed in the well unfortunately perished; for the sides of the well being loose earth, by the carelessness of those above, in not properly attending the filling, the bank gave way by the weight of a heavy cask, and both that and the bank fell in upon them together. Some other misfortunes happened through haste in raising the casks to the ship; yet, notwithstanding, being such as are generally accounted trifling on board a man of war, our watering went on so successfully, that by the 20th of October, it was completed; and on that day leave was given for a man from each mess to go ashore, and gather as many oranges, lemons, cocoa-nuts, and other fruits of the island, as should be sufficient for us all while at sea. This being accomplished, the Spanish bark set on fire, the men returned on board, and the boats hoisted in, on the 21st we set sail; and the wind being fair, and the weather moderate, nothing remarkable happened till we arrived on the coasts of China, except that while we were passing by the rocks of Vele Rete, near the south end of the island Formosa, we were alarmed by a cry of fire on the forecattle, which brought the whole crew together in the utmost confusion, so that it was difficult for some time to reduce them to order; but, as soon as discipline took place, and a proper examination could be made, it was found to proceed from the furnace, where the bricks, being over-heated, had begun to communicate the fire to the wood-work, which, had it not been timely discovered, might have been of the most dreadful consequence; but, as it fell out, it was extinguished with the greatest facility, and the brick-work so secured, that no accident of the like kind could again happen.

From the island of Formosa we directed our course so as to fall in with the coast of China, to the eastward of Pedro Blanco, as that rock is generally esteemed the best direction for ships bound to Mocoaj; and, on the 6th of November we fell in with it, when we were presently surrounded by an incredible number of fishing-boats, which covered the surface of the sea as far as the eye could reach. Nor was this swarm of fishing vessels peculiar to that place; for, as we ran on to the westward, we found them as abundant on every other

part of the coast. From among these we had no sort of doubt of procuring a pilot to Mocoa; but, when we thought ourselves near it, though we tempted them with shewing them bags of Spanish dollars, for which, it is said, a Chinese would sell his father, yet not one of them would venture to come on board us, nor give us the least intelligence; neither did our ship, the like of which, so armed and fitted, had never before appeared upon their coasts, seem to excite in them any curiosity: they continued their fishing with the same apparent indifference as if any trading ship had been passing by; and, when we made them signals, they disregarded them as much, though they certainly understood them, as if we had been only in sport. The next day, however, about two in the afternoon, as we were standing to the westward within two leagues of the shore, still surrounded as before, we observed that a boat a-head of us waved a red flag, and blew a horn. This we apprehended was a signal for us, and accordingly we hoisted out our cutter, and sent to know the meaning of it; when we presently discovered our mistake, and that it was only the usual notice to leave off fishing, which the whole fleet instantly obeyed. Being thus disappointed, we kept on our cruise till we came to a group of islands, round the westernmost of which we were directed to pass, and then to haul up. While we were thus employed, a Chinese pilot came on board, and in broken Portuguese undertook to pilot us into harbour for 30 dollars, and on the 12th of November anchored us safe in Mocoa-road; where the first thing we did was to salute the fort, and to send to the Portuguese Governor to advise with his Excellency in what manner to behave to avoid giving offence to the Chinese. The difficulty the Commodore principally apprehended related to the port charges usually paid by ships in the river Canton, from which charges, men-of-war are exempted in every port of Europe, and which the Commodore was determined not to be forced to pay in this. In the evening the boat returned with two officers, who delivered it as the Governor's opinion, that, if the Centurion ventured into the river of Canton, the duty would most certainly be expected; and, therefore, if the Commodore approved of it, he would send a pilot to conduct the ship into another harbour, called the Typa, where it was probable the port charges would never be demanded. To this proposal the Commodore agreed, the pilot was sent, and the ship safely moored.

Next day the Commodore paid a visit in person to the Governor, to solicit a supply of provisions, and of naval stores to refit the ship. The Governor very frankly acquainted the Commodore, that he durst not openly furnish either the one or the other; for that he himself neither received provisions for his garrison but from day to day, by permission from the Chinese government, nor any thing else but what his present necessities required: however, he assured the Commodore in a friendly manner, that he would give him all the assistance in his power. On this declaration, the Commodore determined to go to Canton himself, to procure a licence from the Viceroy to purchase a supply, and, with this view, hired a Chinese boat for himself and his attendants to carry them into port: but just as they were ready to embark, the Hoppo refused to grant them a permit; nor would he, notwithstanding all the interest the Commodore could make, withdraw the prohibition, till he was threatened to be compelled to it by force. This operated when fair means had failed; a permit was next day sent on board, and the Commodore proceeded to the English factory to consult with the principal officers there about the cautions that were to be used, lest the factory should suffer by violent measures, which he was solicitous to avoid. They advised him to transact the business by the mediation of the Chinese merchants, who at first undertook to accomplish it; but, after trifling with him more than a month, they declared they durst not interfere in it. The merchants then undertook to procure him provisions clandestinely; but that would not suffice. Upon his

return, he found the ship so much out of repair, that he could not proceed without being hove down; he, therefore, next day wrote a letter to the Viceroy, acquainting him, that he was Commodore of a Squadron of his Britannic Majesty's ships that had been cruising in the South Seas against the Spaniards, who were at war with his nation; that his ship was leaky; that his people were in want of provisions; that he had put into Mocoa, a friendly port, for a supply, but that, being a stranger to the customs of the country, he had been unable to succeed; and, therefore, requested, that he might be permitted to employ workmen to repair his ship, and that he might be supplied with provisions at the accustomed rates at which the articles he stood in need of were generally sold. Another difficulty was now started as to the delivery of this letter, the Hoppo at first refusing to intermeddle with it; but, on the Commodore's expressing some resentment, and threatening to convey it to Canton by his own messengers, he at length undertook not only to deliver it, but to procure an answer: accordingly, though the letter was only dated on the 17th of December, on the 19th a Mandarin of the first rank, together with two others of an inferior class, and their attendants, having in their retinue 8 half galleys, decorated with streamers, and furnished with bands of music, came to a grapple a-head of the Centurion, whence the Mandarin sent in form to acquaint the Commodore, that he came by order of the Viceroy to examine the condition of the ship, and to report the same as it should appear to him upon a just survey. On this message, preparations were instantly made to receive him; in particular, a hundred of the most tightly men on board, uniformly dressed in the regimentals of the marines, were drawn up under arms on the main-deck against his arrival. When he entered the ship, he was saluted by the drums and military music, and conducted by some of the principal officers to the quarter-deck, where he was received in state by the Commodore, and then introduced to the great cabin, where he explained his commission, and presented the persons he had brought with him to take the survey. The Mandarin appeared to be a person of superior abilities, and endowed with a frankness and honesty not usually to be met with among the ordinary ranks of Chinese officers; and, being an eye-witness of the dangerous state of the leaks, and of the necessity there was for a thorough repair, he expressed his entire acquiescence in the report that had been given, and promised to lay the same immediately before the council upon his return. He was exceedingly curious in inspecting the ship, in examining her guns, and poising her great shot. He expressed his astonishment at her strength and her magnitude; and the Commodore, to increase his wonder, and shew his own power, let him know how easy it would be for him to destroy the whole navigable force of China, and lay the city of Canton in ruins; but, nevertheless, he assured him, that not the least violence should be offered, provided his wants were supplied upon reasonable terms.

At the same time the Commodore complained of the behaviour of the officers at Mocoa, who had prohibited the country people from selling provisions to his company, though they had paid for what they purchased in sterling silver. The Mandarin heard the complaint without emotion, but said it should be remedied for the future. After the business was over, dinner was ordered, and the Commodore apologized for the meanness of the fare from the difficulty he had to procure better: but the two inferior Mandarines, who were the only persons of their retinue permitted to sit at table with them, shewed no dislike to any thing set before them, except the beef, to which they have the same dislike as the Jews have to pork, from an early prejudice derived from their ancestors; of this the Commodore was not apprized, nor were they offended at its being set before them. They were, indeed, very awkward at the use of knives and forks, and it was found necessary

necessary to introduce their own servants to carve for them, before they could make an end of their dinners. But if they were deficient in their manner of eating, they were no novices in putting about the glasses; for there was not an officer at table that durst engage with them. Seeing they were fond of Frontinac, and that they presently emptied four or five bottles of it without any effect, the Commodore ordered a bottle of Citron water to be brought up, which, on tasting, they liked, and, the Commodore excusing himself on account of an illness he had not yet recovered, they clapped a ruddy-faced officer on the shoulder, and desired him to pledge them, saying, by their interpreter, they were sure he could not plead illness for declining his glass. When the bottle was out, they all rose from table, without appearing to be in the least disordered, and, after the usual ceremonies, departed, very well pleased with their entertainment.

The Commodore now impatiently expected the licence he had requested; but it was several days before it passed the necessary forms, chiefly owing to the intrigues of a Frenchman, who, having the advantage of speaking the language fluently, was at no loss in traversing the measures of the friendly Mandarin in favour of Mr. Anson; but a repetition of the threats already referred to, produced, at last, the desired effect. On the 6th of January, the licence was received, and the carpenters were set to work; but, previous to this, the prohibition was taken off, and provisions were every day brought to the ship in plenty.

It was, however, the beginning of April before the repairs could be completed, and the Chinese began to be very uneasy at their long stay. They had frequently sent messages to the Commodore to hasten his departure, not knowing or believing that he was no less in earnest to be gone, than they were to be freed from the dread of his stay. At length, on the 3d of April, two Mandarines came on board from Mocoa, with a peremptory command addressed to the Commodore, requiring him to depart; to which he made answer, in a determined tone, that he would go when he thought proper, and not when they presumed to command him. After this rebuke, however, all communication was forbidden, and no more provisions were furnished to go on board; and so strictly were those injunctions carried into execution, that from thenceforward nothing could be purchased at any rate whatever. On the 6th of April, the Centurion weighed, and warped to the southward; and, by the 15th, she was safe in Mocoa road, having completed her water as she passed along. On the 19th, she again weighed anchor, and put to sea.

But long before this, that is, some time in November, Captain Saunders, Commander of the *Trial's* prize, took passage on board a Swedish ship with dispatches from the Commodore to the government. And soon after, that is, about the middle of December, Captain Mitchell, Colonel Crackerode, Mr. Tafwell, with his nephew Mr. Charles Herriott, and the Rev. Mr. Walter, embarked on board the company's ships on their return home. About this time we received the first news of the safe arrival of the *Severn* and *Pearl* (the two ships of our squadron that parted from us in doubling Cape Horn) at Rio Janeiro, on the coast of Brazil. The *Severn* had been remarkable for the extraordinary sickness that had been more fatal on board her than on board of any other in the whole squadron, inasmuch that her hands had been twice recruited from the Centurion during her voyage to the straits of Le Maire; and yet when she parted company she wanted hands to navigate her in a storm, which was the reason of her return. It was from the knowledge of this uncommon mortality that prevailed among the crew, that the Commodore concluded the *Severn* to be lost. The news, therefore, of her and the *Pearl's* safety was received with the greater pleasure, as we had long entertained an opinion that both of them had perished. But to return from this digression:

From the 1st to the 15th of April, we had stormy weather, with heavy rains and such amazing and ter-

rifying claps of thunder and flashes of lightning as nothing of the kind I had ever seen or heard bore any proportion to. This was upon the breaking-up of the easterly monsoon, when such storms are usual in the country, accompanied sometimes with dreadful gusts of wind, called here by the name of Tulloons, of the effects of which the Chinese relate wonderful stories.

While we were warping out of the harbour, the Commodore went on shore to Mocoa, to take leave of the Portuguese Governor, who had, to the utmost of his power, behaved in a very friendly manner; and, at his coming from the fort, he was saluted with 15 guns.

During our stay we had entered about 20 fresh hands, being chiefly Lascars, Persians, and Dutchmen; so that our whole complement, when we sailed, amounted to 224 men and boys, among whom were some of all nations, languages, and religions.

Being now at sea, we were some time in a state of uncertainty what course the Commodore intended to steer. He gave out at Mocoa, that he was bound to Batavia, and thence to England; but his real design was very different. The project the Commodore had resolved upon in his own mind, was, to cruise for the annual ship from Acapulco to Manilla; and, not discouraged by his former disasters, he determined again to risque the casualties of the Pacific Ocean, and to take his station off Cape Spirito Santo on the island of Jamal, being the first land the Acapulco ships always make in approaching the Philippines.

Being now at sea, it was no longer necessary to conceal this project; he therefore summoned all his people on the quarter-deck, and in a short but spirited speech, informed them of his design; which was received by them with the most expressive tokens of general approbation; and such a confidence of succeeding distressed itself through all the ship's company, that the Commodore, who had taken some Chinese sheep to sea with him for his own provision, enquiring one day of his butcher, why he had lately seen no mutton at his table? the man replied drily, that in truth there were only two sheep left, and these, with his honour's leave, he proposed to reserve for the entertainment of the General of the galleons.

When the Centurion left the port of Mocoa, she stood for some days to the westward; and, on the first of May, passed the island of Formosa; and, steering to the southward, on the 4th in the evening they came in sight of the Bather Islands, which they suspected to be wrong laid down by Dampier, and from observation found them 25 leagues too far to the westward. On the 20th of May, they came in sight of Espirito Santo. As it was known there were centinels placed upon the Cape to make signals to the Acapulco ships, the Commodore immediately tacked, and ordered the top-gallant-sails to be taken in, to prevent a discovery; and this being the station in which he proposed to cruise, he fixed the limits between the latitude of 12 deg. 50 min. N. and 13 deg. 5 min. the Cape itself lying in 12 deg. 40 min. N. and in 4 deg. of east longitude from Point Tobago Xima. It was now the time when the Manila ship was every hour expected; for they seldom or never fail of making land in the month of June, and sometimes sooner, and it was now the last day of May; according to their stile, when the Commodore took his station.

It were tedious to entertain the reader with the various conjectures, surmises, doubts, and anxieties, that agitated the minds of the people on board, from the day they came in sight of the Cape till the day that Mr. Charles Proby, a midshipman, called out from the mast-head, A sail! This was on the 20th of June, just one month after their arrival at the Cape. There did not remain a doubt but that it was one of the galleons (for two were expected this year, as none had been permitted to sail the year preceding); and the Commodore accordingly stood towards her. At half after seven in the morning, they could see her from the deck, at which time she fired a gun to leeward, and took in

her top-gallant-fails, as a signal, as it was then supposed, to her consort; but in reality, as a signal to her own people to prepare for action. The Commodore was surprized to see her steadily pursue her course, and was now in no fear of losing sight of her, as at noon he could fetch her wake. Her consort not appearing, it was concluded they had parted company; and it now became visible, that the galleon did not intend to fly, but to fight. Every preparation had been previously made on board the Centurion, and all hands properly instructed; so that every man on board repaired to his post with as much regularity and unconcern as if preparing for a review. Thirty of the best marksmen lined the tops; two men placed themselves at a gun to load them; and gangs of ten men each were appointed to go from gun to gun, to run them out, and fire them as fast as they were loaded. A constant running fire was by this means kept up, and no interval allowed for the enemy to stand to their guns in safety, as is common when whole broadsides are discharged at once.

About one in the afternoon, the galleon hauled up her fore-fail, and brought to under top-fails, with her head to the northward, hoisting Spanish colours, and having the standard of Spain flying at the top-gallant-mast-head. About the same time the Centurion hoisted her broad pendant and colours, being within gun-shot of the enemy; and the Commodore, seeing them clearing their decks of their cattle and lumber, gave orders to fire the chase-guns, to disturb them in their work. The galleon returned the fire with two of her stern-guns, one of which carried away one of our fore-throuds, and our fore-stay tackle, which could not have been done by an ordinary ball. The Centurion setting her sprit-fail fore and aft for boarding, the galleon, out of a bravado, did the same. Soon after, the Centurion shot a-breast of the enemy within pistol shot, and now the engagement became hot. For the first half hour the Centurion over-reached the galleon, and lay on her bow, and, by the wideness of her ports, could traverse almost all her guns upon the enemy, whilst the galleon could only bring a part of hers to bear upon the Centurion in return. In the heat of the action, the mats with which the galleon had stuffed her netting took fire, and burnt violently, blazing up near as high as the mizzen-top. This accident threw the enemy into the utmost terror, and also alarmed the Commodore, for fear the galleon should be burnt, and for fear he himself might suffer by being closely grappled by her. Happily, however, that danger was averted, and the fire extinguished, by cutting away the netting, and letting the whole tumble into the sea. All this while the Commodore kept his still advantageous position, firing with great regularity and briskness; while at the same time the galleon's decks lay open to our top-men, who, having at their first volley driven the Spaniards from their tops, made prodigious havoc with their small arms, killing or wounding every officer but one that appeared upon the quarter-deck, and wounding in particular the General of the galleon himself. Thus the action continued for more than half an hour; but then the Centurion lost the superiority of her situation, and came close along-side of the galleon, when the enemy continued their fire with great activity for near an hour longer; yet, even in this position the Commodore's grape-shot swept their decks so effectually, and the number of the dead and wounded became so considerable, that they began to fall into great confusion, especially as the General, who was the life of the action, was no longer able to exert himself. The disorder was so great, that their officers were seen from the Centurion running about to prevent the desertion of their men from their posts; but all their endeavours were in vain; for, after having, as a last effort, fired five or six guns with more judgment than usual, they yielded up the contest; and, the galleon's colours being singed off the ensign-staff at the beginning of the engagement, she struck the standard at the main-top-gallant-mast-head; but even this office would have been at the peril of the man's life, had not the

Commodore, observing what he was about, given express orders to leave off firing.

The Commodore, when the action was ended, resolved to make the best of his way with his prize to the river Canton, being in the mean time fully employed in securing his prisoners, and in removing the treasure from on board the galleon into the Centurion. His first business was to commission the ship, and put her under the command of proper officers: Lieutenant Saumarez was appointed Captain, and was immediately ordered on board to take possession of his charge.

But, just as the galleon had struck, the officer who commanded between decks came up, seemingly to congratulate the Commodore on his conquest, but at the same time privately whispered to him, that the Centurion was dangerously on fire near the powder-room. It seems one of the lads called powder-monkeys, being heedless, a cartridge that he was carrying blew up in his hands; this fired another, and that three of the lower-deck guns on the off side of the ship, which being happily loaded and laid down for service, and the ports hauled up to vent the smoke, they did not occasion the least mischief; however, the cartridges and guns together raised such a smother, that it was at first doubtful whether it proceeded from the explosion, or from a part of the ship being on fire. In fact, upon examination, it was found to proceed from both; for, part of a cartridge having fallen between the planks of the ceiling, close abt by the scuttle of the Chaplain's cabin, not only a considerable smoke issued out, but a very sensible heat, and, had it not been immediately extinguished, the consequence would have been dreadful: to be brief, a few pails of water seasonably applied did more than all the water of the ocean could have effected after an hour's delay.

This alarm being thus happily subsided, we draughted out 50 of our people (of whom myself was one) to board and man the prize. I had heard we had killed them 60 men, and wounded as many more, and expected to have seen the horrid spectacle of mangled limbs, dead carcasses, and decks covered with blood; but no such spectacle appeared; a party having been properly stationed, during the time of action, to walk away the blood, and to throw the dead over-board. We found, however, many desperately wounded, and among them the General, who had received a musket-ball in his breast, and was so ill, or pretended to be so ill, that it was judged unsafe to move him from his cabin; but all the other officers, together with the passengers of note, were sent on board the Centurion. Among the latter was an old gentleman, Governor of Guam, who was going to Manila to renew his commission, and who had scarce mounted the Centurion's side before he was received with open arms by Mr. Crooden, Captain of marines, who 36 years before, at the battle of Almanza, had been his prisoner, and honourably used by him. These two renewed their old acquaintance, and Captain Crooden had a long-wished-for opportunity of returning the favours he had formerly received, and which he gratefully remembered.

The ship, upon examination, was found to contain to the value of more than a million and a half of dollars, was called the *Nuestra Señora de Cabañonga*, Don Jeronimo de Montero, Commander, by nation a Portuguese, and accounted the most intrepid officer employed in the Spanish mercantile service; and, indeed, in my opinion, he was more brave than prudent; for, surely, no wise man, intrusted with such a cargo, six leagues to the windward of a man-of-war purposely stationed to intercept him, would have borne down upon his enemy, and braved him to his teeth, when, with the advantage of the wind, he might have gone safe to port, from whence he was not more than 10 or 12 leagues distant, and where he might then have set his pursuit at defiance.

His galleon was indeed larger than the man of war, was pierced for 64 guns, but had only 36 mounted, most of them 12 pounders, and 17 of them brass; the

was about, given ex-
 ction was ended, re-
 with his prize to the
 me fully employed in
 moving the treasure
 he Centurion. His
 e ship, and put her
 officers: Lieutenant
 n, and was intine
 e possession of his

ack, the officer who
 o, seemingly to con-
 onquest, but at the
 in, that the Centu-
 the powder-room.
 nder-monkeys, being
 carrying blew up in
 that three of the
 of the ship, which
 for service, and the
 they did not occa-
 he cartridges and
 , that it was at first
 n the explosion, or
 fire. In fact, upon
 ed from both; for,
 ween the planks of
 e of the Chaplain's
 ke issued out, but a
 been immediately
 d have been dread-
 feasonably applied
 ocean could have

ided, we draughted
 l was one) to board
 e had killed them
 e, and expected to
 ngled limbs, dead
 lood; but no such
 g been properly
 to wash away the
 board. We found,
 , and among them
 mulker-hall in his
 o be so ill, that it
 n his cabin; but
 the passengers of
 ion. Among the
 or of Guam, who
 commission, and
 on's side before he
 Croodlen, Captain
 the battle of Al-
 honourably used by
 acquaintance, and
 for opportunity of
 rly received, and

found to contain
 d a half of dollars,
 Cabadonga. Don
 y nation a Portu-
 officer employed
 d, indeed, in my
 dent; for, surely,
 argo, six leagues
 ropely stationed
 down upon his
 when, with the
 gone safe to port,
 o or 12 leagues
 re set his puluer

the man of war,
 nly 36 mounted,
 them brals; the
 had,

London: Published by J. Hoag at the Kings Arms, Near St. Dunstons Church.



*The Engagement of the
 CENTURION and ACAPULCO.
 off Cape Espiritu Santo, in which
 the latter was taken.*

had,
and
gags
arm
sides
larly
quar
lace
plac
with
and
men
all o
A
prife
the p
ing
earli
into
fo th
reaf
lays
rich
wou
fons
the
abov
of th
fene
coul
beat
for c
that
degr
coul
man
of ft
as fo
the l
frif
frick
ings
who
muc
hot,
tion,
keep
it wa
durin
who
the C
hum
mod
being
was l
dispa
O
till th
flom
lawn
O
Hlan
dicat
fo fa
weat
voyag
Chin
of M
Cant
the c
was
way
take
feem
from
that
that
fruct
gris,
No

had, besides, 28 petaroes, in her gunwale, quarters, and tops, carrying each a 4lb. ball; and, before the engagement, she mustered 640 men capable of bearing arms, officers, and passengers included. She was, besides, well furnished with small arms, and was particularly provided against boarding, both by her close quarters, and by a strong net-work of two-inch rope laced over her wale, and fortified with half-pikes placed in the manner of cheveaux de frize; but, notwithstanding all her defences, she had 64 men killed, and 84 wounded, whilst the Centurion had only two men killed, and a lieutenant and 16 men wounded, all of whom recovered, one man only excepted.

And now the Commodore learnt from some of the prisoners, that the other ship, which he had kept in the port of Acapulco the year before, instead of returning in company with this, as was expected, had sailed earlier in the season than usual, and was probably got into Manila before the Centurion set sail from Mocoa; so that, notwithstanding our present success, we had reason to regret the loss of time occasioned by the delays of the Chinese, which prevented our taking two rich prizes instead of one; though, to say the truth, it would not have been an easy task to dispose of the prisoners, which, even as it fell out, was a matter that gave the Commodore no small disquietude; for they were above double the number of our own people; and some of them observed, when they were brought aboard, how slenderly we were manned; and the General himself could not help expressing his indignation to be thus beaten by a handful of boys. It was therefore necessary for our own preservation to prevent their rising; and that could not be securely effected without exercising a degree of severity which in any other circumstances could not have been justified on the principles of humanity; for there was no method practicable but that of flogging the men in the holds of the two ships; and as for the officers, 17 in number, they were confined in the First Lieutenant's cabin, under a guard of six men, still depriving them of their arms, and then keeping a strict watch on all their motions. Indeed, the sufferings of the common men, such of them in particular who were not employed in navigating the ship, were much to be pitied; for, the weather being extremely hot, the stench of the holds loathsome beyond conception, and their allowance of water but just sufficient to keep them alive, being only a pint a day for each man, it was next to a miracle that not a man of them died during their confinement, except five of the wounded, who expired the very night they were brought aboard the Centurion. Thus circumstanced, the motives of humanity, as well as interest, strongly urged the Commodore to hasten his return to China; and the prize being much damaged, both in her hull and rigging, it was found necessary to take her in tow for the quicker dispatch.

On the 21st of June it blew a storm, which continued till the 25th, when the sea ran mountains high: in this storm the Centurion lost her long-boat, and the prize a launch.

On the 2d of July we passed between the Bashee Islands, though the rippling of the sea seemed to indicate breakers or rocky ground; but the wind being so far to the northward as to render it difficult to weather them, we risked the danger to shorten the voyage. On the 8th of July we made the coast of China, and on the 11th came to an anchor off the city of Mocoa; from thence we proceeded to the river of Canton, where we met with the usual obstructions from the custom-house officers, and where the Commodore was again obliged, as it were, absolutely to force his way to his intended station. The officer who came to take the dimensions of his ships, in the usual manner, seemed astonished when he talked of being exempted from the accustomed rates, and gave him to understand that the Emperor's duty must be paid by every ship that came into his ports; and the pilot had private instructions not to carry the ships through the Boeca Tygris, or narrow pass that forms the entrance into the

No. 44.

river of Canton, till security was given for the accustomed charges.

And here it may be necessary just to mention, that this pass, not more than a quarter of a mile in breadth, is defended by two forts on the opposite sides; but these the Commodore disregarding, and being determined to enter the river without delay, as the stormy season was approaching, he caused the pilot to be brought before him, and in a determined tone threatened to hang him to the yard-arm, if he did not instantly rake charge of the ship, and carry her safe, without striking ground, through the Boeca Tygris into the open river. The poor pilot performed his office, but did not escape punishment for what he could not help. He was instantly seized on being released from the Centurion, committed to prison, and rigorously disciplined with the bamboo. However, he found means to get access to the Commodore afterwards, to supplicate a recompence, who, ever ready to reward the sufferers in his service, gave him such a sum as more than contented him for his whipping. Nor was the poor pilot the only sufferer; for the Governors of the forts were both displaced for not preventing what it was in vain for them to attempt to oppose, and for not doing what all the council must know was impossible to be done.

On the 16th the Commodore sent his Second Lieutenant to Canton, with a letter to the Viceroy, assigning his reasons for putting into that port, demanding a licence for purchasing provisions and stores, and intimating an intention of waiting upon his Excellency in person to make his acknowledgements. The Lieutenant was civilly received, and promised an answer the next day. In the mean time, the principal officers of the prize desired permission to go to Canton on their parole, which was readily granted. These no sooner arrived, than they were called before the magistracy, and examined; when they generously and frankly acknowledged that they fell into the hands of the Commodore by the chance of war, and that though they were prisoners, they were notwithstanding at liberty to treat for their release: they said farther, that it was not the custom among European nations to put prisoners to death; but that the laws of war authorized much severer treatment than they had hitherto met with from their conquerors. This confession from an enemy had great weight with the Chinese, who, till then, though they had revered the Commodore's naval force, had yet suspected his morals, and had considered him rather as a lawless free-booter, than as one commissioned by the state for the revenge of public injuries.

On the 20th of July, three Mandarines with their retinue came on board, and brought the Viceroy's permit for a daily supply of provisions, and for pilots to carry the ships up the river as high as the second bar; and, at the same time they delivered a message from the Viceroy, in answer to that part of the Commodore's letter which related to his visiting his Excellency; the substance of which message was, that the Viceroy wished the Commodore to defer his visit till the hot season was over, but that in September, when the weather would be more temperate, he should be glad to receive him. This the Commodore looked upon as a finesse, knowing an express was sent up to the Emperor's court at Peking; whence the real motive for putting off the visit seemed to be to gain time to receive the Emperor's instructions concerning the ceremony to be observed at his reception. The Mandarines, having dispatched this part of their commission, next entered upon the business of the port charges; whereupon the Commodore at once cut them short, by telling them, that, as he did not come to trade, he was not to be treated upon the same footing with trading ships; that his Britannic Majesty's ships never paid customs in the ports of Europe, nor ever would be subject to any pecuniary imposts in any other port whatever. Finding nothing to be gained on this head, they told the Commodore, that they had still another matter in charge, and that was the release of the prisoners taken on board the galleon; for that the Emperor would never permit

4 Z

the

the subjects of princes with whom he was in alliance to be held in bondage in his dominions, nor could the Viceroy answer it to his Sovereign if he suffered it; and that, therefore, his Excellency hoped that the Commodore would give immediate orders for their release.

Though nothing could be more agreeable to the Commodore, who wanted much to be rid of the incumbrance, than this requisition, yet, to enhance the favour, he at first raised difficulties; but at length suffered himself to be prevailed upon by their intreaties, and concluded, by assuring them, that, to shew his readiness to oblige, he would deliver up the prisoners whenever the Viceroy would please to order boats to fetch them. Matters being thus adjusted, the Mandarines departed: and, in a few days, two Chinese junks were sent from Canton to carry them to Mocoa, under the direction of one Captain Fial, Commander of a Spanish merchant-man, to whose ship we gave chase in our passage from the Bashee Islands to Mocoa, but lost sight of her in the night.

To this gentleman the General of the galleon, and all his officers, except one who accompanied us to England, were delivered up. And now I have occasion to mention the General, I cannot help relating an affair which gave us on board the prize a great deal of concern, and sufficiently shewed the meanness of his spirit, and his beggarly craft. I have already taken notice of his being wounded in the engagement, and of his being indulged with the use of his own cabin till he was fit to be removed. The Commodore over and above this indulgence, sent him a surgeon from his own ship, upon a complaint that the Spanish surgeon on board the galleon was quite ignorant in his profession; but at the same time he sent an officer to demand his commission. Preceding to the officer that he was unable to move, he referred him to a small box in a locker of his private cabin, in which, he said, it was, and likewise a sword-belt set with diamonds of great value, his own property; but, upon search, neither the commission nor the belt could be found; and, as some of our people had been rummaging both that and other parts of the ship, he protested, that, if they could not be there found, they must have been taken away and concealed. Under colour of this concealment, though he never produced his commission, he all along received the most humane and gentlemanlike treatment that the most worthy officer could desire or expect; and such was continued till his departure, when neither his chests, of which he had two very large ones, nor any of his trunks or cases were suffered to be searched: but every thing which he claimed as his personal effects were delivered to him with the greatest care and punctuality; though, as I was afterwards informed, he had many valuable ventures concealed, which ought to have been delivered up as prize to the captors; but, as that was never examined into, he carried them off with the rest, and, it was supposed, was not the least among the gainers by the capture of his ship. He persisted, however, to the last in the loss of his commission and belt, and, though there were none on board on whom he could charge the theft, yet the Commodore sufficiently expressed his displeasure against the whole by the prohibition he laid upon us, as soon as the prize came to an anchor in the river, by which all communication was cut off between us and the country people, and no boat suffered to come near us but our own; by which severe order we were entirely debarred from purchasing our own provisions and necessaries from the Chinese, which the people in the Centurion were at full liberty to do; neither could we employ the Chinese tradesmen to supply us with apparel, of which we stood greatly in need, though in that too the Centurion's people were indulged: and all this for no other reason, that was ever assigned, but that, if the jewels the General had lost were concealed, the Commodore was determined the secreter should have no opportunity of disposing of them, without being discovered. Had this precaution been taken, as it ought, for the satisfaction of those who suffered under the severity of the censure, and had the effects of

the Spanish General been properly inspected, the secreter would have been publicly exposed; for, when we afterwards fell down to Mocoa with the ships, where we sold the prize, I was myself told by an Irish priest, that the General had both his commission and his belt; that he made no secret of the matter at Mocoa; and that he had offered the jewels (being only made up by way of blind) among the merchants for sale.

But to return: during our stay in the river Canton, our people were employed in repairing the Centurion, over-hauling her sails and rigging, cleaning and ventilating her decks and quarters below, and in paying and decorating her hull; inasmuch, that when the came to sail, she had more the appearance of a ship newly fitted out, than one that had been a three years voyage in traversing the globe. While these things were doing on board the Centurion, we in the prize were busied in rummaging for treasure, till about the latter end of August, when we made a full end of our search, and found, upon account of the captors, in specie, 1,278,546 dollars, and 1,324 of wrought plate and virgin silver. The jewels we found were not then valued.

At the same time that the inferior officers and seamen were employed in these different services, the Commodore had a still more important business in hand. He knew it was impossible for us to proceed to Europe without an ample supply of provisions and other necessaries; and, though we were furnished with a daily allowance, yet no order had been obtained for victualling us for our intended voyage. Application had indeed been made, and terms agreed upon with the contractors to furnish whatever was necessary; and they had undertaken to procure the Viceroy's permission for the delivery; but when, about the middle of September, the proper officer was sent to enquire what forwardness these things were in, he found that neither the baker had begun to bake the bread, nor the butcher to kill the oxen, nor was the least step taken to comply with any one article of the agreement. We could no otherwise account for this faithless procedure of the Chinese, than by supposing they meant to starve us into a compliance with their accustomed demands for port charges, with which the Commodore was determined never to acquiesce. Indeed, it was suspected, that the contractors themselves had some interest in promoting the delay, though it was not easy to penetrate the views by which they were influenced, as it may with truth be asserted, that in artifice, falsehood, and attachment to all kinds of lucre, the Chinese, as a nation, are not to be paralleled by any other people under the sun. It were endless to recount all the artifices, extortions, and frauds, which were practised on the Commodore and his people by this interested race. The method of buying provisions in China being by weight, the tricks made use of to make them heavy are almost incredible. At one time a number of fowls and ducks being bought for the ship's store, the greatest part of them presently died, which spread a general alarm on board lest they should have died of poison; but, on examination, it was discovered that they had been crammed with small stones and gravel to increase their weight. The hogs too, bought of the Chinese butchers ready killed, were found to have had water injected into the carcasses for the same purpose; and when, to avoid this cheat, the hogs were bought alive, it was found that salt had been given them to increase their thirst, that methods had been used to suppress their urine, and that the tortured animals had been sold in that inflated state. Mr. Walter adds — [for it is on this authority that these instances are reported] — that, as the Chinese never scruple to eat the animals that die of themselves, they contrived, by their secret practices, when the Commodore put to sea, that part of his live sea-store should die in a short time after it was put on board: in order, therefore, to make a second profit of the dead carcasses which they expected would be thrown over-board, they followed in boats to pick up the carrion; and, accordingly, two thirds of the hogs dying before they were out of sight of land, their labour could not be in vain.

The treachery of the contractors being now discovered, the Commodore determined to renew his former requisition for an audience with the Viceroy. With this view, he notified his intention to the proper Mandarin, and desired that he would fix the time with the Viceroy when he would be pleased to receive him; at the same time giving him to understand, that, on the first of October, he intended to proceed in his boat to Canton. The Mandarin returned for answer that he would acquaint the Viceroy with the Commodore's intentions. As it was apprehended, that the payment of the customary duties would be demanded at this interview, the Commodore took the necessary precautions to prevent the Chinese from facilitating the success of their pretensions by having him in their power at Canton, and, therefore, gave the command of the Centurion to his First Lieutenant Mr. Brett (now Sir Piercy), with orders, if he should be detained, to lie at the mouth of the river, and suffer no ship or boat to pass or repass till he was released, by which the whole navigation of the river would be immediately obstructed.

This being known to the Chinese, they were now more than ever embarrassed in their deliberations. The morning of the 1st of October arrived, and just as the boats crew, eighteen in number, which the Commodore proposed to take with him, appeared in their uniform, namely, scarlet jackets and blue silk waistcoats, the whole trimmed with silver, with silver badges on their jackets and caps, his linguist came to him from the Mandarin, to tell him, that a letter had been received from the Viceroy, desiring the Commodore to defer his intended purpose for two or three days, which not being doubted, the men were ordered to be undressed, and the preparations were all laid aside; but, in the afternoon of the same day, another linguist came on board, seemingly in a great panic, informing him, that the Viceroy had expected him up that day; that the council was assembled, and the troops under arms to receive him; and that the Viceroy was highly incensed at the disappointment, and had sent the Commodore's linguist to prison, chained, supposing him to be the sole cause of the contempt. This plausible tale gave the Commodore great uneasiness, not at that time suspecting any imposition; and though it afterwards appeared to be all a mere farce, yet the falsehood was so well supported by the artifices of the Chinese merchants, that three days afterwards the Commodore received a letter, signed by all the Supercargoes of the English ships then at the place, expressing their uneasiness at what had happened, and intimating their fears that some insult would be offered to his boat, if he attempted to come to Canton before the Viceroy was fully satisfied of the mistake. To this letter the Commodore replied, that he did not believe there had been a mistake, but was persuaded it was a largess of the Chinese to prevent his visiting the Viceroy; that, therefore, he would certainly come up to Canton on the 13th of October, confident that the Chinese would not dare to offer him any insult, as well knowing, should want neither power nor inclination to make them a proper return.

On the 13th of October, the Commodore continuing firm to his resolutions, all the Supercargoes of the English, Danish, and Swedish ships, came on board the Centurion, to accompany him to Canton, for which place he set out in his barge the same day, attended by his own boats, and by those of the trading ships, which on this occasion were sent to augment his retinue. As he passed by Wampo where the European vessels lay, he was saluted by all of them except the French, and in the evening he arrived safely at Canton.

The Chinese merchants, who affected to appear very much pleased that he had met with no opposition in his way, pretended that the Viceroy was then to fully employ in preparing his dispatches for Peking, that there was no getting admittance to him; but that they had engaged one of the officers of his court, as soon as he was at leisure, to notify the Commodore's arrival, and endeavour to fix the audience. Though the Commodore knew this to be a falsehood, yet he suffered

himself to be persuaded by the European Supercargoes not to appear to doubt it, provided the Chinese merchants would undertake that his bread should be baked, his meat salted, and his stores in readiness, within the space of 40 days; after which time, if the least article was pretended to be forgotten, he would force his way to the Viceroy, and prefer his complaint. During the interval, while the contractors were endeavouring in earnest to fulfil the terms of the agreement on their part, (which by the bye they insisted should be paid for in advance on his), a fire broke out in the suburbs of Canton, which on the first alarm might easily have been extinguished, by pulling down some of the adjoining sheds; which the Commodore with his officers and crew observing, were instantly about to carry into execution; but they were told, that whatever they pulled down they must build up again at their own expence, and that none but a Mandarin must presume to direct upon such occasions. The Commodore, on this admonition, dispatched his people to the English factory to assist them in securing their effects, as it was easy to foresee that no distance was safe from fire, where the common people contented themselves with gazing at it, and now-and-then holding up an idol or two to extinguish it. At length, however, a Mandarin came out of the city, with 4 or 500 firemen, who made some very feeble efforts to pull down the neighbouring houses; but by this time the fire had extended itself, and had spread among the merchants warehouses, where the Chinese firemen had neither spirit nor skill to encounter it; so that it was feared the whole city would have been laid in ashes. In this emergency, the Viceroy vouchsafed to make his appearance, and a message was sent to the Commodore requesting his assistance. Accordingly, he hastened a second time, with about 40 of his people, to the place where the fire raged with the most violence, and in sight of the whole city performed such daring, and, to the people who beheld them, such astonishing feats, that they looked upon them as salamanders, and cried out, that they could live in fire. In truth, it was no uncommon thing to see the boldest and most active among them tumble on the roofs amidst the ruins of the houses which their own efforts had brought down under them. And thus, by their resolution and agility, the fire was very soon subdued, to the astonishment of the Chinese who were spectators of the wonders they performed. On this occasion the Swedish was the only European factory that suffered; yet on my arrival in England, to my no small diversion, I read in the Paris Gazette, that the city of Canton had been almost wholly destroyed; and that, in particular, the English, Dutch, Danish, and Portuguese factories had been burnt down, and almost all their effects consumed; but that the French factory had providentially escaped, their goods being all shipped before the conflagration reached the quarter allotted for their residence.

This signal assistance gained the Admiral much respect; he was the next day waited upon by the principal inhabitants with presents and thanks; and soon after, a message came from the Viceroy appointing the 20th of November for the day of audience. Being highly pleased with his last intimation, he instantly gave orders for the necessary preparations; and engaged Mr. Flint, a gentleman belonging to the English factory, for his interpreter, who, being trained up from his infancy among the Chinese, spoke their language fluently, and who was not afraid to declare with boldness what the Admiral delivered him in charge, a part which the Chinese interpreters would not have dared to have performed with equal fidelity.

On the day appointed, at 10 o'clock, the Commodore and his retinue set out; and, as he entered the outer gate of the city, he was met by a guard of 200 soldiers, who conducted him to the great parade before the Emperor's palace, in which the Viceroy then resided, where a body of troops to the number of 10,000 were drawn up under arms, who made a fine appearance, being all new clothed for this ceremony. Through the middle of this body the Commodore with his retinue marched to

the hall of audience, where he found the Viceroy seated under a rich canopy in the Emperor's chair of state, with all his council of Mandarines attending. He was seated the third in order from the Viceroy, the chiefs of the law and treasury being the only persons seated above him. He then, addressing himself to the Viceroy by his interpreter, complained to him of the delays he had met with, the insincerity of those he had employed, the vexatious impositions of the officers of the customs, the grievances of the British subjects, and, finally, the loss sustained by the Hastingsfield Indiaman, who had arrived there dismasted but a few days before the fire happened, by which the crew had been great sufferers, and the Captain in particular, who had lost a chest of treasure value 4500 tael. To the latter article the Commodore received for answer, that, in settling the Emperor's customs with that ship, the Captain should be considered. To the other complaints, the Commodore received no answer at all. And having now gone through the several articles he had in charge from the company, he entered next upon his own affairs, and particularly concerning the licence to ship off his provisions and stores, which, he said, were all ready, and the season for sailing was now set in. The Viceroy replied to this, that the licence should be immediately issued, and that every thing should be ordered on board the following day. The business being now at an end, the Viceroy continued the conversation for some time on matters of indifference and curiosity; and, after observing that the Centurion had been long on their coast, he concluded with acknowledgments for the services the Commodore had rendered the Chinese nation by the activity of his people at the late fire, and with wishing him a prosperous voyage to Great Britain. Thus happily concluded this long-expected audience; and, in pursuance of the Viceroy's promises, the provisions were begun to be shipped the very next day: and now all the preparations for putting to sea were pursued with so much expedition, that by the 9th the Centurion and her prize were ready to unmoor, and on the 10th passed through the Bocca Tygris into the open road, and on the 12th anchored before the town of Mocoa. While they lay here, the Portuguese merchants entered into treaty with the Commodore for the purchase of the prize, for which they would give no more than 6000 dollars, though worth double that sum; but the impatience of the Commodore to be gone, that he might himself be the messenger of his own good fortune, and thereby prevent the enterprizes of the enemy to intercept him, prevailed upon him to conclude the bargain; and, she being delivered on the 15th of December, and the money received, in the afternoon of the same day he hoisted sail, and took his departure for his native home. On the 3d of January he came to an anchor on Prince's Island, in the straits of Sunda, where he staid the best part of five days to wood and water, and on the 8th weighed and continued his course. From this time till the 20th we had foul and stormy weather, so bad that I thought it impossible to meet with such in latitudes so near the Equator; and the wind blowing directly against us, we were driven pretty near the coast of New Holland; and, had it continued blowing from the same quarter, with equal violence, for 48 hours longer, we should have found it difficult to have cleared that coast; but, on the 21st, the wind abated, and the weather became moderate. On the 24th the trade-wind set in, and we then proceeded on our passage with the highest alacrity.

On the 22d of February, at half after four in the morning, I discovered a comet to the eastward, near the horizon, being, as I judged, lately emerged from the sun's rays. Its tail was at this time about 10 deg. in length; but in less than a fortnight it increased and extended itself to near 40 degrees. Its head appeared very large and bright; and, on a nice inspection, I have perceived it when the sun has been about a diameter above the horizon. The next time I observed its distance from the planet Venus to be 26 deg. 50

min. following the order of the planets; but not having instruments proper for taking altitudes without a very obvious sensible horizon, I was prevented from making more satisfactory observations. From this time, till the 6th of March, we had pleasant weather, with few exceptions; but on that and the three following days, being near the Cape of Good Hope, we had some boisterous storms; yet, when we arrived at Table-bay, on the 11th, the Dutch knew not that any such had happened. We found riding here two English East-Indiamen, the Salisbury and Warwick, each of which saluted us with 13 guns, and we returned 11. We also found five Dutch ships, one of which having, as Admiral, a flag at his main-top-mast-head, saluted us with 9 guns, to which we returned 7. At 11 at night we parted our belt bower cable and hawser, both of which were very rotten, and the next day moored again with others purchased from the Dutch. Here the Commodore continued till the beginning of April, highly delighted with the place, and during his stay entered about 40 new men. On the 3d of May, having completed our water and provisions, we on that day weighed and put to sea. On the 19th of April we passed within sight of the island of St. Helena, which, however, we did not visit. On the 26th we caught on board the ship a snake that measured in length six feet and two inches, which our surgeon, on examination, pronounced to be perfectly harmless. It was supposed to be brought on board with our wood, at Prince's Island, in the straits of Sunda. The 30th, being before the wind, with a fine breeze, and a gentle rain, a violent and sudden squall took us a-head, threw all the ship's sails a-back, carried away her fore-top-sail yard, split the fore-sail, the fore-top-sail, the fore-top-gallant-sail, and the mizzen and mizzen-top-sail. During this squall the ship laid down very much, and we were in the utmost danger of our masts coming by the board; but providentially we escaped without further damage.

The 9th of June, in the evening, it being a thick fog, we on a sudden saw a ship close by us; we fired a shot, and brought her to. She proved an English ship from Amsterdam, bound for Philadelphia or Carolina, with Palatine emigrants. She gave us the first notice of a war with France, and proceeded on her voyage. The 10th of June we came into foundings. The 11th, at half past eleven in the morning, we discovered three sail, and at one in the afternoon spoke with one of them, being a Dutch ship from Dublin. At the same time, the second being pretty near us, shewed Dutch colours. The third, who had been in chace of the others the whole day, perceiving we designed to speak with her, stood from us with all the sail she could crowd. We gave chace to her for about three hours, when finding we did not gain upon her, we resumed our former course. On the 12th, in the morning, the fog clearing up, we perceived the Lizard Point: but that the signal perils, which had so often threatened us, and from which we had been more than once providentially delivered, might be discoverable to the last, we were afterwards told that there was a French fleet of considerable force cruising in the chops of the Channel, through the middle of which we had this night sailed without being perceived.

On the 13th, between the Isle of Portland and the Isle of Wight, we saw a ship towing another which was disabled in her masts. This ship proved the Salamander privateer, with a French prize. The 14th, at eleven in the morning, we anchored at the back of the Isle of Wight, and in the evening weighed, and again anchored at Spithead. Thus we finished a long and perilous voyage, which had lasted three years and nine months, after having by its events, as Mr. Walter observes, strongly evinced this important truth, "That though prudence, intrepidity, and perseverance, united, are not exempted from the blows of adverse fortune, yet, in a long series of transactions, they usually rise superior to its power, and in the end rarely fail of proving successful."

Having now brought this celebrated voyage to a conclusion,

conclusion, it may, perhaps, be expected that we should give some account of the Spanish Squadron, which we have more than once had occasion to mention, and which was so near intercepting the Commodore at first setting out, that had the Spanish Admiral cruised to the eastward of the island of Madeira, instead of the westward; or if, the two fleets must have certainly met; and, in that case, whatever had been the event of the action, the progress of the voyage must have been effectually prevented.

This Squadron was composed of the following ships: the *Asia*, of 66 guns, 700 men, commanded by Don Joseph Pizarro, as Admiral; the *Guipuscoa*, 74 guns, 700 men; the *Hermiona*, 54 guns, 500 men; the *Esperanza*, 50 guns, 450 men; the *Estevan*, 40 guns, 350 men; and a patache of 20 guns, 120 men; and over and above this complement, they had on board an old Spanish regiment of foot, intended to reinforce their garrisons in the South Seas, and to counterbalance the land forces that it was known were intended to be put on board the Commodore.

When this fleet had cruised, as has been said, to the leeward of Madeira, till they were in a manner certain that the Commodore had either passed by, or deferred his voyage, their Admiral determined to pursue his instructions, and continue his course to the South Seas; but first, it was necessary to steer to the coast of Brazil to recruit his provisions, being victualled only for four months, and more than two of the four being already elapsed.

Accordingly, about the beginning of November, 1790, he quitted his station off the Madeiras, and, on the 3^d of January following, arrived at the river of Plate; where coming to an anchor in the bay of Maldonado, he sent immediately to Buenos Ayres for a supply.

While they lay here, they received intelligence, by the treachery of the Portuguese Governor of St. Catherine's, of the Commodore's arrival at that port, and of the weak condition he was then in; but, whatever were his reasons, Pizarro declined making any other use of this intelligence, than halting his preparations to double the cape, which he hoped to effect before the Commodore was in readiness to follow him. With this view, after refreshing his crew, and recruiting his water, he instantly set sail without waiting for his provisions (which, however, arrived a day or two after he set sail), rightly concluding, that if he got the start of the Commodore in the South Seas, he should not only alarm the coast, but so strengthen the forts against the attacks of the enemy, as effectually to baffle their designs, by depriving them of the means of procuring necessaries. But, notwithstanding this precipitation, the Commodore put to sea four days before him, and, in some part of the passage round the Cape, the fleets were so near each other, that the *Pearl*, as has been said, being separated in a storm, ran within gun-shot of the *Asia*, before she found her mistake.

It was with the utmost difficulty, and not without considerable rewards, that the Spanish sailors were prevailed upon to undertake the passage round Cape Horn at that tempestuous season; however, being once engaged, they continued to persevere, till by the latter end of February they had run the length of the Cape, and were turning to the westward, when a storm arose, in which the *Guipuscoa*, *Hermiona*, and *Esperanza*, lost sight of the Admiral, and on the 6th of March the *Guipuscoa* was separated from the other two. On the 7th the storm increased, and by its irresistible violence drove the whole Squadron to the eastward, and, after several unsuccessful efforts, obliged them to return to the coast of Brazil, where the *Asia* took shelter in the river of Plate, and about the middle of May was joined by the *Esperanza* and *Estevan*; the *Hermiona* having, as was supposed, foundered at sea, as she was never more heard of, and the *Guipuscoa* being run ashore and sunk on the coast of Brazil. The patache, we should have observed, was condemned before they quitted the coast of Brazil, and her crew distributed among the other ships; so that of the six ships of which this

No. 45.

Squadron originally consisted, there now only remained three, and those in a most miserable condition; for, though it does not appear that the Spaniards were so severely visited with that most fatal disease the fea-furvy, which carried off so many of the English in this passage, yet they were reduced by famine to such infinite distress, that rats, when they could be caught, were sold for four dollars a-piece; and a sailor, who died on board, had his death concealed for several days by his brother, who during that time lay in the same hammock with the dead corpse, only to receive the dead man's allowance.

In this dreadful situation, they were alarmed by the discovery of a conspiracy among the soldiers on board the *Asia*, to murder the Admiral, and all the ship's crew, originating from no other motive but that of appropriating the whole stock of provisions to the conspirators own proper use. But this plot was prevented, when just upon the point of execution, by means of the priest on board, who, having taken the confession of one of the conspirators as he lay at the point of death, pursued proper measures to defeat their bloody purposes, and to bring three of the ringleaders to condign punishment.

But, though this combination failed of its effect, there were other distresses that multiplied upon them, and which could not be prevented. Hunger and thirst, the most dreadful of all other calamities, daily became more grievous; the ships grew continually more and more leaky, and the men less able to stand at the pumps; nothing was to be seen but despondency in every countenance; nothing heard but lamentations and complaints, which were embittered by the absolute impossibility of relieving them. Under the weight of these affecting circumstances, the *Asia* was near sinking, when she arrived at Monte Vedio with scarce half her crew alive. The *Estevan*, when she anchored in the bay of Barragan, had in like manner lost about the same number of her hands; but, what was still worse, and is almost incredible, the *Esperanza*, out of a crew of 450 seamen which she brought from Spain, had only 58 that reached the shore, and the whole regiment of soldiers, 60 men only excepted, perished.

Being now in want of all kinds of necessaries, masts, yards, rigging, provisions, and money, Pizarro dispatched an express over land to St. Jago, in Chili, to be from thence forwarded to the Viceroy of Peru, desiring a remittance of 200,000 dollars; and what must astonish the reader is, that the Indian who was charged with this dispatch, though in the depth of winter, when the Cordilleras are judged impassable by reason of the snow, was only 13 days in his journey from Buenos Ayres to St. Jago, places distant from each other 300 Spanish leagues. At the same time an advice-boat was sent with a letter of credit to Rio Janeiro, to purchase what was wanting of the Portuguese; but neither the one nor the other of these dispatches succeeded to the wish of the Spanish Admiral. The Viceroy, instead of 200,000 dollars, sent him only 100,000; and the Portuguese, instead of furnishing him with masts and yards, the principal articles of naval stores that he wanted, spared him only some pitch, tar, and cordage, with which he was obliged to be contented: but a more mortifying disappointment he had still to suffer; for a carpenter, whom, after the return of the money, he had trusted with a considerable sum, and whom he had sent up into the country of Paraguay to cut masts, instead of prosecuting the business with which he was entrusted, married in the country, and settled out of his reach, refusing to return.

In this dilemma, the only thing that could be done, was, to shift the masts of the *Esperanza* into the *Asia*, and to fit up the *Estevan* with what spare masts and yards they could muster, and with these two ships to hazard a second attempt to double Cape Horn, as it was now summer, and the weather less severe. But a certain fatality seemed to preside over every part of this unfortunate expedition. The *Estevan*, as she was coming down the river Plate, ran on a shoal and beat off her rudder; and the *Asia*, though she proceeded alone

5 A

with

with moderate weather and a favourable gale, yet when she came to the height of Cape Horn, and was tacking to change her course to the westward, by some misconduct in wearing the ship, rolled away her masts, and was a second time forced back to the river of Plate; from whence Pizarro undertook to cross the continent by land, and with some difficulty accomplished his design.

By this time Don Minduetta, Captain of the Guipuscoa, wrecked, as has been said, on the coast of Brazil, arrived, with those of his crew who escaped, at the place of general rendezvous; and, finding the Esperanza without masts, applied a second time to the Portuguese, by whose assistance he completed her repair, and, in 1742, doubled the Cape, and arrived in the South Seas, where he was met by Pizarro, who claimed the command of the Esperanza, which Minduetta disputing, an irreconcilable quarrel arose between the two Commanders, which the Viceroy of Peru in vain endeavoured to reconcile. In 1745, they both returned over land to the coast of Brazil, where they found the Asia still in a shattered condition. This ship, however, they determined to carry to Europe, and, with this view, they fitted her up in the best manner they could; and, having manned her partly with Portuguese, partly with English prisoners, and partly with Spaniards, together with some Indians whom they forced out of the country, they set sail from Monte Vedio for Europe about the beginning of November; but they had not been long at sea before the Indians, eleven in number, formed a conspiracy to destroy the Spaniards, and to regain their liberty, in which they had hopes of being joined by the English and Portuguese, whom the Spaniards used with great insolence. At the head of this conspiracy was their Chief Orellana; and one evening, about nine o'clock, he and his companions came all together on the quarter-deck, and drew towards the door of the great cabin. The boatswain immediately reprimanded them, and ordered them to be gone; on this Orellana spoke to his followers in his native language, when four of them drew off, two towards each gangway, and the Chief and the remaining six seemed to be slowly quitting the quarter-deck. When the detached Indians had taken possession of the gang-way, Orellana placed his hands hollow to his mouth, and bellowed out the war-cry used by those savages. This was the signal for beginning the massacre; accordingly, the six, with their Chief, who remained on the quarter-deck, falling sud-

denly on the Spaniards who were intermingled with them, laid near forty of them at their feet, of which above twenty were killed on the spot; and the rest disabled. Many of the officers, in the beginning of the tumult, pushed into the great cabin, where they put out the lights, and barricaded the door; whilst the rest, some endeavoured to escape along the gang-ways into the fore-castle, where the Indians placed on purpose stabbed the greatest part of them as they attempted to pass by; others threw themselves into the waste, and thought themselves fortunate to lie concealed amongst the cattle; but the greatest part escaped up the main-shrouds, and sheltered themselves either in the tops or the rigging; and though the Indians attacked only the quarter-deck, yet the watch in the fore-castle finding their communication cut off, in the utmost terror likewise gave all over for lost, and in great confusion ran up into the rigging of the fore-mast and bowsprit. But when the Indians had intirely cleared the quarter-deck, the tumult in a great measure subsided; for, not being joined, as they expected, by either the English or Portuguese, they could not pursue their advantage by carrying the disorder into those quarters to which they had driven the Spaniards, who thereby gained time for recollection; and, on finding none concerned in the plot but the Indians, they resolved to attack them in their turn on the quarter-deck. With this view, Pizarro and his officers ventured to half-open the cabin-door, which Orellana attempting to force, was shot dead by Minduetta; on which his faithful followers, abandoning all thoughts of further resistance, instantly leaped into the sea. Thus was this insurrection quelled, and the Spaniards suffered afterwards quietly to proceed on their voyage; and, about the beginning of 1746, they arrived safe in Spain, after having been absent between four and five years.

By this unfortunate expedition the naval force of Spain was much weakened: they lost in it 3000 of their best sailors, one whole regiment of veteran soldiers, four stout ships of war, and a patache; for we have observed that the Hermiona foundered at sea; the Guipuscoa was stranded and sunk on the coast of Brazil; the St. Estevan was condemned and broke up in the river of Plate; and the Esperanza, being carried into the South Seas, was unable to redouble the Cape, or to return back; so that the Asia alone may be regarded as all the remains of that squadron with which Pizarro first put to sea.



A NEW, AUTHENTIC, and COMPLETE ACCOUNT OF
A VOYAGE Round the WORLD,

UNDERTAKEN and PERFORMED

By Sir FRANCIS DRAKE, in the PELICAN,

HAVING UNDER HIS COMMAND

The ELIZABETH, MARYGOLD, SWAN, and CHRISTOPHER Frigates:

Performed in the Years 1577, 1578, 1579, and 1580.

BEFORE we proceed to the relation of the particular Voyages that characterize the navigators who first surrounded the globe, and who immortalized their names by their skill and their courage, it may be expected that we should give some account of their families and first setting out, the distinguished marks of genius that led them to prefer the fatigues and dangers of a sea-faring life to learned ease, or the calm pursuit of less hazardous employments; and that we should trace the steps by which they rose to eminence by their bravery and their conduct.

The bare narration of the incidents recorded in a single voyage, however memorable, would convey but a very imperfect knowledge of the general character of those renowned heroes, who carried the glory of their country to the remotest regions of the earth. We shall, therefore, endeavour to follow them as they advance to fame, and accompany them from their highest elevation to that period when all distinctions are levelled.

The celebrated mariner, of whom we are now to give an account, was son to Edmund Drake, a gentleman of Tavistock, in Devonshire, who, being inclined to the doctrine of the Protestants, at that time much opposed by Q. Mary, was obliged to quit his place of residence, and retire to Medway, in Kent; where, after that Queen's death, he was first appointed Chaplain in the royal navy, and afterwards Vicar of Upnor. In these employments, his appointments being small, and his family large, he owed the education of several of his children to the kindness of his relations, and that, in particular, of Francis, the eldest of twelve, to Sir John Hawkins; under whom, as it appears, he very early distinguished himself, and laid the foundation both of his fame and his fortune.

The learned Camden, indeed, informs us, that he was put apprentice to the master of a small trading vessel, in whose service he behaved so well, that his master, dying a bachelor, left him his vessel as a reward for his diligence: but Stowe, who seems better informed, represents him in a superior light; tells us, that Francis Russel, afterwards Duke of Bedford, was his godfather; and that Sir John Hawkins was his near relation. What Camden relates of Francis may, however, be true of his brother; for there were no less than four who were bred to the sea.

Be this as it may, the first enterprize of consequence, in which we find him engaged, was in a voyage to the

West-Indies, as Captain of the Judith, under his relation already mentioned. Those islands having but lately been discovered, and very little frequented by the English, were thought so much to abound in wealth, that no voyage thither could fail of being recompensed with great advantages. Nothing was talked of among the mercantile or adventurous part of mankind but the beauty and riches of the new world. Fresh discoveries were frequently made; new countries and nations, never heard of before, were daily described; and it may easily be concluded, that the relators did not lessen the merit of their discoveries, by suppressing or diminishing any circumstance that might produce wonder, or excite curiosity.

This was the age of enterprize and discovery; and her Majesty encouraged the ardour of her subjects by furnishing ships and commissions to such officers of distinction in her royal navy as were willing to engage in hazardous pursuits.

The projects, however, that were formed, were not always successfully carried into execution; they were frequently defeated by the ignorance of the adventurers, but more often by the malice of the Spaniards, who, from the first discovery of America, considered every other nation that attempted to follow them, as invaders of their rights, and encroachers on their territories. At that time, however, as now, it was no uncommon thing for those who went in search of new discoveries, to carry on a kind of contraband trade with the new settlers; which, though prohibited by the Crown of Spain, was yet countenanced by the Viceroy and Governors; but even those would sometimes take advantage of the power lodged in their hands, and make prize of the profits of the voyage, under pretence of an illicit trade.

Among those who suffered most by the injustice of the Viceroy, was Sir John Hawkins; who, having struck out a new trade, highly advantageous to the parties concerned, though disgraceful to humanity, supplied the Mexican Spaniards with slaves from Africa, and received from them, in return, large remittances in gold and silver. This was connived at, though we do not find that it was absolutely tolerated by the Spanish court.

It was, however, after one of those successful voyages, in which we find two of the Queen's ships engaged (namely, the *Jesus*, commanded by Hawkins, as Admiral;

Admiral, and the Minion, of which Captain John Hampton was Commander; with four other armed trading ships, (among which was the Judith, Captain Drake), that, being driven by stress of weather into the port of St. John d'Ulloa, in the bay of Mexico, they were there waiting for a supply of provisions, when the Spanish fleet from Europe arrived, consisting of 12 sail, richly laden with European merchandize, and on board of which was a new Viceroy.

As the port was then absolutely in the power of the English, it was debated, among the principal officers, whether the Spanish fleet should be suffered to enter; as their Admiral suspected, that, if they were admitted, they would contrive some means of distressing him; and if they were not, they must perish at sea;—a consequence he could by no means justify.

Upon mature deliberation, it was therefore judged safest to propose an agreement with the Viceroy, to which he consented, and by which it was stipulated, that the English should hold one side of the harbour, and the Spaniards the other; and that hostages should be given on both sides, that no injury should be done to either. But it was soon discovered, that, though on the part of the English, six gentlemen were sent, yet, on that of the Spaniards, the hostages were only common men, finely dressed. This gave cause of distrust; yet the English, naturally honest, were not sufficiently on their guard.

The Spaniards for some weeks behaved with seeming cordiality; mutual civilities passed between the officers of both nations; and the English having supplied their wants, were preparing to depart, when, all of a sudden, at a signal given, the Spaniards assaulted their ships as the officers were at dinner, boarded the Minion by a concealed ambuscade, which, however, was repulsed with loss, and then a general massacre ensued. The English who were on shore were all put to death; three of the four trading ships were presently sunk; and the Minion and Jesus were so embarrassed by their moorings, that it was almost a whole hour before they could be placed in a posture of defence; which, however, was at last effected. They then returned the attack with so much fury, that the Spanish Vice-Admiral was soon blown up, and in her perished 300 men; and not long after the Spanish Admiral himself was sunk. The Spaniards, in revenge, set two of their ships on fire to burn the Minion and Jesus, the first of which set sail and escaped; but the Jesus, after shifting her crew on board the Judith, fell a victim with the rest to Spanish treachery.

In the night, the Judith having made her escape, endeavoured, but in vain, to join the Minion; and being only a bark of 50 tons, alone, on a hostile coast, crowded with men, and having only provisions on board for her own slender crew, a mutiny arose among the mariners, and by far the greatest number insisted on being put on shore, chusing rather to take their chance among the savages, than to remain on board to starve at sea, or again to fall into the power of the merciless Spaniards.

Accordingly, Captain Hawkins gave every man his choice, either to land on the continent, or sail with him, and share his fate. About 100 of the stoutest seamen chose the former; of whom five only lived to return to England. These gave an account, that, on their landing, the natives, mistaking them for Spaniards, fell upon them suddenly, and killed eight of their number; that, after they were known to be enemies to the Spaniards, they were used with kindness; that, however, being tired of living among savages, they agreed to part, and seek the means of returning home; some directed their course to the northward, and watched the opportunity of seizing a small vessel, and, crossing the Gulph, traversed an immense tract of land, till they arrived at a French settlement in the North; of those who travelled westward, which was by far the greatest part, sixty-five fell into the hands of the Spaniards, and suffered various torments from the Inquisition, three were burnt alive, and two only survived to

reach their own country. Of those who followed the other course, five found means, after enduring incredible hardships, to get to Nova Scotia, of whom three were brought safe to England in French merchant ships.

It was in the above engagement that Captain Drake first distinguished himself; and to his judicious conduct, that those who escaped from the Jesus owed their preservation. The Judith had the good fortune to arrive safe in England, having purchased some provisions on the Island of Cuba; but what became of the Minion we have not been able to learn.

In this expedition Sir John Hawkins lost an immense sum. It was in vain to make complaint to his sovereign of the infraction of the peace. The Spanish minister vindicated the injustice of the Viceroy; and the Queen, though she secretly resented the loss of her ships, could not openly abet the illicit trade carried on by her servants.

Drake, who shared in the misfortune of his relation, possessed both his spirit and his industry. He did not sit down to lament the loss he had sustained; but, having acquired some degree of credit by his gallant behaviour, and some knowledge of the weakness and wealth of his enemies, he determined to profit by his losses, and to make reprisals whenever a fair opportunity should offer.

It was no difficult matter to engage new adventurers in new projects in those early days of Mexican commerce, and Drake was not long before he raised a fund to begin trade on a new footing. In 1570 he made his first expedition, chiefly on his own account, with two ships, the Dragon and the Swan; and the next year in the Swan alone; in both which voyages he enlarged his experience, but it does not appear that he repaired his loss.

In 1572 he found means, however, to fit out a much greater force, in order to carry into execution an enterprise which he had meditated, not only to retaliate his fortune, but to revenge the treachery of his enemies.

About this time war was agitating between England and Spain, to which it must be confessed the illicit trade carried on to the Spanish settlements not a little contributed. He, therefore, set sail from Plymouth in the Pafcha, a letter of marque ship, of 70 tons, accompanied by the Swan of 50 tons, the command of which he entrusted to his brother John; in both which ships he had embarked 73 choice men, with a year's provisions, and such warlike stores and ammunition as he judged necessary for the enterprise he had in view. He had, likewise, the precaution to take with him the frames of two or three small pinnaces, that, if any accident should befall either of his larger ships, he might have it in his power to preserve the crew without being driven to the necessity of leaving any of them behind; a precaution which experience had taught him in the unfortunate voyage of his kinsman Sir John. But this was not the only use for which he foresaw these small vessels would be wanted, as will appear in the sequel.

With this warlike force, inconsiderable as it may now appear, he cleared the land of England on the 12th of May, 1572; and, the weather continuing fair, and the wind favourable, on the 29th of June he passed between Dominica and Guadaloupe, and on the 6th of July came in sight of the high land of Santa Martha; then continuing his course to the southward, on the 15th of the same month both ships arrived at Port Pleasant, which lay at a convenient distance from Nombre de Dios, the place of their destination.

Here he proposed to build his pinnaces, and was going ashore with a few men unarmed; when, discovering a smoke at a distance, he made the signal for another boat to follow him with an armed force. Being joined by this reinforcement, he marched towards the fire, where he found a plate of lead nailed to a tree, with an inscription engraven upon it by one Garret, an Englishman, who had left that place a day or two before, and had taken that method of informing him that the Spaniards

wards had been advertised of his intended visit, and of his rendezvous at that port; and that, therefore, it would be prudent for him to make but a very short stay.

Drake, surprized, no doubt, at the news, but at the same time knowing how convenient this place was for his designs, and considering that the hazard, and waste of time, which could not be avoided in seeking another station, was equivalent to any other danger which was to be apprehended from the Spaniards, determined to follow his first resolution; only, for his greater security, he ordered a kind of pallisade or fortification to be made, by felling a number of large trees, and laying the trunks and branches one across another, on an elevated spot that commanded the river. This done, he set the carpenters to work; and while they were employed in putting the frames of the pinnaces together, one Captain Raufe happened to touch at the same port, with a bark of 50 men. To Raufe, Drake imparted his design; and, when the pinnaces were ready, both set sail together, shaping their course to Nombre de Dios. They touched at the Island of Pinos, where they were informed, by the negroes they found there, that the inhabitants of that place were in daily expectation of some soldiers, which the Governor of Panama had promised to send, to defend them from the Symerons, or five negroes, who, having escaped from the tyranny of their masters, had settled themselves under two kings, or leaders, on each side of the passage between Nombre de Dios and Panama; and not only asserted their natural right to liberty and independence, but endeavoured to revenge the cruelties they had suffered, and had lately put the inhabitants of Nombre de Dios into the utmost consternation. These negroes the Captain set on shore on the main land, so that they might, by joining the Symerons, recover their liberty, or at least might not have it in their power to give the people of Nombre de Dios any speedy information of his intention to invade them. Then, selecting 53 men from his own company, and 20 from the crew of his new associate Captain Raufe, he embarked with them in his new pinnaces, and set sail for Nombre de Dios.

On July the 28th, at night, he approached the town undiscovered, and dropt his anchors under the shore, intending, after his men were refreshed, to begin the attack; but, finding that they were terrifying each other with formidable accounts of the strength of the place, and the multitude of the inhabitants, he determined to hinder the panic from spreading farther, by leading them immediately to action; and, therefore, ordering them to their oars, he landed without any opposition, there being only one gunner upon the key, though it was fortified by six brass cannon of the largest size. But the gunner, while they were employed in throwing the cannon from their carriages, alarmed the town, as they soon discovered by the bells, the drums, and the noise of the people.

Drake, leaving twelve men to guard the pinnaces, marched into the town with little or no opposition: After a short skirmish, the forces that the alarm had hastily drawn together were soon dispersed, except a few whom he detained as prisoners, in order to show him the Governor's house, and also the store-house, where the mules that bring the silver from Panama were unloaded.

Being now in full possession of the town, he posted the main of his small body under the command of his brother, in the market-place; and then followed the guides, with the rest, to the store-house; where, forcing the door, and entering the room where the silver was deposited, they found it heaped up in bars, in such quantities as almost exceed belief, the pile being, as they conjectured, seventy feet in length, ten in breadth, and twelve in height, each bar weighing between thirty and forty-five pounds. It is easy to imagine, that, at the sight of this treasure, nothing was thought of, by the English sailors, but by what means it might best be conveyed to their boats; and, doubtless, it was not easy for

Drake (who, considering their distance from the shore, and the number of their enemies, was afraid of being intercepted in their retreat) to hinder his men from encumbering themselves with so much silver as might have retarded their march, and obstructed the use of their weapons; however, by promising to lead them to the King's treasury, where there were gold and jewels to a far greater value, and where the plunder was not only more portable, but nearer the shore, he persuaded them to follow him (not, however, without every man his bar), and rejoin the main body in the market-place. Here he found his little troop much discouraged by the apprehension, that, if they staid any longer, the enemy might gain possession of their pinnaces, and that they should then, without any means of safety, be left to stand alone against the whole force of that country. Drake, not indeed easily terrified, but sufficiently cautious, sent to the harbour to examine the ground of their fears, and to learn if the same panic had taken possession of the men whom he had left to guard his boats; but, finding no foundation for these dreadful apprehensions, he persisted in his first design, and led the troop forward to the royal treasury. In their way there fell a violent shower of rain, which wet some of their bow-strings, and extinguished many of their matches (spring-locks for muskets not being then invented); a misfortune which might soon have been repaired, and which, perhaps, the enemy might suffer in common with them; but which, however, on this occasion, very much embarrassed them, as the delay produced by it repressed that ardour which, sometimes, is only to be kept up by continual action.

It was in vain for Drake to expostulate, or to represent the disgrace of returning in rags, after having the chief treasure of the world within their power; he therefore reproached their cowardice, set before their eyes the imminent danger to which they would inevitably be exposed, if they failed to behave like men anxious for glory, and zealous for the honour of their country. Animated by these incentives, they resumed their former spirit, and, pushing briskly forward, the whole company followed till they arrived at the treasury, which they instantly forced. Having thus far succeeded, Drake committed the care of the riches to his brother, and Oxenham, of Plymouth, (a man known afterwards for his bold adventures in the same parts) while he, with the main body, should again return and reconnoitre the market-place, and disperse any parties of the Spaniards that might be forming into a body to oppose their progress. With this view, as he was advancing, his strength suddenly failed him, and he fell down speechless.

Then it was that his companions perceived a wound in his leg, that he received in the first encounter, but hitherto concealed, lest his men, easily discouraged, should make their concern for his life a pretence for returning to their boats. Such, however, had been his loss of blood, as was discovered upon nearer observation, that it had filled the prints of his footsteps; and it appeared scarce credible, that, after such an effusion, life should remain. The bravest were now willing to retire; neither desire of honour, or of riches, was thought to prevail in any man over his regard for his leader.

Drake, whom cordials soon restored to his senses, was the only man who could not be prevailed on to leave the enterprize unfinished. It was to no purpose that they advised him to submit to go on board to have his wound dressed, and promised to return with him to compleat their design. He well knew how impracticable it was to regain the opportunity when it was once lost, and could easily foresee that a respite of but a few hours would enable the Spaniards to recover from their consternation, to assemble their forces, reset their batteries, and remove their treasure. What he had undergone so much danger to obtain, was now in his hands, and the thoughts of leaving it untouched was too mortifying to be patiently borne; however, as there

was little time for consultation, and the same danger attended their stay in that perplexity and confusion, as their return, they bound up his wound with his scarf, and, partly by force, partly by intreaty, they carried him back to the boats, in which, with what treasure they were able to bring off, they all embarked by break of day. Then taking with them, out of the harbour, a sloop laden with wines, they went to the Bastimento's, an island about a league from the town, where they staid two days, to recover the wounded men who had been hurt in the first rencounter, and to regale themselves with the wines they had taken, and with the fruits that grew in great plenty in the gardens of that island.

During their stay here, there came over to that island a Spanish gentleman, sent by the Governor with instructions to enquire whether the Captain was that Drake who had before been on their coast; whether the arrows with which many of their men were wounded were not poisoned; and whether they wanted provisions or other necessaries? The messenger, likewise, extolled their courage with the highest encomiums, and expressed his admiration of their daring undertaking. Drake, though he knew the civilities of an enemy are always to be suspected, and that the messenger, amidst all his professions of regard, was no other than a spy, yet knowing that he had nothing to apprehend, treated him with the highest honours that his condition admitted of. In answer to his enquiries, he assured him, that he was the same Drake with whose character they were before acquainted; that he was a rigid observer of the laws of war, and that he never permitted the arrows discharged by his followers to be poisoned. He dismissed him with considerable presents; and told him, that, though he had in part failed in this attempt, he would never desist from his design of revenging the treachery of the Viceroy of México, till he had shared with Spain the treasures of America.

He then resolved to return to the Isle of Pines, where they had left their ships, and to consult about the measures they were now to take; and, having arrived on the 1st of August at their former station, they dismissed Captain Raufe, who, judging it unsafe to stay any longer on the coast, desired to be no farther engaged in their designs. But Drake, not to be diverted from his purpose, after being cured of his wound, inquired of a negroe, whom he took on board at Nombre de Dios, the most wealthy settlements, and weakest parts of the coast, who advised the attack of Carthagena. This the Admiral seemed to approve: and, setting sail without loss of time, came to anchor, August 13, between Charcha and St. Barnard's, two islands at a little distance from the harbour of Carthagena. Then passing with his boats round the island, he entered the harbour, and in the mouth of it found a frigate with only an old man in it, who voluntarily informed him, that, about an hour before a pinnace had passed by, with sails and oars, and all the appearance of expedition and importance; that, as she passed, the crew on board her bid him take care of himself; and that, as soon as she touched the shore, he heard the noise of cannon, fired as a warning, and saw the shipping of the port drawn up under the guns of the castle. The Captain who had himself heard the discharge of the artillery, was soon convinced that he was discovered; and that, therefore, nothing could be attempted there with any probability of success. He therefore contented himself with taking a ship of Seville of 240 tons (which the relator of this voyage mentions as a very large ship), and two small frigates, in which he found letters of advice from Nombre de Dios, intended to alarm that part of the coast.

Drake, now finding his pinnaces of great use, and not having a sufficient number of sailors for all his vessels, was desirous of destroying the Swan, the ship commanded by his brother, that the others might be better manned. This, necessary as it was, could not easily be done without disgusting his company; who,

having made several prosperous voyages in that vessel, would naturally be averse to her destruction.

Drake knew that nothing but the love of their leaders could animate his followers to encounter such hardships as he was about to expose them to; and, therefore, rather chose to bring his designs to pass by artifice than by authority. He sent for the carpenter of the Swan, took him into his cabin, and, having first engaged him to secrecy, ordered him in the middle of the night, to go down into the well, and bore three holes through the bottom, laying something against them that might hinder the bubbling of the water from being heard. To this the carpenter, after some expostulation, consented, and the next night performed his promise. In the morning, August the 15th, Drake, going out with his pinnace a fishing, rowed up to the Swan; and, having invited his brother to partake of his diversion, inquired, with a negligent air, why the Swan was so deep in the water? Upon which, his brother, being alarmed, sent down his steward to learn the cause, who returned immediately, with an account that the ship was leaky, and in danger of sinking in a very little time. They had instantly recourse to the pump; but, having laboured for five hours, and gained very little upon the water, they willingly, according to Drake's advice, set the vessel on fire, and went on board the Pascha.

Finding it now necessary to be concealed for some time, till the Spaniards should forget their danger, and remit their vigilance, they set sail for the Sound of Darien, and, without approaching the coast, that their course might not be observed, they arrived there in six days.

This being a convenient place for their reception, both on account of privacy, it being out of the road of all trade, and as it was well supplied with wood, water, wild-fowl, hogs, deer, and all kind of provisions, he stayed here fifteen days, to careen his vessels, and refresh his men, who worked interchangeably, on one day the one half, and on the next day the other half.

On the 5th of September, Drake left his brother with the ship at Darien, and set out with two small vessels towards the Rio Grand, which they reached in three days, and on the 9th of the same month were discovered by a Spaniard from the land, who believing them to be his countrymen, made a signal for them to come on shore, with which they very readily complied; but he, soon finding his mistake, abandoned his plantation, where they found great plenty of provisions, with which having laden their vessels, they departed.

In the mean time, his brother, Captain John Drake, went, according to the directions that had been left him, in search of the Symérons, or fugitive negroes, from whose assistance they now entertained hopes of completing the success of their voyage; and, touching upon the main land, by means of the negroes whom they had taken from Nombre de Dios, engaged two of the Symérons to come on board his ship, leaving two of his own men as hostages for their safe return. Those men, having assured him of the affection of their nation, appointed an interview between Drake and their leaders. With this appointment Drake being made acquainted, he immediately quitted Port Plenty, so named by the English from the great store of provisions they had amassed at that place, and came, by the direction of the Symérons, into a secret bay, among beautiful islands covered with trees, which concealed their ships from observation, and where the channel was so narrow and rocky that it was impossible to enter it by night; so that there was no danger of a sudden surprize. Here they met, and entered into engagements, which common enemies and common dangers preserved from violation. But the first conversation informed the English that their expectations were not immediately to be gratified; for, upon their enquiries after the most probable means of acquiring gold and silver, the Symérons told them, that had they

known

known sooner the chief end of their expedition, they could easily have gratified them; but that during the rainy season, which was now begun, they could not recover the treasure, which they had taken from the Spaniards, out of the rivera in which they had concealed it. Drake, therefore, proposing to wait in this place till the rains were passed, built with the assistance of the Symerons, a fort of earth and timber; and, leaving his brother and part of his company with the Symerons, set out with three pinnaces towards Rio de la Hacha, being of a spirit too active to lie still patiently, even in a state of plenty and security, and with the most probable expectations of immense riches.

In their way thither, they anchored within sight of Carthagena without landing, and on the 17th of October took a Spanish bark, with which they entered the harbour in disguise; but were soon accosted by a Spanish gentleman whom they had sometime before taken and set at liberty; who coming to them in a boat, as he pretended, without the knowledge of the Governor, made them great promises of friendship, and professions of esteem. But Drake, having waited till next morning without receiving the information he had been encouraged to expect, found that all this pretended kindness was no more than a stratagem to amuse him, while the Governor was raising forces for his destruction.

This appeared more clearly on the 20th, when two frigates, well armed and manned, came out in the night with a view to surprize the pinnaces, and make prisoner of Drake; but these being discovered, and their design frustrated, Drake, when day-light approached, leapt intrepidly ashore single, in defence of their troops, which hovered at a distance in the woods and on the hills, without ever venturing to advance within reach of the shot from the pinnaces. To leap, however, upon an enemy's coast, in sight of a superior force, only to shew how little they were feared, was an act that in these times would meet with little applause: but motives of policy might influence the conduct of Drake, and make that necessary then, which now appears a ridiculous bravado. Finding the whole country adverted of his attempts, and in arms to oppose him, he might make a feint only of landing to increase their fears, and encourage their alarms, that they might keep together till he should assault them in their deserted ports; a stratagem which there is reason to think he put in practice, as he continued upon the coast till one of his vessels had only a gammon of bacon and a small quantity of bread on board for seventeen men, and till there was on board his own vessel even a greater scarcity. But resolution and success reciprocally produce each other. They had not sailed more than three leagues on their return to their ships before they fell in with and attacked a coasting vessel, which after some resistance they took, and happily found it laden with excellent provisions. He now determined to return to the Symerons, with whom, as has been said, he left his brother, and part of his force; and to attempt, by their assistance and direction, to make his way over, and invade the Spaniards in the inland parts, where they would probably never dream of an enemy.

When they arrived at Port Diego, so named from the negroe who had procured them their intercourse with the Symerons, they found Captain John Drake and one of his company dead, being killed in attempting, almost unarmed, to board a frigate well provided with all things necessary for its defence. The Captain was unwilling to make the attack, and represented to his company the madness of their proposal; but, being overborne by their clamours and importunities, to avoid the imputation of cowardice, complied to his destruction.

But this was not the only misfortune that befel this little company; for soon after many of them fell ill of the calenture, a malignant fever, very frequent in the hot climates, which carried off among several others, Joseph Drake, another brother of the Commander.

While Drake was employed in the recovery of the sick, the Symerons, who ranged the country for intel-

ligence, brought him an account that the Spanish fleet was arrived at Nombre de Dios, the truth of which was confirmed by a pinnace which he sent out to make observations. This, therefore, was the time for their journey, when the treasures of the American mines were to be transported from Panama over land, to Nombre de Dios. He, therefore, by the direction of the Symerons, furnished himself with all things necessary; and, on the third of February in the following year, set out from Port Diego. Having lost nearly twenty-eight of his company, and being under the necessity of leaving some to guard his ship, he took with him only 18 English and 30 Symerons, who not only served as guards to shew the way, but as purveyors to procure provisions.

They carried with them arrows for war, and arrows for hunting and fowling, the heads of which are proportioned in size to the game they are pursuing. For oxen, stags, or wild boars, they have arrows or javelins with heads weighing a pound and half, which they discharge near hand, and which scarcely ever fail of being mortal. Their second sort are about half as heavy as the other, and are generally shot from their bows; these are intended for smaller beasts. With the third sort, of which the heads are an ounce in weight, they kill birds. As this nation is in a state which does not set them above continual cares for the immediate necessities of life, he that can temper iron best is among them most esteemed; and, perhaps, it would be happy for every nation, if honours and applauses were as justly distributed, and he were most distinguished whose talents were most useful to society.

Every day by sun-rising they began to march, and having travelled till ten, rested near some river till twelve; then travelling again till four, they reposed all night in huts, or wigwams, which the Symerons had either left standing in their former marches, or very readily erected for them, by setting up three or four poles in the ground, and laying poles from one to another, in the form of a roof, which they covered with palmetto boughs and plaitain leaves. In the vallies, where they were sheltered from the winds, they left three or four feet next the ground open; but, on the hills, where they were more exposed to the chill blasts of the night, they thatched them close to the ground, leaving only a door for entrance, and a vent a-top in the middle for the smoke of the fire to escape.

In their march, they met not only with plenty of fruits upon the banks of the rivers, but with wild swine in abundance, of which the Symerons without difficulty killed, for the most part, as many as were wanted. One day, however, they found only an otter, and were about to dress it; at which Drake expressing his wonder, was asked by Pedro, the chief Symeron, "Are you a man of war, and in want, and yet doubt whether this be meat that hath blood in it?" For which Drake in private rebuked him, says the relator; whether justly or not, it is not very important to determine; only it shews the genius of the times when superstition prevailed, and when the greatest men were not wholly exempt from its influences.

On the third day of their march, and the 6th of February, they came to a town of the Symerons, situated on the side of a hill, and encompassed with a ditch and a mud wall, to secure it from any sudden surprize. Here they lived with great neatness, and in plenty; and with some observation of religion, paying great reverence to the cross; a practice which, the relator says, Drake prevailed upon them to change for the use of the Lord's Prayer; which however, in so short a stay, is very unlikely. Indeed, it is added, that here they strongly importuned Drake to prolong his abode, promising to double his force; but he, either thinking greater numbers unnecessary, or fearing that, if any difference should arise between them and his own men, he should be overborne by numbers, he prudently declined their invitation, and their offer of additional assistance, and that in such terms as expressed his eagerness to engage, and his confidence of success from the bravery of his followers.

The Symerons continued to conduct him on his journey, and led him through rural shades and lofty woods, which sheltered his people so effectually from the sun, that their march was less toilsome than if they had travelled in England during the heat of summer. Four of the Symerons that were acquainted with the way, went about a mile before the main body, and cut off branches as marks to direct them, for there was no beaten track; then followed twelve Symerons, after whom came the English, with the two leaders; and the other Symerons closed the rear. In this order, on the 11th of February, they arrived at the top of a very high hill, on the summit of which grew a tree of a wonderful height and magnitude, in which they had cut steps for the more easy ascent to the top, where there was a kind of alcove, to which they invited Drake, and from thence shewed him not only the North Sea, from whence they came, but the great Pacific Ocean, on which no English vessel had ever yet failed. This prospect exciting his natural curiosity and ardour for adventures and discoveries, he lifted up his hands to God, and implored his blessing upon the resolution which he that instant formed of sailing in an English ship on that immense sea.

From this stupendous mountain they descended, after having feasted their eyes with the grandest prospect the earth can furnish; and in two days came into an open level country, where their march was incommoded with the grafs, which is of a peculiar kind, consisting of a stalk like that of a bull-rosth, and a blade on which the oxen and other cattle feed till it grows too high for them to reach; then it is that the natives set the whole on fire; and it is no uncommon thing to behold vallies of immense extent in a blaze at once; from whence the cattle fly in the utmost terror, and many perish by the sudden conflagration. It might be supposed, that this burning of the soil, would, in a hot climate, check the powers of vegetation, and that it would be years before the earth could recover its fertility; but it is just the contrary; the ashes of the reeds are hardly extinguished before a new verdure begins to appear; and before a month is elapsed, the whole valley, beheld at a distance, looks as green as ever; so astonishingly wonderful are the powers of Nature on this happy soil!

When they had arrived within a convenient distance of the road from Panama, they posted themselves in a grove or wood, near which the treasure was to be conveyed from thence to Nombre de Dios. They then dispatched a truly Symeron, in the habit of a slave, properly instructed, to learn on what day the mules, on whose backs the treasure is carried, were to set out. The man was so well qualified for the service, and so industrious in the prosecution of it, that he soon returned with an account, that the treasurer of Lima, intending to embark for Europe, would pass the night following with eight mules laden with gold, and one with jewels; that it was their custom to travel by night, and to rest in the day, to avoid the heat; and that Venta Cruz was to be their first stage.

On this intelligence, they changed their situation, and immediately directed their march towards Venta Cruz, sending, for security, two Symerons, habited as before, to examine the way, who, as they passed along, perceived, by the scent of a match, that some Spaniard was before them; and creeping silently forward, surprized a soldier asleep upon the ground. They bound him, without offering any other violence, and brought him to Drake, who, upon enquiry, found that their spy had not deceived them in his intelligence. The soldier, having informed himself of the Captain's name, conceived such a confidence in his well-known clemency, that, after having made an ample discovery of the treasure that was now at hand, cautioned them likewise against being deceived by the reecos, or carriers, from Nombre de Dios, who met the others by the way, and who were hourly expected, with merchandize and provisions, but without any gold. He closed his examination with an humble petition to Drake, that, when the expected treasure should fall into his hands, he would

be graciously pleased to allow him as much of it as would maintain himself and his children during the remainder of their lives, since there would abundantly more arrive than he and his company could carry away. Drake agreed to his request, upon condition that he led him to a place of secrecy, where he could conceal his men till the time of action, and where there was no danger of the mules passing by without being perceived. This the man did, and Drake placed his ambush accordingly.

Before the time expected, the men were properly refreshed and instructed. Oxenham was appointed to head the Symerons, assisted by Pedro their leader; and Drake was to command the English. The parties were then divided; the English took the right of the way in front, and the Symerons the left at a small distance in the rear. In this manner they were posted, that one company might be in readiness to seize the hindmost mule at the same time that the other had seized the foremost; for the mules, it seems, being tied together, travel in a line, and are all guided by leading the first.

Every thing being now as well concerted as human prudence could direct, and the critical moment of action soon expected, they laid down and covered themselves in the grafs, at about eighty or ninety paces distance from the road, that the noise of their breathing might not be heard by the guard that conveyed the treasure.

They had not been more than an hour in this situation, when the bells of the mules on the left, coming from Venta Cruz, began to be heard; but previous orders having been given to meddle only with those from Panama, those from Venta Cruz were suffered to pass unmolested. Unfortunately, however, it happened, that one Robert Pike, being heated with liquor, prevailed upon the man that was next him to creep forward with him, in order to be in readiness to signalize themselves, by being the first to seize the mules from Panama. At that instant, an officer, who accompanied the reecos from Venta Cruz, perceiving white moving in the grafs (for Drake had ordered all his company to put their shirts over their clothes, to distinguish them in the night), took the alarm, and, from a walk, was observed to push his horse forward on a smart trot; and, before he had passed the hindmost ambushade, he was heard to ride along in a full gallop; but neither Drake, who commanded the English, nor Oxenham, who headed the Symerons, being apprized of the reason, had any thought of taking measures to intercept his journey.

It was not, however, long before the reecos from Panama came up, and were eagerly seized by the English in front, and secured by the Symerons, as had been agreed upon, in the rear; but, to their great mortification, they found two of them only loaded with silver, and the rest with provisions, six of those from Panama, which carried the valuable burdens of gold and jewels, being ordered back, and the like number that came from Venta Cruz sent forward in their room. The drivers were brought immediately to the Captain, and examined, who informed him, that a horseman who met them riding in haste had talked with the treasurer, and advised him to send back his gold and jewels, and suffer those only to proceed that were now in his [Drake's] power, that he might, by that cheap experiment, discover whether there was any ambush in the way.

That Drake was not less enraged than his followers at this disappointment cannot be doubted; but there was now no time to be spent in complaints. The whole country, he knew, would soon be alarmed, and all the force of the Spaniards assembled to overwhelm him; he had no fortrefs to retire to; every man was his enemy; and every road better known to the Spaniards than to himself. This was an occasion that demanded all the qualities of an hero, an intrepidity never to be shaken, and judgment never to be perplexed. He immediately considered all the circumstances of his present situation, and found that it afforded him only the choice of marching back by the same way through which he came, or forcing his passage through Venta Cruz. He foresaw many

him as much of it as children during the recess would abundantly many could carry away. Upon condition that he there he could conceal and where there was no about being perceived, placed his ambush ac-

men were properly ream was appointed to Pedro their leader; and with. The parties were the right of the way in at a small distance in were posted, that one to seize the hindmost other had seized the a, being tied together, d by leading the first. I concerted as human critical moment of acown and covered themy or ninety paces dif- of their breathing that conveyed the tra-

an hour in this situa- es on the left, coming ard: but previous or- e only with those fr- were suffered to pass iver, it happened, ed with liquor, pre- xt him to creep for- eadiness to signalize eize the mules from er, who accompanied eiving white moving ed all his company to , to distinguish them d, from a walk, was on a smart troop; and, it ambuscade, he was d; but neither Drake, Oxenham, who headed the reason, had any intercept his journey. the recoes from Pa- seized by the English as, had been agreed at mortification, they h silver, and the rest Panama, which car- and jewels, being or- that came from Venta

The drivers were ain, and examined, man who met them e treasurer, and ad- d jewels, and suffer ow in his [Drake's] experiment, disco- in the way.

than his followers at ed; but there was plains. The whole armed, and all the o overwhelm him; y man was his ene- of the Spaniards than at demanded all the never to be shaken. He immediately ia present situation, he choice of march- which he came, or Cruz. He foresaw many

many difficulties in marching back, besides the hazard of having his ships seized before his return; he, therefore, determined to pass forwards to Venta Cruz, before the enemy could be prepared to oppose him. He asked Pedro the leader of the Symérons, whether he was resolved to follow him? and, after having received from him the strongest assurance that nothing should separate them, commanded his men to refresh themselves, and prepare to set forwards. When they came to the gates of the town, they dismissed the mules they had made use of to carry their prize, and continued their march with as little noise as possible; yet they discovered that the alarm had been spread, and the forces of the town hastily drawn together, to oppose their entrance. Drake, who was not unacquainted with the behaviour of that kind of military, received their first onset, and then breaking in upon them, drove them before him without farther opposition, and was seconded by the Symérons, who could not be restrained from making plunder of the town: but Drake hastened in person to the Spanish ladies, and assured them that no injuries should be offered to them; so inseparable is humanity from true courage.

Having thus broken the spirits, and scattered the forces of the Spaniards, he continued his march to the ships without any apprehension of danger, yet with great speed, being very solicitous about the state of the crew; so that he allowed his men, harassed as they were, but little time for sleep or refreshment; but by kind exhortations, gentle authority, and a cheerful participation of all their hardships, prevailed upon them to bear without murmur, not only the toil of travelling, but, on some days, the pain of hunger. In this march, he owed much of his expedition to the assistance of the Symérons, who, being accustomed to the climate, and naturally robust, when any of the English fainted by the way, two of them would carry him between them for miles together. Nor was their valour less than their humanity, after they had learned from their English companions to despise the fire-arms of the Spaniards.

When they were within five leagues of the ships, they found a town built in their absence by the Symérons, at which Drake consented to halt, sending a Symeron to the ships with his good toothpick as a token, which, though the master knew it, was not sufficient to gain the messenger credit, till, upon examination, he found that the Captain, having ordered him to regard no message without his hand-writing, had engraven his name upon it with the point of his knife; he then sent the pinnace up the river, which they met, and afterwards sent to the town for those whose weariness had made them unable to march farther.

On February the 23d, the whole company was reunited; and Drake, whose good or ill success never prevailed over his piety, celebrated their meeting with thanks to God.

Drake, not yet discouraged, soon turned his thoughts to new projects; and, without languishing in melancholy reflections upon past misfortunes, employed himself in forming schemes for repairing them. Eager of action, and acquainted with man's nature, he never suffered idleness to infect his followers with cowardice; but kept them from sinking under any disappointment, by directing their attention to some new enterprize.

Upon consultation with his own men, and the Symérons, he found them divided in their opinions; some declaring, that, before they engaged in any new attempt, it was necessary to increase their stores of provisions; and others urging that the ships, in which the Spanish treasure was embarked, should be immediately attempted. The Symérons proposed a third plan, and advised them to undertake another journey over-land, to the house of one Pezaro, near Veragua, whose slaves brought him every day more than 200 pounds sterling from the mines, which he heaped together in a strong stone house, that night, by the help of the English, be easily forced. But Drake, being unwilling to fatigue

his followers with another journey over land, determined to steer a middle course between these variable opinions; and, manning his two pinnaces, the Bear and the Minion, he sent John Oxenham in the Bear towards Tolu, to seek provisions; and went himself in the Minion to the Cabezas, to endeavour to intercept the treasure that was to be transported from Veragua and that coast, to the fleet at Nombre de Dios; first dismissing with presents those Symérons who desired to return to their wives, and ordering those that chose to remain with him to be kindly entertained. Drake took at the Cabezas a frigate of Veragua, the pilot of which informed him, that there was in the harbour of Veragua a ship freighted with more than a million of gold; to which he offered to conduct him, being well acquainted with the soundings, if he might be allowed his share of the prize; so much was his avarice superior to his honesty.

Drake, after some deliberation, complying with the pilot's conditions, sailed towards the harbour; but had no sooner entered the mouth of it than he heard the report of artillery, which was answered by others at a greater distance; upon which the pilot told them that they were discovered, this being the signal appointed by the Governor to alarm the coast.

Drake now thought it convenient to return to the ships, that he might enquire the success of the other pinnace, which he found with a frigate that he had taken with twenty-eight fat hogs, 200 hens, and a great store of maize or Indian corn. The vessel itself was so strong and well built, that he fitted it for war, determining to make a second attempt on Nombre de Dios.

On March the 21st, he set sail with the new frigate and the Bear towards the Cabezas, at which he arrived in little more than two days, and found there one Totu, a Frenchman, with a ship of war. Having supplied his ship with water, and other articles of which he was in want, the Captain desired to join the Admiral in his new attempt, to which Drake consented, and admitted him to accompany him with 200 of his men, stipulating to allow them a proportional share of whatever booty they should acquire: yet they were not without some suspicions of danger from this new ally, he having eighty men, and they being now reduced to thirty-one. Manning, however, the pinnaces, they set sail for Rio Francisco, at which place they arrived on the 29th of March. Here they landed; and, having dismissed their pinnaces for fear of discovery; and ordered them to repair to the same place on the 4th day following, they began their march through the woods towards Nombre de Dios, and continued it with such silence and regularity as surprized the French, who did not imagine the Symérons so discreet and obedient to command as they appeared to be, and were therefore in perpetual anxiety about the fidelity of their guides: nor did the Symérons treat the Frenchmen with that submission and regard which they paid to the English, whose bravery and conduct they had already tried. At length, after a laborious march of more than seven leagues, they began to hear the hammers of the carpenters in the bay, it being the custom in that hot season to work in the night, and to rest in the day; and, in a short time, they perceived the approach of the recoes, or droves of mules, from Panama. They now no longer doubted that their labour would be rewarded, and every man imagined himself secure from poverty for the remaining part of his life; they, therefore, when the mules came up, rushed out, and seized them with an alacrity proportioned to their expectations. The three droves consisted of one hundred and nine mules, each of which carried 300 pounds weight of silver. It was to little purpose that the soldiers, ordered to convoy the treasure, attempted resistance. After a short combat, in which the French Captain and one of the Symérons were wounded, it appeared with how much greater vigour men are animated by interest than fidelity.

As it was possible for them to carry away but a small part of this treasure, after having wearied themselves with hiding it in the thickets, they determined to re-

turn by the same way they came; and, without being pursued, they traversed the woods, where the French Captain, being disabled by his wound, was obliged to stay, two of his company continuing with him. When they had gone forward about two leagues, the Frenchmen missed another of their company, who, upon enquiry, was known to be intoxicated with wine, and supposed to have lost himself in the woods by neglecting to observe the guides; but common prudence not allowing them to hazard the whole company by too much solicitude for a single life, they travelled on towards Rio Francisco, at which they arrived on the 3d of April; and, looking out for their pinnaces, were surprized with the sight of seven Spanish sloops, and immediately concluded that some intelligence of their motions had been carried to Nombre de Dios, and that these vessels had been fitted out to pursue them, which might undoubtedly have overpowered the pinnaces and their feeble crews. Nor did their suspicions stop here; but immediately it occurred to them, that their men might be compelled by torture to discover where their frigate and ship were stationed, which being weakly manned, and without the presence of the chief Commander, would fall into their hands almost without resistance, and all possibility of escaping be entirely cut off. These reflections sunk the whole company into despair; and every one, instead of endeavouring to break through the difficulties that surrounded him, resigned himself up to his ill fortune; when Drake, whose intrepidity was never to be shaken, and whose reason was never to be surprized or embarrassed, represented to them, that, though the Spaniards should have made themselves masters of the pinnace they might yet be hindered from discovering the ships. He put them in mind, that the pinnaces could not be taken, the men examined, their examinations compared, their resolutions formed, their vessels sent out, and the ships taken in an instant. Some time must necessarily be spent before the last blow could be struck; and, if that time were not neglectfully lost, it might be possible for some of them to reach the ships before the enemy, and direct them to change their station.

They were animated with this discourse, by which they observed that their leader was not without hope; but, when they came to look more narrowly into their situation, they were unable to conceive upon what it was founded. To pass by land was impossible, as the way lay over high mountains, thick woods, and deep rivers; they had not a single boat in their power, so that passage by water seemed equally impracticable. But Drake determined upon the only means of success which their condition afforded them; and, calling his men to make a raft out of the trees that were then floating in the river, offered himself to put out to sea upon it, and cheerfully asked who would accompany him. John Owen, John Smith, and two Frenchmen, who were willing to share his fortune, embarked with him on the raft, which was fitted out with a sail made of the biscuit sacks in which they had carried their provisions, and formed a kind of oar to direct its course instead of a rudder. Then, having comforted the rest with assurances of his regard for them, and resolution to leave nothing unattempted for their deliverance, he put off; and, after having with much difficulty sailed three leagues, descried two pinnaces hastening towards him, which, upon a nearer approach, he discovered to be his own; and, hailing them, proposed that they should anchor behind a point that jutted out into the sea, while he put to shore; and, crossing the land on foot, was received by his company with that satisfaction which is only known to those who have been acquainted with dangers and distresses.

The same night they rowed silently to Rio Francisco, where they embarked the whole company, with what treasure they had been able to bring with them through the woods; then sailing back with the utmost expedition, they returned to their frigate, and soon after to their ship, where Drake divided the gold and silver equitably between the French and English.

Here they spent fourteen days in fitting out their frigate more completely; during which time, the Frenchmen, with their ship, lay among the Cabezas, while twelve English and sixteen Symerons travelled once more into the country, as well to recover the French Captain, whom they had left wounded, as to bring away the treasure which they had hid in the woods. Drake, whom his company would not suffer to hazard his person in another land expedition, went with them to Rio Francisco, where he found one of the Frenchmen who had staid to attend their Captain, and was informed by him, upon his enquiries after his fortune, that, half an hour after their separation, the Spaniards came upon them, and easily seized upon the wounded Captain; but that his companion might have escaped with him, had he not preferred money to life; for seeing him throw down a box of jewels that retarded him, he could not forbear taking it up, and, with that and the gold which he had already, was so loaded that he could not escape. With regard to the bars of gold and silver which they had concealed in the ground, he informed them that 200 men had been employed in searching for them. The people, however, either mistrusting the informer's veracity, or confident that what they had hidden could not be found, pursued their journey; but, upon their arrival at the place, found the ground turned up for two miles round, and were able to recover no more than 13 bars of silver, and a small quantity of gold. They discovered afterwards, that the Frenchman who was left drunk in the woods, falling into the hands of the Spaniards, was tortured by them till he confessed where Drake and his company had concealed their plunder; so fatal to Drake's expedition was the drunkenness of his followers.

Then, dismissing the French, they passed by Carthagena with their colours flying, and soon after took a frigate laden with provisions and honey, which they valued as a great restorative, and then sailed away to the Cabezas. Here they staid about a week to careen their vessels, and fit them for a long voyage, determining to set sail for England; and that the faithful Symerons might not go away unrewarded, broke up their pinnaces, and gave them the iron, the most valuable present in the world to a nation whose only employments were war and hunting, and amongst whom show and luxury had no place. Pedro, their Captain, being desired by Drake to go through the ships, and to chuse what he most desired, fixed his eye upon a scymetar set with jewels, which the French Captain had presented to Drake for the provisions with which he had supplied him, and, being unwilling to ask for so valuable a present, offered for it four large quoits, or thick plates of gold, which he had formerly concealed in the waters; but Drake, desirous to shew him, that fidelity seldom is without a recompence, gave it him with the highest professions of satisfaction and esteem. Pedro, receiving it with the utmost gratitude, informed him, that by bestowing it he had conferred greatness and honour upon him; for, by presenting it to his King, he doubted not of obtaining the highest rank among the Symerons. He then persisted in his resolution of giving him the gold, which was generously thrown by Drake into the common stock; for he said that those at whose expenses he had been sent out, ought to share in all the gain of the expedition, whatever pretence cavil and chicanery might supply for the appropriation of any part of it. Thus was Drake's character consistent with itself; he was equally superior to avarice and fear; and, through whatever danger he might go in quest of gold, he thought it not valuable enough to be obtained by artifice or dishonesty.

They now forsook the coast of America, which for many months they had kept in perpetual alarm, having taken more than 100 vessels of all sizes between Carthagena and Nombre de Dios, of which they never destroyed any, unless they were fitted out against them, nor ever detained the prisoners longer than was necessary for their own security or concealment, providing for them in the same manner as for themselves, and protecting

tedding them from the malice of the Symérons; a behaviour which humanity dictates, and which, perhaps, even policy cannot disapprove. He must, certainly, meet with obdurate opposition who makes it equally dangerous to yield as to resist, and who leaves his enemies no hopes but from victory.

What riches they acquired is not particularly related; but, it is not to be doubted, that the plunder of so many vessels, together with the silver seized at Nombre de Dios, must amount to a very great sum, though the share that was allotted to Drake was not sufficient to lull him into effeminacy, or to repress his natural inclination to adventures. They arrived at Plymouth on the 9th of August, 1573, on Sunday in the afternoon; and so much were the people delighted with the news of their arrival, that they left the preacher, and ran in crowds to the key with shouts and congratulations.

Drake having, in the voyage just mentioned, had a view of the South Sea, as has already been related, and formed a resolution to sail upon it, did not suffer himself to be diverted from his design by the prospect of any difficulties that might obstruct the attempt, nor any danger that might attend the execution. His reputation was sufficiently established to remove all obstacles (for obstacles he met with), and to obviate the motives that produced them; but it was not till the year 1577, that he was able to assemble a force proportioned to his design, and to obtain a commission from the Queen, by which he was constituted Captain-General of a squadron, consisting of five vessels, of which the Pelican, of 100 tons, was commanded by himself as Admiral; the Elizabeth, of 80 tons, Vice-Admiral, commanded by John Winter; the Marygold, of 30 tons, by John Thomas; the Swan, of 50 tons, by John Chester; and the Christopher, of 15 tons, by Thomas Moon, the honest carpenter, who, on the former voyage, destroyed the Swan by Drake's direction.

These ships, equipped partly by himself, and partly by other private adventurers, he manned with 164 stout sailors, and furnished with such provisions as he thought necessary for so long and hazardous a voyage: nor did he confine his concern to the ordinary equipment of his ships with naval stores and military preparations, but carried with him whatever he thought might contribute to raise, in those nations with which he should have intercourse, the highest ideas of the arts and grandeur of his native country. He, therefore, not only procured a complete service of silver-plate for his own table, and furnished the cook-room with many vessels of the same metal, but engaged several musicians to accompany him; rightly judging, that nothing would more excite the admiration of savages, or uncivilized people, than the powers of music. On this occasion, however, it must not be concealed, that he engaged his men on the false pretence of sailing to Alexandria; and that it was not till after he arrived on the coast of Brazil, that he acquainted them with his design of passing the Straits, and entering the South Sea.

On the 13th of Nov. 1577, about three in the afternoon he sailed from Plymouth; but a heavy storm (such as no man on board had ever seen before), taking him almost as soon as out of port, forced him into Falmouth, where he staid till the 13th of December to refit. He then took his departure, and on the 25th of the same month fell in with the coast of Barbary, and on the 27th cast anchor at the island of Mogadore, about one mile distant from the main, between which and the isle they found a very convenient harbour. Here he began to build the pinnares, the frames of which he brought ready from Plymouth to be put together, as in his former voyage. While the carpenters were employed in this service, they were discovered by the Moors that inhabit those coasts, who sent two of their Chiefs on board Drake's ship, receiving at the same time two of his company as hostages. These men he not only treated in the most hospitable manner, but presented them with such things as they appeared most to admire; it being with him an established maxim to endeavour to secure in every country a kind reception to such Englishmen as should come after him,

by treating the inhabitants with kindness and generosity.

But his friendly intercourse was in appearance soon broken; for, on the next day, observing the Moors making signals from the land, they sent out their boat, as before, to fetch them to the ship; and one John Frye leapt ashore, intending to become an hostage, as on the former day, when immediately he was seized by the Moors; and the crew observing great numbers start from behind a rock with weapons in their hands, thought it next to madness to attempt his rescue, and; therefore, provided for their own security by returning to the ship. Frye was mounted on horseback, and immediately carried up into the country to their King, who being then in continual expectation of an invasion from Portugal, suspected that these ships were sent only to reconnoitre the coast, and discover a proper harbour for a more formidable fleet; but, being informed who they were, and whither they were bound, not only dismissed his captive, but made large offers of friendship and assistance; which Drake, however, did not stay to receive; but being disgusted at this breach of the laws of commerce, and apprehending further treachery, he quitted the coast on December 31, and on the 17th of January arrived at Cape Blanco, having in their passage taken several Spanish vessels, and found one in the harbour with no men.

Here, while Drake was employing his men in catching fish, and training them for land as well as sea service, the natives came down to the sea-side with amber-grease and other gums, to traffic for such commodities as they then stood most in need of, and with which Drake very generously supplied them.

Having rifled and discharged the Spanish ships, which they had taken, they sailed on the 22d of January towards the isles of Cape Verd, and on the 27th came to anchor before Mayo, hoping to furnish themselves with fresh water; but, having landed, they found the chief town deserted; and, marching farther up the country, saw the vallies extremely fruitful, and abounding with ripe figs, cocoas, and plantains, but could by no means prevail upon the inhabitants to converse or traffic with them. However, they were suffered by them to range the country without molestation, but found no water, except at such a distance from the sea, that the labour of carrying it to their ships was greater than it was at that time necessary for them to undergo. Salt, had they wanted it, might have been obtained with less trouble, being left by the sea upon the sands, and hardened by the sun, during the ebb, in such quantities, that the chief traffic of this island is carried on by means of it. Thus, though the island abounded with goats, poultry, and delicious fruits of various kinds, they could procure none of any consequence, because the Portuguese, who were then in possession of it, were prohibited all commerce with strangers on very severe penalties.

On the 31st of January they made St. Jago, an island at that time divided between the natives and the Portuguese, who, first entering these islands under the shew of traffic, by degrees established themselves, claimed a superiority over the natives, and harassed them with such cruelty, that they obliged them either to fly to the woods and mountains, where many of them perished with hunger, or to take arms against their oppressors, and, under the insuperable disadvantages with which they contended, to die almost without a battle. Such treatment had the natives of St. Jago received, which had driven them into the rocky parts of the island, from whence they made incursions into the plantations of the Portuguese, sometimes with loss, but generally with that success which desperation produces; so that the Portuguese were in continual alarms, and lived with the natural consequences of guilt, terror, and anxiety. They were wealthy but not happy, and possessed the island, but did not enjoy it.

In passing this island, the garrison of the fort discharged three pieces of cannon at them, but without effect. For this insult they took a Portuguese ship laden with wines, the pilots of which they retained, but

set the rest of the crew on shore. This man, Nuno da Sylva by name, was very useful to them in traversing the coast of Brazil, being acquainted with the bays and harbours where fresh water and provisions were to be obtained. Him they continued to detain captive, though they broke up his ship before they entered the Straits, till they were about to leave the coasts of Peru, when, finding him no longer serviceable, they set him on shore in the Spanish settlements, from whence he afterwards returned home, and wrote an account of the voyage as far as he went, which is thought by many to be very authentic.

It was soon after the capture of this ship that a difference arose between Drake and his friend, Mr. Thomas Doughty, which, gradually increasing, grew into inveteracy, and terminated at last in the death of the latter. Doughty was a gentleman and a scholar, whom Drake had persuaded to embark in this expedition to better his fortune; and to whom, till the incident happened which we are about to relate, he had shewn particular marks of favour and friendship; but trivial beginnings are often productive of the most important events.

The ground of the malevolence with which Drake pursued Doughty under the colour of justice, has hitherto lain concealed from the public eye; but we shall now trace it, step by step, till the fatal period when the unhappy victim was brought to the block, and when Drake, by suffering revenge to triumph over virtue, left an indelible blot upon his character, which no panegyric can wipe away.

Among the Harleian manuscripts there is a written account of this voyage, in which the author has particularly had his eye on this transaction. As he was an eye-witness of all that passed, his relation will best appear in his own words: "Captain Drake, says he, having boarded the ship of Nuno da Sylva, and sealed his eyes with the view of the commodities, he committed the custody and well-ordering of this prize unto Master Thomas Doughty, as his good and esteemed friend, praying him in any case to see good order kept, and whose should be the breaker thereof, to give him to understand of any such without exception of any."

"It thus chanced that General Drake had a brother (not the wisest man in christendom), whom he put into this said prize, as also divers others. This Thomas Drake, as one more greedy of prey than covetous of honesty or credit, offered himself the first and only man to break the General his brother's commandment; for he, contrary to his strict prohibition, did not only break open a chest, but did dive suddenly into the same, that Master Doughty knew not how to discharge himself against the General but by revealing it unto him; yet first Master Doughty called Thomas Drake unto him, and shewed him his great folly in this behalf, who, yielding unto his fault, prayed Master Doughty to be good unto him, and keep it from the General; but he briefly told him he could not keep it, but he would deliver it with what favour he might. So at the General's next coming on board the prize, Master Doughty opened the same unto him, who presently falling into a rage, not without some great oaths, seemed to wonder what Thomas Doughty should mean to touch his brother; and did, as it were, assure himself that he had some farther meaning in this, and that he meant to strike at his credit, and he would not, or could not, by God's life (as he phrased it) suffer it. From this time forth grudges did seem to grow between them from day to day, to the no small admiration of the rest of the company, although some envying his former favour and friendship with the General, and some, I think, doubting that his capacity would reach too far to the aggrandizing his credit in the country, talked variously of the matter; however, Master Doughty was put again into the Pelican. Thus grudges, although they had not long rested, yet were they grown to great extremities, such and so great as a man of any judgment would verily think that his love towards him in England was more in brave words than hearty good will of friendly love." So writes our author.

In proceeding on their voyage, they came within

sight of Fogo, an island so called from a mountain about the middle of it continually burning, and like the rest inhabited by the Portuguese. Two leagues to the south of Fogo lies Brava, which has received its name from its fertility, abounding with all kinds of fruits, and watered with great numbers of springs and brooks; but having neither harbour nor anchorage, was at that time uninhabited.

Drake, having sent out his boats with plumets to sound, was not able to find any ground about it; and it is reported, that many experiments of the like kind have been made without success. However, he took in water sufficient; and on the 2d of Feb. set sail for the coast of Brazil.

On February the 17th, he passed the equator; after being becalmed near three weeks, during which time they had dreadful storms of thunder with lightning, but without any memorable accident, till, continuing their voyage, on March 28, one of their vessels with 28 men, and the greater part of the fresh water on board, was, to their great discouragement, separated from them; but their perplexity lasted not long, for on the next day they discovered her, and she again joined her associates. In their long course, which gave them opportunities of observing several animals, both in the air and water, at that time very little known, nothing entertained or surprised them more than the flying-fish, which is nearly of the same size with a herring, and has fins of the length of his whole body, by the help of which, when he is pursued by the bonito (a large kind of mackerel), as soon as he finds himself upon the point of being taken, he springs up into the air, and flies forward as long as his wings continue wet, moisture being, as it seems, necessary to make them pliant and moveable; and, when they become dry and stiff, he falls down into the water, unless some vessel intercepts him, and dips them again for a second flight. This unhappy animal is not only pursued by fishes in his natural element, but attacked in the air, where he hopes for security, by the don or spar kite, a great bird that preys upon fish; and their species must certainly be destroyed, were not their increase so great, that the young fry, in one part of the year, covers that part of the sea.

There is another fish, named the cuttle, of which whole shoals will sometimes rise at once out of the water, and of which a great multitude fell into their ship.

At length, having sailed without sight of land for 54 days, they arrived April the 5th on the coast of Brazil. "In the mean while, you shall hear, says our author, what befel: Master Drake, never leaving to seek and force upon Master Doughty, found, in the end, this opportunity to degrade him. Whether of purpose, or his own voluntary, it chanced John Brown the trumpet to go aboard the Pelican, where, for that he had been long absent, the company offered him a hobby, among the which, Master Doughty putting in his hand, said, Fellow John, you shall have in my hand, although it be but light amongst the rest; and so laying his hand on his buttock, which perceived of John Trumpet, he began to swear wounds and blood to the company to let him loose, for they are not all (said he) the General's friends that be here; and with that turned him to Master Doughty, and said unto him (as himself presently after told me in the prize) God's wounds, Doughty, what dost thou mean to use this familiarity with me, considering thou art not the General's friend; who answered him, What, fellow John! what moves you to this, and to use these words to me, that am as good and as sure a friend to my good General as any in this place, and I defy him that shall say the contrary. But is the matter thus? why yet, fellow John, I pray thee let me live until I come into England. Thus, John Brown coming again presently aboard the prize, had not talked any long time with the General, but the boat went aboard and rested not, but presently brought Master Doughty to the prize's side, General Drake sitting in the midst of his men, who hearing the boat at the ship's side stood up, and Master Doughty offering to take hold of the ship to have entered, said the General,

Stay

Stay there Thomas Doughty, for I must send you to another place, and with that commanded the mariners to row him on board the fly-boat, saying unto him, it was a place more fit for him than that from whence he came: but Master Doughty, although he craved to speak with the General, could not be permitted, neither would he hear him." Soon after this, the fly-boat here mentioned, (called the Swan), was separated from them by a violent storm, "in all whose absence, says our author, the General never ceased to inveigh against Master Doughty, terming him a conjurer and a witch; and, at any time when we had foul weather, he would say that Tom. Doughty was the occasion thereof, and that it came out of Tom. Doughty's capcase, and would avouch the same with oaths."

After the storm abovementioned, they steered near the land to the southward; and on the 14th anchored under a cape, which they afterwards called Cape Joy, because in two days the vessel that was missing returned to them. Here they refreshed their weary crews, and took in fresh water; but, finding the country, though pleasant, without inhabitants, they weighed anchor, and, by running a little farther to the southward, found a small harbour between a rock and the main, where the rock breaking the force of the sea, the ships rode at anchor with the greatest security. On this rock they killed several seals, keeping them for food, and found them wholesome, though not palatable.

Their next course was directed to the great river of Plate, in 36 deg. of south latitude; but, not finding anchorage in that river, they failed in quest of a more convenient harbour, when they were surprized by a sudden storm, in which they again lost sight of the fly-boat. This accident determined Drake to contract the number of his ships, that he might not only avoid the inconvenience of such frequent separations, but ease the labour of his men, by having more hands in each vessel. For this purpose he failed along the coast; and on May the 13th discovered a bay, which, though it promised fair, he durst not enter before it was examined: he, therefore, ordered his boat to be hoisted out, and, taking the line into his own hand, went on founding the passage till he was three leagues from his ship; when on a sudden the weather changed, the skies blackened, the wind rose, and all the usual forerunners of a storm began to threaten them. Nothing was now thought of but the means of returning to the ship; but the thickness of the fog intercepting it from their sight, made the attempt almost impracticable. In this perplexity, which Drake was not more sensible of than those whom he had left in the ships, nothing was to be omitted, however dangerous, that might tend to extricate them from it. Captain Thomas, therefore, having the lightest vessel, steered boldly into the bay, and, taking the Admiral on board, dropt anchor, and lay out of danger; while the rest that were in the open sea sulkered much from the tempest, and the Mary (the Portuguese prize) was driven before the wind. The others, as soon as the tempest was over, discovering by the fires that were made on shore where Drake was, repaired to him.

Here they met with no inhabitants, though there were several wigwams or huts standing, in which they found some dried fowls, and among them ostriches, of which the thighs were as large as those of a sheep. These birds are too unwieldy to rise from the ground; but with the help of their wings, or rather stumps, they run so swiftly, that the English could never come near enough to shoot any of them.

Not finding this harbour convenient, or well stored with wood and water, they left it on the 15th of May, and on the 18th entered another much safer and more commodious, which they no sooner arrived at than Drake sent Winter to the southward in search of those ships that were absent, and immediately after sailed himself to the northward, and happily meeting with the Swan, conducted her to the rest of the fleet; after which, in pursuance of his former resolution, he ordered her to be broken up, preserving the iron work for a future supply. The other vessel which was separated in the

No. 46.

late storm, could not be discovered. While they were thus employed upon an island about a mile from the main land, to which, at low water there was a passage on foot, they were discovered by the natives, who appeared upon a hill at a distance, dancing, and holding up their hands, as beckoning to the English to come to them; which Drake observing, sent out a boat with knives, bells, and bugles, and such things as by their usefulness or novelty he imagined would be agreeable. As soon as the English landed, they observed two men running towards them as deputed by the company, who came within a little distance, and then standing still, could not be prevailed upon to come nearer. The English, therefore, tied their presents to a pole, which they fixed in the ground, and then retiring, saw the Indians advance, who taking what they found upon the pole, left in return such feathers as they wore upon their heads, with a small bone about six inches in length, carved round the top and burnished. Drake observing their inclination to friendship and traffic, advanced with some of his company towards the hill, upon sight of whom the Indians ranged themselves in a line from east to west, and one of them running from one end of the rank to the other, backwards and forwards, bowed himself towards the rising and setting of the sun, holding his hands over his head, and, frequently stopping in the middle of the rank, leaped up towards the moon, which then shone directly over their heads; thus calling the sun and moon, the deities they worship, to witness to the sincerity of their professions of peace and friendship. While this ceremony was performing, Drake and his company ascended the hill, to the apparent terror of the Indians, whose apprehensions when the English perceived, they peaceably retired, which gave the natives so much encouragement, that they came forward immediately, and exchanged their arrows, feathers, and bones, for such trifles as were offered them. Thus they traded for some time; but by frequent intercourse, finding that no violence was intended, they became familiar, and mingled with the English without the least distrust. They go quite naked, except the skin of some animals, which they throw over their shoulders when they walk or lie in the open air. They roll up their hair, which is very long, with a plume of ostrich's feathers, and usually stick their arrows in it, that they may not encumber them, they being made with reeds headed with flint, and therefore not heavy. Their bows are about an ell long. Their chief ornament is paint, which they use of several kinds, delineating generally upon their bodies the figures of the sun and moon in honour of their deities.

It is observable, that the inhabitants of most nations amongst whom the use of cloaths is unknown, paint their bodies. Such was the practice of the inhabitants of our own country. To this custom did our earliest enemies, the Picts, owe their denomination. As it is not probable that caprice or fancy should be uniform, there must be doubtless some reason for a practice so general, and prevailing in distant parts of the world which have no communication with each other. The original end of painting their bodies was probably to exclude the cold; an end, which, if we believe some relations, is so effectually produced by it, that the men thus painted never shiver at the most piercing blasts; but, doubtless, any people so hardened by continual severities, would, even without paint, be less sensible of the cold than the civilized inhabitants of the same climate. However, this practice may contribute in some degree to defend them from the injuries of winter; and, in those climates where little evaporates by the pores, may be used with no great inconvenience; but in hot countries, where perspiration in a greater degree is necessary, the natives only use unction to preserve them from the other extreme of weather, or more probably, from the inconvenience of the flies, which, were it not for that or some such defence, would be intolerable.

These savages had no canoes, like the other Indians, nor any method of crossing the water, which was probably the reason why the birds in the adjacent islands

5 D

were

were so tame that they might be taken with the hand, having never been before frightened or molested. The birds here spoken of are, without doubt, the penguins, of which so ample a description is given in the Voyages of Byron and Wallis. The great plenty of these fowls, and of the seals that were found every-where on the shores of this coast, contributed much to the refreshment of the English, who named the bay where they then lay Seal-bay, from the number they there killed of those animals.

These seals seem to be the chief food of the natives; for the English often found raw pieces of their flesh half eaten, and left, as they supposed, after a full meal, by the savages, whom they never knew to make use of fire, or any art in dressing or preparing their victuals. Nor were their other customs less wild or uncouth than their way of feeding. One of them, having received a cap off the General's head, and being extremely pleased as well with the honour as the gift, to express his gratitude, retired to a little distance, and thrusting an arrow into his leg, let the blood run upon the ground, testifying, as it is probable, that he was ready to shed his blood in his defence.

When the Swan fly-boat was separated from the fleet in the storm off the coast of Brazil, the crew, despairing of ever being able to rejoin it, began to be in fear for provisions. They were on a desert coast, had no place of rendezvous, and were ignorant even of their place of destination. In this untoward situation a dispute arose among the officers, of which the author of the manuscript before cited, gives the following relation:—He had already taken notice that Master Thomas Doughty had been sent on board this vessel as a kind of punishment, and in truth so it proved; for the master of the vessel, who seems also to have been the purser, knowing upon what terms he stood with Drake, took every occasion to insult, or, as our author's phrase is, to discredit him; for those were always ranked among Drake's friends who were enemies to Master Doughty. "This man, foreseeing that provisions might run short, put himself from the mess of Master Doughty, Captain Chester, and the rest of the gentlemen, and did set himself amongst the sailors, nothing at all sparing, but rather augmenting his own diet; but how scantily those gentlemen did fare, there be some come home, that, except they will deny their own words, can make relation thereof.

"Master Doughty, with Master Chester, whom the General had made Captain of the fly-boat, found themselves so ill used, that Master Doughty accosted his friend one day in these words: I marvel, Master Chester, that you will take it at his hands to be thus used, considering that you were here authorized by the General to be our Commander. And, at the same time, he spoke to the Master, and told him, that he used so much partiality in the distribution of his provisions, that the same could not be borne, considering the extremity they were like to fall into for want of victuals; and that it was against reason that he and his messmates should be so plentifully fed, while others were at the point to starve. The Master hereat putting himself in a rage, swore that such rascals as he was, should be glad to eat the shoals (hulks) when he would have them. Master Doughty answered him again, that reason would will that he should be used as well as other men, considering his advantages. Thou any advantage herel replied the Master, I would not give a point for thee nor thy advantages; and if ever thou comest home to enjoy any advantages, I will be trusted up. Then in multiplying words, and as I heard a blow or two passing between them, the Master, in the spleen of his heart, looking at him with an evil eye, Thou! will thou have victuals! thou shalt be glad, if we do not meet with the General, the rather to eat that falls from my tail on the anchor-fluke ere thou gettest home again. Then Master Doughty, turning to Master Chester, said unto him, Master Chester, let us not be thus used at this knave's hands. Lose nothing of that authority that the General committed unto you. If you will, we will put the sword into your hands again, and you shall have the government. This case I will

aver to be true, for there were two or three witnesses sworn to these articles, as some of the special matter that he had to lose his head for."

It was not many days after this quarrel before the Swan fell in again with the fleet; when Drake, as has been said, caused her to be hauled on shore, set on fire, and burnt; or, as others say, broke up and converted into fire-wood for the use of the fleet.

Mr. Doughty, being here delivered from the fly-boat, was again restored to the Pelican, where the master with whom he had the dispute appears to have preferred a complaint against him, and with such aggravations as he thought proper to add; all which were favourably heard, and credit given to the whole relation by the General, who wanted only a pretence to persevere in his severity to the man who, being once his favourite, was now become the object of his most inveterate hatred. Doughty, provoked, no doubt, by the misrepresentations of the master, and the partiality with which they were heard, gave the General some opprobrious language, adding, "that the lightest word that came out of his (Doughty's) mouth was to be believed as soon as the General's oath. Whereupon the General did not only strike him, but commanded him to be bound to the mast; for the accomplishment of which, the master of the fly-boat took no little pains. This happened as the two ships (the Pelican and the Canter) lay together; and as soon as Doughty was released, he was put into the Canter, although greatly against his will, for that he said he knew them to be there that sought his life, as namely the master of the fly-boat, and some other desperate and dishonest people; but would he or no, thither he must, or else the General swore he would lift him out with the tackle, and for that purpose commanded the tackle to be loosed. Thus aboard the Canter he went, and his brother John Doughty with him." The Canter was a vessel taken from the Spaniards on the coast of Africa.

While they lay in this harbour, there is one remarkable incident related by this author that deserves particular notice, as it tends to illustrate the previous steps that were pursued to accomplish the ruin of this unfortunate gentleman.

"On board the fly-boat, says he, was one Thomas Cuttle, who some time had been Captain of the Pelican under Drake, with whom the General had been tampering. This man came out from him in great wrath, and offering to go over to the main, between the which, and the island where they then lay, was (as has been said) but a shallow water. He, standing well nigh up to the middle in the water with his piece, uttered these words, Well, my Masters, quoth he, I find I am heavily borne with here, because I will not accuse this gentleman (meaning Doughty) of that, as I take God to witness, I know not by him; and, therefore, I declare before you all, that, whatsoever becomes of me, I never knew any thing by him but to be the General's friend; and, rather than I will bide this hard countenance at the General's hands, I will yield myself into cannibals hands; and so I pray you all to pray for me."

After this public declaration the man departed; and, having reached the opposite shore, he went up into the country, where firing his piece to bring the natives to him, Drake taking it for a signal that he wanted to return, sent a boat over to the main, and brought him back.

Just before their departure from this harbour, which lay in a bay a little to the southward of Cape Hope, "Captain Drake himself came on board the Elizabeth, and calling all the company together, told them, that he was to send thither a couple of men, the which he did not know how to carry along with him this voyage, and go through therewithal, as namely, quoth he, Thomas Doughty, who is a commotioner and a seditious fellow, and a very bad and lewd fellow, and one that I have made that reckoning of as of my left hand; and his brother the young Doughty, a witch, a poisoner, and such a one as the world cannot judge of, having his knowledge from the devil; and so warning the com-

pany that none should speak to them, nor use any conference with them; if they did, he would hold them as his enemies, and enemies to the voyage. And he willed that great care should be taken that they should neither write nor read; and that he declared what wealth the worst boy in the fleet should get by this voyage, and how the worst boy should never need to go again to sea, but should be able to live in England with a right good gentleman; for, quoth he, you shall see that we will have gold come as plentiful as wood into the ships. Having finished his speech, he departed, and shortly aboard the Elizabeth, commanding them, as they would answer it with their lives, not to set pen to paper, nor yet to read but what every man might understand and see. And sure, adds our author, their entertainment there was accordingly; for men durst not speak to them, although willingly perhaps they would; and as their fare was with the simplest in the ship, so was their lodging. But he, Thomas Doughty, having agreed with the boatswain of the ship for a cabin which stood, God knows, in an uncomfortable room, yet must he pay 3l. for the same in England. But what came of this to the poor fellow! he was fain for his friendly using him to lose his office, and continue in heavy displeasure."

Having staid fifteen days in the harbour, during which time they continued their friendly intercourse with the savages, on June the 3d they set sail towards the South Sea, and six days afterwards stopt at a little bay to break up the Christopher, which from the smallness of its size was found incapable of living in those boisterous seas, of which, before they entered them, they had conceived no adequate idea. Then passing on, they found it necessary to cast anchor in another bay, with a view to recover the Portuguese prize, which was separated from them in the form of the 27th of April, and had not yet rejoined them. To return in search of it was not sufficiently mortifying; to proceed without it, was not only to deprive themselves of a considerable part of their force, but to expose their friends and companions, who had voluntarily embarked on board her, to certain death or certain captivity. This consideration prevailed; and, therefore, on the 18th, after prayers to God, with which Drake (for example's sake) never forgot to begin an enterprise, he put to sea, and the next day near Port Julian discovered their associates, whose ship was now grown leaky, having suffered much in the first storm by which they were separated, and afterwards in the fruitless attempts to regain the fleet. Drake, therefore, being desirous to relieve their fatigues, entered Port Julian. They no sooner landed than they were accosted by two of the natives, of whom Magellan left a very terrible account, having described them as a nation of giants and monsters: nor did they find his narrative entirely without foundation; for the least of those they saw was larger and taller than the largest of their company. The two who accosted the English appeared much pleased with their new guests, received willingly whatever was given them; and very exactly observed every thing that passed, seeming more particularly delighted with seeing Oliver, the master-gunner, shoot an English arrow. They shot themselves likewise in emulation, but their arrows always fell to the ground far short of his.

Soon after this friendly contest came another, who, observing the familiarity of his countrymen with the strangers, appeared much displeas'd; and, as the Englishmen perceived, endeavoured to persuade them from such an intercourse. What effect his arguments had was soon after apparent; for another of Drake's companions, being desirous to shew the third Indian a specimen of the English valour and dexterity, attempted likewise to shoot an arrow; but drawing it with his full force, burst the bow-string; upon which, the Indians, who were unacquainted with their other weapons, imagining them disarmed, followed the company as they were walking negligently down towards their boat, and let fly their arrows, aiming particularly at Winter, who

had the bow in his hand. He, finding himself wounded in the shoulder, endeavoured to resist his bow; and, turning about, was pierced with a second arrow in the breast. Oliver, the gunner, immediately presented his piece at the insidious assailants, which failing to take fire, gave them time to level another flight of arrows, by which he was killed; nor, perhaps, had any of them escaped, surprized and perplexed as they were, had not Drake animated their courage, and directed their motions, ordering them, by perpetually changing their places, to elude as much as might be the aim of their enemies, and to defend their bodies with their targets; and instructing them by his own example to pick up and break the arrows as they fell, which they did with so much diligence that the Indians were soon in danger of being disarmed. Then Drake himself taking the gun, which Oliver had so unsuccessfully attempted to make use of, discharged it at the Indian that first began the fray and had killed the gunner, aiming it so happily that the hail-shot, with which it was loaded, tore open his belly, and forced him to such terrible outcries, that the Indians, though their numbers increased, and many of them shewed themselves from different parts of an adjoining wood, were too much terrified to renew the assault; and suffered Drake without molestation to withdraw his wounded friend, who, being hurt in his lungs, languished two days, and then dying, was interred with his companion with the usual ceremony of a military funeral.

They staid here two months after this quarrel, without receiving any other injuries from the natives, in which time they discovered the gibbet on which Magellan had formerly executed some of his mutinous company, and where "Drake, according to the writers of the Biographia Britannica, did the least commendable action of his life, in executing Mr. John Doughty, a man next in authority to himself; in which, however, he preserved a great appearance of justice."

To clear this matter fully, it will be necessary to bring together the substance of what these authors have said on the subject, and then to add the plain relation from the manuscript already quoted.

Here it was (at Port St. Julian), say these writers, that on a sudden, having carried the principal persons engaged in the service to a desert island lying in the bay, he called a kind of council of war, or rather court martial, where he exposed his commission, by which the Queen granted him the power of life and death, which was delivered him with this remarkable expression from her own mouth; "We do account, that he, Drake, who strikes at thee, does strike at us." He then laid open, with great eloquence, (for, though his education was but indifferent, he had a wonderful power of speech) the cause of this assembly. He proceeded next to charge Mr. John Doughty, "who had been second in command, during the whole voyage," when Drake was present, and first in his absence, with plotting the destruction of the undertaking, and the murder of his person. He said he had the first notice of this gentleman's bad intentions before he left England; but that he was in hopes his behaviour towards him would have extinguished such disposition, if there had been any truth in the information. He then appealed for his behaviour to the whole assembly, and to the gentleman accused. He next exposed his practices from the time that he left England, while he lived towards him with all the kindness and cordiality of a brother; which charge he supported by producing papers under his own hand, to which Mr. Doughty added a full and free confession. After this, the Captain, or, as in the language of those times he is called, the General, quitted the place, telling the assembly he expected that they should pass a verdict upon him, for he would be no judge in his own cause. Camden, as the reader will see, says, that he tried him by a jury; but, other accounts affirm, that the whole forty persons of which the court was composed, had judged him to death, and gave this in writing under their hands and seals, leaving the time and manner of it to the General. Mr. Doughty himself

himself said, that he desired rather to die by the hands of justice than to be his own executioner: Upon this, Captain Drake having maturely weighed the whole matter, presented three points to Mr. Doughty's choice: first, to be executed upon the island where they were; next, to be set on shore on the main land; or, lastly, to be sent home to abide the justice of his country. He desired he might have till the next day to consider of these, which was allowed him, and then, giving his reasons for rejecting the two last, he declared that he made the first his choice; and, having received the sacrament with the General, from the hands of Mr. Francis Fletcher, Chaplain to the fleet, and made a full confession, his head was cut off with an axe by the Provost-Marshal, July the 2d, 1578.

As to the imputation which this matter brought upon Drake, we will first cite what Camden says of this transaction: "On the 26th of April, entering into the mouth of the river of Plate, he saw an infinite number of sea-calves; from thence sailing into the haven of St. Julian he found a gibbet, set up, as it was thought, by Magellan for the punishment of certain mutineers. In this very place John Doughty, an industrious and stout man, and the next unto Drake, was called to his trial for raising a mutiny in the fleet, found guilty by twelve men after the English manner, and condemned to death, which he suffered undauntedly, being beheaded, having first received the holy communion with Drake. And, indeed, the most impartial persons in the fleet were of opinion, that he had acted seditiously, and that Drake cut him off as an enulator of his glory, and one that regarded not so much who he himself excelled in commendation for sea matters, as who he thought might equal him; yet wanted there not some who, pretending to understand things better than others, gave out that Drake had in charge from Leicester to take off Doughty upon any pretence whatever, because he had reported that the Earl of Essex was made away by the cunning practices of that Earl."

We find this matter, add the writers just cited, touched in several other books, and particularly in two, which were written on purpose to expose the Earl of Leicester, and perhaps deserving the less credit for that reason.

It may be offered in defence of Sir Francis Drake, that this man was openly put to death, after as fair a trial as the circumstances of time and place would permit; that he submitted patiently to his sentence, and received the sacrament with Drake, whom he embraced immediately before his execution. Besides these, there are two points that deserve particular consideration: first, that, in such expeditions, strict discipline, and legal severity, are often absolutely necessary; secondly, that, as to the Earl of Essex, for whose death Doughty had expressed concern, he was Drake's first patron, and it is, therefore, very improbable he should destroy a man for endeavouring to detect his murderer. We may add to all this, if liberty may be indulged to conjectures, that this man, presuming upon the Earl of Leicester's favour (who very probably imposed him upon Drake to be rid of him), was from thence encouraged to form designs against Drake; and this might also be the reason which hindered him from inclining to an absolute pardon as doubting whether it was possible to trust one who had so far abused his confidence already, and whose known interest with so great a man might always enable him to find instruments, in case he was wicked enough to enter upon fresh intrigues.

We shall just remark upon what is above quoted, that the authors do not seem to have been well informed; for they have all along imputed to John Doughty what related to his brother Thomas; and, if credit may be given to the author of the manuscript (John Cook by name), this unfortunate Thomas fell a sacrifice to Drake's resentment. "On this island in Port St. Julian, says he, passed many matters, which, I think, God would not have to be concealed, especially for that they tended to murder; for he (Drake) spewed out against Thomas Doughty his venom. Here he ended all his

conceived hatred, not by courtesy and friendly reconciliation, but by most tyrannical blood-spilling; for he was never quiet while he lived, who in wisdom and honest government as far surpassed him, as he in tyranny surpassed all men. The world never committed a fact like unto this; for here he murdered him that, if he had well looked unto himself, had been a more sure and steadfast friend unto him than ever was Pythias to his friend Damon, as I think the sequel of this case will shew.

"The last day of June, the General himself, being set in a place of judgment, and having the whole company brought on shore, and having Captain John Thomas set close by him, who opened a bundle of papers that were rolled up together, wherein was written divers and sundry articles, the which, before they were read, the General spoke unto the purport of them, and turning himself to Thomas Doughty, who was there present, being before brought thither more like a thief than a gentleman of honest conversation, he began his charge thus: Thomas Doughty, you have here sought by divers means, inasmuch as you may, to discredit me, to the great hinderance and overthrow of this voyage; besides other great matters with which I have to charge you, the which, if you can clear yourself of, you and I shall be very good friends; whereof if you cannot, you have deserved death. Master Doughty answered, it should never be approved that he had merited ill by undertaking any villainy towards him. By whom, quoth the General, will you be tried? Why, good General, said he, let me live to come unto my country, and I will there be tried by her Majesty's laws. Nay, Thomas Doughty, said he, I will here impanel a jury on you to enquire into these matters that I have to charge you withal. Why, General, replied Doughty, I hope you will see your Commission be good. I'll warrant you, answered the General, my Commission is good enough. I pray you then let us see it, said Master Doughty; it is necessary that it should be here shewn. Well, quoth he, you shall not see it. Then, addressing himself to the company, You see, my Masters, how this fellow is full of prating, bind me his arms, for I will be safe of my life. My Masters, you that be my good friends, Thomas Good, Gregory —, you there, my friends, bind him; so they took and bound his arms behind him. Then he uttered divers furious words unto Thomas Doughty, as charging him to be the man that poisoned my Lord of Essex; whereas Master Doughty avouched it to his face, that he was the man that brought the General first to the presence of my Lord in England. Thou bring ME, quoth the General, to my Lord! See, my Masters, see here how he goeth about to discredit me. This fellow with my Lord was never of any estimation. I think he never came about him as a gentleman; for I that was daily with my Lord never saw him there above once, and that was long after my entertainment with my Lord.

"Then, in fine, was there a jury called, whereof Master John Winter was foreman. Then by John Thomas were the articles read unto them, even once over for a last farewell, for fear that men should have carried them away by memory; all which appeared to consist of words of unkindness, and to proceed of some choler when the prisoner was provoked, all which Doughty did not greatly deny; until at length came in one Edward Bright, whose honesty of life I have nothing to do with, who said, Nay, Thomas Doughty, we have other matter for you yet, that will a little nearer touch you. It will it faith bite you to the girkkin. I pray thee, Ned Bright, said the prisoner, charge me with nothing but truth, and spare me not. Then John Thomas read further for his last article to conclude the whole withal, That Thomas Doughty should say to Edward Bright, in Master Drake's garden, that the Queen's Majesty and Council would be corrupted. So Bright holding up his fingers, said, How like ye this gear, sirrah! Why, Ned Bright, said Master Doughty, what should induce thee thus to belye me? thou knowest that such familiarity was never between thee and me:

but

but it may be, that I have said, if we brought home gold, we should be the better welcome; but yet this is more than I do remember. Then it came out, on farther evidence, that Master Doughty should say, that my Lord Treasurer had a plot of the present voyage. No, that he hath not, quoth General Drake. The other replied, that he had, and had it of him. See, my Masters, said Drake, what this fellow hath done. God will have his treachery all known; for her Majesty gave me special commandment, that of all men my Lord Treasurer should not know it; but you see his own mouth hath bewrayed him: so this was a special article against him to hurt his throat, and greatly he seemed to rejoice at this advantage.

"Then Master Doughty offered him, if he would permit him to live, and to answer these objections in England, he would set his hand to whatso was there written, or to any thing else that he would set down. Well, once let these men, quoth the General, first find whether you are guilty in this or no, and then we will talk further of the matter. And then he delivered (after they had all taken their oaths given by John Thomas) the bills of indictment, as I may term them, unto Mr. John Winter, who was foreman of this inquest. Then Master Leonard Vicary, a very assured friend of Master Thomas Doughty's, said unto him, General, this is not law, nor agreeable to justice, that you offer. I have not to do with you crafty lawyers, neither do I care for the law; but I know what I will do. Why, quoth Master Vicary, who was one of his jury, I know not how we may answer his life. Well, Master Vicary, quoth he, you shall not have to do with his life; let me alone with that; you are but to find whether he be guilty in these articles that here are objected against him, or no. Why, very well, said Master Vicary, then there is, I trust, no matter of death. No, no, Master Vicary, quoth he; so with this the jury went together, finding all to be true, without any doubt or stop made, but only to that article that Edward Bright had objected against him; for it was doubted of some whether Bright were sufficient with his only word to call away the life of a man. And truly it did argue small honesty in a man to conceal such a matter if it had been spoken in England, and to utter it in this place where will was law, and reason put in exile; for, an honest subject would not have concealed such matter, which made some doubt of an honest dealing. But, to be brief, answer was made, that Bright was a very honest man; and so the verdict being given in, it was told to the General, that there was doubt made of Bright's honesty. Why, quoth Master Drake, I dare to swear that what Ned Bright has said is very true (yet within a fortnight after, the same Bright was in such disliking with him, as he seemed to doubt his life; and having displaced him of the Pelican, and put him into the Marigold, he gave for reason, that himself would be safe, and he would put him far enough from him). Thus having received in the verdict, he rose off the place, and departed towards the water-side, where, calling all the company with him, except Master Thomas Doughty and his brother, he there opened a certain bundle of letters and bills, and, looking on them, said, God's will; I have left in my cabin that I should especially have had (as if he had there forgotten his Commission); but, whether he forgot his Commission or no, he much forgot himself, to sit as Judge without shewing that he had any; but, truly, I think he shewed to the uttermost what he had: for here he shewed forth, first, letters that were written, as he said, by Master Hankins to my Lord of Essex for his entertainment; secondly, he shewed letters of thanks from my Lord of Essex unto Master Hankins, for preferring so good a servitor unto him, and how much he had pleased him; then read he letters that pass from my Lord of Essex unto Secretary Walsingham in his great commendation; then shewed he letters of Master Hatton's unto himself, sending for the acceptance of his men John Thomas and John Brewer, for their well usage in this voyage; and, lastly, he read a bill of her Majesty's

adventure of a thousand crowns (but I most marvelled that so many noblemen and gentlemen did leave their letters in his hands, except it were to shew in this place for his credit). So when he had all done, he said, Now, my Masters, you may see whether this fellow hath fought my discredit or no, and what should hereby be meant but the very overthrow of the voyage; as, first, by taking away of my good name, and altogether discrediting me, and then my life, which I being bereaved of, what then will you do? You will fain one to drink another's blood, and so to return again unto your own country; you will never be able to find the way thither. And now, my Masters, consider what a great voyage we are like to make, the like was never made out of England; for by the same the worst in this fleet shall become a gentleman; and, if this voyage go not forward, which I cannot see how possibly it should, if this man live, what a reproach it will be, not only unto our country, but especially unto us, the very simplest here may consider of. Therefore, my Masters, they that think this man worthy to die, let them with me hold up their hands; and, they that think him not worthy to die, hold down their hands; at the which divers that envied his former felicity, held up their hands; some others, again, for fear of his favourity, stuck not to lift their hands, although against their hearts; but some, again, lifted up their hands and very hearts unto the Lord, to deliver us of this tyrannous and cruel tyrant; who upon the same, coming to his former judgment-seat, pronounced him the child of death, and persuaded him withal, that he would by this means make him the servant of God: and said farther, if any man could, between this and next meeting, devise any way that might save his life, he would hear it; and willed himself to devise some way for his own safeguard. Well, General, quoth he, seeing it is come to this pass, "that I see you would have me made away." I pray you carry me with you to Peru, and there let me ashore. No, truly, Master Doughty, I cannot answer it to her Majesty, if I should so do; but, how say you, Thomas Doughty, if any man will warrant me to be safe from your hands, and will undertake to keep you sure, you shall see what I will say unto you. Master Doughty then calling on Master Winter, said unto him, Master Winter, will you be so good as to undertake this for me? Then Master Winter said unto Master Drake, that he should be safe of his person, and he would warrant him, if he did commit him to his custody. Then Drake, a little pausing, said, See then, my Masters, we must thus do; we must nail him close under the hatches, and return home again without making any voyage, and if you will do so, then speak your minds. Then a company of desperate bankrupts that could not live in their own country without the spoil of that as others had got by the sweat of their brows, cried, God forbid, good General! which voice was no less attentively heard, for there needed no spur to a willing horse. Thus, telling Master Doughty to prepare for his death, and having given him one whole day's respite to set all things in order, he rose and departed, promising that his continual prayers to God should not cease, that it would please God to put it into his head how he might do him good; but he had so often before sworn that he would hang him, that I think at this present he meant to do him little good. Thus Master Doughty continuing all this night, the next day, and the second night in his prayers, except some small time that he used in settling his worldly business in some way, and distributing to such as he thought good, such things as he then had with him; was the 2d day of July commanded him to prepare himself, and to make ready to die. Then Master Doughty, with a more cheerful countenance than ever he had in all his life, to the show, as one that did altogether contemn life, prayed him, that, ere he died, he might receive the sacrament; which was not only granted, but Drake himself offered to accompany him to the Lord's Table, for the which Master Doughty gave him hearty thanks, never worse terming him than his good Captain. Master Drake offered him withal

make choice of his own death, and for that he said he was a gentleman he should but lose his head, the which kind of death was most agreeable to his mind, in as much as he must needs die. And, truly, I heard say, that Master Drake offered him, if he would, that he should be shotten to death with a peece, and that he himself would do that exploit, and so he should die by the hands of a gentleman. But, in fine, they together received the Lord's Supper; the which, I do ever assure myself, that he did take with as uncorrupted a mind as ever did any innocent of the world; for he, sure, shewed himself to have all his affiance and only trust in God; he shewed himself so valiant in this extremity as the world might wonder it; he seemed to have conquered death itself, and it was not seen, that of all this day before his death, that ever he altered one jot of his countenance, but kept it as staid and firm as if he had some message to deliver to some nobleman. They having thus received the sacrament, there was a banquet made, such as the place might yield, and there they dined together, in which time, the place of execution being made ready, after dinner, as one not willing any longer to delay the time, he told the General, that he was ready as soon as pleased him; but prayed him, that he might speak alone with him a few words, with the which they talked a-part the space of half a quarter of an hour, and then with bills and staves he was brought to the place of execution, where he shewed himself no less valiant than all the time before; for, first, here kneeling on his knees, he first prayed for the Queen's Majesty of England his sovereign lady and mistress; he then prayed to God for the happy success of this voyage, and then prayed to God to turn it to the profit of his country: he remembered also therein divers his good friends, and especially Sir William Winter, praying Master John Winter to commend him to that good Knight; all which he did with so chearful a countenance, as if he had gone to some great prepared banquet, the which, I sure think, that he was fully resolved that God had provided for him; so, at the last, turning to the General, he prayed him that he might make water ere he died, for, quoth he, the flesh is frail, and withal turned him about and did so; and, coming again, said, Now, truly, I may say as said Sir Thomas More, that he that cuts off my head shall have little honesty, my neck is so short: So turning him, and looking about on the whole company, he desired them all to forgive him, and especially some that he did perceive to have displeasure borne them for his sake, wherof Thomas Cuttle was one, Hugh Smith was another, and divers others: wherupon, Smith prayed him to say before the General then, whether ever they had any conference together that might redound to his (the General's) prejudice or detriment. He declared it at his death, that neither he, nor any man else, ever practised any treachery towards the General with him; neither did he himself ever think any villainous thought against him. Then he prayed the General to be good unto the same Hugh Smith, and to forgive him for his sake. So the General said, Well, Smith, for Master Doughty's sake, and at his request, I forgive thee; but become an honest man hereafter. So then, Master Doughty embracing the General, naming him his good Captain, bid him farewell; and so bidding the whole company farewell, he laid his head to the block, the which being stricken off, Drake most despitefully made the head to be taken up and shewed to the whole company, himself saying, See, this is the end of traitors! So he being buried, and those things finished, the whole company being together, Master Drake protested before God, that whosoever he was who should offend but the eighth part that Thomas Doughty had done, should die for it. He also protested, and swore by the life of God, and the blessed sacrament which he that day had received, that whosoever he were within the fleet that did give another a blow, should lose his hand, without exception of any; and yet, the next day, it fortuned that Master Doughty's younger brother, walking both silently and mournfully, as well for remem-

brance of his brother's late death, as also weighing the imminent peril over his own head, (as what has been already said and the present consequence may purport), there comes unto him this Edward Bright, the chief instrument of his brother's death, saying unto him, God's wounds! thou villain, what knowest thou by my wife? and withal struck at him with his ruler, as of purpose to pick a quarrel, to hasten his end also. Why, Ned Bright, quoth he, thou seest in what case I am, I pray thee let me alone; and withal bore off the blow with his arm, wherewith the ruler broke: but Bright, seeming very furious, thrust him in the face with the peece that remained in his hand, the splinters wherof entered an inch into his face; presently upon the which, he went unto the General to complain of Bright. Why, John Doughty, quoth he, without having any regard of his oath the day before made, Ned Bright will be open to your revenge in England; for, I dare say, thy brother did belye her, when he said that he had an ill name in Cambridge. Then might every man perceive the little-meant honesty."

From this plain narrative of the trial and execution of Doughty, of the genuineness of which there cannot be the least doubt, as the concomitant little circumstances all concur to confirm the author both an eye and ear witness of what he has related, there is reason to believe, that the success of the voyage covered the iniquity of the undertaker; and that the immense booty which Drake brought to England, enabled him to stifle the complaints of individuals; and, by a proper address, to convert the acts of oppression, murder, and piracy, of which he was guilty, into so many deeds of necessary duty, in order to the accomplishment of the main object, the acquisition of wealth at the expence of honesty.

That Drake never had a Commission from the Queen, as his friends would suggest, appears not only from his not producing it at the trial of Doughty (which can hardly be justified in contempt to the prisoner), but from his not producing it upon another occasion, when, as shall be shewn immediately, he vauntingly produced other credentials of far less moment, in order to justify his conduct, and give him credit with his company. The story, then, of the remarkable words foisted into the mouth of his Sovereign, and recited by his biographer, is as false as inconsistent with the character of that wise Princess, who, though there is reason from her after-conduct to conclude that she was privy to the voyage, yet never openly countenanced it, till after it was completed, and the issue of it determined; as appears from the account of the conversation which Drake himself gave to his followers, a few days before he left Fort St. Julian to seek a passage into the South Seas.

"On the 6th of August, says our author, he commanded his whole company to be ashore, and, placing himself in a tent, one side of which was open, and calling Master Winter on one side of him, and John Thomas on the other side, his man laid before him a great paper book, and withal Master Fletcher offered himself to make a sermon. Nay soft, Master Fletcher, said he, I must preach this day myself, although I have small skill in preaching. Well, all ye the company, here are ye, or not? Answer was made, that they were all here. Then commanded he every ship's company severally to stand together; which was also done. Then, said he, My Masters, I am a very bad orator, for my bringing up hath not been in learning; but whatso I shall here speak, let every man take good notice of, and let him write it down, for I will speak nothing but what I will answer it in England, yea, and before her Majesty, as I have it here already set down [but whether it were in his book or not, that I know not, but this was the effect of it, and very near the words]: Thus it is, my Masters, that we're very far from our country and friends; we are compassed in on every side with our enemies; wherefore we are not to make small reckoning of a man, for we cannot have a man if we would give for him ten thousand pounds; wherefore we must have these mutinies and discontents that are grown amongst

also weighing the
(as what has been
ence may purport),
Bright, the chief in-
ing unto him, God's
t thou by my wife?
er, as of purpose to
also. Why, Ned?
afe I am, I pray
off the blow with
but Bright, seem-
face with the piece
inters whereof en-
y upon the which,
plain of Bright,
out having any re-
ce, Ned Bright will
e, I dare say, thy
that she had an ill
every man perceive

rial and execution
which there cannot
ant little circum-
or both an eye and
ere is reason to be-
e covered the ini-
the immense booty
nabled him to fuffe
, by a proper ad-
n, murder, and pi-
many deeds of ne-
plishment of the
n at the expence of

on from the Queen,
not only from his
ughtly (which can
the prisoner), but
another occasion,
the vaunting pro-
ment, in order to
dit with his com-
table words foisted
recited by his bio-
h the character of
is reason from her
was privy to the
ed it, till after it
etermined; as ap-
tion which Drake
ays before he left
the South Seas.

author, he com-
ore, and, placing
n was open, and
him, and John
id before him a
Fletcher offered
Master Fletcher,
although I have
e company,
that they were
ship's company
lfo done. Then,
ator, for my
; but whatfo I
d notice of, and
ak nothing but
and before her
wn [but whether
w not, but this
words]: Thus
om our country
every side with
o make small
e a man if we
; wherefore we
that are own
amongst

amongst us redressed; for, by the life of God, it doth even take my wits from me to think on it. Here is such controversy between the sailors and the gentlemen, and such stomaching; between the gentlemen and sailors, that it doth even make me mad to hear it. But, my Masters, I must have it cease; for I must have the gentlemen to haul and draw with the mariners, and the mariners with the gentlemen; and let us shew ourselves to be all of a company; and let us not give occasion to the enemy to rejoice at our decay and overthrow. I would know him that would refuse to set his hand to a rope; but I trust there is not any such here; and, as gentlemen are very necessary for government sake on the voyage, so have I thipt them for that purpose, and to some further intent; and yet, though I know sailors to be the most envious people of the world, and so un-ru-ly without government, yet may not I be without them? Also, if there be any here willing to return home, let me understand of them; and here is the Marygold, a ship that I can very well spare, I will furnish her to such as will return with the most credit that I can give them, either by my letters or any way else; but let them take care that they go homeward; for, if I find them in my way, I will surely sink them; therefore, you shall have time to consider hereof until tomorrow, for, by my troth, I must needs be plain with you. "I have taken that in hand that I know not in the world how to go through withal," it passeth my capacity; it hath even bereaved me of my wits to think on it. [Well, yet the voice was, that none would return; they would all take such part as he did.] Well then, my Masters, quoth he, came ye all forth with your own good wills, or no? They answered, All, willingly. At whose hands, my Masters, take ye to receive your wages? At yours, answered the company. Then, said he, how say you, will you take wages, or stand to my courtesy? To your courtesy, good Captain, was the reply. Then he commanded the steward to the Elizabeth to bring him the key of the stores, the which he did; then, turning him unto Master Winter, he said, Master Winter, I do here discharge you of your Captainship; and so in brief he said to all the Officers. Then Master Winter and John Thomas asked him what should move him to displace them? He asked in return, whether they could make any reason why he should not do so? So willing them to content themselves, he willed silence in those matters, saying, Ye see here the great disorders we are entangled into; and, although some have already received condign punishment, as by death, who, I take God to witness, as you all know, was to me as my other hand, yet you see, over and besides the rest, his own mouth did bewray his treacherous dealings; and see, how, trusting to the singularity of his own wit, he over-reacht himself at unawares. But see what God would have to be done; for her Majesty commanded, that of all men my Lord Treasurer should have no knowledge of this voyage, and to see that his own mouth hath declared that he had given him a plot thereof. But, truly, my Masters, and as I am a gentleman, there shall no more die; I will lay my hand on no more, although there be here who have deserved as much as he; and so charging one Worrall that was present, that his case was worse than Doughty's, who, in Master Doughty's extremities, was one of Drake's chief confellows, who, humbling himself to Drake, even upon his knees, prayed him to be good unto him, Well, well, Worrall, said he, you and I shall talk well enough of this matter hereafter. Then he charged one John Audley with some ill dealings towards him, but opened no matter, but said, he would talk with him alone after dinner. Here is some again, my Masters, not knowing how else to discredit me, say and affirm, that I was set forth on this voyage by Master Hatton; some by Sir William Winter; and some by Master Hankins; but these are a company of idle heads that have nothing else to talk of. And, my Masters, I must tell you, I do know them as my very good friends; but, to say that they were the fitters forth of this voyage, or that it was by their means, I tell you it was nothing so.

But, indeed, thus it was, My Lord of Essex wrote in my commendation unto Secretary Walsingham more than I was worthy; but by like I had deserved somewhat at his hands, and he thought me in his letters a fit man to serve against the Spaniards for my practice and experience that I had in that trade; whereupon, indeed, Secretary Walsingham did come to consult with his Lordship, and declared unto him, that for that her Majesty had received divers injuries of the King of Spain, for the which the desired to have some revenge; and withal, he shewed me a plot, willing me to set my hand, and to write down where I thought he might most be annoyed; but I told him some part of my mind, but refused to set my hand to any thing, affirming, that her Majesty was mortal, and that, if it should please God to take her Majesty away, it might so be that some person might reign that might be in league with the King of Spain, and then will mine own hand be a witness against myself. Then was I very shortly after, and on an evening, sent for unto her Majesty by Secretary Walsingham; and, the next day, coming to her Majesty, these, or the like words, she said, Drake, so it is that I would gladly be revenged on the King of Spain for divers injuries that I have received: and said further, that he was the only man that might do this exploit, and withal craved his advice therein, who told her Majesty of the small good that was to be done in Spain, but the only way was to annoy him by his Indies. Then, with many more words, he shewed forth a bill of her Majesty's adventure of 1000 crowns, which, however, he said at some time before, that her Majesty did give him towards his charges. He shewed also a bill of Master Hatton's adventure, and divers letters of credit that had passed in his behalf; but he never let them come out of his own hands. He said also, that her Majesty did swear by her crown, "That, if any within her realm did give the King of Spain hereof to understand (as the suspected but true), they should lose their heads therefore." And now, Masters, said he, let us consider what we have done: "We have now set together by the ears three mighty Princes, namely, her Majesty, the Kings of Spain and Portugal; and, if this voyage should not have good success, we should not only be a scorning, or a reproachful scoffing-stock unto our enemies, but also a great blot to our whole country for ever; and, what triumph would it be to Spain and Portugal? and, again, the like would never be attempted." And now, restoring every man again to his former office, he ended: thus shewing the company that he would satisfy every man, or else he would sell all that he ever had even unto his plate; for, quoth he, I have good reason to promise, and am best able to perform it; for, I have somewhat of mine own in England; and, besides that, I have as much adventure in this voyage as three of the best whatsoever; and, if it so be, that I never come home, yet will her Majesty pay every man his wages, whom indeed you and I all came to serve; and, for to say you came to serve me, I will not give you thanks; for it is only her Majesty that you serve; and this voyage is only her fitting forth: so willing all men to be friends, he willed them to depart about their business. The 8th of August, they weighed anchor and departed; but, the day before, he came on board the Elizabeth, and swore very vehemently, I know not upon what occasion, that he would hang to the number of 30 in the fleet that had deserved it: and then again charged Worrall that his case was worse than Doughty's, and that by God's wounds he had deserved to be hanged. And, Master Winter, said he, where is your man Ulysses? By God's life, if he were my man, I would cut off his ears: nay, by God's wounds, I would hang him; but wherefore truly I do not know."

Nothing can be a clearer proof that Drake had no Government Commission than the above account. In his speech, which the writer says is nearly in his own words, he does not so much as pretend to have received any Commission, only a private intimation from the Queen and Walsingham, that her Majesty wanted to be revenged

avenged of divers injuries received from the King of Spain. But was countenancing four or five piratical plunderers to rob innocent people, a princely way for one Sovereign to take revenge of another, in times of profound peace? It was, indeed, a pitiful connivance in Queen Elizabeth to engage 1000 crowns in a piratical adventure of this kind, and that could never have been eredit of that magnanimous Princess, had she not afterwards approved of his piracy, by going aboard his ship, and openly approving what, it was even then said, least became a trading nation to encourage, the breach of treaties, and piratical practices. But, it is remarkable, that five months elapsed after his return to England before her Majesty's pleasure was publicly known, during which time men talked variously of the expedition, and the fate of Drake seemed to hang in suspense; so true proved Doughty's prediction, that "the Queen's Majesty and Council might be corrupted."

That Drake bore no naval Commission appears still more clearly, from his displacing the Captains and Officers of all his ships without demanding from them their Commissions; from his lifting his men, not for any hostile expedition, but for a trading voyage to Alexandria; and from his asking them, before his setting sail from the Port of St. Julian to enter the South Seas, from whom they expected their wages. From these circumstances it follows incontestibly, that, if he had a naval Commission, he was the only Officer in the fleet possessed of one.—Doughty, whom he beheaded, and who, before their falling out, was second in command, bore no naval Commission; and, it is more than probable, that this gentleman's questioning the Commission of Drake was the real cause of his death, as Drake more than once charges him with the overthrow of the voyage, which he could no otherwise effect than by discrediting a Commission, on the authority of which both Officers and men were to be persuaded to plunder a people at peace with their nation, and without which every man was liable to be executed for piracy, whenever he should be overpowered.

It were needless for us to enlarge our remarks; every reader has now the subject before him, and every reader will form a judgment for himself.

What we have said, in consequence of having traced this transaction from beginning to end, may seem to clash with the opinion we previously entertained of Drake's humanity, courage, and kindness to his followers, but will not seem strange to those who are acquainted with the nature of periodical writings, where one part of the work is necessarily printed off before the other is written. In pursuing the course of this voyage, new authors have been consulted, and new lights collected, which have enabled us to detect not only the errors of other writers, but also to correct our own; and, from the sequel of this voyage, we may venture to foretel, that the reader will concur in sentiment with us, that, though Drake was bold, he was not honest; that, though he did not kill those he plundered and had no motive to destroy, he spared none who opposed his designs, or who did not pay implicit obedience to his arbitrary will; that, though he was an able seaman, he was a jealous rival; and that, though he was a gallant leader, he was a most tyrannical Commander. We shall now accompany him to the South Seas, where the Spaniards, not suspecting an enemy, were in no condition to defend themselves against his attacks.

Drake having reduced the number of his ships to three, the 1st of the port, and on August the 20th entered the Straits of Magellan, in which they struggled with contrary winds, and the various dangers which the intricacy of that winding passage exposed them to, till night, when they had passed the first narrow, and had entered a wider sea, where they discovered an island, to which they gave the name of Elizabeth, in honour of their sovereign. On the 24th they came to an island, in which they found such an infinite number of birds, since called penguins, that they killed 3000 of them in one day. This bird, of which they then knew not the name, they describe as somewhat less than a wild goose,

without feathers, and covered with a kind of down, unable to fly or rise from the ground, but capable of running and swimming with amazing celerity. They feed on fishes in the sea, and come to land only to rest in the day, and lay their eggs, which, according to later voyagers, they deposit in holes, as regularly dispersed and as numerous as the cells in a beehive.

From these islands to the South Sea the strait becomes very crooked and narrow; so that sometimes by the interposition of head-lands the passage seems entirely shut up. To double these capes they found it very difficult, on account of the frequent variations to be made in the course. Here are, indeed, as Magellan observes, many harbours; but in most of them no bottom is to be found, which, however, does not seem verified by experience; the harbours being in general good, though the tides and blasts continually rushing in from various directions create the danger. The land on both sides rises into innumerable mountains; and the tops of them were encircled with clouds and vapours, which, being congealed, fall down in snow, and increase their height by hardening into ice; an observation which might naturally occur to Drake, who passed the strait in their winter before the snows were dissolved. However, even at that season, which answers to our February, they found the vallies, in some places, green, fruitful, and pleasant. Anchoring in a bay near Cape Forward, Drake, imagining the strait quite shut up, went in his boat to endeavour to find some other passage out; and, having found an inlet towards the North, was returning to his ships; but curiosity soon prevailed upon him to stop for the sake of observing a canoe or boat with several natives of the country in it. He could not at a distance help admiring the form of this little vessel, which seemed inclining to a semi-circle, the stern and prow standing up, and the body sinking inward; but much greater was his wonder, when, upon a nearer inspection, he found it made only with the barks of trees, sewed together with thongs of seal-skin, or artificially, that scarcely any water entered the seams.

The people were well-shaped, and painted like those who have been already described. On the land they had a hut built with poles, and covered with skins, in which they had water-vessels and other utensils, made likewise with the barks of trees. Among these people they had an opportunity of remarking, what is frequently observable in savage countries, how natural sagacity and unwearied industry may supply the want of such manufactures or natural productions as appear to us absolutely necessary for the support of life. Though the inhabitants were wholly strangers to iron and to the use we make of it, yet, instead of it, they substituted the shell of a muscle, of prodigious size, found upon their coasts. This they ground upon a stone to an edge, which was so firm and solid, that neither wood nor stone were able to resist it. With instruments made of shells, these simple people were able to perform all their mechanic operations; nor do they seem so deformed and ugly as our late voyagers represent them, who being, perhaps, more refined than those who sailed with Captain Drake, might fancy a greater difference between themselves and these savages than in nature there really is.

On this occasion we cannot forbear remarking, that, though Drake entered the strait in what is accounted the most unfavourable season, yet he passed it in sixteen days, though, at that time, wholly unknown; a passage the more extraordinary, as none of our later voyagers made it in less than thirty-six days in the middle of summer, and Captain Wallis was at least four months in making it.

Drake, as has been said, having taken a survey of the country from Cape Forward, continued his course to the North-westward, and, on the sixth of September, entered the great South Sea, on which no English vessel had ever been navigated before; and proposed to have directed his course towards the Line, that his men, who had suffered by the severity of the climate, might recover their strength in a warmer latitude. But his de-

sign was scarce
September the 6
storm arose so v
surviving it; no
nuance; for it
two days, in w
200 leagues out
either to avail t
their anchors.

In this storm
gold, Captain
on the 7th of O
they hoped for
they were in a
violent gulf, an
zabeth, Captai
discovered, was
the prospect of
day following,
which they cut
in the year fol

They were no
they discovered
they anchored
ment of the cre
plenty of green
enters. Another
ans raging a
of provisions.

such refreshme
And now, be
again set sail,
latitude of 57
of the Americ
lantic and Sou
28th of Octob
a calm sea, ha
such a storm,
and such as in
to hurricanes.

On the 30th
place appoint
of separation,
the next day,
with tows, th
After this sup
of Peru, till
neither ships,
chor November
bited by such
conquerors h
they applied
return such t
them. The
having prese
showed their
water.

Next mor
landed with
ward toward
dle of the w
and immed
pany out of
an ambush
retreat, dis
dexterity, t
them. Th
from eithe
Drake him
pierced his
breast. T
created by
Elizabeth,
boy, who
skill; yet
that they
for which
rious a Sp
for Spani

sign was scarce for new, before it was frustrated; for on September the seventh, after an eclipse of the moon, a storm arose so violent that it left them little hopes of surviving it; nor was its fury so dreadful as its continuance; for it lasted, with little intermission, thirty-two days, in which time they were driven more than 200 leagues out of their course, without being able either to avail themselves of their sails, or make use of their anchors.

In this storm, on the 30th of September, the *Mari-gold*, Captain Thomas, was separated from them; and on the 7th of October, having entered a harbour, where they hoped for some intermission of their fatigues, they were in a few hours forced out to sea again by a violent gust, at which time they lost sight of the *Elizabeth*, Captain Winter, whose crew, as was afterwards discovered, wearied with labour, and discouraged with the prospect of future dangers, recovered the straits the day following, and returning by the same passage through which they came, sailed along the coast of Brazil, and, in the year following, arrived in England.

They were now driven Southward 55 degrees, where they discovered a cluster of islands, in one of which they anchored and staid two days, to the great refreshment of the crew, having met with excellent water, and plenty of greens. Not far distant from this bay they entered another, where they beheld some naked inhabitants ranging along the coast in their canoes in search of provisions. With these they exchanged some toys for such refreshments as they had to supply.

And now, being furnished with wood and water, they again set sail, and were, by a new storm, driven to the latitude of 57 degrees when they beheld the extremities of the American coast, and the confluence of the Atlantic and Southern oceans. Here they arrived on the 28th of October, and at last were blest with the sight of a calm sea, having, for almost two months, endured such a storm, as no voyager has given an account of, and such as in that part of the world, though accustomed to hurricanes, the inhabitants were unacquainted with.

On the 30th of October, they steered towards the place appointed for the rendezvous of the fleet, in case of separation, which was in 30 degrees South; and, on the next day, discovered two islands, so well stocked with tools, that they victualled their ships with them. After this supply, they sailed northward, along the coast of Peru, till they came to 30 degrees, where, finding neither ships, nor any convenient port, they came to anchor November the 29th, at *Mucho*, an island inhabited by such Indians as the cruelty of their Spanish conquerors had driven from the continent, to whom they applied for water and provisions, offering them in return such things as they imagined most likely to please them. The Indians seemed willing to traffic; and, having presented them with fruits and two fat sheep, showed them a place where they might come for water.

Next morning, according to agreement, the English landed with their water-vessels, and sent two men forward towards the place appointed, who, about the middle of the way, were suddenly attacked by the Indians and immediately slain. Nor were the rest of the company out of danger; for behind the rocks was lodged an ambush of 500 men, who, starting up from their retreat, discharged their arrows into the boat with such dexterity, that every one of the crew was wounded by them. The sea being then high, and hindering them from either retiring or making use of their weapons, Drake himself received an arrow under his eye, which pierced him almost to the brain; and another in his breast. The danger of these wounds was much increased by the absence of their surgeon, who was in the *Elizabeth*, so that they had none to assist them but a boy, whose age did not admit of much experience or skill, yet so much were they favoured by Providence, that they all recovered. No reason could be assigned for which the Indians should attack them with so furious a spirit of malignity, but that they mistook them for Spaniards, whose cruelties might very reasonably in-

cite those to revenge, whom they had driven, by incessant persecution, from their country, wasting immense tracts of land by massacre and desolation. Nuño da Silva adds, that none of the Indians were hurt by the English, though they came so near the boat, as to seize and carry off four of the oars.

On the afternoon of the same day they set sail, and on the 30th of November dropt anchor in Philip's bay, where their boat, having been sent out to discover the country, returned with an Indian in his canoe whom they had intercepted. He was of a graceful stature, drest in a white coat or gown, reaching almost to his knees; very mild, humble, and docile; such as perhaps were all the Indians, till the Spaniards taught them revenge, treachery, and cruelty. This Indian, having been kindly treated, was dismissed with presents; and informed, as far as the English could make him understand, what they chiefly wanted, and what they were willing to give in return; Drake ordered his boat to attend him, and set him safe on shore.

When he was landed, he made signs for the boat to wait till his return, and meeting some of his countrymen, gave them such an account of his reception, that, within a few hours, several of them repaired with him to the boat, with fowls, eggs, and a hog; and with them one of their captains, who willingly came into the boat, and desired to be conveyed by the English to their ship.

By this man Drake was informed that no supplies were to be expected here; but that Southward, in a place to which he offered to be his pilot, there was great plenty. This proposal was accepted, and on the 5th of December, under the direction of the good-natured Indian, they came to anchor in the harbour called by the Spaniards *Val Parizo*, in 33 deg. 40 min. S. latitude, near the little town of *St. Jago*, where they met not only with sufficient stores of provisions, and with storehouses full of the wines of Chili, but with a ship called the *Captain of Morial*, richly laden, having, together with large quantities of the same wine, some of the fine gold of *Baldivia* to the amount of threecore thousand pezos, each pezo of the value of eight shillings, and a great cross of gold set with emeralds. The Spaniards at first, mistaking the English for friends, invited them to feast with them; but soon being undeceived, one of the crew jumped overboard, and alarmed the town; but the inhabitants, instead of making opposition, fled hastily, and left whatever was in the town a prize to the enemy. In the chapel Drake and his men found the most valuable booty.

Having spent three days here in storing their ships, and loading the money and effects, they departed, and landed their Indian pilot where they first received him, after having rewarded him much above his expectations or desires. They had now little other anxiety than for their friends, who had been separated from them, and whom they now determined to seek. But considering that, by entering every creek and harbour with their ships, they exposed themselves to unnecessary dangers, and that their boat could not contain such a number as might defend themselves against the Spaniards, they determined to station their ship at some place where they might commodiously build a pinnace, which, being of light burden, might safely sail where the ship would be in danger of being stranded; and, at the same time, carry a sufficient force to resist the enemy, and afford better accommodation than it was possible to obtain in the boat. To this end, on the 19th of December, they entered a bay near *Coquimbo*, a town inhabited by the Spaniards, who, discovering them immediately, issued out to the number of 100 horsemen, with about 200 naked Indians running by their sides. The English, observing their approach, retired to their boat without any loss, except of one man, whom no persuasions or intreaties could move to retire with the rest, and who was therefore overtaken by the Spaniards, who thought to have taken him prisoner, but, having an halbert in his hand, he manfully defended himself, till, being overpowered by numbers, he was run through the

body with a lance. The Spaniards, exulting at the victory, ordered the Indians to draw the dead carcase from the rock on which he fell, and in the sight of the English beheaded it, and then cut off the right hand, and tore out the heart, which they carried away in triumph.

Leaving this place, they soon found a harbour more secure and convenient, where they built their pinnace, in which Drake went to seek his companions; but, finding the wind contrary, he was obliged to return in two days.

From hence they came to a port called Sarcipaxa, where, being landed, they found a Spaniard asleep with silver bars lying by him to the value of 4000 Spanish ducats: notwithstanding the insults which they had received from his countrymen, they did not think fit to disturb this harmless man's repose, but, taking the silver, left him quietly to sleep out his nap.

Coasting along the shore, they observed a Spaniard driving eight Peruvian sheep, which on landing they found to be laden with silver, each sheep having 100 lb. weight in two leather bags across his back. They delivered the poor animals of their heavy burdens, and lodged the bags in their own ships.

Farther on lay some Indian towns, from which the inhabitants repaired to the ship on floats made of seal-skin blown full of wind, two of which they fastened together, and, sitting between them, row with great swiftness, and carry considerable burdens. They very readily traded for glass and such trifles, with which the old and the young seemed equally delighted.

Arriving at Marmarena on the 26th of January, Drake invited the Spaniards to traffic with him, which they accepted; and supplied him with necessaries, selling to him, among other provisions, some of those sheep which have been mentioned, whose bulk is equal to that of a cow, and whose strength is such, that one of them can carry three tall men upon his back; their necks are like a camel's, and their heads like those of our sheep. They are the most useful animals of this country, not only affording excellent fleeces and wholesome flesh, but serving as carriers over rocks and mountains, where no other beast can travel, for their foot is of a particular form, which enables them to tread firm on the slippest and most slippery places.

On all this coast, it is said, the mountains are so impregnated with silver, that from one hundred weight of common earth five ounces of fine silver may be separated.

They continued their course towards the north, and on the 7th of February arrived at Arica, in 8 deg. 30 min. S. latitude, and in this port, found three small barks, in which they found 57 slabs of silver, each of the size and shape of an ordinary brick, and weighing about 20 lb. They took no prisoners; for the crews, fearing no interlopers, were all on shore carousing with one another. At this port the Spaniards were wont to land their merchandize, and to embark the silver, which was transported from thence to Panama; but, since Drake's incursion, they carry their silver over land to Lima, and load no more treasure here, except what they pay for the purchase of such merchandize as is brought from Europe to supply their market. Wanting numbers to assault the town, they proceeded in their course, and falling in with a small coasting-vessel, laden with linen and other cloaths, Drake supplied his crew with what quantity of those articles they stood in need of, and dismissed the Spaniards with the remainder.

From hence they sailed to Chuli; in which port there was a ship that had 300,000 pezos of silver in bar; but the Spaniards had sent an express from Arica, to acquaint the governor that Drake was upon the coast. This express arrived at Chuli, just two hours before Drake entered the port; in which time the master of the ship had thrown his treasure overboard, and had secured himself and crew on shore, leaving only one Indian on board to make the report. Drake, fearing the alarm would spread faster than he could sail, lost no time in hazardous searches, but in-

stantly departed, and steered for Lima, where they arrived on the 15th of February, and entered the harbour without resistance, in which, according to some writers, there were thirty sail of ships; others say twelve; but all agree, that several of them were of considerable force: so that Drake's security consisted not in his strength, but in his reputation, which had so intimidated the Spaniards, that the sight of their own superiority could not rouse them to opposition. Instances of such panic terrors are to be met with in other relations; but as they are, for the most part, quickly dissipated by reason and resolution, a wise Commander will rarely ground his hopes of success on them; and, perhaps, on this occasion, the Spaniards scarcely deserve a severer censure for their cowardice, than Drake for his temerity. A writer of good authority, to reconcile the matter, tells us, that Drake took them at unawares, and that the crews, as is usual in times of perfect security, were with their families on shore; and many of those who were ready to sail, were taking leave of their friends. Be this as it may, all seem to agree, that Drake made here a considerable booty, having taken from one ship a chest full of rials of plate, which he found concealed under the steerage, and, from other ships, silks and linen cloth to a considerable value. He did not, however, remain long in this harbour, but hastened in pursuit of the Cacafuego, which ship had sailed but three days before, and which, they were here informed, was bound to Païta. In the pursuit, they fell in with another ship, out of which they took a large quantity of gold, together with a crucifix of the same metal, richly adorned with emeralds. They continued the pursuit; but, having gained intelligence, that instead of Païta, she was gone to Panama, Drake crowded all the sail he could, and, to encourage the pursuers, promised, that whoever first descried the prize should have his gold chain as a reward; which fell to the lot of his brother John. On the 1st of March they came up with her, and, after exchanging a few shot, they boarded her, and found not only a quantity of jewels, and thirteen chests of money, but eighty pounds weight of gold, and twenty-six tons of uncoined silver, with services of wrought plate to a great value. In unlading this prize they spent six days; and then dismissing the Spaniards, stood off again to sea.

Lopez Vaz, a Spanish writer, tells us, that, in less than 24 hours after their departure from Lima in pursuit of the Cacafuego, news was brought that Drake was upon the coast, but that the governor had already assembled the force of the country to oppose his landing; and that, finding he had left the harbour, he ordered three ships with six pieces of cannon (being all he could collect), and 250 men, to pursue him; but, the equipment of these vessels necessarily requiring time, Drake had gained the advantage of them; and, coming within sight of the prize off Cape Francisco, the Captain of which, Juan de Anton, a Biscayan, seeing at a distance a ship crowded with sails, and imagining the Viceroy of Peru had dispatched her on some message to him, struck his sails, and lay to till, Drake approaching nearer, he discovered his mistake. He would then have made his escape, but Drake nearing him fast with his great ordnance, against which the captain could make no defence, he was constrained to yield. "There was in this ship, adds the Spaniard, eight hundred and fifty thousand pezos of silver, and forty thousand pezos of gold, all which silver and gold was culled: but what treasure they had uncustomed, I know not; for many times they carry almost as much more as they pay custom for; otherwise the king would take it from them, if they should be known to have any great sum; wherefore every ship carries a bill of custom, that the king may see it. All the treasure which Drake took was merchandises and other mens goods, saving 180,000 pezos of the king's. He had also out of this ship good store of victuals, with other necessaries, which were to be carried from Panama, and was five days in taking out such things as he needed.

" This done, he failed to the coast of New Spain, without going to Panama. The ships that were sent by the Viceroy of Peru from Lima, arrived off Cape St. Francisco 20 days after Drake had taken the Cacafuego, and had intelligence by a ship coming from Panama, which they met at the said cape, that Francis Drake had taken a ship with silver, and was not gone for Panama; upon the commander of the three ships, thinking the captain Drake had been gone for the Straits of Magellan, directed his course that way to seek him."

Thus Drake, changing his course, he went, escaped his enemies, and fell in with a ship from the East Indies laden with silks, China ware, and cotton. The owner, a Spaniard, was on board, who presented Drake with a falcon wrought in massy gold, with an emerald, set in the breast of it, the largest he had ever beheld. With this present, and a golden cup from the pilot, Drake was contented, and dismissed the ship, taking only four chests of China ware, which at that time was of great value in Europe.

On the 13th of March they came in sight of land, which happened to be a small island about two leagues from the main continent. There they found a harbour, and anchored in five fathom water, where they staid till the 20th, on which day, a little coasting frigate passing by, was pursued by the pinnacle, boarded, and taken. Being laden with farfaparilla, honey, butter, and other country goods, Drake unloaded the farfaparilla, and in the room of it put the gold and silver from his own ship, in order to leave her up, to new caulk her sides, and stop her leaks; in which service the crew were employed till the 26th of the same month, when having reloaded the cargo, and taken in a sufficient quantity of wood and water, they continued their course westward along the coast, taking the Spanish frigate with them to bear them company.

On April 6, a little before sun-set, they discovered a ship, that held on her course about two leagues to seaward from the main land. To this ship they gave chase, and before morning they neared her, and suddenly boarded her while the men slept. Being masters of this prize without resistance, they ordered the prisoners on board their own ship, among whom was one Don Francisco Xarate, who meant to sail to Panama, and from thence to China, with the letters and patents that were found in his possession (among which were the letters of the king of Spain to the governor of the Philippines); as also the sea charts wherewith they were to be directed in their voyage, which were of admirable use to Drake in his return home. From this ship they took great quantities of bale goods, and other valuable merchandize, and then dismissed her. They also took a young negroe girl, whom Drake or some of his companions having got with child, they afterwards inhumanly set her on shore on an island in their way home, just as she was ready to lie in; of which notice will be taken in its proper place. Having retained a Spanish pilot from this ship, they obliged him to direct them to a safe harbour, where they might supply themselves with provisions for their intended voyage. This man brought them to the harbour of Anguatulco, or, as others write, Guatuleco, where arriving on the 13th of April, they staid till the 26th of the same month, and then set sail, having first dismissed all their Spanish prisoners, together with Nuno da Sylva, the Portuguese pilot, whom they brought from the Canaries, and who had served them faithfully in all their trials and dangers; in reward for which he was now abandoned by Drake to the mercy of the enemy. This man, when he landed on the continent, was first carried to Mexico, and there put to the torture to make discoveries. He was afterwards sent prisoner into Old Spain, and there examined; and, having given a faithful relation of all he knew, was released, and returned home to his own country, where he published, as has already been said, an account of the voyage as far as he went, which was afterwards translated into all the European languages, and universally read.

On their arrival at Anguatulco, they had no sooner

landed than Drake with part of his men marched up to the town, where they found the chief magistrate sitting in judgment upon a parcel of poor savages, and ready to pass sentence of death upon almost all of them, they being charged with a conspiracy to kill their masters, and set fire to the town. Drake changed the scene, and made judges and criminals without distinction, his prisoners, conducting them all in procession to his ship. Here he made the judge write an order to the commanding officer to deliver up the town, in which they found a great pot, says our author, as big as a bushel, full of rials of plate, a gold chain, and a few jewels. The gold chain was taken from a gentleman who was making his escape from the town, but was intercepted by an English sailor, who rifled him of all the valuables he had about him, of which the gold chain was thought to be the least value.

Being now sufficiently enriched, and having given over all hopes of finding their associates, and, perhaps, beginning to be infected with that desire of ease and pleasure which is the natural consequence of wealth obtained by successful villainy, or, what is still more probable, being in fear of a surprize before they had secured their booty, they began to consult about their return home; and, in pursuance of Drake's advice, resolved first to find out some convenient harbour where they might more safely lie and equip themselves for the voyage, and then endeavour to discover a nearer passage from the South Seas into the Atlantic Ocean; a passage that would not only enable them to return with full security, and in a shorter time, but would also facilitate the navigation into those parts, and so, in a manner, immortalize their names.

For this purpose they had recourse to a port in the island of Canes, where they met with fish, wood, and fresh water; and, being sufficiently stored with other provisions, with which they had supplied themselves from their prizes and at Anguatulco, they set sail first with a resolution of seeking a passage by the north-west, and if that failed, by the Moluccas, and thence, following the course of the Portuguese, to return by the Cape of Good Hope.

In pursuance of the first resolution, they sailed about 600 leagues, till coming into the latitude of 43 deg. north, they found the air so excessive cold, that the men could no longer bear to handle the ropes to navigate the ship: they, therefore, changed their course till they came into the latitude of 38 deg. and 30 min. under which height they discovered a very good harbour, and, fortunately, had a favourable wind to enable them to enter it.

Here, on the 17th of June, they cast anchor, and, in a short time, had opportunities of observing that the natives of that country were not less sensible than themselves; for, the next day, there came a man rowing in his canoe towards the ship, and at a distance from it, made a long oration with very extraordinary gesticulations, and great appearance of vehemence; and, a little time afterwards, made a second visit in the same manner; and then returning a third time, he presented them, after his harangue was finished, with a kind of crown of black feathers, such as their kings wear upon their heads, and a basket of rushes filled with a particular herb, both which he fastened to a short stick, and threw into the boat: nor could he be prevailed upon to receive any thing in return, though pushed towards him upon a board, only he took up a hat that was slung in the water.

Three days afterwards, the ship, having received some damage at sea, was brought nearer to land, that her lading might be taken out; in order to which, the English, who had now learned not to commit their lives too negligently to the mercy of savage nations, raised a kind of fortification with earth and palisades, and erected their tents within it. All this was not beheld by the inhabitants without the utmost astonishment, which incited them to come down in crowds to the coast, with no other view, as it afterwards appeared, but to compliment the beautiful strangers that had condescended to touch upon their country.

Drake,

Drake, neither confiding too much in appearances, nor wholly distrusting the friendly disposition of the inhabitants, directed them to lay aside their bows and arrows, and, on their approach, presented them with linen and other necessaries, of which he showed them the use. They then returned to their habitations, about three quarters of a mile from the English camp, where they made such loud and violent noises, that they were heard by the English, who had vanity enough to believe that they were paying them a kind of melancholy adoration.

Two days afterwards, they perceived the approach of a far more numerous company, who stood at the top of a hill which over-looked the English settlement, while one of them made a long oration, at the end of which all the assembly bowed their bodies, and pronounced the syllable Oh with a solemn tone, as by way of confirmation of what had been said by the orator. Then the men laying down their bows, and leaving their women and children on the top of the hill, came down towards the tents, and seemed transported in the highest degree at the kindness of Drake, who received their gifts, and admitted them to his presence. The women at a distance appeared seized with a kind of phrenzy, such as that of old among the Pagans in some of their religious ceremonies, and, in honour as it seemed of their guests, tore their cheeks and bosoms with their nails, and threw themselves upon the stones with their naked bodies.

Three days after this, on June 25, 1579, Drake received two Ambassadors from the Nioh, or King, of the country, who, intending to visit the camp, required that some token might be sent him of friendship and peace. This request was readily complied with; and soon after came the King, attended by a guard of about an hundred tall men, and preceded by an Officer of State, who carried a sceptre made of black wood, adorned with chains made of a kind of bone or horn, which are marks of the highest honour among them. Behind him was the King himself, dressed in a coat of bear skins, with a crown woven with feathers upon his head. His attendants followed, dressed nearly in the same manner all but the crown; and after them came the common-people, with baskets platted so artfully that they held water, in which, by way of present, they brought roots and fish.

Drake, not lulled into security, ranged his men in order of battle, and waited their approach, who coming nearer, stood still, while the scepter-bearer made an oration; at the conclusion of which, they came again forward at the foot of the hill, and then the scepter-bearer began a song, which he accompanied with a dance, in both which the men joined, but the women danced without singing. Drake now distrusting them no longer, admitted them into his fortification, where they continued their song and dance a short time; and then both the King and some others of the company made a long harangue, in which it appeared, by the rest of their behaviour, that they entreated them to accept of the government of their country; and the King, with the concurrence of the rest, placed the crown upon Drake's head, graced him with the chains and other signs of authority, and saluted him with the title of Nioh. The kingdom thus offered, though of no farther value to him than that it furnished him with present necessaries, Drake thought it not prudent for him to refuse; and, therefore, took possession of it in the name of Queen Elizabeth, not without ardent wishes that this acquisition might be of use to his native country. The kingdom being thus consigned, and the grand affair at an end, the common people left their King and his Nobles with Drake, and dispersed themselves over the camp; and when they saw any one that pleased them more than the rest, they tore their flesh and vented their antries, as before, in token of reverence and respect. They then proceeded to shew them their wounds and diseases, in hopes, perhaps, of a miraculous cure; to which the English, to benefit and undeceive

them at the same time, applied such remedies as they used on like occasions.

They were now grown confident and familiar, and came down to the camp every day, repeating their ceremonies, till they were more fully informed how disagreeable they were to those whose favour they were so studious of obtaining. They then visited them without ceremony, indeed, but with a curiosity to ardent, that it left them no leisure to provide the necessaries of life, with which the English were, therefore, obliged to supply them. They had, then, sufficient opportunity to remark the custom and disposition of these new allies, whom they found tractable and benevolent, strong of body far beyond the English, yet unfurnished with weapons either for assault or defence, their bows being too weak for any thing but sport. Their dexterity in taking fish was such, that, if they saw them so near the shore that they could come to them without swimming, they never missed them.

The same curiosity that had brought them in such crowds to the shore, now induced Drake and some of his companions to travel up into their country, which they found at some distance from the coast very fruitful, filled with large deer, and abounding with a peculiar kind of cunnies smaller than ours, with tails like rats, paws such as those of a mole, and bags under their cluns, in which they carry provisions to their young.

The houses of the inhabitants were round holes dug in the ground, from the brink of which they raise rafters, or poles, shelving towards the middle, where they all meet in a ridge, and are cramp'd together; the people lie upon rushes, and make the fire in the middle of the house, letting the smoke fly out at the door. The men are generally naked; but the women wear a kind of petticoat of burluthes, which they coil like hamp, and throw the skin of a deer over their shoulders. They are very modest, tractable, and obedient to their husbands. The soil is, but badly cultivated; but contentment seems to prevail in a very eminent degree among all ranks of this happy people.

The land was named by Drake New Athion, from its white cliffs, in which it bore some resemblance to his native country, and the whole history of the resignation of it to the English was engraven on a piece of brass, then nailed on a post, and fixed up before their departure, which being now discovered by the people to be near at hand, they could not forbear perpetual lamentations.

When the English on the 23d of July weighed anchor, they saw them climbing to the tops of hills, that they might keep them in sight, and observed fires lighted up in many parts of the country, on which, as they supposed, sacrifices were offered.

Near to this harbour, they touched at some islands where they found abundance of seals; and, despairing now to find any passage through the northern region, they, after a general consultation, determined to steer away to the Moluccas; and, setting sail July 25, they held a western course for 68 days without sight of land; and, on September 30, arrived within view of some islands, about 20 degrees northward from the Line, from whence the inhabitants resorted to them in canoes hollowed in the middle, and raised at both ends so high above the water, that they seemed almost a semi-circle; they were furnished in such a manner that they shone like ebony, and were kept steady by a piece of timber fixed on each side of them. The first company that came brought fruits, bananas, and other things of no great value, with an appearance of traffic, and exchanged their hiding for other commodities with great show of honesty and friendship. But having, as they imagined, laid all suspicion asleep, they sent another fleet of canoes, of which the crews behaved with all the insolence of savages, and all the rapacity of thieves; for, whatever was suffered to come into their hands, they seemed to consider as their own, and would neither pay for it nor restore it; and, at length, finding the English resolved to admit them no longer, they discharged

charged a shower of stones from their boats, which insulted Drake prudently and generously returned, by firing his great guns without hurting them; at which they were so terrified, that they leaped into the water, and hid themselves under their canoes.

Here we cannot help remarking how nearly this description agrees with the accounts given by the late navigators, of the temper and disposition of the inhabitants of the islands lately discovered between the Tropics. Drake, indeed, found the firing of his guns without hurting them, sufficient to intimidate these ignorant people; but our later voyagers have thought their vengeance not complete for any slight insult, without murdering them by wholesale to strike them with terror. The writer of the late voyages says, "Our men shewed as much impatience to destroy them, as a sportsman to kill his game."

Having for some time but little wind, they did not arrive at the Moluccas till the 3d of November; and then, desiring to touch at Tidore, as they coasted along the island Mutua, belonging to the King of Ternate, they were visited by his Viceroy, who informed them that it would be more advantageous for them to have recourse to his matter for his supplies, than to the Portuguese, with whom he was at enmity. Drake was, by the arguments of the Viceroy, prevailed upon to alter his resolution; and, on November the 5th, cast anchor before Ternate. Scarcely was he arrived, before the Viceroy, with others of the chief nobility, came out in three large barges rowed by forty men on each side, to conduct the ship into a safe harbour; and, soon after, the King himself, having received a velvet cloak by a messenger from Drake, as a token of peace, came with such a retinue and dignity of appearance, as was not expected in those remote parts of the world. He was received with discharges of cannon, and every kind of music, with which he was so much delighted, that he invited the performers on board his barge.

The King was of a graceful stature and royal carriage, of a mild aspect and low voice. His attendants were dressed in white cotton or calico, of whom some, whose age gave them a venerable appearance, seemed as counsellors, and the rest officers or nobles. His guards were not ignorant of fire-arms, but had not many among them, being equipped for the most part with bows and darts. The King, having spent some time in admiring the new objects that presented themselves, retired as soon as the ship was brought to anchor, and promised to return on the day following; and in the mean time the inhabitants, having leave to traffic, brought down provisions in great abundance. The King came not aboard, according to his promise, but sent his brother to excuse him, and withal to invite Drake ashore, proposing to stay himself as an hostage for his return. Drake declined going himself, but sent some gentlemen of his retinue in company with the King's brother, and kept the Viceroy till their return.

These gentlemen were received by another of the King's brothers, and conducted in great state to the castle, where there was a court of, at least, 1000 persons, among whom were three score ancient men, privy counsellors to the King; and on each side of the gate without, stood four old men of foreign countries, who served as interpreters in commerce. In a short time appeared the King himself, dressed in cloth of gold, with his hair woven into gold ringlets, a chain of gold upon his neck, and on his fingers rings very artificially set with diamonds and jewels of great value. Over his head was borne a rich canopy; and by his chair of state stood a page with a fan set with sapphires, to moderate the excess of the heat. Here he received the compliments of the English, and then honourably dismissed them. The castle, which they had some opportunity of observing, seemed of no great force. It was built by the Portuguese, who, attempting to reduce this kingdom into absolute subjection, murdered the King, and intended to pursue their plan by the destruction of all his sons. But the general abhorrence which cruelty and perfidy naturally excite, armed the whole nation against them.

and procured their total expulsion from all the dominions of Ternate, which, from that time, increasing in power, continued to make new conquests, and to deprive them of other acquisitions.

Here they shipped between four and five tons of cloves, intending to bring them to Europe. While they lay before Ternate, a gentleman came on board attended by his Portuguese interpreter. He was dressed somewhat in the European manner, and soon distinguished himself from the natives of Ternate, or any country they had ever yet seen, by his civility and quick comprehension. Such a visitant may easily be imagined to excite their curiosity, which he gratified by informing them that he was a native of China, of the family of the King then upon the throne; and that being accused of a capital crime, of which, though he was innocent, he had not sufficient evidence to clear himself, he had petitioned the Emperor that he might not be exposed to a trial; but that his cause might be referred to Divine Providence; and that he might be allowed to leave his country, with a prohibition against returning, unless heaven, in attestation of his innocence, should enable him to bring back to the King some intelligence that might be to the honour and advantage of the Empire of China. In search of such information he had now spent three years, and left Tidore for the sake of conversing with the English General, from whom he hoped to receive such accounts as would enable him to return with honour and safety. Drake, whether he credited or disbelieved his story, caused a recital to be made by one of the company, who talked the language of the interpreter, of such adventures and observations as he judged would be most pleasing to his visitor, to all which the Chinese exile gave the utmost attention; and, having caused them to be repeated a second time, to impress them in his mind, thanked the Creator of the World for the knowledge he had gained. He then proposed to the General to sail to his country, to which he willingly undertook to be his pilot; but Drake could not be induced to prolong his voyage.

He therefore set sail, on November the 9th, in quest of a more convenient harbour, where he might clean and refit his ship, which, by the length of the voyage, and the heat of the climate, was now become foul and leaky. Directing his course southward, he soon fell in with an uninhabited island, which, by its appearance, promised fair to answer his purpose. At a distance it looked like a beautiful grove; the trees were large, straight, and lofty; but, what was more extraordinary, they were interspersed with such an astonishing number of shining flies, that the whole island in the night seemed to glow with fire. Here they found a convenient haven, and here they landed and continued 26 days. They found upon this island tortoise, but of a monstrous size, and various sorts of fruits of a delicious flavour.

Leaving this place on the 12th of December, they cruelly deserted the unhappy mulatto girl whom they had taken for their pleasure from a ship that fell into their hands on the coast of New Spain. They had, at the same time, taken on board a negro youth, who they thought might be serviceable to them in conversing with his nation in their way home; but, finding him of little or no use on board, and provisions beginning to fail, they pretended to send this simple couple far into the country to gather fruits, and, in the mean time, unmoored the ship, and hoisted sail; and, before the return of the victims, were out of sight of their tears, and out of hearing of their cries; a melancholy instance this of the depravity of man's heart, and of the relentless cruelty of minds addicted to rapine and lust. The poor girl, not yet fifteen, was ready to be delivered of an innocent babe; and the youth, not twenty, was the only resource in the midst of her distress. What befel them cannot be known; but Providence seemed to punish the perfidy of the crew by a severe trial of their fortitude soon after.

Having a wind not very favourable, they happened to be entangled among a multitude of islands, interspersed

with dangerous shallows, till January the 9th, 1580. When they thought themselves clear, and were sailing along with a brisk gale, they were, at the beginning of the night, suddenly surprized in their course by a sudden shock, the cause of which was instantly discovered, for they were thrown upon a concealed rock, and, by the speed of their course, fixed too fast for any hope of escaping.

Here the intrepidity of Drake was shaken, and his dexterity baffled: here all the horrors of mind, attendant on conscious guilt, concurred to aggravate the distresses of those who were instrumental in abandoning the harmless slaves. Those who were innocent reproached the guilty with being the authors of their present distresses; and, among the rest, Mr. Fletcher, the chaplain, exclaimed against the Captain, as one whose crimes of murder and lust had brought down divine vengeance on all the company. Drake, who knew well how to dissemble his resentment, judging this an improper time to encourage disputes, endeavoured, by every means in his power, to appease the increasing animosity. To preserve, therefore, the minds of the company at rest, he found it necessary to keep their hands employed, and, for that purpose, ordered the pumps to be constantly pined. Convinced by this experiment that the water did not gain upon them in the hold, he conceived hopes, that, by lightening the ship, they might possibly be able to leave her off. He knew it would be in vain to persuade them to part with their treasure, and, therefore, he first caused the guns to be thrown overboard, and then the spices; and, afterwards, the water casks to be bulged, being in hopes, that they would be released, water might again be supplied from the neighbouring islands, some of which were at no great distance. His next attempt was to discover about the shallows some place where they might fix an anchor, in order to bring their ship to, and, by that means, clear her from the rock: but, upon examination, it was found that the rock on which they had struck, rose, as many others in those seas do, almost perpendicular, and that there was no anchorage, nor any bottom to be fathomed a boat's length from the ship. But this discovery was by Drake wisely concealed from the common sailors, lest they should abandon themselves to despair, for which there was, indeed, much cause, there being no prospect left, but that they must there sink along with the ship.

In this deplorable situation they had remained for four and twenty hours, when Drake, finding all human efforts vain, addressed himself to his companions in distresses, and exhorted them to lay aside all animosities, and prepare themselves, by forgiving each other, for obtaining that mercy, through Christ, which they could not hope to receive on any other terms. "On this occasion," says our author, "every thief reconciled himself to his fellow-thief, and Fletcher administered the sacrament to them all." At length, when their hopes had forsaken them, and no new struggles could be made, they were, on a sudden, relieved by the wind's shifting, and a fresh breeze springing up, which taking the ship on the leeward quarter, the reefed off the rock, without receiving any very dangerous hurt, to the unspeakable joy of every soul on board.

This was the greatest and most inextricable distress which they had suffered, and made such an impression upon their minds, that for some time afterwards they durst not adventure to spread their sails, but went slowly forward with the utmost circumspection, till, arriving at the fruitful island of Baretene, they entered the port to repair what damage the ship had received upon the rock. They found the people of this island of an amiable and obliging disposition, courteous in their manners, and honest in their dealings. They are finely proportioned, tall of stature, and of comely features. The men, in general, go naked; but the women cover themselves from the waist downwards, are modest, yet not insensible of love and pleasure. They found the island abounding with every necessary, and not a few of the comforts of life.

Having repaired the ship and refreshed the men,

they continued their course without any material occurrence till the 11th of March, when they came to anchor before the island of Java, and sending to the King a present of cloth and silks, received from him in return a present supply of refreshments; and on the day following Drake went himself on shore, and entertained the King with music, and obtained leave to store his ship with provisions. This island was governed by a great number of petty Kings or Rayas, subordinate to one Chief. Of these princes three came on board together a few days after their arrival, and having, upon their return, recounted the wonders they had seen, and the civilities with which they had been treated, incited others to satisfy their curiosity in the same manner; and Raya Denan, the chief King, came himself to view the ship, with the warlike armaments and instruments of navigation. This intercourse of civilities somewhat retarded the business for which they came; but, at length, they not only victualled their ship, but payed the bottom, which was the more necessary frequently to be repeated, as, at that time, sheathing of ships was not in practice.

The Javans were at this time a warlike people, well armed, with swords, targets, and daggers, forged by themselves, and exquisitely wrought. They were sociable, full of vivacity, and beyond description happy. They were likewise hospitable to strangers, and not at all addicted to thievery, the general characteristic of the islanders in the Pacific Sea.

From Java Drake intended to have visited the Malaccas, but his company became troublesome, being desirous of returning home. On this occasion he called to mind the speech of Master Fletcher, while they remained hopelessly upon the rock, and, under pretence of his spurring up the people to oppose him, he caused him, says our author, "to be made fast by one of his legs with a chain, and a staple knocked fast into the hatches, in the forecable of the ship. He called all the company together, and then put a lock about one of his legs; and Drake, sitting cross-legged on a chest, and a pair of pantofles in his hand, he said, Francis Fletcher, I do here excommunicate thee out of the Church of God, and from all the benefits and graces thereof, and I renounce thee to the devil and all his angels; and then he charged him, upon pain of death, not once to come before the malt; for, if he did, he swore he should be hanged, and Drake caused a poetry to be written, and bound about Fletcher's arm, with charge, that if he took it off he should then be hanged; the poetry was, FRANCIS FLETCHER, THE FALSEST KNAVE THAT LIVES!" It does not, however, appear how long he was obliged to wear this poetry as it is called. But Drake was obliged to alter his resolution, and comply with the company's desires.

On the 25th of March, 1580, he therefore took his departure, and, on the 15th of June, they doubled the Cape of Good Hope, having then on board his ship fifty-seven men, and but three casks of water.

On the 19th of July they passed the Line, reached the coast of Guinea on the 16th, and on July the 22d arrived at Sierra Leona, after a most delightful passage, in which they discovered how much the Portuguese had abused the world in their false representations of the horrors and dangers that attended the navigation round the Cape. At Sierra Leona they staid two days to refresh the men, and, having furnished themselves with wood and water for the remainder of the voyage, they set sail for England in high expectation of enriching their country, with the spoils of the Spaniards.

On the 11th of September they made the island of Ferara, and, on the third of November, they entered the harbour of Plymouth. In this voyage Drake surmounted the world, which no Commander in Chief had ever done before; and what, at that time appeared a thing extraordinary, by steering a western course they had lost a day in their account.

Thy success in this voyage, and the immense wealth they brought home, raised much discourse throughout the kingdom; some highly commending, and some as loudly

without any material occa-
sion when they came to an-
chore and sending to the King
received from him in re-
wards; and on the day
of shore, and enter-
ed obtained leave to store
the island was governed by
Don Rayas, subordinate to
the King, and having to-
day come on board to-
day, and having, upon
orders they had seen, and
it had been treated, incited
the same manner; and
me himself to view the
islands and instruments of
warlike people, well
dressed, and instruments
of civilities somewhat
they came; but, at
their ship, but payed the
necessary frequently to be
ing of ships was not in

warlike people, well
dressed, and instruments
of civilities somewhat
they came; but, at
their ship, but payed the
necessary frequently to be
ing of ships was not in

have visited the Ma-
ne troublefome, be-
On this occasion he
after Fletcher, while
lock, and, under pre-
e to oppose him, he
was made fast by one
ole knocked fast into
ship. He called all
at a lock about one of
egged on a chest, and
id, Francis Fletcher,
t of the Church of
graces thereof, and
his angels; and then
h, not once to come
swore he should be
to be written, and
arge, that if he took
e poorly was, FRAN-
THAT LIVETH." It
g he was obliged to
Drake was obliged
with the company's

therefore took his
they doubled the
on board his ship
of water.

The Line, reached the
July the 22d ar-
righful passage, in
the Portuguese had
celebrations of the
navigation round
two days to re-
themselves with
the voyage, they
tion of enriching
Spaniards.

made the island of
entered
oyage Drake fur-
nder in Chief had
time appeared a
stern course they

immense wealth
urfe throughout
ng, and some as
loudly

loudly decriing the principles upon which it was ac-
quired. The former alleged, that this enterprize was
not only honourable to the Commander who conducted,
and the crew who assisted in the performance of it, but
to their country; that it would establish our reputation
for maritime skill in foreign nations, and raise a laudable
spirit of emulation at home; and that, as to the money,
our merchants having suffered deeply by the treachery
and villainy of the Spaniards in the new discovered
country, there was nothing more just than that the na-
tion should receive an equivalent by the reprisals which
Drake and his company, at the hazard of their lives,
had bravely extorted.

The other party argued, that Drake, in fact, was no
better than a pirate; that, of all others, it least became
a trading nation to countenance such depredations; that
the expectation was not only a breach of all our treaties
with Spain, but likewise of our old leagues with the
House of Burgundy; and that the consequences would
infallibly involve the Queen in a war, by which the na-
tion would suffer infinitely more than the riches acquired
by a single ship could counterbalance.

These were the sentiments, and these the specula-
tions with which the different parties amused them-
selves for some time after the arrival of Drake in his new
country. At length, the approbation of the Queen
determined the dispute; for all acquiesced in the wis-
dom of their Sovereign.

Lopez Vaz, a Spanish writer, says, that Drake car-
ried from the coast of Peru, 866,000 pezos of silver,
equal to 866 quintals, equal to 100 pound weight each
quintal, amounting to 1,139,200 ducats. He also car-
ned away 100,000 pezos of gold, equal to 10 quintals,
each quintal valued at 1500 Spanish ducats; and all
this over and above the treasure in the ship, which was
not entered, consisting of gold, silver, pearls, precious
stones, coined money, and other things of great value.
He also rifled the ships from the Philippines, laden with
spices, silks, velvets, and other rich merchandize, the
value not known.—By the above account, the silver
only, at 5s. per oz. amounts to 259,800l. and the gold
to 48,000l. sterling. But we have seen a manuscript
that makes the value of the whole cargo brought home
by the Golden Hind (for that was the name that Drake
chose his ship, the Pelican, should be known by) amount
to 800,000l. though that which was divided among the
crew was only 80,000l. Is it not reasonable then to con-
clude, that the Queen and Council had a considerable
share of the remainder?

On the 4th of April, 1581, her Majesty went to
Deptford, and dined on board the ship in which so
many Kings had been entertained before; and, after
dinner, she conferred the honour of knighthood on her
Commander; an honour not to be obtained in those
days on trivial occasions, but as a reward for signal ser-
vices. This mark of distinction was a full declaration
of her Majesty's approbation, silenced Drake's ene-
mies, and gave joy to his friends. She likewise gave di-
rections for the preservation of the ship, that it might
remain a monument of his own and his country's glory.

What contributed the more to render the fame of
Drake illustrious, was the frequent attempts that had
been made by navigators, the most renowned in their
time, to achieve the same; but without success. In
1527 the Spaniards sent Gracca de Loaisa, a Knight of
Malta, with a squadron of seven ships to follow the rout
of Magellan, who, though his ship returned to Spain,
yet he himself lost his life, before he arrived at the Ma-
laccas, the promised islands. Loaisa passed the straits,
indeed, lost some of his ships in the South Seas, others
put into the ports of New Spain, and only his own vessel
and one more reached the East Indies, where himself
and all his people perished.

In 1526, the Genoese sent two ships to pass the straits,
of which one was cast away, and the other returned
home without effecting any thing.

Sebastian Cabot, in the service of the crown of Por-
tugal, made the like trial; but not being able to find
the straits, returned into the river of Plate.

Americus Vespufius, a Florentine, from whom the
new world received its name, undertook to perform, in
the service of the crown of Portugal, what Cabot had
promised without effect; but that vain man was still
more unfortunate: for he could neither find the straits,
nor the river of Plate.

Some years after this, the Spaniards equipped a stout
squadron, under the command of Simon de Alcafara;
but, before they reached the height of the straits, the
crews mutinied, and obliged their Commander to re-
turn.

Such repeated miscarriages discouraged even the
ablest and boldest seamen; so that from this time both
Spaniards and others dropped all thoughts of emulating
Magellan, till Drake conceived his design, as has al-
ready been said, concealed it in his breast till ripe for
execution.

Being now advanced to eminence, in 1585 he was
employed in the Queen's service, and sent on an expe-
dition to the West Indies as Commander in Chief; and
having under him Captain Martin Forbisher, Captain
Knollys, and other experienced Officers of the royal
navy, he took St. Jago, St. Domingo, Carthagen, and
St. Augustin. He returned elated with his success;
but, as our author says, not much enriched by the
plunder.

In 1587, he was again employed in an expedition to
Lisbon, in which Captain Forbisher also bore a part.
Here they gained intelligence that a considerable fleet
was assembled in the bay of Cadiz, with a view to the
forming an armament for the invasion of England; he
immediately repaired to their place of rendezvous, and
fell upon them at unawares; and, as it is said, burnt
10,000 tons of shipping, with all the stores which they
were amassing for the intended invasion.

In their return they fell in with a carrack from the
East Indies, richly laden, of which they likewise got in-
telligence in the port of Lisbon. This was the St.
Philip, of which Linschoten gives the following ac-
count, when this Dutchman was at Goa, the chief set-
tlement of the Portuguese in the East Indies: "There
came in, he says, from the island of Japan, certain Je-
suits, and with them three Princes, being the children
of so many Kings of that country, wholly apparelled
like Jesuits, not one of them above the age of 15 years,
being minded by the persuasion of the Jesuits to visit
Portingall, and from thence to go to Rome to see the
Pope, thereby to procure great profit, privileges, and li-
berties for the millionaries in that island.

"In 1584, they set sail for Portingall, and from
thence travelled into Spain, where, by the King and all
the Spanish nobility, they were with honour received, and
presented with many gifts, which the Jesuits kept for
themselves.

"Out of Spain, they rode to see the Pope; that done,
they travelled throughout Italy, where they were much
honoured, and presented with many rich presents, by
means of the great report the Jesuits made of them.

"To conclude, they returned to Madrid, where with
great honour they took their leave of the King, who fur-
nished them with letters of recommendation to the
Viceroy, and all the Portingall Governors of India; so
they went to Lisbon, and there took shipping in 1586,
and came to Goa in the ship called St. Philip, which
ship, in her return to Portingall, was taken by Captain
Drake, being the first that was taken coming from the
East Indies; which the Portuguese took for an evil sign,
because the ship bore the King's own name; both Spain
and Portugal being at that time governed by the same
Sovereign.

"When the Princes and Jesuits of Japan arrived at
Goa on their return from Europe, they were received,
adds Linschoten, with great rejoicings; for it was verily
thought they had all been dead. On their landing they
were all three apparelled in cloth of gold and silver after
the Italian manner, being the same the Italian noblemen
and gentlemen had given them. They came to Goa
very lively and in high spirits; and the Jesuits were not
a little proud, that through their means the voyage had

been successfully performed. In Goa they staid till the monsoon or time of the wind's setting in to fail for China, and thence to Japan, where, with great triumph and wondering of all the people, they were received and welcomed home, to the great furtherance of the Jesuits."

The St. Philip, in her voyage to Goa, had been driven by stress of weather into Malambique, where she met with the St. Laurence, homeward bound, that had likewise been driven into the same port disabled, having lost her masts, and received other considerable damage, by which she was rendered unseviceable. The St. Philip, therefore, as soon as she had landed her passengers at Goa, returned to Malambique, and took in the lading of the St. Laurence, which enabled her to make her voyage to Europe about the usual time; a circumstance fortunate for Drake, as it increased both his fame and his fortune.

In 1588, Drake was appointed Vice-Admiral, under Charles Lord Effingham Howard, High-Admiral of England, to oppose the formidable armada that had for three years before been secretly preparing in Spain for the invasion of England. In Drake's letter to Lord Treasurer Burleigh, acquainting him with the approach of the Spaniards, he concludes with this elegant compliment to his superior: "That, though the strength of the enemy out-went report, yet the cheerfulness and courage which the Lord Admiral expressed gave all who had the honour to serve under him assurance of victory;" a compliment which was the more admired in Drake, as in a former letter to the same Minister, in which he tells him of his gallant achievement in the port of Cadiz, "Not resting, said he, at Lisbon, we failed too close to the Spanish King, that we singled his beard;" a coarse metaphor, it must be owned, but strongly characteristic.

Drake's good fortune still accompanied him; for in the engagement which afterwards happened on the arrival of the armada, though he committed the greatest error that ever Commander was guilty of, by pursuing some hulks belonging to the Hans Towns for plunder, when he was entrusted to carry lights in the night for the direction of the English fleet, he missed the Admiral; yet he was the only Commander who profited most by the destruction of the enemy. Lord Howard, supposing the lights of the Spanish Admiral to be the lights which Drake was ordered to carry, was entangled in the very centre of the Spanish fleet, before he found his mistake; but, fortunately, night favouring his escape, he disengaged himself before he was discovered. This blunder was afterwards effaced by the gallant behaviour of Drake, than whom no man was ever bolder, or more determined. We do not, however, find his name among the Commanders whom the Lord High Admiral thought proper to thank for their services on that occasion. On the 2d of July, says Strype Sir Francis, observing a large Spanish galleon, commanded by Don Pedro de Valdez, who was the reputed projector of the invasion, floating at a distance from both fleets, sent his pinnace to summon the Captain to surrender, who at first vauntingly set him at defiance; but being told it was Drake that required him to yield, he immediately struck his colours, and, with 46 of his crew, came on board the conqueror. In this ship he found 50,000 ducats, with other effects to a much greater amount.

The next year he was appointed Admiral of a squadron sent to place Don Antonio on the throne of Portugal, to which that Prince pretended to have a right. "But, says Rapin, (whose account of this expedition we shall follow) as the Queen was extremely frugal, and an undertaking against Spain could not but be very expensive, she so ordered it, that Drake and Norris took upon them to be at the charge, in hopes of making themselves amends by the booty they should meet with. So the only found them six ships of war, with a present of £2,000. with leave to raise soldiers and sailors for the expedition. Drake had already tried the Spaniards in America and in the Channel, and was convinced they were more formidable in common opinion than in

reality; wherefore, joining with Sir John Norris, and some other private persons, they equipped a fleet, and embarked 11,000 soldiers and 1500 marines. The Hollanders having also added some ships, the fleet consisted, according to Stow, of 146 sail, transports and victuallers included. Drake commanded at sea, and Norris was General of the land forces. They took with them Don Antonio, who hoped, by the assistance of the English to be put in possession of his kingdom, where he pretended to have many friends.

"They sailed from Plymouth on the 18th of April, and soon after arrived at the Groyne, where landing their troops, they assaulted the lower town, and carried it by storm. Then they besieged the upper town. But Norris, having advice that the Conde di Andrada was approaching with a body of troops to relieve the place, suddenly raised the siege to march against him; and, overtaking him, slew 3000 of his men. This done, he burnt several villages; and, without returning to the siege, re-embarked his troops, their principal design being against Portugal.

"Whilst they were sailing towards the coasts of that kingdom, they were joined by the Earl of Essex, with some ships he had armed at his own charge, unknown to the Queen. Some days after, they arrived at Panicha, a little town in Portugal, and, taking it, restored it to Don Antonio; from thence Norris marched by land to Lisbon, Drake promising to follow with the fleet up the Tagus. The army marched 40 miles without opposition; and encamping before Lisbon, took the suburbs of St. Catharine: but, as Drake performed not his promise, and the army wanted cannon and ammunition, it was resolved in a council of war to retire. This resolution was taken, because there was no appearance that the Portuguese were inclined to revolt, as Don Antonio had expected; and also, because there was no news of the success he had boasted of from the King of Morocco. The army marching towards the mouth of the Tagus, met Drake, who had taken the town of Cascaes, and excused himself upon the impossibility of performing his promise. Some days after, the cattle of Cascaes surrendering, it was blown up; and, to make themselves amends for the charges of the expedition, the English seized sixty vessels laden with corn, and all manner of naval stores to equip a new fleet against England, belonging to the Hans Towns. Then they went and took Vigo, which was abandoned by the inhabitants; and, firing the town, returned to England. This expedition did some damage to the King of Spain, but was of no benefit to Elizabeth; and the booty was not sufficient to pay for equipping the fleet, though Camden says, they brought home 150 pieces of heavy cannon, and a great booty. Above six thousand men perished in this expedition by sickness.

The writers of Drake's life say, that Norris grievously reproached Drake with breach of his promise, and charged the miscarriage of the expedition to his timidity. Indeed, Drake's good genius seems now to have forsaken him; and happy, say the same writers, if, having received this first check at play, he had withdrawn his stake.

As the war with Spain continued, Hawkins and Drake, who, as it should seem, wanted to continue their old game, where the profits were more, and the dangers less, united their interest to persuade the Queen and Council to undertake an effectual expedition to the West Indies, by which the nation might be enriched, and the enemy deprived of those resources by which they were enabled to carry on the war.

For this purpose they procured, according to Rapin, twenty-six of the Queen's ships, the equipment of which, like the former, seems to have been supplied by private adventure; a practice at that time very common, where plunder was to be the reward. The preparations for this expedition, however, as it far exceeded all former enterprises to the American Indies, could not be made so privately, or conducted so secretly, but that the Spaniards found means to discover both its strength

h Sir John Norris, and
y equipped a fleet, and
1 1500 marines. The
ome ships, the fleet con-
46 fail, transports and
ommanded at sea, and
nd forces. They took
oped, by the assistance
fellow of his kingdom,
ny friends.

h on the 18th of April,
Groyne, where landing
ower town, and carried
the upper town. But
Conde di Andrada was
ps to relieve the place,
ch against him; and
men. This done, he
hout returning to the
their principal design

rards the coasts of that
ic Earl of Essex, with
own charge, unknown
they arrived at Pan-
I, taking it, restored it
orris marched by land
ollow with the fleet up
40 miles without op-
Lisbon, took the sea
Drake performed not
d cannon and annun-
ncil of war to retire.
use there was no ap-
inclined to revolt, as
I also, because there
had boasted of from
ny marching towards
ake, who had taken
d himself upon the
romise. Some days
tering, it was blown
ends for the charges
ed sixty vessels laden
val stores to equip a
to the Hans Towns,
hich was abandoned
e town, returned to
ome damage to the
enefit to Elizabeth;
o pay for equipping
they brought home
great booty. Above
expedition by tick-

that Norris grie-
ch of his promise,
the expedition to
d genius seems now
lay the same wri-
eck at play, he had

ued, Hawkins and
anted to continue
were more, and the
persuade the Queen
d expedition to the
might be enriched,
efources by which
ar.

ecording to Rapin,
the equipment of
e been supplied by
at time very com-
ward. The pre-
as it far exceeded
ean Indies, could
to secretly, but
discover both the
strength

strength and destination, and prepared themselves ac-
cordingly.

As the places that were to be attacked lay at a great
distance, it was necessary to gain time, in order to for-
tify them. It was, therefore, found necessary to devise
some expedient to prevent the sailing of that formida-
ble armament, till every thing was in readiness to op-
pose it. Accordingly, it was given out, that a second
invasion was intended against England; and when the
Spanish fleet was ready to sail for America, that had
been equipping under pretence of an invasion, a sham
attack was made upon Cornwall, in order to spread an
alarm, and give it countenance.

This had the desired effect. It was thought impro-
per to part with so many stout ships while the nation
was threatened; and the expedition was therefore re-
tarded, till the panic had subsided.

It was therefore the 28th of August, 1695, before the
Commanders obtained permission to sail; and in the
mean time the Queen having received advice that the
plate fleet was safe arrived in Europe, and that only one
ship, which had sprung her mast, remained behind, her
Majesty acquainted them with the intelligence, and ad-
vised them to attack Porto Rico, before they pursued
their grand enterprize, by which they might make them-
selves masters of the galleon without losing much time
in the conquest.

Sir Francis Drake, who was not formed to act in con-
junct expeditions, had not been long at sea before he
differed in opinion from his fellow Commander, and
pursued a project totally different from the first object
of the voyage; in which, however, he was seconded by
Sir Thomas Bukevidle, Commander of the land forces.
This scheme was to attack the Canaries in the way to
America; in which, however, they failed; and spending
necessarily much time in the island of Dominica in land-
ing and refreshing the men, who, being unaccustomed to long
voyages in hot climates, were many of them unfit to
proceed, the Spaniards had to effectually prepared them-
selves, that, when the Generals came to action, they
found an opposition very different from what they ex-
pected; and were soon sensible, that what they had for-
merly effected by surprize with a handful of sailors, was
not now to be accomplished with a whole army of dis-
ciplined troops.

In their course to Porto Rico, one of the sternmost
ships of the English fleet fell into the hands of five Span-
ish frigates that had been sent from Spain to convoy
home the galleon from that port. From this slip they
gained the intelligence of the intended attack, the
consequences of which being foreseen by Sir John
Hawkins, it threw him into a sudden disorder, of
which in a few days he died—some say, of a broken
heart.

They were now, November 12, 1595, before Porto
Rico, and the same evening that Sir John Hawkins
died, as the principal officers were at supper, a cannon-
shot from the fort pierced the cabin, killed Sir Ni-
cholas Clifford, wounded Captain Stratford, mortally
wounded Sir Brute Browne, and struck the stool from
under Sir Francis Drake, as he was drinking success to
the attack.

The next day, pursuant to a resolution of a council of
war, a general attack was made upon the shipping in
the harbour, but without effect. The Spaniards suf-
fered much, but the English more; who, finding it im-
possible to make an impression upon the fortifications
of the town, weighed anchor, and steered to Rio de la Ha-
cha, set fire to the town and burned it to the ground;
they likewise performed some other exploits of the like
kind; but having landed the troops destined to cross
the isthmus to attack Panama, after a fatiguing march
in which they were great sufferers, they returned,
without being able to reach the place. This disap-
pointment materially affected Drake, who having, as
he thought, provided a sufficient force to carry into
execution the enterprize which he had well-nigh ef-
fected with a few sailors and Symcerons some years be-
fore, could not bear the thought of surviving his dis-
No. 48.

grace. " Now, says Fuller, began the discontent of
Sir Francis Drake to feed upon him. He conceived,
that expectation, a merciless usurer, computing each
day since his departure, exacted an interest and return
of honour and profit proportionable to his great pre-
parations, and transcending his former achievements.
He saw that all the good which he had done in his voy-
age, consisted in the evil he had done the Spaniards afar
off, whereof he could present but small visible fruits in
England. These apprehensions accompanying, if not
causing, the disease of the flux, wrought his sudden
death; and sickness did not so much untie his cloaths,
as sorrow did rend at once the robe of his mortality
asunder. He lived by the sea, died on it, and was bur-
ied in it.

This account of the manner of Sir Francis Drake's
death seems to be authentic, though some have not
scrupled to insinuate that sickness had no part in that
catastrophe. Be that as it may, Fuller's reflections
upon it deserve to be remembered. " Thus, says he,
we see how great spirits, having mounted to the highest
pitch of performance, afterwards strain and break their
credit in striving to go beyond it. Or, it may be, God
oftentimes leaves the brightest men in an eclipse, to
show that they do but borrow their lustre from his re-
flection."

Thus we have endeavoured to trace the actions of
this celebrated navigator from beginning to end. If
we have withdrawn the veil, which has hitherto covered
his infirmities, it has been in the pursuit of truth; not
with a design to detract from his real merit, but to show
his character in the true light. In the current of his
career, even crimes of the deepest dye are sometimes pa-
tronised even by the public. The actions which gave
life to Drake's popularity, are such as a courageous
leader, with an hundred armed followers, might in
these peaceable times easily perform, by entering the
cities or towns on the coast of Britain, in the dead of
night, cutting the throats of the watch, and all who
happen to be awake in the streets, breaking open and
plundering houses, and churches, seizing every thing va-
luable that should fall into their hands, and, before the
people could recover from their consternation, making
their escape with their booty. Were such a company
masters of an armed vessel, if there were no ship of
force to oppose them, what should hinder their sailing
from place to place, and, " provided they could out-
run report," performing the like exploits in every town
they came to? Would there be any thing truly great in
this? Or would the man who should undertake and exe-
cute an enterprize of such a horrid nature, be justly en-
titled to the name of Hero? If not, what shall we say
of Drake's nocturnal enterprize on Nombre de Dios;
of his way-laying the treasure in the road from Pa-
nama; of his ranging the unarmed coasts of Chili and
Peru; and of his plundering villages, towns, and ships
belonging to a peaceable unsuspecting people, with
whom his nation was at peace, and from whom oppo-
sition was not to be dreaded? What, indeed, did the
people at that time say? Those who were the sufferers
cried out loudly against the plunderer; and Bernard-
dine de Mendoza, the Spanish Ambassador at the court
of Queen Elizabeth, insisted that he should be punished
for his robberies, and that all the money and effects he
had seized should be restored; but, if the Queen was a
private adventurer, as, from Drake's declaration to his
followers, and from other instances of the womanish
liveliness of that Princess there is reason to suspect,
what hope was there of justice or restitution from re-
monstrance? Indeed, it served that avaricious Queen
for a pretence to sequester the treasure which Drake
brought home, and to convert, it is probable, the
greatest part of it to her own use; for, as we have al-
ready shewn from good authority above, though the
whole booty was valued at 800,000. yet only 80,000.
was divided among the plunderers; and Rapin tells us,
that some part of the treasure was afterwards repaid by
the Queen to Spain. If she had not retained enough
in her hands, no one will suppose, that the Sovereign,
5 H who

who could cause the goods of her favourite Leicester to be set to public sale after his death, for the payment of money she had lent him, would have repaid to Spain from her own coffers the plunder that had been unjustly taken by one of her meaner subjects.

To dignify actions, therefore, of the most infamous piracy with the name of great, is to exalt vice, and to substitute successful villainy in the place of substantial virtue. If we view Drake in the light of a courageous plunderer, he may vie with the De la Poles, the Blackbeards, or any of those daring disturbers of the times in which they lived, who struck a panic wherever they roved to commit their ravages: but, consider him as a Commander, employed in the defence of his country, and we shall see nothing to admire, except his courage. In the first enterprize in which he was engaged, he was indeed successful. The Queen, suspecting an intention in Philip of Spain to revenge the injuries his subjects had received, pitched upon Drake, who had given the offence, as the fittest man to prevent the consequences. He, therefore, as he had done before, attacked the enemy by surprize, and set fire to a defenceless number of transports assembled in the harbour of Cadiz, without a ship of war to protect them, or a gun fired by way of opposition. The accident which afterwards threw the rich India ship in his way, on his return home, did him no honour as a Commander, though it gave him credit as a fortunate adventurer: nor did his behaviour in the Channel, when, instead of maintaining his post, he pursued the Hans merchant ships, add at all to his reputation as a Vice-Admiral. His American enterprize with Lord Carlisle was attended with no laurels; and the only two enterprizes in which he was employed in a joint command, he ruined by his perfidy and self-conceit.

It may, indeed, be urged in Drake's defence, that it was the policy of the Queen his Sovereign, to countenance her subjects in distressing Spain, and in mortifying the haughty monarch who sat upon the throne; and that almost all the heroes of her active reign, acquired their glory by practices founded on the same prevailing principle.

This argument in his favour cannot be denied its due weight. The expeditions of Sir John Hawkins; of Sir Walter Raleigh; of Lord Carlisle; of Sir John Norris; of the Earl of Essex; of Cavendish; and, indeed, of most others undertaken against Spain, were professedly with a view to plunder; and the charges of fitting them out were chiefly borne by those who were to be sharers in the booty: yet, surely, there is a mate-

rial difference between the glory that is purchased by valour in the field, and fame that is acquired by contracts to surprize the innocent, and invade the property of the peaceable.

Having now seen Drake in two distinct points of view, as a leader of a company of plunderers, and as a Commander in the royal navy, let us do justice to his character by viewing him as a mariner, and in that light he will hardly have his equal. To project a voyage round the globe, and to conduct it without the assistance of a single mariner on board who had ever crossed the Line, Nuno da Silva, the Portuguese pilot, excepted, was, perhaps, one of the boldest exploits that ever man performed. His navigating his ships along the coast of Brazil; his carrying them through the straits of Magellan in a shorter time than any mariner has ever done since: his keeping the sea in a storm for thirty days together; his skill in navigating the coasts of Chili, Peru, and New Spain, where no English ship had ever sailed; his accuracy in discovering the track of the Spanish ship from the East Indies, and his consummate sagacity in pursuing a new course home to avoid pursuers; cannot be enough admired or applauded. His knowledge of the globe is manifest from the first attempt he made to return home by a northern passage; a passage which he knew would not only secure him from the danger of pursuers, but, were it practicable, would open a free intercourse between his nation and the rich inhabitants of that opulent country in which he was then situated. Finding himself, however, disappointed in this design, how great was his sagacity in the discovery of an unknown country, wherein to repair his ship, refresh his followers, take in wood and water, and to supply himself with every necessary for the vast voyage by sea he was to encounter; and yet, such was his knowledge in making provision against every contingency that might happen, that he lost but one man by sickness during the long run from the coast of New Spain to the Ladrões, in which Commodore Anson lost near half his crew. Nor is his skill less to be admired in his return from the Ladrões, the most dangerous navigation of any part of the known world; for, except the accident upon the rock, as has already been related, he failed from the Ladrões to Java unembarrassed; from Java to Sierra Leona, on the coast of Africa, without touching at any port, or encountering any difficulty, save from a scarcity of water; a thing hardly to be credited, and which was never performed by any mariner before his time, or since.



A NEW, AUTHENTIC, and COMPLETE HISTORY of
CAPTAIN COOK'S
Third and Last VOYAGE

TO THE
PACIFIC OCEAN:

Undertaken, Pursuant to his MAJESTY's Order,
By the said CAPT. JAMES COOK,

HAVING UNDER HIS COMMAND

Samuel Clerke, John Gore, and James King, Esquires,

In his Britannic MAJESTY's Ships,

The **RESOLUTION** and **DISCOVERY**

Being Written in a more pleasing and elegant Stile than any other Work of the Kind; and including all the various important Discoveries, Facts, Incidents, and Circumstances, related in a satisfactory Manner.

CONTAINING

From the 12th of July 1776, to the 4th of October 1780, Inclusive,

A Period of four Years and nearly three Months:

And comprehending a great Variety of interesting Particulars, entirely unnoticed in other Narratives, and which consequently renders all other Works of this Kind spurious and incomplete.

Which Voyage was the Last, under the Direction of that able and much to be lamented Navigator, Captain Cook, with the View of making new Discoveries in the Northern Hemisphere; and, particularly, in order to ascertain the Practicability of a North-West Passage from Europe to the East Indies, between the Continents of Asia and America; and the Position, Extent, and Distance of which, he was likewise to determine.

TOGETHER WITH

A genuine and copious Account of the Death of the Captains Cook and Clerke:—Captain Cook having explored the Coast of America, from 42 deg. 27 min. to 70 deg. 40 min. 57 sec. North latitude, was killed by the Natives of a new discovered Island in the South Sea, on the 14th of February 1779; and was succeeded by Captain Clerke, who died at Sea, of a lingering Illness, August the 22nd, 1779; after which melancholy Events, Captain Gore took the command of the Resolution, and Mr. King, her first Lieutenant, was promoted to that of the Discovery: the Whole being (not an Abridgment but an entire original Narrative) extracted faithfully from the Original Journals of several Officers, and Private Papers; and illustrated with the greatest Variety of curious and splendid Copper-Plates, consisting of Portraits, Perspective Views, Landscapes, Historical Pieces, and most striking Representations of remarkable Events, natural Curiosities, &c. all taken during the Voyage, and now engraved by the most capital Artists of this Kingdom; together with all the Maps, Charts, Plans, &c. shewing the Tracks of the Ships, and relative to Countries now first discovered, or hitherto but imperfectly known.

I N T R O D U C T I O N .

WE are now about to enter a new field for discovery and improvement; no less than to fix the boundaries of the two continents that form the grand divisions, which, though separated to all human appearance, connect the Globe: and in order to shew the importance of the present voyage, and to furnish our numerous friends, subscribers and readers, with an idea

of the magnitude of the undertaking, we shall take a cursory view of that untrodden ground, which former enterprising discoverers visited, and whereon the principal scenes of their operations were exhibited. A brief recapitulation of their expeditions, will evince plainly, how much we are indebted to those intrepid naval officers of our own country, who have extended

our

our acquaintance with the contents of the Globe, opened new channels to an increase of knowledge, and afforded us fresh materials, equally interesting, as they are uncommon, for the study of human nature in various situations. Columbus and Magellan, two illustrious foreigners, rendered their names immortal, at an early period. The former, by a perseverance, of which there was no precedent, very providentially surmounted every obstacle that opposed his progress, and astonished Europe with the production of a New Earth, since called America; while much about the same time the latter, inspired by a like spirit of enterprize, and animated by a magnanimity that despised danger, opened a passage to a new sea, to which he gave the name of Pacific.

In the year 1520, on the 6th of November, Magellan entered the Straits, that have ever since been called by his name, and on the 27th of the same month beheld the wished-for object of his pursuit, the Great Southern Ocean. For one hundred and thirteen days, he continued steering to the north-west, and having in that time crossed the line, he fell in with those islands, to which he gave the name of Ladronez; and proceeding from hence in search of the Moluccas, he found in his way many little islands, where he was hospitably received, and where a friendly correspondence was established. These islands were situated between the Ladronez, and what are now known by the name of the Philippines, in one of which, called Nathan, Magellan, with 60 men, encountering a whole army, was first wounded with a poisoned arrow, and then pierced with a bearded lance. His little squadron, now reduced to two ships, and not more than 80 men, departed hastily, but one only, the *Victory*, returned by the Cape of Good Hope, and was the first ship that ever went round the world. Other adventurers were not now wanting to follow the steps of this intrepid Navigator.

In 1567, Alvarez de Mendamo, another Spaniard, was sent from Lima, on purpose for discovery. He sailed 800 leagues westward from the coast of Peru, and fell in with certain islands in the latitude of 11 deg. S. and captain Cook inclines to the opinion, that they are the cluster which comprizes what has since been called New Britain, &c. Mendamo was also said to have discovered, in 1575, the island of St. Christoval, and not far from thence, the Archipelago, called the islands of Solomon, of which great and small he counted 33.

In 1577, Sir Francis Drake, who was the first Englishman that passed the Straits of Magellan, discovered the island of California, which he named New Albion. He also discovered other small islands in his route to the 43d deg. of N. latitude, but as his sole view was to return with his booty, he paid no regard to objects of less concern. He arrived in England, by the Cape of Good Hope, in the year 1580. To him succeeded Sir Thomas Cavendish, who likewise passed the Straits of Magellan in 1586, and returned nearly by the same route pointed out by his predecessor, touching at the Ladronez, and making some stay at the Philippine isles, of which, on his return, he gave an entertaining description.

In 1595, the Spaniards, intent more on discovery than plunder, fitted out four ships, and gave the command to Alvaro Mendana de Neyra; whose discoveries were the Marquesas, Solitary Island, and Santa Cruz: but most of those who embarked on this expedition either died miserably, or were shipwrecked. One of the fleet was afterwards found with all her sails set, and the people rotten.

In 1598, Oliver Van Noort passed the Straits. He made no discoveries: but in this year the Sebaldine islands were discovered by Sebald de Wert, the same known now by the name of Falkland's Isles.

In 1605 Pedro Fernando de Quiros conceived the design of discovering a southern continent. He is supposed by Mr. Dalrymple and others, to have been the first into whose mind the existence of such a continent had ever entered. On the 21st of December, he sailed from Calloa with two ships and a tender. Luis Paz de Torres was entrusted with the command, and Quiros,

from zeal for the success of the undertaking, was contented to act in the inferior station of pilot.

Quiros, soon after his return, presented a memorial to Philip II. of Spain, in which he enumerates 23 islands that he had discovered, among which was the island of the Virgin Mary, and adjoining to it three parts of the country called Australia del Espritu Santo, in which land were found the bay of St. Philip and St. Jago.

In 1614 George Spitzbergen, with a strong Squadron of Dutch ships pulled the Straits of Magellan; and in 1615 Schouten and Le Maire, in the Unity of 360 tons, and the Hoorn of 110, sailed from the Texel, on the 14th of June, professing for the discovery of a new passage to the South Sea. The Hoorn was burnt, in careening, at King's island, on the coast of Brazil, and the other left singly to pursue her voyage. In latitude 54 deg. 56 min. they came in sight of an opening, to which (having happily passed it) they gave the name of Strait le Maire. Having soon after weathered the southernmost point of the American continent, they called that promontory Cape Horn, or more properly Hoorn, after the town in Holland where the project was first secretly concerted; and two islands which they had passed, they named Bernevelt. They also discovered several others, and coasted the north side of New Britain.

In 1642 Abel Tasman sailed from Batavia in the *Heemskirk*, accompanied by the *Zee Haan* pink, with a design of discovering the Southern Continent. The first land he made was the eastern point of New Holland, since known by the name of Van Dieman's Land. Proceeding in a high latitude to the eastward, he fell in with the westernmost coast of New Zealand, where the greatest part of the crew of the *Zee Haan* were murdered by the savages of a bay, to which he gave the name of Murderer's Bay, called by our late navigator Queen Charlotte's Sound. In his passage he fell in with the isles of Pylslaert, Amsterdam, Middleburg, and Rotterdam. Then directing his course to the N. W. he discovered eighteen or twenty small islands, in latitude 17 deg. 19 min. S. longitude 201 deg. 35 min. to which he gave the name of Prince William's Islands, and Heemskirk's Banks. From thence Tasman pursued his course to New Guinea, without discovering the supposed continent; and returned to Batavia on the 15th of June 1643.

In 1681 Dampier passed the Magellanic Straits, and in 1699 he made a second voyage on discovery, which was chiefly confined to New Holland, New Guinea, New Britain, and the islands adjacent. In 1703, he performed a third voyage, but without making any new discoveries. He was accompanied in this voyage by Mr. Furnell, to whom the circumnavigation of the Globe is ascribed.

In 1721, the Dutch East-India Company, at the instance of captain Roggewein, fitted out a respectable fleet, for the discovery of that continent, which lay hitherto unknown, though believed universally to exist. Three stout ships were appointed, and were well provided for this service; the *Eagle* of 36 guns and 111 men, on board of which embarked Roggewein as commodore, having under him captain Colter, an experienced navigator; the *Tienhoven* of 28 guns, and 100 men, of which captain Bowman was commander; and the *African Galley*, commanded by captain Rosenthal. From these experienced navigators every thing was hoped. They found the Straits of Magellan impracticable, and entered the Southern Ocean, after having endured a variety of difficulties and hardships, by the Strait le Maire. Roggewein pursued nearly the same track as Schouten had pointed out, till, veering more to the north, he fell in with the islands at which commodore Byron first landed, and where some of the wreck of the *African Galley*, as we have mentioned in the history of his voyage, was actually found. Pursuing their course to the westward, they discovered a cluster of islands, undoubtedly the same now called the Friendly Isles, to

which

undertaking, was con-
tion of pilot.
presented a memorial
which he enumerates 23
among which was the
adjoining to it three
ralia del Espiritu Santo,
ay of St. Philip and St.

with a strong Squadron
of Magellan, and in
the Unity of 360 tons,
from the Texel, on the
discovery of a new pas-
sage was burnt, in ca-
se coast of Brazil, and
voyage. In latitude
of an opening, to
they gave the name of
alter weathered the
rican continent, they
ni, or more properly
nd where the project
two islands which they
lt. They also disco-
the north side of New

from Batavia in the
Zee Haan pink, with
ern Continent. The
point of New Hol-
Van Dicman's land,
e eastward, he fell in
y Zealand, where the
Zee Haan were mur-
y which he gave the
y our late navigator
assage he fell in with
Middleburg, and
course to the N. W.
small islands, in lati-
201 deg. 35 min. to
William's Islands,
see Taiman pursued
discovering the sup-
Batavia on the 15th

ellanic Straits, and
discovery, which
and, New Guinea,
ent. In 1703 he
ut making any new
in this voyage by
gation of the Glob-

mpny, at the in-
out a respectable
ent, which lay his
niversally to exist,
ed were well pro-
36 guns and 111
d Roggewein as
in Colter, an ex-
of 28 guns, and
was commanders
y captain Rosen-
ators every thing
of Magellan im-
Ocean, after hav-
d hardships, by
nearly the same
veering more to
which commo-
ne of the wreck
ned in the his-
Pursuing their
luster of islands,
riendly Isles, to
which

which they gave the name of the Labyrinth, because it was with difficulty they could clear them. They continued their course towards New Britain, and New Guinea; and thence by the way of the Moluccas to the East Indies; and thus ended, like all the former voyages, one of which was expected at least to have solved the question, but, in fact determined nothing; yet they who argued from the harmony observable in the works of nature, insisted that something was wanting to give the side of the globe a resemblance to the other; while those who reasoned from experience, pronounced the whole system the creature of the fertile brain.

In 1738 Lazer Bouvet was sent by the East India Company, upon discovery in the Southern Atlantic Ocean. He sailed from Port Orient on the 19th of July, on board the Eagle, accompanied by the Mary, and on the 11th of January following, it was thought he had discovered land in latitude 54 deg. south, longitude 11 min. east. But this having been diligently fought for by captain Cook, without effect, there is good reason to doubt if any such exists; or, if it does, it is too remote from any known tract to be of use to trade or navigation. In 1742 commodore Anson traversed the Great Pacific Ocean; but he made no discoveries within the limits of our review.

We come now to that interesting æra, when the spirit of discovery recovered new strength, under the cherishing influence and munificent encouragement of his present Majesty, George III. who having put a period to the destructive operations of war, he turned his attention to enterprises more adapted to the season of returning peace. His Majesty formed the grand design of exploring the Southern Hemisphere; and in the prosecution of an object so well adapted to the views of a great commercial people, one voyage followed another in close succession.

In 1764, Captain, now Admiral Byron, having under his command the Dolphin and Tamar, passed through the Straits of Magellan, into the Pacific Ocean; where he discovered several islands, and returned to England in May, 1766. In the month of August following, the Dolphin was again sent out under the command of captain Wallis, with the Swallow sloop, commanded by captain Carteret. They proceeded together till they came to the west end of the Straits of Magellan, and in sight of the Great South Sea, where they were separated. Captain Wallis directed his course more westerly than any navigator had done before in so high a latitude; discovered not less than fourteen new islands; and returned to England with the Dolphin, in May 1768. His companion captain Carteret kept a different route, made other discoveries, among which was the Strait between New Britain and New Ireland. He returned with the Swallow to England, after having encountered innumerable difficulties, in March 1769. In the same year and month, commodore Bougainville, having circumnavigated the globe, arrived in France.

In 1779, the Spaniards sent out a ship to trace the discoveries of the English and French commanders, which arrived at Otaheite in 1771. This ship touched at Easter Island, but whether it returned to New or Old Spain remains undecided. In the same year 1769, the French also fitted out another ship from the Mauritius, under the command of captain Kergulen, who, having discovered a few barren islands, contented himself with leaving some memorials, that were found by Captain Cook. To this distinguished navigator was reserved the honour of being the first, who from a series of the most satisfactory observations, beginning at the west entrance of the Strait of Magellan, and carried on with unwearyed perseverance round Terra del Fuego, through the Strait of Le Maire, has constructed a chart of the southern extremity of America, from which it will appear, what advantages will now be enjoyed by those who shall hereafter sail round Cape Horn. Captain Cook sailed from Plymouth, in August 1768, and returned home by the Cape of Good Hope in July 1771. This experienced circumnavigator performed his second voyage in the Resolution and Adventure. These

two ships sailed from England in July 1772, and returned on the 30th of the same month, in 1775. The general object of this and the preceding voyage round the world, undertaken by the command of his Majesty, was to search for unknown tracts of land that might exist within the bosom of the immense expanse of ocean that occupies the whole southern hemisphere; and, particularly, to determine to a certainty, the existence or non-existence of a Southern Continent: and these voyages have facilitated the access of ships into the Pacific Ocean, and also greatly enlarged our knowledge of its contents. Our late navigators, besides perfecting many of the discoveries of their predecessors, have added to them a long catalogue of their own. The several lands, of which any account had been given by the Spaniards or Dutch, have been carefully looked for, and most of them found, visited, and accurately surveyed. The boasted Tierra Australia del Espiritu Santo of Quiros, as being a part of a southern continent, could not withstand capt. Cook's examination, who sailed round it, and assigned its true position, and moderate bounds, in the Archipelago of the New Hebrides. Bougainville did no more than discover, that the land here was not connected; but captain Cook found it to be composed of islands, and explored the whole group. Byron, Wallis, and Carteret, had each of them contributed towards increasing our knowledge of the amazing profusion of islands that exist in the Pacific Ocean, within the limits of the southern tropic: but how far that ocean reached to the west, what lands bounded it on that side, and the connection of those lands with the discoveries of former navigators, remained absolutely unknown, till captain Cook decided the question, and brought home such ample accounts of them and their inhabitants, as have left little more to be done in that part of the globe. It was a favourite conjectural opinion among geographers, that New Zealand was a part of a southern continent; but Captain Cook's voyage in the Endeavour has proved it to be a mere supposition; for he spent near six months upon its coasts, circumnavigated it completely, and ascertained its extent and divisions into two islands. Whether New Holland did or did not join to New Guinea was another question, which captain Cook decided, by sailing between them through Endeavour Strait. He, therefore, in this part of his voyage, has established a fact of essential service to navigation, by opening, if not a new, at least an unfrequented and forgotten communication between the Southern Pacific and Indian oceans. To captain Carteret we are indebted for a new discovery, in the strictest sense of the word. St. George's channel, through which his ship found a way, between New Britain and New Ireland, is a much better and shorter passage, whether eastward or westward, than round all the islands and lands to the northward. Thus far, therefore, the late voyages of our own countrymen, to disclose new tracks of navigation, and to reform old defects in geography, appear to have been prosecuted with a satisfactory degree of success.

But something was still wanting to complete the great plan of discovery. The utmost accessible extremities of the Southern Hemisphere had been repeatedly visited and surveyed; yet great variety of opinion prevailed concerning the navigable boundaries of our own hemisphere; particularly, as to the existence, or at least as to the practicability of a northern passage between the Atlantic and Pacific oceans, either by sailing eastward, round Asia, or westward, round North America; by which passage, could it be found, voyages to the East Indies in general would be much shortened, and, consequently become more profitable, than by making the tedious circuit of the Cape of Good Hope. This favourite object of the English, as early as the fifteenth century, appeared so certain to the Cabots, that the younger Sebastian made the original attempt to discover a N. W. passage in 1497, which ended in the discovery of Newfoundland, and the Labrador coast. He returned by the way of Newfoundland, bringing home with him two Esquimaux. In

1576 Sir Martin Forbisher undertook a second expedition, and found a strait on the southernmost point of Greenland, but, after repeated trials, he relinquished his hope of seeing the object he held in contemplation and had been pursuing. Sir Humphry Gilbert was mortified with the same disappointment. He coasted along the American Continent from the 60th degree of northern latitude, till he fell in with the Gulph of St. Lawrence; took possession, in his Sovereign's name, of that land, since called by the French Canada; and was the first who projected and promoted the establishment of the fishery in Newfoundland. Captain John Davis made three trials for a passage N. W. each of which proved unfortunate and unsuccessful. In his progress he passed the strait that still bears his name, and advanced as high as the latitude of 66 deg. Mr. Henry Hudson, in the year 1610, projected a new course towards the N. W. which brought him to the mouth of the bay that now bears his name. But the adventure ended, by the mutiny of his crew, in the tragical death of the Captain, and seven of his sick followers. The year following Sir Henry Button undertook the task, but with no better success than his predecessor. He was followed by James Hall and William Baffin. Hall in this fruitless expedition fell by the hands of a savage; and Baffin, who renewed the pursuit in 1615, examined a sea that communicates with Davis's strait, which he found to be no other than a great bay, and called it after his own name: an inlet to the north, in latitude 78 deg. he called Smith's sound. In 1631 Luke Fox made a voyage in search of the same supposed passage, but to as little purpose as the rest. He was followed by Captain James, who, after the most elaborate search, changed his opinion, and declared that no such passage existed. Thus our countrymen and the Dutch have been equally unsuccessful in various attempts to find this passage in an eastern direction. Wood's failure in 1676 seemed to have closed the long list of unfortunate northern expeditions in that century; and the discovery, if not absolutely despised of, by having been missed so often, ceased, for near another century, to be sought after: but Mr. Dobbs once more recalled the attention of this country to the probability of a N. W. passage through Hudson's Bay; in consequence of which captain Middleton was sent out by government in 1741, and captains Smith and Moore, by a private society, in 1746, each encouraged by an act of parliament passed in the preceding year, that annexed a reward of twenty thousand pounds to the discovery of a passage: however, they all returned from Hudson's Bay with reports of their proceedings, that left the attainment of the great object in view, at as great a distance as ever.

But it was not yet certain, that such a passage might not be found on the western side of America; and researches of this kind were no longer left to the solicitation, or to the subscriptions, of private adventurers; they engaged royal attention, and, in the present reign, were warmly promoted by the minister at the head of the naval department: and hence it was, that while captain Cook was prosecuting his voyage towards the South Pole, in 1773, Lord Mulgrave failed with two ships, to determine how far navigation was practicable towards the North Pole. And that nothing might be left unattempted, though much had been already done, captain Cook, whose professional knowledge could only be equalled by the persevering diligence with which he had employed it in the course of his former researches, was called upon once more to resume, or rather to complete his survey of the globe. This brave and experienced commander might have spent the remainder of his days in the command to which he had been appointed in Greenwich hospital; but he cheerfully relinquished this honourable station, and, in 1766, undertook for the service of his country another voyage, which, in one respect, was less fortunate than any former expeditions, being performed at the expence of the precious and most valuable life of its conductor. Former circumnavigators had returned to Europe by the Cape of Good Hope; the arduous task was now at-

signed to captain Cook of attempting it by reaching the high northern latitudes between Asia and America. He was ordered to proceed to Otaheite, or the Society Islands, and then having crossed the equator into the North Tropic, to hold such a course as might most probably give success to the attempt of finding out a northern passage: but that our readers may be enabled to judge with precision of the great outlines of the present important voyage, of the various objects it has in view, and how far they have been carried into execution, we shall here insert a true copy of the Instructions to captain Cook, from the Commissioners for executing the office of Lord High Admiral of Great Britain, Ireland, &c. and which in substance were as follow.

"Whereas the Earl of Sandwich has signified to us his Majesty's pleasure, that an attempt should be made to find out a northern passage by sea from the Pacific to the Atlantic Ocean; and whereas we have in pursuance thereof, caused his Majesty's sloop Resolution and Discovery to be fitted, in all respects, proper to proceed upon a voyage for the purpose above mentioned, and, from the experience we have had of your abilities and good conduct in your late voyages, have thought fit to intrust you with the conduct of the present intended voyage, and with that view appointed you to command the first mentioned sloop, and directed captain Clerke, who commands the other, to follow your orders for his further proceedings: you are hereby required and directed to proceed with the said two sloops directly to the Cape of Good Hope, unless you shall judge it necessary to stop at Madeira, the Cape de Verd, or Canary Islands, to take in wine for the use of their companies; in which case you are at liberty so to do, taking care to remain there no longer than may be necessary for that purpose; and on your arrival at the Cape of Good Hope, you are to refresh the sloops companies with as much provisions and water as can be conveniently stowed.

"If possible, you are to leave the Cape of Good Hope by the end of October, or beginning of November next, and proceed to the southward in search of islands said to have been lately seen by the French in latitude 48 deg. south, and under, or near the meridian of Mauritius. In case you find those islands, you are to examine them thoroughly for a good harbour; and upon discovering one, make the necessary observations to facilitate the finding it again; as a good port, in that situation, may hereafter prove very useful; although it should afford little or nothing more than shelter, wood, and water. You are not, however, to spend too much time in looking out for those islands, or in the examination of them, if found, but to proceed to Otaheite, or the Society Isles, (touching at New Zealand in your way thither, if you should judge it necessary and convenient) and taking care to arrive there time enough to admit of your giving the sloops companies the refreshment they may stand in need of, before you prosecute the farther object of these instructions. Upon your arrival at Otaheite, or the Society Isles, you are to land Omiah at such of them as he may choose, and to leave him there.

"You are to distribute among the chiefs of those islands such part of the presents with which you have been supplied, as you shall judge proper, reserving the remainder to distribute among the natives of the countries you may discover in the Northern Hemisphere: and having refreshed the people belonging to the sloops under your command, and taken on board such wood and water as they may respectively stand in need of, you are to leave those islands in the beginning of February, or sooner if you shall judge it necessary, and then proceed in as direct a course as you can to the coast of New Albion, endeavouring to fall in with it in the latitude of 45 deg. N. and taking care in your way thither, not to lose any time in search of new lands, or to stop at any you may fall in with, unless you find it necessary to recruit your wood and water.

"You are also in your way thither, strictly enjoined not to touch upon any part of the Spanish dominions on the

the western continent of America, unless driven thither by some unavoidable accident; in which case you are no longer there than shall be absolutely necessary, and to be very careful not to give umbrage or offence to any of the inhabitants or subjects of his catholic Majesty. And if, in your farther progress to the northward, as hereafter directed, you find any subjects of any European prince or state upon any part of the coast you may think proper to visit, you are not to disturb them, or give them any just cause of offence, but, on the contrary, to treat them with civility and friendship.

Upon your arrival on the coast of New Albion, you are to put into the first convenient port to recruit your wood and water, and procure refreshments, and then to proceed northward along the coast, as far as the latitude of 65 deg. or farther, if you are not obstructed by winds or ice; taking care not to lose any time in exploring rivers or inlets, or upon any other account, until you get into the before-mentioned latitude of 65 deg. where we could wish you to arrive in the month of June next. When you get that length, you are very carefully to search for, and to explore such rivers, or inlets, as may appear to be of considerable extent, and pointing towards Hudson's, or Baffin's Bays, and if, from your own observations, or from any information you may receive from the natives (who, there is reason to believe are the same race of people, and speak the same language, of which you are furnished with a vocabulary, as the Esquimaux) there shall appear to be a certainty, or even a probability of a water passage into the aforementioned bays, or either of them, you are, in such case, to use your utmost endeavours to pass through with one or both of the sloops, unless you shall be of opinion that the passage may be effected with more certainty, or with greater probability by smaller vessels; in which case you are to set up the frames of one or both the small vessels with which you are provided, and, when they are put together, and are properly fitted, stowed, and victualled, you are to dispatch one or both of them, under the care of proper officers, with a sufficient number of petty officers, men, and boats, in order to attempt the said passage; with such instructions for re-joining you, if they should fail, or for their farther proceedings, if they should succeed in the attempt, as you shall judge most proper. But, nevertheless, if you shall find it more eligible to pursue any other measures than those above pointed out, in order to make a discovery of the before-mentioned passage (if any such there be) you are at liberty; and we leave it to your discretion, to pursue such measures accordingly.

But, should you be satisfied, that there is no passage through the bays, sufficient for the purposes of navigation, you are, at the proper season of the year, to repair to the port of St. Peter and St. Paul in Kamtschatka, or wherever else you shall judge more proper, in order to refresh your people and pass the winter; and in the spring of the ensuing year, 1778, to proceed from thence to the northward, as far as, in your prudence, you may think proper, in further search of a north-east, or north-west passage, from the Pacific Ocean into the Atlantic, or North Sea; and if, from your own observation, or any information you may receive, there shall appear to be a probability of such a passage, you are to proceed as above directed; and having discovered such a passage, or failed in the attempt, make the best of your way back to England, by such route as you may think best for the improvement of geography and navigation; repairing to Spithead with both sloops, where they are to remain till further orders.

And at whatever places you may touch in the course of your voyage, where accurate observations of the nature hereafter mentioned have not already been made, you are, as far as your time will allow, very carefully to observe the situation of such places, both in latitude and longitude; the variation of the needle; bearings of head-lands; height, direction, and course of the tides and currents; depths, and soundings of the sea; shoals, rocks, &c. and also to survey, make charts, and take

views of such bays, harbours, and different parts of the coast, and to make such notations thereon, as may be useful either to navigation or commerce. You are also carefully to observe the nature of the soil, and the produce thereof; the animals and fowls that inhabit or frequent it; the fishes that are to be found in the rivers or upon the coasts, and in what plenty; and, in case there are any peculiar to such places, to describe them minutely, and to make as accurate drawings of them as you can; and, if you find any metals, minerals, or valuable stones, or any extraneous fossils, you are to bring home specimens of each; as also of the seeds of such trees, shrubs, plants, fruits and grains, peculiar to those places, as you may be able to collect, and to transmit them to our secretary, that proper experiments and examination may be made of them. You are likewise to examine the genius, temper, disposition, and number of the natives and inhabitants, where you find any; and to endeavour, by all proper means, to cultivate a friendship with them, making them presents of such trinkets as you may have on board, and they may like best; inviting them to traffic; and shewing them every kind of civility and regard; but taking care, nevertheless, not to suffer yourself to be surprized by them, but to be always on your guard against any accidents.

You are also, with the consent of the natives, to take possession, in the name of the King of Great Britain, of convenient situations in such countries as you may discover, that have already not been discovered or visited by any other European power; and to distribute among the inhabitants such things as will remain as traces and testimonies of your having been there; but if you find the countries so discovered are uninhabited, you are to take possession of them for his Majesty, by setting up proper marks and inscriptions, as first discoverers and possessors.

But so far as, in undertakings of this nature, several emergencies may arise not to be foreseen, and therefore not particularly to be provided for by instructions before-hand; you are, in such cases, to proceed as you shall judge most advantageous to the service on which you are employed; and you are, by all opportunities, to send to our Secretary, for our information, accounts of your proceedings, and copies of the surveys and drawings you shall have made; and upon your arrival in England, you are immediately to repair to this office, in order to lay before us a full account of your proceedings in the whole course of your voyage; taking care before you leave the sloop, to demand from the officers and petty officers, the log-books and journals they may have kept, and to seal them up for our inspection; and enjoining them and the whole crew, not to divulge where they have been, until they have permission so to do; and you are to direct captain Clerke to do the same, with respect to the officers, petty officers, and crew of the Discovery.

Should any accident happen to the Resolution, in the course of the voyage, so as to disable her from proceeding any farther, you are, in such case, to remove yourself and her crew into the Discovery, and to prosecute your voyage in her; her commander being hereby strictly required to receive you on board, and to obey your orders, the same, in every respect, as when you were actually on board the Resolution; and, in case of your inability, by sickness or otherwise, to carry these instructions into execution, you are to be careful to leave them with the next officer in command, who is hereby required to execute them in the best manner he can.

The above Instructions were given July the 6th, 1776, under the hands of the Earl of Sandwich, Lord C. Spencer, Sir H. Palliser; and, by command of their Lordships, signed Philip Stephens, Secretary of the Admiralty.

In order to carry this noble and extensive plan into execution, on February the 14th 1776, the Resolution and Discovery, having been completely equipped in the dock at Deptford, were put into commission. Captain Cook hoisted his pendant on board the former sloop; and the command of the Discovery, of three hundred tons

tons burthen, which had been purchased into the service, was given to captain Clerke, who had been captain Cook's second Lieutenant, on board the Resolution, in his second voyage round the world. Both ships were well fitted out, and supplied abundantly with every article necessary for a long voyage; and on the 8th of June, while they lay in long-reach, we had the satisfaction of a visit from the earl of Sandwich, Sir Hugh Palliser, and others of the board of Admiralty, to examine whether every thing had been completed pursuant to their orders, and to the convenience of those who were to embark. They honoured captain Cook with their company to dinner on that day; and were saluted, on their coming on board, and on their going on shore, with seventeen guns and three cheers.

To convey some permanent benefit to the inhabitants of Otaheite, and of the other islands which we might happen to visit, his Majesty ordered us a supply of some useful animals, and we took on board a bull, two cows, with their calves, and some sheep; with hay and corn for their support. We were also furnished with a sufficient quantity of our valuable European garden seeds, which might add fresh supplies of food to the vegetable productions of our newly discovered islands. We had also an extensive assortment of iron tools and trinkets, to facilitate a friendly commerce and intercourse with the inhabitants of such new countries as we might discover. With respect to our own wants, nothing was refused us that might be conducive to health, comfort or convenience. Those at the head of the naval department were equally solicitous to render our voyage of public utility; to this end we received a variety of astronomical and nautical instruments, which the Board of Longitude intrusted to captain Cook and Mr. King, his second Lieutenant; they having engaged to supply the place of a professed observer. The Board, likewise, put into their possession the time-keeper, which captain Cook had carried out in his last voyage, and which had performed so well. It was contracted by Mr. Kendal, and was a copy of Mr. Harrison's. Another time-piece, and the same assortment of astronomical and other instruments, were put on board the Discovery, for the use of Mr. William Bailey, who was engaged as an observer on board that sloop. Though several young men, among the sea officers, were capable of being employed in constructing charts, drawing plans, and taking views of the coasts, and head-lands, nevertheless, Mr. Webber was engaged to embark with captain Cook, for the purpose of supplying the defects of written accounts; by taking accurate and masterly drawings of the most memorable scenes of our transactions. Mr. Anderson, likewise, Surgeon to captain Cook, added to his professional abilities a great proficiency in natural history. He had already visited the South Sea islands in the same ship, and enabled the Captain to enrich his relation of his voyage with useful and valuable remarks. The vocabularies of the Friendly and Sandwich islands, and of the natives of Nootka had been furnished to our commander, by this his most useful associate, Mr. Anderson; and a fourth, in which the language of the Esquimaux is compared with that of the Americans on the opposite side of the continent, had been prepared by the Captain himself. The confessed abilities, and great assiduity of Mr. Anderson, in observing every thing that related either to natural history, or to manners and language, and the desire that captain Cook, on all occasions, shewed to have the assistance of that gentleman, stamped a great value on his collections.

The Resolution had the same appointment of officers and men which she had in her former voyage; and the establishment of the Discovery varied from that of the Adventure, in the single instance of her having no marine officer on board. This arrangement was to be finally completed at Plymouth; and on the 9th of July we received the party of marines allotted for our voyage. And the supernumerary seamen, occasioned by this reinforcement, being turned over into the Ocean man of war, our several complements of officers, and the re-

spective crews of both ships, remained as expressed in the two underwritten lists.

I. A LIST of the OFFICERS, SEAMEN, and PRIVATES, on board the RESOLUTION.

1	CAPTAIN	- - -	James Cook,
3	LIEUTENANTS	- - -	John Gore, James King, and John Williamson.
1	MASTER	- - -	William Bligh.
1	BOATSWAIN	- - -	William Ewin.
1	CARPENTER	- - -	James Clevely.
1	GUNNER	- - -	Robert Anderson.
1	SURGEON	- - -	William Anderson.
3	MASTER'S MATES	- - -	Roberts, &c.
6	MIDSHIPMEN	- - -	Hargett, &c.
2	SURGEON'S MATES	- - -	Samwell and Davis.
2	CAPTAIN'S CLERKS	- - -	Alex. Hoggard Alex. Dewar.
1	MASTER AT ARMS	- - -	William Collet.
1	CORPORAL	- - -	William Griffiths.
1	ARMOURER	- - -	William Hunt.
1	DITTO MATE	- - -	William Price.
1	SAIL MAKER	- - -	William Widdel.
1	DITTO MATE	- - -	William Maceril.
3	BOATSWAIN'S MATES	- - -	Quin, James, and Doyle.
3	CARPENTER'S DITTO	- - -	Barber and Macintosh.
2	GUNNER'S DITTO	- - -	Brown and Rainley.
4	CARPENTER'S CREW	- - -	Carter, &c.
1	COOK	- - -	Robert Morris.
1	DITTO MATE	- - -	Richard Young.
6	QUARTER MASTERS	- - -	Weling, &c.

45 ABLE SEAMEN.

MARINES.

1	LIEUTENANT	- - -	Moleworth Philips.
1	SERGEANT	- - -	Samuel Gibson.
2	CORPORALS	- - -	Lediard and Thomas.
1	DRUMMER	- - -	Michael Portman.

15 PRIVATES.

Total of the Ship's Company 113 men.

II. A LIST of the OFFICERS, SEAMEN, and PRIVATES, on board the DISCOVERY.

1	CAPTAIN	- - -	Charles Clerke.
2	LIEUTENANTS	- - -	James Burney, John Rickman
1	MASTER	- - -	Thomas Edgar.
1	BOATSWAIN	- - -	Eness Atkins.
1	CARPENTER	- - -	Peter Reynolds.
1	GUNNER	- - -	William Peckover.
1	SURGEON	- - -	John Law.
2	MASTER'S MATES	- - -	Home and Hollingby.
4	MIDSHIPMEN	- - -	Alex. Mouat, &c.
2	SURGEON'S MATES	- - -	Snaggs and Ellis.
1	CAPTAIN'S CLERK	- - -	Gregory Banthom.
1	MASTER AT ARMS.	- - -	
1	CORPORAL	- - -	
1	ARMOURER	- - -	Dixon.
1	DITTO MATE.	- - -	
1	SAIL MAKER.	- - -	
1	DITTO MATE.	- - -	
2	BOATSWAIN'S MATES.	- - -	
2	CARPENTER'S DITTO.	- - -	
1	GUNNER'S DITTO.	- - -	
4	CARPENTER'S CREW.	- - -	
1	COOK.	- - -	
4	QUARTER MASTERS	- - -	Cox, &c.

33 ABLE SEAMEN.

MARINES.

1	SERGEANT	- - -	Letant.
1	CORPORAL.	- - -	
1	DRUMMER	- - -	Hollywell.

8 PRIVATES.

Total of the Ship's Company 80 men.

To these we may here add Omiah, who, as we were to touch at the Society islands and Otaheite, was to take his passage in the Resolution, to his native country. Before

ained as expressed in

ERS, SEAMEN, and RESOLUTION.

Cook,
Gore, James King, and
Williamson.
m Bligh.
m Ewin.
Clevely.
Anderson.
m Anderson.
s, &c.
l, &c.
ll and Davis.
Logg and Alex. Dewar.
m Collect.
m Griffiths.
m Hunt.
m Price.
m Widdel.
m Maccriil.
ames, and Doyle.
and Macintosh.
and Ramsfy.
&c.
Morris.
l Young.
&c.

S.
m Phillips.
Gibson.
and Thomas.
Portman.

ny 113 men.
S, SEAMEN, and DISCOVERY.

Clerke.
morney, John Rickman
Edgar.
skins.
mynolds.
Peckover.
d Hollingby.
uat, &c.
d Ellis.
Banthom.

S.

ny 80 men.

t, who, as we were

Otaheite, was to

his native country.

Before

Before the Resolution and Adventure quitted the small but fertile island of Huahine, captain Furneaux, who had the command of the latter, agreed to receive on board his ship a young man named Omai, or Omiah, a native of Ulitea, where he was possessed of some property, of which he had been deprived by the people of Bolabola. Captain Cook wondered that captain Furneaux would encumber himself with this man, who in his opinion, was not a proper sample of the inhabitants of these happy islands, not having any advantage of birth, or acquired rank, nor being eminent in shape, figure, or complexion; for their people of the first rank are much fairer, and, usually, better behaved, and more intelligent, than the middling class of people, among whom Omiah's is to be ranked. Captain Cook, however, since his arrival in England, has been convinced of his error; for, excepting his complexion (which is undoubtedly of a deeper hue than that of the Feres, or gentry, who live, as in other countries, a more luxurious life, and are less exposed to the heat of the sun) he doubted whether any other of the natives would have given a more general satisfaction by his behaviour among them. "Omiah," he observed, has certainly a very good understanding, quick parts, and honest principles; he has a natural good behaviour, which renders him acceptable to the best company, and a proper degree of pride, which taught him to avoid the society of persons of inferior rank. He has passions of the same kind as other young men, but has judgment enough not to indulge them in any improper manner. I do not imagine that he has any dislike to liquor, and if he had fallen into company where the person who drank the most, met with the most approbation, I have no doubt, but that he would have endeavoured to gain the applause of those with whom he associated; but, fortunately for him, he perceived that drinking was very little in use but among the inferior people, and as he was very watchful into the manners and conduct of the persons of rank who honoured him with their protection, he was sober and modest; and I never heard that, during the whole time of his stay in London, which was two years, he ever once was disguised with wine, or ever shewed an inclination to go beyond the strictest rules of moderation. So after his arrival in London, the Earl of Sandwich, the first Lord of the Admiralty, introduced him to his Majesty at Kew, when he met with a most gracious reception, and imbibed the strongest impression of duty and gratitude, which I am persuaded he will preserve to the latest moment of his life. During his stay in England he was caressed by many of the principal nobility, and did nothing to forfeit the esteem of any one of them; but his principal patrons were the earl of Sandwich, Mr. Banks, and Dr. Solander: the first probably thought it a duty of his office to protect and countenance an inhabitant of that hospitable country, where the wants and distresses of those in his department had been alleviated and supplied in the most ample manner; the others, as a testimony of their gratitude for the generous reception they had met with during their residence in his country. But though Omiah lived in the midst of amusements during his residence in England, his return to his native country was always in his thoughts; and though he was not impatient to go, now the time of his return approached, he was agitated by different passions in turns, and left London with a mixture of regret and satisfaction." In our voyage, when we talked about England, and about those, who, during his stay had honoured him with their protection and friendship, his spirits were sensibly affected, and it was with difficulty he could refrain from tears. But, the instant the conversation turned to his own islands, his eyes began to sparkle with joy. He was deeply impressed with a sense of the good treatment he had met with in England, and entertained the highest ideas of the country and of the people. But the pleasing prospect he now had of returning home, loaded with what he well knew would be esteemed invaluable treasures there, and the flattering hope which the possession of these gave him, of attaining to a distinguished superiority among his countrymen, were considerations that

operated by degrees, to suppress every uneasy sensation; and he seemed to be quite happy when he got on board the ship. By his Majesty, he was supplied with an ample provision of every article which, during our intercourse with his country, we had observed to be in any estimation there, either as useful or ornamental. He had, besides, received many presents of the same nature from Lord Sandwich, Mr. Banks (now Sir Joseph) and several other gentlemen and ladies of his acquaintance. In short, every method had been employed, both during his abode in England, and at his departure, to make him the instrument of conveying to the inhabitants of the Society Islands, and others in the Pacific Ocean, the most exalted opinion of British greatness and generosity.

Every preparation being now completed, Captain Cook received an order to proceed to Plymouth, and to take the Discovery under his command; in consequence of which, having taken in our guns at the Gallions, on the 15th of June 1766, both ships came to an anchor at the Nore; but our fresh provisions being nearly exhausted, the Discovery weighed next day, in obedience to Captain Cook's order, but the Resolution remained at the Nore waiting for her Commander, who was then in London. On the 24th, every thing being ready for our departure, Captain Cook set out with Omiah from London, at six o'clock in the morning; by eleven they reached Chatham, and after dining with Commissioner Proby, he very obligingly ordered his yacht to convey them to Sheerness, where the Captain's boat was waiting to take them on board. On the 25th, we made sail for the Downs; and came to an anchor there on Wednesday the 26th. Having received our boats on the day following, we got again under sail; and on Sunday the 30th, at three o'clock, P. M. we anchored in Plymouth-sound, where the Discovery had arrived only three days before. We saluted Admiral Amherst, whose flag was flying on board the Ocean, and he returned the compliment. On the 1st and 2d of July we were employed in replacing the water and provisions we had expended, and in receiving on board a supply of Port wine. On Saturday the 6th, his majesty's ships Diamond, Ambuscade, and Unicorn, with a fleet of transports, consisting of 62 sail, bound to America, with the last division of the Hessian troops, and some horse, were forced into the sound. On the 8th, Captain Cook received his instructions, and on the 10th the proper persons came on board and paid the officers and crew up to the 30th of last month. The petty officers and seamen received also two months wages in advance. Such indulgence to the latter is customary, but the payment of what was due to the superior officers, was in consideration of our peculiar situation, to enable us to defray the expence of furnishing ourselves with necessaries for a voyage of such uncommon duration.

As to Omiah, he appeared to be quite happy on board, nor would he go on shore, though numbers of people were frequently waiting there with the expectation of seeing him. To the account already given of this child of curiosity, we shall add some traits of his character as delineated by Mr. Foister, wherein his good qualities are so blended with childishness and folly, that one can hardly think it applicable to the same person. "Omiah," says Mr. Foister, "has been considered either as remarkably stupid or very intelligent, according to the different allowances which were made by those who judged of his abilities. His language which is destitute of ever, harsh consonant, and where every word ends with a vowel, had so little exercised his organs of speech, that they were wholly unfit to pronounce the more complicated English sounds; and this physical, or rather habitual defect, has been too often misconstrued. Upon his arrival in England, he was immediately introduced into general company, led to the most splendid entertainments, and presented at court amidst a brilliant circle of the first nobility. He naturally imitated that easy and elegant politeness which is so prevalent in all those places; he adopted the manners, the occupations, and amusements of his com-

panions, and gave many proofs of a quick conception and lively fancy. Among the instances of his intelligence, I need only mention his knowledge of the game of chess, in which he has made an amazing proficiency. The multiplicity of objects that crowded upon him, prevented his paying due attention to those particulars, which would have been beneficial to himself and his countrymen at his return. He was not able to form a general comprehensive view of our whole civilized system, and to abstract from thence what appeared most strikingly useful, and applicable to the improvement of his country. His senses were charmed by beauty, symmetry, harmony, and magnificence; they called aloud for gratification, and he was accustomed to obey their voice. The continued round of enjoyments left him no time to think of his future life; and being destitute of the genius of a Tupia, whose superior abilities would have enabled him to form a plan for his own conduct, his understanding remained unimproved. After having spent two years in England, his judgment was in its infant state; and, therefore, when he was preparing to return, he coveted almost every thing he saw, and particularly that which amused him by some unexpected effect. To gratify his puerile fancy, as it should seem, rather than from any other motives, he was indulged with a portable organ, an electrical machine, a coat of mail, and a suit of armour." Such is

the account, and such the character of Omiah, (as given by Mr. Forster,) who left his country, and his connections, to roam he did not know where, nor for what, having no idea of improving the arts, manufactures, or commerce of his country; or introducing one useful science among them. He carried with him, besides the articles above enumerated, a profusion of almost every thing that can be named, axes, saws, chisels, and carpenters tools of every kind; all sorts of Birmingham and Sheffield wares; guns, pistols, cutlasses, powder, and ammunition; needles, pins, fish-hooks, and various implements for sport; nets of all sorts; with hand-crowns, and a lathe for turning. He had likewise cloaths of different colours and different fabrics, laced and plain; some made in the style of his own country, and several after our manner. Some of these last he bartered with the petty officers (after he had passed New Zealand) for red feathers. He was likewise supplied plentifully with glass and china-ware, with beads and toys, some of great value; medals of various metals; and a watch was presented to him by a person of distinction: in short, nothing was withheld from him that he required either for trade in his own country, or for curiosity. How he behaved on board, and in what manner he was received on his return home, will be seen in the sequel of the history of our voyage, to which we now proceed.

C H A P. I.

Departure of the Resolution from Plymouth Sound—Her passage to Teneriffe, and reception she met with there—The road of Santa Cruz described—Geographical account of the island, and history of the cities of Santa Cruz and Laguna—Air, climate, agriculture, produce, commerce, and inhabitants described—Her departure from Teneriffe for the Cape of Good Hope—The Discovery follows, and joins company some time after her arrival there—The Resolution in danger near the sunken rocks of Bonavilla—Arrives at the Cape of Good Hope—Transactions there—An account of Mr. Anderson's journey up the country—Both ships leave the Cape, and proceed on their voyage to the southward.

A. D. 1776. **I**N the morning of the 11th of July, Captain Cook delivered into the hands of Mr. Burney, first lieutenant of the Discovery, Captain Clerke's sailing orders; a copy of which he also left with the commanding officer of his majesty's ships at Plymouth, to be delivered to the Captain on his arrival.

In the afternoon we weighed with the ebb, and got out beyond all the shipping in the sound. On Friday the 12th, the impatience of the ship's company, and the notion they had entertained of its being a lucky-day, as it was the same the Resolution had set sail on in her former voyage, induced Captain Cook to comply with their importunities. Accordingly, at eight o'clock, P. M. we stood out of the sound, with Omiah on board, having a gentle breeze at N. W. by W. Captain Clerke was ordered to follow us with the Discovery, to St. Jago, one of the Cape de Verd Islands, and if he should there miss of us to pursue his course directly for the Cape of Good Hope. Soon after we came out of the sound, the wind came more westerly, and blew fresh, which obliged us to ply down the channel; and we were not off the Lizard till Sunday the 14th, in the evening. On Tuesday the 16th, we observed in latitude 49 deg. 53 min. 30 sec. N. St. Agnes's Light-house bearing at this time N. W. by W. distant about eight miles, and, by our reckoning, situated in 49 deg. 57 min. 30 sec. N. and in 6 deg. 20 min. W. longitude. Our readers will be pleased here to observe, that, in this voyage, we reckon our longitude from the meridian of Greenwich, and after passing to the east in the South Atlantic, it is carried on easterly beyond the Great Meridian, or 180th degree, to the utmost extent of the voyage, and back again to the same meridian. On the 17th our commander began his judicious operations for preserving the health of his crew; for this day the spare sails were well aired, and the ship was smoked between decks with gunpowder. On Thursday the 18th, we were abreast of Uthant, and, by

the watch, found the longitude of the island to be 5 deg. 18 min. 37 sec. W. On the 19th, we stood westward till eight o'clock, A. M. when the wind shifted; upon which we tacked and stretched to the southward. Soon after we came in sight of nine sail of large ships, which we supposed to be French men of war. On Monday the 21st, we observed in latitude 44 deg. 6 min. N. longitude 8 deg. 23 min. W. when Cape Ortegal, then in view, bore S. E. half S. distant four leagues. We had calm weather till the afternoon of the 24th, when we passed Cape Finisterre, with a fine gale at N. N. E. By the watch, and the mean of 41 lunar observations, we found the longitude of this cape to be 9 deg. 19 min. 12 sec. On Tuesday the 30th, finding we wanted a supply of hay and corn, for the subsistence of our live stock of animals on board, Captain Cook determined to touch at Teneriffe, in order to procure those necessaries, as well as the usual refreshments for ourselves. On the 31st, at four o'clock P. M. we saw Teneriffe, made for the eastern part of it, and during the night stood off and on.

Thursday the 1st of August, early in the morning, we proceeded round the east point of the island, to the S. E. side, and, about eight o'clock, anchored in the road of Santa Cruz, in 23 fathoms water. We moored N. E. and S. W. near half a mile from the shore; in which position Punta de Nago bore N. 64 deg. E. The church of St. Francis, which has a remarkable high steeple, W. S. W. the Pic, S. 65 deg. W. and the S. W. point of the road, on which stands a castle, S. 39 deg. W. In this road were riding one French frigate, two French brigantines, an English one, and 14 sail of the Spanish nation. We had no sooner anchored than we received a visit from the master of the port, who only asked the ship's name; and upon his retiring, Captain Cook sent an officer ashore, to request his permission, that we might take in water, and purchase other necessary articles. This he politely granted,

ed, and sent one of his officers on board to compliment the captain on his arrival; who, in the afternoon, waited upon the governor in person, accompanied by some of his officers; and, before he returned, bespoke some corn and straw, ordered a quantity of wine, and made an agreement for a supply of water, with a Spanish boat.

The principal road of Teneriffe is this of Santa Cruz, on account of its capacity, and the goodness of its bottom. It lies before the town of the same name. Great care is observed in mooring ships, as the road lies entirely open to the S. E. and S. winds. We observed, that all those vessels which lay here at this time, had four anchors out, and their cables were buoyed up with casks. By not attending to this last particular, we found ours had suffered a little. The water to supply the shipping, and for the use of the inhabitants of Santa Cruz, is derived from a rivulet that runs from the hills, which is conveyed into the town in wooden troughs. As these troughs were at this time repairing, fresh water was extremely scarce. For the convenience of loading and landing goods, at the S. W. part of the road, a stone pier is run out from the town into the sea. It might be naturally concluded, from the appearance of the country about Santa Cruz, that Teneriffe is a barren spot: but the following account of this island will prove the contrary; and for the entertainment of the curious part of our readers, we shall present them with a relation of a journey up the Pike of Teneriffe, including a brief account of the weather and produce of the island.

The island of Teneriffe was anciently called Nivaria, from the snow that incloses the neck of the Pike of Teneriffe, like a collar; the name of Teneriffe, or the White Mountain, being given it by the natives of Palma, in whose language Tener signifies snow, and ifte, white: the summit of the Pike of Teneriffe being always covered with snow. Point Nago, or Anaga, which is the N. E. point of Teneriffe, bears N. W. about 16 leagues distant from the N. W. part of Canaria; but from that part of Canaria to the nearest part of Teneriffe, the distance does not exceed 12 leagues.

This island is nearly triangular, the three sides being almost equal, and each about 36 miles long. In the center is the famous Pike of Teneriffe, said to be the highest mountain in the universe, and strikes the spectators with amazement, both near and at a distance. This great mountain extends its base to Garrachino, from whence it is two days and a half's journey to the top; but we shall speak more particularly of this in the sequel. In coming in with Teneriffe, in clear weather, the Pike may be easily discerned at 120 miles, or 40 leagues distance; and in sailing from it, at the distance of 150 miles, or 50 leagues, when it resembles a thin blue vapour, or smoke, very little darker than the sky. Before we lose sight of this towering mountain, it seems a considerable height above the firmament, though from its distance, and the spherical figure of the earth, the rest of the island is sunk beneath the horizon, notwithstanding its being exceedingly high. There are several high perpendicular rocks near Punto de Nago; and on the south-east side of the island, is the harbour of Santa Cruz, the most frequented part in the Canary islands. The best road for ships is about a mile to the northward: between the middle of the town and fort, or castle, ships may lie secure from all winds, though the bay is exposed to those which blow from the N. E. coasts and S. E. yet these winds do not blow so hard as to cause any considerable damage above once in the space of four or five years. However, we learn from Glaz, that some years ago, most of the shipping in the road were driven on shore by one of these gales. Some English ships were then in the harbour; but the crews prudently cutting away their masts, rode out the storm. In the middle of the town, for the convenience of landing, is a mole, built at vast expence. It runs up to the northward, and the outermost part turns towards the shore. However, in mild weather, goods are landed at a creek among the rocks, at the distance of a stone's cast

to the fourthward of the mole, and near the custom-house. In the way from the mole into the town, there is a square fort on the left hand, named St. Philip's; this is the principal one in the bay. To the northward of it are some forts and batteries mounted with guns, the most considerable of which is named Passo Alto. Near it is a steep rocky valley, which begins at the sea shore, and runs a great way within land. There are several batteries at the south end of the town; and beyond them, close to the shore, is a fort called St. Juan. All these forts are mounted with cannon, and joined together by a thick stone wall, which begins near the above rocky valley, and continues with little interruption to fort St. Juan. This wall is within only breast high, but it is higher on the outside facing the sea, and from thence to the fourthward; the shore being naturally fenced with rocks, is generally inaccessible.

Santa Cruz is a large town, and contains several churches, three convents of friars, an hospital, and the best constructed private buildings of any to be found in the Canary islands. It is indeed the capital of them all, for though the episcopal see and courts of judicature are in the city of Palmas, in Canaria, the governor-general of the islands always resides in Santa Cruz, where a great concourse of foreigners continually resort, on account of its being the center of the trade between the Canary islands with Europe and America. The number of inhabitants are supposed to amount to about five or six thousand. The water drunk by them is conveyed into the town in open wooden troughs, from a spring beyond the above-mentioned valley, and there are pits of water, which serve for other purposes, in many houses. Near 12 miles to the southward of Santa Cruz, and close to the sea, there is a cave, with a church, or chapel, called our Lady of Candelaria, in which is a little image of the Virgin Mary, about three feet high, holding a green candle in one hand, and in the other an infant Jesus, who has a gilt bird in each hand. This chapel received its name of Candelaria, from its being pretended, that on the eve of the purification of the Holy Virgin, a great number of lights are constantly seen going in procession round the cave, in which the image is placed; and they assert, that in the morning drops of wax are scattered about the sea shore. This image is held in the highest veneration, on account of the many miracles it is said to have performed, and her chapel is adorned with so many ornaments, that it is the richest place in all the seven islands. At a certain season of the year, most of the inhabitants of the island go thither in pilgrimage, when troops of young girls march singing, in an agreeable manner, the praises of the Virgin, and the miraculous deeds the image is said to have performed.

North-westward of the island is the bay of Adexe, or, as it is pronounced, Adehe, where large ships may anchor. On the N. W. side is a haven called Garrachica, once the best port in the island; but it was destroyed in 1704, which the natives call the year of the earthquakes, and filled up by the rivers of burning lava that flowed into it from a volcano; so that houses are now built where ships formerly lay at anchor; yet vessels come there in the summer season. The earthquake began on the 24th of December; and in the space of three hours 29 shocks were felt. After this they became so violent as to cause all the houses to shake, and oblige the inhabitants to abandon them. The conternation became universal, and the people, with the bishop at their head, made processions and public prayers in the open fields. On the 31st a great light was observed on Manja, towards the White Mountains, where the earth opening, two volcanoes were formed, that threw up such heaps of stones, as to raise two considerable mountains; and the combustible matter continually thrown up, kindled in the neighbourhood above 50 fires. Things remained in this situation till the 5th of January, and then the sun was totally obscured with clouds of smoke and flame, which continually increasing, augmented the conternation and terror of the inhabitants. Before night, the whole country, for nine miles round, was in flames by the flowing of the liquid fire,

fire, with the rapidity of the torrent, into all quarters, from another volcano, which had opened by at least thirty different vents within the compass of half a mile. The horror of this scene was greatly increased by the violence of the shocks, which never once intermitted, but by their force entirely overthrew several houses, and shook others to their very foundations: while the wretched inhabitants were again driven defenceless and dismayed into the open fields, where they every moment expected to be swallowed up by some new gulf. The noise of the volcano was heard at sea at 20 leagues distance, where the sea shook with such violence as alarmed the mariners, who at first thought the ship had struck upon the rock. Mean while a torrent of sulphur, and melted ores of different kinds, rushed from this last volcano towards Guimar, where the houses and public buildings were thrown down by the violence of the accompanying shocks. On the 2nd of February another volcano broke out even in the town of Guimar, which swallowed up a large church. Thus from the 24th of December to the 23d of February, the people were constantly alarmed by continual shocks of earthquakes, and the terrible volcanoes that burst forth in different parts.

The town of Garrachica, is still pretty large, and contains several churches, and convents of both sexes. It has a small trade for brandy and wine, which are usually sent from thence in barks, or large open boats, to Santa Cruz, or Port Orotava. Strong and durable ships are also built there, some of which are upwards of three hundred tons burthen. Six miles to the eastward of this place stands the town of Port Orotava, which is a good harbour in the summer season, but in the winter, ships are often obliged to slip their cables and put to sea, for fear of being surprized with a N. W. wind, which throws in a heavy sea upon this coast. This is a place of considerable trade, it having flourished greatly since the destruction of the harbour of Garrachica. It contains two churches, two convents of friars, two of nuns, and some good private buildings. At each end of the town is a black sandy bay; and along the northernmost a low stone wall, built to prevent the landing of an enemy: at the other bay is a small castle, or fort, for the same purpose, and at the landing-place between them is a battery of a few cannon: but the fort that continually breaks upon the shore is the best defence of this port. About three miles from hence within land is La Villa de Orotava, which is a large town, and contains several churches, and convents, with a number of lately stone buildings belonging to private persons. A rivulet which runs through the midst of it, refreshes their gardens and orchards, and supplies the inhabitants with water.

The city of St. Christobal de la Laguna, that is, St. Christopher of the lake, extends four miles within land from Santa Cruz. The road to it from the above town is a pretty steep ascent, till within a small distance of the city, which is seated in the corner of a plain, about four miles in length, and a mile in breadth. This city is the capital of the island, and contains two parish churches, three convents of friars, two of nuns, and three hospitals; two of which are for the venereal disease, and the other for foundlings. The jesuits have also a house here, and, besides these public structures, there are many handsome private buildings. The water drunk by the inhabitants is conveyed in troughs to the city, from the mountain situated to the southward of the plain. In this city there is not the least shew of business, it being chiefly inhabited by the gentry of the island, particularly the officers of justice, with the judge of the Indies, who presides in the India-House, where all affairs relating to the West-India commerce are conducted. Here is likewise an office of inquisition subject to the tribunal of the holy office of Grand Canaria; yet the city appears to a stranger as if desolate and uninhabited; for seldom any one can be seen in the streets, and grass grows in the most frequented places. There is a lagoon, or lake, behind the city, about half a mile in circumference, from which the city takes its name. It is dry in summer, but in winter is full of stagnant water.

As this city is situated on a plain, elevated a considerable height above the sea, it is extremely cold in winter, and in all seasons exposed to the wind. The road descends, from the western extremity of this plain, to La Montaña de Centejo, a large village in the midway between Santa Cruz and Port Orotava, chiefly inhabited by peasants and labouring people. Some of the towns are situated at no great distance from the sea, from whence most of them may be seen; and, indeed, there are no habitations at a greater distance from each other than nine miles. A large town, called Realajo, is situated in the western border, and La Rambla on the eastern. The towns of Grotava, and Port Orotava, stand between them, with a number of detached inhabitants, scattered about from the sea shore upwards to the clouds, in, or beyond which, there are no houses; yet the clouds are not higher than the middle distance between the sea and the summit of the pike.

The whole island continues to rise on all sides from the sea till it terminates in the pike, which, as we have observed, is in the center. The north side is the most fertile, and ascends more gradually than the other, particularly a space along the shore about three leagues broad, bounded on the sides by high mountains or rather cliffs; but it rises upwards from the sea, like a hanging garden, till you come within 3 miles of the clouds, without any considerable intervention of hills and valleys. All the fertile ground, within a league of the sea, is covered with vines; corn grows in the next league; and in the third, some corn, woods of chestnuts, and many other different sorts of trees. Above these woods are the clouds, which, in fine weather, generally descend gradually towards the evening, and rest upon these woods till the morning, when they ascend about a league, and there remain till the succeeding evening. There are several other towns, and many small villages besides the towns already mentioned. This island is so populous, that, when the last account was taken, it contained no less than 96,000 persons, and is supposed to contain as many souls as all the rest of the inhabited islands.

The city of Laguna, which stands near a lake, about nine miles from the sea, is the principal place in Tenerife: it is called by the Spaniards St. Christoval de la Laguna, and is handsomely built, having two parish churches, and a palace for the governor, who resides here. The aldermen of this city pay a price to the king to serve their offices of magistrates; but this gives them great power over the inhabitants, who are divided into three classes, namely, gentlemen, merchants, and husbandmen, or as they are termed by the natives, idlers, busy men, and labouring men. The land on each side of the road, leading to Laguna, is, in general, rocky, but some spots of corn-land are interspersed here and there, and terminated by small vineyards on the sides of the mountains. This city presents the beholder with an agreeable prospect, as it stands on the side of a hill, and stretches its skirts on the plain behind: it is large, compact, and populous: the houses, though not uniform, have a pleasant appearance; besides the governor's house, and the two parish churches, here are two nunneries, four convents, an hospital, and some chapels, besides many gentlemen's houses. The convents are those of St. Francis, St. Augustine, St. Dominic, and St. Diego. The churches have pretty high square steeples, which top the rest of the buildings. The streets are not regular, yet they are for the most part spacious, and near the middle of the town is a large parade, which has good buildings about it. There is a strong prison on one side of it, near which is a large conduit of good water that supplies all the town. The inhabitants have many gardens that are set round with orange, lime, and other fruit trees, in the middle of which are flowers, fallading, &c. and indeed, if the people were curious this way, they might have very pleasant gardens: for the town stands high from the sea, on the brow of a plain that is all open to the east, and has consequently the benefit of the trade wind, which blows here, and is commonly fair; so that there are seldom wanting, at this town, all the day, brisk cooling,

cooling, refreshing breezes. There is a large plain on the back of the town, three or four leagues in length, and two miles broad, producing a thick, kindly grass. On the east side is a lake of fresh water; but, being stagnant, it is only used for cattle: it is about half a mile in circumference.

The ancient inhabitants of Teneriffe were called Guanches, but their origin is not certainly known: they were, and the remainder of them still are without literature; but their language, which still remains among the remnant of them, bears some affinity to that of the Moors in Barbary; it was formerly very guttural, and entirely different from that used in the other islands. They were of good stature, well made, and had tolerable complexions, but those who dwell on the north side of the island were much fairer, and had lighter hair than those in the South. These people had some notion of a deity, and held, that there is a supreme power, which they distinguished by the names of Ach-guaregenan, Achoran, and Achaman, which signify the sustainer of the heavens and the earth: They also gave the titles of the great, the sublime, the maintainer of all: but they did not worship idols, nor had any images of the deity. They believed that God created them of earth and water, and made as many men as women, giving them cattle, and every thing necessary for their subsistence; but that afterwards there appearing to him too few, he created more; but to these last gave nothing; and when they prayed to him for flocks of sheep, and herds of goats, he bid them go and serve the others, who, in return, would give them food. From these, they said, were descended their servants. They had some idea of the immortality of the soul, by supposing the existence of places for future rewards and punishments. In particular, they supposed the Pike of Teneriffe to contain hell in its bowels, which they termed Echeyda; and gave the name of Guayotta to the devil.

In Teneriffe, the weather is the same as in Grand Canaria; but the sea-breeze generally sets in at about ten o'clock in the morning, on the E. and N. E. sides of the island, and blows till about five or six in the evening, when it falls calm till midnight. The land wind then begins, and continues till seven or eight in the morning, when it is followed by a calm, which lasts till the sea breeze returns. In the bay of Santa Cruz, and on all the E. side of the island, the sea breeze commonly blows at E. and the land wind at W. On the N. side, the sea breeze blows at N. E. by E. or N. E. and the land wind directly opposite to it; but there is no land wind at Point Nago, where the land stretches towards the N. E. far into the sea. At the brow of the hill above Santa Cruz, and at the city of Laguna, a fresh gale blows from the N. W. all the time of the sea breeze, which is occasioned by the mountains almost encompassing the plain. These being so exceedingly high on the S. side of it, as to beat back the sea breeze, and throw it against the mountains that bound the N. side of the plain, where, finding no passage, it veers to the S. E. and there meeting with no resistance, forces its way with great vehemence through the plain; till coming to the brow of the above-mentioned hill, part of the current of air pours down it towards Santa Cruz, advancing within a mile and a half of the sea, where the true sea breeze checks it: yet there is no regular sea or land breeze, on the S. W. coast, which is sheltered from the trade or north-easterly wind by the immense height of the pike, which towers above the region of the wind; hence on that side of the island, there is either an eddy wind at S. W. or a calm.

This island produces nearly the same vegetables as that of Canaria, only there are more vine-yards, and less corn-land. The wines are strong, good, and very fit for exportation, especially into hot climates, by which they are generally greatly improved. Formerly a large quantity of Canary sack was made here, which the French call Vin de Malvesie, and we, corruptly, after them, name Malrasey, from Malvesia, a town in the Morea, famous for such luscious wine. In the last century, and still later, much of this was imported into

No. 30.

England; but of late years they have not made above fifty pipes in a season; for they now usually gather the grapes when green, and make a hard dry wine of them, which when about two or three years old, can hardly be distinguished from Madeira; but after four years of age it becomes so sweet and mellow as to resemble the wine of Malaga in Spain. This, like all the other Canary islands, affords orchilla weed in great plenty. The dragon tree, aloe, and pine, are natives of Teneriffe. The apricot, peach, and pear-trees, bear twice annually. The pregnada, lemon, and lignar wood, are found here, as are the cotton-shrub and coluquintida. The rose blows at Christmas: the carnations are large and fine, but tulips will not thrive. The rocks abound with samphire, the meadows are covered with clover, and the beach produces a broad leaved grass. About fourscore ears of wheat spring from one root, the grains of which are as transparent as the purest yellow amber; and in a good season one bushel will produce a hundred fold: the barley and maize are not inferior to the wheat.

With respect to the animals, here are plenty of rabbits; hogs, wild goats, &c. Quails and partridges are larger than those in England, and extremely handsome. Wood-pigeons, turtles, and crows, abound in the spring. Several sorts of wild fowls resort hither in the winter season, affording plenty of game to the inhabitants of Laguna. The falcons, or rather strong large hawks, which hover over the lake of Laguna, are thus described by a gentleman who lately travelled to these islands: "I cannot forbear mentioning the haggard falcons that soar every evening about this lake. It is very good diversion to see the negroes fight them with slings; for they often kill several at a time; and besides, they are the best mettled hawks in the world, being of a larger kind than the Barbary falcon. The viceroy being one evening to see the sport, on the author's commending their strength and mettle, assured him upon his honour, that a falcon bred in that island, which he had formerly sent to the duke of Larnia, did at one flight, (unless she rested on any ship by the way) pass from Andalusia to Teneriffe, which is two hundred and fifty Spanish leagues, and was taken up half dead, having on the vessels and bells belonging to the duke."

In this island fishes are found in great quantities, particularly dolphins, sharks, meros, lobsters, mussels, periwinkles, the calcas, (which is deemed the best shell-fish in the universe) and the cherna, that exceeds in relish any we have in England: here is also another fish which is called an eel, though with little propriety, for it has seven tails of a span long joined to one body and one head, which are nearly of the same length. Silk worms thrive exceedingly; and bees prosper in the rocks and mountains. To this account we shall add the following remarks of the ingenious Mr. Anderfon, (one of our ship's company, and of whom we have already made mention) on the natural appearances of Teneriffe, and its productions; as what he observed himself, or learnt by information, about the general state of the island, may be of use; seeing our readers may hereby be enabled to mark some changes that have happened there since the publication of the above geographical observations, which are chiefly extracted from Mr. MILLAR's *deservedly much admired NEW and UNIVERSAL SYSTEM of GEOGRAPHY*. The following are Mr. Anderfon's own words, and narration.

"While we were standing in for the land, the weather being perfectly clear, we had an opportunity of seeing the celebrated Pike of Teneriffe: but I own I was much disappointed in my expectation with respect to its appearance. It is, certainly, far from equalling the noble figure of Pico, one of the western isles which I have seen; though its perpendicular height may be greater. This circumstance, perhaps, arises from its being surrounded by other very high hills; whereas Pico stands without a rival.

"Behind the city of Santa Cruz, the country rises gradually, and is of a moderate height. Beyond this, to the south-westward, it becomes higher, and continues to rise toward the Pic, which, from the road, appears

5 L

but

but little higher than the surrounding hills. From thence it seems to decrease, though not suddenly, as far as the eye can reach. From a supposition that we should not stay above one day, I was obliged to contract my excursions; otherwise I had proposed to visit the top of this famous mountain. To the eastward of Santa Cruz, the island appears perfectly barren. Ridges of hills run towards the sea; between which ridges are deep valleys, terminating at mountains or hills that run across, and are higher than the former. Those that run towards the sea, are marked by impressions on their sides, which makes them appear as a succession of conic hills, with their tops very rugged. The higher ones that run across are more uniform in their appearance.

"In the forenoon of the first of August, after we had anchored in the road, I went on shore to one of these valleys, with an intention to reach the top of the remotest hills, which seemed covered with woods; but time would not allow me to get farther than their foot. After walking about three miles, I found no alteration in the appearance of the lower hills, which produce great quantities of the *Euphorbia Canariensis*. It is surprising that this large succulent plant should thrive on so burnt up a soil. When broken, which is easily done, the quantity of juice is very great; and it might be supposed that, when dried, it would shrivel to nothing: yet it is a pretty tough, though soft and light wood. The people here believe its juice to be so caustic, as to corrode the skin; but I convinced them, though with much difficulty, to the contrary, by thrusting my finger in a plant full of it, without afterwards wiping it off. They break down the bushes of the *Euphorbia*, and suffering them to dry, carry them home for fuel. I met with nothing else growing there, but two or three small shrubs, and a few fig-trees near the bottom of the valley. The basis of the hills is a heavy compact blueish-stone, mixed with some shining particles; and, on the surface, large masses of red friable earth, or stone, are scattered about. I also found the same substance disposed in a thick strata; and the little earth strewed here and there, was a blackish mould. There were also some pieces of slag; one of which, from its weight and smooth surface, seemed almost wholly metalline. The mouldering state of these hills is, doubtless, owing to the perpetual action of the sun, which calcines their surface. This mouldered part being afterwards washed away by the heavy rains, perhaps is the cause of their sides being so uneven. For, as the different substances of which they are composed, are more or less easily affected by the sun's heat, they will be carried away in the like proportions. Hence, perhaps, the tops of the hills, being of the hardest rock, have stood, while the other parts on a declivity have been destroyed. As I have usually observed, that the tops of most mountains that are covered with trees have a more uniform appearance, I am inclined to believe, that this is owing to their being shaded.

"The city of Santa Cruz, though not large, is tolerably well built. The churches are not magnificent without; but within are decent, and indifferently ornamented. They are inferior to some of the churches at Madeira: but, I imagine, this rather arises from the different disposition of the people, than from their inability to support them better: for the private houses, and dress of the Spanish inhabitants of Santa Cruz, are far preferable to those of the Portuguese at Madeira, who, perhaps, are willing to strip themselves, that they may adorn their churches.

"Almost facing the stone pier, at the landing-place, is a handsome marble column, lately put up, ornamented with some human figures, that do no discredit to the artist, with an inscription in Spanish, and the date, to commemorate the occasion of the erection.

"Friday the 2nd, in the afternoon, four of us hired mules to ride to the city of Laguna, so called from an adjoining lake; about four miles from Santa Cruz. We arrived there about six in the evening, but found a sight of it very unable to compensate for our trouble, as the road was very bad, and the mules but indifferent. The place is, indeed, pretty extensive, but

scarcely deserves to be dignified with the name of city.

"The disposition of its streets is very irregular; yet some of them are of a tolerable breadth, and have some good houses. In general, however, Laguna is inferior in appearance to Santa Cruz, though the latter, if compared with the former, is but small. The road leading from Santa Cruz to Laguna runs up a steep hill, which is very barren; but lower down, we saw some fig-trees, and several corn-fields. These last are but small, and not thrown into ridges, as is practised in England. Nor does it appear that they can raise any corn here without great labour, as the ground is so encumbered with stones, that they are obliged to collect and lay them in broad-rows, or walls, at small distances. The large hills that run to the S. W. appeared to be pretty well furnished with trees. Nothing else worthy of notice presented itself during this excursion, except a few aloe plants in flower, near the side of the road, and the cheerfulness of our guides, who amused us with songs by the way. Most of the laborious work in this island is performed by mules, horses being to appearance scarce, and chiefly reserved for the use of the officers. They are of a small size, but well shaped and spirited. Oxen are also employed to drag their carts along upon a clumsy piece of wood; and they are yoked by the head, though it doth not seem, that this has any peculiar advantage over our method of fixing the harness on the shoulders. In my walks and excursions I saw some hawks, parrots, the tern or sea-swallow, sea-gulls, partridges, wagtails, swallows, martins, blackbirds, and canary-birds in large flocks. There are also lizards of the common, and another sort; some insects and locusts; and three or four sorts of dragon flies.

"I had an opportunity of conversing with a sensible and well informed gentleman residing here, and whose veracity I have not the least reason to doubt. From him I learnt some particulars, which during the short stay of three days, did not fall within my own observation. He informed me, that a shrub is common here, agreeing exactly with the description given by Tournefort and Linnæus, of the tea-shrub, as growing in China and Japan. It is reckoned a weed, and he roots out thousands of them every year, from his vineyards. The Spaniards, however, of the island, sometimes use it as tea, and ascribe to it all the qualities of that imported from China. They also give it the name of tea; but what is remarkable, they say it was found here when the island was first discovered. Another botanical curiosity, mentioned by him, is what they call *Pregnada*, or impregnated lemon. It is a perfect and distinct lemon, inclosed within another, differing from the outer one only in being a little more globular. The leaves of the tree that produces this sort, are much longer than those of the common one; and it was represented to me as being crooked, and not equal in beauty. From him I learnt also, that a certain sort of grape growing here, is reckoned an excellent remedy in phthisical complaints: and the air and climate, in general, are remarkably healthful, and particularly adapted to give relief in such diseases. This he endeavoured to account for, by its being always in our power to procure a different temperature of the air, by residing at different heights in the island; and he expressed his surprize, that the English physicians should never have thought of sending their consumptive patients to Teneriffe, instead of Nice or Lisbon. How much the temperature of the air varies here, I myself could sensibly perceive, only in riding from Santa Cruz up to Laguna; and you may ascend till the cold becomes intolerable. I am assured no person can live comfortably within a mile of the perpendicular height of the Pic, after the month of August. This agrees with Dr. Heberden's account, who says, that the sugar-loaf part of the mountain, or *la pericosa* (as it is called) which is an eighth part of a league (or 1980 feet) to the top, is covered with snow the greatest part of the year.

"Their trade must be supposed very considerable indeed;

indeed; for they reckon that 40,000 pipes of wine are annually made; the greatest part of which is either consumed in the island, or made into brandy, and sent to the Spanish West Indies. About 6000 pipes were exported every year to North America, while the trade with it was uninterrupted; at present it is thought not half the quantity."—Our readers will here please to observe, that in the foregoing account given by Mr. MILLAR, in his New System of Geography, the number of inhabitants in Teneriffe are computed at no less than 96,000. Now we may reasonably suppose, that there has been a considerable increase of population within these 30 years. The quantity of wine annually consumed, as the common beverage of at least 100,000 persons, must amount to several thousand pipes. There must be a vast expenditure of it, by conversion into brandy; to produce one pipe of which, five or six pipes of wine must be distilled. An attention to these particulars will enable every one to judge, that the account given by Mr. Anderson of the annual produce of pipes of wine has a foundation in truth.—This gentleman goes on to observe, "That they make little silk; and, unless we reckon the filtering stones, brought in great numbers from Grand Canary, the wine is the only considerable article of the foreign commerce of Teneriffe.

"None of the race of the family of the Guanches, or ancient inhabitants, found here when the Spaniards discovered the Canaries, now remain a distinct people, having intermarried with the Spanish settlers; but their descendants are known, from their being remarkably tall, large boned, and strong. The men are, in general, of a tawny colour, and the women have a pale complexion, entirely destitute of that bloom which distinguishes our northern beauties. The Spanish custom of wearing black clothes continues among them; but the men seem more indifferent about this, and in some measure dress like the French. In other respects, we found the inhabitants of Teneriffe to be a decent and very civil people, retaining that grave cast which distinguishes those of their country from other European nations. Although, concludes Mr. Anderson, we do not think, that there is a great similitude between our manners and those of the Spaniards, it is worth observing, that Omiah did not think there was much difference. He only said, that they seemed not so friendly as the English; and that, in their persons, they approached those of his countrymen."

We shall now, as proposed, proceed to the relation of a journey up the Pike of Teneriffe, undertaken and performed by Mr. GLASS, author of that valuable work, entitled, the History of the Canary Islands. This gentleman begins his narrative with informing us, that, "Early in the month of September 1761, at about four in the afternoon, he set out on horseback, in company with the master of a ship to visit the Pike. They had with them a servant, a muleteer, and a guide; and, after ascending above six miles, arrived towards sun-set at the most distant habitation from the sea, which is in a hollow; here finding an aqueduct of open troughs that convey water down from the head of the hollow, their servants watered the cattle, and filled some small barrels to serve them in their expedition.

"The gentlemen here alighted, and walking into the hollow, found it very pleasant, as it abounded with many trees of an odoriferous smell; and some fields of maize or Indian corn are near the houses. On their mounting again, they travelled for some time up a steep road, and reached the woods and clouds a little before night. They could not miss their way, the road being bounded on both sides with trees or bushes, which were chiefly laurel, savin, and brushwood. Having travelled about a mile, they came to the upper edge of the wood, above the clouds, where alighting, they made a fire, and supped; soon after which, they laid down to sleep under the bushes. About half an hour after ten, the moon shining bright, they mounted again, travelled slowly two hours through an exceeding bad road, resembling the ruins of stone buildings scattered over the fields.

"After they had passed over this road, they came upon small light pumice-stone, like shingles; upon which they rode at a pretty good pace for near an hour. The air now began to be pretty sharp and piercing, and the wind blew strong from the south-westward. Their guide advised them to alight here, as the place was convenient, and rest till about four or five in the morning. To this they agreed, and entered the cave, the mouth of which was built up to about a man's height, to exclude the cold. Near this place were some dry withered retamas, the only shrub or vegetable near the cave, and with these they made a great fire to warm themselves, and then fell asleep; but were soon awakened by an itching occasioned by a cold thin air, want of rest, and sleeping in their cloaths. They here passed away their time as well as they could; but while they crept near the fire, one side was almost scorched, and the other was benumbed with cold. At about five in the morning they mounted again, and travelled slowly about a mile; for the road was rather too steep for travelling quick on horseback, and their beasts were now fatigued.

"At last they came among some great loose rocks, where was a kind of cottage built of loose stones, called the English pitching place, probably from some of the English resting here on their way to visit the pike; for none take that journey but foreigners and some poor people who earn their bread by gathering brimstone. There they alighted again, the remainder of their way being too steep for riding, and left one of the servants to look after the horses, while they proceeded on their journey. They walked hard to get themselves warm; but were soon fatigued by the steepness of the road, which was loose and sandy. On their reaching the top of this hill, they came to a prodigious number of large and loose stones, or rocks, whose surfaces were flat, and each of them about ten feet every way.

"This road was less steep than the other; but they were obliged to travel a considerable way round, to leap over the rocks, which were not close to each other. Among them is a cavern, in which is a well, or natural reservoir, into which they descended by a ladder placed there by the poor people for that purpose. This cavern is very spacious, it being almost 10 yards wide, and twenty in height; but all the bottom, except just at the foot of the ladder, is covered with water, which is about two fathoms deep, and was then frozen towards the inner edges of the cave; but when they attempted to drink of it, its excessive coldness prevented them.

"After travelling about a quarter or half a mile upon the great stones, they reached the bottom of the real pike or sugar-loaf, which is exceeding steep, and the difficulty of ascending it increased, and was rendered more fatiguing by the ground being loose and giving way under their feet; for though this eminence is not above half a mile in height, they were obliged to stop and take breath near thirty times; and when they at last reached the top, being quite spent with fatigue, they lay about a quarter of an hour to recover their breath, and rest themselves.

"In the morning, when they left the English pitching place, the sun was just emerging from the clouds, which were spread under them at a great distance below, and appeared like the ocean. Above the clouds, at a vast distance to the north, they perceived something black, which they conjectured to be the top of the island of Madeira, and, taking the bearings of it by a pocket compass, found it to be exactly in the direction of that island from Teneriffe, but before they reached to the tops of the pike, it disappeared. They could neither perceive Lancerota nor Fuerteventura from this place, they being not high enough to pierce the clouds; though they could see from hence the tops of the islands of Grand Canaria, Hiero, Palma, and Gomera, which seemed to be quite near.

"After resting for some time, they began to observe the top of the pike, which is about 140 yards in length, and 110 in breadth. It is hollow, and shaped like an inverted

inverted bell. From the edges of this bell, or cauldron, as it is called by the natives, it is about 40 yards to the bottom, and in many parts of this hollow, they observed smoke and steams of sulphur issuing forth in puffs; and the heat of the ground in particular places was so great, as to penetrate through the soles of their shoes to the feet. On observing some spots of earth, or soft clay, they tried the heat with their fingers, but could not thrust them in farther than half an inch; for the deeper they went, the hotter it was. They then took their guide's staff, and thrust it about three inches deep into a hole or porous place, where the smoke seemed thickest; and having held it there about a minute, drew it out, and found it burnt to a charcoal. They gathered here many pieces of most curious and beautiful brimstone of all colours, particularly an azure blue, violet, scarlet, green, and yellow.

"The clouds beneath them, which are at a great distance, made from hence a very extraordinary appearance: they seemed like the ocean, only the surface was not quite so blue and smooth, but had the resemblance of white wool; and where this cloudy ocean, as it may be called, touched the mountain, it seemed to foam like billows breaking on the shore. When they ascended through the clouds, it was dark; but when they afterwards mounted again, between ten and eleven o'clock, and the moon shone bright, the clouds were then below them, and about a mile distant. They then mistook them for the ocean, and wondered at seeing them so near; nor did they discover their mistake till the sun arose. When they passed through the clouds, in descending from the pike, they appeared as a thick fog or mist, resembling those frequently seen in England; with which all the trees of the wood and their cloaths were wetted.

"The air was thin, cold, and piercing on the top of the pike, like the south-easterly winds felt in the great desert of Africa. In ascending the sugar loaf, which is very steep, their hearts panted and beat violently, and, as hath been already observed, they were obliged to rest above thirty times to take breath; and this was probably as much owing to the thinness of the air causing a difficulty of respiration, as to the uncommon fatigue they suffered in climbing the hill. Their guide, who was a thin, active old man, was far from being affected in the same manner; but climbed up with ease like a goat; for he was one of the poor men who earn their living by gathering brimstone in the cauldron and other volcanoes, the pike itself being no other, though it has burned for some years; for the sugar-loaf is entirely composed of earth mixed with ashes and calcined stones, thrown out of the bowels of the earth, and the great square stones before described, were probably thrown out of the cauldron, or hollow of the pike, when an eruption happened.

"After they had surveyed every thing worthy of notice, they descended to the place where their horses were left, which took them up only half an hour, though they were about two hours and a half in ascending. It was then about ten in the morning, and the sun shone so exceedingly hot, as to oblige them to shelter in the cottage, and being extremely fatigued, they lay down in order to sleep; but were prevented by the cold, which was so intense in the shade, that they were obliged to kindle a fire to keep themselves warm. After this, when they had taken some repose, they mounted their horses about noon, and descending by the same way they went up, came to some pines, situated about two miles above the clouds. Between these pines and the pike, no herb, shrub, tree, or grass can grow, except the before-mentioned ratamas.

"At about five in the evening they arrived at Orontava, not having alighted by the way to stop, only sometimes to walk where the road was too steep for riding. The whole distance they rode in the five hours spent in coming down from the English pitching-place to Orontava, they computed to be about 15 English miles, travelling at the rate of three miles an hour.

"Our author supposes, the perpendicular height of

the English pitching place to be about four English miles, and adding to that a mile of a perpendicular height from thence to the pike, observes, that the whole will be about five English miles, and that he is very certain he cannot be mistaken in this calculation above a mile either way." But Mr. Glas may here probably be mistaken, owing perhaps to his not using any instruments proper for ascertaining the exact altitude of this mountain, which is much higher than either the Alps, or the highest part of the Andes, according to this calculation. Dr. T. Heberden makes its height, above the level of the sea, to be 15,396 English feet; and says, that this was confirmed by two subsequent observations by himself, and another made by Mr. Croft, the Consul. The Chevalier de Borda, Commander of the French frigate, now lying with the Resolution in the road of Santa Cruz, was employed, in conjunction with Mr. Varila, a Spanish gentleman, in making astronomical observations for ascertaining the going of two time-keepers which they had on board their ship. The chevalier measured the height of the pike, but makes it to be only 1931 French toises, or 12,340 English feet. If our readers are desirous of more particulars respecting the above subjects, they may find them in Sprat's History of the Royal Society, p. 200, &c. History of the Canary islands by Glas, p. 252, &c. Philosophical Transactions, vol. XLVII. p. 353, &c. and Dr. Forster's Observations during a voyage round the world, p. 32.—Proceed we now to the history of our voyage.

On Sunday, the 4th of August, having taken on board our water, and other necessary articles, we weighed anchor, and sailed from the island of Teneriffe with a fine fresh gale at N. E. between this day and the tenth, our experienced Commander discovered his usual attention and parental care, respecting both the discipline, and health of our company; for in this interval the mariners were exercised at the great guns and small arms, and the Resolution was twice smoked and cleaned between decks. On Saturday the 10th, at nine o'clock P. M. we descried the island of Bonavista, bearing S. distant one league; at which time we thought ourselves to have been much farther off. We too soon were made sensible of our mistake; for after hauling to the eastward, to clear the sunken rocks that lie near the S. E. point of the island, we found ourselves close upon them, and barely weathered the breakers. Our situation was, for a few minutes, so very critical and alarming, that captain Cook would not permit us to sound, as by so doing we might have increased the danger, without any possibility of lessening it. Having cleared the rocks, we held on a S. S. W. course till day break on the 11th, when we steered between Bonavista and Mayo, to the westward, with the view of looking into Port Praya for the Discovery, as captain Clerke had been informed of our intention to touch at that port, and we knew not how soon he might follow us. At one o'clock P. M. we came in sight of the rocks S. W. of Bonavista, bearing S. E. distant three leagues; and on Monday the 12th, at six o'clock, A. M. the ile of Mayo bore S. S. E. distant five leagues. We now sounded, and found ground at 60 fathoms. At eleven one extreme of Mayo bore E. by N. and the other S. E. by S. In this station two globular hills appeared near its N. E. part; farther on, a large and higher hill; and about two thirds of its length, a single one that is peaked. We were now at the distance of three or four miles from this island, at which we saw not the least appearance of vegetation; nor did any other object present itself to our view, but that lifeless brown, so common in unwooded countries under the torrid zone. During our continuance among the Cape de Verde islands, we had gentle breezes of wind, varying from the S. E. to E. and some calms: from whence we may conclude, that they are either extensive enough to break the current of the trade wind, or that they are situated just beyond its verge, in that space where the variable winds, found on approaching the line, begin. At this time we had sultry and hot weather, attended with rain, and, for the most part the sky was tinged with a thick whiteness, without any transparency, a kind of medium between

an approaching tempest. Several ships were then in sight, and we could clearly discern that they were preparing as well as ourselves, to meet the storm. For twenty-four hours it blowed and rained incessantly; but on the 9th a calm succeeded, which however was not of long continuance; for in the evening of the same day it thundered, lightened, and the rain poured down in torrents. The drops were such as no experienced seaman on board had seen the like. To prevent the effects of the lightning, it was thought necessary to let fall the chain from the mast-head: a precaution which captain Clerke never omitted when there was danger from the accumulation of electrical matter in the atmosphere to be apprehended. On the 10th, seeing a ship to windward bearing down very fast, and suspecting her to be an American privateer, all hands were ordered to quarters, to be in readiness to engage. She proved to be a Lisbon trader, who by the violence of the gale the day before, had been driven many leagues to the westward of her course, and was in some distress. We spared her those things of which she stood most in need, and pursued our voyage. Nothing remarkable happened till the 18th, when the ship's company were put to short allowance of water, and she still was worked to procure a supply of fresh from the sea. This was occasionally used, and answered very well for some particular purposes, but was ill relished by the sailors for boiling their meat. These precautions were taken till the Resolution should have left St. Jago, and the Discovery might be obliged to proceed to the Cape, without being able to procure a fresh supply. On the 19th we crossed the Tropic of Cancer for the first time, and, on the 28th, came in sight of St. Jago, bearing N. W. distant seven leagues. We bore away instantly for the bay, and at eight in the morning made land. An officer was sent ashore with all speed to make enquiry, who brought word back, that the Resolution had touched at that port; but had hastened her departure, as the rainy season was approaching, and it was unsafe to remain there long during its continuance. The same reasons that had induced the Resolution to proceed were doubly pressing upon us. It was now the time when the rainy season prevails, though we had as yet observed none of its approaches. It is generally preceded by a strong southerly wind, and a great swell. The sea comes rolling on, and dashing furiously against the rocky shore, causes a frightful surf. Sometimes tornadoes or furious whirlwinds arise near the coast, and greatly increase the danger. For this reason, from the middle of August till the month of November, Port Praya is but little frequented. The officer was no sooner returned, and the boat hoisted on board, than we made sail with a gentle breeze.

On the 1st of September a dreadful tempest arose, by which we every moment expected to be swallowed up. The thunder and lightning were not more alarming than the sheets of rain, which fell so heavy as to endanger the sinking of the ship, and, at the same time, though in the open day, involved us in a cloud of darkness, than which nothing could be more horrible; providentially the continuance of this tempest was but short: it began about nine in the morning, and before noon the whole atmosphere was perfectly serene, and not a spot nor a shade to be seen to mark the place of this elemental conflict. However in this short period, our sufferings nearly kept pace with our apprehensions, having our main-top-gallant yard carried away in the flings, and the sail trittered in a thousand pieces; the jib and middle stay-sails torn clear off, and the ship so strained as to make all hands to the pump necessary. The afternoon was employed in repairing the damages, and discharging the water which had been shipped as well from the heavens, as from the sea. On the three days following, the weather continued squally with rain; but as we approached the line, a calm succeeded, and the sky became serene; but with a haziness and languor, as if the current of air, like water upon an equipoise, moved only by its own impulse. Nothing could be more tedious and disagreeable than this calm; but fortunately it was of short continuance. September the

5th, at eight in the morning saw a sail, the second we had seen since we passed Cape Finisterre on the coast of Spain. We were at this time intent on fishing; and having hooked a shark of an enormous size, both officers and men were engaged in getting him on board. When he was cut up, there were six young ones found in his belly. These were divided among the officers, and one was dressed for the great cabin. The old one was eaten by the ship's crew, to whom fresh meat of any kind was now become a dainty. The weather continuing fine, the Captain ordered the great guns and small arms to be exercised, the ship to be smoaked, and the bedding to be aired. These last articles, it may be once for all necessary to observe, were never omitted during the whole course of the voyage, when the weather would permit; and they are more particularly necessary in crossing the line, as it has been observed, that the whole woodwork between decks, in this low latitude, is more apt to become mouldy, and the iron to rust, than in higher latitudes, probably owing to that sluggishness in the air that has been already noticed, and for which nature seems to have provided a remedy by the frequent tempests and tornadoes, to which this part of the ocean is remarkably subject.

On the 17th we crossed the equator. The weather being equally, the usual ceremony of keel-hawing the sailors who had never crossed it before, was omitted. On the 20th the weather became moderate, when, upon examination, the starboard main-trussel-tree was found to be sprung. This day George Harrison, corporal of the marines, sitting carelessly on the bowsprit, and diverting himself with the spouting of the fishes, fell overboard. He was seen to fall, and the ship was instantly hove to, and the boats got out with all possible expedition, but he was never again seen to rise. His Dutch cap was taken up at the ship's stern; and as it was known that he could swim as well as any man on board, the boats made a large circuit round the ship, in hopes to recover him, but in vain. It is remarkable, that in Captain Cook's former voyage, Henry Smock, one of the carpenter's mates, sitting on the skuttle, fell overboard about the same place, and shared the same fate. Both these were young men, sober, and of good characters. Their loss was regretted by the officers, and particularly so by their comrades among the crew. It is more than probable that both were instantly swallowed up by the sharks that constantly attend the ships.

On the 1st of August we caught a large shark, 10 feet long, with several young dolphins in her belly. Part of the entrails, when cleansed and dressed, were eaten in the great cabin, and the body given to those by whom it was caught. When fried, it is tolerable meat; but the fat is very loathsome. On the 15th, a storm arose, accompanied with thunder and rain. As it was not so violent as those we had before experienced, it proved more acceptable than alarming, as it supplied the ship's company with a good quantity of fresh water, which we caught in blankets, or by other contrivances, every one as he could. What was saved by means of the awnings was set apart for the officers use. On the 20th it blew a hurricane, which obliged us to hand the sails, and to lay to under bare poles. On the 25th the storm abated, and the sky became clear. This day we observed a ship to the southward, which, by her course, we took for the Resolution; we crowded sail, stood after, and soon came up with her. She proved to be a Dutch advice boat, bound to the Cape. On the 28th, our people began to look for land; and the appearance of some birds which are known never to go from shore, confirmed them that the extremity of the African coast was at no great distance. Our astronomer, however, was of a different opinion, and the event proved that he was right.

On the first of October, when we had been at sea just two months, without once setting foot on land, those who were unaccustomed to long voyages, began to put on a very different aspect to that they wore at first setting out. They were, indeed, somewhat comforted by the cheerfulness and vivacity which they observed

served to prevail in almost every countenance except their own; from whence they concluded, that many days could not elapse before the painful sensations of a solitary sea life would be recompensed by the pleasurable enjoyments they would find when they came on shore. On the 3d, we observed a great variety of fish and fowl to accompany the ship, some of which we had not noticed before; and we could not but remark the difference in this respect, between the western coasts of the old continent, and the western coasts of the new, in the same latitudes. No sooner had we crossed the Tropic of Cancer, than we were amused by the sporting of the fishes, or more properly, perhaps, by their unremitting labour in pursuit of their daily food. Flying fish are generally the first to attract the notice of those who never have been in these seas before, and it is curious to attend to their numberless windings and shiftings to elude the attacks of the dolphins and bonitoes, their declared enemies. Whatever may be the design of providence in the formation of these creatures, one cannot help considering their existence as a state of perpetual punishment. While they remain in the water their enemies are near, and tough nature has given them the power to quit that element, and to fly for refuge to the open air, yet other persecutors are there also in wait for them, no less cruel than those they have escaped. Boobies, man of war birds, and other sea-fowls, are continually watching to make the flying-fish their prey, while the ravenous sharks are no less vigilant in making reprisals on the dolphins and bonitoes. Thus a passage through the tropical latitudes in this sea, exhibits one continued scene of warfare; while in the other sea all is peace and uniform tranquility. These reflections occur naturally when the mind, unoccupied with variety, is disposed for contemplation. On the 4th of November we caught a shark, leaving one tyrant the less to vex the ocean. On the 7th, at six in the morning, the man at the malk head called out land; and at eight we could all see it involved in a misty cloud. It proved to be Table Land, bearing S. W. at the distance of about 10 leagues, which induced us to change our course from E. S. E. to S. S. W. On the 10th we entered Table Bay, and on the 11th came to an anchor in six fathoms water, where, to our great joy, we found the Resolution, on board of which our journal is re-embarked, and thus continues the history of her voyage.

On Tuesday the 22d of October, we fixed our tents and observatory; and on the 23d began to observe equal altitudes of the sun, in order to discover whether the watch had altered its rate. The caulkers were now set to work, and Captain Cook had before concerted measures with Messrs. Brandt and Chiroo, for supplying us with such provisions as were wanted; and as the several articles for the Resolution were got ready, they were immediately conveyed aboard. The homeward bound French ship sailed for Europe on Saturday the 26th, and by her we sent letters to England. On the day following the Hampshire East Indiaman, from Ben-coolen, anchored in the bay, and saluted us with 13 guns, and we returned eleven. On the 31st, it blew exceedingly hard at S. E. and continued for three days; whereby all communication between the ship and the shore was cut off. The Resolution was the only ship in the bay that rode out the gale, without dragging her anchors. The effects were as sensibly felt on shore; where the tents and observatory were destroyed, and the astronomical quadrant narrowly escaped irreparable damage.

On Sunday the 3d of November the storm ceased; and on the 6th, the Hampshire sailed for England, in which Captain Cook sent home an invalid. Captain Trimble would have received two or three more of our crew, who were troubled with different complaints, but, at this time, we entertained some hopes of their health being re-established. Monday the 11th, the Discovery having anchored saluted the garrison with 13 guns, and were answered by the same number; after which Captain Cook, with his principal officers and gentlemen went on board that ship, to welcome Captain Clerke on

his arrival. It being intimated that the Discovery wanted caulking, Captain Cook ordered all our workmen on board her, and lent every other necessary assistance to expedite a supply of water and provisions. The bakers had omitted to bake the bread that had been ordered for the Discovery, pretending they wanted flour; but the truth was, they did not chuse to begin till they saw her moored in the bay. On Captain Clerke's landing this day, he was met by the officers of the garrison, and the gentlemen belonging to the East India Company, who received him very politely, and gave him a general invitation to share with them the entertainments of the place. The subordinate officers were met by another class of inferior gentry, belonging to the same company: for almost all the officers in the pay of the Dutch Company entertain strangers, and board them on moderate terms, from two shillings a day to five. Having by the governor's permission got our cattle on shore, on the night of the 13th, some dogs broke into the pens, and, forcing the sheep out, killed four, and dispersed the rest. The number of our sheep were sixteen, which were penned up, every night, close to our tents; but a bull and two cows, with their calves, were left to graze along with some other cattle.

On the 14th, we recovered six of our sheep, but among those we missed were two rams, and two of the finest ewes in the whole flock. Though the Dutch frequently boast of the police at the Cape, yet the Captain's sheep evaded all the vigilance of the Fiscal's officers and people. At length, after much trouble and expence, by employing some of the meanest scoundrels of the place, we recovered all but the two ewes. One of the rams, however, was so miserably torn by the dogs, that we thought he could not live. Mr. Hemmy, the lieutenant governor, very obligingly offered to make up this loss, by giving Captain Cook a Spanish ram, out of some he had sent for from Lisbon; but the captain declined the offer, thinking it would equally answer his purpose to take with him some of the cape rams; in this, however, the captain was mistaken. Mr. Hemmy had endeavoured to introduce European sheep at the Cape; but all his attempts were frustrated by the obstinacy of the country people, who highly esteem their own breed, on account of their large tails, the fat of which produces more money than the whole carcass besides. Indeed, the most remarkable thing in the Cape sheep is the length and thickness of their tails, which weigh from 10 to 15 pounds. The fat is not so tallowish as that of European mutton, and they use it instead of butter. While we continued at the cape, our commander had laid in a sufficient store of beef, mutton, poultry, and greens, for present use, and had contracted for a good quantity of salted beef, to save what we had brought from England; as the latter will keep better than that which is salted at the Cape. What remained to be done, was chiefly to purchase live cattle for presents to the chiefs in the South Sea: likewise live stock for the ship's use; these are always the last things provided, because it is found necessary to shorten, as much as possible, their continuance on board. Among the cattle purchased, were four horses and mares of a delicate breed, for Oniah; several bulls and cows of the buffalo kind, as more suitable to the tropical climates, than any brought from Europe; likewise some African rams and ewes; dogs of the the kind, some with and some without puppies; cats we had plenty on board, and goats Captain Cook had purchased at St. Jago. Stored with these, the Resolution resembled the Ark, in which pairs of all the animals that were to stock the earth were collected; and with their provender, they occupied no small part of the ship's stowage. While the riggers, sail-makers, caulkers, smiths, coopers, and store-keepers, were busily employed in their several stations, the astronomers were not idle, nor the surgeons; the former were employed in making observations; the latter in attending the sick, of whom there were not many, and those, on being carried to the tents, very soon recovered. The dry soft air of the African mountains proved a restorative superior

to all the phycic in the world. Of the efficacy of this salubrious air, the Dutch East Indiamen have experience every voyage, both in going to and returning from their settlements in India. During the time the Resolution and Discovery lay in the bay, two of their ships arrived full of sick soldiers, who had been inlited in Holland, and who were in a miserable condition both as to health and want of common necessaries. They had been near five months on their voyage from Amsterdarn, and had lost on the passage more men than the complements of both our ships amounted to, owing to nastiness and close confinement. It is remarkable, both as to health and want of common necessaries, that no ships have the appearance of being kept neater than those of the Dutch; nor any more slovenly where they are not exposed to open view.

Nor must we omit here the account in the journal of Mr. Anderson, who, while the two ships were repairing for the prosecution of their voyage, made an excursion, to take a survey of the neighbouring country. Mr. Anderson, surgeon, relates their proceedings, in substance, as follows:

In the forenoon of Saturday the 16th of November, Mr. Anderson, and five others, set out in a waggon, to take a view of the country. They crossed a large plain to the eastward of the town, which is entirely a white sand, resembling that which is commonly found on beaches. At five in the afternoon they passed a large farm-house, some corn-fields, and vineyards, situated beyond the plain, near the foot of some low hills, where the soil appeared worth cultivating. At seven they arrived at Stellenbosh, a colony, in point of importance, next to that of the cape. The village stands at the foot of the range of lofty mountains, above 20 miles to the eastward of Cape Town, and consists of about 30 houses, which are neat and clean: a rivulet, and the shelter of some large oaks, planted at its first settling, form a rural prospect in this desert country. There are some thriving vineyards and orchards about the place, which seem to indicate an excellent soil, though perhaps much may be owing to the uncommon serenity of the air. At this season of the year, Mr. Anderson could find but few plants in flower, and insects were very scarce. Having examined the soil, he found it to consist of yellowish clay, mixed with a good deal of sand. The sides of the low brown hills, seemed to be constituted of a kind of stone marle. Mr. Anderson and his companions left Stellenbosh the next morning, and soon arrived at the house they had passed on Saturday; Mr. Cloeder, the owner of which, having sent them an invitation to visit him. This gentleman received them with politeness, and entertained them with hospitality, in a manner very different from what was expected. They were received with a band of music, which continued playing while they were at dinner; a compliment, considering the situation of the place, we thought elegant. In the afternoon they crossed the country, and passed some large plantations, one of which was laid out in a taste different from those they had seen. In the evening they arrived at a farm house, said to be the first in the cultivated tract, called the Pearl. Here they had a view of Drakenstein, the third colony of this country, which contains several little farms or plantations. Insects and plants were as scarce here as at Stellenbosh, but there was a greater plenty of shrubs, or small trees, naturally produced, than they had before seen in the country. On Tuesday the 19th, in the afternoon, they went to see a remarkable large stone, called by the inhabitants, the Tower of Babylon, or the Pearl Diamond. In the Philosophical Transactions is a letter from Mr. Anderson to Sir John Pringle describing this stone. The account sent home from the cape and read before the Royal Society is much the same with that here published, but rather fuller. In particular, he tells Sir John, that he went to see it at Mr. Masson's desire, who, probably, had not had an opportunity of sufficiently examining it himself. With his letter to Sir John Pringle, Mr. Anderson also sent home a specimen of the rock; it was examined by Sir William Hamilton, whose opinion is, that this singular,

immense fragment of granite, most probably has been raised by a volcanic explosion, or some such cause. This remarkable stone, to use Mr. Anderson's own words, in the papers now before us, "lies, or stands, upon the top of some low hills, at the foot of which our farm houses were situated; and though the road to it is neither very steep nor rugged, we were above an hour and a half in walking to it. It is of an oblong shape, rounded on the top, and lies nearly N. and S. The E. and W. sides are steep, and almost perpendicular. The fourth end is likewise steep, and its greatest height is there; from whence it declines gently to the North part, by which we ascended to its top, and had a very extensive prospect of the whole country. Its circumference, I think, must be at least half a mile; as it took us above half an hour to walk round it, including every allowance for the bad road, and stopping a little. At its highest part, which is the fourth end, comparing it with a known object, it seems to equal the dome of St. Paul's Church. It is one uninterrupted mass of stone, if we except some fissures, or rather impressions, not more than three or four feet deep, and a vein which runs across near its north end. It is of that sort of stone called *Saxum conglomeratum*, and consists chiefly of pieces of coarse quartz and glimmer, held together by a clayey cement. But the vein which crosses it, though of the same materials, is much compacter. This vein is not above a foot broad or thick, and its surface is cut into little squares or oblongs, disposed obliquely, which makes it look like the remains of some artificial work. But I could not observe whether it penetrated far into the large rock, or was only superficial. In descending we found at its foot, a very rich black mould; and on the sides of the hills some trees of a considerable size, natives of the place, which are a species of the olea."—We cannot help thinking, it is strange, that neither Kolben nor de la Caille should have thought the Tower of Babylon worthy of a particular description. The former only mentions it as a high mountain: the latter contents himself with telling us, that it is a low hillock, but the very accurate account given of this remarkable rock by Mr. Anderson, agrees with Mr. Sonnerat's, who was at the Cape of Good Hope so late as 1781. On the 20th in the morning, the gentlemen set out from the Pearl, and, going a different road, passed through an uncultivated country to the Tyger Hills, where they saw some good corn fields. About noon they stopped in a valley for refreshment, where they were plagued with a vast number of musquitoes; and, in the evening, arrived at the Cape-Town, tired sufficiently with the jolting of the waggon.

A very uncommon incident happened during our stay at the Cape, which might have embroiled us with the government there, had not the delinquent been found out and punished. It was discovered that a number of counterfeit schellings, and double keys, had been circulated, and several of our people had taken them in exchange for gold. Complaint was made by our officers against the inhabitants, for taking the advantage of the ignorance of strangers to impose counterfeit money upon them, as it was not to be supposed that they could be judges of the goodness of their country coin. On the other hand, the inhabitants retorted the charge, affirming that the bad money proceeded from us. Each were warm in their allegations, and each were positive in their opinions. It was not thought possible, that any of our people could be prepared to counterfeit Dutch money, and yet there had never been an instance of counterfeit money having been seen at the Cape before the arrival of our ships at that port. Thus the matter rested for some time, till one of the ship's cooks, having obtained leave to go ashore, made himself drunk, and offered base money in payment for his liquor. Being detained, and notice given to his commanding officer, he caused him to be searched, when several other pieces of a base coin were found upon him; and on examining his chest, the implements were found artfully concealed, by which he had been enabled to carry on the fraud. He was instantly de-

jected

livered up to the Dutch Governor, to be tried by the laws of the country where the offence had been committed; but it not being clear, whether the crime of coining was committed on shore, or on board his Britannic Majesty's ship, the Magistracy very politely returned him, to be dealt with as the Commander in Chief should think proper; who not being vested with the power of life and death in civil cases, ordered him to receive the discipline of the ship, and to be sent home in the Hampshire Indiaman. Thus ended a very critical affair, of which there is, we believe, no instance upon record.

On Saturday, the 23d of November, we got the observatory clock, &c. on board. From the result of several calculations and observations, we had reason to conclude, that the watch, or time-piece, had performed well all the way from England. On the 27th orders were given to prepare for sailing; and, fearing a second disaster, we got our sheep and cattle on board as fast as possible. The caulkers had finished their work on board the Discovery, and she had received all her provisions and water. Of the former, both ships had a sufficient supply for two years and upwards. A large quantity of beer was purchased for the companies of both ships, at the only brewery that is publicly tolerated within the jurisdiction of the town. In short, there is not one necessary article relating to the repairing, providing, and victualling of shipping, that is not to be purchased at the Cape of Good Hope, and that too at very reasonable prices. The wine at the Cape has been thought dear, because that of the choicest vintage is scarce, and confined to a very small spot. Of the real Constantia, which is the wine so much prized in Europe, the whole plantation does not perhaps produce more than forty pipes annually, though there may be two or three hundred disposed of under that name. The wine commonly taken on board the shipping for the officers, is of a kind not unlike the Madeira, but of an improved flavour, the vines here being highly sublimed by the warmth of the sun and the dryness of the soil. On Thursday the 28th, the Governor and principal officers belonging to the company were entertained on board the Resolution, where they came to take leave

of our Captains, as we expected to sail in a few days, all our live stock being properly secured on board, and the repairs of both ships being fully completed. On the 30th, captain Cook having given to captain Clerke a copy of his instructions, and our letters having been dispatched to our friends, we quitted our moorings, and next day came to an anchor in 18 fathoms water, Penguin island bearing N. by W. six miles; but before we take our final departure, it may not be amiss to observe, that nothing in nature can make a more horrid appearance than the rugged mountains that form Table Bay. One would almost be tempted to think, that the Dutch had made choice of the most barren spot upon earth, to shew what may be effected by slow industry, and continual perseverance; for besides the craggy cliffs that render the open country almost inaccessible, the soil is so sandy and poor, that except some vineyards, there is scarce a shrub or a tree to be seen within any walking distance from the place; inasmuch, that the vast profusion of all sorts of provisions, as beef, mutton, poultry, flour, butter, cheese, and every other necessary, is brought from four to five and twenty days journey from Cape Town, where the Governor and Company have their residence. This town, as our readers may recollect, we have fully described in our history of former voyages, so that little remains to be said, or added in this part of our work. The town is neatly built, and, according to the natural taste and character of the Dutch, as neatly kept in order. It has the advantage of a small rivulet, by means of which there are canals in all the principal streets, on both sides of which are planted rows of stately oaks. The town is situated below the mountains, and when seen from their summits, appears, with the gardens and plantations that run along the shore exceedingly picturesque: nothing, indeed, can be more romantic, nor any prospect more pleasing to the eye. At five in the afternoon of this day, a breeze sprung up at S. E. with which, as we observed above, we weighed, and stood out of the bay, having saluted the fort with eleven guns, which they returned with an equal number: at nine o'clock it fell calm, and we came again to anchor.

C H A P. II.

Passage of the Resolution and Discovery from the Cape of Good Hope, to Christmas Harbour, in which Prince Edward's islands are seen, and Kerguelen's land visited—The two ships arrive at the above harbour—Description of it, and an account of occurrences there—Depart from thence, and explore the coast—Cape Cumberland Bay, Point Pringle, Howe's Foreland, &c. described—The ships in danger from shoals—Arrive at Port Palliser—Cape George described—Natural history of the animals, plants, soil, &c. of Kerguelen's land—Passage from thence to Van Diemen's land, in which the Resolution is damaged by a sudden squall—They arrive in Adventure Bay—Incidents there—Various interviews with the natives, and a description of their persons, dress, manners, and customs—Mr. Anderson's remarks—Course of the Resolution and Discovery to Queen Charlotte's Sound in New Zealand, where we anchored in our old station.

DECEMBER the 1st, 1776, at three o'clock A. M. we weighed and put to sea, with a light breeze at S. but did not get clear of the land till the 3d in the morning, when, with a fresh gale at W. N. W. we stood to the S. E. At this time we observed that luminous appearance about our ship, which different navigators have attributed to different causes, but which Dr. Franklin has endeavoured to account for on the principles of electricity. About five in the afternoon, we met with one of those terrible gulls so frequently experienced by mariners in doubling the Cape of Good Hope, in which our main-mast was split, but fortunately we received no other damage; the southernmost land now bore S. by E. distant nine or ten leagues, both ships in company. On Wednesday the 4th in the morning, it blew a hurricane, and split the jib of the Discovery; and on the 5th a squall of wind carried away our mizen-top-mast, but having another to replace it, the loss was not felt. On the 6th, in the evening, being in latitude 39 deg. 14 min. S. and in 23 deg. 56 min. E. longitude, we ob-

erved several spots of water, of a reddish hue. Upon examining some of this water that was taken up, we perceived a number of small animals, which the microscope discovered to resemble cray-fish. We continued to the S. E. followed by a mountainous sea, which occasioned the ship to roll exceedingly, and rendered our cattle troublesome. Several goats, especially the males, died, and some sheep. On the 8th, the weather that had been cloudy and boisterous ever since leaving the Cape, became clear and moderate. In latitude 39 deg. 57 min. S. Mr. King, our second mate, went on board the Discovery to compare the time-pieces, and found no material variation. On the 10th, in latitude 43 deg. 56 min. S. a dreadful storm came on, which obliged both ships to lie to that and the following night under bare poles. On the 11th in latitude 46 deg. 18 min. S. it began to snow and hail, and the weather became intolerably cold; inasmuch, that from a scorching heat which we felt at the Cape, the change was so great, that we were obliged to line the hatchways with can-

was, to defend the men below as much as possible from the effects of the frost. Here the albatrosses, and other sea birds, began to make their appearance; and seals, and porpoises were seen to sport about the ships, which gave us hopes of soon approaching land. This we discovered, having the appearance of two islands, on Thursday the 12th at noon. That to the S. which is the largest, we judged to be about 15 leagues in circuit, and to lie in latitude 46 deg. 55 min. S. longitude 37 deg. 46 min. E. The most northerly one is about 9 leagues in circuit; and in latitude 46 deg. 40 min. S. longitude 38 deg. 8 min. E. The distance from one to the other is about five leagues. We passed through between both islands in a very narrow channel; and had piercing cold, attended with snow, with which the islands were lightly covered; but neither tree nor shrub were to be seen with our best glasses, nor any living thing, except penguins and shags, the former so numerous that the rocks seemed covered with them as with a crust. The S. E. parts of these two islands had a much greater quantity of snow on them than the rest, and the ground that was not covered by it, from the various shades it exhibited, may be supposed to be clothed with moss, or perhaps, with such a coarse long grass as is found in some parts of Falkland's islands. On the N. side of each of the islands is a detached rock; that near the S. one is shaped like a tower, and seemed to be at some distance from the shore. These two islands, and four others more to the east, were discovered by the two French navigators, Marion du Frezre, and Crozet, in January 1772, on their passage from the Cape of Good Hope to the Philippine islands. M. de Marion had two ships under his command, one the *Malcarin*, captain Crozet, the other the *Castrie*, captain du Clefsmure. They proceeded to the southern extremity of New Holland, and from thence to the Bay of Islands in New Zealand, where M. de Marion was killed with twenty-eight of his men by the natives. He was obliged, having lost his mails, to look out for new ones in this country; but when he had found trees fit for his purpose, necessity obliged him to cut a road three miles long through the thickets, to bring them to the water side. While one party of his people were employed in this service, another party was placed on an island in the bay, to cleanse the canoes, and fill them with water; and a third was occasionally sent on shore to cut wood for the ship's use. Thus employed, they had been here 33 days upon the best terms with the natives, who freely offered their women to the sailors, when M. de Marion, not suspecting any treachery, went one morning, as was his custom, to visit the different parties that were at work, without leaving word that he intended to come back to the ships the same day. Having called to see the waterers, he went next to the *Hippah*, a fortification of the natives, where he commonly used to stop in his way to the carpenters, encamped in the woods, with M. Crozet at their head, to direct their operations. Here he was suddenly set upon; and, with his few attendants, barbarously murdered; as were the boats crew that carried him on shore. Next morning, the lieutenant who commanded on board, not knowing what had happened, sent a party to cut wood, and when every one was at work, the natives watched the opportunity to fall upon them likewise, and butchered every one, except a single sailor, who ran for his life, and threw himself, wounded, into the sea. Being seen from the ships, he was speedily taken on board, and gave the general alarm. Crozet's situation in the woods, with his small party, was now become most critical. A corporal and four marines were dispatched immediately to acquaint him of his danger, while several boats attended to receive his people, at a place where the sick had been lodged in the tents, for the recovery of their health. He disposed every thing as well as the time would permit, and effected his retreat to the sea side. Here he found multitudes assembled, dressed in their habits of war, with several chiefs at their head. Captain Crozet ordered the marines who attended him, to direct their fire, in case he found it necessary to give the word, against such persons as he should point out. He then com-

manded the carpenters and convalescents to strike the tents, and the sick to embark first, with their whole apparatus, while he with the soldiers, should talk with the chief. This man immediately told them, that M. Marion was killed by another chief; upon which captain Crozet seized a stake, and, forcing it into the ground, made signs that he should advance no farther. The countenance, with which this action was attended, startled the savage, whose timidity being observed by Crozet, he insisted on his commanding the crowd to sit down, which was accordingly complied with. He now paraded in front of the enemy till all his people were embarked; his soldiers were then ordered to follow, and himself was the last who entered the boat. They had scarce put off when the whole body of natives began their song of defiance, and discharged their volleys of stones; however, a shot from the ship soon dispersed them, and the company got all safe on board. From this time the natives began to be troublesome, and made several attempts to attack his people by surprise. They formed an attack against the watering party in the night, which, but for the vigilance of the guard, would have been fatal to them: after which, they openly attacked the ships in more than a hundred large ones, full of men, who had cause sufficient to repent their daring exploit, having severely felt the destructive effect of European arms. At length captain Crozet, finding it impossible to supply the ships with masts, unless he could drive the enemy from his neighbourhood; made an attack upon their *Hippah*, which they vainly boasted was beyond his power to approach. He placed the carpenters in the front, who, in an instant, levelled their palisades with the ground; then cut a breach through the mound, and levelled the ditch, behind which their warriors were ranged in great numbers on their fighting stages. Into this breach a chief instantly threw himself, with his spear in his hand. He was shot dead by a marksman, and immediately another chief occupied his place, stepping on the dead body. He likewise fell a victim to his intrepid courage, and in the same manner eight warriors successively defended it, and bravely fell in this post of honour. The rest, seeing their leaders dead, took flight, and the French pursued and killed numbers of them. Captain Crozet offered fifty dollars to any person who should take a New Zealander alive, but this was found impracticable. A soldier seized an old man, and began to drag him towards his Captain, but the savage, being disarmed, bit into the fleshy part of his enemy's hand, the exquisite pain of which so much enraged the soldier, that he ran the fellow through with his bayonet. In the *Hippah*, that had been stormed, was found great quantities of arms, tools, and cloathing, together with store of dried fish and roots, which seemed to be intended for winter provision. Captain Crozet now completed the repairs of his ship without interruption, and prosecuted his voyage after a stay of sixty four days in the Bay of Islands: from whence, after passing through the western part of the South Sea, he returned, by the Philippines, to the Isle of France.

We cannot help remarking here, that there appears some inconsistency in the above relation. It seems improbable, if Marion was murdered in the *Hippah*, situated on the prominence of an inaccessible rock, that the boat's crew below, who landed him, should not make their escape; and much more improbable, that neither the leader nor his followers should be missed, till the woodmen were mangled by the savages the next day. Upon the whole, we are rather inclined to think, considering the importance of the place, that the loss might be sustained by fair combat. M. Marion might find it necessary for the safety of his people, to drive the savages from their *Hippah* or Fort, which is one of the strongest in New Zealand. In the opinion of captain Cook, it is a place of great strength, in which a great number of resolute men may defend themselves against all the force, which a people with no other arms than those that are there in use, could bring against it. Captain Crozet might, therefore, think it less dishonourable to attribute the loss of his general

valcents to strike the
 ft, with their whole ap-
 pears, should talk with the
 old them, that M. Ma-
 f; upon which captain
 ing it into the ground,
 ance no farther. The
 action was attended,
 lity being observed by
 anding the crowd to sit
 mplied with. He now
 till all his people were
 ndered to follow; and
 t the boat. They had
 body of natives began
 charged their volleys of
 the ship soon dispersed
 safe on board. From
 troublefome, and made
 ple by surprize. They
 watering party in the
 ce of the guard, would
 hich, they openly at-
 hundred large ones,
 cient to repent their
 t the destructive effect
 captain Crozet, finding
 with masts, unless he
 neighbourhood, made
 hich they vainly boasted
 h. He placed the ear-
 instant, levelled their
 n cut a breach through
 h, behind which their
 mbers on their fight-
 chief instantly threw
 nd. He was shot dead
 another chief occu-
 dead body. He like-
 courage, and in the
 ccessively defended it,
 honour. The rest, see-
 t, and the French pur-
 t. Captain Crozet of-
 ho should take a New
 nd impracticable, a
 began to drag him to-
 p, being disabled, but
 's hand, the exquisite
 the soldier, that he ran
 net. In the Hippah,
 nd great quantities of
 her with store of dried
 ve intended for winter
 mpleted the repairs
 , and prosecuted his
 days in the Bay of
 ing through the we-
 rned, by the Philip-

re, that there appear
 elation. It seems im-
 ered in the Hippah,
 inaccessible rock, that
 led him, should not
 be improbable, that
 should be missed, till
 the savages the next
 rather inclined to
 e of the place, that
 r combat. M. Ma-
 e safety of his people,
 ppah or Fort, which
 ealand. In the opi-
 ce of great strength,
 ute men may defend
 hich a people with no
 e in use, could bring
 , therefore, think it
 e loss of his general
 and

and so many men, to the treachery, rather than the
 valour of the savages; who, it is acknowledged, de-
 fended the place bravely. But to proceed.

As the two islands, between which we passed, have
 no names in the French chart of the southern hemis-
 phere, captain Cook named them Prince Edward's
 islands, and the other four Marion's and Crozet's
 islands. We had now for the most part strong gales
 between the N. and W. and but very indifferent weath-
 er; not better, indeed, than we generally have in
 England in the very depth of winter, though it was
 now the middle of summer in this hemisphere. In con-
 sequence of the piercing cold, the captain ordered the
 jackets and trowsers to be delivered out, which, with
 the blankets, and other warm cloathing, provided by
 the Lords of the Admiralty against the severity of the
 frozen climates, were found of infinite use in preserving
 the men in health, who were most exposed to the action
 of the frost. After leaving Prince Edward's islands, we
 shaped our course to the S. E. with a brisk gale at W.
 S. W. in order to pass to the southward of the four
 others; and to get into the latitude of the land disco-
 vered by M. de Kerguelen. Captain Cook had re-
 ceived instructions to examine this island, and endea-
 vour to discover a good harbour.

On Monday the 16th, in latitude 48 deg. 45 min. and
 in longitude 52 deg. E. we saw numbers of penguins,
 and rock-wood floating in the sea. On the 17th the
 fogs came on so thick, that we could but just dis-
 cern objects at the distance of the ship's length; on
 account of which signals were appointed, and repeated
 every half hour. As we hourly expected to fall in with
 land, our navigation was both tedious and dangerous.
 On the 21st, we saw a very large seal, and a heavy storm
 came on, attended with fleet and heavy gulls of hail.
 On Tuesday the 24th, at six o'clock, A. M. the fog
 clearing away a little, we saw land, bearing S. S. E.
 which we afterwards found to be an island of consider-
 able height, and about three leagues in circuit. We
 soon after discovered another of equal magnitude,
 about one league to the eastward; and between these two
 some smaller ones. In the direction of S. by E. another
 high island was seen. This we did but just weather:
 it was a high round rock, named Bligh's Cap. Our
 commander supposed this to be the same that M. de
 Kerguelen called the Isle of Rendezvous; but we know
 of nothing that can rendezvous upon it but the birds
 of the air, for it is certainly inaccessible to every other
 animal. The weather beginning to clear up, we
 tacked, and steered in for the land; and at noon we de-
 termined the latitude of Bligh's Cap to be 48 deg. 29
 min. S. longitude 68 deg. 49 min. E. We passed it
 at three o'clock, with a fresh gale at W. standing to the
 S. S. E. Presently after we saw the land of which we
 had a faint view in the morning; and at four o'clock,
 extending from S. E. half E. and distant 4 miles. The
 left extreme, which we judged to be the northern point
 of this land, called, in the French chart of the southern
 hemisphere, Cape François, terminated in a high per-
 pendicular rock, and the right one in a high indented
 point, which, by its appearance, seemed to be, what is
 represented on Kerguelen's chart under the name of Cape
 Aubert. It may be proper to observe here, that all
 that extent of coast lying between Cape Louis and Cape
 François, of which the French saw very little during
 their first visit in 1772, and may be called the N. W.
 side of this land, they had it in their power to trace
 the position of in 1773, and have assigned names to some of
 its bays, rivers, and promontories. From this point
 the coast seemed to turn about round to the southward;
 for we could see no land to the westward of the direc-
 tion in which it now bore to us, but the islands we had
 observed in the morning. Kerguelen's isle de Clugny, the
 most southerly of them, lies nearly W. from the point,
 about two or three leagues distant. Towards the mid-
 dle of the land there appeared to be an inlet; but on
 our approaching it, we saw it was only a bending on
 the coast: we therefore bore up to go round Cape Fran-
 çois. Soon after, land opened off the Cape, in the di-
 rection of S. 53 deg. E. appearing as a point at a con-

siderable distance; for the trending of the coast from
 the Cape was more southerly. We also deserted rocks
 and islands to the eastward of the above directions, the
 most distant of which was about seven leagues from
 the Cape. Having got off this, we observed the coast
 to the southward, much indented by points and bays,
 and, therefore, fully expected to find a good harbour.
 We soon discovered one behind the Cape, into which
 we began to ply; but it presently fell calm, and we an-
 chored in 45 fathoms water, as the Discovery also
 did soon after. Mr. Bligh, the master, was ordered
 to found the harbour; who reported it to be safe and
 commodious.

On Wednesday the 25th, early in the morning, we
 weighed, and, having wrought into the harbour,
 anchored in eight fathoms water, bottom a fine dark
 sand. At two o'clock, P. M. the Discovery got in,
 when captain Clerke informed us, that he had with
 difficulty escaped being driven on the S. point of the
 harbour, his anchor having started before he could
 shorten the cable. They were, therefore, obliged to set
 sail, and drag the anchor after them, till they had room
 to heave it up, when they perceived that one of its
 palms was broken. Immediately after we had an-
 chored, all the boats were ordered to be hoisted out,
 and the empty water casks to be got ready. In the
 mean time captain Cook landed, to search for a conve-
 nient spot where they might be filled, and to observe
 what the place afforded. We found numbers of pen-
 guins, seals, and other fowls, on the shore. The birds
 were not numerous, but so insensible of fear, that we
 killed as many as we chose, and made use of their fat
 and blubber to make oil for our lamps, and other pur-
 poses. Fresh water was exceedingly plentiful; but not
 a single tree or shrub was to be discovered, and but lit-
 tle herbage of any kind; though we had flattered our-
 selves with the hope of meeting with something consid-
 erable here, having observed the sides of some of the
 hills to be covered with a lively green. Before captain
 Cook returned to the ship, he ascended a ridge of rocks,
 rising one above another, expecting, by that means,
 to obtain a view of the country; but before he had reached
 the top, so thick a fog came on, that it was with dif-
 ficulty he could find his way down again. Towards the
 evening we hauled the seine at the head of the harbour,
 but caught no more than half a dozen small fish; nor had
 we any better success the next day, when we tried with
 hook and line. Our only reliance, therefore, for fresh
 provisions, was birds, which were innumerable. On
 Thursday the 26th, the surf was rather inconvenient
 for landing, and the weather rather foggy and rainy:
 nevertheless, we began to cut grass for our cattle, and
 to fill water; we found the former near the head of the
 harbour, and the latter in a brook at the left corner of
 the beach. The rivulets were swelled to such a degree,
 by the rain that fell, that the sides of the hills which
 bounded the harbour, appeared to be covered with a
 sheet of water: for the rain entered the fissures and crags
 of the hills, and was precipitated down their sides in
 prodigious torrents.

The people having laboured hard for two successive
 days, and nearly completed our water, Captain Cook
 allowed them the 27th of December as a day of rest
 to celebrate Christmas. In consequence of which
 many of them went on shore, and made excursions into
 the country, which they found desolate in extreme.
 It contained plenty of water, but no wood; was barren,
 and without inhabitants; but the shores abounded with
 fish, and the land with seals, sea-lions, and penguins.
 In the evening one of them presented a quart bottle
 to the captain, which was found on the north-side of
 the harbour, fastened with some wire to a projecting
 rock. This bottle contained a piece of parchment,
 with this inscription, "*Ludovico XV. Galliarum rege,
 et d. (probably a contraction of the word Dominus) de
 Boyes regi a Secretis ad res maritimas annis 1772 et
 1773.*" From which it is evident, we were not the
 first Europeans who had visited this harbour. Captain
 Cook supposes it to have been left by M. de Boug-
 henneu, who went on shore the 13th of February, 1772,
 the

the day that M. de Kerguelen discovered this land; but the captain appears to be for once mistaken; for how could M. de Boisguchenneu, in the beginning of 1772, leave an inscription which commemorates a transaction of the next year? Perhaps the following particulars may throw light upon this part of our author's journal; for we do not in the manner of most of our uninformed cotemporary compilers, servilely copy any one's papers, or, from inattentive indolence, suffer errors to pass uncorrected. M. de Kerguelen, a lieutenant in the French service, had the command of two ships given him, the *La Fortune* and *Le Gros Ventre*. He sailed from the Mauritius about the latter end of 1771, and on the 13th of January following, discovered the two islands of which we are now speaking, and to which he gave the name of the *Iles of Fortune*. Soon after M. de Kerguelen saw land, as it is said, of a considerable height and extent, upon which he sent one of the officers of his own ship a-head in the cutter to sound. But the captain of the other ship, M. de St. Allouarn, in the *Gros Ventre*, found a bay, to which he gave his ship's name, and ordered his yawl to take possession. In the mean time, M. de Kerguelen being driven to leeward, and unable again to recover his station, both boats returned on board the *Gros Ventre*, and the cutter was turned adrift on account of the bad weather. M. Kerguelen returned to the Mauritius, and M. de St. Allouarn continued for three days to take the bearings of this land, and doubled its northern extremity beyond which it trended to the south-eastward. He coasted it for the space of 20 leagues, but finding it high and inaccessible, he shaped his course to New Holland, and from thence returned by the way of Timor and Batavia, to the *Ile of France*, where he died. M. de Kerguelen was afterwards promoted to the command of a 64 gun ship, called the *Rolland*, with the frigate *L'Oiseau*, who were sent out in order to perfect the discovery of this pretended land.

From the accounts of M. Kerguelen's second voyage we learn that they arrived on the west side of this island, on the 14th of December, 1783; that, steering to the N. E. they discovered, on the 16th, the *Ile de Reunion*, and other small islands; that, on the 17th, they had before them the principal land, (which they were sure was connected with that seen by them on the 14th,) and a high point of land, named by them *Cape François*; that beyond this cape, the coast took a south-easterly direction, and behind it they found a bay called by them *Baie de L'Oiseau*, from the name of their frigate; that, they then endeavoured to enter it, but were prevented by contrary winds and blowing weather, which drove them off the coast eastward; but that, at last, on the 6th of January, M. de Roinevet, captain of the *Oiseau*, was able to send his boat on shore in this bay, under the command of M. de Roche-gude, one of his officers, "who took possession of that bay, and of all the country, in the name of the king of France, with all the requisite formalities." Hence then we trace, by the most unexceptionable evidence, the history of the bottle and the inscription; the leaving of which was, no doubt, one of the requisite formalities observed by M. de Roche-gude on this occasion. And though he did not land till the 6th of January, 1774, yet as Kerguelen's ships arrived upon the coast on the 14th of December, 1773, and had discovered and looked into this very bay on the 17th of that month, it was with the strictest propriety and truth that 1773 and not 1774 was mentioned as the date of the discovery. We may now fairly conclude from the above particulars, that Captain Cook's groundless supposition sprung from want of information, that might enable him to make any other. He had no idea that the French had visited this land a second time; and reduced to the necessity of trying to accommodate what he saw himself, to what little he had heard of their proceedings, he confounds a transaction which we, who have been better informed, know for a certainty, belongs to the second voyage, with a similar one, which his chart of the Southern Hemisphere has recorded, and which happened in a different year, and at a different place.

Nor can a doubt remain, that these islands we now sell in with are the same discovered by Kerguelen; but that M. de Kerguelen ever saw a great country, such as he pretends to have seen, in or near those islands, is very problematical. There are, indeed, numberless islands thinly scattered in this almost boundless ocean; but there are none so superior to those already discovered in riches and cultivation, as to be worth the search, will scarcely admit a question. We now think it time to return to the history of our voyage.

Captain Cook, as a memorial of our having been in this harbour, wrote on the other side of the parchment these words; "*Naves Resolutio et Discovery, de Rege Magnæ Britannie, Decembris 1776*," that is, "The ships *Resolution* and *Discovery*, belonging to the king of Great Britain. In the month of December, A. D. 1776." He then put the parchment again into the bottle, accompanied with a silver two-penny piece of 1772, covering its mouth with a leaden cap, and placed it the next morning in a pile of stones, erected for that purpose on an eminence, near the place where it was first found. Here we displayed the British flag, and named the place *Christmas Harbour*, it being on that festival we arrived in it. It is the first inlet we meet with on the S. E. side of *Cape François*, which forms the north side of the harbour, and is the northern point of this land. The situation sufficiently distinguishes it from any of the other inlets; and, which is still more remarkable, its south point terminates in a high rock, perforated quite through, and forming an appearance like the arch of a bridge. If there could be the least doubt remaining of the identity of the *Baie de l'Oiseau*, and *Christmas harbour*, this particular of the perforated rock, which, in the account of Kerguelen's second voyage, is compared to an arched gateway, would amount to a strict demonstration; and it is very satisfactory to find the two navigators, neither of whom knew any thing of the other's description, adopting the same idea, which both prove, that they had the same uncommon object before their eyes, and that they made an accurate report. The harbour has another mark within, being a single stone or rock, of a vast size, which lies on the top of a hill, on the south-side, near its bottom; and opposite this, on the north-side is another hill, smaller, but much like it. At the bottom of this is a small beach where we commonly landed; behind it is some gently rising ground, whereon is a pool of fresh water. On both sides of the inlet, the land is high. The inlet runs in W. and W. N. W. two miles; its breadth, for more than half its length, is one mile and a quarter; above which it is only half a mile. The shores are steep. The depth of water, which is 45 fathoms at the entrance, varies from 30, and if you proceed farther in, to four and five fathoms. The bottom is every where a fine dark sand, except in some places near to the shore, where are beds of seaweed, which always grows on rocky ground. The head of the harbour lies open only to two points of the compass; and even these are covered by islands in the offing, so that no sea can fall in to hurt a ship. Appearances on shore confirmed this; for we found grass growing close to high water mark, which is a sure sign of a pacific harbour. Captain Cook, accompanied by Mr. King, went upon *Cape François*, expecting, from this elevation, to have had a view of the sea-coast, and the islands lying off it; but they found every distant object below them hid in a fog. The land on a level with them, or of a greater height, was visible enough, and appeared exceedingly naked and desolate; except some hills to the southward, which were covered with snow.

We were now busied on board in repairing our rigging, particularly the crew of the *Discovery*, who had suffered much in the frequent squalls, with which she had been harassed ever since her departure from the *Cape*: at the same time, those who were on shore were no less usefully employed in supplying the ships with water, and the crews with fresh provisions; which last, though not of the most delicate kind, yet to stomachs cloyed almost to loathing with salt provisions,

even seals, penguins and sea-fowl, were not unfavourable. When Christmas was proclaimed, a double quantity of grog was served out to each common man; and a certain proportion of wine and spirits to every petty officer: leave was likewise given to such as were ailing, to go on shore for the benefit of the air; and the officers of both ships reciprocally met in compliment to each other; past dangers were forgotten, and the day was spent by the common sailors with as much mirth and unconcern, as if safely moored in Portsmouth-harbour.

On Sunday the 29th, we sailed, and took leave of this island, which captain Clerke found by observation to lie in lat. 49 deg. 30 min. S. and in 78 deg. 10 min. E. longitude. We now pursued our course for Van Diemen's land, and having no discoveries in view, took every advantage of the weather to carry sail.

Mr. Anderfon, who, during the short time we lay in Christmas Harbour, lost no time nor opportunity for examining the country, in every direction, has favoured us with the following observations. No place (says he) hitherto discovered, in either hemisphere, affords so fertile a field for the naturalist as this barren spot. Some verdure, indeed, appeared, when at a small distance from the shore, which might raise the expectation of meeting with a little herbage; but all this lively appearance was occasioned by one small plant, resembling sedge, which grew up the hills in large spreading tufts, or a kind of rotten turf, which, if dried, might serve for fuel, and was the only thing seen here, that could possibly be applied to that purpose. Another plant, which grew to near the height of two feet, was pretty plentifully scattered about the boggy declivities; it had the appearance of a small cabbage when it has shot into seeds. It had the watery acrid taste of the antiscorbutic plants, though it materially differed from the whole tribe. When eaten raw, it was not unlike the New Zealand scurvy-grass; but, when boiled, it acquired a rank flavour. At this time, none of its seeds were ripe enough to be brought home, and introduced into our English gardens. Near the brooks and boggy places were found two other small plants, which were eaten as salad; the one like garden cresses, very hot; and the other very mild: the latter is a curiosity, having not only male and female, but also androgynous plants. Some coarse grass grew pretty plentifully in a few small spots near the harbour, which was cut down for our cattle. In short the whole catalogue of plants did not exceed eighteen, including a beautiful species of lichen, and several sorts of moss. Nor was there the appearance of a tree or shrub in the whole country.

Among the animals, the most considerable were seals, which were distinguished by the name of sea-bears; being the sort that are called the ursine seal. They come on shore to repose and breed. At that time they were shedding their hair, and so remarkably tame, that there was no difficulty in killing them. No other quadruped was seen; but a great number of oceanic birds, as ducks, thrags, petrels, &c. The ducks were somewhat like a widgeon, both in size and figure: a considerable number of them were killed and eaten: they were excellent food, and had not the least fishy taste. The cape petrel, the small blue one, and the small black one, or Mother Carey's chicken, were not in plenty here; but another sort, which is the largest of the petrels, and called by seamen, Mother Carey's goose, is found in abundance. This petrel is as large as an albatross, and is carnivorous, feeding on the dead carcases of seals, birds, &c. The greatest number of birds here are penguins, which consist of three sorts. The head of the largest is black, the upper part of the body of a leaden grey, the under part white, and the feet black: two broad stripes of fine yellow descend from the head to the breast; the bill is of a reddish colour, and longer than in the other sorts. The second sort is about half the size of the former. It is of a dark grey on the upper part of the body, and has a white spot on the upper part of the head. The bill and feet are yellowish. In the third sort, the upper part of the body and throat are black, the rest white, except the

No. 51.

top of the head, which is ornamented with a fine yellow arch, which it can erect as two crests. The thrags here are of two sorts; the lesser corvorant, or water-crow, and another with a blackish back and a white belly. The sea-swallow, the tern, the common sea-gull, and the Port Egmont hen, were also found here. Also large flocks of a singular kind of white bird flew about, having the base of the bill covered with a horny crust. It had a black bill and white feet, was somewhat larger than a pigeon, and the flesh tasted like that of a duck. We hauled the seine once, when we found a few fish about the size of a small haddock. The only shell-fish we saw were a few limpets and mussels.

Many of the hills, notwithstanding they were of a moderate height, were at that time covered with snow, though answering to our June. It is reasonable to imagine that rain must be very frequent here, as well from the marks of large torrents having rushed down, as from the appearance of the country, which even on the hills, was a continued bog or swamp. The rocks consist principally of a dark blue and very hard stone, intermixed with particles of glimmer. Some considerable rocks were also formed here from a brownish brittle stone. These are the remarks of the ingenious Mr. Anderfon, captain Cook's surgeon.

Having sailed out of Christmas Harbour, we steered S. E. along the coast with a fine breeze and clear weather. This was unexpected, as, for some time past, fogs had prevailed more or less every day. Though we kept the line constantly going, we seldom struck ground with a line of 60 fathom. At eight o'clock, A. M. we were off a promontory, which was named Cape Cumberland. It lies a league and a half from the fourth point of Christmas Harbour; between them is a good bay. Off Cape Cumberland is a small island, on the summit of which is a rock resembling a sentry-box, which name was given to the island on that account. Some small islands and rocks, with broken ground around them, lie two miles farther to the eastward; between which and Sentry-box Island we failed, the breadth of the channel being full a mile. We found no bottom with 40 fathoms line. When through this channel, we saw, on the south side of Cape Cumberland, a bay, running in three leagues to the westward. It is formed by this cape to the north, and by a promontory to the south, which was named Point Pringle, as a compliment from our captain to Sir John Pringle, President of the Royal Society. The bottom of this bay we called Cumberland Bay. The coast, to the southward of Point Pringle, forms a fifth bay, which we called White Bay, wherein are several lesser bays or coves, which seemed to be sheltered from all winds. Off the fourth point, several rocks raise their heads above water, and probably there are many others that do not. Thus far our course was in a direction parallel to the coast, and not more than two miles from it; and the country had the same sterile and naked aspect as in the neighbourhood of Christmas Harbour. The land which first opened off Cape Francois, in the direction of south 53 deg. E. we had kept on our larboard-bow, thinking it was an island, with a passage between that and the main; but we found it to be a peninsula, joined to the rest of the coast by a low isthmus. The bay, formed by this peninsula, we called Repulse Bay; and the northern point of the peninsula was named Howe's Foreland, in honour of Lord Howe. Drawing near it we observed some rocks and breakers, not far from the N. W. part, and two islands to the eastward of it, which, at first, appeared as one. We steered between them and the Foreland, and by noon, were in the middle of the channel. The land of this Foreland or peninsula is of a tolerable height, and of a hilly and rocky substance. The coast is low; almost covered with sea-birds; and we perceived some seals upon the beaches.

Having cleared the rocks and islands before mentioned, we saw the whole sea before us to be chequered with large beds of rock weed, which was fast to the bottom. There is often found a great depth of water upon such shoals, and rocks have, as often, raised

5 O

their

their heads almost to the surface of the water. It is always dangerous to sail over them, especially when there is no surge of the sea to discover the danger. We endeavoured to avoid the rocks, by steering through the winding channels by which they were separated. Though the lead was continually going, we never struck ground with a line of sixty fathoms: this increased the danger, as we could not anchor, however urgent the necessity might be. At length we discovered a lurking rock, in the middle of one of the beds of weeds, and even with the surface of the sea. This was sufficiently alarming, to make us take every precaution to avoid danger. We were now about eight miles to the southward of Howe's Foreland, across the mouth of a large bay; in which were several rocks, low islands and beds of sea weed; but there appeared to be winding channels between them. We were so much embarrassed with these shoals, that we hauled off to the eastward, in hopes of extricating ourselves from our difficulties; but this plunged us into greater, and we found it absolutely necessary to secure the ships, if possible, before night, especially as the weather was hazy, and a fog was apprehended. Observing some inlets to the S. W. captain Clerke was ordered, (the Discovery drawing less water than the Resolution) to lead in for the shore, which was immediately attempted. In standing in we could not avoid running over the edges of some of the shoals, on which was found from 10 to 20 fathoms water; but the moment we were clear of them, we had no ground at the depth of 50 fathoms. Having weathered a spit that run out from an island on our lee, captain Clerke made the signal for having discovered an harbour, in which we anchored in 15 fathoms water, about five o'clock in the evening, near a mile from the shore. The N. point of the harbour bore N. by E. half E. one mile distant, and the small islands in the entrance, within which we anchored, extended from E. to S. E. No sooner were the ships secured, than it began to blow so very strong, that we found it necessary to strike top-gallant yards. The weather, however, continued fair, and it presently became clear, the wind having dispersed the fog that had settled on the hills.

As soon as we had anchored, captain Cook ordered two boats to be hoisted out, in one of which he dispatched Mr. Bligh, the master, to survey the upper part of the harbour, and look out for wood. He also desired captain Clerke to send his master to found the channel, S. of the small isles, and went himself in his own boat, accompanied by Mr. Gore, our first lieutenant, and Mr. Bailey, and landed on the N. point, to see what discovery could be made from thence. From an hill over the point, they had a view of the sea coast, as far as Howe's Foreland. Several small islands, rocks, and breakers, were scattered along the coast, and there appeared no better channel to get out of the harbour, than that by which they had entered it. While captain Cook and Mr. Bailey were making these observations, Mr. Gore encompassed the hill, and joined them at a place where the boat was attending for them. There was nothing to obstruct their walk, except some craggy precipices; the country being, if possible, more barren, and desolate, than that about Christmas Harbour: and was there the least fertility in any part of this island; we might reasonably expect to have found it in this, which is completely sheltered from the predominating bleak southerly winds. But we could find neither food nor covering for cattle of any sort; and if any had been left, they must inevitably have perished. In the little bay where the boat lay, called by captain Cook Penguin Cove, (from the inexpressible number of those birds appearing there) is a fine fresh river, which we could approach without difficulty. Some large seals, flugs, and a few ducks were seen, and Mr. Bailey had a glance of a very small land bird, but it flew among the rocks, and we lost it. At nine o'clock we got on board, and Mr. Bligh returned soon after. He reported, that he had been four miles up the harbour; that its direction was W. S. W. that its breadth near the ships did not exceed a mile; that the soundings were

from 37 to 10 fathoms; and that, having landed on both shores, he found the soil rocky, without a tree or shrub, or hardly any appearance of verdure.

Monday the 30th, both wind and weather favouring us, we weighed anchor, set sail, and put out to sea. To the harbour we had left, the name was given of Port Palliser, in honour of admiral Sir Hugh Palliser. It lies in the lat. of 49 deg. 3 min. S. long. 69 deg. 37 min. E. distant five leagues from Howe's Foreland; and in the direction of S. 25 deg. E. When standing out, we discovered a round hill, like a sugar loaf, in the direction of S. 72 deg. E. distant about 9 leagues; having the appearance of an island, but we afterwards found it was upon the main land. In getting out to sea, in general, we steered through the winding channels among the shoals, though we sometimes ventured to run over them, on which we never found less than 12 fathoms water; nor would they have been discovered, had it not been for the sea weed growing upon them. Having got three or four leagues from the coast, we found a clear sea, and steered E. till nine o'clock A.M. at which time the sugar-loaf hill, above mentioned, which we named Mount Campbell, bore S. E. and a small island, to the northward of it. S. S. E. distant four leagues. We now steered more southerly, in order to get in with the land. At noon we observed in latitude 49 deg. 8 min. S. longitude from Cape François 83 miles E. Mount Campbell bore S. 47 deg. W. distant 4 leagues; and a low point S. E. at the distance of about 20 miles. We were now little more than two leagues from the shore. This part of the coast seems to be what the French saw on the 4th of January 1774. The land, in general, is level. The mountains end about five leagues from the low point, leaving a great extent of low land, whereon mount Campbell is situated. These mountains seem to be composed of naked rocks, whose summits are covered with snow; and in the vallies sterility only is visible. When we had finished taking our meridian altitudes, we discovered more land, opening off the low point just mentioned, in the direction of S. S. E. and eight miles beyond it. It proved to be the eastern extremity of this land, and we named it Cape Digby. It lies in latitude 49 deg. 23 min. S. and in 70 deg. 34 min. E. longitude. Between Howe's Foreland and Cape Digby, the shore forms one great bay, extending several leagues to the S. W. A prodigious quantity of sea weed grows over it, which seemed to be such as Mr. Banks distinguished by the name of *Fucus giganteus*. Though the stem of this weed is not much thicker than a man's thumb, some of it grows to the amazing length of 60 fathoms. Having run two leagues upon a S. E. half E. course, at one o'clock P. M. we found it, and had 18 fathoms water, with a bottom of fine sand. Observing a small bending in the coast, we steered for it, with an intention to anchor there; but being disappointed in our views, we pushed forward, in order to see as much as possible of the coast before night. From Cape Digby it trends nearly S. W. by S. to a low point, which we named Point Charlotte, in honour of the Queen. In the direction of S. S. W. about six leagues from Cape Digby is a pretty high projecting point, which we called the Prince of Wales's Foreland; and six leagues beyond that, in latitude 49 deg. 54 min. S. longitude 70 deg. 13 min. E. is the most southerly point of the whole coast, to which, in honour of his present Majesty, we gave the name of Cape George. Between Point Charlotte, and the Foreland, we discovered a deep inlet, which was named Royal Sound, into which, on the S. W. side of the Prince of Wales's Foreland, we saw another inlet; and it then appeared, that the Foreland was the E. point of a large island lying in the mouth of it. There are several small islands in this inlet; and one about a league to the southward of the above mentioned Foreland. On the S. W. side of the Royal Sound, all the land to Cape George consists of elevated hills, gradually rising from the sea to a considerable height, having their summits caped with snow, and appearing as barren, as those we had hitherto seen. Neither inland, nor on the coast, could we discern the smallest

having landed on
without a tree or
verdure.
weather favouring
and put out to sea.
name was given of
Sir Hugh Palliser.
N. long. 69 deg.
Howe's Foreland;
E. When stand-
like a sugar loaf,
ant about 9 leagues;
but we afterwards
getting out to sea,
winding channels
ventured to run
and less than 18 fathoms.
ve been discovered,
rowing upon them.
from the coast, we
nine o'clock A.M.
above mentioned,
bore S. E. and a
it, S. S. E. distant
fourtherly, in order
ve observed in latitude
Cape François 83
47 deg. W. distant
the distance of about
re than two leagues
coast seems to be
January 1774. The
mountains end about
ving a great extent
ppbell is situated.
imposed of naked
with snow; and in
When we had
les, we discovered
nt just mentioned,
it miles beyond it.
y of this land, and
latitude 49 deg. 23
longitude. Between
the shore forms one
to the S. W. A
ows over it, which
distinguished by the
stem of this weed
thumb, some of it
fathoms. Having
P. court, at one
18 fathoms water,
ing a small bending
on intention to an-
in our views, we
uch as possible of
e Digby it trends
which we named
Queen. In the di-
from Cape Digby
which we called
ix leagues beyond
gitude 70 deg. 13
of the whole coast,
Majesty, we gave
n Point Charlotte,
deep inlet, which
on the S. W. side
we saw another in-
Foreland was the
the mouth of it.
is inlet; and one
above mentioned
Royal Sound, all
levated hills, gra-
vable height, hav-
and appearing as
en. Neither in-
scern the smallest
vestige

vestige of a tree or shrub: but some of the low land about Cape Digby, though for the most part desolate, seemed to be clothed with a green turf. On the sandy beaches penguins and other sea fowls were numerous; and flags kept continually flying about the ships. In order to get the length of Cape George, we continued stretching to the S. under all the fail we could carry, till between seven and eight o'clock, when seeing no probability of accomplishing our design, we took advantage of the wind, which had shifted to W. S. W. (the direction, in which we wanted to go) and flood away from the coast. Cape George now bore S. 53 deg. W. distant 7 leagues. We saw no land to the S. of it, except a small island that lies off the pitch of the Cape; and a S. W. swell, which we met when we brought the capot to bear in this direction, confirmed us in the opinion, that there was no more in that quarter. But, to use captain Cook's own words, "We have, says he, still a stronger proof, that no part of this land can extend much, if at all, to the southward of Cape George; and that is, captain Furneaux's track in February 1773, after his separation from me during my late voyage. His log-book is now lying before me; and I find from it, that he crossed the meridian of this land only about 17 leagues to the southward of Cape George; a distance at which it may very well be seen in clear weather. This seems to have been the case when captain Furneaux passed it. For his log-book makes no mention of fogs or hazy weather; on the contrary, it expressly tells us, that, when in this situation, they had it in their power to make observations, both for latitude and longitude, on board his ship; so that, if this land extends farther S. than Cape George, it would have been scarcely possible that he should have passed without seeing it. From these circumstances we are able to determine, within a very few miles, the quantity of latitude that this land occupies, which does not much exceed one degree and a quarter. As to its extent from E. to W. that still remains undecided. We only know, that no part of it can reach so far to the W. as the meridian of 65 deg. because in 1773 I searched for it in vain." But we think it necessary to remark here, that if the French observations, as marked upon captain Cook's chart, and still more authentically upon that published by their own discoverers, may be depended upon, this land doth not reach so far to the W. as the meridian of 68 deg. Cape Louis, which is represented as its most westerly point, being laid down by them to the E. of that meridian.

Thus an idea of a southern continent adopted by M. de Kerguelen, vanished before the accurate researches of captain Cook. Even Kerguelen himself, in consequence of these, thinks very differently. This appears from an explicit declaration of his sentiments, in his late publication, which does equal honour to his candour and to captain Cook's abilities. It must be confessed M. de Kerguelen was peculiarly unfortunate, in having done so little to complete what he had begun. He discovered, it is true, a new land; but, in two expeditions to it, he could not once bring his ships to an anchor upon any part of its coasts; we cannot but conclude, therefore, that our brave commander had either fewer difficulties to struggle with, or was more successful in surmounting them. The French discoverers imagined Cape François to be the projecting point of a southern continent. The English have discovered that no such continent exists, and that the land in question is an island of small extent, which, from its sterility, might properly be called the island of Desolation; but captain Cook was unwilling to rob Monsieur de Kerguelen of the honour of its bearing his name. Which is more than can be said of his own countrymen: for even M. de Pages never once mentions the name of his commander. And, though he takes occasion to enumerate the several French explorers of the southern hemisphere, from Gonneville down to Crozet, he affects to preserve an entire silence about Kerguelen, whose first voyage, in which the discovery of this considerable tract of land was made, is kept as much out of sight, as if it had never taken place. Nay, not satisfied with refusing to

acknowledge the right of another, he almost assumes it to himself. For upon a map of the world, annexed to his book, at the spot where the new land is delineated, he tells us, that it was seen by M. de Pages; in 1774. He could scarcely have expressed himself in stronger terms, if he had meant to convey an idea, that he was the conductor of the discovery. And yet we know, that he was only a lieutenant, on board one of the ships commanded by Kerguelen; and that the discovery had been made in a former voyage; undertaken while he was actually engaged in his singular journey round the world. We now take leave of Kerguelen's land; and captain Cook, pursuant to his instructions, intended to proceed next to New Zealand, to take in wood and water, and provide hay for the cattle; their number by this time, having been considerably diminished; for while exploring Kerguelen's desolate land; we lost by death two young bulls, one of the heifers, two rams, and several of the goats. On Tuesday, the 31st in the morning, by observations of the sun and moon, we found our longitude to be 72 deg. 33 min. 36 sec. E. and by these observations we were assured no material errors occasioned by our time-keeper, had crept into our reckoning.

On Wednesday the 1st of January, we A. D. 1777. were in latitude 48 deg. 41 min. S. longitude 76 deg. 50 min. E. when we observed quantities of seaweed passing to leeward, in a direction contrary to that we had seen in approaching the last mentioned islands, which gave reason to suppose, there were other lands at no great distance, and affords some ground for believing, that M. de Kerguelen might have seen other lands in this latitude. On the 3d, in latitude 48 deg. 16 min. S. longitude 85 deg. E. we had the weather tolerably clear, with fresh gales from the W. and S. W. but now the wind veered to the N. and continued in that quarter eight days, during which, though there was at the same time a thick fog, we run upwards of 300 leagues, chiefly in the dark; the sun, indeed, sometimes made its appearance, but very rarely, and but for a very short time. On the 7th, a boat was dispatched with orders to captain Clerke, fixing our rendezvous at Adventure Bay, in Van Diemen's land, should the two ships happen to separate before they arrived there; however, we had the good fortune not to lose company with each other. On Sunday the 12th, the northerly winds were succeeded by a calm, which was soon followed by a southerly wind. Our latitude was now 48 deg. 40 min. S. longitude 110 deg. 26 min. E. The wind blew from the S. for 24 hours, and then veering to the W. and N. W. brought on clear and fair weather. We continued our course eastward, and on Tuesday the 14th, a hurricane arose, accompanied with so thick a fog, that the ships were every moment in danger of falling foul one of the other. We kept the fog bell constantly ringing, and guns firing, which were answered by the Discovery. On Sunday the 19th, a sudden squall carried away our fore-top-mast, and main-top-gallant-mast, which took us up the whole day to clear the wreck, and to fit another top-mast. Not having a spare main-top-gallant mast on board, the fore-top-gallant-mast was converted into one for our immediate use. On the 20th, the weather brightened up, the wind continued westerly, and we had a brisk but moderate gale in the afternoon, when we set all the sails we could, unreced our top-sails, and run at the rate of seven and eight miles an hour by the log, both ships in company. On the 22d Mr. King went on board the Discovery to compare the time-pieces. At this time our company were in perfect health, those of the crew only excepted, who had been hurt at the cape, and even they were fit to do duty. The damages we had received during the blowing weather were not considerable as might have been expected.

On Friday the 24th, at three o'clock, A. M. we discovered the coast of Van Diemen's land, bearing N. W. half W. The Mewstone so named by captain Furneaux, in 1773, bore N. E. by E. distant 3 leagues. We made the signal for seeing land, which was answered by the Discovery. Several islands and high rocks

rocks are strewed along this part of the coast, the southernmost of which is Mewstone, a round elevated rock, five or six leagues distant from the S. W. cape, in the direction of S. 55 deg. E. Our latitude, at noon, 43 deg. 47 min. S. longitude 147 deg. E. in which situation a round topped hill bore N. 17 deg. W. the S. W. cape N. 74 deg. W. the Mewstone W. half N. Swilly Isle or Rock S. 49 deg. and the S. E. or S. Cape, N. 40 deg. E. distant near 3 leagues. The land between the S. W. and the South Capes is broken and hilly, the coast winding, with points shooting out from it; but we were at too great a distance, to be able to judge whether the bays formed by these points were sheltered from the sea winds. The bay which appeared to be the largest and deepest, lies to the westward of the elevated peaked hill above mentioned. On the 25th, at six o'clock A. M. we sounded and found ground at 60 fathoms, sand and shelly bottom. The South Cape then bore N. 75 deg. W. two leagues distant: Tasman's head N. E. and Swilly Rock S. by W. half W. To a rock, on account of its striking resemblance to Eddy-stone light-house, captain Cook gave the name of the Eddy-stone; this, which had not been noticed by captain Furneaux, lies about a league to the eastward of Swilly Rock. Nature seems to have left these two rocks here, for the same purpose that the light-house was erected by man, namely, to remind navigators of the dangers that surround them; for they may be seen, even in the night, at a considerable distance; their surface being white with the dung of sea fowls. They are the summits of a ledge of rocks under water, whereon the sea breaks, in many places, very high. On the N. E. side of Storm Bay, which lies between the South Cape and Tasman's Head, are some creeks, pretty well sheltered; and if this coast was carefully examined, some good harbours would most probably be found. Soon after we had sight of land the westerly winds left us, and were succeeded by light airs, and alternate calms; but

Sunday the 26th at noon, a breeze sprung up at S. E. which afforded captain Cook an opportunity of executing his design of carrying the ships into Adventure Bay, where we expected to procure a fresh supply of wood and grass; of both which articles we should have been in great want, had we waited till our arrival in New Zealand. We therefore stood for the bay; wherein we came to an anchor, at four o'clock, P. M. in 12 fathoms water, not quite a mile from the shore. No sooner were the ships properly secured, than the pinace was ordered to be launched, the boats to be manned, and all hands set to work to overhaul the rigging, and get every thing in readiness to continue our course. The officers, astronomers, and gentlemen, on board both ships, eagerly embraced the opportunity of going ashore to take a view of the country, with which all on board were highly pleased. The first thing that attracted our notice were the trees, that by their magnitude and loftiness exceeded every thing we had ever seen of the kind: but what was remarkable, we found many of them burnt near the ground, and not a few lying in a horizontal position, which, being much scorched, had been thrown down by the violence of the wind. The captains Cook and Clerke went, in separate boats, in search of convenient spots for wooding and watering, and making hay. They found plenty of wood and water, but very little grass.

Monday the 27th, lieutenant King was dispatched to the E. side of the bay, with two parties, under the protection of some marines; one to cut wood, and the other to cut grass. For although, as yet, none of the natives had appeared, there could be no doubt that some were in the neighbourhood, as we had perceived columns of smoke, from the time of our approaching the coast; and some now were observed, at no great distance, up in the woods. The launch was likewise sent for water; and in the evening having drawn the seine, we caught, at one haul, a great quantity of fish; most of which were of that sort, known to seamen by the name of elephant fish. The Captain this day visited all the parties that had been sent ashore; and the

next the 28th, accompanied by several gentlemen, and guarded by a party of marines, he made a second excursion into the country, in order to make discoveries, and to procure, if possible, an interview with some of the inhabitants. They penetrated some miles through paths that seemed to have been frequented, before they could get sight of any human being, till, at length, passing by the edge of an almost impenetrable thicket, they heard a rustling, which, at first, they mistook for the rustling of a wild beast; but searching closely, they found a girl quite naked and alone. At first she seemed much terrified; but being kindly treated, and her apprehensions of death removed, she became docile, and ready to answer every thing we could render intelligible to her understanding. We questioned her concerning her residence, which we did by pointing to every beaten path, walking a little way in it, and then returning and taking another, making motions to her, at the same time, to lead us along, and we would follow her. To make her perfectly easy, one of our company pulled off his handkerchief, and put it about her neck by way of ornament, and another covered her head with his cap, and then she was dismissed. She ran among the bushes, and, in less than an hour, eight men and a boy made their appearance. They approached us without betraying any marks of fear, or rather with the greatest confidence imaginable; none of them having any weapons, except one, who held in his hand a stick about two feet long, and pointed at one end. They were quite naked, and wore no ornaments, unless we consider as such, some large punctures in different parts of their bodies, some in straight, and others in curved lines. The men were of the middle stature, but rather slender. Their skin and hair were black; and the latter as woolly as that of any native of Guinea; but they were not distinguished by remarkable thick lips, nor flat noses. On the contrary, their features were far from being disagreeable. They had pretty good eyes; and their teeth were tolerable even, but very dirty. Most of them had their hair and beards smeared with a red ointment, and some had also their faces painted with the same composition. These were all kindly treated by our company; but they received every present we made them, without any apparent satisfaction. When some bread was offered them, as soon as they understood it was to be eaten, they either returned, or threw it away, without tasting it. Some elephant fish, both raw, and dressed, they likewise refused; but some birds, we gave them, these they did not return, and easily made us comprehend that they were fond of such food. Two pigs having been brought on shore, to be left in the woods, they seized them by the ears, and seemed inclined to carry them off, with an intention, as we supposed, of killing them. Captain Cook, wishing to know the use of the stick which one of our visitors held in his hand, made signs expressing his desire to be gratified in this particular; upon which one of them took aim at a piece of wood set up at the distance of twenty yards; but after several essays he was still wide of the mark. Omiah, to shew the great superiority of our weapons, immediately fired his musquet at it, the report of which so alarmed them, that they took flight, and vanished in an instant. On our return we found they had been at the place at which the crew of the Discovery were watering; and an officer of that party firing also a musquet in the air, they ran into the woods with uncommon precipitation. Soon after these had fled from us with uncommon speed, the girl we had first seen returned, and with her came several women, some with children on their backs, and some without children. The former wore a kangaroo skin fastened over their shoulders, the only use of which seemed to be, to support their children on their backs, for it left those parts uncovered which modesty directs us to conceal. Their bodies were black, and marked with scars like those of the men, from whom, however, they differed, in having their heads shaved; some of them being completely shorn, others only on one side, while the rest of them had the upper part of their heads shaved, leaving a very narrow circle of hair all round. They were far

from

eral gentlemen, and
made a second ex-
to make discoveries,
rview with some of
some miles through
quented, before they
ing, till, at length,
penetrable thicker,
first, they mistook
t searching closely,
nd alone. At first
ing kindly treated,
removed, she be-
er every thing we
nderstanding. We
lence, which we did
walking a little way
ng another, making
b lead us along, and
perfectly easy, one
dkerchief, and put
ent, and another co-
n she was dismissed.
n less than an hour,
pearance. They ap-
y marks of fear, or
maginable; none of
one, who held in his
and pointed at one
wore no ornaments,
ge punctures in dis-
it straight, and others
the middle stature,
d hair were black;
y native of Guinea;
y remarkable thick
ary, their features
They had pretty
able even, but very
nd beards smeared
ad also their faces
t. These were all
they received every
apparent satisfac-
ed them, as soon as
ey either returned,
t. Some elephant
wife refused; but
ey did not return,
t they were fond of
rought on shore, to
m by the ears, and
with an intention,
prain Cook, with-
ich one of our vi-
pressing his desire
pon which one of
up at the distance
llays he was still
w the great supe-
fired his musquet
d them, that they
t. On our return
at which the crew
d an officer of that
they ran into the
t. Soon after these
d, the girl we had
se several women,
nd some without
oroo skin fastened
nich seemed to be,
ks, for it left those
ts us to conceal.
th scars like those
y differed, in hav-
being completely
the rest of them
aved, leaving a
They were far
from



(*Young* SEA OTTER found off the NORTH WEST COAST of AMERICA.



(*In* OPOSSUM, a Quadruped of VAN DIEMEN'S LAND.



(*White* BEAR found in the PACIFIC OCEAN near ICY CAPE.

from being handsome; however, some of our gentlemen paid their addresses to them, but without effect. These were also kindly received, and conducted to the place where the wooders were at work, with whom it was not long before they were acquainted. They were, however, miserable objects; and Omiah, though led by natural impulse to an inordinate desire for women, was so disgusted with them, that he fired his piece off to frighten them from his sight, which for that time had the desired effect. That the gallantry of some of our people was not very agreeable to the men, is certain; for an elderly man as soon as he observed it, ordered the women and children to retire, which they all did, but some with a little reluctance. When the several parties of our visitors had fled, and retired, captain Cook ordered the two pigs, one male and the other female, to be carried about a mile within the woods, and he himself saw them left there, taking care that none of the natives should observe what was passing. He also intended to have left a young bull and a cow, besides some goats and sheep; but he soon relinquished that design, being of opinion the natives would destroy them; which he supposed would be the fate of the pigs, if they should chance to find them out: but as swine soon become wild, and are fond of being in the woods, it is probable that they were preserved. The other cattle could not have remained long concealed from the natives, as they must have been put in an open place.

Wednesday the 29th, we were prevented from sailing by a dead calm, which continued the whole day. Parties were therefore sent on shore to cut wood and grass, as usual; and Captain Cook accompanied the wood-cutters himself. At the same time our gentlemen, with lieutenant King, and other officers belonging to both ships, extended their excursions still farther into the country, and found it beautifully diversified with hills and vallies, stately groves of trees, rivers, meadows, and lawns of vast extent, with thickets full of birds of the most beautiful plumage, and of various notes, whose melody was truly enchanting. Here were lagoons full of ducks, teal, and other wild fowl, of which great numbers were shot; while our naturalists were loading themselves with the spontaneous productions of the soil; a soil we may venture to say, the richest and most fertile of any in the habitable globe, the trees growing to an astonishing height and size, not less beautiful to the eye than grateful to the sense of smelling. It was now the time when nature pours forth her luxuriant exuberance to cloath this country with a rich variety; but, what appeared strange to every observer, the few natives we saw were wholly insensible of those blessings, and seemed to live like the beasts of the forest in roving parties, without arts of any kind, sleeping in summer like dogs, under the hollow sides of the trees, or in the watted huts made with the low branches of ever-green shrubs, stuck in the ground at small distances from each other, and meeting together at the top.

We had, in the morning, observed several of the natives sauntering along the shore, from which we concluded, that, though their consternation had made them leave us rather abruptly the preceding day, they thought we intended them no mischief, and were desirous of renewing the intercourse. Of this we were soon convinced; for we had not been long landed before 20 of them, men and boys, joined us, without expressing the least sign of fear or distrust; one of whom was distinguished not only by his deformity, but by the drollery of his gesticulations, and the seeming humour of his speeches, though we could only guess at their general import, the language spoken here being wholly unintelligible to us. Our Commander thought this to be different from that spoken by the inhabitants of the more northern parts of this country, whom he met with in his first voyage; which is not extraordinary, since those we now saw, and those we then visited, differ in several respects; particularly with regard to the texture of their hair. The natives whom the Captain met with at Endeavour River in 1769, are

No. 52.

said, by him, "to have naturally long and black hair, though it be universally cropped short. In general it is straight; but sometimes it has a slight curl. We saw none that was not matted and filthy. Their beards were of the same colour: with the hair, and bushy and thick." At this time captain Cook was unwilling to allow that the hair of the natives we now saw in Adventure Bay was woolly, fancying that his people, who first observed this, had been deceived, from its being clotted with grease and red ochre. But Lieutenant King prevailed on him afterwards, to examine carefully the hair of the boys, which was generally, as well as that of the women, free from this dirt; and then the captain owned himself satisfied, that it was naturally woolly. Perhaps this circumstance was the occasion of his being deceived, when he was in Endeavour River, for he says expressly, "they saw none that was not matted and filthy." Some of our present visitors had a slip of kangaroo skin round their ancles; and others wore round their necks three or four folds of small cord, made of the fur of some animal. They seemed not to value iron, but were apparently pleased with the medals and strings of beads that were given them. They did not seem even to know the use of fish-hooks, though it is more than probable, that they were acquainted with some method of catching fish, which would naturally be adopted by those who inhabit a sea-coast, and who derive no part of their sustenance from the productions of the ground. They rejected the sort of fish we offered them, yet it was evident, that shell-fish, at least, made a part of their food, from the heaps of muscle-shells we saw near the shore, and about the usual places of their resort. Their wigwams, or habitations, were small hovels or sheds, built of sticks, and covered with the bark of a tree. We had good reason to suppose, that they sometimes took up their residence in the trunks of large trees, hollowed out by fire. In or near their huts, and wherever there was a heap of shells, there we perceived the remains of fire; an indubitable proof that they do not eat their food raw. Nor do they seem such miserable wretches as the natives whom Dampier mentions to have seen on its western coast. Yet, we must here observe, that Dampier's miserable wretches, on the western coast of New Holland, in many instances, bear a striking resemblance to those seen by captain Cook at Van Diemen's Land: as (1st.) Their soon becoming familiar with strangers. (2nd.) As to their persons; being straight of stature and thin; their skin thick and black; their hair black, short, and curled, like those of the negroes of Guinea; with wide mouth. (3dly.) As to their mean condition; having no houses, no garments, no canoes, no instrument to catch large fish; feeding on broiled muscles, cockles, and periwinkles; having no fruits of the earth; their weapons a straight pole, sharpened and hardened at the end, &c. But the chief peculiarities of Dampier's New Hollanders, on account of which they are improperly called miserable wretches, are, (1st.) Their eye-lids being always half closed, to keep the flies out, which were exceedingly troublesome there; and (2ndly.) Their wanting the two fore-teeth of the upper jaw, and having no beards.

When the party with lieutenant King, with whom was Mr. Anderson, captain Cook's surgeon, had landed, the natives appeared divested of their fears, and issued from the thickets like herds of deer from a forest. They were armed with lances about two feet long, terminated with a shark's tooth or piece of bone sharpened to a point, which they threw to a great distance, and these were the whole of their armour. Some women and children were introduced to Mr. King, to whom he gave presents of such trifles as he had about him. He also offered all of them nails, knives, beads, and other toys, to which they paid little or no attention, but were greedy after shreds of red cloth: Mr. Anderson having, with his usual diligence, spent the few days we continued in Adventure Bay, in examining the natural productions of the country and its inhabitants, we shall here insert the substance of his remarks; and we doubt not but that the observations of this in-

5 P

genious

AMERICA.

ND.

RY CAPE.

genous gentleman, will, by the curious part of our readers, always be thought worth attending to. There is, observes Mr. Anderson, a beautiful sandy beach, about two miles long, at the bottom of Adventure Bay, formed, to all appearance, by the particles which the sea washes from a white sand stone, that in many places bounds the shore. This beach, about two miles long, is well adapted for hauling the seine. Behind it is a plain, with a brackish lake, out of which we caught, by angling, some whitish bream, and small trout. The parts adjoining the bay are mostly hilly; and both these and the flat are adorned with one continued forest of tall trees, rendered almost impassable to strangers, by breaks of fern, shrubs, and fallen trees: but on the sides of some of the hills, where the trees are thin, the only interruption is a coarse grass. Northward of the bay is low land, stretching farther than the eye can reach, covered only with wood in certain spots; but an opportunity was not afforded us of examining in what peculiarities it differed from the hilly country. The soil on the flat land, and on the lower part of the hills is sandy, or consists of a yellowish earth, and in some parts of a reddish clay; but farther up the hills, it is of a grey tough cast, and appeared to be very poor. Between the hills, the water drains down from their sides, forming at last small brooks, sufficient to supply us with water: yet, upon the whole, this country bears many marks of being dry; and, setting aside its wood, might be compared to Africa, about the Cape of Good Hope, (though that lies 10 degrees farther northward) rather than to New Zealand, on its other side, in the same latitude, where every valley, however small, is furnished with a considerable stream of water. We found the heat here excessive; inasmuch, that birds were seldom killed an hour or two, before they were almost covered with maggots. No mineral bodies, nor stones of any other kind than the white sand stone, were observed by us; nor could we find any vegetables that afforded the smallest subsistence for men. The forest trees are all of one kind, and generally straight; branching but little till towards the top. The bark is white, which makes them appear at a distance, as if they had been peeled. The leaves of this tree are long, narrow, and pointed; and it bears clusters of white small flowers, whose cups were, at this time, plentifully scattered about the ground, with another sort resembling them somewhat in shape, but much larger; which makes it probable that there are two species of this tree. The bark of the smaller branches, fruit, and leaves, have an agreeable pungent taste, and aromatic smell, not unlike peppermint. The next tree observed was a small one, about 10 feet high, branching pretty much, with narrow leaves, and a large, yellow, cylindrical flower, consisting only of a vast number of filaments; which, being shed, leave a fruit like a pine-top. Both these trees are unknown in Europe. Of plants, by no means numerous, we found a species of gladiolus, ruth, bell-flower, samphire, wood-forrel, milk-wort, cud-weed, Job's tears, mosses, and several kinds of fern; but the species are either common, or, at least, found in some other countries, particularly New Zealand. The only quadruped we saw distinctly was a species of opossum, about twice the size of a large rat; of a dusky colour above, tinged with a brown or rusty cast, and whitish below. About the third of the tail, towards its tip, is white, and bare underneath; by which it probably hangs on the branches of trees, as it climbs these, and lives on berries. The kangaroo, found further northward in New Holland, may also be supposed to inhabit here, as some of the natives had pieces of the skin of that animal. From the dung we saw almost every where, and from the narrow tracks perceived among the shrubbery, it should seem also, that they are in considerable numbers. The principal sorts of birds are brown hawks or eagles, crows, large pigeons, yellowish paroquets, and a species which we called *motacilla cyanea*, from the beautiful azure colour of its neck and head. On the shore were several gulls, black oyster-catchers, or sea-pies, and plovers of a stone colour. These birds are all so scarce and shy, that they must have been

harrassed by the natives, who, perhaps, obtain much of their subsistence from them. About the lake behind the beach, a few wild ducks were seen, and some shags used to perch upon the high leafless trees near the shore. We observed in the woods some blackish snakes; and we killed an unknown large lizard, 15 inches long, and six round, beautifully clouded with black and yellow. The sea affords a much greater plenty, and, at least, as great a variety as the land. Among a variety of fish we caught rays, nurfes, leather jackets, bream, soles, flounders, gurnards, small spotted mullets, a little fish with a silver band on its side, and elephant fishes, which last are the most numerous, and, though inferior to many others, are very palatable food. The next in number, and superior in goodness, is a sort none of us recollected to have seen before. It partakes of the nature both of a round and flat fish, having the eyes placed very near each other, the fore part of the body much flattened or depressed, and the rest rounded. It is of a brownish sandy colour, with rusty spots on the upper part, and whitish below. From the quantity of slime it was always covered with, it seems to live after the manner of flat fish, at the bottom. On the rocks are plenty of mussels, and other small shell-fish: also great numbers of sea-stars, small limpets, and large quantities of sponge, one sort of which, that is thrown on the sea-shore, but not very common, has a most delicate texture. Upon the beach were found many pretty Medusa's-heads; and the stinking sea-hare, which, as mentioned by some authors, has the property of taking off the hair by the acrimony of its juice; but the sort we examined, was delicate in this respect. The insects, though few, are here in considerable variety; such as grass-hoppers, butterflies; and several sorts of moths, finely variegated. Here are two sorts of dragon-flies, gad, and camel-flies; several sorts of spiders; and some scorpions; the last are rare. But the most troublesome, though less numerous tribe of insects, are the musquitoes; and a large black ant, the pain of whose bite is almost intolerable, during the short time it lasts.

The inhabitants, with whom we were conversant, seemed mild and cheerful, with little of that savage appearance, common to people in their situation; nor did they discover the least reserve, or jealousy, in their intercourse with strangers. With respect to personal activity or genius, they discovered little of either: as to the last, they have, to appearance, less than the half-activated natives of Terra del Fuego, who have not invention sufficient to make clothing; for defending themselves from the rigour of their climate, though furnished with materials. They display, however, some contrivance, in the manner of cutting their arms and bodies in lines of different directions, raised above the surface of the skin. Their indifference for our presents, their general inattention, and want of curiosity, were very remarkable, and testified no acuteness of understanding. Their complexion is a dull black, which they sometimes heighten, as we supposed, by smutting their bodies; for a mark was left behind on any clean substance, when they handled it. Their hair is perfectly woolly, and is clotted with grease and red ochre, like that of the Hottentots. Their noses, though not flat, are broad and full, as is the case with most Indians; and the lower part of the face projects considerably. Their eyes are of a moderate size, and though not very quick or piercing, they give the countenance a frank, cheerful, and pleasing cast. Their teeth are broad, but not equal, nor well set; and either from nature, or from dirt, not of so clear a white as is usual among people of a black colour. Their mouths are rather wide; but this appearance may be heightened, by wearing their beards long, and clotted with paint, in the same manner as the hair on their heads. Upon the whole, they are well proportioned, though the belly is rather protuberant. Their favourite attitude is to stand with one side forward, and one hand grasping, across the back, the opposite arm, which, on this occasion, hangs down by the side that projects. What the poets tell us of Fawns and Satyrs dwelling in woods

and hollow trees, is here realized. Near the shore in the bay we saw some wretched constructions of sticks, covered with bark, which like the wigwams of the Indians, seemed to have been only temporary abodes. Many of their largest trees were converted into more durable habitations. The trunks of these were hollowed out, to the height of six or seven feet, by means of fire. That they sometimes dwell in them, was evident, from their having hearths in the middle made of clay, round which four or five persons might sit. These places of shelter are permanent; for they leave one side of the tree sound, so that it continues growing with great luxuriance. It does not appear that these people are cannibals, or, indeed, that they feed upon flesh, as no appearance of any such food could be traced among them. Fish, fruit, and the natural productions of the earth, were the only articles of food, that we saw about their fire-places; but, what was still more strange, there was neither canoe nor boat to be seen, though the country abounds with such excellent trees. One might be apt to think, that these natives are a sort of fugitives, who have been driven to subsist here in a state of banishment; but that they originate from the same stock with those who inhabit the northern parts of New Holland is highly probable; and though they differ in many respects, their dissimilarity may be reasonably accounted for, from the united considerations of distance of place, length of time, total separation, and diversity of climate. These will account for greater differences, both as to the persons, and as to the customs of different people, than really exist between our Van Diemen's land natives, and those described by Dampier, and in captain Cook's first voyage. This is certain, that the figure of one of those seen in Endeavour river, and represented in a journal of that voyage, (now before us) very much resembles our visitors in Adventure Bay. That there is not the like resemblance in their languages, is a circumstance that need not create any difficulty: for though the agreement of languages of people living distant from each other, may be assumed as a strong argument for their having sprung from one common source, disagreement of language is by no means a proof of the contrary; and we must have a more intimate acquaintance with the languages spoken here, and in the more northern part of New Holland, before we can be warranted to pronounce that they are totally different. Nay, we have good grounds for the contrary opinion; for we found, that the animal called kangaroo, at Endeavour river, was known under the same name here, and we need not observe, that it is scarcely possible to suppose, that this was not transmitted from one another, but accidentally adopted by two nations, differing in language and extraction. Besides, as it seems very improbable, that the inhabitants of Van Diemen's land should ever have lost the use of canoes or sailing vessels, if they had been originally conveyed hither by sea, we must necessarily admit that they, as well as the kangaroo itself, have been stragglers by land from the more northern parts of the country. If there is any weight in this remark of Mr. Anderson's, it will, while it traces the origin of the people, at the same time, serve to fix another point, (if captain Cook and captain Furneaux have not decided it already) namely, that New Holland is no where totally divided from the sea into islands; and Dampier, we find, was of this opinion. As the inhabitants of New Holland seem all to be of the same extraction, there is nothing peculiar in any of them: on the contrary, they much resemble many of the savages whom we have seen in the islands of Tanna and Manicoua. There is even some reason for supposing, that they may originally have come from the same place with all the natives of the Pacific Ocean; for of about ten words we found means to get from them, that which is used to express cold, is very similar to that of New Zealand and Otaheite; the first, or Van Diemen's land, being mallareede, the second makka'reede, and the third mar'reede. Upon a diligent enquiry, and an accurate comparison drawn from the affinity of languages, concludes our curious observer, it will probably be found, that all the people

from New Holland, eastward to Easter island, have been derived from the same common root. The sentiments of our surgeon, on this subject, are conformable to, and coincide with those of Mr. Marsden, in his history of Sumatra, who observes, "That one general language prevailed, (however mutilated and changed in the course of time,) throughout all this portion of the world, from Madagascar to the most distant discoveries eastward; of which the Malay is a dialect, much corrupted or refined by a mixture of tongues. This very extensive similarity of language indicates a common origin of the inhabitants; but the circumstances and progress of their separation are wrapped in the darkest veil of obscurity."

In the afternoon captain Cook went again on shore, and found the grass cutters on Penguin island, where they had met with a plentiful crop of excellent grass. We laboured hard till the evening, and then having provided a sufficient quantity of what was most wanted, returned on board. In the course of this day captain Cook presented many of the natives with medals, inscribed with the names of the ships and the commanders, with the date of the year, and that of his Majesty's reign, in order to perpetuate the memory of this voyage, provided any future European adventurer, prompted by curiosity, should think fit to revisit these remote parts of the southern hemisphere. During our continuance on this coast, all hands were employed in wooding, watering, over-hauling the rigging, and getting every thing in readiness to continue our voyage; and having had either light airs from the E. or calms, little or no time was probably lost by our staying here a few days. Our fishermen also were no less successful in fishing, during our stay, than our fowlers in shooting wild fowl; inasmuch, that nothing was wanting to make our living here delicious.

This land was discovered in November 1642, by Tasman, who gave it the name of Van Diemen's Land. Captain Furneaux touched at it in March 1773. It is the southern point of New Holland, which is by far the largest island in the known world, and might well be taken for, though it does not deserve the name of, a continent. The land is diversified with hills and valleys, and is well wooded. Here is likewise plenty of water. The best, or what is most convenient for shipping, is a rivulet, which is one of several that fall into a small lake, or pond, that lies behind the beach at the head of the bay. It there mixes with the sea water; so that it must be taken up above this pond, which may be done without any great trouble. The bay upon the whole may be considered as a safe road; for the only wind to which it is exposed is the N. E. and as this blows from Maria's islands, it can bring no very great sea along with it. The bottom is clean, good holding ground; and the depth of water from 12 to 4 fathoms. The longitude of Adventure Bay was determined by a great number of lunar observations, and was found to be 147 deg. 29 min. E. Its latitude is 43 deg. 21 min. 20 sec. S. We shall conclude the history of this day, the 29th of January, with a remark of captain Cook's, respecting the conduct of Europeans amongst Savages to their women, which the Captain thinks, "is highly blameable; as it creates a jealousy in their men, that may be attended with consequences fatal to the success of the common enterprise, and to the whole body of adventurers, without advancing the private purpose of the individual, or enabling him to gain the object of his wishes. I believe it has been generally found among uncivilized people, that where the women are easy of access, the men are the first to offer them to strangers; and that, where this is not the case, neither the allurements of presents, nor the opportunity of privacy, will be likely to have the desired effect. This observation, I am sure, will hold good, throughout all the parts of the South Sea where I have been. Why then should men act so absurd a part, as to risk their own safety, and that of all their companions, in pursuit of a gratification which they have no probability of obtaining;" and, which if obtained, we may add, is not only breaking a divine command, but contrary to an indispensable obligation,

gation, of doing as we wish, in like circumstances, to be done unto.

On the 30th, having got plenty of wood and water on board, and whatever else the country afforded, the signal was made for unmooring; and, a light westerly breeze springing up, at eight o'clock A.M. we weighed anchor, and took our departure from Adventure Bay. By ten we had put to sea, and both ships were under sail; soon after which, the wind became southerly and produced a perfect storm; but veering in the evening to the E. and N. E. its fury began to abate. This gale was attended with an almost intolerable

heat, which, however, was of so short a continuance, that some of our company did not perceive it. In the night, between the 6th and 7th of February, a marine belonging to the Discovery fell over-board, and was drowned, which was the second misfortune of the kind her crew had experienced since her departure from England. We held on our direct course for New Zealand; and on Monday, the 10th, we descried Rock's Point, which bore S. E. by S. about eight or nine leagues distant: upon which we steered for Cape Farewell and Stephens's Island.

C H A P. III.

The Resolution and Discovery, having arrived at New Zealand, anchor in their old station in Queen Charlotte's Sound—Their actions there, and intercourse with the New Zealanders.—Information gained from the natives with regard to the misfortune of the Adventure's boat's crew—Two violent storms.—An account of Kaboro, who beheaded the party that killed our people—Two youths embark on board the Resolution to attend Omiah—Historical, critical, and nautical observations.—The adjacent country of Queen Charlotte's Sound described.—The soil, plants, animals, &c.—A description of the persons and customs of the inhabitants.—Their dress, ornaments, buildings, arts, canoes, boats, weapons, &c.—Their brutal cruelty to their enemies, when prisoners, whose bodies they mangle and cut.—Extract from a vocabulary of their language.

HAVING made the land of New Zealand, we steered for Cape Farewell, which, on Tuesday the 11th, at day-break, bore S. by W. distant about four leagues. In rounding the Cape we had fifty fathoms water over a sandy bottom. At nine o'clock P. M. we came up with Stephens's Island, and by ten, the next morning, being the 12th, we cast anchor, and took our station in Ship Cove, Queen Charlotte's Sound. In the afternoon we landed a number of empty water-casks, and cleared a place for two observatories. We likewise set up tents for the guard, and of such of our people, whose business might make it necessary for them to remain on shore. In the mean time several canoes, filled with natives, came along side of the ships, but very few of those who were in them would venture aboard. This appeared the more extraordinary, as captain Cook was well known to them all: one, in particular, had been treated by him with distinguished kindness, during his stay here on a former voyage: yet now, neither professions of friendship, nor presents, could prevail upon this man to come into the ship. We could only account for this reserve by supposing, that we had revisited their country, in order to revenge the death of captain Furneaux's people, who had been killed here. But upon captain Cook's assuring them of the continuance of his friendship, and that he should not molest them on that account, they soon laid aside all appearance of suspicion and distrust. On Thursday the 13th, we pitched two tents, one for each ship, on the same spot where we had formerly erected them. We also set up the observatories, in which Messrs. King and Bailey immediately commenced their astronomical operations. Two of our men were employed in brewing spruce beer; while others filled the water-casks, collected grafs for the cattle, and cut wood. Those who remained on board were occupied in repairing the rigging, and performing the necessary duties of the ships. A guard of marines was appointed for the protection of the different parties on shore, and arms were given to the workmen, to repel all attacks from the natives, if they had been inclined to molest us; but this did not appear to be the case: for during the course of this day, a great number of families came from different parts of the coast, and took up their residence close by us; so there was not a spot in the cove where a hut could be put up, that was not occupied by them, except the place where we had fixed our little encampment. The facility with which they build their temporary habitations, is very remarkable. They have been seen to erect more than twenty of them on a spot of ground, that, not an hour before, was covered with shrubs and plants. They generally bring some part of the materials with them; the rest they find upon the premises. Our captain was present when a number of

people landed, and built one of their villages. The canoes had no sooner reached the shore, than the men leaped out, and took possession of a piece of ground, by tearing up the plants and shrubs, or sticking up some part of the framing of a hut. They then returned to their canoes, and secured their weapons, by setting them up against a tree, or placing them in such a position, that they could be laid hold of in an instant. While the men were thus employed, the women were not idle. Some were appointed to take care of the canoes; others to secure the provisions, and the few utensils in their possession; and the rest went to gather dry sticks, that a fire might be prepared for dressing their victuals. Their huts are sufficiently calculated for affording shelter from the rain and wind. The same tribe, or family, however large, generally associate and build together; so that we frequently saw a village, as well as their large towns, divided into different districts, by low palisades, or a similar method of separation. We received considerable advantage from the natives thus coming to take up their residence with us; for every day some of them were employed in catching fish, a good share of which we generally procured by exchanges. Their supply, and what our own nets and lines afforded us, was so ample, that we seldom were in want of fish. Besides which, we had other refreshments in abundance. Celery, scurvy-grafs, and portable soup, were boiled with the pease and wheat, for both ships companies, every day, and they had spruce beer for their drink. Such a regimen would soon have removed all seeds of the scurvy from our people, if any of them had contracted it; but the truth is, on our arrival here, we had only two invalids in both ships, on the sick list, and these were on board the Resolution. We were occasionally visited by other natives, besides those who lived close to us. Their articles of traffic were fish, curiosities, and women; the two first of which were easily disposed of, but the latter did not come to a good market, our crew having conceived a dislike to them. Captain Cook observes upon this occasion, that he conceived at a connection with women, because he could not prevent it; but that he never encouraged it, because he dreaded the consequences. "I know, indeed," says the captain, "that many men are of opinion, that such an intercourse is one of the greatest securities amongst savages; and perhaps they who, either from necessity or choice, are to remain and settle with them, may find it so. But with travellers and transient visitors, such as we were, it is generally otherwise; and, in our situation, a connection with their women betrays more men than it saves. What else can be reasonably expected, since all their views are selfish, without the least mixture of regard or attachment.

My own experience, at least, which hath been pretty extensive, hath not pointed out to me one instance to the contrary."

Among our occasional visitors was a chief called Kahoorā, who headed the party that cut off captain Furneaux's people; and himself killed Mr. Rowe, the officer who commanded. He was far from being beloved by his countrymen, some of whom even implored captain Cook to kill him, at the same time expressing their disapprobation of him in the severest terms. A striking proof of the divisions that prevail among these people occurred to us; for the inhabitants of each village, by turns, solicited our Commander to destroy the other. On the 15th, we made an excursion, in search after grafs, and visited a Hippah, or fortified village, at the S. W. point of the island of Motuara, and the places where our garden had been planted. We found many of the plants and roots in a flourishing condition in the spots that had been cultivated by Mr. Bailey in 1773, not the least vestige remained. It is probable they had been rooted out to make room for buildings, when the village was re-inhabited. At the other gardens, now wholly over-run with weeds, we found cabbages, onions, leeks, purslain, radishes, mustard, and a few potatoes. These last, brought from the Cape of Good Hope, had been greatly improved by change of soil, and by proper cultivation, would be superior to those produced in most other countries: but the New Zealanders, though fond of this root, had not taken the trouble to plant a single one; but were it not for the difficulty of clearing the ground where potatoes had once been planted, there would not have been any now remaining. As to the hippah, we found no people in it, but the houses and palisades had been rebuilt, and were now in a state of good repair; and we saw evident marks of its having been inhabited not long before.

On the 16th, the two Captains, accompanied by Omiah and several officers, set out, in five boats, to collect fodder for the cattle. Having proceeded about three leagues up the sound, they landed on the E. side, where they cut a quantity of grafs, sufficient to load two launches. On their return down the sound, they visited Grafs Cove, the place where captain Furneaux's people had been murdered. While on this memorable spot, curiosity induced them to enquire into the circumstances attending the melancholy fate of our countrymen. Here they met with captain Cook's old friend Pedro, who is mentioned by him in the history of his second voyage. He and another New Zealander received them on the beach, armed with the spear and jabo, though not without manifest signs of fear. Their apprehensions, however, were quickly dissipated by a present, which brought down to the shore two natives of the natives. Omiah we are informed was the son of an interpreter between our people and the natives, his language being a dialect of that of New Zealand. By a story of a gentleman on board the Discovery, this circumstance is differently related; as this, and the character of Omiah, is contained in a paper given by the company of the Resolution, which we lay it before our readers. "Omiah, who was the son of the interpreter, nor indeed could he be said to be the natives so well as many of the common people had been frequently here before; yet being attached to us with Captain Cook, was always preferred when in company, to converse with the natives, and was desired by him, when he met any of them alone, to question them concerning the massacre of our people that had happened some time ago, and from what cause it took its rise; and he hoped to come at the truth, as the natives, in general, were friendly and ready to furnish the ships with whatever their country afforded. But from what Omiah was able to learn, captain Cook received no satisfaction. It should seem, that in Otaheite there are two dialects spoken, as in almost every other part of the world; one by the priests, and another by the common people. This was apparent here; for Tupia who accompanied Mr. Banks to

No. 52.

this place, in captain Cook's second voyage round the world, could converse with the natives fluently, and was in such esteem with them, that his memory is held in veneration from one end of the island to the other at this day; Obedece likewise, who was of the class of arceoes, or gentlemen, and who accompanied captain Cook, in his last voyage, from Otaheite to the Hebrides, New Zealand, Easter Island, and the Marquisas, could converse with the New Zealanders, though Omiah could not, a proof that he was of the inferior class in his own country. While we continued here, he found frequent opportunities to discover his real character, when from under the watchful eye of his protector and friend. He had grog always at his command, and was sometimes entrusted to give it out, especially when any extra quantity was to be delivered by the Captain's orders for hard service, or on days of festivity. At those times he was closely watched, and was never known to run into excess; but when the Captain was abroad for whole days and nights, and he left in charge of liquors, he set no bounds to his excess, and would drink, till he wallowed like a swine in his own filth. At those times he outacted the savage in every kind of sensuality; and when he could no longer act the brute, he would often act the drunkard; storming, roaring, brandishing his arms, and by the contortions of his mouth and face, setting at defiance, after the manner of his country, the whole host of his enemies, who were represented by the common sailors, with whom, upon these occasions, he was generally surrounded; and who knew how to practise upon him, as he endeavoured to do upon the poor Zealanders. He was indeed far from being ill natured, morose, or vindictive; but he was sometimes sulky. He was naturally humble, but had grown proud by habit; and pride so ill became him, that he was always glad when he could put it off, and appear among the petty officers with his natural ease. This was the true character of Omiah, (in the opinion of our journalist) who might be said, perhaps, by accident, to have been raised to the highest pitch of human happiness, only to fuller the opposite extreme, by being again reduced to the lowest order of rational beings."

Pedro, and the rest who were present of the natives, answered all the questions put by Omiah, by captain Cook's orders, without reserve, like men who had no concern in the unfortunate transaction at Grafs Cove. Their information imported, that while the boat's-crew of the Adventure were at dinner, some of the natives stole, or snatched from them, some fish and bread, for which offence they received some blows; a quarrel ensued immediately, and two of the New Zealanders were shot dead, by the only two musquets that were fired; for before a third was discharged the natives rushed furiously upon our people, and, being superior in number, destroyed them all. Pedro, and his companions, also pointed out the spot where the quarrel happened, and the place where the boat lay, in which a black servant of captain Furneaux had been left to take care of it. According to another account, this negro was the occasion of the quarrel; for one of the natives stealing something out of the boat, the black gave him a violent blow with a stick. His countrymen hearing his cries, at some distance, imagined he was killed, and immediately attacked our people, who before they could reach the boat, or prepare themselves against the unexpected assault, fell a sacrifice to the fury of the exasperated savages. The former of these accounts was corroborated by the testimony of many other natives, who could have no interest in disguising the truth. The latter account rests upon the authority of the young New Zealander, who quitted his country for the sake of going with us, and who, therefore, could not, as we may reasonably suppose, be inclined to deceive us. As they all agreed, that the affray happened while the boat's-crew were at dinner, both the accounts may be true; for it is by no means improbable, that, while some of the islanders were stealing from the man who had been left to guard the boat, others might take equal liberties with those who were on shore. It appears, that there was no premeditated plan of bloodshed, and

5 Q

that,

that, if these thefts had not been rather too hastily revented, all mischief would have been avoided; for Ka-hoora's greatest enemies acknowledged, that he had no previous intention of quarrelling. With regard to the boat, some said, that it had been pulled to pieces and burnt; while others asserted, that it had been carried off by a party of strangers. We have received from a gentleman on board the Discovery some other remarkable particulars, relating to this mysterious affair, included in the relation of an adventure, which, though the parties are not of the highest class, our readers, notwithstanding, may think worth relating.

Belonging to the Discovery was a youth, with whom a young Zealander girl, about fourteen years of age, fell desperately in love, nor was she wholly indifferent to our adventurer. What time he could spare, he generally retired with her, and they spent the day, but oftener the night, in a kind of silent conversation, in which, though words were wanting, their meaning was perfectly understood. Moments fly rapidly on that are spent in mutual endeavours to please. She, on her part, had no will but his own, and he, in return, was no less attentive to hers. Minds so disposed naturally incline to render themselves agreeable. A conformity in manners and dress become significant signs between lovers. Though he appeared amiable in her eyes in the dress of a stranger, yet he wished to render himself more so, by ornamenting his person after the fashion of her country; accordingly, he submitted to be tattooed from head to foot; nor was the less solicitous to set off herself to the best advantage. She had fine hair, and her chief pride was in the dress of her head. The pains she took, and the decorations she used, would have done honour to an European beauty, had not one thing been wanting to render it still more pleasing. Ghowannah (that was her name) though young, was not so delicate, but that the traits of her country might be traced in her locks. To remedy this misfortune, and to render it less offensive, she was furnished with combs, and taught by her lover how to use them. After being properly prepared, he would by the hour amuse himself with turning her hair into ringlets, which flowed carelessly round her neck, with a kind of coronet rising from her temples, gave her an air of dignity, that added fresh charms to the brilliancy of her eyes. The dislike arising from colour gradually wore off, and the ardent desire of rendering their sentiments more and more intelligible to each other, gave rise to a new language, consisting of words, looks and gestures, by which pleasure and pain were more forcibly expressed than by the most refined speech. Having at first acquired the art of imparting their passions, they very soon improved it to the story of their lives. Love and jealousy directed her enquiries concerning the women in the world from whence he came, wishing at the same time, that he would stay with her, and be a Kakikoo or chief. He made her to understand, that the women in her country were all tattoo, (man-killers) and if he stayed with her she would kill him. She replied no; she would ch-na-row, love him. He said her people would kill him. She replied no, if he did not shoot them. He made her to understand, that nine or ten of the men of this world, had been killed and eaten by her people, though they did not shoot them. Her answer was, that was a great while ago, and the people came from the hills roa, roa, meaning a great way off. This excited his curiosity to know, if any of her relations were among the murderers; she sighed, and appeared much affected, when he asked her that question. He demanded if she was at the feast when they broiled and eat the men? She wept, and, looking wishfully at him, hung down her head. He became still more pressing as she grew more reserved. He tried every winning way that love and curiosity suggested, to learn from her what he found she knew, and what she seemed so determined to conceal: but she artfully evaded all his questions. He asked her, why she was so secret? She pretended not to understand him. He repeated the same question, at the same time closing his eyes and keeping them shut. She continued to weep, but made him no an-

swer. Finding all his persuasions ineffectual, he turned from her, seemingly in anger, and threatened to leave her. She caught him round the neck in a violent agitation of mind. He asked her what she meant, and why she wept? She said, they would kill her if she told. He said, they should not know it. Then he would hate her, she said. He answered no, but love her more and more, pressing her to his bosom at the same time: upon which she grew more composed, and said she would tell him all she knew. She then made him understand, that one Gooboa, a bad man, who had been often at the ship, and had stolen many things, when he came to know that it was preparing to depart, went up into the hill country, to the hippah, and invited the warriors to come down and kill the strangers. They at first refused, saying, the strangers were stronger than they, and would kill them with their pow-pow, or fire-arms. He told them, they need not fear, for he knew where they must come before they departed in order to get grafs for their goury, or cattle, and that on such occasions they left their pow-pow behind them in the ship, or carelessly about the ground, while they were at work. They said, they were no enemies but friends, and they must not kill men with whom they were in friendship. Gooboa said, they were vile enemies and wicked men, and complained of their channing him, and beating him, and shewed them the marks and bruises he had received at the ship; and told them besides, how they might silence their pow-pow, by only throwing water over them, and then they could not hurt them. Gooboa likewise undertook to conduct them in safety to the place where the strangers were to come, and shewed them where they might conceal themselves, till he should come and give them notice, which he did. That when the men were busy about getting grafs, and not apprehending any danger or harm, the warriors rushed out upon them, and killed them, and afterwards divided their bodies among them. She added, that there were women as well as men concerned; and that the women made the fires, while the warriors cut the dead bodies in pieces. That they did not eat them all at once, but only their hearts and livers; that the warriors had the heads, which were esteemed the best, and the rest of the flesh was distributed among the crowd. Having by various questions in the course of several days, extorted this relation, of which, he said, he had no reason to doubt the truth, he therefore to ask her, what part her relations and herself bore in this tragedy, as there was reason to believe, they were all equally concerned. He was, however, very solicitous to learn, if any such plot was now in agitation against the people that might be sent upon the same service to Grafs Cove, or any other convenient place. Her answer was, no: the warriors were afraid at first, that the ships were come to revenge the death of their friends, and that was the reason why she was forbidden to speak of killing the strangers, or to own any knowledge of that incident, should she be questioned concerning it. She said, she was but a child, not ten years old: but she remembered the talk of it, as a gallant action of great achievement, and that songs of praise were made upon that occasion. In the course of his conversation with this girl, who seemed to be of the second class, he learned many things concerning the natural temper of the natives, and their domestic policy. She said, the people of T'Avi-Poanmoo, or the southern division of the island, were a fierce bloody people, and had a natural hatred to the people of Ea-hei-no-mauwe, and killed them, when found at any time in their country; but that the people of Ea-hei-no-mauwe were a good people, and friendly to one another, but never suffered any of the people of T'Avi-Poanmoo to settle among them, because they were enemies; that these two nations, the people of the north part of the island, and those of the south, were ever at war, and eat one another; but that the people of either country, when they fought, never eat one another. With respect to their domestic policy, she said, the fathers had the sole care of the boys as soon as they could walk, and that the girls were left wholly at their mother's disposal. She said, it was a crime for a mother

ther to correct her son, after he was once taken under the protection of the father; and that it was always re- spected by the mother, if the father interfered with the management of the daughters. She said, the boys from their infancy, were trained to war, and both boys and girls were taught the arts of fishing, weaving their nets, and making their hooks and lines: that their canoes came from a far country, and they got them in exchange for cloth, which was chiefly manufactured by the women: that their weapons and working tools descended from father to son, and that those who were taken in battle supplied the rising generation: that they had no kings among them, but that they had men who conversed with the dead, who were held in great veneration, and consulted before the people went to the wars: that these were the men who addressed strangers that came upon the coast, first in the language of peace, at the same time denouncing vengeance against them, if they came with any hostile design: that their persons were held sacred, and never killed in the wars, which ever side prevailed: that when the warriors of either nation made prisoners, they were never of the meaner sort, but of some chiefs, whom they afterwards killed and eat, but that to the common sort they never gave quarter: that they sometimes tortured an enemy, if they found him lurking singly in the woods, looking upon him as coming upon no good design; but never otherwise: that they lived chiefly upon fish, which were caught in the found in abundance, during the summer; but that in the winter they retired to the north, where they subsisted on the fruits of the earth, with which they were supplied for their labour, working in the plantations, or assisting the builders in fabricating their boats. The intelligence thus obtained from this young Zealander appears to be authentic from many circumstances; but chiefly from observing, that the large vessels that came from the north to trade, several of them having 90 or 100 persons on board, had never any fish to sell, but were laden with the various manufactures of cloth, wood, and green stones, formed into implements of use, or consisting of raw materials ready prepared for fabrication. Their crews appeared to be of a superior class to those who constantly plied in the found, and were under proper discipline; whereas the fishing boats seemed to be the sole property of the occupiers, no other person claiming any superiority over them.

Our party belonging to the Resolution continued in Grays Cove till the evening, when having loaded the rest of the boats with grafs, celery, &c. we then embarked to return to the ships; but had scarcely left the shore, when the wind began to blow violently at N. W. so that it was not without great difficulty that we could reach the ships, where some of the boats did not arrive till the next morning, and we had but just got aboard, when the gale increased to a perfect storm, attended with heavy rain: but, in the evening, the wind veering to the east, brought on fair weather. No work could go forward on the 17th, but on the 18th our men resumed their different employments, the natives ventured out to catch fish, and Pedro with his whole family, came to reside near us. The proper name of this chief is Matahouah; but some of captain Cook's company had given him the appellation of Pedro in a former voyage. On Thursday the 20th, we had another storm, of less duration than the former, but much more violent; and we had scarcely men enough on board to drive the sails. By ten o'clock, A. M. the strong gales drove the Discovery from her moorings; and it was owing to providence that, having run foul of the Resolution, she did not perish, the surge carrying her off instantaneously, with little damage to either ship. All hands on board were thrown into the utmost confusion. No sooner was the clear than both ships got down top-gallant-yards, struck top-gallant-masts, lowered the yards, got in the cables, moored with their best bower anchors, and happily rode out the storm. These tempests are frequent here; and the nearer the shore, the more their effects are felt; for the neighbouring mountains, which, at these times, are loaded with vapours, not only in-

crease the force of the wind, but alter its direction in such a manner, that no two blasts follow each other from the same quarter. The gale continuing the whole day, no Indians came to trade. On the 21st, a tribe or family of about 30 persons came from the upper part of the found to visit us, whom we had not seen before. Their chief was named Tomatongeaouranic. He was about the age of forty-five, having a frank, cheerful countenance; and the rest of his tribe were, upon the whole, the most handsome of all the New Zealanders that we had seen. By this time upwards of two-thirds of the natives of Queen Charlotte's Sound had settled near us, numbers of whom daily resorted to the ships, and our encampment on shore; but the latter was most frequented, during the time when our people were making seal-blubber; for no Greenlanders were ever fonder of train oil, than our friends here seemed to be: they relished even the dregs of the casks, and skimings of the kettle, and considered the neat stinking oil as a most delicious feast. Having got on board a supply of hay and grafs, sufficient for the cattle during our passage to Otaheite; and having completed our wood and water, we struck our tents, and brought every thing off from the shore.

On the 23d, in the morning, the old Indian, who had harangued the captains when they approached the shore, repaired on board the Discovery, and made a present to her captain of a compleat stand of their arms, and some very excellent fish, which were kindly received; and, in return, Captain Clerke gave him a brafs patoo-patoo, made exactly in their fashion and manner, on which were engraven his majesty's name and arms, the names of the ships, the date of their departure from England, and the business they were sent upon; he gave him likewise a hatchet, a knife, some glass ornaments, and nails, which he highly prized, though of small value. In the evening some of the natives brought a man bound, whom they offered to sell, but their offer being rejected, they carried him back, and in the night, a most horrid yelling was heard in the woods, which excited the curiosity of our gentlemen to examine into the cause. The cutter was ordered to be manned, a party of marines to be put on board, and the two captains, with proper attendants, directed their course to the west-side of the bay, where they saw several fires just lighted, and where they hoped to have surprized the natives, before they had put their poor captive to death, whom they had just before assigned to slavery; but in this hope they were disappointed.

Though the natives appeared friendly during our stay, it was judged proper to keep the time of our departure secret till all things were on board, and we were ready to set sail. This precaution Captain Cook thought the more necessary from what we knew of the treachery of the savages. By not allowing them to concert any new plot, he secured effectually our foraging parties from the danger of a surprize, and by suddenly giving orders to sail, he prevented our men from rambling after the women when their business was done, which they never failed to do whenever it was in their power. The foraging parties here mentioned are those who were sent to the coves, at the distance of perhaps three or four leagues from the ships, to cut grafs for the live stock, and to gather herbs to boil with the portable soup for the men; and those who were stationed in the woods, to get spruce to brew into beer for their preservation from the scurvy, against which that liquor, as we have already observed, was found a most powerful antidote. Of grafs and herbs a large quantity was brought on board, and of spruce so much as served the two crews for drink near thirty days, during which time no grog was delivered out. The parties ordered upon these services went always well armed, and were guarded by marines, though Captain Cook entertained very high notions of the honour as well as bravery of the New Zealanders.

On Monday the 24th, we weighed anchor, and stood out of the Cove; but the wind not being so fair as we could have wished, and knowing the tide of ebb would be spent before we could get out of the found, we cast anchor

anchor again a little without the island of Motuara, to wait for a more favourable opportunity of putting into Cook's Strait. While we were getting under sail, the captain gave to Tomatonga two pigs, a boar and a fow; and to Matahouah two goats, a male and female, after they had promised not to destroy them. As to the animals which Captain Furneaux had left here, we were told they were all dead; but no intelligence could be obtained concerning those Captain Cook had left in West Bay, and in Cannibal Cove, in his former voyage: however, all the natives we conversed with agreed, that poultry are now to be met with wild in the woods behind Ship Cove; and we were afterwards informed, by the two New Zealand youths, who went away with us, that Tiratou, a popular chief, had in his possession many cocks and hens, besides a fow. We had not long been at anchor near Motuara, before several canoes, filled with natives, came towards us, and we carried on a brisk trade with them for curiosities. In one of these canoes was Kahoora, whom Omiah pointed out immediately to Captain Cook; and he being the leader of the party who had cut off the crew of the Adventure's boat, Omiah solicited our commander to shoot him. Not fatisfied with this, he addressed himself to that chief, threatening to be his executioner, should he ever presume to visit us again; but this menace had no little influence upon Kahoora, that he returned to us the next morning, accompanied with his whole family. Omiah, having obtained Captain Cook's permission, introduced him into the cabin, saying, "There is Kahoora, kill him," but fearing, perhaps, he should be called upon to put his former declaration in execution, he instantly retired. In a short time, however, he returned; and perceiving the chief remained unhurt, he remonstrated to the captain with much earnestness, saying, "Why do you not kill him? If a man kills another in England he is hanged: this man has killed ten, yet you will not kill him." These arguments, however plausible, had no weight with our commander, who desired Omiah to ask the New Zealand Chief, why he had killed Captain Furneaux's people? Confounded at this question, Kahoora hung down his head, folded his arms, and seemed in expectation of immediate death: but as soon as he was assured of safety, he became cheerful. He appeared, however, still unwilling to answer the question which had been put to him, till after repeated promises, that no violence should be offered him. Upon this he at last ventured to inform us, that one of the natives having brought a stone hatchet for the purpose of barter, the person to whom it was offered took it, and refused either to return it, or give any thing in exchange for the same, whereupon the owner seized some bread as an equivalent, and this gave rise to the quarrel that ensued. He also said, that he himself during the disturbance had a narrow escape; for a musquet was levelled at him, which he found means to avoid by skulking behind the boat; but another man, who happened to stand close to him, was shot dead. As soon as the musquet was discharged, he, (Kahoora,) instantly attacked Mr. Row, the officer, commander of the party, who defended himself with his hanger, (with which he gave Kahoora a wound in the arm,) till he was overpowered by numbers. The remainder of Kahoora's account of this unhappy affair, differed very little from what we had before learnt from the rest of his countrymen. Most of these whom we had conversed with, expected that Captain Cook would take vengeance on Kahoora for his concern in the massacre; and many of them not only wished it, but testified their surprize at the captain's forbearance and moderation. As the chief must have been made acquainted with the sentiments of the natives, it was a matter of astonishment, that he so often put himself in our power; his two last visits, in particular, were made under such circumstances, that he could not have flattered himself with a probability of escaping, had the captain been inclined to detain him: and yet, when his first fears, on being questioned, had subsided, so far was he from entertaining uneasy sensations, that, on seeing in the cabin a portrait of a New Zealander,

he requested that his own likenesses might be taken, and without the smallest token of impatience, sat till Mr. Webber had finished his portrait. Captain Cook admired his courage, and was pleased with the confidence which he reposed in him; for he placed his whole safety in the uniform declarations of the captain; that he had always been a friend to the natives, and would continue so till they gave him reason to behave otherwise; that he should think no more of their barbarous treatment of our countrymen, as that transaction had happened long ago; but that, if they should ever venture to make a second attempt of that kind, they might rest assured of feeling the full weight of his resentment. Mr. Burney, whom captain Furneaux dispatched, with an armed party, in search of his people who were missing, had, upon discovering the melancholy proofs of this catastrophe, fired several volleys among the natives who were still on the spot, and were probably partaking of the horrid banquet of human flesh. It was reasonable to suppose this firing might not be ineffectual; but upon inquiry it appeared, that not a single person had been killed, or even wounded, by the shot which Mr. Burney's people had discharged.

We must here observe, that previous to the ships sailing, the crews of both were ordered upon deck, as usual, to answer to their names, when one, on board the Discovery, was missing. This was the lover, (whose episode, having already begun, we shall now conclude,) who pretended sickness, in order to facilitate his escape from the ship. With this view, as soon as he had passed the surgeon's examination, and the coast was clear, he dressed himself in the habit of a New Zealander; and, being tattooed all over, to say the truth, the copy was not easily to be distinguished from the original. Ghowannabe, who was in the secret, had assembled her friends together, and sent them on board in order to increase the crowd, which, upon such occasions, when ships are ready to sail, are generally pretty numerous. Among this party he found a favourable opportunity to mix, and hastening to their canoe, when the decks were ordered to be cleared, they were not long in paddling to shore. The pleasure which Ghowannabe expressed, on seeing the ship set sail, cannot easily be conceived, but her joy was of short continuance. In the afternoon, our adventurer's messmate went down to enquire after his health, and was not a little surprized when no answer was returned. He thought, at first, he might have retired; but on searching every where below to no effect, he gave the alarm throughout the ship, when it was discovered, that he had eloped with his baggage; and that the chest he had left in his birth was empty. A messenger was instantly dispatched on board the Resolution, to know how to proceed; and when the message was delivered, the two captains and officers were enjoying their bottle. At first it only furnished a subject of harmless pleasantry; but it came to be seriously debated at last, whether the man should be sent for back, or totally deserted. Some were in doubt, whether an accident might not have happened; but that doubt was soon cleared up, when it was known, that his effects were missing as well as the man. Most of the officers present were for leaving him to follow his own humour; but Captain Cook thinking it would be a bad precedent, and an encouragement to other enamourates, when they came to the happier class, to follow, for example, was for sending an armed force, and bringing the lover back at all hazards. Of this opinion was Captain Clerke, with whom this man was a favourite, who gave orders for the cutter to be properly manned, a serjeant's guard of marines to be put on board, and his messmate as a guide to direct them to the place where he was to be found. These orders were instantly carried into execution. It was midnight, when the cutter could reach the landing-place, and near two in the morning before the marines could find the spot where the lovers used to meet. They surprized him in a profound sleep, when he was dreaming of only kingdoms and dominions; or living with his Ghowannabe in royal state; or being the father of a numerous progeny

might be taken, and
 Captain Cook ad-
 with the confidence
 placed his whole
 of the captain; that
 natives, and would
 son to behave other-
 re of their barbarous
 that transaction had
 they should ever ven-
 hat kind, they might
 of his resentment,
 aux dispatched, with
 people who were mis-
 melancholy proofs of
 es among the natives
 probably partaking
 eth. It was reason-
 not be ineffectual;
 not a single person
 by the shot which
 ed.
 vorious to the ships
 dered upon deck, as
 when one, on board
 This was the lover,
 Reggan, we shall now
 s, in order to facili-
 this view, as soon
 amination, and the
 lf in the habit of a
 wed all over, to say
 to be distinguished
 ho was in the secret,
 , and sent them on
 d, which, upon such
 to fail, are generally
 party he found a fa-
 hastening to their
 I to be cleared, they
 ore. The pleasure
 seeing the ship set
 her joy was of short
 adventurer's mes-
 his health, and was
 answer was returned.
 ave retired; but on
 effect, he gave the
 it was discovered,
 e; and that the chest
 A messenger was
 Resolution, to know
 Page was delivered,
 enjoying their bottle.
 it of harmless plea-
 ly debated at last,
 or back, or totally
 whether an accident
 hat doubt was soon
 hat his effects were
 of the officers pre-
 his own humour;
 ould be a bad pre-
 ther enamourates,
 nces, to follow his
 force, and being
 at this opinion was
 an was a favourite,
 he properly named,
 put on board, and
 them to the place
 ders were instantly
 ight to lose the
 e, and near two in
 ould find the spot
 ly surprize him in
 ning of only king-
 his Ghowannahé in
 numerous progeny
 of

of princes to govern the kingdoms Eakeinommauwe and T'Avi-Pocnammo; and of being the first founder of a great empire! but what a sudden transition! to be waked from the visionary scene of regal grandeur, and to find himself a poor prisoner, to be dragged to punishment for, as he thought, a well laid plan of monarchy; and, what was worse, his final separation from his faithful Ghowannahé, was a task he had still to undergo. Their parting was tender, and for a British sailor and a savage Zealander, was not unaffectionate. The scene, however, was short. The marines paid no regard to the copious tears, the cries, and lamentations, of the poor deserted girl; nor did they think it safe to tarry in a place so desolate, where lamentations in the night were not unusual to bring numbers together, for the purpose of slaughter. He was, therefore, hurried to the shore, followed by Ghowannahé, who could hardly be torn from him, when ready to embark. Love, like this, is only to be found in the regions of ignorance, in those enlightened countries, where the boasted refinements of sentiment have circumscribed the purity of affection, and narrowed it away to mere conjugal fidelity. He was scarce on board the cutter, when he recollected, that he had left his baggage behind; all that he had provided for laying the foundation of his future grandeur. It was therefore necessarily he should return with the marines to the magazine, where all his stores were deposited, and there not a few. Besides his working implements, he had a pocket compass, of which he had thought on some future occasion to make a proper use. He had also a fowling-piece, which had been conveyed away secretly by Ghowannahé. It would be tedious to recount the numerous articles that our adventurer had provided. Let it suffice, that the marines and himself were pretty heavily laden in bringing them on board the cutter. It was noon, the next day, before he arrived at the ships, and the captains began to be in some fear for the party of marines, who were sent to bring him back. Before he came in sight it had been proposed to try him as a deserter, and therefore instead of being received in his own ship, he was ordered on board the Resolution, where he underwent a long examination, and made a full confession of all his views, and of the pains he had taken to bring them to perfection. He said, the first idea of desertion struck him, when in an excursion round the bay, in which he attended Captain Clerke, he was charmed with the beauty of the country, and the fertility of the soil; that seeing the gardens that had been planted on Long Island, at Motuara, and other places, in so flourishing a condition; and that there were European sheep and pigs, and goats, and fowls, sufficient to stock a large plantation, if collected together from the different places where they had been turned loose, it came into his head, that if he could meet with a girl that was to his liking, he could be happy in introducing the arts of European culture into so fine a country, and in laying the foundation of civil government among its inhabitants. This idea improved upon him hourly, and when he happened to meet the girl before mentioned, who had seen him in his tour, and who had followed him to the tents, and had learnt from herself, that love had brought her there, it inflamed his desire beyond all bounds. And finding her inclination to exceed the wishes of his heart, he no longer hesitated, but became firmly resolved, at all events, to yield to the force of inclination. He had revolved in his mind, he said, the hazard and the reward; and had concerted with Ghowannahé the plan for his escape. When Captain Cook heard his story, his resentment was converted into laughter at the wild extravagance of his plan, which he thought truly romantic, and instead of punishing him for desertion, ordered him on board his own ship, the Discovery, to be punished as Captain Clerke should think proper, who, on his return aboard, sent him to the gun to receive one dozen of lashes—and thus terminated all his hopes of being a mighty emperor. The distress of Ghowannahé is hardly to be conceived; left a wretched spectacle, to lament her fate. She expres-

No. 53.

fed her grief by punctures made in her face, arms and neck, and wherever despair prompted her to direct the bloody instrument: so that one might think, those savage people, whose bodies are exposed to the severities of the seasons, are not so susceptible of pain as those of a finer texture; otherwise, her personal feelings must have been exquisite, independent of those of her mind. But we shall now take leave of the two lovers, and continue the history of our voyage.

It was about seven o'clock, A. M. when the Resolution and Discovery cleared the cove, and about eleven when they cast anchor near the isle of Motuara. Before our arrival at New Zealand, Omiah had expressed a desire of taking one of the natives with him to his own country. He soon had an opportunity of gratifying his inclination; for a youth named Taweharooa, the only son of a deceased chief, offered to accompany him, and took up his residence on board. Captain Cook caused it to be made known to him and all his friends, that if the youth departed with us, he would never return. This declaration, however, had no effect; and this afternoon, Tararouou, his mother, came on board to receive her last present from Omiah. The same evening she and Taweharooa parted, with all the marks of tender affection that might be expected between a parent and a child, who were never to meet again. But the sad fire would weep no more, and kept faithfully her word; for the next morning, when he returned to take a last farewell of her son, she was quite cheerful all the time she remained on board, and departed with great unconcern. A boy, named Kokoa, about ten years of age, accompanied Taweharooa as a servant: he was presented to Captain Cook by his own father, who parted with him with such indifference, as to strip him, and leave him entirely naked. The Captain having in vain endeavoured to convince the people of the improbability of these youths ever returning home, at length consented to their going. Though much has been said concerning this country and its inhabitants, in the accounts of Captain Cook's two former voyages; yet his observations made at this time, and the remarks of the ingenious Mr. Anderson, being the result of accurate examination, may not be considered by our friends and respectable subscribers as altogether superfluous.

About Queen Charlotte's Sound the land is uncommonly mountainous, rising immediately from the sea into large hills. At remote distances are valleys, terminating each towards the sea in a small cove, with a pebbly or sandy beach; behind which are flat places, where the natives usually build their huts. This situation is the more convenient, as a brook of fine water runs through every cove, and empties itself into the sea. The bases of the mountains, towards the shore, are constituted of a yellowish sand-stone, which requires a blueish cast where it is washed by the sea. At some places it runs in horizontal, and, at others, in oblique strata. The mould or soil by which it is covered resembles marle, and is, in general, a foot or two in thickness.

The luxuriant growth of the productions here sufficiently indicates the quality of the soil. The hills, except a few towards the sea, are one continued forest of lofty trees, flourishing with such uncommon vigour, as to afford an august prospect to the admirers of the sublime and beautiful works of nature. This extraordinary strength in vegetation is, doubtless, greatly assisted by the agreeable temperature of the climate; for at this time, though answering to our month of August, the weather was not so warm as to be disagreeable; nor did it rise the thermometer higher than 60 deg. The winter also seems equally mild with respect to cold; for in the month which corresponds to our December, the mercury was never lower than 48 deg. the trees at the same time retaining their verdure, as if in the height of summer. It is supposed their foliage remains, till pushed off by fresh leaves, in ceasing in spring. Notwithstanding the weather is generally good, it is sometimes windy, with heavy rain,

which, however, is never excessive, and does not last above a day. In short, this would be one of the finest countries upon earth, were it not so extremely hilly; which, supposing the woods to be cleared away, would leave it less proper for pasture than flat land; and infinitely less for cultivation, which could never be effected here by the plough.

The large trees on the hills are principally of two sorts. One of them of the size of our largest firs, grows nearly after their manner. This supplied the place of spruce in making beer; which was done with a decoction of its leaves, fermented with sugar, or treacle; and this liquor was acknowledged to be little inferior to American spruce-beer. The other sort of tree is like a maple, and often grows very large, but is fit only for fuel: the wood of that, and of the preceding, are too heavy for either mills or yards. A greater variety of trees grow on the flats behind the beaches: two of these bear a kind of plum, of the size of prunes; the one, which is yellow, is called karraca, and the other, which is black, called maitao; but neither of them had a pleasant taste, though eaten both by our people and the natives. On the eminences which jut out into the sea, grows a species of philadelphus, and a tree bearing flowers almost like a myrtle. We used the leaves of the philadelphus as tea, and found them an excellent substitute for the oriental sort. A kind of wild celery, which grows plentifully in almost every cove, may be reckoned among the plants that were useful to us, and also another which we called scurvy grass. Both sorts were boiled daily with wheat ground in a mill, for the ships' companies breakfast, and with their pease-soup for dinner. Sometimes they were used as salad, or dressed as greens; in all which ways they are excellent; and, together with the fish, with which we were plentifully supplied, they formed a most desirable refreshment. The known kind of plants to be found here are bindweed, night-shade, nettles, a shrubby speedwell, fox-thistles, virgin's bower, vanelloe, French willow, euphorbia, crane's bill, cudweed, rushes, bulrushes, flax, all-heal; American night-shade, knot-grass, brambles, eye-bright and groundsel; but the species of each are different from any we have in Europe. There are a great number of other plants; but one in particular deserves to be noticed here, as the garments of the natives are made from it. It grows in all places near the sea, and sometimes a considerable way up the hills, in bunches or tufts, bearing yellowish flowers on a long stalk. It is remarkable, that the greatest part of the trees and plants were of the berry-bearing kind; of which, and other seeds, Mr. Anderson brought away nearly thirty different sorts.

The birds of which there is a tolerable good flock, are almost entirely peculiar to the place. It would be difficult and very fatiguing to follow them, on account of the quantity of underwood, and the climbing plants; yet any person, by continuing in one place, may shoot as many in a day as would serve seven or eight persons. The principal kinds are large brown parrots, with grey heads; green parroquets, large wood-pigeons, and two sorts of cuckoos. A gros-beak, about the size of a thrush, is frequent; as is also a small green-bird, which is almost the only musical one to be found here; but his melody is so sweet, and his notes so varied, that any one would imagine himself surrounded by a hundred different sorts of birds, when the little warbler is exerting himself. From this circumstance it was named the mocking-bird. There are also three or four sorts of smaller birds; and among the rocks are found black sea-pies, with red bills, and crested shags of a leaden colour. About the shore, there are a few sea-gulls, some blue herons, wild ducks, plovers, and some land-larks. A snipe was shot, differing very little from that species of birds in Europe. Insects here, are not very numerous: we saw some butter-flies, two sorts of dragon-flies, some small grass-hoppers, several sorts of spiders, some black ants, and scorpion-flies innumerable, with whose chirping the woods resounded. The sand-fly, which is the only noxious one, is very numerous here, and is almost as disagreeable as the musquitoe.

The only reptiles we saw, were two or three sorts of inoffensive lizards. In this extensive land, it is remarkable that there should not even be the traces of any quadruped, except a few rats, and a kind of fox-dog, which is kept by the natives as a domestic animal. Nor have they any mineral deserving of notice, but a green Jasper or Lizard-stone, of which the tools and ornaments of the inhabitants are made. This is held in high estimation among them; and they entertain some superstitious notions about the mode of its generation, which we could not comprehend: they say it is taken from a large river far to the southward; it is disposed in the earth in detached pieces like flints, and, like them, the hedges are covered with a whitish crust.

Most of the fish we caught by the seine were elephant-fish, mullets, soles, and flounders; but the natives supplied us with a kind of sea-bream, large conger eels, and a fish of five or six pounds weight, called by the natives a mogge. With a hook and line we caught a blackish fish, called cole-fish by the seamen, but differing greatly from that of the same name in Europe. We also got a sort of small salmon, skate, gurama, and nurles. The natives sometimes furnished us with hake, paracutas, parrot-fish, a sort of mackerel, and leather jackets; besides another, which is extremely scarce, of the figure of a dolphin, in colour black, and with strong boney jaws. These in general, are excellent to eat; but the small salmon, cole-fish, and mogge, are superior to the others.

The New Zealanders, we mean those of them who inhabit about Queen Charlotte's Sound, are a people who appear to be perfectly satisfied with the small quantity of knowledge they have acquired, without attempting in the least to improve it. Nor are they remarkably curious, either in their observations, or their inquiries. New objects do not strike them with such a degree of surprize as one would naturally expect; nor do they even fix their attention for a moment. Orinthy, indeed, who was a great favourite with them, would sometimes attract a circle about him; but they seemed to listen to his speeches, like persons who neither understood, nor wished to understand, what they heard. In general, they are not so well formed, especially about the limbs, as the Europeans, nor do they exceed them in stature. Their sitting so much on their haunches, and being deprived, by the mountainous disposition of the country, of using that kind of exercise which would render the body straight and well-proportioned, is probably the occasion of the want of the proportion. Many of them, indeed, are perfectly well formed, and some are very large boned and muscular, but very few among them are very corpulent. Their features are various, some resembling Europeans, and their colour is of different casts, from a deepish black to an olive or yellowish tinge. In general, however, their faces are round, their lips rather full, and their noses, (though not flat) large towards the point. An aquiline nose was not to be seen among them; their eyes are large, and their teeth are commonly broad, white, and regular. The hair, in general, is black, strong, and straight; commonly cut short on the hinder part, and the rest tied on the crown of the head. Some, indeed, have brown hair, and others a sort that is naturally disposed to curl. The countenance of the young is generally free and open; but in many of the men it has a ferocious, or rather sullen cast. The men are larger than the women; and the latter are not distinguished by peculiar graces, either of form or features.

Both sexes are clothed alike; they have a garment, made of the silky flax already mentioned, about five feet in length, and four in breadth. This appears to be their principal manufacture, which is performed by knotting. Two corners of this garment pass over their shoulders, and they fasten it on the breast with that which covers the body: it is again fastened about the belly with a girdle made of mat. Sometimes they cover it with dog skin, or large feathers. Many of them wear mats over this garment, extending from the shoulders to the heels. The most common covering, however, is a quantity of fedgey plant, badly manufac-

tured, fastened to a string, and thrown over the shoulders, whence it falls down on all sides to the middle of the thighs. When they sit down in this habit, they could hardly be distinguished from large grey stones, if their black heads did not project beyond their coverings. They adorn their heads with feathers, combs of bone or wood, with pearl-shells, and the inner skin of leaves. Both men and women have their ears slit, in which are hung beads, pieces of jasper, or bits of cloth. Some have the septum of the nose bored in its lower part; but we never saw any ornaments worn in that part; though a twig was passed through it by one of them, to show that it was occasionally used for that purpose. We saw many stained in the face with curious figures, of a black or dark blue colour; but it is not certain whether this is intended to be ornamental, or as a mark of particular distinction: the women also wear necklaces of shark's teeth, or bunches of long beads; and a few of them have small triangular aprons, adorned with feathers or pieces of pearl-shells, fastened about the waist with a double or treble set of cords.

They live in the small coves already mentioned, sometimes in single families, and sometimes in companies of perhaps forty or fifty. Their huts, which are in general most miserable lodging places, are built contiguous to each other. The best we saw was built in the manner of one of our country barns, about six feet in height, 15 in breadth, and 35 in length. The inside was strong and regular, well fastened by means of withes, &c. and painted red and black. At one end it had a hole serving as a door to creep out at, and another considerably smaller, seemingly for the purpose of letting out the smoke. This, however, ought to be considered as one of their palaces, for many of their huts are not half the size, and seldom are more than four feet in height. They have no other furniture than a few small bags or baskets, in which they deposit their fishing-hooks and other trivials. They sit down in the middle round a small fire, and probably sleep in the same situation, without any other covering than what they have worn in the day. Fishing is their principal support, in which they use different kinds of nets, or wooden fish-hooks pointed with bone; but made in so extraordinary a manner, that it appears astonishing how they can answer such a purpose. Their boats consist of planks raised upon each other, and fastened with strong withes. Many of them are 50 feet long. Sometimes they fasten two together with rafters, which we call a double canoe: they frequently carry upwards of 30 men, and have a large head, ingeniously carved and painted, which seems intended to represent the countenance of a warrior, when engaged in the heat of action. Their paddles are narrow, pointed, and about five feet long. Their sail, very seldom used, is a mat formed into a triangular shape. When the weather will not suffer them to go to sea, muscles and sea-ears supply the place of other fish. Sometimes, but not often, they kill a few penguins, rails, and flags, which enable them to vary their diet. Considerable number of their dogs are also bred for food; but they depend principally on the sea for their subsistence, by which they are most plentifully supplied.

They dress their fish by roasting, or rather baking them, being entirely ignorant of the art of boiling. It is thus they also dress the root of the large fern-tree, in a hole prepared for that purpose: when dressed, they split it, and find a gelatinous substance within, somewhat like sago powder. The smaller fern-root seems to be their substitute for bread, being dried and carried about with them, together with large quantities of dried fish, when they go far from their habitations. They are as filthy in their feeding as in their persons, which often emit a very offensive effluvia, from the quantity of grease about them, and from their never washing, their heads are plentifully stocked with vermin, which they sometimes eat. Large quantities of stinking train oil, and blubber of seals, they would eagerly devour. When on board the ships, they not only emptied the lamps, but actually swallowed the cotton with equal eagerness. Though the inhabitants of Van Diemen's

Land would not even taste our bread, these people devoured it with the greatest eagerness, even when it was rotten and mouldy.

In point of ingenuity, they are not behind any uncivilized nations under similar circumstances: for, without the assistance of metal tools, they make every thing by which they procure their subsistence, clothing, and warlike weapons, with neatness, strength, and convenience. Their principal mechanical tool is formed in the manner of an adze, and is made of the serpent-stone, or jasper: their chisel and gouge are furnished from the same material, though they are sometimes composed of black solid stone. Carving, however, is their master-piece, which appears upon the most trifling things: the ornaments on the heads of their canoes, not only display much design, but execution. Their cordage for fishing-lines is not inferior to that in England, and their nets are equally good. A shell, a bit of flint, or jasper, is their substitute for a knife, and a shark's tooth, fixed in the end of a piece of wood, is their auger. They have a saw made of some jagged fishes teeth, fixed on a piece of wood nicely carved; but this is used for no other purpose, than to cut up the bodies of those whom they kill in battle.

Though no people are more ready to resent an injury, yet they take every opportunity of being insolent, when they apprehend there is no danger of punishment; whence it may be concluded, that their eagerness to resent injuries, is rather an effect of a furious disposition than genuine bravery. They are naturally distrustful and suspicious, for such as are strangers never venture immediately to visit our ships, but keep at a small distance in their boats, observing our motions, and hesitating whether they should risk their safety with us. They are to the last degree dishonest, and steal every thing within their reach, if they suppose they can escape detection; and, in trading, they seem inclined to take every possible advantage; for they never trust an article out of their hands for examination, and seem highly pleased if they have over-reached you in a bargain. Such conduct indeed is not surprising, when it is considered, that there appears to be little subordination, and few, if any, laws for the punishment of transgressors. No man's authority extends beyond his own family; and when they join at any time, for mutual defence or safety, those among them who are most eminent for valour and prudent conduct, are directors.

Their public contentions are almost perpetual, for war is their principal profession, as appears from their number of weapons, and their dexterity in using them. Their arms are spears, patoos, and halberts, and sometimes stones. The first are from five to thirty feet long, made of hard wood and pointed. The padoo is about 18 inches long, of an elliptical shape, with a handle made of wood, stone, &c. and appears to be their principal dependance in battle. The halbert is about five or six feet in length, tapering at one end with a carved head, and broad, or flat, with sharp edges, at the other. Before the onset, they join in a war song, keeping the exact time; and, by degrees, work themselves into a kind of frantic fury, accompanied with the most horrid distortions of their tongues, eyes, and mouths, in order to terrify their enemies. To this succeeds a circumstance, that is most cruel, and disgraceful to human nature, which is mangling and cutting to pieces (even when not perfectly dead) the bodies of their enemies, and, after roasting them, devouring their flesh with peculiar satisfaction and even pleasure. It might naturally be supposed, that those who could be capable of such excess of cruelty, must be totally destitute of every human feeling, and yet they lament the loss of their friends in a manner the most tender and affectionate. Both men and women, upon the death of their relations or friends, bewail them with the most miserable cries; at the same time cutting large gashes in their cheeks and foreheads, with shells, or pieces of flint, till the blood flows copiously, and mixes with their tears. They also carve a resemblance of an human figure, and hang it about their necks, as a memorial of those who were dear to them. They also perform the ceremony of

lamenting

lamenting and cutting for joy, at the return of a friend who has been some time absent. The practices of the father, whether good or bad, their children are, at an early age, instructed in; so that you find a child of either sex, of the age of nine or ten years, able to imitate the frightful motions and gestures of the men. They also sing, and with some degree of melody, the traditions and actions of their forefathers, with which they are immoderately delighted, and pass much time in these amusements, accompanied sometimes with a kind of flute.

From captain Cook's observations, and from the information of Taweharoo, and others, it appears, that the New Zealanders must live under perpetual apprehensions of being destroyed by each other; there being few of their tribes that have not, as they think, sustained wrongs from some other tribes, which they are continually upon the watch to revenge. And, perhaps, the desire of a good meal may be no small incitement. It is said, that many years will sometimes elapse, before a favourable opportunity happens, and that the son never loses sight of any injury that has been done to his father. Their method of executing their horrible designs, is by stealing upon the adverse party in the night; and if they find them unguarded, (which is very seldom the case) they kill every one indiscriminately; not even sparing the women and children. When the massacre is completed, they either feast and gorge themselves on the spot, or carry off as many of the dead bodies as they can, and devour them at home, with acts of savage brutality too shocking to be described. If they are discovered before they can execute their bloody purposes, they generally steal off again; but are sometimes pursued and attacked by the other party, in their turn. To give quarter, or to take prisoners, makes no part of their military law; so that the vanquished can only save their lives by flight. This perpetual state of war, and destructive method of conducting it, operates so strongly in producing habitual circumspicion, that one hardly ever finds a New Zealander off his guard, either by night or by day. Indeed, no other man can have such powerful motives to be vigilant, as the preservation both of body and soul depends upon it: for according to a principle in their creed, the soul of a man whose flesh is devoured by the enemy, is doomed to a perpetual fire, while the soul of the man whose body has been refused from those who killed him, as well as the souls of all who die a natural death, ascend to the dwellings of the gods. When enquiry was made, whether they devoured the flesh of such of their friends as had been killed in war, but whose bodies were saved from falling into the enemies hands? They seemed surprized at the question, which they answered in the negative, expressing some abhorrence at the very idea. Their common method of disposing of their dead, is by depositing their bodies in the earth, but if they have more of their slaughtered enemies than they can eat, they throw them into the sea.

As to their religion, we can say little concerning either its principles or ceremonies; but we know its instructions are very strongly inculcated into them from their infancy; of which a remarkable instance was seen, in the youth, who was first destined to accompany Taweharoo. He refrained from eating the greatest part of the day, on account of his hair being cut; though every method was used to induce him to break his resolution; and he was tempted with the offer of such victuals as he was known to esteem the most; but he said, in answer to our pressing solicitations, if he eat any thing that day, that Eatooa would kill him. However, towards evening, the cravings of nature got the better of his professed tenets, and he eat, though sparingly; it was thought before this, that they had some superstitious notions about their hair; for we frequently observed quantities of it tied to the branches of trees near some of their habitations; but we could not learn from what notions, or on what account this was done. They have no morais, or other places of public worship; nor do they ever assemble together with

this view; but they have priests, who alone address the gods in prayers, for the prosperity of their temporal affairs; such as an enterprise against a hostile tribe, a fishing party, or the like. Polygamy is allowed among these people; and it is not uncommon for a man to have two or three wives. The women are marriageable at a very early age; and it should seem, that one who is unmarried, is but in a forlorn state. She can with difficulty get a subsistence: at least she is, in a great measure, without a protector, though in constant want of a powerful one.

Their language is neither harsh nor disagreeable; and yet the pronunciation is frequently guttural, and whatever qualities are requisite to make a language musical, prevail to a high degree in this; which we observed particularly in the melody of their songs. It is not, indeed, so comprehensive as our European languages, which owe their perfection to long and gradual improvement. Mr. Anderson collected both now and in the course of our former voyage, a great many of their words, so as to form a pretty large vocabulary; and being, in his enquiries, very attentive to the languages of the other islands throughout the South Sea, he has afforded us the amplest proof of their wonderful agreement, or rather identity. This observation has been already made in our history of former voyages, and we shall now strengthen it by a new specimen or fresh list of words; and by placing the corresponding words as used at Otaheite in another column, the reader will be able to judge by what changes the difference of dialect has been effected.

A TABLE of Select Words used in the Islands of NEW ZEALAND and OTAHEITE.

NEW ZEALAND.	OTAHEITE.	ENGLISH.
Moenga	Mocra	A Bed
Epaape	Pepe	Butterfly
Purra, purra	Ere, ere	Black
Makkarode	Marodee	Cold
Hkace	Ey	To Chew or eat
Wyeroo	Ero	A Dog's tail
Kaoo, matte	Matte, roa	Dead, dead
Eoowha	Eooha	A Female
Makooe	Matrou	Fish-hook
Ereere	Eraire	To Fly
Reenga	Ereema	A Hand
Ewhaire	Ewharre	House
Keerahoi	Erahoi	Large
Tangata	Taata	A Man
Toa	Etoa	Male kind
Woho	Woho	Out, not within
Whairo	Oora, oora	Red
Nohoanna	Nohouoa	To Refuse
Mango	Mao	A Shark
Ka Powhy	Owhy	Stone
Opance	Opance	Shut
Muca	Moc	To Sleep
Agoonai	Aoonai	To-day
Geetaia	Fetea	To Underland
Ewy	Evy	Water
Taooa	Taooa	We
Kahaia	Tehaia	Where is he
Ema	Ooama	White
Taeninaohoi	Ninnaohoi	Yesterday
Warre	Ooaro	Forgot
NUMERALS.		
Tahae	Atahay	One
Rooa	Erooa	Two
Toroo	Toroo	Three
Faha	Ahaa	Four
Reema	Ereema	Five
Ono	Aono	Six
Heetoo	Aheitoo	Seven
Waroo	Awaroo	Eight
Eeva	Aeeva	Nine
Angahoora	Ahooroo	Ten
Ma-tahae	Ehewen	Eleven
Ma-rooa	Twelve, &c. by prefixing the article Ma,	
Mangahoora	Twenty	

to alone address the
y of their temporal
nit a hostile e. i. e. a
ny is all well among
mion for a man to
men are marriage-
ould seem, that one
form state. She can
at least the is, in a
or, though in con-

or of disagreeable; and
gottural, and what
a language musical,
which we observed
ir songs. It is not
European language,
ng and gradual in-
ected lost, and
ge, a great many of
y large vocalists
tention to the
hout the South Sea
of of their won
This observation
ry of former voya-
by a new spec men-
g we correspond-
nother column, the
at changes the cul-

in the Islands of
AHEITE.

ENGLISH.

A *Bad*
Butterfly
Black
Cold
To Chase or eat
A Dog's tail
Dearth, dead
A Female
Fish-look
To Fly
A Hand
Houje
Large
A Man
Male kind
Out, not within
Red
To Refuse
A Shank
Stone
Shut
To Sleep
To-day
To Understand
Water
We
Where is he
White
Yesterday
Forgot

One
Two
Three
Four
Five
Six
Seven
Eight
Nine
Ten

ing the article Ma,

Thus

Thus we have mentioned all the particulars that came under our observation, and which we think worth relating, during our intercourse with the New Zealanders: we have only to add some very remarkable information which Captain Cook received from Tawehiarooa. "One day, says the Captain, on inquiring of Tawehiarooa, how many ships such as ours, had ever arrived in Queen Charlotte's Sound, or in any part of its neighbourhood? He began with giving an account of one absolutely unknown to us. This he said had put into a port on the N. W. coast of Teerawitte, but a very few years before I arrived in the Sound in the Endeavour, which the New Zealanders distinguish, by calling Tupia's ship. At first, I thought he might have been mistaken as to the time and place; and that the ship in question might be either Monsieur Surville's, who is said to have touched upon the N. E. coast of Eahcinomauwe, the same year I was there in the Endeavour; or else Monsieur Marion du Fresne's, who was in the Bay of Islands, on the same coast a few years after. But he assured us that he was not mistaken, either as to the time, or as to the place of this ship's arrival; and that it was well known to every body about Queen Charlotte's Sound and Teerawitte. He said, that the Captain of her, during his stay here, cohabited with a woman of the country; and that she had a son by him, now living, and about the age of Kokoa; who, though not born then, seemed to be equally well acquainted with the story. We were also informed by Tawehiarooa, that this ship first introduced the venereal disease among the New Zealanders. It were to be wished, that subsequent visitors from Europe may not have their share of guilt in leaving so dreadful a remembrance of them among this unhappy race. The disorder now is but too common here; though they do not seem to regard it, saying, that its effects are not near so pernicious at present, as they were at its first appearance. The only method, as far as I ever heard, that they make use of as a remedy, is by giving the patient the use of a sort of hot bath, which they produce by the steam of certain green plants laid over hot stones. I regretted much, that we did not hear of this ship while we were in the Sound, as, by means of Omiah, we might have had full and correct information about her from eye-witnesses. For Tawehiarooa's account was only from what he had been told, and therefore liable to many mistakes. I have not the least doubt, however, that his testimony may so far be depended upon, as to induce us to believe, that a ship really had been at Teerawitte, prior to my arrival in the Endeavour, as it corresponds with what I formerly heard. For in the latter end of 1773, the second time I visited New Zealand, during my former voyage, when we were continually making inquiries about the Adventure, after our separation, some of the natives informed us of a ship's having been in a port on the coast of Teerawitte: but, at that time, we thought we must have misunderstood them, and took no notice of the information. We had another piece of intelligence from him, though not confirmed by our own observations, that there are snakes and lizards in New Zealand of an enormous size. He described the latter as being eight feet in length, and as big round as a man's body. He said that they sometimes seize and devour men; that they burrow in the ground; and that they are killed by making fires at the mouths of the holes. We could not be mistaken as to the animal; for with his own hand he drew a very good representation of a lizard on a piece of paper, as also of a snake, in order to shew what he meant."

In the morning of Tuesday the 25th of February, we left the Sound. By the mean of the results of many astronomical observations, we found the latitude of Ship Cove to be 41 deg. 6 min. S. and the longitude 174 deg. 25 min. 15 sec. E. At ten o'clock, a light breeze springing up at N. W. by W. we made sail through Cook's Strait, with the Discovery in company. On Thursday the 27th, we cleared Cape Palliser, and took our departure from thence. It bore W. distant about seven leagues. We had now a fine gale, and

steered towards N. E. When we had lost sight of land, our two youths from New Zealand, notwithstanding their employment of fishing near the shores from their infancy, began to repent of the adventurous step they had taken. Seeing only foaming billows round them, their hearts failed: they began to pine, and refused to eat. When Captain Clerke with Mr. Burney came on board our ship, they ran and hid themselves, discovering a great panic. It did not appear that their fear took its rise from the thoughts of being carried back, because when the gentlemen returned, they wanted to go with them. It should rather seem, therefore, that they were apprehensive of some design upon their lives, as in their country a consultation amongst the chiefs always precedes a determined murder. This was confirmed by their behaviour afterwards. We endeavoured, as far as lay in our power, to soothe them; but they wept continually, and gave vent to their sorrows in a kind of song, which seemed to express their praises of their country and people, from which they were now, in all probability to be forever separated. In this dispirited state they continued for several days, till, at length, the agitation of their minds began to subside, and their sea sickness, which had aggravated their grief, wore off. Their lamentations then became less and less frequent; their native country, their kindred, and friends, were gradually forgotten, and they appeared to be firmly attached to us. On the 28th, at noon, in the lat. of 41 deg. 17 min. S. longitude 177 deg. 17 min. E. we tacked about and stood to the S. E. with a gentle breeze at E. N. E. which afterwards veered to the N. E. in which point the wind remained two days, sometimes blowing a fresh gale, with squalls and rain.

Monday, March the 1st, a storm came on, but as the wind was fair, we got down the top-gallant-yards, close reefed the top-sails, and pursued our course E. by N. On the 2nd, it shifted to N. W. and afterwards to S. W. between which point and the N. it continued to blow, sometimes very moderately, and at other times a strong gale. With this wind we steered N. E. by E. and E. with all the sail we could carry till Tuesday the 11th, when it veered to N. E. and S. E. at which time we observed at noon in lat. 39 deg. 29 min. long. 196 deg. 4 min. E. On the 15th, being Saturday, it blew a hurricane, attended with rain and a high sea, which breaking over our bows, cleared the decks of every thing that was not firmly secured, and split the fore-top-mast stay of the Discovery into a thousand shivers. At night we shifted our course and stood N. by E. half E. There were some on board the Discovery who disapproved of the course we had hitherto steered, foreseeing, that by going so fast to the northward, we should fall too suddenly into the trade winds, especially, if we should be met by an easterly wind before we approached the tropic. Among the seamen on board a king's ship, there are always some expert navigators, whose judgment, ripened by experience, is much to be depended upon; but the misfortune is, that these men are never consulted, nor do they even dare so much as to whisper their opinion to their superior officer. Like gamesters standing by, they can see the errors of the game, but must not point them out till the game is over. This we find, by the journal before us, was the real case on board the Discovery, some of whose people did not scruple to foretel what would happen after we had left the 39th degree of southern latitude, while we were yet only in the 196th deg. of eastern longitude. They did not scruple to say that before we altered our latitude to the N. we ought to have stretched 13 or 14 deg. farther eastward of our intended port; and in this case when we came to pass the tropic, we should be sure of a fair wind to carry us to it. On Tuesday, the 18th, having continued our course N. N. E. for the last 24 hours, we found ourselves, by observation, in lat. 33 deg. 8 min. and in long. 200 deg. E. that is, more than 12 deg. to the westward of Otaheite. Here we saw sea weed in abundance, and by a large tree floating by us, we judged that we could not be far from land. The tree appeared to

be about 30 feet in girth, and by its freshness seemed to have been no long time in the water. Saturday the 22nd, the heaviest rain began to pour down that the oldest mariner, in either of the ships, had ever experienced. It fell in sheets, and, as the wind increased, the men in handling the sails, were in the utmost danger of being washed off the yards. It continued for six hours incessantly; however, most seasonably for our people in the Resolution, where the number of live stock, as horses, cows, goats, and sheep, had exhausted a large proportion of our fresh water, and we were yet at a great distance from our destined port. Here the wind began to veer to the E. which had been apprehended by many; who finding our longitude not to increase in proportion as our latitude decreased, began to suspect we should not make Otaheite this run.

Monday, the 24th, our latitude was decreased to 24 deg. 24 min. and our longitude only increased one single degree. The wind was E. by S. and our course still N. by E. we made consequently but little way. To add to our vexation, we were now in an alarming situation, for want of provisions and water for the live stock; inasmuch, that we were obliged to kill part of our sheep and hogs, not having a sufficient quantity of water to keep them alive. As to the horses, and cows, they were mere skeletons; having been reduced to the scanty portion of four pounds of hay, and six quarts of water for 24 hours; and the men were put to the allowance of two quarts of water, for the same space of time. The wind continuing foul, all hope of reaching Otaheite was laid aside; and the isles of Amsterdam and Rotterdam, were at this time thought to be our only resource. Hitherto not a man was ill on board the Discovery, nor was any alteration made in her company's allowance, they not having any more cattle on board, than were necessary for the ship's use. Thursday the 27th, we crossed the Tropic. The weather, which for two or three days had been squally, attended with thunder and lightning, increased to a storm; and we now began to be surrounded by our tropical companions. On the 28th, the weather cleared up, and we were saluted with a fine breeze, and attended by numerous shoals of flying fish, bonitos, dolphins, sharks, and whole flocks of tropical sea fowl, which abound near the islands in the low latitudes, but are seldom seen in the deep Pacific Ocean. On the 29th, at ten o'clock A. M. as we were standing to the N. E. the Discovery made the signal for seeing land, distant seven leagues. We tacked ship and stood for it till the evening. While day-light remained we saw no signs of inhabitants, but, in the night observed several fires. On Sunday the 30th, at day break we discovered it to be an island of no great extent, and bore up on the west-side. We now saw several people wading to the reef, but, observing the ships leaving them quickly, they remained there. But others, who soon appeared, followed our course; and some of them assembled in small bodies, making great shouts. Upon our nearer approach to the shore, we saw many of the natives running along the beach, and, by the assistance of our glasses, could perceive, that they were armed with long spears and clubs, which they brandished in the air with signs of threatening, or, as some of us supposed, with invitations to land. Most of them were without cloaths, except having a kind of girdle, which was brought up between their thighs; but some of them wore about their shoulders pieces of cloth of various colours, white, striped, or chequered; and almost all of them had about their heads a white wrapper, in some respects resembling a turban. They were of a tawny

complexion, well made, robust, and of a middling stature. A small canoe was now launched from the most distant part of the beach, and a man getting into it, put off, as with a view of reaching the ship; but his courage failing him, he hastily put back. On his return to the beach another man joined him in the canoe, and then both of them paddled towards us. They seemed, however, afraid to approach, till their apprehensions were removed by Oniah, who addressed them in the language of Otaheite. Thus encouraged, they came near enough to receive some nails and beads, which, being tied to some wood, were thrown into the canoe. They, however, put the wood aside without untying the string, which perhaps might have proceeded from superstition; for we were informed by Oniah, that when they observed us offering presents to them, they requested something for their Eatooa. On Oniah's asking them, whether they eat human flesh, they replied in the negative, with equal abhorrence and detestation. One of them, named Mouroua, being questioned with regard to a scar on his forehead, said, it was the consequence of a wound he had received in fighting with the natives of an island lying towards the N. E. who sometimes invaded them. They afterwards laid hands on a rope, but would not venture on board, telling Oniah, that their countrymen on shore had suggested to them this caution; and had likewise directed them to enquire whence our ship came, and to procure information of the name of the Captain. Their chief, they said, was called Oroo-aceka. When we demanded the name of the island, they told us it was Mangya, or Mangeea, to which they sometimes added nooa, nai, narwa. The features of Mouroua were agreeable, and his disposition, to all appearance, no less so; for he exhibited some droll gesticulations, which indicated humour and good nature. He also made others of a serious kind, and repeated some words with an air of devotion, before he would venture to take hold of the rope at the stern of the ship. He was lusty and well made, though not tall. His complexion was nearly of the same cast with that of the natives of the most southern parts of Europe. His companion was not so handsome. They both had strong, straight, black hair, tied together on the top of their heads with a piece of white cloth. They had long beards; and the inside of their arms, from the elbow to the shoulders, and some other parts, were tattooed, or punctured. The lobe of their ears was slit to such a length, that one of them stuck there a knife, and some beads we had given him. The same person had hung about his neck, by way of ornament, two polished pearl-shells, and a bunch of human hair, loosely twisted together. They wore a kind of girdles, which we found were a substance manufactured from the *morus papyrifera*, and glazed like those used in the Friendly Islands. They had on their feet a sort of sandals, made of a grassy substance interwoven, which we perceived were also worn by those whom we had seen on the beach. The canoe in which they came was the only one we saw. It was very narrow, and not more than ten feet long, but strong, and neatly made. The lower part was of white wood; but the upper part was black, and their paddles were of the same colour. These were broad at one end, blunted, and about three feet long. The fore part had a flat board fastened over it, which projected out, to prevent the water from getting in. It had an upright stern, five feet high, which terminated at the top in a kind of fork. They paddled indifferently either end of the canoe forward.



C H A P. IV.

An attempt made to land on the Island of Mangeea, which we were obliged to leave unvisited—Observations on the coast—Transactions with the natives—Description of the Island and its inhabitants—Specimen of their language—The Resolution and Discovery continue their course northward—Discover another island named Wateoo—Visits from the natives—An account of their persons and dress—The coast explored—Lieutenants Gore and Burney, Mr. Anderson and Omiah sent on shore—An account of their reception—They are introduced to three Chiefs—A dance of twenty young women—Omiah's apprehension of being roasted—The islanders send provisions on board—Further description of the natives—Of their double canoes—Trees and plants—Omiah's expedient to prevent being detained on shore—He meets with three of his countrymen—An account of their distressful voyage—Additional remarks relative to Wateoo—Otahootia visited, and Harcey's Island—A fruitless attempt made to land—The two ships bear away for the Friendly Isles—Palmerston's Island touched at—Two islets described—Refreshments procured—Arrive at the Friendly Islands—Intercourse with the natives of Komango—Arrival at Ananooka—Transactions and incidents there—An account of Ananooka—The Resolution and Discovery proceed to Hapae.

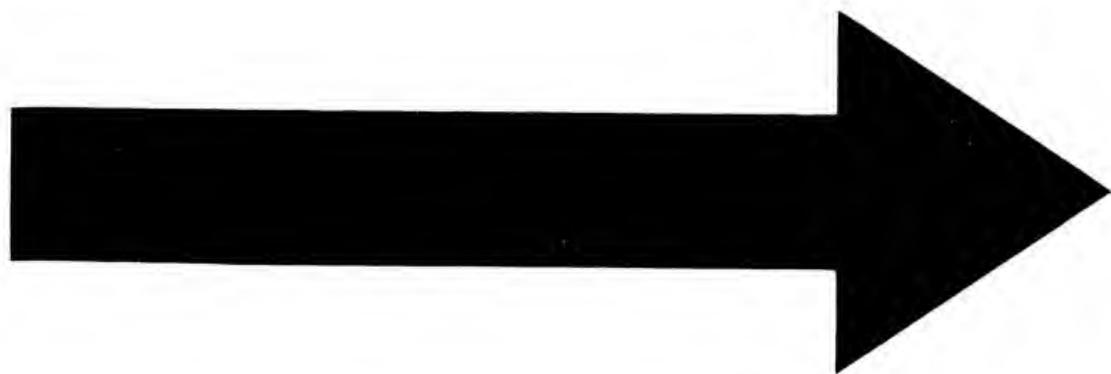
AS soon as the ships were in a proper station, about ten o'clock A. M. of the 30th, two boats were sent out to endeavour to find a convenient place for landing. Captain Cook had no sooner put off in his own boat, than the two men approached with their canoe, and when along side of the boat Mourooa, without hesitation, leapt into her. Omiah, who was with the Captain, was desirous to enquire of Mourooa, where we could land; upon which he directed us to two places. But we soon perceived, with regret, that the attempt at either was impracticable, on account of the surf, unless at the risk of having our boats destroyed. Nor were we more successful in our search for anchorage, as we could find no bottom within a cable's length of the breakers, where we met with from forty to twenty fathoms depth, over sharp rocks of coral. While we thus reconnoitred the shores of Mangeea, the natives thronged down upon the reef alarmed. Mourooa, who still remained in the boat with captain Cook, thinking, perhaps, that this warlike appearance deterred us from landing, commanded them to retire. As many of them complied, we imagined, that he was a person of some consequence; indeed, if we did not misunderstand him, he was brother to the king of the island. Several of them, instigated by curiosity swam from the shore to the boats, and came on board them without reserve. We even found some difficulty in keeping them out, and could scarce prevent their pilfering whatever was within their reach. At length, when they observed us returning to the ships, they all left, except Mourooa, who, though not without manifest indications of fear, accompanied the Commodore on board the Resolution. The cattle, and other new objects that he saw, did not strike him with much surprize; his mind, perhaps, being too much occupied about his own safety, to allow him to attend to other things. He seemed very uneasy, and gave us but little new intelligence; and, therefore, after he had continued a short time on board, a boat was ordered to carry him towards the land. In his way from the cabin, happening to stumble over one of the goats, he stopped, looked at the animal, and asked Omiah, what bird it was? But not receiving an immediate answer, he repeated the question to some of the people who were upon the deck. The boat having conveyed him near the surf, he leaped into the water, and swam ashore. His countrymen eager to learn from him what he had seen, stocked round him as soon as he had landed; in which situation they remained when we lost sight of them. We hoisted in the boat as soon as she returned, and made sail to the northward. Thus were we obliged to leave this fine island unvisited, which seemed capable of supplying all our wants. It is situated in lat. 21 deg. 57 min. S. long. 201 deg. 53 min. E.

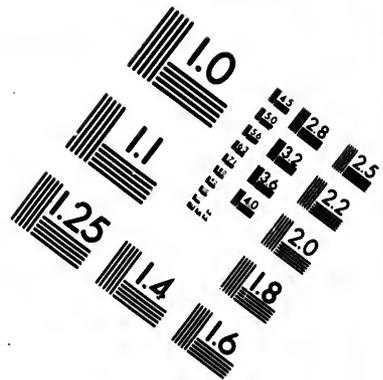
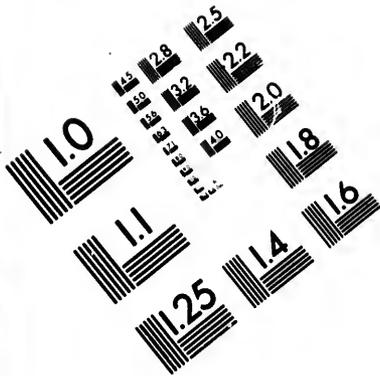
This island of Mangeea made a most delightful appearance; it may therefore easily be conceived with what reluctance we left it. Those parts of its coast which fell under our observation, are guarded by a reef of coral rock, against which a heavy surf is continually breaking. The island is about five leagues

in circumference, and though of a moderate and pretty equal height, may be seen in clear weather at the distance of more than ten leagues. In the interior part, it rises into small hills, whence there is an easy descent to the shore, which, in the S. W. part, is steep, though not very high, and has several cavities made by the dashing of the waves against a brownish sand-stone, of which it consists. The descent here abounds with trees of a deep green, which seem to be all of one sort, except nearest the shore, where we observed numbers of that species of dracæna, found in the woods of New Zealand. The shore on the N. W. part, terminates in a sandy beach, beyond which the land is broken into small chafins, and has a broad border of trees, resembling tall willows. Farther up, on the ascent, the trees were of the deep green above-mentioned, which some of us imagined to be the rima, intermixed with cocoa-palms, and a few other sorts. Some trees of a higher sort were thinly scattered on the hills, the other parts of which were covered with some fern, or were bare, and of a reddish colour. The island upon the whole, has a pleasing appearance, and might, by proper cultivation, be made a beautiful spot. The natives appearing to be both numerous and well fed, it is highly probable, that such articles of provision as the island produces are found in great abundance. Our friend Mourooa informed us, that they had no boys nor dogs, though they had heard of both those animals, but that they had plantains, taro, and bread-fruit. The only birds we observed, were some terns, noddies, white-egg-birds, and white herons.

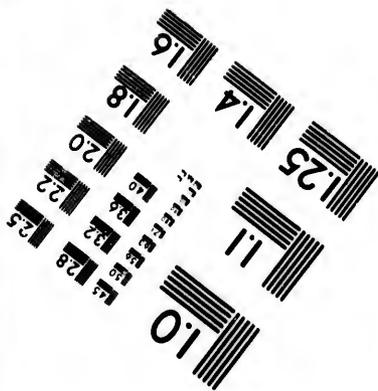
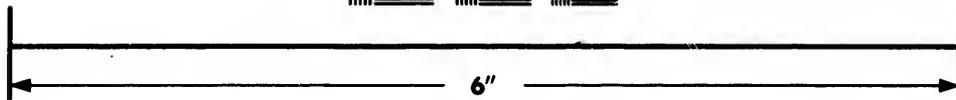
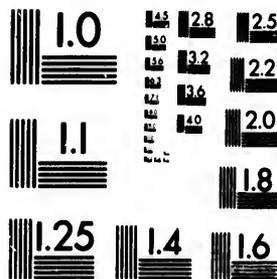
The inhabitants of this island resemble those of Otaheite and the Marquesas in the beauty of their persons; and their general disposition seems also to correspond with that of the first mentioned people; for they are not only lively and cheerful, but are acquainted with all the lascivious gesticulations practised by the Otaheiteans in their dances. We had likewise reason to suppose, that they have a similar method of living; for though we had not an opportunity of seeing many of their habitations, we observed one house near the beach which in its mode of construction, differed little from those of Otaheite. It appeared to be seven feet high, and thirty in length, with an open end, which represented an ellipsis, or oval, transversely divided. It was pleasantly situated in a grove. These people salute strangers by joining noses, and taking the hand of the person whom they accost, which they rub with some force upon their mouth and nose. It is worthy of remark, that the inhabitants of the Palaoos, New Philippine, or rather Caroline Islands, though at the distance of near 1500 leagues from Mangeea, have a similar method of salutation. The language of the natives of Mangeea is a dialect of that spoken at Otaheite, as will appear by the following list of words, selected by the assistance of Omiah. The agreement between them as to the orthography is very striking; but their pronunciation in Mangeea, like that of the New Zealanders, is rather more guttural than that of Otaheite.

A LIST





**IMAGE EVALUATION
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic
Sciences
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503

18
20
22
25
28
32
36
40

10
11
12
13
14

A LIST of words used in Mangœa, and compared with others used at Otaheite, taken from Omiah by Mr. Anderfon.

MANGŒA.	OTAHŒITE.	ENGLISH.
Kooroo	Ooroo	<i>Bread-fruit.</i>
Ewakka	Evaa	<i>A Canoe.</i>
Ereekee	Eree	<i>A Chief.</i>
Pooroohee	—	<i>A Club.</i>
Taja, taia aoutee	Eoute	<i>Cloth or cloth-plant.</i>
Eakkaree	Aree	<i>A Cocoa-nut.</i>
Maheine	Maheine	<i>A Daughter.</i>
Naoo, mou	—	<i>Friend.</i>
Etanagee	Tamace	<i>A Fight, or battle.</i>
Mata	Myty	<i>Good.</i>
Manna	—	<i>Great, or powerful.</i>
Ereekee, manna	—	<i>A Powerful chief.</i>
Ou	Wou	<i>I.</i>
Ooma	—	<i>To Kifs.</i>
Taata, or Tangata	Taata	<i>A Man.</i>
Aoure	Aoure	<i>No.</i>
Heyhey	—	<i>A Spear.</i>
Euta	Euta	<i>The Shore.</i>
Hectata matœa	—	<i>The Sun.</i>
Waheine	Waheine	<i>A Woman.</i>
Oo	—	<i>There.</i>
Ehataice	Owytaiceoa	<i>What is that?</i>
Aee	Ai	<i>Yes.</i>

Having taken our departure from Mangœa, we held on our course northward, till noon of Monday the 31st, when the man at the mast-head called out land, which was soon answered by a signal from the Discovery. It lay in the direction of N. E. by N. distant 10 leagues. The next morning, being Tuesday the 1st of April, we were abreast of its north-end, and within four leagues of it. It now had the appearance of an island, nearly of the same extent with that which we had left. Another island, much smaller, was also descried right a-head. Though we could soon have reached this, we preferred the larger one, as being most likely to furnish food for our cattle. We therefore made sail for it; but there being little wind, and that unfavourable, we were still two leagues to leeward, at eight o'clock the succeeding morning. Soon after three armed boats were dispatched, and one from the Discovery, under the command of Lieutenant Gore, in search of a landing-place, and good anchoring-ground. Mean while we plied up under the island with the ships. As our boats were putting off, we saw several canoes coming from the shore, which repaired first to the Discovery, she being the nearest to it. Not long after, three of these canoes came along-side our ship, the Resolution. They are long and narrow, and are supported by outriggers; the head is flat above, but prow-like below; and the stern is about four feet high. We bestowed on our visitors some knives, beads, and other trifles; and they gave us some cocoa-nuts, in consequence of our having asked for them; but they did not part with them by way of exchange, as they seemed to have no idea of barter or traffic. One of the natives, after a little persuasion came on board; and two others soon followed his example. They appeared to be perfectly at their ease, and free from all uneasy apprehensions. After their departure, a man arrived in another canoe, bringing a bunch of plantains as a present to our captain, who gave him in return, a piece of red cloth, and an axe. We were afterwards informed by Omiah, that this present had been sent from the king of the island. Soon after, a double canoe, containing twelve of the islanders, came towards us. On approaching the ship, they recited some words in concert, by way of chorus, one of them first giving the word before each repetition. Having finished this solemn chant, they came along-side, and asked for the chief. As soon as Captain Cook had made his appearance, a pig and some cocoa-nuts were conveyed into the ship; and the captain was also presented with a piece of matting, by the principal person in the canoe, when he and his companions had got on board. These new visitors

were introduced into the cabin, and other parts of the ship. Though some objects seemed to surprize them, nothing could fix their attention. They were afraid to venture near the cows and horses, of whose nature they could form no conception. As for the sheep and goats, they gave us to understand, that they knew them to be birds. It may appear rather incredible; that human ignorance could ever make so ridiculous a mistake, there not being the smallest resemblance between any winged animal and a sheep or goat. But these people seemed unacquainted with the existence of any other terrestrial animals than hogs, dogs, and birds; and seeing our goats and sheep to be very different from the two former, they inferred absurdly, that they must belong to the latter class, in which they knew there were a great variety of species. Though Captain Cook bestowed on his new friend what he supposed would be the most acceptable present, yet he seemed somewhat disappointed. We were afterwards informed, that he eagerly wished to procure a dog, of which kind of animals this island was destitute, though the natives knew that the race existed in other islands of the Pacific Ocean. Captain Clerke had received a similar present, with the same view, from another man, who was equally disappointed in his expectations.

The islanders, whom we had seen in those canoes, were, in general, of the middling stature, and not unlike the Mangœans. Their hair either flowed loosely over their shoulders, or was tied on the crown of the head; and though in some it was frizzled, yet that, as well as the straight sort, was long. Some of the young men were handsome. Like the inhabitants of Mangœa, they wore girdles of glazed cloth, or fine matting, the ends of which were brought between their thighs. Their ears were bored, and they wore about their necks, by way of ornament, a sort of broad girds, stained with red, and strung with berries of the night-shade. Many of them were curiously marked or tattooed from the middle downwards, particularly upon their legs; which made them appear as if they wore boots. Their beards were long, and they had a kind of sandals on their feet. They were frank and cheerful in their deportment, very friendly, and good-natured. Lieutenant Gore returned from his excursion, and informed Captain Cook, that he had examined the west-side of the island, without being able to find a place where a ship could ride in safety, or a boat could land, the shore being bounded by a steep coral rock, against which a continual surf broke with extraordinary violence. But as the inhabitants seemed extremely friendly, and as desirous of our landing as we ourselves were, Mr. Gore was of opinion, that they might be prevailed upon to bring off to the boats beyond the surf, such articles as we were most in need of. As we had little or no wind, the delay of a day or two was of no great consequence, and therefore it was resolved to try the experiment the next morning: soon after day break some canoes came towards the ships, one of which directed its course to the Resolution. There were in it some cocoa-nuts, plantains, and a hog, for which the natives demanded from us a dog, refusing every other thing we offered by way of exchange. Though one of our gentlemen on board had a dog and bitch, which were great nuisances in the ship, and which might have served to propagate a race of so useful an animal in this island, yet he could not be prevailed upon to part with them. However, to gratify these people, Omiah gave them a favourite dog he had brought with him from England, with which acquisition they were highly pleased.

Thursday the 3^d of April, at ten o'clock A. M. Lieutenant Gore was dispatched with three boats, to make trial of the experiment which that officer had proposed. Two of the natives, who had been on board, accompanied him; and Omiah served as an interpreter. The ships being a full league from the island when the boats put off, and the wind being inconsiderable, it was 12 o'clock before we could work up to it: We then perceived our three boats just without the surf, and an amazing number of the islanders on the shore, abreast of them. Concluding from this, that Lieu-

tenant Gore, and others of our people had landed, we were impatient to know the event. With a view of observing their motions, and being ready to afford them such assistance as they might occasionally require, we kept as near the shore as was consistent with prudence. We were convinced, however, that the reef was a very effectual barrier between us and our friends who had landed, and put them completely out of the reach of our protection. But the natives, in all probability, were not so sensible of this circumstance as we were. Some of them now and then, brought a few coconuts to the ships, and exchanged them for whatever was offered them. These occasional visits diminished the Captain's solicitude about our people who had landed; for, though we could procure no intelligence from our visitors, yet their venturing abroad seemed to imply, that their countrymen on shore had made no improper use of the confidence reposed in them. At length towards the evening, we had the satisfaction of seeing the boats return. When our people got on board, we found that Mr. Gore, Mr. Anderson, Mr. Burney, and Omiah, were the only persons who had landed. The occurrences of the day were now fully reported to Captain Cook by Mr. Gore. Mr. Anderson's account of their transactions, which was very circumstantial, and including some observations on the island, and its inhabitants, was to the following purport.

They rowed towards a sandy beach, where a great number of natives had assembled, and came to an anchor at the distance of 100 yards from the reef. Several of the islanders swam off, bringing coconuts with them; and Omiah gave them to understand, that our people were desirous of landing. Soon after two canoes came off; and to inspire the natives with a greater confidence, Mr. Gore and his companions resolved to go unarmed. Mr. Anderson and Lieutenant Burney went in one canoe, a little before the other; and their conductors watching with great attention the motions of the surf, landed them safely on the reef. A native took hold of each of them, with a view of supporting them in walking over the rugged rocks to the beach, where several others, holding in their hands the green boughs of a species of *mimosa*, met them, and saluted them by the junction of noses. They were conducted from the beach amidst a vast multitude of people, who flocked around them with the most eager curiosity; and being led up an avenue of cocoa-palms, soon came to a number of men, arranged in two rows, and armed with clubs. Proceeding onward among these, they found a person who appeared to be a chief, sitting cross-legged on the ground, and cooling himself with a kind of triangular fan, made from the leaf of the cocoa-palm, with a polished handle of black wood. He wore in his ears large bunches of beautiful feathers of a red colour, but had no other mark to distinguish him from the rest of the people. Our two countrymen having saluted him as he sat, marched on among the men armed with clubs, and came to a second chief, adorned like the former, and occupied like him, in fanning himself. He was remarkable for his size and corpulence, though he did not appear to be above 30 years of age. They were conducted in the same manner to a third chief, who seemed older than the two former: he also was sitting, and was ornamented with red feathers. After they had saluted him as they had done the others, he desired them both to sit down, which they willingly consented to, being greatly fatigued with walking, and with the extreme heat they felt amidst the surrounding multitude.

The people being ordered to separate, our two gentlemen saw, at a small distance, 20 young women, adorned, like the chiefs, in red feathers, engaged in a dance, which they performed to a slow and solemn air, sung by them all. The gentlemen rose up, and walked forward to see those dancers, who, without paying them the smallest attention, still continued their dance. They seemed to be directed by a man, who, in the capacity of a prompter, mentioned the several motions they were to make. They never changed the spot, as Europeans do in dancing, and though

No. 54.

their feet were not entirely at rest, this exercise consisted more in moving their fingers very nimbly, holding their hands, at the same time, in a prone position, near the face, and occasionally clapping them together. Their dances and singing are performed in the exactest concert, and the former bear a great resemblance to those of the natives of the Caroline Islands. The young women had probably been instructed with extraordinary care, and selected for this ceremony, being superior in beauty to most of those who were in the crowd. They were in general, rather stout, and of an olive complexion, with black hair flowing in ringlets down their necks. Their shape and limbs were elegantly formed; for their dresses consisted only of a piece of glazed cloth tied round the waist, which scarcely reached so low as the knees, our gentlemen had an opportunity of examining almost every part. Their features were rather too full to constitute a perfect beauty. Their eyes were of a deep black, and their countenances expressed a great degree of modesty and complacency. Before these beautiful females had finished their dance, a noise was heard as if some horses had been galloping towards our gentlemen; and on turning their eyes aside, they saw the people armed with clubs, who had been desired to entertain them, as they supposed, with an exhibition of their manner of fighting; which they did, one party pursuing another, who ran away.

At this time Lieutenant Burney and Mr. Anderson began to look about for Mr. Gore and Omiah, whom they at length perceived coming up, having been as much incommoded by the crowds of people as they themselves had been, and introduced in the same manner to the three chiefs; the names of whom were Otteroo, Taroa, and Patowecra. Each of these exacting a present, Mr. Gore gave them such things as he had brought with him for that purpose; after which he informed the chiefs of his views in coming ashore, but was desired to wait till the next day before he should have what he wanted. They now endeavoured to separate our gentlemen from each other, every one of whom had his respective circle to surround, and gaze at him. Mr. Anderson was, at one time, upwards of an hour apart from his friends; and when he told the chief, who was near him, that he wished to speak to Omiah, his request was peremptorily refused. At the same time he found that those near him pilfered several trifling things which were in his pocket; and on his complaining of this treatment to the chief, he justified their behaviour. From these circumstances Mr. Anderson began to apprehend, that they designed to detain our party among them. In this situation he asked for something to eat; upon which they brought him some coconuts, bread-fruit, and a sort of sour pudding; and when he complained of the heat, occasioned by the multitude of people, the chief himself condescended to fan him. Mr. Burney going to the place where Mr. Anderson was, the latter informed him of his suspicions; and to try whether they were well founded or not, they both attempted to get to the beach; upon which they were soon stopped by some of the natives, who said they must return to the place which they had left. On their coming up they found Omiah under the same apprehensions; but he had, as he imagined, an additional motive of terror; for, having observed, that they had dug a hole in the ground for an oven, which they were now heating, he could assign no other reason for it, than that they intended to roast and devour our people; he went even so far as to ask them, whether that was their intention; at which they were much surprized, asking, in return, whether that custom prevailed among us.

Thus were Mr. Anderson and the others detained the greatest part of the day, being sometimes separated, and sometimes together, but continually in a crowd, who desired them frequently to uncover parts of their skin, the sight of which struck the islanders with admiration. They at the same time, rifled the pockets of our gentlemen; and one of them snatched from Mr. Gore a bayonet, which hung by his side. This being represented to one of the chiefs, he pretended to send a person in search of it,

5 T

but

but probably countenanced the theft; for Omiah, soon after, had a dagger stolen from his side in the same manner. They now brought some green boughs as emblems of friendship, and, sticking the ends of them in the ground, desired our party would hold them as they sat, giving them to understand, that they must stay and eat with them. The sight of a pig lying near the oven, which they had heated, removed Omiah's apprehensions of being put into it himself, and made him think, that it might be intended as a repast for him and his companions. The chief also sent some of his people to provide food for the cattle, and they returned with a few plantain trees, which they conveyed to the boats. In the meantime, Mr. Burney, and Mr. Anderson made a second attempt to get to the beach; but on their arrival, they found themselves watched by people who seemed to have been stationed there for that purpose; for when Mr. Anderson endeavoured to wade in upon the reef, one of them dragged him back by his clothes. They also insisted upon his throwing down some pieces of coral that he had picked up, and on his refusing to comply, took them from him by force: nor would they suffer him to retain some small plants which he had gathered. They likewise took a fan from Mr. Burney, who, on his coming ashore had received it as a present. Finding that obedience to their will was the only method of procuring better treatment, the gentlemen returned to the place they had quitted; whereupon the natives promised, that after they had partaken of a repast, that had been prepared for them, they should be furnished with a canoe to carry them off to their boats. Accordingly, the second chief to whom they had been presented, having seated himself on a low stool, and directed the multitude to form a large ring, made them sit down by him. A number of cocoa-nuts were now brought, with a quantity of baked plantains, and a piece of the pig that had been dressed, was placed before each of them. Their fatigue, however, had taken away their appetites; nevertheless they eat a little to please their entertainers. When this meal was finished, Omiah, Mr. Gore's interpreter, was questioned by the natives concerning us, our country, our ships and arms. In answer to which, among other particulars, he told them, that our country had ships as large as their island, on board of which were implements of war (describing our guns) of such dimensions, as to contain several people within them; one of which could demolish the island at one shot. As to the guns in our two ships, he acknowledged that they were but small in comparison with the former; yet even with these, he said, we could with great ease, at a considerable distance destroy the island, and every soul in it. On their enquiring by what means this could be done, Omiah produced some cartridges from his pocket, and having submitted to inspection the balls, and the gun-powder by which they were to be set in motion, he disposed the latter upon the ground, and by means of a piece of lighted wood, set it on fire. The sudden blast, the mingled flame and smoke, that succeeded instantaneously, filled the natives with such astonishment, that they no longer doubted the formidable power of our weapons: and had it not been for the terrible ideas they entertained of the guns of our ships, from this specimen of the mode of their operation, it was imagined that they would have detained the gentlemen the whole night; for Omiah assured them, that, if he and his friends did not return on board the same day, they might expect, that our Commander, captain Cook, would fire upon the island. It was now near sun-set, when the islanders sent down to the beach the remainder of the provisions that had been dressed, to be carried to the ships; soon after which our gentlemen found a canoe prepared to put them off to their boats, which the natives did with great caution; but as they were pushing the canoe into the surf, one of them snatched a bag out of her, which contained a pocket-pistol belonging to Mr. Anderson, who calling out to the thief with marks of the highest displeasure, he swam back to the canoe with the bag. The islanders then put them on board the boats, with the cocoa-nuts,

plantains, and other provisions; and they immediately rowed back to the ships.

The restrained situation of these gentlemen gave them very little opportunity of observing the country; for they were seldom a hundred yards from the place where they had been introduced to the chiefs, and, consequently, were confined to a few surrounding objects. The first thing that attracted their notice was the number of people, which must have been at least two thousand. Except a few, those who had come on board the ships, were all of an inferior class; for a great number of those that our gentlemen met with on shore, had a superior dignity of demeanour, and their complexion was much whiter. In general, they had their hair, which is long and black, tied on the crown of the head. Many of the young men were perfect models in shape, and of a delicate complexion. The old men were, many of them, corpulent; and they, as well as the young, had a remarkable smoothness of skin. Their general dress consisted of a piece of cloth wrapped about the waist, but some had pieces of mats, most curiously variegated with black and white, formed into a kind of jacket without sleeves; while others wore conical caps made of the core of a cocoa-nut, interwoven with beads. In their ears, which were pierced, they hung pieces of the membranous part of some plant, or stuck there some odoriferous flower. The chiefs, and other persons of rank, had two little balls, with a common base, made of bone; which they hung round their necks with small cords. Red feathers are considered in this island as a particular mark of distinction; for none but the chiefs, and the young women who danced, assumed them. Some of the men were punctured all over their sides and backs, and some of the women had the same ornament (if it deserves that name) on their legs. The elderly women had their hair cropped short, and many of them were cut all over the fore part of the body in oblique lines. The wife of a chief appeared with her child, laid in a piece of red cloth, which had been presented to her husband: she suckled the infant much after the manner of our women. Another chief introduced his daughter, who was young, beautiful, and modest. No personal deformities were observed in either sex, except a few individuals, who had scars of broad ulcers remaining on the face and other parts. Many of the natives were armed with spears and clubs, the latter of which were generally about six feet long, made of a hard black wood neatly polished. The spears were formed of the same wood, simply pointed, and were in general twelve feet long; but some were so short as to seem intended for darts. They preserved their canoes from the sun under the shade of various trees. Mr. Anderson saw eight or ten of them all double ones; that is, two single ones lashed together by knots laid across. They were about four feet deep, and in length about twenty feet, and the sides were rounded with a plank raised on them. Two of these canoes were curiously stained all over with black, in numberless small figures, as triangles, squares, &c. and were far superior to any thing of the kind Mr. Anderson had ever seen at any other island in the South Sea. The paddles were almost elliptical, and about four feet long. Most of the trees observed by Mr. Anderson were cocoa-palms, some species of hibiscus; a sort of euphorbia; and many of the same kind he had seen at Mangaea. The latter are tall and slender, resembling a cypress; and are called by the natives etoa. This gentleman saw also a species of convolvulus, and some treacle-mustard; besides which there are doubtless other plants and fruit-trees, which he had not an opportunity of seeing. The soil, towards the sea, is nothing more than a bank of coral, generally steep and rugged, which, though it has probably been for many centuries exposed to the weather, has suffered no further change than becoming black on its surface. The reef or rock, by which the shore is lined, runs to different breadths into the sea, where it resembles a high steep wall: it is of a brownish colour, and nearly even with the surface of the water; and though its texture is rather porous,

it is capable of withstanding the washing of the surf, which constantly breaks upon it.

Though this island had never before been visited by Europeans, there were other strangers now residing in it; and it was entirely owing to Omiah's accompanying Mr. Gore, that this remarkable circumstance came to our knowledge. He had scarcely landed on the beach, when he found, among the crowd, three of his own countrymen, natives of the Society Isles. At the distance of about two hundred leagues from those islands, an immense ocean intervening, with such miserable sea-boats as their inhabitants make use of, such a meeting, at such a place, so accidentally visited by us, may be considered as one of those extraordinary and unexpected situations, which strike a curious observer with wonder and amazement. The mutual surprise and pleasure with which Omiah and his countrymen engaged in conversation, may easily be imagined. All were equally impatient; they to hear Omiah's adventures, and Omiah to know theirs. Their story, as related by themselves, is a very affecting one. They said, that about 20 persons, male and female, had embarked in a canoe at Otaheite, with an intention of crossing over to Ulitea; but they were prevented by contrary winds from reaching the latter, or returning to the former island. A dreadful tempest drove them into the main ocean, and the sea, continuing to run mountains high, washed overboard some of the women and children, who perished before they experienced any further distress: that, after three days, when the storm abated, those who remained found themselves in an unknown ocean, with little more provisions than were necessary to serve them a very short time: that, having no pilot to direct their course, they continued to go before the wind day after day; and, their stock of provisions being exhausted, they suffered inconceivable hardships: that, their number gradually diminished, worn out by famine and fatigue: that, those who survived had nothing but the sea-weed which they found floating in the sea, and the water which they saved when it rained, to keep them alive; that, ten days having elapsed, and no land in sight, despair took place of hope, and several, unable to support the pangs of hunger, jumped overboard in their pbrrenzy, and perished by an easier death; and the groans of the dying, and the terrible agonies with which some were affected before death came to their relief, exceeded all description. In this melancholy situation they had existed for 13 days, and how much longer they could have no recollection, for they were taken up insensible of pain, and hardly to be distinguished from the emaciated bodies of the dead among whom they were found, seemingly without life or motion, till by the friendly care of their deliverers they were restored. When they were recovered, they said, it was like waking from a dream: they knew not where they were, nor how they came upon land; but being told they were taken up at sea, and in what condition, as their senses gradually returned, they, by degrees recollected all the circumstances already related: they added, that ever since they were brought to life, they had remained with their deliverers, and were now quite reconciled to their condition, and happy in the situation in which the Etooa, or good spirit, had placed them. Four men had survived, one of whom had since died; and the names of the three, now living, are Tavee, Otireroa, and Orououte; the former was born at Huahaine, the second at Ulitea, and the latter at Otaheite. Omiah, after hearing their relation, with which he was apparently much affected, told them, that they might now take the opportunity of returning home with him; that he would intercede for them, and that he was sure, if they chose it, the chiefs of the expedition would grant his request. They thanked Omiah for his kindness; nor had they any reason to suppose, that such an offer would ever be made them again; but they were now determined to end their days with the people who had restored them to second life; and as their dearest relations and friends were of the number of those who perished, the return to their native country would only renew their grief, and instead of affording them pleasure, would increase

their melancholy. The application of this narrative is obvious. It will serve to explain, in a more satisfactory manner than the flimsy conjectures of speculative reasoners, how the detached parts of the world, and, in particular, the islands of the Pacific Ocean, may have been first peopled; those especially that lie at a considerable distance from each other, or from any inhabited parts of a continent. Such accidents as the above related, probably happen frequently in the great Pacific Ocean. In 1696, two canoes, having on board 30 persons of both sexes, were driven, by contrary winds and tempestuous weather, on the Isle of Samal, one of the Philippines, after having been tossed about at sea 70 days, and having performed a voyage, from an island, called by them Amorot, 300 leagues to the East of Samal. Five of the number who embarked, died of the hardships suffered during this extraordinary passage. In 1721, two canoes, one containing 24, the other 6 persons, men, women, and children, were driven from an island, they called Farrolep, northward, to the title of Guam, one of the Ladrões, or Marianas; but these had not failed so far as their countrymen, who reached Samal, as above, and they had been at sea only 20 days. There seems to be no reason to doubt the authenticity of these two relations. The information contained in the letters of the Jesuits, about these islands, now known under the name of the Carolines, and discovered to the Spaniards by the arrival of the canoes at Samal and Guam, has been adopted by all our later writers.

The natives of this island call it Wateoo. It is situated in the lat. of 20 deg. 1 min. S. and in the long. of 201 deg. 45 min. E. and is about 6 leagues in circumference. It is a beautiful spot, with a surface covered with verdure, and composed of hills and plains. The soil, in some parts is light and sandy; but further up the country, we saw from the ship by the assistance of our glasses, a reddish cast on the rising grounds. There the islanders build their houses, for we could perceive several of them which were long and spacious. Its produce is nearly the same with that of Mungeea, the island we last quitted. If we may depend on Omiah's account of what he learned from his three countrymen, in the course of conversation, the manners of the people of Wateoo, their general habits of life, and their manner of treating strangers, greatly resemble those that prevail at Otaheite, and its neighbouring islands. There is also a great similarity between their religious ceremonies and opinions. From every circumstance, indeed, it may be considered as indubitable, that the inhabitants of Wateoo derive their descent from the same stock, which has so remarkably diffused itself over the immense extent of the Southern Ocean. Omiah assured us, that they dignified their island with the pompous appellation of Wenooa no te Eatooa, implying a land of Gods, esteeming themselves a race of divinities, possessed with the spirit of the Eatooa. Their language was well understood by Omiah, and equally so by our two New Zealanders who were on board. Though the landing of our gentlemen was the means of enriching the history of our voyage with the foregoing particulars, yet the principal object in view was partly unattained; for we procured scarcely any thing worth mentioning from the island. Indeed it appears from the circumstances already mentioned, that Wateoo can be of little use to any ship wanting refreshment, unless in the case of the most absolute necessity. The natives, knowing now the value of some of our commodities, might be induced to being off fruits and hogs to a ship standing off or on, or to boats lying off the reef, as ours did. It is doubtful, however, if any fresh water could be procured. For, though some was brought in coconut shells to the gentlemen, they were told, that it was at a considerable distance; and, probably, it is only to be met with in some stagnant pool, as no running stream was any where to be seen.

Calms and light airs, having alternately prevailed during the night of the 3d of April, before day-break an easterly swell had carried the Resolution and Discovery some distance from Wateoo, but having failed of procuring,

procuring, at that place, the supplies we wanted, we left it without regret, and steered for the island that had been discovered by us three days before. Having a gentle breeze at E. we got up with it by ten o'clock, A. M. on Friday, the 4th, when captain Cook immediately dispatched Mr. Gore with two boats, to see if he could land, and get subsistence for our cattle. Though a reef surrounded the land here, as at Watecoo, and a considerable surf broke against the rocks, our boats no sooner reached the west-side of the island, but they ventured in, and Mr. Gore and his party arrived safe on shore. Captain Cook seeing from the ship they had so far succeeded, sent off a small boat to know if farther assistance was required. She waited to take in a lading of the produce of the island, and, therefore, did not return till three o'clock in the afternoon. Being cleared, she was sent again for another cargo; at the same time the jolly boat was also dispatched upon the same business, with orders for Mr. Gore to return with the boats before night, which orders were punctually obeyed. The supply obtained here was about 200 cocoa-nuts for our companies, and for our cattle a quantity of grass, with some leaves of the pandanus. This latter being of a soft, spongy nature, the cattle eat even the branches when cut into small pieces, which are very juicy. * This island lies nearly four leagues from Watecoo, the inhabitants of which call it Otakootaia. It is in the latitude of 19 deg. 15 min. south, and the long. of 201 deg. 37 min. E. and is supposed not to exceed three miles in circuit. It is entirely destitute of water; and cocoa-palms were the only common trees found here, of which there were several clusters. We saw numbers of the wharta, as it is called at Otaheite, or the pandanus of the East-Indies. We found likewise the callophillum, furiana, with a few other shrubs; also a sort of bindweed, treacle-mustard, a species of the spurge, and the morinda citrifolia, the fruit of which last is sometimes eaten by the natives of Otaheite. Omiah, who landed with the party, dressed some of it for their dinner, but they thought the mess a very indifferent one. A beautiful cuckoo, of a chestnut brown, variegated with black, was the only bird seen among the trees; but, upon the shore, were a small sort of curlew, blue and white herons, some egg birds, and great numbers of noddies. One of the company caught a lizard running up a tree: though small, it had a most forbidding aspect. Many of another sort were also seen. Infinite numbers of a kind of moth, elegantly speckled with black, white, and red, frequented the bushes towards the sea. Some other sorts of moths, pretty butterflies, and a few insects of a different kind were observed. At this time no fixed inhabitants were seen upon this island; but we discovered a few empty huts, which convinced us of its being, at least, inhabited occasionally. Monuments, consisting of several large stones, were erected under the shade of some trees: we saw also some smaller ones, with which several places were inclosed, where we supposed their dead had been buried. In one place we found a great many cockle-shells, of a particular sort, finely grooved, and larger than the first; from which it was conjectured, that the island had been visited by persons who sometimes feed on shell-fish. Mr. Gore left a few nails and a hatchet in one of the huts, for the use of those who might hereafter touch at this island. It may, perhaps, surprize, and seem incredible to some of our readers, when they are told of so many islands abounding with inhabitants, who subsist with little or no water. Yet, true it is, that few or none of the little low islands between the tropics have any water on the surface of the ground, except perhaps in a lagoon, the water of which is generally brackish; nor is it easy to find water by digging. The fact is, the fruits of the earth are their chief food, and the milk of the cocoa-nut serves them for drink. They want no water to dress any part of their food, for they knew not the art of boiling till the Europeans taught them, nor had they a vessel fit for the purpose; neither have they any occasion for washing their cloaths, the materials of which they are made, being of the paper kind,

will not bear washing. Salt water therefore answers their purpose with very little fish, and adds a relish to their fish; in which they dip almost every mouthful they eat. This in a great measure accounts for their subsisting without water.

Having hoisted in the boats, we made sail again to the northward, resolving to try our fortune at Harvey's Island, discovered during captain Cook's former voyage, in 1773, and named from Mr. Harvey, the first mate of the Endeavour. Sunday, the 6th, at day break, we came in sight of it, at the distance of about three leagues. About eight o'clock we observed several canoes coming from the shore towards the ships. We were rather surprized at this circumstance, as no traces or signs of inhabitants were seen when the island was first discovered; this, indeed, might be owing to a brisk wind that then blew, and prevented their canoes from venturing out. As we advanced nearer to the island, 6 or 7 double canoes immediately came near us with from 6 to 3 men in each of them. At the distance of about a stone's-throw from the ship they stopped, and it was with difficulty Omiah prevailed on them to come along-side; but they could not be induced to trust themselves on board. Indeed, their disorderly behaviour did not indicate a disposition to trust, or to treat us well. They attempted to steal some ears out of the Discovery's boat, and struck a man for endeavouring to prevent them. They also cut away a net containing meat, which hung over the stern of that ship, and at first would not restore it, though they afterwards permitted us to purchase it from them. Those who were about our ship, the Resolution, behaved equally disorderly and daring; for with a sort of hooks, made of a long stick, they openly endeavoured to rob us of several things, and actually got a frock belonging to one of our people. It appeared that they had a knowledge of bartering, for they exchanged some fish for small nails, of which they were extravagantly fond, and called them goore. Pieces of paper, or any other trifling article that was thrown to them, they caught with the greatest avidity; and if what was thrown fell into the sea, they immediately plunged in to swim after it.

Though the distance between Harvey's Island and Watecoo is not very great, the inhabitants differ from each other, both in person and disposition. The colour of the natives of Harvey's Island is of a deeper cast, and some of them have a fierce savage aspect, like the natives of New Zealand. Their hair is long and black, either hanging loose about their shoulders, or tied in a bunch on the top of the head. Some few, indeed, had it cropped short, and in two or three of them, it was of a red or brownish cast. Their clothing is a narrow piece of mat, bound several times round the lower part of the body, and passing between the thighs. We saw a fine cap of red feathers in one of the canoes, and some of the natives were ornamented with the shell of a pearl-oyster, polished, and hung about the neck. The mode of ornament, so prevalent among the natives of this ocean, of puncturing, or tattooing their bodies, not one of them had adopted; but, though singular in this respect, their being of the same common race is not to be doubted. Their language more resembles the dialect of Otaheite, than that of Mangea or Watecoo. Like the natives of those islands, they enquired from whence we came, whither bound, the ship's name, that of our Captain, and the number of men on board. Such questions as we proposed to them, in our turn, they very readily answered. They informed us, among other particulars, that they had before seen two large ships, but had not spoken to them as they passed. These were, doubtless, the Resolution and Adventure. They acquainted us, that the name of their island was Terougemou Atooa; and that they were subject to Teeravatooa, king of Watecoo. Their food, they said, consisted of cocoa-nuts, fish, and turtle; being destitute of dogs and hogs, and the island not producing bread-fruit or plantains. Their canoes (near 30 of which appeared one time in sight) are tolerably

large, and well built, and bear some resemblance to those of Waiteoo. About one o'clock, we drew near the N. W. part of the island; this being the only place where we could expect to find a good anchorage. Captain Cook immediately dispatched lieutenant King, with two armed boats, to sound, and reconnoitre the coast. The boats were no sooner hoisted out, than our new visitors suspended their traffic, pushing for shore as fast as possible, and came no more near us. The boats returned at three o'clock, and Mr. King informed the Captain, that he could find no anchorage for the ships; and that the boats could advance no farther than the outer edge of the reef, which was almost a quarter of a mile from the shore. That a number of the natives came upon the reef armed with clubs and long pikes, meaning, as he supposed, to oppose his landing; though, at the same time, they threw coconuts to our people, and requested them to land: yet, notwithstanding this seemingly friendly treatment, the women were very active in bringing down a fresh supply of darts and spears. This report having been taken into consideration, it was concluded, that, as we could not bring the ships to an anchor, an attempt to procure grass here would be attended with delay and danger. Being thus disappointed in all the islands after our leaving New Zealand, and having from variety of circumstances, been unavoidably retarded in our progress, it was in vain to think of doing any thing this year in the high latitudes of the northern hemisphere, from which we were so far distant, though it was now the season for our operations there. Thus situated, it was necessary to pursue such measures as appeared best calculated to preserve our cattle, and save the stores and provisions of the ships; the better to enable us to prosecute our northern discoveries, which could not commence till a year later than was intended. If we could fortunately have procured a supply of water and grass, at any of the islands we had lately visited, we intended to have stood back to the S. till we had got a westerly wind. But without such a supply, the certain consequence of doing this, would have been the loss of the cattle, before it was possible for us to reach Otahite, without gaining a single point of advantage respecting the grand object of our voyage. The Captain, therefore, determined to bear away for the Friendly Isles, where he knew he could be well supplied with every thing he wanted; and it being necessary to run night and day, he ordered Captain Clerke to keep with the Discovery right a-head of us, because that ship could best claw off the land, which we might possibly fall in with in our passage.

Bearing away, therefore, we steered W. by S. with fine breeze. It was proposed to proceed first to Middleburgh, or Eooa, thinking we might have provision enough for the cattle, to last till we should arrive at that island. But the next day, about noon, those faint breezes that had so long retarded us, again returned; and we found it necessary to get into the latitude of Palmerston's and Savage Islands, which Captain Cook discovered in 1774; that, in case of necessity, recourse might be had to them. The weather continued variable, and though plenty of rain fell every day, yet it was found advisable to obtain water by distillation, to be used for every purpose for which it was fit. The still was kept at work a whole day; during which time we procured about 15 gallons of fresh water. It was apt to discolour the meat in which it was boiled, and to tincture every thing with a disagreeable blackness; but our crews preferred it to rain-water, on account of the tarry taste communicated by the latter. Light breezes continued till Thursday, the 10th; at which time the wind blew some hours fresh from the N. and N. W. In the afternoon we had some heavy rain, attended with thunder squalls. We collected as much rain-water as filled five of our puncheons. When these squalls had blown over, the wind was very unsettled, till the next day at noon, when it was fixed at N. N. W. and blew a fresh breeze. Sunday, the 13th, at day-break, we came in sight of Palmerston's Island, bearing W. by S. at the distance of about 5 leagues; but did not get up with it

No. 54.

till the 14th, at eight o'clock A. M. We now dispatched three boats, and one from the Discovery, with a proper officer in each, to search for a convenient landing place; we being, at this time, under an absolute necessity of procuring here some provender for our cattle, or we must certainly have lost them. What is called here Palmerston's Island, consists of a group of small islets, about nine or ten in number, connected together by a reef of coral rocks, and lying in a circular direction. The boats first examined the most fourth-easterly islet; and not succeeding there, ran down to the second, where they immediately landed. We now bore down with the ships, till we were abreast of the place, where we kept standing off and on, there being no bottom to be found to anchor upon. This, however, was of no material consequence, as there were no human beings upon the island, except the party who had landed from our boats. One of these returned at one o'clock, laden with scurvy-grass, and young cocoa-trees, which was, at this time, a most excellent repast for our animals on board. A message was brought from Mr. Gore, who commanded the party on this expedition, informing us, that the island abounded with the produce of which he had sent us a sample, and also with the wharra-tree and cocoa-nuts; in consequence of which the Captain resolved to procure a sufficient supply of these useful articles; before we quitted our station, and accordingly he went ashore in a small boat, accompanied by the Captain of the Discovery; where they found, to their satisfaction, every one hard at work.

The landing place of this islet is a small creek, formed by the reef, of rather more than a boat's length in every direction, and covered from the force of the sea, by rocks projecting on each side. The islet itself is scarcely a mile in circuit; and not above three feet higher than the level of the sea. It appears to consist of a coral sand, with a small mixture of blackish mould, produced from rotten vegetables: yet, this poor soil is covered with trees and bushes of the same kind as those we had seen at Otakootia or Wenoa-ette, though not in so great a variety. We perceived a great number of man-of-war-birds, tropic-birds, and two sorts of boobies, which were now laying their eggs, and so exceedingly tame as to permit us to take them off their nests, which consist only of a few sticks loosely put together. These tropic birds differ essentially from the common sort, being of a beautiful white, slightly tinged with red, and having two long tail-feathers of a deepish crimson. Our people killed a considerable number of each sort, which though not the most delicate kind of food, were highly acceptable to us, who had been a long time confined to a salt diet. We saw plenty of red crabs creeping about among the trees; and caught several fish, which, when the sea retired, had been left in holes upon the reef. At one part of this, which bounds the lake within, almost even with the surface, there is a large bed of coral, which affords a most enchanting prospect. Its base, which is fixed to the shore, extends so far that it cannot be seen, so that it appears to be suspended in the water. The sea was then unruffled, and the resplendence of the sun exposed the various sorts of coral, in the most beautiful order; some parts luxuriantly branching into the water; others appearing in vast variety of figures; and the whole heightened by spangles of the richest colours, glowing from a number of large clams, interspersed in every part. Even this delightful scene was greatly improved by the multitude of fishes, that gently glided along, seemingly with the most perfect security. Their colours were the most beautiful that can be imagined, blue, yellow, black, red, &c. far exceeding any thing that can be produced by art. The richness of this submarine grotto was increased greatly by their various forms; and the whole could not possibly be surveyed without a pleasing transport, accompanied, at the same time, with regret, that a work so astonishingly elegant should be concealed in a place so seldom explored by the human eye. No traces of any inhabitants having been here, were discovered. We saw, indeed, a piece of a canoe, upon the beach, but this

5 U

this might have been drifted from some other island. We were surpris'd, however, at perceiving some small brown rats on this little spot, not easily accounted for, unless we admit the possibility of their being imported in the canoe of which we saw the remains. The boats, when laden, returned on board, with the two captains, leaving Mr. Gore and his party to pass the night on shore, to be ready for business the next morning.

Tuesday, the 15th, like the preceding day, was spent in collecting subsistence for the cattle, consisting principally of tender branches of the wharra-tree, palm-cabbage, and young cocoa-nut trees. A sufficient supply of these having been procured by sun-set, the Captain ordered all the people on board: but, having very little wind, he determined to employ the next day, by endeavouring from the illor to the leeward, to get some cocoa-nuts for our people: to this end we kept standing off and on all night; and about nine o'clock in the morning, we went to the west side of the illor, and landed from our boats, with little difficulty. The people immediately were employed in gathering cocoa-nuts, which we found in the greatest plenty; but it was a tedious operation to convey them to our boats, being obliged to carry them half a mile over the reef, up to the middle in water. Omiah, who accompanied us, presently caught with a scoop-net, as many fish as supplied the party on shore with a dinner, besides sending a quantity to each ship. Men-of-war and tropic birds were found in abundance, so that we fared most sumptuously. In these trips to the uninhabited islands, Omiah was of the greatest service to us. He caught the fish, and dressed them, as well as the birds we killed, after the fashion of his country, with a dexterity and cheerfulness that did him honour. Before night, the boats made two trips, and were each time heavily laden: with the last, the Captain returned on board, leaving our third lieutenant, Mr. Williamson, to prepare another lading for the boats against the next morning. Accordingly about seven o'clock they were dispatched, and returned at noon. No delay was made in sending them back for another cargo, with orders for all hands to be on board by sun-set. These orders being punctually obeyed, we hoisted in our boats, and sailed to the westward, with a light breeze from the north. This last illor, which we now left, is somewhat larger than the other, and almost covered with cocoa-palms. The other productions were the same as at the first illor. On the beach we found two pieces of board, one of which was rudely carved, and an elliptical paddle. These were, perhaps, a part of the same canoe, the remains of which we had seen on the other beach, the two illors being within half a mile of each other. There were not so many crabs here as at the last place, but we found some scorpions and insects, and a much greater number of fish upon the reefs. Among the rest were some beautiful large spotted eels, which would raise themselves out of the water, and endeavour to bite their pursuers. There are also snappers, parrot-fish, and a brown spotted rock-fish, not larger than a small haddock, so tame, that it would remain fixed, and gaze at us. If we had been really in want, a sufficient supply might easily have been had, for thousands of the clams stuck upon the reef, many of which weighed two or three pounds. There were also some other sorts of shell-fish; and when the tide flowed several sharks came with it, some of which were killed by our people; but their presence rendered it, at that time, unsafe to walk in the water. Mr. Williamson and his party, who were left on shore, were much pestered in the night with musquitoes. Some of them shot two curlews, and some plovers on the shore: one or two cuckoos, like those at Wenoa-ette, were also seen. These illors, comprehended under the name of Palmerston's Island, may be said to be the summits of a reef of coral rock, covered only with a thin coat of sand; though clothed with trees and plants, like the low grounds of the high islands in this spacious ocean. They are situated in 18 deg. 11 min. S. lat. and 196 deg. E. long. from Greenwich.

We now steered W. in order to make Annamooka,

or, as it is called by the Dutch, Rotterdam, who first discovered it. We had variable winds with squalls, some thunder, and much rain. The showers being very copious, we saved a considerable quantity of water; and as we could procure a greater supply in one hour, by the rain, than by distillation in a month, we had the still aside, as being attended with more trouble than advantage. The heat, which had continued in the extreme for about a month, became much more disagreeable in this close rainy weather, and we apprehended it would soon become noxious. It is remarkable, that there was not then a single person sick on board either of the ships. On Tuesday the 22nd, we had clear weather, but a great swell from the S: a sure prelude of an approaching storm; which soon came on, and increased to such an alarming height before night, attended with thunder, lightning, and rain, with a tremendous sea, that brought the Discovery under bare poles till morning appeared. She then made sail under close reefed top-sails; and, about eleven at night, narrowly escaped running on shore on Savage Island. The man at the mill-head calling out land, they soon, dark as it was, got sight of it close on their lee-bow, steering directly for it. They instantly put about, and fired a gun as a signal for the Resolution (then to windward about half a mile) to do the same. So narrow an escape made a strong impression on the ship's company, who, thoughtless as seamen are, could not help looking up to heaven with thankful hearts for so signal a deliverance! As soon as it was light the next morning, we saw this execrated island at the distance of about four leagues. Savage Island was discovered by Captain Cook in 1774. In the night between the 24th and 25th we passed it; and on Monday, the 28th, about ten o'clock A. M. we saw the islands to the eastward of Annamooka, bearing N. by W. about five leagues distant. We steered to the S. and then haul'd up for Annamooka. At the approach of night, the weather being squally, with rain, we anchored in fifteen fathoms water. Immediately two canoes paddled towards us, and came along side without hesitation. Four men were in one of the canoes, and three in the other. They brought with them some sugar-canes, bread-fruit, plantains, and cocoa-nuts, which they bartered with us for nails. After these canoes had left us, we were visited by another, but night approaching, she did not continue long with us. The nearest island to us was Komango, five miles distant; to which, at four o'clock the next morning, lieutenant King was dispatched with two boats, in order to procure refreshments. At five, signal was made to weigh, to proceed to Annamooka. When day-light appeared, we were visited by six or seven canoes, bringing with them two pigs, some fowls, several large wood-pigeons, small rails, and some violet coloured coots, besides fruits, and roots of various kinds, which they exchanged with us for nails, hatchets, beads, &c. They had other articles of commerce, but captain Cook gave particular orders that no curiosities should be purchased, till the ships were supplied with provisions, and they should have permission from him. About noon Mr. King's boat returned with seven hogs, some fowls, a quantity of fruit and roots: also some goats for our animals. His party was treated with great civility at Komango. The inhabitants did not appear to be numerous; and their huts, which almost touched each other, were but indifferent. Tooboulangee, the chief of the island, and another, named Taipa, came on board with Mr. King. They brought a hog, as a present to our Captain, and promised to bring a greater number the next day. The boats being aboard, we stood for Annamooka-ette (or little Annamooka) and the breakers at the S. E. but on drawing near, we met with very irregular soundings, which obliged us to relinquish the design, and go to the southward. This carried us to leeward, and we found it necessary to spend the night under sail. It was dark and rainy, and we had the wind from every direction. The next morning, Wednesday, the 30th, at day-light, we were farther off than we had been in the preceding evening, and the wind was now right in our teeth.

We continued to ply the whole day, to very little purpose; and, in the evening, anchored in 39 fathoms water; the west-point of Annamooka bearing E. N. E. four miles distant. Tooboulangee and Taipa, agreeable to their promise, brought off some hogs; and we obtained others, by bartering, from the different canoes that followed us, and a large quantity of fruit. It is remarkable, that those who visited the ships that day, would hardly part with any of their commodities to any one but Captain Cook.

On Thursday May the 1st, a boat was hoisted out, and the matter was ordered to sound the S. W. side of Annamooka. When he returned, he reported, that he had sounded between Great and Little Annamooka, where he found 12 fathoms depth of water; that the place was very well sheltered from winds; but that fresh water was to be had only at a considerable distance inland; and that even there it was neither plentiful nor good. For this good reason, it was resolved to anchor on the north side of the island, where, in the captain's former voyage, he had found a convenient place for watering and landing. Though not above a league distant, we did not reach it till about five o'clock in the afternoon, being retarded by the quantity of canoes that crowded round the ships, laden with abundant supplies of the produce of their island. Several of these canoes, which were double, had a large sail, and carried between 40 and 50 men each. Several women were also in them, incited, perhaps, by curiosity to visit us; though they were as eager as the men in bartering, and used the paddle with equal skill and dexterity. We worked into the road, and cast anchor in 18 fathoms, the island extending from E. to S. W. three quarters of a mile distant. Thus Captain Cook reformed the station which he had occupied when he visited Annamooka three years before; and probably where Taiman, who first discovered this island, anchored in 1643.

We had now been just 60 days in a passage, which in a direct course could not have exceeded ten, and had been exposed to severe trials, owing to some fatality in pursuing a track which there was not a seaman aboard who did not disapprove. It seemed to have no object of discovery in view, as we fell nearly into the same which Captain Cook had formerly navigated; nor did we meet with a single island, which one or other of our late voyagers had not seen or visited in their different routs. How it happened is not easy to be accounted for, as it was next to a miracle, that any creature on board the Resolution remained alive to reach our present harbour. Had not the copious rains that fell almost incessantly from the time that we passed the tropic till our arrival here, supplied us with a daily consumption of water, not only the animals, but the men must have perished. Happy were we now, however, in finding ourselves on a friendly coast. We forgot the dangers we had escaped, and thought only of enjoying with inexpressible pleasure the sweets of these happy islands, whose spontaneous productions perfume the air to a considerable distance with a fragrance inconceivably reviving; and whose plantations exhibit a richness of prospect as we approach them, owing to the beautiful intermixture of the various blossoms, with the vivid green leaves of the trees, of which the most animated description can afford but a faint idea. Add to these, the tufted clumps which adorn the little rising hills, that appear every where interspersed delightfully among the verdant lawns, and rich, low, surrounding vallies. Nothing in nature can be more pleasing to the eye, or more grateful to the sense. We were no sooner moored in the harbour, than we were surrounded with innumerable little boats, or canoes, most curiously constructed and ornamented; the sides with a polish that surpassed the blackest ebony, and the decks inlaid with mother of pearl and tortoiseshell, equal to the best cabinets of European manufacture. In this kind of workmanship, these islanders seem to excel. Their weapons of war, their clubs, the paddles of their boats, and even their fish-hooks are polished and inlaid with variegated shells, by an

infinite accumulation of which their shores are margined, and among them our naturalists found some of superlative beauty. These boats generally held three persons, and under their decks, which take up two thirds of their length, they brought the fruits of their plantations, and the manufactures of their country, which consisted of a great variety of useful things, and others ornamental. Of the first sort, besides cloth of different fabrics, were combs, fish-hooks, lines, nets, needles made of bone, thread, purses, calabashes made of reeds, so closely wrought as to be water-tight; with a variety of other utensils. Among the latter, were bracelets, breast-plates, ornamented with feathers of a vivid glow; masks, mantalets composed of feathers, so artfully and beautifully arranged, as even our English ladies would not disdain to wear.

Friday the 2nd, during the preparations for watering, Captain Cook went on shore, in the forenoon, accompanied by Captain Clerke, and others, to fix on a place for setting up the observatories, the natives having readily granted us permission. Nor was the civility of the chiefs confined to their readiness in supplying the ships with provisions; for they complimented the Captain with the use of a large boat-house, conveniently situated near the beach, and which answered the purpose of a tent; and at the same time presented the officers with breast-plates, beautifully decorated with feathers, being the richest offerings they had to make. In return, our commander was not wanting in generosity, loading them with hatchets, knives, linen-cloth, glass, and beads, with which they thought themselves amply repaid. Toobou, the chief of the island, conducted Captain Cook and Omiah to his house, situated on a pleasant spot in the centre of his plantation. It was surrounded with a grass-plot, which he said was for the purpose of cleaning their feet before they entered his habitation. Such an attention to cleanliness we had never observed before, wherever we had visited in this ocean; though we afterwards found it to be very common at the Friendly Islands. No carpet in an English drawing-room could be kept neater, than the mats that covered the floor of Toobou's house. Tents were now carried on shore, the astronomers observatory erected; wooders and waterers appointed; and all the artificers on board employed in the reparations of the ships; not a few being wanting after a voyage of two months, through a tempestuous sea, during which the elements of fire, air, and water, might be said to be in perpetual conflict. While these things were about, we bartered for some hogs and fruit; the ships were crowded with the natives; and as very few of them came empty-handed, we were speedily supplied with every refreshment. During these transactions the two captains, and the chiefs of Annamooka, were contriving to vary the pleasures of their respective guests, and to entertain them with new diversions. They were mutually engaged on board and on shore to surprise each other with novelty. On board, the chiefs were entertained with music, dancing, and feasting, after the European manner; and with what seemed more pleasing to them, as they paid more attention thereto, with the various operations of the artificers who were at work on their respective employments. The facility with which the boat-builders performed their work attracted particularly their notice: when they beheld the labour of a year with them performed in a week, by a less number of hands, their astonishment was beyond conception; nor were they less amazed to see large timber cut through the middle, and sawed into plank, while they were spectators, which they had no means of effecting in their island in many days. The chiefs on shore, in return, endeavoured to entertain our gentlemen: they feasted them, like tropical kings, with barbecued hogs, fowls, and with the most delicious fruits. After dinner, they introduced their music, and dancers, who were chiefly of the theatrical kind, and excelled in agility, and varied attitudes, many of the capital performers in Europe. A sort of pantomime succeeded, in which some prize-fighters displayed their feats of arms; and this part of the drama concluded with a humorous representation

presentation of some laughable story, which produced among the chiefs, and their attendants, the most immoderate mirth. The songsters came last, the melody of whose voices was heightened by a kind of accompaniment, not unusual in the earliest ages, among the politest nations, as may be learnt from ancient paintings, where the singers and dancers are represented with flat clams or shells in their hands, snapping them together, to harmonize their tunes, and regulate their movements. Though this farcical exhibition was insipid to us, it was not wholly without its use, in marking a similarity of manners among mankind, at the distance of half the globe, and at a period when the arts of civil life were in their infancy. Who knows, but that the seeds of the liberal arts, that have now been sown by European navigators in these happy climes, may, a thousand years hence, be ripened into maturity; and that the people, who are just emerging from ignorance into science, may, when the memory of these voyages are forgotten, be found in the zenith of their improvements by other adventurers, who may pride themselves as the first discoverers of new countries, and an unknown people, infinitely superior to those, who at that time, may inhabit these regions, and who may have lost their boasted arts, as we, at this day see, among the wretched inhabitants of Greece, and the still more miserable slaves of Egyptian bondage. Such are the vicissitudes to which the inhabitants of this little orb are subject; and such, perhaps, are the vicissitudes which the globe itself must undergo before its final dissolution. To a contemplative mind, these islands present a mortifying spectacle of the ruins of a broken and desolated portion of the earth; for it is impossible to survey so many fragments of rocks, some with inhabitants and some without, and not conclude with the learned Dr. Burnet, that they are the effects of some early convulsion of the earth, of which no memory remains.

Captain Cook having settled every thing to his satisfaction, returned on board in the evening, leaving Mr. King in command upon the island. Taipa was now become our trusty friend, and, in order to be near our party, had a house carried on mens shoulders, a quarter of a mile, and placed by the side of the shed which our party occupied.

On Saturday the 3d, our various operations on shore began. Some were busied in making hay, others in filling our water-casks, and a third party in cutting wood. On this day Mess. King and Baily began to observe equal latitudes of the sun, in order to get the rate of our time-keepers. In the evening, Taipa harangued the natives for some time, but we could only guess at the subject, and supposed he was instructing them how to treat us, and advising them to bring the produce of the island to market. His eloquence had the desired effect, and occasioned us to receive a plentiful supply of provisions the day following. On the 4th, the discovery lost her small bower anchor, the cable being cut in two by the rocks. On the 6th, we were visited by a chief from Tongataboo, whose name was Feenou: he was introduced by Taipa in the character and stile of king of all the Friendly Isles. Captain Cook was now informed, that, on our arrival, a canoe had been immediately dispatched to Tongataboo with the news, which occasioned his coming to Annamooka. We were also informed by the officer on shore, that, on his arrival, all the natives were ordered out to meet him, who saluted him by bowing their heads as low as his feet, the soles of which they touched with the palm of each hand, and afterwards with the back part. A personage received with such extraordinary marks of respect, could not be supposed less than a king. In the afternoon our captain went to pay a visit to this great man, having first received from him a present of two fish, brought on board by one of his attendants. As soon as the captain landed, Feenou came up to him. He was tall and thin, and appeared to be about thirty years of age. His features were more of the European cast than any we had seen here. After the first salutation, Captain Cook requested to know if he was king; as he

entertained some doubts on that score, perceiving he was not the man whom he remembered to have seen in that character during his former voyage. Taipa answered eagerly for him, and mentioned no less than 153 islands, of which, he said, he was the sovereign. Soon after, our grand visitor, attended by five or six servants, accompanied us on board. Captain Cook made them suitable presents, and entertained them in a manner which he thought would be most agreeable to them. Towards the evening the captain attended them on shore in his boat, into which, by order of the chief, three hogs were conveyed, as a return for the presents he had received. We were then informed of an accident, the relation of which will convey some idea of the extent of the authority exercised here over the inferior sort of people. While Feenou was on board the Resolution, an inferior chief ordered all the natives to retire from the post they occupied. Some of them, however, having ventured to return, he beat them most unmercifully with a large stick. One, in particular received so violent a blow on the side of the face, that the blood gushed from his mouth and nostrils; and, after lying motionless for some time, he was removed from the place in convulsions. The savage who gave the blow, on being told, that he had certainly killed the man, only laughed at the circumstance, and, indeed, it was very evident he did not grieve for what he had done. We had afterwards the satisfaction of hearing, that the poor sufferer was out of danger. On the 7th, being Wednesday, the Discovery having found her small bower anchor, shifted her birth; but not till after her best bower cable had met with the fate of the other. This day Feenou dined on board the Resolution; and also on the next, when he was attended by Taipa, Toobou, and some other chiefs. Taipa only, however, was permitted to sit at table with Feenou, or even to eat in his presence. The captain was highly pleased on account of this etiquette; for before the arrival of Feenou, he had generally a larger company than he chose, his table being crowded with visitors of both sexes. For though at Otaheite the females are denied the privilege of eating in company with the men, this is not the practice at the Friendly Islands.

A large junk axe having been stolen out of the ship by one of the natives, on the first day of our arrival at Annamooka, application was made to Feenou to exert his authority to get it restored; who gave orders for that purpose, which exacted such implicit obedience, that it was brought on board before we had finished our dinner. We had many opportunities of remarking how expert these people were in thievery. Even some of their chiefs were not ashamed of practicing that art. On the 9th, one of them was detected carrying out of the ship the bolt belonging to the spun-yarn winch, which he had carefully concealed under his cloaths; for which offence the captain sentenced him to receive a dozen lashes, and to be confined till he paid a hog for his liberty. Though, ~~under~~ this circumstance we were troubled with no more thieves of rank, their servants and slaves were constantly employed in this dirty business; and they received a flogging with as much seeming indifference, as if it had been upon the main-mast. When any of them were caught in the act of thieving, instead of interceding in their behalf, their masters would advise us to kill them: but as we were not disposed to be their judges and executioners, they generally escaped without any kind of punishment; for we thought them to be alike insensible of the shame and torture of corporal chastisement. At length Captain Clerke contrived a mode of punishment which had some effect. Immediately upon detection he ordered their heads to be completely shaved, and thus pointed them out as objects of ridicule to their countrymen; at the same time our people were put upon their guard, to deprive them of future opportunities for a repetition of their thefts. Feenou was so fond of our company, that he dined on board every day, but he did not always partake of our fare. Saturday the 10th, his servants brought him a mess, which had been dressed

on shore, consisting of fish, soup, and yams; cocoa-nut liquor had been used instead of water, in which the fish had been boiled or stewed, (perhaps in a wooden vessel with hot stones) and it was brought on board in a plantain leaf. Captain Cook tasted of the mels, and was so well pleased with it, that he afterwards ordered some fish to be dressed in the same way; but though his cook succeeded tolerably well, it was much inferior to the dish he attempted to imitate.

Sunday the 11th, we removed from the shore, the observatories, horses, and a variety of things we had landed, intending to sail as soon as the Discovery should have recovered her best bower anchor. The live stock which had been landed the day after our arrival, on a small island, about half a mile from the shore to graze, were amazingly recovered: from perfect skeletons, the horses and cows were grown plump, and as playful as colts. On the 12th, the tents were struck, and Mr. Phillipson, lieutenant of marines, lost all his bedding, by the carelessness of the sentinel, who received 12 lashes for neglect of duty. In the morning, the long-boat was found swamped, and all the stern sheets, and several other articles belonging to her missing, and never recovered, for which the marine, who had the care of the watch, was severely punished. Feenou, hearing that the captain meant to proceed to Tongataboo, earnestly entreated him to alter his plan; expressing as much aversion to it, as if, by diverting him from it, he wished to promote some particular interest of his own. He warmly recommended a group of islands called Hapace, lying to the N. E. where he assured us, we could be easily and plentifully supplied with every refreshment; and even offered to attend us thither in person. In consequence of his advice Hapace was made choice of; and as it had not been visited by any European vessel, the surveying it became an object to Captain Cook. On Tuesday the 13th, Captain Clerke's anchor was happily recovered; and on the morning of the 14th, we made sail, and left Annamooka, with a fine breeze, wind N. E. course W. S. W.

Notwithstanding this island is somewhat higher than the other small isles that surround it, yet it is lower than Manglea and Wateoo; and even those are but of a moderate height. The shore where our ships lay, consists of a steep, rugged, coral rock, about nine or ten feet high, except two sandy beaches, which are defended from the sea, by a reef of the same sort of rock. In the centre of the island is a salt water lake, about a mile and a half in length, round which the ground rises with a gradual ascent, and we could not trace its having any communication with the sea. On the rising parts of the island, especially towards the sea, the soil is either of a blackish loose mould, or a reddish clay; but there is not a stream of fresh water to be found in any part of the island. The land is well cultivated, except in a few places; and, though some parts appear to be waste, they are only left to recover the strength exhausted by constant culture; for we often saw the natives at work upon these fallows, in order to plant them again. Yams and plantains form their principal plantations; many of which are very extensive, and enclosed with fences of reeds about six feet high. Fences of less compass were often seen within these; surrounding the houses of the principal people. The bread-fruit and cocoa-nut-trees are interpersed without any regular order, but principally near the habitations of the natives. The other parts of the island, especially towards the sea and round the lake, are covered with luxuriant trees and bushes; among which are a great many mangroves and faitano-trees. All the rocks and stones about the island are of coral, except in one place, to the right of the sandy beach, where there is a rock of about 25 feet in height, of a calcareous stone, and of a yellowish colour; but even here, some large pieces are to be seen of the same coral rock as that which composes the shore. We sometimes amused ourselves by walking up the country and shooting wild ducks, resembling our widgeon, which are very numerous on the salt lake, as well as on the

No. 55.

pool where we procured our water. We found, in these excursions, that the inhabitants frequently deserted their houses to repair to the trading place, without entertaining the least suspicion, that strangers would take away, or destroy, any property that belonged to them. From this circumstance it might be supposed, that most of the natives were sometimes collected on the beach, and that there could be no great difficulty in forming an accurate computation of their number; but the continual resort of visitors from other islands, rendered it impossible. However as we never saw more than a thousand persons collected together at one time, it may reasonably be supposed, that there are twice that number upon the island. In the direct track to Hapace, whither we were now bound, to the N. and N. E. of Annamooka, a great number of small isles are seen. We had more than 60 within sight, all of them surrounded with reefs of rocks, with so many windings and turnings, as truly might be said to constitute a labyrinth. Amidst the rocks and shoals adjoining to this group, we were doubtful whether there might be a free passage for ships of such magnitude as ours; though the natives sailed through the intervals in their canoes: therefore when we weighed anchor from Annamooka, we steered to go to the wellward of the above islands, and N. N. W. towards Kao and Toofoa, two islands remarkable for their great height, and the most westerly of those in sight. Feenou, with his attendants remained in the Resolution till about noon of Wednesday the 15th, and then entered the large sailing canoe, which had brought him from Tongataboo, and stood in among the cluster of islands of which we were now abreast. They are scattered, at unequal distances, and most of them are as high as Annamooka. Some of them are two or three miles in length, and others only half a mile. Many of them have steep rocky shores; some reddish cliffs; and others have sandy beaches, extending almost their whole length. In general, they are entirely clothed with trees, among which are many cocoa-palms, each having the appearance of a beautiful garden placed in the sea. The serene weather we now had, contributed greatly to heighten the scene; and the whole might convey an idea of the realization of some fairy land. It appears, that some of these islands have been formed, as Palmerston's island was supposed to have been; for one of them is now entirely sand, and another has but a single bush or tree upon it. About four o'clock P.M. we steered to the north, leaving Toofoa and Kao on our larboard. We intended to have anchored for the night, but it came on before we could find a place in less than 50 fathoms water; and we rather chose to spend the night under sail, than come to in such a depth. At four o'clock in the afternoon, we had been within two leagues of Toofoa, and observed the smoke thereof several times in the day. There is a volcano upon it, of which the friendly islanders entertain some superstitious notions, and call it Kollofca, saying it is an Otooa, or divinity. We were informed, that it sometimes throws up very large stones, and the Crater is compared to the size of a very small islet, which has not ceased smoking in the memory of the inhabitants; nor have they any tradition that it ever did. We sometimes saw the smoke from the centre of the island, even at Annamooka, the distance of at least 10 leagues. We were told, that Toofoa is but thinly inhabited, but that the water upon it is excellent. On Thursday the 15th, at day-break, we were not far from Kao, which is a large rock of a conic figure; we steered to the passage between Footooha and Hafaiva, with a gentle breeze, at S. E. About ten o'clock, Feenou came on board, and continued with us all day. He brought with him some fruit and two hogs; and in the course of the day, several canoes came to barter quantities of the former article, which were very acceptable to us, as our stock began to be low. At noon we observed in latitude 19 deg. 49 min. 45 sec. S. and we had made seven miles longitude from Annamooka; at the same time Toofoa bore N. 88 deg. W. Kao N. 71 deg. W. Footooha N. 89 deg. W. and Hafaiva S. 12 deg. W.

5 X

C H A P.

C H A P. V.

Arrival of the Resolution and Discovery at Hapae—Friendly reception at that place—Taipa harangues the natives—Presents, solemnities, and entertainments on that occasion—Marines exercised—A dance, fire-works, and nocturnal entertainments—The island of Lefooga described—Occurrences there—A female oculist discovered—Singular expedients used for floating the hair—The Resolution and Discovery remove to another station—A remarkable artificial mound and stone—Hoolaiva described—Account of Poulabo, King of the Friendly Isles—The two ships depart from Hapae Islands, and return to Annamooka—Kotoo described—They strike on the rocks, but arrive safe at Tongataboo—Meeting of Poulabo and Feenou—Favourable reception of our people at Tongataboo, to whom the natives resort from all parts—An excursion to Mareewagee—A description of the village where the chiefs reside—A curious work of art—Process of manufacturing cloth—A grand Harva, with a variety of entertainments—Presents made to the chiefs—Thefts committed by the natives—The king and other chiefs confined on that account—His present and Harva after their release—Muskets and other articles are stolen from some of our officers—Complaints made to the king on this subject—The whole of them returned—Description of a Piatooka—Of a country entertainment at Poulabo's house—His morning ceremony—Manner of preparing the liquor from the Kava plant—Account of a small island, called Onezy—Mr. King accompanied by Mr. Anderson, visit Futtafaibe the king's brother—How entertained by him—How they passed the night—Observations on the country they passed through—Preparations made for our departure from Tongataboo.

AFTER having passed Footooha, we met with a reef of rocks, and, being little wind, we found some difficulty in keeping clear of them. When we had passed this reef, we hauled up for Necneeva, a small low isle in the direction of E. N. E. from Footooha, in hopes of finding an anchorage, but were again disappointed; for notwithstanding we had land in every direction, the sea was unfathomable. In the course of this night, we saw plainly the flames issuing from a burning mountain upon Toofoa. On Friday the 16th, at day-break, we held on our course for Hapae, which at this time was in sight, and we perceived it to be low land, from the trees only appearing above the water. At nine o'clock it appeared to form three islands, equal nearly in size; and soon after, a fourth appeared to the southward of these, as large as any of the others. Each of the islands appeared to be of a similar height and aspect, and about six or seven miles in length. The most northern of them is called Haanno, the next Foa, the third Lefooga, and the fourth Hoolaiva; but they are all four included under the general name of Hapae. By sun-set, we got up with the northernmost of these isles, where we experienced the same distress for want of anchorage, that we did the two preceding evenings, having another night to spend under sail, with land and breakers in every direction. Feenou, who had been on board all day, went forward to Hapae in the evening, and took Omiah with him in the canoe. He was not unmindful of our disagreeable situation, and kept up a good fire the whole night, by way of land-mark. Saturday, the 17th, at day-break, being then close in with Foa, we perceived it was joined to Haanno, by a reef running from one island to the other, even with the surface of the sea. A boat was now dispatched in search of anchorage; and a proper place was found, abreast of a reef which joins Lefooga to Foa, having 24 fathoms depth of water. In this station the northern point of Hapae bore N. 16 deg. E. The southern point of Hapae, or the fourth end of Hoolaiva, S. 29 deg. W. and the north end of Lefooga, S. 65 deg. E. Two ledges of rocks lay without us; the one bearing S. 50 deg. W. and the other W. by N. half N. distant two or three miles. We were not more than three quarters of a mile from the shore; and, as we lay before a creek in the reef, it was convenient landing at all times.

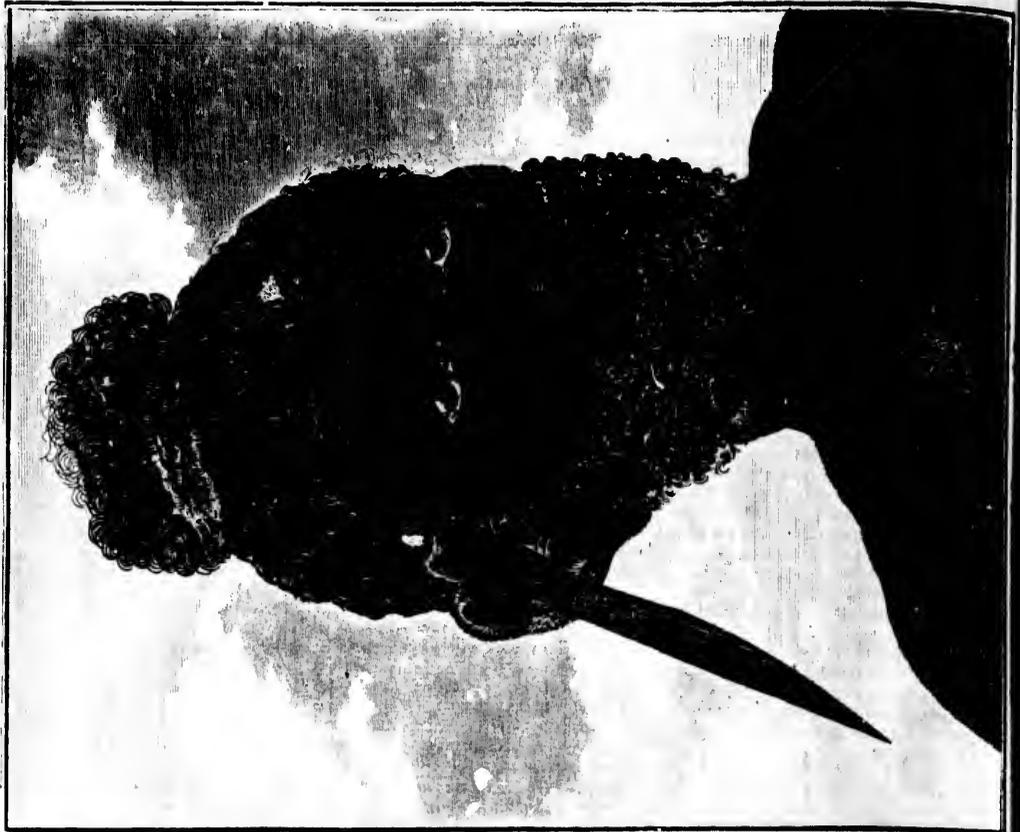
We had scarcely moored, before we were surrounded with natives from all quarters, who had been apprized of our coming, and who had loaded their canoes with hogs, fowls, bread-fruit, yams, plantains, and every kind of fruit the island produced, which they exchanged for broken glass, red and blue beads, hatchets, knives, nails, shreds of scarlet cloth, or indeed any thing we offered them. Here our friend Feenou assumed the same consequence as at Annamooka. He brought along-side his canoe laden with four large hogs, bread-fruit, and shaddocks, a fine odoriferous fruit, in smell and taste not unlike a lemon, but larger and rounder. He brought likewise yams of an enormous size, weighing from 50 to 60 pounds each. Feenou and Omiah

having come on board in order to introduce our commander to the natives of the island, he soon accompanied them on shore for that purpose. The chief conducted the captain to a hut, situated close to the sea-beach, which was brought thither but a few minutes before for his reception. In this Feenou, Omiah, and Captain Cook, were seated. The other chiefs and the multitude appeared fronting them on the outside; and they also seated themselves. Captain Cook being asked how long he intended to stay, said five days. Taipa was, therefore, ordered to sit by him, and declare this to the people. Hereupon he harangued them in words nearly to the following purport, as we were afterwards informed by Omiah. He exhorted both old and young, to look upon Captain Cook as a friend, who meant to continue with them a few days; and that, during his stay among them, they would not steal any thing from him, or offend him in any other manner. He informed them that it was expected they should bring hogs, fruit, &c. to the ships; for which they would receive such articles as he enumerated in exchange. Soon after Taipa had delivered his address to the assembly, Feenou left them; on which Captain Cook was informed by Taipa, that it was necessary he should make a present to Earoupa, the chief of the island. The captain being not unprepared for this, gave him such articles as far exceeded his expectation. This liberality created similar demands from two chiefs of other isles who were present, and even from Taipa himself. Soon after he had made the last of these presents, Feenou returned, and expressed his displeasure to Taipa, for suffering the captain to be so lavish of his favours. But this was doubtless a finesse, as he certainly acted in concert with the others. Feenou, having resumed his seat, ordered Earoupa to sit by him, and harangue the people as Taipa had done, which he did nearly to the same purport. These ceremonies being over, the chief, at the captain's request, conducted him to three stagnant pools of, what he called, fresh water; in one of which the water was indeed tolerable, and the situation convenient for filling the casks. When the chief returned to his former station, he found a baked hog, and some yams smothering hot, ready to be conveyed on board for his dinner. He invited Feenou and his friends to partake of the repast, and they embarked for the ship, though none but himself sat down with us at table. Dinner being over, the captain conducted them ashore; and, before he returned, received as a present from the chief, a fine large turtle, and a quantity of yams. We had a plentiful supply of provisions, for, in the course of the day, we got, by bartering with the natives, about 20 small hogs, together with a large quantity of fruit and roots.

Sunday the 18th, early in the morning, Feenou and Omiah, who now, with the chief, lay on shore, came aboard to request Captain Cook's presence upon the island. He accompanied them, and upon landing, was conducted to the place where he had been seated the preceding day, and where he beheld a large concourse of people already assembled. Though we imagined something

the natives—Present,
annual entertainments—
boats used for bearing the
one—Hoolarva described
and return to Anamooka
Feenou—Favourable re-
sponse—A description of
of Hoolarva, with a variety
of chiefs confined on that
island—Account of a small
island—How entertained by him
for our departure from

to introduce our com-
he soon accompanied
the chief conducted the
the sea-beach, which
minutes before for his
h, and Captain Cook,
and the multitude ap-
outside: and they also
look being asked how
re days. Taipa was,
, and declare this to
, and declared them in words
as we were after wards
both old and young,
friend, who meant to
and that, during his
steal any thing from
manner. He informed
ould bring hogs, fruit,
would receive such
change. Soon after
to the assembly, Fee-
Cook was informed
should make a pre-
island. The captain
ve him such articles
his liberality created
other isles who were
himself. Soon after
resents, Feenou re-
asure to Taipa, for
with of his favours.
s he certainly acted
ou, having refused
him, and harangue
ch he did nearly to
nies being over, the
ducted him to three
fresh water; in one
erable, and the situ-
calks. When the
n, he found a baked
ot, ready to be con-
He invited Feenou
epast, and they em-
ut himself sat down
g over, the captain
re he returned, re-
a fine large turtle,
d a plentiful supply
of the day, we got,
out 20 small hogs,
fruit and roots.
orning, Feenou and
et on shore, came
ference upon the
and upon landing,
had been seated the
d a large concourse
ugh we imagined
something



—
for
ne
sp
de
ya
ca
nu
ki
ou
ha
ru
on
th
pr
pl
an
Fi
fo
ac
jo
w
ra
th
fi
fe
co
of
fi
T
be
en
yi
co
do
re
ju
th
qu
th
fe
co
te
an
an
m
w
be
T
in
T
in
of
be
fe
ne
en
ch
fe
ch
m
C
w
in
in
ve
lo
fa
fr
in
fr
no
fo
in
the
R

Something extraordinary was in agitation, yet we could not conjecture what, nor could Omiah give us any information. Soon after we were feated, about an hundred of the natives appeared, and advanced, laden with yams, plantains, bread-fruit, cocoa-nuts, and sugar-canes; their burthens were deposited on our left. A number of others arrived soon after, bearing the same kind of articles, which were collected into two piles on our right-side. To these were fastened two pigs, and half a dozen fowls, and to those on the left, six pigs, and two turtles. Earoupa seated himself before the articles on our left, and another chief before those on our right; they being, as we supposed, the two chiefs who had procured them by order of Feenou, who was as implicitly obeyed here, as he had been at Annamooka, and who had probably laid this tax upon the chiefs of Hapee for the present occasion. When this munificent collection of provisions was placed in order, and advantageously disposed for public view, the bearers joined the multitude, who formed a circle round the whole. Immediately after, a number of men, armed with clubs, entered this circle or area; where they paraded about for a few minutes, and then one half of them retired to one side, and the other half to the other side, seating themselves before the spectators. Presently after, they successively entertained us with single combats: one champion on one side challenging those of the other side, partly by words, but more by expressive gestures, to send one of their party to oppose him. The challenge was in general accepted; the two combatants placed themselves in proper attitudes; and the engagement began, which continued till one of them yielded, or till their weapons were broken. At the conclusion of each combat, the victor squatted himself down before the chief, then immediately rose up and retired. Some old men, who seemed to preside as judges, gave their plaudit in a very few words; but the multitude, especially those on the side of the conqueror, celebrated the glory he had acquired in two or three loud huzzas. In these mock fights, which differed but little from our cudgel-players in England, the combatants beat one another pretty severely. This entertainment was sometimes suspended for a short space, and the intervals of time were filled up with wrestling and boxing matches. The first were performed in the method practised at Otaheite, and the second differed very little from the English manner. A couple of stout wenchers next stepped forth, and, without ceremony, began boxing with as much dexterity as the men. This contest, however, was but of short duration, for, in the space of half a minute, one of them gave it up. The victorious heroine was applauded by the spectators, in the same manner as the successful combatants of the other sex. Though we expressed our disapprobation of this part of the entertainment, it did not prevent, however, two other females from entering the lists; who seemed to be spirited girls, and if two old women had not interposed to part them, would probably have given each other a good drubbing. When these sports were exhibited, three thousand spectators, at least, were present, and every thing was conducted with the most perfect good humour on all sides, though some of the champions, of both sexes, received blows which they must have felt the effect of for some time after.

The diversions being finished, the chief informed Captain Cook, that the provisions on our right-hand were a present to Omiah; and that those on our left, making about two thirds of the whole quantity, were intended for him, and that he might suit his own convenience in taking them aboard. Four boats were loaded with the munificence of Feenou, whose favours far exceeded any that Captain Cook had ever received from the sovereigns of any of the islands we had visited in the Pacific Ocean. He, therefore, embraced the first opportunity of convincing Feenou, that we were not insensible of his liberality, by bestowing upon him such commodities as he supposed were most valuable in his estimation. Feenou was so highly pleased with the return that was made him, that he left the captain still indebted to him, by sending him two large hogs,

some yams, and a considerable quantity of cloth. In this manner, and in ranging the island, botanizing, examining the curiosities, natural and artificial, we employed our time, while the live stock were recruiting their flesh, and the several artificers were completing the repairs of the ship. It is not easy for people, who are totally unacquainted with the language of a country, to make themselves masters of the civil policy of the inhabitants. Indeed it is next to impossible in a short residence among them. As we observed no such medium as money, by which the value of property is ascertained, it was not easy to discover what else they had substituted in its room, to facilitate the modes of traffic among themselves. That each had a property in the plantation he possessed, we could plainly discern; and the chiefs were ready enough to point out their possessions, the extent of which gave them consequence, as among other civilized nations; but no such thing as circulating property being discoverable, by the hoarding up of which, and laying it out occasionally to advantage, one might purchase another's landed or substantial property, we could not inform ourselves sufficiently, by what means the fisherman purchased his canoe, or the boat-builder his materials, yet there cannot remain a doubt, but that the boat-builder had an interest in his boat after it was built, as well as the chief in his plantation, after it is inclosed and cultivated. With us all was carried on by barter, and an imaginary value fixed on every article. A hog was rated at a hatchet, and so many bread-fruit, cocoa nuts, and plantains, at a string of beads; and so in like manner throughout; but among themselves, we saw no such value by way of barter. We did not observe so much fruit given for so many fish; nor so many combs, needles, or useful materials, for a certain proportion of cloth; yet, doubtless, some mode of exchange there must be among them; for it is certain there is no such thing as money, at least, none that we could discern: neither could we discover any distinct property, which one man claimed more than another in the forests or woods; but that every man, like us, cut what he wanted for use, and was under no limitation for fuel. Salt, which is so necessary an article in European house-keeping, is wholly unknown to these tropical islanders.

Feenou having expressed a desire to see the marines perform their exercise, Captain Cook ordered them ashore on Tuesday the 20th. They went through their military manœuvres, surrounded by thousands of the natives, who were frightened at the first firing, and fled like herds of deer from the report of the guns; but finding no harm ensue, they took courage, and rallied at a distance; but no persuasions could prevail upon them to come near. After they had gone through various evolutions, and fired several volleys, the chief in his turn, entertained us with an exhibition, performed with an exactness, and agility, far surpassing what they had seen in our military movements. It was a kind of dance, performed by men, in which 105 persons were engaged, each having an instrument in his hand, resembling a paddle, two feet and a half long, with a thin blade, and a small handle. With these instruments various flourishes were made, each of which was accompanied with a different movement, or a different attitude of body. At first, the dancers ranged themselves in three lines, and so changed their stations by different evolutions, that those who had been in the rear came into the front. At one part of the performance, they extended themselves in one line; afterwards they formed themselves into a semi-circle, and then into two square columns. During the last movement, one of them came forward and performed an antic dance, with which the entertainment ended. The music that accompanied the dances was produced by two drums, or rather hollow logs of wood, from which they forced a few varied notes, by beating on them with two sticks. The dancers, however, did not appear to be much assisted or directed by these sounds, but by a chorus of vocal music, in which all the performers joined. Their song was rather meli-

ous, and their corresponding motions were so skilfully executed, that the whole body of dancers appeared as one regular machine. Such a performance would have been applauded even on an European theatre. It far exceeded any attempt that we had made to entertain them; inasmuch that they seemed to plume themselves on their superiority over us. They liked none of our musical instruments, except the drum, and even they thought that inferior to their own: our French horns they held in the highest contempt, and would not pay the smallest attention to them, either here, or at any other of the islands. To give them a more favourable opinion of the amusements, and superior attainments of the English, Captain Cook ordered some fire-works to be prepared; and after it was dark, exhibited them in the presence of Feenou, and a vast multitude of people. They were highly entertained with the display in general; but our water and sky-rockets astonished them beyond all conception; and they now admitted that the scale was turned in our favour.

This exhibition, however, served only as an additional stimulus to urge them to proceed to fresh exertions of their singular dexterity; for as soon as our fire-works were ended, a succession of dances, which Feenou had prepared for our entertainment, began. A band of music, or chorus, consisting of 15 men, seated themselves before us, in the centre of a circle formed by the numerous spectators. About four or five of the performers had each pieces of large bamboo, from three to six feet in length, each played on by one man, who held it almost vertically: the upper end whereof was open, but the other closed by one of the joints. They kept constantly striking the ground, though slowly, with the close end, and thus produced a variation in the notes, according to the different lengths of the instruments, but all were of the base or hollow kind; which was counteracted by a person who struck nimbly a piece of the same substance, split, and ping upon the ground, furnishing a tone as acute, as the others were grave and solemn. The whole of the band (including those who performed upon the bamboos) sung a slow soft air, which so finely tempered the harsher notes of the instruments, that the most perfect judge of the modulation of facet sounds, would confess the great power, and pleasing effect of this simple harmony. About a quarter of an hour after the concert began, 20 women entered the circle, whose hands were adorned with garlands of crimson flowers; and many of their persons were decorated with leaves of trees, curiously laced, or ornamented at the edges. They encircled those of the chorus, with their faces towards them, and began by singing a soft air, to which responses were made by the chorus; and those were alternately repeated. The women accompanied their song with many graceful motions of their hands, and continually advancing and retreating with one foot, while the other remained fixed. After this, they turned their faces to the assembly, and having sung some time, retreated slowly in a body, and placed themselves opposite to the hut, where the principal spectators sat. One of them next advanced from each side, passing each other in the front, and moving progressively till they came to the rest. On which two advanced from each side; two of whom returned, but the other two remained; and to these, from each side, came one by intervals, till they had, once more, formed a circle about the chorus. Dancing to a quicker measure now succeeded, in which the performers made a kind of half turn by leaping; then clapping their hands, and snapping their fingers, repeated some words in unison with the chorus. As they proceeded in the dance, the rapidity of their music increased; their gestures and attitudes were varied with wonderful dexterity; and some of their motions would, by an European, be thought rather indecent; though, perhaps, they meant only to display the astonishing variety of their movements. This female ballet was succeeded by one performed by 15 men; and though some of them were old, time seemed to have robbed them of but little of their agility. They were disposed in a sort of circle, divided at

the front. Sometimes they sung slowly, in concert with the chorus, making several graceful motions with their hands, but differing from those of the women; at the same time inclining the body alternately to either side, by raising one leg outward, and resting on the other; the arm of the same side being also stretched upward. They then recited sentences, which were answered by the chorus; and occasionally increased the measure of the dance, by clapping the hands and accelerating the motion of the feet. Towards the conclusion, the rapidity of the music and dancing so much increased, that the different movements were hard to be distinguished.

When this dance was finished, but after a considerable interval, 12 other men advanced, placing themselves in double rows, fronting each other. On one side was stationed a kind of prompter, who repeated several sentences, to which responses were made by the performers and the chorus. They sung and danced slowly; and gradually grew quicker, like those whom they had succeeded. Next to these nine women advanced and sat down opposite the hut where the chief had placed himself. A man immediately rose and gave the first of these women a blow on the back with both his fists joined; he treated the second and third in the same manner; but when he came to the fourth, he struck her on the breast: upon seeing this, a person instantly rising up from among the crowd, knocked him down with a blow on the head, and he was quickly carried away. But this did not excuse the other five women from so extraordinary a discipline; for they were treated in the same manner by a person who succeeded him. When these nine women danced, their performance was twice disapproved of, and they were obliged to repeat it again. There was no difference between this dance and that of the first set of women, except that these sometimes raised the body upon one leg, and then upon the other, alternately, by a sort of double motion. Soon after a person entered unexpectedly, making some ludicrous remarks on our fire-works that had been exhibited, which extorted a burst of laughter from the crowd. We had then a dance by the attendants of Feenou: they formed a double row of 24 each round the chorus, and joined in a gentle soothing song, accompanied with motions of the heads and hands. They also began with slow movements, which gradually became more and more rapid, and closed finally with several very ingenious transpositions of the two circles. The festival of this memorable night concluded with a dance, in which the principal people assisted. In many respects it resembled the preceding ones, but they increased their motions to a prodigious quickness, shaking their heads from shoulder to shoulder, inasmuch that they appeared in danger of dislocating their necks. This was attended with a clapping of the hands, and a kind of savage shriek. A person on one side, repeated something in a truly musical recitative, and with an air so graceful, as might put some of our applauded performers to the blush. He was answered by another, and this was repeated several times by the whole body on each side; and they finished, by singing and dancing, as they had begun. The two last dances were approved universally by the spectators. They were perfectly in time, and some of their gestures were so expressive, that it might justly be said, they spoke the language that accompanied them. The theatre for these exhibitions and performances was an open space among the trees, bordering on the sea, with lights placed at small intervals, round the inside of the circle. Though the concourse of people was pretty large, their number was much inferior to that assembled in the forenoon, when the marines performed their exercise. At that time many of our gentlemen supposed there might be present 5000 persons or upwards; but the captain thought that account rather exaggerated.

On Wednesday the 21st, a chief went on board the Discovery, and presented her captain with a large, elegant head-dress, ornamented with pearls, shells, and red feathers, and wreathed with flowers of the most splendid

splendent colours. In return, Captain Clerke loaded him with many useful articles of European manufacture, knives, scissars, saws, and some gaudy strings of beads, which were highly prized by the chief, who thought it no disgrace to saddle himself on shore, with his rich acquisitions. This day Captain Cook made an excursion into the island of Lefooga, which, in some respects, was found to be superior to Annamooka, the plantations being not only more numerous, but also more extensive. Various parts of the country near the sea are waste, owing perhaps to the sandiness of the soil; but in the internal parts of the island, the soil is better; and there the marks of population and of an improved state of cultivation, are very conspicuous. Many of the plantations are enclosed in such a manner, that the fences, running parallel to each other, form spacious public roads. Large spots, covered with the paper-mulberry-trees, were observed; and the plantations, in general, were stocked abundantly with such plants and fruit-trees as the island produces. To these we made some addition, by sowing the seeds of melons, pumpkins, Indian-corn, &c. At one place was a house, four times as large as the ordinary ones, with an extensive area of grass before it, to which the people probably resort on some public occasions, particularly in the rainy seasons. Near the landing-place we observed a mount, two or three feet high, whereon stood four or five little huts, in which the bodies of some persons of distinction had been interred. The island is but seven miles in length, and its breadth, in some places, is not more than three miles. The east-side has a reef, projecting considerably, against which the sea breaks with great violence. It is the continuation of this reef that joins Lefooga to Foa, which is but half a mile distant; and, at low water, the natives can walk upon this reef from one island to the other. The shore is either a sandy beach, or a coral rock. When the Captain returned on board from his excursion, he found a large sailing canoe fallen to our stern. In this came Latoolboula, or Kohage-too Fallangou, (one perhaps the name of the person, and the other the description of his rank or title) whom the captain had seen, during his last voyage, at Tongataboo, and who was then supposed by him to be the king of that island. He could not be prevailed upon to come on board, but continued sitting in his canoe with an uncommon air of gravity. The islanders called him Areekee, or king, a title which we had not heard any of them give to Feenou, however extensive his authority over them had appeared to be. Latoolboula remained under our stern till the evening and then departed. Feenou was on board the Resolution at that time, but neither of these chiefs took the smallest notice of each other.

On Thursday the 22nd, some of the natives having stolen a tarpaulin and other things from off the deck, the captain applied to Feenou, desiring him to exert his authority to get them restored; but this application was of no effect. On the 23d, as we were preparing to leave the island, Feenou and his prime-minister Taipa came along-side in a canoe, and informed us, that they were going to Vavaoo, an island, as they said, situated about two days sail to the northward of Hapace. They assured us, that the object of their voyage was to procure for us an additional supply of hogs, besides some red feathered caps for Omiah, to carry with him to Otaheite; and desired us not to fail till their return, which would be in four or five days; after which Feenou would accompany us to Tongataboo. Captain Cook consented to wait the return of this chief, who immediately, as he pretended, set out for Vavaoo. On the 24th, a report was industriously spread about by some of the islanders, that a ship resembling ours had arrived at Annamooka since we left it, and was now at anchor there. It was also said, that Toobou, the chief of that island, was hastening thither to receive those new visitors. Upon enquiry, however, it was found, that this report was totally void of foundation. It is difficult to conjecture, what purpose the invention of this tale could answer; unless we suppose it was contrived with a view of getting us removed from

No. 55.

one island to another. On the 25th, we went into a house where a woman was dressing the eyes of a child, who seemed blind. The instruments used by this female oculist were two slender wooden probes, with which she brushed the eyes so as to make them bleed. In the same house we found another woman shaving a child's head with a shark's tooth, stuck into the end of a stick. She first wetted the hair with a rag dipped in water, and then applying the instrument, took off the hair as close as if a razor had been used. Captain Cook soon after tried upon himself one of these remarkable instruments, and found it to be an excellent substitute. The natives of these islands, however, have a different method of shaving their beards, which operation they perform with two shells, one of which they place under a part of the beard, and with the other applied above, they scrape off that part: in this manner they can shave very close, though the process is rather tedious. There are among them some who seem to make this a profession; for it was common for our sailors, when ashore, to have their beards scraped off, after the mode of Hapace, as it was for their chiefs, when on board, to be shaved by our barbers. Finding at this time, that little or nothing of what the island produced was brought to the ships, Captain Cook determined to change our station, and to wait Feenou's return in some other anchoring-place, where we might still be supplied with refreshments; accordingly,

On Monday the 26th, in the forenoon, we made fail to the southward along the reef of the island, and having passed several shoals, hauled into a bay, that lies between the north end of Hoolaiwa, and the south of Lefooga, and there anchored in 17 fathoms water, the point of Lefooga bearing S. E. by E. distant a mile and a half. The Discovery did not cast anchor till sun-set; she having touched on one of the shoals; but backed off again without receiving the least damage. We had no sooner cast anchor, than Mr. Bligh, master, was sent to found the bay, where we were now stationed; and Captain Cook, accompanied by Lieutenant Gore, landed on the southern part of Lefooga, to look for fresh water, and examine the country. On the west-side of the island they observed an artificial mount of considerable antiquity, about 40 feet high, and measured 50 feet, in the diameter of its summit. At the bottom, of this mount was a stone 14 feet high, two and a half thick, and four broad, hewn out of coral-rock; and we were told by the islanders; that not more than half its length was seen above ground. They called it Tangata Areekee (Tangata in their language signifies man; Areekee, king) and said it had been set up, and the mount raised in memory of one of their kings. On the approach of night, the Captain and Mr. Gore returned on board, and Mr. Bligh came back from founding the bay, in which he found from 14 to 20 fathoms water, with a bottom principally of sand. Lefooga and Hoolaiwa are separated from each other by a reef of coral-rocks, dry at low water. Some of our gentlemen, who landed in the last mentioned island, found not the smallest mark of cultivation, or habitation upon it, except a single hut, in which a man employed to catch fish and turtle resided. It is remarkable that it should remain in this desolate condition, since it communicates so immediately with Lefooga, which is so well cultivated. The west side of it has a bending, where there seems to be good anchorage; and the east side has a reef, as well as Lefooga. Uninhabited as Hoolaiwa is, an artificial mount has been raised upon it, equal in height to some of the surrounding trees.

On Tuesday the 27th, at day-break, signal was made to weigh, and as we intended to attempt in our run to Tongataboo, a passage to Annamooka, by the S. W. among the intermediate isles, Mr. Bligh was sent in a boat, to sound before the ships. But before we got under sail, the wind became so variable and unsettled, as to render it unsafe to attempt a passage with which we were so little acquainted: we therefore lay fast, and made signal for the master to return. He, and the master of the Discovery, were afterwards sent, each in a boat to examine the channels. Towards noon, a

5 Y

large

large sailing canoe came under our stern, in which was a person named Poulaho, or Futtafahe, who was said by the natives then on board, to be king of Tongataboo, Annamooka, Hapae, and all the neighbouring islands. We were surprized to find a stranger dignified with this title, which we were taught to believe appertained to another; but they persisted in their assertions, that the supreme dignity belonged to Poulaho; and now for the first time acknowledged, that Feenou was not the king, but a subordinate chief, though of great power. After this explanation, Poulaho was invited by the captain on board, where he was not an unwelcome guest, as he brought with him two fat hogs by way of present. This great personage, though not very tall, was extremely unwieldy, and almost shapeless with corpulence. He appeared to be about forty: his hair was straight, and his features considerably different from those of the majority of his people. We found him to be a man of gravity and good sense. He viewed the ship, and the various new objects, with a particular attention; and asked many pertinent questions. When he had gratified his curiosity in looking at the cattle, and other novelties, he was requested to walk down into the cabin; to which some of his retinue objected, saying, that, if he should go down thither, it would doubtless happen that people would walk over his head; a circumstance that could not be permitted. When this objection was to be obviated, by ordering that no one should presume to walk over the cabin, Poulaho waved all ceremony and ventured down without any previous stipulation. He now appeared to be no less solicitous than his people were, to convince us that he was sovereign and not Feenou. He sat down to dinner with us, but eat and drank very little; and afterwards desired the captain to accompany him on shore. Omiah was asked to be one of the party; but he was too faithfully attached to Feenou, to show much respect to his competitor, and therefore declined the invitation. Captain Cook attended the chief in his own boat, having first made him such presents as exceeded his expectations; in return for which, Poulaho ordered two more hogs to be sent on board. The chief was then carried out of the boat, by his own subjects, on a board resembling a hand-barrow, and was seated in a small house near the shore. He placed the captain by his side; and his attendants formed a semi-circle before them, on the outside of the house. An old woman sat close to the chief, with a kind of fan in her hand, to prevent his being incommoded with the flies. The various articles which his people had procured by trading on board the ships, being now displayed before him, he attentively looked over them all, inquired what they had given in exchange, and, at length, ordered every thing to be restored to the respective owners, except one glass bowl which he reserved for himself. The people who paid this respect, first squatted themselves down before him, then deposited their purchases, and instantly retired. They observed the same ceremony in taking them away, and not one of them presumed to speak to him standing. His attendants, just before they left him, paid him obeisance, by bowing their heads down to the sole of his foot, and touching it with the upper and under side of the fingers of each hand. Captain Cook was charmed with the groveling submission, or, as he termed it, the decorum, that was paid by the slaves to their master on this occasion, having scarce seen the like any where, even among more civilized nations. Perhaps the captain had never visited Italy, and seen the ceremony of kissing the Pope's toe. The master having returned, informed us, that as far as he had proceeded, there was a passage for the ships, and tolerable anchorage; but that, towards the S. and S. E. he observed numerous shoals, breakers, and small isles. In consequence of this report, we relinquished all thoughts of a passage this way, and, being resolved to return to Annamooka by the same route which we had so lately experienced to be a safe one, we should have sailed the next morning, which was the 28th, if the wind had not been very unsettled; and in the night we had some heavy squalls, with thunder,

lightning, and rain, to which, at times, these islands are exposed. Poulaho came early on board, bringing a red-feathered cap as a present to the captain. These curiosities were greatly sought after by us, as we knew they would be highly valued at Otahaiti; but not one was ever brought for sale, though very large prices were offered; nor could a person in either ship make himself the proprietor of one, except the two captains and Omiah. They are composed of the tail feathers of the tropic bird, intermixed with the red feathers of the parrot; and are made in such a manner, as to tie on the forehead without any crown; and are in the form of a semicircle, whose radius is 18 or 20 inches. Poulaho left the ship in the evening; but his brother, whose name was also Futtafahe, and some of his attendants remained all night on board.

On Thursday the 29th, at day-break, we weighed with a fine breeze at E. N. E. and made sail to the westward, followed by several of the sailing canoes, in one of which was Poulaho the king, who, coming on board the Resolution, enquired for his brother, and the others who had continued with us all night. We now found that they had staid without his permission; for he gave them such a reprimand as brought tears from their eyes; however, he was soon reconciled to their making a longer stay; for on his departure from the ship, he left his brother, and five attendants on board. We were also honoured with the company of a chief, named Tooboneitoo, just arrived from Tongataboo; who, as soon as he came, sent away his canoe, declaring, that he and five others who came with him, would sleep on board; so that the captain had, at this time, his cabin filled with visitors: this inconvenience he endured the more willingly, as they brought with them plenty of provisions as presents to him, for which they met with suitable returns. In the afternoon, the easterly wind was succeeded by a fresh breeze at S. S. E. Our course being S. S. W. we were obliged to beat to windward, and did not just fetch the northern side of Footooha by eight o'clock in the evening. The next day we pled up to Lopanga, and had soundings, under the lee or N. W. side, in 40 fathoms water; but the bottom being rocky, and a chain of breakers lying to the leeward, we stretched away for Kotoo, expecting to find better anchorage there. It was dark before we reached that island, where finding no convenient place to anchor in, we passed the night in making short boards. On the 31st, at day-break, we stood for the channel between Kotoo, and the reef of rocks lying to the westward of it, but on our approach, we found the wind insufficient to lead us through. We therefore bore up on the outside of the reef, and stretched to the S. W. till near twelve o'clock, when perceiving that we made no progress to windward, and being apprehensive of losing the islands, while we had so many natives on board, we tacked, stood back, and spent the night between Footooha and Kotoo. The wind now blew fresh, with squalls and rain; and, during the night, by a small change of the wind, we were very near running a-ground on a low sandy isle, named Pootoo Pootoo, encompassed with breakers. Our people having fortunately been just ordered upon deck, to put the ship about, and most of them being at their respective stations, the necessary movements were performed with judgement and alacrity; and this alone preserved us from destruction. The Discovery being altern, was out of danger. This narrow escape alarmed the natives who were on board, that they desired with great earnestness, to be put on shore; accordingly, on the return of day-light, a boat was hoisted out, and the officer who commanded her was ordered, after landing them at Kotoo, to sound for anchorage along the reef which projects from that island. During the absence of the boat, we endeavoured to turn the ships through the channel between the reef of Kotoo and the sandy isle; but meeting with a strong current against us, we were obliged to delist.

On Sunday the 1st of June, distant about four leagues, we saw the burning mountains, and about eleven o'clock A. M. cast anchor in a fine bay, in 50 fathoms water,

times, these islands are on board, bringing a to the captain. These ter by us, as we knew Draheite, but not one very large prices were ther ship make himself the two captains and the tail feathers of the red feathers of the par-manner, as to tie on the d are in the form of a 20 inches. Poulaho at his brother, whose some of his attendants

ay-break, we weighed made sail to the west- failing canoes, in one who, coming on board brother, and the others ght. We now found ermission; for he gve ght tears from their ceiled to their making from the ship, he ants on board. We any of a chief, named Tongataboo; who, at canoe, declaring, that him, would sleep on at this time, his cabin ience he endured the with their plenty of pro- which they met with on, the easterly wind t S. S. E. Our course to beat to windward, n side of Footooa by he next day we pled ings, under the lee of but the bottom being ag to the leeward, we g to find better an- fore we reached that t place to anchor in, ort boards. On the channel between g to the westward of and the wind insuff- therefore bore up to heled to the S. W. ill- ing that we made no prehensive of losing natives on board, we ight between Foot- w blew fresh, with e night, by a small r running a-ground Footoa, encompass- ing fortunately been ship about, and most ations, the necessary dgement and alert- s from destruction, ut of danger. This who were on board, lness, to be put on of day-light, a boat o commanded her Kotoo, to sound for projects from that e boat, we endea- he channel between ille; but meeting to we were obliged to

about four leagues, about eleven o'clock 50 fathoms water, the

the sandy isle bearing E. by N. about one mile from the shore. Here we remained till the 4th, being frequently visited by our king, by Tooboucaita, and by people who came from the neighbouring islands to traffic with us. Mr. Bligh, in the mean time, was dispatched to sound the channels between the islands situate to the eastward; and Captain Cook himself landed on Kotoo, to take a survey of it. This island, on account of the coral reefs that environ it, is scarcely accessible by boats. Its N. W. end is low; but it rises suddenly in the middle, and terminates at the S. E. end in reddish clayey cliffs. It produces the same fruits and roots with the adjacent islands, and is tolerably well cultivated, though thinly inhabited. It is about two miles in length. In the absence of the captain our people were employed in cutting grafs for the cattle, and we planted some melon seeds. On our return to the boat, we passed by some ponds of dirty brackish water, and saw a burying-place, which was much neater than any one we had seen at Hapace. On the 4th, at seven o'clock, A. M. we made sail, with a strong gale at E. S. E. and, about five in the afternoon, reached Amamooka, where we moored in our old birth, which we had lately occupied; but the Discovery, not being able to beat up against the wind, did not arrive till seven in the evening. When casting anchor the drove, and, in less than an hour, was three leagues to leeward of us, and in the utmost danger of being wrecked. They were now employed in weighing up their anchor; and we sent a number of our hands seasonably to their assistance. The night was tempestuous, with a high sea. They laboured till four in the morning incessantly; yet made but little way to windward, notwithstanding the utmost exertions of their whole strength; but providentially the gale having subsided, they swayed the anchor, and before day-light was safely moored by our side. This day, being Thursday the 5th, Captain Cook went on shore, and found the islanders very busy in their plantations, digging up yams for traffic. In the course of the day not less than 200 of them assembled on the beach, and traded with great eagerness. It appeared that they had been very diligent, during our absence, in cultivating their several plantations; and we now observed many large plantain fields, which places, in our late visit, we had seen lying waste. The yams were in the highest perfection; and we obtained a good quantity of them in exchange for iron. Before the captain returned on board, he visited the several places where we had sown melon and cucumber seeds; but found, to his great regret, that most of them had been destroyed by the vermin; though some pine apples which had also been left, were in a thriving condition.

Friday the 6th, about noon, Feenou arrived from Vavaoo, and informed us that several canoes, laden with hogs and other provisions, had sailed with him from that island, but had been lost near Appy, the island in which the burning mountains are situated, in the late tempestuous weather, and every person on board them had perished. This melancholy tale did not gain much credit with us, as we were by this time sufficiently acquainted with the character of the relator. The truth perhaps was, that he had been unable to procure at Vavaoo the expected supplies; or, if he obtained any there, that he had left them at Hapace, which lay in his way back, and where he must have heard that Poulaho had come to visit us; who therefore, he knew, would, as his superior, reap all the merit and reward of procuring those supplies, without having had any participation of the trouble. The invention, however, of this loss at sea was not ill imagined; for we had lately had very stormy weather. On the 7th, Poulaho, and some other chiefs, who had been wind-bound with him arrived; at which time Captain Cook happened to be aloft with Feenou, who now appeared to be sensible of the impropriety of his conduct, in arrogating a character to which he had no just claim; for he not only acknowledged Poulaho as sovereign of Tongataboo, and the adjacent isles, but affected to insist much on it. The captain left him, and went to pay a visit to the

king, whom he found sitting with a few of the natives before him; but great numbers hastening to pay their respects to him, the circle enlarged very fast. When Feenou approached, he placed himself among the rest that sat before Poulaho, as attendants on his majesty. He at first seemed to be somewhat confused and abashed; but soon recovered himself. A very short conversation passed between these two chiefs, which none of us understood; nor were we satisfied with Omiah's interpretation of it: however, from what we observed, we were sufficiently undeceived as to Feenou's rank. Both the king and Feenou accompanied the captain on board to dinner; but Poulaho only sat at table. Feenou, after having made his obeisance in the usual mode, by saluting the foot of his sovereign with his head and hands, retired from the cabin; and it now appeared, that he could neither eat nor drink in the king's presence.

On Sunday the 8th, at eight o'clock, A. M. we weighed anchor, and set sail for Tongataboo, or Amsterdam Island, having a gentle breeze, at N. E. We were accompanied by 14 or 15 sailing vessels, belonging to the islanders, every one of which out-ran the ships. Feenou was to have taken his passage in the Resolution; but preferred his own canoe; and put two men on board, as pilots; to conduct us to the best anchorage. The royal canoe was distinguished from the rest by a small bundle of grafs, of a red colour, fastened to the end of a pole, and fixed in the stern, in the same manner as our ensign staffs. At five in the afternoon we descried two small islands, at the distance of four leagues to the westward. One was called by our two pilots Hoonga Hapace, and the other Hoonga Tonga. They are situated in the latitude of 20 deg. 36 min S. and about 10 leagues from the western point of Amamooka, in the direction of S. 46 deg. W. We were told only five men resided on Hoonga Hapace; and that Hoonga Tonga had no inhabitants. We continued a S. W. course till two o'clock, A. M. of the 9th, when we saw several little islands, beyond which appeared Eooa and Tongataboo. We now had 25 fathoms water, with a bottom of broken coral and sand; and the depth gradually decreased, as we approached the above-mentioned small isles, which lie ranged along the N. E. side of Tongataboo. Steering by the direction of our two pilots, for the widest space between those isles, we were insensibly drawn upon a large flat, upon which lay innumerable rocks of coral, below the surface of the sea. Notwithstanding our boats were sounding a-lead, and our utmost attention and care to avoid those rocks, we were unable to prevent the Resolution from striking on one of them; nor did the Discovery, though at our stern, escape better. Happy for us it was, that we had day-light and fine weather. By clapping the sails to the mast, and lightening the ship about, we swayed her off; and it fortunately happened through the protection of an over-ruling Providence that neither of the ships stuck fast, nor sustained any damage. We now held on our course, and the moment we saw a place where we could anchor with any degree of safety, we came to; and the matters were dispatched with the boats to sound. Soon after we had cast anchor, several of the natives of Tongataboo came to us in their canoes, assuring us, that we should meet with deep water further in, free from rocks. Their intelligence was true; for, about four o'clock, the boats made a signal of having found good anchoring ground. We therefore weighed, and stood in till dark, when we anchored in nine fathoms water, with a clear sandy bottom. During the night, we had some rain; but early in the morning, the wind became southerly, and bringing on fair weather, we weighed again, and worked towards the shore of Tongataboo. While we continued plying up the harbour, the king frequently sailed round us in his canoe; and at the same time there was a great number of small canoes about the ships. Two of these not getting out of the way of the king's vessel, he ran quite over them with the greatest unconcern. Among those who came on board the Resolution was Orongo, who had been so useful to Captain Cook, when he visited Tongataboo

Tongataboo in his preceding voyage, and one Toobou, who had, at that time, attached himself to Captain Furneaux. Each of them brought yams and a hog, in testimony of friendship; for which they received a suitable return. We arrived at our intended station about two o'clock in the afternoon of the 10th. It was a very convenient place, formed by the shore of Tongataboo on the S. E. and two small isles on the E. and N. E. Here both ships anchored over a sandy bottom, where the depth of water was 10 fathoms. Our distance from shore exceeded a quarter of a mile. We were instantly surrounded by natives, who came to welcome us, and seemed overjoyed at our arrival. It has not been uncommon with some compilers of voyages, to stigmatize these islanders with the name of Savages, than which no appellation can be worse applied, for a more civilized people do not exist under the sun. During the whole time of our stay, we did not see one instance of disorder among them, nor one person punished for any misdemeanor by their chiefs. We saw but few quarrels among individuals; on the contrary, much mirth and seeming harmony were observable. Highly delighted with their shows and heivas, they spend their time in a kind of luxurious indolence, where all labour a little, but none to excess. The king paddles himself in his canoe, though he must have a tow-tow to help him to eat. This seems strange to an European, as it reduces a man to the condition of a child; and yet it is but one remove from what we see daily practised before our eyes. The gentleman has his table spread, his food of various sorts set before him; has all his apparatus made ready, his bread cut, his meat carved, and his plate furnished; he has his drink handed to him, and in short, every thing which the tropical king has, except only conveying his food to his mouth, which the chief thinks may as well be done by his tow-tow. Yet the omission of this single act of handing his meat and drink to his mouth, brings a term of reproach upon the chief, though, by the handiness of his servants in the services of the table, the European gains the character of the polite gentleman. Such and so slender are the refinements of nations; the barriers that divide indolence from sumptuousness; and the simplicity of a tropical chief from the magnificence of an European Prince.

In the afternoon, Captain Cook, attended by Omiah, some officers, and other gentlemen, landed on the island of Tongataboo. We found the king waiting our arrival on the beach, who, when we landed, conducted us to a small neat house near the woods, having an extensive area before it: this, he told the captain, was at his service, during his continuance in the island. Before we had been long in the house, a large circle of the natives had assembled, and seated themselves on the area. A root of the Kava-plant being brought to the king, he commanded that it should be split into pieces, and distributed to several people of both sexes, who began to chew it, and soon prepared a bowl of their favourite liquor. Mean while, a baked hog, and a quantity of baked yams were produced, and divided into ten portions. These shares were given to some of those who were present, except one, which remained undisposed of, and which probably was reserved for the king himself. The liquor was next served out, and the first cup being brought to the king, he ordered it to be given to a person who sat near him: the second was also brought to him, which he kept: the third was presented to Captain Cook; but their mode of preparing the liquor having disgusted him, it was handed to Omiah. The remainder of it was distributed to different people; and one of the cups being carried to Poulaho's brother, he retired with this, and with his share of the provisions. Others also withdrew from the circle with their portions, because they could neither eat nor drink in his majesty's presence: but there were some of an inferior rank, who both eat and drank before him. Soon after, the greater part of them went away, carrying with them what they had not eaten of the share of the feast. We observed, that the servants who distributed the meat, and the Kava, delivered them sitting, not only to the

king but to others who were partakers of this feast: but not a fourth part of the company had tasted either the victuals or the drink. The greatest good order was preserved throughout the assembly; and though a great many people were present who had never seen us before, yet no one was troublesome. Before the captain returned on board, he went in search of a watering-place, and was conducted to some ponds, in one of which the water was tolerable, but it was at some distance inland.

Wednesday the 11th, the Captain being informed, that the small island of Pangimodoo, near which the ships were stationed, could better supply that important article, he went over to it, and found there a pool containing fresher water than any we had met with among these islands. This pool being extremely muddy, he caused it to be cleaned; and here it was that we filled our water-casks. The same morning a tent was pitched near the house which the king had assigned for our use. The horses, cattle, and sheep, were then landed, and a party of marines stationed there as a guard. The observatory was set up at an inconsiderable distance from another tent; and Mr. King took up his residence on shore, to direct the observations, and superintend all other necessary business. A party was stationed to cut wood for fuel, and planks for the ships; and the gunners were appointed to conduct the traffic with the inhabitants; who stocked from all parts of the island with hogs, yams, cocoa-nuts, and other articles, in-somuch, that our land-station resembled a fair, and our ships were remarkably crowded with visitants. Pecnou residing in our neighbourhood, we had daily proofs of his generosity and opulence, by the continuance of his valuable donations. Poulaho was equally attentive to us in this respect, as scarcely a day passed without his favouring us with considerable presents. We were now informed, that a person, named Mareewagee was of very high rank in the island, and was treated with great reverence; nay if our interpreter, Omiah, did not mis-understand his informers, that he was superior to Poulaho himself; but that, being advanced in years, he lived in retirement, and therefore was not inclined to pay us a visit. This intelligence having excited the curiosity of Captain Cook, he signified to Poulaho his intention of waiting upon Mareewagee; and the king having agreed to accompany him, they set out early on Thursday the 12th, in the pinnace, Captain Clerke joining them in one of his own boats. They then proceeded to the eastward of the little isles which form the harbour, and turning towards the south, entered a spacious bay, up which they rowed about three miles, and landed amidst a great concourse of people, who received them with shouts and acclamations. The crowd instantly separated, that Poulaho might pass, who took our gentlemen into a small enclosure, and then the king changed the piece of cloth he wore, for a new piece, very neatly folded: an old woman sitting in dressing him, and put a large mat over his cloth. Being now asked, where Mareewagee was, to our great surprize, he said, that he was gone down to our ships. He now requested us to accompany him to a malace, or house of public resort; and when we came to a large area before it, he seated himself in the path, while, at his desire, we walked up to the house, and sat down in the front. After waiting a little while, we repeated our enquiries, by the medium of Omiah, whether we were to be introduced to Mareewagee? But receiving no satisfactory answer, and being inclined to suspect, that the aged chief was purposely concealed from us, we returned to the boats much piqued at our disappointment. It afterwards appeared that Mareewagee had not been there; and that, in this affair, some gross mistakes had been made, Omiah either having been misinformed, or having misunderstood what was told him concerning the old chief. In this excursion, the place we went to was a very pleasant village, delightfully situated on the banks of the bay or inlet, where most of the principal persons of the island reside. Each of these has his house in the midst of a small plantation, with out-houses and offices for servants. These plantations are neatly fenced round,

round, and, in general, have only one entrance, which is by a door fastened on the inside with a prop of wood. Between each plantation are public roads and narrow lanes. A considerable part of some of these enclosures is laid out in grass-plots, and planted with such things as seem less adapted for use than ornament. In such other plantations as were not the residence of persons of high rank, every article of the vegetable produce of the island was in great plenty. Near the great roads are some large houses, with spacious grass-plots before them, which were said to belong to the king, and are probably the places where public assemblies of the people are held.

Friday the 13th, about noon, Mareewagee came within a small distance of our post on shore, attended by a great number of people of all ranks. In the course of the afternoon, the two captains, and others of our gentlemen, accompanied by Feenou, went ashore to visit him. We found a grave person sitting under a tree, with a piece of cloth about 40 yards long, spread before him, round which numbers of people were seated. We supposed this to be the great personage, but were informed by Feenou, that another who was sitting on a piece of mat, was Mareewagee. To him we were introduced, and he received us very graciously. This chief, who was also under a tree, was named Toobou, whom we shall call Old Toobou, to distinguish him from his name-sake, who has already been mentioned as Captain Furneaux's friend. Both he and Mareewagee were venerable in their appearance. The latter was slender in his person, and seemed to be near 70 years of age. Old Toobou, who desired us to sit down by him, was somewhat corpulent, and almost blind from a disorder in his eyes. The captain, not expecting on this occasion, to meet with two chiefs, had brought on shore a present for only one: this, therefore, he was obliged to divide between them; but, as it happened to be considerable, both of them appeared to be satisfied. Our party now entertained them about an hour with two French horns and a drum; but the firing off one of Captain Clerk's pocket-pistols seemed to please them most. Before we took leave of the two chiefs, the large piece of cloth was rolled up and presented to Captain Cook, together with a few cocoa-nuts. On the 14th, Old Toobou came on board to return our visit: he also went on board the *Discovery*; and if our former present was not sufficiently considerable, the deficiency was now supplied. In the mean time, Mareewagee went to see our people who were stationed on shore; and Mr. King shewed him whatever we had there. He was struck with admiration at the sight of the cattle; and the cross-cut saw riveted his attention. Towards noon Poulaho came on board, bringing with him his son, who was about twelve years of age. The king dined with Captain Cook; but the son, though present, was not permitted to sit down by him. The captain found it very convenient to have Poulaho for his guest; for, whenever he was present, which frequently happened, every other native was excluded from the table: whereas, if neither he nor Feenou were on board, the chiefs of inferior rank were very importunate to be of the dining party, or to be admitted at that time into the cabin, which became consequently very much crowded. The king was soon reconciled to our cookery, and was fond of our wine. He now resided at the malice near our tent, where he this evening entertained our people with a dance, in which he himself, though so corpulent and unwieldy, engaged.

Sunday the 15th, in the morning, Captain Cook received a message from Old Toobou, importing, that he was desirous of seeing him on shore. He and Omiah accordingly waited on that chief, whom they found sitting, like one of the ancient patriarchs, under the shade of a tree, having a large piece of cloth, the manufacture of the island, spread out before him. He desired them to place themselves by him: after which he told Omiah, that the cloth, with some cocoa-nuts, and red feathers, constituted his present to Captain Cook. The latter thanked him for the favour, accompanied with a request, that he would go on board with him. Omiah,

No. 56.

being sent for by Poulaho; now left the captain, who was informed by Feenou, that young Fattafaihe, the king's son, desired to see him. He immediately obeyed the summons, and found Omiah and the young prince seated under a canopy of fine cloth, with a piece of a coarser kind, 76 yards long, and seven and a half broad, spread before them and under them. On one side was a quantity of cocoa-nuts; and, on the other, a large boar. A multitude of people sat round the cloth, among whom was Mareewagee, with other persons of rank. The captain was requested to seat himself by the prince; and then Omiah informed him, that he had been instructed by Poulaho to tell him, that as his majesty and the Captain were friends, he hoped that his son Fattafaihe might be comprehended in this union; and that the captain, as a testimony of his consent, would accept of the prince's present. Our commander readily agreed to this proposal, and invited all the chiefs to dine with him on board. Accordingly, the young prince, Old Toobou, Mareewagee, three or four subordinate chiefs, and two old ladies of high rank, accompanied us to the ship. Mareewagee was dressed in a new piece of cloth, with six patches of red feathers on the skirts of it. This dress was probably made on purpose for this visit; for as soon as he arrived on board, he put it off, and presented it to our captain. When dinner was served up, not one of them would even sit down, or eat a morsel of any thing, as they were all taboo, they said; which word, though it has a very comprehensive meaning, signifies, generally, that a thing is prohibited. Why they were thus restrained at present, was not accounted for. Having made presents to them all, and gratified their curiosity, by shewing them every part of the ship, the captain conducted them ashore. When the boat had reached the land, Feenou, and several others, immediately stepped out; and the young prince following them, was called back by Mareewagee, who now paid the heir apparent the same obeisance which the king was accustomed to receive; and when Old Toobou, and one of the ladies had honoured him with the same marks of respect, he was suffered to land. After this ceremony, the old people stepped out of the boat into a canoe, which was waiting to convey them to their place of residence. Captain Cook was pleased at being present on this occasion, as he was thus furnished with the most convincing proofs of the supreme dignity of Poulaho and his son. By this time, indeed, we had gained some certain information with regard to the relative situation of several chiefs. We now knew, that Old Toobou and Mareewagee were brothers. Both of them were men of considerable property, and in high estimation with the people: Mareewagee, in particular, had obtained the honourable appellation of *Motooa Tonga*, which implies father of Tonga, or his country. We also now understood, that he was the king's father-in-law, Poulaho having espoused one of his daughters, by whom he had young Fattafaihe; so that Mareewagee was grand-father to the prince. As to Feenou, he was one of the sons of Mareewagee, and Toobouetooa was another. On landing, we found Poulaho in the house adjoining to our tent, who immediately made Captain Cook a present of a hog, and a quantity of yams. Towards evening a number of the islanders came, and having seated themselves in a circle, sung in concert with the music of bamboo drums, which were placed in the centre. Three of them were long ones, and two were short. With these they struck the ground end-wise. There were two others that lay side by side on the ground, one of which was partly split: on these a person continued beating with two sticks. They sung three songs during our stay, and the entertainment lasted, after we left them, till ten o'clock. For light, they burned the leaves of wharra palm. In the mean time Mr. Anderson, with several other gentlemen, made an excursion into the country, by whom we were furnished with the following observations. Westward of the tent, the country for about two miles, is entirely uncultivated, though covered with trees and bushes growing naturally with the greatest vigour. Beyond this a pretty large plain

5 Z

extends

extends itself, on which are cocoa-trees, and some small plantations. Near the creek, which runs west of the tent, the land is perfectly flat, and partly overflowed every tide by the sea. When the waters retire, the surfac is seen to consist of coral rock, interspersed with holes of yellowish mud; and near the edges, where it is rather more firm, are vast numbers of little openings, whence issue innumerable small crabs, which swarm upon the spot, but are so very nimble, that, when approached, they instantaneously disappear, and baffle all the dexterity of the natives who endeavour to catch them. At this place is a work of art, which testifies some degree of ingenuity and perseverance. On one side is a narrow causeway, which, gradually increasing in breadth, rises with a gentle ascent to the height of 10 feet, where its breadth is five paces, the whole length being about 74 paces. Adjacent to this is a kind of circus, 30 paces in diameter, about one or two feet higher than the causeway that joins it; and in the middle of this circus some trees are planted. On the opposite side, another causeway descends, which is partly in ruins, and not above 40 paces in length. The whole is built of large coral-stones, with earth on the surface, overgrown with shrubs and low trees. From the marks of decay in several places, it is probably of some antiquity: but it seems to be of no service at present, whatever may have been its use in former times. All that could be learnt of the natives was, that it was called Etchee, and belonged to Poulaho, the king.

Monday the 16th, in the morning, Captain Cook, Mr. Gore, and others, took a walk into the country; in the course of which we met with an opportunity of seeing the whole process of making cloth, the principal manufacture of this island, as well as of many others in the South Sea. An account of this operation as performed at this place, may not improperly be subjoined here. The manufacturers, who are of the female sex, take the slender stalks or trunks of the paper mulberry, which rarely grows more than seven feet in height, and about the thickness of four fingers. From these stalks they strip the bark, and scrape off the exterior rind; after which the bark is rolled up, and macerated for some time in water: it is then beaten with a square instrument of wood, full of coarse grooves, but sometimes with a plain one. The operation is often repeated by another person; or the bark is folded several times, and beat longer, which is probably intended to close rather than divide its texture. It is then spread out to dry; the pieces being from four to six or seven feet in length, and about half as broad. These pieces are joined by sinearing part of them with the glutinous juice of a berry, called tooo; and after being thus lengthened, they are placed over a large piece of wood, with a sort of stamp, composed of a fibrous substance, laid beneath them. The manufacturers then take a bit of cloth, and having dipped it in a juice expressed from the bark of a tree, called Kokka, rub it briskly over the piece that is making. This leaves upon the surface a dry gloss, and a dull brown colour; and the stamp makes, at the same time, a slight impression. Thus they proceed, joining and staining by degrees, till a piece of cloth, of the requisite length and breadth, is produced. They generally leave a border, about a foot broad, at the sides, and rather longer at the ends, unstained. If any parts of the original pieces have holes, or are too thin, they glue spare bits upon them, till their thickness equals that of the rest. Whenever they are desirous of producing a black colour, they mix the juice of the Kokka with the foot procured from an oily nut, called doodooc. They assert, that the black cloth, which is usually most glazed, makes a cold dress; but the other a warm one. On our return, we met with Feenou, whom we took with us, and another young chief, on board to dinner; which when served up, neither of them would eat a morsel; saying that they were taboo avy: but when they found, that, in dressing the pig and some yams, no avy (or water) had been made use of, they both sat down, and eat very heartily: they drank also our wine, on being assured no water was

in it; from whence we inferred, that they were at this time, for some particular reason, forbidden to use water; or that, perhaps, they did not like the water we then used, it being taken out of one of the places wherein the islanders bathed.

Tuesday the 17th, was fixed upon by Macewage for giving a grand haiva, or entertainment, and we were all this day invited to attend. Before the temporary hut of this chief, and near our land station, a large space had been cleared for that purpose. In the morning vast numbers of the natives, came in from the country, every one of whom bore on his shoulder a long pole, at each end of which a yam was suspended. These poles and yams being deposited on each side of the open space, or area, formed two large heaps, piled up to the greatest advantage, and decorated with small fish of various kinds. They were a present from Macewage to the two Captains Cook and Clerke. The necessary preparations being made, the islanders began about eleven o'clock to exhibit those dances which they call Mai. The band of music, at first, consisted of 70 men as a chorus, amidst whom were placed three instruments, which we called drums, though they did not much resemble them. They are cylindrical pieces of wood, from three to four feet in length, some of them, trunks of trees, twice as thick as a man of ordinary size, and some smaller. They are entirely hollow, but close at each end, and open only by a chink, about three inches in breadth, running nearly the length of the drum. By this opening the rest of the trunk is hollowed; which must be an operation of some difficulty. This musical instrument is called by the natives Nassa; and having the chink turned towards them, they sit and beat vigorously upon it, with two cylindrical pieces of wood, as thick as the wrist, and about a foot in length, by which means a rude, but loud and powerful sound is produced. They vary at intervals, and occasionally the strength and rate of their beating, and likewise change the tones, by beating towards the end or middle of the instrument.

In the first dance were four ranks of 24 men each. These held in their hands a small thin wooden instrument, about two feet in length, resembling in its shape an oblong paddle. With these instruments, which are called pagge, they made different motions; such as pointing them to the ground on one side, and, at the same instant, inclining their bodies the same way; then shifting them to the opposite side in the same manner, and with similar inclinations; passing them with great quickness from one hand to the other, and twirling them about with remarkable dexterity, and various manœuvres. Their motions, which were slow at first, quickened as the drums beat faster; and they repeated sentences the whole time in a musical tone, which were answered by the chorus; but in a short time they all joined, and ended with a shout. After a cessation of a few minutes, they began as before, and continued with short intervals, upwards of a quarter of an hour; and then the rear rank dividing, moved slowly round each end, met in the front, and formed the first rank; during which movements the whole number of performers continued to recite sentences. The other rank did successively the same, till that which was foremost became the rear; and this evolution did not cease till the last rank regained its former situation. A much quicker dance, though slow at first, was then begun, and they sung for ten minutes, when the whole body, in a two-fold direction, retreated, and then advanced, forming nearly a circular figure, which concluded the dance; the chorus retiring, and the drums being removed at the same time. In the second dance, were 40 men as a chorus, with only two drums; and the dancers, or rather actors, consisted of two ranks, the foremost of which had 17 persons, and the other 15. Feenou was in the middle of the first rank, which is considered, on these occasions, as the principal place. They danced and repeated sentences, with very short intervals, for half an hour, sometimes slowly, and at other times quickly, with the highest degree of exactness and regularity. Towards the close,

d, that they were at this season, forbidden to use iron, not like the water we found in one of the places where-

ed upon by Marcewagee for entertainment, and we had. Before the temporary near our land station, a that purpose. In the natives, came in from the on his shoulder a long yam was suspended. deposited on each side of two large heaps, piled and decorated with small ere a present from Ma- Cook and Clerke. The side, the islanders began at those dances which music, at first, consisted whom were placed three drums, though they did y are cylindrical pieces feet in length, some of thick as a man of ordi- they are entirely hollow, only by a chink, about nearly the length of est of the trunk is hol- of some difficulty. by the natives Nall's ards them, they fit and o cylindrical pieces of about a foot in length, d and powerful sound vals, and occasionally beating, and likewise ards the end or mid-

anks of 24 men each. thin wooden instru- resembling in its shape instruments, which are at motions; such as one side, and, at the sides the same way; the side in the same motions, passing them and to the other, and ble dexterity, and ons, which were slow s beat faster; and time in a musical chorus; but in a ed with a shout. They began as be- trvals, upwards of a rear rank dividing, : in the front, and ich movements the ned to recite sen- sively the same, till rear; and this evo- regained its former though slow at first, ten minutes, when rection, retreated, y a circular figure, orus retiring, and me time. In the orus, with only two ctors, consisted of ad 17 persons, and middle of the first e occasions, as the epeated sentences, a hour, sometimes ich the highest de- towards the close, the

the rear rank divided, came round, and occupied the place of the front, which afterwards resumed its former situation. This dance being finished, the drums were taken away, and the chorus retired, as in the preceding dance. Three very large drums were now brought in, and 70 men formed a chorus to the third dance. This consisted of two ranks, of 16 men each, having young Toobou at their head, who was splendidly ornamented with a kind of garment covered with red feathers. These performers danced, sung, and twirled the pagge, so as to meet with the continual applauses of the spectators, who were particularly pleased with one attitude, in which they held the face aside, as if ashamed, with the pagge before it. The hindmost rank closed before the front one, which soon after resumed its place, as in the first and second dances: then beginning again, they formed a triple row, divided, retreated to each end of the area, and left the ground almost clear. Two men ruiling in at that instant, began to exercise their clubs which they make use of in battle. They first twirled them in their hands, and made circular strokes before them with great quickness, managing them with such skill, that, though they stood close to each other, they never interfered. They shifted the clubs, with uncommon dexterity, from one hand to the other; and, after some time kneeled down, and made various motions, tossing up their clubs in the air, and catching them as they fell. They then retired as hastily as they entered. Their heads were ornamented with pieces of white cloth, fastened at the crown, with a wreath of foliage round their foreheads: and, that they might be free from every incumbrance, they had only a very small piece of cloth tied round the waist. A man armed with a spear now rushed in, and put himself in a menacing attitude, as if he intended to strike with his weapon at one of the people in the crowd; at the same time bending the knee a little, and trembling as it were with fury. He continued in this position near a minute, and then moved to the other side, where, having stood in the same posture, he hastily retreated from the area. During all this time the dancers, who had divided themselves into two parties, continued to repeat something slowly; and they now advanced, and joined again, concluding the dance with general applause. This dance, in our opinion, was considered as a capital performance, as some of the principal people were engaged in it: one of the drums being beat by Fatafaite the king's brother, another by Feenou, and the third by Marcewagee himself. In the fourth and last dance, were 40 men as a chorus, with two drums. The performers were 60 men, arranged in three rows, having 24 in front. Before they began, we were entertained with a preliminary harangue, in which the whole number made responses to a speaker salus. They then recited sentences alternately with the chorus, and made with the pagge many quick motions. They divided into two parties, with their backs to each other; formed again; shifted their ranks, divided, and retreated; being succeeded by two men, who exercised with their clubs, as before, after whom came two others; the dancers in the mean time repeating in their turns with the chorus; they then advanced, and concluded the dance.

These amusements continued from eleven o'clock till near three. The number of islanders who attended as spectators, together with those who were round the trading-place at the tent, or straggling about, amounted to at least 10,000, all within the compass of a quarter of a mile. Had we understood what was spoken in this entertainment, we might probably have gained much information with respect to the genius and customs of this people. Though the spectators constantly applauded the different motions, when well made, a considerable share of the pleasure they received, seemed to arise from the sentimental part, or, what the performers recited. However, the mere acting part well deserved our notice, on account of the extensiveness of the plain, the variety of the motions, and the exact unity, ease, gracefulness, and vivacity, with which they were performed. In the evening we were enter-

tained with the Boma, or night dances, on a large area before the temporary dwelling place of Feenou. They continued three hours; during which time about twelve of them were performed, nearly in the same manner as those at Hapace. In two of them, in which some women had a part, a number of men came, and formed a circle within their's. In another, which consisted of 24 men, many motions that we had not seen before, were made with the hands, and met with great applause. The music was once changed in the course of the evening; and in one of the dances, Feenou himself appeared at the head of 50 men. He was neatly dressed in linen, and some small pictures were hung round his neck. After these diversions were ended, we were made sensible, that these people had put themselves to many inconveniencies on our account: for being drawn together to this uninhabited part of the island, numbers of them were obliged to lie down and sleep under the bushes, or by the side of a tree, or a canoe, nay, many lay down in the open air, which they are not fond of, or spent the remainder of the night in walking about. Notwithstanding the whole entertainment was conducted with better order than could reasonably be supposed, yet our utmost care and attention could not prevent our being plundered by the natives in the most insolent manner: but then it must be acknowledged, that among such a multitude, there must be a number of ill-disposed people, and we hourly experienced their propensity to thieving in every quarter. There was scarcely any thing which they did not endeavour to steal. In the middle of the day, they once attempted to take an anchor from off the Discovery's bows, but without effect. The only violence of which they were guilty, was, the breaking the shoulder-bone of one of our goats; in consequence of which the died soon after.

On Wednesday the 18th, one of the islanders got out of his canoe into the quarter gallery of the Resolution, and stole from thence a pewter Jason; but being detected he was pursued, and brought along-side the ship. Upon this occasion, three old women in the canoe made loud lamentations over the prisoner, beating their faces and breasts with the palms of their hands, in a very violent manner. This mode of expressing sorrow occasions the mark which most of these people bear over their cheek-bones; for the repeated blows inflicted by them on this part rub off the skin, and cause some blood to flow out; and when the wound is green, it looks as if a hollow circle had been made by burning. On some occasions, they cut this part of the face with an instrument. A gentleman who was on board the Discovery, has informed the writer of the history of these voyages, that he had an opportunity of discovering the reason of a very singular mark, a little above the temples of many of the chiefs. In one of our excursions into the country, says this gentleman, we perceived the day was kept sacred throughout the whole island; that nothing was suffered to be sold; neither did the people touch any food; and besides, that several of our new acquaintance were missing. Enquiring into the cause, we were told, that a woman of quality was dead, and that the chiefs, who were her descendants, stayed at home to have their temples burnt. This custom is not confined to this island only, but is likewise common to several others, particularly, to those of Ea-oo-wee, or Middleburgh, and Appee. This mark is made on the left-side, on the death of a mother, and on the right-side when the father dies; and on the death of a high-priest, the first joint of the little finger is amputated. These people have therefore their religious rites, though we were not able to discover how, or when they were performed.

This day Captain Cook bestowed some presents on Marcewagee, in return for those which had been received from that chief the preceding day; and as the entertainments then exhibited called upon us to make some exhibition in return, he ordered all the marines to go through their exercise, on the spot where the late dances had been performed; and, in the evening, some fire-works were also played off at the same place.

place. The king, the principal chiefs, and a vast multitude of people, were present. The platoon firing seemed to please them; but when they beheld our water rockets, they were filled with admiration and even astonishment. They did not much regard the fife and drum: nor the French horns that were playing during the intervals. Poulaho sat behind every one, no person being permitted to sit behind him: and that his view might receive no obstruction, none sat immediately before him: a lane was made by the spectators from him quite down to the space allotted for playing off the fire-works. While the natives were in expectation of seeing our exhibition, they engaged, for the greatest part of the afternoon, in wrestling and boxing. The first of these exercises they call *soohoo*, and the second *sangarooa*. When a person is desirous of wrestling, he gives a challenge by crossing the ground in a kind of measured pace, and clapping smartly on the elbow joint of one arm, which is bent, and sends forth a hollow sound. If no opponent steps forth, he returns and sits down: though sometimes he stands clapping his hands to provoke some one to accept his challenge. If an antagonist makes his appearance, they meet with marks of the greatest good nature, generally smiling, and deliberately adjusting the piece of cloth that is fastened round the waist. By this cloth they lay hold of each other, and he who succeeds in drawing his opponent to him, instantly endeavours to lift him upon his breast, and throw him upon his back; and if he can turn round with him, in that position, two or three times, before he throws him, his dexterity procures him numerous plaudits from the spectators. Should they be more equally matched, they quickly close, and attempt to throw each other by entwining their legs, or raising each other from the ground; in which struggles for victory they display an extraordinary exertion of strength and agility. When one of them is thrown, he immediately retires; while the conqueror sits down for near a minute, then rises, and goes to the place from whence he came, where the victory is proclaimed aloud. After having sat a short time, he rises again, and challenges; and if several antagonists enter the lists, he has the privilege of choosing which of them he pleases to engage with: he may also, should he throw his competitor, challenge again, till he himself is vanquished; in which case the people of the opposite side chant the song of victory in favour of their champion. It frequently happens, that five or six rise from each side, and give challenges together; so that it is not uncommon to see several sets engaged on the field at the same time. They preserve great temper in this exercise, and leave the spot without the least displeasure in their countenances. When they perceive, upon trial, that they are so equally matched, as not to be likely to throw each other, they leave off by mutual consent. Should it not clearly appear which of them has had a superior advantage over the other, both sides proclaim the victory, and then they engage again; but no one, who has been vanquished, is permitted to engage a second time with his conqueror. Those who intend to box advance sideways, changing the side at every pace, having one arm stretched out before, the other behind; and holding in one hand a piece of cord, which they wrap closely about it, when they meet with an opponent. This we think is intended to prevent a dislocation of the hand or fingers. Their blows are dealt out with great quickness and activity, and are aimed principally at the head. They strike equally well with either hand. One of their most dextrous blows is, to turn round on the heel, just after they have struck their adversary, and to give him another smart blow with the other hand backward. In boxing-matches, unless a person strikes his antagonist to the ground, they never sing the song of victory; which shews, that this diversion is less approved among them than wrestling. Not only boys engage in both these exercises; but it not unfrequently happens, that little girls box, for a short time, with great obstinacy. On all these occasions, they do not consider it as any disgrace to be vanquished, and he

who is overcome sits down with as much indifference as if he had never entered the lists. Some of our people contended with them in both exercises, but were generally worsted; except in a few instances, where, as Captain Cook observes, "it appeared, that the fear they were in of offending us, contributed more to the victory, than the superiority of the person they engaged."

On Thursday the 19th, Captain Cook thought proper to mark out his intended presents of animals, which he designed to leave behind him. He therefore assembled the chiefs before our house, and informed them of his proposed distribution before his departure. To Poulaho, the king, he presented an English bull and a cow; to Marewagee a cape ram, and two ewes, and to Feenou a horse and a mare. Omiah was instructed to inform the chiefs, that no such animals existed within several months sail of their island; that we had brought them with much trouble and expence, for their use; that, therefore, they ought to be careful, not to kill any of them till they had multiplied considerably; and, finally, that they and their children ought to remember, that they had received them from the natives of Britain. Omiah also explained to them their respective uses, as far as his limited knowledge would permit, for he was not well versed in such things. The captain had intended to give Old Tooboo two or three goats; but finding that chief, who had not attended the meeting, though invited, indifferent about them, he added them to the share of Poulaho. As the captain intended, that the above presents should remain with the other cattle, till we were ready to sail, he desired each of the chiefs to send a man or two, to look after their respective animals, along with our people, in order that they might be made acquainted with the manner of our treating them. The king and Feenou did so; but neither Marewagee, nor any other person for him, took the least notice of the sheep afterwards. Indeed, it soon appeared, that some were dissatisfied with our distribution of the animals; for on the 20th, early in the morning, two of our Turkey-cocks, and one kid were missing. Our commander being determined to have them restored, seized on three canoes that were along-side the ships: he then went on shore, and having found the king, his brother, Feenou, and some other chiefs, in our house, he immediately placed a guard over them, and intimated to them, that they must remain confined till not only the turkeys and kid, but the other articles of which we had been plundered, at different times, were restored to us. On finding themselves prisoners, they concealed their feelings, as well as they could; sat down to drink kava, with an appearance of unconcern; and assured the captain, that the things in question should all be returned. Soon afterwards an axe, and an iron wedge were brought to us. In the mean time, some armed natives began to assemble behind the house, but they dispersed when a part of our guard marched against them; and the chiefs, by the advice of the captain, gave orders, that no more should appear. Upon being invited to dine with us on board, they readily consented. Some of them having afterwards objected to Poulaho's going, he rose up immediately, and declared that he would be the first man. We all now repaired aboard, and the chiefs remained in the ships till four o'clock. They were then conducted by the captain ashore; and not long after their having landed, the kid, and one of the turkeys were restored to us. On their promising that the other turkey should be brought back the next morning, both they and their canoes were released. The chiefs having left us, we walked out, with Omiah in company, to observe how the natives in our neighbourhood fared, for this was the usual time of their meals. We found them in general ill supplied; a circumstance not to be wondered at, since most of the yams, and other provisions they had brought with them, were disposed of to us; and they were unwilling to return to their own habitations, while they could procure any subsistence near our post. Our station was upon an uncultivated point of land, so that there were none of the natives

natives who had a fixed residence within half a mile of us. Those therefore who were at our post, were obliged to live under trees, or in temporary huts; and the cocoa-trees were stripped of their branches, for the purpose of erecting huts for the chiefs. In the course of our walk we found six women at supper, two of whom were led by others. When Omiah asked the reason of this circumstance, the women replied taboo mattee. Upon further enquiry it appeared, that one of them, about two months before, had washed the corpse of a chief, on which account she was not allowed to handle any food for five months; and that the other had performed the same kind office to the dead body of a person of inferior rank, and was therefore under a similar restriction, though not for so long a space of time.

On Saturday the 21st, early in the morning Poulaho, the king, came on board, to invite Captain Cook to the diversions of a haiva, which entertainment he designed to give the same day. He had his head befined with pigment, in order to communicate a red colour to his hair, which was naturally of a dark brown. After breakfast, the captain attended him to the shore, and found the islanders very busy in two places, fixing in a square and upright position, four very long posts, at the distance of near two feet from each other. They afterwards filled up with yams the square between the posts; and fastened sticks across, from one post to another, at the distance of every four feet, to prevent the posts from separating, by the weight of the inclosed yams, and also to ascend by. As soon as the yams had reached the summit of the first posts, they continued to fasten others to them, till each pile was 30 feet or more in height. On the top of one of the piles, they placed two baked hogs; and, on the top of the other, a living one; and another they tied by the legs half way up. The facility and dispatch with which these two piles were raised, were very remarkable. "Had our seamen," observes Captain Cook, "been ordered to execute such a work, they would have sworn, that it could not be performed without carpenters; and the carpenters would have called to their aid a dozen different sorts of tools, and have expended, at least, a hundred weight of nails; and, after all, it would have employed them as many days, as it did these people hours." But seamen, like most other amphibious animals, are always the most helpless on land." Having completed these two piles, they accumulated some other heaps of yams, and also of bread-fruit, on each side of the area; to which a turtle, and a great quantity of fish were added. The whole of this, with some red feathers, a mat and a piece of cloth, composed the king's present to Captain Cook; and Poulaho seemed to be not a little proud at having exceeded, as he really did, Feenou's liberality at Hapae. About one o'clock, the Mai, or dances, were begun. The first very nearly resembled, what was performed on the opening of Mareewagee's entertainment. The second was conducted by young Toobou; and in this four or five women were introduced, who equalled the men in the exactness and regularity of their motions. Near the end, the performers divided, in order to leave room for two champions, who exercised their clubs. In the third dance, which was the last, two other men, with clubs exhibited their skill and activity. The dances were succeeded by boxing and wrestling; and one man entered the lists with a heavy club made of the stem of a cocoa-leaf, but could meet with no opponent to engage him in so rough a diversion. Towards evening, the Bomal, or night dances began, in which the king himself, apparelled in English manufacture, was a performer: but neither these, nor the dances in the day-time, were so capital as those given by Feenou and Mareewagee. The captain, in order to be present the whole time of the entertainment, dined on shore. Poulaho sat down by him, but would neither eat nor drink, which was owing to the presence of a female, who had been admitted, at his request, to the dining party, and who, as we were informed, was of superior rank to himself. This lady had no sooner dined than she walked up to the king, who

No. 36.

applied his hands to her feet; after which she retired. He immediately dipped his fingers into a glass of wine, and then all her attendants paid him obeisance. At his desire some of our fire-works were played off in the evening; but being damaged, they did not answer the expectations of the spectators.

No more entertainments being expected on either side, most of the natives had deserted us the day after Poulaho's haiva. Still, however, we had thieves about us, and experienced continual instances of their depredations. Mr. Nelson being alone, on the hills and rocks, collecting plants and herbs, and at a considerable distance from the ships, was attacked by five or six islanders, who first began by throwing stones, at which they are very dexterous; and then finding he had no fire-arms, closed in with him, stript him of his cloaths, and bag, which were all that he had about him. Captain Cook complained to the king; but the offenders, upon enquiry, being found to be boys, and the cloaths, and bag of plants, of small value, Mr. Nelson, unwilling to embroil the inhabitants in any more disputes, interceded with the captain, as we were just upon our departure, not to make his loss an object of contention, but to take leave of the chiefs in the most friendly manner, who, upon the whole, had behaved with uncommon kindness and generosity. Some of the officers of both ships, who had made an excursion into the interior parts of the island, returned on the 22nd, in the evening, after an absence of two days. They had taken their muskets and necessary ammunition with them, besides several small articles, the whole of which the natives had the dexterity to steal from them, in the course of their short journey. Inconvenient consequences were likely to have attended this affair; for when our plundered travellers returned, they employed Omiah, without consulting Captain Cook, to complain to the king of the treatment they had received. He, not knowing how the captain would proceed in this affair, and apprehending that he might again lay him under restraint, set off early the next morning, and Feenou followed his example; so that not a chief of any authority was now remaining in this neighbourhood. The captain was much offended at this officious interference, and reprimanded Omiah for the same. Upon this Omiah endeavoured to bring back his friend Feenou, and he succeeded in his negotiation, by assuring him, that no violent measures would be pursued to oblige the natives to return the stolen things. Trusting to this declaration, Feenou came back in the evening, and was received favourably. Poulaho also honoured us with his company the next day. The two chiefs, upon this occasion, very justly observed to us, that, whenever any of our people wanted to take an excursion into the country, they ought to be made acquainted with it, that they might order proper people to attend them, to prevent such outrages. Though the captain did not afterwards endeavour to recover the articles taken upon this occasion, the whole of them were returned, through the interposition of Feenou, except one musket, and a few other trifles. By this time also, we recovered the tools and other matters that had been stolen from our workmen. In a journal belonging to a person on board the Discovery, we find the following remark: "During our stay here, more capital thefts were committed, and more Indians punished than in all the Friendly Islands besides: one was punished with 72 lashes, for stealing only a knife; another with 36, for endeavouring to carry off two or three drinking glasses; three were punished with three dozen each, for heaving stones at the wooders; but, what was still more cruel, a man for attempting to carry off an axe, was ordered to have his arm cut to the bone; which he bore without complaining. It is not to be wondered, that after such wanton acts of cruelty, the inhabitants should grow outrageous; and, though they did not break out into open acts of hostility, yet they watched every opportunity to be vexatious." This journalist cannot we think speak from his knowledge, and must have been misinformed; for, in the first place, we beg leave to observe, that such severe punishments as three and six dozen

zen lashes are very seldom inflicted on board a king's ship, and then only for enormous offences; and, in the next place, the whole of the above memorandum contradicts all the most authentic accounts of the kind behaviour of the natives of the Friendly Isles, and likewise the well known humanity of our generous commander. We think it our duty to give a faithful detail of facts and occurrences, from the best authorities; nor is it less incumbent on us, to correct all errors and mistakes that may come under our observation; these two obligations have hitherto been the objects of our careful attention; and we hope, in the opinion of our friends and subscribers, we shall be found to have fulfilled them with a scrupulous punctuality.

Wednesday the 25th, two boats that had been sent in search of a commodious channel to sea, returned. Our people reported, that the channel to the north, through which we came in, was imminently dangerous, being full of coral-rocks; but that there was a good passage to the eastward, though contracted, in one place, by the small islands; consequently a westerly wind would be necessary to get through it. The ships being now completely stowed, having wood and water as much as they could make room for, with hogs and bread-fruit in abundance, in short every thing they could contain, or the crews desire, orders were given to prepare for sailing; and we intended to visit the celebrated little island of Middleburgh, of which former voyagers have given a most flattering description: but as an eclipse of the sun was expected to be visible on the fifth of next month, the captain determined to stay till that time, in order to observe it. Having now some days of leisure before we set sail, a party of us, accompanied by Poulaho, set out the next morning, being Thursday the 26th, in a boat for Mooa, a small village, where most of the great chiefs usually reside. Rowing up the inlet, we saw 14 canoes fishing in company, in one of which was Poulaho's son; they had taken some fine mullets, and put a dozen of them into our boat. In each canoe was a triangular net, extended between two poles, at the lower end whereof was a cod to receive and secure the fish. They shewed us their method of fishing, which appeared to be an effectual one. A shoal of fish was supposed to be upon one of the banks, which they instantly enclosed in a long net like our seine. This the fishermen, one getting into the water out of each boat, surrounded with the triangular nets in their hands, with which they scooped the fish out of the seine, or caught them as they attempted to leap over it. Taking leave of the prince and his fishing party, we rowed to the bottom of the bay, and landed where we had done before, when we went to visit Marewagee. As soon as we landed, the king desired Omiah to tell me, that I need be under no apprehension about the boat, or any thing in her, for that not a single article would be touched, or purloined by any one of his people, which we found afterwards to be true. We were immediately conducted to one of Poulaho's houses, which, though tolerably large, seemed to be his private place of residence, and is situated within a plantation. The king seated himself at one end of the house, and his visitants sat down in a semi-circle at the other end. A bowl of Kava was speedily prepared, and directions were given to bake some yams. While these were getting ready, some of us, together with a few of the king's attendants, and Omiah as interpreter, walked out to take a view of a *hiatooka*, or burying-place, at a small distance from the habitation. It belonged to the king, and consisted of three pretty large houses; situated on a rising ground, with a small one not far off, all standing in a line lengthwise. The largest of the three was the middle house, which was placed in an oblong square, 24 paces by 28, and elevated about three feet. The other houses were placed on little mounts. On the floors of these houses, as also on the tops of the mounts, were fine loose pebbles; and the whole was enclosed by large flat stones of coral-rock. One of the buildings was open on one side, and two wooden busts of men, rudely carved, were within it. We enquired of the natives

who followed us (but were not permitted to enter here) what these images were? Who informed us they were intended for memorials of some chiefs who had been buried in that place, and not meant as the representatives of any deity. Such monumental edifices, it is presumed, are seldom raised; for these appeared to have been erected many ages. We were informed, that dead bodies had been buried in each of these houses, but no traces of them were to be seen. The carved head of an Otahcite canoe, which had been driven ashore on their coast, was deposited in one of them. At the foot of the rising ground was a grass-plot, whereon different large trees were planted; among which were several large ones, called *Etoa*. They greatly resemble the cypress, and have a solemn effect. A row of low palms was also planted near one of the houses. After having refreshed ourselves with some provisions, which we had brought from our ships, we took a pretty large circuit into the country, attended by one of the king's ministers, who would not suffer any of the rabble to follow us, and obliged those whom we met in our excursion, to sit down while we were passing; a mark of respect shewn only to their sovereigns. In our progress we observed the greatest part of the country to be cultivated; being planted with various kinds of productions, and most of these plantations were enclosed with fences. It is true, some spots were fallow; there were also others that remained in a state of nature; and, yet even these last were of public utility, in affording the natives timber, as they were generally covered with trees. We saw likewise, in our walk, several large uninhabited islands (belonging as we were told to the king) many public roads, and abundance of foot-paths leading to every part of the island. Hence travelling was rendered easy and pleasant: but it is remarkable, that when we were on the most elevated spots of ground, 100 feet at least, above the level of the sea, we often met with the same coral rock found on the shore, projecting above the surface; and having all these inequalities, usually seen in rocks that lie within the wash of the tide; and yet, those very spots, almost wholly destitute of soil, were covered with luxuriant vegetation. Our guide conducted us to several little pools, and to some springs of water; but in general, they were either stinking or brackish; though thought by the natives to be excellent. The former were mostly inland, and the latter near the shore of the bay, and below high water mark; so that only when the tide was out tolerable water could be taken up from them.

In the dusk of the evening, we returned from our walk, and found our supper ready. It consisted of fish, yams, and a baked hog, in which all the culinary arts had been displayed. There being nothing to amuse us after supper, we lay down to sleep, according to the custom of the country, on mats spread upon the floor, and had a covering of cloth. The king, who had made himself very happy with some of our wine and brandy, slept in the house, as did many others of the natives. Before day-break, they all rose, and entered into conversation by moon-light. As soon as it was day, they dispersed different ways; but it was not long before they all returned, accompanied by several of their countrymen. While they were preparing a bowl of Kava, Captain Cook went to pay a visit to Toobou, Captain Furneaux's friend, who had a house not far distant, which, for size and neatness was hardly exceeded in the place. Here also we found a company preparing a morning draught. The chief made a present to the captain of a live hog, and one that was baked; also a quantity of yams, and a large piece of cloth. When we returned to the king, we found him and his attendants drinking the second bowl of Kava. That being emptied, he informed Omiah, that he was immediately going to perform a mourning ceremony, called *Tooge*, in memory of a son who had been dead some time, and desired us to accompany him. Naturally expecting to see somewhat new and curious, we readily complied with his request. The first thing the king did, was to step out of the house, attended by two old women,

permitted to enter here) informed us they were the chiefs who had been meant as the representative edifices, it is for these appeared to be. We were informed, in each of these were to be seen. The canoe, which had been deposited in one of the ground was a grass-plant, among the Etoa. They greatly a solemn effect. A row near one of the houses, with some provisions, ships, we took a pretty attended by one of the suffer any of the rabble whom we met in our ex- ere passing; a mark of ereigns. In our part of the country to with various kinds of plantations were en- some spots were re- remained in a state of vere of public utility, as they were generally wife, in our walk, be- belonging as we were ads, and abundance of of the island. Hence pleasant: but it is re- on the mill elevated above the level of the coral rock found on surface; and having all in rocks that lie within ofe very spots, almost covered with luxuriant ed us to several little water; but in general, with; though thought the former were mostly ofe of the bay, and that only when the d be taken up from

we returned from our . It consisted of fish, h all the culinary arts g nothing to amuse us ep, according to the spread upon the floor. The king, who had me of our wine and d many others of the ll rose, and entered . As soon as it was ; but it was not long anied by several ere preparing a bowl y a visit to Toobou, had a house not far s was hardly exceed- and a company pre- chief made a present one that was baked; rge piece of cloth. found him and his of Kava. That be- that he was imme- g ceremony, called ad been dead some im. Naturally ex- curious, we readily first thing the king attended by two old women,

women, and put on a new clothing, over which was placed an old ragged mat, that might have served his great grandfather upon a similar occasion. His attendants were habited in the same manner, excepting that, in point of antiquity, none of their mats could vie with that of their master. Thus equipped, we marched off, preceded by eight or ten persons in the same uniform, each of them having likewise a green bough about his neck. Poulaho held his bough in his hand till he approached the place of rendezvous, when he also put it round his neck. We now entered a small inclosure, wherein was a neat house, and a man sitting before it. As the company entered, they took the branches from their necks, and threw them away. The king seated himself, and the rest of his people sat before him in the usual manner. By the arrival of other persons, the circle increased to upwards of an hundred, principally old men, all dressed in the manner above described. The company being assembled, a large root of Kava was produced by one of the king's servants, from whence was extracted liquor sufficient to fill a capacious bowl, that would contain, at least, five gallons. Many persons now began to chew the root, and the bowl was filled up to the brim. Others were employed in making drinking-cups of plantain leaves. The first cup that was filled, being presented to the king, he ordered it to be given to another person; the second was also brought to him, and he drank it; the third was offered to Captain Cook. Afterwards several cups were given to others, till the whole of the liquor was exhausted; and, though not half the company partook of it, no one appeared in the least dissatisfied. Each cup as it was emptied, was thrown upon the ground, whence it was taken up, and carried to be filled again. All this time the chief, and his whole circle, sat with a great deal of gravity, seldom speaking a word to each other. All this while we were in expectation of seeing the mourning ceremony begin, when, to our great surprize, as soon as the Kava was drank out, they all rose up and dispersed; Poulaho, at the same time, informed us, he was now ready to attend us to the ships. The Kava is a species of pepper, branching considerably, with large heart-shaped leaves, and jointed stalks. The natives esteem it a valuable article, taking great care to defend the young plants from injury, which they generally set about their houses. They do not often exceed, when full grown, the height of a man, though we have seen some much higher. The root is the only part used at these islands, from whence their favourite potation is extracted. The quantity put into each cup is about a quarter of a pint. It has no perceptible effect on these people, who use it so frequently; but on some of ours it operated like our spirits, occasioning intoxication, or rather stupefaction. The mourning ceremony being over, to our no small disappointment, we left Mooa, and set out on our return to the ships. Rowing down the inlet we met with two canoes returning from fishing. Poulaho ordered them to approach him, and took from them every fish and shell. He afterwards stopped two other canoes, searched them, and found nothing. He gave us some of the fish, and the rest were sold by his servant on board the ship. Proceeding down the inlet, we overtook a large sailing canoe, when every person on board her sat down till we had passed; even the man who steered, though he could not possibly manage the helm, but in a standing posture. Having been informed by Poulaho and others, that there was some good water at Oney, a small island, about a league from the mouth of the inlet, we landed there, but found it extremely brackish. The island is quite in its natural state, and only frequented as a fishing-place; having nearly the same productions as Palmerston's Island. When we reached the ship, and got on board, we were informed, that every thing had continued quiet during our absence; not a single theft having been committed; of which Feenou, and Futafaihe, the king's brother, who had undertaken the management of his countrymen, during our absence, boasted not a little. This evinces what power the chiefs have, when they are disposed to

execute it; which is not often to be expected; for whatever was stolen from us, was generally conveyed to them. But the good conduct of the natives was of short duration, for,

Saturday the 28th, six of them assaulted some of our people, who were sawing planks; in consequence of which they were fired at by our sentry: one of them was supposed to be wounded, and three were made prisoners. The latter were confined till night, when they were punished, and set at liberty. After this their behaviour was very decent and respectful; occasionally, as we thought, by the men being wounded; for, till this time, they had only heard of the effect of our fire-arms, but now they had felt it. We were not mistaken in our conjecture, for Mr. King and Mr. Anderson, in an excursion they took into the country, met with the very man, and found indubitable marks of his having been wounded with a musket ball. Nothing worthy of notice happened at the ships for two days; we shall therefore fill up that interval with an account of Mr. Anderson's excursion into the country, just mentioned.

On Monday the 30th, Mr. King and Mr. Anderson accompanied Futafaihe as visitors to his house, which is not far from that of his brother Poulaho, at Mooa. Soon after they arrived a good sized hog was killed, which was effected by repeated strokes upon the head. The hair was then curiously scraped off with the sharp edge of pieces of bamboo, and the entrails taken out by the same simple instrument. Previous to this an oven had been prepared, which was a large hole dug in the earth, the bottom of which was covered with stones, about the size of a man's fist, and made red hot by kindling a fire over them: they then wrapped some of those stones in leaves of the bread-fruit-tree, with which they filled the hog's belly; stuffing in a quantity of leaves, and a plug of the same kind, to prevent their falling out. This being done, the carcass was placed upon some sticks laid across the stones, and covered with plantain-leaves. The earth was afterwards dug up all round; and the oven being thus effectually closed, the operation of baking required no farther aid. While this was doing, our gentlemen amused themselves by walking about the country, but saw nothing remarkable, except a Fiatooka, about 30 feet high. At a small distance therefrom, were several Etoa-trees, whereon they saw a great number of Ternate-bats, making a most disagreeable noise. Not having their muskets with them at this time, they could not kill any, but some taken at Annamooka, measured almost a yard, when the wings were extended. On their return to Futafaihe's dwelling, the baked hog was brought out, accompanied with some cocoa-nuts, and several baskets of baked yams. The person who prepared the hog in the morning, now cut it up in a masterly manner, with a knife made of split bamboo. Though the weight was, at least, nearly seven stone, the whole was placed before them; when they took a small part, and desired the rest might be distributed among the people sitting round. Futafaihe could hardly be prevailed upon to eat a morsel. Dinner being ended, we went with him, and his attendants, to the spot where Poulaho's mourning ceremony was performed. They saw nothing but a kind of continuation of the same solemn rites, by way of condolence. Upon enquiring into the reason of this transaction, they were informed, that it was in memory of a chief who had long since died at Vavaoo; that they had practised it ever since, and should continue to do so for a considerable length of time to come. In the evening, they were entertained with a pig for supper, dressed like the hog, and, as that, accompanied with yams and cocoa nuts. When supper was over, a large quantity of cloth was brought for them to sleep on; but they were disturbed in their repose, by a singular piece of luxury, with which men of consequence in this island indulge themselves, namely, that of being thumped or ratted, till and while they are asleep. Two women, who sat by Futafaihe, performed this office, which they call tooge tooge, by striking his body and legs with both fists,

sifts, till he fell asleep, and with some intervals, continued it the whole night. If the person is asleep, they abate a little of the strength and briskness of the beating; but if they observe the least appearance of his awaking, they resume it. In the morning they were informed that Futtasaihe's women relieved each other, and went alternately to sleep. Such a practice as this, in any other country, would be supposed to be destructive of all rest; but here it operates like an opiate, and strongly points out what habit will effect. The noise occasioned by this extraordinary custom, was not the only bar to their sleeping; for the people who passed the night in the house, not only conversed frequently with each other, as in the daytime; but all got up before it was light, and made a hearty meal on fish and yams, which were brought to them by a person, who seemed to be well acquainted with the usual or appointed time of their nocturnal repast.

The next morning, being July the 1st, they walked down the east-side of the bay to the point, accompanied by Futtasaihe. The country appeared in a fine state of cultivation, but not so many inclosures as at Mooa; and among the great number of plantain-fields, there was one at least a mile long, in excellent order, every tree growing with great vigour. They found, that in travelling, Futtasaihe exercised a power, which evinced the great authority the principal men are invested with. To one place he sent for fish; to another for yams, &c. and his orders were as readily obeyed as if he had been absolute master of all the people's property. When we came to the point something was mentioned by the natives concerning a man, who, they said, had been fired at by one of our guard; and upon our desiring to see the person, they conducted us to a house, wherein was a man who had been shot through the shoulder, but not dangerously. The ball had entered a little above the inner part of the collar-bone; and passed out obliquely backward. From the state of the wound, and several particular circumstances, we were certain, that he was the person who had been fired at by one of our sentinels, three days before; though positive orders had been given, that none of our people should load their pieces with any thing but small shot. There were many of them ready to swear they had loaded only with these; and how the single misket happened to be that day charged with ball, Captain Cook could never find out. Our gentlemen gave some directions how to manage the wound, to which no remedy had been applied; and the natives seemed pleased, when they were informed it would get well in a certain time. At their departure, they requested of them to send the wounded man some yams, and other sorts of food; and in such a manner, that it was concluded they considered it to be our duty to support him, till he might be able to supply his wants with his own labour. They crossed the bay, in the evening, to our station, in a canoe procured by Futtasaihe, who exercised his authority by calling to the first that appeared. He had also brought to him at this place, by a servant, a large hog, and a bundle of cloth, which he wanted them to accept of as a present from him; but the boat being small, they objected; and he ordered it to be conveyed over to them the next day. Thus ends Mr. Anderson's account of his excursion.

On Wednesday the 2nd, Captain Cook examining the micrometer, belonging to the board of longitude, found some of the rack work broken, and that the instrument could not be repaired, nor rendered fit for use, by the time of the expected eclipse, though we had prolonged our stay with a view of making observations when this event should take place. Being thus disappointed in our expectation, we began to prepare for our departure, by getting this day on board all our cat-

tle, poultry, and other animals, except those that were destined to remain. The captain designed to have left a Turkey-cock and hen; but two hens having been destroyed by accident, and wishing to carry the breed to Otaheite, he reserved the only remaining pair for that place. We had brought three hens to these islands, one of which was strangled, and the other was killed by a useless dog belonging to one of our officers. The captain afterwards repented his not having given the preference to Tongataboo, as the present would have been more valued there than at Otaheite; and he was persuaded the natives of the former island would have taken more pains to multiply the breed. On the 3d, we unmoored, worked out of the bay, and moved the ships behind Pangimodoo, where we lay in readiness, to take the advantage of a favourable wind, to take us through the gut, in our way to Eooa-woe, or Middleburgh. The king, who this day dined with us, took particular notice of the plates; which the captain observing, made him an offer of one, either of pewter, or earthen-ware; he made choice of the first, and mentioned the several uses to which he intended to apply it; two of which were so very extraordinary that they deserve to be related. Whenever he should visit any of the other islands, he said he would leave this plate behind him at Tongataboo, as his representative, that the people might, in his absence, pay it the homage due to himself in person. On being asked, how he had usually been represented in his absence, before he was in possession of a plate, he informed us, that this singular honour had always been conferred on a wooden bowl, in which he washed his hands. The other use to which he meant to apply the plate instead of the bowl, was to discover a thief. When any thing had been stolen, and the thief not detected, the people were assembled before him, when he washed his hands in the vessel. After this it was cleansed, and every man advanced, and touched it with his hand, in the same manner as they touch his foot when they offer him obeisance. If touched by the guilty person, he dropped down dead immediately; and if any refused to touch it, such refusal was considered as a sufficient proof of guilt. On Saturday the 5th, the day of the eclipse, the weather in the morning was cloudy, with some showers of rain. About nine o'clock, the sun broke out at short intervals for about half an hour, but was totally obscured just before the commencement of the eclipse. The sun again appeared at intervals till about the middle of the eclipse; but was seen no more during the remainder of the day, so that we could not observe the end. This disappointment was the less to be lamented, as the longitude was sufficiently determined by lunar observations. The eclipse being over, we packed up the instruments, took down the observatories, and every thing was conveyed on board. None of the natives having taken the least notice or care of the sheep allotted to Mareewagee, the captain ordered them to be carried back to the ships. He was apprehensive, that if he should leave them there, they would probably be destroyed by the dogs. These animals did not exist upon the island in 1773, when Captain Cook first visited it; but there are now plenty of them among the chiefs, partly from the breed since that time, and partly from some imported from an island not very remote, called Feejee. At present, however, the dogs have not got into any of the Friendly Islands, except Tongataboo. We shall here add some particulars about this and its productions, for which we are indebted to Mr. Anderson. He spent many weeks upon it, and had many opportunities of gaining accurate information; and his researches will supply the imperfections or deficiencies, in our former account of this island; but for these particulars, we beg leave to refer our readers to the chapter following.

C H A P. VI.

Description of the island, animals, vegetables, &c. of Tongataboo, or Amsterdam—A solemnity at Mooa, called Natcke, performed in honour of the king's son—Extraordinary processions and ceremonies—The manner of spending the night at the king's house—The solemnity continued, and conjectures concerning it—The Resolution and Discovery depart from Tongataboo, and arrive at Eoo-a—An account of that island—Transactions there—They weigh anchor and turn through the channel—Observations on the Friendly Islands—The number of islands and their names—Account of Vavaoo, Hamoa, and Feejee—The general character, persons, manners, customs, habits, and ornaments of the inhabitants described—Various employments of the women and men of the Friendly Islands—Their manner of agriculture and building their houses—Furniture, canoes, tools, cordage, and fishing-tackle—Weapons and instruments of music—Vegetable and animal food—Their method of cooking, diversions, marriage, and mourning ceremonies—Of their deities and religious opinions—Their Fiatookas—The power of their chiefs, form of government, and manner of paying homage to their sovereign—The royal family—Specimens of their language—Nautical remarks and other observations on the Tammahas and tides.

TONGATABOO, Amsterdam, or Tonga, (as it is sometimes called by the natives) is about 60 miles in circuit, rather oblong, though broadest at the east end, and its greatest length is from east to west. The south shore is straight, consisting of coral-rocks, eight or ten feet high, terminating perpendicularly, except in some few places, where it is interrupted by small sandy beaches, whereon, at low water, a range of black rocks may be seen. The west end is not above five or six miles broad, but has a shore somewhat like that of the north-side; whereas the whole north-side is environed with shoals and islands, and the shore within them low and sandy. The east-side or end is, most probably, like the south; as the shore begins to assume a rocky appearance, towards the N. E. point, though not above seven or eight feet high. This island may, with great propriety, be called a low one, as the trees, on the west part, where we now lay at anchor, only appeared; and the eminent part, that can be seen from a ship, is the S. E. point; though many gently rising and declining grounds are observable by one who is ashore. The general appearance of the country does not afford that beautiful kind of landscape that is produced from a variety of hills and valleys, lawns, rivulets, and cascades; but, at the same time, it conveys to a spectator an idea of the most exuberant fertility, whether we attend to the places improved by art, or those still in a natural state; both which yield all their vegetable productions with the greatest vigour, and perpetual verdure. At a distance, the surface seems entirely clothed with trees of various sizes; some of which are very large; but the tall cocoa-palms raise their tufted heads high above the rest, and are a noble ornament to any country that produces them. The boogo, a species of the fig, with narrow pointed leaves, is the largest sized tree upon the island; and the most common bushes, and small trees, especially toward the sea, are the pandanus, the fatanoo, several sorts of the hibiscus, and a few others. A coral rock appears to be the basis of the island, which is the only kind of soil that presents itself on the shore: nor did we see the least appearance of any other stone, except a few small blue pebbles strewed about the Fiatookas; and a smooth solid black stone, something like the lapis lydus, of which the natives make their hatchets: but these last may, probably, have been brought from other islands in the neighbourhood; for a piece of flatey iron-coloured stone was bought at one of them, which was never seen here. Though, in many places, the coral projects above the surface, the soil is, in most parts, of a considerable depth. In those that are uncultivated, it is, commonly, of a loose black colour; produced, seemingly, from rotten vegetables: underneath which may be a clayey stratum; for a soil of that kind is often seen both in the low, and in the rising grounds; but especially in several places towards the shore, where it is of any height; and when broken off, appears sometimes of a reddish, though oftener of a brownish yellow colour, and of a pretty stiff consistence. Where the shore is low, the soil is commonly sandy, or rather composed of coral dust; which however yields bushes growing with great luxuriance; and is sometimes planted, not unsuccessfully, by the natives. The climate of Tongataboo, from the situation towards

No. 57.

the tropic, is more variable, than in countries nearer to the line, though, perhaps, that might be owing to the season of the year, which was now the winter solstice. The winds are, for the most part, from some point between S. and E. and, when moderate, are commonly attended with fine weather. When they blow fresher, the weather is often cloudy, though open; and in such cases, there is frequently rain. The wind sometimes veers to the N. E. N. N. E. or even N. N. W. but never lasts long, nor blows strong from thence; though it is commonly accompanied by heavy rain, and close sultry weather. The quick succession of vegetables has been already mentioned; but it is not certain that the changes of weather, by which it is brought about, are considerable enough to make them perceptible to the natives as to their method of life, or rather that they should be very sensible of the different seasons. This, perhaps, may be inferred from the state of their vegetable productions, which are never so much affected, with respect to the foliage, as to shed that all at once; for every leaf is succeeded by another, as fast as it falls; which causes that appearance of universal and continual spring found here.

The principal of the cultivated fruits are plantains, of which they have 15 different sorts; bread-fruit, two kinds of fruit found at Otaheite, and known there under the names of jambu and eveec; the latter a kind of plumb; and vast numbers of shaddock, which, however, are found as often in a natural state, as planted. The roots are yams, of which are two sorts; one black, and so large, that it often weighs 20 or 30 pounds; the other white and long, seldom weighing a pound. Here is a large root, called kappe; one, not unlike our white potatoes, called mawhaha; the talo, or coccos of other places; and another named jejee. Besides vast numbers of cocoa-nut trees, here are three other sorts of palms, two of which are very scarce. One of them is called becoo; which grows almost as high as the cocoa tree, has very large leaves plaited like a fan, and clusters or bunches of globular nuts, not larger than a small pistol ball, growing amongst the branches, with a very hard kernel, which is sometimes eaten. The other is a kind of cabbage tree, not distinguishable from the cocoa, but by being rather thicker, and by having its leaves more ragged. It has a cabbage three or four feet long; at the top of which are the leaves, and at the bottom the fruit, which is scarcely two inches long, resembling an oblong cocoa-nut, with an insipid tenacious kernel, called by the natives, neeoogoola, or red-cocoa-nut, as it assumes a reddish cast when ripe. The third sort is called ongo ongo, and much commoner, being generally found planted about the Fiatookas. It seldom grows higher than five feet, though sometimes to eight; and has a vast number of oval compressed nuts, as large as a pippin, sticking immediately to the trunk, among the leaves, which are not eat. In this island is plenty of excellent sugar-cane, which is cultivated; gourds, bamboo, turmeric, and a species of fig, about the size of a small cherry, called matte, which though wild is sometimes eaten. The catalogue of uncultivated plants is too large to be enumerated. Besides the Pemphis, Decaspermum, Mallocoeca, Maha, and some other new genera, there are a few more that escaped

6 B

Dr.

Dr. Forster's curious eye: but, perhaps, the different seasons of the year, and his short stay, did not give him an opportunity to notice them: in our longer stay here, not more than a fourth part of the trees and plants were in flower; a circumstance absolutely necessary, to enable one to distinguish the various kinds.

In this island are no other quadrupeds but hogs, some dogs, and a few rats. Fowls, which are of a large breed, are domesticated here. Of the birds are parrots, somewhat smaller than the common grey ones, having an indifferent green on the back and wings, the tail bluish, and the rest of a sooty or chocolate brown; parroquets not larger than a sparrow, of a fine yellowish green, with bright azure on the crown of the head, and the throat and belly red; besides another sort as large as a dove, with a blue crown and thighs, the throat and under part of the head crimson, as also part of the belly, and the rest a beautiful green. Here are owls, about the size of our common ones, but of a much finer plumage; cuckoos mentioned at Palmerston's Isle; king-fishers, about the size of a thrush, of a greenish blue, with a white ring about the neck; and a bird of the thrush kind, almost as big, of a dull green colour, with two yellow wattles at the base of the bill, which is the only singing one we heard at this place; but it compensates a good deal for the want of other songsters, by the strength and melody of its notes, which fill the woods at dawn, in the evening, and at the breaking up of bad weather. The other land-birds are rails, as large as a pigeon, of a variegated grey colour, with a rusty neck; a black sort with red eyes, not larger than a lark; violet-coloured coots, with bald red crowns; two sorts of fly-catchers; a very small swallow; and three sorts of pigeons; one of which is the size of the common sort, of a light green on the back and wings, with a red forehead; and another, somewhat less, of a purple brown, but whitish underneath. Of water-fowl, and such as frequent the sea, are the ducks seen at Annanooka, though scarce here; blue and white herons; tropic birds; common noddies; white terns; a new species of a leaden colour, with a black crest; a small bluish curlew; and a large plover, spotted with yellow. Besides the large bats, mentioned before, there is also the common sort. The only noxious or disgusting animals of the reptile or insect tribe, are sea snakes, three feet long, with black and white circles alternately, often found on shore; some scorpions and centipedes. There are five green guanoes, a foot and a half long; another brown and spotted lizard, about a foot and a half long; and two other small sorts. Among the other sorts of insects, are some beautiful moths; butterflies; very large spiders; and others; making, in the whole, about fifty different kinds. Though the sea abounds with fish, the variety is less than might be expected. The most frequent sorts are the mullets; parrot fish; silver fish; old wives; beautiful spotted soles; leather jackets; bannetos; and albicores; besides the eels mentioned at Palmerston's island; some sharks; rays; pipe fish; a sort of pikes; and some curious devil fish. The numerous reefs and shoals on the north side of the island, afford shelter for an endless variety of shell-fish; among which are many much esteemed in Europe; such as the true hammer oyster; of which, however, none could be obtained entire; a large indented oyster, and many others; but none of the common sort; pinnaas, cones; a gigantic cockle, found in the East Indies; pearl-shell oysters; and many others hitherto unknown to the most diligent enquirers after that branch of natural history. Here are likewise several sorts of sea-eggs; and many very fine star-fish; besides a considerable variety of corals; among which are two red sorts; the one most elegantly branched, the other tubulous. And there is no less variety among the crabs and cray-fish, which abound here.

On Monday, the 7th, early in the morning, a large canoe went along side the Discovery, in which were three men and a woman, of superior dignity to any her company had yet seen to come aboard. One of them, supported by his venerable appearance, to be the high

priest, held a long pole or spear in his hand, to which he tied a white flag, and began an oration which lasted a considerable time. After it was concluded, he ascended the side of the ship, and sat down, with great composure on the quarter deck, till he was accosted by captain Clerke, who, after the usual salutations, invited him, and his attendants, into the great cabin; but the latter declined the invitation; and to make known the dignity of the great personage, in whose presence they were, they prostrated themselves before him, the women as well as the men, and kissed the sole of his right foot. This aged islander brought with him, as a present to captain Clerke, four large hogs, six fowls, with a proportionable quantity of yams and plantains. In return, the Captain gave him a printed gown, a Chinese looking-glass, some earthen ware, &c. which he accepted with great courtesy, and with an air of dignity, which remarkably distinguished him. The Captain and officers paid him great attention, and shewed him the different accommodations on board the ship, at which he expressed great astonishment. He was then invited to eat, which he declined. He was offered wine, of which the Captain drank first; he put it to his lips, tasted it, but returned the glass. Having been on board little more than an hour, he was desirous of taking leave, and pointed to a little island, to which he gave the Captain a very pressing invitation to accompany him, but as he had other entertainments in view, on shore, that could not be complied with. This venerable person was about six feet, three inches high, finely proportioned, and had a commanding air, that was both affable and graceful. We were not favoured with a visit, nor did this great man come at any time on board the Resolution. Though we were now ready to sail, we had not sufficient day-light to turn through the narrows; the morning flood falling out too early, and the evening flood too late. We were therefore under a necessity of waiting two or three days, unless we should be fortunate enough to have a leading wind. This delay gave us an opportunity to be present at a public solemnity, to which the king had invited us, who said it would be performed in a day or two. Accordingly, he and all the people of consequence, repaired this day to Mooa, where the solemnity was to be exhibited.

On Tuesday the 8th, a party of us followed them. Poulaho now informed us, that his son was to be initiated into certain privileges; one of which was, that of eating with his father; an honour he had not hitherto enjoyed. About eight o'clock in the morning, we arrived at Mooa, where we found the king, with a number of attendants sitting before him, within a small dirty enclosure. They were, as usual, busied in preparing a bowl of kava. As this was not liquor for us, we went to pay a visit to some of our friends, and to observe what preparations were making for the ceremony, which was soon expected to begin. About ten o'clock, the people assembled in a large area before the malace, or great house. At the end of a road, opening into this area, stood several men with spears and clubs, reciting incessantly short sentences, in mournful accents, which conveyed an idea of distress. This was continued about an hour; during which time, many people came down the road, each having a yam tied to the middle of a pole, which they laid down before those who continued repeating the sentences. At length the king and prince arrived, and seated themselves upon the area; and we were requested to sit down by them, to take off our hats, and to untie our hair. The bearers of the yams having all entered, each pole was taken up between two men, who carried it over their shoulders. They then formed themselves into companies, of ten or twelve each, and marched across the place, with a rapid pace, each company headed by a man who had a club or spear, and defended on the right, by several others, armed with different weapons. About two hundred and fifty persons walked in the procession, which was closed by a man carrying on a perch a living pigeon. Omiah was desired by captain Cook to ask the chief where the yams were to be carried with so much solemnity; but he seemed unwilling to give us the information

bear in his hand, to which
 an oration which I called
 it was concluded, he af-
 and fat down, with great
 ck, till he was accosted by
 the usual salutations, invited
 to the great cabin; but the
 ; and to make known the
 ge, in whose presence they
 lives before him, the wo-
 killed the sole of his right
 ought with him, as a pre-
 large hogs, six fowls, with
 yams and plantains. In
 a printed gown, a Chi-
 chen ware, &c. which he
 and with an air of dignity,
 shed him. The Captain
 attention, and shewed him
 as on board the ship, at
 punishment. He was then
 declined. He was offered
 drank first; he put it to
 d the glass. Having been
 hour, he was desirous of
 little island, to which he
 invited invitation to accom-
 entertainments in view,
 complied with. This ve-
 fect, three inches high,
 a commanding air, that
 We were not favoured
 man come at any time
 ough we were now ready
 ay-light to turn through
 d falling out too early.
 We were therefore un-
 or three days, unless we
 o have a leading wind.
 nity to be present at a
 king had invited us, who
 a day or two. Accord-
 of consequence, repaired
 munity was to be exhibited.
 ty of us followed them.
 t his son was to be in-
 one of which was, that
 a honour he had not hi-
 o'clock in the morning,
 found the king, with a
 fore him, within a small
 usual, bustled in pre-
 is was not liquor for us,
 of our friends, and to
 re making for the cere-
 d to begin. About ten
 a large area before the
 end of a road, opening
 with spears and clubs,
 es, in mournful accents,
 refs. This was conti-
 nued time, many people
 aving a yam tied to the
 laid down before those
 sentences. At length the
 seated themselves upon
 d to sit down by them,
 e our hair. The bearers
 each pole was taken up
 it over their shoulders.
 to companies, of ten or
 the place, with a rapid
 a man who had a club
 light, by several others,
 About two hundred
 procession, which was
 perch a living pigeon.
 Cook to ask the chief
 rried with so much for-
 g to give us the infor-
 mation

mation we required: some of us, therefore, followed
 the procession, seemingly contrary to his inclination.
 They stopped before a Morai, or Fiatooka of one
 house, standing upon a mount, about a quarter of a
 mile from the place where they had first assembled.
 Here they deposited the yams, and gathered them into
 bundles; but for what purpose we could not possibly
 learn. Our presence seeming to give them uneasiness,
 we returned to Poulaho, who advised us to amuse our-
 selves by walking about, as nothing would be done for
 a considerable time. The fear of losing the sight of
 any part of the ceremony, prevented our being long ab-
 sent. When we returned to the king, he desired cap-
 tain Cook to order the boat's crew not to presume to
 stir from the boat, for every thing would, very soon, be
 taboo; and if any of our people, or of their own,
 should be seen walking about, they would certainly be
 knocked down with clubs, if they were not mated, that
 is, killed. He added, that we could not be present at
 the ceremony; but that we should be placed in such a
 situation, as to be able to see every thing that passed.
 Our dress was particularly objected to, and we were
 told, that, to qualify us to be present, we must be naked
 as low as the breast, that our hats must be off, and our
 hair untied. Omiah agreed readily to conform to
 these requisites, and immediately began to strip; but
 other objections were then started, and he was ex-
 cluded equally with ourselves. Not relishing this
 restriction, the Captain stole out, to see what might
 now be going forward. Very few people, however,
 were to be seen, except those who were dressed to at-
 tend the ceremony; some of whom had in their hands
 small poles, about four feet in length, to the under part
 of which were fastened two or three other small sticks,
 about six inches long. These men were going towards
 the Morai. The Captain took the same road, and was
 frequently stopped by them, all crying out taboo. How-
 ever, he ventured to go forward till he came in sight of
 the Morai, and of the people sitting before it. He
 was now strongly urged to go back, and not knowing
 what might be the consequence of a refusal, he com-
 plied. He had observed, that those who carried the
 poles, passed the Morai; and guessing from this cir-
 cumstance, that something was transacting beyond it,
 he had some thoughts of advancing, by making a
 round for this purpose; but he was so narrowly ob-
 served by three men, that he had no opportunity of
 carrying his design into execution. In order to shake
 off these three fellows, he returned to the Malae,
 where he had parted from the king, and afterwards
 made an elopement a second; but he instantly met
 with the same men, who had doubtless received in-
 structions to watch him. However, the Captain paid
 no attention to them, but proceeded onward till he
 came within sight of the king's principal Fiatooka, or
 Morai; before which a great number of people were
 sitting, being those whom he had just seen before pass-
 ing the Morai, from whence this was but a little distant.
 Perceiving, while he was considering what he should
 do, that he could observe the proceeding of this com-
 pany from the king's plantation, he repaired thither,
 accompanied by several of his people. The number
 of persons at the Fiatooka continued increasing for
 some time; and at length, they quitted their sitting
 posture, and marched off in procession. They walked
 in pairs, every pair carrying between them, one of the
 small poles on their shoulders. We were informed,
 that the small pieces of sticks, fastened to the poles,
 were yams; it is therefore probable, that they were
 meant to represent that root emblematically. The
 hindmost man of each couple placed one of his hands
 to the middle of the pole, as if it were not strong enough
 to carry the weight that hung upon it, and under which
 they all seemed to bend as they proceeded. This pro-
 cession consisted of one hundred and eight pairs, chiefly
 men of rank. Having seen them all pass, we repaired
 to Poulaho's house, and saw him going out. We were
 not permitted to follow him; but were immediately
 conducted to the place allotted to us, behind a fence ad-

joining to the area of the Fiatooka, where the yams had
 been deposited in the morning.

When arrived at our station, we saw two or three
 hundred persons, sitting on the grass, near the end of
 the road opening into the area of the Morai; and
 others were continually joining them. At length, ar-
 rived a few men, each carrying some small poles and
 branches, or leaves of the cocoa-nut tree. As soon as
 they appeared, an old man seated himself in the road,
 and pronounced a long oration in a serious pathetic
 tone. He then retired, and the others advanced to
 the middle of the area, began to erect a small hut or
 hut; employing, for that purpose, the materials already
 mentioned. Their work being finished, they all squatted
 down for a moment before it, then rose up, and joined
 the rest of the company. Poulaho's son arrived soon
 after, preceded by four or five male attendants. After
 them appeared about twelve or fourteen women of the
 first rank, advancing slowly in pairs, each pair carrying
 between them a narrow piece of white cloth, about
 two or three yards in length. They approached the
 prince, squatted down before him, and wrapped some
 of the pieces of cloth round his body; they then rose
 up, and retired in the same order, to some distance on
 his left, where they seated themselves. Poulaho now
 made his appearance, preceded by four men, walking
 two and two abreast, and sat down on his son's left hand,
 at a small distance from him. The young prince then
 quitted his first position, and seated himself under the
 shed, with his attendants; many others placing them-
 selves on the grass before this royal canopy. The
 prince sat facing the people, with his back to the Mo-
 rai. Three companies of about ten or a dozen men
 in each, started up from among the crowd, soon after
 each other, and, running hastily to the opposite side,
 sat down for a few seconds; and then returned, in the
 same manner, to their former stations. To them suc-
 ceeded two men, each having a small green branch in
 his hand, who rose and advanced towards the prince,
 sitting down for a few minutes, three different times, as
 they approached; and retired in the same manner, in-
 clining their branches to each other as they sat. Af-
 terwards two others repeated the same ceremony. The
 grand procession, which marched from the other Mo-
 rai, now began to come in. As they entered the area,
 they proceeded to the right of the shed, and, having
 prostrated themselves on the grass, deposited their pre-
 tended heavy burdens, (the poles) and faced round to
 the prince. They then rose up, and retired in the
 same order, closing their hands with the most serious
 aspect, and seated themselves along the front of the
 area. While this numerous band were entering, and
 depositing their poles, three men, who at with the
 prince, continued pronouncing separate sentences, in a
 mournful melancholy tone. A profound silence now
 ensued for a short time, after which a man who sat in
 the front of the area, began a kind of oration, during
 which, at several different times, he broke one of the
 poles which had been brought in. Having concluded
 his oration, the people sitting before the shed, separated,
 to make a lane, through which the prince and his at-
 tendants passed, and the assembly closed.

Satisfied with what we had already seen, some of our
 party now returned to the ships; but captain Cook, and
 some more of the officers, remained at Mooa, to see the
 conclusion of the solemnity, which was not to be till
 the day following. The small poles, which had been
 brought by those who walked in procession, being left
 on the ground, after the crowd had dispersed, the cap-
 tain examined, and found that, to the middle of each,
 two or three small sticks were tied, as has been related.
 They were probably intended as only artificial repre-
 sentations of small yams. Our supper, consisting of
 fish and yams, was got ready about eleven o'clock. The
 king supped with us, and drank so freely of brandy
 and water, that he retired to bed with a sufficient dose.
 We continued the whole night in the same house with
 him and his attendants. About one or two o'clock in
 the morning, on Wednesday, the 9th, they waked, con-
 versed

verfed for about an hour, and then went to sleep again. All, except Poulaho, rofe at break of day; foen after which, a woman, one of thofe who generally attended upon the king, came in, and fitting down by him, immediately began the fame operation that had been practifed upon Futtafaihe, tapping, or beating gently, with her clenched fists; on his thighs: but this, inftead of promoting repofe, had the contrary effect, and he awoke. Captain Cook and Omiah paid now a vifit to the prince, who had parted from us early in the preceding evening; for he did not lodge with the king, but in apartments of his own, at fome diftance from his father's houfe. We found him with a circle of youths, about his own age, fitting before him; alfo an old man and woman. There were others, of both fexes, employed about their neceffary affairs, who probably belonged to his houfhold. We now returned to the king, who had a crowded levee before him, confifting principally of old men. While a bowl of kava was preparing, a baked hog and yams, fmoaking hot, were introduced; the greateft part of which fell to our fhare; for thefe people, efpecially the kava drinkers, eat very little in the morning. We afterwards walked out, and vifited feveral other chiefs, all of whom were taking their morning draught, or had already taken it. Returning to the king, we found him afleep in a retired hut, with two women patting him. About eleven o'clock he made his appearance among us, partook of fome fifh and yams, and again lay down to fleep. We now left him, and waited on the prince, with a prefent of cloth, beads and other articles. There was a fufficient quantity of cloth to make him a complete fuit, and he was immediately clad in his new habiliments. Proud of his drefs, he firft went to exhibit himfelf to his father, and then conducted Captain Cook to his mother, with whom were about a dozen other women, of a very refpectable appearance. Here the prince changed his apparel, and made the Captain a prefent of two pieces of cloth which had been manufactured in the ifland. It was now about noon, when, by appointment, the Captain repaired to the palace to dinner; which was foen after ferved up, and confifted of two pigs and fome yams. The drowfy monarch was roused to partake of what he had ordered for our entertainment. Two mullets, and fome fhell-fifh, were introduced, as if intended for his feperate portion. But he added it to our fare, fat down with us, and made a hearty meal. Dinner being over, we were informed that the ceremony would foen begin, and were ftrictly enjoined not to venture out.

Captain Cook had refolved, however, to peep no longer from behind the curtain, but, if poffible, to mix with the actors themfelves. With this view he walked towards the Morai, the fcene of the folemnity. He was defired frequently to return; but he paid no regard to the admonitions he had received, and was permitted to walk on. When arrived at the Morai, he faw a number of men feated on the fide of the area. A few alfo were fitting on the oppofite fide, and two men in the middle, with their faces towards the Morai. When Captain Cook had got into the middle of the firft company, he was defired to fit down, which he accordingly did. Where he fat, a number of fmall bundles were lying, compofed of cocoa-nut leaves, and fattened to fticks made into the form of hand barrows. All the information he could get concerning them was, that they were taboo. From time to time, one or another of the company turned to thofe who were coming to join us, and made a fhort fpeech, in which we remarked, that the word arekee (king) was generally mentioned. Something was faid by one man that produced loud hurrahs of laughter from all around; others, of the fpeakers, were alfo much applauded. The Captain was frequently defired to leave the place; but, at length, finding him determined to ftay, they requested him to uncover his fhoulders, in like manner as they had done. This he readily complied with, and then they no longer feemed uneasy at his prefence. The prince, the women, and the king, at length appeared, as they had done the preceding day. The prince being

placed under the fhed, two men, each having a piece of mat, came, repeating fomething in a very ferious ftain, and put them about him. The people now began their performances, and different companies ran backward and forward acrofs the area, as in the former day. Prefently afterwards, the two men in the middle of the area, made a fhort fpeech, and then the whole company rofe up, and placed themfelves before the fhed in which the prince, and three or four men were feated. One of the company, who feemed very defirous of obliging the Captain, procured him fuch a fituation, that, if he could have made ufe of his eyes, nothing could have efaped him. But it was neceffary to have a demure countenance and downcaft looks. The proceffion now arrived, as on the day before; a pole, with a cocoa-nut leaf plaited round the middle of it, being carried on the fhoulders of every two perfons. Thefe were depofited with the fame ceremonies as on the day before. After this fucceeded another proceffion, compofed of men who brought baskets, made of pain-leaves, fuch as are generally ufed by thofe people to carry provifions in. A third proceffion followed, in which a variety of fmall fifh, each placed at the end of a forked ftick, were brought. An old man, who fat on the prince's right hand, without the fhed, received the baskets, each of which he kept in his hand, making a fhort fpeech or prayer; then laying that afide, he called for another, repeating the fame kind of prayer; he proceeded in this manner till he had gone through the whole number of baskets. Two men, who, till this time, had in their hands green branches, and were feated on the left, received the fifh one by one, as they were prefented to them on the forked fticks. The firft fifh they laid down on their right hand, and the fecond on their left. The third being prefented, a flouthifh man, who was feated behind the other two, endeavoured to feize it, as did alfo the other two at the fame time. Thus every fifh was contended for; but the man behind, on account of his difadvantageous fituation, got only pieces; for he never quitted his hold till the fifh was torn out of his hand. What the others got, were laid on the right and left. At laft the perfon behind got poffeffion of a whole fifh, the other two not even touching it. Upon this, the word *marecai* (very good) was pronounced in a low voice throughout the whole crowd. It appeared that he had now done all that was expected from him; for he did not contend for the other fifh. The perfons who brought in thefe baskets and fifh, delivered them fitting; and in the fame manner, the poles carried in the firft proceffion, had been placed on the ground. At the clofe of the laft proceffion, there was fpeaking fentiments and praying by different perfons. Then on a fignal being given, we all rofe up, ran feveral paces, and fat down, with our backs to the prince. The Captain was bid not to look behind him; but he was not difcouraged by this injunction from facing about. The prince had now turned his face to the Morai, and from that moment he was admitted to the honour of eating with his father; and a piece of roafted yam was prefented to each of them for that purpofe. Soen after we turned about, forming a kind of femicircle before the prince, and leaving an open fpace between us. Prefently fome men advanced towards us, two and two, bearing large poles upon their fhoulders, waving their hands as they proceeded, and making a noife like finging. When near us, they made a thew of walking quick, without advancing a fingle ftap, feveral men armed with large fticks, immediately started from the crowd, and ran towards the new vifitors, but they inftantly made off, having thrown down the poles from their fhoulders. The others attacked the poles, and having beat them moft furiously, returned to their places. The former, as they ran off, gave the challenge ufed here in wrefling; and, in a fhort time, fome lufly fellows came from the fame quarter, repeating the challenge as they approached. Thefe were refilled by a company, who arrived at that inftant from the oppofite fide. Both parties, however, returned to their own quarter, after having paraded about the area for fome minutes. Afterwards, for the fpace of half an hour,

wrefling

wrestling and boxing matches succeeded. Speeches were then delivered by two men, who feated themselves before the prince, with which the solemnity ended, and the whole assembly broke up.

In vain did he endeavour to find out the purport of this solemnity, called by the natives *natche*. All the answer we received to our enquiries, was *taboo*, which, as has been already observed, is applied to many things. There was a solemn mystery in the whole transaction; and from the manner of performing it, as well as the place where it was performed, it was evident there is a mixture of religion in the institution. Upon no other occasion had they regarded our dress and deportment; but now it was required, that our hair should flow about our shoulders; that we should be uncovered to the waist; sit cross-legged; and have our hands locked together. It should be observed also, that none but the principal people, and those who were concerned in the ceremonies, were admitted to assist in the celebration of the solemnity. All these circumstances pointed out evidently, that they supposed themselves acting under the inspection of a supreme being upon this occasion. From this account of the *natche*, it may be considered as merely figurative. The few yams that were seen the first day, could not be meant as a general contribution; and it was intimated to us, that they were a portion consecrated to the *Otoo*, or Divinity. We were informed that in the space of three months, there would be represented a more important solemnity; on which occasion the tribute of *Tongataboo*, *Hapace*, *Vivao*, and all the other islands, would be brought to the chief, and more awfully confirmed, by sacrificing ten human victims from among the people. A horrid solemnity indeed! On our inquiring into the occasion of so barbarous a custom, we were informed that it was a necessary part of the *natche*; and that if omitted, the Deity would destroy their king. The day was far spent before the breaking up of the assembly; and as we were at some distance from the ships, we were impatient to set out from *Mooa*. Taking leave of *Poulaho*, he pressed us earnestly to stay till the next day, in order to be present at a funeral ceremony. The wife of *Mareewage*, his mother-in-law, had lately died; and, on account of the *natche*, her corpse had been carried on board a canoe in the lagoon. He said, that when he had paid the last offices to her, he would attend us to *Eooa*; but if we did not chuse to wait, he would follow us thither. We would gladly have been present at this ceremony, had not the tide been now favourable. The wind too, which had been very boisterous, was now moderate and settled. Besides, we were told, that the funeral ceremonies would continue five days, which, as the ships lay in such a situation that we could not put to sea at pleasure, was too long a time to stay. The Captain, however, assured the king, that if he did not immediately sail, he would visit him again the next day. While we were attending the *natche*, at *Mooa*, the Captain ordered the horses, bull, and other cattle, to be brought thither, thinking they would be safer there, than at a place that would be, in a great measure, deserted, the moment after our departure. Besides, we had left with our friends here, a young English boar, and three young English fows. They were exceedingly desirous of them, naturally supposing they would greatly improve their own breed, which are but small. *Feenoo* also got two rabbits from us, a buck and a doe, from which young ones were produced before we sailed. Should the cattle prosper, the acquisition to these islands will be great; and as *Tongataboo* is a fine level country, the horses will be extremely useful. We now all, the evening being far advanced, took leave of the king, and arrived at our ships about eight o'clock.

On Thursday, the 10th, we weighed, about eight o'clock A. M. and with a steady gale at S. E. turned through the channel, between the small isles, called *Makkahaa*, and *Monooafai*, it being much wider than the channel between the last mentioned island and *Ranginodoo*. The flood at first set strong in our fa-

No. 57.

avour, till we were the length of the channel leading, up to the lagoon, where the eastward flood meets that from the west. This, with the indraught of the lagoon, and of the shoals before it, occasions strong ripplings and whirlpools. Besides these disadvantages, the depth of the channel exceeds the length of a cable; consequently there can be no anchorage, except close to the rocks, in forty and forty-five fathoms water, where a ship would be exposed to the whirlpools. The Captain, therefore, abandoned the design he had formed, of coming to anchor, when we were through the narrows, and afterwards of making an excursion to see the funeral. He rather chose to be absent from that ceremony, than to leave the ships in so dangerous a situation. We plied to windward, between the two tides, till it was near high water, without either gaining or losing an inch, when we suddenly got into the influence of the eastern tide, where we expected the ebb to run strongly in our favour. It proved, however, very inconsiderable: at any other time it would not have been noticed: but by this circumstance we were led to conclude, that most of the water, which flows into the lagoon, comes from the N. W. and returns the same way. Convinced that we could not get to sea before it was dark, we cast anchor under the shore of *Tongataboo*, in 45 fathoms water. The *Discovery* dropped her anchor under our stern; but drove off the bank before the anchor took hold, and did not recover it till near midnight. On Friday, the 11th, near noon, we weighed and plied to the eastward. At ten o'clock P. M. we weathered the east end of the island, and stretched away for *Middleburgh*, which the inhabitants call *Eooa*, or *Ea-ooowe*. We anchored about eight o'clock A. M. of the 12th, on the S. W. side of the island, in 40 fathoms water, over a bottom of sand, interspersed with coral rocks; the extremes of the island extending from N. 40 deg. E. to S. 22 deg. W. the high land of *Eooa*, S. 45 deg. E. and *Tongataboo*, from N. 70 deg. W. to N. 19 deg. W. distant about half a mile from the shore; being nearly the same place where Captain Cook took his station in 1773, and which he named *English Road*. We had no sooner anchored, than the natives came on board with as little ceremony, as if they had been acquainted with us for many years. They brought us the produce of the island: but being already supplied with every necessary of that kind, our chief traffic was for birds and feathers. Here the parrots and paroquets were of the most beautiful plumage, far surpassing those usually imported into Europe from the Indies; there are a great variety of other birds, on which many gentlemen in both ships put a great value, though they were purchased for trifles. The feathers we procured, were of divers colours, for different markets, but chiefly for the *Marquesas* and *Society Isles*. We also purchased cloth, and many other articles of curious workmanship, the artists of this island, for invention and ingenuity in the execution, exceeding those of all the other islands in the South Seas: but what particularly invited our stay here, was the richness of the grass, which, made into hay, proved excellent food for our live stock. Among others, *Taoofo* the chief, visited us on board, and seemed to rejoice much at our arrival. This person had been Captain Cook's *Tayo*, in 1773, and, therefore, they were not strangers to each other. The Captain accompanied him ashore in search of fresh water, the procuring of which was the main object which brought us to *Middleburgh*. We had heard at *Amsterdam* of a stream at this island, which, it was said, runs from the hills into the sea: but this was not to be found. The Captain was conducted to a brackish spring, among rocks, between low and high-water mark. When they perceived, that we did not approve of this, we were shewn a little way into the island; where, in a deep chafin, we found some excellent water; which, at the expence of some time and trouble, might be conveyed to the shore, by means of spouts and troughs, provided for that purpose: but rather than undertake so tedious a task, we rested contented with the supply the ships had received at *Tongataboo*. At this island of *Eooa* we landed the ram

6 C

and

and two ewes, of the Cape of Good Hope breed, and committed them to the care of Taoofo, who seemed proud of his charge. It was, perhaps, a fortunate circumstance, that Maicewagee, for whom they were intended, had slighted the present; for as Eooa had no dogs upon it, at present, it seemed to be a fitter place for feeding sheep than Tongataboo. While we lay at anchor, the island of Eooa, or Middleburgh, had a very different aspect from any one that we had lately seen, and formed a most beautiful landscape. It is the highest of any we had seen since we had left New Zealand, and from its summit, which appears to be almost flat, declines gradually towards the sea. The other isles, which form this cluster, being level, the eye cannot discover any thing except the trees that cover them: but here the land, rising gently upwards, presents an extensive prospect, where groves, in beautiful disorder, are interspersed at irregular distances. Near the shore, it is quite shaded with a variety of trees, among which are placed the habitations of the natives, and to the right of our station was one of the most extensive groves of cocoa-palms that we had ever seen.

Sunday, the 13th, a party of us, in the afternoon, ascended to the highest part of the island, a little to the right of our ships, to have a perfect view of the country. Having advanced about half way up, we crossed a deep valley, the bottom and sides of which were covered with trees. We found plenty of coral till we approached the summits of the highest hills: the soil near the top, is in general, a reddish clay, which in many places is very deep. On the most elevated part of the island, we saw a round platform, supported by a wall of coral stones. Our guides informed us, that this mount had been erected by command of their chief; and the principal people sometimes resorted there to drink kava. They called it Etchee, by which name an erection was distinguished which we had seen at Tongataboo. At a small distance from it was a spring of most excellent water; and, about a mile lower down, a stream, which, we were told, ran into the sea, when the rains are copious. We also discovered water in several small holes, and suppose that plenty might be found by digging. From this elevation we had a complete view of the whole island, except a small part to the south. The S. E. side, from which the hills we were now upon are not far distant, rises with great inequalities, immediately from the sea; so that its plains and meadows lie all on the N. W. side; which being adorned with tufts of trees, intermixed with plantations, form a most delightful landscape in every point of view. While the captain was surveying this enchanting prospect, he enjoyed the pleasing idea, that some future navigators might, from the same eminence, behold those meadows stocked with cattle, brought by the ships of England; and that the completion of this single benevolent purpose, exclusive of all other considerations, would sufficiently prove, that our voyages had not been useless. We found on this height, besides the plants common on the neighbouring isles, a species of acrofticium, melastoma, and fern trees. All or most of the land on this island, we were told, belonged to the chiefs of Tongataboo; the inhabitants being only tenants, or vassals to them. This seemed, indeed, to be the case at all the neighbouring isles, except Annamooka, where some of the chiefs seemed to act with a degree of independence. Omiah, who was much esteemed by Feenou, and many others, was tempted with the offer of being appointed a chief of this island, if he would continue among them; and he seemed inclinable to have accepted the offer, had he not been advised to the contrary by Captain Cook; though not because he thought he would do better for himself in his native isle. Returning from our country excursion, we heard that a party of the natives, in the quarter where our people traded, had struck one of their countrymen with a club, which fractured his skull, and afterwards broke his thigh with the same. Not any signs of life were remaining, when he was carried to a neighbouring house, but, in a short time he recovered a little. On our desiring to know

the reason of such an act of severity, we were informed, that the offender had been discovered in an indelicate situation with a woman who was taboo'd. We soon understood, however, that she was no otherwise taboo'd, than by belonging to another, superior in rank to her gallant. From this incident, we discovered how these people punish such infidelities: but the female sinner has a much milder correction for her crime, receiving only a slight re-conviction, and a very gentle beating.

On Monday the 14th, in the morning, we planted a pine-apple, some seeds of melons, and other vegetables, in a plantation belonging to the chief. We had good reason, indeed, to suppose, our endeavours of this kind would not be fruitless; for a dish of turnips was, this day, served up at his table, which was the produce of the seeds that were left here in 1773. The next day being fixed upon by the captain for sailing, Taoofo pressed us to stay a little longer. We must here observe, that in the account of Captain Cook's former voyage, he calls the only chief he met with at this place Tiouny; but we are inclined to think, from the information of a gentleman of veracity, on board the Discovery, at this time, that Tiouny and Taoofo are one and the same person. His intreaties, together with the daily expectation of receiving a visit from some of our friends at Tongataboo, induced us to defer our departure. On Tuesday the 15th, we received from Taoofo a present consisting of two little heaps of yams, and a quantity of fruit, which seemed to have been collected as at the other isles. On this occasion, the greatest part of the inhabitants of the island had assembled; and, as we had many times experienced, on such numerous meetings among their neighbouring islands, gave us no small trouble to prevent their pilfering. Cudgelling, wrestling, and boxing, were exhibited for our entertainment; and in the latter exercises, combatants of both sexes engaged. These diversions were to be finished with the boma, or night dance, but the following accident prevented our staying on shore to see it. From the accounts circulated through the ships when we arrived, it was generally believed, that we might travel through this island with our pockets open, provided they were not lined with iron; but to this, the behaviour of a party of the inhabitants to William Collet, captain's steward of the Discovery, is an exception. Being alone, diverting himself in surveying the country, he was set upon and stripped of every thing, his shoes only excepted, and on perceiving his complaint, his keys were all that he was able to recover. When Captain Cook heard of this robbery, he seized two canoes, and a large hog; at the same time insisting on the chief's not only causing the apparel to be restored, but also on the offenders being delivered up to him. Taoofo seemed greatly concerned at what had happened, and took the necessary steps to satisfy us. The people who had as usual assembled together, were so alarmed at this affair, that most of them immediately fled. However, when they were informed, that the captain meant to take no other measures to revenge the insult, they returned. One of the delinquents was soon delivered up, and a shirt, and pair of trowsers restored. The remainder of the stolen things not coming in till the evening, the captain was obliged to leave them, in order to go aboard; the sea running so high, that it was extremely difficult for the boats to get out of the creek even with day light, and would be attended with much more danger in the dark. He returned on shore again the next morning, taking with him a present for Taoofo, in return for what he had received from him. Being early, there were but few people at the landing-place, and even those few not without their fears and apprehensions; but on the captain's desiring Omiah to assure them, that we did not mean to injure them, and having restored the canoes, and released the offender, who had been delivered up, they resumed their usual cheerfulness, and a large circle was presently formed, in which the chief and the principal men of the island took their respective places. At length the remainder of the cloaths

of feverity, we were informed, been discovered in an indelicate who was taboo'd. We soon at she was no otherwife taboo'd, other, superior in rank to her ident, we discovered how these felicities: but the female sinner section for her crime, received sentence, and a very gentle

in the morning, we planted a fmcloas, and other vegetables, g to the chief. We had good se, our endeavours of this kind for a dish of turnips was, this ole, which was the produce of here in 1773. The next day e captain for sailing, Taoofo le longer. We must here ob- ant of Captain Cook's former ly chief he met with at this re inclined to think, from the man of veracity, on board the , that Tiouoy and Taoofo are n. His intreaties, together on of receiving a visit from ongataboo, induced us to defer tefday the 15th, we received nsting of two little heaps of fruit, which seemed to have other isles. On this occasion, inhabitants of the island had many times experienced, on s among their neighbouring all trouble to prevent their pil- restling, and boxing, were ex- mment; and in the latter ex- both sexes engaged. These fished with the bomai, or night accident prevented our stay-

From the accounts circulated we arrived, it was generally ravel through this island with ded they were not lined with avour of a party of the in- llet, captain's steward of the ion. Being alone, diverting country, he was set upon and his shoes only excepted, and int, his keys were all that he hen Captain Cook heard of wo canoes, and a large hog; at n the chief's not only caulng ed, but also on the offenders. Taoofo seemed greatly appened, and took the need- The people who had as usual so alarmed at this affair, that y fled. However, when they captain meant to take no other insult, they returned. One on delivered up, and a shirt, red. The remainder of the in till the evening, the captain y, in order to go aboard; the it was extremely difficult for e creek even with day light, ith much more danger in the ore again the next morning, for Taoofo, in return for what m. Being early, there were nding-place, and even those and apprehensions; but on niah to assure them, that we em, and having restored the offender, who had been de- their usual cheerfulness, and y formed, in which the chief the island took their respect- the remainder of the cloaths were

were brought in, but having been torn off the man's back by pieces, they were not thought worth carrying on board. Taoofo shared the present he had received, with three or four other chiefs, reserving only a small part for himself. This donation so far exceeded their expectation, that a venerable old man told the captain, they were not deservng of it, considering how little he had received from them, and the ill treatment Mr. Collet had met with. Captain Cook continued with them, till they had emptied their bowl of kava; and then, after paying for the hog, which he had taken the day before, returned on board, in company with Taoofo, and one of Poulaho's servants, by whom he sent a piece of bar-iron, as a parting mark of esteem for that chief. This was as valuable a present as any the captain could make. Orders had been given the preceding day for sailing, and Otaheite was appointed our place of rendezvous, in case of separation. We had now been more than two months improving our live stock, wooding, watering, repairing our ships, and laying in fresh provisions from these Friendly Islands. The crews of both ships received these orders with alacrity; for though they wanted for nothing, yet they longed to be at Otaheite, where some of them had formed connections that were dear to them, and where those, who had not yet been there, had conceived so high an idea of its superiority, as to make them look upon every other place they touched at as an uncultivated garden, in comparison with that little Eden.

We were therefore all in high spirits this morning; for soon after the captain had sent off his present by Poulaho's servant, we weighed, and with a light breeze stood out to sea, when Taoofo and other natives, who were in the ship, left us. We found, on heaving up the anchor, that the cable had been much wounded by the rocks; besides which we experienced, that a prodigious swell rolls in there from the S. W. so that the bottom of this road is not to be depended on in all weathers. We now steered our course to the southward, to fetch a wind to carry us to our intended port; and we observed a sailing canoe entering the creek before which we had anchored our ships. A few hours after, a small canoe, conducted by four men, came off to us; for having but little wind, we were still at no considerable distance from the land. We were informed by these men, that the sailing canoe, which we had seen arrive, had brought directions to the people of Eooa, to furnish us with hogs, and that the king and other chiefs would be with us in the space of three or four days. They therefore requested that we would return to our former station. We had no reason to doubt the truth of this information; but being clear of the land, it was not a sufficient inducement to bring us back; especially, as we had already a sufficient stock of fresh provisions to last us in our passage to Otaheite. Besides Taoofo's present, we received a large quantity of yams, &c. at Eooa, in exchange for nails; and added considerably to our supply of hogs. Finding we were determined not to return, these people left us in the evening, as did some others, who had come off in two canoes, with cocoa-nuts and blades, to barter for what they could get; their eagerness to possess more of our commodities, inducing them to follow us to sea, and to continue their intercourse with us to the last moment.

As we have now taken leave of the Friendly Islands, a few observations we made respecting these, and others in their neighbourhood, may not be unworthy the notice of our readers. During a cordial intercourse between two and three months with their inhabitants, it may be reasonably supposed differences must arise; some, indeed, occasionally happened, on account of their natural propensity to thieving, though too frequently encouraged by the negligence and inattention of our people on duty. These little misunderstandings and differences were never attended with any fatal consequences, and few, belonging to our ships, parted from their friends without regret. The time we continued here was not thrown away; and as, in a great

measure, our subsistence was drawn from the produce of the islands, we expended very little of our sea provisions; and we carried with us a sufficient quantity of refreshments, to supply us till our arrival at another station, where we could again recruit: nor was it less pleasing to us, that we had an opportunity of serving these friendly people, by leaving some useful animals among them; and that those intended for Otaheite, had acquired fresh strength in the pastures of Tongataboo. The advantages we received, by touching here, were great, and we obtained them without retarding the prosecution of our grand object; the season for proceeding to the north being lost, before we formed the resolution of visiting these islands. "But," observes Captain Cook, "besides the immediate advantages, which both the natives of the Friendly Isles, and ourselves received by this visit, future navigators from Europe, if any such should ever tread our steps, will profit by the knowledge I acquired of the geography of this part of the Pacific Ocean; and the more philosophical reader, who loves to view human nature in new situations, and to speculate on singular, but faithful representations of the persons, the customs, the arts, the religion, the government, and the language of uncultivated nature and man, in remote and fresh discovered quarters of the globe, will, perhaps, find matter of amusement, if not of instruction, in the information which I have been enabled to convey to him, concerning the inhabitants of this Archipelago." We now proceed with our proposed observations.

The best articles for traffic in these islands are iron and iron tools. Axes, hatchets, nails of all sizes, knives, rasps, and files, are much demanded. Red cloth, white and coloured linen, looking-glasses and beads, are also in great estimation; but of the latter, those that are blue the natives prefer to most others, particularly to the white ones. A hog might, at any time, be purchased, by a string of large blue beads; it should, nevertheless, be observed farther, that articles, merely ornamental, may be highly esteemed at one time, and disregarded at another. On our first arrival at Annamooka, the inhabitants were unwilling to take them in exchange for fruit; but when Feenou arrived, his approbation brought them into vogue, and stamped on them the value above-mentioned. In return for these commodities, all the refreshments to be had at the Friendly Islands, may be procured. The yams are excellent, and, when grown to perfection, preserve well at sea; but their pork, plantains, and bread-fruit, are inferior in quality to the same articles at Otaheite. The productions and supplies of these islands are yams, bread-fruit, plantains, cocoa-nuts, sugar-canes, hogs, fowls, fish, and, in general, all such as are to be met with at Otaheite, or any of the Society Islands. But good water, which ships in long voyages stand much in need of, is scarce at the Friendly Isles. It may, it is true, be found in all of them, but not to serve the purposes of navigators; for either the quality is bad, or the situations too inconvenient, or the qualities too inconsiderable. While we lay at anchor under Kotoo, we were informed, that there was a stream of water at Kao, which ran from the mountains into the sea, on the S. W. side of the island. This intelligence, though of no use to us, may deserve the attention of future navigators.

We must include, under the denomination of the Friendly Islands, not only the group at Hapae, but likewise those that have been discovered to the north nearly under the same meridian, as well as some others under the dominion of Tongataboo or Amsterdam, which is the capital, and seat of government. From the best information we could obtain, this cluster of islands is very extensive. One of the natives enumerated 150 islands; and Mr. Anderson procured the names of all of them; from their communications the following list was made. They were enumerated by the inhabitants of Annamooka, Hapae, and Tongataboo; and may serve as a ground-work for the investigation of future navigators.

A LIST of those FRIENDLY ISLANDS, represented by the Natives as Large Ones.

Vavaoo	Kovoocca	Kogoopolo
Goofoo	Kopao	Konnagillelavoo
Talava	Takounove	Kofoona
Toggelao	Oloo	Kolaiva
Lotooma	Loubatta	Komoarra
Vytooboo	Pappataia	Komotte
Fotoona	Lchhainga	Kotooboo
Necootabootaboo	Manooka	Kongairahoi
Hamao	Totooocla	Oowaia
Tafecdoowaia	Havaceecka	Feejee
Kongairceeka		Neualo

A LIST of the Smaller FRIENDLY ISLES.

Latte	Mafanna	Gowakka
Boloa	Kolloona	Vagaetoo
Tattahoi	Tabanna	Golabbe
Toofagga	Motooha	Novababoo
Fonoalaiee	Looakabba	Kokabba
Loogoobahanga	Looamoggo	Kottejea
Foomotoo	Moggodoo	Kowouogohcefo
Taoola	Konnevao	Geenagena
Wegalla	Konnevy	Koonoogoo
Fonoonconne	Toonabai	Koonookonama
Fonoaonia	Gonoogolaiee	Kowceka
Mancenecta	Mallalahee	Failemaia
Kolea	Mallajee	Koreemou
Toofanaclaa	Matagefaia	Noogootaceou
Toofanaetollo	Kollokolahee	Fonoaacka
Falcene	Kologobelee	Koooa
Taoonga	Kotoolooa	Madooanoogoo-
		noogoo
Kobakeemotoo	Komongoraffa	Fonogooeatta
Konalla	Konnetalle	Kovercetoo
Kongahoonoho	Konoababoo	Felongabooonga
Tongooa	Komooceeva	Kollalona

Of the size of the above 32 unexplored islands, we can only give it as our opinion, that they must be all larger than Annamooka, (or Rotterdam) which those from whom we had our information, ranked among the smaller islands in the second list. Some, or indeed, several of the latter are mere spots, without inhabitants. But it must be left to future navigators, to introduce into the charts of this part of the great Southern Pacific Ocean, the exact situation and size of near 100 more islands in this neighbourhood, according to the testimony of our friends, which we had not an opportunity to explore. Tasman saw eighteen or twenty of these small islands, every one of which was encircled with sands, shoals and rocks. In some charts they are called Heemkirk's Banks. We have not the least doubt, that Prince William's islands, discovered, and so named by Tasman, are included in the foregoing list: for while we lay at Hapace, one of the natives told us, that three or four days sail from thence to the N. W. there is a cluster of islands, consisting of more than forty; and this situation corresponds very well with that assigned, in the accounts of Tasman's voyage, to his Prince William's Islands. Keppel's and Boscawen's Isles, discovered by Captain Wallis in 1765, are doubtless comprehended in our list; and they are not only well known to these people, but are under the same sovereignty. We have good authority to believe, that Boscawen's Island is our Kootahee, and Keppel's Island our Necootabootaboo. The last is one of the large islands marked in our first list. The reader, who has been already apprized of the variations of our people in writing down what the natives pronounced, will hardly doubt that Kottejea, in our second list, and Kootahee, as one of the natives called Kao, are one and the same island. We would just remark once more of this astonishing group of islands, that fifteen of them are said to be high and hilly, such as Toofoa, and Eooa; and thirty-five of them large. Of these only three were seen this voyage, namely, Hapace (contended by the natives as one island) Tongataboo, and Eooa. Annamooka has been

noticed before. But the most considerable islands that we heard of in this neighbourhood, are Hamao, Vavaoo, and Feejee; each of which is larger than Tongataboo; but it does not appear that any European has ever yet seen one of them. Hamao lies two days sail N. W. from Vavaoo. It is said to be the largest of all their islands; affords harbours, with good water, and produces, in abundance, all the refreshments that are found at the places we visited. Poulaho frequently relides upon this island; and its natives are in high estimation at Tongataboo. According to the united testimony of all our friends at this place, Vavaoo exceeds the size of their own island, and has high mountains. We should have accompanied Fenou from Hapace to Vavaoo, had he not discouraged the Captain, by representing it to be very inconsiderable, and without a single good harbour: but Poulaho, the King, gave us to understand afterward, that it is a large island, and not only produces every thing in common with Tongataboo, but has the peculiar advantage of possessing several streams of fresh water, and also an excellent harbour. Poulaho offered to attend the Captain to Vavaoo, saying, that if he did not find every thing agreeing with his representation, he might kill him. We gave full credit to the truth of his intelligence, and were satisfied that Fenou, from some private view, endeavoured to impose upon us a fiction.

Feejee lies in the direction of N. W. by W. about three days sail from Tongataboo. The natives in this part of the world have no other method of discerning the distance from island to island, but by mentioning the time required for the voyage in one of their canoes. In order to ascertain this with some precision, Captain Cook failed in one of their canoes, and by repeated trials with the log, found that the west gale hauled, in a gentle gale, seven miles an hour. He supposed from this experiment, that they would sail, with such breezes as generally blow on their seas, seven or eight miles an hour on an average. Each day, however, is not to be reckoned at 24 hours; for when they talk of one day's sail, they mean no more than from morning to the evening, or twelve hours at most. From the morning of the first day till the evening of the second, is, with them, two days sail. In the day, they are guided by the sun; and, in the night by the stars. When these are obscured, they can only have recourse to the points from whence the winds and waves come upon the vessel. If, at that time, the winds and the waves should shift, they are quite bewildered, often missing their intended port, and being never heard of more. The story of Omah's countrymen, who were driven to Wateroo, convinces us, however, that those who are not heard of, are not always lost. Feejee abounds with hogs, dogs, and fowls, and such fruits and roots as are to be found in any of the other islands, and is much larger than Tongataboo, but not subject to its dominion. Feejee and Tongataboo engage in war against each other; and the inhabitants of the latter are often so much afraid of this enemy, that they bend the body forward, and cover the face with their hands, to express the sense of their own inferiority to the Feejee men. This, indeed, is no matter of surprize, for those of Feejee have rendered themselves formidable, by their dexterity in the use of bows and slings; but more so, by their savage practice of eating such of their enemies as they kill in battle. It has been insisted on, that extreme hunger still occasioned men to feed on human flesh; but where could be the inducement for the Feejee men to continue the practice, and remain cannibals, in the midst of plenty? It is held in detestation by the inhabitants of Tongataboo, who seem to cultivate the friendship of their savage neighbours through fear; though they sometimes venture to skirmish with them on their own ground, and carry off large quantities of red feathers as trophies. When a profound peace reigns between them, they have frequent intercourse together; though, it is probable, they have not long been known to each other, otherwise it might be supposed that Tongataboo, and its neighbouring islands, would, before this time, have been supplied with a breed

rended with the loss of the nose, or a considerable part of it. Two other diseases are also common among them; one of which is a firm swelling, affecting chiefly the legs and arms; the other is a tumour in the testicles, which sometimes exceed the size of two fists. In other respects they are remarkably healthy, not a single person having, during our stay, been confined to the house by any kind of sickness. Their strength and activity are, in every respect, answerable to their muscular appearance; and they exert both, in such a manner, as to prove, that they are as yet, little debilitated by the numerous diseases that are the natural consequences of indolence. The graceful mien, and firmness of step, with which they walk, are obvious proofs of their personal accomplishments. They consider this as a thing so necessary to be acquired, that their laughter was excited when they saw us frequently stumbling upon the roots of trees, or other inequalities, in walking. The mildness and good nature which they abundantly possess, are depicted on their countenances, totally free from that savage keenness, that always marks nations in a barbarous state. We might almost be induced to suppose, that they had been reared under the severest restrictions, seeing they have acquired so settled an aspect, such a command of their passions, and such a steadiness of conduct. At the same time, they are open, cheerful, and good humoured; though in the presence of their chiefs, they sometimes assume a degree of reserve, which has the appearance of gravity. Their pacific disposition is thoroughly evinced, from their friendly reception of all strangers. Instead of attacking them openly, or clandestinely, they have never appeared, in the smallest degree, hostile: but like the most civilized nations, have even courted an intercourse with their visitors, by bartering; a medium which unites all nations in a degree of friendship. So perfectly do they understand barter, that, at first, we supposed they had acquired the knowledge of it by trading with the neighbouring islands; but it afterwards appeared, that they had hardly any traffic, except with Feejee. No nation, perhaps, in the world, displayed, in their traffic, more honesty and less distrust. We permitted them safely to examine our goods, and they had the same implicit confidence in us. If either party seemed dissatisfied with his bargain, a re-exchange was made with mutual consent and satisfaction. Upon the whole, they seem to possess many of the most excellent qualities that adorn the human mind. A propensity to thieving is the only defect that seems to tully their fair character. Those of all ages, and both sexes, were addicted to it in an uncommon degree. It should be considered, however, that this exceptionable part of their conduct existed merely with respect to us; for in their general intercourse with each other, thefts are not more frequent than in other countries, where the dishonest practices of individuals will not authorize an indiscriminate censure on the people at large. Allowances should be made for the foibles of these poor islanders, whose minds we overpowered with the glare of new and captivating objects. Stealing among civilized nations, denotes a character deeply stained with moral turpitude: but at the Friendly Islands, and others which we visited, the thefts committed by the natives, may have been occasioned by less culpable motives: they might be stimulated solely by curiosity; a desire to possess somewhat new; and the property of people very different from themselves. Were a set of beings, seemingly as superior to us, as we appeared in their eyes, to make their appearance among us, it might be possible that our natural regard to justice would not be able to restrain many from being guilty of the same erroneous practices. However, the thieving disposition of these islanders, was the means of affording us an insight into their ingenuity and quickness of intellects: for their petty thefts were managed with much dexterity; and those of greater consequence, with a settled plan or scheme, adapted to the importance of the objects.

The hair of these people is, in general, thick, straight, and strong, though some have it bushy or frizzled. The

natural colour appears to be black, but many of the men, and some of the women, stain it of a brown or purple colour; and a few give it an orange cast. The first of these colours is produced by applying a sort of plaster of burnt coral mixed with water; the second by the raspings of a reddish wood mixed into a poultice, and laid over the hair; and the third is said to be the effect of turmeric root. They are so whimsical in the fashions of wearing their hair, that it is difficult to say which is most in vogue. Some have none on one side of the head, while it remains long on the other: some have only a part of it cut short: others but a single lock on one side. There are again those who permit it to grow to its full length, without any such mutilations. The women usually wear it short: the beards of the men are usually cut in the same manner; and both sexes strip the hair from their armpits. The men are stained with a deep blue colour from the middle of the belly to half way down the thighs. This is effected with a flat bone instrument, full of fine teeth, which by a stroke of a bit of stick introduces the dooc dooc into the skin, whereby indelible marks are made. Lines and figures are thus traced, which, in some, are very elegant. The women have only small lines thus imprinted on the inside of the hands. As a mark of distinction, their kings are exempted from this custom. The men are circumcised in a partial manner. The operation consists in cutting off only a piece of the fore-skin at the upper part, whereby it is rendered incapable of ever covering the glands. This practice, at present, is founded only on a notion of cleanliness.

The dress of both sexes is the same; consisting of a piece of cloth or matting, about two yards in breadth, and a half in length. It is double before, and, like a petticoat, hangs down to the middle of the leg. That part of the garment which is above the girdle, is plaited in several folds, and this, when extended, is sufficient to draw up and wrap round the shoulders. As to form, it is the general fashion; but the fine matting, and long pieces of cloth, are worn only by the superior class of people. The inferior sort are contented with small pieces, and, very often, have only a covering made of the leaves of plants, or the mats, a narrow piece of cloth, or matting, like a sash. This they pass between the thighs and round the waist. It is seldom used by the men. In their haivas, or grand entertainments, their dresses, though the same in form, are various, and embellished, more or less, with red feathers. Both men and women defend their faces occasionally from the sun with little bonnets made of various sorts of materials. The ornaments, worn by those of either sex, are the same. The most common are necklaces made of the fruit of pandanus, and various sweet smelling flowers, known by the general name of Kakula. Others consist of small shells, sharks teeth, the wing and leg bones of small birds, &c. all which are pendant on the breast. In this manner they also wear a polished mother of pearl shell, or a ring on the upper part of the arm: rings of tortoise-shell on the fingers; and several of these joined together form bracelets for the wrists. Two holes are perforated in the lobes of the ears, wherein they put cylindrical bits of ivory, of the length of three inches, introduced at one hole, and drawn out of the other; or bits of reed filled with yellow pigment. This appears to be a fine powder of turmeric, which their women rub all over their bodies, in the same manner as the European ladies use their dry rouge upon their cheeks. Personal cleanliness is their study and delight. To maintain which they bathe frequently in the ponds, preferring them to the sea, though the water has an intolerable stench; when they are obliged to bathe in the sea, from a notion that salt water injures the skin, they will have fresh water poured over them to wash off its bad effects. They are extravagantly fond of cocoa-nut oil; a great quantity of which they pour upon their head and shoulders, and rub the body all over with a smaller quantity.

The domestic life of these people is neither so laborious as to be disagreeable, nor so free from employment

ment as to suffer them to degenerate into indolence. Their country has been so favoured by nature, that the soil can scarcely occur; and their active disposition seems to be a sufficient bar to the last. By this fortunate concurrence of circumstances, their necessary labour yields, in its turn, to their amusements and recreations, which are never interrupted by the thoughts of being obliged to recur to business, till they are induced by satiety to wish for that transition. The employment of the women is not fatiguing, and is generally such as they can without difficulty execute in the house. The making of cloth is entirely entrusted to their care; and the process of which manufacture has been already described. Their cloth is of different degrees of fineness; the coarser kind does not receive the impression of any pattern; but of the finer sorts, they have various patterns, differently coloured. The cloth, in general, is able to resist water for some time; but that which has the strongest glaze, is least liable to be penetrated thereby. Another manufacture, confined also to the women, is that of their mats, which excel those of most other countries, both with respect to the texture and beauty. Of these there are seven or eight different sorts, used either for their dresses, or to sleep upon; but many are merely ornamental. These last are made chiefly from the tough, membranous part of the flock of the plantain-tree; those that they wear, are generally composed of the pandanus; and the coarser kind, whereon they sleep, are formed from a plant called Evarra. We observed several other articles that employ their females, as combs, of which they make great quantities; small baskets made of the same substance as the mats; and others, of the fibrous hulk of the cocoa-nut, either interwoven with beads, or plain; all which are finished with extraordinary neatness and taste. The province of the men is, as might reasonably be expected, far more laborious and extensive than that of the other sex. Architecture, boat-building, agriculture, and fishing, constitute their principal occupations, and are the main objects of their attention. As cultivated roots and fruits form their chief subsistence, they find it necessary to practice husbandry; which, by their industry, they have brought to a degree of perfection. In managing yams and plantains, they dig small holes for their reception, and afterwards root up the surrounding grass. The instruments used for this purpose, are called hoo, and are nothing more than stakes of various lengths, flattened and sharpened to an edge at one end; and the largest ones have a short piece fixed transversely, by means of which they press the implement into the ground with the foot. When they plant the two above mentioned vegetables, they observe such particular exactness, that, which ever way you turn your eyes, the rows present themselves complete and regular. The bread-fruit and cocoa-nuts, are dispersed about, without any order; and when they have arrived at a certain height, give them little or no trouble. The same may be said of another large tree, producing a roundish compressed nut, called eesee; and of a smaller one, bearing an oval nut, with two or three triangular kernels. The kappe is, in general, planted regularly, and in large spots; but the Mawhaha is interspersed among other things, as are also the yams and jeece. Sugar cane is usually in small spots, closely crowded. The nutberry, of which the cloth is made, is kept very clean, and has a good space allowed for its growth. The pandanus is commonly planted in a row, close together, at the sides of the fields.

These people display very little taste or ingenuity in the construction of their houses. Those belonging to the common people are wretched huts, scarce sufficient to shelter them from the inclemency of the weather. Those of the better sort are larger, as well as more commodious and comfortable. A house of the middling size is of the following dimensions, namely, about 12 feet in height, 20 in breadth, and 30 in length. Their houses are, properly speaking, thatched roofs or sheds, supported by rafters and posts. The floor is raised with earth smoothed, and covered with thick

matting. Some habitations are open all round; but the major part of them are enclosed on the weather side with strong mats, or with branches of the cocoa-nut tree, plaited, or interwoven with each other. A thick mat, about three feet broad, bent into a semicircular form, and placed edgewise, with the ends touching the side of the house, encloses a sufficient space for the master and mistress to sleep in. The rest of the family sleep upon any part of the floor, the unmarried men and women lying apart from each other. If the family is large, they have little huts adjoining, in which the servants sleep. The whole of their furniture consists of some wooden stools, which serve them for pillows; baskets of different sizes, in which they put their combs, fish-hooks, and tools; two or three wooden bowls, in which they make kava; some cocoa-nut shells, a few gourds, and a bundle of cloth. But they are very skilful in building their canoes, which, indeed, are the most perfect of their mechanical productions. The double ones are very large, sufficiently so to carry about 50 persons, and they sail at a great rate. They fix upon them generally a hut or shed, for the reception of the master and his family. These are made of the bread-fruit tree, and the workmanship is extremely neat. They appear on the out-side as if they were composed of one solid piece; but upon closer inspection, they are found to consist of a great number of planks, fitting each other exactly, and by means of a ledge on the inside, are secured together with cocoa-nut line. The single canoes are furnished with an outrigger. The only tools which they make use of in the construction of these boats, are hatchets, or adzes, of a smooth black stone; augurs, made of sharks teeth; and rasps, composed of the rough skin of a fish, fastened on flat pieces of wood. The same tools are all they have for other work, except shells, which serve them for knives. Their cordage is made of the fibres of the cocoa-nut hulk, which, though not more than 10 inches long, they plait about the size of a quill, to whatever length may be required, and roll it up into balls; and by twisting several of these together, they form their ropes of a larger size. Their fishing lines are as strong and even as our best cord. Their small hooks consist entirely of pearl-shell; but the large ones are only covered with it on the back; and the points of both are, in general, of tortoise-shell. With the large hooks they catch albicore, and bonnetos, by putting them to a bamboo-rod, about 12 feet long, with a line of the same length. They have also a number of small seines; some of which are of the most delicate texture.

Their musical reeds or pipes, resembling the syrinx of the ancients, have eight or ten pieces placed parallel to each other, most of which are of unequal length. Their flutes are made of a joint of bamboo, about 18 inches long, and are closed at both ends, having a hole near each end, and four others; two of which, and only one of the first, are used by them in playing. They close the left nostril with the thumb of the left-hand, and blow into the hole at one end with the other nostril. The fore-finger of the right-hand is applied to the lowest hole on the right, and the middle finger of the left, to the first hole on that side. In this manner, with only three notes, they produce a pleasing, though simple harmony. Their nassa, or drum, has been described already. Their warlike weapons are clubs curiously ornamented, spears, and darts. They make bows and arrows, but these are intended for amusement, and not for the purposes of war. Their stools or rather pillows, are about two feet long, but only four or five inches in height, and near four in breadth, inclining downwards towards the middle, with four strong legs and circular feet; the whole composed of brown or black wood, neatly polished, and sometimes inlaid with ivory. They likewise inlay with ivory the handles of fly-flaps; and, with a shark's tooth, shape bones into figures of men, birds, &c.

Their vegetable diet consists principally of plantains, cocoa-nuts, bread-fruit, and yams; and their chief articles of animal food are hogs, fish, and fowls; but

the common people frequently eat rats. Hogs, fowls, and turtle, however, seem to be only occasional dainties, reserved for persons of rank. Their food is dressed by baking, as at Otaheite, and they make, from different sorts of fruit, several dishes, which are very good. They sometimes boil their fish in the green leaves of the plantain-tree, which serve as a bag to hold both fish and water: having tied them up, they wrap them again in three or four other leaves, and place them upon stones heated for the purpose: when sufficiently done, they not only eat the fish, but drink the liquor or soup. They are not very cleanly either in their cookery, or their meals, or manner of eating. Their usual drink is water, or cocoa-nut milk, the kava being only their morning beverage. The food that is served up to the chiefs is generally laid upon plantain-leaves. The king, at his meals, was commonly attended upon by three or four of the natives, one of whom cut large pieces of the fish, or of the joint; another afterwards divided it into mouthfuls, and the rest stood by the cocoa-nuts, and whatever else he might happen to want. We never saw a large company sit down to a sociable meal, by eating from the same dish. The women are not excluded from taking their daily repast in company with the men; but there are certain ranks that are not allowed either to eat or drink together. This distinction begins with his majesty, but where it ends we know not. These people rise at day-break, and retire to rest as soon as it becomes dark. They, for the most part, sleep also in the day-time, when the weather is very hot. They are fond of associating together: in consequence of which, it is not uncommon to find several houses empty, and the possessors of them assembled in some other house, or upon some convenient spot in the neighbourhood, where they relax themselves by conversation and other amusements. Their private diversions chiefly consist of dancing, singing, and music. When two or three women snap their fingers, and sing in concert, it is called oobai; but when there are more, they form several parties, each of which sings in a different key; whereby an agreeable melody is made, termed heeva, or haiva. The songs are generally accompanied with the music of their flutes. The dances both of the men and women, are performed with an ease and grace not easily to be described. We could not determine with precision, whether their marriages were rendered durable by any kind of solemn contract: it is certain, however, that the major part of the people contented themselves with one wife. The chiefs, indeed, have commonly several women, though there was only one (as we thought) who was considered in the light of mistress of the family, a circumstance remarked among all nations where concubinage and polygamy were allowed. Though female chastity seemed to be held in little estimation, not a single breach of conjugal fidelity happened, to our knowledge, during the whole time of our continuance at these islands; nor were the unmarried women of rank more liberal of their favours: but numbers were of a different character; yet most, if not all of them, of the lowest class of people; and such of those who permitted familiarities to our crews, were prostitutes by profession.

The concern shewn by these islanders for the dead, is a strong proof of their humanity. Besides the Tooge, of which mention has been made before, and burnt circles, and scars, they strike a shark's tooth into their heads, till the blood flows plentifully, beat their teeth with stones, and thrust spears not only through their cheeks into their mouths, but also into the inner part of their thighs, and into their sides; so that, to use a common expression, their mourning may be said to be not in words but deeds. And such a rigorous discipline must, one would think, require an uncommon degree of affection, or the most gross superstition, to exact. It is highly probable the last has a share in it; for many could not have any knowledge of the person for whom their concern was expressed. We saw the people of Tongataboo deploring the death of a chief at Vivaoo; and other similar instances occurred during our stay. The more painful operations, however, are practiced

only when they mourn the death of those most nearly connected with them. When a person dies, he is wrapped up in mats, or cloth, or both, and then interred. The Fiatookas seem to be appropriated to the chiefs, and other persons of distinction, but inferior people have no particular spot set apart for their burial. It is uncertain what mourning ceremonies follow the general one; but we are well assured of there being others which continue a long time; the funeral of Mareewagee's wife was attended with ceremonies of five days duration. These people seem to consider death as a great evil, to avert which they have a very singular custom. When Captain Cook, during his former voyage, visited these islands, he observed that many of the natives had one or both of their little fingers cut off; of the reason of which mutilation he could not then obtain a satisfactory account. But he was now informed, that they performed this operation when they are afflicted with some dangerous disorder, which they imagine may bring them to the grave. They suppose, that the little finger will be accepted of by the deity, as a kind of propitiatory sacrifice, sufficiently efficacious to procure their recovery. In cutting it off, they make use of a stone hatchet. We saw scarcely one person in ten who was not thus mutilated; and they sometimes cut so close, as to encroach upon that bone of the hand which joins the amputated finger. It is also common for the lower class of people to cut off a joint of their little finger, on account of the sickness of the chiefs to whom they respectively belong. When this rigid strictness with which they perform their mourning and religious ceremonies is considered, it might be expected, that they endeavoured thereby to secure to themselves eternal happiness; but their principal object regards things merely temporal; for they have apparently little conception of future punishment for sins committed in the present life. They believe, however, that they meet with just punishment in the present state; and, therefore, put every method in practice to render their divinities propitious. They admit a plurality of deities, all of them inferior to Kallafootoo, who, they say, is a female, and the supreme authoress of nature, residing above, and directing the wind, rain, thunder, &c. They are of opinion that when she is much displeased with them, the productions of the earth are blasted, many things consumed by lightning, and themselves afflicted with sickness and death; but that when her anger abates, every thing is immediately restored to its former state. Among their subordinate deities, they mention Futafaihe, or Footafoo, who has the administration of the sea, and its productions; Toofoo-boolootoo, god of the clouds and fogs; Talletoboo, Mattaba, Tareava, and others. The same system of principles does not extend all over the Friendly Islands; the supreme deity of Hapae, for instance, being called Alo Alo. They entertain very absurd opinions relative to the power and various attributes of their gods, who, they suppose, have no farther concern with them after death. They have, however, juster sentiments respecting the immortality of the soul, which they call life, the living principle, or an Otoo, that is a divinity. They imagine that, immediately after death, the souls of their chiefs are separated from their bodies, and go to a delightful region called Boolootoo, the god of which is stiled Gooleho, by whom they probably personify death. His country, according to their mythology, is the general repository of the dead; and they who are once conveyed thither die no more, and feast on all the favourite productions of their native soil, with which this blissful abode is supposed by them to be plentifully furnished. The souls of those in the lowest rank of the people are said to suffer a kind of transmigration; or are eaten up, they think, by a bird, called Laota, which walks over the graves with that intent. They do not worship any visible part of the creation, or any thing made with their own hands: nor do they make any offerings of dogs, hogs, and fruit (as is the custom at Otaheite) unless emblematically; but there is no reason to doubt of their offering up human sacrifices. Their Fiatookas or Morais, are, in general, burying-grounds

grounds also appeared to
pole; but the
We are ac
their govern
feudal system
among them
tuent parts,
we were inf
and that the
properties o
that fell un
than constru
wage. Feen
a petty love
the measures
laho superio
Mareewagee
parent chief
appeared to
however us
may be, the
will of the c
island of T
strictly, each
tributes just
territory.
other islands
king, at stat
distant dom
usual place
persons of d
habitants ca
signatize t
of Lands of
people Lord
ky. The re
from the go
bably confid
The king's p
order and de
wife in that
Whenever h
felves before
a sufficient g
no one, unles
enter; nor is
him, or even
a person with
ward, and h
in a few wor
favoured wit
to any one,
unless he is
rises from h
Captain Kin
lar to the n
always sit w
side. To f
considered a
the most ci
islanders in
on every occ
with the co
perfect harm
behaviour i
whenever th
bled togethe
attention an
the harangu
the oration,
one of those
displeased, o
the declared
vilege annex
punctured,
Whenever h
down till he
over his head
his feet.

grounds and places of worship: some of them, however, appeared to be appropriated only to the former purpose; but these were small, and very inferior to the rest.

We are acquainted only with the general outlines of their government. A subordination, resembling the feudal system of our ancestors in Europe, is established among them; but of its subdivisions, and the constituent parts, we are ignorant. By some of the natives we were informed, that the king's power is unlimited, and that he has the absolute disposal of the lives and properties of his subjects; yet the few circumstances that fell under our observation, contradicted, rather than confirmed, the idea of a despotic sway. Marcewagee, Feenou, and Old Toobou, acted each the part of a petty sovereign, and not infrequently counteracted the measures of the king. Nor was the court of Poulaho superior in splendor to those of Old Toobou and Marcewagee, who, next to his majesty, were the most potent chiefs in these islands; and after them Feenou appeared to stand highest in rank and authority. But, however independent on the king the principal men may be, the inferior people are totally subject to the will of the chiefs to whom they severally belong. The island of Tongataboo is divided into numerous districts, each of which has its peculiar chief, who distributes justice, and decides disputes within his own territory. Most of these chieftains have estates in other islands, whence they procure supplies. The king, at stated times, receives the productions of his distant domains, at Tongataboo, which is not only the usual place of his residence, but the abode of most persons of distinction among these islands. Its inhabitants call it frequently the Land of Chiefs, and designate the subordinate isles with the appellation of Lands of Servants. The chiefs are styled by the people Lords of the Earth, and also of the sun and sky. The royal family assume the name of Futtasathe, from the god distinguished by that title, who is probably considered by them as their tutelary patron. The king's peculiar title is simply Tooe Tonga. The order and decorum observed in his presence, and likewise in that of the other chiefs, are truly admirable. Whenever he sits down, all the attendants seat themselves before him, forming a semicircle, and leaving a sufficient space between them and him, into which no one, unless he has particular business, presumes to enter; nor is any one suffered to sit, or pass behind him, or even near him, without his permission. When a person wishes to speak to his majesty, he comes forward, and having seated himself before him, delivers in a few words what he has to say; then, after being favoured with an answer, retires. If the king speaks to any one, the latter gives an answer from his seat, unless he is to receive an order; in which case he rises from his place, and seats himself cross-legged. Captain King has affirmed, that this posture is peculiar to the men, for the females, that gentleman says, always sit with both their legs thrown a little on one side. To speak to the king standing would here be considered as a glaring mark of rudeness. None of the most civilized nations have ever exceeded these islanders in the great order and regularity maintained on every occasion, in ready and submissive compliance with the command of their superiors, and in the perfect harmony that subsists among all ranks. Such a behaviour manifests itself in a remarkable manner, whenever their chiefs harangue a body of them assembled together, which frequently happens. The greatest attention and most profound silence are observed during the harangue; and whatever might be the purport of the oration, we never saw a single instance, when any one of those who were present, shewed signs of being displeased, or seemed in the least inclined to dispute the declared will of the speaker. It is a peculiar privilege annexed to the person of the king, not to be punctured, nor circumscribed, as all his subjects are. Whenever he walks out, all who meet him must sit down till he has passed. No person is suffered to be over his head; but all must, on the contrary, come under his feet. The method of doing homage to him,

No. 58.

and the other chiefs, is as follows: the person who is to pay obeisance squats down before the great personage, and bows the head down to the sole of his foot, which he taps or touches, with the upper and under side of the fingers of each hand; then rising up, he retires. We had reason to think, that his majesty cannot refuse any one who is desirous of paying him this homage, called by the natives moe moea; for the people would frequently think proper to shew him these marks of submission when he was walking; and on such occasions, he was obliged to stop, and hold up one of his feet behind him, till they had performed this respectful ceremony. This, to so corpulent and unwieldy a man as Poulaho, must have been troublesome and painful; and we have seen him sometimes endeavour, by running, to get out of the way, or to reach a convenient place for sitting down. The hands, after having been thus applied, become in some cases useless a short time; for till these are washed they must not touch food of any kind. This prohibition in a country, where water is far from being plentiful, would be attended with an inconvenience, if a piece of any juicy plant, which they can immediately procure, being rubbed over the hands, did not serve for the purpose of purification. When thus circumstanced, they term their situation taboo rema; the former word generally signifying forbidden, and the latter implying hand. When the taboo is incurred, by doing homage to a person of rank, it may thus be easily washed off; but in several other cases, it must continue for a certain period. We have often seen women who have been taboo rema, fed by others. The interdicted person, after the limited time is elapsed, washes herself in one of their baths, which are, in general, dirty ponds of brackish water. She then waits upon the king, and, after having paid the customary obeisance, takes hold of his foot, which she applies to her shoulders, breast, and other parts; he then embraces her on both shoulders, and she immediately retires, purified from her uncleanness. It is always necessary to have recourse to his majesty for this purpose (of which we are not certain, though Omiah assured us it was) it may be one reason for his travelling very frequently from one island to another. The word taboo, as we have before observed, has a very extensive signification. They call human sacrifices, Tangata taboo; and when any particular thing is prohibited to be eaten, or made use of, they say it is taboo. We were told by them, that if the king should go into a house belonging to one of his subjects, that house would become taboo, and could never be again inhabited by the owner of it; so that, wherever his majesty travels, there are houses peculiarly aligned for his accommodation. At this time Old Toobou presided over the taboo; that is, if Omiah did not misunderstand those who gave him the intelligence, he, and his deputies, had the inspection of all the produce of the island, taking care that each individual should cultivate and plant his quota, and directing what should and what should not be eaten. By so prudent a regulation, they take effectual precautions against a famine; sufficient ground is employed in raising provisions; and every article is secured from unnecessary consumption. By another good regulation, an officer of rank is appointed to superintend the police. This department was administered, while we continued among them, by Feenou, whose business (as we were informed) it was to punish all delinquents: he was also generalissimo, or commander in chief of the forces of the islands. Poulaho himself declared to us, that, if he should become a bad man, Feenou would detain me, and kill him; by which he doubtless meant, that if he neglected the duties of his high station, or governed in a manner that would prove prejudicial to the public welfare, Feenou would be desired by the other chiefs, or by the collective body of the people, to depose him from the supreme command, and put him to death. A king thus subject to controul and punishment for abuse of power, cannot justly be deemed a despotic prince. When we take into consideration the number of islands of which this state consists, and the distance of which

6 E

some

some of them are removed from the seat of government, attempts to throw off the yoke of subjection might be apprehended. But they informed us, that this circumstance never happens. One reason of their not being thus embroiled in domestic commotions may be this; that all the principal chiefs take up their residence at Tongataboo. They also secure the dependence of the other isles, by the decisive celerity of their operations: for if a seditious and popular man should start up in any of them, Feenou, or whoever happens to hold his office, is immediately dispatched thither to put him to death; by which means they extinguish an insurrection while it is yet in embryo. The different classes of their chiefs seemed to be nearly as numerous as among us; but there are few, comparatively speaking, that are lords of extensive districts of territory. It is said, that when a person of property dies, all his possessions devolve on the sovereign; but that it is customary to give them to the eldest son of the deceased, with this condition annexed, that he should provide, out of the estate, for the other children. The crown is hereditary; and we know, from a particular circumstance, that the Futtasaihes, of which family is Poulaho, have reigned, in a direct line, for the space of at least one hundred and thirty-five years, which have elapsed between our present visit to these islands, and Tasman's discovery of them. Upon our inquiring, whether any traditional account of the arrival of Tasman's ships had been preserved among them, till this time, we found, that the history had been delivered down to them with great accuracy: for they said, that his two ships resembled ours; and also mentioned the place where they had lain at anchor; their having continued but a few days; and their quitting that station to go to Annamooka; and, for the purpose of informing us how long ago this affair happened, they communicated to us the name of the Futtataihe who reigned at that time, and those who succeeded him in the sovereignty down to Poulaho, who is the fifth monarch since that period. It might be imagined, that the present reigning sovereign of the Friendly Isles had the highest rank in his dominions: but we found it otherwise; for Latoolibooloo, whom we have already noticed, and three ladies of rank, are superior in some respects to Poulaho himself. These great personages, are distinguished by the title of Tammaha, which denotes a chief. When we made enquiry concerning them, we were informed that the late king, father of Poulaho, left behind him a sister of equal rank, and older than himself; that, by a native of Feejee, she had a son and two daughters; and that these three persons, as well as their mother, are of higher rank than the king. The mother, and one of her daughters, named Tooeela-kaipa, reside at Vavaoo: the other daughter, called Mougoula-kaipa, and Latoolibooloo, the son, dwell at Tongataboo. Mougoula-kaipa, is the lady of quality whom we mentioned as having dined with Captain Cook on the 21st of June. Latoolibooloo is thought by his countrymen to be out of his senses. At Middleburgh, they shewed us a considerable quantity of land, said to be his property; and, at the same place, we saw a son of his, a child, who was honoured with the same respect, title, and homage as his father: and the natives much humoured and caressed this little Tammaha.

The language of these islands bears a great resemblance to that of Otaheite, as will appear from the following small collection of words, which we have endeavoured to make as correct as possible.

A TABLE, containing a short specimen of the Language of the FRIENDLY ISLANDS, with corresponding words of the same signification, as used in OTAHEITE.

FRIENDLY ISLES	OTAHEITE	ENGLISH
Koomoo	Ooma	<i>The Beard</i>
Wakka	Evaa	<i>A Boat or canoe</i>
Cole	Erc	<i>Black</i>
Aho	Aou	<i>The Drunken</i>
Tarcenga	Tarcca	<i>The Ear</i>

Eafoi	Eahoi	<i>Fire</i>
Taheine	Toonca	<i>A Girl</i>
Pooroo	Eroroo	<i>The Hair</i>
Fonooa	Fenooa	<i>Land</i>
Tao	Tao	<i>A Lance or spear</i>
Tangata	Taata	<i>A Man</i>
Motooa	Madooa	<i>A Parent</i>
Ooha	Eooa	<i>Rain</i>
Goola	Oora oora	<i>Red</i>
Elaa	Eraa	<i>The Sun</i>
Mohe	Moe	<i>Sleep</i>
Tooa	Toutou or teou	<i>A Servant, or one of mean rank</i>
Tahee	Tacc	<i>The Sea</i>
Fatoore	Pateerc	<i>Thunder</i>
Elelo	Ereio	<i>The Tongue</i>
Amou	Mou	<i>To hold fast</i>
Horo	Horoce	<i>To wipe, or cleanse</i>
Matangee	Matacc	<i>The Wind</i>
Avy	Evy	<i>Water</i>
Vefaine	Waheine	<i>A Woman</i>
Kohaeca	Yahaeca	<i>What is that?</i>
Mafanna	Mahanna	<i>Warm</i>
Ou	Wou	<i>I</i>
Koe	Oe	<i>You</i>
Ai	Ai	<i>Yes</i>
Kace	Ace	<i>No</i>
Ongofooroo	Ahooroo	<i>Ten</i>
Etoo	Atoo	<i>To rise up</i>
Tangee	Tacc	<i>To shed Tears</i>
Eky	Ey	<i>To eat</i>

We must here observe, that vocabularies of this kind cannot be entirely free from errors. There will unavoidably spring up from various causes. It will be difficult to fix the object of enquiry, when the conceptions of those from whom we are to learn the words, so widely differ from our own; nor could much be obtained from a preceptor who knew very few words of any language that his pupil was conversant with: but, what led us frequently into mistakes, was, the impossibility of catching the true sound of a word, to which our ears had never been accustomed, from persons, whose pronunciation seemed to us, in general, so indistinct, that two of us writing down the same word from the same mouth, made use, not only of different vowels, but even different consonants, the sounds of which are least liable to ambiguity. Besides, from the natives endeavouring to imitate us, or from our having misunderstood them, we were led into strange corruptions of words: thus, for example; cheeto, though totally different from the real word, in the language of Tongataboo, was always used by us to express a chief. This mistake took its rise from one, into which we had fallen when at New Zealand. For though the word that signifies chief there, is the very same in the Friendly Islands (being Kaeehaa at both places) yet by some blunder we had used the word teete, first at New Zealand, and afterwards at Tongataboo; the natives whereof, endeavouring to imitate us as nearly as they could, fabricated the word cheeto; and this, by a complication of mistakes, was adopted by us as our own.

The language of the Friendly Islands bears a striking resemblance to that of New Zealand, of Otaheite, and all the Society Isles. Many of their words are also the same with those used by the inhabitants of Cocos Island, as may be seen by consulting a vocabulary made there by Le Maire and Schouten. And yet, though Tasman's people used the words of that vocabulary, in speaking to the natives of Tongataboo, (his Amsterdam) we are told, in the accounts of his voyage, that they did not understand one another; a circumstance worthy of notice; as it shews how cautious we ought to be, upon the scanty evidence afforded by such transient visits as Tasman's, and we may say, as those of most of the subsequent navigators of the Pacific Ocean, to found any argument about the affinity, or want of affinity, of the languages of different islands. No person will venture to say now, that a Cocos man, and one of Tongataboo, could not understand each other.

Fire
A Girl
The Hair
Land
A Lance or Spear
A Man
A Parent
Rain
Red
The Sun
Sleep
A Servant, or one of mean rank
The Sea
Whander
The Tongue
To hold fast
To wipe, or cleanse
The Wind
Water
A Woman
What is that?
Warm
I
You
Yes
No
Ten
To rise up
To shed Tears
To sit

other. Some of the words at Horn Island, another of Schouten's discoveries, are also a part of the language of Tongataboo.

The pronunciation of the natives of the Friendly Isles differs, indeed, in many instances, from that both of Otaheite and New Zealand; nevertheless a great number of words, are either very little changed, or exactly the same. The language spoken by the Friendly Islands is sufficiently copious to express all their ideas; and, besides being harmonious in common conversation, is easily adapted to the purpose of music, of which we had many proofs. As far as we could judge, from our short intercourse with the natives, its component parts are not numerous; and in some of its rules it agrees with other known languages: indeed it has none of the inflections of nouns and verbs, as in the Latin tongue; but we could discern easily the several degrees of comparison. Among hundreds of words we were able to collect, we found terms to express numbers as far as a hundred thousand, beyond which they either would not, or could not reckon: for having, got thus far, they commonly used a word expressing an indefinite number.

At these islands the tides are more considerable, than at any other of Captain Cook's discoveries in this ocean, that are situated within either of the tropics. In the channels between the islands, it flows near tide and half tide; and it is only here and in a few places near the shores, that the tide is perceptible; so that we could guess only at the quarter from whence the flood comes.

In the road of Annamooka it sets W. S. W. and the ebb the contrary, but it falls into the harbour of Tongataboo from the N. W. passes through the two guts on each side of Hoohaiwa, where it runs rapidly, and then spends itself in the Lagoon. The ebb returns the same way with rather greater force. The N. W. tide, at the entrance of the Lagoon, is met by one from the E. but this we found to be very inconsiderable. At Annamooka it is high water near six o'clock, on the full and change of the moon; and the tide rises and falls about six feet, upon a perpendicular. In the harbour of Tongataboo the tide rises and falls four feet three quarters on the full and change days, and three feet and a half at the quadratures.

During our stay here we had several favourable opportunities of making astronomical and nautical observations; whereby we ascertained the difference of longitude between Annamooka and Tongataboo with more exactness than was done in Captain Cook's second voyage. The latitude of the former is 20 deg. 15 min. S. and its longitude 185 deg. 11 min. 18 sec. E. The observatory was placed on the west side of this island; and near the middle of the north side of the island of Tongataboo, the latitude of which, according to the most accurate observations, we found to be 21 deg. 8 min. 19 sec. S. and its longitude 184 deg. 55 min. 18 sec. E. Having now concluded our remarks on the Friendly Islands, and the natives, we shall take a final leave of them, and resume in the next chapter, the prosecution of the history of our voyage.

C H A P. VII.

The Resolution and Discovery direct their Course for Otaheite and the Society Isles—Heavy Squalls and blowing Weather—An Eclipse of the Moon observed—They discover the Island of Toobouai—Its Situation, Extent, and Produce—A Description of the Persons, Dress, and Games, of the Inhabitants—The two Ships arrive in Obotepea Harbour at Otaheite—Omia's Reception—His imprudent Conduct—An Account of two Spanish Ships, which had twice visited the Island—Great Demand for red Feathers—Captain Cook visits a Chief, said by Omia to be the Olla, or God of Holobola—Account of a House erected by the Spaniards—Inscriptions—The Captain's Interview with Wakeidooa—Description of a Topogon—An Embushaft—The Ships anchor in Matareai Bay—Interview with Otoo, King of Otaheite—Omia's imprudent Behaviour—Animals landed, and Occupations on Shore—Visit from a Native who had been at Lima—Particulars relating to Oodidee—A Rebellion in Eimeo—A Council of Chiefs called, who declare for War—A human Sacrifice offered for the Success of their Arms—An Account of the Ceremonies at the great Morau, and the Behaviour of the Natives—Other particular Customs among the Otaheiteans.

ON Thursday, the 17th of July, when steering for our intended port, the body of Paoo, at eight o'clock in the evening, bore N. E. by N. distant three leagues. The wind blew a fresh gale at east; and we stood with it to the south, till after six o'clock the next morning, when, in latitude 22 deg. 24 min. S. a sudden squall took our ships aback, and before they could be trimmed on the other tack, the main-sail and top-gallant sails were much torn. On the 19th, the wind kept between the S. W. and S. E. and the next day veered to the E. N. E. and N. In the night between the 20th and 21st an eclipse of the moon was observed, when we found our ship to be in latitude 22 deg. 57 min. 30 sec. and in longitude 186 deg. 57 min. 30 sec. We continued to stretch to the E. S. E. without meeting with any thing remarkable till Tuesday the 29th, when, in latitude 28 deg. 6 min. S. and in longitude 189 deg. 23 min. E. the weather became tempestuous, and a sudden squall carried away the main-top, and top gallant-mast of the Discovery. She had also her jib carried away, and her main-sail split. It is astonishing to see with what spirit and alacrity English sailors exert themselves on such occasions. Amidst a storm, when it would have been almost impossible for a landsman to have trusted himself upon deck, the sailors mounted aloft, and with incredible rapidity cleared away the wreck, by which they preserved the ship. Nothing equal to this disaster had happened to the Discovery in the course of her voyage. Nor did the Resolution escape the fury of this storm. We were, at this time, under single reefed top-sails, courses, and stay-sails. Two of

the latter were almost demolished, and it was with the utmost difficulty that we saved the other sails. The squall being over, we saw several lights moving on board the Discovery; whence we concluded that something had given way. Both wind and weather continued very unsettled till noon, when the latter cleared up, and the former settled in the N. W. quarter. This day we were visited by some pintado birds, which were the first we had seen since we left land. At noon, of the 31st, Captain Clerke made a signal to speak with us; and by the return of our boat we were informed, that the head of the Discovery's main-mast had sprung in such a manner, as to render the rigging of another top-mast exceeding dangerous; that having lost his top-gallant-yard, he had not another on board, nor a spar to make one; we therefore sent him our sprit-sail top-sail-yard, which supplied this want for the present; and the next day, by getting up a jury-top-mast, on which was set a mizen-top-sail, the Discovery was enabled to keep way with the Resolution.

On Friday, the 1st of August, the Discovery's company celebrated the anniversary of their departure from England, having been just one year absent. The men were indulged with a double allowance of grog, and they forgot in the jollity of their cans, the hardships to which they had been exposed in the late storm. We steered E. N. E. and N. E. without meeting with any remarkable occurrence till Friday the 2th, when, at eleven o'clock, the man at the main-head called out land, which we observed bearing N. N. E. nine or ten leagues

leagues distant. At first it appeared like separate islands; but as we approached, we found it was connected, forming one and the same island. We made directly for it, with a fine gale, and at seven o'clock, P. M. it extended from N. by E. to N. N. E. distant four leagues. On the 9th, at day-break, we steered for the N. W. or lee side of the island; and as we stood round its S. W. part, we saw it guarded by a reef of coral-rock, extending in some places, at least, a mile from the land, and a high surf breaking over it. As we drew near, we saw people walking or running along shore, on several parts of the coast, and, in a short time after, when we had reached the lee side of the island, we saw two canoes, wherein were about a dozen men, who paddled towards us. In order to give these canoes time to come up with us, as well as to found for anchorage, we shortened sail; and, at the distance of half a mile from the reef, we found from 40 to 35 fathoms water. The canoes having advanced within pistol-shot of the ships, suddenly stopped. We desired Omiah, as was usual on such occasions, to endeavour to prevail upon them to come nearer; but none of his arguments could induce them to trust themselves within our reach. They often pointed eagerly to the shore with their paddles; at the same time calling to us to go thither; and many of the people on the beach held up something white in their hands, which we construed as an invitation for us to land. We could easily have accomplished this, there being good anchorage without the reef, and an opening in it, through which the canoes had passed: but it was not thought prudent to risk the advantage of a fair wind, in order to examine an island that to us at present appeared to be of little consequence. We required no refreshments, if we had been certain of meeting with them there, and therefore, after having made several unsuccessful attempts, to prevail upon the islanders to come along side, we made sail to the north and left them; having first learned that the name of their island was Toobouai. It was a new discovery, situate in 23 deg. 25 min. S. latitude, and 210 deg. 37 min. E. longitude. A gentleman on board the Discovery says, the men appeared of the largest stature, and tattooed from head to foot; their language different from any we were yet acquainted with; their dress not unlike that of the Amsterdammers; their complexion darker; their heads ornamented with shells, feathers, and flowers; and their canoes neatly constructed and elegantly carved. Of their manners we could form little or no judgement. They appeared extremely timid; but, by their waving green boughs, and exhibiting other signs of peace, they gave us reason to believe that they were friendly. They exchanged some small fish and cocoa nuts for nails and Middleburgh cloth. In our approach to Toobouai, some of our gentlemen, on board the Resolution, made the few following remarks.

The greatest extent of this island, in any direction, is not above five or six miles: but the above gentleman, belonging to the Discovery, says, "Its greatest length is about twelve miles, and its breadth about four." Small, however, as it appeared to us, there are hills in it of a considerable elevation; at the foot of which is a narrow border of flat land, extending almost all round it; bordered with a white sand beach, except a few rocky cliffs in one part, with patches of trees interspersed to their summits. This island, as we were informed by the men in the canoes, is plentifully stocked with hogs and fowls; and produces the several kinds of fruits and trees that are to be met with in this neighbourhood. We discovered also, that the inhabitants of Toobouai speak the language of Otaheite; an indubitable proof that they are of the same nation. Those whom we, on board the Resolution, saw, were a stout copper coloured people; some of whom wore their hair (which was straight and black) flowing about the shoulders, and others had it tied in a bunch on the crown of the head. Their faces were roundish and full, but the features flat; and their countenances expressed a degree of natural ferocity. Their covering was a piece of narrow fluff wrapped round the waist, and

and passing between the thighs; but some of those whom we beheld upon the beach, were completely clothed in white. Some of our visitors, in the canoes, had their necks ornamented with pearl-shells; and one of them continued blowing a large conch-shell, to which a reed, of about two feet long, was fixed. He began in a long tone, without any variation, and afterwards converted it into a kind of musical instrument. Whether the blowing of the conch was with any particular view, or what it portended, we cannot say, but we never found it to be the messenger of peace. As to their canoes, they appeared to be about thirty feet long, and they rose about two feet above the surface of the water, as they floated. The fore-part projected a little; the after-part rose to the height of two or three feet, with a gradual curve, and, like the upper part of the sides, was carved all over. The rest of the sides were ornamented with flat white shells curiously disposed. There were eight men in one of the canoes, and seven in the other. They were conducted with small paddles, whose blades were almost circular; and they sometimes paddled with the two opposite sides, so close together, that they appeared to be but one boat; the rowers occasionally turning their faces to the stern, and pulling towards it without turning the canoes round. Seeing we were determined to leave them, they stood up, and repeated something loud; but we knew not whether they were expressing hostile intentions, or friendship. It is certain, however, that they had not any weapons with them; nor could we with our glasses discover, that those on shore were armed.

Leaving this island, we proceeded, with an easy breeze, to the north, and on Tuesday the 12th, at day-break, we came in sight of the island of Otaheite. Soon after the man at the mast discovered our land, which proved to be the island of Otaheite, of which we were in search: the point of Otaite Peha, or Oheutepeha Bay, bearing west, four leagues distant. For this bay we steered, intending to anchor there, in order to procure some refreshments from the S. E. part of the island, before we sailed to Mataava, where we expected our principal supply. We had a fresh gale till two o'clock P. M. when at about a league from the bay, the wind suddenly died away. About two hours after, we had sudden squalls, with rain, from the east; so that, after having in vain attempted to gain the anchoring place, we were obliged to stand out, and spend the night at sea. As we approached the island, we were attended by several canoes, each containing two or three men; but being of the lower class, Omiah took no particular notice of them, nor they of him. They did not know that he was one of their countrymen, though they had conversed with him for some time. At length a man, whom Captain Cook had known before, named Ootee, and Omiah's brother-in-law, who happened to be at this time, at this corner of the island, and three or four others, all of whom knew Omiah, before he embarked with Captain Furneaux, came on board; yet there was nothing in the least tender or striking in their meeting, but on the contrary, a perfect indifference on both sides, till Omiah, conducting his brother into the cabin, opened a drawer, and gave him a few red feathers: this circumstance being soon communicated to the rest of the natives on deck, Ootee, who before would hardly speak to him, now begged, that they might be Tayos (friends) and exchange names. Omiah readily accepted of the honour, and presented red feathers ratified the agreement. By way of return, Ootee sent ashore for a hog. It was evident, however, to all of us present, that it was not the man, but his property, that they esteemed. Had he not displayed his treasure of red feathers, a commodity of great estimation in the island, it is a matter of doubt whether they would have bestowed a single cocoa-nut upon him. Such was Omiah's first reception among his countrymen; and though we did not expect it would be otherwise, yet still we hoped, that the valuable flock of presents, with which he had been possessed by the liberality of his friends in England, would be the certain means of raising him into consequence, among the

is; but some of those
each, were completely
itors, in the canoes, had
earl-shells; and one of
e conch-shell, to which
was fixed. He began
ation, and afterwards
al instrument. Whe-
was with any particular
cannot say, but we never
peace. As to their ca-
nity feet long, and they
urface of the water, as
ojected a little; the at-
o or three feet, with a
pper part of the sides,
of the sides were orna-
iously disposed. There
noes, and seven in the
with small paddles,
r; and they sometimes
ides, so close together,
e boat; the rowers oc-
o the stern, and pulling
canoes round. Seeing
em, they stood up, and
we knew not whether
entions, or friendship.
y had not any weapons
th our glasses discover,

oceeded, with an easy
of day the 12th, at day
of Maitea,
and called out land,
of Otahete, of which
Otaite Paha, or Ohte-
gues distant. For this
cher there, in order to
m the S. E. part of the
wai, where we expected
resh gale till two o'clock
from the bay, the wind
two hours after, we had
the east; so that, after
in the anchoring place,
and spend the night at
land, we were attend-
ing two or three men:
miab took no particular
s. They did not know
men, though they had
one. At length a
n before, named O-
ho happened to be
the island, and three o-
Omiab, before he en-
x, came on board: yet
der or striking in their
perfect indifference on
ng his brother into the
ave him a few red fet-
soon communicated to
k, Ootee, who before
ow begged, that they
change names. Omiab
t, and a present of red
t. By way of return,
was evident, that he
not the man, but his
Had he not display-
ommodity of great esti-
mter of doubt whether
ngle cocoa-nut upon
reception among his
d not expect it would
that the valuable stock
been possessed by the
and, would be the cer-
onsequence, among the
first



Portrait of O.M.A.I.



Portrait of POTATO W.

first persons of rank throughout the Society Islands. This, indeed, must have been the case, had he conducted himself with any degree of prudence; but he paid little attention to the repeated advice of his best friends, and laid himself open to every imposition.

Through his means we were informed by the natives who came off to us, that since Captain Cook last visited this island in 1774, two ships had been twice in this bay, and had left animals there, resembling those we had on board: but on a minute enquiry into particulars, we found them to consist only of hogs, dogs, goats, a bull, and the male of another animal, which they so imperfectly described, that we could not conjecture what it was. These ships, they said, had come from a place, called Recma, which we supposed to be Lima, the capital of Peru, and that these late visitors were consequently Spaniards. They also told us, that the first time they arrived, they built a house, and left behind them two priests, a boy or servant, and a fourth person, whom they called Mateema, much spoken of at this time: taking away with them, when they sailed, four of the natives: that about ten months afterwards, the same ships returned, bringing back only two of the natives, the other two having died at Lima; and that, after a short stay, they took away the people they had left, but that the house they had erected was now standing.

On Wednesday, the 13th, we were surrounded with an incredible number of canoes, crowded with people, who brought with them plenty of hogs and fruit: for the agreeable news of red feathers being on board the two ships, had been propagated by Omiah and his friends. A quantity of feathers, which might be taken from the body of a tom-tit, would, early in the morning, have purchased a hog of forty or fifty pounds weight: but as the whole ship's crew were possessed of some of this precious article of trade, it decreased above five hundred per cent. in its value, in a few hours: however, the balance, even then, was in our favour considerably; and red feathers still preserved a superiority over every other commodity. Some of the natives would not dispose of a hog, without receiving an axe in exchange; as to nails, beads, and many other trinkets, which during our former voyages, were held in high estimation at this island, they were now so much despised, that few would even deign to look at them. Having had little wind all this morning, it was nine o'clock before we could get into the bay, where we moored with two bowers. Soon after Omiah's sister came on board, to congratulate him on his arrival. It was pleasing to observe, that, to the honour of both of these relations, their meeting was marked with the expressions of the tenderest affection, more easily conceived than described.

When this affecting scene was closed, and the ship properly moored, Omiah attended Captain Cook on shore. The Captain's first visit was paid to a personage, whom Omiah represented as a very extraordinary one indeed, nothing less, as he affirmed, than the God Bolabola. They found him seated under one of those awnings, which are usually carried in their larger canoes. He was old, and had so far lost the use of his limbs, that he was carried from place to place upon a hand barrow. By some he was called Olla, or Orra, which is the name of the God of Bolabola; but his real name was Etary. From Omiah's extraordinary account of this man, it was expected to have seen religious adoration paid to him; but very little was observed that distinguished him from other chiefs. Omiah presented to him a tuft of red feathers, fastened to the end of a small stick: but, after a little conversation, his attention was excited by the presence of his mother's sister, who was already at his feet, and had bedewed them plentifully with tears of joy. The Captain left him with the old lady in this situation, surrounded by a number of people, and went to take a view of the house, said to have been erected by the strangers who had lately landed here. He found it standing at a small distance from the beach; and composed of wooden materials, which appeared to have

No. 59.

been brought hither ready prepared, in order to set up as occasion might require, for the planks were all numbered. It consisted of two small rooms, in the inner of which were a bedstead, a bench, a table, some old hats, and other trifles, of which the natives seemed to be remarkably careful, as well as of the building itself, which had received no injury from the weather, a kind of shed having been erected over it, for its preservation. Scuttles, serving as air-holes, appeared all round the building; perhaps they might also be intended for the additional purpose of firing from, with muskets, should necessity require it; for the whole erection seemed to indicate a deeper design than the natives were aware of. At a little distance from the front of this building stood a wooden cross, on the transverse part of which was this inscription—*Christus vincit*—“Christ overcome”—and, on the perpendicular (which confirmed our conjecture, that the two ships were Spanish) was engraved—*Carolus III. imperat. 1774*—“In the reign of Charles the Third, 1774.”—Captain Cook seeing this, very properly preserved the memory of the previous visits of the English, by inscribing—*Georgius tertius Rex, Annis, 1767, 1769, 1773, 1774, et 1777*—“King George the Third, in the years 1767, &c.”—After which, the Captain told the natives who were present, to beware of their Spanish visitors, and not to be too fond of them. Near the foot of the cross the islanders pointed out to us the grave of the commanders of the two ships, who died here, while they lay in the bay, on their first arrival. His name, as near as we could gather from their pronunciation, was Oreece. The Spaniards, whatever their views might have been in visiting this island, seemed to have taken infinite pains to have ingratiated themselves with the natives, who, upon all occasions, mentioned them with the strongest terms of respect, esteem, and even veneration. On this occasion, the Captain met with no chief of any considerable note, excepting the aged person above described. Wahetadoa, king of Tiara-boo, (as this part of the island is called by the natives) was now absent; and we were afterwards informed, that, though his name was the same, he was not the same person as the chief whom Captain Cook had seen here in 1774; but his brother, a youth of ten years of age, who had succeeded the elder Wahetadoa. We also discovered, that the celebrated Oherea was dead; but that Otou, and all our other friends were alive.

On the Captain's return from the house erected by the Spaniards, he found Omiah haranguing a very large company; and with difficulty could disengage him to accompany him aboard, where he had the following important matter to settle with the ship companies. Knowing that Orahete, and the neighbouring islands, could supply us plentifully with cocoa-nuts, the liquor of which is a most excellent beverage, he wished to prevail upon those under his command to consent to be abridged, for a short time, of their allowance of spirits to mix with water. But as this, without assigning some powerful reason, might have occasioned a general murmur, he assembled our ship's company, to communicate to them the intent of the voyage, and the extent of our future operations. He took notice of the generous rewards offered, by parliament, to such who should first discover a communication between the Atlantic and Pacific Oceans, in the Northern Hemisphere, as well as to those who shall first penetrate beyond the 89th deg. of northern latitude. He said, he did not entertain a doubt, that he should find them ready to co-operate with him in attempting to one, or both these rewards; but, it would be necessary to be strictly economical in the expenditure of our stores and provisions, as we had not a chance of getting a supply after our departure from these islands. The Captain further observed, that the duration of our voyage would exceed by a year, at least, what had been originally supposed, by our having lost the opportunity of proceeding to the north this summer. He begged them to consider the various obstructions, and aggravated hardships, they must yet labour under, if necessity should oblige us to be put to short allowance,

allowance, of any kinds of provisions, in a cold climate. He therefore submitted to them, whether it would not be most advisable to be prudent in time, and rather than run the risk of having their spirits exhausted, when they might be most wanted, to consent to be without their grog at present, when we could supply its place with so excellent a liquor as that from the cocoa-nuts. He added, nevertheless, that he would leave the determination entirely to their own choice. This proposal did not remain a moment under consideration, and our commander had the satisfaction to find, that it was unanimously approved of. Upon this, he ordered Captain Clerke to make a similar proposal to his people, which they also readily agreed to. The serving of grog was therefore immediately stopped, except on Saturday nights, when all the men had a full allowance of it, to gratify them with drinking the healths of their female lasses in England; lest amidst the pretty girls of Otaheite, they should be totally forgotten.

Thursday the 14th we began some necessary operations, such as inspecting the provisions in the main and forehold; getting the casks of beef, pork, &c. out of the ground tier, and putting a quantity of ballast in their place. The ship was ordered to be caulked; which she stood in much need of; having, at times, made a considerable deal of water in our passage from the Friendly Isles. We also put our cattle on shore, and appointed two of our hands to look after them, while grazing; not intending to leave any of them on this part of the island. The two following days it rained most incessantly; notwithstanding which, we were visited by the natives from every quarter, the news of our arrival having most rapidly spread. Waheia doo, though at a considerable distance, had been informed of it, and in the afternoon of Saturday the 16th, a chief, named Etoea, who was his tutor, brought the captain two hogs, acquainting him, at the same time, that he himself would attend him the day after. He was punctual to his promise; for on the 17th, early in the morning, Captain Cook received a message from Waheia doo, notifying his arrival, and requesting he would come ashore to meet him. In consequence of this invitation, Omiah and the captain prepared to make him a visit in form. Omiah, on this occasion, took some pains to dress himself, not after the manner of the English, nor that of Otaheite, or Tongataboo, or in the dress of any other country upon the earth; but in a strange medley of all the habiliments and ornaments he was possessed of. Thus equipped, on landing, they first paid a visit to Etary; who carried on a hand-barrow, accompanied them to a large building where he was let down: Omiah seated himself on one side of them, and the captain on the other. Waheia doo, the young chief, soon after arrived, attended by his mother, and several principal men, who all seated themselves opposite to us. One who sat near the captain, made a short speech, consisting of separate sentences; part of which was dictated by those about him. Another, on the opposite side, near the chief, spoke next; Etary after him, and then Omiah. The subjects of these orations were, Captain Cook's arrival, and his connections with them. Among other things, one of them told the captain, that the men of Reema desired they would not suffer him to come into Oheitepeha Bay, if he should return again to the island, for that it was their property; but that so far from regarding this request, he was authorised now to surrender to him the province of Tiaraboo, and every thing that was in it. Hence it is evident, that these people are no strangers to the policy of accommodating themselves to present circumstances. The young chief, at length, was directed to embrace Captain Cook; and, as a confirmation of this treaty of friendship, they exchanged names. After this ceremony was over, he and his friends accompanied the captain, to dine with him on board. Here Omiah prepared, as a present for Otoo, the king of the whole island, a maro, composed of red and yellow feathers; and, considering the place we were at, it was a present of great value. The captain

endeavoured to prevail on him not to produce it now, wishing him to wait till he might have an opportunity of presenting it to Otoo with his own hands. But he entertained too good an opinion of his countrymen, to be guided by his advice, he was determined to carry it ashore, and to entrust it with Waheia doo, to be forwarded by him to Otoo, and added to the royal maro. By this management he weakly imagined, he should oblige both chiefs; on the contrary, he highly dis-obliged him, whose favour was of the most consequence at this part of the island, without obtaining any reward from the other. The captain was prophetic on this occasion; for Waheia doo, as he expected, kept the maro for himself, and only sent to Otoo about a twentieth part of what composed the magnificent present.

Tuesday the 19th, it blew a hard gale, and we were obliged to veer out 20 fathoms more of our best bower cable, as we rode hard at our moorings. Most of the fresh provisions, with which we had been supplied at the Friendly Isles, having been expended in the voyage, orders were given to prohibit all trade with the natives, except for provisions; and that only with such persons as were appointed purveyors for the ships; by which prudent regulation, fresh provisions were soon procured in plenty, and every man was allowed a pound and a half of pork every day. In the morning, Captain Cook received from the young chief a present of ten hogs, some cloth, and a quantity of fruit. In the evening we exhibited and played off fire-works, which both pleased and astonished the numerous spectators. This day some of our gentlemen, in their walks, discovered, as they thought, a Roman Catholic Chapel. They described the altar, which, they said, they had seen, and every other constituent part of such a place of worship, yet, at the same time, they intimated, that two persons, who had the care of it, would not permit them to go in; on which account the Captain had the curiosity to survey it himself. The supposed chapel proved to be a Toopapoo, wherein the body of the late Waheia doo was deposited, in a kind of slate. It lay in a pretty large house, enclosed with a low palisade. The Toopapoo was remarkably neat, and resembled one of those little awnings over their large canoes. It was hung and covered with mats and cloths of a variety of colours, which had a beautiful effect. One piece of scarlet broad-cloth of the length of four or five yards, appeared conspicuous among other ornaments, which probably had been received as a present from the Spaniards. This cloth, and some tassels of feathers, suggested to our gentlemen the idea of a chapel; and their imagination supplied whatever else was wanting to create a resemblance: hearing that the Spaniards had visited this place might also operate on their minds upon this occasion, and add to the probability of its being a chapel. Some small offerings of fruits and roots seemed to be made daily at this shrine, several pieces being now fresh. These were deposited on a kind of altar, which stood without the palisades; within which we were not permitted to enter. Two men constantly attend here, both night and day, as well to watch over the place, as to dress and undress the Toopapoo. When we came to view it, the cloth and its appendages were rolled up; but at the captain's request, the two attendants placed it in order, but not till after they had dressed themselves in white robes. The chief, we were informed, had been dead about 20 months.

On Friday the 22d, in the morning, the live stock were taken on board, and we prepared for sea. The next day, while the ships were unmooring, Omiah, Captain Cook, and other gentlemen, landed, in order to take leave of the young chief. While we were conversing with him, one of those persons they call Eatooas, from a persuasion that they possess the spirit of the divinity, presented himself before us. He had all the appearance of insanity; and his only covering was a quantity of plantain leaves wrapped round his waist. He uttered what he had to say in a low squeaking voice, so as hardly to be understood: but Omiah

not to produce it now, but have an opportunity to own his hands. But he of his countrymen, to determine to carry it, Waiheiaodoo, to be lorded to the royal man. y imagined, he should nary, he highly dif- f the most consequence e obtaining any reward was prophetic on this e expected, kept the ent to Otoo about a posed the magnificent

ard gale, and we were ore of our best bower- oorings. Most of the ad been supplied at pended in the voyage, trade with the natives, t only with such per- vators for the ships; by h provisions were soon an was allowed a pound In the morning, Cap- tain chief a present of nity of fruit. In the d old fire-works, which e numerous spectators, n, in their walks, dis- man Catholic Chapel. h, they said, they had t part of such a place of, they intimated, that f it, would not permit the Captain had the

The supposed chapel herein the body of the in a kind of state. It ed with a low pallisade, y neat, and resembled their large canoes. It s and cloths of a variety iful effect. One piece length of four or five among other ornaments, ived as a present from d some tassels of fea- the idea of a chapel; whatever else was want- uring that the Spaniards operate on their minds to the probability of its offerings of fruits and y at this shrine, several e were deposited on a without the pallisades; mitted to enter. Two oth night and day, as as to dress and undress e to view it, the cloth up; but at the captain's eed it in order, but not selves in white robes. had been dead about

morning, the live stock prepared for sea. The re unmooring, Omiah, emen, landed, in order chief. While we were those persons they call ture who possess the spirit elf before us. He had ; and his only covering ves wrapped round his d to say in a low squeak- nderstood: but Omiah

did he perfectly comprehended him, and that he was advising young Waiheiaodoo not to accompany Captain Cook to Matavai, an expedition we did not know he intended, nor had the captain ever made such a proposal to him. The Eatooa also predicted, that the ships would not arrive that day at Matavai. In this, however, he was mistaken, though appearances, we confess, favoured his assertion, as, at the time, there was not a single breath of wind in any direction. While he was delivering his prophecy, a heavy shower of rain came on, which occasioned all to run for shelter, except himself, who affected to dispise it. He continued squeaking about half an hour, and then retired. Little attention was paid to what he uttered; and some of the natives laughed at him. The captain asked the chief whether the enthusiasm was an Earee, or a Tow-tow; he answered, that he was a bad man: and yet, notwithstanding this reply, and the little notice taken of the mad prophet, superstition so far governs the natives, that they absolutely believe such persons to be filled with the spirit of the Eatooa. Omiah seemed to be well instructed concerning them. He said, that, during the fits, with which they are seized, they know not any person, and that if any one of the inspired natives is a man of property, he will then give away every moveable he possesses, if his friends do not put them out of his reach; and, when he recovers, he seems not to have the least remembrance of what he had done during the time the frenzy, or fit, was upon him. We now returned on board, and soon after, a light breeze springing up at east, we got under sail, and the same evening anchored in Matavai Bay; but the Discovery did not get in till the next morning; consequently the man's prophecy was half fulfilled. In a journal belonging to one on board the Discovery, we find this account of her setting sail, and arrival at Matavai. "On the 23d, about nine o'clock, A. M. we weighed, and sailed, accompanied with several canoes, though the wind blew a storm, and we sailed under double-reefed top-sails. In the evening the Resolution took her old station in Matavai Bay; but the wind suddenly shifting, and the breeze coming full from the land, we were driven three leagues to the leeward of the bay, by which we were reduced to the necessity of working all night to windward, amidst thunder, lightning, and rain, and among reefs of coral rocks, on which we every moment expected to perish. We burnt false fires, and fired several guns of distress; but no answer from the Resolution, nor could we see any object to direct us, during this perilous night. In the morning of the 24th, the weather cleared up, and we could see the Resolution about three leagues to the windward of us, when a shift of wind happening in our favour, we took advantage of it, and by twelve at noon were safely moored within a cable's length of the Resolution."

It is impossible to give an adequate idea of the joy, which the natives expressed on our arrival. The shores every where resounded with the name of Cook: not a child that could hiss Toote was silent. The manner whereby these people express their joy is so different from our sensations, that were we to see persons stabbing themselves with sharks teeth, till their bodies were befouled with blood, we should think they were pierced with the most frantic despair, and that it would be almost impossible to alluage their grief; whereas, beating their breasts, tearing their hair, and wounding their heads and their bodies, are the most significant signs of their gladness to see their friends. But, at the same time, they are ready to overwhelm you with kindness, and would give you, for the moment, all they have in the world, yet the very next hour, they will crave all back again, and, like children, tease you for every thing you have got.

In the morning of this day being Sunday the 24th, Otoo, the king of the whole island, accompanied by a great number of the natives, in their canoes, came from Oparree, his place of residence, and having landed on Matavai point, sent a messenger on board, intimating his desire to see Captain Cook there. The captain accord-

ingly went ashore, attended by Omiah, and most of the officers. We found a vast multitude of people assembled on this occasion, in the midst of whom was the king, with his father, his two brothers, and three sisters. The captain saluted him, and was followed by Omiah, who kneeled and embraced his legs. Though Omiah had prepared himself for this ceremony, by dressing himself in his best apparel, and behaved with great respect and modesty, yet very little notice was taken of him. He made the king a present of two yards of gold cloth, and a large tassel of red feathers; and the captain gave him a gold laced hat, a suit of fine linen, some tools, a quantity of red feathers, and one of the bonnets worn at the Friendly Islands. This visit being over, the king, and all the royal family, accompanied Captain Cook on board, followed by several canoes, plentifully laden with all kinds of provisions. Each family owned a part, so that the captain had a present from every one of them; and each received from him a separate present in return. Not long after, the king's mother came on board, bringing with her some provisions and cloth, which she divided between the captain and Omiah. Though the latter was but little noticed at first by his countrymen, they no sooner gained information of his wealth, than they began to court his friendship. Captain Cook encouraged this as far as lay in his power, being desirous of fixing him with Otoo. Intending to leave all our European animals at this island, we thought Omiah would be able to give the natives some instruction with regard to their use and management; and the captain was convinced, that the farther he was removed from his native island, the more he would be respected. But unfortunately, Omiah rejected his advice, and behaved in so imprudent a manner, that he soon lost the friendship of Otoo, and of all the most considerable people at Otakeire. He associated with none but vagabonds and strangers, whose sole intention was to plunder him; and if we had not interfered, they would not have left him a single article of any value. This conduct drew upon him the ill will of the principal chiefs; who found that they could not obtain, from any one in either ship, such valuable presents as were bestowed by Omiah on the lowest of the natives. After dinner, a party of us accompanied Otoo to Oparree, taking with us some poultry, consisting of a peacock and hen, a turkey cock and hen, three geese and a gander, one duck and a drake. All these we left at Oparree, in the possession of Otoo; and the geese and ducks began to breed before we sailed. We found there a gander, that Captain Wallis had given to Oberea ten years before; we also met with several goats, and the Spanish bull, a fine animal of his kind, whom they kept tied to a tree, near the habitation of Otoo. He now belonged to Etary, and had been conveyed from Oheitepeha, to this place, in order to be shipped for Bolabola. On Monday the 25th, we went to this bull the three cows we had on board; also our English bull; but the horse, mare, and sheep, were put ashore at Matavai. Having thus disposed of these animals, we were now, to our great satisfaction, eased of the extraordinary trouble and vexation that had attended the bringing this living cargo to such a distance.

We shall here, for the entertainment of our readers, give an account of the reception the ships met with, on their arrival at this island, together with some other particulars, and transactions, all which we have taken from an original manuscript sent us by a gentleman, on board the Discovery. A few hours after we were moored in the bay of Oheitepeha, Omiah took an airing on horseback, to the great astonishment of the inhabitants, many hundreds of whom followed him with loud acclamations. Omiah, to excite their admiration the more, was dressed cap-a-pee in a suit of armour, and was mounted and caparisoned with his sword and pike, like St. George going to kill the dragon, whom he very nearly reprented; only that Omiah had pistols in his holsters, of which the bold faint knew not the use. Omiah, however, made good use of his arms; for when the crowd became clamorous and troublesome,

he every now and then pulled out a pistol; and fired it among them, which never failed to send them scampering away.

The ships were no sooner secured, than the sailors began stripping them of every foot of rigging they had left; for certainly no ships were in a more shattered condition. Our voyage from New Zealand, if not from the Cape, might be said to be one continued series of tempestuous weather, suspended only by a few intervals of sunshine; and the employment of our artificers at sea and on shore, a laborious exertion of their faculties to keep us above water. Here it was not only necessary to strip the main-mast of the Discovery; but to take it out, and carry it on shore, to be properly secured. This was a work of no small difficulty. Here too we found it necessary to unship our stores of every kind; to air and repack our powder; new bake that part of the bread that had contracted any dampness; to erect the forge on shore; in short to set all hands at work to refit the ships for the further prosecution of the voyage.

A messenger was dispatched from Captain Cook to King Otoo, to acquaint him with our arrival, and to desire his permission to send the cattle he had brought from England, to feed in the pastures of Oparree. The king expressed his joy on the return of Captain Cook, and readily gave his consent. He, at the same time, ordered one of his principal officers to accompany the messenger, in his return, and to take with him presents of fresh provisions for the commanders of both ships, and to invite them to dine with him the next day. This invitation was accepted, and it was agreed between the two Captains, that their visit should be made with as much state as their present circumstances would admit. The marines and music were therefore ordered to be in readiness at an appointed hour, and all the rowers to be clean dressed. We were now in Matavai harbour; and, on the 25th, about noon, the commanders, with the principal officers, and gentlemen, embarked on board the pinnaces, which, on this occasion, were decked in all the magnificence that silken streamers, embroidered ensigns, and other gorgeous decorations, could display. Omiah, to surprize the more, was clothed in a Captain's uniform, and could hardly be distinguished from a British officer. From Matavai to Oparree is about six miles; and we arrived at the landing-place at one o'clock, where we were received by the natives already under arms; and as soon as the company were disembarked, the whole band of music struck up a grand military march, and the procession began. The road from the beach to the entrance of the palace (about half a mile) was lined on both sides with natives from all parts, expecting to see Omiah on horseback, as the account of his appearance on the other side of the island, as before related, had already reached the inhabitants on this. As he appeared to them in disguise, he was not known; they were not, however, wholly disappointed, as the grandeur of the procession exceeded every thing of the kind they had ever seen. The whole court were likewise assembled, and the king, with his sisters, on the approach of Captain Cook, came forth to meet him. As he was perfectly known to them, their first salutations were frank and friendly, according to the known customs of the Otaheiteans; and when these were over, proper attention was paid to every gentleman in company, and that too with a politeness, quite unexpected to those who had never before been on this island. As soon as the company had entered the palace, and were seated, some discourse passed between the king and Captain Cook; after which, Omiah was presented to his majesty, and paid him the usual homage of a subject to a sovereign of that country, which consists of little more than being uncovered before him, and then entered into a familiar conversation on the subject of his travels. The Earees, or kings of this country, are not above discoursing with the meanest of their subjects; but Omiah, by being a favourite of the Earees of the ships, was now considered as a person of some rank. The king, impatient to hear his story, asked him a hun-

dred questions, before he gave him time to answer one. He enquired about the Earee-da-hai, or Great King of Pretanne; his place of residence; his court; his attendants; his warriors; his ships of war; his morai; the extent of his possessions, &c. Omiah did not fail to magnify the grandeur of the Great King. He represented the splendour of his court, by the brilliancy of the stars in the firmament; the extent of his dominions, by the vast expanse of heaven; the greatness of his power, by the thunder that shakes the earth. He said, the Great King of Pretanne had three hundred thousand warriors every day at his command, clothed like those who now attended the Earees of the ships; and more than double that number of sailors, who traversed the globe, from the rising of the sun to his setting; that his ships of war exceeded those at Matavai in magnitude, in the same proportion, as those exceeded the small canoes at Oparree. His majesty appeared all astonishment, and could not help interrupting him. He asked, if what he said was true, where the Great King could find people to navigate so many ships as covered the ocean? and if he could have men, where he could find provisions for so large a multitude? Omiah assured him, that in one city only, on the banks of a river, far removed from the sea, there were more people, than were contained in the whole group of islands with which his majesty was acquainted; that the country was full of large populous cities; notwithstanding which provisions were so plentiful, that for a few pieces of yellow metal, like those of which he had seen many, (meaning the medals given by Captain Cook to the chiefs) the Great King could purchase as much provisions as would maintain a sailor for a whole year. That in the country of the Great King, there are more than a hundred different kinds of four footed animals, from the size of a rat, to that of a flage erected on an ordinary canoe; and that all these animals are numerous in their several kinds, and propagate very fast. Omiah having, by this relation, obviated Otoo's doubts, adverted to his first questions. He said, the ships of war, in Pretanne, were furnished with poo-poos, (guns) each of which would receive the largest poo-poo his majesty had yet seen, within it; that some carried a hundred and more of these poo-poos, with suitable accommodations for a thousand fighting men, and stowage for all sorts of cordage, and warlike stores; besides provisions and water for a thousand or two thousand days; that they were sometimes abroad as long, fighting with the enemies of the Great King; that they carried with them frequently, in these expeditions, poo-poos that would hold a small hog, and which throw hollow globes of iron, of vast bigness, filled with fire and all manner of combustibles, and implements of destruction, to a great distance; a few of which, were they to be thrown among the fleet of Otaheite, would set them on fire, and destroy the whole navy, were they ever so numerous. The king seemed more astonished than delighted at this narration, and suddenly left Omiah, to join the company that were in conversation with Captain Cook. By this time dinner was nearly ready, and as soon as the company were properly seated, was brought in by as many tow-tows as there were persons to dine; besides these, the king, the two commanders, and Omiah, had each of them two persons of superior rank to attend them. Their dinner consisted of fish and fowl of various kinds, dressed after their manner; barbecued pigs, stewed yams, and fruits of the most delicious flavour, all served with an ease, and regularity, that is seldom to be found at European tables, when the ladies are excluded from making part of the company. As soon as dinner was over, we were conducted to the theatre; where a company of players were in readiness to perform a dramatical entertainment. The drama was regularly divided into three acts: the first consisted of dancing and dumb show; the second of comedy, which, to those who understood the language, was very laughable; for Omiah, and the natives, appeared highly diverted the whole time; the last was a musical piece, in which the young princesses were the sole performers. Between the acts

a vacant hour between business and pleasure that was unemploy'd: we wanted no coffee houses to kill time; nor Vauxhalls for our evening entertainments. Every nightly assembly, in the plantations of this happy isle, is furnished, by beneficent nature, with a more luxurious feast than all the dainties of the most sumptuous champêtre, though lavished with unlimited profusion, and emblazoned with the most expensive decorations of art. Ten thousand lamps, combined and ranged in the most advantageous order, by the hands of the best artists, appear faint, when compared with the brilliant stars of heaven that unite their splendor, to illuminate the groves, the lawns, and streams of Oparree. In these elysian fields, immortality alone is wanting to the enjoyment of all those pleasures which the poet's fancy has conferred on the shades of departed heroes, as the highest reward of heroic virtue. But amidst so many delights, it was not for human nature to subsist long without satiety. Our officers began to be punctilious, and our seamen to be licentious. Several of the latter were punished severely for indecency, in surpassing the natives by the shameless manner of indulging their sensual appetites; and two of the former went ashore to terminate an affair of honour by the decision of their pistols. It happened, that neither of them were dextrous marksmen: they vented their rage by the fury with which they began the attack; and, having discharged three balls each, they returned on board without any hurt, except spoiling a hat, a ball having pierced it, and grazed upon the head of him who wore it. It was, however, remarked, that these gentlemen were better friends than ever, during the remainder of the voyage. Thus far we have copied this journal; and now proceed with our own history.

On Tuesday, the 26th, as the Captain intended to continue here some time, we set up our two observatories on Matavai Point: and adjoining to them two tents were pitched, for the reception of a guard, and of such people as might be left on shore, in different departments. The command, at this station, was intrusted to Mr. King, who likewise attended the astronomical observations. While we remained here, the crews of both ships were occupied in many necessary operations. The Discovery's main-mast, that was shattered in the head, and carried on shore to be repaired, was rendered more firm than ever: the sails that had been split, and were otherwise rendered unfit for service, were replaced, the cordage carefully examined; the mast new rigged; the water casks repaired; both ships new caulked; the bread inspected: in short, the whole repairs completed, with more celerity and strength, than could have been expected in a place, where many conveniences were wanted, to fit us out for that part of our voyage which still remained to be performed. This day a piece of ground was cleared for a garden, and planted with several articles, very few of which will, probably, be looked after by the natives. Some potatoes, melons, and pine-apple plants, were in a fair way of succeeding before we quitted the place. We had brought from the Friendly Islands several shaddock trees, which we planted here; and they will in all probability succeed, unless their growth should be checked by the same idle curiosity which destroyed a vine planted at Oheitepeha by the Spaniards. Many of the natives assembled to taste the first fruit it produced; but the grapes being still sour, they considered it as little better than poison, and trod it under foot. In that state Omiah accidentally found it, and was rejoiced at the discovery; for he was confident, that if he had but grapes, he could easily make wine. Accordingly, he had several slips cut off from the tree, with an intention of carrying them away with him; and we pruned, and put in order, the remains of it. Before we had been two days at anchor in Matavai Bay, we were visited by all our old friends, whose names are mentioned in the narrative of Captain Cook's former voyage. Not one of them came with empty hands; so that we had an amazing quantity of provisions, without any apprehensions of exhausting the island, which presented to our eyes every mark of the most exuberant fertility and abund-

ance. Soon after we had arrived here, one of the islanders, whom the Spaniards had carried with them to Lima, paid us a visit: but, in his exterior appearance, he was not distinguishable from the rest of the countrymen. He still remembered some Spanish words, among which the most frequent were *Si Señor*. We also found here the young man whom we had called Oedidee, but whose real name is Heete-heete. Captain Cook had carried him from Ulitea, on board his ship, in 1773, and brought him back in the year following, after he had visited the Friendly Islands, New Zealand, Easter Island, and the Marquesas. He had come from Bolabola, of which he was a native, to Otaheite, about three months before, probably with the sole view of gratifying his curiosity. He preferred the modes, and even dress of his countrymen to ours; for, though Captain Cook gave him some clothes, which our Board of Admiralty had thought proper to send for his use, he, after a few days, declined wearing them. This instance, as well as that of the person who had been at Lima, may be adduced as a proof of the strong inclination of mankind, in general, to habits acquired at an early age; and it is, perhaps, no unreasonable supposition, that even Omiah, who had imbibed almost the whole English manners, will, in a short time after being left by us, return, like Oedidee, and the visitor of Lima, to his own native garments, and his original mode of life.

On Wednesday, the 27th, we were informed by a man who came from Oheitepeha, that two Spanish ships had anchored... that day the preceding night; and, to confirm this intelligence, he produced some coarse blue cloth, which, he said, he had got out of one of the ships. He further said, that Mateema was with the people, and that the two ships would be at Matavai in two or three days. These, and some other circumstances, which he mentioned, gave the story so much the appearance of truth, that our Commodore dispatched Lieutenant Williamson in a boat, to look into Oheitepeha bay; and, in the mean time, both ships were put into a proper posture of defence: for though England and Spain were at peace when we left England, we did not know but that a different scene might, by this time, have been opened. Upon enquiry, however, we had reason to imagine, that the relator of the story had imposed upon us; and this was put beyond all doubt, when Mr. Williamson returned the day following; who made his report, that he had been at Oheitepeha, and did not find any ships there, nor had any been there since we left it. The people of this part of the island, where we were stationed, told us indeed at first, that it was a fiction, invented by those of Tiaraboo, but with what view it was propagated among our people, we could not conceive, unless they might suppose, that the report would induce us to quit the island, and thus deprive the inhabitants of Otaheite-nooe of the advantages they might otherwise reap from our ships remaining there; the natives of the two parts of the island being inveterate enemies to each other. Since we arrived at Matavai, the weather had been very unsettled till the 29th, on account of which, before this time we were unable to get equal altitudes of the sun, for ascertaining the going of the time-keeper. In the evening of this day, the islanders made a precipitate retreat, both from our land station, and from on board the ships. We conjectured that this arose from their knowing some theft had been committed, and apprehending punishment on that account. At length we became acquainted with the whole affair. One of the surgeon's mates had made an excursion into the country, to purchase curiosities, and had taken with him four hatchets for the purpose of exchange. He having been so imprudent as to employ a native to carry them, the fellow took an opportunity of running off with so valuable a prize. This was the reason of the sudden flight, in which Otoo himself, and all his family, had joined; and it was with difficulty that the Captain stopped them, after having followed them for the space of two or three miles. As the Captain had determined to take no harsh measures for the recovery of the hatchets, that his people

arrived here, one of the
such carried with them
in, in his exterior appear-
able from the rest of the
remembered some Spanish
frequent were *Si Senor*,
man whom we had called
is *Heete-heete*. Cap-
rom Ulitea, on board his
him back in the year fol-
the Friendly Islands, New
the Marquesas. He had
ch he was a native, to Ota-
before, probably with the
triosity. He preferred the
countrymen to ours; for,
him some clothes, which
thought proper to send for
declined wearing them.
of the person who had been
s a proof of the strong in-
neral, to habits acquired at
haps, no unreasonable sup-
who had imbibed almost the
in, in a short time after be-
decided, and the visitor of
armaments, and his original

we were informed by a
cha, that two Spanish ships
preceding night; and,
produced some coarse blue
got out of one of the ships.
a was with the people, and
at Matavai in two or three
circumstances, which he
to much the appearance of
re dispatched Lieutenant
into Oheutepeha bay; and,
s were put into a proper
ough England and Spain
England, we did not know
ht, by this time, have been
wever, we had reason to
the story had imposed upon
all doubt, when Mr. Wil-
lowing; who made his re-
eutepeha, and did not find
been there since we left it.
the island, where we were
first, that it was a fiction,
so, but with what view it
people, we could not con-
e, that the report would
nd thus deprive the inha-
the advantages they might
remaining there; the na-
land being inveterate ene-
we arrived at Matavai, the
ttled till the 29th, on ac-
we were unable to get
ascertaining the going of
evening of this day, the
treat, both from our land
the ships. We conje-
r knowing some theft had
ending punishment on
became acquainted with
urgeon's mates had made
to purchase curiosities,
hatchets for the purpose
so imprudent as to em-
the fellow took an oppor-
o valuable a prize. This
n flight, in which Otoo
joined; and it was with
pped them, after having
of two or three miles.
ed to take no harsh mea-
hatchets, that his people
for

for the future might be more upon their guard against
such negligence, every thing resumed quickly its former
tranquillity.

Saturday the 30th, some messengers arrived from
Eimeo with intelligence, that the people of that island
were in arms; and that Otoo's partizans there had
been compelled by the opposite party to retreat to the
mountains. The quarrel between the two islands,
which began in 1774, had partly subsided ever since.
A formidable armament had failed soon after Captain
Cook left Otaheite, in his former voyage; but the
malecontents of Eimeo had made so gallant a resis-
tance, that the fleet had returned without success; and
now another expedition was deemed necessary. On
the arrival of the messengers, the chiefs assembled at
Otoo's house, where the captain actually was at that
time, and had the honour of being admitted into their
council. One of the messengers opened the business
with a speech of considerable length, the purport of
which was to explain the situation of affairs at Eimeo,
and to excite the Otaheiteans to arm on the occasion.
This opinion was opposed by others, who were against
commencing hostilities; and the debate, for some time,
was carried on with great order and decorum. At
length, however, the whole assembly became very
tumultuous, and the captain began to think, that their
meeting would conclude like a Polish diet. But the
contending chiefs cooled as fast as they grew warm,
and order was speedily restored. In the end, the party
for war prevailed; and it was resolved, though not
unanimously, that a strong force should be sent to
Eimeo. Otoo said very little, during the whole de-
bate. Those of the council inclinable to war, applied
to our commodore for his assistance; and all of them
were desirous of knowing what part he would take.
Omiah was sent for to act as his interpreter; but he
could not be found, the captain, being under a neces-
sity of speaking for himself, told them, as well as he
could, that, as he was not perfectly acquainted with
the dispute, and as the natives of Eimeo had never
given him the least offence, he could not think of en-
gaging in hostilities against them. With this decla-
ration they either were, or appeared to be satisfied.
The council was now dissolved; but before the captain
retired, Otoo desired him to come again in the after-
noon, and bring Omiah with him. A party of us ac-
cordingly waited upon him at the appointed time; and
he conducted us to his father, in whose presence the
dispute with the natives of Eimeo was again discuss'd.
Captain Cook being very desirous of effecting an ac-
commodation, advis'd the old chief on that subject;
but he was deaf to any such proposal, and fully deter-
min'd to carry on hostilities. On our enquiring into the
cause of the war, we were inform'd, that several years
ago, a brother of Waheiaooa, of Tiaraboo, was sent
to Eimeo, at the desire of Maheine, a popular chief of
that island, to be their king; but had not been there
many days, before Maheine, having caus'd him to be
put to death, set up for himself, in opposition to Tiera-
boonooe, nephew of the deceased, who now became
the lawful heir, or perhaps had been appointed by the
people of Otaheite, to succeed to the government on
the death of the other. Towha, who is related to Otoo,
and chief of the district of Tettaha, and who had been
commander in chief of the armament sent against
Eimeo in 1774, happened not to be at Matavai at this
time, and therefore was not present at the consultations.
It appear'd, however, that he was no stranger to what
had happen'd, and that he enter'd into the transactions
with great eagerness and spirit: for on the rumour of
a war, it was computed, that near 300 canoes were
muster'd in Matavai Bay, with flags to each, whereon
sat from three to six chiefs in their warlike dresses;
which seem'd calculated for shew rather than use in
battle. On their heads were large turbans wound
round in many folds; over that a monilous helmet;
and on their bodies, instead of the light airy dress worn
in common, they were incumber'd by many garments
of their own cloth, which added indeed to their stature,
but which must disable them to exert their strength in

the day of battle. Men of fertile imagination, fond of
tracing the analogy of antient customs, among the dif-
ferent nations of the world, might possibly discover some
similarity between these cumbersome dresses, and those
of the knights of antient chivalry, who fought in ar-
mour. It is certain that the Otaheitean who fights on
foot must feel the same incombrance from his heavy
war-dress, as the antient knight, who fought on horse-
back must have done, from his unwieldy armour; and
there is no doubt but the former will, one time or other,
be laid aside in the tropical isles, as much as the latter
is now in every other part of the world.

On Monday the 1st of September, a messenger ar-
rived from Towha, to acquaint Otoo, that he had killed
a man to be sacrific'd to the Eatooa, with the view of
imploping the assistance of the deity against Eimeo.
Tha solemn oblation was to be offer'd at the great
Morai, at Attahooroo, and Otoo's presence was neces-
sary on the occasion. That such kind of sacrifices con-
stitute a part of the religious ceremonies of the Ota-
heiteans, had been asser'ted by Mons. Bougainville, on
the testimony of the native whom he took to France.
In our last visit to Otaheite, we had satisfi'd ourselves;
that such a practice, however inconsistent with the
general humanity of the people, was here adopted.
But this was one of those uncommon facts, concerning
the truth of which many will not be convinc'd, unless
the relator himself has had ocular proof to support
his assertion; for this reason, Captain Cook request'd
of Otoo, that he might be allow'd to accompany him,
and, by being present at the solemnity, might obtain
the highest evidence of its certainty. To this the king
readily assented, and we immediately set out in the
captain's boat, accompanied by our old friend Potatou,
Mr. Anderson and Mr. Webber; Omiah following us
in his canoe. We landed in our way, on a small island,
lying off Tettaha, where we found Towha and his at-
endants. After a little conversation between the two
chiefs, on the subject of the war, Towha address'd
himself to the captain, soliciting his assistance. When
the latter excus'd himself, Towha seem'd displeas'd,
thinking it rather extraordinary, that one who had
constantly declin'd himself the friend of their island,
should now refuse to fight against its enemies. Be-
fore we separat'd, Towha gave to Otoo two or three
red feathers, tied up in a tuft, and a half-starv'd dog
was put into a canoe that was to accompany us. Our
party now re-embark'd, taking with us a priest, who
was to assist at the offering of the human sacrifice.
About two o'clock, we land'd at Attahooroo, when
Otoo desired that the sailors might be order'd to con-
tinue in the boat; and that Captain Cook, Mr. Ander-
son, and Mr. Webber, would take off their hats as soon
as they should come to the Morai. To this we im-
mediately proceeded, followed by numbers of men,
and some boys; but not one woman was present. We
found four priests with their assistants waiting for us;
and on our arrival the ceremonies commenc'd. The
dead body or sacrifice was in a small canoe, that lay on
the beach, fronting the Morai. Two of the priests,
with several of their attendants, were sitting by the
canoe that lay on the beach; the others at the Morai.
Our company stopp'd at the distance of twenty or
thirty paces from the priests. Here Otoo plac'd him-
self; our gentlemen, and a few others, standing by
him, while the bulk of the people were remov'd at a
greater distance. One of the assistants of the priests
now brought a young plantain tree, and laid it down
before the king. Another approach'd, bearing a small
tuft of red feathers, twist'd on some fibres of the
cocoa-nut hulk, with which he touch'd one of Otoo's
feet, and afterwards retir'd with it to his companions.
One of the priests who were seat'd at the Morai, now
began a long prayer, and, at particular times, sent down
young plantain trees, which were plac'd upon the
sacrifice. During this prayer, one of the natives, who
stood by the officiating priest, held in his hands two
bundles, in one of which, as we afterwards found, was
the royal marq; and the other, if we may be allow'd
the exprellion, was the ark of the Eatooa. The prayer
being

being finished, the priests at the Morai, with their assistants, went and sat down by those who were upon the beach, carrying the two bundles with them. They here renewed their prayers; during which the plantain trees were taken, one by one, at various times, from off the dead body, which, being wrapped up in cocoa-leaves and small branches, was now taken out of the canoe, and laid upon the beach. The priests placed themselves round it; some standing, and others sitting; and one, or more of them, repeated sentences for about ten minutes. The body was now stripped of the leaves and branches, and placed parallel with the sea-shore. Then one of the priests standing at the feet of the corpse, pronounced a long prayer, in which he was joined occasionally by others, each of them holding a tuft of red feathers in his hand. While this prayer was repeating, some hair was pulled off the head of the intended sacrifice, and the left eye was taken out; both which being wrapped up in a green leaf, were presented to the king, who, however, did not touch them, but gave to the man who brought them to him, the tuft of red feathers which he had received from Towha. This, with the eye and hair, were taken to the priests. Not long after this the king sent them another bunch of feathers. In the course of this last ceremony, a kingfisher making a noise, Oroo, turning to Captain Cook, said, "That is the Eatooa;" and he seemed to consider it as a favourable prognostic. The corpse was then carried a little way, and laid under a tree, near which were fixed three thin pieces of wood neatly carved. The bundles of cloth were placed on a part of the Morai; and the tufts of red feathers were laid at the feet of the dead body; round which the priests stationed themselves; and we were at this time permitted to go as near as we pleased. He, who seemed to be the chief priest, spoke for about a quarter of an hour, with different tones and gestures; sometimes appearing to expostulate with the deceased; at other times, asking several questions; then making various demands, as if the dead person had power himself, or interest with the deity, to engage him to grant such requests; among which, he desired him to deliver Eimeo, Maheine its chief, the women, hogs, and other things of the island into their hands; which was, indeed, the express object of the sacrifice. He then prayed near half an hour, in a whining tone, and two other priests joined in the prayer, in the course of which one of them plucked some more hair from the head of the corpse, and put it upon one of the bundles. The high priest now prayed alone, holding in his hand the feathers he had received from Towha. Having finished, he gave them to another priest, who prayed in like manner: then all the tufts of feathers were placed upon the bundles of cloth, which concluded the ceremony at this place.

The dead body was now carried to the most conspicuous part of the Morai, with the feathers, and the two bundles of cloth, while the drums beat slowly. The feathers and bundles were laid against a pile of stones, and the body at the foot of them. The priests having again seated themselves round the corpse, renewed their prayers, while some of their assistants dug a hole about the depth of two feet, into which they threw the victim, and covered it over with stones of earth. While they were depositing the body in the grave, a boy squeaked aloud, upon which Omiah told the captain, it was the Eatooa. In the mean time, a fire having been made, we saw a lean half starved dog produced, and it was killed by twisting his neck. The hair was then singed off, and the entrails being taken out, they were thrown into the fire, and left there to be consumed; but the kidney, heart, and liver, were baked on heated stones. The carcass, after having been rubbed over with the blood of the animal, were with the liver, &c. laid down before the priests, who were seated round the grove, praying. They, for some time, uttered ejaculations over the dog, while two men, at intervals, beat very loud on two drums; and a boy screamed in a loud shrill voice, three times. This, they said, was to invite the Eatooa to feast on the banquet that they had provided for him.

When the priests had finished their prayers, the body, heart, liver, &c. of the dog, were placed on a wharve or scaffold, about six feet in height, on which lay remains of two other dogs, and of two pigs, that had been lately offered up. The priests and their attendants now gave a shout, and this proclaimed the ceremonies ended for the present. The evening being arrived, we were conducted to a house belonging to Poratou, where we were entertained and lodged for the night. Having been informed, that the religious rites were to be renewed the next day, we would not quit the place while any thing remained to be seen.

Early in the morning of Tuesday the 2nd, we repaired to the scene of action; and soon afterwards a pig was sacrificed, and laid upon the same scaffold with the others. About eight, Oroo took our party to the Morai, where the priests, and a great multitude of people were by this time assembled. The two bundles occupied the place where they had been deposited the preceding evening; the two drums were in the front of the Morai, and the priests were stationed beyond them. The king placed himself between the drums, and desired the captain to stand by him. The ceremony commenced with bringing a young plantain tree, and laying it at the king's feet. A prayer was then repeated by the priests, holding in their hands several tufts of red, and a plume of ostrich feathers; which the commodore had presented to Oroo on his first arrival. When the priests had ended the prayer, they changed their station, and placed themselves between our gentlemen and the Morai. One of them, the same who had performed the principal part the preceding day, began another prayer, which continued near half an hour. During this prayer, the tufts of red feathers were put, one by one, upon the ark of the Eatooa. Not long after, four pigs were produced, one of which was killed immediately, and the three others were taken to a neighbouring sty. One of the bundles was now untied; and it contained the Maro, with which the Otaheiteans invest their king. When taken out of the cloth, it was spread on the ground, at full length, before the priests. It is a square, about 15 feet in length, and one foot and a quarter in breadth, and is probably put on in the same manner as the common Maro, or piece of cloth, used by these islanders to wrap round the waist. It was ornamented with yellow and red feathers; but principally with the former. One end of it was bordered with eight pieces, about the size and figure of a horse-shoe, whose edges were fringed with black feathers: the other end was forked, having the points of various lengths. The feathers were ranged in two rows, in square compartments, and produced a pleasing effect. They had been first fixed upon some of the cloth of the island, and then sewed to the upper end of the pendant, which Captain Wallis had left lying on the shore, the first time of his arrival at Matavai. The priests pronounced a long prayer, relative to this part of the ceremony; and after it was ended the badge of royalty was folded up with great care, and put into the cloth. The other bundle, which we have already mentioned, under the name of the ark, was next opened at one end; but we were not permitted to approach near enough to examine its mysterious contents. The intelligence we obtained respecting its contents was, that the Eatooa (or rather, what is supposed to represent him) was concealed therein. This sacred repository is composed of the twisted fibres of the hulk of the cocconut, and its figure is nearly circular, with one end considerably thicker than the other. The pig that had been killed was by this time cleaned, and its entrails taken out. These happened to have many of those convulsive motions which frequently appear, in different parts, when an animal is killed; and this was considered as a very favourable omen to the intended expedition. After having been exposed for some time, the entrails were carried and laid down before the priests; one of whom closely inspected them, turning them for this purpose gently with a stick. Having been sufficiently examined, they were thrown into the fire. The sacrificed pig, and its liver, heart, &c. were now put upon the

the scaffold where the dog had been deposited; and then all the feathers, except the ostrich plume, being enclosed in the ark, an end was put to the whole solemnity.

We shall close this account with a few other observations we made in the course of this morning. Four double canoes remained upon the beach the whole time, before the place of sacrifice. A small platform, covered with palm leaves, fastened in mysterious knots, was fixed on the fore part of each of those canoes; and this also is called a Morai. Some plantains, cocoa-nuts, bread-fruit, fish, and other articles, lay upon each of those naval morais. The natives said, that they belonged to the Eatooa, and that they were to attend the fleet that was to be sent out against Eimeo. The unfortunate victim offered on this occasion, was to appearance, a middle aged man, and one of the lowest class of the people; but it did not appear that they had fixed upon him on account of his having committed any particular crime that deserved death. It is certain, however, that they usually select such guilty persons for sacrifices, or else vagabonds, who have no visible way of procuring an honest livelihood. Having examined the body of the unhappy sufferer, now offered up to the object of these people's adoration, we observed, that it was bloody about the head, and much bruised upon the right temple, which denoted the manner in which he had been killed; and we were informed, that he had been knocked on the head with a stone. The wretches who are devoted on these occasions, are never previously apprized of their fate. Whenever any one of the principal chiefs conceives a human sacrifice necessary, on any great emergency, he faces upon the victim, and then dispatches some of his truly servants, who fall upon him suddenly, and either stone him to death, or beat out his brains with a club. The king is then acquainted with it, whose presence is said to be absolutely necessary at the solemn rites that follow; and, indeed, in the late performance, Otoo bore a capital part. The solemnity itself is called Paore Eree, or the prayer of the chief; and the victim is termed Taara-taboo, or consecrated man. The Morai, where the late sacrifice was offered, is always appropriated for the burial of the king of the whole island, and likewise of his family, and some other persons of distinguished rank. It differs little except in extent, from the common Morais. Its principal part is a large oblong pile of stones, about thirteen feet in height, and contracted towards the top, with a quadrangular area on each side, loosely paved with pebbles, under which the bones of the chiefs are deposited. Not far from the end nearest the sea, is the place of sacrifice, where is a very large whatta, or scaffold, on which the offerings of fruits, and other vegetables are placed; but the animals are laid on a smaller one, and the human sacrifices are interred under the pavement. We saw several reliques scattered about the place, such as small stones raised in various parts of the pavement, some with bits of cloth fastened round them; others entirely covered with it; and upon the side of the large pile, fronting the area, are a great number of pieces of carved wood, in which their gods are supposed to reside occasionally. There is a heap of stones at one end of the large scaffold, with a sort of platform on one side. On this are deposited all the skulls of the human sacrifices, which are taken up after they have remained under ground for some months. Just above them many of the carved pieces of wood are placed; and here the Maro, and the other bundle, supposed to contain the god Oroo, were laid, during the celebration of the late solemn rites. It is probable, that this barbarous custom of offering human sacrifices, prevails in all, or most of the islands of the Pacific Ocean, however distant from each other some of them may be. And though we should suppose, that not more than one person is offered at one time, either at Otaheite, or other islands, yet these occasions, we are inclined to think, occur so frequently, as to make a terrible havoc of the human species; for the Captain counted no less than

No. 60.

49 skulls of former victims, lying before the Morai, at Attahooroo; and as none of those skulls appeared to have suffered any considerable change, or decay, from the weather, it may be inferred, that a short time had elapsed since the victims to whom they belonged had been offered. This horrid practice, though no consideration whatever can make it cease to be detestable, might, perhaps, be thought less detrimental, in some respects, if it contributed to impress any awe for the deity, or veneration for religion, upon the minds of the congregation: but this was far from being the case on the late occasion; for though a vast number of spectators had assembled at the Morai, they shewed very little reverence for what was transacting: and Omiah happening to arrive, after the ceremonies had begun, many of the islanders thronged round him, and were engaged, for the remaining part of the time, in making him recount some of his adventures; to which they listened with great eagerness of attention, regardless of the solemn offices which their priests were then performing. Indeed, the priests themselves, except the one who sustained the principal part, either from their being familiarized to such objects, or from their reposing no great degree of confidence in the efficacy of their religious institutions, maintained very little of that solemnity, so necessary to give to acts of devotion their proper effect. Their habit was but an ordinary one; they conversed together with great familiarity; and the only attempt they made to preserve decorum, was by exerting their authority, to prevent the populace from encroaching on the spot, and to suffer our gentlemen, as strangers, to come forward. They were, however, very candid in the answers which they gave to any interrogatories that were put to them, with regard to this human institution. Being asked what was the design of it? They replied, that it was an ancient custom, and highly pleasing to their god, who came and fell upon the sacrifices; in consequence of which, he granted the petitions of their prayers. It was then objected, that he certainly did not feed on these, as he was neither seen to do it, nor were the bodies of the sacrificed animals soon consumed; and that as to the corpse of a human victim, they prevented his feeding on that, by interring it. In answer to these objections, which in our opinion were rather frivolous ones, they observed, that he came in the night, invisibly, and fed only on the soul, or immaterial part, which (as these people say) remains about the place of sacrifice, till the carcase of the victim is totally wasted by putrefaction. Human sacrifices are not the only strange customs that still prevail among the inhabitants of Otaheite, though, in many respects, they have emerged from the brutal manners of savage life. Besides cutting out the jaw bones of their enemies slain in battle, which they carry about with them as trophies, they, in some measure, offer up their bodies to the Eatooa; for after an engagement, in which they have come off victorious, they collect all the dead, and bring them to the Morai, where with great form and ceremony, they dig a large hole, and bury them all in it, as so many offerings to their divinities. They treat in a different manner their own chiefs that fall in battle. Their late king, Tootaha, Tubourai-tamaide, and another chief, who were slain in an engagement with those of Taraboo, were brought to the Morai at Attahooroo; at which place the priests cut out their bowels before the great altar; and their dead bodies were afterwards interred in three different places, near the great pile of stones above-mentioned; and the common men who lost their lives in the battle, were all buried in one hole, at the foot of the same pile. This was performed the day after the battle, with much pomp and formality, amidst a numerous concourse of people, as a thanksgiving offering to the deity, for the victory they had obtained the preceding day. The vanquished, in the mean time, had taken refuge in the mountains, where they remained upwards of a week; till the fury of the victors began to abate. A treaty was then set on foot, by which it was agreed, that Otoo should be proclaimed king of the

H

whole

whole island; and the solemnity of investing him with the Maro, or badge of royalty, was performed at the same Morai, with great magnificence.

A gentleman on board the Discovery, to whose journal, in the narrative of this voyage, we have had frequently recourse to, in his remarks on the manners and customs of the inhabitants of Otaheite, makes the following observations. The journalist, as he says, was attentive only to two facts, one of which, he found reason to believe, had been misrepresented, and the other unfairly related. The first respects the society of the Arreos, composed, as it was said, of a certain number of men and women, associated in lewdness, and so abandoned to all sense of humanity, as to destroy the issue of their libidinous intercourse; than which nothing could be more injurious to the characters of any people, than this diabolical practice ascribed to this society. There are in this, and the adjoining islands, persons of a middle rank between the Manahouas, or the Yeomen, and the Earees, who having no concern in the government, nor any distinct property in the islands, associate together for their own amusement, and the entertainment of the public. These travel from place to place, and from island to island in companies, not unlike those of the strolling players in England, only that they perform without pay; but that they cohabit indiscriminately, one with another, so many men with so many women in common, is no otherwise true, than may be suspected among the itinerant companies just mentioned; nor are they under any other restraints from marrying, than that the society admits of no marriages among themselves, nor of any married people to be of their society, it being a rule with them never to be encumbered with children; if therefore it should happen, that issue should prove to be the consequence of a casual amour, there is no alternative, the mother must either quit the society, or some how or other dis-

pose of the child, which some of them do there, as many unfortunate girls do here, by secretly striking away with them, to avoid infamy, it being equally disgraceful there to be found with child, while members of the society of Arreos, as it is for women here to be found without husbands. Oedidee, who made the voyage to the fourthward with Captain Cook, in his former expedition to discover a southern continent, came to pay his respects to his patron and friend. He brought with him a wife whom he had lately married, which discredits the notion that was adopted by former voyagers, that those who belonged to the society of Arreos were sworn to celibacy. Either this man must have been an impostor, or the fact just mentioned cannot be true.

The other fact, which the writer took pains to determine, was, whether the beastly custom imputed to them, of gratifying their passions without regard to persons or places, was well founded? And he solemnly declares, that the grossest indecencies he ever saw practised while on the island, were by the licentiousness of our own people, who, without regard to character, made no scruple to attempt openly and by force, what they were unable to effect with the free voluntary consent of the objects of their desire; for which several of them were severely punished. To assert, therefore, that not the least trace of shame is to be found among these people, in doing that openly, which all other people are naturally induced to hide, is an injurious calumny, not warranted by custom, nor supported by the general practice, even of the lowest class of individuals among them. This people, concludes our journalist, have one custom in common with the Neapolitans and Maltese, which ought not to be forgotten, and that is, their fishing in the night, and reposing themselves in the day; like them too, they burn torches while they fish, which they make of the oil drawn from the cocoa-nut.

C H A P. VIII.

The party at the conclusion of the Solemnity at the Morai, re-embarked for Matavai—Conference with Towha respecting the human Sacrifice—Private Heecias among the Natives—A treat given by Oedidee, and another by Omiab—Exhibition of Fire-works—A present of Cloib made in an unusual Manner—A method of embalming the dead Body of a Chief—A second human Sacrifice—The two Captains entertain the Natives by riding on Horse-back—Attention of Otoo to prevent Theft—Animals given him by Captain Cook—Audience to the Deputies of a Chief—A mock fight exhibited by two War-canoes—Naval strength of the Society Islands—Manner of conducting a War—The day for the two Ships sailing fixed—Peace made with Eimeo—Debates in consequence of this—Otoo's conduct censured—A solemnity on the occasion—Observations—Otoo's policy—Omiab receives a present of a war canoe—Otoo's present and message to the King of Great Britain—An Account of the modes of Traffic, and the friendly Treatment we received at Otahete—More particulars respecting the expedition of the Spaniards—Their endeavours to inculcate a mean opinion of the English—Omiab's jealousy of another Traveller—The Resolution and Discovery depart from Otahete, and anchor at Taloo in the Island of Eimeo—Two Harbours, Toloo, and Parowroab described—Visit from Mabeine, and a Description of his Person—Preparations made for sailing—Detained by having a Goat stolen—Amber purloined, and secreted—Measures taken, and an expedition sent to the Island to recover it—Houses and Canoes burnt—Continuation of Hostilities threatened—The Goat restored—A description of the Island of Eimeo—The two Ships set sail, and arrive at Huabeine—An assembly of the Chiefs—Omiab's Establishment in this Island agreed to unanimously—In consequence of this a House is built for him, and steps taken to ensure his safety—A Thief punished with uncommon Severity—Animals left with Omiab—His Weapons—Entertainments—Description on his House—Behaviour at parting—Remarks on his Character and general Conduct—Observations on the two New Zealanders who remained with him—The two Ships proceed to Ulitea—A Deserter belonging to the Marines recovered—Intelligence from Omiab—Instructions to Captain Clerke—Two of the Marines desert—The Chief's Son, Daughter and her Husband, confined on board the Discovery—A conspiracy formed by the Natives against the two Captains—The Deserters recovered, and the Chief's family set at Liberty—The Resolution and Discovery prepare for their Departure from Ulitea.

ON Tuesday, the 2nd of September, we re-embarked, in order to return to Matavai, revolving in our minds the extraordinary scene at the morai, as related in the preceding chapter, and to which we had been eye-witnesses. In the way, we paid a visit to Towha, who had continued in the little island, where we met him the day before. Some conversation passed between him and Otoo; and the latter entreated Captain Cook, once more, to join them as an ally in their war against Eimeo. By his positive refusal he entirely lost the good opinion of this chief. Before we took our leave, Otoo took an occasion to speak of the solemnity, at which we had been present. Among

other interrogatories, he asked particularly, if it answered our expectations? What opinion we entertained of its efficacy? And, whether such religious acts and ceremonies were frequent in our own country? We had been silent during the celebration of the horrid ceremony; but, at the close of the extraordinary scene, freely expressed our sentiments on the subject to Otoo, and his attendants; consequently, Captain Cook did not conceal his detestation of it, in this conversation with Towha. Exclusive of the barbarity of the bloody custom, he urged the unreasonableness of it, alleging that such a sacrifice, instead of making the Eeroos propitious to their nation, would excite his vengeance; and that

of them do there, as
e, by secretly
y, it being equally dif-
child, while members
is for women here to be
dice, who made the
Captain Cook, in his for-
thern continent, came
and friend. He brought
lately married, which
adopted by former voy-
to the society of Artoo-
er this man must have
st mentioned cannot be

riter took pains to de-
tly custom imputed to
ons without regard to
ided? And he solemnly
encies he ever saw prac-
the licentiousness of our
rd to character, made no
y force, what they were
voluntary consent of the
ch several of the were
therefore, that not the
nd among these people,
l other people are natu-
rious calumny, not war-
ed by the general prac-
of individuals among
our journalist, have one
eapolitans and Maltese,
n, and that is, their fish-
g themselves in the day-
es while they fish, which
n the cocoa-nut.

ee with Towha respecting
ther by Omiah—Exhibition
the dead Body of a Chief—
Attention of Otoo to pre-
moke fight exhibited by two
y for the two Ships sailing
solemnity on the occasion—
age to the King of Great Bri-
teite—More particulars re-
ingly—Omiah's jealousy of
n the Island of Eimeo—Tan
Person—Preparations made
ken, and an expedition cre-
ve Goat restored—A descrip-
the Chiefs—Omiah's Eja-
and steps taken to enforce his
apons—Entertainments—In-
—Observations on the two
longing to the Marines in
s desert—The Chief's Son
ataves against the two Cap-
Discovery prepare for this

ced particularly, if it an-
that opinion we entertained
er such religious acts and
n our own country? We
celebration of the horrid ce-
of the extraordinary scene,
ents on the subject to Otoo,
quently, Captain Cook did
of it, in this conversation
the barbarity of the bloody
asonableness of it, alledging
of making the Eatooa proud
excite his vengeance; and
that

that, from this very circumstance, he concluded, their intended expedition against Maheine would be unsuccessful. This was proceeding to great lengths upon conjecture; but there was little danger of being mistaken; for respecting this war, three parties were formed in the island, one violent in its favour, another indifferent about it, and a third the avowed supporters of Maheine, and his cause. Under these circumstances, it was not probable that such a plan of military operations would be settled, as could insure success. Omiah acted as interpreter, in conveying the Captain's sentiments on this subject to Towha, and he supported his objections with such spirit, that the chief appeared to be extremely angry; especially, on being informed, that if he had taken away the life of a man in England, as he had done here, his rank would not have protected him from an ignominious death. Upon this he exclaimed, *maenol maenol (vile! vile!)* and would not hear a syllable more about it. Many of the natives were present at this debate; particularly the servants and attendants of Towha; and when Omiah mentioned the punishment that would be inflicted, in England, upon the greatest chief, if he dared to kill the meanest servant, they listened very attentively; and perhaps, on this subject, they thought differently from their master. Leaving Towha, we proceeded to Oparree, where Otoo solicited us to pass the night. We landed in the evening, and on our way to his habitation, had an opportunity of observing how these people amuse themselves in their private hours. We saw about a hundred of them sitting in a house, in the midst of whom were two women, and an old man behind each of them, beating gently on a drum, and the women, at intervals, singing with great softness and delicacy. The assembly were very attentive, and seemed, as it were, absorbed in the pleasure the music gave them; few of them taking any notice of us, and the performers never once ceased. When we arrived at Otoo's house it was almost dark. Here we were entertained with one of their public heevas, or plays, in which his three sisters represented principal characters. This they call a heeva raa, and no person is suffered to enter the house, or area, where it is exhibited. This is always the case, when the royal sisters are performers. There is a sameness in their drama, that admits of little or no variation, as, perhaps, to foreigners, who are unacquainted with the language and manners of a country, there may appear to be in every stage exhibition, wherever performed. Be that as it may, we now beheld a more numerous and brilliant company of performers assembled for our entertainment, than we had ever seen on any stage in the tropical islands before. On this occasion, the dresses were entirely new, and by far more elegant and picturesque than formerly; the number of dancers were increased; and they acquitted themselves in a very distinguished manner. Ten young ladies composed the first group, with their heads most magnificently ornamented with beads, red feathers, shells of the most beautiful colours, and wreathed with flowers in so elegant a style, as hardly to be excelled. A party of warriors were next introduced, dressed in their war habits, consisting, as has already been observed, of different coloured cloth, of their own manufacture, so ingeniously fashioned, and blended together with so much art, as, with the helmets that cover their heads, to fill the stage with men, of whose majestic figure it is not easy to conceive an idea. These were armed with spears, lances, and clubs; and exhibited all the forms of attack and defence, which are practised in real action. The principal performers were the king's brother, his three sisters, and we may add, a chief of a gigantic stature, who displayed such surprising grimaces and distortions of face and countenance, by way of provocation and challenge, as were not only laughable in some attitudes, but terrible in others. After these disappeared, the players came forward, and performed a more serious piece than we had yet seen, at which the natives sat graver and more composed than usual; though some comic interludes, wherein four men were performers, seemed to afford

greater entertainment to the numerous audience. The whole concluded with a dance of ten boys, dressed, in every respect like the girls in the first scene, with their hair flowing in ringlets down their shoulders, and their heads ornamented in a very beautiful style.

The next morning being the 3d, we proceeded to Matava, leaving Otoo at Oparree; but his mother, sisters, in short all the royal family, and many women, attended us on board, and Otoo followed a short time after. During our absence from the ships, the supply of fruit had been scanty, nor had they many visitors; but after our return we had plenty both of company and provisions. On the 4th a party of us, among whom was Otoo, dined ashore with Omiah, who had provided excellent fare, consisting of fish, fowls, pork, and puddings. Dinner being over, the Captain accompanied Otoo to his house, where he found all his servants very busy in getting a quantity of provisions ready. Among other articles was a large hog, which they killed in his presence. There was also a large pudding, the whole process of which the Captain saw. It was composed of bread fruit, plantains, taro, and pandanus nuts, each rasped, scraped, or beat up very fine, and baked by itself. A quantity of the juice of cocoa-nut-kernels was put into a large tray, or wooden vessel; in which the other articles from the oven were put, together with some hot stones, in order to make the contents simmer. Three or four persons were employed in stirring up the several ingredients, till they were perfectly incorporated, and the juice of the cocoa-nut was turned to oil; and, at last, the whole mass was nearly of the consistency of a hasty pudding. Some of these puddings are excellent, and few that we make in England equal them. This being made, and the hog baked, they, together with two living hogs, some bread-fruit, and cocoa-nuts, were sent on board the Resolution, followed by Otoo, and all the royal family.

Friday the 5th, in the evening, a young ram of the cape breed, and carefully brought up on board our ship, was killed by a dog; an accident the more regretted, by its being the only one we had of that kind, and one only of the English breed was now remaining. On the 7th, at the close of day, we exhibited some fireworks, before a vast concourse of people, many of whom were highly entertained, but the greater number were much terrified with the exhibition; inasmuch, that they could hardly be prevailed on to keep together, to the conclusion of the entertainment. A table socket was the last. It flew off the table, and dispersed the whole crowd in an instant; even the most resolute of them flew with the utmost precipitation. On Monday, the 8th, a party of us dined with Oedidee, who made the trip to the southward with Captain Cook, in his former voyage. Our table was furnished plentifully with fish of divers sorts, and pork. The hog, which weighed about thirty pounds, was alive, dressed, and on the table, within the hour. Soon after we had dined, Otoo came to us, and asked the Captain, if his belly was full? who answered in the affirmative. "Then come along with me," said Otoo. The Captain attended him to his father's, where he saw several people employed in dressing two girls, with fine cloth, after a very singular fashion. There were several pieces, one end of each was held over the heads of the girls, while the remainder was wrapped round their bodies under the arm-pits. The upper ends were then let fall, and hung in folds to the ground, over the other, so as to bear some resemblance to a circular hoop-petticoat: lastly, round the outside of all, were wrapped several pieces of cloth, of various colours, which considerably increased the size; it being five or six yards in circuit; and the weight of this singular attire was as much as the poor girls could well support. To each were hung two taa-meas, or breast-plates, in order to embellish the whole, and give it a picturesque appearance. Thus equipped, they were taken on board, together with several hogs, and a quantity of fruit, the whole being a present to our Commander from Otoo's father. Those who are dressed in this manner, are called atee; but, this ceremony is never performed, except

except where large presents of cloth are to be made. We never saw it practised upon any other occasion; but, both Captain Cook and Captain Clarke had cloth presented them afterwards wrapped round the bearers in the same manner. On the 9th, we received a present of five hogs, and some fruit, from Otoo; and one hog, and some fruit from each of his sisters. Other provisions were also in abundance; and great quantities of mackerel having been caught by the natives, for two or three days successively, some of them were sold at the tents, and in the ships; indeed, Otoo was equally attentive, to supply our wants, and contribute to our amusement. On the 10th he treated a party of us at Oparree with a play; in which his three sisters were again performers, having each of them new and very elegant dresses. This day Captain Cook went to see an embalmed corpse, near the residence of Otoo. On enquiry, it was found to be the remains of Tee, a chief well known to him, when he last visited this island. It was lying in an elegant toopapaoo, in all respects similar to that at Oheitepeha, in which the remains of Wahaiadooda are deposited. We found the body was under cover, within the toopapaoo, and wrapped up in cloth. At the Captain's desire, the person who had the care of it, brought it out, and placed it on a kind of pier, so as to allow a perfect view of it. The corpse having been thus exhibited, he ornamented the place with mats and cloths, disposed in such a manner as to produce a pleasing effect. The body was entire in every part; putrefaction seemed hardly to be begun; and not the least disagreeable smell proceeded from it; though this is one of the hottest climates, and Tee had been dead above four months. There was, indeed, a striking of the muscular parts and eyes, but the hair and nails were in their original state, and the several joints were pliable. On enquiry into the method of thus preserving their dead bodies, we were informed, that soon after they are dead, they are disembowelled, by drawing out the intestines, and other viscera; after which the whole cavity is stuffed with cloth; that, when any moisture appeared, it was immediately dried up, and the bodies rubbed all over with perfumed cocoa-nut oil, which, frequently repeated, preserved them several months; after which they moulder away gradually. Omiah told us, that the bodies of all their great men, who die a natural death, are thus preserved, and exposed to public view a considerable time after. At first, they are exhibited every five days, afterwards the intervals become greater, and at last they are seldom to be seen. In the evening we took leave of Otoo, and departed from Oparree.

On Friday the 12th, all the royal family, except the king himself, honoured us with a visit. The chief, they said, was gone to Attahooroo, to assist at another human sacrifice, sent from Tiaraboo, to be offered up at the Morai. This second instance, within so short a period, was a melancholy proof, that the victims of this bloody superstition are very numerous among this humane people. The Captain would have been present at this sacrifice also, had he been earlier informed of it, but now it was too late. For the same reason, he missed being at a public transaction, the preceding day, when the king, with great solemnity, restored to the adherents of the late king Tooraha, the lands and possessions, of which, after his death, they had been deprived. On the 13th Otoo returned from exercising his royal duties; and on the 14th, we were honoured with his company, when the two Captains, for the first time, mounted on horseback, and rode round the plain of Matavai, to the astonishment of a vast train of spectators, who gazed upon them with as much surprise as if they had been centaurs. Both the horse and mare were in good case, and looked extremely well. What the Captains had began was repeated daily, by one or other of our people; and yet the curiosity of the natives continued unabated. After they had seen and understood the use of these noble animals, they were exceedingly delighted with them; and we were of opinion, that they conveyed to them a better idea of the greatness of other nations, than all the novelties that had hitherto been carried among them. On the 15th,

Etary, or Olla, the god of Bolabola, removed from our neighbourhood to Oparree, attended by several sailing canoes. It was said, Otoo did not approve of his being so near our station, where his people could conveniently invade our property. Otoo, we acknowledge, took every prudent method to prevent thefts and robberies, and it was owing principally to his regulations that so few were committed. He had erected a small house or two behind our post, and two others near our tents, between the river and the sea. Some of his people kept watch continually at all those places; and as his father resided usually on Matavai Point, we were, in a manner, surrounded by them. They not only defended us in the night from thieves, but they had an opportunity of observing every thing that passed in the day, and were ready to receive contributions from such girls, as were privately connected with our people, which was usually done every morning; so that the measure he had taken to secure our safety, answered the more essential purpose of enlarging his own profits. Otoo acquainted Capt. Cook, that his presence was required at Oparree, where an audience was to be given to the great personage from Bolabola, and desired his company thither. The Captain consented readily, expecting to meet with something deserving of notice.

Accordingly, Tuesday the 16th, our party, among whom was Mr. Anderson, set out. Nothing, however, occurred, that was interesting or curious. Etary and his followers presented some coarse cloth, and hogs, to Otoo, with a set speech. After this, a consultation was held between them and some other chiefs, about their expedition to Eimeo. Etary, at first, disapproved of it; but his objections were, at length, over-ruled. It appeared, indeed, the next day, it was too late to deliberate on this business; for Towha, Putatou, and another chief, had already gone on the expedition, with the fleet of Attahooroo, and, in the evening, a messenger arrived with intelligence, that they had reached Eimeo; that there had been some skirmishes; but that the loss, or advantage, on either side, had been very inconsiderable. On the 18th, in the morning, Captain Cook, Mr. Anderson, and Omiah, went again to Oparree, accompanied by Otoo, taking with them the sheep which the Captain intended to leave upon the island. There were an English ram and ewe, and three Cape ewes, all which the Captain made a present of to Otoo. Each of the three cows had taken the bull; he therefore thought it advisable to divide them, and carry one part to Uitea. With this view he ordered them to be brought before him, and proposed to Etary, that if he would leave his Spanish bull with Otoo, he should have our English bull and one of the cows. To this proposal Etary, at first, started some objections; but, at last, agreed to it. However, as the cattle were putting into the boat, one of Etary's followers opposed the making any exchange whatever. Upon this, and the Captain suspecting, that Etary had agreed to the arrangement, for the present, only to please him, he dropped the idea of an exchange; and determined finally to leave them all with Otoo; whom he strictly enjoined not to suffer them to be removed from Oparree, till he should have got a stock of young ones; which he might then dispose of to his friends, or send to the neighbouring islands. This matter being settled, our gentlemen left Etary, and attended Otoo to another place, not far distant, where they found the servants of a chief, waiting with a hog, a pig, and a dog, a present from their master to the king. These were delivered, with the usual ceremonies, and an harangue, in which the speaker enquired after the health of Otoo, and of all his principal people. This compliment was re-echoed in the name of Otoo, by one of his ministers; and then the dispute with Eimeo was formally discussed. The deputies of the chief were advocates for prosecuting the war with vigour, advising Otoo to offer a human sacrifice on the occasion. Another chief, who constantly attended the person of Otoo, took the other side of the question, and supported his opinion against a war, with great strength of argument. Otoo received repeated messages from Towha, urging him to hasten to his assistance; and the

Captain was now convinced that he never entered heartily into the spirit of this war. Having dined with Otoo, our party returned to Matavai, leaving him at Oparree.

On Friday, the 19th, we were very sparingly supplied with fruit, as we had been the day before. Otoo being informed of this, he, and his brother, who had particularly attached himself to Captain Clerke, came from Oparree, with a large supply for both ships. Next day, the 20th, all the royal family came with presents, so that now we had more provisions than we could consume. Our water and wood having been already taken on board, nothing remained but to strike the tents, and bring off the things belonging to the officers and men who were stationed on shore; and the Commodore began to think of quitting the island, that he might have sufficient time for visiting others in the neighbourhood. We therefore removed our observatories and instruments from the shore, and bent the sails. Several of the sailors being very desirous to stay at Otaheite, Otoo interceded himself in their behalf, and endeavoured to prevail on Captain Cook to grant their request; but he rejected peremptorily every application of that kind, though often repeated; nor would he suffer any of the natives to enter on board, though many would gladly have accompanied us wherever we intended to sail, and that too after they were assured, that we never intended to visit their country any more. Some of the women also would have followed their Ehoonoas, or Pretanne husbands, could they have been permitted; but our Commander was equally averse to the taking any of the natives away, as to the leaving any of our own people behind. He was sensible, that when once cloyed with enjoyment, they would reciprocally pine for home, to which it would not be in their power to return; and that for a little present gratification, they would risk the happiness of the remaining part of their lives. The king, when he found he could not obtain his wishes in this respect, applied to Captain Cook for another favour, which was, to allow our carpenters to make him a chest, or press, to secure the treasures he had accumulated in presents: he even begged, that a bed might be placed in it, where he intended to sleep. This request the Captain readily granted; and while the workmen were employed, in making this uncommon piece of furniture, they were plentifully supplied with barbed hogs and such dainties as the country afforded, and were carefully attended and protected, that they did not lose so much as a single nail. It was some of these workmen that Otoo was so desirous to retain; but they were of too much consequence on board to be parted with, had there been no other motive for bringing them away; nor was Otoo much concerned about the departure of the rest. While he was constant in attending the operations of our carpenters, Omiah had frequent conferences with him, on the subject of his travels. He alluded to him more by the relation he gave of the magnificence of the Morais in Pretanne, than by all the wonders with which he had before surprized him. When he told him that the king's morai was open to all comers, and that the persons of the deceased kings were to be seen as perfect to appearance as when in the vigour of youth, he seemed to lament, that his date of existence was to be limited with his life; and that his remains were to perish, while his Morai preserved no memorial, that he had ever had a being. Omiah endeavoured to impress him with an idea of the magnificence of the tombs of the dead that were to be seen in the morais of Pretanne; but having nothing to compare them to, he was unable to make himself sufficiently understood; nor was he more successful in describing the solemn grandeur of the places of public worship, where the people assembled every seventh day, and at other stated times to offer up their prayers to the good spirit. Of the splendor of the theatres he could speak more intelligibly. When Omiah told Otoo of the magnitude of the palaces, and houses, in Pretanne; of their decorations and furniture; of the extent of their planta-

No. 60.

tions; and the multitude of living animals with which they were stocked; he listened to him with peculiar attention, as not doubting the truth of his relation; but when he attempted to describe the roads, and the rapidity with which people travel in carriages, drawn by four footed animals, he seemed all amazement; no child could ever express greater surprize at Gulliver's travelling to the moon on ganzas, than Otoo, when Omiah assured him, they could traverse an extent of ground equal to the whole length of the island of Otaheite, in a single day.

On Sunday the 21st, Otoo came on board, to inform us, that the war canoes of Matavai, and of three other districts, were going to join those belonging to Oparree, and that part of the island, where there would be a general review. The squadron of Matavai was soon in motion, and after parading for some time about the bay, assembled ashore near the middle of it. Captain Cook now went in his boat to take a survey of it. What they call their war canoes, which are those with flags whereon they fight, amount to about 60 in number; and there are nearly as many more of a smaller size. The Captain was ready to have attended them to Oparree; but the chiefs resolved that they would not move till the next day. This happened to be a fortunate delay; as it afforded him an opportunity of getting some insight into their manner of fighting. He therefore desired Otoo to give orders, that some of them should go through the necessary manoeuvres. Accordingly two of them were ordered out into the bay; in one of which Otoo, Captain Cook, and Mr. King embarked, and Omiah went on board the other. As soon as they had got sufficient sea-room, they faced, advanced, and retreated by turns, as quick as their rowers could paddle. In the mean time, the warriors on the flagges flourished their weapons, and played a variety of antic tricks, which could answer no other purpose than that of rousing their passions, to prepare them for the onset. Otoo stood by the side of one flagge, giving the necessary orders when to advance, and when to retreat. Great judgment, and a very quick eye seems to be requisite in this department, to seize every advantage, and to avoid every disadvantage. At length the two canoes closed flagge to flagge; and after a severe, though short conflict, all the troops on Otoo's flagge were supposed to be killed, and Omiah and his associates boarded them; when instantly Otoo, and the paddlers in his canoe, leaped into the sea, as it related to the necessity of preserving their lives by swimming. But, according to Omiah's representation of other naval engagements, it is not always conducted in this manner; for they sometimes join the two vessels together head to head, and fight till all the warriors on one side or the other are killed; yet this close combat is never practised, except when the contending parties are determined to conquer, or die. Indeed, in this instance, one or the other must inevitably happen; for they never give quarter, unless it be to reserve their prisoners for a more cruel death the day following. All the power and strength of the Society Islands lie solely in their navies. A general engagement on land we never heard of; and all their decisive actions are on the water. When the time and place of battle are fixed by both parties, the preceding day and night are spent in feasting and diversions. When the day dawns, they launch the canoes, make every necessary preparation, and with the day begin the battle; the fate of which, in general, decides the dispute. The vanquished endeavour to save themselves by a precipitate flight; and those who reach the shore fly, with their friends, to the mountains; for the victors, before their fury abates, spare neither the aged, women, nor children. They assemble the next day, at the Morai, to return thanks to the Eatoo for the victory, and offer there the slain and the prisoners, as sacrifices. A treaty is then set on foot; and the conquerors obtain usually their own terms; whereby large districts of land, and even whole islands, sometimes change their proprietors and masters. Omiah said he was once taken prisoner by the men of Bolabola, and

conducted

conducted to that island, where he, and many others would have suffered death the next day, had they not been fortunate enough to escape in the night.

When the mock-fight was concluded, Omiah put on his suit of armour, mounted a stage in one of the canoes, and, thus equipped, was paddled all along the shore of the bay, that every one might have a perfect view of him. His coat of mail, however, did not engage the attention of the multitude so much as was expected; the novelty being in a great degree lost upon some of them, who had seen it before; and there were others, who had conceived such a dislike to Omiah, from his folly and imprudence at this place, that they would hardly look at any thing that was exhibited by him, however singular and new. This day notice had been given to Otoo of our intentions to sail with the first fair wind; in consequence of which on the 22nd, in the morning, he came on board, desiring to know when we proposed to depart, and, at that time, expressed great concern at our sudden resolution. He brought with him hogs, fruit, and other valuable productions of the island. No people on earth could express their gratitude with more seeming sincerity and cordiality, than the king and his chiefs, for the presents they had received, nor were our commander and officers wanting in suitable returns. The Captain having heard of there being a good harbour at Eimeo, had informed Otoo and his party, that he would visit that island in his passage to Huahine; and they proposed now to accompany him, and that their fleet should sail, at the same time, to reinforce Towha. Being ready to take our departure, the Captain submitted to them the appointment of the day. The Wednesday following was fixed upon, when he was to receive on board Otoo, his father, mother, and the whole family. These points settled, Captain Cook proposed setting out immediately for Oparree, where all the fleet was to assemble this day, in order to be reviewed. But as he was getting into his boat, news arrived, that a treaty had been concluded between Towha and Maheine, and that Towha's fleet had returned to Attahooroo. From this unexpected event, the war canoes, instead of rendezvousing at Oparree, were ordered to their respective districts. Captain Cook, however, followed Otoo to Oparree, accompanied by Mr. King and Omiah. Soon after their arrival, a messenger from Eimeo made known the conditions of the peace, or rather truce, it being only for a limited time. The terms being disadvantageous to Otabeite, Otoo was censured severely, whose delay, it was said, in sending reinforcements, had obliged Towha to submit to a disgraceful accommodation. It was, at the same time, currently reported, that Towha, resenting the treatment he had received, had declared, that immediately after our departure, he would join his forces to those of Tiaraboo, and attack Otoo. This called upon the Captain to declare, that he was determined to espouse the interest of his friend; and that whoever presumed to attack him, by any combination of parties, should experience the weight of his displeasure, when he returned to that island. This declaration, probably, had the desired effect; for if Towha did entertain any such hostile intention at first, we heard no more of the report. Whappai, the father of Otoo, highly disapproved of the peace, and censured Towha for concluding it. This old chief wisely considered, that Captain Cook's going with them to Eimeo, might have been of singular service to their cause, though he should not take an active part in the quarrel. He therefore concluded, that Otoo had acted prudently in waiting for the Captain, though it prevented his giving that early assistance to Towha which he expected. While we were discoursing on this subject, a messenger arrived from Towha, desiring the attendance of Otoo the next day, at the morai in Attahooroo, to return thanks to the Eatooa for the peace he had concluded. Captain Cook's company was requested; but, being much out of order, chose to decline attending them. Desirous, however, of knowing what ceremony might be exhibited on such an occasion, he sent Mr. King and Omiah to observe the particulars, and returned on board, at-

tended by Otoo's mother, his three sisters, and several other women. At first the Captain imagined that this numerous train came into his boat, in order to get a passage to Matavai. But they assured him, they intended passing the night on board, for the purpose of curing the disorder he complained of; which was a rheumatic pain, extending from the hip to the foot. He accepted the friendly offer, had a bed prepared for them upon the cabin floor, and submitted himself to their directions. He was first desired to lie down among them; when all those who could get near him, began to squeeze him with both hands all over the body, but more particularly on the parts complained of, till they made his bones crack, and his flesh became almost a mummy. In short, after suffering this severe discipline, about a quarter of an hour, he was happy to get away from them. The operation, however, gave him immediate relief, and encouraged him to undergo a repetition of the same discipline, before he returned to bed; and it was so effectual, that he found himself pretty easy the whole night after. His female physicians, very obligingly repeated their prescription the next morning, before they left him, and again in the evening, when they returned; after which the cure being perfected, they took their leave of the Captain the following morning. This is called by the natives *romee*, an operation far exceeding that of the flesh-brush, or any external friction. It is universally practiced among these islanders. Captain Wallis, and his first Lieutenant, had the same operation performed upon them. If at any time, a person appears languid and tired, and sits down by any of them, they practice the *romee* upon his legs, and it always has an exceeding good effect.

On Thursday the 25th, Otoo, Mr. King, and Omiah, returned from Attahooroo; and Mr. King favoured us with a narrative of what he had seen to the following purport. "At sunset, we embarked in a canoe, and left Oparree. About nine o'clock, we landed at the extremity of Tettaha, which joins to Attahooroo. The meeting of Otoo and Towha, I expected would be interesting. Otoo, and his attendants, seated themselves on the beach, near the canoe in which Towha sat. He was then asleep; but being awakened, and Otoo's name mentioned to him, a plantain tree and dog were immediately laid at Otoo's feet; and several of Towha's people came and conversed with him. After I had been, for some time, seated close to Otoo, Towha neither stirring from his canoe, nor saying any thing to us, I repaired to him. He asked me, if Otoo was displeased with him? I answered no; that he was his *tai*; and that I was ordered to repair to Attahooroo, to let him know it. Omiah then entered into a long conversation with this chief, but I could not gather any information from him. On my returning to Otoo, he desired that I would go to eat, and then to sleep; in consequence of which Omiah and I left him. On my questioning Omiah on that head, he said, Towha was lame, and therefore could not stir; but that he and Otoo would soon converse in private. This was probably true; for those we left with Otoo came to us in a little time; and about ten minutes after, Otoo himself arrived, when we all went to sleep in his canoe. The next morning the *ava* was in great plenty. One man drank to such excess that he lost his senses, and appeared to be convulsed. He was held by two men, who busied themselves in plucking off his hair by the root. I left this spectacle to see a more affecting one: it was the meeting of Towha and his wife, with a young girl, who was said to be his daughter. After the ceremony of cutting their heads, and discharging plenty of blood and tears, they washed, embraced the chief, and appeared perfectly unconcerned. But the young girl's sufferings were not yet concluded, Terridiri (Obetea's son) arrived; and she, with great composure, repeated those ceremonies to him, which she had just performed on meeting her father. Towha having brought in a war canoe from Eimeo, I inquired if he had killed the people belonging to her, and was informed, that there was not a single person in her when she was captured. About ten o'clock we left Tettaha, and landed

close to the Morai of Attahoooo, early in the afternoon. Three canoes lay hauled upon the beach, opposite the Morai, having three hogs in each. We expected the solemnity would have been performed the same afternoon; but nothing was done, as neither Towha nor Potatou had joined us. A chief came from Eimeo with a small pig, and a plantain tree, which he placed at Otoo's feet. They conversed some time together, and the Eimeo chief often repeating the words warry, warry, "false." Otoo was probably relating to him what he had heard, and the other contradicted it. The next day, Towha and Potatou, with seven or eight large canoes, arrived, and landed near the Morai. Several plantain trees were brought to Otoo, on behalf of different chiefs. Towha remained in his canoe. The ceremony commenced, by the principal priest bringing out the Maro, wrapped up, and a bundle of a conic shape. These were placed at the head of what is supposed to be a grave. Then three priests sat down at the other end of the grave; having with them a plantain tree, a branch of some other kind of tree, and the sheath of the flower of the cocoa-nut. The priests separately repeated sentences, and, at intervals, two, sometimes three, chanted a melancholy lay, very little attended to by the natives. This kind of recitative continued near an hour. Then, after a short prayer, the chief priest uncovered the maro, and Otoo rose up, wrapping it about him, and holding in his hand a bunch, composed of the red feathers of the tropic bird, mixed with other blackish feathers. He stood opposite the three priests, who continued their prayers for about ten minutes; when a man rising suddenly from the crowd, said something ending with heiva! and the people echoed back to him three times Earee! The company then repaired to the opposite side of a large pile of stones, where is the king's morai, which is not much unlike a large grave. Here the same ceremony was again performed, and ended with three cheers. The maro was now wrapped up, and ornamented by the addition of a small piece of red feathers. The people proceeded to a large hut, near the Morai, where they seated themselves in solemn order. An oration was made by a man of Tetraboo, which ended in about ten minutes. He was followed by another of Attahoooo; Potatou spoke next, and with much more fluency and grace than any of them. Tooteo, Otoo's orator exhibited after him, and then a man from Eimeo. Some other speeches were made, but not attended to. Omiah said, that the substance of their speeches recommended friendship, and not fighting; but as many of the speakers expressed themselves with great warmth, there were, perhaps, some recriminations, and protestations of their future good intentions. In the midst of their harangues, a man of Attahoooo rose up, having a sling fastened to his waist, and a large stone upon his shoulder. After parading for about fifteen minutes in the open space, and chanting a few short sentences, he threw the stone down. This stone, together with a plantain tree that lay at Otoo's feet, were, at the conclusion of the speeches, carried to the Morai, one of the priests, and Otoo with him, saying something on the occasion. Returning to Oparree, the sea breeze having set in, we were obliged to land, and had a pleasant walk from Tetraboo to Oparree. A tree, with two large bundles of dried leaves suspended upon it, pointed out the boundary of the two districts. We were accompanied by the man who had performed the ceremony of the stone and sling. With him Otoo's father held a long conversation, and appeared extremely angry. He was enraged, as I understood, at the part which Towha had taken in the Eimeo business.

From what can be judged of this solemnity, as related from Mr. King, it had not been only a thanksgiving, as Omiah told us, but rather a confirmation of the treaty. The grave, mentioned by Mr. King, appears to be the very spot where the celebration of the rites began, when the human sacrifice was offered, at which Captain Cook was present, and before which the victim was laid. It is here also that they first invest their kings with the Maro. Omiah, who had

seen the ceremony when Otoo was made king, described the whole solemnity when we were here; which is nearly the same as that now related by Mr. King, though perhaps upon a very different occasion. The plantain-tree is always the first thing introduced in all their religious ceremonies, as well as in all their public and private debates, and probably on many other occasions. While Towha was at Eimeo, he sent one or more messengers to Otoo every day. Every messenger, at all times, carried a young plantain-tree in his hand, which he laid at the feet of Otoo; before he mentioned his errand, after which he seated himself before him and related particulars. When two men are in such high dispute that blows are expected to ensue, if one should lay a plantain-tree before the other, they both become cool, and proceed in the argument without further animosity. It is indeed the olive branch of these people upon all occasions.

On Friday, the 26th, all the women were ordered to be put on shore; a talk not easily effected, most of them being very unwilling to depart: nor was it of much consequence, as they found means to follow us afterwards to Huahine, Ulitea, and the other Society Isles; nor did they leave us till our final departure to our northern discoveries, never more to return. Our friends knowing, by this, we were upon the point of sailing, they all paid us a visit, and brought more hogs than we wanted; for we had sufficient for our present use, and had no salt left to preserve any. On the 27th, Captain Cook accompanied Otoo to Oparree; and before he left it, took a survey of the cattle and poultry which he had consigned to his friend's care. Every thing was in a promising way, and properly attended to. Two of the geese, and two of the ducks were sitting; but the pea-hen and turkey-hen had neither of them begun to lay. He took four goats from Otoo, two of which he intended to leave at Ulitea, and to reserve two for the use of any other islands he might touch at in his passage to the north. On the 28th, Otoo came on board, and informed Captain Cook that he had got a canoe, which he desired he would take with him as a present from the Earee of Otahete to the Eareerabic no Piranne. The Captain was highly pleased with Otoo for this mark of his gratitude. At first, the Captain supposed it to have been a model of one of their vessels of war, but it proved to be a small wvabah, about 16 feet long. It was double, and probably had been built for the purpose, and was decorated with carved work, like their canoes in general. It being too large to take on board, the Captain could only thank him for his good intention, but the king would have been much better pleased if his present could have been accepted. The following circumstance, concerning Otoo, will shew that the people of this island are capable of much address and art to accomplish their purposes. Among other things which the Captain had at different times given to this chief, was a spying-glass: having been two or three days possessed of it, he perhaps grew tired of his glass, or discovered that it could not be of any use to him; he therefore carried it privately to Captain Clerke, telling him, that he had got a present for him, in return for his friendship, which he supposed would be agreeable: "but (says Otoo) Toote must not be informed of this, because he wanted it, and I refused to let him have it." Accordingly, he put the glass into Captain Clerke's hands, assuring him, at the same time, that he came honestly by it. Captain Clerke, at first, wished to be excused from accepting it; but Otoo insisted that he should, and left it with him. A few days after, he reminded Captain Clerke of the glass; who, though he did not wish to have it, was yet desirous of obliging Otoo; and thinking a few axes would be most acceptable, produced four, and offered them in exchange. Otoo immediately exclaimed, "Toote offered me five for it." Well, says Captain Clerke, if that be the case, you shall not be a loser by your friendship for me; there are six axes for you. He readily accepted them, but again desired that Captain Cook might not be made acquainted with the transaction.

By calms, and gentle breezes from the west, we were detained here some time longer than we expected, during which the ships were crowded with our friends, and surrounded with canoes, for none of them would quit the place till we departed. At length, on Monday the 29th, at three o'clock P. M. the wind came at east, and we weighed anchor. When the Resolution and Discovery were under sail, to oblige Otoo, and to gratify the curiosity of his people, we fired several guns; after which all our friends, except his majesty, and two or three more, took leave of us with such lively marks of sorrow and affection, as sufficiently testified how much they regretted our departure. Otoo being desirous of seeing the Resolution sail, she made a sally out to sea, and then in again immediately, when the king took his last farewell, and went ashore in his canoe. It was strictly enjoined to the Captain by Otoo, to request, in his name, the Eareerahie no Pictanne, to send him by the next ship some red feathers, and the birds which produce them, also axes, half a dozen muskets, powder and shot, and by no means to forget horses. When these people make us a present, it is customary for them to let us know what they expect in return; and we find it convenient to gratify them, by which means our presents come dearer to us than what we obtain by barter. But being sometimes pressed by occasional scarcity, we could have recourse to our friends for a supply, as a present, when we could not get it by any other method. Upon the whole, therefore, this way of traffic was full as advantageous to us as to the natives. In general, we paid for each lot or separate article as we received them, except in our intercourse with Otoo. His presents were so numerous, that no account was kept between him and the Captain. Whatever this chief desired, if it could be spared, was never denied him, and the Captain always found him moderate in his demands.

If the Captain could have prevailed on Omiah to fix his residence at Otaheite, we should not have quitted the island so soon as we did; for there was not even a probability of our being better supplied with provisions elsewhere, than we continued to be here, even at the time of our leaving it. Besides, such a friendship and confidence subsisted between us and the inhabitants, as could hardly be expected at any other place; and it was rather extraordinary, had never once been interrupted or suspended by any accident or misunderstanding, nor had there been a theft committed worthy of notice. It is probable, however, that their regularity of conduct resulted from their fear of interrupting a traffic which might procure them a greater share of our commodities than they could obtain by plunder or pilfering. This point, indeed, was settled, in some degree, at the first interview with their chiefs, after our arrival; for the Commodore declared then to the natives, in the most decisive terms, that he would not suffer them to rob us, as they had formerly done. Omiah was singularly useful in this business, being instructed by the Captain to point out to them the happy consequences of their honest conduct, and the fatal mischiefs that must attend a deviation from it. But the chiefs have it not always in their power to prevent thefts; they are often robbed themselves; and complain of it as the worst of evils. The most valuable things that Otoo received from us, were left in the Captain's possession till the day before we sailed, the king declaring that they could be no where so safe. From the acquisition of new riches, the inducements to pilfering must certainly have increased, and the chiefs are sensible of this, from their being so extremely desirous of having chests. The few that the Spaniards left among them are highly prized; and they are continually asking us for some. We have already mentioned one having been made for Otoo, at his request, the dimensions of which were eight feet in length, five in breadth, and about three in depth. Locks and bolts are not considered as a sufficient security, but it must be large enough for two people to sleep upon, and consequently guard it in the night.

It may appear extraordinary, that we could not get

any distinct account of the time when the Spaniards arrived, the time they staid, and when they departed. The more we made enquiry into this matter, the more we were convinced of the incapability of most of these people to remember, calculate, or note the time, when past events happened, especially if for a longer period than eighteen or twenty months. It however appeared, from the inscription upon the cross, and by the information of the natives, that two ships came to Oheitepcha Bay, in 1774, not long after Captain Cook left Matavai, which was in May the same year. The live stock they left here consisted of one bull, some goats, dogs, and dogs, and the male of another animal, which we were afterwards informed was a ram, at this time at Bolabola. The hogs, being large, have already much improved the breed originally found by us upon the island; and, on our arrival, were very numerous. Goats are also in plenty, there being hardly a chief without them. The dogs that the Spaniards put ashore are of two or three sorts; had they all been hanged, instead of being left upon the island, it would have been better for the natives. A young ram we had fell a victim to one of these animals. Four Spaniards remained on shore when their ships left the island, two of whom were priests, one a servant, and the other was much esteemed among the natives, who distinguish him by the name of Mateema. He seems to have so far studied their language, as to have been able to speak it; and to have been indefatigable in impressing in the minds of the Otaheiteans exalted ideas of the greatness of the Spanish nation, and inducing them to think meanly of that of the English. He even assured them, that we no longer existed as an independent nation; that Pictanne was but a small island, which they had entirely destroyed; and as to Captain Cook, they had met with him at sea, and with a few shot had sent his ship, and every soul in her, to the bottom, so that his visiting Otaheite was, of course, at this time, very unexpected. Many other improbabilities were propagated by this Spaniard, and believed by the inhabitants; but Captain Cook's returning to Otaheite was considered as a complete refutation of all that Mateema had advanced. With what views the priests remained cannot easily be conceived. If it was their intention to convert the natives to the catholic faith, they certainly have not succeeded in a single instance. It does not appear, indeed, that they ever attempted it; for the natives say, they never conversed with them, either on this or any other subject. The priests resided the whole time at Oheitepcha; but Mateema roved about continually, visiting many parts of the island. After he and his companions had staid ten months, two ships arriving at Otaheite took them aboard, and sailed in five days. Whatever design the Spaniards might have had upon this island, their hasty departure shews they have now laid it aside. They endeavoured to make the natives believe, that they intended to return, and would bring with them hawks, all kinds of animals, and men and women who were to settle on the island. Otoo, when he mentioned this to Captain Cook, added, that if the Spaniards should return, he would not permit them to enter Matavai fort, which, he said, was ours. The idea pleased him; but he did not consider that an attempt to complete it would deprive him of his kingdom, and his people of their liberty. Though this shews how easily a settlement might be effected at Otaheite, it is hoped that such an event might never take place. Our occasional visits may have been of service to its inhabitants, but (considering how most European establishments among Indian nations are conducted) a permanent settlement at this island would, probably, give them just cause to lament that our ships had ever discovered it. Indeed, a measure of this kind can hardly ever be seriously thought of, as it can neither answer the purposes of public ambition, nor of private avarice.

We have already observed, that Captain Cook received a visit from one of the two natives of this island who had been taken to Lima by the Spaniards. It is somewhat remarkable that we never saw him afterwards,

afterwards, especially as the Captain received him with uncommon civility. It was supposed that Omiah, from motives of jealousy, had kept him from the Captain, he being a traveller, who, in some degree, might vie with himself. Our touching at Teneriffe was a lucky circumstance for Omiah, who prided himself in having visited a place belonging to Spain, as well as this man. Captain Clerke, who had seen the other traveller, spoke of him as a low fellow, a little out of his senses; and his own countrymen entertained the same opinion of him. In short, those two adventurers seemed to be held in little or no esteem. They had not been so fortunate, it is true, as to return home with such valuable property as had been bellowed upon Omiah, whose advantages are so great from having been at England, that if he should sink into his original state of indolence, he has only himself to blame for it; and we are inclined to think this will be the consequence of his indifferet behaviour. Some time before, the Captain, his unchangeable friend and patron, had made up a suit of colours for him, but he considered them as too valuable to be used at this time, and therefore patched up a parcel of flags and pendants, to the number of ten or a dozen, which he spread on different parts of his canoe. This, as might be expected, drew a great number of people to look at her. He had completely stocked himself with cloth and cocoa-nut oil, which are better and more plentiful at Otaheite than at any of the Society Isles, inasmuch, that they are considered as articles of trade. Omiah would not have behaved so inconsiderately as he did in many instances, had it not been for his sister and brother-in-law, who, together with a few select companions, engrossed him to themselves, in order to strip him of every article he possessed: and they would certainly have succeeded, if Captain Cook had not taken the most useful articles of his property into his possession. However, Omiah would not have been saved from ruin, if the Captain had permitted these relations and friends of his to have accompanied him to his intended place of settlement at Huahine. This, indeed, was their intention, but our Commodore disappointed their farther views of plunder, by forbidding them to appear at Huahine, while he continued at the Society Islands, and they knew him well enough not to comply.

On Tuesday, the 30th, having sailed from Otaheite, we continued our course under double reefed topsails, and stood for the north end of the island of Eimeo. Omiah, in his canoe, arrived there before us, and endeavoured, by taking some necessary measures, to shew us the best anchoring place. We were not, however, without pilots, having several natives of Otaheite on board, and among them not a few women. Unwilling to rely wholly on these guides, two boats were sent to examine the harbour, when, observing the signal made for safe anchorage, we stood in with both the ships close up to the head of the inlet, where we cast anchor in ten fathoms water, over a bottom of soft mud, and moored with a hawser fast to the shore. The name of this harbour is Taloo. It is situated on the north side of the island, and in the district of Oboonohoo, or Poonohoo, and runs above two miles between the hills, S. or S. by E. It is not inferior to any harbour that we have met with in this ocean, both for security and goodness of bottom. It has also this singular advantage, that a ship can sail in and out with the reigning trade wind. Several rivers fall into it, one of which is so considerable, as to admit boats a quarter of a mile up, where the water is perfectly fresh. The banks, on the sides of this stream, are covered with what the natives call the Pooroo-tree, on which they set no value, as it serves only for firing: so that wood and water may be procured here with great facility. The harbour of Parowroah, on the same side of the island, is about two miles to the eastward, and is much larger within than that of Taloo; but the opening in the reef lies to leeward of the harbour, and is considerably narrower. There are two or three more harbours on the south side of the island, but they are not in considerable as those we have already mentioned.

No. 61.

We were received by the natives of Eimeo with every mark of hospitality, great numbers of whom came aboard the ships, but from mere motives of curiosity, for they brought nothing with them for the purposes of barter.

On Wednesday the 1st of October, our live stock was landed, our carpenters sent out to cut wood, and our purveyors to collect hogs. Here we found Omiah, who, on his arrival, had been diverting himself and the natives with his feats of arms, and had raised their curiosity to a very high degree, by acquainting them with our intention of paying them a visit, as no European ship had ever anchored at their island before. The next day, being the 2nd, several canoes arrived, from distant parts, bringing with them a copious supply of bread-fruit, cocoa-nuts, and a few hogs, which were exchanged for beads, nails, and hatchets; red feathers being not so much demanded here as at Otaheite. This day, in the morning, Captain Cook received a visit from Maheine, the chief of the island. He approached the ship with as great caution and deliberation, as if he apprehended mischief from us, knowing us to be friends of the Otaheiteans; for these people have no idea that we can be in friendship with any one, without adopting his cause against his enemies. This chief was accompanied by his wife, who, we are told, is sister to Oamo, of Otaheite, whose death we heard of while we remained at this island. Captain Cook made them presents of such articles as seemed most to strike their fancy; and after staying about half an hour, they went on shore; soon after they returned with a large hog, presenting it as a return for the Captain's favour; but he made them an additional gift to the full value of it; after which they went on board the Discovery to visit Captain Clerke. Maheine, supported with a few adherents, has made himself, in some degree, independent of Otaheite. He is between forty and fifty years of age, and is bald-headed, a circumstance rather uncommon, in these islands, at that age. He seemed ashamed of showing his head, and wore a kind of turban to conceal it. Whether they considered this deficiency of hair disgraceful, or whether they supposed we considered it in that light, is not easy to determine; the latter, however, appears the most probable, from the circumstance of their having seen us shave the head of one of the natives, whom we detected stealing. They naturally concluded, therefore, that this was a kind of punishment inflicted by us upon all thieves; and some of our gentlemen, whose heads were but thinly covered with hair, were violently suspected by them of being tetos. Towards the evening, Captain Cook and Omiah mounted on horseback, and rode along the shore. Omiah having forbid the natives to follow us, our train was not very numerous; the fear of giving offence having got the better of their curiosity. The fleet of Towha had been stationed in this harbour, and though the war was but of short duration, the marks of its devastation were very numerous and every where conspicuous. The trees had lost all their fruit, and the houses in the neighbourhood had been burnt, or otherwise destroyed.

On Monday the 6th, we hauled the ship off into the stream, intending to put to sea the next day, but the following disagreeable incident prevented it. We had, in the morning, sent our goats ashore to graze; and, in the evening, the natives contrived to steal one of them, notwithstanding two men had been appointed to look after them. This was a considerable loss, as it interfered with the Captain's views of stocking other islands with those animals: he, therefore, was determined, if possible, to recover it. On the 7th, we received intelligence, that it had been conveyed to Maheine, who was, at that time, at Parowroah harbour. Two elderly men offered their services to conduct any of our people to him, in order to bring back the goat. The Captain, therefore, dispatched some of our people in a boat, charged with a message to that chief, and insisted on both the goat and the thief being immediately given up. Maheine had, only the day before, requested the Commodore to give him two goats; but, as there were none

6 R

of

of these animals at some other islands, he refused to gratify him. Willing, however, to oblige him in this particular, he desired an Otahite chief, then present, to request of Otoo, in his name, to convey two goats to Maheine, and to ensure his compliance, sent him, by the same chief, a quantity of red feathers, equal in value to the two goats that were required. The Commodore expected that Maheine, and all the other chiefs of the island, would have been perfectly satisfied with this arrangement; but he was mistaken, as the event clearly proves. Little suspecting that any one would presume to steal a second, while the necessary measures were taken to recover the first, the goats were again put ashore this morning; and a boat, as usual, was sent for them in the evening. While our people were getting them into the boat, one was conveyed away undiscovered. As it was missed immediately, we expected to recover it without much trouble, as it could not have been carried to any considerable distance. Several of the natives set out after it, different ways; for they all endeavoured to persuade us, that it must have strayed into the woods; not one of them admitting that it was stolen. We were, however, convinced of the contrary, when we found not one of the pursuers returned: their intention being only to amuse us, till their prize was safely deposited; and night coming on prevented all farther search. At this instant, the boat returned with the other goat, and one of the persons who had purloined it. The next morning being Wednesday the 8th, most of the natives were moved off. They had carried with them a corpse that lay on a toopoo, opposite the ship; and Maheine, we were informed, had retired, to the remotest part of the island: It now plainly appeared, that a regular plan had been projected to steal what the Commodore had refused to give; and that, having restored one, they were determined not to part with the other, which was a female, and with kid; and the Commodore was equally resolved to have it back again: he, therefore, applied to the two elderly men, who had been instrumental in recovering the first, who informed him that this had been taken to a place on the south side of the island, called Watea, by Hamoa, who was the chief of that district; but that it would be delivered up, if we sent and demanded it. They shewed a willingness to conduct some of our people to the spot; but finding that a boat might go and return in one day, one was immediately dispatched with two of our officers, Mr. Roberts, and Mr. Shuttleworth, one to remain with the boat, if she could not get to the place, while the other went with the guides, accompanied by some of our people. The boat returned in the evening, when we were informed by the officers, that, after proceeding in the boat as far as rocks and shoals would permit, Mr. Shuttleworth landed; and, attended with two marines, and one of the guides, went to the house of Hamoa, at Watea, where, for some time, they were amused by the natives, who pretended they had sent for the goat, and that it would soon be produced. But as it did not arrive, and night approaching, Mr. Shuttleworth resolved to give over the fruitless search, and return to his boat. Captain Cook now lamented that he had proceeded so far in the business, seeing he could not retreat with credit, nor without giving encouragement to other islanders to rob us with impunity. Upon consulting with Omiah, and the two old men, they advised us, without hesitation, to advance up the country with a party of men, and shoot every person they should meet with. The Captain did not approve of the bloody part of this counsel; nevertheless, early the next morning, being the 9th, he set out with thirty-five of our people, accompanied by Omiah, one of the old men, and three attendants. Lieutenant Williamson was also ordered round the western part of the island, with three armed boats, to meet us. We had no sooner landed, than the few remaining natives fled before us. The first person we met with on our march, was in a kind of perilous situation; for Omiah, the instant he beheld him, asked Captain Cook if he should shoot him; so fully was he persuaded, that the advice given us was imme-

diately to be carried into execution; but the Captain gave orders both to him and our guide, to let it be made known, that it was not our intention to destroy a single native. These joyful tidings soon circulated, and prevented the flight of the inhabitants. Ascending the ridge of hills, on our road to Watea, we were informed that the goat had been carried the same way; and could hardly have passed the hills: we therefore marched up in great silence: expecting to surprize the party who were bearing off the prize; but, when we arrived at the uppermost plantation, we were told, that the animal we were in search of, had, indeed, been kept there the first night, but, the next morning, was conveyed to Watea. We made no further enquiry, till we came within sight of Watea, where we were directed to Hamoa's house by some people, who also informed us, that the goat was there. We fully expected to obtain it on our arrival; but, having reached the house, the people there denied that they had ever seen it, or knew any thing about it. Hamoa himself appeared, and expressed himself to the same effect. On our first coming to Watea, several men were seen, running to and fro in the woods, with clubs and darts in their hands; and Omiah, who had ran towards them, was assaulted with stones; hence it appeared, that they intended to oppose any attempt that we might be induced to make; but, on seeing the strength of our party, had given up the design: we were confirmed in this opinion, by observing, that all their houses were empty. After having collected a few of the natives together, Omiah was directed to expostulate with them on the absurdity of their conduct, and to let them know, we had received sufficient information that the goat was in their possession; and that, if it was not without delay delivered up, we should burn all their houses and canoes; yet, notwithstanding this expostulation, they persisted in their denial of having any knowledge of it: in consequence of which we set fire to eight of their houses, and three war canoes, all which were presently consumed. We afterwards marched off to join the boats, at that time eight miles from us: and, in our rout, burnt six other war canoes, without any opposition; on the contrary, many of the natives assisted us, perhaps, more from fear than any other motive. Omiah, who was at some distance before us, came back with information, that a number of men were assembled to attack us. We prepared to receive them; but, instead of enemies, they were petitioners, with plantain trees in their hands, which they laid down before us, entreating the Commodore to spare a canoe that lay upon the spot, which he readily complied with. About four o'clock in the afternoon, we arrived at Wharratade, where our boats were waiting for us. This district belongs to Tarataboonou; but this chief, together with the other principal people of the place, had fled to the hills; though we made no attack on their property, they being in amity with Otoo. Here we remained about an hour, in order to rest ourselves, and afterwards set out for the ships, where we arrived at eight o'clock in the evening; but no tidings of the goat had, at that time, been received; and, of course the operations of the day had been ineffectual.

On Friday the 10th, early in the morning, a messenger was sent off to Maheine, charged with this peremptory resolution of the Captain, that if he persisted in his refusal to deliver up the goat, a single canoe should not be left upon the island; and that hostilities should never cease, while the stolen animal remained in his possession. That the messenger might perceive the Captain was in earnest, he ordered the carpenter, in his presence, to break up three canoes that lay at the head of the harbour; and, by his order, the planks were taken on board, to serve as materials to build a house for Omiah, at the place where he intended to fix his residence. From hence, our Commander, properly attended, went to the next harbour, where he destroyed eight more canoes, and returned on board about seven in the evening. On his arrival, he was informed, that the goat had been returned half an hour before; and it appeared from good intelligence, that it came from the very place, where the inhabitants, the day before,

declared they knew nothing about it; but, from the message delivered to the chief in the morning, he perceived that the Captain was not to be trifled with. Thus ended this troublesome and unfortunate business, equally to be regretted by the natives, and by Captain Cook. He was grieved to reflect, that, after refusing to assist his friends at Otaheite, in the invasion of this island, he should so soon be obliged to engage in hostilities against its inhabitants; which, perhaps, were more injurious to them, than Towha's expedition. In a memorandum of occurrences, penned by one of our officers, we find a much less favourable account of this affair than the above; the circumstances are thus related by that gentleman.

"On the 2nd of October, Maheine, accompanied by other chiefs came on board the Discovery, with large hogs by way of presents; and were presented in return with axes, hatchets, looking-glasses, &c. our purveyors were likewise much gratified, by the success they met with in marketing; purchasing the largest hogs for the merest trifles: as for instance, a hog of 300 weight, for twelve red catthers, and so in proportion. But this friendly intercourse was soon changed to a scene of desolation, that no injury we received from the pilfering disposition of the inhabitants could justify. The people had brought us every thing their island afforded, and had left it to the generosity of the purchasers to give, in return, whatever they pleased: but unfortunately a goat from our live stock was missing. It had been secretly conveyed away in the night, from the pastures in which they were placed to feed, notwithstanding the vigilance of the guard appointed to look after them. With the loss of this animal, no doubt a great prize to the thief, the Earee of the island was made acquainted by Captain Cook, and a peremptory requisition made to have it restored, on pain of having his country laid waste, his shipping destroyed, and himself personally punished for the crime of his subject. The king promised his assistance, and required time for enquiry; but, as soon as he was set at liberty, he absconded, and was no more seen. The goat being still missing, and no means used for recovering and restoring it, a party from both ships, with the marines in a body, were ordered out, to carry the threats of our commander into execution. For three days, successively, they continued their devastations, burning and destroying 200 of the best houses of the inhabitants, and as many of their large war canoes; at the same time, cutting down their fruit trees, and destroying their plantations. The natives who lived at a distance, hearing of the havoc that was made near the bay, filled their canoes with stones and sunk them, with a view to their preservation; but that availed them nothing; for the Captain ordered boats to be manned and armed; the canoes that were sunk to be weighed up and destroyed; in short, a general desolation to be carried through the whole island, should the goat be still withheld. Add to this, that two young natives of quality being found on board our ship, were made prisoners, and told they were to be put to death, if the goat should not be restored within a certain time. The youths protested their own innocence, and disclaimed all knowledge of the guilty persons; notwithstanding which, every preparation was apparently made for putting them both to death. Large ropes were carried upon the main deck, and made fast fore and aft; axes, chains, &c. were placed upon the quarter deck, in sight of the young men, whose terrors were increased by the information of Omiah, who gave them to understand that, by all these solemn preparations, their doom was finally determined. Under these gloomy apprehensions the poor youths remained till the 9th, when, about three in the afternoon, a body of between 50 and 60 natives were seen from the ship hastening to the harbour, who, when they came near, held up the goat in their arms, in captures that they had found it, and that it was still alive. The joy of the imprisoned young men is not to be exprest; and when they were released, instead of shewing any signs of resentment, they were ready to fall down and worship their deliverer.

It can scarce be credited, when the devastation ceased, how soon the injury they had suffered was forgotten, and provisions again brought to market, as if no violence had ever been committed by us; only the Earee of the island never made his appearance. All this while numbers of the inhabitants of Otaheite, were witnesses of the severity with which this theft was punished; but it seemed to make no unfavourable impression upon them; for they continued their good offices as long as we remained in the Society isles.

On Saturday the 11th, our intercourse with the natives was renewed; several canoes bringing bread fruit and cocoa-nuts to the ships; whence our Commanded concluded, they were conscious of having merited the treatment they had received; and that the cause of his displeasure being now removed, they apprehended no further mischief. Being now about to take our departure from Eimeo, we shall first just remark, that there is very little difference between the produce of this island, and that of Otaheite; but the difference in their women is remarkable. Those of Eimeo have a dark hue, are low in stature, and have forbidding features. We would observe farther, the appearance of Eimeo bears not the least resemblance to that of Otaheite. The latter being a hilly country, has little low land, except some deep valleys, and a flat border that almost surrounds it near the sea. Eimeo has steep rugged hills, running in different directions, leaving large valleys, and gently rising grounds about their sides. The hills, though rocky, are generally covered with trees almost to the tops. At the bottom of the harbour of Taloo, the ground generally rises to the foot of the hills; but the flat border on the sides, becomes quite steep at a small distance from the sea. This produces a prospect superior to any thing we saw at Otaheite. In the low grounds, the soil is a yellowish stiff mould; on the lower hills it is blacker, and more loose; and the stone which composes the hills, is of a bluish colour, interspersed with some particles of glimmer. Near the place where our ships were stationed, are two large stones, concerning which some superstitious notions are entertained by the natives. They consider them as brother and sister; that they are Eatooas, or divinities; and that they came from Ulitea, by some supernatural means.

Having procured, at this island, a large quantity of fire-wood, an article we could not supply ourselves with at Matavai, there being not a tree but what is useful to the inhabitants, and likewise a number of hogs, bread-fruit, and cocoa-nuts, at nine o'clock A. M. we weighed, having a fine breeze down the harbour; but it was so faint and variable, that we were not out at sea before noon, at which time we directed our course to Huahine; Omiah having previously set sail before us. In the night, the weather being hazy, he lost sight of the ship and fired his gun, which was answered by the Resolution. On Sunday the 12th, we came in sight of Huahine, and, at noon, anchored at the northern entrance of Owharre Harbour, situated on the west side of the island. Omiah, in his canoe, entered the harbour just before us, but did not land; and though many of his countrymen crowded to see him, he did not take much notice of them. Great numbers also came off to the ships, inasmuch that we were greatly incommoded by them. Our passengers immediately informed them of our transactions at Eimeo, multiplying, by ten at least, the number of canoes and houses that we had destroyed. Captain Cook was not much displeas'd at their giving this exaggerated account, as he found that it made a considerable impression upon all who heard it; so that he had hopes it would induce the natives of this island to treat him in a better manner than they had done in his former visit. The next morning, which was the 13th, all the principal people of the island came to our ships. This was just what our Commodore wished, as it was now high time to settle Omiah, and he supposed that the presence of these chiefs would enable him to effect it in a satisfactory manner. But Omiah now seemed inclined to establish himself at Ulitea; and if he and Captain Cook could have agreed with respect

respect to the mode of accomplishing that design, the latter would have consented to adopt it. His father had been deprived by the inhabitants of Bolobola, when they subdued Ulietea, of some land in that island; and the Captain hoped he should be able to get it restored to the son without difficulty. For this purpose, it was necessary that Omiah should be upon friendly terms with those who had become masters of the island; but he would not listen to any such proposal, and was vain enough to imagine that the Captain would make use of force to reinstate him in his forfeited lands. This prepossession preventing his being fixed at Ulietea, the Captain began to consider Huaheine as the more proper place, and therefore determined to avail himself of the presence of the chief men of that island, and propose the affair to them.

The ships were no less crowded with hogs, than with chiefs, the former being poured in upon us faster than the butchers and salters could dispatch them. Indeed, for several days after our arrival, some hundreds, great and small, were brought on board; and, if any were refused, they were thrown into the boats, and left behind. Bread-fruit, bananas, plantains, coconuts, and yams, were brought in the same plentiful proportions, and purchased for trifles. At Otaheite we had heard, that our old friend Oree was no longer the chief of Huaheine, and that at this time he resided at Ulietea. Indeed he never had been more than regent during the minority of Taireetareca, the present Earee rahie; but he did not give up the regency till he was compelled thereunto. His two sons, Opoony and Towha, were the first who paid us a visit, coming on board before the ship was well in the harbour, and bringing with them a present; for which they received, in return, red feathers, &c. Red feathers are here, as at Otaheite, a very remarkable commodity, with which the seamen made purchases of cloth, and other manufactures of the island: those who were followed by their misters from Otaheite, kept separate tables for them, at a small expence; while the misters catered and cooked for their mates, who feasted every day on barbecued pigs, stewed fowls, roasted bread-fruit, and a variety of other delicacies, purchased by the ladies for the mercer trifles. Among our foremast-men were many who laid in store of these good things for their support, in case of being reduced to short allowance; and they had reason, afterwards, to console themselves on their provident care.

The Captain now, after the hurry of business in the morning was over, prepared to make a visit in form to Taireetareca, the Earee rahie, or present reigning king of the island. Omiah, who was to accompany him, dressed himself very properly on the occasion, and provided a handsome present for the chief himself, and another for his Eatooa. Their landing drew most of the visitors from the ships, who, with many others, assembled in a large house. The concourse of people became very great, the major part of whom seemed stouter and larger than those of Otaheite; and the number of men who appeared to be of consequence was also much greater, in proportion to the extent of the island. The Captain waited some time for the king; but when he appeared, we found his presence might have been dispensed with, as his age did not exceed ten years. Omiah, who stood at a little distance from the circle of great men, began with making his offering to the gods, which consisted of cloth, red feathers, &c. Another offering succeeded, which was to be given to the gods by the young chief; and after that, several other tufts of red feathers were presented. The different articles were laid before a priest, being each of them delivered with a kind of prayer, which was spoken by one of Omiah's friends, though in a great measure dictated by himself. In these orations he did not forget his friends in England, nor those who had conducted him safe back to his native country. The Earee rahie no Pretanne, the Earl of Sandwich, Toote (Captain Cooke), Tatee (Captain Clerke), were mentioned in every one of them. These offerings and prayers being ended, the priest took each of the articles

in order, and, after repeating a concluding prayer, sent every one of them to the Moral. After the performance of these religious rites, Omiah seated himself by the Captain, who bestowed a present on the young prince, and received another in return. Some arrangements were next agreed upon, relative to the mode of carrying on the intercourse between us and the natives; to whom the Captain pointed out the mischievous consequences that would attend their plundering us, as on former occasions. The establishment of Omiah was then proposed to this assembly of chiefs. They were informed, that we had conveyed him into England, where he was well received by the great King of Pretanne, and his Earees; and had been treated, during his whole stay, with all the marks of regard and affection; that he had been brought back again, and enriched with a variety of articles, which, it was hoped, would be highly beneficial to his countrymen; and that, besides the two horses which were to continue with him, many other new and useful animals had been left at Otaheite, which would speedily multiply, and furnish a sufficient number for the use of all the neighbouring islands. The Captain then gave them to understand, it was his earnest request that they would give his friend, Omiah, a piece of land, upon which he might build a house, and raise provisions for himself and family; adding, that if he could not obtain this at Huaheine, either by donation or purchase, he was resolved to carry him to Ulietea, and settle him there. We observed that this conclusion seemed to gain the approbation of all the chiefs; and the reason was not less obvious. Omiah had vainly flattered himself, that the Captain would use force in restoring him to his father's possessions, in Ulietea; and he had talked at random, on this subject, among some chiefs, at this meeting, who now expected that they should be assisted by us in an invasion of Ulietea, and driving the Bolabolans out of that island. It being proper, therefore, that they should be undeceived in this particular, the Captain, with this view, signified to them, in the most decisive manner, that he would neither give them any assistance in such an enterprize, nor even suffer it to be put in execution, while he remained in their seas; and that, if Omiah established himself in Ulietea, he should be introduced as a friend, and not forced upon the people of Bolobola as their conqueror. This peremptory declaration immediately gave a new turn to the sentiments of the council; one of whom expressed himself to this effect: that the whole island of Huaheine, and whatever it contained, were Captain Cook's, and therefore he might dispose of what portion he pleased to his friend; but, though Omiah seemed much pleased at hearing this, to make an offer of what it would be improper to accept, the Captain considered as offering nothing; he for this reason desired them to mark out the particular spot, and likewise the exact quantity of land, which they intended to grant for the settlement. Upon this, some chiefs, who had retired from the assembly, were sent for; and, after a short consultation, the Commodore's request was unanimously complied with, and the ground immediately fixed upon, adjoining to the house where the present meeting was held. It extended along the shore of the harbour, about 200 yards; its depth, to the bottom of the hill, was somewhat more; and a proportionable part of the hill was comprehended in the grant.

This affair being settled, on Saturday, the 18th, a tent was pitched on shore; a post established, and the observatories erected. As this was one of the most plentiful of the Society Isles, it was proposed to make some stay here, in order to careen the ships, and to lay in provisions for future use. This was the more necessary, as we were to sail to countries wholly unknown, where it was uncertain what accommodations we might meet with, or to what difficulties we might be subject. The beds and furniture of every kind were therefore unladen, and every crevice of the ships examined, scraped, washed with vinegar, and smoked. While this last operation was performing, the lower port-holes were

ing a concluding prayer, the Moral: After the perites, Omiah seated himself a present on the young in return. Some ar-upon, relative to the mode of life between us and the main pointed out the mis-would attend their plun-gions. The establishment to this assembly of chiefs. e had conveyed him into it received by the great Earees; and had been ay, with all the marks of he had been brought back variety of articles, which, ly beneficial to his coun- e two horses which were other new and useful an-ite, which would speedily lent number for the use of The Captain then gave earnest request that they h, a piece of land, upon se, and raise provisions for that if he could not obtain donation or purchase, he o Ulitea, and settle him o his conclusion seemed the chiefs; and the reason iah had vainly flattered uld use force in restoring, in Ulitea; and he had ict, among some chiefs, xpected that they should on of Ulitea, and driv- island. It being proper, undeceiv'd in this par- view, signified to them, r, that he would neither ch an enterprize, nor even on, while he remained in he established himself in ced as a friend, and not abola as their conqueror. Immediately gave a new e council; one of whom st: that the whole island contained, were Captain re dispose of what portion t, though Omiah seemed is, to make an offer of to accept, the Captain ng: he for this reason particular spot, and like-), which they intended to Upon this, some chiefs, nly, were sent for; and e Commodore's request ith, and the ground im- g to the house where the extended along the shore ards; its depth, to the what more; and a pro- as comprehended in the

were left open, for the rats to make their escape; in short, a thorough revision was directed to be made of every thing on board, as well to cleanse the furniture from vermin, as to remove the danger of infection from putrid air, generated by a perpetual succession of multitudes of people, between decks, ever since our arrival at Otaheite. The sick were, at the same time, landed for the benefit of the air, and every means used to recover, and to preserve them in health when recovered. Among the sick was Captain Cook himself, for whose recovery the crews of both ships were under much concern, as the success of the voyage was thought in a great measure to depend upon his care and conduct. By the doctor's advice, he was prevailed upon to sleep on shore; where he was assiduously attended, night and day, by the surgeons of both ships, who watched with him alternately, till he was out of danger. As soon as he was able, he rode out every day with Omiah on horseback, followed by the natives, who, attracted by the novelty of the sight, flocked from the remotest parts of the island to be spectators. We also during our stay in this harbour, carried the bread on shore to clear it of vermin. The number of cock-roaches that infested the ship at this time is almost incredible. The damage we sustained by them was very considerable; and every attempt to destroy them proved fruitless. If any kind of food was exposed for a few minutes, it was covered with these noxious insects, who soon pierced it full of holes, so that it resembled a honeycomb. They proved particularly destructive to birds which had been stuffed for curiosities, and were so fond of ink, that they cut out the writing on the labels fastened to different articles; and the only thing that preserved books from their ravages, was the closeness of their binding, which prevented these voracious destroyers from insinuating themselves between the leaves. According to Mr. Anderson, they were of two sorts, the *Blatta orientalis*, and *germanica*. The former had been carried home in the *Resolution*, in her last voyage, where they withstood the severity of the winter, in 1776, though she was in dock all the time. The latter had only made their appearance since our leaving New Zealand; but had increased so fast, that they now got even into our rigging; so that when a sail was loosened thousands of them fell upon the decks. Though the *orientalis* were in infinite numbers, they seldom came out but in the night, when they made a particular noise in crawling about; and, besides their disagreeable appearance, they did great mischief to our bread, which dainty feeders would have ill-relished, being fo bespattered with their excrement.

The carpenters and caulkers had no sooner completed their business on board, than they were ordered on shore to erect a house for Omiah, wherein he might secure the various European commodities that he had in his possession: at the same time, others of our people were employed in making a garden for his use, planting vines, shaddocks, melons, pine-apples, and the seeds of various kinds of vegetables; all which were in a flourishing state before our departure from the island. Omiah began now to pay a serious attention to his own affairs, and heartily repented of his ill-judged prodigality at Otaheite. Here he found a brother, a sister, and a brother-in-law, the sister having been married: these did not plunder him, as his other relations had lately done; it appeared, however, that though they had too much honesty and good-nature to do him any injury, yet, they were of too little consequence in the island, to do him any real services, having neither authority nor influence to protect his property or his person. Thus circumstanced, he ran great risk of being stripped of every thing he had received from his generous benefactors, as soon as he should cease to be within the reach of our powerful protection. He was now on the point of being placed in a very singular situation, that of the only rich man in the kingdom and community of which he was to be a member; and being master of an accumulated quantity of a species of treasure, which his countrymen could not create by

any art or industry of their own, it was natural, therefore, to imagine, that while all were desirous of sharing this envied wealth, all would be ready to join in attempts to strip its sole proprietor. As the most likely means of preventing this, Captain Cook advised him to distribute some of his moveables among two or three of the principal chiefs; who, on being thus gratified, might be induced to favour him with their patronage, and shield him from the injuries of others. Omiah promised to follow this advice, and we heard, before we sailed, this prudent step had been taken. The Captain, however, not confiding wholly in the operations of gratitude, had recourse to the more forcible and effectual motive of intimidation, taking every opportunity of notifying to the inhabitants, that it was his intention to make another visit to their island, after having been absent the usual time; and that if he did not find his friend in the same state of security in which he should leave him at present, all those who had been his enemies might expect to become the objects of his resentment. This menacing declaration will, probably, have some effect; for our successive visits of late years have induced these islanders to believe, that our ships are to return at certain periods; and while they continue to entertain such a notion, which the Captain thought a fair stratagem to confirm, Omiah has some prospect of being suffered to thrive upon his new plantation.

On Wednesday, the 22d, the intercourse of trade and friendly offices, between us and the inhabitants of Huahine, was interrupted; for, in the evening, one of the latter found means to get into Mr. Bayley's observatory, and carry off a sextant, unobserved. Captain Cook was no sooner informed of this theft, than he went ashore, and desired Omiah to apply to the chiefs, to procure restitution. He accordingly made application to them, but they took no steps towards recovering the instrument, being more attentive to a heave, that was then exhibiting, till the Captain ordered the phenomena to cease. Being now convinced he was mistaken, they began to make some enquiry after the delinquent, who was sitting, in the midst of them, with such marks of unconcern, that the Captain was in great doubt of his being guilty, particularly as he denied it. Omiah assisting him this was the case, he was sent on board the *Resolution*, and put in irons. This raised an universal tumult among the natives, and the whole body died with precipitation. The patient being examined by Omiah, was with some difficulty brought to a vessel where he had concealed the sextant, and it was brought back unharmed the next morning. After this, the natives recovered from their consternation, and began to gather about us as usual. As the thief appeared to be a blameless villain, the Commodore punished him with greater severity than he had ever done any former culprit; for, besides having his head and beard shaved, he ordered both his ears to be cut off, and his eye-brows to be need, than which no punishment could have subjected him to greater disgrace. In this bleeding condition he was sent on shore, and exposed as a spectacle to intimidate the people from meddling with what was not their own. The natives looked with horror upon the man, and it was easy to perceive that this act gave them general disgust; even Omiah was affected, though he endeavoured to justify it, by telling his friends, that if such a crime had been committed in the country where he had been, the thief would have been sentenced to lose his life. But, how well soever he might carry off the matter, he dreaded the consequences to himself, which, in part, appeared in a few days, and were probably more severely felt by him, soon after we were gone.

Saturday, the 25th, a general alarm was spread, occasioned by a report, that one of our goats had been stolen by the above-mentioned thief; and though, upon examination, we found every thing safe in that quarter, yet it appeared, that he had destroyed and carried off from Omiah's grounds, several vines and cabbage plants; that he had publicly threatened to put him to death, and to set fire to his house, as soon as

we should quit this place. To prevent his doing any further mischief, the Captain ordered him to be seized, and confined again on board the ship, with a view of carrying him off the island; and this intention seemed to give general satisfaction to all the chiefs. He was a native of Bolabola; but there were too many of the people here ready to co-operate with him in all his designs. We had, indeed, always met with more troublesome people in Huaheine, than in any other of the adjacent islands; and it was only from fear, and the want of proper opportunities, that induced them to behave better now. Anarchy and confusion seemed to prevail among them. Their Earec rahie, as we have already observed, was but a child; and we did not observe, that there was one individual, or any set of men, who held the reins of government for him; so that whenever any misunderstanding occurred between us, we never knew, with sufficient precision, to whom it was necessary to apply, in order to effect an accommodation, or procure redress. On Thursday, the 30th, early in the morning, our prisoner, the Bolabola-man, found means to escape from his confinement, and out of the ship, carrying with him the shackle of the bilboe-bolt that had been put about his leg, which was taken from him as soon as he arrived on shore, by one of the chiefs, and given to Omiah, who quickly came on board, to inform the Captain, that his mortal enemy was again let loose upon him. We found, upon enquiry, that the sentry placed over the prisoner, and even the whole watch in that part of the ship where he was confined, having fallen asleep, he seized the favourable opportunity, took the key of the irons out of the drawer into which he had seen it put, and set himself at liberty. This escape convinced the Commodore, that his people had been very remiss in their night-duty; which rendered it necessary to chastise those who were now in fault, and to establish some new regulations that might prevent similar negligence in future. We were pleased at hearing, afterwards, that the fellow who escaped, had gone over to Ulitea; but it was thought by some, he only intended to conceal himself till our departure, when he would revenge the indignity we had treated him with, by open or secret attacks upon Omiah. The house of this great man being now nearly finished, many of his moveables were carried ashore. Among other articles was a box of toys, which greatly pleased the gazing multitude: but as to his plates, dishes, drinking mugs, glasses, and the whole train of household apparatus, scarce one of his countrymen would even look at them. Omiah himself began to think, that they would be of no service to him; that a baked hog was more savory than a boiled one; that a plantain leaf made as good a dish or plate as pewter; and that a cocoa-nut shell was as convenient a goblet as one of our mugs. He therefore disposed of most of these articles of English furniture among the crew of our ships; and received from them, in return, hatchets, and other iron implements, which had a more intrinsic value in this part of the world. Among the numerous presents bestowed upon him in England, fireworks had not been omitted; some of which we exhibited in the evening of the 28th, before a great number of people, who beheld them with a mixture of pleasure and fear. Those that remained were put in order, and left with Omiah, pursuant to their original destination.

We now began to make preparations for our departure from Huaheine, and got every thing off from the shore this evening, except a goat big with kid, a horse and a mare, which were left in the possession of Omiah, who was now to be finally separated from us. We gave him also a boar, and two sows, of the English breed; and he had got two sows of his own. The horse had covered the mare during our continuance at Otaheite; so that the introduction of a breed of horses into these islands, has probably succeeded, by this valuable present. With regard to Omiah's domestic establishment, he had procured at Otaheite, four or five toutsou or people of the lower class; the two young New Zealanders remained with him, and his brother, with some others, joined him; so that his family now consisted of ten or

eleven persons: if that can be justly denominated a family, to which not one female belonged. The house which our people erected for him was 24 feet by 18, and ten feet high: it was composed of boards, which were the spoils of our military operations at Eimeo, and in the construction of it, as few nails as possible were used, lest an inducement should arise, from a desire of iron, to pull it down. It was agreed upon, that, immediately after our departure, he should erect a spacious house, after the fashion of his own country; one end of which was to be brought over that we had built, so as entirely to enclose it for greater security. In this work, some of the chiefs of the island promised to contribute their assistance; and if the intended building should cover the ground which was marked out for it, few of the houses in Huaheine will exceed it in magnitude. Omiah's European weapons consisted of a bowing piece, two pair of pistols, several fowls, cutlasses, a musket, bayonet, and a cartouch box. After he had got on shore whatever belonged to him, he invited several times the two captains, and most of the officers of both ships to dine with him; on which occasions his table was plentifully spread with the best provisions that the island could afford. Omiah, thus powerfully supported, went through the fatigues of the day better than could have been expected from the despondency that appeared in his countenance, when first the company began to assemble. Perhaps his awkward situation, between half English and half Indian preparations, might contribute not a little to embarrass him; for having never before made an entertainment himself, though he had been a partaker at many both in England and in the islands, he was yet at a loss to conduct himself properly to so many guests, all of them superior to himself in point of rank, though he might be said to be superior, in point of fortune, to most of the chiefs present. Nothing, however, was wanting to impress the inhabitants with an opinion of Omiah's consequence. The drums, trumpets, bagpipes, hautboys, flutes, violins, in short, the whole band of music attended, and took it by turns to play while dinner was getting ready; and when the company were seated, the whole band joined in full concert, to the admiration of crowds of the inhabitants, who were assembled round the house on this occasion. The dinner consisted, as usual, of the various productions of the island; barbecued hogs, fowls dressed, some after the manner of the country, and others after the English fashion, with plenty of wine and other liquors, with which two or three of the chiefs made very free. Dinner over, heevas and fire-works succeeded, and when night approached, the multitudes that attended us spectators dispersed, without the least disorder. Before we set sail, the Commodore caused the following inscription to be cut in the front of Omiah's house;

Georgius tertius, Rex, 2 Novembris, 1777.

Naves } *Resolution, Jac. Cook, Pr.*
Discovery, Car. Clerke, Pr.

November 2nd, on Sunday, at four o'clock P. M. we took the advantage of an easterly breeze, and sailed out of Owharre harbour. While here, we had procured more than 400 hogs, many of them large. Though it had been found in former voyages, that most of them which were carried to sea alive refused to eat, and consequently were soon killed, yet we resolved to make one experiment more; and by procuring large quantities of yams, and other roots, on which they were accustomed to feed on shore, we ventured to take a few in each ship; and for this purpose our carpenters had prepared styes for their reception in those parts where they might remain cool. Most of our friends, natives of Huaheine, continued on board till our vessels were under sail; when the Captain, to gratify their curiosity, ordered five of the great guns to be fired. Then they all left us, except Omiah, who remained till we were out at sea. We had come to sail by a hawser fastened to the shore, and in casting the ship, parted, being cut by the rocks, and its outer end was left behind: it therefore became necessary to dispatch a boat to bring it on shore. In
 this

fully denominated a fa-
 belonged. The house
 him was 24 feet by 18,
 posed of boards, when
 ry operations at Eimeo,
 as few nails as possible
 should arise, from a de-
 was agreed upon, that
 e, he should erect a spa-
 of his own country; one
 ight over that we had
 t for greater security. In
 of the island promised to
 d if the intended build-
 igh was marked out for
 heine will exceed it in
 ry weapons consisted of
 pistols, several swords,
 and a cartouch box. After
 belonged to him, he in-
 ptains, and most of the
 with him; on which oc-
 ily spread with the bet-
 ld afford. Omiah, thus
 ough the fatigues of the
 en expected from the de-
 countenance, when first
 e. Perhaps his awkward
 th and half Indian pro-
 not a little to embarrass
 made an entertainment
 partaker at many both in
 was yet at a loss to con-
 many guests, all of them
 rank, though he might
 t of fortune, to most of
 however, was wanting
 h an opinion of Omiah's
 pumps, bagpipes, haur-
 he whole band of music
 to play while dinner was
 mpany were seated. The
 ert, to the admiration of
 no were assembled round
 The dinner consisted, as
 ons of the island, barba-
 after the manner of the
 English fashion, with
 with which two or three
 Dinner over, he was and
 night approached, the
 ctors dispersed, with-
 we set sail, the Comma-
 eption to be cut in the

Novembris, 1777.
 Jac. Cook, Pr.
 Car. Clarke, Pr.

at four o'clock P.M.
 ily breeze, and failed
 here, we had procured
 them large. Though
 ages, that most of them
 etused to ear, and con-
 e resolved to make one
 uring large quantities
 hich they were accus-
 tured to take a few in
 ur carpenters had pre-
 in those parts where
 ur friends, natives of
 ur vessels were under
 their curiosity, ordered
 . Then they all left us,
 ll we were out at sea.
 fastened to the shore,
 being cut by the rocks,
 it therefore became
 bring it on shore. In
 this

this boat Omiah went ashore, and took a very affec-
 tionate and final leave of the Captain, never to see him
 more. He had endeavoured to prevail on Captain
 Cook to let him return to England, which made his
 parting with him and our officers the more affecting.
 If tears could have prevailed on our commander to let
 him return, Omiah's eyes were never dry; and if the
 tenderest supplications of a dutiful son to an obdurate
 father could have made any impression, Omiah hung
 round his neck in all the seeming agony of a child try-
 ing to melt the heart of a reluctant parent. He twined
 his arms round him with the ardour of inviolable friend-
 ship, till Captain Cook, unable any longer to contain
 himself, broke from him, and retired to his cabin, to
 indulge that natural sympathy which he could not res-
 sist, leaving Omiah to dry up his tears, and compose
 himself on the quarter deck. On his return, he rea-
 soned with his friend, upon the impropriety of his re-
 quest; reminding him of his anxieties while in Eng-
 land, lest he should never more have been permitted to
 return home; and now that he had been restored to his
 friends and country, at a great expence to his royal
 master, it was childish to entertain a notion of being
 carried back. Omiah renewed his tears and said, he
 had indeed wished to see his country and friends; but
 having seen them he was contented, and would never
 long for home again. Captain Cook assured him of his
 best wishes, but his instructions must be obeyed,
 which were to leave him with his friends. Such was
 the parting scene between Omiah and his patron; nor
 were the two New Zealand boys under less concern to
 leave us than Omiah. They had already learned to
 speak English enough to express their hopes and their
 fears. They hoped to have gone along with the ships,
 and cried bitterly when they understood they were to
 be left behind. Thence arose a new scene between
 Omiah and his servants, that, had not the officers on the
 quarter deck interposed, might have ended unfortu-
 nately for the former; for they refused to quit the ship,
 till they were compelled to it by force, which would
 have been no easy matter, the eldest, near sixteen, be-
 ing of an athletic make; and the youngest, about ele-
 ven, a giant of his age. They were both tractable and
 obliging, till they found they were to be left at Hua-
 heine, but knowing this at our departure from that
 place, they grew desperate till subdued. They disco-
 vered dispositions the very reverse of the islanders,
 among whom they were destined to abide during the
 remainder of their lives; and, instead of a mean, timid
 submission, they shewed a manly determined resolution
 not to be subdued, though overcome; and ready, if
 there had been a possibility to succeed, to have made a
 second or even third attempt to have regained their li-
 berty. We could never learn Captain Cook's reason,
 for refusing to take on board some of those gallant
 youths from New Zealand, who, no doubt, would have
 made useful hands in the high latitudes we were about
 to explore, and would besides have been living exhibi-
 tions of a people, whose portraits have been imperfectly
 depicted even by our best draughtsmen. There is a
 dauntless fierceness in the eyes and countenance of a
 New Zealand warrior, which the pencil of the most
 eminent artist cannot imitate; and we lament the non-
 importation of a native from every climate, where na-
 ture had marked a visible distinction in the characters
 of person and mind. Having bid farewell to Omiah,
 he was accompanied by Mr. King in the boat, who in-
 formed us, he had wept all the time he was going
 ashore.

Though we had now, to our great satisfaction, brought
 Omiah safe back to the very spot from whence he was
 taken, it is probable we left him in a situation less de-
 sirable than that which he was in before his connection
 with us: not that, having tasted the comforts of civili-
 zed life, he must become more wretched from being
 obliged to relinquish all thoughts of continuing them,
 but merely because the advantages he received from us,
 have placed him in a more hazardous situation, with re-
 spect to his personal safety. From being greatly ca-
 ressed in England, he had lost sight of his primary con-

dition, and did not consider in what manner his ac-
 quisitions, either of knowledge, or of wealth, would
 be estimated by his countrymen, at his return; which
 were the only things whereby he could recommend him-
 self to them now, more than before, and on which he
 could lay the foundation either of his future greatness
 or happiness. He appeared to have, in some measure,
 forgotten their customs in this respect, and even to have
 mistaken their genius; otherwise we must have been
 convinced of the extreme difficulty he would find in
 getting himself admitted as a man of rank, where
 there is scarcely a single instance of a person's being
 raised from an inferior station even by the greatest mer-
 rit. Rank seems to be the foundation of all power and
 distinction here, and is so pertinaciously adhered to,
 that, unless a person has some degree of it, he will be
 contemned and hated, if he pretends to exercise any
 authority. This was really the case, in some degree,
 with Omiah; though his countrymen were rather cau-
 tious in expressing their sentiments while we continued
 among them. Nevertheless, had he made a proper
 use of the presents he brought with him from Great
 Britain, this, with the knowledge he had gained by tra-
 velling, might have enabled him to have formed the
 most advantageous connections: but he exhibited too
 many proofs of a weak inattention to this obvious
 means of promoting his interest. He had formed
 schemes of a higher nature, perhaps, with more truth,
 it may be said, meaner; for revenge, rather than a de-
 sire of greatness, appeared to influence him from the
 beginning. His father was, certainly, a man of con-
 siderable property in Ulieeta, when that island was sub-
 dued by the inhabitants of Bolabola, and with many
 others, fled for refuge to Huaheine, where he died, and
 left Omiah, with several other children, who thus be-
 came entirely dependent. In this situation Captain
 Furneaux took him up, and brought him to England.
 Whether he expected, from the treatment he there met
 with, that any assistance would be afforded him against
 the enemies of his father and his country; or whether
 he had the vanity to suppose, that his own superiority of
 knowledge, and personal courage, would be sufficient
 to dispossess the conquerors of Ulieeta, is uncertain;
 but, from the very commencement of the voyage, this
 was his constant topic. He would not pay any attention
 to our remonstrances on such an inconsiderate determi-
 nation, but was displeased, whenever more reasonable
 counsels were proposed for his benefit. Nay, he was so
 ridiculously attached to his favourite scheme, that he
 affected to believe the Bolabolans would certainly quit
 the conquered island, as soon as they should have in-
 telligence of his arrival in Otaheite. As we proceeded,
 however, on our voyage, he began to perceive his er-
 ror; and, by the time of our arrival at the Friendly
 Islands, had such apprehensions of an unfavourable re-
 ception in his own country, that he was inclined to have
 remained at Tongataboo, under the protection of his
 friend Feenou. At these islands he squandered away a
 considerable part of his European treasure; and he was
 equally imprudent at Otaheite, till Captain Cook put
 a stop to his profusion. He also formed such improper
 connections there, that Otoo, though at first disposed to
 countenance him, afterwards expressed openly his dis-
 approbation of his conduct. He might, however, have
 recovered the favour of that chief, and have settled, to
 great advantage, in Otaheite, as he had formerly lived
 some years there, and was now honoured with the no-
 tice of Towha, whose valuable present of a large double
 canoe has been already mentioned. But he continued
 undetermined to the last, and probably would not have
 adopted the plan of settlement in Huaheine, if Captain
 Cook had not so positively refused to employ force in
 restoring him to the possession of his father's property.
 Omiah's greatest danger, in his present situation, will
 arise from the very imprudent declarations of his an-
 tipathy to the Bolabolans; for those people, from mo-
 tives of jealousy, will undoubtedly endeavour to render
 him obnoxious to the inhabitants of Huaheine; and as
 they are now at peace with that island, they may easily
 accomplish their designs. This circumstance he might
 wish

with great ease, have avoided; for they were not only free from any aversion to him, but the old chief, who is reputed by the natives of the Society Islands, to be a priest, or god, even offered to reinstate him in his father's lands: but he peremptorily refused this; and, to the very last, continued fixed in his resolution to embrace the first opportunity of satisfying his revenge in battle. To this he is perhaps not a little stimulated by the coat of mail he brought from England; clothed in which, and furnished with fire arms, he idly imagines he shall be invincible. But the defects in Omiah's character were considerably overbalanced by his great good nature, and docile tractable disposition. Captain Cook, during the whole time he was with him, seldom had reason to be seriously displeas'd with his general conduct. His grateful heart ever retained the highest sense of the favours conferred on him in England; nor will he ever be unmindful of those who honoured him while in that kingdom, with their friendship and protection. Though he had a tolerable share of understanding, he shew'd little application and perseverance in exerting it, so that he had but a general and imperfect knowledge of things. He was not a man much us'd to observation; otherwise, he might have convey'd to his native country many elegant amusements, and useful arts, to be found among the Friendly Islanders; but we never perceiv'd, that he endeavour'd to make himself master of any one of them. Such indifference is, indeed, the characteristic foible of his countrymen. Though they have been visit'd by Europeans, at times, for these ten years past, we could not discern the slightest vestige of any attempt to profit by this interview, nor have they hitherto imitat'd us but in very few respects. It must not, therefore, be expected, that Omiah will be able to introduce among them many arts and customs, or much improve those to which they have been familiarized by long habit. We trust, however, that he will exert his endeavours to bring to perfection the various fruits and vegetables that were planted by us, which will be no small acquisition. But the principal advantage these islands are likely to receive from the travels of Omiah, will probably arise from the animals that have been left upon them; which, perhaps, they never would have obtained, if he had not come over to England. When these multiply, Oaheite, and the Society Isles, will equal any place in the known world, with respect to provisions. Omiah's return, and the substantial proofs he had display'd of British liberality, encouraged many to offer themselves as volunteers to accompany us to Pretann; but our Commodore took every opportunity of expelling his fixed determination to reject all applications of that kind; and Omiah, who was ambitious of remaining the only great traveller among them, being afraid the Commodore might be prevail'd upon to place others in the same situation, as rivals, frequently remind'd him of the declaration of the Earl of Sandwich, that no others of his countrymen were to be carried to England. When the Captain was about to bid farewell to Omiah, he gave him his last lessons of instruction how to act: directing him at the same time to send his boat over to Ulitea, his native island, to let him know how the chiefs behav'd to him in the absence of the ships. If well, he was to send by the messenger three white beads: if they seiz'd upon his stock, or brok in upon his plantation, three red beads: or if things remain'd just as we left them, he was to send three spotted beads.

As soon as the boat, in which Omiah was convey'd ashore, had return'd, with the remainder of the hawker, to the ship, we kill'd her in, and stood over for Ulitea without delay. The next morning, being the 3d, we made sail round the southern end of that island, for the harbour of Ohamaneno. We met with light airs and calms alternately, so that at twelve o'clock we were still at the distance of a league from the mouth of the harbour; and while we were thus detain'd, Oreo, the chief of the island, with his son and son in law, came off to pay us a visit. All the boats were now hoist'd out, and sent a-head to tow, being assist'd by a slight southerly breeze. This soon sailing, and being

succeeded by an easterly one, which blew right out of the harbour, we were oblig'd to anchor at its entrance, about two o'clock P. M. and to warp in, which employ'd us till night. We were no sooner within the harbour, than our ships were surrounded with canoes, fill'd with the natives, who brought a supply of fruit and hogs, which they exchanged for our commodities. The following day, the Resolution was moor'd close to the northern shore, at the entrance of the harbour, and the Discovery along side the southern shore. In the mean time, Captain Cook return'd Oreo's visit, and present'd that chief with a red feather'd cap from Tongataboo, a shirt, a linen gown, and a few other things of less value. Oreo, and some of his friends, then accompanied him on board to dinner.

On Thursday the 6th, we land'd the remainder of our live stock, set up the observatories, and carry'd the necessary instruments on shore. The two succeeding days, Captain Cook, Mr. King, and Mr. Bayley, observ'd the sun's azimuths, both on shore and aboard, with all the compasses, in order to discover the variation. Nothing remarkable happen'd, till very early in the morning of Thursday, the 13th, when a sentinel, at the observatory, nam'd John Harrison, desert'd, taking with him his mulket and accoutrements. As soon as we had gain'd intelligence which way he was gone, a party was detach'd in search of him: but they return'd in the evening without success. The next day the Captain apply'd to the chief concern'g this affair, who promis'd to send a party of the Islanders after the fugitive, and gave us hopes that he should be brought back in the course of that day. This, however, did not happen; and we had reason to imagine, that the chief had taken no steps to find him. At this time a considerable number of the natives were about the ships, and several thefts committed, the consequences of which being apprehend'd by them, very few came to visit us the next morning. Oreo himself caught the alarm, and fled with his whole family. Captain Cook consider'd this as a good opportunity to insist upon their deliver'g up the deserter; and having heard he was at a place call'd Hamoa, situate on the other side of the island, he repair'd thither with two armed boats, attend'd by a native. In our way, we met with the chief, who embark'd with us. The Captain, with a few of his men, landing about a mile and a half from the spot, march'd up to it with great expedition, lest the flight of the boats should give the alarm, and allow the offender sufficient time to escape to the mountains. This precaution prov'd unnecessary; for the natives of that part of the island having obtain'd information of the Captain's approach, were prepar'd to deliver the deserter. He was found with his mulket lying before him, seated betwixt two women, who, the instant that the Captain enter'd the house, rose up to plead in his vindication. As such proceedings deserv'd to be discourag'd, the Captain with a stern look, bid them be gone; upon which they burst into tears, and retir'd. Paha, the chief of that district, now came with a sucking pig, and a plantain tree, which he was on the point of presenting to Captain Cook, as a peace-offering, who reject'd it; and having order'd the chief to quit his presence, embark'd with Harrison in one of the boats, and return'd to the ships. After this, hamoa was speedily restor'd. The delinquent made no other excuse for his conduct, than that the natives had entic'd him away; which perhaps was in a great measure true, as Paha, and the two women above-mention'd, had been at the ship the day before his desertion. As he had remain'd upon his post till within a few minutes of time in which he was to have been releas'd by another, the punishment he receiv'd was not very severe. About a fortnight after we had arriv'd at Ulitea, Omiah dispatch'd two of his people in a canoe, with intelligence, that he continu'd undisturb'd by the inhabitants of Huaheine, and that every thing succeed'd with him, except that his goat had died in kidding. This information was accompany'd with a request, that Captain Cook would send him another goat and also two axes. Pleas'd with this additional opportunity of

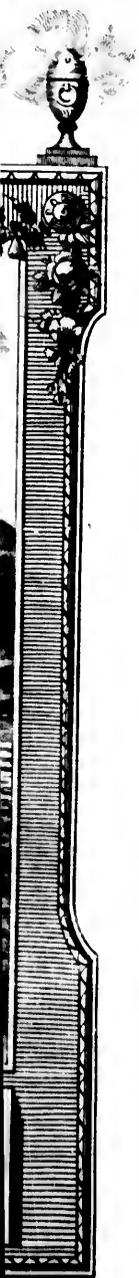
Engraved for PORTLOCK'S. *New* COLLECTION of VOYAGES & TRAVELS.

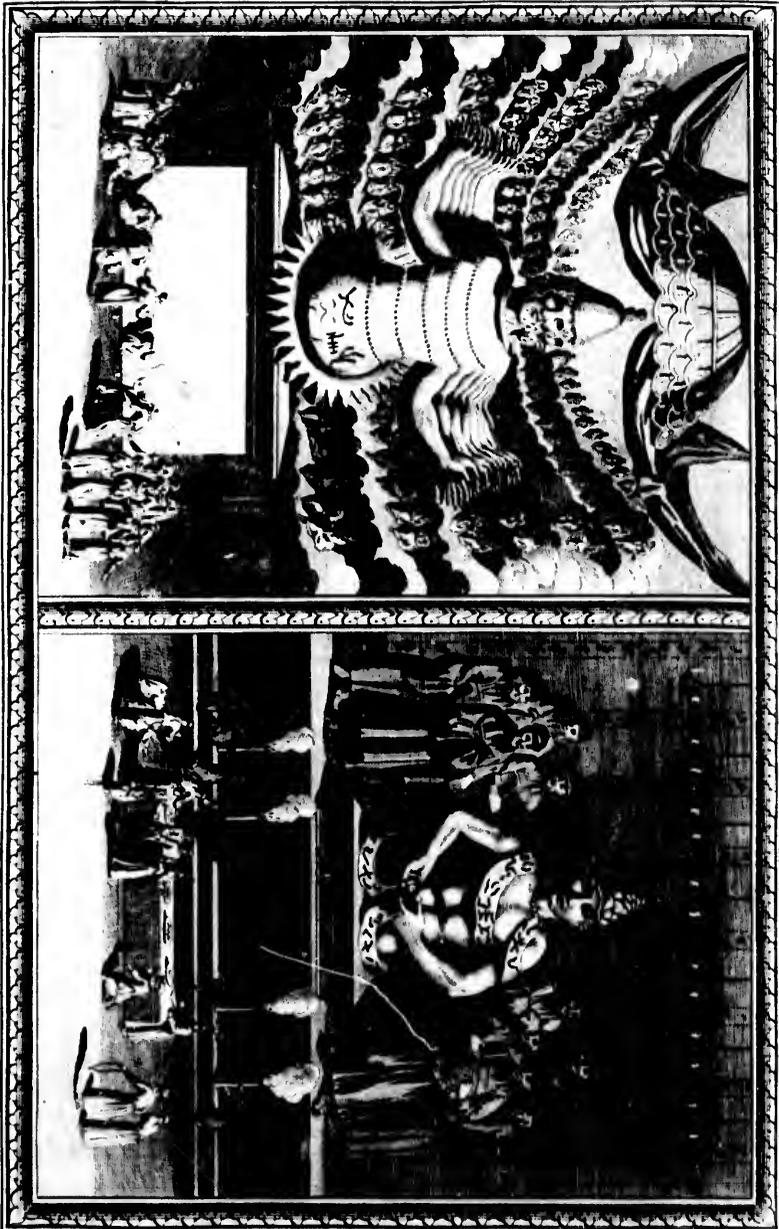


AMIDA, a DEITY of JAPAN.

*with the manner in which his votaries
Crown themselves to his honour.*

Published by A. Hoag, March 22. 1794





One of the forms in which AMIDA is worshipped by the people of JAPAN and TARTARY.

The image of CONFUCIUS with the SUTRANGS, as worshipped in the Temple of the CHINESE.

-serving his friend, the Captain sent back the messenger to Huahine, on the 18th, with the axes, and a male and female kid. On Wednesday the 19th, our commander of his Majesty's ship, the Resolution, delivered to Captain Clerke his instructions how to proceed in case of separation, after quitting these islands, of which the following is, we believe, a true copy.

Instructions delivered by Captain James Cook, to Captain Charles Clerke, Commander of his Majesty's ship the Discovery, Wednesday the 19th of November, 1777.

"WHEREAS the passage from the Society Islands, to the northern coast of America, is of considerable length, both in distance and in time, and as a part of it must be performed in the very depth of winter, when gales of wind and bad weather must be expected, and may possibly occasion a separation, you are to take all possible care to prevent this. But if, notwithstanding all our care to keep company, you should be separated from me, you are first to look for me where you last saw me. Not seeing me in five days, you are to proceed (as directed by the instructions of their lordships, a copy of which you have already received) for the coast of New Albion; endeavouring to fall in with it in the latitude of 45 deg. In which, and at a convenient distance from land, you are to cruise for me ten days. Not seeing me in that time, you are to put into the first convenient port, in, or to the north of that latitude, to recruit your wood and water, and to procure refreshments. During your stay in port, you are constantly to keep a good look-out for me. It will be necessary, therefore, to make choice of a station, situated as near the sea coast as possible, the better to enable you to see me, when I may appear in the offing. Should I not join you before the 1st of next April, you are to put to sea, and to proceed northward to the latitude of 56 deg. in which, and at a convenient distance from the coast, never exceeding 15 leagues, you are to cruise for me till the 10th of May. Not seeing me at that time, you are to proceed northward, and endeavour to find a passage into the Atlantic Ocean, through Hudson's or Baffin's Bays, as directed by the above-mentioned instructions.

"But if you should fail in finding a passage through either of the said Bays, or by any other way, as the season of the year may render it unsafe for you to remain in high latitudes, you are to repair to the harbour of St. Peter and St. Paul, in Kamtschatka, in order to refresh your people, and to pass the winter. Nevertheless, if you find, that you cannot procure the necessary refreshments, at the said port, you are at liberty to go where you shall think proper; taking care before you depart to leave with the governor an account of your intended destination, to be delivered to me upon my arrival: and in the spring of the ensuing year, 1779, you are to repair back to the above-mentioned port, endeavouring to be there by the 10th of May, or sooner. If on your arrival, you receive no orders from, or account of me, so as to justify your pursuing any other measures than what are pointed out in the before-mentioned instructions, your future proceedings are to be governed by them. You are also to comply with such parts of the said instructions, as have not been executed, and are not contrary to these orders. And in case of your inability, by sickness, or otherwise, to carry these, and the instructions of their lordships into execution, you are to be careful to leave them with the next officer in command, who is hereby required to execute them in the best manner he can."

On Monday the 24th, in the morning, Mr. M——, midshipman, and the gunner's mate, two of the Discovery's people, were missing. They had embarked in a canoe, with two of their Otaheitean misters, the preceding night, and were now at the other end of the island. As the midshipman had expressed a desire of continuing at one of the Society Islands, it was extremely probable, that he and his companion had gone off with that intent. Captain Clerke therefore, with two armed boats, and a detachment of marines, fet

out in quest of the fugitives, but returned in the evening without success. From the behaviour of the islanders, he was of opinion, that they intended to conceal the deserters; and, with this view had deceived him with false information directing him to seek for them where they could not be found. He was not mistaken; for, the next morning intelligence was brought, that the two runaways were in the ill of Otaha, with a view to continue their course to Otaheite, as soon as they had furnished themselves with provisions for the voyage. These not being the only persons in the ships who were desirous of remaining at these favourite islands, it was necessary, in order to give an effectual discouragement to any further desertion, to recover them at all events. Captain Cook, therefore, determined to go in pursuit of them himself, having observed that the natives seldom attempted to amuse him with false information. He accordingly set out with two armed boats, accompanied by Oreo himself. They proceeded, without stopping at any place, till they came to the eastern side of Otaha, where they put ashore; and the chief dispatched a man before him, with orders to seize the fugitives, and keep them till the Captain and his attendants should arrive with the boats: but when arrived at the place where they expected to find them, they were informed, that they had quitted the island, and proceeded to Bolabola the day before. The Captain, not chusing to follow them thither, returned to the ships, with a full determination to have recourse to a measure, which he had reason to believe would compel the natives to restore them. On Wednesday the 26th, soon after day-break, Oreo, with his son, daughter, and son-in-law, having come on board the Resolution, the Commodore resolved to detain the three last, till our deserters should be delivered up. With this view Captain Clerke invited them on board his ship; and, as soon as they had entered his cabin, a sentinel was placed at the door, and the window secured. This proceeding greatly surprised them; and Captain Clerke having explained the reason of it, they burst into tears, and begged he would not kill them. He protested he would not, and that the moment his people were brought back, they should be released. This, however, did not remove their uneasy apprehensions, and they bewailed their expected fate in silent sorrow. The chief being with Captain Cook when he received intelligence of this affair, mentioned it immediately to him, imagining that this step had been taken without his knowledge and approbation. The Captain instantly undeceived him; and then he began to entertain a fear with respect to his own personal safety, and his countenance indicated the greatest perturbation of mind: but the Captain soon quieted his fears, by telling him, that he was at liberty to quit the ship whenever he chose, and to take such steps towards the recovery of our two men, as he should judge best calculated for that purpose; and that, if he should meet with success, his friends, on board the Discovery, should be released from their confinement: if not, that they should be carried away with us. The Captain added, that the chief's conduct, as well as that of many of his countrymen, in not only assisting these two men in making their escape, but in endeavouring, at this very time, to prevail upon others to follow them, would justify any measure that should serve to put a stop to such proceedings. All this was done, as we have already hinted, to interest the people of the island in the pursuit after the fugitives, and, to this end, the Captain promised a reward of large axes, and other valuable articles, to any of the natives who should be instrumental in apprehending and bringing them back. The confinement of part of the royal family might seem hard usage, yet it had its effect, and without this resolute proceeding the deserters would never have been recovered. The boats of the Discovery went day after day to all the adjoining islands, without being able to learn the least trace of them; and this they continued, till having searched every island within the distance of two days sail, they were obliged to give over any farther search, as fruitless. The explanation of the motives upon which Captain Cook acted, seemed to re-



move, in a great degree, that general consternation into which Oroo, and his people present, were at first thrown. But, though relieved from all apprehensions with regard to their own safety, they were still under the deepest concern for the prisoners in the Discovery. Numbers of them went under the stern of the ship, in canoes, and lamented their captivity with long and loud exclamations. The name of Poedooa (which was that of Oroo's daughter) resounded from every quarter; and the women not only made a most dismal howling, but struck their bosoms, and cut their heads with sharks teeth, which occasioned a considerable effusion of blood.

The chief now dispatched a canoe to Bolabola, with a message to Opoony, king of that island, informing him of what had happened, and requesting him to seize the two deserters, and send them back. The messenger, who was the father of Oroo's son-in-law Pootoe, came to receive the Captain's commands before his departure; who strictly enjoined him not to return without the fugitives, and to tell Opoony, from him, that, if they had left the isle of Bolabola, he must send canoes in pursuit of them. But the impatient natives, not thinking proper to trust to the return of our people for the release of the prisoners, were induced to meditate an attempt, which, if it had not been prevented, might have involved them in still greater distress. Between five and six o'clock, Captain Cook, who was then on shore, abreast of the ship, observed all their canoes, in and about the harbour, began to move off. He enquired, in vain, for the cause of this; till some of our people, calling to us from the Discovery, informed us, that a body of the islanders had seized Captain Clerke and Mr. Gore, as they were walking at a small distance from the ships. The Commodore, struck with the boldness of this scheme of retaliation, which seemed to counteract him in his own way, instantly commanded his people to arm; and, in a few minutes, a strong party, under the conduct of Mr. King, were sent to the rescue of the two gentlemen. At the same time two armed boats, and a party, under Mr. Williams, were dispatched, to intercept the flying canoes in their retreat to the shore. These detachments had scarcely gone out of sight, when intelligence arrived, which convinced us we had been misinformed; and they were immediately, in consequence of this, called in. However, it appeared from several corroborating particulars, that the natives had actually formed the design of seizing Captain Clerke; and they even made no secret in speaking of it the following day. But the principal part of the plan of their operations was to have secured the person of Captain Cook. He was accustomed to bathe every evening in the fresh water; on which occasions he frequently went alone, and was unarmed. Expecting him to go this evening, as usual, they had resolved upon seizing him, and Captain Clerke likewise, if he had accompanied him. But our Commander, after confining the chief's family, had taken care to avoid putting himself in their power; and had cautioned Captain Clerke and the officers, not to go to any considerable distance from the ships. Oroo, in the course of the afternoon, asked our Commodore, three or four times, if he would not go to the bathing place; till at length finding that the Captain could not be prevailed upon, he retired, with his people, notwithstanding all our intreaties to the contrary. Having no suspicion, at this time, of their design, Captain Cook imagined, that a sudden panic had seized them, which would be soon over. Being disappointed with respect to him, they fixed upon those whom they thought more in their power. It was a fortunate circumstance that they did not succeed in their design, and that no mischief was done on the occasion; no muskets being fired, except two or three to stop the canoes; to which firing, perhaps Captain Clerke and Mr. Gore owed their safety; but Mr. King ascribes this to the Captain's walking, with a pistol in his hand,

which, he says, he once fired; at which time a party of the islanders, armed with clubs, were marching towards them, but dispersed on hearing the report of the muskets. This conspiracy was first discovered by a girl, who had been brought from Huahaine by one of our officers. Happening to overhear some of the Uliteans say, that they would seize Captain Clerke and Mr. Gore, she immediately ran to acquaint the first of our people that she met with the design. Those who had been intrusted with the execution of the plan, threatened to put her to death, as soon as we should quit Huahaine, for disappointing them. Being aware of this, we contrived that the girl's friends should come a day or two afterwards, and take her out of the ship, to convey her to a place where she might remain concealed, till an opportunity should offer for her escaping to Huahaine.

On Thursday the 27th, the tents were struck, the observatories took down, which, with the live stock, were brought on board the ships. We then unmoored, and moved a little way down the harbour, where we anchored again. In the afternoon the natives gathered round, and came on board our ships, as usual. One party acquainted Captain Cook, that the fugitives were found, and that in a few days they would be brought back, requesting at the same time the release of the prisoners. But the Captain paid no regard to either their information or petition; on the contrary, he renewed his threatenings, which he declared he would put in execution, if the men were not delivered up. In the succeeding night the wind blew in hard squalls, which were accompanied with heavy showers of rain. In one of these squalls, the cable whereby the Resolution was riding at anchor, parted; but as we had another ready to let go, the ship was quickly brought up again. On the 29th, having received no account from Bolabola, Oroo set out for that island, in search after the deserters, desiring Captain Cook to follow him, the next day, with the ships. This was the Captain's intention; but the wind prevented our getting to sea. On the 30th, about five o'clock, P. M. a number of canoes were seen, at a distance, making towards the ships; and as they approached nearer we heard them sing and rejoice, as if they had succeeded in finding what they went in search of. About six, they came to nigh, that we could discern, with our glasses, the deserters fastened together, but without their muskets. They were no sooner brought on board, than the royal prisoners were released, to the unspeakable joy of all but the two fugitives, who were under great apprehensions of sulking death. Their punishment, however, was not so severe as might have been expected. S— was sentenced to receive 24 lashes, and M— was turned before the mast, where he continued to do duty while there was little or nothing to do; but on asking forgiveness, was restored to his former station on the quarter deck. It appeared that their pursuers had followed them from one island to another from Ulitea to Otaha, from Otaha to Bolabola, from Bolabola to the little island of Toobacc, where they were found, but where we never should have looked for them, had not the natives traced them out. They were taken by Pootoe's father, in consequence of the first message sent to Opoony.

On the 1st of December, notice was given to the Ouhaitian mistees, that they must all prepare to depart, the ships being in readiness to leave the country, and perhaps, never to return to the Society Islands any more. This news caused great lamentation and much confusion. They were now at a great distance from home, and every one was eager to get what she could for herself before she was parted from her beloved. Most of them had already stript their mates of almost every thing they possessed, and those who had still something in reserve led a sad life till they shared it with them. It was not till the 7th, to which time we were confined in the harbour by a contrary wind, that we could clear the ships of these troublesome gentry.

C H A P. IX.

The Resolution and Discovery leave Ulitea, and direct their course to the island of Bolabola—Remarks on the present and former state of Ulitea—The ships arrive at Bolabola, with Oreo and others—Captain Cook applies to Opoony for Monsieur Bougainville's anchor—Reasons for purchasing it—They quit the Society Islands—Bolabola and its harbour described—Brevity of its inhabitants—Historical account of the reduction of Otaha and Ulitea—Animals left at the above islands—Method of salting pork for the use of the ships—Curfory remarks respecting Otahete and the Society Islands—Additional particulars to the former accounts of Otahete, by Mr. Anderson—Of the country in general—Productions—Natural history—Description of the natives—Their language—Diet—Liquors—Different meals—Connections between the two sexes—Their customs—System of religion—Superstitions—Traditions—An historical legend—Of the regal dignity—Distinctions of rank, and punishments—Peculiarities belonging to the adjacent islands—Their names and those of their Gods—Limits of their Navigation—The Resolution and Discovery prepare for sailing to the North, in quest of the grand and principal object of this voyage—A curious geographical and historical description of the north-west parts of North America, and of the most remarkable islands situated north of the Pacific Ocean, and in the Eastern Sea.

SUNDAY, the 7th of December, at eight o'clock A. M. we weighed and made sail with a light breeze at the north-east point. During the preceding week, we had been visited by persons from all quarters of the island, who afforded us a plentiful supply of hogs and green plantains, so that the time we remained wind-bound in the harbour was not totally lost; for green plantains are an excellent succedaneum for bread, and will keep good for two or three weeks. Besides being furnished with these provisions, we also took in plenty of wood and water. The Uliteans appeared to be in general smaller, and blacker than the natives of the adjacent islands, and seemed also less orderly, which may, perhaps, be owing to their having become subjects to the inhabitants of Bolabola. Oreo, their chief, is only a kind of deputy to the Bolabolan monarch; and the conquest seems to have diminished the number of subordinate chiefs resident among them: they are, therefore, less under the immediate eye of those whose interest it is to enforce a proper obedience. Though Ulitea is now reduced to this humiliating state of dependence, it was formerly, as we were informed, the most eminent of this group of islands, and, probably, the first seat of government, for the present royal family of Otahete derives its descent from that which ruled here before the late revolution. The de-throned king of Ulitea, whose name is Ooroo, resides at Huahene, furnishing, in his own person, an instance not only of the instability of power, but also of the respect paid by these islanders to particular families of princely rank; for they allow Ooroo to retain all the emblems which are appropriated by them to royalty, notwithstanding his having been deprived of his dominions. We observed a similar instance to this during our stay at Ulitea, where one of our occasional visitors was Captain Cook's old friend Oreo, late chief of Huahene. He still maintained his consequence, and was constantly attended by a numerous retinue.

We now had a brisk wind, and directed our course to Bolabola, accompanied by Oreo and others from Ulitea; and, indeed, most of the natives, except the chief, would gladly have taken a passage with us to England. Our principal reason for visiting the island of Bolabola was, to procure one of the anchors which had been left at Otahete by Monsieur Bougainville. This, we were informed, had been afterwards found by the natives there, and sent by them to Opoony, the chief of Bolabola. It was not on account of our being in want of anchors that we were anxious to get possession of it; but having parted with all our hatchets, and other iron implements, in purchasing refreshments, we were now obliged to create a fresh assortment of trading articles, by fabricating them from the spare iron we could find on board; and even the greatest part of that had been already expended. Captain Cook, therefore, supposed Monsieur Bougainville's anchor would in a great measure supply our want of this useful material; and he did not entertain a doubt that Opoony might be induced to part with it. At sun-set being off the south point of Bolabola, we shortened sail, and passed the night making short boards. On Monday, the 8th, at day-break, we made sail for the harbour, on the west side of the island. Having a

scanty wind we were obliged to ply up; and it was nine o'clock before we were near enough to send away a boat to sound the entrance. When the masted returned with the boat, he reported, that the entrance of the harbour was rocky at the bottom, but that there was good ground within; and the depth of water twenty-five and twenty-seven fathoms. In the channel, he said, there was room enough to turn the ships, it being one third of a mile broad. Upon this information, we attempted to work the ships in; but the wind and tide being against us, we made two or three trips, and found it could not be accomplished till the tide should turn in our favour. Whereupon the Captain gave up the design of carrying the ships into the harbour; and, embarking in one of the boats, attended by Oreo and his companions, was rowed in for the island. As soon as they landed, our Commodore was introduced to Opoony, surrounded by a vast concourse of people. The necessary compliments being exchanged, the Captain requested the chief to give him the anchor; and, by way of inducement, produced the present he intended for him. It consisted of a linen night gown, gauze handkerchiefs, a shirt, a looking-glass, some beads, toys, and six axes. Opoony, however, refused to accept the present till the Commodore had received the anchor; and ordered three persons to go and deliver it to him, with directions to receive from him what he thought proper in return. With these messengers we set out in our boats for a neighbouring island, where the anchor had been deposited, but it was neither so large nor so perfect, as we expected. By the mark that was upon it, we found it had originally weighed seven hundred pounds, but it now wanted the two palms, the ring, and part of the shank. The reason of Opoony's refusing Captain Cook's present was now apparent: he, doubtless, supposed that the anchor, in its present state, was so much inferior to what was offered in exchange, that when the Captain saw it, he would be displeased. The Commodore, notwithstanding, took the anchor as he found it, and sent the whole of the present which he at first intended. This business being done, and the Captain returned on board, we hoisted in our boats, and made sail to the north. While we were thus employed, we were visited by some of the natives, who came off in three or four canoes to see the ships. They brought with them one pig, and a few cocoa-nuts. Had we remained at this island till the next day, we should probably have been supplied with plenty of provisions; and the natives would, doubtless, be disappointed when they found we were gone; but, having already a good stock of hogs and fruit on board, and not many articles left to purchase more, we had no inducement left to defer the prosecution of our voyage.

Oteavanooa, the harbour of Bolabola, situated on the west side of the island, is very capacious; and, though we did not enter it, Captain Cook had the satisfaction of being informed by those employed for the purpose, that it is a very proper place for the reception of ships. Towards the middle of this island is a lofty double-peaked mountain, which appeared to be barren on the east side, but on the west side has some trees and bushes. The lower grounds, towards the

the sea, like the other islands of this ocean, are covered with cocoa-palms and bread-fruit trees. There are many little islets that surround it, which add to the number of its inhabitants, and to the amount of its vegetable productions. Considering the small extent of Bolabola, being only 24 miles in circumference, it is remarkable that its people should have been able to conquer Ulitea and Otaha; the former being alone more than double its size. In each of Captain Cook's three voyages, the war that produced this great revolution was frequently mentioned; and as the history thereof may be an agreeable entertainment to our subscribers, we shall here give it as related by themselves.

Ulitea and Otaha had long been friends; or, as the natives express it emphatically, they were considered as two brothers, whose views and interests were the same. The island of Huaheine was also admitted as a friend, but not in so eminent a degree. Like a traitor, Otaha leagued with Bolabola, jointly to attack Ulitea; whose people required the assistance of their friends in Huaheine against these united powers. The inhabitants of Bolabola were encouraged by a prophetess, who predicted their success; and that they might rely on her prophecy, she desired that a man should be sent to a particular part of the sea, where from a great depth would arise a storm. He was accordingly sent off in a canoe to the place specified, and was going instantly to dive for the stone, when, behold, it flared up spontaneously to the surface, and came immediately into his hand! All the people were astonished at the sight; the stone was deemed sacred, and deposited in the house of the Eatoo, where it is still preserved, as a proof that this prophetess was inspired with the divinity. Elevated with the hopes of victory, the canoes of Bolabola attacked those of Ulitea and Huaheine; the encounter lasted long, they being lashed strongly together with ropes; and, notwithstanding the pretended miracle, the Bolabola fleet would have been vanquished, had not that of Otaha arrived at the critical moment. The fortune of the day was now turned; victory declared in favour of the Bolabolans; and their enemies were totally defeated. Two days after, the conquerors invaded Huaheine, which they subdued, it being weakly defended, as most of its warriors were then absent. Many of its fugitives, however, having got to Otahete, there related their melancholy tale. This so affected those of their own country, and of Ulitea whom they found in that island, that they obtained their assistance. They were furnished with only ten fighting canoes; with which inconsiderable force they effected a landing at Huaheine in the night; and, taking the Bolabola men by surprize, killed many of them, and dispersed the rest. Thus were they again, by one bold effort, possessed of their own island, which at this day remains independent, and is governed by its own chiefs. When the combined fleets of Ulitea and Huaheine were defeated, the men of Bolabola were applied to by their allies of Otaha, to be allowed an equal share of the conquests. This being refused, the alliance broke; and, during the war, Otaha was conquered, as well as Ulitea, both of which remain subject to Bolabola; the chiefs by whom they are governed, being only deputies to Opoony, the king of the islands. Such is their account of the war; and in the reduction of the two islands five battles were fought, at different places, in which great numbers were killed on each side.

We have already observed, that these people are extremely deficient in recollecting the exact dates of past events. Respecting this war, though it happened but a few years ago, we could only guess at the time of its commencement and duration, the natives not being able to satisfy our enquiries with any precision. The final conquest of Ulitea, which terminated the war, had been achieved before Captain Cook was there in 1769; but it was very apparent that peace had not been long restored, as marks of recent hostilities having been committed were then to be seen. By attending to the age of Teeretaera, the present chief of Huaheine, some additional collateral proof may be gathered.

He did not appear to be more than ten or twelve years of age, and his father, we were informed, had been killed in one of the engagements. Since the conquest of Ulitea and Otaha, the Bolabola men are considered as invincible; and their fame is so far extended, that, even at Otahete, if not dreaded, they are respected for their valour. It is asserted, they never fly from an enemy, and that they are victorious against an equal number of the other islanders. These ascribe much to the superiority of their god, who, they believe, detained us by contrary winds at Ulitea. The estimation in which the Bolabola men are held at Otahete may be gathered from M. de Bougainville's anchor having been sent to their sovereign. The intention of transporting the Spanish bull to their island, must be ascribed to the same cause. They also had a third European curiosity, brought to Otahete by the Spaniards. This animal had been so imperfectly described by the natives, that we had been much puzzled to conjecture what it could be. Some good, however, generally springs up out of evil. When Captain Clerke's deserters were brought back from Bolabola, they told us the animal had been shewn to them, and that it was a ram. Had our men not deserted, it is probable we should never have known more about it. In consequence of this intelligence, the Captain, when he landed to meet Opoony, took an axe with him in the boat, of the Cape of Good Hope breed, whereby a foundation is laid for a breed of sheep at Bolabola. He also left with Oreo, at Ulitea, two goats, and an English boar and sow; so that the race of hogs will be considerably improved, in a few years, at Otahete, and all the neighbouring islands; and they will, perhaps, be stocked with many valuable European animals. When this is really the case, these islands will be unrivalled in abundance and variety of refreshments for the supply of future navigators. Even in their present state, they are hardly to be excelled. When the inhabitants are not disturbed by intestine broils, which has been the case for several years past, their productions are numerous and plentiful.

Had we been possessed of a greater assortment of goods, and a proper quantity of salt, we might have salted as much pork as would have been sufficient to last both ships almost a year; but we quite exhausted our trading commodities at the Friendly Isles, Otahete, and its neighbourhood. Our axes, in particular, were nearly gone, with which, alone, hogs were, in general, to be purchased. The salt that remained aboard was not more than was requisite for curing 15 puncheons of meat. The following process of curing pork has been adopted by Captain Cook in his several voyages. The hogs were killed in the evening; and, when cleaned, they were cut up; after which the bone was taken out. The meat was salted while hot, and laid in such a manner as to permit the juices to drain from it, till the next morning: it was then salted again, put into a cask, and covered with pickle. It remained, in this situation, four or five days, when it was taken out, and carefully examined; and if any of it appeared to be in the least tainted, which sometimes happened, it was separated from the rest, which was repicked, headed up, and filled with good pickle. It was again examined in about eight or ten days time, but there appeared no necessity for it, as it was generally found to be all perfectly cured. Bay and white salt mixed together answers the best, though either of them will do alone. Great care was taken that none of the large blood-vessels remained in the meat; and that not too much should be packed together at the first salting, lest those pieces which are in the middle should heat, and hinder the salt from penetrating them. In tropical climates, meat ought to be salted in rainy sultry weather. Europeans having of late so frequently visited these islanders, they may, on that account, have been induced to breed a larger stock of hogs; knowing that, whenever we come, they may be certain of receiving what they esteem a valuable consideration for them. They daily expect the Spaniards at Otahete, and

more than ten or twelve, we were informed, had engagements. Since then, the Bolabola men are and their fame is so far extended, if not dreaded, they are. It is asserted, they never they are victorious against the islanders. These ascribe to their god, who, they believed, resides at Ulitea. The chief men are held at Otaheite by M. de Bougainville's to their sovereign. The Spanish bull to their the same cause. They, brought to Otaheite had been so imperfect, that we had been much could be. Some good, up out of evil. When were brought back from animal had been taken to. Had our men not could never have known of this intelligence, the Opoony, took an ewe the Cape of Good Hope is laid for a breed of with Oro, at Ulitea, bar and sow: so that the ably improved, in a few neighbouring islands, ed with many valuable, this is really the case, ed in abundance and a supply of future navigation, they are hardly to bitants are not disturbed been the case for several numerous and plenty.

a greater assortment of salt, we might have been sufficient to but we quite exhausted. Friendly Isles, Otaheite, axes, in particular, were, hogs were, in general, remained aboard was curing 15 puncheons of curing pork has in his several voyages, the evening; and, when which the bone was ed while hot, and laid in juices to drain from it, then salted again, put pickle. It remained, in when it was taken out, if any of it appeared to sometimes happened, it, which was repicked, and pickle. It was again ten days time, but there is it was generally found and white salt mixed to either of them will do that none of the large meat; and that not too her at the first salting, the middle should heat, erating them. In tropic- be salted in rainy sultry of late so frequently y, on that account, have flock of hogs; knowing y may be certain of re- luable consideration for e Spaniards at Otaheite, and

and in two or three years time, they will doubtless expect the English there, as well as at the other islands. It is useless to assure them that you will not return, for they suppose you cannot avoid it; though none of them know or enquire the reason of your coming. It would, perhaps, have been better for the people to have been ignorant of our superiority in the accommodations and arts that make life comfortable, than, after once knowing it, to be abandoned to their original incapacity of improvement. They cannot be, indeed, restored to their former happy mediocrity, should the intercourse between us be discontinued. It is in a manner incumbent on the Europeans to pay them occasional visits, (once in three or four years) to supply them with those articles, which we, by introducing, have given them a predilection for. The want of such supplies may be severely felt, when it is too late to return to their old imperfect contrivances, which they have now discarded, and despise. When the iron tools with which we furnished them are worn out, their own will be almost forgotten. A stone hatchet is now as great a curiosity among them, as an iron one was seven or eight years ago; and a chisel made of bone, or stone, is no where to be seen. Spike nails have been substituted in the room of the latter articles, and they are weak enough to imagine that their tools of them is inexhaustible, for they are no longer sought after. Knives happened, at this time, to be in high estimation at Ulitea; and axes and hatchets bore unrivalled sway at all the islands. Respecting articles merely ornamental, these islanders are as capricious as the most polished European nations; for an article which may be prized to-day will be rejected to-morrow, as fashion or whim may alter. But our iron implements are so evidently useful, that they must continue to be high in their estimation. They would indeed be miserable, if they should cease to receive supplies of what appears necessary to their comfortable existence, as they are destitute of the materials, and ignorant of the art of fabricating them.

Much has already been related respecting Otaheite; which though not comprehended in the number of what we have denominated the Society Islands, yet, being inhabited by the same race of men, agreeing in the same leading features of character and manners, it was fortunate that we happened to discover this principal island before the others, as the hospitable reception we there met with, led us to make it the principal place of resort, in our successive voyages to this part of the Pacific Ocean. By our repeated visits, we have had better opportunity of knowing something about it and its inhabitants, than about the other similar, but less considerable islands in its vicinity. Of these latter, however, we have seen enough to satisfy us, that all we have observed of Otaheite may, with trifling alterations, be applied to them. During our continuance at these islands, we lost no opportunity of making astronomical and nautical observations. At Otaheite and Ulitea we particularly remarked the tide, with a view of ascertaining its grandest rise at the former place. Also, by the mean of 145 sets of observations, we determined the latitude and longitude of the three following places.

Matarei Point, at Otaheite, 17° 29' 15" S. lat. 210° 22' 28" E. lon.
Ouharee harbour, at Huahine 16 42 45 ———— 208 52 24
Ohananeno ditto, at Ulitea 16 45 30 ———— 208 25 22

It may be thought by some, the island of Otaheite has been already and so often accurately described, and the manners, customs, and ways of living of the inhabitants, so amply enlarged upon, in our history of former voyages, that little remains to be added: but, there are still, however, many parts of the domestic, political, and religious institutions of the natives, which, after all our visits to them, are but imperfectly understood; and we doubt not, but that the following remarks, for which we are indebted to the ingenious Mr. Anderfon, and which may be considered as finishing strokes to a picture, the outlines of which have been already given, will be highly acceptable to our

No. 62.

numerous friends and subscribers, who, by their kind encouragement of this work, have given the strongest testimony in its favour.

"To what has been observed of Otaheite (says Mr. Anderfon) in the accounts of the successive voyages of Captain Wallis, M. de Bougainville, and Captain Cook, it would, at first sight, seem superfluous to add any thing; as it might be supposed, that little could now be produced, but a repetition of what has been related before. I am, however, far from being of that opinion; and will venture to affirm, that, though a very accurate description of the country, and of the most obvious customs of its inhabitants, has been already given, especially by Captain Cook, yet much still remains untouched: that in some instances, mistakes have been made, which later and repeated observations have been able to rectify; and that even now, we are strangers to many of the most important institutions that prevail among these people. The truth is, our visits, though frequent, have been but transient: many of us had no inclination to make enquiries; more were unable to direct the enquiries properly; and we all laboured, though not to the same degree, under the disadvantages attending an imperfect knowledge of the language of those, from whom alone we could receive any information. The Spaniards had it more in their power to surmount this bar to instruction; some of them having resided at Otaheite much longer than any other European visitors; by which superior advantage, they could not but have had an opportunity of obtaining the fullest information on most subjects relating to this island: their account of it would, probably, convey more authentic and accurate intelligence, than, with our best endeavours, any of us could possibly obtain. But, as I look upon it to be very uncertain, if not very unlikely, that we should ever have any communication from that quarter, I have here put together what additional intelligence about Otaheite, and its neighbouring islands, I was able to procure, either from Omiah, while on board the Resolution, or by conversing with the other natives, while we had any intercourse, and were conversant with them.

"The wind, for the greatest part of the year, blows from between the E. S. E. and E. N. E. This is the true trade wind, or what the natives call maaraee; and it sometimes blows with considerable force. When this happens, the weather is often cloudy, with showers of rain; but when the wind is more moderate, it is clear, settled, and serene. Should the wind veer farther to the southward, and become S. E. or S. S. E. it then blows more gently, with a smooth sea, and is called maooi. In these months, when the sun is nearly vertical, that is in December and January, the winds and weather are both very variable; but it frequently blows from W. N. W. or N. W. This wind, called Toerou, is generally attended by dark, cloudy weather, and frequently by rain. It sometimes blows strong, though generally moderate; but seldom lasts longer than six days without interruption; and is the only wind in which the people of the islands to leeward come to this, in their canoes. If it happens to be still more northerly, it blows with less strength, and is called Era-potaia; which they say is the wife of Toerou, who, according to their mythology, is a male. The wind from the S. W. and W. S. W. is still more frequent than the former, and though, in general, gentle, and interrupted by calms, or breezes from the eastward, yet it sometimes blows in brisk squalls. The weather attending it is commonly dark, cloudy, and rainy, with a close hot air; and accompanied by a great deal of thunder and lightning. It is called Etoa, and often succeeds the Toerou; as does also the Farooa, which is still more southerly; and, from its violence, blows down houses and trees, especially the cocoa-palms, from their loftiness; but it is of short duration. The natives seem not to have a very accurate knowledge of these changes, and yet pretend to have drawn some general conclusions from their effects; for when the sea has a hollow sound, and dashes slowly on the

6 N

rect,

reef, they say it portends good weather; but if it has a sharp sound, and the waves succeed each other fast, that the reverse will happen.

"There is, perhaps, scarcely a spot in the universe, that affords a more luxuriant prospect than the S. E. part of the island of Otaheite. The hills are high and steep, and in many places craggy; but they are covered to the very summits, with trees and shrubs, so that a spectator cannot help thinking, that the very rocks possess the property of producing and supporting their verdant clothing. The flat land which bounds those hills towards the sea, and the interjacent valleys also, teem with various productions that grow with the most exuberant vigour; and, at once, fill the mind of the beholder with the idea, that no place on the earth can excel this, in the strength and beauty of vegetation. Nature has been no less liberal in distributing rivulets, which are found in every valley; and as they approach the sea, often divide into two or three branches, fertilizing the flat lands through which they run. The habitations of the natives are scattered without order, upon these flats; and many of them appearing toward the shore, presented a delightful scene, viewed from our ships; especially as the sea, within the reef, which bounds the coast, is perfectly still, and affords a safe navigation, at all times, for the inhabitants, who are often seen paddling in their canoes indolently along, in passing from place to place, or in going to fish. On viewing these delightful scenes, I have often regretted my inability to transmit to those who have had no opportunity of seeing them, such a description as might, in some measure, convey an impression similar to what must be felt by every one, who has been fortunate enough to be on the spot.

"It is, doubtless, the natural fertility of the country, combined with the mildness and serenity of the climate, that renders the natives so careless in their cultivation, that, in many places, though abounding with the richest productions, the smallest traces of it cannot be observed. The cloth-plant which is raised from seeds brought from the mountains, and the ava, or intoxicating pepper, which they defend from the sun when very young, by covering them with the leaves of the bread-fruit-tree, are almost the only things to which they seem to pay any attention; and these they keep very clean. I have inquired very carefully into their manner of cultivating the bread-fruit-tree; but was always answered, that they never planted it. This, indeed, must be evident to every one who will examine the places where the young trees come up. It will be always observed, that they spring from the roots of the old ones; which run near the surface of the ground: so that the bread-fruit-trees may be reckoned those that would naturally cover the plains, supposing that the island was not inhabited, in the same manner that the white-barked-trees, found at Van Diemen's Land, constitute the forests there. And from this we may observe, that an inhabitant of Otaheite, instead of being obliged to plant his bread, will rather be under a necessity of preventing its progress; which, I suppose, is sometimes done, to give room for trees of another sort, to afford him a variety in his food. The chief of these are the cocoa-nut and plantain; the first of which can give no trouble, after it has raised itself a foot or two above the ground; but the plantain requires a little more care: for after it is planted, it shoots up, and, in about three months, begins to bear fruit; during which time it gives young shoots, which supply a succession of fruit: for the old stocks are cut down as the fruit is taken off. The products of the island, however, are not so remarkable for their variety, as great abundance; and curiosities of any kind are not numerous. Among these we may reckon a pond or lake of fresh water, at the top of one of the highest mountains, to go to, and return from which, takes three or four days. It is remarkable for its depth; and has eels of an enormous size in it; which are sometimes caught by the natives, who go upon this water in little floats of two or three wild plantain-trees fastened together. This is esteemed one of the greatest natural curiosities of the country; inasmuch, that travellers, who

come from the other islands, are commonly asked among the first questions, by their friends, at their return, if they have seen it? There is also a sort of water, of which there is only one small pond upon the island, as far distant as the lake, and to appearance very good, with a yellow sediment at the bottom: but it has a bad taste: and proves fatal to those who drink any quantity of it, or makes them break out into blotches, if they bathe in it.

"Nothing made a stronger impression, at first sight, on our arrival here, than the contrast between the robust make and dark colour of the people of Tongataboo, and a sort of delicacy and whiteness, which distinguishes the inhabitants of Otaheite. It was even some time before that difference could preponderate in favour of the Otaheiteans; and then only, perhaps, because we became accustomed to them, the marks which recommended the others began to be forgotten. Their women, however, struck us as superior in every respect; and as possessing all those delicate characteristics, which distinguish them from the other sex in many countries. The beard, which the men here wear long, and the hair which is not cut so short, as is the fashion at Tongataboo, made also a great difference; and we could not help thinking, that, on every occasion, they showed a greater degree of timidity and fickleness. The muscular appearance, so common among the Friendly Islanders, and which seems a consequence of their being accustomed to much action, is lost here, where the superior fertility of their country enables the inhabitants to lead a more indolent life; and its place is supplied by a plumpness and smoothness of the skin; which, though, perhaps, more consonant with our ideas of beauty, is no real advantage; as it seems to be attended with a kind of languour in all their motions, not observable in the others. This remark is fully verified, in their boxing and wrestling, which may be called little better than the feeble efforts of children, if compared to the vigour with which they are performed at the Friendly Islands.

"Among these people personal endowments are in great esteem, and they have recourse to several methods of improving them, according to their notions of beauty. It is a practice, in particular, especially among the Errocos, or unmarried men of some consequence, to undergo a kind of physical operation to render them fair. This is done by remaining a month or two in the house; during which time they wear a quantity of clothes, eat nothing but bread-fruit, to which they ascribe a remarkable property in whitening them. They also speak, as if their corpulence and colour, at other times, depended on their food, as they are obliged, from the change of seasons, to use different sorts at different times. Their common diet is made up of, at least, nine tenths of vegetable food; and I believe, more particularly, the Mahee, or fermented bread fruit, which is a part of almost every meal, has a remarkable effect on them, preventing a collive habit, and producing a very sensible coolness about them, which could not be perceived in us who fed on animal food, and it is, perhaps, owing to this temperate course of life, that they have so few diseases among them. They reckon only five or six, which might be called chronic, or national disorders; among which are the dropsy, and the scabi, or indolent swellings, frequent at Tongataboo. But this was before the arrival of the Europeans; for we have added to this short catalogue a disease which abundantly supplies the place of all others, and is now almost universal. For this they seem to have no effectual remedy. The priests, indeed, give them a medley of simples; but they own that it never cures them. And yet, they allow that, in a few cases, nature, without the assistance of a physician, exterminates the poison of this fatal disorder, and a perfect recovery is produced.

"Their behaviour, on all occasions, seems to indicate a great openness, and generosity of disposition. Omiah, indeed, who, as their countryman, should be supposed rather willing to conceal any of their defects, has often said, that they are sometimes cruel in the treatment of their enemies. According to his account they torment

them very deliberately: at one time tearing out small pieces of flesh from different parts; at another taking out the eyes; then cutting off the nose; and lastly, killing them by ripping up the belly. But this only happens on particular occasions. If cheerfulness argues a conscious innocence, one would suppose that their life is seldom filled with crimes. This, however, I rather impute to their feelings, which, though lively, seem in no case permanent; for I never saw them in any misfortune, labour under the appearance of anxiety, after the critical moment was past. Neither does care ever seem to wrinkle their brow. On the contrary, even the approach of death does not appear to alter their usual vivacity. I have seen them when brought to the brink of the grave by disease, and when preparing to go to battle; but, in neither case, ever observed their countenances overclouded with melancholy or serious reflection. Such a disposition leads them to direct all their aims only to what can give them pleasure and ease. Their amusements all tend to excite and continue amorous passions, and their songs, of which they are immoderately fond, answer the same purpose. But as a constant succession of sensual enjoyments must cloy, we found they frequently varied them to more refined subjects, and had much pleasure in chanting their triumphs in war, and their occupations in peace; their travels to other islands, and adventures there; and the peculiar beauties, and superior advantages of their own island over the rest, or of different parts of it over other less favourite districts: This marks their great delight in music; and though they rather expell'd a dislike to our complicated compositions, yet were they always delighted with the more melodious sounds produced singly on our instruments, as approaching nearer to the simplicity of their own. Neither are they strangers to the soothing effects produced by particular sorts of motion, which, in some cases, seem to allay any perturbation of mind, with as much success as music. Of this I met with a remarkable instance: for walking, one day, about Matavai point, where our tents were erected, I saw a man paddling in a small canoe, so quickly, and looking about him with such eagerness on each side, as to command all my attention. At first, I imagined that he had stolen something from one of the ships, and was pursued; but, on waiting patiently, I saw him repeat his amusement. He went out from the shore, till he was near the place where the swell begins to take its rise; and, watching its first motion very attentively, paddled before it, with great quickness, till he found that it overtook him, and acquired sufficient force to carry his canoe before it, without passing underneath. He then sat motionless, and was carried along at the same swift rate as the wave, till it landed him on the beach. Then he started out, emptied his canoe, and went in search of another swell. I could not help concluding, that this man felt the most supreme pleasure, while he was driven on, so fast and so smoothly, by the sea; especially as, though the tents and ships were so near, he did not seem in the least to envy, or even to take any notice of the crowds of his countrymen, collected to view them as objects that were rare and curious. During my stay two or three of the natives came up, who seem'd to share his felicity, and always called out, when there was an appearance of a favourable swell, as he sometimes mistak'd it, by his back being turn'd, and looking about for it. By them I understood, that this exercise, which is call'd *choroo*, was frequent among them; and they have probably more amusements of this sort, which afford them, at least, as much pleasure as skating.

"The language of Otaheite, though doubtless radically the same with that of New Zealand, and the Friendly Isles, is destitute of that guttural pronunciation, and of some consonants, with which those latter dialects abound. The specimens we have already given, are sufficient to mark wherein the variation chiefly consists, and to shew, that like the manners of the inhabitants, it has become soft and soothing. During the former voyage, I had collected a copious vocabulary, which enabled me the better to compare this dialect

with that of the other islands; and, during this voyage; I took every opportunity of improvements by conversing with Omiah before we arrived, and by my daily intercourse with the natives, while we now remained there." (In our history of Captain Cook's former voyage, we have given to the public very copious specimens of the language of Otaheite, New Zealand, &c. which we flatter ourselves will be thought sufficient for their information, amusement, and every useful purpose.) "It abounds with beautiful and figurative expressions, which were it perfectly known, would, I make no doubt, put it upon a level with many of the languages that are most in esteem for their warm and bold images. For instance, the Otaheiteans express their notions of death very emphatically, by saying, "That the soul goes into darkness; or rather into night." And if you seem to entertain any doubt, in asking the question, "If such a person is their mother?" they immediately reply, with surprize, "Yes, the mother that bore me." They have one expression, that corresponds exactly with the phraseology of the scriptures, where we read of the "yearning of the bowels." They use it on all occasions, when the passions give them uneasiness; as they constantly refer pain from grief, anxious desire, and other affections, to the bowels, as its seat: where they suppose all the operations of the mind are performed. Their language is so copious, that for the bread-fruit alone, in its different states, they have above twenty names; as many for the taro root; and about ten for the cocoa-nut. Add to this, that besides the common dialect, they often expatiate, in a kind of stanza, or recitative, which is answered in the same manner.

"Their arts are few and simple; yet, if we may credit them, they perform cures in surgery, which our extensive knowledge in that branch has not, as yet, enabled us to imitate. In simple fractures, they bind them up with splints; but if part of the substance of the bone be lost, they insert a piece of wood between the fractured ends, made hollow like the deficient part. In five or six days, the rapoo, or surgeon, inspects the wound, and finds the wood partly covered with the growing flesh. In as many more days, it is generally entirely covered; after which, when the patient has acquired some strength, he bathes in the water and recovers. We know that wounds will heal over leaden bullets; and sometimes, though rarely, over other extraneous bodies. But what makes me entertain some doubt of the truth of so extraordinary skill, as in the above-mentioned instance, is, that in other cases that fell under my own observation, they are far from being so dextrous. I have seen the stump of an arm, which was taken off, after being shattered by a fall from a tree, that bore no marks of skilful operation, though some allowance be made for their defective instruments: and I met with a man going about with a dislocated shoulder, some months after the accident, from their being ignorant of the method to reduce it; though this be considered as one of the simplest operations of our surgery. They know fractures or luxations of the spine are mortal, but not fractures of the skull; and they likewise know, from experience, in what part of the body wounds prove fatal. They have sometimes pointed out those inflicted by spears, which, if made in the direction they mentioned, would certainly have been pronounced deadly by us; and yet these people would have recovered. Their physical knowledge seems more confined, and that, probably, because their diseases are fewer than their accidents. The priests, however, administer the juices of the herbs in some cases; and women who are troubled with after-pains, or other disorders, the consequences of child-bearing, use a remedy which one would think needless in a hot country. They first heat stones, as when they bake their food; then they lay a thick cloth over them, upon which is put a quantity of a small plant of the mustard kind; and these are covered with another cloth. Upon this they seat themselves, and sweat plentifully to obtain a cure. They have no emetic medicine.

"Notwithstanding the extreme fertility of the island, a famine frequently happens, in which, it is said, many perish.

perish. Whether this be owing to the failure of some seasons, to over population, which must sometimes almost necessarily happen, or to wars, I have not been able to determine; though the truth of the fact may fairly be inferred, from the great economy that they observe with respect to their food, even when there is plenty. In times of scarcity, after their bread-fruit and yams are consumed, they have recourse to various roots which grow, without cultivation, upon the mountains. The patarra, which is found in vast quantities, is what they use first. It is not unlike a very large potatoe or yam, and good when in its growing state; but, when old, is full of hard stringy fibres. They then eat two other roots; one not unlike the taro; and lastly, the chooc. This is of two sorts; one of them possessing deleterious qualities, which obliges them to llice and macerate it in water, a night before they bake and eat it. In this respect it resembles the cassava root of the West-Indies; but it forms a very insipid, moist paste, in the manner they dress it. However, I have seen them eat it at times when no such scarcity reigned. Both this and the patarra are creeping plants; the last, with ternate leaves. Of animal food, a very small portion falls, at any time, to the share of the lower class of people; and then it is either fish, sea-eggs, or other marine productions; for they seldom or ever eat pork. The erede hoi, (as Mr. Anderion calls the king, but which word Captain Cook writes erede rahi) is, alone, able to furnish pork every day; and inferior chiefs, according to their riches, once a week, fortnight, or month. Sometimes they are not even allowed that; for, when the island is impoverished by war, or other causes, the chief prohibits his subjects to kill any hogs; and this prohibition, we are told, is in force, sometimes, for several months, or even for a year or two. During that constraint, the hogs multiply so fast, that there are instances of their changing their domestic state, and turning wild. When it is thought proper to take off the prohibition, all the chiefs assemble at the king's place of abode; and each brings with him a present of hogs. The king then orders some of them to be killed, on which they feast; and, after that, every one returns home with liberty to kill what he pleases for his own use. Such a prohibition was actually in force, on our last arrival here; at least, in all those districts of the island that are immediately under the direction of Otoo. And, lest it should have prevented our going to Matavai, after leaving Oheitepeha, he sent a message to assure us, that it should be taken off, as soon as the ships arrived there. With respect to us, we found it so; but we made such a consumption of them, that, I have no doubt of it, it would be laid on again, as soon as we sailed. A similar prohibition is also, sometimes, extended to fowls. It is also among the better sort, that the ava is chiefly used. But this beverage is prepared somewhat differently from that which we saw so much of at the Friendly Islands: for they pour a very small quantity of water upon the root here; and sometimes roast, and bake, and bruise the stalks, without chewing it previously to its intution. They also use the leaves of the plant here, which are bruised, and water poured upon them, as upon the root. Large companies do not assemble to drink it, in that sociable way which is practised at Tongataboo. But its pernicious effects are more obvious here; perhaps, owing to the manner of preparing it; as we often saw instances of its intoxicating, or rather stupifying powers. Some of us, who had been at these islands before, were surprized to find many people, who when we saw them last, were remarkable for their size and corpulency, now almost reduced to skeletons, and, upon enquiring into the cause of this alteration, it was universally allowed to be the use of the ava. The skins of these people were rough, dry, and covered with scales, which, they say, every now and then fall off; and their skin is, as it were, renewed. As an excuse for a practice so destructive, they alledge, that it is adopted to prevent their growing too fat; but it evidently enervates them; and, in all probability shortens their days. As its effects had not been so visible, during our former visits, it is not

unlikely, that this article of luxury had never been so much abused as at this time. If it continues to be fashionable, it bids fair to destroy great numbers.

"The times of eating, at Otaheite, are very frequent. Their first meal, (or rather, as it may be called) their last, as they go to sleep after it, is about two o'clock in the morning; and the next is at eight. At eleven they dine: and again, as Omiah expressed it, at two, and at five; and sup at eight. In this article of domestic life, they have adopted some customs that are exceedingly whimsical. The women, for instance, have not only the mortification of being obliged to eat by themselves, and in a different part of the house from the men; but, by a strange kind of policy, are excluded from a share of most of the better sorts of food. They are not permitted to taste turtle, nor fish of the tunny kind, which is much esteemed; nor some particular sorts of the best plantains; and it is very seldom that even those of the first rank eat pork. The children of each sex also eat apart; and the women, generally, serve up their own victuals; for they would certainly starve, before any grown man would do them such a service. In this, as well as in some other customs relative to their eating, there is a mysterious conduct, which we could never thoroughly comprehend. When we enquired into the reasons of it, we could get no other answer, but that it is right and necessary it should be so. In other customs, respecting the females, there seems to be no obscurity; especially as to their connections with the men. If a young man and woman, from mutual choice, cohabit, the man gives the father of the girl such things as are necessary in common life, as hogs, cloth, and canoes, in proportion to the time they are together; and if he thinks that he has not been sufficiently paid for his daughter, he makes no scruple of forcing her to leave her friend, and to cohabit with another person who may be more liberal. The man, on his part, is always at liberty to make a new choice; but should his consort become pregnant, he may kill the child; and after that, either continue his connection with the mother, or leave her. But if he should adopt the child, and suffer it to live, the parties are then considered as in the married state, and they commonly live together ever after. However, it is thought no crime in the man to join a more youthful partner to his first wife, and to live with both. Their custom of changing their connections is, however, much more general than this last; and it is a thing so common, that they speak of it with great indifference. The errors are only those of the better sort, who, from their sickness, and their possessing the means of purchasing fresh connections, are constantly roaming about; and, from having no particular attachment, seldom adopt the more settled method mentioned above. And so agreeable is this licentious manner of life to their disposition, that the most beautiful of both sexes thus commonly spend their youthful days, habituated to the practice of enormities, which would disgrace the most savage tribes; but are peculiarly shocking among a people whose general character, in other respects, has evident traces of the prevalence of humane and tender feelings. When an error woman is delivered of a child, a piece of cloth dipped in water, is applied to the mouth and nose, which suffocates it. As in such a life, their women must contribute a very large share of its happiness, it is rather surprizing, besides the humiliating restraints they are laid under with regard to food, to find them often treated with a degree of harshness, or rather brutality, which one would scarcely suppose a man would bestow, on an object for whom he had the least affection. Nothing, however, is more common, than to see the men beat them without mercy; and unless this treatment is the effect of jealousy, which both sexes, at least, pretend to be sometimes infected with, it will be difficult to account for it. It will be less difficult to admit this as the motive, as I have seen several instances where the women have preferred personal beauty to interest; though I must own, that even in these cases, they seem scarcely susceptible of those delicate sentiments, that are the result of mutual affection; and, I believe, that

that there is less platonic love in Otaheite, than in any other country.

Their religious system is extensive, and, in many instances, singular; but few of the common people have a perfect knowledge of it; that being confined chiefly to their priests, who are pretty numerous. They do not seem to pay respect to one god as possessing pre-eminence; but believe in a plurality of divinities, who are all very powerful; and in this case, as different parts of the island, and the other islands in the neighbourhood, have different ones, the inhabitants of each, no doubt, think that they have chosen the most eminent, or, at least, one who is invested with power sufficient to protect them, and to supply all their wants. If he should not answer their expectations, they think it no impiety to change; as has very lately happened at Taraboo, where, in the room of two divinities formerly honoured, Olla, god of Bolabola, has been adopted, I should suppose, because he is the protector of a people who have been victorious in war; and as, since they have made this change, they have been very successful themselves against the inhabitants of Otaheite-nooe, they impute it entirely to Olla, who, as they literally say, fights their battles. Their assiduity in serving their gods is remarkably conspicuous. Not only the wharfas, or offering places of the morais, are commonly loaded with fruits and animals; but there are few houses where you do not meet with a small place of the same sort near them. Many of them are so rigidly scrupulous, that they will not begin a meal, without first laying aside a morsel for the eatooa; and we had an opportunity during this voyage, of seeing their superstitious zeal carried to a pernicious height, in the instance of human sacrifices, the occasions of offering which, I doubt, are too frequent. Perhaps, they have recourse to them when misfortunes occur; for they asked, if one of our men, who happened to be confined, when we were detained by a contrary wind, was taboo? Their prayers are also very frequent, which they chant, much after the manner of the songs in their festive entertainments. And the women, as in other cases, are also obliged to shew their inferiority in religious observances; for it is required of them, that they should partly uncover themselves, as they pass the morais; or take a considerable circuit to avoid them. Though they have no notion, that their gods must always be conferring benefits, without sometimes forgetting them, or suffering evil to befall them, they seem to regard this less than the attempts to do more inauspicious being to hurt them. They tell us, that etee is an evil spirit, who sometimes does us mischief, and to whom, as well as to their good being, they make offerings. But the mischiefs they apprehend from any superior invincible agents, are confined to things merely temporal. They believe the soul to be both immaterial and immortal. They say, that it keeps fluttering about the lips during the pangs of death; and that then it ascends and mixes with, or, as they express it, is eaten by the deity. In this state it remains for some time; after which, it departs to a certain place destined for the reception of the souls of men, where it exists in eternal night; or, as they sometimes say in twilight or dawn. They have no idea of any permanent punishment after death, for crimes they have committed on earth; for the souls of good and bad men are eat indiscriminately by the deity; but they certainly consider this coalition with him as a kind of purification necessary to be undergone, before they enter into a state of bliss; for according to their doctrine, if a man refrain from all connection with women some months before death, he passes immediately into his eternal mansion, without such a previous union, as if already, by this abstinence, he were pure enough to be exempted from the general lot. They are, however, far from entertaining such sublime conceptions of happiness, which our religion, and, indeed, reason, gives us room to expect hereafter. The only great privilege they seem to think they shall acquire by death, is immortality, for they speak of spirits being, in some measure, not totally divested of those passions which actuated them when combined with material vehicles. Thus if souls, who were formerly enemies, should meet, they have many conflicts; though it should seem to no purpose, as they are accounted invulnerable in this invincible state. There is a similar reasoning with regard to a man and his wife when they meet. If the husband dies first, the soul of his wife is known to him on its arrival in the land of spirits. They resume their former acquaintance in a spacious house, called tourooa, where the souls of the deceased assemble to recreate themselves with the gods. She then retires with him to his separate habitation, where they remain for ever, and have an offspring, which, however, is entirely spiritual, as they are neither married, nor are their embraces supposed to be the same as with corporeal beings. Some of their notions about the deity, are extravagant and absurd. They believe, that he is subject to the power of those very spirits to whom he has given existence; and that, in their turn, they frequently eat or devour him, though he possess the power of recreating himself. They, doubtless, use this mode of expression, as they seem incapable of conversing about immaterial things, without constantly referring to material objects to convey their meaning. And in this manner they continue the account, by saying, that, in the Tourooa, the deity enquires, if they intend, or not, to destroy him? And that he is not able to alter their determination. This is known to the inhabitants on earth, as well as to the spirits; for when the moon is in its wane, it is said, that they are then devouring their eatooa; and that, as it increases, he is renewing himself. And to this accident, not only the inferior, but the most eminent gods are liable. They also believe, that there are other places for the reception of souls after death. Thus, those who are drowned in the sea, remain there; where they think that there is a fine country, houses, and every thing that can make them happy. But what is more singular, they maintain, that not only all other animals, but trees, fruit, and even stones, have souls, which at death, or upon being consumed, or broken, ascend to the divinity, with whom they first mix, and afterwards pass into the mansion allotted to each. They imagine, that their punctual performance of religious offices procures them every temporal blessing. And as they believe, that the animating and powerful influence of the deity is every where diffused, it is no wonder that they join to this many superstitious opinions about its operations. Accordingly, they believe that sudden deaths, and all other accidents, are effected by the immediate action of some divinity. If a man only stumble against a stone, and hurt his toe, they impute it to an eatooa; so that they may be literally said, agreeable to their system, to tread on enchanted ground. They are startled, in the night, on approaching a toopapoo, where the dead are exposed, in the same manner that many of our ignorant and superstitious people are with the apprehensions of ghosts, and at the sight of a church yard; and they have an equal confidence in dreams, which they suppose to be communications either from their god, or from the spirits of their departed friends, enabling those favoured with them to foretell future events; but this kind of knowledge is confined to particular people. Omiah pretended to have this gift. He told us, that the soul of his father had intimated to him in a dream, on the 26th of July, 1776, that he should go on shore, at some place, within three days; but he was unfortunate in this first attempt to persuade us that he was a prophet; for it was the 1st of August before we got into Tenriffé. Among them, however, the dreamers possess a reputation little inferior to that of their inspired priests and priestesses, whose predictions they implicitly believe and are determined by them in all undertakings of consequence. The priestesses who persuaded Opoony to invade Ulietea, is much respected by him; and he never goes to war without consulting her. They also, in some degree, maintain our old doctrine of planetary influence; at least, they are sometimes regulated, in their public counsels, by certain appearances of the moon; particularly when lying horizon-

ally,

tally, or much inclined on the convex part, on its first appearance after the change, they are encouraged to engage in war, with confidence of success.

They have traditions concerning the creation, which, as might be expected, are complex, and clouded with obscurity. They say, that a goddess having a lump or mass of earth suspended in a cord, gave it a swing, and scattered about pieces of land, thus creating Otaheite and the neighbouring islands. They have also notions of a universal creation, and of lands, of which they have now no other knowledge than what is mentioned in their traditions. Their most remote account reaches to Tatoonia and Tapuppa, male and female stones or rocks, who support the mass of land and water, or our globe underneath. These produced Totorro, who was killed, and divided into land; and, after him, Otaia and Oroo were begotten, and afterwards were married, and produced first land, and then a race of gods. Otaia is killed, and Oroo marries a god, her son, called Teoraha, whom the orders to create more land, the animals, and all sorts of food, found upon the earth; as also the sky, which is supported by men called Tefereri. The spots observed in the moon, are supposed to be groves of a sort of trees which once grew in Otaheite, and being destroyed by some accident, their seeds were carried up thither by doves, where they now flourish.

They have also many legends, both historical and religious, one of which, relative to the practice of eating human flesh, I shall give the substance of, as a specimen of their method. A long time since, there lived in Otaheite two men, called Tahecai; the only name they yet have for cannibals. None knew from whence they came, or in what manner they arrived at the island. Their habitation was in the mountains, from whence they used to issue, and kill many of the natives, whom they afterwards devoured, and, by that means, prevented the progress of population. Two brothers being determined to rid their country of such a formidable enemy, used a stratagem for their destruction, with success. These lived farther upward than the Tahecai, and in such a situation, that they could speak with them, without greatly hazarding their own safety. They invited them to accept of an entertainment, that should be provided for them, to which these readily consented. The brothers then taking some stones, heated them, and thrusting them into pieces of mahee, desired one of the Tahecai to open his mouth. On which, one of these pieces was dropped in, and some water poured down, which made a boiling or hissing noise, in quenching the stone, and killed him. They treated the other to do the same; but he declined it, representing the consequences of his companion's eating. However they assured him, that the food was excellent, and its effects only temporary; for that the other would soon recover. His credulity was such, that he swallowed the bait, and shared the fate of the first. The natives then cut them in pieces, which they buried; and conferred the government of the island on the brothers, as a reward for delivering them from such monsters. Their residence was in the district called Whapanenoo; and to this day there remains a bread-fruit-tree, once the property of the Tahecais. They had also a woman, who lived with them, and had two teeth of a prodigious size. After they were killed, she lived at the island Otaheite, and, when dead, was ranked among their deities. She did not eat human flesh, as the men; but, from the size of her teeth, the natives still call any animal that has a fierce appearance, or is represented with large tusks, Tahecai. Every one must allow, that this story is just as natural as that of Hercules destroying the Hydra, or the more modern one of Jack, the giant-killer; nor do I find, that there is any moral couched under it, any more than under most old fables of the same kind, which have been received as truths only during the prevalence of the same ignorance that marked the character of the ages in which they were invented. It, however, has not been improperly introduced, as serving to express the horror and detestation entertained here, against those who feed on human flesh. And yet, from some

circumstances, I have been led to think, that the natives of these isles were formerly cannibals. Upon asking Omiah, he denied it stoutly; yet mentioned a fact within his own knowledge, which almost confirms such an opinion. When the people of Bolabola, one time, defeated those of Huahaine, a great number of his kinsmen were slain. But one of his relations had afterwards an opportunity of revenging himself, when the Bolabola men were worsted in their turn, and cutting a piece out of the thigh of one of his enemies, he broiled and eat it. I have, also, frequently considered the offering of the person's eye, who is sacrificed, and offered to the chief, as a vestige of a custom which once really existed to a greater extent, and is still commemorated by this emblematical ceremony.

The being inviolable with the maro, and the preference at human sacrifices, seem to be peculiar characteristics of the sovereign. To these, perhaps, may be added the blowing a conch-shell, which produces a very loud sound. On hearing it, all his subjects are obliged to bring food of every sort to his royal residence, in proportion to their abilities. On some occasions, they carry their veneration for his very name, to an extravagant and very destructive pitch. For if, on his accession to the maro, any words in their language be found to have a resemblance to it in found, they are changed for others; and if any man be bold enough not to comply, and continue to use those words, not only he, but all his relations, are immediately put to death. The same severity is exercised toward those who shall presume to apply this sacred name to any animal. And, agreeably to this custom of his countrymen, Omiah used to express his indignation, that the English should give the names of prince or princess to their favourite dogs and horses. But while death is the punishment for making use of the name of their sovereign, if abuse be only levelled at his government, the offender escapes with the forfeiture of land and houses. The king never enters the house of any of his subjects, but has in every district, where he visits, houses belonging to himself. And if, at any time, he should be obliged, by accident, to deviate from this rule, the house thus honoured with his presence, and every part of its furniture, is burnt. His subjects not only uncover to him, when present, down to the waist; but if he be at any particular place, a pole, having a piece of cloth tied to it, is set up somewhere near, to which they pay the same honours. The brothers are also initiated to the first part of the ceremony; but the women only uncover to the females of the royal family: in short, they seem even superstitious in their respect to him, and esteem his person little less than sacred. And it is, perhaps, to these circumstances, that he owes the quiet possession of his dominions. For even the people of Tiaraboo allow him the same honours as his right; though at the same time, they look upon their own chief as more powerful; and say, that he would succeed to the government of the whole island, should the present reigning family become extinct. This is the more likely, as Wahetadooa not only possesses Tiaraboo, but many districts of Oporenoo. His territories, therefore, are almost equal, in extent, to those of Otoo; and he has, besides, the advantage of a more populous and fertile part of the island. His subjects, also, have given proofs of their superiority; by frequent victories over those of Otaheite-nore, whom they affect to speak of as contemptible warriors, either to be worsted, if, at any time, their chief should wish to put it to the test.

The ranks of people, besides the etee de hoi, and the family, are the tees, or powerful chiefs; the maro, huone, or vassals; and the teou or toutou, servants, or rather slaves. The men of each of these, according to the regular institution, form their connections with women of their respective ranks; but if with any inferior one, which frequently happens, and a child be born, it is preserved, and has the rank of the father, unless he happens to be an eree, in which case it is killed. If a woman of condition should chuse an inferior person to officiate as an husband, the children he has by her are killed; and should a toutou be caught in an intrigue

with a woman of the blood-royal, he is put to death. The son of the eree de hoi succeeds his father in title and honours, as soon as he is born; but if he should have no children, the brother assumes the government at his death. In other families, possessions always descend to the eldest son; but he is obliged to maintain his brothers and sisters, who are allowed houses on his estates.

"The boundaries of the several districts, into which Otaheite is divided, are generally, either rivulets, or low hills, which in many places, jut out into the sea. But the subdivisions into particular property, are marked by large stones, which have remained from one generation to another. The removal of any of these gives rise to quarrels, which are decided by arms; each party bringing his friends into the field. But if any one complain to the eree de hoi, he terminates the difference amicably. This is an offence, however, not common; and long custom seems to secure property here as effectually as the most severe laws do in other countries. In conformity also to ancient practice established among them, crimes of a less general nature are left to be punished by the sufferer, without referring them to a superior. In this case, they seem to think, that the injured person will judge as equitably as those who are totally unconcerned; and as long custom has allotted certain punishments of different sorts, he is allowed to inflict them, without being amenable to any other person. Thus, if any one be caught stealing, which is commonly done in the night, the proprietor of the good may put the thief instantly to death; and if any one should enquire of him after the deceased, it is sufficient to acquit him, if he only informs them of the provocation he had to kill him. But so severe a punishment is seldom inflicted, unless the articles that are stolen be reckoned very valuable, such as breast plates, and plaited hair. If only cloth, or even hogs be stolen, and the thief escape, upon his being afterward discovered, if he promise to return the same number of pieces of cloth, or of hogs, no farther punishment is inflicted. Sometimes, after keeping out of the way for a few days, he is brought in, or at most, gets a slight beating. If a person kill another in a quarrel, the friends of the deceased assemble, and engage the survivor and his adherents. If they conquer, they take possession of the house, lands, and goods, of the other party; but if conquered, the reverse takes place. If a manahoe kills the toutou, or slave of a chief, the latter sends people to take possession of the lands and house of the former, who flies either to some other part of the island, or to some of the neighbouring islands.

After some months he returns, and finding his stock of hogs much increased, he offers a large present of these, with red feathers, and other articles, to the toutou's master, who generally accepts the compensation, and permits him to repossess his house and lands. This practice is the height of venality and injustice; and the slaves of the slave seems to be under no farther necessity of *atoning*, than to impose upon the lower class of people, who are the sufferers. For it does not appear, that the chief has the least power to punish this manahoe; but the whole management marks a collusion between him and his superior, to gratify the revenge of the former, and the avarice of the latter. Indeed, we need not wonder, that the killing of a man should be considered as so venial an offence among a people, who do not consider it as any crime to murder their own children. When talking to them about such instances of unnatural cruelty, and asking, whether the chiefs or principal were not angry, and did not punish them? I was told, that the chief neither could nor would interfere in such cases; and that every one had a right to do with his own child what he pleased.

"Though the productions, the people, the customs and manners of all the islands in the neighbourhood, may, in general, be reckoned the same as at Otaheite, there are a few differences which should be mentioned, as this may lead to an enquiry about more material ones hereafter, if such there be, of which we

are now ignorant. With regard to the little island of Mataia, or Osnaburgh Island, which lies twenty leagues east of Otaheite, and belongs to a chief of that place, who gets from thence a kind of tribute: there a different dialect from that of Otaheite is spoken. The men of Mataia also wear their hair very long; and when they fight, cover their arms with a substance which is beset with sharks teeth, and their bodies with a sort of shagreen, being skin of fishes. At the same time, they are ornamented with polished pearl shells, which make a prodigious glittering in the sun; and they have a very large one that covers them before, like a shield or breast-plate. But Otaheite is remarkable for producing great quantities of that delicious fruit we called apples, which are found in none of the other islands, except Eimeo. It has also the advantage of producing an odoriferous wood, called Eahoi, which is highly valued at the other isles, where there is none; nor in the fourth-east peninsula, or Tiaraboo, though joining it. Huahine and Eimeo again, are remarkable for producing greater quantities of yams than the other islands. And at Mouroua there is a particular bird, found upon the hills, much esteemed for its white feathers; at which place there is also said to be some of the apples, though it be the most remote of the Society Islands from Otaheite and Eimeo, where they are produced.

"Though the religion of all the islands be the same, each of them has its particular or tutelary god, whose names, according to the best information I could obtain, are enumerated in the following list.

GOES	of the	ISLES.
Tanne	-	Huahine
Ooro	-	Uliceta
Tanne	-	Otaha
Olla	-	Bolabola
Otoo, ee weiaho	-	Mouroua
Tamouee	-	Toobae
Taroa	-	{ Tabooymanoo, or Saunders's Island, subject to Huahine.
Ooro hadoo	-	Eimeo
Ooro	-	{ Otaheite and Otaheite nooe
Opoonoo and Whaotooree	}	Tiaraboo
Tooboo, roobooai and Ry maraiva	}	{ Mataia or Osnaburgh Island
Taunaree	-	The low islands eastward.

"Besides the cluster of high islands from Mataia to Mouroua inclusive, the people of Otaheite are acquainted with a low uninhabited island, which they name Mopeeha, and seems to be Howe's Island, laid down to the westward of Mouroua in our late charts of this ocean. To this the inhabitants of the most leeward islands sometimes go. There are also several low islands to the north-eastward of Otaheite, which they have sometimes visited, but not constantly; and are said to be only at the distance of two days sail with a fair wind. They are thus named Mataeava, Oanaa or Oatmah, Taboohoe, Awehee, Kaora, Orootooa, and Otavao, where are large pearls.

"The inhabitants of these islands come frequently to Otaheite and the other neighbouring high islands, from whose natives they differ in being of a darker colour, with a fiercer aspect, and differently punctured. I was informed, that at Mataeava, and others of them, it is the custom for the men to give their daughters to strangers who arrive among them; but the pairs must be five nights lying near each other, without presuming to proceed farther. On the sixth evening, the father of the young woman treats his guest with tood, and informs his daughter, that the man that night receive him as her husband. The stranger, however, must not offer to express the least dislike, though the bedfellow allotted him be ever so disagreeable; for this is considered as an unpardonable affront, and is punished with

with death. Forty men of Bolobola, who, incited by curiosity, had roamed as far as Mataeva in a canoe, were treated in this manner; one of them having incautiously mentioned his dislike of the woman who fell to his lot, in the hearing of a boy who informed her father. In consequence of this, the Mataevans fell upon them; but these warlike people killed three times their own number, though with the loss of all their party except five. Those hid themselves in the woods, and took an opportunity, when the others were burying their dead, to enter some houses, where, having provided themselves with victuals and water, they carried them on board a canoe, in which they made their escape; and, after passing Maraia, at which they would not touch, at last arrived safe at Eimeo. The Bolabolans, however, were sensible enough that their travellers had been to blame; for a canoe from Mataeva arriving some time after at Bolobola, so far were they from retaliating upon them for the death of their countrymen, that they acknowledged they had deserved their fate, and treated their visitors with much hospitality. These low isles are, doubtless, the farthest navigation, which those of Otahete, and the Society Islands, perform at present. It seems to be a groundless supposition, made by *Monf. de Bougainville*, by whom we are told, that these people sometimes navigate at the distance of more than three hundred leagues. I do not believe they make voyages of this prodigious extent; for it is reckoned a sort of prodigy, that a canoe, once driven by a storm from Otahete, should have fallen in with *Mopecha*, or *Howe's Island*, though so near, and directly to leeward. The knowledge that they have of other distant islands is, no doubt, traditional; and has been communicated to them by the natives of those islands, driven accidentally upon their coasts, who, besides giving them the names, could easily inform them of the direction in which the places lie from whence they came, and of the number of days they had been upon the sea. In this manner, it may be supposed, that the natives of *Wateco* have increased their catalogue by the addition of Otahete, and its neighbouring isles, from the people we met with there, and also of the other islands they had heard of. We may thus account for that extensive knowledge attributed by the gentlemen of the *Endeavour*, to *Tupia*, in such matters. And, with all due deference to his veracity, I presume that it was, by the same means of information, that he was able to direct the ship to *Ohe-teroa*, without having ever been there himself, as he pretended; which, on many accounts, is very improbable." Here ends *Mr. Anderson's* strictures on Otahete, and its neighbouring islands.

One year and five months had now elapsed, since our departure from England; during which period we had not been, upon the whole, unprofitably employed. Captain Cook was sensible, that, with respect to the principal object of his instructions, our voyage might be considered, at this time, as only at its commencement; and therefore, his attention to whatever might contribute towards our safety and final success, was now to be exerted, as it were, anew. We had, with this view, examined into the state of our provisions at the islands we had last visited; and having now, on leaving them, proceeded beyond the extent of former discoveries, an accurate survey was ordered to be taken of all the stores that were in each ship, that, by being fully informed of the quantity and condition of every article, we might know how to use them to the greatest advantage. We had also, before we had quitted the Society Isles, taken every opportunity of enquiring of the natives, whether there were any islands situate in a northerly or north-westerly direction from them, but it did not appear that they knew of any.

We should now proceed with the progress of the voyage, after our leaving the Society Islands; but shall defer it for the commencement of the next chapter; in order to lay before our readers an historical and geographical account of the north-west parts of North America, beginning from the isthmus of Darien: also an account of the most remarkable islands situated in

the high latitudes, which, with the descriptions already given, in the course of this work, of several islands in the Indian seas, will form a complete, full, and perfect history of all the places, old and new discoveries, mentioned and touched at, by all our most celebrated circumnavigators: for which account, we acknowledge ourselves chiefly indebted to that much admired and approved work, *MILLAR'S NEW AND UNIVERSAL SYSTEM OF GEOGRAPHY*, now publishing in eight weekly numbers, price only Sixpence each, emb. Vign. with Copper-plates; and may be had of the Publisher, *Mr. Hogg*, in *Paternoster-row*, or of any Bookseller, *Newcastle, or Stationer, in Great-Britain, Ireland, &c.*

Americus Vespucio, a Florentine by birth, being in 1497, sent to improve the discoveries made in 1491, by *Columbus*, gave to the fourth quarter of the world the name of America. This vast continent, (at least what has hitherto been discovered) reaches from latitude 78 deg. N. to 56 deg. S. That is 134 degrees, which, taken in a straight line, amount to upwards of 8040 miles in length. Its breadth is very irregular, being in some places 3790 miles, and in others, as at the distance of *Darien* or *Panama*, not above 60 or 70. The boundaries ascribed to it, are the land about the pole on the north; *Atlantic Ocean*, which separates it from Europe and Asia on the east; another vast ocean on the south, and the *Pacific Ocean*, usually called the *South Sea*, which divides it from Asia on the west. How or when America was first peopled, cannot be ascertained; but it is most likely to have been from the north of Asia; for the natives of both these parts still bear a great resemblance to one another in many respects. North America, which constitutes a grand division of this vast continent, and of which we propose now to treat, is separated from the southern part by the isthmus of *Darien*, and extends from that isthmus to within a few degrees of the north pole. In the period of more than two centuries and a half, geographers were not able to ascertain the limits of the northern extremity; this was a task to be performed by Captain Cook in his third and last voyage.

Old Mexico, or New Spain, a rich and extensive country, was once a mighty empire, ruled by its own monarchs, till the Spaniards, by whom it was at first discovered, in 1598, afterwards conquered it, under the command of *Fernando Cortez*. It lies between seven degrees thirty minutes, and thirty degrees forty minutes north latitude, is 2000 miles long, 600 broad where widest, has the isthmus of *Darien* on the south, *New Mexico* on the north, the gulph of *Mexico* on the east, and the *Pacific Ocean* on the west. It is divided into the provinces of *Guadalajara*, *Mexico*, and *Guamala*, and is governed by a viceroy. Mexico, considering its situation in the torrid zone, enjoys a temperate air. No country under heaven abounds more with grain, delicious fruits, roots, and vegetables. On the western coast, near the *Pacific Ocean*, are some high mountains, most of which are said to be volcanoes. Several rivers rise in these mountains, and fall, some into the gulph of *Mexico*, and some into the *South Sea*, on both which there are several capes and bays. In the rocky, barren parts of the country are the gold and silver mines. There are, it is said, several of the former, and no fewer than one thousand of the latter. Gold is also found in grains or dust, in the sands of rivers or torrents. Whoever discovers a mine of gold or silver, is at liberty to work it, paying the king a tenth of the produce, and limiting himself within fifty yards round the place upon which he has fixed. All the silver and gold dug or found in grains, is entered in the royal exchequer; and it is reported, that notwithstanding great quantities are run and concealed, no less than two millions of silver marks, weighing eight ounces each, are entered yearly, out of which they run seven hundred thousand marks into pieces of eight, quarter pieces, rials, and half-pieces, the latter being about three-pence sterling value. The trade of Spanish America has been carried on for some years past by vessels, called *regiller ships*; and the chief commodities of this country are gold, silver, exquisite marble,

h the descriptions already
ork, of several islands in
complete, full, and perfect
old and new discoveries,
y all our most celebrated
account, we acknowledge
that much admired and
EW and UNIVERSAL
new publishing in eight
see each, emb. Titled with
the Publisher, Mr. Hoog,
Bookeller, New-Jarvis, or
and, &c.

entine by birth, being in
overies made in 1491, by
quarter of the world the
inent, (at least what has
es from latitude 78 deg.
egrees, which, taken in a
ing in some places 3000
e distance of Darien or
The boundaries ascribed
le on the north; Atlan-
on Europe and Asia on
on the south, and the
the South Sea, which
How or when Ame-
e ascertained; but it is
e the north of Asia; for
ill bear a great refer-
pects. North Ame-
d division of this vast
opose now to treat, it
art by the isthmus of
isthmus to within a
In the period of more
geographers were not
e northern extremity;
by Captain Cook in his

a rich and extensive
ire, ruled by its own
whom it was at
conquered it, under
tez. It lies between
d thirty degrees forty
miles long, 600 broad
Darien on the south,
gulph of Mexico on
n the west. It is di-
alajana, Mexico, and
a victory. Mexico,
orrid zone, enjoys a
ler heaven abounds
oots, and vegetable
ific Ocean, are some
said to be volcanoes,
ains, and fall, some
me into the South
ral capes and bays.
country are the gold
said, several of the
usand of the latter,
ust, in the sands of
vers a mine of gold
paying the king a
himself within fifty
he has fixed. All
grains, is entered
reported, that not
and concealed, no
ss, weighing eight
of which they con-
o pieces of eight,
ces, the latter be-
e. The trade of
on for some years
; and the chief
J, silver, exquisite
marble,

marble, porphyry, jasper, precious stones, pearls,
amber, ginger, tobacco, hides, tallow, salt, dying woods,
drugs, ballams, honey, feathers, chocolate, cochineal,
silk, sugar, cotton, wool, &c. The inhabitants are,
at present, a mixed people, consisting of Indians,
Spaniards, and other Europeans; the creoles, mesti-
choes, or issue of the Spaniards by Americans, the
mestichoes, or the issue of such issue; the tercerons
dez Indies; or the children of the last, married to
Spaniards; and the quarteroons dez Indies, whose
descendants are allowed the same privileges as true
Spaniards. The negroes are likewise pretty numerous,
being imported from the coast of Africa for various
purposes, and many of them admitted to their freedom.
The issue of an European and a negro constitutes
another distinction, called mulatto; besides all which
there is a mixed breed of negroes and Indians, which
is generally deemed the lowest rank.

The principal places are (1) Mexico, which stands
in the middle of a great lake of its own name, about
one hundred and seventy miles west of the gulph of
Mexico. The number of inhabitants is computed at
three hundred thousand; most of them live beyond
their fortunes, and terminate a life of profusion in the
most wretched indigence. A prodigious quantity of
jewels, gold and silver plate, and toys, together with
the most valuable commodities of Europe and Asia,
are exposed to sale in the streets.

California, a peninsula, is the most northern of all
the Spanish dominions on the continent of America.
It extends from the north coasts into the Pacific Ocean,
800 miles from Cape Sebastian, in 43 deg. 30 min.
north latitude, towards the south-east as far as Cape St.
Lucar, in 22 degrees, 32 minutes, north latitude. The
eastern coast lies nearly parallel with that of Mexico
opposite to it, and the sea between is called the lake
or gulph of California. Its breadth is very unequal;
towards the north it is near 200 miles, but at the south
extremity it tapers away, and is scarcely 50 miles over.
The more southern part was known to the Spaniards
soon after the discovery of Mexico; for Cortez dis-
covered it in 1535, but they did not till lately penetrate
far into it, contenting themselves with the pearl fishery
there. Several kinds of fruit are produced here;
there are two species of deer peculiar to this country;
also a particular breed of sheep, buffaloes, beavers, or
animals much resembling them, a peculiar species of
wild hogs, lions, wild cats, and many other wild
beasts. The horses, mules, oxen, and other quadru-
ped, that have been imported hither from Spain and
Mexico, multiply exceedingly. Of the two species of
deer peculiar to California, that called taye by the
natives is greatly esteemed, and its flesh as well tailed as
venison. The coast is plentifully stocked with birds,
and there is a great variety of fish in the gulph of Ca-
lifornia, the Pacific Ocean, and the rivers. Though
insects swarm here, as in most hot countries, yet on
account of the dryness of the soil and climate, they are
neither noxious nor troublesome. There is one of the
richest pearl fisheries in the world, on the coast, and
there are supposed to be mines in the country. Here
are two considerable rivers, namely, Rio Colorado,
and Rio du Carmel, with several smaller streams, and
fine ports, creeks, and roads both on the east and west
side, which is the reason of its having been so much
frequented by English privateers. There are, in the
heart of the country, plains of salt quite firm, and
clear as crystal. A great variety of savage tribes inhabit
California. Those who live on the east side of the
peninsula are great enemies to the Spaniards; but in
other parts, they seem to be very hospitable to all
strangers. The inland country, especially towards
the north, is populous. The Indians resemble those
described in other parts of America.

Siberia, a part of Russian Tartary, is bounded by the
Frozen Ocean on the north; by China, and the Pacific
Ocean, on the east; by Tibet, Ulbeck Tartary, the
Caspian Sea, and Astracan Tartary, on the south;
and by European Russia, on the west; and is situate
between sixty and one hundred and thirty degrees of

eastern longitude, and between forty and seventy-two
degrees of north latitude, being upwards of two thou-
sand miles in length, and one thousand five hundred in
breadth.

The Tobel and Irtis are the chief cities of Siberia,
which running from north to south, join the Oby, the
united stream falling into the Frozen Ocean, and di-
viding Asia from Europe: the Lena and Jenissa, which
run from north to south, fall also into the Frozen
Ocean: the Yamour and Argun, which divide the
Russian from the Chinese dominions, whose united
streams fall into the bay of Corea. There are also a
great many large lakes in this vast tract of land, of
which the largest are those of Baikal and Kisan.

The only part of Siberia, fit for human beings to
live in, is the southern, where the soil appears to be
capable of cultivation, and that it might be rendered
fertile; but, for want of inhabitants, very little corn is
produced. But the northern part exhibits nothing but
impenetrable woods, snow-topped mountains, fens, lakes,
marshes, &c. and, being exposed to the bleak winds,
is quite barren and desolate. Not a bird appears to
give notice of any change of season; even rooks and
magpies quit these deserts, where nature becomes quite
torpid. The natives are obliged to make passages
through heaps of snow, and the delights of summer are
not experienced here but about three months, during
which short space of time the inhabitants sow rye, oats,
pease, and barley; but these seldom repay the husband-
man's toil. The natives are generally shut up in their
cottages for nine months in the year, scarcely ever
venturing out: fir-trees of considerable height bend
under the weight of snow; a melancholy gloom spreads
all around, and the stillness is interrupted only by
the cries of some wretched travellers in sledges. To
these dreary regions the czars of Muscovy banish their
courtiers and other great persons who incur their dis-
pleasure. Some are banished for a limited term of
years, and others for life, with the allowance only of one
penny per day, and sometimes without any allowance
at all; so that, as they are sent destitute from court,
these miserable exiles pass a most dreadful life. They
thoot for their livelihood, and are obliged to send an
annual tribute of furs to the czars, or they are most
severely punished by the task-masters.

Kamtshatka. This peninsula is bounded on the
east by the ocean, which separates it from America;
its western boundary is Penshintka. The southern
part is in 51 degrees north latitude, and in 143 degrees
east longitude from London. This peninsula is di-
vided into two parts by a chain of hills running from
north to south. Its chief rivers are the Awatcha,
Kamtshatka, the Teghil, and what is called the Great
River. There are many extensive lakes in it.

Their spring and summer do not continue more than
four months; but the latter is far from being agree-
able; for as the adjacent hills are covered with snow,
the air, even in the middle of summer, is sometimes
pretty cold, attended with frequent rains; the winter
however is not very inclement.

In many places mines of iron and copper have been
discovered: the iron ore hath been found to be com-
pact, of a yellow colour, inclining to red; and, in some
parts, black metallic particles have been observed,
more compact than the rest of the ore. This ore,
when crude, could not be attracted by the load-stone,
but, when calcined, became so in a small degree. A
solid iron ore has also been discovered here, similar to
that found to the south-west of Echatereburg: its
surface was found to be covered with a yellow oker,
of a reddish brown in the breakings of its solid parts.
The ore, when crude, was not acted upon by the load-
stone, though, after calcination, slightly attracted by it.
The copper mines are like some of those produced
on the Hyphean mountains, having the malachites, in
the form of stalaclites and stataguites, in their cavities,
very beautiful, and capable of being polished.

There is great choice of timber for a variety of uses
in Kamtschatka, as well as abundance of shrubs of
divers kinds, they have also several excellent medi-

cial plants. Barley, oats, peas, turnips, &c. grow likewise here. The grass springs up so fast, that they have three harvests; and the blades are frequently five feet in height.

This country abounds with tame and wild fowls. The wild animals are, black and white bears, wolves, lynxes, boars, elks, and a kind of stag very much like the fallow-deer. The bear never attacks a man, unless they find him asleep, when they tear the scalp off the back part of the head, and sometimes intirely destroy him. Foxes are also very numerous, some are white, some redish-yellow; some grey, with a black streak on the back, and are much valued; the white ones, however, are also valued, as being scarcer. There are also black-chestnuts and blue breasted foxes; and they are in general too crafty for their pursuers, their sagacity exceeding that of the other species. The opulence of the country consists in its fables and ermines; the fables which are sold at a high price, excel those found in any other part of the globe: the natives eat the flesh, and esteem it a very fine food.

Here is also found the gulo, or glutton; likewise other kinds of beaver, as the atlas, rein-deer, and sayga. The natives collect themselves in companies to hunt these animals; they go at the close of the winter from the month of March to the end of April, taking provisions with them. The glutton, which hath a very fine fur, is a terrible enemy to the deer: it will dart itself from a tree upon a deer's back, and, fixing between the creature's horns, tears out his eyes: the afflicted animal, with excess of agony, falls to the ground, when the glutton strips his flesh from his bones.

Dogs are very numerous in this country: these resemble the European, and live much upon mice and fish; they scratch up the ground for the former, and seize the others from their streams. These dogs are extremely servicable to the natives, in drawing their sledges over the snow: in the most dreadful weather, they scarce ever lose their way.

Several sorts of amphibious animals are also in Kamtschatka. One is the sea-cow, about thirty feet in length, and weighing six or seven thousand pounds, the skin of which is so hard, that scarce an hatchet or axe will penetrate it. The flesh of a young sea-cow, when properly boiled, has a good taste; the lean part is somewhat like veal, and the fat part like pork. The method of catching this animal is, by an iron hook struck into it by some men in a small vessel, then by a rope held by people on shore, the sea-cow is drawn gradually to the land, while those in the vessel cut the creature with instruments in several parts of the body, till it expires. It is not very difficult to take the sea-cow from its elements, for it seldom raises its head above the surface of the water, though its sides and back are often seen.

Sea-horses and sea-cats are also met with here: the latter have long hairs standing out on each side of their mouths like those of a cat, and they weigh from five to eight thousand pounds: their eyes are as large as a bull's, and they will fly at people in boats; even if they are blinded by stones thrown at them, they will not retire, but gnaw the very stones that are thrown; however, when once deprived of sight, there is no great danger to be apprehended from them. The male and female differ both in form and disposition; so much in form, that they might be taken for different animals; and as to disposition, the female is mild, inoffensive, and timid: as a proof of this, when an attempt is made to seize a young sea-cat, and the male, by vigorously defending it, affords the female an opportunity of taking it off in its mouth; if, in this case, the female should happen to drop it, the male abandons its adversary, and, flying directly at the female, seizes her with all imaginable fury; when the latter, by licking his paws, and shewing every kind of submission, endeavours to mitigate his rage. The seas also abound with seals, which are caught by different methods: sometimes they are taken in the water, and at other times they are killed while sleeping on the rocks. Here are whales from seven to fifteen fathoms long.

Amongst a variety of fish, here is the sterlet, which is

so much like the sturgeon, that there is scarce any difference, except that it is smaller and more delicate; it is so fat that it may be fried without oil.

Some of the birds of Kamtschatka are, eagles, hawks, pelicans, swans, geese, wigcons, ducks, cuckows, magpies, snipes, partridges, &c. A bird called the neck diver is very curious; it has a beautiful spot on the lower part of its neck; beneath this spot, there are feathers of a brown colour in the middle, and edged all round with white; the breast, belly, and legs, are of a very beautiful white.

Sea-fowl are very numerous on the coast of the eastern ocean, as peacocks, sea-pies, green thanks, puffins, &c. Here too are the cormorant, sea-raven, and urile.

Clouds of dragon-flies, locusts, and gnats, are sometimes seen in this country. The latter are so troublesome, that the inhabitants are obliged to veil their faces, to avoid them. The dragon-flies, forming columns, fly with incredible swiftness.

The natives of Kamtschatka inhabit the southern part of the peninsula; the northern part is inhabited by the Koreki, and the southern by the Kuriles; but the Russians call the whole country Kamtschatka, though it has several names given it from particular circumstances. The Kamtschadales are short in stature, and resemble most of the other inhabitants of Siberia, except that their faces are somewhat shorter, their mouths larger, and their cheeks fuller; they have dark hair, hollow eyes, sharp noses, and tawny complexions; the latter is said to be principally owing to the influence of the sun reflected from the snow in the spring-season, when the snow lies thick on the ground. Some of the natives, who are obliged to be in the woods, cover their faces with a kind of netting, to prevent the effects of the sun-beams darting on the snow; for the eye-sight suffers by this refraction, as well as the complexion. These people dress in deer-skins, with the fur outwards; they use also, for this purpose, the skins of dogs and other animals. They often wear two coats, the sleeves of the outer coat reaching down to the knees; they have a hood to it, which in bad weather serves to cover the head; and they adorn the back part with streaks of skins, and sometimes of silks of different colours. The women wear the same sort of garments as the men, though their coat, or rather waistcoat, fits closer to their bodies, and is decorated with slips of red, blue, and yellow cloth, and sometimes ribband, or woollen lint. To this waistcoat is joined a sort of petticoat coming about half way down the leg. The men wear a leather belt round them, and their legs are covered with different coloured skins; they wear seal-skin caps or hats, and sometimes a cap or hat of birch bark; some have caps of brass-plaited. The women let their hair grow much longer than the men; they plait it, and hang brass trinkets to it: they have fur caps, that are black without, and white within. The men plait their hair, as well as the women. They never wash themselves, but live in a most beastly manner: they neither cut their nails, nor comb their hair. They eat raw flesh, carrion, stale fish, or any thing they can get, how filthy soever it be. They live in huts under ground, covered with grass, earth, and sometimes with the skins of the animals they have killed in the field, undressed, and yielding a noisome stench. They place benches in their huts, with a fire-place in one corner, and on these benches they repose themselves. Some of the huts are covered and lined with mats. These are their winter dwellings; nor are their summer retreats much more elegant, except that they are built on the surface of the earth, and with rather more regularity. These, it is true, are built upon pillows, with beams thrown across them, on which a floor is fixed, with a roof rising from each side to a central point; and, indeed it is necessary that their summer habitations should be thus high, else the inhabitants would be in continual danger from the wild beasts. They eat out of bowls, or troughs, with their dogs, and never wash them afterwards.

We shall now take notice of their marriages. When a man hath met with a young woman that he likes, he engages in the service of her parents, and, after the expiration

that there is scarce any difference and more delicate; it is without oil.

Kamtschatska are, eagles, hawks, ducks, crows, magpies, &c. A bird called the *chuk* has a beautiful spot on the middle, and edged all round, belly, and legs, arc of a

on the coast of the eastern green thanks, puffins, &c. sea-raven, and urile. The latter are so troublesome, obliged to veil their faces, flies, forming columns, fly

inhabit the southern part of the Kuriles; but the Kamtschatska, though it has particular circumstances in its stature, and resembles that of Siberia, except that their mouths larger, they have dark hair, hollow complexions; the latter is to the influence of the sun in the spring-season, when the woods, cover their faces to prevent the effects of the sun for the eye-sight suffers by complexion. These people turn outwards; they use skins of dogs and other animals for coats, the sleeves of the coats; they have a leather serves to cover the back part with threads of different colours. The gaiters as the men, fits closer to their legs of red, blue, and yellow, or woollen stuff. To prevent coming about the men wear a leather belt covered with different animal-kinds caps or hats, and some bark; some have caps to let their hair grow much, and hang brass trinkets, that are black without, to plait their hair, as well as wash themselves, but live they neither cut their nails, nor raw flesh, carrion, stale, how stinky foveer it be, and, covered with grass-skins of the animals they killed, and yielding a noise in their heels, and on these benches the huts are covered and their winter dwellings; not more elegant, except of the earth, and when it is true, are built upon poles, on which a from each side to a necessary that their summer, else the inhabitants from the wild beasts, with their dogs, and their marriages. When a woman that he likes, he parents, and, after the expiration

expiration of a limited time of servitude, obtains either permission to marry her, or is dismissed with a requital for his service. If he has leave to marry, the nuptials commence immediately, and the whole ceremony consists in stripping the bride naked, whose cloaths, however, are so fast bound by straps and girdles, that he finds it no easy task to accomplish his purpose; at this crisis several women shelter and protect her from him; who, however, seeking an opportunity to find her less guarded, makes fresh efforts to undress her: but if she cries out, and her exclamations bring assistance, the women who come fall upon the man, scratching his face, tearing his hair, and otherwise roughly treating him; till the bride, showing some concern for his situation, and the women becoming less violent in their assault, the man at length succeeds, and then retires from her, who however calls him back, and acknowledges in a soft plaintive tone, that he has conquered her. Thus the ceremony ends, and the next day the happy couple repair to the hut of the husband. In about a week afterwards they make a visit to the wife's parents, where they celebrate the marriage feast with the relations of both parties. Some of the men marry three wives, who in general live friendly together, and are never jealous. It is deemed a very capital offence in a woman to procure abortion, yet if twins are born, one of them must be destroyed. The women put their infants in a basket fastened to an elastic pole, which is easily moved with the foot, to rock them. As soon as they can stand on their legs, their mothers leave them to themselves, suffering them to roll on the ground any where; they are most commonly half naked, and begin to walk at a time when a child in Europe would not be able to stand.

These people never bury their dead, but often give them to the dogs; and say, that as the deceased are thus devoured by dogs, they will ensure to themselves a pleasant carriage in sledges drawn by fine dogs in the other world. This abominable custom, however, is not universally practised; some leaving their dead in their huts, and seek a new habitation. The apparel of the deceased person is always thrown away, from a superstitious notion, that whoever should wear it would meet with some dreadful calamity.

They travel on sledges drawn by dogs; their number is generally four, which are driven by a whip. The person in the sledge is seated on the right side of it, with his feet hanging over, and is obliged to balance himself with great care, lest the sledge should overfet. Where the roads are in tolerable condition, they can travel to a great distance in a short time, carrying with them provisions, &c. They sometimes travel, in this manner, about thirty wersts, that is, upwards of twenty-three miles in a day. They hunt the bear, among other animals; on which occasion they use rockets to walk upon the snow with, arming themselves with pikes, and taking dogs with them to provoke the animal. They then wait till he comes out of his enclosure, for they would attack him to great disadvantage while he remained there; because the snow being very firm in that place, the bear would be able to avail himself of all his strength; but the instant he comes out, he sinks into the snow, and while he is striving to disengage himself, the hunters with their pikes easily destroy him. They dress their seal-skins in the following manner: they first wet and spread out the skin, and with stones fixed in wood scrape off all the fat; then they rub it with caviar, roll it together, and tread on it; they afterwards scrape it again, and repeat the first part of their process till the skin is thoroughly cleaned and soft. They prepare in the same manner skins of beaver, deer, dogs, &c. When the men are not employed in hunting, or fishing, they weave mats, and construct sledges and boats; and in the spring and summer they procure the necessaries of life, and lay up a store for the succeeding winter. The women make shoes, few cloaths, dye skins, &c. they also make glue of the dried skins of fishes, and particularly of the male. They use a board of dry wood to light their fires; in this board are several round holes, into one of which putting the end of a small round stick, they

roll it backwards and forwards till the wood takes fire by the friction.

The people of this country are arrant cowards, and yet seem to despise life, through an innate kind of stupidity. They never attack their enemies openly, unless compelled to it; but steal privately to their huts, and treat them most barbarously, cutting them to pieces, and even tearing out their entrails: these cruelties are exercised with triumphs and shouts of joy. Whenever they hear of a foe advancing towards them, they retire to some mountain, and fortify it as strongly as possible: if there be a probability of the enemy getting the better of them, they immediately cut the throats of their wives and children, and then meet their assailants with a frantic rage, selling their lives as dear as possible. Their weapons are bows and arrows, and spears.

The religious notions of the Kamtschadales are pretty singular. They erect a sort of pillar on some plain, and cover it with a parcel of rags. Whenever they pass by this pillar, they throw at it some fish or flesh, and avoid killing any bird or beast near it. They think that woods and burning mountains are inhabited by evil spirits, whom they live in great fear of, and make them offerings; some of them have idols in their huts. They have a very imperfect idea of a supreme Being, and think he can neither dispense happiness nor misery: the name which they have for the Deity, is Kutchu. They reverence some particular animals, from which they apprehend danger, and sometimes offer fires at the holes of foxes; they implore wolves not to hurt them, and beseech amphibious animals not to overfet their boats. Many of them, however, adopt the Russian manners, and condemn the customs of their country; they have been instructed by Russian missionaries in the Christian religion; and schools have been erected for their children. They strictly observe the law of retaliation: if one man kills another, the relations of the person killed destroy the murderer. They punish theft, by burning the fingers of the thief. Before the Russians conquered them, they had such frequent intestine broils, that a year rarely passed without some village being entirely ruined.

Great havoc is made in this country by the small-pox. The scurvy, with the irregularities of parents, bring a variety of diseases upon their offspring, to cure which, they apply roots, herbs, &c. The manner in which these people live in their huts, and their excess of debauchery, contribute to make the venereal disease very frequent among them. They have a disorder called the *shlutok*, which is a sort of scab, to which they apply the raw skin of a hare to cause a suppuration. They are likewise subject to the palsy, jaundice, boils, cancers, and other disorders.

There are three volcanoes in Kamtschatska, the first is that of Awatcha, to the northward of the bay of that name; it is a chain of mountains, the base of which is covered with trees, and extends to the bay. The middle forms a kind of amphitheatre, and the various summits which are spiral cannot be viewed without exciting the most awful ideas. They always emit smoke, but rarely fire. There was indeed a terrible eruption of smoke and cinders in the summer of the year 1737, but it only continued one day; many of the cinders weighed almost two pound sword-poise. This eruption was the forerunner of a terrible earthquake, which happened on the 10th of the ensuing October, and in a quarter of an hour overturned all the tents and huts of the Kamtschadales, being accompanied by a singular ebbing and flowing of the sea, which at first rose to the height of twenty feet, then sunk, and retired to an unusual distance; it soon after rose higher than at first, and suddenly sinking again, retired to almost as far from the common low water mark, that it was for a considerable time lost to the eye. At length the earthquake was repeated, the sea returned once more, and rose to the height of two hundred feet, overwhelmed the whole coast, and then finally retired, after having destroyed the goods, cattle, and many of the lives of the inhabitants, and left several lakes of salt-water in the lower grounds and adjacent fields. The second volcano rises from some

Some mountains situated between the river of Kamtschatka and that of Tobolski. Nothing was ever known to exhale from this but smoke, till the year 1739, when it vomited a torrent of flames, which destroyed all the neighbouring forests. The third volcano issues from the highest mountains in Kamtschatka, on the banks of the river of that name. It is environed by a cluster of lesser mountains, and the head is rent into long crevices on every side. Its greatest eruption began September 25, 1737, and continued a week, which, with an earthquake that followed, did very considerable damage. In the southern extremity of Kamtschatka there are hot springs: they form rivulets, and run almost the length of the river Ozernaya which issues from the lake Kurilsky, and then join that stream; the waters, however, have no very considerable degree of heat in them.

There is a mountain near the river Pandia, from whose summit a prodigious cataract of boiling waters run to a considerable distance; and continue boiling up to the height of a foot, till they lose themselves in several lakes, which contain a great number of islands. From this mountain the inhabitants obtain some beautiful stones, on which they set a great value, on account of their admirable variegated colours, which are merely the effects of the different powers of heat, humidity, and friction; for these stones are washed from the mountains, and are polished by the abovementioned hot and impetuous waters.

During the winter, a great quantity of fish harbours in the river of Kamtschatka. In the spring when the ice breaks, they attempt to get to the sea; but the natives watch the heads of the rivers, and take a great number of them in 2 kind of nets; some they dry in the summer, and lay by for their winter food; and from others they extract the fat, or oil, by means of red hot stones, which they carefully reserve for a great variety of uses.

New Albion. This vast tract of land, and all the N. W. parts of America, are put down by all our geographers, in their maps and charts, as Terra incognita, or parts entirely unknown. Sir Francis Drake, indeed, discovered a port in nearly 40 deg. N. latitude, which he entered, and where he remained five weeks. In 1603 Martin Aguilar entered a strait in latitude 45 deg. N. and another was discovered by Juan de Fuca in 1592. All the other parts of the coast, except Cape Elias in latitude 60 deg. and some land discovered by the Spaniards, have remained objects of investigation, to be explored and accurately marked by our gallant Commander, Captain Cook, whose discoveries in these parts, as high as Cape Prince of Wales, near the Arctic Circle; together with an account of his death at an island, called O-whi-hee, near Kamtschatka, will be the subjects of some of the following chapters, in the continuation of this history of his third and last voyage, to which we shall now proceed.

C H A P. X.

The Resolution and Discovery, after their departure from the Society Isles, prosecute their voyage—Christmas Island discovered, where they are supplied plentifully with fish and turtle—A Solar Eclipse observed—Two mariners lose their way on shore—A singular method of refreshing himself practiced by one of these stragglers—An inscription left in a bottle—A description of Christmas Island—Three islands described—Others discovered—Their names—The whole group denominated Sandwich Islands—A complete account of their soil, productions, inhabitants, &c.—Customs of the natives agree with those of Tongataboo and Otahiti—Extent of this nation throughout the Pacific Ocean—And remarks on the useful situation of Sandwich Islands—The Resolution and Discovery proceed to the northward—Nautical observations made at Sandwich Islands—Progress of the voyage—Arrival of the two ships on the coast of America—Description of the country—Difficulties of Cape Fear weather—Stormy, and unfavourable winds—Strictures on Martin Aguilar's River, and fallacy of Juan de Fuca's pretended strait—The Resolution and Discovery anchor in an inlet in Hope Bay, where they are visited by numbers of the natives—An account of their behaviour—The two ships enter the sound, and moor in a commodious harbour—Various incident and transactions, during our intercourse with the natives—Their behaviour at the villages, while we made a progress round the sound—A remarkable visit from strangers—A second visit to one of the villages—Grass purchased—Departure of the ships after an exchange of presents—Directions for sailing into the sound—Its name—A curious and entertaining description, with several curious observations, on the adjacent country, and its inhabitants—Remarks on, and specimen of the language in Nootka Sound—Astronomical and nautical remarks—A storm after leaving the sound, in which the Resolution springs a leak—The strait of Admiral de Fonte passed unexamined.

ON Monday the 8th of December, having quitted Bolabola, and the Society Isles, we steered to the northward, with the wind between N. E. and E. scarce ever having it in the S. E. point, till after we had crossed the equator; nor did we meet with any thing by which the vicinity of land was indicated, till we began, about the latitude of 8 deg. S. to see boobies, men-of-war birds, terns, tropic birds, and a few other sorts. Our longitude, at this time, we found to be 205 deg. east. In the night, between the 22nd, and 23d, we passed the line; and, on Wednesday the 24th, soon after day-break, we descried land, bearing N. E. by E. We perceived upon a nearer approach, it was one of those low islands, so frequently met with in this ocean between the tropics; that is, a narrow bank of land, inclosing a sea or lake within. In two or three places we saw some cocoa-nut trees; but the land in general has a very sterile aspect. It extended, at noon, from N. E. by E. to S. by E. half E. and distant about four miles. On the western side we found the depth of water to be from forty to fourteen fathoms, over a sandy bottom. The Captain, being of opinion that turtle might be procured at this island, resolved to examine it; accordingly, we dropped our anchors in thirty fathoms water; and a boat was immediately dispatched to search for a commodious landing place. When she returned, the

officer who had been employed in this search, reported that he found no place where a boat could land; but that fish greatly abounded in the shoal water, without the breakers. On the 25th, being Christmas-day, two boats were sent, one from each ship, to examine more accurately whether it was practicable to land; and, at the same time, two others were ordered out, to fish at a grappling near the shore. These last returned about eight o'clock, A. M. with as many fish as weighed upwards of two hundred weight. Encouraged by this success, they were dispatched again after breakfast, and the Captain himself went in another boat to view the coast, and attempt landing, which, however, he found to be impracticable. The two boats that had been sent on the same search, returned about noon; and the master belonging to the Resolution, reported to Captain Cook, that about four or five miles to the northward, he had discovered a break in the land, and a channel into a lagoon, consequently there was a proper place for landing; and that he had found off this entrance the same soundings as we had where we now were stationed. On the strength of this report, we weighed, and, after two or three tugs, anchored again over a bottom of fine dark sand, before a little island lying at the mouth of the lagoon, on each side of which is a channel leading into it, but fit only for boats; the water in the la-

forgot for the moment, the pains of their lacerated bodies, though all torn with briars and besmeared with blood, and comforted themselves with this dawn of deliverance; but they had still much to suffer; for when they rushed with extasy from the cover, and came to survey the open country, they discovered to their great mortification, that they were yet at a great distance from the neck of land, over which their people had passed; that this opening had brought them to another creek or inlet of the sea, and that they had yet to travel round a vast circle of the thicket before they could come to the bay that was even now scarce within their knowledge. On this discovery, despair had almost taken place of hope, when they heard, or thought they heard, a sound like that of a man's voice far within the thicket. This, in a short time, was answered by a sound not unlike the former, but fainter. It was then rightly conjectured that these sounds proceeded from men sent in search of them, and they all endeavoured to raise a halloo in their turn; but their throats were so parched, that with their utmost efforts they could scarce rise above a whisper. They now lamented the waste of powder, which they had fruitlessly expended during the night in making signals of distress, and rummaged their cases to muster up a single charge. This, in some measure, had the desired effect. The report was heard by one of the seamen who were in pursuit of them (as will be seen hereafter) both of whom had been struggling with equal difficulties, and toiling under greater incumbrances, without the least prospect of succeeding in their search. These men were now bewildered themselves, and hallooted to each other, as well for the sake of keeping company, as for signals to the gentlemen, should they be within hearing. By this time the day was far advanced; and partly with fatigue and for want of refreshment, the gentlemen were almost spent; they had been ever since the morning's dawn engaged in the most painful exertion of bodily strength, to extricate themselves from the labyrinth in which they had been involved, that ever men experienced, and by consequence to an equal waste of spirits, without any thing to recruit them; and now, though less entangled, they were more exposed to the heat of the sun, which brought on an intolerable thirst that was no longer supportable; they therefore, as the last resource, repaired to the nearest beach, where, to their comfort, they found a turtle, killed it, and drank the blood, in order to allay their thirst. One of them then undressed himself, and lay down for a short time in the shallow water; a singular method of refreshing himself, when fatigued. After this they took shelter in the hollow of a rock till the violent heat abated, during which time a refreshing sleep gave them some relief, and enabled them to perform a journey of three or four leagues, which, otherwise, they must have perished before they could have accomplished. When they arrived at the hut, to their great concern, they found it deserted, and destitute of every kind of provisions; but calling their eyes towards the ships, they perceived the boats hastening to their relief. The crew, and the officer who attended them, waited at the hut, till all their provisions were expended, and, not knowing how to proceed, had repaired to the ship for a fresh supply, and fresh orders; and he was now returning fully furnished and instructed. On his arrival, he was struck with astonishment at the sight of three such miserable objects as the gentlemen and the gunner's mate appeared to be. Their cry was for grog, which was dealt to them sparingly, and they were conveyed on board to be properly taken care of. The first enquiry they made was, whether any of the ship's company had been sent after them? And being answered in the affirmative, and that they were not yet returned, they could not help expressing their doubts whether they would return: adding their wishes at the same time, that no means might be omitted to effect their recovery. Natural it is for men who have just experienced any signal deliverance, to feel poignantly for the safety of others under the same critical circumstances. It was therefore no small satisfaction, when they were

told, that every possible means would be tried for their relief; and to enable them, who were to be sent on that errand, the better to direct their search, the gentlemen described as well as they could, the place where they were heard. The evening, however, was now too far advanced, to undertake with any probability of success, their deliverance. There were now twenty of the crew (seamen and marines) who had been dispatched from on board, for recovering the gentlemen. These had orders from Captain Clerke, to traverse the thicket in a body, till they should find them either living or dead, for, till the gentlemen appeared, nothing could be concluded with certainty concerning them. The majority were of opinion, that, if they had been alive, they would certainly have returned as soon as it was dark, as they could have no motive to pursue their sport in the night; and it was by no means probable, that they should be bewildered, because they might surely have found the same way out of the cover, by which they went into it. This was very plausible; but some on board, who had sailed with Commodore Byron, and who remembered the almost impenetrable thickets in the island of Tinian, where men could not see one another in the open day, at the distance of three yards, knew well how the gentlemen might be entangled, and how hard it would fare with them if it should so happen.

Early in the morning the party, and their plan of proceeding were formed, which was to march in lines at such a distance from each other, as to be within hearing, and their rout was propounded to be towards the spot where the sound of the voices was heard by the gentlemen. After a diligent search of six hours, Bartholomew Loreman was discovered in a most miserable condition, almost blinded by the venomous bites of the vermin, added to the scorching heat of the sun, and speechless for want of something to eat. He made signs for water, and some was given him. He was moving about, but totally stupid, having no sense of danger, or of the miserable condition in which he was found. It fortunately happened, that the boats from both ships were previously sent round the point of land, and planted along the coast, as it trended, for the convenience of taking the gentlemen on board, in case they should have been found strayed to any considerable distance. Had this precaution not been observed, the man must have perished before he could have been conveyed by any other means to the place of rendezvous, as it was with the utmost difficulty that he was carried to the nearest boat. As soon as he could be brought to his speech, he said, that he had parted from his companion Trecher, in the morning, not in anger, but by reason of a difference in opinion about the way back. He said, they had travelled the day before as long as they could in search of the gentlemen without success, and that when overcome with fatigue, they sat down to refresh, and he believed, drank a little too freely of their grog, which occasioned them both to fall asleep. They were frightened when they awoke to find it night; and although they felt their faces and hands covered with vermin, the thoughts of having neglected their duty, and the dread of the consequences, so distracted their minds, that they were not sensible of any other pain. As rest was now no longer their object, they rose and wandered, they neither knew nor cared where, till day began to break upon them, and then they endeavoured to recollect their way, with a view to rejoin their companions; but, after walking and winding about, as they could find a passage through the bushes, they at last began to discover that they were going from the place of rendezvous instead of making towards it. Fatigued to the last degree with walking, and perplexed in their minds, they began to grow careless about living or dying, and in that humour fat down to lighten their burden by making an end of their grog and provisions. This they had no sooner done, than sleep again surprized them, and notwithstanding the vermin, with which they found themselves covered when they awoke, they found themselves again in the dark, and again rose up to wander about, which they continued to do as before, lamenting

would be tried for their
to be sent on that
their search, the gentlemen
the place where they were
er, was now too far ad-
ny probability of success,
now twenty of the crew
had been dispatched from
gentlemen. These had
to traverse the thicket in a
m either living or dead,
d, nothing could be con-
ing them. The majority
y had been alive, they
as soon as it was dark, as
pursue their sport in the
ans probable, that they
e they might surely have
e cover, by which they
plausible; but some on
Commodore Byron, and
impenetrable thickets in
en could not see one ano-
distance of three yards,
n might be entangled,
th them if it should be

party, and their plan of
ch was to march in lines
other, as to be within
pposed to be towards the
voices was heard by the
earch of six hours, Bar-
erch in a most insufferable
the venomous bites of
orching heat of the sun,
ething to eat. He made
as given him. He was
pid, having no sense of
ndition in which he was
ed, that the boats from
round the point of land,
it trended, for the com-
men on board, in case
ayed to any considerable
n not been observed, the
he could have been con-
he place of rendezvous,
eulty that he was carried
he could be brought to
parted from his compa-
n in anger, but by re-
n about the way back.
e-day before as long as
demen without success,
atigue, they sat down to
k a little too freely of
hem both to fall asleep,
y awoke to find it night;
ees and hands covered
having neglected their
sequences, so distracted
ot sensible of any other
er their object, they rose
ew nor cared where, till
and then they endeav-
th a view to rejoin their
y and winding about, at
gh the bushes, they at
were going from the
of making towards it.
walking, and perplexed
ow careless about living
at down to lighten their
eir grog and provision.
an sleep again surprised
ermin, with which they
they awoke, they found
d again rose up to wan-
ed to do as before, in-
menting

menting their melancholy situation, and consulting
what course to take. Several wild projects came into
their heads. They had heard of Robinson Crusoe's
living many years upon an uninhabited island, and why
might they not live in this? But hitherto they had seen
no four-footed animal, nor any thing on which they could
subsist, but turtle and fowls, the latter of which they had
no means to attain, and they were totally unprovided
with every earthly thing but what they carried about
them. That scheme therefore appeared too romantic.
They next thought of climbing the highest tree, to try if
they could discover any hill or eminence, from whence they
might take a view of the country, in order to be certain
whether it was inhabited or not. This was approved
by both, and Trecher mounted the loftiest tree within
his reach, from whence, he said, he could discern, to-
wards the S. W. a mountain of considerable height, and
as that was the point that led to the ships, thither he
proposed that they should go; but Loreman rather
chose to depend upon Providence, and endeavour to
rejoin the shore, as he judged by the report of a gun
which he thought heard the day before, that it must
lie in the direction from whence the sound proceeded,
and thither he was endeavouring to make his way, till
his eye-sight failed him, and he lost all sense of action.
His companion, he said, who was at some distance far-
ther in the thicket, and who did not hear the report of
the gun, did not believe what he said; whereupon they
agreed to part. What course Trecher took, he could
not tell, but he believed to the S. W. Loreman was
judged in too dangerous a way to admit of any delay:
he was therefore sent off in a boat, and being put under
the care of the fergeon, soon recovered.

After this detail it was debated, whether to resign
Trecher to his fate, or to continue the search. The hu-
manity of the officer who had the command of the
party prevailed. In consequence of this the whole
party, in the morning, about ten o'clock, after taking
some refreshment, set out to scour the thickets, and, by
hallowing, beating of drums, and pursuing different
courses, determined he should hear them if he were
alive. It was no easy task to penetrate a trackless cover,
overgrown with underwood, and abounding with in-
sects, of which the muskatoes were the least troublesome.
But numbers make that easy, which to individuals would
be impracticable. They went on cheerfully at first;
but before a few hours were elapsed, even the gentle-
men, who were inspired by their success in killing
game, began to be tired, and it was thought advisable
to rest and refresh themselves during the intense mid-
day heat, and to renew the pursuit after they had dined.
As yet they had not been able to discover any trace or
track of the man they were pursuing, though it had
been agreed between Trecher and his companion, to cut
boughs from the trees, as they passed along, by way of
mark or guide to each other, in case of separation.
This was no small discouragement; and few had any
relish to renew a labour attended with so much fatigue,
and so little prospect of success. The officers alone
were bent on the pursuit. The men, though they were
no less willing, were not equally able to endure the fa-
tigue, and some of them were even ready to drop,
before their dinner and grog had revived their spirits.
The only expedient, that now remained to be tried,
was, that which Trecher had hit upon, namely, to climb
the highest tree that appeared in view, in order to look
for the mountain, to which it was thought probable
that he might direct his course. This was no sooner
proposed than executed, and the high land seemed at
no great distance from the place where the party had
dined. It was now agreed to make the best of their
way to the eminence, but this proved not so easy a task
as it at first appeared to be. When they thought them-
selves just ready to mount, they met with a lagoon that
interrupted their progress; and coasting it along, they
discovered the skeleton of a creature that, by its length,
appeared to be an alligator. In viewing this narrowly,
something like the track of a large animal was ob-
served to have passed it, and the high grass on the mar-
gin of the lagoon to have been fresh trodden. This

excited the curiosity of the whole party, who imagined
that some monster inhabited the lagoon, against which
it was prudent for them to be on their guard. The
waters of the lagoon were salt as brine, and every where
skirted with a kind of reed and sedge, that reached as
high as a man's head, and could not be penetrated
without danger from scorpions or other venomous rep-
tiles, several of which had been seen in the bushes.
All attempts therefore of succeeding by this course ap-
peared to be labour lost, and as no other were thought
more probable, it was resolved to relinquish the pur-
suit, and to return to the boats; but the day being al-
ready too far spent to make their return practicable be-
fore the morning, it was agreed to coast it along the
lake, to endeavour to find access to the opposite hills;
and this was the more easily effected, as between the
sedge border and the thicket, there was an open space
of unequal breadth, only sometimes intersected with
patches of brambles that joined the lake, but of no
great extent. Through these they made their way with
little opposition till the lake appeared to deepen, when
a most stubborn woodey copse seemed to bid defiance to
their further progress. This difficulty, however, was
with much labour surmounted, and it was no sooner
passed, than the lake was found to terminate, and the
ground to rise. The country now began to put on a
new face. The prospect which had hitherto presented
nothing but a wild and almost impenetrable thicket, as
they ascended the rising ground, became delightful;
and when they had attained the summit of the emi-
nence, was exceedingly picturesque. Here they de-
termined to pass the night within a pleasant grove,
which seemed to be designed by nature for a place of
rest. The whole party now assembled, and orders were
given by the commanding officers to erect temporary
tents to shelter them from the evening damps. These
tents were only boughs and leaves of trees set up tent
fashion. In this service some were employed in cutting
down and preparing materials, while others were bu-
sied in disposing and putting them together: some
were ordered to collect fuel, and others to carry it to
an adjoining hill, in order to be kindled at the close of
day, and kept burning during the night, by way of
signal, to let the boats know that the party were safe,
and that they had not yet relinquished the search. Add
to these orders, that a sentinel was to attend the fire in
the night, and a watch to be regularly set and relieved
to guard the tents. In the mean time, the gentlemen
amused themselves by taking a view of the lagoon from
the hills, and observing its extent. It is bounded on
three sides by a ridge of hills, and open only to the
N. W. from which quarter they had approached it.
They also observed an open down to trend towards the
shore, by which the low grounds were divided, and hence
they concluded, that their return would be much thor-
tened. Before night set in, the tents were completed,
and the orders that had been given were carried punc-
tually into execution; the fire was lighted; the senti-
nel at his station; the watch set; and the party all re-
tired to rest. About midnight the sentinel, who at-
tended the fire, was surprized by a four-footed monster,
that had stole upon him with a slow and solemn pace,
and was just ready to seize him, when he started sud-
denly from it, and flew down to the tents to apprize
the watch. The officer on duty was presently made ac-
quainted with the impending danger, who immediately
called to their assistance the serjeant of marines, the se-
cond mate, and the armourer, the stoutest men of the
party. With this reinforcement they marched up the
hill in form, Mr. Hollingsby and Mr. Dixon in front,
the serjeant and the sentinel in the next line, and two
sailors in the rear. As they approached the fire, the
sentinel, peeping from behind the armourer, beheld
the monster through the smoke, as tall again as he ap-
peared before, and desired the front line to kneel and
fire; but the armourer fearing neither devil nor mon-
ster, determined to face the enemy. He therefore ad-
vanced boldly, and looking sharply took the monster
for a man, and called to him to speak, in the usual
phrase of a seaman. But what was their astonishment,
when

when they beheld the very identical Thomas Trecher, of whom they had been in search so long, crawling upon all fours, for his feet were so blistered that he could not stand, and his throat so parched that he could not speak. It is hard to say which was predominant, their surprize, or joy. No time, however, was lost in administering relief. Some ran to the tents to tell the news, and to bring some refreshment, while the rest strove to ease him, by supporting him in their arms. In a few minutes he was surrounded by the whole party, some eager to hear his story, and all to give him relief. The officers brought him cordials, which they administered sparingly till he was brought to his speech. He was a most affecting spectacle, blistered from head to foot by poisonous insects, whose venomous stings had caused such an intolerable itching, that his very blood was inflamed by constant rubbing. By anointing him with oil, the acrimony in some degree abated, and by frequently giving him small quantities of tea mixed with a little brandy, they brought him to his speech; but it was some days before he recovered the perfect use of his senses. As soon as they had recovered him so far, by proper refreshments, as to entertain hopes of saving his life, they carried him to bed, and ordered one of his messmates to attend him. In the morning his fever was abated; but there arose a difficulty, how he was to be conveyed more than twelve miles, through a country, such as has been described, in his weak condition. To English sailors nothing, that is not impossible, is impracticable. One of them remembered that, when he was a boy, his schoolfellows used to divert themselves with making sedan chairs of rushes, and he thought it an easy matter to frame such a one from the materials in the thicket, that would answer the purpose. This was no sooner proposed than executed, and a machine contrived, in which they took it by turns to carry him through almost insurmountable obstructions. The gentlemen had, indeed, discovered a less encumbered passage than that, through which they had made their way the day before; but it reached very little farther than they could see with the naked eye; all the low ground beyond was swampy and reedy, and abounding with insects of various kinds. In the evening, inexpressibly fatigued, they reached the beach, where the *Discovery's* cutter was grounded, and where likewise the *Resolution's* boat, that had been waiting all the day before on the opposite side of the peninsula, was arrived. After some slight refreshment, each party repaired to their own ship; and Trecher, being committed to the surgeon's care, recovered gradually, but it was some weeks before he was fit to do duty. Considering what strange people the generality of sailors are, while on shore, we might, instead of being much surprized, that the two seamen should lose their way, rather wonder that no more of them were missing.

This day, (Tuesday, the 30th) Captain Cook, and Messrs. King and Bailey, repaired in the morning to the small island, to observe the eclipse of the sun. The sky was overcast at times; but it was clear when the eclipse ended. Having some yams and cocoa nuts on board, in a state of vegetation, we planted them on this spot, and some seeds of melons, were sown in another place. The Captain also left on this little isle a bottle, having this inscription:

Georgius Tertius, Rex, 31 Decembris, 1777.

Naves { *Resolution, Jac. Cook, Pr.*
 { *Discovery, Car. Clerke, Pr.*

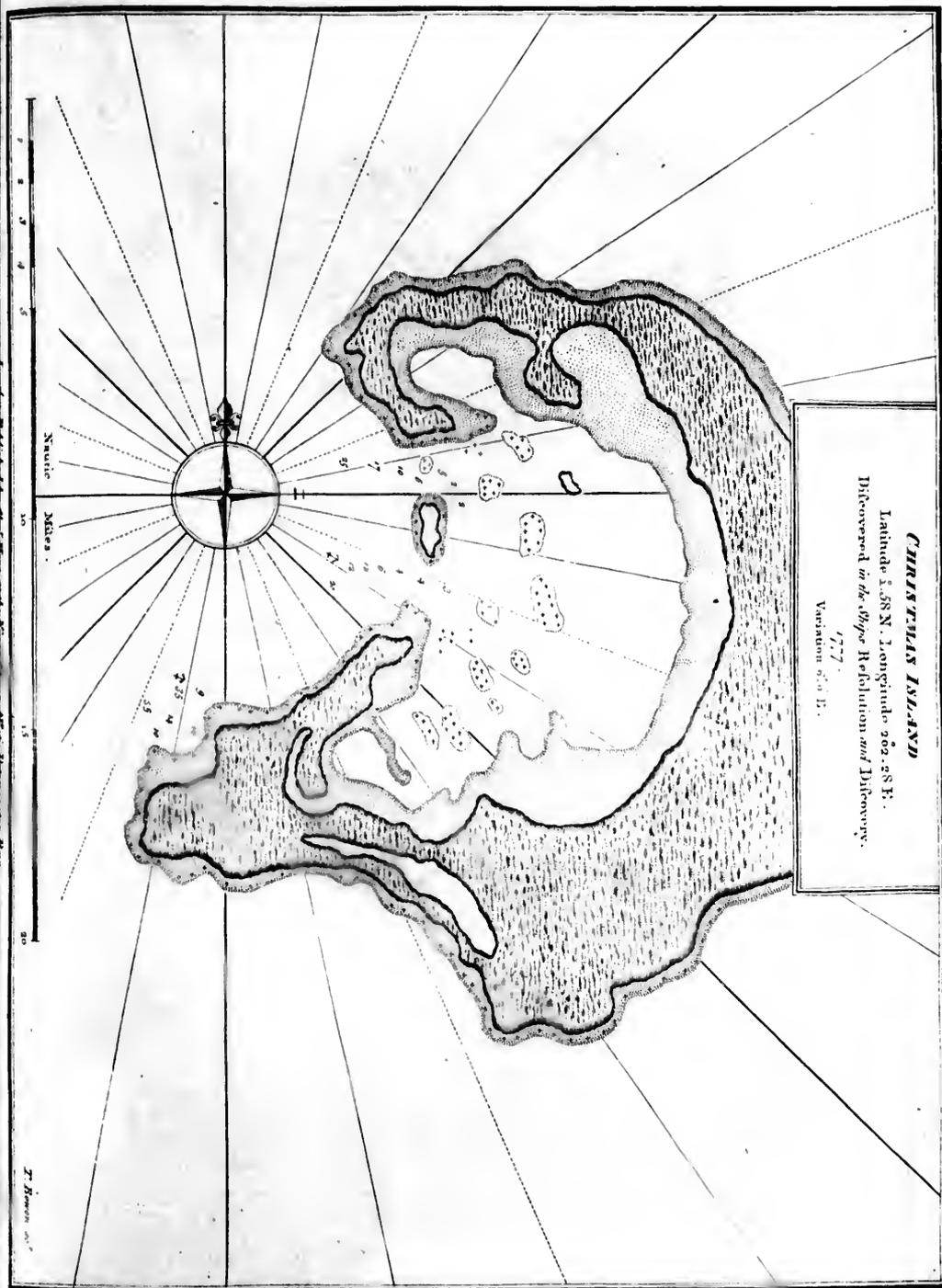
A. D. 1778. On Thursday the first of January, our boats were sent out to bring on board our different parties employed on shore, who, in the course of a week, had taken more than 100 turtle, from 150 to 300 pound weight: but we had not been able to discover any fresh water. It being late before this business was completed, the Captain thought proper to defer sailing till the next morning. The turtle we procured at this island were all of the green sort, and, perhaps, not inferior in goodness to any in the world. We also caught with hook and line, a great quantity of fish, principally consisting of cavalies, snappers, and a few rock fish of two species, one with whitish

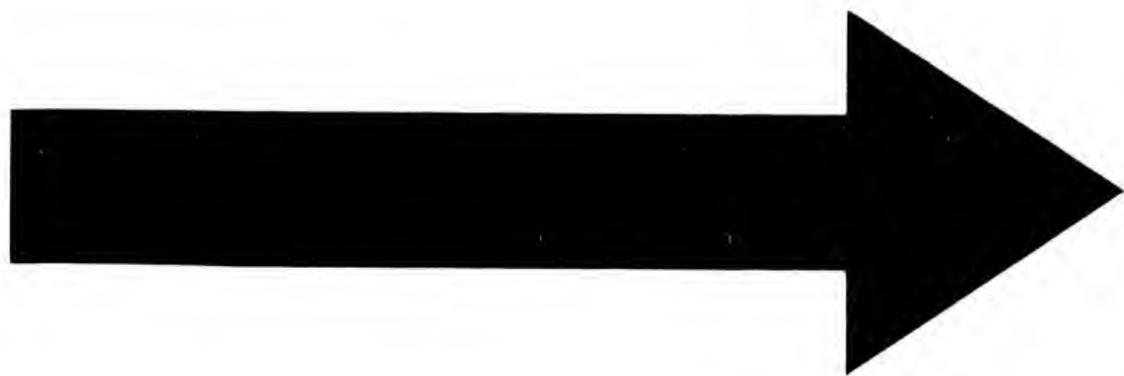
streaks scattered about, and the other with numerous blue spots. The soil of this island, (to which the name of Christmas Island was given, because we kept that festival here,) is, in some places, light and blackish, and composed of sand, the dung of birds, and rotten vegetables. In other parts, it is formed of broken coral stones, decayed shells, and other marine productions. These are deposited in long, narrow ridges, lying parallel with the sea-coast; and must have been thrown up by the waves, though they do not reach at present, within a mile of these places. This seems to prove incontrovertibly, that the island has been produced by different accessions from the sea, and is in a state of augmentation; the broken pieces of coral, and likewise many of the shells, being too large and heavy to have been brought from the beach by any birds to the places where they are now lying. Though we could not, after repeatedly digging, find a drop of fresh water, we met with several salt ponds, which, as they had no communication with the sea, were probably filled by the water filtering through the sand during the time of high tides. One of the men who lost their way found some salt on the south-eastern part of the island. We could not discover the smallest traces of any human creature having ever been here before us; and, indeed, should any one be accidentally driven on the island, or left there, he would hardly be able to prolong his existence; for though there are birds and fish in abundance, there are no visible means of allaying thirst, nor any vegetable that would serve as a substitute for bread, or correct the bad effects of animal diet. On the few cocoa-nuts trees upon the island, we found very little fruit, and that little not good. A few low trees were observed in some parts, besides several small shrubs and plants, which grew in a very languid manner. We found a sort of purslain, a species of sida, or Indian mallow, and another plant that seemed, from its leaves, to be a *me jembrant hemum*; with two sorts of grass. Under the low trees sat vast numbers of a new species of tern, or egg-bird, black above, and white below, having a white arch on the forehead. These birds are somewhat larger than the common noddy; their eggs are bluish, and speckled with black. There were likewise many common boobies; a sort greatly resembling a gannet; and a chocolate coloured species, with a white belly. Men-of-war-birds, curlews, plovers, and tropic birds, are to be found here. We saw numbers of land crabs, small lizards, and several rats smaller than ours. This island is supposed by Captain Cook to be between 15 and 20 leagues in circuit. Its form is semi-circular; or like the moon in her last quarter, the two horns being the north and south points. The west side, or the small island situate at the entrance into the lagoon, lies in 202 deg. 30 min. east longitude, and in the latitude of 1 deg. 59 min. north. Like most of the other isles in this ocean, Christmas Island is surrounded by a reef of coral rock, extending but a little way from the shore; and further out than this reef, on the western side, is a bank of sand, which extends a mile into the sea. There is good anchorage on this bank, in any depth between eighteen and thirty fathoms. During our continuance here, the wind generally blew a fresh gale at E. by S. or E. and we had constantly a great swell from the northward, which broke on the reef in a very violent manner.

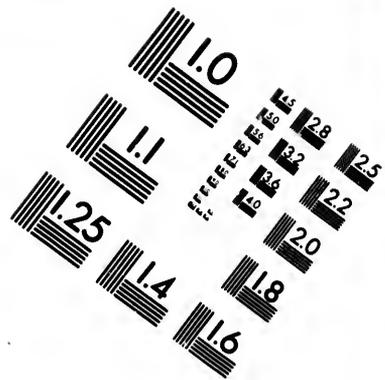
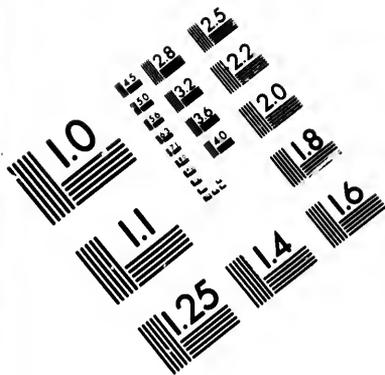
Friday, the 2nd, at day-break, we unmoored, set sail, and resumed our northerly course, with the *Discovery* in company. As we were now clear of land, had a prosperous gale, and plenty of provisions, the men were allowed turtle to boil with their pork, which in a few days was discontinued by the advice of the surgeon, and turtle substituted in the room of every other kind of meat. This was found both healthful and nourishing, and was therefore continued till within a few days of our arrival at another island, where we met with fresh provisions and water equal to any we brought with us from the Society Isles. On the 3d, the wind shifted, and a storm came on, preceded by a lowering darkness, that presaged some violent convulsion, and soon after it broke forth in thunder, lightning, wind and rain,

the other with numerous
 land, (to which the name
 n, because we kept three
 ces, light and blackish,
 ung of birds, and rotten
 it is formed of broken
 nd other marine produc-
 in long, narrow ridges,
 ft; and must have been
 ough they do not reach at
 places. This seems to
 island has been produced
 ne sea, and is in a state of
 pieces of coral, and like-
 g too large and heavy to
 each by any birds to the
 ing. Though we could
 ind a drop of fresh water,
 s, which, as they had no
 were probably filled by
 e sand during the time of
 who lost their way found
 part of the island. We
 ft traces of any human
 before us; and, indeed,
 driven on the island, or
 ble to prolong his exist-
 s and fish in abundance,
 allaying thirst, nor any
 a substitute for bread, or
 l diet. On the few coral
 we found very little fruit,
 few low trees were ob-
 several small shrubs and
 languid manner. We
 ecies of sida, or Indian
 seemed, from its leaves,
 with two sorts of grass,
 umber of a new species
 ove, and white below,
 orehead. These birds
 common noddy; their
 with black. There were
 a sort greatly resemb-
 coloured species, with
 s, curlews, plovers, and
 c. We saw numbers of
 several rats smaller than
 by Captain Cook to be
 rcuit. Its form is fem-
 er last quarter, the two
 points. The west side,
 e entrance into the la-
 east longitude, and in
 north. Like most of
 Christmas Island is sur-
 extending but a little
 r out than this reef, on
 sand, which extends a
 ood anchorage on this
 een and thirty fathom.
 e wind generally blew
 nd we had constantly a
 l, which broke on the

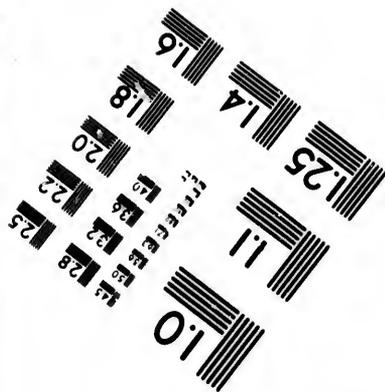
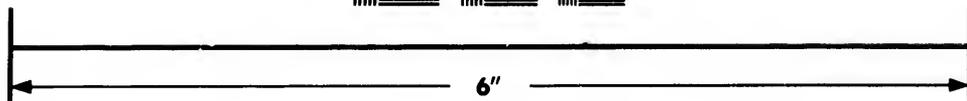
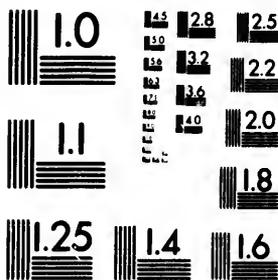
we unmoored, set
 course, with the Dis-
 cere now clear of land,
 of provisions, the men
 their pork, which in a
 advice of the surgeon,
 m of every other kind
 healthful and nourish-
 till within a few days
 where we met with
 al to any we brought
 On the 3d, the wind
 receded by a lowering
 iolent convulsion, and
 er, lightning, wind and
 rain,







**IMAGE EVALUATION
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**

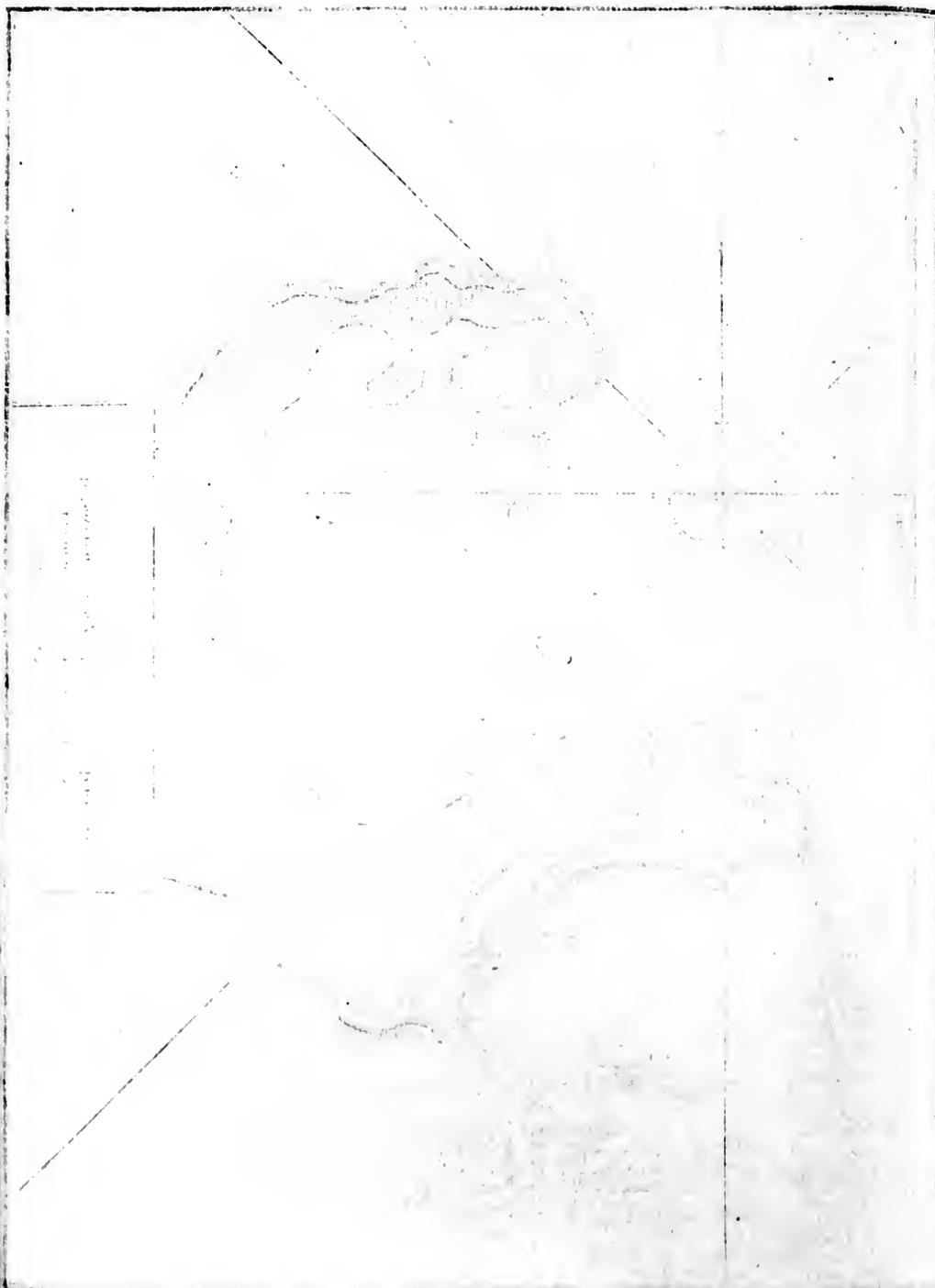


**Photographic
Sciences
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 877-4503

1.8
2.0
2.2
2.5
2.8
3.2
3.6
4.0

5.0
5.6
6.3
7.1
8.0



Proprietario de la Tierra del Fuego

MAN of CHRISTMAS ISLAND, Tierra del Fuego

WOMAN of CHRISTMAS ISLAND, Tierra del Fuego

Portrait of a Native of the Islands of the Sandwiches, as they are called by the English, who live here a Year, and return to their own Country.



MAN OF CHRISTMAS ISLAND, Tierra del Fuego.



WOMAN OF CHRISTMAS ISLAND, Tierra del Fuego.

rain, the
degree
Fortu
that h
clearc
this w
contit
N. an
day of
cecle
procc
boob
deg.
arc c
disco
the i
Not
was a
firft
long
latit
the i
ing
othe
W.
W.
the
wh.
As
ant
rea.
pri
lan
rea
the
the
way
nat
the
por
of t
ano
of f
di.
Th
bat
is a
the
in a
it t
the
wh
of
nar
the
rit
of
rio
fee
nit
flo
ow
the
in
tre
rat
of
no
we
pi
for
we
pi
ne
in
an
th
ge
ra
ce
in

tain, which in two hours increased to such a raging degree, as no man on board had ever known the like. Fortunately, it was but of short continuance; but, in that little time, the sea broke over our quarter, and cleared the decks of every thing that was loose. After this we had a gentle breeze at E. and E. S. E. which continued till we arrived in the latitude of 7 deg. 45 min. N. and in 205 deg. east longitude, where we had one day of perfect calm. A N. E. by E. wind then succeeded, which blew faintly at first, but freshened as we proceeded northward. We daily observed tropic birds, boobies, &c. and between the latitude of 10 and 11 deg. N. we saw several turtles. Though all these are considered as signs of the proximity of land, we discovered none till early in the morning of Sunday, the 18th, when an island appeared bearing N. E. by E. Not long after more land was seen, which bore N. and was totally detached from the former. At noon, the first was supposed to be 8 or 9 leagues distant. Our longitude at this time, was 200 deg. 41 min. E. and our latitude 21 deg. 12 min. N. The next day, at sun-rise, the island first seen bore E. distant 7 leagues. Not being able to reach this, we shaped our course for the other; and soon after, observed a third island, bearing W. N. W.

We had now a fine breeze at E. by N. and, at noon, the second island, named Atooi, for the east end of which we were steering, was about two leagues distant. As we made a nearer approach, many of the inhabitants put off from the shore in their canoes, and very readily came along side the ships. We were agreeably surprised to find, that they spoke a dialect of the Otaheitan language. They could not be prevailed on by any entreaties, to come on board. We conveyed to those in the nearest canoe some brass medals, tied to a rope; and they, in return, fastened some mackerel to the rope, by way of an equivalent. This was repeated; and some nails or pieces of iron, were given them; for which they returned in exchange some more fish, and a sweet potato; a sure indication of their having some notion of bartering, or, at least, of returning one present for another. One of them even offered for sale the piece of fluff which he wore about his waist. These people did not exceed the ordinary size, but are stoutly made. Their complexion is brown; and though there appears but little difference in the casts of their colour, there is a considerable variation in their features. Most of them have their hair cropped short; a few had it tied in a bunch at the top of the head; and others suffered it to flow loose. It seemed to be naturally black; but the generality of them had stained it with some stuff which communicated to it a brownish colour. Most of them had pretty long beards. They had no ornaments about their persons; nor did we observe that they had their ears perforated. Some of them were tattooed on the hands, or near the groin; and the pieces of cloth, worn by them round their middle, were cautiously coloured with white, black and red. They seemed to be mild and good natured; and were furnished with no arms of any kind, except some small stones, which they had manifestly brought for their own defence; and these they threw into the sea when they found there was no occasion for them. Perceiving no signs of an anchoring place, at this eastern extremity of the island, we bore away to leeward, and tacked along the S. E. side of the coast, at the distance of about a mile and a half from the shore. The canoes left us when we made sail; but others came off, as we proceeded along the coast, and brought with them pigs and some excellent potatoes, which they exchanged for whatever we offered to them; and several small pigs were purchased by us for a six-penny nail each. We visited divers villages, some of which were situated near the sea, and others further up the country. The inhabitants of all of them came in crowds to the shore, and assembled on the elevated places to take a view of the ships. On this side of the island the land rises in a gentle acclivity from the sea to the bottom of the mountains, which occupy the central part of the country, except at one place near the eastern end, there they rise immediately from the sea; they seemed to be composed

of stone, or rocks lying in an horizontal strata. We observed a few trees about the villages; near which we could also discern several plantations of sugar-canes and plantains. We continued to sound, but did not strike ground with a line of 50 fathoms, till we came abreast of a low point, near the N. W. extremity of the island, where we found from 12 to 14 fathoms, over a rocky bottom. Having passed this point, we met with 20 fathoms, then 16, and at last 5, over a bottom of sand. We spent the night in standing off and on, and the next morning, being Tuesday, the 20th, stood in for the land; We were met by several canoes filled with natives, some of whom ventured to come on board. None of the inhabitants we were ever before conversant with, in any other country or island, were so astonished as these people, upon entering our ship. Their eyes were incessantly rolling from one object to another; and the wildness of their looks and gestures fully indicated their perfect ignorance with respect to every thing they beheld; and strongly marked to us, that they had never, till the present time, been visited by Europeans, nor been acquainted with any of our commodities, except iron. This metal, however, they had in all probability only heard of, or had perhaps known it in some considerable quantity, brought to them at a remote period. They asked for it by the appellation of hamaité, referring probably to some instrument, in making which iron could be serviceably employed; for they applied that name to the blade of a knife, though they had no idea of that particular instrument, which they could not even handle properly. They also frequently called iron by the name of toe, which signifies a hatchet, or adze. On our shewing them some beads, they first asked what they were; and then, whether they were to be eaten. But on their being informed, that they were to be hung in their ears, they rejected them as useless. They were equally indifferent with regard to a looking glass that we offered them, and returned it for a similar reason. China cups, plates of earthen ware, and other things of that kind, were so new to them, that they asked whether they were made of wood. They were in many respects naturally polite; or, at least, cautious of giving offence. Some of them just before they ventured aboard, repeated a long prayer; and others, afterwards, sang, and made various motions with their hands. On their first entering the ship, they attempted to steal every thing that they could lay hands on, or rather take it openly, as if they supposed, that we should either not resent such behaviour, or not hinder it. But we soon convinced them of their error; and when they observed we kept a watchful eye over them, they became less active in appropriating to themselves what did not belong to them.

About nine o'clock, the Captain dispatched Lieut. Williamson, with three armed boats, to look out for a proper landing place, and for fresh water; with orders, that if he should find it necessary to land in search of the latter, he should not allow more than one man to accompany him out of the boats. The very moment they were putting off from the ship, one of the islanders having stolen a cleaver, leaped overboard, got into his canoe, and hastened towards the shore, while the boats pursued him in vain. The reason of the Commodore's order, that the crews of the boats should not go ashore, was, that he might prevent, if possible, the importation of a dangerous disease into this island, which he knew some of our people now laboured under, and which we, unfortunately, had received from, and communicated to, other islands in this ocean. From the same humane motive, he commanded, that all female visitants should be excluded from both the ships. Many persons of this sex had come off in the canoes. Their features, complexion, and stature, were not very different from those of the men; and though their countenances were extremely open and agreeable, few traces of delicacy were visible either in their faces or other proportions. The only difference in their dress was their having a piece of cloth about their bodies, reaching from near the middle almost down to the knees, instead of the maro worn by the male sex. They were as much inclined to favour us with their company on

board, as some of the men were; but the Commodore was extremely desirous of preventing all connection, which might, in all probability, convey an irreparable injury to themselves, and afterwards, through their means, to the whole nation. Another prudent precaution was taken, by strictly enjoining, that no person, capable of communicating the infection, should be sent on duty out of the ships. Captain Cook had paid equal attention to the same object, when he first visited the Friendly Isles; but he afterwards found, to his great regret, that his endeavours had not succeeded. And there is reason to apprehend, that this will constantly be the case, in such voyages as ours, whenever it is necessary that many people should be employed on shore. The opportunities and incitements to an amorous intercourse are then too numerous to be effectually guarded against; and however confident a commander may be of the health of his men, he is often undecieved too late. Among a number of men, there are in general to be found some, who endeavour to conceal any venereal symptoms, and there are others so profligate and abandoned, as not to care to whom they communicate this disease. We had an instance of this last observation at Tongataboo, in the gunner of the Discovery, who had been stationed on shore. After knowing that he had contracted this disorder, he continued to have connections with different women, who were supposed to have been, till that time, free from any infection. His companions remonstrated to him on this scandalous behaviour without effect, till Captain Clerke, being informed of it, ordered him to repair on board.

During the time the boats were employed in reconnoitering the coast, we stood off and on with the ships. Towards noon our lieutenant returned, and reported, that he had observed, behind a beach near one of the villages, a large pond, said by the natives to contain fresh water, and that there was tolerable anchoring ground before it. He also had made an attempt to land in another place, but was prevented by the islanders, who coming down in great numbers to the boats, endeavoured to take away the bars, musquets, and every other article they could lay hold of; and crowded so thick upon him and his people, that he was under the necessity of firing, by which one man was killed. This unfortunate circumstance, however, was not known to Captain Cook till after we had quitted the island, so that all his measures were directed as if no affair of that kind had happened. Mr. Williamson informed him, that as soon as the man fell, he was taken up and carried off by his countrymen, who then retired from the boats: but still they made signals for our people to land, which they declined. It did not appear, that the natives had the least intention of killing, or even hurting any of them, but were excited by curiosity alone, to get from them what they had, being prepared to give, in return, any thing that appertained to themselves. Captain Cook then dispatched one of the boats to lie in the best anchoring ground; and, when she had gained this station, we bore down with the ships, and cast anchor in 25 fathoms water, over a sandy bottom. The eastern point of the road, which was the low point already mentioned, bore south 31 deg. east; the west point north 65 deg. west; and the village near which the fresh water was said to be, was one mile distant. The ships being thus stationed, between three and four in the afternoon, the captain went ashore with three armed boats, and twelve of the marines, with a view of examining the water, and trying the disposition of the natives, who had assembled in considerable numbers on a sandy beach before the village; behind it was a valley, in which was the piece of water. The moment he leaped on shore, all the islanders fell prostrate upon their faces, and continued in that posture, till, by signs, he prevailed on them to rise. They then presented to him many small pigs, with plantain trees, making use of nearly the same ceremonies which we had seen practised, on similar occasions, at the Society, and other isles, and a long oration or prayer being pronounced by an individual, in which others of the assembly joined occasionally. The captain signified his acceptance of

their proffered friendship, by bestowing on them, in return, such presents as he had brought ashore. This introductory business being ended, he stationed a guard upon the beach, and was then conducted by some of the natives to the water, which was extremely good, and so considerable a collection, that it might be denominated a lake. After this he returned on board, and gave orders, that preparations should be made for filling our water casks in the morning, at which time we went ashore with some of our people, having a party of marines for our guard. We had no sooner landed, than a trade was entered into for potatoes and hogs, which the islanders bartered for nails and pieces of iron. Far from giving any obstruction to our men, who were occupied in watering, they even assisted them in rolling the casks to and from the pool, and performed with alacrity whatever was required of them. Leaving the command of this station to Mr. Williamson, who landed with us, we made an excursion up the country, into the valley, accompanied by Messrs. Anderson and Webber, and by a numerous train of natives, one of whom, who had been very active in keeping the others in order, the captain made choice of as our guide. This man, from time to time, proclaiming the approach of our gentlemen, every person who met them fell prostrate on the ground, and remained in that position till we had passed. This, as we were afterwards informed, is the method of shewing respect to their own chiefs. At every village, as the ships ranged along the coast, we had descried one or more elevated white objects, resembling obelisks; one of which, supposed to be at least fifty feet high, was very conspicuous from our anchoring place, and seemed to be at a small distance up this valley. To have a nearer view of it was the principal motive of our walk; but it happened to be in such a situation that we could not get at it, the pool of water separating it from us. However, as there was another of the same kind about half a mile distant upon our side of the valley, we set out to visit that. We found it to be situated in a burying ground, or morai, which bore a striking resemblance, in several respects, to those we had seen at Otaheite, and other islands. It was an oblong space, of considerable extent, environed by a stone wall, four or five feet high. The inclosed space was loosely paved, and at one end of it was placed the obelisk or pyramid, called by the natives henanaroo, which was an exact model of the larger one we had seen from the ships. It was about twenty feet in height, and four feet square at the base. Its four sides were formed of small poles, interwoven with twigs and branches, thus composing an indifferent wicker-work, hollow within, from the top to the bottom. It appeared to be in a ruinous state, and had been originally covered with a thin greyish cloth. On each side of it were long pieces of wicker-work, termed herance, in a condition equally ruinous, with two poles inclining towards each other at one corner, on which some plantains were placed on board, fixed at the height of about six feet. This the islanders call herairemy, and they said the fruit was offered to their deity. Before the henanaroo were several pieces of wood, carved in some resemblance of human figures. There was also a stone near two feet in height, covered with cloth. Adjoining to this, on the outside of the morai, was a small shed, which they call harepahoo; and before it was a grave, where the remains of a woman had been deposited. On the further side of the area of the morai was a house, or shed, called hemanaa, about forty feet in length, ten in breadth, but narrower at each end: though considerably longer, it was lower than their common habitations. Opposite the entrance into this house stood two images, near three feet high, cut out of one piece of wood, with pedestals: they were said to be Eatooa no Vebaina, or representations of goddesses, and were not very indifferent either in design or execution. On the head of one of them was a cylindrical cap, not unlike the headdresses at Otaheite, called tomou; and on that of the other, a carved helmet, somewhat resembling those of the ancient warriors, and both of them had pieces of cloth fastened about the loins, and hanging down a considerable

flowing on them, in brought ashore. This d, he stationed a guard conducted by some of h was extremely good, that it might be deno- returned on board, and could be made for filling at which time we went having a party of ma- noo sooner landed, than a nes and hogs, which ad pieces of iron. Far our men, who were oc- assisted them in rolling bl, and performed with of them. Leaving the Williamson, who landed up the country, into the Anderson and Webber, lives, one of whom, who the others in order, the guide. This man, from approach of our gen- seem fell prostrate on the at position till we hel erwards informed, is the their own chiefs. At aged along the coast, we vated white objects, re- which, supposed to be at conspicuous from our an- be at a small distance up view of it was the pri- it happened to be in such et at it, the pool of water ever, as there was another mile distant upon our side (it that. We found it to ad, or morai, which bore eral respects, to those of er islands. It was an ob- tent, environed by a stone The inclosed space was d of it was placed the ob- natives hemannoo, which ger one we had seen from y feet in height, and four four sides were formed of twigs and branches, the kei-work, hollow within. It appeared to be in a originally covered with a side of it were long pieces nee, in a condition equal- ning towards each other; plantains were placed on about six feet. This the d they said the fruit was the hemannoo were several ne resemblance of human ne near two feet in height, ing to this, on the outside d, which they call haree- ave, where the remains of . On the further side of a house, or shed, called a length, ten in breadth, ough considerably longer, non habitations. Opposit flood two images, near e piece of wood, with pe- Eatooa no Vebaina, or- and were not very indist- tion. On the head of one ap, not unlike the head- mou, and on that of the what resembling those of th of them had pieces of , and hanging down a con- siderable

siderable way. At the side of each was also a piece of carved wood, with cloth hung on it. Before the pedestals lay a quantity of fern, that had been placed there at different times. In the middle of the house, and before the images, was an oblong space, inclosed by an edging of stone, and covered with shreds of cloth: this was the grave of seven chiefs, and was called hence. We had already met with so many instances of resemblance, between the morai we were now visiting, and those of the islands we had lately visited, that we entertained little doubt in our own minds of the similarity in their rites, and particularly in the horrid oblation of human sacrifices. Our suspicions were soon confirmed; for on one side of the entrance into the hemannoo we observed a small square place, and another still smaller; and on asking what these were, we were informed by our conductor, that in one of them was interred a man, and in the other a hog, both which had been offered up to the deity. At no great distance from these were three other square inclosed places, with two pieces of carved wood at each of them, and a heap of fern upon them. These were the graves of three chiefs, and before them was an inclosed space, of an oblong figure, called Tangatataboo, by our guide, who declared to us, that three human sacrifices, one at the funeral of each chief, had been buried there. Indeed, every appearance induced us to believe, that this inhuman practice was very general. In many spots within this burying-ground, were planted trees of the Morinda Citrifolia, and Cordia Sebastina, besides several plants of the Eiee, with the leaves of which the hemannoo was thatched.

Our journey to and from this morai, lay through the plantations. We observed most of the ground was perfectly flat, with ditches intersecting different parts, and roads that seemed to have been raised to some height by art. The intervening spaces, in general, were planted with taro, which grew with great vigour: There were several spots where the cloth mulberry was planted, in regular rows; this also grew vigorously. The coco-trees were in a less thriving condition, and were all low; but the plantain-trees made a pretty good appearance. Upon the whole, the trees that are most numerous around this village, are the cordia sebastina. The greatest part of the village is near the beach, and consists of upwards of sixty houses there, and we saw near forty more scattered about towards the morai. After we had carefully examined whatever was worthy of notice about the morai, we returned by a different rout. We found a multitude collected at the beach, and a brisk trade for fowls, pigs, and vegetables, going on, with the greatest order and decorum: at noon Captain Cook went on board to dinner, and then sent Mr. King to take the command of the party on shore. During the afternoon he landed again, accompanied by Captain Clerke, intending to make another excursion up the country; but before he could execute this design the day was too far spent; he therefore relinquished his intention for the present, and no opportunity afterwards occurred.

Towards sun-set, the Captain and our people returned on board, after having procured, in the course of this day, nine tons of water, and (principally by exchanging nails, and pieces of iron) seventy pigs, some fowls, plantains, potatoes, and taro roots. In this commercial intercourse, the islanders deserved our best commendations, making no attempts to cheat us, either along side our ships, or on shore. Some of them, indeed, as we have already related, betrayed at first a pillering disposition, or, perhaps they imagined that they had a right to all they could lay their hands on; but they quickly desisted from a conduct, which, we convinced them, could not be persevered in with impunity. Among the various articles which they brought to barter this day, we were particularly pleased with a sort of cloak and cap, which, even in more polished countries might be esteemed elegant. These cloaks are nearly of the shape and size of the short ones worn by the men in Spain, and by the women in England, tied loosely before, and reaching to the middle of the

back. The ground of them is a net work, with the most beautiful red and yellow feathers so closely fixed up it, that the surface, both in point of smoothness and glossiness, resembles the richest velvet. The methods of varying the mixture are very different, some of them having triangular spaces of yellow and red alternately; others a sort of crescent; while some were entirely red, except that they had a broad yellow border. The brilliant colour of the feathers, in those cloaks that were new, had a very fine effect. The natives, at first, refused to part with one of these cloaks for any thing we offered in exchange, demanding no less price than one of our musquets. They afterwards, however, parted with some of them for very large nails. Those of the best sort were scarce; and it is probable, that they are used only on particular occasions. The caps are made in the form of a helmet, with the middle part or crest, frequently of a hand's breadth. They fit very close upon the head, and have notches to admit the ears. They consist of twigs and oliers, covered with net-work, into which feathers are wrought, as upon the cloaks, but somewhat closer, and less diversified; the major part being red, with some yellow, green, or black stripes, on the sides. These caps, in all probability, complete the dress, with the cloaks; for the islanders appeared sometimes in both together. We could not conjecture from whence they obtained such a quantity of these beautiful feathers; but we soon procured intelligence respecting one sort; for they afterwards brought for sale great numbers of skins of a small red species of birds, frequently tied up in bunches of twenty or upwards, or having a wooden skewer run through them. At first, those that were purchased consisted only of the skin from behind the wings forward; but we afterwards obtained many with the hind part, including the feet and tail. The former instantly suggested to us the origin of the fable of the birds of paradise being destitute of legs, and sufficiently explained that particular. The reason assigned by the inhabitants of Atooi for the custom of cutting off the feet of these birds, is, that by this practice they can preserve them the more easily, without losing any part which they consider as more valuable. According to Mr. Anderson, the red bird of this island is a species of merops, about as large as a sparrow; its colour a beautiful scarlet, with the tails and wings black; a bill arched, and twice as long as the head, which with the feet is of a reddish hue. The contents of the heads were taken out, as in the birds of paradise; but we did not find that they practiced any other mode of preserving them, than that of simple drying.

On Thursday the 22d we had almost continual rain for the whole morning. The wind was at S. E. S. S. E. and S. and the surf broke so high upon the shore, that our boats were prevented from landing. We were not in a very secure situation, there being breakers within the length of little more than two cables from the Resolution's stern. The natives, notwithstanding the surf, ventured out in their canoes, bringing off to us hogs and vegetables, which they exchanged as before, for our commodities. One of their number, who offered some fish-hooks for sale, was observed to have a very small parcel, fastened to the string of one of them, which he carefully separated, and reserved for himself, when he had disposed of the hook. Upon being asked what it was, he pointed to his belly; saying, at the same time, it was bad. He was requested to open the parcel, which he did with great reluctance, and we found that it contained a small thin piece of flesh, which had, to all appearance, been dried, but was at present wet with salt water. Imagining that it might be human flesh, we put the question to the producer of it, who answered, that the flesh was part of a man. Another of the islanders who stood near him was then asked, whether it was a custom among them to eat their enemies who had been slain in battle; and he immediately replied in the affirmative. In the afternoon we had some intervals of fair weather. The wind then changed to the E. and N. E. but, towards the evening, it veered back again to S. S. E. The rain also returning, continued the whole night, but was not attended with much wind. On the 23d, at seven

Seven o'clock A. M. a north-easterly breeze springing up, our anchors were ordered to be taken up, with a view of removing the Resolution further out. As soon as the last anchor was up, the wind veering to the east, rendered it necessary to make all the sail we could, for the purpose of clearing the shore; so that before we had good sea-room, we were driven considerably to leeward. We endeavoured to regain the road, but having a strong current against us, and very little wind, we could not accomplish that design. Our Commodore therefore dispatched Messrs. King and Williamson ashore, with three boats, to procure water and refreshments, sending at the same time, an order to Captain Clarke, to put to sea after him, if he should find that the Resolution was unable to recover the road. Having hopes of finding perhaps a harbour, at the west end of the island, we were the less anxious of regaining our former station; but boats having been sent thither, we kept as much as possible to windward, notwithstanding which, at noon, our ship was three leagues to leeward. As we approached the west end, we found that the coast rounded gradually, to the N. E. without forming a cove, or creek, wherein a vessel might be sheltered from the violence of the sea, which rolling in from the northward, broke against the shore in an amazing surf; all hopes, therefore, of meeting with a harbour here soon vanished. Many of the natives, in their canoes, followed us as we stood out to sea, bartering various articles. As we were extremely unwilling, notwithstanding the suspicious circumstances of the preceding day, to believe that these people were cannibals, we now made some further enquiries on this subject. A small instrument of wood, beset with shark's teeth, had been purchased, which, as it resembled the saw or knife made use of by the savages of New Zealand to dissect the bodies of their enemies, was suspected by us to be employed here for the same purpose. One of the islanders being questioned on this point, informed us, that the instrument above mentioned served the purpose of cutting out the fleshy part of the belly, when any person was slain. This explained and confirmed the circumstance before related, of the man's pointing to his belly. The native, however, from whom we now received this intelligence, being asked whether his countrymen eat the part thus cut out, strongly denied it; but when the question was repeated, he shewed some degree of apprehension, and swam off to his canoe. An elderly man, who sat foremost in the canoe, was then asked, whether they eat the flesh, and he answered in the affirmative. The question being put to him a second time, he again affirmed the fact; adding that it was savoury food. In the evening, about seven o'clock, the boats returned with a few hogs, some roots, plantains, and two tons of water. Mr. King reported to our Commodore, that the islanders were very numerous at the watering place, and had brought great numbers of hogs to barter; but our people had not commodities with them sufficient to purchase them all. He also mentioned, that the surf had run so very high, that it was with extreme difficulty our men landed, and afterwards got back into the boats.

On Saturday, the 24th, at day-break, we found that our ship had been carried by the currents to the N. W. and N. so that the western extremity of Atooi, bore E. at the distance of one league. A northerly breeze sprang up soon after, and, expecting that this would bring the Discovery to sea, we steered for Onecheow, a neighbouring island, which then bore S. W. with a view of anchoring there. We continued to steer for it till past eleven, when we were distant from it about six miles; but not seeing the Discovery, we were apprehensive lest some ill consequence might arise from our separating so far; we therefore relinquished the design of visiting Onecheow for the present, and stood back to Atooi, intending again to cast anchor in the road, in order to complete our supply of water. At two o'clock, the northerly wind was succeeded by calms and variable light airs, which continued till eleven at night. We stretched to the S. E. till early in the morning of the 25th, when we tacked and stood in for Atooi road; and, not long after, we were joined by the Discovery.

We remained several days beating up, but in vain, to regain our former birth; and by the morning of Thursday, the 29th, the currents had carried us to the westward, within nine miles of Onecheow. Weary with plying so unsuccessfully, we laid aside all thoughts of returning to Atooi, and resumed our intention of paying a visit to Onecheow. With this view the matter was dispatched in a boat to sound along the coast, and search for a landing place, and afterwards fresh water. In the mean time the ships followed under an easy sail. The matter, at his return, reported, that there was tolerable anchorage all along the coast; and that he had landed in one place, but could not find any fresh water: but being informed by some of the natives, who had come off to the ships, that fresh water might be obtained at a village in sight, we ran down and cast anchor before it, about six furlongs from the shore, the depth of water being 26 fathoms. The Discovery anchored at a greater distance from the shore, in 23 fathoms. The southern point of Onecheow bore south, 65 deg. E. about one league distant; and another island which we had discovered the preceding night, named Tahoooa, bore S. 61 deg. W. distant 7 leagues.

Before we anchored, several canoes had come off to us, bringing potatoes, yams, small pigs, and mats. The people scrambled in their persons the inhabitants of Atooi, and, like them, were acquainted with the use of iron, which they asked for by the names of toe and hamate, readily parting with all their commodities for pieces of that metal. Some more canoes soon reached our ships, after they had come to anchor; but the islanders who were in these had apparently no other object than to make us a formal visit. Many of them came on board, and crowded down on the deck; nor did they quit that humble posture, till they were requested to rise. Several women, whom they had brought with them, remained along-side the canoes, behaving with much less modesty than the females of Atooi; and, at intervals, they all joined in a song, which, though not very melodious, was performed in the exactest concert, by beating time upon their breasts with their hands. The men who had come on board did not continue long with us; and before their departure, some of them desired permission to lay down locks of hair on the deck. This day we renewed the enquiry whether these islanders were cannibals, and the subject did not arise from any questions put by us, but from a circumstance that seemed to remove all doubt. One of the natives, who wished to get in at the gun-room port, was refused, and he then asked, whether we should kill and eat him, if he should come in? accompanying this question with signs so expressive, that we did not entertain a doubt with respect to his meaning. We had now an opportunity of retorting the question, as to this practice; and a man behind the other, in the canoe, instantly replied, that, if we were killed on shore, they would not scruple to eat us; nor that he meant they would destroy us for that purpose, but that their deavouring us would be the consequence of our being at enmity with them. In the afternoon, Mr. Gore was sent with three armed boats, in search of the most commodious landing-place; being also directed to look for fresh water when he should get ashore. He returned in the evening, and reported, that he had landed at the village, and had been conducted to a well about half a mile up the country; but that the water it contained was in too small a quantity for our purpose, and the road that led to it was extremely bad.

On Friday, the 30th, Mr. Gore was sent ashore again, with a guard, and a party to trade with the inhabitants for refreshments. The Captain's intention was to have followed soon afterwards; and he went from the ship with that design; but the surf had so greatly increased by this time, that he was apprehensive if he got ashore, he should not be able to make his way back again. This circumstance really happened to our people who had landed with Mr. Gore; for the communication between them and the ships, by our own boats was quickly stopped. They made a signal, in the evening, for the boats, which were accordingly sent; and in a

ing up, but in vain, to re-
the morning of Thursday,
ried us to the westward,
w. Weary with plying
all thoughts of returning
ntion of paying a visit to
he master was dispatched
st, and search for a land-
th water. In the mean
an easy sail. The mat-
there was tolerable and
nd that he had landed in
ny fresh water; but be-
ives, who had come off
might be obtained at a
nd east anchor before it
ore, the depth of water
y anchored at a greater
fathoms. The longi-
outh, 65 deg. E. about
er island which we had
named Tahoooa, bore

canoes had come off to
all pigs, and mats. The
sons the inhabitants of
acquainted with the de-
y the names of toe and
their commodities for
ore canoes soon re-ach-
ed to anchor; but they
nd apparently no other
al visit. Many of them
down on the deck; nor
ture, till they were re-
whom they had brought
the canoes, behaving
the females of Atooi;
n a long, which, though
ned in the exactest con-
ner breasts with their
ome on board did not
be the ir departure, some
ay down for us, and
ewed the enquiry whe-
als, and the subject did
y us, but from a cir-
ove all doubt. One of
at the gun-room port,
d, whether we should
me in? accompanying
effusive, that we did not
his meaning. We had
the question, as to this
other, in the canoe, in-
killed on shore, they
or that he meant they
e; but that their devot-
ce of our being at en-
son, Mr. Gore was sent
h of the most commo-
directed to look for
ore. He returned in
he had landed at the
to a well about half
the water it contained
our purpose, and the
had.
e was sent ashore again,
e with the inhabitants
intention was to have
e went from the ship
nd so greatly increas-
ntive if he got ashore,
e his way back again,
ed to our people who
r the communication
y our own boats was
signal, in the evening,
dingly sent; and in a
short

short time afterwards returned with some good salt, and a few yams. A considerable quantity of both these articles had been obtained in the course of the day; but the surf was so exceedingly high, that the greatest part of both had been lost in bringing them off to the boats. The officer and twenty men, not venturing to run the risk of coming off, remained all night on shore, by which unfortunate circumstance, the very thing happened which Captain Cook, as we have already related, so eagerly wished to prevent, and imagined he had guarded effectually against. However, the violence of the surf did not deter the natives from coming off in canoes to our ships. They brought with them some refreshments, for which we gave them in exchange, some nails, and pieces of iron hoops; and we distributed among the women in the canoes, buttons, bracelets, and many pieces of ribbon. Some of the men had representations of human figures punctured upon their breasts, and one of them had a lizard represented. These visitants told us no chief was over this island, but that it was subject to one of the chiefs of Atooi, whose name was Teneoonoo. Among other articles which they now brought off to us, was a small drum, that had a great resemblance to those of Otaheite. Between ten and eleven o'clock at night, the wind became southerly, and the sky seemed to indicate an approaching storm. In consequence of these threatening appearances orders were given for the anchors to be taken up; and the ships being carried into 40 fathoms water, came to again in that more secure station: yet this proved an unnecessary precaution: for the wind, not long after, veering to the N. N. E. blew a fresh gale, with squalls, and violent showers of rain. This weather continued for the whole succeeding day, during which the sea ran so high, that all communication with our party on shore was totally intercepted, and the islanders themselves would not venture out to the ships in their canoes. Towards the evening, the Commodore sent the master in a boat to the S. E. point of the island, to try whether he could land in that quarter. He returned with a favourable report; but it was now too late to send for our party, so that they were obliged to stay another night on shore.

On Sunday, the 11th of February, on the appearance of day-light, a boat was dispatched to the S. E. point, with orders to Lieutenant Gore, that, if he could not embark his people from the spot where they at present were, he should march them up to the point. The boat being prevented from getting to the beach, one of the crew swam to the shore, and communicated the instructions. On the return of our boat, Captain Cook went himself with the launch and pinnace up to the point, in order to bring off our party from the land. We took with us three goats, one male, the others female; a young boar and sow of the English breed; and also the seeds of onions, pumpkins, and melons. With great ease, we landed under the west side of the point, where we found our party, in company with some of the natives. To one of these, who assumed some degree of authority over the rest, the Captain gave the goats, pigs, and seeds. He intended to have left these useful presents at Atooi, had we not been unexpectedly driven from that island. While our people were employed in filling some water-casks, from a little stream which the late rains had occasioned, Captain Cook made a short excursion into the country, accompanied by the islander above-mentioned, and followed by two others, who carried the pigs. When arrived upon a rising ground, the Captain stopped to look around him, and immediately observed a woman, on the opposite side of the valley in which he had landed, calling out to her countrymen who attended him. Upon this the man who acted as chief began to mutter something, as if he was praying; and the two bearers of the pigs continued walking round him all the time, making about a dozen circuits before the other had made an end of his oration. This strange ceremony being performed, they proceeded on their walk, and met people coming from all parts, who upon being called to by the Captain's attendants, fell prostrate

No 65.

on their faces till he was out of sight. The ground over which he passed, though it was uncultivated and very stony, was covered with plants and shrubs, some of which perfumed the air with the most delicious fragrance.

Our party who had been detained so long on shore, found in those parts of the island they had traversed, several salt ponds, some of which had a small quantity of water remaining, but others had none. They saw no appearance of a running stream; and though in some small wells the fresh water was pretty good, it seemed to be scarce. The houses of the natives were thinly inhabited, and scattered about; and it was supposed, that there were not more than 500 persons in the whole island. The method of living among these people was decent and cleanly. No instance was observed of the men and women eating together; and the latter seemed in general to be associated in companies by themselves. The only nuts of the dooc dooc are burned by these islanders for lights during the night; and they dress their hogs by baking them in ovens, splitting them through the whole length of the carcass. Our people met with a sufficient proof of the existence of the taboo among them; for one woman was employed in feeding another, she being under that interdiction. Several other mysterious ceremonies were also observed; one of which was performed by a woman, who threw a pig into the surf, which was drowned; she then tied up a bundle of wood, and disposed of it in the same manner. At another time, the same female beat a man's shoulders with a stick, after he had seated himself for that purpose. An extraordinary veneration seemed to be paid here to owls, which they keep very tame. It is a pretty general practice among them, to pull out one of their teeth; and when they were asked the reason of this remarkable custom, the only answer they gave was, it is techa; which was also the reason assigned by them for giving a lock of hair. After our water casks had been filled, and some roots, salt, and salted fish, had been purchased from the natives, we returned on board with all our people, intending to make another visit to the island the next day: but, about seven in the evening, the anchor of our ship started, and she drove off the bank. By this accident, we found ourselves at day break the next morning, being the 2nd, nine miles to the leeward of our last station; and the Captain foreseeing that it would require more time to regain it than he chose to employ, made the signal for the Discovery to weigh anchor and join us. At noon both ships took their departure, and steered to the northward, in prosecution of their voyage. But before we proceed to the northern hemisphere, in order to make new discoveries, we shall present the friends and subscribers to this history of voyages, with the observations, made by several of our gentlemen, on this whole cluster of isles, which Captain Cook distinguished by the name of Sandwich Islands, in honour of the Earl of Sandwich. Those which we saw are situated between the latitude of 21 deg. 30 min. and 22 deg. 15 min. N. and between the longitude of 199 deg. 20 min. and 201 deg. 30 min. E.

They are not inferior in beauty and fertility to the Friendly Islands in the southern hemisphere, nor are the inhabitants less ingenious or civilized. It is worthy of observation, that the islands in the Pacific Ocean, which have been discovered in the course of our late voyages, have been generally found situated in groups; the single intermediate isles, hitherto met with, being few in proportion to the rest; though, in all probability, there are many more of them yet unknown, which serve as gradations or steps between the several clusters. Of what number this new-discovered archipelago is composed, must be left to the decision of future navigators. We observed five of them, whose names are Woahoo, Atooi, Onecheow, Orechoua, and Tahooraa. This last is a small elevated island, at the distance of four or five leagues from the S. E. point of Onecheow. We were told, that it abounds with birds, its sole inhabitants. We also gained intelligence of the existence of a low uninhabited island in the neighbourhood, named Tammata-pappa. Besides these six, we were told that

there were some other islands both to the eastward and westward. There seems to be a remarkable conformity (observes one of our gentlemen) between these islands and those of the opposite hemisphere, not only in their situation, but in their number, and in their manners, customs, arts, and manufactures of the inhabitants; yet, it can scarcely be imagined, that they could ever have any communication, as the globe is now constituted, being more than 2000 miles distant one from the other: but from this general conformity among the tropical islands, some have been led to believe, that the whole middle region of the earth, was once one entire continent, and that what is now the Great South Pacific Ocean was, in the beginning, the Paradise of the World.

With respect to Woahoo, the most easterly of these islands, seen by us, we could get no other information, than that it is high land, and inhabited. But as to Onecheow, concerning which some particulars have been already mentioned, this lies seven leagues to the westward of our anchoring-place at Atooi, and does not exceed 15 leagues, or 45 miles, in circumference. Yams are its principal vegetable production. We procured some salt here, called by the natives patai, which is produced in salt ponds. With it they cure both fish and pork; and some salt fish, which we purchased from them were kept very well, and extremely good. This island is chiefly low land, except the part opposite Atooi, which rises immediately from the sea to a considerable height; as does also its S. E. point, which terminates in a round hill. We know no other particulars concerning Onecheow: and of Orechoua we can only say, that it is a small elevated island, lying close to the north side of Onecheow.

Atooi was the principal scene of our operations, and the largest island we saw. From our observations, we think it to be at least 30 miles in length from E. to W. from whence its circumference may nearly be determined, though it appears to be much broader at the E. than at the W. point. The road, or anchoring place, which our vessels occupied, is on the S. W. side of the island, about two leagues from the west end, before a village, named Wymoa. As far as we sounded, we found the banks free from rocks; except to the eastward of the village, where there projects a shoal, on which are some rocks and breakers. This road is somewhat exposed to the trade wind; notwithstanding which, it is far from being a bad station, and greatly superior to those which necessity continually obliges ships to use, in countries where the winds are not more variable, but more boisterous; as at Madeira, Teneriffe, the Azores, &c. The landing too is not so difficult as at most of those places; and, unless in foul weather, is always practicable. The water in the neighbourhood is excellent, and may be conveyed with ease to the boats. But no wood can be cut at any convenient distance, unless the islanders could be prevailed upon to part with the etooa trees, (for that is the name they give to the cordia sebastina) that grow about their villages, or a species called dooe dooe, which grows farther up the country. The land does not in the least resemble, in its general appearance, any of the islands we have visited within the tropic of Capricorn; if we except its hills near the centre, which are high, but slope gradually towards the sea, or lower lands. Though it presents not to the view the delightful borders of Orahete, or the luxuriant plains of Tongataboo, covered with trees, which at once afford a shelter from the scorching rays of the sun, a beautiful prospect to the eye, and food for the natives; yet its possessing a greater portion of gently rising land, renders it, in some degree, superior to the above-mentioned favourite islands, as being more capable of improvement. The height of the land within, and the clouds which we saw, during the whole time of our continuance, hanging over it, and not unfrequently on the other parts, seem to indicate that there is a sufficient supply of water, and that there are some running streams which we had an opportunity of seeing, particularly in the deep vallies, at the entrance of which the villages are, in general, situated. The ground, from the woody part to the sea, is covered with an excellent

kind of grass, about two feet in height, which sometimes grows in tufts, and appeared capable of being converted into abundant crops of fine hay. But on this extensive space not even a shrub grows naturally. In the narrow valley leading to the Morai, the soil is of a dark brown colour, rather loose; but on the high ground, it is of a reddish brown, more stiff and clayey. It is probably the same all over the cultivated parts; for what adhered to most of the potatoes that we purchased, which, doubtless, came from very different spots, was of this sort. Its quality, however, may be better estimated from its productions, than from its appearance: for the vale, or moist ground, produces taro, much larger than any we had ever seen; and the more elevated ground furnishes sweet potatoes, that seldom weigh less than two or three pounds, and frequently weigh ten, and sometimes fourteen pounds.

Were we to judge of the climate from our experience, it might be said to be very variable; for according to the general opinion, it was, at this time, the season of the year when the weather is supposed to be most settled, the sun being at his greatest annual distance. The heat was now very moderate; and few of those inconveniences to which many of the countries lying within the tropics are subject, either from heat, or moisture, seem to be experienced here. Nor did we find any dews of consequence; a circumstance which may partly be accounted for, by the lower part of the country being destitute of trees. The rock that constitutes the sides of the valley, is a dark grey ponderous stone, but honey-combed, with some spots of a rusty colour, and some very minute shining particles interspersed. It is of an immense depth, and seems to be divided into strata, though nothing is interposed; for the large pieces always broke off to a determinate thickness, and did not appear to have adhered to those that were below them. Other stones are, in all probability, much more various than in the southern islands. For during the short time we remained here, besides the lapis lydius, we found a species of cream-coloured whetstone, sometimes variegated with whiter or blacker veins like marble; and common writing-slate, as well as some of a coarser sort; and the natives brought us some pieces of a coarse whitish pumice stone. We also procured a brown sort of hematites, which from its being strongly attracted by the magnet, discovered the quantity of metal it contained. What we saw of this was cut artificially, as were also the slates and whetstones.

Of vegetables, birds, fish, and tame animals, we saw various kinds. Besides the vegetables purchased by us as refreshments, among which were, at least, five or six varieties of plantains, the island produces bread-fruit, and the sugar-cane: the former seems to be scarce, as we only saw one tree of that species; but the latter appears to be indigenous to these islands, and rare in those on the other side of the line. There are also here a few cocoa-palms; some yams; the kappe of the Friendly Isles, or Virginian arum; the etooa tree, and odoriferous gardenia, or Cape Jasmine. We saw several trees of the dooe dooe, that bear the oily nuts, which are stuck upon a kind of skewer, and made use of as candles. They are used in the same manner at Onecheow. We were not ashore at Atooi except in the day-time, and then we observed the islanders wearing these nuts, hung on strings, round their necks. There is a species of sida, or Indian mallow; also the morinda citrifolia, which is here called none; a species of convolvulus; the ava, or intoxicating pepper, besides great quantities of gourds. These last grow to a very large size, and are remarkable for their variety of shapes, the effect, perhaps, of art. Upon the dry sand, about the village grows a plant, that had never been seen by us in this ocean, of the size of a common thistle, and prickly; but bearing a fine flower, greatly resembling a white poppy. The scarlet birds, brought for sale, were never met with alive; but we saw a small one, about the size of a canary bird, of a deep crimson colour. We also saw a large owl, two brown hawks, or kites, and a wild duck. We heard from the natives the names of some other birds; among which were the

in height, which some-
 peared capable of being
 of fine hay. But on this
 rub grows naturally. In
 the Morai, the soil is of a
 loofe; but on the high
 wn, more stiff and clayey,
 ver the cultivated parts;
 the potatoes that we pur-
 me from very different
 uality, however, may be
 uctions, than from its ap-
 aft ground, produces tato,
 ever seen; and the more
 et potatoes, that seldom
 pounds, and frequently
 urreen pounds.

The climate from our expe-
 ce very variable; for ac-
 n, it was, at this time, the
 weather is supposed to be
 his greatest annual dif-
 fer moderate; and few of
 h many of the countries
 ject, either from heat, or
 ed here. Nor did we find
 circumstance which may
 e lower part of the coun-
 The rock that constitutes
 rk grey ponderous stone,
 fers of a rusty colour, and
 cticles interspersed. It
 ems to be divided into
 terposed; for the large
 erminate thickness, and
 ered to those that were
 n, in all probability, much
 ern islands. For during
 here, besides the lapis lu-
 cream-coloured whetstone,
 piter or blacker veins like
 g-slate, as well as some of
 s brought us some pieces
 ne. We also procured a
 ch from its being strongly
 ured the quantity of me-
 w of this was cut artifi-
 and whetstones.

nd tame animals, we saw
 getables purchased by us
 were, at least, five or six
 and produces bread-fruit,
 er seems to be scarce, at
 e species; but the latter
 these islands, and rare in
 the line. There are also
 ne yams; the kappe of
 an arum; the ctooa tree,
 Cape Jasmine. We saw
 , that bear the oily nuts,
 of skewer, and made use
 d in the same manner at
 here at Atooi except in
 served the islanders wear-
 ings, round their necks.
 Indian mallow; also the
 re called none; a species
 intoxicating pepper, be-
 s. These last grow to a
 ble for their variety of
 art. Upon the dry sand,
 nt, that had never been
 f the size of a common
 ing a fine flower, greatly
 he scarlet birds, brought
 live; but we saw a small
 bird, of a deep crimson
 wl, two brown hawks, or
 card from the natives the
 among which were the

0000

000, or blueish heron, and the torata, a sort of whim-
 hrel. It is probable that the species of birds are num-
 merous, if we may judge by the quantity of fine yellow,
 green, and small velvet-like blackish feathers, used upon
 the cloaks, and other ornaments worn by these people.
 Fish, and other productions of the sea, were, to appear-
 ance, not various; as, besides the small niackarel, we
 only saw common mullets; a species of a chalky col-
 our; a small brownish rock-fish, adorned with blue
 spots; a turtle, which was penned up in a pond; and
 three or four sorts of fish salted. The few shell-fish
 seen by us were chiefly converted into ornaments,
 though they were destitute of the recommendation either
 of beauty or novelty. The only tame or domestic ani-
 mals that we found here were hogs, dogs, and fowls,
 which were all of the same kind that we met with at the
 islands of the South Pacific. There are also small li-
 zards; and some rats, resembling those of every island
 we had hitherto visited.

The inhabitants of Atooi are of the middle size, and
 not much tattooed. In general they are stoutly made,
 with a lively open countenance; but they are remark-
 able for having neither a beautiful shape, nor striking
 features. Their visage, particularly that of the women,
 is sometimes round; but in others long; nor can it justly
 be said, that they are distinguished, as a nation, by any
 peculiar cast of countenance. Their complexion is
 nearly of a nut brown; but some individuals are of a
 darker hue. We have already mentioned the women
 as being little more delicate than the men in their for-
 mation; and we may add, that, with few exceptions,
 they have little claim to those peculiarities that distin-
 guish the sex in most other parts of the world. There
 is, indeed, a very remarkable equality in the size, colour,
 and figure, of the natives of both sexes: upon the whole,
 however, they are far from being ugly, and have, to all
 appearance, few natural deformities of any kind. Their
 skin is not very soft, nor thin; but their eyes and
 teeth are, for the most part, pretty good. Their hair,
 in general, is straight; and though its natural colour is
 usually black, they stain it, as at the Friendly and other
 islands. We perceived but few instances of corpul-
 ence, and these more frequently among the women than
 the men; but it was principally among the latter that
 personal defects were observed; though if any of them
 can lay claim to a share of beauty, it appeared to be
 most conspicuous among the young men. They are
 active, vigorous, and most expert swimmers; leaving
 their canoes upon the most frivolous occasion; diving
 under them; and swimming to others, though at a
 considerable distance. We have frequently seen women
 with infants at the breast, when the surf was so high as
 to prevent their landing with canoes, leap overboard,
 and swim to the shore, without endangering their little
 ones. They appear to be of a frank cheerful disposi-
 tion; and are equally free from the sickle levity which
 characterizes the inhabitants of Otaheite, and the se-
 date cast, observable among many of those of Tonga-
 taboo. They seem to cultivate a sociable intercourse
 with each other; and, except the propensity to thiev-
 ing, which is, as it were, innate in most of the people we
 have visited in these seas, they were extremely friendly
 to us. And it does no small credit to their sensibility,
 without flattering ourselves, that when they saw the
 different articles of our European manufactures, they
 could not refrain from expressing their astonishment, by
 a mixture of joy and concern, that seemed to apply the
 case as a lesson of humility to themselves; and on every
 occasion, they appeared to have a proper consciousness
 of their own inferiority; a behaviour that equally exem-
 pts their national character from the ridiculous
 pride of the more polished Japanese, and of the ruder
 native of Greenland. It was pleasing to observe with
 what affection the women managed their infants, and
 with what alacrity the men contributed their assistance
 in such a tender office; thus distinguishing themselves
 from those savages who consider a wife and child as
 things rather necessary than desirable, or worthy of
 their regard or esteem. From the numbers that we
 saw assembled at every village, as we coasted along, it

may be conjectured, that the inhabitants of this island
 are pretty numerous. Including the straggling houses,
 there may perhaps be, in the whole island, sixty such
 villages, as that near which our ships anchored; and,
 if we allow five persons to each house, there will be, in
 every village 500, or 30,000 upon the island. This num-
 ber is by no means exaggerated, for there were some-
 times 3000 people, at least, collected upon the beach;
 when it could not be supposed that above a tenth part
 of the whole were present.

The ordinary dress of both sexes has been already
 described. The women have often much larger pieces
 of cloth wrapped about them, extending from just be-
 low the breasts to the hams, and sometimes lower; and
 several were observed with pieces thrown loosely over
 their shoulders, which covered the greatest part of their
 body; but the children, when very young, are entirely
 naked. They wear nothing upon the head; but the
 hair, both of men and women, is cut in various forms;
 and the general fashion, particularly among the latter,
 is to have it short behind, and long before. The men
 frequently had it cut on each side in such a manner,
 that the remaining part somewhat resembled the crest
 of the caps, or that, which, in horses manes, is called
 hogging. Both sexes, however, seemed to be very
 careless about their hair, and had no combs, nor any
 thing of the kind, to dress it with. The men some-
 times twist it into a number of separate parcels, like the
 tails of a wig, each about as thick as a finger; though
 most of those which are so long as to reach far down
 the back, are artificially fixed upon the head, over their
 own hair. Contrary to the general practice of most of
 the islands in the Pacific Ocean, the inhabitants of the
 Sandwich Isles have not their ears perforated, nor do
 they wear any ornaments in them. Both men and
 women, however, adorn themselves with necklaces com-
 posed of bunches of small black cord, like our hat
 strings, often above a hundred fold; entirely resemb-
 ling those we saw worn at Wateoo, except that, instead
 of the two little balls on the middle before, they fix a
 small piece of wood, stone, or shell, about two inches
 in length, with a broad hook, well polished. They
 have also necklaces of many strings of very small
 shells, or of the dried flowers of the Indian mallow;
 and they sometimes hang round their necks a small hu-
 man figure of bone, about the length of three inches.
 The women likewise wear bracelets of a single shell,
 pieces of black wood, with bits of ivory interspersed,
 and neatly polished, fastened together by a string
 drawn closely through them; or others of hogs teeth,
 placed parallel to each other, with the concave part
 outward, and the points cut off; some of which, formed
 only of large boar's tusks, are very elegant. The men
 sometimes fix on their heads plumes of feathers of the
 tropic bird; or those of cocks; fastened round neat po-
 lished sticks, two feet in length; and, for the same pur-
 pose, they sew the skin of a white dog's tail over a
 stick, with its tuft at the end. They also, not un-
 frequently, wear on the head a kind of ornament, of the
 thickness of a finger, or more, covered with yellow and
 red feathers, curiously varied, and tied behind; and,
 on that part of the arm which is above the elbow, a sort
 of broad shell work, grounded upon net-work. The
 men sometimes puncture themselves upon their hands
 or arms, and near the groin; but frequently we saw no
 marks at all; though a few individuals had more of
 this species of ornament than we had usually seen at
 other places, and curiously executed in a great vari-
 ety of lines and figures, on the arms and fore-part
 of the body.

Near any of their villages, there is no appearance of
 defence, or fortifications; and the houses are scattered
 about, without the least order. Some of these habita-
 tions are large and commodious, from forty to fifty feet
 in length, and twenty or thirty in breadth, while others
 of them are contemptible hovels. Their figure resem-
 bles that of hay-stacks, or perhaps a better idea may
 be conceived of them, by supposing the roof of a barn
 placed on the ground, in such a manner as to form a
 high acute ridge, with two low sides. The gable at
 each

each end, corresponding to the sides, makes these abodes close all round, and they are well thatched with long grass, which is laid on slender poles. The entrance is either in the end or side, and is an oblong hole, extremely low; often shut up by a board of planks fastened together, which serves as a door; but as it has no hinges, must be removed occasionally. No light enters the house except by this opening; and though such close habitations may be comfortable places of retreat in bad weather, they seem but ill adapted to the warm climate of this country. They are kept remarkably clean, and the floors are strewn with dried grass, over which mats are spread to sit and sleep on. At one end stands a bench, about three feet high, on which the domestic utensils are placed. These consist of gourd-shells, which the natives convert into vessels that serve as bottles to hold water, and as baskets to contain various articles; also a few wooden bowls, and trenchers of various sizes. From what we saw growing, and from what was brought to market, we have no doubt, that sweet potatoes, taro, and plantains, constitute the principal part of their vegetable diet; and that yams and bread-fruit are rather to be considered as rarities. Of animal food, they appear to be in no want, having great numbers of hogs, which run, without restraint, about the houses; and, if they eat dogs, which is not improbable, their stock of these seemed very considerable. The quantities of fishing hooks found among them, indicates that they procure a tolerable supply of animal food from the sea. They have a custom of salting fish, and likewise pork, which they preserve in gourd-shells. The salt used for this purpose is of a reddish colour, but not very coarse, and seems to be nearly the same with what our travellers found at Christmas island. Its colour is doubtless derived from a mixture of mud, at the bottom of the place where it is found; for some of it, which had adhered in lumps, was of a tolerable whiteness. They bake their vegetable articles of food with heated stones; and, from the great quantity which we saw dressed at one time, we imagined, that all the inhabitants of a village, or at least a considerable number of people, joined in the use of a common oven. We did not perceive them dress any animal food at this island. The only artificial dish we saw them dress was a taro pudding, which, though very sour, was devoured with avidity by the natives. They eat off a sort of wooden trenchers; and, as far as we were enabled to judge from one instance, the women, if restrained from feeding on the same dish with the men, as is the custom at Otaheite, are at least allowed to eat in the same place near them.

The amusements of these people are various. We did not see the dances at which they use the feathered cloaks and caps; but, from the motions they made with their hands, on other occasions, when they sung, we judged that they were similar to those we met with at the southern islands, though not so skilfully performed. They had not among them either flutes or reeds, and the only two musical instruments, seen by us, were of an exceeding rude kind. One of them does not produce a melody superior to that of a child's rattle. It consists of what may be denominated a conic cap inverted, but very little hollowed at the base, made of a sedge-like plant; the upper part of which, and likewise the edges, are embellished with beautiful red feathers; and to the point or lower part, is fixed a gourd-shell. Into this they put something to rattle, which is done by holding the instrument by the small part, and shaking it briskly before the face, at the same time striking the breast with the other hand. The other instrument was a hollow vessel of wood, not unlike a platter, accompanied with two sticks, whereon one of our gentlemen saw a man performing. He held one of the sticks, about two feet in length, with one hand, in the same manner as we hold a violin, and struck it with the other, which was smaller, and resembled a drum-stick, in a quicker or slower measure, beating with his foot, at the same time, upon the hollow vessel, that lay upon the ground inverted, and thus producing a tune, that was not disagreeable. This music was accompanied by the vocal performance

of some women, whose song had a pleasing effect. They have great numbers of small polished rods, of the length of between four and five feet, rather thicker than the rammer of a musquet, with a tuft of long dogs hair fixed on the small end. These they probably make use of in their diversions. We saw a native take one of them in his hand, and holding it up, give a smart stroke, till it was brought into an horizontal position, striking the ground with his foot, on the same side, and beating his breast with his other hand. They play at bowls with pieces of the whet-stone, shaped somewhat like a cheese, but rounded at the edges and sides, which are very neatly polished. They have other bowls made of a reddish-brown clay, glazed over with a composition of the same colour, or of a dark-grey coarse slate. They also use as quoits, small, flat, roundish pieces of writing slate, scarcely a quarter of an inch thick.

As to the manufactures of these people, they discover an extraordinary degree of ingenuity and neatness. Their cloth is made from the *morus papyrifera*, and, doubtless, in the same manner, as at Tongataboo and Otaheite; for we bought some of the grooved sticks with which they beat it. Its texture, however, though thicker, is inferior to that of the cloth of either of the places just mentioned; but, in colouring or staining it, the inhabitants of Atooi display a superiority of taste, by the infinite variety of figures which they execute. Their colours, indeed, are not very bright, except the red; but the regularity of the figures and stripes is amazing, for, as far as we know, they have nothing like stamps or prints, to make the impressions. We had no opportunity of learning in what manner they produce their colours; but, besides the variety of variegated sorts, they have some pieces of plain white cloth, and others of a single colour, particularly light blue, and dark brown. In general, the pieces brought to us were about the breadth of two feet, and four or five yards in length, being the form and quantity made use of by them for the common dress, or *maro*; and even some of these were composed of pieces sewed together. They have also a particular sort that is thin, and greatly resembles oil-cloth, and which is either oiled, or soaked in some kind of varnish. They fabricate numbers of white mats, which are strong, with many red stripes, rhombuses, and other figures interwoven on one side. These, in all probability, make, occasionally, a part of their dress, for when they offered them to sale they put them on their backs. They manufacture others of a coarser sort, plain and strong, which they spread over their floors to sleep upon. They stain their gourd-shells neatly with undulated lines, triangles, and other figures of a black colour. They also seem to be acquainted with the art of varnishing, for some of their stained gourd-shells are covered with a sort of lacker; and, on other occasions, they make use of a strong size, or glutinous substance, to fasten things together. Their wooden dishes and bowls, out of which they drink their *ava*, are of the *Erooa* tree, extremely neat and well polished. They likewise make small square fans of mat or wicker-work, with handles of the same, or of wood, tapering from them, which are curiously wrought with small cords of hair, and cocoa-nut fibres, intermixed. Their fishing hooks are ingeniously made, some of bone, many of pearl-shell, and others of wood, pointed with bone. The bones are for the most part small, and consist of two pieces, and the various sorts have a barbe, either on the inside, like ours, or on the outside; but others have both, the exterior being farthest from the point. Of the latter sort one was procured, nine inches in length, made of a single piece of bone, the elegant form and polish of which could not be exceeded by any European artist. They polish their stones by constant friction, with pumice stone in water; and such of their tools as we saw, resembled those of the southern islanders. Their hatchets, or rather adzes, were exactly of the same pattern, formed either of a blackish stone, or of a clay-coloured one. They have also small instruments composed of a single shark's tooth, some of which are fixed to the fore-part of the jaw-bone of a dog, and others to a thin wooden handle of a similar

is a pleasing effect. They polished rods, of the length rather thicker than the tail of long dogs hair; they probably make use of a native take one of it up, give a smart stroke, in a horizontal position, striking the same side, and beating it. They play at bowls shaped somewhat like a gage and sides, which are like other bowls made of grey coarse slate. They burnish pieces of writing much thick.

These people, they discover ingenuity and neatness in their various manufactures, as at Tongataboo and in the grooved sticks of texture, however, though the cloth of either of the colouring or staining, by a superiority of taste, by which they execute. Their bright, except the reds and stripes is amazing, have nothing like stamps. We had no opportunity they produce their variety of variegated fots, in white cloth, and others light blue, and dark ones brought to us were in four or five yards in quantity made use of by the mariners; and even some were sewed together. The cloth is thin, and greatly resembles either oiled, or soaked they fabricate numbers of, with many red stripes, interwoven on one side, and, occasionally, a part offered them to sale they manufacture others of, which they spread over. They stain their gourd-lines, triangles, and other. They also seem to be ac- quainted, for some of their make use of a strong size, in things together. Their of which they drink their of nearly neat and well- small square fans of out of the same, or of wood, curiously wrought with nut fibres, intermixed. They make, some of bone, of wood, pointed with part small, and consist of a barbe, either the outside; but others farthest from the point, occurred, nine inches in of bone, the elegant form be exceeded by any Eu- their stones by constant water; and such of their those of the southern rather adzes, were ex- tracted either of a blackish. They have also small like a shark's tooth, some of the jaw-bone of a when handle of a similar shape;

shape; and at the other end there is a bit of string fastened through a little hole. These serve occasionally as knives, and are probably used in carving. The only iron tools seen among them, and which they possessed before our arrival, were a piece of iron hoop, about the length of two inches, fitted into a wooden handle; and another edge-tool, which we supposed to have been made of the point of a broad sword. Their having the actual possession of these, and their being well acquainted with the use of this metal, inclined some of our people to imagine, that we were not the first European visitors of these islands. But the very great surprize which they testified on seeing our ships, and their perfect ignorance of the use of fire-arms, cannot be reconciled with such an opinion. There are several means by which such people may obtain pieces of iron, or acquire the know- ledge of the existence of that metal, without having had an immediate connection with those nations that use it. We doubt not, that it was unknown to all the inhabi- tants of the Pacific Ocean, till Magellan led the way into it; for no navigator, immediately after his voyage, found any of this metal in their possession; though, in the course of our late voyages, it has been remarked, that the use of it was known at several islands, which no former European vessels had ever, to our knowledge, visited. At all the places where Mendana touched, during his two voyages, some of it must have been left; and this would, doubtless, extend the knowledge of it to all the various islands, with which the people, whom he visited, had any immediate intercourse. It might even have been carried farther, and where specimens of this valuable article could not be met with, descrip- tions might, in some degree, serve to make it known afterwards, when seen. The next voyage to the south- ward of the Equator, in which any intercourse was had with the people who inhabit the islands of this ocean, was that of Quiros, who landed at Sagittaria, the island of handsome people, and at Tierra del Espiritu Santo, at all which places, as well as at those with which they had any communication, it must undoubtedly have been made known. To him succeeded, in this naviga- tion, Le Maire, and Schouten, whose connections with the natives began much farther to the Eastward, and terminated at Cocos and Horn islands. It is cer- tain, that the inhabitants of Otaheite and the Society isles, had a knowledge of iron, and purchased it with the greatest avidity, when Captain Wallis discovered Otaheite; and they could only have acquired this knowledge through the mediation of those neighbour- ing islands at which it had been originally left. They acknowledge, indeed, that this was really the case; and they have since informed us, that they held it in such estimation, before the arrival of Captain Wallis, that an Otaheitean chief, who had gained possession of two nails, received no small emolument, by letting out the use of them to his neighbours, for the purpose of boring holes. The natives of the Society isles, whom we found at Watecoo, had been driven to that place long after the knowledge and use of iron had been thus introduced among their countrymen; and though, perhaps, they had no specimen of it with them, they would naturally communicate at that island, by description, their know- ledge of this useful metal. From the people of Watecoo, again, those of Harvey's island might derive that incli- nation for it, of which we had sufficient proofs during our short intercourse with them. The consideration of these facts will show how the knowledge of iron has been conveyed throughout the Pacific Ocean, to islands that have never had an immediate connection with Eu- ropeans; and it may easily be imagined, that, where- ever the history of it only has been reported, or a very inconsiderable quantity of it has been left, the greater eagerness will be shewn by the inhabitants to procure plentiful supplies of it. The application of these par- ticulars, to the object of our present consideration, is manifest. The natives of Atooi and Onecheo, with- out having ever been visited by Europeans before us, might have received this metal from intermediate islands, situated between them and the Ladrones, which the Spaniards have frequented almost ever since the pe- No. 65.

riod of Magellan's voyage. Or, if the distant western position of the Ladrones, should detract from the pro- bability of this solution, is there not the American con- tinent to windward, where the Spaniards have been settled for upwards of two centuries and a half, during which long space of time shipwrecks must frequently have happened on its coasts? It cannot be deemed sur- prizing, that part of such wrecks, containing iron, should, by the easterly trade winds, be occasionally cast upon some of those islands that are sur- rounded about this immense ocean. The distance of Atooi from America is no argument against this supposition; and even if it were, it would destroy it. This ocean is annually tra- versed by Spanish vessels, and it is highly probable that, besides the accident of losing a mast and its appendages, casks with iron hoops, and many other things that con- tain iron, may fall, or be thrown overboard, during so long a passage, and thus find their way to land. These are not mere conjectures, for one of Captain Cook's people actually saw some wood in a house at Wymoa, which he supposed to be fir: it was worn- eaten, and the natives informed him, that it had been driven ashore by the waves; and we had their own ex- press authority, that they had obtained, from some place to the eastward, the specimens of iron found among them. From this digression (if it can justly be called one) let us return to the observations made during our continuance at Atooi.

The canoes of these people are commonly about four and twenty feet in length, and have the bottom, in general, formed of a single piece of wood, hollowed out to the thickness of an inch, or more, and brought to a point at each end. The sides are composed of three boards, neatly fitted and lashed to the bottom. The extremities both at head and stern, are a little elevated, and both are made sharp, somewhat resembling a wedge, but they flatten more abruptly; so that the two side boards join each other, side by side, for up- wards of a foot. As they seldom exceed a foot and a half in breadth, those that go single (for they sometimes join them) have out-riggers, which are shaped and fitted with more judgment than any we had seen before. They are rowed by paddles, such as we had observed at other islands, and some of them have a light trian- gular sail, extended to a mast and boom. The ropes which they use for their boats, and the smaller cords for their fishing tackle, are strong and neatly made. They are by no means novices in the art of agriculture. The vale-ground is our continued plantation of taro, and some other articles, which have all the appearance of being carefully attended to. The potatoe-fields, and spots of sugar cane, or plantains, on the higher grounds, are planted with great regularity; but neither these, nor the others, are enclosed with any fence, unless we con- sider the ditches in the low grounds as such, which, it is more than probable, are designed to convey water the taro. The abundance and excellence of these arti- cles may, perhaps, be as much owing to skilful culture, as the natural fertility of soil, which seems better adapted to them than to bread-fruit and cocoa-nut trees; the few of these latter we saw not being in a thriving state: and yet notwithstanding this skill in agriculture, the island from its general appearance seemed to be ca- pable of more extensive improvement, and of main- taining twice as many inhabitants as are now upon it; for those parts that now lay waste are, apparently, as good a soil as those that are cultivated. Hence we cannot but conclude, that these people do not increase in that proportion which would render it necessary for them to take advantage of the extent of their island, towards raising a greater quantity of its vegetable pro- ductions for their maintenance.

During our stay in these parts, we did not see one chief of any note; but we were informed by the islanders, that several at Atooi have their residence, to whom they prostrate themselves as a mark of homage and respect. This prostration appeared similar to the moe moe, paid to the chiefs at the Friendly islands, and is here denominated hamoea, or moe. After we had left the island, one of these great men visited Captain Clerke, going

going off to the Discovery, in his double canoe, and, like the sovereign of the Friendly Isles, paid no regard to the small canoes that chanced to be in his way, but ran against, or over them, without making the least attempt to avoid them: nor was it possible for the poor people to avoid him, it being a necessary mark of their submission, that they should lie down till he had passed. He was assisted in getting on board the Discovery by his attendants, who placed him in the gang-way, where they stood round him, holding each other by the hands, nor would they suffer any one but Captain Clerke to approach him. He was a young man apparelled from head to foot. His name was said to be Tamahano. Captain Clerke having made him some presents, received, in return, a large bowl, supported by two figures of men, the carving whereof displayed a degree of skill, both with respect to the design and execution. This bowl used to be filled with Kava, or, in the language of Otaheite, Ava, which is prepared and drank here, as at the other islands of the Pacific ocean. Captain Clerke could not prevail upon this chief to gobble, nor to move from the spot where his attendants had first placed him. After remaining some time in the ship, he was carried back into his canoe, and returned to the island. The next day several messengers were sent to Captain Clerke, inviting him to return the visit on shore, and giving him to understand, that the chief had prepared a considerable present on the occasion; but the Captain being anxious to get out to sea, and join the resolution, did not think proper to accept of the invitation.

Our imperfect intercourse with the natives did not enable us to form an accurate judgment of the form of government established among them; but from the general similarity of customs, and particularly from what we observed of the honours paid to their chiefs, it seems reasonable to imagine, that it is of the same nature with that which prevails in all the islands we had hitherto visited; and, in all probability, their wars among themselves are equally frequent. This, indeed, might be inferred, from the number of weapons we found in their possession, and from the excellent order in which they kept them. But we had proofs of the fact from their own confession; and, as we were informed, these wars are carried on between the different districts of their own island, as well as between it and the neighbouring inhabitants of the isles of Oneehow and Orechous.

Besides their spears, formed of a fine brownish wood, beautifully polished, some of which are barbed at one end, and flattened to a point at the other, they have another kind of weapon, which we had never met with before. It somewhat resembles a dagger, and is, in general, about eighteen inches in length, sharpened at one or both ends, and secured to the hand by a string. Its use is to stab in close combat, and seems well adapted to that purpose. Some of these may be denominated double daggers, having a handle in the middle, with which they are the better enabled to strike different ways. They have likewise bows and arrows; but, both from their slender construction, and their apparent scarcity, it is probable that they never make use of them in battle. The knife or saw, already mentioned, with which they dissect the dead bodies of their enemies, may also be ranked among their weapons, as they both strike and cut with it when engaged in close fight. It is a small wooden instrument, about a foot in length, of an oblong shape, rounded at the corners: its edges are surrounded with shark's teeth, strongly fixed to it, and pointed outwards; and it has generally a hole in the handle, through which passes a long string, and this they wrap several times round the wrist. We are of opinion that, on some occasions, they use slings, for we procured some pieces of the hæmatites, or blood-stone, made artificially of an oval form, divided longitudinally, with a narrow groove in the middle of the convex part. To this the person who had one of them applied a thin cord, but would not dispose of it, though he was not unwilling to part with the stone, which, as it weighed a pound, must prove fatal when thrown with

some degree of force. We likewise saw some pieces of whetstone neatly polished, of an oval figure, but somewhat pointed towards each end, nearly resembling in shape some stones seen by Captain Cook at New Caledonia in 1774, and made use of there in slings.

Some of their religious institutions, and their method of disposing of their dead, strongly indicate an affinity between the manners of these people, and of the natives of the Friendly and the Society islands. The inhabitants of Tongataboo bury their dead with great decency, and they also inter their human sacrifices; but they do not, to our knowledge, offer any other animal, or even vegetable, to their deities. The Otaheiteans do not inter their dead, but expose them to waste and putrefaction, though they afterwards bury the bones; and this being their custom, it is remarkable, that they should inter the bodies of their human sacrifices. They are far from being attentive to the condition of the places, where they celebrate their solemn rites; most of their morais being in a ruinous state, and shewing manifest tokens of neglect. The people of Atooi resemble also those of Otaheite, in offering vegetables and animals to their gods. The taboo likewise prevails in Atooi in its full extent, and apparently with greater strictness, than even at Tongataboo: for the natives always asked here, with great eagerness, and with indications of fear of offending, whether any particular thing, which they desired to see, was taboo, or, as they pronounced the word, rafoo? The maia ra'a, or, prohibited articles, at the Society islands, though undoubtedly the same thing, did not appear to be so rigorously observed by them, except with regard to the dead, respecting whom we thought they were more superstitious than any others we had been conversant with. But whatever resemblance we might discover between the general manners of the inhabitants of Atooi, and those of Otaheite, these were less striking than the similarity of language.

The languages of both places may indeed be said to be almost entirely the same. The people of Atooi, in general, have neither the strong guttural pronunciation of the New-Zealanders, nor that smaller degree of it, which also distinguishes the Friendly Islanders; and they have not only adopted the whole idiom of their language, but the same measure and cadence in their songs. It is true, at first hearing, a stranger may perceive some disagreement; but it should be considered, that the natives of Otaheite, from their frequent connections with the English, had learned, in some measure, to adapt themselves to our imperfect knowledge of their language, by using the most common and even corrupted expressions in conversation with us; whereas, when they talked with each other, and used the several parts necessary to propriety of speech, they were hardly at all understood by those among us, who had made the greatest progress in the knowledge of their tongue.

Had the Sandwich Islands been discovered at an early period, by the Spaniards, they would doubtless have availed themselves of so excellent a situation, and have made use of Atooi, or some other islands, as a place of refreshment for the ships that sail annually between Manilla and Acapulco. They lie almost midway between the last mentioned place and Guam, one of the Ladrões, which is at present their only port in traversing this vast ocean; and to touch at them would not be a week's sail out of their ordinary rout. An acquaintance with the Sandwich Isles would also have been equally favourable to our Buccaneers, who have sometimes passed from the coast of America to the Ladrões, with a stock of provisions and water scarcely adequate to the support of life. Here they might always have met with a plentiful supply, and have been within a month's sail of the very part of California, which the Manilla ships are obliged to make. How happy would Lord Anson have been, and what difficulties would he have avoided, had he known that there was a cluster of islands half way between America and Tipiran, where all his wants might have been effectually relieved!

At these islands, the tides are so inconsiderable, that

On Sunday, the 29th, we were in latitude 49 deg. 29 min. N. and in the longitude of 232 deg. 29 min. E. when we again saw land, the nearest part six leagues distant. A low point is formed, at the S. E. extreme, off which are several breakers, on account of which it was called Point Breakers. Its latitude is 49 deg. 15 min. N. and its longitude 233 deg. 20 min. E. The latitude of the other extreme is about 50 deg. and the longitude 232 deg. This last was named Woody Point. Between these two points a large bay is formed, which the Captain called Hope Bay; hoping, as he said, to find in it a good harbour; and the event proved that he was not mistaken. As we approached the coast, we saw the appearance of two inlets; one of which was in the N. W. and the other in the N. E. corner of the bay. We bore up for the latter, and passed some breakers about a league from the shore. As we advanced, the existence of the inlet no longer remained doubtful. At five o'clock we reached the west point of it; and soon after a breeze sprung up at N. W. with which we stretched into an arm of the inlet, running in to the N. E. Here we were becalmed, and found it necessary to anchor in eighty-five fathoms water, and so near the shore as to be able to reach it with a hawser. The Discovery was becalmed before she got within the arm, where she anchored in 75 fathoms.

At the place where we were first becalmed, three canoes came off to the ship, in one of which were two men, in another six, and in the other ten. Advancing pretty near us, a person stood up in one of them, and spoke for a considerable time, inviting us, as we supposed, by his gestures to go ashore; and, at the same time continued strewing handfuls of feathers towards us. Some of his companions also threw a red powder in the same manner. One, in particular, sung a most agreeable air, accompanied with a melodious softness. The word haela was repeated frequently as the burden of the song. Soon after a breeze springing up brought us closer to the shore, when the canoes came to visit us in great numbers; having, at one time, no less than thirty-two of them about the ship, containing from three to seven or eight persons each, and of both sexes. One attracted particularly our notice, by its having a peculiar head, with a bird's eye, and an enormous large beak, painted upon it. The chief who was in it, appeared equally remarkable for his singular appearance; having a large quantity of feathers hanging from his head, and being smeared in a very extraordinary manner. In his hand he had a carved bird of wood, of the size of a pigeon, with which he often rattled, like the person before mentioned; and was equally vociferous in his harangue, which was accompanied with many expressive gestures. Nor any of these visitors could be prevailed upon to come on board. They were very ready, however, to part with any thing they had, and received whatever we offered them in exchange; but they were very solicitous after iron, and appeared to be no strangers to that valuable metal.

Having found such excellent shelter for our ships, in an inlet whose coasts appeared to be inhabited by an inoffensive race of people, we lost no time, after coming to anchor, in searching for a commodious harbour, where we might be stationed during our continuance in the sound. Upon this service three armed boats were sent; and on the N. W. of the arm, at a small distance from the ships, we found a convenient cove; but apprehending we could not transport our ships to it, and moor them properly, before night had overtaken us, we thought it prudent to continue where we were till the next morning. The whole day we were surrounded with plenty of canoes; and a reciprocal trade was commenced between us, conducted with the strictest harmony and integrity on both sides. Their articles of commerce were the skins of various animals, such as bears, sea-otters, wolves, foxes, deer, racoons, martins, and pole-cats. They also produced a kind of cloathing, fabricated from the bark of a tree, or a plant resembling hemp; besides which articles,

they had bows, arrows, and spears; fish-hooks, and various kinds of instruments; wooden vizors, representing horrid figures; a sort of woollen stuff; carved work; beads; and red ochre; also several little ornaments of thin brass and iron resembling an horse-shoe, which they wear pendant at their noses. However, among all the articles which they exposed to sale, the most extraordinary were human skulls, and hands, with some of the flesh remaining on them; which they acknowledged they had been feeding on; and some of them, indeed, bore evident marks of their having been on the fire. For the various articles they brought, they received in exchange knives, chisels, nails, looking glasses, buttons, or any kind of metal. They had not much inclination for beads, and rejected every kind of cloth.

On Tuesday, the 31st, we were employed in hauling the ships into the cove, where they were moored. The Resolution was now become very leaky in her upper works; on which account the carpenters were ordered to caulk her, and to repair any other defects they might discover. In the course of this day, the news of our arrival brought vast numbers of the natives about our ships. At one time we counted above a hundred canoes, each of which, on an average, had five people on board; few containing less than three; many having seven, eight, or nine; and one was manned with seventeen. Many of these were new visitors, which we discovered by their orations and ceremonies. If they, at first, had apprehended that we meant to be hostile, their fears were now removed; for they ventured on board the ships, and mixed with our people with the utmost freedom and familiarity. We discovered, however, by this intercourse, that they were as fond of pilfering as any we had met with during our voyage; and they were much more mischievous than any of the other thieves we had found; for, having sharp instruments in their possession, they could, the instant that our backs were turned, cut a hook from a tackle, or a piece of iron from a rope. They stripped our boats of every piece of iron that was worth taking away, though some of our men were always left in them as a guard. They were, indeed, so dextrous in effecting their purposes, that one fellow would contrive to amuse our people at one end of the boat, while his confederate was forcing off the iron work at the other. If an article that had been stolen was immediately missed, the thief was easily detected, as they were fond of impeaching each other; but the prize was always reluctantly given up by the guilty person; and sometimes compulsive means were obliged to be used in order to regain it.

Wednesday, April the 1st, having safely moored our ships, we proceeded to other necessary business. The observatories were taken ashore, and placed on a rock, on one side of the cove. A party of men was stationed to cut wood, and clear a place for watering. Having plenty of pine-trees here, others were employed in brewing spruce-beer. The forge was also erected to make the necessary iron-work for repairing the foremast. We were daily visited by a considerable number of newcomers, who had a singular mode of introducing themselves on their first appearance, by paddling, with their utmost strength and activity, round both the ships, while a chief, standing up with a spear in his hand, bawled most vociferously all the time. The face of this orator was sometimes covered with a mask, representing either a human countenance, or that of some other animal; and, instead of a spear, he had a kind of rattle in his hand. Frequently, before they came along side, or on board our ship, they would entertain us with a song, in which their whole company joined. During these visits our principal care was to guard against their thievery.

But on Saturday, the 4th of April, we had a very serious alarm, for our party on shore perceived the natives in all quarters arming, and those who had not proper weapons were collecting sticks and stones. The Captain, hearing this, ordered all our workmen to repair to the rock, whereon our observatories had been placed; thus leaving the supposed enemy in possession of the ground where they assembled, which was within

about one hundred yards of our stern. We soon found, however, that these hostile preparations were directed against a body of their own countrymen, who were advancing to attack them; and our friends of the Sound, perceiving our apprehensions, exerted their best endeavours to convince us, that this was really the case. The adverse party, on board about twelve large canoes, at length drew up in line of battle, off the South point of the cove. A negotiation for the restoration of peace was now commenced; in the course of which several people in canoes passed between the two parties, and some debates ensued. At length the matter in dispute appeared to be adjusted; but the strangers were not permitted to approach our ships. It is most likely we were the principal occasion of the quarrel; the strangers, perhaps, insinuating on having a right of sharing in the advantages of a trade with us; and our first friends resolving to engross us entirely to themselves. We were convinced of this on many other occasions; nay, even among those who lived in the found, the weaker were often obliged to submit to the stronger party, and were plundered of every thing, without even attempting to make any resistance.

Sunday, the 5th, the carpenter discovered the checks of the foremast to be rotten, and began to supply it with new ones. It was fortunate that these defects should be discovered, when we were so commodiously situated, as to be able to procure the materials that were requisite. On the 7th, while the fore-mast was repairing, the Captain ordered a new set of main-rigging to be fitted. From our putting into the found to this day, the weather had been remarkably fine; but in the morning of the 8th we had rain with a fresh gale, and in the evening it blew extremely hard: but though these tempestuous blasts succeeded each other quickly, they were of short duration: yet we had the misfortune to have our mizen-mast give way at the head. About eight o'clock, the gale abated, but the rain continued, almost without intermission. During these squalls the natives frequently brought us small cod, small bream, or sardine, and a supply of other fish. Sunday the 12th, in the evening, we received a visit from a tribe of natives, whom we had not seen before, and who, in general, made a better appearance than our old friends. When conducted into the cabin, there was not an object that fixed their attention; all our novelties were looked on with indifference, except by a very few, who shewed a certain degree of curiosity. On Thursday the 16th, when our carpenters had made a considerable progress on the mizen-mast, they discovered that the tree on which they were at work, was wounded, owing, it was imagined, to some accident in cutting it down. It therefore became necessary to procure another tree out of the woods, on which work all hands were employed about half a day. During this operation, many of the natives were gazing on with an inexpressible surprize, which, from their general inattention, we did not expect. On Saturday, the 18th, a party of strangers, in seven or eight canoes, came into the cove, and after looking at us for some time, retired. We concluded, that our old friends would not suffer them to have any dealings with us. It was evident, indeed, that the neighbouring inhabitants engrossed us entirely to themselves; and that they carried on a traffic with more distant tribes, in those articles they had received from us: for they frequently disappeared four or five days together, and returned with fresh cargoes of curiosities and skins. Such of them as visited us daily, after having disposed of their trifles, employed themselves in fishing, and we always partook of what they caught: we also procured from them a considerable quantity of good animal oil, which they brought to us in bladders. Some, indeed, attempted to cheat us, by mixing water with oil, and once or twice they so far imposed upon us, as to fill their bladders with water only. In exchange for their articles of traffic, metal was generally demanded by our visitors; and brass had now supplanted iron, being sought after, with such eagerness, that before we left the found, scarcely a bit of it was to be found in the ships, except what constituted

No. 66.

a part of our necessary instruments; suits of cloaths were stripped of their buttons; bureaus of their furniture; kettles, cannisters, and candlesticks, all went to rack; so that our American friends procured from us a greater variety of things, than any other nation we had visited.

On Sunday, the 19th, most of our work being now finished, Captain Cook set out the next morning to survey the found. Proceeding first to the west point, we discovered a large village, and, before it a very snug harbour, with from nine to four fathoms water. The inhabitants of this village, who were numerous, and to many of whom the Commodore was no stranger, received him with great courtesy, every one pressing him to enter his apartment; for several families have habitations under the same roof. He accepted politely the invitations, and the hospitable friends whom we visited, testified every mark of civility and respect. In many of these habitations women were employed, in making dresses of the bark or plant already mentioned, and executed their business much like the natives of New Zealand: others were busy in opening sardines; large shoals of which we have seen brought on shore, and measured out to several people, who carried them home: where they performed the operation of curing them: this is done by smoke-drying. They are hung upon small rods; at first, about a foot over the fire; they are then removed higher and higher, to make room for others. When dried, they are closely packed in bales, and the bales covered with mats. Thus they are preserved till wanted, and are not unpleasant food. They also cure cod, and other large fish in the same manner; but these are sometimes dried in the open air. Leaving this village, we proceeded up the west side of the found. For near three miles we saw several small islands, so situated as to form some convenient harbours, the depths being from thirty to seven fathoms. About two leagues within the found, on the same tide, an arm runs in the direction of N. N. W. and another in the same direction about two miles farther. About a mile above the second arm we found the ruins of a village. The framings of the houses remained standing, but the boards or roofs were taken away. Behind this deserted village is a small plain, covered with the largest pine-trees we had ever seen. This was singular, as most of the elevated ground on this side the found appeared rather naked. Passing from hence to the east side, we observed, what we had before imagined, that it was an island, under which the ships lay; and that many smaller ones lay scattered about on the west side of it. Upon the main land, opposite the north end of our island, we saw a village, and landed there, but our Commodore was not so politely received by the inhabitants, as by those of the other village he had visited. This cold reception was occasioned by one surly chief, who would not suffer him to enter their houses, making expressive signs, that he was impatient for him to be gone. Captain Cook endeavoured in vain to soothe him with presents: these he did not refuse, though he continued the same kind of behaviour. But, notwithstanding this treatment from the inhospitable chief, some of the young women expeditiously apparelled themselves in their best habiliments, assembled in a body, and, joining in an agreeable song, gave us a hearty welcome. Evening now drawing on, Captain Cook proposed returning, and we proceeded for the ships round the north end of the island. When returned aboard, we were informed that in our absence, some strangers from the S. E. had visited our people in the ships, who purchased of them two silver table spoons, that appeared to be of Spanish manufacture. They were worn round the neck of one of those visitors by way of ornament.

Wednesday, the 22d, about eight o'clock A. M. we were visited by a number of strangers from the southward. After their departure the two Captains, Cook, and Clerk, went in their own boats to the village at the west point, where our Commodore had been two days before, and had observed that plenty of grass was to be had near it; and it was necessary to get a supply

of this, for the few remaining goats and sheep that were still on board. We received the same welcome reception as before, and our Commodore ordered some of the people to begin cutting: not imagining the natives would object to our furnishing ourselves with what could not be of any use to them, though essentially necessary for us. In this, however, we were mistaken, for as soon as our men began cutting the grafs, some of the inhabitants would not permit them to proceed, saying, "Makook," signifying, that we must buy them first. During this event, Captain Cook was in one of the houses, but, hearing of it, he repaired immediately to the field, where he found about us, a dozen claimants of different parts of the grafs, that grew on the premises. The Commodore treated with them for it, and having complied with the terms of his purchase, thought we had now full liberty to cut whatever we pleased. Here he was again mistaken; for he had so liberally paid the first pretended proprietors, that fresh demands were made from others, so that every single blade of grafs might have had a separate owner; and so many of them were to be satisfied, that his pockets presently became empty. When they were convinced of this last striking circumstance, they ceased to be importunate, and we were permitted to cut where we thought proper, and as much as we pleased. Here it is worthy of observation, that we never met with any uncivilized nation, or tribe, who possessed such strict notions of their having an exclusive property in the produce of their country, as the inhabitants of this sound. They even wanted our people to pay for the wood and water that were carried aboard. Had Captain Cook been present when these demands were made, he would doubtless have complied with them; but our workmen thought differently, and paid little or no attention to such claims. The natives thinking we were determined to pay not the least consideration, at length ceased to apply for the same: but they frequently took occasion to remind us, that their esteem for us had induced them to make us a present of wood and water. Having completed all their operations at this village, the natives and the two Captains took a friendly leave of each other, and we returned to the ships in the afternoon.

The 23d, 24th, and 25th, were employed in preparing for sea; the sails were bent; the observatories and other articles were removed from the shore; and both ships put into a proper condition for sailing. On Sunday the 26th, the Commodore intended to have set sail, but having both wind and tide against us, we were under a necessity of waiting till noon, when the tide turning in our favour, the ships were towed out of the cove. At four o'clock P. M. the mercury in the barometer sunk uncommonly low, and we had every appearance of an approaching storm from the southward: but the Captain's anxiety to prosecute the voyage, and the fear of losing so good an opportunity of getting out of the sound, operated more strongly upon his mind than the apprehension of danger, and he resolved to put to sea. We were attended by the natives till we were almost out of the sound; some in their canoes, and others on board the ships. One of the chiefs who had particularly attached himself to Captain Cook, was among the last who parted from us. The Captain a little time before we got under way, made him a small present, for which he received, in return, a beaver skin of much superior value. For this reason the Captain made an addition to his present, which pleased the chief so highly, that he presented to the Commodore the beaver-skin cloak which he then wore, and of which he was particularly fond. Struck with this instance of generosity, and wishing him not to be a fuller by his gratitude, Captain Cook insisted upon his acceptance of a new broadsword, with a brass hilt, with which he appeared greatly delighted. We were earnestly importuned by the chief, and many of his countrymen, to pay them another visit; who, by way of inducement, promised to procure a large stock of skins. Before we continue the progress of our voyage, we think it may be no small entertainment to our readers, to compric in the re-

mainder of this chapter further particulars relative to the country and its inhabitants.

The inlet in which our ships were moored is called by the natives Nootka, but Captain Cook gave it the name of King George's Sound. The entrance is in the east corner of Hope Bay, in latitude 49 deg. 33 min. N. longitude 233 deg. 1a min. E. The east coast is covered by a chain of funken rocks, and, near the sound, are some islands and rocks above water. We enter the sound between two rocky points, lying E. S. E. and W. N. W. from each other, distant four miles. The sound widens within these points, and extends to the northward at least four leagues. In the middle of it are a number of islands of various sizes. The depth of water, not only in the middle of the sound, but also close to some parts of the shore, is from 47 to 90 fathoms, or more. Within its circuit, the harbours and anchoring places are numerous. The cove, where our ships anchored, is on the east side of the sound, and also on the east of the largest island. Its principal recommendation is that of being covered from the sea; for it is exposed to the S. E. winds, which sometimes blow with great violence. Upon the sea coast, the land is tolerably high; but, within the sound, it rises into steep hills, which have a uniform appearance, ending in roundish tops, with sharp ridges on their sides. Many of these hills are high; all of them are covered to their summits with the thicket woods. The soil upon them is produced from rotten mosses and trees, of the depth of about two feet. Their foundations are nothing more than stupendous rocks; of a grey or whitish cast when exposed to the weather; but, when broken, are of a bluish grey colour. The rocky shores consist entirely of this; and the beaches of the little coves in the sound are composed of fragments of it.

The climate appears to be infinitely milder than that on the east coast of America, under the same parallel of latitude. We perceived no frost in any of the low ground; but on the contrary, vegetation proceeded very briskly, for, at this time, we saw grafs upwards of a foot long. The trees of which the woods are composed are the Canadian pine, white cypress, and two or three other sorts of pine. The two first are in the greatest abundance. At a distance they resemble each other; but they are easily distinguished on a nearer view, the cypress being of a paler green than the other. In general, the trees grow here with great vigour, and are of a large size. About the rocks and borders of the woods, we saw some strawberry plants, raspberry, currant, and gooseberry bushes, all in a flourishing state. We found also a few black alder-trees; a species of four-thistle; some crows-foot with a fine crimson flower, and two sorts of Anthericum. We met with some wild roses-bushes, just budding: some young leeks, a small sort of grafs, and some water cresses; besides a great abundance of andromeda. The season of the year did not permit us to acquire much knowledge of the vegetables of this country; and being in a cove, on an island, all the animals that we saw alive were two or three racoons, martins, squirrels; and some of our people who landed on the continent, on the south-east side of the Sound, observed the prints of a bear's feet, not far from the shore; but we could only judge of the quadrupeds from the skins purchased of the inhabitants, and these were sometimes so mutilated, that we could not even guess to what species of animals they belonged, though others were so perfect as not to admit a doubt about them. The most common of these last sorts were bears, deer, foxes, and wolves. Bear-skins are in abundance, but not very large; their colour is generally a shining black. The deer-skins are not so plentiful, and appear to belong to what the inhabitants of North Carolina in America, call the fallow-deer; but Mr. Millar, in his New System of Natural History distinguishes it by the name of Virginian deer, and thinks it quite a different species from ours. Our very numerous friends and subscribers will not be displeased if we here give a decisive opinion in favour of that Entire New, Cheap, and Capital Work, MILLAR'S GREAT

NEW BODY of NATURAL HISTORY, to be completed in sixty weekly numbers, price only sixpence each, and now publishing with universal approbation, may be said, without the least particle of flattery, to be far superior to every other publication of the kind. May merit alone ever have the preference and encouragement, with the unprejudiced and disinterested public, is our sincere and hearty wish! But to proceed. The foxes are numerous, and of several varieties; the skins of some being yellow, with a black tip at the tail; others of a reddish yellow, intermixed with black. We met with an entire wolf's skin, which was grey. Here is the common martin, the pine martin, and another of a lighter brown colour. The ermine in this country is small, and not very common; nor is its hair remarkably fine. The animal is entirely white, except about an inch at the tip of the tail. The racoons and squirrels are of the common species, but not so large as in other parts of the world. Hogs, dogs, and goats, have not yet made their appearance in this place.

The sea animals seen off the coast were whales, porpoises, and seals; the last of these seem only of the common sort. Though sea-otters are amphibious, yet we may consider them as belonging to this class, as living principally in the water. The fur of these animals, as mentioned in the Russian accounts, is certainly softer and finer than that of any other animals known by the Europeans; consequently the discovery of this part of the continent of North-America, where so valuable an article of commerce may be met with, cannot be a matter of indifference. Mr. Coxe, in his Russian Discoveries, on the authority of Mr. Pallas, says, that the old and middle-aged sea-otters skins are sold at Kiatchta, by the Russians to the Chinese, from 80 to 100 rubles a skin, that is from 16l. to 20l. each.

The birds that frequent the waters and the shores are far from being numerous: they are very shy, owing, perhaps, to their being continually harassed by the natives, either to eat, or for their feathers to be worn as ornaments. We met with humming birds, different in some respects from the various sorts already known of this delicate little animal. Shags and gulls are also frequent in the Sound. Some swans too were seen flying to the northward, but we know not their haunts. Here are two sorts of wild ducks; one black, with a white head; the other white, with a red bill, but of a larger size: also the greater Lummie, or diver, found in the northern parts of Europe. On the shores we found a sand-piper, not unlike the burre, a plover, resembling our common lark, and two kinds of wood-peckers, one smaller than a thrush, the other larger and more elegant.

Fish are more plentiful than birds. The principal sorts we found were the common herring, not exceeding seven inches in length; a smaller sort, of the same kind with the anchovy, though rather larger: a silver coloured bream, and another of a brown colour, with narrow blue stripes. Sharks sometimes frequent the sound, for the natives have some of their teeth in their possession. About the rocks there is an abundance of large muscles, many of a span long; in some of which are large pearls; but they are not pleasing either in colour or shape. Red coral is to be found either on the coast or in the sound, large branches of it having been seen in the canoes of the natives. The only reptiles observed here were brown snakes, about two feet in length, having whitish stripes on the back and sides; and brownish water lizards. The former are quite harmless. The insect tribe seem to be much more numerous.

We found here both iron and copper, but we do not think either of them belong to this place. We did not see the ores of any metals, except a coarse red ochry substance, used by the natives in painting or staining their faces and bodies; they had also a black and white pigment made use of for the same purpose. Exclusive of the rock, which forms the shores and mountains, we found among the natives some things made of a hard black granite, not very compact, nor fine grained; also a greyish whetstone; the common oil stone; and a black sort, little inferior to the hone stone.

They had likewise pieces of rock chrysal. We could not obtain this from them without a very valuable return.

As to the natives, their persons, in general, are under the common stature; usually pretty plump, but not muscular; the forehead low; the eyes small, black, and rather languishing, than sparkling; the mouth round, with large, thick lips; the teeth tolerably equal and well set. Their eye-brows are also scanty, and always narrow; but the hair of the head is in great abundance, very coarse and strong; and, without a single exception, black, straight, and lank. Some have no beards; others only a thin one on the point of the chin; for they pluck it out elsewhere by the roots; and those who do not thus eradicate it, have not only considerable beards, on every part of the chin, but also whiskers, or mustachios, running from the upper lip to the lower jaw obliquely downward; whence we may conclude, that it is a mistaken notion, though espoused by eminent writers, that American Indians have no beards. The limbs, in all of them, are small in proportion to the other parts; besides they are crooked and ill-formed, having projecting ancles, and large feet, awkwardly shaped. Their colour could never be determined positively, as their bodies were incrufted with paint and dirt. The women are nearly of the same size with the men, from whom it is not easy to distinguish them, as they possess no natural delicacies sufficient to render their persons agreeable. A certain lameness characterizes both sexes; dulness, and want of expression, being visibly portrayed in every visage. In common, their dress is a flaxen kind of mantle, ornamented with a narrow stripe of fur on the upper edge, and fringes at the lower one. Passing under the left arm, it is tied by tassels over the right shoulder. Sometimes they fasten the mantle round the waist with a girdle of coarse matting; over which is worn a small cloak of the same substance, fringed at the bottom, and reaching to the waist. They wear a cap, in shape of a flower-pot, made of very fine matting, ornamented with a bunch of leathern tassels, and having a string passing under the chin, to prevent its blowing off. Besides the above dress, which is common to both sexes, the men throw frequently over their other garments the skin of a bear, wolf, or sea-otter, with the hair outward, and tie it as a cloak, near the upper part, wearing it sometimes before, and sometimes behind. Was this dress kept clean, it would by no means be inelegant; but as they are continually rubbing their bodies over with a red paint, mixed with oil, their garments become greasy, and contract a rancid offensive smell. The appearance, indeed, of these people is both wretched and filthy, and their heads and garments swarm with lice. So lost are they to every idea of cleanliness, that we frequently saw them pick off these vermin, and eat them with the greatest composure. Their faces are ornamented with a variety of colours; a black, a brighter red, or a white colour: the last of these gives them a ghastly appearance. Over the paint they strew the brown martial mica, which causes it to glitter. Many of their ears are perforated in the lobe, where they make a large hole, and two smaller ones higher up on the outer edge. In these holes are hung bits of bone, quills fastened upon a leathern thong, shells, bunches of tassels, or thin pieces of copper. In some, the septum of the nose is also perforated, and a piece of cord drawn through it. Others wear, at the same place, pieces of copper, brass, or iron, shaped somewhat like a horse-shoe, the narrow opening receiving the septum, so that it may be pinched gently by the two points, and thus the ornament hangs over the upper lip. Their bracelets, which they wear about their wrists, are bunches of white bugle beads, or thongs with tassels, or a black, broad, horny, shining substance. Round their ancles they wear frequently leathern thongs; or the sinews of animals curiously twisted. Besides these, their ordinary dresses, they have some that are used only when going forth to war, and exhibiting themselves to strangers in ceremonial visits. Among these are the skins of bears or wolves, tied on like their other garments, but edged with broad borders of fur, ornamented ingeniously with various figures.

figures. They are worn separately, or over their common cloathing. The most usual head-dress, on these occasions, is a quantity of withe, wrapped about the head, with large feathers, particularly those of eagles stuck in it, or entirely cover'd with small white feathers. At the same time the face is variously painted, the upper and lower parts being of opposite colours, and the strokes having the appearance of large gashes; or it is besmeared with a kind of fat or tallow, mixed with paint, formed into a great variety of figures, somewhat like carved work. The hair, sometimes, is separated into small parcels, and tied, at intervals, with thread: others tie it behind, after the English fashion. Thus equipped, they have a truly savage and ridiculous appearance, which is much heightened when they assume their monstrous decorations. These consist of a great variety of wooden masks, applied to the face, forehead, or upper part of the head. Some of the visors resemble human faces, having hair, beards, and eyebrows; others represent the heads of birds, and various animals, such as deer, porpoises, wolves, &c. Such kind of representations exceed generally the natural size, and they are frequently strewed with pieces of the mica, which makes them glitter, and augments their deformity. In these imaginary decorations, they sometimes run into greater excess, and fix large pieces of carved work upon the head, projecting to a considerable distance, and resembling the prow of a canoe. Whether these extravagant masquerade ornaments are used on any religious occasion, or in any kind of diversion, or whether they are intended to intimidate by their monstrous appearance, or as decoys when hunting animals, is uncertain. One of the dresses seems peculiarly adapted to war: It is a thick tanned leathern mantle, double, and appears to be the skin of an elk, or buffalo. This is fastened on in the ordinary manner, and is so contrived as to cover the breast quite up to the throat; part of it, at the same time, falling down to their heels. This garment is curiously painted, and is strong enough, as we understood from them, to resist even spears; so that it may be considered as their completest defensive armour. Though we cannot view these people without a kind of horror, when they are thus strangely apparelled, yet when divested of these extravagant dresses, and beheld in their common habit, they seem to be of a quiet, phlegmatic disposition, though deficient in vivacity, to render themselves agreeable in society. They are rather reserved than loquacious; but their gravity seems constitutional, and not the result of any particular mode of education: for the orations made by them on public occasions, are little more than short sentences, or only single words, forcibly repeated in one tone of voice, accompanied with a single gesture at every sentence. From their offering human skulls and bones to sale, there is not the least reason to doubt of their treating their enemies with a savage cruelty; but, as this circumstance rather marks a general agreement of character among almost every uncivilized tribe, in every age and country, they are not to be reproached with any charge of peculiar inhumanity. We had not any reason to judge unfavourably of their disposition in this respect: they appear to be docile, courteous, and good-natured; but, notwithstanding their phlegmatic temper, they are quick in resenting injuries; yet, like all passionate people, they forget them quickly. It must be admitted, that they are not wholly unsusceptible of the tender passions, which is evident from their being fond of music, and that too of the pathetic kind.

Their songs are generally slow and solemn. Sonnets were sung by single performers, keeping time by striking the hand against the thigh. A rattle, and a small whistle, are the only instruments of music which we saw among them. The rattle is used when they sing; but upon what occasions the whistle is employed, we know not, unless it be when they assume the figures of particular animals, and endeavour to imitate their howl or cry. We once saw one of these people dressed in the skin of a wolf, with the head covering his own, striving to imitate that animal, by making a squeaking noise with a whistle he had in his mouth. The rattles are ge-

nerally in the shape of a bird, with small pebbles in the belly, and the tail is the handle. We observed another sort, which resembles a child's rattle.

In trafficking with us, some of them displayed a disposition to knavery; taking away our goods without making any return. But the instances of this were rare, and we had abundant reason to approve the integrity of their conduct. However, their eagerness to possess iron, brass, or any kind of metal, was so great, that when an opportunity presented itself, few of them could resist the temptation to steal it. The inhabitants of the South-sea islands in their petty larcenies were actuated by a childish disposition, rather than a thievish one. The novelty of the object excited their curiosity, and was a sufficient inducement for them to get possession of it by any means: but the natives of Nootka, who made free with our property, are entitled to no such apology. The appellation of thieves is certainly applicable to them; for they well knew that what they pilfered from us would be subservient to the private purposes of utility; and it was fortunate for us, that metals were the only articles upon which they set any value; but thefts are very common among themselves, producing continually quarrels, of which we saw several instances.

The two villages we visited are probably the only inhabited parts of the sound. The number of inhabitants may be computed from the canoes that visited our ships the second day after our arrival. They consisted of about a hundred, which upon an average, contained, at least, five persons each; but as there were very few women, children, or young men among them, we may reasonably suppose, that the number of souls in the two villages, could not be less than four times the number of our visitors, being in the whole two thousand. The village, situated at the entrance of the sound, stands on the side of a pretty steep ascent, extending from the beach to the wood. There are holes, or windows, in the sides of the houses to look out at, having bits of mats hung before them, to prevent the rain getting in. Their houses, in the inside, may, with propriety, be compared to a long English stable with a double range of stalls, and a board passage in the middle; for the different families are separated on by a piece of plank. Close to the sides, in each of the parts, is a bench of boards, raised five or six feet higher than the rest of the floor, and covered with mats, whereon the family sit and sleep. These benches are commonly seven or eight feet long, and four or five broad. In the middle of the floor, between them, is the fire-place, which has neither hearth nor chimney. This part appeared common to them all. The nativeness and stench of their houses are at least equal to the confusion within; for, as they dry their fish within doors, they allegot them there, which, with their bones and fragments, thrown down at meals, and the addition of other sorts of filth, lie every where in heaps, and are, it should seem, never carried away, till they become troublesome, from their size, to walk over them. In a word, their houses are as filthy as hog-sties; every thing in and about them stinking of fish, train oil and smoke. Their furniture consists chiefly of chests and boxes of various sizes, piled upon each other, at the sides or ends of each house, wherein they deposit all their valuables, such as skins, garments, masks, &c. Many of these boxes are painted black, and studded with the teeth of animals, or rudely decorated with figures of birds carved. To complete the scene of confusion, in different parts of their habitations are hung up implements of fishing, and other articles. Among these we may reckon their images, which are nothing more than the trunks of large trees, of the height of about four feet, placed at the upper end of the apartment, with a human face carved on the front, and the hands and arms upon the sides. These figures are variously painted, and make, upon the whole, a ridiculous appearance. They are called generally Klumma. A sort of curtain, made of mat, usually hung before the images, which the natives were sometimes unwilling to remove; and when they did consent to unveil them, they seemed to express themselves in a very mysterious manner; and yet

with small pebbles in the
We observed another
rattle.

of them displayed a dif-
way our goods without
stances of this were rare,
approve the integrity of
eagerness to possess iron,
as to great, that when an
ew of them could relist
inhabitants of the South-
ies were actuated by a
n a thievish one. The
their curiosity, and was
to get possession of it by
Nootka, who made free
to no such apology. The
only applicable to them;
y puttered from us would
trifles of utility; and it
ils were the only articles
lue; but thefts are very
producing continually
eral instances.

are probably the only in-
The number of inhabi-
canees that visited our
arrival. They conitted
upon an average, con-
each; but as there were
young men among them,
at the number of souls in
less than four times the
in the whole two thou-
at the entrance of the
pretty steep ascent, ex-
wood. There are holes,
the hooties to look out at,
ie them, to prevent the
in the inside, may, with
ong English stable with a
board passage in the mid-
as separated on y by a
sides, in each of the
raised five or six feet
floor, and covered with
and sleep. These benches
feet long, and four or five
floor, between them, a
her hearth nor chimney,
o them all. The walls
are at least equal to the
y dry their fish within
which, with the boiler
at meals, and the addition
ry where in livings, and
ed away, till they become
to walk over them. In a
as hog-fies; every thing
fish, train oil and smoke,
ly of chests and boxes of
h other, at the sides or
they deposit all their va-
s, masks, &c. Many of
s, and studded with the
decorated with figures of
ne scene of contention, in
ions are hung up imple-
articles. Among these
which are nothing more
o the height of about
end of the apartment,
che front, and the hand
ese figures are variously
whole, a ridiculous ap-
erally Klumma. A sort
hung before the images,
es unwilling to remove;
nveil them, they seemed
mysterious manner; and
yet

yet they were held in no very extraordinary degree of
estimation, seeing, with a small quantity of brass or
iron, all the idols in the place might have been pur-
chased. Mr. Webber, when drawing a view of the
inside of a house, wherein those figures were placed,
interrupted in his work by one of the inhabitants.
Mr. Webber, thinking a bribe would have a proper
effect, presented to him a metal-button from his coat,
which immediately operated as was intended: soon
after he was again interrupted by the same man, who
held a mat before the figures: our gentleman therefore
gave him another button, and was again suffered to
proceed. The man then renewed his former tricks, till
Mr. Webber had parted with every single button;
after which he received not any farther molestation.

As to the domestic life of these people, the men seem
to be chiefly employed in fishing and killing animals,
for the sustenance of their families, few of them being
engaged in any household business; but the women were
employed in manufacturing their garments; and in cur-
ing sardines, which they also carry from the canoes to
their houses. They also go in small canoes, to gather
mussels, and other shell-fish. In the labour of the pad-
dle they are as dextrous as the men, who shew them
very little respect or attention on this, or any other oc-
casion. But the young men are remarkably indolent,
sitting generally about in scattered companies, basking
in the sun, or wallowing in the sand upon the beach,
like so many hogs, without any kind of covering.
This disregard of decency was, however, confined solely
to the males; for the females were always clothed, and
behaved with great propriety, meriting justly commen-
dation for a modest bashfulness, so becoming that sex.
In the women of this place, it is the more meritorious,
as the men have not the least sense of shame. Both
sexes pass much of their time in their canoes, especi-
ally in the summer; in which they eat, sleep, and fre-
quently lie to bask themselves in the sun; for these pur-
poses they are sufficiently spacious, and are, in rainy
weather, more comfortable habitations than their filthy
houses.

Though their food, strictly speaking, may be said to
consist of every thing animal or vegetable that they can
procure, yet the quantity of the latter bears an exceed-
ing small proportion to that of the former. Their
greatest reliance for food is upon the sea, as affording
fish, mussels, smaller shell-fish, and sea-animals. Among
the first are herrings, sardines, two species of bream,
and some small cod. The herrings and sardines not
only serve to be eaten fresh in their season, but to be
dried and smoked as stores. The roes of these also,
stewed upon the branches of the Canadian pine, or
prepared upon a long sea grass, afford them another
grand resource for food. They also eat the roe of some
other large fish, that has a very rancid smell and taste.
The large mussels are found in great abundance in the
sound. After having roasted them in their shells, they
are stuck upon long wooden skewers, and taken off as
they are wanted to be eaten. They require no other
preparation, though they are sometimes dipped in oil,
as sauce. The porpoise is a food more common among
them, than that of any other animal in their sea; the
flesh and rind of which they cut into large pieces, dry
them as they do herrings, and eat them without farther
preparation. They also make a sort of broth from the
porpoise, when fresh, in a very singular manner. They
put some pieces of it into a wooden vessel, containing
a sufficient quantity of water, into which they throw
heated stones. This operation is repeated till the con-
tents are supposed to be stewed enough. This is a
common dish among them, and seems to be a strong
nourishing food. They likewise feed probably upon
whales, seals, and sea-otters, the skins of the two latter
being common among them, and they are furnished
with implements of all sorts for their destruction,
though perhaps they may not be able, at all seasons, to
catch them in great plenty. However, from these, and
other sea-animals, they procure oil in great abundance,
which they use, mixed with other food, as sauce; and
often sip it alone with a kind of horn-scoop. Their
No. 66,

fresh skins, at this time, were very scarce; as were the
land animals; for we saw no flesh belonging to the latter;
and, though their skins were to be had in plenty, they
might, perhaps, have been procured from other tribes.
From these and other circumstances, it plainly ap-
peared to us, that these people are furnished with the
principal part of their animal food by the sea; if we
except a few gulls, and some other birds, which they
shoot with their arrows. Their only winter vegetables
seem to be the Canadian pine-branches, and sea-grafs;
but, as the spring advances, they use others as they come
in season. The most common of these were two sorts
of roots, of a mild sweetish taste, which are eaten raw;
as is also a small, sweetish root, about the thickness of
sarsaparilla. As the season advances, they have doubt-
less many others which we did not see: for, though
there is not the least appearance of cultivation among
them, there are plenty of elder, gooseberry, and cur-
rant bushes. One of the conditions, however, which
they seem to require in all their food, is, that it should
be of the less acrid kind: for they would not touch the
leek or garlic, though they sold us great quantities of
it, when they understood it was what we liked. They
seemed not to relish any of our food, and rejected our
spirituous liquors as disgusting and unnatural. It is
their ordinary practice to roast or broil their food; for
they are absolute strangers to our method of boiling, as
appears from their manner of preparing porpoise broth;
besides, as they have only wooden vessels, it is impos-
sible for them to perform such an operation. Their man-
ner of eating corresponds with the narrowness of their
houses and persons; for the platters and troughs, out of
which they eat their victuals, seem never to have been
washed since their original formation; the dirty remains
of a former meal, being only swept away by a succeed-
ing one. Every thing solid and tough, they tear to
pieces with their hands and teeth; for though their
knives are employed in cutting off the larger portions,
they have not yet endeavoured to reduce these to mouth-
fuls by the same means, though more cleanly and con-
venient. But they do not possess even an idea of clean-
liness, and eat constantly the roots which are dug out
of the ground, without attempting to shake off the soil
that adheres to them. Whether they have any set time
for their meals we never could find out, having seen them
eat at all hours in their canoes. But having observed
several messes of porpoise broth preparing about noon,
when we went to the village, they may probably make
a principal meal about that time.

These people have bows, and arrows, spears, slings,
short truncheons made of bone, and a small pick-axe,
somewhat resembling the common American toma-
hawk. Some of the arrows are pointed with iron,
and others with indented bone: the spear has usually a
long point made of bone. The tomahawk is a stone of
the length of seven or eight inches, one end terminat-
ing in a point, and the other fixed in a wooden handle.
This is intended to resemble the head and neck of a hu-
man figure; the stone being fixed in the mouth so as to
represent a tongue of a great magnitude. To heighten
the resemblance, human hair is also fixed to it. This
weapon is called taaweeth; and they have another made
of stone, which they call seaik, about ten or twelve
inches long, having a square point. From the number of
their weapons it may be reasonably concluded, that they
engage frequently in close combat; and we had very
disagreeable proofs of their wars being both frequent
and bloody, from the quantity of human skulls that
were offered to us for sale.

With respect to the design and execution of their
manufactures, and mechanic arts, they are more exten-
sive and ingenious than could possibly be expected from
the natural disposition of the people, and the little
progress they have made in civilization. The flaxen and
woollen garments engage their first care, as being the
most material of those that may be classed under the
head of manufactures. The former are fabricated
from the bark of the pine-tree, beat into a mass resem-
bling hemp. After having been prepared in a proper
manner, it is spread upon a stick, fastened to two
others

others in an erect position. The manufacturer, who sits on her hams at this simple machine, knots it across, at the distance of about half an inch from each other, with small plaited threads. Though it cannot, by this method, be rendered so close and firm as cloth that is woven, it is sufficiently impervious to the air, and is likewise softer and more pliable. Their woollen garments have much the appearance of woven cloth; but the supposition of their being wrought in a loom is destroyed, by the various figures that are ingeniously inserted in them; it being very improbable that these people should be able to produce such a complex work, except immediately by their hands. They are of different qualities: some resembling our coarsest sort of blankets; and others not much inferior to our finest sort, and certainly both softer and warmer. The wool of which they are manufactured, seems to be procured from different animals, particularly the fox and brown lynx. That from the lynx is the finest, and nearly resembles our coarsest wools in colour; but the hair, which also grows upon the animal, being intermixed with it, causes the appearance to be somewhat different when wrought. The ornamental figures in these garments are disposed with great taste, and are generally of a different colour, being usually dyed either of a deep brown, or a yellow; the latter of which, when new, equals in brightness, the most vivid in our best carpets.

Their taste for carving on all their wooden articles, corresponds with that of working figures upon their garments. Nothing is to be seen without a kind of freeze-work, or a representation of some animal upon it; but the most common one is that of the human face. The general design of these figures conveys a sufficient knowledge of the objects they are intended to represent; and in the execution of many of the masks and heads, they prove themselves to be ingenious sculptors. They preserve, with the greatest exactness, the general character of their own faces, and finish the more minute parts with great accuracy and neatness. That these people have a fondness for works of this sort is observable in a variety of particulars. Representations of human figures, birds, beasts, fish, and models of household utensils, were found among them in a very great abundance. To their skill in the imitative arts, we may add their drawing them in colours. The whole process of their whale-fishery has been represented, in this manner, on the caps they wear. The execution was indeed rude, but hereby we were convinced, that, though they have not the knowledge of letters among them, they have a notion of representing actions in a lasting way, exclusive of recording them in their songs and traditions.

The structure of their canoes is simple, yet they are well calculated for every useful purpose. The largest sort, which in each one will contain upwards of twenty people, are formed of a single tree. The length of many of them is 40 feet, the breadth 7, and the depth 3. They become gradually narrower from the middle towards the end, the stern ending, perpendicularly, with a knob at the top. The fore-part stretches forwards, and upwards, and ends in a point, or prow, much higher than the sides of the canoe, which are nearly straight. The greatest part of them are without any ornament; but some have a little carving, and are studded with seals teeth on the surface. They have neither seats, nor any other supporters, on the inside, except some small round sticks, about the size of a walking cane, placed across, about half the depth of a canoe. They are very light, and, on account of their breadth and flatness, swim firmly, without an out-rigger, of which they are all destitute. Their paddles, which are small and light, resemble a small leaf in shape, being pointed at the bottom, broad in the middle, and gradually becoming narrower in the shaft; the whole length being above five feet. By constant practice, they have acquired great dexterity in the management of these paddles; but they never make use of any sails.

In their employment of fishing and hunting, their instruments are ingeniously contrived, and completely made. They consist of nets, hooks, lines, harpoons,

gigs, and an instrument resembling an ear. The last is about 20 feet in length, four or five inches in breadth, and of the thickness of half an inch. The edges for about two thirds of its length, are set with sharp bone-teeth; the other third serving for a handle. With this instrument they strike herrings, sardines, and other fish as come in shoals, which are taken either upon or in the teeth. Their hooks, made of bone and wood, display no great ingenuity; but the harpoon, used in striking whales, and other sea animals, manifests evident contrivance. It consists of a piece of bone, formed into barbs, in which the oval blade of a large muscle shell, and the point of the instrument are fixed. Two or three fathoms of rope is fastened; to one end of which the harpoon is fixed so as to leave the shaft floating, as a buoy upon the water, when the animal is struck.

As to their manner of catching land animals, or killing them, we are strangers; but, it is probable that they shoot the smaller sorts with their arrows, and encounter bears, wolves, and foxes, with their spears. Sometimes they decoy them, by covering themselves with their skins, and running upon all fours, at which sport they are remarkable nimble. For the same purposes the masks, or carved heads, as well as the dried heads of different animals, are used.

Every particular of the rope kind, which they use in making their various articles, is formed either from thongs of skins, and sinews of animals, or from the flaxen substance, of which they manufacture their mantles. The sinews were sometimes so remarkably long, that it was hardly possible they could have belonged to any other animal than the whale. The assistance they receive from iron tools contributes to their dexterity in wooden performances. Their implements are almost wholly made of iron. One chisel indeed we saw made of bone. This consists of a flat long piece, fastened into a wooden handle. A stone is their mallet, and a bit of fish-skin their polisher. Some of these chisels were nine or ten inches in length, and three or four in breadth; but they were, in general, considerably smaller. The chisel and the knife are the principal forms that iron assumes among them. Some of these knives are very large, having crooked blades; the edge being on the back, or convex part. They are sharpened upon a coarse slate whetstone, and kept continually bright. What we saw among them, were about the breadth and thickness of an iron hoop; and their singular form plainly proves, that they are not of European make. Iron is called by the natives seekemaile, a name which they also give to tin, and other white metals. It being so common among these people, we were anxious to discover how it could be conveyed to them. On our arrival in the sound, we perceived that they had a knowledge of traffic, and an inclination to pursue it; and we were afterwards convinced, that they had not acquired this knowledge from a cursory interview with strangers; but with whom they carried on this traffic we could not learn; for though we saw several articles of European manufacture, such as brags and iron, yet it does not follow, that they were received from European nations. We could not obtain the least information of their having seen ships, like ours, before, nor of their having been engaged in commerce with such civilized people. Many circumstances corroborate to prove this beyond doubt. On our arrival, they were earnest in their enquiries, whether we meant to settle among them, and whether we were friendly visitors, informing us, at the same time, that they gave us wood and water from motives of friendship. This proves sufficiently, that they considered themselves as proprietors of the place, and dreaded no superiority: for it would have been an unnatural enquiry, if any ships had been here before, and had supplied themselves with wood and water, and then departed; for they might then reasonably expect that we should do the same. It must be admitted, indeed, that they exhibited no marks of surprise at beholding our ships; but this may, with great propriety, be attributed to their natural indolence of temper, and their wanting a thirst of curiosity. They were

ing an ear. The last is five inches in breadth, inch. The edges for are set with sharp bone or a handle. With this sardines, and other fish taken either upon or in of bone and wood, diffe harpoon, used in strikals, manifests evident piece of bone, formed blade of a large muscle ment are fixed. Two sined; to one end of s to leave the shaft haer, when the animal is

ching land animals, or but, it is probable that th their arrows, and enoxes, with their spear, by covering themselves upon all fours, at which ble. For the same purads, as well as the dried e used.

ope kind, which they articles, is formed either ew of animals, or from h they manufacture their ometimes so remarkably they could have belonged e whale. The assistance ontributes to their dexers. Their implements are

One chisel indeed we nsists of a flat long piece. A stone is their malic, polisher. Some of these es in length, and three or e, in general, considerably e knife are the principal ng them. Some of their crooked blades; the convex part. They are e whetstone, and kept comw among them, were about n iron hoop; and their fin that they are not of Euroy the natives seek make, a o tin, and other white meong these people, we were ould be conveyed to them.

we perceived that they had an inclination to pursue; vanced, that they had not in a cursory interview with ey carried on this traffic we u we saw several articles of h as brads and iron, yet it e received from European ain the least information of ours, before, nor of their mmerce with such civilized ceas corroborate to prove arrival, they were earnest we meant to settle among friendly visitors, informing ey gave us wood and water

This proves sufficiently, lves as proprietors of the riority: for it would have if any ships had been here themselves with wood and for they might then reason to the same. It must be adhibited no marks of fur; but this may, with great their natural indolence of a thirst of curiosity. They were

were never startled at the report of a musquet, till they, one day, shewed us that their hide dresses were impene- trable to their spears and arrows, when one of our peo- ple shot a musquet ball through one of them that had been six times folded. Their astonishment at this plainly indicated their ignorance of the effect of fire arms. This was afterwards very frequently confirmed, when we used to shoot birds, at which they appeared greatly confounded. Our explanation of the piece, to- gether with the nature of its operation, with the aid of shot and ball, struck them so forcibly, as to convince us of their having no previous ideas on this matter. Though some account of a voyage to this coast, by the Spaniards, in 1774, or 1775, had arrived in England before we sailed, the circumstances just mentioned, prove, that these ships had never been at Nootka. It is also evident, that iron could not have been in so many hands, nor would the use of it have been so well known, if they had so lately obtained the first knowledge of it. From their general use of this metal, it probably comes from some constant source, in the way of traffic, and they have perhaps been long supplied with it; for they use their tools with as much dexterity as the longest practice can acquire. The most natural conjecture, therefore, is, that they trade for their iron with other Indian tribes, who may have some communication with European settlements upon that continent, or receive it through several intermediate nations. By the same means they probably obtain their brads and copper. Not only the rude materials, but some manufactured articles seem to have found their way hither. The brads ornaments for noses are made in so masterly a manner, that the Indians cannot be supposed capable of fabricating them. We are certain, that the materials are European, as all the American tribes are ignorant of the method of making brads; but copper has been frequently met with, and, from its ductility, might be easily fashioned into any shape, and polished. If such articles are not used by our traders to Hudson's Bay and Canada, in their traffic with the natives, they must have been introduced at Nootka from Mexico; whence, it is probable, the two silver table spoons were originally derived.

With respect to the religious and political institutions established among these people, we cannot be supposed to have acquired much knowledge. However, we discovered, that there were such men as chiefs, distinguished by the title of *Aweek*, to whom the others are, in some degree, subordinate. But the authority of each of these great men seems to extend no farther than to his own family, who acknowledge him as their head. Nothing that we saw could give us an insight into their notions of religion, except the figures already mentioned, called *klumma*. These, perhaps, were idols; but as the word *acweek* was frequently mentioned when they spoke of them, we suppose they may be the images of some of their ancestors, whose memories they venerate. This however is all conjecture; for we could receive no information concerning them, as we knew little more of their language than to enable us to ask the names of things, and being incapable of holding any conversation with the natives relative to their traditions, or their religious institutions. The word *wakash* was frequently in their mouths. It seemed to express approbation, applause and friendship. Whenever they appeared to be pleased or satisfied, they would call out *wakash* *wakash*. It is worthy of remark, that as these people differ from the natives of the islands in the Pacific Ocean, in their persons, customs, and language, we cannot suppose their respective progenitors to have belonged to the same tribe, when they emigrated into those places where we now find their descendants.

Their language is, by no means, harsh or disagreeable, farther than their pronouncing the *k* and *h* with a stronger aspiration, or more force than we do. They have one sound, which is very frequent, and not used by us. It is formed in a particular manner by clashing the tongue partly against the roof of the mouth. It is difficult to represent this sound by any composition of our letters, unless from *tszhl*; which is generally used as a termination. The next is composed of *tl*; and

many words end with *z* and *fs*. A specimen or two of each of these is here put down.

Opulztlh	- -	<i>The Sun</i>
Onulztlh	- -	<i>The Moon</i>
Kahsh etl	- -	<i>Dead</i>
Teehel :etl	- -	<i>To throw a stone</i>
Koomitz	- -	<i>A human skull</i>
Quahmifs	- -	<i>Fish roe</i>

NUMERALS.

Tfawack	- -	<i>One</i>
Akklá	- -	<i>Two</i>
Katsitfa	- -	<i>Three</i>
Mo, or Moo	- -	<i>Four</i>
Sochah	- -	<i>Five</i>
Nofpo	- -	<i>Six</i>
Atlepeo	- -	<i>Seven</i>
Atlaquoithl	- -	<i>Eight</i>
Tfawaquulchl	- -	<i>Nine</i>
Haeoo	- -	<i>Ten</i>

With respect to the composition of their language we can say very little, having been scarcely able to distinguish the several parts of speech. We can only infer from their manner of speaking, which is very slow and distinct, that it has very few prepositions or conjunctions; and, as far as we could discover, is destitute of even a single interjection, to express admiration or surprize. From having few conjunctions, it may be conceived, that each single word, with them, will comprehend a great number of single ideas; which seems to be the case; but, for the same reason, the language will be defective in other respects, not having words to distinguish or express differences which really exist; and hence not sufficiently copious. This was observed to be the case, in many instances, particularly with respect to the names of animals. The relation or affinity it may bear to other languages, either on this, or the Asiatic continent, we have not been able sufficiently to trace, for want of proper specimens: to compare it with, except those of the Esquimaux, and Indians about Hudson's Bay; to neither of which it has the least resemblance. On the other hand, from the few Mexican words we have been able to procure, there is the most obvious agreement in the terminations of words.

In Nootka Sound it is high water, in the days of the new and full moon, at twenty minutes after twelve; the perpendicular rise and fall being eight feet, nine inches; which is to be understood of the day tides, and those which happen two or three days after the full and new moon. The night tides, at this time, rise near two feet higher. Some circumstances that occurred daily, relating to this, deserve particular notice. In the cove where we got wood and water, was a great deal of drift-wood cast ashore, a part of which we had to remove, to come at the water. Now it frequently happened, that large pieces of trees, that we had removed in day, out of the reach of the then high water, were found by us floated again in our way the next morning; and all our spouts for conveying water, thrown out of their places, which were immoveable during the day-tides. We found likewise wood, which we had split up for fuel, and had placed beyond the reach of the day-tide, floated away during the night. Some of these circumstances occurred every night and morning, for three or four days in the height of the spring tides. To render our account of the transactions in Nootka Sound complete we must add, that by a variety of astronomical and nautical observations, we found its latitude to be 49 deg. 36 min. 6 sec. North, and its longitude 233 deg. 17 min. 14 sec. East.

It has been already related, that we put to sea on the 26th of April, in the evening, with manifest indications of an approaching storm; and by these signs we were not deceived, for we had scarce sailed out of the Sound, when the wind shifted from N. E. to S. E. by E. and blew a strong gale, with squalls and rain, the sky being, at the same time, uncommonly black. Apprehensive of the wind's veering more to the South, which would expose us to the danger of a lee-shore, we got

got the tacks on board, and made all the sail we could to the S. W. It fortunately happened, that the wind veered no farther towards the S. and S. E. so that early the next morning we were entirely clear of the coast. The Discovery being at some distance astern, we brought to till she came up, and then both vessels steered a north-westerly course. Between one and two o'clock P. M. there was a perfect hurricane, inasmuch that our commodore thought it exceeding dangerous to run any longer before it; we therefore, agreeable to his order, brought the ships to, with their heads to the south. In this situation our ship, the Resolution, sprung a leak in her starboard quarter, which at first alarmed us greatly; but after the water was baled out, which kept us employed till midnight, we kept it under by means of the pump. In the evening, the wind having shifted to the fourthward, its fury in some measure abated; upon which we stretched to the west; but about eleven, the gale again increased, and continued till five the next morning, when the storm seemed to have spent its force, and became moderate. The weather now

clearing up, we were able to see several leagues around us, and steered more to the north. At noon we steered N. W. by N. with a fresh gale and fair weather. But, towards the evening, the wind again blew hard, with squalls and rain. With this weather we continued the same course till the 30th, when we steered N. by W. intending to make the land. Captain Cook regretted that we could not do it sooner, as we were now passing the spot where the pretended strait of Admiral de Fonte has been placed by geographers. Though the captain gave no credit to such vague and improbable stories, he was desirous of keeping the coast of America aboard, that this point might be cleared up beyond dispute; but, at the same time he considered, that it would have been very imprudent to have engaged with the land while the weather was so tempestuous, or to have lost the advantage of a fair wind, by waiting for less stormy weather. This day, at noon, by observation, we found our latitude to be 53 deg. 22 min. north, and our longitude 225 deg. 14 min. east.

C H A P. XI.

Progress of the Resolution and Discovery along the north-west coast of America—They anchor near Cape Hinckley—Behaviour of the natives—Progress up the Sound, and departure from thence—Montague island—Inhabitants of Prince William's Sound described—The two ships proceed along the coast—Several capes named—Cook's river discovered—Lieutenant King takes possession of the country—His reception by the natives—Departure of the ships from Cook's river—Pass St. Hermogenes, and several Capes and islands—Conjectures concerning a Russian letter brought on board the Discovery—A providential escape—The ships arrive at Oonalaska—Description of the harbour of Sanganoobah—Prosecution of the voyage to the north—Mr. Williamson lands at Cape Newnam—His report—Bristol Bay—Extent of it—The ships obliged to return by reason of the shoals—Point Upright—Death and Character of Mr. Anderson.

ON Friday the 1st of May, not seeing land, we steered to the N. E. having a fresh breeze at S. S. E. attended with squalls, showers of hail and rain. About seven o'clock, P. M. we descried land, distant twelve leagues. At four o'clock the next morning the coast was seen from S. E. to N. by W. the nearest part distant five leagues. At the same time, the northern point of an inlet, or at least what appeared to be one, bore E. by S. from whence to the northward along the coast, there seemed to be many bays and harbours. At six, approaching nearer to the land, we pursued the direction of it, steering N. W. by N. and between eleven and twelve we passed a cluster of small isles, situated near the continent, to the northward of the southern point of an extensive bay. An arm of this bay seemed to reach towards the north, behind a round lofty mountain, that stands between it and the sea. To this eminence Captain Cook gave the name of Mount Edgumbe; and the point of land projecting from it, was called Cape Edgumbe. The Cape lies in latitude 57 deg. 3 min. N. and in long. 224 deg. E. The land, except what is contiguous to the sea, is of considerable height, abounding with hills. Mount Edgumbe, which far out-tops all the rest, was entirely covered with snow, as were also the other elevated hills; but the lower ones, and the spots rising near the sea, were covered with wood. Pursuing our course to the northward, we found the coast to trend to the N. and N. E. for six or seven leagues, and there formed a spacious bay. Some island being in the entrance of it, we gave it the name of the Bay of Islands.

On Sunday the third, at half an hour past four, P. M. Mount Edgumbe bore south 54 deg. E. a large inlet, N. 50 deg. E. and the most advanced point of land towards the N. W. lying under a very lofty mountain, which was called Mount Fair-Weather, bore N. 32 deg. west. The inlet was named Cross Sound, it being first observed on the day so marked in our calendar. An eastern promontory forms the south-eastern point of this Sound; this we distinguished by the name of Cross-Cape. Under the above-mentioned peaked mountain is a point, which was named Cape Fair-Weather. At noon, this cape was distant thirteen leagues. Having

for several days light breezes, we steered S. W. and W. S. W. till the morning of the fourth, when we tacked, and stood towards the shore. At noon Mount Fair-Weather bore north, 63 deg. E. This mountain is the highest of a chain or ridge of mountains, that rise at the north-western entrance of Cross Sound, and extend towards the N. W. parallel with the coast. They are covered with snow, from the highest summit down to the sea coast, except in a few places, where we could discern trees that seemed to rise, as it were from the sea. About five o'clock, P. M. the top of a high mountain appeared above the horizon, bearing N. 26 deg. W. forty leagues distant. This we supposed to be the mountain Elias of Commodore Beering. In the course of the day we observed a brownish duck, with a dark indigo head and neck; likewise several whales, porpoises, seals, &c. Having light winds, with occasional calms, we made but little way. On Wednesday the 6th, the nearest land being distant eight leagues, we perceived, in a north-easterly direction, the appearance of a bay, and an island, by its southern point, covered with wood. This is probably the place where Beering anchored: Captain Cook, therefore, in honour of the first discoverer, named it Beering's bay; southward of which the ridge of mountains is interrupted by a plain of several leagues in extent, beyond which the sight was unbounded. On the seventh, at noon, we were five leagues from the shore; from which station we observed a bay under the high land, with low woodland on each side of it. We now perceived, that the coast trended considerably to the west. On the ninth, at noon, Mount Elias bore N. 30 deg. E. distant 19 leagues. This stands twelve leagues inland, lat. 60 deg. 27 min. N. long. 219 deg. E.

Sunday the 10th, we observed in lat. 59 deg. 51 min. and in long. 215 deg. 56 min. being only three leagues distant from the coast of the continent, which extended from E. half N. to N. W. half W. as far as the eye could reach. To the westward of the latter direction we saw an island, distant six leagues. A point, which the Commodore named Cape Suckling, projects towards the north-eastern end of the island: Within this cape stands a hill of considerable height, divided

several leagues around
th. At noon we steered
and fair weather. But
again blew hard, with
weather we continued the
we steered N. by W.
Captain Cook regretted
as we were now passing
rait of Admiral de Fonte
s. Though the captain
and improbable stories, he
coast of America aboard,
up beyond dispute; but
ed, that it would have
engaged with the land
obscuous, or to have lost
by waiting for less stormy
by observation, we found
nin. north, and our lon.

near Cape Hinchinbrook—
and—Inhabitants of Prince
s's river discovered—Lac
s from Cook's river—Paj
on board the Discovery—
Woodba—Progression of the
Extent of it—The ships ob-

we steered S. W. and
of the fourth, when we
shore. At noon Mount
deg. E. This mountain is
e of mountains, that rise
of Cross Sound, and ex-
del with the coast. They
the highest summit down
w places, where we could
rise, as it were from the
M. the top of a high
e horizon, bearing N.
ant. This we supposed to
odore Beeching. In the
a brownish duck, with a
likewise several whales,
light winds, with occa-
sion. On Wednesday
distant eight leagues, we
direction, the appearance
southern point, covered
the place where Beeching
before, in honour of the
ing's bay, southward of
is interrupted by a plain
ond which the sight was
s, at noon, we were five
which station we observed
th low woodland on each
, that the coast trended
in the ninth, at noon,
E. distant 19 leagues.
and, lat. 60 deg. 27 min.

erved in lat. 59 deg.
56 min. being only three
of the continent, which
W. half W. as far as the
ward of the latter di-
it six leagues. A point,
Cape Suckling, projects
of the island: Within
derable height, divided
from

from the second range of mountains by low land; so that the cape, at a distance, has the appearance of an island. A bay is seated on the north side of Cape Suckling, seemingly extensive, and sheltered from most winds. Before night, we had approached near enough the cape to see some low land projecting from it to the N. W. we also observed some small islands in the bay, and several elevated rocks between the cape and the north-eastern extremity of the island. Early the next morning the wind shifted from N. E. to N. which being against us, the Commodore relinquished his design of going into the bay, and bore up for the west end of the island. Having a calm about ten o'clock, we embarked in a boat, and landed on the island, with a view of seeing what lay on the other side; but finding the hills to be at a greater distance than was expected, we laid aside that intention. On a small eminence near the shore, the captain left, at the foot of a tree, a bottle containing a paper, on which the names of our ships, and the date of our discovery were described: he inclosed also two silver twopenny pieces of English coin, which, with many others, had been furnished him by Dr. Kaye, now dean of Lincoln; and in testimony of his esteem for that gentleman, Captain Cook called the island Kaye's Island. It does not exceed 36 miles in length, and its breadth is not above four miles in any part. The S. W. point is a naked rock, elevated considerably. Its lat. is 59 deg. 49 min. north, long. 216 deg. 58 min. east. Towards the sea, the island terminates in bare sloping cliffs, with a beach consisting of large pebbles, intermixed in some places with a clayey sand. Some parts of the shore are interrupted by small valleys and gullies, in each of which a rivulet or torrent rushes down with a considerable degree of impetuosity; lasting perhaps no longer than the whole of the snow is dissolved. The valleys are filled with pine-trees; and these, indeed, abound in other parts of the island, which is covered as it were with a broad garb of wood. The trees, however, are far from being of an extraordinary growth: on which account, they would be of no great service for shipping, except as materials for making top-gallant-masts, and other small things. Neither Canadian, nor Cyprus pines, are to be seen among them, but we saw some currant, and hawberry bushes, a yellow flowered violet, and the leaves of other plants not yet in flower. A crow was seen flying about the wood; two or three white-headed eagles, like those of Nootka, were also observed; besides another species, equally large, which has a white breast. In our passage from the ship to the shore, we saw a number of fowls sitting on the water, or flying about; the principal of which were gulls, burres, shags, ducks, or large petrels, divers, and quebrantahueses. There was also a single bird flying about, apparently of the gull kind, whose colour was a snowy white, with some black along part of the upper sides of its wings. We saw one fox near a wood; also two or three small seals were seen on the shore; but not any traces of inhabitants could be found.

In the afternoon Captain Cook, with those who accompanied him, returned on board; after which we set sail, and, with a light breeze from the east, we steered for the fourth-west side of the island, which we got round by eight o'clock in the evening; we stood for the westernmost land, now in sight. At the north-east end of Kaye's Island stands another, extending N. W. and S. E. about nine miles, to within the same distance of the north-western boundary, to which the name of Comptroller's Bay was given. The next morning, being Tuesday the 1st, Kaye's Island was still in sight, bearing E. by S. At noon, when in lat. 61 deg. 21 min. the eastern point of a spacious inlet bore west-north-west, three leagues distant. From Comptroller's Bay to this point, which the Commodore named Cape Hinchinbrook, the direction of the coast is nearly E. and W. Beyond this it appeared to incline towards the south; a direction very different from that marked out in the modern charts, founded on the late discoveries of the Russians; inasmuch, that we had some reason to expect, that we should find, through the inlet before us, a passage to the N. and that the land to

No. 67.

the W. and S. W. was a group of islands. We had no sooner reached the inlet, than the weather became exceeding foggy; it was therefore thought necessary that the ships should be secured during the continuance of the fog. With this view we hauled close under Cape Hinchinbrook, and cast anchor in eight fathoms water, at the distance of about two furlongs from the shore. Soon after the boats were hoisted out, some to fish, and others to sound. At intervals, the fog cleared away, and gave us a prospect of the neighbouring land. The cape was one league distant; the western point of the inlet five leagues; and the land on that side extended to W. by N. Between this point and N. W. by W. we could discern no land. The most westerly point we had in view on the north shore, was at the distance of two leagues. Betwixt this point, and the shore under which our ships now lay at anchor, is a bay about three leagues deep, on the south-eastern side of which are several coves; and in the middle are placed some rocky islands. To these Mr. Gore was dispatched in a boat, in order to shoot some birds. He had scarcely reached them, when about twenty natives appeared in two large canoes; upon which he returned to the ship, and they followed him. They were unwilling, however, to venture along-side, but kept at a little distance, shouting aloud, and clapping and extending their arms alternately. They then began a song, much after the manner of King George's, or Nootka Sound. Their heads were strewed with feathers, and one of them held out a white garment, which we supposed was intended as a token of friendship; while another, for near a quarter of an hour, stood up in the canoe, entirely naked, with his arms extended like a cross, and motionless. Their canoes were constructed upon a different plan from those of Nootka. The frame consisted of different laths, and the outside was formed of the skins of seals, or other animals of a similar kind. Though some of our people repeated the most common words of the language of Nootka, they did not appear to understand them. After they had received some presents that were thrown to them, they retired towards the shore, intimating by signs, that they would pay us another visit the next morning. Two of them came off to us in the night, each in a small canoe, hoping, perhaps, they might have an opportunity of pilfering; for they went away as soon as they perceived themselves discovered. The wind, during the night, blew hard in squalls, with rain, and thick hazy weather.

On Wednesday the 13th, at ten o'clock, A. M. the wind becoming more moderate, we got up our anchors, and made sail, in order to search for some convenient place where we might stop the leak, as our present situation was too much exposed for that purpose. We at first intended to have gone up the bay before which our ships had anchored; but, by the clearness of the weather, we were afterwards induced to steer towards the north, further up the great inlet. Having passed the N. W. point of the above-mentioned bay, we found that the coast, on that side, inclined to the eastward: we did not follow it, but proceeded on our course to the northward, for a point of land which we observed in that direction. In the afternoon, before two o'clock, the foul weather returned, with so thick a fog, that we could discern no other land but the point just mentioned, off which we arrived between four and five o'clock, and found it to be a little island, situate at the distance of about two miles from the neighbouring coast, being a point of land on the eastern side of which we discovered an excellent bay, or rather harbour: to this we plied up, while the wind blew in very hard squalls, accompanied with rain. In passing the island, we found a muddy bottom, at the depth of twenty-six fathoms. At length, about eight o'clock, we were obliged, by the violence of the squalls, to cast anchor in thirteen fathoms water, before we had proceeded so far into the bay as the Commodore intended; but we thought ourselves fortunate enough in having the ships already secured, for the night was exceeding tempestuous. But, notwithstanding the weather was so turbulent, the natives were not deterred from paying us a visit. Three of them

6 Y

them

them came off in two canoes: two of them in one, and one in the other, being the number that each canoe could carry, for they were constructed nearly in the same manner with those of the Esquimaux, except that in one of them were two holes for two persons to sit in, and in the other but one. The men had each a stick, about three feet long, with the large feathers, or wings of birds, fastened to it, which they probably held up to us as tokens of peace. The treatment these three received, induced many others to visit us, between one and two o'clock the following morning, in both great and small canoes. Some of them ventured on board the *Resolution*, though not before some of our people had stepped into their boats. Among those who came on board, was a middle-aged man, who, as we afterwards found, was a chief. His dress was made of the skin of the sea-otter, and he had on his head such a cap as is worn by the inhabitants of Nootka, embellished with sky-blue glass beads. Any kind of beads seemed to be in high estimation among these people, who readily gave in exchange for them whatever they had, even their fine sea-otter skins. They coveted particularly iron, but absolutely rejected small bits, and required pieces nine or ten inches long at least, and three or four fingers broad. But they obtained little of this commodity from us, as by this time it was become rather scarce. The points of some of their spears were of this metal; others were of copper, and a few were bone; of which last the points of their arrows, darts, &c. were formed. The chief could not be prevailed upon to venture below the upper deck, nor did he and his companions continue long aboard. While they staid with us, it was necessary to watch them narrowly, as they soon manifested an inclination for thieving. At length, when they had been three or four hours alongside the *Resolution*, they all quitted her, and repaired to the *Discovery*, which ship none of them had before been aboard of, except one man, who came from her at this very time, and immediately returned to her, in company with the others. As soon as they had departed from our ship, Captain Cook dispatched a boat to found the head of the bay; for, as the wind was moderate at present, it was intended to lay the ship ashore, if a proper place could be found for the purpose of stopping the leak. Soon afterwards all the Americans quitted the *Discovery*, and made their way towards our boat that was employed in founding. The officer who was in her, observing their approach, returned to the ship, and all the canoes followed him. The crew of the boat had no sooner repaired on board, leaving in her by way of guard two of their numbers, than several of the natives stepped into her, some of whom presented their spears before the two men, while others loosed the rope by which she was fastened to the ship, and the rest were so daring as to attempt to tow her away; but the moment they saw we were preparing to oppose them, they let her go, stepped into their own boats, and made signs, in order to persuade us to lay down our arms, being to all appearance perfectly unconcerned. This attempt, though a very bold one, was scarce equal to what they had meditated on board Captain Cleve's ship. The man, whom we mentioned before as having conducted his countrymen from the *Resolution* to the *Discovery*, had first been aboard of the latter; where, looking down all the hatchways, and observing no one, except the officer of the watch, and two or three more, he doubtless imagined that the might be plundered with ease, particularly as the was stationed at some distance from the *Resolution*. It was unquestionably with this intent, that the natives went off to her. Several of them repaired aboard without the least ceremony, and drawing their knives, made signs to the officer to keep off, and began to search for plunder. The first thing they laid their hands on was the rudder of one of our boats, which they immediately threw overboard to those of their party, who continued in the canoes. But before they could find another object that struck their fancy, the ship's crew were alarmed, and many of them, armed with cutlasses, came upon deck. The plunderers no sooner saw this, than they all sneaked off into their canoes, with evident

marks of indifference. It was at this time that our boat was employed in founding, as we have already mentioned; and the natives, without delay, proceeded towards her, after the disappointment they had met with at the *Discovery*. Their visiting us so early in the morning was undoubtedly with a view of plundering, on a supposition that they should find all our people asleep. We were now on the point of weighing anchor, in order to proceed further up the bay, when the wind began to blow as violently as before, and was attended with rain, inasmuch that we were obliged to bear away the cable again, and lie fast. In the evening, perceiving the gale of wind did not abate, and thinking it might be some time before an opportunity of getting higher up presented itself, the Commodore was determined to heel the ship in our present station; and, with that view, caused her to be moored with a kedge anchor and hawser. One of the sailors, in heaving the anchor out of the boat, was carried over-board by the buoy-rope, and accompanied the anchor to the bottom. In this hazardous situation he had presence of mind sufficient to disengage himself, and came up to the surface of the water, where he was immediately taken up, with a dangerous fracture in one of his legs.

On Friday the 15th, at day-break we gave our ship a good heel to port, in order to stop the leak, which, on ripping off the sheathing, was found to be in the seams. While the carpenters were employed in this business, others of our people filled the water-casks at a stream not far from our station. On the 16th, towards the evening, the weather cleared up, and we then found ourselves encompassed with land. Our station was on the eastern side of the sound, in a place distinguished by the appellation of Snug-corner Bay. The Captain, accompanied by some of his officers, went to take a survey of the head of it, and they found it to be sheltered from all winds, having a muddy bottom at the depth of seven to three fathoms. The land near the shore is low, partly wooded, and partly clear: the clear ground was covered with snow, but very little remained in the woods. The summits of the hills, in the neighbourhood, were covered with wood; but those that were at a greater distance inland had the appearance of naked rocks, covered with snow. Our leak being at length stopped, on the 17th, at four o'clock, A. M. we weighed anchor, and steered a N. W. course, with a gentle breeze at E. N. E. Soon after we had made sail, the Americans visited us again. When we had reached the north-western point of the arm wherein we had anchored, we observed that the flood tide came into the inlet, by the same channel through which we had entered. This circumstance did not much contribute to the probability of a passage to the north through the inlet, though it did not make entirely against it. Having passed the point just mentioned, we met with much foul ground, and many sunken rocks: the wind failed us, so that we had some difficulty in extricating ourselves from the danger with which we were threatened; however, about two o'clock P. M. we cast anchor under the eastern shore, in 13 fathoms, and four leagues distant from our last station. The weather soon after cleared up, and we had a distinct view of all the surrounding land, particularly towards the north, where it appeared to close. This gave us but little hope of meeting with a passage that way; but, in order to form a right judgment, Lieutenant Gore was sent out with two armed boats to examine the northern arm; and, at the same time, the master was dispatched with two other boats, to survey another arm that seemed to incline towards the east. Both returned at night. By the Master we were informed, that the arm, to which he had been sent, communicated with that we had last quitted, and that one side of it was formed by a cluster of islands. Mr. Gore reported, "that he had seen the entrance of an arm, which, he was of opinion, extended a long way to the N. E. and that probably by it a passage might be found." On the other hand, Mr. Roberts, one of the mates, who had been sent with Mr. Gore to sketch out the parts they had examined, was of opinion that they saw the head of this arm. "The disagreement of these two opinions (observes Captain Cook) and the

at this time that our boats as we have already mentioned, proceeded to the point they had met with, and we went on to the view of plundering, should find all our people, and weighing anchor, by the bay, when the wind before, and was attended were obliged to bear away.

In the evening, perceived that the opportunity of getting the Commodore was determined (station) and, with a keel anchor, in heaving the anchor over-board by the buoy anchor to the bottom. In the presence of mind sufficient to come up to the surface immediately taken up, with his legs.

At day-break we gave our ship to stop the leak, which was found to be in the deckers were employed in this case filled the water-casks at a distance. On the 16th, towards the north, and we then found our station was on a small island in a place distinguished by a bay. The Captain, officers, went to take a survey and it to be sheltered from the north at the depth of seven fathoms near the shore is low, and the clear ground was very little remained in the hills, in the neighbourhood; but those that were seen had the appearance of snow. Our leak being at day-break, at four o'clock, A. M. we sailed a N. W. course, with a fair breeze.

Soon after we had made land again. When we had the point of the arm wherein we found that the flood tide came in a channel through which we found it did not much contribute to the north through the channel, make entirely against it. We mentioned, we met with many sunken rocks: the wind made difficulty in extricating the vessel which we were threatened; and P. M. we cast anchor under the lee of the island, at four fathoms, and four leagues from the shore. The weather soon after cleared, and we had a distinct view of all the mountains towards the north, where we gave up but little hope of finding any; but, in order to form an opinion, we sent out with the northern arm; and, at day-break, we dispatched with two boats, which seemed to us returned at night. By day-break, that the arm, to which we had been directed, that we had lost it was formed by a cluster of rocks, that he had seen the bay was of opinion, extended to the north, that probably by a passage to the other hand, Mr. Roberts, was sent with Mr. Gore to examine, was of opinion that the arm. "The disagreeable observes Captain Cook) and

the circumstances of the flood-tide entering the found from the south, rendered the existence of a passage this way very doubtful. And, as the wind in the morning had become favourable for getting out to sea, the Captain tells us, he resolved to spend no more time in searching for a passage in a place that promised so little success. Besides, if the land on the west should prove to be islands, agreeable to the late Russian Discoveries, we could not fail of getting far enough to the north, and that in good time; provided we did not lose the season in searching places, where a passage was not only doubtful, but improbable. We were now upwards of 520 leagues westward of any part of Baffin's, or of Hudson's Bay, and whatever passage there may be, it must be, or at least part of it must lie to the north of latitude 72 deg. Who could expect to find a passage or strait of such extent?—Notwithstanding the plausibility in the face of this reasoning, our readers will see, it is little more than mere conjecture; and might we hazard our opinion against the judgement of so able a navigator, we must confess, that the latter is not coincident with his usual precision; nor can we think his conduct, in the above search, corresponds in all particulars with his usual assiduity. This is certain, the arm near Cape Hinchinbrook, above alluded to, and the northern part of Hudson's Bay, lie between the same parallels of latitude; and it has been the united opinion of all our most skilful navigators and geographers, that if a N. W. passage does exist, it must be through Hudson's, or Baffin's bay. As to the Russian Discoveries, or those of any other monopolizing, trading companies, they have been of little service hitherto to navigation, and, with respect to their credit, of very small value. It were therefore to be wished, that the report of so able an officer as Mr. Gore had been more particularly attended to; for we think, if the desirable passage can be found, it must be in a lower latitude than 72 deg. and through some arm or strait. This is our own private opinion, and we do not wish to infringe upon the judgement of others, we wish this sacred privilege always to remain inviolate, with every member of civil society.

On Monday, the 18th, about three o'clock A. M. we weighed, and made sail to the southward, down the inlet, with a light northerly breeze. We were enabled to shorten our run out to sea, by discovering another passage into this inlet, to the S. W. of that by which we entered. It is separated from the other, by an island that extends 18 leagues in the direction of S. W. and N. E. to which our Commodore gave the name of Montague Island. In this south-western channel are several islands. Those situated in the entrance next the open sea, are elevated and rocky. Those that lie within are low; and as they were totally free from snow, they were, for this reason, called Green Islands. At two o'clock, P. M. the wind veered to the S. W. by S. which put us under the necessity of plying. We first stretched over to within the distance of two miles of the eastern shore, and tacked in 53 fathoms. When we stood back to Montague Island, we discovered a ledge of rocks, some under water, and others above the surface. We afterwards met with some others towards the middle of the channel. These rocks rendering it dangerous to ply during the night, we spent it in standing off and on, under Montague Island; for the depth of water is so great, that we could not cast anchor. The next morning, at break of day, we steered for the channel between the Green Island and Montague Island, which is between two and three leagues in breadth. About eight in the evening, we had a perfect calm; when we let go our anchors at the depth of twenty-one fathoms, over a muddy bottom, distant about two miles from Montague Island. After the calm had continued till ten o'clock the succeeding morning, a slight breeze sprung up from the north, with which we again weighed and made sail.

Having got out into the open sea, by six in the evening, we discovered that the coast trended W. by S. as far as the eye could reach. To the place we had just left the Commodore gave the name of Prince William's Sound. It seems to occupy, at least, one degree and

a half of latitude, and two degrees of longitude, exclusive of the branches or arms, with whose extent we are unacquainted. The natives, in general, are of a middling stature, though many of them are under it. They are square, or strong chested, with short, thick necks, and large broad visages, which are, for the most part, rather flat. The most disproportioned part of their body appeared to be their heads, which were of great magnitude. Their teeth were of a tolerable whiteness, broad, well set, and equal in size. Their eyes had full, round points, turned up at the tip. Their eyes, though not small, were scarcely proportionate to the largeness of their faces. They have black hair, strong, straight, and thick. Their beards were, in general thin, or deficient; but the hairs growing about the lips of those who have them, were bristly or stiff, and often of a brownish colour. Some of the elderly men had large, thick, straight beards. The variety of their features is considerable. Very few, however, can be said to be handsome, though their countenance usually indicates frankness, vivacity, and good nature; and yet some of them shewed a reserve and fullness in their aspect. The faces of some of the women are agreeable; and many of them, but principally the younger ones, may easily be distinguished from the other sex, by the superior softness of their features. The complexion of some of the females, and of the children, is white, without any mixture of red. Many of the men, whom we saw naked, had rather a swarthy cast, which was scarcely the effect of any stain, it not being a custom among them to paint their bodies. Both sexes, young and old, of this found, are all clothed in the same manner. Their ordinary dress is a sort of close frock, or rather robe, which sometimes reaches only to the knees, but generally down to the ancles. It has, at the upper part, a hole just sufficient to admit the head, with sleeves reaching to the wrist. These frocks are composed of the skins of various animals, and they are commonly worn with the hairy side outwards. Some of the natives have their frocks made of the skins of fowls, with only the down left on them, which they glue upon other substances. The seams, where the different skins are sewed together, are usually adorned with fringes or tassels of narrow thongs, cut out of the same skins. A few have a sort of cape or collar, and some have a hood; but the other is the most customary form, and appears to constitute the whole of their dress in fair weather. When it is rainy, they put over this another frock, made with some degree of ingenuity from the intestines of whales, or some other large animal, prepared with such skill, as to resemble, in great measure, our gold-beater's leaf. It is formed so as to be drawn tight round the neck; and its sleeves extend down to the wrist, round which they are fastened with a string. When in their canoes, they draw the skirts of this frock over the rim of the hole in which they sit, so that the water by this means is prevented from entering; at the same time it keeps the men dry upwards, for no water can penetrate through it. Yet, if not constantly kept moist, it is apt to crack or break. This frock, as well as the common one made of skins, is nearly similar to the dress of the natives of Greenland. Though the inhabitants of this inlet, in general, do not cover their legs or feet, yet some of them wear a kind of skin-stockings, reaching half way up their thighs. Few of them are without mittens for their hands, formed from the skin of a bear's paw. Those who wear any thing on their heads, resembled, in this particular, the people of Nootka Sound, having high truncated conical caps, composed of straw, and sometimes of wood. The hair of the men is commonly cropped round the forehead and neck, but the females suffer it to grow long; and the greatest part of them tie a lock of it on the crown, while a few, after our custom, club it behind. Both men and women perforate their ears with several holes, about the outer and lower part of the edge, wherein they suspend small bunches of beads. They likewise perforate the septum of the nose, through which they often thrust the quill-feathers of birds, or little bending ornaments, made of a tubulous shelly substance, strong

and

on a stiff cord, of the length of three or four inches, which give them a ridiculous and grotesque appearance. But the most extraordinary fashion, adopted by some of the natives of both sexes, is their having the under-lip cut quite through lengthwise, rather below the swelling part. This incision frequently exceeds two inches in length, and, either by its natural retraction while the wound is still fresh, or by the repetition of some artificial management, assumes the appearance and shape of lips, and becomes sufficiently large to admit the tongue through. When a person with his under-lip thus slit, was first seen by one of our sailors, he immediately exclaimed, that the man had two mouths; which, indeed, it greatly resembles. They fix in this artificial mouth, a flat, narrow kind of ornament, made principally out of a solid shell or bone, cut into small narrow pieces, like teeth, almost down to the base, or thick part, which has, at each end, a projecting bit, that serves to support it when put into the divided lip, the cut part then appearing outwards. Some of them only perforate the lower-lip into separate holes; on which occasion the ornament consists of the same number of distinct shelly studs, the points of which are thrust through these holes, and their heads appear within the lip, not unlike another row of teeth under their natural ones. Such are the native ornaments of these people: but we observed among them many beads of European manufacture, chiefly of a pale blue colour, which are hung in their ears, or about their caps, or are joined to their lip ornaments, which have a little hole drilled in each of the points to which they are fastened, and others to them, till they sometimes hang even as low as the point of the chin. In this last case, however, they cannot remove them with such facility; for, with respect to their own lip-ornaments, they can take them out with their tongues at pleasure. They likewise wear bracelets of beads made of a shelly substance resembling amber, and of a cylindrical form. They are, in general, so fond of ornaments of some kind or other, that they fix a variety of things in their perforated lip; one of them appeared with two of our iron nails projecting like prongs from it; and another man attempted to put a large brass button into it. The men often paint their faces of a black colour, and of a bright red, and sometimes of a blueish or leaden hue, but not in any regular figure. The women puncture or stain the chin with black, that comes to a point in each of their cheeks; a custom similar to which is in vogue, as we have been informed, among the Greenland females. Upon the whole, we have not in any country seen savages, who take more pains than these do to disfigure their persons with imaginary ornaments.

They have two sorts of canoes; the one large and open, the other small and covered. They differ no otherwise from the great boats in Greenland, than in the form of the head and stern, particularly of the former, which somewhat resembles a whale's head. The framing consists of slender pieces of wood; and the outside is composed of the skins of seals, or other sea animals, stretched over the wood. Their small canoes are constructed nearly of the same form and materials with those of the Esquimaux. Some of these carry two persons. Their fore part is curved like the head of a violin. Their weapons and implements for hunting and fishing, are the same with those used by the Greenlanders. Many of their spears are headed with iron, and their arrows are generally pointed with bone. Their larger darts are thrown by means of a piece of wood, about a foot long, with a small groove in the middle, which receives the dart; at the bottom is a hole for the reception of one finger, which enables them to grasp the piece of wood much firmer, and to throw with greater force. For defensive armour they have a sort of jacket, or a coat of mail, formed of laths, fastened together with sinews, which render it very flexible, though it is so close as not to admit a dart or arrow. It serves only to cover the trunk of the body, and may, not improperly be compared to the stays worn by our women.

We had not an opportunity of seeing any of the ha-

bitations of the natives, as none of them dwelt in the bay where our ships anchored, or where any of us landed; but with respect to their domestic utensils, they brought, in their canoes, some round and oval wooden dishes, rather shallow, and others of a cylindrical form, considerably deeper. The sides are one piece bent round, after the manner of our chip-boxes, but thick, and neatly fastened with thongs, the bottoms being neatly fixed in with small pegs of wood. Others were somewhat smaller, and of a more elegant figure, not unlike a large oval butter-boat, without any handle, but shallower; these were composed of a piece of wood, or some horny substance, and were sometimes neatly carved. They had in their possession a great number of little square bags, made of the same gut with their exterior frocks, curiously adorned with very small red feathers interwoven with them, in which were contained several very fine sinews, and bundles of small cord, made out of them, plaited with extraordinary ingenuity. They likewise had some models in wood of their canoes; chequered baskets, wrought so closely as to hold water, and a considerable number of little images, four or five inches high, either of wood, or stuffed, which were covered with a piece of fur, and embellished with quill-feathers, with hair fixed on their heads. We could not determine whether these were intended merely as children's toys, or were applied to superstitious purposes. They have many instruments formed of two or three hoops, or concentric pieces of wood, having a cross bar fixed in the middle, by which they are held. To these they fix a number of dried barnacle shells, with threads, which, when shaken, produce a loud noise, and thus serve the purpose of a rattle. This contrivance is probably a substitute for the rattling bird at King George's Sound. It is uncertain with what kind of tools their wooden utensils, frames of canoes, &c. are made; the only one that we observed among them being a sort of stone-adze, somewhat resembling those of Otaheite, and other islands in the Pacific Ocean. They have a great quantity of iron knives, some of which are rather curved; others straight, and some very small ones, fixed in longish handles, with the blades bent upwards. They have also knives, some of which are almost two feet in length, shaped in a great measure like a dagger, with a ridge towards the middle. These they wear in sheaths of skin, hung by a thong round their necks, under their robe or frock. It is probable, that they use them only as weapons, and that their other knives are applied to different purposes. Whatever they have, is as well made as if they were provided with a complete chest of tools; and their plaiting of sinews, sewing, and small-work on their little bags, may be found to vie with the neatest manufactures in any part of the globe. Upon the whole, considering the uncivilized state of the natives of this found, their northerly situation, amidst a country almost continually covered with snow, and the comparative wretched materials they have to work with, it appears, that, with respect to their skill and invention, in all manual operations, they are at least upon a footing with any other people in the islands of the great Pacific Ocean.

The animal food, we saw them eat, was either roasted, or broiled; they feed also on dried fish. Some of the former that was purchased, had the appearance of bear's flesh. They likewise eat a larger sort of tern-root, either baked, or dressed in some other method. Some of our company observed them to eat freely of a substance, which we imagined was the interior part of the pine bark. Their drink, in all probability, is water; for, in their canoes, they brought snow in their wooden vessels, which they swallowed by mouthfuls. Their manner of eating is decent and cleanly, for they constantly took care to remove any dirt that might adhere to their food; and though they would sometimes eat the raw fat of a sea animal, yet, they did not fail to cut it carefully into mouthfuls. To all appearance, their persons were always free from filth; and their utensils, in general, were kept in excellent order, as were also their boats.

The language of these people seemed difficult to be understood;

ne of them dwelt in the
d, or where any of us
domestic utensils, they
round and oval wooden
ers of a cylindrical form,
are one piece bent round,
p-boxes, but thick, and
the bottoms being neatly
od. Others were some-
legant figure, not unlike
but any handle, but that
of a piece of wood, or
were sometimes neatly
fession a great number of
fame gut with their ex-
d with very small red fea-
in which were contained
bundles of small cord,
with extraordinary inge-
some models in wood of
ets, wrought so closely as
derable number of little
igh, either of wood, or
with a piece of fur, and
, with hair fixed on their
ne whether these were in-
toys, or were applied to
y have many instruments
or concentrical pieces of
in the middle, by which
y fix a number of dried
which, when shaken, pro-
serve the purpose of a rat-
ably a substitute for the
s Sound. It is uncertain
wooden utensils, frames of
only one that we observed
stone-adze, so what re-
and other islands in the
a great quantity of iron
er curve; others straight,
ixed in longish handles,
They have also knives,
feet in length, shaped in
er, with a ridge towards
r in sheaths of skin, hung
under their robe or frock.
nem only as weapons, and
lled to different purposes.
ell made as if they were
nest of tools; and their
nd small-work on their
ie with the nearest man-
lobe. Upon the whole,
are of the natives of this
a, amidst a country almost
w, and the comparative
to work with, it appear,
ill and invention, in all
least upon a footing with
nds of the great Pacific

m ear, was either roasted,
dried fish. Some of the
d the appearance of bear's
er sort of fern-root, either
r method. Some of our
reely of a substance, which
art of the pine bark. Their
ater; for, in their canoes,
ooden vessels, which they
their manner of eating is
onstantly took care to re-
here to their food; and
eat the raw fat of a sea
to cut it carefully into
ce, their persons were al-
utensils, in general, were
re also their boats.
ole seemed difficult to be
understood;

understood: this, perhaps, was not owing to any cr-
sion, or indistinctness in their words, but to the v-
us significations which their nouns bear: for they frequently
made use of the same word on different occasions;
though, probably, if we could have had a longer inter-
course with them, this might have proved a mistake on
our part. Among the few words and phrases the inge-
nious Mr. Anderson was enabled to procure, we have
selected the following:

Ahleu	- - -	<i>A Spear</i>
Amilthoo	- - -	<i>A Piece of white bear's skin</i>
Keelathuk	- - -	<i>Guts of which they make jackets</i>
Natoonehuk	- - -	<i>The Skin of a sea-otter</i>
Lukluk	- - -	<i>A Brown baggy skin</i>
Namuk	- - -	<i>An Ornament for the ear</i>
Aa	- - -	<i>Yes</i>
Chilke	- - -	<i>One</i>
Taiha	- - -	<i>Two</i>
Tokke	- - -	<i>Three</i>
Chukelo	- - -	<i>Four</i>
Koehene	- - -	<i>Five</i>
Takulai	- - -	<i>Six</i>
Keichillho	- - -	<i>Seven</i>
Klu or Kliew	- - -	<i>Eight</i>

PHRASES.

Yaut	- - -	<i>I'll go; or, shall I go?</i>
Whachai	- - -	<i>Shall I keep it? Do you give it me?</i>
Tawuk	- - -	<i>Keep it</i>
Weona or Veena	- - -	<i>Stranger (calling to one)</i>
Oonaka	- - -	<i>Will you barter for this that belongs to me?</i>
Keeta	- - -	<i>Give me something.</i>
Naema	- - -	<i>Give me something in exchange.</i>
Akashou	- - -	<i>What's the name of that?</i>

With regard to the numerals, Mr. Anderson observes, that the words corresponding to ours, after passing three, are not certain.

Our knowledge of the animals of this part of America is entirely derived from the skins that were brought by the natives for sale. These were principally of bears; common, and pine martins; sea-otters, seals, racoons, small ermines, foxes, and the whitish cat or lynx. Among these various skins, the most common are those of racoons, martins, and sea-otters, which form the ordinary dress of these people: but the skins of the martins which were in general of a far lighter brown than those of Nootka, were greatly superior to them in point of fineness; whereas those of the sea-otters, which, as well as the martins, were much more plentiful here than at Nootka, seemed to be considerably inferior in the thickness and fineness of their fur, though they far exceeded them with respect to size; and were, for the most part, of the glossy black sort. The skins of seals, and bears, were also very common: the former were, in general, white; and many of the bears, here, were of a dark brown hue. Besides these animals, there is the white bear, of whose skins the natives brought several pieces, and some complete skins of cubs. Here is also the wolverene, or quickhatch, whose skin has very bright colours; and a larger species of ermine than the common one, varied with brown, and scarcely any black on its tail. The skin of the head of some very large animal was brought to us, but we could not decide positively what it was; though from the colour, and shagginess of the hair, and its not resembling any land animal, we conjectured, that it may be that of the male ursine-seal, or sea-bear. But one of the most beautiful skins that fell under our consideration, is that of a small animal near a foot in length, of a brown colour on the back, with a number of obscure whitish specks, the sides being of a blueish ash colour, with a few of those specks. The tail is about a third part of the length of the body, and is covered with whitish hair. This animal is doubtless the same with that which is called by Mr. Stræhlin, in his account of the New Northern Archipelago, the spotted field-mouse: but whether it is really of the mouse kind, or a squirrel-

No. 67.

rel, we could not learn, nor determine, for want of entire skins; though Mr. Anderson was inclined to believe, that it is the same animal which some of our naturalists have described under the appellation of the cafan-marmor. The great number of skins that we saw at this place, demonstrates the abundance of the various animals we have mentioned; yet, it is somewhat remarkable, that we neither met with the skins of the moose, nor of the common species of deer. As to the birds we found the halcyon, or great king-fisher, having fine bright colours; the shag; the white headed eagle; and the humming bird, which often flew about our ships, while we lay at anchor; though it cannot be supposed to live here, during the winter, which must be extremely severe. The water-fowl seen by us were black sea-pies, with red bills, such as we met with at Van Diemen's Land. Some of our people brought down a snipe, a grouse, and some plovers: but notwithstanding the water-fowl were numerous, particularly the geese and ducks, they were so shy, that it was a difficult matter to get within shot; in consequence of which, we procured a very inconsiderable supply of them as refreshments. The duck is about the size of our common wild one; of a deep black, with red feet, and a short pointed tail. Its bill is white, tinged towards the point with red, and has a large black spot, almost square, near its base, on each side, where it is also somewhat distended. On the forehead is a large triangular white spot; and on the hinder part of the neck is one still larger. The colours of the female are much less vivid than those of the male; and she has none of the ornaments of the bill, excepting those of the two black spots, which are rather obscure. We observed a species of the diver, which seems peculiar to this place. In size, it is equal to a partridge, and has a short, black, compressed bill. Its head, and the upper part of its neck, are of a brownish black; and the remainder of its body is of a deep brown, waved obscurely with black, except the under part, which is totally of a blackish cast, minutely varied with white. We found also a small land bird, of the finch kind, about the bigness of a yellow-hammer; but we imagined it to be one of those which change their colours with the season, and with their different migrations. It was, at this time, of a dusky brown with a reddish tail; and the supposed male had, on the crown of the head, a large yellow spot, with some varied black on the upper part of its neck; but the latter was on the breast of the female.

With respect to the fish, what the natives brought to us for sale, were tork and halibut. We caught some sculpins about the thip, and star-fish of a purplish hue, that had sixteen or eighteen rays. The rocks were almost destitute of shell-fish, and the only one of this tribe that fell under our notice, was a reddish crab, covered with large spines. We observed few vegetables of any kind, and the trees that chiefly grew about this found, were the Canadian, and spruce pine, some of which were of a considerable size. The metals we saw these people possessed of, were iron and copper; both which, but particularly the former, were in such abundance, that their lances and arrows were pointed with them. The ores which they used to paint themselves with, were a brittle, unctuous red ochre or iron ore; a pigment of a bright blue; and black lead: but each of these articles seemed to be very scarce among them. These people must, certainly, have received from some more civilized nation, the beads and iron found among them. We were, doubtless, the first Europeans, with whom they ever had a direct communication; and it remains only to be determined, from what quarter they had procured our manufactures. And it is more than probable, that they had obtained these articles, through the intervention of the more inland tribes, either from the settlements about Hudson's Bay, or those on the lakes of Canada; unless we can admit the supposition, that the Russians, from Kamtschatka, have already extended their traffic to this distance; or that the natives of their most easterly Fox Islands carry on an intercourse along the coast, with the inhabitants of Prince William's Sound. As to copper these people, perhaps, procure it themselves,

themselves, or, at most, it passes to them through very few hands; for when they offered any of it by way of barter, they used to express its being in sufficient plenty among them by pointing to their weapons, as if they would intimate, that, having so much copper of their own, they had no occasion to increase their stock. However, if the natives of this inlet are furnished with European commodities by means of the intermediate traffic to the eastern coast, it is remarkable, that they should never, in return, have supplied the more inland Indians with some of their sea-otter skins, which would undoubtedly have appeared, at one time or other, in the environs of Hudson's Bay. But that does not appear to be the case; and the only method by which we can account for this, must be by considering the very great distance; which, though it might not prevent European articles of commerce from coming so far, as being so uncommon, might hinder the skins, which are common, from passing through more than two or three tribes, who might make use of them for their own clothing, and send others, which they reckoned of inferior value as being of their own animals, to the east; till they reached the traders at the European settlements.

On Wednesday the 20th of May, having took our departure from Prince William's Sound, we directed our course to the S. W. with a gentle breeze. This was succeeded by a calm, at four o'clock, the next morning, which was soon followed by a breeze from the S. W. This veering to the N. W. we continued to stretch to S. W. and passed a lofty promontory, in the latitude of 59 deg. 10 min. long. 207 deg. 45 min. It having been discovered on Princess Elizabeth's birth-day, Captain Cook gave it the name of Cape Elizabeth. As we could see no land beyond it, we flattered ourselves, that it was the western extremity of the continent: but fresh land soon appearing in sight, bearing W. S. W. convinced us of our mistake. The wind had increased to a strong gale, and forced us to a considerable distance from the coast: but, on the 22nd, P. M. the gale abated, and we stood for Cape Elizabeth. On Saturday the 23d, at noon, Cape Elizabeth bore W. distant 10 leagues; at which time new land was seen, bearing S. W. which, it was imagined, connected Cape Elizabeth with the land we had seen towards the west. We stood to the southward till the next day, at noon, when we were three leagues from the coast, which we had seen on the 22nd. More land was discovered, extending to the southward, whereon was seen a ridge of mountains, whose summits were covered with snow. This point of land lies in latitude 58 deg. 15 min. Its longitude is 207 deg. 42 min. And by what the Commodore could gather from Beering's voyage and chart, he supposed it to be, what he called Cape St. Hermogenes. But the account of that voyage, as well as the chart, is so extremely inaccurate, that it is almost impossible to discover any one place, which the navigator either saw or touched at. In the chart a space is pointed out, where Beering is supposed to have seen no land. This favoured Mr. Strehlin's account, who makes Cape St. Hermogenes, and the land discovered by Beering to the S. W. of it, to be a cluster of islands, and that St. Hermogenes is one of those that are destitute of wood. This appeared to be confirmed by what we now saw; and we entertained the pleasing hopes of finding here a passage northward, without being obliged to proceed any farther to the S. W.

We were detained by light airs and calms off the Cape, till two o'clock, A. M. of the 25th, when a breeze springing up, we steered along the coast, and perceived that the land of Cape St. Hermogenes was an island, about six leagues in circumference, separated from the coast by a channel, one league in breadth. Some rocks are to be seen above water to the north of this island; and on the N. E. side of the rocks, we had from 20 to 20 fathoms water. At noon St. Hermogenes bore S. E. distant 8 leagues; the land to the N. W. extending from S. half W. to near W. In this last direction, it ended in a low point, named Point Banks. The ship was, at this time, in latitude 58 deg. 41 min. longitude 207 deg. 44 min. In this station the land was in sight, bearing N. W. which, it was thought, connected Cape

Elizabeth with this S. W. land. When we approached it, we observed it was an unconnected group of high islands and rocks; and from the nakedness of their appearance, the Captain named them the Barren Isles: they are situated in latitude 59 deg. three leagues distant from Cape Elizabeth, and five from Point Banks. It was our intention to have passed through one of the channels by which these islands are divided; but a strong current setting against us, we went to leeward of them all. The weather, which had been thick and hazy, cleared up towards the evening, when we perceived a very lofty promontory, whose elevated summit appeared above the clouds, forming two exceeding high mountains. Captain Cook named this promontory Cape Douglas, in honour of his friend Dr. Douglas, canon of Windsor. It is situated 12 leagues from Point Banks, and 10 to the westward of the Barren Isles; its latitude 58 deg. 56 min. and longitude 206 deg. 10 min. Between this point and Cape Douglas is a large deep Bay, which, from our observing some smoke upon Point Banks, received the name of Smokey Bay. At day break on the 26th, being to the northward of the Barren Isles, we discovered more land, extending from Cape Douglas to the north. It consisted of a chain of very high mountains; one of which, being much more conspicuous than the rest, obtained the name of Mount St. Augustine. Having a fresh gale we stood to the N. W. till eight, when we found, that what we had supposed to be islands were summits of mountains, connected by the lower land. This was covered wholly with snow, from the tops of the mountains down to the sea-beach; and had in every other respect, the appearance of a great continent. Captain Cook was now fully convinced, that no passage could be discovered by this inlet; and his continuing to explore it was more to satisfy others, than to confirm his own opinion. At this time Mount St. Augustine bore N. W. distant three leagues. It is of a conical figure, and rises to a prodigious height; but whether it be an island, or part of the continent, is not yet ascertained. Perceiving that nothing was to be done to the west, we stood over to Cape Elizabeth, under which we fetched at about five in the afternoon. Between Cape Elizabeth and a lofty promontory, which was named Cape Bede, is a bay, wherein we might have anchored; but, the Captain having no such intention, we tacked and stood to the westward, with a very strong gale, accompanied with rain and hazy weather. Next morning the gale abated, and about three o'clock in the afternoon, the weather cleared up; Cape Douglas bearing S. W. by W. and the depth of water being 40 fathoms, over a rocky bottom. From Cape Bede the coast trended N. E. by E. with a chain of mountains in land, in the same direction. We had now the mortification to discover low land in the middle of the inlet, extending from N. N. E. to N. E. by E; but, as it was supposed to be an island, we were not much discouraged.

On Thursday, the 28th, A. M. having but little wind, the ship drove to the southward, and in order to stop her, we dropped a kedge-anchor, with an eight inch hauler. But, in bringing the ship up, we lost both that and the anchor. However, we brought the ship up, with one of the bows, and spent a considerable part of the day in sweeping for them, but without effect. We were now in the latitude of 59 deg. 51 min. the low land extended from N. E. to S. E. the nearest part distant two leagues; and the land on the western shore about seven leagues. A strong tide set to the southward, out of the inlet; it was the ebb, and ran almost four knots in an hour. At ten o'clock it was low water. Though the water had become thick, and refused that in rivers, we were encouraged to proceed, by finding it as salt as in the ocean, even at low water. Three knots was the strength of the flood tide; and the stream continued to run up till four in the afternoon. At eight o'clock in the evening we stood up the inlet, to the north. Soon after the wind veered to this quarter, and blew in squalls, attended with rain; but this did not hinder us from plying up while the flood continued, which was till the next morning at near five o'clock, when we anchored

nd. When we approached
connected group of high
in the nakedness of their
ned them the Barren Isles
9 deg: three leagues distant
ve from Point Banks. It
passed through one of the
lands are divided; but a
us, we went to leeward of
which had been thick and
the evening, when we per-
ry, whose elevated summits
forming two exceeding high
amed this promontory Cape
friend Dr. Douglas; canoe
12 leagues from Point
ard of the Barren Isles; its
nd longitude 206 deg: 10
nd Cape Douglas is a large
bserving some smoke upon
ame of Smoke Bay. At
g to the northward of the
more land, extending from

It consisted of a chain of
f which, being much more
ained the name of Mount
fresh gale we stood to the
und, that what we had sup-
mits of mountains, con-
This was covered wholly
of the mountains down to
very other respect, the ap-
t. Captain Cook was now
age could be discovered by
ng to explore it was more to
rin his own opinion. At
ne bore N. W. distant three
gure, and rises to a prodig-
it be an island, or part of the
ined. Perceiving that no-
west, we stood over to Cape
etched at about five in the
Elizabeth and a lofty pro-
Cape Bede, is a bay,
anchored; but, the Captain
we tacked and stood to the
ng gale, accompanied with
it morning the gale abated,
the afternoon, the weather
bearing S. W. by W. and
40 fathoms, over a rocky
the coast trended N. E. by
ns in land, in the same di-
mortification to discover
e inlet, extending from N.
as it was supposed to be an
scouraged.

M. having but little wind,
ard, and in order to stop her,
with an eight inch hauler.
we lost both that and the
ight the ship up, with one
onsiderable part of the day
thout effect. We were now
min. the low land extended
ft part distant two leagues;
shore about seven leagues.
ward, out of the inlet; it
four knots in an hour. At
Though the water had
nd that in rivers, we were
inding it as salt as in the
ree knots was the strength
ream continued to run up
At eight o'clock in the
e, to the north. Soon after
er, and blew in squalls, at-
did not hinder us from ply-
nued, which was till the
clock, when we anchored
about

about two leagues from the eastern shore; and our latitude was 60 deg. 8 min. Some low land, which we supposed to be an island, lay under the western shore, distant between three and four leagues. The weather clearing up, a ridge of mountains appeared; and two columns of smoke were visible on the eastern shore. At one o'clock A. M. we weighed, and plied up under double reefed top-sails, having a strong gale at N. E.

On Saturday the 30th, the gale having much abated, we plied up from two o'clock A. M. till near seven, and then anchored under the shore to the eastward, in 19 fathoms water. At noon two canoes, with a man in each, came off to the ship, nearly from that part where we had seen the smoke the day before. They resembled strongly those we had seen in Prince William's Sound, both in dress and person: their canoes were also constructed in the same manner; and one of them had a large beard, and a countenance like the common sort of people in the Sound. When the flood made, we weighed, stood over to the western shore, and fetched under a bluff point to the N. W. This, with the point on the opposite shore, contracted the breadth of the channel to about four leagues, through which a prodigious tide ran. It had a terrible appearance, and we were ignorant whether the water was thus agitated by the stream, or by the dashing of the waves against sands or rocks. We kept the western shore aboard, that appearing to be the safest. In the evening, about eight o'clock, we anchored under a point of land, bearing N. E. distant about three leagues, and lay there during the ebb. Till we arrived at this station, the water retained an equal degree of saltness, both at high and low water, and was as salt as that which is in the ocean: but now the appearances of a river evidently displayed themselves. The water, taken up at this ebb, was much fresher than any we had tasted; whence we concluded that we were in a large river, and not in a strait, which had a communication with the northern seas: but, having proceeded thus far, Captain Cook was anxious to have stronger proofs; therefore, on the thirty-first, in the morning, we weighed with the flood, and drove up with the tide, having but little wind. Near eight o'clock, many of the natives, in one large canoe, and several small ones, paid us a visit. The latter had only one person on board each; but the larger ones contained men, women, and children. We bartered with them for some of their fur dresses, made of the skins of animals, particularly those of sea-otters, martins, and hares, also salmon, halibut, and a few of their darts; for which, in return, we gave them old clothes, beads, and pieces of iron. These last they call goones; but, in general, their language is nearly the same as that used in Prince William's Sound. At nine o'clock, we anchored in sixteen fathoms water, almost two leagues from the western shore, the ebb being already began. It ran but three knots an hour at its greatest strength, and fell, after we had anchored, twenty-one feet upon a perpendicular. In order to determine the direction, and other particulars respecting the inlet, Captain Cook dispatched two boats, and when the flood tide made, followed them with the two ships; but, after driving about ten miles, we anchored, having a dead calm and strong tide against us. At the lowest of the ebb, the water at and near the surface, was perfectly fresh, though retaining a considerable degree of saltness, if taken above a foot below it. Besides this, we had other convincing proofs of its being a river, such as thick muddy water, low shores, trees, and rubbish of various kinds, floating backward and forward with the tide. In the afternoon we received another visit from the natives, who bartered largely with our people, without so much as attempting one dishonest action.

On Monday the 1st of June, at two o'clock, A. M. the master, who commanded the two boats, returned, informing us that he found the inlet or river contracted to one league in breadth, and that it took a northerly course through low land on each side. He advanced about three leagues through this narrow part, which he found from 20 to 17 fathoms deep. While the stream ran down the water was perfectly fresh, but it became

brackish when it ran up, and more so near high water. Three leagues to the northward of this search, the master discovered another separation in the eastern chain of mountains, through which he supposed it probable, the river ran in a direction N. E. but this was thought by the captain to be only another branch, and that the main channel continued in a northern direction between the two chains of mountains. The pleasing hopes of finding a passage were no longer entertained; but as the ebb was spent, we took the advantage of the next tide to get a closer view of the eastern branch: in order to determine whether the low land on the was an island or not. For this purpose we weighed with the first of the flood, and stood over for the eastern shore. At eight o'clock a breeze sprang up in a direction opposite to our course, so that we despaired of reaching the entrance of the river. By reason of this untoward circumstance, two boats were dispatched, under the command of Lieutenant King, to make such observations as might enable us to form some tolerable idea of the nature and course of the river. About ten o'clock the Resolution and Discovery anchored in nine fathoms water. The Commodore observing the strength of the tide to be so powerful, that the boats could not make head against it, made a signal for them to return, before they had proceeded half way to the entrance of the river. The only knowledge concerning the grand question, obtained by this tide's work, was, that all the low land, which we had imagined to be an island, was one continued tract from the great river to the foot of the mountains, terminating at the fourth entrance of this eastern branch, which the Commodore denominated the river Turnagain.

The low land begins again on the north side of this river, and extends from the foot of the mountains, to the bank of the great river, forming before the river Turnagain a large bay. Having entered this, the flood set very strong into the river, the water falling 20 feet upon a perpendicular, from which circumstances it was evident, that a passage was not to be expected by this side river, any more than by the main branch: but, as the water at ebb, though much fresher, retained a considerable degree of saltness, it is probable that both these branches are navigable by ships much farther; and that a very extensive inland communication lies open, by means of this river and its several branches. We had traced it to the latitude of 61 deg. 30 min. and the longitude of 210 deg. which is upwards of 210 miles from its entrance, and saw no appearance of its source. The time we spent in the discovery—(Here the Commodore having left a blank in his journal, which he had not filled up with any particular name, the earl of Sandwich very properly directed it to be called Cook's river) The time we spent in the discovery of Cook's river ought not to be regretted, if it should hereafter prove useful to the present, or any future age: but the delay thus occasioned was an essential loss to us, who had a greater object in view. The season was far advanced, and it was now evident, that the continent of North America extended much farther to the west than we had reason to expect from the most approved charts.

In the afternoon Lieutenant King was again sent, with orders from the captain to land on the S. E. side of the river, where he was to display the flag; and, in his majesty's name, to take possession of the country and Cook's river. He was ordered also to bury a bottle in the earth, containing some English coin of 1772, and a paper, whereon were written the names of our ships, and the date of our discovery. In the mean time the ships were got under way; but a calm ensued, and the flood tide meeting us, we found it necessary to cast anchor; the point where Mr. King landed bearing S. distant two miles. This point of land was named Point Possession. On Mr. King's return we were informed, that after he had landed he saw several of the natives with their arms extended, an attitude, he supposed, meant to signify their peaceable disposition, and to convince him that they were without weapons. Observing his attendants were armed with muskets, they were alarmed, and requested, by expressive signs, that he would

would lay them down. This was immediately complied with, and then Mr. King and his party were permitted to walk up to them. They now appeared to be very sociable and cheerful. Mr. Iaw, surgeon of the Discovery, being one of the party, purchased a dog, and taking it towards the boat, immediately shot it dead. At this they seemed exceedingly surprized; and, not thinking themselves safe in such company, they walked away; but it presently appeared, that they had concealed their spears and other weapons in the bushes close behind them.

At high-water we weighed anchor, and with a faint breeze stood over to the west shore, where the next morning, being Tuesday the second, we anchored, on account of the return of the flood. Soon after we were visited by several of the natives in canoes, who bartered their skins, and afterwards parted with their garments, many of them returning perfectly naked. Among others, they brought a great quantity of the skins of white rabbits, and red foxes, but only two or three of those of otters. We also purchased some pieces of halibut and salmon. They preferred iron to every thing we offered them in exchange. The lip-ornaments were less in fashion among them than at Prince William's Sound; but those which pass through the nose were more frequent, and in general considerably longer. They had likewise more embroidered work on their garments, quivers, knife-cases, and other articles. At half past ten we weighed, and plied down the river with a gentle breeze at south; when, by the inattention of the man at the lead, our ship struck upon a bank, nearly in the middle of the river. It is pretty certain that this bank occasioned that strong agitation of the stream, with which we were so much surprized when turning up the river. We had twelve feet of water about the ship, at the lowest of the ebb, but the bank was dry in other parts. When our ship came aground Captain Cook made a signal for the Discovery to anchor. We were afterwards informed that she had been almost ashore on the west side of the bank. About five o'clock in the afternoon, as the flood tide came in, the ship floated off without sustaining any damage, or occasioning the least trouble. We then stood over to the west shore, where we anchored, in deep water, to wait for the ebb, the wind being still unfavourable to us. At ten o'clock at night we weighed with the ebb, and about five the next morning, the 3d, the tide being finished, we cast anchor on the west shore, about ten miles below the bluff point. In this station we were visited by many of the natives, who attended us all the morning: their company was highly acceptable to us, as they brought with them a quantity of fine salmon, which they exchanged for some of our trifles. Several hundred weight of it was procured for the two ships. The mountains now, for the first time after our entering the river, were free from clouds, and we saw a volcano in one of those on the western side. Its latitude is 60 deg. 23 min. and it is the first high mountain north of Mount St. Augustin. The volcano is near the summit, and on that part of the mountain next the river. It emits a white smoke, but no fire. The wind continuing southerly, we still tided it down the river.

On Friday the 5th, in the morning, we arrived at the place where we had lost our keage anchor, which we attempted, though unsuccessfully, to recover. Before our departure from hence, we were again visited by some of the natives in six canoes from the eastern shore. The points of their spears and knives are made of iron; some of the former; indeed, are made of copper. Their spears resemble our spontoons, and their knives, for which they have sheaths, are of considerable length. Except these and a few glass beads, every thing we saw among them was of their own manufacture. A very beneficial fur trade might certainly be carried on with the natives of this vast coast: but without a northern passage, it is too remote for Great Britain to be benefited by such commerce. It should however be noted, that almost the only valuable skins, on this west side of North America, are those of the sea-otter; their other

skins are of an inferior quality. As the skins are used by these people only for cloathing themselves, they, perhaps, are not at the trouble of dressing more of them, than they require for this purpose. This is probably the chief cause of their killing the animals, for they receive principally their supply of food from the sea and rivers: but if these were accustomed to a constant trade with foreigners, such an intercourse would increase their wants, by acquainting them with new luxuries, to be enabled to purchase which, they would become more assiduous in procuring skins; and in this country, without doubt, a plentiful supply might be obtained.

This day, the ebb tide making in our favour, we weighed, and with a gentle breeze at S. W. plied down the river: the flood obliged us to anchor again; but the next morning of Saturday the 6th we got under sail with a fresh breeze, passed the Barren Islands about eight o'clock, A. M. and at noon Cape St. Hermogenes bore S. S. E. eight leagues distant. We intended to go through the passage between the island of that name and the main land, but the wind soon after failed us; on which account we abandoned the design of carrying the ship through that passage: northward of it the land forms a bay, a low rocky island lying off the N. W. point. Some other islands, of a similar appearance, are scattered along the coast between here and Point Banks. At eight in the evening, St. Hermogenes extended from S. half E. to S. S. E. and the rocks bore S. E. distant three miles. About midnight we passed the rocks, and bore up to the southward; and on the 7th at noon St. Hermogenes bore N. distant four leagues. The southernmost point of the main land lay N. half W. five leagues distant. The latitude of this promontory is 58 deg. 15 min. and its longitude 274 deg. 24 min. It was named after the day in our calendar, Cape Whitunday; and a large bay to the west of it was called Whitunday Bay. At midnight we stood in for the land, and at seven in the morning of the eighth we were within four miles of it, and less than two miles from some sunken rocks, bearing W. S. W. Here we anchored in thirty-five fathoms water. To the west of the bay are some small islands. To the southward the sea coast is low, with projecting rocky points, having small inlets between them. We were now in the latitude of 57 deg. 52 min. 30 sec. The land here forming a point, it was named Cape Greville, in lat. 57 deg. 33 min. long. 207 deg. 15 min. distant from St. Hermogenes 15 leagues. On the 9th, 10th and 11th, we continued plying up the coast.

On Friday the 12th, in the evening, the fog clearing up, we descried land twelve leagues distant, bearing W. and we stood in for it early the next morning. At noon an elevated point, which we called Cape Barnabas, in lat. 57 deg. 13 min. bore N. N. E. distant ten miles. The point to the S. W. had an elevated summit, which terminated in two round hills, and was therefore called Two-headed Point. At six in the evening, being about midway between Cape Barnabas and Two-headed Point, a point of land was observed bearing S. 69 deg. W. On the fourteenth, at noon, we observed in lat. 56 deg. 49 min. The land seen the preceding evening, now appeared like two islands. We were up with the southernmost part of it the next morning, and perceived it to be an island, which we named Trinity Island. It lies in lat. 56 deg. 36 min. long. 205 deg. distant from the continent three leagues, between which rocks and islands are interspersed. In the evening, at eight, we were within a league of the small islands. The westernmost point of the continent, now in view, we called Cape Trinity, it being a low point facing Trinity Island. Having reason at this time to expect foggy weather, we stretched out to sea, and passed two or three rocky islets near the east end of Trinity Island. This we weathered, and in the afternoon steered west-southerly, with a gale at S. S. E. No land appearing on Monday the fifteenth at noon, and the gale and fog increasing, we steered W. N. W. under such sail as we could haul the wind with; sensible of the danger of running before a strong gale, in the vicinity of an unknown coast and in a thick fog. It was however become necessary to run some

On Monday, the 22d, the wind shifted to the S. E. and, as usual, was attended with thick rainy weather. In the evening, fearing we might fall in with land, we hauled to the southward, till two the next morning, and then bore away west; yet we made but little way. At five o'clock P. M. we had an interval of sunshine, when we saw land bearing N. 59 deg. W. On Wednesday, the 24th, at six o'clock A. M. we saw the continent; and at nine it extended from N. by E. to S. W. by W. the nearest part distant four leagues. The next morning we had clear weather, inasmuch, that we clearly saw the volcano, the other mountains, and all the main land under them. A large opening was likewise seen between several islands and a point of the land. We now steered to the southward; when, having got without all the land in sight, we steered west, the islands lying in that direction. By eight o'clock we had passed three of them, all of a good height; and more were now observed to the westward. In the afternoon, the weather became gloomy, and afterwards turned to a mist, the wind blowing fresh at east, we therefore hauled the wind to the southward till day-break, on Friday the 26th, when we resumed our course to the west. We derived but little advantage from daylight, the weather being so thick that we could not discover objects at the distance of a hundred yards; but as the wind was moderate, we ventured to run. About half an hour after four, the sound of breakers alarmed us on our larboard bow. We brought the ship to, and anchored in twenty-five fathoms water. The Discovery who was not far distant anchored also. Some hours after, the fog being a little dispersed, we discovered the imminent danger we had escaped. We were three quarters of a mile from the N. E. side of an island: two elevated rocks were about half a league from us, and from each other. Several breakers also appeared about them; and yet Providence had safely conducted the ships through in the dark, between those rocks, which we should not have attempted to have done in a clear day; and to so commodious an anchoring-place, which, on account of our miraculous escape, received the name of Providence Bay. During the night, the wind blew fresh at south, but in the morning was more moderate, and the fog, in a great measure dispersed. At seven o'clock, we weighed, and steered between the island near which we had anchored, and a small one not far from it. The breadth of the channel does not exceed a mile, and the wind failed before we could pass through it. We were therefore glad to anchor in 34 fathoms water. Land now presented itself in every direction. That to the south extended, in a ridge of mountains, to the S. W. which we afterwards found to be an island, called Oonalahka. Between this, and the land to the north, which we supposed to be a group of islands, there appeared to be a channel in a N. W. direction. On a point, west from the ship, and at a distance of three quarters of a mile, we perceived several natives and their habitations. To this place we saw two whales towed in, which we supposed had just been killed. A few of the inhabitants came off, at different times, to the ships, and engaged in a little traffic with our people, but never continued with us above a quarter of an hour at a time. They seemed, indeed, remarkably shy; though we could readily discover they were not unacquainted with vessels, similar, in some degree to ours. Their address expressed a degree of politeness which we had never experienced among any of the savage tribes. Being favoured, about one o'clock, P. M. with a light breeze, and the tide of flood, we weighed, and directed our course to the channel last mentioned; expecting when we had passed through, either to find the land trend away to the northward, or that we should discover a passage out to sea, to the west; and we soon found we were right in our conjectures. After we had got under sail, the wind veered to the N. and we were obliged to ply. In the evening, the ebb made it necessary for us to anchor within three leagues of our last station.

On Sunday, the 28th, at day-break, we got again under way, and were wafted up the passage by a light breeze

at south; this was succeeded by variable light airs from all directions. We had, however, a rapid tide in our favour, and the Resolution got through before the ebb made. The Discovery was not equally fortunate, for she was carried back, got into the race, and found a difficulty in getting clear of it. Being now through the channel, we observed the land on one side trending W. and S. W. and that on the other side to N. This encouraged us to hope that the continent had taken a new direction in our favour. Finding our water ran short, and expecting to be driven about in a rapid tide, without wind sufficient to govern the ship, we stood for a harbour on the south side of the passage, but were driven beyond it; and, that we might not be forced back through the passage, anchored near the southern shore, in 28 fathoms, and out of the reach of the strong tide, though even here it ran five knots an hour. In this station we were visited by several of the natives, in separate canoes. They baitered some fishing implements for tobacco. A young man among them overtook his canoe, while he was along-side of one of our boats. He was caught hold of by one of our people, but the canoe was taken up one of his countrymen, and carried ashore. In consequence of this accident, the youth was obliged to come into the ship, where he accepted an invitation into the cabin, without any surmise or embarrassment. He had on an upper garment, resembling a shirt, made of the gut of a whale, or some other large sea-animal. Under this he had another of the same form, made of the skins of birds with the feathers on, curiously sewed together; the feathered side placed next the skin. It was patched with several pieces of silk stuff, and his cap was embellished with gl's beads. His cloaths being wet, we furnished him with some of our own, which he put on with as much readiness as we could have done. From the behaviour of this youth, and that of several others, it evidently appeared that these people were no strangers to Europeans, and to many of their customs. Something in the appearance of our ships, however, greatly excited their curiosity: for, such as had not canoes to bring them off, ascended on the neighbouring hills to have a view of them. At low water we towed the ship into the harbour, where we anchored in nine fathoms water, the Discovery arriving soon after. A boat was now sent off to draw the seine, but we caught only a few trout, and some other small fish. We had scarce anchored, when a native of the island brought another note on board, similar to that which had been given to Captain Clerke. He presented it to our Commodore, but as it was written in the Russian language neither he, nor any of our company, could read it. As it could not be of any use to us, and might be of consequence to others, Captain Cook returned it to the bearer, accompanied with a few presents; for which he expressed his thanks, as he retired, by several low bows. On the 29th we saw along the shore, a group of the natives of both sexes, seated on the grass, partaking of a repast of raw fish, which they seemed to relish exceedingly. We were detained by thick fogs and a contrary wind, till Thursday the 2d of July, in this harbour. It is called by the natives Samganoodha, and is situated on the north side of the island of Oonalahka, in lat. 53 deg. 55 min. long. 193 deg. 30 min. and in the strait which separates this island from those to the north. It is about a mile broad at the entrance, and runs in about four miles S. by W. It narrows towards the head, the breadth there not exceeding a quarter of a mile. Plenty of good water may be procured here, but not a stick of wood of any kind.

On Thursday, the 2d of July we steered from the harbour of Samganoodha, having a gentle breeze at S. S. E. to the northward, and met with nothing to obstruct our course: for on the one side the Isle of Oonalahka trended S. W. and on the other, no land was to be seen in a direction more northerly than N. E. all which land was a continuation of the same group of islands that we had fallen in with, on the 25th of the preceding month. That which is situated before Samganoodha, and constitutes the north-eastern side of the passage,

E.

ed by variable light airs from however, a rapid tide in our got through before the ebb was not equally fortunate, for into the race, and found a fit. Being now through the land on one side tending to the other side to N. This the continent had taken a u. Finding our water can driven about in a rapid tide, govern the ship we stood for the of the passage, but were at we might not be forced anchored near the southern out of the reach of the strong an five knots an hour. In by several of the natives, in entered some fishing implie- ing man among them overlet long-side of one of our boats, one of our people, but the his countrymen, and care of this accident, the youth the ship, where he accepted n, without any surprise or an upper garment, telemt- out of a whale, or some other this he had another of the ins of birds with the feathers er; the feathered side placed tched with several pieces of embellished with glass beads, furnished him with some of with as much readiness as we the behaviour of this youth, it evidently appeared that agers to Europeans, and to something in the appearance atly excited their curiosity: to bring them off, assembled o have a view of them. At ip into the harbour, where ns water, the Discovery at- was now sent off to draw the few trout, and some other anchored, when a native of note on board, similar to n to Captain Clerke. He fore, but as it was written in er he, nor any of our com- could not be of any use to quence to others, Captain arer, accompanied with a expressed his thanks, as he s. On the 29th we saw the natives of both sexes, ng of a repast of raw fish, h exceedingly. We were contrary wind, till Thurs- rbour. It is called by the is situated on the north side n, in lat. 53 deg. 55 min. n the strait which separates north. It is about a mile runs in about four miles ds the head, the breadth of a mile. Plenty of good but not a stick of wood of

July we steered from the having a gentle breeze at and met with nothing to ob- one side the Isle of Oona- the other, no land was to northerly than N. E. all on of the same group of with, on the 25th of the ch is situated before Sam- e north-easterly side of the passage,

passage, through which we came, is called Oonella 1 and its circumference is 21 miles. Another island, lying to the northward of it, bears the name of Acootan: it is much superior in size to Oonella, and has in it some very lofty mountains, at this time covered with snow. It appeared that we might have passed with great safety between these two islands and the continent, whose south-western point opened off the north-eastern point of Acootan, and proved to be the same point of land that we had discerned when we left the coast of the continent, the 25th of June, in order to go without the islands. It is called by the natives Oonemack; and is situated in lat. 54 deg. 30 min. long. 192 deg. 30 min. E. Over the Cape, which is high land, we perceived a round elevated mountain, at present covered with snow. At six o'clock A. M. this mountain bore E. 2 deg. N. and two hours afterwards not any land was to be seen. Concluding, therefore, that the coast of the continent had now inclined to the north-eastward, we steered the same course till one o'clock the following morning, when the watch stationed on deck gave intimation of their seeing land. Upon this we wore, and for the space of about two hours stood towards the S. W. after which we renewed our course to the E. N. E. At six we discovered land a-head, bearing S. E. distant five leagues. As we advanced we discovered a connected chain of land. At noon we perceived that it extended from S. S. W. to E. the part nearest to us being at the distance of five leagues. We now observed in lat. 55 deg. 21 min. long. 195 deg. 18 min. E. At six o'clock A. M. we found, and found a bottom of black sand, at the depth of 48 fathoms. At this time we were four leagues from the land, and its eastern part in sight was in the direction of E. S. E. to appearance an elevated round hummock.

On Saturday the 4th, at eight o'clock, A. M. we saw the coast from S. S. W. and E. by S. and at intervals we could discern high land behind it, covered with snow. Soon after we had a calm, when all hands were employed in fishing; and as our people were now put on two thirds allowance, what each caught he might eat or sell. Fortunately for them, they caught some tons of fine fish, which proved a most seasonable supply; for the ship provisions, what with salt and maggots eating into the beef and pork, and the rats and the weavils devouring the heart of the bread, the one was little better than putrid flesh, and the other, upon breaking, would crumble into dust. Among the fish we caught with hook and line, were a great number of excellent cod. At noon we had an easterly breeze and clear weather, when we were about six leagues from the land, which extended from S. by W. to E. by S. and the hummock, seen the preceding evening, bore S. W. by S. nine leagues distant. A great hollow swell convinced us, that there was no main land westward near us. At six o'clock, P. M. we steered a northerly course, when the wind veering to the S. E. enabled us to steer E. N. E. The coast lay in this direction, and the next day, at noon, was four leagues distant. On the 6th and 7th we made but little way, the wind being northerly. On Wednesday, the 8th, the coast extended from S. S. W. to E. by N. and was all low land, and it is not improbable that this extends to a considerable distance towards the S. W. and that those places which we sometimes supposed to be inlets or bays, are nothing more than valleys between the mountains. This day we hooked plenty of fine cod.

On Thursday the 9th, in the morning, having a breeze at N. W. we steered E. by N. in order to make a nearer approach to the coast. At noon we observed in latitude 57 deg. 49 min. long. 201 deg. 33 min. E. at the distance of two leagues from land, which was observed to extend from S. by E. to N. E. being all a low coast, with points projecting in several places. In advancing towards the N. E. we had found that the depth of water gradually decreased, and the coast trended more and more northerly; but we observed the ridge of mountains behind it continued to lie in the same direction as those that were more westerly; so that the extent of the low land between the coast and the foot of the mountains insensibly increased. Both the low

and high grounds were totally destitute of wood, but apparently covered with a green turf, the mountains excepted, which were covered with snow. As we proceeded along the coast, with a light westerly breeze, the water shoaled gradually from fifteen to ten fathoms, though we were eight or ten miles distant from the shore. About eight o'clock in the evening a lofty mountain, which had been some time within sight, bore S. E. by E. distant twenty-one leagues. Several other mountains, forming the same chain, and much further distant, bore E. 3 deg. N. The coast was seen to extend as far as N. E. half N. where it seemed to terminate in a point, beyond which it was both our hope and expectation that it would assume a more easterly direction. But not long afterwards we perceived low land, that extended from behind this point, as far as N. W. by W. where it was lost in the horizon; and behind it we discerned high land, appearing in hills detached from each other. Thus the fine prospect we had of getting to the northward, vanished in an instant. We stood on till nine o'clock, and then the point before-mentioned was one league distant, bearing N. E. half E. Behind the point is a river, which, at its entrance, seemed to be a mile in breadth. The water appeared somewhat discoloured, as upon shoals; but a calm would have given it a similar aspect. It seemed to take a winding direction, through the extensive flat which lies between the chain of mountains towards the S. E. and the hills to the north-westward. It abounds, we apprehend, with salmon, as many of those fish were seen leaping before the entrance. The mouth of this river, which we distinguished by the name of Britton River, lies in lat. 58 deg. 27 min. and in long. 201 deg. 55 min. E.

On the 10th at day-break we made sail to the W. S. W. with a light breeze at N. E. At eleven o'clock A. M. thinking that the coast towards the N. W. terminated in a point, bearing N. W. by W. we steered for that point, having ordered the Discovery to keep a-head; but before that vessel had run a mile, the made a signal for shoal water. At that very time we had the depth of seven fathoms, yet before we could get the head of our ship the other way, we had less than five; but the Discovery's soundings were less than four fathoms. We now stood back three miles to the N. E. but observing a strong tide setting to the W. S. W. in a direction to the shoal, we brought the ships to anchor in ten fathoms, over a sandy bottom. Two hours after the water fell upwards of two feet, which proved that it was the tide of ebb that came from Britton River. In the afternoon the wind having shifted to the S. W. we weighed at four o'clock, and made sail towards the S. having several boats a-head employed in sounding. When we had passed over the fourth end of the shoal, in six fathoms water, we afterwards got into fifteen fathoms, in which we let go our anchors again between eight and nine in the evening; some part of the chain of mountains on the south-eastern shore being in sight, and bearing S. E. half S. and the most westerly land on the other shore bearing N. W. In the course of this day we had discerned high land which bore N. 60 deg. W.

On Saturday the 11th, at two o'clock A. M. we weighed anchor, with a gentle breeze at S. W. by W. and plied to windward till nine, when judging the flood tide to be against us, we anchored in twenty-four fathoms. At one o'clock P. M. the fog, that had this morning prevailed, dispersing, and the tide becoming favourable, we weighed and plied to the south-westward. Towards the evening we had some thunder. We had heard none before from the time of our arrival on this coast, and what we now heard was at a great distance. In the morning of the 12th we steered a N. W. course, and at ten o'clock saw the continent. At noon it extended from N. E. by N. to N. N. W. quarter W. and an elevated hill appeared in the direction of N. N. W. distant ten leagues. This we found to be an island, to which, on account of its figure, Captain Cook gave the name of Round Island. It is situated in the latitude of 58 deg. 37 min. and in longitude 200 deg. 6 min. E. distant from the continent seven

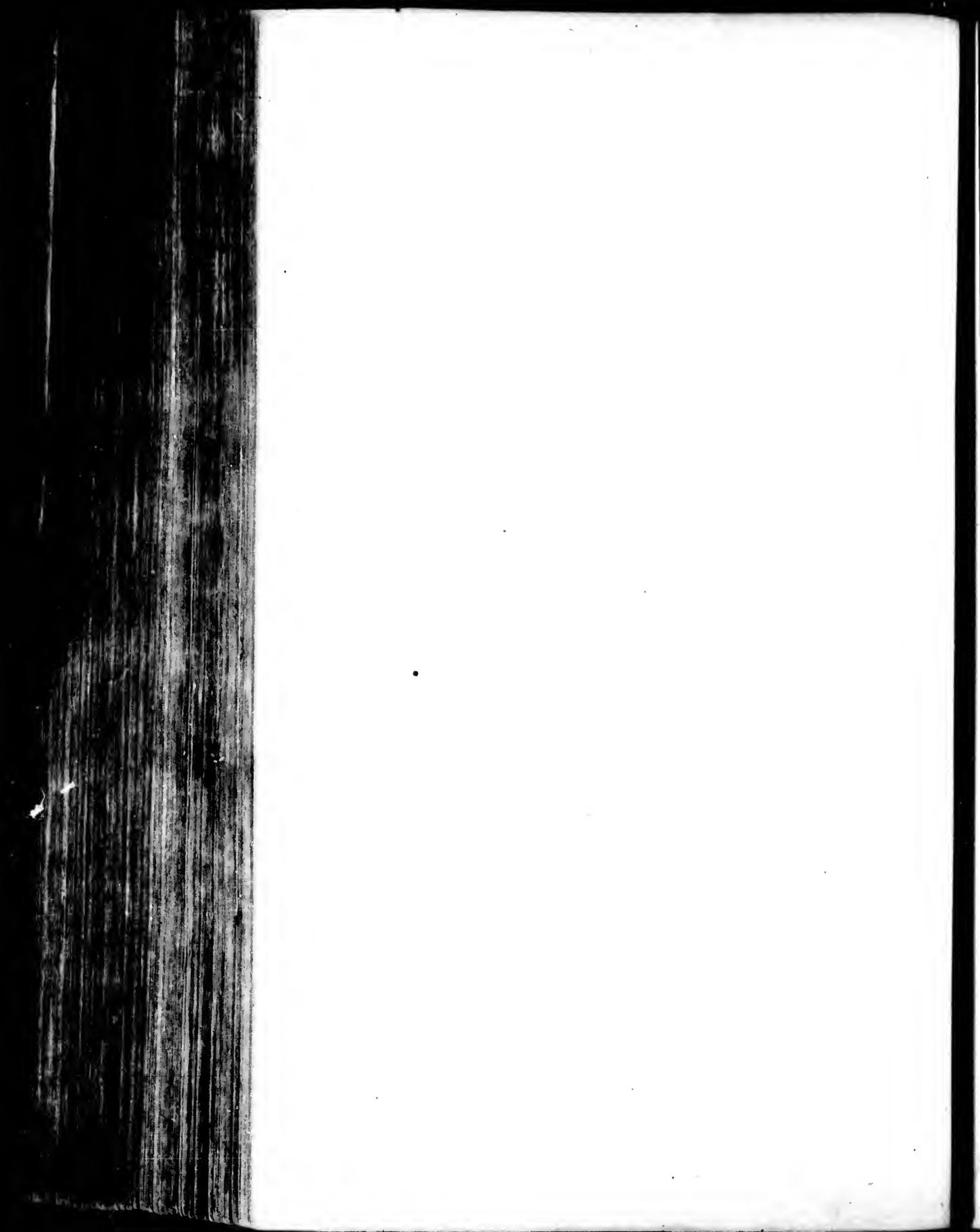
seven miles. At nine in the evening, having steered a northerly course to within three leagues of the shore, we tacked in fourteen fathoms; the extremities of the coast bearing S. E. half E. and W. We stretched along shore till two the next morning, when we suddenly got into six fathoms water, being at the same time two leagues from shore. After we had edged off a little, our depth of water gradually increased, and at noon we sounded in twenty fathoms. Round Island at this time bore N. 5 deg. E. and the western extreme of the coast N. 16 deg. W. It is an elevated point, and having calm weather while we were off it, for this reason it was named Calm Point. On the 14th and 15th, having little wind, we advanced but slowly. At times a very thick fog came on. Our soundings were from twenty-six to fourteen fathoms. We had pretty good success in fishing, for we caught plenty of cod and some flat fish.

On Thursday the 16th, at five o'clock A. M. the fog clearing up, we found ourselves nearer the shore than we expected. Calm Point bore N. 72 deg. E. and a point about eight leagues from it, in a westerly direction, bore N. 3 deg. E. only three miles distant. Between these two points the coast forms a bay, in several parts of which the land could scarcely be seen from the mast-head. Another bay is on the north-western side of the last-mentioned point, between it and a high promontory, which now bore N. 36 deg. W. at the distance of sixteen miles. About nine o'clock the Commodore dispatched Lieutenant Williamson to this promontory, with orders to go ashore and observe what direction the coast took beyond it, and what might be the produce of the country; which, when viewed from the ships, had but a sterile appearance. We here found the flood-tide setting strongly towards the N. W. along the coast. At noon it was high water, and we cast anchor at the distance of twelve miles from the shore, in twenty-four fathoms. About five in the afternoon, the tide beginning to make in our favour, we weighed, and drove with it, there being no wind. When Mr. Williamson returned, he reported that he had landed on the point, and having ascended the most elevated hill, found that the most distant part of the coast in sight was nearly in a northerly direction. He took possession of the country in the name of his Britannic Majesty, and left on the hill a bottle containing a paper, on which the names of our ships and of their commanders, and the date of the discovery, were inscribed. The promontory, which he named Cape Newenham, is a rocky point, of considerable height, and is seated in latitude 58 deg. 42 min. and in longitude 197 deg. 36 min. E. Over, or within it, two lofty hills arise one behind another, of which the innermost, or easternmost, is the highest. The country, as far as Mr. Williamson could discern, produces not a single tree or shrub. The hills were naked, but on the lower grounds there grew grass and plants of various kinds, very few of which were at this time in flower. The Lieutenant met with no other animals than a doe with her fawn, and a dead sea-horse or cow that lay on the beach: of the latter animals we had seen a considerable number from the ships. Cape Newenham is the northern boundary of the extensive gulph or bay situated before the river Bristol, which, in honour of the Admiral, Earl of Bristol, received from the Commodore the distinction of Bristol Bay. Cape Ooncemak forms the southern limit of this bay, and is eighty-two leagues distant, in the direction of S. S. W. from Cape Newenham. At eight o'clock in the evening we steered to the N. W. and N. N. W. round the cape, which at noon the next day was four leagues distant, bearing S. by E. The most advanced land towards the north, bore N. 30 deg. E. and the nearest part of the coast was three leagues and a half distant. During the afternoon there was but little wind, so that by ten o'clock in the evening we had only proceeded three leagues on a northerly course.

Saturday the 18th, at eight o'clock A. M. we were steering N. by W. when the depth of water suddenly decreased to seven and five fathoms; on which account

we brought to, till a boat from each of the ships was sent a-head to sound, and then we steered to the N. E. At noon, when the water deepened to seventeen fathoms, Cape Newenham was twelve leagues distant, bearing S. 9 deg. E. the north-eastern extremity of the land in sight bore N. 66 deg. E. and the distance of the nearest shore was four leagues. Our latitude was 59 deg. 16 min. N. Before one o'clock the boats a-head displayed the signal for shoal-water. They had only two fathoms; but at the same time the ships were in six. By hauling more to the north, we continued nearly in the same depth till between five and six o'clock, when our boats finding less and less water, Captain Cook made the signal to the Discovery, which was then a-head, to cast anchor, and both ships soon came to. In bringing up the Resolution, her cable parted at the clinch, so that we were obliged to make use of the other anchor. We rode in 6 fathoms water, over a bottom of sand, at the distance of about five leagues from the continent. Cape Newenham now bore S. distant 16 leagues. The highest hills we could perceive towards the north, bore N. E. by E. and low land stretched out from the more elevated parts as far as N. by E. Without this there was a shoal of stones and sand, dry at half ebb. The two masters having been sent, each in a boat, to sound between this shoal and the coast, reported, on their return, that there was a channel, in which the soundings were 6 and 7 fathoms, but that it was rather narrow and intricate. At low water, we attempted to get a hawser round the lost anchor, but did not then succeed: however being resolved not to leave it behind us, while there remained the prospect of recovering it, we persevered in our endeavours; and at length, in the evening of the 20th, we had the desired success. While thus employed, the Commodore ordered Captain Clerke to send his master in a boat to search for a passage in a S. W. direction. He accordingly did so, but could find no channel in that quarter; nor did it appear, that there was any other way to get clear of the shoals, than by returning by the same track in which we had entered: for though, by following the channel we were now in, we might, perhaps, have got farther down the coast; and though this channel might have probably carried us at last to the northward, clear of the shoals, yet the attempt would have been attended with extreme hazard, and, in case of ill-success, there would have been a great loss of time, that we could not conveniently spare. These reasons induced the Commodore to return by the way which had brought us in, and thus avoid the shoals. The latitude of our present station, by lunar observations, was 59 deg. 37 min. 20 sec. N. and our longitude 197 deg. 45 min. 48 sec. E. The most northern part of the coast that we could discern from this station, was supposed to be situate in lat. 60 deg. It formed, to appearance, a low point, to which was given the name of Shoal Neck. The tide of flood sets to the northward, and the ebb to the southward: it rises and falls five or six feet upon a perpendicular, and we reckon that it is high water at eight o'clock on the full and change days.

On Tuesday the 21st, at three o'clock A. M. having a gentle breeze at N. N. W. we set sail, with three boats a-head employed in sounding. Notwithstanding this precaution, we met with greater difficulty in returning than we had in advancing; and were at length under the necessity of anchoring, to avoid the danger of running upon a shoal that had only a depth of five feet. While we lay at anchor, twenty-seven Americans, each in a separate canoe, came off to the ships, which they approached with some degree of caution. As they advanced they hallooed, and extended their arms; thereby intimating, as we understood, their peaceable intentions, and how cordially they were ready to receive us. Some of them at last came near enough to receive a few trifling articles, which we threw to them. This gave encouragement to the others to venture along-side; and a traffic quickly commenced between them and our people, who obtained wooden vessels, bows, darts, arrows, dresses of skins, &c. in exchange for which the natives accepted whatever we offered.



offered them. They appeared to be the same sort of people with those we had met with all along this coast; and they wore in their lips and noses the same sorts of ornaments; but they were not so well clothed, and were much more dirty. We thought them to be perfectly unacquainted with any civilized nation; they were ignorant of the use of tobacco; nor did we observe in their possession any foreign article, unless a knife may be considered as such. This indeed was nothing more than a piece of common iron fitted in a handle made of wood, so as to serve the purpose of a knife. However, these people understood so well the value and use of this instrument, that it seemed to be almost the only article they thought worth purchasing. The hair of most of them was shaved, or cut short off, a few locks being left on one side and behind. They wore for a covering on their heads, a hood of skins, and a bonnet seemingly made of wood. One part of their dress, which we procured, was a kind of girdle of skin, made in a very neat manner, with trappings depending from it, and passing between the thighs, so as to conceal the adjacent parts. From the use of this girdle, it is probable, that they sometimes go in other respects naked, even in this high northern latitude; for it can scarcely be supposed that they wear it under their other cloathing. Their canoes were covered with skins, like those we had lately seen; but they were broader, and the hole wherein the person sits was wider than in any of those we had before met with. Our boats returning from founding gave them some alarm, so that they all departed sooner than perhaps they otherwise would have done.

On Wednesday the 22d, we got clear of the shoals, yet we could not venture to steer towards the west during the night, but spent it off Cape Newenham. On the 23d, at day-break, we stood to the northward, the Discovery being ordered to go a-head. When we had proceeded two leagues, our soundings decreased to six fathoms. Being apprehensive, that, if we continued this course, we should meet with less water, we hauled to the south. This course brought us gradually into 18 fathoms water; upon which we ventured to steer a little westerly, and afterwards due west, when we at length found 26 fathoms. At noon, by observation, we were in lat. 58 deg. 7 min. long. 194 deg. 22 min. east. We now steered W. N. W. the depth of water increasing gradually to 34 fathoms. On Saturday the 25th, in the evening, having little wind, and an exceeding thick fog, we let go our anchors in 30 fathoms. At six o'clock the next morning, the weather clearing up, we set sail, and stood to the northward. After we had proceeded on this course for the space of nine leagues, the wind veered to the N. so that we were obliged to steer more westerly. On Tuesday the 28th, at noon, we had clear sunshine for a few hours, during which several observa-

tions were made, which determined our lat. to be 59 deg. 55 min. and our long. 190 deg. 6 min. but the time-keeper gave 189 deg. 59 min. difference only 7 min. On the 29th, in the morning, we discovered land, bearing N. W. by W. distant 6 leagues. We stood towards it till between ten and eleven, when we tacked in 24 fathoms, being then a league from the land, which bore N. N. W. It was the south-eastern extreme, and formed a perpendicular cliff of great height; upon which it received from the Captain the name of Point Upright. Its lat. is 60 deg. 17 min. long. 187 deg. 30 min. east. More land was perceived to the westward of this point; and, at a clear interval, we discerned another portion of high land, bearing W. by S. and this seemed to be perfectly separated from the other. On Thursday, the 30th, at four o'clock P. M. Point Upright bore N. W. by N. distant 6 leagues. A light breeze now springing up at N. N. W. we steered to the north-eastward till four the next morning, when the wind veered to the east; we then tacked, and stood to the N. W. The wind, not long after, shifting to S. E. we steered N. E. by N. and continued this course with soundings, from 35 to 20 fathoms, till noon the following day.

Saturday, August the 1st, we observed in lat. 60 deg. 58 min. long. 191 deg. east. The wind now becoming north-easterly, we first made a stretch of about ten leagues towards the N. W. and then, as we observed no land in that direction, we stood back to the E. for the space of 14 or 15 leagues, and met with a considerable quantity of drift-wood. On the 2d, we had variable light winds, with showers of rain the whole day. In the morning of Monday, the 3d, we resumed our northward course. At noon, by observation, our lat. was 62 deg. 34 min. long. 192 deg. E. Between three and four o'clock this afternoon, Mr. Anderson, Captain Cook's surgeon of the Resolution, expired, after he had lingered under a consumption upwards of a twelvemonth. He was a sensible, intelligent young man; an agreeable companion; had great skill in his profession; and had acquired a considerable portion of knowledge in other branches of science. Our readers will doubtless have observed, how useful an assistant he had proved in the course of this voyage; and had it pleased God to have prolonged his life to a later period, the public might have received from him such communications on the various parts of natural history of the several places he visited, as would have abundantly shewn he was worthy of a higher commendation than we have here given him. His funeral was performed with the usual ceremonies at sea; after which Mr. Law, surgeon of the Discovery, was removed into the Resolution, and Mr. Samwell, the surgeon's first mate of the Resolution, was appointed to succeed Mr. Law as surgeon of the Discovery.

C H A P. XII.

An island named to the memory of the ingenious Mr. Anderson, Captain Cook's late surgeon, and friend—Remarks on Sledge Island, King's Island, and Cape Prince of Wales, the western extreme of America—The Resolution and Discovery anchor in a large bay on the Asiatic coast—The Commodore lands at a village—Interview with some of the natives, the Tschuski—A descriptive account of them—The Resolution and Discovery quit the Bay—Their progress northward—Cape Mulgrave—Ice Cape—Description of Sea-birds—Cape Lisburne—Unsuccessful attempts to get through the ice—Remarks—Arrival on the Coast of Asia—Cape North—Prosecution of the Voyage deferred to the following year—Return from Cape North along the Coast of Asia—Burney's Island—Several Capes and Bays described—Steer for the Coast of America—An account of more Capes and head-land—Befborough Island—Captain Cook's interview with a particular family—Mr. King visits the same—He is sent to examine the coast; his report; and a description of the country, &c.—Norton's Sound—Steward's Island discovered and described—Cape Stevens—Point Shallow-water—Sboals—Clerke's Island—Gore's—Pinnacle—The Resolution springs a leak—The two ships arrive at Oonalaska—Interview with the natives and Russian traders—Mr. Smyloff comes on board—Account of the Islands visited by the Russians—Of their settlement at Oonalaska—A particular Description of the natives, their manufactures, repositories of their dead, &c.—An account of the fish, and other sea animals—Water Fowls—Land Birds—Quadrupeds—Vegetables—Stones, &c.—Resemblance of the inhabitants of this side of America, to the Esquimaux and Greenlanders—Observations.

SOON after Mr. Anderson had resigned his breath, we discovered land to the westward, distant 12 leagues. We supposed it to be an island; and the Commodore, to perpetuate the memory of the de-

ceased, for whom he had a very great regard, distinguished it by the name of Anderson's Island. On Tuesday, the 4th, at three in the afternoon, we saw land extending from N. N. E. to N. W. We steered to-

wards it till four, when, being four or five miles distant from it, we tacked; and, not long afterwards, the wind failing, we let go our anchors in 13 fathoms, over a sandy bottom, at the distance of about two leagues from land. Our lat. was now 64 deg. 27 min. N. and long. 194 deg. 18 min. E. We could at intervals, discern the coast extending from E. to N. W. and an island of considerable elevation, bearing W. by N. nine miles distant. The land before us, which we imagined to be the continent of America, appeared rather low next the sea; but inland it rose in hills, which seemed to be of a tolerable height. It had a greenish hue, and was apparently destitute of wood, and free from snow. While our ships remained at anchor, we observed that the tide of flood came from the eastward, and set to the westward, till between the hours of ten and eleven; from which time, till two o'clock the next morning, the stream set to the E. and the water fell three feet. The flood running both longer and stronger than the ebb, we concluded that there was a westerly current betwixt the tide. Wednesday the 5th, at ten o'clock in the morning, we ran down, and soon after anchored between the island and the continent in seven fathoms. Not long after we had cast anchor, Captain Cook, accompanied by Mr. King and some other officers, landed upon the island. He hoped to have had from it a prospect of the coast and sea towards the west; but in that direction the fog was so thick, that the view was not more extensive than it was from our ships. The coast of the continent seemed to incline to the north, at a low point, named by us Point Rodney, which bore from the island N. W. half W. at the distance of three or four leagues; but the high land, which assumed a more northerly direction, was perceived at a much greater distance. The lat. of this island is 64 deg. 30 min. N. and its long. is 193 deg. 57 min. E. It is about 12 miles in circumference. The surface of the ground principally consists of large loose stones, covered in many places with moss and other vegetables; of which 20 or 30 different species were observed, and most of them were in flower. But the Captain saw not a tree or shrub either on the island or upon the neighbouring continent. Near the beach where he landed, was a considerable quantity of wild purslain, long-wort, pease, &c. some of which he took on board for boiling. He saw several plovers, and other small birds; a fox was also seen. He met with some decayed huts, built partly under-ground. People had lately been upon the island; and it is more than probable that they often repair to it, there being a beaten path from one end to the other. At a small distance from that part of the shore where our gentlemen landed, they found a sledge, which induced Captain Cook to give the island the appellation of Sledge Island. It appeared to be such a one as is used by the Russians in Kamtschatka, for the purpose of conveying goods from one place to another over the snow or ice. It was about 20 inches in breadth, and 10 feet in length, had a sort of rail-work on each side, and was shod with bone. Its construction was admirable, and its various parts were put together with great neatness; some with wooden pins, but for the most part with thongs or lashings of whale bone; in consequence of which, the Captain imagined that it was entirely the workmanship of the natives. We weighed anchor at three o'clock A. M. of the 6th, and made sail to the N. W. with a light breeze from the fourthward. Having afterwards but little wind, and that variable, we made but a slow progress; and, at eight o'clock in the evening, finding the ships getting into shoal-water, we anchored in seven fathoms, our distance from the coast being about two leagues. Sledge Island then bore S. 51 deg. E. nine or ten leagues distant. Soon after we had let go our anchors, the weather, which had been misty, cleared up, and we perceived high land extending from N. 40 deg. E. to N. 30 deg. W. seemingly disjoined from the coast near which we lay at anchor, which appeared to extend to the north-eastward. We at the same time saw an island bearing N. 81 deg. W. at the distance of eight or nine leagues.

It seemed to be of small extent, and was named King's Island. We rode at anchor till eight the next morning, when we weighed, and steered a N. W. course. The weather being clear towards the evening, we obtained a sight of the north-western land, distant about three leagues. We passed the night in making short boards, the weather being rainy and misty, and the wind inconsiderable. Between four and five in the morning of the 8th, we again had a sight of the N. W. land; and not long afterwards having a calm, and being driven by a current towards the shore, we thought proper to anchor in 12 fathoms water, at the distance of about two miles from the coast. Over the western extremity is a lofty peaked hill, situate in the long. of 192 deg. 18 min. E. and in the lat. of 65 deg. 30 min. N. A north-easterly breeze springing up at eight o'clock, we weighed, and made sail to the south-eastward, hoping to find a passage between this N. W. land and the coast, near which we had cast anchor in the evening of the 6th. But we quickly got into seven fathoms water, and perceived low land connecting the two coasts, and the elevated land behind it. Persuaded that the whole was a continued coast, we now tacked and steered for its north-western part, near which we anchored in 17 fathoms. The weather at present was very thick and rainy; but at four the next morning it cleared up, and enabled us to discern the neighbouring land. A lofty steep rock or island bore W. by S. another island to the northward of it, and considerably larger, bore W. by N. the peaked hill before mentioned, S. E. by E. and the point that was under it, S. 22 deg. E. Under this hill is some low land, extending towards the N. W. the extreme point of which was now about one league distant, bearing N. E. by E. Over it, and also beyond it, we observed some high land, which we imagined was a continuation of the continent. This point of land, which the Commodore distinguished by the name of Cape Prince of Wales, is the western extreme of all America hitherto known. It stands in the long. of 191 deg. 45 min. E. and in the lat. of 65 deg. 46 min. N. We fancied that we saw some people on the coast; and perhaps we were not mistaken in our supposition, as some elevations like flags, and others resembling huts, were observed at the same place. This morning, at eight o'clock, a faint northerly breeze arising, we weighed anchor; but our sails were scarcely set, when it began to blow and rain with great violence, there being at the same time misty weather. The wind and current were in contrary directions, raising such a sea, that it often broke into the ship. Having pled to windward with little effect till two o'clock in the afternoon, we stood for the island which we had perceived to the westward, intending to cast anchor under it till the gale should abate. But upon our near approach to this island, we found that it was composed of two small islands, neither of which exceeded three or four leagues in circumference. As these could afford us little shelter, we did not come to an anchor, but continued to stretch towards the W. and about eight o'clock in the evening we saw land extending from N. N. W. to W. by S. the distance of the nearest part being six leagues. We stood on till ten o'clock, and then made a board towards the E. in order to pass the night.

On Monday the 10th, at break of day, we resumed our westward course for the land seen by us the preceding evening. At eleven minutes after seven o'clock, it extended from S. 72 deg. W. to N. 41 deg. E. Betwixt the fourth-western extremity, and a point bearing W. six miles distant, the coast forms a spacious bay, in which we dropped our anchors at ten in the forenoon, about two miles from the northern shore, over a gravelly bottom, at the depth of ten fathoms. The northern point of this bay bore N. 43 deg. E. its southern point S. 58 deg. W. the bottom of the bay, N. 60 deg. W. between two and three leagues distant, and the two islands that we had passed the preceding day, were at the distance of 14 leagues, bearing N. 72 deg. E. When steering for this bay we observed, on the

north shore, a
to have seen
light of our ve
running up the
des. At this
and according
panied by four
each of whom
arrows, stood
three of them
approach of
pull off their
this civility w
sufficient con
for, the inflar
tired. Captain
thing in his
valled on the
sents: in retu
and a couple
opinion, that
with them for
and that they
they had expe
and cautious
more of our p
the Captain's
them, he star
he advanced,
being ready to
the eminence
their arrows.
three of his c
them. The o
them, soon c
were not alar
few more of
of traffic was
wives, beads
rows, and som
people had to
spear or a bow
never quitting
five persons la
party with i
placed them i
of them in a
either with st
barbs; and f
What use the
be to kill fr
Their bows w
rican coast:
steel, and of
considerable
with carving
metal. Thos
hands, had th
right shoulde
shoulder serv
quivers were
leather, on w
ornaments.
their cloathin
passing what
northern a p
The Amer
coast, had ro
and were rat
whom we ne
long visages,
whole, they
No women,
nor any aged
bald, and he
others seeme
above the m
mark across
any of the ot
and some ha

north shore, a village, and some people, who seemed to have been thrown into confusion, or fear, at the sight of our vessel. We could plainly perceive persons running up the country with burdens upon their shoulders. At this village Captain Cook proposed to land; and accordingly went with three armed boats, accompanied by some of the officers. Thirty or forty men, each of whom was armed with a spontoon, a bow, and arrows, stood drawn up on an eminence near the houses; three of them came down towards the shore, on the approach of our gentlemen, and were so polite as to pull off their caps, and make them low bows. Though this civility was returned, it did not inspire them with sufficient confidence to wait for the landing of our party; for, the instant they put the boats ashore, the natives retired. Captain Cook followed them alone, without any thing in his hand; and, by signs and gestures, prevailed on them to stop, and accept some trifling presents: in return for these, they gave him two fox-skins, and a couple of sea-horse teeth. The Captain was of opinion, that they had brought these articles down with them for the purpose of presenting them to him; and that they would have given them to him, even if they had expected no return. They seemed very timid and cautious: intimating their desire, by signs, that no more of our people should be suffered to come up. On the Captain's laying his hand on the shoulder of one of them, he started back several paces; in proportion as he advanced, they retreated, always in the attitude of being ready to make use of their spears; while those on the eminence were prepared to support them with their arrows. Insensibly, the Captain, and two or three of his companions, introduced themselves among them. The distribution of a few beads among some of them, soon created a degree of confidence, so that they were not alarmed, when the Captain was joined by a few more of his people; and, in a short time, a kind of traffic was entered into. In exchange for tobacco, knives, beads, and other articles, they gave a few arrows, and some of their clothing; but nothing that our people had to offer, could induce them to part with a spear or a bow. These they held in continual readiness, never quitting them, except at one time, when four or five persons laid theirs down, while they favoured our party with a song and a dance; and even then, they placed them in such a manner, that they could lay hold of them in a moment. Their arrows were pointed either with stone or bone, but very few of them had barbs; and some of them had a round blunt point. What use these are applied to we cannot say, unless it be to kill small animals without damaging the skin. Their bows were such as we had observed on the American coast: their spontoons, or spears, were of iron or steel, and of European or Asiatic workmanship; and considerable pains had been taken to embellish them with carving, and inlayings of brass, and of a white metal. Those who stood with bows and arrows in their hands, had the spear slung by a leathern strap over their right shoulder. A leathern quiver, slung over their left shoulder served to contain arrows; and some of these quivers were exceedingly beautiful, being made of red leather, on which was very neat embroidery, and other ornaments. Several other things, and particularly their cloathing, indicated a degree of ingenuity far surpassing what any one would expect to find among so northern a people.

The Americans we had seen since our arrival on that coast, had round chubby faces, and high cheek-bones, and were rather low of stature. The people among whom we now were, far from resembling them, had long visages, and were stout and well made: upon the whole, they appeared to be a very different nation. No women, nor children of either sex, were observed, nor any aged persons, except one man, whose head was bald, and he was the only one who bore no arms: the others seemed to be select men, and rather under than above the middle age. The elderly man had a black mark across his face, which was not perceived in any of the others; all of them had their ears perforated, and some had glass beads hanging to them. These

were the only fixed ornaments seen about them, for they wear none to their lips: this is another particular, in which they differ from the Americans we had lately seen. Their apparel consisted of a pair of breeches, a cap, a frock, a pair of boots, and a pair of gloves, all made of the skins of deer, dogs, seals, and other animals, and extremely well dressed; some with the hair or fur on, and others without it. The caps were made in such a manner, as to fit the head very close; and besides these caps, which were worn by most of them, we procured from them some hoods, made of dog-skins, that were sufficiently large to cover both head and shoulders. Their hair was apparently black, but their heads were either shaved, or the hair cut close off, and none of them wore beards. Of the few articles which they obtained from our people, knives and tobacco were what they set the most value upon.

In the village we saw both their winter and their summer habitations; the former are exactly like a vault, the floor of which is sunk below the surface of the earth. One of them, which Captain Cook examined, was of an oval figure, about twenty feet in length, and twelve or more in height; the framing consisted of wood, and the ribs of whales, judiciously disposed, and bound together with smaller materials of the same kind. Over this framing, a covering of strong coarse grafs was laid, and that again was covered with earth; so that on the outside, the house had the appearance of a little hillock, supported by a wall of stone, of the height of three or four feet, which was built round the two sides, and one end. At the other end of the habitation, the earth was raised sloping, to walk up to the entrance, which was by a hole in the top of the roof, over that end. The floor was boarded, and under it was a sort of cellar, in which the Captain saw nothing but water: at the end of each house was a vaulted room, which he supposed was a store-room. These store-rooms communicated, by a dark passage, with the house; and with the open air, by a hole in the roof, which was even with the ground one walked upon; but they cannot be said to be entirely below ground; for one end extended to the edge of the hill, along which they were made, and which was built up with stone. Over it stood a kind of fentry box, or tower, formed of the large bones of great fish. Their summer huts were of a tolerable size, and circular, being brought to a point at the top. Slight poles and bones, covered with the skins of sea animals, composed the framing. Captain Cook examined the inside of one: there was a fire-place just within the door, where a few wooden vessels were deposited, all very dirty. Their bed-places were close to the side, and occupied about one-half of the circuit: some degree of privacy seemed to be observed; for there were several partitions, made with skins. The bed and bedding consisted of deer-skins, and most of them were clean and dry. About the houses were erected several stages, ten or twelve feet in height, such as we had seen on some parts of the American coast. They were composed entirely of bones, and were apparently intended for drying their fish and skins, which were thus placed out of the reach of their dogs, of which they had great numbers. These dogs are of the fox kind, rather large, and of different colours, with long soft hair, that resembles wool. They are, in all probability, used for the purpose of drawing their sledges in winter; for it appears that they have sledges, as the Captain saw many of them laid up in one of their winter huts. It is, likewise, not improbable, that dogs constitute a part of their food, for several lay dead, which had been killed that morning. The canoes of these people are of the same kind with those of the northern Americans, some, both of the large and small sort, being seen lying in a creek, near the village. From the large bones of fish, and other sea-animals, it appeared, that the sea furnished them with the greater part of their subsistence. The country seemed extremely barren, as our gentlemen saw not a tree or shrub. At some distance towards the west, they observed a ridge of mountains covered with snow, that had fallen not long before.

Some of us at first, supposed this land to be a part of the island of Alafchka, laid down in Mr. Stæhlin's map before mentioned; but from the appearance of the coast, the situation of the opposite shore of America, and from the longitude, we soon conjectured that it was, more probably, the country of the Tschutki, or the eastern extremity of Asia, explored by Beering in the year 1728. In admitting this, however, without farther examination, we must have pronounced Mr. Stæhlin's map, and his account of the new northern Archipelago, to be either remarkably erroneous, even in latitude, or else to be a mere fiction; a judgment which we would not presume to pass, upon a publication so respectably vouched, without producing the most decisive proofs. Our party having remained with these people between two and three hours, they returned on board; and, soon after, the wind becoming southerly, we weighed anchor, stood out of the bay, and steered to the N. E. between the coast and the two islands. At noon, the next day, August 11, the former extended from S. 80 deg. W. to N. 84 deg. W. the latter bore S. 40 deg. W. and the peaked hill, over Cape Prince of Wales, bore S. 36 deg. E. The latitude of the ship was 66 deg. 5 min. N. the longitude 191 deg. 19 min. E. our soundings were 28 fathoms; and our position nearly in the middle of the channel, between the two coasts, each being at the distance of about seven leagues. From this station we steered to the eastward, in order to make a nearer approach to the American coast. In this course the water gradually shoaled; and there being very little wind, and all our endeavours to encrease our depth failing, we were obliged at last to cast anchor in six fathoms: which was the only remedy remaining, to prevent the ships driving into more shallow water. The nearest part of the western land bore W. 12 leagues distant: the peaked mountain over Cape Prince of Wales, bore S. 16 deg. W. and the most northern part of the American continent in sight, E. S. E. the distance of the nearest part being about four leagues. After we had anchored, a boat was dispatched to sound, and the water was found to shoal gradually towards the land. While our ships lay at anchor, which was from six to nine in the evening, we perceived little or no current, nor did we observe that the water rose or fell. A northerly breeze springing up, we weighed, and made sail to the westward, which course soon brought us into deep water; and, during the 12th, we plied to the northward in sight of both coasts, but we kept nearest to that of America. On the 13th, at four in the afternoon, a breeze arising at S, we steered N. E. by N. till four o'clock the next morning, when, seeing no land, we directed our course E. by N. and between the hours of nine and ten, land appeared, which we supposed was a continuation of the continent. It extended from E. by S. to E. by N. and, not long afterwards, we descried more land, bearing N. by E. Coming rather suddenly into 13 fathoms water, at two in the afternoon, we made a trip off till four, when we again stood in for the land; which, soon after, we saw, extending from N. to S. E. the nearest part being at the distance of three or four leagues. The coast here forms a point, named by us Point Mulgrave, which is situated in the latitude of 67 deg. 45 min. N. and in the longitude of 194 deg. 51 min. E. The land seemed to be very low near the sea, but a little farther it rises into hills of a moderate height; the whole was free from snow, and apparently destitute of wood. We now tacked, and bore away N. W. by W. but, in a short time afterwards, thick weather, with rain, coming on, and the wind increasing, we hauled more to the westward.

Saturday the 15th, at two o'clock A. M. the wind veered to S. W. by S. and blew a strong gale, which abated towards noon. We now stood to the N. E. till six the next morning, when we steered rather more easterly: in this run, we met with several sea-horses, and great numbers of birds; some of which resembled sand-larks, and others were not larger than hedge-sparrows. We also saw some shags, so that we judged we were not far from land; but, having a thick fog, we could not expect to see any; and as the wind blew strong,

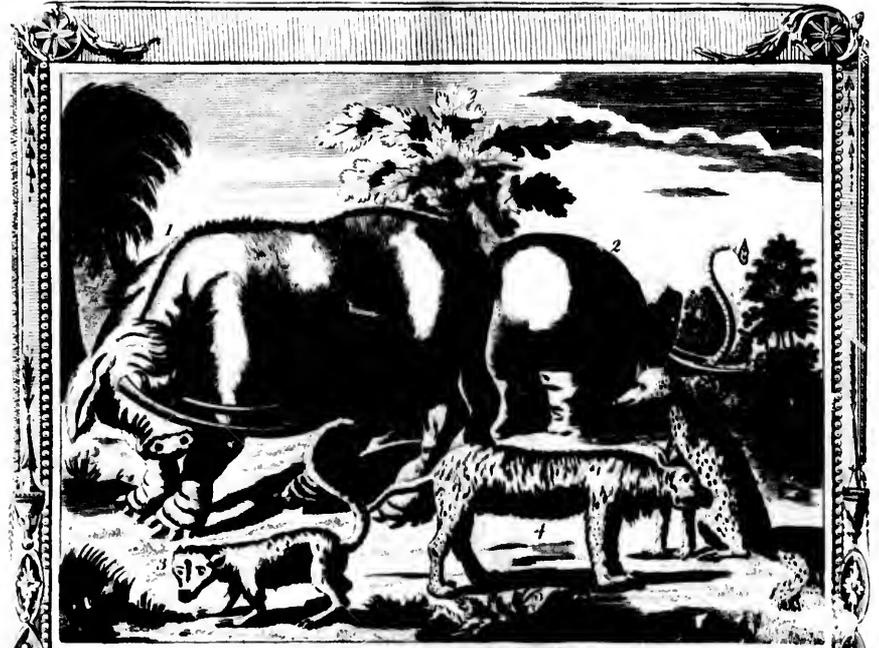
it was not deemed prudent to continue a course which was most likely to bring us to it. From the noon of this day, to six o'clock in the morning of the following, we steered E. by N. a course which brought us into fifteen fathoms water. We now steered N. E. by E. thinking, by such a course, to increase our depth of water. But in the space of six leagues, it shoaled to 11 fathoms, which induced us to haul close to the wind, that now blew at W. About twelve o'clock, both sun and moon were clearly seen at intervals, and we made some hasty observations for the longitude, which, reduced to noon, when the latitude was 70 deg. 33 min. N. gave 197 deg. 41 min. E. The time-keeper, for the same time, gave 198 deg. In the forenoon, we perceived a brightness in the northern horizon, like that reflected from ice, usually called the blink. Little notice was taken of it, from a supposition that it was improbable we should so soon meet with ice. The sharpness of the air, however, and gloominess of the weather, for the two or three preceding days, seemed to indicate some sudden change. About an hour afterwards, the sight of an enormous mass of ice, left us no longer in any doubt respecting the cause of the brightness of the horizon. Between two and three o'clock, we tacked close to the edge of the ice, in 22 fathoms water, being then in the latitude of 70 deg. 41 min. north, and unable to stand on any farther, for the ice was perfectly impenetrable, and extended from W. by S. to E. by N. as far as the eye could reach. Here we met with great numbers of sea-horses, some of which were in the water, but far more upon the ice. The Commodore had thoughts of hoisting out the boats to kill some of these animals: but, the wind freshening, he gave up the design; and we continued to ply towards the south, or rather towards the west, for the wind came from that quarter. We made no progress; for, at twelve on the 18th, our latitude was 70 deg. 44 min. north, and we were almost five leagues farther to the east. We were, at present, close to the edge of the ice, which was as compact as a wall, and appeared to be at least ten or twelve feet in height: but, farther northward, it seemed to be much higher. Its surface was exceedingly rugged, and, in several places, we saw pools of water upon it. We now stood to the south, and, after running six leagues, shoaled the water to seven fathoms; but it soon increased to the depth of nine fathoms. At this time, the weather, which had been hazy, becoming clearer, we saw land extending from S. to S. E. by E. at the distance of three or four miles. The eastern extremity forms a point, which was greatly encumbered with ice, on which account it was distinguished by the name of Icy Cape. Its latitude is 70 deg. 29 min. north, and its longitude 198 deg. 20 min. east. The other extreme of the land was lost in the horizon; and we had no doubt of its being a continuation of the continent of America. The Discovery being about a mile astern, and to leeward, met with less depth of water than we did; and tacking on that account, the Commodore was obliged to tack also, to prevent separation. Our present situation was very critical. We were upon a lee-shore in shoal water; and the main body of the ice to windward, was driving down upon us. It was evident, that if we continued much longer between it and the land, it would force us ashore, unless it should chance to take the ground before us. It appeared almost to join the land to leeward, and the only direction that was free from it was to the south westward. After making a short board to the north, Captain Cook made a signal for the Discovery to tack, and his ship tacked at the same time. The wind proved in some measure favourable, so that we lay up S. W. and S. W. by W.

Wednesday the 19th at eight in the morning, the wind veering to west, we tacked to the northward; and, at twelve, the latitude was 70 deg. 6 min. north, and the longitude 196 deg. 42 min. east. In this situation, we had a considerable quantity of drift ice about our ships, and the main ice was about two leagues to the north. Between one and two, we got in with the edge of it. It was less compact than that which we had observed to-

wards

continue a course which
it. From the noon of
morning of the follow-
course which brought us
we now steered N. E. by
to increase our depth of
leagues, it shoaled to
to haul close to the
About twelve o'clock,
ly seen at intervals, and
ons for the longitude;
the latitude was 70 deg.
1 min. E. The time
e 198 deg. In the fore-
s in the northern hori-
ice, usually called the
n of it, from a supposi-
should so soon meet with
however, and gloom-
two or three preceding
udden change. About
of an enormous mass of
doubt respecting the cause
on. Between two and
to the edge of the ice,
en in the latitude of 70
e to stand on any farther,
penetrable, and extended
far as the eye could reach.
bers of sea-horses, some
but far more upon the
thoughts of hoisting out
animals: but, the wind
gn; and we continued to
er towards the west, for
er. We made no pro-
8th, our latitude was 70
re almost five leagues far-
present, close to the edge
ct as a wall, and appeared
in height: but, farther
uch higher. Its surface
in several places, we saw
now stood to the south,
shoaled the water to fe-
fated to the depth of nine
weather, which had been
aw land extending from
re of three or four miles
point, which was greatly
ch account it was dilu-
ape. Its latitude is 70
gitude 198 deg. 20 min.
he land was lost in the
e of its being a continua-
ca. The Discovery be-
o leeward, met with less
and tacking on that ac-
ligned to tack also, to pre-
situation was very cri-
ore in shoal water; and
windward, was driving
nt, that if we continued
e land, it would force us
e to take the ground be-
join the land to leeward,
free from it was to the
ng a short board to the
nal for the Discovery to
e same time. The wind
able, so that we lay up

nt in the morning, the
to the northward; and,
deg. 6 min. north, and the
. In this situation, we
drift ice about our ships,
o leagues to the north.
with the edge of it. It
ch we had observed to-
wards



Various BEASTS of DIFFERENT PARTS of the WORLD.



1 The Mastiff 2 Elephant 3. A kind of Monkey 4 The Jackall 5 A kind of
 7 A particular kind of Indian Oxen 8 The Savage Monkey 9 Young one 10 The Man of War
 10 Indian Beast 11 An animal called the Indian Bear 12 A young one of a
 13. A kind of Monkey called the Beard Man

wards the north; but it was too close, and in too large pieces to attempt forcing the ships through it. We saw an amazing number of sea-horses on the ice, and as we were in want of fresh provisions, the boats from each ship were dispatched to procure some of them. By seven in the evening, we had received, on board the *Resolution*, nine of these animals; which, till this time, we had supposed to be sea-cows; so that we were greatly disappointed, particularly some of the sailors, who, on account of the novelty of the thing, had been feasting their eyes for some days past. Nor would they now have been disappointed, nor have known the difference, if there had not been two or three men on board, who had been in Greenland, and declared what animals these were, and that no person ever eat of them. Notwithstanding this, we made them serve us for provisions, and there were few of our people who did not prefer them to our salt meat. The fat of these animals is, at first, as sweet as marrow; but, in a few days, it becomes rancid, unless it is salted, in which state it will keep much longer. The lean flesh is coarse and blackish, and has a strong taste; but the heart is almost as well tasted as that of a bullock. The fat, when melted, affords a good quantity of oil, which burns very well in lamps; and their hides, which are of great thickness, were extremely useful about our rigging. The teeth, or tusks, of most of them were, at this time, of a very small size; even some of the largest and oldest of these animals, had them not exceeding half a foot in length. Hence we concluded, that they had lately shed their old teeth. They lie upon the ice in herds of many hundreds, huddling like swine, one over the other; and they roar very loud; so that in the night, or when the weather was foggy, they gave us notice of the vicinity of the ice, before we could discern it. We never found the whole herd sleeping, some of them being constantly upon the watch. These, on the approach of the boat would awake those that were next to them; and the alarm being thus gradually communicated, the whole herd would presently be awake. However, they were seldom in a hurry to get away, before they had been once fired at. Then they would fall into the sea, one over the other in the utmost confusion; and, if we did not happen, at the first discharge, to kill those we fired at, we generally lost them, though mortally wounded. They did not appear to us to be so dangerous as some authors have represented them, not even when they were attacked. They are, indeed, more so, in appearance, than in reality. Vast multitudes of them would follow, and come close up to the boats; but the flash of a musket in the pan, or even the mere pointing of one at them, would send them down in a moment. The female will defend her young one to the very last, and at the expence of her own life, whether upon the ice or in the water. Nor will the young one quit the dam, though she should have been killed; but, if you destroy one, you are sure of the other. The female, when in the water, holds her young one between her fore fins. Mr. Pennant, in his Synopsis of Quadrupeds, has given a very good description of this animal under the name of the Arctic Walrus. Why it should be called a sea-horse, is difficult to determine, unless the word be a corruption of the Russian name *Morse*; for they do not in the least resemble a horse. It is, doubtless, the same animal that is found in the Gulf of St. Lawrence, and there called a sea-cow. It is certainly more like a cow than a horse; but this resemblance consists in nothing but the snout. In short, it is an animal not unlike a seal, but incomparably larger. The length of one of them, which was none of the largest, was nine feet four inches from the snout to the tail, the circumference of its body at the shoulder, was seven feet ten inches; its circumference near the hinder fins was five feet six inches, and the weight of the carcass, without the head, skin, or entrails, was eight hundred and fifty-four pounds. The head weighed forty-one pounds and a half, and the skin two hundred and five pounds. It may not be improper to remark, that, for some days before this time, we had often seen flocks of ducks flying to the south. They were of two spe-

No. 68.

cies, the one much larger than the other. The larger sort was of a brown colour; and of the small sort, either the duck or drake was black and white, and the other brown. Some of our people said that they also saw geese. This seems to indicate, that there must be land to the northward, where these birds, in the proper season, find shelter for breeding, and whence they were now on their return to a warmer climate.

After we had got our sea-horses on board, we were, in a manner, surrounded with the ice; and had no means of clearing it, but by steering to the southward, which we did till three o'clock the next morning, with a light westerly breeze, and, in general, thick, foggy weather. Our soundings were from 12 to 15 fathoms. We then tacked and stood to the northward till ten o'clock, when the wind shifting to the N. we stood to the W. S. W. and W. At two in the afternoon, we fell in with the main ice, and kept along the edge of it, being partly directed by the roaring of the sea-horses, for we had an exceeding thick fog. Thus we continued sailing till near midnight, when we got in among the loose pieces of ice. The wind being easterly, and the fog very thick, we now hauled to the southward; and, at ten the next morning, the weather clearing up, we saw the American continent, extending from S. by E. to E. by S. and, at noon, from S. W. half S. to E. the distance of the nearest part being five leagues. We were at present in the latitude of 69 deg. 32 min. N. and in the longitude of 195 deg. 48 min. E. and, as the main ice was not far from us, it is evident, that it now covered a part of the sea; which, a few days before, had been free from it; and that it extended farther towards the S. than where we first fell in with it. During the afternoon we had but little wind; and the master was sent in a boat to observe whether there was any current, but he found none. We continued to steer for the American land till eight o'clock, in order to obtain a nearer view of it, and to search for a harbour; but seeing nothing that had the appearance of one, we again stood to the N. with a gentle westerly breeze. At this time, the coast extended from S. W. to E. the nearest part being at the distance of four or five leagues. The southern extreme seemed to form a point, to which the name of Cape Lithburne was given. It is situate in the latitude of 69 deg. 5 min. N. and in the longitude of 194 deg. 42 min. E. and appeared to be tolerably high land, even down to the sea; but there may be low land under it, which we might not then see, being not less than ten leagues distant from it. In almost every other part, as we advanced to the north, we had found a low coast, from which the land rises to a moderate height. The coast now before us was free from snow, except in one or two places, and had a greenish hue. But we could not discern any wood upon it.

Saturday the 22d, the wind was southerly, and the weather for the most part foggy, with some intervals of sunshine. At eight in the evening, we had a calm, which continued till midnight, when we heard the surge of the sea dashing against the ice, and had many loose pieces about us. A light piece now arose at N. E. and the fog being very thick, we steered to the S. to get clear of the ice. At eight the next morning, the fog dispersed, and we hauled towards the W. for the Commodore finding we could not get to the N. near the coast, by reason of the ice, resolved to try what could be done at a distance from it; and as the wind seemed to be fixed at N. he considered it as a favourable opportunity. In our progress to the westward, the water gradually deepened to 28 fathoms. With the northerly wind the air was sharp and cold; and we had fogs, sunshine, showers of snow and sleet alternately. On the 26th, at ten in the morning, we fell in with the ice. At twelve, it extended from N. W. to E. by N. and seemed to be thick and compact. We were now, by observation, in the latitude of 69 deg. 36 min. N. and in the longitude of 184 deg. E. and it appeared that we had no better prospect of getting to the N. here, than nearer the shore. We continued steering to the W. till five in the afternoon, when we were, in some degree, embayed by the ice, which was very close in the

N. W.

7 C



WORLD.



ball - 6 Canal
the Macegar Fair
and Ducks House.

N. W. and N. E. quarters, with a great quantity of loose ice about the edge of the main body. At this time, we had baffling light airs, but the wind soon settled at S. and increased to a fresh gale, accompanied with showers of rain. We got the tack aboard, and stretched to the E. as this was the only direction in which the sea was free from ice.

Thursday the 27th, at four o'clock, A. M. we tacked and stood to the westward, and at seven o'clock in the evening, we were close in with the edge of the ice, which lay E. N. E. and W. S. W. as far in each of those directions as the eye could reach. There being but little wind, Captain Cook went with the boats, to examine the state of the ice. He found it consisting of loose pieces, of various extent, and so close together, that he could scarcely enter the outer edge with a boat; and it was as impracticable for the ships to enter it, as if it had been so many rocks. He particularly remarked, that it was all pure transparent ice, except the upper surface, which was rather porous. It seemed to be wholly composed of frozen snow, and to have been all formed at sea. For, not to insist on the improbability of such prodigious masses floating out of rivers, none of the productions of the land were found incorporated, or mixed with it; which would certainly have been the case, if it had been formed in rivers, either great or small. The pieces of ice that formed the outer edge of the main body, were from forty to fifty yards in extent, to four or five; and the Captain judged, that the larger pieces reached thirty feet or more, under the surface of the water. It is thought it highly improbable, that this ice could have been the production of the preceding winter. He was rather inclined to suppose it to have been the production of many winters. It was equally improbable, in his opinion, that the little that now remained of the summer, could destroy even the tenth part of what now subsisted of this great mass; for the sun had already exerted upon it the full force and influence of his rays. The sun, indeed, according to his judgment, contributes very little towards reducing these enormous masses. For though that luminary is above the horizon a considerable while, it seldom shines out for more than a few hours at a time, and frequently is not seen for several successive days. It is the wind, or rather the waves raised by the wind, that brings down the bulk of these prodigious masses, by grinding one piece against another, and by undermining and washing away those parts which are exposed to the surge of the sea. This was manifest, from the Captain's observing, that the upper surface of many pieces had been partly washed away, while the base, or under part, continued firm for several fathoms round that which appeared above water, like a shoal round a high rock. He measured the depth of water upon one, and found that it was 15 feet, so that the ships might have sailed over it. If he had not measured this depth, he would have been unwilling to believe, that there was a sufficient weight of ice above the surface, to have sunk the other so much below it. It may thus happen, that more ice is destroyed in one tempestuous season, than is formed in several winters, and an endless accumulation of it is prevented. But that there is constantly a remaining store, will be acknowledged by every one who has been upon the spot. A thick fog, which came on while the Commodore was thus employed with the boats, hastened him aboard sooner than he could have wished, with one sea-horse to each ship. Our party had killed many, but could not wait to bring them off. The number of these animals, on all the ice that we had seen, is really astonishing. We spent the night standing off and on, among the drift ice, and at nine o'clock the next morning, the fog having in some degree dispersed, boats from each of the ships were dispatched for sea-horses; for our people by this time began to relish them, and those we had before furnished ourselves with, were all consumed. At noon, our latitude was 69 deg. 17 min. N. our longitude 183 deg. E. and our depth of water was 25 fathoms. At two in the afternoon, having got on board as many sea-horses as were deemed sufficient, and the

wind freshening at S. S. E. we hoisted in the boats, and steered to the S. W. But being unable to weather the ice upon this tack, or to go through it, we made a board to the eastward, till about eight o'clock, then resumed our course to the S. W. and were obliged before midnight to tack again, on account of the ice. Not long after, the wind veering to the N. W. and blowing a stiff gale, we stretched to the S. W. close hauled.

Friday the 29th, in the morning, we saw the main ice towards the N. and soon after, perceived land bearing S. W. by W. In a short time after this, more land was seen, bearing W. It shewed itself in two hills, resembling islands, but soon the whole appeared connected. As we made a nearer approach to the land, the depth of water decreased very fast, so that, at twelve o'clock, when we tacked, we found only eight fathoms; being three miles from the coast, which extended from S. 30 deg. E. to N. 60 deg. W. the latter extremity terminating in a bluff point, being one of the hills mentioned before. The weather was now very hazy, with drizzling rain; but, soon afterwards, it cleared up, particularly to the southward, westward, and northward. This enabled us to have a tolerable view of the coast; which resembles, in every respect, the opposite coast of America; that is, low land next the sea, with higher land farther back. It was totally destitute of wood, and even of snow; but was, probably, covered with a mossy substance, that gave it a brownish hue. In the low ground that lay between the sea and the high land, was a lake, extending to the south-eastward farther than we could see. As we stood off, the molt westerly of the two hills above-mentioned, came open off the bluff point, in a N. W. direction. It had the appearance of an island, but it might perhaps be connected with the other by low land, though we did not see it. And if that be the case, there is a two-fold point, with a bay between them. This point, which is rocky and steep, received the name of Cape North. It is situated nearly in the latitude of 68 deg. 56 min. N. and in the longitude of 180 deg. 51 min. E. The coast beyond it doubtless assumes a very westerly direction; for we could discern no land to the northward of it, though the horizon was there pretty clear. Wishing to see more of the coast to the westward, we tacked again, at two in the afternoon, thinking we should be able to weather Cape North; but finding we could not, the wind freshening, a thick fog arising, with much snow, and being apprehensive of the ice coming down upon us, the Commodore relinquished the design he had formed of plying to the westward, and again stood off shore. The season was now so far advanced, and the time when the frost generally sets in was so near, that Captain Cook did not think it consistent with prudence, to make any farther attempts to discover a passage into the Atlantic Ocean this year, in any direction, so small was the probability of success. His attention was now directed to the search of some place, where we might recruit our wood and water; and the object that principally occupied his thoughts was, how he should pass the winter, so as to make some improvements in navigation and geography, and, at the same time, be in a condition to return to the northward the ensuing summer, to prosecute his search of a passage into the Atlantic. Having stood off till our soundings were eighteen fathoms, we made sail to the eastward, along the coast, which, we were now pretty well convinced, could only be the continent of Asia. The wind blowing fresh, and there being, at the same time, a thick mist, and a very heavy fall of snow, it was requisite that we should proceed with particular caution: we therefore brought to, for a few hours, in the night. Early the next morning, the 30th, we steered such a course as we judged most likely to bring us in with the land, being guided, in a great measure, by the land; for the weather was extremely thick and gloomy, with incessant showers of snow. At ten o'clock we obtained a sight of the coast, which was at the distance of four miles, bearing S. W. Soon afterwards, our depth of water having decreased to seven fathoms, we hauled off. A very low point now bore S. S. W. distant two or three miles, to the eastward of which

which there seemed to be a narrow channel, that led into some water which we saw over the point. It is not improbable, that the lake above-mentioned communicates here with the sea. At noon, the mist dispersing, we had a view of the coast, which extended from S. E. to N. W. by W. Some parts of it were apparently higher than others; but the greatest part of it was rather low, with high land farther up the country. It was almost entirely covered with snow, which had fallen very lately. We ranged along the coast, at the distance of about two leagues, till ten o'clock in the evening, when we hauled off; but resumed our course early on the following morning, when we had another view of the coast, extending from W. to S. E. by S. At eight o'clock the eastern part bore S. and was found to be an island, which at twelve was four or five miles distant, bearing S. W. half S. It is of a moderate height, between four and five miles in circumference, with a steep rocky coast. It is situate in the lat. of 67 deg. 45 min. N. about three leagues from the continent; and is distinguished in the chart by the appellation of Burney's Island. The inland country about this part abounds with hills, some of which are of considerable elevation. The land in general was covered with snow, except a few spots on the coast, which still continued to be low, but somewhat less so than farther towards the W. During the two preceding days, the mean height of the mercury in the thermometer had been frequently below the freezing point, and in general, very little above it; inasmuch that the water in the vessels upon deck, was often covered with a sheet of ice. We continued to steer S. S. E. almost in the direction of the coast, till five o'clock in the afternoon, when we saw land bearing S. 50 deg. E. which proved to be a continuation of the coast. We hauled up for it without delay; and at ten in the evening, being a-bread of the eastern land, and doubtful of weathering it, we tacked, and made a board towards the W. till after one o'clock the next morning.

Tuesday, the 1st of September, we again made sail to the E. The wind was now very unsettled, continually varying from N. to N. E. Between eight and nine, the eastern extremity of the land was at the distance of six or seven miles, bearing S. by E. A head-land appeared at the same time, bearing E. by S. half S. and not long after we could discern the whole coast that lay between them, and a little island at some distance from it. The coast now in sight seemed to form several rocky points, that were connected by a low shore, without any appearance of an harbour. At a distance from the sea, many hills presented themselves to our view, the highest of which were involved in snow; in other respects, the whole country had a naked aspect. At seven o'clock in the evening, two points of land beyond the eastern head, opened off in the direction of S. 37 deg. E. Captain Cook was now convinced of what he had before imagined, that this was the country of the Tschutski, or the north-eastern coast of Asia; and that Beering had proceeded thus far in the year 1728; that is, to this head, which, according to Muller, is denominated Serdze Kamen, on account of a rock upon it, that is of the figure of a heart. There are indeed many high rocks on this cape, some one or other of which may perhaps be shaped like a heart. It is a promontory of tolerable height, with a steep rocky cliff fronting the sea. Its lat. is 67 deg. 3 min. N. and its long. 188 deg. 11 min. E. To the E. of it the coast is elevated and cold; but to the W. it is low, and extends N. W. by W. and N. N. W. and it is nearly of the same direction all the way to Cape North. The depth of water is every where the same at an equal distance from the shore; and this is likewise the case on the opposite coast of America. The greatest depth we met with, as we ranged along it, was 23 fathoms. During the night, or in thick foggy weather, the soundings are no bad guide to those who sail along either of these coasts. On the 2d, at eight in the morning, the most advanced land to the south-eastward, bore S. 25 deg. E. and, from this particular

point of view, had an insular appearance. But the thick showers of snow that fell in quick succession, and settled on the land, concealed from our sight at this time a great part of the coast. In a short time after, the sun, which we had not seen for near five days, broke out during the intervals between the showers, by which means the coast was in some degree freed from the fog, so that we obtained a sight of it, and found that the whole was connected. The wind was still northerly, the air was cold, and the mercury in the thermometer did not rise above 35 deg. and was sometimes not higher than 30 deg. At 12 o'clock our lat. was 66 deg. 37 min. N. Cape Serdze Kamen was 12 or 13 leagues distant, bearing N. 52 deg. W. the most southerly point of land that we had in our sight, bore S. 41 deg. E. our soundings were 22 fathoms; and the distance of the nearest part of the shore was about two leagues. The weather was now fair and bright: and as we were ranging along the coast, we saw several of the natives and some of their dwelling-places, which had the appearance of hillocks of earth. In the course of the evening we passed the Eastern Cape, or the point before-mentioned; from which the coast trends to the south-westward. This is the same point of land that we had passed on the 11th of the preceding month. Those who gave credit to Mr. Stæhlin's map, then supposed it to be the eastern point of his island Alafchka; but we were by this time convinced, that it is no other than the eastern promontory of Asia; and perhaps it is the upper Tschukotkoi Nofs, though the promontory which received that name from Beering, is situated further towards the S. W. Muller, in his map of the discoveries of the Russians, places the Tschukotkoi Nofs nearly in the lat. of 75 deg. N. and extends it somewhat to the eastward of this cape. But Captain Cook was of opinion, that he had no good authority for so doing. Indeed his own, or rather Dethneff's, account of the distance between the river Anadir and the Nofs, cannot well be reconciled with so northerly a position. For he says, that with the most favourable wind, a person may go by sea from the Nofs to the river Anadir in three whole days, and that the journey by land is very little longer. But Captain Cook, having hopes of visiting these parts again, deferred the discussion of this point to another opportunity. In the mean time, however, he concluded, as Beering had done before him, that this was the easternmost point of all Asia. It is a peninsula of considerable elevation, joined to the continent by a very low and apparently narrow isthmus. It has next the sea, a steep rocky cliff, and off the very point are several rocks resembling spires. It stands in the long. of 190 deg. 22 min. E. and in the lat. of 66 deg. 6 min. N. and is 13 leagues distant, in the direction of N. 53 deg. W. from Cape Prince of Wales, on the coast of America. The land about this promontory consists of valleys and hills. The former terminate at the sea in low shores, and the latter in steep rocky points. The hills appeared like naked rocks; but the valleys, though destitute of tree or shrub, were of a greenish hue.

Having passed the Cape, we steered S. W. half W. towards the northern point of St. Lawrence's Bay, in which our ships had anchored on the 10th of August. We reached it by eight o'clock the following morning, and saw some of the natives at the place where we had before seen them, as well as others on the opposite side of the bay. Not one of them, however, came off to us, which was rather remarkable, as the weather was sufficiently favourable, and as those whom we had lately visited had no reason to be displeased with us. These people are certainly the Tschutski, whom the Russians had not hitherto subdued; though it is manifest that they must carry on a traffic with the latter, either directly, or by the interposition of some neighbouring nation; as their being in possession of the spoons we saw among them, cannot otherwise be accounted for. The Bay of St. Lawrence is, at the entrance, at least five leagues in breadth, and about four leagues deep, growing narrower towards the bottom, where it seemed to be pretty well sheltered from the sea winds, provided there

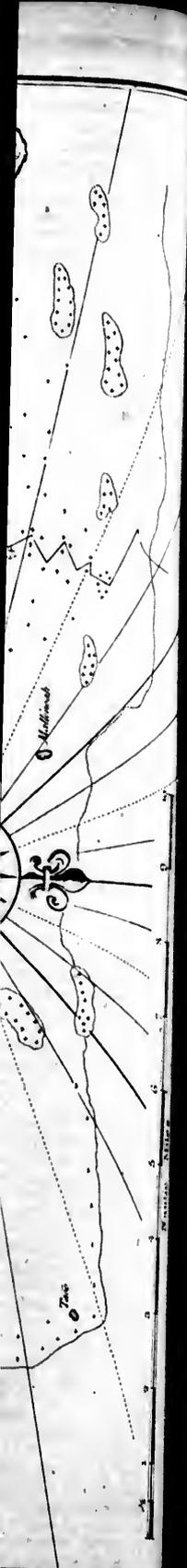
there is a competent depth of water for ships. The Commodore did not wait to examine it, though he was extremely desirous of finding a convenient harbour in those parts, to which he might resort in the succeeding spring. But he wished to meet with one where wood might be obtained, and he knew that none could be found here. From the southern point of this bay, which is situated in the lat. of 65 deg. 30 min. N. the coast trends W. by S. for the space of about nine leagues, and there seems to form a deep bay or river; or else the land in that part is so low that we could not discern it. In the afternoon, about one o'clock, we saw what was first supposed to be a rock, but it was found to be a dead whale, which some Asiatics had killed, and were then towing ashore. They seemed to endeavour to conceal themselves behind the fish, in order to avoid being seen by us. This, however, was unnecessary, for we proceeded on our course without taking notice of them. On the 4th, at break of day, we hauled to the north-westward, for the purpose of gaining a nearer view of the inlet seen the day before; but the wind, not long after, veering to that direction, the design was abandoned; and steering towards the S. along the coast, we passed two bays, each about six miles deep. The most northerly one is situate before a hill, which is rounder than any other we had observed upon the coast. There is an island lying before the other bay. It is a matter of doubt whether there is a sufficient depth of water for ships in either of these bays, as when we edged in for the shore, we constantly met with shoal water. This part of the country is extremely naked and hilly. In several places on the lower grounds, next the sea, were the habitations of the natives, near all of which were erected stages of bones, like those before-mentioned. This day, at noon, our lat. was 64 deg. 38 min. N. and our long. 188 deg. 15 min. E. the nearest part of the shore was at the distance of three or four leagues; and the most southern point of the continent in sight, bore S. 48 deg. W. By this time the wind had veered to the N. and blew a light breeze; the weather was clear, and the air sharp. The Commodore did not think proper to follow the direction of the coast, as he perceived that it inclined westward towards the gulph of Anadir, into which he had no motive for going. He therefore steered a southerly course, that he might have a sight of the isle of St. Lawrence, which had been discovered by Beering. This island was quickly seen by us, and at eight in the evening it bore S. 20 deg. E. supposed to bear the distance of 11 leagues. The most southerly point of the main land was at that time 12 leagues distant, bearing S. 83 deg. W. Captain Cook conjectured, that this was the point which is called by Beering the eastern point of Suchotki, or Cape Tschukotkoi: an appellation which he gave it with some propriety, because the natives, who said they were of the nation of the Tschutski, came off to him from this part of the coast. Its lat. is 64 deg. 13 min. N. and its long. 186 deg. 36 min. E. The more the Captain was convinced of his being at present upon the Asiatic coast, the more he was at a loss to reconcile his observations with Mr. Stæhlin's map of the New Northern Archipelago; and he could find no other method of accounting for so important a difference, than by supposing that he had mistaken some part of what Mr. Stæhlin denominates the island of Alafchka for the continent of America, and had missed the channel by which they are separated. But even on that supposition there would still have been a considerable variation. The Captain considered it as an affair of some consequence to clear up this point during the present season, that he might have only one object in view in the following one. And as these northerly islands were said to abound with wood, he had some hopes if he should find them, of procuring a competent supply of that article, of which we began to stand in great need. With this view he steered over for the coast of America; and the next day, about five o'clock in the afternoon, land was seen bearing S. three quarters E. which we imagined was Anderson's

island, or some other land near it. On Sunday, the 6th, at four in the morning, we had a sight of the American coast, near Sledge Island; and at six in the evening of the same day, that island was at the distance of about ten leagues, bearing N. 6 deg. E. and the most easterly land in view bore N. 49 deg. E. If any part of what Captain Cook had conjectured to be the coast of the American continent, could possibly be the island of Alafchka, it was that now in sight; in which case he must have missed the channel between it and the main land, by steering towards the W. instead of the E. after he had first fallen in with it. He was, therefore, at a loss where to go, for the purpose of clearing up these doubts. On the 7th, at eight o'clock in the evening, we had made a near approach to the land, Sledge Island bore N. 85 deg. W. about eight leagues distant; and the eastern part of the coast bore N. 70 deg. E. with elevated land in the direction of E. N. At this time we perceived a light on shore, and two canoes with people in them came off towards us. We brought to, in order to give them time to approach; but they refused all our tokens of amity, and kept at the distance of a quarter of a mile. We therefore left them, and proceeded along the coast. The next morning, at one o'clock, observing that the water shoaled pretty fast, we anchored in ten fathoms, and remained in that situation till day-light came on. We then weighed, and pursued our course along the coast, which trended E. and E. half S. At seven o'clock in the evening we were abreast of a point, situated in the long. of 197 deg. E. and in the lat. of 64 deg. 21 min. N. beyond which the coast assumes a more northerly direction. At eight this point, which received the appellation of Cape Darby, bore S. 64 deg. W. the most northern land we had in view, bore N. 34 deg. E. and the distance of the nearest part of the shore was one league. In this situation we let go our anchors in thirteen fathoms, over a muddy bottom.

On Wednesday the 9th, at break of day, we weighed, and made sail along the coast. We now saw land, which we supposed to be two islands; the one bearing E. the other S. 70 deg. E. Not long afterwards, we found ourselves near a coast covered with wood; a pleasing sight, to which we had not been lately accustomed. As we advanced northward, land was seen in the direction of N. E. half N. which proved a continuation of the coast, upon which we now were: we likewise perceived high land over the islands, apparently, at a considerable distance beyond them. This was imagined to be the continent, and the other land the isle of Alafchka; but it was already a matter of doubt, whether we should discover a passage between them, for the water gradually shoaled, as we proceeded further towards the N. In consequence of this, two boats were dispatched a-head to sound; and the Commodore ordered the Discovery, as she drew the least water, to lead, keeping nearly in the middle channel, between the coast and the most northerly island. In this manner we continued our course till three o'clock in the afternoon, when, having passed the island, our soundings did not exceed three fathoms and a half; and the Resolution once brought the mud up from the bottom. In no part of the channel could a greater depth of water be found, though we had sounded it from one side to the other; we therefore deemed it high time to return.

At this time a head-land on the western shore, to which the name of Bald-head was given, was about one league distant, bearing N. by W. The coast extended beyond it as far as N. E. by N. where it appeared to terminate in a point; behind which the coast of the high land that was seen over the islands stretched itself. The shore on the western side of Bald-head, forms a bay, in the bottom of which is a beach, where we perceived many huts of the natives. We continued to ply back during the whole night, and by day-break on the 10th had deepened our water six fathoms. At nine o'clock, when we were about three miles from the W. shore, Captain Cook, accompanied by Mr. King, went with two boats in search of wood and water. They landed in that part, where the coast projects into a bluff head,

On Sunday, the
 had a light of the
 and at six in the
 and was at the distance
 deg. E. and the most
 deg. E. If any part
 tured to be the coast
 possibly be the island
 light; in which case
 between it and the
 the W. instead of the
 it. He was, there-
 the purpose of clearing
 eight o'clock in the
 approach to the land.
 about eight leagues
 the coast bore N.
 in the direction of E.
 a light on shore, and
 came off towards us.
 we them time to ap-
 tokens of amity, and
 ter of a mile. We
 ded along the coast.
 k, observing that the
 thored in ten fathoms,
 till day-light came on.
 our course along the
 E. half S. At seven
 abreast of a point, situ-
 and in the lat. of 64
 h the coast assumes a
 light this point, which
 Darby, bore S. 62 deg.
 ad in view, bore N. 32
 nearest part of the shore
 on we let go out an-
 a muddy bottom.
 eak of day, we weighed,
 We now saw land,
 lands; the one bearing
 or long afterwards, we
 covered with wood; a
 not been lately accu-
 ward, land was seen in
 which proved a conti-
 we now were: we like
 the islands, apparently,
 them. This was un-
 the other land the isle of
 matter of doubt, whether
 between them, for the
 proceeded further to-
 of this, two boats were
 and the Commodore
 drew the least water, to
 dle channel, between
 y island. In this man-
 l three o'clock in the
 the island, our found-
 ms and a half, and the
 up from the bottom. In
 greater depth of water
 led it from one side to
 it high time to return.
 the western shore, to
 was given, was about
 by W. The coast ex-
 E. by N. where it ap-
 behind which the coast
 ver the islands stretched
 ern side of Bald-head,
 which is a beach, where
 natives. We continued
 light, and by day-break
 water six fathoms. At
 ut three miles from the
 mpanied by Mr. King,
 wood and water. They
 east projects into a bluff
 head,



head, composed of perpendicular strata of a dark blue rock, intermixed with glimmer and quartz. Adjoining to the beach is a narrow border of land, which was at this time covered with long grass, and where they observed some angelica. The ground, beyond this, rises with some abruptness; towards the top of this elevation they found a heath, that abounded with berries of various kinds: further onward the country was rather level, and thinly covered with small spruce trees, birch, and willows. They saw the tracks of foxes and deer upon the beach, in many parts of which, there was a great abundance of drift-wood: there was also no want of fresh water. Our gentlemen and their attendants having returned on board, the Commodore had thoughts of bringing the ships to an anchor here; but the wind then shifting to N. E. and blowing rather on this shore, he stretched over to the opposite one, expecting to find wood there likewise. At eight in the evening, we anchored near the southern end of the most northerly island, for such we then imagined it to be. The next morning, however, we found that it was a peninsula, connected with the continent by a low isthmus, on each side of which a bay is formed by the coast. We plied into the southernmost of these bays, and cast anchor again about twelve o'clock, in five fathoms water, over a muddy bottom; the point of the peninsula, to which the name of Cape Denbigh was given, being one league distant, in the direction of N. 68 deg. W. We observed on the peninsula, several of the natives, and one of them came off in a small canoe. Captain Cook gave this man a knife and some beads, with which he appeared to be well pleased; we made signs to him to bring us some provisions, upon which he instantly quit- ted us, and paddled towards the shore. Happening to meet another man coming off, who had two dried salmon, he got them from him; and when he returned to our ship he refused to give them to any body except Captain Cook: Some of our people fancied, that he asked for him under the name of Capitane; but in this they were perhaps mistaken. Others of the inhabitants came off soon afterwards, and gave us a few dried fish, in exchange for such trifles as we had to barter with them. They shewed no dislike for tobacco, but they were most desirous of knives. In the afternoon, Mr. Gore was dispatched to the peninsula, to procure wood and water; of the former of which articles we observed great plenty upon the beach. At the same time a boat from each of the ships was sent to round the bay; and at three o'clock, the wind freshening at N. E. we weighed anchor, and endeavoured to work further in, but that was quickly found to be impracticable, by reason of the shoals which extended entirely round the bay, to the distance of upwards of two miles from the shore, as the officers who had been sent out for the purpose of sounding reported. We therefore stood off and on with the ships, waiting for Lieutenant Gore, who returned about eight o'clock in the evening, with the launch loaded with wood. He informed the Commodore, that he had found but little fresh water, and that the wood could not be procured without difficulty, on account of the boats grounding at some distance from the beach. As this was the case, we stood back to the other shore, and the next morning at eight, all the boats and a detachment of men with an officer, were sent to get wood from the place where Captain Cook had landed on the 10th. After having continued for some time to stand off and on with the ships, we at length cast anchor in less than five fathoms, at the distance of half a league from the coast, whose southern point bore S. 26 deg. W. Cape Denbigh was about 26 miles distant, bearing S. 72 deg. E. Bald-head was nine leagues off, in the direction of N. 60 deg. E. and the island near the eastern shore, S. of Cape Denbigh, named by Captain Cook Belborough Island, was 15 leagues distant, bearing S. 52 deg. E. This being a very open road, and therefore not a secure station for the ships, the Commodore resolved not to wait till our stock of water was completed, as that would take up some time; but only to furnish both ships with wood, and afterwards to seek

No. 69.

a more commodious place for the former article. Our people carried off the drift-wood that lay on the beach, and performed that business with great expedition; for, as the wind blew along the shore, the boats were enabled to sail both ways. In the afternoon Captain Cook went on shore, and took a walk into the country, which in those parts where there was no wood, abounded with heath, and other plants, several of which had plenty of berries, all ripe. Scarce a single plant was in flower. The underwood, such as birch, alders, and willows, occasioned walking to be very troublesome among the trees, which were all spruce, and none of which exceeded seven or eight inches in diameter; but some were observed lying on the beach, that were above twice that size. All the drift-wood that we saw in these northern parts was fir.

Sunday the 13th, a family of the natives came near the spot where our people were occupied in taking off wood. The Captain saw only the husband and wife, and their child, besides a fourth person, who was the most deformed cripple he had ever seen. The husband was nearly blind, and neither he nor his wife were such well-looking people as many of those whom we had met with on this coast. Both of them had their lower lips perforated; and they were in possession of some glass-beads, resembling those we had seen before among their neighbours. Iron was the article that pleased them most. For four knives which had been formed out of an old iron-hoop, the Captain obtained from them near four hundred pounds weight of fish, that had been lately caught by them. Some of these were trout, and others were, with respect to size and taste, somewhat between a herring and a mullet. The Captain gave a few beads to the child, who was a female; upon which the mother immediately burst into tears, then the father, next after him the cripple, and at last, to add the finishing stroke to the concert, the child herself. This music, however, was not of long duration. Mr. King had on the preceding day been in company with the same family. His account of this interview is to the following purport: While he attended the wooding party, a canoe filled with natives approached, out of which an elderly man and woman (the husband and wife above-mentioned) came ashore. Mr. King presented a small knife to the woman, and promised to give her a much larger one in exchange for some fish. She made signs to him to follow her. After he had proceeded with them about a mile, the man fell down as he was crossing a stony beach, and happened to cut his foot very much. This occasioned Mr. King to stop; upon which the woman pointed to her husband's eyes, which were covered with a thick whitish film. He afterwards kept close to his wife, who took care to apprise him of the obstacles in his way. The woman had a child on her back, wrapped up in the hood of her jacket. After walking about two miles, they arrived at an open skin-boat, which was turned on one side, the convex part towards the wind, and was made to serve for the habitation of this family. Mr. King now performed a remarkable operation on the man's eyes. He was first desired to hold his breath, then to breathe on the distempered eyes, and afterwards to spit on them. The woman then took both the hands of Mr. King, and pressing them to the man's stomach, held them there for some time, while she recounted some melancholy history respecting her family; sometimes pointing to her husband, sometimes to her child, and at other times to the cripple, who was related to her. Mr. King purchased all the fish they had, which consisted of excellent salmon, salmon-trout, and mullet. These fish were faithfully delivered to the person he sent for them. The woman was short and squat, and her visage was plump and round. She wore a jacket made of deer skin, with a large hood, and had on a pair of wide boots. She was punctured from the lip to the chin. Her husband was well made, and about five feet two inches in height. His hair was black and short, and he had but little beard. His complexion was of a light copper cast. He had two holes in his lower lip, in which, however, he had no ornaments. The teeth of both of them were

7 D

black,

black, and appeared as if they had been filed down-level with the guns.

Before night, on Sunday the 13th, we had amply furnished the ships with wood, and had conveyed on board about a dozen tons of water to each. On the 14th a party was detached on shore to cut brooms, and likewise the branches of spruce-trees for brewing beer. About twelve o'clock all our people were taken on board, for the wind freshening had raised so heavy a surf on the beach, that our boats could not continue to land without extreme difficulty and danger. As doubts were still entertained whether the coast, upon which we now were, belonged to an island, or to the continent of America, lieutenant King was dispatched by the Commodore, with two boats, well manned and armed, to make such a search as might tend to remove all difference of opinion on the subject. He was instructed to proceed towards the north as far as the extreme point seen on Wednesday the 9th, or a little further, if he should find it necessary; to land there, and, from the heights, endeavour to discover whether the land he was then upon, imagined to be the island of Alaschka, was really an island, or was connected with the land to the eastward, supposed to be the American continent. If it proved to be an island, he was to examine the depth of water in the channel between it and the continent, and which way the flood tide came: but, if he should find the two lands united, he was to return immediately to the ship. He was directed not to be absent longer than four or five days; and it was also mentioned in his instructions, that, if any unforeseen or unavoidable accident should force our ships off the coast, the rendezvous was to be at the harbour of Samganoodha. On Tuesday the 15th, the ships removed over to the bay on the south eastern side of Cape Denbigh, where we cast anchor in the afternoon. Not long after, several of the inhabitants came off in canoes, and gave us some dried salmon in exchange for trifling articles. Early the next morning, nine men, each in a separate canoe, paid us a visit, with the sole view of gratifying their curiosity. They approached the ship with caution, and drawing up abreast of each other, under our stern, favoured us with a long; while one of their number made many ludicrous motions with his hands and body, and another beat upon a sort of drum. There was nothing savage, either in the song, or the gestures with which it was accompanied. There seemed to be no difference, either with respect to size or features, between these people, and those whom we had seen on every other part of the coast, except King George's Sound. Their dress, which chiefly consisted of the skins of deer, was made after the same mode; and they had adopted the practice of perforating their lower lips, and affixing ornaments to them. The habitations of these Americans were situated close to the beach. They consist merely of a sloping roof, without any side-walls, formed of logs, and covered with earth and grass. The floor is likewise laid with logs. The entrance is at one end, and the fire-place is just within it. A small hole is made near the door of the hut, for the purpose of letting out the smoke. A party of men was dispatched, this morning, to the peninsula for brooms and spruce. Half the remainder of the people of both ships were, at the same time, permitted to go ashore and gather berries. These returned on board about twelve o'clock, and the other half then landed for the same purpose. The berries found here were hurtle-berries, heath-berries, partridge-berries, and wild currant-berries. Captain Cook also went ashore himself, and took a walk over part of the peninsula. He met with very good grass in several places, and scarcely observed a single spot on which some vegetable was not growing. The low land by which this peninsula is united to the continent, abounds with narrow creeks, and likewise with ponds of water, several of which were at this time frozen over. There were numbers of buffaloes and geese, but they were so shy, that it was impossible to get within musquet-shot of them. Some snipes were also seen; and, on the higher grounds, were partridges of two species; where there was wood, musquitoes were numerous. Some of

the officers, who went further into the country than Captain Cook did, met with some of the natives of both sexes, who treated them with civility and kindness. The Commodore was of opinion, that this peninsula had been an island in some distant period; for there were marks of the sea having formerly flowed over the isthmus; and even at present it appeared to be kept out by a bank of sand, stones, and wood, which the waves had thrown up. It was manifest from this bank, that the land here encroached upon the sea, and it was not difficult to trace its gradual formation.

Lieutenant King returned from his expedition about seven o'clock this evening. He had set out at eight o'clock at night, on the 14th. The crews of the boats rowed without intermission towards the land, till one in the morning of the 15th. They then set their sails, and stood across the bay, which the coast forms to the westward of Bald-Head. They afterwards, about three o'clock, again made use of their oars, and, by two in the afternoon, had got within two miles of Bald-Head, under the lee of the high land. At that time all the men in the boat belonging to the Resolution, except two, were so oppressed with fatigue and sleep, that Mr. King's utmost endeavours to make them put on were perfectly ineffectual. They, at length, were so far exhausted as to drop their oars, and fall asleep at the bottom of the boat. In consequence of this, Mr. King, and two gentlemen who were with him, were obliged to lay hold of the oars; and they landed, a little after three o'clock, between Bald-Head and a point that projects to the eastward. Mr. King, upon his landing, ascended the heights, from which he could see the two coasts join, and that the inlet terminated in a small creek or river, before which there were banks of sand or mud, and in every part shoal water. The land, for some distance towards the north, was low and swampy; then it rose in hills; and the perfect junction of those, on each side of the inlet, was traced without the least difficulty. From the elevated situation in which Mr. King took his survey of the Sound, he could discern many spacious valleys, with rivers flowing through them, well wooded, and bounded by hills of a moderate height. One of the rivers towards the N. W. seemed to be considerable; and he was inclined to suppose, from its direction, that it discharged itself into the sea at the head of the bay. Some of his people, penetrating beyond this into the country, found the trees to be of a larger size the further they proceeded. To this inlet Captain Cook gave the name of Norton's Sound, in honour of Sir Fletcher Norton, now Lord Granley; a near relation of Mr. King. It extends northward as far as the latitude of 64 deg. 55 min. N. The bay, wherein our ships were now at anchor, is situated on the south-eastern side of it, and is denominated Chacktoole by the natives. It is not a very excellent station, being exposed to the S. and S. W. winds. Nor is a harbour to be met with in all this Sound. We were so fortunate, however, as to have the wind from the N. E. and the N. during the whole time of our continuance here, with very fine weather. This afforded an opportunity of making a great number of lunar observations, the mean result of which gave 197 deg. 13 min. E. as the longitude of the anchoring place on the western-side of the Sound, while its latitude was 64 deg. 31 min. N. With respect to the tides, the night flood rose two or three feet, and the day flood was scarcely perceivable. Captain Cook being now perfectly convinced, that Mr. Stehlin's map was extremely erroneous, and having retraced the continent of America to the space which that gentleman had occupied with his imaginary island of Alaschka, thought it now high time to quit these northerly regions, and retire to some place for the winter, where he might obtain provisions and refreshments. He did not consider Petropaulowska, or the harbour of St. Peter and St. Paul in Kamtschatka, as likely to furnish a sufficient supply. He had likewise other reasons for not going thither at present; the principal of which was, his great unwillingness to remain inactive for six or seven months, which would have been the consequence of passing the winter

winter in any of these northern countries. He at length concluded, that no situation was so convenient for our purpose as the Sandwich Islands. To them, therefore, he formed a resolution of repairing. But a supply of water being necessary before he could execute that design, he determined, with a view of procuring this essential article, to search the coast of America for a harbour, by proceeding along it to the southward. If he should not meet with success in that search, his intention was to reach Samganooha, which was appointed for our place of rendezvous, in case the ships should happen to separate.

On Thursday, the 17th, in the morning we weighed anchor with a light easterly breeze, and steering to the southward, attempted to pass within Beborough Island; but, though it is six or seven miles distant from the continent, we were prevented, by meeting with shoal water. Having but little wind all the day, we did not pass that island before it was dark, and the night was spent under an easy sail. On the 18th, at day break, we resumed our progress along the coast. At noon, our soundings were no more than five fathoms. Beborough Island, at this time, bore N. 42 deg. E. the most southerly land in sight, which also proved to be an island, bore S. 66 deg. W. the passage between it and the continent, was in the direction of S. 40 deg. W. and the nearest land was at the distance of about two miles. We continued to steer for this passage, till the boats which were a-head made the signal for having no more than three fathoms water. In consequence of this, we hauled without the island, and displayed the signal for the Resolution's boat to keep between the shore and the ships. This island, to which the name of Stuart's Island was given, lies in the latitude of 63 deg. 35 min. N. and is 17 leagues distant from Cape Denbigh, in the direction of S. 27 deg. W. It is six or seven leagues in circumference. Though some parts of it are of a moderate height, yet, in general, it is low, with some rocks off the western part. The greatest part of the coast of the continent is low land, but we perceived high land up the country. It forms a point, opposite the island, which was distinguished by the name of Cape Stephens, and is situated in the latitude of 63 deg. 33 min. N. and in the longitude of 197 deg. 41 min. E. Some drift wood was observed on the shores, both of the island and of the continent; but not a single tree was seen growing upon either. Vessels might anchor, upon occasion, between the continent and the N. E. side of this island, in a depth of five fathoms, sheltered from the easterly, westerly, and southerly winds. But this station would be entirely exposed to the northerly winds, the land, in that direction, being too remote to afford any security. Before we reached Stuart's Island, we passed two little islands, situate between us and the main land; and as we ranged along the coast, several of the natives made their appearance upon the shore, and, by signs, seemed to invite us to approach.

We were no sooner without the island, than we steered S. by W. for the most southern part of the continent in sight, till eight in the evening, when the depth of water having decreased from six fathoms to less than four, we tacked and stood to the northward into five fathoms, and then passed the night in standing off and on. At the time we tacked, the southernmost point of land above mentioned, which we named Point Shallow Water, bore S. half E. at the distance of seven leagues. On the 19th, at day break, we resumed our southerly course; but shoal water soon obliged us to haul more to the westward. We were at length so far advanced upon the bank, that we could not hold a N. N. W. course, as we sometimes met with only four fathoms. The wind blowing fresh at E. N. E. it was now high time to endeavour to find a greater depth of water, and to quit a coast upon which we could no longer navigate with safety. We therefore hauled the wind to the northward, and the water gradually increased in depth to eight fathoms. At this time, we were about twelve leagues distant from the continent, and nine to the W. of Stuart's Island. We saw no land to the southward of Point Shallow Water, which Captain

Cook judged to lie in the latitude of 63 deg. N. so that between this latitude and Shoal Neffs, in latitude 64 deg. the coast has not been explored. It is probably accessible only to boats, or very small vessels; or, if there are channels for vessels of greater magnitude, it would require some time to find them. From the main head, the sea within us appeared to be chequered with shoals; the water was very muddy and discoloured, and much fresher than at any of the places where our ships had lately anchored. From this we inferred that a considerable river runs into the sea, in this unexplored part. After we had got into eight fathoms water, we steered to the westward, and afterwards more southerly, for the land discovered by us on the 5th of September, which at noon on the 20th, bore S. W. by W. at the distance of ten or eleven leagues. We had now a fresh gale at N. and, at intervals, showers of hail and snow, with a pretty high sea. To the land before us, the Commodore gave the appellation of Clerke's Island. It stands in the latitude of 63 deg. 15 min. and in the longitude of 190 deg. 30 min. It seemed to be an island of considerable extent, in which are several hills, all connected by low ground, so that it looks, at a distance, like a group of islands. Near its eastern part is a little island, which is remarkable for having on it three elevated rocks. Both the greater island, and this smaller one, were inhabited. In the afternoon, about six o'clock, we reached the northern point of Clerke's Island; and having ranged along its coast till dark, we brought to during the night. Early the next morning, we again stood in for the coast, and proceeded along it in quest of an harbour, till twelve o'clock, when finding no probability of success, we left it and steered S. S. W. for the land discovered by us on the 29th of July; having a fresh gale at N. accompanied with showers of snow and sleet.

Wednesday the 23d, at day break, the land above mentioned made its appearance, bearing S. W. at the distance of six or seven leagues. From this point of view it resembled a cluster of islands; but it was found to be only one, of about thirty miles in extent, in the direction of N. W. and S. E. the south-eastern extremity being Cape Upright, which we have mentioned before. The island is narrow, particularly at the low necks of land by which the hills are connected. Captain Cook afterwards found, that it was entirely unknown to the Russians, and therefore, considering it as a discovery of our own, he named it Gore's Island. It appeared to be barren and destitute of inhabitants, at least we saw none. Nor did we observe such a number of birds about it, as we had seen when we first discovered it. But we perceived some sea-otters, an animal which we had not found to the N. of this latitude. About twelve miles from Cape Upright, in the direction of S. 72 deg. W. stands a small island, whose lofty summit terminates in several pinnacle-rocks, for which reason it obtained the name of Pinnacle Island. At two o'clock P. M. after we had passed Cape Upright, we steered S. E. by S. for Samganooha, with a gentle breeze at N. N. W. being resolved to lose no more time in searching for an harbour among islands, which we now began to suspect had no existence; at least, not in the latitude and longitude in which they have been placed by modern delineators of charts. On the 24th in the evening, the wind veered to S. W. and S. and increased to a fresh gale. We continued our easterly course till eight in the morning of the 25th, when in the longitude of 191 deg. 10 min. and in the latitude of 58 deg. 32 min. we tacked and stood to the westward; soon after which, the gale increasing, we were reduced to two courses, and close-reefed main-top-sails. In a short time after, the Resolution sprung a leak, under the starboard buttock, which was so considerable, as to keep one pump constantly employed. We would not venture to put the ship upon the other tack, from the apprehension of getting upon the shoals that lie to the N. W. of Cape Newenham; but continued to steer towards the W. till six in the evening of Saturday the 26th, when we wore and stood to the eastward; and then the leak gave us no farther trouble. This proved, and

that it was above the water-line, which gave us great satisfaction. The gale had now ceased, but the wind continued at S. and S. W. for some days longer.

On Friday the 2nd of October, at day break, we saw the isle of Oonalashka, in a S. E. direction. But as the land was obscured by a thick haze, we were not certain with respect to our situation till noon, when the observed latitude determined it. We hauled into a bay, ten miles to the westward of Samganoodha, known by the name of Egoochshac; but finding very deep water, we speedily left it. The natives visited us at different times, bringing with them dried salmon, and other fish, which our sailors received in exchange for tobacco. Only a few days before, every ounce of tobacco that remained in the ship, had been distributed among them, and the quantity was not half sufficient to answer their demands. Notwithstanding this, so thoughtless and improvident a being is an English sailor, that they were as profuse in making their bargains, as if we had arrived at a port in Virginia; by which means, in less than two days, the value of this commodity was lowered above a thousand per cent. The next day, at one o'clock in the afternoon, we anchored in the harbour of Samganoodha, and, on the morning of the 4th, the carpenters were employed in ripping off the sheathing of and under the wale of the *Resolution* on the starboard side. Many of the seams were found entirely open; it was therefore not to be wondered at, that so much water had got into the ship. We cleared the fish and spirit rooms, and the after-hold; and disposed things in such a manner, that, in case of any future leaks of the same nature, the water might find its way to the pumps. Besides this work, and completing our stock of water, we cleared the fore-hold, and took in a quantity of ballast.

The vegetables we had met with when we were here before, were now, for the most part, in a state of decay. There being great plenty of berries, one third of the people, by turns, had permission to go ashore and gather them. Considerable quantities of them were also brought to us by the inhabitants. If there were any seeds of the scurvy, among the people of either ship, these berries, and the use of spruce beer, which they were allowed to drink every other day, effectually eradicated them. We likewise procured abundance of fish; at first, chiefly salmon, both fresh and dried, which the natives brought us. Some of the fresh salmon was in the highest perfection; but there was one sort, which, from the figure of its head, we called hook-nosed, that was but indifferent. Drawing the seine several times, at the head of the bay, we caught many salmon trout, and a halibut that weighed 254 pounds. We afterwards had recourse to hooks and lines. A boat was sent out every morning, which seldom returned without eight or ten halibut, a quantity more than sufficient to serve all our people. These fish were excellent, and there were few who did not prefer them to salmon. Thus we not only obtained a supply of fish for present consumption, but had some to carry with us to sea. On the 8th, Captain Cook received, by the hands of a native of Oonalashka, named Derramoushk, a very singular present, considering the place we were in. It was a rye loaf, or rather a pye in the form of a loaf, as it enclosed some salmon, well seasoned with pepper. This man had brought a similar present for Captain Clerke, and a note for each of the Captains, written in a character which none of us understood. It was natural to imagine, that these two presents were from some Russians now in our neighbourhood, and therefore the Captains sent, by the same messenger, to these unknown friends, a few bottles of rum, wine and porter, which they supposed would be highly acceptable. Captain Cook also sent, in company with Derramoushk; Corporal Lediard, of the marines, an intelligent man, for the purpose of gaining farther information; with orders, that if he met with any Russians, he should endeavour to make them understand, that we were Englishmen, the friends and allies of their nation.

Saturday the 10th, Corporal Lediard returned with three Russian seamen, or furriers, who with several

others resided at Egoochshac, where they had some store-houses, a dwelling-house, and a sloop of about 30 tons burthen. One of these Russians was either Malter or Mate of this vessel. They were all three intelligent well-behaved men, and extremely ready to give us all the information we could desire. But for want of an interpreter, we found it very difficult to understand each other. They appeared to have a perfect knowledge of the attempts which their countrymen had made to navigate the Frozen Ocean, and of the discoveries that had been made from Kamtschatka, by Beering, Tcherikoff, and Spangenberg. But they had not the least idea to what part of the world Mr. Stæhlin's map referred, when it was laid before them. When Captain Cook pointed out Kamtschatka, and some other places upon this map, they asked him whether he had seen the islands there represented; and, on his answering in the negative, one of them put his finger upon a part of the map, where a number of islands are laid down, and said that he had cruised there in search of land, but could never meet with any. The Captain then shewed them his own chart, and found that they were strangers to every part of the coast of America, except that which lies opposite this island. One of these men said, that he had been with Beering in his American voyage; but he must then have been very young; for even now, at the distance of 37 years, he had not the appearance of being aged. Never was greater respect paid to the memory of any eminent person, than by these men to that of Beering. The trade in which they are engaged is very advantageous, and its being undertaken and extended to the eastward of Kamtschatka, was the immediate result of the second voyage of that distinguished navigator, whose misfortunes proved the source of much private benefit to individuals, and of public utility to the Russian empire. And yet, if his distresses had not accidentally carried him to the island which bears his name, where he ended his life, and from whence the remainder of his ship's crew brought back specimens of its various furs, the Russians would probably have undertaken no future voyages, which could lead them to make discoveries in this sea, towards the American coast. Indeed, after his time, their ministry seem to have paid less attention to this object; and for what discoveries have been since made, we are principally indebted to the enterprising spirit of private merchants, encouraged, however, by the superintending care of the court of Petersburg. The three Russians having remained all night with the Commodore, visited Captain Clerke the following morning, and then departed, perfectly satisfied with the reception they had met with. They promised to return in a few days, and bring with them a chart of the islands situate between Kamtschatka and Oonalashka. In the evening of the 14th, while Captain Cook and Mr. Webber were at a village, not far from Samganoodha, a Russian landed there, who proved to be the principal person among his countrymen in this and the adjacent isles. His name was Erasim Gregoroff Sin Ilimyloff. He arrived in a canoe that carried three persons, attended by twenty or thirty smaller canoes, each conducted by one man. Immediately after landing, they constructed a small tent for Ilimyloff, of materials which they had brought with them, and they afterwards made others for themselves, of their canoes and paddles, which they covered with grass. Ilimyloff having invited the Captain and Mr. Webber into his tent, set before them some dried salmon and berries. He appeared to be a man of sense; and the Captain felt no small mortification in not being able to converse with him, except by signs, with the assistance of figures, and other characters. The Captain requested him to favour him with his company on board the next day, and accordingly he came with all his attendants. He had indeed moved into the neighbourhood of our station, for the express purpose of waiting upon us. The Commodore was in hopes of receiving from him the chart which his three countrymen had promised, but he was disappointed. However, Ilimyloff assured him he should have it, and he kept his word. The

where they had some
and a sloop of about 10
Russians was either Master
were all three intelligent
nely ready to give us all
fire. But for want of an
y difficult to understand
to have a perfect know-
their countrymen had made
n, and of the discoveries
Kamtschatka, by Beering,
g. But they had not the
world Mr. Stahlin's map
ore them. When Captain
ca, and some other places
him whether he had seen
; and, on his answering
n put his finger upon a
umber of islands are laid
cruised there in search of
with any. The Captain
hart, and found that they
of the coast of America,
sistie this island. One of
been with Beering in his
ust then have been very
istance of 37 years, he had
nged. Never was greater
y of any eminent person,
Beering. The trade in
ery advantageous, and its
ended to the eastward of
mediate result of the second
navigator, whose misfor-
much private benefit to
lity to the Russian empire,
I not accidentally carried
his name, where he ended
e remainder of his ship's
s of its val - turs, the
ve under - o future
em to ma - cries in
can coast. Indeed, after
to have paid less attention
discoveries have been since
debt to the enterprising
encouraged, however, by
r - court of Petersburg,
ained all night with the
n Clerke the following
perfectly satisfied with the
s. They promised to re-
ng with them a chart of
Kamtschatka and Oona-
the 14th, while Captain
at a village, not far from
led there, who proved to
ng his countrymen in this
name was Erasmus Grego-
ed in a canoe that carried
venty or thirty smaller ca-
man. Immediately after
small tent for Ismyloff,
brought with them, and
or themselves, of their ca-
covered with grass. If
Captain and Mr. Webber
n some dried salmon and
a man of sense; and the
ation in not being able to
signs, with the assistance
s. The Captain requested
mpany on board the next
e with all his attendants.
he neighbourhood of our
ose of waiting upon us
es of receiving from him
untrymen had promised,
however, Ismyloff assured
he kept his word. The
Captain

Captain found him very well acquainted with the geo-
graphy of those parts, and with all the discoveries which
been made in this quarter by the Russians. On see-
modern maps, he instantly pointed out their er-
he said he had accompanied Lieutenant Syndo,
or (as he called him) Synd, in his northern ex-
pedition; and, according to his account, they did
not proceed farther than the Tschukotkoi Nofs,
or rather than St. Lawrence's Bay; for he pointed on
our chart to the very place where Captain Cook landed.
From thence he said they went to an island in the lat.
of 63 deg. N. upon which they did not land. He did
not recollect the name of that island; but the Captain
conjectured, that it was the same with that to which
the appellation of Clerke's Island had been given. To
what place Synd repaired afterwards, or in what parti-
cular manner he employed the two years, during which,
according to Ismyloff, his researches lasted, he was ei-
ther unable or unwilling to inform us. Perhaps he did
not comprehend our enquiries on this point; and yet,
in almost every other thing, we found means to make
him understand us. This inclined us to suspect, that
he had not really been in this expedition, notwith-
standing what he had asserted. Not only Ismyloff, but
also the others affirmed, that they were totally un-
acquainted with the American continent to the north-
ward; and that neither Lieutenant Synd, nor any other
Russian, had seen it of late years. They called it by
the same name which Mr. Stahlin has ascribed to his
large island, that is Alisichka. According to the in-
formation we obtained from Ismyloff and his country-
men, the Russians have made several attempts to gain
a footing upon that part of the North American con-
tinent, that lies contiguous to Oonalaska and the adja-
cent islands, but have constantly been repulsed by the
inhabitants, whom they represent as a very treacherous
people. They made mention of two or three Captains,
or chief men, who had been murdered by them; and
some of the Russians shewed us wounds, which they de-
clared they had received there. Ismyloff also informed us,
that in the year 1773, an expedition had been undertaken
into the Frozen Ocean in sledges, over the ice, to three
large islands that are situate opposite the mouth of the
river Kovyma. But a voyage which he said he himself
had performed, engaged our attention more than any
other. He told us that on the 12th of May, 1771, he
sailed from Bolcherezik, in Kamtschatka, in a Russian
vessel to Mareekan, one of the Kurile islands, where there
is an harbour, and a Russian settlement. From this
island he proceeded to Japan, where his continuance
appears to have been but short; for, as soon as the Ja-
panese knew that he and his companions professed the
Christian faith, they made signs for them to depart;
but did not, so far as we could understand him, offer
any insult or violence. From Japan he repaired to
Canton, in China; and from thence, in a French ship
to France. He then travelled to Peterburgh, and was
afterwards sent out again to Kamtschatka. We
could not learn what became of the vessel in which he
first embarked, nor what was the principal intention
of the voyage. His being unable to speak one word
of the French language, rendered this story rather sus-
picious; he seemed clear, however, as to the times of
his arrival at the different places, and of his departure
from them, which he put down in writing. The next
morning (Friday the 16th) he offered Captain Cook a
sea-otter skin, which he said was worth 80 roubles at
Kamtschatka. The Captain, however, thought proper
to decline the offer; but accepted of some dried fish,
and several baskets of the lily, or faranne root. In the
afternoon, Ismyloff, after having dined with Captain
Clerke, left us with all his retinue, but promised to re-
turn in a few days. Accordingly, on the 19th, he
paid us another visit, bringing with him the charts
above-mentioned, which he permitted Captain Cook
to copy, and the contents of which are the foundation
of the following remarks.

These charts were two in number, they were both
manuscripts, and bore every mark of authenticity. One
of them comprehended the Penhinsikian sea; the coast

No. 69.

of Tartary, as low as the lat. of 41 deg. N. the Kurile
Islands, and the peninsula of Kamtschatka. Since this
chart had been made, Wawseelee Irkechhoff, a naval
captain, explored, in the year 1758, the coast of Tar-
tary, from Okotfk, and the river Amur, to Japan, or 41
deg. of northern lat. We were informed by Mr. Ismy-
loff, that a great part of the sea-coast of Kamtschatka
had been corrected by himself; and he described the
instrument used by him for that purpose, which must
have been a theodolite. He also told us, that there
were only two harbours proper for shipping, on all the
eastern coast of Kamtschatka, viz. the bay of Awatka,
and the river Olutora, in the bottom of the gulph of
the same name; that there was not one harbour on its
western coast; and that Yamk was the only one, except
Okotfk, on all the western side of the Penhinsikian sea,
till we come to the river Amur. The Kurile Islands
contain but one harbour, and that is on the N. E. side
of Mareekan; where, as we have already mentioned,
the Russians have a settlement. The other chart com-
prehended all the discoveries that the Russians had
made to the eastward of Kamtschatka, towards Amer-
ica. That part of the American coast, with which
Tscherikoff fell in, is laid down in this chart between
the lat. of 58 deg. and 58 and an half deg. N. and 75
deg. of eastern long. from Okotfk, or 218 and an half
deg. from Greenwich; and the place where Beering
anchored in 59 and an half deg. of lat. and 63 and an
half deg. of long. from Okotfk, or 207 deg. from Green-
wich. To say nothing of the long, which may, from
several causes, be erroneous, the lat. of the coast disco-
vered by Beering and Tscherikoff, particularly that part
of it which was discovered by the latter, differs consi-
derably from Mr. Muller's chart. Whether the chart
now produced by Ismyloff, or that of Muller, be most
erroneous in this respect, it may be difficult to deter-
mine. According to Ismyloff's account, neither the
number nor the situation of the islands which are dis-
perfed between 52 deg. and 55 deg. of lat. in the space
between Kamtschatka and America, is properly ascer-
tained. He struck out about a third of them, assuring
us that they did not exist; and he considerably altered
the situation of others, which he said was necessary, from
the observations which he himself had made; and there
was no reason to entertain a doubt about this. As these
islands are nearly under the same parallel, different na-
vigators, misled by their different reckonings, might
easily mistake one island, or cluster of islands for ano-
ther; and imagine they had made a new discovery,
when they had only found old ones; in a position some-
what different from that which their former visitors had
assigned to them. The isles of St. Theodore, St. Ste-
phen, St. Abraham, St. Macarius, Seduction Island, and
several others, which are represented in Mr. Muller's
chart, were not to be found in this now produced to
us; nay, Ismyloff and the other Russians assured Cap-
tain Cook, that he had been frequently sought for
without effect. Nevertheless, it is difficult to believe,
that Mr. Muller could place them in his chart without
some authority. Captain Cook, however, confiding in
the testimony of these people, whom he thought com-
petent witnesses, omitted them in his chart; and made
such corrections respecting the other islands, as he had
reason to think were necessary.

We shall now proceed to give some account of the
islands, beginning with those which are nearest to
Kamtschatka, and computing the long. from the har-
bour of Petropaulowka, in the bay of Awatka. The
first is Beering's island, in 55 deg. of northern lat. and
6 deg. of eastern long. At the distance of 10 leagues
from the southern extremity of this, in the direction of
E. by S. or E. S. E. stands Maidenoi Ostroff, or the
Copper Island. The next island is Atakou, in the lat.
of 52 deg. 45 min. and in the long. of 15 deg. or 16
deg. The extent of this island is about 18 leagues in
the direction of E. and W. and it is perhaps the same
land which Beering fell in with, and to which he gave
the name of Mount St. John. We next come to a
cluster of six or more islands; two of which, Amluk and
Atghka, are of considerable extent, and each of them

7 E

hag

has a good harbour. The middle of this group lies in the lat. of 52 deg. 30 min. and 28 deg. of long. from the bay of Awatka, and its extent is about four degrees in the direction of E. and W. These are the isles that Lamyloff said were to be removed four degrees to the eastward. In the situation they have in Captain Cook's chart, was a group, comprehending 10 little islands, which we were informed were entirely to be struck out; and also two islands, situate between them and the group to which Oonalashka appertains. In the place of these two, an island, named Amoghta, was introduced.

The situation of many of these islands may, perhaps, be erroneously laid down. But the position of the largest group, of which Oonalashka is one of the most considerable islands, is free from such errors. Most of the islands that compose this cluster, were seen by us; their long. and lat. were therefore determined with tolerable accuracy; particularly the harbour of Samganoodha, in Oonalashka, which must be considered as a fixed point. This group may be said to extend as far as Halibut Isles, which are forty leagues distant from Oonalashka, towards the E. N. E. Within these isles, a passage, communicating with Bristol Bay, was marked in Lamyloff's chart, which converts about 15 leagues of the coast, that Captain Cook had supposed to be part of the continent, into an island, named Oonecmak. This passage might easily escape us, being, as we were informed, extremely narrow, shallow, and only to be navigated through with boats, or vessels of very small burthen. From the chart, as well as from the testimony of Lamyloff and his countrymen, it appears, that this isle, as far as the Russians have made any discoveries, or have extended themselves, since the time of Beering. They all affirmed, that no persons of that nation had settled themselves so far to the eastward, as the place where the natives gave the note to Captain Clerke; which being delivered to Lamyloff for his perusal, he said, that it had been written at Oomanak. From him we procured the name of Kodiak, the largest of Schumagin's Islands; for it had no name assigned to it upon the chart which he produced. It may not be improper to mention, that no names were put to the islands which Lamyloff said were to be struck out of the chart; and Captain Cook considered this as some confirmation that they have no existence. The American continent is here called by the Russians, as well as by the islanders, Alashka; which appellation, though it properly belongs only to that part which is contiguous to Oonecmak, is made use of by them when speaking of the American continent in general. This is all the intelligence we obtained from these people, respecting the geography of this part of the globe; and perhaps this was all the information they were able to give. For they repeatedly assured Captain Cook, that they knew of no other islands, besides those which were represented upon this chart, and that no Russian had ever visited any part of the American continent to the northward, except that which is opposite the country of the Tschutkia. If Mr. Stæhlin was not greatly imposed upon, what could induce him to publish a map so singularly erroneous as his map of the New northern Archipelago, in which many of these islands are jumbled together without the least regard to truth? Nevertheless, he himself styles it "a very accurate little map."

Lamyloff continued with us till the evening of the 21st, when he took his final leave. Captain Cook entrusted to his care a letter to the Lords of the Admiralty, enclosing a chart of all the northern coasts we had visited. Lamyloff said there would be an opportunity of transmitting it to Kamtschatka, or Okotsk, in the course of the succeeding spring; and that it would be at Peterburg the following winter. He gave the Captain a letter to Major Behm, Governor of Kamtschatka, who resides at Bolcheretsk, in that peninsula; and another to the commanding officer at Petropaulowka. This gentleman seemed to possess abilities that might entitle him to a higher station than that in which we found him. He had considerable knowledge

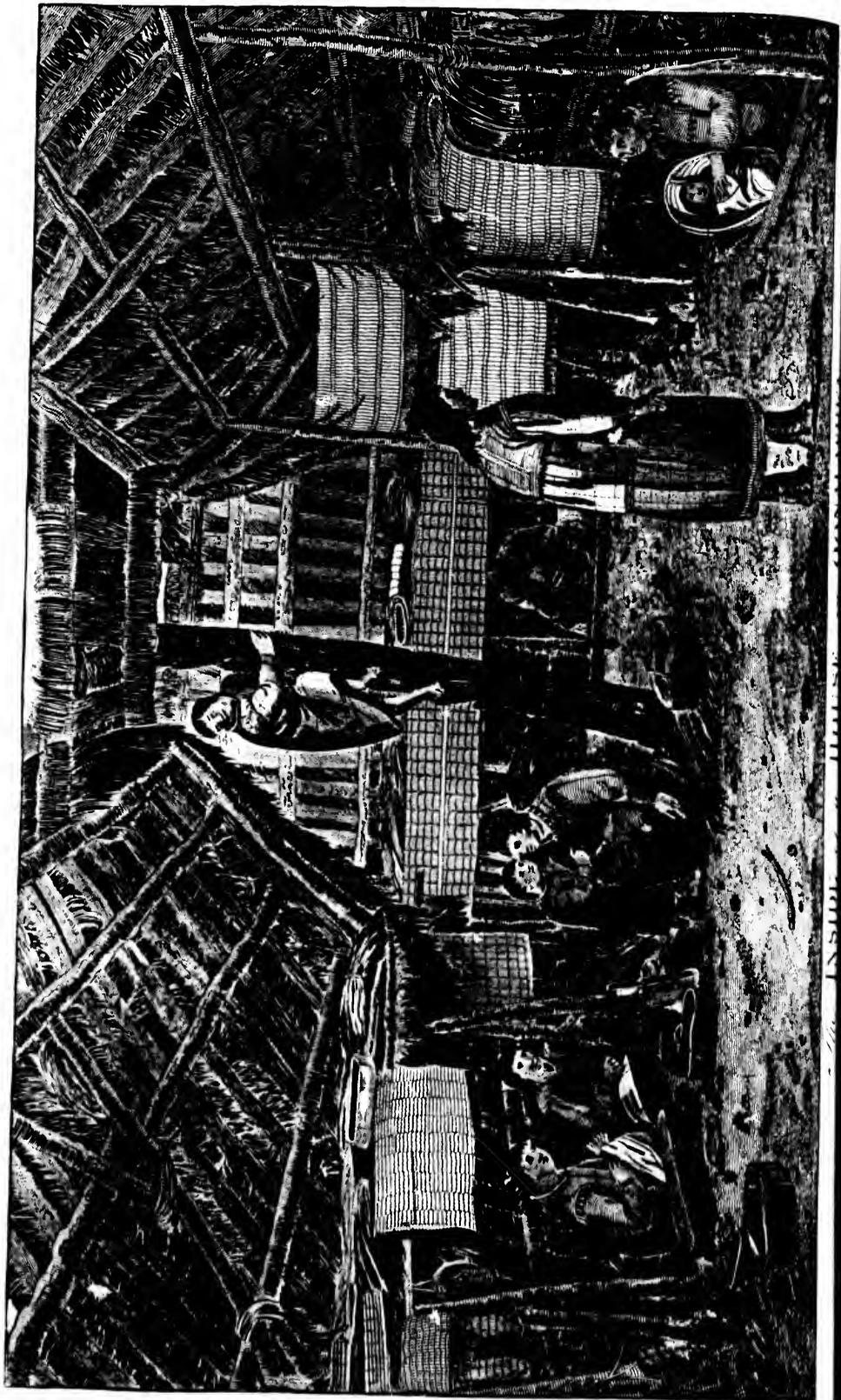
in astronomy, and in the most useful branches of the mathematics. Captain Cook made him a present of an Hadley's octant; and though, perhaps, it was the first he had ever seen, he very quickly made himself acquainted with most of the uses to which that instrument can be applied.

Thursday the 22d, in the morning, we made an attempt to get out to sea, with the wind at S. E. but did not succeed. In the afternoon of the 23d, we were visited by one Jacob Ivanovich Sopotnicoff, a Russian, who commanded a small vessel at Oomanak. This man seemed very modest, and would drink no strong liquor, of which the other Russians, whom we had met with here, were extremely fond. He appeared to know what supplies could be obtained at the harbour of St. Peter and St. Paul, and the price of the various articles, more accurately than Mr. Lamyloff. But by all accounts, every thing we should have occasion to purchase at that place, was very scarce, and bore a high price. This man informed us, that he was to be at Petropaulowka in the ensuing May; and, as we understood, was to have the charge of Captain Cook's letter. He seemed very desirous of having some token from the Captain to carry to Major Behm; and to gratify him, the Captain sent a small spying glass. After we had contracted an acquaintance with these Russians, several of our gentlemen, at different times, visited their settlement on the island, where they always met with very friendly treatment. It consisted of a dwelling-house and two store-houses. Besides the Russians, there was a number of the Kamtschadales, and of the Oonalashkans, as servants to the former. Some other natives of this island, who appeared to be independent of the Russians, lived at the same place. Such of them as belonged to the Russians, were all of the male sex; and they are either taken or purchased from their parents when young. There were at present about twenty of these, who could be considered in no other light than as children. They all reside in the same house, the Russians at the upper end, the Kamtschadales in the middle, and the Oonalashkans at the lower end, where is fixed a capacious boiler for preparing their food, which principally consists of fish, with the addition of wild roots and berries. There is no great difference between the first and last table, except what is produced by cookery, by which the Russians can make indifferent things palatable. They dress whale's flesh in such a manner as to make it very good eating; and they have a kind of pan-pudding of lalnon-roe, beaten up here and fried, which is a tolerable substitute for bread. They may, perhaps, occasionally taste real bread, or have a dish in which flour is one of the ingredients. If we except the juice of berries, which they generally sip at their meals, they drink no other liquor than pure water; and it seems to be very fortunate for them that they have nothing stronger. As the island furnishes them with subsistence, so it does in some measure with clothing. This is chiefly composed of skins. The upper garment, which is made like a waggoner's frock, reaches down to the knees. Besides this, they wear a waistcoat or two, a pair of breeches, a fur cap, and a pair of boots, the legs of which are formed of some kind of strong gut, but the soles and upper leathers are of Russian leather. Their two Chiefs, Lamyloff and Ivanovitch, wore a calico frock; and they, as well as several others, had shirts of silk. Many Russians are settled upon all the most considerable islands between Kamtschatka and Oonalashka, for the purpose of collecting furs. Their principal object is the sea-beaver or otter; but skins of inferior value also make a part of their cargoes. We neglected to enquire how long they have had a settlement upon Oonalashka, and the neighbouring islands; but if we form our judgment on this point from the great subjection the natives are under, this cannot be of a very late date. These furriers are from time to time succeeded by others. Those we saw arrived here from Okotsk in 1776, and were to return in 1781.

As for the native inhabitants of this island, they are to all appearance a very peaceable, inoffensive race of people; and in point of honesty, they might serve as a pattern

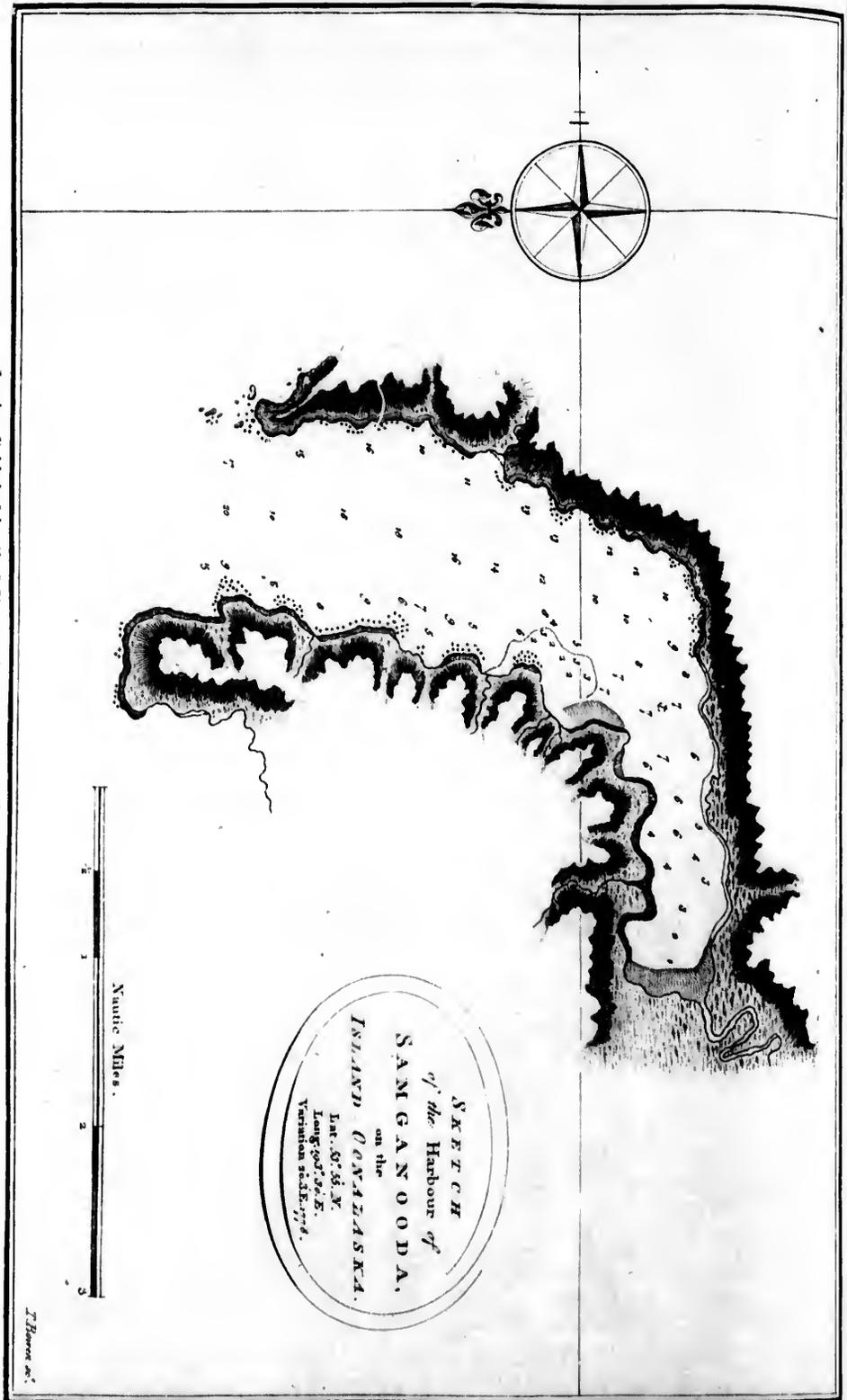
useful branches of the
made him a present of
perhaps, it was the
ckly made himself ac-
a to which that instru-

orning, we made an at-
the wind at S. E. but
oon of the 23d, we were
h Sopotnicoff, a Russian,
ffel at Oomanak. This
I would drink no strong
ians, whom we had met
I. He appeared to know
ed at the harbour of St.
ce of the various articles,
loff. But by all accounts,
caison to purchase at that
ore a high price. This
to be at Petropaulowka
e understood, was to have
letter. He seemed very
en from the Captain to
gratify him, the Captain
ter we had contracted an
na, several of our gentl-
d their settlement on the
with very friendly treat-
ing-house and two flore-
there was a number of
e Oonalahkans, as ser-
cher natives of this island,
ent of the Russians, lived
them as belonged to the
sex; and they are either
ir parents when young,
venty of these, who could
t than as children. They
e Russians at the upper
e middle, and the Oona-
here is fixed a capacious
, which principally con-
of wild roots and berries.
between the first and last
ed by cookery, by which
fferent things palatable,
ch a manner as to make it
ve a kind of pan-pudding
and fried, which is a to-
They may, perhaps, oc-
ave a dish in which flour
t we except the juice of
sip at their meals, they
ure water; and it seems
a that they have nothing
hes them with subsistence,
with clothing. This u
he upper garment, which
ck, reaches down to the
a waistcoat or two, a pair
pair of boots, the legs of
nd of strong gut, but the
f Russian leather. Their
anovitch, wore a calico
several others, had shirts
ttled upon all the most
Kamtshatka and Oona-
ecting furs. Their prin-
or otter; but skins of in-
t of their cargoes. We
g they have had a settle-
the neighbouring islands;
t on this point from the
e under, this cannot be of
ers are from time to time
we saw arrived here from
return in 1781.
ts of this island, they are
eable, inoffensive race of
ly, they might serve as a
pattern





INSIDE



SKETCH
 of the Harbour of
 SAGANOODA,
 on the
 ISLAND of ANAIZASKA.
 Lat. 57° 58' N.
 Longitude 136° 36' E.
 Vancouver's Expedition 1791 & 2.

Nautical Miles.
 0 1 2 3

London: Published by Wm. Hogg, at the Kings Arms, No. 16, Holborn Row.

T. Bowen sculp.

pattern to the most civilized nations. But, from what we saw of their neighbours, with whom the Russians are unconnected, we have some doubt whether this was their original disposition; and are rather inclined to be of opinion, that it is the consequence of their present state of subjection. Indeed, if we did not misunderstand the Russians, they had been under the necessity of making some severe examples before they could bring the islanders into tolerable order. If severities were really inflicted at first, the best excuse for them is, that they have produced the most beneficial effects; and, at present, the greatest harmony subsists between the Russians and the natives. The latter have their own chiefs in each island, and seem to enjoy liberty and property without molestation. Whether they are tributaries to the Russians, or not, we could never learn; but we had some reason to suppose that they are.

The people of Onalashka are in general rather low of stature, but plump, and well shaped. Their necks are commonly short, and they have swarthy chubby faces. They have black eyes and small beards. Their hair is long, black, and straight; the men wear it loose behind, and cut before; but the women generally tie it up in a bunch. The dress of both sexes is the same with respect to fashion, the only difference is in the materials. The frock worn by the women is made of the skins of seals; and that of the men, of the skins of birds; both reach below the knees. This constitutes the whole dress of the females. But, over the frock, the men wear another composed of gur, which water cannot penetrate; it has a hood to it, which is drawn over the head. Some of them wear boots; and all of them wear a sort of oval snouted cap, made of wood, with a rim that admits the head. They dye these caps with green and other colours; and round the upper part of the rim they fix the long bristles of some sea animal, on which glass beads are strung; and on the front is a small image or two formed of bone. They do not make use of paint; but the women puncture their faces slightly, and both sexes perforate the lower lip, in which they fix pieces of bone. But it is as uncommon here to see a man with this ornament, as to observe a woman without it. Some fix beads to the upper lip under the nostrils; and they all suspend ornaments in their ears.

Fish and other sea animals, birds, roots, berries, and even sea-weed, compose their food. They dry quantities of fish during the summer, which they lay up in small huts for their use in winter; and, probably, they preserve berries and roots for the same reason of scarcity. They eat most of their provisions raw. Boiling and broiling were the only methods of cookery that we saw practised among them; and the former they in all probability learnt from the Russians. Some have in their possession small brass kettles, and those who have not, make one of a flat stone, with sides of clay. Captain Cook once happened to be present, when the chief of this island made his dinner of the raw head of a large halibut, just caught. Before any part of it was given to the chief, two of his servants eat the gills, with no other dressing than squeezing out the slime. After this, one of them having cut off the head of the fish, took it to the sea, and washed it, then came with it, and seated himself by the chief; but not before he had pulled up some grass, upon a part of which the head was placed, and the rest was thrown before the chief. He then cut large pieces off the cheeks, and put them within the reach of the chief, who swallowed them with great satisfaction. When he had finished his meal, the remains of the head being cut in pieces, were given to the servants, who tore off the meat with their teeth, and gnawed the bones like so many dogs.

As the Onalashkins use no paint, they are less dirty in their persons than those savages who thus besmear themselves; but they are full as filthy in their houses. The following is their method of building: they dig, in the ground, an oblong pit, which rarely exceeds fifty feet in length, and twenty in breadth; but the dimensions are in general smaller. Over this excavation they form the roof of wood, which they cover first with grass,

and then with earth, so that the external appearance resembles a dung-hill. Near each end of the roof is left a square opening, which admits the light; one of these openings being intended only for this purpose, and the other being also used to go in and out by, with the assistance of a ladder, or rather a post, in which steps are cut. In some of the houses there is another entrance below, but this is rather uncommon. Round the sides and ends of the habitations, the families, several of which dwell together, have their separate apartments, where they sleep, and sit at work; not on benches, but in a sort of concave trench, dug entirely round the inside of the house, and covered with mats, so that this part is kept pretty clean and decent. The same cannot be said of the middle of the house, which is common to all the families. For, though it is covered with dry grass, it is a receptacle for every kind of dirt, and the place where the urine trough stands; the stench of which is by no means improved by raw hides, or leather, being almost continually steeped in it. Behind, and over the trench, they place the few effects that they have in their possession, such as their mats, skins, and apparel. Their furniture consists of buckets, cans, wooden bowls, spoons, matted baskets, and sometimes a Russian kettle or pot. All these utensils are made in a very neat manner; and yet we observed no other tools among them than the knife and the hatchet; that is, a small flat piece of iron, made like an adze, by fixing it into a crooked wooden handle.

Though the Russians live among these people, we found much less iron in possession of the latter, than we had met with among other tribes on the neighbouring continent of America, who had never seen the Russians, nor perhaps had any intercourse with them. Probably a few beads, and a small quantity of tobacco and snuff, purchase all they have to spare. There are few of them that do not both smoke and chew tobacco, and take snuff. They did not appear to be very desirous of more iron, or to want any other instruments, except sewing needles, their own being formed of bone. With these they sew their canoes, and make their clothes, and also work very curious embroidery. They use, instead of thread, the fibres of finew, which they split to the thickness which is required. All sewing is performed by the females. They are the shoe-makers, tailors, and boat-builders, or boat-coverers; for the men, in all probability, construct the wooden frame, over which the skins are sewed. They manufacture mats, and baskets of grass, which are both strong and beautiful. There is, indeed, a neatness and perfection in most of their work, that shews they are neither deficient in ingenuity nor perseverance. We did not observe a fire-place in any one of their habitations. They are lighted, as well as heated, by lamps; which, though simple, effectually answer the purpose for which they are intended. They consist of a flat stone, hollowed on one side like a plate; in the hollow part they put the oil, mixed with some dry grass, which serves for a wick. Both sexes often warm themselves over one of these lamps, by placing it between their legs, under their garments, and sitting thus over it for several minutes. These people produce fire both by collision and attrition; the first by striking two stones against each other, on one of which a quantity of brimstone has been previously rubbed. The latter method is performed by means of two pieces of wood, one of which is flat, and the other is a stick of the length of about a foot and a half. They press the pointed end of the stick upon the other piece, whirling it nimbly round as a drill, and thus fire is procured in a few minutes. This method is common in many countries. It is not only practised by these people, but also by the Kamtschadales, the Greenlanders, the Otaheiteans, the New Hollanders, and the Brazilians, and probably by other nations. Some men of learning and genius have founded an argument on this custom, to prove that this and that nation are of the same extraction. But casual agreements, in a few particular instances, will not wholly authorize such a conclusion; nor, on the other hand, will a disagreement, either in manners or customs, between two different

different nations, prove of course that they are of different extraction. We saw no offensive, nor even defensive weapon among the natives of Oonalashka. It can scarcely be supposed that the Russians found them in such a defenceless state; it is rather to be imagined, that, for their own security, they have disarmed them. Political motives, likewise, may have induced the Russians not to permit these islanders to have any large canoes; for we can hardly believe they had none such originally, as we found them among all their neighbours. However, we observed none here except two or three that belonged to the Russians.

The canoes in use among the natives are smaller than any of those we had seen upon the coast of America, from which, however, they differ but little in their construction. The form of these terminates somewhat abruptly; the head is forked, and the upper point of the fork projects without the under one, which is level with the surface of the water. It is remarkable that they should thus construct them, for the fork generally catches hold of every thing that comes in the way; to prevent which, they fix a piece of small stick from one point to the other. In other respects they build their canoes after the manner of those of the Esquimaux and Greenlanders; the frame being of slender laths, and the covering of the skins of seals. They are about twelve feet in length, eighteen inches in breadth in the middle, and twelve or fourteen inches in depth. They sometimes carry two persons, one of whom sits in the seat, or round hole, which is nearly in the middle; and the other is stretched at full length in the canoe. Round this hole is a rim or hoop of wood, about which gut-skin is sewed, which can be drawn together, or opened like a purse, with leathern strings fitted to the outer edge. The man sits in this place, draws the skin tight about his body over his gut-trock, and brings the ends of the thongs, or purse-strings, tight round his wrists; and it being close round his neck, and the hood being drawn over his head, where his cap confines it, water cannot easily penetrate, either into the canoe, or to his body. If, however, any water should find means to insinuate itself, the boatman dries it up with a piece of sponge. He makes use of a double-bladed paddle, which is held with both hands in the middle, striking the water first on one side, and then on the other, with a quick regular motion. Thus the canoe is impelled at a great rate, and in a direction perfectly straight. In sailing from Egoochshak to Samganoodha, though our ship went at the rate of seven miles an hour, two or three canoes kept pace with her. Their implements for hunting and fishing lie ready upon their canoes, under straps fixed for the purpose. They are all extremely well made of wood and bone, and are not very different from those used by the Greenlanders. The only difference is in the point of the missile dart; which, in some that we saw at this island, does not exceed an inch in length; whereas those of the Greenlanders, according to Crantz, are about eighteen inches long. Indeed these darts, as well as some others of their instruments, are extremely curious. Their darts are generally made of fir, and are about four feet in length. The bird, fish, or other animal is no sooner struck, than the pointed bone slips out of the socket, but remains fixed in its body by means of the barb. The dart then serves as a float to trace the animal, and also contributes to fatigue it considerably, so that it is easily taken. They throw these darts by the assistance of a thin piece of wood, twelve or fourteen inches long; the middle of this is slightly hollowed, for the better reception of the weapon; and at the termination of the hollow, which does not extend to the end, is fixed a short pointed piece of bone, to prevent the dart from slipping. The other extremity is furnished with a hole for the reception of the fore-finger, and the sides are made to coincide with the other fingers and thumb, in order to grasp with greater firmness. The natives throw these darts to the distance of eighty or ninety yards, with great force and dexterity. They are exceedingly expert in striking fish, both in the sea, and in rivers. They also use hooks and lines, nets and weirs. The lines are formed of twisted sinews, and the hooks of bone.

Whales, porpoises, grampuses, halibut, sword-fish, salmon, trout, cod, soals, flat-fish, and several other sorts, are found here; and there may be many more that we had not an opportunity of seeing. Salmon and halibut appear to be in the greatest plenty; and on them the people of these isles principally subsist; at least, they were the only sort of fish, except cod, that we observed to be laid up for their winter store. Seals, and all that tribe of sea animals, are not so numerous as they are in many other seas. Nor can this be thought surprizing, since there is hardly any part of the coast, on either continent, nor any of these islands, situate between them, but what is inhabited, and whose inhabitants hunt these animals for their food and clothing. Sea-horses are, indeed, to be found in prodigious numbers about the ice; and the sea-otter is scarce any where to be met with but in this sea. An animal was sometimes seen by us, that blew after the manner of whales. It had a head resembling that of a seal. It was larger than that animal, and its colour was white, with dark spots interspersed. This was perhaps the manati, or sea-cow.

Water fowls are neither found here in such numbers, nor in such variety, as in the northern parts of the Atlantic Ocean. However there are some in these parts, that we do not recollect to have seen in other countries; particularly the alea monochroa of Steller, and a black and white duck, which we judge to be different from the stone duck that Krathenimkoff has described in his History of Kamtschatka. All the other birds we saw are mentioned by this author, except some which we observed near the ice; and the greatest part of these, if not all, have been described by Martin, in his voyage to Greenland. It is somewhat extraordinary, that penguins, which are so frequently met with in many parts of the world, should not be found in this sea. Albatrosses too are extremely scarce here. The few land birds seen by us are the same with those of Europe; but there were probably many others which we had no opportunity of observing. A very beautiful bird was shot in the woods at Norton Sound; which, we understand, is sometimes found in England, and known by the appellation of chatterer. Our people saw other small birds there, but in no great abundance or variety; such as the bullfinch, the wood-pecker, the yellow-finch, and tit-mouse.

Our excursions and observations being confined to the sea coast, we cannot be expected to have much knowledge of the animals or vegetables of the country. There are few other insects besides musquitoes, and we saw few reptiles except lizards. There are no deer at Oonalashka, or any of the neighbouring islands; nor are there any domestic animals, not even dogs. Weasels and foxes were the only quadrupeds we observed; but the natives told us, that they had likewise hares, and the marmotas mentioned by Krathenimkoff. Hence it appears, that the inhabitants procure the greatest share of their food from the sea and rivers. They are also indebted to the sea for all the wood which they use for building, and other necessary purposes; as there is not a tree to be seen growing upon any of the islands, nor upon the neighbouring coast of the continent. The seeds of plants are laid to be conveyed, by various means, from one part of the world to another; even to islands lying in the midst of extensive oceans, and far distant from any other lands. It is therefore remarkable, that there are no trees growing on this part of the American continent, nor upon any of the adjacent isles. They are doubtless as well situated for receiving seeds, by the various ways we have heard of, as those coasts which have plenty of wood. Nature has, perhaps, denied to some soils the power of raising trees, without the assistance of art. With respect to the drift-wood, upon the shores of these islands, we have no doubt of its coming from America. For though there may be none on the neighbouring coast, a sufficient quantity may grow farther up the country, which may be broken loose by torrents in the spring, and brought down to the sea; and not a little may be conveyed from the woody coasts, though situated

ses, halibut, sword-fish, and several other may be many more than being. Salmon and haddock are in great plenty; and on them especially subsist; at least, except cod, that we observe in winter store. Seals, and are not so numerous as Nor can this be thought any part of the coast, these islands, situate be- and whose inhabi- their food and clothing, and in prodigious num- sea-otter is scarce any is sea. An animal was ew after the manner of pling that of a seal. It and its colour was white. This was perhaps the

d here in such numbers, northern parts of the At- are some in these parts, seen in other countries; of Steller, and a black off has described in his the other birds we saw except some which we greatest part of these, y Martin, in his voyage xtraordinary, that pen- met with in many parts and in this sea. Allab- here. The few land with those of Europe; thers which we had no very beautiful bird was nd; which, we under- ngland, and known by Our people saw other abundance or variety; d-pecker, the yellow-

ns being confined to the id to have much know- ables of the country. es musquitos, and we

There are no deer at neighbouring islands; nor not even dogs. Wea- drupeds we observed; y had likewise hares, d by Krashenikoff. habitants procure the in the sea and rivers, or all the wood which necessary purposes; as wing upon any of the coning coat of the con- laid to be conveyed, of the world to ano- the midst of extensive other lands. It is e no trees growing on ent, nor upon any of bleless as well situated ways we have heard ty of wood. Nature the power of raising. t. With respect to of these islands, we om America. For neighbouring coast, rther up the coun- by torrents in the sea, and not a little coasts, though situ- ated

ated at a more considerable distance. But plants are to be found in great variety at Oonalashka. Several of them are such as we meet with in Europe, and also in Newfoundland, and other parts of America; and others of them, which are likewise found in Kamtschatka, are eaten by the natives both there and here. Of these, Krashenikoff has favoured us with descriptions. The principal one is the Saranne, or lily root; which is about as large as a root of garlick, round, and composed of a number of small cloves and grains. When boiled it somewhat resembles sloop; the taste of it is not disagreeable. It does not appear to be in great abundance. Among the food of the natives we may reckon some other wild roots; the stalk of a plant not unlike angelica; and berries of different species, such as cranberries, hurtle-berries, bramble-berries, and heath-berries; besides a small red berry, which, in Newfoundland, is denominated partridge berry; and another brown berry, with which we were unacquainted. This has somewhat of the taste of a sloe, but is different from it in every other respect. When eaten in a considerable quantity it is very astringent. Brandy may be distilled from it. Captain Clerke endeavoured to preserve some; but they fermented, and became as strong as if they had been steeped in spirits. There were several plants which were serviceable to us, but are not used either by the Russians or natives, such as wild purslain, pea-tops, a kind of scurvy grass, cress, and some others. On the low ground, and in the valleys is plenty of grass, which grows very thick, and to a great length. Among the inhabitants, native sulphur was seen, but we had no opportunity of learning where they got it. We found also ochre; a stone that gives a purple colour; and another that gives a very good green. In its natural state it is of a greyish green colour, coarse, and heavy. It dissolves easily in oil, but it entirely loses its properties when put into water. It seemed to be scarce in Oonalashka, but, we were told, it was in greater plenty in the island of Oonemak.

The inhabitants of Oonalashka bury their dead on the summits of hills, and raise a little hillock over their graves. There was one of these receptacles of the dead by the side of the road leading from the harbour to the village, over which was raised a heap of stones. It was observed that every one who passed it added one to it. In the country, we saw several stone hillocks, that seemed to have been raised by art; and many of them were apparently of great antiquity. These people are remarkably cheerful and friendly among each other; and always behaved with great civility to us. The Russians told us, that they never had any connections with their women, because they were not

Christians. Our people were not so scrupulous; and some of them had reason to repent that the females of Oonalashka encouraged their addresses without any reserve; for their health suffered by a distemper that is not unknown here.

We have had occasion to mention frequently, from the time of our arrival in Prince William's Sound, how remarkably the natives on this north-west side of America, resemble the Greenlanders and Esquimaux, in various particulars of person, dress, weapons, canoes, and the like. We were, however, much less struck with this, than with the affinity subsisting between the dialects of the Greenlanders and Esquimaux, and those of Oonalashka and Norton's Sound. But we must observe, with respect to the words which were collected by us on this side of America, that too much stress is not to be laid upon their being accurately represented; for, after the death of Mr. Anderson, we had few who took any great degree of pains about such matters; and we have often found that the same word, written down by two or more persons, from the mouth of the same native, differed considerably on being compared together. Nevertheless, enough is certain to authorize this judgment, that there is great reason to suppose, that all these nations are of the same extraction; and if that be the case, there is little doubt of there being a northern communication by sea, between the western side of America, and the eastern side, through Baffin's Bay; which communication, however, is perhaps effectually shut up against ships, by ice, and other obstructions; such, at least, was Captain Cook's opinion at this time.

In these parts the tides are not very considerable, except in Cook's River. The flood comes from the S. or S. E. following the direction of the coast to the N. W. Between Cape Prince of Wales and Norton Sound we found a current setting towards the N. W. particularly off that Cape, and within Sledge Island. This current, however, extended but a little way from the coast, and was neither consistent nor uniform. To the N. of Cape Prince of Wales, we observed neither tide nor current, either on the coast of America, or that of Asia. This circumstance gave rise to an opinion, which some of our people entertained, that the two coasts were connected either by land or ice; and that opinion received some degree of strength, from our never having any hollow waves from the northward, and from our seeing ice almost the whole way across. From the several observations made during our continuance in the harbour of Samganoedha, its latitude is 53 deg. 5 min. N. and its longitude 193 deg. 29 min. 45 sec. E.

C H A P. XIII.

The Resolution and Discovery take their departure from Samganoedha Harbour, in the island of Oonalashka—Sandwich Islands the appointed place of rendezvous—Pass the island of Amoghla—The strait between Oonalashka and Oonella repassed—Run to the South—One man killed, and others wounded, on board the Discovery—Mowee, one of the Sandwich islands described—A visit from a chief, named Terreebooo—Another island, called Oowbybee, discovered—The crew refuse to drink sugar-cane liquor—The corsage in the navy and merchants service compared—Favourable account of the natives of Oowbybee—The Resolution gets to the windward of the island—Is joined by the Discovery—The two ships anchor in Karakakooa Bay, after it had been examined by Bligh—In the interim, multitudes of the islanders are seen, and visits received from many of them—Karakakooa Bay described—The ships surrounded by the natives—Despotic authority of the chiefs over them—A visit from Koab—The Morai at Kakooa described—Offering made to Captain Cook—Observatories erected—The ground on which they are placed tobaccoed—Method of curing meat in tropical climates.

ON Monday, the 26th of October, we sailed from Samganoedha harbour, when, the wind being southerly, we stood to the westward. The Commodore's intention was to proceed to Sandwich Islands, in order to pass a few of the winter months there, if we should meet with the necessary refreshments, and then direct our course to Kamtschatka, so as to endeavour to arrive there by the middle of May, in the ensuing year. This being determined on, the Commodore delivered into the hands of Captain Clerke instructions how to proceed in case of

separation, Sandwich Islands being appointed for the first place of rendezvous; and for the second, Petropaulowika, in Kamtschatka. Having got out of the harbour, the wind veered to the S. E. with which we were carried to the western part of Oonalashka, by the evening. We had here the wind at S. and stretched to the westward. On Tuesday the 27th, at seven o'clock A. M. we wore, and stood to the E. The wind had now so greatly increased, as to reduce us to our three courses. It blew in heavy squalls, accompanied with snow, hail, and rain. On the 28th, in the morning, Oonalashka

lathka bore S. E. four leagues distant. We now stood to the westward; but towards evening, the wind, after it had for a short time abated, got insensibly to the N. E. increasing to a very hard gale, accompanied with rain: we therefore steered first to the southward, and then, as the wind inclined to the N. and N. W. more westerly. On Thursday the 26th, at half past six, A. M. land was descried, supposed to be the island of Amoghta. At eight, finding it not in our power to weather the island, we gave over plying, and bore away with the view of going to the N. of Oonalathka, not presuming in so hard a gale of wind to attempt a passage to the S. E. of it. When we bore away, the land extended from E. by S. half S. to S. S. W. distant four leagues. Our lat. was 53 deg. 38 min. and our long. 191 deg. 17 min. which gives a very different situation to this island from that assigned to it upon the Russian map; and Captain Cook was at a loss to determine whether it was Amoghta or not; but on the chart, Krenitzen's and Levasseur's voyage, in 1768 and 1769, an island called Amuckta is laid down, not very far from the place here assigned to Amoghta by Captain Cook. As we were steering to the N. E. at 11 o'clock we discovered a rock, elevated like a tower, bearing N. N. E. about four leagues distant, and situated in lat. 53 deg. 57 min. long. 191 deg. 2 min. This rock is not marked in the Russian map, produced by Isnyloff; yet it has a place in the chart of Krenitzen's and Levasseur's voyage. That chart also agrees with Captain Cook's, as to the general position of this group of islands. The singularly indented shores of the island of Oonalathka, are represented in both charts nearly alike. These circumstances are worthy of notice, as the more modern Russian maps of this Archipelago are so exceedingly erroneous. At three in the afternoon we had in view Oonalathka; upon which we shortened sail, and hauled the wind, being unable to run through the passage before night. Friday, the 20th, we had a very hard gale at W. N. W. with heavy squalls and snow, inasmuch that we were compelled to bear away under courses, and close-reefed top-sails. At noon, we were about the middle of the strait, between Oonalathka and Oonella, the harbour of Samganoodha, bearing S. S. E. one league distant. At three o'clock, P. M. we were through the strait, and clear of the isles, Cape Providence bearing W. S. W. distant three leagues.

On Sunday, the 1st of November, the wind was favourable, and we stood to sea. The weather was fairer than it had been at any time since we cleared Samganoodha Harbour, at it is called by the Russians, or Providence Bay, as it was named by Captain Cook. On the 2d, the wind was at S. and, in the evening, blew a violent storm, which occasioned us to bring to. Several guns were fired by the Discovery, which we immediately answered. We lost sight of her at eight o'clock; nor did she join us till ten the next morning, being the 3d. On Saturday the 7th, in lat. 42 deg. 12 min. long. 201 deg. 26 min. E. a shag, or cormorant, flew often round the ship. As it is not common for these kind of birds to go far from land, we concluded there might be some at no great distance, though we did not discover any. Having but little wind, Captain Clerke came on board with some melancholy intelligence. He informed us, that the second night after we had departed from Providence Bay, or Samganoodha, the main-tack of the Discovery gave way, by which accident John Mackintosh, seaman, was struck dead, and the boatswain, with three other mariners, much wounded. He added, that on the 3d, his ship having sprung a leak, and the rigging received considerable damage, he fired some guns as a signal for the Resolution to bring to. On the 8th we were favoured with a gentle breeze at N. attended with clear weather. On the 9th, we had eight hours calm; to which succeeded a wind from the S. accompanied with fair weather. Such of our people as could handle a needle, were now employed to repair the sails; and the carpenters were directed to put the boats in order. Thursday, the 12th, we observed in lat. 38 deg. 14 min. long. 206 deg. 17 min. The wind returned back to the northward; and on Sunday the 15th, in lat. 33 deg. 30 min. it veered to the E. We now saw a tro-

pic bird, and a dolphin, the first we had observed in our passage. On Tuesday, the 17th, the wind was southward, at which point it remained till the 19th, in the afternoon, when it was suddenly brought round by the W. to the N. The wind increased to a very strong gale, and brought us under double-reefed top-sails. We were now in lat. 32 deg. 26 min. long. 207 deg. 30 min. E. In lowering the main top-sail, in order to reef it, the violence of the wind tore it out of the foot-ropes, and it was split in several parts. We got, however, another top-sail to the yard the next morning. This gale proved to be the forerunner of the trade-wind, which, in lat. 25 deg. veered to the E. and E. S. E. We steered to the southward till Wednesday, the 25th, when we were in lat. 20 deg. 55 min. On the 26th, at day-break, we discovered land, extending from S. S. E. to W. At eight o'clock we stood for it, when it extended from S. E. half S. to W. the nearest part being about two leagues distant. We now perceived that our discovery of the group of Sandwich islands had been very imperfect, those which we had visited in our progress northward, all lying to the leeward of our present situation. An elevated hill appeared in the country, whose summit rose above the clouds. The land from this hill fell in a gradual slope, terminating in a steep rocky coast: the sea breaking against it in a most dreadful surf. Unable to weather the island, we bore up, and ranged to the westward. We now perceived people on many parts of the shore; also several houses and plantations. The country appeared to be well supplied with wood and water, and running streams were seen in various places, falling into the sea. It being of the utmost importance to procure a supply of provisions at these islands, which could not be accomplished, should a free trade with the natives be permitted; for this reason, the Commodore published an order, prohibiting all persons on board the ships from trading, except those that should be appointed by himself and Captain Clerke; and even these were under limitations of trading only for provisions and refreshments. Injunctions were also laid against admitting women into the ships, under certain restrictions; but the evil intended to have been prevented by this regulation, had already got amongst them. At noon, the coast extended from S. 81 deg. E. to N. 56 deg. W. A low flat, like an isthmus, bore S. 42 deg. W. the nearest shore being four miles distant. Our lat. was now 20 deg. 59 min. our long. 203 deg. 50 min. E. Some canoes came off, and when along-side, many of those who were in them, entered the ship without hesitation. We soon perceived that they were of the same nation as those islanders more to the leeward, whom we had already visited; and, as we understood, they were no strangers to our having been in those parts before. It was indeed too evident; these people having got the venereal disease among them, which they probably contracted by an intercourse with their neighbours, after we had left them. Our visitors supplied us with a quantity of cuttle-fish, in exchange for nails and iron. They brought but a small quantity of fruit or roots, but said they had plenty of them on their island, as well as of hogs and fowls. The horizon being clear, in the evening, we supposed the westernmost land that we could see to be an island, distinct from that off which we now were. Expecting the natives would return the next day, with the produce of their island, we plied off the whole night, and stood close in shore the next morning. We were at first visited by a few only, but towards noon numbers of them appeared, bringing with them potatoes, taro, bread-fruit, plantains, and small pigs; all of which were bartered for iron tools and nails, we having few other articles to give them. We made mutual exchanges till four in the afternoon, at which time they had disposed of all their cargoes, and not expressing any inclination to fetch more, we immediately made sail.

On Monday, the 30th, in the afternoon, being off the N. E. end of the island, some more canoes came off. Most of these belonged to Terreeboob, a chief, who came in one of them. He made the Commodore a present of three pigs; and we procured a little fruit by bartering

ft we had observed in
7th, the wind was south-
ned till the 19th, in the
y brought round by the
eafly to a very ftrong
ble-reefed top-fails. We
min. long. 207 deg. 33
top-fail, in order to reef
e it out of the foot-rope,
rts. We got, however,
the next morning. This
anner of the trade-wind,
to the E. and E. S. E.
ll Wednesday, the 25th,
min. On the 26th, at
extending from S. S. E.
ood for it, when it ex-
y, the neareft part being
e now perceived that our
ich iflands had been very
if visited in our progrefs
ward of our prefent ifland
in the country, whofe
The land from this hill
nating in a fteep rocky
t it in a moft dreadful
ifland, we bore up, and
ow perceived people on
veral houfes and planta-
to be well fupplied with
freams were teen in va-
. It being of the utmoft
y of provifions at thefe
omplifhed, fhould a free
mitted; for this reafon,
der, prohibiting all per-
iding, except thofe that
lf and Captain Clerke;
itutions of trading only
Injunctions were alfo
nto the fhips, under cer-
intended to have been
ad already got amongft
ded from S. 81 deg. E.
ike an ifthmus, bore S.
eing four miles diftant.
a. our long. 203 deg. 30
, and when along-fide,
, entered the fhip with-
ed that they were of the
eto the lee ward, whom
s we understood, they
been in thofe parts be-
t; thofe people having
them, which they pro-
urfe with their neigh-
Our vifitors fupplied
in exchange for nails
small quantity of fruit or
f them on their ifland,
the horizon being clear,
westernmoft land that
ct from that off which
tives would return the
eir ifland, we plied off
n thofe the next morn-
few only, but towards
, bringing with them
rains, and fmall pigs;
n tools and nails, we
them. We made mu-
fternoon, at which time
goes, and nut exprefs-
we immediately made

afternoon, being off
more canoes came off.
ceoboo, a chief, who
e the Commodore a
cured a little fruit by
bartering

bartering with his people. In about two hours they all left us, except feven perfons who chofe to remain on board. Soon after, a double failing canoe arrived to attend upon them, which we towed after the whole night. In the evening another ifland was feen to the windward, called, by the natives, Owwhyhee. That which we had been off for fome days, was called Mowee.

On Tuesday, the 1ft of December, at eight o'clock A. M. Owwhyhee extended from S. 22 deg. E. to S. 12 deg. W. and Mowee from N. 41 deg. to N. 81 deg. W. Perceiving we could fetch Owwhyhee, we flood for it, when our vifitors from Mowee thought proper to embark in their canoes, and went afhore. We fpent the night, ftanding off and on the north fide of Owwhyhee. On the 2nd, in the morning, to our great furprize, we faw the fummits of the mountains covered with fnow. Though they were not of an extraordinary height, the fnow, in fome places, appeared to be of confiderable depth, and to have remained there fome time. As we drew near the fhore fome of the natives approached us, who appeared a little shy at firft; but we prevailed on fome of them to come on board; and at length prevailed on them to return to the ifland to bring us fuch refreshments as we wanted. After thefe had reached the fhore, we had plenty of company, who brought us a tolerable fupply of pigs, fruit, and roots. We traded with them till fix in the evening, when we flood off, in order to ply to windward round the ifland. In the evening of the 4th, an eclipfe of the moon was obferved. Mr. King ufed, for the purpofe of obfervation, a night-telescope, with a circular aperture at the object end. The Commodore obferved with the telescope of one of Ramsden's fextants. The mean of their obfervations made our longitude to be 204 deg. 35 min. E. Sunday, the 6th, in the evening, being near the fhore, and five leagues farther up the coaft, we again traded with the natives; but receiving only a trifling fupply, we flood in the next morning, when the number of our vifitors was confiderable. We had now procured pork, fruit, and roots, fufficient to ferve us four or five days; we, therefore, made fail, and fill plied to the windward. Among other ftores, the Commodore had procured a great quantity of fugar-cane; and having, upon trial, difcovered, that a decoction of it made very palatable liquor, he ordered fome of it to be brewed for our fhip's fervice; but on broaching a cask thereof, not one of the crew would even tafte it. Captain Cook having no other motive in preparing this beverage, than that of preferring our fpirits for a colder climate, neither exercifed his authority, nor had recourfe to perfuafion, to induce them to drink it, well knowing that, fo long as we could be plentifully fupplied with other vegetables, there was no danger of the fcurvy. But that he might not have his intention frustrated, he ordered that no grog fhould be ferved in either of the two fhips. The Commodore and his officers continued to drink this fugar-cane beer, whenever materials could be procured for brewing it. Some hops, which we had on board improved it much; and, it was, doubtlefs, extremely wholefome; though our inconfiderate crew, could not be perfuaded, but it muft be injurious to their health. About the beginning of this month, the crew of the Difcovery being much in want of provifions, Captain Clerke, againft his inclination, was under the neceffity of fubftituting flock fifh in the room of beef; but they were no fooner well in with the land, than they were vifited by many of the inhabitants, who came off in their canoes, with all forts of provifions, which their ifland afforded; and every man had leave to purchafe what he could for his own indulgence. This diffufed a joy among the mariners that is not eafy to be expreffed. From a fullnefs and difcontent, vifible in every countenance, all was chearfulnefs, mirth and jollity. Fresh provifions and kind females are the failors' foft delight; and when in poffeffion of thefe, paff hardships are inftantly forgotten; even thofe whom the fcurvy had attacked, and rendered almoft lifelefs, brightened up on this occafion, and for the moment appeared alert. We muft here obferve, that innovations of whatever kind

on board a fhip, are fure to meet with the difapprobation of the feamen, though even to their advantage. Our portable foup and four krout were condemned, at firft, as improper food for human beings. Few commanders have introduced more ufeful varieties of food and drink into their fhips than Captain Cook has done; few others, indeed, have had the opportunities, or have been driven to the neceffity of trying fuch experiments. It was, neverthelefs, owing to certain deviations from eftablifhed customs and practice, that he was enabled, in a great degree, to preferve his people from the fcurvy, a diftemper that has often made more havoc in peaceful voyages, than the enemy in military expeditions.

Sunday, the 13th, having hitherto kept at fome diftance from the coaft, we now flood in, fix leagues more to the windward; and, after trading with fuch of the natives as came off to us, returned to fea. On the 15th, it was our intention to approach the fhore again, with the view of procuring a frefh fupply of fruit and roots; but the wind being then at S. E. by S. and S. S. E. we embraced the opportunity of ftretching to the eaftward, in order to get round the S. E. end of the ifland. The wind continued at S. E. the greateft part of the 16th; it was variable on the 17th, and on Friday the 18th, it was continually veering. Sometimes it blew in hard fqualls; and, at other times, it was calm, with thunder, lightning, and rain. In the afternoon it was westerly for a few hours, but it fhifted, in the evening to E. by S. The S. E. point of the ifland now bore S. W. by S. five leagues diftant. We expected to have weathered it, but, on Saturday, the 19th, at one o'clock, A. M. were left wholly at the mercy of a north-eafterly gwell, which drove us faft towards the land; fo that long before day-break, lights were feen upon the fhore, which was then diftant about a league. It was a dark night, with thunder, lightning, and rain. The calm was fucceeded by a breeze from the S. E. by E. blowing in fqualls with rain. We flood to the N. E. thinking it the beft tack to clear the coaft; but had it been day-light, we fhould have chofen the other. At day-break, the coaft extended from N. by W. to S. W. by W. about half a league diftant; a moft dreadful fuff breaking upon the fhore. We had certainly been in moft imminent danger; from which we were not yet feure, the wind veering more eafterly; fo that for a confiderable time, we were but juft able to keep our diftance from the coaft. Our fituation was rendered more alarming, by the leach-rope of the main-top-fail giving way, in confequence of which the fail was rent in two; and the top-gallant-fails gave way in the fame manner, though not half worn out. We foon, however, got others to the yards, and left the land aftern. The Difcovery was at fome diftance to the north, entirely clear from the land; nor did the appear in fight till eight o'clock. Captain Cook here remarks, that the bolt ropes to our fails are extremely deficient in ftrength or fubftance. This, at different times, has been the fource of infinite labour and vexation; and has occafioned much lofs of canvas by giving way; from whence he concludes, that the cordage, canvas, and other ftores, made ufe of in the navy, are inferior, in general, to thofe ufed in the merchants fervice. The Commodore alfo obferves, an opinion prevails among all naval officers, that the King's ftores are fuperior to any others. They may be right, he admits, as to the quantity, but not as to the quality of the ftores. This, indeed, he fays, is not often tried; for thefe articles are ufually condemned, or converted to other ufes, before they are half worn out. Only fuch voyages as ours afford an opportunity of making the trial; our fituation being fuch as to render it neceffary to wear every thing to the extreme. Captain Cook in this comparifon of fome cordage ufed in the King's fervice, with what is ufed in that of the merchants, may, in part, be right; efpecially in time of war, when part of the cordage wanted in the navy is, from neceffity, made by contract. But it is well known, that there is no better cordage than what is made in the King's yards. This we afiert, on the authority of a naval officer of diftinguifhed rank, and great professional ability, who has, at the fame time,

recommended

recommended it as a necessary precaution, that ships fitted out on discovery, should be furnished with no cordage but what is made in the King's yards; and, indeed, that every article of their stores, of every kind, should be the best that can be made.

When day-light appeared, the natives ashore displayed a white flag, we imagined, as a signal of peace and friendship. Many of them ventured out after us; but as the wind freshened, and we were unwilling to wait, they were left presently astern. In the afternoon we made another attempt to weather the eastern extreme; in which we failed. Indeed, our getting round the island was a matter of no importance, for we had seen the extreme of it to the S. E. which was all the Commodore desired; the natives having informed us, that there was no other island to the windward of this. But as we were so near accomplishing our design, we did not entirely abandon the idea of weathering it, and continued to ply. On Sunday, the 20th, at noon, the S. E. point bore S. distant three leagues. The snowy hills bore W. N. W. and we were within four miles of the nearest shore. In the afternoon we were visited by some of the inhabitants, who came off in their canoes, bringing with them pigs and plantains: the latter were highly acceptable, we having been without vegetables for some days; but this supply was scarcely sufficient for one day; we therefore stood in the next morning, till within about four miles of the land, when a number of canoes came off, laden with provisions. The people continued trading with us till four o'clock in the afternoon, at which time having obtained a good supply, we made sail, stretching off to the northward. In our intercourse with the people of this island, we met with less reserve and suspicion, than we had ever experienced among any of the Indian tribes. They frequently sent up into the ship, the articles they meant to barter, and afterwards came in themselves, to traffic on the quarter deck. The inhabitants of Otaheite, whom we so often visited, had not that confidence in our integrity. It is but justice to observe, that the natives of Owhyhee never attempted to over-reach us in exchanges, nor to commit a single theft. They perfectly understood trading, and clearly comprehended the reason of our plying upon the coast: for though they brought off plenty of pigs, and other provisions, they were particular in keeping up the price, and rather than dispose of them at what they thought under the value, they would carry them to shore again.

Tuesday, the 22nd, at eight o'clock A. M. we tacked to the southward. At noon, in lat. 20 deg. 28 min. 30 sec. the snowy peak bore S. W. half S. the preceding day we had a good view of it, and the quantity of snow seemed to have increased, and to extend lower down the hill. We stood to the S. E. till midnight, when we tacked till four. We had hopes of weathering the island, and should have succeeded, if a calm had not ensued, and left us to the mercy of a swell, which impelled us towards the land, from which we were not above the distance of two leagues. Some light pulls of wind, however, took us out of danger. As we lay in this situation, some islanders came off with hogs, fowls, and fruit. From one of the canoes we got a goose, little larger than a Muscovy duck. The colour of its plumage was dark grey; the bill and legs were black. Having purchased what the natives had brought off, we made sail, and stretched to the north. At midnight we tacked and stood to the S. E. in order to examine the weathermost side of the island, where, we were told, there was a safe harbour. In this attempt the Discovery had her main-top-mast stay-sail split, and by continuing standing to the north, she lost sight of our ship, the Resolution. Heavy complaints again prevailed among her company. The weather continuing tempestuous, their sufferings on this account, from incessant labour, and scanty of provisions, were grown confessedly grievous. Their grog, that had been stopped at our arrival on the coast, was now dealt to them as usual, and it was only by the kindest treatment from their officers, that the men could be kept to their duty. On Thursday the 24th, at day-light, she was not

in sight, but, at this time, the weather being hazy, we thought she might be following us. At noon we observed in lat. 19 deg. 55 min. and in long. 205 deg. 3 min. the S. E. point of the island bearing S. by E. six leagues distant; the other extreme bore N. 60 deg. W. when we were two leagues from the nearest shore. In the evening at six o'clock, the southernmost part of the island bore S. W. the nearest shore being seven miles distant. We had, therefore, now succeeded in our endeavours, in getting to the windward of the island. The Discovery was not yet in sight, but as the wind was favourable for her to follow us, we expected she would shortly join us. We, therefore, kept cruising off this point of the island, till Captain Clerke was no longer expected here. It was at length conjectured, that he was gone to leeward, in order to meet us that way, not having been able to weather the N. E. part of the island. Keeping generally at the distance of from five to ten leagues from the land, one canoe only came off to us till the 28th, when about a dozen appeared, bringing, as usual, the produce of the island. We were concerned that the people had been at the trouble of coming, as we could not possibly trade with them, not having yet consumed our former stock; and we were convinced by experience, that the hogs could not be kept alive, nor the roots be many days preserved from putrefaction. It was our intention, however, not to leave this part of the island before we had procured a good supply, knowing we could not easily return to it, if it should hereafter be found expedient so to do. On Wednesday the 30th, we began to be in want, but a calm prevented us from approaching the shore. A breeze, however, sprung up at midnight, which enabled us to stand in for land, at day-break, of the 31st. At ten o'clock A. M. the islanders visited us, bringing with them a quantity of fruit and roots, but only three small pigs. This scanty supply was, perhaps, owing to our not having purchased what they lately brought off; yet, for the purposes of traffic, we brought to, but were interrupted shortly with an excessive rain; and, indeed, we were too far from the shore; nor could we venture to go nearer, as we could not, for a moment, depend upon the wind's continuing where it was. The swell too was extremely high, and set obliquely upon the shore, where it broke in a most frightful surf. We had fine weather in the evening, and passed the night in making boards.

On Friday, the 1st of January, the atmosphere was laden with heavy clouds. A. D. 1779 and the New Year was ushered in with a heavy rain. We had a light breeze southerly, with some calms. At ten the rain ceased, the sky became clear, and the wind freshened. Being now about four or five miles from the shore, some canoes arrived with hogs, fruit, and roots. We traded till three in the afternoon; when, being pretty well supplied, we made sail, in order to proceed to the lee side of the island, in search of the Discovery. We stretched to the eastward till midnight, when the wind favoured us, and we went upon the other tack. The 2nd, 3d, and 4th, we passed in running down the S. E. side of the island, standing off and on during the nights, and employing part of each day in lying to, in order to give the natives an opportunity of trading with us. They frequently came off, at the distance of five leagues from the shore; but never brought much with them, either from a fear of losing their articles in the sea, or from the uncertainty of a market. On Tuesday the 5th, in the morning, we passed the south point of the island, in lat. 18 deg. 54 min. beyond which the coast trends N. 60 deg. W. A large village is situated on this point, many of whose inhabitants thronged off to the ship with hogs and women. The latter could not possibly be prevented from coming on board; and they were less reserved than any females we had ever seen. Indeed, they seemed to have visited us with no other view than to make a tender of their persons. Having obtained a quantity of salt, we purchased only such hogs as were large enough for salting; refusing all those that were under size: and we could seldom procure any that exceeded

the weather being hazy, we
 sailing us. At noon we ob-
 in, and in long. 205 deg. 3
 island bearing S. by E. six
 extreme bearing N. 60 deg. W.
 from the nearest shore. In
 the southernmost part of the
 all shore being seven miles
 now succeeded in our en-
 windward of the island.
 in sight, but as the wind
 blow us, we expected the
 e, therefore, kept cruising
 till Captain Clerke was no
 was at length conjectured,
 in order to meet us that
 to weather the N. E. part of
 ally at the distance of from
 land, one canoe only came
 about a dozen appeared,
 ce of the island. We were
 had been at the trouble of
 sibly trade with them, nor
 rmer stock; and we were
 at the hogs could not be
 many days preserved from
 attention, however, not to
 before we had procured a
 ould not easily return to it,
 und expedient so to do.
 began to be in want, but
 approaching the shore. A
 it midnight, which enabled
 y-break, of the 31st. At
 sts visited us, bringing with
 roots, but only three small
 as, perhaps, owing to our
 ey lately brought off; yet,
 brought to, but were in-
 cessive rain; and, indeed,
 ore; nor could we venture
 t, for a moment, depend
 here it was. The swell too
 obliquely upon the shore,
 hful surf. We had fine
 passed the night in nak-

ary, the at-
 vey clouds; A. D. 1779
 ed in with a heavy rain.
 ly, with some calms. At
 came clear, and the wind
 four or five miles from
 ed with hogs, fruit, and
 in the afternoon; when,
 made sail, in order to pro-
 in, in search of the Dis-
 eastward till midnight,
 and we went upon the
 14th, we passed in run-
 island, standing off and
 iving part of each day
 e natives an opportunity
 quently came off, at the
 the shore; but never
 er from a fear of losing
 in the uncertainty of a
 n, in the morning, we
 land, in lat. 18 deg. 54
 trends N. 60 deg. W.
 is point, many of whose
 e ship with hogs and
 possibly be prevented
 y were less reserved than
 Indeed, they seemed
 view than to uske a
 ng obtained a quantity
 ch hogs as were large
 l those that were under
 cure any that exceeded
 the

the weight of 60 pounds. Happily for us, we had
 still some vegetables remaining, as we were now sup-
 plied with but few of those productions. Indeed, from
 the appearance of this part of the country, it seemed in-
 capable of affording them. Evident marks presented
 themselves of its having been laid waste by the explo-
 sion of a volcano; and though we had not seen any thing
 of the kind, yet the devastation it had made, in the
 neighbourhood, was very visible. The natives having
 now left us, we run a few miles down the coast in the
 evening, and passed the night in standing off and on.
 The next morning, being Thursday the 7th, we were
 again visited by the natives. Being not far from the
 shore, Captain Cook sent Mr. Bligh, in a boat, in order
 to found the coast, and also to go ashore, in search of
 fresh water. On his return, he reported, that, within
 two cables length of the shore, he found no soundings
 with a line of 160 fathoms; that, on the land, he could
 discover no stream or spring; that there was some rain-
 water in holes, upon the rocks, which the spray of the
 sea had rendered brackish; and, that the whole country
 was composed of flags and ashes, interspersed with a
 few plants. Between ten and eleven, to our great sa-
 tisfaction, the Discovery made her appearance, coming
 round the south point of the island, and joined us about
 one. Captain Clerke came on board, and acquainted
 us, that having cruised four or five days where we were
 separated, he plied round the east side of the island;
 where meeting with tempestuous weather, he had been
 driven from the coast. He had one of the islanders
 on board all this time, who had refused to leave the ship,
 though opportunities had been in his favour. At noon
 we observed in lat. 19 deg. 1 min. long. 203 deg. 26
 min. the nearest part of the coast being two leagues dis-
 tant. On the 8th, at day-break, we perceived, that
 while we were plying in the night, the current had car-
 ried us back considerably to the windward; and that
 we were now off the S. W. point of the island, where
 we brought to, in order to enable the inhabitants to trade
 with us. We spent the night in standing off and on.
 Four men and ten women, who came on board the pre-
 ceding day, were with us still. The Commodore not
 liking the company of the latter, we stood in shore on
 the 9th, about noon, solely with the view of getting rid
 of our guests; when some canoes coming off, we em-
 braced the opportunity of sending them away.

On Sunday the 10th, in the morning, we had light
 airs from the N. W. and calms; at eleven, the wind
 freshened at N. N. W. which so greatly retarded us,
 that, in the evening, at eight o'clock, the fourth snowy
 hill bore 1 deg. 30 min. E. On the 17th, at four o'clock,
 A. M. the wind being at W. we made for the land, in
 expectation of getting some refreshments. The natives
 seeing us near them, began to come off, and we con-
 tinued trading with them the whole day: though we
 procured but a very scanty supply, many of those who
 came off in their canoes not having a single thing to
 barter. From this circumstance, it appeared that
 this part of the island was extremely poor, and had al-
 ready furnished us with every thing they could spare.
 Tuesday the 12th was employed in plying off and on,
 with a fresh gale at west. A mile from the shore we
 found ground, at the depth of 55 fathoms. At five
 o'clock P. M. we stood to the southward, and at mid-
 night we had a calm. On the 13th, we had a small
 breeze S. S. E. and steered for the land. A few ca-
 noes came off to us with some hogs; but they brought
 no vegetables, which we now much wanted. In the
 evening, we had got the length of the S. W. point of
 the island, but, by the veering of the wind, we lost in the
 night all that we had gained in the day. Being in the
 same situation on the 14th, in the morning, some more
 canoes attended us; but they brought not any articles
 we stood in need of. We were now destitute of fruit
 and roots, and therefore obliged to have recourse to our
 sea provisions. Several canoes, at this juncture, ar-
 rived from the northward, from whence we were sup-
 plied with some hogs and roots. On Friday, the 15th,
 we had variable light airs till five in the afternoon, when
 a breeze sprung up at E. N. E. and enabled us to steer
 No. 70.

along shore to the northward. This day the weather
 was remarkably fine, and we had plenty of company;
 many of them continued with us all night, and their
 canoes were towed astern. On the 16th, at day-break,
 seeing the appearance of a bay, the boats from both
 ships were sent out to examine it; for we were informed
 there was a harbour, wherein we might safely moor,
 and where we should be supplied with materials to refit
 the ships, and provisions to victual them. In the even-
 ing the boats returned with the joyful news, that they
 had succeeded in their search, and that the harbour pro-
 mised fair to answer all that had been said of it. While
 our boats were employed in towing the ships into the
 bay, we had a view of the greatest number of spectators
 in canoes, and on shore, that we had ever seen assem-
 bled together in any place during this voyage. It was
 concluded that their number could not be less than a
 or 3000. While hovering on the coast, we had some-
 times been visited by 200 canoes at a time, who came to
 trade, and who brought us provisions when the weather
 would permit: we likewise obtained from them great
 quantities of cordage, salt, and divers other manufac-
 tures of the island, which the Commodore purchased
 for the use of the ships, and without which we could
 not well have proceeded; for during the blowing weath-
 er, our cordage snapped rope after rope, so that our
 spare hands were employed incessantly, in knotting and
 splicing. In the course of this day, we were attended
 by, at least, 1000 canoes, crowded with people, and
 laden with hogs, and other articles to barter. We
 were perfectly convinced of their peaceable intentions,
 not a single person having a weapon of any sort with
 him. Among such numbers as we had frequently on
 board, it might be expected, that some of them would
 discover a thievish disposition. One of them made off
 with a boat's rudder, and was not detected till it was
 too late to recover it. The Commodore imagined this
 to be a proper opportunity to show these islanders the
 use of our fire arms. Two or three muskets, and as
 many four pounders were, by his orders, fired over the
 canoe which went away with the rudder: but it not be-
 ing our intention that the shot should take effect, the
 surrounding multitude were more surprized than terri-
 fied. At the approach of night, the most consider-
 able part of our visitors retired to the shore; but many
 at their own earnest request, were permitted to sleep on
 board: but we had good reason to think, that curiosity,
 at least with some of them, was not the only motive;
 for the next morning several articles were missing, in
 consequence of which orders were given, not to permit
 so many to stay with us on any future night. On Sun-
 day the 17th, by eleven o'clock A. M. we were safely
 moored, in company with the Discovery, in 18 fathoms
 water. The bay where we lay at anchor, called by the
 natives Karakakooa, is a convenient harbour; and hav-
 ing suffered much in our masts and rigging, we were
 happy at last to find so proper a place to refit. We
 cast anchor within a quarter of a mile of the N. E.
 shore; the south point of the bay bearing S. by W.
 and the north point W. half N. After we were moored
 the ships continued to be much crowded with the na-
 tives, and surrounded by a vast multitude of them,
 besides hundreds that, like fish, were swimming about
 the two ships. We were struck with the singularity of
 this scene, and particularly pleased with enriching our
 voyage with this important new discovery, owing to
 the opportunity of thus revisiting Sandwich Islands, and
 in consequence of not having succeeded in finding a
 northern passage homeward.

The bay of Karakakooa is situated in the district of
 Akona, on the west side of the island of Owhyhee. It
 extends about a mile in depth, and is bounded by two
 points of land, bearing S. E. and N. W. from each
 other, at the distance of half a league. The north
 point is flat and barren, on which is situated the village
 of Kowrova. A more considerable village stands at
 the bottom of the bay, called Kakooa, near a grove of
 stately cocoa-trees. A high rocky cliff, inaccessible
 from the sea shore, runs between them. Near the
 coast, on the south side, the land has a rugged appear-
 7 G

ance; beyond which the country rises gradually, and abounds with cultivated inclosures, and groves of cocoa-trees. The habitations of the people are scattered about in great plenty. Round the bay the shore is covered with a black coral rock, except at Kakooa, where there is an excellent sandy beach, with a Morai at one extremity, and a spring of fresh water at the other. The natives perceiving our intention to anchor in the bay, came off, as we have before observed, in astonishing numbers, expressing their joy by singing, shouting, and the most extravagant gestures. The decks, sides, and rigging of our ships were covered with them. Women and boys, who were unable to procure canoes, amused themselves the whole day in playing in the water. One of the chiefs who visited us, was named Pareca. Though a young man, we soon discovered him to be a person of great authority. He told Captain Cook that he was Jakaneec to the sovereign of the island, who was then on a military expedition at Blowee; from whence he was expected to return in a few days. Some presents from the Commodore attached him to our interest, and we found him extremely useful. Before we had been long at anchor, the Discovery had so many people hanging on one side, that she was seen to heel considerably; and our people found it impossible to prevent the crowds from pressing into her. Apprehensive that she might receive some injury, Captain Cook communicated his sentiments to Pareca, who instantly cleared the ship of her incumbrances, and dispersed the canoes with which she was surrounded. From this circumstance it appeared to us, that the chiefs of this island exercise a most despotic power over the commonalty. An instance similar to this happened on board the Resolution; where the crowd so far impeded the ordinary business of the ship, that we found it necessary to apply to Kancena, another chief, who had also attached himself particularly to Captain Cook. The inconvenience we suffered was no sooner mentioned, than he ordered the natives to quit the vessel immediately; when, without a moment's hesitation, we saw them all jump overboard, except one person who loitered behind, and by his manner expressed some degree of unwillingness to obey. Kancena observing this contempt of his authority, took hold of him immediately, and threw him headlong into the sea. These two chiefs were exceedingly well proportioned, and had countenances remarkably pleasing. Kancena was as fine a figure as we had ever seen. His height was about six feet, his features were regular and expressive, his deportment was easy, firm, and graceful, and he had lively dark eyes. Mention has already been made, that while we were cruising off this island, the inhabitants had acted fairly and honestly, without manifesting the least propensity to theft; which was the more remarkable, because those with whom we had hitherto had any dealings were people of the lowest rank, such as fishermen and servants: but the case was now quite altered. The multitude of islanders who blocked up the ships, afforded an opportunity of pilfering without danger of discovery, and even if discovered, must have escaped with impunity from our inferiority of number. To the encouragement of their chiefs, this alteration might also be attributed; for, as we frequently traced the booty to some great men who had it in their possession, there is little doubt but these depredations were made at their instigation. When the Resolution had got into her station, the two chiefs, Pareca, and Kancena, brought a third on board, whose name was Koah. He was represented to us as a priest, and one who, in his early time of life, had distinguished himself as a warrior. He was a little old emaciated figure, having fore red eyes, and his body covered with a leprous scurf, occasioned by the immoderate use of the ava. Being conducted to the cabin, he approached the Commodore with the greatest deference, threw a piece of red cloth over his shoulders, and retreating a few paces, made an offering of a small pig, at the same time pronouncing a discourse of a considerable length. This ceremony, during our continuance at Owhyhee, was often repeated, and from a va-

riety of circumstances, appeared to us to be a kind of religious adoration. Red cloth is what their idols are arrayed with, and a pig is their common offering to the Eatooas. At the conclusion of this ceremony, Koah dined with us, and eat heartily of what was provided for the table; but, like most of the islanders in these seas, he could hardly be induced to taste our wine or spirits a second time. In the evening, the Commodore, Mr. King, and Mr. Bailey, accompanied him on shore. As soon as we landed on the beach, we were preceded by four men, bearing each a wand tipped with dog's hair, and pronouncing with a loud voice, a short sentence. The crowd which had assembled on the shore, retired at our approach, and not an individual was to be seen, except a few persons who had prostrated themselves on the ground, near the habitations of the adjacent village.

Previous to our account of the peculiar ceremonies respecting the homage paid to Captain Cook, it may not be unnecessary to describe the Morai, already mentioned, situated on the beach of Kakooa. It consists of a square solid pile of stones, 40 yards in length, 23 broad, and 14 feet high. The top of it is flat, and it is surrounded with a wooden railing, whereon are displayed the skulls of those natives who had been sacrificed on the death of their chiefs. A ruinous wooden building is situated in the center of the area, connected with the railing by a stone wall, dividing the whole space into two parts. Five poles, about 20 feet high, supported an irregular kind of scaffold, on the side next the country; and on that towards the sea, were two small houses, with a covered communication. To the top of this pile we were conducted by Koah. At our entrance we saw two large wooden images, with most distorted features, having a long piece of wood of a conical form, inverted, proceeding from the top of their heads. Here Captain Cook was received by a tall young man, having a long beard, who presented him to the images, and chanted a kind of hymn, in which he was alluded by Koah. We were then led to that side of the Morai where the poles were erected; at the foot of which 12 images were erected, and ranged in the form of a semicircle; the middle figure having a high table before it, like the Whatta of Otaheite, on which we saw a putrid hog, and under it some cocoa-nuts, plantains, potatoes, bread-fruit, and pieces of sugar-cane. Captain Cook was conducted under this stand by Koah; who, having taken down the hog, held it towards him; when having again addressed him in a long and vehement speech, he suffered it to fall to the ground, and ascended the scaffold with him, though every moment in danger of falling. We now beheld, advancing in solemn procession, and entering the top of the Morai, ten men bearing a live hog, and a piece of red cloth of considerable dimensions. Advancing a few paces they stopped, and prostrated themselves; and Kaireekeca, the tall young man already mentioned, approaching them, received the cloth, and carried it to Koah, who wrapped it round the Commodore, and made him an offering of the hog. The Commodore was now aloft, in a situation truly whimsical, being swathed in red cloth, and hardly able to keep his hold on the rotten scaffolding. In this situation he was entertained with the chanting of Koah and Kaireekeca, sometimes alternately and sometimes in concert. After this service was performed, which was of considerable duration, Koah let the hog drop; upon which he immediately descended with Captain Cook. He then conducted him to the images just mentioned, to each of which he expressed himself in a sneering tone, and snapped his fingers at them as he passed. He then presented him to that in the centre, which, from its being habited in red cloth, appeared to be in the highest estimation. Before this figure Koah fell prostrate, and requested of Captain Cook to do the same; which he readily submitted to, being determined to follow Koah's directions throughout the whole of a ridiculous ceremony, in which his curiosity and vanity were equally gratified. We were now conveyed into the other division of the Morai, where a space of about 12 feet square was sunk three feet below the level of the area.

ered to us to be a kind of cloth is what their idols are their common offering to the of this ceremony, Koah tily of what was provided of the islanders in these duced to taste our wine or evening, the Commodore, accompanied him on shore. e beach, we were preceded a wand tipped with dog's. a loud voice, a short sen- ad assembled on the shore, d not an individual was to who had prostrated them- the habitations of the adja-

of the peculiar ceremonies to Captain Cook, it may be the Morai, already men- of Kakooa. It consists of 4, 40 yards in length, at the top of it is flat, and it is ling, whereon are displayed ho had been sacrificed on a ruinous wooden building. The area, connected with the ding the whole space into ut 20 feet high, supported on the side next the coun- sea, were two small bouca- tion. To the top of this oah. At our entrance we s, with most distorted sea- wood of a conical form, in- top of their heads. Here y a tall young man, having him to the images, and which he was assiluted by to that side of the Morai at the foot of which a ged in the form of a fem- ing a high table before r, on which we saw a putrid -nuts, plantains, potatoes, gar-cane. Captain Cook id by Koah, who, having wards him; when having and vehement speech, he d, and ascended the scaf- moment in danger of fall- ing in solemn procession, Morai, ten men bearing a cloth of considerable di- paces they stopped, and Kairekeea, the tall young roaching them, received Koah, who wrapped it made him an offering of as now aloft, in a situa- athed in red cloth, and in the rotten scaffolding, ained with the chanting mes alternately and some- service was performed, ation, Koah let the hog diately defended with aducted him to the images ch he expressed himself d his fingers at them as him to that in the cen- ed in red cloth, appeared Before this figure Koah Captain Cook to do the ed to, being determined oughout the whole of a his curiosity and vanity ere now conveyed into where a space of about et below the level of the

arca.

area. When we had descended into this, the Commo- dore was seated immediately between the two idols, one of his arms being supported by Koah, and the other by Mr. King. A second procession of natives at this time arrived with a baked hog, a pudding, some cocoa-nuts, bread fruit, and other vegetables. As they drew near, Kairekeea placed himself before them, and presented the hog to the Commodore in the usual manner, chant- ing as before; and his companions making regular re- sponses; but we observed their speeches and responses grew gradually shorter, and towards the conclusion, Kairekeea did not exceed three or four words, which was answered by the word Orono. This was a common appellation among the natives. Sometimes it was ap- plied by them to an invisible being, inhabiting heaven; at others it was used as a title of high rank in the island. At the conclusion of this offering, the natives seted themselves fronting us, and began to cut up the baked hog, to break the cocoa nuts, and to peel the vegetables. Others were employing in chewing the ava, and making the liquor in the same manner as it is extracted and done at the Friendly Isles. Kairekeea then chewed part of the kernel of a cocoa-nut, and wrapped it in a piece of cloth, with which he rubbed the Captain's head, face, hands, arms and shoulders. The ava was afterwards handed round, and when we had all tasted it, Koah and Pareea pulled the flesh of the hog in pieces, and pro- ceeded to put some of it in our mouths. Mr. King had no particular objection to being fed by Pareea, who was remarkably cleanly in his person; but Captain Cook, to whom a piece was presented by Koah, could not swallow a morsel, the putrid hog being strong in his recollection; and as the old man, from motives of civ- ility, had chewed it for him, his reluctance was much increased. This ceremony being concluded, we quitted the Morai, after distributing among the populace some pieces of iron, and other articles, with which they were much delighted. We were then conducted, in proces- sion, to the boats, the men with wands attending, and pronouncing sentences as before. We returned on board full of the idea of what we had seen, and perfectly satis- fied with the honest dispositions of our new friends. Of the singularity and novelty of the various ceremonies performed upon this occasion, we can only form con- jectures; but they were, in our opinion, highly expres- sive of respect, on the part of the inhabitants; and, as far as related to Captain Cook, they approached to ad- doration. Indeed the Commodore now seemed to be considered by them as their E-a-thu-ah-nu-chi; for from this time an Indian Chief, by the king's order, was placed at the head of his pinnace, at whose command the natives, in their canoes, as he passed them, were all silent, and would prostrate themselves till he was out of sight; and this they would do when the Captain was a- lone; but the chief had orders from the king, that whenever the Captain came ashore in his pinnace, to attend him, and conduct him to his house, which the sailors now called Cook's Altar.

On Monday, the 18th, Mr. King went on shore, at- tended with a guard of eight marines, having received orders to erect the observatory in a proper situation; by which means the waterers, and other working parties on shore, might be superintended and protected. When we had found a convenient spot for this purpose, almost in the centre of the village, Pareea offered to exercise his power in our behalf, and proposed that some houses should be taken, that our observations might not be ob- structed. This friendly offer, however, was declined, and we made choice of a potatoe field adjoining to the Morai, which was readily granted, and to prevent the intrusion of the natives, the place was consecrated by the priests, who placed their wands round the wall which enclosed it. This interdiction the natives call taboo, a term frequently repeated by these islanders, and seemed to be a word of extensive meaning. In this in- stance, it procured us more privacy than we could have wished. Not any canoes attempted to land near us,

the natives only sat on the wall, not daring to come within the tabooed space, without permission from us. The men, indeed, at our request, would bring provi- sions into the field; but our utmost endeavours were in- effectual to induce the women to give us their com- pany. Presents were tried, but without success. We endeavoured to prevail on Pareea and Koah to bring them: the Eatooa and Terreeboob they said would kill them if they did. This circumstance afforded great amusement to those on board, whither multitudes of people, women particularly, flocked in shoals, inasmuch that they were frequently obliged to clear the vessel, in order to have room to perform their necessary duties. Two or three hundred women were sometimes obliged to throw themselves into the water, where they continued to swim and play, till they could be re-admitted. On the 19th Pareea and Koah left us, in order to attend Terreeboob, who had landed on a distant part of the island. Nothing material happened on board, till Sun- day, the 24th. The caulkers were employed on the sides of the ship, and the rigging was repaired. The salting of hogs was also a principal object of the Com- modore's attention; and as we had improved in this operation since the former voyages, a detail here of the process of it may not be thought improper. To cure the flesh of animals in tropical climates, by salting, has long been thought impracticable; putrefaction mak- ing so rapid a progress, as not to allow the salt to take effect before the meat gets tainted. Captain Cook ap- pears to have been the first navigator who has attempted to make experiments relative to this business. His first attempts in 1774, in his second voyage to the Pacific Ocean, so far succeeded, as to convince him of the error of the vulgar opinion; and as his present voyage was likely to be protracted a year beyond the time that pro- visions had been supplied for the ships, he was obliged to contrive some method of procuring subsistence for the crews, or relinquish the prosecution of his discov- eries. He therefore renewed his attempts, and his most sanguine expectations were completely answered. The hogs we cured were of various sizes, from four to ten or twelve stone, fourteen pounds to the stone. They were always killed in the afternoon; and, after scalding off the hair, and removing the entrails, the pig or hog was cut into pieces, from four to eight pounds each, and the bones taken out of the legs and chins; in the larger hogs, the ribs were also taken out. The pieces were then examined circumspcctly, and wiped, and the coagulated blood taken from the veins. After this they were given to the salters before they were cold; and having been well rubbed with salt, they were placed in a heap on a stage in the open air, covered with planks, and pressed with very heavy weights. The next even- ing they were again well wiped, and carefully examined, when the suspicious parts were taken away. This done, they were put into a tub of strong pickle; after which they were examined once or twice a day; and if it hap- pened that any one piece had not taken the salt, which may be discovered by the smell of the pickle, they were instantly taken out and examined again, the sound pic- ces being put into fresh pickle. This, however, did not often happen. At the end of six days, they were ex- amined for the last time; and after being slightly pressed, they were put into barrels, having a thin layer of salt between them. Mr. King brought home some barrels of this pork, that had been pickled at Owhyhee, in Jan- uary, 1779, which was tasted in England, near Christ- mas, 1780, by several gentlemen, who were all unani- mous in their opinion, that it was perfectly sound, sweet and wholesome food. We have been informed by Mr. Mancover, a Midshipman on board the Discovery, and afterwards Lieutenant of the Martin sloop of war, that he tried the method here recommended, both with English and Spanish pork, during a cruise in the Span- ish main, A. D. 1782, and it succeeded beyond his ex- pectations.

C H A P. XIV.

Society of priests discovered by accident—Our reception by them—Mean artifice of Koah—Arrival of Terreeboob, king of the island—The Bay tabooed on that occasion—The inhabitants brought to obedience—A remarkable ceremony—Visit from the king—Returned by Captain Cook—The civility of the natives, who are much addicted to thieving—Their readiness in conducting one of our parties up the country—A boxing match described—Death of William Watman, a seaman—Behaviour of the priests at his funeral—The vailing and images on the Morai purchased—The natives inquisitive about our departure; and their opinion respecting the object of our voyage—Presents from the king to Captain Cook—The Resolution and Discovery quit the island; but the former being damaged by a gale of wind, they are obliged to return—The behaviour of the islanders on our coming again to anchor in Karakakooa Bay, somewhat mysterious—A theft committed on board the Discovery, and its consequences—The thieves pursued up the country—Scuffle between the natives and our people—The pinnace attacked and plundered—The crew obliged to quit her—Captain Cook's reflections on the occasion—Attempt made at the observatory—The Discovery's cutter stolen—Means used for its recovery—Captain Cook goes on shore to invite the king and his two sons on board—His wife and the chiefs oppose his inclination to go with the Commodore—A contest arises on this occasion—Intelligence arrives of a chief having been killed by one of our people—The alarming consequences—A chief threatens Captain Cook, and is shot by him—A general attack ensues—The melancholy catastrophe—Our Commodore is stabbed in the back, and falls with his face into the water—This chapter concludes with the death of the able, enterprising, and much lamented Commander, Captain James Cook.

WE had not long been settled at the observatory, before we discovered the habitations of a society of priests, who had excited our curiosity by their regular attendance at the Morai. Their huts were erected round a pond, inclosed with a group of cocoa-nut trees, by which they were separated from the beach and the village, and gave the situation an air of religious retirement. Captain Cook being made acquainted with this discovery, he resolved to visit them, and, expecting the manner of his reception would be singular, he took Mr. Webber with him, to enable him to represent the ceremony in a drawing. When arrived at the beach, the Commodore was conducted to Harrenno-Orono, or the house of Orono. On his approaching this sacred place, he was seated at the foot of a wooden idol, resembling that we had seen at the Morai. Here Mr. King again supported one of his arms. He was then arrayed in red cloth, and Kaireekkea, assisted by 12 priests, presented a pig with the usual ceremonies. After this solemnity, the pig was strangled, and thrown into the embers of a fire, prepared for that purpose. When the hair was singed off, a second offering was made, and the chanting repeated as before; after which the dead pig was held some time under Captain Cook's nose, and then laid with a cocoa-nut at his feet. This part of the ceremony being concluded, the performers sat down; and the *ava* was brewed and handed about: a baked hog was likewise brought in, and we were fed in the same manner as before related on a similar occasion. While we continued in the Bay, whenever the Commodore visited the observatory, Kaireekkea and his assistants presented themselves before him, making an offering of hogs, bread-fruit, cocoa nuts, &c. with the accustomed solemnities. Upon these occasions, some of the inferior chiefs intreated permission to make an offering to the Orono. If their request was complied with, they presented the hog themselves; in the performance of which, their countenances displayed that they were greatly impressed with awe and terror. Kaireekkea and the priests assisted, performing their accustomed orations and hymns. But their civilities extended beyond parade and ceremony: our party on shore were supplied daily by them with hogs and vegetables, sufficient for their subsistence, and to spare; and canoes laden with provisions, were regularly sent off to the ships. Nothing was demanded in return; not even the most distant hint was ever given, that they expected the least compensation. Their manner of conferring favours, appeared more like the discharge of a religious duty, than the result of mere liberality. On our asking to whom we were indebted for all this munificence, we were informed, that it was at the expence of Kaoo, the chief priest, and grandfather to Kaireekkea, who was at this time in the suit of the sovereign of the island. But we had less reason to be satisfied with the behaviour of the Earees, or warrior chiefs, than with that of the priests. In our intercourse with the former, they were always sufficiently attentive to their own interests; and,

besides their propensity to stealing, which may admit of palliation from its universality in these seas, they had other artifices equally dishonourable. The following is one instance, in which we discovered, with regret, that our good friend Koah was a party principally concerned. The chiefs who made us presents of hogs, were always generously rewarded; in consequence of which we were supplied with more than we could consume. On these occasions, Koah, who attended us constantly, petitioned usually for those that we did not absolutely want, and they were given him of course. A pig was one day presented to us by a man, whom Koah introduced as a chief. The pig we knew to be one of those that had a short time before been given to Koah. Suspecting an imposition, we found upon enquiry, that the pretended chief was one of the common people; and from other concurrent circumstances, we were perfectly convinced, that this was not the first time of our having been made the dupes of Koah's low cunning.

Sunday, the 24th, we were not a little surprized to find, that not any canoes were permitted to put off, and that the natives were confined to their houses. At length we were informed, that the Bay was tabooed, and that intercourse with us was interdicted, on account of the arrival of Terreeboob, their king. On the 25th, we endeavoured by threats and promises, to induce the inhabitants to revisit the ships. Some of them were venturing to put off, when we perceived a chief very active in driving them away: to make him desist, a musquet was fired over his head, which produced the desired effect; for refreshments were soon after to be had as usual. In the afternoon, the ships were privately visited by Terreeboob, attended only by one canoe, containing his wife and family. When he entered the ship, he fell on his face, as a mark of submission to the Commodore, as did all his attendants; and after having made an oration, which none of us understood, he presented the Captain with three barbed hogs, who, in return, put a necklace, composed of several strings of various coloured beads, round his neck, and gave him two looking-glasses, a large glass bowl, with some nails, and other trifles, which he received with much seeming satisfaction, and dispatched immediately a messenger on shore, who soon returned with several large hogs, cocoa-nuts, plantains, and sugar-canes, as much as our small cutter could carry. Having remained on deck about an hour, admiring the construction of the ship, he was conducted into the great cabin, where wine was offered him, which he refused: neither was there any thing he would take, except a head of bread-fruit; but he appeared delighted with every thing he saw; and before he departed in the evening, gave us to understand that he had 6000 fighting men, always in readiness to war against his enemies. On the 26th, at noon, the king came in great state from the village of Kowrova, and, in a large canoe, with some of his attendants in two others, paddled slowly towards the ships. Their appearance was really most superb. Terreeboob and his chiefs were in the first vessel, at-

arrival of Terreebooo, king of the ceremony—Visit from the king—Their realness in conducting a seaman—Behaviour of the natives about our departure; and The Resolution and Discovery The behaviour of the islanders on board the Discovery, and the pinnace attacked and captured made at the observatory—The king and his two sons on this occasion—Indelicacy of the chief threatens Captain Cook, is stabbed in the back, and surprizing, and much lamented

stealing, which may admit of a probability in these seas, they had no doubt. The following day we discovered, with regret, a party principally composed of us, presents of hogs, and in consequence of more than we could consume, Koah, who attended us, was angry for those that we did not give him of course. A pig was given to us by a man, whom Koah told us we knew to be one of those before given to Koah. We found upon enquiry, that some of the common people, in such circumstances, we were surprised was not the first time of our giving Koah's low cunning, but not a little surprized to be permitted to put off, and to their houses. At length the Bay was tabooed, and that on account of the king. On the 25th, we endeavoured to induce the inhabitants. Some of them were convinced a chief very active in him desired, a musquet was introduced the desired effect, after to be had as usual. We were privately visited by one canoe, containing his entered the ship, he fell on his knees to the Commodore, and after having made an oration, he presented the king's hogs, who, in return, put several strings of various colours, and gave him two look-glasses, with some nails, and other things with much seeming satisfaction. A messenger on shore, brought several large hogs, cocoa-nuts, as much as our small cutter could carry on deck about an hour, the ship, he was conducted to the Commodore, who offered him, which he refused, but he appeared delighted before he departed in the canoe that he had 6000 fighting men to war against his enemies. Some came in great haste from a large canoe, with some men, paddled slowly towards us, and were really most surprising. We were in the first vessel, arrived

rayed in feathered cloaks, and helmets, and armed with spears and daggers. In the second came Kaoo, the chief priest, having their idols displayed on red cloth. They were figures of an enormous size, made of thick wicker-work, and curiously ornamented with mantles of feathers of various colours. Their eyes were large pearl oysters, with a black nut placed in the middle. A double row of the fangs of dogs was fixed in each of their mouths, which, as well as the rest of their features, appeared strangely distorted. The third canoe was laden with hogs and vegetables. Their images they call E-ah-tu-a, signifying their warrior gods, without which they never engage in battle. As they advanced, the priests chanted their hymns with great solemnity. After paddling round the vessels, they did not come on board as we expected, but made immediately towards the shore, at the beach where our tents were fixed. When landed, they hauled up all their canoes on the beach, drew up in martial order, and, led by the king, marched in ranks to their place of worship, distant from our tents about 50 yards; but, seeing the ground tabooed by small green boughs and wands, that marked the boundary, they all made a circuit with their images in procession, till they arrived at their Morai, where they placed their idols, and deposited their arms. Captain Cook, when he saw the king's intention of going on shore, went thither also, and landed with Mr. King and others, almost at the same instant. We ushered the chiefs into our tent, and the king had hardly been seated, when he rose up, and threw gracefully over the Captain's shoulders the rich feathered cloak that he himself wore, placed a helmet on his head, and presented him with a curious fan. Five or six other cloaks, of great beauty and value, were spread at the Commodore's feet. Four hogs were now brought forward by the king's attendants, together with bread fruit, &c. Then followed the ceremony of Terreebooo's changing names with Captain Cook; the strongest pledge of friendship among all the islanders of the Pacific Ocean: A solemn procession now advanced, consisting of priests, preceded by a venerable old personage, followed by a train of people leading large hogs, others being laden with potatoes, plantains, &c. We could perceive easily, by the countenance and the gestures of Kaireekeea, that the old man who headed the procession, was the chief priest, on whose bounty we were told we had so long subsisted. He wrapped a piece of red cloth round the shoulders of Captain Cook; and in the usual form, presented him with a pig. He was then seated next the king, and Kaireekeea and their attendants began their vocal ceremonies, Kaoo and the chiefs assisting in the responses. In the person of this king, we were surprized to recognize the same emaciated old man who came on board the Resolution, from the N. E. side of the island of Mowee; and we perceived that several of his attendants were the same persons, who at that time continued with us the whole night. Among these were the king's two youngest sons, the elder about the age of sixteen; and Maiha-Maiha, his nephew, whom we could not immediately recollect, having had his hair plastered over with a dirty paste and powder, which was no small improvement to the most savage countenance we had ever seen. The formalities of this meeting being ended, Captain Cook conducted Terreebooo and several of his chiefs on board our ship, where they were received with every possible mark of attention and respect; and the Commodore, as a compensation for the feathered cloak, put a linen shirt upon the sovereign, and girt his own hanger round him. Kaoo, and about half a dozen other ancient chiefs, remained on shore. All this time not a canoe was permitted to remain in the Bay, and those natives who did not confine themselves to their huts, lay prostrate on the ground. Before the king quitted the Resolution, he granted leave for the natives to trade with us as usual; but the women, we know not on what account, were still interdicted by the taboo; that is, to remain at home, and not have any kind of intercourse with us. At this time the behaviour of the inhabitants was so civil and inoffensive, that all apprehensions of danger were totally vanished. We trusted ourselves among them at

No. 71.

all times, and upon all occasions, without the least reserve. Our officers ventured frequently up the country, either singly, or in small parties, and sometimes continued over the whole night. In all places the people flocked about us, anxious to afford every assistance in their power, and appeared highly gratified if we condescended to accept of their services. Variety of innocent arts were practised to attract our notice, or to delay our departure. The boys and girls ran through their villages, stopping us at every opening where there was a convenient spot for dancing. At one time we were solicited to take a draught of milk from cocoa-nuts, or to accept of such other refreshment as their huts afforded; at another we were encircled by a company of young women, who exerted their skill and ingenuity in amusing us with songs and dances: but though the instances of their generosity and civility were pleasing to us, we could not but dislike that propensity to thieving, which at times they discovered, and to which they were addicted, like all the other islanders in these seas: this was a perplexing circumstance, and obliged us sometimes to exercise a severity, which we should have been happy to have avoided, if it had not been essentially necessary. Some expert swimmers were one day detected under the ships, drawing out the filling nails from the sheathing. This they performed very ingeniously with a flint stone, fastened to the end of a stick. This new art of stealing was a practice so injurious to our vessels, that we fired small shot at the offenders; but that they avoided easily, by diving under the ship's bottom: it therefore became highly necessary to make an example of one of them, which was done by giving him a good flogging on board our consort, the Discovery, where his talent for thieving had been chiefly exercised. About this time, Mr. Nelson, and four other gentlemen, set out on an excursion into the country, in order to examine its natural curiosities and productions, an account of which will be given hereafter. This afforded Kaoo a fresh opportunity of testifying his civility, and exerting his friendly disposition in our favour: for no sooner was he informed of the departure of our party, than he sent after them a large quantity of provisions, with orders that every attention and assistance should be granted them by the inhabitants of those districts through which they should pass. His civility on this occasion was so delicate and disinterested, that even the people he employed were not permitted to accept of the smallest present. At the end of six days the gentlemen returned, without having been able to penetrate farther than twenty miles into the island, owing partly to improper guides, and partly to the nature of the country, which occasioned this expedition to be attended with no small fatigue, and some danger. Mr. Nelson, however, collected a curious assortment of indigenous plants, and some natural curiosities. During their absence, every thing remained quiet at the tents, and the natives supplied the ships with such quantities of provisions, of all kinds, that orders were again given to purchase no more hogs in one day, than could be killed, salted, and stowed away the next day. This order was in consequence of a former one, to purchase all that could be procured for sea stock, by which so many of them were brought on board, that several of them died before they could be properly disposed of.

On Wednesday, the 27th, in the morning, the rudder of our ship was unhung, and sent on shore, in order to undergo a thorough repair. The carpenters at the same time were sent into the country, under the protection and guidance of some of Kaoo's people, to get planks for the head rail work, which was become rotten and decayed. In a visit, on the 28th, from Terreebooo to Captain Clerke, the latter received a present of 30 large hogs, and such a quantity of vegetables as could not be consumed by his crew in less than a week. This being an unexpected visit, made it the more extraordinary. Not having seen any of the sports or exercises of the natives, at our particular request, they entertained us in the evening with a boxing match. A vast concourse of people assembled on a level spot of ground, not far distant from our tents. In the centre, a long

long vacant space was left for them, at the upper end of which the arbitrators presided, under three standards. Slips of cloth of various colours, were pendant from these standards; as were the skins of two wild geese, some small birds, and a few bunches of feathers. The sports being ready to begin, the judges gave the signal, and two combatants appeared in view. They advanced slowly, drawing up their feet very high behind, and rubbing their hands upon the soles. As they came forward, they surveyed each other frequently from head to foot, with an air of contempt, looking archly at the spectators, distorting their features, and practising a variety of unnatural gestures. When they were advanced within the reach of each other, they held both arms straight out before their faces, at which part they always aimed their blows. They struck with a full swing of the arm, which to us had a very awkward appearance. They did not attempt to parry; but endeavoured to elude their adversary's attack, by stooping, or retreating. The battle was decided expeditiously; for if either of them fell, whether by accident, or from a blow, he was deemed vanquished; and the victor expressed his triumph by a variety of strange gestures, which usually excited a loud laugh among the spectators, for which purpose it seemed to be calculated. The successful combatant waited for a second antagonist; and, if again victorious, for a third; and so on, till at last he was defeated. In these combats it was very singular, that, when any two are preparing to attack each other, a third may advance, and make choice of either of them for his antagonist, when the other is under the necessity of withdrawing. If the combat proved long and tedious, or appeared unequal, a chief generally interfered, and concluded it by putting a stick between the combatants. As this exhibition was at our desire, it was universally expected, that some of us would have engaged with the natives; but, though our people received pressing invitations to bear a part, they did not hearken to the challenges, not having forgot the blows they received at the Friendly Islands.

This day died William Watman, a mariner of the gunner's crew. This event we mention particularly, seeing death had hitherto been uncommon among us. He was a man in years, and much respected by Captain Cook. He had served twenty-one years as a marine, and then entered as a seaman in 1772, on board the Resolution, and served with the Commodore in his voyage towards the South Pole. On their return he got admittance into Greenwich Hospital, at the same time with himself; and anxious to follow the fortune of his benefactor, he also quitted it with him, on the Commodore's appointment to the command of the present expedition. Watman had often been subject to slight fevers, in the course of the voyage, and was very infirm when we arrived in the bay; where, having been sent a few days on shore, he thought himself perfectly restored, and requested to return on board. His request was complied with. The day following he had a stroke of the palsy, which in two days afterwards put an end to his life. At the request of Terreeboob, the remains of this faithful seaman were buried in the Morai; the ceremony being performed with great solemnity. Kaoo and his brethren were present at the funeral, who behaved with great decorum, and paid due attention while the service was performing. On our beginning to fill up the grave, they approached it with great awe, and threw in a dead pig, together with some cocoa-nuts and plantains. For three successive nights they surrounded it, sacrificing hogs, and reciting prayers and hymns till morning. At the head of the grave, we erected a post, and nailed thereto a piece of board, whereon was inscribed the name and age of the deceased, and the day of his departure from this life. These memorials we were assured they would not remove, and, it is probable, they will be permitted to remain, so long as such frail materials can endure.

Being much in want of fuel, Captain Cook desired Mr. King to treat with the priests, for the purchase of the railing belonging to the Morai. Mr. King had his doubts respecting the decency of this overture, and ap-

prehended the proposal might be deemed impious; but in this he was much mistaken: for an application being made for the same, they expressed no kind of surprize, and the wood was delivered without the least stipulation. While our people were taking it away, Mr. King saw one of them with a carved image; and, upon enquiry, he was informed, that the whole semicircle (as mentioned in the description of the Morai) had been carried to the boats. Though the natives were spectators of this business, they did not seem to resent it; but on the contrary, had even assisted in the removal. Mr. King thought proper to mention the particulars to Kaoo; who seemed exceedingly indifferent about the matter, begging him only to restore the center image; which was immediately done, and it was conveyed to one of the priest's houses.

For some time, the king, and his chiefs, had been very importunate to know the time of our departure. From this circumstance, Mr. King's curiosity was excited to know the opinion these people had entertained of us, and what they supposed to be the object of our voyage. He took considerable pains to satisfy himself respecting these points; but the only information he could get was, that they supposed we had left our native country on account of the scantiness of provisions, and that we had visited them for the sole purpose of filling our bellies. This conclusion was natural enough, considering the meagre appearance of some of our crew: the voracity with which we devoured their fresh provisions; and our anxiety to purchase as much of it as we were able. It was a matter of entertainment to see the natives patting the bellies of the sailors (who were much improved in sleekness since their arrival at the bay) and telling them, in the best manner they could, that it was time for them to depart; but if they would return the next bread-fruit season, they should be better able to supply them. We had now continued sixteen days in the bay, during which time our consumption of hogs and vegetables, had been so enormous, that we need not be surprized at their wishing to see us take our leave. But Terreeboob had, perhaps, no other view, in his enquiries, than a desire of having sufficient notice, to prepare suitable presents for us at our departure; for when we informed him of our intention to quit the island in two days, a kind of proclamation was made, requiring the natives to bring in their hogs, and vegetables, for Terreeboob to present to the Orono.

We were this day much entertained, at the beach, with the buffooneries of one of the natives. He held in his hand an instrument of music, such as we have already described: bits of sea-weed were fastened round his neck; and, round each leg, some strong netting; whereon were fixed rows of dogs teeth, hanging loose. His dancing was accompanied with strange grimaces, and unnatural distortions of the features, which were sometimes highly ridiculous, and, upon the whole, without meaning or expression. But the wrangling and boxing matches afforded us good diversion for the evening; and, in return, we exhibited the few fire-works we had remaining. Nothing could more effectually excite the admiration of these islanders, or strike them with more exalted ideas of our superiority, than such a representation: notwithstanding this was, in every respect, much inferior to that exhibited at Hapae, yet the astonishment of these people was equally great.

The carpenters who had been sent up the country to cut planks for the head rail-work of our ship, the Resolution, had now been gone three days, and, not having heard from them, we began to be alarmed for their safety. We expressed our apprehensions to Kaoo, who appeared equally concerned with ourselves; but while we were planning measures with him, for sending proper persons after them, they all safely arrived. Our people had gone farther into the country than they expected, before they found any trees suitable for their purpose. This circumstance, together with the badness of the roads, and the difficulty of conveying timber to the ships, had so long detained them. They bestowed high commendations on their guides, who not

deemed impious; but for an application being made no kind of surprize, without the least stipulation it away, Mr. King's image; and, upon entering the whole semicircle (as the Morai) had been in the natives were specified not seem to resent it; mention the particulars indifferently about the centre image; and it was conveyed to

and his chiefs, had been time of our departure, King's curiosity was excited; people had entertained to be the object of our pains to satisfy himself the only information he had we had left our scantiness of provisions, for the sole purpose of son was natural enough; of some of our crew: poured their fresh provisions as much of it as we of entertainment to see of the sailors (who were since their arrival at the best manner they could, depart; but if they would ion, they should be better now continued sixteen time our consumption of n so enormous, that we wishing to see us take our perhaps, no other view, of having sufficient resources for us at our departure; of our intention to a kind of proclamation to bring in their hogs, to present to the

certained, at the beach, the natives. He held in such as we have since were fastened round some strong netting; teeth, hanging loose, with strange grimaces, the features, which were upon the whole, without the wrestling and diversion for the evening the few fire-works we more effectually excite, or strike them with priority, than such a resolution was, in every prohibited at Hapacc, yet e was equally great.

sent up the country to the of our ship, the Re- days, and, not having to be alarmed for their intentions to Kaoo, who himself; but while him, for sending profitably arrived. Our country than they- trees suitable for their together with the bad- of conveying tim- them. They be their guides, who not only

only supplied them with provisions, but faithfully protected their tools. Having fixed on Thursday, the 4th of February, for our departure, Terrecoboo invited Captain Cook and Mr. King to attend him on the 3d, to Kaoo's residence. On our arrival there, we saw large quantities of cloth scattered on the ground; abundance of red and yellow feathers, fastened to the fibres of cocoa-nut husks; and plenty of hatchets and iron ware, which had been received from us in barter. Not far from these was deposited an immense quantity of various kinds of vegetables; and at a little distance, a large herd of hogs. We supposed, at first, that the whole was intended as a present for us; but we were informed by Kaireckee, that it was a tribute to the king, from the inhabitants of that district. We were no sooner seated than the bundles were brought, and laid severally at Terrecoboo's feet; and the cloth, feathers, and iron, were displayed before him. The king was perfectly satisfied with this mark of civility from his people; and having selected about one third of the iron utensils, one third of the feathers, and some pieces of cloth, he ordered these to be set aside by themselves; and the remainder of the cloth, hogs, vegetables, &c. were afterwards presented to Captain Cook and Mr. King. The value and magnitude of this present, far exceeded any thing that we had before received. The whole was immediately conveyed on board; and the large hogs were set apart for sea stores; but the smaller pigs and vegetables, were divided between the crews. The same day we quitted the Morai, and got our observatories on board. The taboo was removed, and, with it vanished its magical effects; for as soon as we had quitted the place, the people rushed in, and vigilantly searched, in hopes of finding some valuable articles left behind. Mr. King being the last on shore, and waiting for the return of the boat, the inhabitants crowded about him, and having prevailed upon him to sit down among them, expressed their regret at our separation. It was even with difficulty that they would suffer him to depart. Having had, while we lay in the bay, the command of the party on shore, he became more acquainted with the natives, than those who were required to be on board. From the inhabitants in general, he experienced great kindness; but the friendship shewn by the priests was constant and unbounded. On the other hand, Mr. King was anxious to conciliate their esteem; in which he so happily succeeded, that when they were made acquainted with the time of our departure, he was urged to remain behind, and received overtures of the most flattering kind. When he endeavoured to excuse himself, by alledging, that the Commodore would not permit it, they proposed to conduct him to the mountains, and there conceal him till the departure of the ships. On Mr. King's assuring them that the ships would not sail without him, the King and Kaoo repaired to Captain Cook, (whom they supposed to be his father) requesting formally, that he might be suffered to remain behind. The Commodore unwilling to give a positive refusal, to a proposal so generously intended, assured them, that he could not part with him at present, but he should return thither the next year, when he would endeavour to oblige them.

On Thursday the 4th of February, early in the morning, having unmoored, the Resolution and Discovery set sail, and cleared the harbour, attended by a vast number of canoes. We proposed to shape our course for Mowee; as we had been informed, that in the island there was a fine harbour, and excellent water, but Captain Cook intended to finish first the survey of Owhyhee, before he went thither, hoping to meet with a road more sheltered than Karakakooa Bay. We had not been long under sail, when the king, who had omitted to take his leave of Captain Clerke, as not expecting our departure to be so sudden, came after the ships, accompanied by the young prince, in a sailing canoe, bringing with them ten large hogs, a great number of fowls, and a small turtle (a great rarity) with bread-fruit in abundance. They also brought with them great quantities of cocoa-nuts, plantains, and sugar-cane. Besides other persons of distinction, who accompanied

the king, there was an old priest, who had always shewn a particular attachment to Captain Clerke, and who had not been unrewarded for his civility. It being rather late when they reached the Discovery, they staid on board but a few hours, and then all departed, except the old priest, and some girls, who had the King's permission to remain on board, till they should arrive at some of the neighbouring isles. We were now steering with a fine breeze, but just at the close of evening, to our great mortification, the wind died away, and a great swell succeeding, with a strong current setting right in for shore, we were in the utmost danger, particularly the Discovery, of being driven upon the rocks. At this time the old priest, who had been sent to sleep in the great cabin, leaped over-board unscen with a large piece of Russian silk, Captain Clerke's property, and swam to shore.

On Friday the 5th, we had calm weather, and made but little way. Seeing a large canoe between us and the shore, we hoisted for her coming up, and to our great surprize perceived the old king, with several of his chiefs, having with them the priest who had stolen the silk, bound hand and foot, whom the king delivered to Captain Clerke, at the same time requesting that his fault might be forgiven. The king being told his request was granted, unbound him, and set him at liberty; telling the Captain that, seeing him with the silk, he judged it was not his own, therefore ordered him to be apprehended; and had taken this method of exposing him, for having injured his friend. This was a singular instance of justice, which we did not expect to see among these people. As soon as they had delivered the silk, which the king refused to accept, they departed. Having a light breeze in the night, we made a little progress to the northward.

On Saturday the 6th, in the morning, we were abreast of a deep bay, called by the natives Toe-yah-yah. We flattered ourselves with finding a commodious harbour here; for we saw some fine streams of water to the N. E. and the whole appeared to be well sheltered. These observations seeming to tally with the accounts given by Koah, who was now on board the Resolution, the master was sent in the pinnace, with Koah as his guide, to examine the bay; but, before they set off, Koah altered his name, out of compliment to us, to that of Brittanee. In the afternoon, the weather became gloomy, and such violent gusts of wind blew off the land, that we were obliged to take in all the sails, and bring to, under the mizen-stay-sail. Soon after the gale began, all the canoes left us; and Mr. Bligh, on his return, preserved an old woman and two men from drowning, whose canoe had been overcracked in the storm. We had several women remaining on board, whom the natives, in their hurry to depart, had left to shift for themselves. Mr. Bligh reported, that he had landed at a village on the north side of the bay, where he was shewn some wells of water, that would not, by any means answer our purpose; that he proceeded farther into the bay; where, instead of finding good anchorage, he observed the shores to be low, and a flat bed of coral rocks extended along the coast, and upwards of a mile from the land; the depth of water, on the outside, being twenty fathoms. During this survey Brittanee had contrived to slip away. His information having proved erroneous, he might, perhaps, be afraid of returning. In the evening the weather became more moderate, when we again made sail; but it blew so violently about midnight, as to split the fore and main-top sails.

On Sunday the 7th, in the morning, we bent fresh sails. Being now about four or five leagues from the shore, and the weather very unsettled, the canoes would not venture off, so that our female guests were under the necessity of remaining with us, though, at this time, much against their inclination; for they were all exceedingly sea sick, and many of them had left their infants on shore. The weather continued squally, yet we stood in for land, in the afternoon; and being within three leagues of it, we saw two men paddling towards us. We conjectured, that they had been driven off

the shore, by the late boisterous weather; and therefore stopped the ship's way, in order to take them in. These poor wretches were so exhausted by fatigue, that had not one of the natives on board jumped into the canoe to their assistance, they would hardly have been able to fix it to the rope thrown out for that purpose. It was with great difficulty that we got them up the ship's side, together with a child about four years of age, which had been lashed under the thwarts of the canoe, with only its head above the water. They had left the shore the morning before, and had been, from that time, without food or water. The usual precautions were taken in giving them victuals, and the child being committed to the care of the women, they were all perfectly recovered by the next morning. At midnight a gale of wind coming on, we were obliged to double reef the top-sails, and get down the top-gallant yards.

On Monday the 8th, at day-break, we found that the fore-mast had again given way; the fillets being sprung, and the parts so very defective, as to make it absolutely necessary to unstep the mast. Captain Cook for some time hesitated, whether he should return to Karakakooa, or take the chance of finding a harbour in the islands to the leeward. The bay was not so commodious, but that a better might probably be met with, either for repairing the masts, or procuring refreshments; the latter of which, it was imagined, the neighbourhood of Karakakooa had lately been pretty well drained of. It was, on the other hand, considered as an imprudent step, to leave a tolerable good harbour, which, once lost, could not be regained, for the mere possibility of meeting with a better; especially, as the failure of such a contingency, might have deprived us of any resource. We now stood on towards the land, to give the natives on shore an opportunity of releasing their friends on board; and, about noon, when we were within a mile of the shore, several canoes came off to us, but so loaded with people, that no room could be found for any of our guests; the pinnace was therefore hoisted out to land them; and the master who commanded it, was instructed to examine the south coasts of the bay for water, but returned without success. Variable winds, and a strong current to the northward, retarded their return.

On Tuesday the 9th, at eight o'clock, A. M. it blew very hard from the S. E. which occasioned us to close reef the top-sails.

On Wednesday the 10th, at two o'clock, A. M. in a heavy squall, we found ourselves close in with the breakers, to the northward of the west point of Owhyhee. We had just room to avoid them, and fired several guns to alarm the Discovery, and apprise her of danger. In the forenoon, the weather had been more moderate. A few canoes ventured to come off to us, when we were informed by those belonging to them, that much mischief had been occasioned by the late storms, and that a great many canoes had been lost. We kept beating to windward the remainder of the day; and, in the evening, were within a mile of Karakakooa bay; but we stood off and on till day-light, the next morning, when we cast anchor in our old station.

On Thursday the 11th, and part of the 12th, all hands were employed in getting out the fore-mast, and conveying it on shore. Besides the damage which the head of the mast had sustained, the heel of it was found by the carpenters, exceeding rotten, having a large hole in the middle. As the necessary repairs were likely to take up several days, Mr. Bayly and Mr. King got the astronomical apparatus on shore, and pitched their tents on the Morai, guarded by a corporal and six marines. A friendly intercourse was renewed with the priests, who, for our greater security, tabooed the place with their wands as before. The sail-makers were sent on shore to repair the damages, in their department, sustained by the late heavy gales. They occupied a house adjoining to the Morai, that was lent us by the priests. Such were the arrangements on shore. But on coming to anchor in the bay, our reception was so very different from what it had been upon our first at-

rival, that we were all astonished: no shouts were heard, no bustle or confusion, by the motions of the natives, were perceived; but we found ourselves in a solitary, deserted bay, with hardly a friend appearing, or a canoe stirring. Their curiosity, indeed, might be supposed to be diminished by this time; but the hospitable treatment we had been continually favoured with, and the friendly manner in which we parted, induced us to expect that, on our return, they would have received us with the greatest demonstrations of joy. Various were our conjectures on the cause of this extraordinary appearance, when our anxiety was in part relieved by the return of our boat, the crew of which brought us intelligence, that Terreeboob was absent, and that the bay was tabooed. This account appeared very satisfactory to many of our company; but some were of opinion, that there was, at this time, somewhat very suspicious in the behaviour of the natives; and that the taboo, or interdiction, on pretence of the king's absence, was contrived artfully, to afford him time to consult his chiefs in what manner we should be treated. Whether those suspicions were well founded, or the accounts given by the natives was the truth, we were never able to ascertain. For though it is not improbable, that our sudden return, for which they could see no apparent cause, and the necessity of which we afterwards found it very difficult to make them comprehend, might occasion some alarm; yet the unsuspecting conduct of Terreeboob, who, on his supposed arrival, the next morning, came immediately to visit Captain Cook, and the consequent return of the natives to their former friendly intercourse with us, are strong proofs that they neither meant, nor apprehended, any change of conduct. In support of this opinion, we may add the account of another accident, precisely of the same kind which happened to us, on our first visit, the day before the king's arrival. A native having sold a hog on board our ship, and received the price agreed on, Pareca, who saw the transaction, advised the seller not to part with his hog, without an advanced price. For his interference in this business, he was harshly spoken to, and pushed away; and as the taboo was soon laid on the bay, we, at first, supposed it to be the consequence of the affront offered to the chief. Both these events serve to shew how extremely difficult it is to draw any certain conclusion from the conduct of a people, with whose language and customs we were so imperfectly acquainted. Some idea, however, may be formed of the difficulties those have to encounter, who in their intercourse with these strangers, are obliged to steer their course in the midst of uncertainties, when the most serious consequences may be expected by only imaginary offences. However true or false our conjectures may be, it is certain this day, the 12th, things went on in their usual quiet course.

On Saturday the 13th, at the approach of evening, the officer who commanded the watering party of the Discovery, came to inform Mr. King, that several chiefs were assembled near the beach, and were driving away the natives, who assisted the sailors in rolling the casks to the shore; declaring, at the same time, that their behaviour seemed to be very suspicious, and he imagined they would give him some farther disturbance. Mr. King, agreeable to his request, sent a marine with him, but permitted him to take only his side arms. The officer, in a short time, returned, and informed Mr. King, that the inhabitants had armed themselves with stones, and were become very tumultuous. Mr. King therefore went himself to the watering place, attended by a marine with his musquet. Seeing them approach, the islanders threw away their stones, and, on Mr. King's application to some of the chiefs, the mob was dispersed. Every thing being now quiet, Mr. King went to meet Captain Cook, who was coming on shore in the pinnace. He related to the Commodore all that had recently happened, and received orders to fire ball at the offenders, should they again behave insolently, and in case of their beginning to throw stones. In consequence of these orders Mr. King commanded the corporal to give directions, that the sentinels

ed: no shouts were heard, the motions of the natives, and ourselves in a solitary friend appearing, or a canoe, indeed, might be supposed to be the hospitable usually favoured with, and we parted, induced us to they would have received trations of joy. Various cause of this extraordinary y was in part relieved by crew of which brought us was absent, and that the unt appeared very satisfactory; but some were of his time, somewhat very the natives; and that the tence of the king's abto afford him time to coner we should be treated, we well founded, or the ac the truth, we were never h it is not improbable, hich they could see no ap of which we afterwards make them comprehend, yet the unsuspecting con his supposed arrival, the rely to visit Captain Cook, the natives to their former strong proofs that they ded, any change of conon, we may add the acifically of the same kind first visit, the day before ving fold a hog on board price agreed on, Pareea, sed the feller not to part nced price. For his inme was harshly spoken to, e taboo was soon laid on it to be the consequence hief. Both these events difficult it is to draw any duct of a people, with we were so imperfectly ver, may be formed of encounter, who in their are obliged to suffer their tainties, when the most pected by only imaginary se our conjectures may 12th, things went on in

the approach of evening, the watering party of the Mr. King, that several beach, and were driving the sailors in rolling the at the same time, that very suspicious, and he some farther disturbance. best, sent a marine with ke only his side arms. returned, and informed had armed themselves very tumultuous. Mr. the watering place, at- pufquet. Seeing them away their stones, and, some of the chiefs, the ing being now quiet, Cook, who was com- related to the Com- ppened, and received, should they again be- their beginning to throw orders Mr. King com- tions, that the sentinels

pieces

pieces should be loaded with ball, instead of shot. On our return to the tents, we heard a continued fire of the muskets from the Discovery, which we observed to be directed at a canoe, that we saw paddling towards the shore, in great haste, and pursued by one of our small boats. We immediately concluded, that the firing was in consequence of some theft, and Captain Cook ordered Mr. King to follow him with a marine armed, and to endeavour to seize the people as they came on shore. Accordingly, we ran towards the place where we imagined the canoe would land, but were too late; the people having quitted it, and made their escape into the country before our arrival. We were at this time ignorant, that the goods had been already restored; and thinking it probable, from the circumstances we had at first observed, that they might be of importance, for this reason, we were unwilling to relinquish our hopes of recovering them. Having therefore enquired of the natives which way the fugitives had gone, we followed them, till it was near dark, when judging ourselves to be three miles from the tents, and suspecting that the natives, who frequently encouraged us in the pursuit, were amusing us with false information, we thought it in vain to continue our search any longer, and therefore returned to the beach. During our absence a difference of a more serious nature had happened. The officer who had been dispatched in the small boat after the thieves, and who was returning on board with the goods that had been restored, seeing Captain Cook and Mr. King engaged in the pursuit of the offenders, seized a canoe which was drawn upon the shore. This canoe belonged to Pareea, our friend, who at that instant, arriving from on board the Discovery, claimed his property, and protested his innocence. However, the officer persisted in detaining it, in which he was encouraged by the crew of the pinnace, then waiting for the Commodore. The consequence of this imprudent conduct was, what might have been expected: a scuffle ensued; and Pareea unfortunately was knocked down, by a violent blow on the head with an oar. Several of the natives, who had hitherto been unconcerned spectators, began now to attack our people with such a shower of stones, that they were compelled to make a precipitate retreat, and swam off to a rock, at a considerable distance from the shore. The pinnace was plundered immediately by the natives, and would have been entirely demolished, had not Pareea interposed, who had not only recovered from his blow, but had also forgot it at the same instant. He ordered the crowd to disperse, and beckoned to our people to come and take possession of the pinnace; and afterwards assured them, that he would use his influence to get the things restored which had been taken out of it. After their departure, he followed them in his canoe, carrying them a midshipman's cap, and some other articles; and expressing much concern at what had happened, begged to know, if the Orono would kill him? And, whether he might be permitted to go on board the next day? He was assured that he would be well received; upon which he joined notice with the officers (their usual token of amity) and paddled over to Kowroa. When these particulars were related to Captain Cook, he was exceedingly concerned; and when the Captain and Mr. King were returning on board, the former expressed his fears, that these islanders would oblige him, though much against his inclination, to use violent measures with them; adding, they must not be permitted to suppose that they had gained an advantage over us. It was too late to take any steps this evening, the Commodore therefore only gave orders, that every native should be immediately turned out of the ships. This order having been executed, Mr. King returned to his station on shore; and the events of the day having much abated our former confidence in the natives, we posted a double guard on the Morai, with orders to send to Mr. King and let him know, if any of the natives were seen lurking about the beach. At 11 o'clock, five of the natives were seen creeping round the bottom of the Morai: they approached silently with great caution, but, perceiving they were discovered, immedi-

No. 71.

ately retired out of sight. At midnight, one of them ventured very near the observatory, when one of the sentinels fired over him; whereupon he, with some others fled with great precipitation, and we had no farther molestation during the remainder of the night. The temper of these islanders was now totally changed; and for some days past, as may be seen from our journal, they became more and more troublesome. In the course of this day, several parties of them were busy in rolling stones from the edge of the hill, with a view, as was supposed, to annoy the ships; but these were at too great a distance to receive any damage; however, the Commodore looking upon this as an insult, ordered some of our great guns to be fired among them, and, in less than ten minutes, not an Indian was to be seen near the place. In the afternoon Terreebooo came on board, and complained of our having killed two of his people, intimating, at the same time, that they had not the least intention of hurting us. He continued on board near two hours, amusing himself with seeing our armourers work, and requested that they might be permitted to make him a pahooa (an instrument used in battle, when they come to close quarters) which was immediately done.

Sunday, the 14th of February, 1779. This is that memorable day, in which are comprized the affecting incidents, and melancholy particulars, that concluded with the assassination of our beloved and honoured Commodore. Very early in the morning, a party of the islanders were perceived, who made a great lamentation, and moved slowly along to the beating of a drum, that gave scarcely a stroke in a minute. From this circumstance our people supposed, they were burying the dead who had been killed the preceding day. At day break Mr. King repaired on board the Resolution, in order to examine the time-keeper. In his way thither, he was hailed by the Discovery, and received the alarming information, that their cutter had been stolen, in some time of the night, from the buoy, where it was moored. The boat's painter had been cut two fathoms from the buoy, and the remainder of the rope was gone with the boat. This gave cause sufficient to suspect that some villany was hatching by the islanders, and that ill consequences would follow such a daring theft. With these thoughts Mr. King hastened on board the Resolution, whose whole company were by this time in motion. On his arrival, he found the marines arming, the crew preparing to warp the ship nearer to the shore, and Captain Cook loading his double barrel gun. He began with a relation of what had happened in the night at the Morai, when the Commodore interrupted him with some eagerness, and informed him of the loss of the Discovery's cutter, and of the preparations he was making to recover it; adding, that he was resolved to seize Terreebooo, and to confine him on board till the boat should be returned. It had been Captain Cook's usual practice, in all the islands of the Pacific Ocean he had visited, whenever any thing of consequence had been stolen by the natives, to get their king, or some of the principal eeres on board, where he detained them as prisoners, till the property that had been lost was restored; and this method having hitherto proved successful, he meant to pursue it on the present occasion. In consequence of this hasty determination, the Commodore gave orders to stop every canoe that should attempt to leave the bay; having resolved to seize, and destroy them, if the cutter could not be recovered by lenient measures. To this end the boats of both ships, properly manned and armed, were stationed across the bay. The islanders observing our motions, and seeing the ships warping towards the towns, of which there were two, one on each side of the harbour, they concluded that our design was to seize their boats. In consequence of which conjecture, most of their large war canoes took the alarm, and were making off, when our guns, loaded with grape and canister shot, drove them back.

Between the hours of seven and eight o'clock, Captain Cook and Mr. King quitted the ship together; the former in the pinnace, having Mr. Phillips, and nine

matines

marines with him; and the latter in a small boat. The last orders Captain Cook gave Mr. King, were, to quiet the minds of the people on his side of the Bay, by the strongest assurances that they should not be injured; to keep his people together, and to be continually on his guard. Captain Cook and Mr. King then parted; the former intending to proceed to Kowrova, where Terreebooo resided, and the latter to the beach. When Mr. King had landed, he perceived many of the warriors of Owhyhee were clothed in their military mats, though without arms; that they were gathering together in a body from every direction; and that they assumed a very different countenance to what they usually wore upon all former occasions; he therefore, when arrived at his station on shore, issued strict orders to the marines, to continue within the tent, to charge their muskets with ball, and not, on any consideration, to quit their arms. This done, he waited upon old Kaoo, and the priests, at their respective huts, and explained to them, as well as he was able, the reason of the hostile preparations, which had so exceedingly alarmed them. He found they were no strangers to our loss of the cutter, and assured them, that though the Commodore was resolved not only to recover it, but to punish, in the most exemplary manner, the perpetrators of the theft; yet they, and all the inhabitants of the village, on our side, need not be alarmed, nor apprehend the least danger from us. He desired the priests to communicate the motives by which we were actuated in our present conduct, to the people, and to intreat them not to entertain groundless fears, but, confiding in our declarations, to remain peaceable and quiet. Mr. King having thus made known our real intention, Kaoo asked, with great emotion, if Terreebooo, the king, was to be hurt? Mr. King declared he was not; upon which both Kaoo and the rest of the priests seemed much satisfied with this assurance.

In the interval of these transactions, Captain Cook having called off the launch from the N. part of the Bay, and taken it with him, landed, regardless of appearance, at Kowrova, with Mr. Phillips, lieutenant of the marines, a serjeant, and nine privates. He proceeded immediately into the village, where he was received respectfully; the people, as usual, prostrating themselves before him, and making their accustomed offerings of small hogs; but it was observed, that the chiefs were in some consternation on seeing the Captain and his guard, and that they soon disappeared one after another. The Commodore perceiving that his main design was not suspected, the next step he took was, to enquire for the king, and the two boys, his sons, who had been his constant guests on board the Resolution. In a short time the boys returned, with some of the natives who had been sent in search of them; and conducted Captain Cook to the habitation where Terreebooo had slept. The old king had just awoke, and the Captain addressed him in the mildest terms, assuring him, that no violence was intended against his person, or any of his people; but only against those who had been guilty of a most unprecedented act of robbery, by cutting from her moorings one of the ship's boats, without which they could neither conveniently water, nor carry on the necessary communication with the shore; requiring of the king, at the same time, to give orders for the cutter to be restored without delay; and requesting his company with him on board, till his orders should be carried into execution. Terreebooo, in reply, protested his total ignorance of the theft; said he was very ready to assist in discovering the author of it, and should be glad to see him punished; but he shewed great unwillingness to trust his person with those who had lately exercised unusual severities against his people. He was told, that the tumultuous appearance of his people, and their repeated depredations, made some uncommon severities necessary; but that not the least hurt should be done to the meanest inhabitant of his island by any person belonging to the ships; and all that was necessary for the continuance of peace, was, to pledge himself for the honesty of his people. With that view, and that only, he came to request the king

to place confidence in him, and to ntaké the Resolution his home, as the most effectual means of putting a stop to the robberies that were daily and hourly committed by his people, both at the tents, and on board the ships, and which were now so daring as to become insufferable. The king upon this remonstrance arose, and accepted the invitation.

In about half an hour Terreebooo set out with Captain Cook, to attend him on board; and every thing had a prosperous appearance. The two boys were already in the pinnace, and the rest of the party were approaching the water-side; when a woman, named Kane-kabereea, the mother of the boys, and one of Terreebooo's favourite wives, followed him, and with many tears and intreaties besought him not to venture on board. At the same time, two warriors who came along with her, laid hold of the king, insisting he should proceed no farther, and obliged him to sit down. A large body of the islanders had by this time got together, who had probably been alarmed by the discharging of the great guns, and the hostile appearances in the bay. They now began to behave outrageously, and to insult the guard. Thus situated, Mr. Phillips, Lieutenant of the marines, perceiving that his men were huddled together in the crowd, consequently unable to use their arms, should there be a necessity for so doing, proposed to the Commodore to draw them up along the rocks, close to the edge of the water; upon which the Lieutenant received orders to march, and, if any one opposed, to fire upon, or instantly dispatch him; but the natives readily making way for them to pass, Mr. Phillips drew them up in one line, within about thirty yards of the place where Terreebooo was sitting. The old king continued all this time on the ground. His eyes diffused gloomy discontent, his head drooped, and his whole countenance was impressed with every mark of terror and dejection; as if he was possessed with a foreboding consciousness of the catastrophe, in the bloody tragedy that was now about to be acted. Captain Cook, unwilling to abandon the object which occasioned him to come on shore, urged him most earnestly to proceed; but, on the other hand, if the king appeared inclined to attend him, the surrounding chiefs interposed: at first they had recourse to entreaties; but afterwards to force and violence, and even insisted on his remaining on shore; and the word was given, that Tootee was about to carry off their king, and to kill him.

Captain Cook, at length, finding that the alarm had spread too generally, and being sensible that there was not a probability of getting Terreebooo off without much bloodshed, thought it most prudent to give up the point; observing to Mr. Phillips, that it would be impossible to compel the king to go on board, without running the risk of killing a great number of the inhabitants. Thus the enterprize was abandoned by Captain Cook; nor did it appear, that his person was in the least degree of danger, till an accident happened, the report of which brought forth in an instant a number of warriors from the crowd, and occasioned a fatal turn to the whole affair. The boats stationed across the Bay, having fired at some war canoes, for attempting to get out, had unfortunately killed one of their principal chiefs. Intelligence of his death arrived at the spot where the Commodore then was, just as he had parted from the king, and was walking slowly towards the shore. The ferment it occasioned was immediately too conspicuous; the women and children were immediately sent away, and the men soon put on their war mats, and armed themselves with spears and stones. One of the natives having provided himself with two of these missive weapons, advanced towards Captain Cook, flourishing a long iron spike, or pahoo, in defiance, and threatening to throw the stone. The Captain made signs for him to desist, but the man persisting in his insolence, and repeating his menaces with strange grimaces; he was provoked to fire a charge of small shot at him; but the warrior being defended by his mat, which the shot could not penetrate, this served only to irritate and encourage the islanders, whose fighting men

to maké the Resolution means of putting a stop and hourly committed, and on board the ships, as to become insubordination arose, and ac-

ceboob set out with Cap-

board; and every thing The two boys were left of the party were ap- a woman, named Ka- e boys, and one of Ter- wed him, and with many him not to venture on warriors who came a- king, insulting he should ed him to sit down. At l by this time got cogel- alarmed by the discharg- e hostile appearances in behave outrageously, and ated, Mr. Phillips, Lie- uing that his men were, consequently unable to, a necessity for so doing, draw them up along the water; upon which the march, and, if any one antly dispatch him; but y for them to pass, Mr. line, within about thirty ceboob was sitting. The ne on the ground. His tent, his head drooped, as impressed with every, as if he was possessed of the catastrophe, in now about to be acted. abandon the object which ore, urged him most ear- e other hand, if the king, the surrounding chiefs course to entreaties; but ace, and even insisted on the word was given, that their king, and to kill

nding that the alarm had en sensible that there was Terreeboob off without most prudent to give up Phillips, that it would be to go on board, without great number of the inha- was abandoned by Cap- that his person was in an accident happened, orth in an instant a num- d, and occasioned a fatal boats stationed across the canoes, for attempting to ed one of their principal eath arrived at the spe- as, just as he had parted ing slowly towards the sioned was immediately and children were imme- soon put on their war with spears and stones, ovided himself with two anced towards Captain ke, or pahooa, in defiance, one. The Captain made man persisting in his in- enaces with strange gri- e charge of small shot ng defended by his mat- rate, this served only to ders, whose fighting men

now pushed forward, throwing whole volleys of stones at the marines. One of the chiefs attempted to stab Mr. Phillips with his pahooa, (some say the very same that was made by our armourers, at the request of the king, the day before) but not succeeding in his attempt, he received from him a blow with the butt end of his musquet. A general attack with stones succeeded, and the quarrel became general. On our side, the guns from the ships began to pour in their fire upon the multitude of natives, as did likewise the marine guard, and those from the boats; nevertheless, though the slaughter among the islanders was great, yet, enraged as they were, they stood an incessant fire with astonishing intrepidity, and, without giving time for the marines to charge again, they rushed in upon them with horrid shouts and yells. What followed was a scene of horror and confusion, which can more easily be conceived than related. Four of the marines, corporal Thomas, and three privates, namely Hinks, Allen, and Fadget, re-treated among the rocks, and fell victims to the fury of the enemy. Three others were dangerously wounded; and the Lieutenant, who had received a stab between the shoulders with a pahooa, having fortunately reserved his fire, shot the man who had wounded him, just as he was going to repeat his blow. The last time our Commodore was distinctly seen, he was standing at the water's edge, ordering the boats to cease firing, and pull in; when a base assassin, coming behind him, and striking him on the head with his club, felled him to the ground, in such a direction, that he lay with his face prone in the water. A general shout was set up by the islanders on seeing the Captain fall, and his body was dragged on shore, where he was surrounded by the

enemy, who, snatching the dagger from each other's hands, displayed a savage eagerness to join in his destruction. It should seem that their vengeance was directed chiefly against our Commodore, by whom they supposed their king was to be dragged on board, and punished at discretion; for, having secured his body, they fled without much regarding the rest of the slain, one of whom they threw into the sea.

Thus ended the life of the greatest navigator that this or any other nation could ever boast of: who led his crews of gallant British seamen twice round the world; reduced to a certainty the non-existence of a Southern continent, about which the learned of all nations were in doubt; settled the boundaries of the earth and sea; and demonstrated the impracticability of a N. W. passage from the Atlantic to the great Southern Ocean, for which our ablest geographers had contended, and in pursuit of which vast sums had been spent in vain, and many valuable mariners had miserably perished. His death was doubtless premature; yet he lived to accomplish the great undertaking for which he seemed particularly designed. How sincerely his loss was lamented, (we speak here in the language of his panegyrist) by those who owed their security to his skill and conduct, and every consolation to his tenderness and humanity, it is impossible to describe; and the task would be equally difficult to represent the horror, dejection, and dismay, which followed so dreadful and unexpected a catastrophe. Let us therefore turn from so mournful a scene, to the pleasing contemplation of his virtues, character, and public services, the history of which our readers will find in the subsequent chap- ter.

CHAP. XV.

Memoirs of the life and public services of Captain James Cook—His birth and parentage—Education and early situation in life—His inclination for the sea, and first employment in the mercantile service—Tries his fortune in His Majesty's ship, the Eagle—Is made a Lieutenant—His behaviour under Sir William Barnaby, and when engaged in the active scenes of the war in America—His appointments, by the recommendations of Lord Colville and Sir Hugh Palliser—His first voyage to the South Seas—His second, to complete the discovery of the Southern hemisphere—His third and last voyage, in order to discover a North West passage—An account of his family, and their pensions—Observations on his character and death—Particulars which happened subsequent to his death—Bravery of Lieutenant Phillips—The islanders forced to retire—Situation of our party at the Morai—Annoyed by stones—An attempt to storm the Morai—Quitted by our people—A short truce, and pacific measures adopted—Mr. King sent to obtain a conference with some of the chiefs of Owyhee—His interview with Kaob—Contemptuous behaviour of the natives, and precautions taken on our side—A part of Captain Cook's body brought—Further provocations from the natives—Our watering parties harassed with stones—The village of Kakaona burned—Instance of bravery in one of the natives—A procession headed by Kaireketa—The bones of Captain Cook brought on board—They are committed to the deep with the usual funeral ceremonies.

HAVING related the untimely fate of our excellent Commander, Captain Cook, we now proceed to give our readers some new and authentic particulars of the life of this great navigator; the whole, we will venture to affirm, making a more correct and complete historical narrative, on so interesting a subject, than has hitherto appeared in any edition whatever of Captain Cook's voyages, under whatever authority published, or however pompously set forth.

The late Captain James Cook, the subject of these memoirs, was born at Marton, in the North Riding of Yorkshire, on February the 3d, 1728. In this particular, we may contradict the ignorant assertions foisted on the public by editors of publications of the like kind with this; but we rest our credibility on the authority of the Rev. Mr. Grenside, whose certificate, taken from the register of births in his parish, is now in the possession of our publisher. The father of Captain Cook was a day labourer to a farmer, and lived in a small village surrounded with mud walls; who afterwards removed to Great Ayton; where he was employed as a peasant by the late Thomas Scutwove, Esq. with whom he was assisted by young Cook, his son, in the different branches of husbandry. At the age of 13, this youth was put under the tuition of Mr. Pullen, a schoolmaster of Ayton, by whom he was instructed in

the arts of writing, common book-keeping, &c. and he is said to have shewn an uncommon genius in his application to the several rules of vulgar arithmetic. In January, 1745, at the age of 17, his father bound him apprentice, to learn the grocery and haberdashery business, at Snaith; but his natural inclination not having been consulted on this occasion, he soon quitted the counter in disgust, after a year and a half's servitude; and having contracted a strong propensity to the sea, his master, willing to indulge him in following the bent of his inclination, gave up readily his indentures. In July, 1746, he was bound apprentice to Mr. Walker, of Whitby, for the term of three years, which time he served to his master's full satisfaction. Under him he first sailed on board the ship Freelove, employed chiefly in the coal trade from Newcastle to London. In the spring of 1750, Mr. Cook shipped himself as a seaman on board the Maria, under the command of Captain Galkin; in which vessel he continued all that year, in the Baltic trade. In 1753, he entered on board his Majesty's ship the Eagle; "having a mind," as he expressed himself, "to try his fortune that way." Some time after, the Eagle sailed with another frigate on a cruise, in which they were very successful.

In the year 1758, we find this rising mariner, master of the Northumberland, the flag-ship of Lord Colville,

who

who

who had then the command of a squadron stationed on the coast of America. It was here, as he has often been heard to say, that, during a hard winter, he first read Euclid, and applied to the study of the mathematics and astronomy, without any assistance than what a few books, and his own industry afforded. At the same time, that he thus found means to cultivate his understanding, improve his mind, and supply the deficiencies of an early education, he was engaged in most of the busy and active scenes of the war in America. At the siege of Quebec, Sir Charles Saunders committed to his charge the execution of services, of the first importance in the naval department. He piloted the boats to the attack of Montmorency; conducted the embarkation to the heights of Abraham, examined the passage, and laid buoys for the security of the large ships in proceeding up the river. The courage and address with which he acquitted himself in these services, gained him the warm friendship of Sir Charles Saunders and Lord Colville, who continued to patronize him during the rest of their lives, with the greatest zeal and affection.

On the 1st of April 1760, he received a commission as a lieutenant, and soon after a specimen of those abilities, which recommended him to the commands, in the execution whereof he so highly displayed his merit, that his name will be handed down to posterity, as one of the most skilful navigators which this country hath produced. In 1765 he was with Sir William Barnaby, on the Jamaica station, and behaved in such a manner as gained him the approbation of the admiral. At the conclusion of the war, he was appointed, through the recommendation of Lord Colville, and Sir Hugh Palliser, to survey the Gulph of St. Lawrence, and the coasts of Newfoundland. In this employment he continued till the year 1767, when the Royal Society resolved, that it would be proper to send a navigator into the South Seas, to observe the Transit of the planet Venus over the Sun's disk: and Otaheite being fixed upon, the Endeavour, a ship built for the coal trade, was put into commission, and the command of her given to Lieutenant, the late Captain Cook, who was appointed with Mr. Charles Green to observe the Transit. In this voyage he was accompanied by Joseph Banks, Esq. since Sir Joseph, and Dr. Solander, and other ingenious artists. The Transit of Venus was observed in different parts of the island, and the Captain returned, after having been absent almost three years, in which period he had made discoveries equal to all the navigators of his country, from the time of Columbus to the present. From this period, as his services increased in usefulness to the public, so his reputation advanced to a height too great for our encomiums to reach. Perhaps no science ever received greater additions from the labours of a single man, than geography has done from those of Captain Cook; who, in his first voyage to the South Seas discovered the Society Isles; determined the insularity of New Zealand; discovered the straits which separate the two islands, called after his name; and made a complete survey of both. He afterwards explored the eastern coast of New Holland, hitherto unknown; an extent of 27 deg. of lat. or upwards of 2,000 miles.

Soon after the Captain's return to England, it was resolved to equip two ships to complete the discovery of the Southern hemisphere. It had long been a prevailing idea, that the unexplored part contained another continent. To ascertain the fact was the principal object of this expedition; and that nothing might be omitted that could tend to facilitate the enterprise, two ships were provided; the one, the Resolution, under the command of Captain Cook; the other, the Adventure, commanded by Captain Furneaux. In this second expedition round the world, Captain Cook resolved the great problem of a southern continent; having so completely traversed that hemisphere, as not to leave a possibility of its existence, unless so near the pole, as to be beyond the reach of navigation. In this voyage New Caledonia, the largest island in the Southern Pacific Ocean, except New Zealand, was discovered; as was also the island of Geor-

gia; and an unknown coast, which the Captain named Sandwich land; and having twice visited the tropical seas, he settled the situations of the old discoveries, and made several new ones.

The want of success which attended Captain Cook's attempt to discover a Southern Continent, did not set aside another plan which had been recommended some time before. This was no other than the finding out a N. W. passage, which the fancy of some chimerical projectors had conceived to be a practicable scheme. His services were required for this arduous undertaking, and he offered them without hesitation. This third and last voyage is distinguished by the extent and importance of its discoveries. Not to mention several smaller islands in the Southern Pacific, Captain Cook discovered the group, north of the equinoxial line, called Sandwich Islands; which, on account of their situation and productions, may perhaps become an object of more consequence, than any other discovery in the South Sea. He explored what had remained before unknown of the western coast of America, an extent of 3700 miles; ascertained the proximity of the two continents of Asia and America; sailed through the straits between them, and surveyed the coasts on each side, so far as to be satisfied of the impracticability of a passage in that hemisphere, from the Atlantic into the Pacific Ocean, by an eastern or western coast. In short, he completed the hydrography of the habitable globe, if we except the Japanese Archipelago, and the sea of Amur, which are still known imperfectly by Europeans. Throughout this voyage it must be confessed, that his services as a navigator are important and meritorious. The methods which he invented, and so successfully put in practice, of preserving the health, (and consequently the lives) of seamen, will transmit his name to future ages, as a friend and benefactor of mankind. It is well known among those who are conversant in naval history, that the advantages which have been sought, through the medium of long sea voyages, have always been purchased at a dear rate. That dreadful disorder which is peculiar to this service, must, without exercising an unwarrantable degree of tyranny over our seamen, have been an insuperable obstacle to our enterprises. It was reserved for Captain Cook to convince the world, that voyages might be protracted to three, or even four years, in unknown regions, and under every change of climate, without affecting the health, in the smallest degree, and even without diminishing the probability of life. A few months after his departure from England, notwithstanding he was then absent, the Royal Society voted him Sir Godfrey Copley's gold medal, as a reward for the account, which he had transmitted to that body, of the method taken to preserve the health of the crew of his ship. Captain Cook was a married man, and left several children behind him. On each of these his Majesty has settled a pension of twenty-five pounds a year, and two hundred pounds per annum on his widow.

The constitution of this great and unparalleled navigator, was robust both by nature and habit; his body having been inured to labour, and rendered capable of undergoing the severest hardships. His stomach bore, without complaining, the most coarse and ungrateful food. Indeed he submitted, with an easy self-denial, to wants of every kind, which he endured with remarkable indifference. The qualities of his mind were of the same hardy vigorous kind with those of his body. His understanding was strong and quick-sighted: his judgment, in whatever related to the services he was engaged in, quick and sure; his designs were bold and daring, yet manly and discreet. His courage was cool and determined, and accompanied with an admirable presence of mind, in the moment of danger. His manners were plain and unaffected.

Some have censured his temper as subject to haughtiness and passion; but let it be considered that these were counteracted, and frequently disarmed, by a disposition benevolent and humane. There are those who have blamed Captain Cook for his severity to the natives of different islands which we visited; but it was not

which the Captain named twice visited the tropical if the old Discoveries, and

attended Captain Cook's in Continent, did not see been recommended some mer than the finding out a nancy of some chimerical be a practicable scheme. his arduous undertaking, hesitation. This third d by the extent and im- Not to mention several n Pacific, Captain Cook of the equinoxial line, ch, on account of their y perhaps become an o- n any other discovery in what had remained before of America, an extent of roximity of the two con- failed through the straits the coasts on each side, mpracticability of a pis- the Atlantic into the Pa- western coast. In short, y of the habitable globe, hipelago, and the sea of mperfectly by Europeans. It be confessed, that his portant and meritorious, nted, and so successfully the health, (and conse- will transmit his name to benefactor of mankind, who are conversant in atages which have been of long sea voyages, have ear rate. That dreadful his service, must, without degree of tyranny over our able obstacle to our en- r Captain Cook to con- might be protracted to own regions, and under out affecting the health, en without diminishing months after his depar- anding he was then ab- im Sir Godfrey Copley's account, which he had the method taken to pre- his ship. Captain Cook al children behind him, has settled a pension of two hundred pounds per

great and unparalleled nature and habit; his our, and rendered cap- ardships. His stomach e most coarse and un- itted, with an easy self- which he endured with qualities of his mind s kind with those of his ong and quick-sighted: elated to the services ure; his designs were d discreet. His cou- and accompanied with in the moment of dan- and unaffected.

per as subject to hatti- considered that these ly disarmed, by a dis- There are those who his severity to the na- we visited; but it was not

not to these alone he was severe in his discipline. He never suffered any fault in his own people, though ever so trivial, to escape unpunished. If they were charged with insulting a native, or injuring him in his property, if the fact was proved, the offender seldom escaped unpunished. By this impartial distribution of equal justice, the natives themselves conceived so high an idea of his wisdom, and his power too, that they paid him the honours bestowed on their Eatooa, or good spirit.

This is certain, that a most distinguishing feature in Captain Cook's character was, that unremitting perseverance in the pursuit of his object, which was not only superior to the opposition of dangers, and the pressure of hardships, but even exempt from the want of ordinary relaxation. During the three long voyages in which he was engaged, his eagerness and activity were never in the least abated. No incidental temptation could detain him for a moment; even those intervals of recreation, which sometimes occurred unavoidably, and were looked for by us with a longing that persons who have experienced the fatigues of service will readily excuse, were submitted to by him with a certain impatience, whenever they could not be employed in making further provisions for the prosecution of his designs. In the course of this work, we have faithfully enumerated all the particular instances in which these qualities were displayed, during the great and important enterprises in which he was engaged: and we have likewise stated the result of those services, under the two principal heads to which they may be referred, those of geography and navigation, each of which we have placed in a separate and distinct point of view.

We cannot close these memoirs, without taking a slight retrospective view of the tragical end of this truly great and worthy sea officer. It was imagined by some of those who were present, that the marines, and those who were in the boats, fired without Captain Cook's orders, and that he was anxious to prevent the farther effusion of blood; it is therefore probable, that, on this occasion, his humanity proved fatal to him; for it was observed, that while he faced the natives, no violence had been offered him; but when he turned about to give directions to the boats, he immediately received the fatal blow. Whether this was mortal or not it is impossible for any one to determine; but we are informed by a gentleman on board the Discoverer, whose veracity is unquestionable, that there was time sufficient to have secured the body of our brave Commander, had a certain lieutenant, who commanded a boat of the same ship, pulled in, instead of making off. We do not mention the name, but if our information is an undeniable fact, the dastardly officer merits justly that contempt and poverty, to which it is said he is at present reduced. We beg leave further to observe, that the natives had certainly no intention at first of destroying Captain Cook, or any of his party. The cause first originated in the death of the Eree, who was shot by one of our people in the boat: it was this circumstance which alarmed them, and, in consequence of this it was that they armed themselves. At this period Captain Cook might have returned on board with safety; but he was unfortunate in missing the man who behaved insolent to him, and shooting another; he was unfortunate in the firing of the marines; and equally so in the firing of the people in the launch; all which happened in the space of a few minutes. In short, all the causes that brought on the death of this much lamented Circumnavigator, were produced by a chain of events which could no more be foreseen than prevented. His memory we leave to the gratitude and admiration of posterity.

We now proceed to relate those particulars that have come to our knowledge, and which happened subsequent to the death of Captain Cook. We have before observed, that four of the marines, who accompanied the Commodore, were killed by the natives; the survivors, with Mr. Phillips, their lieutenant, threw themselves into the sea, and made their escape, being protected by a smart fire from the boats. On this occa-

No. 72.

sion, a striking instance of gallant behaviour, and of affection for his men, was displayed by Mr. Phillips; for he had scarcely got into the boat, when, seeing one of the marines, who was not a very expert swimmer, struggling in the water, and in danger of being taken by the islanders, he instantly leaped into the sea to his assistance, though considerably wounded himself; and after receiving a blow on his head from a stone, which had almost sent him to the bottom, he caught the marine by the hair, and brought him off in safety. Our people for some time kept up a constant fire from most of the boats (which, during the whole transaction, were at no greater distance from the land than twenty yards), in order to afford their unfortunate companions, if any of them should still remain alive, an opportunity of effecting their escape. These efforts, seconded by a few guns, that were, at the same time, fired from the Resolution, having at length compelled the enemy to retire, a small boat, manned by five midshipmen, pulled towards the shore, where they perceived the bodies lying on the ground without any signs of life: However, they judged it dangerous to attempt to bring them off with so inconsiderable a force; and their ammunition being nearly consumed, they returned to the ships, leaving the bodies in possession of the natives, together with ten stands of arms.

After the general consternation, which the news of this misfortune had diffused throughout the whole company of both ships, had in some degree subsided, their attention was called to the party at the morai, where the masts and sails were on shore, guarded by only six marines. It is difficult to describe the emotions that agitated the minds of Mr. King, and his attendants, at this situation, during the time in which these occurrences had happened, at the other side of the bay. Being at the distance only of a mile from the village of Kowroa, they could distinctly perceive a vast multitude of people collected on the spot where Captain Cook had just before landed. They heard the firing of the muskets, and observed an uncommon bustle and agitation among the crowd. They afterwards saw the islanders retreating, the boats retiring from the shore, and passing and repassing, with great stillness, between the ships. Mr. King's heart soon misgave him on this occasion. Where so valuable a life was concerned, he could not avoid being alarmed by such new and threatening appearances. Besides this, he knew that Captain Cook, from a long series of success, in his transactions with the natives of this ocean, had acquired a degree of confidence, which might, in some ill-fated moment, put him too much off his guard; and Mr. King now saw all the dangers to which that confidence might lead, without deriving much consolation from the consideration of the experience which had given rise to it. His first care, on hearing the report of the muskets, was to assure the islanders, considerable numbers of whom were assembled round the wall of our consecrated field, and seemed at a loss how to account for what they had heard and seen, that they should meet with no molestation; and that, at all events, he was inclined to continue on peaceable terms with them.

In this situation, Mr. King and his attendants remained till the boats had returned on board, when Captain Clerke perceiving, by means of his telescope, that our party was surrounded by the natives, who, he thought, designed to attack them, ordered two four-pounders to be fired at the islanders. These guns, though well aimed, did no mischief; but they gave the natives a convincing proof of their powerful effects. A cocoa-nut tree, under which some of them were sitting, was broken in the middle by one of the balls; and the other shivered a rock, which stood in an exact line with them. As Mr. King had, just before, given them the strongest assurances of their safety, he was extremely mortified at this act of hostility, and, to prevent its being repeated, instantly dispatched a boat to inform Captain Clerke, that he was, at present, on the most amicable terms with the islanders, and that, if any future occasion should arise for changing his conduct towards them, he would hoist a jack, as a signal for Cap-

7 K

tain

tain Clerke to afford him his assistance. Mr. King waited the return of the boat with the greatest impatience; and after remaining for the space of a quarter of an hour, under the utmost anxiety and suspense, his fears were at length confirmed, by the arrival of Mr. Bligh, with orders to strike the tents immediately, and to lend on board the sails, that were repairing. At the same instant, Kaireekoa having also received information of the death of Captain Cook, from a native who had arrived from the other side of the bay, approached Mr. King, with great dejection and sorrow in his countenance, enquiring whether it was true. At this time the situation of the party was highly critical and important. Not only their own lives, but the issue of the expedition, and the return of at least one of the ships, were involved in the same common danger. They had the mast of the Resolution, and the greater part of the sails, on shore, protected by only half a dozen marines. The loss of these would have been irreparable; and though the islanders had not as yet testified the smallest disposition to molest the party, it was difficult to answer for the alteration, which the intelligence of the transaction at Kowroa might produce. Mr. King therefore thought proper to dissemble his belief of the death of Captain Cook, and to desire Kaireekoa to discourage the report; apprehending that either the fear of our resentment, or the successful example of their countrymen, might perhaps lead them to seize the favourable opportunity, which at this time presented itself, of giving us a second blow. He, at the same time, advised him to bring old Kaoa, and the other priests, into a large house adjoining to the morai, partly from a regard to their safety, in case it should have been found necessary to have recourse to violent measures; and partly from a desire of having him near our people, in order to make use of his authority with the natives, if it could be instrumental in maintaining peace.

Having stationed the marines on the top of the morai, which formed a strong and advantageous post, he intrusted the command to Mr. Bligh, who received the most positive directions to act solely on the defensive; and he then went on board the Discovery, in order to confer with Captain Clerke, on the dangerous situation of our affairs. He had no sooner left the spot, than the islanders began to annoy our people with stones; and just after he had reached the ship, he heard the firing of the marines. He therefore hastily returned on shore, where he found affairs growing every moment more alarming. The natives were providing arms, and putting on their mats; and their numbers augmented very fast. He also observed several large bodies advancing towards our party along the cliff, by which the village of Kakooa is separated from the north side of the bay, where Kowroa is situated. At first they attacked our people with stones from behind the walls of their inclosures, and meeting with no resistance, they soon became more daring. A few courageous fellows, having crept along the beach, under cover of the rocks, suddenly presented themselves at the foot of the morai, with an intention of storming it on the side next the sea, which was its only accessible part; and they were not dislodged before they had stood a considerable quantity of shot, and had seen one of their number fall. The amazing courage of one of these assailants deserves to be recorded. Having returned with a view of carrying off his companion, amidst the fire of our whole party, he received a wound, which obliged him to quit the body, and retire; but, a few minutes afterwards, he again made his appearance, and receiving another wound, was under the necessity of retreating a second time. At that moment Mr. King arrived at the morai, and saw this man return a third time, faint from the loss of blood and fatigue. Being informed of what had happened, he forbade the soldiers to fire; and the islander was suffered to carry off his friend, which he was just able to accomplish; and then fell down himself, and breathed his last. About this time a strong reinforcement from both ships having landed, the natives retreated behind their walls, which affording Mr. King access to the priests, he sent one of

them to exert his endeavours to bring his countrymen to some terms, and to propose to them, that if they would desist from throwing stones, he would not allow our men to fire. This truce was agreed to, and our people were suffered to launch the mast, and carry off the sails, astronomical instruments, &c. without molestation. As soon as our party had quitted the morai, the islanders took possession of it, and some of them threw a few stones, which, however, did no mischief. Between eleven and twelve o'clock, Mr. King arrived on board the Discovery, where he found that no decisive plan had been adopted for the regulation of our future proceedings. The recovery of Captain Cook's body, and the restitution of the boat, were the objects, which, on all hands, we agreed to insist on; and Mr. King declared it as his opinion, that some vigorous methods should be put in execution, if the demand of them should not be instantly complied with. It may justly be supposed that Mr. King's feelings, on the death of a beloved and respected friend, had some share in this opinion; yet there were doubtless other reasons, and those of the most serious nature, that had some weight with him. The confidence which the success of the natives in killing our Commander, and obliging us to leave the shore, must naturally have inspired; and the advantage, however inconsiderable, which they had gained over us the preceding day, would, he had no doubt, excite them to make farther dangerous attempts; and the more particularly, as they had no great reason, from what they had hitherto observed, to dread the effects of our firearms. This kind of weapon, indeed, contrary to the expectations of us all, had produced in them no signs of terror. On our side, such was the condition of our vessels, and the state of discipline among us, that had a vigorous attack been made on us, during the night, the consequences might perhaps have been highly disagreeable. Mr. King was supported, in these apprehensions, by the opinion of the greater part of the officers on board; and nothing seemed to him more likely to encourage the islanders to make the attempt, than the appearance of our being inclined to an accommodation, which they could only impute to weakness or fear. On the other hand it was urged, in favour of more conciliatory measures, that the mischief was already done, and was irreparable; that the natives, by reason of their former friendship and kindness had a strong claim to our regard; and the more particularly, as the late calamitous accident did not appear to have taken its rise from any premeditated design; that, on the part of Terreeboob, his ignorance of the theft, his willingness to accompany Captain Cook on board the Resolution, and his having actually sent his two sons into the pinnace, must rescue his character, in this respect, from the smallest degree of suspicion; that the behaviour of his women, and the chiefs, might easily be accounted for, from the apprehensions occasioned in their minds by the armed force, with which Captain Cook landed, and the hostile preparations in the bay; appearances so unsuitable to the confidence and friendship, in which both parties had hitherto lived, that the arming of the islanders was manifestly with a design to resist the attempt, which they had some reason to expect would be made, to carry off their sovereign by force, and was naturally to be expected from a people who had a remarkable affection for their chiefs. To these dictates of humanity, other motives of a prudential kind were added; that we were in want of a supply of water, and other refreshments; that the Resolution's foremast would require seven or eight days work, before it could be stepped; that the spring was advancing very fast; and that the speedy prosecution of our next expedition to the northward, ought now to be our sole object; and that, therefore, to engage in a vindictive contest with the natives, might not only subject us to the imputation of needless cruelty, but would require great delay in the equipment of our ships. In this latter opinion Captain Clerke concurred, and though Mr. King was convinced, that an early and vigorous display of our resentment would have more effectually answered every object both of prudence and humanity, he was, upon

s to bring his countrymen
 pose to them, that if they
 stones, he would not allow
 was agreed to, and our
 ch the mast, and carry off
 ments, &c. without molest
 ty had quitted the mora
 of it, and some of them
 however, did no mischief.
 'clock, Mr. King arrived on
 he found that no decisive
 regulation of our future
 of Captain Cook's body,
 were the objects, which
 sist on; and Mr. King de
 it some vigorous method
 , if the demand of them
 plied with. It may justly
 feelings, on the death of
 and, had some share in this
 less other reasons, and those
 that had some weight with
 the success of the natives
 obliging us to leave the
 (spired); and the advantage,
 which they had gained over
), he had no doubt, excite
 us attempts; and the more
 eat reason, from what they
 read the effects of our fire-
 , indeed, contrary to the
 duced in them no sign
 was the condition of our
 ine among us, that, had a
 us, during the night, the
 have been highly disagre
 ed, in these apprehensions,
 r part of the officers on
 o him more likely to en
 the attempt, than the ap
 d to an accommodation,
 to weakness of fear. On
 in favour of more concis
 siefish was already done,
 he natives, by reason of
 ndness had a strong claim
 particularly, as the late
 appear to have taken its
 sign; that, on the part of
 the theft, his willingness
 on board the Resolution,
 a two sons into the pin
 er, in this respect, from
 n; that the behaviour of
 night easily be accounted
 occasioned in their minds
 ch Captain Cook landed,
 the bay; appearances fo
 and friendship, in which
 l, that the arming of the
 a design to resist the at
 eason to expect would be
 reign by force, and was
 a people who had a re
 nefs. To these dictates
 a prudential kind were
 of a supply of water, and
 e Resolution's foremost
 ys work; before it could
 as advancing very fall
 n of our next expedition
 to be our sole object; and
 a vindictive contest with
 ect us to the imputation
 require great delay in
 In this latter opinion
 d though Mr. King was
 vigorous display of our
 factually answered every
 humanity, he was, upon
 the

the whole, not sorry that the measures he had recom
 mended were rejected. For though the contemptuous
 behaviour of the islanders, and their subsequent oppo
 sition to our necessary occupations on shore, arising
 most probably from a misconstruction of our lenity, ob
 liged us at last to have recourse to violence in our own
 defence; yet he was not certain that the circumstances
 of the case would, in the opinion of the generality of
 people, have justified the use of force, on our part, in
 the first instance. Cautionary severity is ever invidi
 ous, and the rigour of a preventive measure, when it is
 the most successful, leaves its expediency the least ap
 parent.

During these deliberations, and while we were thus
 engaged in concerting some plan for our future opera
 tions, a very numerous concourse of the natives still
 kept possession of the shore; and some of them coming
 off in canoes, approached within pistol-shot of the ships,
 and insulted us by various marks of defiance and con
 tempt. It was extremely difficult to restrain the seamen
 from the use of their arms on these occasions; but, as
 pacific measures had been resolved on, the canoes were
 allowed to return unmolested. Mr. King was now or
 dered by Captain Clerke to proceed towards the shore
 with the boats of both ships, well manned and armed,
 with a view of bringing the islanders to a parley, and of
 obtaining, if possible, a conference with some of the
 Erees. If he should succeed in this attempt, he was to
 demand the dead bodies, and particularly that of Captain
 Cook: to threaten them, in case of a refusal, with our
 resentment; but by no means to fire, unless attacked;
 and not to go ashore on any account whatever. These
 instructions were delivered to Mr. King before the
 whole party, in the most positive manner; in conse
 quence of which, he and his detachment left the ships
 about four o'clock in the afternoon; and as they ap
 proached the shore, they perceived every indication of
 a hostile reception. The natives were all in motion, the
 women and children retiring; the men arming them
 selves with long spears and daggers, and putting on
 their war mats. It also appeared, that since the morn
 ing they had thrown up breast-works of stone along the
 beach, where Captain Cook had landed; in expectation,
 perhaps, of an attack at that place. When our party
 were within reach, the islanders began to throw stones
 at them with slings, but without doing any mischief.
 Mr. King concluded from these appearances, that all at
 tempts to bring them to a parley would be ineffectual,
 unless he gave them some ground for mutual confi
 dence: he therefore ordered the armed boats to stop,
 and advanced alone in the small boat, holding in his
 hand a white flag; the meaning of which, from an uni
 versal shout of joy from the natives, he had the satisfac
 tion to find was immediately understood. The women
 instantly returned from the side of the hill, whither they
 had retired; the men threw off their mats, and all fear
 ed themselves together by the sea-side, extending their
 arms, and inviting Mr. King to land.

Notwithstanding such behaviour seemed expressive
 of a friendly disposition, Mr. King could not avoid en
 tertaining suspicions of its sincerity. But when he saw
 Koah, with extraordinary boldness and assurance, swim
 ming off towards the boat, with a white flag in his
 hand, he thought proper to return this mark of confi
 dence, and accordingly received him into the boat,
 though he was armed; a circumstance which did not
 contribute to lessen Mr. King's suspicions. He had in
 deed long harboured an unfavourable opinion of Koah.
 The priests had always represented him as a person of a
 malicious temper, and no friend to us; and the repeated
 detections of his fraud and treachery, had convinced
 us of the truth of their assertions. Besides the melan
 choly transactions of the morning, in which he was seen
 performing a principal part, inspired Mr. King with
 the utmost horror at finding himself so near him; and
 as he approached him with feigned tears, and embraced
 him, Mr. King was so distrustful of his intentions, that
 he took hold of the point of the pahooa, which the
 chief held in his hand, and turned it from him. He in
 formed the islander that he had come to demand the

body of Captain Cook, and to declare war against the
 natives, unless it was restored without delay. Koah af
 firmed him that this should be done as soon as possible,
 and that he would go himself for that purpose; and af
 ter requesting a piece of iron of Mr. King, with marks
 of great assurance, he leaped into the water, and swam
 ashore, calling out to his countrymen, that we were all
 friends again. Our people waited with great anxiety
 near an hour for his return. During this interval, the
 other boats had approached so near the shore, that the
 men who were in them entered into conversation with
 a party of the islanders, at a little distance; by whom
 they were informed, that the Captain's body had been
 cut to pieces, and carried up the country; but of this
 circumstance Mr. King was not apprized till his return
 to the ships. He therefore now began to express some
 degree of impatience at Koah's delay; upon which the
 chiefs pressed him exceedingly to land; assuring him,
 that if he would go in person to Terreeboob, the body
 would be undoubtedly restored to him. When they
 found they could not prevail on Mr. King to go ashore,
 they endeavoured, on pretence of conversing with him
 with greater ease, to decoy his boat among some rocks,
 where they might have had it in their power to separate
 him from the other boats. It was easy to see through
 these artifices, and he was therefore very desirous of
 breaking off all communication with them; when a
 chief approached, who had particularly attached him
 self to Captain Clerke, and the officers of the Discov
 ery, on board which ship he had sailed, when we last
 quitted the bay, intending to take his passage to the
 island of Mowee. He said he came from Terreeboob,
 to acquaint our people that the body was carried up the
 country, but that it should be brought back the follow
 ing morning. There appeared much sincerity in his
 manner; and being asked if he uttered a falsehood, he
 hooked together his two fore fingers, which is here un
 derstood as the sign of veracity, in the use of which
 these islanders are very scrupulous. Being now at a loss
 how to proceed, Mr. King sent Mr. Vancouver to in
 form Captain Clerke of all that had passed; that it was
 his opinion, the natives did not intend to keep their
 word with us; and, far from being grieved at what had
 happened, were on the contrary inspired with great con
 fidence on account of their late success, and sought only
 to gain time, till they could plan some scheme for get
 ting our people into their power. Mr. Vancouver came
 back with orders for Mr. King to return on board, after
 giving the islanders to understand, that if the body was
 not restored the next morning, the town should be de
 stroyed. No sooner did they perceive our party retiring,
 than they endeavoured to provoke them by the most
 contemptuous and insulting gestures. Several of our
 people said, they could distinguish some of the natives
 parading about in the cloaths which had belonged to
 our unhappy countrymen, and among them, an Eree
 brandishing Captain Cook's hanger, and a woman hold
 ing the scabbard. In consequence of Mr. King's re
 port to Captain Clerke, of what he supposed to be the
 present temper and disposition of the inhabitants, the
 most effectual methods were taken to guard against any
 attack they might make during the night. The boats
 were moored with top-chains; additional sentinels were
 stationed in each of our ships; and guard-boats were
 directed to row round them, in order to prevent the
 islanders from cutting the cables. During the night,
 we saw a vast number of lights on the hills, which in
 duced some of us to imagine, that they were removing
 their effects farther up into the country, in consequence
 of our menaces. But it seems more probable, that they
 were kindled at the sacrifices that were performing on
 account of the war, in which they supposed themselves
 likely to be engaged; and, perhaps the bodies of our
 slain countrymen were at that time burning. We af
 terwards observed fires of the same kind, as we passed
 the island of Morotoi; and which, according to the in
 formation we received from some of the natives then on
 board, were made on account of a war they had declared
 against a neighbouring island. This agrees with what
 we learned among the Friendly and Society Isles, that

vious to any hostile expedition, the chiefs always endeavoured to animate the courage of the people, by feasts and rejoicings in the night. We passed the night without any disturbance, except from the howlings and lamentations which were heard on shore.

On Monday the 15th, early in the morning, Koah came along-side the Resolution, with a small pig and some cloth, which he desired permission to present to Mr. King. We have already mentioned, that this officer was supposed by the islanders to be the son of Captain Cook; and as the latter had always suffered them to believe it, Mr. King was probably considered as the chief after his death. As soon as he came on deck, he interrogated Koah with regard to the body; and, on his returning evasive answers, refused to accept his presents, and was on the point of dismissing him with expressions of anger and resentment, had not Captain Clerke, with a view of keeping up the appearance of friendship, judged it more proper that he should be treated with the customary respect. This artful priest came frequently to us in the course of the morning, with some trifling present or other; and as we always observed him eyeing every part of the ship with a great degree of attention, we took care he would see we were well prepared for our defence. He was extremely urgent both with Captain Clerke and Mr. King to go on shore, imputing the detention of the bodies to the other chiefs, and assuring those gentlemen, that every thing might be adjusted to their satisfaction, by a personal interview with the king. However, they did not think it prudent to comply with Koah's request; and indeed a fact came afterwards to their knowledge, which proved his want of veracity. For, they were informed, that immediately after the action in which Captain Cook had lost his life, Terreeboob had retired to a cave in the steep part of the mountain that hangs over the bay, which was accessible only by means of ropes, and where he continued for several days, having his provisions let down to him by cords. After the departure of Koah from the ships, we observed that his countrymen who had assembled by day-break, in vast crowds on the shore, flocked around him with great eagerness on his landing, as if they wished to learn the intelligence he had gained, and what steps were to be taken in consequence of it. It is highly probable, that they expected we should attempt to put our threats in execution; and they appeared fully determined to stand their ground. During the whole morning, we heard conchs blowing in various parts of the coast; large parties were perceived marching over the hills; and, upon the whole, appearances were so alarming, that we carried out a stream anchor, for the purpose of hauling the ship abreast of the town, in case of an attack; and boats were stationed off the northern point of the bay, in order to prevent a surprize from the natives in that quarter. Their warlike posture at present, and the breach of their engagement to restore the bodies of the slain, occasioned fresh debates among us concerning the measures which should now be pursued. It was at length determined, that nothing should be permitted to interfere with the repair of the Resolution's mast, and the preparations for our departure; but that we should nevertheless continue our negotiations for the restoration of the bodies of our countrymen. The greater part of this day was employed in getting the fore-mast into a proper situation on deck, that the carpenters might work upon it; and also in making the requisite alterations in the commissions of the officers.

The chief command of the expedition having devolved on Captain Clerke, he removed on board the Resolution, promoted Lieutenant Gore to the rank of Captain of the Discovery, appointed Messrs. King and Williamson first and second Lieutenants of the Resolution, and nominated Mr. Harvey, a Midshipman, who had accompanied Captain Cook during his two last voyages, to fill the vacant lieutenantancy. During the whole day, we sustained no interruption from the islanders: and in the evening, the launch was moored with a top-chain, and guard-boats stationed round each of the ships as before. About eight o'clock, it being exceedingly dark, we heard a canoe paddling towards the

ship; and it was no sooner perceived, than both the sentinels on deck fired into it. There were two of the natives in this canoe, who immediately roared out "Tin-nee," (which was their method of pronouncing Mr. King's name), and said they were friends, and had something with them which belonged to Captain Cook. When they came on board, they threw themselves at the feet of our officers, and seemed to be extremely terrified. It fortunately happened that neither of them was hurt, notwithstanding the balls of both pieces had gone through the canoe. One of these was the person who has been already mentioned under the appellation of the taboo man, who constantly attended Captain Cook with the particular ceremonies we have before described; and who, though a man of distinction in the island, could scarcely be prevented from performing for him the most humiliating offices of a menial servant. After bewailing, with many tears, the loss of the Orono, he informed us that he had brought a part of his body. He then gave us a small bundle which he brought under his arm; and it is impossible to describe the horror with which we were seized, upon finding in it a piece of human flesh of the weight of about nine or ten pounds. This, he said, was all that now remained of the body; that the rest had been cut in pieces, and burnt; but that the head, and all the bones, except those which belonged to the trunk, were in the possession of Terreeboob and the other chiefs; that what we saw had been allotted to Kaoo, the chief of the priests, for the purpose of being used in some religious ceremony; and that he had sent it as a testimony of his innocence, and of his attachment to us. We had now an opportunity of learning whether they were cannibals; and we did not neglect to avail ourselves of it. We first endeavoured, by several indirect questions, put to each of them apart, to gain information respecting the manner in which the other bodies had been treated and disposed of; and finding them very constant in one account, that after the flesh had been cut off, the whole of it was burnt; we at last put the direct question, whether they had not eaten some of it; they immediately testified as much horror at such an idea, as any European would have done; and asked, whether that was the practice among us. They afterwards asked us, with great earnestness, and with an appearance of apprehension, when the Orono would come again? and how he would treat them on his return? the same enquiry was often made in the sequel by others; and this idea is consistent with the general tenour of their conduct towards him, which indicated that they considered him as a being of a superior species. We pressed our two friendly visitants to continue on board: the next morning, but we could not prevail upon them. They informed us, that if this transaction should come to the knowledge of the king, or any of the other Erees, it might be attended with the most fatal consequences to their whole society; to prevent which, they had been under the necessity of coming to us in the dark; and the same precaution, they said, would be requisite in returning to shore. They further told us, that the chiefs were eager to take revenge on us for the death of their countrymen: and particularly cautioned us against trusting Koah, who, they assured us, was our implacable enemy; and ardently longed for an opportunity of fighting us, to which the blowing of the conchs that we had heard in the morning, was intended as a challenge. It likewise appeared from the information of these men, that seventeen of their countrymen were slain in the first action, at the village of Kowrowa, five of whom were chief; and that Kancena and his brother, our particular friends, were of that number. Eight, they said, had lost their lives at the observatory, three of whom likewise were persons of the first distinction. At eleven o'clock the two natives left us, and took the precaution to desire that one of our guard-boats might attend them, till they had passed the Discovery, lest they should again be fired upon, which, by alarming their countrymen on shore, might expose them to the danger of detection. This request was readily complied with, and we had the satisfaction to find, that they reached the land safe and undiscovered. During the remainder of this night, we

ceived, than both the fens. There were two of the natives immediately roared out "Tin-hod of pronouncing Mr. ere friends, and had somonged to Captain Cook, they threw themselves at med to be extremely tered that neither of them balls of both pieces had ne of these was the perma under the appellation flantly attended Captain emonies we have before man of distinction in the nted from performing for ces of a menial servant. ears, the loss of the Orono, ough a part of his body, which he brought under e describe the horror with inding in it a piece of hu- out nine or ten pounds, w remained of the balls; 1 pieces, and burnt; but s, except those which be- the possession of Terroco- at what we saw had been e priests, for the purpose is ceremony; and that he his innocence, and of his w an opportunity of leam- ls; and we did not neglect first endeavoured, by se- to each of them apart, to e manner in which the and disposed of; and find- e account, that after the ole of it was burnt; we at hether they had not been e testified as much horror ean would have done; and practice among us. They e earnestness, and with an when the Orono would d treat them on his re- ften made in the fequid nificent with the gener- ds him, which indicated e of a superior species. e visitants to continue on e could not prevail upon e if this transaction shou- king, or any of the other ith the most fatal conse- ; to prevent which, they e of coming to us in the , they said, would bere- . They further told us, that evenge on us for the death e particularly cautioned us- e assured us, was our m- g for an opportunity e of the conchs that we e intended as a challenge- e information of these men, e were slain in the first e wa, five of whom were e his brother, our particu- er. Eight, they said, had eory, three of whom like- ection. At eleven o'clock e the precaution to desire e attend them, till they e they should again be fired e countrymen on shore, e ger of detection. This e with, and we had the fa- eched the land safe and e ainder of this night, we e heard

heard the same loud lamentations, as in the preceding one. Early the following morning, we received a visit from Koah. Mr. King was piqued at finding, that notwithstanding the most glaring marks of treachery in his conduct, and the positive declaration of our friends the priests, he should still be suffered to carry on the same farce, and to make us at least appear the dupes of his hypocrisy. Our situation was indeed become extremely awkward and unpromising; none of the purposes for which this pacific plan of proceedings had been adopted, having hitherto been in any respect promoted by it. No satisfactory answer had been given to our demands; we did not seem to have made any progress towards a reconciliation with the natives; they still remained on the shore in hostile postures, as if determined to oppose any endeavours we might make to go ashore; and yet it was become absolutely necessary to attempt landing, as the completing our stock of water would not admit of any longer delay. However, in justice to the conduct of Captain Clerke, we must remark, that it was highly probable, from the great numbers of the islanders, and from the resolution with which they seemed to expect our approach, that an attack could not have been made without danger; and that the loss of even a very few men might have been severely felt by us, during the remainder of our voyage: whereas the delaying to put our menaces into execution, though, on the one hand, it diminished their opinion of our valour, had the effect of occasioning them to disperse on the other. For this day, about 12 o'clock, upon finding that we perilled in our inactivity, great bodies of them, after blowing their conchs, and using every method of defiance, marched off, over the hills, and never made their appearance afterwards. Those, however, who remained, were not the less daring and presumptuous. One of them had the insolence to come within musquet-shot a-head of the Resolution, and after throwing several stones at us, waved over his head the hat which had belonged to Captain Cook, while his countrymen ashore were exulting and encouraging his audacity. Our people were highly enraged at this insult, and, coming in a body on the quarter-deck, begged they might no longer be obliged to put up with such reiterated provocations, and requested Mr. King to endeavour to obtain permission for them, from Captain Clerke, to take advantage of the first fair occasion of avenging the death of their much lamented Commander. On Mr. King's acquainting the Captain with what was passing, he ordered some great guns to be fired at the islanders on shore; and promised the crew, that, if they should be molested at the watering-place, the next day, they should then be permitted to chastise them. Before we could bring our guns to bear, the natives had suspected our intentions, from the bustle and agitation they observed in the ship; and had retired behind their houses and walls. We were consequently obliged to fire, in some degree, at random; notwithstanding which, our shot produced all the effects we could desire: for, in a short time afterwards, we perceived Koah paddling towards us, with the greatest haste; and when he arrived, we learned that some people had lost their lives, and among the rest Moko-maiha, a principal Eree, nearly related to Terrocoho. Not long after Koah's arrival, two boys swam off from the Morai towards our vessels, each armed with a long spear; and after they had approached pretty near, they began in a very solemn manner to chant a song; the subject of which, from their frequently mentioning the word Orono, and pointing to the village where Captain Cook had been slain, we concluded to be the late calamitous occurrence. Having sung for near a quarter of an hour in a plaintive strain, during all which time they continued in the water, they returned on board the Discovery, and delivered up their spears; and after remaining there a short time, returned on shore. We could never learn who sent them, or what was the object of this ceremony. During the night, we took the usual precautions for the security of the ships; and, as soon as it was dark, the two natives, who had visited us the preceding evening, came off to us again. They assured us, that though the effects of

No. 72.

our great guns this afternoon, had greatly alarmed the chiefs, they had by no means relinquished their hostile intentions, and they advised us to be on our guard.

On Wednesday, the 17th, the boats of both ships were dispatched ashore to procure water; and the Discovery was warped close to the beach, in order to protect the persons employed in that service. We soon found that the intelligence which had been sent us by the priests, was not destitute of foundation, and that the islanders were determined to neglect no opportunity of annoying us, when it could be done without much hazard. The villages, throughout this whole cluster of islands, are, for the most part, situated near the sea; and the adjacent ground is enclosed with stone walls, of the height of about three feet. These, we at first supposed, were designed for the division of property; but we now discovered that they served for a defence against invasion, for which purpose they were, perhaps, chiefly intended. They consist of loose stones, and the natives are very dexterous in shifting them, with great quickness, to such particular situations, as the direction of the attack may occasionally require. In the sides of the mountain that stands near the bay, they have likewise holes, or caves, of considerable depth, whose entrance is secured by a fence of a similar kind. From behind both these stations, the islanders perpetually harassed our watering party with stones; nor could the inconsiderable force we had on shore, with the advantage of musquets, compel them to retreat. Thus opposed, our people were so occupied in attending to their own safety, that, during the whole forenoon, they filled only one ton of water. It being therefore impossible for them to perform this service, till their assailants were driven to a greater distance, the Discovery was ordered to dislodge the enemy with her great guns; which being accomplished by means of a few discharges, the men landed without molestation. The natives, however, made their appearance again soon afterwards, in their usual method of attack; and it was now deemed absolutely necessary to burn down some straggling huts, near the wall behind which they had sheltered themselves. In executing the orders that were given for that purpose, our people were hurried into acts of unnecessary devastation and cruelty. Some allowance ought certainly to be made for their resentment of the repeated insults, and contemptuous behaviour of the islanders, and for their natural desire of revenging the death of their beloved and respected Commander. But, at the same time, their conduct strongly evinced, that the greatest precaution is requisite in trusting, even for a moment, the discretionary use of arms in the hands of private soldiers, or seamen, on such occasions. The strictness of discipline, and the habits of obedience, by which their force is kept directed to suitable objects, lead them to conceive, that whenever they have the power, they have likewise a right to perform. Actual disobedience being almost the only crime for which they expect to receive punishment, they are apt to consider it as the sole measure of right and wrong; and hence they are too ready to conclude, that what they can do with impunity, they may also do consistently with honour and justice; so that the feelings of humanity, and that generosity towards an unresisting enemy, which, at other times, is a striking distinction of brave men, become but feeble restraints to the exercise of violence, when set in opposition to the desire they naturally have of shewing their own power and independence.

We have before observed, that directions had been given to burn only a few straggling houses, which afforded shelter to the islanders. We were therefore greatly surprized on perceiving the whole village in flames; and before a boat, that was sent to stop the progress of the mischief, could reach the land, the habitations of our old and constant friends, the priests, were all on fire. Mr. King had, therefore, great reason to lament the illness that confined him on board this day. The priests had always been under his protection; and, unfortunately, the officers then on duty having seldom been on shore at the Morai, were but little acquainted with the circumstances of the place. Had he

7 L

been

been present himself, he might, in all probability, have been the means of preserving their little society from destruction. In escaping from the flames, several of the inhabitants were shot; and our people cut off the heads of two of them, and brought them on board. The fate of one unhappy native was much lamented by all of us. As he was repairing to the well for water, he was shot at by one of the marines. The ball happened to strike his calabash, which he instantly threw from him, and ran off. He was pursued into one of the caves above-mentioned, and no lion could have defended his den with greater bravery and fierceness; till at length, after he had found means to keep two of our people at bay for a considerable time, he expired, covered with wounds. This accident first brought us acquainted with the use to which these caverns are applied. About this time a man, advanced in years, was taken prisoner, bound, and conveyed on board the Resolution, in the same boat, with the heads of his two countrymen. We never observed horror so strongly portrayed, as in the face of this person, nor so violent a transition to immoderate joy, as when he was untied, and given to understand, that he might depart in safety. He shewed us that he was not deficient in gratitude, as he not only often returned afterwards with presents of provisions, but also did us other services.

Soon after the destruction of the village, we saw, coming down the hill, a man, accompanied by fifteen or twenty boys, who held in their hands pieces of white cloth, plantains, green boughs, &c. It happened that this pacific embassy, as soon as they were within reach, received the fire of a party of our men. This, however, did not deter them from continuing their procession, and the officer on duty came up, in time, to prevent a second discharge. As they made a nearer approach, the principal person proved to be our friend Kaireekkea, who had fled when our people first set fire to the village, and had now returned, and expressed his desire of being sent on board the Resolution. On his arrival we found him extremely thoughtful and grave. We endeavoured to convince him of the necessity there was of setting fire to the village, by which his house, and those of his brethren were unintentionally destroyed. He expostulated with us on our ingratitude and want of friendship; and, indeed, it was not till the present moment, that we knew the whole extent of the injury that had been done them. He informed us, that, confiding in the promises Mr. King had made them, and as well as in the assurances they had received from the men, who had brought us some of Captain Cook's remains, they had not removed their effects back into the country, as the other inhabitants had done, but had put every valuable article of their own, as well as what they had collected from us, into a house adjoining to the morai, where they had the mortification to see it all set on fire by our people. He had, on coming on board, perceived the heads of his two countrymen lying on deck, at which he was greatly shocked, and earnestly desired that they might be thrown over-board. This request, by the directions of Captain Clerke, was immediately complied with. In the evening our watering party returned on board, having sustained no farther interruption. We passed a disagreeable night; the cries and lamentations we heard from the shore being far more dreadful than ever. Our only consolation on this occasion, arose from the hopes that a repetition of such severities might not be requisite in future. It is somewhat remarkable, that, amidst all these disturbances, the female natives, who were on board, did not offer to leave us, or discover any apprehensions either for themselves or their friends on shore. They appeared, indeed, so perfectly unconcerned, that some of them, who were on deck when the village was in flames, seemed to admire the spectacle, and frequently exclaimed, that it was maitai, or very fine.

On Thursday, the 18th, in the morning, the treacherous Koah came off to the ships, as usual. There being no longer any necessity for keeping terms with him, Mr. King was allowed to treat him as he thought proper. When he approached the side of the Resolution, sing-

ing a song, and offering a hog, and some plantains, to Mr. King, the latter ordered him to keep off, and cautioned him never to make his appearance again without the bones of Captain Cook, lest his life should pay the forfeit of his repeated breach of faith. He did not appear much mortified with this unwelcome reception, but immediately returned on shore, and joined a party of his countrymen, who were throwing stones at our waterers. The body of the young man, who had been killed the preceding day, was found this morning lying at the entrance of the cave; and a mat was thrown over him by some of our people; soon after which they saw several of the natives carrying him off on their shoulders, and could hear them chanting, as they marched, a mournful song. At length the islanders being convinced that it was not the want of ability to chastize them, which had induced us at first to tolerate their provocations, desisted from molesting our people; and, towards the evening, a chief, named Eappo, who had seldom visited us, but whom we knew to be a man of the first distinction, came with presents from Terreeboob to sue for peace. These presents were accepted, and the chief was dismissed with the following answer: That no peace would be granted, till the remains of Captain Cook should be restored. From Eappo we understood that the flesh of all the bones of our people who had been slain, as well as the bones of the trunks, had been burnt; that the limb-bones of the marines had been distributed among the inferior chiefs; and that the remains of Captain Cook had been disposed of as follows: the head to a great Eree, called Kahooopeou; the hair to Maiha-maiha; and the arms, legs, and thighs, to Terreeboob. After it was dark, many of the natives came off with various sorts of vegetables; and we also received from Kaireekkea two large presents of the same articles.

On the 19th we were principally employed in sending and receiving the messages that passed between Captain Clerke and the old king. Eappo was very urgent, that one of our officers should go on shore; and offered to remain on board, in the mean time, as an hostage. This request, however, was not complied with; and he left us with a promise of bringing the bones the following day. Our watering party, at the beach, did not meet with the least opposition from the islanders; who, notwithstanding our cautious behaviour, again ventured themselves among us without any marks of diffidence or apprehension. On Saturday the 20th, early in the morning, we had the satisfaction of getting the fore-mast steered. This operation was attended with considerable difficulty, and some danger, our ropes being so extremely rotten, that the purchase several times gave way. Between the hours of ten and eleven, we saw a numerous body of the natives descending the hill, which is over the beach, in a sort of procession, each man carrying on his shoulders two or three sugar-canes, and some bread-fruit, plantains, and taro, in his hand. They were preceded by two drummers, who, when they reached the water-side, seated themselves by a white flag, and began beating their drums, while those who had followed them, advanced, one by one, and deposited the presents they had brought with them; after which they retired in the same order. Soon afterwards Eappo appeared in his long feathered cloak, bearing something with great solemnity in his hands; and having stationed himself on a rock, he made sign that a boat should be sent him. Captain Clerke, supposing that the chief had brought the bones of our late Commodore (which, indeed, proved to be the case), went himself in the pinnace to receive them, and ordered Mr. King to attend him in the cutter. When they arrived at the beach, Eappo, entering the pinnace, delivered the bones to Captain Clerke, wrapped up in a great quantity of fine new cloth, and covered with a spotted cloak of black and white feathers. He afterwards attended our gentlemen to the Resolution, but could not be prevailed on to accompany them on board; being, perhaps, from a sense of decency, unwilling to be present at the opening of the parcel. In this we found both the hands of Captain Cook entire, which

g, and some plantains, to him to keep off, and cause his appearance again with Cook, lest his life should pay each of faith. He did not show this unwelcome reception, and joined a party throwing stones at our young man, who had been found this morning lying on a mat was thrown on shore; and soon after which they carrying him off on their backs, and then they were chanting, as they went. At length the islanders became not the want of ability to induce us at first to tolerate them from molesting our evening, a chief, named Eappo, and whom we knew by the name of the King, came with presents of peace. These presents were dismissed with the following promise, that should be granted, till the day should be restored. From the flesh of all the bones of the pig, as well as the bones of the human body; that the limb-bones of the pig were distributed among the inferior officers of Captain Cook had been taken to a great Ere, called Pareca-maia; and the arms, and the bones of Pareca-maia, booo. After it was dark, we were surrounded with various sorts of veils, and the appearance of articles.

Chiefly employed in sending presents that passed between us. Eappo was very unwilling to go on shore; and in the mean time, as we were in the boat, he was not complied with our promise of bringing the water party, at the least opposition from the natives, and our cautious behaviour, long us without any marks of satisfaction.

On Saturday the 20th, the satisfaction of getting the operation was attended with some danger, our ropes that the purchase several hours of ten and eleven, the natives descending the shore, in a sort of procession, with several plantains, and taro, and were followed by two drummers, water-side, seated themselves, and began beating their drums, and then, advanced, one by one, they had brought with them in the same order. Soon after, his long feathered cloak, and solemnity in his hands, on a rock, he made signs. Captain Clerke, supported the bones of our late friend, proved to be the case, to receive them, and then in the cutter. When Eappo, entering the pinnace, in Clerke, wrapped up in a cloth, and covered with white feathers. He attended to the Resolution, but accompanied them on board of decency, unwilling to be the parcel. In this we obtained Cook entire, which

were well known to us from a scar on one of them, that divided the fore-finger from the thumb, the whole length of the metacarpal bone; the skull, but with the scalp separated from it, and the bones of the face wanting; the scalp, with the ears adhering to it, and the hair upon it cut short; the bones of both the arms, with the skin of the fore-arms hanging to them; the bones of the thighs and legs joined together, but without the feet. The ligaments of the joints were observed to be entire; and the whole shewed sufficient marks of having been in the fire, except the hands, which had the flesh remaining upon them, and were cut in several places, and crammed with salt, most probably with a view of preserving them. The skull was free from any fracture, but the scalp had a cut in the back part of it. The lower jaw and feet, which were wanting, had been seized, as Eappo informed us, by different Erees; and he also told us, that Terrecoboo was using every means to recover them.

The next morning, being the 21st of February, Eappo, and the king's son, came on board, and brought with them not only the remaining bones of Captain Cook, but likewise the barrels of his gun, his shoes,

and some other trifles which had belonged to him. Eappo assured us, that Terrecoboo, Maia-maia, and himself were extremely desirous of peace; that they had given us the most convincing proofs of it; and that they had been prevented from giving it sooner by the other chiefs, many of whom were still disaffected to us. He lamented, with the most lively sorrow, the death of six chiefs, who had been killed by our people; some of whom, he said, were among our best friends. He informed us, that the cutter had been taken away by Pareca's people, probably in revenge for the blow that he had received; and that it had been broken up the following day. The arms of the marines, which we had also demanded, had been carried off, he said, by the populace and were irrecoverable.

Nothing now remained, but to perform the last solemn offices to our excellent Commander. Eappo was dismissed with orders to taboo all the bay; and, in the afternoon, his remains having been deposited in a coffin, the funeral service was read over them, and they were committed to the deep with the usual military honours. Our feelings, on this mournful occasion, are more easy to be conceived than expressed.

C H A P. XVI.

The Taboo laid on the bay taken off, and the ships surrounded with canoes—Orders for the Resolution and Discovery to be unmoored—They weigh anchor and take their departure from Karakakooa bay—Sail in quest of a harbour on the south-east side of Mowee—Driven to leeward by the current, and strong easterly winds—Pass Tahoorowa—South-west side of Mowee described—Proceed to Wookoo—Its north coast described—Disappointed in attempting to water—Sail to Atooi; and anchor in Wynna bay—The natives not so friendly as before—Their insolence in demanding a batchet for every cask of water—Treat our people with contempt—Steal Lieutenant King's hanger—Their insolence at the water side—Are fired at by two marines—One of them wounded—A visit from the contending Chiefs—The ships anchor off Oneebow—Their departure—A correct, copious, and complete account of Sandwich Islands—Extent of Owhyhee, the largest of the whole group—Its districts, coasts, adjacent country, &c. described—An account of several other islands—A particular and full account of the inhabitants of Sandwich Islands—Division of the people into three classes—Genealogical account of the kings of Owhyhee and Mowee—Authority of the Erees—Tyranny of Pareca exercised on an inferior chief—An account of their religion—Their society of priests—Their ideas of a future state—A particular description of the word Taboo—A remarkable instance of jealousy—Funeral ceremonies at the death of an old Chief, &c. &c. &c.

ON the 22nd of February, 1779, during the morning, not a canoe came near the bay, the taboo, which Eappo, at our request, had laid on it the preceding day, having not yet been taken off. At length that chief came on board; when we assured him that we were now perfectly satisfied; and that, as the Orono was buried, all remembrance of the late unhappy transactions was buried with him. We afterwards requested him to take off the taboo, and to make it known, that the islanders might bring provisions to us as usual. The ships were soon surrounded with canoes, and many of the Erees came on board, expressing their grief at what had happened, and their satisfaction at our reconciliation. Several of our friends, who did not favour us with a visit, sent presents of large hogs, and other provisions. Among the rest, the old treacherous Koah came off to us, but we refused him admittance. We were now preparing to set to sea, and Captain Clerke imagining, that, if the intelligence of our proceedings should reach the islands to leeward before us, it might have a bad effect, gave orders, that the ships should be unmoored. About eight in the evening, we dismissed all the natives; and Eappo, and the friendly Kaireekoa, took their leave of us in a very affectionate manner. We immediately weighed anchor, and stood out of Karakakooa bay. The islanders were assembled in great numbers on the shore; and, as we passed along, received our last farewells, with every mark of good-will and affection. About ten o'clock P. M. having cleared the land, we stood to the northward, with a view of searching for an harbour, which the natives had often mentioned, on the south-east side of Mowee. We found ourselves, the next morning, driven to leeward, by a swell from the N. E. and a fresh gale, from the same quarter, drove us still farther to the westward. At midnight we tacked and stood four hours to the S. to

keep clear of the land; and, at day-break, on the 24th, we were standing towards a small barren island, named Tahoorowa, about seven miles S. W. of Mowee. Having now no prospect of making a closer examination of the S. E. parts of Mowee, we bore away, and kept along the S. E. side of Tahoorowa. Steering close round its western extremity, in order to fetch the W. side of Mowee, we suddenly shoaled our water, and saw the sea breaking on some rocks almost right ahead. We then kept away about a league and a half, and again steered to the northward; when we stood for a passage between Mowee, and an island named Ranai. In the afternoon, the weather was calm, with light airs from the W. We stood to the N. N. W. but observing a shoal about sunset, and the weather being unsettled, we stood towards the S. We had passed the S. W. side of this island, without being able to approach the shore. It forms the same distant view as the N. E. as seen when we returned from the N. in November, 1778; the hilly-parts, connected by a low flat isthmus, having, at the first view, the appearance of two separate islands. This deceptive appearance continued, till we were within about ten leagues of the coast, which bending a great way inward, formed a capacious bay. The westernmost point, off which the shoal runs that we have just now mentioned, is rendered remarkable by a small hillock; S. of which is a fine sandy bay; and on the shore, are several huts, with plenty of cocoa-trees about them. In the course of the day several of the natives visited us, and brought provisions with them. We presently discovered, that they had heard of our unfortunate disasters at Owhyhee. They were extremely anxious to be informed of the particulars, from a woman who had hid herself in the Resolution, in order to obtain a passage to Atooi; making particular enquiries about Pareca, and some other chiefs; and seeming much agitated

agitated at the death of Kancena, and his brother. But, in whatever light this business might have been represented by the woman, it produced no bad effect in their behaviour, which was civil and obliging to an extreme.

On Thursday, the 25th, in the morning, the wind being at E. we steered along the S. side of Ranai, till almost noon, when we had baffling winds and calms till the evening; after which, we had a light easterly breeze, and steered for the W. of Morotoi. The current, which had set from the N. E. ever since we left Karakooa bay, changed its direction, in the course of this day, to the S. E. The wind was again variable during the night; but, early in the morning of the 26th, it settled at E. blowing so fresh, as to oblige us to double-reef the top-sails. At seven, we opened a small bay, distant about two leagues, having a fine sandy beach; but not perceiving any appearance of fresh water, we endeavoured to get to the windward of Woahoo, an island which we had seen in January, 1778. We saw the land about two in the afternoon, bearing W. by N. at the distance of about eight leagues. We tacked, as soon as it was dark, and again bore away at day-light on the 27th. Between ten and eleven, we were about a league off the shore, and near the middle of the N. E. side of the island.

The coast to the northward, consists of detached hills, ascending perpendicularly from the sea; the sides being covered with wood, and the valleys, between them, appearing to be fertile, and well cultivated. An extensive bay was observable to the southward, bounded, to the S. E. by a low point of land, covered with coconut trees; off which, an insulated rock appeared, at the distance of a mile from the shore. The wind continuing to blow fresh, we were unwilling to entangle ourselves with a lee-shore. Instead of attempting, therefore, to examine the bay, we hauled up, and steered in the direction of the coast. At noon, we were about two leagues from the island, and a-breast of the N. point of it. It is low and flat, having a reef stretching off almost a mile and an half. Between the N. point, and a head-land to the S. W. the land bends inward, and seemed to promise a good road. We therefore steered along the shore, at about a mile distance. At two, we were induced, by the sight of a fine river, to anchor in thirteen fathoms water. In the afternoon, Mr. King attended the two Captains on shore, where few of the natives were to be seen, and those principally women. The men, we were informed, were gone to Morotoi, to fight Tahyterrec; but their chief, Perreorance, remained behind, and would certainly attend us, as soon as he was informed of our arrival. To our great disappointment, the water had a brackish taste, for about two hundred yards up the river; beyond which, however, it was perfectly fresh, and was a delightful stream. Farther up, we came to the conflux of two small rivulets, branching off to the right and left of a steep romantic mountain. The banks of the river, and all that we saw of Woahoo, are in fine cultivation, and full of villages; the face of the country being also remarkably beautiful and picturesque. It would have been a laborious business to have watered at this place, Mr. King was therefore dispatched to search about the coast to leeward; but, being unable to land, on account of a reef of coral, which extended along the shore, Captain Clerke resolved to proceed immediately to Atooi. In the morning, about eight, we weighed and stood to the north; and, on Sunday, the 28th, at day light, we bore away for that island, and were in sight of it by noon. We were off its eastern extremity, which is a green flat point, about sun-set. As it was dark, we did not venture to run for the road on the S. W. side, but spent the night in plying on and off, and anchored, at nine the next morning, being Monday the 1st of March, in 25 fathoms water. In running down, from the S. E. point of the island, we saw, in many places, the appearance of shoal water, at some distance from the land. Being anchored in our old station, several canoes came to visit us; but it was very observable, that there was not that appearance of cor-

diality in their manner, and complacency in their countenances, as when we saw them before. They had no sooner got on board, but one of them informed us, that we had communicated a disorder to the women, which had killed many persons of both sexes. He at that time was afflicted with the venereal disease, and minutely described the various symptoms which had attended it. As no appearance of that disorder had been observed amongst them, on our first arrival, we were, it is to be feared, the authors of this irreparable mischief. What we had principally in view, at this place, was to water the ships with as much expedition as possible, and Mr. King was sent on shore in the afternoon, with the launch and pinnace, laden with casks. He was accompanied by the gunner of the Resolution, who was instructed to trade for some provisions; and they were attended by a guard of five marines. Multitudes of people were collected upon the beach, by whom, at first, we were kindly received; but, after we had landed the casks, they began to be exceedingly troublesome. Knowing from experience, how difficult a task it was to repress this disposition, without the interposition of their chiefs, we were sorry to be informed, that they were all at a distant part of the island. Indeed, we both felt and lamented the want of their assistance; for we could hardly form a circle, as our practice usually was, for the safety and convenience of the trading party. No sooner had we taken this step, and posted marines to keep off the populace, than a man took hold of the bayonet belonging to one of the soldier's muskets, and endeavoured to wrench it forcibly from his hand. Mr. King immediately advanced towards them, when the native quitted his hold, and retired; but immediately returned, having a spear in one hand, and a dagger in the other; and it was with difficulty that his countrymen could restrain him from engaging with the soldier. This affray was occasioned by the natives having received, from the soldier, a slight prick with his bayonet, to induce him to keep without the line. At this time, our situation required great management and circumspection; Mr. King accordingly enjoined, that no one should presume to fire, or proceed to any other act of violence, without positive commands. Having given these instructions, he was summoned to the assistance of the watering party, where he found the natives in the same mischievous disposition. They had peremptorily demanded, for every cask of water, a large hatchet; which not being complied with, they would not permit the sailors to roll them to the boats. When Mr. King had joined them, one of the natives approached him, with great insolence, and made the same demand. Mr. King told him, that as a friend, he was welcome to a hatchet, but he certainly would carry off the water, without paying for it; and instantly ordered the pinnace men to proceed; at the same time calling for three marines, from the trading party, to protect them. This becoming spirit so far succeeded, as to prevent any daring attempt to interrupt us; but they still persevered in the most teasing and insulting behaviour. Some of them, under pretence of assisting the sailors, in rolling the casks towards the shore, gave them a different direction; others stole the hats from off our people's heads, pulled them backward by the skirts of their clothes, and tripped up their heels; the populace, during all this time, shouting and laughing, with a mixture of mockery and malice. They afterwards took an opportunity of stealing the cooper's bucket, and forcibly took away his bag. Their principal aim, however, was to possess themselves of the muskets of the marines, who were continually complaining of their attempts to force them from their hands. Though they, in general, preserved a kind of deference and respect for Mr. King, yet they obliged him to contribute no share towards their work of plunder. One of them approached him, in a familiar manner, and diverted his attention, whilst another seized his hanger, which he held carelessly in his hand, and ran away with it. Such insolence was not to be repelled by force. Prudence dictated that we must patiently submit to it; at the same time, guarding against its effects as well as we were

complacency in their
 em before. They had
 of them informed us,
 disorder to the women,
 of both sexes. He ac
 venereal disease, and
 symptoms which had
 e of that disorder had
 on our first arrival, we
 chors of this irreparable
 cipally in view, at this
 with as much expedition
 sent on shore in the af-
 nance, laden with casks,
 inner of the Resolution,
 r some provisions; and
 of five marines. Multi-
 upon the beach, by whom
 ved; but, after we had
 be exceedingly trouble-
 nce, how difficult a task
 n, without the interpola-
 rry to be informed, that
 of the island. Indeed, we
 nt of their assistance; for
 , as our practice usually
 nce of the trading party.
 tep, and pulled manna
 an a man took hold of
 e of the folder's mus-
 nch it forcibly from ha-
 ately advanced toward
 ed his hold, and retired;
 ving a spear in one hand,
 and it was with difficulty
 ram him from engaging
 was occasioned by the na-
 che folder, a slight prick
 him to keep without the
 ation required great ma-
 n; Mr. King accordingly
 presume to fire, or proceed
 about positive commands,
 ons, he was summoned to
 party, where he found the
 us disposition. They had
 very cask of water, a large
 mplied with, they would
 hem to the boats. When
 one of the natives ap-
 pence, and made the false
 y, that as a friend, he was
 certainly would carry off
 it; and instantly ordered
 at the same time calling
 trading party, to protect
 to far succeeded, as to
 o interrupt us; but they
 aising and insulting beha-
 r pretence of assisting the
 vards the shore, gave them
 stole the hats from off our
 backward by the skirts of
 their heels; the populace,
 and laughing, with a ma-
 . They afterwards took in
 ooper's bucket, and suc-
 r principal aim, however,
 the musquets of the na-
 complaining of their
 air hands. Though they,
 of deference and respect
 ed him to contribute to
 plunder. One of them
 manner, and diverted his
 his hanger, which he held
 n away with it. Such in-
 d by force. Prudencies
 submit to it; at we have
 ffects as well as we were

able. Mr. King was, however, somewhat alarmed, on being soon after informed by the serjeant of marines, that, turning suddenly round, he saw a man behind him, armed with a dagger, in the position of striking. Though he might, perhaps, be mistaken, in this particular, our situation was truly critical and alarming; and the smallest error or mistake, on our part, might have been of fatal consequences.

Our people being separated into three small parties; one filling casks at the lake; another rolling them to the shore; and a third purchasing provisions; Mr. King had some intentions of collecting them together, in order to protect the performance of one duty at a time. But, on due reflection, he thought it more advisable to let them proceed as they had begun. If a real attack had been made, even our whole force could have made but a poor resistance. He thought, on the other hand, that such a step might operate to our disadvantage, as being an evident token of our fears. Besides, in the present case, the crowd was kept divided, and many of them wholly occupied in bartering. Perhaps the principal cause of their not attacking us was, their dread of the effects of our arms; and, as we appeared to place so much confidence in this advantage, as to oppose only five marines to such a multitude of people, their ideas of our superiority must have been greatly exalted. It was our business to cherish this opinion; and, it must ever be acknowledged, to the honour of the whole party, that it was impossible for any men to behave better, in order to strengthen these impressions. Whatever could be considered as a jest, they received with patience and good-nature; but, if they were interrupted by any serious attempt, they opposed it with resolute looks and menaces. At length, we so far succeeded, as to get all our casks to the sea-side, without any accident of consequence; but, while our people were getting the casks into the launch, the inhabitants, thinking they should have no farther opportunity of plundering, grew more daring and insolent. The serjeant of marines luckily suggested to Mr. King, the advantage of sending off his party first into the boats, by which means the musquets would be taken out of their reach; which, as above related, were the grand objects the islanders had in view; and, if they should happen to attack us, the marines could more effectually defend us, than if they were on shore. Every thing was now in the boats, and only Mr. King, Mr. Anderson, the gunner, and a seaman of the boat's crew, remained on shore. The pinnace laying beyond the surf, which we were under a necessity of swimming through, Mr. King ordered the other two to make the best of their way to it, and told them he would follow them. They both refused to comply with this order, and it became a matter of contest, who should be the last on shore. Some hasty expression, it seems, Mr. King had just before made use of to the sailor, which he considered as a reflection on his courage, and excited his resentment; and the old gunner, as a point of honour was now started, conceived it to be his duty to take a part in it. In this whimsical situation, they, perhaps, might have long remained, had not the dispute been settled by the stones, which began to fly plentifully about us, and by the exclamations of the people from the boats, begging us to be expeditious, as the natives were armed with clubs and spears, and pursuing us into the water. Mr. King arrived first at the pinnace, and, perceiving Mr. Anderson was so far behind, as not to be entirely out of danger, he ordered one musquet to be fired; but, in the hurry of executing his orders, the marines fired two. The natives immediately ran away, leaving only one man and woman on the beach. The man attempted to rise several times, but was not able, having been wounded in the groin. The islanders, in a short time, returned; and, surrounding the wounded man, brandished their spears at us, with an air of defiance; but, by the time we reached the ships, some persons arrived which we supposed to be the chiefs, by whom they were all driven from the shore. During our absence Captain Clerke had been under terrible apprehensions for our safety: which had been considerably increased by his misunder-

No. 73.

standing some of the natives, with whom he had conversed on board. The name of Captain Cook being frequently mentioned, accompanied with circumstantial descriptions of his death and destruction, he concluded, that they had received intelligence of the unfortunate events at Owhyhee, to which they alluded. But they were only endeavouring to make him understand, what wars had arisen on account of the goats, which Captain Cook had left at Onecheow, and that the poor goats had been slaughtered, during the contest for the property of them. Captain Clerke, applying these shocking representations to our misfortunes at Owhyhee, and to an indication of revenge, fixed his telescope upon us the whole time; and, as soon as he saw the smoke of the musquets, ordered the boats to be put off to our assistance.

On Tuesday, the 2d of March, in the morning, Mr. King was again ordered on shore, with the watering party. As we had so narrowly escaped the preceding day, Captain Clerke augmented our force from both ships, and we had a guard of forty men under arms. This precaution, however, was found to be unnecessary; for the beach was left entirely to ourselves, and the ground, extending from the landing-place to the lake, tabooed. Hence we concluded, that some of the chiefs had visited this quarter; who, being unable to slay, had considerably taken this step, that we might be accommodated with safety. Several men appeared with spears and duggers, on the other side of the river, but never attempted to molest us. Their women came over, and seated themselves close by us, on the banks; and about the middle of the day, some of the men were prevailed on to bring us hogs and roots, and also to dress them for us. When we had left the beach, they came down to the sea-side, and one of them had the audacity to throw a stone at us; but, as his conduct was highly censured by the rest, we did not express any kind of resentment. On the 3d, we completed our watering, without much difficulty; and, on returning to the ships, we were informed that several chiefs had been on board, and had apologized for the conduct of their countrymen, attributing their riotous behaviour to the quarrels then subsisting among the principal people of the island, and which had destroyed all order and subordination. At this time the government of Atooi was disputed between Toneono, who had the supreme power when we were there the preceding year, and a youth named Teavee. By different fathers, they are both the grandsons of Perecorannee, king of Woahoo; who gave Atooi to the former, and Onecheow to the latter. The quarrel originated about the goats which we had left at Onecheow the year before; they being claimed by Toneono, as that island was a dependency of his. The adherents of Teavee insisting on the right of possession, both parties prepared to support their pretensions, and a battle ensued just before our arrival, wherein Toneono had been defeated. Toneono was likely to become more affected by the consequence of this victory, than by the loss of the objects in dispute; for the mother of Teavee having married a second husband, who was not only a chief at Atooi, but also at the head of a powerful faction there, he thought of embracing the present opportunity of driving Toneono out of the island, that his son-in-law might succeed to the government. The goats, which had increased to six, and would probably have stocked these islands in a few years, were destroyed in this contest. Thursday, the 4th, we were visited, on board the Resolution, by the father-in-law, the mother, and the sister of the young prince, who made several curious presents to Captain Clerke. Among the rest, were some fish-hooks, which were made from the bones of Terrecoboo's father, who had been killed in an unsuccessful descent upon Woahoo. Also a fly-flap, from the hands of the prince's sister, which had a human bone for its handle, and had been given to her by her father-in-law, as a trophy. They were not accompanied by young Teavee, he being then engaged in the performance of some religious rites, on account of the victory he had obtained. The 5th and 6th, were employed in completing the Discovery's water.

7 M

The

The carpenters were engaged in caulking the ships, and preparing for our next cruise. We no longer received any molestation from the natives, who supplied us plentifully with pork and vegetables.

This day we were visited by an Indian, who brought a piece of iron on board, to be formed into the shape of a pahooa. It was the bolt of some large ship timbers, but neither the officers nor men could discover to what nation it belonged; though from the shape of the bolt, and the paleness of the iron, they were convinced it was not English. They enquired strictly of the native how he came possessed of it, when he informed them, that it was taken out of a large piece of timber, which had been driven upon their island, since we were there in January, 1778.

On Sunday, the 7th, we received a visit from Tono-ono, at which we were surprized. Hearing the dowager princess was on board, he could hardly be prevailed on to enter the ship. When they met, they cast an angry lowering look at each other. He did not stay long, and appeared much dejected. We remarked, however, with some degree of surprize, that the women prostrated themselves before him, both at his coming and going away; and all the natives on board treated him with that respect which is usually paid to persons of his rank. It was somewhat remarkable, that a man, who was then in a state of actual hostility with Teavee's party, should venture alone within the power of his enemies. Indeed, the civil dissensions, which are frequent in all the fourth sea islands, seem to be conducted without much acrimony; the deposed governor still enjoying the rank of an Eree, and may put in practice such means as may arise, to regain the consequence which he has lost.

On the 8th, at nine in the morning, we weighed, and proceeded towards Onecheow, and came to anchor in 20 fathoms water, at about three in the afternoon, nearly on the spot where we anchored in 1778. With the other anchor, we inoored in 26 fathoms water. We had a strong gale from the eastward in the night, and, the next morning, the ship had driven a whole cable's length, both anchors being almost brought a-head; in which situation we were obliged to continue, this and the two following days.

On Friday, the 12th, the weather being more moderate, the Master was dispatched to the N. W. side of the island, in search of a more commodious place for anchoring. In the evening he returned, having found a fine bay, with good anchorage, in 18 fathoms water. The points of the bay were in the direction of N. by E. and S. by W. A small village was situated on the N. side of the bay, to the eastward of which were four wells of good water. Mr. Bligh went far enough to the N. to convince himself that Oreehoua, and Onecheow, were two separate islands. Being now on the point of taking our final leave of the Sandwich Islands, it may be proper to give here a general and correct account of their situation, and natural history, as well as of the customs and manners of the natives; which will serve as a kind of supplement to a former description, the result of our first visit to these islands.

This group is composed of 11 islands, extending in long. from 199 deg. 36 min. to 205 deg. 6 min. E. and in lat. from 18 deg. 54 min. to 22 deg. 15 min. N. Their names, according to the natives, are, 1. Owhyhee, 2. Atooi, Atowi, or Towi; which is also sometimes called Kowi. 3. Woahoo, or Oahoo. 4. Mowee. 5. Morotoi, or Morokoi. 6. Oreehoua, or Reehoua. 7. Morotinne, or Morokinne. 8. Tahoora. 9. Ranaa, or Orana. 10. Onecheow, or Nehecow. 11. Kahow-rowee, or Tahoorowa. These are all inhabited, except Tahoora and Morotinne. Besides those we have enumerated, we heard of another island named Modoo-papapa, or Komodoo-papapa, situated to the W. S. W. of Tahoora; it is low and sandy, and is visited solely for the purpose of catching turtle and water-fowl. As we could never learn that the natives had knowledge of any other islands, it is most probable that no others exist in their neighbourhood. Captain Cook had distinguished this cluster of islands by the name of the Sandwich

Islands, in honour of the Earl of Sandwich, then first Lord of the Admiralty, under whose administration he had enriched Geography with so many valuable discoveries; a tribute justly due to that nobleman, for the encouragement and support which these voyages derived from his power, and for the zealous eagerness with which he seconded the views of our illustrious navigator.

The most easterly of these islands, called Owhyhee, and by far the largest of them all, is of a triangular figure, and nearly equilateral. The angular points constitute the northern, southern, and eastern extremities. The lat. of the northern extreme is 20 deg. 17 min. N. and its long. 204 deg. 2 min. E. the southern end stands in the long. of 204 deg. 15 min. E. and in the lat. of 18 deg. 54 min. N. and the eastern extremity is in the lat. of 19 deg. 34 min. N. and in the long. of 205 deg. 6 min. E. The circumference of the whole island is about 255 geographical miles, or 293 English ones. Its breadth is 24 leagues; and its greatest length, which lies nearly in a N. and S. direction, is 28 leagues and a half. It is divided into six extensive districts, namely, Akona and Koaarra, which are on the W. side; Kaoo and Opoona, on the S. E. and Aheedoo and Amakooa, on the N. E. A mountain, named Mouna Kaah, (or the mountain Kaah) which rises in three peaks, continually covered with snow, and may be discerned at the distance of 40 leagues, separates the district of Amakooa from that of Aheedoo. The coast, to the northward of this mountain, is composed of high and abrupt cliffs, down which fall many beautiful cascades of water. We once flattered ourselves with the hopes of finding a harbour round a bluff head, on a part of this coast, in the lat. of 20 deg. 10 min. N. and the long. of 204 deg. 26 min. E. but after we had doubled the point, and were standing close in, we found that it was connected, by a low valley, with another elevated head to the north-westward. The country rises inland with a gradual ascent, and is intersected by narrow deep glens, or rather chasms: it seemed to be well cultivated, and to have many villages scattered about it. The snowy mountain above-mentioned is very steep, and its lowest part abounds with wood. The coast of Aheedoo is of a moderate elevation; and the interior parts have the appearance of being more even than the country towards the N. W. We cruised off these two districts for near a month; and whenever our distance from the shore would permit, were surrounded by canoes laden with reticements of every kind. On this side of the island we often met with a very heavy sea, and a great swell; and, as there was much foul ground off the shore, we seldom made a nearer approach to the land than two or three leagues. Towards the N. E. of Apoona, the coast, which constitutes the eastern extreme of the island, is rather low and flat. In the inland parts the acclivity is very gradual; and the country abounds with bread-fruit, and cocoa-nut trees. This appeared to us to be the finest part of the whole island; and we were afterwards informed, that the king occasionally resided here. The hills, at the fourth-western extremity, rise with some abruptness from the sea-side, leaving only a narrow border of low land towards the beach. The sides of these hills were covered with verdure; but the adjacent country seemed thinly inhabited. When our ships doubled the E. point of the island, we had sight of another snowy mountain, called by the natives, Mouna Rie (or the extensive mountain) which, during the whole time we were sailing along the fourth-eastern side, continued to be a very conspicuous object. It was flat at the summit, which was perpetually involved in snow; and we once observed its sides also slightly covered with a considerable way down. According to the tropical line of snow, as determined by Monsieur Condamine, from observations made on the Cordilleras in America, the height of this mountain must be, at least, 16,020 feet. It therefore exceeds the height of the Pico de Teyde, or Peak of Teneriffe, by 380 feet, according to the computation of the Chevalier de Borda, or 724, according to that of Dr. Herdier. The peaks of Mouna Kaah seemed to be of the height of about half a mile; and

of Sandwich, then first whose administration he so many valuable discoveries that nobleman, for the which these voyages derive the zealous eagerness of our illustrious na-

lands, called Owhyhee, all, is of a triangular figure. The angular points contain the eastern extremities. The latitude is 20 deg. 17 min. N. and the southern end stands in E. and in the latitude of the northern extremity is in the longitude of 205 deg. of the whole island is 203 English ones. Its greatest length, which is 28 leagues and a half, is divided into five extensive districts, namely, on the W. side; Kaoo, Aheedoo and Amakooa, named Mouna Kaah, for it is in three peaks, continuing to be divided at the top of the district of Amakooa. The coast, to the north, is of high and abrupt mountains, and beautiful cascades of water. The hopes of finding a passage in a part of this coast, in the longitude of 204 deg. doubled the point, and it was connected, elevated head to the north, in a gradual descent to a narrow deep gully, or ravine well cultivated, and to the south. The snowy mountains, and its lowest part, is of Aheedoo is of a moderate height, and the appearance of the country towards the south is divided into two districts for near a mile from the shore would be covered with refreshment. The eastern side of the island was of a great swell; and off the shore, we found a land than two or three miles. Apoona, the coast, which is of the island, is rather low, the acclivity is very gradual with bread-fruit, and it led us to be the finest we were afterwards invariably resided here. The climate, with some abatement only a narrow border. The sides of these mountains, but the adjacent country. When our ships doubled the point, we had sight of another island, named Mouna Kaah, during the whole time; the eastern side, continued to be flat at the summit, and we were entirely covered with a lava flow, extending to the tropical line. M. de la Condamine, from his observations in America, the height of the Pico de Teyde, or of the Pico de Teneriffe, according to the computation, is 724, according to the observations of the peaks of Mouna Kaah, is about half a mile; and,

as they are wholly covered with snow, the altitude of their summits must at least be 18,400 feet.

The district of Kaoo exhibits a most horrid and dismal prospect; the whole country having, to appearance, undergone an entire change from the consequences of some dreadful convulsion. The ground is, in all parts, covered with cinders; and, in many places, intersected with blackish streaks, which seem to mark the progress of a lava that has flowed, not many centuries ago, from Mouna Roa to the shore. The fourth promontory appears like the mere dregs of a volcano. The head-land consists of broken and craggy rocks, terminating in acute points, and irregularly piled on each other. Notwithstanding the dreary aspect of this part of the island, it contains many villages, and is far more populous than the verdant mountains of Apoona. Nor is it difficult to account for this circumstance. These islanders not being possessed of any cattle, have no occasion for pasture; and are therefore inclined to prefer such ground as is either more conveniently situated for fishing, or best adapted to the cultivation of plantains and yams. Now amidst these ruins there are many spots of rich soil, which are with great care laid out in plantations; and the neighbouring sea abounds with excellent fish of various kinds. Off this part of the coast, at less than a cable's length from the shore, we did not strike ground with 160 fathoms of line, except in a small bight to the E. of the southern point, where we found from 50 to 58 fathoms of water, over a sandy bottom. It may be proper to observe, before we proceed to give an account of the western districts, that the whole coast we have described, from the northern to the southern extreme, affords not a single harbour, nor the least shelter for shipping. The south-western parts of Akona are in a condition similar to that of the adjoining district of Kaoo; but the country further towards the N. has been carefully cultivated, and is exceedingly populous. In this division of the island lies Karakakooa bay, of which we have already given a description. Scarcely any thing is seen along the coast, but the fragments of black scorched rocks; behind which, the ground, for the space of about two miles and a half, rises gradually, and seems to have been once covered with loose burnt stones. These have been cleared away by the inhabitants, frequently to the depth of three feet and upwards; and the fertility of the soil has amply repaid their labour. Here they cultivate in a rich althy mould, the cloth-plant and sweet potatoes. Groves of cocoa-nut-trees are scattered among the fields, which are enclosed with stone fences. On the rising ground beyond these, they plant bread-fruit trees, which flourish with surpassing luxuriance. The district of Koarara extends from the most westerly point to the northern extreme of the island. The whole coast between them forms a spacious bay, which is called by the natives Toeyah-yah, and is bounded to the northward by two conspicuous hills. Towards the bottom of this bay, there is a low, corally ground, that extends to the distance of upwards of a mile from the shore, without which there is no anchorage. The country, as far as the eye could discern, appeared to be fruitful and populous; but no fresh water was to be found. The soil seemed to be of the same kind with that of the district of Keoo.

Having thus described the coasts of the island of Owhyhee, and the adjacent country, we shall now relate some particulars respecting the interior parts, from the information we obtained from a party, who set out on the 26th of January, on an expedition up the country, principally with an intention of reaching the snowy mountains. Having previously procured two of the islanders to serve them as guides, they quitted the village about four o'clock in the afternoon. Their course was easterly, inclining a little to the south. Within three or four miles from the bay, they found the country already described; but the hills afterwards rose with a less gradual ascent, which brought them to some extensive plantations, consisting of the taro or eddy root, and sweet potatoes, with plants of the cloth-tree. Both the taro and the sweet potatoes are here planted at the distance of four feet from each other. The potatoes are earthed up almost to the top of the stalk, with a pro-

per quantity of light mould. The taro is left bare to the root, and the mould round it is put in the form of a basin, for the purpose of holding the rain-water; this root requiring a certain degree of moisture. At the Friendly and Society Isles, the taro was constantly planted in low and moist situations, and generally in those places where there was the conveniency of a rivulet to flood it. This mode of culture was considered as absolutely necessary; but we now found that this root, with the precaution before-mentioned, succeeds equally well in a more dry situation. It was, indeed, remarked by all of us, that the taro of the Sandwich Islands was the best we had ever tasted. The walls, by which these plantations are separated from each other, are composed of the loose burnt stones, which are met with in clearing the ground, and, being totally concealed by sugar-canes, that are planted close on each side, form the most beautiful fences that can be imagined. Our party stopped for the night at the second hut they observed among the plantations, where they supposed themselves to be six or seven miles distant from our ships. The prospect from this spot was described by them as very delightful; they had a view of our vessels in the bay before them; to the left they saw a continued range of villages, interspersed with groves of cocoa-nut-trees, spreading along the shore; a thick wood extending itself behind them; and, to the right, a very considerable extent of ground, laid out with great regularity in well cultivated plantations, displayed itself to their view. Near this spot the natives pointed out to them, at a distance from every other dwelling, the residence of a hermit, who, they said, had, in the former part of his life, been a great chief and warrior, but had long ago retired from the sea-coast of the island, and now never quitted the environs of his cottage. As they approached him, they prostrated themselves, and afterwards presented him with some provisions. His behaviour was easy, frank, and cheerful. He testified little astonishment at the sight of our people, and though pressed to accept of some European curiosities, he thought proper to decline the offer, and soon retired to his cottage. Our party represented him as by far the most aged person they had ever seen; judging him to be, at a moderate computation, upwards of a hundred years of age. As they had supposed that the mountain was not more than ten or a dozen miles distant from the bay, and consequently expected to reach it with ease early the following morning, they were now greatly surprized to find the distance scarce perceptibly diminished. This circumstance, with the uninhabited state of the country which they were on the point of entering, rendering it necessary to provide a supply of provisions, they dispatched one of their conductors back to the village for that purpose. Whilst they waited his return, they were joined by several of Kaoo's servants, whom that generous old man had sent after them, loaded with refreshments, and fully authorized, as their rout lay through his grounds, to demand, and take away with them whatever they might want. Our travellers were surprized on finding the cold here so intense. But, as they had no thermometer with them, they could only form their judgment of it from their feelings; which, from the warm atmosphere they had quitted, must have been a very fallacious method of judging. They found it, however, so cold, that they could scarce get any sleep, and the islanders could not sleep at all; both parties being disturbed, during the whole night, by continual coughing. As they, at this time, could not be at any very great height, their distance from the sea being no more than six or seven miles, and part of the road on a very moderate ascent, this uncommon degree of cold must be attributed to the easterly wind blowing fresh over the snowy mountains. Early the next morning, they proceeded on their journey, and filled their calabashes at a well of excellent water, situate about half a mile from their hut. After they had passed the plantations, they arrived at a thick wood, which they entered by a path that had been made for the convenience of the islanders, who frequently repair thither for the purpose of catching birds, as well as procuring the wild or horse-plantain. Their progress now became extremely

remely slow, and was attended with great labour; for the ground was either swampy, or covered with large stones; the path narrow, and often interrupted by trees lying across it, which they were obliged to climb over, as the thickness of the under-wood, on each side, rendered it impracticable to pass round them. They saw, in these woods, pieces of white cloth fixed on poles, at small distances, which they imagined were land marks for the division of property, as they only observed them where the wild plantains grew. The trees were of the same kind with the spice tree of New Holland; they were straight and lofty, and their circumference was from two to four feet. Having advanced nine or ten miles in the wood, they had the mortification of finding themselves, suddenly, within sight of the sea, and not very far from it; the path having turned off imperceptibly to the S. and carried them to the right of the mountain, which it was their intention to reach. Their disappointment was considerably heightened by the uncertainty under which they now were with respect to its true bearings, as they could not at present gain a view of it from the top of the highest trees. They, therefore, thought proper to walk back six or seven miles to an unoccupied hut, where they had left two of their own people, and three of the natives, with the small remnant of their provisions. Here they passed the second night, during which the air was so extremely sharp, that, by the morning, their guides were all gone off, except one.

Being at this time in want of provisions, which laid them under a necessity of returning to some of the cultivated parts of the island, they left the wood by the same path by which they had entered it. When they arrived at the plantations, they were surrounded by the islanders, from whom they purchased a fresh supply of necessaries; and prevailed upon two of them to accompany them as guides, in the room of those who had gone away. Having procured the best information they could possibly obtain with regard to the direction of their road, the party, who were now nine in number, marched for about half a dozen miles along the skirts of the wood, and then entered it again by a path leading towards the E. They passed, for the first three miles, through a forest of lofty spice-trees, which grew on a rich loam. At the back of these trees they met with an equal extent of low shrubby trees, together with a considerable quantity of thick under-wood, upon a bottom of loose burnt stones. This led them to another forest of spice-trees, and the same rich brownish soil, which was again succeeded by a barren ridge of a similar kind with the former. These ridges, as far as they could be seen, appeared to run parallel with the sea shore, and to have Mouna Roa for their centre. In passing through the woods they found many unfinished canoes, and huts in several places: but they saw none of the inhabitants. After they had penetrated almost three miles into the second wood, they arrived at two huts, where they stopped, being greatly fatigued with the day's journey, in the course of which they had walked, according to their own computation, at least twenty miles. Having found no springs from the time they quitted the plantations, they had greatly suffered from the violence of their thirst; in consequence of which they were obliged, before the evening came on, to separate into small parties, and go in quest of water. They, at last, met with some that had been left by rain in the bottom of a half-finished canoe; which, though of a reddish colour, was by no means unwelcome to them. Throughout the night, the cold was more intense than before; and though they had taken care to wrap themselves up in mats and clothes of the country, and to keep a large fire between the two huts, they could get but very little sleep, and were under the necessity of walking about for the greatest part of the night. Their elevation was now, in all probability, pretty considerable, as the ground, over which their journey lay, had been generally on the ascent. On the next morning, which was the 29th, they set out early, with an intention of making their last and greatest effort to reach the snowy mountain; but their spirits were considerably de-

pressed, on finding that the miserable pittance of water, which they had discovered the preceding night, was expended. The path, which reached no farther than where canoes had been built, being now terminated, they were obliged to make their way as well as they could; frequently climbing up into the most lofty trees, to explore the surrounding country. They arrived, about eleven o'clock, at a ridge of burnt stones, from the top of which they had a prospect of the Mouna Roa, which then appeared to be at the distance of between twelve and fourteen miles from them. They now entered into a consultation, whether they should proceed any further, or rest contented with the view before them of the snowy mountain. Since the path had ceased, their road had become highly fatiguing, and was growing still more so, every step they advanced. The ground was almost every where broken into deep fissures, which, being slightly covered with moss, made them stumble almost continually; and the intervening space consisted of a surface of loose burnt stones, which broke under their feet. Into some of these fissures they threw stones, which seemed from the noise they made, to fall to a considerable depth; and the ground sounded hollow as they walked upon it. Besides these circumstances, which discouraged them from proceeding, they found their conductors so averse to going on, that they had reason to think they would not be prevailed on to remain out another night. They, therefore, at length came to a determination of returning to the ships, after taking a survey of the country from the highest trees they could find. From this elevation, they perceived themselves surrounded with wood towards the sea; they were unable to distinguish, in the horizon, the sky from the water; and betwixt them and the snowy mountain, was a valley of about eight miles in breadth. They passed this night at a hut in the second forest; and the following day, before noon, they had passed the first wood, and found themselves nine or ten miles to the N. E. of the ships, towards which they marched through the plantations. As they walked along, they did not observe a spot of ground, that was susceptible of improvement, left unplanted, and, indeed, the country, from their account, could scarcely be cultivated to greater advantage for the purposes of the natives. They were surprised at seeing several fields of hay; and, upon their enquiry, to what particular use it was applied, they were informed, that it was intended to cover the grounds where the young taro grew, in order to preserve them from being scorched by the rays of the sun. They observed, among the plantations, a few huts scattered about, which afforded occasional shelter to the labourers: but they did not see any villages at a greater distance from the sea than four or five miles. Near one of them, which was situated about four miles from the bay, they discovered a cave, forty fathoms in length, three in breadth, and of the same height. It was open at each end; its sides were fluted, as if wrought with a chissel; and the surface was glazed over, perhaps by the action of fire. Having thus related the principal circumstances that occurred in the expedition to the snowy mountain at Owhyhee, we shall now proceed to describe the other islands of this group.

That which is next in size, and nearest in situation to Owhyhee, is Mowee. It stands at the distance of eight leagues N. N. W. from Owhyhee, and is 140 geographical miles in circuit. It is divided by a low isthmus into two circular peninsulas, of which that to the eastward is named Whamadooda, and is twice as large as that to the W. called Owhyrookoo. The mountains in both rise to a very great height, as we were able to see them at the distance of about 30 leagues. The northern shores, like those of the isle of Owhyhee, afford no soundings; and the country bears the same aspect of fertility and verdure. The E. point of Mowee is in the latitude of 20 deg. 50 min. N. and in the longitude of 204 deg. 4 min. E. To the southward, between Mowee and the adjacent islands, we found regular depths with 150 fathoms, over a bottom

ferable pittance of wa-
 l the preceding night,
 ich reached no further
 uilt, being now termi-
 ke their way as well as
 g up into the most lofty
 ng country. They ar-
 ridge of burnt stones,
 had a prospect of the
 ed to be at the distance
 een miles from them.
 sultation, whether they
 rest contented with the
 y mountain. Since the
 l become highly fatigued,
 e, every step they ad-
 ost every where broken
 g slightly covered with
 ot continually; and the
 a surface of loose burnt
 eir feet. Into some of
 hich seemed from the
 siderable depth; and the
 y walked upon it. Be-
 ich discouraged them
 heir conductors so averse
 on to think they would
 in out another night.
 e to a determination of
 taking a survey of the
 they could find. From
 themselves surrounded
 they were unable to distin-
 from the water; and be-
 mountain, was a valley
 lth. They passed this
 uest; and the following
 asied the first wood, and
 miles to the N. E. of the
 rched through the plan-
 they did not observe a
 ptable of improvement,
 e country, from their se-
 ated to greater advantage
 s. They were surprised
 and, upon their enquiry,
 applied, they were in-
 l to cover the grounds
 n order to preserve them
 s of the sun. They ob-
 a, a few huts scattered
 ional shelter to the la-
 any villages at a greater
 ur or five miles. Near
 ated about four miles
 a cave, forty fathoms in
 of the same height. It
 sides were fluted, as if
 l the surface was glazed
 f fire. Having thus re-
 ces that occurred in the
 untain at Owhyhee, we
 the other islands of this
 and nearest in situation
 lands at the distance of
 Owhyhee, and is 140
 It is divided by a low
 nsulas, of which that to
 adooa, and is twice at
 whyrookoo. The mount-
 eat height, as we were
 ce of about 30 leagues,
 e of the isle of Owhyhee,
 country bears the same
 The E. point of Mo-
 leg. 50 min. N. and in
 min. E. To the south-
 e adjacent islands, we
 fathoms, over a bottom
 of

of sand. From the western point, which is rather low, runs a shoal, extending towards the island of Ranai, to a considerable distance; and to the S. of this, is an extensive bay, with a sandy beach, shaded with cocoa-trees. It is not improbable, that good anchorage might be met with here, with shelter from the prevailing winds; and that the beach affords a commodious landing-place. The country there back is very romantic in its appearance. The hills rise almost perpendicularly, exhibiting a variety of peaked forms; and their steep sides, as well as the deep chasms between them, are covered with trees, among which those of the bread-fruit principally abound. The summits of these hills are perfectly bare, and of a reddish brown hue. The natives informed us, that there was a harbour to the S. of the eastern point, which they asserted was superior to that of Karakakooa; and we also heard that there was another harbour, named Keepookeepoo, on the north-western side.

Ranai is about nine miles distant from Mowee and Morotoi, and is situate to the S. W. of the passage between those two isles. The country, towards the S. is elevated and craggy; but the other parts of the island had a better appearance, and seemed to be well inhabited. It abounds in roots, such as sweet potatoes, taro, and yam; but produces very few plantains, and bread-fruit trees. The S. point of Ranai is in the latitude of 20 deg. 46 min. N. and in the longitude of 203 deg. 8 min. E.

Morotoi lies at the distance of two leagues and a half to the W. N. W. of Mowee. Its south-western coast, which was the only part of it we approached, is very low; but the land behind rises to a considerable elevation; and, at the distance from which we had a view of it, appeared to be destitute of wood. Yams are its principal produce; and it may probably contain fresh water. The coast, on the southern and western sides of the island, forms several bays, that promise a tolerable shelter from the trade winds. The W. point of Morotoi is in the longitude of 202 deg. 46 min. E. and in the latitude of 21 deg. 10 min. N.

Tahoorowa is a small island situated off the south-western part of Mowee, from which it is nine miles distant. It is destitute of wood, and its soil seems to be sandy and unfruitful. Its latitude is 20 deg. 38 min. N. and its longitude 203 deg. 27 min. E. Between it and Mowee stands the little island of Morroonnee, which has no inhabitants.

Woahoo lies about seven leagues to the N. W. of Morotoi. As far as we were enabled to judge, from the appearance of the north-western and north-eastern parts (for we had not an opportunity of seeing the southern side) it is by far the finest of all the Sandwich Islands. The verdure of the hills, the variety of wood and lawn, and fertile well cultivated valleys, which the whole face of the country presented to view, could not be exceeded. Having already described the bay in which we anchored, formed by the northern and western extremes, it remains for us to observe, that, in the bight of the bay, to the southward of our anchoring-place, we met with foul rocky ground, about two miles from the shore. If the ground tackling of a ship should happen to be weak, and the wind blow with violence from the N. to which quarter the road is entirely open, this circumstance might be attended with some degree of danger: but, provided the cables were good, there would be no great hazard, as the ground from the anchoring-place, which is opposite the valley through which the river runs, to the northern point, consists of a fine sand. The latitude of our anchoring-place is 21 deg. 43 min. N. and the longitude 202 deg. 9 min. E.

The district of Atooi is about 25 leagues to the N. W. of Woahoo. Towards the N. E. and N. W. the face of the country is ragged and broken; but, to the southward, it is more even; the hills rise from the sea-side with a gentle acclivity, and, at a little distance back, are covered with wood. Its produce is the same with that of the other islands of this cluster; but its inhabitants greatly excel the people of all the neighbouring islands in the management of their plantations.

No. 73.

In the low grounds, contiguous to the bay wherein we anchored, these plantations were regularly divided by deep ditches; the fences were formed with a neatness approaching to elegance, and the roads through them were finished in such a manner, as would have reflected credit even on an European engineer. The longitude of Wymoa Bay, in this island, is 200 deg. 20 min. E. and its latitude 21 deg. 57 min. N.

Onecheow is five or six leagues to the westward of Atooi. Its eastern coast is high, and rises with abruptness from the sea; but the other parts of the island consist of low ground, except a round bluff head on the south-eastern point. It produces plenty of yams, and of the sweet root called tee. The anchoring-place at this island lies in the latitude of 21 deg. 50 min. N. and in the longitude of 199 deg. 45 min. E.

Orechoa and Tahoorra are two little islands, situate in the neighbourhood of Onecheow. The former is an elevated hummock, connected with the northern extreme of Onecheow, by a reef of coral rocks. Its latitude is 22 deg. 2 min. N. and its longitude 199 deg. 52 min. E. The latter stands to the S. E. and is uninhabited; its longitude is 199 deg. 36 min. E. and its latitude 21 deg. 43 min. N.

The climate of the Sandwich Isles is, perhaps, rather more temperate than that of the West India islands, which are in the same latitude; but the difference is very inconsiderable. The thermometer, on shore near Karakakooa Bay, never rose to a greater height than 83 deg. and that but one day: its mean height, at twelve o'clock, was 83 deg. Its mean height at noon, in Wymoa Bay, was 76 deg. and, when out at sea, 75 deg. In the island of Jamaica, the mean height of the thermometer, at twelve o'clock, is about 86 deg. at sea, 80 deg. Whether these islands are subject to the same violent winds and hurricanes with the West Indies, we could not ascertain, as we were not here during any of the tempestuous months. However, as no vestiges of their effects were any where to be seen, and as the islanders gave us no positive testimony of the fact, it is probable, that, in this particular, they resemble the Friendly and Society Isles, which are, in a great degree, free from such tremendous visitations. There was a greater quantity of rain, particularly in the interior parts, during the four winter months that we continued among these islanders, than commonly falls in the West Indies in the dry season. We generally observed clouds collecting round the summits of the hills, and producing rain to leeward; but after the wind has separated them from the land, they disperse, and are lost, and others supply their place. This occurred daily at Owhyhee; the mountainous parts being usually enveloped in a cloud; showers successively falling in the inland country; with a clear sky, and fine weather, in the neighbourhood of the shore. The winds were, for the most part, from E. S. E. to N. E. In the harbour of Karakakooa we had every day and night a sea and land breeze. The currents sometimes set to windward, and at other times to leeward, without the least regularity. They did not seem to be directed by the winds, nor by any other cause that we can assign: they often set to windward against a fresh breeze. The tides are exceedingly regular, ebbing and flowing six hours each. The flood-tide comes from the E. and at the full and change of the moon, it is high-water at three quarters of an hour after three o'clock. Their greatest rise is two feet seven inches.

The quadrupeds of these islands, are confined to three sorts, namely, hogs, dogs, and rats. The dogs are of the same species with those we saw at Orahete, having pricked ears, long backs, and short crooked legs. We did not observe any variety in them, except in their skins; some being perfectly smooth, and others having long rough hair. They are about as large as a common turnip, and seem to be extremely sluggish in their nature; though this may, probably, be more owing to the manner in which they are treated, than to their natural disposition. They are generally fed with the hogs, and left to herd with those animals; and we do not recollect a single instance of a dog being made a companion here,

as is the custom in Europe. Indeed, the practice of eating in seems to be an insuperable bar to their being admitted into society; and as there are no beasts of prey, nor objects of chase, in these islands, the social qualities of the dog, its attachment, fidelity, and sagacity, will, in all probability, remain unknown to the natives. In our observations it did not appear that the dogs in the Sandwich Islands were near so numerous, in proportion, as at Otaheite. But, on the other hand, they have a much greater plenty of hogs, and the breed is of a larger kind. We procured from them an amazing supply of provisions of this sort. We were upwards of three months, either cruising off the coast, or in harbour at Owhyhee; during all which time the crews of both ships had constantly a large allowance of fresh pork, inasmuch that our consumption of that article was computed at about 60 puncheons of 500 weight each. Besides this quantity, and the extraordinary waste, which, amidst such abundance, could not be entirely prevented, 60 more puncheons were salted for sea store. The greater part of this supply was drawn from the isle of Owhyhee alone; and yet we did not perceive that it was at all exhausted, or even that the plenty had decreased. The birds of these islands are numerous, though the variety is not great. Some of them may vie with those of any country in point of beauty. There are four species that seem to belong to the trochilidae, or honey-suckers of Linnæus. One of them is somewhat larger than a bullfinch; its colour is a glossy black, and the rhinns and rump-vent are of a deep yellow. The natives call it hoo-hoo. Another is of a very bright scarlet; its wings are black, with a white edge, and its tail is black. It is named eeeve by the inhabitants. The third is variegated with brown, yellow, and red, and seems to be either a young bird, or a variety of the preceding. The fourth is entirely green, with a yellow tinge, and is called akatearooa. There is also a small bird of the fly-catcher kind; a species of thrush, with a greyish breast; and a rail, with very short wings, and no tail. Ravens are met with here, but they are extremely scarce; they are of a dark brown colour, inclining to black, and their note is different from that of the European raven. We found two small birds, that were very common, and both of which were of one genus. One of these was red, and was usually observed about the cocoa-trees, from whence it seemed to derive a considerable part of its subsistence. The other was of a green colour. Both had long tongues, which were ciliated, or fringed at the tip. A bird with a yellow head was likewise very common here: from the structure of its beak, our people called it a parroquet: it, however, does not belong to that tribe, but bears a great resemblance to the *lexia flavicans*, or yellowish cross-bill of Linnæus. Here are also owls, curlews, petrels, and gannets; plovers of two species, one nearly the same as our whistling plover; a large white pigeon; the common water-hen; and a long-tailed bird, which is of a black colour, and the vent and feathers under the wings yellow.

The vegetable produce of the Sandwich Isles is not very different from that of the other islands of the Pacific Ocean. We have already observed, that the taro root, here cultivated, was superior to any we had before tasted. The bread-fruit trees thrive here, not indeed in such abundance as at Otaheite, but they produce twice as much fruit as they do on the rich plains of that island. The trees are nearly of the same height; but the branches shoot out from the trunk considerably lower, and with greater luxuriance of vegetation. The sugar-canes of these islands grow to an extraordinary size. One of them was brought to us at Atooi, whose circumference was eleven inches and a quarter; and it had fourteen feet carabac. At Oneheow we saw some large brown roots, from six to ten pounds in weight, resembling a yam in shape. The juice, of which they yield a great quantity, is very sweet, and is an excellent succedaneum for sugar. The natives are exceedingly fond of it, and make use of it as an article of their common diet; and our people likewise found it very palatable and wholesome. Not being able to procure

the leaves of this vegetable, we could not ascertain to what species of plant it belonged; but we supposed it to be the root of some kind of fern.

The natives of the Sandwich Isles are doubtless of the same extraction with the inhabitants of the Friendly and Society Islands, of New Zealand, the Marquesas, and Easter Island; a race which possesses all the known lands between the longitudes of 167 deg. and 260 deg. E. and between the latitudes of 47 deg. S. and 22 deg. N. This fact, extraordinary as it is, is not only evinced by the general resemblance of their persons, and the great similarity of their manners and customs, but seems to be established, beyond all controversy, by the identity of their language. It may not, perhaps, be very difficult to conjecture, from what continent they originally emigrated, and by what steps they have diffused themselves over so immense a space. They bear strong marks of affinity to some of the Indian tribes, which inhabit the Ladrões and Caroline Isles; and the similarity and resemblance, may also be traced among the Malays and the Bantams. At what particular time these migrations happened is less easy to ascertain; the period, in all probability, was not very late, as they are very populous, and have no tradition respecting their own origin, but what is wholly fabulous; though, on the other hand, the simplicity which is still prevalent in their manners and habits of life, and the unadulterated state of their general language, seem to demonstrate, that it could not have been at any very remote period. The natives of the Sandwich Islands, in general, exceed the middle size, and are well made. They walk in a very graceful manner, run with considerable agility, and are capable of enduring a great degree of fatigue; but, upon the whole, the men are inferior with respect to activity and strength, to the inhabitants of the Friendly Islands, and the women are less delicate in the formation of their limbs than the Otaheitean females. Their complexion is somewhat darker than that of the Otaheiteans; and they are not altogether so handsome in their persons as the natives of the Society Isles. Many of both sexes, however, had fine open countenances; and the women, in particular, had white well-set teeth, good eyes, and an engaging sweetness and sensibility of look. The hair of these people is of a brownish black, neither uniformly curling, like that of the African Negroes, nor uniformly straight, as among the Indians of America; but varying, in this respect, like the hair of Europeans. There is one striking peculiarity in the features of every part of this great nation; which is, that, even in the most handsome faces, there is always observable, a fullness of the nostril, without any flatness or spreading of the nose, that distinguishes them from the inhabitants of Europe. It is not wholly improbable, that this may be the effect of their customary method of salutation, which is performed by prelling together the extremities of their noses. The same superiority that we generally observed at other islands in the persons of the Erees, is likewise found here. Those that were seen by us were perfectly well formed; whereas the lower class of people, besides their general inferiority, are subject to all the variety of figure and make, that is met with in the populace of other parts of the world. But we met with more frequent instances of deformity here, than in any of the other islands we visited. While we were cruising off Owhyhee, two dwarfs came on board; one of whom was an old man, of the height of four feet two inches, but very well proportioned; and the other was a woman, nearly of the same stature. We afterwards saw, among the natives, three who were hump-backed, and a young man who had been deformed of hands and feet, from the very moment of his birth. Squinting is also common among them; and a man, who, they told us, had been born blind, was brought to us for the purpose of being cured. Besides these particular defects, they are, in general, extremely subject to boils and ulcers, which some of us ascribed to the great quantity of salt they usually eat with their fish and flesh. Though the Erees are free from these complaints, many of them experience still more dreadful effects from the too frequent use of the ava. Those

could not ascertain to
ged; but we supposed it
furn.

ch Isles are doubtless of
habitants of the Friendly
Zealand, the Marquesas,
h possidles all the known
167 deg. and 260 deg.
of 47 deg. S. and 22 deg.
is it, is not only evinced
of their persons, and the
rs and customs, but seems
ntroverted, by the identity,
t, perhaps, be very diffi-
continent they originally
they have diffused them-
ance. They bear strong
the Indian tribes, when
oline Isles; and the same
also be traced among the
what particular time they
sly to ascertain; the pe-
not very late, as they are
tribution respecting their
lly fabulous; though, on
which is still prevalent in
le, and the unadulterated
seem to demonstrate, that
very remote period. The
ls, in general, exceed the
e. They walk in a very
nsiderable agility, and are
degree of fatigue; but
inferior with respect to
habitants of the Friendly
s delicate in the forma-
taheitean females. They
er than that of the Ota-
together so handsome in
the Society Isles. Many
fine open countenances;
had white well-set teeth,
scentness and sensibility of
ple is of a brownish black,
e that of the African Ne-
as among the Indians of
spect, like the hair of Eu-
peculiarity in the features
ion; which is, that, even
here is always observable,
ut any flatness or spread-
dles them from the im-
wholly improbable, that
customary method of salu-
pielling together the ex-
same superiority that we
nds in the persons of the
e. Those that were seen
ed; whereas the lower
neral inferiority, are sub-
e and make, that is met
parts of the world. But
stances of deformity here,
s we visited. While we
o dwarfs came on board;
n, of the height of four
ll proportioned; and the
f the same stature. We
natives, three who were
nan who had been deli-
the very moment of his
mon among them; and a
e been born-blind, was
of being cured. Besides
are, in general, extremely
hich some of us ascribed
they usually eat with their
rees are free from these
erience still more dread-
nt use of the ava. Those

who were the most affected by it, had their eyes red and
inflamed, their limbs emaciated, their bodies covered
with a whitish scurf, and their whole frame trembling
and paralytic, attended with a disability of raising their
heads.

Though it does not appear that this drug universally
shortens life, (for Terreeboob, Kaoo, and several other
chiefs, were far advanced in years) yet it invariably
brings on a premature and decrepid old age. It is a
fortunate circumstance for the people, that the use of it
is made a peculiar privilege of the chiefs. The young
son of Terreeboob, who did not exceed 12 or 13 years
of age, frequently boasted of his being admitted to drink
ava; and shewed us, with marks of exultation, a small
spot in his side that was beginning to grow scaly. When
Captain Cook first visited the Society Isles, this pernicious
drug was very little known among them. In his
second voyage, he found it greatly in vogue at Ulitea;
but it had still gained little ground at Otaheite. During
the last time we were there, the havoc it had made
was almost incredible, inasmuch that Captain Cook
scarce recognized many of his former acquaintances. It
is also constantly drunk by the chiefs of the Friendly
Isles, but so much diluted with water, that it scarcely
produces any bad consequences. At Atooi, likewise,
it is used with great moderation; and the chiefs of that
island are, on this account, a much finer set of men,
than those of the neighbouring islands. It was remarked
by us, that, upon discontinuing the use of this root, its
noxious effects quickly wore off. We prevailed upon
our friends Kaoo and Kareekera, to abstain from it;
and they recovered surprisingly during the short time
we afterwards remained among them.

It may be thought, that to form any probable con-
jectures with regard to the population of islands, with
many parts of which we have but an imperfect acquain-
tance, to be a talk highly difficult. There are two cir-
cumstances, however, which remove much of this ob-
jection. One is, that the interior parts of the country
are almost entirely uninhabited: if, therefore, the num-
ber of those who inhabit the parts adjoining to the
coast, be ascertained, the whole will be determined with
some degree of accuracy. The other circumstance is,
that there are no towns of any considerable extent, the
houses of the islanders being pretty equally scattered in
small villages round all their coasts. On these grounds
we shall venture at a rough calculation of the number
of persons in this cluster of islands.

Karakakooa bay, in Owhyhee, is about three miles
in extent, and comprehends four villages of about 80
houses each, upon an average, in all 320; besides many
straggling habitations, which may make the whole a-
mount to 350. If we allow six people to each house,
the country about the bay will then contain 2,100 per-
sons. To these we may add 50 families, or 300 souls,
which we imagine to be nearly the number employed
among the plantations in the interior parts of the
island; making, in all, 2,400. If this number be ap-
plied to the whole coast round the island, a quarter
being deducted for the uninhabited parts, it will be found
to contain 150,000 persons. The other Sandwich
islands, by the same method of calculation, will appear
to contain the following number of inhabitants: Mowee,
65,000; Atooi, 54,000; Morooi, 36,000; Woahoo,
60,200; Ranai, 20,400; Oneehou, 10,000; and Oree-
houa, 4,000. These numbers, including the 150,000
in Owhyhee, will amount to 400,000. In this compu-
tation we have by no means exceeded the truth in the
total amount.

We must confess, notwithstanding the great loss we
sustained from the sudden resentment and violence of these
islanders, that they are of a very mild and affectionate dis-
position, equally remote from the distant gravity and re-
serve of the natives of the Friendly Isles, and the extreme
volatility of the Otaheiteans. They seem to live in the
greatest friendship and harmony with each other. Those
women who had children, shewed a remarkable affec-
tion for them, and paid them a particular and constant
attention; and the men, with a willingness that did ho-
nour to their feelings, frequently afforded their assistance

in those domestic employments. We must, however, re-
mark, that they are greatly inferior to the inhabitants
of the other islands, in that best criterion of civilized
manners, the respect paid to the female sex. Here the
women are not only deprived of the privilege of eating
with the men, but are forbidden to feed on the best sorts
of provisions. Turtle, pork, several kinds of fish, and
some species of plantains, are denied them; and we
were informed, that a girl received a violent beating,
for having eaten, while she was on board one of our ships,
a prohibited article of food. With regard to their do-
mestic life, they seem to live almost wholly by them-
selves, and meet with little attention from the men,
though no instances of personal ill-treatment were ob-
served by us. We have already had occasion to men-
tion the great kindness and hospitality, with which they
treated us. Whenever we went ashore, there was a con-
tinual struggle who should be most forward in offering
little presents for our acceptance, bringing provisions
and refreshments, or testifying some other mark of re-
spect. The aged persons constantly received us with
tears of joy, appeared to be highly gratified with being
permitted to touch us, and were frequently drawing
comparisons between us and themselves, with marks of
extreme humility. The young women, likewise, were
exceedingly kind and engaging, and attached them-
selves to us, without reserve, till they perceived, not-
withstanding all our endeavours to prevent it, that they
had cause to repent of our acquaintance. It must, how-
ever, be observed, that these females were, in all proba-
bility, of the inferior class; for we saw very few women
of rank during our continuance here. These people,
in point of natural capacity, are, by no means, below
the common standard of the human race. The excel-
lence of their manufactures, and their improvements
in agriculture, are doubtless adequate to their situation
and natural advantages. The eagerness of curiosity,
with which they used to attend the armourer's forge,
and the various expedients which they had invented,
even before our departure from these islands, for work-
ing the iron obtained from us, into such forms as were
best calculated for their purposes, were strong in-
dications of docility and ingenuity. Our unhappy friend,
Kaneena, was endowed with a remarkable quickness of
conception, and a great degree of judicious curiosity.
He was extremely inquisitive with respect to our man-
ners and customs. He enquired after our sovereign;
the form of our government; the mode of constructing
our ships; the productions of our country; our num-
bers; our method of building houses; whether we waged
any wars; with whom, on what occasions, and in what
particular manner they were carried on; who was our
deity; besides many other questions of a similar import,
which seemed to indicate a comprehensive understand-
ing. We observed two instances of persons disordered
in their senses; the one a woman at Oneehou, the other
a man at Owhyhee. From the extraordinary respect and
attention paid to them, it appeared, that the opinion of
their being divinely inspired, which prevails among
most of the oriental nations, is also countenanced
here.

We are inclined to think, that the practice of feed-
ing on the bodies of enemies, was originally prevalent
in all the islands of the Pacific Ocean, though it is not
known, by positive and decisive evidence, to exist in
any of them, except New-Zealand. The offering up
human victims, which is manifestly a relic of this
barbarous custom, still universally obtains among these
islanders; and it is not difficult to conceive why the in-
habitants of New-Zealand should retain the repast,
which was, perhaps, the concluding part of these hor-
rid rites, for a longer period than the rest of their tribe,
who were situated in more fertile regions. As the Sand-
wich islanders, both in their persons and disposition,
bear a nearer resemblance to the New-Zealanders, than
to any other people of this very extensive race, Mr.
Anderson was strongly inclined to suspect, that, like
them, they are still cannibals. The evidence, which
induced him to entertain this opinion, has been al-
ready laid down; but, as Mr. King had great doubts of the

who

who

who

the justness of his conclusions, we shall mention the grounds on which he ventured to differ from him. With regard to the intelligence received on this head from the natives themselves, it may not be improper to observe, that most of the officers on board took great pains to enquire into so curious a circumstance; and that, except in the instances above referred to, the islanders invariably denied that any such practice existed among them. Though Mr. Anderson's superior knowledge of the language of those people, ought certainly to give considerable weight to his judgment, yet, when he examined the man who had the little parcel, containing a piece of salted flesh, Mr. King, who was present on that occasion, was strongly of opinion, that the signs made use of by the islander intimated nothing more, than that it was designed to be eaten, and that it was very agreeable or wholesome to the stomach. In this sentiment Mr. King was confirmed, by a circumstance of which he was informed, after the decease of his ingenious friend Mr. Anderson, namely, that most of the inhabitants of these islands carried about with them a small piece of raw pork, well salted, either put in a calabash, or wrapped up in some cloth, and fastened round the waist: this they esteemed a great delicacy, and would frequently taste it. With regard to the confusion the lad was in, (for his age did not exceed 16 or 18 years) no person could have been surprized at it, who had been witness of the earnest and eager manner in which Mr. Anderson interrogated him. Mr. King found it less easy to controvert the argument deduced from the use of the instrument made with shark's teeth, which is of a similar form with that used by the New-Zealanders for cutting up the bodies of their enemies. Though he believed it to be an undoubted fact, that they never make use of this instrument in cutting the flesh of other animals, yet as the practice of sacrificing human victims, and of burning the bodies of the slain, still prevails here, he considered it as not altogether improbable, that the use of this knife (if it may be so denominated) is retained in those ceremonies. He was, upon the whole, inclined to imagine, and particularly from the last-mentioned circumstance, that the horrible custom of devouring human flesh has but lately ceased in these and other islands of the Pacific Ocean. Omiah acknowledged, that his countrymen, infligated by the fury of revenge, would sometimes tear with their teeth the flesh of their slain enemies; but he peremptorily denied that they ever eat it. The denial is a strong indication that the practice has ceased; for in New-Zealand, where it is still prevalent, the natives never scrupled to confess it.

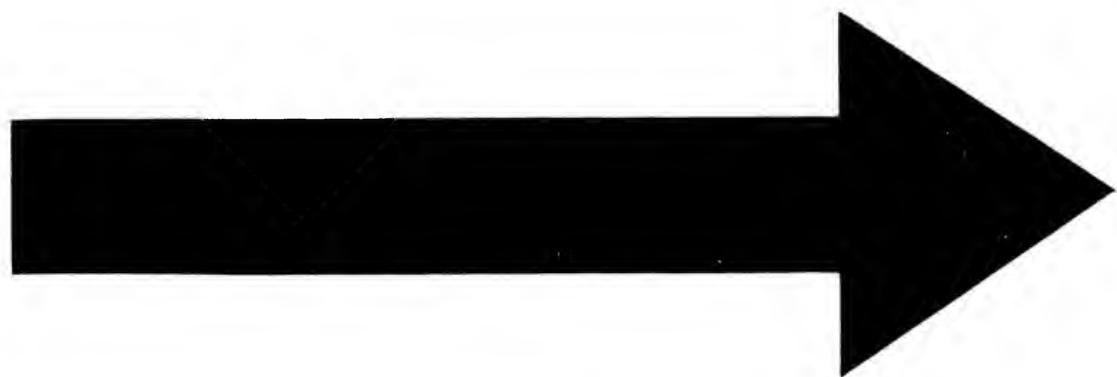
The natives of the Sandwich Islands, almost universally permit their beards to grow. There were, however, a few who cut off their beard entirely, among whom was the aged king; and others wore it only on their upper-lip. The same variety that is found among the other islanders of this ocean, with respect to the mode of wearing the hair, is likewise observable here. They have besides a fashion which seems to be peculiar to themselves: they cut it close on each side of their heads, down to their ears, and leave a ridge, of the breadth of a small hand, extending from the forehead to the neck; which, when the hair is pretty thick and curling, resembles, in point of form, the crest of the helmet of an ancient warrior. Some of them wear great quantities of false hair, flowing in long ringlets down their backs; while others tie it into one round bunch on the upper part of their heads, nearly as large as the head itself; and some into six or seven separate bunches. They use, for the purpose of daubing or smearing their hair, a greyish clay, mixed with shells reduced to powder, which they keep in balls, and chew into a sort of paste, whenever they intend to make use of it. This composition preserves the smoothness of the hair, and changes it, in process of time, to a pale yellow. Necklaces, consisting of strings of small variegated shells, are worn by both men and women. They also wear an ornament, about two inches in length, and half an inch in breadth, shaped like the handle of a cap, and made of stone, wood, or ivory, extremely well polished: this

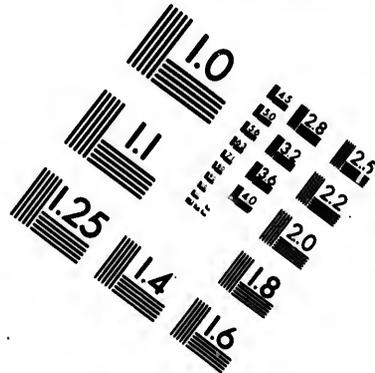
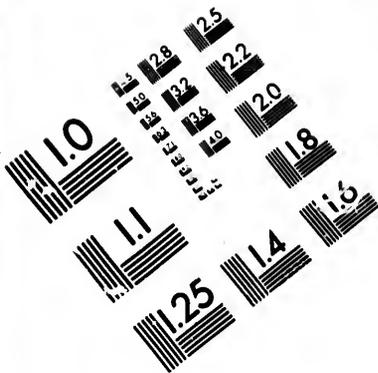
is hung round the neck by fine threads of twisted hair, which are sometimes doubled an hundred fold. Some of them, instead of this ornament, wear a small human figure on their breast, formed of bone, and suspended in a similar manner. Both sexes make use of the fan, or fly-flap, by way of use and ornament. The most common sort is composed of cocoa-nut fibres, tied loosely in bunches, to the top of a polished handle. The tail-feathers of the cock, and those of the tropic-bird, are used for the same purpose. Those that are most in esteem, are such as have the handle formed of the leg or arm bones of an enemy killed in battle: these are preserved with extraordinary care, and are handed down, from father to son, as trophies of the highest value. The practice of tattooing, or puncturing the body, prevails among these people; and, of all the islands in this ocean, it is only at New-Zealand, and the Sandwich Isles, that the face is tattooed. There is this difference between these two nations, that the New-Zealanders perform this operation in elegant spiral volutes, and the Sandwich Islanders in straight lines that intersect each other at right angles. Some of the natives have half their body, from head to foot, tattooed, which gives them a most striking appearance. It is generally done with great neatness and regularity. Several of them have only an arm thus marked; others, a leg; some, again, tattoo both an arm and a leg; and others only the hand. The hands and arms of the women are punctured in a very neat manner; and they have a remarkable custom of tattooing the tip of the tongues of some of the females. We had some reason to imagine, that the practice of puncturing is often intended as a sign of mourning, on the decease of a chief, or any other calamitous occurrence: for we were frequently informed, that such a mark was in memory of such a chief; and so of the others. The people of the lowest order are tattooed with a particular mark, which distinguishes them as the property of the chiefs to whom they are respectively subject.

The common dress of the men of all ranks consists, in general, of a piece of thick cloth, called the maro, about a foot in breadth, which passes between the legs, and is fastened round the waist. Their mats, which are of various sizes, but, for the most part, about five feet in length, and four in breadth, are thrown over their shoulders, and brought forward before. These, however, are rarely made use of, except in time of war, for which purpose they appear to be better calculated than for common use, since they are of a thick heavy texture, and capable of breaking the blow of a stone, or of any blunt weapon. They generally go bare-footed, except when they travel over burnt stones, on which occasion they secure their feet with a kind of sandal, which is made of cords, twisted from cocoa-nut fibres. Besides their ordinary dress, there is another, which is appropriated to their chiefs, and worn only on extraordinary occasions. It consists of a feathered cloak and cap, or helmet, of uncommon beauty and magnificence. This dress having been minutely described, in a former part of our work, we have only to add, that these cloaks are of different lengths, in proportion to the rank of the person who wears them; some trailing on the ground, and others no lower than the middle. The chiefs of inferior rank have likewise a short cloak, which resembles the former, and is made of the long tail-feathers of the cock, the man-of-war bird, and the tropic-bird, having a broad border of small yellow and red feathers, and also a collar of the same. Others are composed of white feathers, with variegated borders. The cap, or helmet, has a strong lining of wicker-work, sufficient to break the blow of any warlike weapon; for which purpose it appears to be intended. These feathered dresses seemed to be very scarce, and to be worn only by the male sex. During our whole continuance in Karakakoa Bay, we never observed them used, except on three occasions; first, in the remarkable ceremony of Teretoboo's first visit to our ships; secondly, by some chiefs, who appeared among the crowd on shore, when our unfortunate Commander was killed; and, thirdly, when his bones were brought to us by Eappo. The striking resemblance of this habit to the cloak and helmet which

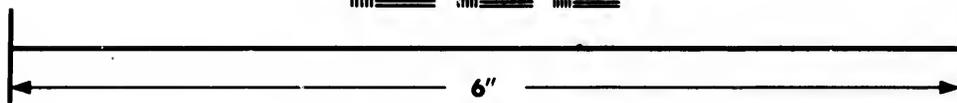
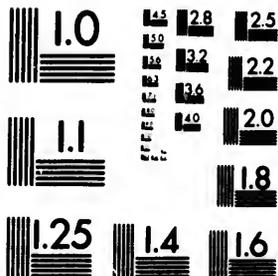
threads of twisted hair,
an hundred fold. Some
ent, wear a small human
of bone, and suspended
xes make use of the fan,
d ornament. The most
f cocoa-nut fibres, tied
f a polished handle. The
those of the tropic-bird,
Those that are most in
ndle formed of the leg or
in battle: these are pre-
, and are handed down,
of the highest value. The
uring the body, prevails
l the islands in this ocean,
d the Sandwich Isles, that
this difference between
-Zealanders perform this
olutes, and the Sandwich
terfect each other at right
ave half their body, from
ives them a most striking
done with great neatness
em have only an arm thus
again, tatoo both an arm
ie hand. The hands and
ured in a very neat man-
eable custom of tatooing
of the females. We had
the practice of puncturing
mourning, on the decease
nitous occurrence: for we
at such a mark was in me-
o of the others. The peo-
tattooed with a particular
ern as the property of the
ectively subject.

men of all ranks consist,
cloth, called the maro, a-
h passes between the legs,
t. Their mats, which are
most part, about five feet in
are thrown over their shoul-
efore. These, however, are
in time of war, for which
better calculated than for
of a thick heavy texture,
blow of a stone, or of any
ally go bare-footed, except
stones, on which occasion
kind of sandal, which is
cocoa-nut fibres. Besides
another, which is appo-
orn only on extraordinary
eathered cloak and cap, ce-
y and magnificence. This
escribed, in a former part
add, that these cloaks are
portion to the rank of the
ne trailing on the ground,
e middle. The chiefs of
short cloak, which resem-
of the long tail-feathers of
bird, and the tropic-bird,
all yellow and red feathers,
. Others are composed of
red borders. The cap, or
f wicker-work, sufficient to
te weapon; for which pur-
d. These feathered dresses
d to be worn only by the
ontinuanee in Karakooos
used, except on three oc-
eable ceremony of Terrec-
econdly, by some chiefs,
wd on shore, when our un-
illed; and, thirdly, when
y Eappo. The striking
he cloak and helmet which
the





**IMAGE EVALUATION
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic
Sciences
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEAVER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503

28 25
22
20

01



— T. King Sculp. —

the Spaniards formerly wore, excited our curiosity to enquire, whether there might not be some reasonable grounds for imagining that it had been borrowed from them. After all our endeavours to gain information on this head, we found, that the natives had no immediate acquaintance with any other people whatever; and that no tradition existed among them of these islands having ever before received a visit from such vessels as our's. However, notwithstanding the result of our enquiries on this subject, the form of this habit seems to be a sufficient indication of its European origin; particularly when we reflect on another circumstance, viz. that it is a remarkable deviation from the general agreement of drefs, which is prevalent among the several branches of this great tribe, dispersed over the Pacific Ocean. From this conclusion, we were induced to suppose, that some Buccaneer, or Spanish ship, might have been wrecked in the neighbourhood of these islands. When it is considered, that the course of the Spanish trading vessels from Acapulco to Manila, is not many degrees to the S. of the Sandwich Isles, in their passage our, and to the N. on their return, this supposition will not, we think, be deemed improbable.

In the common drefs of the men, and that of the women, there is very little difference. The latter wear a piece of cloth wrapped round the waist, which descends half way down their thighs; and sometimes, during the cool of the evening, they throw loose pieces of fine cloth over their shoulders, like the females of Otaheite. They have another kind of drefs called the pan, which the younger part of the sex often wear: it consists of the thinnest and finest cloth, wrapped several times about the middle, and reaching down to the leg; so that it has the appearance of a full short petticoat. They cut their hair, and turn it up before, after the custom of the New Zealanders and Otaheiteans. One woman, indeed, whom we saw in Karakakooa Bay, had her hair arranged in a very singular manner: having turned it up behind, she brought it over her forehead, and doubled it back, so that it formed a kind of shade to the face, and somewhat resembled a small bonnet. Besides their necklaces, which are composed of shells, or of a shining, hard, red berry, they wear dried flowers of the Indian mallow, formed into wreaths, and likewise another elegant ornament, termed erac, which is sometimes fastened round the hair in the manner of a garland, but is usually put round the neck; though it is worn occasionally in both these ways at once. It is a kind of ruff, about as thick as a finger, formed with great ingenuity, of very small feathers, woven closely together, insomuch that the surface may be said to equal the richest velvet in smoothness. The ground is, in general, red, with alternate circles of black, yellow and green. We have already described their bracelets, of which they have a great variety. Some of the women of Atooi wear small figures of the turtle, made very neatly of ivory or wood, fastened on their fingers, in the same manner that rings are worn by us. They have likewise an ornament consisting of shells, tied in rows on a ground of strong net work, so as to strike against each other, while in motion; which both sexes, when they dance, fasten either round the ankles, or just below the knee, or round the arm. They sometimes, instead of shells, use for this purpose, the teeth of dogs, and a hard red berry. Another ornament, if it deserves that name, is a kind of mask, composed of a large gourd, having holes cut in it for the nose and eyes. The top of it is stuck full of green twigs, which appear at some distance, like a waving plume; and the lower part has narrow stripes of cloth hanging from it, somewhat resembling a beard. These masks we never saw worn but on two occasions, and both times by a number of persons assembled in a canoe, who approached the side of the ship, laughing and making droll gesticulations. We could never learn whether they were not also made use of as a defence for the head against stones, or, in some of their public sports and games, or were disguises merely for the purposes of mummery and sport.

The natives of the Sandwich Islands dwell together in small towns or villages, which contain from about 100

No. 74.

to 200 houses, built pretty close to each other, without order or regularity, and having a winding path that leads through them. They are flanked frequently, towards the sea side, with loose detached walls, which are, in all probability, intended for shelter and defence. Their habitations are of various dimensions, from 45 feet by 24, to 18 by 12. Some are of a larger size, being 50 feet in length, 30 in breadth, and entirely open at one end. These, we were informed, were designed for the accommodation of strangers or travellers, whose stay was likely to be short. Some of the best houses have a court-yard before them, railed in very neatly, with smaller habitations for servants erected round it: in this area the family usually eat and sit in the day-time. In the sides of the hills, and among the steep rocks, we saw several holes or caves, which seemed to be inhabited; but the entrance being defended by wicker-work, and, in the only one that we visited, a stone fence being observed running across it within, we supposed that they were chiefly intended as places of retreat, in case of an attack from enemies.

People of an inferior class feed principally on fish, and vegetables, such as plantains, bread-fruit, sweet potatoes, sugar-canes, yams, and taro. To these, persons of superior rank add the flesh of dogs and hogs, dressed after the same method that is practised at the Society Isles. They likewise sometimes eat fowls of a domestic kind; but these, however, are neither plentiful, nor in any degree of estimation. On our first arrival at these islands, yams, and bread-fruit, seemed scarce; but, on our second visit, we did not find this to be the case: it is therefore probable, that, as these vegetable articles are commonly planted in the interior parts of the country, the islanders might not have sufficient time for bringing them down to us, during our short continuance in Wymoa Bay. Their fish are salted, and preserved in gourd-shells, not, indeed, with a view of providing against an occasional scarcity, but from the inclination they have for salted provisions; for we found, that the chiefs had frequently pieces of pork pickled in the same manner, which they considered as a great delicacy. Their cookery is much the same as at the Friendly and Society Islands; and though some of our people disliked their taro puddings, on account of their sourness, others were of a different opinion. It is remarkable, that they had not acquired the art of preserving the bread-fruit, and making of it the four paste, named maihee, as is the practice at the Society Isles; and it afforded us great satisfaction, that we had it in our power to communicate to them this secret, in return for the generous treatment we received from them. At their meals they are very cleanly; and their method of dressing both their vegetable and animal food, was acknowledged universally to be superior to ours. The Erees begin constantly their meals with a dose of the extract of pepper root, or ava, prepared in the usual mode. The women eat apart from the other sex, and are prohibited, as before observed, from feeding on pork, turtle, and some particular species of plantains. Notwithstanding this interdiction, they would eat, privately, pork with us; but we could never prevail on them to taste the two latter articles of food. They generally rise with the sun; and having enjoyed the cool of the evening, retire to their repose a few hours after sun-set. The Erees are employed in making canoes, and mats; the Towtows are chiefly engaged in their plantations, and in fishing; and the women in the manufacture of cloth. They amuse themselves, in their leisure hours, with various diversions. The youth of both sexes are fond of dancing; and on more solemn occasions, they entertain themselves with wrestling and boxing matches, performed after the manner of the natives of the Friendly Islands; to whom, however, they are greatly inferior in these respects. Their dances, which bear a greater resemblance to those of the New Zealanders, than of the Friendly or Society Islanders, are introduced with a solemn kind of song, in which the whole number join, at the same time moving slowly their legs, and striking gently their breasts; their attitudes and manner being very easy and graceful. So

far they resemble the dancers of the Society Islands. After this has continued about the space of ten minutes, they quicken gradually their motions and the tune, and do not desist till they are oppressed with fatigue. This part of the performance is the counter-part of that of the inhabitants of New Zealand; and, as among those people, the person whose action is the most violent, and who continues this exercise the longest, is applauded by the spectators as the best dancer. It must be remarked, that, in this dance, the females only engage; and that the dances of the men resemble those we saw of the small parties at the Friendly Isles; and which may, perhaps, more properly, be termed the accompaniment of song, with the correspondent motions of the whole body. But as we saw some boxing exhibitions, of the same kind with those we had seen at the Friendly Isles, it is not improbable, that they had here likewise their grand dances, wherein both men and women were performers. Their music, on these, and other occasions, is of a rude kind; for the only instruments, we observed among them, were drums of various sizes. Their songs, however, which they are said to sing in parts, and which they accompany with a gentle motion of their arms, like those of the inhabitants of the Friendly Isles, have a very pleasing effect.

These people are greatly addicted to gambling. One of their games resembles our game of draughts; but, from the number of squares, it seems to be much more intricate. The board is of the length of about two feet, and is divided into 238 squares, 14 in a row. In playing they use white and black pebbles, which they move from one square to another. They have a game which consists in concealing a stone under some cloth, spread out by one of the parties, and rumbled in such a manner, that it is difficult to perceive where the stone lies. The antagonist then strikes, with a stick, that part of the cloth where he supposes the stone to be; and the chances being upon the whole, against his hitting it, odds of all degrees, varying with the opinion of the dexterity of the parties, are laid on the occasion. Their manner of playing at bowls nearly resembles that of ours. They often entertain themselves with races between boys and girls, on which they lay wagers with great spirit. We saw a man beating his breast, and tearing his hair, in the violence of rage, for having lost three hatchets at one of these races, which he had purchased from us with near half his property a very little time before. In swimming, both sexes are very expert; an art that, among these people, is deemed necessary, and is their favourite diversion. One particular method, in which we sometimes saw them amuse themselves, is worthy of notice. The surf, that breaks on the coast round this bay, extends about a 50 yards from the shore; and within that space, the surges of the sea are dashed against the beach with extreme violence. Whenever the impetuosity of the surf is augmented to its greatest height, they make choice of that time for this amusement, which they perform in this manner: about 20 or 30 of the natives take each a long narrow board, rounded at both ends: and set out in company with each other from the shore. They plunge under the first wave they meet, and, after they have suffered it to roll over them, rise again beyond it, and swim further out into the sea. They encounter the second wave in the same manner with the first. The principal difficulty consists in seizing a favourable opportunity of diving under it; for, if a person misses the proper moment, he is caught by the surf, and forced back with great violence; and his utmost dexterity is required, to prevent his being dashed against the rocks. When in consequence of these repeated efforts, they have gained the smooth water beyond the surf, they recline themselves at length upon the boards, and prepare for their return to shore. The surf being composed of a number of waves, of which every third is observed to be considerably larger than the rest, and to flow higher upon the shore, while the others break in the intermediate space; their first object is to place themselves on the top of the largest surge, which drives them along with astonishing rapidity towards the land. If, by mistake,

they should place themselves on one of the smaller waves, which breaks before they gain the shore, or should find themselves unable to keep their board in a proper direction on the upper part of the swell, they remain exposed to the fury of the next; to avoid which, they are under the necessity of diving again, and recovering the place from whence they set out. Those who succeed in reaching the shore, are still in a very hazardous situation. As the coast is defended by a chain of rocks, with a small opening between them in several places, they are obliged to steer their plank through one of these openings; or, in case of ill success in that respect, to quit it before they reach the rocks, and, diving under the wave, make their way back again as well as they are able. This is considered as highly disgraceful, and is attended with the loss of the plank, which we have seen dashed to pieces, at the very instant the native quitted it. The amazing courage and address, with which they perform these dangerous achievements are almost incredible. The following accident evinces, at how early a period they are so far accustomed to the water, as to lose all apprehensions of its perils, and even set them at defiance. A canoe, in which was a woman and her children, happening to overfet, one of the children, an infant of about four years old, appeared to be greatly delighted, swimming about at its ease, and playing a number of tricks, till the canoe was brought to its former position. Among the amusements of the children, we observed one that was frequently played at, and which shewed a considerable share of dexterity. They take a short stick, through one extremity whereof runs a peg sharpened at both ends, extending about an inch on each side, then throwing up a ball, formed of green leaves moulded together, and fastened with twine, they catch it on one of the points of the peg; immediately after which, they throw it up again from the peg, then turn the stick round, and catch the ball on the other point of the peg. Thus, for some time, they continue catching it on each point of the peg alternately, without missing it. They are equally expert at another diversion of a similar nature, throwing up in the air, and catching, in their turns, many of these balls; and we have often seen little children thus keep five balls in motion at once. This latter game is also practised by the young people of the Friendly Isles. The figure and dimensions of the canoes, seen by us at Atooi, have been already described. Those belonging to the other Sandwich Islands were made exactly in the same manner; and the largest we saw was a double one, the property of Terreeboob, measuring 70 feet in length, 12 in breadth, and between 3 and 4 in depth; and each was hollowed out of one tree. Their method of navigation, as well as that of agriculture, resemble those of the other islands in the Pacific Ocean. They have made considerable proficiency in the art of sculpture, and in painting or staining cloth. The most curious specimens of their sculpture, that we had an opportunity of observing, were the wooden bowls, in which the Erees drink ava. These are, in general, eight or ten inches in diameter, perfectly round, and extremely well polished. They are supported by three or four small human figures, represented in different attitudes. Some of them rest on the shoulders of their supporters; others on the hands, extended over the head; and some on the head and hands. The figures are very neatly finished, and accurately proportioned; even the anatomy of the muscles is well expressed.

Their cloth is manufactured in the same manner as at the Society and Friendly Islands. That which they intend to paint, is of a strong and thick texture, several folds being beaten and incorporated together; after which they cut it in breadths, two or three feet wide, and then paint it in a great variety of patterns, with such regularity and comprehensiveness of design, as shew an extraordinary portion of taste and fancy. The exactness with which the most intricate patterns are continued, is really astonishing, as they have no stamps, and as the whole is performed by the eye, with a piece of bamboo cane dipped in paint; the hand being supported by another piece of the same sort of cane.

They extract their colour from other vegetable articles, heite for this purpose. painting their cloth, is called denominated kipparee, by this name. They take the pen from our hands were as well acquainted with themselves; telling us, at the inferior to theirs. They of paper as a piece of cloth our country; and it was that we could make them contained a meaning in the tute of. Their mats the pandanus; and these, beautifully worked in with divers colours. Some straw-colour, embellished of a pale green, spotted red; and some are ornamented in frist or waved li branch of manufacture, beauty, or strength, these the whole world. Their and figures; but those are about two or three in the shape of a small bunch of feathers fastened make their hooks of bone pointed and barbed with Those with which they being, in general, of the Considering the materials posed, their neatness are indeed, upon trial, we Of the bark of the tooth they form the line which ing nets, and for some ferent degrees of fineness any length. They have of a shrub, named are used of human hair: this use of in the way of cordage of a stronger kind the rigging of their canoes purchased by us for our calculated for the same They also manufacture is flat, and extremely soft the purpose of lashing; last is not twisted after but is formed of the cocoa-nut, plaited with which is practised by us for the reefing of sails.

Their gourds are applied. These grow to the use of some of them will come In order to adapt them they take care to give them bandages round them of of them are in the form puddings, vegetables, of a long cylindrical form ing tackle; which two covers, made also of the of a long-necked bottle They score them freely so as to communicate painted, in a great variety of pans in which they are lined with clay, and square, and about two are elevated on a bank mark, whence the salt of them, in trenches, in a short time the sun poration. The salt of Atooi, during our first

ould place themselves on one of the smaller which breaks before they gain the shore, or find themselves unable to keep their board in a direction on the upper part of the swell, they exposed to the fury of the next; to avoid which, under the necessity of diving again, and recover the place from whence they set out. Those who in reaching the shore, are still in a very hazardous. As the coast is defended by a chain of with a small opening between them in several they are obliged to steer their plank through these openings; or, in case of ill success in that to quit it before they reach the rocks, and, under the wave, make their way back again as well as able. This is considered as highly disgraceful is attended with the loss of the plank, which when dashed to pieces, at the very instant the native it. The amazing courage and address, with they perform these dangerous achievements are incredible. The following accident evinces, at early a period they are so far accustomed to the as to lose all apprehensions of its perils, and even in defiance. A canoe, in which was a woman children, happening to overfet, one of the child an infant of about four years old, appeared to be delighted, swimming about at its ease, and play-number of tricks, till the canoe was brought to mer position. Among the amusements of the in, we observed one that was frequently played at, which shewed a considerable share of dexterity. ke a short stick, through one extremity whereof peg sharpened at both ends, extending about an each side, then throwing up a ball, formed of leaves moulded together, and fastened with twine, catch it on one of the points of the peg; im-ely after which, they throw it up again from the hen turn the stick round, and catch the ball on the point of the peg. Thus, for some time, they conatching it on each point of the peg alternately, it missing it. They are equally expert at another on of a similar nature, throwing up in the air, tching, in their turns, many of these balls; and ve often seen little children thus keep five balls in a at once. This latter game is also practised by ung people of the Friendly Isles. The figure emensions of the canoes, seen by us at Atooi, have already described. Those belonging to the other ich Islands were made exactly in the same man-nd the largest we saw was a double one, the pro- of Terreeboob, measuring 70 feet in length, 13 in n, and between 3 and 4 in depth; and each was ed out of one tree. Their method of naviga- s well as that of agriculture, resemble those of er islands in the Pacific Ocean. They have considerable proficiency in the art of sculpture, painting or staining cloth. The most curious ents of their sculpture, that we had an opport- observing, were the wooden bowls, in which the ink ava. These are, in general, eight or ten n in diameter, perfectly round, and extremely well d. They are supported by three or four small figures, represented in different attitudes. Some n rest on the shoulders of their supporters; on the hands, extended over the head; and some head and hands. The figures are very neatly d, and accurately proportioned; even the ana- of the muscles is well expressed.

re cloth is manufactured in the same manner as at iety and Friendly Islands. That which they o paint, is of a strig and thick texture, few- being beaten and incorporated together; after they cut it in breadths, two or three feet wide, n paint it in a great variety of patterns, with gularity and comprehensiveness of design, as extraordinary portion of taste and fancy. The s with which the most intricate patterns are con- is really astonishing, as they have no stamps, he whole is performed by the eye, with a piece oo cane dipped in paint; the hand being sup- by another piece of the same sort of cane.

They

They extract their colours from the same berries, and other vegetable articles, which are made use of at Otahete for this purpose. The operation of staining or painting their cloth, is confined to the females, and is denominated kipparee. They always called our writing by this name. The young women would frequently take the pen from our hands, and shew us that they were as well acquainted with the use of it as we ourselves; telling us, at the same time, that our pens were inferior to theirs. They considered a manuscript sheet of paper as a piece of cloth striped after the mode of our country; and it was with the greatest difficulty that we could make them understand that our figures contained a meaning in them, which theirs was destitute of. Their mats they make of the leaves of the pandanus; and these, as well as their cloths, are beautifully worked in various patterns, and stained with divers colours. Some of them have a ground of straw-colour, embellished with green spots; others are of a pale green, spotted with squares, or rhomboids, of red; and some are ornamented with elegant stripes, either in straight or waved lines of red and brown. In this branch of manufacture, whether we regard the fineness, beauty, or strength, these islanders may be said to excel the whole world. Their fishing hooks are of various sizes and figures; but those that are principally made use of are about two or three inches in length, and are formed in the shape of a small fish, serving as a bait, with a bunch of feathers fastened to the head or tail. They make their hooks of bone, mother-of-pearl, or wood, pointed and barbed with little bones, or tortoise-shell. Those with which they fish for sharks, are very large, being, in general, of the length of six or eight inches. Considering the materials of which these hooks are composed, their neatness and strength are amazing; and, indeed, upon trial, we found them superior to our own. Of the bark of the toota, or cloth-tree, neatly twisted, they form the line which they use for fishing, for making nets, and for some other purposes. It is of different degrees of fineness, and may be continued to any length. They have also a sort, made of the bark of a shrub, named areemah; and the finest is composed of human hair: this last, however, is chiefly made use of in the way of ornament. They likewise make cordage of a stronger kind, from cocoa-nut fibres, for the rigging of their canoes. Some of this, which was purchased by us for our own use, was found to be well calculated for the smaller kinds of running rigging. They also manufacture another sort of cordage, which is flat, and extremely strong, and is principally used for the purpose of lashing the roofs of their houses. This last is not twisted after the manner of the former sorts, but is formed of the fibrous strings of the coat of the cocoa-nut, plaited with the fingers, in the same manner which is practised by our seamen in making their points for the reefing of sails.

Their gourds are applied to various domestic purposes. These grow to such an enormous magnitude, that some of them will contain from ten to a dozen gallons. In order to adapt them the better to their respective uses, they take care to give them different shapes, by fastening bandages round them during their growth. Thus some of them are in the form of a dish, serving to hold their puddings, vegetables, and salted provisions: others are of a long cylindrical form, and serve to contain their fishing tackle; which two sorts are furnished with neat close covers, made also of the gourd. Others are in the shape of a long-necked bottle, and in these water is kept. They score them frequently with a heated instrument, so as to communicate to them the appearance of being painted, in a great variety of elegant designs. Their pans in which they make their salt, are made of earth lined with clay, and are in general six or eight feet square, and about two thirds of a foot in depth. They are elevated on a bank of stones, near the high-water-mark, whence the salt water is conducted to the bottom of them, in trenches, out of which they are filled; and in a short time the sun performs the process of the evaporation. The salt we met with at Onecheow and Atooi, during our first visit, was brownish, and rather

dirty; but that which we afterwards procured in Karakakooa Bay, was white, and of an excellent quality. We obtained an ample supply of it, inasmuch that, besides the quantity used by us in salting pork, we filled all our empty casks with it.

The warlike weapons of the inhabitants of these islands are daggers, which they call by the name of pahoo, spears, slings, and clubs. The pahoo is made of a black, heavy wood, that resembles ebony. It is commonly from one to two feet in length, and has a string passing through the handle, by which it is suspended from the arm. The blade is somewhat rounded in the middle: the sides are sharp, and terminate in a point. This offensive weapon is intended for close engagements, and in the hands of the natives is a very destructive one. Their spears are of two kinds, and are formed of hard wood, which, in its appearance, is not unlike mahogany. One sort is from six to eight feet in length, well polished, and increasing gradually in thickness from the extremity till within the distance of six or seven inches from the point, which tapers suddenly, and has five or six rows of barbs. It is probable that these are used in the way of javelins. The other sort, with which the warriors we saw at Atooi and Owhyhee were chiefly armed, are from 2 to 5 feet in length, and instead of being barbed, terminate towards the point, in the manner of the daggers. Their slings are the same with our common ones, except in this respect, that the stone is lodged on matting, instead of leather. Their clubs are formed indifferently of several kinds of wood: they are of various sizes and shapes, and of rude workmanship.

The inhabitants of the Sandwich Islands are divided into three classes. The Erees, or chiefs of each district, are the first; and one of these is superior to the rest, who is called, at Owhyhee, Eree-raboo, and Eree-Moce, the first name expressing his authority, and the latter signifying that, in his presence, all must prostrate themselves. Those of the second class appear to enjoy a right of property, but have no authority. Those who compose the third class, are called Towtows, or servants, and have neither rank nor property. The superior power and distinction of Terreeboob, the Eree-raboo of Owhyhee, was sufficiently evident from his reception at Karakakooa, on his first arrival. The inhabitants all prostrated themselves at the entrance of their houses, and the canoes were tabooed, till he discharged the interdiction. He was then just returned from Mowee, an island he was conceding for, in behalf of his son, Teewarro, whose wife was the only child of the king of that place, against Taheteerree, his surviving brother. In this expedition he was attended by many of his warriors; but we could never learn whether they served him as volunteers, or whether they held their rank and property under that tenure. That the subordinate chiefs are tributary to him, is evidently proved in the instance of Kaoo, which has been already related. We have also observed, that the two most powerful chiefs of the Sandwich Islands, are Terreeboob and Perreecorannee; the former being chief of Owhyhee, and the latter of Waohoo; all the smaller isles being governed by one of these sovereigns: Mowee was, at this time, claimed by Terreeboob, for his son and intended successor; Atooi and Onecheow being in the possession of the grandsons of Perreecorannee. Without entering into the genealogy of the kings of Owhyhee and Mowee, it may be necessary to mention, that, when we were first off Mowee, Terreeboob and his warriors were there, to support the claims made by his wife, his son, and his daughter-in-law; and a battle had then been fought with the opposite party, in which Terreeboob had been victorious. Matters, however, were afterwards compromised; Taheteerree was to have possession of the three neighbouring islands, during his life; Teewarro to be acknowledged chief of Mowee, and to succeed to Owhyhee, on the death of Terreeboob, together with the three islands contiguous to Mowee, after the decease of Taheteerree. Should Teewarro, who has lately married his half sister, die, and leave no issue behind him, those islands are to descend to Maitha-maitha, whom we have frequently mentioned, he being

the son of Terreeboob's deceased brother; and should he die without issue, it is doubtful who would be the successor, for Terreeboob's two younger sons, being born of a mother who had no rank, would be debarred all right of succession. We did not see Queen Rorara, whom Terreeboob had left at Mowee; but we had an opportunity of seeing Kance Kaberaia, the mother of the two youths of whom he was so extremely fond. From what has been already mentioned, it should seem that their government is hereditary; whence it appears probable, that the inferior titles, as well as property, descend in the same channel. Respecting Perreerancee, we only discovered that he is an Eree-taboo; that he was, on some pretence, invading the possession of Taheterree; and that the islands to the leeward were governed by his grandsons.

The Erees appear to have unlimited power over the inferior classes of people; many instances of which occurred daily while we continued among them. On the other hand, the people are implicitly obedient. It is remarkable, however, that we never saw the chiefs exercise any acts of cruelty, injustice, or insolence towards them; though they put in practice their power over each other, in a most tyrannical degree: which the two following instances will fully demonstrate. One of the lower order of chiefs having shewn great civility to the master of our ship, when employed on the survey of Karakakooa Bay; Mr. King, some time afterwards, took him on board, and introduced him to Captain Cook, who engaged him to dine with us. While at table, Pareea entered, whose countenance manifested the highest indignation at seeing our guest so honourably entertained. He seized him by the hair of his head, and would have dragged him out of the cabin, if the Captain had not interfered. After much altercation, we could obtain no other indulgence (without quarrelling with Pareea) than, that our guest should be permitted to remain in the cabin, on condition that he seated himself on the floor, while Pareea occupied his place at the table. An instance somewhat similar happened when Terreeboob came first on board the Resolution; where Maiha-maiha, who attended the king, seeing Pareea upon deck, turned him most ignominiously out of the ship; even though we knew Pareea to be a man of the first consequence in the island. Whether the lower class of people have their property secured from the rapacity of the great, we cannot possibly say, but it appears to be well protected against theft and depredation. All their plantations, their houses, their hogs, and their cloth, are left unguarded, without fear or apprehension of plunderers. In the plain country, they separate their possessions by walls; and, in the woods, where horse plantains grow, they use white flags to discriminate property, in the same manner as they do bunches of leaves at Otaheite. These circumstances strongly indicate, that, where property is concerned, the power of the Erees is not arbitrary, but so far limited, as to afford encouragement to the inferior orders to cultivate the soil, which they occupy distinct from each other.

The information we obtained, respecting the administration of justice is very imperfect. If a quarrel arose among the lower class of people, the matter was referred to some chief for his decision. When an inferior chief had offended one of superior rank, his punishment was dictated by, and the result of, the feelings of the superior at that moment. If the offender should fortunately escape the first transports of the great man's rage, he perhaps found means, through the mediation of friends, to compound for his offence, by all, or a part of his effects. As to the religion of these people, it resembles that of the Society and Friendly Islands. In common with each other, they all have their Morais, their Whattas, sacred orations, hymns, and sacrifices. These are convincing proofs that their religious rites and tenets are derived from the same source. The ceremonies here are, indeed, longer, and more numerous than in the islands above-mentioned; and though in all these places, the care and performance of their religious rites, is committed to a

particular class of people; yet we had never found a regular society of priests, till we arrived at Kakooa, in Karakakooa Bay. Orono was the title given to the principal of this order; a title which seemed to imply something sacred in a high degree, and which almost received adoration in the person of Omeeah. The privilege of holding the principal offices in this order, is doubtless limited to certain families. Omeeah, the Orono, was Kaa's son, and Kaireekeea's nephew. Kaireekeea presided in all religious ceremonies at the Morai, in the absence of his grandfather: it was observed, likewise, that the son of Omeeah, an infant of about the age of five years, had always a number of attendants, and such other marks of distinction and esteem were shewn him, as we never observed in any similar instances. Hence we concluded, that his life was an object of much consequence, and that he would eventually succeed to the high dignity of his father. The title of Orono, we have already observed, was bestowed on Captain Cook; and it is very certain, that they considered us as a race of beings superior to themselves; frequently repeating that the great Eatooa lived in our country. The favourite little idol on the Morai, before which Captain Cook fell prostrate, is called Koonoraekaiee, and is Terreeboob's god, which they said resided also among us. An almost infinite variety of these images were to be seen, both on the Morais, and about their houses, on which they bestow different names; but they certainly were held in very little estimation; from their contemptuous expressions when speaking of, or to them, and from their exposing them to sale for mere trifles; though they generally had one particular figure in high favour, to which, while it continued a favourite, all their adoration was addressed. They arrayed it in red cloth, beat their drums, and chanted hymns before it; placed bunches of red feathers, and different vegetables at its feet; and frequently exposed a pig or a dog, to rot on the Whatta, near which it was placed. In a bay to the southward of Karakakooa, a party of us were conducted to a large house, in which we saw the figure of a black man, resting on his toes and fingers, and his head inclined backward: the limbs were well proportioned, and the whole was beautifully polished. This figure was called Mae; round which thirteen others were placed, with shapes rude and distorted. These, we were told, were the Eatoo's of deceased chiefs, whose names they repeated. Numbers of Whattas were seen within this place, with the remains of offerings on many of them. They also have in their habitations many ludicrous and obscene representations by idols, not unlike the Priapus of the ancients. Former navigators have remarked, that the Society and Friendly Islanders pay adoration to particular birds, and it seems to be a custom prevalent in these islands: ravens may here, perhaps, be objects of worship; for Mr. King saw two of these birds perfectly tame, and was told they were Eatooas: that gentleman offered several articles for them, which were all refused; and he was particularly cautioned not to offend, or hurt them. Among their religious ceremonies may be classed the prayers and offerings made by their priests before their meals: As they always drink ava before they begin a repast, while that is chewing, the superior in rank begins a sort of hymn, in which he is soon after joined by one or more of the company; the bodies of the others are put in motion, and their hands are clapped together in concert with the fingers. The ava being ready, cups of it are presented to those who do not join in the hymn, which are held in their hands till it is concluded; when, with united voice, they make a loud response, and drink their ava. The performers are then served with some of it, which they drink, after the same ceremony has been repeated. And, if any person of a superior rank should be present, a cup is presented to him last of all; who having chanted for a short time, and hearing a response from others, he pours a small quantity on the ground, and drinks the rest. A piece of the flesh, which has been dressed, is then cut off, and together with some of the vegetables, is placed at the foot of the figure of the Eatooa; and, after another hymn

we had never found a
 ve arrived at Kakooa, in
 the title given to the
 which seemed to imply
 ree, and which almost re-
 of Omeah. The pri-
 offices in this order, is
 families. Omeah, the
 Kairekeeka's nephew.
 gious ceremonies at the
 idfather: it was observed,
 eah, an infant of about
 ys a number of attend-
 distinction and esteem
 served in any similar in-
 , that his life was an ob-
 that he would eventually
 his father. The title of
 ed, was bestowed on Cap-
 ain, that they considered
 rior to themselves; great
 Eatooa lived in our
 idol on the Morai, be-
 prostrate, is called Koo-
 o's god, which they said
 almost infinite variety of
 both on the Morais, and
 they bestow different
 e held in very little eili-
 otuous expressions when
 from their exposing them
 h they generally had one
 r, to which, while in con-
 sideration was addressed.
 , beat their drums, and
 d bunches of red feathers,
 feet; and frequently ex-
 the Whatta, near which
 the southward of Karaka-
 ducted to a large house, in
 black man, resting on his
 inclined backward; the
 and the whole was beau-
 was called Mace; round
 eed, with shapes rude and
 old, were the Eatoo's of
 they repeated. Numbers
 this place, with the re-
 them. They also have
 rous and obscene repre-
 the Priapus of the ana-
 ve remarked, that the
 pay adoration to partic-
 be a custom prevalent in
 , perhaps, be objects of
 o of these birds gently
 Eatooas: that gentleman
 em, which were all re-
 cautioned not to offend,
 eligious ceremonies may
 ings made by their priests
 always drink ava before
 is chewing, the superior
 in which he is soon after
 company; the bodies of
 d their hands are clapped
 ings. The ava being
 to those who do not join
 their hands till it is con-
 ce, they make a loud re-
 The performers are then
 ey drink, after the same
 And, if any person of a
 , a cup is presented to
 anted for a short time,
 there, he pours a small
 nks the rest. A piece of
 ed, is then cut off, and
 etables, is placed at the
 o; and, after another
 hymn

hymn has been chanted, they begin their meal. A cere-
 mony, in many respects resembling this, is also per-
 formed by the chiefs, when they drink ava between
 their regular meals. According to the accounts given
 by the natives, human sacrifices are more common here
 than in any of the islands we have visited. They have
 recourse to these horrid rites, on the commencement of
 a war, and previous to a battle, or any signal enter-
 prize. The death of every chief demands an offering
 of one or more Towtoos; and we were informed not
 less than ten were devoted to suffer, on the decease of
 Terreebooo, the king. But the unhappy victims are
 totally unacquainted with their ordained fate; which
 is, to be attacked with large clubs, wherever they may
 happen to be; and after they are dead, are conveyed
 to the place where the subsequent rites are to be per-
 formed. This brings to our remembrance the skulls of
 those who had been sacrificed on the decease of some
 principal chief, and were fixed to the Morai at Kakooa;
 at which village we received further information on this
 subject; for we were shewn a small piece of ground,
 within a stone fence, which we were told was a Here-
 eere, or burying-place of a chief. The person who gave
 us this information, pointing to one of the corners,
 added; and there lie the tangata and wahene-taboo, or
 the man and woman who became sacrifices at his fune-
 ral. The knocking out their fore teeth, may be with
 propriety classed among their religious customs. Most
 of the common people, and many of the chiefs, had
 lost one or more of them; and this, we understood, was
 considered as a propitiatory sacrifice to the Eatooa, to
 avert his anger; and not like the cutting off part of
 the finger at the Friendly Islands, to express the vio-
 lence of their grief at the decease of a friend. Concern-
 ing their opinions, respecting a future state, we had very
 defective information. Enquiring of them, whether
 the dead were gone? we were told, that the breath,
 which they seemed to consider as the immortal part,
 was fled to the Eatooa. They seemed also to give
 a description of some place, which they suppose to be
 the abode of the dead; but we could not learn, that
 they had any idea of rewards and punishments.

Here an explanation of the word Taboo may not be
 improperly introduced. On asking the reasons of the
 intercourse being interdicted, between us and the islan-
 ders, the day preceding Terreebooo's arrival, we were
 informed, that the Bay was tabooed. The same inter-
 diction took place, by our desire, when we interred the
 remains of Captain Cook. The most implicit obedi-
 ence, in these two instances, was rendered by the na-
 tives; but whether on religious principles, or in de-
 ference to civil authority, we cannot pretend to deter-
 mine. The ground whereon our observatories were
 fixed, and the place whereon our masts were deposited,
 were tabooed, and the operation was equally efficacious.
 This consecration was performed by the priests only;
 and yet, at our request, the men ventured on the spot
 which was tabooed; whence it should seem they enter-
 tained no religious apprehensions, their obedience be-
 ing limited merely to our refusal. No inducements
 could bring the women near us; on account, it is pre-
 sumed, of the Morai adjoining; which they are, at all
 times, prohibited from approaching; not only here, but
 in all the islands of the south seas, women, it has been ob-
 served, are always tabooed, or forbidden to eat certain
 articles of food. We have seen many of them, at their
 meals, have their meat put into their mouths by others;
 and, on our requesting to know the reason of it, we
 were informed that they were tabooed, and not per-
 mitted to feed themselves. This prohibition was al-
 ways the consequence of assisting at any funeral, touch-
 ing a dead body, and many other occasions. The
 word taboo, is indifferently applied, either to persons
 or things; as the natives are tabooed, the bay is ta-
 bood, &c. This word is also expressive of any thing
 sacred, devoted, or eminent. The king of Owhyhee
 is called Eree-taboo, and a human victim, tangata-ta-
 booo; and, among the Friendly Islanders, Tonga, where
 the king resides, is called Tonga-taboo.

With respect to their marriages, very little can be

said, except that such a compact seems to exist among
 them. It has already been mentioned, that, when Ter-
 reebooo had left his queen Rora-rora, at Mowee, ano-
 ther woman cohabited with him, by whom he had chil-
 dren, and seemed particularly attached to her; but
 whether polygamy is allowed, or whether it is mixed
 with concubinage, either among the principal or infe-
 rior orders, we saw too little of, to warrant any conclu-
 sions. From what we observed of the domestic con-
 cerns of the lower class of people, one man and one
 woman seemed to have the direction of the house, and
 the children were subordinate to them, as in civilized
 countries. The following is the only instance of any
 thing like jealousy, which we have seen among them,
 and which shews, that, among married women of rank,
 not only fidelity, but even a degree of reserve, is re-
 quired. At one of their boxing matches, Omeah rose
 two or three times from his place, and approaching his
 wife, with strong marks of displeasure, commanded her
 as we supposed, to withdraw. Whether he thought her
 beauty engaged too much of our attention, or whatever
 might be his motives, there certainly existed no real
 cause of jealousy. She, however, continued in her place,
 and at the conclusion of the entertainment, joined our
 party, and even solicited some trifling presents. She
 was informed that we had not any about us, but that, if
 she would accompany us to the tent, she should be wel-
 come to make choice of what she liked. She was, ac-
 cordingly, proceeding with us; which being observed
 by Omeah, he followed in a great rage, seized her by the
 hair, and, with his fists, began to inflict severe corporal
 punishment. Having been the innocent cause of this
 extraordinary treatment, we were exceedingly concerned
 at it; though we understood it would be highly im-
 proper for us to interfere between husband and wife of
 such superior rank. The natives, however, at length
 interposed, and, the next day, we had the satisfaction of
 meeting them together, perfectly satisfied with each
 other; besides, what was extremely singular, the lady
 would not permit us to rally the husband on his beha-
 viour, which we had an inclination to do; plainly telling
 us, that he had acted very properly.

We had twice an opportunity, at Karakakooa Bay,
 of seeing a part of their funeral rites. Hearing of the
 death of an old chief, not far from our observatories,
 some of us repaired to the place, where we beheld a
 number of people assembled. They were seated round
 an area, fronting the house where the deceased lay; and
 a man, having on a red feathered cap, came to the door,
 constantly putting out his head, and making a most la-
 mentable howl, accompanied with horrid grimaces, and
 violent distortions of the face. A large mat was after-
 wards spread upon the area, and thirteen women and
 two men, who came out of the house, sat down upon it
 in three equal rows; three of the women, and the two
 men being in front. The women had feathered ruffs
 on their necks and hands, and their shoulders were de-
 corated with broad green leaves, curiously scoloped.
 Near a small hut, at one corner of this area, half a do-
 zen boys were placed, waving small white banners, and
 taboo sticks, who would not permit us to approach
 them. Hence we imagined, that the dead body was
 deposited in the hut; but we were afterwards informed
 that it remained in the house, where the tricks were
 playing at the door by the man in the red cap. The com-
 pany seated on the mat, sung a melancholy tune, accom-
 panied with a gentle motion of the arms and body. This
 having continued some time, they put themselves in a
 posture between kneeling and sitting, and their arms
 and bodies into a most rapid motion, keeping pace, at
 the same time, with the music. These last exertions
 being too violent to continue, at intervals they had
 slower motions. An hour having passed in these cere-
 monies, more mats were spread upon the area, when
 the dead chief's widow, and three or four other elderly
 women came out of the house with slow and solemn
 pace; and, seating themselves before the company, be-
 gan to moan most bitterly, in which they were joined
 by the three rows of women behind them; the two men
 appearing melancholy and pensive. They continued

with little variation, till late in the evening, when we left them; and, at day-light, in the morning, the people were dispersed, and every thing appeared perfectly quiet. We were then given to understand, that the body was removed; but we could not learn how it was disposed of. While we were directing our enquiries to this object, we were addressed by three women of rank, who signified to us, that our presence interrupted the performance of some necessary rites. Soon after we had left them, we heard their cries and lamentations; and, when we met them a few hours afterwards, the lower parts of their faces were painted perfectly black. We had also an opportunity of observing the ceremonies at the funeral of one of the ordinary class. Hearing some mournful cries, issuing from a miserable hut, we entered it, and discovered two women, whom we supposed to be mother and daughter, weeping over the body of a man who had that moment expired. They first covered the body with cloth: then lying down by it, they spread the cloth over themselves, beginning a melancholy kind of song, and repeating frequently *Aweh medoah! Aweh taneel! Oh my father! Oh my husband!* In one corner of the hut a younger daughter lay prostrate on the ground, having some black cloth spread over her, and repeating the same expressions. On our quitting this melancholy scene, we found many of their neighbours collected together at the door, who were all perfectly silent, and attentive to their lamentations.

Mr. King was willing to have embraced this opportunity of knowing in what manner the body would be disposed of; and therefore, after being convinced that it was not removed till after he went to bed, he ordered the sentries to walk before the house, and if there were any appearance of removing the body, to acquaint him with it. The sentries, however, were remiss in the performance of their duty, for, before the morning, the body was taken away. On asking, how it had been disposed of, they pointed towards the sea, perhaps thereby indicating, that it had been deposited in the deep, or that it had been conveyed to some burying ground beyond the bay. The place of interment for the chiefs, is the morai, or herce erees, and those who

are sacrificed on the occasion, are buried by the side of them. The morai in which the chief was interred, who, after a spirited resistance, had been killed in the cave, is adorned with a hanging of red cloth round it. Having thus laid before our readers a circumstantial and comprehensive account of the whole group of the Sandwich Islands, we proceed to relate the transactions, incidents and events, during our second Expedition to the North, by the way of Kamtschatka, and on our return home, by the way of Canton, and the Cape of Good Hope, from March 1779, to August 1780. But it may not be amiss to close this chapter, with an abstract of the astronomical observations, which were made at the observatory in Karakakooa Bay, for determining its latitude and longitude; to which we shall add the latitude and longitude of the Sandwich Islands, collected into one point of view. The latitude of the observatory, deduced from meridian zenith distances of the sun, and some particular stars, we found to be 19 deg. 28 min. N. and its longitude, deduced from 233 sets of lunar observations, to be 204 deg. E.

The LATITUDE and LONGITUDE of the SANDWICH ISLANDS.

	Latitude	Longitude
	deg. min.	deg. min.
Owhyhee	The North-point	20 17
	South-point	18 54
	East-point	19 34
Mowee	Karakakooa Bay	19 28
	East-point	20 50
	South-point	20 34
Morokinnee	West-point	20 54
		20 39
Tahoorowa		20 38
Ranai	South-point	20 46
Morotoi	West-point	21 10
Woahoo	Anchoring-point	21 43
Atooi	Wymoa Bay	21 57
Onecheow	Anchoring-place	21 50
Oreehoua		22 2
Tahooraa		21 43

C H A P. XVII.

The Resolution and Discovery, having weighed anchor, quit Oneebrow—A view of the coast of Kamtschatka—Enter the bay of Awatka—Descry the town of St. Peter and St. Paul—Party sent on shore—Their reception by the Commander of the port—Another party dispatched to Bolcheretsk, provisions, and stores being extremely scarce at St. Peter and St. Paul—Proceed up the river Awatka—Civility and hospitality from the inhabitants of the town of Karatekin—A journey on sledges—Curious account of that mode of travelling—Arrival at Natchekin—Embark on the Bolchoireka River—Formal procession into the capital—Hospitality and generosity of Major Bebn, Commander of the Garrison—Bolcheretsk described—Afflicting departure from that place—Return to the ships—Remarkable instance of generosity in the sailors—Major Bebn carries dispatches to Petersburg—His departure and extraordinary character—Transactions at Petropavovska—The Russian Hospital put under the care of our Surgeons—Difficulties in sailing out of the bay—Steer to the northward—Appearance of the country—Chcepoonkoi Nosi—Kronoskoi Nosi—Kamtschatkoi Nosi—Olutorkoi Nosi—And St. Theodorus's Nosi, passed, and the errors of the Russian Charts pointed out.

ON Monday, the 15th of March 1779, we weighed anchor, and passing to the N. of Tahooraa, stood to the S. W. in expectation of falling in with the island of MODOOPAPAPPA, the natives having assured us, that it lay in that direction, within five hours sail of Tahooraa. The next day at five o'clock P. M. we made a signal for the Discovery to come under our stern, having given over all hopes of seeing MODOOPAPAPPA. On Wednesday, the 17th, we steered W. Captain Clerke intending to keep in the same parallel of latitude, till we made the longitude of Awatka Bay; and then to steer N. for the harbour of St. Peter and St. Paul, which was also fixed on as our rendezvous, if we should happen to separate. This track was chosen, because we supposed it to be yet unexplored, and we might probably meet with some new islands in our passage. On Tuesday, the 30th, the winds and unsettled state of the weather, induced Captain Clerke to alter his plan, and, at six in the evening, we began to steer N. W. which we

continued till Tuesday, the 6th of April, at which time we lost the trade wind. The fine weather we met with between the tropics, had not been idly spent. The carpenters found sufficient employment in repairing the boats. The best bower cable had been so much damaged that we were obliged to cut forty fathoms from it. The airing of sails and other stores, which from the leakiness of the decks, and sides of the ship, were perpetually subject to be wet, had now become a troublesome part of duty. For some time past, even the operation of mending the sailors' old jackets, had risen into a duty both of difficulty and importance. It may be necessary to inform those who are unacquainted with the habits of seamen, that they are so accustomed, in ships of war, to be directed in the care of themselves by their officers, that they lose the very idea of foresight, and contract the thoughtlessness of infants. Had these people been left to their own discretion alone, the whole crew would have been very thinly clad, before the

are buried by the side of the chief was interred, had been killed in the ring of red cloth round it, renders a circumstantial and the whole group of the to relate the transactions, our second Expedition to Karcatka, and on our return, and the Cape of to August 1780. But this chapter, with an observations, which were Karakakooa Bay, for distance; to which we shall of the Sandwich Islands, w. The latitude of the meridian zenith distances of stars, we found to be 19 latitude, deduced from 233 deg. 204 deg. E.

Table of the SANDWICH ISLANDS.

	Latitude deg. min.	Longitude deg. min.
Point 17	204	2
Point 18	54	204 15
Point 19	34	205 6
Point 19	28	204
Point 20	50	204
Point 20	34	203 4
Point 20	54	203 24
Point 20	39	203 33
Point 20	46	203 27
Point 21	10	202 46
Point 21	43	202 9
Point 21	57	200 20
Point 21	50	199 45
Point 22	2	199 52
Point 21	43	199 36

of Kamtschatka—Enter the description by the Commander of the St. Peter and St. Paul of Karatechin—A journey on Bolchoireka River—Formal Prison—Bolcherejk described in the sailors—Major Alions at Petropaulofka—Steer to the northward—Korjoi Nofs—And St. Tho-

th of April, at which time fine weather we met with been idly spent. The employment in repairing the deck had been so much distressed to cut forty fathoms from other stores, which from the sides of the ship, were had now become a troublesome time past, even the old jackets, had risen and importance. It may who are unacquainted with they are so accustomed, in the care of themselves at the very idea of foresight, less of infants. Had these discretion alone, the whole thinly clad, before the voyage

voyage had been half finished. It was natural to expect, that their experience, during the voyage to the N. last year, would have made them sensible of the necessity of paying some attention to these matters; but if such reflections ever occurred to them, the impression was so transient, that, upon returning to the tropical climates, their fur jackets, and the rest of their clothes, adapted to a cold country, were kicked about the decks as things of no value; though it was known in both ships, that we were to make another voyage towards the pole. They were, of course, picked up by the officers; and, being put into casks, restored about this time to the owners. In the afternoon of Wednesday, the 7th, we observed some of the sheathing floating by the ship; and, on examination, found that 12 or 14 feet had been washed off from under the larboard-bow, where the leak was supposed to have been; which, ever since leaving the Sandwich Islands, had kept our people almost constantly at the pumps, making 12 inches water in an hour; but, as we had always been able to keep it under with the hand-pumps, it gave us no great uneasiness, till Tuesday, the 13th, when, about six o'clock, P. M. we were greatly alarmed by a sudden inundation, that deluged the whole space between decks. The water which had lodged in the coal-hole, not finding a sufficient vent into the well, had forced up the platforms over it, and in a moment set every thing afloat. Our situation was now exceedingly distressing; nor did we perceive immediately any means of relief. At last we thought of cutting a hole through the bulk-head that separated the coal-hole from the fore-hold, and, by that means, to make a passage for the body of water into the well. As soon as a passage was made, the greatest part of the water emptied itself into the well, and enabled us to get out the rest in buckets: but the leak was now so much increased, that we were obliged to keep one half of our people pumping and bailing constantly, till the noon of Thursday, the 15th. Our men bore, with great cheerfulness, this excessive fatigue, which was much increased by their having no dry place to sleep in; on which account they had their full allowance of grog. On Thursday, the 22nd, the cold was exceedingly severe; and the ropes were so frozen, that it was with difficulty they could be forced through the blocks. On Friday, the 23d, in latitude 52 deg. 9 min. longitude 160 deg. 7 min. we saw mountains covered with snow, and a high conical rock, distant about four leagues; and soon after this imperfect view we were enveloped in a thick fog. According to our maps, we were now but 8 leagues from the entrance of Awatka Bay; therefore when the weather cleared up, we stood in to take a nearer survey of the country. A most dismal and dreary prospect presented itself. The coast is straight, and uniform, without bays or inlets. From the shore, the ground rises in moderate hills, and behind them are ranges of mountains, whose summits penetrate the clouds. The whole was covered with snow, except the sides of some cliffs which rose perpendicularly from the sea. The wind blew strong from the N. E. with hazy weather and sleet, from the 24th to the 28th. The ship resembled a complete mass of ice; the shores being so incrufted with it, as to double their dimensions in circumference: in short, the experience of the oldest seaman among us had never met with such continued showers of sleet, and that extreme cold which we had now to encounter. Soon after our departure from Karakakooa Bay, Captain Clerke was taken ill, and during this run, the sea was in general so rough, and the Resolution so leaky, that the sail-makers had no place to repair the sails in, except the Captain's apartments, which in his declining state of health, was a serious inconvenience to him. At this time the inclemency of the weather, the difficulty of working our ships, and the incessant duty required at the pumps, rendered the service intolerable to the crew, some of whom were much frost bitten, and others were confined with colds.

Sunday, the 25th, we were favoured with a transient glance of the entrance of Awatka Bay; but, in the

present state of the weather, we could not presume to venture into it. For this reason we again stood off, when we lost sight of the Discovery; but this gave us little concern, being now so near the place of rendezvous. Wednesday, the 28th, in the morning, the weather cleared up, and we had a fine day, when our men were employed in taking the ice from the rigging, sails, &c. that in case of a thaw, which was now expected, it might not fall on our heads. At noon, in latitude 52 deg. 44 min. longitude 159 deg. the entrance of Awatka Bay, bore N. W. The mouth of it opens in the direction of N. N. W. On the S. side, the land is moderately high, rising to the northward into a bluff-head. Three remarkable rocks lie in the channel between them, not far from the N. E. side, and, on the opposite side, a single rock of considerable size. At three o'clock, P. M. we stood into the bay, with a fair wind from the southward, having from 22 to 7 fathoms soundings. There is a look-out house on the north-head, used as a light-house, when any of the Russian ships are expected upon the coast. It had a flag-staff, but we could not perceive any person there. Having passed the mouth of the bay, which extends about four miles in length, a circular basin presented itself of about 25 miles in circumference; in this we anchored about four o'clock; fearing to run foul of a shoal mentioned by Muller to lie in the channel. Great quantities of loose ice drifted with the tide in the middle of the bay, but the shores were blocked up with it. Plenty of wild fowl, of various kinds, were seen; also large flights of Greenland pigeons, together with ravens and eagles. We examined every corner of the bay, with our glasses, in order to discern the town of St. Peter and St. Paul, which, from the accounts we had received at Oonalashka, we supposed to be a place of strength and consequence. At length we discovered, to the N. E. some miserable log-houses, and a few conical huts, amounting, in the whole, to about 30, which, from their situation, notwithstanding all the respect we wished to entertain for a Russian Ostrog, or Town, we concluded to be Petropaulofka. In justice, however, to the hospitable treatment we found here, it may not be amiss to anticipate the reader's curiosity, by assuring him that our disappointment proved, in the end, a matter of entertainment to us. In this wretched extremity of the earth, beyond conception barbarous and inhospitable, out of the reach of civilization, bound and barricaded with ice, and covered with summer snow, we experienced the tenderest feelings of humanity, joined to a nobleness of mind, and elevation of sentiment, which would have done honour to any clime and nation.

On Sunday the 29th, in the morning, at day-light, Captain King was sent with the boats to examine the bay, and to present the letters to the Russian Commander, which he had brought from Oonalashka. Having proceeded as far as we were able with the boats, we got upon the ice, which extended near half a mile from the shore. The inhabitants had not yet seen either the ship, or the boats; for even after we had got upon the ice, we could not perceive any signs of a living creature in the town. We sunk at every step almost knee deep in the snow, and though we found tolerable footing at the bottom, yet the weak parts of the ice not being discoverable, we were constantly exposed to the danger of breaking through it. This accident, at last, actually happened to Captain King; who stepping on quickly over a suspicious spot, in order to press with less weight upon it, he came upon a second before he could stop himself, which broke under him, and in he fell. Fortunately he rose clear of the ice; and a man who was a little way behind with a boat hook, throwing it out, the Captain, by that means, was enabled to get upon firm ice again. The nearer we approached the shore, we found the ice still more broken. The fight of a sledge advancing towards us, however, afforded some comfort. But instead of coming to our relief, the driver stooped short, and called out to us. Captain King immediately held up Ismyloff's letters; in consequence of which, the man turned about, and drove full speed back

back again, followed with the execrations of some of our party. Unable to draw any conclusion from this unaccountable behaviour, we still proceeded towards the Ostrog, though with the greatest circumspection; and, when at the distance of about a quarter of a mile from it, we observed a body of armed men advancing to meet us. To avoid giving them any alarm, and to preserve the most peaceable appearance, the Captain, and Mr. Webber, marched in front, and the men, who had boat-hooks in their hands, were stationed in the rear. The armed party consisted of about 30 soldiers, headed by a person with a cane in his hand. Within a few paces of us he halted, and drew up his men in martial order. Captain King presented Ismyloff's letters to him, but in vain endeavoured to make him understand that we were English, and had brought these dispatches from Oonalashka. After an attentive examination of our persons, he conducted us towards the village in solemn silence, halting frequently his men, and ordering them to perform different parts of their manual exercise; with a view, as we supposed, to convince us, that if we should presume to offer any violence, we should have to deal with those who knew how to defend themselves. During the whole of this time, the Captain was in his wet clothes, shivering with cold; yet he could not avoid being diverted with this military parade, though it was attended by an unseasonable delay. Arriving, at length, at the habitation of the commanding officer of the party, we were ushered in; and, after giving orders to the military without doors, our host appeared, accompanied by the secretary of the port. One of the letters from Ismyloff was now opened, and the other sent express to Bolcheretsk, a town on the west side of Kamtschatka, and the place of residence of the Russian Commander of this province.

It appeared to us extraordinary, that the natives had not seen the Resolution the preceding day when we cast anchor, nor this morning, till our boats approached the ice. The first sight of the ship, we understood, had struck them with a considerable panic. The garrison was put instantly under arms; two field-pieces were placed before the Commander's house; and powder, shot, and lighted matches, were all in readiness. The officer who had conducted us to his dwelling, was a serjeant, and also the Commander of the Ostrog. After he had recovered from the alarm which our arrival had produced, the kindness and hospitality of his behaviour was astonishing. His house, indeed, was intolerably hot, but remarkably neat and clean. After this Capt. King had his clothes changed, by putting on a complete suit of the serjeant's, at his earnest request, which was doubtless the best he could procure; and, considering our visit was unexpected, was ingeniously conducted. To have made soup and bouillie would have required some time; instead therefore of this, we had some cold beef sliced, with boiling water poured over it. The next course was a large roasted bird, the taste of which was most delicious, though we were unacquainted with its species. Having eaten a part of this, it was removed, and fish was served up, dressed in two different ways. Soon after which, the remainder of the bird appeared again in savoury and sweet pates. Our liquor was what the Russians distinguish by the name of quass, and was the most indifferent part of our entertainment. The serjeant's wife served up several of the dishes, and was not permitted to sit down at table with us. Our repast being finished, during which our conversation was limited to a few bows, and other personal tokens of mutual respect, we strove to explain to our host the occasion of our visit to this port. Probably, Ismyloff's letters we had delivered made him readily comprehend our meaning; but as there was not a person in the place, who understood any other languages than those of Russia or Kamtschatka, we found it extremely difficult to comprehend what he endeavoured to communicate to us. Having spent much time in our attempts to understand each other, the sum of the intelligence we had received appeared to be, that though we could not be supplied with provisions or stores at this

place, yet those articles were to be procured in great plenty at Bolcheretsk. That he doubted not, but the Commander would readily supply us with what we wanted; but that, till he received his orders, neither he, nor any of the natives could even venture on board the vessel. It being now time for us to depart, and as Mr. King's clothes were not yet dry, he had again recourse to the serjeant's benevolence, for his permission to carry those on board which he had borrowed of him. This request was cheerfully complied with, and a sledge, with five dogs and a driver, was instantly provided for each of our party. This mode of conveyance afforded high entertainment for the sailors; and they were delighted still more, when they found that the two boat-hooks had a sledge appropriated solely for their conveyance. These sledges are so light, and so admirably well constructed for the purposes intended, that they went safely and expeditiously over the ice, and over parts of it which we should have found extremely difficult to have passed on foot. On our return, the boats were towing the Resolution towards the village; and, at seven, we moored close to the ice; the entrance of the Bay bearing S. by E. and the Ostrog N. distant one mile and a half. On Friday, the 30th, the casks and cables were taken to the quarter-deck, to lighten the vessel forward, and the carpenters proceeded to stop the leak which had occasioned us so much trouble. In the middle of the day we had such warm weather, that the ice began to break away very fast, and almost choked up the entrance of the bay. Several of our officers waited upon the serjeant, who received them with great civility; and Captain Clerke sent him a present of two bottles of rum, thinking he could not send him any thing more acceptable. In return, he received twenty fine trouts, and some excellent fowls of the grouse kind. Though the Bay swarmed with ducks and Greenland pigeons, our sportsmen had no success; for, being exceedingly shy, they could not kill any.

On Saturday, the 1st of May, in the morning, we saw our consort, the Discovery, standing in the Bay; a boat was immediately dispatched to her assistance, and she was moored in the afternoon close by the Resolution. On the 3d, in the morning, two sledges having been observed to drive into the village, Mr. King was ordered on shore, to learn whether an answer was arrived from the Commander of Kamtschatka. The distance from Bolcheretsk to St. Peter and St. Paul's is 135 English miles. The dispatches were sent off in a sledge, drawn by dogs, on the 29th, at noon, and returned with an answer early this morning; so that they performed a journey of 270 miles in little more than three days and a half. For the present, the return of the Commander's answer was concealed from us. While Mr. King was on shore, his boat, and another belonging to the Discovery, were bound fast to the ice. In this situation, the Discovery's launch was sent to their assistance, which soon partook of the same fate: but on the 4th, the floating ice was drifted away, by the wind changing, and the boats were set at liberty, without sustaining the smallest damage. At 10 o'clock A. M. several sledges having arrived at the edge of the ice, a boat was sent from the ship to conduct those who were in them on board. One of them proved to be a Russian merchant from Bolcheretsk, whose name was Fedosifch; and the other a German, named Port, with dispatches from Major Behm, Commander of Kamtschatka, to Captain Clerke. Arriving at the edge of the ice, and seeing distinctly the magnitude of the ships, within 200 yards of them, they were exceedingly alarmed; and before they ventured to embark, stipulated that two of our boat's crew should remain on shore, as hostages for their safety. It afterwards appeared, for what reasons we could not conceive, that Ismyloff, in his letter to the Commander, had mentioned our ships as two small trading vessels; and that the serjeant, having seen them at a distance only, had not rectified the mistake. When they had arrived on board, we perceived, by their timid behaviour, that they entertained some very extraordinary apprehensions. However, an uncommon degree of satisfaction was visible

able in their countenances, when the German found a person among us, with whom he could enter into conversation. Mr. Webber spoke that language fluently, and convinced them, though not without difficulty, that we were Englishmen and friends. Mr. Port was introduced to Captain Clerke, to whom he delivered the Commander's letter. It was written in the German language, and merely complimentary, giving him and his officers an invitation to Bolcheretsk. Mr. Port, at the same time, acquainted him, that the Major had conceived a very wrong idea of the size of the ships, and of the service they were engaged in; Ifmy-Joff, in his letter, having represented them as two small packet-boats, and cautioned him to be on his guard, insinuating, that he suspected us to be no better than pirates. In consequence of this letter, he said, there had been various conjectures formed about us at Bolcheretsk. We were much diverted with the fears and apprehensions of these people; and especially with an account given by Mr. Port, of the serjeant's extreme caution the day before. On seeing Mr. King and some other gentlemen come on shore he concealed him and the Russian merchant in the kitchen, to give them an opportunity of listening to our conversation with each other, in order to discover whether we were Englishmen or not.

Being now enabled, by the aid of an interpreter, to converse with the Russians, our first enquiries were directed to the means of procuring a supply of fresh provisions and naval stores; particularly the latter, for the want of which we had been in great distress. On enquiry, it appeared, that the whole flock of live cattle, which the country about the Bay could furnish, amounted only to two heifers; and these the serjeant very readily promised to secure for us. Our next applications were made to the merchant, whose terms for serving us were so exorbitant that Captain Clerke thought it expedient to send an express to the Commander, to learn the price of stores at Bolcheretsk. This determination being communicated to Mr. Port, he dispatched a messenger to the Commander at Bolcheretsk, to acquaint him with our intentions, and to remove the suspicions that had been entertained respecting the purposes of our voyage. For the above service Mr. King was fixed upon, and ordered to prepare for setting out the next day, together with Mr. Webber, who was to accompany him as interpreter. That day, and the next, however, the weather proved too stormy for beginning a journey through so desolate and wild a country: but on Friday, the 7th of May, the weather became more favourable, and we set out in the ship's boats, early in the morning, in order to reach the entrance of the Awatka at high-water, on account of the shoals at the mouth of that river. The country boats were to meet us here, to conduct us up the stream. Captain Gore was also added to our party, and we were likewise accompanied by Mr. Port and the Russian merchant, with two Cossacks, having been previously furnished with warm furred cloathing; a very necessary precaution, as it began to snow briskly immediately after our setting out. About eight o'clock we were stopped by shoal water, within a mile of the mouth of the river; when some Kamtschadales took us and our baggage, in some small canoes, and conveyed us over a bank of sand, which the rapidity of the river had thrown up, and which, we were informed, was continually shifting. Having passed this shoal, the water again deepened, and we were furnished with a commodious boat, resembling a Norway yawl, to convey us up the river, together with canoes for the reception of our baggages. The breadth of the mouth of Awatka is about a quarter of a mile, but it gradually narrowed as we advanced. Having proceeded a few miles, we passed several branches, many of which, we were told, emptied themselves into other parts of the Bay; and that some of those on the left ran into the Paratounca river. For the first 10 miles, the general direction of the river from the Bay, is to the N; and afterwards it turns to the westward. Except this bend, it chiefly preserves a straight course; and flows through a low flat country, to

the distance of 30 miles from the sea, which is subject to frequent inundations. Six men were employed in pushing us on with long poles, three of them being at each end of the boat; and proceeded against the stream, at the rate of about three miles an hour. Our conductors endured this severe labour for 10 hours; stopping only once, and that for a short space of time, to take a little refreshment. Having been informed at our first setting out, that we could easily reach Karatchin that night, we were greatly disappointed to find ourselves 15 miles from that place at sun-set. This was attributed to the delay in passing the shoals, both at the entrance of the river, and in many other places. Our men being exceedingly fatigued, and as the difficulty of navigating the river would have increased by the darkness of the night, we declined all thoughts of proceeding on our journey that evening: we therefore fixed upon a place that was tolerably well sheltered, and, clearing it of the snow, erected a small marquee, which we had providentially taken with us; and, with the assistance of a good fire, and some excellent punch, passed the night agreeably. Our principal inconvenience was, the being obliged to keep at a considerable distance from the fire; for as soon as it was lighted, it thawed every part round it into an absolute puddle. The Kamtschadales were extremely alert and expeditious in erecting our marquee, and cooking our provisions; but we were much surprized at finding they had brought with them their utensils for making tea, considering it as a most intolerable hardship if they cannot, two or three times a day, regale themselves with drinking tea. When day-light appeared, we proceeded on our journey, and, before we had made much progress, were met by the Toion; or chief of Karatchin, who being apprized of our coming, had provided canoes that were better accommodated for navigating the higher parts of the river. A commodious vessel, (made by lashing two canoes together) furnished with fur cloaks, and lined with bear-skins, was also procured for us. We now proceeded rapidly, the Toion's people being remarkably expert in this kind of business. At tea we arrived at the Ostrog, named Karatchin, and the seat of his command, where we were received by the Kamtschadale men and women, and some Russian servants belonging to the merchant, Fedofitch. They were all attired in their best habiliments; those of the women being gay and pleasing, and consisting of a loose robe of white nankeen, gathered close round the neck, and fastened with a silk collar. A short jacket, without sleeves, was worn over this, consisting of different coloured nankeens; and they had petticoats made of a slight Chinese silk. Their shifts, which were also made of silk, had sleeves extending to the wrists; and their heads were bound with coloured silk handkerchiefs, which entirely concealed the hair of the married women; but the unmarried ones placed the handkerchief under the hair, permitting it to flow loosely down the shoulders.

The Ostrog of Karatchin is pleasantly situated on the side of the river, and composed of three log-houses, nineteen balagans, or summer habitations, and three jourts, which are houses under ground. The Toion, to whose dwelling we were then conducted, was a plain decent man, sprung from a Russian mother, and a Kamtschadale father. His house, like all others in this country, consisted of only two apartments. All the furniture in the outer room, was a long narrow table, with a bench round it, and the inner apartment, which was the kitchen, was also very scantily furnished. But, the hearty welcome, and kind attention of our host, amply compensated for the poverty of his habitation. His wife, an excellent cook, served us with various sorts of fish and game, and different kinds of heath-berries, which had been preserved since the last year. Whilst we were dining in this miserable hut, the guests of absolute strangers; and at the extremity of the habitable globe, a solitary half-worn pewter spoon attracted our attention. Its form was familiar to us, and the word London was stamped upon the back of it. It is impossible to express the anxious hopes, and tender re-

membrances, this circumstance excited in us. Those who have been long absent from their native country, will readily conceive what inexpressible pleasure such trifling incidents can give.

We had now quitted the river, and the next part of our journey was to be performed on sledges; but the thaw had been so great in the day-time, as not to permit us to set out, till the snow was become hard and firm by the coldness of the evening. This furnished us with an opportunity of walking about the village, which was the only place in this country, that we had seen free from snow. It was situated on a flat, of about a mile and an half in circuit. The leaves of the trees were just budding, and the verdure was strongly contrasted with the surrounding hills, which remained covered with snow. The soil appearing to be capable of producing common vegetables, we were surprized to find that not a spot of it was cultivated. Neither were the inhabitants possessed of cattle of any sort. In short, their situation, during the winter months, must be wretched beyond conception. They were now removing from their jouts to their balagans, which gave us an opportunity of observing both these sorts of habitations. The people invited us, very civilly, into their houses; cheerfulness and content were visible in every countenance, to which the approaching change of season might perhaps contribute. On returning to our host's, supper was prepared for us, consisting of the same articles which composed our former repast. When we had finished our meal, we entertained the Toion and his wife with punch made of some of our spirits; and Captain Gore, with his wonted generosity, made them some valuable presents, after which, they retired to the kitchen, leaving us in the other room; on the benches of which we spread our bear-skins, and sought a little repose; having first settled with our conductors, to proceed on our journey, when the ground was judged to be in a suitable condition. The melancholy howlings of the dogs awakened us about nine the same evening. During the whole time our baggage was lashing upon the sledges, their horrid noise continued; but, when they were yoked, and prepared for travelling, a cheerful yelping succeeded, which ceased the instant they marched off. We shall here give our readers an accurate description of a sledge brought over by Captain King, and late in the possession of Sir Ashton Lever. The length of the body is about four feet and an half, and the breadth one foot. It is made in the form of a crescent, of light tough wood, fastened together with wicker work; and, among the principal people, is elegantly stained with red and blue; the seat being covered with furs or bear-skins. It has four legs, about two feet in height, resting on two long flat pieces of wood, of the breadth of five or six inches, extending a foot beyond the body of the sledge, at each end. These turn up before, somewhat like a skait, and are shod with the bone of some sea-animal. The carriage is ornamented at the fore part with tassels of coloured cloth, and leather thongs. It has a cross bar, to which the harness is joined; and links of iron, or small bells, are hanging to it, which, by the jingling, is supposed to encourage the dogs. They seldom carry more than one person at a time, who sits aside, with his feet on the lower part of the sledge, having his baggage and provision, in a bundle behind him. The usual number of dogs employed in drawing this carriage is five; four of them yoked two and two, and the other acting as leader. The reins, being fastened to the collar, instead of the head, have no great command; and are therefore usually hung upon the sledge; the driver depending principally on their obedience to his voice. Great care and attention are consequently used in training up the leader, which frequently becomes very valuable on account of his steadiness and docility; the sum of forty roubles (or ten pounds) being no unusual price for one of them. The rider has also a crooked stick, answering the purpose both of whip and reins; with which, by striking in the snow, he can regulate the speed of the dogs, or even stop them at his pleasure.

When they are inattentive to their duty, he often chastises them by throwing it at them. The dexterity of the riders, in picking this stick up again, is very remarkable, and is the most difficult manœuvre in the exercise of their profession; nor is it, indeed, surprizing that they should be skilful in a practice in which they are so materially interested; for they assured us, that if a driver should happen to lose his stick, the dogs immediately discover it; and, unless their leader is both steady and resolute, they will instantly set off full speed, and never stop till their strength is exhausted; or till the carriage is overturned and dashed to pieces, or hurried down a precipice, when all are buried in the snow. The accounts of the speed of these animals, and of the hardships and fatigues they suffer, would have appeared incredible, had they not been supported by the greatest authority. We ourselves were witnesses of the extraordinary expedition with which the messenger returned, who had been dispatched to Bolcheretik with the news of our arrival at St. Peter and St. Paul's, though the snow was exceedingly soft. The Governor of Kamtschatka assured us, that this journey was usually performed in two days and an half, and that he had once received an express from that harbour in 23 hours. Throughout the winter, the dogs are fed on the offals of dried and stinking fish; and, even this miserable food is withheld from them, a day before they set out on a journey, and they are not permitted to eat a morsel of any thing till they arrive at the end of it. They are frequently kept fasting for two entire days, in which time they will perform a journey of great extent. The shape of these dogs resembles that of the Pomeranian breed, but they are considerably larger.

As we did not chuse to rely upon our own skill, we had each of us a man to conduct the sledge, which, in the condition the roads then were, proved a very laborious business: for, as the thaw had been prevalent in the vallies, through which was our regular road, we were obliged to travel along the sides of the hills; our guides being under the necessity of supporting the sledges, on the lower sides, with their shoulders, for many miles together. Mr. King was attended by a good-natured Cossack, who was so imperfect in his business, that he was continually overturned, which afforded entertainment to his companions. The party consisted of ten sledges in the whole. That which conducted Captain Gore, was formed of two lashed together, and was plentifully furnished with furs and bear-skins. It was drawn by ten dogs, yoked four abreast; and those which were laden with heavy baggage, were drawn by the same number. We had not proceeded more than four miles on our journey, when it began to rain, which, together with the darkness of the night, threw us into some confusion. It was, after some little consultation, agreed, that we should continue where we were, till day-light; we therefore secured our sledges, wrapped ourselves up in furs, and waited patiently for the morning. At three o'clock we were summoned to proceed; our guides expressing their apprehensions, that if we waited any longer, the thaw would perhaps stop us, and prevent our advancing or returning. Though we had many difficulties to encounter, owing principally to the bad condition of the road, we got safe to an ofstrog about two in the afternoon. It is called Natchekin, and is situated on a small stream, which falls into the Bolchoireka, at some distance below the town. It is 25 miles from Karatchin; which, by their account, we could have compassed in four hours, had the frost continued; but the snow was so soft that the poor animals sunk up to their bellies at almost every step; and it was indeed surprizing that they should be able to support themselves under so fatiguing a journey. This inconsiderable ofstrog consists of one log-house, the residence of the Toion, one jout, and five balagans. We were received here with the same civility and hospitality as at Karatchin; and, in the afternoon, were conducted to a remarkable hot spring, at a small distance from this village. Before we came very near it, we saw a rising steam from it, as from a boiling

boiling cauldron; and, when we approached it, we perceived a strong sulphureous effluvia. A basin of about three feet in diameter, is formed by the main spring; besides which, there are several lesser springs, of equal heat, in the adjacent ground; by which means the whole spot, consisting of about an acre, was so very hot that we could not remain two minutes in the same place. The water issuing from these springs, supplies a small bathing pond, and afterwards a little rivulet, which conducts it into the river, at the distance of about 150 yards. Great cures, they informed us, had been effected by this bath, in rheumatism, scorbutic ulcers, swelled and contracted joints, and many other disorders. Where these springs flow, the ground is on a gentle ascent, having a green hill of a moderate size behind it. Some plants seemed to thrive here with great luxuriance, among which we observed the wild garlick.

Monday, the 10th, in the morning, we embarked on the Bolchoireeka; and, going with the stream, expected to arrive at our journey's end the following day. Though Bolchoireeka is 80 miles from Natchekin, we were informed, that, in the summer, when the melting of snow on the mountains has rendered the river full and rapid, the canoes have often gone there in a single day; but now they told us we should be much longer, the ice having broken up only three days before our arrival, and our being the first boat that had attempted to pass. There was but too much truth in this intelligence; for we were greatly impeded by the shallows; and, though the stream was rapid in many places, we frequently had ripplings and shoals, and were under the necessity of hauling the boats over them. On each side of the river, the country was romantic, but not diversified; the course of it being between craggy mountains, of a most dreary and barren aspect; with nothing to vary the scene, except now and then the sight of a bear, or a flock of wild-fowl. This, and the following night, we slept under our marquise, on the banks of the river, and suffered greatly from the severity of the weather.

Wednesday the 12th, at day-light, we had passed the mountains, and were proceeding through a low extensive plain, on which were a number of shrubby trees. At nine in the morning we reached an ostrog, called Oparchin, of about the same magnitude as Karatchin, and supposed to be 50 miles from Natchekin. A serjeant and four Russian soldiers had been here two days, waiting for our arrival; who instantly dispatched a light boat to Bolchoireeka to give intelligence of our approach. A magnificent canoe, plentifully furnished with skins and furs, was prepared for our reception, and we were very commodiously equipped; but our fellow-travellers were excluded. It gave us some concern to be separated from our old companion Mr. Port, who daily grew more shy and distant, as we drew nearer to the completion of our journey. He acknowledged, indeed, before we set out, that he was not entitled to the respect we had shewn him; but, finding him discreet, and not presuming, we had insisted on his faring as we did, throughout the journey. We performed the remainder of our passage, with the utmost ease and expedition; for as we descended, the river grew more rapid, and had very few obstructions. On our approaching Kamtschatka, we judged, from an appearance of great stir and bustle, that our reception was to be in form. This circumstance was disagreeable to us, as decent cloathing had long been scarce among us; and our travelling habits formed a strange assemblage of the modes of India, Europe, and Kamtschatka. To make a parade through the metropolis in this motley trim, we thought would appear ridiculous; and, as we observed a crowd of people collected on the banks of the river, and were informed that the commander would receive us at the water-side, we stopped at the house of a soldier, about a quarter of a mile before we came to the town. Here we dispatched Mr. Port with a message to his excellency, acquainting him, that, as soon as we had put off our travelling dresses, we would attend him at his own house to pay our respects to him; and entreated him not to think of waiting to conduct us. He persisted, however, in his resolution of paying us

this compliment, and we immediately proceeded to join him at the entrance of the capital. We were all remarkably awkward and defective in making our first salutations; not having been accustomed to bowing and scraping, for at least two years and an half. The commander received us in a most engaging manner; but we had the mortification to discover, that he had almost wholly forgot the French language; so that only Mr. Webber had the satisfaction of conversing with him, as he spoke the German, which was his native tongue. Major Behm was accompanied by Captain Shmaleff, the next in command, and another officer; the whole body of merchants attended also. We were conducted to the commander's house where we were politely and respectfully received by his lady, who had prepared tea and other refreshments for us. The first compliments being over, Captain Gore desired Mr. Webber to acquaint the Major, that we were distressed for want of naval stores, fresh provisions, flour, and other necessaries; and that we were convinced we could not receive much assistance from him, in the country about Awatska Bay, from what we had already seen and heard; that the impossibility of conveying heavy stores over the peninsula, at that season, we were but too sensible of, from the difficulties we had encountered in our journey; and that we could not delay the prosecution of our voyage, to wait for any material change. Here the Major interrupted Mr. Webber, by observing, that we knew not what they were capable of doing; that he should not bestow a thought upon the difficulties of supplying our wants: he only wished to know what articles we stood in need of, and the time he could be allowed for procuring them. After expressing our acknowledgments for his obliging condiscension, we presented him an account of the naval stores, cattle, and flour, we were directed to purchase; and informed him, that we intended to prosecute our voyage about the 5th of June. After this, the conversation became more general, and it might naturally be supposed, that we were anxious to obtain some information respecting our native country. Having been three years absent, we entertained the most flattering expectations of receiving some interesting intelligence from Major Behm: but we were greatly disappointed, when he assured us, that he could not communicate any intelligence of a much later date than that of our quitting England. The commander, supposing we might be fatigued, and desirous of repose, begged leave to conduct us to our lodgings, at about seven o'clock. It was useless to protest against a compliment, to which we had no other title than that of being strangers. That alone, with this generous Livonian, was sufficient to counterbalance every other consideration. In going along, we passed two guard-houses, where the men were under arms, in compliment to Captain Gore, and were conducted to a neat decent house, which the Major had appointed for our residence, while we continued at Kamtschatka. We had two sentinels posted at our door, and a serjeant's guard in an adjoining house. Having disposed of us in our apartments, the Major took his leave, promising to visit us the next day. We were now at leisure to discover the conveniences which he had amply provided for us. Our fellow traveller, Mr. Port, and a soldier, of a rank between that of a serjeant and a corporal, (called a pulproperfack) were fixed upon to be our male domestics. We had also a housekeeper, and a cook, who were ordered to obey Mr. Port's directions in dressing us a supper, after the English mode of cookery. In the course of the evening, we were favoured with a number of civil messages, from the principal inhabitants of the town, politely observing, that their attending to pay their respects to us at that time, would add to our fatigues, but they would do themselves that honour the next morning. Such attention and politeness in so uncultivated and desolate a country, formed a contrast highly in favour of its inhabitants; and, in addition to their civility, at sun-set, the serjeant brought the report of his guard to Captain Gore. In the morning of the 13th, compliments were sent us by the Major, Captain Shmaleff, and the most respectable

spectable people of the town, from all whom we were honoured with visits soon after. The two former having, after we had retired to rest, enquired of Mr. Port what articles we stood in the greatest need of on board the ships; they insisted on our sharing with their garrison, in the small stock of provisions they had then remaining; lamenting, at the same time, that our arrival should happen to be in that season of the year, when scarcity reigned universally among them; the sloops from Okotsk not being yet arrived with their annual supply. We thankfully accepted the liberal offer of these hospitable strangers; on condition, however, that we should be made acquainted with the price of the articles we received from them, that Captain Clerke might draw upon the Victualling Office, in London, for the amount. This was refused in the most positive terms; and, though repeatedly urged, the Major always stopped us short, by saying, that his mistress would be highly gratified at his rendering every assistance in his power to the English, who are her good friends and allies; and that it would give her a peculiar satisfaction to find, that, in such remote regions, her dominions had afforded any relief to vessels engaged in such important services. He added, that he could not, therefore, act so contrary to the principles of his Emperors, as to think of receiving any bills; but, if we insisted on it, we might give him a bare certificate of the articles he might supply us with, which he would transmit to the court of Russia, as evidence of having performed his duty. All farther acknowledgments, continued he, must be submitted to the two courts; but you must excuse me from acceding to your proposal. This matter being adjusted, he requested to be informed respecting our private wants, saying he should consider it as offering him an affront, if we applied to any of the merchants, or had dealings with any other person except himself.

Not having it in our power to make an adequate return for such singular generosity, he had only our thanks and admiration. At this moment, Mr. King recollected, that Captain Clerke had sent by him a set of the engravings to Captain Cook's second voyage, desiring him to present it, in his name, to the commander. Nothing could have been more acceptable to him than this present, the Major being an enthusiast in all matters relative to discoveries. Captain Clerke had also given Mr. King a discretionary power, of permitting the commander to see a chart of the discoveries made in the present voyage; and, judging from his situation and disposition of mind, that he would be highly gratified by such a communication; though, from motives of delicacy, he had only asked a few general questions on the subject, Mr. King reposed in him that confidence, which his whole conduct so justly merited. He felt this compliment as it was intended he should, and was struck at beholding, in one view, the whole of that coast on the side of Asia and America, which his countrymen had been so long employed in acquiring an imperfect knowledge of. Except this mark of confidence, and the set of copper-plates already mentioned, we had nothing with us deserving of his acceptance; for it was hardly worth noticing, that Mr. King prevailed on his son (who was quite a youth) to accept of a silver watch; and contributed to his little daughter's happiness, by presenting her with two pair of ear-rings, of French paste. He also gave Captain Shmaleff the thermometer which he had used on his journey, when he engaged to keep a register of the temperature of the air for one whole year, and to transmit it to Mr. Muller, with whom he was acquainted. This day we dined at the commander's, who, ever studious to gratify our curiosity, had prepared variety of dishes dressed after the Russian and Kamtschadale manner, besides a number of others in the English style. In the afternoon, we took a survey of the town, and the adjacent country. The situation of Bolcheretsk is in a low swampy plain, extending to the sea of Okotsk, being about 40 miles in length, and of a considerable breadth. It lies north of the Bolchoi-reaka, (or great river) and on a peninsula, which has been separated

from the continent by a large canal, under the directions of the present commander; which has added strength to it as a fortress, and rendered it much less subject to inundations. The depth of the river, below the town, is from six to eight feet, and the breadth about a quarter of a mile. At the distance of 22 miles, it empties itself into the sea of Okotsk, where it is capable of admitting pretty large vessels. No corn, of any kind, is cultivated in this part of the country; and the Major assured us, that his was the only garden that had been planted. In general, the earth was covered with snow; the parts which were free from it, were full of black turfy hillocks. We saw about 20 or 30 cows, and the commander had six good horses. These, and their dogs, are their only tame animals: being obliged to keep a great number of the latter, they can rear only such cattle as are a match for them in strength and size. For, during the whole of the summer season, the dogs are turned loose, to provide entirely for themselves; and are sometimes so ravenous, that they will even venture to attack the bullocks.

In Bolcheretsk the buildings are all in the same style; they consist of logs of wood, and are thatched. The Major's house is considerably larger than the rest, and has three capacious rooms, neatly papered; but the tale, which covered the windows, gave them a disagreeable and mean appearance. The town consists of low buildings, in rows of five or six habitations each, connected together by a passage extending the whole length of them; having the kitchen and store house on one side, and the dwelling apartments on the other. There are also barracks for the Russian soldiers and cosacks; a tolerable church; a court-room; and, at the end of the town, a number of Balagans. The number of the inhabitants is between five and six hundred. A handsome entertainment was given by the Major, in the evening, to which were invited all the respectable inhabitants of both sexes. The next day we made a private application to Fedositch, the merchant, in order to purchase some tobacco; the sailors having been without that favourite commodity for upwards of a year. This, however, like other similar transactions, came immediately to the knowledge of the commander; and, in a very short time after, we were surprized to find four bags of tobacco in our house, each containing upwards of 100 pounds; which the Major requested might be presented to our sailors, in his name, and that of the garrison under his command. By the same conveyance, we received 20 loaves of sugar, and as many pounds of tea, which they requested the officers to accept of; as they understood that we were almost destitute of those articles. A present was also sent by Madame Behm, for Captain Clerke, which consisted of honey, butter, figs, rice, and other articles; accompanied with her best wishes, that, in his infirm state, they might prove serviceable to him. We strenuously endeavoured to oppose this profusion of bounty, and were extremely anxious to refrain it; fully convinced that they were giving us almost the whole stock of their garrison. But the answer we received from the Major, on these occasions, generally was, That he had been in distress himself, and he was sensible that we must now be in that situation. The length of time, indeed, since we had touched at any known port, appeared to them almost incredible, and seemed to require the evidence of our maps, and other concurrent circumstances, to obtain their credit. Among the latter, we shall mention a curious fact, which Major Behm related to us this morning, and which he said he should not have known how to account for, but for our arrival. Among the people of the north of Asia, it is well known, that the Tichuski only have maintained their independence, and resisted all the efforts of the Russians to reduce them. The last attempt was in 1750, and, after variety of temporary advantages on each side, the Russian forces retreated, after having lost their commanding officer. The Russians afterwards removed their frontier fortresses, from the Anadyr to the Ingiga, a river which runs into the northern extremity of the sea of Okotsk, and gives its name to a gulph, west of that of Pen-

the canal, under the direction; which has added and rendered it much less the depth of the river, be- light feet, and the breadth the distance of 22 miles, of Okotk, where it is ca- ge vessels. No corn, of is part of the country; and is was the only garden that al, the earth was covered ere free from it, were full few about 20 or 30 cows, good horses. These, and the animals: being obliged the latter, they can rear only them in strength and size. the summer season, the dogs tirely for themselves; and that they will even venture

ings are all in the same wood, and are thatched, ably larger than the rest, oms, neatly papered; but windows, gave them a dif- fice. The town consists of e or six habitations each, age extending the whole kitchen and store house on apartments on the other. he Russian soldiers and cof- a court-room; and, at the if Balagans. The number five and six hundred. A s given by the Major, in invited all the respectable

The next day we made a tch, the merchant, in or- o; the sailors having been modity for upwards of a other similar transactions, knowledge of the comman- ne after, we were surprized in our house, each contain- s; which the Major re- ce our sailors, in his name, er his command. By the ed 20 loaves of sugar, and they requested the offi- that we were almost A present was also sent by Clerke, which consisted of other articles; accompa- in, in his infirm state, they im. We strenuously en- sion of bounty, and were it; fully convinced that e whole stock of their gar- ceived from the Major, on s; That he had been in dis- fible that we must now be h of time, indeed, since we ort, appeared to them al- to require the evidence of ent circumstances, to ob- e latter, we shall mention Behm related to us that he should not have known our arrival. Among the it is well known, that the ined their independence, of the Russians to reduce n 1750, and, after variety ach side, the Russian for- st their commanding offi- s removed their frontier the Ingga, a river which ity of the sea of Okotk, h, west of that of Pen- think.

think. On the day of our arrival at Bolcheretsk, the Major had received dispatches from this fort, acquaint- ing him, that a party of the Tschutski had arrived there, with voluntary offers of friendship and a tribute. That, on asking the cause of so unexpected an alteration in their sentiments, they had acquainted his people, that two large Russian boats had visited them, towards the end of the preceding summer; that they had been shown the greatest kindness by the people who were in them, and had entered into a league of amity with them; and that, in consequence of this, they came to the Russian fort, in order to settle a treaty upon terms agreeable to both nations. This remarkable tale had given rise to much speculation, both at Ingiginsk and Bolcheretsk; and must have remained utterly unintel- ligible, had it not been elucidated by us. It was no small satisfaction to us, to have thus shewn the Rus- sians, even by accident, the best method of collecting tri- bute, and extending their dominions; in hopes that the good understanding, which this event has produced, may rescue a brave people from such powerful invaders.

This day being Friday, the 14th, we were engaged to dine with Captain Shmaleff, who, in order to vary our amusements, entertained us with an exhibition of dancing, in the Russian and Kamtschadale style. It is im- possible to convey an adequate idea of this uncouth ex- hibition. The figure of the Russian dance, resembled those of our hornpipes, and consisted of one, two, or four performers at a time. Their steps were exceed- ingly short and quick, their feet being raised but a very little way from the ground; their arms were hung down close to the sides, the body being kept, the whole time, erect and immovable, except when the performers passed each other, when the hand was suddenly raised with an awkward motion. But, if the Russian dance was unmeaning and ridiculous, the Kamtschadale was infinitely more so. The principal aim, in their per- formances, is to represent the clumsily gestures of the bear, which the inhabitants of this country have fre- quent opportunities of observing in various situations. To describe the awkward postures, exhibited on these occasions, would appear tedious and uninteresting. In general, however, the body was bowed, and the knees bent, whilst the arms were employed in imitating the motions of that awkward animal. Much time had been spent in our journey to Bolcheretsk, and being informed that our return might, perhaps, be more dif- ficult and tedious, we were obliged to acquaint the Major this evening, with our intention of departing the next day. We could not think of leaving our new ac- quaintance without regret: and were agreeably sur- prized, when the Major promised to accompany us, if we would stay but one day longer. He told us, that he had made up his dispatches, and resigned the com- mand of Kamtscharka to Captain Shmaleff; having made the necessary preparations for his departure to Okotk, which was shortly to take place; but that he should be happy in postponing his journey, and attend- ing us to St. Peter and St. Paul's, in order to be satis- fied, that nothing which could be done to serve us, should be omitted. For the articles which Mr. King had given to the Major's children, he received, the next morning, a most magnificent Kamtschadale dress, such as the principal Toions wear on the most solemn occa- sions. This habit, as we were informed by Fedotisch, must have cost, at least, 120 roubles. He also, at the same time, was presented with a handsome sable muff, as a present from his daughter.

Saturday, the 15th, we dined with the commander, who, willing to give us an opportunity of seeing as much as we could of the manners and customs of the country, invited all the principal inhabitants of the town, to his house this evening. The dresses of the women were splendid, after the Kamtschadale manner. Captain Shmaleff's lady, and the wives of the other officers of the garrison, were dressed in a pretty taste, partly in the Siberian, and partly in the European mode. Madame Behm, in particular, appeared in a grand European dress. The richness and variety of

No. 75.

the silks worn by the women, as well as the singularity of their dress, was very striking; and the whole had the air of some enchanted scene, in the midst of the most desert and dreary country in the universe. The entertainments of this night were dancing and singing. As we had fixed upon the next morning for our depart- ure, we retired early to our apartments, where three travelling dresses presented themselves to our view, made after the Kamtschadale mode, which had been provided for us by the commander. He came to us himself soon after, to see that proper care was taken in packing up our things. We had, indeed, no inconsiderable load of baggage; for, exclusive of his liberal presents, Cap- tain Shmaleff, and several other individuals, shewed us many instances of kindness and generosity. On the 16th, early in the morning, we were preparing for our departure, when we were invited to take our leave of Madame Behm, in our passage to the boats. Already impressed with sentiments of the warmest gratitude, for the benevolent and generous treatment we had re- ceived at Bolcheretsk, which were much heightened by the affecting scene which followed. On quitting our apartments, we saw all the soldiers and cosacks of the garrison drawn up on one side; and, on the other, were all the male inhabitants of the town, in their best cloathing; the whole body of the people joining in a melancholy song, which, we were informed, it was usual to sing on the departure of friends. Thus we marched till we ar- rived at the commander's house, preceded by the drums and music belonging to the garrison. Here we were received by Madame Behm, accompanied by several ladies, habited in long silk cloaks, lined with furs of various colours; forming a most splendid appearance. Having partook of some refreshment which had been provided for us, we proceeded to the water-side at- tended by the ladies, who joined with the rest of the people in the song; and, having taken leave of Ma- dame Behm, after assuring her that the sense of the hos- pitality of Bolcheretsk, would be indelible in our hearts, we were too much affected not to hasten into the boats. At putting off, we received three cheers, which we im- mediately returned; and, on doubling a point, where we last beheld our friendly entertainers, they still added to our feelings, by a farewell cheer! On our return, the stream was so exceedingly rapid, that, notwithstanding the utmost exertions of our conductors, we did not ar- rive at the first village, Opatchin, till the 17th in the evening, which did not exceed the rate of 20 miles a day. On the 19th, we reached Natchekin, and crossed the plain to Karatchin on the 20th. The road was in much better order than when we passed it before, as it froze smartly in the night of the 19th. We proceeded down the Awatska river on Friday, the 21st, and passed over the shoals, at the entrance of the bay, before it was dark. During the whole of our journey, we were highly pleased with the willingness and alacrity, with which the Toions and the Kamtschadales assisted us at the different ostrogs. On seeing the Major, joy ap- peared in every countenance; and they were much af- fected upon being informed that he would shortly leave them. A messenger had been dispatched from Bolche- retik to Captain Clerke, acquainting him with the na- ture of our reception; and that the Major intended to accompany us on our return; apprising him, at the same time, of the day he might expect us. We ob- served, with pleasure, as we approached the harbour, all our boats coming towards us. The men were all clean, and the officers as well arrayed as their ward- robes would then permit them to be. The Major was struck at the healthy appearance of our sailors, and was surprized to see that many of them had no other cover- ing than a shirt and trowsers, though it actually snowed at that very instant. Major Behm had expressed an in- clination to visit the ships before he landed; but, being informed that Captain Clerke was extremely ill, he thought it would be improper to disturb him at so late an hour; it being then after nine o'clock. Mr. King therefore attended him to the serjeant's house, and at- terwards went on board to communicate to Captain

7 R

Clerke

Clerke what had happened at Bolcheretsk. He was much concerned to find that, during his absence, that officer's health was considerably impaired, instead of growing better, as we flattered ourselves it might, from undisturbed repose in the harbour, and a milk and vegetable diet. The next morning, Mr. King conducted the Major to the ships; where he was received with every possible mark of distinction, and saluted with 13 guns. He was attended by the commander of a Russian galliot, two merchants from Bolcheretsk, a master of a sloop, and the priest of the village of Paratouca. Having visited the Captain, and taken a view of the two ships, he returned to dine on board the Resolution. . . . the course of the afternoon, the curiosities which we had collected were shewn him, and an assortment of each article presented to him by Captain Clerke. Here we cannot suppress an instance of great generosity and gratitude in our sailors; who, being informed of the handsome present which had been made them by the Major, voluntarily requested that their grog might be withheld, and their allowance of spirits presented to the garrison of Bolcheretsk; saying they knew brandy was extremely scarce in that country, the soldiers on shore having offered four roubles a bottle for it. We could not but admire this extraordinary sacrifice, knowing how much the sailors felt, when abridged or deprived of their grog. Indeed, they never had that article withheld from them but in warm weather, that they might enjoy a greater proportion when it was most necessary; but this generous proposal would deprive them of it, even in the inclement season we had naturally to expect in our northern expedition. The officers, however, would not permit them to suffer by their generosity, and substituted, in the room of the small quantity of brandy, which the Major consented to accept, an equal quantity of rum. A dozen or two of Cape wine for Madame Behm, and some other trifling presents which we were enabled to make, were accepted with great politeness. The tobacco was distributed the next morning, among the crews of both vessels; every man that chewed or smoked tobacco being allowed three pounds, and the others who did not, only one. We have already observed that the Major had resigned the command of Kamtschatka, and was speedily to repair to Peterburgh; and he now expressed his willingness to convey any dispatches we might chuse to commit to his care. Such an opportunity was not to be neglected; and Captain Clerke requested him to take the charge of some papers relative to our voyage, to the British Ambassador at the Russian court. At first, we intended to transmit only a concise journal of our proceedings; but, after mature consideration, Captain Clerke was of opinion, that the whole account of our discoveries might safely be committed to the care of a man, who had given the strongest proofs of probity and virtue. Considering also, that a very hazardous part of the voyage was still to be performed, he resolved to send, by him, the whole of Captain Cook's journal; together with his own, from the death of that commander, till our arrival at Kamtschatka; and also a chart of our discoveries. Mr. Bayly and Mr. King also determined to send an account of our proceedings to the board of longitude. From these precautions, had any accident befallen us, the Admiralty would have become possessed of the principal facts of our voyage. It was farther resolved, that a smaller packet should be dispatched from Okotik, which the Major supposed would reach Peterburgh by December; and that he expected to arrive there himself in February or March. The Major was entertained alternately in the two ships, as well as we were able, the three following days. On Thursday, the 25th, he departed, and was saluted with 13 guns; the sailors, at their own request, expressing their regard for him by three cheers. Mr. King and Mr. Webber attended him, the next morning, some few miles up the Awatska river, where the Russian priest and his family were waiting to bid a last adieu to their commander. When taking our leave of the Major, it is difficult to say, whether the worthy priest and his family or ourselves were

most affected. Though our acquaintance had been of short duration, his behaviour had inspired us with the highest esteem for him; and we could not part (perhaps for ever) with one, to whom we were under such infinite obligations, without indulging the most tender feelings. Exclusive of the stores, which might probably be carried to a public account, the value of the private presents be bestowed on us, must have amounted to upwards of 200 pounds. But, however extraordinary this generosity may appear, it was exceeded by his delicacy in conferring favours, and his ingenious endeavours to prevent our feeling the weight of obligations, which he knew we were unable to requite. In supporting a public character, and maintaining the honour of his sovereign, he is still more entitled to our admiration, as he was actuated by sentiments the most noble and enlarged. The service in which we were engaged, he told us, was for the general benefit of mankind; and entitled us to the offices of humanity, and the privileges of citizens, in whatever country we might be driven. That, by affording us such relief as was in his power, he was certain that he was acting agreeably to the wishes of his empress; and that he could not so entirely forget her character, or his own honour, as to barter for the performance of a duty. Among other things, he said, he made a particular point of setting a good example to the Kamtschadales, who were just emerging from a state of barbarism; that they considered the Russians as their patterns, in every respect; and that he hoped they would, in future, think it a duty incumbent on them to render strangers every assistance in their power, and believe it to be the universal practice of all polished and civilized nations. The Major having, so far as he was capable, relieved our present distresses, he was not unmindful of our future wants; and, imagining we should not be able to discover the passage we were in search of, and that we should return to Kamtschatka; he procured from Captain Clerke, the particulars of what flour and cordage he should want, promising to send them from Okotik, to wait our arrival. He also presented the Captain with a written paper, enjoining every Russian subject to assist us to the utmost of their abilities. Having thus given a narrative of the journey of our party to, and their return from Bolcheretsk, their reception there, and the departure of Major Behm, we shall now recount the transactions which passed at Petropaulowska during our absence.

On Friday, the 7th of May, not long after we had quitted the bay of Awatska, a great piece of ice drove against the Resolution, and brought home the small bower anchor; in consequence of which the other anchor was weighed, and the ship was moored again. The carpenters, who were occupied in stopping the leak, were under the necessity of taking off great part of the sheathing from the bows; and many of the trunnels were found to be so loose and rotten, that they were drawn out easily with the fingers. On Tuesday the 11th, heavy gales blew from the N. E. which obliged both vessels to strike their yards and top-masts; but the weather becoming more moderate in the afternoon, and the ice having drifted away as far as the mouth of the harbour of Petropaulowska, they warped close to the shore for the greater convenience of procuring wood and water, and again moored, as before: the mouth of the bay shut in by the most southerly point of Rakowina harbour, bearing S. and the town N. half W. at the distance of half a mile. On the 12th, a party was detached to cut wood, but made little progress in that service, on account of the snow, which still covered the ground. A convenient spot, ahead of the ships, was cleared, where there was a good run of water; and a tent being pitched for the cooper, the empty casks were landed, and the sail-makers sent ashore. On Saturday, the 15th, as the beach was then clear of ice, a party was sent to haul the seine, and caught a plentiful supply of fine flat-fish for the companies of both ships. From this time, indeed, till we quitted the harbour, we were even overpowered with the great quantities of fish which came in from every quarter. The Toions, both

of this town, and of Paratouca, a neighbouring village, had received orders from Major Behm to employ, in our service, all the Kamtschadales; so that it frequently happened, that we could not take into the ships the presents which were sent us. They generally consisted of herrings, trout, flat fish, and cod. The former, which were in their highest perfection, and of a delicious flavour, were in extreme plenty in this bay. The people of the Discovery, at one time, surrounded such an amazing quantity in their seine, that they were obliged to throw out a very considerable number, lest the net should be broken to pieces; and the cargo they landed was still so abundant, that, besides having a sufficient stock for immediate use, they filled as many casks as they could conveniently spare for salting; and, after sending on board the Resolution a tolerable quantity for the same purpose, they left behind several bushels upon the beach.

The ice and snow now began rapidly to disappear, and plenty of nettle-tops, celery, and wild garlic, were gathered for the use of the crews; which being boiled with portable soup and wheat, furnished them with an excellent and salutary breakfast; and with this they were every morning supplied. The birch-trees were also tapped, and the sweet juice, of which they produced great quantities, was constantly mixed with the brandy allowed to the men. On the 16th, a small bullock was killed, which the serjeant had procured for the ship's companies. Its weight was 272 pounds. It was served out to both the crews for their Sunday's dinner, and was the first fresh beef which they had tasted since the departure of our vessels from the Cape of Good Hope, in December, 1776; a period of almost two years and a half. This evening John Macintosh, the carpenter's mate expired, after having been afflicted with a dysentery ever since we had left the Sandwich Isles. He was a peaceable and industrious man, and greatly regretted by his mates. Though we was the fourth person that we had lost by sickness during our voyage, he was the first who, from his age and constitution, could be said to have had, on our setting out, an equal chance of life with the rest of his companions. Watman was supposed by us to be about 60 years old; and Roberts, and Mr. Anderson, from the decline which had manifestly commenced before our departure from England, most probably could not, under any circumstances, have lived to a later period than they did.

Captain Clerke's health continuing daily to decline, notwithstanding the salutary change of diet which Kamtschatka afforded him, the priest of Paratouca, as soon as he was informed of the weak state he was in, supplied him every day with milk, bread, fowls, and fresh butter, though his habitation was 16 miles from the harbour where our ships were stationed. On our arrival, the Russian hospital, near the town of St. Peter and St. Paul, was in a very deplorable state. All the soldiers were, in a greater or less degree, afflicted with the scurvy, many being in the last stage of that disorder. The rest of the Russian inhabitants were likewise in a similar condition; and we observed, that our friend the serjeant, by drinking too freely of the spirits he had received from us, had brought on himself, in the course of a few days, several of the most alarming symptoms of that disease. Captain Clerke, desirous of relieving them from this lamentable state, put them all under the care of our surgeons, and gave orders, that a supply of sour kroust, and malt, for wort, should be furnished for their use. A surprising alteration soon took place in the figures of most of them; and their speedy recovery was chiefly attributed to the effects of the sweet wort.

On Tuesday, the 1st of June, 250 poods, or 9,000 pounds weight of rye flour, were brought on board the Resolution; and the Discovery received a proportional quantity. We were supplied with this flour from the stores of Petropaulouska. The men were now put on their full allowance of bread, which, from the time of our leaving the Cape of Good Hope, they had not been indulged in. The same day we completed our stock of water, 65 tons having been conveyed on board. Fri-

day, the 4th, we had fresh breezes, and heavy rains, so that we were disappointed in our design of dressing the ships, and obliged to content ourselves with firing 21 guns, in honour of his Majesty's birth-day, and celebrating it, in other respects, in the best manner we could. Port, who, on account of his skill in languages, was left with us, partook, as well as the serjeant, (in the capacity of commandant of the place) of the entertainment of the day. The worthy priest of Paratouca, having been informed that it was the anniversary of our sovereign's birth, gave likewise a sumptuous feast, at which several of our gentlemen were present, who were highly pleased with their entertainment, of which dancing formed a part. On the 6th, 20 head of cattle arrived, having been sent us, by the directions of the commander, from the Verchnei Oltrog, which stands on the river Kamtschatka, at the distance of almost a hundred miles from this place. These cattle were of a moderate size; and, though the Kamtschadales had been 17 days in driving them down to the harbour, were in good condition when they arrived. The four succeeding days were employed in making preparations for putting to sea, and on Friday, the 11th, about two o'clock in the morning, we began to unmoor. Before, however, we had got up one anchor, so violent a gale sprung up from the N. E. that we thought proper to unmoor again, supposing, from the position of the entrance of the Bay, that the current of wind would, in all probability, set up the channel. The pinnace was dispatched to examine the passage, and returned with intelligence, that the wind blew violently from the S. E. with a great swell, setting into the bay; so that any attempt to get out to sea would have been attended with considerable risk. Mr. Port now took his leave of us, carrying with him the box containing the journals of our voyage, which Major Behm was to take charge of, and the packet that was to be forwarded by express. On the 12th, the gale having abated, we began unmooring again; but, after having broken the messenger, and received a running purchase with a six inch hauler, which likewise broke three times, we were, at last, under the necessity of heaving a strain at low water, and waiting for the flowing of the tide to raise the anchor. This measure succeeded, though not without damaging the cable. About three o'clock in the afternoon, the best bower was weighed, and we set sail; but, at eight, the tide making against us, and the wind being inconsiderable, we anchored in ten fathoms water, off the mouth of Rakowina harbour: the Oltrog being at the distance of between two and three miles, bearing N. by E. half E. the elevated rock on the western side of the passage, bearing S. and the needle rocks, on the eastern side of the passage, S. S. E. half E.

On Sunday, the 13th, at four o'clock, A. M. we got under way with the tide of ebb; and, as there was a perfect calm, the boats were dispatched a-head for the purpose of towing the ships. About 10, a south-easterly wind springing up, and the tide having turned, we were obliged to let go our anchors again, in seven fathoms; the Oltrog bearing N. half E. at the distance of a mile from the land that was nearest to us; and the three needle rocks being in the direction of S. half E. In the afternoon, Captain Gore and Lieutenant King landed on the east side of the passage, where they observed, in two different places, the remains of spacious villages; and, on the side of a hill, they saw an old ruined parapet, with four or five embrasures. It had guns mounted on it in Beerig's time, as that navigator himself informs us; and commanded the passage up the mouth of the bay. Not far from this spot, were the ruins of some subterraneous caverns, which our two gentlemen conjectured to have been magazines. About six o'clock P. M. we weighed anchor, with the ebb tide, and turned to windward; but, two hours after, a thick fog coming on, we were under the necessity of bringing to, our soundings not affording us a sufficient direction for steering betwixt several sunken rocks, situated on each side of the passage we were to make. The next morning, the fog in some degree dispersing, we weighed as soon as the tide began to ebb; and, there being little

le wind, the boats were sent a-head to tow; but, about 10 o'clock, both the wind and tide set in so strong from the sea, that we were once more obliged to cast anchor, in 13 fathoms water, the high rock being at the distance of six furlongs, in the direction of W. one quarter S. We continued, during the remainder of the day, in this situation, the wind blowing fresh into the mouth of the bay. Towards the evening, the weather was extremely dark and cloudy with an unsettled wind.

On the 15th, we were surprized, before day-light, with a rumbling noise, that resembled distant thunder; and when the day appeared, we found that the sides and decks of our ships were covered, near an inch thick, with a fine dust like emery. The air was at the same time loaded and obscured with this substance; and, towards the volcano mountain, which stands to the northward of the harbour, it was exceedingly thick and black, insomuch that we were unable to distinguish the body of the hill. About 12 o'clock, and during the afternoon, the loudness of the explosions increased; and they were succeeded by showers of cinders, which, in general, were of the size of peas, though many of those that were picked up from the deck were larger than a hazel nut. Several small stones, which had undergone no alteration from the action of fire, fell with the cinders. In the evening we had dreadful claps of thunder, and vivid flashes of lightning, which, with the darkness of the sky, and the sulphureous smell of the air, produced a very awful and tremendous effect. Our distance from the foot of the mountain was, at this time, about eight leagues. On the 16th, at day-break, we got up our anchors, and stood out of the bay; but the wind falling, and the tide of ebb setting across the passage on the eastern shore, we were driven very near the three needle rocks, situated on that side of the entrance, and were under the necessity of hoisting out the boats, for the purpose of towing the ships clear of them. At 12 o'clock, we were at the distance of six miles from the land; and our depth of water was 43 fathoms, over a bottom of small stones, of the same kind with those which had fallen upon our decks, after the late eruption of the volcano. The country had now a very different appearance from what it had on our first arrival. The snow, except what remained on the summits of some very lofty mountains, had vanished; and the sides of the hills, which abounded with wood in many parts, were covered with a beautiful verdure. As our Commander intended to keep in sight of the coast of Kamtschatka, as much as the weather would allow, in order to ascertain its position, we continued to steer towards the N. N. E. with variable light winds, till Friday, the 18th. The volcano was still observed to throw up immense volumes of smoke; and we did not strike ground with 150 fathoms of line, at the distance of 12 miles from the shore. This day the wind blew fresh from the S. and the weather became so thick and hazy, that it was imprudent to make any further attempts at present to keep in sight of the land. However, that we might be ready, whenever the fog should clear up, to resume our survey, we ran on in the direction of the coast, (as represented in the Russian charts) and fired signal guns for the Discovery to proceed on the same course. At 11 o'clock, just before we lost sight of land, Cheepoonkoi Nofs, so denominated by the Russians, was at the distance of seven or eight leagues, bearing N. N. E. On the 20th, at three o'clock in the morning, the weather becoming clearer, we stood in towards the land; and, in the space of an hour afterwards, saw it a-head, extending from N. W. to N. N. E. at the distance of about five leagues. The northern part we conjectured to be Kronotkoi Nofs; its position in the Russian charts, nearly agreeing with our reckoning in respect to its latitude, which was 54 deg. 42 min. N. though, in point of longitude, we differed considerably from them; for they place it 1 deg. 48 min. E. of Awatka; whereas our computation makes it 3 deg. 34 min. E. of that place, or 162 deg. 17 min. E. of Greenwich. The land about this cape is very elevated, and the inland mountains were, at this time, covered with snow. There is no appearance of inlets or bays in the coast; and the

shore breaks off in steep cliffs. We had not long been gratified with this view of the land, when the wind freshened from the S. W. bringing on a thick fog, which obliged us to stand off in the direction of N. E. by E. The fog dispersing about noon, we again steered for the land, expecting to fall in with Kamtschatkoi Nofs, and gained a sight of it at day-break on the 21st. The S. W. wind being soon after succeeded by a light breeze that blew off the land, we were prevented from approaching the coast sufficiently near to determine its direction, or describe its aspect. At noon, our longitude was 163 deg. 50 min. and our lat. 55 deg. 52 min. the extremes of the land bore N. W. by W. three quarters W. and N. by W. three quarters W. and the nearest part was at the distance of about 24 miles. At nine in the evening, when we had approached about 6 miles nearer the coast, it appeared to form a projecting peninsula, and to extend 11 or 12 leagues in the direction nearly of N. and S. It is level, and of a moderate elevation; the southern extreme terminates in a low sloping point; that to the northward forms a steep bluff head; and between them, 10 or 12 miles to the S. of the northern cape, there is a considerable break in the land. On both sides of this break, the land is low. A remarkable hill, resembling a saddle, rises beyond the opening; and a chain of lofty mountains, capped with snow, extends along the back of the whole peninsula. As the coast runs in an even direction, we were uncertain with respect to the position of Kamtschatkoi Nofs, which, according to Mr. Muller, forms a projecting point towards the middle of the peninsula; but we afterwards found, that, in a late Russian map, that appellation is given to the southern cape. The latitude of this, from several accurate observations, was 56 deg. 3 min. and its longitude, 163 deg. 20 min. To the S. of this peninsula, the great river Kamtschatka runs into the sea. The season being too far advanced for us to make an accurate survey of the coast of Kamtschatka, it was the design of Captain Clerke, on our course to Bering's Straights, to ascertain chiefly the respective situations of the projecting points of the coast. We therefore steered across a spacious bay, laid down between Kamtschatkoi Nofs and Olutorikoi Nofs, with a view of making the latter; which is represented by the Russian geographers, as terminating the peninsula of Kamtschatka, and as being the southern limit of the country of the Korics.

On Tuesday, the 22d, we passed a dead whale, which emitted a most horrible smell, perceivable at the distance of three or four miles. It was covered with a very considerable number of gulls, petrels, and other oceanic birds, which were regaling themselves upon it. On the 24th, the wind, which had shifted about during the three preceding days, settled at S. W. bringing on clear weather, with which we proceeded towards the N. E. by N. across the bay, having no land in sight. In the course of this day we observed a great number of gulls, and were disgusted with the indelicate manner of feeding of the arctic gull, which has procured it the appellation of the parasite. This bird, which is rather larger than the common gull, pursues the latter species whenever it meets them; the gull, after flying about for some time, with loud screams, and manifest indications of extreme terror, drops its excrement, which its pursuer instantly darts at, and catches in its beak before it falls into the sea.

On Friday, the 25th, at one o'clock, P. M. when in the latitude of 59 deg. 12 min. and in the longitude of 168 deg. 35 min. a very thick fog came on about the time we expected to obtain a view of Olutorikoi Nofs, which (if Muller's position of it, in the latitude of 59 deg. 30 min. and in the longitude of 167 deg. 36 min. is right) could then have been only 12 leagues from us; at which distance, we might easily have discerned land of a moderate height. Our depth of water, at present, was so great, that we had no ground with 160 fathoms of line. The fog still continuing, prevented us from making a nearer approach to the land, and we steered E. by N. at five o'clock, which is a little more easterly than the Russian charts represent the trending of the coast

Asiatic coast, till about seven o'clock in the evening; at which time we had approached within two or three leagues of the eastern cape of that continent. The Cape is an elevated round head of land, and extends about five miles from N. to S. It forms a peninsula, which is connected with the continent by a narrow isthmus of low land. It has a bold shore; and three lofty, detached, spiral rocks, are seen off its N. part. It was at present covered with snow, and the beach encompassed with ice. We were now convinced of our having been under the influence of a strong current setting to the northward, which had occasioned an error of twenty miles in our computation of the latitude at noon. At the time of our passing this Strait the last year, we had experienced a similar effect. Having now ascertained our position, we steered N. by E. At ten o'clock in the evening, the weather clearing up, we saw, at the same instant, the remarkable peaked hill near Cape Prince of Wales, on the North American coast, and the East Cape of Asia, with the two islands of St. Diomede between them. In the course of this day, we saw several large white gulls, and great numbers of very small birds of the hawk kind. The beak of the latter was compressed, and large in proportion to the body of the bird: the colour was dark brown, or rather black, the breast whitish, and towards the abdomen a reddish brown hue was visible. On the 6th, at twelve o'clock, our latitude was 67 deg. and our longitude 191 deg. 6 min. Having already passed many large masses of ice, and observed that it adhered, in several places, to the shore of the Asiatic continent, we were not greatly surprised when we fell in, about three o'clock, with an extensive body of it, stretching towards the W. This appearance considerably discouraged our hopes of proceeding much further to the N. this year, than we had done the preceding. There being little wind in the afternoon, the boats were hoisted out in pursuit of the sea-horses, great numbers of which were seen on the detached pieces of ice; but they returned without success: these animals being extremely shy, and before our people could come within gun-shot of them, always retreated into the water. At seven o'clock P. M. having hoisted in the boats, we stood on to the north-eastward, with a fresh southerly breeze, intending to explore the American continent, between the latitudes of 68 deg. and 69 deg. which, on account of the foggy weather, we had not an opportunity of examining the last year. In this attempt we were partly disappointed again: for, on the 7th, about six o'clock in the morning, we were stopped by a large body of ice, stretching from N. W. to S. E. but, not long afterwards, the horizon becoming clear, we had a view of the American coast, at the distance of about ten leagues, extending from N. E. by E. to E. and lying between 68 deg. and 68 deg. 20 min. of northern latitude. The ice not being high, we were enabled by the clearness of the weather to see over a great extent of it. The whole exhibited a compact solid surface, not in the least thawed; and seemed also to adhere to the land. Soon after, the weather becoming hazy, we lost sight of the land; and it being impossible to approach nearer to it, we steered to the N. N. W. keeping the ice close on board; and having, by noon, got round its western extremity, we found that it trended nearly N. Our longitude, at this time, was 192 deg. 34 min. and our latitude 68 deg. 22 min. We proceeded along the edge of the ice, to the N. N. E. during the remainder of the day, passing through many loose pieces which had been separated from the main body, and against which our vessels were driven with great violence, notwithstanding our utmost caution. About eight in the evening, we passed some drift-wood: at midnight the wind veered to the N. W. and there were continued showers of snow and sleet. The thermometer had now fallen from 38 deg. to 31 deg. On Thursday, the 8th, at five o'clock, the wind shifting more to the northward, we could continue no longer on the same tack, by reason of the ice, but were under the necessity of standing towards the W. Our depth of water, at this time, was 19 fathoms; from which, upon comparing

it with our remarks on the soundings in the preceding year, we inferred, that our present distance from the coast of America did not exceed six or seven leagues; but our view was circumscribed within a much narrower compass, by a heavy fall of snow. Our latitude, at noon, was 69 deg. 21 min. and our longitude 192 deg. 42 min. At two o'clock P. M. the weather became clearer, and we found ourselves close to an expanse of ice, which, from the mast-head, was discovered to consist of very large compact bodies; united towards the exterior edge, but, in the interior parts, some pieces were observed floating in vacant spaces of the water: it extended from W. S. W. to N. E. by N. We bore away towards the S. along the edge of it, endeavouring to get into clearer water; for the strong northerly winds had drifted down such numbers of loose pieces, that we had been encompassed with them for some time, and were unable to prevent the ships from striking against several of them. On the 9th, a fresh gale blew from the N. N. W. accompanied with violent showers of snow and sleet. We steered W. S. W. and kept as near the main body of ice as we could; but had the misfortune to damage the cut-water against the drift pieces, and rub off some of the sheathing from the bows. The flocks, indeed, which our ships received, were frequently very severe, and were attended with considerable hazard. Our latitude, at noon, was 69 deg. 12 min. and our longitude 188 deg. 5 min.

We had now sailed almost 40 leagues to the W. along the edge of the ice, without perceiving any opening, or a clear sea beyond it towards the N. no prospect therefore remained of making further progress to the northward at present. For this reason Captain Clerke determined to bear away to S. by E. the only quarter which was clear, and to wait till the season was somewhat more advanced, before he made any further attempt to penetrate through the ice. He proposed to employ the intermediate time in surveying the bay of St. Lawrence, and the coast situate to the S. of it, as it would be a great satisfaction to have a harbour so near, in case of future damage from the quantity of ice in these parts. We were also desirous of paying another visit to the Tschutski; and more particularly since the accounts we had heard of them from Major Behm. In consequence of this determination, we made sail to the southward, till the 10th at noon, when we passed considerable quantities of drift ice, and a perfect calm ensued. The latitude, at this time, was 68 deg. 1 min. and the longitude 188 deg. 30 min. This morning we saw several whales; and in the afternoon, there being great numbers of sea-horses on the pieces of ice that surrounded us, we hoisted out the boats, and dispatched them in pursuit of those animals. Our people had more success on this occasion, than they had on the 6th; for they returned with three large ones, and a young one, besides having killed or wounded some others. They were witnesses of several striking instances of parental affection in these animals. All of them, on the approach of the boats towards the ice, took their young ones under their fins, and attempted to escape with them into the sea. Some, whose cubs were killed or wounded, and left floating upon the surface of the water, rose again, and carried them down, sometimes just as our men were on the point of taking them into the boat; and could be traced bearing them to a considerable distance through the water, which was stained with their blood. They were afterwards observed bringing them, at intervals, above the surface, as if for air, and again plunging under it, with a horrid bellowing. The female, in particular, whose young one had been killed, and taken into the boat, became so furious, that she even struck her two tusks through the bottom of the cutter. About eight o'clock in the evening, an easterly breeze sprung up, with which we continued to steer to the southward; and, at midnight, fell in with many extensive bodies of ice. We attempted to push through them under an easy sail, that the ships might sustain no damage; and when we had proceeded a little further towards the S. nothing was visible but a very large and compact mass of ice, extending

foundings in the pre-
 sent distance from
 the coast fix or seven leagues;
 and within a much nar-
 rowed of snow. Our latitude,
 and our longitude 191
 P. M. the weather be-
 ourselves close to an ex-
 mast-head, was discovered
 pact bodies; united to-
 in the interior parts, some
 in vacant spaces of the
 S. W. to N. E. by N.
 along the edge of it, en-
 er water; for the strong
 down such numbers of
 encompassed with them
 ble to prevent the ships
 of them. On the 9th, a
 N. W. accompanied with
 flect. We steered W. S.
 body of ice as we could;
 nage the cut-water against
 ine of the sheathing from
 ed, which our ships re-
 vere, and were attended
 ur latitude, at noon, was
 tude 183 deg. 5 min.
 o leagues to the W. along
 erceiving any opening, or
 the N. no prospect there-
 progress to the north-
 on Captain Clerke deter-
 E. the only quarter which
 the season was somewhat
 ade any further attempts
 He proposed to employ
 ying the bay of St. Law-
 the S. of it, as it would
 a harbour so near, in case
 quantity of ice in these
 of paying another visit
 particularly since the
 n from Major Behm. In
 ation, we made sail to the
 on, when we passed con-
 e, and a perfect calm en-
 ime, was 68 deg. 1 min.
 o min. This morning we
 ne afternoon, there being
 on the pieces of ice that
 the boats, and dispatched
 animals. Our people had
 than they had on the 6th,
 large ones, and a young
 or wounded some others.
 ical striking instances of
 animals. All of them, on
 wards the ice, took their
 and attempted to escape
 ne, whose cubs were killed
 upon the surface of the
 d them down, sometimes
 point of taking them into
 bearing them to a con-
 water, which was stained
 ere afterwards observed
 above the surface, as if for-
 er it, with a horrid bel-
 iticular, whose young one
 to the boat, became so fu-
 two tusks through the
 ut eight o'clock in the
 orning up, with which we
 ward; and, at midnight,
 bodies of ice. We at-
 under an easy sail, that
 nage; and when we had
 ards the S. nothing was
 compact mass of ice, ex-
 tending

tending to the N. E. S. W. and S. E. as far as the eye
 could reach. This formidable obstacle prevented our
 visiting the Tschutski; for no space remained open, ex-
 cept back again to the northward. We therefore tacked,
 at three o'clock in the morning of the 11th, and stood
 to that quarter. The lat. at noon, was 67 deg. 49 min.
 and the long. 188 deg. 47 min. On Monday, the 12th,
 we had light winds and hazy weather. On examining
 the current, we found it set towards the N. W. at the
 rate of half a mile an hour. We continued our northerly
 course, with a breeze from the S. and fair weather, till
 10 o'clock in the morning of the 13th, when we again
 found ourselves close in with a solid mass of ice, to which
 we could perceive no limits from the mast-head. This
 was an effectual discouragement to all our hopes of pe-
 netrating further; which had been greatly raised, by our
 having now advanced almost 10 leagues, through a
 space, which, on the 9th, had been found to be occupied
 by impenetrable ice. Our situation, at this time, was
 nearly in the middle of the channel, betwixt the two
 continents; our lat. was 69 deg. 37 min. and the
 main body of the ice extended from W. S. W. to E.
 N. E.

In that part of the sea where we now were, there was
 no probability of getting further to the north, Captain
 Clerke therefore determined to make a final attempt on
 the coast of America, for Balin's Bay, since we had
 found it practicable to advance the furthest on this side,
 in the preceding year. We accordingly, during the re-
 mainder of the day, worked to the windward, with a
 fresh breeze from the east. We observed several fulmars,
 and arctic gulls, and passed two trees, both of which
 seemed to have lain a long time in the water. The
 larger one was, in length, ten or eleven feet, and in cir-
 cumference, about three, without either the bark or
 branches. We continued our course to the eastward
 on the 14th, with thick foggy weather. The next day,
 the wind blowing fresh from the west, and having, in
 some measure, dispersed the fog, we immediately steer-
 ed to the north, in order to have a nearer view of the ice;
 and we were soon close in with it. It extended from
 N. N. W. to N. E. and was solid and compact: the ex-
 terior parts were ragged, and of various heights; the in-
 ner surface was even; and, as we supposed, from 8 to
 10 feet above the level of the sea. The weather becom-
 ing moderate during the rest of the day, we shaped our
 course according to the trending of the ice, which, in
 several places, formed deep bays. On Friday, the 16th,
 the wind freshened, in the morning, and was accompa-
 nied with frequent and thick showers of snow. At eight
 o'clock in the forenoon, we had a strong gale from the
 W. S. W. which brought us under double-reefed top-
 sails; when the weather in some degree clearing up, we
 found ourselves, as it were embayed; the ice having
 suddenly taken a turn to the south eastward, and en-
 compassing us in one compact body, on all sides, but the
 south. In consequence of this, we hauled our wind to
 the southward, being, at that time, in 56 fathoms wa-
 ter, and in the lat. of 70 deg. 8 min. N. and, as we ima-
 gined, at the distance of about 25 leagues from the A-
 merican coast. At four in the afternoon, the ice in-
 creasing, we got the top-gallant-yards down upon the
 deck, furled the mizen top-sail, and close-reefed the
 fore and main top-sails. About eight o'clock, finding
 that our soundings had decreased to 22 fathoms, which
 we considered as an indication of our near approach to
 the coast of America, we tacked and steered to the
 northward. In the night we had boisterous weather,
 attended with snow; but the next morning it was clear
 and moderate; and, at eight o'clock, we got the top-
 gallant-yards across, and bore away, with the wind still at
 W. S. W. Our lat. at noon, was 69 deg. 55 min. and our
 long. 194 deg. 30 min. The wind slackened in the even-
 ing, and, about midnight, we had a calm. A light breeze
 arising from the E. N. E. at five in the morning of the
 18th, we continued our progress towards the N. with a
 view of regaining the ice as soon as possible. We saw
 numbers of sea-parrots, and small ice-birds, and also
 many whales; and passed several logs of drift-wood.
 The lat. at 12 o'clock, was 70 deg. 26 min. and the

long. 194 deg. 54 min. Our soundings, at the same
 time, were 23 fathoms; and the ice extended from N.
 to E. N. E. being about one league distant. At one
 o'clock in the afternoon, observing that we were close
 in with a firm united mass of ice, stretching from E. to
 W. N. W. we tacked, and, the wind veering to the
 westward, stood to the E. along the edge of it, till 11
 in the evening. A very thick fog then coming on, and
 the depth of water decreasing to 19 fathoms, we hauled
 our wind to the southward. About nine o'clock in the
 evening a white bear swam close by the Discovery; it
 afterwards went towards the ice, on which were likewise
 two others. The weather clearing up, at one in the
 morning of Monday, the 19th, we bore away to the N.
 E. till two o'clock, when we were again so completely
 embayed by the ice, that no opening remained, except
 to the southward; to which quarter we therefore directed
 our course, and returned through a very smooth water,
 with favourable weather, by the same way we had come
 in. We were unable to penetrate further towards the
 N. than at this time, when our lat. was 70 deg. 33 min.
 which was about five leagues short of the point to which
 we had advanced the preceding summer. We stood to
 the S. S. W. with light winds from the N. W. near the
 edge of the main body of ice, which was situated on our
 left-hand, extending between us and the American coast.
 At noon, our lat. was 70 deg. 11 min. and our long. 196
 deg. 15 min. and our soundings were 16 fathoms. We
 supposed, from this circumstance, that the icy Cape was
 at the distance of only seven or eight leagues from us;
 but, though the weather was in general pretty clear,
 there was, at the same time a haziness in the horizon;
 so that we could not expect to have an opportunity of
 seeing the cape. During the afternoon, two white bears
 appearing in the water, some of our people immediately
 pursued them in the jolly-boat, and were so fortunate as
 to kill them both. The larger one, which was, in all
 probability, the dam of the younger, being shot first, the
 other would not leave it, though it might have escaped
 with ease on the ice, while the men were re-loading their
 musquets; but continued swimming about, till after
 having been several times fired upon, it was shot dead.
 The length of the larger one, from the snout to the end
 of the tail was seven feet two inches; its circumference,
 near the fore legs, was four feet ten inches; the height
 of the shoulder was four feet three inches; and the
 breadth of the fore-paw was ten inches. The weight
 of its four quarters was 436 pounds. The four quarters
 of the smallest weighed 256 pounds. These animals
 furnished us with some good meals of fresh meat. Their
 flesh, indeed, had a strong fishy taste, but was infinitely
 superior to that of the sea-horse; which, however, our
 people were again persuaded, with no great difficulty, to
 prefer to their salted provisions.

On Tuesday, the 20th, at six o'clock, A. M. a thick
 fog arising, we lost sight of the ice for the space of two
 hours; but, when the weather became clearer, we again
 had a view of the main body to the S. S. E. and imme-
 diately hauled our wind, which was easterly, towards it,
 expecting to make the American coast to the S. E. which
 we effected between 10 and 11 o'clock. The lat. at
 noon, was 69 deg. 33 min. and the long. 194 deg. 53
 min. Our depth of water, at the same time, was 19 fa-
 thoms. The land was at the distance of eight or ten
 leagues, extending from S. by E. to S. S. W. half W.
 being the same we had seen the preceding year; but it
 was, at present, much more covered with snow than at
 that time; and the ice seemed to adhere to the shore.
 We continued to sail in the afternoon, through a sea of
 loose ice, and to steer towards the land, as near as the
 wind, which blew from E. S. E. would permit. A thick
 fog came on at eight o'clock in the evening, and the
 wind abated. Observing a rippling in the water, we
 tried the current, and found it set to the E. N. E. at the
 rate of a mile an hour: we therefore resolved to steer be-
 fore the wind, during the night, in order to stem it, and
 oppose the large pieces of loose ice, which were setting
 us on towards the coast. Our soundings, at midnight,
 were twenty fathoms. The next morning, at eight
 o'clock, the wind freshening, and the fog dispersing, we
 again

again had sight of the coast of America to the south-eastward, at the distance of nine or ten leagues, and hauled in for it; but the ice in a short time effectually stopped our further progress on that side, and we were obliged to bear away towards the W. along the edge of it. Our lat. at 12 was 69 deg. 34 min. our long. was 193 deg. and our soundings were 24 fathoms. A connected solid field of ice, thus baffling all our efforts to make a nearer approach to the land, and (as we had some reason to imagine) adhering to it, we relinquished all hopes of a N. E. passage to Great-Britain. Our Commander now finding it impossible to advance further to the northward on the American coast, and deeming it equally improbable, that such a prodigious quantity of ice should be dissolved by the few remaining weeks that would terminate the summer, considered it as the best step that could be taken, to trace the sea over to the coast of Asia, and endeavour to find some opening that would admit him further N. or see what more could be done upon that coast, where he hoped to meet with better success. In consequence of this determination, we steered W. N. W. during the afternoon of the 21st of July, through a great quantity of loose ice. About ten o'clock in the evening, discovering the main body of ice through the fog, right a-head, and very near us, and being unwilling to stand to the southward, so long as we could possibly avoid it; we hauled our wind, which was easterly, and made sail to the N. but in the space of an hour afterwards, finding that the weather became clearer, and that we were surrounded by a compact field of ice on all sides, except to the S. S. W. we tacked, and steered in that direction, for the purpose of getting clear of it. On the 22d, at noon, our lat. was 69 deg. 20 min. and our long. 187 deg. 30 min. In the afternoon we again came up with the ice, which extending to the N. W. and S. W. obliged us to proceed to the southward, in order to weather it. It may not here be improper to remark, that, since the 8th of July, we had twice traversed this sea, in lines almost parallel with the run we had just now made; that we were unable in the first of those traverses, to penetrate so far N. by eight or ten leagues, as in the second; and that in the last we had again met with a connected mass of ice, generally about five leagues to the southward of its position in the preceding run. This makes it evident, that the large compact fields of ice, observed by us, were moveable, or diminishing; but, at the same time, it does not authorize any expectation of advancing much farther, even in the most favourable seasons. About seven o'clock in the evening, the weather being hazy, and no ice visible, we made sail to the westward; but, between eight and nine, the haze dispersing, we found ourselves in the midst of loose ice, and very near the main body; we therefore stood upon a wind, which was still easterly, and continued to beat windward during the night, hoping to weather the loose pieces, which the wind drove down upon us in such quantities, that we were in great danger of being blocked up by them. On Friday, the 23d, the clear water, in which we steered to and fro, did not exceed a mile and a half, and was lessening every moment. At length, after exerting our most strenuous endeavours to clear the loose ice, we were under the necessity of forcing a passage to the S. which we accomplished between seven and eight, though not without subjecting the ship to some very severe shocks. The Discovery was not so successful; for, about 11 o'clock, when she had almost got clear out, she became so entangled by several large pieces, that her progress was stopped, and she immediately dropped to leeward, and fell, broadside foremost, on the edge of a considerable body of ice; and there being an open sea to windward, the surf occasioned her to strike with violence upon it. This mass, at length, either so far broke, or moved, as to give the crew an opportunity of making another effort to escape; but, it unfortunately happened, that, before the ship gathered way enough to be under command, she fell to leeward a second time, on another fragment, and the swell rendering it unsafe to lie to windward, and finding no prospect of getting clear, they pushed into a small opening, turtled their sails, and made the vessel fast with ice-

hooks. We beheld them in this dangerous situation at noon, at the distance of about three miles from us, in a N. W. direction; a fresh gale from the S. E. driving more ice towards the N. W. and augmenting the body that lay between us. Our lat. at this time, was 69 deg. 8 min. our long. 187 deg. and our soundings were 28 fathoms. To add to the apprehensions which began to force themselves on our minds, between four and five in the afternoon, the weather becoming thick and hazy, we lost sight of the Discovery. However, that we might be in a situation to afford her every possible assistance, we stood on close by the edge of the ice. About six o'clock the wind shifting to the north, gave us some hopes, that the ice might drift away; and release her from her danger; and in that case, as it was uncertain in what condition she might come out, we continued, every half hour, to fire a gun, with a view of preventing a separation. Our fears for her safety did not cease till nine, when we heard her guns fired in answer to ours; and not long afterwards being hailed by her, we were informed, that upon the change of wind, the ice began to separate, and that her people, setting all the sails, forced a passage through it.

On Saturday, the 24th, we steered to the S. E. till 11 o'clock A. M. when our course was again obstructed by a large body of loose ice, to which we could discover no bounds. At noon we found ourselves in lat. 68 deg. 53 min. long. 188 deg. About four in the afternoon, we had a calm, and the boats were hoisted out in pursuit of the sea-horses, which appeared in prodigious numbers. Ten of them were killed by our people, as many as could be made use of by us for eating, or for converting into lamp-oil. We held on our course with a south-westerly wind, along the edge of the ice, till four in the morning of the 25th, when perceiving a clear sea beyond it, to the south-eastward, we steered to that point. During the remaining part of the day, we continued to run towards the S. E. with no ice in sight. At noon we observed in lat. 68 deg. 38 min. long. 189 deg. 9 min. and our soundings were 30 fathoms. For the remainder of the day, and till noon of the 27th, we stood backwards and forwards, to clear ourselves of different pieces of ice. At two in the afternoon, we had sight of the continent to the S. by E. and, at four, having run, since noon, to the S. W. we were encompassed by loose masses of ice, with the main body in view, stretching in the direction of N. by W. and S. by E. as far as the eye could reach, beyond which we descried the Asiatic coast, bearing S. and S. by E. It being now necessary to come to some determination respecting the course we were next to steer, Captain Clerke dispatched a boat, with the carpenters, on board the Discovery, to make enquiries into the particulars of the damages she had lately received. In the evening they returned, with the report of Captain Gore, and of the carpenters of both vessels, that the damages sustained were such as would require three weeks to repair; and that it would be requisite, for that purpose, to make the best of their way to some port. Thus finding our farther progress to the N. as well as our nearer approach to either continent, obstructed by immense bodies of ice, we considered it as not only injurious to the service, by endangering the safety of the ships, but likewise fruitless, with respect to the design of our voyage, to make any farther attempts for the discovery of a passage. This, therefore, added to Captain Gore's representations, determined Captain Clerke to lose no more time after what he concluded to be an unattainable object, but to proceed to the bay of Awatka, to repair our damages there, and before the winter should set in, to take a survey of the coast of Japan. It is impossible to describe the joy that sparkled in the countenance of every individual, when the Captain's resolution was made known. All were completely weary of a navigation full of danger, and in which the greatest perseverance had not been rewarded with the smallest prospect of success. We therefore turned our thoughts towards home, after an absence of three years, with a delight and satisfaction as fully enjoyed, as if we had been already in sight of the Land's-end. On Wednesday, the 28th, we worked to windward, with a fresh breeze from the S. E. being still

in sight of the coast of Asia. At four in the morning, Cape Serdze Kamen bore S. S. W. distant 7 leagues. On the 29th, the wind continuing unfavourable, we made but slow progress to the southward. We had no land in view till even in the evening of the 30th, when the fog dispersing, we saw Cape Prince of Wales bearing S. by E. distant six leagues; and the island of St. Diomedé S. W. by W. We now stood to the W. and at eight made the East Cape, which at midnight, was four leagues distant, bearing W. by N. On Saturday, the 31st, at four o'clock A. M. the East Cape bore N. N. E. and the N. E. part of the Bay of St. Lawrence, W. by S. distant 12 miles. At noon, we observed in latitude 65 deg. 6 min. longitude 189 deg.

We had now passed Beering's Straits, and taken a final leave of the N. E. coast of Asia; and here we shall state our reasons for adopting two general conclusions relative to its extent, in opposition to the sentiments of Mr. Muller. The first is, that the promontory, called East Cape, is actually the most easterly point of that quarter of the globe; or in other words, that no part of that continent extends in longitude beyond 190 deg. 22 min. E. The second is, that the latitude of the north-eastermost extreme is somewhat to the south of 70 deg. N. With regard to the former, if such land really exists, it must certainly be to the N. of the 69th deg. of latitude, where the discoveries made in our present voyage terminate.

We propose therefore in the first place to investigate the probable direction of the coast beyond this point. Now, Russia being the only nation that has hitherto navigated this part of the ocean, all our information respecting the position of the coast to the northward of Cape North, is derived from the journals and charts of the persons who have been engaged, at different times, in determining the bounds of that extensive empire, and these are, in general, so confused, contradictory, and imperfect, that we cannot easily form a distinct idea of their pretended, much less collect the particulars, of their real discoveries. On this account, the extent and figure of the peninsula, inhabited by the Tschutski still remains a point, on which the Russian Geographers are divided greatly in their opinions. Mr. Muller, in the map which he published in 1754, supposes that this country extends towards the N. E. as far as the latitude of 75 deg. and to the longitude of 190 deg. E. of Greenwich; and that it ends in a round cape, which he denominates Tschukotkoi Nofs. To the S. of this cape, the coast, as he imagines, forms a bay to the W. bounded in the latitude of 67 deg. 18 min. by Serdze Kamen, the most northerly point observed by Beering in his expedition in 1728. The map published in 1776 by the academy of St. Peterburg, gives a new form to the whole peninsula, placing its north-eastermost extreme in the latitude of 73 deg. longitude 178 deg. 30 min. and the most easterly point in latitude 65 deg. 30 min. longitude 189 deg. 30 min. All the other maps we have seen, both manuscript and printed, vary between these two, apparently more according to the fancy and conjectures of the compiler, than on any grounds of more accurate intelligence. The only particular in which there is a general, coincidence, with very little variation, is the position of the East Cape, in the latitude of 66 deg. The form of the coast both to the N. and S. of the East Cape, in the map of the academy, is extremely erroneous, and may be entirely disregarded. In Mr. Muller's map, the coast towards the N. has some degree of resemblance to our survey, as far as the latter extends, except that he does not make it trend sufficiently to the W. but makes it recede only about 5 deg. of longitude, between the latitude of 66 and 69 deg. whereas it actually recedes near ten. Between the latitude of 69 and 74 deg. the coast, according to him, bends round to the N. and N. E. and forms a large promontory. On what authority he grounds this representation of the coast, comes next under our consideration.

Mr. Coxe, whose accurate researches into this subject, give great weight to his sentiments, is of opinion, that the extremity of the Nofs in question, was never

passed except by Dezhneff and his party, who failed in the year 1648, from the river Kovyma, and are imagined to have got round it into the Anadyr. As the narrative of this expedition, the substance of which has been given by Mr. Coxe, in his account of Russian discoveries, comprehends no geographical delineation of the coast along which they failed, our conjectures respecting its position must be derived from incidental circumstances; and from these it evidently appears, that the Tschukotkoi Nofs of Dezhneff, is, in reality, the promontory named by Captain Cook, the East Cape. Speaking of the Nofs, he says, that a person may sail from the isthmus to the Anadyr, with a favourable wind, in three days and three nights. This perfectly agrees with the situation of the East Cape, which is about 120 leagues from the mouth of the river Anadyr; and there being no other isthmus to the N. between that and the latitude of 69 deg. it seems evident, that, by this description, he certainly means either the Cape in question, or some other situated to the S. of it. He says, in another place, that, opposite to the isthmus, there are two islands in the sea, upon which we observed some of the Tschutski nation, in whose lips pieces of the teeth of the sea-horse were fixed. This description coincides exactly with the two islands that lie to the S. E. of the East Cape. We observed, indeed, no inhabitants upon them; but it is by no means improbable, that a party of Americans from the opposite continent, whom this description suits, might have been accidentally there at that time, and he might easily mistake them for a tribe of the Tschutski. These two circumstances seem to us to be conclusive on the point of the Tschukotkoi Nofs, though there are others of a more dubious nature from the same authority, and which now remain to be investigated. Dezhneff, in another account, says, that in going from the Kovyma to the Anadyr, a great promontory which projects very far into the sea, must be doubled; and that this cape extends between N. and N. E. It was perhaps, from these expressions, that Muller was induced to represent the country of the Tschutski, in the form we find in his map; but, if he had been acquainted with the position of the East Cape, as determined by Captain Cook, and the striking agreement between that and the promontory or isthmus, (for it must be remarked, that Dezhneff still appears to be speaking of the same thing) in the circumstances above-mentioned, we are confident that he would not have thought those expressions of sufficient weight to authorize his extending the north eastern extreme of Asia, either so far to the N. or E. For these words of Dezhneff may be reconciled with the opinion we have adopted, if we suppose that navigator to have taken these bearings from the small bight lying to the W. of the cape. The next authority, on which Muller has proceeded, seems to have been the deposition of the Cossac Popoff, taken at the Anadirskoi Ostrog, in 1711. This Cossac was sent by land, in company with several others, to demand tribute from the independent Tschutski tribes, who inhabited the parts about the Nofs. The first circumstance, in the narrative of this journey, that can tend to lead to the situation of Tschukotkoi Nofs, is its distance from Anadirsk; and this is represented as a journey of ten weeks, with loaded rein-deer; for which reason, it is added, their day's journey was very inconsiderable. We cannot, indeed, conclude much from so vague an account, but as the distance between the East Cape and the Ostrog, exceeds 200 leagues in a direct line, and consequently may be supposed to allow 12 or 14 miles a day, its situation is not incompatible with Popoff's calculation. Another circumstance stated in this deposition is, that their route lay at the foot of a rock, named Matkol, situate at the bottom of a spacious gulph. This gulph Muller conjectures to be the bay he had laid down between the latitudes of 66 deg. and 72 deg. and he accordingly places the rock Matkol in the center of it; but it appears to be more probable, that it might be a part of the Gulph of Anadyr, which they would doubtless touch upon in their journey from the Ostrog to the East Cape. What seems, however, to

put this point beyond all dispute, and to prove that the Cape which Popoff visited cannot be to the northward of the latitude of 69 deg. is that part of his deposition which relates to an island lying off the Nofs, from whence the opposite continent might be discerned. For, as the two continents, in latitude 69 deg. diverge so far as to be upwards of 100 leagues distant, it is certainly very improbable, that the coast of Asia should again trend in such a manner to the E. as to come almost within sight of the American coast. If these arguments are allowed to be conclusive against the form and extent of the peninsula of the Tschutki, it must be evident that the East Cape is the Tschukotkoi of the earlier Russian navigators: we say earlier, because Beering, and, after him, the late Russian geographers, have affixed this appellation to the S. E. cape of the peninsula of the Tschutki, which was formerly distinguished by the name of the Anadirskoi Nofs: and, consequently, hence it will follow, that the undescribed coast, extending from the latitude of 69 deg. to the mouth of the Kovyma, must trend more or less towards the W. As an additional proof of this, we may observe, that the Tschukotkoi Nofs is constantly laid down as dividing the sea of Kovyma from that of Anadyr, which we think could not possibly be, if any large cape had projected to the N. E. in the more advanced latitudes.

Another question arising on this point is, to what degree of northern latitude this coast extends, before it inclines more immediately to the W. If the position of the mouth of the Kovyma, both with regard to its latitude and longitude, were ascertained accurately, it might perhaps be easy to form a plausible conjecture on this head. Captain Cook was always strongly induced to believe, that the northern coast of Asia, from the Indigirka eastward, has hitherto been usually laid down above two degrees to the northward of its true situation: and he has therefore, on the authority of a map that was in his possession, and on the intelligence which he received at Oonahaska, placed the mouth of the Kovyma, in his chart of the N. E. coast of Asia, and the N. W. coast of America, in the latitude of 68 deg. Should the Captain be right in this conjecture, it is probable, for the reasons we have already stated, that the coast of Asia does not, in any part, exceed 70 deg. before it trends towards the W. and consequently, that we were within one degree of its north-eastern extremity. For if the continent be imagined to extend any where to the north of Shelatkoï Nofs, it can scarcely be supposed that such an interesting circumstance would have been omitted by the Russian navigators, who mention no remarkable promontory between the Anadyr and the Kovyma, except the East Cape. Another particular, which Deshneff relates, may, perhaps, be deemed a farther confirmation of this opinion, namely, that he met with no obstruction from ice in sailing round the north-eastern extremity of Asia; though he adds, that this sea is not, at all times, so free from it; as indeed appears evidently from his not succeeding in his first expedition, and, since that, from the failure of Shalauoff, as well as from the interruptions and impediments we met with, in two successive years, in our present voyage. That part of the continent between Cape North, and the mouth of the Kovyma, is 125 leagues in longitudinal extent. About a third of this distance from the Kovyma, eastward, was explored in 1723, by Fedot Amosoff, a Sinbojarskoi of Jakuts, who informed Mr. Muller, that its direction was easterly. Since that time, it has been surveyed, with some degree of accuracy, by Shalauoff, whose chart makes it trend to the N. E. by E. as far as Shelatkoï Nofs, which he places at the distance of about 43 leagues to the E. of the Kovyma. The space, therefore, between this Nofs and Cape North, upwards of 80 leagues, is the only part of the Russian dominions now remaining unexplored. If the Kovyma, however, be erroneously laid down, in point of longitude as well as latitude (a supposition by no means improbable) the extent of the unexplored coast will diminish in

proportion. The reasons which incline us to imagine, that in the Russian charts, the mouth of the river is placed considerably too far to the W. are the following. First, because the accounts that have been given of the navigation of the Frozen Ocean, from that river, round the north-eastern extreme of Asia, to the gulf of Anadyr, do not agree with the supposed distance between those places. Secondly, because the distance from the Anadyr to the Kovyma, over land, is represented by former Russian travellers as a journey of no very great length, and easily performed. Thirdly, because the coast from the Shelatkoï Nofs of Shalauoff appears to trend directly S. E. towards the Cape. If this be really the case, it may be inferred, that, as we were, in all probability, not more than one degree to the southward of Shelatkoï Nofs, only 69 miles of the coast of Asia are unascertained.

We are of opinion, thinking it highly probable, that a N. W. passage from the Atlantic into the Pacific Ocean, does not exist to the southward of the 56th deg. of latitude. If therefore a passage really exists, it must certainly be either through Baffin's bay, or by the N. of Greenland, in the western hemisphere; or in the eastern, through the Frozen Sea, to the N. of Siberia; and on which ever side it is situated, the navigator must pass through the straits distinguished by the name of Beering's Straits. The impracticability of penetrating into the Atlantic Ocean, on either side, through these Straits, is, therefore, all that now remains to be offered to the reader's consideration. Here we must previously observe, that the sea to the northward of Beering's Straits, was found by us to be more free from ice in August than in July, and perhaps in some part of September it may be still more clear of it. But, after the autumnal equinox, the length of the days diminishes so fast, that no farther thaw can be expected; and we cannot reasonably attribute so great an effect to the warm weather in the first fortnight of the month of September, as to imagine it capable of dispersing the ice from the most northern parts of the coast of America. Admitting this, however, to be possible, it must at least be allowed, that it would be highly absurd to attempt to avoid the icy cape by running to the known parts of Baffin's Bay, (a distance of 420 leagues, or 1260 miles) in so short a space of time as that passage can be supposed to remain open. On the side of Asia there appears still less probability of success, not only from what came to our knowledge, relative to the state of the sea to the southward of Cape North, but likewise from what we have gathered from the experience of the lieutenants under the direction of Beering, and the journal of Shalauoff, respecting that on the N. of Siberia. But, the possibility of sailing round the north-eastern extremity of Asia, is undoubtedly proved by the voyage of Deshneff, if its truth be admitted; yet when we reflect, that since the time of that navigator, near a century and a half has elapsed, during which, in an age of curiosity and enterprize, no person has yet been able to follow him, we can entertain no very great expectations of the public benefits to be derived from it. But even on the supposition, that, in some remarkably favourable season, a vessel might find a clear passage round the coast of Siberia, and arrive safely at the mouth of the Lena, still there remains the Cape of Taimura, extending to the 78th deg. of latitude, which no navigator has hitherto had the good fortune to double. Some, however, contend, that there are strong reasons for believing, that the nearer approach we make to the pole, the sea is more clear of ice, and that what masses we observed in the lower latitudes, had originally been formed in the great rivers of Siberia and America, by the breaking up of which the intermediate sea had been filled. But even if that supposition be true, it is no less certain, that there can be no access to those open seas, unless this prodigious mass of ice should be so far dissolved in the summer, as to admit of a ship's making her way through it. If this be a real fact, we made choice of an improper time of the year for attempting to discover this passage,

which.

hence incline us to imagine, the mouth of the river is to the W. are the following facts that have been given in the Ocean, from that extreme of Asia, to the north the supposed distance is, because the distance is, over land, is represented as a journey of no performance. Thirdly, the Nofa of Shalauoff towards the Cape. If it be inferred, that, as we are more than one degree to the N. only 69 miles of the

it is highly probable, that the passage into the Pacific Ocean to the northward of the 56th degree really exists, it must be either to the N. of the N. hemisphere, or in the N. of Siberia, situated, the navigator distinguished by the name of the impracticability of penetration, on either side, through that now remains to be determined. Here we must be directed to the northward of us to be more free from perhaps in some parts more clear of it. But, the length of the days during the winter than can be expected, but to great an effect to the fortnight of the month of dispersing the ice of the coast of America, if possible, it must at least be highly absurd to attempt to go to the known parts of the world (or 1260 miles) that passage can be supposed to the side of Asia there appears, not only from what we have seen of the state of the sea to the north, but likewise from the experience of the voyage of Beering, and the fact that on the N. of the N. of failing round the N. is undoubtedly proved, if its truth be admitted, the time of that navigation has elapsed, during the enterprise, no person can, we can entertain no public benefits to be derived from the supposition, that, in the N. of Siberia, and arrive at the 78th deg. of latitude, who had the good fortune to contend, that there are no such things as the nearer approach is more clear of ice, and in the lower latitudes, the great rivers of Siberia breaking up of which the N. is certain, that there can be no such things as, unless this prodigious mass dissolved in the summer, her way through it. If the choice of an improper method to discover this passage, which

which should have been explored in the months of April and May, before the rivers were broken up. But several reasons may be alleged against such a supposition. Our experience at Petropaulowka, gave us an opportunity of judging what might be expected farther northward; and, upon that ground, we had some reason to entertain a doubt, whether the two continents might not, during the winter, be even joined by the ice; and this coincided with the accounts we received in Kamtschatka, that, on the coast of Siberia, the inhabitants, in winter, go out from the shore upon the ice, to distances that exceed the breadth of the sea, in some parts, from one continent to the other. The following remarkable particular is mentioned in the deposition above referred to. Speaking of the land seen from the Tchutski Nofa, it is said, that, during the summer, they sail in one day to the land in baidares, a kind of vessel formed of whale-bone, and covered with the skins of seals; and, in the winter, as they go swift with rein-deer, the journey may be performed in a day. Muller's account of one of the expeditions, undertaken for the purpose of discovering a supposed island in the Frozen Sea, is still more remarkable. His narrative is to the following purport. In 1714 a new expedition was prepared from Jakutzk, under the conduct of Alexei Markoff, who was to set sail from the mouth of the Jana; and if the Schitiki were not well adapted for sea voyages, he was to build, at a convenient place, proper vessels for prosecuting the discoveries without any great risk. Upon his arrival at Ust-jankhoe Simovie, the place where he was to embark, he dispatched an account, dated the 2nd of February 1715, to the Chancery of Jakutzk, intimating, that it was impracticable to navigate the sea, as it was constantly frozen both in winter and summer; and that, consequently, the expedition could only be prosecuted in sledges drawn by dogs. He accordingly set out in this manner, accompanied with nine persons the 10th of March, in the same year, and returned to Ust-jankhoe Simovie on the 3d of the succeeding month. The account of his journey is as follows: that for the space of seven days, he travelled with as much expedition as his dogs could draw, (which in good tracks, and favourable weather, is from 80 to 100 wersts a day) to the northward, upon the ice, without observing any island: that he was prevented from proceeding farther by the ice, which rose like mountains in that part of the sea: that he had ascended some of these, whence he could see to a great distance around him, but could discern no land: and that, at length, provisions for his dogs being deficient, many of them died, which reduced him to the necessity of returning.

Besides the above-mentioned arguments, which proceed upon an admission of the hypothesis, that the ice in this ocean comes from the rivers, others may be adduced, which afford good reason for suspecting the truth of the hypothesis itself. Captain Cook, whose opinion, with regard to the formation of ice, had originally coincided with that of the theorists we are now endeavouring to confute, found sufficient grounds, in the present voyage, for changing his sentiments. We observed, that the coasts of both continents were low; that the depth of water gradually decreased towards them, and that a striking resemblance prevailed between the two; from which circumstances, as well as from the description given by Mr. Hearne of the coppermine river, we have room for conjecturing, that, whatever rivers may discharge themselves into the Frozen Ocean, from the continent of America, are of a similar nature with those on the Asiatic side; which are said to be so shallow at their entrance, as to admit only vessels of inconsiderable magnitude; whereas the ice seen by us, rises above the level of the sea, to a height that equals the depth of those rivers; so that its entire altitude must be, at least, ten times greater. Another circumstance will naturally offer itself in this place to our consideration, which seems to be very incompatible with the opinion of those who suppose that land is necessary for the formation of ice, we mean the different state of the sea about Spitzbergen, and of that

which is to the northward of Beering's Straits. It is incumbent on those objectors to explain how it happens, that in the former quarter, and in the neighbourhood of much known land, navigators annually penetrate to near 80 deg. of northern latitude; whereas, on the other side, no voyager has been able to proceed with his utmost efforts beyond the 71st deg. where, moreover, the continents diverge nearly in the direction of E. and W. and where there is not any land known to exist in the vicinity of the pole. For the farther satisfaction of our readers on this subject, we refer them to Dr. Forster's "Observations round the world," where they will find the question of the formation of the ice, discussed in a full and satisfactory manner, and the probability of open polar seas disproved by many forcible arguments.

In order to give these observations their full force, we beg leave to subjoin a comparative view of the progress made by us to the northward, at the two different seasons in which we were occupied in that pursuit; together with some general remarks respecting the sea, and the coasts of the two continents, which lie to the N. of Beering's Straits. In 1778, we did not discover the ice, till we advanced to the latitude of 70 deg. on the 17th of August: and then we found it in compact bodies, which extended as far as the eye could discern, and of which the whole, or a part, was in motion, since, by its drifting down upon our ships, we were almost hemmed in between that and the land. After we had experienced, both how fruitless and dangerous it would be to attempt to penetrate farther to the northward between the land and the ice, we stood over towards the side of Asia, between the latitudes of 69 deg. and 70 deg. After having encountered in this track very large fields of ice, and though the fogs and thickets of the weather prevented us from entirely tracing a connected line of it across, yet we were certain of meeting with it before it reached the latitude of 70 deg. whenever we made any attempts to land to the N. On the 26th of August, we were in latitude 69 deg. 45 min. longitude 184 deg. obstructed by it in such a manner, and in such quantities, that we could not pass either to the N. or W. and were under the necessity of running along the edge of it to the S. S. W. till we perceived land, which proved to be the Asiatic coast. With the season thus far advanced, the weather setting in with snow and sleet, and other indications of the approach of winter, we relinquished our enterprise for that time.

When we made a second attempt, the following season, in 1779, we did little more than confirm the remarks made by us in the first; for we never had an opportunity of approaching the continent of Asia in a higher latitude than 67 deg. nor that of America in any parts, except a few leagues between the latitude of 68 deg. and 68 deg. 20 min. that we had not seen the preceding year. We now met with obstructions from the ice 3 deg. lower; and our efforts to make farther progress to the northward, were chiefly confined to the middle space between the two coasts. We penetrated near 3 deg. farther on the side of America, than that of Asia, coming up with the ice both years sooner, and in more considerable quantities, on the latter coast. As we advanced in our northerly course, we found the ice more solid and compact: however, as in our different traverses from one side to the other, we passed over spaces which had before been covered with it, we imagined, that the greatest part of what we saw was movable. Its height, on a medium, we estimated at eight or ten feet, and that of the highest at 16 or 18 feet. We again examined the currents twice, and found that they were unequal, though they never exceeded one mile an hour. We likewise found the currents to set different ways, but more from the S. W. than from any other quarter; yet whatever their direction might be, their effect was so inconsiderable, that no conclusions, with respect to the existence of any passage towards the N. could possibly be drawn from them. We found July much colder than August. The thermometer, in the 1st of these months, was once at 28 deg. and frequently

quently at 30 deg. whereas, during the last season, in 1778, it was very uncommon in August, to have it so low as the freezing point. In both seasons, we experienced some high winds, all of which blew from the S. W. Whenever the wind was moderate from any quarter, we were subject to fogs; but they were observed to attend southerly winds more constantly than others. The straits, between the American and Asiatic continents, at their nearest approach, in lat. 66 deg. were ascertained by us to be 13 leagues, or 39 miles, beyond which they diverge to N. E. by E. and W. N. W. and in the lat. of 69 deg. their distance from each other is about 300 miles, or 100 leagues. In the aspect of the two countries to the N. of the straits, a great resemblance is discernible. Both of them are destitute of wood. The shores are low, with mountains farther inland, rising to a great height. The soundings, in the midway of the straits, were 29 and 30 fathoms, gradually decreasing as we approached either continent; with

this difference, however, that the water was somewhat shallower on the coast of America, than on that of Asia, at an equal distance from land. The bottom, towards the middle, was a soft slimy mud; and near either shore, it was a brownish sand, intermixed with a few shells, and small fragments of stones. We found but little tide or current, and that came from the W. But on the 30th of July, in the present year 1779, when in Beering's Straits, and steering to the southward, we found a current so strong as to make our passage both difficult and dangerous. It set at this time to the N. W. We might to these observations, which, we doubt not, will be highly acceptable to our very numerous friends and subscribers, add some others; but we apprehend, they will think, with us, that it is now time to resume the narrative of our voyage, which was broken off on the 31st of July, on which day, at noon, we had proceeded 18 leagues to the southward of the East Cape.

C H A P. XIX.

History of the voyage continued—Pass the islands of St. Lawrence and Mednoi—Our Commodore, Captain Clerke, confined to his sick bed, without hopes of recovery—His death, and public services—The Resolution and Discovery return to St. Peter and St. Paul—Promotions among the officers, in consequence of the Commodore's death—Funeral of Captain Clerke, and the solemnities attending it—Inscriptions to his memory—Letter from the Commander of Bolcheretsk to Captain Gore—A supply of flour, and a reinforcement of Russian soldiers—An account of a remarkable exile—Bear hunting, and fishing parties—Particular description of the former diversion—The King's Coronation celebrated—A visit from the Commander—Discipline of the military among the Russians—Manner of hunting the bears, and curious particulars respecting those animals—A supply of cattle received—Entertainments in honour of the Empress's name-day—Present from the Commander—The Resolution and Discovery work out of Awatka Bay—That Bay described—Astronomical and nautical remarks—A circumstantial, full, and complete geographical and historical account and narrative of Kamtschatka.

ON Sunday, the 1st of August, 1779, we observed in lat. 64 deg. 23 min. long. 189 deg. 15 min. at which time the Asiatic coast extended from N. W. by W. to W. half S. distant 12 leagues, and the land to the E. of St. Lawrence bore S. half W. On the 2d, the weather being clear, we saw the same land again, at noon, extending from W. S. W. half W. to S. E. and forming several elevated hummocks, which had the appearance of separate islands. Our lat. this day, at noon, we found to be 64 deg. 3 min. long. 189 deg. 28 min. and our soundings were 17 fathoms. We were not near enough to this land to ascertain, whether it was a group of islands, or only a single one. We had passed its most westerly point in the evening of the 3d of July, which we then supposed to be the Isle of St. Lawrence; the easternmost we failed close by in September, the preceding year, and this we denominated Clerke's Island, and found it composed of a number of lofty cliffs, connected by very low land. Though those cliffs were mistaken by us, last year, for separate islands, till we made a very near approach to the shore, we are still inclined to conjecture, that the Isle of St. Lawrence is distinct from Clerke's Island, as there appeared between them a considerable space, where we did not observe the least appearance of rising ground. In the afternoon, we likewise saw what had the appearance of a small island, to the N. E. of the land that we had seen at noon, and which, from the thickness of the weather, we had only sight of once. We supposed its distance to be 19 leagues from the island of St. Lawrence, in the direction of N. by E. half E. On the 3d, we had light variable winds, and steered round the N. W. point of the Isle of St. Lawrence. In the afternoon, a fresh breeze rising from the E. we steered to the S. S. W. and quickly lost sight of St. Lawrence. On Saturday, the 7th, at noon, we observed in lat. 59 deg. 38 min. long. 183 deg. At four o'clock, having a dead calm, part of the companies of both ships were employed in fishing, and caught a number of fine large cod, in 17 fathoms water, which were distributed equally among the crews. To this place we gave the name of the Bank of Good Providence, and as soon as the breeze sprung up, we made sail, and stood to S. W. but we were forced more to the eastward than we wished, it being our in-

tention to make Beering's Island. On Tuesday, the 10th, we were, by observation, in lat. 56 deg. 37 min. Friday, the 13th, we dispatched a boat to the Discovery, for the purpose of comparing time, and the carried the disagreeable intelligence, that Captain Clerke had been given over by the surgeon. The weather falling calm, we hove to, in order to get some fish for the sick: a few were caught, and distributed accordingly.

On Tuesday, the 17th, at five o'clock, A. M. the man at the mast-head called out, Land to the N. W. This we imagined to be the island of Mednoi, which, in the Russian charts, is placed to the S. E. of Beering's Island. It is elevated land, and was at this time apparently free from snow. By our reckoning, it lies in lat. 54 deg. 28 min. long. 167 deg. 52 min. Captain Clerke, now perceiving his end drawing near, signified his desire, that the officers would receive their orders from Mr. King; and directed for the last time, that we should repair, with all convenient speed, to the Bay of Awatka. The wind continuing westerly, we held on a southerly course, till Thursday, the 19th, when, after a few hours continuance of rain, early in the morning, it blew from the E. and became a strong gale. We made the most of it, by standing towards the W. with all the sail we could carry. On the 20th, the wind varying to the S. W. we steered a W. N. W. course. At noon, we observed in lat. 53 deg. 7 min. long. 168 deg. 49 min. On Saturday, the 21st, between five and six o'clock, A. M. we descried a very lofty peaked mountain, on the coast of Kamtschatka, known by the name of Chepooniskoi mountain, bearing N. W. by N. and distant near 30 leagues. At noon, the coast was observed to extend from N. by E. to W. with a very great haziness upon it, and distant about 12 leagues.

On Sunday the 22nd, at nine o'clock, A. M. a boat was sent off to the Discovery, to announce to Captain Gore, the death of our Commodore, Captain Charles Clerke, who paid the debt of nature when in the 38th year of his age. His death was occasioned by a consumption, which had manifestly commenced before his departure from England, and of which he had lingered during the whole continuance of the voyage.

the water was somewhat
ca, than on that of Asia.
The bottom, towards
mud; and near either
intermix'd with a few
stones. We found but
came from the W. But
ent year 1779, when in
the fourthward, we found
our passage both difficult
time to the N. W. We
which, we doubt not, will
y numerous friends and
but we apprehend, they
now time to resume the
was broken off on the
noon, we had proceeded
the East Cape.

*Captain Clerke, confined to
covery return to St. Peter
of Captain Clerke, and the
to Captain Gore—A sup-
ping, and fixing parties—
in the Commander—Disfi-
respecting those animals—
om the Commander—The
nautical remarks—A cir-
ka.*

and. On Tuesday, the
in lat. 56 deg. 37 min.
ed a boat to the Disco-
covering time, and the ca-
rence, that Captain Clerke
surgeon. The weather
order to get some fish for
and distributed accord-

five o'clock, A. M. the
out, Land to the N. W.
land of Mednoi, which,
to the S. E. of Beering's
id was at this time appa-
reckoning, it lies in lat.
deg. 52 min. Captain
drawing near, signified
uld receive their order
for the last time, that we
ient speed, to the Bay of
ng westerly, we held on
y, the 19th, when, after
n, early in the morning,
me a strong gale. We
ng towards the W. with
the 20th, the wind va-
W. N. W. course. At
deg. 7 min. long. 163 deg.
it, between five and six
very lofty peaked moun-
ka, known by the name
aring N. W. by N. and
noon, the coast was ob-
to W. with a very great
out 12 leagues.

the o'clock, A. M. a boat
to announce to Captain
modore, Captain Charles
nature when in the 23th
was occasioned by a con-
y commenced before his
of which he had lin-
ance of the voyage.
His

His very gradual decay had for a long time rendered him a melancholy object to his friends; but the firmness and equanimity with which he bore the slow approach of death, the constant flow of good spirits which he retained even to the last hour, and a cheerful resignation to the decree of heaven, furnished them with some consolation. It was impossible not to feel an uncommon degree of compassion for a gentleman, who had experienced a series of those difficulties and hardships, which must be the inevitable lot of every seaman, and under which he at last sunk. He was bred to the navy from his youth, and had been in many engagements during the war which commenced in 1756. In the action between the Bellona and Courageux, he was stationed in the mizen-top, and was carried overboard with the mast; but was taken up, without having received the least injury. He was midshipman on board the Dolphin, commanded by Commodore Byron, when she first sailed round the world; and was afterwards on the American station. In the year 1768, he engaged in a second voyage round the world, in the situation of master's mate of the Endeavour; and, during that expedition, succeeded to a lieutenantcy. In the Resolution he made a third voyage round the world, in the capacity of second lieutenant; and, in a short time after his return, he was appointed master and commander. In the present expedition, he was appointed Captain of the Discovery, and to accompany Captain Cook. By the calamitous death of the latter, he succeeded of course, as we have already related, to the chief command. It would favour of injustice and ingratitude, not to mention, that, during the short time he was Commodore, we always observed him to be remarkably zealous for the success of the expedition. When the principal command devolved upon him, his health began rapidly to decline; and he was unequal, in every respect, to encounter the severity of a high northern climate. The vigour of his mind, however, was not, in the least, impaired by the decay of his body; and though he was perfectly sensible, that his delaying to return to a warmer region was depriving himself of the only chance of recovery; yet, so attentive was he to his duty, that he was determined not to suffer his own situation to bias his judgment to the prejudice of the service: he therefore persevered in the search of a passage, till every officer in both ships, declared they were of opinion it was impracticable, and that any farther attempts would be equally hazardous and ineffectual.

The messenger who was sent to the Discovery with the melancholy news of our Commodore's death, brought a letter from Captain Gore, containing an order for Captain King to exert his utmost endeavours to keep in company with the Discovery, and, if a separation should happen, to repair as soon as possible, to St. Peter and St. Paul. At noon, we were by observation in lat. 53 deg. 8. min. long. 160 deg. 40 min. E. Cheepoon-koï Nofs bearing W. On the 23rd, we steered for the entrance of Awatka Bay, which we saw in the evening, at the distance of 5 leagues. At eight o'clock, the light-house, which now furnished a good light, bore W. N. by W. 3 miles distant. It was now a perfect calm, but, the tide being favourable, our boats were sent a-head, which towed us beyond the narrow parts of the mouth of the harbour. On the 24th, at one o'clock A. M. we dropped anchor, the ebb tide setting against us. At nine we weighed, and before three P. M. we anchored in the harbour of St. Peter and St. Paul; having up our ensign half staff, as the body of our late Captain was in the vessel; and the Discovery followed us in a very short time. Both ships were moored in four fathoms water, muddy bottom. From the time we had set sail out of this bay, till the present time of our return, we had been in no harbour to refit, and had been driven from island to island, and from one continent to the other, till our ships had in a manner lost their sheathing, and were otherwise in a miserable condition; we therefore thought ourselves exceeding happy in arriving at port. Soon after we had anchored, we were visited by our old friend the Serjeant, still the com-

manding officer, who brought with him a present of berries, intended for our late Commodore. He was much affected at hearing of his death, and seeing the coffin that contained his remains. As the deceased had particularly requested to be buried on shore, and gave the preference to the church at Paratounga, we consulted the Serjeant about the necessary steps to be taken on this occasion, who referred us to the priest, as being the person best qualified to give us information on this subject. At the same time he signified his intention of sending an express to the Commander of Bering's Bay, with an account of our arrival; when Commodore Gore begged to avail himself of that opportunity, by conveying a letter to him, wherein he requested that 16 head of black cattle might be sent with all possible dispatch. At this time, we received intelligence of Sopsocicoff's arrival from Onalashka, who took charge of the packet sent by Captain Cook to the Admiralty, and which we had the pleasure to find had been forwarded.

Wednesday, the 25th, in the morning, Captain Gore, in consequence of the death of our late Commodore, made out the new commissions. He himself succeeded to the chief command in the Resolution; and our lieutenant, Mr. King, was appointed Captain of the Discovery. Mr. Lanyon, master's mate of the Resolution, and who had been in that capacity, in a former voyage, on board the Adventure, was appointed to the vacant lieutenantcy. In consequence of these arrangements, the following promotions took place. Lieutenants Burney and Rickman (from the Discovery) were appointed first and second lieutenants of the Resolution; and lieutenant Williamson first lieutenant of the Discovery. Captain King, by the permission of the Commodore, took in four midshipmen, who had rendered themselves useful to him in astronomical calculations; and whose assistance was become the more necessary, as we had not an ephemeris for the present year. And that astronomical observations might not be neglected to be made in either ship, Mr. Bayly took Captain King's place in the Resolution, for these purposes. This day we were attended by the Pope Romanoff Vereftagen, the worthy priest of Paratounga. His expressions of sorrow for the death of Captain Clerke did honour to his feelings; but the good old gentleman, though much concerned, started several difficulties, and appeared rather unwilling to comply with the request of the deceased. He urged, among other objections, that the Church was soon to be pulled down; that every winter it was three feet deep in water; and that in a few years no vestige of it would remain, as the new church was to be erected near the Ostrog of Awatka, upon a drier and more convenient spot. He therefore advised, that the remains of our late Commodore should be deposited at the foot of a tree, the site of which was to be included in the body of the new church, where the bones of the Captain might probably rest for ages undisturbed: however, he submitted the choice of either place entirely to Captain Gore. These reasons, whether real or fictitious, the officers who had charge of the funeral could not disprove, and therefore some of our people had orders to dig the grave where the priest should direct.

The Discovery having suffered great injury from the ice, especially on the 23d of July, and continued exceeding leaky ever since, it was apprehended that some of her timbers might have started: our carpenters were therefore sent to assist those of the Discovery in repairing her. To accommodate those who were to be employed on shore, a tent was erected, and a party was sent into the country, north of the harbour, to fell timber. The observatories were placed at the west end of the village, near which was erected a tent, as an abode for the Commodore and Captain King. When the carpenters began to rip the damaged sheathing from the larboard bow, it was discovered, that three feet of the third strake were staved, and the timbers started: and as they proceeded, the decayed state of the ship's hull became more and more apparent. The season being now far advanced, Captain King was unwilling that

any hindrance or delay should happen through him, to Captain Gore's farther views of discovery, and therefore ordered the carpenters to rip off no more of the sheathing, than should be absolutely necessary for repairing the damages occasioned by the ice. He was apprehensive of their meeting with more decayed planks, which he thought had better remain in that state, than have their places supplied with green birch, even supposing it could be procured. All hands were now fully employed in their separate departments, that we might be perfectly ready for sea, by the time the carpenters had completed their business. Four men were set apart to haul the seine for salmon, which were caught in immense quantities, and we found them of most excellent quality. After the wants of both ships were sufficiently supplied, we daily salted down almost a hoghead. We had four invalids, who were employed in gathering greens, and cooking for those who were ashore. We also landed our powder, in order to have it dried; and the blubber of the sea horses, with which both ships had completely furnished themselves, in our passage to the north, was now boiled down for oil, and was become a very necessary article, having long since expended all our candles. The cooper was also employed in his department. Both ships companies were thus engaged till Saturday, the 28th, in the afternoon, which was allowed to every man (except the carpenters) to wash their linen, and get their clothes in tolerable order, that on Sunday they might make a decent appearance.

On Sunday, the 29th, we performed the last affecting offices at the interment of Captain Clerke, our late much respected Commodore; and to make the funeral the more solemn, every officer was desired to appear in his uniform; the marines were ordered to be drawn up under arms; and the common men to be dressed as nearly alike as possible, in order to attend the corpse from the water-side to the grave. All the Russians in the garrison assembled on the occasion, assisting respectfully in the solemnity, and the worthy pastor of Paratounca joined in the procession, walking with the gentleman who read the service. The ships, at the same time fired minute guns, and the drums, muffled as usual, beat the dead march. When the corpse arrived at the grave, it was deposited under a triple discharge of three volleys, fired by the marines, which concluded the burial service. When the grave was covered, it was thought proper to fence it in by piles driven deep in the ground, and afterwards to fill up the space inclosed with stones and earth, to preserve the body from being devoured in the winter by bears, or other wild beasts, who are remarkable for their sagacity in scenting out the bodies of dead passengers, when any happen to perish, and are buried near the roads. This mournful ceremony being over, an escutcheon was prepared, and neatly painted by the ingenious Mr. Webber, with the Captain's coat of arms properly emblazoned, and placed in the church of Paratounca. Underneath the escutcheon was the following inscription.

There lies interred at the foot of a tree,
near the Orlog of St. Peter and St. Paul,
The Body of
CHARLES CLERKE, Esquire,
Commander of his Britannic Majesty's
Ships, the Resolution and Discovery;
To which he succeeded on the Death of
JAMES COOK, Esquire,
Who was killed by the natives of an Island we
discovered in the South Sea, after having ex-
plored the Coast of America, from 42 deg.
27 min. to 70 deg. 40 min. 57 sec. N.
in search of a N. W. passage
from EUROPE to the
EAST-INDIES.

The Second Attempt being made by
Captain Clerke, who sailed within some few
Leagues of Captain Cook; but was brought
up by a solid body of Ice, which he found
from the America to the Asia shore,

and almost trended due East and
West—He died at Sea,
on his return to the
Southward, on the
22nd Day of
August, 1779,
Aged 38 Years.

Another inscription was affixed to the tree under which he was interred. This tree stands on a little eminence, in the valley, north of the harbour (and at some distance from the town), where the store-houses and hospital are situated, and round which several Russian gentlemen had been buried; but none so high upon the eminence as the spot pointed out for the grave of Captain Clerke, and which Captain Gore supposed to be such a situation, as was most consonant to the wishes of the deceased. The inscription at this place was nearly the same as that in the Church, and is as follows.

Beneath this tree lies the Body of
Captain **CHARLES CLERKE**, Esquire,
Commander of His Britannic Majesty's
Ships, the Resolution and Discovery;
Which Command he succeeded to, on the 14th
of February, 1779, on the death of
Captain **JAMES COOK**,
Who was killed by the Natives of some
Islands he discovered in the South
Sea, on the Date above.
CAPTAIN CLERKE died at Sea,
of a lingering Illness, on the 22nd Day of
August, 1779.
In the 38th Year of his Age:
And was Interred on Sunday, the 29th following.

On this occasion the crews of both ships were suffered to continue on shore, and to divert themselves, each as he liked best. It was Captain Clerke's desire that they should have double allowance for three days successively, and all that while to be excused from every other duty, than what the ordinary attendance in the ships required; but the season being far advanced, and a long track of unknown sea to traverse before they could reach China, the officers representing the hardships and inconveniences that so much lost time might bring upon themselves, they very readily gave up that part of the Captain's request, and returned to their respective duties early the next day. Accordingly, on Monday the 30th, the several parties reassumed their allotted employments; and on the 2nd of September, the carpenters proceeded to rip off such of the sheathing as had been injured by the ice, from the starboard-side; having first shifted the damaged planks, and repaired and caulked the sheathing of the larboard-bow. Four feet of the plank were discovered in the third strake under the wale, so much shaken as to require to be replaced; which was accordingly done; and on the 3d the sheathing was repaired. In the afternoon we got some ballast on board; after which we unhung the rudder, and caused it to be conveyed on shore, the lead of the pintles being much worn, and a considerable part of the sheathing rubbed off. This day an ensign arrived from Bolcheretzk, with a letter from the Commander of that place to Captain Gore; from which, by the assistance of the serjeant, we understood, that proper orders had been given respecting the cattle; and that in a few days we might expect to see them: to which was added, that Captain Shmaleff, who succeeded Major Ikhn, in his command, would pay us a visit on the arrival of a sloop which he expected from Okotsk. The bearer of the letter was a son of Captain Lieutenant Synd, who about eleven years ago, was appointed to the command of an expedition on discovery, between Asia and America, and now resided at Okotsk. He told us he was appointed to receive our directions, and to supply us with every thing that our service might require: that he should remain with us, till it was convenient for the Commander to leave Bolcheretzk; and then he was to return, or the garrison would be without an officer.

ended due East and
e died at Sea,
return to the
ard, on the
1 Day of
11, 1779.
38 Years.

as affixed to the tree under
This tree stands on a little
north of the harbour (and at
own), where the store-houses
and round which several Rus-
buried; but none so high upon
pointed out for the grave of
ch Captain Gore supposed to
a most consonant to the wishes
inscription at this place was
the Church, and is as follow.

ee lies the Body of
ES CLERKE, Esquire,
his Britannic Majesty's
ution and Discovery;
succeeded to, on the 14th
1779, on the death of
MES COOK,
y the Natives of some
covered in the South
Date above.
ERKE died at Sea,
is, on the 22nd Day of
11, 1779.
Year of his Age:
Sunday, the 29th following.

crews of both ships were suf-
ore, and to divert themselves,
It was Captain Clerke's desire
public allowance for three days
while to be excused from every
ne ordinary attendance in the
season being far advanced, and
in sea to traverse before they
cers representing the hardships
to much lost time might bring
y readily gave up that part of
d returned to their respective
y. Accordingly, on Monday
es reassumed their allotted em-
nd of September, the carpent-
such of the sheathing as had
from the starboard-side; har-
ged planks, and repaired and
the larboard-bow. Four feet
ered in the third strake under
as to require to be replaced,
one; and on the 3d the sheath-
the afternoon we got some bal-
we unhung the rudder, and
on shore, the lead of the pin-
and a considerable part of the
his day an ensign arrived from
from the Commander of that
om which, by the assistance of
d, that proper orders had been
; and that in a few days we
; to which was added, that
succeeded Major Behm, in
us a visit on the arrival of
from Okotsk. The bearer of
Captain Lieutenant Synd, who
as appointed to the command
very, between Asia and Ame-
Okotsk. He told us he was
directions, and to supply in
service might require: that
till it was convenient for the
cheretzk, and then he was to
ould be without an officer.
The

The Russians, in Kamtschatka, could not furnish us with a better account of Synd than Mr. Coxe has given us; though they seemed disposed to communicate, without reserve, what they really knew. From Major Behm we had received only this general information; that the expedition had miscarried, and that the Commander had been censured. It was evident, that he had been on the coast of America, south of Cape Prince of Wales; and as he was too far north to meet with sea otters, which the Russians seem to have in view in all their attempts at discoveries, it is probable, that his return without having made any, from whence commercial advantages might be reaped, was the cause of his disgrace, and on that account his voyage is spoken of with contempt by all the Russians. On Sunday, the 5th, all the parties that were on shore returned to the ship, and were employed in scrubbing her bottom, and getting in some single ballast. On Wednesday, the 8th, we hauled the Resolution on shore, in order to repair some damages she had received from the ice, in her cut-water. We began, about this time, to make a strong decoction from a species of dwarf pine, which is very plentiful in this country, judging it would hereafter be useful in making beer, and that we might perhaps be able to procure sugar, or a substitute, to ferment with it, at Canton. We knew, however, it would be an admirable medicine for the scurvy, and therefore were particularly desirous of procuring a considerable supply; as most of the preventives with which we had furnished ourselves, were either consumed, or had lost their efficacy through long keeping. When we had prepared about a hoghead of it, the ship's copper was found to be remarkably thin, and that, in many places, it was even cracked. This obliged us to desist, and orders were given, that, for the future, it should be used as sparingly as possible. Those navigators, who may hereafter be engaged in long voyages, would act judiciously if they provided themselves with a spare copper, or, at least, they should be fully convinced, that the copper, usually furnished, should be remarkably strong and durable. These necessary utensils are employed in so many extra services, particularly in that important one of brewing antiscorbutic decoctions, that some such provision seems absolutely necessary; and the former appears the more eligible, because a much greater quantity of fuel would be consumed in heating coppers that are very thick.

Friday, the 10th, in the morning, the boats from both the ships were ordered to tow a Russian galliot into the harbour, which had just arrived from Okotsk. She had been no less than 35 days on her passage, and, from the Light-house, had been observed a fortnight before, beating up towards the mouth of the bay. The crew had at that time dispatched their boat on shore, in order to procure water, which they much wanted; but, the wind increasing, the boat was lost: the galliot was again driven to sea, and those who were passengers suffered, with the crew, inconceivable hardships. On board this galliot were fifty soldiers, with their wives and children; they had also other passengers, and the crew consisted of 25 seamen, making in the whole, upwards of 100 persons; which, for a vessel of 80 tons, was a great number, especially as she was heavily laden with stores and provisions. This galliot, and the sloop which we saw here in May, are built in the manner of the Dutch doggers. Soon after the vessel had come to anchor, we were visited by a Put-parouchich, or sub-lieutenant, who arrived in her, and sent to take the command of this place. Some of the soldiers were intended to reinforce the garrison; and two pieces of cannon were brought on shore, to serve as an additional defence to the town; for, the honest serjeant observed shrewdly, that, as we had found the way here, others might do the same, who would not be so welcome as ourselves. On the 11th, the damages of the Resolution being repaired, we hauled her off from the shore, and, in the course of the day, we got some pitch, tar, cordage, and twine from the galliot. She also furnished us with 140 skins of flour, amounting to 13,782 English pounds troy weight. On the 13th, Ensign Synd left us to return to Bolcheretzk, with the remainder of the soldiers

who had arrived in the galliot. During his abode here, he had been our constant guest; and, on his father's account, we thought him in some degree belonging to us; and, as one of the family of discoverers, entitled to a share of our esteem. The serjeant, as being commander of the place, had hitherto been admitted to our tables; and his company was additionally welcome to us, because he was sensible and quick in his conceptions; and comprehended, better than any other person, the few Russian words that we had acquired. Whilst Ensign Synd remained among us, he very politely permitted him to enjoy the same privileges; but when the new Commander arrived from Okotsk, the serjeant, for what cause we did not understand, fell into disgrace, and was no longer permitted to sit in the company of his own officers. Our endeavours to obtain indulgence for him, we perceived would have been ineffectual; for though highly agreeable to us, it was, perhaps, incompatible with their discipline.

On Wednesday, the 15th, we had completed the stowage of the holds, got our wood and water on board, and were ready for sea; but we could not think of taking our departure, because the cattle were not yet arrived from Verchnei; and fresh provisions were now become the most important article of our wants, and essentially necessary for preserving the health of our people. Having before us a prospect of fine weather, we considered this as a favourable opportunity of engaging in some amusement on shore, and of acquiring some knowledge of the country. A party for bear-hunting was therefore proposed by Captain Gore; and on Friday, the 17th, we set out on this expedition; which was deferred to that day, in order to give a little rest to the Hospodin Ivafkin, a new acquaintance, who had arrived here on Wednesday, and intended to be one of our party. Major Behm had desired this gentleman, who resided usually at Verchnei, to attend us on our return to the harbour, and assist us as an interpreter; and, from what we had heard of him before his arrival, our curiosity to see him was much excited. He is allied to a considerable family in Russia, and his father was a general in the service of the Empress. He received his education partly in France; he had been a page to the Empress Elizabeth, and bore an Ensign's commission in her guards. At 16 years of age he was knowted, had his nose slit, and was banished to Siberia. He was afterwards transported to Kamtschatka, and had resided there 31 years. His person was tall and thin, and his visage furrowed with deep wrinkles. Old age was strongly depicted in his whole figure, though only 53 years of his existence had scarcely elapsed. Great was our disappointment when we discovered, that he had so totally forgotten the French and German languages, as not to be able to speak a single sentence, nor to comprehend readily any thing that was said to him in either of those languages. Thus were we deprived unfortunately, of what we expected would have furnished a favourable opportunity of acquiring further information respecting this country. The cause of his banishment remained a secret to every one in his country, but it was generally supposed, he had been guilty of some atrocious offence; especially as several of the Commanders of Kamtschatka have exerted their interest to get him recalled, in the reign of the present Empress; but, so far from succeeding in their applications, they were not able to change the place of his banishment. He assured us that, for 20 years, he had not tasted a morsel of bread, nor had been allowed any kind of subsistence; but had lived all that time with the Kamtschadales, on what he had procured from the chase by his own activity and toil. Afterwards a small pension was allowed him, and his situation has been rendered much less intolerable, since Major Behm was appointed to the command. Being noticed by so respectable a character, who often invited him to become his guest, others were induced to follow his example. The Major had also occasioned his pension to be augmented to 100 roubles a year, which is an Ensign's pay in every other part of the Empress's dominions, but in this province, all the officers have double pay. Major Behm informed us, that

he had obtained permission for him to go to Okotsk, where he was to reside in future; but that, at present, he should leave him behind, as he might probably be useful to us as an interpreter, on our return to the Bay.

We now set out on our hunting party, directing our course to the northward, toward a pool of water, that lies near the mouth of the river Paratounca, and which was a known haunt of the bears. We had scarce landed, when unfortunately the wind changed to the eastward, and destroyed all hopes of coming up with our game; for the Kamtschadales assured us, that it was in vain to expect to meet with bears, when to the windward of them; owing to their being possessed of an uncommon acuteness in scenting their pursuers, which enabled them, under such circumstances, to avoid the danger, though at a very great distance from them. We returned therefore to the boat, and passed the night on the beach, having brought a tent with us for that purpose. The next morning, being the 18th, we crossed the bay, and pursued our course on foot along a plain, abounding with berries, on which the bears feed; but though several of these animals were seen at a distance, we could never contrive, the weather being showery and unfavourable, to get within shot of them. Thus disappointed gain, we changed our diversion to that of spearing salmon, which we saw pushing in great numbers through the surf into a small river. Fortunately the water afforded us a little provision; for ill success had not only attended us in the chase by land, but we had failed in our expectations of shooting wild fowl, after having almost depended solely upon a supply of them for our subsistence; and on its failure, we began to think it time to return to head quarters. These sentiments entirely corresponded with those of the Hofpodin, whom former festivities had rendered unable to endure fatigue. On Sunday, the 19th, at night, we reached the ships, after having been full 12 hours upon our legs. Poor Ivalkin seemed perfectly overcome with fatigue, and was probably the more sensibly affected by it, for want of a supply of snuff; for, almost at every step, his hand sunk mechanically into his pocket, and rose instantly again with his huge empty box. When arrived at the tent, the Hofpodin's box was immediately replenished, and, regaling upon a good supper, we forgot the fatigues and disappointments of our fruitless excursion.

On Monday, the 20th, we received the disagreeable intelligence, that our much esteemed friend, the serjeant, had suffered corporal punishment, which had been inflicted on him by command of the old Put-parouchick. None of us could learn the cause of his displeasure; but it was supposed to have arisen from some little jealousy, which had been excited by our civility to the former. We were unwilling to remonstrate on this subject, till Captain Shmaleff should arrive; however, when we were next visited by the Put-parouchick, the coolness with which we received him, must have testified fully our chagrin. The 22d, being the anniversary of the King's Coronation, we fired 21 guns; and, in honour of our Royal Master, prepared as elegant a feast as our situation would allow of. The arrival of Captain Shmaleff was announced the very moment we were sitting down to dinner. We were equally pleased and surprized at this unexpected visit: first, because the Captain came so opportunely to take a share in the festivity of the day; and also, because we were lately informed, that the effects of a late illness had rendered him unequal to the journey. We had the satisfaction to hear this had been merely an excuse; and that, knowing we were distressed for tea and sugar, &c. he was hurt at the idea of coming empty handed, and therefore had deferred his setting out, waiting impatiently for the arrival of a sloop from Okotsk; but hearing no intelligence of her, and fearing we should sail before he had visited us, he was resolved to prosecute the journey, though he had nothing to present to us but apologies for the poverty of Bolcheretk. At the same time he informed us, that the reason of our not having received the black cattle, was, that the heavy rains at Verchnei, had prevented their setting out. So much generosity and politeness demanded the best answer we were capable of making;

and on coming on board the next day, we saluted him with 11 guns. Friday, the 24th, he was entertained on board the Discovery; and the day following, being the 25th, he returned to Bolcheretk. No intreaties could prevail on him to extend his visit; having, as he assured us, some expectations that the sub-governor-general would arrive in the sloop expected from Okotsk, he being on a tour through all the provinces of the governor-general of Jakutsk. Without any application from us, he reinstated the serjeant in his command, before his departure, having resolved to take the Put-parouchick with him. We also understood, that he was much offended with him for punishing the serjeant, as there did not appear to be the slightest grounds for inflicting such chastisement. Encouraged by the Captain's great readiness to oblige us, we ventured to request a small favour for another inhabitant of Kamtschatka. It was to requite an honest old soldier, who kept a kind of ordinary for the inferior officers, and who had done a thousand good offices both for them and the whole crew. The Captain obligingly complied with our wishes, and dubbed him instantly a corporal, telling him, at the same time, to thank the English officers for his very great promotion. It may not here be unnecessary to remark, that the lower class of officers in the Russian army have a greater pre-eminence above the private men, than those in the British service can possibly conceive. It was, indeed, a matter of astonishment to us, to see a serjeant assume all the state, and exact as much homage from those beneath him, as though he had been a field-officer. Besides there are several gradations of rank among them, of which other countries are wholly ignorant; there being no less than four intermediate steps between a serjeant and a private soldier. But the discipline of the Russian army, though so extremely remote from the seat of government, is remarkable for its strictness and severity; not exempting even the commissioned officers. Imprisonment, and bread and water diet, is the punishment of the latter for inconsiderable offences. A good friend of ours, an Ensign in this place, informed us, that the punishment he received for having been concerned in a drunken frolic, was three months imprisonment in the black hole, with a daily allowance only of bread and water for his subsistence; which affected his whole nervous system, that he has never since enjoyed a sufficient flow of spirits to qualify him for a convivial meeting. Captain King attended Captain Shmaleff as far as the entrance of Awatska river, and, having taken leave of him, embraced that opportunity of visiting the priest of Paratounca.

On Sunday, the 26th, Captain King attended him to his church, where his whole congregation consisted of his own family, three men, and the same number of boys, who assisted in the singing; and the whole of the service was performed with great solemnity, and devotion. Though the church is of wood, it is much superior to any other edifice, either in this town, or that of St. Peter and St. Paul. Among several paintings with which it is ornamented, are two pictures of St. Peter and St. Paul, the Apostles, presented by the navigator, Beerig, and which may vie with the first European performances, in the intrinsic richness of their draperies, the principal parts thereof being composed of thick plates of real solid silver, so fashioned as to imitate the foldings of the robes which decorate the figures, and fixed upon the canvass. Monday, the 27th, was spent by another party in the diversion of bear-hunting; when Captain King submitted himself to the directions of the parish-clerk, who had acquired great reputation as a bear hunter. About sun-set they arrived at one of the larger lakes, where it was deemed necessary to conceal themselves; and this was effected easily among some long grass, and brush-wood, of which we saw great plenty near the water's edge. We had not been long under our covert, before our ears were agreeably saluted with the growling of bears, in almost every quarter round about us; and we soon had the pleasure of beholding one of them in the water, swimming in a direct course to where we lay concealed. At this time the moon shone, so as to afford a considerable light; and as

the bear advanced towards us, three of us fired at it, almost at the same instant. Immediately the animal turned short upon one side, and set up a most horrible noise, which was neither yelling, growling, nor roaring, but a very extraordinary mixture of the whole three. We could easily perceive, that the beast was wounded severely, and that it reached the bank with difficulty; whence it retreated to some thick bushes not far distant, still continuing to make a hideous noise. The Kamtschadales supposed it to be mortally wounded; but judged it an act of imprudence to attempt to rouse it again immediately. It was then nine o'clock; and as the night became overcast, and a change of weather was to be apprehended, we thought it advisable to return home, and wait till morning for the gratification of our curiosity, when we accordingly repaired to the spot, and found the bear dead from the wounds it had received. It was a female, and larger than the ordinary size.

This account of our hunting party may convey a wrong idea of the method pursued usually in this sport, to prevent which, it may not be amiss to subjoin a few words to this subject. The natives generally contrive to reach the ground about sun-set, where the bears usually frequent. They first look out for their tracks, and attend particularly to the freshest of them; always paying a regard to the situation with respect to concealment; and taking aim at the animal as it passes by, or advances, or goes from them. These tracks are numerous between the woods and the lakes, and are often found among the long sedge grass and brakes on the margin of the water. Having determined upon a convenient spot for concealment, the hunters fix their crutches in the ground, on which they rest their firelocks, pointing them in a proper direction. They afterwards kneel or lie down, as the circumstances of their situation may require; and, having their bearspears in readiness by their side, wait the arrival of their game. These precautions are extremely necessary, that the hunters may make sure of their mark: for the price of ammunition is so high at Kamtschatka, that the price of a bear will not purchase more of it than will load a musquet four or five times. It is much more material on another consideration; for, if the first shot should not render the bear incapable of pursuit, fatal consequences too frequently ensue. The enraged beast makes immediately towards the place from whence the sound and smoke issue, and furiously attacks his adversaries. They have not sufficient time to re-load their pieces, as the bear is seldom fired at till he comes within the distance 15 yards; therefore, if he should not happen to fall, they immediately prepare to receive him upon their spears; their safety depending, in a great measure, on their giving him a mortal stab as he advances towards them. Should he parry the thrust (which these animals are sometimes enabled to do, by the strength and agility of their paws; and break in upon his opponents, the conflict becomes bloody; for it is seldom that the loss of a single life will satisfy the bear's revenge. This business, or diversion, is particularly dangerous at two seasons of the year: in the spring, when they first issue from their caves, after having subsisted the whole winter (as it is here positively asserted) solely on sucking their paws; and especially if the frost should continue to be severe, and the ice in the lakes is not broken up; as they cannot then have recourse to their customary and expected food. Thus becoming exceedingly famished, they grow fierce and savage in proportion; pursuing the inhabitants by the scent; and prowling about at a distance from their usual tracks, dart upon them unawares. Under such circumstances, as the natives have no idea of shooting flying or running, or in any manner without resting their piece, they often fall a sacrifice to their savage rapacity. The time of their copulation, is the other dangerous season to meet with them, and that is usually about September. Many instances of natural affection in these animals are frequently related by the Kamtschadales, who hence derive considerable advantages in hunting. They never presume to fire at a

No. 77.

young bear if the dam is upon the spot; for if the cub should happen to be killed, the becomes enraged to an immoderate degree; and, if she can only obtain a fight of the offender, she is sure to be revenged of him, or die in the attempt. On the other hand, if the mother should be shot, the cubs continue by the side of her after she has been a long time dead; exhibiting, by affecting gestures and motions, the most poignant affliction. The hunters, instead of commiserating their distresses, embrace these opportunities of destroying them. If the voracity of the Kamtschadales may be depended on, the sagacity of the bears is as extraordinary as their natural affection. Innumerable are the stories which they relate to this effect. They likewise acknowledge infinite obligations to the bears, for all the little progress they have hitherto made in several arts. They confess themselves indebted wholly to those animals for all their knowledge in physic and surgery; that, by observing what herbs they have applied to the wounds they have received, and what methods they have pursued when they were languid, and out of order, they have acquired a knowledge of most of those simples which they have now recourse to, either as external or internal applications. But the most singular circumstance of all is, that they admit the bears to be their dancing-masters, though the evidence of our own senses places this matter beyond dispute; for in the bear-dance of the Kamtschadales, every gesture and attitude peculiar to that animal, is faithfully exhibited. All their other dances are similar to this in many particulars; and those attitudes are thought to come nearest to perfection, which most resemble the motions of the bear.

On Tuesday, the 28th, Captain King returned from his excursion to the ships, not a little pleased, as it had afforded him an opportunity of seeing a part of the country, and of observing the manners and behaviour of the people, when under no restraint, evidently not the case when they were in company with the Russians. On the 30th, our Commodore went to Paratounca; but, before his departure, ordered Captain King to get the ships out of the harbour, that they might be in readiness to sail.

On Friday, the 1st of October, we had a violent gale of wind, which continued the whole day; but, on the 2nd, both ships warped out of the harbour, and anchored in 7 fathoms water, about a quarter of a mile from the oitrog. Fortunately for us, the day before we quitted the harbour, the cattle from Verchnei arrived; and that the men might have the full enjoyment of this seasonable supply, by eating it whilst it was fresh, the Commodore determined to stay in our present station five or six days longer. This time, however, was far from being misapplied; for the pumps, sails, and rigging of each ship, received an additional repair. Captain King having obtained permission to use the copper belonging to the Resolution, and being supplied with molasses from Captain Gore, he was enabled to brew a sufficient quantity of beer to last the crew a fortnight, and to make ten additional puncheons of strong spruce essence. This supply was the more acceptable as our last cask of spirits was now serving out, except a small quantity reserved for cases of emergency. The 3d being the name-day of the Empress of Russia, we were cordially disposed to shew it every possible respect. The pastor of Paratounca, Ivalkin, and the Serjeant, were invited to dine with us; and an entertainment was prepared for the two Toions of Paratounca, and St. Peter and St. Paul; as well as for the inferior officers of the garrison, and the most respectable of the inhabitants. All the other natives were invited to partake in common with the ships companies; a pound of excellent beef being served out to every man, and the remainder of our spirits was made into grog, and distributed among them. Twenty-one guns were fired upon the occasion; and considering we were in a very remote part of the Empress's dominions, the whole festival was conducted in a manner not unworthy to illustrious a character. On Tuesday, the 5th, we received a fresh supply of tea, sugar, and tobacco, from Bolcheretsk. Captain Shmaleff having met this present

7 X

00

on his return, he transmitted a letter with it, informing us, that the sloop from Oksk had arrived in his absence, and that Madame Shm. left had instantly dispatched a courier with these few articles, requesting our acceptance of them. On the two following days we were prevented from unmooring by reason of foul weather; but on Friday the 8th, all the boats were hoisted in, and we sailed towards the mouth of the bay; when the wind, veering to the S. obliged us to drop anchor, the Ostrog bearing N. distant half a league. On the 9th, at four o'clock, P. M. we again unmoored; but as we were raising our last anchor, we were informed that the drummer of the marines had fled from the boat of the Discovery, which had just left the village, and that he had lately been seen with a Kamtschadale woman, to whom he was known to be much attached, and who had importuned him frequently to stay behind. This man was entirely useless in the service, being lamed by a swelling in his knee; and on that very account Captain King was the more unwilling to leave him behind, lest he should become a miserable burthen to himself and the Russians. He therefore applied to the Serjeant to send parties of his men after him; and in the mean time, some sailors visited a well known haunt of his in the neighbourhood, where the drummer and his woman were found together. On his return the Discovery weighed anchor, and followed the Resolution.

Having now taken our final departure from St. Peter and St. Paul, an account of Awatka Bay, and the adjoining coast, may not be unacceptable to our friendly readers; especially as it is, perhaps, the safest and most extensive bay that has ever been discovered; and the only one, in this part of the world, that can admit vessels of a considerable burthen. The entrance thereto is in the lat. 52 deg. 51 min. N. long. 158. deg. 48 min. E. It lies in the bight of another exterior bay, formed by Cape Gavareea to the S. and Cheepoonkoi Nofs to the N. The latter of these head-lands bears from the former N. E. by N. and is 32 leagues distant. From the Cape Gavareea to the entrance of Awatka Bay, the coast takes a northerly direction, and extends about 11 leagues. It consists of ragged cliffs and rocks, and in many parts, presents an appearance of bays and inlets; but, on a nearer approach, low ground was seen to connect the head-lands. From the entrance of Awatka Bay, Cheepoonkoi Nofs bears E. N. E. distant 17 leagues. The shore on this side is flat and low, with hills behind, rising gradually to a considerable height. The latitude of Cape Gavareea is 52 deg. 31 min. This remarkable difference of the land on the sides of Awatka Bay, together with their different bearings, are very proper guides to steer for it, in coming from the southward; and when it is approached from the northward, Cheepoonkoi Nofs becomes very conspicuous; it being a high projecting head-land, and is united to the continent, by a large extent of level ground, lower than the Nofs. We are rather particular in describing this coast; for if we had possessed a good account of its form on both sides of Awatka Bay, we should, when we first visited it, have arrived two days sooner than we did, and consequently have avoided part of the tempestuous weather, which we experienced in plying off the mouth of the harbour. Besides, as the fogs are so prevalent in these seas, it often happens, that an observation for ascertaining the latitude cannot be taken. It should also be considered, that land makes a very deceptive appearance when covered with snow, or when viewed through a hazy atmosphere; both which circumstances render it necessary for every navigator to be acquainted with as many discriminating objects as possible. Should the weather be sufficiently clear to admit a view of the mountains, both on the coast and its neighbourhood, the situation of Awatka Bay may be precisely known, by the two high mountains to the S. of it. That nearest the bay is in form of a fugar-leaf: the other more inland, is flat at top, and not quite so high. There are three very conspicuous mountains to the N. of the bay: that farthest to the W. appears to be the highest; the next, a volcano-mountain, may readily be known by the smoke issuing from the

top. The third is the most northerly, and might, with some propriety, be called a cluster of mountains, as it presents several flat tops to our view. When we got within the capes, and into the outward bay, a light-house on a perpendicular head-land, pointed out the entrance into the harbour to the N. Many such rocks lie to the eastward of this head-land, stretching two or three miles into the sea, and when this or a swell are moderate, they will always shew themselves. To the S. of the entrance, about 4 miles distant from it, lies a small round island, composed chiefly of high pointed rocks, one of which is larger, and more perpendicular than the rest. The entrance into the bay is at first, about three miles wide; one mile and a half in the narrowest part; and it is four miles long, in a N. N. W. direction. Within the mouth is a noble bay, 20 miles in circumference, in which are the harbours of Rakowena to the E. Tarcinska to the W. and St. Peter and St. Paul to the N. The breadth of Tarcinska harbour is three miles, and the length twelve. A narrow neck of land separates it from the sea at the bottom, and it stretches to the E. S. E. The entrance of the harbour of Rakowena is impeded by a shoal in the middle of the channel, which, in general, makes it necessary to warp in, unless there should happen to be a leading wind. Were it not for this circumstance, this harbour would be preferable to the other two. It is one mile and a half broad, and three miles long, running in a S. E. and easterly direction.

But, one of the most convenient little harbours we have seen, is that of St. Peter and St. Paul. Six ships may be commodiously moored in it, head and stern, and it is, in every respect, convenient for giving them any kind of repairs. The S. side of this harbour is formed by a low, narrow, sandy neck, whereon the Ostrog is built. The mid-channel is only 270 feet across, in which there was six fathoms and a half water. The deepest within is 7 fathoms, over a muddy bottom. We found, however, some inconvenience from the toughness of the ground, which often broke the messenger, and occasioned some trouble in getting the anchors up. At the head of this harbour is the watering place. Off the eastern harbour is a shoal, and within the entrance a spit, stretching from the S. W. shore, having only three fathoms water over it. To the clear of the latter, a small island, or rather a large detached rock, on the W. shore of the entrance, must be shut in with the land to the S. of it. In order to steer clear of the former, the three needle rocks, near the light-house-head, on the E. shore of the entrance, must be kept open with the head-lands to the northward of the first small bending on the E. side of the entrance. As you come into the harbour of St. Peter and St. Paul, and approach the village, it is very necessary to keep near the eastern shore, to avoid a spit which stretches from the head-land, to the S. W. of the Ostrog.

Let it be noticed, that the observatories were placed on the W. side of the village of St. Peter and St. Paul; and from the sun's meridian altitudes, and of five stars to the N. of the zenith we found the latitude to be 53 deg. 38 sec. N. and its longitude from 146 fets of lunar observations, to be 158 deg. 43 min. 16 sec. E. At full and change of the moon it was high water, at 36 min. after four; and five feet eight inches, was the greatest rise. The tides were regular every twelve hours. It may be proper to observe further, in this place, that the time-keeper on board our ship, which was copied exactly from Mr. Harrison's, by Mr. Kendal, stopped on the 27th of April, a few days before our first arrival in Awatka Bay. During the voyage, it had always been carefully attended to, not having been trusted, even for a moment, in any other hands than those of Captain Cook and Captain King. No accident, therefore, could possibly have happened, to which its stopping could be attributed; nor could it proceed from intense cold, the thermometer being but very little below the freezing point. When the failure of the piece was first discovered, the Commodore and Captain King consulted about the measures to be pursued; whether they should suffer it to remain in a useless state, or sub-

northerly, and might, with
 cluster of mountains, as it
 our view. When we got
 the outward bay, a light-
 head-land, pointed out the
 the N. Many sunken
 this head-land, stretching
 a, and when this or a swell
 shew themselves. To
 4 miles distant from it,
 composed chiefly of high
 is larger, and more per-
 entrance into the bay is
 e; one mile and a half in
 four miles long, in a N.
 the mouth is a noble basin,
 which are the harbours of
 a to the W. and St. Peter
 breadth of Tarcinska har-
 length twelve. A narrow
 in the sea at the bottom,
 E. The entrance of the
 peded by a shoal in the
 , in general, makes it ne-
 ce should happen to be a
 or this circumstance, this
 to the other two. It is one
 three miles long, running
 on.

venient little harbours we
 and St. Paul. Six ships
 in it, head and stern, and
 nient for giving them any
 of this harbour is formed
 , whereon the Ostrog is
 only 270 feet across, in
 and a half water. The
 over a muddy bottom.
 inconvenience from the
 which often broke the mes-
 trouble in getting the an-
 s harbour is the watering
 our is a shoal, and within
 from the S. W. shore,
 water over it. To steer
 and, or rather a large de-
 of the entrance, must be
 of it. In order to steer
 needle rocks, near the
 ore of the entrance, must
 and to the northward of
 E. side of the entrance.
 of St. Peter and St. Paul,
 is very necessary to keep
 and a spit which stretches
 W. of the Ostrog.

bservatories were placed
 of St. Peter and St. Paul,
 altitudes, and of five stars
 and the latitude to be 33
 le from 146 sets of lunar
 min. 16 sec. E. At full
 as high water, at 36 min.
 inches, was the greatest
 every twelve hours. It
 ther, in this place, that
 ship, which was copied
 by Mr. Kendal, stopped
 ya before our first arrival
 e voyage, it had always
 ot having been trusted,
 her hands than those of
 g. No accident, there-
 ned, to which its stop-
 could it proceed from
 being but very little be-
 n the failure of the piece
 odore and Captain King
 to be pursued; whether
 in a useless state, or sub-
 mit



mit it to the inspection of a seaman on board, who had been regularly bred a watch-maker in London, and who had given many satisfactory proofs of his skill in that profession, in repairing several watches upon the voyage. Having experienced the accuracy of this time-piece, we were extremely unwilling to be deprived of its advantages. Besides, it should be considered, that the watch had already been sufficiently tried to ascertain its utility, as well in the former voyage, as during the three years of our having it on board: therefore, on the first clear day after we arrived in Awatka Bay, the time-piece was opened, in the presence of the two Captains, Clerke and King. No part of the watch appeared to be broken; but as the watch-maker was not able to make it go, he took off the cock and balance, and cleaned the pivot holes: these were extremely foul; and other parts of the work were in the same condition. Upon taking off the dial-plate, a piece of dirt was found between two teeth of the wheel, that carries the second-hand, to which cause its stopping was principally attributed. After putting the work together, and oiling it very sparingly, the watch seemed to go with freedom and regularity. Captain King having received orders to go the next day to Bolcheretsk, the time-keeper was left with Mr. Baily, in order to get its rate, by comparing it with his watch and clock; who informed him on his return, that it had gone very regularly for some days, not losing more than 17 seconds a day; and afterwards stopped again. This we supposed to be occasioned by its having been badly put together. It was therefore now a second time opened; and when again adjusted, it gained about a minute a day; when, the watch-maker in attempting to alter the regulator, broke the balance-spring. He made a new spring, but the watch went so irregularly afterwards, that we were obliged to lay it aside as quite useless. The honest mechanic was as much vexed as we were at our ill success; not so much owing, as we were convinced, to his want of skill, as to the improper tools he had to work with, and the callousness his hands had contracted from his employment as a mariner. We shall now proceed, as proposed in the contents of this chapter, to give a correct and perfect geographical and natural history of the Peninsula of Kamtschatka.

Kamtschatka is situated on the eastern coast of Asia. It extends from 52 deg. to 61 deg. N. lat. the long. of its extremity to the S. being 156 deg. 45 min. The isthmus, that joins it to the continent on the N. lies between the gulphs of Olutorfk and Penthink. Its extremity to the S. is Cape Lapatka. The whole peninsula is somewhat in the form of a shoe; and its greatest breadth is 236 computed miles, being from the mouth of the Tigil, to that of the river Kamtschatka; and towards each extremity, it gradually becomes narrower. On the N. it is bounded by the country of the Koriacks; by the N. Pacific Ocean to the S. and E. and by the sea of Okotfk to the W. A chain of high mountains extends the whole length of the peninsula, from N. to S. and almost equally divide it; whence several rivers take their rise, and make their course into the Pacific Ocean, and the sea of Okotfk. The three principal of these are, the Bolchoireka, or great river; the Kamtschatka; and the river Awatka. To the N. W. of the mouth of the Kamtschatka, lies the great lake Nerpsitch; from Nerpi, a sea; that lake abounding with those animals. A fort, called Nishnei-Kamtschatka Ostrog, is situated about 20 miles up the river, where an hospital and barracks have been built by the Russians; and this place, we understand, is now become the principal mart in the country.

Were we to judge of this country from what we saw of its soil and vegetable productions, it appears to be barren in the extreme. Neither about the bay, nor in our journey to Bolcheretsk, nor in any of our hunting excursions, did we ever perceive the smallest spot of ground, that had the appearance of a good green turf, or that seemed capable of improvement by cultivation. Indeed, the whole surface of the country, in a most striking degree, resembles that of Newfoundland. At Paratounca, however, we saw some stacks of most ex-

cellent hay; and Major Behm assured us, that the banks of the Kamtschatka, and the Bistrain, as well as many other parts of the peninsula, produce a quantity of grass, of great strength and height, which is mowed twice in every summer, and that the hay is particularly adapted to the fattening of cattle, being of a very succulent quality. This agrees with Krätschehnicoff's account, who relates, that the country which borders on the river Kamtschatka, is much superior, in point of fertility, to that of either the N. or S. The severity of the climate, it may naturally be supposed, must be in proportion to the sterility of the soil, of which it is perhaps the cause. We first saw this country in the beginning of May, 1779, when it was covered with snow, from six to eight feet in depth. On the 24th of August, when we returned, the foliage of the trees, and vegetation in general, appeared to be in the height of perfection. The weather, during the remainder of that month, and the whole of September, was not severe; but when October began, the new fallen snow again covered the tops of the hills. In computing the seasons here, Spring should certainly be omitted. Summer may be said to extend from the middle of June, till the middle of September. October may be considered as Autumn: from which period to the middle of June, it is all dreary winter. The climate in the country adjacent to the river Kamtschatka, is said to be as serene and temperate, as in many parts of Siberia under the same latitude. The inhabitants, however, are sometimes prevented, by the uncertainty of the summer season, from providing a sufficient stock of dried fish, for their food in winter; and the moisture of the air occasions worms to breed in them, which frequently destroy or spoil the greatest part. The severity of the winter, and the dreadful hurricanes of wind and snow which attend it, oblige the natives to retire to their subterraneous habitations, both for their security and warmth. We had neither thunder nor lightning during our stay at Kamtschatka, excepting on the night of the eruption of the volcano. In this peninsula volcanoes are numerous; but only three have lately been subject to eruptions. That in the neighbourhood of Awatka we have already mentioned. The volcano of Tolbatchick is situated between the river Kamtschatka and Tolbatchick, on a neck of land. The eruptions proceed from the summit of a high mountain, which terminates in pointed rocks. On the top of the mountain of Kamtschatka, supposed to be by far the highest in the peninsula, is the third volcano. Springs of hot water are said to abound in this country.

The principal trees which fell under our notice, were the birch, the poplar, and the alder; several small species of the willow, and two sorts of dwarfish cedars. One of these sorts grow upon the coast, seldom exceeding two feet in height, and creeping on the ground. Of this our essence for beer was made, and proved to be very proper for the purpose: the other, which grows much higher, is found on the mountains, and bears a kind of nut or apple. Of the birch which appears to be the most common, we remarked three sorts. Two of them were large and fit for timber; differing from each other only in the colour and texture of the bark. The third is of a dwarfish kind. The natives apply this tree to a variety of uses. When tapped, it yields a liquor in great abundance, which they drink without mixture, or any kind of preparation, as we observed frequently in our journey to Bolcheretsk. We drank some of it ourselves, and found it pleasant and refreshing, though somewhat purgative. The bark they convert into vessels for domestic purposes; and from the wood of this tree they make their sledges and canoes. Not only the birch, but every other kind of tree, in the neighbourhood of the bay, were stunted, and very small: the natives therefore are obliged to go a considerable distance up the country, to get wood of a proper size for their canoes, their balagans (or summer-houses) and many other purposes: This peninsula likewise produces great abundance of the shrub kind, as mountain ash, junipers, raspberry bushes, and wild roses. Also a variety of berries, as partridge-berries, blue-berries, black-berries, cran-berries, and crow-berries. These are preserved by mashing them

hem into a thick jam; and they constitute a considerable part of their winter provisions, serving as a general sauce to their dried fish. They also eat them in puddings, and make decoctions of them for their common beverage. We found here large quantities of wholesome vegetables in a wild state, such as chervil, garlic, onions, angelica, and wild celery. We also met with some excellent turnips, and turnip-radishes, upon a few spots of ground in the vallies. This was the utmost of their garden cultivation: yet, this account of vegetables only relates to such parts of the country as fell within our observation: near the river Kamtschatka, where, as we have already observed, both the soil and climate are the best in the peninsula, garden culture is attended to, and perhaps with success; for with the second drove of cattle which we received from Verchnei, we also received a present of cucumbers, celery, some large turnips, and other garden vegetables. Two plants are produced in this peninsula, which must not pass unnoticed. The first is called by the natives Sarana, which grows wild and in great quantities. About the beginning of August, many women are employed in collecting the roots, which, after being dried in the sun, are preserved for use. It is a maxim with the Kamtschadales, that Providence never deserts them, for the season that is prejudicial to the sarana, is always favourable for fishing; and, on the contrary, an unsuccessful fishing month, is always amply compensated by an exuberant sarana harvest. This article is variously employed in cookery. When roasted in embers, it is a better substitute for bread than any thing the country produces. When baked in an oven, and pounded, it supplies the place of flour and meal, and is mixed in all their soups, and many other dishes. It is extremely nourishing, has a pleasant bitter flavour, and may be eaten daily without cloying. We partook of these roots, boiled as we do potatoes, and found them very agreeable. The name of the other plant is Sweet Grass. When at its full growth, it is about six feet high. This plant was formerly a principal ingredient in cookery among the natives; but since the Russians have been in possession of the country, it has been chiefly appropriated to the purpose of distillation. The liquor extracted is called raka, and has the strength of brandy. Seventy-two pounds of the plant, produced generally 25 pints of raka. A vulgar well-known plant remains to be noticed, as being more essential to their subsistence than all which have hitherto been mentioned: this is the Nettle; which, as neither hemp nor flax are produced in this country, supplies materials for their fishing-nets; and on which their existence principally depends.

Many parts of this peninsula would probably admit of such cultivation, as might contribute to the comfort and convenience of the inhabitants; yet the number of wild animals it produces, must always be considered as its real riches; and no labour can be considered so productive of advantage, as what is employed upon its furrieries. And next to these, the animals that supply them are deserving of attention. These are the fox, the zebiline, or sable; the stoat, or ermine; the isatis, or arctic fox; the carlefs marmot; the varying hare; the weasel; the glutton, or wolverene; the wild sheep; the rein-deer; wolves; bears; and dogs. The most general objects of the chase are foxes, with which this country abounds, and among which are a variety of colours. The most common species is the same as the European, but their colours are more vivid and shining. Some are of a dark chestnut; others have dark-coloured stripes; the bellies of some are black, but the other part of the body is of a light chestnut. Some are wholly black; others of a dark brown; others of a stone-colour; and some few are entirely white; the last, however, are very scarce. The quality of their fur is much superior to that of the same animals in Siberia or America. The sables are much larger than those of Siberia, and their fur is thicker and brighter; but those in the neighbourhood of the rivers Olekma and Vitime, are of a finer black. The sables of the Tigil and Ouka, are said to be the best in Kamtschatka; a pair of these being sold frequently for five pounds sterling. The inferior sorts are found in the southern parts,

A rifle barrel gun, of a very small bore, a net, and a few bricks, are the whole apparatus of the sable hunters. With the first they sometimes shoot them, when seen on trees: the net is used in surrounding hollow trees, in which they usually take refuge when pursued; and the bricks are put hot into the cavities, in order to drive them out with the smoke. The skin of the arctic fox is of little value; and, on the same account, the varying hare is neglected. They are very numerous, and always become perfectly white during the winter. In the beginning of May, we observed several of this colour, but they were so extremely shy, as not to suffer us to come within gun-shot. The carlefs marmot, or mountain rat, is a beautiful creature, much smaller than a squirrel; and like that animal, feeds upon roots and berries. Its skin is of high estimation, being warm, light, and of a bright shining colour. The ermine, or stoat, is little regarded; its fur being of a very ordinary kind. The skin of the weasel is also neglected on the same account. The skin of the wolverene, or glutton, on the contrary, is in the highest repute; a Kamtschadale looking upon himself as most splendidly attired, when a small quantity of this fur appears upon his garments. The women embellish their hair with its white pats, which is considered as the most superlative piece of finery. All the bears which we had an opportunity of seeing, were of a dun brown colour. They appear generally in a company of four or five together; and frequently in the season when the fish quit the sea, and push in great quantities, up the rivers. In the winter months they are seldom visible. Of their skins, warm mattresses, and coverings for beds, are made; also comfortable bonnets, gloves, and harnesses for the sledges. The flesh, especially the fat, is held in great estimation. The wolves appear only in winter, when they are said to prowel about in large companies. Rein-deer, both wild and tame, are found in many parts of the peninsula, but none in the neighbourhood of Awatska. It is remarkable that these animals are not used here, for the purposes of carriage, as they are by their neighbours to the N. and E. Their place is indeed sufficiently supplied by dogs; yet it appears somewhat extraordinary, that they should not have preferred an animal so much more powerful and docile. The dogs resemble the Pomeranian breed, in mien and figure; but they are larger, and the hair is considerably coarser. The colour most prevalent among them, is that of a light dun, or a pale dirty yellow. These animals are all turned loose, about the latter end of May, and are obliged to shift for themselves till the ensuing winter; but they never fail to return to their respective homes, when the snow begins to make its appearance. In the winter, their food consists wholly of the head, back-bones, and entrails of salmon, which are preserved and dried for that purpose; and even with this food they are very scantily supplied. The dogs must certainly be very numerous, no less than five being yoked together for a single sledge, in which only one person is carried. In our journey to Bolcheretsk, we had occasion for 139 at two stages. It is observable, that bitches are never employed in this business, nor dogs that have been castrated. The whelps are trained to the draught, by being fastened to stakes with leathern thongs, which are elastic; and having their food placed beyond their reach, by continually pulling to obtain it, they acquire strength and a habit of drawing; both of which are essentially necessary for their destined labour. We must not omit, in our catalogue of animals, the wild mountain sheep, or argali, unknown in all parts of Europe, except those of Corfica and Sardinia. Its skin resembles that of a deer's, but in its gait and general appearance, it nearer approaches the goat. Its head is adorned with two large twisted horns, which, when the animal is full grown, weigh sometimes from 25 to 30 pounds, and are rested on the creature's back when it is running. These animals are remarkably swift and active, frequent only the most craggy and mountainous parts, and traverse the steepest rocks with an astonishing agility. Spoons, cups, and platters, are fabricated by the natives of their horns; and they often have one of the latter hanging to a belt; which serves them to drink

out of, when on their hunting expeditions. This is a gregarious creature, extremely beautiful, and its flesh is sweet, and delicately flavoured.

Of northern sea-fowl, almost every kind frequent the coast and bays of Kamtschatka, and among others the sea eagles. The inland rivers are plentifully stored with various species of wild ducks; one of which, called by the natives a-an-gitché, has a most beautiful plumage. Its cry is equally singular and agreeable. Another species is called the mountain duck. The plumage of the drake is remarkably beautiful. A variety of other water fowl were seen, which, from their magnitude, appeared to be of the goose kind. We observed in passing through the woods, some eagles of a prodigious size, but of what species we could not possibly determine. It is said, there are three different kinds. The first is the black eagle with a white head, tail, and legs: the eaglets of which are perfectly white. The second is improperly called the white eagle, though, in reality, it is of a light grey. The third is the stone coloured eagle, which is a very common sort. There are great numbers of the hawk, falcon, and bustard kind in this peninsula. Woodcocks, snipes, and grouse are also found here. Swans are very numerous, and generally make a part of the repast at all public entertainments. The vast abundance of wild fowl, in this country, was sufficiently manifest, from the many presents we received, consisting frequently of twenty brace at a time. We saw no amphibious animals on the coast, except seals, and these were extremely numerous about the bay of Awatka. The sea-otters found here, and those we met with at Nootka Sound, are exactly the same; and have already been particularly described. They were formerly in great abundance here; but since the Russians have opened a trade with the Chinese for their skins, where they bear a price superior to any other kind of fur, the hunters have been induced to be so indefatigable in the pursuit of them, that very few remain in the country. They are still found in the Kurile Islands, though the number is inconsiderable.

Fish is the main article of subsistence among the inhabitants of this peninsula, who cannot possibly derive it either from agriculture or cattle. The soil, indeed, affords some wholesome roots, and every part of the country produces great quantities of berries; but fish alone may be called their staff of life, with more propriety than bread in any other country; for neither the inhabitants, nor their domestic animals of the canine species, could possibly exist without it. Whales are common in this country, and when taken serve for a variety of uses. After cleaning their intestines, drying them, and blowing them like bladders, they deposit their oil and grease therein. Excellent snares are made of their nerves and veins; in short, no part of the whale is useless in this peninsula. We caught abundance of fine flat fish, trout, and herrings. At one haul on the 15th of May, we dragged out above 300 flat fish, besides a considerable quantity of sea-trout. The first herring season commences about the latter end of May. They visit the coast in large shoals, but continue no considerable time. These first are excellent, as are also large quantities of exceeding fine cod; and many of our empty casks were filled with the former. But notwithstanding this abundance, it is on the salmon fishery alone that the inhabitants depend for their winter sustenance. The fishing season begins about the middle of May, and continues to the end of June. The first shoals that enter the mouth of the Awatka, are the largest and most esteemed. Three feet and a half is their usual length; and they are more than proportionably deep; their average weight being from 30 to 40 pounds. We had one of the first that were taken, but not without being told, that it was the highest compliment the Kamtschadales could possibly confer upon us. It was formerly a custom among them to eat the first fish they caught, in the midst of great rejoicings, accompanied with many superstitious ceremonies. There is a smaller sort of salmon, weighing from about 8 to 15 pounds, known by the name of the red fish, which assemble in the bays, and at the mouths of the rivers, early in the month of

No. 78.

June. From this time till towards the end of September, vast quantities of them are taken upon the eastern and western coasts, where the sea receives any fresh water, and also up the rivers, almost to their very source. All the lakes which communicate with the sea abound with fish, which have much the appearance of salmon, and weigh usually about five or six pounds. The natives, we understand, do not think it worth their labour to catch them. These lakes being generally shallow, the fish become an easy prey to bears and dogs, in the summer season; and from the quantities of bones appearing upon the banks, vast numbers of them seem to have been devoured. The natives dry the principal part of their salmon, and salt but very little of it. They cut a fish into three pieces. The belly-piece is first taken off, and then a slice along each side of the back bone. The former, which is esteemed the best, is dried and smoked: the other slices are dried in the air, and are either eaten whole as a substitute for bread, or pulverized for paste and cakes. The head, tail and bones are dried, and preserved for their dogs.

The inhabitants of Kamtschatka may be divided into three classes; the Kamtschadales, the Russians and Cossacks; and a mixture produced by their intermarriages. The Kamtschadales are a people of remote antiquity, and have inhabited this peninsula for many ages; and they doubtless descended from the Mangaians; though some have imagined they sprang from the Tongusian Tartars, and others from the Japanese. The Russians, having made themselves masters of that vast extent of coast of the Frozen Sea, established posts and colonies, and appointed commissaries to explore and subject the countries still farther to the E. They soon discovered that the wandering Koriacs inhabited part of the coast of the sea of Okotk, and they found no difficulty in making them tributary. These not being at a great distance from the Kamtschadales, with whom they had frequent intercourse, a knowledge of Kamtschatka must naturally follow; and the honour of the first discovery of this peninsula is attributed to Feodor Alexieeff, a merchant, in the year 1648; but a Cossack, named Volodmer Atlassoff is the unquestionable first acknowledged discoverer of Kamtschatka. He was sent in 1697, in the capacity of commissary from Jakutsk to the Anadirsk, with directions to call in the Koriacs to his assistance, in order to discover, and make tributary, the countries beyond theirs. With sixty Russian soldiers, and as many Cossacks, he penetrated in the year 1699, into the heart of the peninsula, and gained the Tigil. In his progress he levied a tribute upon furs, and proceeded to the river Kamtschatka, on which he built an ostrog, now called Verchnei; and leaving a garrison of 16 Cossacks, returned to Jakutsk, with vast quantities of valuable tributary furs, in the year 1700. Since which time to the grand revolt of the Kamtschadales in 1731, the history of this country presents an unvaried detail of revolts, massacres, and murders, in every part of the peninsula. Though a great many of the inhabitants were lost, in quelling the rebellion of 1731, yet the country had afterwards recovered itself, and was become as populous as ever in 1767; at which period the small pox was, for the first time, introduced among them, by a soldier from Okotk. It broke out with fury, and, in its progress was as dreadful as the plague; seeming almost to threaten their entire extirpation. Twenty thousand were supposed to have died by this loathsome disorder in Kamtschatka, the Kurile Islands, and the Koreki country. The inhabitants of whole villages were sometimes swept away; of which sufficient proof remains to this day. There are eight ostrogs about the bay of Awatka, which, we were informed, had been completely inhabited, but now they are all become desolate, except St. Peter and St. Paul; and only seven Kamtschadales, who are tributaries, reside in that. At the ostrog of Paratounca only 36 native inhabitants remain, including men, women, and children; though it contained 360 before it was visited by the small pox. We passed no less than four extensive ostrogs, in our journey to Bolcheretsk, which had not a single inhabitant

7 Y

in

in either of them. We were informed by Major Behm, that those who at this time pay tribute, including the Kuriles, do not exceed 3,000. The amount of the military forces, in five sorts, is about 400, including Russians and Cossacks. Nearly the same number are said to be at Igigga; which, though in the N. of the peninsula, is under the command of Kamtschatka. The Russian traders and emigrants are not very considerable.

The government, established in this country by the Russians, considered as a military one, is remarkably mild and equitable. The natives are permitted to elect their own magistrates in their ancient mode. One of these, called a Toion, presides over each ostrog, to whom all differences are referred. In some districts, the only tribute exacted is a sable's skin; and in the Kurile islands, a sea otter's; but as the latter is considerably more valuable, the tribute of several persons is paid with a single skin; a tribute so inconsiderable can hardly be considered in any other light, than that of an acknowledgment of the Russian dominion over them. But the Russians are not only to be commended for the mildness of their government: they are also entitled to approbation for their successful endeavours in converting the natives to Christianity, there being now but very few idolaters remaining among them. It were a judgment of the other missionaries from the benevolent pastor of Paratouca, more suitable persons could not possibly be engaged in this business.

The exports of this country consist entirely of furs; and this business is chiefly conducted by a company of merchants, appointed by the Empress. Twelve was the number originally, but three have since been added. Besides a charter or grant of privileges, they are distinguished by wearing a gold medal, expressive of the Empress's protection of the fur trade. There are other inferior dealers chiefly Cossacks, in different parts of the country. At what time the principal merchants remain here, they reside either at Bolcheretsk, or the Nishnei ostrog; the trade centering wholly in those two places. This business was formerly carried on in the way of barter, but every article is at present purchased with ready money, no inconsiderable quantity of specie being circulated in that wretched country. The furs produce a high price; and the natives require few articles in return. Our sailors brought a quantity of furs from the coast of America, and were both pleased and astonished on receiving such a quantity of silver for them from the merchants; but as they could not purchase gin or tobacco, or any thing else that would afford them any degree of entertainment, the roubles were soon considered as troublesome companions, and they frequently diverted themselves by kicking them about the deck. Our men received thirty roubles of a merchant, for a sea-otter's skin, and in the same proportion for others; but the merchant understanding they had great quantities to dispose of, and perceiving they were unacquainted with traffic, he afterwards procured them at a much cheaper rate.

European articles are the principal that are imported, but they are not solely confined to Russian manufactures. They come from England, Holland, Siberia, Bucharia, the Calmucs, and China. They chiefly consist of coarse woollen and linen cloths, stockings, bonnets, and gloves; thin Persian silks, pieces of nankeen, cottons, handkerchiefs, both of silk and cotton; iron stoves, bras and copper pans, files, guns, powder and shot; hatchets, knives, looking-glasses, sugar, flour, boots, &c. These commodities, we observed, sold for three times the sum they might have been purchased for in England. And, notwithstanding the merchants have so extravagant a profit upon these imported goods, they receive still a greater advantage from the sale of the furs at Kiachta, a considerable market for them on the frontiers of China. In Kamtschatka, the best sea-otter skins usually produce about thirty roubles a-piece; at Kiachta, the Chinese merchant gives more than double that price, and disposes of them again at Peking for a much greater sum; after which, an additional profit is made of many of them at Japan. If, then, the original

value of a skin at Kamtschatka is thirty roubles, and it is afterwards transported to Okotk, thence by land 1364 miles to Kiachta, thence 760 miles to Peking, and after that to be transported to Japan, what a lucrative trade might be established between Kamtschatka and Japan, which is not above three weeks sail from it, at the utmost? It may be necessary to observe, that the principal and most valuable part of the fur trade, lies among the islands between Kamtschatka and America. Being first discovered there in 1741, and as they were found to abound with sea-otters, the Russian merchants sought anxiously for the other islands seen by that navigator, S. E. of Kamtschatka, named in Muller's map the islands of St. Abraham, Seduction, &c. They fell in with no less than three groups of islands, in these expeditions. The first, about 15 deg. E. of Kamtschatka; another, 12 deg. E. of the former; and the third, Oonalaschka, and the neighbouring islands. These mercantile adventurers also proceeded as far as Shumagin's Islands, of which Kodiak is the largest. But here they met with so warm a reception, for attempting to compel the payment of a tribute, that they never ventured so far again. The three groups before-mentioned, however, were made tributary. The whole sea between Kamtschatka and America is, according to the Russian charts, covered with islands; for, as those who were engaged in these expeditions, frequently fell in with land, which they supposed did not tally with the situation laid down by preceding adventurers, they immediately supposed it to be a new discovery, and reported it accordingly on their return; and, as these vessels were usually out three or four years, and sometimes longer, such mistakes could not immediately be rectified. It is pretty certain, however, that only those islands which have been enumerated, have been discovered in that sea by the Russians, S. of 60 deg. latitude. The sea otter skins, which are certainly the most valuable article in the fur trade, are principally drawn from these islands; which being now under the Russian dominion, the merchants have factors residing in settlements there, for the sole purpose of bartering with the natives. To extend this trade, an expedition was fitted out by the admiralty of Okotk, to make discoveries to the N. and N. E. of the above-mentioned islands, and the command of it given to Lieutenant Synd. But, as this gentleman directed his course too far N. he did not succeed in the object of his voyage; for as we never found a sea-otter N. of Bristol bay, they, perhaps, avoid those latitudes where large amphibious sea animals are numerous. The Russians have not since undertaken any expedition for making discoveries to the eastward; but they will, probably, make an advantageous use of our discovery of Cook's river. Notwithstanding the general intercourse between the natives, the Russians, and Cossacks, the former are as much distinguished from the latter by their habits and disposition, as by their features and general figure.

As the persons of the natives have already been described, we shall only add, that, in their stature, they are below the common height, which Major Behm attributes to their marrying so very early; both sexes usually engaging in the conjugal state at 13 or 14 years of age. They are exceedingly industrious, and may be properly contrasted with the Russians and Cossacks, who frequently intermarry with them, apparently, for no other reason, but that they may be supported in laziness and sloth. To this inactivity may be attributed those scorbutic complaints, which most of them are dreadfully afflicted with; whilst the natives, who exercise in the open air, entirely escape them.

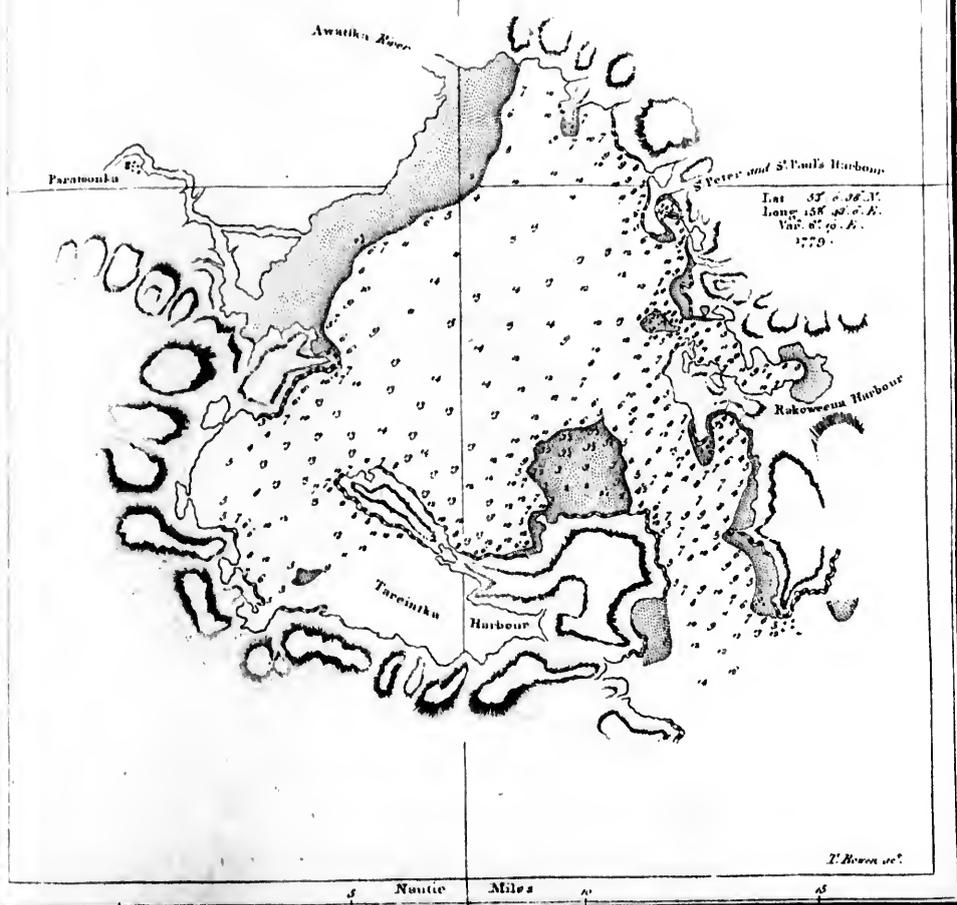
Their habitations consist of three distinct sorts; jouts, balagans, and log-houses which are here called itbas; they inhabit the first in the winter, and the second in the summer; the third are introduced by the Russians, wherein only the wealthier people reside. The jouts are thus constructed. A kind of oblong square is dug about six feet deep in the earth; the dimensions must be proportioned to the numbers who are to inhabit it, for it is usual for several to live together in the same jout. Strong wooden posts, or pillars, are fastened in the

is thirty roubles, and it is
 thence by land 136
 miles to Peking, and after
 n, what a lucrative trade
 Kamtschatka and Japan,
 sail from it, at the ut-
 observe, that the princi-
 the fur trade, lies among
 ka and America. Beer-
 1741, and as they were
 rs, the Russian merchants
 islands seen by that na-
 named in Müller's map
 uction, &c. They fell
 oups of islands, in these
 at 15 deg. E. of Kami-
 of the former; and the
 neighbouring islands. These
 proceeded as far as Shu-
 diak is the largest. But
 reception, for attempting
 tribute, that they never
 three groups before-men-
 tributary. The whole sea
 America is, according to the
 islands; for, as those who
 tions, frequently tell in
 ed did not tally with the
 ing adventurers, they im-
 new discovery, and re-
 retutn; and, as these ves-
 our years, and sometimes
 not immediately be re-
 owever, that only those
 erated, have been disco-
 is, S. of 60 deg. latitude,
 certainly the most valu-
 , are principally drawn
 ing now under the Rus-
 have factors residing in
 urpose of bartering with
 trade, an expedition was
 Okotk, to make disco-
 of the above-mentioned
 it given to Lieutenant
 directed his course to
 he object of his voyage;
 otter N. of Britol bay,
 udes where large amphi-
 us. The Russians have
 dition for making disco-
 y will, probably, make
 iscovery of Cook's river.
 intercourse between the
 facks, the former are as
 tter by their habits and
 and general figure,
 ave already been describ-
 eir stature, they are below
 ajor Behm attributes to
 oth sexes usually engag-
 13 or 14 years of age.
 us, and may be properly
 and Collacks, who fre-
 apparently, for no other
 pported in laziness and
 be attributed those fear-
 of them are dreadfully
 es, who exercise in the

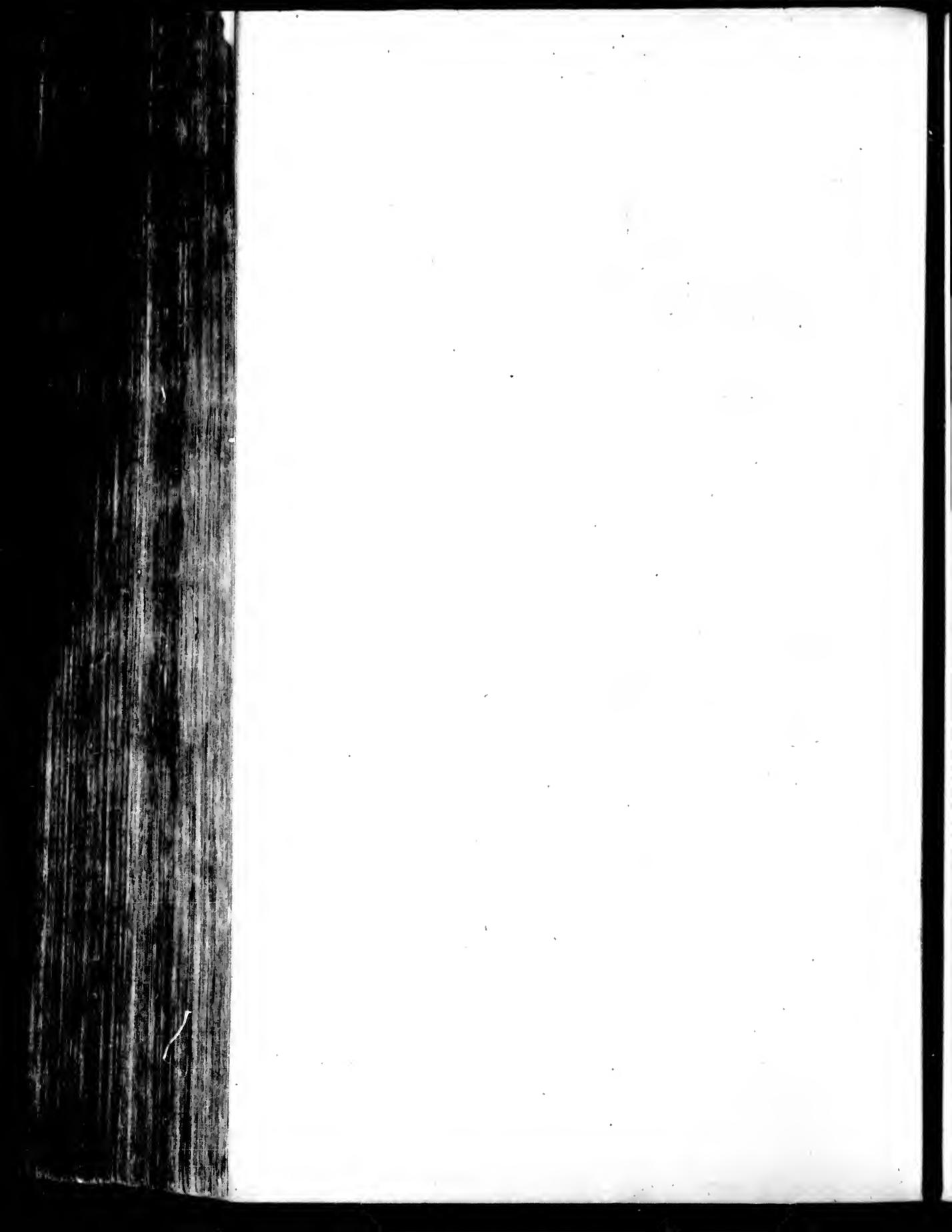
three distinct forts; jour-
 n are here called itbas;
 nter, and the second in
 oduced by the Russians,
 ople reside. The jourts
 of oblong square is dug
 h; the dimensions mult
 s who are to inhabit it,
 ve together in the same
 r pillars, are fastened in
 the



PLAN
 of
 the BAY of
 AWATSKA
 on the
 EAST COAST OF
 KAMTSCHATKA.

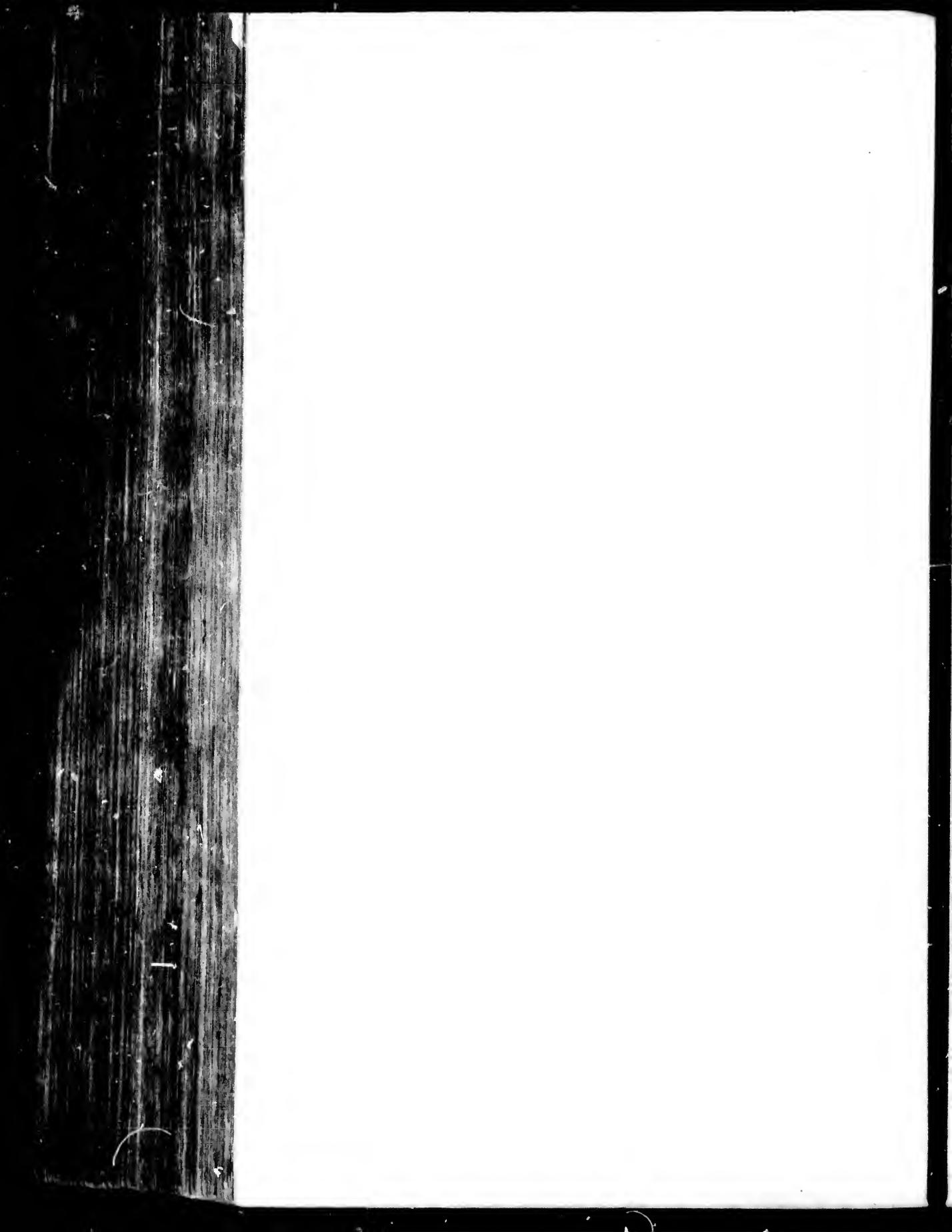


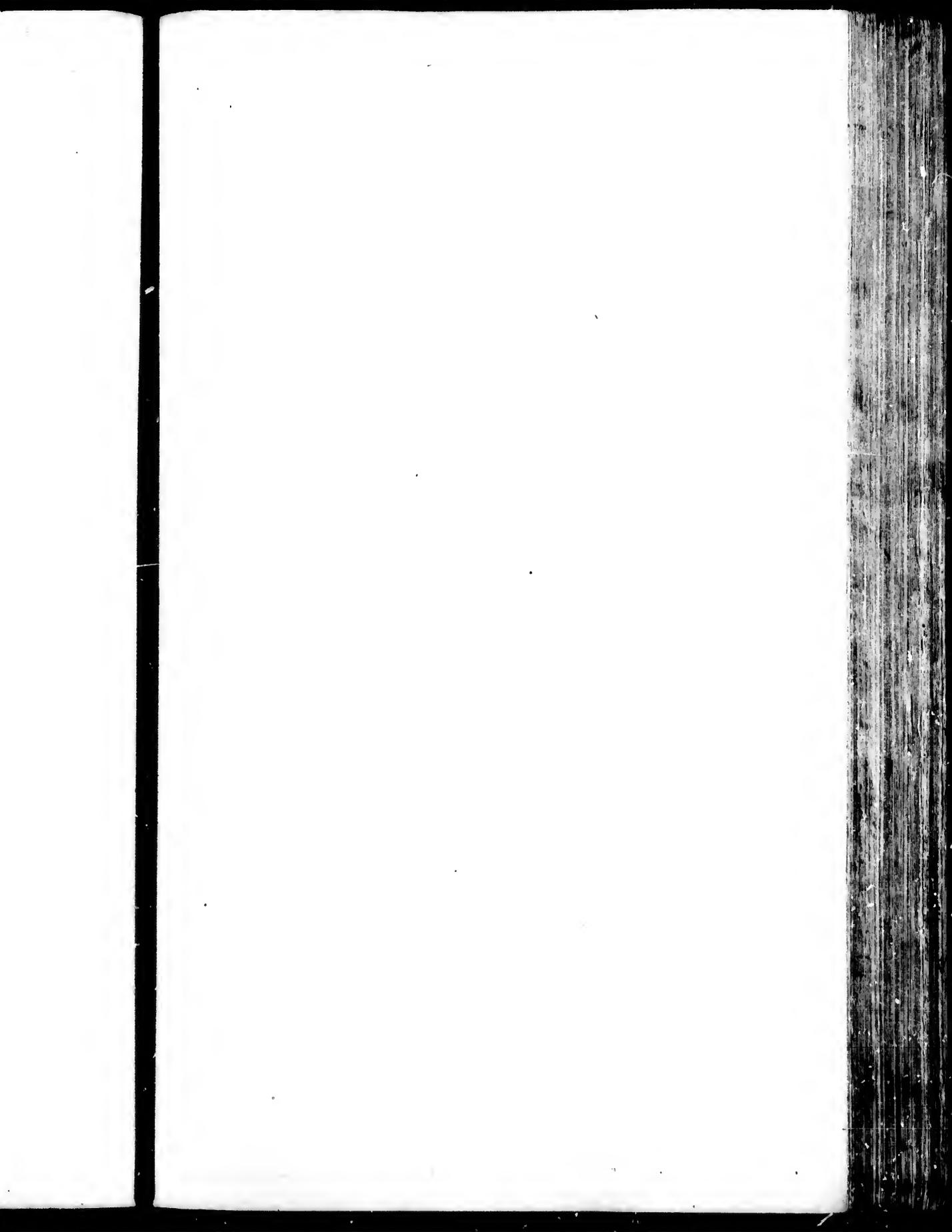
London, Published by Alex. Hoops, at the Kings Arms, in St. Peterwater Row.





A MARRIAGE
as celebrated amongst the
LAPLANDERS.





the ground, at equal distances from each other, on which the beams intended to support the roof are extended; which is formed by joists, one end of which rest upon the ground, and the other on the beams. Between the joists, the interstices are filled up with wicker work, and turf is spread over the whole. The external appearance of a jourt, resembles a round squat hillock. A hole, serving for a chimney, window, and door, is left in the center, and the inhabitants go in and out by the assistance of a long pole, having notches deep enough to afford a little security for the toe. On the side, and even with the ground, there is another entrance, appropriated to the use of the women; but if a man passes in or out of this door, he becomes as much an object of ridicule, as a sailor who descends through lubber's hole. A jourt consists of one apartment, forming an oblong square. Broad platforms, made of boards, are extended along the sides, at the height of about six inches from the ground; which serve them for sitting on, and on which they repose; first taking care to cover them with mats and skins. The fireplace is on one side, and, on the other, their provisions and culinary utensils are stowed. When they make entertainments, the compliment is considered in proportion to the heat of the jourts; the hotter they are made, the more gracious is the reception of the guests considered. We always found them so extremely hot as to be intolerable. They generally retire to their jourts about the middle of October, and continue in them till the month of May is more than half expired. To erect a balagan, nine poles are fixed into the earth, in three regular rows, at equal distances from each other, to the height of about 12 or 13 feet from the surface. About 12 feet from the ground, rafters are laid from post to post, and securely fastened by strong ropes. The joists are laid upon these rafters, and a turf covering completes the platform or floor of the balagan. A roof of a conical figure is raised upon this, by means of long poles, which are fastened to the rafters, at one end, and meet together in a point at the top. The whole is covered, or rather thatched, with a coarse kind of grass. These summer habitations have two doors, placed directly opposite to each other, to which they ascend by the same kind of ladders that are used in the jourts. In the lower part, which is left entirely open, they dry their fish, vegetables, and other articles intended for the consumption of the winter. Though six families usually live together in one jourt, a balagan is seldom occupied by more than one at a time. The iltas, or log-houses, are thus erected: long timbers are piled horizontally, with the ends let into each other, and the seams are stowed up or caulked with moss. Like those of our mountain cottages, the roof is sloping, and thatched with grass or rushes. Each log-house has three apartments in the inside. One end may be said to be a kitchen, which extends the whole width and height of the house, and seems to be a kind of receptacle for their bulky articles, as sledges, harness, &c. This has a communication with their best apartment, which is in the middle, and is furnished with broad benches, calculated both for eating and sleeping upon.

A door leads from this into the kitchen, almost half of which is taken up with an oven, or fire-place; which is let into the wall that separates the middle apartment and the kitchen, and is so constructed as to communicate the heat to both rooms at the same time. There are two lofts over the kitchen and middle apartment, to which the inhabitants ascend by a ladder placed in the entry for that purpose. Each apartment has two small windows made of talc, and among the inferior people, of fish-skin. The boards and beams of their habitations, are smoothed only with a hatchet, for they are strangers to the plane; and the smoke has rendered them of a deep shining black.

In Kamtschatka, an offrog is called a town, and consists of several houses or habitations of the various kinds above-mentioned. Balagans are considerably the most numerous; and it is remarkable that we never saw a house of any kind that was detached from an offrog. There are, in St. Peter and St. Paul, seven log-houses, nineteen balagans, and three jourts. Paratounca is nearly of the same size. Karatchin and Natchekin have not so many log-houses as the former, but rather more balagans and jourts; whence it may be concluded that such is the most general size of an offrog.

The dress of the Kamtschadale women having already been described, we shall proceed to that of the men. The upper garment resembles that of a waggoner's frock. If for summer wear, it is made of nankeen; if intended for winter, it is made of a skin, (generally that of a deer or dog) having one side tanned, and the hair preserved on the other, which is worn innermost. A close jacket of nankeen, or some other cotton stuff, is the next under this; and beneath that, a shirt made of thin Persian silk, of a red, blue, or yellow colour. They wear also a pair of long breeches, or tight trowsers, of leather, reaching below the calf of the leg. They have likewise a pair of boots, made of dog or deer skin, with the hair innermost. They have a fur cap, having two flaps that are usually tied up close to the head, but are permitted to fall round the shoulders in bad weather. The fur dress, which was presented by Major Behm's son to Captain King, is one of those worn on ceremonious occasions by the Toions. It is shaped like the exterior garment we have just described, and consists of small triangular pieces of fur, chequered brown and white, and so ingeniously joined as to appear to be of the same skin. A border, of the breadth of six inches, curiously wrought with different coloured threads of leather, surrounds the bottom, and produces a rich effect. A fur edging of the sea-otter's skin is suspended to this. The sleeves are ornamented with the same materials. An edging of it also encircles the neck, and surrounds the opening at the breast. It is lined with a beautiful white skin. And the present was accompanied with a pair of gloves, a cap, and a pair of boots, executed with the utmost neatness, and composed of the same materials. The Russians who reside in Kamtscharka, wear the European dress; and the uniform worn by the troops here, is of a dark green turned up with red.



C H A P. XX.

An account of the Kurile Islands—Plan of future operations—The Resolution and Discovery, on quitting the Bay of Awaktsi, sail along the coast—A violent storm—Proceed for the Island of Japan—Description of a Japanese vessel—Prosecution of the voyage to China, in which three islands are discovered—Fruitlefs search for the Bashee Islands—The Grand Ladrone Island—Journals, and other papers relating to the history of the voyage, delivered up—The ships approach Malacca—Captain King dispatched to visit the Portuguese Governor—They anchor in the Tyra—Captain King, accompanied by his second Lieutenant and others, proceed to Canton—His reception at the English Factory—Suspicious character of the Chinese—Observations relative to the city of Canton—Captain King visits a Chinese of the first distinction—His return to Malacca—Great demand for the sea-otters-skins, and its effect on our seamen—Plan of a voyage for opening a fur trade on the western coast of North-America, and making further discoveries in the neighbourhood of China and Japan—Nautical and other structures.

THE people situated to the N. and S. of Kamtschatka, being but imperfectly known, we shall, before we proceed to the continuation of our voyage, give such information as we have been able to acquire respecting the Kurile Islands, the Koreki, and Tschutski. The Kuriles are a chain of islands, extending from the southern promontory of Kamtschatka to Japan, in a S. W. direction. The inhabitants of the neighbourhood of Lopatka, who were called Kuriles, gave these islands the same name, as soon as they became acquainted with them. Spanberg makes their number amount to 22, exclusive of the very small ones. The northernmost island is called Shoemka, and lies about three leagues distant from the promontory of Lopatka, its inhabitants consisting of a mixture of natives and Kamtschadales. The next, named Paramoufir, is considerably larger than Shoemka, and is inhabited by the real natives, whose name they say, came from an island called Onecutan, a few leagues to the S. The Russians paid their first visit to these two islands in 1713, and added them to the dominions of the Empress. The others, as far as Oosheer inclusive, are now made tributary, if we may rely upon the information of the worthy pastor of Paratounca, their missionary; who pays them a visit once in three years, and mentions the islanders in the most respectable terms, extolling them for their hospitality and humanity; and that they excel their Kamtschadale neighbours as much in the gracefulness of their persons, as in their docility and understanding. Though the island of Oosheer is the farthest to the S. of any under the dominion of Russia, yet they are said to trade to Ooroop, which is the 18th in order; and is the only one that has a good harbour for vessels of burthen. Nadeegda lies to the S. of this, and is said to be inhabited by a race of men who are remarkably hairy, and who live in a state of perfect independence, like those of Ooroop. Nearly in the same direction lie a group of islands called Jeeso, by the Japanese; a name also given by them to the chain of islands between Kamtschatka and Japan. That called Matmai, the farthest to the S. belongs to the Japanese, and has a garrison and fortifications on the side towards the continent. The islands of Kunachir, and Zellany, to the N. E. of Matmai, and three others, called the Three Sisters, still farther to the N. E. are entirely independent. The inhabitants of Matmai barter with those of the islands last mentioned, as well as with those of the Kuriles to the northward. Many of the inhabitants of those islands that are under the dominion of Russia, are now converted to Christianity. And perhaps the time is not far distant, when an advantageous commerce will be carried on between Kamtschatka and this extensive chain of islands, which may afterwards produce a communication with Japan itself. The advantages that must infallibly accrue to the Russians by establishing a commerce with the Japanese are sufficiently obvious.

In the country of Koreki are two distinct nations, called the wandering and fixed Koriacs. Part of the Shmus of Kamtschatka is inhabited by the former, as well as the coast of the eastern ocean, from thence to the Anadir. The nation of the wandering Koriacs, extends westward towards the river Koyyma, and along the N. E. of the sea of Okotsk, as far as the river Penskina. The resemblance between the fixed Koriacs, and the Kamtschadales, is very striking: both countries de-

pend alike on fishing for subsistence. Their clothing and habitations are equally similar. The fixed Koriacs are under the district of Ingiga, and are tributary to Russia. The wandering Koriacs are employed wholly in breeding and pasturing deer, and are said to have immense numbers in their possession; it being common for a single chief to have a herd of 5,000. Upon the flesh of these animals they subsist, having an aversion to every kind of fish. They erect no Balagans; their only habitations being somewhat like the Kamtschadale jouts, except that, in winter, they are covered with raw deer-skins, and, in summer, with such as have been tanned. Their sledges are drawn only by deer, and those that are used in drawing them feed in the same pasture with the others. When they are wanted, the herdsmen makes use of a certain cry, which, being very familiar to them, they obey, and quit the herd immediately. The two nations of the Koriacs, and the Tschutski, make use of different dialects of the same language; but it has not the smallest affinity to that of the Kamtschadale. The Tschutski are a courageous, well made, warlike race of people; and are formidable neighbours to the Koriacs of both nations, who often experience their depredations. The country inhabited by the Tschutski, is bounded by the Anadir on the S. and extends to the Tschutskoi Nofs. Their attention, like that of the wandering Koriacs, is confined chiefly to their deer, with which their country abounds. The Russians have long endeavoured to bring them under their dominion; but, though they have lost a great number of men in different expeditions, they have not yet been able to accomplish this purpose. It is now time to return to the history of our voyage, and to make known the plan of our future operations.

In the instructions for the regulation of the present voyage, the Lords of the Admiralty had intrusted the Commanding Officer of the expedition with a discretionary power, in case of not succeeding in the discovery of a passage from the Pacific Ocean into the Atlantic, to make choice, in his return to England, of whatever route he should judge proper; the Commodore therefore desired, that the principal officers would deliver their sentiments, in writing, relative to the mode in which these instructions might most effectually be carried into execution. The result of their opinions, which, to his great satisfaction, he found unanimous, and perfectly agreeing with his own, was, that the condition of the ships, their sails, cordage, &c. rendered it hazardous and unsafe to make any attempt, as the winter was now approaching, to navigate the sea between Asia and Japan, which would otherwise have opened to us the most copious field for discovery; that it was therefore most prudent to steer to the eastward of that island, and in our way thither, to sail along the Kuriles, and examine particularly those islands that are situated nearest to the northern coast of Japan, which are said to be of considerable extent, and not subject to the Russians or Japanese. Should we have the good fortune to meet with some secure and commodious harbours in any of these islands, we supposed they might prove of considerable importance, as convenient places of shelter for subsequent navigators, who might be employed in exploring the seas, or as the means of producing a commercial intercourse among the adjacent dominions of the two above-mentioned empires. Our

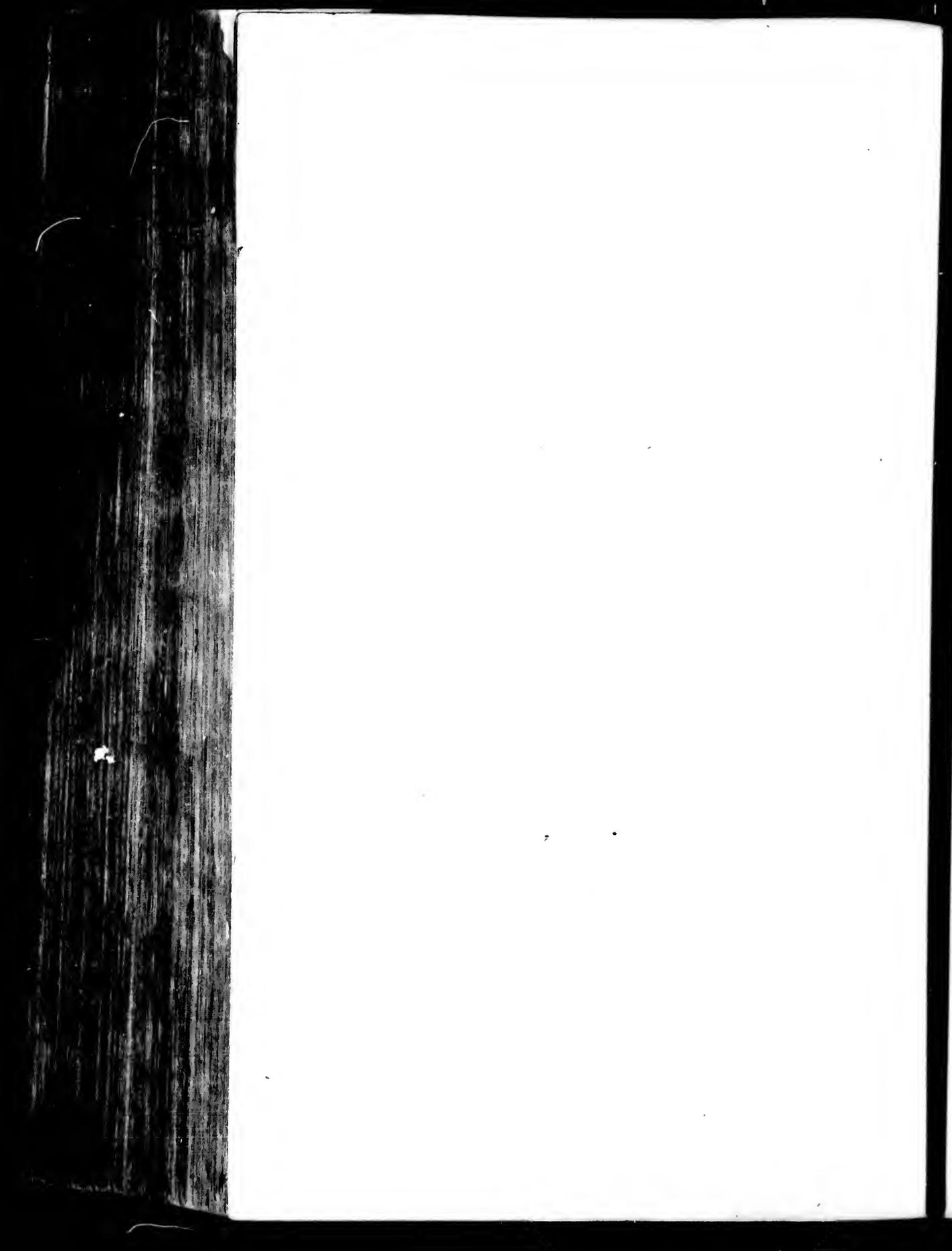
quitting the Bay of Axatla, Japanese vessel—Profession of the Bee Islands—The Grand Loo—The ships approach Micar—in King, accompanied by his spicuous character of the Christian distinction—His return to open a fur trade on China and Japan—Nautical

istence. Their clothing similar. The fixed Korias giga, and are tributary to priacs are employed wholly deer, and are said to have possession; it being common herd of 5,000. Upon the abtist, having an aversion to no Balagans; their only habi- the Kamtschadale joints, ex- covered with raw deer-skins, is have been tanned. Their er, and those that are used the same pasture with the ented, the herdsman makes being very familiar to them rd immediately. The two the Tschutski, make use of e language; but it has not of the Kamtschadale. The well made, warlike race of neighbours to the Korias experience their depreda- ured by the Tschutski, is the S. and extends to the ntion, like that of the wan- chiefly to their deer with s. The Russians have long nder their dominion; but t number of men in differ- ot yet been able to accom- y time to return to the bit- ake known the plan of our

regulation of the present admiralty had intrusted the expedition with a discre- succeeding in the dis- Pacific Ocean into the A- his return to England, of dge proper; the Comm- he principal officers would riting, relative to the mode might most effectually be e result of their opinions, ion, he found unanimous, his own, &c. rendered it cordage, &c. rendered it e any attempt, as the win- o navigate the sea between d other wise have opened to or discovery; that it was r to the eastward of that r, to sail along the Kuriles, le islands that are situat- e of Japan, which are said r, and not subject to the ld we have the good for- re and commodious har- we supposed they might ance, as convenient places garors, who might be em- or as the means of pro- urse among the adjacent mentioned empires. Our next

A View of the celebrated PAGOD of the MONKIES, in JAPAN.





next object was to take a survey of the Japanese Isles; after which we designed to make the coast of China, as far to the N. as might be in our power, and then to proceed to Macao. This plan being adopted, Captain King received orders, in case the two ships should separate, to repair, without delay, to Macao.

On Saturday, the 9th of October, at six o'clock, P. M. having cleared the entrance of the Bay of Awatka, we made sail to the S. E. At midnight we had a dead calm, which continued till noon of the following day. A breeze springing up from the W. about three o'clock, P. M. we steered to the S. along the coast. A head-land now opened with Cape Gavareca, in the direction of S. by W. situated nearly 20 miles beyond it. On Monday, the 11th, at noon, we observed in lat. 52 deg. 4 min. long. 158 deg. 31 min. Cape Gavareca bearing N. by W. one quarter W. and the southern extremity S. W. half W. We were now at the distance of 9 or 10 miles from the nearest part of the coast, and perceived the whole inland country covered with snow. A point of land towards the S. formed the northern side of a deep bay, distinguished by the name of Achachnikof, to the southward of which, the land did not exhibit such a rugged and barren aspect, as was observable in that part of the country which we had before passed. On Tuesday, the 12th, at six o'clock P. M. we discerned, from the mast-head, Cape Lopatka, which is the most southern extreme of Kamtschatka. This, by accurate observations, we found to be in lat. 51 deg. and in the long. of 156 deg. 45 min. We perceived, to the S. W. of it, a very lofty mountain, whose summit was lost in the clouds. At the same instant, the first of the Kurile islands, named Shoofmka, made its appearance, in the direction of W. half S. On Wednesday, the 13th at day-break, we descried the second of the Kurile islands, named Paramoufir, by the Russians, extending from W. half S. to N. W. by W. This land was exceedingly high, and almost covered with snow. The island is the largest of the Kuriles; and its southern extremity, lands, according to our computation, in lat. 49 deg. 58 min. the northern extremity we place in lat. 50 deg. 46 min. long. 10 deg. W. of Cape Lopatka. During the two following days, the wind, blowing fresh from the W. obliged us to steer to the southward, and consequently prevented us from seeing any more of the Kuriles. On Saturday, the 16th, our lat. was 45 deg. 27 min. our long. deduced from many lunar observations taken the three preceding days, was 155 deg. 30 min. and the variation 4 deg. 30 min. E. In this situation, we were almost encompassed by the real or pretended discoveries of prior navigators; not one of which we were fortunate enough to meet with in our course. The wind having veered in the afternoon to the northward, we hauled round to the W. In the course of this day, we observed several albatrosses, fulmars, and numerous flocks of gulls: we also saw a number of fish, called grampusses by our sailors; but we were rather inclined to judge, from the appearance of those which passed close by our vessels, that they were the Kasatka, or sword-fish. Sunday, the 17th, we observed in lat. 45 deg. 7 min. long. 154 deg. On the 19th, at two o'clock A. M. we hauled our wind, and stood to the southward till five, at which time a violent storm reduced us to our courses. Though from the unfavorable state of the weather, there was but little probability of our making the land, our attention was still anxiously directed to this object; and on the appearance of day-light, we ventured to steer W. by S. We proceeded on the same course till 10 o'clock, when the wind suddenly veered round to the S. W. attended with fair weather. Scarce had we availed ourselves of this, by letting out our reefs, and setting the top-sails, when it began to blow with such vehemence, that we were under the necessity of close reefing again; and, about noon, the wind shifting more to the W. we were prevented from continuing any longer on this tack: we therefore put about, and stood towards the S. We were now in lat. 44 deg. 12 min. long. 150 deg. 40 min. so that, after all our exertions, we had the mortification of finding ourselves, according to the Russian charts, upon the same meridian with Nadeegf-

da, which they represent as the most southerly of all the Kurile islands. Though the violent and adverse winds that we had met with for six days past, had deprived us of an opportunity of getting in with these islands, yet the course on which we had been obliged to proceed, did not prove altogether destitute of geographical advantages: for the group of islands, comprehending Zellany, Kunathir, and the Three Sisters, which, in the maps of M. D'Anville, are laid down in the track we had just crossed, are, by this means, demonstrably removed from that position; and thus an additional proof is obtained of their being situated to the W. where Captain Spanberg has placed them, between the longitudes of 142 and 147 deg. But this space being occupied, in the French charts, by Staten Island, and part of the supposed land of Jesso, the opinion of Muller becomes highly probable, that they are all the same lands; and, as we have no reason to call in question the accuracy of Spanberg, we have, in our general chart, reinstated Kunathir, Zelany, and the Three Sisters, in their proper situation, and have totally omitted the rest. When we consider the manner in which the Russians have multiplied the islands of the northern Archipelago, not only from the want of accuracy in ascertaining their real position, but likewise from the desire, natural to mankind, of propagating new discoveries, we shall not be surprized, that the same causes should produce similar effects. It is thus that the lands of Jesso, which appear, as well from the earliest traditions among the Russians, as from the accounts of the Japanese, to be no other than the Kurile Islands, have been imagined to be distinct from the latter. De Gama's land is next on record; and this was originally represented as being nearly the same in situation with those we have just mentioned; but it was afterwards removed, in order to make room for Staten's Island, and the company's land, and as Jesso, and the most southerly of the Kuriles, had likewise possession of this space, that nothing might be lost, the former had a place provided for it westward, and the latter towards the E. As, according to the Russian charts, the isles of Kunathir and Zellany, were still to the S. we entertained some hopes of being able to make them, and, with this view, kept the head of the Resolution towards the W. as much as the wind would permit. On Wednesday, the 20th, at noon, we observed in lat. 43 deg. 47 min. long. 150 deg. 30 min. We were then standing to the W. by S. with a gentle breeze from the S. E. but about three o'clock P. M. the wind, shifting to the N. W. point, began to blow with such violence, that we were brought under our mizen stay-sail, and fore-sail. For the following 24 hours we had heavy rain, and vehement squalls; and as the wind continued to blow from the N. W. our attempts to make the land were rendered abortive; and we were at length obliged to relinquish all further thoughts of discovery to the northward of Japan. To this disappointment we submitted with the greater reluctance, as our curiosity had been considerably excited by the accounts that are given of the natives of these islands. On the 21st, in the afternoon, an accident befel our ship, the Resolution; for the leach-rope of her fore-top-sail gave way, and split the sail. This having frequently happened during the life of Captain Cook, he had, on such occasions, ordered the foot and leach-ropes of the top-sails to be taken out, and larger ones to be fixed in their room; and these likewise proving incapable of supporting the strain that was on them, gave him good reason to observe to us, that the just proportion of strength between the sail and those ropes, is extremely miscalculated in our service. On the 22d, in the morning, we let out the reefs of our top-sails, and carried more sail. At noon, we found ourselves to be in lat. 40 deg. 58 min. long. 148 deg. 17 min. variation of the needle 3 deg. E. This day some birds afforded us clear indications that we were not at any considerable distance from land: with this hope we steered to the W. N. W. in which direction were situated, at the distance of about 50 leagues, the southernmost islands, seen by Captain Spanberg, and said to be inhabited by hairy men. At eight o'clock, the following morning, a fresh breeze springing

Springing up, with which we continued our course till the evening, when we had violent squally gales, accompanied with rain; and as we had, in the course of this day, passed some patches of green grass, and observed a number of small land birds, a flag, and many flocks of gulls, we did not think it consistent with prudence, having all these signs of the vicinity of land, to stand on for the whole night: about midnight therefore we tacked, and for the space of a few hours steered S. E.

Sunday, the 24th, we again bore away to the W. N. W. and carried a press of sail till seven o'clock, P. M. when the wind veered round to the N. and blew a fresh gale. At this time our lat. was 40 deg. 57 min. long. 145 deg. 20 min. This second disappointment in our attempts to get to the N. W. the tempestuous weather with which we had been harrassed, and the small probability, at this season of the year, of its becoming more favourable to our designs, were the motives that now induced Captain Gore to abandon finally all further search for the islands situate to the northward of Japan, and to direct our course to the W. S. W. for the northern part of that island. On the 25th, at noon, we were in lat. 40 deg. 18 min. and in long. 144 deg. Flights of wild ducks were this day observed by us; a pigeon lighted upon our rigging; and many small birds, resembling linnets, flew about the ships, with a degree of vigour, that gave us reason to imagine they had not been long on the wing. We also passed a piece either of bamboo or sugar-cane, and several patches of long grass. These indications of our being at no great distance from land, determined us to try for soundings; but we could not reach the bottom with 90 fathoms of line. On the approach of evening, the wind gradually veered round to the S. with which we continued our course to the W. S. W. On Tuesday, the 26th, at day-break, we had the satisfaction of perceiving high-land towards the W. which proved to be Japan. At eight o'clock, it was at the distance of ten or twelve miles, and extended from S. by W. to N. W. A low flat cape, which apparently constituted the southern part of the entrance of a bay, bore N. W. three quarters W. Near the S. extremity, a hill of a conic figure appeared, bearing S. by W. three quarters W. To the N. of this hill, there seemed to be an inlet of very considerable depth, the northern side of whose entrance is formed by a low point of land; and as well as we were enabled to judge by the assistance of our glasses, has a small island near it towards the S. Having stood on till nine o'clock, we had, by that time, approached within five or six miles of the land, which bore W. three quarters S. We now tacked, and stood off; but as the wind failed us, we had proceeded, at noon, to no greater distance than 3 leagues from the shore. This part of the coast extended from N. W. by N. to S. half E. and was principally bold and cliffy. The low cape above-mentioned, was about six leagues distant, bearing N. W. by W. and the northern point of the inlet was in the direction of S. three quarters W. Our lat. by observation, was 40 deg. 5 min. and our long. 142 deg. 28 min. The most northerly land in view, was supposed by us to be the northern extreme of Japan. It is somewhat lower than the other parts; and from the range of the elevated lands that were discerned over it from the main-head, the coast manifestly appeared to trend to the westward. The northern point of the inlet was imagined by us to be Cape Nambu; and we conjectured, that the town, which Jansen calls Nabo, stood in a break of the high land, towards which the inlet apparently directed itself. The neighbouring country is of a moderate elevation, and has a double range of mountains. It is well furnished with wood, and exhibits a variety of pleasing hills and dales. We perceived the smoke arising from several villages or towns, and saw many houses in delightful and cultivated situations, at a small distance from the shore. While the calm continued, that we might lose no time, we put our sloop's lines overboard, in ten fathoms water, but had no success. This being the only diversion which our present circumstances would permit us to enjoy, we very sensibly felt our disappointment;

and looked back with regret to the cod-banks of the dismal regions we had lately quitted, which had furnished us with so many salutary meals, and by the amusement they had afforded, given a variety to the tedious recurrence of astronomical observations, and the wearisome succession of calms and gales. At two o'clock, P. M. the wind blew fresh from the S. and, by four, had reduced us to close reefed top-sails, and obliged us to stand off to the south-eastward; in consequence of which course, and the gloominess of the weather, we soon lost sight of land. We kept on during the whole night, and till eight o'clock the following morning, when the wind shifting to the N. and becoming moderate, we made sail, and steered a W. S. W. course, towards the land, which, however, we did not make before three in the afternoon; at which time it was seen to extend from N. W. half W. to W. The most northerly extremity was a continuation of the elevated land, the southermost we had observed the preceding day. The land to the westward, we conjectured to be the High Table Hill of Jansen. The coast, between the two extremes, was low, and could scarcely be perceived, except from the main-head. We proceeded towards the coast till eight in the evening, when our distance from it was about 5 leagues, and having shortened sail for the night, we steered in a southerly direction, sounding every four hours; but our depth of water was so great, that we did not find ground with 160 fathoms of line.

On Thursday, the 28th, at six o'clock A. M. we again saw land, 12 leagues to the southward of that we had seen the day before, and extended from W. by N. to W. S. W. At ten o'clock we saw more land in the same direction. At noon, the northern extremity of the land in view bore N. W. by N. and a peaked hill, over a steep head-land, was 15 or 16 miles distant, bearing W. by N. By observation, our lat. was 38 deg. 16 min. and our long. 142 deg. 9 min. During the remainder of the day, we continued our course to the S. W. and, at midnight, found our depth of water to be 70 fathoms, over a bottom of fine brown sand. We therefore hauled up towards the E. till the next morning, when we again had sight of land, eleven leagues to the S. of that we had seen the preceding day. The ground was low towards the sea, but gradually swelled into hills of a moderate elevation. At nine o'clock, the sky being overcast, and the wind veering to the S. we tacked and stood off to the E. Not long after, we observed a vessel, close in with the land, standing to the N. along the shore; and we also saw another in the offing, coming down on us before the wind. Objects belonging to a country so celebrated, and yet so imperfectly known, excited a general eagerness of curiosity; in consequence of which, every person on board came instantaneously upon deck to gaze at them. As the vessel to windward approached us, she hauled off to a greater distance from the shore; upon which being apprehensive of alarming those who were on board of her by the appearance of a pursuit, we brought to, and she sailed ahead of us. We might have spoken to them; but Captain Gore perceiving, by their manœuvres, that they were highly terrified, was unwilling to increase their apprehensions; and, imagining that we should have many better opportunities of a communication with the Japanese, suffered them to retire without interruption. According to the most probable conjectures we were enabled to form, the vessel was of the burthen of 40 tons; and there seemed to be six men on board her. She had only one mast, whereon was hoisted a quadrangular sail, extended aloft by a yard, the braces of which worked forwards. Three pieces of black cloth came half way down the sail, at an equal distance from each other. The vessel was lower in the middle than at each end; and from her figure we supposed, that she could not fail otherwise than large. At noon, the wind blew fresh, accompanied with much rain. By three o'clock it had increased in so great a degree, that we were reduced to our courses. The sea, at the same time, ran as high as any of our people ever remember to have seen it. About eight o'clock, in the evening,

er to the cod-banks of the
 utted, which had furnished
 ary, and by the amusement
 ariety to the tedious recur-
 sions, and the wearisome
 s. At two o'clock, P. M.
 e S. and, by four, had re-
 p-fails, and obliged us to
 ward; in consequence of
 ineficacy of the weather, we
 kept on during the whole
 k the following morning,
 the N. and becoming more
 eered a W. S. W. course,
 owever, we did not make
 ; at which time it was seen
 W. to W. The most
 continuation of the elevated
 ad observed the preceding
 ward, we conjectured to be
 asen. The coast, between
 and could scarcely be per-
 ceived. We proceeded
 in the evening, when our
 leagues, and having there-
 steered in a southerly di-
 rection for several hours; but our depth
 did not find ground with

fix o'clock A. M. we again
 southward of that we had
 tended from W. by N. to
 we saw more land in the
 northern extremity of
 by N. and a peaked hill,
 15 or 16 miles distant,
 ation, our lat. was 38 deg.
 deg. 9 min. During the
 continued our course to the
 and our depth of water to
 of fine brown sand. We
 the E. till the next morn-
 ing of land, eleven leagues
 the preceding day. The
 sea, but gradually swelled
 vation. At nine o'clock,
 the wind veering to the S.
 e E. Not long after, we
 h the land, standing to the
 also saw another in the
 before the wind. Objects
 elevated, and yet so imper-
 ceivable eagerness of curiosity;
 every person on board came
 to gaze at them. As the
 ed us, she hauled off to
 e; upon which being ap-
 who were on board of her
 , we brought to, and she
 ht have spoken to them;
 by their manœuvres, that
 as unwilling to increase
 magining that we should
 ies of a communication
 them to retire without in-
 most probable conjectures
 vessel was of the burthen
 to be six men on board
 whereon was hoisted a
 lost by a yard, the braces
 Three pieces of black
 fail, at an equal distance
 was lower in the middle
 her figure we supposed,
 e than large. At noon,
 died with much rain. By
 a fo great a degree, that
 s. The sea, at the same
 ur people ever remember
 o'clock, in the evening,
 the

the gale, without the smallest diminution of violence,
 shifted to the W. and by producing a sudden swell, in
 a direction contrary to that which had before prevailed,
 caused our ships to labour and strain exceedingly.
 During the storm, we had several of our sails split.
 They had, indeed, been bent for so long a time, and
 were worn so thin, that this accident had happened
 lately in both vessels almost daily; particularly when
 the sails were stiff, and heavy with rain, in which case
 they became less capable of bearing the shocks of the
 boisterous and variable winds we experienced occasion-
 ally. On Saturday, the 30th at noon, we observed in
 lat. 36 deg. 41 min. long. 142 deg. 6 min. In the af-
 ternoon, the wind shifting to the N. E. we stood to the
 S. at the distance of 18 leagues from the shore. On
 the 31st, at two o'clock A. M. the wind veered round to
 the W. and blew in violent squalls, accompanied with
 lightning and rain.

Monday, November the 1st, the wind shifted to the
 S. E. and was attended with fair weather; in conse-
 quence of which, we obtained, with four different
 quadrants, 42 sets of distances of the moon, from the
 sun and stars, each set comprehending six observations.
 These nearly coinciding with each other, we deter-
 mined, at noon, by observation, our lat. to be 35 deg.
 17 min. and our long. with great accuracy, to be 141
 deg. 32 min. At two o'clock, we again made land
 towards the W. distant 13 leagues. A hummock to the
 northward, which had an insular appearance, bore
 N. N. W. half W. We steered for the land till be-
 tween five and six, when we hauled our wind to the S.
 At this time we decried to the westward a mountain of
 extraordinary height, with a round summit, rising far in-
 land. In its neighbourhood the sea is of a moderate
 elevation; but, to the S. of the hummock island, there
 appeared at a considerable distance up the country, a
 ridge of hills, extending towards the mountain, and
 which might perhaps join it. As the weather, in the
 morning of the 2d, had a very threatening appear-
 ance, and the wind was at S. S. E. we thought it ad-
 visable to quit the neighbourhood of the shore, and
 stand off towards the E. that the ships might not be
 entangled with the land. We were not deceived in
 our prognostications; for not long afterwards, a heavy
 gale began to blow, which continued till the next day,
 and was attended with rainy and hazy weather. On
 Wednesday the 3d, in the morning, we found ourselves
 by our reckoning, upwards of 50 leagues from the coast;
 which circumstance, united to the consideration of the
 very uncommon effect of currents we had already ex-
 perienced, the advanced period of the year, the vari-
 able and uncertain state of the weather, and the small
 prospect we had of any alteration for the better, in-
 duced Captain Gore to form the resolution of leaving
 Japan, and prosecuting our voyage to China; to which
 facts may be added, that the coast of Japan, accord-
 ing to Kämpfer's description of it, is the most danger-
 ous in all the known world; that it would have been
 exceedingly hazardous, in case of distress, to have run
 into any of the harbours of that country; where, if
 we may credit the most authentic writers, the aversion of
 the natives to a communication with strangers, has
 prompted them to the commission of the most flagrant
 acts of barbarity; that our vessels were in a leaky con-
 dition; that the rigging was so rotten as to require con-
 stant repair; and that the sails were almost entirely
 worn out, and incapable of withstanding the vehemence
 of a gale of wind. As the violent currents, which set
 along the eastern coast of Japan, may perhaps be at-
 tended with dangerous consequences to those naviga-
 tors, who are not acquainted with their extreme rapidity,
 we will here subjoin a summary account of their direc-
 tion and force, as remarked by us from the 1st to the
 8th of November. On the 1st, at the time when we were
 about 18 leagues to the E. of White Point, the cur-
 rent set at the rate of 3 miles in an hour, to the N. E. and
 by N. On the 2d, as we made a nearer approach to the
 shore, we observed, that it continued in a similar direc-
 tion, but was augmented in its rapidity to 5 miles an hour.
 As we receded from the coast, it again became more

moderate, and inclined towards the E. On the 3d, at
 the distance of 65 leagues from the shore, it set, at
 the rate of 3 miles an hour, to the E. N. E. On the
 two following days, it turned to the southward, and, at
 120 leagues from the coast, its direction was S. E. and
 its rate did not exceed one mile and a half an hour.
 It again, on the 6th, and 7th, shifted to the N. E. and
 its force diminished gradually till the 8th, at which time
 we could not perceive any current.

During the 4th and 5th of November, we proceeded
 to the south-eastward, with very unsettled weather,
 having much lightening and rain. On Saturday, the
 6th, we changed our course to the S. S. W. but about
 eight o'clock, in the evening, we were obliged to stand
 towards the S. E. On the 9th at noon, we observed in
 lat. 31 deg. 46 min. long. 146 deg. 20 min. Friday,
 the 12th, a most violent gale arose, which reduced us to
 the mizen-stay-sail and fore-sail. At noon, we were in
 lat. 27 deg. 36 min. and in long. 144 deg. 25 min. On
 the 13th, we were nearly in the same situation attrib-
 uted to the island of St. Juan, yet we saw not the least
 appearance of land. At six o'clock, P. M. we steered
 to W. S. W. Captain Gore thinking it useless to stand
 any longer to the S. S. W. as we were nearly in the same
 meridian with the Ladrones, or Mariana Islands, and
 at no very considerable distance from the track of the
 Manilla galleons. On Monday, the 15th, we saw three
 islands, and bore away for the S. point of the largest,
 upon which we observed a high barren hill, flatish at
 the top, and when seen from the W. S. W. presents an
 evident volcanic crater. The earth, rock, or sand, for
 it was not easy to distinguish of which its surface is
 composed, exhibited various colours, and a considerable
 part we conjectured to be sulphur, both from its ap-
 pearance to the eye, and the strong sulphureous smell
 perceived by us in our approach to the point. The
 Resolution having passed nearer the land, several of our
 officers thought they discerned streams proceeding from
 the top of the hill. These circumstances induced the
 Commodore to bestow on this discovery, the name of
 Sulphur Island. On Friday, the 26th, at six o'clock
 A. M. the wind having considerably abated, we set our
 top-sails, let out the reefs, and bore away to the west-
 ward. At noon, we observed in lat. 21 deg. 12 min.
 long. 120 deg. 25 min. In the course of this day, we
 saw many tropic birds, and a flock of ducks; also por-
 poises and dolphins; and continued to pass many pu-
 nce stones. We spent the night on our tacks; and
 on the 27th, at six o'clock A. M. we again made fail to
 the W. in search of the Balsee Isles. On the 28th, at
 four o'clock, A. M. we had sight of the island of Prata.
 At noon, our lat. was 20 deg. 39 min. long. 116 deg.
 45 min. The extent of the Prata shoal is consid-
 erable; for it is about 6 leagues from N. to S. and extends
 4 leagues to the E. of the island; its limits to the
 westward, we had not an opportunity of ascertaining.
 We carried a press of sail during the remainder of
 the day, and kept the wind, which now blew from
 the N. E. by N. in order to secure our passage to
 Macao.

On Monday, the 29th, in the morning, we eyed
 some Chinese fishing-boats, the crews of which passed
 us with marks of great indifference. At noon, our lat. by
 observation, was 22 deg. 1 min. and, since the preceding
 noon, we had run 110 miles upon a N. W. course. On
 the 30th, in the morning, we ran along the Lema Isles,
 which, like the other islands situated on this coast, are
 destitute of wood, and, as far as we had an opportunity
 of observing, devoid of cultivation. We now fired a
 gun, and displayed our colours, as a signal for a pilot.
 On the repetition of the signal, there was an excellent
 race between four Chinese boats; and Captain Gore
 engaged with the person who arrived first, to conduct
 the ship to the Typa, for the sum of 30 dollars, sending
 word, at the same time to Captain King, that as he
 could easily follow with the Discovery, that expence
 might be saved to him. In a short time afterwards a
 second pilot got on board, and immediately laying hold
 of the wheel, began to order the sails to be trimmed.
 This gave rise to a violent altercation, which was at
 length

length compromised, by agreeing to divide the money between them. In obedience to the instructions from the Lords of the Admiralty, it now became necessary to demand of the officers and men, belonging to both ships, their journals, and what other papers they might have in their possession, relative to the history of the voyage. At the same time Captain King gave the Discovery's people to understand, that whatever papers they wished should not be sent to the Lords of the Admiralty, he would seal up in their presence, and preserve in his custody till the intentions of their Lordships, respecting the publication of the history of the voyage, were accomplished, after which, he said they should be faithfully restored to them. The Captain observes upon this occasion, that it is but doing justice to his company to declare, that, as to the crew, they were the best disposed, and the most obedient men he ever knew, though the greatest part of them were very young, and had never served before in a ship of war. The same proposals were made to the people of the Resolution, and instantly complied with.

We continued working to windward, by the direction of our pilot till about six o'clock P. M. when we let go our anchors, he being of opinion, that the tide was now setting against us. During the afternoon, we stood on our tacks, between the Grand Ladrone and the island of Potoe, having passed to the east of the latter. At nine o'clock we again cast anchor in six fathoms water: the town of Macao being at the distance of 9 or 10 miles, in a N. W. direction; and the island of Potoe bearing S. half W. seven miles distant.

On the 2d of December, in the morning, one of the Chinese contractors, called Compradors, came on board, and sold us as much beef as weighed 200 weight, together with a considerable quantity of greens, oranges, and eggs. In the evening Captain Gore sent Mr. King on shore to visit the Portuguese Governor, and to request his assistance in procuring refreshments, which he thought might be done on more reasonable terms than the Comprador would undertake to furnish them; with whom we had agreed for a daily supply; for which, however, he insisted on our paying him before-hand. Upon Mr. King's arrival at the citadel, the Fort-Major informed him that the governor was sick, and not able to see company. Having acquainted the Major with his desire of proceeding immediately to Canton, the former told him, that they could not permit to provide a boat, till permission had been obtained from the Hoppo, or officer of the customs; and that it was necessary to apply, for this purpose, to the Chinese government at Canton. When the Captain was returning, the Portuguese officer asked him, if he did not mean to visit the English gentlemen at Macao? This question gave him inexpressible pleasure. He proceeded immediately to the house of one of his countrymen; from whom he received information of the French war, and of the continuance of the American war; and that five sail of English ships were now at Wampou, near Canton, in China. The intelligence we had gained concerning the state of affairs in Europe, rendered us the more anxious to accelerate our departure as much as we possibly could. The first thing that claimed the attention of the Commodore, was to provide as well as he could for the general safety of the people under his command, on their return home. The news of a French war, without letting us know the order issued by the King of France in our favour, give us much concern. Our ships were ill fitted for war; the decks fore and aft, being finished flush, had no covering for men or officers; it was therefore thought necessary to raise a kind of parapet, musquet-proof, on both decks; and likewise to strengthen the cabins as much as possible in case of action. On Thursday, the 9th, we received an answer from the English supercargoes at Canton, in which they promised to exert their most strenuous endeavours in procuring the supplies of which we were in want, with all possible dispatch; and that a passport should be sent for one of our officers. Friday, the 10th, an English merchant, from one of our East-Indian settlements, made application to Captain Gore for the assist-

ance of a few of his people, to navigate as far as Canton a vessel which he had purchased at Macao. The Commodore considering this as a good opportunity for Captain King to repair to that city, gave orders, that he should take with him his second lieutenant, the lieutenant of the marines, and 10 sailors. Accordingly, they quitted the harbour of Macao, on Saturday, the 11th; and as they approached the Bocca Tygris, which is near 40 miles distant from Macao, the coast of China appeared to the eastward in white steep cliffs. Their progress being retarded by contrary winds, and the lightness of the vessel, they did not arrive at Wampou, which is only nine leagues from the Bocca Tygris, till Saturday, the 18th. Wampou is a small town, off which the ships of various nations, who trade with the Chinese, are stationed, in order to receive their respective ladings. At Wampou, Captain King embarked in a Sampans, or Chinese boat, the most convenient for passengers that we ever saw; and in the evening we reached Canton, and disembarked at the English Factory, where the Captain was received with every mark of civility and respect. Messrs. Fitzhugh, Bevan, and Rapier, composed, at that time, the Select Committee; and the former of these gentlemen acted as president. They immediately gave the Captain an inventory of those stores with which the East-India ships were able to supply us, and he had the pleasure to find, that they were ready to be shipped, and that the provisions we might have occasion for might be had at a day's notice. Being desirous of making our stay here as short as possible, the Captain requested, that the gentlemen would endeavour to procure junks for us the next day; but we were soon convinced by them, that patience is an indispensable virtue in China. After the Captain had waited several days for the issue of his negotiation with the Chinese, and was considering what steps he should take, the commander of a country ship presented him with a letter from Captain Gore, whereby he was informed of that Commander being engaged to bring our party from Canton, and to deliver our supplies, at his own hazard, in the Tyra. All difficulties being thus removed, Captain King had leisure to bestow some attention on the purchase of our stores and provisions, which he completed on Sunday, the 26th, and, on the following day, the whole stock was conveyed on board. As Canton was likely to be the most advantageous market for furs, the Commodore had desired Captain King to take with him about 20 skins of sea-otters; most of which had been the property of our deceased Commanders; and to dispose of them at the best price he could obtain. The English supercargoes being informed of these circumstances, they directed him to a member of the Hong (a society of the principal merchants of the city) who being fully apprised of the nature of the business, seemed to be sensible of the delicacy of the Captain's situation, and therefore assured him, that, in an affair of this kind, he should consider himself as a mere agent, without seeking any profit for himself. The skins being laid before this merchant, he examined them over and over again with particular attention; and at last informed Captain King, that he could not think of offering more than 300 dollars for them. As the Captain knew he had not offered one half of their value, he, therefore, in his turn, demanded 1000 dollars; the Chinese merchant then advanced to five, and, at length to 700 dollars; upon which the Captain lowered his demands to 900. Here each of them declaring that he would not recede, they parted; but the Chinese speedily returned, and proposed finally, that they should divide the difference, which the Captain agreed to, and received 800 dollars. The subsequent remarks, relative to Canton, were collected by Captain King, from the intelligence which he received from several English gentlemen; who had resided a long time near that city.

Canton, containing the old and new town, with the suburbs, is about 10 miles in circumference. The number of its inhabitants, as near as can be computed, may be from 100 to 150,000. Exclusive of whom there are 40,000 who reside constantly in Borges, called Sampans,

to navigate as far as Can-
purchased at Macao. The
as a good opportunity for
that city, gave orders, that
second lieutenant, the licen-
se sailors. Accordingly, they
Macao, on Saturday, the 11th;
Bocca Tygris, which is near
to the coast of China ap-
white steep cliffs. Their
errary winds, and the lightness
given at Wampu, which is only
ca Tygris, till Saturday, the
town, off which the ships of
e with the Chinese, are sta-
their respective ladings. At
embarked in a Sampan, or
venient for passengers that
vening we reached Canton,
lish Factory, where the Cap-
ry mark of civility and re-
Bevan, and Ripier, compo-
Committee; and the for-
ed as president. They pre-
an inventory of those stores
ships were able to supply
o find, that they were ready
e provisions we might have
a day's notice. Being desir-
ere as short as possible, the
e gentlemen would endea-
the next day; but we were
patience is an indispens-
ter the Captain had waited
f his negotiation with the
g what steps he should take,
y ship presented him with
whereby he was informed
engaged to bring our party
r our supplies, at his own
difficulties being thus re-
easure to bestow some atten-
stores and provisions, which
e 26th, and, on the follow-
s conveyed on board. At
most advantageous market
ad desired Captain King to
ins of sea-otters; most of
ry of our deceased Com-
them at the best price he
percargoes being informed
directed him to a member
principal merchants of the
sted of the nature of the
ble of the delicacy of the
efore assured him, that, in
ould consider himself as
ng any profit for himself.
his merchant, he examined
with particular attention;
n King, that he could not
300 dollars for them. As
e offered one half of their
n, demanded 1000 dollars;
advanced to five, and, at
which the Captain lowered
ch of them declaring that
ed; but the Chinese spee-
pecially, that they should di-
e Captain agreed to, and
ubsequent remarks, rela-
d by Captain King, from
sived from several English
d a long time near that

and new town, with the
circumference. The num-
as can be computed, may
clusive of whom there are
in Borges, called Sampa-
res,

res, or floating-houses upon the river: They are moored
in rows close to each other, with a narrow passage, at
intervals, for the boats to pass up and down the river.

The streets of this city are long, narrow, and destitute
of uniformity. They are well paved with large stones,
and, in general, kept extremely clean. The houses are
built of brick, and are only one story high. They have,
for the most part, two or three courts backwards, in
which are erected the warehouses for the reception of
merchandise; and, in the houses within the city, are
the apartments for the females. Some of the meaner
sort of people, though very few, have their habitations
composed of wood.

Those that belong to the European factors, are built
on a fine quay, having a regular facade of two stories
towards the river. They are constructed, with respect
to the inside, partly after the Chinese, and partly after
the European mode. Adjoining to them are a consi-
derable number of houses which belong to the Chinese;
and are let out by them to the commanders of vessels,
and to merchants, who make only an occasional stay.
As no European is permitted to take his wife with him
to Canton, the English supercargoes live together at
one common table, which is maintained by the Com-
pany, and each of them has also an apartment appro-
priated to himself, consisting of three or four rooms.
The period of their residence rarely exceeds eight
months in a year; and as during that time, they are
almost constantly employed in the service of the Com-
pany, they may submit, with the less uneasiness, to the
restrictions under which they live. They seldom make
any visits within the walls of Canton, except on public
occasions. Nothing contributed more to give Captain
King an unfavourable opinion of the Chinese, than his
finding that several of them who had resided in that
country for near 15 successive years, had never formed
any social connection or friendship. When the last ship
departs from Wampu, they are all under the necessity
of retiring to Macao; but they leave behind them all the
money they possess in specie, which, Mr. King was in-
formed, sometimes amounts to 100,000l. sterling, and
for which they have no other security than the seals of
the Viceroy, the Mandarines, and the merchants of the
Hong; a striking proof of the excellent police main-
tained in China.

During our continuance at Canton, Mr. King ac-
companied one of the English gentlemen on a visit to a
person of the first distinction in the place. They were re-
ceived in a long room or gallery, at the further end of
which a table was placed, with a large chair behind it,
and a row of chairs extending from it, on both sides,
down the room. The captain having been previously
instructed, that the point of politeness consisted in re-
maining unseated as long as possible, readily submitted
to this piece of etiquette; after which he and his friend
were treated with tea, and some fresh and preserved
fruits. Their entertainer was very corpulent, had a dull
heavy countenance, and displayed great gravity in his
 deportment. He had learned to speak a little broken
English and Portuguese. After his two guests had taken
their refreshment, he conducted them about his house
and garden; and when he had shewn them all the im-
provements he was making, they took their leave.

The Captain being desirous of avoiding the trouble
and delay that might attend an application for pass-
ports, as well as of saving the unnecessary expence of
hiring a sampan, which he was informed amounted at
least to 12 pounds sterling, had hitherto designed to go
along with the supplies to Macao, in the country mer-
chant's ship we mentioned before: but receiving an in-
vitation from two English gentlemen, who had found
means to procure passports for four, he accepted, to-
gether with Mr. Phillips, their offer of places in a Chinese
boat, and intrusted Mr. Lannyon with the superin-
tendance of the men and stores, which were to sail the
following day.

On Sunday, the 26th, in the evening, Captain King
took his leave of the supercargoes, after having returned
them thanks for their many favours; among which must
be mentioned a present of a considerable quantity of

No. 79.

tea, for the use of the companies of both ships, and a
copious collection of English periodical publications.
The latter proved a valuable acquisition to us, as they
not only served to beguile our impatience, in the pro-
secution of our tedious voyage homewards, but also en-
abled us to return not wholly unacquainted with what
had been transacting in our native country during our
absence. On the 27th, at one o'clock in the morning
ing, Messrs. King and Phillips, and, the two English
gentlemen, quitted Canton, and, about the same hour
of the succeeding day, arrived at Macao, having passed
down a channel situated to the west of that by which
we had come up.

In the absence of our party from Macao, a brisk traf-
fic had been carrying on with the Chinese for our sea-
otter-skins, the value of which had augmented every
day. One of our sailors disposed of his stock, alone,
for 800 dollars; and a few of the best skins, which were
clean, and had been carefully preserved, produced 120
dollars each. The total amount of the value, in goods
and cash, that was obtained for the furs of both our
vessels, we are confident was not less than 2,000l. ster-
ling; and it was the general opinion, that at least two-
thirds of the quantity we had originally procured from
the Americans, were by this time spoiled and worn out,
or had been bestowed as presents, and otherwise dis-
posed of in Kamtschatka. If, in addition to these facts,
we consider, that we at first collected the furs without
having just ideas of their real value; that most of them
had been worn by the savages from whom we purchased
them; that little regard was afterwards shewn to their
preservation; that they were frequently made use of as
bed-clothes, and likewise for other purposes, during
our cruise to the northward; and that, in all probabi-
lity, we never received the full value for them in China,
the benefits that might accrue from a voyage to that
part of the American coast where we obtained them,
underraken with commercial views, will certainly ap-
pear of sufficient importance to claim the public atten-
tion. So great was the rage with which our seamen
were possessed to return to Cook's River, and there
procure another cargo of skins, by which they might
be enabled to make their fortunes, that, at one time,
they were almost on the point of proceeding to a mu-
tiny. And Captain King acknowledges, that he could
not refrain from indulging himself in a project, which
was first suggested to him by the disappointment we
had met with in being compelled to leave the Jap-
anese Archipelago, as well as the northern coast of
China, unexplored; and he is of opinion, that this ob-
ject may still be happily attained, by means of our East-
India Company, not only with trifling expence, but even
with the prospect of very beneficial consequences. The
state of affairs at home, or perhaps greater difficulties
in the accomplishment of his plan than he had foreseen,
have hitherto prevented its being carried into execu-
tion; but, as the scheme seems to be well contrived,
the reader will not be displeas'd with our inserting it
here.

In the first place, Capt. King proposes, that the East-
India Company's China ships should, each, carry an ad-
ditional number of men, making 100 in the whole. Two
vessels, one of 200 tons, and the other of 150, might,
with proper notice, (as Mr. King was informed) be
purchased at Canton; and, as victualling is as cheap
there as in Europe, he has calculated that they might
be completely equipped for sea, with one year's provi-
sions and pay, for the sum of 6,000l. including the
purchase. The expence of the requisite articles for
barter is very inconsiderable.

Captain King particularly recommends that each of
the ships should have a forge, five tons of unwrought
iron, and a skilful smith, with an apprentice and jour-
neyman, who might occasionally make such tools, as
the Indians should appear to have the greatest inclina-
tion for possessing. For, though half a dozen of the
finest skins, obtained by us, were purchased with twelve
large green glass beads, yet it is very certain, that the
fancy of these people, for ornamental articles, is ex-
tremely capricious and variable; and that the only sure

8 A

commu-

commodity for their market is iron. To this might be added several bales of coarse woollen cloth, two or three barrels of glass and copper trinkets, and a few gross of large pointed case-knives. He then proposes, that two vessels, not only for the greater security of the voyage, but because single ships ought never, in his opinion, to be sent out for the purpose of discovery. For where risks are frequently to be run, and uncertain and dangerous experiments tried, it can by no means be expected that single ships should venture so far, as where some security is provided against an unfortunate accident. When the ships are prepared for sea, they will sail with the first S. W. monsoon, which usually sets in about the commencement of the month of April. They will steer a northward course, with this wind, along the Chinese coast, beginning to make a more accurate survey from the mouth of the Nankin river, or the river Kyana, in the 30th degree of latitude, which is supposed to be the remotest limit of this coast hitherto visited by European vessels. The extent of the great gulph called Whang Hay, or the Yellow Sea, being at present unknown, it may be left to the Commander's discretion, to proceed up it as far as he may think proper: he must be cautious, however, not to entangle himself in it too far, lest he should not have sufficient time left for the prosecution of the remainder of his voyage. The same discretion may be used, when he has reached the straits of Tessoï, with regard to the islands of Jesso, which, if the wind and weather should be favourable, he must not neglect to explore. Having arrived in the latitude of 51 deg. 40 min. where he will make the most southerly point of the isle of Sagaleen, beyond which we have a considerable knowledge of the sea of Okotsk, he will steer towards the S. probably about the beginning of June, and exert his endeavours to sail to the most southerly of the Kurile islands. If the accounts of the Russians may be depended on, Orooop, or Nadefchda, will furnish the ships with a commodious harbour, where they may recruit their wood and water, and provide themselves with such refreshments as the place may afford. Near the end of June the commander will direct his course to the Shumagins, whence he will proceed to Cook's River, purchasing, in his progress, as many skins as possible, without losing too much time, since he ought to sail again to the southward, and trace the coast with the utmost accuracy between the 56th and 50th degrees of latitude, the space where contrary winds drove us out of sight of land. We think it proper to observe here, that Captain King considers the purchase of skins, in this expedition, as a secondary concern, for defraying the expence; and, from our experience in the present voyage, there is no reason to doubt that 250 skins, each worth 100 dollars, may be obtained without loss of time; particularly as they will, in all probability, be met with along the coast to the S. of Cook's River.

The commander of this expedition, after having continued about three months on the American coast, will set out on his return to China in the former part of October, taking care, in his route, to avoid, as much as possible, the tracks of preceding navigators. All that remains to be added on this subject, is, that if the fur trade should become an established object of Indian commerce, many opportunities will occur of completing whatever may have been left unfinished, in the voyage of which the outlines are here delineated.

During our absence, a very ludicrous alteration took place in the dress of all our crew, in consequence of the barter which the Chinese had carried on with us for our sea-otter skins. On our arrival in the *Typa*, not only the sailors, but likewise the younger officers, were ex-

remely ragged in their apparel; for, as the voyage had now exceeded, almost by a year, the time it was at first supposed we should continue at sea, the far greater part of our original stock of European clothes had been long ago worn out, or repaired and patched up with skins, and the different manufactures we had met with in the course of the expedition. These were now mixed and coked out with the gayest silks and cottons that China could produce.

On the 30th, being Friday, Mr. Lanyon arrived with the stores and provisions, which, without delay, were stowed in due proportion on board both the ships. While in the *Typa*, Captain King was shown, in the garden of an English gentleman at Macao, the rock, under which, according to traditional accounts, Camoens, the celebrated Portuguese poet, was accustomed to sit and compose his *Lusiad*. It is an arch of considerable height, consisting of one solid stone, and forming the entrance of a grotto dug out of the elevated ground behind it. Large spreading trees overshadow the rock, which commands a beautiful and extensive prospect of the sea, and the islands dispersed about it. During our continuance in the *Typa*, we heard nothing with respect to the measurement of the ships; we were therefore reasonably conclude, that the point of straits contested, in Commodore Anson's time, by the Chinese, has, in consequence of his firmness and resolution, never since been insisted on. By the observations made while our vessels lay here, the harbour of Macao is situated in the lat. of 22 deg. 12 min. N. and the long. of 113 deg. 47 min. E. our anchoring place, in the *Typa*, in lat. 22 deg. 9 min. 20 sec. long. 113 deg. 48 min. 24 sec. E. It was high water in the *Typa*, on the full and change days, at a quarter after five o'clock, and in the harbour of Macao, at 50 minutes past five: the greatest rise was six feet one inch. We shall conclude these remarks, and this chapter, with the prices of labour, and a few articles of provisions in China.

PRICES OF LABOUR and PROVISIONS at CANTON.

	£.	S.	D.
A Coolee, or Porter	-	0	8
A Taylor	-	0	7
A Handicraftsman	-	0	1
A common Labourer from 3d. to 5d. per day	-	-	-
A Woman's labour considerably cheaper.	-	-	-
	£.	S.	D.
Butter	-	0	2 4
Beef	-	0	2 1/2 or 18 oz.
Calf	-	1	6 9
Ducks	-	0	5
Ditto, wild	-	0	1 0
Eggs	-	0	2 0
Frogs	-	0	0 6
Fowls, Capons, &c.	-	0	0 7
Geese	-	0	0 6
Ham	-	0	1 2
Hog, alive	-	0	0 4
Kid, ditto	-	0	0 4
Milk	-	0	0 1
Pork	-	0	0 7
Pig	-	0	0 5
Pheasants	-	0	0 5
Partridges	-	0	0 9
Pigeons	-	0	0 5
Rabbits	-	0	1 4
Sheep	-	3	6 8
Spices	-	0	16 8
Soy	-	0	1 1/2
Samfui ditto	-	0	0 2
Turtle	-	0	0 9

C H A P. XXI.

Two mariners belonging to the Resolution make off with the six-oared cutter—Defensible state of the two ships—They unmoor and leave the Tyta—Orders of the French Court relative to Captain Cook—Pass Pulo Sapatra, and anchor in the harbour of Condore—Transactions, and incidents during our stay—A mandarine visits the ships—Information received from Condore for the description of Pulo Condore, and other islands to the first and second Histories of Captain Cook's Voyages—Presents to the Mandarin, and the bishop of Adrian—Astronomical and nautical observations—Departure of the Resolution and Discovery from Pulo Condore—Enter the straits of Banca—Description of the country that borders thereon—Enter the straits of Sunda—Mr. Wilhamson sent on board a Dutch ship to procure intelligence—The two ships anchor at Cracatoa—That island described—Proceed to Prince's Island—Unhealthy effects of the climate of Java—A sudden storm—Steer for the Cape of Good Hope—Anchor in Simon's Bay—A visit to the governor—An account of False Bay, Simon's Bay, Noah's Ark, and Seal Island—Set sail for England; and stand to the west of the islands of Ascension and St. Helena—Desery the western coast of Ireland, and endeavour, in vain, to get into Port Galway—Steer to the north of Lewis's Island—Both ships anchor at Stromness—And on Wednesday, the 4th of October, arrive safe at the Nore, after an absence of 4 years, 2 months, and 22 days—Concluding Remarks.

A. D. 1780. **O**n Tuesday, the 11th of January, two sailors, John Cave quartermaster, and Robert Spencer belonging to the Resolution, went off with a six-oared cutter; and though the most diligent search was made, both this and the following morning, we could not gain any intelligence of them. It was imagined, that these seamen had been seduced by the hopes of acquiring a fortune, if they should return to the fur islands. On the 12th, at noon, we unmoored, and scaled the guns, which, on board the Discovery, amounted at this time to ten; so that her people by means of four additional ports, could fight seven on a side. In the Resolution likewise, the number of guns had been augmented from 12 to 16; and, in each of the ships, all other precautions were taken to give our inconsiderable force a respectable appearance. We considered it as our duty to furnish ourselves with these means of defence, though there was some reason to believe, that they had in a great measure been rendered superfluous by the generosity of our enemies; for we were informed, by the public prints, which Captain King had brought with him from Canton, of instructions having been found on board all the French ships of war, that had been taken in Europe, importing, that their Commanders, if they should happen to fall in with the Resolution and Discovery, were to suffer them to proceed unmolested on their voyage. It was also reported, that the American Congress had given similar orders to the vessels employed in their service. This intelligence being further confirmed by the private letters of some of the super-cargoes, Captain King deemed it incumbent on him, in return for the liberal exceptions which our enemies had made in our favour, to refrain from embracing any opportunities of capture, and to maintain the strictest neutrality during the whole of our voyage. Having got under sail about two o'clock, P. M. we passed the fort of Macao, and saluted the garrison with eleven four-pounders, which they answered with an equal number. We were under the necessity of warping out into the entrance of the Tyta, which we gained by eight o'clock in the evening of the 13th, and lay there till nine o'clock the following morning, when we stood, with a fresh easterly breeze, to the S. between Wungboo and Potoe. At four in the afternoon, the Ladronne was about two leagues distant in an eastern direction. On Saturday, the 15th, at noon, we observed in lat. 48 deg. 57 min. long. 114 deg. 13 min. On the 16th, we struck soundings over Maccliefeld Bank, and found the depth of water to be 50 fathoms, over a bottom consisting of white sand and shells. We computed this part of the bank to be situated in lat. 15 deg. 51 min. and in long. 114 deg. 20 min. Thursday, the 19th, at four o'clock P. M. we had in view Pulo Sapatra, hearing N. W. by W. and distant about four leagues. Having passed this island, we stood to the westward; and on the 20th made the little group of islands known by the name of Pulo Condore, at one of which we anchored, in six fathoms water. The harbour where we now moored, has its entrance from the N. W. and affords the best shelter during the N. E. monsoon. Its entrance bore W. N. W. quarter W. and N. by W. the opening at the upper end bore S. E. by E. three quarters E. and we were about 2 furlongs distant from the shore. On the

21st, early in the morning, parties were sent out to cut wood, the Commodore's principal motive for touching at this island being to supply the ships with that article. None of the natives having as yet made their appearance, notwithstanding two guns had been fired at different times, Captain Gore thought it advisable to land, and go in search of them. Accordingly, on Sunday, the 22nd, he desired Captain King to attend him. They proceeded in their boats along shore for the space of two miles, when perceiving a road that led into a wood, they landed. Here Captain King left the Commodore, and attended by a midshipman, and four armed sailors, pursued the path, which appeared to point directly across the island. They proceeded through a thick wood up a steep hill, to the distance of a mile, when after descending, they arrived at some huts. Captain King ordered the party to stay without, lest the sight of armed men should terrify the inhabitants, while he entered and reconnoitered alone. He found, in one of the huts, an elderly man, who was in a great fright, and preparing to make off with the most valuable effects. However a few signs, particularly that most significant one of holding out a handful of dollars, and then pointing to a herd of buffaloes, and the fowls that were running about the huts in great numbers, left him without any doubts as to the objects of their visit. He pointed towards a place where the town stood, and made them comprehend, that by going thither, all their wants would be supplied. On their first coming out of the wood, a herd of buffaloes, to the number of 20 at least, came running towards them, tossing up their heads, snuffing the air, and roaring in a hideous manner. They had followed them to the huts, and now stood drawn up in a body, at a little distance; and the old man made them understand, that it would be exceeding dangerous to move, till they were driven into the woods; but so enraged were the animals grown, at the sight of them, that this was not effected without a good deal of time and difficulty. The men not being able to accomplish it, they called to their assistance a few little boys, who soon drove them out of sight. Afterward they had an opportunity of observing, that in driving these animals, and securing them, which is done by putting a rope through a hole made in their nostrils, little boys were always employed, who could stroke and handle them with impunity at times, when the men durst not approach them. Having got rid of the buffaloes, they were conducted to the town, which consists of between 20 and 30 houses, built close together; besides 6 or 7 others that are scattered about the beach. The roof, the two ends, and the side fronting the country, are neatly constructed of reeds; the opposite side, facing the sea, is entirely open; but, by means of a kind of bamboo screens, they can exclude or let in as much of the sun and air as they please. They were conducted to the largest house, where the chief, or captain, as they called him, resided, but he was absent, or would not be seen; therefore no purchases could, as they said, be made. At two o'clock, in the afternoon, they returned to the ships; as did likewise several of our shooting parties from the woods, about the same time. At five o'clock, six men in a proa, rowed up to the ships, from the upper-end of the harbour; and one of them, who was a person of decent appearance, introduced himself to Captain Gore, with an

rel; for, as the voyage had near, the time it was at first at sea, the far greater part of the ocean clothes had been long and patched up with skins, these we had met with in the these were now mixed and and cottons that China
ay, Mr. Lannyon arrived ons, which, without delay, on board both the ships. n King was thrown, in the sman at Macao, the rock, trahditional accounts, Ca. quefe poet, was accustomed d. It is an arch of confi- one solid stone, and formo- dug out of the elevated preading trees overhadow a beautiful and extensive illands dispersed about, n the Tyta, we heard nothing ment of the ships; we were e, that the point fo thronp nson's time, by the Chinese, ruments and resolution, re- By the observations made e harbour of Macao it situa. 2 min. N. and the long. of choring place, in the Tyta, long, 113 deg. 48 min. 34 n the Tyta, on the full and after five o'clock; and in 50 minutes past five; the inch. We thall conclude er, with the prices of labour, ons in China.

PROVISIONS at CANTON.

	£.	S.	D.
-	0	0	8
-	0	0	0
-	0	0	1
d. to 5d. per day			
ably cheaper.			
	£.	S.	D.
-	0	2	4
-	0	0	2
-	0	1	6
-	0	0	5
-	0	1	0
-	0	0	2
-	0	0	6
-	0	0	7
-	0	0	6
-	0	1	2
-	0	0	4
-	0	0	4
-	0	0	1
-	0	0	7
-	0	0	5
-	0	0	5
-	0	0	9
-	0	1	4
-	3	6	8
-	0	16	8
-	0	0	1
-	0	0	2
-	0	0	9

C H A P.

ease and politeness which indicated that he had been accustomed to pass his time in other company than what Condore afforded. He brought with him a sort of certificate, written in the French language, of which the following is a translation.

"Peter George, Bishop of Adrian, Apostolic Vicar of Cochinchina, &c. The little Mandarin, who is the bearer hereof, is the real Envoy of the Court to Pulo Condore, to attend there for the reception of all European vessels, whose destination is to approach that place, &c. A Sai-Gon. 10 August, 1779."

He gave us to understand, that he was the Mandarin mentioned in it; and produced another paper, which was a letter sealed up, and addressed to the Captains of any European ships that may touch at Condore. From this letter, and the whole of Luco's conversation, the Mandarin, we had little doubt, that the vessel he expected was a French one. We found, at the same time, that he was desirous of not losing his errand, and was not unwilling to become our pilot. We could not discover from him the precise business which the ship he was waiting for designed to prosecute in Cochinchina. We shall only add, that he acquainted us, that the French vessels might perhaps have touched at Tirnoon, and from thence sail to Cochinchina; and as no intelligence had been received, he imagined that this was most likely to have been the case. Captain Gore afterwards enquired, what supplies could be procured from this island. Luco replied, he had two buffaloes belonging to him, which were at our service, and that considerable numbers of those animals might be purchased for four or five dollars each. We had purchased eight of these animals; and on the 23d, early in the morning, the launches of both ships were dispatched to the town to bring them away, but our people were much at a loss to bring them on board. After consulting with the Mandarin, it was determined, that they should be driven through the wood, and over the hill, down to the bay, where our two Captains had landed. This plan was accordingly executed; but the untractableness, and amazing strength of the animals rendered it a slow and difficult operation. The mode of conducting them was, by putting ropes through their nostrils, and round their horns; but when they were once enraged at the sight of our people, they became so furious, that they sometimes tore asunder the cartilage of the nostril, through which the ropes passed, and set themselves at liberty; at other times they broke the trees, to which it was found necessary to fasten them. On such occasions, all the endeavours of our men, for the recovery of them, would have been unsuccessful, without the aid of some little boys, whom the buffaloes would suffer to approach, and by whose puerile managements their rage was quickly appeased; and when brought down to the beach, it was by their assistance, in twisting ropes about their legs, in the manner they were directed, that our people were enabled to throw them down, and, by that means, to get them into the boats; and, a circumstance very singular, they had not been a whole day on board, before they were as tame as possible. Captain King kept a male and a female for a considerable time, which became great favourites with the seamen. Thinking a breed of these animals, some of which weighed, when dressed, 700 pounds, would be an acquisition of some value, he intended to have brought them with him to England; but that design was frustrated by an incurable hurt which one of them received at sea. Besides the buffaloes, of which there are several large herds in this island, we purchased from the natives some remarkably fine fat hogs, of the Chinese breed. We procured three or four of the wild sort; several of whose tracks were seen in the woods; which also abound with monkeys and squirrels, but so shy, that it was difficult to shoot them. Here we found the cabbage-tree, and other succulent greens, with which our people made very free without asking questions. Two wells of excellent water had been discovered, in consequence of which part of the companies of both ships had been employed in providing a competent supply of it. Our numerous subscribers will

be pleased to recollect, that in our history of Captain Cook's first and second voyages, we have given a concise, though comprehensive account of Pulo Condore, Celebes, Sumatra, Java, the Philippine, Ladrones, and, in short, all the principal islands in the Indian Sea; it therefore only now remains, during the remainder of our passage home, with a view of establishing the credit and reputation of this work, and of rendering it the most complete undertaking of the kind extant, to mention a few particulars that came under our own observation, and which may be reckoned as improvements since the labours of former compilers, or the expeditions of prior navigators.

Pulo Condore signifies the island of Calabashes, its name being derived from two Malay words; Pulo implying an island, and Condore, a Calabash, great quantities of which fruit are produced here. Among the vegetable improvements of this island, may be reckoned the fields of rice that we observed; also coconuts, pomegranates, oranges, shaddock, and various sorts of pompons. We continued at this harbour till the 28th, when the little Mandarin took leave of us; at which time the Commodore gave him, at his request, a letter of recommendation to the Commanders of any other vessels that might put in here. He also bestowed on him a handsome present, and gave him a letter for the bishop of Adrian, together with a telescope, which he desired might be presented to him as a compliment for the favours we had received, through his means, at Pulo Condore. The latitude of the harbour is 8 deg. 40 min. N. and its longitude, deduced from many lunar observations, 106 deg. 18 min. 46 sec. E. At full and change of the moon it was high water at 4 h. 15 m. apparent time; after which the water continued for 12 hours, without any perceptible alteration. The transition from ebbing to flowing was very quick, being in less than five minutes. The water rose and fell seven feet four inches perpendicular.

On Friday, the 28th, we unmoored, and cleared the harbour. On the 30th, at one o'clock, P. M. we had sight of Pulo Timooan, and at five, Pulo Puiffang was seen in the direction of S. by E. three quarters E. At nine o'clock, we had, from the effect of some current, out-run our reckoning, and found ourselves close upon Pulo Aor, in the lat. of 2 deg. 46 min. N. long. 104 deg. 37 min. E. in consequence of which we hauled the wind to the E. S. E. This course we prosecuted till midnight, and then steered S. S. E. for the Straits of Banca.

On Tuesday, the 1st of February, we observed in lat. 1 deg. 20 min. N. and our long. by a number of lunar observations, we found to be 105 deg. E. Towards sunset, we had a view of Pulo Panjang; at which time our lat. was 53 min. N. On the 2d, we passed the Straits of Sunda; and, at noon, we came in sight of the small islands known by the name of Dominis, lying off the eastern part of Lingen. At one o'clock, P. M. Pulo Taya made its appearance in the direction of S. W. by W. distant 7 leagues. On the 3d, at day-break, we had sight of the three islands; and, not long afterwards, saw Monopini Hill, in the island of Banca. Having got to the W. of the shoal, named Frederic Endric, we entered the Straits of Banca, and bore away towards the S. On the 4th, in the morning, we proceeded down the Straits with the tide; and, at noon, the tide beginning to make against us, we cast anchor, at the distance of about one league from what is denominated the Third Point, on the Sumatra shore; Monopini Hill bearing N. 54 deg. W. and our lat. being 2 deg. 22 min. S. long. 105 deg. 38 min. E. At three in the afternoon we weighed, and continued our course through the Straits with a gentle breeze. In passing these Straits, ships may make a nearer approach to the coast of Sumatra than to that of Banca. On Sunday, the 6th, in the morning, we passed to the W. of Lufepara; and at five o'clock, P. M. we deflected the Sisters, in the direction of S. by W. half W. At seven we cast anchor three leagues to the northward of those islands. On the 7th, at five o'clock, A. M. we weighed, and in three hours afterwards we were in sight of the Sisters. These are two islands of very small extent, plentifully stocked with wood, and situated in 50 deg.

way to the N. of the town, which forms a conspicuous object. The anchoring place in Simon's Bay, is situated in the lat. of 84 deg. 20 min. S. and its long. is 18 deg. 29 min. E. In fleeing for the harbour, along the western shore, there is a small flat rock, known by the name of Noah's Ark; and about a mile to the N. eastward of it, are others, denominated the Roman Rocks. These are a mile and a half distant from the anchoring place; and either to the northward of them or between them, there is a safe passage into the bay. When the N. westerly gales are let in, the navigator, by the following bearings, will be directed to a secure and convenient station: Noah's Ark S. 51 deg. E. and the centre of the hospital S. 53 deg. W. in 7 fathoms water. But if the S. easterly winds should not have ceased blowing, it is more advisable to remain further out in 8 or 9 fathoms water. The bottom consists of sand, and the anchors, before they get hold, settle considerably. About two leagues to the eastward of Noah's Ark, stands Seal-Island, whose southern part is said to be dangerous, and not to be approached nearer than in 22 fathoms water with any degree of safety.

The signal was made for unmooring on Tuesday, May the 9th, and about noon we took our departure from Simon's-Bay. We had now provisions, live stock, water, and naval stores, aboard, in great plenty: also healthy crews, in high spirits, willing for nothing but a fair wind to shorten our passage home. On the 14th, we got into the S. E. trade wind, and stood to the W. of the islands of Ascension and St. Helena. Wednesday, the 31st, we were in lat. 12 deg. 48 min. long. 15 deg. 40 min. W. On Saturday the 10th of June, the Discovery's boat brought us word, that, in exercising her great guns, the carpenter's mate had his arm shattered in a shocking manner, by part of the wadding being left in after a former discharge; another man was slightly wounded at the same time. On the 12th, it began to blow very hard; and continued so till the next day, when we crossed the line to the northward, for the fourth time during our voyage, in the long. of 26 deg. 16 min. W.

We descried the western coast of Ireland on Saturday the 12th of August, and endeavoured in vain to get into Port Galway, but were compelled by violent southerly winds, to stand to the N. We made the island of Lewis, the wind still continuing in the same quarter.

About eleven o'clock, A. M. on Tuesday the 22d, both ships came to anchor at Stromness in Scotland, from whence the commodore sent Captain King to inform the Lords of the Admiralty of our arrival.

We arrived off Yarmouth on the 30th, in company with his Majesty's sloops of war the Fly and Alderney. Our boats were immediately sent on shore for provisions, and for a spare cable for our small hower, that we had being nearly rendered unfit for use.

The Resolution and Discovery reached the Nore in safety on the 4th of October 1780; and, on the 6th, dropped anchors at Deptford; after four years, three months, and two days absence.

During this long and hazardous voyage, the two ships never lost sight of each other for a day together except twice; the first time, owing to an accident that happened to the Discovery off the coast of Owhyhee; the second, to the fogs they met with at the entrance of Awatka Bay; a striking proof of the skill and vigilance of the subltern officers.

Another circumstance, no less remarkable, is, the

uncommon healthiness of the companies of both ships. When Captain King quitted the Discovery at Stromness, he had the satisfaction of leaving the whole crew in perfect health; and, at the same time, the number of sick persons on board the Resolution did not exceed two or three, only one of whom was incapable of service.

During the whole voyage, the Resolution lost no more than five men by sickness, three of whom were in a precarious state of health at their departure from England. The Discovery did not lose one. This singular success may, under the blessing of an all-directing Providence, be justly attributed to a strict and unremitting attention to all the salutary and well-known regulations established by Capt. Cook. However, in spite of those precautions, the baneful effects of salt provisions might have, perhaps, in the end, been severely felt, had they not availed themselves of every substitute their situation, at various times, afforded. These frequently consisting of articles, which their people had not been used to consider as food for men, and being sometimes exceedingly nauseous, it required the joint aid of persuasion, authority, and example, to conquer their prejudices and disgusts.

Sour krout and portable soup were the preventives chiefly relied on. As to the antiseptic remedies, with which they were amply supplied, they had no opportunity of trying their effects, as there did not appear the slightest symptoms of the scurvy, in either ship, during the whole voyage. Their malt and hops had also been kept as a resource, in case of actual sickness, and on examination at the Cape of Good Hope, were found entirely spoiled. About the same time, were opened some casks of biscuit, flour, malt, pease, oatmeal, and groats, which, by way of experiment, had been put up in small casks, lined with tin-irail, and found all, except the pease, in a much better state, than could have been expected, had they been packed up in the usual manner.

It happened very fortunately in the Discovery, that only one of the men that had fevers in the Straits of Sunda, stood in need of Peruvian Bark, as he alone consumed the whole quantity usually carried out by Surgeons, in such vessels as these. Had more been affected in the same manner, they would probably all have perished, from the want of the only remedy capable of affording them effectual relief. This proves the absolute necessity of allowing a sufficient quantity of this excellent medicine to such of his Majesty's ships as may be exposed to the influence of unwholesome climates.

Having thus completed, in such a manner, we presume, as to set all rivalry at defiance, the three great and interesting Voyages of this ever-to-be-honoured Navigator, Capt. Cook, and the other Voyages intended for this Collection, we shall now, agreeable to our promise, present our numerous readers with those respective productions of eminent modern travellers, which are most esteemed for their authenticity and entertainment, beginning with the interesting narrative of BRUCE'S Travels into AFRICA, to discover the Source of the Nile; and, we trust while the same accuracy and attention, hitherto preserved, shall mark our future labours, that we shall still retain that distinguished liberality and encouragement with which we have been already so eminently honoured by the PUBLIC at large.



A NEW, COMPLETE, AND GENUINE
HISTORY OF THE
TRAVELS of JAMES BRUCE, Esq.
Into *ABYSSINIA*,

To Discover the SOURCE of the NILE.

Undertaken and Performed in 1768, 1769, 1770, 1771, 1772, and 1773.

Including all the Author's Remarks and Information during his Travels and Adventures in
EGYPT, ABYSSINIA, MASUAH, &c.

Being an Entire New HISTORY of all those Interesting OCCURRENCES, DISCOVERIES, &c.
at the NILE; with a Full and Circumstantial Account of the Traveller's being made Governor
of RAS EL FEEL—his several Disastrous Interviews—the Bloody Banquet—King's Ladies at
SENAAR, &c. &c. &c.

Which, with the several other VOYAGES and TRAVELS included in this Collection, will be Embellished
with a Variety of Elegant CHARTS, MAPS, VIEWS, and other COPPER-PLATES, Engraved by Eminent Artists.

I N T R O D U C T I O N.

MR. BRUCE had long entertained a wish to attempt the discovery of the Nile; being appointed to the consulate of Algiers, he set out for Italy, through France. On his arrival at Rome, he received orders to proceed to Naples, there to wait his majesty's further commands. Having stopped there a short time, he received orders to proceed to take possession of his consulate. He returned without loss of time to Rome, and thence to Leghorn, where having embarked on board the Montreal man of war, he arrived at Algiers, where he spent a year, then prepared to take a voyage to Mahon on private business; here being disappointed in his views, he sailed in a small vessel from that port, and, having a fair wind, soon made the coast of Africa, and landed at Bona: after a favourable voyage he arrived at Tunis, and having obtained permission to visit the country in whatever direction he pleased, set out on his intended journey through the kingdoms of Algiers and Tunis; he explored the ruins at Dugga, thence proceeded the upper road to Keff, and then to Hydra, inhabited by a tribe of Arabs. From this he passed to the ancient Tipesa, another Roman colony. From hence he continued his journey in a straight line nearly S. E. and arrived at Medrahem, a superb pile of building, the sepulchre of Syphax, and the other kings of Numidia, and where, as the Arabs believe, were also deposited the treasures of those kings. Advancing still to the S. E. through broken ground and some very barren vallies, which produced nothing but game, he came to Jibhel Aurez, the Aurahus Mons of the middle age. This is not one mountain, but an assemblage of many of the most craggy fleets in Africa. Having proceeded to the north-east as far as Tubersoke, he returned to Dugga, and from thence to Tunis. His next journey through Tunis, was by Zowan, a high mountain, where is a large aqueduct which formerly carried its

water to Carthage. He now continued his journey along the coast to Susa, through a fine country planted with olive trees, and came again to Tunis, not only without disagreeable accident, but without any interruption from sickness or other cause. He again set out from Tunis, over the desert to Tripoli, the first part of which was to Gabs, and from thence to the island of Gerba.

Afterwards he encompassed a great part of the Pentapolis, and visited the ruins of Arfinoe without any accident, and thence proceeded to Ras Sem, the petrified city, concerning which so many idle fictions have been reported.

Mr. Bruce now approaching the sea-coast, came to Ptolometa, where he met a Greek junk belonging to Lampedosa, a little island near Crete, which had been unloading corn, and was now ready to sail. At the same time the Arabs of Ptolometa told him, that the Welled Ali, a powerful tribe that occupy the whole country between that place and Alexandria, were at war among themselves, and had plundered the caravan of Morocco, and that the pilgrims composing it had mostly perished, having been scattered in the desert without water; that a great famine had been at Derna, the neighbouring town, to which Mr. Bruce intended to go; that a plague had followed, and the town, which is divided into upper and lower, was engaged in a civil war. This torrent of ill news was irresistible, and was of a kind he did not propose to struggle with; besides, there was nothing, as far as he knew, that merited the risk. He resolved, therefore, to fly from this inhospitable coast, and save to the public, at least, that knowledge and entertainment he had acquired for them.

Accordingly he embarked on board the Greek vessel, very ill accoutred, as he afterwards found, for, though it had plenty of sail, it had not an ounce of ballast. A number of people, men, women, and children,

children; flying from the calamities which attend famine, crowded in unknown to him; but the passage was short, the vessel light, and the matter, as was supposed, well accustomed to those seas. The contrary of this, however, was the truth, as he learned afterwards, when too late, for he was an absolute landman; proprietor indeed of the vessel, but this had been his first voyage. They sailed at dawn of day in very favourable and pleasant weather. It was the beginning of September, and a light and steady breeze, though not properly fair, promised a short and agreeable voyage; but it was not long before it turned fresh and cold; a violent shower of hail came on, and the clouds were gathering as if for thunder. Mr. Bruce observed that they gained no offing, and hoped, if the weather turned bad, to persuade the captain to put into Bengazi, for one inconvenience he presently discovered, that they had not provision on board for one day.

Unfortunately, however, the wind became contrary, and blew a violent storm. The vessel being in her trim with large latine sails, fell violently to leeward, and they scarce had weathered the cape that makes the entrance into the harbour of Bengazi, which is a very bad one, when all at once it struck upon a sunken rock, and seemed to be set down upon it. The wind at that instant seemed providentially to calm; but our traveller no sooner observed the ship had struck, than he began to think of his own situation. They were not far from shore, but there was an exceeding great swell at sea. Two boats were still towed astern of them, and had not been hoisted in. Roger McCormack, Mr. Bruce's Irish servant, had been a sailor on board the *Monarch* before he deserted to the Spanish service. He and the other, who had likewise been a sailor, presently unlashed the largest boat, and all three got down into her, followed by a multitude of people whom they could not hinder, and there was, indeed, something that bordered on cruelty, in preventing poor people from using the same means that they had done for preserving their lives. The moll that could be done was, to get loose from the ship as soon as possible, and two oars were prepared to row the boat ashore. Mr. Bruce had stripped himself to a short under-waistcoat and linen drawers; a silk sash, or girdle, was wrapt round him; a pencil, small pocket-book, and watch, were in the breast-pocket of his waistcoat; two Moorish and two English servants followed him; the rest more wife remained on board. They were not twice the length of the boat from the vessel, before a wave very nearly filled the boat. A howl of despair from those that were in her shewed their helpless state, and that they were conscious of a danger they could not shun. Mr. Bruce saw the fate of all was to be decided by the very next wave which was rolling in; and apprehensive that some woman, child, or helpless man, would lay hold of

him, and entangle his arms or legs, and weigh him down, he cried to his servants, both in Arabic and English, "We are all lost; if you can swim, follow me;" he then let himself down in the face of the wave.

Though Mr. Bruce was a good and practised swimmer, young, vigorous, healthy, and capable of fatigue, yet he found himself very insufficient when he came to the surf; he was, however, floated up by a large wave, in a very exhausted condition, and remained struggling with the sea, when he crept out of its reach, and lost both his under-landing and recollection. At this time the Arabs came down to plunder the vessel. Mr. Bruce, who hitherto remained insensible, was aroused from his lethargy by a blow with the butt-end of a lance, flod with iron, upon the juncture of the neck with the back-bone; after many kicks, blows, &c. they stripped him of his clothes, which had been made at Algiers, and left him naked. He found afterwards, by a young man who had accosted him, that he was taken for a Turk, his clothes having been made in the Turkish fashion. The Arab, convinced at last that he was a poor Christian from Tunis, and shipwrecked, gave him a ragged dirty baracen to cover him. He was then ordered up to a tent, examined, and he and his servants, who were all saved, allowed a plentiful supper, and every thing taken from them was restored after two days; being then mounted upon camels, they were forwarded to Bengazi, where Mr. Bruce found a small French sloop, and being known to the captain, was supplied with what money he wanted, and other necessaries. They sailed with a fair wind, and landed at Canea, where Mr. Bruce was taken very ill. From Canea he sailed for Rhodes: thence proceeded to Calatrosso, on the coast of Caramania, a part of Asia Minor, which Mr. Bruce, notwithstanding a strong inclination, was prevented from exploring, through the leverity of his illness.

On the restoration of his health, Mr. Bruce began to think of his long intended journey to Palmyra. He set out at a time appointed for Hamath, where he found his conductor, and proceeded to Haffia; from Haffia they proceeded to Cariateen, when two old men on horseback, one from the Mowalli, and another from the Anney tribe, accompanied them to Palmyra. From this he proceeded to Balbec (which is about 130 miles distance) and very fortunately arrived the same day that Emir Yousef had reduced the town and settled the government, and was decamping from it on his return home. It was fortunately for Mr. Bruce, because he was the Emir's friend, and had obtained liberty to do there what he pleased. Having made all necessary observations, Mr. Bruce arrived at Sidon in good health, and now prepared to set out on his discovery of the source of the Nile, the success of which undertaking shall be the subject of our two following books.

BOOK I.

CHAPTER I.

Mr. Bruce begins his Travels, &c.—Description of Alexandria, Rosetta, Egypt, Cairo, &c. &c. &c.—The several Adventures of Mr. Bruce during his Voyage in the Red Sea—His Arrival in the Harbour of Meşab.

ON the 15th of June 1768, Mr. Bruce sailed from Sidon, with a favourable wind, for the island of Cyprus. On the 17th they left Larnica; and on the 18th steered for Alexandria. Mr. Bruce, on his arrival here, found that the people had begun only two days before to open their doors and communicate with each other, as a terrible plague had raged in that city and neighbourhood from the beginning of March, being almost four months.

We find from Mr. Bruce's account, that Alexandria (which has been often taken since the time of

Cæsar) was at last destroyed by the Venetians and Cypriots, upon, or rather after the release of St. Lewis. The building of the present gates and walls, which some have thought to be antique, does not seem earlier than the last restoration in the thirteenth century. Some parts of the gates and walls may be of older date (and probably were those of the last Caliphs before Saladin); but, except these, and the pieces of columns which lie horizontally in different parts of the wall, every thing else is apparently of very late times, and the work has been huddled together

or legs, and weigh him
ants, both in Arabic and
f you can swim, follow
own in the face of the

a good and praised
healthy, and capable of
f very insufficient when
is, however, floated up
haunted condition, and
sea, when he crept out
his understanding and
e Arabs came down to
uce, who hitherto re-
d from his lethargy by a
lance, stod with iron,
ck with the back-bone;
they stripped him of
made at Algiers, and
afterwards, by a young
that he was taken for a
n n de in the Turkish
ced at last that he was a
and shipwrecked, gave
to cover him. He was
amined, and he and his
d, allowed a plentiful
from them was restored
mounted upon camels,
gazi, where Mr. Bruce
and being known to the
what money he wanted,
sailed with a fair wind,
: Mr. Bruce was taken
ed for Rhodes: thence
he coast of Caramania,
h Mr. Bruce, notwith-
t, was prevented from
ty of his illness.

health, Mr. Bruce began
d journey to Palmyra,
d for Hamath, where he
eeded to Haffia; from
riateen, when two old
the Mowalli, and ano-
accompanied them to
eeded to Balbec (which
d) and very fortunately
air Youf had reduced
overnment, and was de-
home. It was fortu-
liffe he was the Emir's
rty to do there what he
necessary observations,
a good health, and now
lcovery of the source
which undertaking shall
lowing books.

on, &c. &c. &c.—The
Harbour of Mesuah.

by the Venetian and
fter the relafe of St.
prefent gates and walls,
be antique, does not
ration in the thirteenth
gates and walls may be
were those of the last
except these, and the
horizontally in different
g else is apparently of
ork has been huddled
together

together in great haste. There is nothing beautiful
or pleasant in the present Alexandria, but a handsome
fleet of modern houses, where a very active and
intelligent number of merchants live upon the misera-
ble remnants of that trade, which made its glory in
the first times. It is thinly inhabited, and there is a
tradition among the natives, that, more than once,
it has been in agitation to abandon it altogether, and
to retire to Rosetto, or Cairo, but that they have been
withheld by the opinion of divers saints from Arabia,
who have assured them, that Mecca being destroyed
fe which must be as they think by the Rullians) Alex-
andria is then become the *holy place*, and that Maho-
met's body is to be transported thither.

Mr. Bruce now left this place in order to prosecute
his undertaking. Egypt is full of deep dull and
sand, from the beginning of March to the first of the
inundation. It is this fine powder and sand, raised and
loosened by the heat of the sun, and want of dew, and
not being ried fast, as it were, by any root or vegeta-
tion, which the Nile carries off with it, and buries in
the sea, and which many ignorantly suppose comes
from Abyssinia, where every river runs in a bed of
rock. When you leave the sea, you strike off nearly
at right angles, and pursue your journey to the call-
ward. Here heaps of stones and trunks of pillars are
set up to guide you in your road, through moving
lands, which stand in hillocks, in proper directions,
and which conduct you safely to Rosetto, surrounded
on one side by these hills of sand, which seem ready
to cover it.

The journey to Rosetto is always performed by
land, as the mouth of the branch of the Nile leading
to Rosetto, called the Bogaz, is very shallow and
dangerous to pass, and often tedious; besides, nobody
wishes to be a partner for any time in a voyage with
Egyptian sailors, if he can possibly avoid it. The
journey by land is also reputed dangerous, and
people travel burdened with arms, which they are
determined never to use.

Rosetto is upon that branch of the Nile which was
called the Bolbuttic Branch, and is about four miles
from the sea. It is a large, clean, neat town, or
village, upon the eastern side of the Nile. It is
about three miles long, much frequented by studious
and religious Mahometans; among these too are a
considerable number of merchants, it being the
entrepot between Cairo and Alexandria, and *vice
versa*; here too the merchants have their factors,
who superintend and watch over the merchandize
which passes the Bogaz to and from Cairo. There
are many gardens, and much verdure, about Rosetto;
the ground is low, and retains long the moisture it
imbibes from the overflowing of the Nile. Here
also are many curious plants and flowers brought
from different countries.

Mr. Bruce embarked for Cairo on the 30th, and
arrived there at the beginning of July. That part
in which the French are settled is exceedingly com-
modious. There is only one long street, which
contains all the merchants of that nation: it is shut
at one end by large gates, where there is a guard,
and at the other end there is a large garden, with
some pleasant walks. About four hundred inhabi-
tants have absolute power, and in their own manner
administer what they call justice; however, in Mr.
Bruce's time there was some moderation, there being
only one Ali Bey. Every Bey has a great number
of servants, slaves to him, as he was to others before;
these are his guards, whom he occasionally promotes,
and, what is very remarkable, these slaves, that are
purchased, always succeed them in dignity and estate,
in preference to their own children.

Mr. Bruce had an audience with the Bey, who
was a younger man than he thought; he was sitting
upon a large sofa, covered with crimson cloth of
gold; his turban, his girdle, and the head of his
dagger, all thick covered with fine brilliants. The
Bey entered into discourse with him on various sub-
jects, and, after frequent interviews, shewed him

much favour. Mr. Bruce having obtained several
letters and dispatches prepared for his journey, he
and his companions secured a boat to carry them to
Furhouth, the residence of Hamam, the Shekh of
Upper Egypt. This boat is called a canja, and is
one of the most commodious used on any river,
being safe and expeditious at the same time, though
at first it has a strong appearance of danger. That
on which they embarked was about 100 feet from
stem to stem, with two masts, main and foremast, and
two monstrous *Latine* sails, the mainfial yard being
about 200 feet in length.

There is peculiar to the Nile a certain kind of
pirates constantly on the watch to rob boats, in which
they suppose the crew are off their guard. They
generally approach the boat when it is calm, either
swimming under water, or when it is dark, upon
goat skins; after which they mount with the utmost
silence, and take away whatever they can lay their
hands on. They are not very fond it seems of
meddling with vessels where they see Franks or
Europeans, being in dread of fire-arms, the effects
of which they had experienced.

Mr. Bruce and his companions embarked on the
Nile at Bulac, on board this canja, December 12;
the wind being contrary, the boat was obliged to be
drawn with a rope against the stream. They advanced
a few miles to two convents of Coptes, called Dei-
reteen. Here they stopped to pass the night, having
had a fine view of the pyramids of Geeza and Sac-
cara, and being then in sight of a prodigious number
of others built of white clay, and stretching far into
the desert to the south-west. Two of these seemed
full as large as those on t are called the pyramids of
Geeza. One of them was of a very extraordinary
form; it seemed as if it had been intended at first
to be a very large one, but that the builder's heart
or means had failed him, and that he had brought it
to a very misshapen disproportioned head at last.

A tribe of Arabs was encamped on the side of the
Nile, opposite to their boat, a little further to the
south. These were subject to Cairo, or were then
at peace with its government. They are called
Howadat, being a part of the Atouni, a large tribe
that possesses the Isthmus of Suez, and from that go
up between the Red Sea and the mountains that
bound the east part of the valley of Egypt. They
reach to the length of Cosseir, where they border
upon another large tribe called Ababde, which ex-
tends from thence up into Nubia. Both these are
what were anciently called Shepherds, and are con-
stantly at war with each other.

The Shekh of Howadat furnished Mr. Bruce with
horses, who, with his companions, let out their vest
sails on the 13th, and passed a very considerable
village called Tuna, on the east side of the river,
and a small village, consisting of about thirty houses,
on the west, called Shekh Atman; here the Nile is
about a quarter of a mile broad. Having made
some few observations, Mr. Bruce and friends re-
turned about four o'clock in the afternoon.

They hoisted their main and fore-sails, leaving the
point of Metrahenny with a fair fresh wind; when
they had sailed about two miles, they saw three men
sitting in a manner and situation very extraordinary.
They were on a raft of palm branches, supported on
a float of clay jars, made fast together. The form
was triangular, like the face of a pyramid; two men,
each provided with a calling-net, stood at the two
corners, and threw their net into the stream together;
the third stood at the third corner, which was fore-
most, and threw his net the moment the other two
drew theirs out of the water. And this they re-
peated, in perfect time, and with surprising regularity.
The Rais thought our travellers wanted to buy fish,
and letting go his mainfial, ordered them on board
with a great tone of superiority. They were in a
moment along-side of them; and one of them came
on board, lashing his miserable raft to a rope at their
stem. In recompence for their trouble they gave
them

them some large pieces of tobacco, and this transported them so much, that they brought them a basket of several different kinds of fish, all small, excepting one laid on the top of the basket, which was a clear salmon-coloured fish, silvered upon its sides, with a shade of blue upon its back. It weighed about 10lb. and was most excellent, being perfectly firm, and white like a perch. There are some of this kind 70lb. weight. Mr. Bruce examined their nets, they were rather of a smaller circumference than our calling nets in England; the weight, as far as he could guess, rather heavier in proportion than ours, the thread that composed them being smaller. He could not sufficiently admire their success, in a violent stream of deep water, such as the Nile; for the river was at least twelve feet deep where they were fishing, and the current very strong. These fishers offered willingly to take Mr. Bruce upon the raft to teach him; but he declined it on account of the danger. They said their fishing was merely accidental, and in course of their trade, which was selling these pouter earthen jars, which they got near Assmounein; and after having carried the raft with them to Cairo, they untie, sell them at the market, and carry the produce home in money, or in necessaries upon their backs.

In the afternoon, about two o'clock, they came to the point of an island, where there were several villages with date trees on both sides of them. They then came to Haloutan, an island divided into several small ones, by celiffes cut through it, under different Arabic names. They left the north end of the island, proceeding due south on the 15th, and passed a collection of villages called Woodan.

It is nice cultivated ground about this village, to the foot of the mountains, which is not above four miles; but it is full eight on the well, all overflowed and sown. The Nile is here but shallow, and narrow, not exceeding a quarter of a mile broad, and three feet deep; owing, as is supposed, to the resistance made by the island in the middle of the current, and by a bend it makes, thus intercepting the land brought down by the stream. The mountains here come down till within two miles of Suf el Woodan, for so the village is called. They were told there were some ruins to the westward of this, but only rubbish, neither arch nor column standing.

They passed by several villages on each side, all surrounded with palm-trees, verdant and pleasant, but conveying an idea of sameness and want of variety, such as every traveller must have felt who has sailed in the placid, muddy, green-banked rivers in Holland. The Nile, however, is here full a mile broad, the water deep, and the current strong. The wind seemed to be exasperated by the resistance of the stream, and blew fresh and steadily, as indeed it generally does where the current is violent. They passed with great velocity Nizelet Embarak, Cubabac, Nizelet Omar, Racca Kibeer, then Racca Seguiet, and came in sight of Atha, a large village at some distance from the Nile; and all the valley here was green, the palm groves beautiful, and the Nile deep.

Having passed Confadredy on the 18th, they found the Nile again divided by another fragment of the island, and inclining a little to the westward. The village Sidi Ali el Courani is on the East; it had a deserted appearance, but the wheat, which was five inches high on the banks, was more advanced than any hitherto seen. There was no appearance of villages. The river here is about a quarter of a mile broad, or a little more. They passed a convent of Cophts, with a small plantation of palms. This was a wretched building. At four miles distance stood the village of El Nizelet el Arab, consisting of miserable huts. Here they procured some excellent sugar canes, it being the last place where they discovered any.

Next they passed Boufti, a village on the west side of the Nile, two miles south of Shenniah; and, a little further, Beni Ali, where they saw for a minute the mountains on the right or west side of the Nile, run-

ning in a line nearly south, and very high. About five miles from Boufti is the village of Maniareish, on the east side of the river, and here the mountains on that side end. The country all around is well cultivated, and seemed to be of the utmost fertility; the inhabitants were better clothed, and seemingly less miserable and oppressed, than those they left behind in the places near Cairo. The Nile was very shallow at Beni Suef, and the current strong. They touched several times in the middle of the stream, and came to anchor at Baha, about a quarter of a mile above Beni Suef, where they passed the night.

In the evening of the 18th they arrived at Zohora, about a mile south of Efa. Here they passed the night. This place consisted of three plantations of dates, and was five miles from Miniet. Several villages on the western shore had been passed; those of the eastern seeming wholly unpeopled. They came to a village called Rhoda, whence they saw the magnificent ruins of the ancient city of Antinous, built by Adrian. The Rais (by desire of Mr. Bruce) hauled in his sail, and with his fore-sail full, stood S. S. E. directly under the ruins. In a short time they arrived at the landing place; when Abou Cuffi's son, Mahomet, and an Arab, who were of the party, went on shore under pretence of buying some provision, and to see how the land lay. All their fire arms were brought to the door of the cabin for fear of an alarm.

Presently Mr. Bruce, and those who remained in the boat, heard a violent contention between the two who were sent on shore and the inhabitants.

Upon this the Rais slipping, slipped off the rope from the stake, and another of the Arabs struck a strong perch or pole into the river, and twisted the rope round it. They were in a blight, or calm place, so that the stream did not move the boat.

Mahomet and the Arab came presently in sight; the people had taken Mahomet's turban from him, and they were apparently on the very worst terms. Mahomet cried to our travellers that the whole town was coming, and getting near the boat, he and the Arab jumped in with great agility. A number of people was assembled, and three boats were fired into the boat, very quickly, the one after the other.

Mr. Bruce having now uttered some threats in Arabic, immediately fired a ship blunderbuss, with pistol small bullets, but with little elevation, among the bushes, so as not to touch them; on which the pursuers disappeared, and putting their vessel into the stream, they filled their fore-sail and stood off.

The Rais attributed their safe delivery to the sacred presence of Mahomet, who observed the people had not seen them come in, but had heard of them ever since they were at Metrahenny, and had wanted to rob or murder them; that upon now hearing they were come, they had all ran to their houses for their arms, and were coming down, immediately, to plunder the boat; upon which he and the Moor ran off, and being met by these three people, and the boy, on the road, who had nothing in their hands, one of them snatched the turban off. He likewise added, that there were two parties in the town; one in favour of Ali Bey, the other friends to a rebel Bey, who had taken Miniet: that they had fought two or three days ago, among themselves, and were going to fight again, each of them having called Arabs to their assistance. So violently exasperated were Hassan and his son Mahomet, that they could hardly be dissuaded from returning again to the shore, and discharging all the guns and blunderbusses they had among the inhabitants.

After Mr. Bruce had moderated their passion, they passed Assmounein, probably the ancient Latopolis, a large town, which gives the name to the province, where there are magnificent ruins of Egyptian architecture; and after they came to Melawé, larger, better built, and better inhabited than Assmounein, the residence of the Cacheff. Mahomet Aga was there at that time with troops from Cairo; he had taken Miniet, and, by the friendship of Shekh Hamam, the great

and very high. About
village of Maniarcith, on
nd here the mountains on
all around is well culti-
the utmost fertility; the
thed, and seemingly less
on those they left behind
the Nile was very shallow
t strong. They touched
of the stream, and came
quarter of a mile above
l the night.

they arrived at Zahora,
Here they passed the
of three plantations of
Miniet. Several vil-
nd been passed; those of
unpeopled. They came
hence they saw the mag-
city of Antinous, built
re of Mr. Bruce) hauled
refail full, flood S. S. E.
n a short time they ar-
when Abou Cuffi's son,
were of the party, went
buying some provision,
All their fire arms were
bin for fear of an alarm,
those who remained in
tention between the two
the inhabitants.

ng, slipped off the rope
of the Arabs struck a
e river, and twisted the
a night, or calm place,
ve the boat.
ame presently in fight;
t's turban from him, and
very worst terms. Ma-
that the whole town was
boat, he and the Arab
A number of people
were fired into the boat,
e other.

attered some threats in
ship blunderbuss, with
little elevation, among
h them; on which the
ing their vessel into the
il and flood off.

delivered to the sacred
served the people had
ad heard of them ever
ny, and had wanted to
oon now hearing they
to their houses for their
immediately, to plunder
the Moor ran off, and
e, and the boy, on the
ir hands, one of them
e likewise added, that
own; one in favour of
a rebel Bey, who had
ught two or three days
re going to fight again,
rabs to their assistance.

Iaffan and his son Ma-
be dissuaded from re-
nd discharging all the
ad among the inhabi-

ted their passion, they
the ancient Latopolis,
name to the province,
ns of Egyptian archi-
Melawé, larger, better
Alsmounein, the re-
met Aga was there at
o; he had taken Mi-
Shekh Hamam, the
great

great Arab, governor of Upper Egypt, he kept all the
people on that side of the river in allegiance to Ali Bey.
Here Mr. Bruce procured about a gallon of brandy,
a jar of lemons and oranges preserved in honey, a
lamb, some garden stuff, &c. &c. They passed the
Molle, a small village, with a great number of acacia
trees, intermixed with the plantations of palms.

They passed several villages on the 20th; at length
reached Siouts, but were obliged to stay at Tiona,
as the wind turned directly south. This is a small
town, surrounded with groves of palm trees. The
Nile is here full of sandy islands.

On the 21st they came to Gawa. The next day,
they arrived at Achmurin, where they staid till the
24th, when they visited the village Shekh Ali on the
well, two miles and a quarter distant. Now they
passed several villages, particularly Kundi, and hav-
ing set out from Beliant on the 25th, arrived at Den-
dela about 12 o'clock in the afternoon. This (even
at present) is a considerable town, all covered with
thick groves of palm trees, the fame that Juvenal de-
scribes it to have been in his time. A mile south of
the town are ruins of two temples, one of which is so
much buried under ground, that little of it is to be
seen; but the other, which is by far the most magni-
ficent, is entire, and accessible on every side. It is
also covered with hieroglyphics, both within and with-
out, all in relief; and of every figure, simple and
compound, that ever has been published, or called an
hieroglyphic. The form of the building is an oblong
square, the ends of which are occupied by two large
apartments, or vestibules, supported by monstrous
columns, all covered with hieroglyphics likewise.
Some are in form of men and beasts; some seem to be
the figures of instruments of sacrifice, while others,
in a smaller size, and less distinct form, seem to be
inscriptions in the current hand of hieroglyphics.
They are all finished with peculiar attention.

The capitals are of one piece, and consist of four
huge human heads, placed back to back against one
another, with bat's ears, and an ill-imagined, and
worse executed, fold drapery between them. Above
these is a large oblong square block, still larger than
the capitals, with four flat fronts, disposed like panels,
that is with a kind of square border round the edges,
while the faces and fronts are filled with hierogly-
phics, as are the walls and ceilings of every part of
the temple. Between these two apartments in the
extremities, there are three other apartments, resem-
bling the first, in every respect, only that they are
smaller. The whole building is of common white
stone, from the neighbouring mountains, only those
two, in which have been sunk the pirns for hanging
the outer doors (for it seems they had doors even in
those days) are of granite, or black and blue por-
phyry. The top of the temple is flat, the spouts to
carry off the water are monstrous heads of sphinxes;
the globes with wings, and the two serpents, with a
kind of shield or breast-plate between, are here fre-
quently repeated, such as we see them on the Car-
thaginian medals. The hieroglyphics have been
painted over, and great part of the colouring yet
remains upon the stones, red, in all its shades, espe-
cially that dark dusky colour called Tyrian purple;
yellow, very fresh; sky blue (that is, near the blue
of an eastern fly, several shades lighter than ours);
green of different shades: these are all the colours
preserved.

Some short time before Mr. Bruce came to Den-
dela, they saw the first crocodile, and afterwards hun-
dreds, lying upon every island, like large flocks of
cattle; yet the inhabitants of Dendera drive their
beasts of every kind into the river, and they stand
there for hours. The girls and women too, that come
to fetch water in jars, stand up to their knees in
water for a considerable time; and if we may guess
by what happens, their danger is full as little as their
fear, for none of them, as far as our travellers could
learn, had been bitten by a crocodile. However, if
the Denderites were as keen and expert hunters of

crocodiles, as some historians tell us they formerly
were, there is surely no part of the Nile where they
would have better sport than here, immediately before
their own city.

They now proceeded to Furskout, and visited the
convent of Friars, who are of the order of the re-
formed Franciscans. Furskout is a very considerable
well-cultivated plain. It is sown with wheat nine
miles over to the foot of the mountains, and con-
tains plantations of sugar canes. They left this place
Jan. 7th, 1769, and passed a large town called How,
on the west side of the Nile, and arrived about four
o'clock in the afternoon at El Gourni, which is a
small village distant a quarter of a mile from the Nile.

About half a mile north of El Gourni, are the mag-
nificent, stupendous sepulchres of Thebes. The moun-
tains of the Thebaid come close behind the town;
they are not connected with each other in ridges, but
stand insulated upon their bases; so that you can get
round each of them. A hundred of these, it is said,
are excavated into sepulchral, and a variety of other
apartments.

Luxor, and Carnac, which is a mile and a quarter
below it, are by far the largest and most magnificent
scenes of ruins in Egypt, much more extensive and
stupendous than those of Thebes and Dendera put
together.

There are two obelisks here of great beauty, and
in good preservation; they are less than those at
Rome, but not at all mutilated. The pavement,
which is made to receive the shadow, is to this day
so horizontal, it might still be used in observation.

At Carnac they saw the remains of two vast rows
of sphinxes, one on the right hand, the other on the
left (their heads were molly broken) and, a little
lower, a number as it should seem of termini. They
were composed of basalt, with a dog or lion's head,
of Egyptian sculpture. They stood in lines likewise,
as if intended as an avenue to some principal build-
ing.

They left Luxor on the 17th, and came to an an-
chor in the evening on the eastern shore, nearly op-
posite to Elné, which they passed over the next morn-
ing, and also the town of Edfre, where there are
considerable remains of Egyptian architecture. Elné
is the ancient Latopolis, and has very great remains,
particularly a large temple, which, though the whole
of it is of the remotest antiquity, seems to have been
built at different times, or rather out of the ruins of
different ancient buildings. The hieroglyphics upon
this are very ill executed, and are not painted. The
town is the residence of an Arab Shekh, and the in-
habitants are a very bad sort of people; but as Mr.
Bruce was dressed like an Arab, they did not molest,
because they did not know him.

They were obliged to stop at Jibbel el Siffely, a
dangerous part of the Nile, on account of the wind
failing; they passed Coom Ambo about noon, and
arrived at Daroo. On the 20th, they came to an
anchor about nine o'clock, on the south end of the
palm groves, and north end of the town of Syene.

As this was the time when Mr. Bruce was to take
leave of Europe, and launch out on his desperate
expedition, he made all necessary preparations, hav-
ing heard that a caravan was ready to set out for
Kenné, the œœni emporium of antiquity. Therefore,
at eight in the morning of the 17th of February, Mr.
Bruce mounted his servants all on horseback, and
having taken the charge of their own camels, they
advanced slowly into the desert; for all the way from
Kenné, close to the left, were desert hills; it was such
a barren way, that there was no appearance of plant
or living creature, and the sun was so exceedingly
hot, that two sticks, when rubbed together, took fire
and flamed!

They pitched their tent at half past three in Le-
geta, near some draw-wells, which were remarkably
bitter; here they waited the arrival of the caravan of
Cus, Elné, &c.

There came about twenty Turks in the evening
from

from Caramania, which is that part of Asia Minor immediately on the side of the Mediterranean opposite to the coast of Egypt; all of them neatly and cleanly dressed like Turks, all on camels, armed with swords, a pair of pistols at their girdle, and a short neat gun; their arms were in very good order, with their flints and ammunition stowed in cartridge boxes, in a very soldier-like manner. A few of these spoke Arabic, and Mr. Bruce's Greek servant, Michael, interpreted for the rest. Having been informed, that the large tent belonged to an Englishman, they came into it without ceremony. They told Mr. Bruce, that they were a number of neighbours and companions, who had set out together to go to Mecca, to the Hadje; and not knowing the language, or customs of the people, they had been but indifferently used since they landed at Alexandria, particularly somewhere about Achmin; that one of the Owam, or swimming thieves, had been on board of them in the night, and had carried off a small portmanteau, with about 200 sequins in gold; that, though a complaint had been made to the Bey of Gurgé, yet no satisfaction had been obtained; and that now they had heard an Englishman was here, whom they reckoned their countryman, they had come to propose, that they should make a common cause to defend each other against all enemies.—What they signified by countryman was this:—There is in Asia Minor, somewhere between Anatolia and Caramania, a district which they call Caz Dagli, and this the Turks believe was the country from which the English first drew their origin; and on this account they never fail to claim kindred with the English wherever they meet, especially if they stand in need of their assistance.

They spent the 18th, at Legda, waiting for the junction of the caravans, and the next day departed about six in the morning.

Their journey, all that day, was through a plain, never less than a mile broad, and never broader than three; the hills, on their right and left, were higher than the former, and of a brownish calcined colour, like the stones on the sides of Mount Vesuvius, but without any herb or tree upon them.

They passed a mountain of green and red marble at half past ten, and at twelve they entered a plain called Hamra, where they first observed the sand red, with a purple cast, of the colour of porphyry; and this is the reason the valley is called Hamra.

Mr. Bruce dismounted here, to examine of what the rocks were composed; and found that here began the quarries of porphyry, without the mixture of any other stone; but it was imperfect, brittle, and soft. He had not been engaged in this pursuit an hour, before they were alarmed with a report that the Atoumi had attacked the rear of the caravan; they were at the head of it. The Turks and his servants were all drawn together, at the foot of the mountain, and posted as advantageously as possible. But it soon appeared, that they were some thieves only, who had attempted to steal some loads of corn from camels that were weak, or fallen lame, perhaps in intelligence with those of their own caravans.

They left Mecir el Mafarek on the 20th, and came to the mouth of the defiles at ten o'clock. They departed early from Koraim on the 21st, and passed several defiles; at last they arrived at Colfeir.—This is a small mud-walled village, built upon the shore, among hillocks of floating sand. It is defended by a square fort of hewn stone, with square towers in the angles, which have in them three small cannon of iron, and one of brass, all in very bad condition; of no other use but to terrify the Arabs, and hinder them from plundering the town when full of corn, going to Mecca in time of famine. The walls are not high; but their ramparts are heightened by clay or mud-walls to screen the soldiers from the fire-arms of the Arabs. The port is nothing but a rock, on the east end of the town, which runs out about 400 yards into the sea, and defends the vessels which ride to the west of it, from the north and north east

winds. There is a large enclosure with a high mud wall, where every merchant has a shop or magazine for his corn and merchandize.

At this time the caravan, from Syene, arrived, escorted by 400 Ababde, all upon camels, each armed with two short javelins, and making a whimsical appearance. The Ababde having told strange stories about the mountain of emeralds; Mr. Bruce determined, till his captain should return, to make a voyage there. Accordingly he chose a man who had been twice at these mountains of emeralds; and with the bell boat then in the harbour, on Tuesday the 14th of March, they sailed, with the wind at north-east, from the harbour of Colfeir, about an hour before the dawn of day. They kept coasting along, with a very moderate wind, much diverted with the red and green appearances of the marble mountains upon the coast. Their vessel had one sail, like a straw matress, made of the leaves of a kind of palm tree, which they call *Doom*. It was fixed above, and drew up like a curtain, but did not lower with a yard like a sail; so that upon fresh weather, if the sail was furled, it was so top-heavy, that the ship must founder, or the mast be carried away. But, by way of indemnification, the planks of the vessel were sewed together, and there was not a nail, nor a piece of iron in the whole ship; so that when the struck upon a rock, seldom any damage attended. About nine o'clock, on the 15th, Mr. Bruce saw a large high rock, like a pillar, rising out of the sea. At first, he took it for a part of the continent; but, as he advanced nearer it, the sun being very clear, and the sea calm, he took an observation, and as their situation was lat. 25 deg. 6 min. and the island about a league distant, to the S. S. W. of them, he concluded its latitude to be pretty exactly 25 deg. 3 min. North. This island is about three miles from the shore, of an oval form, rising in the middle. It seems to be of granite; and is called, in the language of the country, *Jibbel Siberget*, which has been translated *the Mountain of Emeralds*. Very early on the 16th, Mr. Bruce took the Arab of Colfeir with him, who knew the place. They landed on a point perfectly desert; at first, sandy like Colfeir; afterwards, where the soil was fixed, producing some few plants of rue or absinthium. They advanced above three miles further in a perfectly desert country, with only a few acacia-trees scattered here and there, and came to the foot of the mountain; where, or about seven yards up from the base of it, are five pits or shafts, none of them four feet in diameter, called the *Zawrad Wells*, from which the ancients are said to have drawn the emeralds. The travellers were not provided with materials, and little endowed with inclination, to descend into any one of them, where the air was probably bad. Mr. Bruce picked up the nozels, and some fragments of jaspers, like those of which we find millions in Italy; and some worn fragments, but very small ones, of that brittle green crystal, which is the fiberget and bilur of Ethiopia, perhaps the zumrud, the smaragdus described by Pliny; but by no means the emerald, known since the discovery of the new world, whose first character absolutely defeats its pretension, the true Peruvian emerald being equal in hardness to the ruby.

Having now sufficiently satisfied curiosity, Mr. Bruce returned to his boat, and continued along the coast with an easy sail; and, after some dangerous storms, arrived on the 19th, about evening, at Colfeir: here Mr. Bruce procured a vessel, and sailed from that port on the 5th of April, and on the 6th, made the Jaffateen islands. These islands are four in number, joined by shoals and sunken rocks. They are crooked, or bent, like half a bow, and are dangerous for ships sailing in the night, because there seems to be a passage between them, to which, when pilots are attending, they neglect two small dangerous sunk rocks, that lie almost in the middle of the entrance, in deep water.

They

closure with a high mud
has a shop or magazine
n, from Syene, arrived,
all upon camels, early
s, and making a whim-
ode having told strange
of emeralds; Mr. Bruce
should return, to make
ly he chose a man who
tains of emeralds; and
the harbour, on Tuesday
ailed, with the wind at
ar of Colfeir, about an
y. They kept coasting
wind, much diverted
pearances of the marble
Their vessel had one
made of the leaves of a
they call *Doom*. It was
e a curtain, but did not
; so that upon stress of
ed, it was so top-heavy,
or the mail he carried
emification, the plank
ther, and there was not
the whole ship; so that
ack, seldom any damage
ack, on the 15th, Mr.
like a pillar, rising out
it for a part of the con-
nearer it, the sun being
he took an observation,
25 deg. 6 min. and the
to the S. S. W. of them,
be pretty exactly 25 deg.
about three miles from
r, rising in the middle.
nd is called, in the lan-
et Siberget, which has
of emeralds. Very early
k the Arab of Colfeir
e. They landed on a
rill, sandy like Colfeir;
s fixed, producing some
ium. They advanced
a perfectly desert coun-
ces scattered here and
f the mountain; where
of the base of it, are five
four feet in diameter,
on which the ancients
eralds. The travellers
als, and little endowed
ins; and one of them,
nd. Mr. Bruce picked
gments of rumps, like
s in Italy; and some
all ones, of that brittle
siberget and bilur of
d, the smaragdus de-
means the emerald,
the new world, whose
ats its pretension, the
equal in hardness to
stified curiosity, Mr.
d continued along the
dier some dangerous
out evening, at Col-
a vessel, and sailed
ril, and on the 6th,
these islands are four
and sunken rocks,
e half a bow, and are
e night, because their
them, to which, when
t two small dangerous
the middle of the en-

They arrived at Tor on the 9th, which is a final
straggling village, with a convent of Greek monks,
belonging to Mount Sinai. They flood out of this
harbour at day-break on the 11th and made the
Cape Mahomet.

They sailed from Cape Mahomet on the 12th,
just as the sun appeared. They passed the island of
Yorone, in the mouth of the Eranitic Gulf, which
divides it near equally into two; or rather the
north-west side is narrower. The direction of the
gulf is nearly north and south.

On the 15th they came to an anchor at El Har,
where they lay high, craggy, and broken mountains,
called the Mountains of Ruddna. These abound
with springs of water; all sorts of Arabian and African
fruits grow here in perfection, and also every
kind of vegetable that is cultivated with any atten-
tion. About ten o'clock on the 16th, they passed
a mosque, or Shekhi's tomb on the main land, on
their left hand, called Kubbet Yambo, and before
eleven they anchored in the mouth of the port in
deep water. Yambo, corruptly called Imbo, is an
ancient city, now dwindled to a petty village.
Yambo, in the language of the country, signifies a
mountain or spring, a very copious one of excellent
water being found there among the date trees, and
it is one of the Stations of the Emir Hadje in going
to, and coming from Mecca. The advantage of the
port, however, which the other has not, and the
protection of the caille, have carried trading vessels
to the modern Yambo, where there is no water, but
what is brought from pools dug on purpose to receive
the rain when it falls.

Mr. Bruce was obliged to stay here, much against
his inclination, till the 27th of April, on account of
the several delays attending the loading of wheat, &c.

They sailed in the morning, April 28, with a
cargo of wheat that did not belong to them, and three
passengers, instead of one for whom only Mr. Bruce
had undertaken.

On the 3d of May they arrived at Jidda, close
upon the quay, where the officers of the custom-
house immediately took possession of their baggage.
This part is very extensive, consisting of several
plains, several shoals and broken rocks, with chan-
nels, however, between them and deep water.

The most remarkable occurrence which attracted
the travellers notice, was the extraordinary manner
in which trade was carried on at this place. There
were nine ships from India of great value. One
merchant, a Turk, living at Mecca, thirty hours
journey off, where no Christian dare go, whilst the
whole continent is open to the Turk for escape,
offers to purchase the cargoes of four out of nine of
these ships himself; another, of the same cast, comes
and says, he will buy none, unless he has them all.
The samples are shewn, and the cargoes of the whole
nine ships are carried into the wildest part of Arabia,
by men with whom one would not wish to trull him-
self above in the held. This is not all, two India
brokers come into the room to settle the price. One
on the part of the India captain, the other on that
of the buyer, the Turk. They are neither Maho-
metans nor Christians, but have credit with both.
They sit down on the carpet, and take an India
shawl, which they carry on their shoulders, like a
napkin, and spread it over their hands. They talk,
in the mean time, on different subjects, of the arrival
of ships from India, or of the news of the day,
as if they were employed in no serious business what-
ever. After about twenty minutes spent in handling
each others fingers below the shawl, the bargain is
concluded, say for nine ships, without one word ever
having been spoken on the subject, or pen or ink
used in any shape whatever. There never was one
instance of a dispute happening in these sales.

The mode of payment is equally extraordinary.
A private Moor, who had nothing to support him
but his character, became responsible for the pay-
ment of these cargoes; his name was Ibrahim Saraf

when Mr. Bruce was there; *i. e.* Ibrahim the broker.
This man delivers a number of coarse hempen bags,
full of what is supposed to be money. He marks the
contents upon the bag, and puts his seal upon the
string that ties the mouth of it. This is received for
what is marked upon it, without any one ever having
opened one of the bags, and, in India, it is current
for the value marked upon it, as long as the bag re-
mains.

Jidda, as well as all the east coast of the Red
Sea, is very unwholesome. Immediately without
the gate of that town, to the eastward, is a des-
ert plain filled with the huts of the Bedowens, or
country Arabs, built of long bundles of spartum, or
bent grass, put together like fascines. These Be-
dowens supply Jidda with milk and butter. There
is no stirring out of town, even for a walk, unless for
about half a mile, on the fourth side by the sea, where
there is a number of stinking pools of stagnant water,
which contributes to make the town very unwhole-
some.

Jidda, besides being in the most unwholesome part
of Arabia, is, at the same time, in the most barren
and desert situation. This, and many other incon-
veniences, under which it labours, would, probably,
have occasioned its being abandoned altogether, were
it not for its vicinity to Mecca, and the great and
sudden influx of wealth from the India trade, which,
once a year, arrives in this part, but does not con-
tinue, passing on, as through a turnpike, to Mecca;
whence it is dispersed all over the east. Very little
advantage, however, accrues to Jidda. The customs
are all immediately sent to a needy sovereign, and
a hungry set of relations, dependents, and ministers
at Mecca. The gold is returned in bags and boxes,
and passes on as rapidly to the ships as the goods do
to the market, and leaves as little profit behind.
In the mean time, provisions rise to a prodigious price,
and this falls upon the townsmen, while all the profit
of the traffic is in the hands of strangers; most of
whom, after the market is over (which does not last
six weeks) retire to Yemen, and other neighbouring
countries, which abound in every sort of provision.

Notwithstanding Jidda is the country of their pro-
phet, yet no where are there to many unmarried
women, and the permission of marrying four wives
was allowed in this district in the first instance, and
afterwards communicated to all the tribes. But
Mahomet, in his permission of plurality of wives
seems constantly to have been on his guard, against
suffering that, which was intended for the welfare
of his people, from operating in a different manner.
He did not permit a man to marry two, three, or
four wives, unless he could maintain them. He was
interested for the rights and rank of these women;
and the man so marrying was obliged to shew before
the Cadi, or some equivalent officer, or judge, that
it was in his power to support them, according to
their birth. It was not to with concubines, with
women who were purchased, or who were taken in
war. Every man enjoyed these at his pleasure, and
their peril, that is, whether he was able to main-
tain them or not. From this great scarcity of pro-
visions, which is the result of an extraordinary con-
course to a place almost destitute of the necessaries
of life, few inhabitants of Jidda can avail themselves
of the privilege granted them by Mahomet. He
therefore cannot marry more than one wife, because
he cannot maintain more, and from this cause arises
the want of people, and the large number of un-
married women.

Mr. Bruce's reception here was particularly kind;
the inhabitants did him the honour to attend him to
the water edge. All the quay of Jidda was lined
with people to see the English salute, and along with
his vessel there parted, at the same time, one bound
to Mafuah, which carried Mahomet Abd-el Cader,
governor of Dabalac, over to his government.

Mr. Bruce sailed from this harbour July 8th, on
board the same vessel as before, and suffered the

Rais to take a small loading for his own account, upon condition that he was to carry no passengers. The wind was fair, and they sailed through the English fleet at their anchors. As they had all honoured our traveller with their regret at parting, and accompanied him to the shore, the Rais was surprised to see the respect paid to his little vessel as it passed under their huge sterns, every one hoisting his colours, and saluting it with eleven guns.

On the 11th, they were towed to their anchorage in the harbour of Konfodah. Konfodah means the town of the hedge-hog. It is a small village, consisting of about two hundred miserable houses, built with green wood, and covered with mats, made of the doom, or palm-tree, lying on a bay, or rather a shallow basin, in a desert waste or plain. Behind the town are small hillocks of white sand. Nothing grows on shore except kelp, but it is exceedingly beautiful, and very luxuriant; further in there are gardens. Fish is in perfect plenty; butter and milk in great abundance; even the desert looks fresher than other deserts, which makes it probable that rain sometimes falls there. This, however, is a very unwholesome place, provision is very dear, and the water very bad.

On the 14th, in the afternoon, they passed Ras Heli, which is the boundary between Yemen, or Arabia Felix, and the Hejaz, or province of Mecca; they anchored here for the night, close under the Cape.

Every part of the sandy desert at the foot of the mountains is called *Tebama*, which extends to Mocha. It is called *Tema* in scripture, and derives its name from *Taamu* in Arabic, which signifies the sea-coast. There is little water here, as it never rains; there is also no animal but the gazel or antelope, and but a few of them. There are few birds, and those which may be found are generally silent.

Early on the 18th, they discovered the mountains, under which lies the town of Loheia. The bay was so shallow, and the tide being at ebb, they could get no nearer than within about five miles of the shore. Loheia is built upon the south-west side of a peninsula, surrounded every where, but on the east, by the sea. In the middle of this neck there is a small mountain which serves for a fortress, and there are towers with cannon, which reach across on each side of the hill to the shore. Beyond this is a plain, where the Arabs intending to attack the town, generally assemble. At Loheia they had a very uneasy sensation, a kind of prickling came into their legs, which were bare, occasioned by the salt effluvia, or steams, from the earth, which all about the town, and further to the south, is strongly impregnated with that mineral. Fish, and butchers meat, and indeed all sorts of provision, are plentiful and reasonable at Loheia, but the water is bad. It is found in the sand at the foot of the mountains, down the sides of which it has fallen in the time of the rain, and is brought to the town in skins upon camels. There is also plenty of fruit brought from the mountains by the Bedowé, who live in the skirts of the town, and supply it with milk, fire-wood, and fruit, chiefly bananas and grapes.

The government of the Inam is much more gentle than any Moorish government in Arabia or Africa; the people too are of gentler manners, the men, from early ages, being accustomed to trade. The women at Loheia are as solicitous to please as those of the most polished nations in Europe; and, though very retired, whether married or unmarried, they are not less careful of their dress and persons. At home they wear nothing but a long shirt of fine cotton-cloth, suitable to their quality. They dye their feet and hands with henna, not only for ornament, but as an astringent, to keep them dry from sweat; they wear their own hair, which is plaited, and falls in long tails behind.

They left Loheia on the 27th, in the evening, but were obliged to tow the boat out. About eleven they sailed with a wind at north-east, and passed a cluster of islands on their left. After passing some dangerous shoals, on the 30th, at seven o'clock in the morning,

with a gentle but steady wind at west, they failed for the mouth of the Indian Ocean.

They continued their course within a mile of the shore, where in some places there appeared to be small woods, in others a flat bare country, bounded with mountains a considerable distance. The wind freshened as they advanced. About four in the afternoon they saw the mountain which forms one of the Capes of the Straits of Babelmandch, in shape resembling a gunner's quoin.

On the 31st, at nine in the morning, they came to an anchor above Jibbel Raban, or Pilots-Island, just under the Cape, which, on the Arabian side, forms the north entrance of the Straits.

After getting within the Straits, the channel is divided into two, by the island of Perim, otherwise called *Mekum*. The inmost and northern channel, or that towards the Arabian shore, is two leagues broad at most, and from twelve to seventeen fathom of water. The other entry is three leagues broad, with deep water, from twenty to thirty fathom. From this, the coast on both sides runs nearly in a north west direction, widening as it advances, and the Indian Ocean grows straiter. The coast upon the left hand is part of the kingdom of Adel, and, on the right, that of Arabia Felix.

Early on the 2d, they saw land a-head, which they took to be the main; but, upon nearer approach, and the day becoming clearer, they found two low islands to the leeward; one of which they fetched with great difficulty. They found there the flock of an old acacia-tree, and two or three bundles of wreck, or rotten sticks, which they gathered with great care; and all of them agreed, that they would eat breakfast, dinner, and supper hot, instead of the cold repast they had made in the Straits. They now made several large fires; one took the charge of the coffee, another boiled the rice; they killed four turtles, made ready a dolphin; got beer, wine, and brandy, and drank the king's health in carnell, which their regimen would not allow them to do in the Straits of Babelmandch. While this good cheer was preparing, Mr. Bruce saw with his glass, first, one man running along the coast westward, who did not stop; about a quarter of an hour after, another upon a camel, walking at the ordinary pace, who dismounted just opposite to them, and, as he thought, kneeled down to say his prayers upon the sand. They had launched their boat immediately upon seeing the trunk of the tree on the island; so they were ready, and Mr. Bruce ordered two of the men to row him on shore, which they did. It is a bay of but ordinary depth, with straggling trees, and some flat ground along the coast. Immediately behind is a row of mountains of a brownish or black colour. Mr. Bruce went on shore, and, after some little intercourse with some of the natives, whose conduct was very suspicious, he directed the Rais to stand out towards Crab-Island, and there being a gentle breeze from the shore, carrying an easy sail, they stood over upon Mocha town, to avoid some rocks or islands.

About three o'clock in the morning of the 3d, they passed Jibbel el Ouré, then Jibbel Zekir; and having a steady gale, with fair and moderate weather, passing to the westward of the island Rasib, between that and some other islands to the north-east, where the wind turned contrary, they arrived at Loheia, the 6th, in the morning, and on the 3d of September failed from Loheia for Maluah.

The harbour of Loheia, which is by much the largest in the Red Sea, is now so shallow, and choked up, that, unless by a narrow canal through which you enter and go out, there is no where three fathom of water, and in many places not half that depth. This is the case with all the harbours on the east-coast of the Red Sea, while those on the west are deep, without any banks or bars before them.

In the evening of the 11th, they struck upon a reef of coral rocks; the Arabs were for taking immediately to the boat, till Mr. Bruce exerted his authority, and

d at well, they failed for
can.
urse within a mile of the
es there appeared to be
t bare country, bounded
ble distance. The wind

About four in the af-
tain which forms one of
f Babelmandeb, in shape

the morning, they came to
an, or Pilots-Island, just
the Arabian side, forms the

straits, the channel is di-
vid of Perim, otherwise
and northern channel, or
ore, is two leagues broad,
venteen fathom of water,
agues broad, with deep
fathom. From this, the
ly in a north west direc-
s, and the Indian Ocean
on the left hand is part
d, on the right, that of

and a-head, which they
on nearer approach, and
ey found two low islands
they fetched with great
re the flock of an old
e bundles of wreck, or
thered with great care;
ey would eat breakfast,
ead of the cold repast

They now made several
d of the coffee, another
ur turtles, made ready
and brandy, and drank
which their regimen

in the Straits of Babel-
eer was preparing, Mr.
one man running along
at flops; about a quarter
on a camel, walking at
ounted just opposite to
neeled down to lay his
ey had launched their
the trunk of the tree
eady, and Mr. Bruce
y him on shore, which
ordinary depth, with
ground along the coast.
y of mountains of a
Bruce went on shore,
rse with some of the
ery suspicious, he di-
wards Crab-Island, and
n the shore, carrying
on Mocha town, to

orning of the 3d, they
obel Zekir; and hav-
d moderate weather,
and Rafab, between
the north-east, where
rrived at Lohera, the
the 3d of September

ch is by much the
shallow, and choked
al through which you
ere three fathom of
alf that depth. This
on the east-coast of
well are deep, with-
n.

y struck upon a reef
for taking immedi-
certified his authority,
and

and obliged all hands to work, and get the vessel off
while it was calm. The boat was immediately launched,
and one of Mr. Bruce's servants, the Rais, and two
sailors, were put on board. They were soon upon
the bank, where the two sailors got out, who cut their
feet at first upon the white coral, but afterwards got
bramer footing. They attempted to push the ship back-
wards, but the would not move. Poles and hand-
spikes were tried in order to stir her, but these were
not long enough. In a word, there was no appear-
ance of getting her off before morning, when they
knew the wind would rise, and it was to be feared the
would then be dashed to pieces. Other efforts were
then used, and a great cry was set up, that she began
to move. A little after, a gentle wind just made it-
self felt from the east, and the cry from the Rais was,
"Hoist the fore-sail and put it a-back." This being
immediately done, and a gentle breeze filling the fore-
sail at the time, they all pushed, and the vessel slid
gently off, free from the shoal. Mr. Bruce did not
partake of the joy so suddenly as the others did. He
had always some fears a plank might have been start-
ed; but they saw the advantage of a vessel being
seated, rather than nailed together, as the not only
was unhurt, but made very little water.

At five in the afternoon, on the 19th of September,

they came to an anchor in the harbour of Mafuah,
having been seventeen days on their passage, includ-
ing the day they first went on board, though this
voyage, with a favourable wind, is generally made
in three days; it often has, indeed, been failed in
less. Yet this must not be wholly attributed to the
weather, as they spent much time in surveying the
islands.

Mafuah, or the harbour of the Shepherds, is a
small island on the Abyssinian shore, having an excel-
lent harbour, and water deep enough for ships of any
size to the very edge of the island: here they may
ride in the utmost security, from whatever point, or
with whatever degree of strength the wind blows.
The island itself is very small, being scarcely three
quarters of a mile in length, and about half that in
breadth: one third is occupied by houses, one by
cisterns to receive the rain-water, and the last is re-
served for burying the dead. This island was the
place of much resort as long as commerce flourished:
but it fell into sudden obscurity under the oppression
of the Turks, who put the finishing hand to the ruin
of the Indian trade in the Red Sea, begun some
years before, by the discovery of the Cape of Good
Hope, and the settlements made by the Portuguese
on the continent of India.

C H A P. II.

Various Transactions at Mafuah—Account of the Diseases of the Place, &c.—Mr. Bruce's Conference with the Naybe—His Journey from Arkeeko over the Mountain Tananta—From Dixon to Adawa—His Reception there—He visits several Places, Fremona, &c.—Journey from Sird to Adderger—Transactions there—Journey over Lamalwan to Gondar—Reception there—The King's triumphal Entry—Bruce's first Audience—Manners and Customs of the Abyssinians—Description of a Bloody Banquet—Religion of the Country, &c. &c.

THOUGH Mr. Bruce, on his arrival at Mafuah,
was very tired of the sea, and desirous to land,
yet, as it was evening, he thought it advisable to
sleep on board that night, that he might have a whole
day (as the first is always a busy one) before him, and
receive in the night any intelligence from friends, who
might not choose to venture to come openly to see
him and his company in the day, at least before the
determination of the Naybe, the governor of that
place, had been heard concerning them.

A person came from Mahomet Gibberti, on the
evening, to conduct Mr. Bruce on shore. The Naybe
himself was still at Arkeeko, and Achmet, his cousin
and successor, there he had come down to receive the
duties of the merchandise on board the vessel which
brought Mr. Bruce. There were two elbow chairs
placed in the middle of the market-place. Achmet
sat on one of them, while the several officers
opened the bales and packages before him; the other
chair on his left hand was empty. He was dressed all
in white, in a long Banian habit of muslin, and a close-
buttoned frock reaching to his ancles, much like the
white frock and petticoat the young children wear in
England. This species of dress did not, in any way,
suit Achmet's shape or size; but, it seems, he meant
to be in gala. As soon as Mr. Bruce came in sight of
him, he doubled his pace: Mahomet Gibberti's ser-
vant whispered Mr. Bruce not to kiss his hand,
which indeed he intended to have done. Achmet
stood up, just as he arrived within arm's length of
him; when they touched each other's hands, carried
their fingers to their lips, then laid their hands across
their breasts: Mr. Bruce pronounced the salutation
of the inferior *Salam Alicum!* Peace be between us;
to which he answered immediately, *Alicum Salam!*
There is peace between us. He pointed to the chair,
which Mr. Bruce declined; but he obliged him to sit
down.

The greater honour that is shewn on a first meeting,
in these countries, the more considerable present is
expended. He made a sign to bring coffee directly,
as the immediate offering of meat or drink is an as-
surance of amity and friendship. Mr. Bruce now
presented the letters of the Sheriff of Mecca, and
one from Metical Aga, which latter Achmet kept, as
it was to himself, but returned the others, as Mr.
Bruce, he said, should give them himself to the Naybe
the next day.

Having drunk their coffee, Mr. Bruce rose to take
his leave, and was soon wet to the skin by a great
quantity of orange flower-water, which two attend-
ants showered upon him from silver bottles, from the
right and left.

Our traveller was provided with a very commodi-
ous house, which he had no sooner entered, than a
large dinner was sent to him and his friends, by
Achmet, with a great quantity of lemons and nice
fresh water. Some short time after, their baggage
was sent unopened, which gave Mr. Bruce no small
pleasure.

A female slave came on the 10th of September,
with the proper credentials, viz. an Indian handker-
chief full of dry dates, and a pot or bottle of unvar-
nished potter's earth, which keeps the water very cool
and agreeable.

The Naybe came from Arkeeko in the morning of
the 21st. He was poorly attended by three or four
servants, miserably mounted, and about forty naked
savages on foot, armed with short lances and crooked
knives. The drum beat before him all the way from
Arkeeko to Mafuah. Upon entering the boat, the
drum on the land-side ceased, and those, in what is
called the Cattle of Mafuah, began. The cattle is a
small clay hut, and in it one twivel gun, which
is not mounted, but lies upon the ground, and is fired
always with great trepidation and some danger. The
drums

drums are earthen jars, such as they send butter into Arabia; the mouths of which are covered with a skin, so that a stranger, on seeing two or three of these together, would run a great risk of believing them to be jars of butter, or pickles, carefully covered with oiled parchment. All the procession was in the same style. The Naybe was dressed in an old shabby Turkish habit, much too short for him, and seemed to have been made about the time of Sultan Selim. He wore also upon his head a Turkish cowke, or high cap, which scarcely admitted any part of his head. In this dress, which on him had a truly ridiculous appearance, he received the casian, or investiture, of the island of Masuah; and being thereby representative of the grand seignior, consented that day, in honour of the commission, to be called Omar Aga.

Mr. Bruce went in the afternoon to pay his respects to the Naybe, and found him sitting on a large wooden elbow-chair, at the head of two files of naked savages, who made an avenue from his chair to the door. He had nothing upon him but a coarse cotton shirt, so dirty, that it seemed all pains to clean it again would be thrown away, and so short that it scarcely reached his knees. He was very tall and lean, his colour black, had a large mouth and nose; in place of a beard, a very scanty tuft of grey hairs upon the point of his chin; large, dull, and heavy eyes; a kind of malicious, contemptuous smile on his countenance; he was altogether of a most stupid, and brutal appearance. His character perfectly corresponded with his figure, for he was a man of mean abilities, cruel to excess, avaricious, and a great drunkard.

Mr. Bruce presented his firman, which the Naybe pushed back and desired him to read. Mr. Bruce told him it was Turkish; that he had never learned to read a word of that language.—“Nor I neither,” says he; “and I believe I never shall.” Mr. Bruce then gave him the other letters he had brought with him. He took them altogether in both his hands, and laid them unopened beside him, saying, “You should have brought a moullah along with you. Do you think I shall read all these letters? Why, it would take me a month.” He then gazed upon our traveller, with his mouth open, so like an idiot, that it was with the utmost difficulty Mr. Bruce kept his gravity. This short conversation was succeeded with a long silence; at last Mr. Bruce took the opportunity to give him his present, with which he did not seem displeas'd, but rather that it was below him to tell him so; he then took his leave of the Naybe, very little pleas'd with his reception, and the small account he seem'd to make of his letters, or of himself. About this time the small-pox was raging with such violence at Masuah, that it was fear'd the living would not be sufficient to bury the dead. The whole island was fill'd with shrieks and lamentations both night and day. They at last began to throw the bodies into the sea, which deprived our travellers of the fish, of which they had ate some kinds that were excellent.

On the 15th of October the Naybe came to Masuah, dispatched the vessel that brought our travellers over; and, as if he had only waited till this evidence was out of the way, he, that very night, sent word, that Mr. Bruce was to prepare him a handsome present. He gave in a long list of particulars to a great amount, which he desired might be divided into three parcels, and presented three several days. One was to be given him as Naybe of Arkeeko; one as Omar Aga, representative of the grand seignior; and one for having pass'd their baggage gratis and unvisited, especially the large quadrant.

Mr. Bruce encouraged by the assurance of protection he had received, answer'd, That, having a firman of the grand seignior, and letters from Metical Aga, it was mere generosity should he give him any present at all, either as Naybe or Omar Aga; that he was not a merchant that bought and sold, nor had mer-

chandize on board, therefore had no customs to pay. Upon this he sent for Mr. Bruce to his house, where he found him in a violent fury, and many useless words pass'd on both sides. At last he peremptorily told our traveller, That unless he had 300 ounces of gold ready to pay him on Monday, upon his landing from Arkeeko, he would confine him in a dungeon, without light, air, or meat, till the bones came through his skin for want.

October the 29th, the Naybe came again from Arkeeko to Masuah, and Mr. Bruce was told, in a very ill humour with him. He soon received a message to attend him, and found him in a large white room like a barn, with about sixty people with him. This was his divan, or grand council, with all his janizaries and officers of state, all naked, assembled in parliament. There was a comet that had appear'd a few days after their arrival at Masuah, which had been many days visible in Arabia Felix, being then in its perihelion; and, after passing its conjunction with the sun, it now appear'd at Masuah early in the evening, receding to its aphelion. Mr. Bruce had been observ'd watching it with great attention, and the large tubes of the telescopes had given offence to ignorant people. The first question the Naybe ask'd him was, “What that comet meant, and why it appear'd?” And before he could answer him, he again said, “The first time it was visible it brought the small-pox, which has killed above 1000 people in Masuah and Arkeeko. It is known you convers'd with it every night at Lohcia; it has now follow'd you again to finish the few that remain, and then you are to carry it into Abyssinia. What have you to do with the comet?”

Before Mr. Bruce had time to speak, his brother, Emir Achmet, then said, “That he was inform'd, our traveller was an engineer going to Michael, governor of Tigre, to teach the Abyssinians to make cannon and gunpowder; that the last attack was to be against Masuah.” Five or six others spoke much in the same strain; and the Naybe concluded by saying, That he would send Mr. Bruce in chains to Constantinople, unless he went to Hamazan, with his brother Emir Achmet, to the hot-wells there, and that this was the resolution of all the janizaries; for he had conceal'd his being a physician.

After much altercation between Mr. Bruce and the Naybe, the former turn'd his back, and Mr. Bruce went away exceedingly disturb'd, as it was plain his affairs were coming to a crisis for good or for evil. He observ'd, or thought he observ'd, all the people shunn'd him. He was, indeed, upon his guard, and did not wish them to come near him; but, turning down into his own gateway, a man pass'd close by him, laying distinctly in his ear, though in a low voice, first in Tigre and then in Arabic, “Be not afraid.” This hint, short as it was, gave him no small courage.

In the morning of the 6th of November while at breakfast Mr. Bruce was told, that three servants had arriv'd from Tigre; one from Janni, a young man and slave, who spoke and wrote Greek perfectly; the other two servants were Ras Michael's or rather the king's, both wearing the red short cloak lined and turn'd up with mazarine-blue, which is the badge of the king's servant, and is call'd *shikan*. Ras Michael's letters to the Naybe were very short. He said the king Harzé Hannes's health was bad, and wonder'd at hearing that the physician, sent to him by Metical Aga from Arabia, was not forward'd to him instantly at Gondar, as he had heard of his being arriv'd at Masuah some time before. He order'd the Naybe, moreover, to furnish him with necessaries, and dispatch him without further delay.

The island of Masuah is very unwholesome, as, indeed, is the whole coast of the Red Sea, from Succz to Babelmanleh, but more especially between the tropics. Violent fevers, call'd there *medat*, make the principal figure in this fatal list, and generally terminate the third day in death. The next com-

had no customs to pay. Bruce to his house, where he was very angry, and many useless. At last he peremptorily ordered him to go. Monday, upon his land, he confined him in a dun-geon, till the bones rotted. The Naybe came again from Mr. Bruce was told, in a few days he received a message from him in a large walled city, with fifty people with him, and a council, with all his family, all naked, assembled to see what had appeared at Mafuah, which was in Arabia Felix, being after passing its conjuncture appeared at Mafuah early in the afternoon. Mr. Bruce was with great attention, and hopes had given offence to all question the Naybe meant, and why he could answer him, he it was visible it brought above 1000 people is known you converted; it has now followed; it remains, and then you What have you to do

to speak, his brother, that he was informed, going to Michael, go to Abyssinians to make the first attack was to six others spoke much. Naybe concluded by Mr. Bruce in chains to Hamazen, with to the hot-wells there, of all the janizaries; a physician.

When Mr. Bruce and ed his back, and Mr. y disturbed, as it was to a crisis for good or thought he observed, He was, indeed, upon em to come near him; own gateway, a man distinctly in his car, in Tigre and then in his hint, short as it was,

of November while at ed, that three servants from Janni, a young wrote Greek perfectly; as Michael's or rather red short cloak lined re-blue, which is the and is called *shabib*. aybe were very thori- nes's health was bad, the physician, sent to sia, was not forwarded; he had heard of his time before. He or- to furnish him with without further delay, unwholesome, as, in- Red Sea from Suez pecially between the d there *medas*, make al list, and generally th. The next com- mon

more disease in the low country of Arabia, the inter- mediate island of Mafuah, and all Abyssinia (for the diseases are exactly similar in all this tract) is the Peste, which is in nothing different from our Pestilence, and is successfully treated here in the same manner as in Europe. As no species of this disease, as far as Mr. Bruce saw, menaces the patient with death, especially in the beginning of the disorder, some time may be allowed for preparation to those who doubt the effect of the bark in this country. That still he apprehends the safest way is to give small doses from the beginning, on the first intermission, or even remission, though this should be somewhat obscure and uncertain. The next disease, is called *lepra*, the *begs* or the *fevere*, and is a swelling of the glands of the throat, and under the arms. The next (though not a dangerous complaint) has a very terrible appearance. Small tubercles or swellings appear all over the body, but thickest in the thighs, arms, and legs. These swellings go and come for weeks together without pain; though the legs often swell to a monstrous size, as in the dropsy. The next complaint Mr. Bruce mentions, as common in these countries, is called *Farente*, a corruption of an Arabic word, which signifies the worm of Pharaoh. This extraordinary animal only afflicts those who are in constant habit of drinking stagnant water, whether that water is drawn out from wells, as in the kingdom of Senaar, or found by digging in the sand where it is making its way to its proper level the sea, after falling down the side of the mountains after the tropical rains. This plague appears indiscriminately in every part of the body, but oftenest in the legs and arms. Upon looking at this worm, on its first appearance, a small black head is extremely visible, with a hooked beak of a whitish colour. Its body is seemingly of a white silky texture, very like a small tendon bared and perfectly cleaned. After its appearance, the natives of these countries, who are used to it, seize it gently by the head, and wrap it round a thin piece of silk or small bird's feather. Every day, or several times a day, they try to wind it up upon the quill as far as it comes readily; and, upon the smallest resistance, they give over for fear of striking it.

Mr. Bruce himself experienced this complaint. About three inches of the worm were wound out upon a piece of raw silk in the first week, without pain or fever; but it was broken afterwards, though the carefulness and rathness of the surgeon, when changing a poultice on board the ship in which he returned to France: a violent inflammation followed; the leg swelled so as to scarce leave the appearance of knee or ankle; the skin, red and distended, seemed glazed like a mirror. The wound was now healed, and discharged nothing; and there was every appearance of a mortification coming on. The great care and attention procured him in the lazaretto at Marseilles, by a nation always foremost in the acts of humanity to strangers, and the attention and skill of the surgeon, recovered him from this troublesome complaint.

The last and most horrible of all these endemial diseases is the Elephantiasis, which some have chosen to call the Leprosy, or *Lepra Arabum*. During the course of it, the face is often healthy to appearance; the eyes vivid and sparkling; those affected have sometimes a kind of dryness upon the skin of their backs, which, upon scratching, leaves a meanness, or whiteness; the only circumstance, in which it resembled the leprosy; but it has no scabiness. The hair, too, is of its natural colour; not white, yellowish, or thin, as in the leprosy, but so far from it, that though the Abyssinians have very rarely hair upon their chin, Mr. Bruce has seen people apparently in the last stage of the elephantiasis, with a very good beard of its natural colour. The appetite is generally good during this disease, nor does any change of regimen affect the complaint.

When a relative or friend is dead at Mafuah, the women, friends, and visitors, place themselves in a

ring; then dance slowly, figuring in and out as in a country dance. This dance is all to the voice, no instrument being used upon the occasion; only the drum (the butter-jar before mentioned) is beat adroitly enough, and seems at once necessary to keep the dance and song in order. In Abyssinia too this is pursued in a manner more ridiculous. Upon the death of an ozoro, or any nobleman, the twelve judges (who are generally between 60 and 70 years of age) sing the song, and dance the figure-dance, in a manner truly ridiculous.

It is customary in Mafuah for people to burn myrrah and incense in their houses before they open the doors in the morning; and when they go out at night, or early in the day, they have always a small piece of rag, highly fumigated with these two perfumes, which they thrust into each nostril to keep them from the unwholesome air. Their houses are, in general, built of poles and bent grass, as in the towns of Arabia: but besides these, there are about twenty of stone, six or eight of which are two stories each; though the second seldom consists of more than one room, and that one generally not a large one. Situated as Mafuah is, in the very entrance of Abyssinia, a very plentiful country, yet all the necessaries of life are scarce and dear. Their quality too, is very indifferent, notwithstanding a considerable trade is carried on; but it is all done in a slovenly manner, and for articles where a small capital is invested.

Mr. Bruce waited upon the Naybe at his own house on the 13th, and was received with more civility than usual: he repeated his visit, by appointment, next day, having first struck his tent, and got all his baggage in readiness. He received him as before, then told him with a grave air, "that he was willing to further his journey into Habesh to the utmost of his power, provided he shewed him that consideration which was due to him from all passengers; that as, by his tent, baggage, and arms, he saw he was a man above the common sort, which the grand seignior's firman, and all his letters testified, less than 1000 patakas offered by him would be putting a great affront upon him; however, in consideration of the governor of Tigre, to whom he was going, he would consent to receive 300, upon his swearing not to divulge this, for fear of the shame that would fall upon him abroad. Mr. Bruce answered in the same grave tone, that he thought him very wrong to take 300 patakas with shame, when receiving a thousand would be more honourable as well as more profitable; therefore he had nothing to do but put that into his account-book with the governor of Tigre, and settle his honour and his interest together. As for himself, he was sent for by Metical Aga, on account of the king, and was proceeding accordingly, and if he opposed his going forward to Metical Aga, he should expect ten thousand patakas from Metical Aga, for the trouble and loss of time he had been at, which he and the Ras would no doubt settle with him." The Naybe made no reply, but muttered with vexation.

Early on the 15th, Mr. Bruce again struck his tent, and had his baggage prepared, to shew they were determined to stay no longer. At eight o'clock, he went to the Naybe, and found him almost alone, when he received him in a manner that, for him, might have passed for civil. He began with a considerable degree of eloquence, or fluency of speech, a long enumeration of the difficulties of their journey, the rivers, precipices, mountains, and woods they were to pass; the number of wild beasts every where to be found; as also the wild savage people that inhabited those places; the most of which, he said, were luckily under his command, and he would recommend to them to do them all manner of good offices. He commanded two of his secretaries to write the proper letters, and then ordered them coffee. In the mean time came in a servant covered with dust and seemingly fatigued, as having arrived in haste from afar. The Naybe, with a considerable deal of uneasiness and confusion, opened the letters, which were said

to bring intelligence, that the Harata, Shio, and Tora, the three nations who possessed that part of Samhar, through which the road led to Dobarwa, the common passage from Mahnah to Tigre, had revolted, driven away his servants, and declared themselves independent. He then (as if all was over) ordered his secretaries to stop writing; and, lifting up his eyes, began, with great seeming devotion, to thank God they were not already on their journey; for, innocent as he was, when our travellers should have been cut off, the fault would have been imputed to him. Angry as Mr. Bruce was at to have faced a facee, he could not help bursting out into a fit of loud laughter, when the Naybe put on his feverish countenance, and desired to know the reason of his laughing at that time. "It is now two months (said Mr. Bruce) since you have been throwing various objections in my way; can you wonder that I do not give into the grofs and impious? This same morning, before I took my tent, in presence of your nephew Achmet, I spoke with two Shaio (said Achmet) from Samhar, who brought letters to Acineta, which I had, all was in peace. Have you either patience than that of this morning? The Naybe was for some time without speaking; then said, "If you are weary of living, you are welcome to go; but I will do my duty in warning those that are engaged with you of their and your danger, that, when the mischief happens, it may not be imputed to me." "No number of naked Shaio (said Mr. Bruce) unless influenced by you, can ever be bound on our road, that will venture to attack us. The Shaio have no fire-arms; but if you have lent on purpose some of your soldiers that have fire-arms, these will discover by what authority they come. For our part, we cannot fly; we neither know the country, the language, nor the watering-places, and we shall not attempt it. We have plenty of different sorts of fire-arms, and your servants have often seen at Mahnah we are not ignorant of the use of them. We, it is true, may lose our lives, that is in the hand of the Almighty; but we shall not fail to leave enough on the spot, to give sufficient indication to the king and Ras Michael, who it was that were our assassins." Mr. Bruce then rose very abruptly to go away. The countenance of the Naybe now changed in a moment. In his turn he burst out into a loud fit of laughter, which surpris'd our traveller full as much as his, some time before, had done him. Every feature of his treacherous countenance was altered and softened into complacency; and he, for the first time, bore the appearance of man. He then confessed, that the whole was only a pretence to keep them there. "But since you are resolved to go, be not afraid; the roads are safe enough. I will give you a person to conduct you, that will carry you in safety, even if there was danger; only go and prepare such remedies as may be proper for the Emir, and leave them with my nephew Achmet, while I finish my letters." This Mr. Bruce willingly consented to do, and on his return found every thing ready for their departure.

Mr. Bruce and his party left Atkeeko on the 15th, taking road southward, along the plain, which is not here above a mile broad, and covered with short grass, nothing different from ours, only that the blade is broader. After an hour's journey Mr. Bruce pitched his tent at Laberhey, near a pit of rain-water. The mountains of Abyssinia have a singular aspect from this, as they appear in three ridges. The first is of no considerable height, but full of gullies and broken ground, thinly covered with shrubs; the second, higher and steeper, still more rugged and bare; the third is a row of sharp, uneven-edged mountains, which would be counted high in any country in Europe. Far above the top of all, towers that stupendous mass, the mountain of Faranta, probably one of the highest in the world, the point of which is buried in the clouds, and very rarely seen but in the clearest weather; at other

times abandoned to perpetual mist and darkness, the feat of lightning, thunder, and of storm.

A messenger from the Naybe arrived in the evening at their tent at Laberhey, and carried away their guide Salomé. It was not till the next day that he appeared again, and with him Achmet, the Naybe's nephew, who went into the tent, called for coffee, and, while drinking it, told Mr. Bruce he was not to go to Dobarwa, though it is the best road, the best being preferable to the easiest. He then gave his orders to Salomé, and took his leave of the travellers.

They left Laberhey on the 16th, in the evening, and after continuing about an hour along the plain, their grass ended, the ground becoming dry, stony, and gravelly, and they then entered into a wood of acacia-trees of considerable size.

Early on the 17th, they left their station on the side of a green hill at Hamman near for some time their road lay through a plain thick with acacia-trees that their buds and leaves were all torn and bloody with the strokes of the scythes by which they had half past eleven, they entered the mouth of a narrow valley, through which a stream of water ran very swiftly over a bed of pebbles. It was the first clear water they had seen since they left Syria, and gave them unexpressed pleasure.

The next day they continued their journey, the road still winding between mountains, and a small current of a river, flowing on each side with rose and ficomore trees of a good size. At half past eight o'clock, they encamped at a place called Tanna, where the mountains are very steep, and broken very abruptly into hills and precipices. Tanna was by much the most agreeable station they had seen; the trees were thick, full of leaves, and gave them abundance of very dark shade.

On the 20th, they began to ascend the hills, or eminences, which serve as the roots or skirts of the great mountain Faranta. The road was on each side bordered with nabca, or junep trees of great beauty, and ficomores perfectly deprived of their verdure and branches. The country here is every where deprived of the shade it would enjoy from these fine trees, by the barbarous axes of the Harata. They found every where immense flocks of antelopes; as also partridges of a small kind that willingly took refuge upon trees; neither of these seemed to consider our travellers as enemies. In the afternoon, they began to ascend the mountain, through a most rocky, uneven road, if it can deserve the name, not only from its incredible steepness, but from the large holes and gulches made by the torrents, and the huge monstrous fragments of rocks, which, loosened by the water, had been tumbled down into their way. It was with great difficulty they could creep up, each man carrying his knapsack and arms. The quadrant had hitherto been carried by eight men, four to relieve each other; but these were ready to give up the undertaking upon trial of the first few hundred yards. At last, Mr. Bruce and a stranger Moor who had followed them, carried the head of it for about 300 yards over the most difficult and steepest part of the mountain, which before had been considered as impracticable by all. This Moor's name was Yafine, recommended to Mr. Bruce by Metical Aga, a person whom he had discovered to be of a most sagacious turn of mind, firm heart, and strenuous nerves: never more dilligent for these qualities than in the hour of imminent danger; at other times remarkable for quietness and silence, and a constant study of his Koran.

From the extreme weariness in the exertions they had made, they found it impossible to pitch their tents; add to this, there was not earth enough covering the bare sides of Faranta to hold fast a tent-pin; there were, however, variety of caves near them, and throughout the mountain, which had served for houses to the old inhabitants; and in these they found a quiet and not inconvenient place of repose, during the present night.

mill and darkness, the
and of storm.
day he arrived in the even-
ing, and carried away their
till the next day that he
him Achmet, the Naybe's
tent, called for coffee,
Mr. Bruce he was not
is the best road, the fall
off. He then gave his
his leave of the travellers,
the 10th, in the evening,
an hour along the plain,
and becoming dry, he
entered into a valley of
size.

left their station on the
hamoon for some time
to track for some accen-
tation, and all towards
the very branches of
the mouth of a river
team of water ran
It was the first clear
they left Syria, and gave

continued their journey, the
mountain on each side with
good fire. At had built
at a place called Tama
by fleecy, and broken very
express. Tullio was by
on they had been; the
es, and gave them abund-

to ascend the hills, or
the roots or skirts of the
The road was on each
or jump trees of great
perfectly deprived of their
country here is every-
le it would enjoy from
trous axes of the Harata,
menfe flocks of antelope,
kind that willingly took
of these seemed to con-
taines. In the afternoon,
mountain, through a most
can defend the name,
sleepiness, but from the
le by the torrents, and
ments of rocks, which
been tumbled down into
at difficulty they could
his knapack and arms
been carried by every
other; but these were
ertaking upon trial of

. At last, Mr. Bruce
l followed them, carried
o yards over the mouth
f the mountain, which
s impracticable by all.
y, recommended to Mr.
on whom he had discov-
erous turn of mind, firm
ever more distinguished
the hour of imminent
kable for quickness and
f his Koran.

s in the exertions they
possible to pitch their
ot earth enough cover-
o hold fall a tent pin;
of cases near them,
which had served for
; and in these they
ient place of repose,

Early

Early on the 21st, Mr. Bruce, having encouraged
his company with good words, increase of wages,
and hopes of reward, they began to encounter the
other half of the mountain. His baggage moved
much more briskly than the preceding day. The
upper part of the mountain was, indeed, steeper,
more craggy, rugged, and slippery, than the lower,
and impeded more with trees, but not embarrassed
so much with large stones and holes. Their knees
and hands, however, were cut to pieces by frequent
falls, and their faces torn by the multitude of thorny
bushes. At last, they gained the top of the moun-
tain, upon which is situated a small village called
Halai, the first they had been since their leaving
Malah. It is chiefly inhabited by poor servants
and shepherds, keeping the flocks of men of sub-
stance living in the town of Dixan. The plain on
the top of the mountain Taranta was, in many places,
sown with wheat, which was then ready to be cut
down, though the harvest was not yet begun. The
grain was clean, and of a good colour, but inferior
in size to that of Egypt. It did not, however, grow
thick, nor was the stalk above fourteen inches high.
The water is very bad on the top of Taranta, being
only what remains of the rain in the hollows of the
rocks, and in pits prepared for it. Being very tired,
they pitched their tent on the top of the mountain.
The night was remarkably cold, at least appeared
so to them, whose pores were opened by the exces-
sive heat of Malah. The dew began to fall strongly,
and continued till an hour after sun-set, though
the sky was perfectly clear, and the smallest stars
were perceptible.

Our traveller killed a large eagle here, about six
feet ten inches from wing to wing. It seemed very
tired till then. The ball having wounded it but
slightly, when on the ground it could not be pre-
vented from attacking the men or beasts near it with
great force and fierceness, so that Mr. Bruce was
obliged to slay it with a bayonet. It was of a dirty
white; only the head and upper part of its wings were
of a light brown.

On the 22d in the morning they left their station
on the top of Taranta, and soon after began to de-
scend on the side of Tigre through a broken and un-
even road. After this they began to mount a small
hill, from which they had a distinct view of Dixan.
They pitched their tent near some marshy ground for
the sake of water, at three quarters past ten, but it
was very bad, having been for several weeks stagnant.
They law here the people busy at their wheat harvest;
others, who had finished theirs, were treading it out
with cows or bullocks. They make no use of their
straw; sometimes they burn it, and sometimes leave
it on the spot to rot.

They came to Dixan at half an hour after four in
the afternoon. Halai was the first village, so is this
the first town in Abyssinia, on the side of Taranta.
Dixan is built on the top of a hill, perfectly in the
form of a sugar loaf; a deep valley furrows it every
where like a trench, and a road winds spirally up the
hill till it ends among the houses.

Mr. Bruce's baggage had passed the trench, and had
reached the low town through which Saloomé had
conducted him, under pretence of getting a speedy
shelter from the heat: but he overacted his part; and
Janni, his servant, who spoke Greek, giving Mr.
Bruce a hint to go no further, he turned short towards
the house, and sat down with his firelock upon a stone
at the door. Their baggage quickly followed, and
all was put safe in a kind of court enclosed with a
sufficient stone-wall.

Soon after Haji Abdeleader, Achmet's friend,
came to them, inviting Mr. Bruce civilly to his house,
and declaring to him the friendly orders he had re-
ceived from Achmet concerning him; bringing along
with him also a goat, some butter, and honey. Mr.
Bruce excused himself from leaving Janni's friend,
the Christian, where he had first alighted; but he re-
commended Yafine to him, for he had begun to show

great attachment to Mr. Bruce. In about a quarter
of an hour came Saloomé with about twenty men,
and demanded our travellers, in the name of the
Naybe, as his strangers: he said they owed him
money for conducting them, and likewise for the cus-
tom-house dues. In a moment near an hundred men
were assembled round Haji Abdeleader, all with
shields and lances, and Mr. Bruce expected to see a
fray of the most furious kind. But Abdeleader, with
a twitch in his hand, went gravely up to Saloomé, and
after chiding his party with great authority, he held
up his stick twice over Saloomé's head, as if to strike
him; then ordered him, if he had any demands, to
come to him in the evening; upon which both parties
dispersed, and left them in peace. The matter was
settled very amicably in the evening with Saloomé.

The town of Dixan consists of Moors and Chris-
tians, and is very well peopled; yet the only trade of
either of these sects is a very extraordinary one, that
of selling children. The Christians bring such as
they have stolen in Abyssinia to Dixan as a lure de-
posit; and the Moors receive them there, and carry
them to a certain market at Mafuah, whence they are
sent over to Arabia or India. The priests of the
province of Tigre, especially those near the rock
Damo, are openly concerned in this inhuman prac-
tice; and some of these have been licensed by Michael
to carry it on as a fair trade, upon paying to many
firelocks for each dozen or score of slaves.

Mr. Bruce and his party left Dixan on the 25th of
November, descending the very deep hill on which
the town is situated. Haji Abdeleader had attended
them thus far before he left them, and the noted Sa-
loomé came likewise, to see if some occasion would
offer of doing them further mischief; but the king's
servants, now upon their own ground, began to take
upon them a proper consequence. One of them
went to meet Saloomé at the bank of the river; and,
making a mark on the ground with his knife, declared
that his patience was quite exhausted by what he had
been witness to at Mefuah and Dixan; and if now
Saloomé, or any other man belonging to the Naybe,
offered to pass that mark, he would bind him hand and
foot, and carry him to a place, where he should be
left tied to a tree, a prey to the lion and hyena. They
all returned, and there our traveller's persecution
from the Naybe ended. But it was very evident, from
Achmet's behaviour and discourse, had they gone by
Dobarwa, which was the road proposed by the Naybe,
their sufferings would not have been as yet half finished,
unless they had ended with their lives. They re-
mained, during the night, under a tree seven feet
and a half in diameter.

Early on the 26th, they left their most pleasant
quarters under the tree, and set forward with great alac-
rity. About a quarter of a mile from the river they crossed
the end of the plain Zarai. Though this is but three
miles long, and one where broadest, it was the largest
plain they had seen since their passing Taranta, whose
top was now covered wholly with large, black, and
very heavy clouds, from which they heard and saw
frequent peals of thunder, and violent streams of
lightning. This plain was sown partly with wheat,
partly with Indian corn; the first was cut down, the
other not yet ripe.

They left Hadawi on the 27th, continuing their
journey down a very steep and narrow path between
two stony hills; then ascended one still higher upon
the top of which stands the large village of Gou-
bubba, whence they had a prospect over a consider-
able plain, all sown with the different grain this coun-
try produces, wheat, barley, teff, and tocusso; sim-
sim (or sesame) and nook; the last is used for oil.

About five o'clock in the afternoon, they had a
violent shower of hailstones. Nothing is more com-
mon than aggravation about the size of hail; but,
flooping to take up one, Mr. Bruce thought as large
as a nutmeg, he received a blow from another just
under his eye, which he imagined had blinded him,
and which occasioned a swelling all the next day.

Yafine,

Yafine, the Moor, already mentioned, who was recommended by Metical Aga, during the four days Mr. Bruce had staid at a place called Kello, had told him his whole history. It seems he had been settled in a province of Abyffinia, near to Sennaar, called Ras el Feel; had married Abd el Jilleel, the Shekh's daughter; but, growing more popular than his father-in-law, he had been persecuted by him, and obliged to leave the country. He began now to form hopes, that, if Mr. Bruce was well received, as he saw, in all appearance, he was to be, he might, by his interest, be appointed to his father-in-law's place; especially if there was war, as every thing seemed to indicate. Abd el Jilleel was a coward, and incapable of making himself of personal value to any party. On the contrary, Yafine was a tried man, an excellent horseman, strong, active, and of known courage; having been twice with the late king Yafous in his invasions of Sennaar, and both times much wounded there.

They began, on the 5th of December, for the first time, to see the high mountains of Adowa, nothing resembling in shape to those of Europe, nor, indeed, any other country. Their sides were all perpendicular rocks, high like steeples, or obelisks, and broken into a thousand different forms.

Afterwards they passed the Mareb, which is the boundary between Tigré and the Baharnaqath, on this side. It runs over a bed of soil; is large, deep, and smooth; but, upon rain falling, it is more dangerous to pass than any river in Abyffinia, on account of the frequent holes in its bottom. They then entered the narrow plain of Yecha, wherein runs the small river, which either gives its name to, or takes it from it. At eleven o'clock, they rested by the side of the mountain whence the river falls. All the villages that had been built here bore the marks of the justice of the governor of Tigré. They had been long the most incorrigible banditti in the province. He surrounded them in one night, burnt their houses, extirpated the inhabitants, and would never suffer any one since to settle in those parts.

On the 6th of December, they again proceeded on their journey, and in about three hours travelling on a very pleasant road, over easy hills, and through hedge-rows of jessamine, honey-suckles, and many kinds of flowering shrubs, they arrived at Adowa, where Michael Suhul, governor of Tigré, once resided.

Adowa is situated on the declivity of a hill, on the west side of a small plain, surrounded every where by mountains. This plain is watered by three rivulets which are never dry in the midst of summer. There are fish in these three streams, but none of them remarkable for their size, quantity, or goodness. The best are those of Mai Gogua, a clear and pleasant rivulet, running very violently, and with great noise. There are many agreeable spots to the south-east of the convent, on the banks of this river, which are thick-shaded with wood and bushes. Adowa consists of about 300 houses, and occupies a much larger space than would be thought necessary for these to stand on, by reason that each house has an enclosure round it of hedges and trees; the last chiefly the wanzey. The number of these trees so planted in all the towns, screen them so, that, at a distance, they appear for many woods. Adowa was not formerly the capital of Tigré, but has accidentally become so upon the accession of this governor, whose property, or paternal estate, lay in and about it. His mansion-house is not distinguished from any of the others in the town, unless by its size; it is situated upon the top of the hill, and resembles a prison rather than a palace; for there are in and about it above three hundred persons in irons, some of whom have been there for twenty years, mostly with a view to extort money from them; and, what is the most unhappy, even when they have paid the sum of money which he asks, they do not get their deliverance from his mercilefs hands: most of them are kept in cages like wild beasts, and treated every way in the same manner.

The appearance of their kind and hospitable lord, Janni, particularly interested our travellers. He had sent servants to conduct them from the passage of the river, and met them himself at the outer-door of his house. He had his own short white hair, covered with a thin muslin turban, a thick well-shaped beard, as white as snow, down to his waist. He was clothed in the Abyffinian drfs, all of white cotton, only he had a red silk sash, embroidered with gold, about his waist, and sandals on his feet; his upper garment reached down to his ankles. He had a number of servants and slaves about him of both sexes; and, when Mr. Bruce approached him, he seemed disposed to receive him with marks of humility and inferiority, which mortified him much, considering the obligations he was under to him, the trouble he had given, and was unavoidably still to give him. Mr. Bruce embraced him with great acknowledgements of kindness and gratitude, calling him Father, a title he always used in speaking either to him or of him afterwards, when he was in higher fortune, which he constantly remembered with great pleasure. It conducted them through a court-yard planted with jessamine, to a very neat, and, at the same time, large room, furnished with a silk sofa; the floor was covered with Persian carpets and cushions. All round, flowers and green leaves were thrown upon the court-yard; and the windows and sides of the room were full of ever-greens, in commemoration of the Christmas festival that was at hand. Mr. Bruce stopped at the entrance of this room; for his feet were both dirty and bloody; and it is not good breeding, to show or speak of your feet in Abyffinia, especially if any thing ails them; and at all times, they are covered. Janni immediately perceived the wounds that were upon his feet. Both their clothes and flesh were torn to pieces at Taranta, and several other places, but he thought they had come on mules furnished them by the Naybe. For the young man Mr. Bruce had sent to him from Kella, following the genius of his countrymen, though telling truth was just as profitable to him as lying, had chosen the latter, and seeing the horse he had got from the Baharnaqath, had figured, in his own imagination, a multitude of others, and told Janni that there were with Mr. Bruce horses, asses, and mules, in great plenty, so that when Janni saw them palling the water, he took our traveller for a servant, and expected, for several minutes, to see the splendid company arrive, well-mounted upon horses and mules caparisoned.

Janni was so shocked at Mr. Bruce's saying, that he performed this terrible journey on foot, that he burst into tears, uttering a thousand reproaches against the Naybe for his hard-heartedness and ingratitude, as he had twice, as he said, hindered Michael from going in person and sweeping the Naybe from the face of the earth. Water was immediately procured to wash their feet. And here began another contention: Janni insisted upon doing this himself, which made Mr. Bruce run out into the yard, and declare he would not suffer it. After this, the like dispute took place among the servants. It was always a ceremony in Abyffinia, to wash the feet of those that come from Cairo, and who are understood to have been pilgrims at Jerusalem. No sooner was this finished, than a great dinner was brought, exceedingly well dressed. But no consideration or entreaty could prevail upon their kind landlord to sit down and partake with them. He would stand all the time, with a clean towel in his hand, though he had plenty of servants; and afterwards dined with some visitors, who had come out of curiosity, to see a man arrived from so far. It was long before Mr. Bruce cured his kind landlord of these respectful observances, which troubled him very much, nor could Janni wholly ever get rid of them.

Adowa is the seat of a very valuable manufacture of coarse cotton cloth, which circulates all over Abyffinia, instead of silver money; each web is sixteen peck long of $1\frac{1}{2}$ width, their value a pataka; that is,

and hospitable to-
 interested our travellers,
 let them from the passage
 himself at the outer-door
 in short white hair, can-
 van, a thick well-shaped
 to his waist. He was
 els, all of white cotton,
 embroidered with gold,
 on his feet; his upper
 angles. He had a num-
 out him of both sexes;
 bached him, he seemed
 marks of humility and
 him much, considering
 to him, the trouble he
 lly still to give him
 th great acknowledgement,
 ole, calling him Father,
 ing either to him or of
 in higher fortune, which
 th great pleasure. He
 court-yard planted with
 at the same time, large
 pha; the floor was cov-
 ered with cushions. All round
 shewed upon the outer
 sides of the room flux-
 emoration of the Christi-
 anity.

Mr. Bruce stopped at
 for his feet were both
 not good breeding, in
 Abyssinia, especially at
 all times, they are ex-
 ceived the wounds that
 r clothes and flesh were
 ad several other places,
 me on mules furnished
 a young man Mr. Bruce
 following the genius of
 g truth was just as pro-
 chofen the latter, and
 n the Baharnagash, had
 a multitude of others,
 with Mr. Bruce horses,
 ty, so that when Jan-
 took our traveller for
 several minutes, to see
 well-mounted upon

Mr. Bruce's saying, that
 rney on foot, that he
 and reproaches against
 elnets and ingratitude,
 ndered Michael from
 g the Naybe from the
 immediately procured
 began another conten-
 ng this himself, which
 the yard, and declare
 this, the like dispute

It was always a ce-
 the feet of those that
 e understood to have
 No sooner was this
 was brought, exceed-
 sideration or entreaty
 ndlord to sit down and
 and all the time, with
 gh he had plenty of
 l with some visitors,
 to see a man arrived
 Mr. Bruce cured his
 l observances, which
 uld Janni wholly ever

able manufacture of
 plates all over Abyss-
 each web is sixteen
 ue a pataka; that is,
 ten

ten for the ounce of gold. The houses in Adowa are
 all of rough stone, cemented with mud instead of
 mortar. That of lime is not used but at Gondar,
 where it is very bad. The roofs are in the form of
 cones, and thatched with a reedy sort of grass, some-
 thing thicker than wheat straw. Excepting a few
 spots taken notice of as they came to Adowa, this
 was the only part of Tigré where there was soil suf-
 ficient to yield corn; the whole of the province be-
 sides is one entire rock.

They have three harvests annually at Adowa, and
 all the neighbourhood. The first seed time is in July
 and August; it is the principal one for wheat, which
 they then sow in the middle of the rains. In the same
 season they sow toulso, telf, and barley. From the
 20th of November, they reap first their barley, then
 their wheat, and last of all their telf. In the room
 of these they sow immediately upon the same ground,
 without any manure, barley, which they reap in Fe-
 bruary; and then often low telf, but more frequently
 a kind of vetch, or pea, called Shimbra; these are
 cut down before the first rains, which are in April.
 With all these advantages of triple harvests, which
 cost no following, weeding, manure, or other expen-
 sive processes, the farmer in Abyssinia is always poor
 and miserable. The cattle roam at discretion through
 the mountains. The herdsmen set fire to the grass,
 bent, and brushwood, before the rains, and an amazing
 verdure immediately follows. As the mountains are
 very steep and broken, goats are chiefly the flocks
 that graze upon them. It is not the extreme height
 of these mountains in Abyssinia that occasions sur-
 prise, but the number of them, and the extraordinary
 forms they present to the eye. Some of them are
 flat, thin, and square, in shape of a hearth-stone, or
 slab, that scarce would seem to have hale sufficient
 to resist the action of the winds. Some are like py-
 ramids, others like obelisks or prisms, and some, the
 most extraordinary of all the rest, pyramids pitched
 upon their points, with their base uppermost.

Mr. Bruce visited the remains of the Jesuits' con-
 vent of Fremona, Jan. 10, 1770. It is built upon
 the even ridge of a very high hill, in the middle of
 a large plain, on the opposite side of which stands
 Adowa. It rises from the east to the west, and ends
 in a precipice on the east; it is also very steep to the
 north, and slopes gently down to the plain on the
 south. The convent is about a mile in circum-
 ference, built substantially with stones, which are ce-
 mented with lime-mortar. It has towers in the
 flanks and angles; and, notwithstanding the ill-usage it
 has suffered, the walls remain still entire to the height
 of twenty-five feet. It is divided into three, by
 cross walls of equal height. The first division seems
 to have been destined for the convent, the middle
 for the church, and the third division is separated
 from this by a wall, and stands upon a precipice.

Janni still continued his kindness and hospitality.
 He had already represented Mr. Bruce in the most
 favourable light to the Itegbé, or queen-mother,
 (whose servant he had long been) to her daughter
 Ozoro Esther, and Ozoro Atain; but, above all,
 to Michael, with whom his influence was very great;
 and, indeed, to every body he had any weight with,
 his own countrymen, Greeks, Abyssinians, and Ma-
 hometans; and, as they afterwards found, he had
 raised their curiosity to a great pitch.

Our travellers set out from Adowa on the 17th,
 resuming their journey to Gondar; in the morning
 of the next day they ascended one of those hills,
 through a very rough stony road, and again came
 into the plain, wherein stood Axum, once the capi-
 tal of Abyssinia.

The ruins of Axum are very extensive; but, like
 the cities of ancient times, consist altogether of pub-
 lic buildings. In one square, which Mr. Bruce ap-
 prehended to have been the centre of the town, there
 are forty obelisks, none of which have any hierogly-
 phics upon them. Axum is watered by a small stream,
 which flows all the year from a fountain in the nar-

row valley, where stand the rows of obelisks. The
 spring is received into a magnificent basin of 150
 feet square, and thence it is carried, at pleasure, to
 water the neighbouring gardens, where there is
 little fruit, excepting pomegranates, neither are
 these very excellent. The present town of Axum
 stands at the foot of the hill, and may have about six
 hundred houses. There are several manufactures
 of coarse cotton cloth; and here too the best parch-
 ment is made of goats skins, which is the ordinary
 employment of the monks.

Mr. Bruce left Axum in the morning of the 20th
 of January; the road was at first sufficiently even,
 through small valleys and meadows; they began to
 ascend gently, but through a road exceedingly diffi-
 cult in itself, by reason of large stones standing on
 edge, or heaped one upon another; apparently the
 remains of an old large causeway, part of the mag-
 nificent works about Axum. The last part of the
 journey made ample amends for the difficulties and
 fatigue they had suffered in the beginning. For the
 road, on every side, was perfumed with variety of
 flowering shrubs, chiefly different species of jessa-
 mine; one in particular of these, called Agam, im-
 pregnated the whole air with the most delicious
 odour, and covered the small hills through which
 they passed, in such profusion, that they were, at
 times, almost overcome with its fragrance. The
 country all round had now the most beautiful ap-
 pearance, and this was heightened by the smell of
 weather, and a temperature of air neither too hot
 nor too cold.

When they had lost sight of the ruins of this an-
 cient capital of Abyssinia, they overtook three travel-
 lers driving a cow before them; they had black goat
 skins upon their shoulders, and lances and shields
 in their hands; in other respects were but thinly
 clothed; they appeared to be soldiers. The cow
 did not seem to be fatted for killing, and it occurred
 to our travellers that it had been stolen. This, how-
 ever, was not their business, nor was such an occur-
 rence at all remarkable in a country so long engaged
 in war. They saw that their attendants attached
 themselves in a particular manner to the three sol-
 diers who were driving the cow, and held a short
 conversation with them. Soon after, the drivers
 suddenly tript up the cow, and gave the poor
 animal a very rude fall upon the ground, which was
 but the beginning of her sufferings. One of them
 sat across her neck, holding down her head by the
 horns, the other twilled the halter about her fore feet,
 while the third, who had a knife in his hand, to Mr.
 Bruce's very great surprize, in place of taking her
 by the throat, got allride upon her belly before her
 hind legs, and gave a very deep wound in the upper
 part of her buttock. From the time Mr. Bruce had
 seen them throw the beast upon the ground, he had
 rejoiced, thinking, that when three people were
 killing a cow, they must have agreed to sell part of
 her to them; and he was much disappointed upon
 hearing the Abyssinians say, that they were to pass
 the river to the other side, and not encamp where
 he intended. Upon Mr. Bruce's proposing they
 should bargain for part of the cow, his men answer-
 ed, what they had already learned in conversation,
 that they were not then to kill her, that she was not
 wholly theirs, and they could not sell her. This
 awakened Mr. Bruce's curiosity; he let his people
 go forward, and staid himself, till he saw, with the
 utmost astonishment, two pieces, thicker and longer
 than our ordinary beef steaks, cut out of the higher
 part of the buttock of the beast. How it was done
 he cannot positively say, because judging the cow
 was to be killed from the moment he saw the knife
 drawn, he was not anxious to view that catastrophe,
 which was by no means an object of curiosity; what-
 ever way it was done, it surely was adroitly, and the
 two pieces were spread upon the outside of one of
 their shields. One of them still continued holding
 the head, while the other two were busied in curing

the wound. This too was done not in an ordinary manner; the skin which had covered the flesh that was taken away was left entire, flapped over the wound, and was fastened to the corresponding part by two or more small skewers, or pins. Whether they had put any thing under the skin between that and the wounded flesh, Mr. Bruce cannot tell; but at the river side where they were, they had prepared a cataplasm of clay, with which they covered the wound; they then forced the animal to rise, and drove it on before them, to furnish them with a fuller meal when they should meet their companions in the evening.

They pitched their tent this day in a small plain, by the banks of a quick clear running stream; the spot is called Mai Shum. A peasant had made a very neat little garden on both sides of the rivulet, in which he had sown abundance of onions and garlic, and he had a species of pumpkin, which Mr. Bruce thought was little inferior to a melon. This man guessed by their arms and horses that they were hunters, and he brought them a present of the fruits of his garden, and begged their assistance against a number of wild boars, which carried havoc and desolation through all his labours, marks of which were, indeed, too visible every where. Such instances of industry are very rare in this country, and demanded encouragement. Mr. Bruce paid him, therefore, for his greens; and sent two of his servants with him into the wood, and got on horseback himself. Mirza, his horse, indeed, as well as his master, had recruited greatly during their stay at Adowa, under the hospitable roof of their good friend Jami.

They killed five boars, all large ones, in the space of about two hours; one of which measured six feet nine inches; and, though he ran at an amazing speed near two miles, so as to be with difficulty overtaken by the horse, and was struck through and through with two heavy lances loaded at the end with iron, no person dared to come near him on foot, and he defended himself above half an hour, till, having no lances left, Mr. Bruce shot him with a horse pistol. But the misfortune was, that after their hunting had been crowned with such success, they did not dare to partake of the excellent venison they had acquired; for the Abyssinians hold pork of all kinds in the utmost detestation; and our traveller was now become cautious, lest he should give offence, being at no great distance from the capital.

In the course of their journey, Mr. Bruce heard a cry from his servants, "Robbers! Robbers!" He immediately got upon his mule to learn what alarm this might be, and saw, to his great surprize, part of his baggage strewed on the ground, the servants running, some leading, others on foot driving such of their mules as were unloaded before them; in a word, every thing in the greatest confusion possible. Having got to the edge of the wood, they faced about, and began to prepare their fire-arms; but as Mr. Bruce saw the king's two servants, and the man that Jami sent with them endeavouring all they could to pitch the tent, he forbade them to fire, till they should receive orders from him. Mr. Bruce now rode immediately up to the tent, and in his way was saluted from among the bushes with many stones, one of which gave him a violent blow upon the foot. At the same instant he received another blow with a small unripe pumpkin, just upon the belly, where he was strongly defended by the coarse cotton cloth wrapped several times about him by way of sash or girdle. As robbers fight with other arms than pumpkins, when Mr. Bruce saw this fall at his feet, he was no longer under apprehension.

Our traveller now advanced towards them, crying out, they were friends, and Ras Michael's friends; and desired only to speak to them, and he would give them what they wanted. A few stones were the only answer, but they did no hurt. Mr. Bruce then gave Yafine his gun, thinking that might have given of-

fence. The top of the tent being now up, two men came forward making great complaints, but of what he did not understand, only that they seemed to accuse our travellers of having wronged them. In short they found the matter was this: one of the Moors had taken a heap of flraw, which he was carrying to his ass, and the proprietor, at seeing this, had alarmed the village. Every body had taken lances and shields; but, not daring to approach for fear of the fire-arms, they had contented themselves with throwing stones from their hiding-places, at a distance from among the bushes. Mr. Bruce and his people immediately told them, however, that though, as the king's guest, he had a title to be furnished with what was necessary, yet, if they were averse to it, he was very well content to pay for every thing they furnished, both for his men and beasts; but that they must throw no stones, otherwise they should defend themselves. The tent being now pitched, and every thing in order, a treaty soon followed. They consented to sell them what they wanted, but at extravagant prices, which, however, Mr. Bruce was content to comply with. But a man of the village, acquainted with one of the king's servants, had communicated to him, that the pretence of the Moor's taking the flraw was not really the reason of the uproar, for they made no use of it except to burn; but that a report had been spread abroad, that an action had happened between Fahl and Ras Michael, in which the latter had been defeated, and the country, no longer in fear of the Ras, had indulged themselves in their usual excesses, and, taking them for a caravan of Mahometans with merchandise, had resolved to rob them.

They arrived at the town of Siré on the 22d, and pitched their tent in a strong situation, in a very deep gulley on the west extremity of the town.

Siré, the province properly so called, reaches from Axum to the Tacazzé. The town of Siré is situated on the brink of a very steep, narrow valley; and through this the road lies, which is almost impassable. In the middle of this valley runs a brook bordered with palm-trees, some of which are grown to a considerable size, but bear no fruit. The town is larger than that of Axum; it is in form of a half-moon fronting the plain, but its greatest breadth is at the west end; all the houses are of clay, and thatched; the roofs are in the form of cones, as, indeed, are all in Abyssinia. Siré is famous for a manufacture of coarse cotton cloths, which pass for current money through all the province of Tigré, and are valued at a drachm, the tenth part of a wakea of gold, or near the value of an imperial dollar each; their breadth is a yard and a quarter. Besides these, beads, needles, coils, and incense, at times only, are considered as money. The articles depend greatly on chance, whether any are current for the time or not; but the latter is often demanded; and, for the first, there are modes and fashions among these barbarians, and all, except those of a certain colour and form, are useless. These people were not of a humour to buy and sell with them. They were not perfectly satisfied that Michael was alive, and waited only for a confirmation of the news of his defeat, to make their own terms with all strangers unfortunate enough to fall into their hands. On the other hand, our travellers were in possession of superior force, and knowing their inclinations, they treated them pretty much in the manner they would have done by them.

Although Siré is situated in one of the finest countries in the world, like other places, it has its inconveniences. Putrid fevers, of the very worst kind, are almost constant here; and there did then actually reign a species of these that daily swept away a great number of people.

Here Mr. Bruce heard the good news that Ras Michael, on the 10th of this month, had come up with Fahl at Fagitta, and entirely dispersed his army, after killing 10,000 men. This account, though not confirmed by any authority, struck all the mutinous

being now up, two men complaints, but of what that they seemed to ac- cing wronged them. In was this: one of the aw, which he was carry- etor, at seeing this, had body had taken lances to approach for fear of ented themselves with ding-places, at a distance Mr. Bruce and his people ver, that though, as the to be furnished with what ere avails to it, he was or every thing they for- d bealls; but that they wife they should defend now pitched, and every followed. They con- y wanted, but at extra- Mr. Bruce was com- man of the village, ac- ing's servants, had com- petence of the Moors ly the reason of the up- f it except to hunt, but d abroad, that an action l and Ras Michael, in feared, and the country, had indulged themselves aking them for a caravan andite, had resolved to

of Siré on the 22d, and situation, in a very deep of the town. y so called, reached from town of Siré is situated ep, narrow valley; and h is almost impassable. runs a brook bordered ich are grown to a con- uit. The town is larger m of a half-moon front. ll breadth is at the well clay, and thatched; the es, as, indeed, are all a manufacture of coarse current money through l are valued at a drachm, gold, or near the value their breadth is a yard eads, needles, coils, are considered as mod- greatly on chance, r the time or not; but ed; and, for the bris- ns among these barba- of a certain colour and eople were not of a lu- em. They were not per- as alive, and waited only news of his defeat, to all strangers unfortun- ls. On the other hand, on of superior force, and they treated them prett- ould have done by them. In one of the finest coun- y places, it has its incom- of the very worst kind, d there did them actually daily swept away a great

of this province with awe; and every man returned to his duty for fear of incurring the displeasure of this severe governor, which they well knew would instantly be followed by more than an adequate portion of vengeance, especially against those that had not accompanied him to the field.

Early on the 24th, they struck their tent at Siré, and passed through a vast plain. All this day they could discern no mountains, as far as eye could reach, but only some few detached hills, standing separate on the plain, covered with high-grass, which they were then burning, to produce new with the first rains. The country to the north is altogether flat, and perfectly open; and though they could not discover one village this day, yet it seemed to be well inhabited, from the many people they saw on different parts of the plain, some at Harvell, and some herding their cattle.

They encamped at Addergerly on the 30th, near a small rivulet called Mai-Lami, the river of limes, or lemons, in a plain scarce a mile square, surrounded on each side with very thick wood in form of an amphitheatre. Above this wood, are bare, rugged, and barren mountains. Midway in the cliff is a miserable village, that seems rather to hang than to stand there, scarce a yard of level ground being before it to hinder its inhabitants from falling down the precipice. The wood is full of lemons and wild citrons, from which it acquires its name. Before the tent, to the westward, was a very deep valley, which terminated this little plain in a tremendous precipice.

This night the hyenas devoured one of the bell of their mules. They are here in great plenty, and so are lions; the roaring and grumbling of the latter, in the part of the wood nearest their tent, greatly disturbed their bealls, and prevented them from eating their provender. Mr. Bruce lengthened the strings of his tent, and placed the bealls between them. The white ropes, and the tremulous motion made by the impression of the wind, frightened the lions from coming near them. They had procured from Jani two small brass bells, such as the mules carry, and had tied these to the flum strings of the tent, where their noise, no doubt, greatly contributed to the safety of their bealls, from these ravenous, yet cautious animals, so that they never saw them; but the noise they made, and, perhaps, their smell, so terrified the mules, that, in the morning, they were drenched in sweat, as if they had been a long journey. The brutish hyena was not to be deterred. Mr. Bruce shot one of them dead on the night of the 31st of January, and on the 2d of February, he fired at another so near, that he was confident of killing him. Whether the balls had fallen out, or that he had really missed him with the first barrel, he knew not, but he gave a snarl and a kind of bark upon the first shot, advancing directly upon him, as if unhurt. The second shot, however, took place, and laid him without motion on the ground. Yafine and his men killed another with a pike; and such was their determined coolness, that they stalked round about our travellers with the familiarity of a dog, or some other domestic animal brought up with man. However, they were still more incommoded by a smaller animal, a large, black ant, little less than an inch long, which, coming out from under the ground, demolished their carpets, which they cut all into shreds, and part of the lining of their tent likewise, and every bag or sack they could find. Their bite causes a considerable inflammation, and the pain is greater than that which arises from the bite of a scorpion; they are called *gandam*.

On the first of February, the Shum sent his people to value, as he said, their merchandise, that they might pay custom. Many of the Moors, in their caravan, had left them to go a near way to Hauza. Mr. Bruce had at most five or six asses, including those belonging to Yafine. He humoured them so far as to open the cases where were the telescopes and quadrant, or, indeed, rather shewed them open,

as they were not flut from the observation he had been making. They could only wonder at things they had never before seen. On the 2d of February the Shum came himself, and a violent altercation ensued. Mr. Bruce, however, getting the better, on the 4th of February, in the morning, they left Addergerly. While employed in making ready for their departure, which was just at the dawn of day, a hyena, unseen by any of them, fastened upon one of Yafine's asses, and had almost pulled his tail away. Mr. Bruce was busied at gathering the tent pins into a sack, and had placed his mulker and bayonet ready against a tree, as it is usual at that hour, and the close of the evening, in order to be on their guard against any banditti. A boy, who was servant to Yafine, saw the hyena first, and flew to Mr. Bruce's mulker. Yafine was disjoining the poles of the tent, and, having one half of the largell in his hand, he ran to the assistance of his ass, and in that moment the mulker went off, luckily charged with only one ball, which gave Yafine a flesh wound between the thumb and forefinger of his left hand. The boy instantly threw down the mulker, which had terrified the hyena, and made him let go the ass; but he stood ready to fight Yafine, who, not amuling himself with the choice of weapons, gave him so rude a blow with the tent-pole upon his head, that it felled him to the ground; others with pikes, put an end to his life. They were then obliged to turn their cares towards the wounded. Yafine's wound was soon seen to be a trifle; besides, he was a man not easily alarmed on such occasions. But the poor ass was not so soon comforted. The slump remained, the tail hanging by a piece of it, which they were obliged to cut off. The next operation was actual cautery; but, as they had made no bread for breakfast, their fire had been nearly out. They therefore were obliged to tie the slump round with whip-cord, till they could get fire enough to heat an iron. What sufficiently marked the voracity of these beasts, the hyenas, was, that the bodies of their dead companions, which our travellers hauled a long way from them, and left there, were almost entirely eaten by the survivors the next morning. They continued their journey along the side of a hill, through thick wood and high grass; then descended into a steep, narrow valley, the sides of which had been shade with high trees, but in burning the grass the trees were consumed likewise; and the shoots from the roots were some of them above eight feet high since the tree had thus suffered that same year.

On the 8th of February they began to ascend Lamalmon, through a very narrow road, or rather path, for it scarcely was two feet wide any where. It was a spiral winding up the side of the mountain, always on the very brink of a precipice. Torrents of water, which in winter carry prodigious stones down the side of this mountain, had divided this path into several places, and opened to our travellers a view of that dreadful abyss below, which few heads can bear to look down upon. They were here obliged to unload their baggage, and, by slow degrees, crawl up a hill, carrying them little by little upon their shoulders round these chafins, where the road was intersected. The mountains grew steeper, the paths narrower, and the breaches more frequent as they ascended. Scarce were their mules, though unloaded, able to scramble up, but were perpetually falling; and, to increase their difficulties, which, in such cases, seldom come single, a large number of cattle was descending, and seemed to threaten to push them all into the gulf below. After two hours of constant toil, at nine o'clock, they alighted in a small plain called Kedus, or St. Michael, from a church and village of that name, neither beast nor man being able to go a step further.

The plain of Kedus, or St. Michael, is at the foot of a steep cliff which terminates the west side of Lamalmon. It is here perpendicular like a wall, and a few trees only upon the top of the cliff. Over this

this precipice flow two streams of water, which never are dry, but run in all seasons. They fall into a wood at the bottom of this cliff, and preserve it in continual verdure all the year, though the plain itself below is all rent in chasms, and cracked by the heat of the sun. These two streams form a considerable rivulet in the plain of St. Michael, and are a great relief both to men and cattle in this tedious and difficult passage over the mountain.

The air of Lamalmon is pleasant and temperate. They here found their appetite return, with a cheerfulness, lightness of spirits, and agility of body, which indicated that their nerves had again resumed their wonted tone, which they had lost in the low, poisonous, and sultry air on the coast of the Red Sea. The sun here is indeed hot, but in the morning a cool breeze never fails, which increases as the sun rises high. In the shade it is always cool. Lamalmon is the pass through which the road of all caravans to Gondar lies. It is here they take an account of all baggage and merchandise, which they transmit to the Negadé Ras, or chief officer of the customs at Gondar, by a man whom they send to accompany the caravan. There is also a present, or awade, due to the private proprietor of the ground: and this is levied with great rigour and violence, and, for the most part, with injustice; so that this station, which, by the establishment of the custom-house, and nearness to the capital, should be in a particular manner attended to by government, is always the place where the first robberies and murders are committed in unsettled times. Though our travellers had nothing with them which could be considered as subject to duty, they submitted every thing to the will of the robber of the place, and gave him his present. If he was not satisfied, he seemed to be so, which was all they wished for.

Leave of departure was granted early in the morning of the 9th, but it was with great regret they were obliged to abandon Geer Mahometan friends into lands that seemed disposed to shew them no favour. The king was in Maiffa, or Danot, that is to say, far from Gondar, and various reports were spread abroad about the success of the campaign. These people only waited for an unfavourable event, to make a pretence for robbing travellers of every thing they had. The persons whose right it was to levy these contributions were two, a father and son; the old man was dressed very decently, spoke hute, but smoothly, and had a very good carriage. He professed a violent hatred to all Mahometans, on account of their religion; a sentiment which seemed to promise nothing favourable to their friend Yafine and his companions: but, in the evening, the son, who seemed to be the active man, came to their tent, and brought them a quantity of bread and bouza, which his father had ordered before. He seemed to be much taken with our travellers' fire-arms, and was very inquisitive about them. Mr. Bruce gave him every sort of satisfaction, and, little by little, saw he might win his heart entirely; which he very much wished to do, that he might free his companions from bondage. This young man, was a good soldier; and, having been in several actions under Ras Michael, as fusilier, he brought his gun, and insisted on shooting at marks. Mr. Bruce honoured him in this: but as he used a rifle which he did not understand, he found himself overmatched, especially by the greatness of the range, for he shot straight enough. He then shewed him the manner they shot flying, there being quails in abundance, and wild pigeons, of which he killed several on the wing, which left him in the utmost astonishment. Having got on horseback, Mr. Bruce next went through the exercise of the Arabs, with a long spear and a short javelin. This was more within his comprehension, as he had seen something like it; but he was wonderfully taken with the fierce and fiery appearance of his horse, and, at the same time, with his docility, the form of his saddle, bridle, and accoutrements. He threw at last the sandals off

his feet, and twined his upper garment into his girdle, and set off at so furious a rate, that Mr. Bruce could not help doubting whether he was in his sober understanding. It was not long till he came back, and with him a man servant carrying a sheep and a goat, and a woman carrying a jar of honey-wine. Mr. Bruce had not yet quitted the horse; and when he saw what his intention was, he put Mirza to a gallop, and, with one of the barrels of the gun, shot a pigeon, and immediately fired another into the ground. There was nothing after this that could have surprised him, and it was repeated several times at his desire; after which he went into the tent, where he invited himself to Mr. Bruce's house at Gondar. There he was to teach him every thing he had seen. They now swore perpetual friendship; and a horn or two of hydromel being emptied, Mr. Bruce introduced the case of his fellow-travellers, and obtained a promise that they should have leave to set out together. He would, moreover, take no awade, and said, he would be favourable in his report to Gondar. Matters were far advanced, when a servant of Michael's arrived sent by Petro, Janni's brother, who had obtained leave from Ozoro Eshler. This put an end to all difficulties. Our young soldier also kept his word, and a mere trifle of awade was given, rather by the Moor's own desire than from demand, and the report of the baggage, and dust thereon, were as low as could be wished. News was now brought them, that Ras Michael had actually beaten Fasil, forced him to retire to the other side of the Nile, and was then in Maiffa, where it was thought he would remain with the army all the rainy season. This was just what Mr. Bruce could have wished, as it brought him once to the neighbourhood of the fountains of the Nile, without the smallest shadow of danger or fear.

February the 9th, they took leave of the friends they had so newly acquired at Lamalmon. They began to ascend what still remained of the mountain, which though steep and full of bushes, was much less difficult than that which they had passed. At a quarter past seven they arrived at the top of Lamalmon, which has, from below, the appearance of being sharp-pointed. On the contrary, they were much surprised to find there a large plain, part in pasture, but more bearing grain. It is full of springs, and seems to be the great reservoir from whence arise most of the rivers that flow from Abyssinia. A multitude of streams issue from the very summit in all directions; the springs boil out from the earth in large quantities, capable of turning a mill. They plough, sow, and reap here in all seasons; and the husbandman must blame his own indulgence, and not the soil, if he has not three harvests. They saw, in one place, people busy cutting down wheat; immediately next to it, others at the plough; and the adjoining field had green corn in the ear; a little further, it was not an inch above the ground. The mountain is every where so steep and high, that it is not enough to say against the will, but without the assistance of those above, no one from below can venture to ascend. On the top is a large plain, affording plenty of pasture, as well as room for ploughing and sowing for the maintenance of the army; and there is water, at all seasons, in great plenty, and even fish in the streams upon it; so that, although the inhabitants of the mountain had been often besieged for a considerable time together, they suffered little inconvenience from it, nor ever were taken unless by treason; except by Christopher de Gama and his Portuguese, who are said, by their own historians, to have stormed this rock, and put the Mahometan garrison to the sword.

The next day they continued along the plain on the top of Lamalmon; and, after having suffered, with infinite patience and perseverance, the hardships and danger of this long and painful journey, at forty minutes past ten they were gratified, at last, with the sight of Gondar, and arrived there on the 11th.

Abba Salama, at that time filled the post of Azeb Saat, or guardian of the fire. It is the third dignity

garment into his girdle, and that Mr. Bruce could see in his sober under- till he came back, and giving a sheep and a goat, thoney-wine. Mr. Bruce, and when he saw what a gallop, and with a, shot a pigeon, and into the ground. There was have surprised him, and at his desire; after which he invited himself to . There he was to reach . They now swore per- or two of hydraulic introduced the case of had a promise that they out together. He would and said, he would be Gondar. Matters were sent of Michael's arrival, who had obtained a put an end to all the- pulier also kept his w was given, rather by demand, and the rest thereon, were as low as now brought them, the (Esh), forced him to Nile, and was then of the would remain- . This was just as if, as it brought him- of the fountains of the shadow of danger of far- lock leave of the friends at Lamalmon. They be- mained of the mountain, of bushes, was much less had passed. At a quarter the top of Lamalmon, the appearance of being untary, they were much plain, part in pasture, it is full of springs, and air from whence arise most parts of Abyssinia. A from the very summit in fall from the earth in turning a mill. There all seasons; and the harsh intolerance, and not the wells. They saw, in one- own wheat; immediately ough; and the adjoining ear; a little further, it ground. The mountain igh, that it is not enough without the assistance of we can venture to ascend. Fording plenty of pasture, and fowing for the main- re is water, at all seasons, h in the streams upon the- ents of the mountain had nsiderable time together, nce from it, not ever ; except by Christopher , who are said, by their med this rock, and put the sword.

of the church, and he is the first religious officer in the palace. He had a very large revenue, and still a greater influence. He was a man exceedingly rich, and of the very worst life possible; though he had taken the vows of poverty and chastity, it was said he had at that time above seventy mistresses in Gondar. His way of seducing women was extraordinary as the number seduced. It was not by gifts, attendance, or flattery, the usual means employed on such occasions; when he had fixed his desires upon a woman, he forced her to comply, under pain of excommunication. He was exceedingly eloquent and bold, was a man of a pleasing countenance, short, and of a very fair complexion; indifferent, or rather averse to wine, but a monstrous glutton; nice in what he had to eat, to a degree scarcely before known in Abyssinia; a mortal enemy to all white people, whom he classed under the name of Franks, for which the Greeks, uniting their interests at favourable times, had often very nearly overfet him.

On the 12th, about ten o'clock, Mr. Bruce, dressed in his Moorish habit, went to Ayto Aylo, and found him with several great plates of bread, melted butter, and honey, before him, of one of which he and our traveller ate; the rest were given to the Moors, and other people present. There was with him a priest of Kofcam, and they all set out for that palace as soon as they had finished breakfast. They passed the brook of St. Raphael, a suburb of Gondar, where is the house of the Abuna; and upon coming in sight of the palace of Kofcam, they all uncovered their heads, and rode slowly. As Aylo was all-powerful with the Iteghé, indeed her first counsellor and friend, their admittance was easy and immediate. They alighted, and were shewn into a low room in the palace. Ayto Aylo went immediately to the leghe, or queen, to inquire about Welled Hawaryat, who was then ill, and his audience lasted two long hours. He returned to them with the news, that Welled Hawaryat was much better, by a medicine a faint from Waldubba had given him, which consisted in some characters, written with common ink upon a tablet, which characters were washed off by a medical liquor, and then given him to drink. It was agreed, however, that the complaint was the final pos, and the good it had done him was, he ate heartily of *brind*, or raw beef, after it, though he had not ate before since his arrival, but called perpetually for drink.

Before Mr. Bruce entered on his charge of physician, he flated to those present in the palace, the disagreeable talk now imposed upon him, a stranger without acquaintance or protection, having the language but imperfectly, and without power or control among them. He professed his intention of doing his utmost, although the disease was much more serious and fatal in this country than in his own; but he insisted one condition should be granted him, which was, that no directions as to regimen or management, even of the most trifling kind, as they might think, should be suffered, without his permission and superintendence. This being assented to, Mr. Bruce set the servants to work. There were apartments enough. He opened all the doors and windows, fumigating them with incense and myrrh in abundance, and washed them with warm water and vinegar. The common and fatal regimen in this country, and in most parts in the east, has been to keep their patient from feeling the smallest breath of air; but drink, a fire, and a quantity of covering are added in Abyssinia, and the doors shut so close as even to keep the room in darkness, whilst this heat is further augmented by the constant burning of candles. Ayabdar, Ozoro Altah's remaining daughter, and the son of Mariam Barca, were both taken ill at the same time, and happily recovered. A daughter of Kafmat Boto, by a daughter of Kafmat Esh-té, died, and her mother, though she survived, was a long time ill afterwards. Ayabdar was very much marked, he was Mariam Barca's son. At this time,

Ayto Confu, son of Kafmat-Netcho by Ozoro Eshter, had arrived from Tcherkin, a lad of very great hopes, though not then fourteen. He came to his mother without Mr. Bruce's knowledge or her's, and was infected likewise. Last of all the infant child of Michael, the child of his old age, took the disease, and though the weakest of all the children, recovered best. The patients, being all likely to do well, were removed to a large house of Kafmat Esh-té, which stood within the boundaries of Kofcam, while the rooms underwent another lustration and fumigation, after which they all returned; and Mr. Bruce got, as his fee, a present of the neat and convenient house formerly belonging to Basia Eusebius, which had a separate entry, without going through the palace.

March the 10th, the army marched into the town in triumph, and the Ras at the head of the troops of Tigré. He was bareheaded; over his shoulders, and down to his back, hung a pallium, or cloak, of black velvet, with a silver fringe. A boy, by his right stirrup, held a silver wand of about five feet and a half long, much like the staves of our great officers at court. Behind him all the soldiers, who had slain an enemy and taken the spoils from them, had their lances and firelocks ornamented with small threads of scarlet cloth, one piece for every man he had slain. Remarkable among all this multitude was Hagos, door-keeper of the Ras. This man, always well-armed and well mounted, had followed the wars of the Ras from his infancy, and had been so fortunate in this kind of single combat, that his whole lance and javelin, horse and person, were covered over with the threads of scarlet cloth. At this last battle of Fagitta, Hagos is said to have slain eleven men with his own hand. Indeed, there is nothing more fallacious than judging of a man's courage by these marks of conquests. A good horseman, armed with a coat of mail, upon a strong, well-fed, well-winded horse, may, after a defeat, kill as many of these wretched, weary, naked fugitives as he pleases, confining himself to those that are weakly, mounted upon tired horses, and covered only with goat-skins, or those that are flying on foot.

The head-dress of the governors of provinces was very remarkable. A large broad fillet was bound upon their forehead, and tied behind their head. In the middle of this was a horn, or a conical piece of silver, gilt, about four inches long, much in the shape of our common candle extinguishers. This is called *kin*, or horn, and is only worn in reviews or parades after victory. Next to these came the king, with a fillet of white mullin about three inches broad, binding his forehead, tied with a large double knot behind, and hanging down about two feet on his back. About him were the great officers of state, such of the young nobility as were without command; and after these, the household troops. Then followed the Kanitz Kitzera, or executioner of the camp, and his attendants; and, last of all, amidst the king's and the Ras's baggage, came a man bearing the stuffed skin of the unfortunate Woolheka upon a pole, which he hung upon a branch of the tree before the king's palace appropriated for public executions.

Mr. Bruce constantly attended his patients at Kofcam: at all which times he had been received with the greatest cordiality and marks of kindness by the Iteghé, and orders given for his free admittance, upon all occasions, like an officer of her household.

Mr. Bruce was informed, on the 14th, that all his recommendatory letters were to be read. He expected at the ordinary hour, about five in the afternoon, to be sent for, and had rode out to Kofcam with Ayto Heikel, the queen's chamberlain, to see the child, who was pretty well recovered of all its complaints, but very weak. In the interim, Mr. Bruce was sent for to the Ras, with orders to dispatch a man with the king's present, to wait for him at the palace, whither he was to go after leaving Michael. Five in the evening was fixed as the hour. Mr. Bruce

Bruce came a little before the time, and met Ayto Aylo at the door. He squeezed him by the hand, and said, "Refuse nothing, it can be all altered afterwards; but it is very necessary, on account of the priests and the populace, you should have a place of some authority, otherwise you will be robbed and murdered the first time you go half a mile from home: fifty people have told me that you have chests filled with gold, and that you can make gold, or bring what quantity you please from the Indies; and the reason of all this is, because you refused the queen and Ozoro Ellher's offer of gold at Koscam, and which you must never do again.

Mr. Bruce and his friends went in and saw the Ras, who was an old man, sitting upon a sofa; his white hair was dressed in many short curls. He appeared to be thoughtful, but not displeas'd; his face was lean, his eyes quick and vivid, but seem'd to be a little sore from exposure to the weather. He seem'd to be about six feet high, though his lameness made it difficult to guess with accuracy. His air was perfectly free from constraint, what the French call *dégagez*. They must have been bad physiognomists that did not discern his capacity and understanding by his very countenance. Every look convey'd a sentiment with it: he seem'd to have no occasion for other language; and, indeed, he spoke little. Mr. Bruce offer'd, as usual, to kiss the ground before him; and of this he seem'd to take little notice, stretching out his hand, and shaking Mr. Bruce's upon his rising.

Mr. Bruce sat down with Aylo, three or four of the judges, Heikel the queen's chamberlain, and others, who whisper'd something in his ear, and went out; which interruption prevent'd Mr. Bruce from speaking as he was prepar'd to do, or give him his present, which a man held behind him. A tedious incongruous conversation then ensu'd, after which Mr. Bruce gave the present, and retir'd.

Our traveller went afterwards to the king's palace, and met Aylo and Heikel at the door of the presence-chamber. Tecla Mariam walk'd before them to the foot of the throne: after which Mr. Bruce advanced and prostrated himself upon the ground. "I have brought you a servant, says he to the king, from so distant a country, that if you ever let him escape, we shall never be able to follow him, or know where to seek him." To this the king made no reply, nor did he shew any alteration of countenance. Five people were standing on each side of the throne, all young men, three on his left, and two on his right. One of these, the son of Tecla Mariam (afterwards Mr. Bruce's great friend) who stood uppermost on the left hand, came up, and taking hold of him by the hand, plac'd him immediately above him; when seeing Mr. Bruce had no knife in his girdle, he pulled out his own and gave it to him. Upon being plac'd, Mr. Bruce again kiss'd the ground. The king was in an alcove; the rest went out of sight from where the throne was, and sat down. The usual questions were now put to Mr. Bruce about Jerusalem and the holy place—where his country was? which it was impossible to describe, as they knew the situation of no country but their own—why he came so far—whether the moon and the stars, but especially the moon, was the same in his country as in theirs? and a great many such idle and tiresome questions. He had several times offer'd to take his present from the man who held it, that he might offer it to his majesty and go away; but the king always made a sign to put it off, till, being tired to death with standing, he lean'd against the wall. Mr. Bruce was absolutely in despair, and scarcely able to speak a word, inwardly mourning the hardness of his lot in this his first preferment, and sincerely praying that it might be his last promotion in that court. However, he was at last permitted to retire.

We shall now proceed in a description of the place, according to Mr. Bruce's information.—At Mafuah, that is, on the coast of the Red Sea, begins an imaginary division of Abyssinia into two, which is rather

a division of language than strictly to be understood as territorial. The first division is called *Tigré*, between the Red Sea and the river Tacazzé. Between that river and the Nile, westward, where it bounds the Galla, it is called *Ambara*. But whatever convenience there may be from this division, there is neither geographical nor historical precision in it, for there are many little provinces included in the first that do not belong to *Tigré*: and, in the second division, which is *Ambara*, that which gives the name, is but a very small part of it. Mafuah, in ancient times, was one of the principal places of residence of the Baharnagath, who, when he was not there himself, constantly left his deputy or lieutenant. In summer he resided for several months in the island of Dahalac, then accounted part of his territory. He was, after the King and Betwudet, the person of the greatest consideration in the kingdom, and was invest'd with sen-dick and nagareet, the kettle-drum and colours, marks of supreme command. *Tigré* is the next province in Abyssinia, as well for greatness as riches, power, and dignity, and nearest Mafuah. It is bounded by the territory of the Baharnagath, that is, by the river Mareb on the east, and the Tacazzé upon the west. It is about one hundred and twenty miles broad from E. to W. and two hundred from N. to S. This is its present situation. The hand of usurping power has abolish'd all distinction on the west side of the Tacazzé; besides, many large governments, such as Enderata and Amalow, and great part of the Baharnagath, were swallow'd up in this province to the east. What, in a special manner, makes the riches of *Tigré*, is, that it lies nearest the market, which is Arabia; and all the merchand to be destined to cross the Red Sea must pass through this province, so that the governor has the choice of all commodities wherewith to make his market. The strongest male, the most beautiful female slaves, the purest gold, the largest teeth of ivory, all must pass through his hands. Fire-arms, moreover, which for many years have decid'd who is the most powerful in Abyssinia, all these come from Arabia, and not one can be purchas'd without his knowing to whom it goes, and after his having had the first refusal of it. Siré, a province about twenty-five miles broad, and not much more in length, is reckon'd as a part of *Tigré* also, but this is not a new usurpation. It lost the rank of a province, and was united to *Tigré* for the misbehaviour of its governor Kasmaui Claudius, in an expedition against the Shanggalla in the reign of Yafous the Great. After passing the Tacazzé, the boundary between Siré and Samen, we come to that mountainous province call'd by the last name. A large chain of rugged mountains, where is the Jew's Rock, reaches from the south of Tigedown near to Waldubba, the low, hot country that bounds Abyssinia on the north. On the N. E. of *Tigré* lies the province of Begender. It borders upon Angot, whose governor is call'd Angot Ras; but the whole province now, excepting a few villages, is conquer'd by the Galla. It has *Ambara*, which runs parallel to it, on the south, and is separated from it by the river Bahilo. Both these provinces are bounded by the river Nile on the west. Begender is about 180 miles in its greatest length, and 60 in breadth, comprehending Latta, a mountainous province, sometimes depending on Begender, but often in rebellion. Begender is the strength of Abyssinia in horsemen. It is said that, with Latta, it can bring out 35,000 men; but this, as far as ever Mr. Bruce could inform himself, is a great exaggeration. They are exceeding good soldiers when they are pleas'd with their general, and the cause for which they fight; otherwise, they are easily divid'd, great many private interells being continually kept alive, as it is thought industriously, by government itself. It is well stock'd with cattle of every kind, all very beautiful. The mountains are full of iron mines; they are not so steep and rocky, nor so frequent, as in other provinces, if we except only Latta, and abound in all sort of wild fowl and game. *Ambara* is the next province,

ctly to be understood
on is called *Tigre*, be-
er Tacazzé. Between
d, where it bounds the
whatever convenience
n, there is neither gen-
in it, for there are
in the first that do not
second division, which
the name, is but a very
ancient times, was one
vidence of the Baharna-
ere himself, constantly
In summer he resided
d of Bahalac, then ac-
y. He was, after the
on of the great est con-
d was invetted with fem-
rum and colours, marks
é is the next province
nself as riches, power,
ah. It is bounded by
th, that is, by the river
Tacazzé upon the well-
twenty miles broad from
from N. to S. This is
and of usurping power
on the well side of the
e governments, such as
reat part of the Bahar-
his province to the east.
akes the rights of Tigre,
arker, which is Arabi;
med to cross the Red sea
ce, so that the governor
times whetwith to make
male, the most beauti-
ld, the largest teeth of
his hands. Five arms,
years have decided who
inia, all these come from
purchased without his
nd after his having had
province about twenty-
much more in length, is
llo, but this is not a new
of a province, and was
behaviour of its governor
dition against the Shan-
the Great. After passing
between Siré and Samen,
s province called by the
ugged mountains, where
ow the fourth country that
th. On the N. E. of
Begerender. It borders
or is called Angot Ras;
excepting a few villages,
It has Amhara, which
th, and is separated from
th these provinces are
on the well. Begerender
atell length, and 65 in
lla, a mountainous pro-
Begerender, but often
the strength of Abyssinia
with Lalla, it can bring
s far as ever Mr. Bruce
at exaggeration. They
when they are pleaded
cause for which they fight
ided, great many private
pt alive, as it is thought
itself. It is well stocked
all very beautiful. The
mines; they are not lo-
quent, as in other pro-
alla, and abound in all
Amhara is the next pro-
vince,

vince, between the two rivers Bashilo and Geshen. The length of this country from E. to W. is about 120 miles, and its breadth something more than 40. It is a very mountainous country, full of nobility; the men are reckoned the handsomest in Abyssinia, as well as the bravest. Between the two rivers Geshen and Samba, is a low, unwholesome, though fertile province, called Walaka; and southward of that is Upper Shoa. This province, or kingdom, was famous for the retreat it gave to the only remaining prince of the house of Solomon, who fled from the massacre of his brethren by Judith, about the year 900, upon the rock of Damo. Here the royal family remained in security, and increased in number, for near 400 years, till they were reformed. Gojam, from north-east to south-east, is about 80 miles in length, and 40 in breadth. It is a very flat country, and all in pasture; has few mountains, but those are very high ones, and are chiefly on the banks of the Nile, to the south, which river surrounds the province. On the south-east of the kingdom of Gojam is Damot. It is bounded by the Temci on the east, by the Gult on the west, by the Nile on the south, and by the high mountains of Amid Amid on the north. It is about 40 miles in length from north to south, and something more than 20 in breadth from east to west. On the other side of Amid Amid is the province of Agawa, bounded by those mountains on the east; by Buré and Umbarma, and the country of the Gongas, on the west; by Damot and Gatat upon the south, and Dingleber on the north. South from Dembea is Kuara, a very mountainous province confining upon the Pagan blacks, or Shangalla, called Gongas and Guba, the Macrobi of the ancients.—It is a very unwholesome province, but abounding in gold, not of its own produce, but that of its neighbourhood, these Pagans, Guba, Nuba, and Shangalla. Nara, and Ras el Feel, Tchelga, and on to Techerkin, is a frontier wholly inhabited by Mahometans. Its government is generally given to a stranger, often to a Mahometan; but one of that faith is always deputy-governor. The use of keeping troops here is to defend the friendly Arabs and Shepherds, who remain in their allegiance to Abyssinia, from the resentment of the Arabs of Senaar, their neighbours; and, by means of these friendly Arabs and Shepherds, secure a constant supply of horses for the king's troops. It is a barren stripe of a very hot, unwholesome country, full of thick woods, and fit only for hunting. The inhabitants, fugitives from all nations, are chiefly Mahometans, but very bold and expert horsemen, using no other weapon but the broad sword, with which they attack the elephants and rhinoceroses. There are many other small provinces, which occasionally are annexed, and sometimes are separated.

The crown of Abyssinia is hereditary, and has always been so, in one particular family, supposed to be that of Solomon by the queen of Saba, Negalla Arab, or queen of the south. It is nevertheless elective in this line; and there is no law of the land, nor custom, which gives the eldest son an exclusive title to succeed to his father. The practice has, indeed, been quite the contrary. When, at the death of a king, his sons are old enough to govern, and, by some accident, not yet sent prisoners to the mountain, then the eldest, or he that is next, and not confined, generally takes possession of the throne by the strength of his father's friends; but if no heir is then in the low country, the choice of the king is always according to the will of the minister, which passes for that of the people; and his inclination and interest being to govern, he never fails to choose an infant whom he afterwards directs, ruling the kingdom absolutely during the minority, which generally exhausts, or is equal to the term of his life. The king is anointed with plain oil of olives, which, being poured upon the crown of his head he rubs it into his long hair indecently enough with both his hands, pretty much as his soldiers do with theirs when they get access to plenty of butter. The crown is made

in the shape of a priest's mitre, or head-piece; it is a kind of helmet, covering the king's forehead, cheeks, and neck. It is lined with blue taffaty; the outside is half gold and half silver, of the most beautiful filligrane work. The king goes to church regularly, his guards taking possession of every avenue and door through which he is to pass, and nobody is allowed to enter with him, because he is then on foot, excepting two officers of his bed-chamber who support him: He kisses the threshold and side-posts of the church-door, the steps before the altar, and then returns home: sometimes there is service in the church, sometimes there is not; but he takes no notice of the difference. He rides up stairs into the presence chamber on a mule, and lights immediately on the carpet before his throne; and Mr. Bruce has sometimes seen great indecencies committed by the said mule in the presence-chamber, upon a Persian carpet. The Scrah Maffery, an officer so called, with a long whip, begins cracking and making a noise, worse than twenty French postillions, at the door of the palace before the dawn of day. This chases away the hyena and other wild beasts; this, too, is the signal for the king's rising, who sits in judgment every morning sitting, and after that, about eight o'clock, he goes to breakfast. There are six noblemen of the king's own choosing who are called Baalmaal, or gentlemen of his bed-chamber; four of these are always with him. There is a seventh, who is the chief of these, called Azeleffa el Camilha, groom of the robe, or shoe. He is keeper of the king's wardrobe, and the first officer of the bed-chamber. These officers, the black slaves, and some others, serve him as menial servants, and are in a degree of familiarity with him unknown to the rest of the subjects. When the king sits to consult upon civil matters of consequence, he is shut up in a kind of box opposite to the head of the council table. The persons that deliberate sit at the table, and, according to their rank, give their voices, the youngest or lowest officer always speaking first. The first that give their votes are the Shalaka, or colonels of the household-troops. The second are the great butlers, men that have the charge of the king's drink. The third is the Badjerund, or keeper of that apartment in the palace called the *lion's bottle*; and after these the keeper of the banqueting-house. The next is called Lika Magwaf, an officer that always goes before the king to hinder the pressure of the crowd. In war, when the king is marching, he rides constantly round him at a certain distance, and carries his shield and his lance; at least he carries a silver shield, and a lance pointed with the same metal, before such kings as do not choose to expose their person. No prince ever lost his life in battle till the coming of the Europeans into Abyssinia, when both the excommunicating and murdering of their sovereigns seem to have been introduced at the same time. After the Lika Magwaf comes the Palambaras; after him the Fit-Autaris; then the Gera Kafmati, and the Kanya Kafmati, their names being derived from their rank or order in encamping, the one on the right, the other on the left of the king's tent; Kanya and Gera signifying *the right and the left*; after them the Dakakin Biletana Geeta, or the under chamberlain; then the secretary for the king's commands; after him the right and left Azages, or generals; after them Rak Maffery, after him the basha, after him Kafinati of Damot, then of Samen, then Amhara, and, last of all, Tigre, before whom stands a golden cup upon a cushion, and he is called Nebrit, as being governor of Axum, or keeper of the book of the law supposed to be there. After the governor of Tigre comes the Acab Saat, or guardian of the fire, and the chief ecclesiastical officer of the king's household. Some have said, that this officer was appointed to attend the king at the time of eating, and that it was his province to order both meat and drink to be withdrawn whenever he saw the king inclined to excess. After the Acab Saat comes the first master of the household; then the Betwudet, or

Ras; last of all the king gives his sentence, which is final, and sends it to the table, from the balcony where he is then sitting, by the officer called Kal-Haize.

The next remarkable ceremony, is that of adoration, invariably observed in Abyssinia to this day, as often as you enter the sovereign's presence. This is not only kneeling, but an absolute prostration. You first fall upon your knees, then upon the palms of your hands, then incline your head and body till your forehead touch the earth; and, in case you have an answer to expect, you lie in that posture till the king, or somebody from him, desires you to rise.

Another practice in Abyssinia was to beset the king's doors and windows within his hearing, and there, from early morning to night, to cry for justice as loud as possible, in a distressed and complaining tone, and in all the different languages they are masters of, in order to their being admitted to have their supposed grievances heard. In a country so ill governed as Abyssinia is, and so perpetually involved in war, it may be easily supposed there is no want of people, who have real injuries and violence to complain of: but if it were not so, this is so much the constant usage, that when it happens (as in the middle of the rainy season) that few people can approach the capital, or stand without in such bad weather, a set of vagrants are provided, maintained, and paid, whose sole business is to cry and lament, as if they had been really very much injured and oppressed; and this they tell you is for the king's honour, that he may not be lonely by the palace being too quiet. This, of all their absurd customs, was the most grievous and troublesome to Mr. Bruce.

The king of Abyssinia wears his hair long; he wears his diadem while marching, as a mark of sovereignty, that does not impede or incommode him, as any other heavier ornament would do, especially in hot weather. This fillet surrounds his head above the hair, leaving the crown perfectly uncovered. It is an offence of the first magnitude for any person at this time, to wear any thing upon his head, especially white, unless for Mahometans, who wear caps, and over them a large white turban; or for priests, who wear large turbans of muslin also. The kings of Abyssinia anciently sat upon a gold throne, which is a large, convenient, oblong, square seat, like a small bedstead, covered with Persian carpets, damask, and cloth of gold, with steps leading up to it. It is still richly gilded; but the many revolutions and wars have much abridged their ancient magnificence. It is, in Abyssinia, high-treason to sit upon any seat of the king's; and he that presumed to do this would be instantly hewn to pieces, if there was not some other collateral proof of his being a madman.

In Abyssinia it is considered as a fundamental law of the land, that none of the royal family, who has any deformity or bodily defect, shall be allowed to succeed to the crown; and for this purpose, any of the princes, who may have escaped from the mountain of Wechné, and who are afterwards taken, are mutilated in some of their members, that thus they may be disqualified from ever succeeding.

They have several kinds of bread in Abyssinia, some of different sorts of tseff, and some of tocusso, which also vary in quality. The king of Abyssinia eats of wheat bread, though not of every wheat, but of that only that grows in the province of Dembea, therefore called the king's food. It always has been, and still is the custom of the kings of Abyssinia, to marry what number of wives they choose; that these were not, therefore, all queens; but that among them there was one who was considered particularly as queen, and upon her head was placed the crown, and she was called Iteghé. The king of Abyssinia never is seen to walk, nor to set his foot upon the ground, out of his palace: and when he would dismount from

the horse or mule on which he rides, he has a servant with a stool, who places it properly for him for that purpose. He rides into the anti-chamber to the foot of the throne, or to the stool placed in the alcove of his tent. He very often judges capital crimes himself. No man is condemned by the king in person to die for the first fault, unless the crime be of a horrid nature, such as parricide or sacrilege. And, in general, the life and merits of the prisoner are weighed against his immediate guilt; so that if his first behaviour has had more merit towards the state than his present delinquency is thought to have injured it, the one is placed fairly against the other, and the accused is generally absolved when the sovereign judges alone. When a prisoner is condemned in capital cases, he is not again remitted to prison, which is thought cruel, but he is immediately carried away, and the sentence executed upon him. The capital punishments in Abyssinia, are the cross, and flaying alive. Lapidation, or stoning to death, is the next. This is chiefly inflicted upon strangers, called *Franks*, for religious causes. The Catholic priests in Abyssinia that have been detected there, in these latter days, have been stoned to death, and their bodies still lie in the streets of Gondar, in the squares or walled-places, covered with the heaps of stone which occasioned their death by being thrown at them. There are three of these heaps at the church of Abbo, all covering Franciscan friars; and besides them, a small pyramid over a boy who was stoned to death with them, about the first year of the reign of David the 15th. Among capital punishments may be reckoned likewise the plucking out of the eyes, a cruelty which Mr. Bruce had but too often seen committed during the short stay he made in Abyssinia. This is generally inflicted upon rebels. After the slaughter of the battle of Fagitta, twelve chiefs of the Pagan Galla, taken prisoners by Ras Michael, had their eyes torn out, and were afterwards abandoned to starve in the valleys below the town. Several prisoners of another rank, noblemen of Tigre, underwent the same misfortune; and, what is wonderful, not one of them died in the operation, nor its consequences, though performed in the coarsest manner with an iron forceps, or pincers. The dead bodies of criminals slain for treason, murder, and violence, on the highway at certain times, are seldom buried in Abyssinia. The streets of Gondar are strewn with pieces of their carcases, which bring the wild beasts in multitudes into the city as soon as it becomes dark, so that it is scarcely safe for any one to walk in the night. The dogs used to bring pieces of human bodies into the house, and court-yard, to eat them in greater security.

Though the Abyssinians were so anciently and nearly connected with Egypt, yet they never seem to have made use of paper, or papyrus, but imitated the practice of the Persians, who wrote upon skins, and they do so to this day. This arises from their having early been Jews.

The Abyssinians neither eat nor drink with strangers, though they have no reason for this; and it is now a mere prejudice, because the old occasion for this regulation is lost. They break, or purify, however, every vessel a stranger of any kind shall eat or drink in. It is infamy for a man to go to market to buy any thing. He cannot carry water or bake bread; but he must wash the clothes belonging to both sexes; and, in this function, the women cannot help him. The men carry their burdens on their heads, the women on their shoulders. No man eats veal, although every one very willingly eats of a cow. They eat no wild or water-fowl, not even the goose, which was a great delicacy in Egypt. The reason of this is, that, upon their conversion to Judaism, they were forced to relinquish their ancient municipal customs, as far as they were contrary to the Mosaic law; and the animals, in their country, not corresponding in form, kind, or name, with those mentioned in the Septuagint, or original

he rides, he has a fer-
 es it properly for him
 into the anti-chamber to
 the stool placed in the
 try often judges capital
 condemned by the king
 fault, unless the crime
 as parricide or sacrilege,
 d merits of the prisoner
 mediate guilt; so that if
 more merit towards the
 cency is thought to have
 fairly against the other,
 absolved when the fore-
 a prisoner is condemned
 again remitted to prison,
 e is immediately carried
 executed upon him. The
 lmas, are the cross, and
 or flinging to death, is
 inflicted upon strangers,
 causes. The Catholic
 ve been detected there,
 en floned to death, and
 reets of Gondar, in the
 ed with the heaps of stone
 th by being thrown at
 hese heaps at the church
 ifean friars; and besides
 a boy who was floned
 t the first year of the
 mong capital punishments
 the plucking out of the
 Bruce had but too often
 ort day he made in Aby-
 fted upon rebels. After
 f Fagita, twelve chief
 risoners by Ras Michael,
 d were afterwards aban-
 ys below the town. Sc-
 ink, noblemen of Tigre,
 une; and, what is won-
 der in the operation, nor
 rformed in the coarsest
 , or pinners. The dead
 or treason, murder, and
 t certain times, are kil-
 the streets of Gondar are
 earcases, which bring the
 into the city as soon as it
 scarcely safe for any one
 dogs used to bring pieces
 house, and court-yard,
 rity.

were so anciently and
 pt, yet they never seem
 er, or papyrus, but im-
 rians, who wrote upon
 a day. This arises from
 ws.

eat nor drink with stran-
 reafon for this; and it is
 ause the old occasion for
 They break, or purify,
 anger of any kind shall
 ny for a man to go to
 He cannot carry water or
 ash the clothes belonging
 his function, the women
 n carry their burdens on
 on their shoulders. No
 very one very willingly
 wild or water-fowl, not
 as a great delicacy in
 is, that, upon their con-
 vere forced to relinquish
 loms, as far as they were
 aw; and the animals, in
 nding in form, kind, or
 ed in the Septuagint, or
 original

original Hebrew, it has followed, that there are many of each class that know not whether they are clean or not; and a wonderful confusion and uncertainty have followed through ignorance or mistake, being unwilling to violate the law in any one instance through not understanding it.

The following is Mr. Bruce's account of a polyphemus banquet. "In the capital, where one is safe from surprize at all times, or in the country or villages, when the rains have become so constant, that the valleys will not bear a horse to pass them, or that men cannot venture far from home, through fear of being surrounded and swept away by temporary torrents, occasioned by sudden showers on the mountains; in a word, when a man can say he is safe at home, and the spear and shield are hung up in the hall, a number of people of the best fashion in the villages, of both sexes, courtiers in the palace, or citizens in the town, meet together to dine between twelve and one o'clock. A long table is set in the middle of a large room, and benches beside it for a number of guests who are invited. Tables and benches the Portuguese introduced amongst them; but bull hides, spread upon the ground, served them before, as they now do in the camp and country. A cow or bull, one or more, as the company are numerous, is brought close to the door, and his feet strongly tied. The skin that hangs down under his chin and throat, is cut only so deep as to arrive at the fat, of which it totally consists, and, by the leparation of a few small blood vessels, six or seven drops of blood only fall upon the ground. They have no stone, bench, nor altar, upon which these cruel assassins lay the animal's head in this operation. Having fastised the Mosaic law, as they think by pouring these six or seven drops upon the ground, two or more of them fall to work; on the back of the beast, and on each side of the spine they cut skin deep; then putting their fingers between the flesh and the skin, they begin to strip the hide of the animal half way down the ribs, and so on to the buttock, cutting the skin wherever it hinders them commodiously to strip the poor animal bare. All the flesh on the buttocks is then cut off, and in solid square pieces, without bones, or much effusion of blood; and the prodigious noise the animal makes is a signal for the company to sit down to table. There are then laid before every guest, instead of plates, round cakes, if they may be so called, about twice as big as a pan-cake, and something thicker and tougher. It is unleavened bread of a fourth taste, far from being disagreeable, and very easily digested, made of a grain called tefl. It is of different colours, from black to the colour of the whitest wheat-bread. Three or four of these cakes, are generally put upon permitt, for the food of the person opposite to whose seat they are placed. Beneath these are four or five of ordinary bread, and of a blackish kind. These serve the maller to wipe his fingers upon, and afterwards the servant for bread to his dinner. Two or three servants then come, each with a square piece of beef in their bare hands, laying it upon the cakes of tefl, placed like dishes down the table, without cloth or any thing else beneath them. By this time all the guests have knives in their hands, and the men have the large crooked ones, which they put to all sorts of uses during the time of war. The women have small clasped knives, such as the worst of the kind made at Birmingham, sold for a penny each. The company are so arranged that one man sits between two women; the man with his long knife cuts a thin piece, which will be thought a good beef-steak in England, while you see the motion of the fibres yet perfectly distinct, and alive in the flesh. No man in Abyssinia, of any fashion whatever, feeds himself, or touches his own meat. The women take the steak and cut it length-ways like strings, about the thickness of a little finger, then cross-ways into square pieces, something smaller

than dice. This they lay upon a piece of the tefl bread, strongly powdered with black pepper, or Cayenne pepper, and fossak salt; they then wrap it up in tefl bread like a cartridge. In the mean time, the man having put up his knife, with each hand resting upon his neighbour's knee, his body flooping, his head low and forward, and mouth open very like an idiot, he turns to the one whole cartridge is still ready, who fluffs the whole of it into his mouth, which is so full that he is in constant danger of being choked. This is a mark of grandeur. The greater the man would seem to be, the larger piece he takes in his mouth; and the more noise he makes in chewing it, the more polite he is thought to be. They have, indeed, a proverb that says, "Beggars and thieves only eat small pieces, or without making a noise." Having dispatched this morsel, which he does very expeditiously, his next female neighbour holds forth another cartridge, which goes the same way, and so on till he is fastised. He never drinks till he has finished eating; and, before he begins, in gratitude to the last one that fed him, he makes up two small rolls of the same kind and form; each of his neighbours open their mouths at the same time, while with each hand he puts their portion into their mouths. He then falls to drinking out of a large handsome horn; the ladies eat till they are fastised, and then all drink together. A great deal of mirth and joke goes round, very seldom with any mixture of acrimony or ill-humour. During all this time, the unfortunate victim at the door is bleeding indeed, but bleeding life. As long as they can cut off the flesh from his bones, they do not meddle with the thighs, or the parts where the great arteries are. At last they fall upon the thighs likewise; and soon after the animal, bleeding to death, becomes so tough that the cannibals, who have the rest of it to eat, find very hard work to separate the flesh from the bones with their teeth like dogs. In the mean time, those within are very much elevated; love lights all its fires, and every thing is permitted with absolute freedom. There is no coynefs, no delays, no need of appointments or retirement, to gratify their wishes; there are no rooms but one, in which they sacrifice to Bacchus and to Venus."

There is no such thing as marriage in Abyssinia, unless that which is contracted by mutual consent, without other form, subsisting only till dissolved by dissent of one or other, and to be renewed or repeated as often as it is agreeable to both parties, who when they please, cohabit together again as man and wife, after having been divorced, had children by others, or whether they have been married, or had children with others or not. Upon separation they divide the children. The eldest son falls to the mother's first choice, and the eldest daughter to the father. If there be but one daughter, and all the rest sons, she is assigned to the father. If there be but one son, and all the rest daughters, he is the right of the mother. If the numbers are unequal after the first election, the rest are divided by lot. There is no such distinction as legitimate and illegitimate children from the king to the beggar; for supposing any one of their marriages valid, all the issue of the rest must be adulterous bastards.

The king in his marriage uses no other ceremony than this: he sends an Azage to the house where the lady lives, when the officer announces to her, it is the king's pleasure that she should remove instantly to the palace. She then dresses herself in the best manner, and immediately obeys. Thenceforward he assigns her an apartment in the palace, and gives her a house elsewhere in any part the choofes. Then, when he makes her Iteghé, it seems to be the nearest resemblance to marriage; for, whether in the court or the camp, he orders one of the judges to pronounce in his presence, that he, the king, has chosen his hand-maid, naming her, for his queen; upon which the crown is put upon her head, but she is not anointed.

The crown being hereditary in one family, but elective in the person, and polygamy being permitted, mult have multiplied these heirs very much, and produced constant disputes, so that it was found necessary to provide a remedy for the anarchy and effusion of royal blood, which was otherwise inevitably to follow. The remedy was a humane and gentle one, they were confined in a good climate upon a high mountain, and maintained there at the public expence. They are there taught to read and write, but nothing else; 750 cloths for wrapping round them, 3000 ounces of gold, which is 30,000 dollars, or crowns, are allowed by the state for their maintenance. These princes are hardly used; and, in troublesome times, often put to death upon the smallest misinformation.

The accounts of the military force of this kingdom have been greatly exaggerated. The largest army that ever was in the field, was that in the rebellion before the battle of Serbraxo. When they first encamped upon the lake Tzana, the rebel army altogether might amount to about 50,000 men. Their standards are large flaves, surmounted at the top with a hollow ball; below this is a tube, in which the staff is fixed; and immediately below the ball, a narrow stripe of silk made forked, or swallow-tailed, like a vane, and seldom much broader. The standards of the infantry have their flags painted two colours cross-ways—yellow, white, red, or green. The horse have all a lion upon their flag, some a red, some a green, and some a white lion. The black horse have a yellow lion, and over it a white star upon a red flag, alluding to two prophecies, the one, "Judah is a young lion," and the other, "There shall come a star out of Judah." This had been discontinued for want of cloth till the war of Begender, when a large piece was found in Joas's wardrobe, and was thought a certain omen of his victory, and of a long and vigorous reign. This piece of cloth was said to have been brought from Cairo by Yafous II. for the campaign of Senaar, and, with the other standards and colours, was surrendered to the rebels when the king was made prisoner.

The king's household troops should consist of about 8000 infantry, 2000 of which carry firelocks, and supply the place of archers; bows have been laid aside for near a hundred years, and are now only used by the Wanto Shangalla, and some other barbarous inconsiderable nations. These troops are divided into four companies, each under an officer called Shalaka, which answers to our colonel. Every twenty men have an officer, every fifty a second, and every hundred a third; that is, every twenty have one officer who commands them, but is commanded likewise by an officer who commands the fifty; so that there are three officers who command fifty men, six command a hundred, and thirty command five hundred, over whom is the Shalaka; and this body they call *Bet*, which signifies a *house*, or *apartment*, because each of them goes by the name of one of the king's apartments.

There are four regiments, that seldom, if ever, amount to 1600 men, which depend alone upon the king, and are all foreigners, at least the officers; these have the charge of his person while in the field. In times, when the king is out of leading-strings, they amount to four or five thousand, and then oppress the country; for they have great privileges. At times, when the king's hands are weak, they are kept incomplete out of fear and jealousy.

Before the king marches, three proclamations are made. The first is, "Buy your mules, get ready your provision, and pay your servants; for, after such a day, they that seek me here shall not find me." The second is about a week after, or according as the exigency is pressing; this is, "Cut down the kantuffa in the four quarters of the world, for I do not know where I am going." This kantuffa is a terrible thorn which very much molests the king and nobility in their march, by taking hold of their long

hair, and the cotton cloth they are wrapped in. The third and last proclamation is, "I am encamped upon the Angrab, or Kahha; he that does not join me here, I will chastise him for seven years."

The rains generally cease the eighth of September; a sickly season follows, till they begin again about the 20th of October; they then continue pretty constant, but moderate in quantity, till Hedar St. Michael, the eighth of November. All epidemic diseases cease with the end of these rains, and it is then the armies begin to march.

There are more churches in Abyssinia than in any other country. Every great man that dies thinks he has atoned for all his wickedness if he leaves a fund to build a church, or has built one in his lifetime. The king builds many. Wherever a victory is gained, there a church is erected in the very field thinking with the putrid bodies of the slain. Formerly this was only the case when the enemy was Pagan or Infidel; now the same is observed when the victories are over Christians. The situation of a church is always chosen near running water, for the convenience of their purifications and ablutions, in which they observe strictly the Levitical law. They are always placed upon the top of some beautiful round hill, which is surrounded entirely with rows of the oxycedrus, or Virginia cedar, which grows here in great beauty and perfection, and is called *Ara*. There is nothing adds so much to the beauty of the country as these churches and the plantation about them. In the middle of this plantation of cedars is interspersed, at proper distances, a number of these beautiful trees called *Cullo*, which grow very high, and are all extremely picturesque. The churches are all round, with thatched roofs; their funnels are perfect cones; the outside is surrounded by a number of wooden pillars, which are nothing else than the trunks of the cedar tree, and are placed to support the edifice, about eight feet of the roof projecting beyond the wall of the church, which forms an agreeable walk, or colonade, around it in hot weather, or in rain. The inside of the church is in several divisions, according as is prescribed by the law of Moses. The hill is a circle somewhat wider than the inner one; here the congregation sit and pray. Within this is a square, and that square is divided by a veil or curtain, in which is another very small division answering to the holy of holies. This is so narrow that none but the priests can go into it. Whoever enters a church must be bare-footed, and if bare-footed, may go through every part of it, if he has any such curiosity, provided he is pure, that is, has not been concerned with women for twenty-four hours before, or touched carrion or dead bodies; for in that case he is not to go within the precincts, or outer circumference of the church, but stand and say his prayers at an awful distance among the cedars: which distance every person of both sexes, under Jewish disqualifications, are obliged to observe; and this is always a place belonging to the church, where, unless in Lem, the greatest part of the congregation may be seen; but this is left to the person's own conscience; and if there was either great inconvenience in the one situation, or great satisfaction in the other, the case would be otherwise.

On first entering the church, they put off their shoes; but leave a servant there with them, or else they would be stolen, if good for any thing, by the priests and monks before they come out of the church. At entering they kiss the threshold, and the two door-posts, go in and say what prayer they please; that finished, they come out again, and their duty is over. The churches are full of pictures, painted on parchment, and nailed upon the walls, in a manner little less slovenly than paltry prints in beggarly country ale-houses.

Nothing embossed, nor in relief, ever appears in any of their churches; all this would be reckoned idolatry, so much so, that they do not wear a cross, as has been represented, on the top of the ball of

ey are wrapped in. The
man, "I am encamped upon
that does not join me
r seven years."
e eighth of Septem-
s, till they begin again
they then continue pretty
quantity, till Hedar Si-
November. All epidem-
of these rains, and its
arch.

in Abyssinia than in any
t man that dies thinks he
adness if he leaves a fund
must one in his life-time.
Wherever a victory is
reted in the very field
odies of the slain. For-
se when the enemy was
same is observed when
ussions. The situation of
ar running water, for the
cations and ablutions, in
the Levitical law. They
e top of some beautiful
aded entirely with row of
cedar, which grows to a
tion, and is called *Arz*,
much to the beauty of the
and the plantations being
his plantation of cedars
nces, a number of those
which grow very high,
elque. The churches are
roofs; their summits are
is surrounded by a num-
ch are nothing else than
e, and are placed to the
ut feet of the roof pro-
the church, which forms
nade, around it in the
inside of the church is
ng as is prescribed by the
s a circle somewhat wider
the congregation sit and
quare, and that square in
ain, in which is another
ng to the holy of holies,
e but the priests can go
a church must be here,
may go through every
ch curiosity, provided he
h concerned with women
re, or touched carnal
se he is not to go with-
ference of the church, but
an awful distance among
e every person of both
ifications, are obliged to
a place belonging to the
ent, the greatest part of
een; but this is left to
y; and if there was either
one situation, or great sa-
se would be otherwise.

church, they put off their
there with them, or else
od for any thing, by the
they come out of the
kiss the threshold, and
and say what prayer they
come out again, and their
es are full of pictures,
nailed upon the walls,
only than paltry prints in

n relief, ever appears in
this would be reckoned
hey do not wear a cross,
the top of the ball of the

the fendick, or standard, because it calls a shade; but there is no doubt that pictures have been used in their churches from the very earliest age of Chriillianity.

The Abyssinians receive the holy sacrament in both kinds in unleavened bread, and in the grape bruised with the hulk together as it grows, so that it is a kind of marmalade, and is given in a flat spoon: whatever they may pretend, some mixture seems necessary to keep it from fermentation in the state that it is in, unless the dried cluster is fresh bruised juft before it is used, for it is little more fluid than the common marmalade of confectioners; but it is perfectly the grape as it grew, bruised, bones and skin together. Some means, however, have been used, as Mr. Bruce supposes, to prevent fermentation, and make it keep; and though this is constantly denied, he has often thought he tasted a flavour that was not natural to the grape itself.

A quantity of excellent strong wine is made at Dreda, south-west from Gondar, about thirty miles, which would more than supply the quantity necessary for the celebration of the eucharist in all Abyssinia twenty times over. The people themselves are not fond of wine, and plant the vine in one place only; but a small black grape, of an excellent flavour, grows plentifully wild in every wood in Tigré.

Large pieces of bread are given to the communicants in proportion to their quality; and Mr. Bruce has seen great men, who, though they opened their mouths as wide as conveniently a man can do, yet, from the respect the priest bore him, such a portion of the loaf was put into his mouth that water ran from his eyes, from the incapacity of chewing it, which, however, he does as indecently, and with fallas much noise, as he eats at table.

After receiving the sacrament of the eucharist in both kinds, a pitcher of water is brought, of which the communicant drinks a large draught; and well he needs it to wash down the quantity of bread he has just swallowed. He then retires from the steps of the inner division, upon which the administering priest stands, and, turning his face to the wall of the church, in private says some prayer with seeming decency and attention.

The Abyssinians are not all agreed about the state of souls before the resurrection of the body. The opinion which generally prevails is, that there is no third state: but that, after the example of the thief,

the souls of good men enjoy the beatific vision immediately upon the separation from the body. Their circumcision is performed with a sharp knife, or razor. There is no laceration with the nail, no formula or repetition of words, nor any religious ceremony at the time of the operation, nor is it done at any particular age, and generally it is a woman that is the surgeon.

There is another ceremony which regards the women also, and which Mr. Bruce calls *in-jon*. As soon as a near relation dies in Abyssinia, a brother or parent, cousin-german or lover, every woman in that relation, with the nail of her little finger, which she leaves long on purpose, cuts the skin of both her temples, about the size of a sixpence; and therefore you see either a wound or a scar in every fair face in Abyssinia; and in the dry season, when the camp is out, from the loss of friends, they seldom have liberty to heal till peace, and the army return with the rains.

The Abyssinians, like the ancient Egyptians, their first colony, in computing their time, have continued the use of the solar year. They have another way peculiar to themselves; they read the whole of the four evangelists every year in their churches. They begin with Matthew, then proceed to Mark, Luke, and John, in order; and when they speak of an event, they write and say it happened in the days of Matthew, that is, in the first quarter of the year, while the gospel of St. Matthew was yet reading in the churches. They compute the time of the day in a very arbitrary, irregular manner. The twilight is very short, almost imperceptible, and was still more so when the court was removed further to the southward in Shoa. As soon as the sun falls below the horizon, night comes on, and all the stars appear.

This term, then, the twilight, they choose for the beginning of their day, and call it *Naggé*, which is the very time the twilight of the morning falls. The same is observed at night, and *Melet* is meant to signify the instant of beginning the twilight, between the sun's falling below the horizon and the stars appearing. Mid-day is by them called *Kater*, a very old word, which signifies *culmination*, or a thing's being arrived or placed at the middle or highest part of an arch. All the rest of times, in conversation, they describe by pointing at the place in the heavens where the sun then was, when what they are describing happened.

CH A P. III.

Mr. Bruce appointed Governor of Ras el Feel—Account of the Battle of Banja—Conspiracy against Michael—Description of Gondar, Emfras, and Lake Ezana—A Visit to the great Cataract of Alata—Mr. Bruce passes the Nile—An Alarm on approaching the Army—He joins the King—A Retreat towards Gondar—Dangerous Passage of the Nile—Battle of Linjour—Peace with Fasil—Arrival at Gondar—Retreat to Tigré.

MR. BRUCE being one day at court, met the king's secretary Tecla Mariam, who informed him, with a smiling countenance, that he was made the governor of Ras el Feel. Mr. Bruce stood motionless with astonishment, particularly as he was at that identical time, endeavouring to get Yafine appointed deputy of Ras el Feel. He now found the power in his own hands; and, after having recovered himself a little from his surprise, went to Ayto Confu to kiss his hand as his superior; but this he would by no means suffer him to do. A great dinner was provided them by the Iteghé; and Yafine being sent for, was appointed, clothed, that is, invested, and ordered immediately to Ras el Feel to his government, to make peace with the Davaina, and bring all the horses he could get with him from thence, or from Atbara. The having thus provided for Yafine, and secured, as he thought, a retreat to Sennaar for himself, gave him the first real pleasure that he had re-

ceived since his landing at Masuah; and that day, seeing himself in company with all his friends, and the hopes of this country, for the first time since his arrival in Abyssinia, he abandoned himself to joy.

However, his constitution was too much weakened to bear any excesses. The day after, when he went home to Emfras, he found himself attacked with a slow fever, and thinking that it was the prelude of an ague, with which he was often tormented, he fell to taking bark, without any remission, or, where the remission was very obscure, he shut himself up in the house, upon his constant regimen of boiled rice, with abundant draughts of cold water. There was about this time a piece of bad news circulated at Gondar, that Kasmati Boro, whom the Ras had left governor at Damot, had been beaten by Fasil, and obliged to retire to his own country in Gojam, to Stadis Amba, near the passage of the Nile, at Mipé; and that Fasil, with a much larger army of Galla than

that

that

that he had brought to Fagitta, had taken possession of Buré, the usual place of his residence.

After Fahl's defeat at Fagitta, and the affront he received at Alfoa in the heart of his own country, he had continued his route to Buré, a district of the Agows, where was his constant residence. After this he had crossed the Nile into the country of Bizamo; and Boro de Gago had taken up his residence at Brué, when Michael returned to Gondar; but no sooner had he heard of his arrival in those parts, than he marched with a number of horse, and forced his rival to retire to Gogam. A very obstinate battle was fought at Banja, in which the Agows were entirely defeated by Fahl, seven of their chiefs killed, all men of great consequence, among whom was Ayamico, a very near relation of the king.

The news was first brought by a son of Nanna Georgis, chief of the Agows, who escaped from the battle. Michael was at dinner, and Mr. Bruce was present. It was one of his carousals for the marriage of Powullen, when young Georgis came into the room, in a torn and dirty habit, unattended, and almost unperceived, and presented himself at the foot of the table. Michael had then in his hand a cup of gold, it being the exclusive privilege of the governor of the province of Fagie to drink out of such a cup; it was full of wine; before a word was spoken, and upon the first appearance of the man, he threw the cup and wine upon the ground, and cried out, "I am guilty of the death of these people." Every one arose, the table was removed, and Georgis told his misfortune, that Nanna Georgis his father, Zeogam Georgis, the next in rank among them, Avamico the king's relation, and four other chiefs, were slain at Banja, and their race nearly extirpated by a victory gained with much bloodshed, and after cruelly punished in retaliation for that of Fagitta. A council was immediately called, where it was resolved, that, though the rainy season was at hand, the utmost expedition should be made to take the field; that Gulho and Powullen should return to their provinces, and increase their army to the utmost of their power; that the king should take the low road by Foggora and Dara, there to join the troops of Beg order and Ambari, cross the Nile at the mouth of the lake, above the second cataract, as it is called, and march thence straight to Buré, which, by speedy marches, might be done in five or six days.

No resolution was ever embraced with more alacrity, the cause of the Agows was the cause of Gondar, and Fenne would cite immediately follow. The king's troops and those of Michael were all ready, and all just refreshed themselves by a week's restivity. Gulho and Powullen, after having sworn to Michael that they never would return without Fahl's head, decamped next morning with very different intentions in their hearts; for no sooner had they crossed Begender than they entered into a conspiracy in form against Michael, which they had long meditated; they had resolved to make peace with Fahl, and swear with him a solemn league, that they were but to have one cause, one council, and one interest, till they had deprived Michael of his life and dignity.

Mr. Bruce, at this time, found himself declining in health, to which the irregularities of the fall week had greatly contributed. He obtained leave from the king to go to Emfras, a town about twenty miles south from Gondar, where a number of Mahometan tent-makers lived. Gulho had a house there, and a pleasant garden, which he very willingly gave Mr. Bruce the use of, with this advice, however, which at the time he did not understand, rather to go on to Ambara with him, for he would there sooner recover his health, and be more in quiet, than with the king or Michael. As the king was to pass immediately under this town, and as mules of those that loaded and unloaded his tents and baggage were Mahometans, and lived at Emfras, he could not be better situated, or more at his liberty and ease than at Emfras.

Gondar, the metropolis of Abyssinia, is situated

upon a hill of considerable height, the top of it nearly plain, on which the town is placed. It consists of about ten thousand families in times of peace; the houses are chiefly of clay, the roofs thatched in the form of cones, which is always the construction within the tropical rains. On the west end of the town is the king's house, formerly a structure of considerable consequence; it was a square building, flanked with square towers; it was formerly four stories high; and from the top of it, had a magnificent view of all the country southward to the lake of Tzana. Great part of this house is now in ruins, having been burnt at different times; but there is still ample lodging in the two lowest floors of it, the audience-chamber being above one hundred and twenty feet long.

Mr. Bruce left Gondar the 4th of April at eight o'clock in the morning, and the next day arrived at Emfras, after a very pleasant, though not interesting excursion. The town is situated on a steep hill, and the way up to it is almost perpendicular, like the ascent of a ladder. The houses are all placed about the middle of the hill, fronting the well, in number about 300. Above these houses are gardens, or rather fields, full of trees and bushes, without any sort of order, up to the very top. Emfras commands a view of the whole lake of Tzana, and part of the country on the other side. It was once a royal residence. On a small hill is a house of Hatzé Hannes, in form of a square tower, now going fall to ruin.

The lake of Tzana is much the largest expanse of water known in that country. Its extent, however, has been greatly exaggerated. Its greatest breadth is 35 miles; but it decreases greatly at each extremity, where it is not sometimes above ten miles broad. Its greatest length is 49 miles from north to south, and which extent this lake has in length. In the dry months, from October to March, the lake shrinks greatly in size; but after that all those rivers are full which are on every side of it, and fall into the lake, like radii drawn to a centre, then it swells, and extends itself into the plain country, and has of course a much larger surface.

News was received on the 12th of May, that the king had marched to Ledda, and on the 15th, Mr. Bruce and his friends heard the king's kettle-drums. Forty-five of these instruments constantly go before him, beating all the way while he is on his march. The Mahometan town near the water was plundered in a minute, but the inhabitants had long before removed every thing valuable.

Early on the 14th, Mr. Bruce mounted his horse, with all his men servants, leaving the women kivas, and an old man to take care of the house. It was very unsafe to travel in such company at such an hour. Early as it was, the king was then in council, and Ras Michael, who had his advisers assembled also in his tent, had just left it to go to the king's. There was about 500 yards between their tents, and a free avenue constantly left, in which it is a crime to stand, or even to cross, unless for messengers sent from one to the other. Our traveller took an opportunity of paying a visit to the great cataract of Alata. The first thing our traveller saw thence was the bridge, which consists of one arch of about twenty-five feet broad. Fragments of the parapets remained, and the bridge itself seemed to bear the appearance of frequent repairs, and many attempts to ruin it; otherwise, in its construction, it was exceedingly commodious. The Nile here is confined between two rocks, and runs in a deep trough, with great roaring and impetuous velocity. They were told no crocodiles were ever seen so high, and were obliged to remount the stream above half a mile before they came to the cataract, through trees and bushes of a beautiful and delightful appearance. The cataract itself was a most magnificent sight. The missionaries say the fall is about sixteen ells, or fifty feet. The measuring is long, indeed, very difficult; but, by the position of long sticks, and poles of different lengths, at different heights of the rock, from the water's edge, Mr. Bruce

thinks

height, the top of it nearly
placed. It consists of
in times of peace; the
the roofs thatched in the
the confluence within
well end of the town is
structure of confidence
the building, flanked with
ly four stories high; and,
significant view of all the
of Tzana. Great parts
s, having been burnt at
still ample lodging in the
and three chambers being
ty five long.

On the 4th of April at eight
the next day arrived at
though not interesting
ated on a steep hill, at a
singular, like the theatre
all placed about the
e well, in number about
are gardens, or rather
nes, without any sort of
of the commands a view
and part of the country
re a royal residence. On
re Hannes, in form of a
to run.

the largest expanse of
Its extent, however,
Its greatest breadth
greatly at each extremity,
se ten miles broad. From
om north to south, and
in length. In the 27
March, the lake thins
all those rivers are full
, and fall into the lake,
then it swells, and ex-
tends, and has of course

On the 12th of May, that the
and on the 13th, Mr.
the king's kettle-drums
s constantly go before
ule he is on his march.
e water was plundered
ants had long before re-

He mounted his horse,
ing the women servants
of the house. It was
company at such an hour
then in council, and Ras
s assembled also in his
the king's. There was
tents, and a free avail-
is a crime to stand, or
dangers sent from the
let took an opportunity
atarati of Alata. The
threw was the bridge,
about twenty-five feet
spects remained, and the
the appearance of trem-
pts to run it; others
s exceedingly commo-
ted between two rocks,
d great roaring and im-
d no crocodiles were
plaged to remount the
ore they came to the
thes of a beautiful and
atarati itself was a moll
onaries say the fall is
t. The measuring is,
the position of long
lengths, at different
ater's edge, Mr. Bruce
thinks

thinks it is nearer forty feet than any other measure.

The river had been considerably increased by rains,
and fell in one sheet of water, without any interval,
above half an English mile in breadth, with a force
and noise that was truly terrible, and which stunned,
and made him, for a time, perfectly dizzy. A thick
fog, or haze, covered the fall all round, and hung
over the course of the stream both above and below,
marking its track, though the water was not seen. The
river, though swelled with rain, preserved its natural
channels, and fell, as far as he could discern, into a
deep pool, or basin, in the solid rock, which was
full, and in twenty different eddies to the very foot of
the precipice; the stream, when it fell, seeming part of
it to run back with great fury upon the rock, as well
as forward in the line of its course, raising a wave,
of violent ebullition, by chafing against each other.

Mr. Bruce and his friends resumed their journey
on the 22d of May. They set out accordingly at six
o'clock in the morning, ascending some hills covered
with trees and shrubs of inexpressible beauty, and
many of extraordinary fragrance. They continued
ascending about three miles, till they came to the top
of the ridge within sight of the lake. As they rose,
the hills became more bare and less beautiful.

Having passed the Nile, Mr. Bruce found himself
more than ordinarily depressed: his spirits were sunk
almost to a degree of despondency, and yet nothing
had happened since that period more than was expected
before. This disagreeable situation of mind continued
the whole night. Impatient of suffering any
longer, he leaped out of bed, and went to the door
of the tent, where the outward air perfectly awakened
him, and restored his strength and courage. All was
dark, and at a distance he saw several bright fires, but
lower down, and more to the right than he expected,
which made him think he was mistaken in the situa-
tion of Karcagna. It was then near four in the
morning of the 25th. He called upon his compa-
nions, happily buried in deep sleep, as he was de-
termined, if possible, to join the king that day. They
accordingly were three or four miles from Deidera
when the sun rose; there had been little rain that
night, and they found very few torrents on their
way; but it was slippery, and unceasingly walking, the rich
fishing trodden into a confluence like palle. A
half before nine they heard a gun fired, which gave
them some joy, as the army seemed not to be far off;
two minutes after, they heard several dropping shots;
and, in less than a quarter of an hour's time a general
muzz began from right to left, which ceased for an
instant, and then was heard again as faint as ever;
about the occasion of which they were divided in
opinion. The firing continued much in the same way,
rather flacker, but apparently advancing nearer them;
a fire sign that their army was beaten and retreating.
They, therefore, made themselves ready, and mounted
on horseback, that they might join them. They had
not gone far in the plain before they had a sight of the
enemy, to their very great surprise and no small con-
flict. A multitude of deer, buffaloes, boars, and
various other wild beasts, had been alarmed by
the noise and daily advancing of the army, and gradu-
ally driven before them. The country was all
overgrown with wild oats, a great many of the vil-
lages having been burnt the year before the inhabi-
tants had abandoned them: in this shelter the wild
beasts had taken up their abodes in very great num-
bers. When the army pointed towards Karcagna to
the left, the silence and solitude on the opposite side
made them turn to the right to where the Nile makes
a semi-circle, the Jemma being behind them, and
much overflowed. When the army, therefore, instead
of marching south and by ead towards Samcen, had
turned their course north-west, their faces towards
Gondar, they had fallen in with these innumerable
herds of deer and other beasts, who, confined be-
tween the Nile, the Jemma, and the lake, had no
way to return but that by which they had come. These
animals, finding men in every direction in which they

attempted to pass, became desperate with fear; and,
not knowing what course to take, fell a prey to the
troops. The soldiers, happy in an occasion of pro-
curing animal food, presently fell to firing wherever
the beasts appeared; every loaded gun was discharged
upon them, and this continued for very near an hour.

His majesty and Ras Michael were in the most
violent agitation of mind; though the cause was before
their eyes, yet the word went about that Woodage
Afael had attacked the army; and this occasioned a
great panic and disorder, for every body was convinced
with reason that he was not far off. The firing, how-
ever, continued, the balls flew about in every direc-
tion, some few were killed, and many people and
horses were hurt; still they fired, and Ras Michael,
at the door of his tent, crying, threatening, and
tearing his grey locks, found, for a few minutes, the
army was not under his command. At this instant,
Kafmati Netcho, whose Fit-Aurra's had fallen back
on his front, ordered his kettle-drums to be beat
before he arrived in the king's presence; and this
being heard, without it being known generally who
they were, occasioned another panic. The king or-
dered his tent to be pitched, his standard to be let
up, his drums to beat (the signal for encamping) and
the firing immediately ceased. But it was a long
while before all the army could believe that Woodage
Afael had not been engaged with some part of it
that day. Mr. Bruce coming up with the army, he
asked one of the generals, whether they were now
marching? He said, that as soon as the news of the
conspiracy were known, a council was held, where
it was the general opinion they should proceed briskly
forward, and attack Fafil alone at Buie, then turn to
Gondar, to meet the other two; but then they had it
upon the very best authority that great rains had fallen
to the southward; that the rivers, which were so
frequent in that part of the country, were mostly
impassable, so there would be great danger in meeting
Fafil with an army spent and fatigued with the diffi-
culty of the roads. It was, therefore, determined,
and the Ras was decidedly of that opinion, that they
should keep their army entire for a better day, and
immediately cross the Nile, and march back to Gondar;
that they had accordingly wheeled about, and that day
was the first of their proceeding, which had been in-
terrupted by the accident of the firing. Mr. Bruce
then waited upon the king, and staid a considerable
time with him.

Early on the 26th, the army marched towards the
Nile. In the afternoon they encamped, between two
and three, on the banks of the river Coga. On the
27th, they left the river Coga, marching down upon
the Nile, and passed the church of Marian Net, as
they call the church of St. Anne. Here the superior,
attended by about fifty of his monks, came in pro-
cession to welcome Ras Michael; but he, it seems,
had received some intelligence of ill-offices the people
of this quarter had done to the Agows by Fafil's di-
rection; he, therefore, ordered the church to be
plundered, and took the superior, and two of the
leading men of the monks, away with him to Gondar;
several of the others were killed and wounded, with-
out provocation, by the soldiers, and the rest dispersed
through the country. They arrived about four on
the banks of the Nile, and took possession in a line
of about 600 yards of ground. From the time they
decamped from Coga, they had violent rain, thunder,
lightning, &c. The Abyssinian armies pass the Nile
at all seasons. It rolls with it no trees, stones, nor
impediments; yet the sight of such a monstrous mass
of water terrified our traveller, and made him think
the idea of crossing would be laid aside. It was plain
in the face of every one, that they gave themselves
over for lost; an universal dejection had taken place,
and it was but too visible that the army was defeated
by the weather, without having seen an enemy. A
cold and brisk gale now sprung up at N. W. with
a clear sun; and soon after four, when the army ar-
rived on the banks of the Nile, these temporary tor-

rents were all subsided, the fun was hot, and the ground again becoming dry.

Ras Michael's Fit-Auraris, with about 400 men, had passed in the morning, and had sent back word to the king, that his men had passed swimming, and with very great difficulty; that he doubted whether the horses, or loaded mules, could cross at any rate; but if it were resolved to make the trial, they should do it immediately, without staying till the increase of the river. He said both banks were composed of black earth, slippery and miry, which would become more so when horses had puddled it; he advised, above all, the turning to the right immediately after coming ashore, in the direction in which he had fixed poles, as the earth there was hard and firm, besides having the advantage of some round stones, which hindered the beasts from slipping or sinking. Instead, therefore, of retreating there that night, it was resolved that the horse should cross immediately. The first who passed was a young man, a relation of the king, brother to Avamico, killed at the battle of Banja; he walked in with great caution, marking a track for the king to pass. He had gone upon rather solid ground, about twice the length of his horse, when he plunged out of his depth, and swam to the other side. The king followed him immediately with a great degree of haste, Ras Michael calling to him to proceed with caution, but without success. Afterwards came the old Ras on his mule, with several of his friends swimming to a winn and without their horses on each side of him, in a manner truly wonderful. He seemed to have lost his accustomed calmness, and appeared a good deal agitated; forbade, upon pain of death, any one to follow him directly, or to swim over, or, as their custom is, holding their mules by the tail. As soon as these were safely ashore, the king's household and black troops, and Mr. Bruce with them, advanced cautiously into the river, and swam happily over, in a deep stream of reddish coloured water which ran without violence amouss upon a level. Each horseman had a mule in his hand, which swam after him, or by his side, with his coat of mail and head-piece tied upon it. It is impossible to describe the confusion that followed; night was hard upon them, and, though it increased their loss, it, in great measure, concealed it; a thousand men had not yet passed, though on mules and horses; many mired in the muddy landing-place, fell back in the stream, and were carried away and drowned. Of the horse belonging to the king's household, one hundred and eighty in number, seven only were missing; with them Ayto Aylo, vice-chamberlain to the queen, and Tecla Mariam the king's uncle, a great friend of Ras Michael's, both old men. There was no baggage tent of the Ras and that of the king excepted) which had as yet come over, and these were wet, being drenched in the river. The Fit-Auraris had left, ready made, two rafts for Ozoro Eilher, and the other two ladies, with which the might have easily been conducted over, and without much danger; but the Ras had made Ozoro Eilher pass over in the same manner he had crossed himself, many swimming on each side of her mule. She would have fain staid on the east side, but it was in vain to remonstrate. She was with child, and had fainted several times; but yet nothing could prevail with the Ras to trust her on the bank till morning. She crossed, however, safely, though almost dead with fright. The night was cold and clear, and a strong wind at north-west had blown all the afternoon. The river had abated towards mid-night, when, whether from this cause, or, as they alleged, that they found a more favourable ford, all the Tigé infantry, and many mules lightly loaded, passed with less difficulty than any of the rest had done, and with them several loads of flour; luckily also, Mr. Bruce's two tents and mules, to his great consolation, came safely over when it was near morning. Still the army continued to pass, and those that could swim seemed best off. Ayto Aylo, the queen's chamberlain, and Tecla Mariam,

were probably drowned at the first attempt to pass, as they were never after heard of. Before day-light the van and the centre had all joined the king; the number that had perished was never distinctly known, for those that were missing were thought to have remained on the other side with Kella Yafous, at least for that day.

Kella Yafous crossed Amlac Olha, on the 25th, with some degree of difficulty, and was obliged to abandon several baggage mules. He advanced after this with as great diligence as possible to Delakur, and found the ford, though deep, much better than he expected. He had pitched his tent on the high road to Gondar, before Welleta Yafous, the enemy, knew he was decamped, and of this passage he immediately advised Michael, refreshing his troops for any emergency. About two in the afternoon Welleta Yafous appeared with his horse on the other side of the Nile, but it was then too late. Kella Yafous was so strongly posted, and the banks of the river so guarded with fire-arms, down to the water-edge, that Fasil and all his army would not have dared to attempt the passage, or even approach the banks of the river.

When Ras Michael received this intelligence, he dispatched the Fit-Auraris, Netcho, to take post upon the ford of the Kelti, a large river, but rather broad than deep, about three miles off. He himself followed early in the morning, and passed the Kelti just at sun rise, without halting; he then advanced to meet Kella Yafous, as the army began to want provisions, the little flour that had been brought over, of which the soldiers had taken with them, being nearly exhausted during that night and the morning after. It was found too, that the men had but little powder, none of them having recovered their quantity since the burning of the deers; but what they had was in perfect good order, being kept in horns and small wooden bottles, corked in such a manner as to be secured from water of any kind. Kella Yafous therefore, being in possession of the baggage, powder, and the provisions, a junction with him was absolutely necessary, and they expected to effect this at Wamadega, about twenty miles from their last night's quarters. Between twelve and one they heard the Fit-Auraris engaged; and there was sharp firing on both sides, which soon ceased. Michael ordered his army immediately to halt; he sent the king, and Billitana Gueta Tecla, commander of the van; Welleta Michael, and Ayto Tecla's Sire, the rear. Having marched a little farther, he changed his order of battle. It was not long before the Fit-Auraris's two challengers arrived, running like deer along the plain, which was not absolutely flat, but sloped gently down, declining not a fathom in fifteen. Their account was, that they had fallen in with Fasil's Fit-Auraris; that they had attacked him bravely, and, though the enemy were greatly superior, being all horse except a few musqueteers, had killed four of them. The Ras, having first heard the message of the Fit-Auraris alone, he sent a man to report it to the king; and, immediately after that, he ordered two horsemen to go full gallop along the east-side of the hill, the low road to Wamadega, to warn Kella Yafous of Fasil's being near at hand; he likewise directed the Fit-Auraris to advance cautiously till he had seen Fasil, and to pursue no party that should retreat before him.

Shortly after, Fasil appeared at the top of the hill, with about 2000 horse. It was a fine sight, but the evening was beginning to be overcast. After having taken a full view of the army, they all began to move slowly down the hill, beating their kettle drums. Fasil sent down a party to skirmish with these; and he himself halted after having made a few paces down the hill. The two bodies of horse met just half way, and mingled together, as appeared at least, with very decisive intention; but whether it was by orders or from fear, for they were not overmatched in numbers, the Abyssinian horse turned their backs and came precipitately down, so that they were afraid

the first attempt to pass it. Before day-break all joined the king; the Ras never distinctly known, were thought to have been Kella Yafous, at least

Abba Obba, on the 28th, and was obliged to fly. He advanced as far as possible to Delakus, much better than his tent on the high plain. At this passage he refreshed his troops for the afternoon. Wellseta's horse on the other side was too late. Kella Yafous on the banks of the river forced him to the water-edge, but he did not dare to attempt the banks of the river. He used this intelligence, he sent Natcho, to take possession of the river, but rather a few miles off. He himself went, and passed the Kelti river; he then advanced the army began to wear out that had been brought had taken with them, thinking that night and the day too, that the men had them having returned during of the day; but in good order, being kept in bottles, corked in such a way that no water of any kind could get into them. They were in possession of the provisions, a junction was made, and they expected about twenty miles from between twelve and one engaged; and there was much loon ceased. Immediately to him; he sent Abba Tecla, commander, and Abba Tecla, and a little further, he was not long before the messengers arrived, running which was not absolutely declining to a station that they had fallen they had attacked but my were greatly surprised few musketeers, had Ras, having full force alone, he sent a man immediately after this, to full gallop along the road to Walmadege, being near at hand; he was to advance could not to pursue no party

at the top of the hill, as a fine sight, but the vercast. After having they all began to move they their kettle drums, with these; and made a few paces of horse met just half as appeared at least, but whether it was by were not overmatched they turned their backs that they were afraid they

they would break in upon the foot. Several shots were fired from the centre at them by order of the Ras, who cried out aloud, in derision, "Take away these horses and send them to the mill." They divided, however, to the right and left, into the two grassy valleys under cover of the musketry, and a very few horses of Fasil's were carried in along with them, and slain by the soldiers on the side of the hill. On the king's side, no man of note was missing but Wellseta Michael, nephew of Ras Michael, whose horse falling, he was taken prisoner by Fasil, and carried off.

Now the whole army advanced at a very brisk pace, hooping and screaming, according to their custom, in a most harsh and barbarous manner, crying out *Hatsé Ali!* but Fasil, who saw the forward commencement of the king's troops, and that a few minutes would lay him under necessity of risking a battle, which he did not intend, withdrew his troops at a smart trot over the smooth downs, returning towards Bokkon Abba. This is what was called the battle of Linjour, from a village burnt by Ras Michael last campaign. The Ras, who saw that Fasil would not fight, easily penetrated his reasons; and no sooner was he gone, and his own drums silent, than he heard a negareet beat, and knew it to be that of Kella Yafous. His general encamped upon the river Awoley, leaving his tents and baggage under a proper guard, and had marched with the best and fiercest of his troops to join Michael before the engagement. All was joy at meeting; every rank of men joined in extolling the merit and conduct of their leaders.

Next day the army marched to Dingleber, a high hill, or rock, approaching to close to the lake as scarcely to leave a passage between. Upon the top of this rock is the king's house. As they arrived very early there, and were now out of Fasil's government, the king insisted upon treating Ras Michael and all the people of consideration. Unfortunately, however, when his majesty sat down to dinner, an accident happened that occasioned great repudiation among all his servants. A black eagle was chased into the king's tent by some of the birds of prey that hover about the camp; and it was after in the mouth of every one, that the king would be dethroned by a man of inferior birth and condition. Every body at that time looked to Fasil: the event proved the application false, though the omen was true. Powullen of Bengender was as low-born as Fasil, as great a traitor, but more successful, to whom the ominous presage pointed; and, though we cannot but look upon the whole as accident, it was but too soon fulfilled.

Two horsemen arrived at Dingleber, from Fasil, on the 29th, in the evening, clad in habits of peace, and without arms; they were known to be two of his principal servants, were grave, genteel, middle-aged men. They had an audience early after their coming, first of the Ras, then of the king. They said, and said truly, that Fasil had repulsed the Kelti, was encamped on the opposite side, and was not yet joined by Wellseta Yafous. Their errand was, to desire that the Ras might not fatigue his men by unnecessary hurrying on to Gondar, because he might rest assured of receiving no further molestation from Fasil their master, as he was on his march to Buré. They told the Ras the whole of the conspiracy, as he as it regarded him, and the agreement that Powullen and Gulho had made with their master to surround him at Dendera: they mentioned, moreover, how sensible Fasil was of their treason towards him; that, instead of keeping their word, they had let him to engage the king and the Ras's whole force, at a time when they knew the greatest part of his Galla troops were retired to the other side of the Nile, and could be assembled with difficulty: that if the Ras by chance had crossed at Delakus, as Kella Yafous had done, instead of embarrassing his army

among the rivers of Maittha, and crossing the Nile at that most dangerous place near Amloc-Obba (a passage never before attempted in the rainy season) the consequence would have been, that he must have either fought at great disadvantage with an inferior army against the Ras, or have retired to Metelakel, leaving his whole country to the mercy of his enemies. Fasil declared his resolution never again to appear in arms against the king, but that he would hold his government under him, and pay the accustomed taxes punctually: he promised also, that he would renounce all manner of connection with Gulho and Powullen, as he had already done, and that he would take the field against them next season with his whole force, whenever the king ordered him. The messengers concluded, with desiring the Ras to give Fasil his grand-daughter, Wellseta Selassé, in marriage, and that he would then come to Gondar without distrust or apprehension. Though the Ras did not believe all this, he made no difficulty in agreeing to every thing that they desired. He promised the grand-daughter; and, as earnest of his believing the rest, the king's two negareets were brought to the door of the tent, where, to the very great surprise of our travellers, they heard it proclaimed, "Fasil is governor of the Agow, Maittha, Gojam, and Damot; prosperity to him, and long may he live a faithful servant to the king our master!"—This was an extraordinary revolution in so small a space of time. It was scarce 43 hours since Fasil had laid a scheme for drowning the greater part of the army in the Nile, and cutting the throats of the residue on both sides of it; it was not twenty-four hours, since he had met them to fight in open field, and now he was become the king's lieutenant general in four of the most opulent provinces of Abyssinia. This was produced, however, by the necessity of the times, and both parties were playing at the same game, who should over-reach the other. Fasil's messengers were magnificently clothed, and it was first intended they should have gone back to him; but, after reflection, another person was sent, these two choosing to go to Gondar with the king, to remain hostages for Fasil's word, and to bring back his investiture from thence. Buré. Soon after this, they arrived at Gondar. Several of the great officers of state reached Gondar, and many others met them at Abba Samuel. The king would fain have persuaded Mr. Bruce to accompany him to Tigie, but this our traveller declined. He then advised Mr. Bruce to live entirely at Kalcum with the Iteghe, without going out, unless Fasil came to Gondar, and to send him a full account how he was treated. Upon this they parted with inexpressible reluctance.

Our traveller, much impressed with the peculiar kindness and condescension of this king, expatiates much in his favour. He was, however, like his countrymen, much addicted to superstition, and wayward, for ever, by ridiculous omens. He imagined Mr. Bruce competent in the talk of foretelling, especially when he talked with confidence of his speedy return—"Then" (says he, in an humble, complaining tone) "you, Yagoube, could tell me if you pleased, whether I shall or not return in safety, and what is to befall me: those instruments and those wheels, with which you are so constantly looking at the stars, can certainly be for no other use than prying into futurity." Mr. Bruce assured him, that these were only instruments to guide ships at sea and which all travellers required in order to mark the roads they take, that, being once traced, they might thus be made known to all mankind, and certified even to strangers. He further assured his majesty, that he was, like others, totally ignorant of the decrees of Providence, and that what made him speak of his return as certain, was merely from observations and the consequent reflections which he made, which were, in his opinion, more to be relied on than prophecies and divinations by stars.

B O O K I I.

C H A P T E R I.

Mr. Bruce's Second Journey to discover the Source of the Nile—An Interview with Fasil—His Character, &c.—Journey continued—They pass the Nile—Arrive at Goutto—Mountains of the Moon—Disimulation of Waddi—Bruce's Behaviour to him—A Reconciliation, &c.—Arrival at the Source of the Nile—Description thereof—Mr. Bruce's Reception among the Inhabitants—Their Character, Trade, &c. &c.

ON the 27th of October, Mr. Bruce prepared for his departure from Gondar. But, about twelve o'clock, he was told a message from Ras Michael had arrived with great news from Tigré. He went immediately to Koseam as fast as he could gallop, and found there Guebra Christos, a man used to bring the jars of bouza to Ras Michael at his dinner and supper; low men are always employed on such errands, that they may not, from their consequence, excite a desire of vengeance. The message that he brought was to order bread and beer to be ready for 30,000 men who were coming with the king, as he had just decamped from before the mountain Haramat, which he had taken, and put Za Menfus to the sword, with every man that was in it; this message struck the queen with such a terror that for the whole day after she was invisible.

They left Gondar on the 28th, passed the river Kahha, at the foot of the town, and reached Bamba, where Fasil was encamped on the 30th. Bamba is a collection of villages, in a valley now filled with soldiers. They went to the left with their guide, and got a tolerable house, but the door had been carried away. Fasil's tent was pitched a little below them, larger than the others, but without further distinction: it was easily known, however, by the lights about it; and by the nagaret, which still continued beating: he was then just alighting from his horse. Mr. Bruce immediately sent Ayto Aylo's servant, whom he had with him, to present his compliments, and acquaint him of his being on the road to visit him. He thought now all his difficulties were over: for he knew it was in his power to forward them to their journey's end; and his servants, whom he saw at the palace near the king, when Fasil was invested with his command, had assured Mr. Bruce, not only of an effectual protection, but also of a magnificent reception, if he chanced to find him in Mantla.

However, it was near eight at night of the 30th, before Mr. Bruce received a message to attend him. He repaired immediately to his tent, and after announcing himself, waited about a quarter of an hour before he was admitted; he was sitting upon a cushion with a lion's skin upon it, and another stretched like a carpet before his feet, and had a cotton cloth, something like a dirty towel, wrapped about his head; his upper cloak, or garment, was drawn tight about him over his neck and shoulders, so as to cover his hands. Mr. Bruce bowed, and went forward to kiss one of them, but it was so entangled in the cloth, that he was obliged to kiss the cloth instead of the hand. This was done either as not expecting he should pay him that compliment, as he certainly should not have done, being one of the king's servants, if the king had been at Gondar, or else it was intended for a mark of disrespect, which was very much of a piece with the rest of his behaviour afterwards. There was no carpet or cushions in the tent, and only a little straw, as if accidentally, thrown thence about it. Mr. Bruce sat down upon the ground, thinking him sick, not knowing what all this meant; he looked stedfastly at our travellers, saying softly, in Amharic, "How do you do? Are you very well?" Mr. Bruce made the usual answer. There was only one old man present, who was sitting on the floor mending a mule's bridle. He took him at first for an attendant, but observing that a servant uncovered held a candle to him, he thought he was

one of his Galla; but then he saw a blue silk thread, which he had about his neck, which is a badge of Christianity all over Abyssinia, and which a Galla would not wear. Mr. Bruce was unable to conjecture what he was. Ayto Aylo's servant, who stood behind Mr. Bruce, now pushed him with his knee, as a sign that he should speak, which he accordingly began to do with some difficulty. Fasil's behaviour was exceedingly haughty and impertinent, and Mr. Bruce, in the course of conversation, was at last provoked, that his nose burst out in a stream of blood; and, that instant, Aylo's servant took hold of Mr. Bruce by the shoulder, to hurry him out of the tent. Fasil seemed to be a good deal concerned, for the blood streamed out in plenty; our traveller then returned to his tent, and the blood was soon stanch'd by washing his face with cold water. He now went to bed, and falling into a sound sleep, was waked near mid-night by two of Fasil's servants, who brought each of them a lean live sheep; they said they had brought the sheep, and were come to ask how Mr. Bruce was, and to stay all night to watch the house for fear of the thieves in the army; they likewise brought their master's order for him to come early in the morning to him, as he wanted to dispatch him on his journey before he gave the Galla liberty to return. This dispelled every doubt, but it raised his spirits so much, that, out of impatience for morning, he slept very little more that night.

Fasil, having sent for Mr. Bruce the next morning, invited him to partake of a great breakfast; honey and butter, and raw beef in abundance, as also some stewed dishes that were very good. He was very hungry, having tasted nothing since dinner the day before; and he had had much exercise of body as well as of mind. They were all very cheerful, every one saying something about the Agows, or of the Nile. Mr. Bruce, at last, thus addressed Fasil: "Your continual hurry, said he, all the times I have seen you, has put it out of my power till now to make you the acknowledgement it is ordinary for strangers to present when they visit great men in their own country, and ask favours of them." Mr. Bruce then took a napkin, and opened it before him; he seemed to have forgotten the present altogether; but from that moment he saw his countenance changed, he was like another man. "O Yagoube, said he, a present to me! you should be sensible that is perfectly needless; you were recommended to me by the king and the Ras; you know we are friends, and I would do twenty times as much for yourself, without recommendation from either; besides, I have not behaved to you like a great man." It was not a very hard thing to conquer these scruples; he took the several pieces of the present one by one in his hands, and examined them; there was a crimson silk sash, made at Tunis, about five yards long, with a silk lining of the same colour; it was as beautiful a web of silk as ever Mr. Bruce saw; it had a small wavy pattern wrought in it; the next was a yellow, with a red narrow border, or stripe, and a silver wrought fringe, but neither so long nor thick as the other; the next were two Cyprus manufactured sashes, silk and cotton, with a satin stripe, the one broader than the other, but five yards long each; the next was a Persian pipe, with a long pliable tube, or worm, covered with Turkey leather, with an amber mouth piece, and a crystal vase for smoking tobacco through

wilted for end of their dangerous and troublesome journey. Under this mountain are the fountains of the Nile; about thirty miles, as near as they could conjecture in a straight line, without counting the deviations or crookedness of the road. At two o'clock in the afternoon of the second of November, they came to the banks of the Nile; the passage is very difficult and dangerous, the bottom being full of holes made by considerable springs, light sinking sand, and, at every little distance, large rocky stones; the eastern side was muddy and full of pits, the ground of clay; the Nile here is about 260 feet broad, and very rapid; its depth about four feet in the middle of the river, and the sides not above two. Its banks are of a very gentle, easy descent; the western side is chiefly ornamented with high trees of the saxe, or willow tribe, growing straight, without joints or knots, and bearing long pointed pods full of a kind of cotton.

When they had passed the Nile, they arrived at Gouto, the village so called, and took up their lodgings in the house of a considerable person, who had abandoned it upon their approach, thinking them part of Falil's army. Though this habitation was of use in protecting them from the poor, yet it hurt them by alarming, and so depriving them of the assistance of the opulent, such as the present owner, who, if he had known they were strangers from Gondar, would have willingly heard and entertained them, being a relation and friend of Shalaka Weiled Amdae.

Having heard distinctly the noise of the cataract, and having till a full hour and a half of light, Mr. Bruce determined to visit the water fall, lest he should be thereby detained the next morning. Being well-armed, Mr. Bruce set out for the cataract; and, after riding through a plain, hard country, in some parts very stony, and thick covered with trees, in something more than half an hour's easy galloping all the way, they came straight to the cataract, conducted thereto by the noise of the fall. This, known by the name of the First Cataract of the Nile, did not by its appearance come up to the idea they had formed of it, being scarce fifteen feet in height, and about fifty yards over; but in many places the sheet of water is interrupted, and leaves great intervals of rock. The sides are neither so woody nor verdant as those of the cataract of the Amar; and it is in every respect magnificent, or deserving to be seen, than is the noble cataract at Alata before described, erroneously called the Second Cataract. Mr. Bruce, having finished his curiosity at this cataract, galloped back the same road that he had come, without having seen a single person here he left Gouto.

Early on the 3d of November, they left the village of Gouto, and continued, for the first part of the day, through a plain country full of acacia trees. They resumed their journey from thence, and at length arrived at a triple ridge of mountains, the first one rising behind the other, nearly in form of three concentric circles, which seemed to suggest an idea, that they are mountains of the moon, or the *Montes Lunae* of antiquity, at the foot of which the Nile was said to rise; in fact, there are no others. These mountains are all of them excellent soil, and every where covered with fine pasture; but as this unfortunate country had been for ages the theatre of war, the inhabitants have only ploughed and sown the top of the mountain of the reach of enemies or marching armies. In the middle of the mountain are villages built on a white fort of galls, which makes them conspicuous at a great distance; the bottom is all grass, where their cattle feed continually under their eye; they, upon any alarm, they drive up to the top of the mountains out of danger.

When they arrived at the top of the mountain, they had a distinct view of all the remaining territory of Socala, the mountain Geeth, and church of St. Michael Geeth, about a mile and a half distant from St. Michael Socala, where they then were. They lay immediately below them, the Nile itself strangely diminished in size, and now only a brook

that had scarcely water to turn a mill. Mr. Bruce was now interrupted in his observations, by an alarm that they had lost Wollo their guide. Though Mr. Bruce had long expected something from his behaviour, he did not think, for his own sake, it could be his intention to leave them. Various conjectures immediately followed; some thought he had resolved to betray and rob them; some conceived it was an instigation of Lab's to him, in order to their being treacherously murdered; some again supposed he was slain by the wild beasts, especially those apes or baboons, whose voracity, ferocity, and fierce appearance were exceedingly magnified. Mr. Bruce began to think, that he might be ill, for he had before complained, and that the sickness might have overcome him upon the road; and this, too, was the opinion of Ayto Ayo's servant, who said, however, with a significant look, that he could not be far off; they, therefore, sent him, and one of the men that drove the mules, back to look after him; and the other had gone but a few hundred yards when they found him coming, but so dejected and so very ill, that he said he could go no further than the church, where he was positively resolved to take up his abode that night. Mr. Bruce felt his pulse, examined every part about him, and saw, he thought, evidently, that nature ailed him. Without losing his temper, however, Mr. Bruce told him firmly, that he perceived he was in a condition, that he should consider he was a physician, as he knew he cured his master's first friend, Wollo Yalons; that the feeling of his hand told him as plain as his tongue could have done, that nothing ailed him; that it told him likewise he had in his heart a sprank to play, which would turn out very much to his disadvantage. He seemed dismayed after this, said little, and only desired them to halt for a few minutes, and he should be better; "for, Ayto Ayo, requires strength in us all to pass another great hill before we arrive at Geeth."

"Lying, said Mr. Bruce, is no purpose; I know where Geeth is as well as you do, and that we have no more mountains or bad places to pass through; therefore, if you choose to stay behind, you may; but to-morrow I shall inform Welleta Yalons at Bure of your behaviour." He said this with the most determined air possible, and left them, walking as hard as he could down to the ford of the Nile. Wollo remained above with the servants, who were loading their mules; he seemed to be perfectly cured of his lameness, and was in close conversation with Ayto Ayo's servant for about ten minutes, when Mr. Bruce did not choose to interrupt, as he felt that man was already in possession of part of Wollo's secret. This being over, they all came down to Mr. Bruce as he was hitching a branch of a yellow-bark tree, a number of which hang over the ford. The whole company passed, and Wollo, seeming to walk as well as ever, ascended a gentle rising hill, near the top of which is St. Michael Geeth. The Nile here is not four yards over, and not above four inches deep, where they crossed; it was indeed become a very trifling brook, but ran swiftly over a bottom of small stones, with hard black rock appearing about them; it is at this place very easy to pass, and very limpid, but, a little lower, full of inconsiderable falls, the ground rises gently from the river to the southward, full of small hills and eminences, which soon ascend and descend almost imperceptibly. The whole company had halted on the north side of St. Michael's church, and there Mr. Bruce reached them without affecting any hurry.

In the afternoon, about four o'clock, the day having been very hot for some hours, they were sitting in the shade of a grove of magnificent cedars, intermixed with some very large and beautiful cypress-trees, all in the flower; the men were lying on the grass, and the beasts lay, with the burdens on their backs, on the most luxuriant herbage. Mr. Bruce said indifferently to Wollo, in passing, that he was glad to see him recovered; that he would presently be well,

turn a mill. Mr. Bruce observations, by an alarm
 guide. Though Mr. something from his beha-
 his own sake, it could
 m. Various conjectures
 thought he had reliev-
 me concerned it was an
 in order to their help
 me again supposed he was
 exactly those apes or ba-
 and fierce appearance
 Mr. Bruce began
 for he had before con-
 his might have overcom-
 his, too, was the opin-
 to fail, however, and a
 could not be far off; there
 of the men that drove
 er him; and they had no
 nals when they found him
 d to very ill, that he had
 an the church, where he
 ke up his abode that night.
 xamined every part of it,
 evidently, that manag-
 his temper, however, Mr.
 he perceived he was an
 nsider he was a physician,
 ller's first friend, We
 his hand told him as soon
 done, that nothing could
 he had in his heart;
 d turn out very e when
 med dismayed after
 I them to halt for a few
 better; "for, say he, it
 to pass another great hill
 ce, is to no purpose. I
 ll as you do, and that we
 or had places to pass
 choose to flay behind you
 I inform Wellela Yalou
 ." He said this with de-
 e, and left them, walking
 to the ford of the Nile.
 h the servants, who were
 nted to be perfectly curi-
 a close conversation with
 about ten minutes, when
 e to interrupt, as he had
 the session of part of Woldo,
 they all came down to Mr.
 a branch of a yellow-ro-
 over the ford. The
 Woldo, seeming to an-
 gently rising hill, near
 d Geeth. The Nile here
 d not above four paces
 it was indeed become
 a swiftly over a bottom of
 k rock appearing and
 ously early to pass, and
 all of inconsiderable height
 the river to the four
 and eminences, which was
 imperceptible. The whole
 south side of St. Michael's
 ce reached them without

and should fear nothing. He then got up, and de-
 fered to speak with Mr. Bruce alone, taking Aylo's
 servant along with him. "Now, said our traveller
 very calmly, I know by your face you are going to
 tell me a lie. I do swear to you solemnly, you
 shall never, by that means, obtain any thing from
 me, no not to much as a good word; truth and
 good behaviour will get you every thing; what ap-
 pears a great matter in your sight is not perhaps
 of such value in mine; but nothing except truth and
 good behaviour will answer to you; now I know for
 a certainty that you are no more sick than I am."—
 "Sir, said he, with a very confident look, you are
 right; I did counterfeit; I neither have been, nor
 am, I at present any way out of order, but I thought
 it best to tell you to, not to be obliged to discover
 another reason that has much more weight with me
 why I cannot go to Geeth. Much less flew myself
 at the fources of the Nile, such I confess are not
 much beyond it, though I declare to you there is
 still a hill between you and those fources."—"And
 pray, said Mr. Bruce calmly, what is this mighty
 reason? Have you had a dream, or a vision in that
 trance you fell into when you lagged behind below
 the church of St. Michael Sacala?" "No, says he,
 neither I saw, nor dream, nor devil neither; I
 wish it was no worse; but you know as well as I, that
 my master Fahl defeated the Agows at the battle of
 Bejpa. I was there with my master, and killed several
 men, among whom some were of the Agows of this
 village Geeth, and you know the usage of this coun-
 try, when a man, in these circumstances, falls into
 their hands, his blood must pay for their blood."
 Upon this Mr. Bruce burst out into a violent fit of
 laughter, which very much disconcerted him. "There,
 said our traveller, did not I say to you it was a lie that
 you were going to tell me? Do not think I dislike
 or dispute with you the vanity of having killed men;
 many men were slain at that battle; somebody must
 and you may have been the person who slew them;
 but do you think that I can believe that Fahl, so deep
 in that account of blood, could rule the Agows in
 the manner he does, if he could not put a servant of
 his in safety among them 20 miles from his residence;
 do you think I can believe this?" "Come, come,
 said Aylo's servant to Woldo, did you not hear that
 truth and good behaviour will get you every thing
 you ask? Sir, continued he, I see this affair vexes
 you, and what this foolish man wants will neither
 make you richer nor poorer; he has taken a great
 care for that crimson silk-fash which you wear about
 your middle. I told him to flay till you went back
 to Gondar; but he says he is to go no further than to
 the house of Shalaka Welled Amiac in Martha, and
 does not return to Gondar; I told him to flay till
 you had put your mind at ease, by seeing the foun-
 tain of the Nile, which you are so anxious about.
 He said, after that had happened, he was sure you
 would not give it him, for you seemed to think little
 of the cataact at Goutto, and of all the fine rivers
 and churches which he had shewn you; except the
 head of the Nile shall be finer than all these, when
 in reality, it will be just like another river, you will
 then be disappointed, and not give him the fash."
 Our traveller thought there was something very
 natural in these suspicions of Woldo; besides, he said
 he was certain that, if ever the fash came into the
 sight of Welled Amiac, by some means or other, he
 would get it into his hands. This rational discourse
 had pacified Mr. Bruce a little; but it must have been
 fine indeed to have flood for a minute between him
 and the accomplishment of his wishes. Mr. Bruce
 then laid his hand upon the pistols that stuck in his
 girdle, and drew them out to give them to one of his
 lute, when Woldo, who apprehended it was for ano-
 ther purpose, ran some paces back, and hid himself
 behind Aylo's servant. Mr. Bruce, after having
 taken off his fash, gave it to him, but threatened him
 hard in case he detected him in any further tricks,
 Woldo took the fash, but seemed terrified at the

threat, and began to make apologies. He then car-
 ried our traveller round to the fourth side of the
 church, out of the grove of trees that surrounded it.
 "This is the hill, said he, that, when you were on
 the other side of it, was between you and the foun-
 tains of the Nile; there is no other; look at that
 hillock of green sod in the middle of that watery spot,
 it is in that the two fountains of the Nile are to be
 found: Geeth is on the face of the rock where you
 green trees are; if you go the length of the foun-
 tains, pull off your shoes as you did the other day;
 for these people are all Pagans, worse than those that
 were at the ford, and they believe in nothing that
 you believe, but only in this river, to which they
 pray every day as if it were God; but this perhaps
 you may do likewise." Half undressed as Mr. Bruce
 was, by loss of his fash, and throwing his shoes off,
 he ran down the hill towards the little island of green
 sods, which was about two hundred yards distant;
 the whole side of the hill was thick grown over with
 flowers, the large bulbous roots of which appearing
 above the surface of the ground, and their stems
 coming off on treading upon them, occasioned two
 very severe falls before he reached the brink of the
 marsh. Mr. Bruce, after this, came to the island of
 green turf, which was in form of an altar, apparently
 the work of art, and he stood in rapture over the
 principal fountain which rises in the middle of it.
 The situation of Mr. Bruce's mind at present may be
 easier conceived than expressed.
 Now Mr. Bruce proceeds to describe the fources
 of the Nile, which have, as he says, remained to our
 days as unknown as they were to antiquity, no good
 or genuine voucher having yet been produced ca-
 pable of proving that they were before discovered,
 or seen by the curious eye of any traveller, from
 the earliest ages to this day; and it is with confidence
 Mr. Bruce proposes to his reader, that he will con-
 sider him as still standing at these fountains, and pa-
 tiently hear from him the recital of the origin and
 circumstances of this the most famous river in the
 world, which are not to be found in books, or from
 any other human authority whatever, and which, by
 the care and attention he has paid to the subject, will,
 he hopes, be found satisfactory here.
 The Agows of Damot pay divine honors to the
 Nile; they worship the river, and thousands of cat-
 tle have been offered, and still are offered, to the
 spirit supposed to reside at its source. They are di-
 vided into clans, or tribes; and it is worthy of obser-
 vation, that it is said there never was a feud, or he-
 reditary animosity between any two of these clans;
 or, if the seeds of any such were sown, they did not
 vegetate longer than till the next general convoca-
 tion of all the tribes, who meet annually at the source
 of the river, to which they sacrifice, calling it by the
 name of the *God of Peace*. One of the least con-
 siderable of these clans, for power and number, has
 still the preference among its brethren, from the cir-
 cumstance that, in its territory, and near the mis-
 erable village that gives it name, are situated the much
 fought-for springs from which the Nile rises.
 Though Geeth is not further distant from these than
 600 yards, yet it is not in sight of the fources of the
 Nile. The country upon the same plain with the
 fountains, terminates in a cliff about 300 yards deep
 down to the plain of Affoa, which flat country con-
 tinues in the same subaltern degree of elevation, till
 it meets the Nile again about seventy miles south-
 ward, after it has made the circuit of the provinces
 of Gojam and Damot.
 There is a prodigious cave in the middle of this
 cliff, in a direction straight north towards the foun-
 tains; there are many bye-paths in it, so that it is
 very difficult for a stranger to extricate himself; it is
 a natural labyrinth, large enough to contain the in-
 habitants of the village, and their cattle. In this
 large cliff, Mr. Bruce tired himself part of several
 days, endeavouring to reach as far northward as pos-
 sible; but the air, when he had advanced something
 above

above one hundred yards, seemed to threaten to extinguish his candle by its dampness, and the people were beside it at all disposed to gratify his curiosity further, after assuring him that there was nothing at the end more remarkable than what he then saw, which he had reason to believe was the cave. The face of this cliff, which fronts to the south, has a most picturesque appearance from the plain of Aloa below, parts of the houses at every stage appearing, through the thickets of trees and bushes with which the whole face of the cliff is thickly covered; impenetrable fences of the very worst kind of thorn, hide the mouths of the caverns above mentioned, even from sight; there is no other communication with the houses, either from above or below, but by narrow winding sheep-paths, which through these thorns are very difficult to be discerned, for all are allowed to be overgrown with the utmost wildness, as a part of their defence; lofty and large trees, most of them of the thorny kind, tower high up above the edge of the cliff, and seem to be a fence against people falling down into the plain; these are all at their proper season covered with flowers of different sorts and colours, so are the bushes below on the face of the cliff; every thorn in Abyssinia bears a beautiful flower. From the edge of the cliff of Geesh, above where the village is situated, the ground slopes with a very easy descent due north, and lands you at the edge of a triangular marsh above eighty six yards broad, in the line of the fountains, and two hundred and eighty-six yards two feet from the edge of the cliff above the house of the priest of the river, where Mr. Bruce lived. In the middle of the marsh, near the bottom of the mountain of Geesh, arises a hillock of a circular form, about three feet from the surface of the marsh itself, though apparently founded much deeper in it. The diameter of this is something short of twelve feet, it is surrounded by a shallow trench, which collects the water, and voids it eastward; it is firmly built with sod or earthen turf, brought from the sides, and constantly kept in repair, and this is the altar upon which all their religious ceremonies are performed. In the middle of this altar is a hole, obviously made, or at least enlarged, by the hand of man. It is kept clear of grass, or other aquatic plants, and the water in it is perfectly pure and limpid, but has no ebullition or motion of any kind discernible upon its surface. This mouth, or opening of the source, is some parts of an inch less than three feet diameter, and the water stood at that time, the 5th of November, about two inches from the lip or brim, nor did it either increase or diminish during all the time of his stay at Geesh, though they made plentiful use of it. This spring is about six feet six inches deep. At the distance of ten feet from the first of these springs, a little to the west of south, is the second fountain, about eleven inches in diameter; but this is eight feet three inches deep. And about twenty feet distant from the first, is the third source, its mouth being something more than two feet large, and it is five feet eight inches deep. Both these last fountains stand in the middle of small altars, made, like the former, of firm sod, but neither of them above three feet diameter, and having a foot of less elevation than the first. The altar in this third source seemed almost dissolved by the water, which in both stood nearly up to the brim; at the foot of each appeared a clear and brisk running rill; these uniting, joined the water in the trench of the first altar, and then proceeded directly out, pointing eastward, in a quantity that would have filled a pipe of about two inches diameter. The water from these fountains is very light and good, and perfectly tasteless; it was at this time most intensely cold, though exposed to the mid day without shelter, there being no trees nor bushes nearer it than the cliff of Geesh on its south-side, and the trees that surround Saint Michael Geesh on the north, which, according to the custom of Abyssinia, is, like other churches, planted in the midst of a grove.

Mr. Bruce had procured from the English ships, while at Jidda, some quick-silver, perfectly pure and heavier than the common sort; warming, therefore, the tube gently at the fire, he filled it with this quick-silver, and, to his great surprise, found that the Nile stood at the height of 22 English inches. Suspecting that some air might have infiltrated itself into the tube, he laid it by in a warm part of the tent, covered till morning, and returning to bed, slept there profoundly till six, when, satisfied the whole was in perfect order, he found it to stand at 22 English inches; neither did it vary sensibly from that height any of the following days he staid at Geesh; and thence he inferred, that at the sources of the Nile, he was then more than two miles above the level of the sea; a prodigious height, to enjoy a sky perpetually clear, as also a hot sun never over-cast for a moment with clouds from rising to setting. The Nile, keeping nearly in the middle of the marsh, runs east for thirty yards, with a very little increase of stream, but perfectly visible, till met by the grassy brink of the land declining from Sacala. This turns it round gradually to the S. E. and then due north; and, in the two miles it flows in that direction, the river receives many small contributions from springs that rise in the banks on each side of it: there are two, particularly one on the hill at the back of St. Michael Geesh, the other a little lower than it on the other side, on the ground declining from Sacala. These last mentioned springs are more than double its quantity: and being arrived upon the hill whereon stands the church of Saint Michael Sacala, about two miles from its source, it there becomes a stream that would turn a common mill, shallow, clear, and running over a rocky bottom about three yards wide. Nothing can be more beautiful than this spot: the small rising hills about them were all thick covered with verdure, especially with clover, the largest and best he ever saw; the tops of the heights crowned with trees of a prodigious size; the stream, at the banks of which they were sitting, was limpid and pure as the finest crystal; the ford, covered thick with a bushy kind of tree that seemed to affect to grow to no height, but thick with foliage and young branches, rather to court the surface of the water, whilst it bore, in prodigious quantities, a beautiful yellow flower, not unlike a single wild rose of that colour, but without thorns.

Mr. Bruce after having leaped over the ford fifty times, observed it no larger than a common mill stream. The Nile, from this ford, turns to the westward, and after running over loose stones occasionally, in that direction, about four miles farther, the angle of inclination increasing greatly, broken water, and a fall commences of about six feet, and thus it gets rid of the mountainous place of its nativity, and issues into the plain of Goutto, where is its first cascade. Arrived in the plain of Goutto, the river seems to have lost all its violence, and scarcely is seen to flow; but, at the same time, it there makes so many sharp, unnatural windings, that it differs from any other river Mr. Bruce ever saw, making about twelve sharp angular peninsulas in the course of five miles, through a bare, marshy plain of clay, quite destitute of trees, and exceedingly inconvenient and unpleasant to travel. After passing this plain, it turns due north, receives the tribute of many small streams, the Gometti, the Googeri, and the Kebezza, which descend from the mountains of Alornatha; and, united, fall into the Nile about twenty miles below its source; it begins here to run rapidly, and again receives a number of beautiful rivulets, which have their rise in the heights of Litchambara, the semicircular range of mountains that pass behind, and seem to enclose Alornatha. Here it begins to become a considerable stream; its banks high and broken, covered with old timber trees for the space of about three miles; it inclines to the north-east, and winds exceedingly, and is then joined by the small river Diwa from the east. As the mere names of places, through which the Nile passes, can afford

from the English ships, silver, perfectly pure; and, warning, therefore, he filled it with this at surprise, found that it had 22 English inches, and was infatuated itself a warm part of the tent, returning to bed, slept, satisfied the whole of it to land at 22 English fathoms from that place he laid at Geeth; at the sources of the Nile, two miles above the fountain, to enjoy a sky not fun never overcast, rising to setting. The middle of the marsh, was very little increase of till met by the grass on Sacala. This turns to the north; in that direction, the contributions from Springside of it: there are two, the back of St. Michael's than it on the other side of Sacala. There is than double its quantity the hill whereon stands Sacala, about two miles from a stream that would clear, and running over yards wide. Nothing is spot; the small rising covered with verdure, green and hued it ever crowned with trees of a at the banks of which and pure as the finest tick with a bushy kind to grow to no height, ing branches, rather to which it bore, in pro-yellow flower, not un-our, but without them. ped over the ford fifty than a common mid ford, turns to the well-oose stones occasion-our miles further, the greatly, broken water, t six feet, and thus it ce of its nativity, and where is its first cas-ouitto, the river seems and scarcely is seen to t there makes so many t it differs from any t, making about twenty e course of five miles, of clay, quite destitute onvenient and unplea- this plain, it turns dis- many small streams, the of the Kebezza, when of Atornaltha; and, ut twenty miles below un rapidly; and again niful rivulets, which s of Litchambara, the aims that pass behind, a. Here it begins to; its banks high and ber trees for the space nes to the north-east, s then joined by the . As the mere names Nile passes, can afford very

very little amusement to our readers, we shall only observe, that it empties itself at last into the Mediterranean.

All this while Woldo was left settling their reception with the chief of the village of Geeth. They found the measures taken by this man such as convinced them at once of his capacity and attachment. The miserable Agows, assembled all around him, were too much interested in the appearance our travellers made, not to be exceedingly inquisitive how long their stay was to be among them. They saw, by the horse driven before them, that they belonged to Fahl, and suspected, for the same reason, that they were to maintain them, or in other words, that they should live at discretion upon them as long as they chose to tarry there; but Woldo, with great address, had dispelled those fears almost as soon as they were formed. He informed them of the king's grant to Mr. Bruce of the village of Geeth; that Fahl's tyranny and avarice would end that day, and another master, the Negadé Ras Georgis, was come to pass a cheerful time among them, with a resolution to pay for every labour they were ordered to perform, and purchase all things for ready money: he added, moreover, that no military service was farther to be exacted from them, either by the king or governor of Damot, nor from their present master, as he had no enemies. They found this news had circulated with great rapidity, and they met with a hearty welcome upon their arrival at the village. Woldo had asked a house from the Shum, who very civilly had granted Mr. Bruce his own; it was just large enough to serve him, but they were obliged to take possession of four or five others, and they were freely settled in them, when a Levant arrived from Fahl to intimate to the Shum his surrender of the property and sovereignty of Geeth to Mr. Bruce, in consequence of a grant from the king; he brought with him a fine, large, milk-white cow, two sheep, and two goats; the sheep and goats Mr. Bruce understood were from Woleta Yalons. Fahl also sent them six jars of hydromel, fifty wheat loaves of very excellent bread, and to this Woleta Yalons had added two middle sized horns of excellent strong spirits. Their hearts were now perfectly at ease, and they passed a very merry evening. Woldo, who had done his part to great perfection, and had reconciled the minds of all the people of the village to our travellers, had a little apprehension for himself, he thought he had lost credit with Mr. Bruce, and therefore employed the servant of Ayto Aylo to desire Mr. Bruce not to speak of the sale to Fahl's servant. Our traveller allured him, that, as long as he saw him acting properly, as he now did, it was much more probable he should give him another sale on their return, than complain of the means he had used to get this sale. This entirely removed all his fears, and, indeed, as long after as he was with them, he every day delivered their commendations more and more.

Now Woldo was perfectly happy; he had no superior or spy over his actions; he had explained himself to the Shum, that they should want somebody to buy necessaries to make bread for our travellers, and to take care of the management of their house. They displayed their seller articles for barter to the Shum, and told him the most considerable purchases, such as oxen and sheep, were to be paid in gold. He was struck with the appearance of our traveller's wealth, and the generosity of their proposals, and told Woldo that he filled, since they were in his houses, they would take his daughters for their housekeepers. The proposal was a most reasonable one, and readily accepted. He accordingly sent for three in an instant, and they delivered them their charge. The eldest took it upon her readily; she was about sixteen years of age, of a stature above the middle size, but she was remarkably genteel, and, colour apart, her features would have made her a beauty in any country in Europe; she was, besides, very sprightly; they understood not one word of her language,

though she comprehended very easily the signs that they made. This nymph of the Nile was called by nick-name Irepone, which signifies some animal that destroys mice, but whether of the ferret or snake kind, Mr. Bruce could not perfectly understand; sometimes it was one, and sometimes another, but which it was he thought of no great consequence.

Having disposed of some of their stock in purchases, she thought herself obliged to render our travellers an account, and give back the residue at night to Woldo, with a protestation that she had not stolen or kept any thing to herself. Mr. Bruce looked upon this regular accounting as an ungenerous treatment of their benefactress. Mr. Bruce called on Woldo, and made him produce a parcel that contained the same with the first commodities they had given her; and this consisted of beads, antimony, small scissors, knives, and large needles. He then brought out a packet of the same that had not been broken, and told her, they were intended to be distributed among her friends, and that they expected no account from her; on the contrary, that, after she had bestowed these, to buy them necessaries, and for any purposes she pleased, he had still as many more to leave her at parting, for the trouble she had given herself. Mr. Bruce often thought the head of the little savage would have been turned with the possession of so much riches, and so great confidence; and it was impossible to be so blinded, as not to see that our traveller had already made great progress in her affections.

The houses being all clay and straw, there was no place for fixing his clock; he was therefore obliged to employ a very excellent watch made for him by Ellicott. The dawn now began, and a few minutes afterwards every body was at their doors; every one crowded to see them, and they breakfasted in public with very great cheerfulness. The white cow was killed, and every one was invited to his share of her. The Shum, priest of the river, would likewise have been of the party, but he declined either sitting or eating with them, though his sons were not so scrupulous.

Once a year, upon their principal fountain and altar, on the last appearance of the dog-star, or, as others say, eleven days after, this priest assembles the heads of the clans; and having sacrificed a black heifer that never bore a calf, they plunge the head of it into this fountain, they then wrap it up in its own hide, so as no more to be seen, after having sprinkled the hide within and without with water from the fountain. The carcase is then split in half, and cleaned with extraordinary care; and, thus prepared, it is laid upon the hillock over the first fountain, and washed all over with its water, while the elders, or considerable people, carry water in their hands joined (it must not be in any dish) from the two other fountains; they then assemble upon the small hill a little west of St. Michael (it used to be the place where the church now stands) there they divide the carcase into pieces corresponding to the number of the tribes, and each tribe has its privilege, or pretensions, to particular parts, which are not in proportion to the present consequence of the several clans. Geeth has a principal share, though the most inconsiderable territory of the whole; Sacala has the next; and Zeegam, the most considerable of them all in power and riches, has the least of the whole. After having ate this carcase raw, according to their custom, and drunk the Nile water, to the exclusion of any other liquor, they pile up the bones on the place where they sit, and burn them to ashes. This used to be performed where the church now stands; but Ras Sela Chrillos, some time after, having beaten the Agows, and desirous, at the Jesuits instigation, to convert them to Christianity, he demolished their altar where the bones were burnt, and built a church upon the site, the doors of which, Mr. Bruce believes, were never opened since that reign; nor is there now, as far as he could perceive, any Christian there

there who might wish to see it frequented. After Sela Christos had demolished their altars by building this church, they ate the carcase, and burnt the bones, on the top of the mountain of Geesh, out of the way of profanation, where the vestiges of this ceremony may yet be seen; but probably the fatigue attending this, and the great indifference their late governors have had for Christianity, have brought them back to a small hillock by the side of the marsh, west of St. Michael's church, and a little to the southward, where they perform this solemnity every year, and they will probably resume their first altar when the church is fallen to ruins, which they are every day privately hastening.

When their bloody banquet is finished, they carry the head, close wrapt from sight in the hide, into the cavern, which they say reaches below the fountains, and there, by a common light, without torches, or a number of candles, as denoting a solemnity, they perform their worship, the particulars of which Mr. Bruce never could learn; it is a piece of free masonry, which every body knows, and nobody ventures to reveal. At a certain time of the night they leave the cave, but at what time, or by what rule, our traveller could not learn; neither would they tell him what became of the head, whether it was ate, or buried, or how consumed. The Abyssinians have a story, probably created by themselves, that the devil appears to them; and with him they eat the head, swearing obedience to him upon certain conditions, that of sending rain, and a good season for their bees and cattle: however this may be, it is certain, that they pray to the spirit residing in the river, whom they call the Everlasting God, Light of the World, Eye of the World, God of Peace, their Saviour, Father of the Universe, &c. &c. &c.

At this time, their landlord, the Shum, made no scruple of reciting his prayers for seasonable rain, for plenty of grass, for the preservation of serpents, at least of one kind of this reptile; he also deprecated thunder in these prayers, which he pronounced very pathetically with a kind of tone or song; he called the river, "Most High God, Saviour of the World;" of the other words Mr. Bruce could not well judge, but by the interpretation of Woldo. Taofo titles, however, of divinity which he gave to the river, he could perfectly comprehend without an interpreter, and for these only he is a voucher.

The Shum, upon being asked by Mr. Bruce if he had ever seen any spirit, answered, without hesitation, Yes, very frequently. He said he had seen the spirit the evening of the 3d, just as the sun was setting, under a tree, which he shewed our traveller at a distance, who told him of the death of a son, and also that a party from Fasil's army was coming; that, being afraid, he consulted his serpent, who ate readily and heartily, from which he knew no harm was to befall him from his visitors. Mr. Bruce asked him, if he could prevail on the spirit to appear to him. He said he could not venture to make that request; but said he was of a very graceful figure and appearance, he thought rather older than middle age; but he seldom chose to look at his face: he had a long white beard, his clothes not like theirs of leather, but like silk, of the fashion of the country. Mr. Bruce asked him how he was certain it was not a man, he laughed, or rather sneered, shaking his head, and saying, "No, no, it is no man, but a spirit." Mr. Bruce then desired to know why he prayed against thunder. He said, Because it was hurtful to the bees, their great revenue being honey and wax: then, why he prayed for serpents? he replied, Because they taught him the coming of good or evil. It seems they have all several of these creatures in the neighbourhood, and the richer sort always in their houses, whom they take care of, and feed before they undertake a journey, or any affair of consequence. They take this animal from his hole, and put butter and milk before him, of which he is extravagantly fond; if he does not eat, ill-fortune is shortly expected.

Previous to an invasion of the Galla, or an inroad of the enemy, they say these serpents disappear, and are no where to be found. Fasil, the sagacious and cunning governor of the country, was, as it was said, greatly addicted to this species of divination, inasmuch as never to mount his horse, or go from home, if an animal of this kind, which he had in his keeping, refused his butter and milk.

Kella Abay, or Servant of the River, was the Shum's name; he was a man about seventy, not very lean, but infirm, fully as much so as might have been expected from that age. He conceived that he might have had eighty-four or eighty-five children. That honourable charge which he possessed had been in his family from the beginning of the world, as he imagined. Indeed, if all his predecessors had as numerous families as he, there was no probability of the succession devolving to strangers. He had a long white beard, and very moderately thick; an ornament rare in Abyssinia, where they have seldom any hair upon their chin. He had round his body a skin wrapt and tied with a broad belt. Above this he wore a cloak with the hood up, and covering his head; he was bare legged, but had sandals, much like those upon ancient statues; these, however, he put off as soon as ever he approached the bog where the Nile rises, which our travellers were all likewise obliged to do. They were allowed to drink the water, but make no other use of it. None of the inhabitants of Geesh wash themselves, or their clothes, in the Nile, but in a stream that falls from the mountain of Geesh down into the plain of Allo, which runs south, and meets the Nile in its turn northward, passing the country of the Galars and Gongas.

The Agows, in whose country the Nile rises, are, in point of number, one of the most considerable nations in Abyssinia; when their whole force is raised, which seldom happens, they can bring to the field 4000 horse, and a great number of foot; they were, however, once much more powerful; several unsuccessful battles, and the perpetual inroads of the Galla, have much diminished their strength. The country, indeed, is still full of inhabitants; but from their history we learn, that one clan, called Zeegam, maintained singly a war against the king himself, from the time of Socmios to that of Yafous the Great, who, after all, overcame them by surprise and stratagem; and that another clan, the Denguis, in like manner, maintained the war against Facilidas, Hannes I. and Yafous II. all of them active princes. Their riches, however, are still greater than their power, for though their province in length is no where 60 miles, nor half that in breadth, yet Gondar and all the neighbouring country depend for the necessaries of life, cattle, honey, butter, wheat, hides, wax, and a number of such articles, upon the Agows, who come constantly in succession, a thousand and fifteen hundred at a time, loaded with these commodities, to the capital. As the dependence upon the Agows is for their produce rather than on the forces of their country, it has been a maxim with wise princes to compound with them for an additional tribute, instead of their military service; the necessities of the times have sometimes altered these wise regulations, and between their attachment to Fasil, and afterwards to Ras Michael, they have been very much reduced, whereby the state hath suffered much. As, in a long carriage, such as that of a hundred miles in such a climate, butter must melt, and be in a state of fusion, consequently very near putrefaction; this is prevented by the root of an herb, called Moc-moco, yellow in colour, and in a shape nearly resembling a carrot; this they bruise and mix with their butter, and a very small quantity preserves it fresh for a considerable time; and this is a great saving and convenience; for, supposing salt was employed, it is very doubtful if it would answer the intention; besides, salt is a money in this country, being circulated in the form of wedges, or bricks, it serves the purpose of silver coin, and is the change of gold; so that this herb is

the Galla, or an inroad
serpents disappear, and
Fasil, the sagacious and
ntry, was, as it was said,
cies of divination, infa-
orific, or go from home,
which he had in his keep-
ills.

of the River, was the
about seventy, not very
h for as might have been
conceived that he might
ty-five children. That
possessed had been in his
f the world, as he ima-
cessors had as numerous
probability of the suc-
He had a long white
thick; an ornament rare
e seldom any hair upon
his body a skin wrap and
e this he wore a cloak
ering his head; he was
much like those upon
ver, he put off as soon
og where the Nile rises,
like-wise obliged to do
the water, but make no
habitants of Geesh wash
in the Nile, but in a
ountain of Geesh down
h runs south, and meets
l, passing the country of

ntry the Nile rises, are,
the most considerable
eir whole force is raised,
can bring to the field
ber of foot; they were,
powerful; several unfunc-
ual inroads of the Galla,
strength. The country,
ants; but from their
n, called Zeegam, man-
king himself, from the
alous the Great, who,
surprise and stratagem;
enguis, in like manner,
acildas, Hannes I. and
rinceps. Their riches,
their power, for though
o where 60 miles, nor
imilar and all the neigh-
the necessaries of life,
ides, wax, and a number
s, who come constantly
fteen hundred at a time,
es, to the capital. As
ws is for their produce
eir country, it has been
o compound with them
stead of their military
times have sometimes
and between their at-
wards to Ras Michael,
duced, whereby the slave
a long carriage, such as
such a climate, butter
of fusion, consequently
s prevented by the root
eco, yellow in colour,
mbing a carrot; this
eir butter, and a very
elf for a considerable
ring and convenience;
yed, it is very doubtful
ation; besides, salt is a
circulated in the form
es the purpose of silver
old; so that this herb is

of the utmost use in preventing the increase in price
of this necessary article, which is the principal food
of all ranks of people in this country.

Exclusive of the market of Gondar, the neigh-
bouring black savages, the woolly-headed Shangalla,
purchase the greatest part of these commodities from
them, and many others, which they bring from the
capital when they return thence; they receive in ex-
change elephants teeth, rhinoceros' horns, gold in
small pellets, and a quantity of very fine cotton; of
which goods they might receive a much greater quan-
tity were they content to cultivate trade in a fair
way, without making inroads upon these savages for
the sake of slaves, and thereby disturbing them in
their occupations of seeking for gold and hunting the
elephant.

The Agows' clothing is entirely of hides, which
they soften and manufacture in a method peculiar to
themselves; and this they wear in the rainy season,
when the weather is cold: for here the rainy seasons
are of long duration and violent, which still increases
the nearer you approach the Line. The younger
fort are chiefly naked, the married women carrying
their children about with them upon their backs;
their clothing is like a shirt down to their feet, and
girded with a belt or girdle about their middle; the
lower part of it resembles a large double petticoat,
one ply of which they turn back over their shoulders,
falling it with a broach, or skewer, across their
breast before, and carrying their children in it be-
hind. The women are generally thin, and, like the
men, below the middle size. There is no such thing
as bareness known among them. They begin to
bear children before eleven; they marry generally
about that age, and are marriageable two years be-
fore: they close child-bearing before they are thirty,
though there are several instances to the contrary.

The Agows, besides what they sell, and what they
pay to the governor of Damot, have a particular
tribute which they present to the king: one thousand
dabra of honey, each dabra containing about sixty
pounds weight, being a large earthen vessel. They
pay, moreover, fifteen hundred oxen and 1000 ounces
of gold; formerly the number of jars of honey was
four thousand, but several of these villages being daily
given to private people by the king, the quantity is
diminished by the quota so alienated. The butter is
all sold; and, since the fatal battle of Benja, the
king's share comes only to about one thousand jars.
The officer that keeps the accounts, and has the rents
paid, is called Agow Miziker; his post is worth one
thousand ounces of gold; and by this it may be judged
with what economy this revenue is collected.

Notwithstanding Mr. Bruce had with him two large
tents sufficient for his people, he was advised to take
possession of the houses to secrete their mules and
horses from thieves in the night, as also from the
assaults of wild beasts, of which this country is full.
Almost every small collection of houses has behind
it a large cave, the subterraneous dwelling, dug in

the rock, of a prodigious capacity, and which must
have been a work of great labour. It is not possible
at this distance of time, to say whether these caverns
were the ancient habitations of the Agows when they
were Troglodytes, or whether they were intended
for retreats upon any alarm of an irruption of the
Galla into their country.

November the 9th, our traveller having finished
his memorandum relating to these remarkable places,
traced again on foot the whole course of this river
from its source to the plain of Goutto. He was un-
attended by any one, having with him only two hunt-
ing dogs, and his gun in his hand. The quantity of
game of all sorts, especially the deer kind, was, in-
deed, surprising; but though he was, as usual, a very
successful sportsman, he was obliged, for want of help,
to leave each deer where he fell. They sleep in the
wild oats, and do not rise till you are about to tread
upon them, and then stare at you for half a minute
before they attempt to run off.

Mr. Bruce and his friends having now finished
their business, nothing remained but to depart. They
had passed their time in perfect harmony; the address
of Woldo, and the great attachment of their friend
Ireponc, had kept their house in a cheerful abun-
dant. They had lived, it is true, too magnificently
for philosophers, but neither idly nor riotously; and,
it is the opinion of Mr. Bruce, no sovereign of Geesh
will be again so popular, or reign over his subjects
with greater mildness. Mr. Bruce had practised me-
dicine gratis, and killed, for three days successively,
a cow each day for the poor and the neighbours. He
had clothed the high priest of the Nile from head to
foot, as also his two sons, and decorated two of his
daughters with beads of all the colours of the rainbow,
adding every other little present they seemed fond of,
or that our travellers thought would be agreeable. As
for their amiable Ireponc, they had reserved for her
the choicest of their presents, the most valuable of
every article they had with them, and a large propor-
tion of every one of them; they also gave her some
gold; but she, more generous and noble in her sen-
timents than they, seemed to pay little attention to
these that announced to her the separation from her
friends; she tore her fine hair, which she had every
day before braided in a newer and more graceful
manner; she threw herself upon the ground in the
house, and refused to see our travellers mount on
horseback, or take their leave, and came not to the
door till they were already set out, then followed
them with her good wishes and her eyes as far as she
could see or be heard.

Our traveller now took his leave of Kessa Abay,
the venerable priest of the most famous river in the
world, who recommended him with great earnestness
to the care of his god, which as one of our travellers
humourously enough observed, meant nothing less
than he hoped the devil would take him. All the
young men in the village, with lances and shields,
attended them to Saint Michael Sacala.

C H A P. II.

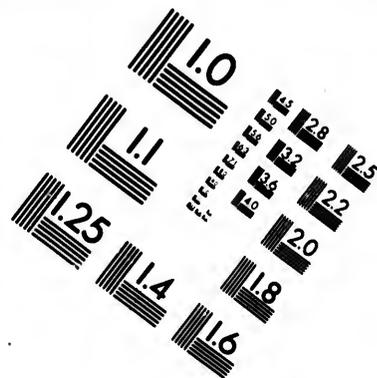
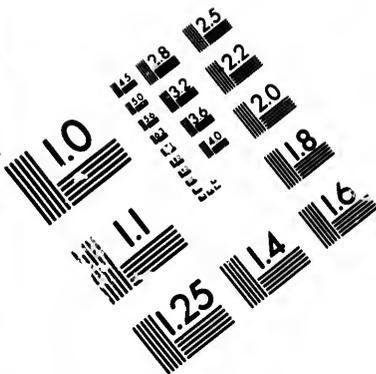
*Preparations for returning from the Source of the Nile—Mr. Bruce's Arrival at the House of Welled Amlac—He
passes the Nile at Delakos—Proceeds to Gondar—Obtains Permission to return Home—Takes Leave of the Itege
of Sofcan—His last Interviews with the Monks.*

NOVEMBER the 10th, 1770, Mr. Bruce and
his friends left Geesh on their return to Gondar,
and passed the Abay, under the church of Saint Mi-
chael Sacala. The next day, they continued their
journey in their former road, and in the afternoon
they halted at the house of Shalaka Welled Amlac,
with whom Mr. Bruce was well acquainted at Gondar;
his house is called Welled Abea Abbo, from a church
of Abbo, about an eighth part of a mile distant.

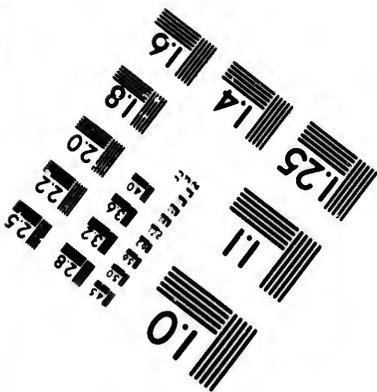
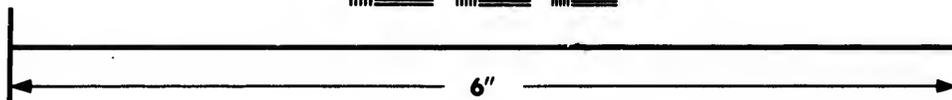
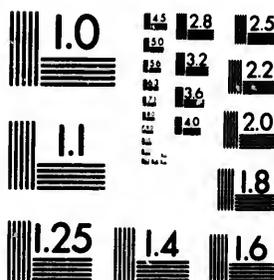
Mr. Bruce settled here with his former guide
Woldo, to his perfect satisfaction, and cancelled en-
tirely the memory of some disagreeable things
passed. He then consigned our traveller very solemnly
to Ayto Aylo's servant, in presence of Welled Amlac,
and then took his leave.

November the 12th, having settled their account
with their host, they set out from the hospitable house
of Shalaka Welled Amlac. Their landlord accompa-
nied





**IMAGE EVALUATION
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic
Sciences
Corporation**

33 WEST MAIN STREET
WESSTON, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503

15 28
16 32 25
18 22
20

10

runs out into the fields to be hunted by every robber, of which this country made him a sign to rise, which he did, and. "Madam, said he, if I did this, I would give you the good lessons your mother gave me."—"Me! says she, with a look that advised you, at such a time as you were in the way of men like Cuquend Woodage Afabel, to be ill-used, or murdered?"—"No, said Mr. Bruce, you certainly never did give me any such lessons; but every day I have when you was threatened by a multitude of enemies, that you was not afraid of their hands, and not in theirs. Now, I have since had hitherto protected you; but I have seen the imitation of you, had the same success, and I have succeeded; I knew your hands, and therefore valued not the success of all the robbers in Abyssinia."

Wars and rebellions of Abyssinia, Mr. Bruce had so much courage, that he was proceeding with a large chain of gold, worth more than he doubled twice, and then he cut it from Bruce's neck. The chain consisted of three links, each of them weighing 3 or 4 pennyweight. "It was with the utmost reluctance," said Bruce, that, being in want of every great part of this honourable distinction, I returned home. It is hoped my countrymen will never have the same excuse I had for not having this honourable monument which I had."

Mr. Bruce's troubles had ceased, and Ras Michael was a prisoner from Gondar, the queen returned, where Mr. Bruce passed a great deal of time; but his health declining every day, he returned, with great difficulty, liberty from Gondar on his return home. The king, too, after some negotiations and provisions, had at length been obliged to give an unwilling consent.

Thomas Price, of the Lion of Bombay, was employed, by this business with the government, to continue at Jidda, till the season was over, and then to return to Abyssinia. He had once from him, and now a second time from him, Mr. Bruce, that his countrymen were a great deal of pain for him; that several of them were in the current, both at Jidda and Suacha, and were all annihilated; sometimes it was said that they were all annihilated; sometimes that it happened to others at Sennar, at his return home. Mr. Bruce wrote in this last letter, that, thinking he would be distressed for want of money, he had written to Ibrahim Seraff, the English consul at Bombay, to advance him 1000 crowns, directed to be sent to Ibrahim, directed to him at Bombay, and to make it payable to the name of that name who lived in Smithfield.

Mr. Bruce had occasionally borrowed money from a man whose name was Petros. This man was a native of the island of Rhodes, which he had left early, for he was not at this time in the country; he had been by trade a shoe-maker, and he had left his own country, Mr. Bruce said, but he was of a very pleasing figure, though very timid. The Iteghe visited him, and the king had made him a great favour, which answers precisely to the story of the first lord of the bed-chamber, being pliant, civil, and artful, and being, he had gained the good graces of the king, and he was also rich, as the king said; and his perquisites not inconsiderable. In the campaigns, in which a dwarf was standing before Ras Michael, and the king was in the fray which followed, the king was under Petros's charge, was melted down, and that it consisted of, was afterwards found to be made to have been on the top of

it a pearl, or jewel, of immense price and size, larger than a pigeon's egg; and this, whatever it was, had disappeared, being in all probability consumed by the fire. Ras Michael, on the contrary, believed that it had been taken out by Petros with a view to sell it, and for this reason he had constantly refused to give liberty to leave Abyssinia, and had kept him always in fear, that some day or other he would strip him of all that he had saved. While Michael was besieging the mountain Haramat, Petros beseeched Mr. Bruce to take 300 of him, and give him his first, second, and third bill of exchange upon Messrs. Julian and Rosa, his correspondents at Cairo, payable a month after sight, to the Maronite Bishop of Mount Sinai, after which he set out for his own country, in *forma pauperis*, and thereby escaped the rapacity of both Ras Michael and the Naybe of Masuah. As for the bill, it came duly to hand, and was paid to the bishop, who would very gladly have received for each of the duplicates, and was near being bastinadoed for insisting upon this before the Bey at Cairo.

Mr. Bruce had made a shew of sending his gold chain to Cairo by the hands of Metical Aga's servant, declaring always that it was the only piece of Abyssinian gold he should carry out of the country, which he was to leave, both in fact and appearance, a *pauper*. Mules are the only beasts for carriage commonly used in Abyssinia, though bulls and cows, of a particular kind, are bought for the purpose by carriers, merchants, and such like, in that country, especially near the mines or quarries of salt; they are very slow, however, and capable of no great burden, though very easily managed. Mr. Bruce had abundance of mules of his own for carrying his instruments and baggage; and the king and Iteghe furnished him with others for his own riding. He had, besides, two favourite horses, which he intended to attempt to carry home, foolishly enough; for though he thought in his own mind, that he was sufficiently informed of, and prepared for all sorts of hardships, he had not foreseen the hundredth part of the difficulties and dangers that were then awaiting him.

When the Iteghe had returned, Mr. Bruce always lived at Kofcam by her own desire, as her health was very precarious since her residence in Gojam. This suited his intention of withdrawing privately, and therefore, not to multiply the number of leave-takings, he had reduced his whole attendance to the king and queen.

All Mr. Bruce's attention was now taken up in preparations for his return through the kingdom of Sennar and the Desert. Tenfa Christos, who was one of the chief priests of Gondar, was a native of Gojam, and consequently of the low church, or a follower of Abba Eullathius, in other words, as great an enemy as possible to the Catholic, or as they will call it, the religion of the Franks. He was, however, reputed a person of great probity and sanctity of manners, and had been on all occasions rather civil and friendly to Mr. Bruce when they met, though evidently not desirous of any intimate connexions or friendship; and as Mr. Bruce, on his part, expected little advantage from connecting himself with a man of his principles, he very willingly kept at all possible distance. This priest came often to the Iteghe's and Ayto Aylo's, with both of whom he was much in favour; and here Mr. Bruce happened to meet him, when he was taking his leave in the evening. "I beg of you, said he, Yagoube, as a favour, to tell me, now you are immediately going away from this country, and you can answer me without fear, are you really a Frank, or are you not?"—"Sir, said Mr. Bruce, I do not know what you mean by fear; I should as little decline answering you any question you have to ask had I ten years to stay, as now I am to quit this country to-morrow; I came recommended, and was well received by the king and Ras Michael; I neither taught nor preached; no man ever heard me say a word about my particular mode of worship;

and as often as my duty has called me, I have never failed to attend divine service as it is established in this country. What is the ground of fear that I should have, while under the king's protection, and customs of Abyssinia?"—"True, replied Tenfa Christos, I do not say you should be alarmed; whatever your faith is, I will defend you myself; the Iteghe knows I always spoke well of you; but will you gratify an old man's curiosity, in telling me whether or not you really are a Frank, Catholic, or Jesuit?"

"I have too great a regard, replied Mr. Bruce, to the request of a man, so truly good and virtuous as you, not to have answered you the question at whatever time you could have asked me; and I do now declare to you, by the word of a Christian, that my countrymen and I are more distant in matters of religion, from these you call Catholics, Jesuits, or Franks, than you and your Abyssinians are; and that a priest of my religion, preaching in any country subject to those Franks, would as certainly be brought to the gallows as if he had committed murder, and just as speedily as you would stone a Catholic priest preaching here in the midst of Gondar. Every man in our country is allowed to serve God in his own way; and as long as their teachers confine themselves to what the sacred books have told them, they can teach no ill, and therefore deserve no punishment. No religion, indeed, teaches a man evil; but, when forgetting this, they preach against government, curse the king, absolve his subjects from allegiance, or incite them to rebellion, as being lawful, the sword of the civil power cuts them off, without any blame falling upon their religion, because these things were done in contradiction to what their priests, from the scripture, should have taught them were truly the tenets of that very religion." The Iteghe now interposed, and the subject terminated.

Hereupon Mr. Bruce got up, and, passing to the other side of the room, he stood by Tenfa Christos, saying to him, "And now, holy father, I have one last favour to ask you, which is your forgiveness, if I have at any time offended you; your blessing, now that I am immediately to depart, if I have not; and your prayers while on my long and dangerous journey, through countries of Infidels and Pagans."

There was a hum of applause sounded all throughout the room. The Iteghe said something, but what, Mr. Bruce did not hear. Tenfa Christos was surprised apparently at Mr. Bruce's humility, which he had not expected, and cried out with tears in his eyes, "Is it possible, Yagoube, that you believe my prayers can do you any good?"—"I should not be a Christian, as I profess to be, Father, replied Mr. Bruce, if I had any doubt of the effect of good men's prayers." So saying, he stooped to kiss his hand, when he laid a small iron cross upon his head; and, to our traveller's great surprise, instead of a benediction, he repeated the Lord's Prayer. Mr. Bruce was afraid he would have kept him stooping till he should add the ten commandments likewise, when he concluded, May God bless you. After which, Mr. Bruce made his obeisance to the Iteghe, and immediately withdrew, it not being the custom, at public audiences, to salute any one in the presence of the sovereign.

Now twenty greasy monks had placed themselves in his way as he went out, that they might have the credit of giving him the blessing likewise after Tenfa Christos. As he had very little faith in the prayers of these drones, so he had some reluctance to kiss their greasy hands and sleeves; however, in running this disagreeable gauntlet, he gave them his blessing in English,—"Lord send you all a halter, as he did to Abba Salama," meaning the Acab Saat. But they, thinking he was recommending them to the patriarch Abba Salama, pronounced, at random, with great seeming devotion, their Amen,—So be it. Mr. Bruce being now released from all disagreeable ceremonies, prepared for his journey.

C H A P. III.

Mr. BRUCE'S Journey from Gondar to Teberkin—His reception from Ozoro Elther, &c. &c.—Hunting of the Elephant, Rhinoceros, Buffalo, &c.—Account of his Travels from Teberkin to Hor-Cacamoit, in Ras-el-Feel—From Hor-Cacamoit to Teaxa—Various Transactions there—The Shekk attempts to detain Mr. BRUCE, who gives him and his Wives Medicines—Their Conversations—Proofs of the Shekk's Treachery—Mr. BRUCE'S Departure from Teaxa—His Arrival at Belga—Account of his Reception there and among the Naba—His Arrival at Sennaar—Conversation with the King—Afterwards with Shekk Adelan—Interview with the King's Ladies—With Achmet—Account of the Disorders, Trade, &c. of Sennaar—Distressed Situation of Mr. BRUCE—His Departure from Sennaar—Arrival at Gbendi—His Reception by Sittina, and Conversation with her—His Entrance into the Desert—Account of the Pillars of moving Sand—The Simoom, &c. &c.—Disasters—Arrival and kind Reception at Affouan—At Cairo, &c. &c.—The Conclusion.

ABOUT one o'clock in the afternoon, December 26, 1771, Mr. Bruce left Gondar. He had purposed to set out early in the morning, but was detained by the impertunity of his friends. The king had delayed his setting out, by several orders sent him in the evening each day; and he plainly saw there was some meaning in this, and that he was wishing to throw difficulties in the way, till some accident, or sudden emergency, never wanting in that country, should make it absolutely impossible for him to leave Abyssinia. When, therefore, the last message came to Koseam on the 27th, at night, Mr. Bruce returned his respectful duty to his majesty, put him in mind of his promise, and somewhat peevishly, he believes, entreated him to leave him to his fortune; that his servants were already gone, and he was resolved to set out the next day.

Early the next morning, Mr. Bruce was surprised at the arrival of a young nobleman, lately made one of his bed-chamber, with fifty light-horse. As he was fatigued, that leaving Abyssinia, without parade, as privately as possible, was the only way to pass through Sennaar; he therefore insisted upon none of his friends accompanying him, and he begged to decline this escort. At one o'clock, Mr. Bruce set out by the well side of Dehra Tzai, having the mountain on their right hand. From the top of that ascent, they saw the plain and flat country below, black, and in its appearance, one thick wood, which some authors have called lately, the Shumeta, or Nubian forest.

He now advanced down the steep side of the mountain, through very strong and rugged ground, torn up by the torrents that fall on every side from above. This is called the Descent of Monra; and though both our travellers and their beasts were in great health and spirits, they could not, with their utmost endeavours, advance much more than one mile an hour.

They entered a thick wood on the 28th, winding round a hill, in a south-east direction, to get into the plain below, where they were surrounded by a great multitude of men, armed with lances, shields, slings, and large clubs or sticks, who rained a shower of stones towards them; but they were at such a distance, that all of them fell greatly short of them. Whether this was owing to fear, or not, they did not know; but supposing that it was, they thought it their interest to keep it up as much as possible. Mr. Bruce, therefore, ordered two shots to be fired over their heads; not with any intention to hurt them, but to let them hear, by the balls whistling among the leaves of the trees, that their guns carried further than any of their slings; and that, distant as they then were, they were not in safety, if they had a disposition to do harm. They seemed to understand their meaning, by gliding through among the bushes, and appearing at the top of a hill further off, where they continued hooping and crying, and making signs, which our travellers could not, neither did they endeavour to understand. While resting on the banks of the river Mogetch, they had been overtaken by two men and two women, who were driving two loaded asses, and were going to Teberkin; they had desired leave to keep company with our travellers, for fear of

danger on the road. Mr. Bruce had two Abyssinian servants, but they were not yet come up, attending one of the baggage mules that was lame. They were obliged then to have recourse to one of these stranger women, who understood the language of Tigre, and undertook readily to carry their message to a stranger, who was still very busy making tents from behind a tree, without coming one step nearer.

The message Mr. Bruce sent them was, that if they shewed the smallest appearance of further insolence, either by approaching the tent, or slinging stones that night, the next morning, when the horse he expected were come up, he would burn their town, and put every man of them to the sword. A very submissive answer was sent back, with a heap of lies in excuse of what they called their mistake. His two servants coming soon after, both of whom, hereafter, were to be in the service of Ayto Confu, went boldly one to each village, to bring two goats, some jars of bouza, and to prepare fifty loaves of bread for next morning. The goats were dispatched instantly, by was the bouza; but when the morning came, the people had all fled from their houses, without preparing any bread. These villages were called Gimbaar. They were three in number; each situated upon the top of a pointed hill, in a direction from east to west, and made a very beautiful appearance from the plain below.

They left the inhospitable villages of Gimbaar on the 29th, not without entertaining some apprehensions of meeting the inhabitants again in the course of the day. But though they took every precaution against being surprised, that prudence could dictate, their fears of the encounter did not rise to any great height. Mr. Bruce got, indeed, on horseback, leaving his mule, and, putting on his coat of mail, leaving the fire-arms under the command of Hagl Hinael, the old Turk, he rode always about a quarter of a mile before the baggage, that they might not come suddenly upon them, as they had done the night before. However, they met with no opposition, but proceeded on to Waalia; and at half past four in the afternoon encamped in the market-place.

This Waalia is a collection of villages, each placed upon the top of a hill, and enclosing, as in a circle, an extensive flat piece of ground about three miles over, on which a very well frequented market is kept. The name is given it from a species of small pigeons, with yellow breasts and variegated backs, the fattest and best of all the pigeon kind. Waalia lies due N. W. from Gondar.

They left Waalia on the 30th, and proceeded along the Mai Luni, or the River of Lemons. A prodigious quantity of fruit loaded the branches of these trees, even likely to break them; and these were in all stages of ripeness. Multitudes of blossoms covered the opposite part of the tree, and sent forth the most delicious odour possible. They provided themselves amply with this fruit. The natives make no use of it, but our travellers found it a great refreshment to them, both mixed with their water, and as sauce to their meat, of which they had now no great variety since their onions had failed them, and a supply of them was to be procured no longer.

Soon after they reached the pass of Dov-Doghba, a

very narrow defile, full of strata of rocks of flints, but so high, that, without leaping, pulled up, no horse or mule can ascend the descent, though short, is very steep, choked up by huge stones, which the walking the earth from about them, heaped from the mountain above. Both sides are covered thick with wood and bushes, that detestable thorn the kantulla, hated in Abyssinia. Having extricated successfully from this pass, their spirits that they began to think their journey end, not reflecting how many passes danger, were still before them.

Mr. Bruce having dressed his horse according to the custom of the country, clean clothes, with no other arms but a pair of pistols at his girdle, came to mount his mule for Teberkin, on the 31st. He now saw Confu's servant, whose name was Yafous, pulling the Guinea-fowl out of the pannier, where his servant and scattering them upon the ground, who interrupted him. "Throw away you shall have a better breakfast and turning to Mr. Bruce, more pleased at seeing him dressed, and that to use the Abyssinian habit, he jumped on a mule, and appeared in great spirits out at a brisker pace than usual, by the two fresh mules. They passed through several small villages; and at last pitched his tent in the market place, which seemed a beautiful lawn land shaded with fine old trees, of an excellent size, and watered by a small brook, running over beds of pebbles a

Wellea Yafous was so very impatient would only give Mr. Bruce time to finish and other instruments safely stowed, and through a very narrow and crooked path of the mountain, at every turn of which a great rock or stone, the station enfilade the different stages of the road it was fraught for any distance. They the outer court, where Mr. Bruce found of his old acquaintance, whom he Ozoro Elther's house at Gondar, a comed him with the greatest demonstration as if he had come from a long journey

Now Mr. Bruce was taken to an inn where, to his great surprize, instead of saw his mother, Ozoro Elther, sitting at her feet the secretary's daughter, the Marsam; and, soon after, the secret several others belonging to the court made a profound obeisance, "O Mr. Bruce, I cannot speak for myself the meaning of your having left Gondar into this wilderness? As for Teela M surprised at seeing her; I know I would rather die than leave you; but both come hither without Ayto Confu short a time, is what I cannot

"There is nothing so strange in this Elther, the troops of Begender having husband, Ras Michael, God knows therefore, being now a single woman to go to Jerusalem to pray for my husband, and be buried in the Holy Sepulchre would not stay with us, so we are Is there any thing surprising in all this, truly, said Teela Mariam, you thing, while peeping and poring through the glasses, did not you learn by the stars meet you here?"—"Madam, answer if there was one star in the firmament pronounced to me such agreeable news relapsed into the old idolatry of worshipping that star for the rest of

*ception from Ozoro Elther, &c. &c.—Hunting of the
ls from Tcherkin to Hor-Cacacoot, in Ras-el-Feel—From
e Shekh attempts to detain Mr. Bruce, who gives him
f the Shekh's Treachery—Mr. Bruce's Departure from
a there and among the Nuba—His Arrival at Sennaar—
an—Interview with the King's Ladies—With Achmet—
stressed Situation of Mr. Bruce—His Departure from
d Conversation with her—His Entrance into the Desert—
&c. &c.—Disasters—Arrival and kind Reception at*

danger on the road. Mr. Bruce had two Abyssinian servants, but they were not yet come up, attending one of the baggage mules that was lame. They were obliged then to have recourse to one of these stranger women, who understood the language of Tigre, and undertook readily to carry their message to a stranger, who was still very busy making signs from behind a tree, without coming one step nearer.

The message Mr. Bruce sent them was, that if they shewed the smallest appearance of further insolence, either by approaching the tent, or flinging stones that night, the next morning, when the horse he expected were come up, he would burn their town, and put every man of them to the sword. A very submissive answer was sent back, with a heap of lies in excuse of what they called their mistake. His two servants coming soon after, both of whom, hereafter, were to be in the service of Ayto Confu, went boldly one to each village, to bring two goats, some jars of bouza, and to prepare fifty loaves of bread for next morning. The goats were dispatched instantly, & was the bouza; but when the morning came, the people had all fled from their houses, without preparing any bread. These villages were called Gimbaar. They were three in number; each situated upon the top of a pointed hill, in a direction from east to west, and made a very beautiful appearance from the plain below.

They left the inhospitable villages of Gimbaar on the 29th, not without entertaining some apprehensions of meeting the inhabitants again in the course of the day. But though they took every precaution against being surprised, that prudence could dictate, their fears of the encounter did not rise to any great height. Mr. Bruce got, indeed, on horseback, leaving his mule, and, putting on his coat of mail, leaving the fire-arms under the command of Hagi Ismael, the old Turk, he rode always about a quarter of a mile before the baggage, that they might not come suddenly upon them, as they had done the night before. However, they met with no opposition, and proceeded on to Waalia; and at half past four in the afternoon encamped in the market-place.

This Waalia is a collection of villages, each placed upon the top of a hill, and enclosing, as in a circle, an extensive flat piece of ground about three miles over, on which a very well frequented market is kept. The name is given it from a species of small pigeons, with yellow breasts and variegated backs, the fattest and best of all the pigeon kind. Waalia is due N. W. from Gondar.

They left Waalia on the 30th, and proceeded along the Mai Lumi, or the River of Leions. A prodigious quantity of fruit loaded the branches of these trees, even likely to break them; and these were in all stages of ripeness. Multitudes of blossoms covered the opposite part of the tree, and sent forth the most delicious odour possible. They provided themselves amply with this fruit. The natives make no use of it, but our travellers found it a great refreshment to them, both mixed with their water, and as sauce to their meat, of which they had now a great variety since their onions had failed them, and a supply of them was to be procured no longer. Soon after they reached the pass of Dov-Dyha, a

very

very narrow defile, full of strata of rocks, like steps of stairs, but so high, that, without leaping, or being pulled up, no horse or mule can ascend. Besides, the descent, though short, is very steep, and almost choked up by huge stones, which the torrents, after walling the earth from about them, had rolled down from the mountain above. Both sides of the defile are covered thick with wood and bushes, especially that detestable thorn the kantussa, so justly reprobated in Abyssinia. Having extricated themselves successfully from this pass, their spirits were so elated, that they began to think their journey now at an end, not reflecting how many passes, full of real danger, were still before them.

Mr. Bruce having dressed his hair, perfumed it according to the custom of the country, and put on clean clothes, with no other arms but his knife, and a pair of pistols at his girdle, came out of the tent to mount his mule for Tcherkin, on January 2, 1772. He now saw Confu's servant, whose name was Welleta Yafous, pulling the Guinea-fowls and pigeons out of the pannier, where his servants had put them, and scattering them upon the ground, saying to those who interrupted him, "Throw away this carrion; you shall have a better breakfast and dinner to-day;" and turning to Mr. Bruce, more than ordinarily pleased at seeing him dressed, and that he continued to use the Abyssinian habit, he jumped upon his mule, and appeared in great spirits. They all set out at a brisker pace than usual, by the assistance of the two fresh mules. They passed through the middle of several small villages; and at last Mr. Bruce pitched his tent in the market place at Tcherkin, which seemed a beautiful lawn laid out for pleasure, shaded with fine old trees, of an enormous height and size, and watered by a small but very limpid brook, running over beds of pebbles as white as snow.

Welleta Yafous was so very impatient, that he would only give Mr. Bruce time to see his quadrant and other instruments safely stowed, and hurried him through a very narrow and crooked path up the side of the mountain, at every turn of which was placed a great rock or stone, the station for mulekts to enlidle the different stages of the road below, where it was straight for any distance. They at last reached the outer court, where Mr. Bruce saw a great many of his old acquaintance, whom he had known at Ozoro Elther's house at Gondar, and who all welcomed him with the greatest demonstrations of joy, as if he had come from a long journey.

Now Mr. Bruce was taken to an inner apartment, where, to his great surprise, instead of Ayto Confu, he saw his mother, Ozoro Ellher, sitting on a couch, and at her feet the secretary's daughter, the beautiful Tecla Mariam; and, soon after, the secretary himself, and several others belonging to the court. After having made a profound obeisance, "Ozoro Ellher, said Mr. Bruce, I cannot speak for surprise. What is the meaning of your having left Gondar to come into this wilderness? As for Tecla Mariam, I am not surprised at seeing her; I know she, at any time, would rather die than leave you; but that you have both come hither without Ayto Confu, and in so short a time, is what I cannot comprehend."—"There is nothing so strange in this," replied Ozoro Ellher, the troops of Begender have taken away my husband, Ras Michael, God knows where; and, therefore, being now a single woman, I am resolved to go to Jerusalem to pray for my husband, and to die there, and be buried in the Holy Sepulchre. You would not stay with us, so we are going with you. Is there any thing surprising in all this?"—"But tell me, truly, said Tecla Mariam, you that know every thing, while peeping and poring through these long glasses, did not you learn by the stars that we were to meet you here?"—"Madam, answered Mr. Bruce, if there was one star in the firmament that had announced to me such agreeable news, I should have relapsed into the old idolatry of this country, and worshipped that star for the rest of my life." Break-

fast now came in; the conversation took a very lively turn, and from the secretary our traveller learned that the matter stood thus: "The king, restoring the villages to the Iteghe, according to the stipulation of his last treaty with Powuffen, thought that he might do so far infringe upon it, from gratitude to Ras Michael, as to give part of the number to Ozoro Ellher, the Iteghe's daughter; and Ayto Confu, going to Tcherkin to hunt, he took his mother along with him to put her in possession; for the Iteghe's people were not lambs, nor did they pay much regard to the orders of the king, nor to that of the Iteghe their millrels."

Ayto Confu came about four o'clock, and with him Ayto Engedan, and a great company. There was nothing but rejoicing on all sides. Seven ladies, relations and companions of Ozoro Ellher, came with Ayto Confu; and Mr. Bruce confesses this to have been one of the happiest moments of his life. He quite forgot the disastrous journey he had before him, and all the dangers that awaited him. He began even to regret being so far in his way to leave Abyssinia for ever.

Ayto Confu's house at Tcherkin is built on the edge of a precipice, which takes its name from the mountain Amba Tcherkin. It is built all with cane very artificially, the outer wall being composed of fascines of canes, so neatly joined together as not to be penetrated by rain or wind. The entry is from the south-side of it, very crooked and difficult, half way up the rock. On the east, is a very plentiful spring, which furnishes the house with excellent water. Yet, after all, this house, though inaccessible, is not defensible, and affords very little safety to its master; for the Shangalla, with flax, or any thing combustible, tied to the point of their arrows, would easily set it on fire if they once approach it; and the Abyssinians with guns could as easily destroy it, as, on such occasions, they wrap their balls in cotton wads. The inside of the stave rooms were hung with long fringes of carpeting, and the floors were covered with the same.

There is great plenty of game about Tcherkin of every sort, elephants, rhinoceroses, and a great number of buffaloes, which differ nothing in form from the buffaloes of Egypt, but very much in temper and disposition. They are fierce, rash, and fearless of danger; and, contrary to the practice of any other creature not carnivorous, they attack the traveller and the hunter equally, and it requires address to escape from them. They seem to be, of all others, the creatures most given to ease and indulgence. They lie under the shady trees, near large pools of water, of which they make constant use, and sleep soundly all the day long. The flesh of the female is very good when fat, but that of the male, hard, lean, and disagreeable. Their horns are used in various manners by the turners, in which craft the Abyssinians are very clever.

Notwithstanding they were all happy to their visit in this enchanted mountain, the active spirit of Ayto Confu could not rest; he was come to hunt the elephant, and hunt him he would. All those that understood any thing of this exercise had assembled from a great distance to meet Ayto Confu at Tcherkin. He and Engedan, from the moment they arrived, had been overlooking, from the precipice, their servants training and managing their horses in the market-place below. Great bunches of the finest canes had been brought from Kuara for javelins; and the whole house was employed in fitting heads to them in the most advantageous manner. Mr. Bruce, though he says he should have been very well contented to have remained where he was, yet the preparations for sport of so noble a kind roused his spirits, and made him desirous to join it. On the other hand, the ladies all declared, that they thought, by leaving them, they were devoting them to death or slavery, as they did not doubt, if the Shangalla missed the hunting party, they would come forward to the mountain and slay them all. But a sufficient garrison was left, and they were well assured that the

Shangalla,

Shangalla, being informed they were out, and armed, and knowing their numbers, would take care to keep close in their thickets far out of their reach.

An hour before day, on the 6th, after a hearty breakfast, they mounted on horseback, to the number of about thirty belonging to Ayto Confu. But there was another body, both of horse and foot, which made hunting the elephant their particular business. These men dwell constantly in the woods, and know very little of the use of bread, living entirely upon the flesh of the beasts they kill, chiefly that of the elephant or rhinoceros. They are exceedingly thin, light, and agile, both on horseback and foot; are very swarthy, though few of them black; none of them woolly-headed, and all of them have European features. They are all called Agageer, a name of their profession, not of their nation, which comes from the word Agar, and signifies to hough or hamstring with a sharp weapon. More properly it means, indeed, the cutting the tendon of the heel, and is a characteristic of the manner in which they kill the elephant, which is shortly as follows:

"Two men, absolutely naked, without any rag or covering at all about them, get on horseback; this precaution is from fear of being laid hold of by the trees or bushes, in making their escape from a very watchful enemy. One of these riders sits upon the back of the horse, sometimes with a saddle, and sometimes without one, with only a switch or short stick in one hand, carefully managing the bridle with the other; behind him sits his companion, who has no other arms but a broadsword, such as is used by the Sclavonians, and which is brought from Trieste. His left hand is employed grasping the sword by the handle, and about fourteen inches of the blade is covered with whip-cord. This part he takes in his right hand, without any danger of being hurt by it; and, though the edges of the lower part of the sword are as sharp as a razor, he carries it without a scabbard. When the elephant is found feeding, the horseman rides before him as near his face as possible; or, if he lies, crosses him in all directions, crying out, "I am such a man, and such a man; this is my horse, that has such a name; I killed your father in such a place, and your grandfather in such another place, and I am now come to kill you; you are but an ass in comparison of them." This nonsense he verily believes the elephant understands, who, chafed and angry at hearing the noise immediately before him, seeks to seize him with his trunk, or proboscis; and, intent upon this, follows the horse every where, turning round with him frequently, neglectful of making his escape by running straight forward, in which consists his only safety. After having made him turn once or twice in pursuit of the horse, the horseman rides close up along side of him, and drops his companion just behind on the off side; and while he engages the elephant's attention upon the horse, the footman behind gives him a drawn stroke just above the heel, or what in man is called the tendon Achilles. This is the critical moment; the horseman immediately wheels round, and takes his companion up behind him, and rides off full speed after the rest of the herd, if they have started more than one; and sometimes an expert Agageer will kill three out of one herd. If the sword is good, and the man not afraid, the tendon is commonly entirely separated; and if it is not cut through, it is generally so far divided, that the animal, with the flesh he puts upon it, breaks the remaining part asunder. In either case, he remains incapable of advancing a step, till the horseman returning, or his companions coming up, pierce him through with javelins and lances; he then falls to the ground, and expires with the loss of blood.

"The Agageer nearest Mr. Bruce presently lamed his elephant, and left him standing. Ayto Engedan, Ayto Confu, Guebra Mariani, and several others, fixed their spears in the other, before the Agageer had cut his tendons. Mr. Bruce's Agageer, however, having

wounded the first elephant, failed in the pursuit of the second; and, being close upon him at entering the wood, he received a violent blow from a branch of a tree which the elephant had bent by his weight, and, after passing, allowed it to replace itself, when it knocked down both the riders, and very much hurt the horse. This, indeed, is the great danger in elephant-hunting; for some of the trees, that are dry and short, break, by the violent pressure of so immense a body moving so rapidly, and fall upon the pursuers, or across the roads. But the greatest number of these trees, being of a succulent quality, they bend without breaking, and return quickly to their former position, when they strike both horse and man so violently, that they often beat them to pieces, and scatter them upon the plain. Dextrous, too, as the riders are, the elephant sometimes reaches them with his trunk, with which he dashes the horse against the ground, and then sets his feet upon him, till he tears him limb from limb with his proboscis: a great many hunters die this way. Besides this, the soil, at this time of the year, is split into deep chasms, or cavities, by the heat of the sun, so that nothing can be more dangerous than the riding. As soon as the elephant is slain, they cut the whole flesh off his bones into thongs, like the reins of a bridle, and hang these, like festoons, upon the branches of trees, till they become perfectly dry, without salt, and they then lay them by for their provision in the season of the rains."

Now only two elephants remained of those that had been discovered, which were a she one with a calf. The Agageer would willingly have let these alone, as the teeth of the female are very small, and the young one is of no sort of value, even for food, its flesh shrinking much upon drying. But the hunters would not be limited in their sport. The people having observed the place of her retreat, thither they eagerly followed. She was very soon found, and as soon lamed by the Agageers; but when they came to wound her with the darts, as every one did in their turn, to their very great surprise, the young one which had been sullered to escape unheeded and unpursued, came out from the thicket apparently to great anger, running upon the horses and men with all the violence it was master of. Mr. Bruce was amazed, and as much as ever he was, upon such an occasion, afflicted, at seeing the great affection of the little animal defending its wounded mother, heedless of its own life or safety. He, therefore, cried to them for God's sake to spare the mother, though it was then too late; and the calf had made several rude attacks upon Mr. Bruce, which he avoided without difficulty; but he says he is happy to this day, in the reflection that he did not strike it. At last, making one of his attacks upon Ayto Engedan, it hurt him a little on the leg; upon which he thrust it through with his lance, as others did after, and it then fell dead before its wounded mother, whom it had so affectionately defended.

Our travellers then sought about for the buffaloes and rhinoceroses; but though there was plenty of both in the neighbourhood, they could not find them; their noise and shooting in the morning having probably scared them away. One rhinoceros was only seen by a servant. They returned in the evening to a great fire, and lay all night under the shade of trees.

Very early the next morning they were on horseback in search of the rhinoceroses, many of which they had heard make a very deep groan and cry as the morning approached; several of the Agageers then joined them; and, after they had searched about an hour in the very thickest part of the wood, one of them rushed out with great violence, crossing the plain towards a wood of canes that was about two miles distance. But though he ran, or rather trotted, with surprising speed, considering his bulk, he was, in a very little time, transixed with thirty or forty javelins; which so confounded him, that he left his purpose

failed in the pursuit of the
upon him at entering the
blow from a branch of
had bent by his weight,
it to replace itself, when
riders, and very much
need, is the great danger in
of the trees, that are
the violent pressure of fo
so rapidly, and fall upon
roads. But the greatest
ing of a succulent quality,
ing, and return quickly to
en they strike both horse
they often beat them to
upon the plain. Dextrous
elephant sometimes reaches
which he dashes the horse
en sets his feet upon him,
limb with his proboscis;
e this way. Besides this,
e year, is split into deep
e heat of the sun, so that
erous than the riding. As
y, they cut the whole flesh
like the reins of a bridle,
ms, upon the branches of
perfectly dry, without fall,
for their provision in the

s remained of those that
h were a fine one with a
d willingly have let these
female are very small, and
of value, even for food,
on drying. But the hun-
in their sport. The people
of her retreat, thither they
s very soon found, and as
s; but when they came to
as every one did in their
surprise, the young one
to escape unheeded and
the thicket apparently in
the horses and men with
ster of. Mr. Bruce was
er he was, upon such an
g the great affliction of the
ounded mother, heedless
He, therefore, cried to
are the mother, though
he calf had made several
ruce, which he avoided
ays he is happy to this
he did not strike it. At
cks upon Ayto Engedan,
g; upon which he thrust
s others did after, and it
ounded mother, whom it
ed.
t about for the buffaloes
ugh there was plenty of
d, they could not find
ng in the morning having
e. One rhinoceros was
ey returned in the even-
all night under the shade
ing they were on horse-
ceroses, many of which
e deep groan and cry as
several of the Agageers
after they had searched
ickest part of the wood,
a great violence, crossing
eans that was about two
he ran, or rather trotted,
ering his bulk, he was
sed with thirty or forty
ed him, that he left his
purpose

purpose of going to the wood, and ran into a deep
hole, ditch, or ravine, a *cul de sac*, without outlet,
breaking above a dozen of the javelins as he entered.
Here they thought he was caught as in a trap, for
he had scarce room to turn; when a servant, who
had a gun, standing directly over him, fired at his
head, and the animal fell immediately, to all appear-
ance dead. All those on foot now jumped in with
their knives to cut him up, and they had scarce be-
gun, when the animal recovered so far as to rise
upon his knees; happy then was the man that escap-
ed first; and had not one of the Agageers, who was
himself engaged in the ravine, cut the sinew of the
hind leg as he was retreating, there would have been
a very sorrowful account of the foot-bunters that day.

When Mr. Bruce dispatched him, he was curious
to see what wound the shot had given, which had
operated so violently upon so huge an animal; and
he doubted not it was in the brain. But it had struck
him no where but upon the point of the foremost
horn, of which it had carried off above an inch; and
this occasioned a concussion that had stunned him
for a minute, till the bleeding had recovered him.
Mr. Bruce preserved the horn from curiosity. Ere
they had gone far, a wild boar arose between Mr.
Bruce and Ayto Engedan, which our traveller im-
mediately killed with his javelin. This was the sport
Mr. Bruce had been many years used to in Barbary,
and was infinitely more dexterous at it than any of the
present company; this put him more upon a par with
his companions, who had not failed to laugh at him,
upon his horse's refusal to carry him near either to
the elephant or rhinoceros.

Now Ammonios was a man of approved courage
and conduct: he had been in all the wars of Ras
Michael, and was placed about Ayto Confu, to lead
the troops, curb the presumption, and check the
impetuosity of that youthful warrior. He was tall,
and awkwardly made; slow in speech and motion,
so much as even to excite ridicule; about sixty years
of age, and more corpulent than the Abyssinians
generally are; in a word, as pedantic and grave
in his manner as it is possible to express. He spent
his whole leisure time in reading the Scripture, nor
did he willingly discourse of any thing else. He had
been bred a foot soldier; and, though he rode as
well as many of the Abyssinians, yet, having long
stirrup-leathers, with iron rings at the end of them,
into which he put his naked toe only, instead of
stirrups, he had no strength or agility on horseback,
nor was his bridle such as could command his horse
to stop, or wind and turn sharply among trees, though
he might make a tolerable figure on a plain.

A boar had wounded a horse and a footman of
Ayto Confu, and then escaped. Two buffaloes were
found by those on the right, one of which wounded
a horse likewise. Ayto Confu, Engedan, Fuebra
Marian, and Mr. Bruce killed the other with equal
share of merit, without being in any sort of danger.
All this was in little more than an hour when their
point seemed to be at the best; their horses were con-
siderably blown, not tired; and though they were
beating homewards, still they were looking very
scently for more game. Ammonios was on the left
among the bushes, and some large, beautiful, tall
spreading-trees, close on the banks of the river Be-
dowi, which stands there in pools. Whether the
buffalo found Ammonios, or Ammonios the buffalo,
is what they could never get him to explain to them;
but he had wounded the beast slightly in the buttock,
which, in return, had gored his horse, and thrown
both him and it to the ground. Luckily, however,
his cloak had fallen off, which the buffalo tore in
pieces, and employed himself for a minute with that
and with the horse, but then left them, and followed
the man as soon as he saw him rise and run. Am-
monios got behind one large tree, and from that to
another still larger. The buffalo turned very awk-
wardly, but kept close in pursuit; and there was no
doubt he would have worn out their companion, who

was not used to such quick motion. Ayto Engedan,
who was near him, and might have assisted him, was
laughing, at the droll figure Ammonios made; and
continued calling to Confu to partake of the diversion.

As soon as Mr. Bruce heard his cries, he galloped
out of the bushes to the place where he was, and
could not help laughing at his ridiculous figure, very
attentive to the beast's motions, which seemed to
dodge with great address, and keep to his adversary
with the utmost obstinacy. Confu immediately ar-
rived, and laughed more than Engedan, but did not
offer to interfere; on the contrary, he clapped his
hands, and cried, "Well done, Ammonios," swear-
ing he never saw so equal a match in his life. The
unfortunate Ammonios had been driven from tree to
tree, till he had got behind one within a few yards of
the water; but the brush-wood upon the banks, and
his attention to the buffalo, hindered him from seeing
how far it was below him. Nothing could be more
ridiculous than to see him holding the tree with both
his hands, peeping first one way, and then another,
to see by which the beast would turn. And well he
might be on his guard; for the animal was absolutely
mad, tossing up the ground with his feet both before
and behind. Mr. Bruce, thinking the joke might
become serious, cried to Ammonios to throw himself
into the water, when he should strike the beast; and
seeing the buffalo's head turned from Mr. Bruce, at
full speed, he ran the spear into the lower part of his
belly, through his whole intestines, till it came out
above a foot on the other side, and there he left it
with a view to hinder the buffalo from turning. It
was a spear which, though small in the head, had a
strong, tough, seasoned shaft, which did not break
by striking it against the trees and bushes; and it
pained and impeded the animal's motions, till Am-
monios quitting the tree, dashed through the bushes
with some difficulty, and threw himself into the river.
But here a danger occurred that Mr. Bruce had not
foreseen. The pool was very deep, and Ammonios
could not swim; so that though he escaped from the
buffalo, he would infallibly have been drowned, had
he not caught hold of some strong roots of a tree
shooting out of the bank; and there he lay in perfect
safety from the enemy till the servants went round,
and brought him out of the pool on the further
side.

During this time, the buffalo, mortally wounded,
seeing his enemy had escaped, kept his eyes intent
upon the hunters, who were about forty yards from
him, walking backwards towards the company, with
intent to turn suddenly upon the nearest horse; when
Ayto Confu ordered two men with guns to shoot him
through the head, and he instantly fell. The two
they first killed were females; this last was a bull, and
one of the largest, confessedly, that had ever been
seen. Though not fat, Mr. Bruce supposes he weighed
nearer fifty than forty stone. His horns from the
root, following the line of their curve, were about
fifty-two inches, and nearly nine where thickest in
the circumference. They were flat, not round.
Ayto Confu ordered the head to be cut off, and
cleared of its flesh, so that the horns and skeleton of
the head only remained; this he hung up in his great
hall among the probosces of elephants, and horns of
rhinoceroses, with this inscription in his own language,
"Yagoube the Kipt killed this upon the Bedowi."

The evening of the day on which they set out to
hunt, some men arrived from Ras el Feel sent by
Yafine, with camels for their baggage, nothing but
mules being used at Tcherkin. They brought word,
that the Shangalla were down near the Tacazze, so
that now was the time to pass without fear; that Abd
el Jeleel, the former Shum of Ras el Feel, Yafine's
mortal enemy, had been seen lurking in the country
near Sanchah; but as he had only four men, and was
himself a known coward, it was not probable he would
attempt any thing against our travellers, though it
would be always better for them to keep on their
guard.

Tcherkin has a market on Saturday, in which raw cotton, cattle, honey, and coarse cotton cloths are sold. The Shangalla formerly molested Tcherkin greatly, but for thirty years past they had done little damage. The small-pox raged so violently for a number of years among them, that it greatly diminished their numbers, and consequently their power of troubling their neighbours.

They left Tcherkin on the morning of the 15th of January, and entered immediately into thick woods; but proceeded very slowly, the road being bad and unknown, if it could be called a road, and their camels overloaded.

They came to Saneaho, an old frontier territory of Abyssinia, on the 17th. The town may consist of about 300 huts or houses, neatly built of canes, and curiously thatched with leaves of the same. It rises in the midst of a plain, and resembles in shape Tcherkin Amba, though much larger; a considerable district all around belongs to it, of wilds and woods, if such as these, abandoned entirely to wild beasts, can be said to belong to any man. The east end slopes with rather a steep descent into the plain; and through that is a narrow winding road, seemingly the work of art, being obstructed at turns by huge stones, and at different stages, for the purpose of defence by guns or arrows; all the other sides of the rock are perpendicular precipices. The inhabitants of the town are Baafa, a race of Shangalla, converted to the Mahometan religion.

Our travellers proceeded but a mile and a half on the 20th, their beasts and themselves being equally fatigued, and their cloths torn all to rags, when they arrived at Guanjoek, which is a very delightful spot by the river side; small woods of very high trees, interspersed with very beautiful lawns; several fields also cultivated with cotton; variety of game, especially Guinea fowls, in great abundance, and, upon every tree, paroquets, of all the different kinds and colours, compose the beauties of Guanjoek. Mr. Bruce saw no parrots, and supposes there were none; but on firing a gun, the first probably ever heard in those woods, there was such a screaming of other birds on all sides, some flying to the place whence the noise came, and some flying from it, that it was impossible to hear distinctly any other sound.

Having continued the journey from thence, at a quarter after one they came to Mariam-Ohba, and at half past three arrived at Hor-Cacamoot. Hor, in that country, signifies the dry deep bed of a torrent, which has ceased to run; and Cacamoot, the shade of death: so that Yafine's village, where they now took up their quarters, is called the valley of the shadow of death.

Hor-Cacamoot is situated in a plain in the midst of a wood, so much only of which has been cleared away as to make room for the miserable huts of which it consists, and for the small spots of ground on which they sow maffilla, or maize, to furnish them with bread. Their other food consists entirely of the flesh of the elephant and rhinoceros, and chiefly of the former; for the trouble of hunting the elephant is not greater than chasing the rhinoceros, and the difference of gain is much superior. The elephant has a greater quantity of better flesh, while his large teeth are very valuable, and afford a ready price every where. The inhabitants being little acquainted with the use of fire-arms, the smaller game, of the deer kind, are not much molested, unless by the wild Shangalla, who make use of bows and arrows, so that these animals are increased beyond imagination.

Formerly Ras el Feel consisted of thirty-nine villages. All the Arabs of Athara resorted to them with butter, honey, horses, gold, and many other commodities; and the Shekh of Athara, living upon the frontier of Senaar, entertained a constant good correspondence with the Shekh of Ras el Feel, to whom he sent yearly a Dongola horse, two razors, and two dogs. The Shekh of Ras el Feel, in return, gave him a mule and a female slave; and the effect of this

intercourse was to keep all the intermediate Arabs in their duty. But since the expedition of Yafous II. against Senaar, no peace has ever subsisted between the two states; on the contrary, all the Arabs that assisted the king, and were defeated with him, pay tribute no longer to Senaar, but live on the frontiers of Abyssinia and are protected there.

March the 17th, they set out from Hor-Cacamoot on their journey to Teawa, the capital of the province of Athara. Early in the morning of the 18th, they continued their journey through thick, and almost impenetrable woods full of thorns; and in two hours came to the bed of a torrent, though, in appearance, dry, upon digging with their hands in the loose sand, they found great plenty of fresh water exceedingly well tasted, being sheltered by projecting rocks from the action of the sun. This is called Surf el Shekh. Here they filled their girbas, for there is very little good water to be found between this and Teawa.

A girba is an ox's skin squared, and the edges sewed together very artificially by a double seam, which does not let out water, much resembling that upon the best English cricket-balls. An opening is left in the top of the girba, in the same manner as the bung-hole of a cask. Around this the skin is gathered to the size of a large handful, which, when the girba is full of water, is tied round with whip-cord. These girbas generally contain about sixty gallons each, and two of them are the load of a camel. They are then all besmeared on the outside with grease, as well to hinder the water from oozing through, as to prevent its being evaporated by the action of the sun upon the girba, which, in fact, happened to them twice, so as to put them in imminent danger of perishing with thirst.

Yafine had provided a camel and two girbas, as well as every other provision necessary for them, till they should arrive at Teawa. Surf el Shekh is the boundary of Ras el Feel. Here Mr. Bruce took an affectionate leave of his friend Yafine, who, with all his attendants, shewed, at parting, that love and attachment they had constantly preserved to Mr. Bruce since their first acquaintance.

Our travellers arrived at Imferra, on the 22nd, and from thence were two hours in going to Ralhid, for they were flying for their lives; the *Simoom*, or hot-wind, having struck them not long after they had set out from Imferra; and their little company, all but Mr. Bruce, fell sick with the quantity of poisonous vapour that they had imbibed. From Ralhid to Imferra it is about five miles; and though it is one of the most dangerous halting places between Ras el Feel and Senaar, yet they were so enervated, their stomachs so weak, and their head-achs so violent, that they could not pitch their tent, but each wrapping himself in his cloak, resigned himself immediately to sleep, under the cool shade of the large trees, invited by the pleasant breeze from the north, which seemed to be merely local, confined to this small grove, created probably by the vicinity of the water, and the agitation they had occasioned in it. In this helpless state to which they were reduced, Mr. Bruce alone continued not weakened by the *Simoom*, nor overcome by sleep. A Ganjar Arab, who drove an ass laden with salt, took this opportunity of stealing one of the mules, together with a lance and shield belonging to one of Mr. Bruce's servants. The country was so woody, and he had so much the advantage of them in point of time, and they were in so weak and discouraged a state, that it was thought in vain to pursue him one step. So he got off with his booty, unless he was intercepted by some of those wild beasts, which he would find every where in his way, whether he returned to Ras el Feel, or the frontiers of Kuara, his own country.

When they had refreshed themselves with a little sleep, their next care was to fill their girbas, or skins, with water. But before they attempted this, Mr. Bruce thought to try an experiment of mixing about twenty drops

the intermediate Arabs in expedition of Yafous II. has ever subsisted between contrary, all the Arabs that were defeated with him, payed, but live on the front of the river.

It is out from Hor-Casamoot, the capital of the province, the morning of the 18th, they passed through thick, and all full of thorns; and in two or three days, though, in appearance, they were in the possession of their hands in the possession of fresh water exceedingly, and by projecting rocks. This is called Surf of the girdle, for there is a found between this and

pared, and the edges sewed by a double seam, which resembles that upon the skin. An opening is left in the same manner as the bung-hole, which is gathered to which, when the girba is with whip-cord. These are but sixty gallons each, and a camel. They are then side with grease, as well as by the action of the sun, which, happened to them, imminent danger of pe-

camel and two girbas, as necessary for them, till the Surf of Shekh is the Here Mr. Bruce took an and Yafine, who, with all starting, that love and affection preferred to Mr. Bruce

Imferrha, on the 23th, hours in going to Radfid, their lives; the Simoom, or in not long after they had their little company, all in the quantity of poison-bibed. From Radfid to the local, and though it is one of the best places between Ras they were so enervated, their head-achs for a week, and though it was thought, they were reduced, Mr. Danjar Arab, who drove his opportunity of stealing with a lance and shield Bruce's servants. The he had so much the advantage, and they were in time, that it was thought. So he got off with accepted by some of those kind every where in his Ras el Feel, or the front-

themselves with a little sleep, or girbas, or skins, with accepted this, Mr. Bruce of mixing about twenty drops

drops of spirit of nitre in a horn of water about the size of an ordinary tumbler. This he found greatly refreshed him, though his head-ach still continued. It had a much better effect upon his servants, to whom he gave it; for they all seemed immediately recovered, and their spirits much more so, from the reflection that they had with them a remedy they could trust to, if they should again be so unfortunate as to meet this poisonous wind or vapour.

On the 23d, they arrived at Teawa, the principal village and residence of the Shekh of Arbara, between three and four miles from the ruins of Garigana. The strength of Teawa was about 25 horse, of which about ten were armed with coats of mail. They had about a dozen of firelocks, very contemptible from the order in which they were kept, and still more so from the hands that bore them. The rest of the inhabitants might amount to twelve hundred men, naked, miserable, and deplorable Arabs, like the rest of those that live in villages, who are inferior in courage to the Arabs that dwell in tents: weak as its state was, it was the seat of government, and as such a certain degree of reverence attended it. Such was the state of Teawa. Its consequence was only to remain till the Davaina should resolve to attack it, when its corn fields being burnt and destroyed in a night by a multitude of horsemen, the bones of its inhabitants scattered upon the earth would be all its remains.

Mr. Bruce being sent for by the Shekh, found him sitting in a spacious room, in an alcove, on a large broad sofa like a bed, with India curtains gathered on each side into felloons. He called to a black boy who attended him, in a very surly tone, to bring him a pipe; and, in much the same voice, said to Mr. Bruce, "What! alone?" He replied, "Yes; what are your commands with me?" Mr. Bruce saw he either was, or affected to be, drunk, and which ever was the case, he knew it would lead to mischief; he therefore repented heartily of having come into the house alone. After he had taken two whiffs of his pipe, and the slave had left the room, "Are you prepared? said he: Have you brought the *needful* along with you?" Mr. Bruce wished to have occasion to join Soliman, his servant, and answered, "My servants are at the outer door, and have the vomit you wanted." "D—n you and the vomit too, said he, with great passion, I want money, and not poison. Where are your pialtres?" "I am a bad person, replied Mr. Bruce, to furnish you with either. I have neither money nor poison; but I advise you to drink a little warm water to clear your stomach, cool your head, and then lie down and compose yourself; I will see you to-morrow morning." Mr. Bruce was going out. "Haikim, said he, infidel, or devil, or whatever is your name, hearken to what I say. Consider where you are; this is the room where Mek Baady, a king, was slain by the hand of my father: look at his blood, where it has stained the floor, which never could be washed out. I am informed you have 20,000 piasters in gold with you; either give me 2000 before you go out of this chamber, or you shall die; I will put you to death with my own hand." Upon this he took up his sword, that was lying at the head of his sofa, and, drawing it with a bravado, threw the scabbard into the middle of the room; and, tucking the sleeve of his shirt above his elbow like a butcher, said, "I wait your answer." Mr. Bruce now slept one pace backwards, and held the little blunderbuss in his hand, without taking it off the belt. He said, in a firm tone of voice, "This is my answer: I am not a man, as I have told you before, to die like a beast by the hand of a drunkard. On your life, I charge you, stir not from your sofa." He had no need to give this injunction; he heard the noise which the closing the joint in the stock of the blunderbuss made, and thought he had cocked it, and was instantly to fire. He let his sword drop, and threw himself on his back on the sofa, crying, "For God's sake, Haikim, I was but jesting." At

the same time, with all his might, he cried, "Brahim! Mahomet! El coom! El coom!"—"If one of your servants approach me, said Mr. Bruce, that instant I will blow you to pieces: not one of them shall enter this room till they bring in my servants with them; I have a number of them armed at your gate, who will break in the instant they hear me fire." The women had come to the door, and Mr. Bruce's servants were admitted, each having a blunderbuss in his hand, and pistols at his girdle. They were now greatly an overmatch for Shekh, who sat far back on the sofa, and pretended that all he had done was in joke, in which his servants joined, and a very confused, desultory discourse followed, till the Turk, Sherrisse Imael, happened to observe the Shekh's scabbard of his sword thrown upon the floor, on which he fell into a violent fit of laughter. He endeavoured to make the Shekh understand, that drunkards and cowards had more need of the scabbard than the sword; that he, Fidele, and the other drunkard that came to their house two or three nights before, who said he was Shekh of Jehaina were just possessed of the same portion of courage and insolence. As no good could be expected from this expostulation, Mr. Bruce slept it, and took his leave, desiring the Shekh to go to-bed and compose himself, and not try any more of these experiments, which would certainly end in his shame, if not in his punishment.

Now Mr. Bruce and his servants went to the door, through the several apartments, very much upon their guard, for there was no person to light them out, and they were afraid of some treachery or ambush in the antichamber and dark passages; but they met nobody; and were, even at the outer gate, obliged to open the door themselves. Without the gate there were about twenty people gathered together, but none of them with arms; and, by the half words and expressions they made use of, they could judge they were not the Shekh's friends. They followed them for a little, but dispersed before they arrived at their house.

Mr. Bruce and his party had scarce got rid of this real danger, when the apprehension of an imaginary one struck them violently. The water at Teawa is stagnant in pools, and exceedingly bad. Either that, or the bouza, a kind of new beer which they sent them with their meat, had given all of them, at the same time, a violent diarrhoea, and Mr. Bruce was tormented with a perpetual thirst ever since they had been overtaken by the Simoom; and the bouza being acid was not only more agreeable, but, he thought, relieved him more than bad water: in this, therefore, he certainly had exceeded. When they found they were all taken ill at the same time, it came into their heads that Shekh Fidele had given them poison in their dinner, and they were very much perplexed what they should do the next day. None of them, therefore, tasted the meat sent them; when at night, their friend, the black slave, came, and to her they frankly told their doubts. The poor creature fell into such violent fits of laughing, which followed so close the one upon the other, and lasted so long, that Mr. Bruce feared she would have expired upon the spot. "It is the water, said she, it does so to all strangers; and then she fell into another great fit of laughter." "Child, answered Mr. Bruce, you know the Shekh is not our friend, and there is no easier way to get rid of us than by poison, as we eat every thing that comes from you without fear." "And so you may, said she, the Shekh could do no such thing without our knowledge, and we would rather all be burnt alive than be guilty of so vile an action. Besides, said she, this is not like Habesh, where both meat and drink, brought to you, are tasted by the bearer before you use them. There is no such thing as poison in Arbara; the lance and the knife in the field, that is the manner in which they kill one another here." They then shewed her their dinner uneaten, and she again fell into a violent fit of laughter, and took the meat away that she might warm it, and

they

they heard her laughing all the way as she went by herself. She was not long in returning with provisions in plenty, and told them, that her mistress never were so diverted in their lives, and she left them still laughing.

All the while Mr. Bruce staid at Teawa, the behaviour of Fidele was all of a piece, and it is probable our traveller would have finished his travels in that place, had not some of his powerful friends interceded themselves in his security. However, after various impediments, on the 18th, they took leave of the Shekh to proceed on their journey. The day had been immoderately hot, and they had resolved to travel all night, though they did not say so to the Shekh, who advised them to sleep at Imgededema, where there was fresh water. But they had taken a girba of water with them, or rather, in case of accident, a little in each of the three girbas.

During the first seven hours, their journey was through a barren, bare, and sandy plain, without finding a vestige of any living creature; without water, and without grass; a country that seemed under the immediate curse of Heaven. However, after a most disagreeable journey, on the 19th, at eight in the evening they arrived at Beyla, about eleven miles west of Teawa, and thirty-one and a half miles due south. They were met by Mahomet, the Shekh, at the very entrance of the town. He said, he looked upon them as risen from the dead; that they must be good people, and particularly under the care of Providence, to have escaped the many snares the Shekh of Arbara had laid for them. Mahomet, the Shekh, had provided every sort of refreshment possible for them, and, thinking they could not live without it, he had ordered fugar for them from Sennaar. Honey for the most part hitherto had been its substitute. They had a good comfortable supper; as fine wheat-bread as ever Mr. Bruce ate in his life, brought from Sennaar, as also rice: in a word, every thing that their kind landlord could contribute to their plentiful and hospitable entertainment. Our traveller's whole company was full of joy, to which the Shekh greatly encouraged them; and if there was any alloy to the happiness, it was seeing that Mr. Bruce did not partake of it. Symptoms of an aguish disorder had been hanging about him for several days, ever since the diarrhœa had left him. He found the greatest repugnance, or nausea, at the smell of warm meat; and, having a violent head-ach, he insisted upon going to bed suppellets, after having drank a quantity of warm water by way of emetic. Being exceedingly tired, he soon fell sound asleep, having first taken some drops of a strong spirituous tincture of the bark which he had prepared at Gondar, resolving, if he found any remission, as he then did, to take several good doses of the bark in powder on the morrow, beginning at day-break, which he accordingly did with success.

April the 20th, a little after the dawn of day, the Shekh, in great anxiety, came to the place where Mr. Bruce was lying, upon a tanned buffalo's hide, on the ground. His sorrow was soon turned into joy when he found him quite recovered from his illness. He had taken the bark, and expressed a desire of eating a hearty breakfast of rice, which was immediately prepared for him. The Shekh of Beyla was an implicit believer in medicine. Seeing him take some drops of the tincture before coffee, he insisted upon pledging Mr. Bruce, and he believes would have willingly emptied the whole bottle. The Shekh, having suffered great agony with his own complaint, had passed some small stones, and was greatly better, as he said, for the soap-pills. Mr. Bruce put him in a way to prepare these, as also his lime-water. It was impossible to have done any favour for him equal to this, as his agony had been so great.

This being the time to give the Shekh a present, Mr. Bruce had prepared one for him, such as he very well deserved; but no entreaty, nor any means he could use, could prevail upon him to accept of the

meagre trifle. On the contrary, he solemnly swore, that if Mr. Bruce importuned him further, he would get upon his horse and go into the country. All that he desired, and that too as a favour, was, that when Mr. Bruce had rested at Sennaar, he might come and consult him further as to his complaints, for which he promised he should bring a recompence with him.

Notwithstanding Mr. Bruce's reception here was very kind, yet he determined to press on to Sennaar before affairs there were in a desperate situation, or some scheme of mischief should be contrived by Fidele. They had again a large and plentiful dinner, and a quantity of houza; venison of several different species of the antelope or deer kind, and Guinea-fowls, boiled with rice, were the best part of their fare, for the venison flavoured and tasted strongly of milk. This was the provision made by the Shekh's two sons, boys about fourteen or fifteen years old, who had got each of them a gun with a matchlock, and whole favour he secured to a very high degree, by giving them some good gunpowder, and plenty of small leaden bullets.

They went in the afternoon to see the village, which is a very pleasant one, situated at the bottom of a hill, covered with wood, all the rest flat before it. Through this plain there are many large timber trees, planted in rows, and joined with high hedges, as in Europe, forming enclosures for keeping cattle; but of these they saw none, as they had been moved to the Dender for fear of the flies. There is no water at Beyla but what is got from deep wells. Large plantations of Indian corn are every where about the town. The inhabitants are in continual apprehension from the Arabs Daveina at Sim Sim, about 40 miles south-east from them; and from another powerful race called Wed abd el Gin, i. e. *Sons of the slaves of the Devil*, who live to the south-west of them, between the Dender and the Nile. Beyla is another frontier town of Sennaar, on the side of Sim Sim; and between Teawa and this, on the Sennaar side, and Ras el Feel, Nara, and Tchelga, upon the Abyssinian side, all is desert and waste, the Arabs only suffering the water to remain there without villages near it, that they and their flocks may come at certain seasons while the grass grows, and the pools or springs fill elsewhere.

Mr. Bruce, though he went early to bed with a full determination to set out by day-break, found it was impossible to put his design in execution, or get from the hands of their kind landlord. One of their girbas seemed to fail, and needed to be repaired. Nothing good, as he truly said, could come from the Shekh of Arbara.

They left Beyla at three o'clock in the afternoon on the 21st of April, and proceeded through a very pleasant, flat country, but without water; there had been none in their way nearer than the river Rahad. About eleven at night they alighted in a wood: The place is called Baharie, as near as they could compute, nine miles from Beyla.

At half past five o'clock in the morning of the 22d, they left Baharie, still continuing westward, and at nine they came to the banks of the Rahad. The ford is called Tehir Chaira. The river itself was now standing in pools, the water foul, stinking, and covered with a green mantle; the bottom soft and muddy, but there was no choice. The water at Beyla was so bad, that they took only as much as was absolutely necessary till they arrived at running water from the Rahad.

They met several men the next day on horseback and foot, coming out from among the bushes, who endeavoured to carry off one of their camels. They indeed were somewhat alarmed, and were going to prepare for resistance. The camel they had taken away had on it the king's and Shekh Adelan's presents, and some other things for their future need. Their clothes too, books, and papers, were upon the same camel. However, as this was only a contrivance to extort a present from Mr. Bruce, the matter was easily got over, and the camel restored.

trary, he solemnly swore, ed him further, he would to the country. All that a favour, was, that when Sennaar, he might come and complaints, for which he recompence with him. Bruce's reception here was ed to press on to Sennaar a desperate situation, or should be contrived by large and plentiful dinner, nition of several different deer kind, and Guinea- the best part of their and tasted strongly of ion made by the Shikhi's en or fifteen years old, a gun with a matchlock, to a very high degree, unpowder, and plenty of

to see the village, which situated at the bottom of all the rest flat before are many large timber joined with high hedges, ured for keeping cattle; as they had been moved flies. There is no water in deep wells. Large e very where about the in continual apprehension im Sim, about 40 miles n another powerful race Sons of the slaves of the well of them, between eyla is another frontier of Sim Sim; and he Sennaar side, and Ras upon the Abyssinian the Arabs only suffering without villages near may come at certain and the pools or springs

at early to bed with a ny day-break, found it gn in execution, or get ndlord. One of their eeded to be repaired. could come from the

ack in the afternoon on deded through a very out water; there had than the river Rahad. ighted in a wood: The is they could compute,

the morning of the tining westward, and of the Rahad. The e river itself was now sflinking, and covered in soft and muddy, but r at Beyla was so bad, s absolutely necessary r from the Rahad. xt day on horseback ong the bushes, who their camels. They , and were going to mel they had taken kh Adelan's presents, future need. Their were upon the same ly a contrivance to e's, the matter was stored.

On

On the 24th, they came to the river Dender, stand- ing now in pools, but by the vast wideness of its banks, and the great deepness of its bed, all of white sand, it should seem that in time of rain, it will contain nearly as much water as the Nile. The banks are every where thick overgrown with the rack and fig-tree, especially the latter. The wood, which had continued molly from Beyla, here failed entirely, and reached no further towards Sennaar. These two sorts of trees, however, were in very great beauty, and of a prodigious size. At six o'clock in the evening, they set out from a shady place of repose on the banks of the Dender, through a large plain, with not a tree before them; but they presently found them- selves encompassed with a number of villages, nearly of a size, and placed at equal distances in form of a semi-circle, the roofs of the houses in shape of cones, as are all those within the rains. The plain was all of a red, soapy earth, and the corn just sown. This whole country is in perpetual cultivation, and though, at this time, it had a bare look, would no doubt have a magnificent one when waving with grain. At nine they halted at a village of Pagan Nuba. These are all soldiers of the Mek of Sennaar, cantoned in these villages, which, at the distance of four or five miles, surround the whole capital. They are either purchased or taken by force from Fazuelo, and the provinces to the south upon the mountains Dyre and Tegla. Having settlements and provisions given them, as also arms put into their hands, they never wish to desert, but live a very domestic and sober life. They pay adoration to the moon; and that their worship is performed with pleasure and satisfaction, is obvious every night that the thines. Coming out from the darkness of their huts, they say a few words upon seeing her brightness, and testify great joy, by motions of their feet and hands, at the first appearance of the new moon. Mr. Bruce never saw them pay any attention to the sun, either rising or setting, advancing to or receding from the meridian; but, as far as he could learn, they worship a tree, and likewise a stone, though he never could find out what tree or stone it was, only that it did not exist in the country of Sennaar, but in that wherein they were born. Their priests seemed to have great influence over them, but through fear only, and not from affection. They are distinguished by thick copper bracelets about their wrists, as also sometimes one, and sometimes two about their ancles.

About four o'clock in the afternoon of the 25th, they set out from the villages of the Nuba, intending to arrive at Balboch, where is the ferry over the Nile; but they had scarcely advanced two miles into the plain, when they were enveloped by a violent whirl- wind, or what is called, at sea, the water-spout. The plain was red earth, which had been plentifully moist- ened by a shower in the night-time. The unfortu- nate camel that had been taken by the Cohala seemed to be nearly in the centre of its vortex. It was lifted up and thrown down at a considerable distance, and several of its ribs broken. Although, as far as Mr. Bruce could guess, he was not near the centre, it whirled him off his feet, and threw him down upon his face, so as to make his nose gush out with blood. Two of the servants likewise had the same fate. It plattered them all over with mud, almost as smoothly as could have been done with a trowel. It took away Mr. Bruce's sense and breathing for an instant, and his mouth and nose were full of mud when he recovered. He guesses the sphere of its action to be about 200 feet. It demolished one half of a small hut, as if it had been cut through with a knife, and dispersed the materials all over the plain, leaving the other half standing.

When they recovered themselves, they took refuge in a village, from fear only, for they saw no vestige of any other whirlwind. It involved a great quantity of rain, which the Nuba of the villages told them was very fortunate, as it portended good luck to them, and a prosperous journey; for they said, that

had dust and sand arisen with the whirlwind, in the same proportion it would have done, had not the earth been moistened, they would all infallibly have been suffocated; and they cautioned them, by laying, that tempests were very frequent at the beginning and end of the rainy season, and whenever they should see one of them coming, to fall down upon their faces, keeping their lips close to the ground, and so let it pass; and thus it would neither have power to carry them off their feet, nor suffocate them, which was the ordinary case. Their kind landlords, the Nuba, gave them a hearty welcome, and helped them to wash their clothes first, and then to dry them. They gave them a piece of roasted hog, which they ate (except Imael and the Mahometans) very much to the satisfaction of the Nuba. On the other hand, as their camel was lame, they ordered one of their Ma- hometan servants to kill it, and take as much of it as would serve themselves that night; they also pro- vided against wanting themselves the next day. The rest they gave among their new-acquired acquaint- ance, the Nuba of the village, who did not fail to make a feast upon it for several days after; and, in recompence for their liberality, they provided them with a large jar of souza, not very good, indeed, but better than the well water. This Mr. Bruce repaid by tobacco, beads, pepper, and sibiium, which he saw plainly was infinitely more than they expected. Mr. Bruce had seldom, in his life, upon a journey, passed a more comfortable night. He had a very neat, clean hut, entirely to himself, and a Greek ser- vant that sat near him. Some of the Nuba watched for them all night, and took care of their beads and baggage. They sung and replied to one another al- ternately, in notes full of pleasant melody, till Mr. Bruce fell fast asleep, involuntarily, and with regret; for, though bruised, they were not fatigued, but rather discouraged, having gone no further than two miles that day.

Early on the 26th, they set out from this village of Nuba, their way being still across this immense plain. All the morning there were terrible storms of thunder and lightning, some rain, and one shower of so large drops, that it wet them to the skin in an instant. It was quite calm, and every drop fell perpendicularly upon them. Mr. Bruce thinks he never in his life felt so cold a rain, yet it was not disagreeable; for the day was close and hot, and they should have wished every now and then to have had a moderate refrigeration: this, however, was rather too abun- dant. The villages of the Nuba were, on all sides, throughout this plain. At nine o'clock they arrived at Balboch, which is a large collection of huts of these people, and has the appearance of a town.

The governor, a venerable old man of about seventy, who was so feeble that he could scarcely walk, received them with great complacency, only saying, when he took Mr. Bruce by the hand, "O Christian! what dost thou, at such a time, in such a country?" Mr. Bruce was surprised at the politeness of his speech, when he called him Nazarini, the civil term for Christian in the east; whereas Infidel is the general term among these brutish people; but it seems he had been several times at Catro. Mr. Bruce had here a very clean and comfortable hut to lodge in, though they were sparingly supplied with provisions all the time they were there, but never were suffered to fast a whole day together.

Balboch is on the eastern bank of the Nile, not a quarter of a mile from the ford below. The river here runs north and south; towards the sides it is shallow, but deep in the middle of the current, and in this part it is much infested with crocodiles. Sennaar is two miles and a half S. S. W. of it. They heard the evening drum very distinctly, and not without anxiety, when they reflected to what a brutish people, according to all accounts, they were about to trust themselves.

Permission was granted on the 29th to enter Sen- naar. They were conducted by Adelan's servant to a

very spacious good house belonging to the Shekh himself, having two stories, a long quarter of a mile from the king's palace. He left a message for them to repose themselves, and in a day or two to wait upon the king, and that he should send to tell them when they were to come to him. This they resolved to have complied with most exactly; but the very next morning, the 30th of April, there came a servant from the palace to summon them to wait upon the king, which they immediately obeyed. Mr. Bruce took with him three servants, black Soliman, Ismael the Turk, and his Greek servant Michael. The palace covers a prodigious deal of ground. It is all one story, built of clay, and the floors of earth. The chambers through which they passed were all unfurnished, and seemed as if a great many of them had formerly been destined as barracks for soldiers, of whom Mr. Bruce did not see above fifty on guard. The king was in a small room not twenty feet square, to which they ascended by two small flights of narrow steps. The floor of the room was covered with broad square tiles; over it was laid a Persian carpet, and the walls hung with tapestry of the same country; the whole very well kept, and in good order.

His Majesty was sitting upon a mattress, laid on the ground, which was likewise covered with a Persian carpet, and round him was a number of cushions of Venetian cloth of gold. His dress did not correspond with this magnificence, for it was nothing but a large, loose shirt, of Surat blue cotton cloth, which seemed not to differ from the same worn by his servants, except that, all round the edges of it, the seams were double-stitched with white silk, and likewise round the neck. His head was uncovered; he wore his own short black hair, and was as white in colour as an Arab. He seemed to be a man about thirty-four, his feet were bare, but covered by his shirt. He had a very plebeian countenance, on which was stamped no decided character; Mr. Bruce should rather guess him to be a soft, timid, irresolute man. At our traveller's coming forward and kissing his hand, he looked at them for a minute as if undetermined what to say. He then asked for an Abyssinian interpreter, as there are many of these about the palace. He said to him in Arabic, "I apprehend I understand as much of that language as will enable me to answer any question you have to put to me." Upon which he turned to the people that were with him, "Downright Arabic, indeed! You did not learn that language in Habesh?" said he to Mr. Bruce, who answered, "No; I have been in Egypt, Turkey, and Arabia, where I learned it; but I have likewise often spoken it in Abyssinia, where Greek, Turkish, and several other languages are used. He said, "Impossible! he did not think they knew any thing of languages, excepting their own, in Abyssinia."

Opposite the king, were sitting in the side of the room four men dressed in white cotton shirts, with a white shawl covering their heads, and part of their face, by which it was known they were religious men, or men of learning, or of the law. One of these answered the king's doubt of the Abyssinians knowledge in languages. "They have languages enough, and you know that Habesh is called the paradise of Asses." During this conversation, Mr. Bruce took the sheriffe of Mecca's letter, also one from the king of Abyssinia; he gave him the king's first, and then the sheriffe's. He took them both as Mr. Bruce gave them, but laid aside the king's upon a cushion, till he had read the sheriffe's. After this he read the king's, and called immediately again for an Abyssinian interpreter; upon which, Mr. Bruce said nothing, supposing, perhaps, he might chuse to make him deliver some message to him in private, which he would not have his people hear. But it was pure confusion, and absence of mind, for he never spoke a word to him when he came. An uninteresting conversation took place between the king and our traveller, till a little after six o'clock in the evening, when the drum beat. They then had a very comfortable dinner sent them,

camels flesh stewed with an herb of a viscous slimy substance, called Bammia. After having dined, and finished the journal of the day, Mr. Bruce fell to unpacking his instruments, the barometer and thermometer first, and, after having hung them up, was conversing with Adelan's servant when he should pay his visit to his master. About eight o'clock came a servant from the palace, telling Mr. Bruce, now was the time to bring the present to the king. He sorted the separate articles with all the speed he could, and they went directly to the palace. The king was then sitting in a large apartment, as far as he could guess, at some distance from the former. He was naked, but had several clothes lying upon his knee, and about him, and a servant was rubbing him over with very stinking butter, or grease, with which his hair was dropping as if wet with water. Large as the room was, it could be smelled through the whole of it. The king asked Mr. Bruce if ever he greased himself as he did? Mr. Bruce said, Very seldom, but fancied it would be very expensive. He then told him, that it was elephants grease, which made people strong, and preserved the skin very smooth. Our traveller said, he thought it very proper, but could not bear the smell of it, though his skin should turn as rough as an elephant's for the want of it. He said, if Mr. Bruce had used it, his hair would not have turned so red as it was, and that it would all become white presently, when that redness came off.

After having rubbed him abundantly with grease, they brought a pretty large horn, and in it something scented, about as liquid as honey. It was plain that civit was a great part of the composition. The king went out at the door, Mr. Bruce supposes into another room, and there two men deluged him over with pitchers of cold water, whilst, as he imagined, he was stark-naked. He then returned, and a slave anointed him with this sweet ointment; after which he sat down, as completely dressed, being just going to his woman's apartment where he was to sup. Mr. Bruce told him, he wondered why he did not use rose-water as in Abyssinia, Arabia, and Cairo. He said, he had it often from Cairo, when the merchants arrived; but as it was now long since any came, his people could not make more, for the rose would not grow in his country, though the women made something like it of lemon-flower. His toilet being finished, our traveller then produced his present, which he told him the king of Abyssinia had sent to him, hoping that, according to the faith and custom of nations, he would not only protect him while here, but send him safely and speedily out of his dominions into Egypt. He answered, there was a time when he could have done all this, and more, but those times were changed. Sennaar was in ruin, and was not like what it was. He then ordered some perfumed sorbet to be brought for Mr. Bruce to drink in his presence, which is a pledge that your person is in safety. The king thereupon withdrew, and went to his ladies.

On the eighth of May Mr. Bruce had an audience with Shekh Adelan at Aira, which is three miles and a half from Sennaar; they walked out early in the morning, for the greatest part of the way along the side of the Nile, which had no beauty, being totally divested of trees, the bottom foul and muddy, and the edges of the water white with small concretions of calcareous earth, which, with the bright sun upon them, dazzled and affected their eyes very much. They then struck across a large sandy plain, without trees or bushes, and came to Adelan's habitation. Within the gate was a number of horses, with the soldiers barracks behind them; they were all picketed in ranks, their faces to their master's barracks. It was one of the finest sights Mr. Bruce ever saw of the kind. They were all above sixteen hands high, of the breed of the old Saracen horses, all finely made, and as strong as our coach-horses, but exceedingly nimble in their motion; rather thick and short in the forehead, but with the most beautiful eyes,

erb of a viscous slimy
after having dined, and
ay, Mr. Bruce fell to
barometer and there-
hung them up, was
nt when he should pay
t eight o'clock came a
g Mr. Bruce, now was
nt to the king. He
with all the speed
rectly to the palace,
in a large apartment,
some distance from
but had several clothes
him, and a servant was
oking butter, or grease,
pping as if wet with
s, it could be smelled.
King asked Mr. Bruce
did? Mr. Bruce said,
ould be very expensive.
elephants grease, which
served the skin very
he thought it very pro-
nell of it, though his
elephant's for the want
had used it, his hair
as it was, and that it
tly, when that redness

undantly with grease,
n, and in it something
y. It was plain that
mposition. The king
ce supposes into ano-
deluged him over with
s he imagined, he was
, and a slave anointed
ter which he sat down,
t going to his woman's
Mr. Bruce told him,
use rose-water as at
He said, he had it
erchans arrived; but
me, his people could
ould not grow in his
ide something like it
ing finished, our tra-
s, which he told him
o him, hoping that,
of nations, he would
but send him safely
ns into Egypt. He
he could have done
imes were changed,
ot like what it was,
orbet to be brought
reference, which is a
r. The king there-
udies.

ce had an audience
n is three miles and
d out early in the
the way along the
auty, being totally
l and muddy, and
n small concretions
he bright sun upon
eyes very much.
udy plain, without
delan's habitation.
f horses, with the
were all piqueted
ter's barracks. It
rce ever saw of
hands high.
horses, all fresh
horses, but excep-
er thick and short
t beautiful eyes,

ears, and heads in the world; they were mostly
black, some of them black and white, some of them
milk-white foaled, so not white by age, with white
eyes and white hoofs, not perhaps a great recom-
mendation. A steel shirt of mail hung upon each
man's quarters opposite to his horse, and by it an
antelope's skin, made soft like shamoy, with which
it was covered from the dew of the night. A head-
piece of copper, without crest or plumage, was sus-
pended by a lace above the shirt of mail, and was the
most picturesque part of the trophy. To these was
added, an enormous broadsword, in a red leather
scabbard; and upon the pommel hung two thick
gloves, not divided into fingers as ours, but like
belgers gloves, their fingers in one poke. They
told Mr. Bruce, that, within that enclosure at Aira,
there were 400 horses, which, with the riders, and
armour complete for each of them, were all the prop-
erty of Shekh Adelan, every horseman being his
slave, and bought with his money.

Adelan was then sitting upon a piece of the trunk
of a palm-tree, in the front of one of these divisions
of his horses, which he seemed to be contemplating
with pleasure; a number of black people, his own
servants and friends, were standing round him. He
had on a long drab-coloured camel gown, lined with
yellow satin, and a camel cap like a head piece, with
two short points that covered his ears. This, it seems,
was his dress when he rose early in the morning to
visit his horses, which he never neglected. The
Shekh was a man above six feet high, rather corp-
ulent, had a heavy walk, seemingly more from affec-
tion of grandeur than want of agility. He was
about sixty, of the colour and features of an Arab,
and not of a Negro, but had rather more beard than
falls to the lot of people in this country; large pier-
cing eyes, and a determined, though, at the same
time, a very pleasing countenance.

They went into a large saloon, hung round with
mirrors and scarlet damask; in one of the longest
sides were two large sofas covered with crimson and
yellow damask, and large cushions of cloth of gold,
like to the king's. He now pulled off his camel
gown and cap, and remained in a crimson satin coat
reaching down below his knees, which lapped over
at the breast, and was girt round his waist with a scarf,
or sash, in which he had stuck a short dagger, in an
ivory sheath, mounted with gold; and one of the
largest and most beautiful amethysts upon his finger
that Mr. Bruce ever saw, mounted plain, without
any diamonds, and a small gold ear-ring in one of his
ears.

After some introductory discourse, Mr. Bruce gave
him the sherrille's letter, which he opened, looked
at, and laid by without reading, saying only, "Aye,
Metical is a good man, he sometimes takes care of
our people going to Mecca; for my part, I never
was there, and probably never shall." Mr. Bruce
then presented his letter from Ali Bey to him. He
placed it upon his knee, gave a flap upon it with
his open hand, and then exclaimed, "What! do you
not know, have you not heard, Mahomet Abou
Dahab, his Hafnadar, has rebelled against him, ban-
nished him out of Cairo, and now sits in his place?
But don't be disconcerted at that, I know you to be
a man of honour and prudence; if Mahomet, my
brother, does not come, as soon as I can get leisure,
I will dispatch you." The servant that had conducted
Mr. Bruce to Sennaar, and was then with him, went
forward close to him, and said, in a kind of whisper,
"Should he go often to the king?"—"When he
pleases; he may go to see the town, and take a walk,
but never alone, and also to the palace, that, when
he returns to his own country, he may report that he
saw a king at Sennaar, that neither knows how to
govern, nor will suffer others to teach him; who
knows not how to make war, and yet will not sit in
peace." Mr. Bruce then took his leave of him; and
there was a plentiful breakfast in the other room, to
which he sent them.

Our traveller returned home to Sennaar, very well
pleased with his reception at Aira. He had not seen,
since he left Gondar, a man so open and frank in his
manners, and who speaks without disguise what ap-
parently he had in his heart.

Mr. Bruce having come home from Aira, the next
morning he was agreeably surprised by a visit from
Hagi Belal, to whom he had been recommended by
Metical Aga, and to whom Ibrahim Scraif, the Eng-
lish broker at Jidda, had addressed him for any
money he should want at Sennaar. Belal welc-
ed him with great kindness, and repeated testimonies of
joy and wonder at his safe arrival. He had been
down at Aibara at Gerri, or some villages near it,
with merchandize, and had not yet seen the king
since he came home, but gave Mr. Bruce the very
worst description possible of the country, inasmuch
that there seemed to be not a spot, but the one he
then stood on, in which he was not in imminent dan-
ger of destruction, from a variety of independent
causes, which it seemed not possibly in his power to
avoid. In the evening, he sent Mr. Bruce some
refreshments, which he had long been unaccustomed
to: some tea, excellent coffee, some honey and
brown sugar, several bottles of rack, likewise nut-
megs, cinnamon, ginger, and some very good dates
of the dry kind which he had brought from Aibara.

This Hagi Belal was a native of Morocco. He
had been at Cairo, and also at Jidda and Mocha.
He knew the English well, and professed himself both
obliged and attached to them. It was some days
before Mr. Bruce ventured to speak to him upon
money business, or upon any probability of finding
assistance here at Sennaar. He gave him little hopes
of the latter, repeating to him what he very well
knew about the disagreement of the king and Adelan.
He seemed to place all his expectations, and those
were but faint ones, in the coming of Shekh Abou
Kalec from Kordofan. He said, nothing could be
expected from Shekh Adelan without going to Aira,
for that he would never trust himself in Sennaar, in
this king's life-time, but that the minister was absolute
the moment he assembled his troops without the town.

He came to Mr. Bruce one morning, after having
been with the king, when our traveller was himself
preparing to go to the palace. He said, he had been
sent for upon his account, and had been questioned
very narrowly what sort of a man he was. Having
answered very favourably, both of him and his na-
tion, he had asked for Metical Aga's letters, or any
other letters received concerning him from Jidda;
he said, that he had only shewn Metical's letter,
wrote in the name of the sherrille, as also one from
himself; that there were several great officers of go-
vernment present; and the Cadi (whom Mr. Bruce
had seen the first time he had been with the king) had
read the letters aloud to them all: that one of them
had asked, how it came that such a man as our tra-
veller ventured to pass these deserts, with four or
five old servants, and what it was he came to see;
that he answered, he apprehended his chief object
at Sennaar was to be forwarded to his own country.
It was also asked, Why Mr. Bruce had not some
Englishmen with him, as none of his servants were
of that nation, but poor beggarly Kopts, Arabs, and
Turks, who were none of them of his religion. Belal
answered, That travellers, through these countries
mult take up with such people as they can find going
the same way; however, he believed some English
servants had died in Abyssinia, which country he had
left the first opportunity that had offered, being
wearyed by the perpetual war which prevailed.

Some short time after this, Mr. Bruce had a mes-
sage from the palace. He found the king sitting
alone, apparently much chagrined, and in ill-humour.
He asked him, in a very peevish manner, if he was
not yet gone? to which he answered, "Your Maje-
sty knows that it is impossible for me to go a step from
Sennaar without assistance from you." He again
asked him, in the same tone as before, "How he
could

could think of coming that way?" He said, nobody imagined in Abyssinia but that he was able to give a stranger safe conduct through his own dominions. He made no reply, but nodded a sign for him to depart, which he immediately did, and so finished this short, but disagreeable interview.

Mr. Bruce was again sent for to the palace, about four o'clock that same afternoon, when the king told him, that several of his wives were ill, and desired that he would give them his advice, which he promised to do without difficulty, as all acquaintance with the fair sex had hitherto been much to his advantage. He was admitted into a large square apartment very ill-lighted, in which were about fifty women, all perfectly black, without any covering but a very narrow piece of cotton rag about their waists. While he was musing whether or not these all might be queens, or whether there was any queen among them, one of them took him by the hand and led him rudely enough into another apartment. This was much better lighted than the first. Upon a large bench, or sofa, covered with blue Surat cloth, sat three persons clothed from the neck to the feet with blue cotton shirts.

One of these, whom Mr. Bruce found to be the favourite, was about six feet high, and corpulent beyond all proportion. She seemed to him, next to the elephant and rhinoceros, to be the largest living creature he had met with. Her features were perfectly like those of a Negro; a ring of gold passed through her under lip, and weighed it down, till, like a flap, it covered her chin, and left her teeth bare, which were very small and fine. The inside of her lip she had made black with antimony. Her ears reached down to her shoulders, and had the appearance of wings; she had in each of them a large ring of gold, somewhat smaller than a man's little finger, and about five inches diameter. The weight of these had drawn down the hole where her ear was pierced, so much that three fingers might easily pass above the ring. She had a gold necklace, like what we used to call Esclavage, of several rows, one below another, to which were hung rows of sequins pierced. She had on her ancles two manacles of gold, larger than any he had ever seen upon the feet of felons, with which he could not conceive it was possible for her to walk; but afterwards he found they were hollow. The others were dressed pretty much in the same manner; only there was one that had chains which came from her ears to the outside of each nostril, where they were fastened. There was also a ring put through the grille of her nose, and which hung down to the opening of her mouth. It had altogether, something of the appearance of a horse's bridle. Upon his coming near them, the eldest put her hand to her mouth and kissed it, saying, at the same time, in very vulgar Arabic, "How do you do, merchant?" Mr. Bruce never in his life was more pleased with distant salutations than at this time. He answered, "Peace be among you! I am a physician, and not a merchant." Mr. Bruce now administered all the relief in his power, which their several complaints required.

No horse, mule, ass, or any other beast of burden, breed, or even live at Sennaar, or many miles about it. Poultry does not live there. Neither dog nor cat, sheep nor bullock, can be preserved a season there. They must go all, every half year, to the sands. Though all possible care be taken of them, they die in every place where the fat earth is about the town during the first season of the rains. Two greyhounds, which Mr. Bruce brought from Atbara, and the mules which he brought from Abyssinia, lived only a few weeks after he arrived. They seemed to have some inward complaint, for nothing appeared outwardly. Several kings have tried to keep lions, but no care could prolong their lives beyond the first rains. Shekh Adelan had two, which were in great health, being kept with his horses at grafs in the sands but three miles from Sennaar: neither rose, nor any species of

jeffamine, grow here; no tree but the lemon flowers near the city, that ever Mr. Bruce saw; the rose had been often tried, but in vain.

Sennaar is on the west side of the Nile, and close upon the banks to it. The ground whereon it stands rises just enough to prevent the river from entering the town, even in the height of the inundation, when it comes to be even with the street. The country around it is exceedingly pleasant in the end of August and beginning of September, Mr. Bruce means so far as the eye is concerned; instead of that barren, bare waste, which it appeared on their arrival in May, the corn now sprung up, and covering the ground, made the whole of this immense plain appear a level, green land, interspersed with great lakes of water, and ornamented at certain intervals with groups of villages, the conical tops of the houses presenting at a distance, the appearance of small encampments. Through this immense, extensive plain, winds the Nile, a delightful river there, above a mile broad, full to the very brim, but never overflowing. Every where on these banks are seen numerous herds of the most beautiful cattle of various kinds, the tribute recently extorted from all the Arabs, who, freed from their vexations, return home with the remainder of their flocks in peace, at as great a distance from the town, country, and their oppressors, as they possibly can.

War and treason seem to be the only employment of this horrid people, whom Heaven has separated, by almost insupportable deserts, from the rest of mankind, confining them to an accursed spot, seemingly to give them earnest in time of the only other war which he has reserved to them for an eternal hereafter. The dress of Sennaar is very singular. It consists of a long shirt of blue Surat cloth called *Mawawty*, which covers them from the lower part of the neck down to their feet, but does not conceal the neck itself; and this is the only difference between the mens and the womens dress; that of the women covers their neck altogether, being buttoned like ours. The men have sometimes a sash tied about their middle; and both men and women go bare-footed in the house, even those of the better sort of people. Their floors are covered with Persian carpets, especially the women's apartments. In fair weather, they wear sandals; and without doors they use a kind of wooden patten, very neatly ornamented with shells. In the greatest heat at noon, they order buckets of water to be thrown upon them instead of bathing. Both men and women anoint themselves, at least once a day, with camels grease mixed with civet, which they imagine softens their skin, and preserves them from cutaneous eruptions, of which they are so fearful, that the smallest pimple in any visible part of their body keeps them in the house till it disappears: for the same reason, though they have a clean shirt every day, they use one dipped in grease to lie in all night, as they have no covering but this, and lie upon a bull's hide tanned, and very much softened by this constant greasing, and at the same time very cool, though it occasions a smell that no washing can free them from.

The indigent live upon millet, made into bread or flour. The rich make a pudding of this, toasting the flour before the fire, and pouring milk and butter into it; besides which, they eat beef, partly roasted and partly raw. Their horned cattle are the largest and fattest in the world, and are exceedingly fine; but the common meat sold in the market is camels flesh. The liver of the animal, and the spare rib, are always eaten raw through the whole country. Mr. Bruce never saw one instance where it was dressed with fire. It is not then true that eating raw flesh is peculiar to Abyssinia; it is practised in this instance of camels flesh in all the black countries to the westward. Hogs flesh is not sold in the market; but all the people of Sennaar eat it publicly: men in office, who pretend to be Mahometans, eat theirs in secret.

tree but the lemon flowers
r. Bruce saw; the rose has
in.

side of the Nile, and close
ground whereon it stands,
the river from entering the
of the inundation, when it
the street. The country
east in the end of August
ber, Mr. Bruce means to
; instead of that barren
reared on their arrival in
ing up, and covering the
this immense plain appear
covered with great lakes of
at certain intervals with
ical tops of the houses pre-
appearance of small encamp-
ments, extensive plains,
river there, above a mile
in, but never overflowing,
as are seen numerous herds
of various kinds, the tri-
e all the Arabs, who, freed
n home with the remainder
as great a distance from
ir oppressors, as they pos-

be the only employment
in Heaven has separated,
is, from the rest of man-
accursed spot, seemingly
e of the only other wor-
them for an eternal here-
is very good. It con-
Satac cloth called Masow,
in the lower part of the
it does not conceal the
e only difference between
dresses; that of the women
er, being buttoned like
etimes a fast tied about
en and women go bare-
those of the better sort of
covered with Persian car-
n's apartments. In far-
and without doors they
n, very neatly ornamented
heat at noon, they order
rown upon them instead
women anoint themselves,
melts grease mixed with
softens their skin, and pre-
ruptions, of which they
elt purple in any visible
in the house till it dis-
on, though they have a
afe one dipt in grease to
e no covering but this,
anned, and very much
easing, and at the same
casions a smell that no

llet, made into bread or
adding of this, soiling
pouring milk and but-
ey eat beef, partly roast-
horned cattle are the
l, and are exceedingly
fold in the market is
e animal, and the spare
ough the whole country.
ance where it was dress-
true that eating raw
; it is practised in this
the black countries to
not fold in the market;
at it publicly; men in
hometans, eat theirs in

August

August the 7th Mr. Bruce was informed by Hagi Belal, that Shakh Fidele of Teawa had been several days in the palace with the king, and had informed him that Mr. Bruce was laden with money, besides a quantity of cloth of gold, the richest he had ever seen, which the king of Abyssinia had destined as a present to him, but which our traveller had perverted to his own use: he added, that the king had expressed himself in a very threatening manner, and that he was very much afraid he was not in safety if Shekh Adelan was gone from Aira. Upon this, Mr. Bruce desired Hagi Belal to go to the palace, and obtain for him an audience of the king. In vain he represented to our traveller the risk he run by this measure; he persisted in his resolution, he was tied to the stake: to fly was impossible, and he had often overcome such dangers by braving them.

With great unwillingness Belal went to the palace. Whether he delivered the message, our traveller knows not, but he returned, saying, the king was busy and could not be seen. Mr. Bruce had, in the interim, sent Soliman to the Gindi, or Sed el Coom, telling him his difficulties, and the news he had heard. In place of returning an answer, he came directly to him himself, and was sitting with him when Hagi Belal returned, who appeared somewhat disconcerted at the meeting. Gundi chid Hagi Belal very sharply, asking him what good all that tittle-tattle did either him or Mr. Bruce, and insinuated pretty plainly, that he believed Hagi Belal did this in concert with the king, to extort some present from our traveller. After some further conversation, Gundi took his leave, and Mr. Bruce attended him down stairs, with many professions of gratitude; and at the door he said, in a very low voice, to our traveller, "Take care of you Belal, he is a dog worse than a Christian."

It was now the 20th; and, for several days since Adelan's departure, no provisions were sent to Mr. Bruce's house, as before was usual. Money therefore became absolutely necessary, not only for their daily subsistence, but for camels to carry their baggage, provisions, and water across the desert. He now despaired absolutely of assistance of any kind from the king; and an accident that happened made him lay all thoughts aside of ever troubling him more upon the subject. There are at Mecca a number of black eunuchs, whose services are dedicated to that temple, and the sepulchre of Medina. Part of these, from time to time, procure liberty to return on a visit to their respective homes, or to the large cities where they were sold from, on the Niger, Bornou, Toccar, and Tombueto, where they beg donations for the holy places, and frequently collect large sums of gold, which abounds in these towns and territories. One of these, called Mahomet Towashi, which signifies Eunuch, had returned from a begging voyage in Sudan, or Nigritia, and was at Sennaar exceedingly ill with an intermitting fever. The king had sent for Mr. Bruce to visit him, and the bark in a few days had perfectly recovered him. A proportional degree of gratitude had, in return, taken place in the breast of Mahomet, who, going to Cairo, was exceedingly desirous of taking Mr. Bruce with him, and this desire was increased when he heard he had letters from the Sheriffe of Mecca, and was acquainted with Metical Aga, who was his immediate master.

Nothing could be more fortunate than this rencontre at such a time, for he had spare camels in great plenty, and the Arabs, as he passed them, continued giving him more, and supported him with provisions wherever he went; for these people, being accounted sacred, and regarded with a certain religious awe, as being in the immediate service of their prophet, till now used to pass inviolate wherever they were going, however unsettled the times, or however tenderly attended.

Now every thing was ready, and the 25th of August fixed when they should begin their journey to Atbara.

Mahomet, who passed a great part of his time at Mr. Bruce's house, had not been seen by them for several days, which they did not think extraordinary, being busy themselves, and knowing that his trade demanded continual attendance on the great people; but they were exceedingly surprised at hearing from his black Soliman, that he and all his equipage had set out the night of the 20th for Atbara. This they found afterwards was at the earnest persuasion of the king, and was at that time a heavy disappointment to Mr. Bruce, however fortunate it turned out afterwards.

On the night of the 25th, which was to have been that of their departure, Mr. Bruce sat late in his room up stairs, in the back, or most private part of their house. His little company was holding with him a most melancholy council on what had so recently happened, and, in general, upon the unpromising face of their affairs. Their single lamp was burning very low, and suggested to them that it was the hour of sleep, to which, however, none of them were very much inclined. Georgis, a Greek, who, on account of the soreness of his eyes, had laid below in the dark, and had fallen asleep, came running up stairs in a great fright, and told them he had been awakened by the noise of men endeavouring to force open the door; that he hearkened a little, and found there were many of them. Their arms were all ready, and they snatched them up and ran towards the door; but Mr. Bruce stooped, and planted them upon the first landing-place in the stair-case, as he wished not to fire till the enemy was fairly in the house, that no excuse might remain for this violation of hospitality. By this time, the assailants had forced the outer-gate, and were then in the lodge, endeavouring to do the same by the inner, having put a handspike under it to lift it up from the hinges. "Are you not madmen, said Mr. Bruce, and weary of your lives, to attempt to force Adelan's house, when there are within it men abundantly provided with large fire-arms, that, upon one discharge through the door, will lay you all dead where you now stand?" "Ullah! Ullah! cries one of them softly, how found you sleep! we have been endeavouring to waken you this hour. The king is ill; tell Yagoube to come to the palace, and open the door instantly." "Tell the king, said Mr. Bruce, to drink warm water, and I will see him in the morning." At this time one of Mr. Bruce's servants fired a pistol in the air out of an upper window, upon which they all ran off. They seemed to be about ten or twelve in number, and left three handspikes behind them. The noise of the pistol brought the guard, or patrole, in about half an hour, who carried intelligence to the Sid el Coom, our traveller's friend, by whom he was informed in the morning, that he had found them all out, and put them in irons; that Mahomet, the king's servant, who met them at Teawa, was one of them; and that there was no possibility now of concealing this from Adelan, who would order him to be impaled.

Allairs were now come to such a crisis that Mr. Bruce was determined to leave his instruments and papers with Kitou, Adelan's brother, or with the Sid el Coom, while he went to Shaddly to see Adelan. But first he thought it necessary to apply to Hagi Belal to try what funds they could raise to provide the necessaries for their journey. Mr. Bruce shewed him the letter of Ibrahim, the English broker of Jidda, of which before he had received a copy and repeated advices, and told him he should want 200 sequins at least, for his camels and provisions, as well as for some presents that he should have occasion for, to make his way to the great men in Atbara. Never was surprise better counterfeited than by this man. He held up his hands in the utmost astonishment, repeating, 200 sequins! over twenty times, and asked Mr. Bruce if he thought money grew upon trees at Sennaar, that it was with the utmost difficulty he could spare him 20 dollars, part of which he must borrow from a friend.

Now Mr. Bruce's destruction seemed inevitable, no

other resources being now left. They were already indebted to Hagi Belal twenty dollars for provision; they had seven mouths to feed daily; and as they had neither meat, money, nor credit, to continue at Sennaar was impossible. They had seen, a few nights before, that no house could protect them there; and to leave Sennaar was, in their situation, as impossible as to fly there. They had neither camels to carry their provisions and baggage, nor skins for their water, nor, indeed, any provisions to carry, nor money to supply them with any of these, nor knew any person that could give them assistance nearer than Cairo, from which they were then distant about 17th of the meridian, or above 1000 miles in a straight line; great part of which was through the most barren, inhospitable deserts in the world, destitute of all vegetation, and of every animal that had the breath of life. Hagi Belal was inflexible, he began now to be weary of our travellers, to see them but seldom, and there was great appearance of his soon withdrawing himself entirely. Mr. Bruce's servants also began to murmur; some of them had known of his gold chain from the beginning, and these, in the common danger, imparted what they knew to the rest. In short, he resolved, though very unwillingly, not to sacrifice his own life and that of his servants, and the finishing his travels, now so far advanced, to childish vanity. He determined therefore to abandon his gold chain, the honourable recompence of a day full of fatigue and danger. Whom to intrust it to was the next consideration; and upon mature deliberation, he found it could be to nobody but Hagi Belal, had as he had reason to think he was. However, to put a check upon him, he sent for the Sid el Coom, in whose presence he repeated his accusation against Belal; he read the Seraff's letter in his favour, and the several letters that Belal had written him whilst he was at Gondar, declaring his acceptance of the order to furnish him with money when he should arrive at Sennaar; and he upbraided him in the strongest terms with breach of faith and duplicity.

All that he could say, however, was very far short of the violent expollation from the Gindi that immediately followed. He gave Hagi Belal many broad hints, that he looked upon this injury as done to himself, and would repay him; that though he had done this to please the king, the time might not be far off when that favour would be of very little use to him; on the contrary, it might be a reason for stripping him of all he had in the world." The force of these arguments seemed to strike Hagi Belal's imagination very powerfully. He even offered to advance 20 sequins, and to see if he could raise any more among his friends. The Gindi (a rare instance in that country) offered to lend him fifty. But the dye was now cast, the chain had been produced and seen, and it was become exceedingly dangerous to carry such a quantity of gold in any shape along with him. He therefore consented to sell it to Hagi Belal in presence of the Gindi, and they immediately set about the purchase of necessaries, with this proviso, that if Adelan, upon Mr. Bruce's going to Shaddi, did furnish him with camels and necessaries, so much of the chain should be returned.

On the 5th of September they were all prepared to leave this capital of Nubia, an inhospitable country from the beginning, and which, every day they continued in it, had engaged them in greater difficulties and dangers. They flattered themselves, that, once disengaged from this bad step, the greatest part of their sufferings was over; for they apprehended nothing, but from men, and, with very great reason, thought they had seen the worst of them.

Mr. Bruce received a message from the king, in the evening, to come directly to the palace. He accordingly obeyed, taking two servants along with him, and found him sitting in a little, low chamber, very neatly fitted up with chintz, or printed calico curtains, of a very gay and glaring pattern. He was

smoking with a very long Persian pipe through water, was alone, and seemed rather grave than in his humour. He gave Mr. Bruce his hand to kiss as usual, and after pausing a moment without speaking, (during which our traveller standing before him, a slave brought him a little stool, and set it down just opposite to him; upon which he laid, in a low voice, so that Mr. Bruce could scarcely hear him, "Sit down," pointing to the stool. He sat down accordingly. Their conversation was now taking a very laconic and serious turn. "Adelan, said the king, has sent for you by my desire; Wed Abroff and all the Jehaina Arabs have rebelled, and will pay no tribute. They say you have a quantity of powerful firearms with you that will kill twenty or thirty men at a shot. He is therefore to employ you with your guns to punish those Arabs, and spoil them of their camels, part of which he will give to you." Mr. Bruce presently understood what he meant, and only answered, "I am a stranger here, and desire to hurt no man. My arms are for my own defence against robbers and violence." Adelan, continued the king, has been informed that Mahomet, my servant, who brought you from Feawa, has been guilty of a drunken frolic at the door of his house, and has sent soldiers to take him to-day, with two or three others of his companions.

I charge you when you see Adelan, to ask for Mahomet's life, or a considerable deal of blame will fall upon you. When you return back, I will send him to conduct you to the frontiers of Egypt. Upon this Mr. Bruce bowed, and took his leave. He went home perfectly determined what he was to do. He had now obtained from the king an involuntary safeguard till he should arrive at Adelan's, that is, he was sure that, in hopes Mr. Bruce might procure a reprieve for Mahomet, no trap would be laid for him on the road. He determined therefore to make the best use of his time; and every thing being ready, they loaded the camels, and sent them forward that night to a small village called Soliman, three or four miles from Sennaar; and having settled his accounts with Hagi Belal, he received back six links, the miserable remains of one hundred and eighty links, of which his noble chain once consisted. This transaction kept him the few last minutes to write a letter to the English at Judda, to recommend him for the service he had done Mr. Bruce at Sennaar; and then complied with, that he might inform the broker of him that he had received no money from his correspondent, and give him a caution never, in future circumstances, to trust Hagi Belal again.

Having left Sennaar, Mr. Bruce was overtaken on the road by a black slave, who at first gave him some apprehension, as he was alone with only one barbarian, a Nubian servant, by the side of his camel, and was going slowly. Upon inquiry, he found him to be sent from Hagi Belal, with a basket containing some green tea and sugar, and four bottles of tea, in return for his letter. He sent back the messenger, and gave the care of the basket to his own servant, and, about ten o'clock in the evening of the 5th of September, they all met together joyfully at Soliman.

They left the village of Soliman, September the 8th, and about three o'clock in the afternoon came to Wed el Lumbel, which is not a river, as the name would seem to signify, but three villages situated upon a pool of water, nearly in a line from north to south.

After meeting with various adventures in the course of their journey, but none of them of any material consequence, they arrived on the 4th of October, at Chendi, or Chundi, which is a large village, the capital of its district, the government of which belongs to Sitina, as she is called, which signifies the mistress, or the lady, she being sister to Wed Ageeb, the principal of the Arabs in this country. She had been married, but her husband was dead. She had one son, Idris Wed el Paal, who was to succeed to the government of Chendi upon

Perfian pipe through wa-
 rather grave than in ill-
 lence his hand to kiss an
 moment without speaking
 r standing before him, a
 cool, and let it down just
 he laid, in a low voice,
 scarcely hear him, "Sa-
 bl. He sat down accord-
 was now taking a very
 "Adelan, said the king,
 ire; Wed Abroff and all
 belled, and will pay no
 quantity of powerful fire-
 twenty or thirty men at a
 employ you with your guns
 spoil them of their camels,
 to you." Mr. Bruce pro-
 mised, and only answered
 desire to hurt no man,
 defence against robbery
 continued the king, Sa-
 omet, my servant, who
 has been guilty of a dmitt-
 onse, and has sent soldiers
 two or three others of
 see Adelan, to ask for
 verable deal of blame will
 retain back, I will send
 frontiers of Egypt. Upon
 took his leave. He went
 what he was to do. He
 king an involuntary ser-
 e at Adelan's, that he
 Bruce might procure a
 trap would be laid for
 ermined therefore to make
 every thing being ready,
 and sent them forward
 ed Soliman, three or four
 having settled his accom-
 ived back six links, the
 hundred and eighty-four,
 once confided. This tract
 es to write a letter to
 mend him for the ser-
 at Sennaar; and this
 ht inform the broker that
 no money from his con-
 caution never, in
 gi Belal again.
 r. Bruce was overtaken
 who at first gave him one
 one with only one Bab-
 the side of his camel, and
 inquiry, he found him to
 with a basket containing
 and four bottles of rose,
 he sent back the messenger,
 basket to his own servant,
 the evening of the 9th
 gether joyfully at Soliman.
 Soliman, September the
 ek in the afternoon cam-
 ch is not a river, as it
 ; but three villages situated
 ly in a line from north to
 various adventures in the
 ny none of them of any
 ey arrived on the 14th
 bundi, which is a large vil-
 lict, the government of
 as she is called, which
 e lady, the being sister to
 of the Arabs in this coun-
 ed, but her husband was
 Idris Wed el Faal, who
 erment of Chendi upon
 ha

his mother's death, and who, in effect, governed all
 affairs of his kindred already.
 Chendi has in it about 250 houses, which are not
 all built contiguous, some of the best of them being
 separate, and that of Sittina's is half a mile from the
 town. There are two or three tolerable houses, but
 the rest of them are miserable hovels, built of clay
 and reeds. Sittina gave Mr. Bruce one of these
 houses, which he used for keeping his instruments and
 baggage from being pilfered or broken; he slept
 abroad in the tent, and it was even there hot enough.
 The women of Chendi are esteemed the most beau-
 tiful in Atbara, and the men the greatest cowards.
 This is the character they bear among their country-
 men, but they had little opportunity of verifying
 either.
 They found the people at Chendi very much
 alarmed at a phenomenon, which, though it often
 happens, by some strange inadvertency, had never
 been observed, even in this serene sky. The planet
 Venus appeared shining with undiminished light all
 day, in defiance of the brightest sun, from which she
 was but little distant. The very regular and natural
 appearance of this planet was immediately converted,
 therefore, into a sign that there would be a bad harvest
 next year, and scanty rains; that Abou Kalee with
 an army would depose the king, and over-run all
 Atbara; whilst some threatened Mr. Bruce as a prin-
 cipal operator in bringing about these disasters. On
 the other hand, without seeming over-solicitous about
 his own location, he insinuated among the better sort,
 that this was a lucky and favourable sign, a harbinger
 of good fortune, plenty, and peace. The clamour
 upon this subsided very much to his advantage, the
 rather, because Sittina and her son Idris knew cer-
 tainly Mahomet Abou Kalee was not to be in Atbara
 that year.
 Mr. Bruce waited upon Sittina on the 12th of Oc-
 tober, who received him behind a screen, so that it
 was impossible either to see her figure or face; he ob-
 served, however, that there were apertures so man-
 aged in the screen that she had a perfect view of him.
 She expressed herself with great politeness, talked much
 upon the terms in which Adelan was with the king, and
 wondered exceedingly how a white man like him
 should venture so far in such an ill-governed country.
 She desired Mr. Bruce to come to her the next day; that
 her son Idris would then be at home from the Howat,
 and that he very much wished to see him. She that
 day sent them plenty of provisions from her own
 table.
 It was so excessively hot on the 13th, that it was
 impossible to suffer the burning sun. The poisonous
 Sun-gnaw blew likewise as if it came from an oven.
 Their eyes were dim, their lips cracked, their knees
 tottering, their throats perfectly dry, and no relief
 was found from drinking an immoderate quantity of
 water. The people advised Mr. Bruce to dip a sponge
 in vinegar and water, and hold it before his mouth
 and nose, and this greatly relieved him. In the
 evening he went to Sittina. Upon entering the house,
 a black slave laid hold of him by the hand, and placed
 him in a passage, at the end of which were two op-
 posite doors. Mr. Bruce did not well know the
 reason of this; but staid only a few minutes, when he
 heard one of the doors at the end of the passage open,
 and Sittina appeared magnificently dressed, with a
 kind of round cap of solid gold upon the crown of
 her head, all beat very thin, and hung round with
 sequins; with a variety of gold chains, bilitaires, and
 necklaces of the same metal, about her neck. Her
 hair was plaited in ten or twelve small divisions like
 tails, which hung down below her waist, and over
 her was thrown a common cotton white garment. She
 had a purple silk stole, or scarf, hung very gracefully
 upon her back, brought again round her waist, with-
 out covering her shoulders or arms. Upon her wrists
 she had two bracelets like handcuffs, about half an
 inch thick, and two gold manacles of the same at her
 feet, fully an inch in diameter, the most disagreeable

and awkward part of her dress. The slave carried
 him through a door at the bottom of the passage into
 a room, while her mistresses vanished in at another
 door at the top, and there was the screen he had seen
 the day before, and the lady sitting behind it. She
 was a woman scarcely forty, taller than the middle
 size, had a very round plump face, her mouth rather
 large, very red lips, the finest teeth and eyes he had
 seen, but at the top of her nose, and between her
 eye-brows, she had a small speck made of cobalt or
 antimony, four-corner'd, and of the size of the
 smallest patches our women used to wear; another
 rather longer upon the top of her nose, and one on
 the middle of her chin.
 In the evening of the 20th of October, they left
 Chendi, and reled two miles from the town; and, on
 the 9th of November, having received all the assu-
 rances possible from Idris, the guide whom Mr. Bruce
 had engaged at Chendi, they committed themselves
 to the desert.
 On the 14th, they were at once surpris'd and ter-
 rified by a light surely one of the most magnificent
 in the world. In that vast expanse of desert, from
 W. and to N. W. of them, they saw a number of
 prodigious pillars of sand at different distances, at
 times moving with great celerity, at others halting on
 with a majestic slowness; at intervals they thought
 they were coming in a very few minutes to overwhelm
 them; and small quantities of sand did actually more
 than once reach them. About noon they began to
 advance with considerable swiftness upon them, the
 wind being very strong at north. Eleven of them
 ranged along side of them, about the distance of three
 miles.
 On the 22d, their camels were reduced to five, and
 it did not seem that these were capable of continuing
 their journey much longer. In that case, no remedy
 remained but that each man should carry his own
 water and provisions. Their situation seem'd to be
 most desperate till the 29th, when, to their inexpress-
 ible joy, they saw the palm trees at Allouan, and a
 quarter before ten arrived in a grove of palm trees on
 the north of that city.
 They were not long arrived, before they received
 from the Aga about fifty loaves of fine wheat bread,
 and several large dishes of dressed meat. But the smell
 of these lall no sooner reached Mr. Bruce than he
 fainted upon the floor. His servants had none of
 these qualms, for they partook largely and greedily
 of the Aga's bounty.
 Our traveller was obliged to keep his room five or
 six days after his arrival; but, as soon as he got better,
 he and his servants let out on dromedaries, in order
 to recover his baggage. After having gone about
 half an hour in their former footsteps, they had the
 unspeakable satisfaction to find the quadrant and whole
 baggage; and by them the bodies of their slaughtered
 camels, a small part of one of them having been
 torn by the haddaya, or kite.
 After having received a very kind reception at this
 place, Mr. Bruce, on the 11th of December, set out
 for Cairo, where he arrived on the 10th of January
 1773. After some stay there, he proceeded to Alex-
 andria, where he arrived without any thing material
 occurring. At length, Mr. Bruce happily reached
 Marseilles, where his travels terminated.
 Thus, having presented the Public with the several
 curious ADVENTURES of Mr. BRUCE during his
 TRAVELS in AETHIOPIA, without entering into those
 superfluous details, which not only render the original vo-
 luminous, but soon disgust and weary the impatient reader,
 we shall now, with equal accuracy and attention, proceed
 with Mr. HODGES'S interesting TRAVELS in INDIA,
 faithfully recording every circumstance and observation
 that may tend to the improvement and entertainment of
 our NUMEROUS SUBSCRIBERS.



A NEW, COMPLETE, AND GENUINE
HISTORY OF
TRAVELS in INDIA;

Undertaken and performed in 1780, 1781, 1782, and 1783,

By **WILLIAM HODGES, R. A.**

INCLUDING MANY NEW AND INTERESTING ACCOUNTS OF

THE COUNTRY, BUILDINGS, WARS, CURIOSITIES, RUINS, &c. with all the INFORMATION, DISCOVERIES, and ADVENTURES contained in the Memoranda and Communications of the GORVERNOR-GENERAL, WARREN HASTINGS, Esq. MR. HODGES, Major BROWN, &c. &c.

Being an Entire New History of INDIA and its ENVIRONS, containing many curious Remarks, Events, &c. more Accurate and Full than any hitherto published.

CHAPTER I.

The hearty Welcome which Strangers receive on their first Introduction to India—Description of the Hindoos—Of the Malfoolah Boats—Terrible Consequences of War—Origin and Rise of Madras—Description of Fort St. George—Its Streets, Houses, &c.—Public Buildings for the Poor, erected by Princes, &c.—The Hindoo Temple at Triplicane—Voyage to Bengal—Description of the Country—City of Calcutta—A considerable Fortrefs—Streets, Buildings, &c.—Manners of the Inhabitants—A Journey to Mongheir—Mode of Travelling—Description of Plessey—Of Moorbedabad—Of Oodjannullab—Ruins of Zananab—Cascades, &c.—Country of Colgong—Village of Sullungunge—An Hermitage—Kind Reception at Bauglepoor—Mr. HODGES's Remarks, and Return by Water to Calcutta.

MR. Hodges expatiates much on the vast delight which accrues from a first introduction to India. When the vessel arrives at her anchoring place, she is welcomed by crowds of inhabitants, who come in boats to hail her; their ornaments of large gold earrings, and white turbans, long muslin dresses, and black faces, are very striking; their mode of salutation is bending the body very low, touching the deck with the back of the hand and the forehead three times. The Hindoos (original inhabitants of Peninsula) are the first natives to be seen. These are remarkable for delicate hands, and are very attentive, mild, and good humoured; their appearance is exceedingly varied, some are entirely naked, others so covered that scarce the face or neck is to be seen; the men are frequently met on horseback, dressed like women, and the women are often carried on men's shoulders.

The Malfoolah boat, in which they convey a stranger on shore, is a work of curious manufacture, formed without a keel, flat bottomed, with the sides raised high, and sewed together with the fibres of the cocoa-nut tree, and caulked with the same article; they are exceeding light, and admirably calculated to elude the shocks of the surf, which are here very violent. The natives manage them with great dexterity; they are commonly attended by two kattamaras (i. e. rafts) paddled each by one man, who in case of any accident are to give assistance.

From the 18th to the 21st of July 1780, great dismay and confusion were incurred by the terrible ravages of war. Numbers were pouring in from all quarters of Madras, in a most miserable manner, with the remains of their properties and families: it is supposed that about 200,000 of the country people were at this time received within the black town of Madras; the enemy had now extended their depredations even to the walls of Madras.

It was about the middle of the last century when the English formed the settlement of Madras. It was a place of no real consequence but for its trade, until the war which broke out in 1748; and was concluded in 1752, when the English were considered as sovereigns.

Fort St. George, or Madras, which is a place of considerable strength, rises from the margin of the sea; it contains many spacious and handsome streets; the houses very elegant, being covered with a flucco, called Chunam, which appears equal to the finest polished marble. Their style of building is also neat and ingenious; the roofs are flat, the porticoes open, and the colonades long; ceilings are very uncommon in the rooms, and the inner apartments are chiefly white walls.

The country near Madras is a perfect flat, on which is built, at a small distance from the fort, a small Choultry; these are public buildings found all over Hindostan, and are of Hindoo origin; they are, in fact, analogous to those buildings called Caravanserais, well known through Asia. They have been erected and endowed by the liberality of princes, or the benevolence and piety of individuals. A Bramin generally attends them, who administers relief to the poor and distressed, who are frequently supplied also with a mat to lie on; tanks, or reservoirs of water, or wells, are commonly near them. The houses on Choultry plain are for the most part beautiful pieces of architecture, and contain several magnificent and spacious apartments.

The Hindoo Temple, or Pagoda, at Triplicane, two miles on the south of Madras, is of wonderful magnitude, it is seen all over the country, the top thereof rising considerably above the trees. A large tank with steps descending to the bottom, filled with water, adjoins the temple. It is all of stone, and remarkable for its masonry. There are several half-

Engraved for PORTLOCK'S *New* COLLECTION of VOYAGES & TRAVELS.

DIA;

and 1783,

R. A.

S OF

of the INFORMATION,
Communications of
BROWN, &c. &c.

Remarks, Events, &c.

of the Hindoos—Of the
of Fort St. George—
—The Hindoo Temple at
derable Forts—Streets,
travelling—Description of
try of Colgong—Village of
s, and Return by Water

the last century when the
of Madras. It was a
e but for its trade, until
748; and was concluded
were considered as lo-

as, which is a place of
from the margin of the
is and handsome Streets;
ng covered with a stucco,
ars equal to the finest
of building is also neat
flat, the porticoes open,
ngs are very uncommon
apartments are chiefly

s a perfect flat, on which
from the fort, a small
uildings found all over
oo origin: they are, in
ngs called Caravanerais,
they have been credited
ity of princes, or the
individuals. A Bramin
administers relief to the
requently supplied also
or reservoirs of water,
them. The houses on
ost part beautiful pieces
several magnificent and

Pagoda, at Triplicane,
Madras, is of wonderful
er the country, the top
bove the trees. A large
the bottom, filled with
It is all of stone, and
There are several half-
reliefs



NUMBO JUMBO an INDIAN IDOL

*of a monstrous size and appearance, before whom the King
of the Country is summoned by the people to pay homage.*

reliev
Mr.
Hind
Mr
Bong
the G
very
the ex
to th
rom
four
very
ble K
The i
moleh
exce
along
Coffi
Engl
ing,
the h
lued
roun
and a
prele
man
have
thoug
Hud
pilar
we m
plac
Al
a ju
was
cece
leen
and l
trave
nine,
Eng
of th
flage
appe
and
very
PI
Engl
The
exce
mer
the
cece
O.
call
the
fam
Silt
Jeh
Kap
fac
Zan
by t
the
of l
pic
run
efco
jern
from
may
then
and
has
dilt
The
N
gull

relieves on the surface of the temple, which Mr. Hodges supposes relate to the religion of the Hindoos.

Mr. Hodges, determined to pursue his voyage to Bengal, embarked in February 1781, and arrived in the Ganges in March. This country at first view is very unpromising; but on a nearer approach attracts the eye, there being many beautiful villas, belonging to the rich inhabitants of Calcutta, on a flat surrounded by gardens, called Garden-Reach. On the north side of the river the city of Calcutta makes a very grand appearance; it is marked by a considerable fortress, allowed to be superior to any in India. The inhabitants are very kind to strangers, and no molestation whatever is offered to any. The city extends from the western point of Fort-William, along the banks of the river, almost to the village of Cossipoor, which is about four miles and a half English. The streets are broad; the style of building, which is on a large scale, very magnificent; and the houses, being detached from each other and insulated in a great space, very superb; they are surrounded by colonades, have great projecting porticoes, and are generally attended by a flight of steps. The present inhabitants have imbibed a strange mixture of manners; they retain several old Asiatic ones, and have introduced many new European ones; thus, though we witness the passing ceremonies of the Hindoos, the different appearances of the fakirs, the pallankeens and bakeries of the natives, &c. &c. we may often see our own single-horse chaises, coaches, pactions, &c.

About the middle of April, Mr. Hodges undertook a journey as far as Mongheir, on the Ganges, which was a distance of about 300 English miles. He proceeded by dawk-bearers (in a pallankeen) or pallankeen carriers, who are persons hired by government, and fixed at the several posts or stages for facilitating travelling; the number of persons are commonly nine, with the addition of two men or boys to carry baggage and lights in the night, both from the name of those lights (mossool) are called mossolees. Each stage is about ten English miles. All the country appears highly flourishing in tillage of every kind, and abounding with cattle. The villages, which are very populous, are remarkably neat and clean.

Plassey is distant from Calcutta about seventy English miles, and from Moorhedabad about thirty. There are few buildings of any note in Moorhedabad, except the remains of the Cutturah, which was formerly a public seminary for men of learning among the Mussulmen. From Moorhedabad the road proceeds through the villages of Jungepoor and Sooty to Odoonullah; it is crossed by several small streams called Nullahs, some of which have ferry-boats for the accommodation of the traveller. There is a famous bridge at Odoonullah, which was built by Sultan Sujah, the second son of the Emperor Shah Jehan, in 1627. This place is two miles from Rajemahel, which is nearly eighty miles from Moorhedabad, where at a little distance are the ruins of Zanaah. From Rajemahel the public road continues by the side of the river, at the foot of the hills, to the pass of Sieri Gully, whence it enters the province of Bahar. The pass of Sieri Gully exhibits a very picturesque scene; on the top of the hill there is a ruined tomb of a Mussulman saint. Mr. Hodges was escorted by a party of Feapoys to the falls of Mootepara, in the hills, about eight English miles inland from the river. In the time of the rains the cascades may be easily discerned from the hills, the river being then near thirty feet higher than in the dry season, and the falls considerably increased, and when rain has lately fallen in the hills the cataracts may be distinctly heard at the distance of two English miles. The road is through the woods.

Mr. Hodges proceeded across the pass of Terricgully, whence the road continues by the river side,

opening in extensive glades, covered with a fine turf, and interspersed with woods only, which consist of large timber trees, that for the greater part of the year continue verdant like all other vegetable productions of the country. Further on, the road skirts the woods, and is shaded with several great trees, whereon are a variety of beautiful birds, particularly peacocks. There are several small rivers to pass, which, on account of the steepness of their banks, are very troublesome to the pallankeen carriers.

The country and prospects about Colgong are exceedingly beautiful. This place is remarkable for a considerable stream that falls into the Ganges, which by its continued force, particularly in the rainy seasons, has detached two large rocks and formed them into islands, covered with woods, full seventy yards from the shore. In the time of the rains this passage is very dangerous, and can only be effected by small boats.

Mr. Hodges now proceeded to the village of Sultungunge, opposite which, in the river, is Jehanquerry, a rocky island, with a few trees and a small hermitage on the top, inhabited by a Hindoo monk, it being considered by the Hindoos as a sacred place. From this our traveller proceeded to Bauglepoor, where he met with a very kind reception from the gentleman who then governed this district. It is about thirty or forty English miles from this to Mongheir. The country is highly cultivated, the villages very neat, and the roads exceedingly good. There are several burial-places of the Mussulmen (who, like the ancient Greeks, buried near the highways) along the side of the road. Those of superior rank have mausoleums, adorned according to their family wealth or munificence, and those of the common people are mounds of earth, covering the whole length of the body, with a small square column at the head, about three feet high, and another, not more than eighteen inches, at the feet.

There is a great variety in the country, from Calcutta to Mongheir, which is a large Indian town with an old fort, one side of which is flanked by the Ganges, and that to the land by a deep wide ditch. Here are three capital gates, the first on the side next the river, the second on the east side, and the third on the fourth; the second seems very strong, and agrees with the old style of castles.

Mr. Hodges expatiates much on the variety of travellers that are to be met with in the course of this route. Several savage-looking fakirs are to be seen; also whole families, some with camels loaded with goods, others riding on bullocks, the females in bakeries, and the younger part of the company on small horses, which are called tanyans, and are for the chief part pie-balled. The men, who march on foot, are armed with spears and match-locks, also sabres and shields slung across their backs.

Mr. Hodges departed by water from Mongheir, which afforded him an opportunity of admiring the varied shores of the Ganges, and the different boats of the country. He remarks, that it is common about this season of the year to see a small black cloud rising in the eastern part of the horizon, and spreading itself afterwards to the north-west; this phenomenon is always attended with violent thunder, lightning and rain. He also informs us, that passing by the city of Moorhedabad, in the evening of a Mussulman's holy-day, he was very much entertained at beholding the river covered with innumerable lights just floating above the surface of the water; at first he could not comprehend this uncommon appearance, but, on inquiry, understood that upon these occasions they fabricate a number of small lamps, which they light and set a-float on the river, these, by the stream constantly running down, are carried for several hours to a considerable distance. After a passage of a few days he arrived at Calcutta.

C H A P. II.

Mr. Hodges's Expedition with the Governor-General—His Observation of the Danish Settlement of Serampoor—Seat at Cheretty—French Settlement of Chandernagore—Dutch Settlement of Chinsurah—Hoogly, &c.—Arrival of the Fleet at Patna—Governor's Reception—Description of the City—Of the Mosque of Moonbier—Of Bankepour—Arrival of Mr. Hodges at Buxar—Curiosities of Gazi-poor—Proceeds to Benares—Disturbances—Sad Consequences—Period to the War—Remarks—Description of Benares—Temples, &c.—Description of the horrid Sacrifice of a Wife on the Death of her Husband—The Woods which surround the Fort of Luttee-poor—A Rocky Pass—Description of Bahjgur—Arrival of the Governor-General's Party at Daugle-poor.

THE Bengal government having deemed it expedient for the public utility, that the governor-general should make a tour through a part of the country, Mr. Hodges procured Mr. Hastings's permission to accompany him. Accordingly the former embarked in a budgerow, June 25th, 1781. The fleet consisting of all kinds of boats belonging to the country, except burs, was very large, on account of the great number who necessarily attended the governor-general.

Mr. Hodges's first observation was the Danish settlement of Serampoor, which is a small distance above Calcutta. Both sides of the river are decorated with a few houses belonging to English gentlemen; there is a very fine seat at Cheretty, about twenty miles from Calcutta. The French settlement of Chandernagore is a little above this; it seems to have been very considerable from the ruins of the fort. Adjoining this, is the town of Chinsurah, the Dutch settlement on the banks of the river. The appearance of this town is very handsome. There are several good boules and a church, with a little mole projecting into the river. This town lies nearly midway between Chandernagore and Hoogly, which, though in ruins, retain the vestiges of former munificence. Culna and Huddea, leading to Cutwa, are both considerable towns. Mr. Hodges now passed several other towns already mentioned.

On the arrival of the fleet at the city of Patna, the windows in the houses on the banks of the river, and all the tops of the buildings and every wall, were crowded. The governor-general was received by the multitude with great joy and respect. This city which is the principal seat of the province and government of Bahar, is long, narrow, and very populous; it has been long famous, having a fort, and being the residence of the political and commercial chiefs, and the courts of justice of the province; the streets, which are narrow, are seldom clean, the buildings are very lofty.

Mr. Hodges went to examine the mosque of Moonbier, on the river Soane, which is a beautiful large building, being a square with pavilions rising from the angles; in the centre there is a majestic dome, the top of which is finished by what the Indian architects call a *Callas*: the line of the curve of the dome is not broken but continued by an inverted curve until it finishes in a crescent. The outer surface is ornamented by platane leaves cut in stone, covering the whole; the lines intersect each other in great lozenges and are altogether very beautiful. The great entrance to this mosque has columns, diminishing as it were in perspective to the inner door. A large tank belongs to it, with several buildings arising from the water containing pavilions.

Bankepour is at a small distance from Patna, where there are several seats of English gentlemen, and near which is the military station of Dinapour.

Mr. Hodges followed the fleet, and having passed the mouth of the river Caramnalla, arrived at Buxar, August the 12th; from this they proceeded to Gazi-poor on the eastern shore of the Ganges; here are the ruins of a very fine palace, raised on a high bank, almost adjoining which is a building for raising water and supplying the fountains by means of pipes. There are about two miles from the river, the remains of a Serai, and some tombs at a small distance: from this Mr. Hodges proceeded to Benares, and arrived the

day after the governor landed. The affair of Chetty Sing, the Zemindar of the province, now engrossed general attention. The Zemindar (which implies simply a landholder either by a right of inheritance, or merely as a venter) met the governor-general at Buxar, attended with a considerable train, and a large fleet of boats wherein were 2000 armed men, being the most active and experienced of Benares, and intended, as imagined, to support him in the refusal of such demands as the governor-general might think proper to make. Several messages and letters having passed between the respective parties, Mr. Markham, the resident, received orders to put the Rajah under arrest; a great disturbance immediately took place, which occasioned much bloodshed and the Rajah escaped; the consequent loss of friends and the funeral ceremonies which followed, threw a gloom over all the English. Further disturbances taking place, it was deemed advisable to make for Chunar, a distance of about twenty miles, and opposite which, early the next day, the party, including servants, &c. to the number of about 400 men, safely arrived. Now the war was completely commenced with great disadvantage on the part of the English. Some desperate battles were fought. Effective measures were, however, taken to put a final period to the war, by vigorously attacking both the forts of Patna and of Luttee-poor, which happily succeeded. Patna lies about four miles north of Chunar, and Luttee-poor ten miles beyond; Bahjgur is fifty miles from Chunar. The fort at Chunar is situated on the Ganges, near twenty miles above the city of Benares; it is built on a rock, fortified all round by a wall and towers at various distances; it was originally built by the Hindoos, and said to be of the highest antiquity.

Benares is one of the most ancient cities; the distance, from Calcutta, by the nearest road, is above 460 miles, it is a great deal more by water. The city anciently bore the name of Kasi, and is built on the north side of the river; it has a beautiful appearance, as it abounds in buildings, which are very superb. There are several Hindoo temples on the banks of the river, which are all ascended by flights of steps; in the centre of the city is a considerable Mahometan mosque, with two Minarets, the height from the water to the top of the Minarets is 232 feet. The streets are narrow and not kept in very good order: there are many ruins surrounding the city, particularly a large circular edifice, which had evidently been an Hindoo temple, or part of one, there being vestiges of some of the ornaments; and Mr. Hodges found the Grecian scroll on one part.—The temple named Vifs Vilsha, particularly engaged our traveller's attention, who, on accurately observing the building in all its parts, found each column to contain the different ornaments which appeared in the other parts.

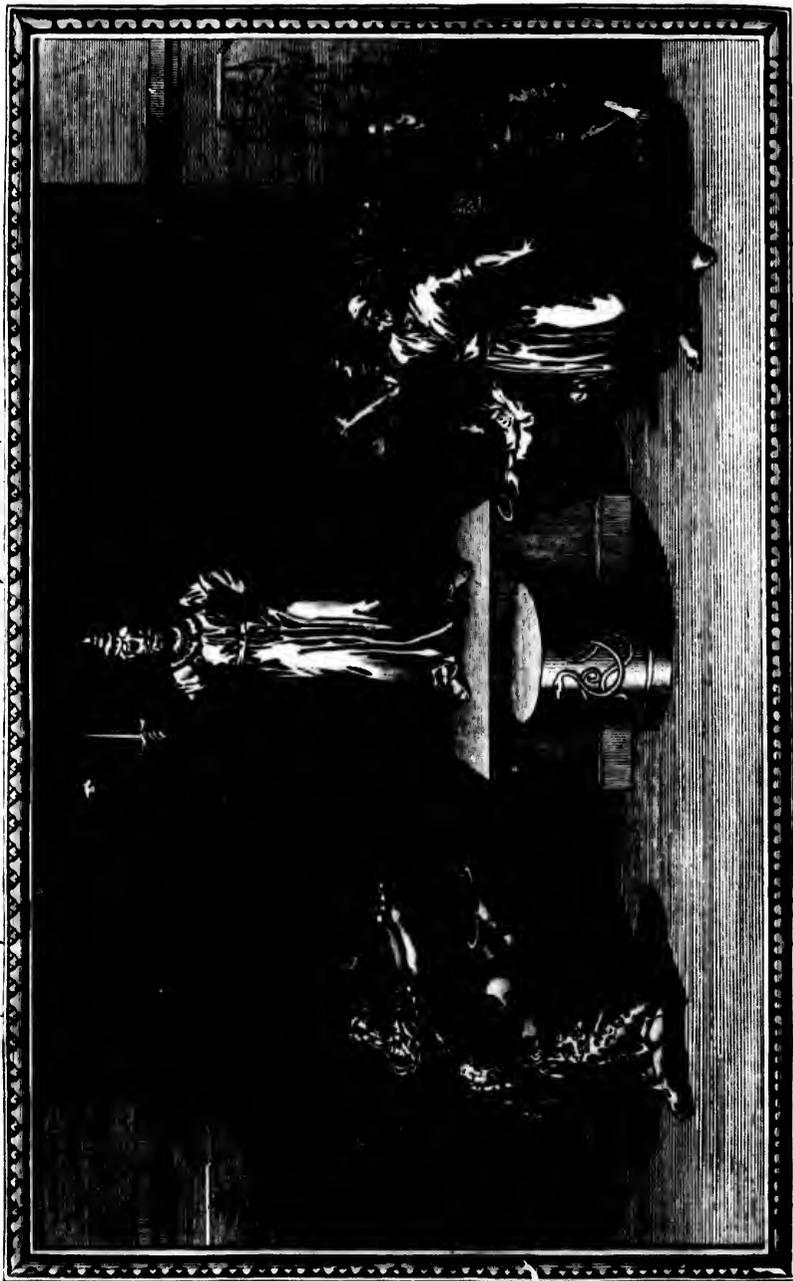
While making observations in Benares, Mr. Hodges received information of a ceremony which was to take place on the banks of the river, and which greatly excited his curiosity; this was the horrid sacrifice of the wife on the death of her husband. On repairing to the spot on the banks of the river where the ceremony was to take place, Mr. Hodges perceived the body of a man, on a bier, laid at the edge of the river, and covered with linen. There were

ment of Scrampeur—Scat
 , &c.—Arrival of the
 —Of Bankepur—Ar-
 —Sad Consequences—
 the horrid Sacrifice of a
 Rocky Pass—Description

The affair of Chert
 province, now engrolled
 aindar (which implies
 a right of inheritance,
 the governor-general at
 a considerable train, and a
 were 2000 armed men,
 experienced of Benares,
 to support him in the
 the governor-general
 Several messages and
 the respective parties.
 received orders to put
 great disturbance imme-
 occasioned much blood-
 the consequent loss of
 monies which followed,
 English. Further diffi-
 seemed advisable to make
 about twenty miles, and
 day, the party, includ-
 ber of about 400 men
 was completely con-
 ge on the part of the
 a council
 ever taken to put a
 vigorously attacking both
 a twelvepoor, which has
 about four miles north
 ten miles beyond; B. J.
 chunar. The fort of
 ges, near twenty miles
 is built on a rock, sur-
 towers at various dis-
 by the Hindoos, and
 nity.
 ancient cities; the vic-
 nearest road, is above
 more by water. The
 of Kafi, and is built on
 has a beautiful appear-
 ges, which are very be-
 Hindoo temples on the
 all ascended by steps
 city is a considerable
 o Minarets, the height
 e Minarets is 232 feet.
 not kept in very good
 surrounding the city,
 difice, which had ev-
 ple, or part of one,
 of the ornaments; and
 in scroll on one part.—
 n, particularly engaged
 on accurately observ-
 es, found each column
 ents which appeared in

n Benares, Mr. Hodges
 remony which was to
 the river, and which
 this was the horrid fa-
 of her husband. On
 banks of the river where
 ce, Mr. Hodges per-
 a bier, laid at the edge
 h linen. There were
 now

Engraved for PORTLOCKS. 14th COLLECTION of VOYAGES & TRAVELS.



*Ceremonial of Adoration paid to the Holy **BUDDU**, the Supreme Unity of CEYLON, on the Island on the Sabbath day*

Ceremonies of Adoration paid to the Holy BUDDY, the Guardian Spirit of CEYLON, on the Indian Sea.

Engraved for PORTLOCK'S, in COLLECTION of VOYAGES & TRAVELS.



— 99 — Inside View of the PAGOD of KAMAETSMA.
Engraved by the Author from a drawing by the artist.

now only a few people assembled, it being about ten in the morning. After some time the unfortunate widow appeared, attended by the Bramins and some few relatives, with music; solemn and slow the procession, while the victim moved with a firm and steady pace. She approached the body of her departed husband, with a countenance perfectly composed, and stopping here for some time, addressed those who were near her with apparent good humour, and without the least trepidation of voice. In her left hand she held a cocoa nut, wherein a red colour was mixed up, and dipping in it the fore-finger of her right hand, she marked those who were near her, to whom she wished to shew this last act of attention. She was about 21 or 25 years of age, which is the time of beauty's decay in India, notwithstanding the remains which she preserved, proved that she was once very handsome; she was rather short, but well formed, and possessed of beautiful hands and arms. She was dressed in a loose robe of white drapery, which reached from the head to the feet. About half an hour (employed in prayer with the Bramins) was spent from the woman's first appearance to the taking up of the body, to convey it into the pile. The place of sacrifice was about a hundred yards higher, upon the bank of the river Ham, the place where Mr. Hodges stood. It was composed of dried branches, leaves, and rushes, with a door on one side, and arched and covered on the top: a man standing by the side of the door with a lighted brand. As soon as the body was taken up, the widow followed close to it, attended by the chief Bramin, and on its being deposited in the pile, she bowed to the surrounding spectators, and, without speaking, entered after it,

whereupon the door was immediately closed; fire was now administered to the combustibles, which blazed instantaneously, and still kept burning by additional fuel being occasionally thrown in. The multitude who now became numerous, and discovered more joy than grief on the occasion, accompanied the last part of this abominable ceremony, with loud and continued shouts. The only inducement Mr. Hodges had to be a spectator, was the desire of ascertaining a fact, which, at first, he could hardly believe.

When the traveller passes the open country, he enters the jungles or woods which surround the forts of Lutteeipoor. The woods chiefly consist of bamboos, which come very close to the walls, and are so very thick as to be impenetrable in many parts. The fort is erected of stone, the walls are flanked with round towers, at present the whole is in decay. There is a very high and difficult rocky pass about two miles from the fort, at the top of which the country continues flat and level, till within about four miles of Bidjegur, when it sinks, and is generally overflowed in the time of the rains. There are considerable woods between Lutteeipoor and Bidjegur intermixed with a few villages and some cultivated ground. Bidjegur is about fifty miles from Benares; the fort is seated on the top of a lofty mountain, covered with wood from the summit to the descent. As soon as this place was taken, preparations were made for the departure of the governor-general's party; they sailed towards the end of December, and early in January 1782, arrived at Bauglepoor. It being Mr. Hodges' will to remain here for some time, he took his leave of those gentlemen who departed about the end of the same month.

C H A P. III.

Mr. Hodges accompanies Mr. CLEVELAND on a Tour through Part of his District—They pass some Durgows—An Invitation to an annual Sacrifice—Description of the Chiefs who gave it—Account of the Ceremony, &c.—Rejoicing, &c.—Mr. Hodges, &c. visit Deogur—Ancient Pagodas—Trade of the Pilgrims—Mr. Hodges returns to Calcutta, seized with a dangerous illness—Recovers, and undertakes another Journey, by Permission of the Governor-General—His Arrival at Allahabad—Description of the Forts, &c.—Of Lucknow—The Nabob's Palace—Journey to Iyazabad—Description thereof—Present from the Nabob's Mother—Description of Oud, &c.

IT being proposed by Mr. Cleveland to perambulate part of the district into the hills, Mr. Hodges readily acceded. These gentlemen set out early in February, on a tour through a part of the country called the Junglettery to the westward of Bauglepoor. A great deal of wood, including much cultivated ground, and several villages, inhabited chiefly by husbandmen, are to be found in this interior part of the country. Great masses of stone being piled upon one another, render the appearance of this country very singular: several immense timber trees, overthadowing these rocks, grow out from their interstices: they are of different kinds. Some Durgows, or burial places, with little chapels adjoining, which belonged to the Mussulmans, are to be seen on some of the highest of these hills.

Some of the principal hill chiefs having invited Mr. Cleveland to the ceremony of an annual sacrifice, the gentlemen proceeded to the village on the mountain where it was to be solemnized. The chiefs, who gave this invitation, resided on a range of hills, which lie to the south and to the westward of Bauglepoor, extending south to the back of Rajmahel. Their manners differ entirely from the Hindoos; they are neither divided into castes nor tribes, and they eat of every species of provision, which the followers of Bramah cannot, being limited in this article according to their call. The ferocity of this people was entirely subdued by the mildness of Mr. Cleveland's administration. This gentleman, by a variety of attentions, had weaned them completely from their usual depredations. He ordered clothes to be made like those of the Seapoys in the Company's

service for a few, gave them fire arms, and had them instructed in the exercise of them. This inspired military courage in others, and shortly a camp was formed of a thousand men, three miles from Bauglepoor, where the strictest discipline was observed.

The gentlemen having left the village of Barkope (which is almost in the centre of the Junglettery) travelled through the flat country, and entered the hills, which are covered with wood, whence they had several beautiful prospects. On the second day of their journey they arrived at the village of the hill, where the annual sacrifice was to be solemnized. A small open hut had been erected in the village, on purpose for Mr. Cleveland's reception, and the next morning being the time appointed, every person in the neighbourhood was summoned to attend. About nine o'clock the ceremony began. A kind of altar, consisting of bamboos, was raised before a small hut, about six feet from the ground. A kid and a cock being decapitated, their heads were thrown upon the altar, and there left. This first part of the ceremony was little attended to by any of the party. Notice being given in about an hour afterwards, that the principal rite was about to be performed, the gentlemen immediately repaired to the place of rendezvous. A fine large buffalo, which had been previously purchased and fattened by the people, was now dragged with ropes, by the horns, towards the spot where the decollation of the kid and the cock was performed. The chief of the village, who had no covering except a cloth round his middle, now held a large and bright sabre in his hand, while, after much difficulty, the animal was brought to the place

of

of sacrifice. A concourse of people (men, women, and children) surrounded the altar. The young men being all naked, the animal was first of all hamstringed, to prevent his escape. The chief then stood on the left side of the animal, and striking the upper part of the neck near the shoulder with his sabre, set the poor animal howling and struggling for his liberty so violently, that it required no little exertion to detain him. Upwards of a quarter of an hour was spent in thus cutting the spine of the neck, and it was some time before the head was severed, even after the animal fell. A great pause and universal silence preceded the last stroke! When the chief had given it, he then stood up, and extending his arm, which held the sabre, seemed to give a signal to the people, who thereupon rushed in, and began to take up the blood of the animal, which, though mixed with the dirt of the ground, they drank up, and having besmeared each other, and tumbled about in a most frantic manner, they proceeded to eat the body, which was afterwards cut in pieces. The head, like those of the kid and cock, was, however, preserved. The sacrifice being over, each returned to his respective dwelling. Great rejoicing now took place, and the remainder of the day was spent in mirth and revelry. Singing, dancing, and drinking became universal; the last prevailed so much among the men, that the women lost half their partners.

After the sacrifice, the gentlemen returned to Bankeepoor, and the next day visited Deogar, a small village, and, being directed to a sacred spot, is much frequented by the Hindus pilgrims. Here are five ancient pagodas, which have each a small chamber in the centre of twelve feet square, with a lamp hanging over the *entrance*, which is the great object of superstition among the followers of Brahmah, being the general symbol of renovative nature. The passage is only sufficient high and broad for the admission of one person. These pagodas are formed like pyramids. The pilgrims are daily employed in carrying the water of the Ganges to the western side of the peninsula of India in large barks or bottles, containing about five quarts each; one at each end of a bamboo, which they bear on their shoulders. They charge a proportionable price for this holy water, according to the distance of the place where it is carried to, and so many are the purchasers as to render it a considerable trade.

As our travellers returned nearly in the same direction in which they came, they had of course no opportunity for further observations.

Mr. Hodges having remained about four months at Bankeepoor, proceeded for Calcutta, and arrived there May 17, 1782. Here our traveller was seized with a dangerous illness, which rendered him exceedingly weak till about the end of November. When recovered, he applied to the governor-general for permission to renew his travels, which being immediately granted, he began his next journey by land January 12, 1783, passing through Moorshedabad, Bankeepoor, &c. already mentioned.

Having rested at Benares four days, he proceeded on his journey, and, on the second day after his departure from thence, arrived at Allahabad, which is the point of confluence of the two great rivers Jumna and Ganges, and between the eastern boundaries of the Jumna and the western boundaries of the Ganges is Dooab, a country esteemed very fertile, lying between two rivers. Immediately at the point is the fort of Allahabad, built entirely of stone, and commanding from its situation the navigation of both rivers; notwithstanding which peculiar advantage, it is left to ruin. The building is entirely in the old style. The walls are flanked with round and square towers; that called Agra gate is ornamented with several small pavilions on the top, and is very handsome; there are two other gates within the exterior gate, formerly secured with portcullises. The fort, which is very extensive, has large areas within the walls, which, covered with the tumbled remains of

buildings, are now heaps of ruins. The city, as it is called, consisting only of thatched huts, is without the fort. From this Mr. Hodges proceeded to Cawnpoor, which is a large military station, on the Ganges. It is a cantonment for a brigade, amounting to ten thousand men on the war establishment; the men live in huts instead of tents, with their families; it is considered as a great encampment.

On the 27th of January Mr. Hodges arrived at Lucknow, which is supposed to be about 920 miles distance from Calcutta by the route through Benares, though some think it only 650. It is an extensive city, but the buildings are very mean, consisting only of mud walls, covered with thatch. Several consist entirely of mats and bamboos, and are thatched with leaves of the cocoa nut, palm tree, and sometimes with straw; there are very few brick houses, the streets are very bad, narrow, and crooked. When the season wet, the mire is so deep, there is scarce any walking; when dry, the heat and dust are intolerable; the foot passenger is equally annoyed by the great number of elephants, belonging to the nabob and his suite, which are continually passing the streets. Indeed the great men of this place and their servants, attend very little to the convenience of the poor.

The nabob's palace is on a high bank near the river. It commands an extensive view both of the Ganges and the country on the eastern side. There are large courts within the walls, and a durbar, where all petitions, on being presented, are received by the prince. This durbar is a range of three arcades, parallel to each other, and supported by the columns in the Moorish taste. The ceiling and all are painted with ornaments and flowers, and beautifully gilt; it is ascended by steps from a flower-garden, wherein are planted strong scented flowers; there is nothing recommended in the exterior of the building; near the palace there is a garden, walled round, divided by a narrow disengageable road; at each angle of which is a grand pavilion, erected of brick, covered with chunam and richly ornamented.

On the 9th of February Mr. Hodges determined to make a journey to Fyzabad and the ancient city Oud; he arrived at Fyzabad the second day after setting out, which is a distance of about eighty English miles, in a fourth cardinal direction. On entering the city, Mr. Hodges was received by a person who was ordered to show the palankeen bearers to a small house in a large garden, which was allotted Mr. Hodges during his stay.

Fyzabad is a very extensive city, and, to all appearance, very populous, but its inhabitants are chiefly of the lowest class; the most eminent of the merchants, &c. having followed the court which was removed to Lucknow. Some remains of many handsome brick buildings are to be seen. The one appropriated to Mr. Hodges's accommodation, had a large beautiful pavilion over the principal entrance; it was ascended by a narrow stair-case, leading to three open rooms, commanding on one side the whole city, and on the other the garden, a vast extent of country, and the river Gogra; a mosque with three domes, was opposite the gate. Some short time after Mr. Hodges's arrival here, he was waited upon by a person from the nabob's mother, who brought him a number of dishes of various curries and pillows for his refreshment. The compliments which were in the Moorish style, were to his grand flatterer, that our traveller almost imagined himself transformed into an Indian nabob. Having returned his most respectful compliments, he partook of the repast, which was very good, but would have been better if accompanied with wine instead of water. After this Mr. Hodges proceeded to make his further observations.

The remains of the palace, built by the late nabob, now attracted his attention. This building, which covers a great extent of ground, has several areas or courts which contain many separate buildings. In the inner court are the remains of the durbar,

ruins. The city, as it is thatched huts, is without . . . Hodges proceeded to the military station, on the . . . for a brigade, amounting to the war establishment: of tents, with their furniture encampment.

Mr. Hodges arrived at . . . to be about 900 miles . . . route through Benares, . . . 650. It is an extensive . . . very mean, consisting . . . with thatch. Several . . . bamboos, and are thatched . . . palm tree, and some . . . very few brick houses, . . . crooked. When . . . is so deep, there is scarce . . . heat and dull are intoler- . . . equally annoyed by the . . . belonging to the nabob . . . continually passing the street . . . place and their servants, . . . convenience of the poor.

On a high bank near the river, . . . view both of the Goomty . . . side. There are large . . . a darbar, where all peo- . . . are received by the prince, . . . three arcades, parallel to . . . by the columns in the . . . g and all are painted with . . . and beautifully gilt; it is . . . lower garden, wherein . . . there is nothing . . . of the building; near the . . . called round, divided by . . . at each angle of which . . . of brick, covered with . . . nted.

Mr. Hodges determined . . . and the ancient city . . . had the second day after . . . of about eight leagues . . . direction. On entering . . . received by a person who . . . blanket bearers to a house . . . which was allotted Mr.

the city, and, to an . . . but its inhabitants . . . the most eminent of the . . . followed the court which was . . . remains of many . . . to be seen. The one . . . accommodation, had a . . . for the principal entrance . . . row hair-cave, leading to . . . standing on one side the . . . over the garden, a vast ex- . . . river Gogra; a mosque . . . the gate. Some . . . arrival here, he was waited . . . the nabob's mother, who . . . dresses of various . . . ment. The compliments . . . style, were so high and . . . almost imagined himself . . . nabob. Having returned . . . compliments, he partook of . . . good, but would have . . . with wine instead of wa- . . . proceeded to make his

ce, built by the late na- . . . tion. This building, . . . of ground, has several . . . many separate build- . . . are the remains of the . . . darbar,

Completed for PORTLOCKS. *See* COLLECTION OF VOYAGES & TRAVELS.



CEREMONIES *(over)* by the people of PEGU, at their KINGS FUNERALS.

See page 100. See page 101.

darbar; the rest were evidently designed for public offices, or the like, but with the painting, &c. greatly gone to decay. A large extent of building, which must have been once very magnificent, is within an interior court, the principal front of which is on the banks of the river: this was designed for the nabob's private dwelling. Near this are other edifices, intended for the Zenanah, wherein some traces of gardens are to be seen. A very handsome large gate constitutes the grand entrance to the palace, the superstructure of which was a place for arms, and there is still a guard kept in it. The Nobut (i. e. a great drum) which is an appendage of royalty in India, and when beaten, which is both at fun-rite and fun-let, may be heard afar off, was fixed on the top of the gate.

The remains of the ancient city of Oud, reported to have been the first imperial city of Hindostan, are nearly adjoining Fyzabad. This is considered as a place of sanctity, and the Hindoos consequently perform pilgrimages thither, from all parts of India, continually. There are no vestiges whatever of this city's former magnificence. It is seated on the banks of Gogra, but Mr. Hodges thinks it probable, that formerly it was at a considerable distance from it, it being in a line with Fyzabad. Mr. Hodges concludes these remarks with observing, that the villages he had passed during this perambulation, were, some of them comfortable to all appearance, and others apparently distressed.

C H A P. IV.

Mr. Hodges accompanies Major Brown on an Expedition—Description of Etaya—They proceed to Jeshwontnagar—Halt at O'Kraime—Arrive at Shekoabad—Derivation of its Name—Description of the Place—The Ruins of a Hunting Seat, &c.—They proceed to Fyrozabad—Its Government and Army—They arrive at Etamadpoor—Account of a small Building, &c.—They encamp at Sbab Darab—Ruins—Palaces of the great Omrabs—Derivation of the Name of Sbab Dara—An ancient Custom—A Visit from an Omrab of high Rank—The Nabob Merzab Shuffey Khawn waited upon—Description of his wonderful Camp—A Visit to the Darbar—Old Persian Chiefs seen—Excursions—Remarks—Palace of Dara Shako—Observations—Description of Futtypoor Sicri—Of Siedpoor—Mr. Hodges takes Leave of the Major—Arrives at Dabpoor—At Nurabad—At Gwalior—Description of the Fortress—Proceeds to Gohd—Returns to Lucknow—His Departure—Voyage down the River Goomty—Fort of Jionpoor—A Mausoleum—Proceeds to Banglepoor—Arrives at Calcutta—Conclusion.

MAJOR Brown being appointed on an embassy to Mirza Shuffey Khawn, and preparing to proceed immediately on his mission through a part of the country which Mr. Hodges was very desirous to visit, our traveller wrote to the Major, signifying his wishes to accompany him. The proposal being accepted, Mr. Hodges set out on his journey to join Major Brown at Etaya on the 10th of February 1783. From the small number of pallankeen bearers, and the quantity of baggage, Mr. Hodges's luges were now short; however, he arrived at Major Brown's encampment, which was close to the town of Etaya, on the 13th. The road runs westward from Lucknow to this place, and is at many places fordable at this time of the year: there is also to the westward of the Ganges, a fordable stream called Callinuddie; this, however, is a considerable river at the time of the rains. It is tolerably well cultivated from Lucknow to Etaya, but the villages are very poor.

Etaya is situated on a very high bank of Jumna, which is a very large river, wherein are many islands of sand, which are overflowed during the periodical rains. The sides of this high bank consist of what the Indians call Concha (i. e. sand) which is formed into almost a vitrification, by the constant action of the sun. There are only two decent houses in the town, which, notwithstanding its novelty, is very large.

The Major and Mr. Hodges proceeded on the 15th to Jeshwontnagar, which is about 12 English miles from Etaya; the cultivation of the country is very middling from Etaya to this place; the villages appear desolate, and their few inhabitants very poor. They stopped at O'Kraime on the 16th, about 12 miles further, and almid at the termination of the nabob of Oud's land.

There was very little cultivation to be seen during this last day's journey: several of the villages were in ruins, and all appeared wild and desolate. Some few wretched looking people, who were begging their way, were met on the last day's march.

They arrived at Shekoabad on the 17th. There is some little cultivation from O'Kraime to this place, and such is the fulness and richness of the grain, as to demonstrate, that if properly cultivated, it would be exceedingly productive.

Shekoabad takes its name from Dara Sheko, the

Emperor Shah Jehan's eldest and most unfortunate son, who, when contending with his youngest brother Aurungzebe, was defeated, hunted down like a wild beall, and at last made prisoner. He was then stripped and seated on an elephant, to be the may-game of their victorious bands, who at last murdered him unmercifully.

They had passed this day two villages, which were superior to any hitherto met with. Several villages in ruins were seen on both sides of the road, and mud-forts or their ruins on every hillock or rising ground.

Shekoabad is very populous, and the adjacent ground seemingly well cultivated. The remains of a hunting seat, erected by Dara Sheko, and a tank belonging thereto, were here discovered. It appears to have been considerably large from the ruins. There was a small grove of palm and other trees adjoining the tank, which were all the trees to be seen in the neighbourhood: there is also a scarcity of water, there being very few wells, and those few nearly dry. They saw in Falcant, the town, the ruins of several buildings, some of which had been apparently erected on a large scale.

Having gone twelve miles further, they reached Fyrozabad, which is a considerable village; it takes its name from Purgunnah, which is a small district within a larger. At this time it was under the government of a Gofine, or Hindoo religious, which government being very favourable to agriculture, the cultivation of this place was exceeding beautiful. The Gofine had, for the protection of the poor, a camp formed in the neighbourhood, amounting to 2000 men well armed, and a small park of artillery, where Mr. Hodges saw two fine pieces of battering cannon. These soldiers, whose stature was generally six feet, and their behaviour very modest and decorous, were remarkable for their manly comeliness and beauty.

They arrived at Etamadpoor the next day, which is about twelve miles further. Here is a small building in the centre of a large tank, the sides of which, as likewise the centre building and a bridge of several arches, which communicates with it from the side of the tank, are erected with stone. Large mounds of earth, formed from the excavations in making the tank, surround the whole: there was but little water in it at the time of our travellers arrival. Hence they had a full view of the spires of Agra.

They encamped on the Shah Dara on the 23d, which is at the distance of almost ten miles from Etanadpoor, and about two on the eastern side of the river Jumna, opposite the city. Nothing but ruined buildings (some very large, as the Cutera, built by the great Shah Heli Khawn, in the reign of Aurungzebe) tombs, long walls, domes, arches, &c. &c. are to be seen here. The ruined palaces of the great omrahs are to be seen along the western bank of the river; further on, the great fort and palace of the city of Agra are to be seen, which prospect is terminated to the south-west by the elegant monument that was erected by the emperor Shah Jehan.

Shah Dara derives its name from Shah, a king, and Dara, a tent, being the spot where the emperor's tent was first fixed when he made his progress from Agra to the eastern provinces of the empire. From the time the dynasty of the Moguls was fixed in India, it was customary for the emperor, in the summer season, to take the field with a large army, attended by the whole court, artisans, bankers, &c. Accordingly, the camp became a great city, under tents, that of the emperor being in the centre of the whole, surrounded by those of the great officers of state, while each trade had its several quarter allotted to them.

Arafeeb Khawn, an omrah of high rank, waited upon Major Brown, on the 24th, from the nabob, Mirza Shuffley Khawn, who lay encamped about six miles to the north-west of Agra, and to whose camp the major and Mr. Hodges proceeded, having crossed the river Jumna, and passed through a part of the city of Agra. The next day they pitched their tents to the eastward of the nabob's encampment, in a garden, walled round, and which was formerly adorned with some magnificent buildings which are now gone to ruin.

Mirza Shuffley Khawn's camp covered a great space of ground, and as it contained shops of all kinds, might, with greater propriety, have been called a city. It contained 40,000 men, according to report, which Mr. Hodges could not credit. However, every soldier, tradesman, and artificer, had his family with him; there were 42 pieces of cannon of various calibers in the park of artillery; some of the largest guns, which were remarkable fine ones, were French pieces, but the rest, which formed the greatest number, were indifferent. The nabob's tent being of crimson velvet, in many parts embroidered with gold, and lined with silk. Mr. Hodges thinks, that, in all probability, it was formerly an imperial one; at present the appearance was very far from splendid, it being much torn and moth-eaten.

Mr. Hodges accompanied the major shortly after their arrival to the Durbar of the nabob, where they found the principal commanders, among whom there were several old Persian chiefs, whose countenances were marked with great dignity, and their beards so long as to hang down to their girdles. On being received, the ceremony of which consisted of touching the turban with the right hand, without ever rising from their seats, the gentlemen were desired to sit, and accordingly old fashioned chairs were brought, which, though greatly injured by length of time, retained the evident signs of having been formerly very richly ornamented with velvet and carved work. The nabob sat in the centre of a semicircle; his chiefs surrounding him, and a great number of attendants standing behind. Amongst these people delay seems a settled principle of etiquette, for the major's business was neither taken into consideration now nor for many days afterwards; this still was only a visit of ceremony.

Mr. Hodges took every opportunity of making excursions to Agra and its vicinities, the weather being at this season very favourable. The mornings which he chose for his excursions, were clear and very cold; the frost was so very great at times that several tanks were entirely frozen over; it was, however, very hot in the middle of the day, which time our traveller appropriated to his studies. Mr. Hodges spent most of his time at Agra.

This city is situated on the south side of the river Jumna, which is impassable at this place, and rising immediately from the water extends in a vast semicircle. It is held to be a place of great antiquity. The fort, including the present palace, is very extensive, it is constructed of a red free stone, and seems to have been very strong when first erected. It had originally a double wet ditch, which was both very deep and broad, and well supplied from the river. The city was encircled by a wall and towers, very near each other. The fort was an island formed by three ditches, one face thereof inclining to the eastward was washed by the river to the foot of the walls; the outer ditch is now entirely demolished, and the high road goes through it. The inner ditch is very bad in several places and quite dry in others.

Jehanadab was built by Shah Jehan, the grandson of Achar, who, not being able to bear Agra on account of the immense heat of summer, determined to raise a metropolis which should bear his own name. In order to people this new city, it is said that he transported thither upwards of 500,000 of the people of Agra, being one half of the inhabitants. The consequent ruins in Agra rendered it expedient for the security of the people to build another wall, forming a part of a circle within the old one, and this wall was accordingly erected by a Hindoo Raja, in the service of the emperor Aurungzebe, named Jay Singh. The empire of Jehanabad, as well as its name, is now nearly extinguished. A meer mass of ruins appears likewise between the two walls; the inner wall is also decaying fast. Near the Delhi gate of the fort, where there are the remains of a mosque, is the Choke, or Exchange, which is likewise in decay, and even the fort itself is wasting away rapidly. The imperial residence built of white marble, covered on the top with plates of copper gilt, is situated in the eastern front of the fort; the lustre of its ornaments still remains. A mosque, consisting of various beautiful ornaments, is almost adjoining. The ruins of this grand and venerable city are computed to extend no less than fourteen English miles along the banks of the river. There is considerable danger in walking among these ruins, as an unwary passenger may sink through several holes into the covered vaults, where many poisonous reptiles inhabit. The streets are very narrow, and no great judgment displayed in their construction.

The palace of Dara Sheko, which was built by that prince, is very extensive. There is a hammam or bath that Mr. Hodges went to see, which was very superb. It was lined with the finest coloured marble, and several pieces of lapis lazuli introduced amongst the ornaments, which were after the Mosaic taste, (composed of Mosaic work and flowers) and exceedingly handsome. Mr. Hodges concludes, from the great expence that was evidently bestowed upon it, that it formerly belonged to the palace of one of the great men of the court.

The tomb of the emperor Achar, stands at a place called Secundrii, on the great high road leading to Delhi, about six miles distance from Agra; this stupendous edifice is situated in a garden, regularly planted with both forest and fruit trees, and several flowering shrubs; it is also walled round, and is said to contain a space of above twenty English acres. In the centre of this garden is raised the monument, which is a square building with gates in the centre on each side, and great pavilions at the angles and over the gates. There are five several flutes which diminish gradually with pavilions at each angle. The domes of these pavilions are of white marble; the rest of the building of red stone and white marble intermixed. The fifth or upper story is entirely of white marble; here is a range of windows running round each side which are fret work, cut out of the solid slab. This story is furnished with pavilions consisting in like manner of marble, but they have been greatly damaged by lightning and an earthquake, at the people of that place report. One of the pavilions

the fourth side of the river
 at this place, and rising
 extends in a vast femi-
 place of great antiquity.
 The palace, is very ex-
 a red free stone, and seems
 when first erected. It had
 which was both very
 supplied from the river.
 a wall and towers, very
 it was an island formed by
 ereof inclining to the east.
 ver to the foot of the walls;
 irectly demolished, and the
 The inner ditch is very
 quite dry in others.

Shah Jehan, the grand
 able to bear Agra on ac-
 of summer, determined to
 should bear his own name.
 new city, it is said that he
 of 600,000 of the people
 of the inhabitants. This
 rendered it expedient for
 able to build another wall,
 within the old one, and
 erected by a Hindoo Raja,
 peror Aurungzebe, named
 of Jehanabad, as well as in
 magnified. A mere mass of
 between the two walls: the
 ng fall. Near the Delhi
 here are the remains of a
 Exchange, which is like
 the fort itself is walling
 rial residence built of white
 top with plates of copper
 siltern front of the fort; the
 ll remains. A mosque, con-
 ornments, is almost ad-
 his grand and venerable city
 no less than fourteen English
 the river. There is confi-
 among these ruins, as an
 k through several holes into
 ere many poisonous reptiles
 very narrow, and no great
 r construction.

ko, which was built by that
 There is a humman or
 ent to see, which was very
 the finest coloured marble,
 lazuli introduced amongst
 ere after the Moorish taste,
 and flowers) and exceeding
 es concludes, from the great
 y bestowed upon it, that it
 palace of one of the great

or Abar, stands at a place
 great high road leading to
 lance from Agra; this road
 in a garden, regularly
 and fruit trees, and several
 o walled round, and is said
 e twenty English acres. In
 is raised the monument,
 g with gates in the centre
 pavilions at the angles and
 e five several houses which
 vilions at each angle. The
 are of white marble; the
 ed stone and white marble
 upper story is entirely of
 range of windows running
 fret work, cut out of the
 finished with pavilions con-
 marble, but they have been
 ing and an earthquake, as
 report. One of the pavil-
 ion

lions is gone entirely, and the domes of the rest con-
 siderably injured. The inside of this upper story is
 curiously inlaid with black marble with quotations
 from the Koran, which, a judge of Persian writing
 assured Mr. Hodges, was in the most perfect style.
 There are large terraces on each story of this
 building, which, it is reported, had coverings of
 gold cloth, supported by pillars of silver, in the days
 of the emperors Jehanguire and Jehan. The Mol-
 lals, or priells of the Mahomedan religion, conver-
 sed with the literati under the shade of these awnings.

A grand gate leading to the garden, constitutes the
 principal entrance. The front of this is most richly
 ornamented with mosaics of different coloured mar-
 bles, inlaid in co-partments. There are two stories
 of pointed arches and large recesses on either side the
 centre. On the upper story there is a door in the
 centre, and a window over it with a balustrade in
 front, the lower recesses have one window each.
 There is one vast pointed arch in the centre; this
 part of the building rises considerably above the side
 of the two stories already mentioned. There are
 two sarcophagi of black marble on the top and some-
 what behind the front of this part of the edifice, which
 are raised on two columns: two others, answering to
 these, are immediately behind the back front of the
 gate. At each angle of the gate (this building being
 an oblong square) are minarets of white marble,
 partly fluted and rising to a great height; there are
 balustrades above the flutes, half way up the mine-
 rets, and likewise one near the top. Formerly these
 minarets were crowned with open pavilions and finish-
 ed with domes, but these have been long since de-
 stroyed. There are stair-cases in the minarets which
 lead to the two balconies, which surround them; we
 pass through this gate into a vast open hall which
 rises in a dome almost to the top of the edifice. This
 hall was richly ornamented with painting and gilding,
 by the emperor Jehanguire, son of Abar; however,
 in the course of time it went to decay, and either
 from avarice or superstition, the emperor Aurungzebe
 commanded it to be entirely defaced and the walls
 whitened. The descent into the garden is through
 an arch similar to that in the front; from this hall
 and on descending, the whole of the tomb is per-
 ceptible through an avenue of lofty trees, which is
 paved with stone, and a large square basin formerly
 filled with water, but at this time quite dry, is in the
 centre, and in the centre of this basin a fountain,
 the pipe of which only remains. There were several
 channels to be seen, evidently designed for aqued-
 ucts. Not far from the principal building rises a
 high open gate, exceedingly beautiful, being entire-
 ly of white marble.

This curious building from the reflection of a con-
 stant blazing eastern sun, and the varied materials
 of which it is composed, produces a glare of splen-
 dour beyond the power of pen to describe. The
 curiosity of our traveller being further excited, he
 desired to see the stone which contained the remains
 of an emperor, so highly esteemed and so highly
 honoured. An old Mollah, who attended and had
 the keys of the interior of the building (still held in
 profound veneration) acquiesced with Mr. Hodges's
 desire. This Mollah's chief employment was in
 satisfying the curiosity of travellers. A vast hall oc-
 cupying the whole space of the interior of the build-
 ing, which terminates in a dome, forms the inside of
 this curious tomb. A dim light is admitted through
 a few windows at the top, and the whole is lined
 with white marble. In the centre the body is depo-
 sited in a sarcophagus of plain white marble, on which
 the name of 'Abar' is written in black marble inlaid.

There are many tombs surrounding the monument
 of Abar, which, from their beauty, are supposed to
 contain the remains of some of his family; but the
 traditionary report is, that they are the tombs of his
 wives. The prospect from the summit of the minarets
 in the front is very beautiful and extensive.

There are several small buildings on the high road

from Agra to Delhi, the form of which is a square
 pedestal, whereon rises a cone to the height of about
 eight feet. A great number of square niches are in
 this cone, which contain the heads of malefactors,
 which are exposed for an example. Several of these,
 however, are gone to ruin.

There is a beautiful monument to the fourth-est of
 the city of Agra: it was erected by the emperor Shah
 Jehan to the memory of his beloved wife Taje
 Mahel, whose name it bears, and is called the Taje
 Mahel, by way of eminence. Formerly it joined
 the city, but at present stands two miles from it.
 Near this monument was the great bazar, or market
 for the most valuable commodities of India and
 foreign countries; this market, according to report,
 consisted of six courts, encompassed with great open
 porticoes, but there is scarce now remaining a vestige
 of this remarkable building. The monument of
 Taje Mahel rises immediately from the river, found-
 ed on a base of red free stone, at the extremity of
 which are octagon pavilions, containing each three
 stories. There are two large buildings on the same
 base, one on either side, and exactly similar, each
 being crowned with three domes of white marble, of
 which the centre dome is the largest. One of these
 buildings is a masjid, or mosque, the other was de-
 signed for the accommodation of any noble passenger,
 or curious traveller. On this base of free stone, which
 has a platform about twenty-five feet broad, another
 rests of white marble about fourteen feet high;
 it is of a square form; the angles are octagon, from
 which rise minarets, or immense columns taper-
 ing upwards, which have three several galleries run-
 ning round them, and an open pavilion crowned
 with a dome on the top of each. The minarets are
 of white marble, and contain stair-cases leading to
 the summits. The body of the building which has a
 platform, rises like all the rest from this base. The
 plan of the platform is octagon, the four principal
 sides opposed to the cardinal points of the compass:
 a vast and pointed arch is raised in the centre of each
 of the four sides, and the top above this arch is far
 more high than any other part of the building. Those
 faces which form the octagon on either side the great
 arches, have two stories of pointed arches with re-
 cesses, and a low balustrade in front: the spandals
 above the arches are very much ornamented with
 inlaid marble of various colours, and likewise the
 heads of the arches within the recesses: there are
 windows within the several arches running round the
 building, composed of an open fret-work in the solid
 slab for the purpose of illuminating the interior of
 the building. There are four octagonal pavilions with
 domes from behind the octagon front, which rise con-
 siderably higher; also a cone from the centre of the
 whole, which rises equally as high as the domes of
 these pavilions; hence the great dome proceeds, which
 swells considerably outwards from its base, and finishes
 with a beautiful curve in the upper point of the cul-
 lus, whereon two balls of copper gilt rest, one above
 the other. There is a crescent above these balls, in the
 middle of which there is a spear head. This building
 is exactly uniform and finished in the most complete
 manner; it is as famous for excellence of workman-
 ship as for extent and grandeur, and when beheld at
 a distance is a beautiful prospect.

The entrance to the garden, where the Taje Mahel
 stands, is from the opposite side through a handsome
 large gate, where a large flight of steps lead to the
 garden: from the top of these there is a view of the
 centre part of the building through an avenue of cy-
 press and other different trees. This avenue is paved
 with stone, and co-partments or beds of flowers, with
 fountains at equal distances, are in the middle; four
 of the grandest fountains lie about half way up the
 avenue and rise from a square base of white marble.
 A reservoir without the building, filled from the
 river by pumps, supplies all the fountains, which are
 yet in tolerable order, and the garden still kept in
 repair. The centre building is in a good state, but
 the

the rest going to ruin. The mosque here is attended by several Mollahs at the time of prayer, who seem very decent or orderly, and are at all times ready to satisfy the curiosity of strangers. The inside of the great building consists of white marble and several curious carved flowers. The tomb is below in a chamber, and Taje Mahel's body is deposited in a sarcophagus of white marble under the centre of the edifice. A similar containing the body of Shah Jehan, her husband, is adjoining. They are exactly the same as those sarcophagi in Achar's tomb; but the space of ground occupied by the garden and buildings is only about one half of what is devoted to that emperor.

The nabob's camp moved close to Secundrii on March the 3d, where they remained till the 15th, then they removed to Gougaut, about 14 miles from Agra. The water in Gougaut is very bad, being strongly impregnated with nitre. They encamped near the small village of Krowley on the 22d, which is ten miles to the westward of Gougaut.

Krowley is one very extensive plain, which is but miserably furnished with trees and bounded by some low hills, extending to the eastward; there is very little cultivation to be met with, the soil is poor; there are some quarries of red free stone in the hills. The water here is as bad as that at Gougaut for the same reason.

They encamped on the town of Futtypoor Sieri, on the 23d, which, for extent, had water, barrenness, &c. is much the same as the country already past.

Mr. Hodges was very much entertained during these excursions with the variety of characters he met, particularly the people of the bazar (i. e. the market) with their wives and children, who, by riding their horses in full gallop, and firing behind as if pursuing and pursued by an enemy, with several other antic postures after the oriental fashions, displayed much dexterity and adroitness. The majestic movements of the elephants considerably heightened this curious scene.

Futtypoor Sieri is a very extensive town, and the adjoining country in tolerable cultivation; on the top of one of the highest hills which this town lies under, there is a large mosque, erected by Achar, in the Moorish style of building. A flight of broad steps, extending to the principal entrance, which is through a very magnificent portal ascends to this mosque from the foot of the hill. The mosque is situated in a large square, paved throughout with apartments round the sides for the different priests. The remains of a palace, occupying considerable ground, are to be seen at the foot of the hill, where the mosque is. Nothing of this but the principal gate remains, which gives but a faint idea of it. There was a lake at the back of the hills, formed by great mounds of earth artificially raised to keep in the water; and it is said, when the palace was inhabited, that a number of fine boats of every kind were, for the entertainment of the imperial family, kept on this lake, of which the banks and boundaries are now the only vestiges. There is no good water in this part of the country except at the mosque.

They encamped at Siedpoor on the 26th, which is upwards of fourteen miles from Futtypoor Sieri. This country was very superior to any hitherto passed, the cultivation being very fine. During their stay here there were several storms of wind, which the country people term aundeas and typhawns; they resemble hurricanes and are very alarming. The hot winds were also very inconvenient to our travellers.

On the 28th of April, at night, Mr. Hodges finding the necessity of directing his course towards Gwalior, took his leave of Major Brown. His baggage he sent off, under the escort of a party of seapoys, who were attacked during their march by a banditti, (who are very numerous here) but the robbers were repelled by the bravery of the havildar.

On the 29th they arrived at Dohlpoor, and the

next day crossed the river Chumbull; the road was very bad, full of ravines and deep hollow-ways. Having reached the plain, Mr. Hodges encamped under the walls of a large mud fort, which had been lately taken from the Banna of Ghod, by Madajee Scindia, the Mahratta chief. Mr. Hodges and his people were very kindly treated by the governor here, who, though he would not permit Mr. Hody to enter the fort, yet suffered his people to purchase grain and vegetables within it.

On the first of May Mr. Hodges arrived at Nura-had, which is a small town with an old stone fort in it, and a stone bridge over a small nullah (a branch of the Chumbull) consisting of seven tall, narrow-pointed arches. Two open pavilions, raised upon the bridges, crowned on each side with domes, are at the extremes of the three centre arches and small cones, all built of the same stone as the bridge; and spilted with little domes, are at the extremes of the other two arches. Mr. Hodges arrived at Gwalior on the 2d. No kind of cultivation, nor even a hut was to be seen in all the excursion from Dohlpoor.

The fort of Gwalior is situated on the top of a great mountain, rising from a perfect flat country. To the west are some considerable hills. The rock on which it stands is either from nature or art, perpendicular on every side. At the north-west end is the citadel, and a palace with a chain of seven gates leading to the town at the foot of the mountain. A wall surrounds the town, which is large, containing a mosque, and the remains of some good houses.

For the further satisfaction of the curious, we shall insert a letter of Captain Jonathan Sent's, to his brother, fully descriptive of the capture of Gwalior, and the measures which were taken of penetrating into Scindia's country. Captain Jonathan Scott was at that time Persian interpreter to Major Popham.

"The fortress of Gwalior stands on a vast rock of about four miles in length; but narrow, and of unequal breadth, and nearly flat on the top. The sides are so steep, as to appear almost perpendicular in every part; for where it was not naturally so, it has been scraped away; and the height, from the plain below, is from two hundred to three hundred feet. The rampart conforms to the edge of the precipice all round, and the only entrance is by steps running up the side of the rock, defended on the side next the country by a wall and ballions, and further guarded by seven stone gateways, at certain distances from each other. The area within is full of noble buildings, reservoirs of water, wells, and cultivated land; so that it is really a little district in itself. At the north-west foot of the mountain is the town, pretty large, well-built, the houses all of stone. To have besieged this place would have been vain; for nothing but a surprise or blockade could have carried it.

"A tribe of banditti, from the district of the Rana, had been accustomed to rob about this town, and once in the dead of night had climbed up the rock, and got into the fort. This intelligence they had communicated to the Rana, who often thought of availing himself of it, but was fearful of undertaking an enterprise of such moment with his own troops. At length he informed Major Popham of it, who sent a party of the robbers to conduct some of his own spies to the spot: they accordingly climbed in the night, and found that the guards generally went to sleep after their rounds. Major Popham now ordered ladders to be made, but with so much secrecy, that, until the night of the surprise, only myself and a few others knew of it.

"On the 3d of August, in the evening, a party was ordered to be in readiness to march, under the command of Captain William Bruce; and Major Popham put himself at the head of two battalions, which were immediately to follow the storming party. To prevent, as much as possible, any noise in approaching or ascending the rock, kind of shoes, of woollen cloth, were made for

AVELS.

Chumbully; the road was deep hollow-ways. Hav-
Hodges encamped under
rt, which had been lately
od, by Madajee Scindia,
Hodges and his people
the governor here, who,
Mr. Hod), to enter the
e to purchase grain and

Hodges arrived at Nura-
with an old stone fort in it,
small nullah (a branch of
seven tall, narrow-pointed
ns, raised upon the bridges
omes, are at the extremes
and small cones, all built
bridge, and finished with
xtremes of the other two
ed at Gwalior on the 2d.
or even a hut was to be
om Dohlpoor.

situated on the top of a
n a perfect flat country.
derable hills. The rock
from nature or art, per-
At the north-west end is
ith a chain of seven gates
foot of the mountain. A
which is large, containing
of some good houses.

on of the curious, we shall
Jonathan Scott's, to his
of the capture of Gwalior,
vere taken of penetrating
Captain Jonathan Scott was
reter to Major Popham.
or stands on a vast rock of
gth; hut narrow, and of
arly flat on the top. The

ppear almost perpendicular
it was not naturally so, it
and the height, from the
hundred to three hundred
forms to the edge of the
t the only entrance is by
of the rock, defended on
ry by a wall and battions,
y seven stone gateways,
n each other. The area
ildings, reservoirs of water,
nd, so that it is really a
t the north-west foot of the
retty large, well-built, the
have besieged this place
for nothing but a surprise
carried it.

om the district of the Rana,
rob about this town, and
t had climbed up the rock,
This intelligence they had
ana, who often thought of
out was fearful of under-
such moment with his own
formed Major Popham of
e robbers to conduct some
e spot: they accordingly
l found that the guards ge-
ter their rounds. Major
adders to be made, but with
until the night of the sur-
few others knew of it.

t, in the evening, a party
eadiness to march, under
in William Bruce; and
nself at the head of two
immediately to follow the
event, as much as possible,
g or ascending the rock, a
len cloth, were made for

the

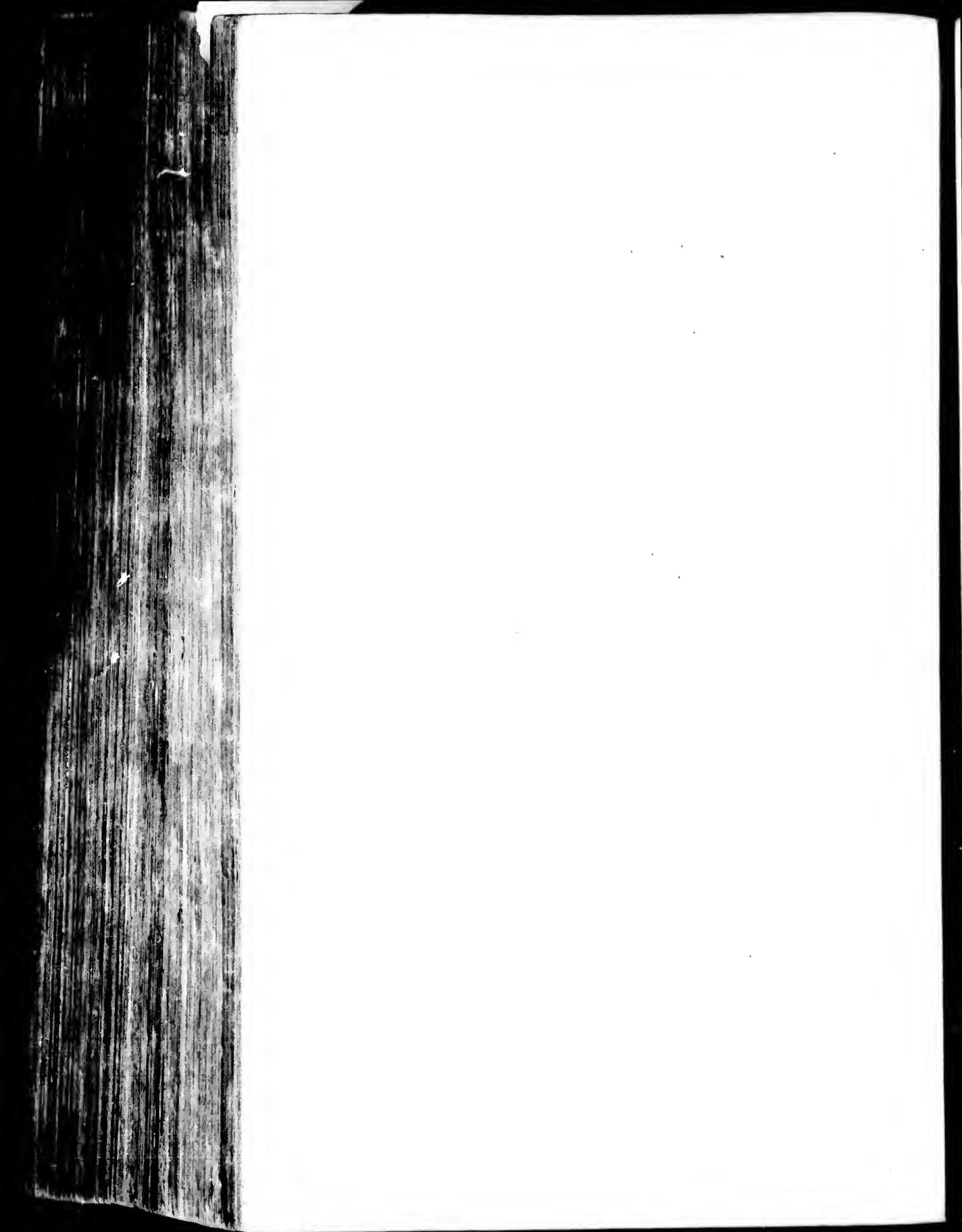
the



*The HIGH PRIEST of the GAURES or PERSIANS performing their
RITUAL SERVICE before the FIRE.*

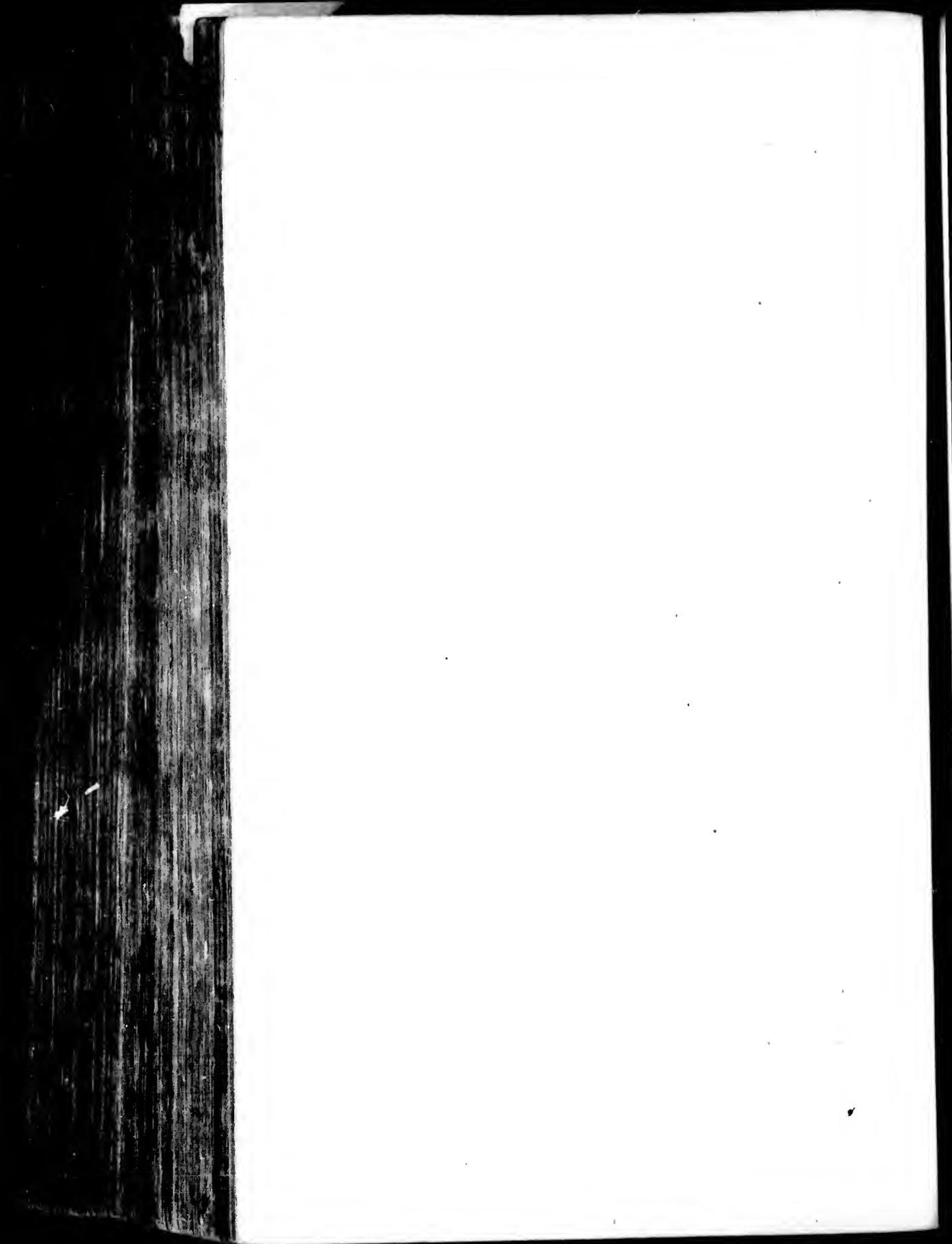


*HEADS of different GAURIAN PRIESTS, with their MITRES on,
and their MOUTHS covered.*



The BAPTISMAL CEREMONIES of the Queen-Purana's Palace in PERSIA.





the Seapoys, and luffed with cotton. At eleven o'clock the whole detachment moved from the camp at Reypoor, eight miles from Gwalior, through unfrequented paths, and reached it a little before day-break. Just as Capt. Bruce arrived at the foot of the rock, he saw the lights which accompanied the rounds moving along the ramparts, and heard the centinels cough (the mode of signifying that all is well in an Indian camp or garrison) which might have damped the spirits of many men, but served only to inspire him with more confidence, as the moment for action, that is, the interval between the passing of the rounds was now ascertained: accordingly, when the lights were gone, the wooden ladders were placed against the rock, and one of the robbers first mounted, and returned with an account that the guard was retired to sleep. Lieut. Cameron, our engineer, next mounted, and tied a rope ladder to the battlement of the wall; this kind of ladder being the only one adapted to the purpose of scaling the wall in a body (the wooden ones only serving to ascend the crag of the rock, and to assist in fixing the rope ladder). When all was ready, Capt. Bruce, with twenty Seapoy grenadiers, assembled without being discovered, and squatted down under the parapet; but, before a reinforcement arrived, three of the party had so little recollection as to fire on some of the garrison, who happened to be lying asleep near them; this had nearly ruined the whole plan: the garrison were of course alarmed, and ran in great numbers towards the place; but, ignorant of the strength of the assailants (as the men fired on had been killed outright) they suffered themselves to be stopped by the warm fire kept up by the small party of grenadiers, until Major Popham himself, with a considerable reinforcement, came to their aid. The garrison then retreated to the inner buildings, and discharged a few rockets, but soon afterwards retreated precipitately through the gate; whilst the principal officers, thus deserted, assembled together in one house, and hung out a white flag. Major Popham sent an officer to give them assurance of quarter and protection; and thus, in the space of two hours, this important and astonishing fortress was completely in our possession: we had only twenty men wounded, and none killed. On the side of the enemy, Bajpgee, the governor, was killed, and most of the principal officers were wounded.

This celebrated and ancient fortress is situated in the heart of Hindostan Proper, the ancient capital of the empire, about eighty miles to the south of Agra, and 130 from the nearest part of the Ganges: from Calcutta, by the nearest route, upwards of 800, by the ordinary road 910; and from the British frontiers 280. Some time after the circumstances already mentioned, the fort was delivered up to the Rana of Gohd: the peace being agreed on, though not finally settled, between the British government and Scindia, the chief found an opportunity to invest it once more, and was at this time before the place with 70,000 men: his success in reducing it was entirely owing to the treachery of one of the Rana's officers, who admitted a party of the Maharatta troops.

Mr. Hodges acknowledges the great attention and kindness of Messrs. Anderson's, who were then in Scindia's camp, forming the treaty of peace and alliance between the English company and Madejee Scindia, which was concluded afterwards in a very able manner. Mr. Anderson had sent for our traveller's protection an escort of Maharatta horse, which, considering the then dangerous situation of the country, was absolutely necessary; indeed, owing to the late of Gwalior at this time, Mr. Hodges was prevented from making further observations. After a stay of ten days, he was determined to pursue his journey to Lucknow with all possible expedition; accordingly he set off at night on the 12th, by dank-

bearers, leaving his servants to follow with his baggage at leisure, and reached Gohd the next day, where he stopped a few hours for refreshment.

At Gohd Mr. Hodges met an Englishman, who had been a Watch-Maker, but now commanded two battalions of the Rana's infantry. This person seemed heartily tired of his military profession, and was desirous to return to his former occupation, having now made some little property in the Rana's service, with which he wished much to retreat, but not being suffered to depart, had no means of conveying it, and therefore requested Mr. Hodges to take charge of a casket for him to Lucknow, and deliver it to his friend; with which request Mr. Hodges readily complied, though, had he foreseen the dismal, dreary, dusky, and barren country he had to pass through, he owns he would have been extremely averse to the undertaking. He met with no villages, or scarcely any human being, till he reached Chumbull, the banks of which river are very high, descending through deep ravines, where there are some huts; and here every person he met had a savage-like appearance. Mr. Hodges was two days and a night on his journey from Gwalior to Etawa: having suffered much on account of the extreme heat, he felt considerable satisfaction on reaching Etawa.

Mr. Hodges arrived at Lucknow on the 16th, but owing to the great heat and fatigue of the journey, he was taken exceedingly ill of a violent dysentery, his recovery from which was very tedious. He stayed with Colonel Polier ten days, and experienced much attention and hospitality from that gentleman, he was, however, obliged to accept of an invitation from Colonel Merlin, who had a large brick house, where he gradually recovered; the house of his former friend (Colonel Polier) being exceedingly hot, as it was only a large bungelow. These bungalows are buildings in India, generally raised on a base of brick, one, two, or three feet from the ground, and consist only of one story; the following is the common plan. A large room in the centre for an eating and sitting-room and rooms at each corner for sleeping; one general thatch which comes low to each side, covers the whole; the space between the angle rooms are verandahs or open porticoes, to sit in during the evenings; the centre hall is lighted from the sides with windows and a large door in the centre; sometimes the centre verandahs at each end are converted into rooms.

As soon as Mr. Hodges had recovered his health and strength, he was determined to return towards Calcutta, but instead of travelling the same route by which he came, resolved to pass down the river Goomty by water; accordingly he left Lucknow on the 16th of July, but did not enter the Ganges, into which the river Goomty falls, till August the 11th, owing to the several windings of the river.

The banks of the river Goomty are in several places extremely beautiful, and particularly so at this time of the year, when they display fine verdure, and are formed of smooth sloping vegetable earth. Several villages are on its banks between Lucknow and the town of Jionpoor, but which are not so well cultivated, as might be expected from the apparent number of inhabitants. A safeguard is absolutely necessary in a voyage down this river, on account of the various depredations continually made here. Mr. Hodges saw a body of about fifty horse near a village of Sultenpoor, which belonged to a famous marauder, Rah Sing, whose robberies had rendered him an universal nuisance. This party of plunderers watched Mr. Hodges's boats the whole of one night, but they were disappointed in their views, through the vigilance of the Seapoys, and disappeared entirely at day-break.

The fort of Jionpoor, a very extensive building, is situated on a high land, and which commands the bridge. This now, is for the most part in ruins, though formerly it commanded the country from the Ganges to Lucknow entirely; both in respect to superior

strength and natural situation. Sultan Firoz Shah erected it in 1102, and once it was the seat of an empire. The great masjid or mausoleum now remaining, was built by Chaja Jehan, vizier to Sultan Mahmud Shah, during the minority of his son, when he assumed the title of Sultan Shicke (king of the east) took possession of Bahar, and fixed his residence at Jionpoor. This mausoleum he intended for his own and family's interment. In its present ruinous state it is a great pyramid in the front, which is covered with ornaments; the pyramid, the apex being cut off, is blunt at the top; a dome rises over the centre of the building (wherein are the remains of the tombs) considerably below the front of the building, which is seen from without. It also appears from the foundations now only remaining, that there has been a square of buildings in the front.

The stone bridge crossing the river at this place, consisting of sixteen pointed arches, is in tolerable good repair. There are several little shops erected of stone on both sides, on the top of the bridge. This bridge, as appears from a Persian inscription thereon, was founded in 1567, by Khan Khannab, vizier to the Emperor Achar, and Subeh of the province of Oul. The length of time, and particularly the force of the stream (which, in the time of the rains is very great) that this bridge has withstood, sufficiently evince the sound materials of its construction. It has been known that the inundations have frequently risen above the bridge, particularly in 1771, when a whole brigade (which consists of 10,000 men) of the British forces passed in boats over it. This river falls into the Ganges some small distance below the city of Benares, when Mr. Hodges proceeded straight to Buxar.

Mr. Hodges was now resolved to make a journey to Salleram, forty miles inland, the birth place of the Emperor Shere Shah, to visit the mausoleum of that emperor. The rains being now in season, it was with the greatest difficulty he passed in his palanquin; the whole ground was one continued swamp, and the bearers waded in several places above their middle in water.

This monument is exceedingly grand; it rises from the centre of a large square lake, each side bounded by masonry and descending to the water by stone steps on every side, now almost gone to ruin. Mr. Hodges imagines that it exceeds a mile. The plan is as follows: there is a square base rising from the centre of the lake, which, at each angle, has pavilions crowned with domes, and finished with a cullus. There was a bridge from this base, which appears from the now remaining ruins, to have consisted of six pointed arches, which communicated to the side of the lake, and a double flight of steps to the water on two sides. An octagon building is raised on the base, which has three pointed arches in each face, and there are pavilions finished like the former on each angle. There runs somewhat behind this an octagon with one window in each side, and pavilions on the angles similar to those below. There is likewise an octagon behind this, which, in diameter, is ninety-two feet, and from the extremes, the dome rises, which, on the top is finished by a small pavilion, similar to those already mentioned.

At present a great part of this building is covered with shrubs and trees, which have taken root within the stones, and threaten to bring this grand edifice very speedily to ruin, if not very suddenly to a total overthrow. The inside of the building is quite simple and plain; there are no traces whatever of any ornaments having been bestowed thereupon. The emperor's tomb is still remaining. It lies in the centre, surrounded with several others which belong to his children. The dome, which is now, by length of time and neglect, much disfigured, is like the rest of the building, of a fine grey free stone. The country, throughout the vicinities, is hilly: there are hills

surrounding the lakes which are formed by the excavations when it was first made; the majority of these are at present covered with trees.

Mr. Hodges, on his return to Buxar, proceeded to Bauglepoor, where he was very much grieved to find his friend Mr. Cleveland on his death-bed. This gentleman not having paid a proper attention to a delicate constitution, but so attached to public business, that, by a constant and incessant application thereto, he postponed the only salutary expedient of a more favourable climate, now died in the course of three months on board a vessel at the mouth of the Ganges, wherein he had embarked for the Cape of Good Hope. His remains were brought back in the pilot vessel, which had attended the ship, and were interred at Bauglepoor, where a handsome monument was erected to his memory; the last tribute his much afflicted friends could pay.

Mr. Hodges now proceeds to give his impartial opinion of the arts in India; there are no instances of excellence, he thinks, in sculpture among the Moors, except in the Taj Mahel at Agra, wherein there are flowers carved with much taste and ingenuity.

The amazing monuments still to be found in India, sufficiently declare the Mussulman conquerors to have been great adepts in the principles of architecture, and to have had considerable taste for grand composition. They are, in painting, however, confined to miniature, wherein, for delicacy of colour and neatness of execution, they are excellent. Their attempts are only in water colours, and as the religion of Mahomet forbids all resemblance of animated nature, it is not to be wondered that their progress therein is so slow and confined.

Mr. Hodges thinks the Hindoos superior to the Mahometans in the ornamental parts of architecture. In several of their buildings the sculpture is beautifully executed, and being cut with a peculiar sharpness and finely drawn, is deserving of great commendation. However, their paintings, which like their sculpture, are, for the most part, representations of those objects they make their religious worship, are inferior to the Moorish pictures, which are all portraits.

Mr. Hodges arrived at Calcutta on September the 24th, the time of travel was nine months and fourteen days. This journey was through a country which had been once subject to the Moguls: "Truly," Mr. Hodges says, "the greatest and richest empire," perhaps, of which the human annals can produce "an instance, and which was adorned by many really great characters in politics and arms."

Our traveller had entertained the intention of undertaking another journey from the Ganges, through the Deccan to the western coast of India. This journey he intended to have commenced at Benares and finished at Surat. Mr. Hodges strongly recommends such a journey to the attention of any artist who may hereafter be induced to visit India; this being a part unexplored, and which would, of course, afford much matter relative to the state of India, as several of the Rajahs in that part of the country are in possession of lands handed down from the earliest period of the Hindoos records. He also judges, from what he has seen of the Hindoos character, that such an undertaking would add considerably to their stock of knowledge, relative to the eastern continent, and might with the greatest safety be carried into execution.

Having now accomplished these interesting TRAVELS IN INDIA, we shall proceed with the four great Journals of Lieutenant Patterson into the country of the Hottentots and Caffraria; and trust, while we present our numerous readers with novel facts and curious discoveries, they will still approve of, and be further pleased with our collection.

TRAVELS.

are formed by the exa-
le; the majority of the
rees.

arn to Buxar, proceeded
as very much grieved
d on his death-bed. This
a proper attention to a
attached to public busi-
and incessant application
nly salutary expedient of
now died in the course of
ffel at the mouth of the
mbarked for the Cape of
were brought back in the
ended the ship, and were
here a handsome monu-
mentary; the last tribute la-
pay.

eds to give his imparal
there are no instances of
dispute among the Moors,
Agra, whereon there are
aste and ingenuity.

still to be found in India,
Mullulman conquerors to
the principles of architec-
siderable taste for great
painting, however, com-
y, for delicacy of colour
they are excellent. Their
colours, and as the reh-
all resemblance of animat-
undered that their prog-
red.

Hindoos superior to the
ntal parts of architecture,
gs the sculpture is bound-
nt with a peculiar sharp-
deserving of great con-
their paintings, which, like
most part, representations
e their religious worship,
h pictures, which are all

alcutta on September the
as nine months and four-
was through a country
d to the Moguls: "This
eatell and richest empire,
man annals can produce
is adorned by many reas-
s and arms."

ined the intention of in-
rom the Ganges, through
coast of India. This jour-
nnenced at Benares and
ges strongly recommenda-
ion of any artist who may
India; this being a part
ld, of course, afford mudi
of India, as several of the
ountry are in possession of
he earliell period of the
judges, from what he la-
eter, that such an under-
y to their flock of know-
rn continent, and might
arried into execution.

*These interesting TRAVELS
with the four great journeys
the country of the Hindoos
we present our numerous
various discoveries, they will
be pleased with our collection.*

A COMPLETE,



. I . MALABAR



. I . TARTAR



. In . ALGERINE



. I . JAPANESE



. A . HIGHLANDER



. In . HUNGARIAN



A COMPLETE, NEW, AND AUTHENTIC
HISTORY OF
TRAVELS in AFRICA;

Undertaken and performed in the Years 1777, 1778, and 1779,

By Lieut. **WILLIAM PATTERSON,**

Being a **GENUINE NARRATIVE** of his **FOUR REMARKABLE JOURNEYS** into the
Country of the **HOTTENTOTS** and **CÄFFRARIA.**

Including the **Interesting PARTICULARS** of each **JOURNEY**, and **Full and Accurate ACCOUNTS** of
several **PARTS** of **AFRICA**, never before explored;

Being an **Entertaining and Circumstantial Relation** of several **CURIOUS ADVENTURES**, **PERILOUS ATTEMPTS**,
FORTUNATE ESCAPES, and various other **OCCURRENCES** contained in the **LETTERS, JOURNALS, &c.** of
LIEUTENANT PATTERSON, COLONEL GORDON, &c. with many **ILLUSTRATIVE REMARKS** by other
respective **TRAVELLERS.**

I N T R O D U C T I O N .

THE regions of Africa, which lie south of the equinoctial line, are, for the greater part, unknown. The Romans having been content with the spoils of those provinces which bordered on the Mediterranean and Red Seas, looked upon the other parts as barren and unworthy of their consideration; accordingly left them, as they were, obscure. The spirit of inquiry seemed to have entirely subsided; for even in the 16th century John Leo was ignorant of at least one half of this part of the world.

The laudable curiosity of penetrating into the several wonders, and hitherto unknown productions of nature, induced our hero (Lieut. W. Patterson) to leave a-while his native country, and explore the dreary deserts of Africa, which had not as yet stimulated ambition nor induced the friends of commerce to examine those wild and scorching regions which were only inhabited by venomous reptiles and ravenous beasts.

The time of the lieutenant's arrival at the Cape of Good Hope, was about the middle of May 1777: they anchored in the Bay False; for, as the season was very late, and the state of the weather, at this time, (being that of the setting in of the quoad monsoon or winter) very variable, their passage into Table-Bay could not be effected with security. In a short time after their arrival there was a very heavy fall of rain, and the hills near the Cape, were, towards the end of the month, for several days, covered with

snow. Such unfavourable weather, of course, prevented our hero from making many observations, which otherwise he would have done; this time he therefore devoted to a few short excursions from the Cape Town, and the necessary preparation for a more extensive journey when the weather permitted.

Colonel Gordon (then captain) proposed to accompany Lieut. Patterson. This gentleman lately returned from Holland, as second in command, and appointed to succeed Colonel Du Phren, then commander in chief, was an old traveller, and had been in this country before in 1774. His information was extensive, and his knowledge of that country considerable, as he was well acquainted with the interior parts for near 1500 miles from the Cape; besides a thorough acquaintance of the Dutch language, he had also acquired that of the Hottentots, and having these advantages over many travellers, was certainly a desirable companion. Lieut. Patterson acknowledges, indeed, that he was particularly fortunate in meeting with him.

The lieutenant purposed to commence his first journey about the beginning of October, at which time the atmosphere is generally in a settled state and cultivation in maturity: he continually opened himself for his arduous undertaking, by several short excursions, which afforded him much amusement, and prepared him for those greater wonders and more interesting observations which were shortly to take place.

C H A P T E R I .

The first Journey—Departure from the Cape—Table Mountains, and Constantia Described—The Shore of Bay False explored—Description thereof—Of Hottentot Holland—Of Hang Lip—Proceed from Palmata Rivier to Knopneck Rivier—From thence to the How Hook—Description of the Hottentots—Their Dresses, Ornaments, Habitations, &c. &c.—Arrival at Zwelendam—Departure—Reed Valley—Proceed to Grandfather's Wood—Description thereof—Obama Land—Saffron River—Elephants River—The Waggon overturned—Arrival at Ojivick Leg—Proceed through Beer Valley—Meets an Old German—The Lieutenant's Indisposition—His Friend Gordon proceeds towards the Snow Mountain—The Lieutenant returns to Jsmeko—Meets with Savages—Their Behaviour—An agreeable Excursion—Arrive at Aquinas Kloef—Reach Sure Flatia—Proceed towards Liottique Land—White Elfe River—An Adventure among the Woods—Arrival at Cape Town.

HAVING sent their waggon before them, our travellers (Patterson and Gordon) departed from Cape Town, October the 6th, 1777. They proceeded along the bottom of the Table Mountain, which leads to Constantia.

Table Mountain, notwithstanding its situation, is rather low, and produces excellent wine; but Constantia is preferable to every other part of this district, not only on account of its elevated situation, but for the superiority of the soil, which is most excellent mould.
They

They passed the night at sand-fleet, where they experienced much hospitality, and also stayed here the next day on account of the unfavourable weather.

They proceeded on the 8th, along the bottom of Bay Falfe, from the point of Moefen-Berg, to very near Hottentot Holland, being a continuation of what is called the Sand-Down, which is a considerable space of ground between the Table-Bay and Bay Falfe. The greater part of this, on account of a white sand blown up by the south east winds in very large ridges, is uninhabited; there are, however, several scattered shrubs and other produce. A small fleet is near the middle of the bay, where our travellers having found some fishermen, hoped to regale themselves with oysters, but herein were disappointed, as they could not reach the banks on account of the violence of the surf; they rested at the hut about an hour, being much fatigued with the heat of the day.

About sun-set they arrived at Erf Rivier, (i. e. Frift River) which begins from the Stillen Bofch mountains, and here empties itself into Bay Falfe. On account of the late rains they had some difficulty in crossing it. When dark they heard several hyenas; at nine o'clock they reached Hottentot Holland. This is situated on the north-east side of the Bay Falfe, and surrounded on three sides by lofty mountains; it is, however, open to the south west, which affords a prospect of the Bay. Hottentot Holland's Kloaf is one of the most difficult passes there is into the country; it is a narrow road, cut through the hill (as the word Kloaf signifies) the top of which seems on a par with Table Land. The soil of Hottentot Holland is wet and marshy, but it produces good corn.

Having sent their baggage through Hottentot Holland's Kloaf, they went round the Hang Lip on the 12th, and examined all the rocks and bays in the mouth of the Bay Falfe. They took horse as far as possible, and Lieutenant Paterfon got a fall from his, upon the side of a very high precipice; he fortunately saved himself by laying hold of a shrub, which grew out of a rock; the rocks and mountains here are exceedingly rugged and unsafe. They reached the mouth of Stienbrallam river about noon, and in the morning came to a deep bay which was unknown. It is open to the north west, and being screened by lofty mountains, is well sheltered from the south-east winds. Our travellers called this Van Pletenbey's Bay. Here they agreed to stay all night, there being a small stream of excellent water, and having brought with them a portion of provisions and cloaks, in case of delay.

They pursued their journey next morning round the Hang Lip, or Cape Falfe; all the country from Hottentot to this place is uninhabited, as it entirely consists of rugged mountains and precipices. They passed Gordon's Bay, which, though the entrance is free from rocks and a fine white sandy bottom, is smaller than the first. About a mile and a half from this they came to Paterfon's Bay, which is larger than Gordon's Bay, but smaller than Van Pletenbey's Bay. Between Van Pletenbey's Bay and Gordon's Bay there is plenty of wood and lakes of fresh water. All these bays open to the north west and strike south inland. They passed Cape Falfe about two in the afternoon. Here to the S. E. is an extensive plain, covered with different kinds, but all very bad for feeding cattle. They saw a kind of antelope and several buffaloes. About evening they came to the mouth of Palmira Rivier, which it was with the greatest difficulty they could swim through, as the rains to the northward had raised it very high, and the current was exceedingly rapid. This night they had very heavy rain, attended with lightning and loud thunder. They reached Knoslick Kraal's Rivier about two in the morning. This river takes its name from a species of wild garlick, which is common there. On the first attempt which the lieutenant made to pass the river, he found himself out of his depth and got out with great difficulty, as it was exceedingly dark. Here they were obliged to stay till

day-light; in vain they attempted to kindle a fire, and the rain still continued very hard; they crossed the river as soon as ever they could see, and reached the house of Michael Otto, about nine in the morning, where they met with a very kind reception. Here they had their clothes dried, and refreshed themselves with sleep and provisions: they had been twenty-four hours without eating.

This place, situated between the Hottentot Holland mountains and the How-Hook (a steep sandy pass) produces very good wine and corn; but, though the soil be a fine rich mould, yet the pasture is coarse and does not agree with cattle in general. They proceeded, at two o'clock, on their journey through the How-Hook, where they met with a gentleman on his return to the Cape, who had been at Zwelendam. This gentleman forewarned them of the lions which are lurking about between this place and the Cape. When they had parted, our travellers crossed the Bott Rivier, and arrived at the Swart Berg, or Black Hill, about eight in the evening, where there is a warm bath. Here were several people from the Cape, using the water of the bath, which, in all cases, they imagine a specific. The hill whence the spring issues, is composed of a species of granite, with a good deal of iron. There is another bath at a little distance for slaves and Hottentots. That used by Europeans is 130 degrees in temperature, but by a stream of cold water, which runs close by the place, may be reduced to any degree of heat; the other, used by the slaves, &c. is about 115 degrees. There is excellent pasture here, and the country very pleasant.

They next directed their course eastward, a number of pleasant farms, and, in a day's journey, arrived at the first Hottentot Kraal, which consisted of about six huts, built in a circular form.

The Hottentots are as tall as the generality of Europeans; they are, in general, more slender, on account of their being either stunted in foot, or unaccustomed to exercise. Their hands and feet, compared with the other parts of their body, are very small. The root of the nose is, for the most part, very low, by which means the distance of the eyes from each other appears to be greater than in Europeans. The tip of the nose likewise is pretty flat. The iris is scarcely ever of a light colour, but has a dark brown cast, which sometimes approaches to black. Their skin is of a yellowish brown hue, which somewhat resembles that of an European who has the jaundice in a high degree; however, this colour is not in the least observable in the whites of the eyes. One does not find such thick lips among the Hottentots as among their neighbours the Negroes, the Caffres, and the Mozambiques. In fine, their mouths are of a middling size, and almost always furnished with a set of the finest teeth that can be seen; and, taken together with the rest of their features, as well as their shape, carriage, and every motion, in short their countenance, indicates health and content, or at least an air of easy ease. At the same time, this careless mien discovers marks of alacrity and resolution, qualities which the Hottentots, in fact, can exhibit upon occasion. Their heads one would suppose to be covered with a black, though not very close, frizzled kind of wool, if the natural harshness of it did not show, that it was hair, if possible, more woolly than that of the negroes. If in other respects there should, by great chance, be observed any traces of a beard, or of hair on any other parts of the body, such as are seen on the Europeans, it is, however, very trifling, and generally of the same kind as that on the head.

The women have no parts unbecoming to the rest of their sex. With respect to their dress, and method of painting themselves, the latter (if painting it may be called) consists in besmearing their bodies all over most copiously with fat, in which there is mixed up a little foot. This is never wiped off; on the contrary, they never used any thing to clean their skins, excepting



cepting that when, in greasing the wheels of their waggons, their hands were besmeared with tar and pitch, they used to get it off very easily with cow-dung, at the same time rubbing their arms into the bargain up to the shoulders with this cosmetic; so that as the dust and other filth, together with their footy ointment and the sweat of their bodies, must necessarily, notwithstanding it is continually wearing off, in some measure adhere to the skin, it contributes not a little to conceal the natural hue of the latter, and at the same time to change it from a bright amber-brown to a brownish-yellow colour obscured with filth and nastiness.

Besides the pleasure the Hottentots enjoy in besmearing their bodies from head to foot, they likewise perfume themselves with powder of herbs, with which they powder their heads and bodies, rubbing it in all over them when they besmear themselves. The odour of it is at the same time rank and aromatic, and seems to come nearest to that of the poppy mixed with spices.

The Hottentots, with their skins besmeared with grease and foot, and bucku-powder, are by this means in a great measure defended from the influence of the air, and may in a manner reckon themselves dressed. In other respects, both men and women are wont to appear quite undressed; indeed, one may say naked, except a trifling covering, with which they always conceal part of their bodies. With the men this covering consists of a bag or purse made of skin, hanging quite open, the hollow part of which seems designed to receive that which with us modesty requires to be concealed; but as this piece of furniture is only fastened by a small part of its upper end to a narrow belt, in other respects hanging quite loose, it is but a very imperfect concealment; and when the wearer is walking, or otherwise in motion, it is none at all. They call this purse by the Dutch name of Jackall, the name of an animal of the fox kind common in that country, as it is almost always prepared of the skin of this creature, with the hairy side turned outward. As another covering, which decency requires of the men, we ought, perhaps, to consider the two leather straps, which generally hang from the bottom of the chine of the back down upon the thighs; each of them being of the form of an Isosceles triangle, with their points or upper ends fastened to the belt just mentioned, and with their bases, at further three fingers broad, hanging carelessly down. These straps have very little dressing belloyed upon them, so that they make somewhat of a rattling as the Hottentot runs along; and probably by fanning him, serve to produce an agreeable coolness. The only and real intention, however, of this part of their dress, is said to be to close a certain orifice when they sit down. They are at that time likewise brought forwards, so as to cover the little flap above described; for, they say, these parts should by no means be uncovered when one sits, especially at meals. Nevertheless, they have been observed sometimes to neglect this decent custom.

Among the Hottentots, as well as in all probability among the rest of mankind dispersed over the whole globe, we must acknowledge the fair sex to be the most modest; for the females of this nation, cover themselves much more scrupulously than the men. They seldom content themselves with one covering, but almost always have two, and very often three. These are made of a prepared and well-greased skin, and are fastened about their bodies with a thong, almost like the aprons of our ladies. The outermost is always the largest, measuring from about six inches to a foot over. This is likewise generally the finest and most showy, and frequently adorned with glass beads strung in different figures, in a manner that shows, even among the unpolished Hottentots, the superior neatness of the fair sex in works of ornament, as well as their powers of invention and their disposition to set off their persons to the best advantage. The outermost apron, which is

chiefly intended for show and parade, reaches about half way down the thighs. The middle one is about a third, or one half less, and is laid by them to be necessary by way of reserve, and as an additional intrenchment of modesty, when their gala-garment is laid aside. The third, or innermost, which is scarcely larger than one's hand, is said to be useful at certain periods, which are much less troublesome to the fair sex here than in Europe. All these aprons, however, even to that which is decorated with beads, are not less besmeared and greasy than their bodies. In fine, the garment worn by the Hottentots for covering their bodies is a sheep skin, with the woolly side turned inwards; this pelisse, or else a cloak made of some smaller fur, is tied forwards over the breast. When the weather is not cold, they let it hang loose over their shoulders in a careless manner, when it reaches down to the calves of the legs, leaving the lower part of the legs and thighs bare; but in rainy and cold weather they wrap it round them; so that the fore part of the body likewise, is in some measure covered with it as far as below the knees. As one sheep-skin alone is not sufficient for this purpose, there is a piece sewed, or rather fastened on with a thong, sinew, or catgut, to the top of each side. In warmer weather they wear this cloak sometimes with the hair side outwards, but in that case they often take it off entirely and carry it on their arms. In general, the Hottentots do not burden themselves with a great many changes of their cloaks or Krosses, (as they call them in broken Dutch) but are content with one which serves them at the same time for clothing and bedding; and in this they lie on the bare ground, drawing themselves up in a heap so close, especially when the weather is cold, that this Kros (as they call it) or Karofs, is quite sufficient to cover them. The cloak, or Karofs, which is used by the women for the same purpose, does not differ from those used by the men in any other respect, than that the women have a long peak to their Karoffs, which they turn up, forming with it a hood or little pouch, with the hairy side inwards; in this they carry their little children, to which they now and then give the breast over their shoulders, a practice that likewise prevails with some other nations. The men in general wear no peculiar covering on their heads. A few have been seen that had a cap made of greased skin, the fur of which had been taken off in the preparation. Those who live nearest to the colonists, fancy the European hats, wearing them slouched all round, or else with one side turned up. The women in like manner frequently go bare-headed. When they cover their heads, it is with a cap in the form of a short truncated cone. It is made without any seam, of the sedgment of some animal's stomach, and is as black as foot mixed up with fat can make it. These are frequently so prepared, as to look as if they were slaggy, and others again to resemble velvet, and upon the whole make a tolerably handsome appearance. Over this cap they sometimes wear another ornament, consisting of an oval wreath, or, a crown made of a buffalo's hide, with the brown hair upwards. This is about four fingers in height, and surrounds the head so as to reach a little way down upon the forehead, and the same depth in the neck behind, without covering the upper part of the cap above described. Both the rims of this wreath, as well as the lower one on which it rests, as the upper one, are always smooth and even, and each of them set with a row of small shells, of the Cypræa kind, to the number of more than thirty, in such a manner, that being placed quite close to each other, their beautiful white enamel, together with their mouths, is turned outwards. Between these two rows of shells run one or two more in a parallel line, or else waved or indented in various fancies. It may easily be imagined, what a pretty effect these shells have, projecting from the brown fur of the buffalo's skin, and at the same time, with what additional charms a greatly Hottentot dame appears in

one of these caps and wreaths, which, however, is to the full as greasy as herself.

The ears of the Hottentots are never adorned with any pendant or other ornament hanging from them, any more than the nose, as they both are among other savages; this latter, however, is sometimes, by way of greater state, marked with a black streak of foot, or, more rarely indeed, with a large spot of red-lead; of which latter, on high days and holidays, they likewise put a little on their cheeks. The necks of the men are bare, but those of the women are decorated with what is, in their opinion, a great ornament. It consists of a thong of undressed leather, upon which are strung eight or ten shells. Appearing collectively in the form of a necklace, they certainly adorn the greasy part they are hung upon, though perhaps not in proportion to the price at which they are obtained; for these shells are commonly sold for not less than a sheep a piece, as it is said they are to be had no where else than on the most distant coast of Caffraria.

Another ornament in use with both sexes, is rings on their arms and legs. Most of these rings are made of thick leather thaps, generally cut in a circular shape, which by being beat and held over the fire, are rendered tough enough to retain the curvature that is given them. It is these rings that have given rise to the almost universally received notion, that the Hottentots wrap guts about their legs, in order to eat them occasionally. The men wear from one to five or six of these rings on their arms, just above the wrist, but seldom any on their legs. The matrons of a higher rank frequently have a considerable number of them both on their arms and legs, especially on the latter, so that they are covered with them from the feet up to their knees. These rings are of various thicknesses, viz. sometimes to that of a goose-quill, and sometimes two or three times that size. Now and then they are made of pieces of leather, forming one entire ring, so that the arms and feet must be put through them when the wearer wishes to put them on. Upon the legs they are strung on, small and great, one with another, without any peculiar nicety; and are so much larger than the legs, as to shake off and get twisted, when the wearer walks or is otherwise in motion. It may easily be imagined, that these rings give the good Hottentot matrons a world of trouble, as well in the wear as in the preparation; and at the same time are not a little clumsy and ponderous, not to mention several other inconveniencies. But such is the peculiar turn of mankind, that from the Hottentot, as unconstrained as rude in his manners, to those nations which carry the arts and sciences to the highest degree of perfection, people are universally apt to fall into such modes of dress, as are not only useless, but likewise in a great measure imprison their limbs and bodies. Rings of iron or copper, but especially of brass, of the size of a goose-quill, are considered as genteeler or more valuable than those made of leather. They are, however, sometimes worn along with these latter, to the number of six or eight at a time, particularly on the arms. The girls are not allowed to use any rings, till they are marriageable. We are informed that a traveller, who was passing through the district of Zwelendam, endeavoured to assail the chastity of a Hottentot girl, about sixteen or seventeen years of age, but in every other respect quite a woman: it is said, however, she refused his presents and offers, principally for this reason, that the old people in her craal had not yet invested her with the privilege of wearing rings. Whether this same law prevails in every craal, is not ascertained; but it does not seem extremely probable that the girls in every craal are so obedient to the laws. The Hottentots seldom wear any shoes; when they do, the leather of them is undressed, with the hairy side outwards, and undergoes no other preparation, than that of being beat and moistened. If it be of a thick or stout sort, as for example, of buffalo's hide, it is besides kept

some hours in cow-dung, by which means it is rendered very soft and pliable; afterwards some kind of grease is made use of for the same purpose. The shoes are then made of this leather in the following manner: they take a piece of leather of a rectangular form, something longer and broader than the foot of the person for whom the shoes are intended. The two foremost corners are doubled up together, and sewed down, so as to cover the forepart of the foot. This seam may be avoided, and the shoes may be made much neater at the toes, by fitting immediately over them a cap taken from the membrane in the knee joint of the hind leg of some animal. Now, in order to make this piece of skin or leather rise up to the height of an inch on both sides of the foot, and close it in neatly, it is pierced with holes at small distances all round the edge, as far as the hind-quarters, and through these holes is passed a thong, by which the rim is drawn up into gathers; further, in order to make strong hind-quarters, the back part of the piece of leather is doubled inwards, and then raised up and pressed along the heel. The ends of the thong, or gathering-string, are then threaded on both sides through the upper edge of the hind-quarters to the height of about two inches; they are then carried forwards, in order to be drawn through two of the above-mentioned holes on the inside of each rim. They are then tied over the instep, or, if it be thought necessary to tie the shoe still faster, they are carried crossways over the instep, and so downwards under the thong, which comes out from the hind-quarters, then upwards again over the ankle, and even round the leg itself, if the wearer chooses.

Shoes of this kind are certainly not without their advantages. They fit as neat upon the foot as a stocking, and at the same time preserve their form. They are easily kept soft and pliable, by constantly wearing them. Should they at any time grow rather hard above the edge, this is easily remedied by beating them and greasing them a little. They are extremely light and cool, by reason they do not cover so much of the foot as a common shoe does. They wear very well, as they are without any seam, and the soles, or rather bottoms of the shoes, are both tough and yielding. As shoes of the common tanned leather are burnt up, as it were, and are apt to slide about in the scorching African sands, and at the same time are easily torn in a stony and rocky soil, these field shoes, as they are called, made of almost raw leather, are much more durable. These may be likewise had at a much inferior price, as the leather used in the making of them is entirely undressed; and a man can make himself a pair of them in the space of an hour or two.

The Hottentots who live in these parts, or within the boundaries of the Dutch colonies, seldom make use of any weapons. Here and there, indeed, a man will furnish himself with a javelin, by way of defence against the wolves: this is called a Massagai. Their habitations are as their dress, and equally adapted to the wandering pastoral life they lead in those parts. In fact, they scarcely merit any other name than that of huts; though, perhaps, as spacious and eligible as the tents and dwelling-places were of the patriarchs of old, at least they are sufficient for the Hottentot's wants and desires; who may therefore be considered as a happy man, in being able in this point likewise so easily to satisfy them. The great simplicity of them is, perhaps, the reason, why in a Hottentot craal, or village, the huts are all built exactly alike; and that one meets there with a species of architecture, that does not a little contribute to keep envy from insinuating itself under their roofs. In fact, the equality of fortune and happiness in some measure enjoyed by these people, cannot but have a singular effect in preventing their breasts from being disturbed by this baneful passion. Every hut is disposed in the following manner. Some of them are of a circular, and others of an oblong shape, resembling a round beehive or a vault. The ground-plot is from eighteen

which means it is afterwards some kind of the same purpose. The leather in the following is broader than the foot of shoes are intended. The doubled up together, and the forepart of the foot, and the shoes may be, by fitting immediately on the membrane in the of some animal. Now, in skin or leather rise up to both sides of the foot, and proceed with holes at small, as far as the hind-quarters is passed a thong, by into gathers; further, in quarters, the back part of doubled inwards, and then the heel. The ends of ng, are then threaded on edge of the hind-quarter inches; they are then to be drawn through two es on the inside of each ver on the instep, or, if he shoe Bill faster, they are instep, and so downwards lines out from the hind-ain over the ankle, and the wearer chooses.

certainly not without their heat upon the foot as a time preserve their form, and pliable, by constantly at any time grow rather easily remedied by bean a little. They are ex- reason they do not cover common shoe does. They without any seam, and the the fibres, are both tough e common tanned leather d are apt to slide about in and at the same time are cky soil, these field shoes, f almost raw leather, are e may be likewise had at the leather used in the undressed; and a man can n in the space of an hour

to twenty-four feet in diameter. The highest of them are so low, that even in the centre of the arch, it is scarcely ever possible for a middle-sized man to stand upright. But neither the lowness of the hut, or that of the door, which is barely three feet high, can perhaps be considered as any inconvenience to a Hottentot, who finds no difficulty in stooping and crawling on all fours, and who is at any time more inclined to lie down than stand. The fire place is in the middle of each hut, by which means the walls are not so much exposed to danger from fire. From this situation of their fire-place, the Hottentots likewise have this additional advantage, that when they sit or lie in a circle round the fire, the whole company equally enjoys the benefit of its warmth. The door, low as it is, is the only place that lets in the day-light; and, at the same time, the only outlet that is left for the smoke. The Hottentot, injured to it from his infamy, sees it hover round him, without feeling the least inconvenience arising from it to his eyes: while, rolled up like a hedgehog, and wrapped up snug in his skin, he lies at the bottom of his hut, quite at his ease in the middle of his cloud, excepting that he is now and then obliged to peep out from beneath his sheep-skin in order to stir the fire, or perhaps to light his pipe, or else sometimes to turn the steak he is broiling over the coals. The materials for these huts are by no means difficult to be procured; and the manner of putting them together being both neat and artificial, merits commendation in a Hottentot, and is very suitable to his character. The frame of this arched roof is composed of slender rods or sprays of trees. These rods, being previously bent into a proper form, are laid, either whole or pieced, some parallel with each other, others crosswise; they are strengthened, by binding others round them in a circular form with withies. These withies, as well as the rods themselves, are taken chiefly from the Clifortia Conoides, which grows plentifully in this country near the rivers. Large mats are then laid very neatly over this lattice-work, so as perfectly to cover the whole. The aperture which is left for the door is closed, whenever there is occasion for it, with a skin fixed to it, or a piece of matting. These mats are made of a kind of cane or reed, the reeds, being laid parallel to each other, are fastened together with sinews or catgut, or else some kind of packthread, such as they have had an opportunity of procuring from the Europeans. They have it, therefore, in their power, to make their mats as long as they choose, and at the same time as broad as the length of the rush will admit of, viz. from six to ten feet. This same kind of matting is now made use of likewise by the colonists, next to the tilts of their waggons, by way of preventing the sail-cloth from being rubbed and worn by them, as well as of assisting to keep out the rain. When a Hottentot has a mind to take his house down and remove his dwelling, he lays all his mats, skins, and sprays on the backs of his cattle, which to a stranger makes a monstrous unwieldy, and, indeed, ridiculous appearance. The order or distribution of these huts in a craal or clan, is most frequently in the form of a circle with the doors inwards; by this means a kind of yard or court is formed, where the cattle is kept on nights. The milk, as soon as taken from the cow, is put to other milk which is curdled, and is kept in a leather sack; of this the hairy side, being considered as the cleaner, is turned inwards: so that the milk is never drank while it is sweet. In certain northern districts, such as Roggeveld, or Bokkeveld, where the land is, as it is called, Carrow, or dry and parched, the Hottentots, as well as the colonists, are shepherds. The Hottentots of Hottentot-Kraal hire themselves, as they are wanted, to the Dutch.

Our travellers stayed all night at the Tyger-Hoch, a place belonging to the company. They proceeded in the morning eastward, through a flat country covered with pasture. They crossed in the afternoon the Breed Rivier, where there is a ferry, which having

likewise crossed, they arrived at Zwelldam, the residence of a chief justice.

Zwelldam lies under the chain of mountains which begin near the Bay Aldgoa, and take their direction west-north-west. They have a different climate here from that of the Cape, having instead of south-east winds, storms from the north-west. They delayed here a few days, it being the season that the farmers meet for exercising. The lieutenant, during this time, made several excursions through the woods, and along the mountains. On the 20th they departed from Zwelldam, and proceeded E. N. E. towards the Reed Valley. They crossed the Buffalye Agte Rivier (signifying a river to hunt buffaloes, for which it was formerly famous) about four in the afternoon. The river here winds to the southward, and joins the Breed Rivier. Having lost their road in the evening, it was with great trouble they reached Reed Valley, which is about twelve miles distant from Zwelldam, and 120 from the Cape. The Dutch Company have possession of this place, and employ it in breeding cattle. It produces a great quantity of wild fowl, particularly several kinds of partridges. Their waggon, which they overtook here, was so much out of repair, through the ruggedness of the way, they were obliged to stop a few days to repair it.

They left this on the 26th, and proceeded to Grandfather's-Wood, where a heavy shower of rain obliged them to stop for some hours. Having sent their waggon the best road to Plata-Kloaf, they went a nearer way themselves, but could not possibly ride, as the way was exceedingly slippery. When they had crossed Pidgeon-Houfe River, they arrived late in the evening at a farmer's house, which stood adjoining the Kloaf or pals. Their waggon did not arrive till the 28th.

This place, which is called the Land of Egypt, consists, to all appearance, of about thirteen farms, which are seemingly four or five miles distant from each other; they had some very good fruit, particularly oranges, here. The country is exceedingly fertile and delightful. They now proceeded to Channa Land, so called from a herb called Channa, used by the natives in smoking and chewing. Having now laid in a fresh supply, they pursued their journey; but the mountain proved so rugged, that on attempting to take the waggon over, it overset, but providentially sustained no injury. When they had attained the top of the mountain, they had a most delightful view of the sea and country. They now proceeded E. N. E. the road very disagreeable and rugged. In the evening they reached Rocky-River, where they staid all night, and purchased in the morning a sheep, at the price of three English shillings. Proceeding eastwards, they arrived at a peasant's house about three in the afternoon. The inhabitants, unaccustomed to strangers, were exceedingly shy, notwithstanding which they displayed much hospitality and good-nature.

On the 30th, early in the morning, they pursued their journey through a very disagreeable road, east half north, and reached the great river about one in the afternoon, where they dined. They then crossed the river, and came to another, Gold-River, in the evening. This river, on account of numerous large pools, is very dangerous to cross; it has a southerly direction, and empties itself to the westward of Catherina-Bay, in the Indian Ocean. They now proceeded, and were totally ignorant in the night where they were. At day-break they could see no inhabitants: advancing, however, towards the side of a small brook, where they had agreed to rest, they found themselves at Sleg Rivier (i. e. Snake-River). This day they travelled near forty miles. The next day they proceeded easterly through a very barren country, and reached in the afternoon a small establishment, situated under the Atguas Kloaf, on Saffron-River; they rested here all night.

Being supplied with a fresh store of provisions, they now proceeded N. N. E. towards Elephants-River.

River. At noon they reached a place called Poverty, and in the afternoon crossed it, where it was about half a mile broad. They travelled till very late this evening, and would have proceeded further, but the waggon having overturned, they were obliged to stop till it was day-light. The damage was not so great as was apprehended.

November 1, they proceeded E. by S. and arrived about eleven o'clock at an European's house, where they spent the day. Thence they proceeded easterly, and were directed to some hot baths, by observing two farmers making use of them. Having left this in the afternoon, they arrived at Tlimoko, or Ostrich Leg, in the evening. The inhabitants here are very kind; they are happy to see strangers, and ready to entertain them; they live chiefly on milk and flesh, and are totally ignorant of bread.

November 3, being supplied with a team of fresh cattle, they travelled the whole day, and perceiving fresh traces of lions, our travellers rode before the waggon with their guns loaded, in case of an attack. They reached a lake of brackish water about midnight, where they agreed to stay till morning; accordingly tied their cattle round the waggon, in order to secure them, and, to defend themselves from wild beasts, made fires on the outside all round them. There was very heavy rain, thunder, and lightning this night, which prevented them from enjoying much rest.

They proceeded early in the morning through an extensive plain called Beer-Valley, and reached some miserable huts (in the Hottentot style) about nine in the morning. They found here an old German, who having attached himself to one of the Hottentot tribes, and resided now upwards of twenty years with them, had acquired the same manners and dress.

The lieutenant being now in an ill state of health, was obliged to stay awhile with this old Hottentot-German, who accommodated him with a hut, and behaved to him with the utmost kindness; while Colonel Gordon, having parted with his friend, pursued his journey towards Snow Mountain. The lieutenant being somewhat recovered, took leave of the old German, and returned to Tlimoko, or Ostrich Leg, on the 11th. Here he stayed some time, for the purpose of exploring the mountains. Travelling is very dangerous here, there being several wild beasts, and particularly Boshiesmen, who take every opportunity of plundering the inhabitants of their cattle. The Boshiesmen are sworn enemies to the pastoral life. Some of their maxims are, to live on hunting and plunder, and never to keep any animal alive for the space of one night. By this means they render themselves odious to the rest of mankind, and are pursued and exterminated like the wild beasts, whose manners they have assumed. Others of them again are kept alive, and made slaves of. Their weapons are poisoned arrows, which, shot out of a small bow, will fly to the distance of two hundred paces; and will hit a mark with a tolerable degree of certainty, at the distance of fifty, or even a hundred paces. From this distance they can by stealth, as it were, convey death to the game they hunt for food, as well as to their foes, and even to so large and tremendous a beast as the lion: this noble animal thus falling by a weapon which, perhaps, it despised, or even did not take notice of. The Hottentot, in the mean time, concealed and safe in his ambush, is absolutely certain of the operation of his poison, which he always selects of the most virulent kind; and it is said, he has only to wait a few minutes, in order to see the wild beast languish and die.

Their bows are hardly a yard long, being at the same time scarcely of the thickness of an inch in the middle, and very much pointed at both ends. What kind of wood they are made of is unknown, but it does not seem to be of a remarkably elastic nature. The strings of the bows were made some of them of sinews, others of a kind of hemp, or the inner bark of some vegetable, and most of them are made in

a very slooply manner; which shows, that these archers depend more on the poison of the weapons, than on any exactness in the formation of them, or any other perfection in them. Their arrows are a foot and a half long. They are made of a reed one foot in length, which, at the base, or the end that receives the bow-string, has a notch of a proper size to fit it. Just above this notch there is a joint in the reed, about which strings made of sinews are wound, in order to strengthen it. The other end of the reed is armed with a highly polished bone, five or six inches long; At the distance of an inch or two from the tip of this bone, a piece of a quill is bound on very fast with sinews. This is done, in order that the arrow shall not be easily drawn out of the flesh; and thus there may be so much the longer time for the poison, which is spread on of a thick consistence like that of an extract, to be dissolved, and infect the wound. It is not common, however, for an arrow to be headed in the manner above-mentioned, with a pointed bone only; this latter being usually cut off square at the iron, and a thin triangular piece of iron fixed into it. In the state in which it is seen, as it makes part of the arrow, it is of a dark brown colour, full of small grooves and ribs, and does not appear ever to have been as white as ivory. Hence we may conclude, that on such arrows as are headed with iron, the bone is employed chiefly for giving this weapon a kind of weight and poise; and likewise, that these arrows cost the Hottentots a great deal of labour.

Their quivers are two feet long and four inches in diameter. They are made of a branch of a tree hollowed out; or, still more probable, of the bark of one of these branches taken off whole and entire, the bottom and cover to which are composed of leather. On the outside it is bedaubed with an unctuous matter, that grows hard when dry. The quivers are lined about the aperture with a serpent's skin; and, with the skin of the yellow serpent, which is considered as the most venomous of any in that country. Besides a dozen of arrows, every quiver contains a slender hone of sand-stone for whetting the iron head upon, and a brush for laying on the poison, together with a few wooden sticks, differing in thickness, but all of the same length with the arrows. For what use they are designed, cannot be ascertained. The poison is taken from several different kinds of serpents, the more venomous the better, whether their arrows are to be employed against their foes, or are only designed for shooting game; for the Hottentots know very well, that taken internally it is quite harmless.

The dwellings of these foes to a pastoral life are generally not more agreeable, than their maxims and manners. Like the wild beasts, bushes and chis in rocks by turns serve them instead of houses; and some of them are said to be so far worse than beasts, that their soil has been found close to their habitations. A great many of them are entirely naked; but such as have been able to procure the skin of any sort of animal, great or small, cover their bodies with it from the shoulders downwards as far as it will reach, wearing it till it falls off their backs in rags. As ignorant of agriculture as apes and monkeys, like them they are obliged to wander about over hills and dales after certain wild roots, berries, and plants (which they eat raw) in order to sustain a life that this miserable food would soon extinguish and destroy, were they used to better fare. Their table, however, is sometimes composed of several other dishes, among which may be reckoned the larvæ of insects, or those kind of caterpillars from which butter-flies are generated; and in like manner a sort of white ants (the termes) grasshoppers, snakes, and some sort of spiders. With all these changes of diet, the Boshiesman is nevertheless frequently in want, and to such a degree, as to waste almost to a shadow. Their stomachs are strong enough to digest a great quantity of food, as they may rather be said to bolt than

which shows, that these
e poison of the weapons,
e formation of them, or
em. Their arrows are a
y are made of a reed one
le base, or the end that
s a notch of a proper size
otch there is a joint in the
made of sinews are wound.
The other end of the reed
d bone, five or six inches,
an inch or two from the
a quill is bound on very
long, in order that the ar-
w out of the flesh; and
h the longer time for the
of a thick confluence be-
d dissolved, and insect the
n, however, for an arrow
above-mentioned, with
water being usually cut off
in triangular piece of iron
in which it is seen, as it
is of a dark brown colour,
sibs, and does not appear
as ivory. Hence we make
arrows as are headed with
d chiefly for giving this
and poise; and likewise,
Hottentots a great deal of

et long and four inches in
of a branch of a tree hol-
probable, of the bark of
ken off whole and entire,
hich are composed of lea-
s debauched with an uncu-
d when dry. The quivers
ure with a serpent's skin;
yellow serpent, which is
omous of any in that coun-
rrows, every quiver con-
nd bone for whetting the
h for laying on the poison,
n sticks, differing in thick-
length with the arrows. For
d, cannot be ascertained.
several different kinds of
ous the better, whether
loyed against their foes, or
ing game; for the Hotten-
aken internally it is que-

foes to a pastoral life are
ple, than their maxims and
beasts, bushes and cliffs
instead of houses; and some-
far worse than beasts, that
close to their habitations.
entirely naked; but such
re the skin of any sort of
ver their bodies with it
ards as far as it will reach,
eir backs in rags. Asi-
ges and monkeys, like them
about over hills and dales
berries, and plants which
tain a life that this miser-
inguish and destroy, were
Their table, however, is
veral other dishes, among
the larvæ of insects, or
s from which butter-flies
e manner a sort of white
ers, snakes, and some fort
se changes of diet, the
s frequently in want, and
valle almost to a shadow.
enough to digest a great
ay neither be laid to bolt
than

than eat; it sometimes happens, indeed, that they
cannot long retain what they have taken in; but this
circumstance, it is said, does not hinder them from
beginning again upon a fresh score.

The capture of slaves from among this race of men
is by no means a difficult matter, and is effected in
the following manner. Several farmers, that are in
want of servants, join together, and take a journey
to that part of the country where the Boshiesmen live.
They themselves, as well as their Logo-Hottentots,
or else such Boshiesmen as have been caught some
time before, and have been trained up to fidelity in
their service, endeavour to spy out where the wild
Boshiesmen have their haunts. This is best discover-
ed by the smoke of their fires. They are found in
societies from ten to fifty and a hundred, reckoning
great and small together. Notwithstanding this, the
farmers will venture on a dark night to set upon them
with six or eight people, which they contrive to do,
by previously stationing themselves at some distance
round about the eraal. They then give the alarm by
firing a gun or two. By this means there is such a
consternation spread over the whole body of these
savages, that it is only the most bold and intelligent
among them, who have the courage to break through
the circle and steal off. These the captors are glad
enough to get rid of at so easy a rate; those that are
stupid, timorous, and struck with amazement, and
who, in consequence of this stupor, allow themselves
to be taken and carried into bondage, answering their
purpose much better. They are, however, at first,
treated by gentle methods; that is, the victors inter-
mix the fairest promises with their threats, and en-
deavour, if possible, to shoot some of the larger
kinds of game for their prisoners, such as buffaloes,
sea-cows, and the like. Such agreeable baits, toge-
ther with a little tobacco, soon induce them, con-
tinually cockered and sealed as they are, to go with
a tolerable degree of cheerfulness to the colonist's
place of abode. There these luxurious feasts of
meat and fat are exchanged for more moderate por-
tions, consisting for the most part of butter-milk, fru-
ments, and hally-pudding. This diet, nevertheless,
makes the Boshiesman fat in a few weeks. How-
ever, he soon finds his good living embittered by the
maundering and grumbling of his master and mistress.
The words T'guzeri and T'gumasi, which, perhaps,
are best translated by those of *Young Sorcerer* and
Sep, are expressions which he must frequently put
up with, and sometimes a few curses and blows into
the bargain; and this for neglect, remissness, or idle-
ness; which last failure, if it cannot be said to be
born with him, is however in a manner naturalized
in him. So that, both by nature and custom, detail-
ing all manner of labour, and now, from his greater
capaculency, becoming still more foolish, and having
besides been used to a wandering life, subject to no
control, he most sensibly feels the want of his liberty.
No wonder then, that he generally endeavours to
regain it by making his escape: but what is really a
subject of wonder is, that, when one of these poor

devils runs away from his service, or more properly
bondage, he never takes with him any thing that does
not belong to him.

The lieutenant, in one of his excursions, fell in
with a party of these Boshiesmen, who behaved very
well; our traveller gave them some tobacco, for
which they made signs, and they, in return, offered
him some honey, which they had just collected in the
mountains. They had bows and arrows, and their leader
a spear in his hand, with heavy ivory rings on his
right arm; these were of the tribe of the Chonaegues.

On the 3d of December, our traveller visited the
most fertile and agreeable place he had yet seen, called
Good Hope. It lay at the source of the Ele-
phant's River, and was productive of plenty of corn,
with very little cultivation. The inhabitants sow the
grain when the river has overflowed the banks, and it
ripens here a month sooner than at the Cape, the
climate is so very favourable. This place is also
productive of excellent fruit, mulberries, apricots,
peaches, oranges, figs, &c. &c.

Lieutenant Patterson now proceeded S. W. and
passed the hot baths. He met with a great number
of ostriches, and after a fatiguing journey, reached
the dwelling of one Polkenbager, on the 11th, where
he rested two days.

Two pealants, who were on their way to the Cape,
now came up and offered our traveller a place in
their waggon, which proposal was very acceptable,
as the lieutenant's horse was exceedingly weary and
lame, through the badness of the roads. They pro-
ceeded along the banks of the Elephant's River, and
arriving at the Atquas Kloaf, rested there a day.

On the 19th, they passed the Atquas Kloaf, which
is a very rugged way. The next day our traveller
took leave of his kind waggons at Sure Flacla, and
pursued his journey towards the Hottiniqua-Land, for
the purpose of examining the extensive woods upon
the range of mountains which he had lately passed.
This night he lodged at Mr. Bota's, who behaved
with great hospitality and provided him with a guide
the next morning, when he arrived at White-Else-
River, so called from a tree of the same name.

On the 22d, the lieutenant and his guide being fur-
nished with dogs, for fear of tigers, ventured in the
woods, which begin to the north of Mossel-Bay, and
reach about 120 miles to the east, terminating at a
place called Sitlicamma. They are very thick and
produce several trees, uncommonly tall, whereon
may be seen a variety of beautiful party-coloured
birds; some of these trees grow out of the naked
strata of the rocks; the mountains are extremely
steep: an extensive plain lies between the woods and
the Indian Ocean. It is productive of a very inferior
sort of corn and wine, and though covered with grass,
the pasturage is very unwholesome. It is well in-
habited with Europeans, whose traffic consists chiefly
in wood, which they bring in planks to the Cape.

Our traveller returned to the Cape, the same road
that he travelled with Colonel Gordon, and arrived
at the Cape-Town, January 13, 1778.

C H A P. II.

The Lieutenant commences his second Journey, with a Companion—They proceed to Tiger-Berg, &c.—A short Excursion—A Bonta-Bock hunted and killed—Detained by bad Weather—Visit Catherine-Bay—Cross the Mountains with Difficulty—Lose their People—Find them—Pursue their Journey—Observe the Prints of Lions, &c.—Visit two Bears in the Kars—Description of them—Meet an European Woman wounded with a poisoned Arrow—Arrive at Olive-Bush—Next Day at a Farm called Rhinoceros-Bosjes—Difficulty in reaching the Summit of the Mountain—Further Travels—Curious Observations—Arrive at the Tower—Pass the Baboon's Hill—Hunt an Hottentot—Shoot two Gems-Bucks—Description of them—Proceed further—The Lieutenant catches several White Ants—Journey continued—Entertained at an Hottentot Village—Pass the Copper Mountain—Meet several Natives armed—Scarcity of Provisions—Supply of three Sheep—Wild Apes, &c. seen—A small Boat invented for crossing Orange-River—An Attack by two Hippopotami—One of the Animals killed—Scarcity of Water—The Lieutenant loses his Oxen—Recover them—Procure Water—Pursue their Journey in Expectation of a Supply of Oxen—Agreeably surprised by a Provision of twelve Bullocks—Proceed on their Journey—Furnished with a Team of fresh Oxen—Reach Casper's Kloaf—An Excursion to the Camis-Berg—Provisions for a Week procured at a Dutchman's—Make for Horn-River—Arrive at the Bokke-Land—Fresh Supply—Pursue their Journey—Traverse Swart-Land—Return to Cape-Town.

LIEUT. Patterfon remained at the Cape four months, and being now determined on his fecond journey, was accompanied by a young gentleman, who, though an inhabitant of the Cape-Town, poffeffed feveral farms in the interior parts of the country, and proceeded, May 22, 1778, through a large fandy plain, to the Tiger-Berg, where they dined. The farmers being all now bufy in plowing and fowing their grain, the country had a lively appearance. They proceeded S. E. in the afternoon and fpent the night near Stillen-Bofch, at the houfe of Mr. Clutta.

On the 23d they purfued their journey to the Eaff Rivier, and made a fhort excufion to the Stillen-Bofch mountains; the country here is very fertile, productive of a variety of fruit, and plenty of corn and wine. Proceeding now E. S. E. they reached Knolllick Kraal's Rivier in the afternoon; this was impaffable till the 26th, when they made for the Worm, both about fixty miles diftant from the Cape.

On reaching the Tiger-Hock, they hunted a fpecies of antelope, called Bonta-Bock, which they killed. Two peafants who had travelled from afar, and were on their way to the Cape, informed our travellers that the country they had come through, was parched up for want of rain, and notwithstanding the rivers in this part were fo fwoln as to be impaffable, yet it was with the greateft difficulty, during their journey, they could procure water for their cattle.

They proceeded eastward on the 28th, but were obliged to flop at the firft houfe they could find, on account of the inclemency of the weather. They took up their night's lodgings about eight miles from the Tyger-Hock, and the next day advanced towards the Breed-Rivier, where it is joined by the river Zonderzynd; but were compelled to flop, from the impracticability of croffing the river. They were not the only travellers who were detained from the fame caufe; many waggons were flationed on the oppofite fide, which had been there for fome days, waiting till the water fhould fubfide. There is a ferry at this place, but it is of no ufe when the river is rapid. The man who had the charge of the ferry, was an old German, and had lived between the two rivers for many years. He very kindly propofed to get our travellers acrofs the river Zonderzynd; and offered them the ufe of his houfe till the river became paffable for the waggon. They left the Hottentots to take care of the baggage, and thankfully accepted of his offer. During their ftay here, they had much rain and fleet; and the mountains were covered with fnow. They croffed with great difficulty June 8th, and proceeded to Zwelendani, where they ftayed all night.

From Zwelendani they proceeded to Buffalye Agte Rivier, where they made fome fhort ftay. They lodged at the houfe of Mr. Van Renan, who, having fupplied them with a team of frefh oxen, accompanied them to the mouth of Gouds-Rivier on the 16th. The lieutenant vifited Catherina-Bay, about 280 miles from the Cape. This bay, which opens from the fea, W. by N. is wide, and expofes veffels very much to the S. E. winds. The place is altogether unfavourable to fhips, as very little refrefhment can be procured from any part of the adjacent country, which is both barren and poorly inhabited.

Having agreed by a paff called Groena-Kloaf (which they were informed was the moft feecure and agreeable road at that feafon) to go through a large chain of mountains to the wellward: they accordingly directed their courfe that way, and reached the houfe of a very old man, one Jacobus Botta, on the 27th. The next day was exceedingly cold and boifterous, with heavy rain; they purfued their journey ftill to the weft, and came to a farm on the Breed-Rivier at night. The weather ftill continuing bad the 29th, they ftopped for that day, and being advifed not to proceed any further in that diretion, on account of the difficulty in croffing the rivers, they agreed to return and crofs the mountains at another place to the callward, called Plata-Kloaf.

July the 8th, they reached Plata-Kloaf, and, after fome trouble, croffed the mountains on the 10th, and arrived at Channa-Land, thence they proceeded weftward, and in the evening came to a hot bath, more temperate than thofe obferved in the firft journey.

Having a very long day's march before them, they refted here a few days, and early on the thirteenth, fent their waggon before them; they arrived at a ftream of water, where they refted for the night; there were violent claps of thunder and heavy rain; the country they had travelled was very barren and full of wild beafts.

On the 14th, perceiving a Hottentot Kraal, about two miles diftance, one of the natives was hired for a guide. Having left the waggon, Lieutenant Patterfon, defirous to fee as much of the country as poffible, with Mr. Van Renan and their guide, now purfued a different diretion, and when they had travelled till about four in the afternoon they then began to think of their baggage. They travelled till nine, through a very wild country, inhabited only by beafts, without difcovering the object of their fearch. The lieutenant then afcended the hills, in hopes of difcerning a fire on fome adjacent heights; which is the ufual fignal made by travellers in Africa when they are loft, or feparated from their companions. However, their labours being unfeceffful, they agreed to remain till day-light, at the fide of a fmall fountain; though they were far from being in either an agreeable or fafe fituation, having no fire-arms, nor any poffible means of lighting a fire. Numbers of hyenas howled about them the whole night; and in the morning, they found that a large tiger had been within ten yards of them.

On the 16th, they proceeded in fearch of their people, whom they difcovered about noon. They refted a few hours, and in the afternoon continued their journey, about fix miles to the weftward, where they ftayed all night. Their oxen and horfes were fattered to the waggon, and fires kindled around them, as ufual; they afterwards paffed a dry barren country, and, in the morning, came to a miferable hovel belonging to an European, where they ftayed all night.

On the 18th, they proceeded through what the Dutch call Karo, which is a very extenfive plain, interfperfed with fmall fucculent and fruitlefs plants. This difcription may be applicable to many parts of Africa; particularly thofe which are fituated to the north of the Cape. They travelled all this day without finding a drop of water; and in the evening arrived at a houfe called the Staart, which is pleafantly fituated on the banks of a fmall river. Here they amused themfelves with fhooting wild ducks, and a fpecies of reed-bens, which they found in great plenty.

They purfued their journey on the nineteenth, along the Verkered Valley; which is thus denominated, from the river which courfes through it, taking a diretion different from that of any other in this country. At the time we were there it was quite fall. They were now advancing towards the Coud Bokke Veld, or the cold country of antelopes; the mountains of which were covered with fnow; which frequently remains upon their fummits till the month of November. The next day they arrived at a houfe fituated on the north-eaft fide of the Whifon-Berg, or White Hill, where they remained all night. The people informed them of the danger of croffing the Great Karo, not only from its being a defart country, but alfo from parties of the Bofhiefmen Hottentots, who were at war with the Dutch; and were often lurking about to fall in with Europeans. They gave them inflances of perfons having been wounded by their poifoned arrows, and that they were very feldom cured. Notwithstanding their good advice, our travellers determined to crofs the country, keeping as much on their guard as poffible.

On the 21ft, they directed their courfe north; and in the evening took up their lodgings on the fide of a fmall ftream of water, called Thorn-River. Our hero

ed Plata-Kloof, and, after
mountains on the 10th,
d, thence they proceeded
ing came to a hot bath,
observed in the first jour-

s march before them, they
early on the thirteenth,
them; they arrived at a
they rested for the night:
thunder and heavy rain;
elled was very barren and

a Hottentot Kraal, about
the natives was hired for a
oggon, Lieutenant Pat-
er of the country as possible,
their guide, now pursued
hen they had travelled till
they then began to think
avelled till nine, through
ted only by beasts, with-
d of their search. The
he hills, in hopes of dis-
cent heights; which is the
ers in Africa when they
their companions. How-
successful, they agreed to
e side of a small fountain;
being in either an agree-
re fire-arms, nor saw
a fire. Numbers of hye-
whole night; and in the
a large tiger had been

ded in search of their peo-
about noon. They rested
afternoon continued their
the westward, where they
ken and horses were fallen
kindled around them, as
ed a dry barren country,
to a miserable hovel be-
here they stayed all night.
ceeded through what the
a very extensive plain, in-
ent and fruitless plain.
pplicable to many parts of
which are situated to the
travelled all this day with-
; and in the evening ar-
Staat, which is pleasantly
small river. Here they
ooting wild ducks, and a
they found in great plenty.
urney on the nineteenth,
; which is thus denomi-
courses through it, taking
that of any other in this
ere there it was quite fall,
towards the Coud Bokke
of antelopes; the moun-
with snow; which fre-
summits till the month of
y they arrived at a house
le of the Whitson-Berg,
remained all night. The
e danger of crossing the
its being a desert country,
e Boshtiefmen Hottentots,
Dutch; and were often
Europeans. They gave
having been wounded by
that they were very reluc-
ting their good advice,
crosses the country, keep-
as possible.
d their course north; and
lodgings on the side of a
ed Thorn-River. Our
hero

hero made an excursion in the morning, through
the country, and in the afternoon they joined the
waggon. In the evening they found water at a place,
called Porde-Berg, or Horse Mountain, where they
rested all night.

On the 23d, they observed a fire about half a mile
from them, which they imagined had been lighted
by a party of wild Hottentots. Being resolved to see
who they were, they found them to be the servants
of a Dutchman, who lived near the Cape. They
had a large flock of sheep under their charge. The
lieutenant found them to well acquainted with the
country, that he hired one of them as a guide. They
then continued their journey about twenty miles, and
at night arrived at Unlucky-River; so called, from
a man's having been devoured by a lion some years
ago on its banks.

The next day their road lay through a dry sandy
country, with a very naked appearance. The hills
were composed of horizontal strata of a soft mould-
ering kind of stone. At noon they were informed
by a peasant (who was on his way to the Cape) that if
they did not proceed on their journey with all possible
expedition, they would not be able to come to any
place where there was water: moreover, that travel-
ling at night was very dangerous, on account of the
number of lions which inhabited that part of the
country. After a very fatiguing march they arrived
at a brackish fountain, where they rested all night.

On the 25th, they continued their route to the
northward, through much the same kind of barren
soil they had passed on the preceding day. Where-
ever they passed, they observed the fresh print of
lions and tigers; and early next morning Mr. Van
Rennan saw a lion within fifty yards of him, which
our travellers afterwards pursued; but the track
brought them to a clump of thick thorny shrubs, which
prevented them from proceeding further. The next
day, they visited two of the boors who reside in the
Karo during the time when the snow lies upon the
Rogge Veld mountains. This practice is not, how-
ever, general, several of them remain in their habi-
tations, exposed to all the inclemencies of the wea-
ther. The principal cause of the migrations from
the mountains to the Karo, is a want of firewood,
which is very scarce on these heights. Those of them
that remain, in general, employ their servants, be-
fore the winter begins, in carrying wood from the
bottom of the mountain, which is certainly a very
laborious task. There are some to whom these tem-
porary removals are far from appearing a great evil.
Indeed, several of the inhabitants of this district are
so much in the habit of changing their abode, that
rather than undergo the trouble of making a proper
provision for this dreary season, they would travel
for many miles. As this desert part of the country
is inhabited only during a short part of the year, very
few houses are to be found in it. Most of the in-
habitants live in huts similar to those of the Hottentots
already described; some dwell in the tent that covers
their waggon; and, even in this situation, the boors
have the appearance of being the happiest of all human
beings. When a stranger visits them, he is treated
with the greatest hospitality; and every thing they
have is at his command. This, in general, is the
case throughout the whole country.

They proceeded on their journey this day only
about ten miles; and in the evening came to a very
mean cottage under the mountain. The inhabitants
were possessed of a very large herd of cattle, particu-
larly sheep; but at this season many die of a disease,
which they term, the burning sickness, in which they
lose most of their hair. There is a passage at this
place over the mountain, but there was now no pos-
sibility of crossing it; our travellers, therefore, pro-
ceeded to the westward, by the direction of the boors.
At night they came to a small stream of water, where
they rested.

On the 29th, they directed their course north by
west, through a hilly country. On their way they

saw several huts, which they supposed to belong to
Hottentots; but they proved such before described,
the winter residence of the Dutch boors. At one of
these huts was an European woman who had been
wounded in the arm with a poisoned arrow. Great
pains had been taken to cure her, but to no purpose;
for at different periods of the year, an inflammation
came on which was succeeded by a partial mortifica-
tion. She said, that the wound was not long in heal-
ing up; but that, in two months afterwards, there
was a certainty of its breaking out again; and this
had been the case for many years.

At night they arrived at a place called Olive-Bush,
where they rested. The man, to whom this place
belonged, was the only one, of a whole family, who
escaped from a party of the Boshtiefmen Hottentots.
Those savages had attacked them a few years before,
and put to death his mother, brother, sister, &c.

The next day they proceeded to the northward;
and, in the evening, came to a farm called Rhino-
ceros-Bosch. During the night they had much wind
and rain. Pursuing their journey, north by west,
they had the Rogge Veld Berg on their right hand.
On their way they met one of the inhabitants of the
mountain, who promised to assist them with a team
of fresh oxen to carry them to the summit, which
was very difficult of ascent. In the evening, they
rested by the side of the Rhinoceros-River; but as
they had no shelter from the incessant hail and rain,
and were unable to keep their fire lighted, their situa-
tion was extremely uncomfortable. In this condition
they remained during the whole of the following day;
and on the second of August, the promised assistance
arrived in order to conduct them up the mountain;
but it was with the utmost difficulty they could reach
the summit, the path was so very steep and rugged;
and the ton thereof so wet, that their oxen and horses
went often up to their bellies in the low ground. In
the afternoon they came to the house of their friend,
who had afforded them so much assistance, where
they stayed all night, and were hospitably entertain-
ed.

Though the soil appears to be very good here, yet
it seldom produces any considerable crop of grain.
This proceeds not only from blights, which are very
frequent here; but sometimes from heavy showers of
hail, which break down the corn about the time that
it is ready to be cut. The locusts also are fatal ene-
mies to all vegetation, and destroy every thing in
their course, not sparing even the fruit trees. The
soil of this mountain is a reddish clay; in many places
containing a quantity of saline matter, so as to be
quite perceptible to the taste. It is necessary to ob-
serve, that towards the interior parts of this country,
or rather the centre of the peninsula, the country
does not decline in a north-west direction, at least
not in proportion to the immense mountains which
progressively present themselves to view: for in-
stance, though the ascent of the mountain, called the
Rogge-Veld, is not less than two thousand feet from
the Karo, the descent is not more than one thousand
before they come to a second, which appears of equal
height with the former.

Having taken leave of their kind host, they pro-
ceeded nearly north by west, through a very hilly
country. On the 3d, in the evening, they arrived
at a miserable hut, which they found belonged to an
European who lived with the Hottentots; his name
was Swertz. He was not at home; but as our travel-
lers could not advance any further, for want of water,
they remained there during the night. The only
thing they could procure at this place was milk, for
which they gave the Hottentots some tobacco.

On the 4th, they travelled through a dry barren
country which lies between the Rogge-Veld and
Hentum. At noon they crossed the Rhinoceros-
River, where they saw several large herds of quachas;
and, in the evening, came to a very decent house,
where they were well received. This house is situated
on the very borders of the Boshtiefmen-Land;
and

and is frequently attacked by that tribe of Hottentots. As they had undergone many inconveniences for some time before, from the severity of the weather, and the want of shelter in many places through which they had passed, our travellers determined to rest here a few days, and to visit the Hentum and other countries adjoining.

In this part of the country there are many things worthy of observation. The horses in this district are yearly attacked by a disorder, for which it is very difficult, if not impossible, to account. Certain it is, that the utmost care, the feeding of them with corn, and keeping of them in stables, as much from the air as possible, does not operate as a preservative from this disease; so that those who have other farms near, remove their cattle till this season is passed. Horned cattle are exposed to equal danger from the *Amaryllis Dillicha*, or poison bulb, with which the country is covered; they are extremely fond of its leaves, which generally prove fatal.

On the 9th, we proceeded towards the Bokke-Land, which is nearly west by south, from the Hentum mountain; and, in two days, arrived at a place called the Tom, or Tower, which is a hill of a pyramidal figure, where they stayed all night. The next day (the 11th) they passed the Baboons-Hill; the road was so very bad, that it was with great difficulty they could keep the waggon upon its wheels. This night they stayed at a brackish river; and the following day were detained till noon, having killed their oxen. Here our hero visited a Hottentot Kraal, which was about a mile distant; and, as he proposed travelling over the small Nimiqua Land, he hired one of the Hottentots, who spoke Dutch, as an interpreter. In the afternoon they continued their journey as far as Thorn-River, where are many lions, so that they were obliged to fatten their oxen, and make fires as before.

On the 12th, they descended the Bokke Veld Berg, which was steep, but not very high, and came to a farm belonging to Mr. Van Renan. In this journey from the Hentum, they shortened their distance from the Cape about fifty miles.

On the 13th, they proceeded to the northern extremity of the mountain, which is quite level on this side, and almost perpendicular for more than two thousand feet. The soil is of a white sandy mould, intermixed with large fragments of a sort of ice-stone. This part of the country produces very little corn; the pasture is esteemed good for cattle; but, in the dry season, they are much distressed for want of water. The people here behaved with the utmost hospitality; particularly one Jacobus Ryke, who accompanied the lieutenant to the Great River.

They followed their waggon on the 15th, in its descent down the mountain, which was really steep and dreadful. About ten in the morning they got into a low level country. This day they shot at several of a species of antelope, called Gems-Bock, and killed two. These animals are among the largest of the antelope kind at the Cape, and in general their flesh is excellent food. They have straight slender horns, near three feet long, annulated above half of their length: the rest smooth. The space between horn and horn at the points is about fourteen inches. At their base is a black spot; in the middle of the face another; a third falls from each eye to the throat, united to that in the face by a lateral band of the same colour: the nose and rest of the face white. From the hind-part of the head, along the neck and top of the back, runs a narrow dusky line of hairs, longer than the rest, and standing above them, dilating towards the rump. Its sides are of a light reddish ash-colour; the lower part bounded by a broad longitudinal dusky band, reaching to the breast. The belly, rump, and legs are white; each leg marked below the knees with a dusky mark. The tail is covered with long black hairs; from the rump to the end of the hairs, two feet six inches long. The length of the skin about six feet six inches. When attacked

by dogs it will fit on its hind quarters and defend itself with remarkable long sharp horns.

They slept this night under a large mimosa tree, and the next morning went forward to the northward. About nine they arrived at the Great Thorn-River, where they rested a few hours during the heat of the sun. In the afternoon they continued their journey through a level country, having the Bolshiefmens-Land, or Long Hill, on their right hand, and the Karo-Berg on the left. On their way they saw several elks, eyelands, &c. The country is in most parts covered with a very curious sort of cubic iron ore. In the evening they came to a place, called the Lion's Den, which is a large hollow rock, where they found water just sufficient to supply themselves and their cattle.

The lieutenant made an excursion to the westward, and his two companions, Mr. Van Renan and Jacobus Ryke, directed their course to the northward in pursuit of game. At noon the lieutenant returned to the Lion's Den, and thence proceeded to the northward, directing his servants to follow him with the waggons. After travelling about eight miles, he found his companions at a small fountain, broiling some white ants, which they eat, and which the lieutenant declares, are by no means disagreeable.

They proceeded the next day to the north-west, through a deep sandy country. About noon they observed a habitation a little to the eastward, and found that it belonged to an European, who lived here during the winter season: this place they called the Pickled Fountain, from the water being so brackish that they could not drink it. In the afternoon they continued their journey to another fountain, called Brack Fountain. The water here was exceedingly brackish, though much better than the rest. During the night they had much rain; and in the morning good water in the hollow rocks; but our hero observed that the water, by standing a few hours, became similar in its quality to that of the fountain. They now went through a country. Most of the hills form large pyramidal loose, red, sandy stone.

On the twenty second, at noon, they came to the Hariebeel-River, which was brackish; here they rested about two hours. In the afternoon they proceeded to the westward, when they came to another house on the same river, where they stayed all night. Towards the westward this river joins another, called the Thorn-River.

On the 23d, they directed their course to the northward, and in the forenoon came to the Black-Thorn-River; which has its source at the Camis-Berg. This is one of the highest mountains in this part of the country, and supplies the greatest part of the Small Nimiqua Land with water in the summer. At this river they stayed all day, having excellent pasture and good water for their cattle; and the next day continued their journey north-west, and entered the Small Nimiqua Land. The country is very mountainous. In the afternoon they arrived under the Camis-Berg, where they met with a peasant who had been some miles to the northward, inquiring after some of his friends; he was on his way to the Cape. There being a good supply of water at this place, they resolved to continue here all night; and in the morning directed their course towards the west; having in the road passed several dangerous precipices. At noon they rested, about an hour, by a small stream of water. In the afternoon they proceeded in the same direction; and in the evening came to a house belonging to a Dutchman, situated on the banks of a pleasant river, called the Green-River. Here they stayed all night. The Hottentots, to whom they gave tobacco and hemp leaves, supplied them with plenty of milk.

Our travellers took an excursion towards the north early on the morning of the 27th. They arrived at an Hottentot's village at night, which contained about 150 inhabitants and nineteen huts. Having treated

quarters and defend itself
 horns.

a large mimosa tree, and
 ward to the northward,
 the Great Thorn River,
 during the heat of the
 continued their journey
 having the Boshiemen
 their right hand, and le-
 their way they saw leve-
 country is in moll parti-
 sort of cubic iron ore. In
 place, called the Lion's
 rock, where they found
 ly themselves and their

excursion to the westward,
 r. Van Renan and Jaco-
 urse to the northward in
 the lieutenant returned to
 proceeded to the north-
 to follow him with the
 out eight miles, he found
 fountain, broiling some
 and which the lieuten-
 and disagreeable.

day to the north-west,
 nity. About noon they
 cle to the eastward, and
 an European, who lived
 at this place they called
 in the water being to
 drink it. In the after-
 journey to another foun-
 tain. The water here was
 much better than the
 they had much rain; and
 in the hollow rocks; but
 water, by standing a few
 similar in its quality
 now went through
 form large pyra-

noon, they came to the
 was brackish; here they
 the afternoon they pro-
 ceed they came to another
 ere they lived all night.
 ver joins another, called

ted their course to the
 noon came to the Black-
 ts source at the Cam-
 highest mountains in this
 plies the greatest part
 of the water in the summer.
 All day, having excellent
 their cattle; and the next
 north-west, and entered

The country is very
 noon they arrived under
 met with a peasant who
 the northward, inquiring
 e was on his way to the
 supply of water at this
 issue here all night; and
 course towards the west;
 several dangerous preci-
 cl, about an hour, by a
 the afternoon they pro-
 ceed; and in the evening
 to a Dutchman, situated
 river, called the Green-
 night. The Hottentots
 and hemp leaves, sup-
 plied.

excursion towards the north
 27th. They arrived at
 t, which contained about
 a huts. Having treated
 the

the natives with tobacco, &c. they, in return, en-
 tertained them with a dance, wherein the men form
 themselves into a circle with their flutes (which are
 made of the trunks of trees of different sizes) and the
 women stand round them, making a noise with their
 hands. Thus they continue to dance in parties, and
 being relieved every now and then by fresh couples,
 keep the entertainment up the whole night.

On the 28th, they ascended a steep mountain,
 whereby their waggon was very much injured, and
 proceeded about thirty miles to the westward. They
 reached a fountain, at noon, called by the inhabi-
 tants Eye Fountain, where there were several Hot-
 tentot huts, and in the evening arrived at a small
 stream of water, where they rested that night. The
 next day they pursued their journey N. by W.
 through a mountainous country, and came, about
 evening, to a small fountain of brackish water, which
 lay under a naked rock of a conical figure, upwards
 of 500 feet high. In the afternoon they directed
 their course to the northward, and arrived in the
 evening, at the house of one Jan Vander Hever,
 situate on the Copper-Berg-Rivier; where, having
 met a kind reception, they rested a few days.

Now, having procured a team of fresh oxen, they
 took the north direction, through a rugged country,
 where they saw several natives at a distance. They
 arrived in the evening at a small fountain where there
 was very little water, but being thirty miles distant
 from the next water, as they were informed, they
 were resolved to weather it out; indeed, they had
 experienced, for several days, a great scarcity of
 wood and water. Some natives being seen approach-
 ing, armed with bows and arrows, our travellers
 imagined they were Bush-Hottentots, and, loading
 their guns, prepared for an attack. However, hav-
 ing met, the strangers only begged some tobacco,
 which was given them with much cheer. One of
 them, who spoke Dutch, informed the lieutenant
 that they had no cattle, but lived upon roots and
 gums; and sometimes feasted on an antelope, which
 they occasionally shot with their poisoned arrows.
 Shortly after, one of the inhabitants of the Nimiqua-
 Land overtook our travellers and requested them to
 accept of his company to the Great-River. His na-
 tion being at war with the Bush-Hottentots, he was
 rather afraid, as they frequently rob the Nimiquas of
 their cattle, and often kill the people. Having trav-
 elled about thirty miles without meeting with a drop
 of water, they came at last to a small fountain in
 the evening, where they stayed all night, and the next
 day proceeded north by east, through a sandy plain;
 and about sunset came to a brackish fountain, where
 they stayed all that night.

On the 5th of September, our hero made an ex-
 cursion to the summit of an high mountain, whence
 he had an extensive view of the adjacent country to
 the north and east. At noon he returned to the wag-
 gon; and in the afternoon they directed their course
 northward, through a sandy plain, which they had
 much difficulty in crossing, the sand being so deep
 that their cattle sunk in it to their knees. Towards
 the evening Lieut. Patterson and Mr. Van Renan
 left the waggon, directing their course northward in
 search of water; and resolved not to return till they
 found some. At night they came to the Great-River,
 where they agreed to wait till the waggon arrived,
 their horses being much fatigued. At this place was
 a kind of shed, which had been built by an European
 who had lived some time on the banks; there being
 excellent pasture for cattle. They had been a whole
 day without tasting food; so that they were very glad
 to find a piece of rusty flesh of an hippopotamus, a
 species of diet which the Africans are very fond of.
 Mr. Van Renan eat very heartily of it; but a very
 small portion satisfied the lieutenant. After this re-
 gale they endeavoured to sleep; but though they were
 much fatigued, they could get no rest for the fright-
 ful cries of the hippopotami.

On the 6th, their waggon not being arrived, they

faddled their horses and returned the same way, sup-
 posing some accident had happened to it. On their
 return they found their drivers had missed the way,
 and gone more to the eastward. They discovered
 their track, and followed them to another part of the
 river. When they arrived, all their Hottentots were
 hunting the hippopotami, having no provision in
 the waggon. They had hunted the whole day with-
 out success; and one of them had been wounded by
 the animal; but the stream being rapid, had driven
 him off to the opposite shore. They observed sever-
 al natives, to whom they made repeated signs, which
 they did not seem to understand.

Having had nothing to eat for the two preceding
 days, except some wild prickly cucumbers, which
 grew here in abundance, they agreed to return the
 way they came; previous to this our travellers
 ascended a high hill, about a league to the eastward.
 When arrived at the summit, they saw a large herd
 of cattle about six miles to the eastward; on which
 they immediately returned to the waggon with the
 glad tidings, and a Hottentot was dispatched to bring
 them a sheep or a bullock, whatever it should col-
 lect. The messenger returned in the evening with three
 sheep, and the Hottentots to whom they belonged,
 who stayed with them during the night. The river
 assumes a westerly direction in this part; on both
 sides are large trees, peculiar to this country. The
 mountains have, upon the whole, a barren appear-
 ance, being in general naked rocks; though they are
 in some places adorned by a variety of succulent
 plants.

On the 7th, they pursued their journey easterly,
 along the banks of the river. In their progress they
 saw a variety of most beautiful birds; and great num-
 bers of elephants and wild apes. The next day the
 lieutenant proposed crossing the river with several of
 the Hottentots who were swimmers. They invented
 a small float, which consisted of three pieces of dry
 wood, on which they transported their guns and
 clothes. After swimming about half an hour, they
 gained the opposite shore, where they wounded an
 hippopotamus.

Our hero made an excursion at noon along the
 mountains, which were so naked that scarcely a plant
 was to be seen. Some of these mountains consist of
 a species of quartz, others of iron, and several strata
 of copper ore. Along the banks of the river there
 were many pebbles of hard agate. In the evening
 they returned to the waggon, much fatigued. The
 wind being easterly, had driven them above a thou-
 sand yards down the river. Our travellers continued
 their observation here for several days. In the
 course of one of their excursions, Mr. Van Renan,
 very narrowly escaped with his life. In crossing the
 river on the 15th, accompanied by four Hottentots,
 the whole party were attacked and pursued by two
 hippopotami. They had, however, the good for-
 tune to get upon a rock in the middle of the river,
 and their guns being loaded they killed one of these
 animals; the other swam to the opposite side. Mr.
 Van Renan's intention was to go to the northward,
 being informed that the camelopardales were in that
 part of the country, while his friend made excursions
 to the eastward through a large plain in search of
 plants.

A species of locusts come down to this plain at dif-
 ferent seasons of the year in such numbers as to de-
 stroy most of the plants. The Boshiemen esteem these
 insects excellent food. The locusts are dried and
 kept for use when they have no other provision. This
 part of the country abounds with poisonous reptiles.
 The quadrupeds are elephants, camelopardales, rhi-
 noceroses, zebras, koedoes, elks, tigers, lions, jackals,
 hyenas, &c. &c.

On the 19th, Mr. Van Renan returned. He had
 shot a camelopardalis, towards the evening, at a great
 distance from the water, to which they immediately
 directed their course, intending to send a Hottentot
 next day to skin the animal. On their return, to

their great surprize, a lion sprung up about fifty yards from the place where the cameopardalis lay; and, on their arrival, they found he had disfigured it so much, that nothing could be preserved except part of the skin of the neck, with the horns, and part of the hind quarters. After seeing this, the lieutenant resolved to cross the river with some of the Hottentots, and procure the skeleton which they left in the fields. But by this time the river began to swell, and the Hottentots refused to accompany our hero, as they would be in danger of being detained for several months on the opposite side, this being the rainy season, to the eastward of their present situation, in which quarter they discovered many thunder clouds.

They spent the whole day of the 23d in shooting at the hippopotami, one of which they killed. They saw also the method made use of by the natives to catch these animals, which is as follows: they dig large holes in the ground, along the banks of the river, about ten feet diameter, and some of them about ten feet deep. In the bottom of these pits they place pieces of wood sharpened at the points, and then cover the cavity with branches of trees and turf. When the hippopotami come out of the river in the night to graze, they often fall into these snares, and very frequently receive wounds which occasion their immediate dissolution.

The season being too far advanced to admit of their proceeding further to the north, and there being no other path than that they had already taken, they returned by the same route. In their way they were visited by two peasants of the Namiqua-Land, who were sent out on a commission to the Boshtiefmen, in search of cattle which they had purloined from the inhabitants of Namiqua Land.

On the twenty-fourth they directed their course westerly. At night they came to a small fountain, called Zebras Fountain. Here was but little water; but they were, nevertheless, under the necessity of staying all night, having an extensive plain to cross, where there was not a drop of water to be seen for about fifty miles. They left this at sun set the next day, and proceeded southward, intending to travel through the dry desert. After travelling about eight miles, several of their cattle began to drop down under the yoke, which obliged them to stay the remaining part of the night without a drop of water. In the morning they missed their oxen, and sent a Hottentot out in search of them, who returned at midnight. Being exposed to the scorching heat of the sun, and entirely destitute of water, this proved a very disagreeable day.

On the 25th, they agreed it would be best to return to the river for water, and leave the waggon in its present situation. Mr. Van Renan being sick, remained to take charge of the baggage, which required some guard, from the number of Bush-Hottentots who infested this part of the country. They then directed their course towards the river, and took with them an empty cask and a cann, which they had by the waggon. They found the river to be distant from them about eight miles, in a direct line. They saw on their arrival, the remainder of two hippopotami, which they had shot some days before, thrown out of the river. After refreshing themselves, they filled their cask and cann, which the lieutenant and another carried, leaving their Hottentots to bring the cattle to the waggon. The heat of the sun, and the fatiguing journey they had over the sand, obliged them to expend great part of the water before they arrived at the waggon, which was at six in the evening. As soon as their oxen arrived, they made another attempt to proceed; but after travelling about ten miles further, their cattle appeared in the same condition as before. It was therefore agreed that Mr. Van Renan and a companion should go on to the house of one Vander Hever, which was about fifty miles to the southward of this place. Accordingly, on the 28th, they saddled their

horses, and left the lieutenant and his party in this disagreeable situation, without water or fire. The lieutenant sent a Hottentot to a rock, about ten miles distance to the south-east, where there was a little water. In the afternoon, being tired of their situation, they resolved to make a third effort; and, if they should find it impossible to proceed, to leave the waggon and return to the Orange-River, being almost exhausted for want of water. Very luckily their cattle did much better than they expected, and brought them out of that sandy desert; in which there was scarcely any thing to be seen except mice and snakes, both of which were observed in great numbers. Towards the evening they met the Hottentot whom they had sent to the rock in search of water. He brought with him about forty quarts, which refreshed them and their cattle exceedingly. In the night they arrived at the Brack-Fountain, which by this time was almost dried up: being much fatigued, they were very unwilling to leave this place. The next day the lieutenant employed the Hottentots in digging the fountain a little deeper, and, by their exertions, they procured abundance of water, both for their own use and that of the cattle. Having left this place, they pursued their journey towards the Copper-Berg, in the expectation of meeting with a supply of fresh oxen from their friend Vander Hever. About ten at night, they perceived a fire at a distance, and, on their arrival at the place, had the pleasure of finding a Hottentot with twelve bullocks under his care, which had been dispatched for our hero's assistance. They continued to travel till three o'clock in the morning, when they arrived at the Small Copper-Berg-Fountain, where they rested.

At day-break they proceeded on their journey; and at nine o'clock the lieutenant left the waggon, and directed his course through the mountainous part of the country, to make observations. He visited the Copper-Mines; and brought with him several specimens of the ore, which is very rich. In the evening he arrived at the house of Vander Hever; and about two hours afterwards his waggon arrived. They rested here several days, made many excursions, and were kindly entertained.

On the 4th of October, being furnished with a team of fresh oxen, they travelled towards the southward, and at night arrived at the Sand-River, the water of which they found brackish. Here they remained till morning, and then pursued their journey for about fourteen miles, to a place where they found excellent water. Afterwards they proceeded to Caspers-Kloof, where they remained another night.

On the seventh, our hero made an excursion to the Camis-Berg; and the next morning they pursued their journey towards the Bokke-Veld, and in their way passed several Hottentot kraals. At the Eye-Fountain they met a peasant who had travelled from the Cape, and was going towards the Orange-River.

On the 10th, they proceeded to the Green-River, where they rested during the heat of the day; and in the afternoon travelled about four miles further to the south-east. The next day they were informed of a much better path than that which they had already traversed, and which they resolved to take: they travelled the whole day, and at night arrived at a small stream of water, supposed to be the Thorn-River, where they agreed to remain till the morning.

Early on the 12th, the lieutenant ascended a high mountain to the southward, which afforded him a very extensive view of the country to the east, and the pleasure of observing they had taken the right path. After travelling about fifteen miles, they came to the house of a Dutchman at Two-Fountain, situated to the south-east of the Camis-Berg, where they procured provisions for a week, as they had an extensive country to pass before they could reach the Bokke-Veld. From this they proceeded to the Thorn-River, where they rested during the heat of

ant and his party in this out water or fire. The out to a rock, about ten h-east, where there was a oon, being tired of their make a third effort; and, sible to proceed, to leave the Orange-River, being of water. Very luckily an than they expected, and sandy defart; in which g to be seen except mice were observed in great ening they met the Hot- to the rock in search of him about forty yards, their cattle exceedingly. at the Brack-Fountain, oft dried up: being much unwilling to leave this. lieutenant employed the fountain a little deeper; they procured abundance own use and that of the place, they pursued their per-Berg, in the expecta- apply of fresh oxen from er. About ten at night, a distance, and, on their the pleasure of finding a ocks under his care, which r hero's assistance. They ce o'clock in the morning, Small Copper-Berg-Foun- ceed on their journey; eutenant left the waggon, through the mountainous make observations. He and brought with him ore, which is very rich, at the house of Vander ours afterwards his waggon several days, made man- ly entertained. being furnished with a travelled towards the south- d at the Sand-River, the ad bra-kills. Here they d then pursued their jour- nales, to a place where they afterwards they proceeded they remained another night. to made an excursion to next morning they pur- s the Bokke-Veld, and to Hottentot kraals. At the peasant who had travelled oing towards the Orange ceeded to the Green-River, he heat of the day; and to out four miles further to day they were informed an that which they had ich they resolved to take; ay, and at night arrived at supposed to be the Thoro- remain till the morning. lieutenant ascended a high d, which afforded him a country to the east, and they had taken the right about fifteen miles, they chman at Two-Fountain, of the Camis-Berg, where r a week, as they had a before they could reach the y proceeded to the reposed during the heat of the

the day. In the afternoon they continued their journey to the Hantebest-Rivier, and remained there all night. On the 14th, they found the Brack-Fountain nearly dried up, and so bitter that their cattle refused to drink of the water. Here, however, they stayed all night, and early the next morning proceeded on their journey towards the Lion's-Den, where they flattered themselves with the hopes of finding water; but were disappointed, for not a single drop of water was discoverable in this place. They, however, unyoked their cattle, and rested about two hours. In the afternoon they proceeded towards the Stink-Fountain, which was distant about thirty miles. In the eve they lost their way, and were obliged to sleep in a dry ditch. Early on the 16th, they saw the Bokke-Lands-Bergen to the south east of them, about twenty miles. The lieutenant and Mr. Van Renan left the waggon at an early hour, directing their course to the Bokke-Land; and sent a fresh team of oxen from thence to relieve the others, which were greatly fatigued, and scarcely able to stand, in consequence of the injury they had received in their hoofs from the sharp stones. The next day they brought their waggon to the house of Mrs. Ryck. Our traveller's intention was to cross the country, from this place to the great nation of Caffres, which is about nine hundred miles to the south-east; but finding both their oxen and waggon in very indifferent order for so long a journey, the lieutenant altered his plan, and conceived the design of making an excursion to the Hentum, and part of the Boshiesmen's-Land. This day they had several loud claps of thunder, and heavy rain. The variable state of the weather detained our travellers here several days. Having left the Bokke-Land, they directed their course eastward, and arrived, on the twenty-third, at the house of Christian Boeckere, where they passed the night. The following day they had stormy weather, and heavy showers of rain and sleet; and towards the evening, hail and snow. The next morning a severe frost killed most of the corn, which at this time was about a foot in height; a circumstance which in this part of the country often happens. On the twenty-seventh, the lieutenant made an excursion to the northward, which is called the Boshiesmen's-Land, from its being inhabited by the Bush-Hottentots, who are a very different people from the other peaceable and well-disposed inhabitants of this region. They are in fact, fierce, cruel, and dishonest. In this tour our hero visited a house belonging to a Dutchman, who had lived here for many years. A few weeks before their arrival he had been attacked by the Boshiesmen, who had killed four of his Hottentots, and wounded another. These marauders carried away also several of his cattle, which he was never able to recover. Having left the Hentum on the 29th, they returned to the Bokke-Lands-Bergen, intending to return to the Cape, along the shore of the Atlantic Ocean. But when they arrived at the Bokke-Land, on the 31st, they were compelled to remain there several days, from the state of the weather, which was very rainy and variable. They took leave of this place on the sixth of November, accompanied by two sons of Mrs. Ryck, and an overseer of Mr. Van Renan's farms, in this part of the country, who was going on a shooting party. Our traveller also partook of the diversion, and left the waggon to proceed to a place called the Lion's-Dance, where they intended to stay all night. Their way lay through a low country of a clayey soil, called Karo. They saw much game; and the servant of Mr. Van Renan, being an excellent marksmen, shot two elks, both of which were much larger than an English bullock: the flesh of this animal is palatable though dry. At night they returned to the Lion's-Dance, where they found their waggon: and

early the next day they parted with their friends, and directed their course south-west, having the Bokke-Lands-Bergen on their left hand, and the Atlantic Ocean on their right, at the distance of about thirty miles. They travelled the whole day and till midnight, when they found a fountain of brackish water. They rested at the side of this fountain the remaining part of the night. On the 8th, the lieutenant and Mr. Van Renan left the waggon, and directed their course west-north-west. In the afternoon they arrived at the Elephant's-River, and found it so deep that their horses swam about ten yards. They soon reached the opposite shore, where, at a little distance, was the house of a Dutchman who had lived many years on the banks of this river, and kept a small boat for transporting waggons, in time of necessity. They stayed here, waiting for their waggon, and dried their clothes. The following day was employed in transporting their baggage over the river. The country around is rather naked of trees; but produces a great variety of succulent plants. They were furnished by their benevolent host with a team of fresh oxen, which were necessary to enable them to pass through a deep sandy plain; and were accompanied by a peasant of the Nimiqua-Land, who was travelling towards the Cape. They continued their journey about twenty miles to the southward, and at night came to a large cove, called the Heer-Loddiement (i. e. gentlemen's lodgings) where they rested till the next day. In the afternoon they proceeded on their journey through a deep white sandy plain. They travelled till midnight, when they found a little water, near which they passed the night. The next morning they proceeded to a farm, called the Long-Valley, which is distant from the Elephant's-River about sixty miles. Here they stayed all night, and were, as usual, hospitably entertained. From this place they directed their course east by south, along the valley. In the night some animal sprung out of a bush, which so greatly alarmed their oxen, that it was with difficulty they could keep them still. They supposed the noise to proceed from an hyena, as they heard the cries of those animals some time after at a very considerable distance. On the fourteenth, they arrived at the Berg-Valley, where they stayed all night, at the house of Jofias Engelbright. The lieutenant now dispatched his waggon, on the fifteenth, towards the Piquet-Berg, and together with his companion passed the day in this place, where he shot variety of birds, which he found in great abundance. The next day they proceeded on their journey; passed a place called the Croffe, where the Berg-Valley joins the Venlore-Valley, and both assume a westward direction. At noon they overtook the waggon, and rested the afternoon at the house of a Mr. Smith. Towards the evening, the lieutenant and Mr. Smith made a short excursion towards the hill, and took each of them a gun. On their return they shot four large flamingoes, from four to five and six feet long. They saw also the Yellow Snake, or Covra-Capel. Afterwards they directed their course along the Piquet-Berg, on the side of the large chain of mountains which commences at the end of the Hottiqua-Land, and extends through the interior part of the country to about twenty miles from the Atlantic Ocean. In the afternoon they arrived at the house of a Dutchman, where they stayed all night, and were well entertained.— This farm is fruitful, producing plenty of European fruits and corn. On the 17th, the lieutenant made an excursion to the top of the mountain, where he had a view of the Table-Land to the southward, distant about sixty or seventy miles. The mountain is well watered, and is covered with variety of grass. There is also a farm here belonging to Mr. Hana Camp, where he kept part of his cattle during summer; but in the winter it is often covered with snow. On our hero's return he saw several zebras, which inhabit the mountain;

mountain; but as they are not found in considerable numbers, shooting them is prohibited. After refreshing himself, he followed his waggon, and towards the evening overtook it. About midnight they came to the Berg-Rivier, where there is a ferry; they continued here during the remaining part of the night; and the next morning the lieutenant and Mr. Van Renan left the waggon, and traversed Black-Land, leaving the Ric-Beck's-Castiel on their left. In the afternoon they passed the Swart-Land's church, and at night came to the house of Clafs Lopper, which is

situated on the Deep River. He was just arrived from the Cape, and had brought with him some excellent wine, to which he very liberally made our travellers welcome. Hence they directed their course along the Camis-Berg, and observed the farmers now engaged in their harvest. At noon they came to a place belonging to the Dutch company, called Effens-Hook, where they refreshed themselves, and in the afternoon proceeded on their way, and after a journey of six months arrived at the Cape-Town, November 20, 1778.

C H A P. III.

In order to explore Caffraria, hitherto unknown, the Lieutenant undertakes his THIRD JOURNEY—Accompanied by Mr. Tunnies proceeds to Groot-Faders-Bosch—They pass several Rivers—Descend the Canna-Lands Height—Observe Hun's Farm—Arrive at the House of Rulof Comphor—At Crooked-River—Reach Effen-Bosch—Proceed to Camis-Rivier—Surprised by a wild Buffalo—Arrive at Van Stada's Rivier—Rest at Swart Kop's Rivier—Pick up a Companion—Observations on Zout-Van—Visited by two Caffres—Arrive at Hottentots Kow-Oha—Meet with two Dogs, &c.—Visit one of the Dutch Boers—Mr. Tunnies leaves the Parry, and Jacob Kock supplies his Place—Surrender Fleet—Visit a Kraal—Miss their Cattle which were stolen—Recover them—Proceed to Coet Viss-River—To Nieu-Tio—Proceed to Caffraria—Manners, Ornaments, &c. of the People—Description of the Chief—Of the Country—Their Return to the Cape.

NOTWITHSTANDING the Caffres are so jealous of the encroachments of the Dutch (the only Europeans they have knowledge of) that they deny all others admittance to their territory, yet our hero was determined to pay them a visit, Caffraria having been never yet explored, and on account of its remoteness, deemed unworthy the notice of the States or Company. Accordingly, Lieutenant Paterlon left Cape-Town December 23, and January 3, 1779, arrived at Zwelendam. Here a Mr. Tunnies, one of the Company's overseers, who was then going to the eastward to exchange cattle for tobacco and beads, joined our travellers, and they proceeded to Groot-Faders-Bosch.

On the 8th, they passed the Doven Hocks-Rivier, where they rested that night, and next day passed the Falte-River and Callre-Kulls-Rivier, and from this directed their course to the Gauds-Rivier, and afterwards to the Hagal-Kraal, leaving the shore of the Indian Ocean, about 120 miles distance, on their right hand.

On the 12th, with as much difficulty as before (journey the first) they passed Atquas-Kloaf, and now took the eastward direction through part of the Canna-Land.

On the 13th, in the afternoon, they descended the Canna-Lands height, which is a steep, horrid, rugged path; the country had a most miserable appearance, so very destitute that the sudden discovery of a piece of cultivated land which belonged to one Okker Hynns, afforded no small amusement. This industrious farmer, had, notwithstanding the dreariness of the situation, built a capital house and planted vineyards and gardens, which produced excellent wine and fruit, particularly peaches, apricots, figs, almonds, &c. &c. which he dried and sent to the Cape for sale. About three weeks before their arrival, there had been a very heavy storm of hail and wind; the hail-stones, which were of an enormous size, and the impetuous wind, had destroyed every thing about his house. His corn, vineyard, and fruit trees, were totally spoiled; one of his children, who was at the time keeping a flock of sheep at some distance from any shelter, was very much hurt, and many of the sheep were destroyed.

At sun-set they travelled to a small river, about six miles distant from this place, where they continued all night: and proceeded the next day to the eastward, arriving in the evening at the house of one Rulof Comphor. This is the beginning of the Lange-Kloaf, which is about an hundred miles long, and about two miles in breadth; the soil is a strong reddish clay,

and the pasture very unwholesome for cattle. This part of the country has been very much improved of late, the farmers have cultivated corn-land, gardens, and vineyards, and in general are possessed of very good houses.

They now pursued their journey along this valley, making occasional short stages, and on the 24th arrived at the Crooked-River, which runs through a long marshy valley bounded by two ridges of hills, but not so lofty as that of the Lange-Kloaf. At the mouth of this river is a kind of bay, which may afford a safe harbour for ships. This part of the coast is but little known, particularly to the east. They reached in the afternoon a place, called Effen-Bosch, so called from a tree very useful in making waggons, which the Dutch term Effen, or Ash. Thence they proceeded to a house beautifully situated on the banks of a pleasant river, called Cablows-River, from a fish which goes by that name, and which is a species of cod, being found near its mouth. This house being the property of Mr. Van Renan, our travellers staid here a day, and visited the shore, which is only about an English mile distant. Among the rocks they found abundance of oysters, which were very good. The farm produces plenty of corn, wine, and European fruits, and the pasture here is excellent for cattle.

On the 23d they proceeded to the Camis-Rivier, where they rested during the heat of the day. On the banks of this river are woods of very large trees, which are generally frequented by wild buffaloes, so very fierce, as to render travelling hereabouts exceedingly dangerous. In the afternoon they were accompanied by a servant of Mr. Van Renan, who was going towards the Loric-Rivier. About ten o'clock at night, they arrived at the place where their waggon already was, and to their great surprise they saw a wild buffalo standing close to it, which they at first took for one of the oxen. Before they could ascertain whether this was the case or not, it sprung into the wood.

Hence they proceeded, south by east, through an uneven country, and in the evening came to Van Stada's Rivier, where they observed a beautiful wood upon the declivity of a hill, extending to the very banks of the river. On the 26th, our hero visited the sea-shore, which was five or six miles to the southward. About a thousand yards from the sea, the mouth of the river forms a lake, being dammed up by a bank of sand, which extends along the shore. In the afternoon they continued their journey through an extensive plain, where they met with

r. He was just arriv'd
ought with him some ex-
very liberally made out
they direct'd their course
observed the farmers now
At noon they came to a
h company, called Filla-
shed themselves, and in
n their way, and after a
ived at the Cape-Town,

OURNEY—Accompanied to
na-Lands—Height—Obser-
-Bosch—Proceed to C...
Kop's River—Pick up a
-Loo-Abu—Meet with
supplies his Place—N...
cat Fish-River—To N...
Chief—Of the Country—

olefome for cattle. This
very much improved
ivated corn-land, gardens,
eral are possessed of very

journey along this valley,
ges, and on the 24th arriv'd
r, which runs through a
by two ridges of hills, but
e Lange-Kloof. At the
of bay, which may afford
This part of the coast is
larly to the east. They
place, called Effen-Bosch,
useful in making waggons,
en, or Ash. Thence they
sally situated on the banks
Cableows-River, from a
ne, and which is a species
its mouth. This house
Van Renan, our traveller's
the shore, which is con-
stant. Among the rocks
oylers, which were very
plenty of corn, wine, and
allure here is excellent in

eded to the Camoens-Ri-
ting the heat of the day
are woods of very large
frequented by wild buffaloes
to render travelling here-
erous. In the afternoon
by a servant of Mr. Van
towards the Lorie-River.
they arrived at the place
ly was, and to their great
buffalo standing close to
one of the oxen. Before
er this was the case of most,

south by east, through a
the evening came to Van
observed a beautiful wood
hill, extending to the very
the 26th, our hero visited
five or six miles to the
ousand yards from the sea,
rms a lake, being dammed
which extends along the
they continued their jour-
plain, where they met with
numerous

numerous herds of different animals peculiar to this country, such as the zebra, quacha, eland, and a species of antelope, called by the Dutch, hartebeest, which is the Capra Dorcas of Linnaeus, one of which they had the good fortune to shoot. It is of a brownish colour, and the flesh is palatable though dry.

In the evening they arrived at the Swart-Kops-Rivier, where they passed the night, and the next morning were overtaken by a peasant who was on his way to the Boshiesman's-Land, and was glad to accompany them, as this place lay in their way. Being a man well acquainted with the country, and the manners of the natives, his company was equally acceptable. They passed the Swart-Kops-Rivier at noon.

Zout-Pan, which is situate in this neighbourhood, is an object that cannot fail to attract the attention of travellers. This lake is a plain much above the level of the sea, and between three and four miles in circumference. At some seasons of the year it is formed into an entire mass of fine white salt, which has a very striking appearance. The heavy rains had dissolved the middle part of it, a short time before the arrival of our travellers; but round the sides was a hard crust of salt exactly resembling ice. The adjacent country is covered with variety of frutescent and succulent plants.

They were here visited by two Caffres, the first they had yet seen; for they very seldom venture so far out of their own country. At night they arrived at a place, called by the Hottentots Kow-Cha, which is much frequented by buffaloes, rhinoceroses, and lions. The soil is of a sandy loam, and produces excellent pasture for cattle, but no corn; there is, however, no proof that the land is not fit to produce grain, for no care is taken respecting cultivation at this distance from the Cape.

On the 29th they pursued their journey to the eastward, towards the Sundays-River. The face of the country, at this place, has a very barren appearance; but it produces a variety of arborescent plants, though very few of any considerable height or size, which demonstrates the poverty of the soil. On their way they saw great numbers of wild dogs, which travel in flocks, and are very destructive when they get where there are flocks of sheep. These wild dogs are common near the Cape. They are much larger than the jackall, with large irregular blotches or spots on their skin. After a very disagreeable day's march, through a dry stony country, they arrived at night at the Sundays-River, which is distant from the Cape-Town about nine hundred miles.

Next day the lieutenant visited one of the Dutch boors, who had resided in that part of the country for many years. This man was possessed of numerous herds of cattle; but had no corn, and scarcely a house to live in, though the place was favourable for both. But the generality of these people are of so indolent a disposition, that they seldom trouble themselves either to build houses or to cultivate the ground. Such as are inclined to be industrious, and wish to make the most of their advantages, never fail in deriving the sought-for benefits.

Mr. Tunies took his leave of the lieutenant on the thirty-first, and his place was supplied by Jacob Kock, an old German. Mr. Van Renan and the lieutenant went on towards the Great Fish-River. At noon they overtook their waggon, at a place which, in the Hottentot language, is called Curnow. They were informed by their servants, that they had been disturbed in the night by some elephants, which came very near the waggon. They proceeded in the afternoon to a plantation, called the Sand-Fleet, belonging to their fellow-traveller Jacob Kock.

The country here is extremely beautiful and picturesque, very hilly, and the hills are shaded with impenetrable woods; the vallies well watered and covered with grass, which affords excellent pasture for cattle. Great numbers of quadrupeds inhabit this

neighbourhood, such as panthers, lions, rhinoceroses, elephants, spring hocks, buffaloes, &c. At a little distance to the eastward are some kraals belonging to the tribe of Hottentots, called Chonacqas. These people are much darker in their complexion, and better shaped than any of the other tribes that were before seen. Whether this difference arises from their mixing with the Caffres, several of whom dwell in this part of the country, or from any other cause, our hero could not ascertain. It is not very uncommon for the Caffres and Chonacqas to quarrel, which generally ends in an engagement. In these encounters several hundreds of the Caffres sometimes unite to oppose their enemies, who very seldom bring a proportionable force into the field. But the dexterity with which the Hottentots use their bows and arrows, and the practice of poisoning the latter, render them very dangerous enemies to those who only use the halibout. The disputes between these people generally originate about cattle, of which both nations are remarkably greedy.

They now proceeded eastward, to the Boshiesman's-River, and at noon our hero visited a kraal belonging to a Hottentot captain, called De Royster. This man has upwards of two hundred Hottentots and Caffres in his service, and a few hours before their arrival, had fought against a number of Caffres, and taken many of their cattle, having beaten them entirely off the field.

After some time, they reached a lake of brackish water on February the first, and stayed here the whole night. They intended to prosecute their journey early the following morning, but missing their cattle, their first care was to dispatch their Hottentots in search of them. In a few hours one of the men returned and informed our travellers, that they had been stolen by the Caffres, that they had discerned the prints of their feet, and saw, from tracing them, that the cattle had been driven towards a village belonging to a Caffre captain, whose name was Mah-hotte. A messenger was immediately dispatched to the other Hottentots, with an order that they should follow the path of the cattle till they found them, which they did. They returned with them towards the evening, and informed the lieutenant that they were found a little way from the kraal. One of the Caffres told our travellers that they had taken the cattle to a lake, as the evening was dark, and they thought they belonged to the Hottentots with whom they had fought the day before. Though it was now late they continued their journey about twenty miles.

In the night they arrived at a place, called the K'a Cha Chow, which is one of the branches of the Boshiesman's-River, and where their companion, Jacob Kock, had formerly his residence. The old German accompanied our travellers on the 3d to the Great Fish-River. Thence they pursued their journey to the eastward, through a pleasant country, though quite uninhabited. There are numerous herds of quadrupeds to be found here, and such the amazing height of the grass, that it reached their horses bellies. This part of the country is agreeably diversified with little pleasant woods upon the declivities of the hills. In the evening they came to a place, called Now-Tio, and the next day at noon reached a small river, which at this time was almost dry; here, however, they rested a few hours, seeing a herd of buffaloes at a distance from them, which they intended to amuse themselves with shooting in the afternoon. After dinner they divided themselves into different parties, and as soon as they were within shot they attacked the buffaloes; they were about an hundred in number; five of them they shot, some of which were much heavier than an European bullock; the others fled into a wood, which was about a mile to the eastward of them. Mr. Kock had the animals skinned; their hides making such excellent things for oxen, that they are preferred to every other material for this purpose. At night they arrived at the Fish-River, where they stayed two days. During the night they

had heavy showers of rain, with loud claps of thunder. Here the river assumes a southern direction, and empties itself into the great Indian Ocean, at about twenty miles distance. The deepest parts of the river are inhabited by the hippopotami, and the adjacent woods by buffaloes, rhinoceroses, and elephants.

Mr. Van Renan having agreed to stay with the waggon, there being no possibility as yet of getting it through the impenetrable woods, the lieutenant and Mr. Kock proceeded easterly towards the Caffres, being informed that they could reach their country in two or three days. They took with them an Hottentot who was perfectly acquainted with the language of the Caffres. In passing through the thickets, on the banks of the Fish-River, they encountered considerable difficulties, till they fortunately got into an elephant's path, in which they continued till now; they then crossed the river and entered a spacious plain, remarkable for beautiful evergreens, &c.

In the evening they encamped under a large Mimosa, and during the night kindled fires. When they had passed this extensive plain, they entered a wood about eight miles broad. In many places the trees were thinly scattered; in these openings they discovered numerous herds of buffaloes, which had not the least appearance of thyness; one of them they wounded. Shortly after this they perceived a herd of elephants, about eighty in number, which approached so near that they could observe the length and thickness of their teeth.

Having left the wood, they ascended a steep mountain, where they had a view of the Indian Ocean to the southward; and to the northward, a hilly country covered with trees and evergreen shrubs, which extended about thirty miles. The prospect was bounded by a range of mountains, called the Bamboo-Berg, so called from a species of Bamboo which grows there. To the east they had a view of a pleasant country decorated with great variety of plants. The country is here well watered, and produces excellent pasture for cattle.

On the 7th, near evening time, they observed a fire about ten miles to the eastward of them upon the slope of a green hill. Their interpreter told them this was at a Caffre village. At sunset they discovered another much nearer, and saw several herds of cattle. About eight in the evening they met three of the Caffres, who were much surprised at our travellers' appearance, as they were certainly the first Europeans they had ever seen. They speedily returned and alarmed the whole village; but on the arrival of the lieutenant and his friend, they received them kindly, brought them milk, and offered a fat bullock, agreeable to their custom of hospitality. This village consisted of about fifty houses, situate on the banks of a pleasant river, called in the Caffre language, Muzn Ranie, and which belonged to their chief. It contained about three hundred inhabitants, all of whom were servants or soldiers to their chief, who was likewise the proprietor of the numerous herds of cattle. These people subsist on the milk of their cows, and on game, not being allowed to kill any of their cattle. The men milk the cows, and the women take care of the gardens and corn. Our travellers were accompanied by all these people from one village to another, till they arrived at the place belonging to the person who is denominated chief or king. His habitation was situate on a pleasant river, called Becha Cum, or Milk-River. Indeed all their houses are built on the banks of rivers or streams; but there was no corn or garden near it. The chief (whose name was Khouta) had about an hundred cows, which supplied him and his household with milk. His family consisted of about twenty-two servants, who attended him wherever he went. On the appearance of our travellers he seemed very shy, and kept at a great distance for about an hour, when a number of Caffres met and accompanied him to his house. He soon afterwards sent one of his servants

to invite the lieutenant and his party thither. The first thing our hero presented him with was some beads, which he fitely accepted: next with some tobacco; but he seemed to prefer his own, which was much lighter. He soon offered the lieutenant a herd of fat bullocks in return; this being refused, he seemed greatly affronted, and often repeated, "What do you think of our country?" After a few words between them, our hero accepted of one, which his people immediately shot; this surpris'd all the spectators, who were about six hundred persons, few of them having ever seen a gun, or heard the report of one. They had a part of the bullock dressed, which the lieutenant thought much superior to the beef near the Cape. The rest of the animal was distributed among the king and his servants; the former still seeming displeas'd that our hero would accept of nothing more in return. The lieutenant then asked him for some of their baskets, which he gave him, and also two of their lances or haffagais, which they make with great ingenuity; but the construction of the baskets, which are made by their women, is much more surpris'ing; they are composed of grass, and woven so closely that they are capable of holding any fluid. Khouta now entreated our travellers to remain with him a few days; this, however, they did not consent to; but after much persuasion, agreed to stay all night. As the weather was hot, they chose to sleep in the woods rather than in any of the huts. During the night there were two guards placed on each side the door of the chief's house, who were relieved about every two hours.

The lieutenant, allured by the pleasantness of the country, propos'd to proceed further to the east, but finding there was a river a little to the eastward of them, they determin'd on returning the same way they came.

The large palm, which grows here in abundance, is used for bread by the Caffres as well as the Hottentots. They take the pith of this plant, and after collecting a sufficient quantity, let it lie for several days till it becomes a lute foam; after this they bake it in an oven which is erected for the purpose. They also bake bread of their own corn, which is the same as the Guinea corn. But this grain is mostly used for making punch, called by some of them Pombie, which is strong and intoxicating. The men amongst the Caffres are from five feet ten inches to six feet high, and well proportioned, and in general evince great courage in attacking lions, or any beasts of prey. This nation, at this time, was divided into two parties; to the northward were a number of them commanded by one Chatha Bea, or Tambulue, who had obtained the latter denomination from his mother, a woman of the tribe of Hottentots, called Tambukies. This man was the son of a chief, called Pharoa, who died about three years before, and left two sons, Cha Cha Bea, and another named Dfirika, who claimed the supreme authority on account of his mother being of the Caffre nation. This occasioned a contest between the two brothers, in the course of which Cha Cha Bea was driven out of his territories, with a number of his adherents. The unfortunate chief travelled about an hundred miles to the northward of Khouta, where he resided, and had entered into an alliance with the Bohliefmen Hottentots. The colour of the Caffres is a jet black, their teeth white as ivory, and their eyes large. The clothing of both sexes is nearly the same, consisting entirely of the hides of oxen, which are as pliant as cloth. The men wear tails of different animals tied round their thighs, pieces of brass in their hair, and large ivory rings on their arms; they are also adorned with the hair of lions, and leathers fastened on their heads, with many other fantastical ornaments. When they are about nine years of age they undergo the operation of being circumcised, and afterwards wear a muzzle of leather which covers the extremity of the penis, and is suspended by a leathern thong from their middle. This covering is in general ornamented with

his party thither. The
ed him with was some
ecept: next with some
fer his own, which was
red the lieutenant a herd
s being refused, he seem-
s repeated, "What do
fter a few words between
one, which his people
rified all the spectators,
f persons, few of them
heard the report of one
lock dressed, which the
rior to the beef near the
al was distributed among
he former still seeming
ould accept of nothing
nant then asked him for
he gave him, and allo
agains, which they make
the construction of the
their men, is much
composed of grass, and
are capable of holding
reated our travellers to
ys; this, however, they
much persuasion, agreed
weather was hot, they
rather than in any of the
ere were two guards pla-
f the chief's house, who
two hours.

ly the pleasantness of the
d farther to the east, but
little to the eastward of
returning the same way
ows here in abundance,
res as well as the Hotten-
this plant, and after col-
let it lie for several days
after this they bake it
for the purpose. They
corn, which is the same
this grain is mostly used
y some of them Pombie,
ing. The men amongst
et ten inches to six feet
l, and in general evince
ions, or any heats of
time, was divided into
ere were a number of them
bea, or Tambuline, who
mination from his mother,
tmentots, called Tambu-
a of a chief, called Pha-
ears before, and left two
ther named Dhirika, who
y on account of his mo-
ion. This occasioned a
others, in the course of
ent out of his territories,
ents. The unfortunate
dred miles to the north-
fished, and had entered
sifmen Hottentots. The
black, their teeth white
The clothing of both
nsisting entirely of the
s plant as cloth. The
animals tied round their
hair, and large ivory
re also adorned with the
fastened on their heads,
ornaments. When they
they undergo the opera-
and afterwards wear a
ers the extremity of the
a leathern thong from
is in general ornamented
with

with heads and brass rings, which they purchase
from the Hottentots for tobacco and dacka. They
are extremely fond of dogs, which they exchange
for cattle, and to such a height do they carry this
passion, that if one particularly pleases them, they
will give two bullocks in exchange for it. Their
whole exercise through the day is hunting, fighting,
or dancing. They are expert in throwing their
lances, and in time of war use shields made of the
hides of oxen. The women (as before observed)
are employed in making baskets, and cultivating their
gardens and corn; they also make the mats on which
they sleep. They rear several vegetables, which are
not indigenous to their country, such as water-melons,
tobacco, hemp, and a small sort of kidney-beans.
The men have great pride in their cattle; they cut
their horns in such a way as to be able to turn them
into any shape they please, and teach them to answer
a whistle. Some of them use an instrument for this
purpose, similar to a Boshiesman's pipe. When they
with their cattle to return home, they go a little way
from the house and blow this small instrument, which
is made of ivory or bone, and so constructed as to
be heard at a great distance, and in this manner
bring all their cattle home without any difficulty.

The soil of this country is a blackish loamy ground,
and so extremely fertile, that every vegetable sub-
stance, whether sown or planted, grows with great
luxuriance. There are great variations in the cli-
mate; it seldom rains except in the summer season,
when it is accompanied with thunder and lightning.
The country is, however, extremely well supplied
with water, not only from the high land to the north,
which furnishes abundance throughout the year, but
from many fountains of excellent water, which are
found in the woods, wherein are various arborescent
plants, some of a great size, and a number of buffa-
loes, elephants, &c. also a variety of beautiful birds
and butterflies.

Having returned to their waggon, they were
accompanied by the chief and about six hundred
of his servants or soldiers, who followed them till
noon, when they took leave of them. They then
directed their course towards the Great Fifth-River,
where they staid all night; and on the 10th, left
their Hottentot, with a gun, as he was so much
fatigued that he could not keep pace with them. On
the 12th they proceeded on their return by the route
they had before taken. This day they were over-
taken by the Hottentot, who on his way had shot two
rhinoceroses, and brought part of the flesh with
him, which proved good eating, being very young
and tender.

About evening they arrived at the Now-Tio. Mr.
Van Renan left the waggon, accompanied by some
Hottentots, with an intention of shooting at a herd
of buffaloes, which they observed at about the dis-
tance of a mile. Before they returned there were
many loud claps of thunder, with lightning and
heavy rain; and it became so dark that they lost their
way. On account of the rain, those left behind
could make no fires till about nine, when the storm
was much abated, and then they lighted several,
which the wanderers soon saw. About ten they
arrived at the waggon, Mr. Van Renan having fallen
into the river, the only accident which happened to
them.

On the 13th they missed their cattle, and dis-
patched their Hottentots in pursuit of them, who
returned in the evening without having observed
any traces of them. Accordingly the lieutenant and
Mr. Kock saddled their horses the next morning,
and directing their course through the country in
search of them, found them at the Boshiesman's-
River, about twenty miles distant. They then, with
some of Mr. Kock's Hottentots, returned.

When they had reached Cablows-Rivier, they
agreed to remain in that place a few days. Here
they were supplied with great variety of fruit, as it
was in the height of the season for grapes, peaches,
water-melons, &c. &c. Having taken leave of their
hospitable friend, they directed their course south
by well, towards the house of their companion Mr.
Kock, which is situate on the Zie-Koc-Rivier, or
Sea-Cow-River, so called from its being formerly
inhabited by the hippopotami. Here many of their
oxen fell sick, having caught a disease called the
klow sickness, which rages among the horned cattle
in the summer, and affects their hoofs so much that
they drop off, and numbers of the cattle die. Mr.
Van Renan dispatched one of his Hottentots to his
father's house, who returned to them with a supply
of fresh cattle. They then proceeded westward.

On the first of March, in the evening, they ar-
rived at the house of a Dutchman, where they rested
that night, and the next day passed the Krome-Rivier.
In a few days they arrived at the house of one
Veraira, a wealthy farmer, where they had the mortifi-
cation to find their cattle in the same condition as
before, and those they had brought from the Cab-
lows-Rivier still worse than the others which had
previously suffered.

After a journey of three months, the lieutenant
having left Mr. Van Renan with the waggon, arrived
at the Cape, March the 23d.

C H A P. IV.

The Lieutenant, accompanied by Mr. Sebastian Van Renan, undertakes his FOURTH JOURNEY—Proceed towards Gloena-Kloaf—Arrive at Ric Beck's Castle—Berg-Rivier—Picquet-Berg—The Crois—Lost Valley—Entertained by Mr. Gueff—Lange-Vallis—Jackals-Valley—They lose their Way—Reach the House of Peter Van Syl—Waggon damaged—Meet Colonel Gordon—Separate in a different Route—Arrive at Bokke-Veld—A born-River—Meet an Hottentot on the Way to Lion's-Den—Misfortunes—Visited by several Boshiesmen—Proceed to Brack-Fountain—Hartebeest-Rivier—Three-Fountain—Green-Rivier—Meet Colonel Gordon again—Examine Camis-Berg—Meet a Peasant and Deserter—Advised by the Natives not to proceed—Lieutenant Patterson and Colonel Gordon separate again—Continuation of the Journey—Pass several dangerous Places—A Letter from the Colonel—Hottentots murmur—The Colonel joins again the Party—Observations—The Cattle drop for Want of Grass and Water—Reach a Fountain of excellent Water—Proceed Northward—A Companion of the Colonel's lost—A large Valley discovered—Find an Ostrich Nest—Remarks—Find the Colonel's Companion—Meet with wild Men, &c.—Adventures—Rest at Water-Fal—Arrive at Lee-Fountain—Cork-Fountain—Visited by several Nimiquas—Further Progress—Meet several Hottentots—Curious Remarks—Finding several Natives eating the Gums of the Trees—Obliged to dig Pits for Water—Thunder Clouds observed—Visited by Bush-Hottentots—Continuation of the Journey—Arrive at Hier-Loosement—Supplied with fresh Oxen—Return to the Cape.

LIEUT. Patterson, accompanied by Mr. Sebastian Van Renan, now undertook his fourth journey. They proceeded to Ronde-Bofch, the house of Sebastian's father, where, on account of the badness of the weather, they staid three days. Thence they proceeded north, towards Groena-Kloaf, which coun-

try is chiefly the Dutch Company's property. Having passed a heavy sand, they arrived at a butcher's house, where they rested for a night. This part of the country is celebrated for pheasants, partridges, water-snipes, and a variety of game. They now proceeded north-east, through Swart-Land, and ar-
rived

rived at Rie Beek's Cattle, at the house of one Mr. Droyer, a wealthy farmer, where they remained two days. The lieutenant made an excursion to the Rie Beek's Cattle-Berg. On the top of this hill a piece of cannon is placed for the purpose of giving signals, to prevent surprize from an enemy, and to alarm the adjacent country. They left Mr. Droyer's on the 25th, and arrived at the Berg-Rivier, where they staid all night, and early next morning crossed it at a ferry. This day they proceeded on their journey to the Picquet-Berg, and the next arrived at the Crois, where they staid all night. Hence they proceeded westerly, along the Loll-Valley; and in the evening came to the house of Mr. Gueff. During the night of the 25th, a very heavy rain fell, which swelled the river so much that the next day they found it impassable. The farmer was much pleased with their company, and entreated them to prolong their stay for several days, to which, as the river still continued very high, they agreed. Upon seeing the waters subside, they proposed to proceed in their journey, and were assisted by their hospitable friend Mr. Gueff, who supplied them with some of his cattle, which were more accustomed to passing the flood than their own. The river was broad, and in several places the oxen were obliged to swim. When they reached the opposite shore they directed their course northward, through a high sandy country. At night they arrived at the Lange-Valley, at the house of Mrs. Low, an old French woman, who had long lived in this part of the country, and was possessed of numerous herds of cattle. They staid all night here, and the following day proceeded on their journey through a large sandy plain, towards the Hier-Lodfement, which is above forty miles distant. At night they came to the Jackals-Valley, where, though they found no water, they were obliged to remain a few hours in order to refresh their oxen, which were much fatigued. About two in the morning they proceeded to the place where they intended to rest, and which they reached at nine in the afternoon; here they found a peasant who had arrived about two hours before them. Our hero inquired which way he was going, observing he had many Hottentots and a number of guns in his waggon: he said that his course was towards the Great-River, and that he intended to accompany Colonel Gordon, whom he left at the Cape, but expected he would soon overtake them. In the afternoon they directed their course towards the Elephants-River; but unluckily in the night lost their way. They saw some fires, which they expected had been made at the place of their destination; but on their arrival at the spot, they found they had been lighted by some Hottentots who had the care of a flock of sheep belonging to a Dutchman. One of these directed them on their right way, and at two in the morning they came to the house of Peter Van Syl, who had lived on the banks of this river for many years. Their waggon was so much damaged, on their journey hither from the Cape, that they were compelled to remain here a few days in order to have it repaired; which having done, they transported their baggage and waggon across the river, at this time very high. In the evening Colonel Gordon arrived; but as he was pursuing a different route, it was agreed to meet in the Small Nimiqua-Land, and then to proceed together along the shore of the Atlantic Ocean, as far as they could possibly travel to the northward. Accordingly our hero and his party directed their course to the Bokke-Lands-Bergen, where they had appointed to receive a team of fresh oxen. When they arrived at the Bokke-Veld, they ascended the mountain, and left the waggon by a small fountain; the path being impassable on account of the heavy rains which had fallen. At this place they supplied themselves with some provision; and Mr. Seballian Van Renan took a cart with him, and sixteen bullocks belonging to his father Mr. Van Renan.

They proceeded on their journey towards the Small Nimiqua-Land, and arrived at the Thora-River, where, during the night of the sixteenth, they heard the roaring of lions, which they supposed to be about a thousand yards from them. On their way to a place, called the Lion's-Den, they met a Hottentot, who informed them, that at his kraal, the family had been visited by the same lions which they had heard, and that they had devoured two of his calves. This Hottentot was the servant of Mrs. Ryek, and lived here in the Karo during the winter season, the charge of part of her cattle having been committed to him. After travelling till night without finding a drop of water, and being so unfortunate as to lose their way, they were obliged to stop till the next morning. During the night Mr. S. Van Renan lost his horse, which it was supposed had returned to the Bokke-Veld, whence they had brought him. At day-light they proceeded on their journey, and at ten in the morning arrived at the Lion's-Den, where they rested all day, and were visited by several of the Bothersmen.

Next they proceeded to the Reed, or Brack-Fountain, where they had very indifferent water, and thence to the Hartebeest Rivier, and from this to Three-Fountain, where they staid all night, and early the following day continued their journey north-west, to the Green-River, where they had the satisfaction of meeting Colonel Gordon, who had arrived there only a few hours before them.

As their caravan made a short stay on the banks of this river, our hero took this advantage of visiting and inspecting the slope of the Camis-Berg, which is adorned with a great variety of evergreen shrubs; but this being the winter season very few were in flower.

Having been sufficiently rested, they determined on prosecuting their journey to the northward, and in the evening of the twenty-fifth, arrived at a Hottentot village, which consisted of eighteen huts, where they passed the night, and next day continued their course northward. At noon they met a peasant who had come from the Great-River, and was travelling towards the Cape, accompanied by a deserter, who had been seven years absent, and had travelled over a great part of the country. This poor fellow was a native of Sweden, and made many sensible reflections upon his misfortunes in Africa. This evening they arrived at the house of one Hermannus Engelbright, where they staid several days, and supplied themselves with necessaries for their intended journey along the shore of the Atlantic Ocean, as this was the last house they were likely to meet with in their way. It is situate on a branch of the Camis-Berg.

They were strenuously advised by the natives not to proceed further, it being they said an uninhabited desert, where neither man nor beast was visible, and where there was a great scarcity of water, and hardly a blade of grass for the support of their cattle. Notwithstanding these discouragements, they resolved to proceed as far as they possibly could; and it was agreed that one of them should set out a few days before the other, and that they should endeavour, if possible, to meet at the mouth of the Great-River. Colonel Gordon accordingly parted from them, and proceeded on his intended journey, entirely without a guide, as the natives at that time refused to accompany them. The next day, after much persuasion, the lieutenant prevailed on one, who was rather more spirited than the rest, to attend him, for which he recompensed him with some beads and tobacco; they were also accompanied by a brother of his companion, Jacobus Van Renan, who had been to the callward to shoot elephants.

August the 1st they departed from this place, and were supplied with a team of fresh oxen for two days. The day after their departure they continued their journey about ten miles to the western extremity of the mountain, where they had a view of the Atlantic

their journey towards the
arrived at the Thoro-
ght of the sixteenth, they
which they supposed to
s from them. On their
Lion's-Den, they met a
em, that at his kraal, the
the same lions which they
had devoured two of his
was the servant of Mrs.
e Karo during the winter
of her cattle having been
travelling till night with
r, and being so unfortun-
they were obliged to stop
ing the night Mr. S. Van
h it was supposed had re-
whence they had brought
ceeded on their journey,
arrived at the Lion's-Den,
and were visited by several

the Reed, or Brack-Foun-
tainer indifferent water, and
River, and from this to
they stayed all night, and
continued their journey
River, were they had the
Colonel Gordon, who had
ours before them.

short stay on the banks of
his advantage of visiting and
the Camis-Berg, which is
city of evergreen shrubs,
season very few were in

rested, they determined
y to the northward, and
y-hills, arrived at a Hottentot
nited of eighteen huts,
, and next day continued
at noon they met a peasant
reat-River, and was travel-
ompanied by a deserter,
absent, and had travelled
ntry. This poor fellow
and made many sensible
brunes in Africa. This
house of one Hermannias
stayed several days, and
ecessaries for their intend-
of the Atlantic Ocean, at
y were likely to meet with
on a branch of the Camis-

divided by the natives not
they said an uninhabited
nor beast was visible, and
city of water, and hardly
port of their cattle. Not-
gements, they resolved to
sibly could; and it was
should set out a few days
they should endeavour, if
outh of the Great-River,
y parted from them, and
journey, entirely without
at time refused to accom-
y, after much persuasion,
one, who was rather more
end him, for which he re-
heads and tobacco; they
brother of his companion,
had been to the eastward

erted from this place, and
f fresh oxen for two days,
are they continued their
the western extremity of
had a view of the Atlantic

at the distance of about forty miles. They descended the mountain with much difficulty, as it was both steep and rugged; and towards the evening of the second, they arrived at a fountain of brackish water. The soil in this part of the country consists of a sandy clay.

Next they directed their course through a sandy plain. In the evening they saw the dung of elephants, and at night came to a hollow rock, where they had abundance of water; on the north and south side were lofty mountains of a conical figure, and covered with the Aloe Dichotoma.

On the 3d in the afternoon, they proceeded on their journey through a sandy country. In the night they passed several dangerous places, and saw the print of lions, which occasioned them to stay all night at a pit of brackish water. This was not a country which flattered them with the expectation of pleasure; they therefore continued their journey northward, as soon as day, along a bed of heavy sand, between two precipices. This sand is driven down by the violent torrents of water which fall here during the summer season; but at this time the ground was almost dry, and the little water they found was rather salt; at many places indeed where the water had dried up, were quantities of excellent salt. At night they arrived at the Sand-River; they were now about ten miles from the Atlantic-Ocean, where the Sand-River empties itself. The banks afforded them excellent pasture for their cattle, and as they were greatly fatigued, they agreed to rest a few days.

While they remained here, one of the Hottentots who had been upon the hill, told them that he saw two waggons about three miles to the westward, which they supposed to belong to Colonel Gordon. Soon after the lieutenant received a letter from him, and they proceeded to the Rhinoceros-Fountain. The river was frequented by a variety of water-fowl, which afforded them excellent sport; among these they found great numbers of flamingoes, of two species, one much smaller than the other. They stayed here two days, and made excursions along the shore, where they saw strata of the most beautiful rocks, some of them as white as snow, and others veined with red and other colours. Here also they saw several huts made of the ribs of whales, and others of elephants' bones; but they perceived that they had not been inhabited for some time.

On the 7th, Colonel Gordon's companion, and the two Van Renans, being informed of a herd of elephants which were seen to the northward, left them, while the rest directed their course to the mouth of the river, where was a large lake of water which communicated with the sea. Here they expected to catch some fish, but they found none that were larger than a sprat. In the afternoon they shot some wild ducks and returned to the waggon. In the evening their companions returned, finding the elephants were gone. From this place they directed their course north, through a sandy country. They travelled the whole day, and at night were informed by their guide, that they were not half way to the first water, and that, as it was extremely dark, he would not venture to conduct or direct them through the sandy downs which lay along the shore, and extended many miles to the eastward. On hearing this they determined to remain where they were till day-light, when they proceeded on their journey, through the most barren country ever seen. Several of their Hottentots complained, and wanted much to return. After travelling all day, and towards the evening, not discerning any appearance of water, the country every where being equally dry, they consulted with their guide, who seemed not perfectly to know, whether they had passed the water or not. They all agreed to set out with their guide in search of water, and leave the waggons under the care of a servant of Colonel Gordon; accordingly they took with them a few bottles, that if they should be fortunate enough

to find water, they might send some to their Hottentots, who had not tasted any for two days. After travelling about four miles, they discovered a fountain on the shore, but which at high water was overflowed by the sea. This water was extremely disagreeable, and the quantity so small as to be barely sufficient for themselves and their horses. After slightly refreshing themselves, Colonel Gordon and an Hottentot returned to the waggon and took with them some water for their servants, while the rest determined to remain at the fountain, where they shot some flamingoes, which they eat. About midnight one of their Hottentots arrived, who had been absent from them two days; he had shot a chamois-buck, part of which he brought with him, and it proved good eating.

On the succeeding day they made an excursion along the coast, which is low and rocky, with strong furls off shore, which break about four miles from the land. They tried to fish at several places, but without success; the rocks were covered with muscles, and in the inlets, or small bays, were numbers of wild ducks, many of which they shot; but they were so oily, as to prove very disagreeable food.

On the next day, having filled some empty casks, they continued their journey northward. Colonel Gordon and Lieutenant Patterson left the waggon at ten in the morning, and proceeded along the shore, where they discovered several huts, about which lay a great number of shells, which inclined our travellers to suppose that the inhabitants subsisted entirely on the fish that they contained. At about one mile distant from the shore they saw a small island, where they observed several pieces of wood stuck into the ground; but they could not perceive any huts, and were convinced, by the number of seals which they saw every where round it, that at this time it was uninhabited. Along the shore they observed many bones of seals. At nine in the evening they lost their way, and the guide advised them to continue where they were till next morning. This day Colonel Gordon's companion, Mr. Pinar, left them, and promised that he would return at night to the waggon; accordingly they made fires, that he might discern where they were, but in vain. They remained in this place during the night, having fattened their cattle as usual.

Next day they continued their course north, through a sandy country. They observed to the eastward a high ridge of sandy hills, evidently thrown up by the south-east winds, which blow here every day. Having left the waggons, they directed their course along the shore, which was much elevated. In the highest rocks they found several petrefactions of shells, some of which were about an hundred and fifty feet above the surface of the sea. Colonel Gordon's cattle began to drop down in the waggon, having had neither grass nor water for two days; but the lieutenant's waggoner kept on his journey, and unknown to him, left the others behind. At nine in the evening they overtook his waggon, and found their people had been consulting whether or not they should return, as they had not the least prospect of finding water. They supposed that Colonel Gordon's companion had lost his way, and were in great doubt whether they should ever see or hear of him more. About ten, one of the Hottentots arrived, who had left the waggon in company with him, but parted the first day. He imparted the glad-tidings, that he had found a fountain of excellent water about six miles to the northward, and brought a little with him in a calabash. This animated them greatly, and next morning Colonel Gordon and Jacobus Van Renan returned to his waggon, while the lieutenant's party directed their course to the fountain, which they reached about nine, and the others arrived at noon. This fountain is situate between the two precipices, which were much decayed and worn. This place not only afforded good water, but excellent grass for cattle, and variety of succulent plants.

In order to rest their cattle they continued here a whole day: during the interim, the lieutenant and colonel made an excursion to the sea, which was distant about nine miles.

On the 15th, they directed their course northward, and with much difficulty and fatigue penetrated about ten miles, through a sandy country. In their road along the shore they observed the traces of human feet, which appeared so recent that they concluded some person had passed that way on that day or the day preceding. They were in hopes that these might have been some of the Hottentots who accompanied Mr. Pinar, Colonel Gordon's companion. In the night they made fires as a signal, but the signal not being answered, they concluded that they must have been the wild natives; and from finding the skin of a seal, which was quite fresh, this conjecture was confirmed. All hopes of ever seeing Mr. Pinar again now vanished, as he had been absent four days in these dreary deserts, and there was no possibility of tracing his steps.

On the 16th, their road lay to the northward, and at noon they passed two hills, which they had observed during their journey the two preceding days. Being situate at a very small distance from each other, and similar in figure and size, they gave them the name of the Two Brothers; and in this desolate region there was no one who could dispute any denomination by which they chose to distinguish whatever they met with. To the northward they discovered a large valley about three miles distant, but found there was no water: this Colonel Gordon called Bunting's Valley. They were obliged to stay here all night, as their cattle was so much fatigued that it was impossible to proceed further. They were then about eight miles from the river, according to the information of their guide.

Lieutenant Patterson, Colonel Gordon, and Jacobus Van Renan left the waggons early on the 17th, and proceeded on their journey. In their way they found an ostrich nest, containing thirty-four fresh eggs, which proved excellent food. They saw several zebras, elks, and quachas. At ten in the forenoon they arrived at the river, which appeared at once to be a new creation to them, after having passed nine days in crossing an arid and sultry desert, where no living animal was to be seen, and during which their cattle had but twice tasted the luxury of a drop of water. Here they unfaddled their horses and refreshed themselves by the side of the river, under the shade of a willow, which hung over its banks; and afterwards made an excursion along the river to the eastward, hoping that they should find some appearance of their lost companion, Mr. Pinar. They observed several old uninhabited huts, where numbers of baboons bones lay, with those of various other wild beasts. About a thousand yards from the banks of the river, the country is extremely barren, and to the eastward very mountainous. On these eminences there is scarcely any apparent vegetation. The banks of the river produce lofty trees peculiar to this country. In the afternoon, their waggon not being arrived, they returned the same way they came, and found their people had taken a different direction. They followed their track, and overtook them near the mouth of the river. In the evening they launched Colonel Gordon's boat, and hoisted Dutch colours. Colonel Gordon proposed first to drink the States' health, and then that of the Prince of Orange, and the Company; after which he gave the river the name of the Orange River, in honour of that Prince, and which in our former chapters we have so termed. They agreed to remain in this situation a few days, and to visit the opposite shore, as they had in this place very good pasture for their cattle.

On the 18th, they employed themselves in fishing, and towards the evening had the great satisfaction of once more beholding their lost companion, Mr. Pinar, who arrived with three of the Hottentots. They looked dreadfully ill, having travelled five days

through sultry deserts, over sandy hills and rocky mountains, without tasting food or swallowing a drop of water. On the fifth day they discovered a small fountain, where they left one of the Hottentots, who was so exhausted that they had no expectation he could survive the day. Mr. Pinar appeared to be much less injured by his unfortunate expedition than the Hottentots; their eyes were sunk in their heads, and they seemed entirely exhausted.

On the nineteenth, they made their proposed excursion along the shore, where they found numbers of ducks, wild geese, pelicans, flamingoes, &c. The land forms a flat point, which extends from the mouth of the river, north-west half west: the Two Brothers, south-east by south, are distant about twelve miles. The mouth is about half a mile in breadth; but is enclosed by a ridge of rocks which lie a mile from the shore, in a direction east and west, and which render it impossible for ships to enter the river. The land is extremely low and barren; to the westward, sandy; and to the east, rocky. In the evening their Hottentot arrived, whom they had given up as lost.

The colonel and lieutenant crossed the river on the 20th, and left the boat in order to make an excursion to the westward. Here they observed the print of human feet, which appeared to them to be fresh. Upon this they resolved to pursue the track, and on their way saw several snares laid for the wild beasts. After travelling about five miles to the northward, they perceived some of the natives on a sandy hillock, about one mile from them; they made several signals to them, but they seemed to be quite wild, and made their escape. Our travellers continued to follow their path, which brought them to their habitation; but they were still as unable to bring about any intercourse with them as before; for the whole family immediately betook themselves to flight, except a little dog, which seemed to be equally unacquainted with Europeans. The lieutenant and friends now stayed some time, and examined their huts; where they found several species of aromatic plants which they had been drying, and a few skins of seals. Their huts were much superior to those of the generality of Hottentots; they were loftier, and thatched with grass; and were furnished with stools made of the back bones of the grampus. Several species of fish were suspended from poles stuck into the ground. Having nothing about them which they thought would prove an acceptable present, Colonel Gordon cut the buttons from his coat, and deposited them among the aromatic plants which were drying. In the mean time they again observed these natives at the same place where they had first discovered them. They made every possible sign in order to allure them to them, and dispatched one of their Hottentots, who spoke to them and assured them they had no evil intention. After some time, Colonel Gordon went to them while the lieutenant remained at their huts with the guns, and after much persuasion he induced them to return to their kraal. They were eleven in number, and were the only natives who inhabited this part of the country. Our travellers inquired after other nations, but they could give them no account, except of the Nimiquas, whence they had just come. A Nimiqua woman who lived with them, was the only one of the company who knew any thing of Europeans. Though few in number, they were governed by a chief, whose name was Cout. The mode of living amongst these people was in the highest degree wretched; and they were apparently the dirtiest of all the Hottentot tribes. Their dress was composed of the skins of seals and jackals, the flesh of which they eat. When it happens that a grampus is cast ashore, they remove their huts to the place, and subsist upon it as long as any part of it remains; and in this manner it sometimes affords them sustenance for half a year, though in a great measure decayed and putrified by the sun. They smear their skins with the oil or train; the odour of which is so powerful, that their approach may

sandy hills and rocky
od or swallowing a drop
they discovered a small
of the Hottentots, who
had no expectation be
Pinar appeared to be
fortunate expedition than
ere sunk in their heads,
suffed.

le their proposed exten-
they found numbers of
flamingoes, &c. The
extends from the mouth
west: the Two Brothers,
n about twelve miles,
mile in breadth; but in
which lie a mile from the
well, and which render
the river. The land is
o the westward, sandy;
the evening their Hot-
ad given up as lost.

crossed the river on the
er to make an excursion
y observed the print of
l to them to be fresh.
nurse the track, and on
aid for the wild bea-
miles to the northward,
atives on a sandy hillock,
they made several signals
to be quite wild, and
vellers continued to fol-
ght them to their habita-
unable to bring about
as before; for the whole
themselves to flight, ex-
med to be equally un-
s. The lieutenant and
me, and examined their
eral species of aromatic
drying, and a few others
uch superior to those of
; they were softer, and
ere furnished with stools

the grampus. Several
ed from poles stuck in-
hing about them which
an acceptable preser-
tons from his coat, and
aromatic plants which
ime they again observed
ace where they had first
ade every possible sign in
, and dispatched one of
ce to them and assured
ion. After some time,
em while the lieutenant
the guns, and after much
to return to their kraal.
r, and were the only ca-
rt of the country. Our
r nations, but they could
cept of the Nimiquas.
A Nimiqua woman who
ly one of the company
peans. Though few in
y a chief, whose name
ing amongst these people
reached; and they were
l the Hottentot tribes.
f the skins of seals and
hey eat. When it hap-
hoire, they remove their
t upon it as long as any
his manner it sometimes
half a year, though in a
purified by the sun.
r the oil of train; the
ful, that their approach

may be perceived some time before they present
themselves to the sight. Their arrows are the same
as those of all the other Hottentots. They carry
their water in the shells of ostrich eggs, and the blad-
ders of seals, which they shoot with bows.

Being accompanied by four of the natives, they
returned to their boat towards evening. Their
companions left behind had been the whole day em-
ployed in fishing, with tolerable success; part of the
fish they had taken was given to the strangers, which
they thankfully received, and returned to their habi-
tation.

Our travellers now proposed to cross the river to their
waggons. The evening, however, being dark, their
boat overloaded, and they totally ignorant of their
course, they got into the surf, quite in the mouth of
the river, and had a very narrow escape. They were
about half an hour in great danger; but one of their
Hottentots observing the fires made by their com-
panions, they soon got into the right track.

On the 22d, they made an excursion through the
adjacent country, and the next day again crossed the
river, to inquire whether there was any possibility of
proceeding on their journey to the eastward; but of
this the natives seemed unable to give them any infor-
mation. They observed that all those people had
lost the first joint of their little finger; the reason
they gave for cutting it off was, that it was a cure for
a particular sickness to which they were subject in
their youth.

They employed the last day they intended to re-
main at this part of the river in fishing, and were
visited by their friends from the opposite shore. The
lieutenant observed they eat, with a very good appe-
tite, some old shoes which some of their Hottentots
gave them. Their own shoes are made of a piece
of leather, which merely defends the soles of their
feet from thorns, and is in general fastened to their
toes and ankle. As our travellers observed a great
number of huts along the shore which were uninhab-
ited, and yet found only eleven persons dwelling in
this part of the country, they conjectured that by
some accident several of these people had perished.
Those that remain are distinguished by the name of
the Shore-Boshtiefen.

On the twenty-fifth, in the morning, they pro-
ceeded their journey to the eastward, keeping along
the banks of the river, as they were informed that
many hippopotami were there, one of which, indeed,
they were quite near; but they had left their guns in
the waggon, which occasioned them much vexation,
as they had scarcely any provision for their Hottentots.
They still continued their course to the eastward, and
in the afternoon met Jacobus Van Renan, who had
been about six miles to the eastward, and had only
seen the prints of three hippopotami, which seemed
to be fresh, and he believed they were gone to the
mouth of the river. They informed him of that
which they had seen, and he fired several shots at the
animal, but without being able to give it a mortal
wound. Mr. Sebastian Van Renan, and Mr. Pinar,
returned to the waggon in the evening, and acquaint-
ed their friends that there were a number of lions about
twelve miles to the eastward, attracted by a dead
elephant which had been shot by Mr. Pinar during
the time he was absent from the waggons.

They now proceeded to the eastward, through a
most barren hilly country. The hills were naked and
decayed, with hardly a plant to be seen upon them;
in the lower parts here and there was a little grass:
from these appearances they judged that it would be
in vain to think of proceeding further. They agreed,
therefore, to remain a few days, and, if possible, to
shoot some game for provision on their way through

* Our readers may remember that Capt. Cook and others
have made this remark respecting the different natives they met
with, but, till now, no kind of reason has been given for this
strange custom: it has been, indeed, supposed to have proceed-
ed from some religious ceremony.

the dry country they had to pass. Mr. Pinar, how-
ever, resolved to direct his course to the eastward,
and took with him five Hottentots, each of whom
was provided with a gun.

The lieutenant likewise sent a party of his Hottentots
in search of game, on the twenty-seventh, one of
whom returned with a hart, which supplied them for
three days. Jacobus Van Renan wounded an hippo-
potamus; but it swam to a place on the opposite side,
where there was no possibility of approaching it.

The next day (August 28) they prepared their
waggon for their departure; and on the following
evening left the river, intending to travel in the
night, which they conceived would be better for their
cattle. Having travelled about three hours, their
dogs attacked a herd of zebras, which were at a little
distance from the waggons; they seemed not in the
least shy, and our travellers shot two of them, which
detained them about an hour; part of the flesh they
took with them, and it proved very good food. On
passing the Two Brothers, they observed a fire which
they supposed was made by three of their Hottentots
who had left them in the morning. They travelled
till four in the morning, when they unyoked their
bullocks in a dry sandy plain.

August the 31st, they continued their journey to
the Water Val, where they rested; and in the even-
ing of September 1st, proceeded on their route till
about two in the morning. On their way they killed
several snakes, one in particular, called the horned
snake; which species measures from twelve to eigh-
teen inches long, and is supposed to be very veno-
mous. They arrived Sept. 2, at the Sea Fountain.

On the 3d, they continued their journey through
the desert, but were obliged to stop in order to rest
their oxen, which were so much fatigued that it was
impossible to proceed further, when they were about
twelve miles from the Sand-River.

They resumed their journey on the evening of the
fourth, and next morning arrived at the river, where
they rested the following day, having excellent grass
and water for their oxen. From this they proceeded
(on the 6th) to the Small Nimiqua-Land, and stop-
ped that night on the same river, about eight miles
to the eastward of Rhinoceros-Fountain, which they
had before visited. Their provision began to be
short; but one of the Hottentots, notwithstanding
this circumstance, was determined on a good meal,
and accordingly, during the night, contrived to rob
the others of their shoes, every one of which he eat.

Hence they proceeded to Cock-Fountain, where
they arrived on the 11th. Here they were visited
by several Nimiquas, who brought them milk, for
which they were very thankful, and gave them some
tobacco and dacka in return. Among these Hot-
tentots was their guide Pedro, who had left them a
few days before; there were also two captains, one
of whom had a cane, dated "1705," and his name
engraved on the top of it, "Vulcan;" and the other
had one with the name, "Jephtah."

Early on the 12th, the lieutenant dispatched a
Hottentot to Hermanus Englebright, desiring him
to send them a supply of fresh cattle, in order to en-
able them to ascend a steep hill which lay in their
next day's journey. On their first arrival amongst
their hospitable friends, they were quite invigorated,
and delighted with the appearance of every thing
around them. They had exchanged a country un-
trodden by human feet, or only inhabited by the
most wretched of savages, for the society of friends
and generous hosts, and after a journey of six weeks,
through dry and sultry deserts, found themselves in
a land adorned with flowers of the most beautiful
colours. The contrast was truly exhilarating, though
it was not unexpected. They agreed to remain here
a few days, during which time the lieutenant lost his
companion, Colonel Gordon, who intended to direct
his course to the eastward in search of a nation, called
the Caffre tribe. The lieutenant's intention was to
proceed to the northward, to cross the Orange-River,
and

and to visit the Great Nimiqua-Land. During his stay at this place, he made several excursions along the mountains.

Having prevailed upon their friend and host, Hermannias Engelbright, to accompany them in their intended expedition, he took with him, accordingly, three good horses. They then directed their course north, over a rugged path, involved in many turnings between the branches of the Camia-Berg, and in the evening of the sad, came to a Hottentot village, which consisted of eleven huts, where they stayed all night, and proceeded the next day to the house of one Vander Hever, where they remained till the following evening, and then resumed their journey till midnight, when they reached the Copper-Mountain. At this place they had very brackish water.

On the 25th, in the afternoon, they proceeded to the Small Copper-Bergs-Fountain, where they had tolerably good water. Here our hero made an excursion along the hills, which have all a rugged appearance, and most of them contain copper ore.

They continued their journey to the Small Brack-Fountain, where they saw the fresh print of lions, and proceeded to the Great Brack-Fountain. Here they met several Hottentots who had been at the Great Nimiqua-Land, exchanging cattle for beads and tobacco. They told our travellers that the river was passable, but seemed rather to swell when they left it, which was the day before.

Having delayed here two days in exploring the adjacent parts of the country, they next directed their course north by east, through a sandy plain; and after travelling about four miles, found a large rock of a conical figure, where was a small fountain of fresh water. There were several Hottentots who came from the Orange-River. One of them was a good marksmen, and on that account they took him with them. After travelling till next day, they were obliged to stop to rest their cattle at a place from the river, about six miles distant.

Our hero and Messrs. Van Renan and Engelbright left the waggon on the first of October, and directed their course to the river. On their first arrival they were all in great hopes that it was passable, but were soon convinced of the contrary. They then resolved to proceed to the eastward, and after some days arrived at a Hottentot village, situate by a large wood on the banks of the river. Here they were informed that Colonel Gordon was about one day's journey to the eastward, and that he intended to leave his boat at that place. The lieutenant therefore sent one of the Hottentots to beg he would allow them to make use of it, in order to transport themselves over the river, which was otherwise impassable; but the river began to decrease with great rapidity before the messenger returned.

The lieutenant made an excursion through the woods on the 7th. He found them inhabited by variety of birds and monkeys, which are exceedingly shy. There are several paths made by elephants and hippopotami. The country is every where equally barren; the soil is a loose sandy clay; along the banks of the river was good grass. Here the river divides itself into three branches, which are each about a mile broad. They saw several fires to the eastward; and on the fourteenth went over the river. The stream was so rapid that they had much difficulty in crossing it. They had all their necessaries packed upon oxen, which the lieutenant hired from the Hottentots for that purpose; and this night encamped under a large ebony tree, to the northward of the river about eight miles.

Next they directed their course east-north-east, through a hilly country; and at noon passed the Lions-River, the banks of which are in general inhabited by those animals. The country is extremely barren, and covered with small sharp stones, which proved very injurious to their horses' hoofs. In the evening they arrived at a small brackish fountain,

where they stayed all night, and the next day their way lay thro' a narrow path between two high mountains. At noon they saw several of the natives, who were in search of wild honey. In the afternoon they came to a fountain of brackish water, where they stayed all night, being informed by the natives that there were numbers of the camelopardalis in this neighbourhood, one of which they were very desirous of shooting, as it is a beast so little known to Europeans, that even its existence has been matter of doubt.

About evening the lieutenant made an excursion to a hill which was at a little distance from them. When he gained the summit he saw several of the natives near a wood of mimosa, to whom he immediately endeavoured to approach. On his arrival he found they were eating the gum off the trees, on which, indeed, a great part of these people subsist. They were dressed exactly as the inhabitants of the Small Nimiqua-Land; some in the skins of jackals, and others in the skins of marmotes, sewed together; these animals being very numerous in this part of the country. Their habitation was about three miles from the fountain, which our hero visited in the evening; it consisted of six huts. Their sheep are very different from those near the Cape; these having much longer tails, and being covered with hair instead of wool, which at a distance gives them the appearance of dogs.

They proceeded on the 17th, north-east, to a small fountain of water; and took with them some of the natives who knew the country. On their arrival they were obliged to dig pits in the sand before they could come at the water. This day they made an excursion through the country, which is level and high. Here they had an extensive view to the southward of the Orange-River; and to the northward of a large plain, bounded at about the distance of four days journey, by a range of mountains in a direction from east to west. These mountains they were told formed part of the Breitas, or Breguas. The country is here inhabited by rhinoceroses, zebras, koo-does, camelopardalises, &c. &c.

During the next day they rested their horses, as they intended to direct their course west-north-west towards a hot bath. In their way they saw six camelopardalises, which they pursued; Mr. Van Renan shot one, which proved to be a male. It was 14 feet 9 inches high. These animals chiefly subsist upon the mimosa, and wild apricots. Their colour is in general reddish, or dark brown and white, and some of them black and white; they are cloven-footed; have four teats; their tail resembles that of a bullock; but the hair of the tail is much stronger, and in general black; they have eight fore teeth below, but none above, and six grinders, or double teeth, on each side above and below; the tongue is rather pointed and rough; they have no footlock hoofs; they are not swift, but can continue a long chase before they stop; which may be the reason that few of them are shot. The ground is so sharp that a horse is in general lame before he can get within shot of them. It is difficult to distinguish them at any distance, from the length of their body, which, together with the length of their neck, gives them the appearance of a decayed tree.

Our travellers, during their stay in this place, wounded two rhinoceroses; the next day they observed thunder clouds to the eastward; and being apprehensive of the river becoming impassable, they agreed to return the same way to their waggons, being informed by the natives, that after the appearance of such clouds to the eastward, they had seen the river impassable in two days, and had frequently known it to continue so till the month of May.

On the 21st, at night, they crossed the river with safety, and their Hottentots and oxen arrived on the twenty-second. They were now visited by some of the Bush-Hottentots, who had come from the eastward. Here also they parted with Hermannias Engelbright, who went on before them.

They

and the next day their way
 been two high mountains.
 the natives, who were in
 the afternoon they came to
 where they stayed all
 natives that there were
 in this neighbourhood,
 desirous of shooting, as
 Europeans, that even
 of doubt.

made an excursion
 distance from them.
 he saw several of the
 mola, to whom he im-
 proach. On his arrival
 the gum off the trees, on
 of these people subtil
 the inhabitants of the
 in the skins of jackals,
 motes, sewed together;
 umerous in this part of
 on was about three miles
 hero visited in the even-
 Their sheep are very
 the Cape; these having
 covered with hair in-
 stance gives them the ap-

th, north-east, to a small
 with them some of the
 try. On their arrival
 in the sand before they
 this day they made an
 try, which is level and
 ensive view to the south-
 and to the northward of
 out the distance of four
 mountains in a direction
 ountains they were told
 r Biquas. The coun-
 noceroses, zebras, koo-
 &c.

rested their horses, at
 course west-north-west
 way they saw six came-
 lused; Mr. Van Renan
 a male. It was 14 feet
 als chiefly subslit upon
 s. Their colour is in
 n and white, and some
 they are cloven-footed;
 mbles that of a bullock;
 stronger, and in gene-
 teeth below, but none
 double teeth, on each
 tongue is rather pointed
 oolock hoofs; they are
 long chafe before they
 that few of them are
 that a horse is in gene-
 him shot of them. It
 at any distance, from
 ch, together with the
 em the appearance of a

ir stay in this place,
 the next day they ob-
 callward; and being
 ming impassable, they
 to their waggons, be-
 that after the appar-
 llward, they had seen
 s, and had frequently
 month of May.
 crossed the river with
 d oxen arrived on the
 ow visited by some of
 come from the called
 ed with Hermannius
 ore them.

They

They remained a few days on the banks of the river,
 and then prepared their waggon, with a view of pro-
 ceeding on their journey; but a storm came on from
 the south-west, which obliged them to stay all night.
 This tempest began at noon and continued till mid-
 night, during which time it blew down several large
 trees; and stones of a large size were hurled by the
 force of the wind up very considerable eminences.
 As soon as the storm abated, they continued their
 journey to the Small Nimiqua-Land, where they ar-
 rived after a journey of five days, at the house of
 their companion Engelbright, who informed them
 that one of his horses was devoured by a lion, the
 second day after he parted from them. They remain-
 ed here a few days in order to refresh themselves, and
 to rest their cattle. They now took leave of their
 friend on the 4th of November, and directed their
 course towards the Bokke-Veld, making short stays
 for occasional observations.

The lieutenant and Mr. Van Renan left the wag-
 gon on the 10th, and in the evening arrived at the
 house of Mrs. Ryck. On the 11th they sent fresh
 oxen to their waggon, which arrived in the evening.

After a stay of a few days in this place, they re-
 sumed their journey to the north-east, towards the
 Boshmen's-Land. In the evening they arrived at
 the house of Jacobus Van Renan, where about thirty
 of the Hottentots were assembled, who had made
 peace with the Dutch, and were retained in their
 service. These proved more faithful and attentive
 servants than any of those whom the Dutch had be-
 fore brought up in subjection.

They altered their direction a little in the morning
 and travelled to the northward; at night they arrived
 at a brackish fountain, situate on a river, called by
 the Hottentots, Camdinie-Rivier, where they re-
 mained all night on being informed that there were
 numbers of antelopes, called Spring-Bocks, in this
 neighbourhood, which they intended to have the
 amusement of shooting at the next day. Accordingly,
 they left the waggon the next morning, and directed
 their course north, when after ascending a high hill,
 they entered a large plain to the northward. Here
 they prepared to enjoy the proposed entertainment.
 The antelopes divided themselves into large flocks of
 at least twenty or thirty thousand in each flock. They
 pursued them from eight in the morning till noon,
 and killed and wounded several; and the Hottentots
 who accompanied them, shot several with their poi-
 soned arrows, in the use of which they are expert.
 In the afternoon they continued their journey to a
 place called the Kibiskow, where there was a Hotten-
 tot's kraal. They were here visited by four captains,
 or chiefs, who amused them during the whole night.
 The soil of this count- of a sandy loam, and the
 water is every where bad. The climate and produce
 of the country are much the same as in the vicinity
 of the Orange-River.

Our travellers now returned to the Bokke-Veld,
 and arrived there after a journey of four days.
 Thence they directed their course towards the Wind-
 hock, where they arrived in a few days more. In
 their way they had heavy showers of rain, accompa-
 nied with thunder and lightning; and the lieutenant
 was necessarily detained at the Windhock by the in-
 clemency of the weather. The land in this part of
 the country is fruitful and produces excellent fruit
 and corn; but the south-east winds, which blow from
 the mountains in the manner they do at the Cape,
 frequently prove as pernicious to the rising grain as
 they do there.

The lieutenant was conveyed by two sons of Niue
 Houds, through the Elephants-River, on the 6th of
 December. The water was so deep that it came up
 to their saddles. The same day they arrived at the
 Hlier-Lodsement. He then left the waggon and di-
 rected his course through a sandy plain, to the house
 of Mrs. Low, situate in the Long Valley.

The waggon arrived on the 8th, and the following
 day our hero was supplied with a team of fresh oxen,

84.

and proceeded to the Berg-Valley, where he stayed
 two days, making some occasional excursions through
 part of the country. When they arrived at the
 Croife, they remained there all night, and on the
 succeeding day proceeded on their journey along the
 Picquet-Berg. At night they arrived at the house
 of Abert Honna Cambi, where the lieutenant conti-
 nued two days, and made an excursion to the moun-
 tain. Then they proceeded on their journey, and
 arrived at Rie Beck's Castle, at the house of Mr.
 Droyer, where Lieutenant Patterson visited the
 Roodde-Sand, or Land-Van-Waveren, which is situ-
 ate to the eastward of Rie Beck's Castle.

This is a pleasant and fruitful country, bounded by
 the large chain of mountains which are terminated on
 the east by Hottiniqua-Land, and on the west by the
 chain of mountains which begin at Cape-Falso, they
 join to the northward, where the mountain is called
 the Winter-Hocks-Berg. This mountain is extreme-
 ly high; and during a considerable part of the year
 its summit is covered with snow. To the eastward is
 a pleasant country, called the Goudinnie, where there
 is a hot-bath. The Breed-Rivier has its source in
 this place, and to the eastward is joined by the Hexen-
 Rivier, or Witches-River. Along the west side of
 the chain of mountains, which begins at Cape-Falso,
 are situate the Parel and Draken-Styne, a well watered
 and plentiful country, which extends to the south-
 ward, and joins Stellen-Bosch. Wine is the only
 produce of this country.

Having left Rie Beck's Castle, our travellers pro-
 ceeded through Swart-Land towards the Groeva-
 Kloaf, where he arrived the following day, and found
 the farmers all busy in gathering in their harvest.
 After a journey of six months and five days, our
 hero arrived at the Cape, December 21, 1779.

The lieutenant, in noticing the poisonous reptiles
 of the country he had travelled, deems the horned
 snake the most poisonous of all; it is of a greyish co-
 lour, and about eighteen inches long: its head, which
 is very flat, is large in proportion to the size of the
 body, with small scales, which the inhabitants call
 horns, rising over its eyes.

The garter-snake is another poisonous reptile, parti-
 cularly dangerous to travellers, as it resembles the
 foil so much in colour, that it is not readily perceiv-
 ed. The yellow-snake, which is very destructive,
 is easily avoided, by means of its fire and bright yel-
 low colour. It is mostly found in rat-holes, for,
 after eating these animals, which form the chief part
 of its food, it takes possession of their holes, and
 consequently becomes dangerous to the unwary tra-
 veller, who lies down: besides these, there is the
 rust-adder, extremely dangerous to cattle. A horse
 of the lieutenant's, while grazing, was bit by one of
 them in the mouth, and lived only two days after.
 Also, the spring-adder, which is jet-black with white
 spots, from three to four feet long, and proportionably
 thick. The night-snake, which at night has the
 appearance of fire; it is very thin, and from 18 to
 20 inches long. The spitting snake, rock scorpion,
 &c. all equally pernicious. Frequent disasters have
 happened from the bites of these reptiles. This
 country likewise abounds in deleterious vegetables,
 employed as instruments of destruction by the na-
 tives.

Having now presented the Public with a complete
 history of LIEUTENANT PATTERSON'S Travels in
 Africa, we shall next proceed with the celebrated M.
 NIEBUHN'S interesting Adventures in EGYPT, ARABIA,
 &c. Adventures, which have not only increased the fame
 of the Author, but have been of considerable service to
 other Travellers: and we trust, the observations occa-
 sionally introduced, are such as will lead our attentive
 Readers to a fuller comprehension of the Discoveries
 contained in the preceding and succeeding Voyages and
 Travels.



A GENUINE, NEW, AND COMPLETE

HISTORY OF

Travels and Occasional Voyages

THROUGH AND TO

EGYPT, ARABIA, &c.

UNDERTAKEN AND PERFORMED

By **MONSIEUR NIEBUHR,**

(Captain of Engineers in the Service of the King of Denmark)

And four other DANISH TRAVELLERS.

Including the most accurate Accounts of several COUNTRIES in the EAST. The MANNERS, DRESSES, RELIGION, &c. of the respective INHABITANTS; their BUILDINGS, GOVERNMENT, and every other NECESSARY DESCRIPTION.

Interpersed with interesting Anecdotes and judicious Observations on the different ORIENTALS. The several ADVENTURES, RECEPTIONS, &c. of these TRAVELLERS, during their PERAMBULATIONS, and curious REMARKS ON each JOURNEY; throwing a considerable new Light on the LAWS, EVENTS, WORSHIP, CUSTOMS, &c. recorded in SACRED HISTORY.

Faithfully TRANSLATED and CORRECTED (according to the RECENT INFORMATIONS of our most RESPECTABLE WRITERS) from the WORKS of the above CELEBRATED AUTHOR.

INTRODUCTION.

OUR celebrated and ingenious Author, M. Niebuhr, was the sole survivor of a party of five Danish travellers, who being selected as persons eminently qualified to accomplish the several purposes of the then proposed expeditions, were sent into the East at the expence of the King of Denmark, to explore the various curiosities of Egypt, but especially of Arabia. They proceeded first to Egypt. After making an excursion to Mount Sinai, and preparing themselves, by the study of the Arabic language, for the further prosecution of their journey, they sailed from Suez, down the Red Sea, to Jidda. Having landed at Jidda, they continued their journey southward to Mokha; not without occasional excursions to the N. E. into the interior parts of the country. From Mokha, they travelled nearly in a south-eastern direction to Sana, the seat of the greatest prince in Arabia. By the time they had accomplished this last journey, and returned to Mokha, two of the party were dead; and, by the pernicious influence of the climate, by the unfavourableness of the oriental mode of living to European constitutions, by their inability to relinquish European habits, and by the fatigue necessarily attending their investigations, the health of the survivors was so much impaired, that they were obliged to resolve upon leaving Arabia with the first English ship that sailed for Bombay.

M. Niebuhr and another of his companions lived to reach India. This other, after languishing for a while, died at last at Bombay.

After this event, Niebuhr remained in the East only till he could find a fit opportunity of returning safe into Europe, with the collection of curiosities which was left in his hands.

These travels afford a very faithful account of Arabia in the hands of the European public, having the advantage of the majority of wayfarers in this part of the world, not being confined to the inquiries of one man, but a party equally inspired with the spirit of investigation, and whose abilities were alike adapted to the arduous task. A body therefore of such truly valuable information is seldom to be met with in one work: valuable and peculiarly interesting, seeing it relates to a country which has been famous from the earliest ages of antiquity.

We have in this our translation omitted such remarks as have been already given in our former travels, particularly Mr. Bruce's, &c. to which the reader will be occasionally referred. Also those confined observations and proposed plans (which attempts have hitherto proved abortive) that are apparently addressed by our Author to his own countrymen, and consequently uninteresting to an ENGLISH READER.

CHAPTER I.

Our Travellers embark for Smyrna—Return to Esfneur—Account of contrary Winds—Sail from thence—Pass the Categat—Return again to Esfneur—Sail from thence the third Time—Forced back—Leave the Place for the last Time—Arrive at Marseilles—At Malta—Description of the City—Cultivation and Government—Catacombs—Enter the Archipelago—Road of Smyrna—Repair to Constantinople—Remarks on the City, &c.—Proceed to Rhodes—Dinner in a Turkish Inn—Make for Alexandria—Familiarity of the Turkish Women—Observations—Proceed to Rosetta—Thence to Cairo—To the Delta—Arrive at Sissa—At Damietta—At Bulak—Description of the Place—Remarks on the Orientals—Account of their Entertainments—Description of a Play that was acted—Curious Observations, &c.



E

oyages

1, &c.

H R, Denmark)

AST. The MANNERS,
DINGS, GOVERNMENT,

ORIENTALS. The several
BULATIONS, and curious
vents, Worship, Customs,

ONS of our most RESPEC-
AUTHOR.

of his companions lived
er, after languishing for a
ay.

hr remained in the East
opportunity of returning
e collection of curiosities

ry faithful account of Ara-
ropean public, having the
of wayfarers in this part of
ned to the inquiries of one
inspired with the spirit of
bilities were alike adapted
ody therefore of such truly
eldom to be met with in
eculiarly interesting, seeing
ich has been famous from
ity.

anslation omitted such re-
ady given in our former
Bruce's, &c. to which the
referred. Also those com-
posed plans (which attempt
ortive) that are apparently
to his own countrymen,
eresting to an ENGLI



-Sail from thence—Pass the
ave the Place for the last Time
overnment—Catacombs—Enter
-Proceed to Rhodés—Dis-
ervations—Proceed to Rhodes
escription of the Place—Re-
it was asked—Curfory Objec-

OUR



*Viewing of WEIGHING the GREAT MOGUL'S
In his Park near Agra, in the Road, Punjab.*

OUR travellers embarked January 4, 1761, on board a ship of war, commanded by Mr. Fischer, afterwards Vice-Admiral in the Danish service, for the purpose of reaching Smyrna. Being delayed three days for a fair wind, they sailed on the 7th out of the road of Copenhagen, but being tossed by storms and contrary winds they agreed on the 17th to return to Ellsineur.

January 26, they ventured again; the wind being fair, and continuing for a few days. Having passed the Categat they proceeded to some distance through the North-Sea; but the stormy weather returning again, and being tossed considerably by contrary winds, they determined on declining at present their undertaking, and came back a second time to Ellsineur, February 10. Such was the violence of the wind, that in thirty hours they were carried as far backwards as they had been before fifteen days in advancing forwards. Our travellers were exceedingly sea-sick, and one of them Mr. Van Haven, not being able to bear the tossing of the vessel any longer, proceeded by land from Copenhagen to Marseilles, where their vessel was to put in.

They left Ellsineur a third time, February 19, but were equally unfortunate and obliged to return, having scarce passed the Skagen. On the 10th of March, however, the weather became quite serene and fair, and availing themselves of this opportunity, they took a final leave of the place.

From the 12th to the 15th of this month, they encountered several storms. In the beginning of April they had very fine weather, but were detained for some time by a dead calm; they arrived within sight of Cape St. Vincent's the 21st, and May 14, reached the road of Marseilles, and anchored near St. Eustace. Here they were joined by Mr. Van Haven, who had travelled through Germany and France.

June the 3d, after examining the country, they set sail, in company with three other Danish vessels, which being bound for Smyrna, put themselves under the protection of their ship of war.

They arrived at Malta June 14, and anchored in the grand-harbour, in the middle of the cities which environ Valetta: the appearance of this city, when viewed from the harbour, is very fine; all the buildings, private and public, are of hewn stone, stone being a very common article, as the whole island is one vast rock, covered with a thin layer of vegetable earth, and this rock is so soft and calcareous, that it may be cut with the greatest facility when taken out of the quarry. Their private houses, which are built against steep, pointed rocks, have quite an oriental appearance, they have terraces on their roofs. Amongst the public buildings, that of St. John's Church is the most magnificent.

The inhabitants of this island live under a mild government; and accordingly cultivate this bare rock with such care, that it produces excellent fruits. The old capital, Civita-Vecchia, is every day more and more deserted.

Adjoining the city are some very remarkable catacombs, or more properly speaking, subterraneous dwellings, cut in the rock. They are so extensive, that it has been found proper to build up the entrances into several of the passages, to prevent the curious from losing themselves. The remains of public halls, and of a mill, which are there observable, afford reason for thinking, that the islanders once lived in these subterraneous dwellings, or at least retired into them in times of danger.

They left Malta on the 20th of June, and saw no land till the 26th, when they entered the Archipelago. On the third of July, they entered the road of Smyrna, where they staid till the 10th. A very severe dysentery, with which M. Niebuhr had been attacked, prevented him from examining the city.

They reached the isle of Tenedos on the 13th, where they found the interpreter of Mr. Gähler, at that time their ambassador at the Porte. He brought them orders to quit the vessel, and repair in a small

bark to Constantinople. In this isle they saw Turks for the first time; and their language and manners appeared to them so extraordinary, that our travellers began to despair of ease or pleasure in their intercourse with the people of the East. A man of distinction from the continent, however, so far forgot the precepts of the Alcoran, when he visited the vessel that he seemed to have come on board for no other purpose than to drink the captain's wine.

They left the ship on the 19th of July, but did not land at Constantinople till the 30th. They went immediately to Pera, where they were received by Mr. Gähler, and all lodged in his house; a piece of kind attention which contributed greatly to the recovery of our hero.

Constantinople is a city of great extent, though it appears larger than it really is, as the houses rise from the sides of hills, and consequently appear to cover a considerable space of ground. The palaces of the great, occupy much room, on account of their gardens and seraglios, and people in easy circumstances have also a large area behind their houses. The jealousy of the people of the East, renders them unwilling to admit persons into their houses with whom they have business. Artizans therefore work without doors, and spend the whole day in open palaces. The streets are full of trades-people, all busy in their respective occupations.

The population of Constantinople is very considerable, though travellers, no doubt, have exaggerated it. Its harbour, which is always full of vessels, is the finest in the world.

The medley of superb mosques and palaces, gardens and trees of all sorts, which the city displays, appears remarkably striking to a stranger. But within, the arrangement and appearance of the city, correspond not to its splendour when seen from a distance. The streets are almost all narrow, dirty, and irregular; the houses are of wood, slight, and ill built, and appear more like coops for birds than dwellings for men. Of the palaces built of stone, nothing is to be seen but the high walls that surround them. In this city, it is equally dangerous to live in stone and in wooden houses. In the former, one is liable to be buried in ruins, by earthquakes; in the latter, to be burnt, by the breaking out of a fire. The seraglio of the grand signior is a vast but very irregular edifice.

The city is plentifully supplied with water, from three great bents, or reservoirs. As this water cannot be equally distributed through the whole city, on account of the inequality of the ground, water-houses are established in proper places, from which it is served out to every person gratis. Opposite to the outer-gate of the seraglio, is a house splendidly decorated, where persons paid by the public, present water to the passengers, in vessels of gilt copper.

This capital of a great empire is almost destitute of means of defence. A double wall, and a ditch nearly filled up, are all its fortifications.

The sultan has many houses of pleasure, both in the vicinities of the capital and on the shores in the channel of the Black Sea. The Greeks have 23 churches in Constantinople, and the Armenians three, exclusive of those the two nations have in the suburbs. Resident at Pera, is a Catholic clergyman, on whom the pope confers the pompous title of archbishop, placing him at the head of a great many supposititious bishops. The law prohibits any strange sect to build churches or chapels in the capital, notwithstanding which, several sects hold their meetings there without any molestation.

On M. Niebuhr's recovery, every preparation was made for leaving Constantinople. Notwithstanding they might have ventured to appear in their European dress at Alexandria (the inhabitants there being accustomed to see a great many Franks) yet, through the rest of Egypt, and in Arabia, as this apparel, consisting of so many pieces, and so materially different from the beautiful simplicity of the eastern garments,

garments, might have exposed them to some inconveniences, they deemed it expedient to assume the Turkish dresses, and having by means of their guide, (Mr. Gessler) obtained a passport from the Sultan, they embark'd with letters of recommendation, on board a vessel belonging to Doleigno. All vessels, on leaving Constantinople, are visited by an officer of the customs, in order to prevent the desertion of slaves, and any defraud to the revenue of the established dues.

Our heroes set sail September 11, and reached the Dardenelles on the 15th; they hoisted their sails again the 17th, and passing the isles of the Archipelago, anchored in the harbour of Rhodes the 21st. Some ships of war had arrived here, whose visits the islanders are by no means fond of, both on account of the insolence of their sailors, and the presents which every admiral expects from them.

As soon as our travellers landed, they went immediately to the house of the Danish consul; but found his doors shut, to keep out the sailors; on account of their Turkish dress, they could not obtain admission, till they met with an honest capuchin, who knew them for Europeans, and introduced them. The consul sent his interpreter to accompany them in some little excursions, which curiosity induced them to make through the island.

The city of Rhodes contains a number of noble old buildings, some of which are decorated with the armorial bearings of the most ancient families in Europe, but the palace which belonged to the grand master of the order, is now falling into ruins. The Turks neglect the fortifications; although they might know their importance, from having besieged the island so long before they could make themselves masters of it. But, notwithstanding this neglect, Rhodes is one of the best fortified places in the Ottoman empire, and the Turks think it impregnable.

Here our travellers had the curiosity, for the first time, to go to dine in a Turkish inn. Dinner was served up to them in the open street, upon a large stone seat, connected with the kitchen-wall: the meat was in a coarse, ill-fashioned, earthen plate, and they eat it without knife or fork. They had an excellent dinner, and were charged high. They went thence to drink some wine at a Jew's house, who valued himself on supplying it to all strangers. He had two handsome girls with him, whom he called his daughters, and who spoke Italian well. Their entertainment at his house cost them much dearer than their Turkish meal.

There are a great many Greeks in the isle of Rhodes, but they are not suffered to live in the city. Messrs. Van Haven and Cramer witnessed an instance of the ill-treatment which that people suffer from their conquerors. These gentlemen had gone with some Greeks to visit their bishop, in a village near the city. While they were with him, some Turkish musicians made their appearance, and insisted upon entertaining the good prelate with music, which he had no desire to hear. Although he refused their concert, the musicians would be paid; and did not retire without insulting him and his company.

Early on the morning of the 22d of September they set sail. Hitherto, they had sailed near the coasts, and among islands; and it would consequently have been vain to make observations on the course they failed. But, in the open sea, they had soon an opportunity of remarking the ignorance of the Turks in every thing relative to navigation. The maller of their ship had compasses and several instruments, but knew not what use to make of them. They were probably a part of the plunder which he had taken in some Christian ship: for the Doleignots often give themselves out for Algerines, and take European ships belonging to powers at peace with the Porte. In the course of their voyage, their Dolignot was afraid of being taken himself: for it was reported that the Maltese, or rather some privateers, with letters of marque from some Italian prince, were at that

time scouring those seas. They could not have made any defence; their ship being a heavy laden, and over-laden, and having only a few rusty guns not properly mounted.

Their captain held for Alexandria, by chance. Luckily for them, a very favourable wind sprung up, and carried them straight into the harbour in the day. The shores of Egypt are so low that they cannot be seen from a distance, and a ship approaching, without knowing her course, can hardly fail to run aground.

The captain, his secretary, and two pilots, spoke Italian tolerably well. The secretary had been at Venice, in different other Italian cities, and even at Vienna; he was at the same time imam, or almoner of the vessel. The imam's business is to direct the crew in their evening prayers, which the Mahometans perform regularly after washing. The imam then spreads his carpet, kneels with his face towards Mecca, and saying his prayers, prostrating himself from time to time, and crying *Allah akbar*, God is great. The assembly repeat his words, and regularly imitate his motions and gestures. One thing essential, is to put the thumbs behind the ears, to mark the perfect abstraction of the mind from all worldly cares, and the elevation of the soul towards heaven. Besides this public evening prayer, the Mahometans are directed by law to say other prayers, in the course of their avocations, whenever they find themselves most disposed to the duty. They make no difficulty of displaying their humility and devotion before spectators. M. Niebuhr was at first afraid to disturb them by his presence, and attempted to retire; but most of them pressed him to remain and join them. It is only the insolence of the populace, that hinders Christians from entering mosques, or witnessing their worship.

The vessel being too full, the Mussulman passengers were seated on the decks. Our travellers had hired the captain's apartment, with another long room adjoining, in order to separate themselves from the Turks. In a cabin above them, were lodged some slaves intended for the market, girls who had received a good education in the Turkish mode, and were destined for the harem of some grandee. Messrs. Niebuhr and Forkall one day, while they were in their chamber, overheard a female voice, and set their heads to the window, to observe whence it came. Those slaves observing them to be strangers, cried out, and scolded them; but one of them touched the rest. They held out to them fruits and sugar; and they put down their handkerchiefs to receive what they liked. Their language being unknown to each other, they conversed by signs. The youngest addressed a few words to our hero, several different times. Our travellers, to learn their wishes, asked the clerk of the ship, to explain the meaning of a great many Turkish words and phrases, and at length came to understand, that the girl had warned them to beware of appearing at the window, except when the crew were at prayers. Those females became at last so familiar with our travellers, as to give them notice by knocking at the window, whenever they were alone. This imprudent frolic amused them a few moments; but it might have occasioned them much serious trouble; and they came afterwards to understand, what extreme folly it is to make the slightest acquaintance with Turkish women.

On the 26th of September, in the evening, they arrived at Alexandria, and anchored in the great harbour, which Christian ships are not permitted to do; they are obliged to anchor in the small harbour, which is very dangerous. The passengers went immediately on shore; but the slaves remained till night, and were carried away with the utmost ferocity.

In the course of the voyage, eight of the crew had died suddenly; which made them afraid that the plague might be among them. Happily their fears proved vain; for their physician, who visited several of those persons, while they were ill, found no symptom of pestilential infection among them.

Alexandria,

they could not have made
ing a heavy faler, and
y a few rully guns not

Alexandria, by chance,
favourable wind sprung up
o the harbour in the day,
low that they cannot be
ship approaching, with-
an hardly fail to run a-

y, and two pilots, spoke
the secretary had been ar
Italian cities, and even at
time imam, or almoner
business is to direct the
business, which the Mahome-
wallowing. The imam then
th his face towards Mecc-
prostrating himself from
Sub akbar, God is great.
s, and regularly inter-
One thing essential, is, to
ears, to mark the perfect
in all worldly cares, and
towards heaven. Besides
the Mahometans are di-
prayers, in the course of
they find themselves most
they make no difficulties of
devotion before specta-
it afraid to disturb them
to retire; but most of
and join them. It is only
y, that hinders Christians
intelling their worship.

y, the Mussulman passen-
s. Our travellers had
ent, with another long
separate themselves from
love them, were lodged
p market, girls who had
the Turkish mode, a d
am of some grandee.
all one day, while they
heard a female voice,
low, to observe whence
ng them to be strangers,

But one of them loath-
to them fruits and figs;
nderchiefs to receive
uage being unknown to
y signs. The youngest
hero, several different
arn their wishes, asked
lain the meaning of a
l phrases, and at length
girl had warned them to
ndow, except when the
females became at last
as to give them notice
whenever they were
e amused them a few
occasioned them much
e afterwards to under-
to make the slightest
men.

in the evening, they
nched in the great
are not permitted to
in the small harbour,
e passengers went in-
ves remained till night,
utmost secrecy.

eight of the crew had
them afraid that the
Happily their fears
n, who visited several
re ill, found no symp-
ing them.

Alexandria,

Alexandria, or Scandria, as the Turks and Arabs call it, is situate upon a narrow isthmus, between a peninsula and the walls of the ancient city, and dividing the two harbours. The ground on which the modern city stands, seems to have risen out of the waters. Although long since divested of its ancient splendour, yet the remains of the magnificent buildings which it once possessed,—palaces, temples, and mosques, with a plentiful intermixture of palm trees, —give this city an aspect of beauty and dignity, when viewed from the harbour.

Alexandria has fallen by degrees from its grandeur, population, and wealth. The filling up of the branch of the Nile, upon which this city stands, and which is now no longer navigable, is what has chiefly contributed to its decline. It is however cleaned from time to time, as it supplies the city with soft water, which could be no where else obtained. The magnificent reservoirs of old Alexandria still remain; they were intended to contain water for the use of the city, through the whole year; which was received into them at the time of the overflowing of the Nile.

This city might be in a more flourishing condition; did not disadvantages of all sorts concur to depress it. Its inhabitants appear to have a natural genius for commerce; were it not checked by the malignant influence of the government. The inhabitants of Alexandria are in use to enter as sailors on board Christian ships; and when they have seen the world, and learned some languages, they return home, and become couriers, or interpreters, to the nations they have served. The Mahometans have commonly a great aversion to living among Christians, because they cannot join in the ceremonies of their religion. The modern Egyptians, being less attached than the other Mussulmans to the peculiarities of their religion and manners, are fitter for commercial intercourse with the Europeans.

The trade of Alexandria is, notwithstanding, very trifling; although almost all the nations of Europe have consuls here. But, as most part of those articles of traffic which are imported into Egypt, pass by Alexandria, the customs afford a considerable sum to the Sultan annually.

The Arabic is the ordinary language of the native inhabitants, both here and through all Egypt. Europeans, unskilled in Arabic, speak Italian, which is not a little used in these countries.

Several tribes of wandering Arabs are continually roaming about through Lower-Egypt; and often approach near to Alexandria. The inhabitants pay some contributions. But those troops pillage the country, so that government is obliged to send soldiers to reduce them, or drive them into the more remote provinces. During their stay at Alexandria, some hundreds of those robbers encamped within a quarter of a league of the city. They distressed the husbandmen, and plundered the travellers.

Having struggled considerably with contrary winds, they arrived, on the 2d of November, at Rosetta, as it is called in Europe, or Raschid, in the language of the country. This city is of a considerable size, and stands upon an eminence, whence opens a charming prospect of the course of the Nile, and a part of the Delta. It serves as a staple for the trade between Alexandria and Cairo. The boats of the latter city proceed no farther than to Rosetta, where they lade with goods brought by the vessels of Alexandria, which never advance up the river. For this reason, the French and Venetian consuls reside at Rosetta, as well as several European merchants, who manage the conveyance of goods belonging to their friends.

Being in haste to reach Cairo they left Rosetta on the 6th of November, and two days after passed Fue, once a considerable city, and the staple of the trade between Alexandria and Cairo. The canal between Alexandria and Fue is no longer navigable; and Fue entirely deserted. The Nile carries to much of the soil from the lands, that it gradually fills up the canals;

82.

although they are cleaned from time to time; but in a very superficial manner. The earth taken out of the canals forms those mounds which are observed in the Delta, and which appear strange in so flat a country as Egypt.

In this season, when the country is all verdant, there is great pleasure in sailing up the Nile. A number of villages are scattered along each side of the river. The houses are indeed low, and built of unburnt bricks; but, intermixed as they are with palm trees, and pigeon-houses of a singular form, they present to the eye of the stranger, an uncommon and pleasing prospect. Near several of these villages are seen large heaps of the ruins of ancient cities.

The navigation of the Nile would be still more agreeable, were it not infested by pirates. But, when a great number of people are on board of a vessel, they keep on their guard; they discharge a few shots from time to time, to shew, that they are provided with fire arms; this keeps the robbers in awe, and renders the passage less dangerous. There is much more danger in trusting to a master of a vessel, with whom you are unacquainted, who may favour the robbers, and share their plunder. Whole villages are said to follow this trade; and for this reason the boats never stop in their neighbourhood. The inhabitants on the banks of the Nile are very dexterous in the art of swimming, which they frequently exercise in scaling from the boats, if not with open force, yet with a degree of address and audacity worthy of the most noted pick-pockets.

They reached Bulak November the 10th, which may be considered as the port of Cairo, as all boats that come by the Nile discharge their passengers and cargoes at this place.

Our hero, in advancing to Cairo, having examined one of the great branches of the Nile, was desirous of seeing the other between Cairo and Damietta. However, by the rains and other circumstances he was prevented from accomplishing his intention, till the succeeding year. In the mean time he gained some knowledge of the language of the country, and became more familiar with the manners of the East. Mr. Baurenfeind, too, who, since his arrival at Cairo, had scarce ever gone abroad, now determined to accompany our traveller. They left Bulak on the 1st of May 1762, sailing at first gently down the Nile.

From Cairo to the Delta, the river is very large, with small isles scattered through it; which, when the river overflows, are often transported, by the impetuosity of the stream, from one situation to another. This occasions frequent disputes among the villagers on the banks of the river. But, at this time, the Nile was so low, that their boat was several times a-ground. They might have proceeded with the stream, in the calm, during night, had they not been afraid of pirates. A north wind blows usually through the day, and opposes the progress of boats down the river. Violent blasts sometimes arise, and bear sand and dust before them, darkening the air, and endangering the safety of the boats, which are commonly very indifferent failers. All the villages have, indeed, guards to watch the approach of pirates, and warn passengers. But those very guards often join with the inhabitants of the villages, and sit out barks themselves, to plunder those whom they should protect.

They arrived at Sifta on the 3d of May; this is a very considerable village, between Cairo and Damietta. It has three mosques, and a church belonging to the Copts, the congregation of which consists of three hundred families. Those good people invited our traveller to see their church; it is ill-built, dirty, and hung with cobwebs. During the public worship, they stand, leaning on their staves. Their churches are adorned with bad paintings.

In the course of their voyage they saw several boats which they suspected to belong to pirates; but none of them ventured to attack them. They saw,

g B

likewise,

likewise, several rafts laden with pots and other earthen ware from Upper Egypt. Those cargoes of earthen ware are fixed upon very light planks of the timber of the palm tree, joined into a raft, the progreſs of which is directed by fix or eight men with poles in their hands. After ſelling their cargoes at Damietta, they walk home. They defend themſelves very dexterouſly, with ſlings, againſt robbers.

They paſſed by Manſura. It ſeemed of the ſame ſize as Damietta. A wall has been built upon the branch of the river near the city, to hinder the water from entering the canal that communicates with the lake of Baheira, in a larger quantity than is requiſite for watering the fields of rice, of which a great deal is raiſed in this part of the country.

Below Manſura they met twenty boats laden with bee-hives, which they were bringing up to make honey on the banks of the river. In each boat were two hundred hives, four thouſand in all. The Sandyak of Manſura lay in the neighbourhood, with a party of forty ſlaves and domeſtics, to levy the tax due upon the bees.

They arrived at Damietta on the 5th of May. This city is at leaſt as advantageouſly ſituated as Roſetta. The imports from Syria enter at this port; and it has alſo a great trade in rice, of which there is much raiſed in the neighbourhood. Yet, no Chriſtian merchant, or European monk, reſides here; although there be in Damietta, a conſiderable number of Maronites and Armenians, who communicate with the church of Rome.

Formerly, a conſul and French merchants reſided in Damietta. But, the inhabitants obſerving that thoſe ſtrangers made too free with their women, roſe up in a ſtorm, and maſſacred them all. The inhabitants of Damietta are generally reckoned more unfriendly to the Chriſtians, than any of the other inhabitants of Egypt. The memory of the Cruſades, perhaps, keeps up this inveterate averſion. But, as our travellers wore the Turkiſh dreſs, and ſpoke the language of the country tolerably well, they had nothing to fear.

There are many rice fields in the neighbourhood of this city. But towards the ſhore, the ground is covered with ſand, and conſequently barren. To travel by land from Damietta to Roſetta, it is only a journey of a day and a half. But the road is very dangerous, being infeſted with robbers.

M. Niebuhr being ſo near the ſea, went to ſee the Boghaſ, two German leagues below Damietta. This mouth of the Nile is not leſs dangerous to veſſels than that of Roſetta. It was formerly defended by a fort; but the garrifon have been frightened away by ſuppoſed apparitions. Our hero viſited it in company with ſome Mahometans, who ſaid their prayers very devoutly in that abode of ſpirits. This was the only time M. Niebuhr remarked this ſpecies of ſuperſtition among the Muſſulmans; the ſuppoſition of apparitions being unknown in Arabia.

The lake of Baheira extends from Damietta to Ghaffa. The inhabitants being poor, and from their insulated ſituation almoſt independent, are to be dreaded equally by land and water. They rob all travellers without diſtinction. This, therefore deterred our hero from examining the place.

A number of the villages on the banks of the Nile belong to beys who reſide at Cairo. They left Damietta on the 12th of May; and the wind blew ſo fair, that they reached Bulak on the 15th.

Our author now proceeds in giving his deſcriptions of Egypt, Cairo, &c. for which we ſhall refer our readers to Mr. Bruce's travels. Speaking of the inhabitants, he ſays that the Arabs and Turks from all the provinces in the Ottoman empire, form the moſt numerous part of the people of Cairo. There are alſo Magrebbins, or Arabs from Barbary, other Africans, Perſians, and Tartars: all theſe are Mahometans, and moſt of them attached to the ſect of Schafei.

After the Mahometans, the Copts are the next in number. They occupy whole quarters of the city,

and very large ſtreets. They have a great many churches, both in the capital, and at Maſr-el-atik in its vicinity. Their patriarch alſo reſides at Cairo. Theſe people are deſcended from the ancient Egyptians; and the Turks, upon this account, call them, in deriſion, the poſterity of Pharaoh. But their uncouth figure, their ſtupidity, ignorance, and wretchedneſs, do little credit to the ſovereigns of ancient Egypt. They have lived for 2000 years under the dominion of different foreign conquerors, and have experienced many viciffitudes of fortune. They have loſt their manners, their language, their religion, and almoſt their exiſtence. They are reduced to a ſmall number in compariſon of the Arabs, who have poured like a flood over this country. Of the diminution of the number of the Copts ſome idea may be formed from the reduction of the number of their biſhops. They were ſeventy in number at the period of the Arabian conqueſt; they are now only twelve.

The Jews are the moſt numerous claſs, next after the Mahometans and the Copts. Some Pharifees or Talmudiffs, reſide here, as well as Karaites, who, though not numerous, have a ſynagogue of their own. The Talmudiffs are numerous and powerful. They have long ſarved all the cuſtoms; an undertaking which brings them both wealth and credit. In the republican government of Egypt, they find it eaſier to gain ſteady protectors, than in the other provinces of Turkey, where all depends upon the caprice of a pacha, who knows not how ſoon he may loſe his place, or of the ſuperintendent of the ruſtoms who reſides in Conſtantinople. One proof of the conſequence which the Jews enjoy under the ariſtocracy of Cairo, is, that the offices of the cuſtoms are ſhut upon their Sabbath, and no goods can paſs on that day, although belonging to Chriſtians or Muſſulmans.

The Greeks have only two churches in Cairo, in one of which the ſervice is performed by the patriarch of Alexandria, and in the other by the biſhop of Mount Sinai. The Armenians, who are not numerous, have only one church, but that a handſome one. From Europe here are ſeveral French and Italian merchants, but no Dutchmen; yet the Dutch have a conſul here, as well as France and Venice.

In reſpect to the entertainments of the Eaſt, our author ſays that the Oſmanli, or Turks diſtinction, who are ſtill attached to the ancient military inſtitutions of the nation, amuſe themſelves chiefly with equeſtrian exerciſes. The principal inhabitants of Cairo meet twice a-week in a large ſquare, called Maſſabe, with a number of attendants on horſeback. In this ſquare they play at Gerid; which conſiſts in running, by two and two, with the ſtirrups looſe, purſuing one another, and toſſing ſlaves four feet long: theſe they throw with ſuch force, that if any one be not upon his guard, he is in danger of having a leg or an arm broken. Others, while riding at full gallop, throw balls into a pot placed upon a heap of ſand. Others, again, ſhoot the bow; an exerciſe in ſuch repute, that pillars are erected in honour of thoſe who exhibit extraordinary proofs of ſtrength or dexterity in launching the arrows.

When the Nile is at its greateſt height, the great about Cairo divert themſelves in little boats ſplendidly decked out, upon the birkets in the middle of the city. Upon this occaſion, they regale the inhabitants with muſic, and often with fire-works.

A man originally from Tripoli in Barbary informed them, that the pacha of that city uſed ſometimes to erect two ſcaſſolds, with cords running between them, and upon theſe miniature models of ſhips of war, armed with cannons of a ſize in proportion to that of the veſſel. Theſe veſſels, thus ſuſpended in the air, and commanded by naval officers, who directed the evolutions and the fire of the ſmall artillery, preſented no unentertaining representation of a ſea fight. The captain whoſe veſſel firſt ſuffered conſiderable damage was conſidered as conquered. But this

y have a great many and at Mair-el-Atik in also resides at Cairo. om the ancient Egyptis account, call them, arash. But their ungnorance, and wretch-overeigns of ancient 2000 years under the conquerors, and have s of fortune. They nguage, their religion, they are reduced to a f the Arabs, who have ountry. Of the dimi-Copts some idea may of the number of their in number at the pe-; they are now only

erous class, next after pts. Some Pharisees well as Karaites, who, a synagogue of their umerous and powerful. e customs; an under- wealth and credi- of Egypt, they find it than in the other pro- depends upon the ca- not how soon he may intendant of the cul- nople. One proof of Jews enjoy under the e offices of the customs and no goods can pass ging to Christians or

churches in Cairo, in performed by the pa- he other by the bishop nians, who are not nu- , but that a handsome e several French and lmen; yet the Dutch France and Venice.

ments of the East, our r Turks of distinction, cient military institu- themselves chiefly with nicipal inhabitants of a large square, called endants on horseback- rid; which consists in the stirrups loose, fting slaves four feet ch force, that if any is in danger of having thers, while riding at ot placed upon a heap the bow; an exercise ecreted in honour of y proofs of strength or ws.

stest height, the great in little boats splen- ckets in the middle of they regale the inhab- th fire-works. li in Barbary inform- t city used sometimes rds running between e models of ships of size in proportion to els, thus suspended in val officers, who di- e of the small artillery, presentation of a sea- el first suffered confi- as conquered. But this

his diversion often ended in serious quarrels among the commanders, and was therefore abolished.

The noblemen's servants exercise themselves on foot, in throwing, one against another, staves five or six feet long; and thus learn to throw the Gerid, when on horseback. The common people and peasants divert themselves with cudgel-playing. Gladiators by profession there are, too, who exhibit in public. But staves are their only weapons; and a small cushion fastened under the left arm, serves them as a buckler.

The young people of the villages amuse themselves at diversions much the same as several of those which are practised in Europe. They run, leap, play at the ball, sometimes at odds and evens, and at tossing a number of small stones into the air and receiving them again into the hand.

It is natural for a people who live in seclusion from society, and in subjection to arbitrary authority, to be fond of public festivals. These are celebrated in Egypt with much pomp and ceremony, particularly the festival upon the departure of the pilgrims for Mecca, of which several authors have given a description. The other feasts, besides this, are numerous: each mosque celebrates a feast in honour of its founder; upon occasion of which there is a procession of persons of all ranks; and the people are permitted to divert themselves in an adjoining square. The Copts have their feasts, as well as the Mahometans, and contribute, by their ceremonies, to the general amusement.

Sometimes these festivals are celebrated by night. The streets are then illuminated by the blaze of resinous wood in a chafing dish, held up on a long pole. They use also another more luminous flambeau, which is a machine consisting of divers pieces of light wood, to which are hung a number of small lamps, and the whole carried on a pole, as the former. When these festivals are celebrated by day, the people divert themselves upon swings, and other similar diversions.

Throughout Egypt, Syria, and Arabia, the favorite amusement of persons in any degree above the very lowest classes, is, to spend the evening in a public coffee-house, where they hear musicians, singers, and tale-tellers, who frequent those houses in order to earn a trifle by the exercise of their respective arts. In those places of public amusement, the Orientals maintain a profound silence, and often sit whole evenings without uttering a word. They prefer conversing with their pipe; and its narcotic fumes seem very fit to allay the ferment of their boiling blood. Without recurring to a physical reason, it would be hard to account for the general relish which these people have for tobacco; by smoking, they divert the spleen and languor which hang about them, and bring themselves, in a slight degree, into the same state of spirits which the opium-eaters obtain from that drug. Tobacco serves them instead of strong liquors, which they are forbidden to use.

The koran prohibits playing for money; and for this reason the Orientals seldom play at any game of chance.

They know nothing of cards; but at Bombay our traveller met with four Arabian merchants, who played with chinese cards, so large and thick, that not one of the four but had enough to do with both hands. Some young Mahometan merchants, whom he surprised playing at Bombay, concealed their game with an appearance of anxiety, till they learned that he was an European. The Greeks are too polished, not to imitate our manners; they shew themselves good Christians, by playing with our cards, and a deep game too.

The inhabitants of the East have, however, some games, more suitable to their sedentary life, and splenetic humour, at which they play without keenness, and merely to fill up the vacant hours. Such are chess, draughts, tristraec. The Arabic names of these games, and their antiquity prove them to have been originally introduced from the East into Europe.

If the Mahometans shew any degree of passion for any one game, it is for chess, at which they spend, sometimes, whole days without interruption. But those who enter into the game with this keenness and ferocity, are reckoned dull by their companions. Instead of wooden chess-boards, they use a white linen cloth, with pieces of a different colour sewed upon it. When the game is ended, the cloth is wrapped up, with the victors and the vanquished, amicably mixed within it.

They have another game, which is played upon boards, marked with two squares, one within another, and these divided diagonally,—with stones or shells of different colours; people play at it with black and white beans. There are many others, particularly an ancient game which the Arabs call Lal el Kab; it is played with small bones of sheep or goats; and the value of the several strokes in the progress of game is determined by the appearance of one or another of the sides of the bone above. The elder Greek and Latin authors speak of this game, which must have given rise to the use of the dice.

At the time of our travellers arrival in Cairo, there was a numerous company of players, Mahometans, Christians, and Jews. Their appearance bespoke their poverty. They played their pieces, wherever they were invited, for a moderate hire. They exhibited in the open air. The court of the house was their theatre; and a screen concealed them from the audience, when they changed their dresses. Several European merchants had lived long at Cairo without seeing an Egyptian play; our travellers therefore invited the company to the house of a married Italian: but they were not much gratified either by the music or the players. The piece was in Arabic. M. Niebuhr was not then sufficiently master of this language to understand the dialogue; but the fable was explained to him. The principal character was a female; but was acted by a man in woman's dress, who had much to do to hide his beard. This heroine enticed all travellers into her tent; and after robbing them of their purses, caused them to be beaten off. She had already plundered a good many, when a young merchant, weary of the insipid repetition of the same tricks, expressed aloud his disapprobation of the piece. The other spectators, to shew that their delicacy was not inferior to his, joined his expression of disapprobation, and obliged the players to stop, although the piece was not more than half done.

Though few plays are represented in Cairo, yet puppet-shews are very common, and are to be met with through all the streets. This exhibition is represented upon a very narrow stage, a sort of box which a single person can easily carry about, and into which the performer goes. He sends forward his figures through holes in the coffer, and makes them perform the necessary movements by means of wires passing through the grooves in the lid of the box. With an instrument in his mouth, he gives his voice a shrillness answerable to the size of the figures. The whole together might merit attention, were not the pieces, which the taste of the spectators in Cairo requires to be performed, absolutely execrable. The puppets begin by paying compliments, quarrel by degrees, and end with beating one another.

The magic lantern is a favourite amusement in the East; and jugglers are to be seen in all the public streets: they are paid by a voluntary contribution of the spectators, but that so moderate, that their profession scarcely enables them to live. Monks, dressed up like human beings, also contribute to the amusement of the populace. Those who lead beasts about for exhibition, have also sheep and asses who are taught to perform some diverting tricks: but what at first surprised our travellers most of all, was to see serpents dancing; however their wonder ceased upon considering the instinct of this animal, which seems to have a natural taste for sounds.

C H A P. II.

Our Travellers delayed—Reasons thereof—Prepare for their Departure from Serriagus, &c.—Make for Suez—Proceed to Adgerud—Description thereof—Reach Bir-Suez—Account of the City—Adventures and Observations—Journey to Mount Sinai—Travel through the Plain of Girdau—See a great Mass of Rock—Enter Girondel—Jebbel Hamum Laurum, &c. &c.—The Valley of Favan—Description of Mount Sinai.

NOTWITHSTANDING the chief object of M. Niebuhr's voyage was to visit Arabia, yet several circumstances detained him in Egypt for nearly a year.

Christians, on account of the pretended sanctity of the pilgrims, are prohibited from travelling to Arabia by land, with the caravan for Mecca. They are under a necessity, therefore, of waiting till the season when the Red Sea becomes navigable, and vessels sail from the harbour of Suez for Jidda.

While they waited these opportunities, they found it equally impossible to visit Mount Sinai, or Jibbel-el-Mokatib, the celebrated hill of inscriptions, both of which they delighted to examine. The Egyptians had been at war, during all the last year, with a small tribe of Arabs who dwelt in the environs of Tor, which rendered such a journey impracticable before the return of the caravan from Mecca, the conductor of which had been commissioned to negotiate a peace with the offended Arabs.

The cause of this war was the intemperate rapacity of the Arabs, who gain their livelihood by hiring out camels, and carrying goods between Suez and Cairo. A number of vessels laden with corn, are sent every year from Egypt to Mecca. One of these vessels had anchored near Tor, to take in water, which is better and cheaper there than at Suez; and the captain had made his whole crew go on shore. The Arabs could not resist such a temptation; but seized the captain and the sailors, and plundered the vessel. While this supply of provisions lasted, they gave themselves little concern about the resentment of the Egyptians. But, when they had used all the corn, and durst no longer go to Cairo, for fear of having their camels taken from them, and being otherwise punished, they found themselves much at a loss for the means of subsistence. They began, therefore, to pillage the caravans which go and come regularly between Suez and Cairo. They had even the confidence to represent to government, that they would continue to rob the caravans, till an amnesty should be granted them for what was past, and security given that they and their camels might come and go in safety.

Notwithstanding the sultan calls himself sovereign of Egypt, yet so feeble is his authority, that an handful of raggamuffins ventured to brave the pride of the Ottoman throne, and came off with impunity. To restore peace and security, the regency at Cairo found themselves obliged to empower the Emir Hadgi to make the concession which the Arabs required. The treaty was accordingly concluded at a place where the caravan halted, on their return from Mecca.

Having received notice of this event, August 27, 1762, by the discharge of a cannon upon the arrival of a courier with the news, our travellers immediately prepared to set out. Preparations for such a journey as that which they proposed to make, in the East, was a very serious and difficult concern. A traveller, although he knows a little of the language, cannot but want servants, who must have been previously in those parts which he means to visit. With such, they were ill provided. Their Swedish servant was as much a stranger as themselves; they had a Greek cook who had lived long enough in Cairo, but had never been out of Egypt; an interpreter to assist their physician in his practice, who was a renegade Greek, and had never travelled before; and a young Jew of Sana, who had before travelled the same road upon which they were entering, but was regarded with sovereign contempt by the Mahometans, on account of the nation to which he belonged. None of these could be of much service to them in their intercourse

with the Arabs. They had likewise great occasion to supply themselves carefully with provisions and articles of furniture. In the deserts through which they were to travel, a tent and beds were indispensably necessary. They had a neat collection of kitchen utensils made of copper, and tinned without and within. Instead of glasses, which are so liable to be broken, they used also copper bowls completely tinned. A bottle of thick leather served them as a caraffe. Their butter they put up in a leathern jar. In a wooden box, covered with leather, and parted out into shelves, they stored their spices of all sorts; and in another similar box, they laid their candles; in the lid of the latter, they fixed an iron socket, which served them for a candlestick. They had large lanterns of folded linen, with the lid and bottom of white iron. For a table, with table linen, they had a round piece of leather, with iron rings at certain distances round it, through which cords were passed, after their meals, and the table hung, in the form of a purse, upon one of their camels. But they imprudently put their wine into great flasks, instead of goats-skin bottles, large enough, each of them to contain twenty ordinary bottles. These vases are very liable to be broken by the jolting of the camels, as they found by the loss of a part of their wine.

All except M. Niebuhr hired horses. He, out of curiosity, preferred a dromedary, and found no reason to repent of his choice. On a camel, the saddle is always open above, that it may not hurt the bunch of the animal; but a dromedary's saddle is made like a horse's, and covers the bunch. The dromedary, as well as the camel, kneels to receive a load, or a rider upon his back. At a certain signal, he droops his head and neck, so that one can alight and remount whenever there is occasion, without making the animal stop. Our hero spread his bed-clothes upon his saddle, and was thus enabled to change his posture, and to seat himself so as to avoid the direct impulse of the sun's rays. A dromedary walks with long and regular steps, and the rider, of consequence, feels the motion no otherwise than if he were rocked in a cradle. When his companions, who rode on horse-back, were weary and faint by the fatigue of riding, and by the excessive heat, he found himself as little fatigued as if he had been all day in a chaise at his ease.

The caravan with which they had designed to travel, waited a long while for the conclusion of peace between the governor of Egypt and the Arabs of Tor. On its return, they went immediately to find the Schiech from whom they had hired their beasts for the journey. He had pitched his tent near the village of Serriagus, where he, with his party, lay encamped, till they should find it proper to set out. But on that day no body must stir.

When large caravans pass through the territories of the independent Arabs, they have at their head a caravan-baschi, whose business it is to guide the caravan, and to treat with the princes who may exact duties for the liberty of passing through their dominions. This chief regulates the departure of the caravan, its journeys, and the times at which it is to rest. But small caravans, such as our travellers employed, whose expeditions are short, have no such guide. The chief merchant in the party, always halts and proceeds as he pleases, and the rest follow his example. When none of the merchants in the company is considerable enough to have this influence, the Arab who has most beasts of burden, regulates the rest. Our travellers did not know the precise time at which they were to set out, till the 28th of August, when they saw troops of passengers begin to move.

Their

Their caravan had no very formidable aspect. Being in haste to set out from Cairo before the great caravan, which goes always to Suez immediately after the departure of the vessels, they had not more than forty camels which were loaded with corn and materials for building. Three or four camels were employed in carrying an anchor. Their camel-drivers, who were but few, carried broken guns, and rusty or pointed sabres. A few Schiechs, indeed, to whom the most of their camels belonged, carried complete armour, and rode upon dromedaries. But they could not trust to them for defence; for no Arab will willingly risk his life to save a Turk. It was their part, therefore, to keep in the middle of the caravan, and on no account to leave them, or encamp apart, unless they were willing to be plundered. In some places, where the danger was least, our hero and his comrade ventured to go before the main body of the caravan, to rest and enjoy purer air for a little while.

They left Serapius on the evening of the 28th of August, and passed near by a large village, called Hanka, after which they returned into the great road, and about eleven at night, encamped in a place named El-Firn-bebad. The great road consists of a number of parallel paths, formed by camels who travel in files, just as they please. Two miles from Cairo, they saw a square area enclosed within a wall, several feet high, in which the principal inhabitants of Cairo assemble to receive the Emir Hadji, at his return from Mecca. From this place to Adgerud, within four leagues of Suez, the country is absolutely a desert; for the space of three and twenty leagues, neither houses, water, nor the smallest spot of verdure being to be seen.

Early on the 29th, they decamped, after taking a very slight refreshment. They travelled onward, thirteen leagues, crossed the mountain of Wehbe; and about sun set, encamped near the hill of Taja. The great caravan from Mecca had passed on the preceding night; but as they travelled farther to the south, our travellers of course failed to meet them. Early on the next day, they proceeded to Adgerud, where travellers are induced to halt, by finding water fit for drinking.

Adgerud is a small castle, that has been built by the Turks for the protection of the road, and the preservation of the wells between Suez and the entrance into the desert. Although built only about the end of the sixteenth century, it is now ruinous.

Within three hours, they reached Bir-Suez, where are two deep wells, surrounded with walls, and shut up with strong gates, to exclude the Arabs from the water. This water, although bad, and almost unfit for human use, is however precious to the inhabitants of Suez, as it serves for their cattle. It is drawn from the wells in leathern buckets. Bir-Suez being only a league from Suez, they reached that city in good time. By M. Niebuhr's observations, it is thirty-two ordinary leagues, or three and twenty German miles from Cairo.

The city of Suez stands upon the western side, but not just upon the western extremity, of the Arabian gulf. It is not surrounded with walls; but the houses are built so closely together, that there are only two passages into the city, of which that nearest the sea is open, the other shut by a very insignificant gate. The houses are very forty structures; the kans being the only solid buildings in the city. Hardly any part now remains of the castle which the Turks built upon the ruins of the ancient Kollam. It is very thinly inhabited. Among its inhabitants are some Greeks, and a few families of Copts. But, about the time of the departure of the fleet, it is crowded with strangers. The ground lying around it, is all one bed of rock, slightly covered with sand. Scarcely a plant is to be seen any where in the neighbourhood. Trees, gardens, meadows, and fields, are entirely unknown at Suez. Fish is the only article of provisions plentiful here. All other necessaries of life, for both men

and the domestic animals, are brought from afar; from Cairo, which is three days journey distant from Suez; Mount Sinai, at the distance of six days journey; or Ghaffa, at the distance of seven.

At Suez, there is not a single spring of water. That at Bir-Suez is scarcely good enough for cattle, though drawn to Suez twice a-day for their use. The water of the pretended wells of Moses is still worse; and besides, these wells lie at a league and a half's distance on the other side of the gulf. The only water fit for drinking that is to be had here, comes from the wells of Naba, upon the other side of the gulf, and more than two leagues distant from Suez. The Arabs are the carriers.

Ship-building is the chief employment of the inhabitants of Suez: although wood, and iron, and all the other materials, are to be brought from Cairo upon camels, and are, of consequence, very dear. The ships built here have a very awkward rudder, made of a large beam, the use of which is dangerous and inconvenient. Our hero saw a vessel in this harbour of a different construction, which had been built at Surat. So durable was the wood of which it was formed, that, although it had been in constant use for twenty years, it was still in a perfectly sound state.

The governor of Suez was a Bey from Cairo; and he kept a very numerous household. This employment placed him in a sort of honourable exile; and being therefore very desirous of returning to the capital, he listened eagerly to any predictions respecting the period of his return thither. He assured our travellers, that a learned Mussulman had foretold the time when he was to be recalled; and he wished them to consult the unknown inscriptions in the desert, and see whether they might not confirm the prediction of the prophetic Mussulman. However Niebuhr and his party excused themselves, as ignorant of the sublime science which unveils futurity. This Bey was a Mahometan by birth, and the son of a sugar merchant.

The Schiechs, whom they had hired to conduct them to Mount Sinai, not having fulfilled their engagement, our travellers refused, upon their return to Suez, to pay the whole sum that had been stipulated. Hereupon the Schiechs threatened to kill them, but our travellers let them know that they were able to defend themselves. They then declared that they would deprive them of the water of the Naba. Mr. Van Haven replied, that this was a matter of no consequence to Europeans who drank wine; an answer which moved the Turks to laugh at the expense of the Arabs. But, as their tribe eluded their quarrel, it was seriously feared that they might execute what they threatened, and reduce the city to distress for want of water. Wherefore, the governor begged them to terminate the difference, and pay the Schiechs what they demanded: with which request M. Niebuhr cheerfully complied.

One thing that they had in view in their journey, was to examine the Hill of Inscriptions in the desert; and they were, therefore, desirous of receiving all possible information concerning so remarkable a place. On their arrival therefore at Suez, they applied to some Greeks for information concerning that hill. But none of them had ever heard of the name of Jibbel-el-Mokateb. They directed them, however, to a Schiech of the tribe of Said, who had passed his life in travelling between Suez and Mount Sinai. That Schiech was equally a stranger to the name of the Hill of Inscriptions. But, understanding that they would give a considerable reward to the person who should guide them thither, he returned next day with another Schiech, of the tribe of Saccalha, who pretended to have a particular knowledge, not only of that mountain, but of all other places in the desert where inscriptions were to be met with. However, by his answers to some questions, our travellers soon saw that he knew as little as the former of the place which they wished to visit. At last a Schiech of the

tribe of Leghat was brought them, who, by his conversation, convinced them, that he had seen stones inscribed with unknown characters. When he learned that the object of their curiosity was called Jibbel-el-Mokatteb, he assured them that this was the name of the mountain among all the Arabs who knew it. Pleased with finding, at length, an inhabitant of the desert, at least, who could guide them to the place where the inscriptions were to be seen; they determined to take him for their conductor, especially because his abode, as he told them, was near to that mountain. But the other two Schiechs, who had brought them the latter, warmly opposed their purpose, and insisted upon accompanying them as well as he. The inhabitants of Suez, advised them to take them all three, and told them, that they could not travel the desert in safety, without having guides from every one of the three tribes, that inhabited the country between Suez and Mount Sinai. Accordingly they took the three Schiechs, who supplied them with camels for themselves and their servants. To prevent disputes, they had their contract written out by the cafi of Suez, in the presence of the governor.

Being anxious to set out in time, that they might return to Suez before the first ships should sail, they chose the beginning of October: for in the succeeding months, the passage to Jidda becomes too dangerous. At this time their painter, Mr. Baurenfiend, had fallen ill, immediately after their arrival at Suez, from the excessive fatigues which he had undergone. Notwithstanding his affliction was necessary in their expedition, yet M. Niebuhr and Mr. Van Haven resolved to set out by themselves, leaving Messrs. Forkal and Cramer at Suez, to take care of Mr. Baurenfiend.

They crossed the gulf on the 6th of September 1762, and set out next morning with their Arabs. Beside the three Schiechs and their servants, they were accompanied by several of those people's friends, who had, for some time, carried water from the wells of Naha to Suez, and were now going to see their friends in the desert, hoping to live at our travellers' expence by the way. It is a rule with these people, that an Arab of distinction, travelling, must maintain all who choose to accompany him, whether it be at his own desire or not; and our travellers, as they lived at some expence, were thought to be very rich.

The first day they travelled along the coast of the Arabic gulf, through a sandy plain, having a few hills scattered over it. The Arabs call such plains, when they lie somewhat low, *saltes*, because water remains stagnant in them after heavy rains. They rested under a palm-tree, Moses' Fountains. These pretended fountains, are five holes in the sand, in a well of very indifferent water, that becomes turbid whenever any of it is drawn. As the holes bear the name of Moses, the Arabs ascribe them to the Jewish law-giver. After a day's journey of five German miles and a half, they encamped on the sand, in the plain of El-Ti.

The country through which they passed, is famous as the scene of the emigration of the Jews, under Moses. They were therefore desirous of learning from the Arabs, the names of all the places, and of all the mountains, especially in their way. Mr. Van Haven who could not resolve to make himself familiar with the Bedouins, could obtain nothing but vague and uncivil answers from them. M. Niebuhr again sought to gain the confidence and friendship of one of those Arabs, by making him some presents, and causing him to ride sometimes behind him upon his camel. From him he received honest and distinct answers. To the objects which he pointed out to him, he gave the same names coming as going. M. Niebuhr likewise measured the distances of places, by counting the steps of the camel, and comparing the number with the time in which they were travelled, by his watch. By means of a compass, he distinguished, likewise, the directions of the road. None of the Arabs understood the nature of this instrument. It is plainly,

therefore, an idle tale, that they follow the directions of the compass, in travelling through their deserts.

On the 8th of September, they travelled through the plain of Girdan. They saw, on their way, an enormous mass of rock, that had fallen from a neighbouring mountain. They entered next the valley of Girondel, and, after proceeding five miles and a half further, found themselves in the vicinity of Jibbel-Hammen-Faurum. Next day, sending their servants forward, they themselves staid to examine these environs. In the rainy season, a considerable torrent runs through the valley of Girondel. It was at this time dry; yet, by digging in the bed, to the depth of two feet, they found better water than that which is used at Suez. This valley not being deficient in water, has in it several trees, and even groves, that appear singularly striking to travellers from Cairo, who have seen no similar appearance in the previous part of their journey.

Hamman-Faurum is the name of a hot spring which rises by two apertures out of a rock, at the foot of a high mountain. It is used in baths by the neighbouring sick, who commonly stay forty days for a cure, during which their only food is but a fruit, called Laffaf, which grows here. An extensive burning-place near the baths, suggested doubts in our traveller's mind of the beneficial effects of this regimen. The tradition that the Jews passed this way, and that Pharaoh's army was drowned here, has occasioned this place to receive the name of Birket-el-Faurum. The Arabs imagine that Pharaoh is doing penance at the bottom of this well, and vomits up the sulphureous vapour with which the water is impregnated.

This eastern side of the Arabic gulph, is tolerably level and uniform. But the opposite side is one range of lofty mountains; broken, however, and divided by two vales, one of which must be passed by travellers from Egypt to the shore of the Red Sea.

They turned by degrees towards the north-east, in pursuing the direct road to Mount Sinai, and at length entered a narrow vale, which appeared to have been cut by the torrents, in the rock. The mountains which rose upon every side of them, in uninterrupted chains, were masses of a sort of limestone intermingled with veins of granite. In several places through them, M. Niebuhr discovered a quantity of petrified shells, of a species which is to be found with the living shell-fish in it, in the Arabic gulf. One of these hills is entirely covered with flints. The granite became more and more plentiful, as they approached Mount Sinai.

Their road lay often along the brink of precipices, commonly through stony glynns, and sometimes through wide valleys, watered and fertile. Such were Usaitu, El-Hamer, and Warfan. They passed, also, in their way, by Nalbe, the seat of some Bedouins of this country. As water was sometimes at a distance from the places where they encamped, their servants were obliged to go and fetch it. They could have wished to accompany them, in order to see a little of the country; but their guides would not always permit them.

After passing through the valley of Warfan, they turned a little out of the highway, and in the same evening reached the abode of their chief of the tribe of Leghat. As it could not be far from Jibbel-el-Mokatteb, our traveller began to hope that he might take this opportunity of going thither. But the conversation of the Schiech made him soon give up that hope.

The Schiech had given notice of his arrival to several of his friends, who, to the number of ten or twelve, came to see him. Our hero left him to entertain his guests, and in the mean time ranged over several hills in the neighbourhood. He saw by accident, in a sequestered spot, a wretched tent, the dwelling of their Schiech, in which were his wife and sister, busily grinding corn. One of the women came out of the tent, to present him with a bit of gum, and did not refuse a small piece of money in return. At a
little

they follow the direction through their deserts, they travelled through the law, on their way, as had fallen from a neighbouring valley, of the distance of five miles and a half in the vicinity of Jibbel-Musa, sending their servants to examine the soil, a considerable quantity of Gironde. It was lying in the bed, to the better water than that of the valley not being deficient trees, and even groves, to travellers from Cairo, appearance in the previous

one of a hot spring which a rock, at the foot of a bath by the neighbouring valley for days for a cure, and is but a fruit, called An extensive hurried doubts in our travels, effects of this regimen, passed this way, and that here, has occasioned the of Birket-el Faran. Moah is doing penance at omits up the sulphureous is impregnated.

rabie gulph, is tolerably opposite side is one range however, and divided must be passed by in the of the Red Sea. towards the north-east, in Mount Sinai, and at length appeared to have been a rock. The mountains them, in uninterrupted of limestone intermin several places through d a quantity of petrified to be found with the volcanic gulf. One of those ch flints. The granite useful, as they approached

the brink of precipices, lynns, and sometimes red and fertile. Such Warfan. They passed, the feat of some the water was sometimes ere they encamped, then and fetch it. They could them, in order to see a their guides would not

valley of Warfan, they way, and in the same their chief of the tribe far from Jibbel-el-Mo hope that he might take her. But the conversation soon give up that

ce of his arrival to several number of ten or twelve, left him to entertain his aged over several hills saw by accident, in a tent, the dwelling of his wife and sister, the women came out of a bit of gum, and did money in return. At a little

little further distance, he met the Schiech's son, who was tending goats, and conversed with him for a considerable time. M. Niebuhr was surpris'd at the sense, gravity, and assurance of the child, who seem'd to be, in no degree, embarrassed by the presence of a stranger. He invited our traveller very kindly to the house, to drink some excellent water which had been drawn on that same day from the well. He had here an opportunity of remarking the relation between language and manners. A tent, of which the original Arabic name is Cheime, is, however, called by these Bedouins, Beit, which signifies house; because they have no other houses than tents.

Moll of their Schiech's friends were distinguished by the same title of Schiech, although nowise superior in their air or dress, to the vulgar Arabs. The title, therefore, is supposed to mean no more among the Arabs, than master, or sir.

Being determin'd to proceed on to Mount Sinai, they set out from the dwelling of their Schiech of Beni-Leghat, on the 12th of September. The country became more mountainous, as they advanced. Yet they pass'd through some pleasant vallies; such were those of Chancela, Dabur, Barak, and Genna. Before reaching the vale of Iffratu, which, although surrounded with rocky and precipitous mountains, displays some rich and cheerful prospects, they were oblig'd to go over another lofty and almost inaccessible hill.

In this vale they met an Arabian lady attended by a servant. In respect to their Schiech, she quitted the road, alighted from her camel, and pass'd them on foot. Another woman veiled, and walking on foot, who happen'd to meet them in so narrow a part of the valley of Genna, that she could not avoid them, fat down as they pass'd, and turned her back upon them. M. Niebuhr gave her the salutation of peace; but his conductors told him, that she had turned her back in respect to them as strangers, and that he had done wrong in saluting her.

At the distance of nearly seven German miles from the dwelling of their Schiech of the tribe of Leghat, they found the abode of their other Schiech of the tribe of Said. The latter was as little willing as the former had been, to pass by near his family without seeing them. They were again therefore oblig'd to leave the highway, and to follow their conductor half a league out of the road. The Arabs set up their tents near a tree in the valley of Faran, and left them to amuse themselves there, in the best manner they could, till they went to see their friends in gardens of date-trees, scattered over the valley. They were at no great distance from their Schiech's camp, which consisted of nine or ten tents. They were inform'd that the ruins of an ancient city were to be seen in the neighbourhood. But, when the Arabs found them curious to visit it, they left them and would give them no further account of it.

The famous valley of Faran, in which they now were, has retained its name unchanged since the days of Moses, being still call'd the Valley of Faran. Its length is equal to a journey of a day and a half, extending from the foot of Mount Sinai to the Arabic Gulf. In the rainy season, it is fill'd with water; and the inhabitants are then oblig'd to retire up the hills; it was dry, however, when they pass'd through it. That part of it which they saw was far from being fertile, but serv'd as a pasture to goats, camels, and asses. The other part is said to be very fertile; and the Arabs told our travellers, that, in the districts to which their Ghafirs had gone, were many orchards of date-trees, which produc'd fruit enough to sustain some thousands of people. Fruit mull, indeed, be very plenteous there; for the Arabs of the valley bring every year to Cairo an astonishing quantity of dates, raisins, pears, apples, and other fruits, all of excellent quality.

Some Arabs, who came to see them, offer'd them fresh dates, which were yellow, but scarcely ripe. The chief of their Schiech's wives (for he had two)

came likewise to see them, and present'd them with some eggs and a chicken. The two wives of the Schiech preferr'd over two different departments of his affairs. One was plac'd at some distance from where our tents happen'd to be pitch'd, in order to manage a garden of date-trees. The other was their neighbour, and superintend'd the cattle and the servants. The latter would not enter their tents; but sat down near enough to converse with them. She complain'd of her husband, who neglect'd her, she said, for her rival, and spent all his time in drawing water in Egypt, or in carrying articles of merchandise from one place to another. The European law, by which every man is confin'd to one wife, appear'd to her admirable. This was the first opportunity M. Niebuhr had of conversing, without restraint, with a Mahometan female.

They left this place on the 14th of September, and, after travelling two miles further, in the valley of Faran, arriv'd at the foot of Jibbel-Musa. Up this mountain they ascend'd a mile and a half, and encamp'd near a large mass of stone, which Moses is said by the Arabs to have divid'd into two, as it at present appears, with one blow of his rod. Among those mountains they found several springs of excellent water.

The Arabs call Jibbel-Musa, the Mount of Moses, all that range of mountains which rises at the interior extremity of the valley of Faran; and to that part of the range on which the convent of St. Catharine stands, they give the name of Tur-Sina. This similitude of name, owing, most probably, to tradition, affords ground for presumption, that the hill which they now reach'd was the Sinai of the Jews, on which Moses receiv'd the law. It is, indeed, not easily to comprehend, how such a multitude of people, as the Jews, who accompanied Moses out of Egypt, could encamp in those narrow gullies, amidst frightful and precipitous rocks. But, our hero supposes there are plains, that he knew not of, on the other side of the mountain.

Two German miles and a half up the mountain, stands the convent of St. Catharine. The body of this monastery is a building one hundred and twenty feet in length, and almost as many in breadth. Before it stands another small building, in which is the only gate of the convent, which remains always shut, except when the bishop is here. At other times, whatever is introduced within the convent, whether men or provisions, is drawn up by the roof in a basket, and with a cord and a pulley. The whole building is of hewn stone; which, in such a desert, must have cost prodigious expence and pains.

Before the convent is a large garden, plant'd with excellent fruit-trees. The Arabs say that the Monks enter it by a subterraneous passage.

These Greek ecclesiastics are not allow'd to receive an European without an order from the bishop of Mount Sinai, who resides ordinarily at Cairo. He had promis'd our travellers a letter, but had set out, without their knowledge, to Constantinople. By the favour of the English ambassador at Constantinople, they had obtain'd another letter from a deposed patriarch, who had resid'd three years in the convent of St. Catharine. Believing that this letter might be sufficient to gain them admittance, they present'd it to those clergymen, through a small chink in the wall. They took some time to consider, and, after making them wait long, let them know that they could not receive them, as they had not a letter from their bishop.

During this parley, many Arabs, who had observ'd the Europeans from the neighbouring hills, gather'd round them. They are paid a certain sum for every stranger that is received into the convent. When the bishop happens to be present, the gate is open'd, and the convent must entertain all the Arabs who come in. This custom is very burthenome to those poor monks, who have nothing but alms to live upon; and have their provisions, which they are oblig'd to bring from Cairo, often stolen by the way. The Arabs are

in general very dangerous neighbours. They often fire upon the convent from the adjacent rocks. They seize the monks whenever they happen to find them without the walls of the monastery, and refuse to release them, without a considerable ransom.

Not to occasion uneasiness to those monks, our travellers retired, and encamped at a quarter of a league's distance from the monastery. As a recompence for their discretion, they immediately received a present of furs, which were highly acceptable.

Our heroes wished to choose from among the Arabs who had gathered about them, a guide to conduct him to Sinai. This, however, their Ghafirs would not permit, which occasioned a quarrel among them and the other Arabs. Next day, however, their Schiechs brought him an Arab, whom they qualified with the title of Schiech of Mount Sinai, to procure him some path from them, by the right which he then arrogated to himself of attending strangers who came to visit the mountain.

Under the conduct of this newly created lord of Sinai, with their other Schiechs, our heroes attended, on this same day, to clamber to the summit of that mountain. It is exceedingly steep. The Arabs have cut a flight of steps up the rock. Poccoke reckons three thousand of these steps to the top of the mountain, or rather bare, pointed rock.

Five hundred steps above the convent, they found a charming spring, which, by a little pains, might be improved into a very agreeable spot. A thousand steps higher stands a chapel dedicated to the Blessed Virgin; and five hundred above this, two other chapels, situated in a plain, which the traveller enters by two small gates of mason-work. Upon this plain are two trees, under which, at high festivals, the Arabs are regaled at the expence of the Greeks. His Mahometan guides, imitating the practices which they had seen the pilgrims observe, kissed the images, and repeated their prayers in the chapels.

C H A P. III.

Their Return from Mount Sinai—Meet a young Arab drunk—Continue their Journey—Find some Inscriptions, and an Egyptian—Arrive again at Suez—Recovery of Mr. Baurenfeind—An Attempt to examine the Western Side of the Gulf—Unsuccessful—A Strange Appearance—Remarks—Departure from Suez—Bad Accommodations at Iking—Unpleasantness of the Seaman—Weigh Anchor—The Harbour of Iking—Mr. Ferikah visits the Valley of Iking—A false Report—Make for Jidda—Vessel in danger of being burnt—The Women converted—An Eclipse of the Moon—A stormy Night—The Ship—A considerable Quantity of Goods—Some of the Passengers land—The Ship proceeds on their Voyage—Supply of Provisions at Rabaga—The Gulf of Jidda—Description thereof—Remarks, &c.

SEPTEMBER the 16th, in the afternoon, they descended Jibbel-Musa, and passed the night at the bottom of that chitty mountain, at the opening into the valley of Faraf. Next day, after advancing three miles through the vale, they halted near the dwelling of their Schiech of the tribe of Saïd.

Their Ghafirs left them again, and went to see their friends in the gardens of date-trees. During their absence, our travellers had met with a young Arab, riding on a dromedary, who had made himself drunk in one of those gardens. Understanding that they were Europeans and Christians, he began to pour out abusive language against them, much in the same strain in which an insolent and ill-bred young man in Europe might perhaps wantonly abuse a Jew. From this incident, they judged that the Bedouins used wine. They could not help remarking, at the same time, that the law of Mahomet, with great wisdom, forbids the use of strong liquors, as they have such tendency to warm the passions, which, with the inhabitants of hot climates, have naturally but too much violence. In the cities, indeed, many of the Mahometans are in the habit of getting drunk. But, either for shame, or for fear of punishment, they never appear drunk in public; and take this vicious indulgence only in private, in their own houses. Except that young man, they never saw another Mahometan brutally drunk, during all their travels.

Their Ghafirs returned, and they continued their journey on the 20th of the month. Next day M. Niebuhr advanced before his fellow-travellers, on purpose again to view the mountain. The next day they had an opportunity of seeing a part of the road which they had passed by night, when travelling to Jibbel-Musa. In this place, near a delle, named Om-er-vidj-lein, they found some inscriptions in unknown characters, which had been mentioned to M. Niebuhr at Cairo. They are coarsely engraven, apparently with some pointed instrument of iron, in the rock, without order or regularity. Their Arab, thought the time lost which was spent in copying those inscriptions.

On the 25th of September, they arrived again at Suez. Mr. Baurenfeind was much recovered. Before they could reach the city, they had to cross the same arm of the sea, over which they had been ferried

when they set out on their journey; but they could find no boat on the Eastern side. Perceiving, however, that the tide was ebbing, they ventured toward this part of the gulf. They succeeded happily, and the north from the ruins of Kollum. Their camels walked readily; and the Arabs who walked, saw only in water to the knees. This was perhaps the first time that any Europeans attempted to pass here in this manner. This attempt proved that the waters of the gulf are much influenced by the tides, and that in the ebb, the Red Sea may be safely passed on foot.

After M. Niebuhr's return to Suez, he was desirous to examine also the western side of the gulf, and the adjoining hills. He could prevail with no person to accompany him in so dangerous an expedition, for, at the smallest distance from the city, the passenger is in no less danger of being robbed, than in the desert. At length, however, an Arab undertook to be his guide. But he trembled at the sight of every human being that they met; and indeed those whom he met, seemed to be no less afraid of them. This teased and vexed as he was, our hero could make but few interesting observations in these petty excursions.

He now, for the first time, observed an appearance with which he was singularly struck; but which he came afterwards familiar to him. An Arab, whom he saw approaching at a distance, upon a camel, appeared to move through the air, with the gigantic bulk of a tower; although he was travelling along the sand like themselves. Several travellers mention an error of vision, which is owing to a peculiar refraction produced in these torrid climates, by vapours differing greatly in their nature, from those which fill the air in temperate regions.

M. Niebuhr could learn nothing certain concerning the canal which is said to have joined the Nile with the Arabic gulf. No Arab would conduct him into that part of the country through which it is probable that the canal might pass; because the tribe who inhabit it, were at variance with the inhabitants of Suez. In the neighbourhood of Suez, he could find no trace of any canal; unless the valley of Mofbeha, between Bir-Suez and the city, may be regarded as such. After the rains, a considerable quantity

newly created lord of
his, our hero attempted
to the summit of that
to sleep. The Greeks
e rock. Poocheke
to the top of
rock.
convent, they found
a little pains, might
be spot. A thousand
dedicated to the blessed
ve this, two other cha-
ch the traveller open
ork. Upon this plan
at high festivals, the
nce of the Greeks. His
he practices which he
killed the image, and
hapels.

*Some Informations con-
cerning the History of the
Inhabitants of the Valley of Elim,
the Temple of the
Berenice, and the
of Kabege.*

ney; but the
le. Perceiv-
they ventured to
eated happy,
ollum. Their cam-
is who walked,
is was perhaps the first
ot to pass here in
that the waters
e tides, and that in
passed on foot.
Suez, he was desirous
e of the gulf, and the
vail with no perion to
is an expedition for
city, the passenger is
ed, than in the desert.
undertook to be the
fight of every human
ed those whom he
aid of them. Their
ur hero could man-
s in these petty exan-

erved an appearance
ruck; but the
n. An Arab, who
e, upon a camel,
ir, with the gnom-
s travelling about
avellers went on as
to a peculiar refre-
ates, by vapours
from those which

ing certain concerns
have joined the Ne
Arab would condu-
through which it
s; because the tribe
with the inhabitants
d of Suez, he could
s the valley of Mof-
city, may be regard-
considerable quantity
of

of water remains stagnate in this vale, which the in-
habitants draw for use: and when the waters are gone
off, it is soon covered with grass.

During their absence, several small caravans had
succeedingly arrived at Suez; and the arrival of the
great caravan from Cairo, followed soon after their
return from Mount Sinai. Although from pirates,
properly so called, there is little to be feared in the
Arabic gulf, yet, so unskilful are the mariners in
these latitudes, that they dare not venture to any dis-
tance from the coasts. This timorous mode of sailing
might expose a single vessel to the robbery of the
Arabs; to avoid which, these ships sail in little fleets;
four always setting out together, that they may join
to defend themselves.

After the arrival of the caravans, Suez seemed more
populous than Cairo; and as such a multitude could
not long find subsistence there, all were eager to set out
without delay. M. Niebuhr was recommended to the
matters of two ships that were to make the voyage.
Although now accustomed to live with the Mahome-
tans, yet, in their passage to Jidda, they suffered a
degree of uneasiness, which they had not felt upon
occasions of greater danger. Some Greeks had hinted
to them, that the Mussulmans thought Christians un-
worthy of making this voyage in the company of the
pilgrims who were journeying to the holy city; and
that upon this account they should not go abroad with
shoes upon their feet. Some of the pilgrims, indeed,
seemed to look upon them little less unfavourably
than a Capuchin going to Jerusalem would regard a
Protestant. But, to be obliged to walk without shoes
upon the deck, was not an humiliating distinction,
common to Christians; it was a restraint to which all
on board were subjected. Nobody in those vessels
but must walk upon deck without shoes.

To avoid the company of the Mahometans, they had
hired an apartment which they thought the best. In
a chamber opposite to them, lodged a rich black eu-
nuch, who was going to Mecca; and, useless as it
could not but be to him, was accompanied with his
seraglio, like a Turkish lord. In a large apartment
under theirs, were forty women and slaves, with their
children, whose crying and noise gave them no little
disturbance. Every one of the other passengers had
hired a place upon the deck, where he remained with
his bales and parcels around him, having only a small
space vacant in the middle, where he might dress his
vitals, sit, and sleep. Their Greek tailors, who
were very unskilful, were perplexed by these incum-
brances, and could not go about to manage the vessel,
without trampling upon the goods of the merchants,
which produced endless disputes.

Their vessel, although large enough to have carried
at least forty guns, was very deeply laden. Besides
her own freight, she towed after her three large flut-
tals, and one small; the three larger filled with pas-
sengers, horses, sheep, and even women of plea-
sure.

The master, an honest merchant from Cairo, whose
name was Schorethe, would not have been distin-
guished among the seamen of Europe. He took upon
himself the talk of pilot to the vessel; but was indeed
a very unskilful pilot. Between the two compasses,
where European navigators set a light, he had placed
a large magnet, to restore, imperceptibly, as he said,
their magnetic virtue to the needles. It was with
difficulty that M. Niebuhr persuaded him to re-
move it.

With such seamen, however, they were obliged to
sail; although they durst not venture out into the
open sea, but coasted round the shores, at the risk of
being dashed in pieces upon jutting rocks, or stranded
upon banks of coral. They had paid the matter for
their passage, immediately after agreeing for it. But,
according to the custom of the country, they were
obliged to give an acknowledgement to the sailors
before going on board, which, in other places, is not
expected till passengers be leaving the vessel.

To avoid any disagreeable encounters with the other

passengers, our adventurers had taken care to go
first on board. They had yet several days to wait,
till the governor should inspect the ships, to see
whether they were not overladen. This duty he
never fails to perform; for a sum of money is payable
to him from each vessel, upon the occasion, which
constitutes a part of his revenue.

At length, after all these delays, the four ships
weighed anchor about midnight, on the 10th of Oc-
tober. The side upon which they passed would have
been dangerous, if the wind had not been favourable;
for it is covered all over with coral rocks. The ships
cast anchor every night; and they had then liberty to
go on shore, if they chose to run the hazard, in order
to see any object of curiosity.

The harbour, in which they happened to cast an-
chor, was once a place of some consideration; but
the small fort of Kalla and Tor is now ruinous, and
without a garrison. In its neighbourhood, however,
are some remarkable villages, the inhabitants of which,
as of all this barren coast, live by fishing.

The inhabitants of Beled-en-Nassara are Greek
Christians. In the neighbourhood is a convent, but
only a single ecclesiastic in it. At Bir is a well, the
water of which is better than at Naba, but not equal
to what the Arabs bring upon camels from the hills.
All the pilots who sail between Suez and Jidda, live
in the village of Jebil. Each of these pilots receive
five hundred crowns for the voyage; and gains some-
thing, besides, in the course of it, by instructing young
persons who accompany him, to learn his art, which
consists merely in distinguishing where the sand-banks
and beds of coral lie.

Mr. Forkal went on shore to visit the pretended
Valley of Elim. The ecclesiastic belonging to the
Greek convent, sent a guide to conduct him thither.
He found it overgrown with date-trees. As he did
not immediately return, a report arose in the vessel,
that he had been detained by the Arabs, for attempt-
ing to take draughts of their hills. Some merchants,
who were also janissaries, set instantly out, to relieve
and bring him back. Happily, the report turned out
to have been false; and Mr. Forkal returned, without
having met with any unpleasant accident.

They continued, till they had failed as far as Ras-
Mahommed, to cast anchor every night. But, be-
tween that cape and the coast of Arabia, they had to
cross the Red Sea at its full breadth. The Europeans
think this the safest route, as there is not, through
the whole, one rock on which a ship can be wrecked:
but the Turks think themselves undone whenever
they lose sight of land.

So many misfortunes happen, indeed, from the ig-
norance of their seamen, that they have reason for
their fears. Out of four vessels that had set out rather
too late in the foregoing year, two had perished in
these latitudes.

In their passage, they found themselves in danger
of a worse misfortune than shipwreck. The females,
who were lodged under them, more than once suffered
linen, which they were drying, to catch fire, in con-
sequence of which the vessel must have been burnt, if
our adventurers had not been alarmed by their
screams, and hastened to their assistance. The se-
cond time when this happened, their captain was
enraged, and sent down an inferior officer into the
seraglio, to beat the women for their carelessness.
The infliction of this punishment produced, at first,
no small noise among them; but it was followed by
four and twenty hours of a sweet silence. Those wo-
men were indeed extremely troublesome and indis-
creet. Hearing their voices so very near them, our
hero was tempted to look through a chink, and saw
three or four of them naked and bathing.

Nothing remarkable appeared upon the track by
which they sailed, unless a few small and desert islands,
and the summits of some distant hills. The last objects
that remained within their view upon the coast of
Egypt, were the famous mountains of emeralds, called
by the Arabs Jibbel Sumrud.

On the 17th of October, an eclipse of the sun happened, which had been foretold to the captain by Mr. Forkal. He shewed this phenomenon through glasses to the captain and the principal merchants, with which they were much pleased; for, among the Mahometans, a person who can predict an eclipse, passes for a universal scholar, and especially for a very skilful physician. Mr. Forkal was consulted by several of the passengers, who fancied themselves suddenly sick. He mentioned some harmless medicines to them, and recommended exercise and a peculiar regimen. At length, one of the pilgrims complaining that he could not see by night, he facetiously advised him to light a candle. This humorous prescription did him better service than the most profound skill in medicine could have done. Those Mussulmans were pleased to find him thus accommodate himself to their manners, and became very fond of him.

When they came near to the small isle of Kaffani, the Turks began to express their joy at having escaped the dangers of such a passage, and having to nearly reached the coast of Arabia. Cannons and muskets were fired; the ship and the boats were illuminated with lamps and lanterns; and all was exultation and jollity. The sailors went round with a box, asking a dole from the passengers; every one gave some trifle; and they then threw into the sea,—not the money,—but the box in which they had collected it.

Continuing their course, they incurred considerable danger, in doubling a cape surrounded with banks of coral, because their pilot was drunk. He had frequently asked for brandy, on pretence that he could not see the hills, or the outline of the coast, unless his sight were cleared by the drinking of a little strong liquor. They had refused him, for fear of giving offence to the other Mussulmans; but they soon saw that they are not so scrupulous, for the captain sent to them every morning for a quarter of a bottle of brandy for his pilot. The Greek merchants might perhaps have made him drunk, by adding to the dose which he received daily from the Europeans.

They arrived soon after at Jambo, a walled town near the sea, and having a safe harbour. Not having seen a single house since they had left Tor, they felt no small pleasure at the sight of Jambo.

Such as meant to take Medina, on their way to Mecca, went on shore here. Three of their party also landed, and took their sabres in their hands, like the other passengers. An inhabitant of Jambo, supposing them Turks, gave them the salutation of peace, and entered familiarly into conversation with them. But learning that they were Franks, he became vexed at having profaned his form of salutation, by addressing it to Christians, and passionately railed at the insolent audacity of these infidels, who dared to wear arms in Arabia. But the other Arabs not seconding his complaint, their fellow-travellers came on board, without meeting with any other unpleasant accident.

After stopping for one day in this harbour, they proceeded upon their voyage, retiring by degrees from the coast, near which many beds of coral rocks were scattered. They had an opportunity of seeing the town of Mastura, which stands at the foot of a hill of the same name. They doubled cape Wardan; and anchored near Rabogh, a permanent habitation of a body of Arabs, who live there in tents. They purchased from them a plentiful stock of provisions.

Pilgrims, in their first journey to Mecca, are obliged to assume the Ihram immediately after passing Cape Wardan, if the state of their health permit. This is a piece of linen, which is wrapped round the loins. The rest of the body is naked; and in this state they proceed through the rest of the pilgrimage, till they have visited the Kaaba. The only other garment they are suffered to wear, is a linen cloth upon the shoulders, which hangs down in the fashion of a scarf. But many, under pretext of indisposition, retained their ordinary dress. Others, more devout, assumed the Ihram, although they had been formerly at

Mecca; so that by the evening, they saw most of those Mussulmans dressed in a garb different from what they had worn in the morning.

On the 29th of October, they arrived in the harbour of Jidda. The same reason which had induced them to enter the ship before the other passengers, disposed them to remain in it till they had all gone on shore. Every one was eager to get away with his goods as soon as possible, and to conceal them as much as he could from the officers of the customs. They were particularly at pains to conceal their ready money, which pays two and a half per cent. duty. One of the passengers failed in this attempt; for his purse burst as he entered the boat, and his crowns fell into the sea. Those who defraud the customs, suffer no confiscation of their goods upon detection; they are only laughed at. In several places in Turkey, those detected in these practices are compelled to pay double duties.

All who had been this way in the former year, and were now returning from the city, complained bitterly of the hardships with which they had been treated by the custom-house officers. Our travellers were therefore perplexed about their ready money, not that they were unwilling to pay the duties, but they were afraid of being plundered by the Arabs. As the Mahometans are unacquainted with the use of letters of exchange, they had been obliged to carry with them in Venetian sequins, the whole sum that they intended to expend on their journey. After various thoughts, they resolved to put their money in the bottom of their medicine-chest, reserving only two hundred sequins, where they expected the officers of the customs to search. The stratagem succeeded; and no person offered to move their medicines.

We entered Jidda under strong apprehensions of ill-treatment from its inhabitants. Recollecting with what contempt Christians are regarded at Cairo, and how their companions had been insulted by the Arab at Jambo; they feared, that they might experience still more of the inhospitable insolence of the Mussulmans, as they approached nearer to their holy cities. But they found themselves agreeably disappointed. The inhabitants of Jidda, who are much accustomed to Christian merchants in the European dress, were not struck with any thing strange in their appearance, and did not seem to take much notice of them. They went freely to the coffee-houses and markets, without suffering any insults. But they understood, that none except Mussulmans, are permitted to pass through the gate that opens towards Mecca, or even to approach it; and kept therefore carefully at a distance from that gate, lest they might be discovered.

Their letters of recommendation were of great use to them. Mr. Gehler had been personally acquainted with the Pacha of Jidda, at Constantinople, and had accordingly recommended them to him. They had letters from two considerable merchants at Cairo to two of the principal merchants in Jidda. A poor Schiech had given them one to the Kiaja, the Pacha's lieutenant: a recommendation from which they had not expected much, but which was, nevertheless, of more service to them than all the rest. This Schiech was secretary to one of the principal members of the academy of Jamea-el-Ashar, at Cairo. He had been born in European Turkey, and having often heard of the superiority of the European Christians in matters of science, came frequently to see our travellers, and was eager to receive information from them. He was a truly worthy man, perfectly free from superstition, and a friend to the whole human race. Mr. Niebuhr and Mr. Forkal instructed him in the elements of botany and astronomy. He was very useful to them in the Arabic language, and explaining to them many things of which they must otherwise have remained ignorant. In his youth, he had given the Kiaja some lessons. He had written, without Mr. Niebuhr's knowledge, by the last caravan, to prepossess his old friend in our hero's favour: and gave him besides, this letter.

ing, they saw most of a garb different from morning.

they arrived in the harbor which had induced the other passengers, till they had all gone on to get away with his to conceal them as officers of the customs, to conceal their ready half per cent. duty, in this attempt; for his coat, and his crowns fell upon detection; they several places in Turkey, are compelled to pay

in the former year, and the city, complained but which they had been treated. Our travellers were their ready money, not by the duties, but they by the Arabs. As the with the use of letters obliged to carry with the whole sum that they journey. After various their money in the bot. referring only two hun- of the officers of the tagem succeeded; and medicines.

strong apprehensions of us. Recollecting with regarded at Cairo, and in insulted by the Arab they might experience influence of the Mussul- rarer to their holy cities, greably disappointed, are much accustomed European dress, were ge in their appearance, notice of them. They and markets, without understood, that none ted to pass through the a, or even to approach ly at a distance from discovered.

ation were of great up- personally acquainted onstantinople, and had m to him. They had merchants at Cairo to ts in Jidda. A poor the Kiaja, the Pacha's n from which they had was, nevertheless, of the rest. This Schiech principal members of the Cairo. He had been n having often heard ean Christians in mar- y to see our travellers, nation from them. He sely free from supersti- ble human race. M. ructed him in the ele- ge. He was very useful e, and explaining to y must otherwise have th, he had given the written, without M. ll caravan, to prepos- favour; and gave him

As they had not time to deliver all their letters with their own hands, they sent those to the two merchants by their servant, in hopes that they might find them lodgings, but when the people understood that there were so many, they excused themselves, alleging that it was not possible to find a house large enough. Had they been fewer, they might have taken chambers in the public Kan. Their Greek servant, when they were thus at a loss for lodgings, applied to one of his countrymen, who was goldsmith to the Sheriffe of Mecca, and in great credit with the principal men in the city. This goldsmith informed him, that the Kiaja, having had previous intimation of their coming, had given him orders to do them any service in his power. He even offered them the use of his own house for a night, and promised them a whole house to themselves the next day.

Upon receiving this notice, they went instantly to deliver the Schiech a letter to the Kiaja; who received them with great politeness. They went frequently afterwards to see him; and in their answers to his questions concerning the customs and manners of Europe, they communicated to him and his friends, more just and favourable ideas of the Europeans, than they seemed to have before entertained. The Arabs consider them in the same light in which they regard the Chinese. They esteem themselves the more enlightened and ingenious people; and think they do the Europeans great honour, when they rank them in the second place. The Kiaja was fond of conversing about astronomy. Mr. Forstkal, who often visited him, persuaded him to form a garden for plants near his own house, and to bring from the interior parts of the country, the shrub which produces the balm in Mecca. The Arabs looked upon this as a happy thought; and the more so, because the balm is not to be obtained pure at Jidda, but is commonly corrupted with an intermixture of extraneous substances, before it comes there.

After a few days, they delivered their letter of recommendation to the Pacha. He had also some knowledge of astronomy, and wished to see their instruments. He thought them better than those used in the East, and shewed them to a Schiech, a learned Turk, whom he had with him. The Pacha and the Schiech spoke no language but the Turkish, to which M. Niebuhr was a stranger. But they had enough of interpreters; and, among others, three French and Italian renegades in the service of the Pacha. Yet they knew not the terms of science, either in their native language, or in the Turkish. Our hero could not, of consequence, make himself well understood by the Pacha; and their conversation upon these subjects was not long nor profound. With the Kiaja he was obliged to speak Arabic, which he found not a little difficult, being still ignorant of the terms of science in that language.

On the 11th of November, after hiring a house, they had their effects carried to the custom house, before they removed them into the city, and were happy to find, that they were not the less kindly dealt with for being known to the Kiaja. That officer sat in an elevated situation, with his clerks around him, and directed the goods of the merchants to be examined, piece by piece; but he was satisfied with opening their trunks, and did not make them be emptied. The officers of the customs expect a gratuity when they behave with discretion. The Sheriffe's goldsmith, who had taken upon himself the direction of their expence, gave them a trifle in their name publicly.

The news of the arrival of a party of Europeans, among whom was an astronomer, soon reached Mecca. The brother of the reigning Sheriffe was at that time advancing with an army to attack the city. With the Mahometans, an astronomer is always deemed an astrologer. The Sheriffe, therefore, directed his Greek goldsmith to inquire of M. Niebuhr whether he should remain in possession of the sovereign power, or be compelled to give place to his

brother? Our hero excused himself from returning an answer, as being ignorant of future events, and as cultivating allronomy only to improve the art of navigation. But Mr. Van Haven replied, that, of the two brothers, he who bore the greater resemblance to Hassan, the founder of the family, should remain victorious. This response turned out the more happily, that the reigning Sheriffe was enabled to maintain himself upon the throne.

A nobleman in Jidda asked M. Niebuhr to discover to him the thief who had stolen two hundred sequins which he had lost. He alleged the same excuse as in the former case. The nobleman then applied to a famous Schiech, who was a better astrologer. The Schiech gathered all his servants, ranged them in a line, and, after a long prayer, made each of them take into his mouth a bit of folded paper, telling them, that they who were innocent might swallow it with safety, but that the guilty person would be choaked by it. They all swallowed the paper, save one, who, being thus surpris'd and embarrassed, confessed the theft, and made restitution.

Jidda was surrounded with walls by the sultan El Guri, sovereign of Egypt, in the year 1514, to protect it from the Portuguese, then beginning to become formidable on the Red Sea. Those walls are still standing, but are now for ruinous, that a person may, in many places, enter over them on horseback. The bridge is in an equally deseneck's state; a ruinous battery, with one dismounted cannon, is all that remains to shelter it. Some cannons before the palace of the Pacha, are good for nothing but to return the salute of ships which enter the harbour. This palace is but an indifferent building, like the houses of the other Pachas through the Ottoman empire. In the city, however, are several fine buildings of coral stone. But the other houses are slight wooden fabrics, like the ordinary dwellings of the Arabs through the country. The city is entirely destitute of water. The inhabitants have none to drink, but what is collected by the Arabs, in reservoirs among the hills, and brought by them from thence upon camels.

All of distinction here dress nearly as the Turks in Cairo; but the poorer fort wear only a shirt without breeches. The Bedouins in the neighbourhood wear only the Ibbraun upon their loins. The dress of the women among the lower ranks is the same which is worn by the Arabian females in general; large drawers, a flowing shirt, and a veil. Many of the poorer people are employed in fishing, by which they seem to earn but a bare subsistence.

The country lying immediately around this city, is sandy and barren. If one may believe tradition, these regions have undergone no change since the creation; for the tomb of Eve is still shewn in a spot at no great distance from the sea. But, M. Niebuhr remarked some sure indications of the sea having receded from the surface of the land here as well as in other places. At a certain distance from the shore, are hills entirely composed of coral-rock, and having a perfect resemblance to the banks of coral lying along the coast.

As he was walking by the harbour, he had an opportunity of observing a singular practice, which the Arabs use for taking up wild ducks. The person who is in search of the game, strips, puts sea-weeds upon his head, and approaches the bird. The duck, not being alarmed at the sight of the sea-weeds, flirs not till the Arab seizes it by the feet.

Jidda has always been a part of the dominions of the Sheriffe of Mecca. A Pacha is sent by the Turkish Sultan to this city, but he is not the absolute sovereign, for the supreme authority is shared between the Sheriffe and the Turkish Governor, which latter is changed every year, and sometimes refuses to obey the Pacha. Though the trade of Jidda is considerable, yet this city is no more than a mart between Egypt and India. No money is coined in this province; the specie current is all foreign, and the same as at Constantinople and Cairo.

C H A P. IV.

Departure from Jidda—Description of the Vessel in which they take their Passage—Their Voyage—Anchor near Obofude—Pois within Sight of Hali—Interview with some Arabs—Stop at a Mountain called Komeid-el-Hali—Lobeia—Adventures there—Description of the Place—Inhabitants, &c.—Departure—Route by Tehams—Country Observations.

IT being their intention to proceed immediately to Yeme, nothing detained them at Jidda but the prevalence of the north wind, which kept back the arrival of the ships going thither for coffee; for there were none else with which they could continue their voyage to the south of the Arabic gulf. At last, some of those vessels arrived in the beginning of December; and they were advised to take their passage in a ship from Maskate bound to Hodeida, for a cargo of coffee.

They went in haste to see this vessel, but were not a little surprised to find it more like a hoghead than a ship. It was only seven fathoms long, by three in breadth; it had no deck; its planks were extremely thin, and seemed to be only nailed together, but not pitched. The captain wore nothing but a linen cloth upon his loins; and his sailors, who were nine in number, and all black slaves from Africa or Malabar, had nothing to cover their nakedness, but about an hand's-breadth of linen, bound upon their haunches with a cord. Being persuaded not to believe at appearances, they agreed with the master, for their passage to Hodeida; as the Arabs of Maskate are esteemed good sailors, and manage their sails like European mariners; but the subjects of the Inam are very unskillful navigators, and use mats for sails, which it is very difficult to manage.

Their first intention had been, to go straightly sea to Mokha, as they hoped that some English vessels might be found there. But they were told, that this passage would be extremely tedious, and that they might travel more agreeably by land, and could meet with no molestation in the dominions of the Inam. However, the danger of living among Arabs, whom they represented to themselves such as those whom they had seen in the desert, still dwelt upon their imagination. But their friends considered them, that their fears were groundless; and they were accordingly determined to land at Lobeia, or rather at Hodeida, as they should thus begin the passage to travell to Zandab the Upper. The Kapit gave them leave to go to the Diar or governors of Hodeida and Hali; but as the merchants to whom they had been recommended, gave them orders to take of the provisions necessary for the two cities. The Pachá gave orders, that the passage should pass unexamined. They had freighted the vessel for themselves, and set out on their journey laden with goods. The merchants asked this of the captain, that they might be better supplied for their use. A small quantity of provisions was ordered to be taken, which they found here, in a straw mat, divided equally for each man and a bed upon which they might sleep if they could. Beds of mats occupied every place else, except one in the fore-cabin, which served as a kitchen. It was impossible for them to wait or take the least quantity of coffee. Mr. Chamberlains watch the night between the boards. A mat of branches of trees, which was spread all over the bottom of the vessel, to keep the goods dry. It was found unadvised, when they reached Obofude, a circumstance which proves that the powder of those vessels is more closely joined together than one would at first imagine.

They set out from Jidda on the fourth of December, and their captain ordered the practice of calling anchor every night; although the banks of coral are less numerous in the Farhein, than in the southern part of the Arabic gulf. If they had seen few towns, or villages between Suz and Jidda, they saw not more between Jidda and Lobeia.

Their voyage was uniformly safe and pleasant. They observed some flying fishes, which the Arabs

call sea-loccusts. On the sixth day of their voyage, they overtook a vessel belonging to Hodeida, which had sailed from Jidda three days before them. There was an influence of the flow falling of the tides of Yeme, whose mat-sails receive no little wind, that of the Arabs can scarce get out of the harbour. They saw also several small vessels, which proceeded in a manner, as to shew themselves to be managed by men of much more spirit than the Turkish sailors.

After seven days sailing, they anchored near Obofude, a considerable city, but consisting merely of huts. It belongs to the Sheriffs of Mecca, and is governed by one of his officers, who lives in the middle, at some distance from the city. The Sheriffs sends daily between the ville and the town, in order to attend the receipt of the customs. All the ships which are employed in carrying coffee to Jidda, anchor here, and pay a duty to the Sheriffs. There are under no necessity of stopping on the way, and the crew, however, wish to go on shore, they may obtain a general permission for the payment of their crowns.

The next morning after their departure from Obofude, where they stayed only one day, they sailed within sight of Hali, where the Sheriffs of Mecca keeps a garrison. This city is upon the sea-side of his dominions, and upon the border of the passage of Hedjra. The neighbouring Arabs belong to Yeme.

As their captain needed provisions, they had an early opportunity of forming acquaintance with the independent Arabs, who live below upon the mountains of the two Sheriffs of Mecca and Yeme. They are governed by Sheriffs, who profess the religion which I have mentioned, and their ancillaries before Mahomet arose. The captain heard it mentioned, that if the people had any more reason to appear in the clothes of travellers, the situation of their ship captain, therefore exchanged his dress for the Bedouin's modesty and simplicity, different from that of the Bedouins, who went on horseback. Some men, who had been used to wear a turban instead of a turban, they wore only a flannel cap on their head, to contain the air; and a cloth upon their shoulders, to defend their chests. Conceivably, the favour of our Europeans to be expressive of respect, and to find fault, they threw down their faces, and that they had nothing to fear.

As they wished to procure provisions, they returned on their tents. As they approached, two men came out to meet them, and hospitably offered them some of the Bedouins, who kill their heads and arms. These women wore turbans upon their heads, their eyes were blacked with lead ore; and they had black spots impressed, as ornaments, upon their cheeks, and chin. Those beauties, whose complexion was a yellowish brown, and who were almost naked, came hardy asked them for tobacco, to blacken their eyes, and for Filon, to make their nails yellow. They were not a little surprised, that they had gotten tobacco, which they had not with them, and which they might have been enabled to get, if they had eagerly of those fair ones to drink, and to buy them with powerful aids to their eyes. They engaged our heroes with milk and butter, and gave them goat skins, and gave them bad bread with their daunties. They were not displeas'd their paying them before-hand. Although the Bedouins in the desert, they seemed to our people more civilized than most of the other Bedouin tribes.

The next day, after this interview, they had their tents mounted

mountain called Konembel, situate in the middle of the sea, and said by the Arabs to have been originally a volcano. It may possibly be the remains of that burning island which is placed by Arrian and Ptolemy in these latitudes. They saw, likewise, not far off, the city of Gesfan, situate upon a tongue of land, on the coast; but they did not venture to approach it; for the Sheriffe to whom it belongs bears the character of being inhospitable to strangers.

They arrived in the harbour of Loheia, December 29, and call anchor within a league of the town. Dola, or Emir, is the title which the Arabs give to the governors of cities. He of Loheia was an Emir, and his name was Farhan. He was a native of Africa, and entirely black; but had been brought into Arabia in his youth, and sold to a man of rank, who was since dead, after having occupied one of the first offices in the service of the Imam. He had given young Farhan a good education, and had obtained for him a small office, in which he gave so much satisfaction, that his merit soon raised him to be Dola of a considerable city.

Our travellers found him to possess the dignified politeness of a nobleman, the strictest integrity, and the candid benevolence of a true friend to mankind. They explained to him their situation; and told him that they were Europeans, and wished to go by Hodeida to Mokha, where they hoped to find some English ships, in which they might take their passage to India; but being strangers to the country through which they were to travel, had brought a letter to him from the Kiaja of Jidda, and another from one of the principal merchants in Jidda to Mæchsen-el-Makka-wisch, the chief merchant in Loheia. The Emir had known a good many Europeans, or Franks, at Mokha, but had never before seen any arrayed in the garb of the East, which is, however, universally worn by the Oriental Christians. The Mussulmans regard Christians with greater esteem than those of any other religious community except their own. When they were asked, therefore, by Emir Farhan, whether they were Franks or Nazarites, they replied that they were both; fearing that he might perhaps take the Europeans for Pagans. Mæchsen, the merchant was then sick; but the Emir lent for his clerk to receive the letter addressed to him.

Hitherto, this governor had known no Europeans but India merchants. I was surprised, when he understood, from the letters, that one of our travellers was a physician; another in search of plants; and a third, an observer of stars. Struck with this singularity, and supposing that they might not be in very great haste, he proposed to them to stay some time at Loheia, offering to send them to Mokha upon his own camels. Mæchsen, the merchant, who needed a physician, earnestly invited them, at the same time, to take up their lodgings in one of his houses.

They were delighted thus to find the Arabs more civilized the further they proceeded from Egypt, and to meet with so polite a reception among the people who were the objects of their inquiries. They were still more delighted to find that people themselves contributing to afford them opportunities of traversing their country unsuspected. To hide their joy at the proposal, they expressed their fears of danger in travelling so near the seat of the war between the Scheich of Mekkrani and the Sheriffe of Abut-Arisch. But the Emir assured them, that they should be safe from all danger at Loheia, and might travel in full security through the whole territories of his master the Imam.

They no longer hesitated to quit the vessel. The captain, not having taken the precaution to exact payment for their passage, when they came first on board, now applied to the governor, begging him to compel them to pay in full for their passage to Hodeida. The Emir generously replied, that he would pay his demand from his own purse, if they refused; and the merchant Mæchsen made the same promise. They did not put the generosity of their Arabian

friends to the trial; but felt themselves deeply indebted to them for their offers and services.

When they spoke of the conveyance of their baggage to the shore, the Emir sent his own boat for it; and, to spare them all trouble, directed the merchant's clerk to satisfy the officers of the customs. In the evening, he sent them an excellent sheep, as a present of welcome, and accompanied it with a letter, in which he called them his guests, and assured them of his friendship. His boat having only mat-fails, moved so slowly, that they could not bring all their effects on shore in one day, which gave them some concern, lest they might lose what remained behind, or be robbed of what lay on the shore. The Emir understanding that they were uneasy upon this head, immediately sent some soldiers to guard their baggage.

They passed the night on the shore, whither their good friend Mæchsen, who very naturally supposed that their cooking utensils must be yet in confusion, sent them an excellent supper. Nothing was wanting but wine; and their stock of bad brandy, which they had brought from Jidda, was by this time finished. They might have supplied themselves with wine, and other liquors, from the Jews of Sana, who manufacture large quantities of those articles: but then they should have been obliged to carry them in copper vessels, which would have rendered them noxious to the health. They offered them a sort of bowza, which they found nauseous. They were therefore obliged to content themselves with the prospect of living without strong liquors of any kind for some months.

Their trunks were carried next day to the custom-house: they were opened; and they were afraid that they might be strictly examined. But the custom-house officers behaved with great civility. The Emir's attention was fixed upon their instruments solely, and he seemed anxious to understand the use of them: they therefore explained to him whatever he wished to know.

The house assigned them for a lodging was built in the Eastern fashion, with a square court in the middle. There was not one well-furnished room in it; yet it consisted of several distinct apartments, into which the entrance was through an open gallery, which extended all around it. This lodging was far from being elegant, in comparison with the splendid inns in Europe; but in Arabia, it was both elegant and commodious. At first, their court was constantly filled with crowds of people, curious to see them. This they found troublesome; and therefore hired a porter, who suffered none to enter, but persons who had business to transact with them.

The territory of Loheia is arid and barren. The harbour is so indifferant, that even the smallest vessels are obliged to anchor at a great distance from the city: and when the tide is at ebb, laden boats cannot approach near it. Notwithstanding this disadvantage, a considerable trade in coffee is carried on from Loheia; the coffee is brought from the neighbouring hills, and exported in one large heap for sale. This coffee is not reputed to be so good as that which comes from Bout-el-Fakih, and is shipped at Mokha and Hodeida. But coffee is to be purchased here upon more reasonable terms; and the carriage to Jidda costs less. On this account, several merchants from Cairo live at Loheia, and others come annually hither to make purchases of coffee. In this city, are also forty poor Banians, employed in different trades.

Loheia, although without walls, is not entirely defenceless. Twelve towers, guarded by soldiers, stand at equal distances round it. These towers resemble those in some of the imperial cities of Germany; the height of its gates renders it necessary to climb upon them upon ladders. In Turkey, and even in Europe, it would have been dangerous to approach near such fortifications, in order to examine them. But the Arab guards sat smoking their pipes, and drinking Kifeher, and gave M. Niebuhr no interruption in his walks about them. Some of the officers even invited him to sit down and partake of their refreshments.

their house, in order to
and hearing them. He
them that he had no
a diversity of religions
ator of all. After some
will, to see their violins,
n. They played some
re to the table of the
He seemed to be pleas-
half a crown at parting,
however small, and he
our travellers declined
as he could not con-
person could have to
it. This merchant was
his beards dyed red; a
approved by the more
was, that a red beard
one; but others said,
sink to conceal his age
M. Niebuhr that he
; but his acquaintance
They had observed of
however, that they fel-
ly. They reckon by
in their lives, and say,
ent happened, or when
province or city.
large veils in the street,
s to entirely, that only
covered, and that but
difficulty of unveiling
especially if they hap-
and are sure that they
in countrymen
med words of notice
of I, our adventures
worse than our
waste of
to the
to the
I know, was
They told Emir, a
inate business trans-
were newly arriv-
to get out for Beit-
to the time, to consi-
le answered, that they
our entertainment at
not think of quiting it
could take more con-
After convincing him
a necessity of seeing
for their departure.
of their friend Emir
they could not see
they had determin-
would come to him
y found him in com-
of silk, with twenty
their physician; and
to accept, in order to
camels. He and his
surprise, when they sav-
read of refusing, Fur-
and such gratities.
burthenome to the
cept of nothing from
expense. They made
which, having never
to know how to na-
who was settled at
every day. They
his good governor
uggage, and horses for
ns are not prohibited
n rarely he had for
selling here; is upon
age, strong, spirited,
and

and walk with a pace, not the most pleasant to the rider.
Travelling being as little exposed to danger in Yem-
men, as in any other country in the world, they did
not need to wait for the setting out of any caravan.
They therefore left Loheia alone, on the 20th of Feb-
ruary 1793, sending the camels before, and follow-
ing them within a few hours upon their asses.
The territory of Yemen is naturally divided into
two distinct provinces. That part which borders on
the Arabic gulf is a sandy plain, which, as it spreads
backward, rises by a gradual ascent, into hills, and
terminates in a lofty range of mountains. The plain
is called T'ehama. They had to cross it in their way
to Beit-el-Fakih.
In the first day of their journey, they travelled
through a parched and barren tract of country, along
an arm of the sea, which penetrates a considerable
way into the land. They rested in a coffee-house
situate near a village. Mokeya is the name given by
the Arabs to such coffee-houses, which stand in the
open country, and are intended, like inns, for the
accommodation of travellers. They are mere huts,
and are scarcely furnished with a Serir, or long seat
of straw ropes; nor do they afford any refreshment
but Kischeh, a hot infusion of coffee-beans. This
drink is served out in coarse earthen cups; but per-
sons of distinction carry always porcelain cups in their
baggage. Fresh water is distributed gratis. The mas-
ter of the coffee-house lives commonly in some neigh-
bouring village, whence he comes every day to wait
for passengers.
After a journey of six German miles, they arrived
by midnight, at a large city in which a Sub-Dola re-
sides, with a few soldiers. Emir Farhan had given
them a letter to the deputy-governor, with an order
to the inhabitants to supply them with a sheep, which,
however, they did not choose to accept. But they
came afterwards to understand, that the inhabitants
had been obliged to pay a sum of money equivalent
to the value of the sheep, which had been shared be-
tween the Sub-Dola and a servant of the Emir's who
accompanied them upon business of his own. In the
other villages through which they passed, therefore,
they made no difficulty of accepting the sheep which
the Emir had ordered them.
Through the whole country, they found water
scarce and bad. But they met with many large vil-
lages, less distant from one another than they should
have expected in so barren a plain. Menegre is one
of those villages, of which they were led to take par-
ticular notice, by finding in it the first Mansale that
they saw. This is a house in which travellers are re-
ceived and entertained gratis, if they will be content
with such treatment as is usual in the country; they
are all lodged in one common apartment, which is
furnished with a Serir, and are served with Kischeh,
hot millet bread, camels milk and butter. When the
master of this Mansale understood that some Europe-
an guests were arrived, he came to see whether his
servants treated them properly; and was going to kill
a sheep for their entertainment, if they had stayed
longer. He caused wheat bread to be baked for them,
which is in this province very rare; and made them
bring cow-milk, when he saw them nauseate the vil-
lity of the camel's milk. The Arabian servant told
M. Niebuhr that he might be disoblige, if he should
offer any compensation for his kind hospitality; but
the attendant who served them with those things, took
an opportunity, in a place where he could not be seen
by his master, to ask a small gratuity.
At Dabhi, a large village, where is a mosque, the
tomb of a saint, and several houses built of stone, they
stayed a whole day. Near this, they saw a tannery,
and a manufacture of earthen ware, which is prepared
in the open air, and without a furnace. They saw,
likewise, indigo manufactured here; it is sold at a
cheap rate, but is of a bad quality. Much of this dy-
ing stuff is used here; for the women, among the
common people, wear blue shirts and drawers.

From this village, there is a direct road leading to
Beit-el-Fakih. But the tract of country through
which it passes, is extremely arid, and almost unin-
habited, and affords scarcely any water. They there-
fore preferred a longer road, nearer the mountains,
and found reason to be pleased with their choice; for
they met with several small woods, a number of vil-
lages skirted with bushes, and many wells, which were
from an hundred and sixty, to an hundred and seven-
ty feet deep; but happily for both men and beasts, dug
in sloping ground; for, as the water is to be raised by
a cord dragging a leathern bucket, this is more easily
accomplished in a going down hill, than if the ground
were barely level, or an ascent were to be climbed.
They passed two large villages, under the jurisdic-
tion of the governor of Beit-el-Fakih; but in neither
of these did any thing remarkable offer itself to their
observation. But in two places upon this journey,
they saw spots scattered with small villages, bearing
all the same name; from which they were led to think
that some small detached tribes might have settled,
each in a particular district of this province. They
passed also two of those vallies so common in Arabia,
which, when heavy rains fall, are filled with water,
and are then called rivers, although perfectly dry at
other times of the year.
After resting a night in one of those wretched cof-
fee-houses, they arrived, in the morning of the 25th
of February at Beit-el-Fakih, and had their trunks
sent immediately to the custom-house; but they were
not inspected till noon, and then in the presence of
the Dola. They, in the mean time, delivered letters
of recommendation from Machesen of Loheia, to
Ambar Seif, one of the principal merchants in Beit-
el-Fakih. This worthy man received them in a very
obliging manner, hired them a house, saw their effects
carried thither, and invited them to dine with him,
till they could have matters put into order in their
own habitation.
The city of Beit-el-Fakih is situated on a plain,
which, although far from being naturally fertile, is,
however, carefully cultivated. The houses join not
one to another, but are built separate. Many are of
stone; and the mode of building is every day improv-
ing. In the city of Beit-el-Fakih is a citadel, which
is thought of the utmost importance in a country
where armies are without artillery.
The house which our travellers occupied was a
building of stone; but the proprietor had been dis-
lodged by a species of ants, named by the Arabs,
Aid. These ants, which are well known to naturalists,
form covert ways, through which they introduce
themselves into houses, where they destroy equally
cloths and provisions of all kinds. They are not less
troublesome in gardens, where they also form their
covert ways, between the root and the top of trees,
wasting the sap, and devouring the buds and the ex-
tremities of the branches. Their chambers were full
of them. They took the measures which are ordina-
rily employed, to quit themselves of them: destroying
their cells and passages several times successively. The
insect indeed restores these with amazing rapidity, es-
pecially in the dark; but it at length yields. On their
way hither, they had observed a number of bushes
covered with earth, in which was a vast quantity of
galleries formed by those little animals. The shrub
which they had attacked in this manner was always
withered.
The city of Beit-el-Fakih is not of ancient origin.
It has existed only for some centuries; and, like
Loheia, owes its rise to a saint, called Achmed-iba-
Musa, from whom it has derived its name; Beit-el-
Fakih meaning the house or dwelling of the sage.
The tomb of that saint is shewn without the city, up-
on a sandy hill, where a fine mosque has been reared.
At first, some devout persons built themselves cot-
tages round the tomb. The harbour of Ghalefka was
about the same time choaked up; and the inhabitants
of that city, for the convenience of trade, then re-
moved a their effects to the vicinity of this tomb,
and

and settled about it. When it had thus become a considerable city, the lord of the territory built a citadel for its defence, in a place where water had been found. The city is now nearer the tomb: and the vicinity of the tomb is almost deserted.

So modern a city cannot contain many antiquities of an intertelling nature. Yet M. Niebuhr copied here an ancient Kufic inscription, in the presence of many spectators, none of whom suspected him, as the Egyptians had done, of any intention to seek out and pilfer their treasures. They were all very obliging, and especially the Schieche, or learned Arabs, who seemed pleased that strangers should shew a desire to acquire their language. In this city, as well as in Loheia, he obtained much information from a class of Arab literati, who often visited them. These are denominated Fakih, and no where through Arabia do their circumstances appear to correspond to their merit.

The city of Beit-el-Fakih is in a favourable situation for trade; being only half a day's journey from the hills in which the coffee grows, and but a few days journey from the harbours of Loheia, Hodcida, and Mokha, from which this commodity is exported, it naturally becomes the most considerable mart for it. This trade brings hither merchants from Egypt, Syria, Barbary, Persia, Habbesch, India, and often from Europe. Here are also, as in all the other great towns in Arabia, a number of Banians, all of them natives of Diu, who are allowed the free exercise of their religion. Yet they dare not bring their women hither, nor burn their dead: and these prohibitions induce them to return to their native country, as soon as they have accumulated a little fortune.

Beit-el-Fakih is the residence of a Dola, whose jurisdiction extends over a large district. This Dola seemed to take little concern about our travellers, and his indifference left them more at liberty than they had been at Loheia; for, unincumbered with attendants, and unmolested with civilities, they travelled about the country whenever they liked.

Thus enabled to travel in safety through all Tehama, M. Niebuhr first resolved to go by Ghalefka, and perform this expedition in as simple a guise as possible, and without any appearance of splendour or opulence that might prove a temptation to robbers. He hired an afs; and its owner agreed to follow him as his servant, on foot. A turban, a great coat wanting the sleeves, a shirt, linen drawers, and a pair of slippers, were all the dress that he wore. It being the fashion of the country to wear arms in travelling, he carried a sabre, and two pistols hung by his girdle. A piece of an old carpet was his saddle, and served him likewise for a seat, a table, and various other purposes. To cover him at night, he had the linen cloak which the Arabs wrap about their shoulders, to shelter them from the sun and rain. A bucket of water, an article of indispensable necessity to a traveller in these arid regions, hung by his saddle. He

had for some time endeavoured to suit himself to the Arabian manner of living, and now could spare many conveniences to which he had been accustomed in Europe, and could content himself with bad bread, the only article to be obtained in most of the inns.

March the 7th, he set out from Beit-el-Fakih; and, before he had travelled a mile, saw several villages; but, upon all the rest of the way to Ghalefka, which is four miles and a half, he perceived not a single dwelling, nor any mark of human industry, but a few wells. For the two last miles, the way lies through so sandy a tract, that his guide often lost himself; such are the continual changes which the wind produces on the scenery, by demolishing the hillock, carrying the sand about, and forming others. They were even obliged to turn several times out of what they knew to be the true direction, in order to avoid being buried in some of those hillocks which were then forming. Ghalefka is at the same distance from Zebid as from Beit-el-Fakih. It was once a famous city; and the sea-port town of Zebid was then in an equally flourishing condition. That harbour is now filled up, so that no ship, of however small burthen, can enter it: not only has the sea receded, while the banks of coral have been augmented, but a quantity of sand has been here accumulated by the winds, which actually rises into a hill of considerable height. The ruins of a mosque are still to be seen here, which was dedicated to a saint, who, as is said, by his prayers, obtained from Heaven an excellent spring of water, for which the inhabitants believe, that they ought still to be grateful to him. About a score of cottages now hold all the inhabitants of this once flourishing city; and dates, with the milk and flesh of a few sheep, are all the provisions they have. The sea affords them no fish, nor any thing else, but salt, of which every person may have as much as he pleases, upon paying a small fee to the Dola of Beit-el-Fakih's secretary.

In a burying place near this poor village, M. Niebuhr found two stones bearing Kufic inscriptions; one of them was large, and stood on end; the other lay flat upon a tomb, and was but small. The inhabitants could not comprehend for what reason he was so eager to copy the inscriptions from the larger stone; but when he returned next day to do the same for that upon the smaller stone, he found it to have been carried away in the night. He applied to the Hakim or judge of the village, and offered him a trifle if he could procure him another sight of it. The judge led him through many turnings and windings to a poor hut, in which was the tomb of another saint; and there they found the stone that our hero was in search of; by his account of the matter, it had not been hidden by the inhabitants, but the saint had brought it thither himself. Notwithstanding the saint's care of it, the Hakim offered Niebuhr this stone with him to Beit-el-Fakih, if he would be at the expence of having it conveyed.

C H A P. V.

Excursions of M. NIEBUHR—Departure from Ghalefka—Arrives at Hodcida, where he finds his Friends—Departs for Zebid—Reaches El-Mohel—Remarks—Arrival at Zebid—Description of it—Our Hero meets a vain ignorant Man—Reaches Tabete—Observations thereon—Departure—Sets out for Kabbme—Searches for Antiquities after his Arrival—His Return—Joins Mr. FORSKAL, &c. in a Journey to Coffee-Mountains—Remarks—Natives of Budgefa visit them—Journey through the mountainous Part of Yemen, with various Observations—Journey from Beit-el-Fakih to Mokha—From Mokha to Taes—To Sana—Translations there—Mr. FORSKAL'S Death—Return to Mokha, &c. &c.

M. NIEBUHR now left Ghalefka, with his afs and the owner. He arrived the same evening at Hodcida, which is about five German miles distant from Ghalefka.

The harbour of Hodcida is somewhat better than that of Loheia. Yet large vessels cannot enter it. The Dola of Hodcida is accountable only to the

Imam. But his jurisdiction is confined to this city. His revenues consist in part of the duties upon coffee exported. The mansion of the Dola, the custom-house, and the houses of the principal merchants are stone buildings; the rest of the town consists of huts built in the ordinary style. Near the sea, stands a small citadel, which could not prove a very strong defence.

red to suit himself to the and now could spare he had been accustomed himself with bad bread, and in most of the inns. from Beit-el-Fakih; and, in a few several villages; way to Ghalefka, which he perceived not a single human industry, but a half miles, the way lies that his guide often lost usual changes which the very, by demolishing the out, and forming others. In several times out of the direction, in order to of those hills which ca is at the same distance Fakih. It was once a port town of Zebid was g condition. That har- at no ship, of however not only has the sea real have been augmented, en here accumulated by s into a hill of consider- a mosque are still to be ed to a faint, who, as is from Heaven an excel- lich, the inhabitants be- to be grateful to him, ow hold all the inhabi- g city; and dates, with sheep, are all the provi- sors them no fish, nor which every person may upon paying a small kin's secretary. his poor village, M. Nie- ing Kufic inscriptions; flood on end; the other s but small. The inha- d for what reason he wa rptions from the larger ed next day to do the er stone, he found it to e night. He applied to village, and offered him im another fight of it. many turnings and wind- was the tomb of another the stone that our hero out of the matter, it inhabitants, but the faint f. Notwithstanding the n offered Niebuhr this h, if he would be at the ed.

ends his Friends—Departs ro meets a man loquacious ches for Amiquah; after s—Remarks—Natives tions—Journey from Beit- at's Death—Return is

is confined to this city of the duties upon col- of the Dola, the custom- the principal merchants t of the town consists of e. Near the sea, stand- not prove a very strong defence.

defence. This city has also its patron faint, Sheeh Sddik, who is honoured with due veneration.

At Hodeida, our hero found his friends Van Haven and Cramer, who had come hither to deliver two letters of recommendation, from their friends in Jidda to the Dola, and an eminent merchant in this place. They had been received, lodged, and treated in the kindest manner. But M. Niebuhr not being disposed to lose his time in visits, returned on the 9th of March, to Beit-el-Fakih.

On the road our traveller found a number of coffee-huts, but very few villages. A mile and a half from Hodeida, there is a well of excellent water, which is carried to that city for the use of the inhabitants; the water which they have nearer being very bad. As M. Niebuhr approached Beit-el-Fakih, he passed through some paltry villages; and arrived at his place of destination, on the same day upon which he had set out. The distance between Beit-el-Fakih and Hodeida, is, by his estimation, seven German miles; and his journey he performed in one day, under the most scorching heat and upon an hired ass.

Having found the Arabs very civil, and having met with no disagreeable accident in his first excursion, he was impatient to set out again. Accordingly he departed for Zebid on the 11th of March, to see the remains of that famous city, which was once the capital of Tehama; and to investigate some ancient inscriptions which were said to be concealed at Tahate, a small town in that neighbourhood. An Arab, who was learned, but poor, accompanied him in this expedition, and was glad of the opportunity of visiting an old friend at Zebid, without expence. Our hero was no less pleased to have him for the companion of his journey, as his conversation was very entertaining.

After passing by several coffee-houses, and through some small hamlets, they came to a large village called El-Mahad, standing in a beautiful valley which receives the waters that fall from Mount Reima. In the rainy season, these waters form a river which spreads into several branches, and fertilizes the adjacent lands. A large quantity of indigo grows in this valley. In this neighbourhood, too, there stood anciently a considerable city, called also El-Mahad; but of it no vestige now remains.

Near Zebid are some heaps of stones, which are said to be a part of the ruins of another large and ancient city that was called El-Haud. Our hero arrived early in the morning at Zebid; having travelled in a short time five German miles, which is the computed distance between this town and Beit-el-Fakih.

Zebid is situate near the largest and most fertile valley in all Tehama. It was dry when M. Niebuhr visited it; but, in the rainy season, a large river runs through it, and being, like the Nile, conducted by canals through the neighbouring fields, communicates to them a high degree of fertility. This was once the residence of a sovereign's residence, and the most commercial city in all Tehama. But, since the harbour of Ghalefka was choked up, its trade has been transferred to Beit-el-Fakih and Mokha; and this city now retains nothing but the shadow of its former splendour. Viewed from a distance, it appears to some advantage, by means of the mosques and kubbets, of which it is full. Several of those mosques were erected by different Pachas who reside here, during the short period while this part of Arabia was in the possession of the Ottoman Porte. At Zebid pays dear for its exterior magnificence; its inhabitants are impoverished by the numerous clergy belonging to those foundations, by whom the wealth of this place is almost wholly engrossed. M. Niebuhr was told, as a matter of certainty, that the whole revenue of the territory he considered is divided into five parts, the clergy receive three of these, the Imam one for the taxes, and the inhabitants have only one-fifth remaining for their maintenance. The Turks have left here one

useful monument of their power; an aqueduct, which conveyed water from the hills into the city. But this work has been so long neglected, that only its ruins now remain, and the inhabitants are obliged to content themselves with water from their draw-wells; which is fortunately not bad, and in such plenty as to water many fine gardens that are to be seen in the neighbourhood of the city. Abulfeda ascribes eight gates to Zebid; but of these, only five are now standing, and the river is gradually breaking down a part of them. The walls of the old city are demolished, and the very ruins are sold by poor people who gather on the stones, and sell them for building new houses. The present buildings occupy about one half of the ancient extent of the city.

Zebid is still distinguished for an academy, in which the youth of Tehama, and of a part of Yemen study such sciences as are cultivated among the Mussulmans. This is, besides, the seat of a Dola, a Musti, and a Cadi, of the sect of Schafey; and of two other Cadis of the sect of Zeidi, to which the Imam and the greater part of his subjects profess to belong.

The vainest and most foolishly loquacious man our hero ever saw, he met in an inn. He was a Sheriffe, or nobleman of the first rank; but, being poor and beggarly, travelled about the country, living at the expence of the more opulent professors of his religion. Having been in Egypt, Syria, and even Abyssinia, he boasted, that he could speak several foreign languages, although a few proverbs were all that he knew. Our traveller wished to obtain some information from him concerning the countries through which he had travelled; but he could tell nothing but the names of a vast number of Schiechs, Pachas, and Dolas, by all of whom he pretended to have been received with the honours due to a descendant of Mahomet. His son, a boy of ten years, who acted as his servant, never received any other name from him than Sheriffe Achmet. The father had hired only one Serir for his son and himself together; whereas every other traveller who is not absolutely mendicant, hires here a separate coach, jult as separate rooms are occupied by different travellers in the inns of Europe. With all those airs of greatness, he often abused his son, and called him, "Dog, son of a dog."

When M. Niebuhr had finished his researches at Zebid, he and his friends set out on the 12th of March, and after a ride of two German miles, reached Tahate, which was once a town of some magnitude, but has now dwindled to a small village. The road leads still through Wadi Zebid, the vale or the bed of the river; in which the fields had a beautiful and rich appearance, wherever they had not been encroached upon and ravaged by the torrents. Much indigo is raised here; our hero counted more than six hundred large vessels, in which this colouring matter is prepared for sale. In this village are also several mosques and houses of prayer, reared over the tombs of faints or opulent persons. Ibn Hassan is the chief of the faints. His tomb is always illuminated by night with lamps; and one of his descendants keeps a Mansafe, or house of hospitable entertainment, in the village.

Niebuhr lodged in a common inn; but the master of the Mansafe came to invite him to his house, and when he found him unwilling to remove, sent him a good supper. Our hero was told, that the masters of Mansafe accept no money; but he of Tahate did not refuse a small gratuity.

Finding nothing remarkable in this village, they set out upon the 13th of March, for Beit-el-Fakih. They saw no houses by the way except the populous village of Murra, situate in the beautiful vale El-Mahad. In this village are many Kubbets, and a large Mansafe, in which thirty or forty people are daily entertained.

On the 14th, accompanied only by the owner of the ass upon which he rode, M. Niebuhr set out for Kahme, where he expected to find some remains of antiquity

antiquity in the ruins of the city Lelue. He passed by some villages; and, nearer the mountains, villages are indeed more numerous. He also crossed a vale, through which runs a river which joins the river of Rema. In the rainy season, the latter holds its course to the sea, and enters it near Schurem.

He went, immediately after his arrival at Kabbme, to search for the antiquities of Lelue. But he found only a large burying-place, filled with pentagonal stones, each eight inches in diameter, and four or five feet long. When he saw those stones, so uniformly of this regular figure, he was at first inclined to think, that they might have received it from the hand of art. But he soon perceived a hill in the neighbourhood wholly composed of pentagonal stones, where those people had found the seemingly artificial ornaments of their burying-place. The rocks of that hill are a pile of vertical columns, of the figure and thickness above-mentioned, rising one over another, as well as spreading for some extent, in a parallel body, and seemingly joined by a sort of flight cement. He saw some other piles of rocks of the same sort, in other places through Arabia.

After examining the few curiosities which Kabbme afforded. our traveller returned to Beit-el-Fakih, purposing soon to set out on some new excursions.

During M. Niebuhr's absence, Mr. Forkal had not been idle upon the hills where the coffee is produced, whither he had gone to prosecute his botanical researches. His description of that part of the country had already induced Messrs. Cramer and Baurenfeind to follow him: M. Niebuhr also resolved to join his comrades, that he might breathe cooler air, and drink better water. The space he had to travel was only half a day's journey; and, in the course of this, he met with nothing remarkable.

He soon came within sight of the small town of Hadie, situate upon one of the foremost eminences. The roads are very bad: a causeway was indeed formed by the Turks; but it has been suffered to fall away, without receiving any repairs. Neither asses nor mules can be used here: the hills are to be climbed by narrow and steep paths; yet, in comparison with the parched plains of Tehama, the scenery seemed charming; as it was covered with gardens and plantations of coffee-trees.

In the neighbourhood of Kabbme, our hero had seen only one small basaltic hill; but here, whole mountains were composed chiefly of those columns. The coffee-trees were all in flower at Bulgofa, and exhaled an exquisitely agreeable perfume. They are planted upon terraces, in the form of an amphitheatre. Most of them are only watered by the rains that fall; but some, indeed, from large reservoirs upon the heights, in which spring-water is collected, in order to be sprinkled upon the terraces; where the trees grow so thick together, that the rays of the sun can hardly enter among their branches.

Stones being more common in this part of the country, than at Tehama, the houses, as well of the villages, as those which are scattered solitarily over the hills, are built of this material. Although not to be compared with the houses in Europe, for commodiousness or elegance, yet they have a good appearance; especially such of them as stand upon the heights, with beautiful gardens and trees, arranged in the form of an amphitheatre, around them.

They passed the night at Bulgofa. Several of the men of the village came to see them; and, after they retired, they had a visit from their hostess, with some young women accompanying her, who were all very desirous to see the Europeans. They seemed less shy than the women in the cities: their faces were unveiled; and they talked freely. As the air is fresher and cooler upon these hills, the women have here a finer and fairer complexion than in the plain.

On the 10th of March, they returned downwards as far as Hadie, a place well known to the Europeans; who come hither from Beit-el-Fakih, to pass some time occasionally in this little town, where the

air is cool, and the water fresh and pure. It is, however, but ill-built, and has nothing else of consequence except its trade in coffee, which the inhabitants of the hills bring down upon certain days in the week. After the duties are paid to the Dola, the coffee is packed up and conveyed upon camels: either to Beit-el-Fakih or directly to Hodeida.

They enjoyed a singular and beautiful prospect from the house of the Sub-Dola at Hadie, and returned in the evening to Beit-el-Fakih, by the same way by which they had gone in their journey up the mountains.

They met with less difficulty in the prosecution of their researches at Beit-el-Fakih, than any where else through Yemen. The inhabitants of that city were no strangers to European manners, and knew that they could not, like them, rest constantly in one place. They were therefore nowise surprised at their excursions, but were fully satisfied when they told them, that the exercise was necessary for their health.

The preparations for their journey were easily made. They hired two asses, and the owner attended them on foot, as their guide, their servant, and occasionally their interpreter. They had already large beards in the Arab fashion; and these, with their long robes, gave them a very oriental appearance. To disguise themselves still more, each of them assumed an Arabic name; and, under these pretences, their real condition was so perfectly concealed, that even the owner of asses thought them Christians of the East; and had no suspicion that they were Europeans. In this garb, and attended by the ass-hirer, they set out on the 26th of March, from Beit-el-Fakih.

They passed through several villages in crossing the plain, and, after a journey of five German miles and a half, reached B. ba, where is a weekly Suk or market. Here they lay the first night.

Next day, after advancing a mile further, they entered upon the mountains. Near the first village, they observed a running stream, the first they saw in Arabia. Till it enters Tehama, this river is called Wadi Zebid. Its channel is very broad; but as no rain had for a long time fallen, the stream covered the breadth of twenty, or four and twenty feet. In this place it runs with a considerable current; but in Tehama it spreads into a shallow lake, and is lost among the sands.

The same day they passed near Mount Sullam, where, from the account given by an Arab who lived in the country, our hero had been led to expect that he should find hieroglyphics or inscriptions, cut upon the rock: but he found only some figures which had been impressed at an idle hour by some shepherd, and were as coarsely executed as those upon Mount Sinai. They lay at Machfa; this is one of the villages in which weekly fairs are held. The houses are still more wretched here than in Tehama. They have no walls, and consist merely of a few poles laid together, and covered with reeds. They could scarcely lodge in one of those huts; so small were they, that a person could not stand straight in the middle; and two persons lying together upon the floor, occupied the whole area of the house. It would not have held a single Serrir. The inhabitants sit and sleep upon the bare ground. The air being colder in this part of the country than in Tehama, the people here put on a bag upon their bodies when they go to sleep, and are warmed by their natural perspiration. In none of the inns, could they find any sort of food but coarse durra bread, made of millet with camel's milk; but the water is every where delicious.

The road by which they travelled is not much frequented by travellers. The ways are very bad and unsafe, and scarce a house appears upon any hand. Within these few years, however, they have become less dangerous than they were before. The lord of Udden has placed some soldiers with a Sub-Dola, at Machfa, who is responsible for the thefts or robberies that happen in his district. This regulation of the police has dispersed the robbers.

Schiech of the family of Aklan, to whom this district appertains. But, in the issue of the war, the Schiech was obliged to acknowledge the sovereign authority of the Ina and now no longer maintains troops.

Proceeding on their way to Tehama, they saw several villages, and crossed some small rivers. They passed the night in a detached coffee-hut: and even the master of it left them by night, and retired to a neighbouring village.

On the 4th of April, they travelled along bad roads, among hills, and crossed several times over the Wadi Suradsji, a considerably large and rapid river, even at that time, although no rain had fallen for a long while. They saw no village near, but several coffee-huts.

Continuing their journey, they passed through several small rivers, which appeared all to empty themselves into one large river. To the south they had a view of a large chain of mountains; but the only habitations that they saw in this hilly region, were a few inns. They came at length to a large village, containing many kubbets, and at no great distance from Hæs, where they arrived this evening.

The city of Hæs, twelve miles distant from Taæs, and situate in the Tehama, is small and ill-built. However, it is the capital of the district, and the seat of a Dola, who occupies a small fortress. A considerable quantity of earthen-ware is manufactured here, especially coarse drinking cups. This district is but of narrow extent, being bounded on one side by Zebid, and on the other, by the territories of the Schiech of Ibn Aklan.

They left Hæs on the 5th of April, and, after passing several villages and coffee-huts, arrived on the same evening at Zebid. They passed without wetting their feet, over the river Suradsji, which they had lately seen so large among the hills. But as they proceeded through the beautiful and cultivated plains which it watered, they perceived both the cause of its diminution, and the effects which it produced.

Their way from Zebid to Beit-el-Fakih was the same already described. They arrived at the latter city on the 6th of April.

Upon leaving the mountains, they felt the heat excessive. They halted to rest themselves at an inn in a village between Hæs and Zebid. There they were refreshed by an agreeable breeze, although all was calm and torrid without; for the walls being built of loose stones, the many chinks among which naturally admitted a current of air. They found this coolness a great refreshment amidst the burning heat which prevailed all around. Our hero imprudently sat down on the ground, without wrapping himself in his large cloak, and being faint, from the heat and fatigues of his journey, he fell asleep. This indiscretion cost him dear; he was in a violent fever before they reached Zebid, which continuing after his return to Beit-el-Fakih, rendered him unable to bear any fatigue.

On their arrival in this city, upon the 6th of April, they found Mr. Van Haven likewise indisposed. He had been attacked with a fever, and was weary of the mode of life to which they were confined. They had long wanted wine and brandy; they were disgusted from coffee, as being of a heating quality. Kifeher, although esteemed wholesome, is but an insipid drink; and through all Tehama the water is very bad. Their cook could procure them no such simple dishes of food as those used by the Arabs, a nation distinguished for temperance. Upon this account, they daily ate animal food, although their friends, who knew the climate better, had advised them to abstain from it. Their persisting in this, doubtless, greatly injured their health, and was, in a particular manner hurtful to Mr. Van Haven, who, except to sit down at table, never rose from his sofa.

The first day of Bairam happened this year to be the 14th of April. On this day the Dola proceeded out of the city with a multitude of attendants, to perform prayers in a large enclosed square area, in

the open air. This festival lasts three days, during which the Arabs indulge in festive amusements, and begin no piece of work, nor enter upon any journey.

On the 17th of April, they saw an insurrection at Beit-el-Fakih, of the coolness of temper, and firmness of mind, by which the Arab character is distinguished. The southern end of a house caught fire; and, as the wind blew strong from the south, a great part of the city was soon burnt down. The inhabitants, however, retained their usual tranquillity. No cries nor complaints were heard in the streets, and when addressed with expressions of condolence, upon their misfortune, they would calmly reply, "It is the will of God." Our travellers occupied a house with stone walls, in that part of the town which was spared by the flames; they went upon the roof, and saw the roofs of the other houses crowded with people, who were beholding the conflagration with the utmost indifference. A poor scholar, who used often to visit them, came, after removing his effects to a place of security, to see them, and, with an air of indifference, marked the instant when the flames reached his own house. When such an accident happens, indeed, an Arab does not lose much; as the fire approaches, he removes his goods, and takes refuge, either in a different quarter of the city, or in the open country. He thus loses nothing but his paltry hut, which is rebuilt easily, and at a small expense.

As soon as M. Niebuhr and Mr. Van Haven were sufficiently recovered to bear the fatigues of travelling, it was resolved, that their whole party should leave Beit-el-Fakih. They set out, therefore, on the 20th of April, and took the road to Zebid.

In Tehama, it has been observed, people generally travel by night, rather than in the day. But if they had regulated their journeys in this manner, Mr. Forskal could not have continued to examine and collect plants, nor could M. Niebuhr have surveyed the face of the country. Both, therefore, resolved to proceed forward by day, taking the owner of their asses to attend them, and to leave the rest of their party, with the servants and the baggage, to come up by night.

In consequence of this arrangement, they set out alone next morning, and passed through the plains contiguous to the river Zebid, and by the canals which are supplied from it. This beautiful tract of country is about two miles in breadth. The peasants were busy in cultivating the fields, and raising earthen dykes about them, to retain the water for a certain time, after which it would be conveyed into other fields, to water and fertilize them in like manner. From these fields to Mokha, hardly any villages are to be seen. The whole intervening country is dry, sandy, and covered with that coarse species of grass with which the houses are thatched here. On these sandy plains the heat is excessive: they were overjoyed whenever they could shelter themselves for a little, in any paltry coffee-hut.

On the second and third days of their journey, they saw nothing but coffee-huts, till they, at last, arrived in the large village of Manshid. They were there alarmed with an account of a skirmishing war between two families, in which a man had been killed on the day preceding. Our travellers were assured, that such private quarrels never interrupt the public tranquillity. When an Arab happens to be killed, his family may compromise with the murderer, for a sum of money, or may demand of the magistrate to put him to death; or, if unwilling to receive satisfaction in either of these ways, may declare a resolution of taking vengeance themselves upon the person of the assassin, or upon his relations.

In that same village, a Sub-Dola resides, with a few soldiers from the troops of the Dola of Hæs. Here, as at Zebid, a tax was demanded for each of our travellers' camels. By their agreement with the camel-driver, he was obliged to discharge all demands of this nature; but he contrived to shift this payment, by entering into a secret understanding with the officers

dival lasts three days, during
e in festive amusements, and
nor enter upon any journey,
they saw an influence at Beirut
s of temper, and firmness of
b character is distinguished,
ouse caught fire; and, as the
he south, a great part of the
wn. The inhabitants, howe
l tranquillity. No cries were
in the streets, and when ad
of condolence, upon their
ealmy reply, "It is the will
ers occupied a house with
of the town which was spared
t upon the roof, and saw the
s crowded with people, who
agration with the utmost in
lar, who used often to visit
ing his effects to a place of
, with an air of indifference,
the flames reached his own
ccident happens, indeed, an
; as the fire approaches, he
akes refuge, either in a cell
y, or in the open country,
his paltry hut, which is the
expense.

r and Mr. Van Haven were
bear the fatigues of travel.
at their whole party should
ey let out, therefore, on the
the road to Zebid.
observed, people generally
an in the day. But if they
ries in this manner, Mr.
continued to examine and
M. Niebuhr have hurried
Both, therefore, resolved
y, taking the owner of their
to leave the rest of their
id the baggage, to come up

arrangement, they set out
passed through the plain
Zebid, and by the canal
it. This beautiful tract is
s in breadth. The peasants
e fields, and raising earthen
n the water for a certain
l be conveyed into other
ize them in like manner.
ha, hardly any villages are
ntervening country is dry,
hat coarse species of grain
atched here. On these
cessive: they were over-
d shelter themselves for a
ut.

rd days of their journey,
e-huts, till they, at last, ar-
of Manshid. They were
ount of a skirmishing war
ich a man had been killed
r travellers were assured,
never interrupt the public
rab happens to be killed,
with the murderer, for a
and of the magistrate to
willing to receive satisfaction,
may declare a resolution
selves upon the person of
tions.

b-Dola resides, with a few
he Dola of Hies. Here,
nded for each of our tra-
reement with the camel-
ed-charge all demands of
ed to shift this payment,
understanding with the
officers

officers who were to receive it. They told M. Niebuhr, that he must either pay it himself, or suffer them to open and inspect his baggage. However, on his threatening to complain to the judge of the place, they desisted from their insolent pretensions. Thus the establishment of customs and custom-house officers, is every where a source of endless villanies and vexations.

They passed through two other villages and several more coffee-huts. They saw, near the road, a salt-work, from which salt is carried to the mountains upon camels. The whole of this way is over fands.

After a very disagreeable journey from Beit-el-Fakih, they entered the city of Mokha on the 23d of April. All who travel by land to Mokha, are obliged to enter by the same gate; and Europeans are under the humiliating necessity of alighting from their asses, and proceeding to their lodgings on foot. They therefore alighted while their baggage was inspected. Those who examined that, asked neither their names nor their passports, but directed them to a Kan, where Turks lodge, and where, as they supposed, they might possibly find some of their countrymen.

At the time of their arrival, there was an English merchant from Bombay in the city. They were unwilling to address themselves to him, lest he might think them vagrants of suspicious character. Besides, they had letters of recommendation from their friends at Jidda, Lohcia, and Beit-el-Fakih, to the Dola, to the English interpreter, a Banian in great credit, and to a merchant of the city, whose name was Seid Salek. Having observed, that the Mussulmans treated those Pagans from India, commonly in a very contemptuous manner, they were in no haste to begin an acquaintance with the Banian, whom they found afterwards to be a very worthy man. They were already acquainted with Seid Salek's son Ismael, who had been their companion in the passage from Jidda to Lohcia, and had made advances to obtain their friendship. This Ismael, besides, had early prepossessed them in his favour, by speaking Dutch tolerably well. They unluckily, therefore, addressed themselves to him in preference to every other person.

These two, the father and son, were accustomed to attach themselves to strangers with dishonest views; and the son had studied some of the languages of Europe, in order that he might be the better able to accomplish his knavish purposes. They had enticed a Dutch vessel from Batavia to Mokha, the master of which falling, without resource, into their hands, was cruelly duped and plundered. By their intrigues, they had kept every other merchant at a distance; so that, with respect to the sale of the cargo, he was absolutely at their mercy. They had hoped to make their gain of our travellers in the same manner; and when they saw their hopes of this frustrated, laboured, out of spite, to do them every ill office in their power.

Our heroes paid their first visit to Ismael. He received them seemingly with great kindness, treated them with punch, and invited a renegade from India, who was settled as a merchant at Mokha, to keep them company. This renegade was a deep drinker, and endeavoured, but without success, to make them drunk. Ismael advised them to resume their European dress, and not to discover their knowledge of Arabic, lest they should be taken for renegadoes. He endeavoured to dissuade them from their intended journey to Sana; telling them, that those highlanders were a savage, inhospitable race, and the Imam treated all strangers who had the misfortune not to be Mussulmans, in the most abusive manner. He was also careful to prepossess them against the people of Mokha, who by his account, entertained inveterate hatred against Europeans; but encouraged them, by offering the powerful protection of his father, to ward off every danger or mortification that they might have to fear. In short, his whole conversation was of such a nature, that M. Niebuhr could not help perceiving from it, that travellers must be grossly im-

posed upon, whenever they trust credulously to the relations they receive from the inhabitants of the country through which they travel. Had they not known Arabic, they might have returned into Europe with very false impressions of every thing in Arabia.

The only piece of service that this man did our Europeans, was, in immediately hiring for them a house that was large enough to lodge them all.

From what happened to them first, after their arrival in this city, they found reason to suspect, that Ismael had secretly instigated the under officers of the customs to harass and oppress them, in order that they might be thus forced to throw themselves into a blind and implicit dependence upon him. Their baggage was carried straight to the custom-house, where was the Dola in person. They begged, that those articles which they needed for immediate use, might first be inspected: but the officers would begin with examining their chests of natural curiosities, which they had sent by sea from Lohcia, and which had been kept here unopened, ever since the arrival of the vessel by which they had been brought. In one of the chests were fishes from the Arabic gulf, preserved in spirits of wine, and enclosed in a small barrel. They begged the officers of the customs not to open the barrel; for that the fishes smelled disagreeably. They, however, not only opened it, but searched it with a pointed instrument of iron, and at length emptied it entirely of the contents. The Arabs, who have a violent aversion to strong liquors, were much prepossessed against them, when they had the smell of the spirituous liquor; and were no less displeased to find the factor of the dead fishes spread through the whole custom-house.

They insisted that they should, at least, let them have their beds. But, without listening to their request, they continued to tofs over and examine their chests, which contained specimens of shells, at the risk of breaking them. The Arabs could not comprehend how a man of sense could collect such trilles, without some interested views; and they accordingly accused them of intending to abuse the Dola, by producing only articles of trifling value, to amuse his people, while they concealed their more precious effects.

At last, appeared a vessel in which Mr. Forskal had preserved some serpents in spirits of wine. At sight of this, the Arabs were terrified. A person, who was servant to the Dola, observed, that those Franks had come hither to poison the Mussulmans, and that it was in order to their success in this, that one of them pretended to be a physician. The Dola, who was a mild old man, and till now did not seem to have conceived any prejudice against them, became suddenly in a passion when this idea was suggested, and swore, that they should not remain a single night in the city. The reader will readily conceive, how the insolence of the people of the custom-house, and of the attending mob, would naturally rise upon this. The custom-house was abruptly shut, and they could obtain none of their goods.

While they were in the custom-house, a servant came to tell them, that their books and other things had been all thrown out of the windows of the house which they had hired, and the door shut against them. They went to see what might be the reason of this outrage, but could find neither Ismael nor his father. One of the citizens, who was a friend of Ismael's, attacked them with abusive language. No person would afford them lodgings; but every one looked upon them as vagrants who would instantly be driven out of the city in disgrace. At length, one of the citizens expressed himself willing to receive them into his house, if he were sure that government would not punish him for it. They led him to the Cadi, who assured him, that he should risk nothing by lodging them. In Turkey, the Cadies are reputed very corrupt and selfish: but in Yemen, our travellers found them persons of great worth and integrity, earnest to do prompt and candid justice. The English

merchant, Mr. Francis Scott, had heard of their difficulties and perplexity; and although they had not yet visited him, he gave them an invitation to dinner, which they accepted with the greatest pleasure. He expressed a warm desire to serve them; and they now perceived, how foolishly they had acted in not applying, at first, to him and his Banian interpreter. However, they durst not break off abruptly with Ismael and his father.

When they could not obtain any of their things from the custom-house, Ismael advised them to offer the Dola a present of fifty ducats; and hinted that he should be the bearer of the present, for that the Dola would not condescend to speak with Christians. They had no intention of making so large a present, still less of intruding him with it. But, after various reflections, they at last resolved to sacrifice those fifty ducats upon the occasion; and it was agreed, that M. Niebuhr should wait upon the Dola with this present, next day. On his way, however, he learned, that the Dola having been exercising his troops, had received a wound in the foot. Upon receiving this information, he returned home; hoping that their physician would be sent for, and that they might thus avoid the expence of the present.

But, as Mr. Cramer was not called by the Dola, and their effects still remained at the custom-house, they understood that a considerable present was expected from them. Mr. Forkal had hitherto been always refused admission by the servants of the Dola, upon pretence, that their master would not treat with them otherwise, than through the medium of Ismael and his father; yet, he now undertook to make a new attempt to obtain an audience. When he had explained the purpose of his visit, he was admitted, and so graciously received, that the Dola kindly chid him for not applying directly to himself at the first. Next day, he in his turn, sent them a present of four lambs, and two small bags of rice; and at the same time gave orders, that their effects should be delivered to them, without being more particularly examined.

The Dola, when he received his wound, had been advised by the principal persons about him, to send for the European physician. But he was afraid, that Mr. Cramer might, in revenge for the ill-treatment which they had suffered, administer to him improper medicines, or might apply heating drugs, which the Arabs think very dangerous. But the Cadi represented to him, that no person had yet complained of our travellers; and that it was nowise strange, that a physician should have dead serpents in his possession, these being used as ingredients in some medical compositions. The Europeans, he further told him, ought not to be despised or slighted for collecting shells or insects, of which the Arabs knew not the use.

These representations, and the alarming state of the wound, which was becoming worse, in the hands of four or five empirics, induced the Dola to send, on the 4th of May, to inquire whether they were still angry with him, or if their physician would undertake to cure him. They were all overjoyed to hear that the prejudices which the governor had conceived against them were so perfectly removed, and Mr. Cramer gladly offered his services. No sooner had their answer been carried to the Dola, than he sent one of his servants with a mule for Mr. Cramer. Europeans, when they pass before the Dola's palace, are usually obliged to alight and walk, if they happen to be mounted: but, to evince to the people the entire reconciliation that had taken place between the Dola and them, Mr. Cramer was permitted to pass through this forbidden ground, and even to enter the court of the palace without dismounting.

They had, after this, frequent opportunities of seeing the Dola, and testifying their friendship to him. Mr. Forkal one day related to him, how they had been insulted and turned out by the owner of their first lodging. The Dola promised him satisfaction, and made the person of whom he complained,

be cast, that very night, into prison. Ismael, enraged to see his friend punished for an act of insolence which he himself had prompted, threatened the Europeans with a mob, by which they might be torn in pieces. Mr. Forkal, although regardless of his threats, waited on the Dola, and entreated him to liberate the prisoner, and only recommend to him, to be more civil to strangers in future.

This change in their situation, rendered Mokha much less unpleasant to them than it had been at first. But disease began now to fall severely upon them, M. Niebuhr had been attacked, soon after his arrival here, with a violent dysentery, from which, however, he recovered, after fifteen days illness. Mr. Van Haven, who had been ill at Beit-el-Fakh, became much worse here. After walking out in the cool of the evening, he was tolerably well through the night; but the heat of the day he was quite unable to bear. At last he ventured to lie for several nights successively, upon the roof of the house, in the open air, and with his face uncovered. On the night of the 24th of May, he caught cold, and was so ill in the morning, that it was necessary for two servants to carry him down into his apartment. His fever was become doubly violent, and he was delirious by the evening. He then sunk into a deep lethargy, and expired in the night.

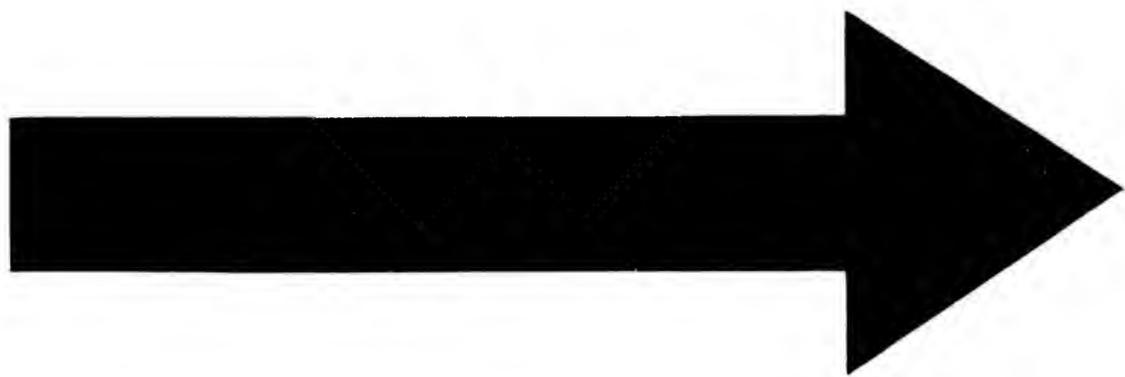
The custom of interring the dead in a coffin, is unknown in Arabia. They had one made, however, for their deceased friend, in order to preserve his remains from any accident. The captain of an English ship lent them six of his sailors to bear the body to the European burying-place. All the English in Mokha attended at the funeral: and the obsequies were performed with more decency, and with less interruption than those of a Consul at Cairo, which were disturbed by the crowding of the people to witness the solemnity, and by the robbery of the audacious Bedouins. On this occasion, the Arabs of Yemen shewed themselves reasonable and humane.

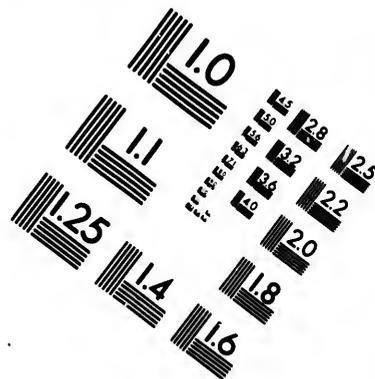
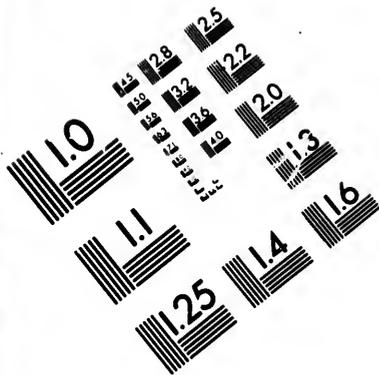
After the death of Mr. Van Haven, they began to think seriously of leaving Mokha, and making a tour into the interior parts of Yemen. They were divided in opinion, with regard to the plan upon which they ought to regulate their subsequent proceedings; some being disposed to remain another year in Arabia, while the rest were desirous of returning immediately to Europe. But they all agreed to set out without further delay, upon their journey to Sana.

M. Niebuhr and Mr. Forkal had made several excursions in a very simple guise, and almost without attendants. But as their whole party were now to travel together, they could not well go without a certain train to accompany them. They could not, however, travel in this style without permission from the Dola, which would not be easily obtained; as it could not be thought, that he would willingly suffer his physician to leave him before his wound was healed. They nevertheless ventured to make the request: but the Dola refused them upon a fair pretext. He told them, that he must first write to Sana, to know whether the Imam would receive them, and that they could not leave Mokha till the Imam had returned an answer.

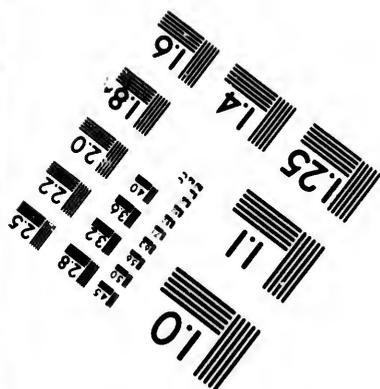
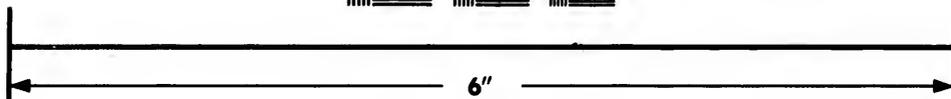
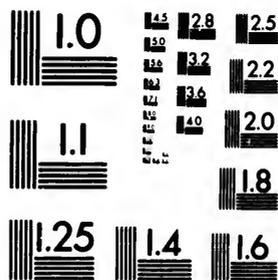
When thus refused permission to proceed to Sana, they begged that they might, at least, be allowed to remove to Taees, in the mean time, for the sake of their health. Even this was refused them. They then proposed to the Dola, to leave their physician behind. But the Arabs feared, that the pain of separation from his friends, might secretly distress Mr. Cramer, so as to render him more negligent of his patient's cure.

When they complained of these restraints to the principal men of the city, they observed, that it was hard to conceive what rendered them so impatient to depart; for that by going to the Highlands, they should only endanger their health more, as those who went thither from the burning sands of Tehama, were commonly attacked with a violent fever immediately upon their arrival.





**IMAGE EVALUATION
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic
Sciences
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503

1.5 128 125
1.3 122
1.2 120

10

the place of the residence of the kings of this country; its only remains are the ruins of some mosques. Ismael Mulk having built his tomb at the foot of the rock of Kahre, some of his devout subjects chose to live near their faint; others following their example, Oddena was thus abandoned, and Taes built. So this city, like Laheia, Beit-el-Fakih, and Mokha, owes its rise to a faint.

The Dola who now governed this city had been an officer in the Imam's army, and had risen rapidly to the rank of Nakib, without owing his fortune to his birth, as most of these governors do. His government was very extensive, comprehending both Mount Sabber and the territory of Hodsjerie, in which are a number of Schiechs, whose families have, for these several centuries, possessed small and almost independent lordships. They pay taxes to the Imam, but value themselves much on their nobility of descent, and treat their governors with contempt. Our travellers Dola had already had several differences with those haughty nobles, who refused submission to his authority. He had put one of the mutinous Schiechs in prison, and had detained a female slave whom the Arab was carrying away with him. An order from the Imam, however, obliged him to set both at liberty; but he remained in indignation against those Schiechs in general. He seized the first occasion that offered, and sent out half a dozen soldiers among them, who, according to their master's orders, conducted themselves with great insolence towards those highlanders. The Schiechs could not bear such insults; but made an insurrection, and massacred them all. Since that period, nobody from Taes has ventured to visit the highlands without exposing his life to extreme danger; it was even said, that the Schiechs would never be quiet till the Imam should recall the Dola.

The exuberant fertility of Mount Sabber affords, according to the accounts of the Arabs, plants of every species that is to be found any where else through the world. Mr. Forthal had this mountain daily before his eyes; but, to his infinite mortification, could not obtain permission to botanize upon it. He proposed to bring a Schiech from the mountains at his own expense, under whose protection he might go out upon his herbarizing expeditions without danger. But the Dola put a negative upon all his proposals, and would only suffer him to take a short ramble over Mount Saurek. He set out on the 20th of June, and returned on the 22d, having found the villages in that district deserted, in consequence of the intolerable exactions of the Dola, which had forced the inhabitants to retire and settle elsewhere. In so wretched a country, Mr. Forthal could neither find provisions, nor travel about in safety.

In order to make the most of his stay at Taes, M. Niebuhr wished to make some excursions through the interior country, but durst not attempt them, on account of the prevailing disturbances. He was at last disposed to content himself with copying an inscription in the fortrefs; and Mr. Forthal returned his intention of sending for a Schiech from Mount Sabber. The Dola agreed to their wishes; but at midnight he sent to tell them, that he had received a letter from the Dola of Mokha, requiring them to return immediately to the latter city. They suspected this letter to be a pretence, and refused to comply. Early in the morning, however, camels were sent to carry them away, but they sent them back. With Turks they durst not have done so much.

They could not comprehend what were the Dola's views, unless, perhaps, he might, like the Dola of Mokha, intend to extort some considerable present from them. Into these views they had no disposition to enter, and therefore sought a private audience of him, in hopes of bringing him to reason. Their servant was several times sent back under different pretexts. At last, Mr. Forthal obtained access to the Dola, and begged of him only to permit them to wait till they should receive the Imam's answer,

without mentioning their little schemes. But the governor cut him short, saying, "Since you would not credit my servants, I myself order you to be gone to Mokha to-morrow."

Seeing no means to elude the Dola's orders, they had already packed up their goods, when a favourable change suddenly took place upon their circumstances. A letter was brought them by express from the Dola of Mokha, and in it were three others; one to the Imam, another to his vizier, and a third to the Dola of Taes. He informed them, that the Imam gave them permission to go to Sana, and wished them to carry their curiosities with them. He acquainted the Dola of Taes with their master's orders, and begged him to favour their departure to Sana. Mr. Forthal went instantly with this letter to the governor, but could not obtain access to him, and was obliged to give it to his servant.

They now thought their affairs in a good train, and would even have set out without troubling the Dola further, if they could have obtained camels without his interposition on their behalf. Those who hire these cattle are obliged in a sort of corporation; and travellers are obliged to apply to the head of the company, who has recourse upon the owners of the camels, and makes them furnish, in turn, the number which may be wanted. Unluckily the Dola himself was at the head of this company, and was obliged to furnish camels in his turn. They let him know that they were about to depart. He answered, that camels were ready to convey them back to Mokha, but that the orders respecting their journey to Sana regarded only the Dola of Mokha.

In the perplexity to which they were reduced by this conduct of the Dola's, they knew not what to do. Several instances of the equity and generosity of the Cadi were in the mean time related to them, in which he had brought the governor to reason in cases similar to theirs. They made their complaints therefore to that judge, and shewed him their letters from Mokha. He thought the Dola's conduct very unreasonable, and immediately wrote to him to beware of doing any thing in contradiction to the orders of the Imam. The Dola replied, that he did not hinder their journey to Sana, but, asked them to stay one day; till he should write his letters to court upon the occasion. They offered to stay two or three days. Notwithstanding this, the Dola's servants came next morning, and ordered them in his name, to depart to Mokha. They had again recourse to the Cadi, who being previously informed of all that had happened, had, in the morning, written to the Dola, that he should not act in a harsh or interested manner with them; for they were strangers. The Baskateb told them in the evening, that the Dola was sorry, that his servants had come to them with a message in his name which he had given them no orders to deliver. But upon this head they knew sufficiently what to think.

The Dola of Mokha's servant could not now be of further use to them; they dismissed him therefore with a handsome reward. But as they still wanted a guide who knew the interior parts of Yemen, they begged the Cadi to direct them to such a one; and he politely sent them an Arab, who afterwards accompanied them to Mokha, and with whom they were perfectly satisfied. The Dola shewed likewise a disposition to make amends by kindness for the trouble he had given them, and ordered one of his servants to accompany them on their journey. This man had the address to stipulate before-hand, in the presence of several persons of distinction, for the wages which they were to pay him.

The Cadi, unasked, had the generosity to give our travellers a letter of recommendation to the Imam's vizier, in which he told him, that he should beware of believing any thing that might be related to him to the disadvantage of these Franks. They could have wished to make the judge a present of a watch; his probity and beneficence having inspired them with the highest veneration for his character, and the liveliest gratitude

gratitude for his favour, that he would appear to have intended them.

They could not but be avoided of illness. Their he was fallen serious cases which their given him. Their made him contempt of the city.

His conduct had M. Niebuhr even Mr. Forthal was occasion of the illness to the grave.

From Taes they for the first two days their way, except lages, and a small were falling into ruin and almost desolate late wars for the future.

On the third day storm surprised the of remarking how occasional from the which they passed.

The great inns try from the Tihari These are private travellers with their indifferent. Between every half day's journey burnt bricks. The in Turkey, have been accommodation of but no other sort of butter. The travellers with him.

On the 1st of July upon a paved road try, and after passing madjils, arrived a height of a hill, is contains 800 houf fashion of building a good many small large reservoir, which supplies all the

At a small distance two rivulets, one created into the river southward, forms itself into the sea of these rivers, two country, and the rise here, seem to spot in the mountains. The height of on the day following travelled down Mokha and then crossed a villages, madjils, travellers, scattered was to be seen exc on a hill, and the

After spending to ascend Mount Mharres, by ways to camels by being direction round the direct access. H. Mensil, in which is stone. They climb the roof, of which tremely weak, from

Here they ren would gladly have

tioning their little schemes. But the governor short, saying; "Since you would not servants, I myself order you to be gone to-morrow."

He means to elude the Dola's orders, they packed up their goods, when a favourable opportunity took place upon their circumstances. They brought them by express from the Dola and in it were three others; one to the other to his vizier, and a third to the Dola. He informed them, that the Imam gave permission to go to Sana, and wished them to be acquainted with them. He acquainted them with their master's orders, and begged for their departure to Sana. Mr. Forkkal wrote with this letter to the governor, but obtained access to him, and was obliged to be a servant.

He thought their affairs in a good train, and have let out without troubling the Dola they could have obtained camels without permission on their behalf. Those who hire are united in a sort of corporation; and are obliged to apply to the head of the company who has recourse upon the owners of the camels makes them furnish, in turn, the number may be wanted. Unluckily the Dola himself was head of this company, and was obliged to be in his turn. They let him know that they were about to depart. He answered, that he was ready to convey them back to Mokha, but they respecting their journey to Sana to the Dola of Mokha.

The complexity to which they were reduced by the orders of the Dola's, they knew not what to do. The Dola's equity and generosity of the mean time related to them, in which he might the governor to reason in cases similar. They made their complaints therefore to the Dola and shewed him their letters from Mokha. The Dola's conduct very unreasonable, he wrote to him to beware of doing any thing in contradiction to the orders of the Imam. He complied, that he did not hinder their journey, but, asked them to stay one day; till he had written his letters to court upon the occasion, and to stay two or three days. Notwithstanding the Dola's servants came next morning, and in his name, to depart to Mokha. He again recourse to the Cadi, who being informed of all that had happened, had, in writing to the Dola, that he should not be in a more interested manner with them; for the Dola's servants. The Baskateb told them in the name of the Dola was sorry, that his servants had not brought them with a message in his name which he had no orders to deliver. But upon this they knew sufficiently what to think.

The Dola's servant could not now be of any use to them; they dismissed him therefore without any reward. But as they still wanted to see the interior parts of Yemen, they desired to direct them to such a one; and he directed them an Arab, who afterwards accompanied them to Mokha, and with whom they were obliged. The Dola shewed likewise a dislike to amend by kindness for the trouble they had done them, and ordered one of his servants to accompany them on their journey. This man had no stipulate before-hand, in the presence of the Dola, for the wages which he was to receive.

Unasked, had the generosity to give our party a recommendation to the Imam's vizier, which he told him, that he should beware of any thing that might be related to him to the advantage of these Franks. - They could have made the judge a present of a watch; his beneficence having inspired them with the desire of gratifying him for his character, and the liveliest gratitude

gratitude for his favours. But they were informed that he would accept no such thing, lest he might appear to have interested views in taking part with them.

They could not see the Dola before their departure; he avoided receiving their visit under pretence of illness. Their friends however assured them, that he was fallen seriously ill, in consequence of the uneasiness which their obstinate resistance to his will had given him. Their firmness was indeed said to have made him contemptible in the eyes of the inhabitants of the city.

His conduct had occasioned them no less vexation. M. Niebuhr even blamed the uneasiness with which Mr. Forkkal was at that time agitated, as the first occasion of the illness which soon after hurried him to the grave.

From Taxes they set out on the 28th of June; and for the first two days, found no human habitations on their way, except some paltry coffee-huts, a few villages, and a small town; and most of the villages were falling into ruins. The country is uncultivated, and almost desolate; which seems to be owing to the late wars for the succession to the throne of Taxes.

On the third day they reached Mharra. A violent storm surprised them, and gave them an opportunity of remarking how the torrents, rushing upon such occasions from the hills, produce the gullies, one of which they passed on an arch of solid stone.

The great inns which are scattered over the country from the Tebama thus far, are called Matrach. These are private houses, the masters of which furnish travellers with their meals, which are commonly very indifferent. Between Mharra and Sana, almost at every half day's journey, stands a large Simfira of burnt bricks. These edifices, like the caravanferas in Turkey, have been built by wealthy persons for the accommodation of travellers, and afford safe lodging, but no other sort of food than coffee, rice, bread, and butter. The traveller must bring his other provisions with him.

On the 1st of July, having crossed Mount Mharra upon a paved road, they entered a more fertile country, and after passing several villages and a number of madjils, arrived at Abb. This city stands on the height of a hill, is surrounded by a strong wall, and contains 800 houses, most of which are in a good fashion of building. Its streets are paved, and it has a good many small mosques. Beside one of these is a large reservoir, which receives water by an aqueduct, and supplies all the houses in the city.

At a small distance, between Abb and Djobla are two rivulets, one of which running westward, is increased into the river Zebid; and the other running southward, forms Meidan, a river which disembogues itself into the sea near Aiden. The different courses of these rivers, two of the most considerable in the country, and the circumstance of their taking their rise here, seem to indicate this as the most elevated spot in the mountainous part of the Imam's dominions. The height of Mount Sumara, which they passed on the day following, is another proof of this. They travelled down Mount Abb, along good paved roads, and then crossed a country of a varied surface, having villages, madjils, and houses for the protection of travellers, scattered over it. No remarkable place was to be seen except the city of Muchader, standing on a hill, and the seat of a Dola.

After spending the night in a Simfira, they began to ascend Mount Sumara, a hill much higher than Mharra, by ways which had been rendered accessible to camels by being paved, and carried in a winding direction round those places, which were too steep for direct access. Half way up the hill is the village of Mensil, in which is a superb Simfira built all of hewn stone. They obtained a convenient apartment upon the roof, of which Mr. Forkkal, who was now extremely weak, stood very much in need.

Here they remained during the next day, and would gladly have stayed till their friend had been

somewhat better; but their camel-drivers could not here find food fitting for their cattle. They proposed to them to proceed to Jerim, a city at a small distance, and promised that their sick friend should be borne by men over the rugged roads of Mount Sumara.

They were persuaded, and set forward on the 5th of July. Our hero went before, to enjoy the fresh air; a piece of inexcusable imprudence in places of so keen a temperature. He soon felt himself affected with a severe rheum, vomitings, and excessive thirst, which he could not have quenched on that desert mountain, if he had not fortunately met with a peasant who permitted him to drink out of his pitcher of water. He saw nothing in this part of their journey, which seemed worthy of attention, except a ruinous castle, the property of the family of Hassan, and standing on the very peak of Mount Sumara. In this neighbourhood, are two tribes of wandering Arabs, who are now settled in villages. There are no more Bedouins in the Imam's dominions.

The Arabs could not be persuaded to carry a Christian; and Mr. Forkkal was therefore placed in his bed upon a camel. Although they had proceeded slowly, he was in a deplorable condition, by the time they reached Jerim. They now found, that, although they had accustomed themselves to live like the inhabitants of the country, yet there were certain conveniences which, in case of illness, they could not but want. They lodged in a public inn; but the crowd of spectators whom curiosity brought together, to see the Europeans, becoming extremely troublesome, they hired a more quiet apartment in the city, where they might live undisturbed till their fellow traveller should recover his health. It was impossible to find persons who would carry their sick friend. Their Mahometan servant refused to assist them in removing Mr. Forkkal from the one house to the other; and they were obliged to carry him themselves.

Jerim is but a small town, yet the seat of a Dola, who resides in a castle situate on a rock. The houses are built of stone, and of bricks which have been dried in the sun. At two miles distance from this place, according to the tradition of the Arabs, stood once the famous city Dhafer, very little of the ruins of which now remain. The first magistrate of Jerim, however, told M. Niebuhr, that a large stone is still to be seen there, with an inscription, which neither Jews nor Mahometans can explain. This was probably the situation of the city of Taphar, which ancient historians mention as the seat of the Hamjarines. If any Hamjarine inscription shall ever be discovered, it will probably be among these ruins. The Arabs maintain that Dhafer was the seat of Saad-el-Kammel, a famous hero, king of all Arabia, who lived eighteen hundred years ago.

On the east side of Mount Sumara, they found the climate very different from what it was on the west side. It had rained almost every day of their journey from Taxes to Mensil; and the earth was covered with a charming verdure. At Jerim, on the contrary, no rain had fallen for three months, although distant thunder had been heard almost every day. In this want of rain, the locusts had multiplied prodigiously, and had eaten up almost all the productions of the earth. The inhabitants of Jerim resolved to put up public prayers for rain, on the eighth of July; and for that purpose, repaired in procession to a place without the city, where such solemnities were usually performed. The company who walked in procession, consisted of a number of clergymen in a dress expressive of humility. Two venerable Schichs walked at their head, bearing open caskets full of books. As they proceeded, all sang and repeated short prayers. Hardly was this ceremony over, when, on the very same evening, a storm arose, with hail and a very heavy rain. The rains became afterwards more frequent. Between the tropics they fall at regular periods, on the different sides of the great ranges of hills. In all the markets, locusts were sold at a low price; for so prodigiously numerous were they in a plain

plain near Jerim, that they might be taken by hand-fuls. Our travellers saw a peasant having a sack full of them, which he was going to dry and lay up for winter provisions. Whenever it ceased raining for an hour or two on the other side of Mount Sumara, legions of these insects used to come over to Jerim. They saw the peasants of Menfil pursuing them, in order to preserve their fields from absolute desolation.

In the streets of Jerim, they saw a bridegroom proceeding to the bath in ceremony. Two boys went before, dancing to the music of a timbrel; a crowd followed, consisting of persons of all ages, who shot pistols in the air as they went on; the bridegroom with his friends closed the procession. At night, a number of flambeaux were lighted up, and formed a handsome illumination.

They were one day entertained by two gladiators, who, for a few pieces of small money, exhibited their address in the streets. They wore masks, the first our hero had seen in the East, and were armed with a buckler and a poignard. They did not fight to wound one another: the perfection of their art consisted in their leaping, and in several agile turns of the body.

Being ever unwilling to mingle with crowds, M. Niebuhr had not yet seen any of the markets in Arabia, although these are resorted to as places of amusement by the inhabitants of the country. To divert himself a little, he went to the market at Jerim. A great many people were met in it, who were chiefly peasants that had come to sell their different articles. He saw 10 shops furnished with goods of any considerable value. Many taylor, shoemakers, blacksmiths, and other artisans, sat along the streets, behind low walls, and wrought at their trades in the open air. He saw also surgeons who drew blood with a common knife, and then dressed the wound with pieces of hartshorn cut off at the root of the horn.

On the first days after their arrival at Jerim, Mr. Forkal's illness seemed to decrease. But it soon after returned with such violence that they despaired of his recovery. On the evening of the tenth of July, he sunk into a deep lethargy, in which state he continued till his death, the next morning.

It being necessary for them to notify the death of their companion to government. Our travellers sent the Dola of Tæz's servant to the Dola and the Cadi of Jerim. The latter politely directed them to an Arab, who could sell them a place, where they might inter their deceased friend. The bargain which they struck with this man did not take effect; for the place being near a canal intended for the watering of the meadows, the possessors of these had threatened their Arab with an action at law, if the water should fail on account of the Christian's body. They soon after obtained a different place for the same price.

The Dola then expressed a wish to confer with some one of their number. He informed M. Niebuhr, that, in quality of governor, he had a right to the personal effects of all Jews and Banians who died within his dominions. Our hero answered that the deceased was neither a Jew nor a Banian, but an European; and that the Dola of Mokha had laid no claim to the effects of one of his companions, who died in that city. The Dola's son then explained to him his father's intentions, who expected to receive at least a considerable present. M. Niebuhr told him that Europeans were accustomed to pay nothing without receiving a written acquittance; and that if he would give them in writing a statement of what he required, they should then see what they could do. After this, the Dola who knew that they were going to Sana, and probably feared that they might complain of him there, left them at peace.

Their greatest difficulty now was to find persons to bear the body to the grave; and this, even although they promised to pay very liberally for the service. At last they prevailed with six men to convey it to the burying-place at midnight. They performed the task, but ran and hid themselves, in the best manner

they could, all the way; so that those people to touch a Christian

They resolved to bury the coffin; but they had done better Arabian mode, and wrapped cloth. The coffin made the Europeans buried rich with dead. At Sana, they learned it had been taken up by night clothes had been snatched away opened. The Dola obliged them and left them the coffin for the

After the burial of their friend to detain them from continuing the 13th of July, they left Jerim for four miles along rugged barren country, arrived on the 14th. Through this tract of road, whether are in so wretched condition poor huts, and lie on the ground.

As they had lived so long at Damar had previous notice Europeans seldom pass this way, this place being therefore very came out and met them half a mile. As they drew nearer, the crowd increased; and therefore, to avoid being troubled by them, they would hire an empty house. This they did: for the crowd surrounded them, that they could not enter. Cramer being mounted on his horse, but then they exclaimed against the infidels, and began to throw stones. They thought of asking for help, but were told that he had only to be afraid of the mob himself.

He then came to consult their physician, who took no notice of the petulance, and threw stones that they might draw

The tumult soon ceased, and they returned to the city. The city of Damar stands in the capital of a province, and is inhabited by a large number of people, in which to the number of 10,000 are commonly employed in the building out walls; its buildings are good, containing no fewer than five thousand Jews live in a detached village, which is permitted to live in the town at a distance.

In no other city had their physician. As he was unwilling to go out of the city, the sick were brought to him. An inhabitant of this town accompanied them, that he might have an opportunity of consulting their physician by the way.

Near Damar is a mountain of native sulphur. In another part of the country, those fine cornelians are much esteemed in Arabia.

Their European servant falling sick at Damar, to follow them by the way, he complained that he had no lodging by the way. The Arab who accompanied them might die in their houses, and he was obliged to take the expence of his journey.

On the 14th of July they passed with bare and arid hills, within a mile of Damar, is the city of Mokha. The road becomes very marshy and ill-cultivated. From Suradje to Sana, the villages are with orchards and vineyards. On the 15th, they were taken by a storm of hail, accompanied by thunder; but no madjils were killed.

Next day they had still worse weather, which seemed surprising, to near the city of Hodafa, which stands on a steep

they could, all the way; so great is the aversion of those people to touch a Christian.

They resolved to bury their deceased friend in a coffin; but they had done better to have followed the Arabian mode, and wrapped him simply in a fearcloth. The coffin made the people furious, that the Europeans buried their riches with the bodies of their dead. At Sana, they learned that Mr. Forkal's body had been taken up by night, and that the grave-clothes had been snatched away, after the coffin was opened. The Dola obliged the Jews to bury it again, and left them the coffin for their pains.

After the burial of their friend, they had nothing to detain them from continuing their journey. On the 13th of July, they left Jerim, and after proceeding for four miles along rugged roads, and through a barren country, arrived on the same day at Damar. Through this tract of road, the people who sell Kitcher are in so wretched condition, that they live in poor huts, and lie on the ground.

As they had lived so long at Jerim, the inhabitants of Damar had previous notice of their approach. Europeans seldom pass this way; and the people of this place being therefore very curious to see them, came out and met them half a league from the city. As they drew nearer, the crowd became more numerous; and therefore, to avoid being teased and disturbed by them, they would not enter an inn, but hired an empty house. This precaution little availed them: for the crowd surrounded them in such a manner, that they could not enter their lodging. Mr. Cramer being mounted on his mule, forced his way; but then they exclaimed against the insolence of the infidels, and began to throw stones in at their windows. They thought of asking a guard from the Dola, but were told that he had only thirty soldiers in all, and was afraid of the mob himself. At last, the first magistrate coming to consult their physician, advised them to take no notice of the petulance of the students, who threw stones that they might draw them to the windows. The tumult soon ceased, and the mob dispersed.

The city of Damar stands in a fertile plain. It is the capital of a province, and is governed by a Dola, who resides in a large castle. It has a famous university, in which to the number of five hundred students are commonly employed in their studies. It is without walls; its buildings are good; and it is very large, containing no fewer than five thousand houses. The Jews live in a detached village; but the Banians are permitted to live in the town among the Mussulmans. In no other city had their physician better practice.

As he was unwilling to go out on account of the mob, the sick were brought to him in their beds; and an inhabitant of this town accompanied them to Sana, where he might have an opportunity of consulting their physician by the way, and in that city.

Near Damar is a mountain containing a mine of native sulphur. In another hill, somewhat further distant, those fine cornelians are found, which are so much esteemed in Arabia.

Their European servant falling ill, they left him at Damar, to follow them by short journeys. At his arrival, he complained that nobody would give him lodging by the way. The Arabs were afraid that he might die in their houses, and that they might be obliged to take the expence and pains of burying him.

On the 14th of July they crossed a plain encompassed with bare and arid hills. Near the road, and within a mile of Damar, is the small town of Maubal. The road becomes very rugged; and the country appears marshy and ill-cultivated towards Suradje. From Suradje to Sana, the villages are all surrounded with orchards and vineyards. They were here over-ruled by a storm of hail, accompanied with peals of thunder; but no madajils were nigh, to shelter our travellers.

Next day they had still worse roads to travel; which were much surprising, to near the capital. They saw a dafsa, which stands on a steep, insulated rock, and

in which is said to be a curious inscription, upon an old wall. This inscription was mentioned to M. Niebuhr at Taces; and he was informed by a Jew at Sana, that the characters resemble neither the Arabic nor the Hebrew. He suspected them to be Hamjanic, and was sorry that it was not in his power to examine them.

After passing through several paltry villages, they at length reached Seijan, a village, which, together with Suradje, belongs to the princes of the blood; they observed in it a good many ruinous houses. As there falls not enough of rain here, large reservoirs have been formed at the foot of the hills, and from these the water is distributed through the country at considerable expence and trouble.

Hoping to enter Sana, on the 16th of July, they put on their Turkish dresses in the morning; their appearance being somewhat better than that of the Arabic garb they had worn in the course of their journey. Along a stone bridge, they passed a small river, the water of which is, not far below, lost among the sand; and they halted near the village of Hadde, where the Imam has an orchard, at a mile's distance from Sana.

On the morning of the 16th of July they had sent their servant forward, with a letter, addressed to Fakih Achmed, the Imam's vizier, announcing to him their arrival. But that nobleman, having already heard of their near approach, had sent one of his principal secretaries to meet them, and bid them welcome. This deputy informed them, that they had been long expected at the court of Sana, and that the Imam had hired an elegant country house for them, in the suburb of Bir-el-Affab.

They learned that the vizier had likewise a villa there. When they arrived near this place, the secretary asked them to alight. They supposed upon this, that they were to be immediately introduced to the vizier; but they only saw their secretary and their mussulman servants proceed on their asses, while they were obliged to march on foot, a long way, before they reached their lodging. This humiliating ceremony was what they had not expected to be subjected to among the Arabs, who value themselves upon their politeness.

In their villa they found very good rooms, but those perfectly naked and unfurnished. They were here as ill accommodated as they had been in Yemen, and more so than they could have been in a caravanera, where they would at least have found food. Here they were obliged to fast till they could have victuals brought from the city. Beside their house, was an orchard, in which the trees appeared to have grown of themselves, without receiving any culture.

Next morning the Imam sent them a present, consisting of five sheep, with wood, rice, lights, and spices. The bearer of this present had at the same time orders to let them know, that the Imam was sorry that he could not see them for these two days yet, he being at present employed in paying off his mercenary troops. This delay they would have regarded with indifference, had they not been at the same time enjoined to keep within doors, till they should obtain their first audience of his highness. They could have wished to make the most of their stay here.

They had however forgotten to warn our travellers, that the etiquette of this court likewise prohibited strangers from receiving visits from the inhabitants of the country till they should first appear there. They had an acquaintance at Sana, a Jew, who had made the voyage from Cairo to Lobeia in their company. This Jew, although belonging to one of the richest and most respectable families of his nation, had entered into their service, for the course of that voyage, either that he might travel in the greater security, or to spare the expence. Accordingly, he no sooner heard of their arrival, than he came to pay them a visit, and, next day brought one of the greatest attolagers in his nation to see them. While these men were in their company, the secretary of Vizier Fakih

Achmed happened to come in. The two Jews rose before him, in testimony of respect. But the secretary, angry that they should have presumed to violate the etiquette, drove them out of the house, and ordered their servants to admit no person to visit the Europeans, till they should first have waited on his master.

On the 19th of July, the secretary of the vizier, Fakih Achmed, came to conduct them to an audience of the Imam, in his palace of Bultan-el-Metwokkel. They had expected that they should be introduced privately to an audience of this monarch, or at least in presence only of a few of his principal courtiers. They were surprised therefore to see every thing prepared for an occasion of great ceremony. The court of the palace was so full of horses, officers, and others, that they should scarcely have made their way through the crowd, if the Nakih Gheir Alla, who had been a slave, but was now master of the horse, had not come with a great staff in his hand, to open a passage for them.

The hall of audience was a spacious square chamber having an arched roof. In the middle was a large bafon, with some jets d'eau, rising fourteen feet in height. Behind the bafon, and near the throne, were two large benches, each a foot and an half high; upon the throne was a space covered with silken stuff, on which, as well as on both sides of it, lay large cushions. The Imam sat between the cushions, with his legs crossed in the eastern fashion; his gown was of a bright green colour, and had large sleeves. On each side of his breast was a rich filleting of gold lace, and on his head he wore a great white turban. His sons sat on his right hand, and his brothers on his left. Opposite to them, upon the highest of the two benches, sat the vizier; and our travellers place was on the lower bench. On the two sides of the hall, sat many of the principal men about court.

They were first led up to the Imam, and were permitted to kiss both the back and the palm of his hand, as well as the hem of his robe. It is an extraordinary favour, when the Mahometan princes permit any person to kiss the palm of the hand. There was a solemn silence through the whole hall. As each of us touched the Imam's hand, a herald still proclaimed, "God preserve the Imam!" All who were present repeated those words aloud after him. M. Niebuhr was thinking at the time, how he should pay his compliments in Arabic, and was not a little disturbed by this noisy ceremony; but he had afterwards time to recollect himself.

As the language spoken at the court of Sana, differs greatly from that of Tehama, the only dialect of the Arabic tongue with which they were familiarly acquainted, or could speak tolerably, they had brought their servant whom they had hired in Mokha, to be their interpreter. The vizier who had resided long in Tehama, did the same service for the Imam. Their conversation consequently, could not be either very long, or very interesting. They did not think proper to mention the true reasons of their expedition through Arabia; but told the Imam, that wishing to travel by the shortest way to the Danish colonies in the East-Indies, they had heard so much of the plenty and security which prevailed through the dominions of the Imam, that they had resolved to see them with their own eyes, that they might describe them to their countrymen. The Imam told them, they were welcome into his dominions, and might stay as long as they pleased. After repeating the ceremony of kissing the Imam's hands, and hearing the repeated acclamations of the spectators, they now retired in the same order in which they had come in.

The Imam sent them, after their return home, each a small purse containing ninety-nine Komassis, two and thirty of which make a crown. This piece of civility might perhaps appear no compliment to a traveller's delicacy. But, when it is considered that a stranger, unacquainted with the value of the money of the country, obliged to pay every day for his provisions,

provisions, is in danger of being imposed upon by the money-changers, this care of providing them with small money will appear to have been sufficiently obliging. They therefore accepted the present, although they had resolved not to be in any degree chargeable to the Arabs.

In Turkey no person is admitted to an audience of the Sultan, till after he has visited the vizier. The custom in Yemen is directly contrary. After being honoured with an audience of the Imam in the morning, they were invited to wait on Fakih Achmed in the afternoon, at his country seat, near Bir-el-Affab. They were at the same time desired to bring with them those curiosities which they had shewn to Emir Farhan at Lohcia, and to several Arabs of distinction in other cities.

The vizier received them with great politeness, and expressed himself highly pleased with what they shewed him. He put various questions to them, from which he appeared to possess considerable knowledge, and to have studied the sciences with a degree of care far from common among his countrymen. By means of Turkish, Persian, and Indian merchants, he had acquired tolerably correct notions of geography. The Arabians imagine that Europe lies south from them, because the Franks whom they see, come from India. But the Fakih knew very well the situation of the different states of Europe, with their respective powers and forces, both by sea and land. Nor could more be expected from an Arabian who had never seen a map.

In the narratives of many voyages, they had read, that in the East an inferior might not appear before a superior, without bringing a present in his hand. Besides, they were desirous of returning the marks of politeness which had been shewn them; and of expressing their gratitude for the entertainment they had received.

For these reasons, they resolved to take this opportunity of offering their present to the Imam and the Fakih; they sent to the latter some pieces of mechanism, such as watches, and some other instruments little known among the Arabs. They soon after learned, that this was more than had been expected at their hands, since, not being merchants, they had no favour to ask. All had however been very graciously accepted. The Turks regard the presents of the Europeans as a tribute; but at the court of Sana they appear to be considered in a different light.

The vizier's country-house was not large; it was even entirely open upon one side. A number of fruit trees grew in the garden. In the midst of it was a jet d'eau, similar to that which we had seen in the Imam's hall of audience; the water was put in motion, by being raised in a reservoir by an afs and a man who led him. This jet d'eau was no ornament, but it cooled the air; a thing very agreeable in hot countries. They saw others of the same sort in the gardens of all the principal inhabitants of Sana.

The city of Sana, is situate at the foot of Mount Nikkum, on which are still to be seen the ruins of a castle, which the Arabs suppose to have been built by Shem. Near this mountain stands the castle; a rivulet runs upon the other side; and near it, is the Bultan-el-Metwokkel a spacious garden, which was laid out by Imam Metwokkel, and has been embellished with a fine garden by the reigning Imam. The walls of the city, which are built of bricks, exclude this garden, which is enclosed within a wall of its own. The city, properly so called, is not very extensive; one may walk round it all in an hour. The city-gates are seven. Here are a number of mosques, some of which have been built by Turkish Pachas. Sana has the appearance of being more populous than it actually is; for gardens occupy a part of the space within the walls. In Sana, are only twelve public baths; but many noble palaces, three of the most splendid of which have been built by the reigning imam. The palace of the late Imam El Manzor, with some others, belong to the royal family,

who are very numerous. The Arabian palaces are built in a style of architecture different from ours. The materials are, however, burnt bricks, and sometimes even hewn stones; but the houses of the common people are of bricks which have been dried in the sun. M. Niebuhr saw no glass windows, except in one palace, near the citadel. The rest of the houses have, instead of windows, merely shutters, which are opened in fair weather, and shut when it is foul. In the last case, the house is lighted by a round wicket, fitted with a piece of Muscovy glass. Some of the Arabians, use small panes of stained glass from Venice.

At Sana, and in the other cities of the East, are great Simleras or caravanseras for merchants and travellers. Each different commodity is sold in a separate market. In the market for bread, none but women are to be seen; and their little shops are portable. The several classes of mechanics work in the same manner, in particular quarters in the open street. Writers go about with their desks, and make out briefs, copy-books, and instruct scholars in the art of writing, all at the same time. There is one market, where old clothes are taken in exchange for new.

Wood for the carpenter's purposes is in general extremely dear through all Yemen; and wood for the fire at Sana is no less so. All the hills near the city are bleak and bare, and wood is therefore to be brought hither from the distance of three days journey; and a camel's burthen commonly costs two crowns. This scarcity of wood is particularly supplied by the use of a little pit-coal. Fruits are, however, very plentiful at Sana.

In the castle which stands on a hill, are two palaces. Our hero saw about it some ruins of old buildings, but, notwithstanding the antiquity of the place, no remarkable inscriptions. There is the mint, and a range of prisons for persons of different ranks. The reigning Imam resides in the city; but several princes of the blood-royal live in the castle. M. Niebuhr was conducted to a battery, as the most elevated place about these buildings; and there he met with what he had no expectation of, a German mortar, with this inscription, "*Jörg Selos Gelmick, 1513*. He saw also, upon the same battery, seven iron cannons, partly buried in the sand, and partly set upon broken carriages. These seven small cannons, with six others, near the gates, which are fired to announce the return of the different festivals, are all the artillery of the capital of Yemen.

The suburb of Bir-el-Affab is nearly adjoining to the city upon the east side. The houses of this village are scattered through the gardens, along the bank of a small river. Two leagues northward from Sana is a plain, named Rodda, which is overspread with gardens, and watered by a number of rivulets. This place bears a great resemblance to the neighbourhood of Damascus. But Sana, which some ancient authors compare to Damascus, stands on a rising ground, with nothing like florid vegetation about it. After long rains, indeed, a small rivulet runs through the city; but all the ground is dry through the rest of the year. However, by aqueducts from Mount Nikkum, the town and castle of Sana, are, at all times, supplied with abundance of excellent fresh water.

Jews are not permitted to live in the city of Sana. They live by themselves in a village, named Kaa-el-Ihud, situate near Bir-el-Affab. Their number amounts to two thousand. But in Yemen, they are treated even more contemptuously than in Turkey. Yet, the best artisans in Arabia are Jews; especially potters and goldsmiths, who come to the city, to work in their little shops by day, and in the evening retire to their village. Those Jews carry on a considerable trade.

The Banians in Sana, are reckoned to be about 125. They pay 300 crowns a-month for permission to live in the city; whereas the populous village of Kaa-el-Ihud pays only 125 crowns a-month. The heirs of a deceased Banian are obliged to pay from forty

The Arabian palaces are quite different from ours, built of burnt bricks, and furnished with the houses of the country which have been dried in no glass windows, except in the citadel. The rest of the windows, merely flutters, leather, and shut when it is too hot. Some are of Muscovy glass. Some are of stained glass from

the cities of the East, are used as mirrors for merchants and traders. Commodities are sold in a separate market for bread, none but their little shops are ports of mechanics work in the quarters in the open street. Their desks, and make out of straw scholars in the art of writing. There is one market, in exchange for new, and the purpose is in general for Yemen; and wood for the hills near the city. Wood is therefore to be had in three days' journey. Commonly costs two shillings. Wood is particularly superior. Fruits are, however,

on a hill, are two palaces, the ruins of old buildings, the antiquity of the place, no doubt. There is the mint, and a number of different ranks. The city; but several princes of the castle. M. Niebuhr, by, as the most elevated; and there he met with a German mortar, *Selas Gofnick*, 1513. He saw, seven iron cannons, and partly set upon broken cannons, with six others, fired to announce the arrival, are all the artillery of

Tab is nearly adjoining to the houses of this village in the gardens, along the two leagues northward from Jodda, which is overspread by a number of rivulets, resembling to the neighbourhood. But Sana, which some call Damafcus, stands on a high like florid vegetation, indeed, a small rivulet, at the ground is dry year. However, by aqueducts, the town and castle of Sana are supplied with abundance of

to live in the city of Sana, a village, named Kaa-el-Abbas. Their number is not great. But in Yemen, they are more numerous than in Turkey. Arabia are Jews; especially those who come to the city, to work and in the evening retire to their own considerable trade. They are reckoned to be about a month for permission as the populous village of Sana, 8000 crowns a-month. The Jews are obliged to pay from

forty to fifty crowns: and, if the defunct leaves no near relations in Yemen, his whole property devolves to the Imam.

The favourable reception our travellers met with at Sana, which was above their expectations, might have tempted them to stay longer. Many of the principal men about the Imam's court urged them to spend another year in Yemen. But they had lost two of their companions, who could have availed themselves more than they of a continued stay in Arabia. Some instances, too, of the Imam's avarice, which had come to their knowledge, added to what they had experienced in those cases in which they had been embroiled with the Dolas, impressed them with a degree of distrust, and made them fear that their present good treatment might end in a very different manner. They had, besides, found the climate hurtful to their constitutions, and their health was much injured by the changing temperature of the atmosphere. They therefore began to think seriously of sailing for India with the English, that they might save their lives and papers.

They had permission to leave Sana whenever they should think proper; but it was required that they should take a formal leave of the Imam, and show him the curiosities which the vizier had seen; a circumstance which obliged them to defer their journey for some days.

They were sent for to court on the 23d of July, and conducted into the same hall in which the Imam had received them at their former audience. Upon this second occasion, every thing passed very quietly. The Imam sat on the lowest bench beside the throne, upon a chair wrought of reeds. They kissed the hem of his robe, and both sides of his hand. Nobody was present but the vizier, the secretary, by whom they had been conducted into the presence, and six or seven slaves or servants. None of their servants were permitted to accompany them; as the vizier thought them qualified to express themselves in the language of the country. All that they showed the Imam seemed to please him highly; and both he and his minister put many questions to them concerning the manners, trade, and learning of the Europeans. A small chest of medicines, which the Imam had received from an Englishman, was then brought in. Mr. Cramer was asked to explain the virtues of those drugs; and the Imam cauled what he said, concerning their nature, to be taken down in writing.

M. Niebuhr had been indispensed when he came out to wait on the Imam; and, in consequence of standing so long, he felt himself so weak, that he was obliged to ask permission to retire. Before the door he found some of the first officers in the court, sitting on piles of stones along the wall.

The great chamberlain, Gheir Allah, with whom he had often had occasion to speak, immediately made him an offer of his seat, and gathered stones to make himself another. In this company he was again addressed with a number of questions concerning the manners and customs of Europe. Those Arabs (strongly disapproved of their practice of drinking spirituous liquors. But when our hero assured them that the Christians were forbidden to indulge in drunkenness, and that no sensible European drank more wine than was good for his health, they allowed the custom to be rational. They even acknowledged that it was absurd to abstain entirely from the use of a liquor of which they had such abundance, and which, on many occasions, might prove salutary as a remedy.

M. Niebuhr returned into the hall; and, after Mr. Cramer had finished his account of the drugs, and they had answered various other questions, they took their leave with the same ceremonies which they had observed at entering. In the afternoon, they went to take leave of vizier Fakih Achmed, and some other persons of distinction.

They had, indeed, good reasons to induce them to return to Mokha, by the same way by which they had come. It is better frequented; and upon it M. Nie-

buhr would have had an opportunity of copying the inscriptions of which the Arabs had spoken to him: but he had been so often deceived already by stories of pretended antiquities, that to the uncertain hopes which those inscriptions held out to him, he preferred the certain advantage of surveying another part of Yemen, and of seeing the Tehama in the rainy season. Our travellers acquainted the vizier, therefore, that they wished to travel by Mokha to Beit-el-Fakih. He not only approved of their intention, but told them, that the Imam would supply them with camels and asses for their journey.

On the 25th of July, the Imam sent each of them a complete suit of clothes, with a letter to the Dola of Mokha to pay them two hundred crowns as a farewell present. They were at first afraid that this prince might suppose them to have come like the Turks, to draw money from him, or that they had made their presents with interested views. But, after reflecting that they had been obliged to ransom themselves, in a manner, at Mokha, they resolved to accept that letter of credit. When they afterwards presented it to the Dola, he sent them to receive the money from his Saraf, or banker, who paid them by installments, but never without an air of dissatisfaction.

They could hardly think the vizier serious in his offer, when he told them that the Imam would furnish them with beasts of burthen. They were even afraid that this might be a scheme to delay their journey, and would rather have hired camels at their own expence. They thereupon came to an explanation with the secretary, whose answers led them to suspect an interested understanding between him and the Arabian camel-hirer, or post-maler.

They therefore ventured to address the vizier again. He showed surprise at their perplexity; because he had delivered to the secretary a written order, signed by the Imam's own hand, in which he was directed to furnish them with camels and asses for their whole journey, and with a sheep for their provisions. The secretary, on account of their impatience to depart, had not had time to bargain for a share of the profits with the camel-drivers, and was obliged to deliver up the written order, with some pieces of stuff which the Imam had sent them for clothes for their servants. He gave them also notice, that some other presents were intended them, which could not be ready till after a certain number of hours. They set out without them, and the secretary probably kept them to himself.

The dress which M. Niebuhr received from the Imam was exactly like that worn by the Arabs of distinction through Yemen. They wear the shirt over wide drawers of cotton-cloth. The jambea, a sort of crooked cutlafs, hangs by a broad girdle; and a vest with straight sleeves is covered by a flowing gown. The Arabs are strangers to the use of stockings. The only thing they wear on their feet is a sort of half-boots, or slippers. The Turks appear to abuse the generous hospitality with which the Imam treats strangers travelling through his dominions. Poor pilgrims of that nation often come from Jidda, are entertained for months at Sana, and then ask money to defray the expences of their journey home. The Imam even orders a sum of money to be paid them in some of his sea-port towns, that they may return no more to be further chargeable to so hospitable a people.

On the 26th of July, the day of their departure from Sana, they made a short stage along a bad road among bare hills, with few villages interperfed over them. Next day, the road was still worse, lying over rocky mountains. This was the most rugged road they ever saw in all Yemen. The hills were bleak and wild, and the deep valleys among them contained only a few wretched hamlets.

On the 28th of July, they proceeded down steep declivities; but the hills began now to display a small share of verdure; and they here met with several camels, loaded with very bad wood, for Sana. The towns were poor and thinly scattered. In the evening, they were attacked by legions of locusts; but

these were soon driven away by a violent storm of wind, accompanied by heavy rain.

They travelled this day onward to Mofhak, a small town situate on the summit of a precipitous hill. The houses in which travellers lodge, stand at the foot of the hill. They presented the Imam's written order to the Dola of this city, who accordingly furnished them with camels, provender, a good meal for their servants, a sheep for their own supper, and even paid for their lodging. The revenue of Mofhak, and the territory annexed to it, is enjoyed by one of the Imam's sons.

Their next day's journey was upon a still more disagreeable road. Nothing can be worse than the roads between Mofhak and Sehan. Upon the hill they found six large reservoirs, in which rain-water is collected. It becomes putrid, after standing for some time, and is then very disagreeable. In this country the Arabs believe they have most to fear from the worm in the nerves. If it be so, the cause must lay in their drinking that putrid water.

Leaving Sehan on the 30th of July, they continued their journey upon somewhat better roads which winded round the hills. Upon Harras, one of those hills, they came to a defile so narrow that a single camel could hardly pass. On either side are steep rocks; and rain, which had fallen on the preceding day, had broken a gap eight feet deep, precisely in the narrowest part of this road, and made it absolutely impassable. There was no other passage, and all their Arabs were of opinion that they should return straight to Sana, and take the road by Taces; but they were unwilling to turn so far about, and therefore resolved to fill up the gap with stones. Their Arabs laughed to hear them propose an undertaking which they supposed would give them work for several days. But they began to gather stones, and by promises prevailed with them to assist them. Three hours of hard work completed their causeway, and they passed safe over. The Arabs maintained, that, in such a case, the first Dola of Yemen would rather have returned to Sana, than have undertaken what they had accomplished. This gave no favourable impression of the spirit or industry of the nation.

On their way they met with a wandering family, the first of this character they saw in Yemen. They had no tents, but lived under trees with their asses, sheep, dogs, and fowls. Their mode of life is perfectly like that of our European gypsies. They are confined in no place, but go about the villages begging and stealing; and the poor peasants often give them something voluntarily, to remove them from their neighbourhood. A young girl of this company came to ask alms from them: her face was uncovered.

At a small distance from the dangerous pass above-mentioned, they saw the first plantation of coffee trees. They had seen none of these since their excursions in the month of May; but this production does not appear to enrich those by whom it is here cultivated. The villages in the coffee country are declining into a state of wretched poverty: the houses consist of dry walls, covered with reeds, and resemble those of the hills about Beit-el-Fakih and Dsohla. The river Sehan was so swollen that they had difficulty in passing it with their asses.

They spent the night at Samsur, a poor village. In the morning, they found themselves obliged to pass, more than a dozen times in the space of a mile, over the river Sehan, which runs with a meandering course, among rocks, and with a very rapid current. This country being very poor, the roads are not exceedingly safe, and they were therefore obliged to travel slowly, without going before their baggage. They saw here many shrubs of the species which affords the balsam of Mecca; but the inhabitants of the country know not their value, and therefore neglect to cultivate them.

In the coffee-house of Til they met with several pilgrims returning from Mecca. From this inn the country improves. It is covered with verdure: in

the valley are a number of rivulets which discharge themselves into the river Sehan; and a great many villages are scattered over the hills.

They saw a rivulet which loses itself under ground, and appears again at a considerable distance. After leaving the hills, it disappears entirely, and its waters are dispersed over the plains of the Tehama. The arable grounds among these hills are sown only with durra, a sort of coarse millet, of which the poorer people make their bread. The peasants cut out seats in the trees, and sit in these to watch their fields.

The rocks on the confines of the Tehama are basaltic, like those of the coffee-country near Beit-el-Fakih. They came to another rivulet which loses itself in the sands of the Tehama. At last they reached the plain, and arrived at Beit-el-Fakih in the evening of the first of August.

The greater part of this city having been burnt down in the month of April last, they had expected to find it desolate. They were, therefore, greatly surprised to see all the houses, or rather huts, rebuilt. Several edifices of stone, fitted to resist the force of fire, had likewise been raised.

They sent notice to the Dola of their arrival, and desired him to have camels in readiness, on which they might continue their journey. Their Arabian servants would have demanded provisions from him, that they might make merry; and shew the people in what an honourable manner they were received.

Having set out from Beit-el-Fakih on the evening of the 2d of August, they met with two men, on their way to Zebid, who were leading asses loaded chiefly with silver, which had been received by the merchants from Egypt, for coffee, and which they were sending to Mokha, to purchase India goods. This mode of carrying money about, was a proof that in this province there were no fears from robbers.

On the 3d of August, the Dola of Zebid was obliged to furnish our travellers with provisions and camels. They had expected to find the river Zebid considerably swollen; but, near the city, its channel was entirely dry; the waters having been turned off, to overflow a great extent of the adjacent fields which were surrounded by dykes. It should seem that the waters are not suffered to run in the channel of the river, till after they have been plentifully distributed over the country. The peasants construct their dykes in a very simple manner. After plowing up a field, they yoke a plank of wood to two oxen, lead these over the field, till the plank is loaded with earth, empty it upon the line where the dyke is to be drawn, and repeat this till it is formed. They stopped to rest for a few hours at Maufchid, and on the morning of the 5th of August arrived at Mokha.

They had been extremely earnest to return to this city, lest the English ship in which we intended to sail for India, might be gone before our arrival. But, several circumstances happened to detain that vessel some time longer at Mokha; and they soon felt that they had travelled too hastily in that sultry climate. M. Niebuhr fell ill on the 8th of August; Mr. Baurenfeind was confined to his bed, within a few days after; and in a short time, Mr. Cramer likewise, and all their European servants. They fortunately found their friend Mr. Scott still here, who kindly supplied them with European refreshments, which did them more service than they could have received from the use of the best medicines. But all his friendly cares could not remove the lurking distemper which soon afterwards broke out with renewed violence, and deprived our hero of all his remaining fellow travellers.

The city of Mokha stands in a very dry and barren situation: its fortifications are the walls which surround it, some towers on the way to Musa, which are dignified with the name of castles, and two other castles of the same sort, upon the two arms of the harbour. The greatest of these two castles is called Kalla Tejar, and the smallest Kalla Abdurrah, from the name of two saints, buried in these two places. They are provided with some few
pieces

of rivulets which discharge
Sehan; and a great many
the hills.

lofes itself under ground,
siderable distance. After
ars entirely, and its waters
ins of the Tehama. The
e hills are sown only with
illet, of which the poorer
The peasants cut out seats
e to watch their fields.
s of the Tehama are basal.
nuntry near Biet-el-Fakih,
nulet which lofes itself in
At last they reached the
l-Fakih in the evening of

city having been burnt
il last, they had expected
were, therefore, greatly
es, or rather huts, rebuilt
atter to resist the force of

Dola of their arrival, and
s in readiness, on which
ourney. Their Arabian
ded provisions from him,
s, and shew the people in
they were received.

el-Fakih on the evening
net with two men, on their
ading asses loaded chiefly
n received by the merce-
fee, and which they were
hase India goods. This
out, was a proof that in
ears from robbers.

the Dola of Zebid was
sellers with provisions and
d to find the river Zebid
ear the city, its channel
s having been turned off,
the adjacent fields which

It should seem that the
un in the channel of the
ten plentifully distributed
peasants construct their
ner. After plowing up a
wood to two oxen, lead
lank is loaded with earth,
the dyke is to be drawn,
ed. They stopped to rest
s, and on the morning of
Mokha.

earnest to return to this
which we intended to sail
efore our arrival. But,
ed to detain that vessel
and they soon felt that
y in that sultry climate.
th of August; Mr. Bau-
hed, within a few days
r. Cramer likewise, and

They fortunately found
re, who kindly supplied
ments, which did them
I have received from the
But all his friendly cares
ng distemper which soon
ewed violence, and de-
ining fellow travellers.

in a very dry and barren
re the walls which sur-
way to Musa, which are
sles, and two other cas-
he two arms of the har-
e two castles is called
llest Kalla Abdurrah-
ints, buried in these
vided with some few
pieces

pieces of cannon. The houses of the city are
built of stone; and some are handsome, in the style
of those of the suburb of Sana. However, there are
others, both within and without the walls, no better
than the huts common through all the Tehama. In
the environs of this city are abundance of date-trees
and many agreeable gardens.

The city of Mokha is not ancient, being built about
four centuries since. Like many other cities in the
Tehama, this owes its origin to a saint, the celebrated
Schiech Schödeli. This Schiech acquired at that
period so great a reputation, that persons eagerly

resorted from the most distant countries to receive
his instructions. Some of his devout disciples built
huts round his hermitage, which stood on the sea-side.
A small village arose on this spot, and was by degrees
enlarged into a city.

Our Readers will find in Mr. Bruce's Travels, all
the remaining information which M. Niebuhr gives
of this City:—we shall therefore proceed with the
more interesting part of the Work.

C H A P. VI.

*Their Departure from Mokha—Streight of Babel-Mandel—Death of Mr. BAURENFELD—Of their Servant—They
see Serpens—Land in the Harbour of Bombay—Description of the City—Proper Mode of living there—A valuable
Work—Government, Trade, &c.—Of the Isle Elephanta—The Indian Temple—The Figures, &c.—Death of Mr.
CRAMER—Departure from Bombay—Arrive at Surat—Description thereof—Conclusion.*

THE vessel belonging to Mr. Scott, with whom
they were to take their passage for Bombay,
having been detained for a considerable time at Mok-
ha, they could not leave the city till the 23d of August
1763. Though Messrs. Cramer and Baurenfeld were
at this time very ill, yet they determined not to lose the
opportunity of leaving Arabia. As to M. Niebuhr,
his health was so far re-established, that he could safely
venture upon the voyage to India.

The famous Streight of Babel-Mandel, where the
Arabian gulf joins the ocean, and where they arrived
on the second day of their voyage, is about ten Ger-
man miles in breadth. It is interspersed with small
isles, of which that nearest Africa is called Perim,
and forms with the African continent a channel,
through which ships usually pass, notwithstanding the
rapid current which prevails in it. In the sea, be-
tween Arabia and India, there is generally a rapid
current driving to the east, with so much violence,
that it is impossible to reckon the rate at which a ship
runs in passing here. In this sea, they met likewise
with north winds so cold that they were obliged to put
on warmer clothes.

In this first part of their voyage, Mr. Cramer's
health seemed to recover daily; but Mr. Baurenfeld
grew worse and worse. He sunk into a deep lethar-
gy, and died on the 29th of August.

Next day after Mr. Baurenfeld, died also their
servant, Berggreen, a Swede, who had made several
campaigns in the service of a colonel of hussars.
This man, who was naturally robust, and had been
inured to fatigue, had at first laughed at the idea of
the hardships of a voyage to Arabia; but he sunk un-
der them at last.

The passage between Arabia and India was formerly
thought very dangerous. Ships were carried on by
so rapid a current, that they could neither keep their
reckoning, nor distinguish the coast during the rainy
season; several were consequently lost on the low
coasts of Malabar. These misfortunes have ceased to
take place, since an observation was made, which has
been thought new, although Arriao speaks of it as
being known to the ancients: in the Indian ocean, at
a certain distance from land, a great many water ser-
pents, from twelve to thirteen inches in length,
are to be seen rising above the surface of the
water. When these serpents are seen, they are an
indication that the coast is exactly two degrees dis-
tant.

They saw some of these serpents, for the first time,
on the evening of the 9th of September; on the 11th
they landed in the harbour of Bombay; and on the
13th entered the city.

The Isle of Bombay is two German miles in length,
by rather more than half a mile in breadth. A nar-
row channel divides it from another small isle of little
value, called by the English Old Woman's Island.

Bombay produces nothing but cocones and rice; and
on the shore a considerable quantity of salt is collect-
ed. The inhabitants are obliged to bring their pro-
visions from the continent, or from Sallet, a large
and fertile island not far from Bombay, and belonging
to the Mahrautas. The sea-breezes, and the frequent
rains, cool the atmosphere, and render the climate
of this island temperate. Its air was formerly un-
healthy and dangerous, but has become pure since the
English drained the marshes, in the city and its envi-
rons. Still, however, many Europeans die suddenly
here; but they are new-comers, who shorten their
days by a mode of life unsuitable to the climate; eat-
ing great quantities of beef and pork, which the
Indian legislator had wisely forbidden, and drinking
copiously of the strong wines of Portugal in the hot-
test season. They likewise persist obstinately in wear-
ing the European dress, which by its ligatures impedes
the free circulation of the blood, and by confining
the limbs, renders the heat more intolerable. The
Orientals again live to a great age, and are little sub-
ject to diseases, because they keep the body at ease in
wide flowing robes, abstain from animal food and
strong liquors, and eat their principal meal in the
evening after sunset.

The city of Bombay, situate in the northern part
of the island, is a quarter of a German mile in length,
but narrow. It is defended by an indifferent citadel
towards the sea, and at the middle of the city. On
the land side, its fortifications are very good. During
the war the East-India-Company expended no less
than 600,000 French livres a year, in the construction
of new works for its defence; and, although these
works are no longer carried on with the same activity,
yet the fortifications of Bombay are still continued,
so that it must be in a short time the most consid-
erable fortress in India. Beside the town, there are in
the island some small forts sufficient to protect it from
any irruption of the Indians.

In this city are several handsome buildings; among
which are the Director's palace, and a large and ele-
gant church near it. The houses are not flat roofed
here, as through the rest of the East, but are covered
with tiles in the European fashion. The English have
glass windows. The other inhabitants of the island
have their windows of small pieces of transparent
shells framed in wood, which renders the apartments
very dark. In the East it is the fashion to live during
the dry season in chambers open on one side. The
houses of Bombay are in general neither splendid nor
commodious in any great degree. The harbour is
spacious, and sheltered from all winds. A valuable
work, which has been constructed at the Company's
expense, is two balcons hewn out in the rock, in
which two ships may be at once careened. A third
is now preparing. This work, which has been very
expensive, likewise brings in a considerable annual
return.

return. Strangers pay very dear for liberty to carcen in these basons.

The toleration which the English grant to all religions has rendered this island very populous. During these hundred years, for which it has been in the possession of the Company, the number of its inhabitants has greatly increased. Of these the Europeans are naturally the least numerous class; and this rather as they do not marry, and their numbers consequently do not multiply. The other inhabitants are Portuguese, or Indian Catholics; Hindoos, the original possessors of the country; Persians from Kerman; Mahometans of different sects; and in the last place some Oriental Christians.

The English have a handsome church at Bombay, but only one English clergyman to perform the services of religion in it; and, if he should die, the congregation would be absolutely deprived of a pastor; for the Company have no chaplains in their ships, and entertain no clergy in their settlements on the coast. Wherefore, when a child is to be baptized, which is not often, as the English rarely marry in India, a Danish missionary is sent for, to administer the sacrament of baptism.

The Catholics, a scanty remainder of the Portuguese, and a great number of Indians, their converts, are much more numerous than the Protestants. They have abundance of priests, as well Europeans as Indians, who attend their studies at Goa. To superintend this herd, the Pope named some years ago a bishop of Bombay, but the governor of the island sent him away, declaring that they needed not Catholic priests of so high a rank. The Catholic churches are decent buildings, and are sumptuously ornamented within. The Jews had once a college and a church in the middle of this island. Their college is at present the country-house of the English governor. And the old church has been converted into a suite of assembly-rooms.

All religions are here indulged in the free exercise of their public worship, not only in their churches, but openly, in festivals and processions, and none takes offence at another. Yet government allows not the Catholic priests to give a loose to their zeal for making proselytes. When any person chooses to become a Catholic, the reasons must be laid before government, and if they are judged valid, he is then allowed to profess his conversion. The priests complain of the difficulty of obtaining this permission. They, however, have considerable success in conversion among the slaves, who, being struck with the pomp of the Romish worship, and proud of wearing the image of a saint upon their breasts, choose rather to frequent the Catholic churches than any others, and persuade their countrymen, as they successively arrive, to follow their example. M. Niebuhr had purchased a young Catholic negro at Bombay, who was also born of Christian parents, and intended to bring him with him into Europe; but, fearing afterwards that the Mussulmans in Persia and Turkey might give him trouble, and pretend that he was carrying away a Mahometan boy in order to make him a Christian, he gave him away before his departure from India.

The English East-India-Company govern their settlements in a mode of administration different from that of the Portuguese and Dutch. These last nations intrust the disposal of all places to the power of a single governor; the Portuguese to the viceroy of Goa; the Dutch, to the governor-general of Batavia. The conquests of the English are, on the contrary, all divided into four independent governments, each of which receives its orders immediately from the Court of Directors at London. The seats of these four governments are, Bombay for the coast of Malabar, Madras for the Coromandel coast, Calcutta for Bengal, and Bencoolen for the island of Sumatra.

Although independent of each other, the several English governors are however obliged to lend one

another mutual aid in extraordinary exigencies. On a late occasion, news being received at Bombay of an insurrection, the council of Bombay, without waiting for orders from the Court of Directors in London, sent troops and artillery to Calcutta. These different establishments are all governed in the same manner. All processs between subjects of the Company are determined by the law of England.

The council or regency of Bombay consist of a governor, with the title of president, and twelve counsellors, who are all merchants, except the commander of the troops, who held lately the rank of major. The Company have of late made some changes upon this arrangement. The president must be a military man; the commander of the troops is a brigadier, and has a voice in the council; and the director of the naval affairs has a place among the twelve counsellors who were formerly all merchants. The other servants of the Company are factors and writers of different ranks. These rise from lower to higher places in the order of seniority,—even to the very first offices, that of president only excepted; who is nominated by the Court of Directors in London. The servants of the Company are sometimes transferred from one department to another.

The president of the council of Bombay is obliged to reside in the island; as are also those counsellors who hold the offices of treasurer and inspector of the Company's stores. The other counsellors are sent out to manage the concerns of the Company's trade in the establishments dependent on the government of Bombay. In M. Niebuhr's time, the directors of the trade at Surat, Tellicherry, Amjengo, and Batta, were members of the council. In three of these places, the Company have forts in which they keep up garrisons of sufficient strength. Since he left that country, the English have conquered Baradich, a great town, north from Surat, which was subject to a Nabob of its own, and was formerly the seat of a Dutch factory. A counsellor from Bombay now resides as director in this city.

Factors are sent to the inferior settlements; such as, in the province of Scindi, the great city of Laha, the seat of the sovereign of the country; Lar Bunder; and Schah Bunder. The Company have likewise factors at Abu Schahr, Cambay, Onor, Calicut, and even in the fort of Victoria. This fort stands on a great river, which holds its course through the interior country, even to as great distance as Puna, the seat of the chief of the Mahrattas. The English acquired this place, with some adjacent villages, from the Mahrattas, in exchange for Geri, a fortress once belonging to the famous Angria, of which they had taken possession. The Company expected, that, by means of this river, they might extend their trade through the country of the Mahrattas. This project having, however failed, they avail themselves of the fort, and purchase butcher's-meat from the Mahometans in the neighbourhood, as the Hindoos about Bombay will not sell their cattle for slaughter.

It is for the benefit of the Company to send its servants successively to different places, before they are advanced to the first employments. Factors thus gain a knowledge of the affairs of all the different settlements subject to the government of which they are afterwards to be counsellors. The Company, however, allow but very moderate salaries to its factors and directors. But they are permitted to trade on their own account in India only from Dele-goa near the Cape of Good Hope, to China, and northward, as far as Jidda and Batta. By means of this extensive trade chiefly, do the directors acquire that wealth which is the astonishment and envy of their countrymen in Europe. These advantages for the acquisition of wealth in trade, are reserved for the English exclusively. The Company admit strangers into none but the military department of their service, and in it they must enter the lowest rank; but advancement is pretty rapid: for their mode of life cuts off the officers very fast.

ordinary exigencies. On
g received at Bombay of
ncil of Bombay, without
the Court of Directors in
rtillery to Calcutta. These
all governed in the same
ween subjects of the Com-
: law of England.

y of Bombay consist of a
of president, and twelve
erchants, except the com-
o held lately the rank of
have of late made some
ment. The president must
mmander of the troops is a
e in the council; and the
irs has a place among the
re formerly all merchants.
Company are factors and
These rise from lower to
of seniority,—even to the
sident only excepted; who
of Directors in London.
ny are sometimes transfer-
o another.

ncil of Bombay is obliged
are also those counsellors
nsurer and inspector of the
ther counsellors are sent
s of the Company's trade
ndent on the government
hr's time, the directors of
erry, Anjengo, and Baſra,
ncil. In three of these
orts in which they keep up
ygh. Since he left that
e conquered Baradſch, a
rat, which was subject to a
as formerly the seat of a
lor from Bombay now re-

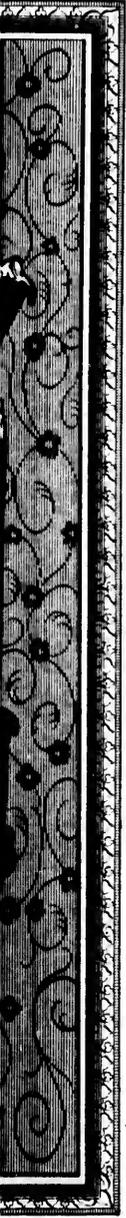
inferior settlements; such
di, the great city of Latta,
f the country; Lar Bun-
The Company have like-
Cambay, Onor, Calicut,
toria. This fort stands on
its course through the in-
great distance as Puna, the
hrattas. The English ac-
e adjacent villages, from
for Geri, a fortress once
ngria, of which they had
mpany expected, that, by
might extend their trade
Mahrattas. This project
y avail themselves of the
s-meat from the Mahome-
l, as the Hindoos about
attle for slaughter.

he Company to send its
erent places, before they
poyments. Factors thus
ffairs of all the different
overnment of which they
sellors. The Company,
moderate salaries to its
ut they are permitted to
in India only from Del-
od Hope, to China, and
and Baſra. By means of
do the directors acquire
onishment and envy of
c. These advantages for
rade, are reserved for the
Company admit strangers
department of their ser-
uter the lowest rank; but
d: for their mode of life
t.

Supper at the PORTLOCKS. Via COLLECTION OF VOYAGES & TRAVELS.



A SICK PERSON presented to IXORA an Indian City for the recovery of his Health.



C A SICK PERSON (presented to IXORA an Indian City for the recovery of his health.)

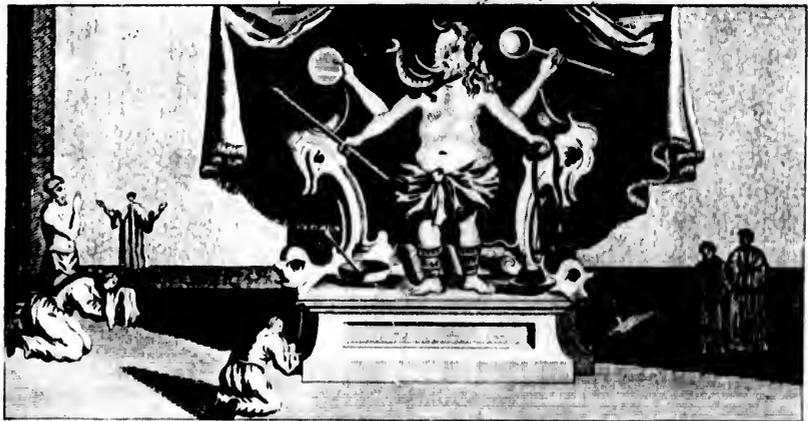
Engraved for PORTLOCK'S, *See* COLLECTION of VOYAGES & TRAVELS.



A very remarkable form under which IXORA is worshipped in the EAST INDIES.



The Idol BRUMA, or BRAMA, another Indian object of Religious adoration.



The Heathen God QUENEVADI, who is called 'Son of Heaven'.

Published by B. & C. 15, No. 17, St. Paul's Church-Yard.

In the government of which Bombay is the centre, the Company maintain seventeen companies of regular troops, each consisting of about an hundred and twenty men, with three companies of artillery. The soldiers are mostly Europeans, except some Topases, or Catholic Indians, dressed in the European fashion. At Bombay there is also a body of three thousand Sepoys, or Indian soldiers, Pagan and Mahometan, who wear their own original dress, and are commanded by their own officers. Each company of this corps has an inferior European officer to teach the Sepoys their exercise; for, when commanded by Europeans, they form good troops. At Surat, the Company have in their pay a small corps of Arabs from the Persian Gulf, who are in such high reputation in India for their courage, that every Rajah desires to have some of them in his service.

The artillery of Bombay is in very good condition, owing to the care of a Swede, whom the English sent out in 1752, and who brought with him a company of gunners whom he had raised in Germany. Bombay was thus furnished with a good number of able workmen, chiefly masons and carpenters. Those Germans likewise engaged many of their countrymen to leave the Dutch, and enter into the English service. The whole coast from Bombay to Basra, is inhabited by people addicted to piracy, such as the Malays, the Sangeries, the Kulis, the Arabs, with other petty nations. The Indians dare not travel from one port to another, otherwise than in caravans, and under the protection of an English vessel, for which they are obliged to pay very dear.

The Company find it not necessary to pay their court in a particular manner to any nation in these latitudes, except the Mahrattas, who are masters of the coast and of the isles about Bombay, and by consequence in some measure masters of the subsistence of this settlement. The marine force of the Mahrattas is not formidable; but they can bring 80,000 cavalry into the field. This residue of the old Indians, retired among the hills, still retain power which renders them formidable to the Moguls. The great Aurengzebe, to keep peace with the Mahrattas, granted them a fourth of the customs paid by several provinces; a revenue which they have found means to enlarge since the rise of the last troubles in Indostan. They ventured to attack the English in a time of peace, and in 1765 took a man of war pertaining to that nation. The Company, instead of revenging this insult, thought it more prudent to settle the affair amicably. The sovereign of the Mahrattas, who is a Bramin, as are also his principal officers, resides at Puna, a great town in the interior country. He farms out his provinces to the Bramins, who again employ under-farmers of their own cast. According to accounts, the government of this nation is good, although arbitrary. Justice is impartially administered; agriculture and manufactures flourish; and the country is very populous. The Mahrattas, although they thus practise justice among themselves, are, however guilty of great barbarities in their frequent incursions into the neighbouring provinces under the government of Mahometans. They pillage and lay waste all before them in the most cruel manner.

All the English ships for India sail to one of the four principal settlements. Those which sail for Bombay are commonly five months in their passage. In one instance, the voyage is known to have been performed in three months and eighteen days. Few of those ships, of which there arrive commonly four in the year, return to Europe immediately after discharging their cargoes. They, for the most part, make first some voyage to a different settlement, as far often as China, by which they gain considerable freights, when the governor favours them so far as to grant them his permission. Each of these ships used formerly to take out 40,000 crowns; but, since the Company have acquired such an extent of territory in India, they have no necessity to lend ready money

from London to their settlements. The principal article with which the ships from India are freighted, is cloth of all sorts, which is sold mostly at Basra, and in Persia. The others are cochineal, iron, guns, arms, copper, ivory, &c. The crew of these ships carry out likewise, each man a parcel of goods on his own account. A great part of the cargoes of these ships is publicly sold, soon after they are unladen. The Indian merchants gather in to the sale; and the goods are disposed of by auction, to the highest bidder. The remainder are carried to the dependent settlements. The ships return to Europe, laden with pepper from Malabar, saltpetre from Scindia, and stuffs from Surat. The crews carry home parcels of perfumes, gums, and spiceries of different sorts, the produce of India.

The small isle Elephanta, situate near Bombay, belongs to the Mahrattas, and is inhabited by an hundred poor Indian families. Its proper name is Cali Pouri. The Europeans call it Elephanta, from the statue of an elephant formed of black stone, which stands in this island, in the open plain, near the shore. This island being of small importance, the Mahrattas take no care of it; and the English are at liberty to visit it without passports, which are requisite, when they go to the isle of Salset.

The Indian temple here is an hundred and twenty feet long, and the same in breadth, without including the measurement of the chapels and the adjacent chambers. Its height within is nearly fifteen feet, although the floor has been greatly raised by the accession of dust, and of the sediment of the water which falls into it in the rainy season. The whole of this vast structure, situate in a hill of considerable height, is cut out in the solid rock. The pillars supporting the roof are also parts of the rock which have been left standing by the architect. They are of an uncommon order; but have an agreeable enough effect. The walls of this temple are ornamented with figures in bas-relief, so prominent, that they are joined to the rock only by the back. Many of these figures are of a colossal size; being some ten, some twelve, and some even fourteen feet high. Neither in design, nor in execution, indeed, can these bas-reliefs be compared with the works of the Grecian sculptors; but they are greatly superior in elegance to the remains of the ancient Egyptian sculpture. They are also finer than the bas-reliefs from the ruins of Persepolis. No doubt, then, but the arts were cultivated by the ancient Indians with better success than is commonly supposed. Probably these figures mark events relative to the mythology and fabulous history of the Indians, for they seem to be representatives of gods and heroes. The modern Indians are so ignorant, that M. Niebuhr could obtain from them no information concerning those antiquities. One man, who pretended to explain the character of one of the largest statues, assured him that it was Kaun, one of their ancient fabulous princes, famous for his cruelties committed upon his sister's children. This statue, which is in other respects well formed, has eight arms; an emblem of power, which the Indians give to their allegorical figures. None of these figures has a beard, and all of them very scanty whiskers. At present, the young Indians wear all whiskers; and such as are advanced in life have commonly the whole beard to grow. The lips of these figures are always thick, and their ears are lengthened out by large pendants; ornaments which they almost all wear. Several of them wear a small cord, in the fashion of a scarf; a mode now prevalent among the Bramins. One woman has but a single breast; from which it should seem, that the story of the Amazons was not unknown to the old Indians. Several figures, as well masculine as feminine, have one arm leaning on the head of a male, or a female dwarf; from which it should seem that these monsters of the human species have always been an object of luxury and magnificence among the tasteless great. Several of these figures have hair on the head, which seems not to be

S3 TRAVELS.



EAST INDIES.



Introduction.



General.

of its native growth, but is perfectly like a wig; so that this covering for the head appears to be of very ancient invention. The female bosom is always perfectly round; from which it seems that the Indian fashion of wearing thin wooden cases upon the breasts is also very ancient. One woman too appears bearing her child in the same attitude which is still in use among the Indians, and which forms those children to stand firmly upon their feet and legs. The head-dress of these female figures is commonly an high-crowned bonnet; also a turban. Some are bare-headed, and have their hair at least well combed, if it is not rather a periwig they wear. Several are naked. The dresses of others is more nearly like that of the moderns. Some of the women wear a cap. In many places the handkerchief, still used through all India, is observable in the hands of the inferior figures. In several parts of these bas-reliefs appears the famous Cobra de Capello, a sort of serpent, which the human figures treat with great familiarity. These serpents are still very common in the isle of Elephanta, the inhabitants of which are not afraid of them, but say that they are friendly to man, and do no harm, unless when intentionally provoked. Certain it is, however, that their bite is mortal.

On each side of this temple is a chapel, nine feet high, consequently lower than the principal building. The walls of these chapels are also covered with bas-relief figures, on a smaller scale than those upon the walls of the temple. Behind the chapels are three chambers, the walls of which display no sculptures; their use our hero could not conjecture. The smallest of the chapels, having no sculptured figure, but that of the god Gonnis, is still in a state of neat preservation, which must be owing to the care of the present inhabitants, who repair thither to perform their devotions. Before the entrance into this chapel, M. Niebuhr found a pile of shapeless stones, newly bedaubed with red paint. He supposed that the modern Indians no longer adore their ancient gods, but have adopted new objects of worship, whom they represent by stones painted red, for want of more artificial statues. In many places through India, indeed, may be seen similar piles of red stones, which are held in high veneration among a people who have now almost entirely lost all knowledge of the fine arts.

The rest of the temple being perfectly neglected, is now the haunt of serpents and beasts of prey. One dares not enter it without first making several discharges of fire arms, to expel those creatures. Even after using this precaution, a Dutchman was once in great danger from swarms of wasps of a peculiar species, which he had roused from their nests with his gun. In the hot season, horned cattle resort to the lower chambers of the temple, to drink of the water which is deposited there during the rains.

There is no way of obtaining any information from the present inhabitants of the island, concerning the period when this temple was built. Those good folks relate with simplicity, that a number of strangers came one night into the island, and reared this edifice before the return of day-light. They seem very fond of the marvellous in India.

On a hill at a small distance, there is said to be another temple; but to it there is no open road: and as the grass was at that time very tall, our hero's guides would not accompany him thither, for fear of serpents and wild animals.

It was their intention to return into Europe through Turkey, and take their passage on board a ship of the Company's which was to sail for Basra the beginning of the next year; but the state of their health would not allow them to take that opportunity. Mr. Cramer, sinking at length under his complaints, died at Bombay, in spite of all medical assistance, February the 10th, 1764.

M. Niebuhr, now the sole survivor of all his party, thought it his duty to attend to his own preservation, and to provide for the safe conveyance of their papers

to Europe, as he feared that these would be lost, if he also should die by the way. Foreseeing that he should have to undergo the same fatigues in passing through Turkey, which he had already encountered in Arabia, and which the weak state of his health was unfit to bear, he resolved to set out straight for London, by the first ship which should sail for Europe. In the mean time, to gratify his curiosity with a sight of Surat, he took the opportunity of going on board an English ship bound on a voyage to that port.

They sailed from Bombay on the 24th of March 1764, and were obliged to stop at Mahim, a small town in the northern part of the isle, where a member of the Council of Bombay constantly resides.

On the 26th of March they arrived in the road of Surat, at the distance of three German miles from the city. They went on shore at Domus, a village distinguished by the residence of some, and by a vast Indian fig-tree, which is held in high veneration. Here they took a Kakkri, the carriage common in the country, which is neither more nor less than a covered cart, drawn by two oxen, which are driven by a peasant seated on the pole. M. Niebuhr had here an instance of the great dryness of this country, for the movement of their light carriage raised a cloud of dust about them. He never suffered so much from the dust, even in caravans of some hundreds of camels, horses, and mules.

The city of Surat stands in a large and fertile plain, on the banks of a considerable river, named Tappi. On the land side, it is encompassed with two brick walls, which divide it into the inner and the outer town. The citadel stands within the inner, on the shore of the Tappi, and is divided by trenches from the town. One may walk round the outer wall in two hours and a half; the space which it encloses is chiefly occupied by gardens, having but a very few houses.

The larger houses are flat-roofed here, as through the rest of the East, with courts before them. The houses of the common people are high-roofed. Although Surat has been long under the dominion of the Mahometan Moguls, yet here is no handsome mosque with towers, as among the Turks and Arabians. The squares of this city are large, and the streets spacious, but not paved; so that the dust is insufferable. Each street has gates of its own, with which it is shut up in times of turbulence; and these are as frequent here as at Cairo.

At Surat provisions are plentiful and cheap; the air, too, is wholesome, notwithstanding the warmth of the climate. One thing unfavourable is, that ships cannot enter the harbour, because the Tappi is full of sand-banks. This river is too low in the dry season; and in the rains swells too suddenly, to such a height as to overflow all the neighbourhood.

Universal toleration and liberty are enjoyed in this city by all religious professions; and its inhabitants are accordingly very numerous. The Europeans residing here estimate the population of the city at a million of souls. But this calculation M. Niebuhr esteems above the truth, by two thirds.

One thing singular in Surat is, that here is no hospital for human beings, but an extensive establishment of this nature for sick or maimed animals. When the Europeans turn out an old horse, or any other domestic animal, to perish as useless, the Indians voluntarily assume the care of it, and place it in this house, which is full of infirm, decrepid cows, sheep, hens, rabbits, pigeons, &c. M. Niebuhr saw in it a great tortoise, which was blind and helpless, and, as he was told, 125 years of age. The charitable Indians keep a physician on purpose for these animals.

The environs of Surat are not without gardens, which are the property either of Europeans, or of natives of the country. The finest of those belonging to Europeans is the property of the Dutch East-India-Company. Its aspect is rich and charming.

To obtain a proper idea of an Indian garden, our hero went to see one which was formed by a late

efe would be lost, if he
 oreseeing that he should
 gues in passing through
 encountered in Arabia,
 his health was unfit to
 raight for London, by
 l for Europe. In the
 riosity with a fight of
 y of going on board an
 ge to that port.

on the 24th of March
 op at Mahim, a small
 e ile, where a member
 stantly resides.

arrived in the road of
 German miles from the
 Domus, a village dis-
 f some, and by a vast
 d in high veneration,
 e carriage common in
 more nor less than a
 oxen, which are driven
 hole. M. Niebuhr had
 dryness of this country,
 carriage raised a cloud
 r suffered so much from
 some hundreds of ca-

n large and fertile plain,
 e river, named Tappi,
 mpassed with two brick
 e inner and the outer
 ithin the inner, on the
 vided by trenches from
 ound the outer wall in
 ace which it encloses a
 having but a very few

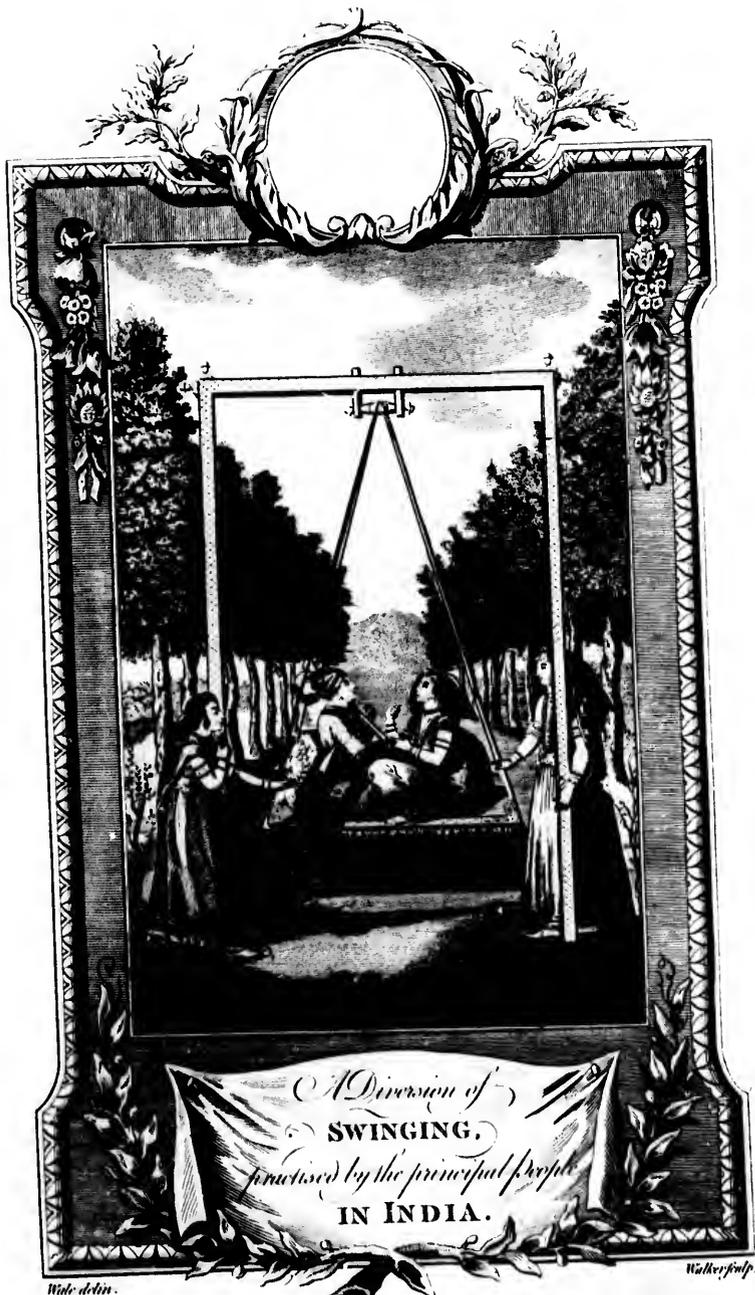
roofed here, as through
 orts before them. The
 are high-roofed. Al-
 nder the dominion of
 here is no handsome
 ng the Turks and Ara-
 city are large, and the
 ed; so that the dull is
 gates of its own, with
 turbulence; and these

ro,
 nteous and cheap; the
 ithstanding the warmth
 favourable is, that ships
 cause the Tappi is full
 too low in the dry sea-
 oo suddenly, to such a
 ighbourhood.

erty are enjoyed in this
 ma; and its inhabitants
 ous. The Europeans
 ulation of the city at a
 alculatation M. Niebuhr
 wo thirds.

it is, that here is no Hof-
 an extensive establish-
 k or maimed animals.
 t an old horse, or any
 sh as useless, the Indian
 f it, and place it in the
 decrepid cows, sheep,
 M. Niebuhr saw in it
 blind and helpless, and
 f age. The charitable
 rpose for these animals
 e not without gardens,
 er of Europeans, or of
 finest of those belonging
 f the Dutch East-India-
 and charming.

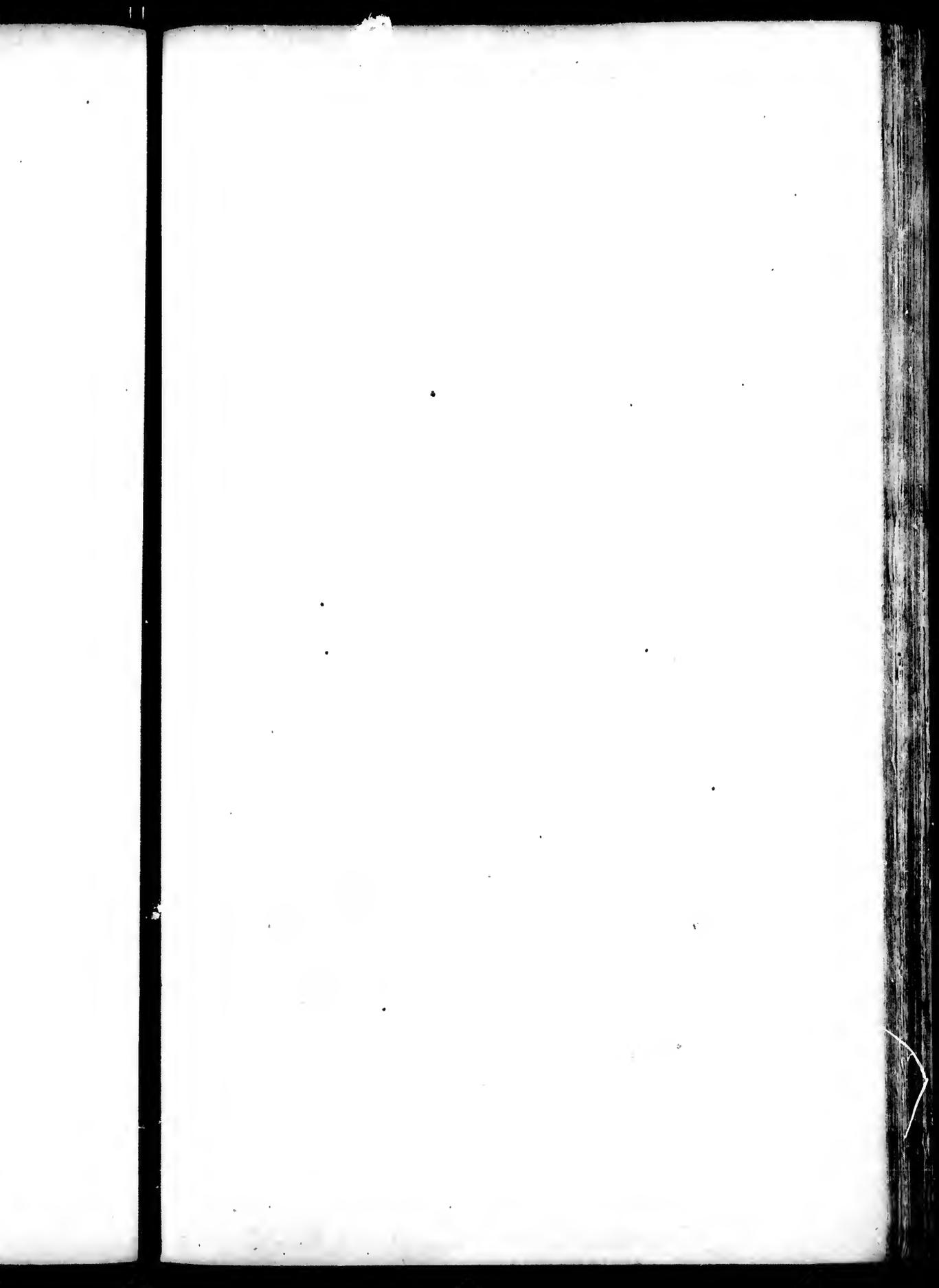
an Indian garden, our
 i was formed by a late
 Nabob,



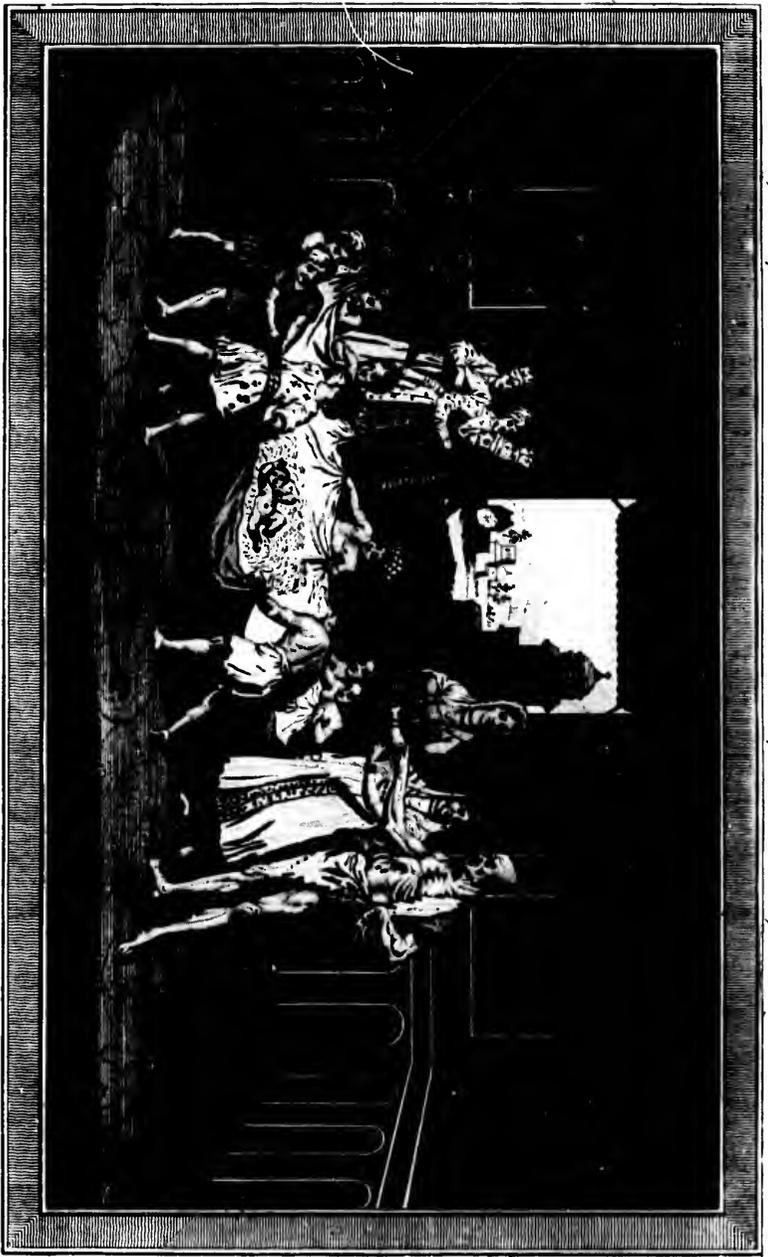
Wille delin.

Walker sculp.

Published by H. M. Hoop, No. 10, Paternoster Row.



Engraved for PORTLOCKS. In a COLLECTION of VOYAGES & TRAVELS.



Remarkable CEREMONY of the BANIANs, on giving a Child its NAME.
Engraved by D. G. W. in 1781.

Edited for PORTLOCK'S. *his* COLLECTION of VOYAGES & TRAVELS.



Nabob, at the expence of 500,000 rupees. This garden was of considerable extent, but had not the usual appearance of regularity in the design, and had in it nothing in the fashion of European gardens, but a few ponds and fountains: the rest was a confused medley of ouidings and small orchards. Among the buildings was one of great dimensions, having baths and saloons, and ornamented with the magnificence of India. The other buildings are harems for the Nabob's wives, entirely separate from each other, so that each lady can hold her little court apart. Every haram has some one good apartment; but all the rest of it consists of very narrow chambers for the slaves. What was most striking in this garden, was the passage from one suite of rooms to another, by paths so narrow, so winding, and so blocked up by doors, as to afford a strong instance of the distrust with which the unfortunate great in despotic countries regard all about them; so that they are never free from anxiety, and are obliged to stand continually on their guard against surprise.

The principal inhabitants of Surat are Mahometans, and mostly strangers, although employed in the service of the government. They are equally zealous in the observance of their law as the Turks and Arabians. Although of the sect of the Sunnites, they tolerate the Shiites, and even permit them to celebrate the festival of Haffein. They make no scruple of drinking wine publicly, or of lending money upon interest.

All people of distinction in Surat, and through the rest of India, speak and write the Persian language. Hence has this language been received at the courts, and the knowledge of it is very useful for the dispatch of business. In trade, corrupt Portuguese is the language used.

The Mussulmans of Surat bring about them a great many Fakirs of their own religion, who are the most insolent beggars in the world. Those Fakirs will often sit down before a house, and continue there till the owner pays the sum they ask, or make a composition with them. As the police interferes not to check these insolent mendicants, people must be content with getting quit of them at any price.

At Surat, our hero had occasion to witness the Mussulman procession at the festival of Bairam. The counsellor from Bombay, who resides in the citadel of Surat, and represents a Nabob, is obliged to announce this ceremony by a discharge of cannons, and to assist at it in person. It is a strange sight, to see an English merchant in the European dress, attended by a party of British soldiers, and with the train of an Indian prince, conduct and regulate a religious festival of the Mahometans. The English director made the Indians sensible of his importance upon this occasion, by refusing to discharge his cannons in the night; a favour requested of him by the Nabob of the city, in order to give the people timely warning of the approach of the festival.

In this procession there was nothing remarkable, except the numbers of kakkris, palanquins, and horses, a few cannons, a great deal of martial music, and the Nabob's soldiers. The governor rode upon an elephant, on the back of which he sat on a sort of throne, raised upon four pillars. This elephant was, like most of the horses and oxen which drew the kakkris, painted red.

Kakkris, the carriages most common through India, are of a very simple construction, run upon two wheels, and are drawn by oxen: the driver sits on a large pole, consisting of several bamboos. It is not in any ornaments about these vehicles, but in the cattle which draw them, that the object of pride and expence to the Indian lies: a pair of white oxen for one of these carriages will cost 600 rupees. These oxen have the points of their horns ornamented with silver; their pace is quick, but less so than that of horses.

The citizens of Surat display their magnificence likewise in their palanquins. This is a sort of couch

suspended from a bamboo, and borne by four men. The traveller reclines in this vehicle, and is shaded from the sun by a curtain. A palanquin completely ornamented with silver, covered with rich stuffs, and suspended upon a handsome bamboo, properly bent, will cost above 200 pounds sterling. The bamboo only of the governor of Bombay's palanquin, exclusive of the other ornaments, cost 125 pounds sterling. The bearers of the palanquins are Italian servants, who wear no clothes, except a small linen cloth about their loins, with close flat bonnets on their heads, as liveries, and are commonly employed in keeping the rooms clean within the houses. The European ladies are at first shocked at the indecency of being carried by naked men, but soon learn to accustom themselves to it. The palanquins of the Mahometan ladies are incommodious wooden boxes, entirely close, and fixed upon a straight pole.

The Hindoos, the aboriginal inhabitants of the country, compose the most considerable part of the population of Surat. They are almost all of the cast of the Banians; and hence their skill and dexterity in matters of calculation and economy often raise them to places of considerable trust, in the collection of the taxes and customs for the Mahometans. These Banians, being born to trade, have engrossed the commerce of India to such a degree, that all foreign nations are obliged to employ them as brokers; in which employment they give better satisfaction than the Jews in Turkey. Europeans have never found reason to repent the intrusting even their whole fortune to the Banians, who continue to give astonishing proofs of their probity and fidelity. Some of them are very rich; but they live all in a style of moderate simplicity, wearing for dress only a plain robe of white cotton.

At Surat there are numbers of Persians, who are skilful merchants, industrious artisans, and good servants. In the same city are also Armenian, Georgians, and Jews; but of none of these any considerable number. The Indian Catholics, commonly called Portuguese, from their speaking the India dialect of the Portuguese language, are numerous here. At Surat, the day is reckoned from sun-set to sun-set, and is divided, not into 24 hours, but into 60 garris. Here are no clocks; the progress of the day is measured by different means. In a conspicuous situation, a man stands to put a cup of copper, pierced with a hole in the bottom, from time to time under water; every time the cup sinks, a garri is counted, and the man announces its lapse by striking the number which it makes upon a plate of metal that sounds like a clock. Each garri consists of 24 of our minutes. In the houses of the great, too, where clocks and watches are not wanting, this old fashion of measuring time is still kept up.

The great trade carried on at Surat, renders this city the store-house of the most precious productions of Indolan. Hither is brought from the interior parts of the empire an immense quantity of goods, which the merchants carry in their ships to the Arabic Gulf, the Persian Gulf, the coast of Malabar, the coast of Coromandel, and even to China. The provinces near this city are full of manufactures of all sorts.

Having already given our Readers a copious Description of this Place in the TRAVELS of Mr. BRUCE (which are of a more modern date) we shall decline any further repetition, for the sake of introducing other novel and interesting Matter.

We shall now proceed with the Travels of the much celebrated and unfortunate M. BRISSET DE WARVILLE, in AMERICA; presuming that his Descriptions of the UNITED STATES of that now Independent Nation, accurately Translated from the French, will be highly acceptable to our numerous Readers.

A NEW, COMPLETE, AND GENUINE

HISTORY of TRAVELS

IN THE

United States of America.

Undertaken and Performed in the Year 1788,

By J. P. BRISSOT DE WARVILLE,

(About Five Years before he was Guillotined in PARIS.)

Including several Interesting REMARKS—The PLAN of each SETTLEMENT in the UNITED STATES—CURSORY OBSERVATIONS; and the Means used to ABOLISH SLAVERY.

Being an Entire New Translation of the famous BRISSOT's ingenious Memoranda of PHILADELPHIA, ascertaining the Progress of that Country; with several Curious and Interesting Anecdotes.

Also, The Commerce between each STATE, and the SAVAGES, the CANADIANS, NOVA-SCOTIA, ENGLISH ISLANDS, &c. &c. Government of each STATE—LEGISLATION—REVENUE—FRONTIERS—CULTIVATION—CIRCULATION of MONEY—COUNTRY MANUFACTURES, &c. &c.

I N T R O D U C T I O N .

THE author informs us that the object of his travels was not to search for unknown plants or curiosities, but to study men who had just acquired their liberty, and now styled themselves an independent nation. His first object was to examine the effects of liberty on the character of man, of society, and of government; and as this was the most essential point of his observations, for the purpose of attaining a so necessary knowledge, he wrote every evening in a journal what principally struck him in the day. His next rule was to consider the composition of the legislative body, the senate, and executive power, elections, any abuses that may be in them, &c. &c. and to draw forth such conclusions from them as reason might dictate; likewise to remark the principal articles of exportation and importation, the number of ships made use of, and the state of money used in commerce: moreover, as Banks are an important article in the common-wealth, to mark well the proportion observed between the money they contained and the bills they circulated; likewise to note the prevailing system of taxation,—the federal debt of every State, and of individuals,—the federal expences of every State, and their accountability.

Our author further intended to see if report was just respecting the accounts of New-York, which

intimated that the lands were uncultivated, the town surrounded with forests, and that, though fire-wood was cheap, they preferred coals at a high price. Also, to inquire into their mode of rearing cattle; the dispositions and private morals of the inhabitants; of education, public and private; and to make acquaintance, as far as possible, with the ministers of religion, for the purpose of gaining the fullest knowledge of this grand point.

M. de Warville, our author, was one of the deputies to the National Convention; he and his partners, Vergniaux, Genfonne, Duperret, Valaze, Carra, Gardien, Duprat, Sillery, Fauchet, Ducros, Bover-Fonfrede, Lafource, Lestep, Beauvais, Duclatel, Mainville, Lacaze, Lechard, Boileau, Antiboil, and Vigée, having been convicted of a conspiracy against the unity and indivisibility of the republic, and against the liberty and safety of the French nation, were condemned to die at Paris, by the guillotine, November 30, 1793. Valaze stabbed himself in court as soon as sentence was passed; the rest suffered the next day, and the sentence was executed on them all in the space of thirty-seven minutes. The corpse of Valaze was conveyed separately, on a cart, to the place of execution, exhibited at the scaffold, and buried on the same spot.

C H A P T E R I .

M. DE WARVILLE'S *Departure from Havre de Grace*—Remarks—His *Arrival at Boston*—Joy—Description of the *Bostonians*—Of the *Young Women, Mothers, &c.*—Penalties against *Adultery*—Characteristic *Nectness*—Their *Appearance at Church*—Religion—Clubs—Entertainments—Mode of *Living, &c.*—College at *Norton*—Buildings, &c.—The *Commencement of a Feast*—Their *Authors*—Publications, &c.—The *Humane Society*—Medical *Society*—*Alms-House*—*Workhouse*—Account of the *Parts adjoining Boston*—*Banker-Hill, &c.*

M. De Warville prepared to leave Havre de Grace, June 3, 1788. Bolbec and Bottes, near Havre, afford many charming and picturesque situations. Havre is next to Nantz and Bourdeaux,

the most considerable place for the slave-trade. This infamous traffic, which instead of decreasing seems to increase, has contributed not a little towards the prosperity of many great houses of this city. Indeed, the

ELS
merica.

8,
VILLE,

ENT in the UNITED
OLISH SLAVERY.

nda of PHILADELPHIA,
elling Anecdotes.

NOVA-SCOTIA, ENGLISH
LE—FRONTIERS—CUL-

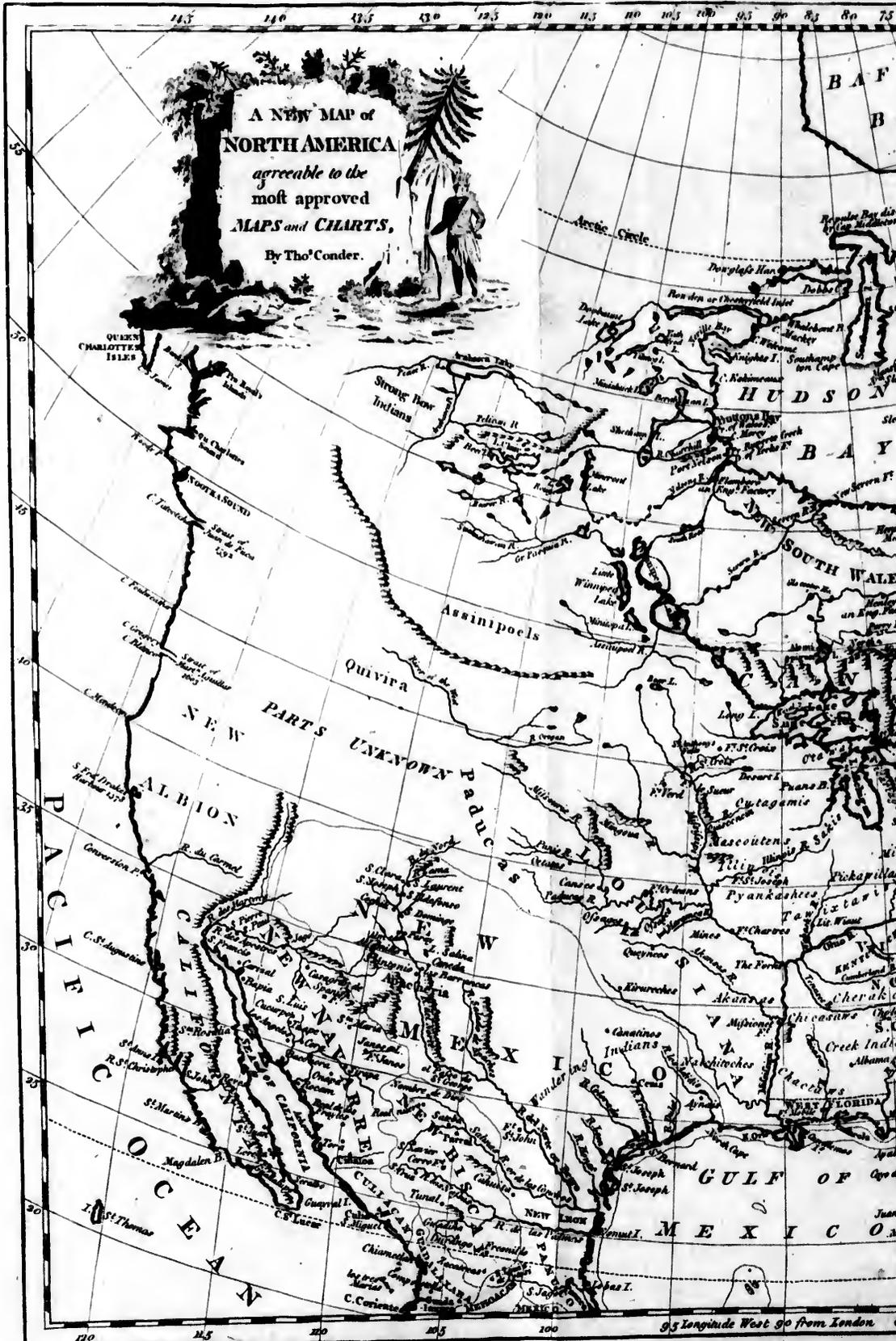
were uncultivated, the
ts, and that, though fre-
ferred coals at a high
o their mode of rearing
l private morals of the
public and private; and
far as possible, with the
e purpose of gaining the
nd point.

or, was one of the depu-
on; he and his partners,
perret, Valaze, Carr,
auchet, Ducros, Boyer-
p, Beauvais, Duclatel,
Boileau, Antiboul, and
d of a conspiracy against
of the republic, and
of the French nation,
aris, by the guillotine,
ize stabbed himself in
passed; the rest suffered
ence was executed on
y-seven minutes. The
eyed separately, on a
ion, exhibited at the
me spot.

Joy—Description of the
eristic Neatness—Their
ege at Norton—Bull-
mane Society—Medical
c.

the slave-trade. This
of decreasing seem
t a little towards the
s of this city. Indeed,
the





95 Longitude West 90 from London



B A F F I N S
B A Y

J A M E S ' S
B A Y

Cumberland Bay

ISLE OF
GOOD FORTUNE

H U D S O N ' S
S T R A I T S

L A B R A D O R

N E W B R I T A I N

E S T I M A T E

G U L F OF
S T L A W R E N C E

A T L A N T I C

O C E A N

G U L F OF M E X I C O

Tropic of Cancer

L U C A Y O S O R B A H A M A I S L E S

Cape Florida

Side West 90 from London

85

80

75

70

65

60
55
50
45
40
35
30
25
20

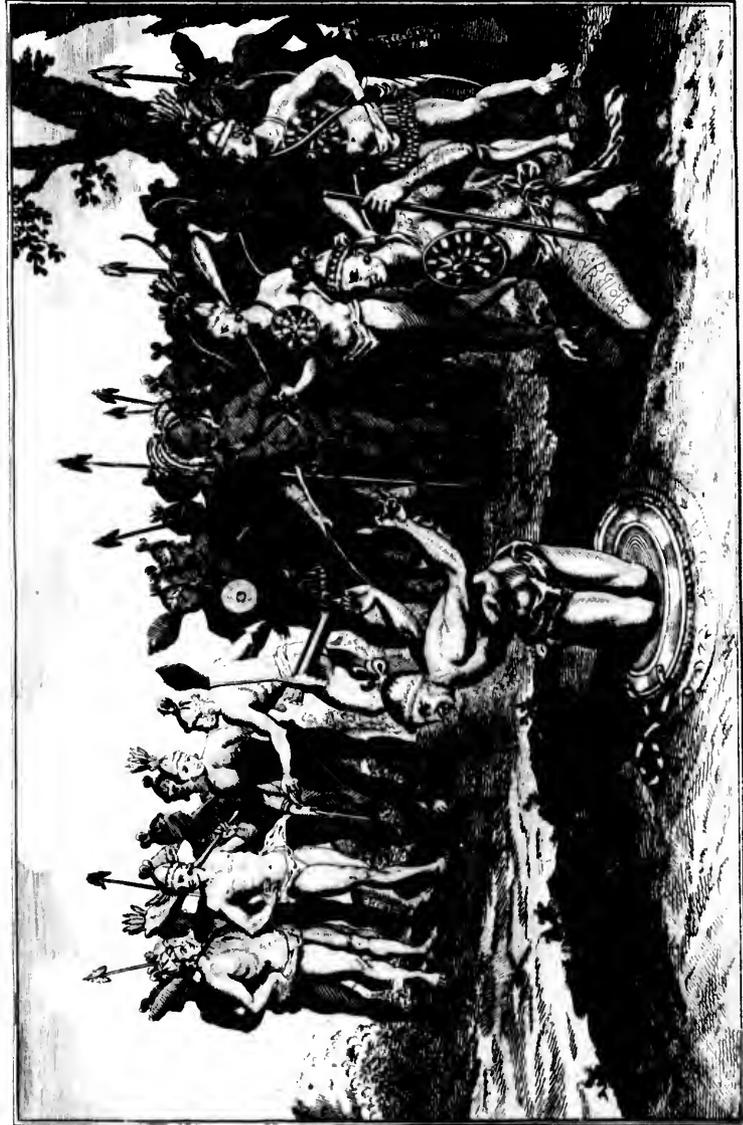


Engraved for PORTLOCK'S *New* COLLECTION of VOYAGES, & TRAVELS.



Celebration of the
CANADIAN'S grand SACRIFICE to QUITCHI MANITOU,
whom they call their great Spirit.

Engraved for PORTLOCK'S, in COLLECTION of VOYAGES & TRAVELS.



(KING of FLORIDA consulting his MAGICIAN previous to his going to Battle.

the increased demand for sugar, cotton, coffee, &c. in Europe, has augmented in a great degree the demand for slaves in the colonies.

July 30, our hero arrived at Boston, and was highly delighted in wandering up and down that long street, whose simple houses of wood border the magnificent channel, and whose full stores afforded a supply of every desirable production. He enjoyed, while every thing as yet was in its infancy, the activity of the merchants, the artisans, and sailors.

The Bostonians unite simplicity of morals with that politeness and delicacy of manners which render virtue more amiable. They are hospitable to strangers, and obliging to friends; they are tender husbands, fond and almost idolatrous parents, and kind masters. Music, which their teachers formerly proscribed as a diabolic art, begins to make part of their education. In some houses the forte-piano may be heard. This art, it is true, is still in its infancy; but the young novices who exercise it, are so gentle, so compliant, and so modest, that the proud perfection of art gives no pleasure equal to what they afford.

The young women here, enjoy the liberty they do in England, and they do not abuse it. Their frank and tender hearts have nothing to fear from the perfidy of men. Examples of this perfidy are rare; the vows of love are believed; and love always respects them, or shame follows the guilty.

The Bostonian mothers are reserved; their air is however frank, good, and communicative. Entirely devoted to their families, they are occupied in rendering their husbands happy, and in training their children up to virtue.

Heavy penalties, such as the pillory and imprisonment, the law denounces against adultery. This law has scarcely ever been called into execution: it is because families are happy; and because they are happy they are pure.

Neatness without luxury, is a characteristic feature of this purity of manners; and this neatness is seen every where at Boston, in their dresses, in their houses, and in their churches. Nothing is more charming than an inside view of a church on Sunday. The good cloth coat covers the man; calicoes and chintzes dress the women and children, without being spoiled by those gewgaws which whim and caprice have added to them among our women. Powder and pomatum never fully the heads of infants and children: adults, however, invoke the art of the hair-dresser; for this art has already crossed the seas.

All religions are tolerated, and the ministers of different sects live in such harmony, that they supply each other's places when any one is detained from his pulpit.

There are many clubs at Boston. M. de Warville was several times at a particular club held once a week, and was much pleased with their politeness to strangers, and the knowledge displayed in their conversation. There is no coffee-house at Boston, New-York, or Philadelphia. One house in each town, that they call by that name, serves as an exchange.

One of the principal pleasures of the inhabitants of these towns, consists in little parties for the country, among families and friends. The principal expense of the parties, especially after dinner, is tea. In this, as in their whole manner of living, the Americans in general resemble the English. Punch, warm and cold, before dinner; excellent beef, and Spanish and Bordeaux wines, cover their tables, always solidly and abundantly served. Spruce beer, excellent cyder, and Philadelphia porter, precede the wines. This porter is equal to the English: the manufacture of it saves a vast tribute formerly paid to the English industry. Our traveller also found American cheese equal to the best Cheshire of England, or the Rochfort of France. This may with truth be said of that made on a farm on Elizabeth-

Island, belonging to the respectable Governor Bowdoin.

After forcing the English to give up their domination, the Americans determined to rival them in every thing useful. This spirit of emulation shews itself every where: it has erected at Boston an extensive glass manufactory, belonging to M. Breck and others.

Massachusetts wishes to rival, in manufactures, Connecticut and Pennsylvania; she has, like the last a society formed for the encouragement of manufactures and industry. The greatest monuments of the industry of this state, are the three bridges of Charles, Malden, and Essex.

The honour of having given the first college or university to the new world is due to Boston. It is placed on an extensive plain, four miles from Boston, at a place called Cambridge; the origin of this useful institution was in 1636. The imagination could not fix on a place that could better unite all the conditions essential to a seat of education; sufficiently near to Boston, to enjoy all the advantages of a communication with Europe and the rest of the world; and sufficiently distant, not to expose the students to the contagion of licentious manners, common in commercial towns. The air of Cambridge is pure, and the environs charming, offering a vast space for the exercise of the youth. The buildings are large, numerous, and well distributed. But, as the number of the students augments every day, it will be necessary soon to augment the buildings. The library, and the cabinet of philosophy, do honour to the institution. The first contains 13,000 volumes. The regulation of the course of studies here, is nearly the same as that at the university of Oxford.

Every year a solemn feast is celebrated at Cambridge in honour of the Sciences. This feast, which takes place once a year in all the colleges of America, is called the Commencement: it resembles the exercises and distribution of prizes in the European colleges. It is a day of joy for Boston; almost all its inhabitants assemble in Cambridge. The most distinguished of the students display their talents in presence of the public; and these exercises, which are generally on patriotic subjects, are terminated by a feast, where the freest gaiety, and the most cordial fraternity reign together.

It is remarked, that in countries chiefly devoted to commerce, the sciences are not carried to any high degree. This remark applies to Boston. The university certainly contains men of worth and learning; but science is not diffused among the inhabitants of the town. Commerce occupies all their ideas, turns all their heads, and absorbs all their speculations. On this account there are few estimable works, and few authors. Poets, for the same reason, must be more rare than other writers. They speak, however, of an original, but lazy poet, by the name of Allen, whose verses are said to be full of warmth and force. They mention particularly a manuscript poem of his, on the famous battle of Bunker-Hill; but he will not print it. They publish a Magazine here, though the number of Gazettes is very considerable. The multiplicity of Gazettes proves the activity of commerce, and the taste for politics and news; the merit and multiplicity of Literary and Political Magazines are signs of the culture of the sciences.

The Bostonians have no brilliant monuments; but they have neat and commodious churches, good houses, superb bridges, and excellent ships. Their streets are well illuminated at night.

Besides the societies for the encouragement of agriculture and manufactures, they have another, known by the name of the Humane Society. Their object is to recover drowned persons: it is formed after the model of the one at London, as that is copied from the one at Paris. They follow the same methods as in Europe, and have effected many recoveries.

The Medical Society is not less useful. It holds a correspondence with all the country towns; to know

the symptoms of local diseases, propose the proper remedies, and give instruction thereupon to their fellow-citizens.

The alms-house is another very laudable establishment. It is destined to the poor, who, by age and infirmity, are unable to gain their living. It contains at present about one hundred and fifty persons.

The work-house, or house of correction, is not very full, the morals of the people being in general good, and the spirit of industry prevalent.

The profession of the law is one of the most lucrative employments in this state, and they still preserve the expensive forms of the English practice.

The parts adjoining Boston, are charming and well cultivated, adorned with elegant houses and agreeable situations. Among the surrounding eminences may be distinguished Bunker-Hill, to which the super-bridge of Charlestown leads. This town was entirely burnt by the English, in their attack of Bunker-Hill. It is at present rebuilt with elegant houses of wood.

C H A P. II.

Departure from Boston—Remarks on the Taverns, &c.—From Spenser to Brookfield—To Wilbraham—Arrival at Springfield—Description of the Place—Set out for Hartford—Description of that Town—Its Productions, &c. Connecticut—Wethersfield—Newhaven—Of the Women—Middleton—Danger of the Ferry at Stratford—Fairfield—Harteneck—New Rochelle—Arrive at New-York—Make for Philadelphia—Land at Paulus Hook—Newark—New Brunswick—Trenton—Bristol—Frankford—Their Arrival at Philadelphia—Journey to Burlington, &c.

OUR travellers set out from Boston at four o'clock in the morning of August the 8th, and passed through the handsome town of Cambridge.

The distance from Boston to New-York is about two hundred and fifty miles. Many persons have united in establishing a kind of diligence, or public stage, which passes regularly for the convenience of travellers. In the summer season, the journey is performed in four days.

The country appears well cultivated as far as Weston, where they breakfasted; thence they passed to Worcester to dinner, forty-eight miles from Boston. This town is elegant and well peopled. They slept the first night at Spenser, a new village in the middle of the woods. The house of the tavern was but half built; however, the part that was finished, was very clean. The chambers were neat, the beds good, the sheets clean, supper passable; cyder, tea, punch, and all for fourteen pence a-head.

They left Spenser at four o'clock in the morning. New carriage, new proprietor. It was a carriage without springs, a kind of waggon. It seemed at first very inconvenient, but by the time they had run thirty miles among the rocks, they were convinced that a carriage with springs would very soon have been overfet and broke.

Though great the fatigue of this route, yet the traveller is amply recompensed by the variety of romantic situations, by the beauty of the prospects which it offers at each step, by the perpetual contrast of savage nature and the efforts of art. Those vast ponds of water, which lose themselves in the woods; those rivulets, that wash the meadow, newly snatched from uncultivated nature; those neat houses, scattered among the forests, and containing swarms of children, joyous and healthy, and well clad; those fields, covered with trunks of trees, whose destruction is committed to the hand of time, and which are covered under the leaves of Indian corn; those oaks, which preserve still the image of their ancient vigor, but which, girdled at the bottom, raise no longer to heaven but dry and naked branches, which the first stroke of wind must bring to the earth:—all these objects, so new to an European, arrest him, absorb him, and plunge him into an agreeable reverie. The depths of the forests, the prodigious size and height of the trees, call to his mind the time when the savages were the only inhabitants of this country. This ancient tree has beheld them; they filled these forests: they have now given place to another generation. The cultivator fears no more their vengeance; his musket, formerly his necessary companion at the plough, now rests suspended in his house. Alone, with his wife and children, in the middle of the forests, he sleeps quietly, he labours in peace, and is happy. Such were the ideas which occupied our hero the greater part of his journey; they sometimes gave place to others, arising from the view of the country.

houses, which are seen at small distances through all the forests of Massachusetts. Neatness embellishes them all. They have frequently but one story and a garret; their walls are papered; tea and coffee appear on their tables; their daughters clothed in calicoes, display the traits of civility, frankness, and decency; virtues which always follow contentment and ease. Almost all these houses are inhabited by men who are both cultivators and artisans; one is a tanner, another a shoemaker, another sells goods; but all are farmers. The country stores are well afforded; one may find in the same shop hats, nails, liquors. It is not supposed that one third of the land of Massachusetts is under cultivation: it is difficult to say when it will all be so, considering the invitations of the western country and the province of Maine. But the uncultured lands are all located, and the proprietors have enclosed them with fences of different sorts. These several kinds of fences are composed of different materials, which announce the different degrees of culture in the country. Some are composed of the light branches of trees; others, of the trunks of trees laid one upon the other; a third sort is made of long pieces of wood, supporting each other by making angles at the end; a fourth kind is made of long pieces of hewn timber, supported at the ends by passing into holes made in an upright post; a fifth is like the garden fences in England; the last kind is made of stones thrown together to the height of three feet. This last is most durable, and is common in Massachusetts.

From Spenser to Brookfield is fifteen miles. The road is good as far as this last town. A town in the interior of America, designates an extent of eight or ten miles, where are scattered a hundred or two hundred houses. This division into towns is necessary for assembling the inhabitants for elections and other purposes. Without this division, the inhabitants might go sometimes to one assembly, and sometimes to another, which would lead to confusion. Besides, it would render it impossible to know the population of any particular canton; this serves for the basis of many regulations. No people carry their attention in this particular, so far as the Americans. The situation of Brookfield is picturesque. While breakfast was preparing, our travellers read the gazettes and journals, which are distributed through all the country. Their breakfast consisted of coffee, tea, boiled and roasted meat; the whole for ten-pence, New-England currency, for each traveller.

From this place to Wilbraham the road is covered with rocks, and bordered with woods. At this place, a new proprietor, and a new carriage. A small light carriage, well suspended, and drawn by two horses, took place of their heavy waggon. They could not conceive how five of them could fit in this little Parisian chariot, and demanded another. The conductor said he had no other; that there were so few travellers

Jersey are exempt from this fever, and from musquitoes; but this state is ravaged by a political scourge, more terrible than either; it is paper money. This paper is still in New-Jersey, what the people call a legal tender; that is, they are obliged to receive it at its nominal value, as a legal payment.

From Newark they went to dine at New-Brunswick, and to sleep at Trenton. The road is bad between the two last places, especially after rain; it is a road difficult to be kept in repair. They passed by Prince-Town; this part of New-Jersey is very well cultivated. M. de Crevecoeur has not exaggerated in his description of it. All the towns are well built, whether in wood, stone, or brick. These places are too well known in the military annals of this country, to require a description of them. The taverns are much dearer on this road, than in Massachusetts and Connecticut: our traveller paid at Trenton for a dinner, three shillings and sixpence, money of Pennsylvania.

They passed the ferry from Trenton at seven in the morning. The Delaware, which separates Pennsylvania from New-Jersey is a superb river, navigable for the largest ships. Its navigation is intercepted by the ice during two months in the year. Vessels are not attacked here by those worms, which are so destructive to them in rivers further south. The prospect from the middle of the river is charming: on the right hand, are the mills and manufactories; on the left, two charming little towns, which overlook the water. The borders of this river are still in their wild state. In the forests which cover them are some enormous trees. There are likewise some houses, but they are not equal to those of Massachusetts, in point of simple elegance.

They breakfasted at Bristol, a town opposite to Burlington. It was here that the famous Penn first planted his colony: but it was represented to him, that the river here did not furnish anchoring ground so good and so safe as the place already inhabited by the Swedes, where Philadelphia has since been built. He resolved then, to purchase this place of them, give them other lands in exchange, and to leave Bristol.

Passing the river Shammony, on a new bridge, and then the village of Frankford, they arrived at Philadelphia, by a fine road bordered with the best cultivated fields and elegant houses, which announce the neighbourhood of a great town.

Our traveller's stay here was short, as particular business called him to Burlington, on the borders of the Delaware. This is an elegant little town, more ancient than Philadelphia. Many of the inhabitants are Friends, or Quakers: this was formerly their place of general rendezvous.

Burlington is separated from Bristol only by the river. Here is some commerce, and some men of considerable capital. The children here are all decent and healthy.

M. de Warville visited a bettering house, or house of correction situated in the open country, in one of those parts of the original plan of Philadelphia not yet covered with houses. This hospital is constructed of bricks, and composed of two large buildings: one for men, and the other for women. There is a separation in the court, which is common to them. This institution has several objects: they receive into it, the poor, the sick, orphans, women in travail, and persons attacked with venereal diseases. They likewise confine here, vagabonds, disorderly persons, and girls of scandalous lives. There are particular halls appropriated to each class of poor, and to each species of sickness; and each hall has its superintendent.

Every sick, and every poor person, has his bed well furnished, but without curtains. Every room is lighted by windows placed opposite, which introduce plenty of light. These windows admit a free circulation of air: most of them open over the fields; and as they are not very high, and are without grates, it would be very easy for the prisoners to make their escape; but the idea never enters their heads. This fact proves that the prisoners are happy, and consequently, that the administration is good. The kitchens are well kept. The eating-rooms, which are on the ground floor, are equally clean, and well aired: neatness and good air reign in every part. A large garden at the end of the court furnishes vegetables for the kitchen. Our traveller was surprised to find there, a great number of foreign shrubs and plants. The garden is well cultivated. In the yard they rear a great number of hogs: for in America, the hog as well as the ox, does the honours of the table through the whole year. Blacks are intermingled with the whites, and lodged in the same apartments.

The expences of this hospital amount to about five pence per diem, money of Pennsylvania, for each pensioner.

The hospital for lunatics, which our hero likewise visited, is fine, elegant, and well kept. He was charmed with the cleanliness in the halls of the sick, as well as in the particular chambers. The library is not numerous, but it is well chosen. The hall on the first floor is appropriated to sick men: there were six in it. About the same number of sick women were in a like hall on the second floor. These persons appeared by no means miserable; they seemed to be at home. Our hero went below to see the lunatics; they were about fifteen, male and female. Each one has his cell, with a bed, a table, and a convenient window with grates. Stoves are fixed in the walls, to warm the cell in the winter. There were no mad persons among them: most of the patients are the victims of religious melancholy, or disappointed love. These unhappy persons are treated with the greatest tenderness; they are allowed to walk in the court, and are constantly visited by two physicians.

C H A P. III.

M. DE WARVILLE present at a Meeting of the Agricultural-Society—The Subject—The Public Library—The Market at Philadelphia—The General Assembly—The Falls of the Skunkkill—Spring-Mill—Remarks—He meets two Frenchmen—Account of a Journey to the Ohio—The School for Blacks—Means used to abolish the Slave Trade—Laws, &c.—Description of Philadelphia, &c.

M. DE WARVILLE was present at a meeting of the Agricultural-Society. It is not of long standing, but is numerous, and possesses a considerable fund. If such a society ought to receive encouragement in any country, it is in this. Agriculture is the first pillar of this state; and though there are many good farmers here, yet the great mass of them want information; and this information can only be procured by the union of men well versed in theory and practice. The subject of this meeting was an important one. The papillion, or worm, called the

Hessian fly, had for several years ravaged the wheat in many parts of the United-States. The several farmers present, from their own experience, and that of their neighbours and correspondents, declared that the insect deposited its eggs, not in the ear, but in the stalk; so that they were well convinced, that on threshing the wheat, there could be nothing to fear that the eggs would mix with the grain; and consequently they could not be communicated with the grain.

Among the useful institutions which do honour to Philadelphia,

ring house, or house in country, in one of Philadelphia not yet built is constructed of large buildings; one on. There is a separation to them. This they receive into it, they in travail, and per- ases. They likewise uly persons, and girls particular halls appro- to each species of superintendent.

person, has his bed- rooms. Every room is site, which introduce admit a free circu- over the fields; and are without gates, it sonders to make their s their heads. This re happy, and conse- s good. The kitchens ns, which are on the an, and well aired: every part. A large furnishes vegetables was surprised to find n shrubs and plants. In the yard they rear America, the hog as of the table through intermingled with the apartments.

amount to about five Pennsylvania, for each

which our hero likewise well kept. He was the halls of the sick, umbers. The library chofen. The hall on sick men; there were mber of sick women d floor. These per- erable; they seemed below to see the luna- bed, a table, and a Stoves are fixed in the winter. There n: most of the pati- melancholy, or dis- persons are treated y are allowed to walk y visited by two phy-

Public Library—The marks—He meets 1769
to the Slave Trade—

ragged the wheat ates. The several xperience, and that dents, declared that t in the ear, but in convinced, that on be nothing to fear grain; and conse- quentiated with the

which do honour to Philadelphia,

Philadelphia, is the public library; it is supported by subscription. The price of entrance into this society is ten pence. Any person has the privilege of borrowing books. Half of the library is generally in the hands of readers.

At the side of this library is a cabinet of natural history. M. de Warville observed nothing curious in it, but an enormous thigh-bone, and some teeth as enormous, found near the Ohio, in a mass of prodigious bones, which nature seems to have thrown together in those ages whose events are covered from the eye of history by an impenetrable veil.

The market at Philadelphia is, without contradiction, one of the finest in the universe. Variety and abundance in the articles, order in the distribution, good faith and tranquillity in the trader, are all here united. Cleanliness is conspicuous here in every thing; even meat, whose aspect is more or less disgusting in other markets, here strikes the eye agreeably. The spectator is not tormented with the sight of little streams of blood, which infect the air, and foul the streets. The women who bring the produce of the country, are dressed with decency; their vegetables and fruits are neatly arranged in handsome, well-made baskets. Every thing is assembled here, the produce of the country, and the works of industry; flesh, fish, fruits, garden-seeds, pottery, iron-ware, shoes, trays, buckets extremely well made, &c. The stranger is never wearied in contemplating this multitude of men and women moving and crossing in every direction, without tumult or injury. The carts and horses which have brought in the supplies, are peaceably arranged in the next street, in the order in which they arrive; when disengaged, they move off in silence: no quarrels among the carmen and the porters.

Two clerks of the police walk in the market. If they suspect a pound of butter of being light, they weigh it; if light, it is seized for the use of the hospital.

The price of bread is from one penny to twopence the pound, beef and mutton from twopence to fourpence, veal from one penny to twopence; hay from twenty to thirty shillings the ton; butter from fourpence to sixpence the pound; wood from sevenpence to eightpence the cord. Vegetables are in abundance, and cheap. Wines of Europe, particularly those of France, are cheaper here than anywhere else. Our hero drank the wine of Provence, said to be made by M. Bergasse, at ninepence the bottle; but the taverns are extremely dear. Articles of luxury are expensive: a hair-dresser costs eightpence a day, or twelve shillings the month. M. de Warville hired a one-horse chaise three days, which cost him three louis d'ors.

M. de Warville was introduced one day to the General Assembly: he saw nothing remarkable in it. It is certainly a fine building, when compared with the other edifices of Philadelphia; but it cannot be put in competition with those public buildings which are called fine in Europe. There were about fifty members present, seated on chairs enclosed by a balustrade. Behind the balustrade, was the gallery for spectators. Our traveller dined about five miles from town, by the falls of the Skunkkill. These falls are formed by a considerable bed of rocks: they are not perceivable when the water of the river is high.

Springmill, where he went to sleep, is a hamlet eight miles up the Skunkkill. The soil is here composed of a great quantity of talc, granite, and a yellow gravel; some places a very black earth. In the neighbourhood are quarries of marble of a middling fineness, of which many chimney-pieces are made.

It is a remark to be made at every step in America, that vegetation is rapid and strong. The peach-tree, for example, grows fast and produces fruit in great quantities. Within one month after the wheat is cut, the field is covered with greens, very high and very thick. The birds are a great discouragement to the culture of the vine in America. Immense clouds of

black-birds may be seen settling on a vineyard, which destroy it very soon.

The pastures and fields in America are enclosed with barriers of wood or fences. These, when made of rails supported by posts as above described, are expensive, especially in the neighbourhood of great towns, where wood is dear. The country here is full of springs; our traveller saw some very fine ones. He was told of one which carries a mill night and day, and serves to water meadows when occasion requires.

M. de Warville had the good fortune to meet a Frenchman here who was travelling in this country, not in pursuit of wealth, but to gain information. He and another arrived at Philadelphia, and passed immediately to Pittsburg. There the winter overtook them, and the Ohio froze over, which rarely happens. They lodged themselves a few miles from Pittsburg, in an open house, where they suffered much from the cold. On the opening of the spring, they descended the Ohio. They landed at Muckinquam, where they saw General Harmer, and some people who were beginning a settlement there.

At some distance below this place, they fell in with a party of savages. One of them was killed, and the other wounded and taken prisoner; he fortunately made his escape, rejoined the Virginian, and found the means of returning to Pittsburg, having lost his money and all his effects. He then returned to Philadelphia, and was now on his way to Europe.

The immense valley washed by the Ohio, appeared to him the most fertile that he had ever seen. The strength and rapidity of vegetation in that country were incredible, the size of the trees enormous, and their variety infinite. The inhabitants were obliged to exhaust the first fatness of the land in hemp and tobacco, in order to prepare it for the production of wheat. The crops of Indian corn were prodigious; the cattle acquire an extraordinary size, and keep fat the whole year in the open fields. The facility of producing grain, rearing cattle, making whiskey, beer, and cyder, with a thousand other advantages, attract to this country great numbers of emigrants from other parts of America. A man in that country, works scarcely two hours in a day for the support of himself and family; he passes most of his time in idleness, hunting, or drinking. The women spin, and make clothes for their husbands and families. They have very little money; every thing is done by barter.

M. de Warville visited the school for the blacks, at Philadelphia, and saw, heard, and examined the black children. They read well, repeated from memory, and calculated with rapidity.

The black girls, besides reading, writing, and the principles of religion, are taught spinning, needle-work, &c. and their mistresses assured our author, that they discovered much ingenuity. They have the appearance of decency, attention, and submission.

In 1774, the Congress declared the slavery of the blacks to be incompatible with the basis of republican governments. Different legislatures hastened to consecrate this principle of Congress. Three distinct epochs mark the conduct of the Americans in this business—the prohibition of the importation of slaves—their manumission—and the provision made for their instruction. All the different states are not equally advanced in these three objects.

In the northern and middle states, they have proscribed for ever the importation of slaves; in others, this prohibition is limited to a certain time. In South-Carolina, where it was limited to three years, it has lately been extended to three years more. Georgia is the only state that continues to receive transported slaves. Yet, when General Oglethorpe laid the foundation of this colony, he ordained, that neither rum nor slaves should ever be imported into it. This law, in both its articles, was very soon violated.

A numerous party who still argued the impossibility of cultivating their soil without the hands of slaves,

and the impossibility of augmenting their number without recruiting them in Africa, took such measures as to put it out of the power of the new Congress to prohibit the importation of slaves for twenty years.

Nine States however have proscribed the slave trade, and the blacks, which there abound, are considered as free. There are then nine asylums for those to escape to from Georgia; not to speak of the neighbourhood of the Floridas, where the slaves from Georgia take refuge, in hopes to find better treatment from the Spaniards; and not to speak of those vast forests and inaccessible mountains which make part of the Southern States, and where the persecuted negro may easily find a retreat from slavery. The communications with the back country are so easy, that it is impossible to stop the fugitives; and the expence of reclaiming is disproportioned to their value. And though the free States do not in appearance oppose these reclamations, yet the people there hold slavery in such horror, that the master who runs after his human property, meets little respect, and finds little assistance.

There was never any law in New Hampshire, or Massachusetts, which authorized slavery. There was very little of it in Connecticut; the puritanic austeriety which predominated in that colony, could scarcely reconcile itself with slavery. Agriculture was better performed there by the hands of freemen; and every thing concurred to engage the people to give liberty to the slaves:—so that almost every one has freed them; and the children of such as are not yet free, are to have their liberty at twenty-five years of age.

The case of the blacks in New-York is nearly the same; yet the slaves there are more numerous.

The State of Rhode-Island formerly made a great business of the slave trade. It is now totally and for ever prohibited.

In New-Jersey the bulk of the population is Dutch: people less disposed than any other to part with their property. Yet the Western parts of the State are disposed to free their negroes; but the Eastern part are opposed to it.

The little State of Delaware has followed the example of Pennsylvania in liberating several slaves, and there are some negroes freed in Maryland,—but very few; and scarcely any in Virginia.

The free blacks in the Eastern States, are either hired servants, or they keep little shops, or they cultivate the land. Some of them may be seen on board of coasting vessels. They dare not venture themselves on long voyages, for fear of being transported and sold in the islands. As to their physical character, the blacks are vigorous, of a strong constitution, capable of the most painful labour, and generally active. As servants, they are sober and faithful. Those who keep shops, live moderately, and never augment their allions beyond a certain point.

Of all vegetables containing sugar, the maple, after the sugar-cane, contains the greatest quantity. It grows naturally in the United-States, and may be propagated with great facility. All America seems covered with it, from Canada to Virginia; it becomes more rare at the southward, on the east of the mountains; but it is found in abundance in the back country. Such is the beneficent tree which has, for a long time, recompensed the happy colonist, whose position deprived them of the delicate sugar of our islands. They have till lately contented themselves with bestowing very little labour on the manufacture, only bringing it to a state of common coarse sugar; but since the Quakers have discerned in this production, the means of destroying slavery, they have felt the necessity of carrying it to perfection; and success has crowned their endeavours.

Great difficulties attend the cultivation of the cane. It is a tender plant; it has many enemies, and requires constant care and labour to defend it from numerous accidents; add to these, the painful efforts that the

preparation and manufacture costs to the wretched Africans; and, on comparing these to the advantages of the maple, every one must be convinced, by a new argument, that such pains are often taken to commit unprofitable crimes. The maple is produced by nature; the sap to be extracted, requires no preparatory labour; it runs in February and March, a season unsuitable for other rural operations. Each tree, without injury to itself, gives twelve or fifteen gallons, which will produce at least five pounds of sugar. A man aided by four children, may easily, during four weeks running of the sap, make fifteen hundred pounds of sugar. Several have declared this sugar equal to that of the islands, in grain, colour, and taste: and the cultivators in the State of New-York perceive, in an equal degree, the advantages of this production; they made, in one year, a large quantity of sugar, and brought it to great perfection.

Philadelphia may be considered as the metropolis of the United-States. It is certainly the finest town, and the best built: it is the most wealthy, though not the most luxurious. There are men of information, political and literary knowledge, and several learned societies. Many towns in America are more ancient, but Philadelphia has surpassed her elders.

The Swedes were first established on the spot where this town has been since built. The Swedish church on the banks of the Delaware is more than one hundred years old. It is the oldest church in the town.

At ten o'clock in the evening all is tranquil in the streets; the profound silence which reigns there, is only interrupted by the voice of the watchmen, who are in small numbers, and who form the only patrol. The streets are lighted by lamps, placed like those of London.

On the side of the streets are footways of brick, and gutters constructed of brick or wood. Strong posts are placed to prevent carriages from falling on the footways. All the streets are furnished with public pumps, in great numbers. At the door of each house are placed two benches, where the family sit at evening to take the fresh air, and amuse themselves in looking at the passengers. This is certainly a bad custom, as the evening air is unhealthful, and the exercise is not sufficient to correct this evil, for they never walk here; they supply the want of walking, by riding out into the country. They have few coaches at Philadelphia, but they have several handsome waggons, which are used to carry the family into the country; they are a kind of long carriage, light and open, and may contain twelve persons. They have many chairs and sulkeys, open on all sides; the former may carry two persons, the latter only one. The horses used in these carriages are neither handsome nor strong; but they travel very well.

Philadelphia is built on a regular plan; long and large streets cross each other at right angles; this regularity, which is a real ornament, is at first embarrassing to a stranger; he has much difficulty in finding himself, especially as the streets are not intersected, and the doors not numbered. The shops, which adorn the principal streets, are remarkable for their neatness.

The State-House, where the Legislature assembles, is a handsome building; by its side they are building a magnificent house of justice. The streets are generally from 50 to 60 feet wide. Market-Street is about 100. The wharfs are in general small and niggardly.

Behind the State-House is a public garden; it is the only one that exists in Philadelphia. It is not large; but it is agreeable, and one may breathe in it. It is composed of a number of verdant squares, intersected by alleys.

All the space from Front-Street on the Delaware to Front-Street on the Skunkkill, is already distributed into squares for streets and houses, they build here; but not so briskly as at New-York.

cofts to the wretched
these, to the advan-
null be convinced, by
ins are often taken to
the maple is produced
ed, requires no pre-
bruary and March, a
al operations. Each
gives twelve or fifteen

least five pounds of
children, may easily,
the sap, make fifteen
eral have declared this

nds, in grain, colour,
in the State of New-
egree, the advantages

in one year, a large
it to great perfection,
ered as the metropolis

certainly the finest town,
st wealthy, though not
e men of information,
e, and several learned

rica are more ancient;
her elders.

shed on the spot where
The Swedish church
is more than one han-
dred church in the

g all is tranquil in the
which reigns there, is
of the watchmen, who
form the only patrol.

os, placed like those of
footways of brick, and
r wood. Strong posts

from passing on the
furnished with public
the door of each house
the family fit at even-

amuse themselves in
his is certainly a bad
unhealthful, and the
reed this evil, for they

the want of walking,
try. They have few
they have several hand-
to carry the family

kind of long carriage,
tain twelve persons.
tulkeys, open on all
two persons, the latter

in these carriages are
; but they travel very

a regular plan; long
other at right angles:
al ornament, is at first

has much difficulty in
the streets are not in-
timbered. The shops,
ts, are remarkable for

Legislature assemblies,
side they are building

The streets are gene-
Market-Street is about
general small and nig-

public garden; it is the
phia. It is not large;
by breathe in it. It is
out squares, intersected

ect on the Delaware to
is already distributed
uses, they build houses

ork.

The

The ladies bestow immense expences on their toilet and head-dress, and display pretensions too affected to be pleasing. Adultery is not known here; there is no instance of a wife, of any sect, who has failed in her duty. They marry without dowry; they bring to their husbands only the furniture of their houses; and they wait the death of their parents, before they come to the possession of their property.

There is no town on the continent where there is so much printing done as at Philadelphia. Gazettes and book-stores are numerous in the town, and paper mills in the state.

There are several useful institutions in Philadelphia. One of them is the Dispensary, which distributes medicines gratis to the sick who are not in a situation to purchase them. There is also the Benevolent Institution, whose object is to succour, in their own houses, poor women in child-bed. Another society has for its object to alleviate the situation of prisoners.

The Philadelphians confine not their attention to their brethren; they extend it to strangers; they have formed a society for the assistance of emigrants who arrive from Germany. A similar one is formed at New-York, called the Hibernian-Society, for the succour of emigrants from Ireland. These societies inform themselves, on the arrival of a ship, of the situation of the emigrants, and procure them immediate employ.

Here is a company for insurance against fire. The houses are constructed of wood and brick, and consequently exposed to the ravages of fire.

The climate of Philadelphia is reckoned one of the most healthful in the world. In dry weather, the air has a peculiar elasticity, which renders heat or cold less insupportable than they are in places more humid. The air never becomes heavy and fatiguing, but when the rains are not followed by the beneficent North-Wind. During the three weeks that M. de Warville passed here (in August and September) he felt nothing of the languor of body, and depression of spirits, which he expected; though the heat was very great, he found it supportable; nearly like that of Paris, but it caused a greater perspiration.

Variability is the characteristic of the climate of Pennsylvania. It has changed by the clearing of lands, and the diminution of waters, which formerly abounded in this part of America. Many creeks, and even rivers, have disappeared by degrees; and this is to be expected in a country where forests give place to cultivated fields.

However, these changes have produced happy effects on the health of the people. An old man of this country observed to our traveller, that the health of the Pennsylvanians augments in proportion to the cultivation of the country; that their visages are less pale than they were thirty or forty years past; that for some time the number of centenarians has increased, and that the septuagenaries are very numerous.

There was such an extraordinary drought in 1782, that the Indian corn did not come to perfection, the meadows failed, and the soil became so inflammable, that in some places it caught fire, and the surface was burnt. In our traveller's time it was excessively rainy. On the 18th and 19th of August, there fell at Philadelphia seven inches of water. Wheat suffered much from the rains this year.

But happily all parts of the country are not subject to the same variations of the atmosphere; so that a general scarcity is never known. If the harvest fails here, at fifty miles distance it abounds.

Among the diseases of the United-States, the consumption doublets makes the greatest ravages. It was unknown to the original inhabitants of the country; it is then the result of European habits of life transported to this new continent. It is more common in the towns than in the country; it destroys more women than men; it is a languid disorder, which drags, by slow steps, its victim to the tomb; each day plunges the dagger deeper in his breast, and

renders more visible the incurable wound. Death, without ceasing, flares him in the face, and throws a funeral shroud over the remainder of his days. The world and its pleasures disappear; the ties of friendship are the only ones that are strengthened and endeared, and which double the bitterness of his approaching dissolution. The consumption, in a word, is a long continued agony, a slow tormenting death. The physicians of this country attribute it to different causes; to the excessive use of hot drinks, such as tea and coffee; to the habit of remaining too long in bed, and the use of feather-beds, for they know not the use of mattresses; to the custom of eating too much meat, and of drinking too much spirituous liquors. Women are more subject to it than men; because, independently of the above causes, they take but little exercise, which is the only powerful remedy against the stagnation of humours, the great principle of the marasma: they take but little the pleasures of walking; a movement which, varying the spectacle of nature, gives a refreshment to the senses, a new spring to the blood, and a new vigour to the soul. Consumptions, however, are not so numerous in America as is generally imagined. This name is ignorantly given to many other disorders, which reduce the body to the same meagre state which follows a decay of the lungs. This appearance deceives, and may easily deceive the attendants of the sick, who give information to those who keep the bills of mortality.

Another disease very common here, is the fore-throat; when putrid, it is mortal. It generally proceeds from excessive heats, cold drinks, and carelessness in clothing.

The disease known in Europe by the name of the Influenza, is likewise common in America: it made great ravages in 1789. It began in Canada, passed through New-York, and very soon infected Pennsylvania and the Southern States. Its symptoms are lassitude, feebleness, chills, heats, and the head-ache. It respects no age or sex, and especially precipitates to the tomb those who were attacked by the consumption.

The fever and ague may be ranked in the class of these cruel epidemics; but it is more terrible, as its returns are annual. It not only visits the marshy countries and the sea-coast, but it is seen even in the healthy region of Albany. It is combated by the Peruvian bark; but the most successful remedy, is a journey among the mountains, or into the Northern States. This fever never attacks the black slaves. This exemption is attributed to a custom they preserve with obstinacy, of keeping fires always in their cabins, even in the hottest season. The negroes are accustomed to consider excessive heat as a guarantee of health; and one may see a negro, while the labours in the field, in the ardour of a burning sun, expose her infant to his fires, rather than lay it under the refreshing shade of a tree.

Among the maladies common in the United-States, must be reckoned the pleurisy and the peripneumony, though they are less frequent than formerly. The small-pox, which formerly made such havoc in the United-States, is less formidable since the general practice of inoculation.

There are many physicians at Philadelphia, and this may be assigned as the cause of so many diseases; but such an opinion is erroneous. They are said to be skilful; they are generally strangers to quackery.

The greatest part of these physicians are at the same time apothecaries. They continue to unite these two sciences, out of respect to the people, who wish that the man who orders the medicine should likewise prepare it. There are, however, other apothecaries, of whom the physicians purchase their drugs.

The practice of this country is the English practice; that is, they are much in the use of violent remedies. Lavatives are little in use. Almost all the physicians of this country are formed at the school

of

of Edinburgh, and this is the cause of their predilection for the English practice.

The prison of Philadelphia is a kind of house of correction. The prisoners are obliged to work; and each enjoys the profit of his own labour. Those who govern the house of correction in New-York, on consenting to take charge of criminals condemned by the law, have obtained leave to substitute to whips and mutilation, their humane method of correction;

and they daily succeed in leading back to industry and reason these deluded men.

By the small number of Pennsylvanians contained in the prison of Philadelphia, one may conclude, that were it not for the strangers, the government of this town, like that of Nanucket, might have a prison with open doors, of which honour and repentance are the only keepers.

C. H. A. P. IV.

M. de Warville and a Party undertake a Journey from Boston to New-York by Providence—Proceed to Newport in a Packet-Boat—Port of Newport and the Place described—Leige—Hell-Gate—Remarks on the Packet-Boat—Description of New-York—Albany—Hudson—Buildings, &c. &c.

ON the 11th of October, M. de Warville and a party set out from Boston at half past seven in the morning, and arrived by six in the evening at Providence. It is forty-nine miles, the road good, the soil stoney, gravelly, and sandy, and, as usual for such a soil, covered with pines. The country bordering the road, appears neither fertile, nor well peopled: the houses are in decay, the children covered with rags. They had, however, good health, and good complexions. The silence which reigns in the other American towns on Sunday, reigns at Providence even on Monday. Every thing here announces the decline of business. Few vessels are to be seen in the port. They were building, however, two distilleries; as if the manufactories of this poison were not already sufficiently numerous in the United-States. Whether it be from prejudice or reality, our author seemed to perceive every where the silence of death, the effect of paper-money. He seemed to see, in every face, the air of a Jew; the result of a traffic founded on fraud and finess. He seemed to see, likewise, in every countenance, the effects of the contempt which the other States bear to this, and the consciousness of meriting that contempt. The paper-money at this time was at a discount of ten for one.

M. de Warville went from Providence to Newport in a packet-boat. This journey might be made by land; but they preferred the water. They arrived in seven hours and a half; and during two hours they had contrary wind. This distance is thirty miles. They never lost sight of land; but it offers nothing picturesque or curious. A few houses, some trees, and a sandy soil, are all that appears to the eye.

The port of Newport is considered as one of the best in the United-States. The bottom is good, the harbour capable of receiving the largest ships, and seems destined by nature to be of great consequence. This place was one of the principal scenes of the last war. The successive arrival of the American, English, and French armies, left here a considerable quantity of money.

Since the peace, every thing is changed. The reign of solitude is only interrupted by groups of idle men, standing with folded arms at the corners of the streets, houses falling to ruin, miserable shops, which present nothing but a few coarse stuffs, or baskets of apples, and other articles of little value; grass growing in the public square, in front of the court of justice; rags stuffed in the windows, or hung upon hideous women and lean unquiet children. Every thing announces misery, the triumph of ill faith, and the influence of a bad government.

Leige and Newport are nevertheless well situated for commerce, and surrounded by lands by no means unfruitful.

M. de Warville was detained at Newport by the south-west winds till the 13th, when they set sail at midnight; the captain not willing to sail sooner, for fear of touching before day on Block-Island. The wind and tide carried them at the rate of nine or ten miles

an hour; and they should have arrived at New-York the next evening, but they were detained at Hell-Gate, a kind of gulf, eight miles from New-York. This is a narrow passage, formed by the approach of Long-Island to York-Island, and rendered horrible by rocks, concealed at high water. The whirlpool of this gulph is little perceived at low water; but it is not surprising that vessels which know it not, should be dashed in pieces. They speak of an English frigate lost there the last war. This Hell-Gate is an obstacle to the navigation of this strait; but it is not rare in summer to run from Newport to New-York, two hundred miles, in twenty hours. On approaching this city, the coasts of these two islands present the most agreeable spectacle. They are adorned with elegant country-houses. Long-Island is celebrated for its high state of cultivation. The price of passage and diet from Providence to New-York is six dollars.

It is more advantageous, and often less expensive to go by land; yet much praise is due to the cleanliness and good order observable in the packet-boats. The one which our hero was in contained fourteen beds, ranged in two rows, one above the other; every one had its little window. The chamber was well aired; well varnished; and two close corners were made in the poop, which served as private places. The provisions were good. There is not a little town on all this coast, but what has these kind of packets going to New-York; such as Newhaven, New-London, &c. They have all the same neatness, the same embellishment, and the same convenience for travellers.

Nothing is more magnificent than the situation of New-York, which stands between two majestic rivers, the north and the east. The former separates it from New-Jersey: it is so profound, that ships of the line anchor in it. Two inconveniencies are, however, experienced in this river; the descent of ice in the winter, and the force of the north-west wind. Ships mount this commodious river as far as Albany, a town situated an hundred and seventy miles from New-York.

Albany will yield very soon, in prosperity, to a town called Hudson, built on a spot where, four years ago, there was only a simple farm-house. At present, it contains an hundred good dwelling houses, a court-house, public fountains, &c. More than fifty ships are owned there, which export the American productions to the islands and to Europe. Two whaling ships are of the number. Their vessels do not winter idly, like those of Albany, in the port. They trade in the West-Indies during this season. Poughkeepsie, on the same river, has doubled its population and its commerce since the war. The inattention of the people of Albany to foreign commerce, may be attributed to the fertility of their lands. Agriculture abounds there, and they like not to hazard themselves to the dangers of the sea, for a fortune which they can draw from the bounty of the soil which surrounds them. The fertility

ng back to industry
Sylvanians contained
he may conclude, that
e government of this
might have a prison
out and repentance

ence—Proceed to New-
Remarks on the Packet.

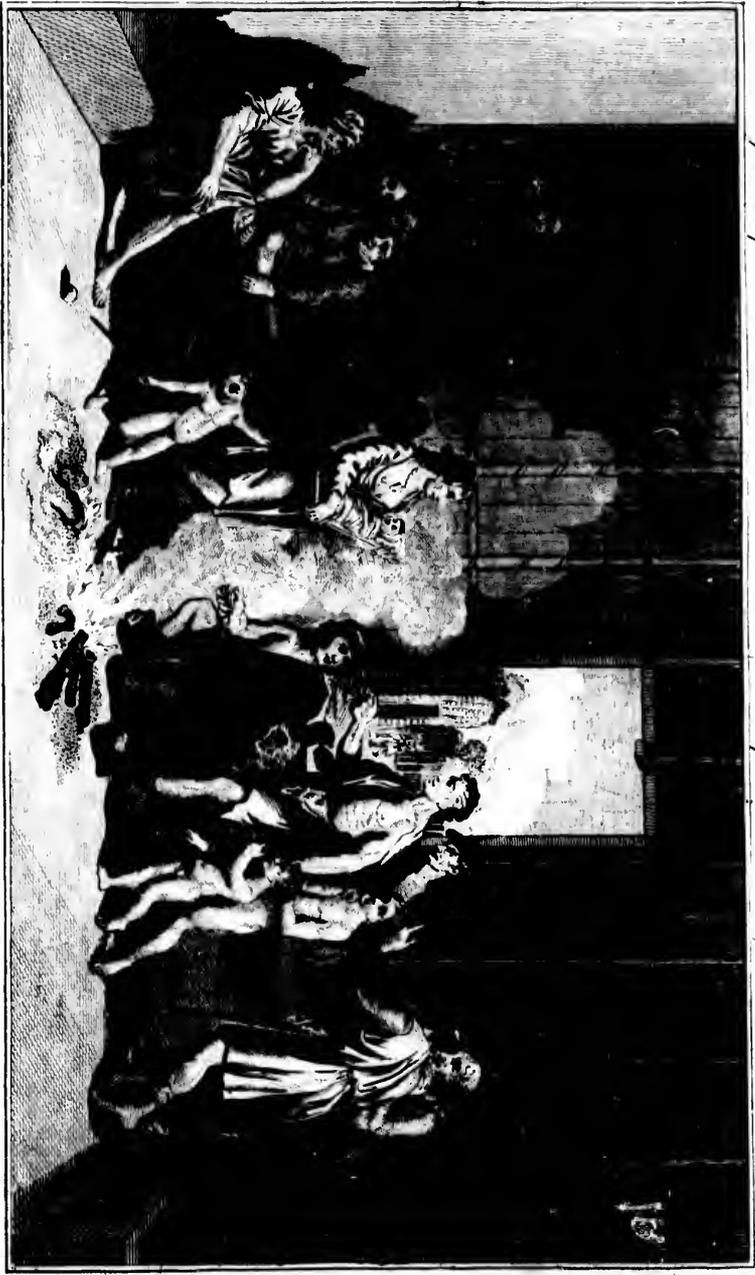
arrived at New-York
re detained at Hell-
les from New-York.
ed by the approach of
nd rendered horrible
ater. The whirlpool
at low water; but it
ch know it not, should
cak of an English fri-
his Hell-Gate is an
is strait; but it is not
ewport to New-York,
ours. On approach-
e two islands present
They are adorned
Long-Island is cele-
vation. The price of
ence to New-York is

d often less expensive
e is due to the clean-
le in the packet-boats.
in contained fourteen
ne above the other;
w. The chamber was
nd two clofe corners
ch served as private
good. There is not a
t what has these kind
; such as Newhaven,
e all the same neatness,
the same convenience

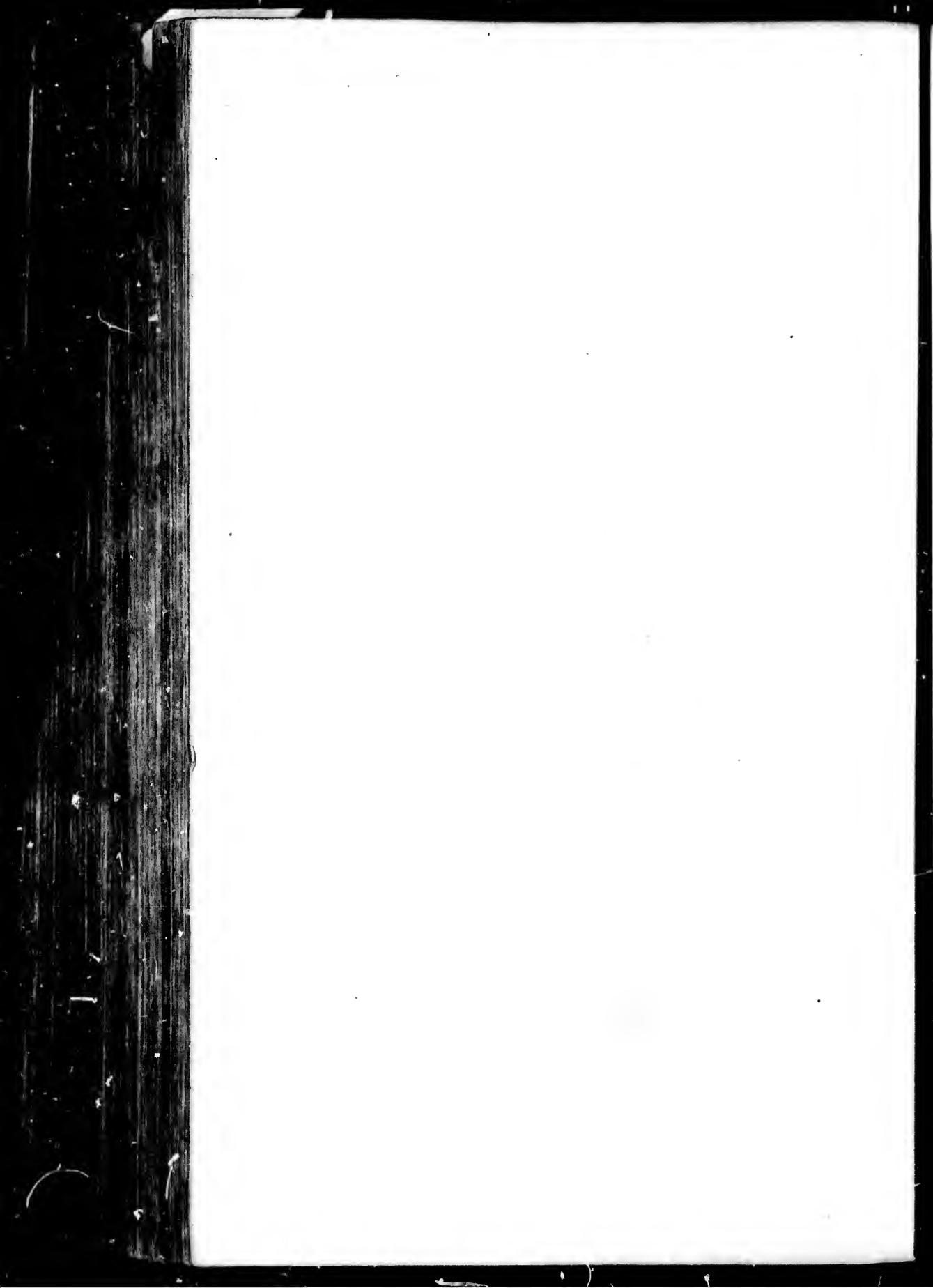
t than the situation of
en two majestic rivers,
e former separates it
ofound, that ships of
inconveniencies are,
river; the descent of
ce of the north-west
odious river as far as
hundred and seventy

n, in prosperity, to a
a spot where, four
ple farm-house. At
dred good dwelling
ountains, &c. More
ere, which export the
lands and to Europe.
number. Their ves-
ose of Albany, in the
ell-Indies during this
the same river, has
commerce since the
people of Albany to
ributed to the fertility
ounds there, and they
to the dangers of the
y can draw from the
unds them. The fer-
ility

The formation of a DIVORCE, as furnished by the natives of CANADA, in North America.



Expanded for PORTLOCK'S NEW COLLECTION of VOYAGES & TRAVELS.



tility of the uncultivated lands, and the advantages which they offer, attract settlers to this quarter. New settlements are forming here; but slowly, because other states furnish lands, if not as fertile, at least attended with more advantages for agriculture, as they are less exposed to the excessive rigours of the winter.

In this part of America shall be well peopled, the fourth river will offer one of the finest channels for the exportation of its productions. Navigable for more than two hundred miles from the ocean, it communicates with the river Mohawk, with the lakes Oneida, Ontario, Erie, and all that part of Canada. The falls which are found in this route may be easily vanquished by canals, so easy to construct in a country abounding with men and money. This river communicates with Canada in another quarter, by the lakes George and Champlaine. It is this situation which will render New-York the channel of the fur-trade, at least during the existence of this kind of commerce, which supposes the existence of savages, and great quantities of uncultivated lands.

New-York, by the East-River, communicates with Long-Island, and with all the Eastern States. Ships of the line anchor likewise in this river, and near the quay, where they are sheltered from the storms which sometimes rage these coasts. This happy situation of New-York will explain the causes why the English give it the preference over the other parts of America. Being the great market for Connecticut and New-Jersey, it pours in upon those states the productions of the East-Indies, and of Europe. It is difficult to obtain an account of the exportations and importations of this state. The English have a great predilection for this city, and for its productions; thus its port is always covered with English ships. They prefer even its wheat; so that the American merchants bring wheat from Virginia, and sell it for that of New-York.

The presence of Congress with the diplomatic body and the concourse of strangers, contributes much to extend here the ravages of luxury. The inhabitants are far from complaining at it; they prefer the splendour of wealth, and the show of enjoyment, to the simplicity of manners, and the pure pleasures resulting from it. The usage of smoking has not disappeared in this town, with the other customs of their fathers, the Dutch. They smoke cigars, which come from the Spanish islands. They are leaves of tobacco, rolled in form of a tube, of six inches long, which are smoked without the aid of any instrument. The great commerce of this city, and the facility of living here, augments the population of the state with great rapidity. In 1773, they reckoned 148,124 whites; in 1786, the number was 219,996.

If there is a town on the American continent where the English luxury displays its follies, it is New-York. Here one may find the English fashions. In the dress of the women, may be seen the most brilliant silks, gauzes, hats, and borrowed hair. Equipages are rare; but they are elegant. The men have more simplicity in their dress; they disdain gewgaws, but they take their revenge in the luxury of the table.

Luxury forms already, in this town, a class of men very dangerous in society; to wit, bachelors. The expense of women causes matrimony to be dreaded by men.

Tea forms, as in England, the basis of the principal parties of pleasure. Fruits, though more attended

to in this state, are far from possessing the beauty and goodness of those of Europe. I have seen trees, in September, loaded at once with apples and with flowers. The bank of New-York enjoys a good reputation, and is well conducted. It receives and pays without reward, for merchants and others who choose to open an account with it.

There is an abundance of excellent provisions at New-York; vegetables, flesh, and especially fish. It is difficult to unite so many advantages in one place. Provisions are dearer at New-York, than in any other of the northern or middle states. Many things, especially those of luxury, are also dear. A hair-dresser asks twenty shillings per month; washing costs four shillings for a dozen pieces. Board and lodging by the week, is from four to six dollars. The fees of lawyers are out of all proportion; they are, as in England, excessive. Physicians have not the same advantage in this respect as lawyers: the good health generally enjoyed here, renders them little necessary; yet they are sufficiently numerous. Our hero having conversed with some of them, asked what were the diseases most common? They answered, bilious fevers; and that the greatest part of diseases among them, were occasioned by excessive cold, and the want of care; but there are few diseases here, added they. The air is pure; the inhabitants are tolerably temperate; the people in good circumstances, are not sufficiently rich to give themselves up to those debaucheries which kill so many in Europe; and there are no poor, provisions being so cheap.

New-York was in great part consumed by fire in the time of the war. The vestiges of this terrible conflagration disappear; the activity which reigns every where, announces a rising posterity; they enlarge in every quarter, and extend their streets. Elegant buildings, in the English style, take place of those sharp-roofed sloping houses of the Dutch. There are some still standing in the Dutch style; they afford some pleasure to the European observer; they trace to him the origin of this colony, and the manners of those who inhabit it, whilst they call to his mind the ancient Belgic state.

M. de Warville having walked out by the side of the North-River, saw what a rapid change there was in the space of six weeks! The river forced back two hundred feet, and, by a simple mechanism, they have constructed a kind of encaement, composed of large trunks of trees crossing each other at convenient distances, and fastened together by strong beams. They conduct this floating dyke to the place where it is to be fixed, and where there is often forty feet of water. Arrived at its destination, it is sunk with an enormous weight of stones. On all sides, houses are rising, and streets extending; busy workmen building and repairing, are to be seen every where.

They are also erecting a building for Congress. They are likewise repairing the hospital; this building is in a bad condition; not a sick person could be lodged in it at the end of the war; it was a building almost abandoned; now they have ordered it to be repaired, and the reparations are executing with the greatest vigor. This building is vast; it is of brick, and perfectly well situated on the bank of the North River. It enjoys every advantage: air the most salubrious, that may be renewed at pleasure; water in abundance; pleasant and extensive walks for the sick; magnificent and agreeable prospects; out of the town, and yet sufficiently near it.

C H A P. V.

M. DE WARVILLE leaves Boston—Sleeps at Salem—Passes the Bridge of Malden and the Town of Lime—Severley—Londonberry—Newberry—Portsmouth—Proceeds to Andover—Importations, Exportations, Manufatures, &c of the United-States—The Western Territory, &c.

M. DE WARVILLE left Boston the second of October, after dinner, with Mr. Barret. They slept at Salem, fifteen miles from Boston; an excellent gravelly road, bordered with woods and meadows. This road passes the fine bridge of Malden, and the town of Linn, remarkable for the manufacture of women's shoes. It is calculated that more than an hundred thousand pairs are annually exported from this town. At Reading, not far from Linn, is a similar manufacture of men's shoes.

In passing to Beverley, they crossed another excellent wooden bridge. It is over a creek near a mile wide. The construction of this bridge, and the celerity with which it was built, give a lively idea of the activity and industry of the inhabitants of Massachusetts. It cost but three thousand pounds; the toll for a horse and carriage is eight-pence; the opening in the middle for the passage of vessels, is of a simpler mechanism than that of Charles-Town. On the road to Beverley, they saw a flourishing manufacture of cotton.

At Londonderry, a town chiefly inhabited by Irish, is a considerable manufacture of linen. They dined at Newberry. This would be one of the best ports in the United-States, were it not for a dangerous bar at the entrance. The business of ship-building has much declined here. In the year 1772 ninety vessels were built here, in 1788 only three. This town stands at the mouth of the fine river Marrimack, abounding in fish of different kinds.

It is about twenty four miles of fine road from Newberry to Portsmouth, the capital of New-Hampshire. There is little appearance of activity in this town. A thin population, many houses in ruins, women and children in rags; every thing announces decline. Yet there are elegant houses and some commerce. Portsmouth is on the Piscataway, a rapid and deep river, which never freezes till four miles above the town. This was formerly one of the greatest markets for ship-timber. Every thing in this town is commerce and ship-building.

They left Portsmouth on Sunday, and came to dine at Mr. Dalton's, five miles from Newberry, on the Marrimack: this is one of the finest situations that can be imagined. It presents an agreeable prospect of seven leagues. This farm is extremely well arranged; our hero saw on it thirty cows, numbers of sheep, &c. and a well furnished garden.

The Americans are not accustomed to grand feasts; they treat strangers as they treat themselves every day, and they live well. They say they are not anxious to starve themselves the week, in order to gormandise on Sunday. From this they proceeded to Andover.

The importations into the United-States have much increased since the peace. Among the principal manufactures and exportations, are ship-building, flour, rice, tobacco, manufactures in woollen, linen, hemp, and cotton; the fisheries, oils, forges, and the different articles in iron and steel; instruments of agriculture, nails, leather, and the numerous objects in which they are employed; paper, palleteboard, parchment, printing, pot-ash, pear-ash, hats of all qualities, ship-timber, and other wood of construction; cabinet-work, cordage, cables, carriages, works in brass, copper, and lead; glass of different kinds; gunpowder, cheese, butter, calicoes, printed linen, indigo, hats, &c. Ship-building is one of the most profitable branches of business in America. They built ships here before the war; but they were not permitted to manufacture the articles necessary to equip them; every article is now made in the country.

Breweries augment every where, and take place of the fatal distilleries. There are no less than fourteen good breweries in Philadelphia. The infant woollen manufactory at Hartford, from September 1788 to September 1789, gave about five thousand yards of cloth, some of which sells at 5 dollars a yard; another at Watertown, in Massachusetts, promises equal success, and engages the farmers to multiply their sheep,

Cotton succeeds equally well. The spinning machines of Arkwright are well known here, and are made in the country.

Pennsylvania, New-Jersey, and Delaware, make annually three hundred and fifty tons of steel, and six hundred tons of nails and nail rods. These articles are already exported from America; as are machines for carding wool and cotton, particularly common cards, which are cheaper than the English, and of a superior quality. In these three states are sixty-three paper mills, which manufacture annually to the amount of 250,000 dollars. The state of Connecticut last year made five thousand reams, which might be worth nine thousand dollars.

The prodigious consumption of all kinds of glass, multiplies the establishment of glass works. The one on the Potowmack employs five hundred persons. They have begun with success at Philadelphia, the printing of calicoes, cotton, and linen. Sugar-Refiners are increasing every where. In Pennsylvania are twenty-one powder mills, which are supposed to produce annually 625 tons of gunpowder. Among the principal articles of exportation are wheat and flour.

In treating of the Western territory our author observes, that at the foot of the Alleghanies, whose summits, however, do not threaten the heavens, like those of the Andes and the Alps, begins an immense plain, intersected with hills of a gentle ascent, and watered every where with streams of all sizes; the soil is from three to seven feet deep, and of an astonishing fertility; it is proper for every kind of culture, and it multiplies cattle almost without the care of man.

It is there that those establishments are formed, whose prosperity attracts so many emigrants; such as Kentucky, Frankland, Cumberland, Holston, Muckingum, and Scioto. The oldest and most flourishing of these is Kentucky, which began in 1775, had eight thousand inhabitants in 1782, fifty thousand in 1787, and seventy thousand in 1790. It will soon be a state.

Cumberland, situated in the neighbourhood of Kentucky, contains 8000 inhabitants, Holston 6000, and Frankland 25,000. It appears that Kentucky will preserve its advantage over the other settlements on the south; its territory is more extensive, its soil more fertile, and its inhabitants more numerous; it is situated on the Ohio, navigable at almost all seasons; this last advantage is equally enjoyed by the two settlements hereafter mentioned. The establishment at the Muckingum was formed in 1782, by a number of emigrants from New-England, belonging to the Ohio-Company. The Muckingum is a river which falls into the Ohio from the West. These people have an excellent soil, and every prospect of success.

From these proprietors is formed another association, whose name is that of the Scioto-Company; a name taken from a river, which after having traversed the two millions of acres which they possess, falls into the Ohio. This settlement would soon rise to a high degree of prosperity, if the proper cautions were taken in the embarkation, and the necessary means employed to solace them, and to prepare them for a kind of life so different from that to which they are accustomed.

The revolution in the American government will, doubtless, be beneficial to the savages; for the government tends essentially to peace. But as a rapid increase of population must necessarily be the consequence of its operations, the savages must either blend with the American, or a thousand causes will speedily annihilate that race of men.

There is nothing to fear, that the danger from the savages will ever arrest the ardour of the Americans for extending their settlements. They all expect that the navigation of the Mississippi becoming free, will soon open to them the markets of the islands, and the Spanish colonies, for the productions with which their

The spinning ma-
nnow here, and are

nd Delaware, make
y tons of steel, and
l rods. These arti-
n America; as are
cotton, particularly
er than the English,
ese three states are
anufacture annually
lars. The state of
re thousand reams,
and dollars.

of all kinds of glass,
s works. The one
e hundred persons,
t Philadelphia, the
nd linen. Sugar,
here. In Pennsylv-
lls, which are sup-
tons of gunpowder.
of exportation are

territory our author
Alleganies, whose
en the heavens, like
begins an immense
gentle ascent, and
ms of all sizes; the
et deep, and of an
r for every kind of
almost without the

formed,
emigrants; such as
nd, Holston, Mus-
d and most flourish-
began in 1775, had
2, fifty thousand in
790. It will soon

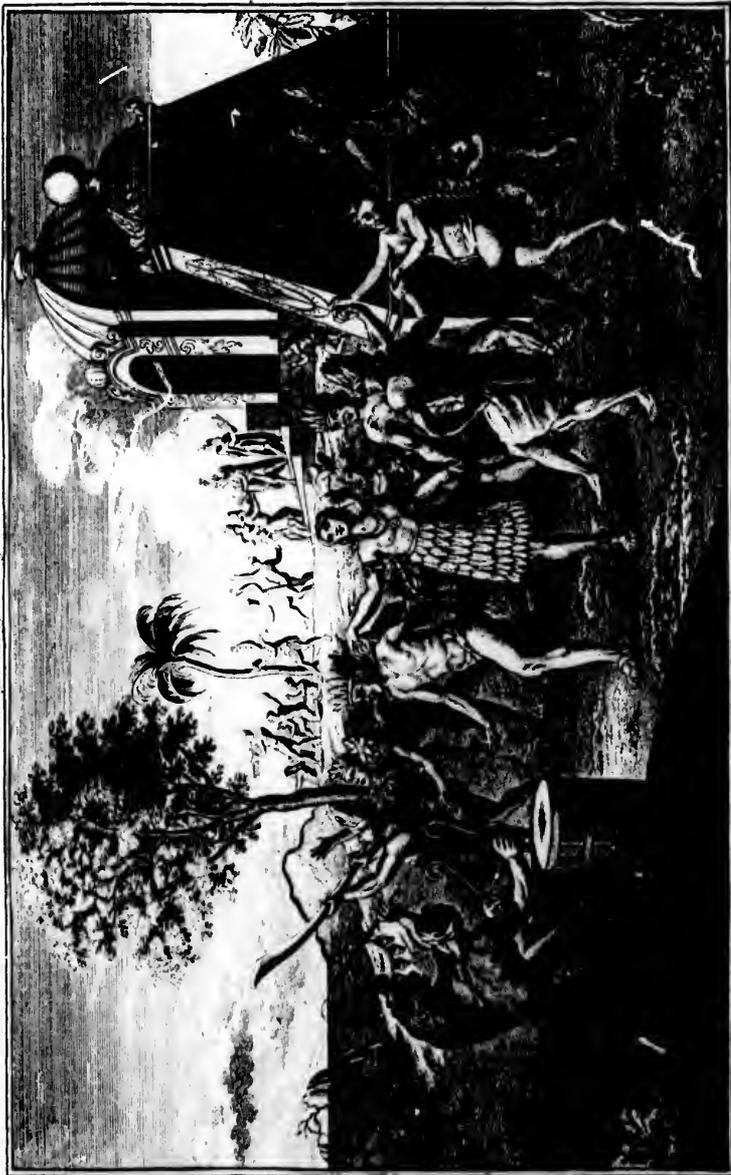
neighbourhood of
ants, Holston 5000,
ears that Kentucky
he other settlements
re extensive, its soil
more numerous: it
e at almost all sea-
ually enjoyed by
mentioned. The
as formed in 1788.
m. New-England
The Muskogee
hio from the Va.
bil, and every pri-

med another affoci-
Scioto-Company; a
ter having traversed
they possess, falls
ould soon rise to a
ne proper cautions
and the necessary
nd to prepare them
n that to which they

n government, will
savages; for the
peace. But as a
necessarily be the
savages must either
housand causes will
en.

the danger from the
r of the Americans
They all expect that
becoming free, will
f the islands, and
luctions with which
their

London: Published by the 'Illustrated Times' Via Pennsylvania Row.



Edwards & Co.

The REJOICINGS of the MEXICANS .at the beginning of the AGE.

their country overflows. But the question to be solved is, whether the Spaniards will open this navigation willingly, or whether the Americans will force it. A kind of negotiation has been carried on, without effect for four years; and it is supposed, that certain states, fearing to lose their inhabitants by emigration to the West, have, in concert with the Spanish minister, opposed it; and that this concert gave rise to a proposition, that Spain should shut up the navigation for twenty-five years, on condition that the Americans should have a free commerce with Spain. Virginia and Maryland, though they had more to fear from this emigration than the other states, were opposed to this proposition, as derogatory to the honour of the United States; and a majority of Congress adopted the sentiment.

A degree of diffidence, which the inhabitants of the West have shewn relative to the secret designs of Congress, has induced many people to believe, that the union would not exist a long time between the old and new states; and this probability of a rupture they say, is strengthened by some endeavours of the English in Canada, to attach the Western settlers to the English government.

Our author is however induced to believe, that the present union will for ever subsist. A great part of the property of the Western land belongs to

people of the East; the unceasing emigrations serve perpetually to strengthen their connections; and as it is for the interest both of the East and West, to open an extensive commerce with South-America, and to overleap the Mississippi; they must, and will, remain united for the accomplishment of this object.

The Western inhabitants are convinced that this navigation cannot remain a long time closed. They are determined to open it by good will or by force; and it would not be in the power of Congress to moderate their ardour. Men who are masters of the Ohio and the Mississippi, cannot conceive that the insolence of a handful of Spaniards can think of shutting rivers and seas against a hundred thousand free Americans. The slightest quarrel will be sufficient to throw them into a flame; and if ever the Americans shall march towards New Orleans, it will infallibly fall into their hands.

In order to avert the effects of this enterprising character of the free Americans, the Spanish government has adopted the pitiful project of attracting them to a settlement on the west of the Mississippi, and by granting to those who shall establish themselves there, the exclusive right of trading to New Orleans. This colony is the first foundation of the conquest of Louisiana, and of the civilization of Mexico and Peru.

C H A P. VI.

A Journey to Mount Vernon in Virginia—Departure from Philadelphia—Towns of Chester, Wilmington, and Brandywine—Christine-Bridge—Ferry of Susquehannah—Havre de Grace—Baltimore—Alexandria—Bristow—Bladenbury—George-Town—Arrival at Mount Vernon, the Seat of General Washington—Return to Alexandria—Observations on Maryland and Virginia—Tobacco of Virginia, and the Tobacco Notes—The Valley of Shenadore—Remarks—Conclusion.

ON the 15th of November 1788, M. de Warville set out from Philadelphia for Wilmington, distance twenty-eight miles, and road tolerably good. The town of Chester, fifteen miles from Philadelphia, is a place where strangers like to rest. It stands on a creek, which falls into the Delaware. It enjoys some commerce, and the taverns here are good.

Wilmington, which is a handsome well-built town, is much more considerable; it stands likewise on a creek near the Delaware; the basis of its commerce is the exportation of flour. It is about one mile's distance from the town of Brandywine. This town is famous for its fine mills.

At nine miles from Wilmington, our traveller passed Christine-Bridge, a place of some commerce. From thence to the head of Elk, there are but few plantations; he passed through eight miles of woods, only meeting with a few log-houses, till he arrived at Henderon's tavern, a very good inn, alone in the midst of vast forests. It is twenty-two miles from thence to the ferry of the Susquehannah. The town here is called Havre de Grace, a name given it by a Frenchman who laid the foundation of the town. It is at present an irregular mass of about 150 houses; but there is no doubt, when the entrance of the river shall be rendered navigable, but this will be an interesting situation, and a populous town. From thence to Baltimore are reckoned sixty miles. The road in general is frightful, it is over a clay soil, full of deep ruts, always in the midst of forests, frequently obstructed by trees overfett by the wind, which obliged them to seek a new passage among the woods. Our author cannot conceive why the stage does not often overfett. Both the drivers and their horses discover great skill and dexterity, being accustomed to these roads.

Some vast fields of Indian corn, but bad cultivation, pale faces worn by the fever and ague, naked negroes, and miserable huts, are the most striking images offered to the eye of the traveller in Maryland. They arrived at Baltimore in the night. It contains near two thousand houses, and fourteen thousand

inhabitants. It is irregularly built, and on land but little elevated above the surface of Patapsco-Bay, on the North of which it forms a crescent. The bay is not sufficiently deep to receive the largest ships; they anchor near Fell's-Point, two miles from the centre of the town. There are still stagnant waters in the town; few of the streets are paved; and the great quantities of mud after rain, announce that the air must be unhealthful.

Baltimore was but a village before the war; but during that period, a considerable portion of the commerce of Philadelphia was removed to this place. The greatest ships come as far as here, and can go no further; vast quantities of provisions descend the Susquehannah, and when that river shall be navigable, Baltimore must be a very considerable port.

They left Baltimore for Alexandria at four in the morning; distant about sixty miles, bad roads, a rude waggon, excellent horses, skilful conductors, poor cultivation, miserable huts, and miserable negroes.

M. de Warville saw Bristow, a new village that the State of Maryland has pointed out for the seat of a college. This edifice is nearly completed; it is on an eminence, and enjoys a good air. They breakfasted in this village, and dined at Bladenbury, sixteen miles from Alexandria. It is situated on a little river, which discharges into the Potowmack, and which admits bateaux of twenty or thirty tons. They could find nothing to drink, but brandy or rum mixed with water. In countries cultivated by slaves, there is no industry and no domestic economy. The people know not the advantage of making beer or cyder on their farms.

George-Town terminates the State of Maryland; it overlooks the Potowmack, has an agreeable situation, and a considerable commerce. Regulations and imposts, inconsiderately laid on commerce by the State of Virginia, have banished to George-Town a considerable part of the commerce of Alexandria.

This place is eight miles below George-Town, on the opposite side of the Potowmack. Alexandria has

The REJOICINGS of the MEXICANS, at the beginning of the AGE.

Edward B.

has grown from nothing to its present size within these forty years. It is not so considerable as Baltimore, which it ought to surpass. It is almost as irregular and as destitute of pavements. There is here a greater parade of luxury; but it is a miserable luxury; servants with silk stockings in boots, women elegantly dressed, and their heads adorned with feathers. The inhabitants, at the close of the war, imagined that every natural circumstance conspired to render it a great commercial town,—the salubrity of the air, the profundity of the river admitting the largest ships to anchor near the quay, an immense extent of back country, fertile and abounding in provisions. They have therefore built on every side, commodious store-houses and elegant wharfs.

Our traveller made haste to arrive at Mount Vernon, the seat of General Washington, ten miles below Alexandria on the same river. On this route there is a considerable wood, and after having passed over two hills, M. de Warville discovered a country-house of an elegant and majestic simplicity. It is preceded by grassy plats; on one side of the avenue are the stables, on the other a green-house, and houses for a number of negro mechanics. In a spacious back yard are turkeys, geese, and other poultry. This house overlooks the Potowmack, enjoys an extensive prospect, has a vast and elevated portico on the front next the river, and a convenient distribution of the apartments within.

After passing three days in the house of General Washington, who loaded our traveller with kindness, and gave him much information relative to the late war, and the present situation of the United-States, he returned to Alexandria.

The Bay of Chesapeak divides Maryland into two parts, nearly equal. The western division is the most peopled. Numerous bays and navigable-rivers render this state singularly commodious for commerce. Cotton is here cultivated, as in Virginia; but little care is taken to perfect either its culture or its manufacture. There are excellent lands in these two states; but they have very few good meadows, though these might be made in abundance. For want of attention and labour, the inhabitants make but little hay; and what they have is not good. They likewise neglect the cultivation of potatoes, carrots, and turnips, for their cattle, of which their neighbours of the north make great use. Their cattle are left without shelter in winter, and nourished with the tops of Indian corn. Of consequence many of them die with cold and hunger; and those that survive the winter, are miserably meagre.

They have much perfected in this country the English method of inoculation for the small-pox. In the manner practised here, it is very little dangerous. Whoever inoculates in Virginia, is obliged, by law, to give information to his neighbours within the space of two miles.

The population augments every where in these states, notwithstanding the great emigration to the Ohio. The horses of Virginia are, without contradiction, the finest in the country; but they bear double the price of those in the northern states. The practice of races, borrowed from the English by the Virginians, is fallen into disuse. The places renowned for this business are all abandoned.

The towns in Virginia are but small; this may be said even of Richmond with its *capital*. This capital turns the heads of the Virginians; they imagine, that from this, like the old Romans, they shall one day give law to the whole North.

There is a glass manufactory forty miles from Alexandria, which exported last year to the amount of ten thousand pounds in glass; and notwithstanding the general character of indolence in this state, the famous canal of the Potowmack advances with rapidity. Crimes are more frequent in Virginia than in the northern states. Porter, wine, and every article, bear an excessive price here.

Virginia has public magazines, where the tobacco

is deposited. Inspectors are appointed to take charge of these magazines, and inspect the quality of the tobacco; which, if merchantable, is received, and the proprietor is furnished with a note for the quantity by him deposited. This note circulates freely in the state, according to the known value of the tobacco. The price is different, according to the place where it is inspected. The following places are ranked according to the rigidity of the inspection: Hanover-Court, Pittsburg, Richmond, Cabin-Point. When the tobacco is worth sixteen shillings at Richmond, it is worth twenty-one at Hanover-Court. The tobacco travels to one place or the other, according to its quality; and if it is refused at all places, it is exported by contraband to the islands, or consumed in the country. There are two cuttings in a year of this crop; the first only is presented for inspection, the second consumed in the country or smuggled to the islands.

As Virginia produces about eighty thousand hogheads, there circulates in the state about eight hundred thousand pounds in these notes; this is the reason why the Virginians have not need of a great quantity of circulating specie, nor of copper coin. The rapid circulation of this tobacco-money supplies their place.

This scarcity, however, of small money, subjects the people to great inconveniences, and has given rise to a pernicious practice of cutting pieces of silver coin into halves and quarters; a source of many little knaveries. A person cuts a dollar into three pieces, keeps the middle piece, and passes the other two for half dollars. The person who receives these without weighing, loses the difference, and the one who takes them by weight, makes a fraudulent profit by giving them again at their pretended value; and so the cheat goes round.

But notwithstanding this pitiful resource of cutting the silver, society suffers a real injury for want of a plentiful copper coin; it is calculated, that in the towns the small expences of a family are doubled, on account of the impossibility of finding small change. It shews a striking want of order in the government, and increases the misery of the poor. Though tobacco exhausts the land to a prodigious degree, the proprietors take no pains to restore its vigor; they take what the soil will give, and abandon it when it gives no longer. They like better to clear new lands, than to regenerate the old. Yet these abandoned lands would still be fertile, if they were properly manured and cultivated. The Virginians take no tobacco in substance, either in the nose or mouth; some of them smoke, but this practice is not so general among them as in the Carolinas.

The Americans wish for the free commerce of tobacco with France; and they complain much of the monopoly of the farmers-general. If this monopoly were removed, and the tobacco subjected only to a small duty on importation into France, there is no doubt but that the Americans would give the French a share of those immense quantities with which they inundate Europe. They are now carried chiefly to England; where about the tenth part is consumed, and the rest is exported. England pays the whole in her own merchandize.

The high duty paid in England on tobacco, will prevent the Americans from giving the preference to France. It amounts to fifteen pence sterling on the pound. Though England consumes little tobacco, she draws from it a revenue of 600,000 pounds sterling. The state of the finances of that island, will not admit of her diminishing this duty in order to rival France.

The great consumption of tobacco in all countries, and the prohibitive regulations of almost all governments, may engage the Americans to continue this culture; for as they can furnish it at a low price, as they navigate at a small expence, as no people equal them in enterprize and industry, they may undertake to furnish the whole earth.

Spain, for instance, will doubtless become a market for them. A respectable author makes the

appointed to take charge of the quality of the tobacco, and is received, and is noted for the quantity of the note circulates freely in its own value of the tobacco, and to the place where it is placed are ranked accordingly: Hanover-Court, Point. When the tobacco at Richmond, it is worth according to its quality; it is exported by consumption in the country, a year of this crop; the second con- gelled to the islands.

Eighty thousand hogsheads of tobacco are sent to the state about eight hundred notes; this is the reason of a great quantity of copper coin. The rapid money supplies their place. Of small money, subjects of sciences, and has given rise to cutting pieces of silver into a source of many cuts a dollar into three pieces, and passes the other person who receives these difference, and the one makes a fraudulent profit their pretended value; and

the resource of cutting real injury for want of is calculated, that in the a family are doubled, on of finding small change. order in the government, the poor. Though tobacco-prodigious degree, the to restore its vigor; they and abandon it when it ke better to clear new the old. Yet these abandoned-fertile, if they were produced. The Virginians take ther in the nose or mouth; is practice is not so general.

For the free commerce of they complain much of general. If this monopoly tobacco subjected only on into France, there is Americans would give the immense quantities with. They are now carried about the tenth part is exported. England pays a duty.

England on tobacco, will giving the preference to ten pence sterling on the consumes little tobacco, of 600,000 pounds sterling of that island, will g this duty in order to

tobacco in all countries, ons of almost all governments to continue this nish it at a low price, as ence, as no people equal lity, they may undertake

doubtless become a mar- table author makes the revenue

revenue which the king draws from this article, amount to twenty millions of livres (£833,333 4 sterling). The greater part of this tobacco is brought from Brazil by the Portuguese, sold to the king at fivepence sterling the pound, and then sold by him at eight shillings and fourpence. At the expiration of the present contract, the same author observes, the Americans will offer a more advantageous one, and it is said they will have the preference.

This high price encourages a considerable contraband in Spain, though interdicted by the pains of death. The law is too rigid to be executed.

The tobacco of the Mississippi and the Ohio will, doubtless, one day furnish the greater part of the consumption of Spain as well as of France. For it is proved, by those who know the secrets of the farm, that the consumption of the latter amounts to more than thirty millions of pounds annually, instead of fifteen, as we have been made to believe.

M. de Warville proposed, on quitting Alexandria, to visit that charming valley, washed by the Shenandoe. From thence he intended to return by the vale of Lancaster, and pay his respects to the virtuous Moravians. But the Revolution in France balked his return, and obliged him to decline the greater part of his intentions.

The Valley of Shenandoe, which lies between the fourth mountain and the north, or endless mountain, is from thirty to forty miles wide; chalky bottom, a fertile soil, and a good air. This situation offers almost all the advantages of the western country, without its inconveniences. It is almost in the centre of the United States, and has nothing to fear from foreign enemies. It lies between two considerable rivers, which fall into the Chesapeake; and though the navigation of these rivers is interrupted for the present, yet there is no doubt, that the progress of the works on the Potomack, that this inconvenience will soon be removed.

The price of lands here, as elsewhere, varies according to their quality. They purchase at any price, from one to five guineas the acre, land of the same quality as in Pennsylvania from four to twenty guineas.

The average distance of these lands from commercial towns is as follows: fifty miles from Georgetown, about fifty miles from Alexandria, eighty or an hundred from Richmond and from Baltimore. But this part of the country is still more inviting for its future prospects. Of all the rivers that discharge into the Atlantic, the Potomack offers the most direct communication with the rivers of the West. This circumstance will make it one day the great channel of intercourse for almost all the United-States; and its situation renders it secure against being interrupted by war.

But to realize the advantages which the situation of this country seems to promise, requires a reformation of manners, and the banishment of luxury, which is more considerable here than in Pennsylvania. Idleness and the love of the chase, which are deeply rooted in the soul of the Virginians, and, above all things, slavery must be extirpated; which infallibly produce those great scourges of society, laziness and vice, in one class of men, unindustrious labour and degrading misery in another. The view of this deforming wound of humanity, will discourage foreigners of sensibility from coming to this state; while they have not to dread this disgusting spectacle in Pennsylvania. But it is in a country like in America, that true happiness is to be found by him who is wise enough to make it consist in tranquillity of soul, in the enjoyment of himself, and of nature. What is the fatiguing agitation of our great cities, compared to this delicious calmness? The trees, do not calumniate; they revile not their benefactors; men of the greatest merit cannot always lay this of their fellow-creatures.

Our author in treating of the American trade to the East-Indies, observes that the first motive to it,

was the hope of economizing in the price of East-India goods, which they formerly imported from England, and this economy must be immense, if estimated by the great consumption of tea in America, and the high price it bears in England. In the year 1761, the English American colonies sent to England 85,000l. sterling in Spanish dollars for this single article, and since that time the consumption of it has at least tripled. Another motive which encouraged them to push this commerce, was the hope of being able to supply South-America, the Spanish and other islands, and even the markets of Europe, with the goods of the East; and to obtain every where the preference, by the low price at which they might be afforded. And this project is not without foundation. The nature of things invites the Americans to become the first carriers in the world. They build ships at two-thirds of the expence that they are built at in Europe, and navigate with less seamen, and at less expence. Also, the productions of their country are more favourable to this commerce than those of Europe. They carry ginseng to China; plank, ship-timber, flour, and salted provisions to the Cape of Good Hope, and to the isles of France and Bourbon. They are not, therefore, obliged to export to great a proportion of specie as the Europeans, who have establishments in the East.

Notwithstanding the number of maladies in America, the inhabitants are remarkable for longevity. It is difficult here to obtain regular tables of births and deaths. There are some sects who do not baptize their children, and whose registers are not carefully kept; others who baptize only their adults. Some of the sick have no physicians or surgeons, and their attendants who give the information are not exact. The constant fluctuations occasioned by emigrations and immigrations, still increase the difficulty.

A principal cause of emigration in the back parts of Pennsylvania, is the hope of escaping taxes; yet the land-tax is very light, as it does not exceed a penny in the pound of the estimation; and the estimation is much under the value of the lands. There is much irregularity in the land tax, as likewise in the capitation, or poll tax; but one thing pleased our author much—that bachelors pay more than married men.

No sea is impenetrable to the navigating genius of the Americans. Their flag is every where displayed; they are continually exploring islands, studying their wants, and returning to supply them.

The Americans have already made a considerable commerce on the coast of Nootka-Sound, in furs and peltry. They were there trading in the year 1789, in good intelligence with both parties. In the same year, no less than forty-four vessels were sent from the single town of Bolton to the north-west of America, to India, and to China. They bound not their hopes here: they expect, one day, to open a communication more direct to Nootka-Sound. It is probable that this place is not far from the head waters of the Mississippi; which the Americans will soon navigate to its source, when they shall begin to people Louisiana and the interior of New Mexico.

Having now completed the Travels of M. BRISSOT DE WARVILLE IN AMERICA, and rendered his Observations on the UNITED STATES more candid and impartial than they have hitherto appeared, by expunging all these galling Compliments and unnecessary Allusions with which his own Accounts are interlarded, and rectifying many Errors committed through the hurry of Composition; we shall now proceed with the interesting Narrative of LORD MACARTNEY'S Embassy to China, interspersed with several new and entertaining Anecdotes, and fully descriptive of YONKIN LOONG, the present Emperor— Hoping, that while we preserve our usual Accuracy and Spirit, we shall still retain the preference and attention of our numerous Readers and Subscribers.



A NEW, GENUINE, AND COMPLETE

HISTORY OF

Voyages & Travels:

Undertaken and Performed in the Years 1792 and 1793,

By LORD MACARTNEY and his Suite,

IN CONSEQUENCE OF

His LORDSHIP'S EMBASSY to CHINA.

Containing an INTERESTING NARRATIVE of all the CHINESE CUSTOMS, ENTERTAINMENTS, &c. with ACCURATE OBSERVATIONS of the several Remarkable ISLANDS they passed.

Including many New and Entertaining Anecdotes of TCHIEN LOONG, the present Emperor of CHINA, and interspersed with several other Curious Relations.

CHAPTER I.

Lord MACARTNEY and Suite embark on board the Lion—Part Company with the Jackall—Pass the Desert-Island, &c.—Anchor in Funchal-Bay—Description of Funchal and Madeira—Departure—An Attempt to reach the Peak of Teneriffe—Anchor in Rio-Janeiro-Harbour—A ceremonial Visit to the Viceroy—Pursue their Voyage—Discover the Isle of Amsterdam—An awful Volcano—Land at Batavia—Description of that City—His Lordship seized with the Gout—A Visit to the Theatre—Departure from Batavia—They continue their Voyage—A Vessel purchased in the Place of the Jackall—Recovery of the Jackall—Anchor in Pulo-Condore-Bay—An Interview with the Natives—The Village suddenly deserted—Reasons—Departure from Pulo-Condore—Anchor in Taron-Bay—A Visit from the Prime Minister of the King of Corbin-China, with an Invitation—A Present—They visit the Town of Fic-Foo—An Entertainment by Six Elephants—The Master of the Lion, with Seven Men, taken Prisoners—Consequent Uneasiness—The Master, &c. set free—Death of the Pariser—Proceed on their Voyage—Anchor in Tjangang-foe-Bay—A Present—A principal Mandarin invited to Dinner—Description of the Town of Meitow.

LORD Macartney, with his whole suite, went on board the *Lion*, at Spithead, September 21, 1792; and on the 29th of the same month they took their final departure, accompanied by the Hindostan East-Indiaman, and the *Jackall* brig. During the beginning of their voyage nothing particular happened, except that the *Jackall* parted company in a gale of wind, in the Bay of Biscay, and did not rejoin them till after they had left Batavia.

They made land on the 10th of October, and passed the *Desert-Island* and *Porto-Santo*; the next day they cast anchor in *Funchal-Bay*, in the island of *Madreia*.

On Lieutenant Campbell being sent to the governor of the *Madeiras*, to notify the ambassador's arrival, salutes of guns were interchanged between the *Lion* and the garrison. Soon after, the British consul, attended by several English gentlemen and merchants, came to pay their respects to his excellency, and to invite him on shore. This invitation being accepted, the yard-arms were manned; during his lordship's passage from the ship to the shore, salutes were repeated; and at the landing-place, the governor of the *Madeiras*, the British consul, and the principal inhabitants, received the ambassador with every mark of esteem and congratulation. During his stay, he was splendidly entertained by the British consul and the governor on successive days; and before his departure, had the honour of

a visit in return on board the *Lion*, from all the most distinguished persons of the island.

Funchal, a town, is about three miles in length and one in breadth. Its population is very considerable; consisting of Portuguese, mulattoes, negroes, and a few British, who are engaged in the commerce of the place. The natives seem to be courteous in their disposition, and attentive to strangers.

Madreia, an island, is extremely mountainous; but the views are beautifully romantic; and verdure and fertility cover the most unpromising situations.

They took their leave of *Madreia* on the 18th of October, and on the 21st anchored in *Santa-Cruz-Bay*, in the *isle of Teneriffe*. This island, in extent, riches, and population, is the most considerable of those known by the general appellation of the *Canaries*. The town of *Santa-Cruz* is pretty large, well built, and populous, and is defended by two forts, which also command the bay. The *Peak of Teneriffe* is well known to be one of the highest mountains in the world; and it presents a number of objects which the curious inquirer into nature can never cease to contemplate with admiration. It rises in the centre of the island, and its ascent from *Santa-Cruz* may be about twenty miles. Some of the principal gentlemen of the embassy, with attendants, resolved to visit the *Peak*.

They set out on the morning of the 24th, prepared and equipped for the expedition, and furnished with guides;



vells:

1793,

s Suite,

CHINA.

ENTERTAINMENTS,
ANDS they passed.

in Emperor of CHINA,

*Macall—Pass the Depart-
ure—An Attempt to reach
—Pursue their Voyage—
of that City—His Lordship
their Voyage—A Voyage
-Bay—An Interview with
—Anchor in Turon-Bay—
A Present—They visit the
with Seven Men, taken
Proceed on their Voyage—
—Description of the Town*

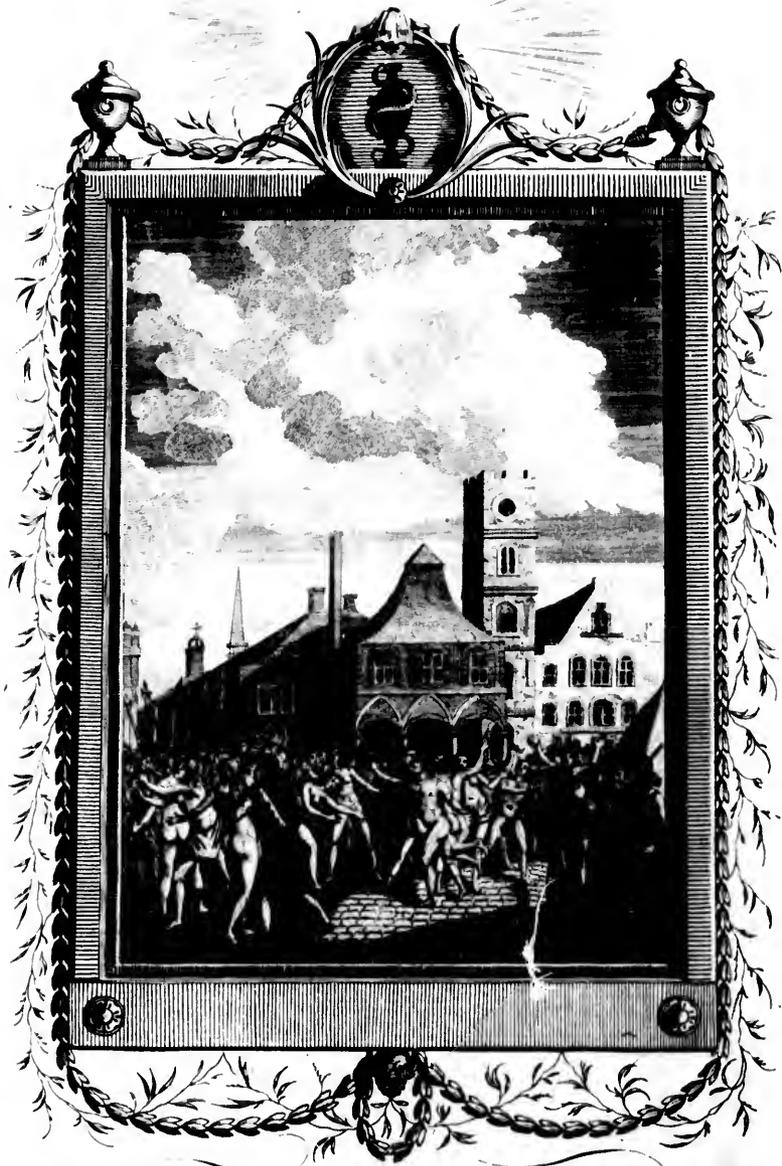
e Lion, from all the most
e island.

ut three miles in length
opulation is very confide-
quele, mulattoes, negroes,
engaged in the commerce
seem to be courteous in
tive to strangers.

extremely mountainous;
ly romantic; and verdure
unpromising situations.

of Madeira on the 18th of
anchored in Santa-Cruz-
se. This island, in extent,
the most considerable of
ral appellation of the Ca-
anta-Cruz is pretty large,
and is defended by two
d the bay. The Peak of
to be one of the highest
nd it presents a number of
inquirer into nature can
with admiration. It rises
and its ascent from Santa-
nty miles. Some of the
e embassy, with attendants,

ning of the 24th, prepared
dition, and furnished with
guides;



The ADAMITES seized
and taken into custody by the Guards, at Amsterdam?

guides; but after encountering a series of dangers, night coming on, they determined to take up their lodging at the bottom of the Peak, to which they were now advanced, and to renew their journey in the morning. At an early hour they again set out; but were obliged by the innumerable difficulties and dangers they encountered, to relinquish the gratification of reaching the summit. After a fatiguing exertion of two days, they returned to Santa-Cruz; and on the 27th they bid adieu to the Canaries. The Cape de Verd Islands lay next in their route; and Fort-Praya-Bay, in the isle of St. Jago, received them November the 2d.

The town of Praya is chiefly remarkable for the advantage of its port, where outward-bound ships of all nations frequently touch.

On the 18th of November they passed the line; and on the 1st of December came to anchor in Rio-Janeiro-Harbour, in the Brazils; where they found an opportunity of transmitting letters to England by a South-Sea whaler.

December 2, an officer was dispatched to announce the ambassador's arrival to the viceroy. Being then at his country residence, the usual salutes were suspended; however, the deputy-viceroy came in three next morning, to compliment Lord Macartney; but his lordship being much indisposed, was unable to receive him in person, Sir George Staunton and Sir Erasmus Gower, therefore, represented his excellency on this occasion. The day following, the deputy-viceroy, in the name of his principal, congratulated his excellency the ambassador on his arrival, and made a tender of a house for his residence during his stay.

Having accepted this obliging offer, on the 7th at noon his lordship proceeded on shore with the usual formalities, and was received with all possible distinction by the viceroy, attended by his guard and the most distinguished persons of the place. After taking some refreshment at the viceroy's palace, the ambassador, and the principal gentlemen of his suite, were accommodated with carriages to convey them to the house destined for their reception, about two miles distant from the city.

Lord Macartney, with his whole suite, paid a ceremonial visit to the viceroy on the 10th. In the evening his lordship and attendants took a walk in the public garden, the usual amusement, and the scene of the principal entertainment of the inhabitants of the place. This garden is laid out into grass plots and gravel walks, shaded with trees of perpetual verdure, interspersed with lamps. At one end they observed a large structure for music and dancing, which it seems are favourite recreations here at the proper seasons of the year.

On the 11th, the viceroy, in grand procession, returned Lord Macartney's visit. A discharge of artillery announced the moment of his departure from his palace. The ambassador stood ready to receive him on his arrival; and after conducting him to the principal apartment, presented the gentlemen of the embassy, who were all respectfully noticed by the viceroy. An elegant repast concluded the visit. The viceroy's dress was very splendid. It was scarlet cloth embroidered with gold and precious stones. His attendants, in general, wore a livery of green and gold.

Having already described the town of Rio-Janeiro, by some called St. Sebastian, in our former voyages, a repetition here would be unnecessary.

Lord Macartney, being still under indisposition, privately returned on board the *Lion*, on the afternoon of the 15th; and every preparation having been made for renewing their voyage, on the 18th they left the harbour of Rio-Janeiro.

The festival of Christmas overtook them amid the waste of waters; it is scarcely necessary to say that it did not pass unobserved, or its local rites unenjoyed. For some preceding and following days, their voyage was barren of occurrences; however,

on the last day of the old year they reached the island of Triflan de Cunha, a barren and almost inaccessible rock, near the centre of the Southern Ocean. Uninhabited by men, it is the resort of a prodigious variety of marine fowls; and its surrounding seas abound in whales and other tenants of the deep. An officer being sent on shore in the cutter, reported that the beach was favourable, and that fresh water was plenty.

They intended, January 1, 1793, to send out a watering party; and another on natural and philosophical researches. Both schemes were frustrated. A heavy gale came on at midnight, and had not the wind providentially changed, at a moment of imminent danger, their destruction would have been inevitable. During many successive days the weather was generally moderate; and a month passed away without their seeing land.

On the 11th of February, however, they discovered the isle of Amsterdam. They came to an anchor on the East side of this island; and found here five seal hunters from the Isle of France, who had mutually engaged to spend eighteen months on this unpropitious spot; six were already elapsed; and during that period, it seems, they had killed no fewer than 8000 seals. These men, with the utmost civility, conducted them to a hut they had built, and served as their conductors round their usurped domain. They had formed a path, with incredible labour, over a mountain, crowned with a volcano, which throws out a substance resembling salt-petre. In ascending this path, our adventurers found a small spring of boiling-hot water, in which some fish were perfectly dressed in a few minutes. The whole island, which is about eight miles long and six broad, has a volcanic appearance; and produces neither tree nor shrub. Vast quantities of fish were caught here, and salted for use; many species were very delicate, particularly lobsters.

It being a dark night when they departed, they had an opportunity of contemplating one of the most awful spectacles in nature. The flames of the volcano were seen rising from six different openings. Whether this was its usual appearance, or only one of its occasional eruptions, could not be affirmed.

They came in sight of the Trial-Rocks on the 18th. They scarcely rise above the surface of the deep; but the waves dash against them with so much impetuosity, that they run mountains high. This fortunately marks the situation of these formidable rocks, and in reality lessens the danger by magnifying its appearance.

Some short time after, they entered the Straits of Sunda; and on the 6th of March arrived in the Road of Batavia, where they immediately received the salutes of all the English ships, and of one French vessel. Early next morning, the garrison fired a salute, which was returned; and soon after a deputation from the governor-general waited on Lord Macartney, to invite him on shore. His lordship landed on the 8th, it being the anniversary of the birth-day of the Prince of Orange, and a royal salute was fired in honour of the day; afterwards the ambassador went on shore, with the usual ceremonies and attendants. The Royal Batavian Hotel was fixed on for the residence of the suite, and in the afternoon the baggage was safely landed before the door. This hotel is an elegant and spacious structure, and was built at the public expence, for the accommodation of occasional visitors of distinction. The style of living here is expensive; European liquors of every description being at a very high price; but when it is considered that the landlord is obliged to import them from Europe, and pays an annual rent to government of sixty thousand rix-dollars, it may reasonably be supposed, that the profits must be great, to counterbalance his risk and certain outgoings.

The governor-general gave a splendid entertainment to the principal persons in Batavia, at his country

country residence, to which Lord Macartney went by invitation. A ball and supper concluded the fete, and mirth and festivity were prolonged beyond the hours of night.

Batavia, the oriental emporium of the Dutch, is the principal city in the island of Java: it is almost square, surrounded by high walls and gates, and protected by forts, which are well garrisoned. The streets are spacious, and well paved; the buildings in general are uniformly elegant; and through every principal street runs a canal of considerable width, lined on both sides with trees of perennial leaves. In a climate so intolerably hot, this furnishes an agreeable refreshment; but perhaps the quantity of stagnant or slow moving water, thus collected, increases the natural insalubrity of the place. Indeed, so fatal is the climate of Batavia to Europeans, that scarcely one in twenty revisit their native land; and those who escape death there, carry with them emaciated forms and debilitated constitutions to the grave. From the registers of the public hospital, it appears, that the average number of deaths, annually, in that single receptacle of misery, does not amount to much less than five thousand. The population of Batavia, however, is nevertheless very considerable; amounting, at a moderate calculation, to two hundred thousand souls, of whom a majority are Chinese. These chiefly inhabit the suburbs, or Chinese Town, and appear to be an industrious and regular people. They carry on a variety of trades and manufactures; for Europeans think it beneath them to engage in mechanical operations. The Malays are also very numerous in Batavia, and possess all the malignant qualities that so universally adhere to that ferocious race of men. Nothing but constant severity, it is said, can keep them within the bounds of duty. Adapted to the depravity of the people in general, is the nature of the government of Batavia. It is arbitrary in a high degree; and the rigour, with which every species of delinquency is punished, can only find a justification in the ferocious disposition and the bale propensities of the natives.

His lordship soon after his landing, was seized with a fit of the gout, which put a stop to all the festivities intended to fill up the time of their stay. Several gentlemen of his suite also fell ill, in less than a week after their arrival; and to facilitate their recovery, they were ordered on board their respective ships.

During their stay here, a party of them attended the theatre. The play was the tragedy of Mahomet; and the entertainment, Barnaby Rudge. The audience seemed vally amused; but not understanding the language, our heroes could form no idea of the merits of the performance, except from the attitudes and expression of the actors, which seemed to be impressive and correct.

They left Batavia on the 16th, and next morning they made sail, passing the isle of Onroost, which lies in the middle of the bay; and notwithstanding the smallness of its size, contains a populous town, many elegant villas, and several flourishing manufactures. The superior salubrity of the air recommends this and some other surrounding isles, to those whose circumstances qualify them to reside where pleasure or health invites.

As the Jackall brig was now given up for lost, Lord Macartney purchased a French vessel at Batavia to supply her place, and gave her the name of the Clarence. The Clarence, however, had only joined them the day before they received some intelligence of the Jackall by a ship from Olland to Batavia; and this intelligence was confirmed by the brig joining them on the 23d, to the great joy of the whole embassy.

One of their crew named Leighton had gone on shore on the 29th, to wash his linen at Sumatra-Beach, and was found covered with wounds, and murdered by the Malays. To the savage disposition of these people, this event gave an additional, though

melancholy testimony. The last rites were paid to the body of the deceased with the utmost decency and respect; and the feelings of the whole ship's company on the occasion, were the best eulogium on his character and conduct. This day in the afternoon Lord Macartney signified his intention of going on shore, to view the spot where the Honourable Colonel Catheart (who held a similar situation to his lordship some years back) was buried; all that was to be expected from their mission, was of course anticipated by him, but his death put an end to that diplomatic attempt. After passing a variety of islands, they came to anchor in Pulo-Condore-Bay, May 16.

Soon after their arrival, a party of gentlemen, accompanied by one of the Chinese interpreters, went on shore. Some of the natives met them on the beach, with whom they proceeded till they came at a small distance to a village of bamboo huts; one of which was the residence of the chief, whose authority extended over the whole island. Like the rest, his habitation was formed of bamboo, raised on four posts, a few feet from the ground. Here we found several natives of Cochin-China, who wore no other dress but a piece of linen round their waists, and a black turban on their heads. The chief was habited in a loose black gown, and a pair of black silk trousers. He was also decorated with a silver cord thrown over his shoulder, from which a small bag of elegant workmanship was suspended. In common with the rest, he wore a turban, but no shoes. He appeared to be the object of very great adoration.

Adjoining his palace, if so it may be called, stood the temple. Externally, it resembled the other buildings; but the inside was adorned with various military weapons of Europe, particularly some old fire arms, of which they evidently did not know the use, and seemed to consider them only as objects of veneration. The discharge of a musket against a tree, excited the most lively alarm and astonishment. They eagerly examined the place where the ball entered; they even contrived to extract it, when presented it to each other, with the most violent emotion.

A treaty being entered into with the chief for a supply of buffaloes, poultry, and fruit, with which he was to furnish them the next day, our adventurers were regaled with rice and fish. Finding that cocoa nuts would be acceptable, the chief immediately ordered some to be procured for them. The dexterity these people shewed in climbing the trees that produced them, is astonishing. On their return to the ship, they observed caves on the beach very ingeniously constructed.

Pulo-Condore is but thinly peopled. The means of subsistence is difficult; and population of course must be influenced thereby. This island is subject to the king of Cochin-China.

On landing next morning, to receive the stipulated supply of provisions, they found, to their great astonishment, the village deserted, and every moveable carried off. A letter in Chinese characters, left in the hut of the chief, explained the reasons of this sudden and unexpected movement. It seems they were apprehensive of hostilities against them, from the ships coming to anchor in their bay; they earnestly implored the Europeans to spare their humble dwellings, which they intended to re-occupy on their departure; and dwelt on their poverty, which they perhaps concluded was their best protection, and the strongest arguments to allay European rapacity. Thus being obliged to set sail without their expected supply, they left Pulo-Condore on the 18th, and passing several islands of different forms and magnitude, they anchored on the evening of the 26th in Turon-Bay, in Cochin-China.

The ambassador shortly after their arrival received a visit from several mandarins, who came in great state. They were liberally entertained; but at first seemed averse to taste the wines and other liquors which were set before them. This reserve appearing to arise from fear, Lord Macartney set them an example,

the last rites were paid to
with the utmost decency
ings of the whole ships
ere the best eulogium on

This day in the after-
ned his intention of going
where the Honourable
a similar situation to his
as buried; all that was
tion, was of course un-
neath put an end to that
assing a variety of islands,
Condore-Bay, May 16,
a party of gentlemen,
hinese interpreters, went
tives met them on the
ceeded till they came at a
f bamboo huts; one of
e chief, whose authority
und. Like the rest, his
bamboo, raised on four
round. Here we found
ina, who wore no other
ound their waifs, and a

The chief was habited
a pair of black silk trow-
ed with a silver cord
om which a small bag of
ispended. In common
an, but no shoes. He
very great adoration.

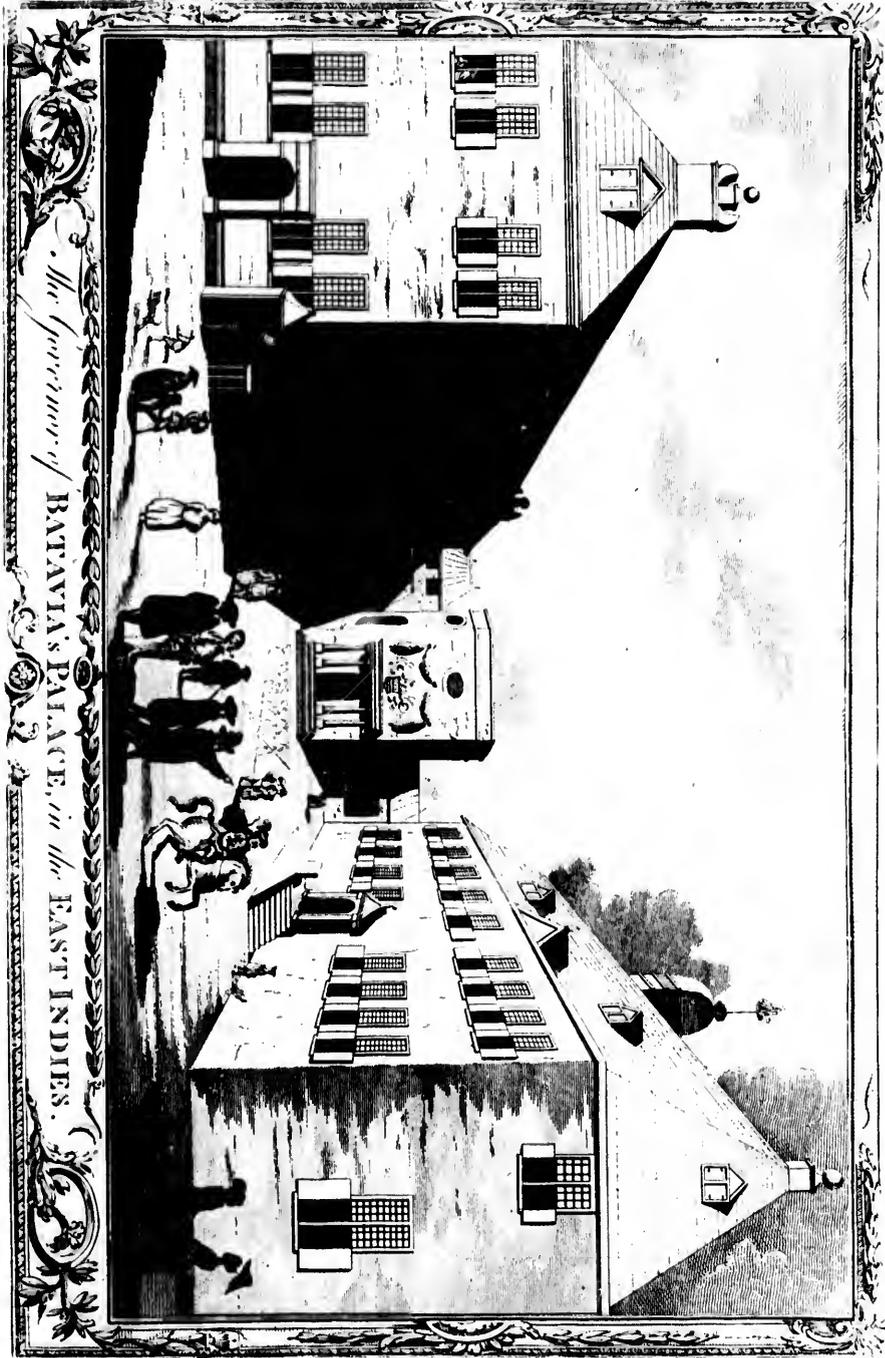
It may be called, flood
sembled the other build-
ed with various military
arly some old fire arms,
not know the use, and
as objects of veneration
muskets against a tree,
and astonishment. They
where the ball entered;
it, when presented
it with motion.

So we presented the
chief for a
and fruit, with which
ext day, our adventurers
h. Finding that cocoa
the chief immediately
for them. The de-
climbing the trees that
On their return to
es on the beach very

peopled. The means
population of course
This island is subject

to receive the stipulated
found, to their great
ected, and every move-
Chinese characters, left
ned the reasons of this
ment. It seems they
against them, from the
ir bay: they earnestly
re their humble dwell-
to re-occupy on their
r poverty, which they
est protection, and the
ropean rapacity. Thus
ut their expected sup-
in the 18th, and passing
is and magnitude, they
e 26th in Turon-Bay,

their arrival received
, who came in great
ertained; but at first
ces and other liquors
his reserve appearing
artney set them an
example,





example, when they indulged very freely; shewing a particular predilection for cherry and raspberry brandy. These chiefs wore nearly the same kind of dress as those at Pulo-Condore, except that they had a girdle of silver cordage. Their domestics were clad in a fancy dress, resembling tartan; and their legs and feet were wholly bare.

News of their arrival having reached the court, in the evening of the 29th the prime minister of the king of Cochin-China, attended by several mandarins, came, in his majesty's name, to invite the ambassador to dinner. His excellency obligingly accepted the invitation, but postponed the day to June the 4th.

He received in the mean time a present from the king, consisting of a great number of buffaloes, hogs, fowls, ducks, some bags of rice, and some jars of sampsoo, a Chinese liquor, reckoned very delicious.

They visited the town of Fie-Foo, while they lay here. It is nothing but an assemblage of wretched bamboo huts, but it has a good market; and were the industry of the natives equal to the fertility of the soil, this place would be remarkably abundant. They seem, however, to have little knowledge of agriculture: they subsist therefore chiefly on the spontaneous produce of the earth; and make their women a principal branch of their trade. For a certain consideration; they are always ready to consign them to the society of Europeans who touch here, without any apparent sense of impropriety. In one of their excursions to the shore, they saw six elephants performing a variety of unwieldy feats, for the entertainment of the mandarins who had assembled here.

The 4th of June, being his majesty's birth-day, was ushered in with a salute of twenty-one guns; the royal standard of Great-Britain, the St. George's ensign, and the union, were all displayed at their appropriate stations. In honour of this day, Lord Macartney had fixed his landing. Several mandarins waited his arrival on shore; and attended him, under an escort of his own troops, to the residence of the prime minister. A collation was here provided for him, consisting of all the dainties the country afforded; after partaking of which, he returned on board, interchanging mutual civilities with his hosts.

Matters thus far proceeded to the satisfaction of all parties in Cochin-China; but the master of the Lion, who had gone in the cutter to take soundings in the bay, having unreflectingly begun to survey the coast, was immediately seized, with seven men, who accompanied him, and carried prisoners to the capital.

When they first received this disagreeable intelligence, the impression it made is not easily conceived. It was not only the danger to which their countrymen had exposed themselves, that affected the embassy; but as this kingdom is tributary to China, it was feared, that a representation of this inconsiderate conduct, as to them it might appear criminal, would have an injurious effect on all their future proceedings; and that the object so much at heart—to inspire confidence, would be changed into suspicion and alarm. The good offices of the friendly mandarins were instantly and earnestly solicited. One of the interpreters was sent on shore to promote an inquiry and furnish an explanation; and on the 13th, they had the happiness to see the matter and his men return in safety, after an absence of six days. What they suffered during this period of suspense, cannot well be described. Nothing but a respect for the country to which they belonged, and a regard to the mission on which they were employed, could have saved them from certain death. This was not the only unpleasant event that befell them here. They lost a respectable gentleman, the purser of the Lion, who died, after a few days illness, on the 14th, and was interred on shore with all possible solemnity and respect. Over his grave was placed an inscription, cut in wood.

On the 16th of June they left Cochin-China, and the Jackall and Clarence brig, with Sir George Staunton and one of Lord Macartney's secretaries, were dispatched to Macao on the 20th. These gentlemen were charged with letters to the commissioners sent from England to notify the expected embassy. The two gentlemen who were the Chinese interpreters, took this opportunity of proceeding to revisit their relations and friends, from whom they had been long separated.

The intelligence brought by Sir George Staunton, who rejoined them on the 23d, gave very flattering hopes of the success of the embassy. At a time when they were approaching the scene of negotiation, this news was highly gratifying. During their passage up the Yellow-Sea, they passed numerous islands.

On the 21st of July they cast anchor in Jangganfoe-Bay. Several officers were immediately sent in the cutter to Mettow, to reconnoitre the coast, and to ascertain if there were any practicable means of approaching nearer the capital on shipboard. The cutter returned on the 25th. They gave a very favourable report of the reception they had experienced from the Chinese; but reported, that it was absolutely impracticable to proceed further, on account of shoals and other natural impediments. It was therefore resolved to disembark; and a gentleman, accompanied by an interpreter, sailed in the cutter to Mettow, to make arrangements for this purpose. The mandarins promised to provide large junks for the reception of the suite and baggage, as soon as the wind proved favourable. Some short time after, they received a present of some bullocks and sheep, several hogs, poultry, vegetables, and other productions of the country. A principal mandarin also came on board the Lion, who finally settled the mode and the day of the disembarkation. He was invited to dinner; but not being provided with his usual table appendages, he seemed to feel himself in an unpleasant situation. The Chinese neither use knives nor forks: whether they appeared more ridiculous to him, or he to them, it may be difficult to decide. He expressed the greatest admiration of the ship, and the various arrangements and conveniences he saw on board; but what seemed to delight him most, was his being hoisted into one of their boats in the accommodation chair.

Now the greatest part of the baggage had been put on board the junks sent to receive it, and on the 5th of August, several more came alongside the Lion to take the remainder, and the suite. Before his excellency disembarked, the captain ordered the company to man ship: he was saluted with three cheers from the seamen, and a discharge of guns from the ships.

The junk intended for his lordship's reception, being found inconvenient and filthy, as indeed they were all, he quitted it and went on board the Clarence brig.

For this purpose they occupied no fewer than twenty junks, of about an hundred tons burden; and proceeding slowly, from the various difficulties of the river, the whole fleet anchored opposite the palace of the principal mandarin in Mettow, in the afternoon of the same day. This town, the first which they had seen in China, possessed none of those attractions that arise from the elegance of building, or the beauty of situation. It stands on a swampy spot, frequently overflowed by the sea, which no precaution of the inhabitants is able to prevent; and the houses or huts are wholly constructed of mud, covered with bamboo, without either floors or pavements. The residences of the mandarins, however, which lie at a small distance from the town, are built of stone and wood, three stories high, and are adorned with painting, gilding, and piazzas. They appear to contain a considerable number of apartments; each palace being furnished with projecting wings, which are generally of variously painted wood. Guards of both infantry and cavalry attend each mandarin, and environ his palace with their tents.

One solitary fort, consisting of a square tower, was probably meant for the defence of the place, as its situation commands the entrance of the river; but having neither ordnance or garrison, it serves rather as an ornament than a security. The river here is of considerable breadth, but of small and unequal depth.

Across its entrance runs a bank of land. The surrounding country presents a flat expanse of a rich soil and great fertility. Curiosity, which induced vast numbers to crowd the shores, during the landing of the embassy, gave them a very grand idea of the population of Metow and the environs.

C H A P. II.

Office of Van-Tadge-In, a Mandarin—Junks provided for their Conveyance to Peking, and Provisions—Indifference of the Chinese respecting their Meats—Description of the Junks—They sail for Peking—Description of a Chinese Soldier—Remarks on the Tea-Tree—Tyen-Sing—A Chinese Play—Cho-Tung-Pou—Arrival at the City of Tong-Tcheu—Observations—Death of Mr. Eades, &c.

VAN-TADGE-IN, a mandarin of the first class, being delegated by the emperor, to superintend the progress, and provide for the accommodation of the embassy, during its continuance in China, began the exercise of his functions, by furnishing our heroes with junks which were to convey them to Peking. The important trust with which he was intrusted, proved his country's opinion of his abilities to execute it; and there was every reason to confirm the favourable decision it had passed. This distinguished personage was about the middle size, robust, and finely formed. The darkness of his complexion was relieved by a set of features expressive of intelligence and feeling; and his manners were at once conciliating and correct.

From this mandarin they received, August the 6th, a quantity of beef, bread, and fruit. The beef was well flavoured, but not very fat. The bread, not being baked in the European mode, though made of excellent flour, was less agreeable to their taste. It was in fact little better than dough, being baked without an intermixture of yeast, which the Chinese are either unacquainted with, or reject its use. In shape and size, the loaves resemble a common wastiball, divided in two. They are baked on bars ranged across an iron pan, in which is a certain quantity of water, and placed on an earthen stove. When the water begins to boil, the steam is confined by a shallow tub for a few minutes; and thus the business ends. This curious method of baking, or rather boiling, rendered it necessary for our adventurers to slice and toast the bread before they could relish it.

Towards the afternoon they received a variety of meats, both roast and boiled. The roast meat appeared as if cooked with an oily varnish, and talled accordingly: the boiled was much more agreeable.

They were indeed a little prejudiced against Chinese cookery, from the accounts they had heard of their indifference in regard to animals killed on purpose, or by accident, or dying of disease. It seems all are equally used. The reports that had reached their ears, in this respect, were confirmed by the evidence of their eyes. Some pigs, being infected with an incurable disorder, were thrown overboard; but the frugal Chinese instantly picked them up and dressed them; and while they were enjoying their unenvied feast, appeared to laugh at the English for their fastidious delicacy. Nor is this grossness of appetite confined to those whom want may be supposed to stimulate. The higher ranks, in their domestic economy, appear to be governed by the same motives as their inferiors, and adopt customs which Europeans would despise.

On the 7th the Squadron received orders to return to Chusan-Harbour, and to wait for further orders.

Their junks are built of beech wood and bamboo, flat bottomed, and of various sizes; and nearly a fourth part as broad as they are long. On the first deck of the larger vessels, employed in the navigation of rivers, is a range of apartments, consisting of bed rooms, parlour, and kitchen. The floor from one end of the junk to the other, is full of hatches,

which being lifted up by a brass ring, open a stowage below for immense quantities of stores or goods. The windows are formed of small squares of transparent paper; and the sashes may be taken out on occasion for the admission of air. A coloured curtain on the outside extends the whole length of the junk; and this is either furled or drawn, according to the pleasure or convenience of the passengers. The main deck is laid out into chambers for the use of the crew. A gangway runs on both sides the vessel, so as to render the apartments private. It is astonishing how little water these junks draw. Some of two or three hundred tons may be navigated with safety on the most shoaly rivers. Most of them have only one mast, which, as well as the rudder, is clumsy and inelegant. A very wise precaution is used in the navigation of the rivers of China. No sooner does it become dark, but a lighted lamp is suspended from the mast's head, as the signal of approach. Thus the danger of vessels running foul of each other is prevented. Besides these lamps being formed of transparent paper, inscribed with Chinese characters, serve to announce the name of the junk, or the rank of its passengers. Other lights likewise are distributed round the vessel at night. During the day, signal flags are displayed, which being stamped with letters, answer the purpose of notification, the same as the lamps. These lights and flags have sometimes a grand and novel effect.

The mandarin and his suite occupied five junks, and took the lead of the procession. His excellency the ambassador, and the principal gentlemen, had seven junks for their accommodation. The soldiers, mechanics, and servants, brought up the rear.

On the 8th of August his lordship took leave of the principal mandarin at Metow, and having received a very liberal supply of provisions, tea, sugar, vegetables, and fruit, together with a quantity of wood and charcoal—for mineral coal is not known here, nor did they find it was used in any part of this empire—the embassy proceeded up the river. During this delightful voyage, the mandarin's guards marched by day along the banks of the river, and at night pitched their tents where the junks lay at anchor. Both the fronts of the huts on land, and the vessels on the water, were decorated with lamps, and together formed an attractive sight. The centinels, who kept a regular watch during the night, were furnished with a piece of hollow bamboo, which they strike with a mallet at regular intervals, to signify their vigilance and activity. This custom, the peyings, or soldiers, said was universally adopted by the Chinese army.

Early the next morning, the gongs gave the signal for sailing. These instruments are made of brass, something resembling the cover of a large culinary vessel; and when struck with a large mallet, covered with leather, produce a sound that may be heard further than the European trumpet, or bell, in the room of which they are substituted.

This day, with the usual supply of provisions, for the first time, they received a jar of the country wine:

bank of land. The flat expanse of a rich fertility, which induced stores, during the land- in a very grand idea of the environs.

Provisions—Indifference of description of a Chinese Soldier in the City of Tong-Tsebo

ring, open a stowage of stores or goods. Small squares of transpa- may be taken out on r. A coloured curtain sole length of the junk; awn, according to the passengers. The main- ers for the use of the both sides the vessel, to vate. It is astonishing raw. Some of two or vigated with safety on of them have only one rudder, is clumsy and caution is used in the ma. No sooner does amp is suspended from f approach. Thus the of each other is pre- being formed of trans- nimele characters, serve junk, or the rank of its de-wife are distributed uring the day, sicken g stamped with letters, ion, the same as the gs have sometimes a

occupied five junks, sion. His excellency cipal gentlemen, had dation. The soldiers, ight up the rear. dship took leave of the, and having received ons, tea, sugar, vege- th a quantity of wood l is not known here, n any part of this em- up the river. Daring arin's guards marched he river, and at night e junks lay at anchor. land, and the vessels with lamps, and toge- The centinels, who night, were furnished oo, which they strike vals, to signify their usom, the peyings, or dopted by the Chinese

gongs gave the signal s are made of brass, r of a large culinary e large mallet, covered d that may be heard mpet, or bell, in the tied.

ply of provisions, for r of the country wine!

it possessed a good body; but the taste was sharp and unpleas- in colour it resembled Libon wine.

In China, military honours are not unknown. In passing several populous towns where soldiers were quartered, they were drawn up on the banks to receive the ambassador, while crowds of spectators filled every accessible spot of view. The uniform of a Chinese soldier deserves a description. It consists of black nankeen trowsers, over which a kind of cotton stockings are drawn. Their shoes, which are also made of cotton, are extremely clumsy, broad at the toes, and furnished with immoderately thick soles. From the top of their trowsers is suspended a parkie, which contains their money. They have neither shirts nor waistcoats, but only a large black nankeen mantle with loose sleeves, turned up and fringed with red coloured cloth of the same fabric. A broad girdle confines this loose robe, ornamented in front with a kind of plate, said to be a composition of rice; a pipe, and bag for tobacco, hangs from this cincture on one side, and a fan on the other. These appendages, and a supply of tobacco, are allowed by the emperor. They wear their swords on the left side, with the point forwards. A bow is slung under the left arm, and a quiver on their backs generally contains twelve arrows. Many, however, carry fire arms; and though it is impossible for the Chinese to teach Europeans any improvements in the arts of destruction, in the caution they employ to prevent accidents with artillery and muskets, they might give the wisest of us a lesson in the more commendable art of preservation. The soldiers have a tuft of hair on the back of their head, which is plaited down the back, and tied at the extremity with a ribband. The rest they shave. They cover their heads with shallow straw hats, bound under the chin, and decorated with a red plume of camel's hair. According to our ideas, little that looks like military enters into the composition of a Chinese soldier's dress. Their colours are commonly of green silk, edged with red, and painted with characters in gold. Of these they employ a great number.

In sailing up the river, they saw numbers of rustic habitations, chiefly constructed of mud, with some few of stone. The country women, with the curiosity natural to their sex, advanced to see the procession. They seemed to walk with difficulty; having their feet and ancles bound with a red fillet to confine their growth. Their front hair is combed back on the crown of the head, and clubbed, and decorated with artificial flowers and silver pins; the hind hair is then brought up, and secured under the club. Except in regard to the decorations of the head and the bandages on their feet, the dress of the Chinese women differs but little from that of the soldiers.

The progress of our adventurers was by no means rapid; but they were every moment attracted by some new objects, which prevented their wish for greater expedition. In the course of one day's sailing, which could not exceed twenty-four miles, they passed such an immense number of junks, and saw such crowds of people, as would almost exceed belief did they attempt calculation. Independent of the moving scene, the river itself, spacious and meandering, was a noble object; and the diversity of its banks, and the views which occasionally opened over a rich and varied country, would have afforded a scope to the most glowing pencil.

On the 10th, for the first time, they saw the plantations of the tea-tree. This plant, so injurious to the constitution, and so captivating to the taste, which, from being originally an useless luxury, has now become a necessary in so many countries, has been well described by botanists, and a repetition here would be needless. It may be necessary, however, to observe that it is of a low size, with a narrow leaf, somewhat like myrtle. It was now the season when the tea-tree was in blossom. The blossoms are picked when young, and mixed with the tea, to which they communicate a more agreeable flavour. Plentiful

as tea appears to be in this province, it is not within the reach of the lower classes, for the crew of the junks were glad to receive the tea leaves, which they dried, and then boiled, to procure their favourite beverage. Tea is universally used in China without sugar; and as the natives, particularly the lower orders, frequently dry and reboil the leaves for some weeks successively, they unite economy with gratification.

On the 11th in the morning, they approached the city of Tyen-Sing: the banks of the river here presented fields of millet and rice. The number of spectators that met them, both in vessels and by land, exceed all calculation. For nearly two miles they observed a range of salt heaps, disposed in columns, and covered with matting; but whether manufactured on the spot, or for what purpose such a prodigious quantity was collected, they were unable to conceive.

Their entrance into the city was attended with the noise and shouts of an innumerable multitude of people. This is a very populous and extensive place. The houses are built of brick, and are in general two stories high, covered with tiles; but the want of regularity offends the eye; and the streets are so uncommonly narrow, that no more than two persons can walk abreast at once.

The ambassador, who was received with military honours, went soon after their arrival, in full form to visit the chief mandarin. His palace is large and lofty, palisadoed in front, gilt and painted in a very fanciful and expensive form. Even the external walls are decorated with paintings; and the roof is coated with a yellow varnish of brilliant effect. Here the ambassador and suite partook of a cold collation, at which all the dainties of the country were collected.

A Chinese play was performed in honour of the distinguished visitor. The theatre is a square wooden structure, in the front of the mandarin's palace. The stage is surrounded with galleries, which were decorated with ribbands and silken streamers. The representations consisted of warlike manœuvres, varied by slight hand deceptions, and a display of personal agility, in which the performers acquitted themselves with admirable adroitness. A band of music, consisting of wind instruments, enlivened the scene. The novelty of both pleased the eye, rather than delighted the ear. The female characters were performed by eunuchs: the delicacy of the Chinese would be shocked at the public exhibition of their women.

As soon as the ambassador and attendants returned on board, such an immense number of people accompanied them, in every kind of conveyance capable of floating, that accidents appeared inevitable. They were witness to one, where part of the deck of an old junk gave way, from the enormous pressure of spectators, whereby several persons perished in the waves.

There was a very liberal supply of provisions sent them before they embarked. Indeed, from the superabundance, they entertained the crews who navigated the junks; thus conveying the hospitality of the country to the relief of the natives, for which mark of attention they testified a due sense of gratitude.

There was a present made of some parcels of silk by the mandarin Tyen-Sing, to the embassy, and an officer, by the direction of the ambassador, distributed them among his suite; but it not being possible for every one to have an equal share, it was determined, after two pieces were distributed to each of the gentlemen, the remainder should be disposed of by drawing lots, by which means every person had an equal chance, in spite of his station.

For several days the weather was excessively hot, and at an early hour on the morning of the 12th of August they were visited by a most tremendous storm of thunder, lightning, and rain, which is not unusual in this climate.

During several hours this day it was found necessary

fary to employ men to tow the junks along. In China, numbers follow this laborious vocation, to which they are called when the wind or tide fails. A rope is fixed to the mast, and another to the head of the junk. These are of a length proportionable to the breadth of the river, and are fixed one at each end, to a stick of about thirty inches long. This is thrown over the head and rests on the breast, forming a kind of harness. Every draughtsman is furnished with a similar apparatus, and when all are ready, the leader gives the signal to advance. The towers all in concert, and proceed with a measured step, which is regulated by a kind of musical tone, constantly repeated. The fatigue these useful drudges undergo would appear excessive to any but the Chinese; they wade through marshy banks, and stalk through muddy soil, with a perseverance that claims at once admiration and pity.

Having received the usual supply of provisions, the next day they set about cooking it themselves; being perfectly disgusted with Chinese stinkiness in regard to their victuals. With respect to rice, however, they deserve the praise of cleanliness. They wash it well in cold water, and drain it through a sieve, then throw it into boiling water, and when pulpy, take it out with a ladle, and put it into another clean vessel, where it is suffered to remain till it becomes quite white and dry. In this form it is used for bread. Indeed, boiled rice, and sometimes millet, with vegetables, fried in oil, constitute the usual food of the lower class. They eat regularly every four hours of the day, and seldom vary their humble repast. Their tables are about a foot high; on them a large vessel of rice is placed, and each person, sitting on the floor, helps himself into a small basin. The vegetables are taken up with a couple of chopsticks, and eaten with the rice. On particular days a more genial diet is used. A weak infusion of tea is the usual beverage.

They sailed by the town of Cho-Tung-Poa on the 15th. It commands a pleasant view, and appears to be of considerable extent.

Shortly after leaving Cho-Tung-Poa they reached a tributary stream, over which were two bridges with two arches of elegant architecture. On a gentle eminence, at no great distance, stood the palace of the mandarin. It was built of stone, two stories high, and exhibited a favourable specimen of Chinese taste and design. The ambassador received military salutes wherever he passed.

As soon as they had moored for the night, the principal mandarin of Tyen-Sing arrived, with a numerous retinue, to pay his respects to the ambassador. A troop of men preceded him, who notified his approach by shouts. Then followed two men carrying large silk umbrellas, to shade the palanquin from the sun, when required; the standard-bearers succeeded; then the foot soldiers; the mandarin in his palanquin came next; and a troop of cavalry brought up the rear. In this style, persons of distinction in China generally travel; and the higher their quality, the more numerous their attendants.

They took a walk in the evening along the banks of the river, which were exceedingly pleasant. The corn was now almost ripe; agriculture appeared in its best form; and copious plenty seemed to countenance and support the immense population they every where observed. On the 16th of August they arrived at the city of Tong-Tchew, where their voyage terminated. This place is distant only twelve miles from Peking. Expectation was now roused, and some degree of anxiety awakened. They found an enclosure here, purposely erected, for the landing of the baggage and presents. Lord Macartney and the conducting mandarin went to inspect it. It occupied nearly the space of an acre.

There was a temple allotted for the residence of the embassy, during its stay at this place; and the whole suite, of every description, received an invi-

tation from the grand mandarin to partake of a public breakfast, which was to be provided here next morning. Accordingly, Lord Macartney and Sir George Staunton set out in two palanquins, and were escorted to the temple by a party of Chinese soldiers. The breakfast was composed of various made dishes, meat, tea, wines, fruit, and confectionary.

There was every exertion made to land the baggage and presents with speed and safety; and such emulation was displayed in this service, that most of it was lodged in the depot before night. Two Chinese officers inspected every case and package at the gate of the enclosure, of which they appeared to take a written account, and passed marks corresponding with their minutes on every separate article. This, as understood, was done with a view of certifying the emperor of all that was brought into his dominions.

The place appropriated for the residence of the embassy, called a temple, though in fact the habitation of a timber merchant, was hired by the Chinese government for this purpose, and is about a mile distant from the city. It is a neat, low building, of one story high; and consists of several courts, which were severally occupied by the soldiers, servants, ambassador, and suite. The soldiers court was next the entrance. Beyond this was the servants quarter, opposite to which is a square building of one room, consecrated to religious worship. In the middle of this stands an altar, supporting three porcelain statues as large as life, and on each side are candlesticks, which are lighted whenever any person is paying his devotion, and regularly at morn and eve. Before the images, stands a pot full of dust, into which a number of long matches are thrust, which are likewise lighted during the celebration of worship. The devotees having finished, the candles and the matches are extinguished, and an attendant on the altar strikes a ball thrice with a mallet. All persons present then kneel before the images, inclining their heads three times, with their hands clasped, which they lift over their heads as they rise. Such is the simple ceremony of the daily worship of the Chinese, invariably observed from the humblest to the highest, from the peasant to the emperor. This worship obtains the appellation of Chin-Chin-Josh, or the service of God. The meanest but has its altar and its image; nor is there a junk without those appendages.

The court appropriated to the use of the ambassador and suite, was handsome and spacious, decorated with lamps, gildings, and other Chinese embellishments. An hundred various dishes were served up at his excellency's table for dinner. A number of Chinese crowded round, and seemed highly diverted with the display of European manners, so opposite to their own. Indeed, Chinese servants were distributed in the different apartments, to be ready at any hour of the day, to supply the embassy with the various beverages of the country. These are chiefly tea, cold or warm.

The city of Tong-Tchew is about six miles in circumference, almost square, surrounded by a high wall, to which an external ditch is added, in the most accessible spots. It has three gates, each well fortified, and may, altogether, be considered as a strong place. The houses are almost universally of wood, of one story high, pretty with exterior decorations in the Chinese style; but most of them are destitute of furniture. The shop is the principal room. Before this are high pillars, supporting an awning, covered with painting and gilding, and decorated with streamers. These streamers indicate the commodities to be sold; and sometimes a wooden figure is superadded, to direct to the spot. In the form and size of the houses and shops there is very little variety; the same plan prevails throughout the city in almost every respect. The streets indeed are of different breadths; but all of them have a pavement on each side for the accommodation of foot passengers.

n to partake of a public
 ived here next morn-
 cartney and Sir George
 quins," and were escort-
 Chinese soldiers. The
 icious made dishes, meat,
 ionary.

made to land the bag-
 l and safety; and such
 is service, that most of
 fore night. Two Chi-
 case and package at the
 h they appeared to take
 d marks corresponding
 eparate article. This,
 th a view of certifying
 brought into his domi-

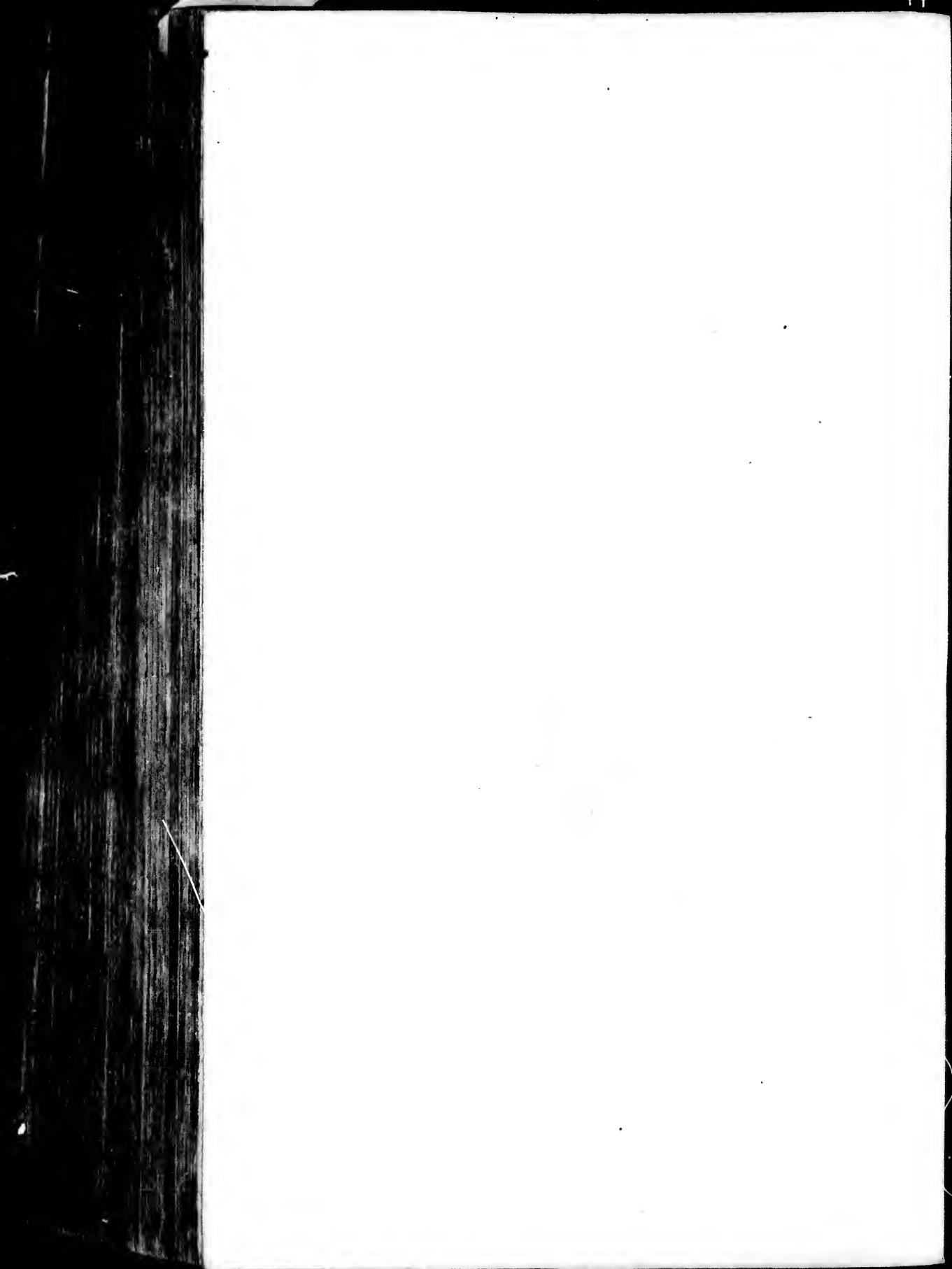
or the residence of the
 gh in fact the habitation
 ired by the Chinese go-
 d is about a mile distant
 at, low building, of one
 several courts, which
 the soldiers, servants,
 e soldiers court was next
 was the servants quarter,
 e building of one room,
 ship. In the middle of
 g three porcelain statues
 ch side are candlesticks,
 any person is paying his
 morn and eve. Before
 all of dust, into which a
 thrust, which are likewise
 on of worship. The de-
 candles and the matches
 endant on the altar strikes

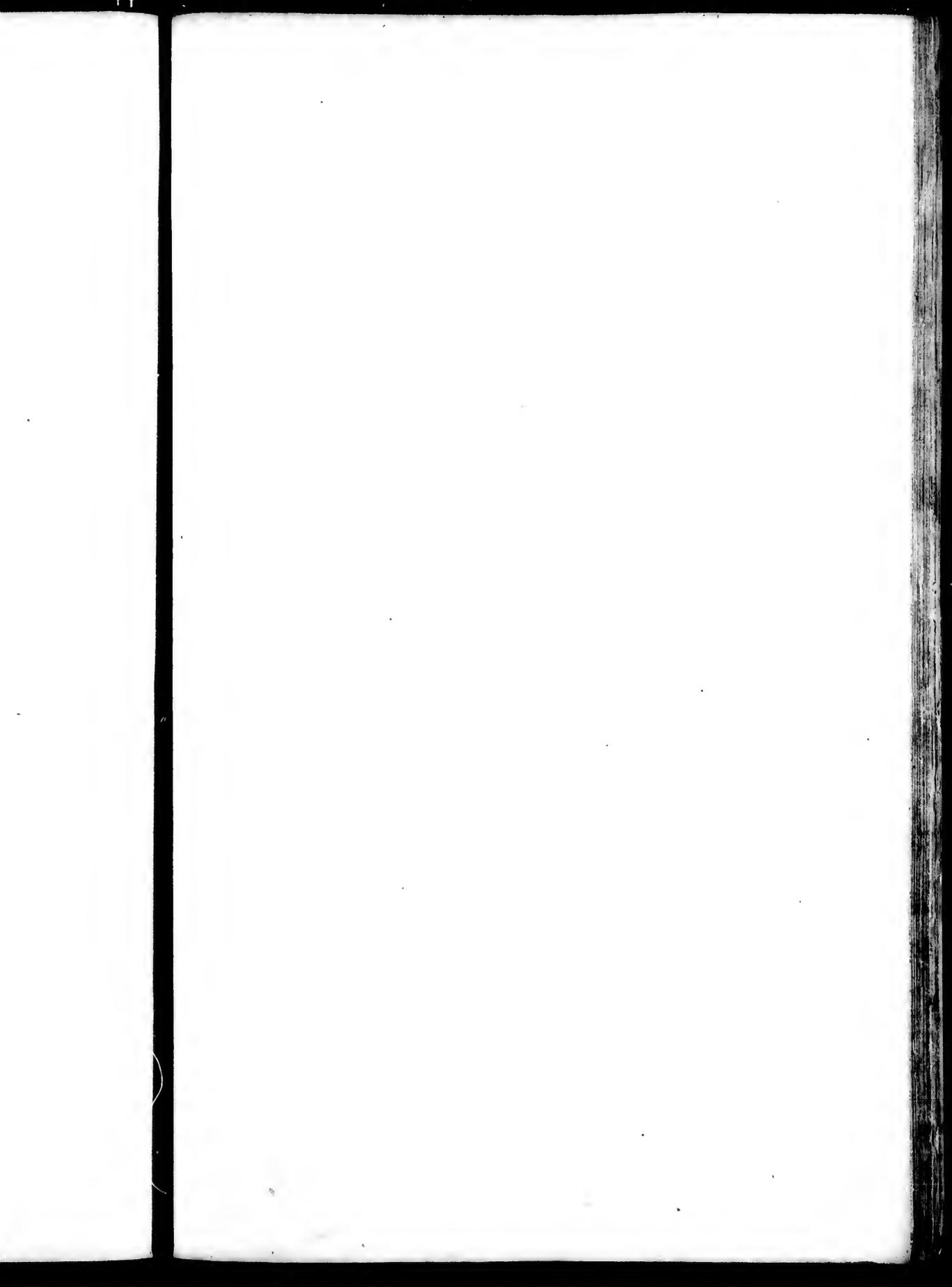
All persons present then
 elining their heads three
 ped, which they lift over
 h is the simple ceremony
 Chinese, invariably ob-
 to the highest, from the
 his worship obtains the
 sh, or the service of God,
 r and its image; nor is
 ppendages.

to the use of the ambassi-
 and spacious, decorated
 ther Chinese embellish-
 s dishes were served up
 dinner. A number of
 l seemed highly diverted
 manners, so opposite to
 e servants were distribu-
 ts, to be ready at any
 e embassy with the vari-
 e. There are chiefly tea,

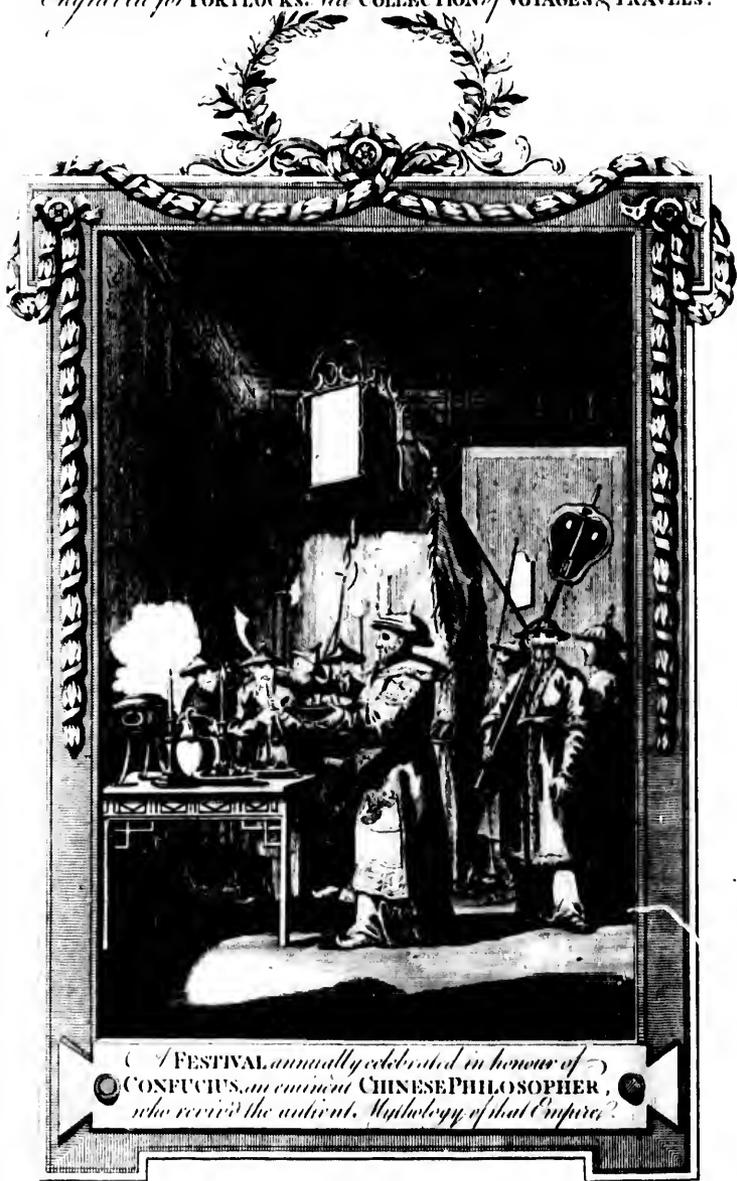
is about six miles in cir-
 rrounded by a high
 ch is added, in the most
 e gates, each well fort-
 e considered as a strong
 most universally of wood,
 ith exterior decorations
 ost of them are destitute
 e principal room. Be-
 supporting an awning,
 gilding, and decorated
 mers indicate the com-
 ctinities a wooden figure
 e spot. In the form and
 there is very little vari-
 throughout the city in
 streets indeed are of dif-
 them have a pavement
 nmodation of foot pas-
 sengers.







Engraved for PORTLOCK'S, *See* COLLECTION of VOYAGES & TRAVELS.



A FESTIVAL annually celebrated in honour of
CONFUCIUS, an eminent CHINESE PHILOSOPHER,
who revived the ancient Mythology of that Empire.

sengers. As a substitute for glass, a thin glazed paper is universally used in China: however, some of the palaces of the higher classes are furnished with silk to admit the light.

This city seems to carry on a very extensive trade. An immense number of junks resort to it. The population is computed at nearly half a million. The summers in this climate are very hot; but the winters are in proportion severe, as appears by ice of vast thickness being preserved to cool the drink during the hot months. In China, ice is esteemed a peculiar luxury.

The shortness of their stay, and the ignorance of the language, rendered it extremely difficult to obtain any correct idea of the nature of the municipal government. It was, however, understood that civil causes were decided by a bench of the lower mandarins, but their judgment was subject to the review of the principal mandarin, and even an appeal lay from him to the viceroy of the province. The ultimate fate of capital offenders depends on the emperor alone; but death is seldom inflicted in China. Persons far advanced in years, confessed they had never seen or known a capital execution take place in their province. The mild manners; the sober virtues, of the Chinese in general, render punishments neither frequent nor severe. An exact police, however, is kept up, and delinquencies are expiated with promptitude and unerring certainty, if detected. Thus the hopes of pardon do not inspire a vitious confidence; and the extreme difficulty of preventing detection, operates as a powerful dissuasive from crime. The Chinese, however, seem to enjoy as much liberty of action as is reconcilable to the well-being of society; and peace and contentment mark their days.

Our adventurers found the curiosity of the people very troublesome during their excursion round the city. They were frequently obliged to seek an asylum in the shops till the gazing multitude had dispersed. The second day after their arrival, the ordnance and stores were examined, and a trial made

of the guns in the presence of the ambassador. It was found they answered perfectly well.

Towards the evening his excellency was visited by the chief mandarin, accompanied by Van-Tadge-In. A band of music performed during his stay, with which the visitors seemed vastly pleased. This day Mr. Eades, one of the mechanics, died by a violent flux. To impress the natives with a favourable idea of the solemnities of their funerals, Lord Macartney was pleased to direct that the deceased should be interred with military honours. In China, coffins are kept ready made. They are chiefly of the same size for all grown persons; are strong and very heavy; in shape somewhat like a flat-bottomed boat. The lid is secured with a cord instead of nails. Having procured one of these receptacles of mortality, they placed the corpse in it with all possible decency. Next morning, orders were issued for the troops to appear with their side-arms, except a serjeant and six privates, who were appointed to fire a volley over the grave; and as there was no clergyman attached to the embassy, an attendant on his lordship was called on to officiate on this mournful occasion. The procession, having been previously marshalled, proceeded slowly to the burying-ground, about a quarter of a mile's distance from the ambassador's residence. An immense concourse of spectators were allured by the novelty of the scene to accompany them. Perhaps the most splendid exhibition would not have procured a larger assembly. The body was committed to the ground with due solemnity, and the procession returned in the same order as it went.

They observed in this country that the graves were very shallow. They have memorials of marble and stone, charged with inscriptions. Some of the monuments here exhibited traces of no ordinary sculpture. This receptacle of dust was of very considerable extent, but without walls. Except in the vicinity of large towns, there are no public burial grounds: in the country, the deceased repose within the precincts where they lived.

C H A P. III.

Departure from Tong-Tchew—They enter a fine Champaign Country—Town of Kiyeng-Foo—Arrive at Pekin—Remarks on the City—Incident at a Butcher's Shop—Manners of the itinerant Tradesmen—Barbers—Street Auctioneers, &c.—Of the Buildings—Women, &c.—Meet a Funeral Procession—Arrive at Yenmen-Manyeumen—Description of the Palace there—Disagreeable Situation of the Embassy—Unpleasant Alterations—A Pagoda—Palace belonging to the Viceroy of Canton—Visit from the conducting Mandarin—They leave Pekin and proceed to Taitary—Village of Chin-Gibo—Town of Wbeazon—Palace of Chan-Chiu—City and Palace of Cangebungfa—A prodigious Arch—Wauug-Chanyeng—The wonderful Wall—A Mountain—Palace of Chaug-Sbanuve—A Proof of Chinese Industry—Arrive at the Palace Callacottueng—Palace of Callacbotrefangju—Village of Quangco—Arrive at Tchol—A Visit from a Mandarin—Presents to the Ambassador—An Audience granted—The Reception—A second Visit to the Emperor—A Play—A Private punished for Disobedience—Thoughts of the Chinese thereupon, &c.

PREPARATIONS were made for their departure early on the 21st of August: the soldiers were first marched off, and then the servants, for both of whom covered waggons had been provided. The gentlemen of the suite followed in light carts, and Lord Macartney, Sir George Staunton, and the interpreter, had each a palanquin.

When they had left Tong-Tchew, they entered a fine champaign country, through which they travelled on a road of uncommon breadth and beauty. A foot pavement, about six yards wide, occupied the centre, and on each side several carriages had room to run abreast. Roads of a similar description conduct to the capital from the principal towns of the empire; and these are kept in perfect repair by labourers regularly disposed, and constantly employed.

About seven in the morning they reached the town of Kiyeng-Foo. This is a large and populous place, and exhibits the appearance of commercial opulence.

As it was most probably a matter of general notoriety, when they were to enter Pekin, the concourse of people who filled every accessible spot of view, and even crowded on them, notwithstanding all the exertions of the mandarins, considerably impeded their progress, and exceeded what they had hitherto seen of Chinese population. Yet to their mortification they observed, that their appearance excited rather ridicule than respect; and bursts of laughter accompanied every transient sight of them; on account of their vile carriages.

They stopped nearly an hour at Kiyeng-Foo, and received some refreshments of meats, tea, and fruits. Van-Tadge-In likewise ordered some joau, an unpleasant Chinese wine, to be distributed to the attendants of the embassy. This he did from the benevolent motive of enabling them to resist the calls of appetite till another opportunity offered of gratifying them, which at present could not be ascertained. Of the face of the country between this

town and Pekin, it is impossible to speak; their view was intercepted by the crowds.

On entering the suburbs of the metropolis, they passed beneath several beautiful triumphal arches. The houses in the suburbs are built of wood, two stories high, variously painted in front. The shops make a very respectable appearance. The streets are spacious, and on this occasion they were lined with soldiers, without whose assistance it would have been impossible for the cavalcade to have advanced.

About two in the afternoon they reached the gate of the imperial city of Pekin, or Pit-chin, as pronounced by the natives. The walls enclose a circumference of twelve leagues. In the centre of each angle is a grand gate or entrance, and a lesser one at each corner of the ramparts. They are all of strong stone arch work, and fortified by a tower of seven stories, rising over each. The gates indeed are double: the inner is of the same form as the first, except that it has no tower; and between them are barracks for soldiers. Ordnance and troops are stationed at every gate; and though the olive branch of peace blesses Pekin with almost a perpetual shade, the arts of defence and prudent caution are neither neglected nor unknown. At ten every night the gates are shut, and till dawn of day all communication is suspended between the city and the suburbs. During that space, a special order from the principal mandarin of the city is absolutely necessary to procure ingress or egress. The walls are of great height, and of masonry thickness; the foundation is of stone, but the superstructure is wholly of brick. Outworks and batteries at short intervals increase the strength of the walls, and forts are very frequent; but except at the gates there are neither cannons nor guards.

His imperial majesty generally resides here from October to April; and during that period, soldiers patrol the walls every night. On the most moderate computation, from the fourth gate to the east gate is a space of ten miles. This was their route through Pekin; and every step presented some new object to arrest their attention. The streets are spacious, clean, and commodious, well paved, and well regulated. An exact police is kept up; and as every public functionary, from the highest to the lowest, is attentive to the discharge of his duty, order, neatness, and activity, are every where perceptible. Large bodies of scavengers are employed in separate districts in removing every species of filth; and another class of men sprinkle the streets, to prevent the dust from incommoding passengers, or injuring the gaudy wares and elegant manufactures which every shop presents for sale. In the capital, and indeed in almost every town in China, the pride of architectural elegance and embellishment seems to be chiefly displayed in the shops. The tradesmen wisely lay out the greatest expence in that apartment which brings them in the most profit; hence the shops in general are magnificent, while their domestic accommodations are neither numerous nor great. The houses here are low, but highly embellished in front, with galleries, paintings, and golden characters. Fine pillars are erected at the doors of the shops, supporting a flag, which indicates the name and profession of the master of the house. These flags, with the intermixture of gilding, sculpture, and valuable commodities, which attract the eye every moment, give an idea of splendor, which fancy can scarcely enlarge. The butchers shops appear to be supplied with excellent meat. On entering one of them, to satisfy their curiosity in regard to the pieces of meat, and the mode of cutting it up, which last agrees almost with the European fashion, they observed an earthen stove with a gridiron. The butcher constructing their signs into a want of meat, began cutting off and broiling small slices, which he continued to supply them with till they were satisfied. Perhaps they might consume about a pound; and on producing a string of caecæ, the only coin allowed to

be current in China, he took off one condoron, as the price of his meat. Numbers were leading on beef and mutton in this manner.

The itinerant tradesmen in Pekin, according to the nature of their business, either bear baskets over their shoulders, or carry a kind of pack. Street barbers are very numerous. These carry with them the implements of their trade, together with a chair, a small stove, and a water basin. Their customers sit down in the street, where the operation is performed with dispatch, and a mace is the general compliment to the operator. A pair of large steel tweezers snapped with force, gives the signal that the barber is at hand; and in a country where it is impossible that any person can entirely shave himself, if he complies with the established mode, this must be a lucrative trade. Street auctioneers, apparently possessed of all the low eloquence and the vociferous exertions of that craft, present themselves frequently on a kind of platform. The principal streets being of enormous length, are subdivided by arched gateways, under each of which the name of the partial street is written in gilt characters. These arches continually appearing, serve as central objects for the eye to repose on. The cross streets are terminated by small latticed gates, shut during the night; while the principal ones are incessantly guarded by soldiers, who are armed with swords and whips, to quell any disturbance, or to correct slighter irregularities.

Their chief expence seems to be laid out on the shops, and except in the variety of their embellishments, an uniformity prevails in the height and extent of their houses. Few private buildings are more than one story high, and these are chiefly of wood. The imperial palace, however, the houses of the mandarins, and the pagodas, are distinguished by their superior elevation, as well as their magnificence. Palanquins are the fashionable vehicles of the great, while covered carts, drawn by a horse or a mule, serve for the inferior classes.

The Chinese women frequently present themselves from the galleries in front of their houses, and are very fond of gazing at fights. The females of Pekin in general possess delicate features, the effects of which they heighten by cosmetics. They also apply vermilion to the middle of their lips, which certainly is not an unattractive addition to their beauty. Their eyes are small, but very expressive; and their brilliance is contrasted by a peak of black velvet or silk, set with stones, which depends from the forehead to the insertion of the nose. Their feet appear to be of the natural size. In fact, the women seem to enjoy as much liberty as is consistent with the delicacy of the sex; nor is jealousy, so far as they could judge, a predominant passion among the men. On observing a crowd of women, our heroes addressed them with the word Chou-ou, or beautiful, on which they gathered round them with an air of modest politeness, examined the make and texture of their clothes, and appeared to be vastly entertained. They did not decline a gentle shake of the hand, on one of their party taking leave; nor did the men who were present seem dissatisfied with the attention which was paid to and by them.

They met a funeral procession in their way to the city. The coffin was covered by a rich canopy, with silk curtains, highly ornamented, and hung with escutcheons. It was placed on a large bier, and had a great number of men to support it, who advanced with a slow and solemn step. A band of music followed, playing a kind of dirge; and after them came the friends and relations of the deceased, in dresses of black and white.

Having passed the eastern suburbs, they again entered a rich and beautiful country, and soon arrived at Yeumen-Manyeumen, one of the emperor's palaces, distant about five miles from the city. Here they found rather a frisky and indifferent refreshment; but being much fatigued, the idea of rest was their

ook off one condorion.
Numbers were leading
anner.

in Peking, according to
either bear baskets over
kind of pack. Street
They carry with them
together with a chair,
fan. Their customers
e the operation is per-
a mace is the general
A pair of large steel
gives the signal that the
a country where it is
entirely have himself
dressed mode, this mult
suetoneers, apparently
ence and the voracious
at themselves frequently
principal streets being
divided by arched gate-
the name of the partial
raders. Their arches
as central objects for
er's streets are termi-
shut during the night,
incessantly guarded by
swords and whips, to
correct slighter irregu-

to be laid out on the
ery of their embellish-
ills in the height and
y private buildings are
and these are chiefly of
y, however, the houses
godas, are distinguished
as well as their magni-
affonable vehicles of
s, drawn by a horse or
e chaises.

iently present themselves
of their houses, and arch-
its. The females of
ate features, the effects
cosmetics. They also
le of their lips, which
live addition to their
l, but very expressive;
ed by a peak of black-
s, which depends from
n of the nose. Their
ural size. In fact, the
liberty as is consistent
nor is jealousy, as an
inant passion among the
of women, our heroes
Chou-ou, or beauties,
d them with an air of
e the make and texture
ed to be vally enter-
a gentle shake of the
taking leave; nor did
em dissatisfied with the
nd by them.

ion in their way to the
ed by a rich canopy,
rumented, and hung
aced on a large bier,
men to support it, who
blemn sleep. A band of
nd of dirge; and after
lations of the deceased,

suburbs, they again en-
try, and soon arrived at
the emperor's palace,
the city. Here they
ndifferent refreshment;
idea of rest was their
most

most acceptable gratification. This palace is low, both in situation and building. They entered it by a common stone gateway, guarded by soldiers; beyond this is a kind of parade, in the centre of which is a small lodge for the accommodation of the mandarins in waiting. The body of the palace is divided into two square courts, equally destitute of elegance and convenience; the windows of the apartments are formed of lattice, covered with glazed and painted paper; and throughout the whole range there was no other furniture than a few ordinary tables and chairs; not a bed or bedstead was any where to be seen. Indeed the natives sleep on a kind of mattress, and cover themselves with a cushion of stuffed and quilted cotton. They undress only partially, when they retire to rest, and increase the number of their coverings according to the severity of the season. Instead of bedsteads, they use a large wooden bench, raised about two feet from the ground, and bottomed with bamboos or wicker work; on one of these several persons may spread their mattresses. Every thing about this residence evinced that it had been long deserted or neglected; and indeed a more unpromising situation for a royal residence could no where be found. The situation was naturally swampy, and two ponds of stagnant water communicated their mephitic odours to every apartment. Some small grass fields belong to the place; but these too were an exception to the general cultivated appearance of the country. In short, centipedes, scorpions, and musketoes, infested every part of this palace; and for such inhabitants it was solely adapted.

Disagreeable as the internal state of their residence was, they were still cut off from all external communication. Soldiers and mandarins guarded every avenue; and the embassy could be considered in no other light than as prisoners of state. His excellency the ambassador justly conceiving a disgust at a situation so unfavourable to health or accommodation, as well as derogatory to his personal dignity and the honour of his country, made a serious remonstrance on the occasion. His application was at last productive of a change of residence; it was not, however, till the 26th that they were suffered to quit this melancholy dwelling.

Previous to this, several unpleasent altercations took place between the members of the embassy and the soldiers on guard. The former could ill brook the disgraceful restraints laid on them by confinement within the walls of their prison; and the latter pertinaciously opposed every attempt at greater liberty. These contentions were not unrequent, and perhaps were productive of future ill consequences to the interests of the mission.

The pleasure at the prospect of leaving this wretched place was so great, that every necessary preparation was made for the purpose in the shortest possible space of time. Some of the presents and the more delicate articles of art or manufacture were left here, lest they should be injured by frequent removal. The procession set out on its return to Peking with the same accommodations as it came; and the arrangements having been made more perfectly than before, they arrived without any accident or confusion, at the north gate of Peking about one in the afternoon of the 26th of August. This was the counter-gate to what they had entered in their former procession through Peking, and presented new views of streets and buildings.

A pagoda attracted their notice in their progress, being the first they had found an opportunity of observing. It stood in the centre of a beautiful garden; is square, stone built, and gradually diminishes from the bottom till it terminates in a sphere. It rises to the height of seven stories, and has a gallery near the top, encompassed by a rail.

Their return no doubt being unexpected, they passed with facility through the streets, and soon arrived at a princely palace, belonging to the vicroy

of Canton, who it seems was a state prisoner here for some misconduct in office. This palace consists of twelve large and six smaller courts: it is built of a grey coloured brick, of most elegant workmanship, but except two detached edifices, which were occupied by Lord Macartney and the secretary to the embassy, the palace was only one story high, though this was of unusual elevation.

Every thing without and within convinced them they now lodged in a palace: the embellishments were in the first style of Chinese taste; and in regard to the beauty of colours and the brilliant effect of house painting, no nation can enter into competition with this. The glossy effect of japan is every where perceptible, without the invention of varnish; for they were convinced that the beauty produced arose from some ingredients in the original composition. The apartments were very spacious, and hung with the most elegant paper, enriched with gilding. Lord Macartney's residence was singularly superb, and moreover had an elegant private theatre belonging to it; and in a word, all ranks and descriptions were accommodated in a style that gave satisfaction, and deserved acknowledgment. Here, however, the furniture was neither valuable nor in any quantity. Chairs and tables, a few platforms, covered with bamboo matting and carpets, were the only moveables in a palace whose decorations, both external and internal, would not have disgraced the residence of the Emperor himself. Under the floor, in each of the principal apartments, is a stove, with a circular tube, which conveys warm air into every part of the room above. They saw no chimnies in this country, and understood that stoves supplied with charcoal were the universal custom.

Their tables consisted of dishes in the best style of Chinese living; but more particularly stews and hashes than solid joints. In this respect, however, they had no reason to complain; but the same vigilance was employed to keep them within the limits of their residence as ever; and on no pretence could they pass the gates, or even scale the walls, which were constantly guarded by a military force.

Notwithstanding they wished that their continuance in this place, might be of no long duration, as it was impossible to make any progress in the grand object of their mission till they had an interview with the emperor, yet every arrangement was made to add to the dignity of the embassy, or promote its convenience. Having settled this business, they waited with anxious expectation the return of a mandarin, who had been dispatched to learn his Imperial majesty's pleasure, whether they should proceed to Tartary, where he was then resident, or wait till the period of his usual return to Peking.

Early on the 28th of August, the conducting mandarin came to acquaint the ambassador that it was his Imperial majesty's pleasure to receive him in Tartary: thereupon a new arrangement took place. The principal gentlemen belonging to the embassy were selected to accompany his excellency into Tartary; several of the scientific gentlemen, mechanics, and sick, were to remain in charge of the baggage and presents. The guards, musicians, and servants, received orders to hold themselves in readiness, with only indispensable necessaries; and even the gentlemen of the suite were to be as little incumbered as possible. They were to carry with them only the uniform of the embassy, and a common suit of clothes: the musicians and servants were to be dressed out in a suit of slate liveries, which, on being unpacked, it was evident that this was not their first appearance in public; several of the dresses bearing the names of their former wearers, and from some circumstances that they discovered, had been made up for the servants of some former ambassador. With these habiliments, such as they were, every man fitted himself out in the best manner he could. The ambassador and Sir George Staunton were to travel in an old chaise belonging to the latter, which

on being unpacked, had none of that gaudy appearance which distinguished the works of art in this country; and some of them did not hesitate to express their disapprobation of its external appearance. Such of the suite as preferred riding on horseback were to be accommodated on givings in their names; and carts were to be provided for the rest. The baggage and presents which were to accompany them having been previously sent off, the ambassador's carriage was to be driven by a corporal of infantry, who fortunately had once been a postillion, and a light horseman, who was to act as his assistant. A man who has learned two trades is frequently useful to himself and to others: this humble corporal was the only man who could have headed the ambassador. He and his assistant were permitted to exercise the horses in the chaise for a short time through the streets of Peking, under a guard of mandarins and soldiers; and such crowds assembled to see this extraordinary spectacle, that authority was absolutely necessary to restrain the consequent molestations.

Early on the 2d of September, a number of horses having been already brought to the palace, and the riders having made a selection, they began their march, but meeting with frequent interruption, it was some time before they could pass the city gate. This being effected, they soon drove through the suburbs, and entered a rich and beautiful country by a road of great width, but without any central pavement. After travelling about six miles they reached the village of Chin-Giho, where they were allowed the morning refreshments.

In their route they passed a great number of populous villages; and took up their first night's lodging at one of the Emperor's palaces, named Nanhighiee. They were now furnished every day with the best accommodations, and received an allowance of samchoo and Chinese wine; the former is a spirit distilled from rice and millet, and may deserve the appellation of Chinese gin.

The distance from Peking to Jehol, whither they were bound, is one hundred and sixty miles, which was divided into seven days' journeys, that they might have the advantage of sleeping in an imperial residence every night. This flattering mark of distinction is the highest it seems that can be paid; and is never conferred even on the first mandarins. The palace where they passed the first night had but little to demand attention, either in its external appearance or its internal decorations. It was environed by a spacious garden; but to this they were denied access.

About four the next morning they resumed their journey, and took their first refreshment at the town of Wheazon, a place of some consequence. From thence they proceeded through dusty roads, beneath a burning sun, till they reached the palace of Chang-Chin, where they halted for the night. This is a spacious structure, covering a great extent of ground, and is adorned with gardens and plantations. The surrounding country is enclosed; and in point of fertility is equal to any they had seen: it fed immense herds of cattle. The sheep here are small, but very fat; they have a thick short tail weighing several pounds.

The next morning as they proceeded on their journey, the distant country assumed a mountainous aspect; fertility was sensibly diminished, and the villages became more thin. About noon they saw the city of Caungchumfoa. It seems to be a large place, and is walled in the manner of Peking. The palace of Caungchumfoa received them at a early hour of the afternoon, after the most fatiguing and disagreeable journey they had hitherto experienced.

This palace has little to distinguish it from those they had already occupied, and the treatment which the ambassador and his attendants received, corresponded in every respect with what they had undergone before, in their journey to and from Peking. It is almost unnecessary to say, that however unfavourable appearances might be, most of them gladly

accepted of whatever was prepared for their refreshment; and it will be doubted by none, that nothing gave them greater satisfaction than when their conductor informed them that they might retire to the different apartments allotted for their repose.

Early the next morning they were summoned together, and soon after departed. The roads now became indifferent, and the country displayed a mountainous appearance.

At a small distance from Waung-Chanyeng, they passed a prodigious arch, which united two hills, with a parapet of masonry strength on both sides. The further hill is crowned with a fort, whose ramparts stretch to a very great distance. Beneath this fort is a ponderous arch-way conducting down the hill, so steep as to render travelling dangerous. In a romantic valley at the bottom, appears the town of Waung-Chanyeng: it is irregularly built, about a mile in length, and displays a considerable share of commerce and opulence. At the extremity of this town a temporary triumphal arch was erected in the honour of the embassy, finely ornamented with silk streamers. Here the ambassador received a salute from some guns, and passed between a double line of soldiers, who displayed a martial appearance and military parade beyond what they had hitherto witnessed in China. They were regularly drawn up in companies; and each regiment was distinguished by a different dress. They all wore a kind of coat of mail; and had their head and shoulders covered with steel helmets. Their armour was matchlocks, sabres, spears, lances, and bows and arrows, together with some weapons of which they knew not the appropriate name. Almost every division varied in its armour as well as its dress.

Now they approached one of the wonders of the world, the wall that separates China from Tartary, the most stupendous work every produced by man. In the vicinity are cantonments for an army of considerable magnitude; at the extremity of which is a masonry gateway of stone, defended by three iron doors, which guard the pass between countries formerly distinct. This wall, the pride of human labour, is supposed to be upwards of twelve hundred miles in length; its height varies according to the circumflances of the surface. Where one of them contrived to get to the top, it was upwards of thirty feet high, and about twenty-four broad. The foundation is laid on large square stones; the superstructure is brick; the centre is a kind of mortar, covered with flag stones. A parapet of no ordinary strength runs on each side of an embattled wall.

The country on the other side assumed a new appearance; even the climate was changed. Instead of cultivated champain, the abodes of wealth, and the bustle of commerce, they now encountered barren wastes, where art has not yet displayed her magic powers.

About seven miles from the great wall they came to a mountain, which exhibited an additional proof of the indefatigable labours of the Chinese in works of public utility. A road, thirty feet wide, is cut through the solid rock; and to lessen the declivity, it is sunk no less than an hundred feet from the summit of the mountain. Yet still the ascent has a tremendous appearance; and without this vast labour, it could not have been surmounted by man. At a moderate distance, on the other side of this steep mountain, stands the palace of Chaung-Shanuve. It consists, like the rest, of a number of courts, surrounded by a high wall. In the palaces, at least in this country, picturesque beauty is either unknown or disregarded. No distant prospects glad the eye nature, though frequently enchanting, is excluded from the sight. Here a considerable number of the emperor's ladies are lodged, guarded by eunuchs. Their apartments of course were distinct; but several of them were seen peeping over the partition that separated their apartments from the embassy. A few trusty mandarins have the superintendance of this

ared for their refresh-
ing none, that nothing
than when their con-
vey might retire to the
or their repose.
they were summoned
orted. The roads now
country displayed a

Wang-Chanyeng, they
h united two hills, with
both sides. The sur-
fort, whose ramparts
e. Beneath this fort is
iding down the hill, is
dangerous. In a roman-
ars the town of Wang-
built, about a mile in
able share of commerce
nity of this town a tem-
ected to the honour of
ed with silk streamers.
ed a salute from some
double line of soldiers,
appearance and military
ad hitherto witnessed
in drawn up in companies;
ingulished by a different
d of coat of mail; and
ers covered with steel
was matchlocks, salres,
d arrows, together with
new not the appropriate
ion varied in its armour

e of the wonders of the
es China from Tartary,
very produced by man-
ents for an army of con-
e extremity of which is a
nded by three iron doors,
n countries formerly of-
human labour, is of prod-
dred miles in length, its
circumstances of the far-
ntrived to get to the top,
high, and about twenty-
on is laid on large square
s brick; the centre is a
h flag stones. A parapet
s on each side of an em-

r side assumed a new ap-
pe was changed. Instead of
odes of wealth, and the
now encountered barren
et displayed her mage

the great wall they came
ined an additional proof
of the Chinese in works
thirty feet wide, it cut
nd to lessen the decli-
an hundred feet from
n. Yet still the ascent
e; and without this wall
een surmounted by man,
he other side of this steep
of Chang-Shanuve. It
number of courts, sur-
n the palaces, at least in
uty is either unknown or
prospects glad the eye:
enchanting, is excluded
siderable number of the
d, guarded by eunuchs,
were distinct; but several
over the partition that
on the embassy. A few
superintendence of this
feraglio.

feraglio. This place is surrounded with extensive gardens: the road from Chang-Shanuve was everywhere broken and mountainous. Yet sterile as it now appeared, this evidently did not proceed from any want of activity from the natives. Every spot capable of cultivation was covered with corn; and in one place they saw several patches of tillage where the declivity seemed to be wholly inaccessible. This excited their admiration; but judge their surprize when they observed a peasant labouring on one of them, where they at first could not conceive how he was capable of standing. This poor man, whose hut was erected at the bottom of the precipice, let himself down from its top by a cord tied round his middle; depending on the strength of this, he laboured for his daily fare, amid continual danger: a proof at once of Chinese industry and fortune.

They arrived before noon at the palace of Callachottung, where they spent the remainder of the day. This palace stands between two lofty hills; it appears of more modern erection, but in style and form resembles those they had already seen.

As they were now near the termination of their journey, the ambassador gave orders to practise the procession and ceremonies with which they were to appear before the imperial court. His excellency was pleased to approve of the rehearsal; during the performance of which the band played the favourite march, known by the appellation of the Duke of York's.

September 7, they continued their route over a hilly country, where the air was piercingly cold. They passed several well-peopled villages, but neither the country nor the people were the same as on the other side of the Chinese wall.

They reached the palace of Callachotshangfu early in the afternoon: in extent and form it was equal to any they had lately seen; but they found it tenanted only by squirrels which bounded round the courts and inhabited the rooms.

September 8, they arrived at one of the emperor's pagodas, where they found an abundant supply of provisions. Here they made a short stay to equip themselves for their progress.

They arrived next at the village of Quoangcho, within a mile of Jehol, the imperial residence. Here they were marshalled, and proceeded amid an immense concourse of spectators, with all the parade that circumstances would allow. The military made a most respectable show; and the gentlemen of the suite, it may be reasonably supposed, were not forgetful of their dignity, and strove to support it by every external display; but the generality were a motley group, without even the advantage of a tolerable uniformity in dress or appearance. The whole certainly could not convey any extraordinary ideas of the splendour or power of the country from which they came. The novelty of the scene might possibly amuse the Chinese, but its grandeur could make no impression. As their progress was slow, they did not reach Jehol until ten in the morning, and drew up before the palace provided for the reception of the embassy. The British military formed a line for the ambassador as he passed; but not a mandarin was in waiting to receive him: and they took possession of the palace without the welcome of an address. Indeed it was reported that the grand choulai, or minister of state, would meet the ambassador, and escort him into Jehol; and after their arrival, they were kept for some hours in anxious expectation of receiving this honour; but at last dinner being served up, all their hopes of seeing him that day terminated.

They now occupied a palace situated on the declivity of a hill. The entrance was by a wooden gateway, which conducs to a large court. Each side of this court has a long gallery, supported by wooden pillars, and roofed with black glossy tiles. That on the left was converted into a kitchen, the other served for the soldiers to exercise in. At the upper end

was another gallery of more elegance, from which a door opens into a further court, the principal apartments of which were appropriated for the use of the ambassador and Sir George Staunton, the rest for the military gentlemen attached to them: a third court was occupied by the gentlemen of the suite, the musicians, servants, and mechanics. The whole fabric is surrounded by a high wall; but owing to the declivity of the situation, the view was not entirely obstructed. They had plenty within the walls, but no one had liberty of egress.

On the second day after their arrival, the ambassador received a visit from a mandarin, with a numerous retinue. He remained nearly an hour in conference with his excellency and Sir George Staunton. During his stay, his attendants amused themselves in examining the dress of the English servants; and on rubbing the lace on their clothes with a stone, to ascertain its quality, failed when they found it less valuable than brilliant. What passed at this conference could not be generally known; but a spirit of conjecture was conjured up among the attendants on the embassy, and the prefaces they formed were by no means auspicious.

This day, instead of that profusion which had hitherto crowned their board, the lower classes in the embassy found scarcely enough at dinner to satisfy one half of them. They had, however, been previously instructed, though for what reason cannot be said, that if their provisions should be defective in quantity or in quality, they were to intimate the grievance to his excellency alone, and leave them untouched. According to these instructions the meat was left untouched; but his excellency having remonstrated to the mandarin by means of his interpreter, in a few minutes every table was served with hot dishes, in the usual variety and profusion. Why this entertainment, which must have been nearly ready, was thus withheld, and so speedily produced, served as an enigma to exercise their ingenuity, but which they could never solve.

On the succeeding day, the presents brought from Peking were unpacked; they consisted of a great number of pieces of coarse cloth, principally black and blue, two telescopes, two air-guns, two richly mounted fowling-pieces, two pair of saddle pistols, two boxes of Irish tabbinets, two large boxes of British carpeting, and two most elegant saddles with furniture complete. Centinels were placed to guard these specimens of British art and manufacture, till the imperial pleasure respecting them should be known, which was afterwards notified by the attendant mandarin.

September 12, a mandarin of the first order, came to acquaint the ambassador, that his imperial majesty would give him an audience on the 14th. This intelligence diffused hope and spirits through the whole embassy, and orders were immediately issued that the suite should be ready on the morning of the day appointed, to accompany his excellency to the imperial palace. The attendants were to appear in their best liveries; and the soldiers and servants, after having escorted the ambassador, were to return immediately to their quarters; his excellency informing them, that he had reason to hope the restrictions imposed on them, which were so irksome to all, would, by his endeavours, be in a few days removed.

Lord Macartney was splendidly dressed, in mulberry colour velvet, with his diamond star and ribbon, and over the whole he wore the full habit of the order of the Bath. Sir George Staunton was in a full court dress, over which he wore the gown and hood of a doctor of laws, with the academical cap. As the morning was very dark, a considerable confusion arose in the intended order of the cavalcade: about five o'clock the ambassador alighted from his palanquin, amid an immense number of the populace. Sir George and Mr. Staunton supported his train.

As it was day-light when they returned, they had a view of the city. It is large and populous, but very irregularly

irregularly built; the houses are low, and chiefly of wood: except in the quarter contiguous to the imperial palace, none of the streets are paved. The principal support of this place seems to be derived from the emperor's partiality for it. No river connects it with remote situations; the splendid expence of a court, however, renders it rich and busy. The surrounding country, though not comparable to China, is in the best state of Tartary cultivation.

As their visit was a meer matter of form and presentation, his excellency was not detained long: he returned before noon. The emperor, it is said, received the credentials with all the dignity of form. He appeared to be vastly struck with the manners and abilities of Mr. Staunton, to whom he presented, with his own hands, a beautiful fan, and some embroidered purses.

Some short time after the ambassador's return, a number of valuable presents were received from court, consisting of velvets, silks, and purses, and some of the finest tea of the country, made up into solid cakes of about five pounds each. Except such as were addressed for their Britannic majesties, these presents were proportionably divided among the gentlemen of the suite.

On the 15th, the ambassador, attended only by his suite, paid a second visit to the emperor, in order, as they understood, to attempt to open the wished-for negotiation. On this occasion, he stopped several hours. The interpreter gave a very favourable report of the aspect of the negotiation, as far as it had advanced; and their hopes for its success seemed to derive some confirmation from a second cargo of presents, consisting of silks as before, Chinese lamps, and valuable porcelain; to these were added a number of calibash boxes of the most exquisite fabric. A distribution was made as before; and this evening was spent in mirth and festivity, arising from the most sanguine hopes of success.

On the 16th, several mandarins visited the ambassador, and invited him and the whole embassy to attend the anniversary of the emperor's birth-day at court, on the morrow. Accordingly, his excellency set out very early in the morning, and the whole cavalcade reached the Imperial palace about four o'clock.

The emperor's palace commands an elevated situation and extensive views: it contains a numerous range of courts, none of which, however, appear very magnificent, though some of them are highly decorated with painting and gilding. The gardens surround it for several miles; these are bounded by a wall thirty feet high. In the front of the palace is a fine lawn, with a lake in the centre. On the emperor's approach, the mandarins in waiting prostrated themselves, or it would have been impossible to have distinguished his palanquin from one of theirs. No external pomp or badge of dignity, marked his dress or equipage. It is a favourite maxim of his government to check superfluous expence, and to encourage frugality and industry in every department of his government. Actuated by the same wise and patriotic principle, he has forbid any public rejoicings on his birth-day, in this less flourishing part of his empire; but such unfeigned homage is paid to his dignified and amiable character, that except in his immediate presence, and under his personal view, all ranks and descriptions of men, throughout his extensive dominions, give a loose to joy on this auspicious day. He had now completed the 85th year of his age, and the 57th of his reign. In the palanquin they could only observe his countenance, which was animated, and little expressive of his advanced years; his eyes were dark and piercing; and his whole air bore the impression of the conscious dignity of virtue rather than of state and parentage.

Their return was followed by a repetition of the same kind of presents, varied in pattern and colour. A profusion of fruits and confectionary accompanied those expressions of imperial munificence. In the

confectionary art, the Chinese seem capable of giving a lesson to the most eminent in that line among the Europeans.

On the 18th, the ambassador went in a more private manner to have an audience of leave, as the court was soon to return to Peking. At the same time, he transacted certain official business, but the emperor declined entering into any written treaty with Great-Britain, or indeed with any nation, as being contrary to ancient usage; though, at the same time, he expressed the highest respect for the British nation and the king: he was strongly disposed to give them a preference in all commercial concerns; yet he would not sacrifice the interests of his own people to any foreign connections, and would only continue his avowed partiality for the English, while he found they conducted themselves in their commercial intercourse in such a manner as to deserve it. Furthermore, to evince his high personal regard for the king of Great-Britain, he delivered to the ambassador with his own hand, a box of great value, containing the miniatures of all the preceding emperors, with a short character of each in verse, written by themselves, accompanied with an address to the following purport:

"Deliver this casket to the king your master, and tell him from me, that small as the present may appear, it is the most valuable I have to bestow, or my empire can furnish. It has been transmitted to me through a long line of ancestors; and I had reserved it as the last token of affection I had to bequeath to my son and heir, as a tablet of the virtues of his progenitors, which I should hope he had only to peruse to be induced to imitate; and to make it, as they had done, the grand object of his life to exalt the imperial honour, and advance the happiness of his people."

His excellency, after dinner, returned with his whole suite and attendants, to see a play performed in the Imperial palace, on a temporary stage. The dramatic entertainments consisted of mock battles, vaulting, tumbling, rope-dancing, and other gymnastic amusements, which would have done no discredit to any performers. A variety of deceptions concluded the theatrical fete. One of which was the exhibition of a large bowl, in every possible position; which was immediately placed on the stage bottom upwards, and on being lifted up again, discovered a large rabbit, which escaped from the performer by taking refuge among the audience. The spectators in general, including many Europeans, were totally at a loss to account for this deception; but to others it was no novelty, having frequently seen the same trick exhibited by the jugglers of Europe. Other similar tricks, very dextrously performed, amused them by their novelty and apparent difficulty. The theatre, being well filled with persons of distinction, made a splendid appearance.

On the 19th, pipes and tobacco, sufficient to supply every individual belonging to the embassy, were received; and several mandarins came to pay their respects to the ambassador. In these visits they observed how little regard is paid to external appearance in China. The mandarins never varied their habits; and even the court-dresses here differ very little from the ordinary habiliments. It may be said to consist of a loose robe, falling half way down the leg, and drawn round the neck with ribband. Over the breast is a piece of embroidery, about five inches square, finished in gold, or silk of various colours, with an exact counterpart on the back; which badges denote the rank of the wearer. The sash, which at other times is usually worn round the waist, is dispensed with at court.

His excellency, on their approaching the coast of China, had communicated the general orders by which the conduct of the embassy was to be regulated: these seemed to be dictated by good sense, and a regard to the successful prosecution of the grand objects in view. His lordship's observations and injunctions, however, delivered at the same time,

seem capable of giving
that line among the

went in a more private
of leave, as the court
the same time, he tran-
but the emperor decli-
treaty with Great-Bri-
as being contrary to
same time, he expressed
British nation and the
to give them a pre-
concerns; yet he would
is own people to any to-
only continue his avow-
while he found they com-
mercial intercourse in
it. Furthermore, to
for the king of Great-
ambassador with his own
containing the miniatures
s, with a short character
y themselves, accompa-
following purport:
the king your master, and
small as the present may
valuable I have to bestow,
It has been transmitted
line of ancestors; and I
last token of affection I
on and heir, as a tablet
ogenitors, which I should
peruse to be induced to
as they had done, the
exalt the imperial honour,
of his people."

dinner, returned with his
to see a play performed
a temporary stage. The
consisted of mock battles,
dancing, and other gym-
would have done no dif-
A variety of deceptions
fete. One of which was
the bowl, in every possible
mediately placed on the stage
being lifted up again, dis-
which escaped from the per-
among the audience. The
cluding many Europeans,
account for this deception;
novelty, having frequently
hibited by the jugglers of
ricks, very dextrously per-
their novelty and apparent
being well filled with person
tendit appearance.

and tobacco, sufficient to
belonging to the embassy,
eral mandarins came to pay
assador. In these visits they
d is paid to external appear-
mandarins never varied their
urt-dresses here differ very
habilliments. It may be
robe, falling half way down
d the neck with ribbands
piece of embroidery, about
in gold, or silk of various
counterpart on the back;
rank of the wearer. The
es is usually worn round the
t court.

their approaching the court of
ted the general orders by
the embassy was to be regu-
be dictated by good sense,
successful prosecution of the
His lordship's observations
ver, delivered at the same
time,

time, did not seem to accord with the spirit of liberty
and personal security, which accompanies an English-
man wherever he is placed; and it is to be feared
they gave no very favourable idea of the British
character to those on whom it was wished to impress
the highest. Hitherto they had not been attempted
to be carried into execution; and it was generally
believed, that a person of some rank in the embassy
never approved of their tenor; but now it was
intimated, that all the servants of the ambassador
were to consider themselves as under martial law,
and that they would be punished according to its
regulations, in any case of disobedience or neglect.
It is true that the experiment was never made in
regard to the civil servants of the embassy; but the
alarm which this information gave was felt with
secret indignation.

There was among these orders an express injunc-
tion, forbidding any traffic with the natives. This,
it was believed, was punctually observed, as far as
gain was concerned; but a private in the infantry,
composing part of the ambassador's guard, having
been reported to have procured a small quantity of
samchoo by the assistance of a Chinese soldier, he
was immediately confined; and being brought to a
court-martial, of which a corporal was president, he
was sentenced to receive sixty lashes. This sentence
being approved by the commanding officer, the Bri-
tish soldiers were drawn up in form, in the outer

court of the palace where they resided, and the poor
culprit being fastened to one of the pillars of the
great portico, without any mitigation, received the
punishment. The abhorrence excited in the breasts
of the Chinese, at a conduct which appeared cruel to
them, was demonstrably proved by their words and
looks; they expressed their astonishment, that a
people professing the mildest, the most benevolent
religion on earth, as they wished to have it believed,
could be guilty of such flagrant inattention to its mer-
ciful dictates. The commander of the Lion went a
step further towards alienating the affections of the
Chinese from our heroes. When that ship lay at
Chusan, a native brought a bottle of samchoo on
board, intending to exchange it for some European
article. His design being discovered, the captain
ordered him to be seized and punished with twelve
lashes, in the presence of numbers of his country-
men; though a complaint preferred to a mandarin
would have obtained the satisfaction necessary, and
saved the appearance of despotism. Indeed, the mild
manners of the Chinese revolt at the public exhibition
of punishments: they are at a loss to reconcile Euro-
pean behaviour with European professions. Their
faith and practice, in almost every instance, appear to
them to be opposite; in short, their prejudices, in-
stead of decreasing on better acquaintance, were,
through fresh circumstances, hourly increasing.

C H A P. IV.

Departure from Jehol—Account of two extraordinary Rocks—Loss of an Artillery-Man—Consequent Apprehensions—Arrival at Pekin—An Hospital established for the Sick—Imperial Palace in Pekin—The Emperor visits the Palace of Teenen-Maryeumen—Description of kim—Mutual Presents—A sudden Order from the Emperor—Conjectures respecting their unexpected Mandate—The abrupt Departure from Pekin—Leave the Channel of the River and enter an expensive Canal—Remarks—A lofty Pagoda—Anchor—Arrive at Kord-Chuang—Anchor at Lee-Yangod—Pass the City Kanngbo—Yellow River—Chin-Fong—Kiangsou, &c. &c.—An unexpected Meander—A Brick-Kiln—Description of the Chinese Horses, &c.—Voyage the Yellow and Green Rivers—Anchor at Van-on-Chean.

AFTER a state imprisonment of fourteen days (for the liberty they had been encouraged to expect was never granted) they left Jehol September 21, and proceeded to Pekin.

There are two extraordinary rocks in the vicinity of Jehol. One is an immense pillar of stone, about an hundred feet high, small at the base, and gradually spreading towards the top, from several parts of which issue streams of the purest water. This lofty object is situated on the pinnacle of a mountain, which adds to its sublime effect. The upper part of this rock is rather flat, and appears to be clothed with verdure and shrubs; but it is totally inaccessible. Some convulsion of nature must certainly have placed it here; and it is impossible to view it from the valley below without the strongest emotions of wonder and fear. The Chinese give it the name of Panfuihaung; and justly esteem it as one of the first natural curiosities of their country. The other is rather a cluster of rocks, whose greatest height is nearly two hundred feet: these stand likewise on the summit of a mountain; and from one point of view, appear one solid mass.

Shortly after they left Jehol, they passed the emperor's pagoda, where they saw the tributary king of Cochin - China's ambassador and suite, advancing with the annual acknowledgment. They slept at the Imperial palace of Callachotung, where they lost an artillery-man of the bloody flux; of which alarming malady several others among the military were ill. The attendant mandarin expressed great apprehension, lest the emperor should hear of this circumstance, and an alarm of contagious disorders be given him.

They received intelligence the next morning that the emperor had left Jehol, and that it would be necessary to advance two stages this day in order that

the palaces might be at liberty to accommodate his majesty's attendants.

As they pursued the same route they had done before, their journey to Pekin was now destitute of novelty. They arrived there on the afternoon of the 26th, and took up their residence in the palace which had been appropriated for their use before they set out for Jehol. The arrangements which had been made, during the ambassador's absence, seemed to meet his entire approbation; and as their stay here, at this period, was likely to be of some continuance, every preparation and provision was made for the domestic comfort of the establishment, and the splendour of the embassy. The state canopy was erected in the principal room of the ambassador's apartments. It was made of flowered crimson silk, and fringed with gold: the back displayed the arms of Great-Britain; under its cover five chairs of state were placed; the centre one being elevated above the rest for the ambassador. At the other end of the apartment were hung whole length portraits of their Britanic majesties. The whole formed an appearance for an audience-chamber, equal to the consequence of the country represented.

On the 28th, the arrival of the emperor was announced by a grand discharge of artillery, and the next day his excellency was visited by several mandarins.

About this time sickness prevailed so much among the soldiers, attached to the embassy, that it was found expedient to establish an hospital in some vacant buildings within the precincts of the palace in which they resided, for their reception and more speedy recovery.

October the 1st, a mandarin requested, in the name of the emperor, that the ordnance presents might be

be sent to the palace of Yeumen-Manyeumen, where the Chinese themselves were to prove and examine them. The chariots and other presents were also removed to the same place; and on the 2d, the ambassador received a formal invitation to wait on the emperor on the morrow. His excellency went in a private manner, and transacted business with the officers of state. The conference lasted for two hours.

The imperial palace in Peking stands in the middle of the city, and is surrounded by a very high wall. It is said to occupy a circumference of about seven miles, containing gardens both for pleasure and utility, replenished with all that is rare in art or nature. The entrance is by a strong stone arched way; the range of buildings fronting it is three stories high, and much embellished with galleries, gilding, and painting; the roof is covered with shining tiles, of a yellow colour; the walls are variously painted and decorated. A large body of soldiers guard the gate; and several mandarins of the first class are in constant waiting.

His excellency now settled the order and disposition of the tables for the different departments of the household; and every thing seemed to indicate a residence of some permanency at Peking.

On the 5th, the emperor visited the palace of Yeumen-Manyeumen, to inspect the presents which were lodged there; and was pleased to order several ingots of silver to be distributed to every person attending. The English artificers, who were the immediate objects of his generosity, and had a complete view of him, described his majesty as being about five feet ten inches high, of a slender form, but well proportioned; and that his countenance presented a regularity of features, free from the decrepitude of age. His deportment was attractively affable; and the dignity of the prince was only displayed in the superior manners of the man. He was habited in a robe of yellow silk, and a cap of black velvet, surmounted with a red ball, and adorned with a peacock's feather. He wore silk boots, embroidered with gold, and a blue silk sash. The opinion his majesty formed of the presents could only be collected from their being generally received. Two camera obscuras were, however, returned, as being suited only to the amusement of children. The interpreter, explained to the mandarins the nature and use of a variety of articles.

This day presents were received from the emperor for their Britannic majesties. The ambassador and suite had likewise their proportion.

On the 6th, about noon, the ambassador again went to visit the emperor; but on his arrival at court he fainted away, and being conveyed home, continued indisposed during the day. In the meanwhile, Sir George Staunton and Colonel Benson distributed to each of the soldiers and servants, some pieces of silk, others of dongarce (a kind of nankeen) and a junk of silver of considerable weight, as a present from his imperial majesty.

It was now reported, that they were soon to quit Peking. It occasioned a considerable share of speculation, though it obtained less credit than afterwards appeared to be due. This report, which at first met with only a faint belief in general, was confirmed by an order from the ambassador, to prepare for their departure on Wednesday. Their surprise and concern may easily be conceived. After a variety of fatigues, they consoled themselves that they should now have enjoyed some repose; but all personal considerations were absorbed in public affairs, in which the humblest individual felt an interest. The grand objects of the embassy were evidently unaccomplished; and in their attachment to the good of their country, its honour, its advantage, they forgot every other care. A little respite was therefore requested, till the baggage was packed up and arranged. The attendant mandarin made the requisition: an order arrived from the grand choulai to suspend their de-

parture till Friday; but judge their astonishment, when this was countermanded by the emperor himself, and they were expressly ordered to depart on the day first intimated.

It was reported by the Chinese, that as the business on the part of the emperor was already completed, he was surprised the English ambassador was not anxious to return to his own country. It was also said that his majesty was alarmed at the number of their sick, lest any contagion should be communicated to his subjects. Nor were there persons wanting who ascribed his determination to an aversion contracted against them, from the skill and ingenuity they evinced in those engines of destruction, the brass mortars, which were tried in his presence. It was said he depreciated the spirit of a people, who, contrary to the vital avowed principles of their religion, had made such a proficiency in arts which seemed to contradict them all.

In this state of affairs, Lord Macartney sent the carriage of ceremony, as a present to the grand choulai, which was refused; and after they had left Peking they found it returned on their way. The confusion arising from this sudden and unexpected event, rendered it impossible to arrange the baggage with any order. They huddled it together in the best manner that circumstances would permit. Some articles, which could not be packed up, or were now useless, were given to the mandarins; the natives took care to purloin a share, and Lord Macartney's servants had the canopy of state. They set out on the road that leads to Tong-Tehew at a very early hour on the morning of the 9th, and reached that town in the evening. Even the thoughts of being on the return to their country failed to relieve the gloom of disappointment; and to increase their unpleasant sensations, they met with neglect and humble accommodations, compared to what they had experienced before. They were lodged here in temporary sheds, hung with straw matting.

On the 10th, while proceeding to the side of the river, they found the junks intended for their reception. The baggage was put on board with all possible expedition, but not without a degree of confusion beyond what they had yet known. The ambassador and his suite occupied seven junks; the attendant mandarin and his party followed in separate vessels. Soon after the embarkation was performed, dinner was served up; and at an early hour, after a most fatiguing day, they retired to rest.

They left the channel of the river on the 15th, and entered a canal of infinite labour and expence. The sides are masonry throughout its extent; and at certain distances locks, in the form of a crescent, are erected, which confining the water to a narrow passage in the middle of the canal, occasions a moderate fall of about three feet. The motion of the junks is accelerated in passing these locks, and continues to some distance; and to prevent vessels receiving damage from striking against the walls of the lock, men are always ready to let down large leathern pads, which effectually break the shock. In the course of this day, they passed a number of these locks, whose construction and effects, they found invariably the same.

They sailed for some days through a country rich in agriculture and population. They observed plantations of the shrub which produces the Imperial and gunpowder tea: in size and figure it resembles the gooseberry-bush. Imperial tea is the produce of the first blossoms; gunpowder tea is a collection of the successive blossoms, as they appear.

Not only the exterior marks of respect had been withdrawn from the embassy by the Chinese, but they even found their provisions deficient, both in quantity and quality. A representation to the mandarin procured immediate redress in this particular; and it was further reported, that the same benevolent character had exerted himself with effect to do away some very unfavourable impressions, with which a

their astonishment, by the emperor himself, ordered to depart on

fe, that as the business was already completed, the ambassador was not to return to his country. It was allowed that the number of persons who could be communicated here persons wanting in to an aversion of the skill and ingenuity of destruction, the brass his presence. It was of a people, who, conspires of their religion, in arts which seemed to

and Macartney sent the present to the grand and after they had left on their way. The sudden and unexpected to arrange the baggage led it together in the would permit. Some packed up, or were no mandarins; the natives and Lord Macartney's are. They set out on a journey to a very early 18th, and reached that in the thoughts of being failed to relieve the aid to increase their un- with neglect and humble what they had experienced here in temporary

ding to the side of the intended for their reception board with all possible a degree of confusion town. The ambassador in junks; the attendant ved in separate vessels. was performed, dinner early hour, after a most rest.

the river on the 15th, the labour and expense, about its extent; and at the form of a crescent, are water to a narrow passage, occasions a moderate motion of the junks is locks, and continues to out vessels receiving delicate walls of the lock, men in large leathern pads, hook. In the course of er of these locks, whose y found invariably the

through a country rich. They observed plan- oduces the Imperial and figure it resembles the ca is the produce of the a is a collection of the appear.

marks of respect had been by the Chinese, but rations deficient, both in presentation to the mand- edress in this particular; that the same benevolent If with effect to do away rations, with which a

Tartar mandarin had prejudiced the emperor against the English, by representing them as divested of every amiable quality, and addicted to every vice. They passed numerous plantations of tobacco; a plant cultivated here in the greatest variety, and to the greatest extent, of any country in the world. Indeed smoking being the universal practice from infancy to old age, the quantity of tobacco consumed in China must exceed all moderate calculation. Several considerable cities appeared at a small distance from the canal; the garrisons from which advanced to the banks, to give the usual salute. Also several corn-mills, worked by water, and apparently on the same construction as in Europe, arrested their attention in their progress.

On the 23d, a lofty pagoda, of eight stories, opened to their view. Next day they saw the Chinese post pass along the road on the margin of the canal. The letters are enclosed in a large bamboo basket, hooped with cane; it is then locked, and the key is given into the custody of one of the soldiers, who delivers it to the post-messenger. The basket is then strapped on the courier's shoulders, and being decorated with a number of little bells at the bottom, they make a loud jingling when shaken by the motion of the horse, and announce the approach of the post. Five light-horsemen escort the courier; and as the fleetest horses are selected, and changed at every stage, the mails in China are conveyed with extraordinary expedition.

On the 24th, in the evening, the junks anchored in the heart of a large city, through which the canal passes. A continual succession of bridges connects the banks. These are guarded by soldiers, who suffer no vessel to pass till a mandarin has inspected it. The fleet here received a salute of three guns; and a numerous body of soldiers lined the banks.

They arrived soon at Kord-Cheuang, a city of equal magnitude with the last; in the centre of which they saw a pagoda of ten stories, each surrounded by a gallery. After passing several large cities in the course of this day's voyage, they anchored for the night at Lee-Yaungoa, which was illuminated in honour of the ambassador.

On the 26th, they passed the city of Kaunghoo, and found such an amazing number of junks lying there as impeded their passage for some time. The canal winds through this place, and its banks slope down to the water in a very beautiful form. Every spot in their passage gave testimony to the existence of art, and the effects of industry.

On the 29th, they observed the peasants ploughing. They worked with oxen; and though their ploughs were of a very clumsy form, the labour seemed to be neatly and properly executed. On the 2d of November they reached a city of great extent and trade. Several canals meet here; and on the south side of it is a bay, communicating with the Yellow River, in which the noblest fleets of Europe might ride. The hills in the vicinity are beautifully green; their summits are crowned with pagodas; while villas and gardens adorn the lower slopes. Passing through the bay, in which various opposite currents meet, they soon entered a large river, and found themselves again embosomed in a rich and delightful country. Town opened on their enchanted senses after town; and no words can convey an adequate idea of the picturesque scenery that surrounded them.

They arrived about the hour of dinner, at a town of unusual magnitude and beauty, through which the river flowed for the space of three miles. The houses were uniformly of brick, varied with a bluish coloured stone, and generally rise to two stories high. Here they received the military honours so often mentioned; and indeed it may in general be observed, that there was neither town nor village through which they passed, that had not its mandarin, and its proportionate number of guards and troops, not only in China, but also in the remote and less populous regions of Tartary.

Soon after, the country assumed a swampy appearance; the natural consequence of so many rivers, canals, and lakes, which intersect it, and promote its commercial intercourse. The weather was cold and the mornings frosty. The climate unquestionably is affected by the large bodies of water which every where abound in this part of the country. They now understood that it was the Yellow River on which they were sailing, probably so called from some communications with the Yellow Sea. They passed several lakes.

On the 3d, they saw a number of fishing-boats employed in their vocations, and procured from them a small fish, about the size of a sprat, but in flavour and form resembling the haddock. On the opposite side of this lake they discovered the city of Chun-fong; it is built of a dark-coloured stone, roofed with tiles of the same hue. This place appears to be about eight miles in circumference; and from the dress and manners of its inhabitants, they could easily determine was both commercial and polite.

On the 4th, they passed two other large lakes; and soon after reached the town of Kiangfou, which is large and walled. A mandarin and his guards appeared, to give the customary salutes; and at each end of the line of troops, a temporary arch was erected, with a platform reaching down to the river, very elegantly adorned, to afford a landing to the ambassador, should he happen to be disposed to stop. At a small distance, tents were pitched, in the centre of which was the mandarin's pavilion, where a collation was ready for the entertainment of his excellency and the mandarins in their fleet. But the order of the voyage prevented them from accepting this tribute of hospitality and politeness.

They came to another large town beyond this, of superior beauty, where they stopped to receive a supply of provisions, and to be furnished with towers for the junks. Here they were gratified with the sight of a number of fine women, whose complexions were uncommonly fair.

They passed a town in the afternoon, which could not be less than nine miles in circuit: the walls are of immense height, and seem to be ancient. Several hundreds of junks were moored along its wharfs. They entered a lake on the 5th, sprinkled with a variety of beautiful islands: the most considerable of them contains the palace of a mandarin, with most beautiful summer-houses, plantations, and gardens; a lofty rock rose amid the trees, and supported on its top a stately pagoda. They soon entered another river, whose banks became highly picturesque, on which, and the adjoining heights, they saw a variety of villas, with gilt pyramids rising from the roofs, in the Gothic style. They stopped at the city of Mee-yon-Mee-aung to take in the customary supply of provisions. Nature seems to have formed this place for the purposes of navigation; and rural beauty to have fixed her residence in its vicinity. Falling down the river, an unexpected meander brought them back again upon the city, and astonished them with its extent and the variety of new prospects that presented themselves. The mandarin's palace was a splendid object. It was uniformly built; the wings were two stories high, and the centre three. The country continued to improve in landscape beauty; the hills were verdant to their tops, and covered with cattle and sheep. In their progress they observed a brick-kiln. The materials of which these valuable articles in building were composed, seemed to be a mixture of sand and river mud; the kiln was of a pyramid form. In the evening several pagodas were illuminated in honour of the ambassador.

On the 6th of November, they entered a town of a most dismal hue. It was wholly erected of black bricks; and as the houses were more lofty than those generally seen in this country, its peculiar character made the stronger impression. In a short time after they reached the mandarin's palace; a stone building of singular architecture. This officer had erected a

temporary stage to communicate between his residence and the river, the roof of which was covered with silk of every dye; and from it a number of lamps were fancifully suspended. All this was done for the accommodation, and in honour of the ambassador, if he or the attendant mandarins should be disposed to land; but the circumstances of their voyage did not allow them to partake of this respectful hospitality. In the afternoon, the banks of the river rose with such a bold elevation as to intercept their view of the country.

On account of a complaint against some of the captains of the junks, for embezzlement of provisions, the grand mandarin instituted an inquiry after the fleet came to anchor this evening; and being convinced of the truth of the charge, condemned the culprits to be bamboozed, which sentence was put into execution immediately.

They passed another town, the houses of which were covered with plaster, and painted black. At the entrance and the extremity of this place, which is very large, they sailed under a noble arch. As it was intended to forward the heavy baggage from Hoang-Tchew to Chufan, in order to its being conveyed by sea to Canton, arrangements were made for this purpose. A party of the gentlemen of the embassy, and the servants, were to accompany it; the ambassador and the remainder were to proceed over land, with only the absolute necessities of apparel and travelling.

The grand mandarin visited every junk on the 9th, the owners of which he briefly examined; and then ordered them to suffer the punishment of the bamboo. Their crime was kept a secret.

The next day having passed several plantations of tallow-trees, they arrived at Hoang-Tchew, when the junks were all fastened together, and every person belonging to the suite was forbid to land. Indeed a body of Chinese soldiers pitched their tents opposite to them, as if to awe them into compliance. During the time they lay here, no circumstance happened worthy of being recorded. The mandarin of Hoang-Tchew had accompanied them from Pekin, and being superior to Yan-Tadge-In, of course assumed the supreme direction during this part of their voyage. Here he was to remain. The heavy baggage, which was to be sent to Chufan, being separated from the light articles they were to carry with them to Canton, Colonel Benfon, Captain Mackintosh, and party, set off to join the Hindostan at Chufan, on the fifth day after their arrival; and the same day also they left Hoang-Tchew.

November 14, his excellency, accompanied by his retinue, proceeded for the Green River, where they were again to embark in smaller junks. On passing the city gates, the embassy received the customary salute. Between the two rivers the distance could not be less than seven miles; and the whole space was covered by the city and suburbs, and lined with soldiers, who secured them from the pressure of an innumerable multitude of people. The streets are narrow, but well paved; the houses two and three stories high; and the magnificence of the shops was beyond any thing they had hitherto seen. In commerce and population, Hoang-Tchew is a very considerable city.

They reached the Green River at noon, where the ambassador was received with military honours. The troops were armed with helmets, and made a splendid appearance with their accompaniments. A triumphal arch, with a platform descending to the ambassador's junk, had been erected for the occasion. Their embarkation was attended by myriads of people. Some were mounted on buffaloes, which animal carried several at a time on its back, and appeared very docile.

Their voyage was continued between ranges of mountains, presenting the most romantic scenery. The vallies were covered with tallow and mulberry-trees. The former is called the latchoo, and is

remarkably beautiful, having scarlet leaves edged with yellow, and purplish blossoms. The river on which they now sailed, was, at a medium, about three feet deep. The water has a green cast, and the bottom is gravelly.

The city of Zanguoa made a most brilliant appearance on the evening of the 15th, with its illuminations. The effect was increased by numerous bodies of soldiers ranged along the banks of the river, with paper lanterns.

On the 16th, the features of the country through which they sailed, were still mountainous and picturesque; and the forts and salutes became so frequent that they grew absolutely tiresome. Indeed, so much military honour was paid to the embassy, that the salutes could only be compared to a train of wild-fire laid from Pekin to Canton, and continually exploding as they proceeded.

November the 18th, the country changed to a fine champaign, in which numerous villages rose, amid plantations of tallow and mulberry-trees. This day they passed a group of water-mills, all turned by a small cut from the river, flowing in a circular direction. These appeared to be on the European construction; and as they underflood, were employed in threshing rice. The following day the banks of the river resumed the usual appearance; and long ranges of mountains rose into the horizon.

On the 20th they reached a large and beautiful town, where they were again to disembark. The scenery here might have advantageously employed the warmest pencil. The river formed a central object, on one side was the town, with its appropriate circumstances, and a military encampment in front, with all its gaudy ensigns; on the other side lofty perpendicular hills bounded the view in the most sublime style. As soon as they disembarked, they proceeded next day by land, and soon reached the city of Chanfoiyeng, where the ambassador was received with due distinction. Leaving this, they passed another walled city and several villages; and arrived at the city of Yoosau early in the afternoon, where they drank refreshments of tea at the palace of the mandarin; and having stowed the baggage on board another fleet of junks provided for their accommodation, they all embarked, and were anxious to proceed on their voyage.

November the 24th, they found themselves before the city of Mammenoa. The river now winded away between enormous masses of stone, without any continuity or connection; exhibiting the appearance of some volcanic eruption. Some of these huge stones had been excavated into dwellings; and every interstice between them was occupied by hortulan productions. This stupendous scenery continued for several miles; it was grand, perhaps unique, in itself; and where it admitted of views into the more distant country, it produced a most delightful picture. In the afternoon they reached the city of Hoa-Quo, where, much to their satisfaction, they found larger junks ready to receive them. The mandarin of the place politely sent a variety of fruits and confectionary for the use of every junk. For two days the weather had been very rainy; it now became more moderate. The country through which they passed was rich and fertile; a few red rocks occasionally broke the level of the scene.

On the 26th, in the morning, the fog was so thick as to obscure the country. About noon it dispersed; and the eye ranged over a level extent of rice fields, intersected with villas and gardens. Their provisions had for some time been very indifferent; not from neglect, but the nature of the country. In proportion as they fared worse their Chinese junk-men fared better; who received not only their superfluity, but sometimes almost the whole.

On the 27th they reached a village entirely built of mud, with inhabitants as wretched in appearance as their habitations were mean. For this sight they were unable to account. The river had now assumed a formidable

scarlet leaves edged
floms. The river on
a medium, about three
green cast, and the bot-

a most brilliant appear-
gth, with its illumina-
ed by numerous bodies
anks of the river, with

of the country through
mountainous and pictu-
resque became so frequent
some. Indeed, so much
the embassy, that the fa-
to a train of wild-fire
and continually explo-

country changed to a fine
ous villages rose, amid
berry-trees. This day
r-mills, all turned by a
wing in a circular direc-
e on the European con-
flood, were employed in
ng day the banks of the
prance; and long ranges
horizon.

a large and beautiful
to disembark. The sce-
ageously employed the
formed a central object,
with its appropriate cir-
encampment in front,
on the other side lofty
the view in the most
they disembarked, they
ed, and soon reached the
the ambassador was re-
n. Leaving this, they
nd several villages; and
n early in the afternoon,
nts of tea at the palace of
flowed the baggage on
provided for their accom-
d, and were anxious to

found themselves before
the river now winded away
stone, without any con-
coiting the appearance of
some of these huge stones
ellings; and every inter-
rupted by hortulane pro-
scenery continued for
perhaps unique, in itself;
ews into the more distant
delightful picture. In
the city of Ho-Quo-
dition, they found larger

The mandarin of the
of fruits and confection-
uk. For two days the
y; it now became more
rough which they passed
red rocks occasionally

ing, the fog was so thick
About noon it dispersed;
level extent of rice fields,
gardens. Their provisions
ry indifferent; not from
country. In propor-
Chinese junk-men scarce-
ly their superfluity, but

a village entirely built
wretched in appearance
can. For this fight they
e river had now assumed
a formidable

a formidable breadth; and as the wind was high, the
waves and surf resembled those of the sea. They
passed numbers of fishing boats, which served to vary
the navigation of the stream.

On the 28th, the city of Tyaung-Shi-Sennau ap-
peared in view. They passed it in the afternoon, and
for extent and the advantages of situation, it unques-
tionably deserves to be reckoned one of the first in
China. Not less than a thousand junks lay at anchor
before it: it is built near the conflux of several rivers,
and enjoys a most extensive commerce. The grand
mandarin paid a visit on board his excellency's junk,
and made a variety of presents, in silk, porcelain,
and tea.

On the 29th they reached another village, built
with blue bricks, and covered with tiles of the same
colour. Pagodas and the palaces of mandarins were
now become familiar objects. Next day they passed
a city lying amid beautiful meadows and orchards,
about two miles distance from the river. Beyond
this the prospect became as delightful as fancy can
conceive. Mountains rose into the horizon, forests
waved on the slopes, and flocks and herds covered
the vales. The river was now expanded to a great
breadth, and as the wind blew fresh, the junks some-
times appeared in danger of being overfet. At this
time the fields were covered with frost.

December the 1st, they sailed by the town of
Saunt-Yo-Tawn, where several superb pagodas rose
above the surrounding groves. Numerous timber-
yards occupied the banks of the river; and a large
quantity of timber was immersed in the stream,
which, as they were told, were in a state of prepa-
ration for the building of junks, the principal business
of the place. The cities of Loo-Diehan, Morriun-
Dew, and Chie-a-Foo, which they now approached,
all lie contiguous to each other. Art and nature
have united their efforts to increase the beauty of this
charming vicinity. At a distance they observed vast
columns of smoke, which rose, as they were inform-
ed, from a porcelain manufactory. In the evening
they reached the city of Ching-a-Foo. Here illumina-
tions, the firing of rockets, and of artillery, took
place in honour of the ambassador. They received
also a present of fruit and confectionary from the
mandarin of this city.

December 2, they passed the city of Fie-Cho-Jeu-
nau, embosomed in plantations. From its apparent
population, and the number of junks employed in its
commerce, it was evidently to be ranked in the first

class of Chinese towns. On the 3d they were grati-
fied with the view of some beautiful ruins. The ori-
ginal destination of the edifice they could not certainly
discover; but from the remains still visible, they
concluded it must have been a work of no common
magnificence. In this part of the empire, situation
seems to be duly appreciated. The villas of the
mandarins, the pagodas, and even some of the pri-
vate dwellings, are erected with a palpable regard to
the circumstances of the place, and the beauty of the
scenery. They observed numbers of fishermen em-
ployed in their vocation with rods and lines. In
lakes and large rivers, the same kind of bait is fre-
quently used as at sea: nets too are in very common
use. In some places bamboo canes, supporting a
curtain of strong gauze, are placed across the
streams; and then the fish being allured to the spot
by baits, are caught in nets with great success. On
inquiry, they found that the rights of fishery, as in
Europe, are private property. In those rivers they
navigated, a kind of whiting and trout were the most
plentiful. These are sold to the crews of the junks,
and the demand for them is very great.

Early in the afternoon they anchored before the
city of Vang-on-Chean; where the ambassador re-
ceived a visit from the mandarin. This place occu-
pies a considerable space: on one side it is bounded
by the river, on the other by a range of high moun-
tains. A succession of towns and villages enlivened
our voyage during the succeeding day. The features
of the country became craggy and elevated into hills;
but fertility, in every possible situation, shewed the
labour of diligent cultivation.

On the 5th, the river became very shoally, and
they anchored before dark to avoid the dangers of
such a navigation. This day they passed the city of
Joo-Jennan, situated at the bottom of a lofty moun-
tain. Here they found that the river on which they
had sailed communicated with another of equal mag-
nitude. The position of a city, at the conflux of
two large rivers, readily points out its convenience
for trade. Leaving this place, the stream was divi-
ded into two streams by a beautiful islet, in which the
mandarin had an elegant seat, probably for his occa-
sional retirement. In the evening, the city of Kaung-
Joo-Foo presented the most brilliant nocturnal illu-
mination they had hitherto seen; and this complimen-
tary attention was heightened by a present of fruits
and confectionary from the mandarin of the
place.

C H A P. V.

They continue their Passage—Observe a Number of Machines—Their Utility—Village of Sbaiboo—Pagoda of Tau-ay—Town of Wan-Ting-Tau—Observations—Arrive at Naung-Aun-Foo—Journey over Land—Pass several Villages—Dine at Lee-Can-An—City of Naung-Chin-On—Mandarin's Palace—Embark—Sepulchral Monuments—Larger Junks prepared—A Mountain of immense perpendicular Height—Extraordinary Illuminations—The Mountain of Koan-Yeng-Naun—City of Shizing-Ta-Heng—Of Ting-Tau-Yun—One of the Junks in Danger of being burned—Village of Onz-Chooa—Several other Towns, &c.—Arrival at Canton, the Termination of their Voyage—Remarks—Anchor at Spithead—Conclusion, &c.

IN their passage down the river on the 6th of De-
cember, they observed a number of machines
with which the Chinese water their grounds. They
consist of a wheel of bamboo, turned by a stream,
which throwing the water into large reservoirs, it is
from thence distributed by sluices into a thousand
channels. The beautiful village of Shai-Boo, situ-
ated on a bold elevation, above the river, was the
principal object in the landscape, till the attention
was called away by the pagoda of Tau-Ay; the upper
part of which being in ruins, gave it a more pictu-
resque and impressive appearance, and well accorded
with the character of the little burial-place at its foot.

In this day's voyage the town of Whan-Ting-Tau
was the only place of any importance they passed:

villages were numerous; and some huts again made
their appearance, of the humblest construction.

The 8th was the most remarkable day they had yet
experienced. During their whole progress they saw
neither city, town, nor village. A few farm-houses
were, however, dispersed over the face of the coun-
try: the banks of the river were lofty, and formed
of a perpendicular barrier of red earth, streaked
with horizontal veins of stone, in a direction perfect-
ly retilinear. The natural curiosity continued for
several miles. The shallowness of the river obliged
them again to shift the baggage into junks of lesser bur-
den; and in the course of the evening they found
themselves in the vicinity of some town or village,
from the number of paper lanterns they saw exhibited
by

by the soldiers, and the complimentary salute they paid them. The weather had for some days been temperate; but the face of the country was no longer the same. Barren mountains, separated by plains that seemed to defy the labour of man to produce fertility, now presented themselves on all hands. Some dwarf-trees, however, among which the camphire is said to predominate, broke the abruptness of the slopes; and here and there a village or a pagoda animated the scene. In this place they observed several sepulchral monuments, with excavations in the rocks beneath, as receptacles for the dead. The most elevated spots, the most abrupt precipices, they generally observed, were appropriated for the repose of the dead. Whether this choice was determined with a regard to notoriety, or from any superstitious opinion that the body might be placed as near as possible to that heaven where spirits wing their flight, they could obtain no satisfactory information. The amiable virtues, however, of the Chinese, were rendered more conspicuous by the feeling regard they uniformly appear to shew to the remains of those they have once collected.

They arrived at the city of Naung-Aum-Foo on the 9th. Here the embassy was to make a day's march over land; and accordingly they disembarked. The landing-place was adorned with a triumphal arch, highly decorated with silken streamers, and connected by a platform, with a circular court, surrounded by a screen of silk. In this place a number of horses were collected, with the choice of one of which every person in the suite was indulged, for the journey of the day. The ambassador, with two or three gentlemen of his suite, were to proceed as usual in palanquins. The horses being selected, the cavalcade commenced their progress; and perhaps such an exhibition of equestrian exercise and grotesque dress, never before amused a Chinese populace. The horses were spirited, many of the riders were new to this mode of travelling. The cries of fear, and the shouts of ridicule, were every where heard; and scarcely could they attend to the passing scene; so much were they engaged by the peculiarities of their own situation.

Naung-Aum-Foo, through which they passed, is a large walled city; and though the river here does not admit large junks, from the very great number of smaller ones which lined its shores, they concluded it had no inconsiderable pretensions to traffic.

They arrived at noon at the foot of a lofty mountain, where they were obliged to dismount. Having gained the ascent, they passed several villages; and dined at the town of Lee-Cou-Au, where the road was lined with soldiers in armour, to salute the ambassador as he passed. They arrived at the gates of Naung-Chin-Oa, just as the sun had sunk beneath the horizon. This city stands in a plain, encircled on three sides by hills, and on the fourth by the river, on which they were to continue their voyage. The houses are chiefly built of wood, in general two stories high; and the streets are narrow, but well paved. In exterior appearance and decoration, it preserves the general character of Chinese towns. Soldiers lined the streets, to facilitate their passage to the mandarin's palace, a very noble building, consisting of several courts. A splendid entertainment was provided for the whole suite; and such a profusion of lights decorated the principal apartments as are never displayed in Europe on any occasion. Indeed, illumination constitutes the grand appropriate feature of Chinese magnificence.

They began embarking in the morning of the 11th of December, on board small junks, corresponding with the depth of the river; and before noon they resumed their voyage; sailing under a wooden bridge of seven arches, with stone pillars, strongly guarded by soldiers at each end. From this point, the city appears in a very advantageous view. Beyond the bridge the river divided into two branches, taking almost opposite directions. The town of Chang-Fang

was the only place of note they passed in this day's voyage. The face of the country had few lively features; and its artificial circumstances increased the gloom. Sepulchral monuments were the chief objects which they saw in the course of next day. The only novelty was floating rafts, with several bamboo huts, well tenanted, which they passed near the village of Ty-Ang-Koa.

They reached the city of Shaw-Choo on the 13th, where the houses, adjoining the river, appear to be so flatterly supported, as to threaten constant ruin to their inhabitants and the passengers. At the extremity of this city the fleet anchored; and here the ambassador experienced the elegant attention of the mandarin in a very superior degree.

Now junks of larger dimensions were prepared to receive the embassy; and next day they passed through a country sometimes varied with patches of cultivated ground, though mountainous sterility was still the predominant feature. Towards evening they found the hills gradually approaching the river, till at last they seemed to close, and admit only its course. This gloomy scene continued for some time, as if to heighten the contrast that was to open. They now reached a mountain of immense perpendicular height, the upper part of which appears to project over the stream. Its contour is bare rock and shaggy foliage; and this extends for nearly two miles. Its termination, like its commencement, is abrupt. At the extreme point, a pyramidal rock appears to rise above the edge of the precipice; and this is separated by an interjaacent plain from another enormous rock, of the same character, though of a different form. Another range of hills commenced after they had left these stupendous objects, and continued to exclude their view of the country; but no sooner were they come to the end of this chain, than a burst of illumination, carried over mountains and vallies for several miles, wrapt the senses in ecstacy and astonishment; this line of undulating light was so various and so brilliant, that no words can do justice to its sublime effects. Immense bonfires on the summits reddened the clouds; while spiral streams of fire serpented up the ascents, or sunk into the declivities below. The number of lanterns or torches employed on this occasion must have astonished by their immensity, as well as by their effects; and they can only say, that such a magnificent spectacle was never before displayed to European eyes. Discharges of artillery were repeated at intervals; and night was lost in the artificial blaze.

December 15, the grand mandarin ordered the fleet to stop to indulge the embassy with a leisure view of the mountain of Koan-Yeng-Naum, one of the natural curiosities of China. It has a perpendicular ascent from the water, terminating in a peak; and from the face towards the river, such enormous masses project, as menace every moment to fill up the channel of the stream. But art has heightened the curious circumstances of this extraordinary mountain. It contains several caverns: one of them is about forty feet above the level of the water. To this there is access by a slight of steps, guarded by a rail. On reaching the top of the flight, they enter a room of good dimensions, excavated from the rock, in which stands an image sacred to Chinese devotions. An artificial stair-case conducs to two other superior apartments; and the whole is fitted up by the mandarin to whom the mountain belongs, in a style of rude magnificence, corresponding to the character of the place.

Having proceeded through a country presenting many sublime features, they reached the city of Shizing-Ta-Heng about noon. This place enjoys every local advantage that can contribute to render it picturesque in a high degree. Lofty banks for a considerable space shut out their view of the land; and where a casual opening gave a wider prospect, it was not marked with any new features. Similar objects occurred—varied only by shape, or discriminated by

they passed in this day's country had few lively circumstances increased amusements were the chief the course of next day. ing rafts, with several which they passed near

Shaw-Choo on the 13th, the river, appear to be threaten constant ruin passengers. At the ex- anchored; and here the elegant attention of the degree.

ensions were prepared to day they passed through with patches of cultivated s fertility was till the ards evening they found ing the river, till at last it only its course. This or some time, as if to as to open. They now safe perpendicular height, ears to project over the rock and flaggy foliage; two miles. Its termina- ant, is abrupt. At the rock appears to rise ee; and this is separated another enormous rock, gh of a different form. ended after they had left continued to exclude out no sooner were they s, than a burst of illum- ins and vallies for several itacy and astonishment; was so various and so do justice to its sublime in the summits reddened ms of fire serpented up ecivities below. The s employed on this occa- their immensity, as well can only say, that such a ever before displayed of artillery were repeated is lost in the artificial

mandarin ordered the embassy with a leisure an-Yeng-Naum, one of ina. It has a perpendi- terminating in a peak; e river, such enormous ery moment to fill up the art has heightened the extraordinary mountain. one of them is about e water. To this there guarded by a rail. On s, they enter a room of from the rock, in which Chinese devotions. An to two other superior s fitted up by the man- a belongs, in a style of nding to the character of

h a country presenting reached the city of Shi- This place enjoys every tribute to render it pithi- sity banks for a consider- of the land; and where der prospect, it was not ures. Similar objects pe, or discriminated by light

light and shadow. The evening was cheered with an illumination of the distant hills. The coup d'œil was extremely grand, but inferior to what they had witnessed before.

On the 16th, steep rocks, in various grotesque forms, sometimes tinted with foliage, sometimes the traces of laborious toil, were the prevailing character of the landscape. They reached the city of T'ing-Yan-Yeun. It is well fortified, of great extent and population. The number of junks which lay before it, indicated an enlarged commerce. Triumphal arches decorated the beach; and several regiments of soldiers paid the military honours as they passed. From this city the river takes a direct course for some miles, amid fertile and highly cultivated meadows. The mountains fall into the back ground.

This day one of the junks was in imminent danger of being consumed by a spark falling unobserved from a tobacco-pipe. Indeed, where smoking is so generally used, it is a matter of astonishment that accidents are not more frequent and fatal.

They passed the extensive village of Ouz-Chouaa on the 17th, where a number of manufactories appear to be established. The country now returned its fertility and beauty; and provisions became both plentiful and excellent. In the evening they reached Sangs-We-Yenno, where the ambassador received every honour that the most elegant attention on the part of the mandarin could pay, or his excellency expect. This is a large and commercial city: the illuminations displayed here were peculiarly grand. On the following morning they passed a series of very large and populous towns, so closely connected, that they seemed for some hours to be sailing through one city of immense extent. The salutes were almost incessant as they proceeded; and every place poured thousands of its inhabitants, though at a very early hour, to obtain a transient view of an European embassy. They now approached the city of Tain-T'yn-Tau, a place of the first importance and the most extensive trade. The suburbs lie on both sides the river for several miles; and as far as our heroes could judge in extent, population, and commerce, this city is only inferior to Pekin or Canton. Thousands of junks covered the river for a vast space; and scarcely had they overcome the difficulties and impediments of this crowded navigation, before they found themselves approaching to Canton, the termination of their voyage.

Their arrival here being notified, several mandarins waited on his excellency; and these were soon followed by the gentlemen of the English factory, and Colonel Beulon. This officer brought with him the public dispatches for the ambassador, and a packet of private letters from their friends in England.

They were moved on the succeeding day into larger junks. The magnificence of the river at this place baffles description. Its surface was almost covered with vessels, engaged in trade, or attracted by curiosity. The banks were lined with soldiers, and covered with elegant houses; and a succession of forts thundred out salutes with almost incessant rapidity. They reached the English factory about one in the afternoon, and both it and the Dutch factory paid his excellency the usual salute, hoisting at the same time the standard of their respective countries. A temporary residence for the ambassador and suite had been provided by the East-India-Company's supercargoes; and in point of accommodation and domestic arrangement, they found it superior to the first palaces in which they had lodged, during their long peregrination in China.

Canton is walled, strongly fortified, and garrisoned with numerous troops. The streets are generally narrow, but well paved; and the houses, which are constructed of wood and stone, seldom rise above one story high. The viceroy's palace is exactly on the model of that in which they resided at Pekin. Triumphal arches are numerous and splendid; and

these are the only public buildings in the place. The population has been estimated at a million of souls; the suburbs cannot contain less than half that number. The river at Canton is noble and deep; the water, however, is not wholesome for strangers, till its sediment has been allowed to subside. In this respect the natives give themselves no concern. The suburbs of Canton, in which, indeed, properly speaking, all the European commerce is carried on, are very extensive, and every where exhibit commercial opulence; but they have no pretensions to grandeur or elegance.

The viceroy of Canton only once visited the ambassador during his stay. Large presents of sugar-candy, porcelain, and nankeen, were distributed to the whole embassy. For several days, during the time of dinner, the ambassador was entertained with Chinese plays, performed on a stage erected before the windows of his apartments.

On the first day of the new year 1791, his excellency and suite were splendidly entertained by the gentlemen of the British factory. The band of music which had accompanied the embassy, on the request of the factory, were permitted to enter into its service; and in a country where amusements are so few and confined, it could not fail to be a valuable acquisition.

January the 8th, the ambassador proceeded to Whampoa to join the ships. At the same time a deputation of the retinue was dispatched to Macao, to make preparations for his excellency's reception at that place. We have already given our readers full descriptions of these places.

Whampoa, beyond which European ships are never permitted to pass, is an elegant and populous village, about eighteen miles below Canton. The river, near this place, is defended by a sand-bank, which prevents the passage of large ships, except at high water, and two necks of land, projecting from the Strait of Bocca Tigris. Van-Fudge-In took his farewell leave of the ambassador here.

On the 14th, Lord Macartney landed at Macao; and took up his residence with Mr. Drummond, one of the supercargoes of the East-India-Company. Here the gentlemen of the several European factories have their houses; as they are not permitted to remain at Canton longer than is absolutely necessary for the purpose of trade.

The long intercourse which has subsisted between Europeans and the Chinese in Macao, has not altered the established customs and habits of the latter. The Chinese never deviate from the usages of their country, which may be considered as invariable.

March the 8th, Lord Macartney and retinue embarked for Europe, amid the salutes of forts and ships; and being joined by a large homeward-bound fleet of Indiamen, on the 17th proceeded to sea.

There was nothing of particular consequence which happened during their voyage. They arrived at St. Helena on the 19th of June, and remained there till the 1st of July.

On the 3d of September they were seriously alarmed by running foul of a large fleet off Portland-Roads, which proved to be the Grand Fleet, commanded by Earl Howe. Two or three of the Indiamen received some damage; but except in this instance, their voyage was free from accident, and barren of interrelling occurrence.

After an absence of little less than two years from their native land, they anchored in the afternoon of this day safe at Spithead.

Having now accomplished the Narrative of this remarkable Embassy to CHINA, we shall, for the completion of our arduous Task, present our Readers in the next place with a genuine Description of a Tour through GERMANY, SWITZERLAND, and ITALY, including all the Particulars of our most eminent Travellers, and being more full and descriptive than any hitherto published.

A NEW, COMPLETE, AND ENTERTAINING
HISTORY of TRAVELS

THROUGH
Germany, Switzerland, Italy, Genoa,
Venice, Rome, &c.

Undertaken and Performed chiefly in the Years 1791 and 1792.

Composed from the respectable Journals of

LADY WALLACE, DR. MOORE, C. ESTE, ESQ.

And several other eminent Travellers and Persons of Distinction, who have lately visited the Continent.

Containing an accurate Description of the MANNERS, LITERATURE, RELIGION, &c. of the several Countries herein explored, and a Variety of Anecdotes and Remarks NEVER BEFORE UNITED.

Collected, Arranged, and Re-Written by

WILLIAM HENRY PORTLOCK, ESQ.

CHAPTER I.

Beginning of the Journey—Conveyed to Boulogne—Proceed to St. Omer's—To Lille—Ghent—Brussels—Liege—Chaufontaine—Spa—Arrive at Aix-la-Chapelle—Conveyed to Dusseldorf by Horses—Description thereof—Cologne—Bonn—A mineral Spring called Neuwied—Andernach—Disagreeable Roads—Sleep at Königstein—Arrive at Frankfurt—Visit Hesse-Cassel—Description of the Towns between it and Frankfurt, and the Buildings—Mayence or Mentz—Village of Hockheim—Palace of Martinburgh—Proceed to Worms—Manheim—Visit the Elector's Palace and Gardens at Schwesinger—Bad Accommodation at Waghensfel—Carlsruhe—Description of this Town, &c.—Rastade—Bam—Freiburg—Basle—Visit the famous Garden at Arlesheim.

OUR travellers undertook their journey June 6 1791, with a view of improving their taste and gratifying curiosity. Having passed the Dover road they admired the well wooded scenery of Kent; after which Captain Radcliffe's vessel conveyed them, in about twelve hours, to Boulogne, where they staid only for the examination of their baggage, and then proceeded to St. Omer's, a town which still retains a gloomy appearance, though the mists of Jesuitism are dispersed. They looked into the church and convent of St. Bertin. The monks were then in daily expectation of the order of dismissal from their spacious and handsome buildings: the courts and gardens likewise exhibited the rude appearance of neglect.

From St. Omer's they proceeded by Cassel to Lille. The rich land through which their road was directed, was covered with full crops of various vegetation. The fields of tobacco, the straight roads, and the rows of willows and poplars fantastically stripped to the top, reminded them that they were in Flanders; and they remarked that the people appeared well clothed and comfortably fed and lodged.

They visited Ghent on Whitunday, and on their departure thence travelled through a country more open but less luxuriant in its productions. The road was covered with crowds of men and women returning from a pilgrimage to the Lady of Hall, whose miracles then established a great reputation.

They all had a kind of paper flag in their hats, like those worn by the representatives of fools on our stage, and each person carried one or two small children's trumpets suspended at the side.

Brussels has been generally considered as a most agreeable place of residence. Those who have introduction to the higher ranks certainly experience every enjoyment there that lively and elegant society can furnish. It requires some prudence, however, to keep safe from the dissipation and taste for high play which prevails. The public buildings are well known. The church of St. Gudule contains much to interest travellers.

They left Brussels on the 17th, and proceeded by Tilemont and St. Tron to Liege. The country towards Brussels exhibits gentle declivities, prettily covered with woods and villages, with their church spires rising among the trees. As they approached Liege it appeared gradually to impoverish.

Liege, though a very ugly town, is finely situated on the Meuse. The narrow streets are crowded with manufacturers of fire-arms and of other articles, who get rich amidst their dirt. They dined, the second day, at Chaufontaine, a beautiful spot in the centre of well-clothed hills. The views in the neighbourhood, particularly that over an adjacent valley, are charming. In the evening they drove through an agreeable country, occasionally contrasted by barren heath, to Spa, having passed through a part of the petty territories, or manastery, of the prince of Stolvet,

velot, an ecclesiastic, with whom his subjects profess themselves satisfied. As they approached Spa they admired, by moonlight, its fine hills richly covered with trees. They took up their abode at the Hotel du Loup, a little discouraged, however, by that emblem of a voracious landlord. This place is yet very thin of company; the rooms are but little frequented: the gamblers can with difficulty draw a circle round their tables; they look very anxiously at strangers. The few French women who are here dance with great elegance: but play is the whole pleasure and business of the place; men, women and children are all caught by the phrenzy. They who repair here for health counteract the effect of their morning ride and salutary draughts of water, by late hours and ruffled passions. The fountains which issue out from amidst these stony hills are, certainly, very efficacious in many cases. Englishmen, returning from an Italian tour, visit them with great benefit; but one is apt to fancy, that when ladies, who are impatient to get their debits discharged by presenting their husbands with an heir, seek to promote parturition by bathing their feet in the waters of Sauvenier, they ascribe more virtues to them than they possess, though certainly they brace relaxed habits speedily.

They left Spa on the 26th, and quitting the territory of Liege, at Vervier, they travelled through a country, of which, the rich enclosed pastures and extensive views reminded them of Somersetshire. The latter part of their drive, at ten o'clock at night, was through a forest, where their lamps hardly afforded light enough to save them from being overtaken by the deep ruts of a heavy sandy soil.

When they arrived at Aix-la-Chapelle, they might have slept in their carriage, if their courier had not procured them lodgings at a private house; for, the king of Sweden being then there, not a room was disengaged at the inns, even for Englishmen, for whom room is always made, if possible.

This ancient town, which Charlemagne made the seat of empire on this side the Alps, and which continued so to be till the time of Charles the fifth, affords but few circumstances to interest the attention. The cabinet (a quatre portes) remains a monument of a silly dispute for national precedence. The dome of the cathedral, in which many emperors have been crowned, is supported by large pillars, brought from Constantinople.

From Aix-la-Chapelle they were conveyed slowly, by Juliers to Dusseldorf, by horses. The small, well-planted enclosures reminded them of England; they are not adorned, however, by the frequent neat houses which enliven our prospects. Dusseldorf derives an air of dignity from its palace and great church, though these buildings are not particularly distinguished for their style of architecture. The palace has the appearance of a deserted residence, and a solitary guard or two suggested the idea of departed magnificence. This place and its environs are not unpleasant. The river Dussel, from which the town takes its name, falls into the Rhine here, and flows with that river, in a respectable channel, through a cheerful country. The society of the neighbourhood is described as polished; but with French politeness has been introduced somewhat of French dissipation, among the higher ranks, who mix not with their inferiors. The style of living is not expensive. There is no tax, but a small land-tax, imposed by the three orders of the districts of Berg and Juliers, who assemble here to tax themselves.

The country between Cologne and Dusseldorf is flat. At Benrah, a few miles from Dusseldorf, they saw an elegant chateau of the elector, which, however, contains nothing remarkable, and is situated in gardens stiff and formal as art could make them. Cologne is finely situated for trade, which once flourished here. It was one of the Hanse-Towns, and a free city, and formerly contained 30,000 men,

and stood a siege of the whole empire. It is now badly governed: its corporation is rich; its trade and population are decayed; its streets and buildings are dirty and unimproved. The few Protestants who are here are not tolerated in their worship, but go to a church at Mulheim, six miles further in the palatinate: these, however, are the chief promoters of trade. The Romanists exhibit their dark cathedral, and numberless monasteries: live in poverty to support an overgrown ministry, not respectable for character; and tell their superstitious and childish stories of St. Ursula and her eleven thousand virgins, and of coach-houses that ran up into the garret of a man to punish his incredulity, with such trumpery tales as prove, that some of the inhabitants of Cologne are not wiser in their popular creed, than they were ten centuries ago.

Bonn is a fine town: the palace there has no uniformity of design: the chief facade is at one end: the gardens are gay, and decorated with espalier orange trees, and a variety of fine plants: the terraces in front commands, very beautifully, the bold sweeps of the Rhine, which, with the gradual declivities covered with castles and towers, and the lofty spiral tops of distant mountains, form a wonderful scene.

About four miles beyond Bonn they quitted the road, in order to visit a mineral spring not far distant, which is called Newth. It is situated amidst some beautiful hills, one of which are the picturesque ruins of an old castle. A good inn is established there; and the adjacent grounds are laid out, by the elector, with every attention due to nature. The water, which resembles that of Spa, though it is not so strong, is said to be very efficacious in similar cases.

From hence they drove through a most enchanting country by the side of the Rhine, between mountains perpetually varying and richly clothed.

The houses and frequent towns, delightfully situated, reflect a cheerful light from their white fronts and slated tops; and the patches of corn, intermixed with the vineyards, spread a glad appearance of plenty around them. A fine spiral hill crowned with a rocky, castle-like building, forms a noble object for many miles. The whole ride to Andernach is one of the most beautiful in Europe: it runs along a road which was made, as an inscription informed them, under the emperors Marcus Aurelius and Lucius Verus, in 162, and repaired and widened by Theodore, elector of Bavaria, in 1768. Here our travellers slept.

Andernach was one of the seven ports which Julian built after the destruction of the barbarians. From this town to Coblenz, the country is inferior only to that which they had passed the preceding day. The position of the city on the Rhine, at the mouth of the Moselle, is remarkably fine. The new part of the town is well built; the new palace is handsome, but the situation is by no means to be compared with that of the old one, which stood at the foot of the noble fortrefs of Eltrencherstein, facing the Moselle, which here pours its yellow stream into the Rhine, but is very inferior to the Thames. Of the Rhine one can never profess sufficient admiration; it has every beauty that poetical description hath attributed to it.

One wishes, it is true, to see more vessels on the Rhine; but its navigation is impeded by heavy and injudicious taxation. The current is likewise extremely rapid, and vessels ascend with the greatest difficulty; but large rafts of timber float down and give a peculiar character to the river.

Instead of proceeding by Mayence to Frankfort, they unfortunately took the road by Montabaur, Limbourg, and Konigstein, and were jumbled over a continuation of rocky stones, to the imminent hazard of dislocating their bones and breaking their carriage.

They were obliged to sleep at Konigstein at a wretched inn, which, however, they exchanged next morning

NG.

ELS

Genoa,

and 1792.

STE, Esq.

nction, who have

RELIGION, &c. of the
marks NEVER BEFORE

CK, Esq.

Ghent—Brussels—Liege—
Description thereof—Cologne—
Konigstein—Avice at Frank-
the Buildings—Mayence or
—Visit the Elector's Pa-
Description of this Town, &c.

per flag in their hats, like
natives of fools on our
carried one or two small
ed at the side.

ly considered as a most
e. Those who have in-
anks certainly experience
at lively and elegant so-
res some prudence, how-
dissipation and taste for
The public buildings are
of St. Gudule contains

17th, and proceeded by
to Liege. The country
entle declivities, prettily
llages, with their church
es. As they approached
to impoverish.

ly town, is finely situated
w streets are crowded with
nd of other articles, who
They dined, the second
autiful spot in the centre
views in the neighbour-
t an adjacent valley, are
they drove through an
ally contrasted by barren
d through a part of the
ery, of the prince of Sta-
velot,

morning for the red-house at Franckfort, one of the best in Europe. However, Franckfort affords little gaiety to the stranger except at a coronation, or during the time of the fair, when the mornings are enlivened by the bustle of business, and the evenings pass merrily in the relaxations of success and in the spirit of occasional indulgence. The chief street in the town is spacious; the buildings such as wealthy merchants should inhabit: but some of the houses are distinguished by painting and tallels embellishments. The town is well governed by its two burgomasters and knights. The adjacent dependencies, situated in a star plan, are marked out by four towers all visible at once. The town is said to contain thirty thousand inhabitants, Romanists, Lutherans, Calvinists, and Jews, all of which have now their places of public worship. The Lutheran spirit, however, prevails in the magistrature. The Romanists are not allowed to partake of the government, or to have a public procession of the host; and the Calvinists were, till lately, obliged to have their churches at Bochenheim, in Hanau. The Jews are rich, but are compelled, by an uncles and illiberal policy, to reside in a separate part of the town: in that oppressive spirit likewise with which they are every where marked out, they are obliged to fetch water to extinguish every fire that happens at Franckfort. The trade of this town, and indeed of Germany in general, is supposed to decrease, since the export of German commodities, through Franckfort, scarce amounts to a tenth of the imports from France, Holland, Italy, and other countries. The revenues, from custom and excise, and contribution levies, amount to above 30,000*l.* per annum.

Those who have introduction to the merchants of this town, may converse with men of enlarged and liberal minds. The great resort of strangers has introduced a frankness of manners; and the traveller easily finds persons as willing, as they are well qualified, to communicate information. He may amuse himself also at the cabinet literaire, which is well supplied with books and foreign papers. The people at present have no public amusement, but that of repairing to a kind of vaux-hall wood, down the Maine, where they divert themselves with more good-humour than elegance, particularly drinking, and dancing what they call the *walze*.

The Maine is not beautiful near Franckfort. The houses on its banks are too close to each other, and have no lawns or gardens descending to the river: they are built of wood or stone, and are slated; but bear no more marks of taste in architecture than those at Dulwich. The ramparts, as those of many other towns in Germany, are generally planted with lines, which finely scent the air: they afford pleasant walks to the inhabitants.

Our travellers visited Hesse-Cassel, which is about one hundred miles from Franckfort. They passed through some of the territories of the Landgrave of Hesse-Darmstadt, and arrived the first day at Marburg, formerly an Imperial town, but now subject to the prince of Hesse-Cassel.

It has but a mean appearance; it is irregular and built on a small eminence: the castle, which overtops it, is fast verging to ruin: it commands a view of a country somewhat wild and romantic: the surrounding hills are well varied and well wooded. The university here, though so near to Gottingen, flourishes. They look in vain, however, for college edifices, amidst the poor buildings of the town. Marburg derives no ornament from the river Lohne, on which it is situated. The waters of this stream, however, though not brilliant, furnish the largest cray-fish ever seen; and it is remarkable, that they continue black after they are boiled.

From Marburg to Cassel, the distance is about sixty miles, through a country well diversified. They noticed, amidst variety of vegetation, the beech and oak as very fine, and the weeping birch as remarkably elegant. The houses, scattered here

and there through the country, are built in a handsome style, with eaves and differently coloured beams, like those in Cheshire.

Cassel is a most beautiful town: it somewhat resembles Bath. They took up their abode in the circus: the public buildings are handsome, and have a classical appearance; the manege is light and elegant; the pavilion is built in a good style of architecture, and pleasantly situated in gardens perfumed and richly decorated with orange-trees; and enlivened by the cheerful notes of canary-birds, which fly wild and unconfined about them. The museum, which was built by the last landgrave, Frederick the second, to whom the town is indebted for many of its public ornaments, is a noble building: the library, a magnificent room, about five hundred feet long, and forty feet broad. The museum contains a valuable collection of antique gems and ornaments, stuffed beasts, statues, busts, cork models of buildings of Rome, &c. &c.

While they were at Cassel, they of course drove to see the Wäfen-Stein, where the present and preceding electors have expended very large sums, in covering a hill with castles, cascades, temples, woods, gardens, &c. The grounds are disposed with great taste; and an English park, with a few deer, is introduced to great advantage between the woods. The two buildings, in which the landgrave and his favorite counsellors reside, are elegant. With the Chinese village they found no fault; it is whimsical and pretty: but they were there also an apartment designed as a representation of Tartarus; the windows of which were inflated with stained glass, and which is filled with classical figures of Orpheus and Euridice, Pluto and Proserpine, Tantalus, and Ixion; the Danaides, Prometheus, Hercules, Cerberus, and other mythological personages, who may as well cease to exist except in poetical description.

They left Franckfort the day after their return from Cassel. The country improved in beauty as they approached Mayence, July 6, which is about twenty miles from Franckfort.

Mayence, or Mentz is finely situated on the confluence of the Maine and Rhine. The adjacent country is covered with vineyards, among which, not far distant, is the pleasant village of Hockheim, where the famous hock wine is produced, of which the Augulines of Mayence and Franckfort have the exclusive possession. Mayence, with its cathedral and palace, presents a grand appearance to the traveller, who approaches it by the road. They entered it by the bridge of boats, which extends about seven hundred and sixty-six feet across the Rhine. This river, however, is near fourteen hundred feet broad, where it receives the Maine, not far from the town.

The palace of Martinsburg, is a Gothic building of the fifteenth century. It contains several magnificent and well furnished apartments, which command a view of the Rhine, and the Rhindgau, but which exhibit but few pictures. The cathedral cannot be admired for its architecture, though the tower would be rather grand, if one could divest it of some trifling appendages, added by way of ornament. The foundations of the building were laid by Archbishop Conrade, in the twelfth century.

There are ten collegiate churches at Mayence, five convents for men and four for women, which are certainly sufficient in proportion to the number of inhabitants, which amount to thirty thousand. The nobility pique themselves much on the purity of their descent. The chapter preserves, in some measure, its freedom of election. It enjoys a revenue of near 300,000 guilders. The provost's house indicates the affluence of his situation: it is furnished with great splendour, and with more luxury of taste, some think, than becomes an ecclesiastic. The clergy, however, have established a good reputation here, by the propriety of their general conduct: and the late and present elector have laboured

ry, are built in a bal
ently coloured beams,

town: it somewhat re-
up their abode in the
are handsome, and have
manege is light and ele-
it a goo' style of archi-
ted in gardens perfumed
orange-trees; and enli-
of canary-birds, which
ut them. The museum,
andgrave, Frederick the
is indebted for many of
le building: the library,
live hundred feet long,
e museum contains a va-
e gems and ornaments,
cork models of build-

el, they of course drove
ere the present and pre-
ded very large sums, in
cascades, temples, wood;
s are disposed with great
with a few dret, is intro-
etween the woods. The
e landgrave and his favo-
rari. With the Chinese
it is whimsical and pic-
Ho an apartment deliged
artisans; the windows of
ained glass, and which is
f Orpheus and Euridice,
antalus, and Ixion; the
eracles, Cerberus, and
ages, who may as well
etical description.

ne day after their return
y improved in beauty as
July 6, which is about
ort.

inely situated on the con-
nd Rhine. The adjacent
eyards, among which, not
llage of Hockheim, where
produced, of which the
and Franckfort have the
yence, with its cathedral
and appearance to the tra-
y the road. They entered
which extends about leve-
t across the Rhine. This
urteen hundred feet broad,
staine, not far from the

urg, is a Gothic building of
t contains several mag-
artments, which command
the Rhindgau, but which

The cathedral cannot be
e, though the tower would
ould divelt it of some tri-
y way of ornament. The
g were laid by Archbishop
century.

e churches at Mayence, five
our for women, which are
oportion to the number of
t to thirty thousand. The
s much on the purity of
er preserves, in same mea-
tion. It enjoys a revenue
rs. The provost's house
his situation: it is furnish-
d with more luxuriance of
becomes an ecclethialic
ave established a good re-
propriety of their general
and present elector have
laboured

(Mode of BAPTISM, performed at RHEINBERG in GERMANY.



Engraved for PORTFOLIOS, from COLLECTIONS of VOYAGES & TRAVELS.

laboured very assiduously for their reformation, and have suppressed some monasteries, applying the buildings and revenues to good purposes. The education of the people has been also attended to; and the reading of the scriptures not discouraged. The nobility here live in great state. The narrow streets hardly allow a passage for the old dignified carriages.

In the summer the higher ranks quit Mayence for their small wooden houses, which are thrown picnically together, something in the Tunbridge-Wells style, about two or three miles from the town. Strangers, and particularly the English, are well received at Mayence, and obtain, without difficulty, admission to elegant society.

Leaving Mayence, they drove by Oppenheim to Worms, by the side of the Rhine, which spreads itself between banks fringed with verdure to the edge of the water: its sweeps are finely broken by islands. The neighbouring hills, however, are less rich than those they had seen before.

Manheim is a very beautiful town; it is fortified after Cohorn's manner: its streets are spacious and regular. The elector's palace is situated at the junction of the Rhine and Neckar: it has little exterior beauty of architecture, though it has the appearance of a palace. As the town has but little trade it suffers much from the absence of the court. The electress, as she is called, resides at Okerheim, which is a few miles only from Manheim: the elector, being of the Romish faith, prefers Munich, as he there resides among his catholics; for here, though some of the higher ranks profess the religion of the court, the bulk of the people has embraced the reformed principles; and the Calvinists have the largest portion of ecclesiastical property. The people at Manheim say, that the elector's confessor teaches him, that it is more meritorious to make heretics miserable than professors of the true faith: they seem, indeed, to have imbibed the democratical spirit; but it shews itself in too low and daring insolence to conciliate the higher ranks to its party. Political subjects, however, begin to be discussed, and the discussion will lead to the discovery of some subjects for discontent. The place swarms with refugee French; the Table D'Hotes resound with their noisy politics, upon which conversation is in vain prohibited.

Manheim itself contains near twenty-five thousand inhabitants, including a garrison of five thousand men. The situation of the town, which was built in opposition to Heidelberg, was injudiciously chosen: the water is very bad and unwholesome; and less advantage is derived from the neighbourhood of the Rhine than might have been expected: it is not even supplied with fish from it, the stream being too wide and too rapid for nets; and it is proverbially remarked at Manheim, that unless the land be deluged and damaged by inundations, the river is of no value.

After leaving Manheim, they stopped a few miles from the town to look at the elector's palace and gardens at Schweflingen: the palace is seldom thought worth the trouble of a visit; the gardens are large, and adorned with canals, orangeries, statues, fountains, hercæus, amorous neptunes, cupids riding on swans, flags, spouting water, &c. &c. very handsome to be sure; but considering that the elector seldom resides in this country, and has so many palaces, it is hardly worth while to spend 40,000 guilders every year to keep them up.

Instead of taking the Heidelberg road from hence, which would not have led them to deviate much from their route, they drove over a sandy country, through woods of fir, about thirty miles to Waghenfel; and had, for the first time, reason to complain of a German inn, Waghenfel being but a small village; they left it, however, early next morning, and drove over rich tobacco lands, and through delightful woods, to Carlshuhe, the chief residence of the margrave of Baden, whose beautiful territories run

along the Rhine to the borders of Switzerland, though separated by some intervening districts. This is a very neat town and constructed in a remarkable manner, since all the streets are terminated with a front view of the palace; and constitute, at it were, the radii of an half circle. The palace of Carlshuhe contains little deserving notice. Strangers, and particularly Englishmen, who stay any time at Carlshuhe, are usually invited to partake of the hospitality and cheerful pleasures of this court: they are received with much affability.

At Rastade, fifteen miles from Carlshuhe, they looked at another palace, where they saw nothing remarkable, except a cabinet of Turkish arms taken from the Turks about a century since, by an ancestor of the late margrave; and the room in which the treaty of Rastade was concluded, in 1714, by Villars and Eugene. From the top of this palace, which commands an extensive prospect, they discerned, at about ten leagues distance, the spires of Stralburg.

In their drive to Bune, which is about twelve miles distant from Rastade, they could not but remark, how much the character of this country must be changed: for though the hills are topped with ruined castles and broken walls, which add great beauty to the picturesque scenery of the country, where well wooded, pasture, and arable land, are delightfully intermixed, not a modern house, of appearance beyond a cottage, is to be seen. The people seem but thinly feathered: the women are here and in other parts of Germany the chief labourers; they appear to have great strength, and brawny limbs; they wear a very large straw hat, that is both parasol and parapluie; and exhibit under short petticoats, legs thick as any in Scotland, and as little adorned with shoes and stockings.

The country from Bune to Freiburg, in Brisgaw, which is about sixty miles further, is finely cultivated: the rising grounds are occasionally covered with vineyards; and the valley of Rinsing, which slopes from a fine chain of hills into rich meadows and pastures, is animated with cattle. They passed through some Imperial towns which profess the Romish faith; and others which are chiefly Lutheran.

Freiburg was formerly the residence of the bishops of Balle, who quitted it in 1551, when the canton of Balle joined in the Helvetic union. The cathedral is light and elegant, though disfigured by painting in the German taste.

After leaving Freiburg they discovered the snowy tops of the Swiss mountains. They remarked in yesterday's and this day's journey that many of the trees were dead, and found that they were destroyed by the severity of the winter preceding the last. The women of the country, between Freiburg and Balle, wear their hair bound fancifully enough with ribbon, though some prefer a small hat crimped up like a shrivelled mulhroom, which is very ugly.

They arrived, after a ride of about forty miles, at Balle, by six o'clock in the evening, or rather seven o'clock, reckoning by the clocks of Balle, which, for some reason not well remembered, are always an hour advanced. They took up their abode at les Trois Rois, as they style the three eastern sages. Their rooms overhung the Rhine, which ran rapid under their windows.

Balle has been filled with emigrants from France. It has no streets or buildings remarkable for beauty; a modern house or two, indeed, exhibit a style of architecture superior to the plain character of the rest of the town. The cathedral is chiefly remarkable for containing the tombs of Erasmus, and Gertrude, wife of the emperor Rhodolph the first: the ramparts are pleasant. Our travellers think the inhabitants of the town amount to about sixteen or seventeen thousand. The town appears, indeed, thin of inhabitants: the numbers decrease because the burghership is very rarely conferred on strangers. The manners of the people are plain and simple: there is no parade of equipage, no theatre, no bulle of business,

no throngs of idlers. The university at Balle does not flourish. The library here contains some antiques and some natural curiosities, with some fine pictures and drawings of Holbein, which are highly preserved, and shew the progressive improvement of his pencil: some of them were painted when he was in his sixteenth year.

They rode one evening to see the famous garden

at Arlesheim: it is composed of some pleasant walks, which ascend in a natural, easy manner through woods, on the side of a hill, and which open upon some fine points of view over Alsatia and the adjacent country. There are some well-contrived grottoes in the grounds; in one of which is a bold representation of a Resurrection, which is so contrived as to produce a great effect.

C H A P. II.

Entrée into Switzerland—Description of Stein—Lauffenburg—Havenstein—Coblentz—Dine at Lauchingen—Arrive at Schaffhausen—Its Aepulhan Appearance—The Fall of the Rhine—A Wedding—Sleep at Stuckbühl—Proceed to Munchbach—Island of Rübenau—Constance—Visit the Island of Meinau—Hof—Rothau—Convent of Mondrag—St. Gallens—Arrive at Glarus—Village of Gausse—Appenzel—Oberwald—Sennwald—Salitz—Herdenburg, &c. &c.—Baths of Pfejfer—Lake of Wallenstadt—Wisen—Panteburck—Lembal—Return to Glarus.

HAVING hired horses for their carriage, and bidets to ride, they left Balle July the 12th, and rode about six leagues by the side of the Rhine, to Stein, a village delightfully situated on that river. It is at the foot of some hills which command a delicious prospect. They ascended to the summit of one, which is distinguished by a projecting rock, and had a magnificent view of some hills richly clad, and of the river winding through a beautiful valley. At the first entrance into Switzerland they were struck with the greatness of the materials which nature has to work on.

The next day was appropriated to mark the rich volume of vapour rolling along the top of the hills, which gradually dispersed after a sultry morning, descending occasionally in light showers, between which the sun enlivened an enchanting country: they rode through woods of oaks, and spiry firs, by the foot of well planted hills. The Rhine has, indeed, more of the green than of the silver cast.

The majority of the towns through which they passed, after leaving Balle, belong to the emperor, whose territories skirt the frontiers of Switzerland: they stopped at Lauffenburg, which is about six miles from Stein, to look at its old castle, and a fall of the Rhine, which, pent up here in a narrow channel, throws itself precipitously over rocks, when it meets with resistance and foams in violent eddies with a boiling surface.

At no great distance from hence they stopped at Havenstein, and ascended a steep hill to examine the ruins of a castle which formerly belonged to the counts of Freiburg, and which was thrown down by an earthquake in 1456. As it is on the frontiers of Soleure and Balle, it was doubtless formerly a place of some importance. From its broken walls they had a pleasing view of the Rhine, and some neighbouring hills.

Having continued their ride by the banks of the Rhine, at the foot of sloping hills on which the vines climbed up, as it were, to meet the sun, they passed by Coblentz, a town of which the name, as well as that of Coblentz at the junction of the Rhine and Moselle, is descriptive of its situation, being derived from Confluentia, for here the Aar and another river bring their waters to increase the broad and rapid stream of the Rhine.

The road from Balle to Schaffhausen is more intertelling than travellers have in general reported. The cottages on the hills are certainly picturesque; they resemble those which may be seen in the neighbouring parts of Germany, being built of dark fir with projecting roofs. The dress of the men has an antique cast, they wear a kind of puffed Spanish breeches.

Our travellers dined at Lauchingen, which belongs to prince Schwartzenburg, and is on the verge of the Black Forest, which is the largest forest in Germany, and said to be sixty days journey in extent.

They arrived late at Schaffhausen, having deviated from their road to see the ruins of a very fine castle, situated on a lofty hill about two miles from Lauchingen; from whence they had a view of a vast circumference of country, of fields and mountains covered with snow.

Schaffhausen, the capital of the smallest canton in Switzerland, exhibits an appearance of republican equality. The houses are plain and somewhat dirty: there is no contrast of disproportionate splendour; no palace to excite the envy of the neighbouring buildings; on the other hand, there is no edifice for the stranger to admire; no monument for national vanity or taste to point out. The free states of antiquity, long before the private citizen was well lodged, erected public edifices with emulation of ornament; and republics, as well as monarchies, had magnificent baths, theatres, and temples. The genius of Switzerland is different: the Swifs are not rich; they are fond of simplicity, and consider, with a jealous eye, whatever indicates the approach of luxury and foreign taste. The fortrefs, and the curious bridge by Uric Grabeman, of Tuffen, were the only public works that attracted attention.

The first object, after their arrival at Schaffhausen, was to see the fall of the Rhine, whether they drove as soon as the weather, then rainy, would permit. Descriptions of such scenes are always faint: something, however, may be attempted. The whole river, after rippling and foaming over several feathered breakers, runs, by different channels, against some beautiful rocks which rise several feet from the water, covered with shrubby wood: beat back from these it rushes round, and by three grand openings precipitates its fall, in accumulated masses, for fifty or sixty feet perpendicular, raging and foaming with wonderful violence, and throwing up a thick dust and shower of spray. In the view from the front, as the banks approach in the perspective, the river appears almost surrounded by a fine amphitheatre of hills richly covered with trees. After viewing it at the bottom of the descent, and looking up at its arched fall, and after contemplating its broad and magnificent front from the beach, they crossed over in a little boat to the castle of Janssen, in which a bailiff, from Zurich, resides. From the room there, which overhangs the cataract, they saw the river, under different circumstances, spreading into great variety of surface before its fall: in some parts gliding smooth and transparent over polished and rounded swellings of rocks, in others, broken, snawy, and unequal, till it rushes headlong down its deep descent. They wished to contemplate this amazing fall in every point of view, and therefore descended to the planks and beach beneath it, and were covered by its spray and stunned by its noise.

They wished to have proceeded to the Benedictine convent, on the banks of the Rhine, but the evening began to close, and their minds were filled

The present prince, however, has conciliated the people by his conduct.

They arrived at Glarus on the 26th. The guide whom they hired at St. Gall, who was a ragged cheerful fellow, conducted them through a wild and romantic country to Gaisfe, their road winding round the edges of hills, the sides and the bases of which were covered with lofty and alpiring firs.

Gaisfe is a village of Rhodes Exterior, which is the Protestant division of the county of Appenzel. The neighbouring hills are naked of trees, but covered with wooden houses, roofed with polished fir, cut like shingles, which are remarkably neat. These houses belong chiefly to the millin manufacturers, who enjoy competence and liberty on their healthy mountains. Each house is surrounded by its little territory; and every hill, in spite of the natural poverty of the soil, is animated with population.

The village of Gaisfe is as much resorted to as Aberystwyth in Wales, for the benefit of drinking the goat's whey, which is brought every morning from a neighbouring mountain, and which is considered as very efficacious in purifying the blood. It is supposed to derive its medicinal qualities from some very salutary herbs on which the goats browse. The place is much frequented about the time of Easter.

After dinner they walked about two miles to the brow of a hill, from which they had a grand rude prospect of some frowning mountains, at the bottom of which the Rhine winds foggily through a black valley. On their return they were led, by people who had never witnessed the triumph of a London porter, to see a blacksmith, who drew from his furnace, wit'out assistance, a Roan, weighing 112 pounds, to a distance of several feet. As they could procure but four horses at St. Gall, their guide was under the necessity of walking, and he carried their pommanture with great cheerfulness, rather than suffer it to load one of the horses. In these hilly countries the pediculation may beat the Turkman; they outged their servant, however, occasionally to rest on his horse and exchange gaites.

In the evening they proceeded through fine well watered pastures to Appenzel, which is a city little town for the metropolis of a canton, and affords but miserable accommodation: it is situated in a hollow bottom beneath some shaggy mountains. They disliked their mill man, and forsook it for a worse, being obliged to stop in a room where some were in bed, and a party playing at questions and commands, and singing, in a lye, however, which their guide, who was very lascivious, treated with great contempt; they could by no means persuade him to join in their mirth, but he diverted our travellers with many lively tales on their amusements, which he lyled calkish and low. The gradations of concert are curious. The supercilious pride of their guide would have been probably softened, if the women, who joined in the party had been more pleasing.

They were much struck with the difference, which they beheld, between the two divisions of this country. In the Protestant part they admired cleanliness, industry, and comfort. In the Roman-Catholic, they saw dirt, indolence, and poverty. The people about Appenzel have much of the roughness of a republican spirit.

They left Appenzel early next morning without regret, and rode through narrow paths by the side of the river Suler, a shallow stream which ripples over a stony bed. They looked at the Wullen bath, where they tasted the strong goat's milk, which is esteemed almost equally with that of Gaisfe, and saw some invalids established in hot baths. The mineral waters, which flow from all the neighbouring hills, are used with success in nervous and gouty cases. From this place they toiled up an enormous mountain, to an hermitage, the object of the devotion from their road. One of our travellers more brave than the rest, who successively declined the enterprise, though

they ascended high enough to enjoy a fine view of the lake of Constance, and to see an hermit who has lived there in penitential restrictions for eighty years, pulled by a narrow projecting edge of the rock, holding by a rope, which some friendly attention had fixed in the side, to the hermitage, where he tolled the bell to announce his arrival. Having examined the chapel, which has an altar with tumpetry decorations, dawkings, and inscriptions, he looked into some dark caverns and excavations, in which the peasants, who reside on the top of the mountain, keep their milk. He afterwards passed through an opening of the rock, from one of the caverns, and crawled up the steep rocky side of the mountain. Having at length, with great labour, attained the brow, as he hastened to the summit he saw a thick mill surround the whole circle, and shut up the grand and extensive prospect, of which he had leave caught a glimpse.

The mill continued impenetrably thick while he stayed. He was soon surrounded by some mountaineers, of whose jargon he could understand nothing but that they wanted money, which he thought it prudent to give them. After examining a great cleft in the mountain, which contained a large quantity of snow that has probably remained there for many years, he began to descend; the fearless boy who conducted him, went on with the confidence and activity of a mountain goat, by a route different from that by which they had ascended: our traveller relying on his knowledge, followed him some yards, though under the necessity of descending on his side, and of holding by bars of rock, sensible of infallible death if he should once lose his hold. They soon arrived at a steep ridge of snow, hanging over a perpendicular precipice, which the boy was preparing to pass; he could see nothing, however, by which he could possibly keep himself from falling, and therefore mistled, very vehemently, on the boy's reason, though it was with some difficulty that he could communicate his orders to his German companions by signs and gesticulations; they again, however, mounted with much toil, and the boy at last conducted him by a less tremendous, though very precipitous path. They passed through a wood of firs; and while he was clinging, with apprehension, to the friendly roots and rocks, in a descent often perpendicular, the boy was rambling on all sides for wood lawberries, with which he refreshed our traveller, who, after some hours, arrived safe and joined his companions, who had been much alarmed on his account.

They set off again in the evening with an additional guide, who was judged necessary: he had the behaviour of an honest man, a character to which the men of Appenzel are not always entitled. They travelled about 8 or 9 miles of the stiel road, without any exception, that was ever passed: it lay chiefly through woods; the worst parts of the worst roads seemed to have been compiled together. They had stones at once sharp and slippery, mud and clay, steep ascents and headlong descents, uneven flairs formed by trunks of fir placed laterally, often broken or sunk irregularly, and gaping with muddy crevices. Thanks, however, to their cautious and experienced horses, they arrived safe, and before dark, at Oberried, a small Roman-Catholic village in the Rheinthal. The last part of their ride was by the side of the Rhine, which runs through the valley that they overtook the day before in their walk from Gaisfe. The valley is little adorned by vegetation, but it is enlivened by small cottages encircled by fields. They seemed to excite much attention in the village; the children followed them in crowds.

They left Oberried the next morning, and rode about twelve miles to Weidenburg, through a broad willow valley, sometimes by the side of the Rhine, which, as they mount towards its source, flows in a contracted and stony bed. The hills, near which they rode, are covered with fine pasture, bounded towards the summit with firs. Above the firs they

to enjoy a fine view of
to see an hermit who has
tractions for eighty years.
edge of the rock, holding
y attention had fixed in
here he tolled the bell
iving examined the cha-
trumpety decorations,
e looked into some dark
which the peasants, who
untain, keep their milk.
ugh an opening of the
ons, and crawled up the
tain. Having at length,
e brow, as he hastened
mill furround the whole
l and extensive prospect,
at a glimpse.

penetrably thick while he
ounded by some moun-
ould understand nothing
which he thought it pru-
examining a great cleft in
ined a large quantity of
named there for many
the fearless boy who
with the confidence and
y, by a route different
ascended; our traveller
ollowed him some yards,
of descending on his side,
ack, sensible of insupport-
se his hold. They soon
ward, hanging over a
which the boy was pre-
nothing, however, by
ep himself from falling,
vement, on the boy's
some difficulty that he
s to his German concep-
ions; they again, how-
toil, and the boy at last
remendous, though very
assed through a wood of
ging, with apprehension,
cks, in a descent often
rambling on all sides for
ck, he reflected our tra-
s, arrived safe and joined
een much alarmed on his

evening with an additional
essay: he had the beha-
character to which the men
entitled. They travelled
a steepest road, without any
ed: it lay chiefly through
the worst roads seemed to
her. They had stones at
nd and clay, steep ascents
uneven flairs formed by
lly, often broken or sunk
with muddy crevices.
cautious and experienced
and before dark, at Ober-
ic village in the Rheimthal.
le was by the side of the
ugh the valley that they
in their walk from Gail-
ed by vegetation, but it is
ages encircled by fields.
much attention in the vil-
d them in crowds.

the next morning, and rode
rdenburg, through a broad
s by the side of the Rhine,
wards its source, flows in a
d. The hills, near which
ish fine pasturage, bounded
his. Above the first they
see

see the barren rock often tipped with snow. The
short grafs of the Swiss mountains affords as fine feed
for cattle as the celebrated pasturage of Mount Libanus,
or the Calltravan hills. The lower parts, how-
ever, of the mountain are now deprived of the
ornament of cattle, which is driven in the summer
to feed on the summit.

They passed through the village of Sennwald and
that of Salitz, where baron John Philip was mur-
dered by his nephew George Ulric, in 1596.

Werdenburg is pleasantly situated amidst well
clothed hills: at the foot of Schloburg there is a
castle of a bailiff of the canton of Glarus. They
began to remark some strong symptoms of poverty
in this part of Switzerland. From Werdenburg they
had a most beautiful ride of four or five leagues, to
Ragatz, passing through Sargans, a small village on
the Rhine, near which, most romantically situated on
a rock, stands the bailiff's castle, which was formerly
the residence of the counts of Werdenburg Sargans,
and has more of the dignity and style of an ancient
castle than any yet seen in Switzerland. Opposite
to Sargans, on the German side of the river, is another
castle, which commands a narrow defile leading into
the Meyenfeld. The mountains on each side of the
Rhine are beautifully covered with trees and houses
at an immense height. They slept at Ragatz, which
is situated on the Tamina, a river which frequently
overflows the country when swelled by dissolved
snows, or hurried beyond its banks by sudden tor-
rents.

The next morning they proceeded to walk to
Pfeiffer; they toiled up a steep hill: the day was
excessively hot. One of our adventurers having
arrived at the top, walked into the convent, and
entered into conversation with one of the monks,
who introduced him to the superior; he invited him
to dine with him, which our hero did, in his apart-
ment, with one of the monks and some gentlemen
from Zurich. The superior is a titular prince of the
empire, intelligent and well bred. As our traveller
did not understand German, their conversation was
carried on in Latin, in which they mutually regretted
the difference of accent. After coffee, and a good
concert, in which several of the monks performed,
our hero took leave of his hospitable friends,
having had no time to see the library. Willing to
join his fellow-travellers he proceeded to the baths of
Pfeiffer, which is about a league from the convent.
He descended by the brink of a tremendous chasm,
and down a perpendicular passage cut into flairs, to
the baths, where his friends had dined in company
with some monks of the convent of Pfeiffer and Di-
fendis, who furnished them with introductory letters
to the different convents which they projected to
visit. These letters were written in Latin, and with
a conciseness not inelegant.

They were tempted here to visit the source of the
hot water which supplies the baths; and having pro-
cured a conductor, began the dangerous journey.
After entering a frightful cleft of the rock, which
admitted a feeble light to direct them, they walked
about half a mile on boards attached to the side of
the rock, often sloping and slippery, and sometimes
placed so distant from the side, that they had no
support from it. Below them, about fifty feet, at
the bottom of a deep rocky channel, roared a rapid
river burling through a very narrow passage. If
their feet had slipped they were inevitably lost.
When they arrived at the end they saw ~~but~~ to
repay them for the risk which they had incurred;
a gush of water, of about thirty degrees of heat,
issuing from the rock. They were soon fatigued, and
returned from the dripping rock as expeditiously as
the danger would admit. They staid to look at the
company, some of whom had a more respectable ap-
pearance than any persons whom they had yet seen:
they were variously engaged; some were at the Ro-
mish chapel, some bathing, and others dining or
playing at billiards; the amusements of a Romish

Sunday. As these people supped at the primitive
hour of six, our travellers were persuaded to stay, and
afterwards returned to Ragatz by a different but
equally beautiful walk, though their Swiss servant,
who is ever attentive, had contrived to bring horses,
in case they should choose to ride.

Having, from apprehension of want of time,
relinquished their projected scheme of visiting the
sources of the Rhine, and given up, with regret,
the prospect of the Grisons, any further than the peep
which they obtained from Pfeiffer, they set off very
early next morning, and rode twelve miles in the
shadow of some beautiful hills very richly adorned,
and sprinkled with a variety of the most picturesque
houses and villages, to Wallenfadt, on the approach
to which, the lake of Wallenfadt opened most eleg-
antly between the hills.

The village of Wallenfadt is situated at the eastern
end of the lake, in the bailliage of Sargans, at the
foot of the Seven-headed Mountain, the rocky tops
of which are called the Seven Princes. The lake
has decreased and retired from the village. After
walking to a curious spring not far from the village,
they intended, in the evening, to go by water to
Wesen, but suddenly a storm was introduced by a
violent wind, which, in a few minutes, transformed
the smooth mirror-like lake, which had just before
reflected the bright rays of the sun, into an outrageous
sea, on which it would have been very dangerous to
embark. The inn-keeper at Wallenfadt having
made our travellers a most exorbitant charge, had
the insolence, on their remonstrating with him, to set
them at defiance, though he could not but admit that
the charge was extravagantly high. It was vain to
dispute, for as he himself was the advover of the
town, there was no one to whom they could apply for
redress. They therefore paid the unjust extortion,
and ordered their horses; but their host, who had
been offended by their complaints of his injustice,
had seduced their guide to refuse to accompany them
any further by land, unless they would submit to an
additional charge of twelve livres for this day, under
pretence of bad roads. As they had consented to
take this man further, at his own particular request,
and had hitherto found him a civil honest fellow,
they were as much surpris'd as provoked at this; and
their good Swifs was so hurt at the treatment which
they experienced, that he vented his feelings in tears.
Resolved not to consent to this unreasonable demand,
they paid the man for the days that he had travelled
with them, and set off, determined to walk from the
inhospitable house. The storm, however, coming
on violently with thunder, lightning, and heavy rain,
compelled them to take shelter under the hange-
work of the bridge, close to the village. In the
mean time their guide repented of his conduct, came
to them, confessed his fault, and earnestly, with tears
of repentance, entreated to proceed with them: to
which, after much solicitation, they consented. The
evening and the scheme brightened, and they again
set off; the guide amused them on their way with
exclamations against his own ingratitude, and the
rascally arts of their landlord.

They travelled slowly, between two or three leagues,
to a small village on the lake, called Mullhorn,
having passed over a somewhat dangerous road, with
frequent ascents and descents, at the edge of holes
and precipices, sometimes creeping along a shelving
bank close to the lake, meeting occasionally the mules
of the Milanese and other Italian merchants, which,
with their projecting baggage and unaccommodating
manners, produced disagreeable encounters on nar-
row banks. These merchants bring coffee, choco-
late, sugars, and spices, to exchange for the muffins
of St. Gall, Zurich, &c.

The lake of Wallenfadt assumes somewhat of a
solemn cast from the black and gloomy mountains
which overshadow its surface. Those to the north
are lofty and steep, and descend rapidly, often to the
brink of the water. In some parts narrow slips of

fields skirt the edge, and occasional platforms project into the lake, with houses accessible only from the water. The southern side, along which they passed, is enlivened by pastures, woody walks, and cottages with gardens. The lake is not broad; it opens into a variety of striking points of view: it is subject to very sudden changes, and is, in many places, rendered dangerous by lurking rocks; they paddled upon it in the evening, and admired "its dark billowy bays." A kind of diurnal monsoon prevails on this lake; the wind generally blows from east to west from the break of day: for some hours, and afterwards from west to east till sun-set.

Next morning they went by water from Mullhorn to Wefen; it rained hard during their voyage, and they covered themselves with the sail. When the watermen foresee a squall, which their long wooden boats are ill calculated to encounter, they put in, as they did once or twice, and shelter themselves under cavities of the rock.

Some beautiful waterfalls glide from the mountains, which rise on each side of this lake, often falling in a fine silvery stream. Wefen is elegantly situated at the bottom of the lake, near where the Linth, or Linmat, which joins the lake of Zurich with that of Wallesell-dt, falls into the latter. The chief lakes in Switzerland are so connected together that they facilitate the communication between different parts, and afford opportunities for inland intercourse, very important in a country distant from the sea, and of which the rivers can be of no use to navigation unless they should be hereafter employed to supply canals. The Swiss manufactures are chiefly exported by land, as well those which go to Franckfort and Leipzick, as those which are conveyed to France and Italy.

Wefen is in the bailiage of Galler, which belongs to the canton of Schwetz and Glarus; it was formerly fortified: from thence they walked about two miles to Mollis, where the brave Glaronnois, who were killed at the battle of Nafels, were buried. Nafels is not far distant; they saw it as they passed from Wefen. The Glaronnois fought for liberty from advantageous posts on their mountains, and lost but fifty-five out of three hundred and eighty men, contending against thirteen thousand or fifteen thousand Austrians, of whom they killed one hundred and eighty-three nobles and gentlemen, and two thousand five hundred soldiers. The battle happened in 1388, and is commemorated by a procession, on the first Thursday in April in every year. Here their horses, which had been sent round from Mullhorn, joined them. Their guide arrived still trembling; and they were informed by him and the servants, that as they were leading the horses over the mountains, by a very horrible road, his horse slipped and fell from a dreadful height; the guide, who had not presence of mind to loose the bridle, jumping with it: they must then have fallen into the lake had they not been stopped by trees. It providentially happened that neither man nor horse were hurt. Admitting that the man's fears exaggerated the distance, it is certain, from the servant's evidence, that they must have fallen at least forty feet.

Having mounted their horses, they proceeded about a league further to Glarus, passing by the side of the Linth, admiring the wild character of the country and the grand rocky mountains that faced them. Glarus, which at a distance seems important, when seen in conjunction with another town, called Schwanden, dwindles as they approach, to its own dimensions; and though it makes a better appearance than Appenzel, is but a paltry place as the metropolis of a canton. It is inhabited by persons of both communions, who use the church in common. The Romanists of the canton in general do not amount to above an eighth part of the number of the Protestants.

As, after visiting Pantenbruck, they meant to return to Glarus, they set off the evening of the

same day, and rode through a wild romantic valley to Linthal, three leagues further. The Linth flows with a full whitened stream, which derives its force and colour from melted snow. The valley flourished with the vegetation of Summer, while the mountains were clad in the horrors of Winter. The canton of Glarus is composed of three of these valleys, separated by mountains from each other: they are cultivated to their utmost fertility, but cannot support their inhabitants, who wander as soldiers, or in search of employment into commercial countries. The government of the canton is democratical; and both sects are admitted to the direction of affairs, with some preference, as to duration, in favour of Protestants. Four or five thousand assemble once a year, at Glarus, for tumultuary elections and Babylonian eloquence; and both communions assemble separately for their respective affairs. They arrived late at Linthal, having passed through several villages, and crossed many fir bridges, and were obliged to call up the inn keeper, who is of the council. He gave them some good trout, which are always to be found at most of the Swiss inns; and some indifferently beds, with pully eddy down coverlets. They first noticed here a watchman; and found, on inquiry, that watchmen are employed, in most parts of Switzerland, to give an alarm in case of fire, which, in these wooden villages, would produce rapid destruction.

They rode, next morning, three or four miles further, between wild mountains which closely approach each other, from which descended some very beautiful cataracts; they admired one especially towards the end of the valley, which fell very elegantly, shooting its white foam like an inverted icy-rocket; when seen from the side, it appeared frequently to strike again and bound from the rocky furrow which it had made. The mountains from which the torrents pour have often large lakes at their summits, which furnish admirable fish.

The chamoises are pursued by the huntsmen, from rock to rock, particularly on the Freyberg mountains, near the foot of which they slept. They go in flocks, polling one as a sentinel, who lisses when he hears "the approach of hostile foot." The people, who have sometimes seen their picturesque forms suspended as it were from the side of the mountains, describe them as hanging by the horns from the rock. The cottages, which are of a dark walnut colour, have projecting roofs which hang over to protect them from the snow: their appearance accords well with the scenery of the country; and when seen at a distant height on the mountains has a very peculiar effect. Stones are placed on the roofs to save them from being carried away by the storms of the Winter. Winter, amidst these mountains, must be awful: their lofty summits exclude the sun, except for a few hours, in the longest days of Summer.

They left their horses at the end of the dark shadowy valley, and went on foot, through a forest, about a mile, by a very steep ascent, to Pantenbruck, which is a narrow bridge that overhangs a fearful chasm, at the bottom of which the Linth rushes impetuously. The source of this river is about three or four leagues further in the mountains that form the rude barrier and boundaries of this canton, separating it from Uri, and the Grey League, a division of the Grisons. The valleys of Switzerland often run parallel, and, by crossing the mountains, a short passage may be obtained from one to the other. As they had seen Pfeiffer, the chasm and rush of water here did not astonish them so much as it may have done other travellers; but the surrounding scenery struck them by its grand and rude character. After dining at Linthal, on boiled goat's flesh, nearly as good as mutton to hungry appetites, they returned to Glarus in the evening.

C H A P. III.

Departure from Glarus—Dine at Oberbilten—An agreeable Ride—Einsidlin and its Abbey—Reach L'Epée—The rapid Linmat—Zurich—Proceed to Albis—Zug—Continue their Walk—Conducted by a Peasant to Schweitz—Walk to Brunnen—William Tell's Chapel—Steig—Walk through Ursfield to Wasen—the Devil's Bridge—Urfesen—Further Rambles—Dine at Altdorf—Two Female Companions admitted into their Boat—Land at Lucerne—Remarks—Ceremony of two Girls taking the Veil—Proceed to Baden—Schinznach—Arau Solcure Klendbenk—Arrive at Berne—Description of the Town.

OUR travellers left Glarus on the 28th of July, and having passed through Næfels, and other small villages, dined at Oberbilten, which is nine miles from Glarus, at the sign of St. Fridolin, who is the patron saint of the district. They had an agreeable ride of six leagues, in the evening, partly by the side of the lake of Zurich, of which they had a fine view from a mountain, before they reached Einsidlin, looking down upon Rapperschwyl, the isle of Ufnau, &c. The effects of the devotion of the neighbourhood were visible before they arrived at the abbey of Notre Dame des Hermites, particularly in an handsome church at Lachen.

Einsidlin has an important appearance as approached by a wide plain, situated between lofty mountains, whose distant summits are covered with snow. The town is built on the river Sihl, in the canton of Schweitz. The abbey was rebuilt in 1725: the church is a sumptuous edifice; the walls are hung, at the first entrance, with votive tablets, made for deliverances by sea and land, attributed to the miraculous assistance of the virgin: they are painted with more piety than skill.

After dinner they were shewn the sacerdotal vestments elaborately worked and adorned, and the riches and relics of this establishment, by a very assiduous and complimentary conductor. In the evening they set off. All the surrounding country is covered with chapels, sanctuaries, and hermitages, at which pilgrims respectfully stop. They rode by the side of the lake, which, though it has not the bold and magnificent breadth of that of Constance, is enlivened on each side by a continued succession of neat and cheerful villages with white houses. As they were now about to part with their guide, who had accompanied them from St. Gall, and behaved well since they left Wallentadt, he expressed great regret at being obliged to leave them. They got to L'Epée in good time, where they found their servants and carriage safe.

The rapid Linmat is a beautiful clear river. Zurich is charmingly situated on this river, where it runs from the lake. The town has no streets that are regular or well built: the suburbs, towards the lake, are improved by some modern buildings; the environs are very beautiful, and the banks of the lake and the Linmat are covered with houses, many of which are the country seats of the gentlemen of Zurich; these derive their chief beauty from their situation, having nothing that corresponds with the European pleasure-gardens. Though the town has no buildings distinguished for their beauty of architecture, it has every edifice of importance to the welfare of the people. The town-house is large and commodious; the granary is well conducted, and, in times of scarcity, alleviates the public distress: the arsenal seems well provided with arms: Les Orphelins, a charitable institution for the children of the citizens, and which contains from eighty to one hundred, who are educated, and, at fifteen, are apprenticed to different trades, is well supported. The Swiss have neither the inclination or the power to expend money in superfluous edifices. Their houses are furnished with simplicity, and very little ornament; their carriages are for convenience, and chiefly open; their possessors are not permitted to use them in town; their servants seldom wear livery; and there is but little appearance of those refinements, which are too often the indication of

corruption of manners. The dress of the higher ranks is extremely plain: black is the full dress; and the men, who are in any department of government, wear swords. The dress of the women is unbecoming; on Sundays they wear black in the morning, and colours in the evening; the hair is dressed in the French and English fashion, but with a loose and ill-shaped negligence, appearing what is vulgarly called blowzy; their shapes are not advantageously displayed, nor do they exhibit any of that flowing and graceful drapery which gives to the lengthened and picturesque forms of Reynolds and Bunbury, the elegance of the Grecian figure: their squat and unfeminine monsters of shoes seem manufactured for downright walking, not to bend with supple pliancy in the dance, or to draw attention in the succession of the well directed steps. The strangers who resort here begin to sap a little the simplicity of manners which prevails, by the introduction of foreign luxuries; they intermix indeed, but seldom, with the natives in convivial intercourse.

The ministry is supported with suitable maintenance at Zurich, and the people seem to profit at least by its moral instructions, being celebrated for their integrity and worth. The library is open, upon very liberal terms, to the public.

August 2, they left Zurich, and strolled about eight miles through a charming variety of hill and dale, to Albis, where they slept at a tolerable house. The next morning a misty rain deprived them of their prospect from the hill, on which they slept. It did not prevent them, however, from renewing their walk, through a fertile country, to Zug. They found fruit-trees and fountains the whole way. Zug is situated on the lake of that name. In the evening they continued by the side of the lake, for about three leagues, under fine beach woods which adorn its banks, and in which they heard the frequent sound of the woodman's axe, without any sorrowful reflections that the trees were to be indiscriminately felled to pay the debts of the gambler or the spendthrift. The cultivated fields which border on the lake, and the well-wooded promontories which project into the water and form beautiful bays, finely embellish the scenery. The houses are but few; some vineyards occasionally descend to the edge of the water, and are trained sometimes to twine over roofs of wood which overhang the paths.

They stopped for a short time at a small village in the canton of Schweitz; at the bottom of this there is a capuchin convent, of which, the houses are fantastically painted, some of them with sketches of the Dance of Death. They then continued their walk among the echoing caverns of a sequestered valley, and by the side of another lake till they were overtaken by darkness, and wandered for some hours without the glimmering of a single star to direct their weary steps in security. Towards midnight they met a peasant returning home, whom they persuaded to conduct them to Schweitz, where they at length rested, as well as if they had arrived with a chaise and four and half a dozen attendants.

On leaving next morning this metropolis of the canton, which has nothing remarkable in its appearance but a handsome church, they walked about a league, to Brunnen, a village situated on the lake des Quatre Villes Forelales. Here they engaged a boat to convey them to Fluelen, which is three Stunden, or three hours row from Brunnen.

The lake of the four cantons here is not very broad; it is enclosed with lofty steep rocks, on some of which are houses and chapels, built like the religious edifices of ancient times, on high places, and beautifully surrounded with groves of wood.

They stopped to look at William Tell's chapel, which is painted with some sketches of the history of that hero and patriot, and landing at Fluelen, which is the little port and repository of the Italian merchandize, they walked a short mile to Atdorf, the capital of Uri, situated in the valley of the Reufs. It is almost surrounded by dark steep mountains covered with gloomy trees, which throw a solemn shade over the town. The firs of Mount Bänberg, which rise immediately above it, shelter the houses from injury from the snow or falling rocks. The whole neighbourhood has a serious character. There are many churches and chapels on all sides; one of the latter is erected on the spot where William Tell is said to have been born. The town has no better appearance than a market town in England: the Maison de Ville, if it may be dignified by that appellation, is daubed with some historical paintings, relative to the exploits of William Tell, who is said to have shot the apple from his son's head in this town.

After dinner they continued their walk about nine miles, to Steig, through the valley of Reufs, along which the snow-muddied river runs shallow in a rapid and rocky channel. The rivers in Switzerland, like those in Scotland, are not often fit for navigation; they feed the lakes, however, and might feed canals. The valley, through which they passed, is enclosed by fine dark mountains, overpread with solemn firs.

The valleys in Switzerland are very romantic; in the midst of which flows the river Pencus, swelled by other streams that fall into and increase its current. The rocks here are overhadowed, and often almost concealed by the mantling shrubs and herbs that spread their foliage around them; and amidst these burst out frequent fountains, from which cool and pleasant waters flow. The valley of the firs excels, however, those of Switzerland, in the number and variety of musical birds. In Switzerland no birds are to be seen, except sometimes a fine eagle soaring above the tops of the loftiest mountains; for as every one has a gun, the feathered race is shewn no quarter, each man seeking for objects on which to exercise his skill.

August 5, they walked three leagues through Ursfeld, to Wafen, where the valley of Meyen opens, through which the Meyen pours its impetuous waters to join the Reufs. As they advanced through this beautiful and extraordinary valley, the mountains often advanced near each other: they were covered with remarkably straight and flatly firs, which seemed to rise out of the bare rocks. Some of them were cut down and laid by the side of precipices as a security to the traveller, who would else reel with giddiness, as he passed along the narrow edge of the path. The Meyen abounds with crystal, of which the poor children offer bits to passengers for sale.

After leaving Wafen they began to ascend the barren valley of Schoellenen. The scenery became more rude and rocky; the firs disappeared, and they saw only some scanty grass fringing the edges of the rocks. The valley was strewn with huge fragments of broken granite rock, which often dilapidated and falls, with a thundering noise, from the mountains. After ascending about a league and a half they passed the Devil's Bridge, which overhangs a chasm that would appear tremendous, to those who had not seen that of Pfeifers, or Pautenbruck. Just above it rises a torrent of foaming water: near this place, opposite to a little chapel and between two torrents, they saw men half way down the mountain, on a rock apparently perpendicular, on which they were turning some scanty grass. They should have conceived it impossible for goats to stand on the steep slippery side.

Every spot which has an inch of soil on these mountains, is cultivated with laborious industry. Animated by freedom and independence, the people draw out fertility from the rock: and happy in their well-earned competence, they would fight, as they have often fought, for their barren and scanty possessions, with as firm and invincible a courage as if they contended for the rich plains of Italy. After having crossed the Reufs, at the Devil's Bridge, they passed through Underloch, a passage of two hundred and twenty feet in length, cut through a granite rock in 1707. This opens into the valley of Urseren, which spreads into wide pastures, in which Urseren appears cheerfully with its back ground of firs. It is watered by two streams. Urseren is a small common-wealth under the protection of Uri, and well secured by its enclosing mountains. They dined in this valley, at Hospital, which is about four leagues from Wafen. The whole way, indeed, since they left Zurich, they had great reason to be satisfied with the small inns, in which they experienced better accommodations than these mountainous and sequestered villages might be expected to supply; and though they paid but as foot passengers, were treated with such attention and kindness, as a display of riches would not elsewhere procure. The manners of the people are simple and friendly, and their reception and treatment that of liberal hospitality, not of mercenary contrivance.

They were now within three leagues of St. Gothard, and feeling themselves but little fatigued, they mounted, by no very violent ascent, through wild and desolate scenes of naked rock, by the side of the Reufs, till they reached its source in a lake, in the large crater at the summit, at which they arrived about eight o'clock, as the night, encompassed by a thick fog, was rolling towards them.

The next morning, after a good night's rest, in beds which were not had though they had no curtains, and were in rooms of which the bare walls had no ornament but a few prints of the Virgin. They descended, in about two hours, to Hospital, and in the evening continued their walk to Steig, over loose stones, which sorely battered their feet in the descent, but which could not prevent them from again admiring the shivered rocks with firs opening from the clefts; the torrents which freshened the air of an hot evening, and the paths which wind under noble rocks and firs. They crossed the river several times, as it afforded a narrow way, on either side, between its channel and the base of the mountains.

They slept again at Steig, and dined next day at Atdorf, and afterwards took a boat at Fluelen, for Lucerne, admitting two women who petitioned for a passage. After again admiring the hills that border on this beautiful lake, they turned a point opposite Brunnen, and entered into a part which they had not yet passed. The lake here has no very great breadth: the banks furnish very rich parkish scenes. The beach woods hang over the lake; and when they stopped for refreshment under the caves, the goats came down to their boats. One of their female companions, whom they had admitted, recited prayers and hymns during the whole passage, except when they checked her pious effusions by some excellent ham; or when her voice was overpowered by the louder strains of one of their watermen, who sung to them the feats of William Tell, in some traditional songs, which had a local propriety, as the borders of the lake were occasionally adorned with monuments erected in honour of his exploits. They landed at Lucerne about seven in the evening. The town is finely situated at the north-western end of the lake, and commands a delightful view.

The hangework of the bridge at Lucerne, which is built over the Reufs, is painted with historical representations. The town has little but its situation to recommend it to the eye. They went to the Jesuit's college. The library was removed at the suppression of the Order: the building is large, and now inhab-

inch of soil on these
th laborious industry.
dependence, the people
ck; and happy in their
y would fight, as they
rren and feanty posses-
sible a courage as if they
of Italy. After having
ill's Bridge, they passed
ge of two hundred and
ough a granite rock in
valley of Ureren, which
n which Ureren appears
nd of firs. It is watered
a small common-wealth
, and well secured by its
dined in this valley, at
ur leagues from Wafen.
ce they left Zurich, they
atisfied with the small-
ened better accommoda-
s and sequestered villages
y; and though they paid
reated with such attention
of riches would not effe-
miners of the people are
their reception and treat-
itality, not of mercenary

ree leagues of St. Gothard,
little fatigued, they moun-
scent, through wild and
rock, by the side of the
s source in a lake, in the
nit, at which they arrived
e night, encompassed by a
ards them.

er a good night's rest, in
ough they had no curtains,
ch the bare walls had no
ints of the Virgin. They
s hours, to Hospital, and in
r walk to Steig, over look-
ed their feet in the descent,
ent them from again admir-
with firs opening from the
h freshened the air of an hot
ch wind under noble rocks
the river several times, as it
on either side, between its
the mountains.

teig, and dined next day at
took a boat at Fluelin, for
women who petitioned for a
hiring the hills that border
they turned a point opposite
to a part which they had not
re has no very great beauti-
rich parkish scenes. The
r the lake; and when they
under the coves, the gyan
oats. One of their female
had admitted, recited pro-
e whole passage, except when
effusions by some excellent
ce was overpowered by the
their watermen, who sung to
m Tell, in some traditional
propriety, as the borders of
lly adorned with monuments
is exploits. They landed at
in the evening. The town is
rth-western end of the lake,
ful view.

the bridge at Lucerne, which is
painted with historical repre-
has little but its situation to
e. They went to the Jesuits
was removed at the suppression
lding is large, and now inhab-

ited by a few professors. On leaving Lucerne they
loitered, slowly, in a hot evening, till they were
overtaken, before their arrival at Sins, the place of
their destination, by a violent storm of the heaviest
rain, accompanied with thunder and lightning. Every
flash which threw its beautiful horrors across the dark
night that soon encompassed the woods in which they
strayed, reminded them of the inconsiderate delay
with which they had lingered in their delightful walk.

The next day, the gloomy circumstances of the
preceding night were forgotten, in the cheerfulness
of a glorious sun, which, when they had proceeded
four leagues further, to Albis, appeared to spread its
dazzling splendour over the lake of Zurich, and en-
livened them with its rays, as they returned in the
evening to that town, where they staid only one
day, when they went, in company with several per-
sons, down the Limmat, to a convent about two
leagues from the town, to be present at the ceremony
of two girls taking the veil: one of them appeared to
be about eighteen and had a pretty face, with an
expression somewhat fullen; the other was about
twenty-four, her countenance meek, and expressive
of gentle serfiousness by a melancholy smile. The
ceremony was extremely interesting; the solemnity of
the scene, the presence of the parents, the grave and
venerable appearance of the abbot, the prostration of
the women, the tearing of the chaplets, the cutting off
the hair, and the change of diels suggested many
affecting considerations.

They left Zurich on the 11th, and drove about
four leagues to Baden. The baths of Baden, which
were anciently celebrated under the name of Ther-
me Helvetica, are about a mile from the town, and
at this season much resorted to.

They proceeded the same evening three leagues,
to Schintznach, admiring the Reufs, which runs
through a fine valley, and of which the banks are
adorned with some vineyards. In their course they
crossed the Limmat: this neighbourhood abounds
with rivers. After their arrival at Schintznach they
strolled to the Aar, and walked up, through a steep
beech wood, to the castle of Hapsburg, which was
erected in the eleventh century, within the ancient
boundaries of Vindonissa, and is famous, as the root
of the family of Austria, for having furnished Ger-
many with the Emperor Rhodolph, of Hapsburg;
elected by the intercess of the archbishop of May-
ence in 1273. The precincts of the castle were not
large: from its proud eminence it commands a spa-
cious view of a fine range of country, through which
the Aar winds its course, between lofty mountains.

Their next stage was to Aarau, which is about three
leagues from Schintznach; they drove through a
country, which has but few of the bold features that
usually characterize Switzerland. They stopt at
Aarau to transact some business. The postillion who
conducted them, wished to loiter, as he was paid by
the day. Travellers, with these conductors, are
compelled to listen to exaggerated accounts of bad
roads and difficulties.

In spite, however, of murmurs, they proceeded
through Ensfingen, and the old town of Wiedlisbach,

to Soleure. The country through which they passed,
was beautifully varied with hills well sprinkled with
houles and trees: they remarked a castle belonging
to an advoyer of Berne, which was particularly to be
admired. They saw, at some distance, the rude
mountains of Jura, of which the snowy tops were
brightened by the rays of a descending sun. They
supped at the crown inn.

The town of Soleure, or Soleturme, is very an-
cient, as may be collected from a stumpy inscription,
under a dial plate in the chief street.

The great church here is said to have cost 80,000l.
besides an additional expence occasioned by an altera-
tion in the plan after the foundations were laid.
This was a liberal exertion for Switzerland. The de-
sign and style of architecture are superior to those of
any building in this country. The women in this town
wear a straw hat, which is very simple and well adap-
ted to the climate. The whole place has an appear-
ance of neatness and comfort, which resembles the
air of a Protestant.

After leaving Soleure, they dined at Hindelbank,
which is about four leagues from Soleure, and about
a league out of the straight road to Berne. Having left
Hindelbank, they arrived at Berne August 13; it is
a pleasant ride of about two hours.

Berne is a very handsome town: the streets are spa-
cious; the piazzas, with their low arched fronts, give
it a peculiar character; the store houles would appear
to more advantage if the arcades were more lofty;
the walk, likewise, would in that case be equally shel-
tered from sun or rain, and there would be a much
freer circulation of air: the town is kept neat, but it
is by felons, chained with a collar and hook over
their heads: the terraces, particularly that behind
the cathedral which overlooks the Aar, afford very
agreeable walks, where the Berne ladies, who are
very pretty, exhibit their charms better displayed by
drefs than those of any Swiss women which they have
yet seen.

The men being generally engaged in the offices of
government, or in foreign service, there is not much
pernicious dissipation here. Gaming is effectually
expressed, for every member of the council takes an
oath to inform against any whom he shall see engaged
in high play. It is vain also to attempt seduction, for
the seducer is compelled to marry the woman whom
he has vitiated—to take, as his companion through
life, the woman whom he has degraded. Public
brothels, under certain regulations, are allowed.

The public buildings at Berne are handsome,
though they do not shew any great departure from the
simplicity of the country, which consults utility rather
than ornament in its buildings, even where the
dawnings of taste most appear. The Hotel de Ville,
at which the council and senate assemble, is an old
building wherein are some convenient rooms and his-
torical pictures. The new room, for the library,
shews but little advancement in skill of architecture:
it is ill contrived, and fitted up with but little taste or
respect to the convenience of readers; it is rich in
manuscripts.

C H A P. IV.

They proceed to Friburg—Bull—See the Village of Gruyeres—Ride by the Lake of Geneva to Vevey—A Septennial
Celebration of the Fête des Fignerons—A Walk to Clarence—A Ball, &c.—Manners of the Women in Switzerland
—Proceed through Aigle to Bex—Salt-Works at Beviens—Drive to Martigny—Observations—Difficulties in
ascending the Col-de-Balmé—Mountain of Blanc—Montarvert—The magnificent Glaciers—Averon—Glaciers of
Bosson—Trient—Sleep at Bex—Moudon—Payerne—Sleep at Avenche—Morat—Guimene, &c.—Arbourg—
Bienne—A singular Rock—Ile de St. Pierre—Neuchâtel—Loche—Sleep at Chaux de Fond—Yverdon—Orbe—Cas-
tle of Barthelemi—Lausanne—Coppet—Versoi—Geneva—Description thereof—Proceed on their Journey—Fermay
—Aux-les-Bains—Chambery—Wonderful Road called La-Grotte—Echelles—Convent of the Chartreuse—Montme-
lian, &c. &c.—Sleep at St. Michel—Continue their Journey—Mount Cenis—Entrance into Italy—Descrip-
tion of Turin.

ON the evening of the 15th, they proceeded to Friburg, a town about sixteen miles distant from Berne, remarkably situated on the river Sane, amidst the scenery of craggy rude mountains: it is filled with Romish churches profusely loaded with ornaments, and with convents that contain large libraries. The women are very pretty; their complexions are delicate, and their countenances, which seem all moulded in similar forms, are very interesting.

Leaving Friburg on the 16th, they travelled about six leagues further, through a charming circular valley, richly covered with groves, to Bull, a small town of one street. On quitting this, they saw the village of Gruyeres, so famous for the cheese which is exported to all countries; and thence proceeding through a fine pasture country, they slept at Chatel St. Denys, where a bailiff resides in a castle, the construction of the thick walls of which reduced the ancient counts of Gruyeres to indigence.

The next morning a short ride by the lake of Geneva, which opened beautifully, conducted them to Vevay, just in time to see a septennial celebration of the Fête des Vignerons, which seems to have been a very early, and perhaps, an heathen institution. A procession, composed of the representatives of Ceres, Bacchus, Flora, and Pomona, with their respective attendants, and with appendages of corn, grapes, flowers, and fruit, carried in profuse display, paraded merrily round the town. These jovial deities were personated by people selected for their figure or beauty. Silenus, rolling from side to side between his supporters, was not forgotten. The characters were dressed with suitable ornaments, and the procession was continued with singing and much gaiety for four or five hours; after which the gods and goddesses repaired under some fine trees that ran close to the lake in the town, to partake of the plenty which they assembled to celebrate. A humorous fellow who was employed to harangue them, in a burlesque discourse, amused the company much, by his coarse but sprightly sallies. There was much good-humour and no disturbance.

One of our travellers walked to Clarence, which is towards the extremity of the lake, about a league and a half from Vevay. They ascended to the castle of Chatillard, which is very beautifully situated on an eminence, and commands a glorious view of the lake, the mouth of the Rhine, and the distant rocks of Meillerie. It is surrounded by delightful vineyards planted in an artificial soil brought to those hills, and supported by some walls lest it should be carried away by the torrents that often rush from the summits of the mountains.

There are many rooms half-furnished in the castle, which at present belongs to a bailiff; and in an upper room, where criminals are examined, there are some instruments of torture, which are still suffered by the government of Berne to be in the hands of individual magistrates. In the evening they had a ball, at which the waltz and country dances kept them up till three or four in the morning.

The women in Switzerland sometimes wear long tails of braided hair. After marriage these braids are twisted round the head, and fastened at the top with a small silver bodkin, or sword.

They left Vevay on the 19th, and proceeded by the side of the lake to its extremity; and through Aigle, a small gloomy town in a charming country, to Bex, which is about six leagues from Vevay. After dining there, at the Table D'Hote, with some intelligent travellers, they rode about half a league to examine the famous salt-works at Bevioux. The water is conveyed to them by pipes from the source at Fondemont, which is about a league further, whither they afterwards went; and having procured guides, lights, and dresses fit for the journey, they entered the souterrains by a narrow passage cut through the rock, and walked about four hundred feet to the chief source, which issues in a very incon-

siderable but perennial stream; this is received into a grand excavation that serves as a reservoir for the water, and is about one hundred feet in length. The country about Bex and Fondemont is to be admired for its finely wooded hills.

The next morning they drove about three leagues to Martigny, having entered the Villais at St. Maurice, by a romantic pass over a Roman bridge; and having stopped to contemplate the beautiful cascade, called Pisse-Vache, which falls from a great height with much elegance. It first arches with a fine bold curve; it afterwards shoots into many spiral forms which have somewhat of a dark cloudy hue, and then terminates its fall in a graceful foamy spray.

Near Martigny they noticed the ruin of the old castle, where formerly the bishops lived; they now, however, reside at Sion. They were at Martigny obliged to leave their carriages; and having procured horses and mules, they rode about three leagues over stony roads and rude hills to Trient, which is situated in the Vallais, in a bottom, surrounded by tremendous mountains covered with snow. Here they dined at a wretched inn, and afterwards having rode about half a league further, they began to ascend the Col de Balme. They toiled over stony paths by a very steep ascent, their mules labouring above them, for it was impossible to ride; and they trembled as they hung over them in parallel roads, which they often did, from the winding of the path. They were three or four hours before they had surmounted their difficulties and reached the summit; when they began to descend in paths less precipitous, indeed, but down slippery hills, and covered with a thick brouillard.

Our travellers wondered to see the cattle descending from neighbouring mountains, down paths that appeared to them at some distance absolutely perpendicular; and from one of which, a tall Englishman not long before fell giddy. The descents are, indeed, so rapid, as to be dangerous to persons and cattle most accustomed to them; and accidents so often occur, that on the brows of the mountains are often erected wooden crosses, in honour of prostrated fairs, or to deprecate the wrath of the evil Genii, whom the superstition of the people imagines to be always contriving mischief against them. From the top of the hill they had a fine view of the vale of Chamouny and his snow-tipped mountains, particularly that of Mont Blanc, which, according to Sir George Shueborough's account, is 15,662 feet above the level of the sea; and, according to that of Mr. De Luc, 15,304, and which is, therefore the highest mountain in the old world, exceeding that of Caucasus, or any mountain in Asia or Africa.

They did not reach the bottom of the hill till darkness made them rejoice at their safe arrival; they had still, however, near three leagues to ride, by the side of the river Arve, and to pass over many dangerous bridges every now and then, which were thrown across beds of torrents; or to ford the Arve, where its windings in the valley required it. They arrived, however, soon after ten o'clock, at the inn called Balance, and found the refreshment which they much wanted.

On the 21st, as soon as their guides had been to masts, they procured mules and ascended for about an hour over the steep and rugged paths of Montanvert, when they were obliged to dismount, and toiled for about two hours more along the road of the Crystal hunters, stopping indeed frequently to repose and refresh themselves with the wild strawberries and milk, which the peasants' children brought them, and to contemplate the rude scenery of the mountains and the vale of Chamouny, through which the shoaly river Arve ripples along. They at length arrived at the summit, and had a view of the magnificent glaciers which are encircled by vast and savage rocks rising in gigantic and fantastic forms, sometimes terminating in sharp needle points. The glaciers appeared to them like waves of ice topped with snow; they extend many miles in length and one in breadth. They descended

am; this is received into
rves as a reservoir for the
ndred feet in length. The
ndemont is to be admired

drove about three leagues
ed the Villais at St. Mau-
ver a Roman bridge; and
plate the beautiful cascade,
falls from a great height
rft arches with a fine bold
ts into many spiral forms
dark cloudy hue, and then
eful foamy spray.

noticed the ruin of the old
e bishops lived; they now,
They were at Martigny
ages; and having procured
le about three leagues over
to Trient, which is situated
m, surrounded by tremen-
dous snow. Here they dined
erwards having rode about
y began to ascend the Col
ver stony paths by a very
labouring above them, for
and they trembled as they
del roads, which they often
the path. They were three
had surmounted their diffi-
culty; when they began to
cipitous, indeed, but down
d with a thick brouillard.

ed to see the cattle descend
mountains, down paths that
distance absolutely perpen-
dicular, which, a rash Englishman
y. The descents are, in-
dangerous to persons and
to them; and accidents to
brows of the mountains are
frequent, in honour of protecting
the wrath of the evil Genu,
the people imagines to be
sent against them. From the
a fine view of the vale of
tipped mountains, particu-
larly, which, according to Sir
Count, is 15,662 feet above
according to that of Mr.
Linnæus, is therefore the highest
d, exceeding that of Cau-
caus or Africa.

bottom of the hill till dark-
at their safe arrival; they
drove three leagues to ride, by the
road to pass over many dan-
gerous and then, which were
difficult; or to ford the Arve,
valley required it. They
started ten o'clock, at the inn
and the refreshment which

their guides had been to
ascend and ascended for about
d rugged paths of Montan-
gna to dismount, and toiled
re along the road of the
indeed frequently to re-
sist with the wild strawberries
ants' children brought them,
the scenery of the mountains
y, through which the shoaly

They at length arrived at
of the magnificent glaciers
ft and savage rocks rising in
s, sometimes terminating in
glaciers appeared to them
with snow; they extend many
breadth. They descended to

to the glaciers, looked into the tremendous blue clefts
in the ice, and heard stones roar for a considerable
time after they threw them in. They afterwards de-
scended to Chamouny, by a steeper path over loose
stones, where their poles, and sometimes their friend-
ly and officious guides supported them; they reached,
in about an hour and a half, and contempla-
ted with great astonishment and pleasure the source
of the Arveron, which issues from the glacier
of Argentiére, called la Mer de Glace, rolling under
a magnificent vaulted arch formed by projecting ice,
undermined into a tremendous cavern; within this is
a smaller circle, or arch, divided from the other by
an immense fissure, which will probably fall ere long,
together with the piece of rock that rests upon it.
The children mount, fearless, upon the upper arch,
though our travellers could hardly behold them with-
out apprehension. Their mules met them here, and
they returned to Chamouny, and in the evening rode
to the glaciers of Bosson, to which the ascent is less
difficult as they rode within a quarter of a mile of
them. The ice here assumes a pyramidal form,
appearing like sugar loaves, or inverted basket salt,
in gigantic representation.

The next day they returned to Martigny by the
Tête Noire. The road, which is composed of an
irregular stair-case of pavement, winds round fearful
precipices. The barren rocks, the romantic entrance
of the vallais, and the rich expanse of a woody valley
and hills, decorated with cottages and pastures; the
beautiful cascade of Argentiére, and other falls of
water, together with the dark firs which crowned the
summit of the Tête Noire, formed a succession of
very striking and magnificent scenes, displayed with
infinite variety of light and shade, and diversified
with every combination of form.

As they arrived at Trient they saw the opposite hill
covered with a long ascending train of people, pre-
ceded by priests and religious orders, in their proper
dresses, who had come here from Martigny to supplic-
ate for rain, and were returning slowly, in solemn
procession.

At Martigny they again remarked the number of
Cretins and goitered persons who suffer from the
stagnant air of this enclosed valley, and the noxious
vapours which arise from its marshy land. They
slept this night at Bex, and returned the next day to
Vevay, having only stopped to look at the fortrefs of
Chilon, which projects into the lake.

They left Vevay again on the 24th, and dined at
Moudon, which is about six leagues from Vevay, one
of the most ancient towns in Switzerland.

At Payerne, four leagues further, they saw the
camp now removed from Berne. The country,
through which they this day passed, is parkish: its
gentle well-wooded slopes of pasture, and occasional
corn fields, are very pleasing. They slept at Aven-
che, which is situated near the lake of Morat. They
looked here at some remains of Mosaic pavement
near the castle, of which the design representing Bac-
chanals, was, as far as they could judge from what is
left, very handsome. On leaving Avenche the next
day, they skirted the side of the lake of Morat, of
which the banks are flat, and less adorned than those
of the lakes which they had before seen.

Passing through Morat, Guimenc, and Berne,
they proceeded to Thun, which is near forty miles
from Avenche. As they approached Thun they
admired the magnificent mountains, with their gla-
ciers, and the noble well cultivated valley through
which the Aar flows. This, which is rather a large
town situated at the head of the lake of Thun, is of
the Reformed religion.

The next morning they embarked in a covered
boat, and in about three hours and a half passed this
very beautiful lake of Thun. They landed at the
end of the lake, and walked about three leagues to
Lauterbruennen, passing through a romantic valley,
between lofty mountains richly covered with trees
and dotted with houses. The view of the Jungfrau-

Horn, tipped with snow, appeared to equal that of
Mont Blanc.

They took up their abode in a small village, and
the next morning were rowed back to Thun by three
persons, the usual number, one of whom was a wo-
man. They slept at Berne and dined the next day at
Arbourg.

The country about Arbourg is adorned with great
variety of oak and beech; its dark hills are finely
clothed. They reached Bienne in the evening, time
enough to walk to a cascade situated amidst "low
browed rocks" and romantic hills.

Bienne, which stands at the bottom of Jura moun-
tains, has no distinguishing buildings to characterise
it. There is a remarkable spring which supplies
above eighty fountains in the town; the water is per-
nicious to the teeth, as appears to be the case of many
other springs in Switzerland. Its bad qualities are
said to be derived from the rock through which it
flows. Fountains are the chief ornaments of the
Swiss towns: there is generally one in each, sur-
rounded by a broad basin, at which the women assem-
ble with tubs, to wash their vegetables. Bienne is
under the sovereignty of the bishop of Basle, whose
reduced power is, however, chiefly nominal and
ceremonious.

As the day was unfavourable for the water, they
drove about three leagues on the road to Basle, along
the edge of a steep valley beautifully shaded with
beech, oak, and fir, which intermingle their various
hues. After stopping at a small house for dinner,
they walked about a league to Pierre Pertruis, a sin-
gular rock, which appears to have been perforated
for a road, as it should seem from an inscription,
which, however, is of disputable interpretation by
the Romans. It separates Val St. Irmier from the
district of the old Rauraci, and is part of the chain of
rocks branching from Mount Jura. After supper
they engaged a boat to convey them to the island of St.
Pierre.

This island is about two miles in circumference.
The small spot is enlivened with a charming variety
of woods, vineyards, orchards, and meadows, ter-
minated on one side by a noble terrace which looks
over the neighbouring land that borders on the lake,
of which the banks are rich and pleasing.

In the evening having crossed over to their car-
riages at Neuville, they drove about four leagues to
Neuchatel, which is sweetly situated on the lake of
that name. They were much pleased with this agree-
able town and its neat appearance.

They afterwards made a little excursion to Locle,
where the watch trade goes on briskly. The country
about Locle, which rises into gentle eminences, for-
merly covered with forests, is now adorned with neat
white houses, which indicate a diffusion of wealth and
the dawnings of taste. They slept at la Chaux de
Fond, which is on the edge of Franche Comte. Af-
ter having seen some new modes of life in this expe-
dition, they returned to Neuchatel, through cheerful
villages, by a different road, which they left Septem-
ber 3, and arrived in the evening at Yverduin, eight
leagues from Neuchatel, having skirted the lake, and
driven through a country where rude and elegant
scenery were beautifully contrasted, and well culti-
vated hills, vineyards, and meadows, with distant
mountains and glaciers, furnished fresh objects of
admiration every instant.

Yverduin lies in rather a flat situation, at the south-
east end of the lake. It is mostly to be admired for
its walk, which is enclosed by two branches of the
river Thièle. The printing-house is famous.

Their first stage next morning was to Orbe, which
is proudly seated on an eminence, and is distinguished
for its antiquity. The castle and the tower, which
are not among the most ancient buildings of the town,
add to its strength.

On leaving Orbe they deviated from their road to
see the castle of Barthelemi, which commands a mag-
nificent view, and arrived at Laufan in the even-
ing.

ing. This is an irregular town, with few buildings that deserve notice.

Having quitted Laufanne, they passed through Merges and Rollo, and many other pleasing towns, to the ancient town of Nyon, situated on the lake along which they again travelled in the evening.

They drove through Coppat, a barony in the bailiage of Nyon, and passed through the paltry French town of Verfoy, or Verfoi, which is called Choiseul's Folly, because built by that minister in fruitless opposition to Geneva.

The first evening of their arrival at Geneva they experienced the inconvenience which results from the early closing of the gates; for having taken up their abode within the town, and strolled out for a walk towards the lake, they found the gates shut, by inexorable sentinels, before their return, and in vain petitioned for admission. They could have no communication with their servants, and were obliged to sleep at Secheron's.

The city of Geneva is remarkably situated at the west end of the lake, where the beautiful Rhone issues from it in two rapid currents of a transparent green colour. The streets are not broad, and derive no embellishment from the lofty wooden arcades which shelter them from the sun. They are cheerful, however, and thronged with a busy active people. The houses which face the lake, and those which overlook the parks, are very handsome; the fairs are good, the walks pleasant, and much resorted to.

The environs of Geneva are very beautiful: the walks of the lake, with the view of the lake, the mole, the glaciers, and Mount Blanc, always afford pleasure. It is very populous; the Lutheran religion is tolerated here, and strangers may be admitted to the rights of burghers.

Our travellers were furnished here with phaetons and open carriages of every kind, as well as in England. They drove one day to Fernay, where they saw nothing worthy of mentioning.

The inhabitants of Geneva have a general kind of information, which excites surprise in strangers; though, on further acquaintance, it is often discovered to be superficial enough. They are almost all educated at a public academy, which is well regulated and supported at the public expence. Here they imbibe a taste for literature, which every citizen is enabled to keep up, by a permission to borrow books at the public library opened to them for that purpose once a week. Literary societies, though controlled by government, still assemble. The theatre, which always contributes, in some degree, to the cultivation of letters and the polite arts, is tolerably supported. The higher women at Geneva have much improved in the elegance of their manners by associating with foreigners. The constitution of Geneva is still unsettled, and the liberties of the people undefined.

They left Geneva on the 15th, and proceeded by Cartouge and Luifelles, through a country, of which the thin soil seemed withered by the sun to dust, to Frangy, a small village, where they slept. The next day they continued their journey, by Douer and Remilly, to Aix-les-Bains, where they stopped to look at the handsome baths, in which the gnawing pains of the rheumatic are soothed, and the relaxed nerves of the paralytic are braced. The remains of a Roman arch are here to be seen. From thence they had a pleasant ride to Chamberry, a town which seems hewn out of the quarry of surrounding mountains. Its narrow streets are crowded with an industrious people. Having procured a bulletin here, they determined to deviate from their road, on a visit to the Grande Chartreuse; and, after dinner, travelled amidst hills, of which the forests gradually disappeared, till they reached the rude and naked rocks of Echelles, and descended to the town by the wonderful road called la Grotte, which was cut through the solid stone by Charles Emanuel, in 1670: a work stupendous indeed, and, as the inscrip-

tion in the side informs us, "unattempted by the Romans and despaired of by others."

Echelles, the ruins of its castle, and the adjacent plain, are seen to great advantage from the hill by which they descended. On entering the town its importance vanished; and the river, which separates Savoy from Dauphiny, allots to each country a few houses that neither side can envy or despise. The next morning, having procured some saddle-horses and a guide, they passed the bridge, and applied to the mayor of the French district for a passport, without which, they understood, that the advocates for freedom would not suffer them to return. The magistrate was a good grocer, and granted their request without any intolence of office.

Having rode about three leagues, they entered the first enclosure of the territory of the Chartreuse, and passed through a deep cold valley, hidden by steep hills from all but the meridian sun. They mounted to the convent by a gradual ascent. The narrow road is conducted by the edge of a deep chasm, down which it is fearful to look: while from above it is overhung by well wooded mountains, that tower to a tremendous height. They sometimes rolled large stones down the precipitous descent, which, by the force that they acquired, broke branches from the trees, and sometimes almost carried away the firs, with a hollow echoing sound, till they reached the bottom. The thick woods, which arise almost perpendicularly to the summit of the mountain, abound in bears, wolves, flags, roebucks, goats, &c. which are often seen. They arrived at the convent about ten o'clock: it is situated towards the end of the valley, near the foot of a spiral rock, on which is placed the cross of St. Bruno. The external architecture is simple: they were not struck with the magnificence of its extent till they entered. The convent has been despoiled of a great part of its revenues and territory. There is now a small party of soldiers lodged there to preserve it from popular injuries, whose appearance accords but ill with the religious quiet of the place. Our travellers having given their passport to the serjeant, were well received by the coadjutor, who conducted them to the room appointed for the reception of the English; for in this extensive range there is a distinct apartment appropriate to each of the principal nations of Europe. After the first attention they were left to amuse themselves with the room till dinner was got ready, when they were served with fish and eggs. After dinner they were shown some of the apartments and cells of the monks, each of which had his little garden and library.

Our travellers now returned to Echelles, and returned the same night to Chamberry, which they left the next morning: their first stage was to Mommelian, a small town on the banks of the river Here, with a castle that stood a siege of fifteen months against Lewis XIII. of France, and at last foiled his endeavours: adjacent to which is an eminence, on which the Marquis de Bellegarde has a castle, called le Chateau des Marches. From thence they proceeded by Mal-Taverne to Aiguebelle, through a country very picturesque; the vineyards mantling up the hills between barren rocks, and the castles and towers, which were scattered on the summits of the mountains, gave a peculiar character to the scenery. Their next stage was to Eriepere. In their route they passed a mountain in which there are iron-mines and a foundry; and they thence continued by the side of the river Arehe, now a scanty stream flowing sluggishly over oozy banks, but which, sometimes, rushes with violence, when swelled by melted snow or accumulated torrents. The country began to assume a more rude appearance, and the projecting roofs of Chanon or Chambre, where they again changed horses, reminded them of the winter snow. The valleys here are pent up and enclosed with mountains: the snow falls in great abundance, and the confined air is rendered very unwholesome by

, "unattempted by the others."

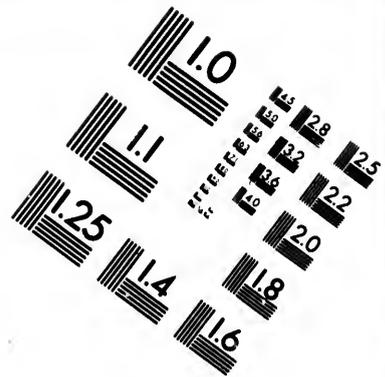
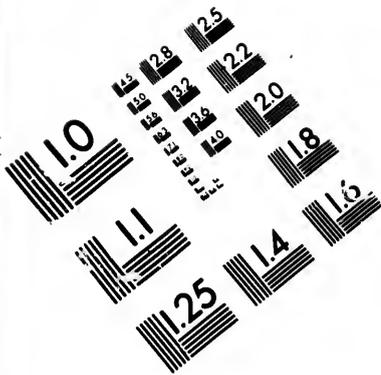
castle, and the adjacentantage from the hill by entering the town its river, which separates to each country a few envy or despise. The red some saddle-horfeas bridge, and applied to district for a passport, good, that the advocates them to return. The cer, and granted their e of office.

leagues, they entered itory of the Charreufe, cold valley, hidden by e meridian sun. They a gradual ascent. The by the edge of a deep ful to look: while from wooded mountains, that ght. They sometimes he precipitous descent, they acquired, broke l sometimes almost car-llow echoing found, till The thick woods, which y to the summit of the wolves, stags, roebucks, seen. They arrived at k: it is situated towards he foot of a spiral rock, fs of St. Bruno. The e: they were not struck extent till they entered. led of a great part of us ere is now a small party reserve it from popular accords but ill with the

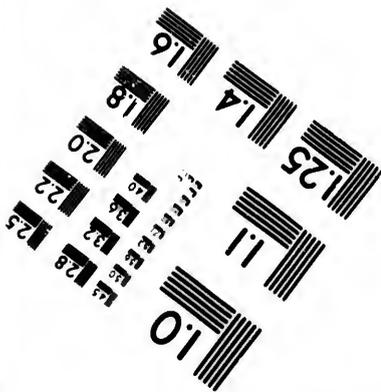
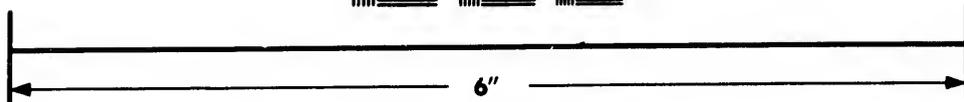
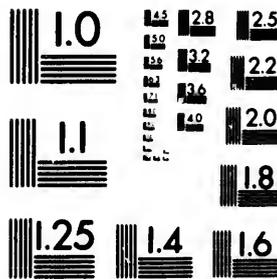
Our travellers having jeant, were well received uled them to the room of the English; for in is a distinct apartment he principal nations of tion they were left to um till dinner was got ved with fish and eggs. own some of the apart- nks, each of which had

ned to Echelles, and re- Chamberry, which they r first stage was to Mont- the banks of the river lood a siege of fifteen . of France, and at last cent to which is an emi- quis de Bellegarde has a Marches. From thence Laverne to Aiguebelle, turesque; the vineyards en barren rocks, and the ere scattered on the sum- e a peculiar character to age was to Erpiere. In untain in which there are nd they thence continued che, now a scanty stream banks, but which, some- y when swelled by melted ts. The country began appearance, and the pro- or Chambre, where they nded them of the winter e pent up and enclosed falls in great abundance, dered very unwholesome by





**IMAGE EVALUATION
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**

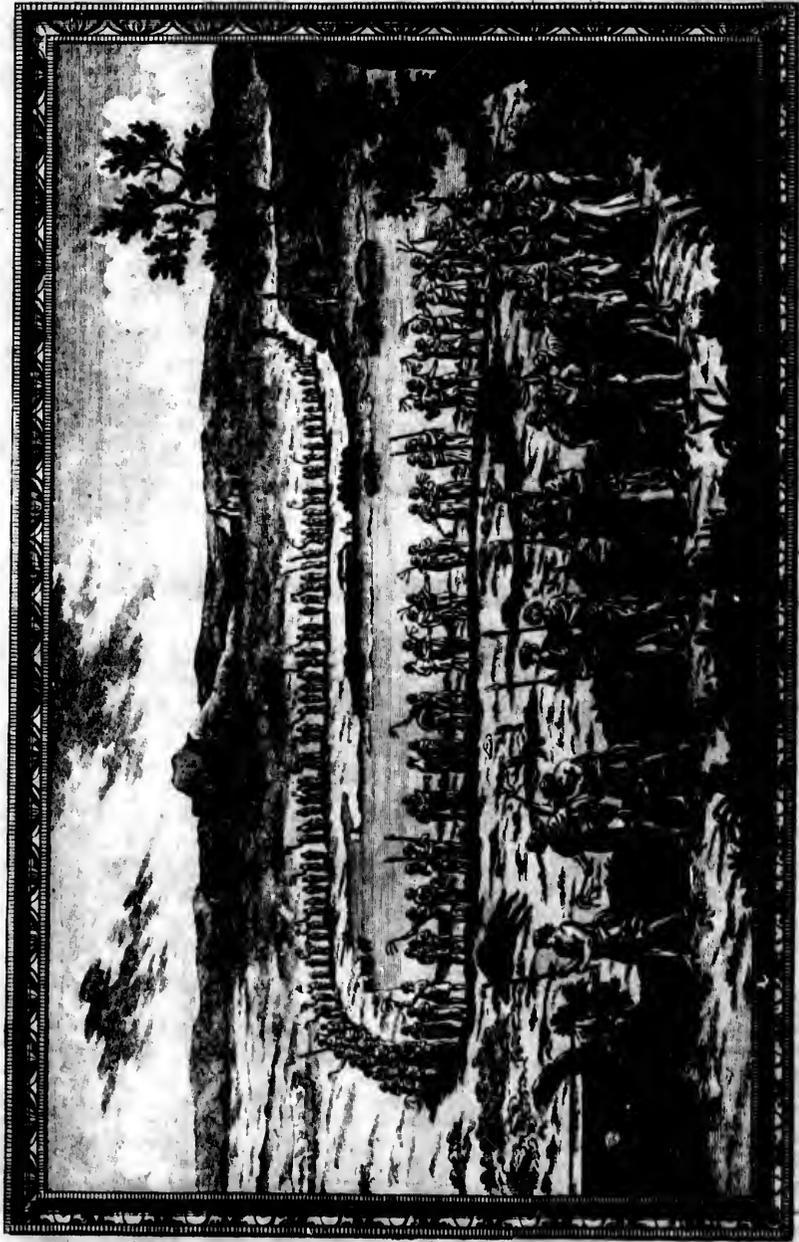


**Photographic
Sciences
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEAVER, N.Y. 14590
(716) 872-4500

18
20
22
25
28

01
02
03



Public procession of the FLAGELLANTS, of Spain, Italy, France, &c.

by the vapours which hover over the muddy bed and banks of this river.

They changed horses at St. Jean de Maurienne, which is the largest town in Savoy after Chamberry, and slept at St. Michel. They rose early the next morning and travelled five posts, through St. André, Villarrodin, and Bramant, to Lannebourg, through rude and stupendous scenes: through a chaos of rocks, at the foot of mountains, and on the edge of precipices, winding and ascending by narrow roads.

At Lannebourg they mounted post-horses, which they who come by the post are obliged to take, and ascended mount Cenis by a very stony and precipitous path, in which they met with many mules laden with rice and silk. They got to the top in about an hour, without much fatigue to the horses, and galloped over the plain, which extends two leagues.

They stopped to change horses at the post-house, called Santa-Croce, which separates Piedmont from Savoy. Opposite to this house is a fine lake famous for its trout. The lake freezes in the winter, but the fish subsist by air, which is supplied from springs, or enters at the place from whence the river Doria issues, that forms the cascade, and flows, in conjunction with the Po, to Turin.

Elevated as they were on mount Cenis, they saw the top of Notre Dame de la Neige still higher, and understood, that from the summit of a mountain not far distant from their passage, there is an extensive prospect of the plains of Lombardy almost to Milan. Having reached the southern side of the mountain, they began to descend towards Italy by steep winding stairs of rock, where the horses went very carefully and safely; but the path was sometimes so narrow, the precipices so tremendous, and the stones so loose and uneven, that they chose to walk, and could on foot more confidently admire the falling torrent, the steep stony declivities of the hill, the scattered houses, and the rich opening valley. After about five hours expedition from Lannebourg, they arrived, with great satisfaction, at Novalezza, a wretched lane of dirty miserable houses, and then thronged with carriages. They passed the fort of Brunette, which commands the whole passage through the valley, being finely situated on a rock levelled with great labour and expence of powder.

At Sufa, the ancient Segesium, a small town, but one of the gates of Italy, is a strong castle, built in a very commanding situation, on a rock. The town consists of one broad street. In the garden adjoining to the ruins of a castle, erected in the time of Augustus, is a triumphal arch, which, though much defaced and dilapidated, deserves to be seen by a traveller eager for antiquities, on his entrance to Italy.

From Sufa they proceeded to Zaconiero, passing by the fine castle of St. George, which had the character of what they conceived to be Italian grandeur; and soon afterwards they admired the proud convent of St. Michel, placed on the summit of a stupendous rock. Dismantled castles were often to be seen, of which the fine ruins gave effect to the country, that, in other respects, resembled Savoy. As they proceeded, the valley widened, but was still shut in by mountains; and as the banks of the swift flowing Doria are, in many places, muddy and stagnant, cretins abound in the neighbouring villages. Their hideous squat figures, and distorted broad countenance, are shocking to behold. The towns through which they passed are narrow, poor, and dirty. They drove through St. Ambroise, a large town, and Rivoli, where is a castle belonging to the king, of which the exterior is not handsome, but the situation fine. As they approached Turin, the country flattened into an open plain: they travelled through fine rows of elm. The town was concealed till they advanced to its gates; but the hills behind and round it are covered beautifully with white palaces and buildings of different kinds.

Turin is a small but very regular and handsome city. The chief places, and some of the streets, are spacious, with arcades and piazza shops. The opera house is large and commodiously arranged, though somewhat dark: its decorations display but little taste. The king's opera house is very handsome; it is only opened for a serious opera in Lent.

There is a tapestry manufacture at Turin, of which the execution is better than the design or colouring. Some works of tolerable sculpture are also produced there.

C H A P. V.

Departure from Turin—Progress of their Journey—Description of Novi—Arrive at Genoa—Description thereof—An Excursion to Poggi, &c.—Journey to Milan—Curious Remarks—Journey to Bologna—To Florence—To Sienna—To Rome—Descriptions of the respective Places.

SEPTEMBER 29 they left Turin, and proceeded through an insipid country, five posts, to Asti, a deserted town, which retains but little of its ancient population and importance. Its chief trade is in wine and cattle. There are fifteen convents there.

After dinner, they drove in the evening three posts and a half, to Alexandria, a town full of soldiers and monks, with an handsome theatre, where operas were then rehearsing. They slept the next night at Novi, which is two posts from Alexandria.

Novi is a small free town under the direction of a governor, appointed every two years by Genoa. There is an appearance of industry in the town. Its district is small, a few miles only in circumference; but it is not precisely defined, and the people have occasional disputes with the inhabitants of Tortona. Novi stands in a flat plain, encircled in the horizon by the Alps and Apennines. St. Bernard and Mount Cenis stand high above the rest. There are no buildings worth noticing in the town.

Leaving Novi the next morning, they passed the proud fortress of Garvy, which stands on a fine eminence, in an immense excavation, amidst a sea of hills, some of which are beautifully covered with chestnut trees.

89.

After passing through Voltaggio, and ascending the Bochetta, they obtained a grand view of the Mediterranean, and descended by a fine winding road through Campo Marrone to Genoa.

Their first view of Genoa, encircling the bay, and extending its walls for twelve miles round the ridgy and sun-browned brow of the mountains, was very grand. They arrived by a fine road through the valley of Polcevera, and saw the doge walk in procession to the church of St. Dominic.

The number of magnificent palaces at Genoa is prodigious. In the splendid apartments of these palaces, which are at the upper part of the house, the possessors do not reside: and some of the nobility have four or five, and even more, palaces kept chiefly for ostentation. They are filled with costly furniture. Parts of these palaces are often let.

The crowd of poor objects at Genoa is dreadful. They are fed not only by private charities but by public support.

The franc port at Genoa deserves to be noticed, as a commodious depository and well regulated office for the customs. Ten per cent. is paid for all imported goods for home consumption; the export duties are low. The chief articles sent out are silks,

9 Z

velvets,

velvets, damalks, orſeveria ſculpture, artificial flowers, oil, oranges, and citrons. The port is large: it is encloded by two moles; on each of which is a pharos, to direct veſſels to the ſpacious mouth of the harbour, where they are ſafe from injury, except when haraſſed by the ſouth-eaſt wind, called Libeccio, which rolls on a great ſwell of ſea.

Our travellers made an excursion to Poggi, which is about ſix miles from Genoa: the ſuburbs through which they drove, are decorated with gay buildings, marble palaces, terraced gardens, orangeries, fountains, colonades, painted walls, ſtatues, ornamental works, &c. At Poggi they ſaw the large palace of the prince Doria: the orangeries there are very fine; and the terraces command a beautiful ſea view; notwithstanding which, they are ſprinkled with tricheries of water-works, and jets d'eau. The groves and woods are natural and pleaſing; and the pines, with their umbrella tops, are ſingular. In the garden, there is a rural theatre artificially formed by trees.

The women of Genoa have pretty features, but are extremely pale; a kind of ſickly languor gives a ſoft expreſſion to their countenance and fine blue eyes. The painted linen veil which they wear, called mezzaro, is not unbecoming, though it reſembles a flowered gown thrown over the head and hooded. The Italian women, in general, are very uninformed. The ſociety of Genoa is not among the beſt of Italy. The court is without women, and the nobility have not the elegance of high birth. The rich nobles are œconomists in general, though they ſometimes entertain a ſtranger with ſumptuous oſtentation. They intermix chiefly at the theatres, which are tolerably ſupported. A ſtranger may aſſociate here to much advantage, with the merchants of the factory.

No ſtate in Europe ſeems, in ſome reſpects, to be ſo ill governed as Genoa; the laws are defective, and, ſuch as they are, are ſeldom put in force. The magiſtrates of the criminal rota are foreigners; they accept their office from mercenary motives, and are notoriously corrupt. When they have amſſed riches enough to prefer ſecurity to further gains, they retire from public detellation to their private reflections. The nobility purchaſe popularity, and the continuance of their privileges, by proteſting and obtaining pardon for turbulent men, and thoſe whoſe uncontrolled paſſions lead them to crimes. Redreſs for injuries, cannot be had againſt power; and individuals execute their own vengeance. Hence aſſaſinations are frequent; and a ruſſian, who can make intereſt with a noble, or command 150 or 200 livres to bribe the officers of juſtice, is ſure to eſcape. Not leſs than one hundred and fifty aſſaſinations are committed, upon an average, every year at Genoa, chiefly among the lower ranks, at the ſuggeſtions of jealousy or the sudden impuſe of revenge, notwithstanding a patrolle parades the ſtreets, and ſome ſbirri, who are not diſtinguiſhed by their dreſs.

They left Genoa on the 8th of October, and returned to Novi, whence, taking the Milan road, they paſſed through a flat uninterreſting country, in which the eye ranged in vain for trees or fertile fields, to Tortona, once Dertona, and in the decline of the empire Attilia, now a ſmall town, two poſts from Novi, which bears ſome inferior reſemblance to Alexandria. It has a fortrefs with about forty ſavoyards.

From Tortona to Voghera, which is a poſt and a half, they paſſed through rows of willows that bound paſture land. They ſlept at Voghera, the Tria of antiquity, ſituated near the river Staſera, called alſo, formerly, the Tria, a town full of ſoldiers and eccleſiaſtics, and doomed to ſupport, at preſent, three troops of cavalry, about 400 infantry, and eleven or twelve monaſteries.

They left Voghera the next morning, and drove two poſts and a half, through a flat burnt-up country, thinly ſprinkled with mulberry trees, by Caſſe Tiſina, to Pavia, having croſſed the Po by a bridge

of boats, where it has a reſpectable breadth, and alſo the Gravalola.

Pavia, once the feat of the kings of Lombardy, has the appearance of a deſerted town. It contains many open places like fields; not a third of what is encloded by the walls, is now inhabited. There are eight colleges.

In going from Pavia to Milan, they viſited the Carthuſian convent, which is one of the moſt magnificent in Italy. The church is eminently beautiful and richly adorned with variegated marbles. The chapels, which are curiouſly checkered and inlaid with marbles, exhibit at every altar fine pictures. The library has been tranſported to Padua.

Milan is not a handſome town, and it has few prominent beauties. Among the buildings moſt diſtinguiſhed for architecture, is the cathedral, of which the exterior is ſtill nearly as unfiniſhed as in the time of Addiſon: it is a vaſt edifice; and religion took here no vulgar flight. The nave and long drawn aiſles are very fine; the outside is crowded with ſculptured figures. The tower commands a magnificent view of the Alps and Appennines, of the city of Milan, and of the extenſive plains of Lombardy.

Among the remarkable churches at Milan, ſtrangers are uſually ſhewn that of St. Scabbian, from a deſign of Pelegrini; that of St. Maria Pedone, that of St. Francheſco, and eſpecially that of St. Ambroſe, built on the ſpot where the father is ſaid to have diſcovered the bodies of the martyrs, St. Gervafius and St. Protafius. It bears great marks of antiquity; contains the braſen ſerpent, or one very like it, erected by Moſes in the Wilderneſs. Beneath a cupola in it, with relief figures of the 9th century, ſupported by four porphyry pillars, is a table, of which the pallium is of ſolid gold inlaid with precious ſtones, under which were depoſited the aſhes of St. Ambroſe. Our travellers noticed here a ſarcophagus, ſuppoſed to be a work of the fourth century. The iron crown was formerly given in this church to the emperors. All theſe valuables are encloded by the gates, which St. Ambroſe is repreſented to have cloſed with Chriſtian zeal, in the face of the emperor Theodoſius, on account of the maſſacre which he had committed at Theſſalonica.

The church of St. Laurence here is built on the foundation of ſome Roman baths, or, as ſome ſay, on the ruins of the temple of Hercules. It retains the form of the heathen temple, but is conſtructed with ſuch evident marks of the dark ages, that the old columns are inverted, the capital being where the baſe ſhould be. The church of Thiele, which is ſuppoſed to be erected on the ruins of the pantheon of Minerva, is in the ſame neighbourhood; and not very far diſtant is the fine Doric colonade, which is uſually repreſented as the work of Maximilian. On Mount Olivet is a convent, beautifully adorned with marble. The altar is very handſome.

The cemetery, in the neighbourhood of Milan, deſerves particular notice; it is a building formerly erected for the reception of the bodies of perſons who died in the hoſpital, and, poſſibly, for the general uſe of the city: it conſiſts of a circular colonade, which contains no indication of a ſepulchre, no epitaph, no moral hint, but here and there a ſuſpended tablet with injunctons to pray for the ſoul of the deſunct.

The Foppone at Milan, which was formerly a lazaretto for perſons afflicted with peſtilential diſorders, is now converted into a lazaretto for cattle. Epidemic diſorders are leſs frequent than they formerly were.

Literature is but little cultivated at Milan, though it boaſts of having produced Valerius Maximus, Cardan, and other great men, and though the Ambroſian library, founded by Cardinal Frederic Borromeo, affords fine field for reſearch. Trials are conducted in ſecret, and the laws are not very judiciously enforced.

Our travellers drove about ſeventeen miles from Milan,

able breadth, and also

kings of Lombardy, ed town. It contains not a third of what is uninhabited. There are

ian, they visited the one of the most magnificent is eminently beautiful decorated marbles. The checkered and inlaid floor pictures. The Padua.

on, and it has few buildings most distinctive cathedral, of which finished as in the time age; and religion took place and long drawn side is crowded with commands a magnificence, of the city of ans of Lombardy.

arches at Milan, France St. Sebastian, from a Maria Pedone, that ly that of St. Ambrose, cher is said to have dilatory, St. Gerulfus and marks of antiquity; or one very like it, ernes. Beneath a cus- ars of the 9th century, ars, is a table, of which aid with precious stones, e ashes of St. Ambrose, sarcophagus, supposed tury. The iron crown church to the emperors. ed by the gates, which ave closed with Christ- mperor Theodosius, on he had committed at

ce here is built on the baths, or, as some say, f Hercules. It remains ple, but is constructed e dark ages, that the old apital being where the ch of Thiele, which is e ruins of the pantheon ighbourhood; and not oric colonade, which is k of Maximilian. On eautifully adorned with enlance.

ighbourhood of Milan, is a building formerly of the bodies of per- and, possibly, for the hills of a circular coloa- tion of a sepulchre, no ere and there a suspen- o pray for the soul of

which was formerly a with pestiferous disor- a lazaretto for cattle, frequent than they for-

uated at Milan, though d Valerius Maximus, n, and though the Am- rdinal Frederic Borro- research. Trials are laws are not very judici-

seventeen miles from Milan,

Milan, through a flat country, to a village called La Corde, and, after dinner, about fourteen miles further, to Sesto, a small village, where they slept at an indifferent inn; and the next morning hiring a boat and four men, and ascending the river Tefino, entered on the Lago Maggiore, which opened most beautifully upon them in a broad expanse, of which the banks, particularly that of the Sardinian territory, were adorned with some palaces, as those of Casa Visconti and Casa Otolino, and the castle of Angiera. The lake was uncommonly full, in consequence of great rains. They landed at Arona, a small place of great trade, and walked up to the enormous bronze statue of Cardinal Borromeo, adjoining to which is an academy for Catechumen ecclesiastics; the number of students now amounts to about seventy-two. Having reembarked, as they continued their voyage, they admired the hills which rose gentle, and prettily adorned from the water, and the distant mountains, particularly, cloud-capped St. Bernard; the woods of chestnuts, the olives, and the vines hanging gracefully over poles and wooden roofs erected for them. They dined in their boat, in sight of Isola Bella, where the lake expands nobly near seven miles in breadth.

Isola Bella, which is about fifteen miles from Sesto, is a small clump of terraces, lined with orangeries, that rise, one above the other, with a formality little correspondent to the bold scope which the surrounding scenes display. They rowed from Isola Madre, a beautiful little spot, about six miles, to Laverno. Here they found their carriage, and drove about fourteen miles, to Varese.

On leaving Varese next morning, they drove through a very pleasant country diversified by hills richly covered with oak and chestnut trees, to Como, charmingly situated at the southern end of the lake.

The lake of Como, which was anciently called the Larius, appears from the town to be a small body of water, as the opposite hills, through which are openings towards its great expanse, seem to approach so near as to enclose a small part of it. The banks, as seen from Como, are beautifully studded with villas, among which the new erected palace of Count Odiskalki is remarkable. The scenery of the lake, and its environs, is enchanting. The houses are near enough for the cheerfulness of neighbourhood, without the inconvenience of proximity.

The town of Como is surrounded by a wall, and contains a garrison of about sixty men. The cathedral is large; its circular window and fretted Gothic work are very beautiful: the interior is large, but darkened rather by a gloomy superstitious, than by a dim religious light.

October 24, they drove by Magnano, over a level plain to Lodi, about two posts and three quarters. The rich meadows about Lodi are well watered by sluices; and some of them are mowed four times in the year. The Lodi cheese is the best of the Parmesan; a great quantity of it is sent to England. The town appears neat, and indicates the prosperity of increasing wealth. From Lodi they went by Zorliscana, three posts, to Placentia, having crossed the Po, before their arrival, on a moving bridge of boats. The country in the neighbourhood of the Po, which is part of what was anciently the most flourishing side of Italy, and which still retains its reputation for fertility, appears now squalid and miserable, in consequence of the late overflowing of that river, which spread desolation wherever it went.

Placentia is a very handsome town, though its present appearance reminds the traveller of its decay: it swarms with beggars, the cause and appendage of idleness and poverty. The cathedral is worth visiting, for the view of the adjacent country and the Po from the tower.

They visited the Augustins, of which the church is large, without grandeur: 14,000 sequins have been lately expended upon it, by a society rich amidst

general poverty. The façade is handsome. In the sacristy of this church is a very beautiful representation, finely carved in wood, of the scene at Calvary. The palace at Placentia is still unfinished.

At Placentia they wished to have proceeded by a voliturier, as they could have travelled at much less expence; but were told, that they must go off by the post, as they arrived by it, unless they chose to stay three days at Placentia; such, it seems, is the regulation.

The next morning they continued their journey through well planted enclosures, by Furenzole, Borgo S. Domingo, and Cappel Guelpho, to Parma, five posts. The vines entwined, and hanging in luxuriant festoons from tree to tree, from elms, alders, and maples, were extremely beautiful. They regretted being so late in the year, as the vegetation of summer, less embrowned by autumnal tints, and enriched with clusters of grapes, must be very beautiful. They crossed the Taro, where the fragments of a bridge still remain, that many years since was destroyed by its violence.

Parma does not impress the stranger at its entrance: there is neither magnificence nor much appearance of trade. It contains between 40,000 and 50,000 inhabitants.

The first object of our travellers attention was the celebrated theatre, so admirably constructed, which has the classical appearance of a Roman work: it was built, in 1618, of wood; is capable of containing 12,000 or 14,000 persons: it is so well contrived, that sound is equally distributed over every part. Upon some occasions it has been converted into a naumachia; and water was formerly admitted from the river Parma, for the display of naval engagements. This theatre is now almost falling to ruin.

Notwithstanding the people of Parma have so beautiful a model for a theatre, the modern building, where theatrical representations are made, is a hideous house, built like the hulk of a great ship: the pit sunk into a subterraneous hole, and the higher boxes projecting over the lower, as if they were about to tumble down.

In a small palace in the garden, built on the site of the Farnese residence, they saw the remains of a gallery, and a room painted with the last efforts of Augustin Caracci's pencil.

The cathedral of Parma is large and gloomy; it contains some good pictures. The church of S. Baptiste has the appearance of very great antiquity: its statues and hieroglyphical figures deserve much attention. The baptistery is so large, that it seems to have been constructed for plenary immersion.

They left Parma on the 28th, and travelled through a country of well cultivated meadows and fields, adorned with elms and other trees. The trees serve but as stems for vines to cluster round: if they draw away somewhat of the nourishment of the soil, they still serve for fire-wood, and save the expence of poles.

They passed through Reggio, two posts from Parma, where, notwithstanding the prince, like the emperor, has suppressed some religious establishments, are some churches and a cathedral, which a traveller should stop to admire. Two posts more conveyed them through Rubiera, formerly a well fortified and important town, to Modena. They passed the Secchia in a boat, though a bridge is almost finished and ready to be opened: this bridge and another have been lately built at the expence of the duke. It is free to the Modenese; but strangers are required to pay a toll. He has made also a new road, the old Emilian way which ran between Parma and Modena being destroyed.

Modena is a very elegant town; its streets are regular and remarkably neat: the winding arcades which are seen in some of them have a good effect; but the painted houses, which have the appearance of stage scenes, deserve no praise. Some of the buildings

buildings are handsome. The town is not large; it may contain about 20,000 men. The soil in the neighbourhood of Modena presents remarkable vestiges of a deluge, in the abundance of marine productions. Sea weeds, shells, branches and trunks of trees, are often dug up; and sometimes the remains of the devallations of probably later times, as the pavement of streets; &c.

They arrived at Bologna, which is but three posts from Modena, on the 30th, having passed the Isola Triumvirata in the way. Modena contains about 90,000 inhabitants: it is governed by a senate, consisting nominally of forty, but by a politic addition of ten, to facilitate the influence of the pope, actually composed of fifty, under the direction of a Gonfaloniere, as supreme magistrate, who is changed by election every two months. The pope's vicergerent exercises by intrigue more authority than he is constitutionally invested with by the state. He is allowed, indeed, to preside at the judicature of criminal causes. The present legate has resided there five years, which is a longer time than the legates usually continue. The pope derives a great advantage from his government, restricted as it is by the privileges of the state.

The streets of Bologna are narrow, and darkened by arcades: they are washed by a branch of the Reni, which turns the mills employed in the manufacture of silks, damasks, satins, velvets, and taffetas, of this town. The people are certainly distinguished for their ingenuity and industry. They excel particularly in making walnut-tree work, artificial flowers, &c.

The Bolognese are no niggards of the wealth which they procure from trade. Their public buildings and churches are numerous and grand; among the latter that of St. Petronius, which contains the meridian line of Casini, that from June to January marks the point of mid-day, is the largest. La Madonna di St. Luca, which is finely situated on an eminence without the town, is ascended to by a grand arcade of three miles in length, open by pillars to the south.

The estates of Bologna are equally divided between all the children; hence nobility has been sometimes impoverished, but trade, perhaps, promoted. The nobility, however, still maintain sufficient splendor.

The university of Bologna still retains some of its ancient reputation, as the chief school of civil jurisprudence cultivated in conjunction with the elegant parts of literature.

The immediate environs of Bologna are beautifully diversified and pleasant. They want only the spreading fulness of a river to wind between their hills. The streams that flow through the valley are shrunk to creeping rills, which, with difficulty, make their way over rough beds; such are most of the Italian rivers that our travellers met with: stony channels in the hot weather, and torrents in the cold; in the winter conferring no ornament, in the summer spreading devallation.

They left Bologna on the 3d of November, and though obliged to take six horses to their chaise, could not, in this hilly country, get further than Feligare, four posts from Bologna. On quitting the fertile valley in which Bologna stands, they entered on the Appennines, and continued to ascend and descend hills but little adorned the whole way; from one of them they had a distant glimpse of the gulph of Ancona.

On quitting Feligare next morning, they had a view of a little volcano in the neighbourhood of the Douane, where they distributed some bribes not to have their baggage disturbed on entering Tuscany. The volcano, as it is called, appeared at some distance to be composed only of a flame of small circumference, affording a kind of glow-worm light which required the contrast of darkness to produce any effect. The flame is a haromcter to the neighbourhood; it increases on the approach of bad wea-

ther; and when fiercest, portends a storm. Some years hence this volcano may be dangerous to the neighbourhood: it is now an object only of curiosity.

The next day they toiled again, for four posts, over Appennines and Alps, sometimes assisted by oxen. At Monte Carli they passed a small neglected house, which is called a chateau of the duke: it is not remarkable for beauty or position.

Having quitted the mountains, the last of which is adorned with some fine cypress trees, they got, towards evening, a noble view of the vale of Arno of Florence, spreading wide its white houses, suburbs, and villas, through a charming well varied country, of which the hills and the valleys were covered with dusky-leaved olives and vineyards.

Florence well deserves the praises which it has received. Trade and the fine arts seem to flourish there in union. The streets and quays that border on the Arno are delightful. The bridges, particularly the Ponte della Trinita, with the statues of the seasons, and that with the cycloidal arches by Annamati, are very handsome. The houses have a noble appearance; and the ornaments of sculpture scattered about the town give it a classical air. In every part of the city are works and buildings erected for its embellishment, by the Medici family.

The gallery at Florence deserves particular notice. The first entrance to it opens the perspective of a corridor, lengthened to the sight by its narrowness, and lined on each side with pictures, statues, and busts. A walk through rows of emperors, and emperesses, conducts one to its tribunes and detached rooms, every one of which contains beautiful and interesting works of antiquity.

The churches here, which amount to near one hundred and fifty, besides the chapels of eighty-seven convents, contain some fine works by the best masters, and, in general, they are beautifully adorned with marble, drawn partly from some fine quarries which are found in the neighbourhood.

The duomo, or cathedral, has a magnificent exterior of variously coloured marbles emblematically representative of the splendid outside of the Romish faith; while the coarse and neglected interior suggests the idea of correspondance not so favourable to the inside of the thing to which it is compared. The tower, as it often happens in Italy, is set apart from the rest of the building. The gates of the baptistery, which are of bronze, sculptured with parts of sacred history from the New Testament, are said to have been praised by Michael Angelo, as fit to be the gates of heaven.

In the cloister belonging to the beautiful church of the annunciation, is the celebrated fresco of la Madonna del Sacco, by Andrea del Sarti, who was buried in the church. It is to be lamented that the work will expire with a fate accelerated by its exposure to the air. The chapel of St. Lorenzo, beautifully decorated as it is with Sicilian jasper and curiously inlaid and variegated marbles, still remains an unfinished monument of the Medicean family. The family is extinct in its chief line; and the mausoleum is not completed; seven dukes have been buried in it. The tombs of Galilæo and of Michael Angelo are to be seen in the church of Santa Croce, as is that of Brunelleschi in the duomo or church of S. Maria del Fiore, on which this architect boldly raised the first cupola, or dome, that appeared in Europe.

The present generation of Florentines is not distinguished by the number of its philosophers, poets, or artists. The people have the reputation of being friendly and benevolent; and, perhaps, they are less corrupt than in other parts of Italy. It is certainly, however, a delightful city, and strangers who settle in Italy, will, perhaps, do well to prefer it to any place. Its situation in the vale of Arno, and on the banks of the river, is extremely beautiful. The surrounding hills are charming. It is impossible to live at Rome or Naples during the summer months, while the

ends a storm. Some
y be dangerous to the
object only of curi-

again, for four posts,
etimes afflicted by oxen.
small neglected house,
the duke: it is not re-

ins, the last of which is
trees, they got, towards
e vale of Arno of Flo-
e houses, suburbs, and
well varied country, of
eys were covered with
yards.

he praises which it has
ne arts seem to flourish
a quays that border
The bridges, particu-
y, with the statues of the
cloistral arches by Am-
The houses have a noble
nts of sculpture scattered
ical air. In every part
buildings erected for its
ci family.

eserves particular notice.
ns the perspective of a
e sight by its narrowness,
with pictures, statues, and
ms of emperors, and em-
s tribunes and detached
contains beautiful and
ty.

ich amount to near one
e chapels of eighty-seven
e works by the best ma-
are beautifully adorned
from some fine quarries
ghbourhood.

al, has a magnificent ex-
id marbles emblematically
id outside of the Romish
neglected interior suggests
e not so favourable to the
ich it is compared. The
in Italy, is set apart from
The gates of the baptistery,
tured with parts of sacred
ament, are said to have
ngelo, as fit to be the gates

to the beautiful church of
ebrated fresco of la Ma-
ndrea del Sarti, who was
is to be lamented that the
te accelerated by its expo-
pel of St. Lorenzo, beauti-
h Sicilian jasper and curi-
e marbles, still remains an
e Medicean family. The
f line; and the mausoleum
dukes have been buried in
eo and of Michael Angelo
h of Santa Croce, as is that
rno or church of S. Maria
architect boldly raised the
at appeared in Europe.

of Florentines is not dif-
f of its philosophers, poets,
ave the reputation of being
and, perhaps, they are less
rts of Italy. It is certainly,
y, and strangers who settle
do well to prefer it to any
e vale of Arno, and on the
remely beautiful. The sur-
ing. It is impossible to live
g the summer months, while
the

the air of Florence is refreshed by temperate breezes
from the mountains and the sea, even in the hottest
season. In the winter it is somewhat cold, being
exposed to the Tramontane winds, particularly since
the Appenines have been stripped of their firs.
Provisions and fruit are abundant and cheap, and the
contiguity of the sea affords opportunity of receiving
from or sending to England whatever may be neces-
sary, as also a facility of repairing to the coast for
health or pleasure. Its being the residence of an
ambassador facilitates introduction to society; and
the Cassino is opened, without difficulty, to strangers,
who may associate with the nobility of both sexes
that assemble here for cards and conversation, and
occasionally for dinner parties.

The style of visiting is not costly: very few enter-
tainments are given at private houses, except those
at which the whole expence may be lemonade and
ice, and sometimes tea. The chief intercourse is in
morning visits, or at public places. The dinner is
selfish and negligent all over Italy. At Florence the
women appear every evening at the opera or the
theatre, where they have annual boxes: two of them
are seldom seen together. A lady, attended by a ca-
valiere servente, or sometimes by two of this species
of animal (the second being a kind of inferior deputy
cecilbeo) is visited by other gentlemen, and sometimes
by some of the chief performers in her box. He who
aspires to the honour of being invited in the service
of a lady, may undergo the pleasing duty of attending
her every morning, and escorting her, in a carriage, or
on horseback, in the woods and walks that border on
the Arno. Attended by these guardians of their virtue,
the women visit every place or person to whom whim
may lead them, and call on single men at lodgings
or hotels without scruple. Every woman almost in
Italy is openly neglected by the man who has solemn-
ly plighted his vows to her, and attended by those
who are privileged to possess the opportunities of
seduction.

The Florentine nobles live in magnificent houses,
but they still sell wine by the bottle: some of them
have a better education than the nobility of Italy in
general receive, and in their mansions may be seen
the indications of literature and taste.

At the Ranucini palace our travellers were shewn a
very fine and spirited drawing, on a sacred subject, by
Mengs, the Raphael of modern times, which was
executed by that painter under the conviction of
approaching death, when his expiring genius roused
itself to execute a last monument to his fame.

At the Riccardi palace also they had a fine library
to admire, rich in manuscripts, and books printed in
the 15th century, as well as a saloon with a ceiling
painted by Luca Jordano, and in other palaces
many and beautiful pictures.

Here also is a species of amusement similar but in-
ferior to that of Sadler's Wells. One evening while
our travellers were there, a man descended by a rope,
on which he rested by a board fixed to his breast, from
the ceiling to the stage, with great applause.

Having left Florence, they travelled three posts,
by Prato, through a flat country of vineyards to
Pilloia, a dull deserted town, containing little to
arrest the hasty traveller but some pictures, in an old
style, in one of the churches. From thence they
proceeded, three posts and a half, through a country
well planted with vineyards and separated into small
enclosures.

Lucca is the metropolis of a small republic, con-
taining about one hundred and twenty thousand peo-
ple, in a district of, perhaps, thirty miles in circum-
ference. The town has no very cheerful appearance,
for the houses are all lofty and shut up with grated
windows, and the streets are somewhat narrow; it is
enlivened, however, by the busy activity of the peo-
ple, who are still as distinguished for industry as they
were in the time of Strabo. The soil of the country
is remarkably fertile and well repays the labour of the
tenants. It formerly furnished supplies to the Ro-

mish armies. Its olives, and other productions, now
afford a revenue of 400,000 crowns. The govern-
ment is aristocratical.

This place lays claim, indeed, to an antiquity little
short of that of Rome, though, according to some
accounts, it was peopled by a Roman colony. It
was esteemed the chief town in Cisalpine Gaul.
Some vestiges of the splendour of Lucca, in former
ages, are still to be seen. An ossuarium and a cine-
rarium were discovered in 1692, by which it appear-
ed, that the people were formerly buried and burnt
within the walls of the town, contrary to a law of the
twelve tables, which the independent spirit of the
people disregarded, as well as to all salutary regu-
lations. The remains of its magnificent amphithe-
atre, into which whole forests and oceans were occa-
sionally introduced, and which was alternately filled
with the bealls of Asia and Africa, and with the
fleets and monsters of the deep, are now converted
into the walls of a prison still to reverberate with the
sounds of guilt and misery. The materials of this
amphitheatre have been employed in the erection of
churches, in honour of that religion which suppressed
the barbarous spectacles therein exhibited.

Lucca is said to have been converted to Christianity
by St. Paulino, a disciple of St. Peter, of whom ma-
ny miraculous stories are related, and who is supposed
to watch, with the affection of a patron, over the
interests and security of the city, where he is rever-
enced as one of the seventy disciples, and the first
martyr of Tuscany. The doctrines and principles of
the Romish church took deep root at Lucca. The
historians of the city are anxious to vindicate the
pretensions of St. Anthony, a priest of Lucca, to the
honour of having first instituted the eremitic life in
Italy, in the fourth century, by retiring himself to
Mount Pisano, now called San Pantaleone, in the
territory of Lucca.

There is somewhat of the strict spirit of republican
equality to be met with at Lucca. No titles are
borne by the higher ranks, except in the case of a few
individuals who have foreign distinctions. Sump-
tuary laws are observed even by the women, who
wear black the whole year, except during the Car-
nival, when they change their colours every day.

A ride of two posts, from Lucca, brought our
travellers through a low wet country to Pisa, which
is a remarkably fine stately city. The quays are
broad and handsome, and the Arno dilating towards
its mouth has a nobler expanse here than at Florence.
The streets built on each side of the river have a
grand appearance. Florence and Paris derive their
ornament from buildings circumstanced in a similar
manner. Wren designed that London should have
taken the same advantage of its river, and if his plan
had been adopted strangers would have heard but
little of the views from the Pont-Neuf, or of the
perspective of the canals in the Dutch towns. The
two sides of Pisa are connected by three bridges, one
of which is very handsome. The Arno, however,
is but shallow, and navigable even in the winter only
by small vessels, which are towed by boys, who run
along a wall which forms part of the embankment of
the river. The town has lost much of its ancient
population and importance; and instead of the one
hundred and fifty thousand inhabitants of which it
once boasted, among which were one hundred citi-
zens, each of which fitted out a galley at his own
expence, and maintained it during a war, it does
not now contain above twenty thousand. The court,
however, often resides here, particularly during the
winter, as the air is milder than at Florence.

The Pisa guide, if a traveller can procure it, will
give him an ample account of the botanical garden
and the observatory, of a cathedral with pillars from
the temple of Ephesus, and gates, some from Jeru-
salem, some elaborated by John of Bologna; of a
baptistery, remarkable for its font and pulpit, and of
a leaning tower, of which it is not yet determined,
whether the inclined position be designed or acci-

dental. He will also remark the curious customs, sham battles on the bridge, annual ceremonies, &c. &c. It may be worth while, however, to notice the campo santo, a cemetery of very peculiar description: it is built upon the reputed dimensions of the ark, being five hundred and fifty palms in length and one hundred and sixty in breadth. The earth in its enclosure is said to have been brought from Palestine, and to have the power of pulverising bodies, deposited in it, in the space of twenty-four hours. The walls are painted in fresco with fantastic and extravagant representations of death, in different forms, and of angels employed in the pious office of taking souls out of the mouths of just persons, or of contending with devils for friars and godly persons, with other such edifying conceits: but the most important objects of observation in it, are two old inscriptions which illustrate the customs of antiquity. They describe the honours voted by the Pisan colony to Lucius, and Caius Cæsar, the sons of Augustus. To Lucius is decreed a black ox and a black sheep, adorned with blue sillets: it is directed that the sacrifices should be burnt, and that urns of milk, honey, and oil should be poured upon them. Caius, who died of wounds sustained for the republic, is to be lamented by a general mourning, with a suspension of all business and amusement: and the 21st of February is noted as an inauspicious day, in which no sacrifices, supplications, and espousals can be made, and no games, but those of funeral rites, can be celebrated. In this cemetery is a monument, recently set up, in honour of Algarotti.

The country between Pisa and Leghorn, but two posts distant from each other, is well wooded. Leghorn is a small town. The appearance of trade is not great. English goods, useful and ornamental, of every kind are exposed in the shops, some of which are very handsome, in the style of those in London, and contain a great variety of articles. The streets and coffee-houses are crowded with people of all nations, with Jews and Turks, and all the throng of the mercantile tribe, whose daily buzz soon wears the stranger that loiters but for observation and amusement.

The post, the custom-houses, and particularly the lazaretto where quarantine is performed with security to the town and convenience to the individual, are well appointed and directed. It is a pleasing and no uncommon circumstance for persons, eager for the society of their relations, to enter the lazaretto and live in temporary seclusion, and at the risk of suffering, from infection, with the objects of their regard.

Not very far from the lazaretto is a burial-ground: disease and death are near neighbours. This spot is especially interesting to the English traveller, as appropriated to the reception of his countrymen. There are several handsome monuments, but the inscriptions are not often classical, and sometimes favour of mercantile spirit.

The evening amusements at Leghorn are confined, at this time of the year, to the theatre, and dramatic representations are in general exhibited by Neapolitan children (pygmean actors) whose premature powers, and artificial accomplishments surprise and disgust the spectator.

Having left Leghorn, they slept the first night at Pisa, and the next day arrived at Sienna, after they had passed through a country which, by its vegetation and scenery, reminded them of England, till they came again to hills covered with olives. Their road lay through Farnachetti, Castel del Bosco, Scala, Certaldo, Poggio Bonzi, and Castiglione, in all eight posts.

Sienna is somewhat of a solitary town, situated in a very beautiful country. The English often choose it for a residence. In the time of Dante its polite inhabitants enjoyed the reputation of speaking the Italian language in great purity, and they have retained the reputation ever since. Hence it is resort-

ed to as a school, in which are studied the graces of the Italian tongue. Society is obtained here with little difficulty. The ladies, however, are said to be dangerous, and to abuse the freedom which they enjoy, more, perhaps, than the women of any town in Italy; and no where, in good truth, are they over-much restrained. The cathedral in this town is elaborately enriched with marble sculptured pillars, and Mosaic pavement, by Dominico Bucalumi; and the curious pulpit of diaphanous alabaster is worked with sacred subjects by Giovanni di Pisa. After admiring in this cathedral Bernini's statues, our travellers were shewn, in the Sacrifice, twenty-nine volumes of illuminated vellum with the church service, executed together with twenty-nine more volumes now in Spain, by a Benedictine monk: a beautiful and elaborate work of the cloister.

Having left Sienna, they slept the first night at Radicefani, in a solitary house, which stood in the centre of bleak hills not far from Chiusi, the ancient Clusium, the capital of Perusia. The next morning, having descended from our rocky unadorned hills, by or near the old Via Cassia, to a small wretched village called Ponte Centino, they entered the pope's territories, which were instantly characterised by the appearance of idleness and dirt. At San Lorenzo, their next stage, they had a fine view of the expanded lake of Bolsena, and soon arrived at the town of Bolsena.

Travelling from thence they entered the Bosco Helerno, the ancient Lucus Volturnensium, where some of the pope's guards demanded money for protecting them against the unauthorized banditti who formerly pillaged travellers in this notorious wood. Their route, as they continued their journey under oaks scarce yet discoloured by the tints of autumn, conducted them through Montefalconi to Viterbo, a large town, of which the inhabitants support twenty-four convents. The air of the neighbourhood is impregnated with sulphurous particles, which ascend from a small lake, formed at no great distance by the waters which issue from a boiling spring.

They set off very early next morning, and hurried through some now unrecorded towns, about six posts, to Rome. The postillions drove, the last miles, with uncommon rapidity.

They had no sooner alighted at Pio's, in the Piazza di Spagna, than they procured a guide and hastened through some dirty streets, and over the bridge of St. Angelo, to St. Peter's. They arrived at Rome in the evening of December 5, and contented themselves for the present with a hasty view of St. Peter's, of the corso crowded with ecclesiastics, of the large and incumbered palaces of the nephews of popes and cardinals, of the churches and public buildings of this distinguished city, and then returned to their lodgings, where their rooms were thronged with valets, trachelmen, antiquarians, &c. &c.

It is vain to look for any features of Pagan or Christian Rome separately: they are strangely blended and incorporated together. It is sometimes difficult to ascertain the works of ancient and modern times, and almost impossible to discriminate between the characters of ancient and modern superstition. Houses of recent date exhibit the detached and sculptured fragments of Roman buildings. Christian churches are erected on the foundations, and constructed with the materials of heathen temples. The statues of the apostles are supported by the columns of the emperors: and the remains of the purple, designed for the reception of the vilest slaves, are lost in the labyrinth of the catacombs, now honoured as the sepulchre of the primitive martyrs.

The church of St. Theodore stands on the ruin of a temple erected in honour of the infant founders of Rome, on the spot where they were fabulously reported to have been nursed. The church of St. Cosmo and St. Damian unfolds the gates of a temple, dedicated to the same reputed founders of the city. That of Santa Maria, sopra Minerva, bespeaks its

own origin; and without going out of Rome to find the walls of the temple of Bacchus in the church of St. Urbino, we need only observe, that the Pantheon dedicated by Agrippa to Jove and other deities, was consecrated by Pope Boniface the fourth, to the Virgin and holy martyrs, and by Gregory the fourth to all the faints. The Corinthian brass, despoiled from the portico of this temple, was converted into the canopy, supported by its wreathed columns, at the Papal altar of St. Peter's; and the church of St. Paul is decorated with marble pillars, drawn from the mausoleum of Hadrian.

The temper of the Romans ever aspiring, still often exhibits its force in the degenerate race of the present day, in which may be noticed a commanding presence, an expressive countenance, an imposing air, a genius and a vigour which need but encouragement and direction to break through the fetters which restrict their exertion. If we would advert to the magnificence of the ancient city, as discernible in monuments still extant, we must consider, with astonishment, the grand, though half dilapidated fabric of Colosseum; the extent and accommodations of the Imperial baths, spread out like provinces with walks, porticos, and museums, enriched with every variety of decoration; the temples of the city and its obelisks, its triumphal arches and well compacted roads, carried over rivers and mountains to the extremities of the remotest provinces; its aqueducts, its catacombs, its tombs, and its palaces.

The remaining monuments, erected in the flourishing times of the republic, are inconsiderable when compared with those of its declining state. The Tiber still divides the city, and of the Sublician or Æmilian bridge only some piers are now left; of the capitol the site alone is known; its immobile faxum has disappeared; of the temple, where Numa Pompilius had his intercourse with Ægeria, and derived sanctions for his salutary laws, nothing remains but a dripping grotto with a broken statue: of the great work of the Cloaca Maxima but one arch of a sewer is to be seen.

As soon as an acquaintance with the works of Greece and of other countries produced a taste for the arts, the emulation of the candidates for popular favour, and the rivalry and munificence of Imperial patronage, filled the city with buildings of useful or ostentatious character. The quarries of Egypt were imported, and the marbles of Asia were worked up to Grecian designs. Unfortunately it happened, that the temples erected in the earlier periods, and the edifices built near them in later times, were so crowded together, that they must have lost half their effect.

For some time Rome was bounded by its seven hills and raised up its works on a confined scale. When its dominion increased, a predilection for the feat of empire still remained; and the arts, though generally introduced, were cramped in their exertions. The necessity of fortifying a city, of which the inhabitants were engaged in continual wars with the neighbouring powers, required that the streets should be narrow, as more easy to be defended, and as occupying a less space. Established plans are not readily altered; and the central part of Rome, for many ages, must have been restricted to its original dimensions, which were extremely confined, as one may judge from the ancient plan of Rome discovered on a pavement in the church of St. Cosmo and St. Damian; from the dimensions of the ancient forum; and from the breadth of the via sacra, a principal street of Rome, in which its religious processions were displayed, and in which Horace and other speculative loiterers strolled, Rome did not dilate into its open spaces till established prosperity excited confidence in the security of the capital.

Notwithstanding a sufficiency of Rome remains, to enable the traveller to trace the progress of its architecture from its perfection, in the time of Augustus, to its decay in the time of Constantine. No one

who views the remains of the marble city of the former emperor, but must heartily wish to have seen Rome in its splendour. In beholding the arch of the latter emperor loaded with the ornaments of a happier period, the decay of the arts must be much lamented.

The intelligent traveller, who dwells with improving meditation on the changes which the city has sustained, and on the moral causes that have effected them, feels considerable satisfaction in this wonderful place, and finds every object pregnant with instruction. The Colosseum, striking as a beautiful ruin, does not sufficiently arrest the attention, unless the spectator recollects not only the savage purposes to which it was generally applied, but that the altars, raised within its circumference, are consecrated to faints martyred there for a religion now triumphant. The temple of Peace becomes more interesting, if it is also recollected that in it were lodged the spoils brought from Jerusalem; that it was afterwards burnt, like the temple of which it received the treasures, and that its riches flowed in a molten stream through the streets of Rome. The arch of Titus will exhibit proofs of the accomplishment of the Hebrew prophecies, to him who considers the sculptured representations of the sacrificial vessels, the tables of the shew bread and of the law, and of the candlestick with the seven branches. Our piety will be awakened to instructive reflections, on remembering that Titus entered through this arch to close the gates of the temple of Peace, in auspicious testimony of an established concord emblematical of that peace which Christianity, abolishing the Jewish polity, should finally produce. The inscription on the arch of Constantine becomes really curious to the reader, who, in the expression of the emperor's having saved the republic "by an impulse of the divinity and the greatness of his own mind," discovers an allusion to the dream which historians represent to have preceded the victory over Maxentius: and in traversing the vast tract which was covered by the palace of Nero, it is satisfactory to recollect, with Orosius, that a building polluted by crimes, and from which Christianity was cruelly persecuted, was marked out as a monument of destruction by divine vengeance.

The church has had its periods of taste in the arts, and its periods of decay. Its temples, where the graceful dome is suspended, where the breathing statue and the living picture are shewn, are too often incumbered with rich materials and elaborate ornaments; its virgins dressed out in trumpery, and its altars covered with tinsel.

There is but little encouragement given to modern artists either by the pope or the Roman nobility, who are content with exhibiting the treasures of hereditary possession; and they, whose ancestors rewarded the labours of Michael Angelo, now scarce afford to pay an artist to copy portraits; and when they do, they chiefly encourage foreigners.

Our travellers made an excursion to Tivoli, to which they drove, over eight miles dreary waste of the Campania, a country once described, by Varro, as an orchard, and excelling all lands in fertility. The parts of it which are now thinly inhabited, are labourled by persons who repair to it for a season from Viterbo, Perugia, and other parts of Italy: the Roman territories being depopulated by castration, celibacy, and bad government. The few tenants of the district prefer the pure air of the mountains to that of the plains, rendered unwholesome by the noxious vapours which ascend from stagnant waters and a volcanic soil. The country about Rome is of a very volcanic nature. The scenery of Tivoli; the fine ruins of the villa of Mæcenas, of which the arches still display a great range of front covered now with vineyards; the cascades, some of which rush headlong from the rains to swell the Arno; the hills covered with olives, and the elegance and projecting swell of the Sybil's temple, hanging over the grotto of Neptune, both amuse and delight the mind.

The

They were conducted to the villa Estense, near the town where Hippolito of Este, cardinal of Ferrara, whom Ariosto dedicated his Orlando Furioso to, built up his tasteless and elaborate structure, gardens, terraces, grottos, and other artificial works in face of the bold and uncontrolled beauties of the neighbouring country.

Afterwards they visited, with less pleasure, Fieschi, where the modern Romans, as well as those of ancient times, pass a few of those weeks when it is most unhealthy to remain at Rome. The villas are lately, the gardens large and adorned with water-works, hydraulic organs, busts, statues, &c.

C H A P. VI.

Departure from Rome—Veletri—Terracina—Fundi—Mola di Gaeta—From Capua to Naples—The Beauties of the Bay—Amusements, &c.—Departure from Naples—From Rome—Various Towns—Venice—Padua—Verona—Augsbourg, &c.—Arrival at Brussels—Conclusion.

HAVING left Rome they drove over other parts of the deserted Campania, rendered interesting by the extensive ruins of an aqueduct, and by the vestiges of a few buildings, and bounded on one side by the slopes of Fieschi prettily covered with houses. As they approached Veletri the country improved in cultivation. There was the appearance of vineyards, olive-trees, &c.

Veletri is by some supposed to have been the birth-place of Augustus. It was, certainly, sometimes the seat of the residence of the emperors; and the ruins of Otho's palace are still to be seen in the neighbourhood. As it is not above twenty or twenty-five miles from Rome, it was near enough to partake of the vicissitudes of the capital. It now contains about fifteen thousand inhabitants. It affords but indifferent accommodations to travellers.

The next morning after having passed through a country slightly variegated with cultivation, they entered on the Pontine marshes, and proceeded rapidly over a line road above seas, as extended and dreary as those of Lincolnshire, about six posts and a half to Terracina, of which the fine spiral rock, formerly called *Rea*, and a sea view opened, beautifully. It is a small town with a church built on the lofty summit, where stood, in ancient days, on the white rocks of Anxur, a temple of Jupiter. The neighbourhood of Terracina exhibits a beautiful display of the productions of the Italian climate.

Having entered the Neapolitan dominions, as they approached Fundi they were struck with the sight of an orchard of orange trees, the first that they had seen; for though these trees abound towards Nice, and in some sheltered and more mild spots of Italy, they are confined in the parts which they have hitherto visited. Those which they saw near Fundi were about the size of a large apple tree; they are clumpy, but somewhat too round and regular to produce a picturesque effect, notwithstanding the beauty of the golden fruit contrasted with the green of its leaves. There are very fine cork trees in the neighbourhood, which retain their beautiful sable green leaves, resembling those of the ilex during the winter months.

The inhabitants of Fundi have had a had character from the highest antiquity. Mola di Gaeta is a small fishing town, beautifully situated at the head of a delightful bay. The whole neighbourhood swarms with inhabitants, whom industry might clothe better, but who seem to prefer dirt and poverty with indolence, to wealth and happiness with labour.

From Mola di Gaeta, they had a charming ride the next morning, along a fine terrace covered with myrtles and olives, to Carigliano, where they passed the river Carigliano, the silent Liris of antiquity, and the boundary of ancient Latium, near which are the remains of an aqueduct that belonged to Minturnæ, and the plains where the Romans fought with the Tarentines, aided by Phyrus. The drive from thence, by St. Agade and Francesehi, to Capua, is less adorned by vegetation; it is, however, populous and fertile.

From Capua they had two posts to Naples, where they arrived as the evening closed, and drove down

the throng of the Strada di Toledo, lighted with candles at the stalls, placed on each side, as occasional shops of provisions, which, together with the lamps at the madonnas, and the flambeaux of a string of carriages, produced a gay effect of illumination.

They took up their abode at the hotel de Venice. The next morning, though the 29th of December, they breakfasted upon the platform of some leads which hang over the border of this beautiful bay, admitting, under a summer's sun, Vespasian, from the conical top of which issued a cloudy column of smoke; and around them the white and cheerful buildings that encircle the bay, the island of Capri, and the shore of Portici. Finding their lodging, however, inconvenient, they moved to Labotte's, a situation equally beautiful.

The beauties of the bay at Naples are numberless. The Tauro Farnese is a striking and admirable piece of sculpture, in which, on a single block of white marble, are represented Amphion and Zethus in the act of tying their step-mother to the horns of a wild bull in order to throw her therewith into the sea. His magnificent work, it is to be feared, may suffer from its exposure to the weather.

The port and the pier at Naples, are likewise very beautiful; but the general distribution of the city is not striking. The Neapolitan style of architecture is bad; some of the churches are grandiose, and extremely rich in ornaments; the pictures which they contain do not engage attention after those at Rome. It is the custom, on arrival at Naples, as it is also at Spa and other places, to send round cards to the principal strangers; an attention which, though it does not establish an acquaintance, facilitates intercourse.

There is an assemblage of foreigners from all parts, who meet at the houses of the different ambassadors; and also at the academy, for admission to which, it is necessary to be furnished with tickets by the ambassadors, and to be provided with a full dress. At this academy is a good concert, and cards, and princes and princesses in crowds. The Neapolitan nobles do not stand high in their general character. Extremely uneducated, and holding literature in contempt, the men have little but their good humour to recommend them. Their evenings are generally spent at cards, or at an insipid opera; and they have not those common sources of information, which, in other countries, are opened in newspapers and dramatic entertainments.

The public amusements at Naples are various and splendid. The opera-house, its decorations and performers are in a superior style. The inferior theatres are tolerably supported, but little frequented.

The English are often invited to be spectators of the hunting-matches, at which his majesty slaughters hundreds of boars, which being preserved in his woods, and fattened on the husks of grapes, on mottles, truffles, and chestnuts, furnish admirable food, and of a flavour infinitely superior to that of any pork. Some of these boars are preserved in the crater of the extinguished volcano at Allrume, which is six miles in circumference, and of which the lava

AVELS.

with less pleasure, French-
mans, as well as those of
of those weeks when it is
at Rome. The villas are
and adorned with water-
falls, statues, &c.

*Naples—The Beauties of the
Venice—Padua—Verona—*

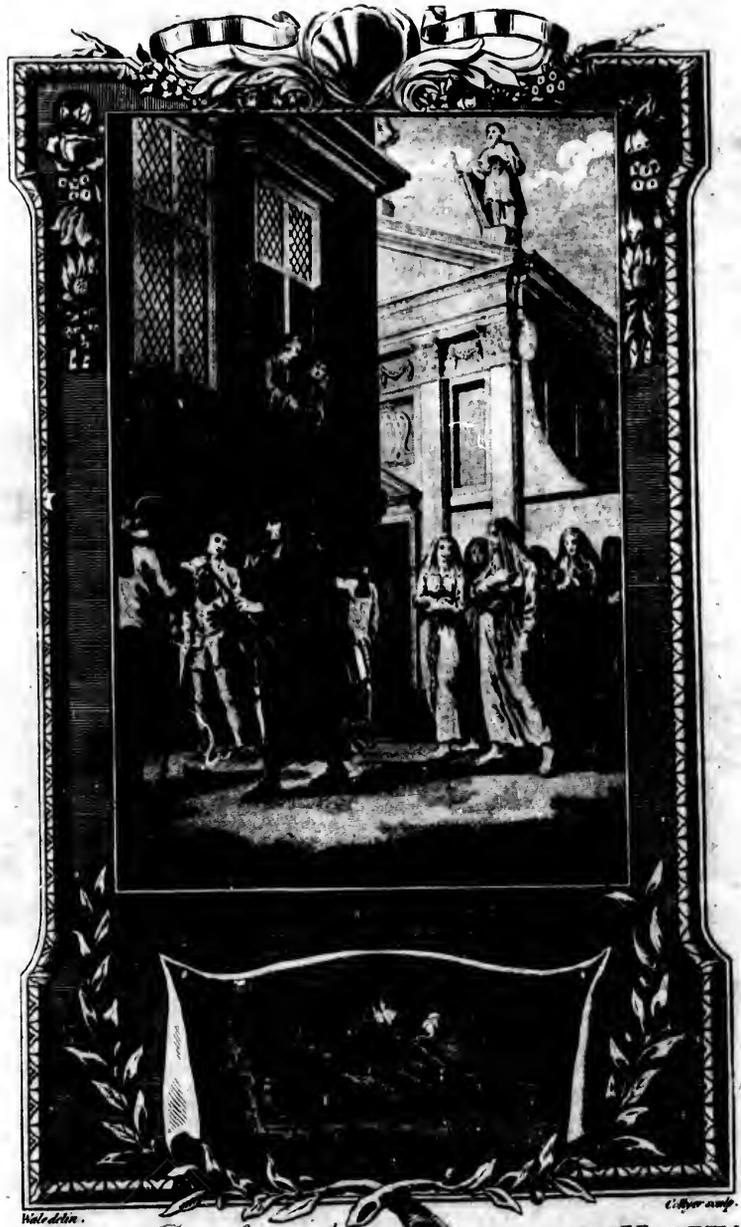
di Toledo, lighted with
d on each side, as occa-
which, together with the
d the flambeaux of all ring
ay effect of illumination.
de at the hotel de Venice.
gh the 29th of December,
e platform of some leads
rder of this beautiful bay,
's sun, Vesuvius, from the
ued a cloudy column of
n the white and cheerful
e bay, the island of Capri,
Finding their lodging,
hey moved to Labotte's, a

at Naples are numberless.
riking and admirable piece
a single block of white
amphion and Zethus in the
ther to the horns of a wild
er therewith into the sea.
is to be feared, may suffer
eather.

at Naples, are likewise very
distribution of the city is
obitan style of architecture
hes are handsome, and ex-
the pictures which they
ention after those at Rome.
al at Naples, as it is also at
send round cards to the
attention which, though it
aintenance, facilitates inter-

ge of foreigners from all
nties of the different ambaf-
cademy, for admission to
e furnished with tickets by
e provided with a full dress,
and concert, and cards, and
in crowds. The Neapoli-
gh in their general charac-
ted, and holding literature
e little but their good hu-
em. Their evenings are
or at an insipid opera; and
non sources of information,
, are opened in newspapers
nts.

at Naples are various and
oule, its decorations and
or style. The inferior the-
ted, but little frequented.
invited to be speculators of
which his majesty slaughters
h being preserved in his
he husks of grapes, on mo-
nuts, furnish admirable food,
ly superior to that of any
boats are preserved in the
volcano at Astrume, which
nce, and of which the lava
is



Walt. delin. *C. G. sculp.*
A Public Procession of Penitent Prostitutes at NAPLES.

is covered with woods, as was that of Vesuvius before the eruption in 1631. It is no uncommon circumstance for his majesty's party to butcher many hundreds of these boars in a few days. Naples is filled with pork, and the stalls in every street are covered with its brawny rolls. The king is a favourite with his people: but his dominions are badly governed: they abound with people insufficiently employed. No measures are adopted to suppress their crimes by a rigorous administration of justice: and as poverty is very general, notwithstanding the fertility of the country, it is unsafe to travel in Calabria, or, indeed, any where but in the public roads. At Naples the use of the *filletto* has been as common as in the other parts of Italy.

Naples and its environs are not only superior to Rome and its vicinity in the beauties of nature, but almost rival them, in the opinion of the general traveller, in point of local interest, and in antiquities, at least as to their present appearance. On every side of this delightful city there is much to awaken the recollection of former times: if we proceed through the wonderful passage of Paullippo, and skirt the shores of Baizæ, we trace the vestiges of Roman temples, the ruins of villas of Pompey, Cæsar, Cicero, Lucullus, Lentulus, and many other distinguished men, now covered in part by the transparent waves of the bay. In the neighbourhood are the still more ancient ruins of Cumæ: the cave, where the virgin Sybil uttered her oracles; the fragments of the temple dedicated to Apollo by Dædalus; the arch of Aqua Felice, a portal of Cumæ, and part of a well constructed aqueduct. Near these are the scenes of Virgil's Elysium with all its distinctive scenery and circumstances; the remains of Nero's temple, ventilated by the ingenious tyrant as if with design to prolong the sufferings of the wretched objects of his vengeance; the coliseum, and the *piscina mirabilis*, a reservoir which was constructed to hold supplies of water sufficient for the fleets at Misenum, or the luxuries of Baizæ. Not far from these are the Campi *Plægri*, the *Leucogaia* enclosed by projecting brows of hills which has continued to smother from the time of Strabo, scalded to whiteness by the corroding vapour; and the mole, or the reputed remains of Caligula's mad attempt. The whole circumference to the horizon is marked with classical and distinguished objects; and we may contemplate at the same time, with different but interesting sensations, the town of Puzzuoli, decayed since the age of Cicero from a second Rome, in which St. Paul preached, on his arrival from Rhegium, to a small fishing town, and the islands where Julia and the wife and sister of Commodus were banished, and where Tiberius rioted in beastly sensuality.

If the places or ruins yet alluded to are not to be put in competition with the vestiges of antiquity on the Roman territory, let the traveller drive in a different direction to Pompeii, over plains laid desolate by Lava, to the site of a town more than once destroyed by the eruptions of the mountain, as appears from the foundations and various laminae on which they were laid. Nothing can be more interesting than the remains of a place preserved ages after those of contemporary cities, by the very destruction which threatened prematurely to annihilate its every trace.

At the first slight descent at the entrance, may be seen the soldier's quarters, with the names of some ancient Romans, inscribed above seventeen centuries ago, on the walls; the platform and proscenium of two theatres; some rooms of a private house, with a human skull that once was animated with the features of Roman genius; the impression of a foot sunk in yielding lava; the perfect form of the temple of Isis, built of stuccoed brick; its columns, its altars; the *cænabulum* of the priests, in which the bones of some fish were found; the slaughter-house with the bill existing ring to which the generous and struggling victim was tied, and the canal by which the blood was conducted away.

90.

If ascending by the Appian way, the traveller proceeds across the vineyard to a suburb of the town, he may behold two narrow streets, each about ten feet wide entirely cleared; he will have a perspective view of both at the same time diverging obliquely from a fountain at a sharp angle. He will see the rows of houses on each side unroofed, indeed, and with walls disjunctured, and presenting the appearance of buildings half destroyed and cleared away after a The pavement, the narrow trottoir, and channels worn by the wheels, still perfect. The houses, excepting one distinguished by its colonade and double stair-case, are very small, and generally built with a portico enclosing a court, into which fountains were usually introduced. The apartments, particularly those of the *furgo's house*, where there are chirographical instruments and manuscript rolls, as also those supposed to have belonged to the *vestals*, are painted with figures, many of which have been removed, but a few still remain and look beautiful, when their colours are freshened by water thrown upon them. In some rooms are the remains of Mosaic pavement. The walls of the *sepulchre* at the outside of the city, are sculptured with ancient masks.

Some ruins in the neighbourhood exhibit a specimen of an ancient villa with the whole plan of the house, its out-houses, and its garden, which is about, perhaps, half an acre, and divided into compartments, in one of which was a pond. The walls of the rooms retain some delicate painting. The cellars still contain Amphoræ, with wine, incrusting by ashes to a solid substance. In the cellars of this villa the skeletons of some unhappy sufferers were found, who had fled there for shelter from the shower of ashes which buried the district.

At Herculaneum the remains of a theatre still may be seen, with its seats, its orchestra, and several departments, all much more below the surface of the ground than are the ruins of Pompeii.

In one museum at Portici is collected almost all the furniture, useful and ornamental, of a Roman house. The *lectisternia*, the sideboard, the culinary utensils, and even the eatables are preserved. The weights and scales and steelyards are scarce excelled by modern improvements. The *caledaria* with heaters first suggested the idea of tea-urns. The implements of agriculture, which resemble those used in our own time, prove that the necessity always operates by the most simple contrivances and suggests nearly the same means. The tops, and different representations of ancient amusements, prove the antiquity of many games. The toilet and its furniture unfold the decorations of female taste. The chirographical instruments, here are not sufficient in number to illustrate much of the state of surgery at the time when they were used. Among the musical instruments is an uncommon trumpet, which is supposed to be the ancient *clangor tubarum*.

Naples is visited not merely for the remains of antiquity; nature no where exhibits more wonderful and extraordinary features. Vesuvius, since our travellers were in its neighbourhood, only rolled out a volume of smoke, sometimes lightly and gracefully discharged, sometimes with heavy and lowering exhalation clinging to the sides. During their stay here they never once saw the conflagration of a flame, though the mountain has been often thought to threaten. Having mounted on mules at Portici, with impatience to visit the Crater, they rode about four miles, to the lava at the base, part of which is covered with chestnuts, and vineyards, from which the *Lacryma Christi* and *Muscadel* are made. Quitting their mules at the convent, they toiled over a continuation of large and caked ashes of lava, and above them ascended by loose and yielding sand, often treading on latent fire, of which they were sensible from the burning heat which scorched their feet and turned the colour of their shoes; and the excesses of which were avoided only by the skill of the guides, who carefully tried and examined the

10 B

appear.



NAPLES.

appearances of the lava, lest it should burst into a sudden flame. When, after much fatigue, though without being obliged to run over the incrustation of the lava, they reached the verge of the crater, and drank their friends health in some English porter. The perpendicular height is every year increased. It is eleven thousand fathoms above the surface of the sea; and the crater gradually converges towards the top. As they looked into it, when the wind blew in the opposite direction, they saw the white sloping sides of ashes, and a projecting tower, as it were, ready to fall into the chasm. The mountain groaned under their feet, and threw up threatening volumes of smoke glowing with a tinge of fire, and, sometimes, almost bursting into a flame. As they crept down, some of the guides endeavoured to work on their minds, and to engage them to promise additional rewards if they conducted them safely. These guides deem themselves secure as they are guarded by charms, some of them being marked with a cross of St. Anthony, the patron of Italy, a guardian against fire.

The weather at Naples is sometimes dreadfully oppressive: at other times remarkably fine. Every nobleman in Calabria has a wooden house to resort to in case of an alarm of an earthquake. One might fear also without great imputation of timidity, the effects of subterranean fires, a burst of which, in 1538, dried a lake not far from Naples, and threw up, in one night, a mountain three miles in circumference and one hundred feet high. But these are rare calamities, and the vegetation is wonderful. Italy formerly produced eighty sorts of wine, more than two thirds of which were the production of the soil: and our travellers had green peas in January.

The palace at Caserta is still, what its name imports, a dreary house, in a flat country, in the plain of ancient Capua. It contains views of all the Italian ports, by Hacket, and some spacious rooms, some of which are finished and furnished with splendid decorations. The stair-case, and chapel, and theatre, are very handsome. The gardens are stiff and disposed with childish ornaments. The town, and houses of the nobility are wretched.

Having left Naples they arrived again at Rome February 1, and departed from thence February 15, driving through a flat desolate country, about four posts, by Civita Castellana, to Borgetto, where the appearance of population began to improve. They crossed the Tiber at Ponte Felice, and travelling over a more varied country passed Otricoli, situated amidst romantic scenes, and thence mounted, by a doubtful ascent, to Narni, which is eight or nine posts from Rome, and surrounded by tremendous cliffs and rocks, of which the moonlight did not suffer them fully to discern the beauty. Though it was late, they did not stop to see if it corresponded with its former character, for elegant accommodations, or to examine the birth-place of Tacitus, or the reputed bridge of Augustus, and the Æolian hills of Cæsis in the neighbourhood, but fatiated with antiquities proceeded on to Terni.

The next morning they walked through a beautiful and well wooded country, by a gradual ascent, about four miles, to the Cascata della Marniore, to which there is a road which was cut through the rock to facilitate the passage of the emperor Joseph when he visited the cascade, so well known and so deserving of admiration.

From Terni to Strettura they admired the hills richly covered with evergreens and the valleys, which, in the time of Pliny, were mowed four times a year, and still retain their reputation for fertility. These beauties, however, gradually disappeared as they approached Spoleto, and ascended the Somma, one of the Appenines. They slept at Spoleto, a town famous for having repulsed the troops of Hannibal, flushed with their victory at Trasimene, from a gate which still exists, and is, besides, rendered worthy of attention by a fine aqueduct.

The next day they drove through a cheerful olive country, by le Vene to Foligno, through the vale of Umbria, along which the Clitumnus freshens the air.

The people still believe that the breed of white cattle, which pasture on the banks of this river, and spread themselves, indeed, over all Italy, derive their whiteness from its waters. Foligno is a large well situated town, famous in the records of modern history, for its confessionary. On the night which had preceded the day of their arrival, it experienced a slight concussion, an expiring throce of the earthquake which produced such considerable effects in October last, and which has so frequently continued its movements, since that time, that the observance of the carnival there has been interdicted.

The ascent of an high mountain, scattered over with poor villages, brought our travellers to Serravalle. The country improved as they approached Ponte le Trave, and its scenery changed again to the wildness of Savoy, as they drew near to Valcimara. They slept at Tolentino. The land of this neighbourhood is highly capable of benefiting by the industry of its inhabitants, who, after having sufficiently laboured on it, repair to the environs of Rome to cultivate the plains of Campania. The town affords a small opera-house. The next day a ride through a pleasing country, swelling into gentle declivities, led them, by Macerata and Sambuchetto, to Loreto. They were here permitted, as strangers, to be present, in the evening, at a private theatre. The public opera-house was suppressed about twelve years ago, upon the pope's observing that it faced the church.

The next day they had two stages through a populous and prosperous country to Ancona. They were pleased with the improving neatness of the town, which has flourished since it was declared a free port by Clement XII. The mole, the port, the triumphal arch of Trajan, the cheerfulness of commerce, and the indications of successful industry, render the town very interesting. In the evening they were present at a masked ball, which, however, was not more enlivened by character than those are in England. It commenced with a lottery, the effects of which, though they may intoxicate a few, must produce a general depression of spirits little favourable to the spirit of the entertainment.

Their next day's route lay by Cafe Brugiate and Senigaglia, the last of which is a large and flourishing town, and has a cathedral embellished by the present pope, of whose munificent piety there are many proofs in Italy. Passing thence through a flat country, by Marotto and Fano, they arrived in the evening and slept at Pesaro, the ancient town of which was swallowed up, a little before the battle of Actium, by an opening of the earth: it is now a distinguished place of resort for Italian merchants.

The next morning they renewed their journey, and drove over a dreary flat, by Catholica, to Rimini, a handsome but irregular town, decorated with the ornament of a fine old arch. Passing thence through Savignano they arrived at Casena, a Bologna in miniature, just at the conclusion of a tournament, which is annually kept up there. Continuing their course afterwards through Faenza, they slept at Faenza, where, at the opera, they were regaled with the sight of female dancers.

The succeeding day brought them by Imola and St. Nicholo, to Bologna. Having visited this city before, they stayed but one day, and on the following morning travelled by a very bad road to St. Georgio, and thence by a still worse to Cento, a small neat town.

The roads the next day, for a post and a half, to St. George, and afterwards for the same distance, to Ferrara, were so execrably bad, that they were obliged to have eight oxen to their chaise, and eight horses to that of their friends, with whom they had joined party, and notwithstanding this, they were detained for nine hours in a deep clay and stiff mud,

through a cheerful olive grove, through the vale of litumms freshens the air. that the breed of white banks of this river, and over all Italy, derive waters. Foligno is a large in the records of modern ry. On the night which their arrival, it experienced pouring thro' of the earth- ch considerable effects in as to frequently continued time, that the observance en interdicted.

mountain, scattered over our travellers to Serravalle as they approached energy changed again to the drew near to Valcinara. The land of this neigh- ble of benefiting by the in- ho, after having sufficiently the environs of Rome to mpania. The town affords e next day a ride through ng into gentle declivities, and Sambuchetto, to Lo- permitted, as strangers, to ing, at a private theatre. was suppressed about twelve oe's observing that it faced

two stages through a popu- rity to Ancona. They were wing neatness of the town, e it was declared a free port mole, the port, the trium- cheerfulness of commerce, ceeful industry, render the In the evening they were l, which, however, was not asler than those are in Eng- with a lottery, the effects of intoxicate a few, mult pro- of spirits little favourable tainment.

lay by Cafe Brugiate and which is a large and flourish- the... embellished by the munificent piety there are Passing thence through a flat ed Fano, they arrived in the elarso, the ancient town of a little before the battle of of the earth: it is now a dif- for Italian merchants.

they renewed their journey, flat, by Catholicis, to Rimi- regular town, decorated with old arch. Passing thence arrived at Casena, a Bologna conclusion of a tournament, up there. Continuing their li... they slept at Faenza, y were regaled with the light

brought them by Imola and Having visited this city one day; and on the follow- by a very bad road to St. a still worse to Cento, a small

y, for a post and a half, to St. as for the same distance, ably bad, that they were obli- to their chaise, and eight hor- iends, with whom they had withstanding this, they were in a deep clay and stiff mud, through

through which, the persevering efforts of the poor animals could, with difficulty, drag the straining carriages, before they could accomplish the two posts and a half.

Ferrara has the appearance of decay. It retains, as vestiges of its former grandeur, the palace of the princes of the house of Este, built in a bad style of architecture; an ancient cathedral, a strong citadel, and spacious streets. Ariollo's monument is shewn at the Benedictine convent.

Our travellers felt at Ferrara, very seriously, the effects of a transition from the mild air of Naples to the severity of a northern latitude, and regretted that they had occasion to quit the southern parts of Italy so early in the year.

On leaving Ferrara, they proceeded four miles by land, to Ponte di Lago, where they embarked in a very commodious vessel large enough to receive both their carriages, and floated down the stream of the Po, which has here a noble breadth. They dined, and slept on board in some tolerable beds that their courier made up; and next morning they entered the Taglio, and were towed along the canal by the side of dreary Lagune, spread out half water and half mud. They left the carriages at Fusina, and entering the open Lagune had a fine view of Venice.

They glided through rows of handsome palaces lining each side of the great canal, and were landed at Petrillo's door, near the Rialto, of which, the beautiful arch is blest with the effect of shops and houses built upon it.

The Venetians, to whom they had letters, treated them with much attention, and an hospitality more liberal than that of Rome or Naples. They give splendid entertainments, though their private tables are served with great economy. They live in handsome palaces, many of them built from the designs of Palladio and other famous architects.

Of the gaiety and splendour of the carnival they saw but little. The rage for its extravagance seems to have expired in the feeble efforts of a few grotesque figures and some insipid masks. The baout is, however, convenient, and serves as an apology for the want of dress. One of our travellers was in it at the phil-harmonic society, a casino or assembly, of which, only the first ranks are members, and where a full dress is usually worn. The theatres at Venice are abundantly crowded, and during the carnival, especially, well supplied.

The Venetian society is really pleasant. The women, who are pretty, though they have bad figures, are devoutly inclined to the tender passion. Our travellers were invited to exceeding good private concerts: seven public theatres are open every night in this joyous city; and the Furor Dramaticus has run so high that another is just built.

The Doge has only the exterior of royalty, and few privileges but that of divesting himself of his official dignities, and sometimes appearing as a private man in the evening. He has a revenue of about 200000. and nominates the dean and canons of St. Mark. His sons and brothers, however, are disqualified, by their affinity to him, from holding any civil office, or from being employed in any public department, domestic or foreign; and he is not allowed himself, to form a connection with any foreign prince without the consent of council. He is subjected to the troublesome and scrutinizing authority of the inquisition, who have the keys of his palace and can search it at pleasure, being accountable for their conduct only to the council of ten. Every member of the state, indeed, it is well known, is amenable before these vigilant and jealous magistrates, to whose tremendous power the government is supposed to be indebted for its security; and may be conducted out of a palace, to a prison over the Ponte di Sospiri, or thrown into the Canal Orphano, without any regular trial or known sentence.

Titles of nobility have been sold at Venice upon great emergencies; but the nobles gradually decreas-

into a small aristocracy: all are employed in some department of state. The podestas, who have the civil presidencies of towns; and the captains, who have the military power, are not allowed salaries sufficient for the state which they maintain, and make up the deficiency by oppression and corrupt administration. The execution, however, of criminal justice is, generally, equitable, though strict; and the people are kept in good order, and not extravagantly taxed. The commerce of the country, however decayed from its former extent, still flourishes. Its glass manufactories are famous; but the plate glass is not by any means so large as that of France, nor so good as that of England.

The arsenal still exhibits a grand display of naval stores, and affords employment for its three thousand men, which is above double the number usually employed at Plymouth. The men receive from a paul and a half to eight pauls per day. The oylers within the arsenal, which fatten on the bitumen and exudation of the wood in the docks and canals here, are in high and deserved estimation, for their size and quality, with the Venetian epicures.

The nobles of Venice are, perhaps, more intelligent than those of any other parts of Italy, being early called out to the exertion of their talents in public departments. The lower classes of the people are, however, but little intrusted even on the most important subjects. The clergy being on the world of all establishments, that of election, is necessarily degraded in its character. Persons of respectable family, and liberal talents, shrink from a profession where subsistence must be obtained by a popular canvass, and authority depends on the caprice of the parish which is to be directed. The higher ranks are, indeed, virtually restrained from taking up the profession, since a noble, who enters into the sacred function, forfeits his hereditary vote in the council. If he obtains a cardinal's cap his whole kindred must withdraw from all interference with public affairs: and should he even attain the pre-eminent dignity of patriarch, he will have no power or jurisdiction even over the church of St. Mark,—ecclesiastics being suspiciously excluded from all authority.

They left Venice March 27, in a borchetta, and taking in their carriages at Fusina, were towed by horses along the Brenta to Padua, where they arrived in the evening. This river is confined by banks somewhat formal.

The post, which they resumed at Padua, conveyed them two stages over a bad road, and through a flat country to Vicenza. As they were travelling northwards they shivered, on observing that the distant mountains, towards which they advanced, were covered with snow.

Verona, which is about three posts and a half from Vicenza, contains many things worthy of attention.

The next morning, they saw the country gradually impoverish, as they approached Volarni. From thence to Beri, the beautiful river Adige accompanied them, washing, in its gentle course, the brown and pelished base of some picturesque rocks which re-echoed every found that disturbed the tranquil solitude of the country. At Beri they tasted an excellent white wine made in the neighbourhood, called Vino Santo, in strong expression of the estimation in which it is held. At Borghetto, before their arrival at Ala, they quitted the Venetian territories, and were allowed to import all their property unmolested, except their money, into the Tyrol; the first entrance to which, as they approached Roveredo, opened to them a rude country covered with heaps of rocks, wilder and more fantastic in their forms than those of Savoy, and intermingled with tracts cultivated and populous.

A road through an open valley, bounded by bold hills, conducted them through Befeno to Trent. They proceeded the next day by Brenner and Steinach and Schonberg to Innspruck, where they sometimes walked a stage, faster than the horses would

drag the carriages. They were struck with the grand scenery of the country.

Inpruck is finely situated on the Inn. They passed the river the succeeding morning, and toiled the whole day up steep hills, or cautiously descended down frozen roads. They travelled the last stage, to Reita, by the pale light of the moon, which magnified the appearance of the mountains and reflected its beams on dark forests of fir, rising in beautiful contrast above extended walks of snow. At the edge of these forests their servant saw two prowling wolves, in spite of which, however, and in spite of many a fearful precipice, they arrived, about midnight, at a good inn at Reita.

At Reita they understood that the nearest road would lead them through Bavaria, but a passport could not be obtained without delay; they therefore continued their course over the plains of Suabia, diversified with fine plantations of fir and parkish scenery; and after a tedious lingering drive, arrived long after midnight, at Augbourg.

Augbourg has the spacious streets and bold character of a town that once flourished considerably. Its buildings are of a better character than those of contemporary cities; and the simple front of the town-house has been very much and very justly admired.

No remarkable town intervened to detain them between Augbourg and Ulm, which are distant four posts and a half from each other. They continued their journey by Weferleuten, Geßlingen, Gappingen, and Blockingen, five posts to Stuttgart, the capital of the duke of Wirtemberg's dominions, which are bounded by the Alps and the Black Forest, and contains about twenty thousand inhabitants.

They left the town next day and pursued their course over a trackless road, to Mannheim, which is but a few miles from Heidelberg. Having visited Bingen, they proceeded by Lauterthal to Simerio, where they slept.

Early the next morning they reached Treves, slept that day at Gravenmaker, and the next day by dinner at Luxembourg; they then drove by Steinfort to Attory, where they slept.

The next day they were shaken over very bad roads by Malmaison to Flamfoul, and thence through treary and almost unpeopled wilds, on which, however, much cattle is bred; by Grinshelm to Marche, where they slept, and the next day proceeded over level uninteresting plains to Namur. They arrived at Brussels March 27, and thence proceeded with all speed to England.

DIRECTIONS TO THE BINDER.

The Work to be placed according to the Order of Publication, viz. The preceding Part, including the most Important Modern VOYAGES to various Parts of the Globe, printed in a Set of Alphabets, distinguished by Stars; and the latter Part containing other Voyages of Importance, and the most recent TRAVELS to different Parts of the World, printed in a second Set of Alphabets without Stars.

N. B. The STAR'D Figures imply those Pages (as for ex. 234) which precede the Voyages and Travels of COOK, DRAKE, ANSON, BYRON, WALLIS, CAVARAT, MULGRAVE, BAUCS, HONORS, PATTERSON, NISIBUNI, BRUNOT, LA MACARTNEY, LADY WALLACE, &c.

No. FRONTISPIECE to face the TITLE-PAGE.

1 A new whole Sheet general Chart of the World. 9

2 Views of Botany-Bay and in Port Jackson. 29

3 Portrait of a New Zealand Chief. 47

4 Natives of Botany-Bay, and the Huta in New South Wales. 47

5 A Sida, a Deity of Japan. 64

6 Ceremonies and Customs in the East-Indies. 76

7 Religious Ceremonies in Galicia. 148

8 Conquest of Sicily by the Greeks. 226

9 Inside View of the Pagod of Nagasaki. 250

10 A new and complete Director Chart of the World. 250

11 Ceremony of the Balsam of giving a Child in Nime. 275

12 One of the Forms in which Amida is worshipped, and the Image of Confucius. 296

13 A curious Mark worn by the Women of the Sandwich-Islands. 308

14 How the Men of Guinea oblig'd Wives to purg'd themselves from Adultery. 364

15 Heer—the Idol Bruma, and the Heathen God Quinwid. 378

16 The Hopnoter—American—Laplander—Chiefs—African, and Greenland. 380

17 Ceremonies of Fegy at Kings Funerals. 709

18 A Malabar—Tartar—Algerian—Japanese—Nighlander, and Hungarian. 744

19 King of Florida consulting his Magician. 777

20 Ceremony of a Divorce in Canada. 784

21 A Festival in honour of Confucius. 797

22 The Guebers of Persia holding a Dog to the Mouth of an expiring Man. 776

23 Nambu Jaton, an Indian Idol. 794

24 A sick Person presented to Ixora. 723

25 Ceremonies, &c. paid to the Idli Buddo. 707

26 Baptism at Rhinow. 810

27 A principal Person of Barbary and an Arab. 824

28 A Dance in Otaheite. 864

29 A Man and Woman of the Sandwich-Islands. 91

30 A young Sea Otter—an Opossum, and a White Bear. 126

31 Chart of Norton Sound and Eberings Streights. 536

32 Caffra or Hottentots assembled for the Admission of their Youth to the State of Manhood. 716

33 Procession of penitent Prostitutes at Naples. 833

34 A Female of Africa and a Female of Morocco. 841

35 Various Charts of Islands, &c. in the Atlantic and Pacific Oceans. 65

36 A Diversion of Swinging in India. 724

37 Town and Island of St. Helena. 694

38 Portraits of a Man and Woman of Prince William's Sound. 100

39 Town of Bolcheretzki. 563

40 Ceremony of Weighing the Great Moon. 239

41 Various Beasts of different Parts of the World. 504

42 View of Matavia-Bay in Otaheite. 501

43 A Man and Woman of Tanna. 529

44 Chart of the Friendly Islands. 584

No. Page

45 Engagement of the Centurion and Acapulco. 304

46 Affecting Interview of two Mokkie Men. 343

47 Monuments, &c. in Easter-Island. 141

48 New whole Sheet Map of North America. 276

49 Landing of Capt. Cook at Mallicolo. 104

50 Views of Sandwich-Islands. 99

51 Portraits of a Man and Woman of Christmas-Island. 584

52 A Marriage among the Laplanders. 698

53 Procession of the Flagellants of Spain, Italy, France, &c. 105

54 Views of Sir Charles Saunders's Island, Osnaburg's, Bolcawen's, Admiral Karpel's, and Wallis's Disp. 270

55 Robams and Ceremonies of the Turks in Prayer. 874

56 The Jubilee proclaimed at Rome. 823

57 Funeril Ceremony of the Guebers. 760

58 Views at Kamfobaka. 639

59 Portraits of a Man and Woman of New Zealand. 58

60 The High Priest of the Guebers, and Heads of different Guairin Priests. 714

61 A remarkable Animal, and the Yari of Madagascar. 240

62 Fortness of Protorow and Oput. 481

63 The Mode of Dancing in Ulitaea, and a Mbrin in Otaheite. 806

64 Captain Wallis at Otaheite in Conversation with Obera. 165

65 View in the Island of New Caledonia. 175

66 View in the Island of Tanna. 107

67 Map of Kerguelen's Land. 120

68 Mr. Bougainville in Magellan's Streights. 840

69 Chart of Van Dieman's Land. 491

70 Baptisical Ceremonies in Persia. 728

71 Map of Nova Hibernia, &c. 285

72 A Hippob in New Zealand. 709

73 A Chief, &c. of Otaheite. 794

74 A Chief and Woman of St. Chelonia. 168

75 The Governor of Batavia's Palace in the East-Indies. 799

76 Commodore Ason attending King George III. with an Account of his Voyage. 336

77 A Family of Dolly-Bay. 174

78 Map of Byson's-Harbours—Swallows-Bay—a Volcano, &c. 888

79 Inside of a House in Onalashka. 571

80 Map of Tongataboo-Harbour. 463

81 Landing of Capt. Cook at Erramango. 163

82 Map of Matavia-Bay, &c. 284

83 The Admiten seized. 794

84 Views of Pitcairn's Island. 180

85 The Pope deposing two Cardinals to open the Gates of Saint John, &c. 845

86 The Adjoining of the Mexicans. 747

87 A Chinese Idol called Quatecong. 797

88 A Boxing Match at Hupao, and Portrait of a Man at Misepa. 451

89 Mr. Banks receiving a Visit, and Views of a Rock, Town, &c. in the Pagod of Monkie in Japan. 607

WELLS.

opened so detain them
 which are distant four
 er. They continued
 , Geislingen, Gappin-
 osts to Stuttgart, the
 emburg's dominions,
 and the Black Forest,
 usand inhabitants. The
 ay and pursued their
 o Mannheim, which is
 burg. Having visited
 latter shall to Simerin,
 reached Treves, next
 arrived the next day
 y then drove by Stein-
 shaken over very bad
 ul, and thence through
 wilds, on which how-
 Grinheim to Marche,
 t day proceeded over
 amur,
 March 27, and thence
 ngland.

cluding the most important
 by Stars, and the latter Part
 World, printed in a second

DAVIS, ANSON, BYRON,
 MAY, LADY WALLACE, &c.

Page	
of Aspalco.....	384
of Men.....	343
.....	143
Angles.....	776
.....	164
.....	89
of Christmas-Bound.....	528
.....	638
.....	825
.....	270
.....	274
.....	828
.....	260
.....	639
of New Zealand.....	50
and Heads of different Guarn.....	718
Vari of Madagafcar.....	180
.....	491
.....	206
.....	265
.....	773
.....	167
.....	130
.....	844
.....	391
.....	778
.....	68
.....	109
.....	104
.....	145
.....	798
.....	445
.....	154
.....	282
.....	171
.....	409
.....	163
.....	122
.....	704
.....	180
.....	825
.....	787
.....	796
.....	451
.....	627

